Each chapter in this book is accompanied by a set of problems, which are available free of charge online. To access them visit the Online Resource Centre at www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/ and enter the following:

Username: clayden2e
Password: compound
This page intentionally left blank
Brief contents

Abbreviations xv
Preface to the second edition xvii
Organic chemistry and this book xix

1 What is organic chemistry? 1
2 Organic structures 15
3 Determining organic structures 43
4 Structure of molecules 80
5 Organic reactions 107
6 Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group 125
7 Delocalization and conjugation 141
8 Acidity, basicity, and pKa 163
9 Using organometallic reagents to make C–C bonds 182
10 Nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group 197
11 Nucleophilic substitution at C=O with loss of carbonyl oxygen 222
12 Equilibria, rates, and mechanisms 240
13 1H NMR: Proton nuclear magnetic resonance 269
14 Stereochemistry 302
15 Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon 328
16 Conformational analysis 360
17 Elimination reactions 382
18 Review of spectroscopic methods 407
19 Electrophilic addition to alkenes 427
20 Formation and reactions of enols and enolates 449
21 Electrophilic aromatic substitution 471
22 Conjugate addition and nucleophilic aromatic substitution 498
23 Chemoselectivity and protecting groups 528
24 Regioselectivity 562
25 Alkylation of enolates 584
26 Reactions of enolates with carbonyl compounds: the aldol and Claisen reactions 614
27 Sulfur, silicon, and phosphorus in organic chemistry 656
28 Retrosynthetic analysis 694
29 Aromatic heterocycles 1: reactions 723
30 Aromatic heterocycles 2: synthesis 757
31 Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics 789
32 Stereoselectivity in cyclic molecules 825
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Diastereoselectivity</td>
<td>852</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Pericyclic reactions 1: cycloadditions</td>
<td>877</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Pericyclic reactions 2: sigmatropic and electrocyclic reactions</td>
<td>909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Participation, rearrangement, and fragmentation</td>
<td>931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Radical reactions</td>
<td>970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Synthesis and reactions of carbenes</td>
<td>1003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Determining reaction mechanisms</td>
<td>1029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Organometallic chemistry</td>
<td>1069</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Asymmetric synthesis</td>
<td>1102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Organic chemistry of life</td>
<td>1134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Organic chemistry today</td>
<td>1169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Figure acknowledgements</td>
<td>1182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic table of the elements</td>
<td>1184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>1187</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

Abbreviations  
Preface to the second edition  
Organic chemistry and this book

### 1 What is organic chemistry?
- Organic chemistry and you  
- Organic compounds  
- Organic chemistry and industry  
- Organic chemistry and the periodic table  
- Organic chemistry and this book  
- Further reading

### 2 Organic structures
- Hydrocarbon frameworks and functional groups  
- Drawing molecules  
- Hydrocarbon frameworks  
- Functional groups  
- Carbon atoms carrying functional groups can be classified by oxidation level  
- Naming compounds  
- What do chemists really call compounds?  
- How should you name compounds?  
- Further reading

### 3 Determining organic structures
- Introduction  
- Mass spectrometry  
- Mass spectrometry detects isotopes  
- Atomic composition can be determined by high-resolution mass spectrometry  
- Nuclear magnetic resonance  
- Regions of the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum  
- Different ways of describing chemical shift  
- A guided tour of the $^{13}$C NMR spectra of some simple molecules  
- The $^1$H NMR spectrum  
- Infrared spectra  
- Mass spectra, NMR, and IR combined make quick identification possible  
- Double bond equivalents help in the search for a structure  
- Looking forward to Chapters 13 and 18  
- Further reading

### 4 Structure of molecules
- Introduction  
- Electrons occupy atomic orbitals  
- Molecular orbitals—diatomic molecules  
- Bonds between different atoms  
- Hybridization of atomic orbitals  
- Rotation and rigidity  
- Conclusion  
- Looking forward  
- Further reading

### 5 Organic reactions
- Chemical reactions  
- Nucleophiles and electrophiles  
- Curly arrows represent reaction mechanisms  
- Drawing your own mechanisms with curly arrows  
- Further reading

### 6 Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group
- Molecular orbitals explain the reactivity of the carbonyl group  
- Attack of cyanide on aldehydes and ketones  
- The angle of nucleophilic attack on aldehydes and ketones  
- Nucleophilic attack by ‘hydride’ on aldehydes and ketones  
- Addition of organometallic reagents to aldehydes and ketones  
- Addition of water to aldehydes and ketones  
- Hemiacetal from reaction of alcohols with aldehydes and ketones  
- Ketones also form hemiacetals  
- Acid and base catalysis of hemiacetal and hydrate formation  
- Bisulfite addition compounds  
- Further reading

### 7 Delocalization and conjugation
- Introduction  
- The structure of ethene (ethylene, CH$_2$=CH$_2$)  
- Molecules with more than one C=C double bond

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xv</td>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xvii</td>
<td>Preface to the second edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xix</td>
<td>Organic chemistry and this book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>What is organic chemistry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Organic structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Determining organic structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Structure of molecules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Organic reactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Delocalization and conjugation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The conjugation of two π bonds</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV and visible spectra</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The allyl system</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delocalization over three atoms is a common structural feature</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromaticity</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acidity, basicity, and pKₐ</strong></td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organic compounds are more soluble in water as ions</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acids, bases, and pKₐ</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acidity</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The definition of pKₐ</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constructing a pKₐ scale</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen compounds as acids and bases</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substituents affect the pKₐ</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon acids</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pKₐ in action—the development of the drug cimetidine</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis acids and bases</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Using organometallic reagents to make C—C bonds</strong></td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organometallic compounds contain a carbon—metal bond</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making organometallics</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using organometallics to make organic molecules</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidation of alcohols</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Looking forward</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group</strong></td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The product of nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group is not always a stable compound</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carboxylic acid derivatives</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why are the tetrahedral intermediates unstable?</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not all carboxylic acid derivatives are equally reactive</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acid catalysts increase the reactivity of a carbonyl group</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acid chlorides can be made from carboxylic acids using SOCl₂ or PCl₅</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making other compounds by substitution reactions of acid derivatives</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making ketones from esters: the problem</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making ketones from esters: the solution</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To summarize…</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And to conclude…</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nucleophilic substitution at C—O with loss of carbonyl oxygen</strong></td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aldehydes can react with alcohols to form hemiacetals</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetals are formed from aldehydes or ketones plus alcohols in the presence of acid</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amines react with carbonyl compounds</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imines are the nitrogen analogues of carbonyl compounds</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equilibria, rates, and mechanisms</strong></td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How far and how fast?</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to make the equilibrium favour the product you want</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entropy is important in determining equilibrium constants</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equilibrium constants vary with temperature</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introducing kinetics: how to make reactions go faster and cleaner</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rate equations</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalysis in carbonyl substitution reactions</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinetic versus thermodynamic products</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of mechanisms from Chapters 6–12</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1H NMR: Proton nuclear magnetic resonance</strong></td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The differences between carbon and proton NMR</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration tells us the number of hydrogen atoms in each peak</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regions of the proton NMR spectrum</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protons on saturated carbon atoms</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The alkene region and the benzene region</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The aldehyde region: unsaturated carbon bonded to oxygen</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protons on heteroatoms have more variable shifts than protons on carbon</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coupling in the proton NMR spectrum</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To conclude</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stereochemistry</strong></td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some compounds can exist as a pair of mirror-image forms</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Diastereoisomers are stereoisomers that are not enantiomers.
Chiral compounds with no stereogenic centres.
Axes and centres of symmetry.
Separating enantiomers is called resolution.

Further reading

15 Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon
Mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution.
How can we decide which mechanism ($S_N1$ or $S_N2$) will apply to a given organic compound?
A closer look at the $S_N1$ reaction.
A closer look at the $S_N2$ reaction.
Contrasts between $S_N1$ and $S_N2$.
The leaving group in $S_N1$ and $S_N2$ reactions.
The nucleophile in $S_N1$ reactions.
The nucleophile in the $S_N2$ reaction.
Nucleophiles and leaving groups compared.
Looking forward: elimination and rearrangement reactions.
Further reading

16 Conformational analysis
Bond rotation allows chains of atoms to adopt a number of conformations.
Conformation and configuration.
Barriers to rotation.
Conformations of ethane.
Conformations of propane.
Conformations of butane.
Ring strain.
A closer look at cyclohexane.
Substituted cyclohexanes.
To conclude...
Further reading

17 Elimination reactions
Substitution and elimination.
How the nucleophile affects elimination versus substitution.
$E1$ and $E2$ mechanisms.
Substrate structure may allow $E1$.
The role of the leaving group.
$E1$ reactions can be stereoselective.
$E2$ eliminations have anti-periplanar transition states.
The regioselectivity of $E2$ eliminations.
Anion-stabilizing groups allow another mechanism—$E1cB$.
To conclude.
Further reading

18 Review of spectroscopic methods
There are three reasons for this chapter.
Spectroscopy and carbonyl chemistry.
Acid derivatives are best distinguished by infrared.
Small rings introduce strain inside the ring and higher s character outside it.
Simple calculations of $C=O$ stretching frequencies in IR spectra.
NMR spectra of alkenes and small rings.
Proton NMR distinguishes axial and equatorial protons in cyclohexanes.
Interactions between different nuclei can give enormous coupling constants.
Identifying products spectroscopically.
Tables.
Shifts in proton NMR are easier to calculate and more informative than those in carbon NMR.
Further reading

19 Electrophilic addition to alkenes
Alkenes react with bromine.
Oxidation of alkenes to form epoxides.
Electrophilic addition to unsymmetrical alkenes is regioselective.
Electrophilic addition to dienes.
Unsymmetrical bromonium ions open regioselectively.
Electrophilic additions to alkenes can be stereospecific.
Adding two hydroxyl groups: dihydroxylation.
Breaking a double bond completely: periodate cleavage and ozonolysis.
Adding one hydroxyl group: how to add water across a double bond.
To conclude... a synopsis of electrophilic addition reactions.
Further reading

20 Formation and reactions of enols and enolates
Would you accept a mixture of compounds as a pure substance?
Tautomerism: formation of enols by proton transfer.
Why don’t simple aldehydes and ketones exist as enols?
Evidence for the equilibration of carbonyl compounds with enols 451
Enolization is catalysed by acids and bases 452
The intermediate in the base-catalysed reaction is an enolate ion 452
Summary of types of enol and enolate 454
Stable enols 456
Consequences of enolization 459
Reaction with enols or enolates as intermediates 460
Stable equivalents of enolate ions 465
Enol and enolate reactions at oxygen: preparation of enol ethers 467
Reactions of enol ethers 468
To conclude 470
Further reading 470

21 Electrophi lic aromatic substitution 471
Introduction: enols and phenols 471
Benzene and its reactions with electrophiles 473
Electrophilic substitution on phenols 479
A nitrogen lone pair activates even more strongly 482
Alkyl benzenes also react at the ortho and para positions 484
Electron-withdrawing substituents give meta products 486
Halogen 5: show evidence of both electron withdrawal and donation 489
Two or more substituents may cooperate or compete 491
Some problems and some opportunities 492
A closer look at Friedel–Crafts chemistry 492
Exploiting the chemistry of the nitro group 494
Summary 495
Further reading 497

22 Conjugate addition and nucleophilic aromatic substitution 498
Alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups 498
Conjugated alkenes can be electrophilic 499
Summary: factors controlling conjugate addition 509
Extending the reaction to other electron-deficient alkenes 510
Conjugate substitution reactions 511
Nucleophilic epoxidation 513
Nucleophilic aromatic substitution 514
The addition–elimination mechanism 515
The $S_{n}1$ mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution: diazonium compounds 520
The benzene mechanism 523
To conclude… 526
Further reading 527

23 Chemoselectivity and protecting groups 528
Selectivity 528
Reducing agents 530
Reduction of carbonyl groups 530
Hydrogen as a reducing agent: catalytic hydrogenation 534
Getting rid of functional groups 539
Dissolving metal reductions 541
Selectivity in oxidation reactions 544
Competing reactivity: choosing which group reacts 546
A survey of protecting groups 549
Further reading 561

24 Regioselectivity 562
Introduction 562
Regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution 563
Electrophilic attack on alkenes 570
Regioselectivity in radical reactions 571
Nucleophilic attack on allylic compounds 574
Electrophilic attack on conjugated dienes 579
Conjugate addition 581
Regioselectivity in action 582
Further reading 583

25 Alkylation of enolates 584
Carbonyl groups show diverse reactivity 584
Some important considerations that affect all alkylations 584
Nitriles and nitroalkanes can be alkylated 585
Choice of electrophile for alkylation 587
Lithium enolates of carbonyl compounds 587
Alkylation of lithium enolates 588
Using specific enol equivalents to alkylate aldehydes and ketones 591
Alkylation of β-dicarbonyl compounds 595
Ketone alkylation poses a problem in regioselectivity 598
Enones provide a solution to regioselectivity problems 601
Using Michael acceptors as electrophiles 605
To conclude… 612
Further reading 613

26 Reactions of enolates with carbonyl compounds: the aldol and Claisen reactions 614
Introduction 614
The aldol reaction 615
Cross-condensations 618
Specific enol equivalents can be used to control aldol reactions 624
How to control aldol reactions of esters 631
How to control aldol reactions of aldehydes 632
How to control aldol reactions of ketones 634
Intramolecular aldol reactions 636
Acylation at carbon 640
Crossed ester condensations 643
Summary of the preparation of keto-esters by the Claisen reaction 647
Controlling acylation with specific enol equivalents 648
Intramolecular crossed Claisen ester condensations 652
Carbonyl chemistry—where next? 654
Further reading 654

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sulfur, silicon, and phosphorus in organic chemistry</th>
<th>656</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Useful main group elements</td>
<td>656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur: an element of contradictions</td>
<td>656</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur-stabilized anions</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonium salts</td>
<td>664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonium ylids</td>
<td>665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silicon and carbon compared</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allyl silanes as nucleophiles</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The selective synthesis of alkenes</td>
<td>677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The properties of alkenes depend on their geometry</td>
<td>677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exploiting cyclic compounds</td>
<td>678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equilibration of alkenes</td>
<td>679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E and Z alkenes can be made by stereoselective addition to alkyne</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predominantly E alkenes can be formed by stereoselective elimination reactions</td>
<td>684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Julia olefination is regiospecific and connective</td>
<td>686</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereosepecific eliminations can give pure single isomers of alkenes</td>
<td>688</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perhaps the most important way of making alkenes—the Wittig reaction</td>
<td>689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To conclude</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Retrosynthetic analysis</th>
<th>694</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creative chemistry</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrosynthetic analysis: synthesis backwards</td>
<td>694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions</td>
<td>695</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthons are idealized reagents</td>
<td>695</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple step syntheses: avoid chemoselectivity problems</td>
<td>698</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Functional group interconversion | 699 |
| Two-group disconnections are better than one-group disconnections | 702 |
| C—C disconnections | 706 |
| Available starting materials | 711 |
| Donor and acceptor synthons | 712 |
| Two-group C—C disconnections | 712 |
| 1,5-Related functional groups | 719 |
| ‘Natural reactivity’ and ‘umpolung’ | 719 |
| To conclude... | 722 |
| Further reading | 722 |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aromatic heterocycles 1: reactions</th>
<th>723</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromaticity survives when parts of benzene’s ring are replaced by nitrogen atoms</td>
<td>724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyridine is a very unreactive aromatic imine</td>
<td>725</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Six-membered aromatic heterocycles can have oxygen in the ring</td>
<td>732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five-membered aromatic heterocycles are good at electrophilic substitution</td>
<td>733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furan and thiophene are oxygen and sulfur analogues of pyrrole</td>
<td>735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More reactions of five-membered heterocycles</td>
<td>738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five-membered rings with two or more nitrogen atoms</td>
<td>740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzo-fused heterocycles</td>
<td>745</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Putting more nitrogen atoms in a six-membered ring</td>
<td>748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fusing rings to pyridines: quinolines and isoquinolines</td>
<td>749</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic heterocycles can have many nitrogens but only one sulfur or oxygen in any ring</td>
<td>751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are thousands more heterocycles out there</td>
<td>753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which heterocyclic structures should you learn?</td>
<td>754</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further reading</td>
<td>755</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aromatic heterocycles 2: synthesis</th>
<th>757</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermodynamics is on our side</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disconnect the carbon—heteroatom bonds first</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyroles, thiophenes, and furans from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to make pyridines: the Hantzsch pyridine synthesis</td>
<td>763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrazoles and pyridazines from hydrazine and dicarbonyl compounds</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrimidines can be made from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and amidines</td>
<td>770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsymmetrical nucleophiles lead to selectivity questions</td>
<td>771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoxazoles are made from hydroxylamine or by cycloaddition</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrazoles and triazoles are also made by cycloadditions</td>
<td>774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Fischer indole synthesis</td>
<td>775</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Quinolines and isoquinolines 780
More heteroatoms in fused rings mean more choice in synthesis 784
Summary: the three major approaches to the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles 785
Further reading 788

31 Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics 789
Introduction 789
Reactions of saturated heterocycles 790
Conformation of saturated heterocycles 796
Making heterocycles: ring-closing reactions 805
Ring size and NMR 814
Geminal (J) coupling 817
Diastereotopic groups 820
To summarize... 824
Further reading 824

32 Stereoselectivity in cyclic molecules 825
Introduction 825
Stereochemical control in six-membered rings 826
Reactions on small rings 832
Regiochemical control in cyclohexene epoxides 836
Stereoselectivity in bicyclic compounds 839
Fused bicyclic compounds 841
Spirocyclic compounds 846
Reactions with cyclic intermediates or cyclic transition states 847
To summarize... 851
Further reading 851

33 Diastereoselectivity 852
Looking back 852
Prochirality 856
Additions to carbonyl groups can be diastereoselective even without rings 858
Stereoselective reactions of acyclic alkenes 865
Aldol reactions can be stereoselective 868
Single enantiomers from diastereoselective reactions 871
Looking forward 876
Further reading 876

34 Pericyclic reactions 1: cycloadditions 877
A new sort of reaction 877
General description of the Diels–Alder reaction 879
The frontier orbital description of cycloadditions 886
Regioselectivity in Diels–Alder reactions 889
The Woodward–Hoffmann description of the Diels–Alder reaction 892
Trapping reactive intermediates by cycloadditions 893
Other thermal cycloadditions 894
Photochemical [2 + 2] cycloadditions 896
Thermal [2 + 2] cycloadditions 898
Making five-membered rings: 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions 901
Two very important synthetic reactions: cycloaddition of alkenes with osmium tetroxide and with ozone 905
Summary of cycloaddition reactions 907
Further reading 908

35 Pericyclic reactions 2: sigmatropic and electrocyclic reactions 909
Sigmatropic rearrangements 909
Orbital descriptions of [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements 912
The direction of [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements 913
[2,3]-Sigmatropic rearrangements 917
[1,5]-Sigmatropic hydrogen shifts 919
Electrocyclic reactions 922
Further reading 930

36 Participation, rearrangement, and fragmentation 931
Neighbouring groups can accelerate substitution reactions 931
Rearrangements occur when a participating group ends up bonded to a different atom 937
Carbocations readily rearrange 940
The pinacol rearrangement 945
The dienone-phenol rearrangement 949
The benzilic acid rearrangement 950
The Favorskii rearrangement 950
Migration to oxygen: the Baeyer–Villiger reaction 953
The Beckmann rearrangement 958
Polarization of C–C bonds helps fragmentation 960
Fragmentations are controlled by stereochemistry 962
Ring expansion by fragmentation 963
Controlling double bonds using fragmentation 965
The synthesis of nootkatone: fragmentation showcase 966
Looking forward 969
Further reading 969

37 Radical reactions 970
Radicals contain unpaired electrons 970
Radicals form by homolysis of weak bonds 971
Most radicals are extremely reactive. . .
How to analyse the structure of radicals: electron
spin resonance
Radical stability
How do radicals react?
Radical–radical reactions
Radical chain reactions
Chlorination of alkanes
Allylic bromination
Reversing the selectivity: radical substitution
of Br by H
Carbon–carbon bond formation with radicals
The reactivity pattern of radicals is quite different
from that of polar reagents
Alkyl radicals from boranes and oxygen
Intramolecular radical reactions are more efficient
than intermolecular ones
Looking forward
Further reading

Synthesis and reactions of carbenes
Diazomethane makes methyl esters from
carboxylic acids
Photolysis of diazomethane produces a carbene
How do we know that carbenes exist?
Ways to make carbenes
Carbenes can be divided into two types
How do carbenes react?
Carbenes react with alkenes to give
cyclopropanes
Insertion into C–H bonds
Rearrangement reactions
Nitrenes are the nitrogen analogues of carbenes
Alkene metathesis
Summary
Further reading

Determining reaction mechanisms
There are mechanisms and there are mechanisms
Determining reaction mechanisms: the
Cannizzaro reaction
Be sure of the structure of the product
Systematic structural variation
The Hammett relationship
Other kinetic evidence for reaction mechanisms
Acid and base catalysis
The detection of intermediates
Stereochemistry and mechanism
Summary of methods for the investigation
of mechanism
Further reading

Organometallic chemistry
Transition metals extend the range of
organic reactions
The 18 electron rule
Bonding and reactions in transition metal complexes
Palladium is the most widely used metal in
homogeneous catalysis
The Heck reaction couples together an organic
halide or triflate and an alkene
Cross-coupling of organometallics and halides
Allylic electrophiles are activated by palladium(0)
Palladium-catalysed amination of aromatic rings
Alkenes coordinated to palladium(II) are attacked
by nucleophiles
Palladium catalysis in the total synthesis of a
natural alkaloid
An overview of some other transition metals
Further reading

Asymmetric synthesis
Nature is asymmetric
The chiral pool: Nature’s chiral centres
‘off the shelf’
Resolution can be used to separate enantiomers
Chiral auxiliaries
Chiral reagents
Asymmetric catalysis
Asymmetric formation of carbon–carbon bonds
Asymmetric aldol reactions
Enzymes as catalysts
Further reading

Organic chemistry of life
Primary metabolism
Life begins with nucleic acids
Proteins are made of amino acids
Sugars—just energy sources?
Lipids
Mechanisms in biological chemistry
Natural products
Fatty acids and other polyketides are made from
acetyl CoA
Terpenes are volatile constituents of plants
Further reading
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>Acetyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acac</td>
<td>Acetylacetonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Asymmetric dihydroxylation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADP</td>
<td>Adenosine 5′-diphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>Asymmetric epoxidation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIBN</td>
<td>Azobisisobutyronitrile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO</td>
<td>Atomic orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ar</td>
<td>Aryl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATP</td>
<td>Adenosine triphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-BBN</td>
<td>9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BHT</td>
<td>Butylated hydroxy toluene (2,6-di-t-butyl-4-methylphenol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINAP</td>
<td>Bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1′-binaphthyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>Benzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boc, BOC</td>
<td>tert-Butyloxy carbonyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bu</td>
<td>Butyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-Bu</td>
<td>sec-Butyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-Bu</td>
<td>tert-Butyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bz</td>
<td>Benzoyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cbz</td>
<td>Carboxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDI</td>
<td>Carbonyldiimidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>Chemical ionization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoA</td>
<td>Coenzyme A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COT</td>
<td>Cyclooctatetraene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp</td>
<td>Cyclopentadienyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABCO</td>
<td>1,4-Diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBE</td>
<td>Double bond equivalent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBN</td>
<td>1,5-Diazabicyclo[4.3.0]non-5-ene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBU</td>
<td>1,8-Diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>N,N-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDQ</td>
<td>2,3-Dichloro-5,6-dicyano-1,4-benzoquinone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEAD</td>
<td>Diethyl azodicarboxylate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dibal</td>
<td>Diisobutylaluminim hydride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMAP</td>
<td>4-Dimethylaminopyridine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DME</td>
<td>1,2-Dimethoxyethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMF</td>
<td>N,N-Dimethylformamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMPU</td>
<td>1,3-Dimethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2(1H)-pyrimidinone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMS</td>
<td>Dimethyl sulfide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>Dimethyl sulfoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>Deoxyribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>Unimolecular elimination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>Bimolecular elimination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ea</td>
<td>Activation energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTA</td>
<td>Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPR</td>
<td>Electron paramagnetic resonance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESR</td>
<td>Electron spin resonance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Et</td>
<td>Ethyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGI</td>
<td>Functional group interconversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fmoc</td>
<td>Fluorenylmethoxy carbonyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAC</td>
<td>General acid catalysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBC</td>
<td>General base catalysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMPA</td>
<td>Hexamethylyphosphoramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMPT</td>
<td>Hexamethylyphosphorous triamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOBt</td>
<td>1-Hydroxybenzotriazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOMO</td>
<td>Highest occupied molecular orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPLC</td>
<td>High performance liquid chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>Human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>Infrared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KHMDS</td>
<td>Potassium hexamethyldisilazide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCAO</td>
<td>Linear combination of atomic orbitals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDA</td>
<td>Lithium diisopropylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHMDA</td>
<td>Lithium hexamethyldisilazide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LICA</td>
<td>Lithium isopropylcyclohexylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTMP, LiTMP</td>
<td>Lithium 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUMO</td>
<td>Lowest unoccupied molecular orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m-CPBA</td>
<td>meta-Chloroperoxybenzoic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>Methyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO</td>
<td>Molecular orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOM</td>
<td>Methoxymethyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms</td>
<td>Methanesulfonyl (mesyl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD</td>
<td>Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NADH</td>
<td>Reduced NAD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBS</td>
<td>N-Bromosuccinimide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIS</td>
<td>N-Iodosuccinimide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMO</td>
<td>N-Methylmorpholine-N-oxide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NMR  Nuclear magnetic resonance
NOE  Nuclear Overhauser effect
PCC  Pyridinium chlorochromate
PDC  Pyridinium dichromate
Ph  Phenyl
PPA  Polyphosphoric acid
Pr  Propyl
i-Pr  iso-Propyl
PTC  Phase transfer catalysis
PTSA  $p$-Toluencesulfonic acid
Py  Pyridine
Red Al  Sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminum hydride
RNA  Ribonucleic acid
SAC  Specific acid catalysis
SAM  $S$-Adenosyl methionine
SBC  Specific base catalysis
$S_N1$  Unimolecular nucleophilic substitution
$S_N2$  Bimolecular nucleophilic substitution
SOMO  Singly occupied molecular orbital
STM  Scanning tunnelling microscopy
TBDMS  $Tert$-butyldimethylsilyl
TBDPS  $Tert$-butyldiphenylsilyl
TF  Trifluoromethanesulfonyl (triflyl)
THF  Tetrahydrofuran
THP  Tetrahydropyran
TIPS  Triisopropylsilyl
TMEDA  $N,N',N'$-tetramethyl-1,2-ethylendiamine
TMP  2,2,6,6-Tetramethylpiperidine
TMS  Trimethylsilyl, tetramethylsilane
TMSOTf  Trimethylsilyl triflate
TPAP  Tetra-$N$-propylammonium perruthenate
Tr  Triphenylmethyl (trityl)
TS  Transition state
Ts  $p$-Toluencesulfonyl, tosyl
UV  Ultraviolet
VSEPR  Valence shell electron pair repulsion
Preface to the second edition

Students of chemistry are not hard-pressed to find a text to support their learning in organic chemistry through their years at university. The shelves of a university bookshop will usually offer a choice of at least half a dozen—all entitled ‘Organic Chemistry’, all with substantially more than 1000 pages. Closer inspection of these titles quickly disappoints expectations of variety. Almost without exception, general organic chemistry texts have been written to accompany traditional American sophomore courses, with their rather precisely defined requirements. This has left the authors of these books little scope for reinvigorating their presentation of chemistry with new ideas.

We wanted to write a book whose structure grows from the development of ideas rather than being dictated by the sequential presentation of facts. We believe that students benefit most of all from a book which leads from familiar concepts to unfamiliar ones, not just encouraging them to know but to understand and to understand why. We were spurred on by the nature of the best modern university chemistry courses, which themselves follow this pattern: this is after all how science itself develops. We also knew that if we did this we could, from the start, relate the chemistry we were talking about to the two most important sorts of chemistry that exist—the chemistry that is known as life, and the chemistry as practised by chemists solving real problems in laboratories.

We aimed at an approach which would make sense to and appeal to today’s students. But all of this meant taking the axe to the roots of some long-standing textbook traditions. The best way to find out how something works is to take it apart and put it back together again, so we started with the tools for expressing chemical ideas: structural diagrams and curly arrows. Organic chemistry is too huge a field to learn even a small part by rote, but with these tools, students can soon make sense of chemistry which may be unfamiliar in detail by relating it to what they know and understand. By calling on curly arrows and ordering chemistry according to mechanism we allow ourselves to discuss mechanistically (and orbitally) simple reactions (addition to $\text{C}=$O, for example) before more complex and involved ones (such as $\text{S}_\text{N}1$ and $\text{S}_\text{N}2$).

Complexity follows in its own time, but we have deliberately omitted detailed discussion of obscure reactions of little value, or of variants of reactions which lie a simple step of mechanistic logic from our main story: some of these are explored in the problems associated with each chapter, which are available online.1 We have similarly aimed to avoid exhuming principles and rules (from those of Le Châtelier through Markovnikov, Saytseff, least motion, and the like) to explain things which are better understood in terms of unifying fundamental thermodynamic or mechanistic concepts.

All science must be underpinned by evidence, and support for organic chemistry’s claims is provided by spectroscopy. For this reason we first reveal to students the facts which spectroscopy tells us (Chapter 3) before trying to explain them (Chapter 4) and then use them to deduce mechanisms (Chapter 5). NMR in particular forms a significant part of four chapters in the book, and evidence drawn from NMR underpins many of the discussions right through the book. Likewise, the mechanistic principles we outline in Chapter 5, firmly based in the orbital theories of Chapter 4, underpin all of the discussion of new reactions through the rest of the book.

We have presented chemistry as something whose essence is truth, of provable veracity, but which is embellished with opinions and suggestions to which not all chemists subscribe. We aim to avoid dogma and promote the healthy weighing up of evidence, and on occasion we are content to leave readers to draw their own conclusions. Science is important not just to scientists, but to society. Our aim has been to write a book which itself takes a scientific

1 See www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/.
standpoint—one foot inside the boundary of the known, the other just outside—and encourages the reader to do the same.

The authors are indebted to the many supportive and critical readers of the first edition of this book who have supplied us over the last ten years with a stream of comments and corrections, hearty encouragements and stern rebukes. All were carefully noted and none was overlooked while we were writing this edition. In many cases these contributions helped us to correct errors or make other improvements to the text. We would also like to acknowledge the support and guidance of the editorial team at OUP, and again to recognize the seminal contribution of the man who first nurtured the vision that organic chemistry could be taught with a book like this, Michael Rodgers. The time spent on the preparation of this edition was made available only with the forbearance of our families, friends and research groups, and we thank all of them for their patience and understanding.

Changes for this edition

In the decade since the publication of the first edition of this book it has become clear that some aspects of our original approach were in need of revision, some chapters in need of updating with material which has gained in significance over those years, and others in need of shortening. We have taken into account a consistent criticism from readers that the early chapters of the first edition were too detailed for new students, and have made substantial changes to the material in Chapters 4, 8, and 12, shifting the emphasis towards explanation and away from detail more suitably found in specialised texts. Every chapter has been rewritten to improve clarity and new explanations and examples have been used widely. The style, location, and content of the spectroscopy chapters (3, 13, 18, and 31) have been revised to strengthen the links with material appearing nearby in the book. Concepts such as conjugate addition and regioselectivity, which previously lacked coherent presentation, now have their own chapters (22 and 24). In some sections of the first edition, groups of chapters were used to present related material: these chapter groups have now been condensed—so, for example, Chapters 25 and 26 on enolate chemistry replace four previous chapters, Chapters 31 and 32 on cyclic molecules replace three chapters, Chapter 36 on rearrangements and fragmentations replaces two chapters, and Chapter 42 on the organic chemistry of life replaces three chapters (the former versions of which are available online). Three chapters placed late in the first edition have been moved forward and revised to emphasize links between their material and the enolate chemistry of Chapters 25 and 26, thus Chapter 27 deals with double-bond stereocontrol in the context of organo-main group chemistry, and Chapters 29 and 30, addressing aromatic heterocycles, now reinforce the link between many of the mechanisms characteristic of these compounds and those of the carbonyl addition and condensation reactions discussed in the previous chapters. Earlier discussion of heterocycles also allows a theme of cyclic molecules and transition states to develop throughout Chapters 29–36, and matches more closely the typical order of material in undergraduate courses.

Some fields have inevitably advanced considerably in the last 10 years: the chapters on organometallic chemistry (40) and asymmetric synthesis (41) have received the most extensive revision, and are now placed consecutively to allow the essential role of organometallic catalysis in asymmetric synthesis to come to the fore. Throughout the book, new examples, especially from the recent literature of drug synthesis, have been used to illustrate the reactions being discussed.

---

Organic chemistry and this book

You can tell from the title that this book tells you about organic chemistry. But it tells you more than that: it tells you how we know about organic chemistry. It tells you facts, but it also teaches you how to find facts out. It tells you about reactions, and teaches you how to predict which reactions will work; it tells you about molecules, and it teaches you how to work out ways of making them.

We said ‘it tells’ in that last paragraph. Maybe we should have said ‘we tell’ because we want to speak to you through our words so that you can see how we think about organic chemistry and to encourage you to develop your own ideas. We expect you to notice that three people have written this book, and that they don’t all think or write in the same way. That is as it should be. Organic chemistry is too big and important a subject to be restricted by dogmatic rules. Different chemists think in different ways about many aspects of organic chemistry and in many cases it is not yet, and may never be, possible to be sure who is right. In many cases it doesn’t matter anyway.

We may refer to the history of chemistry from time to time but we are usually going to tell you about organic chemistry as it is now. We will develop the ideas slowly, from simple and fundamental ones using small molecules to complex ideas and large molecules. We promise one thing. We are not going to pull the wool over your eyes by making things artificially simple and avoiding the awkward questions. We aim to be honest and share both our delight in good complete explanations and our puzzlement at inadequate ones.

The chapters

So how are we going to do this? The book starts with a series of chapters on the structures and reactions of simple molecules. You will meet the way structures are determined and the theory that explains those structures. It is vital that you realize that theory is used to explain what is known by experiment and only then to predict what is unknown. You will meet mechanisms—the dynamic language used by chemists to talk about reactions—and of course some reactions.

The book starts with an introductory section of four chapters:

1. What is organic chemistry?
2. Organic structures
3. Determining organic structures
4. Structure of molecules

Chapter 1 is a ‘rough guide’ to the subject—it will introduce the major areas where organic chemistry plays a role, and set the scene by showing you some snapshots of a few landmarks. In Chapter 2 you will look at the way in which we present diagrams of molecules on the printed page. Organic chemistry is a visual, three-dimensional subject and the way you draw molecules shows how you think about them. We want you too to draw molecules in the best way possible. It is just as easy to draw them well as to draw them in an old-fashioned or inaccurate way.

Then in Chapter 3, before we come to the theory which explains molecular structure, we shall introduce you to the experimental techniques which tell us about molecular structure. This means studying the interactions between molecules and radiation by spectroscopy—using the whole electromagnetic spectrum from X-rays to radio waves. Only then, in Chapter 4, will we go behind the scenes and look at the theories of why atoms combine in the ways they do. Experiment comes before explanation. The spectroscopic methods of Chapter 3 will still be telling the truth in a hundred years’ time, but the theories of Chapter 4 will look quite dated by then.
We could have titled those three chapters:

2. What shapes do organic molecules have?
3. How do we know they have those shapes?
4. Why do they have those shapes?

You need to have a grasp of the answers to these three questions before you start the study of organic reactions. That is exactly what happens next. We introduce organic reaction mechanisms in Chapter 5. Any kind of chemistry studies reactions—the transformations of molecules into other molecules. The dynamic process by which this happens is called mechanism and is the grammar of organic chemistry—the way that one molecule can change into another. We want you to start learning and using this language straight away so in Chapter 6 we apply it to one important class of reaction. We therefore have:

5. Organic reactions
6. Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group

Chapter 6 reveals how we are going to subdivide organic chemistry. We shall use a mechanistic classification rather than a structural classification and explain one type of reaction rather than one type of compound in each chapter. In the rest of the book most of the chapters describe types of reaction in a mechanistic way. Here is a selection from the first half of the book:

9. Using organometallic reagents to make C–C bonds
10. Nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group
11. Nucleophilic substitution at C=O with loss of carbonyl oxygen
15. Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon
17. Elimination reactions
19. Electrophilic addition to alkenes
20. Formation and reactions of enols and enolates
21. Electrophilic aromatic substitution
22. Conjugate addition and nucleophilic aromatic substitution

Interspersed with these chapters are others on physical aspects of molecular structure and reactivity, stereochemistry, and structural determination, which allow us to show you how we know what we are telling you is true and to explain reactions intelligently.

7. Delocalization and conjugation
8. Acidity, basicity, and pK_a
12. Equilibria, rates, and mechanisms
13. 1H NMR: proton nuclear magnetic resonance
14. Stereochemistry
16. Conformational analysis
18. Review of spectroscopic methods

By the time we reach the end of Chapter 22 you will have met most of the important ways in which organic molecules react with one another, and we will then spend two chapters revisiting some of the reactions you have met before in two chapters on selectivity: how to get the reaction you want to happen and avoid the reaction you don’t.

23. Chemoselectivity and protecting groups
24. Regioselectivity

The materials are now in place for us to show you how to make use of the reaction mechanisms you have seen. We spend four chapters explaining some ways of using carbonyl chemistry and the chemistry of Si, S, and P to make C–C and C=C bonds. We then bring this all together with a chapter which gives you the tools to work out how you might best set about making any particular molecule.
25. Alkylation of enolates
26. Reactions of enolates with carbonyl compounds: the aldol and Claisen reactions
27. Sulfur, silicon, and phosphorus in organic chemistry
28. Retrosynthetic analysis

Most organic compounds contain rings, and many cyclic structures entail one of two aspects which are rather special: aromaticity and well-defined conformations. The next group of chapters leads you through the chemistry of ring-containing compounds to the point where we have the tools to explain why even acyclic molecules react to give products with certain spatial features.

29. Aromatic heterocycles 1: reactions
30. Aromatic heterocycles 2: synthesis
31. Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics
32. Stereoselectivity in cyclic molecules
33. Diastereoselectivity

We said that Chapter 22 marks the point where most of the important ways in which molecules react together have been introduced—most but not all. For the next section of the book we survey a range of rather less common but extremely important alternative mechanisms, finishing with a chapter that tells you how we can find out what mechanism a reaction follows.

34. Pericyclic reactions 1: cycloadditions
35. Pericyclic reactions 2: sigmatropic and electrocyclic reactions
36. Participation, rearrangement, and fragmentation
37. Radical reactions
38. Synthesis and reactions of carbenes
39. Determining reaction mechanisms

The last few chapters of the book take you right into some of the most challenging roles that organic chemistry has been called on to play, and in many cases tell you about chemistry discovered only in the last few years. The reactions in these chapters have been used to make the most complex molecules ever synthesized, and to illuminate the way that organic chemistry underpins life itself.

40. Organometallic chemistry
41. Asymmetric synthesis
42. Organic chemistry of life
43. Organic chemistry today

‘Connections’ sections

That’s a linear list of 43 chapters, but chemistry is not a linear subject! It is impossible to work through the whole field of organic chemistry simply by starting at the beginning and working through to the end, introducing one new topic at a time, because chemistry is a network of interconnecting ideas. But, unfortunately, a book is, by nature, a beginning-to-end sort of thing. We have arranged the chapters in a progression of difficulty as far as is possible, but to help you find your way around we have included at the beginning of each chapter a ‘Connections’ section. This tells you three things divided among three columns:

(a) The ‘Building on’ column: what you should be familiar with before reading the chapter—in other words, which previous chapters relate directly to the material within the chapter.
(b) The ‘Arriving at’ column: a guide to what you will find within the chapter.
(c) The ‘Looking forward to’ column: signposting which chapters later in the book fill out and expand the material in the chapter.
The first time you read a chapter, you should really make sure you have read any chapter mentioned under (a). When you become more familiar with the book you will find that the links highlighted in (a) and (c) will help you see how chemistry interconnects with itself.

Boxes and margin notes

The other things you should look out for throughout the text are the margin notes and boxes. There are four sorts:

- The most important box looks like this. Anything in this sort of box is a key concept or a summary. It's the sort of thing you would do well to hold in your mind as you read or to note down as you learn.

- Boxes like this will contain additional examples, amusing background information, and similar interesting, but maybe inessential, material. The first time you read a chapter, you might want to miss out this sort of box, and only read them later on to flesh out some of the main themes of the chapter.

Online support

Organic structures and organic reactions are three-dimensional (3D), and as a complement to the necessarily two-dimensional representations in this book we have developed a comprehensive online resource to allow you to appreciate the material in three dimensions. ChemTube3D contains interactive 3D animations and structures, with supporting information, for some of the most important topics in organic chemistry, to help you master the concepts presented in this book. Online resources are flagged on the pages to which they relate by an icon in the margin. Each web page contains some information about the reaction and an intuitive interactive reaction scheme that controls the display. 3D curly arrows indicate the reaction mechanism, and the entire sequence from starting materials via transition state to products is displayed with animated bond-breaking and forming, and animated charges and lone pairs. The entire process is under the control of you, the user, and can be viewed in three dimensions from any angle. The resizable window button produces a larger window with a range of control options and the molecular photo booth allows you to make a permanent record of the view you want.

ChemTube3D uses Jmol to display the animations so users can interact with the animated 3D structures using the pop-up menu or console using only a web browser. It is ideal for personalized learning and open-ended investigation is possible. We suggest that you make use of the interactive resources once you have read the relevant section of the book to consolidate your understanding of chemistry and enhance your appreciation of the importance of spatial arrangements.

Substantial modifications were made in the writing of this new edition, including the loss or contraction of four chapters found towards the end of the first edition. To preserve this material for future use, the following four chapters from the first edition are available for download from the book’s website at www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/:

- The chemistry of life
- Mechanisms in biological chemistry
- Natural products
- Polymerization
Further reading

At the end of each chapter, you may find yourself wanting to know more about the material it covers. We have given a collection of suggested places to look for this material—other books, or reviews in the chemical literature, or even some original research papers. There are thousands of examples in this book, and in most cases we have not directed you to the reports of the original work—this can usually be found by a simple electronic database search. Instead, we have picked out publications which seem most interesting, or relevant. If you want an encyclopaedia of organic chemistry, this is not the book for you. You would be better turning to one such as March's Advanced Organic Chemistry (M. B. Smith and J. March, 6th edn, Wiley, 2007), which contains thousands of references.

Problems

You can’t learn all of organic chemistry—there’s just too much of it. You can learn trivial things like the names of compounds but that doesn’t help you understand the principles behind the subject. You have to understand the principles because the only way to tackle organic chemistry is to learn to work it out. That is why we have provided problems, which you can access from the book’s web site. They are to help you discover if you have understood the material presented in each chapter.

If a chapter is about a certain type of organic reaction, say elimination reactions (Chapter 19), the chapter itself will describe the various ways (‘mechanisms’) by which the reaction can occur and it will give definitive examples of each mechanism. In Chapter 19 there are three mechanisms and about 60 examples altogether. You might think that this is rather a lot but there are in fact millions of examples known of these three mechanisms and Chapter 19 barely scrapes the surface. The problems will help you make sure that your understanding is sound, and that it will stand up to exposure to the rigours of explaining real-life chemistry.

In general, the 10–15 problems at the end of each chapter start easy and get more difficult. They come in two or three sorts. The first, generally shorter and easier, allow you to revise the material in that chapter. They might revisit examples from the chapter to check that you can use the ideas in familiar situations. The next few problems might develop specific ideas from different parts of the chapter, asking you, for example, why one compound reacts in one way while a similar one behaves quite differently. Finally, you will find some more challenging problems asking you to extend the ideas to unfamiliar molecules, and, especially later in the book, to situations which draw on the material from more than one chapter.

The end-of-chapter problems should set you on your way but they are not the end of the journey to understanding. You are probably reading this text as part of a university course and you should find out what kind of examination problems your university uses and practise them too. Your tutor will be able to advise you on suitable problems to help you at each stage of your development.

The solutions manual

The problems would be of little use to you if you could not check your answers. For maximum benefit, you need to tackle some or all of the problems as soon as you have finished each chapter without looking at the answers. Then you need to compare your suggestions with ours. You will find our suggestions in the accompanying solutions manual, where each problem is discussed in some detail. (You can buy the solutions manual separately from this book.) The purpose of the problem is first stated or explained. Then, if the problem is a simple one, the answer is given. If the problem is more complex, a discussion of possible answers follows with some comments on the value of each. There may be a reference to the source of the problem so that you can read further if you wish.
**Colour**

If you have flicked forward through the pages of this book, you will already have noticed something unusual: almost all of the chemical structures are shown in red. This is quite intentional: emphatic red underlines the message that structures are more important than words in organic chemistry. But sometimes small parts of structures are in other colours: here are two examples from p. 12, where we talk about organic compounds containing elements other than C and H.

Why are the atom labels black? Because we wanted them to stand out from the rest of the molecule. In general you will see black used to highlight the important details of a molecule—they may be the groups taking part in a reaction, or something that has changed as a result of the reaction, as in these examples from Chapters 9 and 17.

We shall often use black to emphasize ‘curly arrows’, devices that show the movement of electrons, and whose use you will learn about in Chapter 5. Here are examples from Chapters 11 and 22: notice black also helps the ‘+’ and ‘−’ charges to stand out.

Occasionally, we shall use other colours, such as green, orange, or brown, to highlight points of secondary importance. This example is part of a reaction taken from Chapter 19: we want to show that a molecule of water (H₂O) is formed. The green atoms show where the water comes from. Notice black curly arrows and a new black bond.

Other colours come in when things get more complicated—in this Chapter 21 example, we want to show two possible outcomes of a reaction: the brown and the orange arrows show the two alternatives, with the green highlighting the deuterium atom remaining in both cases.
And, in Chapter 14, colour helps us highlight the difference between carbon atoms carrying four different groups and those with only three different groups. The message is: if you see something in a colour other than red, take special note—the colour is there for a reason.

Amino acids are chiral except glycine—plane of paper is a plane of symmetry through C, N, and CO$_2$H.
What is organic chemistry?

Organic chemistry and you

You are already a highly skilled organic chemist. As you read these words, your eyes are using an organic compound (retinal) to convert visible light into nerve impulses. When you picked up this book, your muscles were doing chemical reactions on sugars to give you the energy you needed. As you understand, gaps between your brain cells are being bridged by simple organic molecules (neurotransmitter amines) so that nerve impulses can be passed around your brain. And you did all that without consciously thinking about it. You do not yet understand these processes in your mind as well as you can carry them out in your brain and body. You are not alone there. No organic chemist, however brilliant, understands the detailed chemical working of the human mind or body very well.

We, the authors, include ourselves in this generalization, but we are going to show you in this book what enormous strides have been taken in the understanding of organic chemistry since the science came into being in the early years of the nineteenth century. Organic chemistry began as a tentative attempt to understand the chemistry of life. It has grown into the confident basis of worldwide activities that feed, clothe, and cure millions of people without their even being aware of the role of chemistry in their lives. Chemists cooperate with physicists and mathematicians to understand how molecules behave and with biologists to understand how interactions between molecules underlie all of life. The enlightenment brought by chemistry in the twentieth century amounted to a revolution in our understanding of the molecular world, but in these first decades of the twenty-first century the revolution is still far from complete. We aim not to give you the measurements of the skeleton of a dead science but to equip you to understand the conflicting demands of an adolescent one.

Like all sciences, chemistry has a unique place in our pattern of understanding of the universe. It is the science of molecules. But organic chemistry is something more. It literally creates itself as it grows. Of course we need to study the molecules of nature both because they are interesting in their own right and because their functions are important to our lives. Organic chemistry has always been able to illuminate the mechanisms of life by making new molecules that give information not available from the molecules actually present in living things.

This creation of new molecules has given us new materials such as plastics to make things with, new dyes to colour our clothes, new perfumes to wear, new drugs to cure diseases. Some people think some of these activities are unnatural and their products dangerous or unwholesome. But these new molecules are built by humans from other molecules found naturally on earth using the skills inherent in our natural brains. Birds build nests; people build houses. Which is unnatural? To the organic chemist this is a meaningless distinction. There are toxic compounds and nutritious ones, stable compounds and reactive ones—but there is only one type of chemistry: it goes on both inside our brains and bodies, and also in our flasks and reactors, born from the ideas in our minds and the skill in our hands. We are not going to set ourselves up as moral judges in any way. We believe it is right to try and understand the world

11-cis-retinal absorbs light and allows vision

serotonin human neurotransmitter

We are going to illustrate this chapter with the structures of the organic compounds we talk about. If you do not understand the diagrams, just read the text. Explanation of the rest is on its way.
about us as best we can and to use that understanding creatively. This is what we want to share with you.

**Organic compounds**

Organic chemistry started as the chemistry of life, when that was thought to be different from the chemistry in the laboratory. Then it became the chemistry of carbon compounds, especially those found in coal. But now it is both. It is the chemistry of the compounds formed by carbon and other elements such as are found in living things, in the products of living things, and wherever else carbon is found.

The most abundant organic compounds are those present in living things and those formed over millions of years from dead things. In earlier times, the organic compounds known from nature were those in the ‘essential oils’ that could be distilled from plants and the alkaloids that could be extracted from crushed plants with acid. Menthol is a famous example of a flavouring compound from the essential oil of spearmint and *cis*-jasmine an example of a perfume distilled from jasmine flowers.

Natural products have long been used to cure diseases, and in the sixteenth century one became famous—quinine was extracted from the bark of the South American cinchona tree and used to treat fevers, especially malaria. The Jesuits who did this work (the remedy was known as ‘Jesuit’s bark’) did not of course know what the structure of quinine was, but now we do. More than that, the molecular structure of quinine has inspired the design of modern drug molecules which treat malaria much more effectively than quinine itself.

The main reservoir of chemicals available to the nineteenth century chemists was coal. Distillation of coal to give gas for lighting and heating (mainly hydrogen and carbon monoxide) also gave a brown tar rich in aromatic compounds such as benzene, pyridine, phenol, aniline, and thiophene.

Phenol was used in the nineteenth century by Lister as an antiseptic in surgery, and aniline became the basis for the dyestuffs industry. It was this that really started the search for new organic compounds made by chemists rather than by nature. In 1856, while trying to make quinine from aniline, an 18-year old British chemist, William Perkin, managed to produce a mauve residue, mauveine, which revolutionized the dyeing of cloth and gave birth to the synthetic dyestuffs industry. A related dyestuff of this kind—still available—is Bismarck Brown: much of the early work on dyes was done in Germany.

In the twentieth century oil overtook coal as the main source of bulk organic compounds so that simple hydrocarbons like methane (CH₄, ‘natural gas’), propane, and butane (CH₃CH₂CH₃ and CH₃CH(CH₃)CH₃, ‘calor gas’ or LPG) became available for fuel. At the same time chemists began the search for new molecules from new sources such as fungi, corals, and bacteria, and two organic chemical industries developed in parallel—‘bulk’ and
‘fine’ chemicals. Bulk chemicals like paints and plastics are usually based on simple molecules produced in multitonne quantities while fine chemicals such as drugs, perfumes, and flavouring materials are produced in smaller quantities but much more profitably.

At the time of writing there were over 16 million organic compounds known. How many more might there be? Even counting only moderately sized molecules, containing fewer than about 30 carbon atoms (about the size of the mauveine structure above), it has been calculated that something in the region of $1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000$, stable compounds are possible. There aren’t enough carbon atoms in the universe to make them all.

Among the 16 million that have been made, there are all kinds of molecules with amazingly varied properties. What do they look like? They may be crystalline solids, oils, waxes, plastics, elastics, mobile or volatile liquids, or gases. Familiar ones include sugar, a cheap natural compound isolated from plants as hard white crystals when pure, and petrol, a mixture of colourless, volatile, flammable hydrocarbons. Isooctane is a typical example and gives its name to the octane rating of petrol.

The compounds need not lack colour. Indeed we can soon dream up a rainbow of organic compounds covering the whole spectrum, not to mention black and brown. In this table we have avoided dyestuffs and have chosen compounds as varied in structure as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>dark red hexagonal plates</td>
<td>3-methoxybenzocycloheptatriene-2-one</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>amber needles</td>
<td>dichlorodicyanoquinone (DDQ)</td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>toxic yellow explosive gas</td>
<td>diazomethane</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>green prisms with a steel-blue lustre</td>
<td>9-nitrosojulolidine</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>deep blue liquid with a peppery smell</td>
<td>azulene</td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purple</td>
<td>deep blue gas condensing to a purple solid</td>
<td>nitrosotrifluoromethane</td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Colour is not the only characteristic by which we recognize compounds. All too often it is their odour that lets us know they are around. There are some quite foul organic compounds too; the infamous stench of the skunk is a mixture of two thiols—sulfur compounds containing SH groups.

But perhaps the worst smell ever recorded was that which caused the evacuation of the German city of Freiburg in 1889. Attempts to make thioacetone by the cracking of trithioacetone gave rise to ‘an offensive smell which spread rapidly over a great area of the town causing fainting, vomiting, and a panic evacuation...the laboratory work was abandoned’.

It was perhaps foolhardy for workers at an Esso research station to repeat the experiment of cracking trithioacetone south of Oxford in 1967. Let them take up the story. ‘Recently we found ourselves with an odour problem beyond our worst expectations. During early experiments, a stopper jumped from a bottle of residues, and, although replaced at once, resulted in an immediate complaint of nausea and sickness from colleagues working in a building two hundred yards away. Two of our chemists who had done no more than investigate the cracking of minute amounts of thioacetone found themselves the object of hostile stares in a restaurant and suffered the humiliation of having a waitress spray the area around them with a deodorant. The odours defied the expected effects of dilution since workers in the laboratory did not find the odours intolerable ... and genuinely denied responsibility since they were working in closed systems. To convince them otherwise, they were dispersed with other observers around the laboratory, at distances up to a quarter of a mile, and one drop of either acetone gem-dithiol or the mother liquors from crude thioacetone crystallizations were placed on a watch glass in a fume cupboard. The odour was detected downwind in seconds.’

There are two candidates for this dreadful smell—propane dithiol (called acetone gem-dithiol above) or 4-methyl-4-sulfanylpentan-2-one. It is unlikely that anyone else will be brave enough to resolve the controversy.

But nasty smells have their uses. The natural gas piped into homes contains small amounts of deliberately added sulfur compounds such as tert-butyl thiol (CH₃)₃CSH. When we say small, we mean very small—humans can detect one part in 50,000,000,000 parts of natural gas.

Other compounds have delightful odours. To redeem the honour of sulfur compounds we must cite the truffle, whose pigs can smell through a metre of soil and whose taste and smell is so delightful that truffles cost more than their weight in gold. Damascenones are responsible for the smell of roses. If you smell one drop you will be disappointed, as it smells rather like turpentine or camphor, but next morning you, and the clothes you were wearing, will smell powerfully of roses. Many smells develop on dilution.

Humans are not the only creatures with a sense of smell. We can find mates using all our senses, but insects cannot do this. They are small in a crowded world and they find those of the opposite sex of their own species by smell. Most insects produce volatile compounds that can be picked up by a potential mate in incredibly weak concentrations. Only 1.5 mg of serricornin, the sex pheromone of the cigarette beetle, could be isolated from 65,000 female beetles—so there isn’t much in each beetle. Nevertheless, the slightest whiff of it causes the males to gather and attempt frenzied copulation. The sex pheromone of the beetle Popilia japonica, also given off by the females, has been made by chemists. As little as 5 μg (micrograms, note!) was more effective than four virgin females in attracting the males.

The pheromone of the gypsy moth, disparlure, was identified from a few μg isolated from the moths: as little as 2 × 10⁻¹² g is active as a lure for the males in field tests. The three pheromones we have mentioned are available commercially for the specific trapping of these destructive insect pests.
Don’t suppose that the females always do all the work; both male and female olive flies produce pheromones that attract the other sex. The remarkable thing is that one mirror image of the molecule attracts the males while the other attracts the females! Mirror image isomers of a molecule called frontalin are also emitted by male elephants; female elephants can tell the age and appeal of a potential mate from the amount of each isomer he produces.

What about taste? Take the grapefruit. The main flavour comes from another sulfur compound and human beings can detect $2 \times 10^{-5}$ parts per billion of this compound. This is an almost unimaginably small amount equal to $10^{-4}$ mg per tonne or a drop, not in a bucket, but in a fairly large lake. Why evolution should have left us so extraordinarily sensitive to grapefruit, we leave you to imagine.

For a nasty taste, we should mention ‘bittering agents’, put into dangerous household substances like toilet cleaner to stop children drinking them by accident. Notice that this complex organic compound is actually a salt—it has positively charged nitrogen and negatively charged oxygen atoms—and this makes it soluble in water.

Other organic compounds have strange effects on humans. Various ‘drugs’ such as alcohol and cocaine are taken in various ways to make people temporarily happy. They have their dangers. Too much alcohol leads to a lot of misery and any cocaine at all may make you a slave for life.

Again, let’s not forget other creatures. Cats seem to be able to go to sleep anywhere, at any time. This surprisingly simple compound, isolated from the cerebrospinal fluid of cats, appears to be part of their sleep-control mechanism. It makes them, or rats, or humans fall asleep immediately.
This compound and disparlure (above) are both derivatives of fatty acids. Fatty acids in the diet are a popular preoccupation, and the good and bad qualities of saturates, monounsaturates, and polyunsaturates are continually in the news: one of the many dietary molecules reckoned to have demonstrable anticancer activity is CLA (conjugated linoleic acid), which is found in dairy products and also, most abundantly, you may be interested to know, in kangaroo meat.

Resveratrole is another dietary component with beneficial effects: it may be responsible for the apparent ability of red wine to prevent heart disease. It is a quite different sort of organic compound, with two benzene rings.

For a third edible molecule, how about vitamin C? This is an essential factor in your diet—that is why it is called a vitamin—and in the diet of other primates, guinea-pigs, and fruit bats (other mammals possess the biochemical machinery to make it themselves). The disease scurvy, a degeneration of soft tissues from which sailors on the long voyages of past centuries suffered, results from a lack of vitamin C. It also is a universal antioxidant, scavenging for rogue reactive radicals and protecting damage to DNA. Some people think an extra large intake may even protect against the common cold.

**Organic chemistry and industry**

Vitamin C is manufactured on a huge scale by Roche, a Swiss company. All over the world there are chemistry-based companies making organic molecules on scales varying from a few kilograms to thousands of tonnes per year. This is good news for students of organic chemistry: knowing how molecules behave and how to make them is a skill in demand, and it is an international job market.

The petrochemicals industry consumes huge amounts of crude oil: the largest refinery in the world, in Jamnagar, India, processes 200 million litres of crude oil every day. An alarmingly large proportion of this is still just burnt as fuel, but some of it is purified or converted into organic compounds for use in the rest of the chemical industry.

Some simple compounds are made both from oil and from plants. The ethanol used as a starting material to make other compounds in industry is largely made by the catalytic hydration of ethylene from oil. But ethanol is also used as a fuel, particularly in Brazil, where it is made by fermentation of sugar cane. Plants are extremely powerful organic chemical factories (with sugar cane being among the most efficient of all of them). Photosynthesis extracts carbon dioxide directly from the air and uses solar energy to reduce it to form less oxygen-rich organic compounds from which energy can be re-extracted by combustion. Biodiesel is made in a similar way from the fatty acid components of plant oils.

Plastics and polymers take much of the production of the petrochemical industry in the form of monomers such as styrene, acrylates, and vinyl chloride. The products of this enormous industry are everything made of plastic, including solid plastics for household goods and furniture, fibres for clothes (over 25 million tonnes per annum), elastic polymers for car tyres, light bubble-filled polymers for packing, and so on. Worldwide 100 million tonnes of polymers are made per year and PVC manufacture alone employs over 50,000 people to make over 20 million tonnes per year.

Many adhesives work by polymerization of monomers, which can be applied as a simple solution. You can glue almost anything with ‘superglue’, a polymer of methyl cyanoacrylate.

Washing-up bowls are made of the polymer polyethylene but the detergent you put in them belongs to another branch of the chemical industry—companies like Unilever and Procter and Gamble produce detergent, cleaners, bleaches, and polishes, along with soaps, gels, cosmetics, and shaving foams. These products may smell of lemon, lavender, or sandalwood but they too mostly come from the oil industry.

Products of this kind tend to underplay their petrochemical origins and claim affinity with the perceived freshness and cleanliness of the natural world. They also try to tell us, after a
fashion, what they contain. Try this example—the list of contents from a well-known brand of shower gel, which we are reassuringly told is ‘packed with natural stuff’ (including 10 ‘real’ lemons) and contains ‘100% pure and natural lemon and tea tree essential oils’.

It doesn’t all make sense to us, but here is a possible interpretation. We certainly hope this book will set you on the path of understanding the sense (and the nonsense!) of this sort of thing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Chemical meaning</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aqua</td>
<td>H₂O</td>
<td>solvent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sodium laureth sulfate</td>
<td>C₁₂H₂₅(O⁻)OSO₃Na</td>
<td>detergent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cocamide DEA</td>
<td>C₁₁H₂₃O₄N</td>
<td>foaming agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrus medica limonum peel oil</td>
<td>mainly α-pinene</td>
<td>scent, appeal to customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melaleuca alternifolia leaf oil</td>
<td>mainly terpinen-4-ol</td>
<td>scent, appeal to customer, possibly antiseptic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glycerin</td>
<td>HO - OH - OH</td>
<td>cosolvent; moisturizer; ensures smoothness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cocamidopropyl betaine</td>
<td>C₁₁H₂₄O₄N</td>
<td>detergent and anti-electrostatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sodium chloride</td>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>control solubility of Na⁺-based detergents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lactic acid</td>
<td>HO - CO₂H</td>
<td>acidifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>styrene acrylates copolymer</td>
<td>PhCO₂R⁻</td>
<td>film former</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetrasodium glutamate diacetate</td>
<td>NaO₂C⁻CO₂Na</td>
<td>chelator, to prevent formation of insoluble scum in hard water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sodium benzoate</td>
<td>CO₂Na</td>
<td>preservative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The particular detergents, surfactants, acids, viscosity controllers, and so on are chosen to blend together to give a smooth gel. The result should feel, smell, and look attractive and work as an effective detergent and shampoo (some of the compounds are added for their moisturizing and anti-electrostatic effect on hair). The yellow colour and lemon scent are considered fresh and clean by the customer. Several of the ingredients are added as pure compounds; the ones which aren’t are mixtures of isomers or polymers; the most impure are the mixtures of hydrocarbons referred to as the ‘pure and natural’ essential oils. Is it ‘packed with natural stuff’? Indeed it is. It all comes from natural sources, the principal one being decomposed carboniferous forests trapped for millions of years underground.

The coloration of manufactured goods is a huge business, with a range of intense colours required for dyeing cloth, colouring plastic and paper, painting walls, and so on. Leaders in this area are companies such as Akzo Nobel, which had sales of €14.6 bn in 2010. One of the most commonly used dyestuffs is indigo, an ancient dye that used to be isolated from plants but is now made from petrochemical feedstocks. It is the colour of blue jeans. More modern
dyestuffs can be represented by the benzodifuranones developed by ICI, which are used for colouring synthetic fabrics like polyesters (red), the phthalocyanine–metal complexes (typically blue or green), or the ‘high-performance’ red pigment DPP (1,4-diketopyrrolo[3,4-c]pyr-roles) series developed by Ciba-Geigy.

The scent of the shower gel above came from a mixture of plant extracts with the pure compound (in fact a mixture of two isomers) citral. The big fragrance and flavouring companies (such as Firmenich, International Flavors and Fragrances, and Givaudan) deal in both naturals and synthetics—‘naturals’ are mixtures of compounds extracted from plants—leaves, seeds, and flowers. ‘Synthetics’ are single compounds, sometimes present in plant-derived sources and sometime newly designed molecules, which are mixed with each other and with ‘naturals’ to build up a scent. A typical perfume will contain 5–10% fragrance molecules in an ethanol/water (about 90:10) mixture. So the perfumery industry needs a very large amount of ethanol and, you might think, not much perfumery material. In fact, important fragrances like jasmine are produced on a >10,000 tonnes per annum scale. The cost of a pure perfume ingredient like cis-jasmone (p. 2), the main ingredient of jasmine, may be several hundred pounds, dollars, or euros per gram.

**The world of perfumery**

Perfume chemists use extraordinary language to describe their achievements: ‘PacoRabanne pour homme was created to reproduce the effect of a summer walk in the open air among the hills of Provence: the smell of herbs, rosemary and thyme, and sparkling freshness with cool sea breezes mingling with warm soft Alpine air. To achieve the required effect, the perfumer blended herbaceous oils with woody accords and the synthetic aroma chemical dimethylheptanol, which has a penetrating but indefinable freshness associated with open air or freshly washed linen.’

Chemists produce synthetic flavourings such as ‘smoky bacon’ and even ‘chocolate’. Meaty flavours come from simple heterocycles such as alkyl pyrazines (present in coffee as well as roast meat) and furonol, originally found in pineapples. Compounds such as corylone and maltol give caramel and meaty flavours. Mixtures of these and other synthetic compounds can be ‘tuned’ to taste like many roasted foods from fresh bread to coffee and barbecued meat. Some flavouring compounds are also perfumes and may also be used as an intermediate in making other compounds. Vanillin is the main component of the flavour of vanilla, but is manufactured on a large scale for many other uses too.
Food chemistry includes much larger-scale items than flavours. Sweeteners such as sugar itself are isolated from plants on an enormous scale. You saw sucrose on p. 3, but other sweeteners such as saccharin (discovered in 1879!) and aspartame (1965) are made on a sizeable scale. Aspartame is a compound of two of the natural amino acids present in all living things and over 10,000 tonnes per annum are made by the NutraSweet company.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{aspartame (‘NutraSweet’)} & \\
& \text{is made from two amino acids –}
\end{align*}
\]

One of the great revolutions of modern life has been the expectation that humans will survive diseases because of a specifically designed treatment. In the developed world, people live to old age because infections which used to kill can now be cured or kept at bay. Antibiotics are our defence against bacteria, preventing them from multiplying. One of the most successful of these is Beecham amoxycillin, which was developed by SmithKline. The four-membered ring at the heart of the molecule is the β-lactam, which targets the disease-causing bacteria. Medicinal chemists also protect us from the insidious threat of viruses which use the body’s own biochemistry to replicate. Tamiflu is a line of defence against the ever-present danger of a flu epidemic, while ritonavir is one of the most advanced drugs designed to prevent replication of HIV and to slow down or prevent the onset of AIDS.

The story of Tamiflu and how the ingenuity of chemists ensures a constant supply is related at the other end of this book, in Chapter 43.

The best-selling current drugs are largely designed to address the human body’s own failings. Sales of Lipitor and Nexium both topped $5bn in 2009, figures which serve to illustrate the financial scale of developing safe and effective new treatments. Lipitor is one of the class of drugs known as statins, widely prescribed to control cholesterol levels in older people. Nexium is a proton pump inhibitor, which works to reduce peptic and duodenal ulcers. Sales of Glivec (developed by Novartis and introduced in 2001) are far smaller, but to those suffering from certain cancers such as leukaemia it can be a lifesaver.
We cannot maintain our present high density of population in the developed world, nor deal with malnutrition in the developing world unless we preserve our food supply from attacks by insects and fungi and from competition by weeds. The world market for agrochemicals produced by multinationals such as Bayer CropScience and Syngenta is over £10bn per annum divided between herbicides, fungicides, and insecticides.

Many of the early agrochemicals were phased out as they were persistent environmental pollutants. Modern agrochemicals have to pass stringent environmental safety tests. The most famous modern insecticides are modelled on the plant-derived pyrethrins, stabilized against degradation in sunlight by chemical modification (the brown and green portions of decamethrin) and targeted to specific insects on specific crops. Decamethrin has a safety factor of >10,000 for mustard beetles over mammals, can be applied at only 10 grams per hectare (about one level tablespoon per football pitch), and leaves no significant environmental residue.

As you learn more chemistry, you will appreciate how remarkable it is that Nature should produce the three-membered rings in these compounds and that chemists should use them in bulk compounds to be sprayed on crops in fields. Even more remarkable in some ways are the fungicides based on a five-membered ring containing three nitrogen atoms—the triazole ring. These compounds inhibit an enzyme present in fungi but not in plants or animals. Fungal diseases are a real threat: as in the Irish potato famine of the nineteenth century, the various fungal blights, blotches, rots, rusts, smuts, and mildews can overwhelm any crop in a short time.

**Organic chemistry and the periodic table**

All the compounds we have shown you are built up on hydrocarbon (carbon and hydrogen) skeletons. Most have oxygen and/or nitrogen as well; some have sulfur and some phosphorus, and maybe the halogens (F, Cl, Br, and I). These are the main elements of organic chemistry.
But organic chemistry has also benefited from the exploration of (some would say take-over bid for) the rest of the periodic table. The organic chemistry of silicon, boron, lithium, tin, copper, zinc, and palladium has been particularly well studied and these elements are common constituents of ‘organic’ reagents used in the laboratory. You will meet many of them throughout this book. Butyllithium, trimethylsilyl chloride, tributyltin hydride, diethylzinc, and lithium dimethylcuprate provide examples.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{butyllithium} & \text{trimethylsilyl chloride} & \text{tributyltin hydride} & \text{diethylzinc} & \text{lithium dimethylcuprate} \\
&\text{Li} & \text{Si} & \text{Sn} & \text{Zn} & \text{Cu} & \text{Li} \\
&\text{BuLi} & \text{Me₃SiCl} & \text{Bu₃SnH} & \text{Et₂Zn} & \text{Me₂CuLi} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The halogens also appear in many life-saving drugs. Antiviral compounds such as fialuridine (which contains both F and I, as well as N and O) are essential for the fight against HIV and AIDS. They are modelled on natural compounds from nucleic acids. The naturally occurring cytotoxic (antitumour) agent halomon, extracted from red algae, contains Br and Cl.

The organic chemist’s periodic table would have to emphasize all of these elements and more—the table below highlights most of those elements in common use in organic reactions. New connections are being added all the time—before the end of the last century the organic chemistry of ruthenium, gold, and samarium was negligible; now reagents and catalysts incorporating these metals drive a wide range of important reactions.

\[
\text{halomon—naturally occurring antitumour agent}
\]

So where does inorganic chemistry end and organic chemistry begin? Would you say that the antiviral compound foscarnet was organic? It is a compound of carbon with the formula CPO₅Na₃ but it has no C–H bonds. And what about the important reagent tetrakis (triphenylphosphine)palladium? It has lots of hydrocarbon—12 benzene rings in fact—but the benzene rings are all joined to phosphorus atoms that are arranged in a square around the central palladium atom, so the molecule is held together by C–P and P–Pd bonds, not by a hydrocarbon skeleton. Although it has the very organic-looking formula C₇₂H₆₀P₄Pd, many people would say it is inorganic. But is it?

\[
\text{foscarnet—antiviral agent}
\]

\[
\text{tetrakistriphenylphosphine palladium—important catalyst}
\]

\[
\text{[(C₆H₅)₃P]₄Pd}
\]

\[
\text{(Ph₃P)₄Pd}
\]
The answer is that we don’t know and we don’t care. Strict boundaries between traditional disciplines are undesirable and meaningless. Chemistry continues across the old boundaries between organic chemistry and inorganic chemistry, organic chemistry and physical chemistry or materials, or organic chemistry and biochemistry. Be glad that the boundaries are indistinct as that means the chemistry is all the richer. This lovely molecule (Ph₃P)₄Pd belongs to chemistry.

**Organic chemistry and this book**

We have told you about organic chemistry’s history, the types of compounds it concerns itself with, the things it makes, and the elements it uses. Organic chemistry today is the study of the structure and reactions of compounds in nature, of compounds in the fossil reserves such as coal and oil, and of those compounds that can be made from them. These compounds will usually be constructed with a hydrocarbon framework but will also often have atoms such as O, N, S, P, Si, B, halogens, and metals attached to them. Organic chemistry is used in the making of plastics, paints, dyestuffs, clothes, foodstuffs, human and veterinary medicines, agrochemicals, and many other things. Now we can summarize all of these in a different way.

- The main components of organic chemistry as a discipline are:
  - structure determination—how to find out the structures of new compounds even if they are available only in invisibly small amounts
  - theoretical organic chemistry—how to understand these structures in terms of atoms and the electrons that bind them together
  - reaction mechanisms—how to find out how these molecules react with each other and how to predict their reactions
  - synthesis—how to design new molecules, and then make them
  - biological chemistry—how to find out what Nature does and how the structures of biologically active molecules are related to what they do.

This book is about all these things. It is about the structures of organic molecules and the reasons behind those structures. It is about the shapes of these molecules and how the shape relates to their function, especially in the context of biology. It explains how these structures and shapes are discovered. It tells you about the reactions the molecules undergo and, more importantly, how and why they behave in the way they do. It tells you about nature and about industry. It tells you how molecules are made and how you too can think about making molecules.

This is the landscape through which you are about to travel. And, as with any journey to somewhere new, exciting, and sometimes challenging, the first thing is to make sure you have at least some knowledge of the local language. Fortunately the language of organic chemistry couldn’t be simpler: it’s all pictures. The next chapter will get us communicating.

**Further reading**

Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
There are over 100 elements in the periodic table. Many molecules contain well over 100 atoms—palytoxin (a naturally occurring compound with potential anticancer activity), for example, contains 129 carbon atoms, 221 hydrogen atoms, 54 oxygen atoms, and 3 nitrogen atoms. It’s easy to see how chemical structures can display enormous variety, providing enough molecules to build even the most complicated living creatures.
But how can we understand what seems like a recipe for confusion? Faced with the collection of atoms we call a molecule, how can we make sense of what we see? This chapter will teach you how to interpret organic structures. It will also teach you how to draw organic molecules in a way that conveys all the necessary information and none of the superfluous.

**Hydrocarbon frameworks and functional groups**

As we explained in Chapter 1, organic chemistry is the study of compounds that contain carbon. Nearly all organic compounds also contain hydrogen; most also contain oxygen, nitrogen, or other elements. Organic chemistry concerns itself with the way in which these atoms are bonded together into stable molecular structures, and the way in which these structures change in the course of chemical reactions.

Some molecular structures are shown below. These molecules are all amino acids, the constituents of proteins. Look at the number of carbon atoms in each molecule and the way they are bonded together. Even within this small class of molecules there’s great variety—glycine and alanine have only two or three carbon atoms; phenylalanine has nine.

![Amino acid structures](image)

Lysine has a chain of atoms; tryptophan has rings.

In methionine the atoms are arranged in a single chain; in leucine the chain is branched. In proline, the chain bends back on itself to form a ring.

Yet all of these molecules have similar properties—they are all soluble in water, they are all both acidic and basic (amphoteric), they can all be joined with other amino acids to form proteins. This is because the chemistry of organic molecules depends much less on the number or the arrangement of carbon or hydrogen atoms than on the other types of atoms (O, N, S, P, Si...) in the molecule. We call parts of molecules containing small collections of these other atoms functional groups, simply because they are groups of atoms that determine the way the molecule works. All amino acids contain two functional groups: an amino (NH$_2$ or NH) group and a carboxylic acid (CO$_2$H) group (some contain other functional groups as well).
That isn’t to say the carbon atoms aren’t important; they just play quite a different role from those of the oxygen, nitrogen, and other atoms they are attached to. We can consider the chains and rings of carbon atoms we find in molecules as their skeletons, which support the functional groups and allow them to take part in chemical interactions, much as your skeleton supports your internal organs so they can interact with one another and work properly.

We will see later how the interpretation of organic structures as hydrocarbon frameworks supporting functional groups helps us to understand and rationalize the reactions of organic molecules. It also helps us to devise simple, clear ways of representing molecules on paper. You saw these structural diagrams in Chapter 1, and in the next section we shall teach you ways to draw (and ways not to draw) molecules—the handwriting of chemistry. This section is extremely important because it will teach you how to communicate chemistry, clearly and simply, throughout your life as a chemist.

Drawing molecules

Be realistic

Below is another organic structure—again, you may be familiar with the molecule it represents; it is a fatty acid commonly called linoleic acid.

We could also depict linoleic acid as

or as
You may well have seen diagrams like these last two in older books—they used to be easy to print (in the days before computers) because all the atoms were in a line and all the angles were 90°. But are they realistic? We will consider ways of determining the shapes and structures of molecules in more detail in Chapter 3, but the picture below shows the structure of linoleic acid determined by X-ray crystallography.

![X-ray structure of linoleic acid](image)

You can see that the chain of carbon atoms is not linear, but a zig-zag. Although our diagram is just a two-dimensional representation of this three-dimensional structure, it seems reasonable to draw it as a zig-zag too.

This gives us our first guideline for drawing organic structures.

- **Guideline 1**
  
  Draw chains of atoms as zig-zags.

Realism of course has its limits—the X-ray structure shows that the linoleic acid molecule is in fact slightly bent in the vicinity of the double bonds; we have taken the liberty of drawing it as a 'straight zig-zag'. Similarly, close inspection of crystal structures like this reveals that the angle of the zig-zag is about 109° when the carbon atom is not part of a double bond and 120° when it is. The 109° angle is the ‘tetrahedral angle’, the angle between two vertices of a tetrahedron when viewed from its centre. In Chapter 4 we shall look at why carbon atoms take up this particular arrangement of bonds. Our realistic drawing is a projection of a three-dimensional structure onto flat paper so we have to compromise.

**Be economical**

When we draw organic structures we try to be as realistic as we can be without putting in superfluous detail. Look at these three pictures.

![Images of Mona Lisa](image)

(1) is immediately recognizable as Leonardo da Vinci’s Mona Lisa. You may not recognize (2)—it’s also Leonardo da Vinci’s Mona Lisa—this time viewed from above. The frame is very ornate, but the picture tells us as much about the painting as our rejected linear and 90° angle
diagrams did about our fatty acid. They’re both correct—in their way—but sadly useless. What we need when we draw molecules is the equivalent of (3). It gets across the idea of the original, and includes all the detail necessary for us to recognize what it’s a picture of, and leaves out the rest. And it was quick to draw—this picture was drawn in less than 10 minutes: we haven’t got time to produce great works of art!

Because functional groups are the key to the chemistry of molecules, clear diagrams must emphasize the functional groups and let the hydrocarbon framework fade into the background. Compare the diagrams below:

The second structure is the way that most organic chemists would draw linoleic acid. Notice how the important carboxylic acid functional group stands out clearly and is no longer cluttered by all those Cs and Hs. The zig-zag pattern of the chain is much clearer too. And this structure is much quicker to draw than any of the previous ones!

To get this diagram from the one above we’ve done two things. Firstly, we’ve got rid of all the hydrogen atoms attached to carbon atoms, along with the bonds joining them to the carbon atoms. Even without drawing the hydrogen atoms we know they’re there—we assume that any carbon atom that doesn’t appear to have its potential for four bonds satisfied is also attached to the appropriate number of hydrogen atoms. Secondly, we’ve rubbed out all the Cs representing carbon atoms. We’re left with a zig-zag line, and we assume that every kink in the line represents a carbon atom, as does the end of the line.

We can turn these two simplifications into two more guidelines for drawing organic structures.

- **Guideline 2**
  Miss out the Hs attached to carbon atoms, along with the C–H bonds (unless there is a good reason not to).

- **Guideline 3**
  Miss out the capital Cs representing carbon atoms (unless there is a good reason not to).

**Be clear**

Try drawing some of the amino acids represented on p. 16 in a similar way, using the three guidelines. The bond angles at tetrahedral carbon atoms are about 109°. Make them look about 109° projected on to a plane! (120° is a good compromise, and it makes the drawings look neat.)

Start with leucine—earlier we drew it as the structure to the right. Get a piece of paper and do it now. Once you have done this, turn the page to see how your drawing compares with our suggestions.
It doesn’t matter which way up you’ve drawn it, but your diagram should look something like one of these structures below.

The guidelines we gave were only guidelines, not rules, and it certainly does not matter which way round you draw the molecule. The aim is to keep the functional groups clear and let the skeleton fade into the background. That’s why the last two structures are all right—the carbon atom shown as ‘C’ is part of a functional group (the carboxyl group) so it can stand out.

Now turn back to p. 16 and try redrawing the some of the other eight structures there using the guidelines. Don’t look at our suggestions below until you’ve done them! Then compare your drawings with our suggestions.

Remember that these are only suggestions, but we hope you’ll agree that this style of diagram looks much less cluttered and makes the functional groups much clearer than the diagrams on p. 16. Moreover, they still bear significant resemblance to the ‘real thing’—compare these crystal structures of lysine and tryptophan with the structures shown above, for example.
Structural diagrams can be modified to suit the occasion

You’ll probably find that you want to draw the same molecule in different ways on different occasions to emphasize different points. Let’s carry on using leucine as an example. We mentioned before that an amino acid can act as an acid or as a base. When it acts as an acid, a base (for example hydroxide, OH\(^{-}\)) removes H\(^{+}\) from the carboxylic acid group in a reaction we can represent as:

\[
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{NH}_2 \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{NH}_2 \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{H}^{+}
\]

The product of this reaction has a negative charge on an oxygen atom. We have put it in a circle to make it clearer, and we suggest you do the same when you draw charges: + and – signs are easily mislaid. We shall discuss this type of reaction, the way in which reactions are drawn, and what the ‘curly arrows’ in the diagram mean in Chapter 5. But for now, notice that we drew out the CO\(_2\)H as the fragment on the left because we wanted to show how the O–H bond was broken when the base attacked. We modified our diagram to suit our own purposes.

When leucine acts as a base, the amino (NH\(_2\)) group is involved. The nitrogen atom attaches itself to a proton, forming a new bond using its lone pair.

We can represent this reaction as:

\[
\text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{H}^{+}
\]

Notice how we drew in the lone pair this time because we wanted to show how it was involved in the reaction. The oxygen atoms of the carboxylic acid groups also have lone pairs but we didn’t draw them in because they weren’t relevant to what we were talking about. Neither did we feel it was necessary to draw CO\(_2\)H in full this time because none of the atoms or bonds in the carboxylic acid functional group was involved in the reaction.

Structural diagrams can show three-dimensional information on a two-dimensional page

Of course, all the structures we have been drawing give only an idea of the real structure of the molecules. For example, the carbon atom between the NH\(_2\) group and the CO\(_2\)H group of leucine has a tetrahedral arrangement of atoms around it, a fact which we have so far completely ignored.

We might want to emphasize this fact by drawing in the hydrogen atom we missed out at this point, as in structure 1 (in the right-hand margin). We can then show that one of the groups attached to this carbon atom comes towards us, out of the plane of the paper, and the other one goes away from us, into the paper.

There are several ways of doing this. In structure 2, the bold, wedged bond suggests a perspective view of a bond coming towards you, while the hashed bond suggests a bond fading away from you. The other two ‘normal’ bonds are in the plane of the paper.

Alternatively we could miss out the hydrogen atom and draw something a bit neater, although slightly less realistic, as in structure 3. We can assume the missing hydrogen atom is behind the plane of the paper because that is where the ‘missing’ vertex of the tetrahedron of atoms attached to the carbon atom lies. When you draw diagrams like these to indicate the three dimensional shape of the molecule, try to keep the hydrocarbon framework in the...
plane of the paper and allow functional groups and other branches to project forwards out of
the paper or backwards into it.

These conventions allow us to give an idea of the three-dimensional shape (stereochemistry) of any organic molecule—you have already seen them in use in the diagram of the structure of palytoxin at the beginning of this chapter.

Reminder

Organic structural drawings should be realistic, economical, and clear.

We gave you three guidelines to help you achieve this when you draw structures:

• Guideline 1: Draw chains of atoms as zig-zags.
• Guideline 2: Miss out the Hs attached to the carbon atoms along with the C–H bonds.
• Guideline 3: Miss out the capital Cs representing carbon atoms.

The guidelines we have given and the conventions we have illustrated in this section have grown up over decades. They are not arbitrary pronouncements by some official body but are used by organic chemists because they work! We guarantee to follow them for the rest of the book—try to follow them yourself whenever you draw an organic structure. Before you ever draw a capital C or a capital H again, ask yourself whether it’s really necessary!

Now that we have considered how to draw structures, we can return to some of the structural types that we find in organic molecules. Firstly, we’ll talk about hydrocarbon frameworks, then about functional groups.

Hydrocarbon frameworks

Carbon as an element is unique in the variety of structures it can form. It is unusual because it forms strong, stable bonds to the majority of elements in the periodic table, including itself. It is this ability to form bonds to itself that leads to the variety of organic structures that exist, and indeed to the possibility of life existing at all. Carbon may make up only 0.2% of the earth’s crust, but it certainly deserves a whole branch of chemistry all to itself.

Chains

The simplest class of hydrocarbon frameworks contains just chains of atoms. The fatty acids we met earlier have hydrocarbon frameworks made of zig-zag chains of atoms, for example. Polythene is a polymer whose hydrocarbon framework consists entirely of chains of carbon atoms. The wiggly line at each end of this structure shows that we have drawn a piece in the middle of the polythene molecule. The structure continues indefinitely beyond the wiggly lines.

At the other end of the spectrum of complexity is this antibiotic, extracted from a fungus in 1995 and aptly named linearmycin as it has a long linear chain. The chain of this antibiotic is so long that we have to wrap it round two corners just to get it on the page. We haven’t drawn whether the CH₃ and OH groups are in front of or behind the plane of the paper because, at the time of writing this book, the stereochemistry of linearmycin is unknown.
Names for carbon chains

It is often convenient to refer to a chain of carbon atoms by a name indicating its length. You have probably met some of these names before in the names of the simplest organic molecules, the alkanes. There are also commonly used abbreviations for these names: these can be very useful in both writing about chemistry and in drawing chemical structures, as we shall see shortly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of carbon atoms in chain</th>
<th>Name of group</th>
<th>Formula$^1$</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Name of alkane (= chain + H)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>–CH$_3$</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>methane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ethyl</td>
<td>–CH$_2$CH$_3$</td>
<td>Et</td>
<td>ethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>propyl</td>
<td>–CH$_2$CH$_2$CH$_3$</td>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>propane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>butyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_3$CH$_3$</td>
<td>Bu</td>
<td>butane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pentyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_4$CH$_3$</td>
<td>—$^\dagger$</td>
<td>pentane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>hexyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_5$CH$_3$</td>
<td>—$^\dagger$</td>
<td>hexane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>heptyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_6$CH$_3$</td>
<td>—$^\dagger$</td>
<td>heptane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>octyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_7$CH$_3$</td>
<td>—$^\dagger$</td>
<td>octane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nonyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_8$CH$_3$</td>
<td>—$^\dagger$</td>
<td>nonane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>decyl</td>
<td>–(CH$_2$)$_9$CH$_3$</td>
<td>—$^\dagger$</td>
<td>decane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^1$ This representation is not recommended, except for CH$_3$. $^\dagger$ Names for longer chains are not commonly abbreviated.

Organic elements

You may notice that the abbreviations for the names of carbon chains look very much like the symbols for chemical elements: this is deliberate, and these symbols are sometimes called ‘organic elements’. They can be used in chemical structures just like element symbols. It is often convenient to use the ‘organic element’ symbols for short carbon chains for tidiness. Here are some examples. Structure 1 to the right shows how we drew the structure of the amino acid methionine on p. 20. The stick representing the methyl group attached to the sulfur atom does, however, look a little odd. Most chemists would draw methionine as structure 2, with ‘Me’ representing the CH$_3$ (methyl) group. Tetraethyllead used to be added to petrol to prevent engines ‘knocking’, until it was shown to be a health hazard. Its structure (as you might easily guess from the name) is easy to write as PbEt$_4$ or Et$_4$Pb.

Remember that these symbols (and names) can be used only for terminal chains of atoms. We couldn’t abbreviate the structure of lysine to 3, for example, because Bu represents 4 and not 5.
Before leaving carbon chains, we must mention one other very useful organic element symbol, R. R in a structure can mean anything—it’s a sort of wild card. For example, structure 6 would indicate any amino acid, if R = H it is glycine, if R = Me it is alanine… As we’ve mentioned before, and you will see later, the reactivity of organic molecules is so dependent on their functional groups that the rest of the molecule can be irrelevant. In these cases, we can choose just to call it R.

**Carbon rings**

Rings of atoms are also common in organic structures. You may have heard the famous story of Auguste Kekulé first realizing that benzene has a ring structure when he dreamed of snakes biting their own tails. You have met benzene rings in phenylalanine and aspirin. Paracetamol also has a structure based on a benzene ring.

When a benzene ring is attached to a molecule by only one of its carbon atoms (as in phenylalanine, but not paracetamol or aspirin), we can call it a ‘phenyl’ group and give it the organic element symbol Ph.

Any compound containing a benzene ring or a related (Chapter 7) ring system is known as ‘aromatic’, and another useful organic element symbol related to Ph is Ar (for ‘aryl’). While Ph always means C₆H₅, Ar can mean any substituted phenyl ring, in other words phenyl with any number of the hydrogen atoms replaced by other groups. Of course Ar = argon too but there is no confusion as there are no organic compounds of argon.
For example, while PhOH always means phenol, ArOH could mean phenol, 2,4,6-trichlorophenol (the antiseptic TCP), paracetamol, or aspirin (among many other substituted phenols). Like R, the ‘wild card’ alkyl group, Ar is a ‘wild card’ aryl group.

The compound known as muscone has only relatively recently been made in the laboratory. It is the pungent aroma that makes up the base-note of musk fragrances. Before chemists had determined its structure and devised a laboratory synthesis the only source of musk was the musk deer, now rare for this very reason. Muscone’s skeleton is a 13-membered ring of carbon atoms.

The steroid hormones have several (usually four) rings fused together. These hormones are testosterone and oestradiol, the important human male and female sex hormones.

Some ring structures are much more complicated. The potent poison strychnine is a tangle of interconnecting rings.

One of the most elegant ring structures is shown above and is known as buckminsterfullerene. It consists solely of 60 carbon atoms in rings that curve back on themselves to form a football-shaped cage. Count the number of bonds at any junction and you will see they add up to four so no hydrogens need be added. This compound is C_{60}. Note that you can’t see all the atoms as some are behind the sphere.

Rings of carbon atoms are given names starting with ‘cyclo’, followed by the name for the carbon chain with the same number of carbon atoms. Structure 1 shows chrysanthemic acid, part of the naturally occurring pesticides called pyrethrins (an example appears in Chapter 1), which contains a cyclopropane ring. Propane has three carbon atoms. Cyclopropane is a three-membered ring. Grandisol (structure 2), an insect pheromone used by male boll weevils to attract females, has a structure based on a cyclobutane ring. Butane has four carbon atoms. Cyclobutane is a four-membered ring. Cyclamate (structure 3), formerly used as an artificial sweetener, contains a cyclohexane ring. Hexane has six carbon atoms. Cyclohexane is a six-membered ring.

**Branches**

Hydrocarbon frameworks rarely consist of single rings or chains, but are often branched. Rings, chains, and branches are all combined in structures like that of the marine toxin palytoxin that we met at the beginning of the chapter, polystyrene, a polymer made of six-membered rings dangling from linear carbon chains, or of β-carotene, the compound that makes carrots orange.
Just like some short straight carbon chains, some short branched carbon chains are given names and organic element symbols. The most common is the isopropyl group. Lithium diisopropylamide (also called LDA) is a strong base commonly used in organic synthesis.

\[
\text{Lithium diisopropylamide (LDA)} \quad \text{is equivalent to LiN}^\text{i-Pr}_2
\]

Notice how the ‘propyl’ part of ‘isopropyl’ still indicates three carbon atoms; they are just joined together in a different way—in other words, as an isomer of the straight chain propyl group. Sometimes, to avoid confusion, the straight chain alkyl groups are called ‘n-alkyl’ (for example, \(n\)-Pr, \(n\)-Bu)—\(n\) for ‘normal’—to distinguish them from their branched counterparts. Iproniazid is an antidepressant drug with \(i\)-Pr in both structure and name. ‘Isopropyl’ may be abbreviated to \(i\)-Pr, \(i\)Pr, or Pr\(_i\). We shall use the first in this book, but you may see the others used elsewhere.

- **Isomers** are molecules with the same kinds and numbers of atoms joined up in different ways. \(n\)-propanol, \(n\)-PrOH, and isopropanol, \(i\)-PrOH, are isomeric alcohols. Isomers need not have the same functional groups—these compounds are all isomers of \(C_3H_8O\):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\(n\)-propanol} & : \text{\(C_3H_7OH\)} \\
\text{\(i\)-propanol} & : \text{\(C_3H_7OH\)}
\end{align*}
\]

The isobutyl (\(i\)-Bu) group is a \(CH_3\) group joined to an \(i\)-Pr group. It is \(i\)-PrCH\(_2\)\(_3\). Two isobutyl groups are present in the reducing agent diisobutyl aluminium hydride (DIBAL). The pain-killer ibuprofen (marketed as Nurofen\textsuperscript{®}) contains an isobutyl group. Notice how the invented name ibuprofen is a medley of ‘ibu’ (from \(i\)-Bu for isobutyl) + ‘pro’ (for propyl, the three-carbon unit shown in brown) + ‘fen’ (for the phenyl ring). We will talk about the way in which compounds are named later in this chapter.

\[
\text{Diisobutyl aluminium hydride (DIBAL)} \quad \text{is equivalent to } \text{HAI}^\text{i-Bu}_2
\]

There are two more isomers of the butyl group, both of which have common names and abbreviations. The sec-butyl group (\(s\)-butyl or \(s\)-Bu) has a methyl and an ethyl group joined to the same carbon atom. It appears in an organolithium compound, sec-butyl lithium, used to introduce lithium atoms into organic molecules.
The tert-butyl group (t-butyl or t-Bu) group has three methyl groups joined to the same carbon atom. Two t-Bu groups are found in butylated hydroxy toluene (BHT E321), an antioxidant added to some processed foods.

**Primary, secondary, and tertiary**

The prefixes sec and tert are really short for secondary and tertiary, terms that refer to the carbon atom that attaches these groups to the rest of the molecular structure.

A primary carbon atom is attached to only one other C atom, a secondary to two other C atoms, and so on. This means there are five types of carbon atom. These names for bits of hydrocarbon framework are more than just useful ways of writing or talking about chemistry. They tell us something fundamental about the molecule and we shall use them when we describe reactions.

This quick architectural tour of some of the molecular edifices built by nature and by humans serves just as an introduction to some of the hydrocarbon frameworks you will meet in the rest of this chapter and this book. Yet, fortunately for us, however complicated the hydrocarbon framework might be, it serves only as a support for the functional groups. And, by and large, a functional group in one molecule behaves in much the same way as it does in another molecule. What we now need to do, and we start in the next section, is to introduce you to some functional groups and explain why it is that their attributes are the key to understanding organic chemistry.

**Functional groups**

If you bubble ethane gas (CH₃CH₃, or EtH) through acids, bases, oxidizing agents, reducing agents—in fact almost any chemical you can think of—it will remain unchanged. Just about the only thing you can do with it is burn it. Yet ethanol (CH₃CH₂OH, or preferably EtOH—structure in the margin) not only burns, it reacts with acids, bases, and oxidizing agents.

The difference between ethanol and ethane is the functional group—the OH, or hydroxyl group. We know that these chemical properties (being able to react with acids, bases, and oxidizing agents) are properties of the hydroxyl group and not just of ethanol because other compounds containing OH groups (in other words, other alcohols) have similar properties, whatever their hydrocarbon frameworks.

Your understanding of functional groups will be the key to your understanding of organic chemistry. We shall therefore now go on to meet some of the most important functional groups. We won’t say much about the properties of each group; that will come in Chapter 5.
and later. Your task at this stage is to learn to recognize them when they appear in structures, so make sure you learn their names. The classes of compound associated with some functional groups also have names, for example compounds containing the hydroxyl group are known as alcohols. Learn these names too as they are more important than the systematic names of individual compounds. We’ve told you a few snippets of information about each group to help you to get to know something of the group’s character.

**Alkanes contain no functional groups**

The alkanes are the simplest class of organic molecules because they contain no functional groups. They are extremely unreactive and therefore rather boring as far as the organic chemist is concerned. However, their unreactivity can be a bonus, and alkanes such as pentane and hexane are often used as solvents, especially for the purification of organic compounds. Just about the only thing alkanes will do is burn—methane, propane, and butane are all used as domestic fuels, and petrol is a mixture of alkanes containing largely isooctane.

**Alkenes (sometimes called olefins) contain C=C double bonds**

It may seem strange to classify a type of bond as a functional group, but you will see later that C=C double bonds impart reactivity to an organic molecule just as functional groups consisting of, say, oxygen or nitrogen atoms do. Some of the compounds produced by plants and used by perfumers are alkenes (see Chapter 1). For example, pinene has a smell evocative of pine forests, while limonene smells of citrus fruits.

You’ve already met the orange pigment β-carotene. Eleven C=C double bonds make up most of its structure. Coloured organic compounds often contain chains or rings of C=C double bonds like this. In Chapter 7 you will find out why this is so.

**Alkynes contain C≡C triple bonds**

Just like C=C double bonds, C≡C triple bonds have a special type of reactivity associated with them, so it’s useful to call a C≡C triple bond a functional group. Alkynes are linear so we
draw them with four carbon atoms in a straight line. Alkynes are not as widespread in nature as alkenes, but one fascinating class of compounds containing C≡C triple bonds is a group of antitumour agents discovered during the 1980s. Calicheamicin is a member of this group. The high reactivity of this combination of functional groups enables calicheamicin to attack DNA and prevent cancer cells from proliferating. For the first time we have drawn a molecule in three dimensions, with two bonds crossing one another—can you see the shape?

![calicheamicin](image)

**Alcohols (R–OH) contain a hydroxyl (OH) group**

We’ve already talked about the hydroxyl group in ethanol and other alcohols. Carbohydrates are peppered with hydroxyl groups; sucrose has eight of them, for example (a more three-dimensional picture of the sucrose molecule appears in Chapter 1, p.3).

![sucrose](image)

Molecules containing hydroxyl groups are often soluble in water, and living things often attach sugar groups, containing hydroxyl groups, to otherwise insoluble organic compounds to keep them in solution in the cell. Calicheamicin, a molecule we have just mentioned, contains a string of sugars for just this reason. The liver carries out its task of detoxifying unwanted organic compounds by repeatedly hydroxylating them until they are water soluble, and they are then excreted in the bile or urine.

**Ethers (R₁–O–R₂) contain an alkoxy group (–OR)**

The name ether refers to any compound that has two alkyl groups linked through an oxygen atom. ‘Ether’ is also used as an everyday name for diethyl ether, Et₂O. You might compare this use of the word ‘ether’ with the common use of the word ‘alcohol’ to mean ethanol. Diethyl ether is a highly flammable solvent that boils at only 35°C. It used to be used as an anaesthetic. Tetrahydrofuran (THF) is another commonly used solvent and is a cyclic ether.

Brevetoxin B (overleaf) is a fascinating naturally occurring compound that was synthesized in the laboratory in 1995. It is packed with ether functional groups in ring sizes from 6 to 8.

**Amines (R–NH₂) contain the amino (NH₂) group**

We met the amino group when we were discussing the amino acids: we mentioned that it was this group that gave these compounds their basic properties. Amines often have powerful fishy smells: the smell of putrescine is particularly foul. It is formed as meat decays. Many neurologically active compounds are also amines: amphetamine is a notorious stimulant.
Nitro compounds (R–NO₂) contain the nitro group (NO₂)

The nitro group (NO₂) is sometimes incorrectly drawn with five bonds to nitrogen which you will see in Chapter 4 is impossible. Make sure you draw it correctly when you need to draw it out in detail. If you write just NO₂ you are all right!

Several nitro groups in one molecule can make it quite unstable and even explosive. Three nitro groups give the most famous explosive of all, trinitrotoluene (TNT), its kick. However, functional groups refuse to be stereotyped. Nitrazepam also contains a nitro group, but this compound is marketed as Mogadon®, the sleeping pill.

Alkyl halides (fluorides R–F, chlorides R–Cl, bromides R–Br, or iodides R–I) contain the fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo groups

These four functional groups have similar properties, although alkyl iodides are the most reactive and alkyl fluorides the least. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) is one of the most widely used polymers—it has a chloro group on every other carbon atom along a linear hydrocarbon framework. Methyl iodide (MeI), on the other hand, is a dangerous carcinogen since it reacts with DNA and can cause mutations in the genetic code. These compounds are also known as haloalkanes (fluoroalkanes, chloroalkanes, bromoalkanes, or iodoalkanes).

Aldehydes (R–CHO) and ketones (R¹–CO–R²) contain the carbonyl group C=O

Aldehydes can be formed by oxidizing alcohols—in fact the liver detoxifies ethanol in the bloodstream by oxidizing it first to acetaldehyde (ethanal, CH₂CHO) (see p. 28). Acetaldehyde in the blood is the cause of hangovers. Aldehydes often have pleasant smells—2-methylundecan-1-ol is a key component of the fragrance of Chanel No. 5, and ‘raspberry ketone’ is the major component of the flavour and smell of raspberries.
Carboxylic acids (R–CO₂H) contain the carboxyl group CO₂H

As their name implies, compounds containing the carboxylic acid (CO₂H) group can react with bases, losing a proton to form carboxylate salts. Edible carboxylic acids have sharp flavours and several are found in fruits—citric, malic, and tartaric acids are found in lemons, apples, and grapes, respectively.

Esters (R¹–CO₂R²) contain a carboxyl group with an extra alkyl group (CO₂R)

Fats are esters; in fact they contain three ester groups. They are formed in the body by condensing glycerol, a compound with three hydroxyl groups, with three fatty acid molecules. Other, more volatile, esters have pleasant, fruity smells and flavours. These three are components of the flavours of bananas, rum, and apples:

Amides (R–CONH₂, R¹–CONHR₂, or R¹–CONR₂R³)

Proteins are amides: they are formed when the carboxylic acid group of one amino acid condenses with the amino group of another to form an amide linkage (also known as a peptide bond). One protein molecule can contain hundreds of amide bonds. Aspartame, the artificial sweetener marketed as NutraSweet®, on the other hand, contains just two amino acids, aspartic acid and phenylalanine, joined through one amide bond. Paracetamol is also an amide.

Nitriles or cyanides (R–CN) contain the cyano group –C≡N

Nitrile groups can be introduced into molecules by reacting potassium cyanide with alkyl halides. The organic nitrile group has quite different properties from those associated with lethal inorganic cyanide: laetrile, for example, is extracted from apricot kernels, and was once developed as an anticancer drug.

Acetyl chlorides (acid chlorides, R–COCl)

Acyl chlorides are reactive compounds used to make esters and amides. They are derivatives of carboxylic acids with the –OH replaced by –Cl, and are too reactive to be found in nature.
Acetals

Acetals are compounds with two single-bonded oxygen atoms attached to the same carbon atom. Many sugars are acetals, as is laetrile, which you have just met.

![An acetal, sucrose, and laetrile](image)

### Carbon atoms carrying functional groups can be classified by oxidation level

All functional groups are different, but some are more different than others. For example, the structures of a carboxylic acid, an ester, and an amide are all very similar: in each case the carbon atom carrying the functional group is bonded to two heteroatoms, one of the bonds being a double bond. You will see in Chapter 10 that this similarity in structure is mirrored in the reactions of these three types of compounds and in the ways in which they can be interconverted. Carboxylic acids, esters, and amides can be changed one into another by reaction with simple reagents such as water, alcohols, or amines plus appropriate catalysts. To change them into aldehydes or alcohols requires a different type of reagent, a reducing agent (a reagent which adds hydrogen atoms). We say that the carbon atoms carrying functional groups that can be interconverted without the need for reducing agents (or oxidizing agents) have the same oxidation level—in this case, we call it the ‘carboxylic acid oxidation level’.

#### The carboxylic oxidation level

- Carboxylic acids
- Esters
- Amides
- Nitriles
- Acyl chlorides

In fact, amides can quite easily be converted into nitriles just by dehydration (removal of water), so we must give nitrile carbon atoms the same oxidation level as carboxylic acids, esters, and amides. Maybe you’re beginning to see the structural similarity between these four functional groups that you could have used to assign their oxidation level? In all four cases, the carbon atom has three bonds to heteroatoms; they are at the ‘aldehyde oxidation level’. The common laboratory solvent dichloromethane CH₂Cl₂ also has two bonds to heteroatoms, so it too contains a carbon atom at the aldehyde oxidation level, as do acetals.

#### The aldehyde oxidation level

- Aldehydes
- Ketones
- Acetals
- Dichloromethane

Aldehydes and ketones contain a carbon atom with two bonds to heteroatoms; they are at the ‘aldehyde oxidation level’. The common laboratory solvent dichloromethane CH₂Cl₂ also has two bonds to heteroatoms, so it too contains a carbon atom at the aldehyde oxidation level, as do acetals.

#### The alcohol oxidation level

- Alcohols
- Ethers
- Alkyl halides

A heteroatom is an atom that is not C or H

You’ve seen that a functional group is essentially any deviation from an alkane structure, either because the molecule has fewer hydrogen atoms than an alkane (alkenes, alkynes) or because it contains a collection of atoms that are not C and not H. There is a useful term for these ‘different’ atoms: heteroatoms. A heteroatom is any atom in an organic molecule other than C or H.

Don’t confuse oxidation level with oxidation state. Oxidation level is determined by the number of heteroatoms bonded to carbon while oxidation state is determined by the number of bonds to carbon, including those to C and H. In all of these compounds, carbon has four bonds and is in oxidation state +4.

‘CFC-113’
Alcohols, ethers, and alkyl halides have a carbon atom with only one single bond to a heteroatom. We assign these the ‘alcohol oxidation level’, and they are all easily made from alcohols without oxidation or reduction.

- **The alkane oxidation level**

We must include simple alkanes, which have no bonds to heteroatoms, as an ‘alkane oxidation level’.

- **The carbon dioxide oxidation level**

The small class of compounds that have a carbon atom with four bonds to heteroatoms is related to CO₂ and best described as at the carbon dioxide oxidation level.

Alkenes and alkynes obviously don’t fit easily into these categories as they have no bonds to heteroatoms. Alkenes can be made from alcohols by dehydration without any oxidation or reduction so it seems sensible to put them in the alcohol column. Similarly, alkynes and aldehydes are related by hydration/dehydration without oxidation or reduction.

- **Summary: Important functional groups and oxidation level**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zero bonds to heteroatoms: alkane oxidation level</th>
<th>One bond to heteroatoms: alcohol oxidation level</th>
<th>Two bonds to heteroatoms: aldehyde oxidation level</th>
<th>Three bonds to heteroatoms: carboxylic acid oxidation level</th>
<th>Four bonds to heteroatoms: carbon dioxide oxidation level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Alkanes" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Alcohols" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Aldehydes" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Carboxylic acids" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Carbon dioxide" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Naming compounds**

So far, we have talked a lot about compounds by name. Many of the names we’ve used (palytoxin, muscone, brevetoxin) are simple names given to complicated molecules without regard for the actual structure or function of the molecule—these three names, for example, are all derived from the name of the organism from which the compound was first extracted.
They are known as trivial names, not because they are unimportant, but because they are used in everyday scientific conversation.

Names like this are fine for familiar compounds that are widely used and referred to by chemists, biologists, doctors, nurses, and perfumers alike. But there are over 16 million known organic compounds. They can’t all have simple names, and no-one would remember them if they did. For this reason, the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) have developed systematic nomenclature, a set of rules that allows any compound to be given a unique name that can be deduced directly from its chemical structure. Conversely, a chemical structure can be deduced from its systematic name.

The problem with systematic names is that they tend to be grotesquely unpronounceable for anything but the most simple molecules. In everyday speech and writing, chemists therefore do tend to disregard them, and use a mixture of systematic and trivial names. Nonetheless, it’s important to know how the rules work. We shall look next at systematic nomenclature, before going on to look at the real language of chemistry.

**Systematic nomenclature**

There isn’t space here to explain all the rules for giving systematic names for compounds—they fill several desperately dull volumes, and there’s no point knowing them anyway since computers will do the naming for you. What we will do is to explain the principles underlying systematic nomenclature. You should understand these principles because they provide the basis for the names used by chemists for the vast majority of compounds that do not have their own trivial names.

Systematic names can be divided into three parts: one describes the hydrocarbon framework, one describes the functional groups, and one indicates where the functional groups are attached to the skeleton.

You have already met the names for some simple fragments of hydrocarbon framework (methyl, ethyl, propyl). Adding a hydrogen atom to these alkyl fragments and changing -yl to -ane makes the alkanes and their names. You should hardly need reminding of their structures:

### Names for the hydrocarbon framework

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Systematic Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>methane</td>
<td>CH₄</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>ethane</td>
<td>H₂C—CH₃</td>
<td>cyclopropane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>propane</td>
<td>H₃C—CH₃</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>butane</td>
<td>H₂C─CH₃</td>
<td>cyclobutane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>pentane</td>
<td>H₃C─CH₃</td>
<td>cyclopentane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six</td>
<td>hexane</td>
<td>H₃C—CH₃</td>
<td>cyclohexane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>heptane</td>
<td>H₃C—CH₃</td>
<td>cycloheptane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>octane</td>
<td>H₃C—CH₃</td>
<td>cyclooctane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nine</td>
<td>nonane</td>
<td>H₃C—CH₃</td>
<td>cyclononane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>decane</td>
<td>H₃C—CH₃</td>
<td>cyclodecane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The name of a functional group can be added to the name of a hydrocarbon framework either as a suffix or as a prefix. Some examples follow. It is important to count all of the carbon atoms in the chain, even if one of them is part of a functional group: pentanenitrile is actually BuCN.

Compounds with functional groups attached to a benzene ring are named in a similar way.

**Numbers are used to locate functional groups**

Sometimes a number can be included in the name to indicate which carbon atom the functional group is attached to. None of the above list needed a number—check that you can see why not for each one. When numbers are used, the carbon atoms are counted from one end. In most cases, either of two numbers could be used (depending on which end you count from); the one chosen is always the lower of the two. Again, some examples will illustrate this point. Notice again that some functional groups are named by prefixes, some by suffixes, and that the number always goes directly before the functional group name.

One carbon atom can have as many as four functional groups: this limit is reached with tetrabromomethane, CBr₄. Here are some other examples of compounds with more than one functional group.

Again, the numbers indicate how far the functional groups are from the end of the carbon chain. Counting must always be from the same end for each functional group. Notice how we use di-, tri-, and tetra- if there is more than one of the same functional group.

With cyclic compounds, there isn’t an end to the chain, but we can use numbers to show the distance between the two groups—start from the carbon atom carrying one of the functional groups, then count round. These rules work for hydrocarbon frameworks that are
chains or rings, but many skeletons are branched. We can name these by treating the branch as though it were a functional group.

**2-amino-cyclohexanol**

**2,4,6-trinitrobenzoic acid**

**2-methylbutane**

**1,3,5-trimethyl-benzene**

**1-butylcyclopropanol**

---

**Ortho, meta, and para**

With substituted benzene rings, an alternative way of identifying the positions of the substituents is to use the terms ortho, meta, and para. Ortho compounds are 1,2-disubstituted, meta compounds are 1,3-disubstituted, and para compounds are 1,4-disubstituted. Some examples should make this clear.

**1,2-dichlorobenzene**

**3-chlorobenzoic acid**

**4-aminophenol**

The terms ortho, meta, and para are used by chemists because they’re easier to remember than numbers, and the words carry with them chemical meaning. Ortho shows that two groups are next to each other on the ring even though the atoms may not happen to be numbered 1 and 2. They are one example of the way in which chemists don’t always use systematic nomenclature but revert to more convenient ‘trivial’ terms. We consider trivial names in the next section.

**What do chemists really call compounds?**

The point of naming a compound is to be able to communicate with other chemists. Most chemists are happiest communicating chemistry by means of structural diagrams, and structural drawings are far more important than any sort of chemical nomenclature. That’s why we explained in detail how to draw structures, but only gave an outline of how to name compounds. Good diagrams are easy to understand, quick to draw, and difficult to misinterpret.

- Always give a diagram alongside a name unless it really is something very simple, such as ethanol.

But we do need to be able to communicate by speech and by writing as well. In principle we could do this by using systematic names. In practice, however, the full systematic names of anything but the simplest molecules are far too clumsy for use in everyday chemical speech. There are several alternatives, mostly based on a mixture of trivial and systematic names.

**Names for well-known and widely used simple compounds**

A few simple compounds are called by trivial names not because the systematic names are complicated, but just out of habit. We know them so well that we use their familiar names.
You may have met the compound on the right before and perhaps called it ethanoic acid, its systematic name. But in a chemical laboratory everyone would refer to this acid as acetic acid, its trivial name. The same is true for all these common substances.

Trivial names like this are often long-lasting, well-understood historical names that are less easy to confuse than their systematic counterparts. ‘Acetaldehyde’ is easier to distinguish from ‘ethanol’ than is ‘ethanal’.

Trivial names also extend to fragments of structures containing functional groups. Acetone, acetaldehyde, and acetic acid all contain the acetyl group (MeCO−, ethanoyl) abbreviated Ac and chemists often use this organic element symbol in writing AcOH for acetic acid or EtOAc for ethyl acetate. Chemists use special names for four fragments because they have mechanistic as well as structural significance. These are vinyl and allyl, phenyl and benzyl.

Giving the vinyl group a name allows chemists to use simple trivial names for compounds like vinyl chloride, the material that polymerizes to give PVC (polyvinyl chloride) but the importance of the name lies more in the difference in reactivity (Chapter 15) between the vinyl and allyl groups.

The allyl group gets its name from garlic (Allium sp.) because it makes up part of the structure of the compounds on the right responsible for the taste and smell of garlic.

Allyl and vinyl are different in that the vinyl group is attached directly to a double-bonded C=C carbon atom, while the allyl group is attached to a carbon atom adjacent to the C=C double bond. The difference is extremely important chemically: allyl compounds are typically quite reactive, while vinyl compounds are fairly unreactive.

For some reason, the allyl and vinyl groups have never acquired organic element symbols, but the benzyl group has and it is Bn. It is again important not to confuse the benzyl group with the phenyl group: the phenyl group is joined through a carbon atom in the ring, while the benzyl group is joined through a carbon atom attached to the ring. Phenyl compounds are typically unreactive but benzyl compounds are often reactive. Phenyl is like vinyl, and benzyl is like allyl. We shall review all the organic element symbols you have met at the end of the chapter.
Names for more complicated but still well-known molecules

Complicated molecules that have been isolated from natural sources are always given trivial names because in these cases the systematic names really are impossible! Strychnine is a famous poison featured in many detective stories and a molecule with a beautiful structure. All chemists refer to it as strychnine as the systematic name is virtually unpronounceable. Two groups of experts at IUPAC and Chemical Abstracts also have different ideas on the systematic name for strychnine. Others like this are penicillin, DNA, and folic acid.

But the champion is vitamin B_{12}, a complicated cobalt complex with a three-dimensional structure of great intricacy. No chemist would learn this structure but would look it up in an advanced textbook of organic chemistry. You will find it in such books in the index under vitamin B_{12} and not under its systematic name. We do not even know what its systematic name might be and we are not very interested.
Even fairly simple but important molecules, the amino acids for example, which have systematic names that are relatively easy to understand, are normally referred to by their trivial names, which are, with a bit of practice, easy to remember and hard to muddle up. They are given in full in Chapter 23.

A very flexible way of getting new, simple names for compounds can be to combine a bit of systematic nomenclature with trivial nomenclature. Alanine is a simple amino acid that occurs in proteins. Add a phenyl group and you have phenylalanine, which is a more complex amino acid also in proteins. Toluene, the common name for methylbenzene, can be combined (both chemically and in making names for compounds!) with three nitro groups to give the famous explosive trinitrotoluene or TNT.

Compounds named as acronyms

Some compounds are referred to by acronyms, shortened versions of either their systematic or their trivial name. We just saw TNT as an abbreviation for TriNitroToluene but the more common use for acronyms is to define solvents and reagents in use all the time. Later in the book you will meet these solvents:

The following reagents are usually referred to by acronym and their functions will be introduced in other chapters so you do not need to learn them now. You may notice that some acronyms refer to trivial and some to systematic names.

Compounds for which chemists use systematic names

You may be surprised to hear that practising organic chemists use systematic names at all in view of what we have just described, but they do! Systematic names really begin with derivatives of
pentane ($C_{5}H_{12}$) since the prefix *pent-* means five, whereas *but-* does not mean four. Chemists refer to simple derivatives of open-chain and cyclic compounds with 5 to about 20 carbon atoms by their systematic names, providing that there is no common name in use. Here are some examples.

These names contain a syllable that tells you the framework size: *penta-* for $C_{5}$, *octa-* for $C_{8}$, *nona* for $C_{9}$, undeca-* for $C_{11}$, and dodeca-* for $C_{12}$. These names are easily worked out from the structures and, what is more important, you get a clear idea of the structure from the name. One of them might make you stop and think a bit (which one?), but the others are clear even when heard without a diagram to look at.

**Complicated molecules with no trivial names**

When chemists make complex new compounds in the laboratory, they publish the method for making them in a chemical journal, giving their full systematic names in the experimental account, however long and clumsy those names may be. But in the text of the paper, and while talking in the laboratory about the compounds they have made, they will just call them ‘the amine’ or ‘the alkene’. Everyone knows which amine or alkene is meant because at some point they remember seeing a chemical structure of the compound. This is the best strategy for talking about almost any molecule: draw a structure, then give the compound a ‘tag’ name like ‘the amine’ or ‘the acid’. In written chemistry it’s often easiest to give every chemical structure a ‘tag’ number as well. To illustrate what we mean, let’s talk about a recent drug synthesis.

This potential anti-obesity drug 1, which might overcome insulin resistance in diabetics, was recently made at Abbott laboratories from a simpler intermediate 4. In the published work the drug is called ‘a selective DGAT-1 inhibitor’ but that doesn’t mean much to us. In the text of the paper they refer to it by its compound number 1. How much more sensible than using its systematic name: *trans-*(1$R$,2$R$)-2-(*4’-(3-phenylureido)biphenylcarbonyl) cyclopentanecarboxylic acid. The simpler intermediate they call ‘the ketoacid 4’ or ‘the aryl bromide 4’ or ‘the free acid 4’ depending on what aspect of its structure they want to emphasize. Notice that in both cases a clear diagram of the structure appears with its number.

**How should you name compounds?**

So what should you call a compound? It really depends on circumstances, but you won’t go far wrong if you follow the example of this book. We shall use the names for compounds
that real chemists use. There’s no need to learn all the commonly used names for compounds now, but you should log them in your memory as you come across them. Never allow yourself to pass a compound name by unless you are sure you know what chemical structure it refers to.

### Our advice on chemical names—six points in order of importance

- Draw a structure first and worry about the name afterwards.
- Learn the names of the functional groups (ester, nitrile, etc.).
- Learn and use the names of a few simple compounds used by all chemists.
- In speech, refer to compounds as ‘that acid’ (or whatever) while pointing to a diagram.
- Grasp the principles of systematic (IUPAC) nomenclature and use it for compounds of medium size.
- Keep a notebook to record acronyms, trivial names, structures, etc. that you might need later.

We’ve met a great many molecules in this chapter. Most of them were just there to illustrate points so don’t learn their structures! Instead, learn to recognize the names of the functional groups they contain. However, there were 10 names for simple compounds and three for common solvents that we advised you to learn. Cover up the right-hand part of each column and draw the structures for these 14 compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important structures to learn</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetone</td>
<td>toluene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ether or diethyl-ether</td>
<td>pyridine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acetaldehyde</td>
<td>phenol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formic acid</td>
<td>aniline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acetic acid or AcOH</td>
<td>THF or tetrahydrofuran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzene</td>
<td>DMF, Me₂NCHO, or dimethylformamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ethyl acetate or EtOAc</td>
<td>DMSO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

That’s all we’ll say on the subject of nomenclature—you’ll find that as you practise using these names and start hearing other people referring to compounds by name you’ll soon pick up the most important ones. But, to reiterate, make sure you never pass a compound name by without being absolutely sure what it refers to—draw a structure to check.
To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Determining organic structures

Introduction

Organic structures can be determined accurately and quickly by spectroscopy

Having urged you, in the last chapter, to draw structures realistically, we now need to answer the question: what is realistic? How do we know what structures molecules actually have? Make no mistake about this important point: we really do know what shape molecules have. You wouldn’t be far wrong if you said that the single most important development in organic chemistry in modern times is just this certainty, as well as the speed with which we can be certain. What has caused this revolution can be stated in a word—spectroscopy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What is spectroscopy?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rays or waves interact with molecules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-rays are scattered by atoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio waves make nuclei resonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared waves make bonds vibrate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Structure of the chapter

We shall first consider structure determination as a whole and then introduce three different methods:

- mass spectrometry (to determine mass of the molecule and atomic composition)
- nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy (to determine symmetry, branching, and connectivity in the molecule)
- infrared spectroscopy (to determine the functional groups in the molecule).
Of these, NMR is more important than all the rest put together and so we shall return to it in more detail in Chapter 13. Then in Chapter 18, after we’ve discussed a wider range of molecules, there will be a review chapter to bring the ideas together and show you how unknown structures are really determined.

**X-ray is the final appeal**

In Chapter 2 we suggested you draw saturated carbon chains as zig-zags and not in straight lines with 90° or 180° bond angles. This is because we know they are zig-zags. The X-ray crystal structure of the ‘straight’ chain diacid, hexanedioc acid, is shown below. You can clearly see the zig-zag chain, the planar carboxylic acid groups, and even the hydrogen atoms coming towards you and going away from you. It obviously makes sense to draw this molecule realistically, as in the second drawing.

![Hexanedioc acid](image1.png)

X-ray crystal structures are determined by allowing a sample of a crystalline compound to diffract X-rays. From the resulting diffraction pattern, it is possible to deduce the precise spatial arrangement of the atoms in the molecule—except, usually, the hydrogen atoms, which are too light to diffract the X-rays and whose position must be inferred from the rest of the structure. This is one question that X-ray answers better than any other method: what shape does a molecule have? Another important problem it can solve is the structure of an important new unknown compound. There are subterranean bacteria, for example, that use methane as an energy source. It is amazing that bacteria manage to convert methane into anything useful, and, of course, chemists really wanted to know how they did it. In 1979 it was found that the bacteria use a coenzyme, given the trivial name ‘methoxatin’, to oxidize methane to methanol. Methoxatin was a new compound with an unknown structure and could be obtained in only very small amounts. It proved exceptionally difficult to solve the structure by NMR but eventually methoxatin was found by X-ray crystallography to be a polycyclic tricarboxylic acid.

---

**Coenzymes** are biochemical reagents that work hand-in-hand with enzymes to catalyse reactions.

**The trivial name ‘methoxatin’ has a systematic alternative:** 4,5-dihydro-4,5-dioxo-1H-pyrrolo[2,3-f]quinoline-2,7,9-tricarboxylic acid. Both are valid names. There are no prizes for guessing which one is used more often.
X-ray crystallography has its limitations

If X-ray crystallography is so powerful, why do we bother with other methods? There are two reasons:

- X-ray crystallography works by the scattering of X-rays from electrons and requires crystalline solids. If an organic compound is a liquid or is a solid but does not form good crystals, its structure cannot be determined in this way.
- X-ray crystallography is a science in its own right, requiring specialized skills, and a structure determination can take a long time. Modern methods have reduced this time to a matter of hours or less, but nonetheless by contrast a modern NMR machine with a robot attachment can run more than 100 spectra overnight. We normally use NMR routinely and reserve X-rays for difficult unknown structures and for determining the detailed shape of important molecules.

X-ray crystallography is not infallible!

Because it cannot usually ‘see’ H atoms, it is important to appreciate that X-ray crystallography is not infallible: it can still get things wrong. A famous example is the antibiotic diazonamide A, which from 1991 (when it was isolated from a marine organism) until 2001 (when the error was realized) was thought to have the structure shown on the right. It has the same mass as the real structure on the left, and X-ray crystallography was unable to tell the O and the N apart. Only when the compound was synthesized did the error become apparent, and the fact that the correct structure was indeed that on the left was confirmed by the fact that synthetic material of this structure made in 2002 was identical with the natural product.

Outline of structure determination by spectroscopy

Put yourself in these situations, regularly encountered by professional chemists:

- You notice an unexpected product from a chemical reaction.
- You discover a previously unknown compound in a plant extract.
• You detect a suspected food contaminant and need to know what it is.
• You are routinely checking purity during the manufacture of a drug.

In all cases, except perhaps the second, you would need a quick and reliable answer. Suppose you are trying to identify the heart drug propranolol. You would first want to know the molecular weight and atomic composition, and these would come from a mass spectrum: propranolol has a molecular weight (relative molecular mass) of 259 and the composition C\textsubscript{16}H\textsubscript{21}NO\textsubscript{2}. Next you would need the carbon skeleton—this would come from NMR, which would reveal the three fragments shown below.

\[ \text{propranolol} \quad \text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_2 \]

There are many ways in which the fragments seen by NMR could be joined together and at this stage you would have no idea whether the oxygen atoms were present as OH groups or as ethers, whether the nitrogen would be an amine or not, and whether Y and Z might or might not be the same atom, say N. More information comes from the infrared spectrum, which highlights the functional groups, and which would show that there is an OH and an NH in the molecule but not other functional groups such as CN or NO\textsubscript{2}. This still leaves a variety of possible structures, and these could finally be distinguished by the details revealed by \textsuperscript{1}H NMR. We will deal with \textsuperscript{1}H NMR only briefly in this chapter because it is more complicated than \textsuperscript{13}C NMR, but we will return to it in Chapter 13.

Now we must go through each of these methods and see how they give us information about the propranolol molecule.

**What each spectroscopic method tells us**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method and what it does</th>
<th>What it tells us</th>
<th>Type of data provided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mass spectrum weighs the molecule</td>
<td>Molecular weight (relative molecular mass) and composition</td>
<td>259; C\textsubscript{16}H\textsubscript{21}NO\textsubscript{2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textsuperscript{13}C NMR reveals all the different carbon nuclei</td>
<td>Carbon skeleton</td>
<td>No C=O group; ten carbons in aromatic rings; two carbons next to O; three other saturated C atoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared reveals chemical bonds</td>
<td>Functional groups</td>
<td>No C=O group; one OH; one NH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textsuperscript{1}H NMR reveals all the different H nuclei</td>
<td>Distribution of H atoms</td>
<td>Two methyl groups; six H atoms on aromatic rings; three H atoms on carbons next to O; three H atoms on carbons next to N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Mass spectrometry**

**Mass spectrometry weighs the molecule**

It’s not easy to weigh a neutral molecule, and a mass spectrometer works by measuring the mass of a charged ion instead: the charge makes the molecule controllable by an electric field. A mass spectrometer therefore has three basic components:

• something to volatilize and ionize the molecule into a beam of charged particles
• something to focus the beam so that particles of the same mass:charge ratio are separated from all others and
• something to detect the particles.

All spectrometers in common use operate in a high vacuum and use one of several methods to convert neutral molecules into cations, the most common being electron impact, chemical ionization, and electrospray.
Mass spectrometry by electron impact

In electron impact (EI) mass spectrometry the molecule is bombarded with highly energetic electrons that knock a weakly bound electron out of the molecule. If you think this is strange, think of throwing bricks at a brick wall: the bricks can’t stick to the wall but can knock loose bricks off the top of the wall. Losing a single electron leaves behind an unpaired electron and a positive charge. The electron that is lost will be one of relatively high energy (the bricks come from the top of the wall), and typically one not involved in bonding, for example an electron from a lone pair.

Thus ammonia gives $\text{NH}_3^+$ and a ketone gives $\text{R}_2\text{C}=\text{O}^+$. These unstable species are known as **radical cations**, and being charged they are accelerated by an electric field and focused onto the detector, which detects the mass of the ion by how far its path has been deflected by the electric field. It only takes about 20 μs for the radical cations to reach the detector, but sometimes they fragment before they get there, in which case other ions will also be detected. These fragments will always have a lower mass than the ‘parent’ molecular ion, so in a typical mass spectrum we are most interested in the heaviest ion we can see.

A typical EI mass spectrum looks like this:

**Radical cations**

Most molecules have all their electrons paired; **radicals** have unpaired electrons. Molecules that carry a negative charge are **anions**; molecules with a positive charge are **cations**. Radical cations and radical anions are simply species that are both charged and have an unpaired electron.
This compound was identified as a pheromone deposited by worker bees when feeding as a marker to deter their colleagues from visiting the same, now depleted, nectar source. Only minute quantities are available for analysis of course, but that doesn’t matter: mass spectrometry is successful even on a microgram scale. The spectrum you see here indicates that the molecule has a mass of 114 because that is the highest mass observed in the spectrum: the molecule is in fact the volatile ketone heptan-2-one.

**Mass spectrometry by chemical ionization, electrospay, or other methods**

A problem with EI mass spectrometry is that, for fragile molecules, the energy of the bombarding electron can be sufficient to cause it to fragment completely, losing all trace of the molecular ion. Some useful information can be gained from fragmentation patterns, but in general it is more useful to aim to weigh the molecule all in one piece. This can be achieved using any of a number of other techniques, of which the most common are chemical ionization (CI) and electrospay (ES).

Chemical ionization is achieved by mixing a gas such as ammonia with the substrate in the spectrometer. Bombardment of NH₃ with electrons leads to formation of some NH₄⁺ by proton transfer, and reaction of this ion with the substrate makes a charged complex, which can be accelerated by the electric field. The masses observed by chemical ionization spectroscopy carried out in this way are usually M + 1 or M + 18 (the mass of NH₄⁺) relative to the mass of the substrate. With electrospray mass spectroscopy, an aerosol of the substrate is ionized, and ionization in the presence of sodium ions means that masses of M + 1 and M + 23 are often seen, or, if the ionization forms anions, M – 1.

This is the electrospray mass spectrum of heptan-2-one. Notice how a single molecular ion is clearly visible this time, but that it has a mass of 137, which is 23 more than the mass of 114 (in other words, this is the mass of M + Na⁺).

**Mass spectrometry detects isotopes**

Most elements can exist as more than one isotope. Usually, one isotope accounts for the vast majority (perhaps >99%) of the atoms of an element. But for some elements, atoms of several isotopes make up a significant proportion of the total in a sample. Chlorine, for example, is
normally a 3:1 mixture of $^{35}\text{Cl}$ and $^{37}\text{Cl}$ (hence the averaged relative atomic mass of 35.5 for chlorine), while bromine is an almost 1:1 mixture of $^{79}\text{Br}$ and $^{81}\text{Br}$ (hence the average mass of 80 for bromine). Because mass spectrometry weighs individual molecules, there is no averaging: instead it detects the true weight of each molecule, whatever isotope it contains.

For example, the molecular ion in the EI mass spectrum of this aryl bromide has two peaks at 186 and 188 of roughly equal intensity. Having two molecular ions of equal intensity separated by 2 mass units is indicative of bromine in a molecule.

The mass spectrum of a chlorine-containing molecule is likewise easy to identify from two peaks separated by two mass units, but this time in a ratio of 3:1, arising from the 3:1 isotopic ratio of $^{35}\text{Cl}$ and $^{37}\text{Cl}$.

What happens with more than one Br or Cl? Here’s an example: the painkiller diclofenac. This spectrum was obtained from commercial tablets, which contain the potassium salt of the active ingredient (it becomes protonated in the acidic environment of the stomach).

The ES spectrum shows the mass of the carboxylate anion as three peaks, at 294, 296, and 298. The relative size of the peaks can be worked out from the 75% probability that each Cl atom will be $^{35}\text{Cl}$ and the 25% probability it will be $^{37}\text{Cl}$. The ratios are therefore $\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4} : 2 \times \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} : \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{4}$ or 9:6:1.
Carbon has a minor but important isotope $^{13}$C

The minor isotopes of many elements that appear at below the 1% level are not usually important, but one we cannot ignore is the 1.1% of $^{13}$C present in ordinary carbon, of which the main isotope is of course $^{12}$C. Another isotope, $^{14}$C, is radioactive and used in carbon dating, but its natural abundance is minute. The stable isotope $^{13}$C is not radioactive, but it is NMR active, as we shall soon see. If you look back at all the mass spectra illustrated so far in this chapter, you will see a small peak one mass unit higher than each peak: these are peaks arising from molecules containing $^{13}$C instead of $^{12}$C. The exact height of these peaks is useful as an indication of the number of carbon atoms in the molecule. Each carbon has a 1.1% chance of being $^{13}$C rather than $^{12}$C, so the more C atoms there are the bigger this chance becomes. If there are $n$ carbon atoms in a molecular ion, then the ratio of $M^+$ to $[M + 1]^+$ is 100:$(1.1 \times n)$.

Look at the spectrum below: it’s the fuel additive Topanol 354, whose structure and molecular formula are shown. With 15 carbons, there’s a 16.5% chance there will be one $^{13}$C atom in the molecule, and you can clearly see the sizeable $M^+$ peak at 237. We can ignore the possibility of having two $^{13}$C atoms as the probability is so small.

Atomic composition can be determined by high-resolution mass spectrometry

Ordinary mass spectra tell us the molecular weight (MW) of the molecule: we could easily see, for example, that the bee pheromone on p. 48 had MW 114 even without knowing its structure. When we revealed it was $C_7H_{14}O$, we had to use other information to infer this, because 114 could also be many other things, such as $C_8H_{18}$ or $C_6H_{10}O_2$ or $C_6H_{14}N_2$. These different atomic compositions for the same molecular weight can nonetheless be distinguished if we know the exact molecular weight, since individual isotopes have non-integral masses (except $^{12}$C by definition). The table below gives these masses to five decimal places, which is the sort of accuracy you need for meaningful results. Such accurate mass measurements are obtained by a technique called high-resolution mass spectrometry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Isotopes</th>
<th>Approximate ratio</th>
<th>Exact ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carbon</td>
<td>$^{12}$C, $^{13}$C</td>
<td>98.9:1.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chlorine</td>
<td>$^{35}$Cl, $^{37}$Cl</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>75.8:24.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bromine</td>
<td>$^{79}$Br, $^{81}$Br</td>
<td>1:1</td>
<td>50.5:49.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H, N, O, S, P, F, and I have only very small amounts of isotopes other than $^{1}$H, $^{14}$N, $^{16}$O, $^{31}$P, $^{29}$Si, and $^{127}$I. The real oddity though is tin, which exists as a mixture of 10 different stable isotopes, the major ones being $^{111}$Sn (15%), $^{115}$Sn (8%), $^{116}$Sn (24%), $^{119}$Sn (9%), $^{120}$Sn (33%), $^{122}$Sn (5%), and $^{124}$Sn (6%). In reality the precise ratio of isotopes for any element varies according to its source, a fact which can supply useful forensic information.
Exact masses of common elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Isotope</th>
<th>Mass number</th>
<th>Exact mass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hydrogen</td>
<td>$^1$H</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.00783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carbon</td>
<td>$^{12}$C</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12.00000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carbon</td>
<td>$^{13}$C</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13.00335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitrogen</td>
<td>$^{14}$N</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14.00307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oxygen</td>
<td>$^{16}$O</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>15.99492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fluorine</td>
<td>$^{19}$F</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>18.99840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phosphorus</td>
<td>$^{31}$P</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>30.97376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfur</td>
<td>$^{32}$S</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>31.97207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chlorine</td>
<td>$^{35}$Cl</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>34.96886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chlorine</td>
<td>$^{37}$Cl</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>36.96590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bromine</td>
<td>$^{79}$Br</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>78.91835</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bromine</td>
<td>$^{81}$Br</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>80.91635</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the bee pheromone on p. 48, the accurate mass turns out to be 114.1039. The table below compares possible atomic compositions for an approximate MW 114, and the result is conclusive. The exact masses to three places of decimals fit the observed exact mass only for the composition $C_7H_{14}O$. You may not think the fit is very good when you look at the two numbers, but notice the difference in the error expressed as parts per million. One answer stands out from the rest. Note that even two places of decimals would be enough to distinguish these four compositions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Composition</th>
<th>Calculated $M^+$</th>
<th>Observed $M^+$</th>
<th>Error in ppm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$C_6H_{10}O_2$</td>
<td>114.068075</td>
<td>114.1039</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_6H_{14}N_2$</td>
<td>114.115693</td>
<td>114.1039</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_7H_{14}O$</td>
<td><strong>114.104457</strong></td>
<td><strong>114.1039</strong></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_8H_{18}$</td>
<td>114.140844</td>
<td>114.1039</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the rest of the book, whenever we state that a molecule has a certain atomic composition you can assume that it has been determined by high-resolution mass spectrometry on the molecular ion.

One thing you may have noticed in the table above is that there are no entries with just one nitrogen atom. Two nitrogen atoms, yes; one nitrogen no! This is because any complete molecule with C, H, O, S, and just one nitrogen in it has an odd molecular weight. This is because C, O, S, and N all have even atomic weights—only H has an odd atomic weight. Nitrogen is the only element from C, O, S, and N that can form an odd number of bonds (3). Molecules with one nitrogen atom must have an odd number of hydrogen atoms and hence an odd molecular weight.

Quick nitrogen count (for molecules containing any of the elements C, H, N, O, and S)

Molecules with an odd molecular weight must have an odd number of nitrogen atoms. Molecules with even molecular weight must have an even number of nitrogen atoms or none at all.
Nuclear magnetic resonance

What does it do?

Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) allows us to detect atomic nuclei and say what sort of environment they are in within the molecule. In a molecule such as propanol, the hydrogen atom of the hydroxyl group is clearly different from the hydrogen atoms of its carbon skeleton—it can be displaced by sodium metal, for example. NMR (actually $^1\text{H}$, or proton, NMR) can easily distinguish between these two sorts of hydrogens by detecting the environment the hydrogen’s nucleus finds itself in. Moreover, it can also distinguish between all the other different sorts of hydrogen atoms present. Likewise, carbon (more precisely $^{13}\text{C}$) NMR can easily distinguish between the three different carbon atoms. NMR is extremely versatile: it can even scan living human brains (see picture) but the principle is still the same: being able to detect nuclei (and hence atoms) in different environments.

NMR uses a strong magnetic field

Imagine for a moment that we were able to ‘switch off’ the earth’s magnetic field. Navigation would be made much harder since all compasses would be useless, with their needles pointing randomly in any direction. However, as soon as we switched the magnetic field back on, they would all point north—their lowest energy state. Now if we wanted to force a needle to point south we would have to use up energy and, of course, as soon as we let go, the needle would return to its lowest energy state, pointing north.

In a similar way, some atomic nuclei act like tiny compass needles when placed in a magnetic field and have different energy levels according to the direction in which they are ‘pointing’. (We will explain how a nucleus can ‘point’ somewhere in a moment.) A real compass needle can rotate through 360° and have an essentially infinite number of different energy levels, all higher in energy than the ‘ground state’ (pointing north). Fortunately, things are simpler with an atomic nucleus: its energy levels are quantized, just like the energy levels of an electron, which you will meet in the next chapter, and it can adopt only certain specific energy levels. This is like a compass which points, say, only north or south, or maybe only north, south, east, or west, and nothing in between. Just as a compass needle has to be made of a magnetic material to feel the effect of the earth’s magnetism, so it is that only certain nuclei are ‘magnetic’. Many (including ‘normal’ carbon-12, $^{12}\text{C}$) do not interact with a magnetic field at all and cannot be observed in an NMR machine. But, importantly for us in this chapter, the minor carbon isotope $^{13}\text{C}$ does display magnetic properties, as does $^1\text{H}$, the most abundant atomic nucleus on earth. When a $^{13}\text{C}$ or $^1\text{H}$ atom finds itself in a magnetic field, it has two available energy states: it can either align itself with the field (‘north’ you could say), which would be the lowest energy state, or against the field (‘south’), which is higher in energy.
The property of a nucleus that allows magnetic interactions, i.e. the property possessed by $^{13}$C and $^1$H but not by $^{12}$C, is spin. If you conceive of a $^{13}$C and $^1$H nucleus spinning, you can see how the nucleus can point in one direction—it is the axis of the spin that is aligned with or against the field.

Let’s return to the compass for a moment. If you want to move a compass needle away from pointing north, you have to push it—and expend energy as you do so. If you put the compass next to a bar magnet, the attraction towards the magnet is much greater than the attraction towards the north pole, and the needle now points at the magnet. You also have to push much harder if you want to move the needle. Exactly how hard it is to turn the compass needle depends on how strong the magnetic field is and also on how well the needle is magnetized—if it is only weakly magnetized, it is much easier to turn it round and if it isn’t magnetized at all, it is free to rotate.

Likewise, for a nucleus in a magnetic field, the difference in energy between the nuclear spin aligned with and against the applied field depends on:

- how strong the magnetic field is, and
- the magnetic properties of the nucleus itself.

The stronger the magnetic field, the greater the energy difference between the two alignments of the nucleus. Now there is an unfortunate thing about NMR: the energy difference between the nuclear spin being aligned with the magnetic field and against it is really very small—so small that we need a very, very strong magnetic field to see any difference at all.

**NMR also uses radio waves**

A $^1$H or $^{13}$C nucleus in a magnetic field can have two energy levels, and energy is needed to flip the nucleus from the more stable state to the less stable state. But since the amount of energy needed is so small, it can be provided by low-energy electromagnetic radiation of radio-wave frequency. Radio waves flip the nucleus from the lower energy state to the higher state. Turn off the radio pulse and the nucleus returns to the lower energy state. When it does so, the energy comes out again, and this (a tiny pulse of radio frequency electromagnetic radiation) is what we detect.

We can now sum up how an NMR machine works.

1. The sample of the unknown compound is dissolved in a suitable solvent, placed in a narrow tube, and put inside a very strong electromagnet. To even out imperfections in
the sample, the tube is spun very fast by a stream of air. Inside the magnetic field, any atomic nuclei with a nuclear spin now possess different energy levels, the exact number of different energy levels depending on the value of the nuclear spin. For $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR there are two energy levels.

2. The sample is irradiated with a short pulse of radiofrequency energy. This disturbs the equilibrium balance between the two energy levels: some nuclei absorb the energy and are promoted to a higher energy level.

3. When the pulse finishes, the radiation given out as the nuclei fall back down to the lower energy level is detected using what is basically a sophisticated radio receiver.

4. After lots of computation, the results are displayed in the form of intensity (i.e. number of absorptions) against frequency. Here is an example, which we shall return to in more detail later:

![Graph showing absorption of radiation by $^{13}$C nuclei](image)

Why do chemically distinct nuclei absorb energy at different frequencies?

In the spectrum you see above, each peak represents a different kind of carbon atom: each one absorbs energy (or resonates—hence the term ‘nuclear magnetic resonance’) at a different frequency. But why should carbon atoms be ‘different’? We have told you two factors that affect the energy difference (and therefore the frequency)—the magnetic field strength and what sort of nucleus is being studied. So you might expect all $^{13}$C nuclei to resonate at one particular frequency and all protons ($^1$H) to resonate at one (different) frequency. But they don’t.

The variation in frequency for different carbon atoms must mean that the energy jump from ‘nucleus-aligned-with’ to ‘nucleus-aligned-against’ the applied magnetic field must be different for each type of carbon atom. The reason is that the $^{13}$C nuclei in question experience a magnetic field that is not quite the same as the magnetic field that we apply. Each nucleus is surrounded by electrons, and in a magnetic field these will set up a tiny electric current. This current will set up its own magnetic field (rather like the magnetic field set up by the electrons of an electric current moving through a coil of wire or solenoid), which will oppose the magnetic field that we apply. The electrons are said to shield the nucleus from the external magnetic field. If the electron distribution varies from $^{13}$C atom to $^{12}$C atom, so does the local magnetic field experienced by its nucleus, and so does the corresponding resonating frequency.
Changes in the distribution of electrons around a nucleus affect:

- the local magnetic field that the nucleus experiences
- the frequency at which the nucleus resonates
- the chemistry of the molecule at that atom

This variation in frequency is known as the chemical shift. Its symbol is $\delta$.

As an example, consider ethanol (right). The red carbon attached to the OH group will have a smaller share of the electrons around it compared to the green carbon since the oxygen atom is more electronegative and pulls electrons towards it, away from the red carbon atom.

The magnetic field that the red carbon nucleus feels will therefore be slightly greater than that felt by the green carbon, which has a greater share of the electrons, since the red carbon is less shielded from the applied external magnetic field—in other words it is deshielded. Since the carbon attached to the oxygen feels a stronger magnetic field (it is more ‘exposed’ to the field as it has lost some of its electronic shielding) there will be a greater energy difference between the two alignments of its nucleus. The greater the energy difference, the higher the resonant frequency (energy is proportional to frequency). So for ethanol we would expect the red carbon with the OH group attached to resonate at a higher frequency than the green carbon, and indeed this is exactly what the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum shows.

The chemical shift scale

When you look at a real NMR spectrum you will see that the scale does not appear to be in magnetic field units, nor in frequency, nor yet even energy, units, but in ‘parts per million’ (ppm). There is a very good reason for this. The exact frequency at which the nucleus resonates depends on the external applied magnetic field. This means that if the sample is run on a machine with a different magnetic field, it will resonate at a different frequency. It would make life very difficult if we couldn’t say exactly where our signal was, so we say how far it is from some reference sample, as a fraction of the operating frequency of the machine. We know that all protons resonate at approximately the same frequency in a given magnetic field and that the exact frequency depends on what sort of chemical environment it is in, which in turn depends on its electrons. This approximate frequency is the operating frequency of the machine and simply depends on the strength of the magnet—the stronger the magnet, the larger the operating frequency. The precise value of the operating frequency is simply the frequency at which a standard reference sample resonates. In everyday use, rather than actually referring to the strength of the magnet in tesla, chemists usually just refer to its operating frequency. A 9.4 T NMR machine is referred to as a 400 MHz spectrometer since that is the frequency in this strength field at which the protons in the reference sample resonate; other nuclei, for example $^{13}$C, would resonate at a different frequency, but the strength is arbitrarily quoted in terms of the proton operating frequency.
The reference sample—tetramethylsilane, TMS

The compound we use as a reference sample is usually tetramethylsilane, TMS. This is silane (SiH$_4$) with each of the hydrogen atoms replaced by methyl groups to give Si(CH$_3$)$_4$. The four carbon atoms attached to silicon are all equivalent and, because silicon is more electropositive than carbon, they are fairly electron-rich (or shielded), which means they resonate at a frequency a little less than that of most organic compounds. This is useful because it means our reference sample is not bang in the middle of our spectrum!

The chemical shift, $\delta$, in parts per million (ppm) of a given nucleus in our sample is defined in terms of the resonance frequency as:

$$\delta = \frac{\text{frequency (Hz)} - \text{frequency TMS (Hz)}}{\text{frequency TMS (MHz)}}$$

No matter what the operating frequency (i.e. strength of the magnet) of the NMR machine, the signals in a given sample (e.g. ethanol) will always occur at the same chemical shifts. In ethanol the (red) carbon attached to the OH resonates at 57.8 ppm whilst the (green) carbon of the methyl group resonates at 18.2 ppm. Notice that by definition TMS itself resonates at 0 ppm. The carbon nuclei in most organic compounds resonate at greater chemical shifts, normally between 0 and 200 ppm.

Now, let’s return to the sample spectrum you saw on p. 54 and which is reproduced below, and you can see the features we have discussed. This is a 100 MHz spectrum; the horizontal axis is actually frequency but is usually quoted in ppm of the field of the magnet, so each unit is one ppm of 100 MHz, that is, 100 Hz. We can tell immediately from the three peaks at 176.8, 66.0, and 19.9 ppm that there are three different types of carbon atom in the molecule.

### Regions of the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum

But we can do better than this: we can also work out what sort of chemical environment the carbon atoms are in. All $^{13}$C spectra can be divided into four major regions: saturated carbon atoms (0–50 ppm), saturated carbon atoms next to oxygen (50–100 ppm), unsaturated carbon atoms (100–150 ppm), and unsaturated carbon atoms next to oxygen, i.e. C=O groups (150 to about 200 ppm).
The spectrum you just saw is in fact that of lactic acid (2-hydroxypropanoic acid). When you turned the last page, you made some lactic acid from glucose in the muscles of your arm—it is the breakdown product from glucose when you do anaerobic exercise. Each of lactic acid’s carbon atoms gives a peak in a different region of the spectrum.

But hang on one moment, you may say—don’t we only see signals for carbon-13 nuclei and not carbon-12, which make up most of the carbon atoms in any normal sample of lactic acid? The answer is yes, and indeed only about 1.1% (the natural abundance of 13C) of the C atoms in any sample are ‘visible’ by 13C NMR. But since those 13C atoms will be distributed more or less randomly through the sample, this fact does not affect any of the arguments about the appearance of the spectrum. What it does mean, however, is that 13C NMR is not as sensitive as 1H NMR, for example, where essentially all of the H atoms in the sample will be ‘visible’.

**Different ways of describing chemical shift**

The chemical shift scale runs to the left from zero (where TMS resonates), i.e. backwards from the usual style. Chemical shift values around zero are obviously small but are confusingly called ‘high field’ because this is the high magnetic field end of the scale. We suggest you say ‘large’ or ‘small’ chemical shift and ‘large’ or ‘small’ δ, but ‘high’ or ‘low’ field to avoid confusion. Alternatively, use ‘upfield’ for high field (small δ) and ‘downfield’ for low field (large δ).

One helpful description we have already used is shielding. Each carbon nucleus is surrounded by electrons that shield the nucleus from the applied field. Simple saturated carbon nuclei are the most shielded: they have small chemical shifts (0–50 ppm) and resonate at high field. One electronegative oxygen atom moves the chemical shift downfield into the 50–100 ppm region. The nucleus has become deshielded. Unsaturated carbon atoms experience even less shielding (100–150 ppm) because of the way in which electrons are distributed around the nucleus. If they are also bonded to oxygen (the most common unsaturated carbons bonded to oxygen are those of carbonyl groups), then the nucleus is even more deshielded and moves to the largest chemical shifts around 200 ppm. The next diagram summarizes these different ways of talking about NMR spectra.

**A guided tour of the 13C NMR spectra of some simple molecules**

So, on to some real 13C NMR spectra. Our very first compound, hexanedioic acid, has the simple NMR spectrum shown here. The first question is: why only three peaks for six carbon atoms? Because of the symmetry of the molecule, the two carboxylic acids are identical and give one peak at 174.2 ppm. By the same token C2 and C5 are identical, and C3 and C4 are identical. These are all in the saturated region 0–50 ppm but the carbons next to the electron-withdrawing CO₂H group will be more deshielded than the others. So we assign C2/C5 to the peak at 33.2 ppm and C3/C4 to 24.0 ppm.
Heptan-2-one is the bee pheromone mentioned on p. 48. It has no symmetry so all its seven carbon atoms are different. The carbonyl group is easy to identify (208.8 ppm) but the rest are more difficult. The two carbon atoms next to the carbonyl group come at lowest field, while C7 is at highest field (13.9 ppm). It is important that there is the right number of signals at about the right chemical shift. If that is so, we are not worried if we cannot assign each frequency to a precise carbon atom (such as atoms 4, 5, and 6, for example). As we said before, don’t be concerned with the intensities of the peaks.

You met BHT on p. 8: its formula is C15H24O and the first surprise in its NMR spectrum is that there are only seven signals for the 15 carbon atoms. There is obviously a lot of symmetry; in fact the molecule has a plane of symmetry vertically as it is drawn here, and the coloured blobs indicate pairs or groups of carbons related to each other by symmetry which therefore give only one signal. The very strong signal at $\delta = 30.4$ ppm belongs to the six identical methyl groups on the $t$-butyl groups (coloured red) and the other two signals in the 0–50 ppm range are the methyl group at C4 and the brown central carbons of the $t$-butyl groups. In the aromatic region there are only four signals as the two halves of the molecule are the same. As with the last example, we are not concerned with exactly which is which—we just check that there are the right number of signals with the right chemical shifts.

Paracetamol is a familiar painkiller with a simple structure—it too is a phenol but in addition it carries an amide substituent on the benzene ring. Its NMR spectrum contains one saturated carbon atom at 24 ppm (the methyl group of the amide side chain), one carbonyl group at 168 ppm, and four other peaks at 115, 122, 132, and 153 ppm. These are the carbons of the benzene ring. Why four peaks? The two halves of the benzene ring must be the same (only one signal for each pair of carbons coloured red and green), which tells us that the NHCOCH3 group doesn’t really lie just to one side as shown here, but rotates rapidly, meaning that on average the two sides of the ring are indistinguishable, as in BHT. Why is one of these aromatic peaks in the C=O region at 153 ppm? This must be C4 because it is bonded to oxygen, a reminder that carbonyl groups are not the only unsaturated carbon atoms bonded to oxygen (see the chart on p. 56), although it is not as deshielded as the true C=O group at 168 ppm.
The $^1$H NMR spectrum

$^1$H NMR (or ‘proton NMR’) spectra are recorded in the same way as $^{13}$C NMR spectra: radio waves are used to study the energy level differences of nuclei, but this time they are $^1$H and not $^{13}$C nuclei. Like $^{13}$C, $^1$H nuclei have a nuclear spin of 1/2 and so have two energy levels: they can be aligned either with or against the applied magnetic field. Here, as an example, is the $^1$H NMR spectrum of acetic (ethanoic) acid, MeCO$_2$H, and below it the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum.

$^1$H NMR spectra have many similarities with $^{13}$C NMR spectra: the scale runs from right to left and the zero point is given by the same reference compound, though it is the proton resonance of Me$_4$Si rather than the carbon resonance that defines the zero point. However, as you immediately see in the spectrum above, the scale is much smaller, ranging over only about 10 ppm instead of the 200 ppm needed for carbon. This makes perfect sense: the variation in the chemical
shift is a measure of the shielding of the nucleus by the electrons around it. There is inevitably less change possible in the distribution of two electrons around a hydrogen nucleus than in that of the eight valence electrons around a carbon nucleus. Nonetheless the acetic acid spectrum above shows you that, just as you would expect, the H atom of the carboxylic acid group, directed attached to an oxygen atom, is more deshielded than the H atoms of acetic acid’s methyl group.

We can also divide up the $^1H$ NMR spectrum into regions that parallel the regions of the $^{13}C$ NMR spectrum. Hydrogen atoms bonded to saturated carbon atoms appear in the right-hand, more shielded (between 5 and 0 ppm) region of the spectrum, while those bonded to unsaturated carbon atoms (alkenes, arenes, or carbonyl groups primarily) appear in the left-hand, less shielded region between 10 and 5 ppm. As with the $^{13}C$ spectrum, nearby oxygen atoms withdraw electron density and make the signals appear towards the left-hand end of each of these regions.

Some examples of $^1H$ NMR spectra

You can see exactly how $^1H$ NMR signals fall into these regions in the following collection of spectra. The first two spectra each contain only one peak because every proton in benzene and in cyclohexane is identical. In benzene the peak is at 7.5 ppm, where we expect a proton attached to an unsaturated C atom to lie, while in cyclohexane it is at 1.35 ppm because all the cyclohexane protons are attached to saturated C atoms. Again, to help comparisons, we have also included the $^{13}C$ spectra of benzene and cyclohexane. For benzene, the signal falls in the unsaturated C region (100–150 ppm), at 129 ppm, while for cyclohexane it is in the saturated C region, at 27 ppm.
tert-Butyl methyl ether is a solvent and fuel additive whose $^1$H spectrum illustrates the effect of a nearby oxygen atom: the large peak at 1.1 ppm comes from the nine H atoms making up three identical methyl groups of the tert-butyl part of the molecule, while the three H atoms of the methyl part of the ether are at 3.15 ppm. These three hydrogen atoms are all bonded directly to a C atom, which itself is bonded to O, whose electronegativity attracts their electrons, deshielding the $^1$H nuclei and shifting them to larger chemical shift.

The plane of symmetry we noted in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of BHT means that the $^1$H NMR spectrum of the related compound Topanol 354 is relatively simple for a compound with 26 H atoms: a large peak and two small peaks between 5 and 0 ppm for the 18 protons of the tert-butyl groups and the three protons of each methyl group, and another small peak between 5 and 10 ppm for the two protons attached to the aromatic ring.
1H NMR spectrum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical shift (δ, ppm)</th>
<th>Carbon atom</th>
<th>n-butanol</th>
<th>isobutanol</th>
<th>tert-butanol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n-butanol</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>70.2</td>
<td>69.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isobutanol</td>
<td>36.0</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>32.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tert-butanol</td>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each alcohol has a saturated carbon atom next to oxygen, all appearing in the region typical of saturated carbon atoms next to oxygen (p. 56). Then there are carbons next door but one to oxygen: they are back in the 0–50 ppm region but at its low field end—about 30–35 ppm—because they are still deshielded by the nearby oxygen atom. Two of the alcohols have carbon(s) one further away still at yet smaller chemical shift (further upfield, more shielded) at about 20 ppm, but only the n-butanol has a more remote carbon still at 15.2. The number and the chemical shift of the signals identify the molecules very clearly.

A common situation chemists find themselves in is that they have some idea about a molecular formula—from high-resolution mass spectrometry, for example—and need to match a structure to NMR data. Here’s an example: the formula C₃H₆O is represented by seven reasonable structures, as shown in the margin. The three ¹³C NMR spectra below represent three of these compounds. The challenge is to identify which three. We will give you some clues, and then we suggest you try to work out the answer for yourself before turning the page.

Simple symmetry can distinguish structures A, C, and E from the rest as these three have only two types of carbon atom. The two carbonyl compounds, D and E, will have one peak in the 150–200 ppm region but D has two different saturated carbon atoms while E has only one. The two alkenes, F and G, both have two unsaturated carbon atoms (100–200 ppm) but in ether G one of them is joined to oxygen—you would expect it therefore to be deshielded and to appear between 150 and 200 ppm.

NMR is a powerful tool for solving unknown structures

To illustrate the power of NMR, consider these three alcohols of formula C₄H₁₀O, each of which has a quite different ¹³C NMR spectrum. Peaks from the spectra are shown in the table below.

The meanings of n-, iso-, and tert- were covered in Chapter 2 (p. 26).
The three saturated compounds (A, B, and C) present the greatest problem. The epoxide, B, has two different carbon atoms next to oxygen (50–100 ppm) and one normal saturated carbon atom (0–50 ppm). The remaining two both have one signal in the 0–50 ppm region and one in the 50–100 ppm region, and only the more powerful techniques of $^1$H NMR and, to a certain extent, infrared spectroscopy (which we will move on to shortly) will distinguish them reliably.

Here are NMR spectra of three of these molecules. Before reading further see if you can assign them to the structures on the previous page. Try also to suggest which signals belong to which carbon atoms.

We hope these didn’t give you too much trouble. The only carbonyl compound with two identical carbons is acetone (E) so spectrum 1 must be that one. Notice the very low field signal (206.6 ppm) typical of a simple ketone C=O carbon atom. Spectrum 2 has two unsaturated carbons and a saturated carbon next to oxygen so it must be F or G. In fact it has to be F as both unsaturated carbons are similar (137 and 116 ppm) and neither is next to oxygen (>150 ppm). This leaves spectrum 3, which appears to have no carbon atoms next to oxygen as all chemical shifts are less than 50 ppm. No compound fits that description and the two signals at 48.0 and 48.2 ppm are suspiciously close to the arbitrary 50 ppm borderline. They are, of course, both next to oxygen and this is compound B.

**Infrared spectra**

**Functional groups are identified by infrared spectra**

$^{13}$C and $^1$H NMR spectra tell us a lot about the hydrocarbon skeleton of a molecule, and mass spectroscopy weighs the molecule as a whole. But none of these techniques reveal much about functional groups. Some functional groups, for example C=O or C=C, can be seen in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum because they contain carbon atoms, but many, such as ethers or nitro groups, cannot be seen at all by NMR—they show their presence only by the way they affect the chemical shifts of nearby H or C atoms.
Infrared (IR) spectroscopy, however, provides a direct way of observing these functional groups because it detects the stretching and bending of bonds rather than any property of the atoms themselves. It is particularly good at detecting the stretching of unsymmetrical bonds of the kind found in functional groups such as OH, C=O, NH$_2$, and NO$_2$, and for this reason IR spectroscopy complements NMR beautifully as a method for structural analysis.

NMR requires electromagnetic waves in the radio-wave region of the spectrum to make nuclei flip from one state to another. The amount of energy needed for stretching and bending individual bonds, while still very small, is rather greater, and therefore corresponds to much shorter wavelengths. These wavelengths lie in the infrared, just to the long wavelength side of visible light (wavelengths between 10 and 100 mm). When the carbon skeleton of a molecule vibrates, all the bonds stretch and relax in combination and by and large these absorptions are unhelpful. However, some bonds stretch essentially independently of the rest of the molecule, and we can use these to identify functional groups. This occurs if the bond is either:

- much stronger or weaker than others nearby, or
- between atoms that are much heavier or lighter than their neighbours

Indeed, the relationship between the frequency of the bond vibration, the mass of the atoms, and the strength of the bond is essentially the same as Hooke’s law for a simple harmonic oscillator. Hooke’s law shows that the frequency of the vibration $\nu$ is proportional to the square root of a force constant $f$—more or less the bond strength—and inversely proportional to the square root of a reduced mass $\mu$, that is, the product of the masses of the two atoms forming the bond divided by their sum:

$$\mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2}$$

The precise maths is less important to us as chemists than the simple result.

- **Stronger bonds vibrate faster and so do lighter atoms.**

Infrared spectra are simple absorption spectra. The sample is dissolved in a solvent (or sometimes deposited on the surface of an inert NaCl plate) and exposed to infrared radiation. The wavelength scanned across the spectrum and the amount of infrared energy able to pass through the sample are plotted against the wavelength of the radiation. Just to make the numbers work out nicely, IR spectra don’t usually indicate the wavelength but instead a value known as the ‘wavenumber’, in cm$^{-1}$, which is simply the number of wavelengths in one centimetre. For a typical bond this will fall between 4000 (short wavelengths, i.e. high frequency) and 500 (long wavelengths, i.e. low frequency). Strong bonds, and light atoms, vibrate fast, so you expect to see these bonds at the high wavenumber end of the spectrum, always plotted at the left-hand end.

To illustrate what we mean, here are some typical values for the IR frequencies of a selection of bonds grouped in two ways. Firstly, a series of bonds to increasingly heavy atoms (D, deuterium, has twice the mass of H, and Cl has about twice the mass of O) and secondly a series of bonds of increasing strength.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond</th>
<th>wavenumber cm$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–H</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–D</td>
<td>2200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–O</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–Cl</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C=O</td>
<td>2143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C=O</td>
<td>1715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–O</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hooke’s law** describes the movement of two masses attached to a spring. You may have met it if you have studied physics. You need not be concerned here with its derivation, just the result. It takes the following form:

$$\nu = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{f}{\mu}}$$

where $\nu$ is the frequency, $f$ is the force constant and $\mu$ is the reduced mass. $c$ is a constant needed to make the units work.
Here’s what a typical IR spectrum actually looks like: notice that the wavenumber scale runs from high to low but also that absorption maxima are shown upside down (IR spectra plot 'transmission')—you might say that IR spectra are upside down and back to front. If you look carefully you will also see that the scale changes in the middle to give more space to the more detailed right-hand half of the spectrum.

This is the spectrum of cyanoacetamide, the compound shown on the right. The overall shape of the spectrum is characteristic of this compound, but as chemists we need to be able to interpret the spectrum, and we can do this by dividing it up into regions, just as we did with the NMR spectra.

There are four important regions of the infrared spectrum

The first region, from 4000 to 2500 cm⁻¹ is the region for C–H, N–H, and O–H bond stretching. Most of the atoms in an organic molecule (C, N, O, for example) are about the same weight (12, 14, 16...). Hydrogen is an order of magnitude lighter than any of these and so it dominates the stretching frequency by the large effect it has on the reduced mass, so any bond to H comes right at the left-hand end of the spectrum.

Even the strongest bonds between non-H atoms—triple bonds such as C≡C or C≡N—absorb at slightly lower frequencies than bonds to hydrogen: these are in the next region, the triple bond region from about 2500 to 2000 cm⁻¹. This and the other two regions of the spectrum follow in logical order of bond strength as the reduced masses are all about the same: C=C and C=O double bonds appear about 2000–1500 cm⁻¹ and at the right-hand end of the spectrum come single bonds, below 1500 cm⁻¹. These regions are summarized in this chart, which you should memorize.

**Reduced mass and atomic mass**

We introduced the idea of reduced mass on p. 64. To illustrate the effect of H on reduced mass, consider this: the reduced mass of a C–C bond is (12*12)/(12+12), i.e. 144/24 = 6.0. If we change one of these atoms for H, the reduced mass changes to (12*1)/(12+1), i.e. 12/13 = 0.92, but if we change it instead for F, the reduced mass changes to (12*19)/(12+19), i.e. 228/31 = 7.35. There is a small change when we increase the mass to 19 (F), but an enormous change when we decrease it to 1 (H).
Looking back at the spectrum of cyanoacetamide on p. 65, we see peaks in the X–H region at about 3300 and 2950 cm$^{-1}$, which are the N–H and C–H stretches of the NH$_2$ and CH$_2$ groups. The one rather weak peak in the triple bond region (2270 cm$^{-1}$) is the C≡N group and the strong peak at about 1670 cm$^{-1}$ belongs to the C=O group. We shall explain soon why some IR peaks are stronger than others. The rest of the spectrum is in the single bond region. This region is not normally interpreted in detail but is characteristic of the compound as a whole rather in the way that a fingerprint is characteristic of an individual human being—similarly, it cannot be interpreted. It is indeed called the fingerprint region. The useful information from this spectrum is the presence of the C≡N and C=O groups and the exact position of the C=O absorption.

**The X–H region (4000–3000 cm$^{-1}$) distinguishes C–H, N–H, and O–H bonds**

The reduced masses of the C–H, N–H, and O–H combinations are all about the same. Any difference between the positions of the IR bands of these bonds must then be due to bond strength. In practice, C–H stretches occur at around 3000 cm$^{-1}$ (although they are of little use in identifying compounds, it’s a rare organic compound that has no C–H bonds), N–H stretches occur at about 3300 cm$^{-1}$, and O–H stretches higher still at around 3500 cm$^{-1}$. We can immediately deduce that the O–H bond is stronger than N–H, which is stronger than C–H. IR is a good way to measure such bond strengths.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond</th>
<th>Reduced mass, $\mu$</th>
<th>IR frequency, cm$^{-1}$</th>
<th>Typical bond strength, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–H</td>
<td>12/13 = 0.92</td>
<td>2900–3200</td>
<td>CH$_4$: 440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N–H</td>
<td>14/15 = 0.93</td>
<td>3300–3400</td>
<td>NH$_3$: 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O–H</td>
<td>16/17 = 0.94</td>
<td>3500–3600$^a$</td>
<td>H$_2$O: 500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$When not hydrogen-bonded: see below.

The form of the absorption bands resulting from X–H IR stretches are very different in these four compounds. Have a look at the shaded portions of the following spectra:
The IR peak of an NH group looks different (spectrum 1) from that of an NH₂ group (spectrum 2). A bond gives an independent vibration only if both bond strength and reduced mass are different from those of neighbouring bonds. In the case of an isolated N–H group, this is likely to be true and we usually get a sharp peak at about 3300 cm⁻¹, whether the NH group is part of a simple amine (R₂NH) or an amide (RCONHR). The NH₂ group is also independent of the rest of the molecule, but the two NH bonds inside the NH₂ group have identical force constants and reduced masses, and so vibrate as a single unit. Two equally strong bands appear: one for the two N–H bonds vibrating in phase (symmetric) and one for the two N–H bonds vibrating in opposition (antisymmetric). The antisymmetric vibration requires more energy and is at slightly higher frequency.

The O–H bands occur at higher frequency, sometimes as a sharp absorption at about 3600 cm⁻¹. More often, as in spectra 3 and 4, you will see a broad absorption at anywhere from 3500 to 2900 cm⁻¹. This is because OH groups form strong hydrogen bonds that vary in length and strength. A sharp absorption at 3600 cm⁻¹ indicates a non-hydrogen-bonded OH group; the lower the absorption frequency the stronger the H bond.

Alcohols form hydrogen bonds between the hydroxyl oxygen of one molecule and the hydroxyl hydrogen of another. These bonds are variable in length (although they are usually rather longer than normal covalent O–H bonds) and they slightly weaken the true covalent O–H bonds by varying amounts. When a bond varies in length and strength it will have a range of stretching frequencies distributed about a mean value. Alcohols, including the phenol shown in spectrum 3, typically give a rounded absorption at about 3300 cm⁻¹ (contrast the sharp shape of the N–H stretch in the same region you see in the spectra above). Carboxylic acids (RCO₂H) form hydrogen-bonded dimers with two strong H bonds between the carbonyl oxygen atom of one molecule and the acidic hydrogen of the other. These also vary considerably in length and strength, and usually give the very broad V-shaped absorbance you see in the benzoic acid spectrum 4.
The spectra of paracetamol and BHT (which you met on pp. 58–59) illustrate the effect of hydrogen bonding on peak shape. Paracetamol has a typical sharp peak at 3330 cm\(^{-1}\) for the N–H stretch and then a rounded absorption for the hydrogen-bonded O–H stretch from 3300 down to 3000 cm\(^{-1}\) in the gap between the N–H and C–H stretches. By contrast, BHT has a sharp absorption at 3600 cm\(^{-1}\) as the two large \(t\)-butyl groups prevent the typical hydrogen bond from forming.

You may be confused the first time you see the IR spectrum of a terminal alkyne, \(R–C≡C–H\), because you will see a strongish sharp peak at around 3300 cm\(^{-1}\) that looks just like an N–H stretch—the spectrum below (of methyl propynoate, also known as methyl propiolate) illustrates this. The displacement of this peak from the usual C–H stretch at about 3000 cm\(^{-1}\)
cannot be due to a change in the reduced mass and must be due to a marked increase in bond strength. The alkyne C–H bond is shorter and stronger than alkane C–H bonds.

The triple bond region (3000–2000 cm$^{-1}$)

This region is often empty, meaning that when you do see a peak between 2000 and 2500 you can be absolutely certain that the compound is an alkyne (usually at around 2100) or a nitrile (at 2250 cm$^{-1}$). There are examples above and on p. 65.
The double bond region is the most important in IR spectra

The most important absorptions in the double bond region are those of the carbonyl (C=O), alkene or arene (C=C), and nitro (NO₂) groups. All give rise to sharp bands, C=O gives one strong (i.e. intense) band anywhere between 1900 and 1500 cm⁻¹; alkene C=C gives one weak band at about 1640 cm⁻¹, and NO₂ gives two strong (intense) bands in the mid-1500s and mid-1300s cm⁻¹. Arenes usually give two or three bands in the region 1600–1500 cm⁻¹. We can illustrate several of these features in the spectrum shown below, which is that of 4-nitrocinnamaldehyde, shown in the margin.

![4-nitrocinnamaldehyde](image)

Why the nitro group gives two bands is easily understood. Just as with OH and NH₂, it is a matter of how many identical bonds are present in the same functional group. Carbonyl and alkene clearly have one double bond each. The nitro group at first sight appears to contain two different groups, N⁺–O⁻ and N=O, but delocalization means they are identical and we see absorption for symmetric and antisymmetric stretching vibrations. As with NH₂, more energy is associated with the antisymmetric vibration and it occurs at higher frequency (>1500 cm⁻¹).

Arenes, being rings, have a much more complex pattern of vibration that cannot be analysed simply. However, it’s worth noting that arene C=C bonds come at lower frequency (<1600 cm⁻¹) than alkene C=C bonds (>1600 cm⁻¹). Why? Well the individual C–C bonds in benzene are of course not full C=C double bonds—all six bonds are the same, and have the averaged character of one-and-a-half bonds each. Not surprisingly, the absorptions of these bonds fall right on the boundary between the single and double bond regions.

You’ve already seen the IR spectra of the three carbonyl compounds below in this chapter. It’s easy to identify the C=O peak in each spectrum—C=O peaks are always intense (you will see why in a minute) and come somewhere near 1700 cm⁻¹.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>C=O Peak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hexanedioic acid</td>
<td>1720 cm⁻¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heptan-2-one</td>
<td>1710 cm⁻¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paracetamol</td>
<td>1667 cm⁻¹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Delocalization is covered in Chapter 7; for the moment, just accept that both NO bonds are the same.
Why the positions of the peaks vary, and what we can make of this information, will be discussed in Chapter 18.

### Important absorptions in the double bond region

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2000</th>
<th>1900</th>
<th>1800</th>
<th>1700</th>
<th>1600</th>
<th>1500 cm⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- carbonyl \( C=O \)
- alkene \( C=C \)
- arenes \( 1600–1500 \)

**The strength of an IR absorption depends on dipole moment**

If you look back at the X–H regions (3000–4000 cm⁻¹) of the four spectra on pp. 66–67, you’ll notice something that at first sight seems odd. The N–H and O–H absorptions are stronger than the C–H absorptions at 3000 cm⁻¹, despite there being more C–H bonds in these molecules than O–H or N–H bonds. The reason for this is that the strength of an IR absorption varies with the change of dipole moment (see the box below for a definition) when the bond is stretched. If the bond is perfectly symmetrical, there is no change in dipole moment and there is no IR absorption. Obviously, the C=C bond is less polar than either C=O or N=O and its absorption is less intense in the IR. Indeed it may be absent altogether in a symmetrical alkene. By contrast the carbonyl group is very polarized, with oxygen attracting the electrons away from carbon, and stretching it causes a large change in dipole moment. C=O stretches are usually the strongest peaks in the IR spectrum. O–H and N–H stretches are stronger than C–H stretches because C–H bonds are only weakly polarized.

**Dipole moments**

Dipole moment depends on the variation in distribution of electrons along the bond and also its length, which is why stretching a bond can change its dipole moment. For bonds between unlike atoms, the larger the difference in electronegativity, the greater the dipole moment and the more it changes when stretched. For identical atoms (C=C, for example) the dipole moment, and its capacity to change with stretching, is much smaller. Stretching frequencies for symmetrical molecules can be measured using an alternative method known as Raman spectroscopy. This is an IR-based technique using scattered light that relies on the polarizability of bonds. Raman spectra are outside the scope of this book.

This is a good point to remind you of the various deductions we have made so far about IR spectra.

### Absorptions in IR spectra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position of band depends on:</th>
<th>reduced mass of atoms</th>
<th>bond strength</th>
<th>light atoms give high frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strength (intensity) of band depends on:</td>
<td>change in dipole moment</td>
<td>light bonds give high frequency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width of band depends on:</td>
<td>hydrogen bonding</td>
<td>large dipole moment gives strong absorption</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>strong H bond gives broad peak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The single bond region is used as a molecular fingerprint

The region below 1500 cm$^{-1}$ is where the single bond vibrations occur. Here our hope that individual bonds may vibrate independently of the rest of the molecule is usually doomed to disappointment. The atoms C, N, and O all have about the same atomic weight and C–C, C–N, and C–O single bonds all have about the same strength.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pair of atoms</th>
<th>Reduced mass</th>
<th>Bond strength $\text{kJ mol}^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–C</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–N</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–O</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, C–C bonds are often joined to other C–C bonds with virtually identical strength and reduced mass, and they have essentially no dipole moments. The only one of these single bonds of any value is C–O, which is polar enough to show up as a strong absorption at about 1100 cm$^{-1}$. Some other single bonds, such as C–Cl (weak and with a large reduced mass, so appearing at low frequency), are quite useful at about 700 cm$^{-1}$. Otherwise the single bond region is usually crowded with hundreds of absorptions from vibrations of all kinds used as a ‘fingerprint’ characteristic of the molecule but not really open to interpretation.

Among those hundreds of peaks in the fingerprint region there are some of a quite different kind. Stretching is not the only bond movement that leads to IR absorption. Bending of bonds, particularly C–H and N–H bonds, also leads to quite strong peaks. These are called deformations. Bending a bond is easier than stretching it (which is easier, stretching or bending an iron bar?). Consequently, bending absorptions need less energy and come at lower frequencies than stretching absorptions for the same bonds. These bands may not often be useful in identifying molecules, but you will notice them as they are often strong (they are usually stronger than C=C stretches, for example) and may wonder what they are.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deformation frequencies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH$_2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mass spectra, NMR, and IR combined make quick identification possible

If these methods are each as powerful as we have seen on their own, how much more effective they must be together! We shall finish this chapter with the identification of some simple unknown compounds using all three methods. The first is an industrial emulsifier used to blend solids and liquids into smooth pastes. Its electrospray mass spectrum shows it has $M + H$ with a mass of 90, so an odd molecular weight (89) suggests one nitrogen atom. High-resolution mass spectrometry reveals that the formula is C$_3$H$_7$NO.
The $^{13}$C NMR spectrum has only three peaks so two of the carbon atoms must be the same. There is one signal for saturated carbon next to oxygen, and two for other saturated carbons, one more downfield than the other.

The IR spectrum reveals a broad peak for an OH group with two sharp NH$_2$ peaks just protruding. If we put this together, we know we have C–OH and C–NH$_2$. Neither of these carbons can be duplicated (as there is only one O and only one N) so it must be the other two C atoms that are the same.
The next stage is one often overlooked. We don’t seem to have much information, but try and put the two fragments together, knowing the molecular formula, and there’s very little choice. The carbon chain (shown in red) could either be linear or branched and that’s it!

There is no room for double bonds or rings because we need to fit in the 11 hydrogen atoms. We cannot put N or O in the chain because we know from the IR that we have the groups OH and NH$_2$, which can each be joined only to one other group. Of the seven possibilities only the last two, A and B, are possible since they alone have two identical carbon atoms (the two methyl groups in each case); all the other structures would have four separate signals in the NMR.

So, how can we choose between these? The solution is in the $^1$H NMR spectrum, which is shown below. There are only two peaks visible: one at 3.3 and one at 1.1 ppm. It’s quite common in $^1$H NMR spectra not to see signals for protons attached to O or N (you will see why in Chapter 13) so we can again rule out all structures with more than two different types of H attached to C. Again, we are left with A and B, confirming our earlier deductions. But the chemical shift of the signal at $\delta$ 3.3 tells us more: it has to be due to H atoms next to an oxygen atom because it is deshielded. The industrial emulsifier must therefore be A: 2-amino-2-methylpropan-1-ol.

Double bond equivalents help in the search for a structure

The last example was fully saturated but it is usually a help in deducing the structure of an unknown compound if, once you know the atomic composition, you immediately work out how much unsaturation there is. It may seem obvious to you that, as C$_4$H$_{11}$NO has no double bonds, then C$_4$H$_9$NO (losing two hydrogen atoms) must have one double bond, C$_4$H$_7$NO two double bonds, and so on. Well, it’s not quite as simple as that. Some possible structures for these formulae are shown below.
Some of these structures have the right number of double bonds (C=C and C=O), one has a triple bond, and three compounds use rings as an alternative way of ‘losing’ some hydrogen atoms. Each time you make a ring or a double bond, you have to lose two more hydrogen atoms. So double bonds (of all kinds) and rings are called **double bond equivalents** (DBEs).

You can work out how many DBEs there are in a given atomic composition just by making a drawing of one possible structure for the formula (all possible structures for the same formula have the same number of DBEs). Alternatively, you can calculate the DBEs if you wish. A saturated hydrocarbon with \( n \) carbon atoms has \((2n + 2)\) hydrogens. Oxygen doesn’t make any difference to this: there are the same number of Hs in a saturated ether or alcohol as in a saturated hydrocarbon.

So, for a compound containing C, H, and O only, take the actual number of hydrogen atoms away from \((2n + 2)\) and divide by two. Just to check that it works, for the unsaturated ketone \( \text{C}_7\text{H}_{12}\text{O} \) the calculation becomes:

1. Maximum number of H atoms for 7Cs: \(2n + 2 = 16\)
2. Subtract the actual number of H atoms (12): \(16 – 12 = 4\)
3. Divide by 2 to give the DBEs: \(4/2 = 2\)

Here are two more examples to illustrate the method. This unsaturated cyclic acid has: 16 – 10 = 6 divided by 2 = 3 DBEs and it has one alkene, one C=O, and one ring. Correct.

The aromatic ether has 16 – 8 = 8 divided by 2 gives 4 DBEs and it has three double bonds in the ring and the ring itself. Correct again. A benzene ring always gives four DBEs: three for the double bonds and one for the ring.

Nitrogen makes a difference. Every nitrogen adds one extra hydrogen atom because nitrogen can make three bonds. This means that the formula becomes: subtract actual number of hydrogens from \((2n + 2)\), add one for each nitrogen atom, and divide by two. We can try this out too. Here are some example structures of compounds with seven C atoms, one N and an assortment of unsaturation and rings.

The saturated compound has \((2n + 3)\) Hs instead of \((2n + 2)\). The saturated nitro compound has \((2n + 2) = 16\), less 15 (the actual number of Hs) plus one (the number of nitrogen atoms) = 2.
Divide this by 2 and you get 1 DBE, which is the N=O bond. We leave the third and fourth examples for you to work out, but the last compound (we shall meet this later as DMAP) has:

1. Maximum number of H atoms for 7Cs: \(2n + 2 = 16\)
2. Subtract the actual number of H atoms (10): \(16 - 10 = 6\)
3. Add number of nitrogens: \(6 + 2 = 8\)
4. Divide by 2 to give the DBEs: \(8/2 = 4\)

There are indeed three double bonds and a ring, making four in all. Make sure that you can do these calculations without much trouble.

If you have other elements too it is simpler just to draw a trial structure and find out how many DBEs there are. You may prefer this method for all compounds as it has the advantage of giving you one possible structure before you really start. One good tip is that if you have few hydrogens relative to the number of carbon atoms (at least four DBEs) then there is probably an aromatic ring in the compound.

Knowing the number of double bond equivalents for a formula derived by high-resolution mass spectrometry is a quick short cut to generating some plausible structures. You can then rule them in or rule them out by comparing with IR and NMR data.

**Working out the DBEs for an unknown compound**

1. Calculate the expected number of Hs in the saturated structure
   
   (a) For \(C_n\) there would be \(2n + 2\) H atoms if C, H, O only.
   
   (b) For \(C_nN_m\) there would be \(2n + 2 + m\) H atoms.
2. Subtract the actual number of Hs and divide by 2. This gives the DBEs.
3. If there are other atoms (Cl, B, P, etc.) it is best to draw a trial structure.
4. A DBE indicates either a ring or a double bond (a triple bond is two DBEs).
5. A benzene ring has four DBEs (three for the double bonds and one for the ring).
6. If there are few Hs, e.g. less than the number of Cs, suspect a benzene ring.
7. A nitro group has one DBE only.

**An unknown compound from a chemical reaction**

Our last example addresses a situation very common in chemistry—working out the structure of a product of a reaction. The situation is this: you have treated propenal (acrolein) with HBr in ethane-1,2-diol (or glycol) as solvent for 1 hour at room temperature. Distillation of the reaction mixture gives a colourless liquid, compound X. What is it?
The mass spectrum shows a molecular ion (181) much heavier than that of the starting material, $C_3H_4O = 56$. Indeed it shows two molecular ions at 181 and 179, typical of a bromo compound, so it looks as if HBr has added to the aldehyde somehow. High resolution mass spectrometry reveals a formula of $C_5H_9BrO_2$, and the five carbon atoms make it look as though the glycol has added in too. If we add everything together we find that the unknown compound is the result of the three reagents added together less one molecule of water.

Now, how many DBEs have we got? With a formula like this the safest bet is to draw something that has the right formula—it need not be what you expect the product to be. Here’s something in the margin—we just added atoms till we got there, and to do so we had to put in one double bond. $C_5H_9BrO_2$ has one DBE.

The next thing is to see what remains of the hydrocarbon skeleton of propenal by NMR. The $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of $\text{CH}_2\text{CHO}$ clearly shows one carbonyl group and two carbons on a double bond. These have all disappeared in the product and for the five carbon atoms we are left with four signals, two saturated, one next to oxygen, and one at 102.6 ppm, just creeping into the double bond region.

The IR spectrum gives us another puzzle—there appear to be no functional groups at all! No OH, no carbonyl, no alkene—what else can we have? The answer is an ether, or rather two ethers as there are two oxygen atoms. Now that we suspect an ether, we can look for the C–O single bond stretch in the IR spectrum and find it at 1128 cm$^{-1}$. 

It's often very helpful, when you have an unknown product, to subtract the molecular mass of the starting material from its molecular mass to find out what has been added (or taken away).
Each ether oxygen must have a carbon atom on each side of it, but we seem to have only one carbon in the saturated C next to O region (50–100 ppm) in the $^{13}$C NMR. Of course, as you’ve already seen, these limits are arbitrary, and in fact the peak at 102 ppm is also a saturated C next to O. It is unlikely to be an alkene anyway as it takes two carbons to make an alkene. What would deshield a saturated C as much as this? The answer is two oxygen atoms. We can explain the $^{13}$C spectrum if we assume a symmetrical fragment C—O—C—O—C accounts for three of the five carbon atoms.

So, where is our double bond equivalent? We know we haven’t got a double bond (no alkene and no C=O) so the DBE must be a ring. You might feel uncomfortable with rings, but you must get used to them. Five-, six-, and seven-membered rings are very common. In fact, most known organic compounds have rings in them. We could draw many cyclic structures for the formula we have here, such as this one in the margin.

But this won’t do as it would have five different carbon atoms. It is much more likely that the basic skeletons of the organic reagents are preserved, that is, that we have a two-carbon (from the ethylene glycol) and a three-carbon (from the propenal) fragment joined through oxygen atoms. This gives four possibilities, all containing the C—O—C—O—C fragment we deduced earlier (highlighted in black).

These are all quite reasonable, although we might prefer the third as it is easier to see how it derives from the reagents. The product is in fact this third possibility, and to be sure we would have to turn to the fine details of $^1$H NMR spectroscopy, which we return to in Chapter 13.

**Looking forward to Chapters 13 and 18**

We have only begun to explore the intricate world of identification of structure by spectroscopy. It is important that you recognize that structures are assigned, not because of some theoretical reason or because a reaction ‘ought’ to give a certain product, but because of sound evidence from spectra. You have seen four powerful methods—mass spectra, $^{13}$C and $^1$H NMR, and IR spectroscopy—in this chapter. In Chapter 13 we delve more deeply into the most important of all ($^1$H NMR) and, finally, in Chapter 18 we shall take each of these methods a little further and show how the structures of more complex unknown compounds are really deduced. The last problem we have discussed here is not really solvable without $^1$H NMR and in reality no-one would tackle any structure problem without this most powerful of all techniques. From now on spectroscopic evidence will appear in virtually every chapter. Even if we do not say so explicitly every time a new compound appears, the structure of this compound will in fact have been determined spectroscopically. Chemists make new compounds, and every time they do they characterize the compound with a full set of spectra. No scientific journal will accept that a new compound has been made unless a full description of all of these spectra are submitted with the report. Spectroscopy lets the science of organic chemistry advance.

**Further reading**

Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Structure of molecules

Connections

Building on
- How organic structures are drawn ch2
- Evidence used to determine organic structure ch3

Arriving at
- How we know that electrons have different energies
- How electrons fit into atomic orbitals
- How atomic orbitals combine to make molecular orbitals
- Why organic molecules adopt linear, planar, or tetrahedral structures
- Connection between shape and electronic structure
- Picturing the shape and energy of molecular orbitals in simple molecules
- Predicting the locations of lone pairs and empty orbitals

Looking forward to
- Reactions depend on interactions between molecular orbitals ch5 & ch6
- Reactivity derives from the energies of molecular orbitals ch5, ch10, & ch12
- Conjugation results from overlap of orbitals ch7
- NMR involves molecular orbitals ch13

Introduction

You may recognize the model above as DNA, the molecule that carries the genetic instructions for making all life on earth. The helical shape of DNA was discovered in 1953, and the detailed arrangement of atoms in the DNA molecule determines whether it is a recipe for an ant, an antelope, an antirrhinum, or anthrax.

You may also have recognized this molecule as buckminsterfullerene, a soccer-ball shaped allotrope of carbon. Buckminsterfullerene, named after the architect of the geodesic dome (which it resembles), was first identified in 1985 and earned its discoverers the Nobel Prize for chemistry in 1996.
Now, our question is this: how did you recognize these two compounds? You recognized their *shapes*. Molecules are not simply a jumble of atoms: they are atoms held together in a defined three-dimensional shape. A compound’s properties are determined not only by the atoms it contains, but also by the spatial arrangement of these atoms. Graphite and diamond—the two other allotropes of carbon—are both composed only of carbon atoms and yet their properties, both chemical and physical, are completely different because those carbon atoms are arranged very differently. Graphite has carbon atoms arranged in sheets of hexagons; diamond has them arranged in a tetrahedral array.

We know what shapes molecules have because we can see them—not literally of course, but by methods such as atomic force microscopy (AFM). AFM reveals the shape of pentacene, the molecule we would usually draw as the structure below, to be as shown on the left. This is the closest we can get to actually ‘seeing’ the atoms themselves.

Most analytical techniques reveal the shapes of molecules less directly. X-ray diffraction gives information about the arrangement of atoms in space, while the other spectroscopic methods you met in Chapter 3 reveal details of the composition of molecules (mass spectrometry) or the connectivity of the atoms they contain (NMR and IR).

From methods such as these, we know what shapes molecules have. This is why we urged you in Chapter 2 to make your drawings of molecules realistic—we can do this because we know what is realistic and what isn’t. But now we need to tackle the question of *why* molecules have the shapes they do. What is it about the properties of their constituent atoms which dictates those shapes? We will find that the answer not only allows us to explain and predict structure, but also allows us to explain and predict reactivity (which forms the topic of Chapter 5).

First of all, we need to consider why atoms form molecules at all. Some atoms (helium, for example) do so only with extreme reluctance, but the vast majority of atoms in the periodic table are much more stable in molecules than as free atoms. Here, for example, is methane: four hydrogen atoms arranged around a carbon in the shape of a tetrahedron.
Molecules hold together because positively charged atomic nuclei are attracted to negatively charged electrons, and this fact allows electrons to act as ‘glue’ between the nuclei. The C and H nuclei of methane are of course positively charged, but the ten electrons (a total of six from C, four from the H atoms) bind those positive charges into a molecular structure. Ammonia (NH₃) and water (H₂O) also have ten electrons in total, and we know that their molecular shapes are in fact just like that of methane, but with one or two hydrogen atoms removed.

This tells us something important: it is the number of electrons which determines the shape of a molecule, and not just the number of atoms (or atomic nuclei). But what determines how electrons are arranged? Why do ten electrons give rise to a tetrahedron, for example?

Before we can answer this question, we need to simplify our discussion a bit and think about electrons not in molecules but in individual atoms. We can then approximate the electronic structure of molecules by considering how the component atoms combine. It is important to remember throughout this chapter, however, that molecules are only very rarely ‘made’ directly by joining atoms together. What we are going to present is an analysis of the structure of molecules, not a discussion of ways to build them (to which we will devote much of the later part of this book). Much of what we will cover was worked out in the decades around 1900, and it all came from experimental observation. Quantum theory explains the details, and you can read much more about it in a textbook of physical chemistry. Our aim here is to give you enough of an understanding of the theory to be able to use sound principles to predict and explain the structure of organic molecules.

So, first, some evidence.

Atomic emission spectra

Many towns and streets are lit at night by sodium vapour lamps, which emit an intense, pure yellow-orange glow. Inside these lights is sodium metal. When the light is switched on, the sodium metal is slowly vaporized. As an electric current is passed through the sodium vapour, an orange light is emitted—the same colour as the light you get when you put a small amount of a sodium compound on a spatula and place it in a Bunsen flame. Given sufficient energy (from the electric current or from a flame) sodium always emits this same wavelength of light, and it does so because of the way the electrons are arranged in a sodium atom. The energy supplied causes an electron to move from a lower energy state to a higher energy, or excited, state, and as it drops down again light is emitted. The process is a bit like a weight-lifter lifting a heavy weight—he can hold it above his head with straight arms (the excited state) but sooner or later he will drop it and the weight will fall to the ground, releasing energy with a crash, if not a broken toe. This is the origin of the lines in the atomic spectra not only for sodium but for all the elements. The flame or the electric discharge provides the energy to promote an electron to a higher energy level and, when this electron returns to its ground state, this energy is released in the form of light.

If you refract the orange sodium light through a prism, you see a series of very sharp lines, with two particularly bright ones in the orange region of the spectrum at around 600 nm. Other elements produce similar spectra—even hydrogen, and since a hydrogen atom is the simplest atom of all, we shall look at the atomic spectrum of hydrogen first.

Electrons have quantized energy levels

The absorption spectrum for hydrogen was first measured in 1885 by a Swiss schoolmaster, Johann Balmer, who also noticed that the wavelengths of the lines in this spectrum could be predicted using a mathematical formula. You do not need to know the details of his formula at this stage, instead let’s think about the implications of the observation that a hydrogen atom, with just one electron, has a spectrum of discrete lines at precise wavelengths. It means
that the electron can only occupy energy levels with precisely determined values, in other
words that the energy of an electron orbiting a proton (a hydrogen nucleus) is quantized. The
electron can have only certain amounts of energy, and therefore the gaps between these
energy levels (which give rise to the spectrum) likewise can only have certain well-defined
values. Think of climbing a flight of stairs—you can jump up one, two, five, or even all the
steps if you are energetic enough, but you cannot climb up half or two-thirds of a step.
Likewise coming down, you can jump from one step to any other—lots of different combina-
tions are possible but there is a finite number, depending on the number of steps.

We mentioned an electron ‘orbiting’ a hydrogen nucleus in the last paragraph deliberately,
because that is one way of thinking about an atom—as a miniature (10⁻²³ scale!) solar system
with the nucleus as the sun and the electrons as planets. This model breaks down when we
look at it in detail (as we shall see shortly), but for the moment we can use it to think about
why electrons must exist in quantized energy levels.

To do this, we need to introduce a concept from nineteenth century physics—the experi-
mentally observable fact that particles such as photons and electrons can also have the char-
acter of a wave as well as a particle. It’s not obvious why the energy of a particle should be
quantized, but it makes sense if you allow yourself to think of an electron as a wave.

Imagine a taut string—a piano wire or guitar string, for example—fixed at either end. You
may well know that such a string has a fundamental frequency: if you make it vibrate by hit-
ting or plucking it, it will vibrate in a way represented in the diagram on the right.

This diagram shows a snapshot of the string; we could also represent a ‘blurred’ image of all
the places you might find the string as it vibrates, such as you would get if you took a picture
with a slow shutter speed.

But this is not the only way the string can vibrate. An alternative possibility is shown on the
right, where not only are the ends of the string stationary, but so is the point—known as a
‘node’—right in the middle. The wavelength of the vibration in this string is half that of the
one above, so the frequency is double. Musically this vibration will sound an octave higher
and is known as the first harmonic of the first vibration we showed you, the fundamental.
Third and fourth possibilities for ‘allowed’ vibrations are shown below, and again these cor-
respond musically to further harmonics of the fundamental frequency.

Even if you have not met this idea in music or physics before, we hope that you can see that
the vibrating string has no choice but to adopt one of these quantized frequencies—the fre-
quency can take on only certain values because the fixed ends to the string means the wave-
length has to be an exact divisor of the length of the string. And as we have seen before,
frequencies are directly linked to energies: the energy levels of a vibrating string are quantized.

If you think of an electron as a wave, it becomes much easier to see why it can have only
certain energy values. If you think of an electron orbiting a nucleus as a string looped back on
itself, you can visualize from the diagrams below why only certain wavelengths are possible.
These wavelengths have associated frequencies and the frequencies have associated energies:
we have a plausible explanation for the quantization of the energy of an electron.

**Electrons occupy atomic orbitals**

The popular image of an atom as a miniature solar system, with the electrons behaving like
planets orbiting a star—the nucleus—works in some situations, but we are going to have to
leave it behind. The problem with this view of the atoms is that electrons can never be pre-
cisely located, and instead must be thought of as ‘smeared out’ over the space available to
them. The reason for this derives from Heisenberg’s Uncertainty Principle, which you can
read about in any book on quantum physics. The Uncertainty Principle tells us that we can
never know exactly both the location and the momentum of any particle. If we know the
energy of an electron (and with quantized energy levels we do), we know its momentum and
therefore we cannot know exactly where it is.

As a consequence, we have to think of electrons in atoms (and in molecules) as having a prob-
ability of being in a certain place at a certain time, and the sum of all these probabilities gives a
smeared out picture of the electron’s habits, a bit like blurred pictures of the vibrating strings.
Because an electron is free to move around an atom in three dimensions, not just two, the allowed
‘vibrations’ it can adopt are also three dimensional and are known as orbitals, or (because we are just considering electrons in a single atom for now) atomic orbitals. The shapes of these orbitals are determined by mathematical functions known as wavefunctions. The smeared out picture of the simple atomic orbital—the lowest energy state of an electron in a hydrogen atom—looks something like the picture on the left below. We have used shading to indicate the probability of finding an electron at any one point, but a more convenient way to represent an orbital is to draw a line (in reality a three-dimensional surface) encompassing the space where an electron spends, say, 95% of its time. This gives something like the picture on the right. This simplest possible orbital—the fundamental orbital of the H atom—is spherical, and is known as a 1s orbital. Higher energy atomic orbitals have different shapes, as you will see soon.

It’s useful to think of the atomic orbitals as a series of possible energy values for an electron, and to think of them as ‘occupied’ if there is an electron (or, as we shall see below, two electrons) at that energy level, and ‘unoccupied’ if there isn’t. In a hydrogen atom in its most stable state, there is only one electron, occupying the lowest energy 1s orbital. So our picture of the 1s orbital makes a good picture of what an H atom looks like too. We can also represent the 1s orbital as an energy level, and the electron which occupies it as a little arrow (which we will explain in a moment).

What happens if you put more than one electron into the orbitals around an atom? Well, for reasons we can’t go into here, each orbital can hold two electrons—and only two, never any more. If you add an electron to the H atom, you get the hydride anion, H\(^-\), which has two electrons around an H nucleus (a proton). Both of the electrons occupy the same spherical 1s orbital.

We can also represent the orbital occupancy as an energy level (the horizontal line) occupied by two electrons (the arrows). Why do we draw the electrons as arrows? Well, electrons have the property of spin, and the two electrons allowed in each orbital have to spin in opposite directions. The arrows are a reminder of these opposing spins.
The same is true for the helium atom: its two electrons occupy the same orbital. However, the energy of that orbital (and all of the other possible orbitals) will be different from the orbital for hydrogen because it has double the nuclear charge of hydrogen and the electrons are more strongly attracted to the nucleus. We can represent the orbital occupancy like this, with the energy level lower than the one for H because of this stronger attraction.

\[
\text{energy level diagram}
\]

**s and p orbitals have different shapes**

So far, so good. Now, lithium. The lowest energy 1s orbital around the Li nucleus can contain two electrons, but two only, so the third electron has to go into a higher energy orbital—one of the energy levels whose existence was inferred from atomic absorption spectroscopy. You can think of this orbital as the three-dimensional equivalent of the first harmonic of the guitar string. Like the vibration of the string, this next orbital has a node. On the string the node was the point where no motion was observed. In an atom, a node is a point where the electron can never be found—a void separating the two parts of the orbital. For the orbital containing the third electron of the Li atom, this node is spherical—it divides the orbital into two parts which nestle one within another like the layers of an onion or the stone inside a peach. We call this orbital the 2s orbital—‘2’ because we have moved up to an orbital with a node (like the first harmonic) and ‘s’ because the orbital is still spherical. The ‘s’ did not originally stand for ‘spherical’, but as all ‘s’ orbitals are spherical it’s fine to remember it that way.

\[
\text{probability distribution of electron in 2s orbital}
\]

\[
\text{schematic diagram of 2s orbital}
\]

\[
\text{conventional picture of 2s orbital (the node is not usually shown)}
\]

In a lithium atom the 1s orbital, close to the nucleus, is occupied by two electrons, while the 2s orbital, further from the nucleus, contains one. In beryllium, there is a second electron in the 2s orbital. As before the energy levels will change as the nuclear charge increases, so the orbital occupancy in Li and Be can be represented as shown below.

\[
\text{energy level diagram}
\]

When we get to boron, something a little different happens. It turns out that for an orbital with one node (such as the 2s orbital), the node does not have to be spherical. The node can
alternatively be a plane. This alternative arrangement for an orbital with a single planar node gives us a new type of orbital, the 2p orbital. A 2p orbital looks something like the picture on the left below, in ‘smeared out’ form. It is often represented as the propeller shape in the middle, and it is conventionally drawn as the shape shown in the diagram to the right.

Unlike the 1s or 2s orbitals, the 2p orbital is directional—it points along an axis, and in three dimensions there are three possible orientations for the axis, each of which gives rise to a new 2p orbital (which we can call 2px, 2py, and 2pz if we need to).

The planar node of the three 2p orbitals gives them just slightly more energy than a 2s orbital, with its spherical node. Boron atoms therefore have two electrons in the 1s orbital, two in the 2s orbital, and just one in one of the 2p orbitals. The orbital occupancy is shown in the energy level diagram on the left. You can imagine what shape each of the orbitals has: we won’t need to show a picture of them all superimposed.

The next element, carbon, with one more (a sixth) electron, seems to have a choice—it can put its sixth electron paired with the fifth one, in the same 2p orbital, or it can put it into a new 2p orbital, with both electrons unpaired. In fact it chooses the latter: electrons are negatively charged and repel one another, so if there is a choice of equal energy orbitals they occupy different orbitals singly until they are forced to start pairing up. The repulsion is never enough to force an electron to occupy a higher energy orbital, but when the orbitals are otherwise of identical energy, this is what happens.

Not surprisingly therefore, the orbitals of atoms of the remainder of the elements of the first row of the periodic table are occupied as shown below. All the while the entire set of orbitals is going down in energy because the nucleus is attracting the electrons more strongly, but otherwise it is a simple matter of filling up the 2p orbitals first singly and then doubly. With the ten electrons of neon, all the orbitals with one node are filled, and we say that neon has a ‘closed shell’. A ‘shell’ is a group of orbitals of similar energy all with the same number of nodes (in this case all called ‘2’ something—2s or 2p).
The phase of an orbital

Look at the diagrams below, which are the same as the ones on p. 83: they represent the first three vibrational frequencies of a string. Now think about the motion of the string itself: in the first vibration, all of the string moves up and down at the same time — each point on the string moves by a different amount, but the direction moved at every point is the same. The same is not true for the second ‘energy level’ of the string — during a vibration like this, the left-hand half of the string moves upwards while the right-hand half moves downwards—the two halves of the string are out of phase with one another, and there is a change of phase at the node. The same is true of the third energy level — again, there is a change of phase at each node.

The same is true for orbitals. A nodal plane, such as that in the 2p orbitals, divides the orbital into two parts with different phases, one where the phase of the wavefunction is positive and one where it is negative. The phases are usually represented by shading — one half is shaded and the other half not. You saw this in the representation of the 2p orbital above. The phase of an orbital is arbitrary, in the sense that it doesn’t matter which half you shade. It’s also important to note that phase is nothing to do with charge: both halves of a filled 2p orbital contain electron density, so both will be negatively charged.

So why is phase important? Well, in a moment we will see that, just as atoms add together to give molecules, we can add together the wavefunctions of atomic orbitals to give molecular orbitals, which tell us where electrons are, and how much energy they have, in molecules.

s, p, d, f

Why 2s, 2p…? These letters hark back to the early days of spectroscopy and refer to the appearance of certain lines in atomic emission spectra: ‘s’ for ‘sharp’ and ‘p’ for ‘principal’. Later you will meet d and f orbitals, which have other arrangements of nodes. These letters came from ‘diffuse’ and ‘fundamental’. The letters s, p, d, and f matter and you must know them, but you do not need to know what they originally stood for.

Four short clarifications about orbitals before we go on

We’re about to develop the idea of orbitals in order to understand how electrons behave in molecules, but before we go on, we should just clarify a few points about orbitals that can sometimes lead to confusion.

1. Orbitals do not need to have electrons in them — they can be vacant (there doesn’t have to be someone standing on a stair for it to exist). Helium’s two electrons fill only the 1s orbital, but an input of energy—the intense heat in the sun, for example—will make one of them hop up into the previously empty 2s, or 2p, or 3s… etc. orbitals waiting to receive them. In fact, it was observing, from earth, the energy absorbed by this process which led to the first discovery of helium in the sun.

2. Electrons may be found anywhere in an orbital except in a node. In a p orbital containing one electron, this electron may be found on either side but never in the middle. When the orbital contains two electrons, one electron doesn’t stay in one half and the other electron in the other half — both electrons could be anywhere (except in the node).

3. All these orbitals of an atom are superimposed on each other. The 1s orbital is not the middle part of the 2s orbital. The 1s and 2s orbitals are separate orbitals in their own rights and each can hold a maximum of two electrons but the 2s orbital does occupy some of the same space as the 1s orbital (and also as the 2p orbitals, come to that). Neon, for example, has ten electrons in total: two will be in the 1s orbital, two in the
(much bigger) 2s orbital, and two in each of the three 2p orbitals. All these orbitals are superimposed on each other.

4. As we move across subsequent rows of the periodic table—starting with sodium—the 1s, 2s, and 2p orbitals are already filled with electrons, so we must start putting electrons into the 3s and 3p orbitals, then the 4s, 3d, and 4p orbitals. With d orbitals (and f orbitals, which start to be filled in the lanthanide series) there are yet further new arrangements of nodes. We won’t be discussing these orbitals in detail—you will find detailed consideration in an inorganic textbook—but the principles are just the same as the simple arrangements we have described.

Molecular orbitals—diatomic molecules

Now for electrons in molecules. Just as the behaviour of electrons in atoms is dictated by the atomic orbitals they reside in, so electrons in molecules behave in ways dictated by the molecular orbitals which contain them. We think of molecules as being built from atoms (even if that is not actually how you would usually make them), and likewise we can think of molecular orbitals as being built up from a combination of atomic orbitals.

As atomic orbitals are wavefunctions, they can be combined in the same way that waves combine. You may be already familiar with the ideas of combining waves either constructively (in phase) or destructively (out of phase):

Diagram showing constructive and destructive overlap of atomic orbitals.

Atomic orbitals can combine in the same ways—in phase or out of phase. Using two 1s orbitals drawn as circles (representing spheres) with dots to mark the nuclei and shading to represent phase, we can combine them in phase (that is, we add them together), resulting in an orbital spread over both atoms, or out of phase (by subtracting one from the other). In this case we get a molecular orbital with a nodal plane down the centre between the two nuclei, where the wavefunctions of the two atomic orbitals exactly cancel one another out and with two regions of opposite phase.

Diagram showing the combination of 1s orbitals to form a bonding and an antibonding molecular orbital.

The resulting orbitals belong to both atoms—they are molecular rather than atomic orbitals. Now, imagine putting electrons into the first of these orbitals (the bonding orbital). Remember, you can put zero, one, or two electrons into an orbital, but no more. The diagram of the orbital shows that the electrons would spend most of their time in between the two atomic nuclei. Being negatively charged, the electrons will exert an attractive force on each of the nuclei, and would hold them together. We have a chemical bond! For this reason the in-phase molecular orbital is called a bonding orbital.
The out-of-phase molecular orbital offers no such attractive possibility—in fact putting electrons into the out-of-phase molecular orbital works against bonding. These electrons are mainly to be found anywhere *but* between the two nuclei, where there is a node. The exposed positively charged nuclei repel each other, and that is why this orbital is known as an **anti-bonding molecular orbital**.

The combination of the atomic 1s orbitals to give the two new molecular orbitals can also be shown on a molecular orbital energy level diagram. The two atomic orbitals are shown on the left and the right, and the molecular orbitals which result from combining them in and out of phase are shown in the middle. The diagram as a whole is a sort of ‘before and after’ diagram—the situation before the interaction between the orbitals is shown on the left and the right, and after the interaction is shown in the middle. Notice that the bonding orbital is lower in energy than the constituent 1s orbitals, and the antibonding orbital is higher.

Now we can actually put the electrons into the orbitals, just as we did on p. 84 when we were building up the picture of atomic orbitals. Each hydrogen atom has one electron and so the resulting hydrogen molecule (shown in the middle) contains two electrons. Always fill up orbitals from the lowest energy first, putting a maximum of two electrons into each orbital, so both of these electrons go into the bonding orbital. The antibonding orbital remains empty. The electrons therefore spend most of their time in between the nuclei, and we have a plausible explanation for the existence of a chemical bond in the H₂ molecule.

Diagrams such as these are central to the way we can use molecular orbital theory (MO theory) to explain structure and reactivity, and you will in future meet many more of them. So before we go on it is worth clarifying several points about this one:

- **Two** atomic orbitals (AOs) combine to give **two** molecular orbitals (MOs). You always get the same number of MOs out as you put AOs in.
- Adding the wavefunctions (combining them in phase) of the two AOs makes the bonding orbital; subtracting them (combining them out of phase) makes the antibonding orbital.
• Since the two atoms are the same (both H), each AO contributes the same amount to the MOs (this will not always be the case).
• The bonding MO is lower in energy than the AOs.
• The antibonding MO is higher in energy than the AOs.
• Each hydrogen atom initially had one electron. The spin of these electrons is unimportant.
• The two electrons end up in the MO lowest in energy—the bonding MO.
• Just as with AOs, each MO can hold two electrons as long as the electrons are spin-paired (shown by opposing arrows). You do not need to be concerned with the details of spin-pairing at this stage, just with the result that any orbital may contain no more than two electrons.
• The two electrons between the two nuclei in the bonding MO hold the molecule together—they are the chemical bond.
• Since these two electrons are lower in energy in the MO than they were in the AOs, the molecule is more stable than its constituent atoms; energy is given out when the atoms combine.
• Or, if you prefer, we must put in energy to separate the two atoms again and to break the bond.

From now on, we will always represent molecular orbitals in energy order—the highest-energy MO at the top (usually an antibonding MO) and the lowest in energy (usually a bonding MO and the one in which the electrons are most stable) at the bottom.

Before you leave this section, let’s recap how we got to the MO diagram of H₂. It’s worth working through these steps to check you can draw your own MO diagram before you leave this section.

1. Draw two H atoms along with the 1s atomic orbitals which contain the electron, one on either side of the page.
2. Sketch the result of adding and of subtracting the wavefunctions of these two 1s orbitals to show the bonding and antibonding MOs. These go one above the other (high energy antibonding orbital on top) in between the AOs.
3. Count up the total number of electrons in the atoms going in to the molecule, and put that number of electrons into the MOs, starting at the bottom and building upwards, two in each orbital.

Breaking bonds

The diagram we have studied shows the most stable ground state of a hydrogen molecule, in which the electrons have the lowest possible energy. But what happens if an electron is promoted up from the lowest energy level, the bonding MO, to the next lowest energy level, the antibonding MO? Again, an energy level diagram helps.
Now the electron in the antibonding orbital cancels out the bonding of the electron in the bonding orbital. Since there is no overall bonding holding the two atoms together, they can drift apart as two separate atoms with their electrons in 1s AOs. In other words, promoting an electron from the bonding MO to the antibonding MO breaks the chemical bond. This is difficult to do with hydrogen molecules but easy with, say, bromine molecules. Shining light on Br₂ causes it to break up into bromine atoms.

**Why hydrogen is diatomic but helium is not**

Like H atoms, He atoms have their electrons in 1s orbitals, so we can construct an energy level diagram for He₂ in a similar way. But there is one big difference: each helium atom has two electrons so now both the bonding MO and the antibonding MO are full! Any bonding due to the electrons in the bonding orbital is cancelled out by the electrons in the antibonding orbital, and the He₂ molecule falls apart. He₂ does not exist.

![Diagram of He₂ molecule](image)

**Bond order**

Only if there are more electrons in bonding MOs than in antibonding MOs will there be any bonding between two atoms. In fact, we define the number of bonds between two atoms as the bond order (dividing by two since two electrons make up a chemical bond).

\[
\text{bond order} = \frac{(\text{no. of electrons in bonding MOs}) - (\text{no. of electrons in antibonding MOs})}{2}
\]

Hence the bond orders for H₂ and He₂ are

\[
\text{bond order (H₂)} = \frac{2 - 0}{2} = 1, \text{ i.e. a single bond}
\]

\[
\text{bond order (He₂)} = \frac{2 - 2}{2} = 0, \text{ i.e. no bond}
\]

**Forming bonds using 2s and 2p atomic orbitals: σ and π orbitals**

Atoms in the row of the periodic table running from Li to F have electrons in 2s and 2p orbitals, and as all molecules of interest to organic chemists contain at least one such atom we now need to think about how 2s and 2p orbitals interact. We also need to introduce you to a useful piece of terminology that is used to describe the *symmetry* of molecular orbitals.

We can do all of this by thinking about the bonding in another ubiquitous diatomic gas, N₂. N atoms have electrons in 1s, 2s, and 2p orbitals, so we need to consider interactions between pairs of each of these orbitals in turn.
1s orbitals we have already dealt with. Combining 2s orbitals is essentially just the same; they form bonding and antibonding orbitals just as 1s orbitals do and with similar shapes too, but higher energies, because the 2s orbitals are higher in energy than the 1s orbitals. The 2s orbitals are also bigger than 1s orbitals, and because of their ‘onion skin’ form, the exact nature of the MOs they give rise to is more complex than those which come from 1s AOs, but you can represent them in sketches in just the same way:

The bonding orbitals formed from 1s–1s and 2s–2s interactions have another important feature in common: they are all cylindrically symmetrical. In other words, if you look at the molecular orbital end-on, you can rotate it around the axis between the two atoms by any amount and it looks identical. It has the symmetry of a cigar, a carrot, or a baseball bat. Bonding orbitals with cylindrical symmetry like this are known as σ (sigma) orbitals, and the bonds which result from putting two electrons into these orbitals are known as σ bonds. The single bond in the H₂ molecule is therefore a σ bond.

The antibonding orbitals which result from combining these AOs are also cylindrically symmetrical and are called σ* orbitals, with the * denoting their antibonding character.

Now for the 2p orbitals. As described on p. 86 each atom has three mutually perpendicular 2p atomic orbitals. In a diatomic molecule, such as N₂, these 2p orbitals must combine in two different ways—one p orbital from each atom (shown in red here) can overlap end-on, but the other two p orbitals on each atom (shown in black) must combine side-on.

We’ll deal with the end-on overlap first. This is what happens if we combine the two 2p orbitals out of phase: as with the 2s orbitals, we have a node between the atoms, and any electron in this MO would spend most of its time not between the nuclei—as you can guess, this is an antibonding orbital.
If we combine the orbitals in phase, this is what we get.

![Diagram of bonding σ molecular orbital]

There is a nice rich area of electron density between the nuclei, and somewhat less outside, so overall filling this orbital with electrons would lead to an attraction between the atoms and a bond would result.

Both of these MOs have cylindrical symmetry and are therefore designated σ and σ* orbitals, and a bond formed by filling the MO made from interacting two 2p orbitals end-on is called a σ bond.

- σ bonds can be made from s or p atomic orbitals, provided they form a cylindrically symmetrical molecular orbital.

Each atom presents its other two 2p orbitals for side-on overlap. This is what the antibonding MO formed by out-of-phase combination of two side-on p orbitals looks like:

![Diagram of antibonding π* molecular orbital]

And this is the bonding, in-phase combination

![Diagram of bonding π molecular orbital]

These MOs do not have cylindrical symmetry—in fact you have to rotate them 180° about the axis between the nuclei before you get back something looking like what you started with but with opposite phase—and as a result the symmetry of these orbitals is given the symbol π: the bonding orbital is a π orbital and the antibonding orbital is a π* orbital. Bonds which are formed by filling π orbitals are called π bonds, and you’ll notice that because of the π symmetry the electron density in these bonds does not lie directly between the two nuclei but rather to either side of the line joining them.

Since an atom has three mutually perpendicular 2p orbitals, two of which can interact side-on in this way, there will exist a pair of degenerate (equal in energy) mutually perpendicular π orbitals and likewise a pair of degenerate mutually perpendicular π* orbitals. (The third p orbital interacts end-on, forming a σ orbital and a σ* orbital, of course).

The two sorts of MOs arising from the combinations of the p orbitals are, however, not degenerate—more overlap is possible when the AOs overlap end-on than when they overlap side-on. As a result, the 2p–2p σ orbital is lower in energy than the 2p–2p π orbitals.

We can now draw an energy level diagram to show the combinations of the 1s, 2s, and 2p AOs to form MOs, labelling each of the energy levels with σ, σ*, π, or π* as appropriate.

Because it can be difficult to represent exactly the result of adding and subtracting p orbitals, you will often see π and π* orbitals represented in diagrams simply as their ‘uncombined’ p orbitals—the structures on the left above. For an example, see p. 105.
Now for the electrons. Each nitrogen atom contributes seven electrons to the molecule, so we have to fill this stack of orbitals with 14 electrons, starting at the bottom. The result is:

The $\sigma$ and $\sigma^*$ MOs formed from interactions between the two 1s orbitals, and the two 2s orbitals are all filled: no overall bonding results because the filled bonding and antibonding orbitals cancel each other out. All the bonding is done with the remaining six electrons. They fit neatly into a $\sigma$ bond from two of the $p$ orbitals and two $\pi$ bonds from the other two pairs.
The electrons in the $\sigma$ bond lie between the two nuclei, while the electrons in the two $\pi$ bonds lie in two perpendicular clouds flanking the central $\sigma$ bond.

Calculating the bond order in $\text{N}_2$ is easy—a total of ten bonding electrons and four anti-bonding electrons gives a credit of six, or a bond order of three. $\text{N}_2$ has a triple-bonded structure.

We can’t, however, ignore the electrons that are not involved in bonding: there are eight of them altogether. These non-bonding electrons can be thought of as being localized on each of the N atoms. The four 1s electrons are low-energy inner shell electrons that are not involved in the chemistry of $\text{N}_2$, while the four 2s electrons provide the non-bonded lone pairs located one on each N atom. In the structure shown here we have drawn them in: you don’t have to draw lone pairs of every molecule that has them, but sometimes it can be useful to emphasize them—for example if they are taking part in a reaction scheme.

**Bonds between different atoms**

Up to now we have only considered combining two atoms of the same element, which makes things simpler because the same orbitals on each of the two atoms have the same energy. But when the two atoms are different two things change. The first is obvious—the number of electrons contributed by each atom is different. This is easy to accommodate since it just affects the total number of electrons we need to put into the MO diagram when we fill up the energy levels. So, for example, if you were constructing an MO diagram for $\text{NO}$, the gas nitric oxide (NO, a rather remarkable biological messenger in the human body) rather than $\text{N}_2$, you simply put in a total of 15 rather than 14 electrons because O contributes eight electrons and N seven.

**Nitric oxide, NO**

Nitric oxide was for a long time known only as one of the villains of urban air pollution, being formed during the combustion of petroleum and other fossil fuels. In the last 20 years, however, it has become evident that it is much more than that—one unexpected role, which earned its discoverers the Nobel Prize in physiology in 1998, is as a biological messenger, managing the contraction of smooth vessels and hence regulating blood flow.

The second thing that changes when you have two different atoms bonded together is the relative energies of the AOs being combined. It may seem natural to assume that a 2p orbital has the same energy whatever atom it finds itself in, but of course the difference is that an electron in a 2p (or any other) orbital feels an attraction to the nucleus which depends on the nuclear charge. The greater the number of protons in the nucleus, the greater the attraction, and hence the more tightly held, more stable, and lower in energy the electron becomes.

This is the origin of electronegativity. The more electronegative an atom is, the more it attracts electrons, the lower in energy are its AOs, and so any electrons in them are held more tightly.
As you move across each row of the periodic table, therefore, electronegativity increases as the energy of each orbital drops. From Li (electronegativity 0.98) across to C (2.55), and on to N (3.04), O (3.44), and F (3.98), the elements steadily become more electronegative and the AOs lower in energy.

So our diagram of the orbitals of NO actually looks like this.

---

We have shown only the 2s and 2p orbitals as the 1s orbitals are much lower in energy, and as you saw in the diagram of N₂ on p. 94 their bonding and antibonding interactions cancel each other out.

The orbitals on O are lower in energy than the orbitals on N, but they still interact just fine. However, there is one interesting consequence: if you look at each bonding orbital, you will see that it is closer in energy to the contributing orbital on O than the contributing orbital on N. Likewise, each antibonding orbital is closer in energy to the contributing orbital on N than the contributing orbital on O. The result is that the MOs are unsymmetrical, and while all the bonding orbitals have a greater contribution from the oxygen AOs, all the antibonding orbitals have a greater contribution from the nitrogen AOs. Overall the diagram shows eight electrons in bonding orbitals and three electrons in antibonding orbitals, so the overall electron distribution is skewed (polarized) towards O, just as you would expect from a comparison of the electronegativities of N and O.

The eight electrons in bonding orbitals and three electrons in antibonding orbitals means that NO has a bond order of 2½. It also has an unpaired electron—it is a radical. We can’t easily represent half a bond in valence bond terms, so we usually draw NO with a double bond, representing four bonding electrons. The remaining seven electrons can be shown as three lone pairs and one unpaired electron. Where do we put them? Well, our MO diagram tells us that the unpaired electron occupies an orbital closer in energy to N than to O, so we put that on N.

N and O differ only slightly in electronegativity (electronegativity of N 3.04; O 3.44): their orbitals are quite close in energy and form stable covalent bonds. But we also need to consider what happens when two atoms forming a bond differ hugely in electronegativity. We can take sodium (electronegativity 0.93) and chlorine (electronegativity 3.16) as our example. We know from observation that the product of reacting these two elements (don’t try this at home) is the ionic solid Na⁺ Cl⁻, and the MO energy level diagram tells us why.

The AOs we need to consider are the 3s and 3p orbitals of Na (all its lower energy 1s, 2s, and 2p orbitals are filled, so we can ignore those, as we did with the 1s orbitals of N₂ and NO above) and the 3s and 3p orbitals of Cl (again, the 1s, 2s, and 2p orbitals are all filled). Here is the diagram, with the Na orbitals much higher in energy than the Cl orbitals.
Trying to construct a molecular orbital diagram for NaCl

But these AOs are too far apart in energy to combine to form new MOs and no covalent bond is formed. The orbitals which get filled are simply the 3s and 3p orbitals of the Cl atom. The electrons available to fill these orbitals are the seven provided by Cl plus the one from Na: we end up with Na⁺ and Cl⁻. The ionic bonding in NaCl is due simply to the attraction between two oppositely charged ions—there is no orbital overlap.

These three different cases where the two combining orbitals differ greatly in energy, only a little, or not at all are summarized below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Energies of AOs both the same</th>
<th>AO on atom B is a little lower in energy than AO on atom A</th>
<th>AO on atom B is a lot lower in energy than AO on atom A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>large interaction between AOs</td>
<td>less interaction between AOs</td>
<td>AOs are too far apart in energy to interact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonding MO much lower in energy than AOs</td>
<td>bonding MO is lowered by a small amount relative to AO on atom B</td>
<td>the filled orbital on the same energy as the AO on atom B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antibonding MO is much higher in energy than the AOs</td>
<td>antibonding MO is raised in energy by a small amount relative to AO on atom A</td>
<td>the empty orbital on the cation has the same energy as the AO on atom A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both AOs contribute equally to the MOs</td>
<td>the AO on B contributes more to the bonding MO and the AO on A contributes more to the antibonding MO</td>
<td>Only one AO contributes to each MO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrons in bonding MO are shared equally between the two atoms</td>
<td>electrons in bonding MO are shared between atoms but are associated more with B than A</td>
<td>electrons in the filled orbital are located only on atom B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bond between A and B would classically be described as purely covalent</td>
<td>bond between A and B is covalent but there is also some electrostatic (ionic) attraction between atoms</td>
<td>bond between A and B would classically be described as purely ionic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easiest to break bond into two radicals (homolytic fission)</td>
<td>easiest to break bond into two ions, A⁺ and B⁻, although it is also possible to give two radicals</td>
<td>compound already exists as ions A⁺ and B⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heterolytic fission of the bond is possible and could give either A⁺ and B⁻ or A⁻ and B⁺ (this point is discussed more fully in Chapters 24 and 37)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These three cases are summarized below.

- **Energies of AOs both the same**:
  - Large interaction between AOs
  - Bonding MO much lower in energy than AOs
  - Antibonding MO is much higher in energy than the AOs
  - Both AOs contribute equally to the MOs
  - Electrons in bonding MO are shared equally between the two atoms
  - Bond between A and B would classically be described as purely covalent
  - Easiest to break bond into two radicals (homolytic fission)
  - Heterolytic fission of the bond is possible and could give either A⁺ and B⁻ or A⁻ and B⁺

- **AO on atom B is a little lower in energy than AO on atom A**:
  - Less interaction between AOs
  - Bonding MO is lowered by a small amount relative to AO on atom B
  - Antibonding MO is raised in energy by a small amount relative to AO on atom A
  - The AO on B contributes more to the bonding MO and the AO on A contributes more to the antibonding MO
  - Electrons in bonding MO are shared between atoms but are associated more with B than A
  - Bond between A and B is covalent but there is also some electrostatic (ionic) attraction between atoms
  - Easiest to break bond into two ions, A⁺ and B⁻, although it is also possible to give two radicals

- **AO on atom B is a lot lower in energy than AO on atom A**:
  - AOs are too far apart in energy to interact
  - The filled orbital on the same energy as the AO on atom B
  - The empty orbital on the cation has the same energy as the AO on atom A
  - Only one AO contributes to each MO
  - Electrons in the filled orbital are located only on atom B
  - Bond between A and B is covalent but there is also some electrostatic (ionic) attraction between atoms
  - Easiest to break bond into two ions, A⁻ and B⁺, although it is also possible to give two radicals
  - Compound already exists as ions A⁻ and B⁺
Other factors affecting degree of orbital interaction

Having similar energies is not the only criterion for good interaction between two AOs. It also matters how the orbitals overlap. We have seen that p orbitals overlap better in an end-on fashion (forming a σ bond) than they do side-on (forming a π bond). Another factor is the size of the AOs. For best overlap, the orbitals should be the same size—a 2p orbital overlaps much better with another 2p orbital than it does with a 3p or 4p orbital.

A third factor is the symmetry of the orbitals—two AOs must have the appropriate symmetry to combine. Thus a 2pₓ orbital cannot combine with a 2pᵧ or 2pₜ orbital since they are all perpendicular to each other (they are orthogonal). Depending on the alignment, there is either no overlap at all or any constructive overlap is cancelled out by equal amounts of destructive overlap. Likewise, an s orbital can overlap with a p orbital only end-on. Sideways overlap leads to equal amounts of bonding and antibonding interactions and no overall gain in energy.

Molecular orbitals of molecules with more than two atoms

We now need to look at ways of combining more than two atoms at a time. For some molecules, such as H₂S and PH₃, which have all bond angles equal to 90°, the bonding should be straightforward—the 3p orbitals (which are at 90°) on the central atom simply overlap with the 1s orbitals of the hydrogen atoms.

Now, you might imagine it would be similar for ammonia, NH₃, since N lies above P in the periodic table. The trouble is, we know experimentally that the bond angles in ammonia, as in water and methane, are not 90°, but instead 104°, 107°, and 109°, respectively. All the covalent compounds of elements in the row Li to Ne raise this difficulty. How can we get 109° angles from orbitals arranged 90° apart?

To see what has to happen, we’ll start with a molecule of methane enclosed in a cube. It is possible to do this since the opposite corners of a cube describe a perfect tetrahedron. The carbon atom is at the centre of the cube and the four hydrogen atoms are at four of the corners.

Now let’s consider each of the carbon’s 2s and 2p AOs in turn. The carbon’s 2s orbital can overlap with all four hydrogen 1s orbitals at once with all the orbitals in the same phase.
Each of the 2p orbitals points to a pair of opposite faces of the cube. Once more all four hydrogen 1s orbitals can combine with each p orbital, provided the hydrogen AOs on the opposite faces of the cube are of opposite phases.

The three MOs generated in this way are degenerate, and this gives us four bonding orbitals. Along with four associated antibonding orbitals this gives us a total of eight MOs, which is correct since there were eight AOs (C gave us 2s and 3 × 2p, while 4 × H gave us 4 × 1s).

Using this approach, it is possible to construct a complete MO picture of methane—and indeed for very much more complex molecules than methane. There is experimental evidence too that these pictures are correct. But the problem is this: the four filled, bonding orbitals of methane are not all the same (one came from the interaction with the C 2s orbital and three from the C 2p orbitals). But we also know from experimental observations all four C–H bonds in methane are the same.

Something seems to be wrong, but there is in fact no contradiction. The MO approach tells us that there is one MO of one kind and three of another but the electrons in them are shared out over all five atoms. No one hydrogen atom has more or fewer electrons than any other—they are all equivalent. Techniques that tell us the structure of methane do not tell us where bonds are; they simply tell us where the atoms are located in space—we draw in bonds connecting atoms together. Certainly the atoms form a regular tetrahedron but exactly where the electrons are is a different matter entirely. So, do we have to give up the idea that methane has four bonds, each made of two electrons, linking the C with an H? If we choose to, then for every reaction, even of the simplest molecules, we are going to need to calculate, by computer, a full set of MOs and all of their interactions.

That would be using physics to do chemistry. It might be accurate but it would kill creativity and invention. So here is an alternative: we keep our tried and tested practical picture of molecules made from discrete bonds, each containing a pair of electrons, but we make it compatible with MO theory. To do this we need a concept known as hybridization.

**Hybridization of atomic orbitals**

To get a picture of methane with four equivalent pairs of electrons we need to start with four equivalent AOs on C, which we don’t have. But we can get them if we combine the carbon 2s and 2p orbitals first to make four new orbitals, each composed of one-quarter of the 2s orbital and three-quarters of one of the p orbitals. The new orbitals are called sp³ (that’s said s-p-three, not s-p-cubed) hybrid orbitals to show the proportions of the AOs in each. This process of mixing is called hybridization. The hybrid orbitals are mathematically equivalent to the 2s and 2p orbitals we started with, and they have the advantage that when we use them to make MOs the orbitals correspond to bonding pairs of electrons.
What do the four hybrid orbitals look like? Each sp\(^3\) orbital takes three-quarters of its character from a p orbital and one-quarter from an s orbital. It has a planar node through the nucleus like a p orbital but one lobe is larger than the other because of the extra contribution of the 2s orbital: the symmetry of the 2s orbital means that adding it to a 2p orbital will increase the size of the wavefunction in one lobe, but decrease it in the other.

The four sp\(^3\) orbitals point to the corners of a tetrahedron and we build up a molecule of methane by overlapping the large lobe of each sp\(^3\) orbital with the 1s orbital of a hydrogen atom, as shown in the margin. Each overlap forms an MO (2sp\(^3\) + 1s) and we can put two electrons in each to form a C–H σ bond. There will of course also be an antibonding MO, σ* (2sp\(^3\) – 1s) in each case, but these orbitals are empty. Overall, the electrons are spatially distributed exactly as they were in our previous model, but now we can think of them as being located in four bonds.

The great advantage of this method is that it can be used to build up structures of much larger molecules quickly and without having to imagine that the molecule is made up from isolated atoms. Take ethane, for example. Each carbon uses three sp\(^3\) AOs orientated towards the three hydrogen atoms, leaving one sp\(^3\) orbital on each carbon atom for the C–C bond.

In the MO energy level diagram we now have both C–H bonding σ and antibonding σ* orbitals (made from combining sp\(^3\) orbitals on C with 1s orbitals on H) and also a C–C bonding σ and antibonding σ* orbital, made from two sp\(^3\) orbitals on C. The diagram below just shows the C–C bond.

For ethene (ethylene), the simplest alkene, we need a new set of hybrid orbitals. Ethene is a planar molecule with bond angles close to 120°. Our approach will be to hybridize all the
orbits needed for the C–H framework and see what is left over. In this case we need three equivalent bonds from each carbon atom (one to make a C–C bond and two to make C–H bonds). Therefore we need to combine the 2s orbital on each carbon atom with two p orbitals to make the three bonds. We could hybridize the 2s, 2pₓ, and 2pᵧ orbitals (that is, all the AOs in the plane) to form three equal sp² orbitals, leaving the 2pₓ orbital unchanged. These sp² hybrid orbitals will have one-third s character and only two-thirds p character.

The three sp² hybrid AOs on each carbon atom can overlap with three other orbitals (two hydrogen 1s AOs and one sp² AO from the other carbon) to form three σ MOs. This leaves the two 2pₓ orbitals, one on each carbon, which combine to form the π MO. The skeleton of the molecule has five σ bonds (one C–C and four C–H) in the plane and the central π bond is formed by two 2pₓ orbitals above and below the plane.

This is the first MO picture we have constructed with a C= C double bond, and it is worth taking the time to think about the energies of the orbitals involved. We’ll again ignore the C–H bonds, which involve two of the sp² orbitals of each C atom. Remember, we mixed two of the three 2p orbitals in with the 2s orbital to make 3 × sp² orbitals on each C atom, leaving behind one unhybridized 2p orbital.

Now, first we need to generate the σ and σ* orbitals by interacting one sp² orbital on each atom. Then we need to deal with the two p orbitals, one on each C, which interact side-on. The unhybridized p orbitals are a bit higher in energy than the sp² orbitals, but they interact less well (we discussed this on p. 93) so they give a π orbital and a π* orbital whose energies are in between the σ and σ* orbitals. Each C atom donates two electrons to these orbitals (the other two electrons are involved in the two bonds to H), so the overall picture looks like this. Two AOs give two MOs.
The fact that the sideways overlap of the p orbitals to form a $\pi$ bond is not as effective as the head-on overlap of the orbitals to form a $\sigma$ bond means that it takes less energy to break a C–C $\pi$ bond than a C–C $\sigma$ bond (about 260 kJ mol$^{-1}$ compared to about 350 kJ mol$^{-1}$).

Ethyne (acetylene) has a C≡C triple bond. Each carbon bonds to only two other atoms to form a linear CH skeleton. Only the carbon 2s and 2px have the right symmetry to bond to the two atoms at once so we can hybridize these to form two sp hybrids on each carbon atom, leaving the 2py and 2pz to form $\pi$ MOs with the 2p orbitals on the other carbon atom. These sp hybrids have 50% each s and p character and form a linear carbon skeleton.

We could then form the MOs as shown below. Each sp hybrid AO overlaps with either a hydrogen 1s AO or with the sp orbital from the other carbon. The two sets of p orbitals combine to give two mutually perpendicular $\pi$ MOs.

Hydrocarbon skeletons are built up from tetrahedral (sp$^3$), trigonal planar (sp$^2$), or linear (sp) hybridized carbon atoms. Deciding what sort of hybridization any carbon atom has, and hence what sort of orbitals it will use to make bonds, is easy. All you have to do is count up the atoms bonded to each carbon atom. If there are two, that carbon atom is linear (sp hybridized), if there are three, that carbon atom is trigonal (sp$^2$ hybridized), and if there are four, that carbon atom is tetrahedral (sp$^3$ hybridized). Since the remaining unhybridized p orbitals are used to make the $\pi$ orbitals of double or triple bonds, you can also work out hybridization state just by counting up the number of $\pi$ bonds at each carbon. Carbon atoms with no $\pi$ bonds are tetrahedral (sp$^3$ hybridized), those with one $\pi$ bond are trigonal (sp$^2$ hybridized), and those with two $\pi$ bonds are linear (sp hybridized).

There’s a representative example on the left. This hydrocarbon (hex-5-en-2-yne) has two linear sp carbon atoms (C2 and C3), two trigonal sp$^2$ carbon atoms (C5 and C6), a tetrahedral sp$^3$ CH$_2$ group in the middle of the chain (C4), and a tetrahedral sp$^3$ methyl group (C1) at the end of the chain. We had no need to look at any AOs to deduce this—we needed only to count the bonds.

**We can hybridize any atoms**

We can use the same ideas with any sort of atom. The three molecules shown on the next page all have a tetrahedral structure, with four equivalent $\sigma$ bonds from the central tetrahedral sp$^3$
atom, whether this is B, C, or N, and the same total number of bonding electrons—the molecules are said to be isoelectronic. The atoms contribute different numbers of electrons so to get the eight bonding electrons we need we have to add one to BH₄ and subtract one from NH₃—hence the charges in BH₄ and NH₃⁺. In each case the central atom can be considered to be sp³ hybridized, using an sp³ orbital to bond to each of the four H atoms, each resulting σ bond being made up of two electrons.

Compounds of the same three elements with only three bonds take more thinking about. Borane, BH₃, has only three pairs of bonding electrons (three from B and three from the three H atoms). Since the central boron atom bonds to only three other atoms we can therefore describe it as being sp² hybridized. Each of the B–H bonds results from the overlap of an sp² orbital with the hydrogen 1s orbital. Its remaining p orbital is not involved in bonding and must remain empty. Do not be tempted by the alternative structure with tetrahedral boron and an empty sp³ orbital. You want to populate the lowest energy orbitals for greatest stability and sp³ orbitals with their greater s character are lower in energy than sp² orbitals. Another way to put this is that, if you have to have an empty orbital, it is better to have one with the highest possible energy since it has no electrons in it and so it doesn’t affect the stability of the molecule.

Borane is isoelectronic with the methyl cation, CH₃⁺ or Me⁺. All the arguments we have just applied to borane also apply to Me⁺ so it too is sp² hybridized with a vacant p orbital. This will be very important when we discuss the reactions of carbocations in Chapters 15 and 36.

Now what about ammonia, NH₃? Ammonia is not isoelectronic with borane and Me⁺! It has a total of eight electrons—five from N and three from 3 × H. As well as three N–H bonds, each with two electrons, the central nitrogen atom also has a lone pair of electrons. We have a choice: either we could hybridize the nitrogen atom sp² and put the lone pair in the p orbital or we could hybridize the nitrogen sp³ and have the lone pair in an sp³ orbital.

This is the opposite of the situation with borane and Me⁺. The extra pair of electrons does contribute to the energy of ammonia so it prefers to be in the lower-energy orbital, sp³, rather than pure p. Experimentally the H–N–H bond angles are all 107.3°. Clearly, this is much closer to the 109.5° sp³ angle than the 120° sp² angle. But the bond angles are not exactly 109.5°, so ammonia cannot be described as pure sp³ hybridized. One way of looking at this is to say that the lone pair repels the bonds more than they repel each other. Alternatively, you could say that the orbital containing the lone pair must have slightly more s character while the N–H bonding orbitals must have correspondingly more p character.

The carbonyl group

The C=O double bond is the most important functional group in organic chemistry. It is present in aldehydes, ketones, acids, esters, amides, and so on. We shall spend several chapters discussing its chemistry so it is important that you understand its electronic structure from this early stage. We’ll use the simplest carbonyl compound, methanal (formaldehyde), as our example. As in alkenes, the carbon atom needs three sp² orbitals to form σ bonds with the two H atoms and the O atom. But what about oxygen? It needs only to form one σ bond to C, but it needs two more hybrid orbitals for its lone pairs: the oxygen atom of a carbonyl group is also sp² hybridized. A p orbital from the carbon and one from the oxygen make up the π bond, which also contains two electrons. This is what the bonding looks like:

How do we know the O has its lone pairs in sp² orbitals? Well, whenever carbonyl compounds form bonds using those lone pairs—hydrogen bonds, for example—they prefer to do so in a direction corresponding to where the lone pairs are expected to be.
For the MO energy diagram, we’ll again just consider the bonding between C and O. First, we hybridize the orbitals of both atoms to give us the $3 \times sp^2$ orbitals and $1 \times p$ orbital we need. Notice that we have made the AOs at O lower in energy than the AOs at C because O is more electronegative. Once we have accounted for the non-bonding $sp^2$ orbitals at O and the two C–H bonds, we allow the two remaining $sp^2$ orbitals to interact and make a $\sigma$ and a $\sigma^*$ orbital, and the two $p$ orbitals to make a $\pi$ and a $\pi^*$ orbital.

The fact that oxygen is more electronegative than carbon has two consequences for this diagram. Firstly, it makes the energy of the orbitals of a C=O bond lower than they would be in the corresponding C=C bond. That has consequences for the reactivity of alkenes and carbonyl compounds, as you will see in the next chapter.

The second consequence is polarization. You met this idea before when we were looking at NO. Look at the filled $\pi$ orbital in the MO energy level diagram. It is more similar in energy to the $p$ orbital on O than the $p$ orbital on C. We can interpret this by saying that it receives a greater contribution from the $p$ orbital on O than from the $p$ orbital on C. Consequently, the orbital is distorted so that it is bigger at the O end than at the C end, and the electrons spend more time close to O. The same is true for the $\sigma$ bond, and the consequent polarization of the C=O group can be represented by one of two symbols for a dipole—the arrow with the cross at the positive end or the pair of $\delta^+$ and $\delta^-$ symbols.

Conversely, if you look at the antibonding $\pi^*$ orbital, it is closer in energy to the $p$ orbital on C than the $p$ orbital on O and therefore it receives a greater contribution from the $p$ orbital on C. It is distorted towards the carbon end of the bond. Of course, being empty, the $\pi^*$ orbital has no effect on the structure of the C=O bond. However, it does have an effect on its reactivity—it is easier to put electrons into the antibonding $\pi^*$ orbital at the C end than at the O end.
Rotation and rigidity

To end this chapter, we deal with one more question which MOs allow us to answer: how flexible is a molecule? The answer depends on the molecule of course, but more importantly it depends on the type of bond. You may be aware that many alkenes can exist in two forms, cis and trans, also called Z and E (see Chapter 17). These two forms are not usually easy to interconvert—in other words the C=C double bond is very rigid and cannot rotate.

If we look at the bonding in but-2-ene we can see why. The π bond is made up of two parallel p orbitals. To rotate about the π bond requires those orbitals to lose their interaction, pass through a state in which they lie perpendicular, and finally line up again. That transitional, perpendicular state is very unfavourable because all of the energy gained through π bonding is lost. Alkenes are rigid and do not rotate.

Alkenes are rigid...

![Diagram of Alkenes]

It is in fact possible to interconvert cis and trans alkenes, but it requires a considerable amount of energy—around 260 kJ mol⁻¹. One way to break the π bond is to promote an electron from the π orbital to the π* orbital. If this were to happen, there would be one electron in the bonding π orbital and one in the antibonding π* orbital, and hence no overall bonding. The energy required to do this corresponds to light in the ultraviolet (UV) region of the spectrum. Shining UV light on an alkene can break the π bond (but not the σ bond) and allows rotation to occur.

Alkene isomers

Maleic and fumaric acids were known in the nineteenth century to have the same chemical composition and the same functional groups, and yet they were different compounds—why remained a mystery. That is, until 1874 when van’t Hoff proposed that free rotation about double bonds was restricted. This meant that, whenever each carbon atom of a double bond had two different substituents, isomers would be possible. He proposed the terms cis (Latin meaning ‘on this side’) and trans (Latin meaning ‘across or on the other side’) for the two isomers. The problem was: which isomer was which?

On heating, maleic acid readily loses water to become maleic anhydride so this isomer must have both acid groups on the same side of the double bond.

![Diagram of Maleic and Fumaric Acids]

Compare that situation with butane. Rotating about the middle bond doesn’t break any bonds because the σ bond is, by definition, cylindrically symmetrical. Atoms connected only by a σ bond are therefore considered to be rotationally free, and the two ends of butane can spin relative to one another.

Alkanes rotate freely...

The same comparison works for ethylene (ethene) and ethane: in ethylene all the atoms lie in a plane, enforced by the need for overlap between the p orbitals. But in ethane, the two ends of the molecule spin freely. This difference in rigidity has important consequences throughout chemistry, and we will come back to it in more detail in Chapter 16.
Conclusion

We have barely touched the enormous variety of molecules, but it is important that you realize at this point that these simple ideas of structural assembly can be applied to the most complicated molecules known. We can use AOs and combine them into MOs to solve the structure of very small molecules and to deduce the structures of small parts of much larger molecules. With the additional concept of conjugation in Chapter 7 you will be able to grasp the structure of any organic compound. From now on we shall use terms like AO and MO, 2p orbital, sp² hybridization, σ bond, energy level, and populated orbital without further explanation. If you are unsure about any of them, refer back to this chapter.

Looking forward

We started the chapter with atomic orbitals, which we combined into molecular orbitals. But what happens when the orbitals of two molecules interact? This is what happens during chemical reactions, and it’s where we are heading in the next chapter.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Organic reactions

Connections

Building on
- Drawing molecules realistically ch2
- Ascertaining molecular structure spectroscopically ch3
- What determines molecular shape and structure ch4

Arriving at
- Why molecules generally don’t react with each other
- Why sometimes molecules do react with each other
- How molecular shape and structure determine reactivity
- In chemical reactions electrons move from full to empty orbitals
- Identifying nucleophiles and electrophiles
- Representing the movement of electrons in reactions by curly arrows

Looking forward to
- Reactions of the carbonyl group ch6
- The rest of the chapters in this book

Chemical reactions

Most molecules are at peace with themselves. Bottles of sulfuric acid, sodium hydroxide, water, or acetone can be safely stored in a laboratory cupboard for years without any change in the chemical composition of the molecules inside. Yet if these compounds are mixed, chemical reactions, in some cases vigorous ones, will occur. This chapter is an introduction to the behaviour of organic molecules: why some react together and some don’t, and how to understand reactivity in terms of charges, orbitals, and the movement of electrons. We shall also be introducing a device for representing the detailed movement of electrons—the mechanism of the reaction—called the curly arrow.

To understand organic chemistry you need to be fluent in two languages. The first is the language of structure: of atoms, bonds, and orbitals. This language was the concern of the last three chapters: in Chapter 2 we looked at how to draw structures, in Chapter 3 how to find out what those structures are, and in Chapter 4 how to explain structure using electrons in orbitals.

But now we need to take up a second language: that of reactivity. Chemistry is first and foremost about the dynamic features of molecules—how to create new molecules from old ones, for example. To understand this we need new terminology and tools for explaining, predicting, and talking about reactions.

Molecules react because they move. Atoms have (limited) movement within molecules—you saw in Chapter 3 how the stretching and bending of bonds can be detected by infrared spectroscopy, and we explained in Chapter 4 how the σ bonds of alkanes (but not the π bonds of alkenes) rotate freely. On top of that, in a liquid or a gas whole molecules move around continuously. They bump into each other, into the walls of the container, maybe into solvent...
in a solution. It is all this incessant motion which drives reactions, and we first need to look at what happens when molecules collide.

**Not all collisions between molecules lead to chemical change**

Molecules are coated with a layer of electrons which occupy bonding and maybe non-bonding orbitals. As a result the surface of each molecule is negatively charged and by and large molecules repel each other. Reactions can occur only if a pair of molecules have enough energy to overcome this superficial repulsion. If they don’t, they will simply bounce off one another like two balls in pool or snooker, exchanging energy and moving off with new velocities, but remaining chemically unchanged. That minimum energy requirement for reaction—a barrier over which molecules must pass if they are to react—is known as the *activation energy*. In any sample of a compound, the molecules will have a range of energies, but at least some must have more than the activation energy if they are to react.

**Charge attraction brings molecules together**

If you mix a solution of sodium chloride with a solution of silver nitrate, electrostatic attraction between the Ag⁺ cations and Cl⁻ anions is enough to bring them together into a stable, crystalline ionic lattice of silver chloride, which precipitates from solution. Both ions are of course surrounded by electrons, but the deficit of negative charge in the Ag⁺ cation (one electron short of the full Ag complement of 47) is enough to overcome the repulsion between the rest of the electrons.

Direct reaction of a cation and an anion is rare with organic molecules because there are relatively few stable organic anions, and even fewer stable organic cations. A more common cause of organic reactions is attraction between a charged reagent (a cation or anion) and an organic compound that both possess a *dipole*. An example that we shall explore in this chapter (and which decorates the cover of this book) is the reaction between a carbonyl compound such as formaldehyde (methanal) and one of those few stable organic anions, cyanide (−CN, in the form of its salt NaCN). The carbonyl group of formaldehyde is polarized because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon (see p. 103). The negative cyanide ion is attracted to the positive end of the carbonyl group dipole.

Actually, it isn’t necessary for *either* reagent to be charged. Water also reacts with formaldehyde and this time it is the *lone pair* of electrons—the non-bonding pair of electrons located on the oxygen atom of the uncharged water molecule—that is attracted to the positive end of the carbonyl dipole.

**Orbital overlap brings molecules together**

Charges and dipoles can help bring molecules together for reaction, helping them to overcome their electronic repulsion and lowering their activation energy. But reactions can still take place even between completely uncharged molecules with no dipole, provided their molecular orbitals can interact. One of the old ‘tests’ for unsaturation was to treat a compound with bromine water. If the brown colour disappeared, the molecule was unsaturated (contained double bonds). Spectroscopy means we rarely need to use such tests now, but the reaction is still an important one. An alkene reacts with bromine, even though the alkene and the bromine molecule have neither charge nor dipole. The attraction between these molecules is not electrostatic; instead, their electronic repulsion is overcome because the bromine molecule has an empty orbital available—the σ* orbital of the Br–Br bond—which can accept electrons from the alkene. Unlike the repulsive interaction between filled orbitals, the interaction between a filled and an unfilled orbital can lead to attraction and reaction.

In fact, orbital interactions are also involved in the other two reactions on this page, but in those cases the orbital interactions are augmented by electrostatic attraction.
To summarize the situation:

- In general, molecules repel each other, and need to overcome a barrier with a minimum amount of activation energy in order to react.
- Most organic reactions involve interactions between full and empty orbitals.
- Many, but not all, also involve charge interactions, which help overcome electronic repulsion.
- Some ionic reactions involve nothing but charge attraction.

We don’t need to analyse whether charge or orbital interaction is the most important factor in bringing molecules together, but you do need to be aware that both may be involved to varying degrees.

Reactions happen when electrons flow between molecules

When, as a result of these interactions, a pair of molecules find themselves close together, a reaction can take place provided electrons move from one molecule to another. This is what we call the mechanism of the reaction—the detailed description of the pathway the electrons take. In most organic reactions, the electrons start in one molecule and move towards another. We call the molecule that accepts the electrons the electrophile (electron-lover) for obvious reasons. The molecule that donates the electrons is called the nucleophile.

A bond forms when electrons move from a nucleophile to an electrophile:

The nucleophile donates electrons.
The electrophile accepts electrons.

Here’s a very simple example where the nucleophile is an anion (Cl\(^{-}\)) and the electrophile is a cation (H\(^{+}\)). The two are brought together by charge attraction, and the new bond is formed by electrons donated by the nucleophile. Since we are representing the formation of a new bond by the movement of electrons, it’s natural to use an arrow to show the way the electrons flow. Arrows used to show electron flow are always curved: we call them ‘curly arrows’. The arrow showing the reaction itself is straight.

In the next example, neither the nucleophile (ammonia, NH\(_3\)) nor the electrophile (borane, BH\(_3\)) are charged, but they are drawn together by the interaction between the electrons of the non-bonding lone pair at N and the empty p orbital on B. Electrons flow from the nucleophile (NH\(_3\)) to the electrophile (BH\(_3\)) and a new bond is formed.

Bonding in BH\(_3\) and NH\(_3\) was discussed on p. 103.
The charges on the B and the N are necessary simply to account correctly for the electrons. Usually, we think of the pair of electrons in a bond as coming one from each of the bonded atoms. But here, since nitrogen donates both electrons (such bonds used to be called ‘dative bonds’) we have to account for the fact that boron ends up with one electron extra, and nitrogen one electron too few. The bond that forms is just a normal $\sigma$ bond.

**Orbital overlap is essential for successful reaction**

In the reaction of ammonia with borane, not only do the molecules have to collide with enough energy to react, but they must also collide with the orbitals aligned correctly for them to interact. As you saw in Chapter 3, the lone pair of the nitrogen atom resides in a filled, non-bonding sp$^3$ orbital. This orbital has to overlap with the empty p orbital on B to form a bond. So, a collision like this

```
H NH
H H
H B
```

will do just fine for making a bond, but collisions like these

```
H B
H
```

will not do at all.

Of course we can also draw a molecular orbital energy level diagram for the constructive, end-on interaction of the orbitals: look back to Chapter 4 to remind yourself of how to do this. Here, we need the filled sp$^3$ orbital on N to interact with the empty p orbital on B to give a new $\sigma$ bonding orbital and an empty $\sigma^*$ antibonding orbital. Finally, putting in the two electrons from the N's lone pair gives us a full picture of the new B–N bond.

The energy level diagram makes it clear why bonding is favourable too: the electrons have dropped down from the non-bonding sp$^3$ orbital to the new lower energy bonding $\sigma$ orbital. We don't need to consider what has happened to the energy of the unfilled orbitals because they're empty and don't contribute to the energy of the molecule as a whole.

We can generalize this idea to work out what makes a good nucleophile and a good electrophile. We’ll use an imaginary, generic nucleophile Nu, with a pair of electrons in some sort of filled orbital (it doesn't matter what this orbital is) which it can donate to the empty orbital of a generic electrophile E. Here are three versions of the molecular orbital energy level diagram:
On the left, the energies of the filled Nu orbital and the empty E orbital are almost the same. There is a significant gain in energy when the new bond forms between them. On the right, there is a large difference between the energies of the filled Nu orbital and the empty E orbital, and the energy gain is negligible. This tells us something: the best reactions are ones in which the energies of the interacting orbitals are similar in energy.

**For a reaction to take place, molecules must:**
- overcome their electronic repulsion by charge attraction and/or orbital overlap
- have orbitals of appropriate energy to interact—a filled orbital on the nucleophile and an empty orbital on the electrophile
- approach each other such that these orbitals can overlap to form a bonding interaction.

**Nucleophiles and electrophiles**

What does this mean for nucleophiles and electrophiles? Well, in general, filled orbitals tend to be low in energy—that is after all why they are filled! Conversely, empty orbitals tend to be high in energy. So the best interaction (the one that gains the new molecule the most energy) is likely to be between the highest in energy of all the filled orbitals—an orbital we can term the ‘highest occupied molecular orbital’ or HOMO for short—and the lowest in energy of all of the unfilled orbitals—the ‘lowest unoccupied molecular orbital’ or LUMO for short. This diagram may help clarify this idea—it’s a repeat of the best interaction above (the one on the left), but with other orbitals sketched in.
Remember, we can ignore all interactions between pairs of filled orbitals (bonding and antibonding cancel out, see p. 94) and pairs of unfilled orbitals (they don’t contain electrons so don’t contribute to the stability of the molecule). Of the interactions that are left, the one that gains the molecule the most energy is between the LUMO of the electrophile and the HOMO of the nucleophile. To make these orbitals as close as possible in energy, we want the nucleophile to have a high-energy HOMO and the electrophile to have a low-energy LUMO.

- The best nucleophiles have high-energy occupied molecular orbitals (HOMOs).
- The best electrophiles have low-energy unoccupied molecular orbitals (LUMOs).

The very first stage in understanding any reaction is to work out which of the reacting molecules is the nucleophile and which is the electrophile. It is impossible to stress too much how important it is to be able to identify nucleophiles and electrophiles correctly. For this reason we’ll now conduct an identity parade of each class. We’ll show you some of the top performing nucleophiles and top performing electrophiles, with a few comments on why they are so good at what they do, before we move on to see them in action.

### Identifying a nucleophile

Nucleophiles are either negatively charged or neutral species with a pair of electrons in a high-energy orbital (the HOMO). The most common type of nucleophile has a non-bonding lone pair of electrons. Non-bonding electrons are typically high in energy because they do not benefit from the stabilization bonding electrons get from being shared between two nuclei. Typical neutral nucleophiles with lone pairs are ammonia, amines, water, and alcohols, all of which have lone pairs (one for N, two of equal energy for O) occupying sp³ orbitals.

Other atoms later in the periodic table which carry lone pairs, such as phosphines, thiols, and sulfides, also make good nucleophiles, especially since their lone pairs are of even higher energy occupying orbitals made up of 3s and 3p atomic orbitals.

Anions which have lone pairs are often good nucleophiles too, partly because they can be attracted electrostatically by positively charged electrophiles. The anionic centre is usually O, S, or halogen, each of which can have several identical lone pairs. For example, hydroxide has three lone pairs—the negative charge cannot be assigned to one of them in particular. It’s convenient just to draw the negative charge, and not the lone pairs as well. Negative charges like this actually represent a pair of electrons—both the ‘extra’ electron and its partner in the lone pair—so we normally write mechanisms with an arrow starting on the negative charge.

The most important carbon nucleophile with a lone pair of electrons is the cyanide ion. Although linear cyanide (which is isoelectronic with N₂) has a lone pair on nitrogen and a lone pair on carbon, the nucleophilic atom is usually anionic carbon rather than neutral nitrogen as the sp orbital on carbon is of higher energy than that on the more electronegative nitrogen, and therefore constitutes the HOMO.
Molecules can still be nucleophilic without non-bonding lone pairs. The next highest set of orbitals are bonding $\pi$ orbitals, especially C=C double bonds, since they are higher in energy than $\sigma$ orbitals (see p. 93). Simple alkenes are weakly nucleophilic and react with strong electrophiles such as bromine. Note, however, that molecules with $\pi$ bonds can also be electrophiles, particularly when the $\pi$ bond involves an electronegative atom. The only common $\pi$ nucleophiles are alkenes and aromatic rings.

Finally, it is possible for the $\sigma$ bond of a nucleophile to donate electrons, provided it is a $\sigma$ bond associated with electropositive atoms such as B, Si, or the metals, along with C or H. You saw on p. 97 how the weak hold these atoms have over their electrons means that their atomic orbitals (and hence the molecular orbitals they contribute to) are high in energy. You met the borohydride anion BH$_4^-$ in Chapter 4. Borohydride is a good nucleophile—it attacks electrophilic carbonyl compounds, as you will see shortly. It donates electrons from its HOMO, the B–H $\sigma$ bond. Notice that in this case the negative charge does not represent a pair of electrons: you cannot start a curly arrow from it.

In later chapters you will see organometallics—compounds with carbon–metal bonds, for example methyllithium—acting as nucleophiles. They do so because the $\sigma$ orbital generated from electropositive C and even more electropositive Li is high in energy.

---

**Nucleophiles donate electrons from available, high-energy orbitals represented by one of the following:**

- $\text{NH}_3$
- Br
- $\text{H}_2\text{C}=$\text{CH}_2
- Li–CH$_3$

  a lone pair  a negative charge  a double bond  a $\sigma$ bond to an electropositive atom

The curly arrows in the box above represent electron movement away from the nucleophile. But the electrons have to go somewhere: they are donated to an electrophile.

**Identifying an electrophile**

Electrophiles are neutral or positively charged species with an empty atomic orbital (such as the empty $p$ orbital in borane) or a low-energy antibonding orbital that can easily accept electrons. The simplest electrophile is the hydrogen cation, $\text{H}^+$, usually named for what it is, a proton. $\text{H}^+$ is a species without any electrons at all and a vacant, very low energy, 1s orbital. It is so reactive that it is hardly ever found and almost any nucleophile will react with it. Acid solutions containing $\text{H}^+$ are neutralized by the nucleophile hydroxide, for example, and strong acid goes on to protonate water as well, the water acting as a nucleophile and the proton as the electrophile. The product is the hydronium ion, $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$, the true acidic species in all aqueous strong acids. Here’s the reaction between hydroxide and $\text{H}^+$ with the electron movement from the nucleophile to the electrophile represented by curly arrows. The arrows start on the hydroxide’s negative charge, which represents one of the oxygen’s pairs of electrons:

Other electrophiles with empty atomic orbitals include borane, which you met on p. 103, and related compounds such as boron trifluoride and aluminium trichloride. BF$_3$ reacts with ethers, as shown below, to form stable complexes. This time the arrow starts on the lone pair.
Few organic compounds have vacant atomic orbitals and in most organic electrophiles the LUMOs are instead **low-energy antibonding orbitals associated with electronegative atoms**. These antibonding orbitals can be either \( \pi^* \) orbitals or \( \sigma^* \) orbitals—in other words, molecules which make good electrophiles might have a double or a single bond to an electronegative atom such as O, N, Cl, or Br. It’s important that an electronegative atom is involved in order to lower the energy of the orbital (see p. 96) and make it ready to accept electrons.

### Carbon’s place in the electronegativity scale

Here is a summary of electronegativities for atoms commonly involved in organic reactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Electronegativity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>3.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br</td>
<td>3.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>2.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>3.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>3.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>2.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>2.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>2.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>1.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This bar chart makes it clear why carbon is just so special: it can form strong bonds to almost anything, especially itself. Elements at either end of the scale form weak bonds to similar elements (metal–metal bonds are weak, as are halogen–halogen or O–O bonds), but elements in the middle can form strong bonds to other elements at either end of the scale or elements in the middle. Being in the middle also gives C versatile reactivity: it is electrophilic when bonded to a more electronegative element and nucleophilic when bonded to a more nucleophilic element.

The most important molecules with a **double bond to an electronegative atom** are carbonyl compounds. In fact carbonyl groups are the most important functional groups in organic chemistry. We looked at their orbitals on p. 103 and we devote the next chapter, Chapter 6, to a detailed study of their reactivity. The low-energy \( \pi^* \) orbital is available to accept electrons, and its electrophilicity is further enhanced by the partial positive charge at carbon which arises from the \( \text{C}=\text{O} \) dipole. Here’s an example of a carbonyl compound, acetone, reacting with an anionic nucleophile—we’ll choose borohydride in this case. Notice
how the arrow does not start on the negative charge, as the charge does not represent a pair of electrons here.

The arrows showing electron movement are a little more involved this time, but the explanation is straightforward. The first arrow shows the electrons moving from the nucleophile’s HOMO (the B–H \( \sigma \) orbital) to the electrophile’s LUMO (the C=O \( \pi^* \) orbital). The new feature in this mechanism is a second arrow showing the electrons moving from the double bond onto the oxygen atom. This is easy to explain. Since the reaction is putting electrons into an antibonding orbital (the \( \pi^* \)), a bond has to break. That breaking bond is the C=O \( \sigma \) bond (the \( \sigma \) bond remains intact). The electrons in the bond have to go somewhere and they end up as an extra lone pair (represented by the negative charge) on oxygen. The product has a new C–H \( \sigma \) bond in place of the C=O \( \pi \) bond.

Molecules with a single bond to electronegative atoms can also make good electrophiles. In compounds such as HCl or CH\(_3\)Br, the \( \sigma^* \) orbital is low in energy because of the electronegative Cl or Br (see p. 95) and the dipole attracts the electrons of the nucleophile to the H or C atom.

Here’s an example of hydrogen chloride acting as an electrophile with ammonia as the nucleophile. As with the carbonyl example above, we are putting electrons into an antibonding orbital, so a bond must break. This time the antibonding orbital is the H–Cl \( \sigma^* \), so the bond which breaks is the H–Cl \( \sigma \) bond.

You may recognize this reaction, and the one on p. 113, as the reaction between a base and an acid. All acid–base reactions are reactions between a nucleophile (the base) and an electrophile (the acid). We call an electrophile an acid if it is has an \( X–H \) bond (\( X \) being any atom) that loses H\(^+\) in its reactions. We call a nucleophile a base when it uses a lone pair to donate electrons to the \( X–H \) bond.

There is a little more to the definition of an acid, which we shall discuss in Chapter 8, where you will meet the term ‘Lewis acid’.

Some \( \sigma \) bonds are electrophilic even though they have no dipole at all. The bonds in the halogens I\(_2\), Br\(_2\), and Cl\(_2\) are a case in point. Bromine, for example, is strongly electrophilic because it has a weak Br–Br bond with a low energy \( \sigma^* \) orbital. Why is the \( \sigma^* \) low in energy? Well, bromine is slightly electronegative, but it is also large: it has to use 4s and 4p atomic orbitals for bonding, but these orbitals are large and diffuse, and overlap poorly, meaning the \( \sigma^* \) molecular orbital is not raised far in energy and can easily accept electrons. How different the situation is with a C–C bond: C–C single bonds are almost never electrophilic.
Bromine reacts with many nucleophiles, for example in the reaction shown below between a sulfide and bromine. Lone pair electrons are donated from sulfur into the Br–Br σ* orbital, which makes a new bond between S and Br, and breaks the old Br–Br bond.

The unreactivity of C–C bonds is why we think of structures in terms of a hydrocarbon skeleton and functional groups: the hydrocarbon framework is made up of strong C–C bonds with unreactive low-energy filled and high-energy empty orbitals, while the functional groups tend to involve electronegative and electropositive atoms, which react because they contribute to more accessible low-energy LUMOs or high-energy HOMOs.

**Curly arrows represent reaction mechanisms**

You have now seen several examples of curly arrows representing the movement of electrons during a reaction, and it is time to discuss them in detail. It is no exaggeration to say that this simple device is the one most powerful tool chemists have for explaining simply and accurately how reactions work—in other words the mechanisms of reactions. Curly arrows are to reactions what structural diagrams are to molecules. We discussed the guidelines for drawing structures in Chapter 2, explaining that although the structure of a molecule may be very complex, a good structural diagram will represent all of its important features without unnecessary detail. Curly arrows are similar: you have seen how reactions involve the overlap and summation of molecular orbitals to make new molecular orbitals, and the movement of electrons within those orbitals. Curly arrows allow us to represent all the important features of those interactions and electron movements very simply, without being concerned with unnecessary detail. It’s now time to outline some guidelines for writing mechanisms with curly arrows.

**Curly arrows show the movement of electrons**

A curly arrow represents the *movement of a pair of electrons* from a filled orbital into an empty orbital. You can think of the curly arrow as representing a pair of electrons thrown, like a
climber’s grappling hook, across from where he is standing to where he wants to go. In the simplest cases, the result of this movement is to form a bond between a nucleophile and an electrophile. Here are two examples we have already seen in which lone pair electrons are transferred to empty atomic orbitals.

A curly arrow always starts with its tail resting on the symbol representing a pair of electrons in a filled orbital—in this case the lone pair or the negative charge (which actually represents a lone pair). The head of the arrow indicates the final destination of the pair of electrons—the new bond between oxygen and hydrogen or oxygen and boron in these examples. As we are forming a new bond, the head of the arrow should be drawn to a point somewhere on the line between the two atoms.

Why does a curly arrow represent two electrons? Well, as you saw in Chapter 4, it takes two electrons to make a bond, and in these two cases those electrons come from a lone pair. We use a different sort of arrow for movements of one electron, as you will see in Chapters 24 and 37.

When the nucleophile attacks an antibonding orbital, such as the weak Br–Br bond we have just been discussing, we need two arrows, one to make the new bond and one to break the old.

The bond-making arrow is the same as before—it starts on the nucleophile’s lone pair and ends near the electrophile—but the bond-breaking arrow is new. This arrow shows that the two electrons in the bond move to one end (a bromine atom) and turn it into an anion. As always the arrow starts on something representing a pair of electrons in a filled orbital—the Br–Br σ bond. It should start in the centre of the bond and its head should rest on the atom (Br in this case) the electrons are heading for.

Another example is the attack of a base on the strong acid HBr.

It is not important how much curvature you put into the arrows—as long as they curl enough to distinguish them from straight reaction arrows, they can be as curly as you like. Neither does it matter whether they go to the left or the right, or whether they curve up or down as long as they begin and end in the right places. The mechanism below is just as correct:

---

Some chemists prefer to place this point halfway between the atoms but we think it is clearer and more informative if the arrowhead is closer to the atom to which the new bond is forming. For these examples the difference is minimal and either method is completely clear, but in more complex situations our method prevents ambiguity, as we shall see later. We shall adopt this convention throughout this book: that the arrow ends close to the electrophile.

Notice that the final arrow ends up delivering the electrons to an electronegative atom, satisfying its desire for electron density. This is part of the reason why double or single bonds to electronegative atoms are often a feature of good electrophiles.
Curly arrows always start on something representing a pair of electrons:
• a negative charge
• a lone pair
• or a bond

and end at the point those electrons are moving to.

**Charge is conserved in each step of a reaction**

Charge cannot be created or destroyed. If the starting materials have no overall charge, then neither must the products. In the last example above, it is obvious why the bromine becomes negatively charged—it takes both electrons from the bond even though only one of them formally ‘belongs’ to it. It may be less obvious to you why the ammonium cation has to have a positive charge, but it must, in order to maintain overall neutrality. One way to think about it is to note that both of the electrons in the new N–H bond come from N, so N is one electron down on the deal.

If the starting materials are charged, then the products must have, overall, the same charge. Here’s ammonia being protonated by H₃O⁺—both starting materials and products must have overall charge 1⁺.

When it is a π bond that is being broken rather than a σ bond, only the π bond is broken and the σ bond should be left in place. This is what commonly happens when an electrophilic carbonyl group is attacked by a nucleophile. Just as in the breaking of a σ bond, start the arrow in the middle of the π bond and end by putting the arrowhead on the more electronegative atom, in this case oxygen rather than carbon.

In this case the starting materials had an overall negative charge and this is preserved in the anionic product. The charge disappears from the hydroxide ion because it is now sharing a pair of electrons with what was the carbonyl carbon atom and a charge appears on what was the carbonyl oxygen atom because it now has one of the electrons in the old π bond.

**π bonds as nucleophiles**

As you saw above, alkenes can be nucleophiles. The reaction of an alkene with HBr is a simple example: the C–C π bond is the HOMO of the nucleophile. The first arrow therefore starts in the middle of the π bond and goes into the gap between one of the carbon atoms and the hydrogen atom of HBr. The second arrow takes the electrons out of the H–Br σ bond and puts them onto the bromine atom to make bromide ion. Overall charge is conserved, so we must generate a positively charged species called a carbocation. The carbocation has a positive charge and an empty π orbital (you can count the electrons to make sure).
Notice that it was important to draw the two reagents in the right orientation since we need the arrow to show which end of the alkene reacts with which end of HBr. If we had aligned them differently we would have had trouble drawing the mechanism. Here is a less satisfactory representation, in which the H doesn’t seem to transfer to the correct end of the alkene:

\[
\text{HB} \rightarrow \text{H} + \text{Br}^-
\]

If you find yourself making an ambiguous drawing like this, it is worth having another go to see if you can be clearer. When the nucleophile is a π (or σ) bond rather than a lone pair or a charge there is always the question of which end of the bond actually reacts. One way to make this clear is to draw an atom-specific curly arrow actually passing through the atom that reacts. Something like this will do:

This reaction does not, in fact, stop here as the two ions produced now react with each other to form the product of the reaction. The anion is the nucleophile and the carbocation, with its empty p orbital, is the electrophile.

\[
\text{Br} \rightarrow \text{Br}^{-}
\]

**σ bonds as nucleophiles**

When σ bonds act as nucleophiles, the electrons also have to go to one end of the σ bond as they form a new bond to the electrophile. We can return to an earlier example, the reaction of sodium borohydride (NaBH4) with a carbonyl compound, and complete the mechanism. In this example, one of the atoms (the hydrogen atom) moves away from the rest of the BH4 anion and becomes bonded to the carbonyl compound. The LUMO of the electrophile is, of course, the π* orbital of the C=O double bond.

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O}^{-} \rightarrow \text{H} + \text{O}^{-}
\]

The arrow from the nucleophile should start in the middle of the bond that breaks and show which atom is transferred to the electrophile. You could use an atom-specific arrow if you wanted to make it absolutely clear that the electrons in the σ bond act as a nucleophile through the hydrogen and not through the boron atom:

The anion which forms is an intermediate, not the final product. The reaction is often carried out in water and the anion acts as a nucleophile to remove a proton from water. Water is the electrophile: its LUMO is the O–H σ*.

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O}^{-} \rightarrow \text{HO}^{-} + \text{H}^+
\]
Summary: Curly arrow health check

- A curly arrow shows the movement of a pair of electrons.
- The tail of the arrow shows the source of the electron pair, which will be a filled orbital (HOMO) and can be represented by:
  - a lone pair
  - or a negative charge
  - or a π bond
  - or a σ bond.
- The head of the arrow indicates the destination of the electron pair, which will be:
  - an empty atomic orbital where a new bond will be formed
  - or a π* or σ* antibonding orbital where a new bond will be formed and an old bond will break
  - or an electronegative atom that can support a negative charge.
- Overall charge is always conserved in a reaction.

Drawing your own mechanisms with curly arrows

When you meet a new reaction, you must do two things:

1. identify which bonds have been formed and broken, and
2. decide which molecule is the nucleophile and which is the electrophile.

Once you have done that, you are well on the way to writing a reasonable mechanism using curly arrows. We’ll take as an example the reaction of triphenylphosphine with methyl iodide.

\[
\text{Mel} + \text{Ph}_3\text{P} \rightarrow \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{Me} + \text{I}^\ominus
\]

First observe what has happened: a new bond has been formed between the phosphorus atom and the methyl group, and the carbon–iodine bond has been broken. So we need to draw the two reagents in such a way that a curly arrow can be used to represent this new bond. You’ll also need to make sure that you draw out all of the bonds that are actually involved in the reaction (too much detail is better than too little):

Now the all-important question: which is the nucleophile and which is the electrophile? For the nucleophile we are looking for a high-energy pair of electrons such as a lone pair, which the phosphorus has. Likewise, methyl iodide fits the bill as a plausible electrophile, with its bond between C and an electronegative element (I). All that remains is to draw the arrows. The first one starts on the source of the electrons, the phosphorus lone pair, and finishes near the C atom to indicate the new P–C bond. The second one breaks the old C–I bond and moves electrons onto the I atom.

Admittedly, that was quite an easy mechanism to draw but you should still be pleased if you succeeded at your first try.
Watch out for five-valent carbons

We now ought to spell out one thing that we have never stated but rather assumed. Most atoms in stable organic molecules have a full complement of electrons (two in the case of hydrogen, eight in the cases of carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen) and so, if you make a new bond to one of those elements, you must also break an existing bond. Suppose you just ‘added’ Ph₃P to MeI in this last example without breaking the C—I bond: what would happen?

This structure must be wrong because carbon cannot have five bonds—if it did it would have ten electrons in the 2s and the three 2p orbitals. Four orbitals can contain only eight electrons.

B, C, N, and O never have more than four bonds. If you make a new bond to uncharged H, C, N, or O you must also break one of the existing bonds in the same step.

Mechanisms with several steps

At the beginning of the chapter, we mentioned the fact that carbonyl compounds react with cyanide. We are now going to deduce a mechanism. This is the reaction:

We must decide what happens. NaCN is an ionic solid so the true reagent must be cyanide ion, whose structure was discussed on p. 112. As it is an anion, it must be the nucleophile and the carbonyl group must be the electrophile. Starting the arrow on the nucleophile’s negative charge and heading for the C=O group, and then using a second arrow to break the C=O bond gives us this:

This is a good mechanism but it doesn’t quite produce the product. There must be a second step in which the anionic oxygen picks up a proton from somewhere. The only source of protons is the solvent, water, so we can write the full mechanism in one sequence:

Try a more complicated example: primary alcohols can be converted into symmetrical ethers in acid solution. Suggest a mechanism for this acid-catalysed conversion of one functional group into another.
The acid must do something, so we need to start with the reaction between ethanol and H⁺. H⁺ has to be an electrophile, so the nucleophile must be ethanol, using its HOMO, one of the O lone pairs, as the source of electrons. The first intermediate we get is called an oxonium ion.

The positively charged oxonium ion has to be the electrophile in the second step of the reaction, and the only possible nucleophile is another molecule of ethanol. But how do they react? It's tempting to allow the ethanol's lone pair to attack the positively charged oxygen atom, but that would give us an oxygen atom with ten electrons—as with H₃O⁺ this positive charge is not an empty orbital. Attacking the H–O bond is a good alternative, but that just takes us back to where we started.

What we need is a new C–O bond, so the lone pair must attack at carbon, putting electrons into the C–O σ* and expelling a molecule of water. Here's the full mechanism. The last step is loss of the proton to give the ether.

Now for something completely new: try drawing a mechanism for this reaction.

You might well protest that you don't know anything about the chemistry of either of the functional groups, the thiol or the cyclic ether. Be that as it may, you can still draw a mechanism. Ask first of all: which bonds have been formed and which broken? Clearly the S–H bond has been broken and a new S–C bond formed. The three-membered ring has gone by the cleavage of one of the C–O bonds. The main chain of carbon atoms is unchanged. All this is sketched in the diagram in the margin. We suggest you now cover the rest of this page and try to work out a mechanism yourself before reading further.

The hydroxide must do something, and since it is negatively charged, a reasonable starting point is going to be to use it as a nucleophile to break the S–H bond. Hydroxide is after all a base; it likes to remove protons. So here's the first step:

Now we have a negatively charged sulfur atom, which must be the nucleophile. We want to make a bond to carbon, so the C–O bond in the three-membered ring must be the electrophile. So ... just draw the arrows and see what happens. Here goes ...
That is not quite the product: we need to let this anion pick up a proton from somewhere. Where can the proton come from? It must be the proton originally removed by the hydroxide. The anion attacks water and the hydroxide is regenerated.

Your mechanism possibly didn’t look as neat as the printed version, but if you got it roughly right, you should be proud. This is a three-step mechanism involving chemistry that is new to you and yet you could draw a mechanism for it.

**Curly arrows are vital for learning organic chemistry**

Curly arrows can be used to explain the interaction between the structure of reactants and products, and their reactivity in the vast majority of organic reactions, regardless of their complexity. When used correctly they can even be used to predict possible outcomes of unknown processes and hence to design new synthetic reactions. They are a powerful tool for understanding and developing organic chemistry and it is vital that you become proficient in their use. They are the dynamic language of organic reaction mechanisms and they will appear in every chapter of the book from now on.

Another equally important reason for mastering curly arrows now, as we start the systematic study of different types of reactions, is that the seemingly vast number of ‘different reactions’ turn out not to be so vast after all. Most organic reactions involve the movement of pairs of electrons between nucleophiles and electrophiles. And with relatively few types of organic nucleophiles and electrophiles involved in all these reactions, the similarity between seemingly unrelated reactions will become immediately apparent if you understand and can draw mechanisms. Learning to draw mechanisms means you can understand groups of related reactions rather than having to learn them individually.

Drawing curly arrow mechanisms is a bit like riding a bike. Before you’ve mastered the skill, you keep falling off. Once you’ve mastered the skill, it seems so straightforward that you wonder how you ever did without it. You’ll come across busy streets and complex traffic junctions, but with care you’ll get through safely.

**Step-by-step guide to drawing mechanisms with curly arrows**

If you still feel you are at the wobbly stage, and need a helping hand, this step-by-step guide may help you. You’ll soon find you won’t need to follow it through in detail.

1. Draw out the reagents as clear structures following the guidelines in Chapter 2. Check that you understand what the reagents and the solvent are under the conditions of the reaction, for example if the reaction is in a base, will one of the compounds exist as an anion?
2. Inspect the starting materials and the products, and assess what has happened in the reaction. What new bonds have been formed? What bonds have been broken? Has anything been added or removed? Have any bonds moved around the molecule?
3. Identify the nucleophilic centres in all the reactant molecules and decide which is the most nucleophilic. Then identify the electrophiles present and again decide which is the most electrophilic.
4. If the combination of these two centres appears to lead to the product, draw the reactants, complete with charges, so as to position the nucleophilic and electrophilic centres within bonding distance, ensuring that the angle of attack of the nucleophile is more or less consistent with the orbitals involved.
5. Draw a curly arrow from the nucleophile to the electrophile. It must start on a representation of electrons—a filled orbital or negative charge (show this clearly by just touching the bond or charge)—and finish where the electrons are heading for (show this clearly by the position of the head).

---

**We will generally show mechanisms using black arrows on red diagrams but the only point of that is to make the arrows stand out. We suggest that when you write mechanisms you consider using a colour for your arrows that contrasts with the structures.**

---

**The few reaction types that don’t involve nucleophiles and electrophiles are discussed in Chapters 34, 35, 37, and 38.**

**You will see a great example of this in Chapter 10: carboxylic acids, amides, esters, anhydrides … many functional groups, but all the same mechanisms.**
6. Consider whether any atom that has been changed now has too many bonds; if so one of them must be broken to avoid absurd structures. Select a bond to break. Draw a curly arrow from the centre of the chosen bond, the filled orbital, and terminate it in a suitable place, such as an electronegative atom.

7. Write out the structures of the products specified by the curly arrows. Break the bonds that are the sources of the arrows and make those that are the targets. Consider the effect on the charges on individual atoms and check that the overall charge is not changed. Once you have drawn the curly arrows, the structure of the products is already decided and there is no room for any further decisions. Just write what the curly arrows tell you. If the structure is wrong, then the curly arrows were wrong so go back and change them.

8. Repeat stages 5–7 as required to produce a stable product.

Now you have met the language of mechanism it’s time to look in detail at the reactions of some functional groups, and we start with the most important functional group of all, the carbonyl group.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group

Molecular orbitals explain the reactivity of the carbonyl group

We are now going to leave to one side most of the reactions you met in the last chapter—we will come back to them all again later in the book. In this chapter we are going to concentrate on just one of them—probably the simplest of all organic reactions—the addition of a nucleophile to a carbonyl group. The carbonyl group, as found in aldehydes, ketones, and many other compounds, is without doubt the most important functional group in organic chemistry, and that is another reason why we have chosen it as our first topic for more detailed study.

You met nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group on pp. 115 and 121, where we showed you how cyanide reacts with aldehydes to give an alcohol. As a reminder, here is the reaction again, this time with a ketone, with its mechanism.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NaCN, H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \\
\text{H}_2\text{O} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

The reaction has two steps: nucleophilic addition of cyanide, followed by protonation of the anion. In fact, this is a general feature of all nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups.
Additions to carbonyl groups generally consist of two mechanistic steps:
- nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group
- protonation of the anion that results.

The addition step is more important, and it forms a new C–C σ bond at the expense of the C=O π bond. The protonation step makes the overall reaction addition of HCN across the C=O π bond.

Why does cyanide, in common with many other nucleophiles, attack the carbonyl group? And why does it attack the carbon atom of the carbonyl group? To answer these questions we need to look in detail at the structure of carbonyl compounds in general and the orbitals of the C=O group in particular.

The carbonyl double bond, like that found in alkenes (whose bonding we discussed in Chapter 4), consists of two parts: one σ bond and one π bond. The σ bond between the two sp² hybridized atoms—carbon and oxygen—is formed from two sp² orbitals. The other sp² orbitals on carbon form the two σ bonds to the substituents while those on oxygen are filled by the two lone pairs. The sp² hybridization means that the carbonyl group has to be planar, and the angle between the substituents is close to 120°. The diagram illustrates all this for the simplest carbonyl compound, formaldehyde (or methanal, CH₂O). The π bond then results from overlap of the remaining p orbitals—again, you can see this for formaldehyde in the diagram.

When we introduced the bonding in the carbonyl group in Chapter 4 we explained how polarization in the π bond means it is skewed towards oxygen, because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon. Conversely, the unfilled π* antibonding orbital is skewed in the opposite direction, with a larger coefficient at the carbon atom. This is quite hard to represent with the π bond represented as a single unit, as shown above, but becomes easier to visualize if instead we represent the π and π* orbitals using individual p orbitals on C and O. The diagrams in the margin show the π and π* orbitals represented in this way.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electronegativities, bond lengths, and bond strengths</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Representative bond energy, kJ mol⁻¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C=O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because there are two types of bonding between C and O, the C=O double bond is rather shorter than a typical C–O single bond, and also over twice as strong—so why is it so reactive? Polarization is the key. The polarized C=O bond gives the carbon atom some degree of positive charge, and this charge attracts negatively charged nucleophiles (like cyanide) and encourages reaction. The polarization of the antibonding π* orbital towards carbon is also
important because, when the carbonyl group reacts with a nucleophile, electrons move from the HOMO of the nucleophile (an sp orbital in the case of cyanide) into the LUMO of the electrophile—in other words the $\pi^*$ orbital of the $\text{C}=\text{O}$ bond. The greater coefficient of the $\pi^*$ orbital at carbon means a better HOMO–LUMO interaction, so this is where the nucleophile attacks.

As our nucleophile—which we are representing here as ‘Nu$^-$’—approaches the carbon atom, the electron pair in its HOMO starts to interact with the LUMO (antibonding $\pi^*$) to form a new $\sigma$ bond. Filling antibonding orbitals breaks bonds and, as the electrons enter the antibonding $\pi^*$ of the carbonyl group, the $\pi$ bond is broken, leaving only the $\text{C}–\text{O} \ \sigma$ bond intact. But electrons can’t just vanish, and those that were in the $\pi$ bond move off on to the electronegative oxygen, which ends up with the negative charge that started on the nucleophile. You can see all this happening in the diagram below.

Notice how the trigonal, planar sp$^2$ hybridized carbon atom of the carbonyl group changes to a tetrahedral, sp$^3$ hybridized state in the product. For each class of nucleophile you meet in this chapter, we will show you the HOMO–LUMO interaction involved in the addition reaction. These interactions also show you how the orbitals of the starting materials change into the orbitals of the product as they combine. Most importantly here, the lone pair of the nucleophile combines with the $\pi^*$ of the carbonyl group to form a new $\sigma$ bond in the product.

**Attack of cyanide on aldehydes and ketones**

Now that we’ve looked at the theory of how a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl group, let’s go back to the real reaction with which we started this chapter: cyanohydrin formation from a carbonyl compound and sodium cyanide. Cyanide contains sp hybridized C and N atoms, and its HOMO is an sp orbital on carbon. The reaction is a typical nucleophilic addition reaction to a carbonyl group: the electron pair from the HOMO of the CN$^-$ (an sp orbital on carbon) moves into the C=O $\pi^*$ orbital; the electrons from the C=O $\pi$ orbital move on to the oxygen atom. The reaction is usually carried out in the presence of acid, which protonates the resulting alkoxide to give the hydroxyl group of the composite functional group known as a cyanohydrin. The reaction works with both ketones and aldehydes, and the mechanism below shows the reaction of a general aldehyde. This reaction appeared first in Chapter 5.
Cyanohydrins are important synthetic intermediates, for example the cyanohydrin formed from this cyclic amino ketone is the first intermediate in a synthesis of some medicinal compounds known as 5HT$_3$ agonists, which were designed to reduce nausea in chemotherapy patients.

Cyanohydrins are also components of many natural and industrial products, such as the insecticide cypermethrin (marketed as ‘Ripcord’ and ‘Barricade’).

Cyanohydrin formation is reversible: just dissolving a cyanohydrin in water can give back the aldehyde or ketone you started with, and aqueous base usually decomposes cyanohydrins completely. This is because cyanide is a good leaving group—we’ll come back to this type of reaction in more detail in Chapter 10.

Cyanohydrin formation is therefore an equilibrium between starting materials and products, and we can get good yields only if the equilibrium favours the products. The equilibrium is more favourable for aldehyde cyanohydrins than for ketone cyanohydrins, and the reason is the size of the groups attached to the carbonyl carbon atom. As the carbonyl carbon atom changes from sp$^2$ to sp$^3$, its bond angles change from about 120° to 109°.
about 109°—in other words, the substituents it carries move closer together. This reduction in bond angle is not a problem for aldehydes, because one of the substituents is just a (very small) hydrogen atom, but for ketones, especially ones that carry larger alkyl groups, this effect can disfavour the addition reaction. Effects that result from the size of substituents and the repulsion between them are called steric effects, and we call the repulsive force experienced by large substituents steric hindrance. Steric hindrance (not ‘hinderance’) is a consequence of repulsion between the electrons in all the filled orbitals of the alkyl substituents.

**Steric hindrance**

The size of substituents plays a role in very many organic reactions—it’s the reason aldehydes (with an H next to the C=O group) are more reactive than ketones, for example. Steric hindrance affects reaction rates, but also makes molecules react by completely different mechanisms, as you will see in the substitution reactions in Chapter 15. You will need to get used to thinking about whether the presence of large substituents, with all their filled C–H and C–C bonds, is a factor in determining how well a reaction will go.

**Cyanohydrins and cassava**

The reversibility of cyanohydrin formation is of more than theoretical interest. In parts of Africa the staple food is cassava. This food contains substantial quantities of the glucoside of acetone cyanohydrin (a glucoside is an acetal derived from glucose). We shall discuss the structure of glucose later in this chapter, but for now, just accept that it stabilizes the cyanohydrin.

The glucoside is not poisonous in itself, but enzymes in the human gut break it down and release HCN. Eventually 50 mg HCN per 100 g of cassava can be released and this is enough to kill a human being after a meal of unfermented cassava. If the cassava is crushed with water and allowed to stand (‘ferment’), enzymes in the cassava will do the same job and then the HCN can be washed out before the cassava is cooked and eaten.

The cassava is now safe to eat but it still contains some glucoside. Some diseases found in eastern Nigeria can be traced to long-term consumption of HCN. Similar glucosides are found in apple pips and the kernels inside the stones of fruit such as peaches and apricots. Some people like eating these, but it is unwise to eat too many at one sitting!

**The angle of nucleophilic attack on aldehydes and ketones**

Having introduced you to the sequence of events that makes up a nucleophilic attack at C=O (interaction of HOMO with LUMO, formation of new σ bond, breakage of π bond), we should now tell you a little more about the direction from which the nucleophile approaches the carbonyl group. Not only do nucleophiles always attack carbonyl groups at carbon, but they also always approach from a particular angle. You may at first be surprised by this angle, since nucleophiles attack not from a direction perpendicular to the plane of the carbonyl group but at about 107° to the C=O bond—close to the angle at which the new bond will form. This approach route is known as the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory after the authors of the elegant crystallographic methods that revealed it. You can think of the angle of attack as the result of a compromise between maximum orbital overlap of the HOMO with π* and minimum repulsion of the HOMO by the electron density in the carbonyl π bond. But a better explanation is that π* does not have parallel atomic orbitals as there is a node halfway down the bond (Chapter 4) so the atomic orbitals are already at an angle. The nucleophile attacks along the axis of the larger orbital in the HOMO.
Although we now know precisely from which direction the nucleophile attacks the C=O group, this is not always easy to represent when we draw curly arrows. As long as you bear the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory in mind, you are quite at liberty to write any of the variants shown here, among others.

Any other portions of the molecule that get in the way of (or, in other words, that cause *steric hindrance* to) the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory will greatly reduce the rate of addition and this is another reason why aldehydes are more reactive than ketones. The importance of the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory will become more evident later, particularly in Chapter 33.

Bürgi and Dunitz deduced this trajectory by examining crystal structures of compounds containing both a nucleophilic nitrogen atom and an electrophilic carbonyl group. They found that, when the two got close enough to interact, but were not free to undergo reaction, the nitrogen atom always lay on or near the 107° trajectory described here. Theoretical calculations later gave the same 107° value for the optimum angle of attack.

**Nucleophilic attack by ‘hydride’ on aldehydes and ketones**

Nucleophilic attack by the hydride ion, H\(^-\), is an almost unknown reaction. This species, which is present in the salt sodium hydride, NaH, has such a high charge density that it only ever reacts as a base. The reason is that its filled 1s orbital is of an ideal size to interact with the hydrogen atom's contribution to the \(\sigma^*\) orbital of an H–X bond (X can be any atom), but much too small to interact easily with carbon’s more diffuse 2p orbital contribution to the LUMO \((\pi^*)\) of the C=O group.

Nevertheless, adding H\(^-\) to the carbon atom of a C=O group would be a very useful reaction, as the result would be the formation of an alcohol. This process would involve going down from the aldehyde or ketone oxidation level to the alcohol oxidation level (Chapter 2, p. 32) and would therefore be a reduction. It cannot be done with NaH, but it can be done with some other compounds containing nucleophilic hydrogen atoms.

The most important of these compounds is sodium borohydride, NaBH\(_4\). This is a water-soluble salt containing the tetrahedral BH\(_4^-\) anion, which is isoelectronic with methane but has a negative charge since boron has one less proton in the nucleus than does carbon.
In Chapter 4 we looked at isoelectronic borane BH$_3$ and the cation CH$_3^+$. Here we have effectively added a hydride ion to each of them.

But beware! Remember (p. 115) there is no lone pair on boron: you must not draw an arrow coming out of this negative charge to form another bond. If you did, you would get a pentacovalent B(V) compound, which would have ten electrons in its outer shell. Such a thing is impossible with a first-row element as there are only four available orbitals ($1 \times 2s$ and $3 \times 2p$).

Instead, since all of the electrons (including those represented by the negative charge) are in B–H $\sigma$ bonds, it is from a B–H bond that we must start any arrow to indicate reaction of BH$_4^-$ as a nucleophile. By transferring this pair of electrons we make the boron atom neutral—it is now trivalent with just six electrons.

What happens when we carry out this reaction using a carbonyl compound as the electrophile? The hydrogen atom, together with the pair of electrons from the B–H bond, will be transferred to the carbon atom of the C=O group. Although no hydride ion, H$,^-$, is actually involved in the reaction, the transfer of a hydrogen atom with an attached pair of electrons can be regarded as a ‘hydride transfer’. You will often see it described this way in books. But be careful not to confuse BH$_4^-$ with the hydride ion itself. To make it quite clear that it is the hydrogen atom that is forming the new bond to C, this reaction may also be helpfully represented with a curly arrow passing through the hydrogen atom.

You met this reaction in Chapter 5 but there is more to say about it. The oxyanion produced in the first step can help stabilize the electron-deficient BH$_3$ molecule by adding to its empty p orbital. Now we have a tetravalent boron anion again, which could transfer a second hydrogen atom (with its pair of electrons) to another molecule of aldehyde.

This process can continue so that, in principle, all four hydrogen atoms could be transferred to molecules of aldehyde. In practice the reaction is rarely as efficient as that, but aldehydes and ketones are usually reduced in good yield to the corresponding alcohol by sodium borohydride in water or alcoholic solution. The water or alcohol solvent provides the proton needed to form the alcohol from the alkoxide.
Sodium borohydride is one of the weaker hydride donors. The fact that it can be used in water is evidence of this: more powerful hydride donors such as lithium aluminium hydride, LiAlH₄, react violently with water. Sodium borohydride reacts with both aldehydes and ketones, although the reaction with ketones is slower: for example, benzaldehyde is reduced about 400 times faster than acetophenone in isopropanol. This is because of steric hindrance (see above). Sodium borohydride does not react at all with less reactive carbonyl compounds such as esters or amides: if a molecule contains both an aldehyde and an ester, only the aldehyde will be reduced.

The next two examples illustrate the reduction of aldehydes and ketones in the presence of other reactive functional groups. No reaction occurs at the nitro group in the first case or at the alkyl halide in the second.

**Addition of organometallic reagents to aldehydes and ketones**

Organometallic compounds have a carbon–metal bond. Lithium and magnesium are very electropositive metals, and the Li–C or Mg–C bonds in organolithium or organomagnesium reagents are highly polarized towards carbon. They are therefore very powerful nucleophiles, and attack the carbonyl group to give alcohols, forming a new C–C bond. For our first example, we shall take one of the simplest of organolithiums, methyllithium, which is commercially available as a solution in Et₂O, shown here reacting with an aldehyde. The orbital diagram of the addition step shows how the polarization of the C–Li bond means that it is the carbon atom of the nucleophile that attacks the carbon atom of the electrophile and we get a new C–C bond.

We explained on p. 113 the polarization of bonds between carbon and more electropositive elements. The relevant electronegativities are C 2.5, Li 1.0, and Mg 1.2 so both metals are much more electropositive than carbon. The orbitals of MeLi are discussed in Chapter 4.

The course of the reaction is much the same as you have seen before, but we need to highlight a few points where this reaction scheme differs from those you have met earlier in the chapter. First of all, notice the legend ‘1. MeLi, THF; 2. H₂O’. This means that, first, MeLi is added to the aldehyde in a THF solvent. Reaction occurs: MeLi adds to the aldehyde to give an alkoxide. Then (and only then) water is added to protonate the alkoxide. The ‘2. H₂O’ means that water is added in a separate step only when all the MeLi has reacted: it is not present at the start of the reaction as it was in the cyanide reaction and some of the borohydride addition reactions. In fact, water must not be present during the addition of MeLi (or of any other organometallic reagent) to a carbonyl group because water destroys organometallics very rapidly.
by protonating them to give alkanes (organolithiums and organomagnesiums are strong bases as well as powerful nucleophiles). The addition of water, or sometimes dilute acid or ammonium chloride, at the end of the reaction is known as the work-up.

Because they are so reactive, organolithiums are usually used at low temperature, often –78 °C (the sublimation temperature of solid CO₂), in aprotic solvents such as Et₂O or THF. Protic solvents such as water or alcohols have acidic protons but aprotic solvents such as ether do not. Organolithiums also react with oxygen, so they have to be handled under a dry, inert atmosphere of nitrogen or argon. Other common, and commercially available, organolithium reagents include n-butyllithium and phenyllithium, and they react with both aldehydes and ketones. Note that addition to an aldehyde gives a secondary alcohol while addition to a ketone gives a tertiary alcohol.

Addition of water to aldehydes and ketones

Nucleophiles don’t have to be highly polarized or negatively charged to react with aldehydes and ketones: neutral ones will as well. How do we know? This $^{13}$C NMR spectrum was obtained by dissolving formaldehyde, H₂C=O, in water. You will remember from Chapter 3 that the carbon atoms of carbonyl groups give $^{13}$C signals typically in the region of 150–200 ppm. So where is formaldehyde’s carbonyl peak? Instead we have a signal at 83 ppm—where we would expect tetrahedral carbon atoms singly bonded to oxygen to appear.
What has happened is that water has added to the carbonyl group to give a compound known as a hydrate or 1,1-diol.

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{RCHO} \rightarrow \text{RCHO} \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{hydrate or 1,1-diol}
\]

This reaction, like the addition of cyanide we discussed at the beginning of the chapter, is an equilibrium, and is quite general for aldehydes and ketones. But, as with the cyanohydrins, the position of the equilibrium depends on the structure of the carbonyl compound. Generally, the same steric factors (p. 129) mean that simple aldehydes are hydrated to some extent while simple ketones are not. However, special factors can shift the equilibrium towards the hydrated form even for ketones, particularly if the carbonyl compound is reactive or unstable.

Formaldehyde is an extremely reactive aldehyde as it has no substituents to hinder attack—it is so reactive that it is rather prone to polymerization. And it is quite happy to move from sp\(^2\) to sp\(^3\) hybridization because there is very little increased steric hindrance between the two hydrogen atoms as the bond angle changes from 120° to 109° (p. 129). This is why our aqueous solution of formaldehyde contains essentially no CH\(_2\)O—it is completely hydrated. A mechanism for the hydration reaction is shown below. Notice how a proton has to be transferred from one oxygen atom to the other, mediated by water molecules.

Formaldehyde reacts with water so readily because its substituents are very small: a steric effect. Electronic effects can also favour reaction with nucleophiles—electron-negative atoms such as halogens attached to the carbon atoms next to the carbonyl group can increase the extent of hydration by the inductive effect according to the number of halogen substituents and their electron-withdrawing power. They increase the polarization of the carbonyl group, which already has a positively polarized carbon atom, and make it even more prone to attack by water. Trichloroacetaldehyde (chloral, Cl\(_3\)CHO) is hydrated completely in water, and the product ‘chloral hydrate’ can be isolated as crystals and is an anaesthetic.

You can see this quite clearly in the two IR spectra below. The first one is a spectrum of chloral hydrate from a bottle—notice there is no strong absorption between 1700 and 1800 cm\(^{-1}\) (where we would expect C=O to appear) and instead we have the tell-tale broad O–H peak at 3400 cm\(^{-1}\). Heating drives off the water, and the second IR spectrum is of the resulting dry chloral: the C=O peak has reappeared at 1770 cm\(^{-1}\) and the O–H peak has gone.

---

**Steric and electronic effects**

- **Steric effects** are concerned with the size and shape of groups within molecules.
- **Electronic effects** result from the way that electronegativity differences between atoms affect the way electrons are distributed in molecules. They can be divided into inductive effects, which are the consequence of the way that electronegativity differences lead to polarization of \(\sigma\) bonds, and conjugation (sometimes called mesomeric effects) which affects the distribution of electrons in \(\pi\) bonds and is discussed in the next chapter.

Steric and electronic effects are two of the main factors dominating the reactivity of nucleophiles and electrophiles.
The chart shows the extent of hydration (in water) of a small selection of carbonyl compounds: hexafluoroacetone is probably the most hydrated carbonyl compound possible! The larger the equilibrium constant, the more the equilibrium is to the right.

Cyclopropanones—three-membered ring ketones—are also hydrated to a significant extent, but for a different reason. You saw earlier how acyclic ketones suffer increased steric hindrance when the bond angle changes from 120° to 109° on moving from sp² to sp³ hybridization. Cyclopropanones (and other small-ring ketones) conversely prefer the small bond angle because their substituents are already confined within a ring. Look at it this way: a three-membered ring is really very strained, with bond angles forced to be 60°. For the sp² hybridized ketone this means bending the bonds 60° away from their ‘natural’ 120°. But for the sp³ hybridized hydrate the bonds have to be distorted by only 49° (= 109° – 60°). So addition to the C=O group allows some of the strain inherent in the small ring to be released—hydration is favoured, and indeed cyclopropanone and cyclobutanone are very reactive electrophiles.

The same structural features that favour or disfavour hydrate formation are important in determining the reactivity of carbonyl compounds with other nucleophiles, whether the reactions are reversible or not. Steric hindrance and more alkyl substituents make carbonyl compounds less reactive towards any nucleophile; electron-withdrawing groups and small rings make them more reactive.

**Hemiacetics from reaction of alcohols with aldehydes and ketones**

Since water adds to (at least some) carbonyl compounds, it should come as no surprise that alcohols do too. The product of the reaction is known as a hemiacetal, because it is halfway to
an acetal, a functional group that you met in Chapter 2 (p. 32) and that will be discussed in detail in Chapter 11. The mechanism follows in the footsteps of hydrate formation: just use ROH instead of HOH.

In the mechanism above, as in the mechanism of hydrate formation on p. 134, a proton has to be transferred between one oxygen atom and the other. We have shown a molecule of ethanol (or water) doing this, but it is impossible to define exactly the path taken by any one proton as it transfers between the oxygen atoms. It might not even be the same proton: another possible mechanism is shown below on the left, where a molecule of ethanol simultaneously gives away one proton and takes another. In the simplest case, the proton just hops from one oxygen to another, as shown in the right, and there is no shame in writing this mechanism: it is no more or less correct than the others.

What is certain is that proton transfers between oxygen atoms are very fast and are reversible, and for that reason we don’t need to be concerned with the details—the proton can always get to where it needs to be for the next step of the mechanism. As with all these carbonyl group reactions, what is really important is the addition step, not what happens to the protons.

Hemiacetal formation is reversible, and hemiacetals are stabilized by the same special structural features as those of hydrates. However, hemiacetals can also gain stability by being cyclic—when the carbonyl group and the attacking hydroxyl group are part of the same molecule. The reaction is now an intramolecular (within the same molecule) addition, as opposed to the intermolecular (between two molecules) ones we have considered so far.

Although the cyclic hemiacetal (also called lactol) product is more stable, it is still in equilibrium with some of the open-chain hydroxyaldehyde form. Its stability, and how easily it
forms, depends on the size of the ring: five- and six-membered rings are free from strain (their bonds are free to adopt 109° or 120° angles—compare the three-membered rings on p. 135), and five- or six-membered hemiacetals are common. Among the most important examples are many sugars. Glucose, for example, is a hydroxylaldehyde that exists mainly as a six-membered cyclic hemiacetal (>99% of glucose is cyclic in solution), while ribose exists as a five-membered cyclic hemiacetal.

Ketones also form hemiacetals

Hydroxyketones can also form hemiacetals but, as you should expect, they usually do so less readily than hydroxylaldehydes. But we know that this hydroxyketone must exist as the cyclic hemiacetal as it has no C=O stretch in its IR spectrum. The reason? The hydroxyketone is already cyclic, with the OH group poised to attack the ketone—it can’t get away so cyclization is highly favoured.

Acid and base catalysis of hemiacetal and hydrate formation

In Chapter 8 we shall look in detail at acids and bases, but at this point we need to tell you about one of their important roles in chemistry: they act as catalysts for a number of carbonyl addition reactions, among them hemiacetal and hydrate formation. To see why, we need to look back at the mechanisms of hemiacetal formation on p. 138 and hydrate formation on p. 134. Both involve proton-transfer steps, which we can choose to draw like this:

In the first proton-transfer step, ethanol acts as a base, removing a proton; in the second it acts as an acid, donating a proton. You saw in Chapter 5 how water can also act as an acid or a base. Strong acids or strong bases (for example HCl or NaOH) increase the rate of hemiacetal or hydrate formation because they allow these proton-transfer steps to occur before the addition to the carbonyl group.

In acid (dilute HCl, say), the mechanism is different in detail. The first step is now protonation of the carbonyl group’s lone pair: the positive charge makes it much more electrophilic.
so the addition reaction is faster. Notice how the proton added at the beginning is lost again at the end—it is really a catalyst.

The mechanism in basic solution is slightly different again. The first step is now deprotonation of the ethanol by hydroxide, which makes the addition reaction faster by making the ethanol more nucleophilic. Again, base (hydroxide) is regenerated in the last step, making the overall reaction catalytic in base.

The final step could equally well involve deprotonation of ethanol to give alkoxide—and alkoxide could equally well do the job of catalysing the reaction. In fact, you will often come across mechanisms with the base represented just as ‘B−’ because it doesn’t matter what the base is.

**For nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups:**
- acid catalysts work by making the carbonyl group more electrophilic
- base catalysts work by making the nucleophile more nucleophilic
- both types of catalysts are regenerated at the end of the reaction.

**Bisulfite addition compounds**

The last nucleophile of this chapter, sodium bisulfite (NaHSO₃) adds to aldehydes and some ketones to give what is usually known as a **bisulfite addition compound**. The reaction occurs by nucleophilic attack of a lone pair on the carbonyl group, just like the attack of cyanide. This leaves a positively charged sulfur atom but a simple proton transfer leads to the product.

The products are useful for two reasons. They are usually crystalline and so can be used to purify liquid aldehydes by recrystallization. This is of value only because this reaction, like
several you have met in this chapter, is reversible. The bisulfite compounds are made by mixing the aldehyde or ketone with saturated aqueous sodium bisulfite in an ice bath, shaking, and crystallizing. After purification the bisulfite addition compound can be hydrolysed back to the aldehyde in dilute aqueous acid or base.

\[
\begin{align*}
\ce{R\!H} + \ce{NaHSO3} & \xrightarrow{\text{stir together in ice bath}} \ce{R\!SO3Na}^+ \ce{H}\cdot\ce{SO3^-Na}^- \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{dilute acid or base}} \text{crystalline solid}
\end{align*}
\]

The reversibility of the reaction makes bisulfite compounds useful intermediates in the synthesis of other adducts from aldehydes and ketones. For example, one practical method for making cyanohydrins involves bisulfite compounds. The famous practical book 'Vogel' suggests reacting acetone first with sodium bisulfite and then with sodium cyanide to give a good yield (70%) of the cyanohydrin.

What is happening here? The bisulfite compound forms first, but only as an intermediate on the route to the cyanohydrin. When the cyanide is added, reversing the formation of the bisulfite compound provides the single proton necessary to give back the hydroxyl group at the end of the reaction. No dangerous HCN is released (always a hazard when cyanide ions and acid are present together).

\[
\begin{align*}
\ce{Me\!Me\!Me\!Me} & \xrightarrow{1. \ce{NaHSO3}} \ce{Me\!Me\!Me\!Me}\ce{SO3Na}^- \ce{H}\cdot\ce{SO3^-Na}^- \\
& \xrightarrow{2. \ce{NaCN}} \ce{Me\!Me\!Me\!Me}\ce{HO}\ce{CN} \\
& \text{70% yield}
\end{align*}
\]

Other compounds from cyanohydrins
Cyanohydrins can be converted by simple reactions into hydroxyacids or amino alcohols. Here is one example of each, but you will have to wait until Chapter 10 for the details and the mechanisms of the reactions. Note that one cyanohydrin was made by the simplest method—simply NaCN and acid—while the other came from the bisulfite route we have just discussed.

- hydroxyacids by hydrolysis of CN in cyanohydrin
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  \ce{Ph\!Me\!Me}\ce{O} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaCN, HCl, Et}_2\text{O}} \ce{Ph\!Me\!Me}\ce{HO}\ce{CN} \\
  & \xrightarrow{\text{HCl, H}_2\text{O}} \ce{Ph\!Me\!Me}\ce{HO}\ce{CO_2H}
  \end{align*}
  \]

- amino alcohols by reduction of CN in cyanohydrin
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  \ce{Me\!Me\!Me\!Me}\ce{O} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaCN, H}_2\text{O, NaHSO3}} \ce{Me\!Me\!Me\!Me}\ce{HO}\ce{CN} \\
  & \xrightarrow{\text{LiAlH}_4} \ce{Me\!Me\!Me\!Me}\ce{HO}\ce{NH_2}
  \end{align*}
  \]

The second reason that bisulfite compounds are useful is that they are soluble in water. Some small (that is, low molecular weight) aldehydes and ketones are water-soluble—acetone is an example. But most larger (more than four or so carbon atoms) aldehydes and ketones are not.
This does not usually matter to most chemists as we often want to carry out reactions in organic solvents rather than water. But it can matter to medicinal chemists, who make compounds that need to be compatible with biological systems. And in one case, the solubility of bisulfite adduct in water is literally vital.

Dapsone is an antileprosy drug. It is a very effective one too, especially when used in combination with two other drugs in a ‘cocktail’ that can be simply drunk as an aqueous solution by patients in tropical countries without any special facilities, even in the open air. But there is a problem! Dapsone is insoluble in water. The solution is to make a bisulfite compound from it. You may ask how this is possible since dapsone has no aldehyde or ketone—just two amino groups and a sulfone. The trick is to use the formaldehyde bisulfite compound and exchange the OH group for one of the amino groups in dapsone.

Now the compound will dissolve in water and release dapsone inside the patient. The details of this sort of chemistry will come in Chapter 11, when you will meet imines as intermediates. But at this stage we just want you to appreciate that even the relatively simple chemistry in this chapter is useful in synthesis, in commerce, and in medicine.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Delocalization and conjugation

Connections

Building on
- Orbitals and bonding ch4
- Representing mechanisms by curly arrows ch5
- Ascertaining molecular structure spectroscopically ch3

Arriving at
- Interaction between orbitals over many bonds
- Stabilization by the sharing of electrons over more than two atoms
- Where colour comes from
- Molecular shape and structure determine reactivity
- Representing one aspect of structure by curly arrows
- Structure of aromatic compounds

Looking forward to
- Acidity and basicity ch8
- How conjugation affects reactivity ch10, ch11, & ch15
- Conjugate addition and substitution ch22
- Chemistry of aromatic compounds ch21 & ch22
- Enols and enolates ch20, ch24–ch27
- Chemistry of heterocycles ch29 & ch30
- Chemistry of dienes and polyenes ch34 & ch35
- Chemistry of life ch42

Introduction

As you look around you, you will be aware of many different colours—from the greens and browns outside to the bright blues and reds of the clothes you are wearing. All these colours result from the interaction of light with the pigments in these different things—some frequencies of light are absorbed, others scattered. Inside our eyes, chemical reactions detect these different frequencies and convert them into electrical nerve impulses sent to the brain. All these pigments have one thing in common—lots of double bonds. For example, the pigment responsible for the red colour in tomatoes, lycopene, is a long-chain polyalkene.

Lycopene contains only carbon and hydrogen; many pigments contain other elements. But nearly all contain double bonds—and many of them. This chapter is about the properties, including colour, of molecules that have several double bonds. These properties depend on the way the double bonds join up, or conjugate, and the resulting delocalization of the electrons within them.

In earlier chapters we talked about carbon skeletons made up of \( \sigma \) bonds. In this chapter we shall see how, in some cases, we can also have a large \( \pi \) framework spread over many atoms and how this dominates the chemistry of such compounds. We shall see how this \( \pi \) framework is responsible for the otherwise unexpected stability of certain cyclic polyunsaturated
compounds, including benzene, but also reactivity in others, such as butadiene. We shall also see how this $\pi$ framework gives rise to colour. To understand such molecules properly, we need to start with the simplest of all unsaturated compounds, ethene.

**The structure of ethene (ethylene, CH$_2$=CH$_2$)**

The structure of ethene (ethylene) is well known. It has been determined by electron diffraction and is planar (all atoms are in the same plane), with the bond lengths and angles shown on the left. The carbon atoms are roughly trigonal and the C–C bond distance is shorter than that of a typical C–C single bond. The electronic structure of ethene, you will recall from Chapter 4, can be considered in terms of two sp$^2$ hybridized C atoms with a $\sigma$ bond between them and four $\sigma$ bonds linking them each to two H atoms. The $\pi$ bond is formed by overlap of a p orbital on each carbon atom.

*Ethene* is chemically more interesting than *ethane* because of the $\pi$ system. As you saw in Chapter 5, alkenes can be nucleophiles because the electrons in the $\pi$ bond are available for donation to an electrophile. But remember that when we combine two atomic orbitals we get two molecular orbitals, from combining the p orbitals either in phase or out of phase. The in-phase combination accounts for the bonding molecular orbital ($\pi$), whilst the out-of-phase combination accounts for the antibonding molecular orbital ($\pi^*$). The shapes of the orbitals as they were introduced in Chapter 4 are shown below, but in this chapter we will also represent them in the form shown in the brown boxes—as the constituent p orbitals.
Molecules with more than one C=C double bond

Benzene has three strongly interacting double bonds

The rest of this chapter concerns molecules with more than one C=C double bond and what happens to the π orbitals when they interact. To start, we shall take a bit of a jump and look at the structure of benzene. Benzene has been the subject of considerable controversy since its discovery in 1825. It was soon worked out that the formula was C₆H₆, but how were these atoms arranged? Some strange structures were suggested until Kekulé proposed the correct structure in 1865.

Shown below are the molecular orbitals for Kekulé’s structure. As in simple alkenes, each of the carbon atoms is sp² hybridized, leaving the remaining p orbital free.

The σ framework of the benzene ring is like the framework of an alkene, and for simplicity we have just represented the σ bonds as green lines. The difficulty comes with the p orbitals— which pairs do we combine to form the π bonds? There seem to be two possibilities.

With benzene itself, these two forms are identical but, if we had a 1,2- or a 1,3-disubstituted benzene compound, these two forms would be different. A synthesis was designed for the two compounds in the box on the right but it was found that both compounds were identical. This posed a problem to Kekulé—his structure didn’t seem to work after all. His solution—which we now know to be incorrect—was that benzene rapidly equilibrates, or ‘resonates’, between the two forms to give an averaged structure in between the two.

The molecular orbital answer to this problem is that all six p orbitals can combine to form (six) new molecular orbitals, and the electrons in these orbitals form a ring of electron density above and below the plane of the molecule. Benzene does not resonate between the two Kekulé structures—the electrons are in molecular orbitals spread equally over all the carbon atoms. However, the term ‘resonance’ is still sometimes used (but not in this book) to describe the averaging effect of this mixing of molecular orbitals. We shall describe the π electrons in benzene as delocalized, that is, no longer localized in specific double bonds between two particular carbon atoms but spread out, or delocalized, over all six atoms in the ring.
The alternative drawing on the left shows the π system as a ring and does not put in the double bonds: you may feel that this is a more accurate representation, but it does present a problem when it comes to writing mechanisms. As you saw in Chapter 5, the curly arrows we use represent two electrons. The circle here represents six electrons, so in order to write reasonable mechanisms we still need to draw benzene as though the double bonds were localized. However, when you do so, you must keep in mind that the electrons are delocalized, and it does not matter which of the two arrangements of double bonds you draw.

If we want to represent delocalization using these ‘localized’ structures, we can do so using curly arrows. Here, for example, are the two ‘localized’ structures corresponding to 2-bromo-carboxylic acid. The double bonds are not localized, and the relationship between the two structures can be represented with curly arrows which indicate how one set of bonds map onto the other.

These curly arrows are similar to the ones we introduced in Chapter 5, but there is a crucial difference: here, there is no reaction taking place. In a real reaction, electrons move. Here, they do not: the only things that ‘move’ are the double bonds in the structures. The curly arrows just show the link between alternative representations of exactly the same molecule. You must not think of them as showing ‘movement round the ring’. To emphasize this difference we also use a different type of arrow connecting them—a delocalization arrow made up of a single line with an arrow at each end. Delocalization arrows remind us that our simple fixed-bond structures do not tell the whole truth and that the real structure is a mixture of both.

The fact that the π electrons are not localized in alternating double bonds but are spread out over the whole system in a ring is supported by theoretical calculations and confirmed by experimental observations. Electron diffraction studies show benzene to be a regular planar hexagon with all the carbon–carbon bond lengths identical (139.5 pm). This bond length is in between that of a carbon–carbon single bond (154.1 pm) and a full carbon–carbon double bond (133.7 pm). A further strong piece of evidence for this ring of electrons is revealed by proton NMR and discussed in Chapter 13.
How to describe delocalization?

What words should be used to describe delocalization is a vexed question. Terms such as resonance, mesomerism, conjugation, and delocalization are only a few of the ones you will find in books. You will already have noticed that we’re avoiding resonance because it carries a suggestion that the structure is somehow oscillating between localized structures. We shall use the words conjugation and delocalization: conjugation focuses on the way that double bonds link together into a single π system, while delocalization focuses on the electrons themselves. Adjacent double bonds, as you will see, are conjugated; the electrons in them are delocalized.

Multiple double bonds not in a ring

Are electrons still delocalized even when there is no ring? To consider this, we’ll look at hexatriene—three double bonds and six carbons, like benzene, but without the ring. There are two isomers of hexatriene, with different chemical and physical properties, because the central double bond can adopt a cis or a trans geometry. The structures of both cis- and trans-hexatriene have been determined by electron diffraction and two important features emerge:

- Both structures are essentially planar.
- Unlike benzene, the double and single bonds have different lengths, but the central double bond in each case is slightly longer than the end double bonds and the single bonds are slightly shorter than a ‘standard’ single bond.

Here’s the most stable structure of trans-hexatriene, with benzene shown for comparison.

![Diagram of trans-hexatriene and benzene comparison]

The reason for the deviation of the bond lengths from typical values and the preference for planar structures is again due to the molecular orbitals which arise from the combination of the six p orbitals. Just as in benzene, these orbitals can combine to give one molecular orbital stretching over the whole molecule. The p orbitals can overlap and combine only if the molecule is planar.

If the molecule is twisted about one of the single bonds, then some overlap is lost, making it harder to twist about the single bonds in this structure than in a simple alkene. Other planar arrangements are stable, however, and trans-hexatriene can adopt any of the planar conformations shown in the margin.

Conjugation

In benzene and hexatriene every carbon atom is sp² hybridized with one p orbital available to overlap with its neighbours. The uninterrupted chain of p orbitals is a consequence of having alternate double and single bonds. When two double bonds are separated by just one single bond, the two double bonds are said to be conjugated. Conjugated double bonds have different properties from isolated double bonds, both physically (they are often longer, as you have just seen) and chemically (see Chapters 22).

You have already met several conjugated systems: lycopene at the start of this chapter and β-carotene in Chapter 3, for example. Each of the 11 double bonds in β-carotene is separated...
from its neighbour by only one single bond. We again have a long chain in which all the p orbitals can overlap to form molecular orbitals.

β-carotene—all eleven double bonds are conjugated

It is not necessary to have two C=O double bonds in order to have a conjugated system—the C=C and C=O double bonds of propenal (acrolein) are also conjugated. What is important is that the double bonds are separated by one and only one single bond. Here’s a counter-example: arachidonic acid is one of the fabled ‘polyunsaturated’ fatty acids. None of the four double bonds in this structure are conjugated since in between any two double bonds there is an sp³ carbon. This means that there is no p orbital available to overlap with the ones from the double bonds. The saturated carbon atoms ‘insulate’ the double bonds from each other and prevent conjugation.

If an atom has two double bonds directly attached to it, that is, there are no single bonds separating them, again no conjugation is possible. The simplest compound with such an arrangement is allene. The arrangement of the p orbitals in allene means that no delocalization is possible because the two π bonds are perpendicular to each other.

**Requirements for conjugation**
- Conjugation requires double bonds separated by one single bond.
- Double bonds separated by two single bonds or no single bonds are not conjugated.

### The conjugation of two π bonds

To understand the effects of conjugation on molecules, we need now to look at their molecular orbitals. We’ll concentrated only on the electrons in π orbitals—you can take it that all the C–C and C–H σ bonds are essentially the same as those of all the other molecules you met in Chapter 4. We’ll start with the simplest compound that can have two conjugated π bonds: butadiene. As you would expect, butadiene prefers to be planar to maximize overlap between its p orbitals. But exactly how does that overlap happen, and how does it give rise to bonding?

### The molecular orbitals of butadiene

Butadiene has two π bonds, each made up of two p orbitals: a total of four atomic orbitals. We’d therefore expect four molecular orbitals, housing four electrons. Just like
hexatriene above, these orbitals extend over the whole molecule, but we can easily work out what these molecular orbitals look like simply by taking the orbitals of two alkenes and interacting them side by side. We have two π orbitals and two π* orbitals, and we can interact them in phase or out of phase. Here are the first two, made by interacting the two π orbitals:

\[ \text{2 x π orbitals} \]

\[ \text{combine in phase} \]

\[ \text{lowest energy π molecular orbital of butadiene} \]

\[ \text{2 x π orbitals} \]

\[ \text{combine out of phase} \]

\[ \text{second lowest energy π molecular orbital of butadiene} \]

and the next two, made from two π* orbitals:

\[ \text{2 x π* orbitals} \]

\[ \text{combine in phase} \]

\[ \text{second highest energy π molecular orbital of butadiene} \]

\[ \text{2 x π* orbitals} \]

\[ \text{combine out of phase} \]

\[ \text{highest energy π molecular orbital of butadiene} \]

We can represent all four molecular orbitals like this, stacked up in order of their energy in a molecular orbital energy level diagram. With four orbitals, we can’t just use “*” to represent antibonding orbitals, so conventionally they are numbered \( ψ_1–ψ_4 \) (\( ψ \) is the Greek letter psi).

\[ \text{Interactive bonding orbitals in butadiene} \]

It’s worth noticing a couple of other things about the way we have represented these four molecular orbitals before we move on. Firstly, the number of nodes (changes in phase as you move from one orbital to the next) increases from zero in \( ψ_1 \) to three in \( ψ_4 \). Secondly, notice that the p orbitals making up the π system are not all shown as the same size—their coefficients vary according to the orbital they are in. This is a mathematical consequence of the way the orbitals sum together, and you need not be concerned with the details, just the general principle that \( ψ_1 \) and \( ψ_4 \) have the largest coefficients in the middle, \( ψ_2 \) and \( ψ_3 \) the largest coefficients at the ends.

Now for the electrons: each orbital holds two electrons, so the four electrons in the π system go into orbitals \( ψ_1 \) and \( ψ_2 \).
A closer look at these filled orbitals shows that in $\psi_1$, the lowest energy bonding orbital, the electrons are spread out over all four carbon atoms (above and below the plane) in one continuous orbital. There is bonding between all four C atoms—three net bonding interactions. $\psi_2$ has bonding interactions between carbon atoms 1 and 2, and also between 3 and 4 but an antibonding interaction between carbons 2 and 3—in other words, $2 - 1 = 1$ net bonding interaction. For the unoccupied orbitals there is a net $-1$ antibonding interaction in $\psi_3$ and a net $-3$ antibonding interaction in $\psi_4$.

Overall, in both the occupied $\pi$ orbitals there are electrons between carbons 1 and 2 and between 3 and 4, but the antibonding interaction between carbons 2 and 3 in $\psi_2$ partially cancels out the bonding interaction in $\psi_1$. Only ‘partially’, because the coefficients of the antibonding pair of orbitals in $\psi_2$ are smaller than the coefficients of the bonding pair in $\psi_1$. This explains why all the bonds in butadiene are not the same, and also why the middle bond is like a single bond but with a little bit of double-bond character. Its double-bond character extends to its preference for planarity, the fact that it takes more energy to rotate about this bond than about a typical single bond, and the fact that it is slightly shorter (1.45 Å) than a typical C–C single bond (around 1.54 Å).

The molecular orbital diagram also helps us explain some aspects of the reactivity of butadiene. Notice that we have marked on for you the HOMO ($\psi_2$) and the LUMO ($\psi_3$). On either side you can see the equivalent HOMO ($\pi$ orbital) and LUMO ($\pi^*$ orbital) for the isolated alkene (i.e. ethene). Some relevant features to note:

- The overall energy of the two bonding butadiene molecular orbitals is lower than that of the two molecular orbitals for ethene. This means that conjugated butadiene is more thermodynamically stable than just two isolated double bonds.
- The HOMO of butadiene is higher in energy than the HOMO for ethene. This is consistent with the fact that butadiene is more reactive than ethene towards electrophiles.
- The LUMO for butadiene is lower in energy than the LUMO for ethene. This is consistent with the fact that butadiene is more reactive than ethene towards nucleophiles.

So conjugation makes butadiene more stable, but it also makes it more reactive to both nucleophiles and electrophiles! This superficially surprising result is revisited in detail in Chapter 19.

**UV and visible spectra**

In Chapter 2 you saw how, if given the right amount of energy, electrons can be promoted from a low-energy atomic orbital to a higher energy one and how this gives rise to an atomic absorption spectrum. Exactly the same process can occur with molecular orbitals: energy of the right wavelength can promote an electron from a filled orbital (for example the HOMO) to an unfilled one (for example the LUMO), and plotting the absorption of energy against wavelength gives rise to a new type of spectrum called, for obvious reasons which you will see in a moment, a UV–visible spectrum.

You have just seen that the energy difference between the HOMO and LUMO for butadiene is less than that for ethene. We would therefore expect butadiene to absorb light of longer
wavelength than ethene (the longer the wavelength the lower the energy). This is indeed the case: butadiene absorbs at 215 nm compared to 185 nm for ethene. The conjugation in butadiene means it absorbs light of a longer wavelength than ethene. One of the consequences of conjugation is to lessen the gaps between filled and empty orbitals, and so allow absorption of light of a longer wavelength.

- The more conjugated a compound is, the smaller the energy transition between its HOMO and LUMO, and hence the longer the wavelength of light it can absorb. UV–visible spectroscopy can tell us about the conjugation present in a molecule.

Both ethene and butadiene absorb in the UV region of the electromagnetic spectrum. If we extend the conjugation further, the gap between HOMO and LUMO will eventually be small enough to allow the compound to absorb visible light and hence have a colour. Lycopene, the pigment in tomatoes, which we introduced at the start of the chapter, has 11 conjugated double bonds (plus two unconjugated ones). It absorbs blue–green light at about 470 nm; consequently tomatoes are red. Chlorophyll, in the margin, has a cyclic conjugated system: it absorbs at long wavelengths and is green.

The colour of pigments depends on conjugation

It is no coincidence that these and many other highly conjugated compounds are coloured. All dyes and pigments based on organic compounds are highly conjugated.

The table below shows the approximate wavelengths of light absorbed by a polyene conjugated system containing various numbers \(n\) of double bonds. Note that the colour absorbed is complementary to the colour transmitted—a red compound must absorb blue and green light to appear red.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absorbed frequency, nm</th>
<th>Colour absorbed</th>
<th>Colour transmitted</th>
<th>(R(CH=CH)_nR, n =)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200–400</td>
<td>ultraviolet</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>&lt; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>violet</td>
<td>yellow–green</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>425</td>
<td>indigo–blue</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>490</td>
<td>blue–green</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530</td>
<td>yellow–green</td>
<td>violet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>indigo–blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>590</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>640</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>blue–green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fewer than about eight conjugated double bonds, and the compound absorbs only in the UV. With more than eight conjugated double bonds, the absorption creeps into the visible and, by the time it reaches 11, the compound is red. Blue or green polyenes are rare, and dyes of these colours rely on more elaborate conjugated systems.
Blue jeans

Transitions from bonding to antibonding π orbitals are called π→π* transitions. If electrons are instead promoted from a non-bonding lone pair (n orbital) to a π* orbital (an n→π* transition) smaller energy gaps may be available, and many dyes make use of n→π* transitions to produce colours throughout the whole spectrum. For example, the colour of blue jeans comes from the pigment indigo. The two nitrogen atoms provide the lone pairs that can be excited into the π* orbitals of the rest of the molecule. These are low in energy because of the two carbonyl groups. Yellow light is absorbed by this pigment and indigo—blue light is transmitted.

Jeans are dyed by immersion in a vat of reduced indigo, which is colourless since the conjugation is interrupted by the central single bond. When the cloth is hung up to dry, the oxygen in the air oxidizes the pigment to indigo and the jeans turn blue.

The allyl system

The allyl anion

In butadiene, four atomic p orbitals interact to make four molecular orbitals; in hexatriene (and you will soon see benzene too) six atomic orbitals interact to make six molecular orbitals. We are now going to consider some common conjugated systems made up of three interacting p orbitals. We’ll start with the structure we get from treating propene with a very strong base—one strong enough to remove one of the protons from its methyl group. H+ is removed, so the product must have a negative charge, which formally resides on the carbon of what was the methyl group. That carbon atom started off sp3 hybridized (i.e. tetrahedral: it had four substituents), but after it has been deprotonated it must become trigonal (sp2), with only three substituents plus a p orbital to house the negative charge.

We could work out the orbitals of the allyl anion by combining this p orbital with a ready-made π bond, but instead this time we will start with the three separate p atomic orbitals and combine them to get three molecular orbitals. At first we are not concerned about where the electrons are—we are just building up the molecular orbitals. The lowest energy orbital (ψ1) will have them all combining in phase. This is a bonding orbital since all the interactions are bonding. The next orbital (ψ2) requires one node, and the only way to include a node and maintain the symmetry of the system is to put the node through the central atom. This means that when this orbital is occupied there will be no electron density on this central atom. Since there are no interactions between adjacent atomic orbitals (either bonding or antibonding), this is a non-bonding orbital. The final molecular
orbital ($\psi_3$) must have two nodal planes. All the interactions of the atomic orbitals are out of phase so the resulting molecular orbital is an antibonding orbital.

We can summarize all this information in a molecular orbital energy level diagram, and at the same time put the electrons into the orbitals. We need four electrons—two from the alkene $\pi$ bond and two more for the anion (these were the two in the C–H bond, and they are still there because only a proton, $H^+$, was removed). The four electrons go into the lowest two orbitals, $\psi_1$ and $\psi_2$, leaving $\psi_3$ vacant. Notice too that the energy of two of the electrons is lower than it would have been if they had remained in unconjugated $p$ orbitals: conjugation lowers the energy of filled orbitals and makes compounds more stable.

Where is the electron density in the allyl anion $\pi$ system? We have two filled $\pi$ molecular orbitals and the electron density comes from a sum of both orbitals. This means there is electron density on all three carbon atoms. However, the coefficients of the end carbons are of a significant size in both orbitals, but in $\psi_2$ the middle carbon has no electron density at all—it lies on a node. So overall, even though the negative charge is spread over the whole molecule, the end carbons carry more of the electron density than the middle one. We can represent this in two ways—the first structure below emphasizes the delocalization of the charge over the whole molecule, but fails to get across the important point that the negative charge resides principally at the ends. Curly arrows do this much better: we can use them to show that the negative charge is not localized, but principally divided between the two end carbons.
The problem with these structures carrying curly arrows is that they seem to imply that the negative charge (and the double bond for that matter) is jumping from one end of the molecule to the other. This, as we have seen, is just not so. Another and perhaps better picture uses dotted lines and partial charges. But the structure with the dotted bonds, as with the representation of benzene with a circle in the middle, is no good for writing mechanisms. Each of the representations has its strong and weak points: we shall use each as the occasion demands.

Using NMR to study delocalization

Delocalization of the alkyl anion, and the localization of the negative charge mainly on the end carbons, is clear from its $^{13}$C NMR spectrum as well. In Chapter 3 we explained that $^{13}$C NMR gives us a good measure of the amount of electron density around a C atom—the extent to which it is deshielded and therefore exposed to the applied magnetic field. If you need reminding about the terminology, theory, and practice of NMR, turn back now to Chapter 3, pp. 52–63.

It is possible to record a $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of an allyl anion with a lithium counterion. The spectrum shows only two signals: the middle carbon at 147 ppm and the two end carbons both at 51 ppm. This confirms two things: (i) both end carbons are the same and the structure is delocalized, and (ii) most of the negative charge is on the end carbons—they are more shielded (have a smaller chemical shift) as a result of the greater electron density. In fact, the central carbon’s shift of 147 ppm is not far from that of a normal double-bond carbon (compare the signals in propene). The end carbons’ shift is in between that of a double bond and a saturated carbon directly bonded to a metal (e.g. methyl lithium, whose negative chemical shift results from the highly polarized Li–C bond).

The allyl cation

What if, instead of taking just a proton, we had also taken away two electrons from propene? In reality we can get such a structure quite straightforwardly from allyl bromide (prop-2-enyl bromide or 1-bromoprop-2-ene). Carbon 1 in this compound has four atoms attached to it (a carbon, two hydrogens, and a bromine atom) so it is tetrahedral (or sp$^3$ hybridized).

Bromine is more electronegative than carbon and so the C–Br bond is polarized towards the bromine. It is quite easy to break this bond completely, with the bromine keeping both electrons from the C–Br bond to become bromide ion, Br$^-$, leaving behind an allyl cation. The positively charged carbon now has only three substituents so it becomes trigonal (sp$^2$ hybridized). It must therefore have a vacant p orbital.

Like the allyl anion, the orbitals in the allyl cation are a combination of three atomic p orbitals, one from each carbon. So we can use the same molecular orbital energy level diagram as we did for the anion, simply by adjusting the number of electrons we put into the orbitals. This time, there are only two electrons, from the alkene, as those which were in the C–Br bond have left with anionic bromide.
The two electrons in the filled orbital are in a lower energy orbital than they would have been if they had stayed in an unconjugated p orbital: as with the anion, \emph{conjugation} leads to \emph{stabilization}.

The two electrons are spread over three carbon atoms. Overall, the allyl cation has a positive charge. But where is the positive charge concentrated? What we need to do is look to see where there is a \emph{deficit} of charge. The only orbital with any electrons in it is the bonding molecular orbital $\psi_1$. From the relative sizes of the coefficients on each atom we can see that the middle carbon has more electron density on it than the end ones, so the end carbons must be more positive than the middle one.

We expect both end carbons to be identical, and $^{13}$C NMR tells us that this is so (see below). Again we need a way of showing this delocalization, either on a single structure or as a pair of localized structures linked by a delocalization arrow.

Notice how we draw the curly arrows here: we want to show the positive charge ‘moving’, and it is tempting to draw a curly arrow starting from the positive charge. But curly arrows must always start on something representing a pair of electrons. So we must move the positive charge as a consequence of the movement of the electrons in the double bond: as we pull them away from one end, they leave behind a positive charge.

**The NMR spectrum of a delocalized cation**

The reaction below shows the formation of a cation close in structure to the allyl cation. A very strong acid (called ‘super-acid’—see Chapter 15) protonates the OH group of 3-cyclohexenol, which can then leave as water. The resulting cation is, not surprisingly, unstable and would normally react rapidly with a nucleophile. However, at low temperatures and if there are no nucleophiles present, the cation is relatively stable and it is even possible to record a $^{13}$C NMR spectrum (at $-80 \, ^\circ$C).

The $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of this allylic cation reveals a plane of symmetry, which confirms that the positive charge is spread over two carbons. The large shift of 224 ppm for these carbons indicates very strong deshielding (that is, lack of electrons) but is nowhere near as large as that of a localized cation (which would resonate at about 330 ppm). The middle carbon’s shift of 142 ppm is almost typical of a normal double bond, indicating that it is neither significantly more nor less electron-rich than normal. In fact, it is interesting to note that the middle carbon of this cation and the allyl anion we described above have almost exactly the same chemical shift—proof that the charge lies mainly on the ends of the allyl system.
Delocalization over three atoms is a common structural feature

The carboxylate anion

You may already be familiar with one anion very much like the allyl anion—the carboxylate ion, which forms when a carboxylic acid reacts with a base. In this structure we again have a negatively charged atom separated from a double bond by a single bond adjacent to a single bond: it’s analogous to an allyl anion with oxygen atoms replacing two of the carbon atoms.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a carboxylic acid} & \quad \xrightarrow{\text{rearrangement}} \quad \text{a carboxylate anion} \\
& \quad \text{compare with the allyl anion:}
\end{align*}
\]

X-ray crystallography shows both carbon–oxygen bond lengths in this anion to be the same (136 pm), in between that of a normal carbon–oxygen double bond (123 pm) and single bond (143 pm). The negative charge is spread out equally over the two oxygen atoms, and we can represent this in two ways—as before, the one on the left shows the equivalence of the two C–O bonds, but you would use the one on the right for writing mechanisms. The delocalization arrow tells us that both localized forms contribute to the real structure.

The nitro group

The nitro group consists of a nitrogen bonded to two oxygen atoms and a carbon (for example an alkyl group). There are two ways of representing the structure: one using formal charges, the other (which we suggest you avoid) using a dative bond. Notice in each case that one oxygen is depicted as being doubly bonded, the other singly bonded. Drawing both oxygen atoms doubly bonded is incorrect—nitrogen cannot participate in five bonds: this would require ten bonding electrons around the N atom, and there are not enough s and p orbitals to put them in.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{two ways of representing the nitro group}
\end{align*}
\]

The problem even with the ‘correct’ structure on the left is that the equivalence of the two N–O bonds is not made clear. The nitro group has exactly the same number of electrons as a carboxylate anion (although it’s neutral of course because nitrogen already has one more electron than carbon) and the delocalized structure can be shown with curly arrows in the same way.

We have not shown molecular orbital energy level diagrams for the carboxylate and nitro groups, since they are similar to that of the allyl anion. Only the absolute energies of the molecular orbitals are different since different elements with different electronegativities are involved in each case.

The amide group

Life is built of amides, because the amide group is the link through which amino acids join together to form the proteins which make up much of the structural features of living systems.
Nylon is a synthetic polyamide, and shares with many proteins the property of durability. The structure of this deceptively simple functional group has an unexpected feature which is responsible for much of the stability it confers.

The allyl anion, carboxylate, and nitro groups have four electrons in a $\pi$ system spread out over three atoms. The nitrogen in the amide group also has a pair of electrons that can conjugate with the $\pi$ bond of the carbonyl group. For effective overlap with the $\pi$ bond, this lone pair of electrons must be in a p orbital. This in turn means that the nitrogen must be sp$^2$ hybridized.

In the carboxylate ion, a negative charge is shared (equally) between two oxygen atoms. In an amide there is no charge as such—the lone pair on nitrogen is shared between the nitrogen and the oxygen. The delocalization can be shown as usual by using curly arrows, as shown in the margin.

This representation suffers from the usual problems. Curly arrows usually show electron movement, but here they do not: they simply show how to get from one of the alternative representations to the other. The molecular orbital picture of the amide tells us that the electrons are unevenly distributed over the three atoms in the $\pi$ system with a greater electron density on the oxygen: you can see this in the delocalized structure on the right, which has a full negative charge on O and a positive charge on N. (We also indicated this in the diagram of the lowest energy $\pi$ orbital above, which has a greatest coefficient, and therefore greatest electron density, on O.) Another aspect of the structure of the amide group that this pair of structures indicates correctly is that there is partial double bond character between the C atom and the N atom. We will come back to this shortly.

The real structure of the amide group lies in between the two extreme structures linked by the delocalization arrow: a better representation might be the structure on the right. The charges in brackets indicate substantial, although not complete, charges, maybe about a half plus or minus charge. However, we cannot draw mechanisms using this structure.

We can summarize several points about the structure of the amide group, and we will then return to each in a little more detail:

- The amide group is planar—this includes the first carbon atoms of the R groups attached to the carbonyl group and to the nitrogen atom.
- The lone pair of electrons on nitrogen is delocalized into the carbonyl group.
- The C–N bond is strengthened by this interaction—it takes on partial double bond character. This also means that we no longer have free rotation about the C–N bond, which we would expect if it were only a single bond.
- The oxygen is more electron-rich than the nitrogen. Hence we might expect the oxygen rather than the nitrogen to be the site of electrophilic attack.
- The amide group as a whole is made more stable as a result of the delocalization.

How do we know the amide group is planar? X-ray crystal structures are the simplest answer. Other techniques such as electron diffraction also show that simple (non-crystalline) amides have planar structures. N,N-Dimethylformamide (DMF) is an example.

The N–CO bond length in DMF (135 pm) is closer to that of a standard C–N double bond (127 pm) than to that of a single bond (149 pm). This partial double bond character, which the delocalized structures led us to expect, is responsible for restricted rotation about this C–N bond. We must supply 88 kJ mol$^{-1}$ if we want to rotate the C–N bond in DMF (remember a single bond only takes about 3 kJ mol$^{-1}$, while a full C–C double bond takes about 260 kJ mol$^{-1}$). The amount of energy available at room temperature is only enough to allow this bond
to rotate slowly, and the result is quite clear in the \(^{13}\text{C}\) NMR spectrum of DMF. There are three carbon atoms altogether and three signals appear—the two methyl groups on the nitrogen are different. If free rotation were possible about the C–N bond, we would expect to see only two signals, since the two methyl groups would become identical.

In fact, if we record the spectrum at higher temperatures, we do indeed only see two signals since now there is sufficient energy available to overcome the rotational barrier and allow the two methyl groups to interchange.

**Amides in proteins**

Proteins are composed of many amino acids joined together with amide bonds. The amino group of one can combine with the carboxylic acid group of another to give an amide known as a peptide—two amino acids join to form a dipeptide; many join to give a polypeptide.

The peptide unit so formed is a planar, rigid structure because of restricted rotation about the C–N bond. This rigidity confers organizational stability on protein structures.

**Conjugation and reactivity: looking forward to Chapter 10**

Just as delocalization stabilizes the allyl cation and anion (at least some of the electrons in conjugated systems end up in lower energy orbitals than they would have done without conjugation) so too is the amide group stabilized by the conjugation of the nitrogen’s lone pair with the carbonyl group. This makes an amide C=O one of the least reactive carbonyl groups (we shall discuss this in Chapter 10). Furthermore, the nitrogen atom of an amide group is very different from that of a typical amine. Most amines are easily protonated. However, since the lone pair on the amide’s nitrogen is conjugated into the \(\pi\) system, it is less available for protonation or, indeed, reaction with any electrophile. As a result, when an amide is protonated (and it is not protonated easily, as you will see in the next chapter) it is protonated on oxygen rather than nitrogen. The consequences of conjugation for reactivity extend far and wide, and will be a running theme through many chapters in this book.

**Aromaticity**

It’s now time to go back to the structure of benzene. Benzene is unusually stable for an alkene and is not normally described as an alkene at all. For example, whereas normal alkenes (whether conjugated or not) readily react with bromine to give dibromoalkane addition products, benzene reacts with bromine only with difficulty—it needs a catalyst (iron will do) and then the product is a monosubstituted benzene and not an addition compound.
Bromine reacts with benzene in a substitution reaction (a bromine atom replaces a hydrogen atom), *keeping the benzene structure intact*. This ability to retain its conjugated structure through all sorts of chemical reactions is one of the important differences between benzene and other alkenes.

**What makes benzene special?**

You might assume benzene’s special feature is its ring structure. To see whether this is the case, we’ll look at another cyclic polyene, cyclooctatetraene, with four double bonds in a ring. Given what we have explained about the way that π systems gain stability by allowing overlap between their p orbitals, you may be surprised to find that cyclooctatetraene, unlike benzene, is not planar. There is no conjugation between any of the double bonds—there are indeed alternate double and single bonds in the structure, but conjugation is possible only if the p orbitals of the double bonds can overlap and here they do not. The fact that there is no conjugation is shown by the alternating C–C bond lengths in cyclooctatetraene—146.2 and 133.4 pm—which are typical for single and double C–C bonds. If possible, make a model of cyclooctatetraene for yourself—you will find the compound naturally adopts the shape on the right below. This shape is often called a ‘tub’.

![cyclooctatetraene](image)

Chemically, cyclooctatetraene behaves like an alkene, not like benzene. With bromine, for example, it forms an addition product and not a substitution product. So benzene is not special just because it is cyclic—cyclooctatetraene is cyclic too but does not behave like benzene.

**Heats of hydrogenation of benzene and cyclooctatetraene**

C=C double bonds can be reduced using hydrogen gas and a metal catalyst (usually nickel or palladium) to produce fully saturated alkanes. This process is called hydrogenation and it is exothermic (that is, energy is released) since a thermodynamically more stable product, an alkane, is produced.

When cis-cyclooctene is hydrogenated to cyclooctane, 96 kJ mol⁻¹ of energy is released. Cyclooctatetraene releases 410 kJ mol⁻¹ on hydrogenation. This value is approximately four times one double bond’s worth, as we might expect. However, whereas the heat of hydrogenation for cyclohexene is 120 kJ mol⁻¹, on hydrogenating benzene only 208 kJ mol⁻¹ is given out, which is much less than the 360 kJ mol⁻¹ that we would have predicted by multiplying the figure for cyclohexene by 3. Benzene has something to make it stable which cyclooctatetraene does not have.
Varying the number of electrons

The mystery deepens when we look at what happens when we treat cyclooctatetraene with powerful oxidizing or reducing agents. If 1,3,5,7-tetramethylcyclooctatetraene is treated at low temperature (–78 °C) with SbF₅/SO₂ClF (strongly oxidizing conditions) a dication is formed. This cation, unlike the neutral compound, is planar and all the C–C bond lengths are the same.

\[ \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \]
\[ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \]
\[ \text{SbF}_5, \text{SO}_2\text{ClF} \]
\[ \text{H}_2 \quad \text{H}_2 \]
\[ \Delta H \text{cyclooctatetraene} \]
\[ 410 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \]
\[ \Delta H \text{cyclohexene} \]
\[ 120 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \]
\[ \text{H}_2 + \]
\[ \Delta H \text{cyclooctene} \]
\[ 96 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \]
\[ + 3\text{H}_2 \]
\[ \Delta H \text{benzene} \]
\[ 208 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \]

It is also possible to add electrons to cyclooctatetraene by treating it with alkali metals and a dianion results. X-ray structures reveal this dianion to be planar, again with all C–C bond lengths the same (140.7 pm). The difference between the anion and cation of cyclooctatetraene on the one hand and cyclooctatetraene on the other is the number of electrons in the \( \pi \) system. Neutral, non-planar, cyclooctatetraene has eight \( \pi \) electrons, the planar dication has six \( \pi \) electrons (as does benzene), and the planar anion has ten.

Can you see a pattern forming? The important point is not the number of conjugated atoms but the number of electrons in the \( \pi \) system.

- When they have four or eight \( \pi \) electrons, both six- and eight-membered rings adopt non-planar structures; when they have six or ten \( \pi \) electrons, a planar structure is preferred.

If you made a model of cyclooctatetraene, you might have tried to force it to be flat. If you managed this you probably found that it didn’t stay like this for long and that it popped back into the tub shape. The strain in planar cyclooctatetraene can be overcome by the molecule...
adopting the tub conformation. The strain is due to the numbers of atoms and double bonds in the ring—it has nothing to do with the number of electrons. The planar dication and dianion of cyclooctatetraene still have this strain. The fact that these ions do adopt planar structures must mean there is some other form of stabilization that outweighs the strain of being planar. This extra stabilization is called aromaticity.

**Benzene has six π molecular orbitals**

The difference between the amount of energy we expect to get from benzene on hydrogenation (360 kJ mol⁻¹) and what is observed (208 kJ mol⁻¹) is about 150 kJ mol⁻¹. This represents a crude measure of just how extra stable benzene really is relative to what it would be like with three localized double bonds. In order to understand the origin of this stabilization, we must look at the molecular orbitals. We can think of the π molecular orbitals of benzene as resulting from the combination of the six p orbitals in a ring and, as with butadiene, each successively higher energy orbital contains one more node. This is what we get for benzene:

The molecular orbital lowest in energy, ψ₁, has no nodes, with all the orbitals combining in phase. The next lowest molecular orbital will have one nodal plane, which can be arranged in two ways depending on whether or not the nodal plane passes through a bond or an atom. It turns out that these two different molecular orbitals both have exactly the same energy, that is, they are degenerate, and we call them both ψ₂. There are likewise two ways of arranging two nodal planes and again there are two degenerate molecular orbitals ψ₃. The final molecular orbital ψ₄ will have three nodal planes, which must mean all the p orbitals combining out of phase. Six electrons slot neatly into the three lowest energy bonding orbitals.

**The π molecular orbitals of other conjugated cyclic hydrocarbons**

Notice that the layout of the energy levels in benzene is a regular hexagon with its apex pointing downwards. It turns out that the energy level diagram for the molecular orbitals resulting from the combination of any regular cyclic arrangement of p orbitals can be deduced from the appropriately sided polygon with an apex pointing downwards. The horizontal diameter (the red line) represents the energy of a carbon p orbital and any energy levels on this line represent non-bonding molecular orbitals. All molecular orbitals with energies below this line are bonding; all those above are antibonding.
It's worth noting a few points about these energy level diagrams:

- The method predicts the energy levels for the molecular orbitals of planar, cyclic arrangements of identical atoms (usually all C) only.
- There is always one single molecular orbital lower in energy than all the others. This is because there is always one molecular orbital where all the p orbitals combine in phase.
- If there is an even number of atoms, there is also a single molecular orbital highest in energy; otherwise there will be a pair of degenerate molecular orbitals highest in energy.
- All the molecular orbitals come in degenerate pairs except the one lowest in energy and (for even-numbered systems) the one highest in energy.

Molecular orbitals and aromaticity

Now we can begin to put all the pieces together and make sense of what we know so far. We'll compare the way that the electrons fit into the energy level diagrams for benzene and planar cyclooctatetraene. We are not concerned with the actual shapes of the molecular orbitals involved, just their energies.

Benzene has six π electrons, which means that all its three bonding molecular orbitals are fully occupied, giving what we can call a ‘closed shell’ structure. Cyclooctatetraene’s eight electrons, on the other hand, do not fit so neatly into its orbitals. Six of these fill up the bonding molecular orbitals but there are two electrons left. These must go into the degenerate pair of non-bonding orbitals. Hund’s rule (Chapter 4) would suggest one in each. Planar cyclooctatetraene would not have the closed shell structure that benzene has—to get one it must either lose or gain two electrons. This is exactly what we have already seen—both the dianion and dication from cyclooctatetraene are planar, allowing delocalization all over the ring, whereas neutral cyclooctatetraene avoids the unfavourable arrangement of electrons shown below by adopting a tub shape with localized bonds.
Hückel's rule tells us if compounds are aromatic

As we pointed out on the previous page, all the cyclic conjugated hydrocarbons have a single lowest energy molecular orbital, and then a stack of degenerate pairs of orbitals of increasing energy. Since the single low energy orbital holds two electrons, and then the successive degenerate pairs four each, a 'closed shell' arrangement in which all the orbitals below a certain level are filled will always contain \((4n + 2)\) electrons (where \(n\) is an integer—0, 1, 2, etc.—corresponding to the number of degenerate orbital pairs). This is the basis of Hückel's rule.

**Hückel's rule**

Planar, fully conjugated, monocyclic systems with \((4n + 2)\) \(\pi\) electrons have a closed shell of electrons all in bonding orbitals and are exceptionally stable. Such systems are said to be aromatic.

Analogous systems with \(4n\) \(\pi\) electrons are described as anti-aromatic.

The next \((4n + 2)\) number after six is ten so we might expect this cyclic alkene, \([10]\)annulene, to be aromatic. But if a compound with five cis double bonds were planar, each internal angle would be 144°. Since a normal double bond has bond angles of 120°, this would be far from ideal. This compound can be made but it does *not* adopt a planar conformation and therefore is not aromatic even though it has ten \(\pi\) electrons.

By contrast, \([18]\)annulene, which is also a \((4n + 2)\) \(\pi\) electron system \((n = 4)\), does adopt a planar conformation and *is* aromatic. The *trans–trans–cis* double bond arrangement allows all bond angles to be 120°. \([20]\)Annulene presumably could become planar (it isn’t quite) but since it is a \(4n\) \(\pi\) electron system rather than a \(4n + 2\) system, it is not aromatic and the structure shows localized single and double bonds.

When the conjugated systems are not monocyclic, the situation becomes a little less clear. Naphthalene, for example, has ten electrons but you can also think of it as two fused benzene rings. From its chemistry, it is very clear that naphthalene has aromatic character (it does substitution reactions) but is less aromatic than benzene itself. For example, naphthalene can easily be reduced to tetralin (1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene), which still contains a benzene ring. Also, in contrast to benzene, all the bond lengths in naphthalene are not the same. 1,6-Methano\([10]\)annulene is rather like naphthalene but with the middle bond replaced by a methylene bridging group. This compound is almost flat and shows aromatic character.

Hückel’s rule helps us predict and understand the aromatic stability of numerous other systems. Cyclopentadiene, for example, has two conjugated double bonds but the conjugated system is not cyclic since there is an sp\(^3\) carbon in the ring. However, this compound is relatively easy to deprotonate to give a very stable anion in which all the bond lengths are the same.
Each of the double bonds contributes two electrons and the negative charge (which must be in a p orbital to complete the conjugation) contributes a further two, making six altogether. The energy level diagram shows that six π electrons completely fill the bonding molecular orbitals, thereby giving a stable aromatic structure.

**Heterocyclic aromatic compounds**

So far all the aromatic compounds you have seen have been hydrocarbons. However, most aromatic systems are heterocyclic—that is, they contain atoms other than just carbon and hydrogen. (In fact the majority of all organic compounds are aromatic heterocycles!) A simple example is pyridine, in which a nitrogen replaces one of the CH groups of benzene. The ring still has three double bonds and thus six π electrons.

Consider the structure shown on the left, pyrrole. This is also aromatic but it’s not enough just to use the electrons in the double bonds: in pyrrole the nitrogen’s lone pair contributes to the six π electrons needed for the system to be aromatic. Aromatic chemistry makes several more appearances in this book: in Chapter 21 we shall look at the chemistry of benzene and in Chapters 30 and 31 we shall discuss heterocyclic aromatic compounds in much more detail.

**Further reading**


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Acidity, basicity, and $pK_a$

Organic compounds are more soluble in water as ions

Most organic compounds are insoluble in water. But sometimes it’s necessary to make them dissolve, perhaps by converting them to anions or cations. Water can solvate both cations and anions, unlike some of the solvents you will meet later. A good way of dissolving an organic acid is to put it in basic solution: the base deprotonates the acid to give an anion. A simple example is aspirin: whilst the acid itself is not very soluble in water, the sodium salt is much more soluble. The sodium salt forms with the weak base, sodium hydrogencarbonate.

![Aspirin structure](image)

The sodium or calcium salt of ‘normal’ aspirin is sold as ‘soluble aspirin’. But when the pH of a solution of aspirin’s sodium salt is lowered, the amount of the ‘normal’ acidic form present increases and the solubility decreases. In the acidic environment of the stomach (around pH 1–2), soluble aspirin will be converted back to the normal acidic form and precipitate out of solution.

Water is special for many reasons, and it falls into a class of solvents we call polar protic solvents. We will discuss other solvents in this class, as well as polar aprotic solvents (such as acetone and DMF) and non-polar solvents (such as toluene and hexane) in Chapter 12.
In the same way, organic bases such as amines can be dissolved by lowering the pH. Codeine (7,8-didehydro-4,5-epoxy-3-methoxy-17-methylmorphinan-6-ol) is a commonly used painkiller. Codeine itself is not very soluble in water but it does contain a basic nitrogen atom that can be protonated to give a more soluble salt. It is usually encountered as a phosphate salt. The structure is complex, but that doesn’t matter.

**Charged compounds can be separated by acid–base extraction**

Adjusting the pH of a solution often provides an easy way to separate compounds. Separating a mixture of benzoic acid (PhCO₂H) and toluene (PhMe) is easy: dissolve the mixture in CH₂Cl₂, add aqueous NaOH, shake the mixture of solutions, and separate the layers. The CH₂Cl₂ layer contains all the toluene. The aqueous layer contains the sodium salt of benzoic acid. Addition of HCl to the aqueous layer precipitates the insoluble benzoic acid.

A more realistic separation is given in a modern practical book after a Cannizzaro reaction. You will meet this reaction in Chapters 26 and 39 but all you need to know now is that there are two products, formed in roughly equal quantities. Separation of these from starting material and solvent, as well as from each other, makes this a useful reaction.

The products under the basic reaction conditions are the salt of the acid (soluble in water) and the alcohol (not soluble in water). Extraction with dichloromethane removes the alcohol and leaves the salt in the aqueous layer along with solvent methanol and residual KOH. Rotary evaporation of the CH₂Cl₂ layer gives crystalline alcohol and acidification of the aqueous layer precipitates the neutral acid.
In the same way, any basic compounds dissolved in an organic layer can be extracted by washing the layer with dilute aqueous acid and recovered by raising the pH, which will precipitate out the less soluble neutral compound. A general way to make amines is by ‘reductive amination.’ Ignore the details of this reaction for now (we come back to them in Chapter 11) but consider how the amine might be separated from starting material, by-products, and solvent.

As the reaction mixture is weakly acidic, the amine will be protonated and will be soluble in water. The starting material and intermediate (of which very little is present anyway) are soluble in organic solvents. Extracting the aqueous layer and neutralizing with NaOH gives the amine.

Whenever you do any extractions or washes in practical experiments, just stop and ask yourself: ‘What is happening here? In which layer is my compound and why?’ You will then be less likely to throw away the wrong layer (and your precious compound)!

**Acids, bases, and pKₐ**

If we are going to make use of the acid–base properties of compounds as we have just described, we are going to need a way of measuring how acidic or how basic they are. Raising the pH leads to deprotonation of aspirin and lowering the pH leads to protonation of codeine, but how far do we have to raise or lower the pH to do this? The measure of acidity or basicity we need is called pKₐ. The value of pKₐ tells us how acidic (or not) a given hydrogen atom in a compound is. Knowing about pKₐ tells us, for example, that the amine product from the reaction just above will be protonated at weakly acidic pH 5, or that only a weak base (sodium hydrogen carbonate) is needed to deprotonate a carboxylic acid such as aspirin. It is also useful because many reactions proceed through protonation or deprotonation of one of the reactants (you met some examples in Chapter 6), and it is obviously useful to know what strength acid or base is needed. It would be futile to use too weak a base to deprotonate a compound but, equally, using a very strong base where a weak one would do risks the result of cracking open a walnut with a sledge hammer.

The aim of this chapter is to help you to understand why a given compound has the pKₐ that it does. Once you understand the trends involved, you should have a good feel for the pKₐ values of commonly encountered compounds and also be able to predict roughly the values for unfamiliar compounds.

**Benzoic acid preserves soft drinks**

Benzoic acid is used as a preservative in foods and soft drinks (E210). Like acetic acid, it is only the acid form that is effective as a bactericide. Consequently, benzoic acid can be used as a preservative only in foodstuffs with a relatively low pH, ideally less than its pKₐ of 4.2. This isn’t usually a problem: soft drinks, for example, typically have a pH of 2–3. Benzoic acid is often added as the sodium salt (E211), perhaps because this can be added to the recipe as a concentrated solution in water. At the low pH in the final drink, most of the salt will be protonated to give benzoic acid proper, which presumably remains in solution because it is so dilute.

**Acidity**

Let’s start with two simple, and probably familiar, definitions:

- An acid is a species having a tendency to lose a proton.
- A base is a species having a tendency to accept a proton.
An isolated proton is extremely reactive—formation of $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ in water

Gaseous HCl is not an acid at all—it shows no tendency to dissociate into $\text{H}^+$ and $\text{Cl}^-$ as the $\text{H}$–$\text{Cl}$ bond is strong. But hydrochloric acid—that is, a solution of HCl in water—is a strong acid. The difference is that an isolated proton $\text{H}^+$ is too unstable to be encountered under normal conditions, but in water the hydrogen of HCl is transferred to a water molecule and not released as a free species.

The chloride anion is the same in both cases: the only difference is that a very unstable naked proton would have to be the other product in the gas phase but a much more stable $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ cation would be formed in water. In fact it’s even better than that, as other molecules of water cluster round (‘solvate’) the $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ cation, stabilizing it with a network of hydrogen bonds.

That is why HCl is an acid in water. But how strong an acid is it? This is where chloride plays a role: hydrochloric acid is a strong acid because chloride ion is a stable anion. The sea is full of it! Water is needed to reveal the acidic quality of HCl, and acidity is determined in water as the standard solvent. If we measure acidity in water, what we are really measuring is how much our acid transfers a proton to a water molecule.

HCl transfers its proton almost completely to water, and is a strong acid. But the transfer of protons to water from carboxylic acids is only partial. That is why carboxylic acids are weak acids. Unlike the reaction of HCl with water, the reaction below is an equilibrium.

The pH scale and $pK_a$

The amount of $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ in any solution in water is described using the pH scale. pH is simply a measure of the concentration of $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ on a logarithmic scale, and it is characteristic of any aqueous acid—it depends not only on what the acid is (hydrochloric, acetic, etc.) but also on how concentrated the acid is.

\[ \text{pH} = -\log[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] \]

You will already know that neutrality is pH 7 and that below pH 7 water is increasingly acidic while above pH 7 it is increasingly basic. At higher pH, there is little $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ in the solution and more hydroxide ion, but at lower pH there is more $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ and little hydroxide.

The reason that higher pH means less $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ is because the arbitrary definition of pH is the negative logarithm (to the base 10) of the $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ concentration. To summarize in a diagram:
pH is used to measure the acidity of aqueous solutions, but what about the inherent tendency of an acidic compound to give up $H^+$ to water and form these acid solutions? A good way of measuring this tendency is to find the pH at which a solution contains exactly the same amount of the protonated, acidic form and its deprotonated, basic form. This number, which is characteristic of any acid, is known as the $pK_a$. In the example just above, this would be the pH where the amount of the carboxylic acid is matched by the amount of its carboxylate salt—which happens to be at about pH 5: the $pK_a$ of acetic acid is 4.76.

We'll come back to a more formal definition of $pK_a$ later, but first we need to look more closely at this pair of species—the protonated acid and its deprotonated, basic partner.

**Every acid has a conjugate base**

Looking back at the equilibrium set up when acetic acid dissolves in water, but drawing the mechanism of the back reaction, we see acetate ion acting as a base and $H_3O^+$ acting as an acid. In all equilibria involving just proton transfer a species acting as a base on one side acts as an acid on the other. We describe $H_3O^+$ as the conjugate acid of water and water as the conjugate base of $H_3O^+$. In the same way, acetic acid is the conjugate acid of acetate ion and acetate ion is the conjugate base of acetic acid.

![Conjugate Acid-Base Pair](image)

For any acid and any base:

$$BH + A^- \rightleftharpoons BH^+ + A^0$$

$AH$ is an acid and $A^-$ is its conjugate base and $B$ is a base and $BH^+$ is its conjugate acid. That is, every acid has a conjugate base associated with it and every base has a conjugate acid associated with it.

Water doesn't have to be one of the participants—if we replace water in the reaction we have been discussing with ammonia, we now have ammonia as the conjugate base of $NH_4^+$ (the ammonium cation) and the ammonium cation as the conjugate acid of ammonia. What is different is the position of equilibrium: ammonia is more basic than water and now the equilibrium will be well over to the right. As you will see, $pK_a$ will help us assess where equilibria like these lie.

![Conjugate Acid-Base Pair](image)

The amino acids you met in Chapter 2 have carboxylic acid and amine functional groups within the same molecule. When dissolved in water, they transfer a proton from the $CO_2H$ group to the $NH_2$ group and form a zwitterion. This German term describes a double ion having positive and negative charges in the same molecule.

![Zwitterion](image)

**Water can behave as an acid or as a base**

So far we have seen water acting as a (very weak) base to form $H_3O^+$. If we added a strong base, such as sodium hydride, to water, the base would deprotonate the water to give hydroxide ion,
HO−, and here the water would be acting as an acid. It’s amusing to notice that hydrogen gas is the conjugate acid of hydride ion, but more important to note that hydroxide ion is the conjugate base of water.

Water is a weak acid and a weak base so we need a strong acid like HCl to give much H3O+, and a strong base, like hydride ion, to give much hydroxide ion.

The ionization of water

The concentration of H3O+ ions in water is very low indeed at 10−7 mol dm−3. Pure water at 25 °C therefore has a pH of 7.00. Hydronium ions in pure water can arise only from water protonating (and deprotonating) itself. One molecule of water acts as a base, deprotonating another that acts as an acid. For every H3O+ ion formed, a hydroxide ion must also be formed, so that in pure water at pH 7 the concentrations of H3O+ and hydroxide ions must be equal:

\[ [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = [\text{HO}^-] = 10^{-7} \text{ mol dm}^{-3}. \]

The product of these two concentrations is known as the ionization constant (or as the ionic product) of water, \( K_w \), with a value of 10−14 mol2 dm−6 (at 25 °C). This is a constant in aqueous solutions, so if we know the hydronium ion concentration (which we can get by measuring the pH), we also know the hydroxide concentration since the product of the two concentrations always equals 10−14.

So, roughly at what pH does water become mostly H3O+ ions and at what pH mostly hydroxide ions? We can now add two additional pieces of information to the approximate chart we gave you before. At pH 7, water is almost entirely H2O. At about pH 0, the concentrations of water and H3O+ ions are about the same and at about pH 14, the concentrations of hydroxide ions and water are about the same.

Acids as preservatives

Acetic acid is used as a preservative in many foods, for example pickles, mayonnaise, bread, and fish products, because it prevents bacteria and fungi growing. However, its fungicidal nature is not due to any lowering of the pH of the foodstuff. In fact, it is the undissociated acid that acts as a bactericide and a fungicide in concentrations as low as 0.1–0.3%. Besides, such a low concentration has little effect on the pH of the foodstuff anyway.

Although acetic acid can be added directly to a foodstuff (disguised as E260), it is more common to add vinegar, which contains between 10 and 15% acetic acid. This makes the product more ‘natural’ since it avoids the nasty ‘E numbers’. Actually, vinegar has also replaced other acids used as preservatives, such as propionic (propanoic) acid (E280) and its salts (E281, E282, and E283).

The definition of \( pK_a \)

When we introduced you to \( pK_a \) on p. 167, we said it is the pH at which an acid and its conjugate base are present in equal concentrations. We can now be more precise about the definition...
of pKₐ. pKₐ is the log (to the base ten) of the equilibrium constant for the dissociation of the acid. For an acid HA this is:

$$\text{HA} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightleftharpoons{K_a} \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ + \text{A}^-$$

$$\text{pK}_a = -\log K_a$$

$$K_a = \frac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{A}^-]}{[\text{AH}]}$$

The concentration of water is ignored in the definition because it is also constant (at 25 °C). Because of the minus sign in the definition (it’s there too in the definition of pH) the lower the pKₐ the larger the equilibrium constant and the stronger the acid. You may find the way we introduced pKₐ more helpful as a concept for visualizing pKₐ: any acid is half dissociated in a solution whose pH matches the acid’s pKₐ. At a pH above the pKₐ the acid exists largely as its conjugate base (A⁻) but at a pH below the pKₐ the acid largely exists as HA.

With pKₐ we can put figures to the relative strengths of hydrochloric and acetic acid we introduced earlier. HCl is a much stronger acid than acetic acid: the pKₐ of HCl is around –7 compared to 4.76 for acetic acid. This tells us that in solution Kₐ for hydrogen chloride is 10⁻⁷ mol dm⁻³. This is an enormous number: only one molecule in 10,000,000 is not dissociated, so it is essentially fully dissociated. But Kₐ for acetic acid is only 10⁻³.⁷⁶ = 1.74 × 10⁻⁵ mol dm⁻³ so it is hardly dissociated at all: only a few molecules in every million of acetic acid are present as the acetate ion.

What about the pKₐ of water? You know the figures already: Kₐ for water is [H₃O⁺] × [HO⁻]/[H₂O] = 10⁻¹⁴/55.5. So pKₐ = −log[10⁻¹⁴/55.5] = 15.7. Now you see why water isn’t really quite half dissociated at pH 14—the concentration of water in the equation means that the two ends of the scale on p. 168 are not at 0 and 14, but at −1.7 and 15.7.

A graphical description of the pKₐ of acids and bases

For both cases, adjusting the pH alters the proportions of the acid form and of the conjugate base. The graph plots the concentration of the free acid AH (green curve) and the ionized conjugate base A⁻ (red curve) as percentages of the total concentration as the pH is varied. At low pH the compound exists entirely as AH and at high pH entirely as A⁻. At the pKₐ the concentration of each species, AH and A⁻, is the same. At pHs near the pKₐ the compound exists as a mixture of the two forms.

Now we have established why you need to understand acids and bases, we must move on to consider why some acids are stronger than other acids and some bases stronger than other bases. To do this we must be able to estimate the pKₐ of common classes of organic compounds.
You do not need to learn exact figures for $pK_a$ values, but you will certainly need to develop a feel for approximate values—we will guide you towards which figures are worth learning and which you can leave to be looked up when you need them.

**An acid's $pK_a$ depends on the stability of its conjugate base**

The stronger the acid, the easier it is to ionize, which means that it must have a stable conjugate base. Conversely, a weak acid is reluctant to ionize because it has an unstable conjugate base. The other side of this coin is that unstable anions $A^-$ make strong bases and their conjugate acids $AH$ are weak acids.

### Acid and conjugate base strength

- The stronger the acid $HA$, the weaker its conjugate base $A^-$.  
- The stronger the base $A^-$, the weaker its conjugate acid $AH$.

For example, hydrogen iodide has a very low $pK_a$, about $\approx 10$. This means that HI is a strong enough acid to protonate almost anything. Its conjugate base, iodide ion, is therefore not basic at all—it will not deprotonate anything. A very powerful base is methylthionium, MeLi. Although it is actually a covalent compound, as we discuss in Chapter 9, for the purpose of the discussion here you can think of MeLi as $\text{CH}_3\text{Li}^-$. $\text{CH}_3^-$ can accept a proton to become neutral methane, $\text{CH}_4$. Methane is therefore the conjugate acid. Clearly, methane isn’t at all acidic—its $pK_a$ is estimated to be 48. The table below gives a few inorganic compounds and their approximate $pK_a$ values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$</td>
<td>$-3$</td>
<td>$\text{HSO}_4^-$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>$-1.7$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>$\text{NH}_3$</td>
<td>$9.2$</td>
<td>$\text{NH}_3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{HCl}$</td>
<td>$-7$</td>
<td>$\text{Cl}^-$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>$15.7$</td>
<td>$\text{HO}^-$</td>
<td>$\text{NH}_3$</td>
<td>$33$</td>
<td>$\text{NH}_3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{HI}$</td>
<td>$-10$</td>
<td>$\text{I}^-$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{S}$</td>
<td>$7.0$</td>
<td>$\text{HS}^-$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that the lower down the periodic table we go, the stronger the acid. Notice also that oxygen acids are stronger than nitrogen acids. We have also put down more exact $pK_a$ values for water but you need remember only the approximate values of 0 and 14. Over the next few pages we shall be considering the reasons for these differences in acid strength but we are first going to consider the simple consequences of mixing acids or bases of different strengths. Notice the vast range covered by $pK_a$ values: from around $\approx 10$ for HI to nearly 50 for methane. This corresponds to a difference of $10^{60}$ in the equilibrium constant.

**The choice of solvent limits the $pK_a$ range we can use**

In water, we can measure the $pK_a$ of an acid only if the acid does not completely protonate water to give $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ or completely deprotonate it to give $\text{HO}^-$. We are restricted roughly to pH $\approx 1.7$ to 15.7, beyond which water is more than 50% protonated or deprotonated. The strength of acids or bases we can use in any solvent is limited by the acidity and basicity of the solvent itself. Think of it this way: say you want to remove the proton from a compound with a high $pK_a$, say 25–30. It would be impossible to do this in water since the strongest base we can have is hydroxide. If you add a base stronger than hydroxide, it won't deprotonate your compound, it will just deprotonate water and make hydroxide anyway. Likewise, acids stronger than $\text{H}_2\text{O}^+$ can't exist in water: they just protonate water completely to make $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$. If you do need a stronger base than $\text{OH}^-$ (or a stronger acid than $\text{H}_2\text{O}^+$, but this is rarer) you must use a different solvent.

Let's take acetylene as an example. Acetylene (ethyne) has $pK_a$ 25. This is remarkably low for a hydrocarbon (see below for why) but, even so, hydroxide (the strongest base we could have in aqueous solution, $pK_a$ 15.7) would establish an equilibrium where only 1 in $10^{9.3}$ ($10^{15.7}/10^{25}$), or about 1 in 2 billion, ethyne molecules are deprotonated. We can’t use a stronger base than hydroxide, since, no matter what strong base we dissolve in water, we will only at best get hydroxide ions. So, in order to deprotonate ethyne to any appreciable extent, we must use a different solvent—one that does not have a $pK_a$ less than 25.
Conditions often used to do this reaction are sodium amide (NaNH$_2$) in liquid ammonia. Using the pK$_a$ values of NH$_3$ (ca. 33) and ethyne (25) we would estimate an equilibrium constant for this reaction of $10^{18}$ ($10^{-25}/10^{-33}$)—well over to the right. Amide ions can be used to deprotonate alkynes.

Since we have an upper and a lower limit on the strength of an acid or base that we can use in water, this poses a bit of a problem: how do we know that the pK$_a$ for HCl is more negative than that of H$_2$SO$_4$ if both completely protonate water? How do we know that the pK$_a$ of methane is greater than that of ethyne since both the conjugate bases fully deprotonate water? The answer is that we can’t simply measure the equilibrium for the reaction in water—we can do this only for pK$_a$ values that fall between the pK$_a$ values of water itself. Outside this range, pK$_a$ values are determined in other solvents and the results are extrapolated to give a value for what the pK$_a$ in water might be.

### Constructing a pK$_a$ scale

We now want to look at ways to rationalize, and estimate, the different pK$_a$ values for different compounds—we wouldn’t want to have to memorize all the values. You will need to get a feel for the pK$_a$ values of different compounds and if you know what factors affect them it will make it much easier to predict an approximate pK$_a$ value, or at least understand why a given compound has the pK$_a$ value that it does.

$$\text{AH (solvent)} \rightleftharpoons \text{A}^- \text{ (solvent)} + \text{H}^+ \text{ (solvent)}$$

A number of factors affect the strength of an acid AH. These include:

1. The intrinsic stability of the conjugate base, anion A$^-$. Stability can arise by having the negative charge on an electronegative atom or by spreading the charge over several atoms (delocalization) groups. Either way, the more stable the conjugate base, the stronger the acid HA.
2. Bond strength A–H. Clearly, the easier it is to break this bond, the stronger the acid.
3. The solvent. The better the solvent is at stabilizing the ions formed, the easier it is for the reaction to occur.

#### Acid strength

The most important factor in the strength of an acid is the stability of the conjugate base—the more stable the conjugate base, the stronger the acid.

An important factor in the stability of the conjugate base is which element the negative charge is on—the more electronegative the element, the more stable the conjugate base.

### The negative charge on an electronegative element stabilizes the conjugate base

The pK$_a$ values for the ‘hydrides’ of the first row elements CH$_4$, NH$_3$, H$_2$O, and HF are about 48, 33, 16, and 3, respectively. This trend is due to the increasing electronegativities across the period: F$^-$ is much more stable than CH$_3$$^-$, because fluorine is much more electronegative than carbon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>pK$_a$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methane CH$_4$</td>
<td>CH$_3$</td>
<td>−48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ammonia NH$_3$</td>
<td>amide ion NH$_2$ $^-$</td>
<td>−33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water H$_2$O</td>
<td>hydroxide ion HO$^-$</td>
<td>−16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>fluoride ion F$^-$</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Weak A–H bonds make stronger acids

However, on descending group VII (group 17), the \( pK_a \) values for HF, HCl, HBr, and HI decrease: 3, –7, –9, and –10. Since the electronegativities decrease on descending the group we might expect an increase in \( pK_a \). The decrease is due to the weakening bond strengths on descending the group and to some extent the way in which the charge can be spread over the increasingly large anions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>( pK_a )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HF</td>
<td>fluoride ion ( F^- )</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCl</td>
<td>chloride ion ( Cl^- )</td>
<td>–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBr</td>
<td>bromide ion ( Br^- )</td>
<td>–9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HI</td>
<td>iodide ion ( I^- )</td>
<td>–10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Delocalization of the negative charge stabilizes the conjugate base

The acids HClO, HClO\(_2\), HClO\(_3\), and HClO\(_4\) have \( pK_a \) values 7.5, 2, –1, and about –10, respectively. In each case the acidic proton is on an oxygen attached to chlorine, that is, we are removing a proton from the same environment in each case. Why then is perchloric acid, HClO\(_4\), some 17 orders of magnitude stronger in acidity than hypochlorous acid, HClO? Once the proton is removed, we end up with a negative charge on oxygen. For hypochlorous acid, this is localized on the one oxygen. With each successive oxygen, the charge can be more delocalized, and this makes the anion more stable. For example, with perchloric acid, the negative charge can be delocalized over all four oxygen atoms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>( pK_a )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hypochlorous acid HO–Cl</td>
<td>ClO(^-)</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chlorous acid HO–ClO</td>
<td>ClO(_2^+)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chloric acid HO–ClO(_2)</td>
<td>ClO(_3^-)</td>
<td>–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perchloric acid HO–ClO(_4)</td>
<td>ClO(_4^-)</td>
<td>–10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

That the charge is spread out over all the oxygen atoms equally is shown by electron diffraction studies: whereas perchloric acid has two types of Cl–O bond, one 163.5 pm and the other three 140.8 pm long, in the perchlorate anion all Cl–O bond lengths are the same, 144 pm, and all O–Cl–O bond angles are 109.5°. Just to remind you: these delocalization arrows do not indicate that the charge is actually moving from atom to atom. We discussed this in Chapter 7. These structures simply show that the charge is spread out in the molecular orbitals and mainly concentrated on the oxygen atoms.

Looking at some organic acids, we might expect alcohols to have a \( pK_a \) not far from that of water, and for ethanol that is correct (\( pK_a 15.9 \)). If we allow the charge in the conjugate base to be delocalized over two oxygen atoms, as in acetate, acetic acid is indeed a much stronger acid (\( pK_a 4.8 \)). The difference is huge: the conjugation makes acetic acid about \( 10^{10} \) times stronger.

charge localized on one oxygen

charge delocalized over two oxygens
It is even possible to have a negative charge of an organic acid delocalized over three atoms—as in the anions of the sulfonic acids. Methanesulfonic acid has a $pK_a$ of –1.9.

Even delocalization into a hydrocarbon part of the molecule increases acid strength. In phenol, $\text{PhOH}$, the $\text{OH}$ group is directly attached to a benzene ring. On deprotonation, the negative charge can again be delocalized, not onto other oxygen atoms but into the aromatic ring itself. The effect of this is to stabilize the phenoxide anion relative to the conjugate base of cyclohexanol, where no delocalization is possible, and this is reflected in the $pK_a$ values of the two compounds: 10 for phenol but 16 for cyclohexanol.

So now we can expand our chart of acid and base strengths to include the important classes of alcohols, phenols, and carboxylic acids. They conveniently, and memorably, have $pK_a$ values of about 0 for the protonation of alcohols, about 5 for the deprotonation of carboxylic acids, about 10 for the deprotonation of phenols, and about 15 for the deprotonation of alcohols. The equilibria above each $pK_a$ shows that at approximately that pH, the two species each form 50% of the mixture. You can see that carboxylic acids are weak acids, alkoxide ions ($\text{RO}^-$) are strong bases, and that it will need a strong acid to protonate an alcohol.

If we need to make the anion of a phenol, a base such as NaOH will be good enough, but if we want to make an anion from an alcohol, we need a stronger base. Vogel (p. 986) suggests potassium carbonate ($\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$) is strong enough to make an ether from phenol. The base strength of carbonate anion is about the same as that of phenoxide ion ($\text{PhO}^-$) so the two will be in equilibrium but enough phenoxide ion will be present for the reaction.

On the other hand, if we want to make the OH group into a good leaving group, we need to protonate it and a very strong acid will be needed. Sulfuric acid is used to make ethers from alcohols. Protonation of the OH groups leads to loss of water and formation of a cation. This reacts with more alcohol to give the ether. There is another example of this reaction in Chapter 5.
Nitrogen compounds as acids and bases

The most important organic nitrogen compounds are amines and amides. Amine nitrogens can be joined to alkyl or aryl groups (in which case the amines are called anilines). They all have lone pairs on nitrogen and may have hydrogen atoms on nitrogen too. As nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, you should expect amines to be less acidic and more basic than alcohols. And they are. The pKₐ values for the protonated amines are about 10 (this value is about 0 for water and alcohol) and the pKₐ values for amines acting as acids are very high, something like 35 (compared with about 15 for an alcohol). So ammonium salts are about as acidic as phenols and amines will be protonated at pH 7 in water. This is why amino acids (p. 167) exist as zwitterions in water.

Removing a proton from an amine is very difficult as the anion (unfortunately called an ‘amide’ anion) is very unstable and very basic. The only way to succeed is to use a very strong base, usually an alkyl lithium. The ‘anion’ then has a N–Li bond and is soluble in organic solvents. This example, known as LDA, is commonly used as a strong base in organic chemistry.

The basicity of amines as neutral compounds is measured by the pKₐ of their conjugate acids—so, for example, the pKₐ associated with the protonation of triethylamine, a commonly used tertiary amine, is 11.0.

The ‘pKₐs’ of bases

Chemists often say things like ‘the pKₐ of triethylamine is about 10.’ (It’s actually 11.0 but 10 is a good number to remember for typical amines). This may surprise you as triethylamine has no acidic hydrogens. What they mean is of course this: ‘the pKₐ of the conjugate acid of triethylamine is about 10.’ Another way to put this is to write ‘the pKₐ of triethylamine is about 10.’ The subscript ‘aH’ refers to the conjugate acid.

It’s OK to say ‘the pKₐ of triethylamine is about 10’ as long as you understand that what is really meant is ‘the pKₐ of the triethylammonium ion is about 10’, which can also be expressed thus: ‘the pKₐ of triethylamine is about 10’

When a molecule is both acidic and basic, as for example aniline, it is important to work out which pKₐ is meant as again chemists will loosely refer to ‘the pKₐ of aniline is 4.6’ when they mean ‘the pKₐ of the conjugate acid of aniline is 4.6.’ Aniline is much less basic than ammonia or triethylamine because the lone pair on nitrogen is conjugated into the ring and less available for protonation.
But for the same reason, aniline is also more acidic than ammonia ($pK_a 33$) and has a genuine $pK_a$ in which one of the protons on nitrogen is lost. So we can say correctly that ‘the $pK_a$ of aniline is about 28.’ Just be careful to check which $pK_a$ is meant in such compounds. The full picture is:

$$\text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{ conjugate acid of aniline } } \text{ aniline} \xrightarrow{\text{ conjugate base of aniline } } \text{ delocalized anion is more stable}$$

The $pK_a$ associated for protonation of piperidine, a typical secondary amine, is about 13. The equivalent $pK_a$ for protonation of pyridine—a compound with a similar heterocyclic structure, but with its lone pair in an $sp^2$ rather than an $sp^3$ orbital, is only 5.5: pyridine is a weaker base than piperidine (its conjugate acid is a stronger acid). Nitriles, whose lone pair is $sp$ hybridized, are not basic at all. Lone pairs with more $p$ character ($sp^3$ orbitals are $3/4$ $p$, while $sp$ orbitals are $1/2$ $p$) are higher in energy—they spend more time further from the nucleus—and are therefore more basic.

Amides are very different because of the delocalization of the lone pair into the carbonyl group. This makes amides more acidic but less basic and protonation occurs on oxygen rather than nitrogen. Amides have $pK_a$ values of around 15 when they act as acids, making them some $10^{10}$ times more acidic than amines. The $pK_a$ of protonated amides is around 0, making them some $10^{10}$ times weaker as bases.

If we replace the carbonyl oxygen atom in an amide by nitrogen we get an amidine. Amidines are conjugated, like amides, but unlike amides they are stronger bases than amines, by about 2–3 $pK_a$ units, because the two nitrogens work together to donate electron density onto each other. The bicyclic amidine DBU is often used as a strong organic base (see Chapter 17).

But the champions are the guanidines, with three nitrogens all donating lone pair electrons at once. A guanidine group (shown in green) makes arginine the most basic of the amino acids.

**Substituents affect the $pK_a$**

Substituents that are conjugated with the site of proton gain or loss, and even substituents that are electronegative but not conjugating, can have significant effects on $pK_a$ values. Phenol has $pK_a 10$ but phenols with anions stabilized by extra conjugation can have much lower $pK_a$s.
One nitro group, as in p-nitrophenol, lowers the pKₐ to 7.14, nearly a thousand-fold increase in acidity. This is because the negative charge on oxygen is delocalized into the very electron-withdrawing nitro group. By contrast 4-chlorophenol, with only inductive withdrawal in the C–Cl bond, has pKₐ 9.38, hardly different from phenol itself.

Inductive effects of nearby electronegative atoms can also have marked effects on the pKₐ of acids. Adding fluorines to acetic acid reduces the pKₐ from about 5 by smallish steps. Trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) is a very strong acid indeed, and is commonly used as a convenient strong acid in organic reactions. Inductive effects occur by polarization of σ bonds when the atom at one end is more electronegative than at the other. Fluorine is much more electronegative than carbon (indeed, F is the most electronegative element of all) so each σ bond is very polarized, making the carbon atom more electropositive and stabilizing the carboxylate anion.

**Carbon acids**

Hydrocarbons are not acidic. We have already established that methane has a pKₐ of about 48 (p. 170 above)—it’s essentially impossible to deprotonate. Alkyllithiums are for this reason among the strongest bases available. But some hydrocarbons can be deprotonated, the most important example being alkynes—you saw on p. 171 that acetylene has a pKₐ of 25 and can be deprotonated by NH₂⁻ (as well as other strong bases such as BuLi). The difference is one of hybridization—an idea we introduced with the nitrogen bases above. Making the acetylide anion, whose negative charge resides in an sp orbital, is much easier than making a methyl anion, with a negative charge in an sp³ orbital, because electrons in sp orbitals spend a lot of their time closer to the nucleus than electrons in sp³ orbitals.

C–H bonds can be even more acidic than those of acetylene if stabilization of the resulting anion is possible by *conjugation*. Conjugation with a carbonyl group has a striking effect. One carbonyl group brings the pKₐ down to 13.5 for acetaldehyde so that even hydroxide ion can produce the anion. You will discover in Chapter 20 that we call this the ‘enolate anion’ and that the charge is mostly on oxygen, although the anion can be drawn as a carbanion.

It is interesting to compare the strengths of the carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen acids of similar structure below. The ketone (acetone) is of course least acidic, the amide is more acidic, and the carboxylic acid most acidic. The oxyanion conjugate bases are all delocalized but delocalization onto a second very electronegative oxygen atom is much (~10 pH units) more effective than delocalization onto nitrogen, which is 4 pH units more effective than delocalization onto carbon.
Nevertheless, the effect of conjugation on the carbon acid compared with methane is enormous (~30 pH units) and brings proton removal from carbon within the range of accessible bases.

The nitro group is even more effective: nitromethane, with a $pK_a$ of 10, dissolves in aqueous NaOH. The proton is removed from carbon, but the negative charge in the conjugate base is on oxygen. The big difference is that the nitrogen atom has a positive charge throughout. If the anion is protonated in water by some acid (HA) the ‘enol’ form of nitromethane is the initial product and this slowly turns into nitromethane itself. Whereas proton transfers between electronegative atoms (O, N, etc.) are fast, proton transfers to or from carbon can be slow.

[Chemical structure diagram]

Carbon acids are very important in organic chemistry as they allow us to make carbon–carbon bonds and you will meet many more of them in later chapters of this book.

**Why do we need to compare acid strengths of O and N acids?**

The rates of nucleophilic addition to carbonyl groups that you met in Chapter 6 depend on the basicity of nucleophiles. As nitrogen bases are much stronger than oxygen bases (or, if you prefer, ammonium ions are much weaker acids than $H_3O^+$), amines are also much better nucleophiles than water or alcohols. This is dramatically illustrated in an amide synthesis from aniline and acetic anhydride in aqueous solution.

[Chemical structure diagram]

Aniline is not very soluble in water but addition of HCl converts it into the soluble cation by protonation at nitrogen. The solution is now warmed and equal amounts of acetic anhydride and aqueous sodium acetate are added. The $pK_a$ of acetic acid is about 5, as is the $pK_a$ of $PhNH_3^+$, so an equilibrium is set up and the solution now contains these species:

[Chemical structure diagram]

The only electrophile is acetic anhydride, with its two electrophilic carbonyl groups. The nucleophiles available are water, aniline, and acetate. Water is there in great abundance and does react with acetic anhydride but can’t compete with the other two as they are more basic (by about $10^5$). If acetate attacks the anhydride, it simply regenerates acetate. But if aniline attacks, the amide is formed as acetate is released.

[Chemical structure diagram]

The isolation of the product is easy as the amide is insoluble in water and can be filtered off. Environmental considerations suggest that we should not use organic solvents so much and should use water when possible. If we have some idea about $pK_a$s we can estimate whether water will interfere in a reaction we are planning and decide whether it is a suitable solvent or not. It is even possible to acylate amines with the more reactive acid chlorides in aqueous solution, and we will return in detail to acylation reactions such as these in Chapter 10.
**pKₐ in action—the development of the drug cimetidine**

The development of the anti-peptic ulcer drug cimetidine gives a fascinating insight into the important role of pKₐ in chemistry. Peptic ulcers are a localized erosion of the mucous membrane, resulting from overproduction of gastric acid in the stomach. One of the compounds that controls the production of the acid is histamine. (Histamine is also responsible for the symptoms of hay fever and allergies.)

![Cimetidine and Histamine](image)

Histamine works by binding into a receptor in the stomach lining and stimulating the production of acid. What the developers of cimetidine at Smith, Kline and French wanted was a drug that would bind to these receptors without activating them and thereby prevent histamine from binding but not stimulate acid secretion itself. Unfortunately, the antihistamine drugs successfully used in the treatment of hay fever did not work—a different histamine receptor was involved.

Notice that cimetidine and histamine both have the same nitrogen-containing ring (shown in black) as part of their structures. This ring is known as an imidazole—imidazole itself is quite a strong base whose protonated form is delocalized as shown below. This is not coincidence—cimetidine’s design was centred around the structure of histamine.

![Imidazole and Delocalization](image)

In the body, most histamine exists as a salt, being protonated on the primary amine and the early compounds modelled this. The guanidine analogue was synthesized and tested to see if it had any antagonistic effect (that is, if it could bind in the histamine receptors and prevent histamine binding). It did bind but unfortunately it acted as an agonist rather than an antagonist and stimulated acid secretion rather than blocking it. Since the guanidine analogue has a pKₐ even greater than histamine (about 14.5 compared to about 10), it is effectively all protonated at physiological pH.

![pKₐ Values](image)

The agonistic behaviour of the drug clearly had to be suppressed. The thought occurred to the chemists that perhaps the positive charge made the compound agonistic, and so a polar but much less basic compound was sought. Eventually, they came up with burimamide. The most important change is the replacement of the C=NH in the guanidine compound by C=S. Now instead of a guanidine we have a thiourea, which is much less basic. Other adjustments were to increase the chain length, insert a second sulfur atom on the chain, and add methyl groups to the thiourea and the imidazole ring, to give metiamide with increased efficacy.
The new drug, metiamide, was ten times more effective than burimamide when tested in humans. However, there was an unfortunate side-effect: in some patients, the drug caused a decrease in the number of white blood cells, leaving the patient open to infection. This was eventually traced back to the thiourea group. The sulfur had again to be replaced by oxygen, to give a normal urea and, just to see what would happen, by nitrogen to give another guanidine.

Neither was as effective as metiamide but the important discovery was that the guanidine analogue no longer showed the agonistic effects of the earlier guanidine. Of course, the guanidine would also be protonated so we had the same problem we had earlier—how to decrease the pKₐ of the guanidinium ion. A section of this chapter considered the effect of electron-withdrawing groups on pKₐ and showed that they make a base less basic. This was the approach now adopted—the introduction of electron-withdrawing groups on to the guanidine to lower its pKₐ. The table below shows the pKₐs of various substituted guanidinium ions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>Ph</th>
<th>CH₃CO</th>
<th>NH₂CO</th>
<th>MeO</th>
<th>CN</th>
<th>NO₂</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pKₐ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>8.33</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>–0.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clearly, the cyano and nitro-substituted guanidines would not be protonated at all. These were synthesized and found to be just as effective as metiamide but without the side-effects. Of the two, the cyanoguanidine compound was slightly more effective and this was developed and named ‘cimetidine’.
The development of cimetidine by Smith, Kline and French from the very start of the project up to its launch on the market took 13 years. This enormous effort was well rewarded—Tagamet (the trade name of the drug cimetidine) became the best-selling drug in the world and the first to gross more than one billion dollars per annum. Thousands of ulcer patients worldwide no longer had to suffer pain, surgery, or even death. The development of cimetidine followed a rational approach based on physiological and chemical principles and it was for this that one of the scientists involved, Sir James Black, received a share of the 1988 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine. None of this would have been possible without an understanding of $pK_a$.

### Lewis acids and bases

All the acids and bases we have been discussing so far have been protic, or Brønsted, acids and bases. In fact, the definition of an acid and a base we gave you on p. 165 is a definition of a Brønsted acid and a Brønsted base. When a carboxylic acid gives a proton to an amine, it is acting as a Brønsted acid while the amine is a Brønsted base. The ammonium ion produced is a Brønsted acid while the carboxylate anion is a Brønsted base.

- Brønsted acids donate protons.
- Brønsted bases accept protons.

But there is another important type of acid: the Lewis acid. These acids don’t donate protons—indeed they usually have no protons to donate. Instead they accept electrons. It is indeed a more general definition of acids to say that they accept electrons and of bases that they donate electrons. Lewis acids are usually halides of the higher oxidation states of metals, such as $\text{BF}_3$, $\text{AlCl}_3$, $\text{ZnCl}_2$, $\text{SbF}_5$, and $\text{TiCl}_4$. By removing electrons from organic compounds, Lewis acids act as important catalysts in important reactions such as the Friedel–Crafts alkylation and acylation of benzene (Chapter 21), the $S_{N1}$ substitution reaction (Chapter 15), and the Diels–Alder reaction (Chapter 34).

- Lewis acids accept electrons.
- Lewis bases donate electrons.

A simple Lewis acid is $\text{BF}_3$. As you saw in Chapter 5, monomeric boron compounds have three bonds to other atoms and an empty p orbital, making six electrons only in the outer shell. They are therefore not stable and $\text{BF}_3$ is normally used as its ‘etherate’: a complex with $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$. Ether donates a pair of electrons into the empty p orbital of $\text{BF}_3$ and this complex has tetrahedral boron with eight electrons. In this reaction the ether donates electrons (it can be described as a Lewis base) and $\text{BF}_3$ accepts electrons: it is a Lewis acid. No protons are exchanged. The complex is a stable liquid and is the form usually available from suppliers.

Lewis acids often form strong interactions with electronegative atoms such as halides or oxygen. In the Friedel–Crafts acylation, which you will meet in Chapter 21, for example, $\text{AlCl}_3$ removes the chloride ion from an acyl chloride to give a species, the acylium ion, which is reactive enough to combine with benzene.
Lewis acid–base interactions are very common in chemistry and are often rather subtle. You are about to meet, in the next chapter, an important way of making C–C bonds by adding organometallics to carbonyl compounds, and in many of these reactions there is an interaction at some point between a Lewis acidic metal cation and a Lewis basic carbonyl group.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Using organometallic reagents to make C–C bonds

Connections

Building on
- Electronegativity and the polarization of bonds ch4
- Grignard reagents and organolithiums attack carbonyl groups ch6
- C–H deprotonated by very strong bases ch8

Arriving at
- Organometallics: nucleophilic and often strongly basic
- Making organometallics from halo-compounds
- Making organometallics by deprotonating carbon atoms
- Using organometallics to make new C–C bonds from C=O groups

Looking forward to
- More about organometallics ch24 & ch40
- More ways to make C–C bonds from C=O groups ch25, ch26, & ch27
- Synthesis of molecules ch28

Introduction

In Chapters 2–8 we covered basic chemical concepts concerning structure (Chapters 2–4 and 7) and reactivity (Chapters 5, 6, and 8). These concepts are the bare bones supporting all of organic chemistry, and now we shall start to put flesh on these bare bones. In Chapters 9–22 we shall tell you about the most important classes of organic reaction in more detail.

One of the things organic chemists do, for all sorts of reasons, is to make molecules, and making organic molecules means making C–C bonds. In this chapter we are going to look at one of the most important ways of making C–C bonds: using organometallics, such as organolithiums and Grignard reagents, in combination with carbonyl compounds. We will consider reactions such as these:

You met these types of reactions in Chapter 6: in this chapter we will be adding more detail with regard to the nature of the organometallic reagents and what sort of molecules can be made using the reactions. The organometallic reagents act as nucleophiles towards the

Online support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123 into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
electrophilic carbonyl group, and this is the first thing we need to discuss: why are organometallics nucleophilic? We then move on to, firstly, how to make organometallics, then to the sorts of electrophiles they will react with, and finally to the sort of molecules we can make with them.

**Organometallic compounds contain a carbon—metal bond**

The polarity of a covalent bond between two different elements is determined by electronegativity. The more electronegative an element is, the more it attracts the electron density in the bond. So the greater the difference between the electronegativities, the greater the difference between the attraction for the bonding electrons, and the more polarized the bond becomes. In the extreme case of complete polarization, the covalent bond ceases to exist and is replaced by electrostatic attraction between ions of opposite charge. We discussed this in Chapter 4 (p. 96), where we considered the extreme cases of bonding in NaCl.

**How important are organometallics for making C–C bonds?**

As an example, let’s take a molecule known as ‘juvenile hormone’. It is a compound that prevents several species of insects from maturing and can be used as a means of controlling insect pests. Only very small amounts of the naturally occurring compound can be isolated from the insects, but it can instead be made in the laboratory from simple starting materials. At this stage you need not worry about how, but we can tell you that, in one synthesis, of the 16 C–C bonds in the final product, seven were made by reactions of organometallic reagents, many of them the sort of reactions we will describe in this chapter. This is not an isolated example. As further proof, take an important enzyme inhibitor, closely related to arachidonic acid which you met in Chapter 7. It has been made by a succession of C–C bond-forming reactions using organometallic reagents: eight of the 20 C–C bonds in the product were formed using organometallic reactions.

When we discussed (in Chapter 6) the electrophilic nature of carbonyl groups we saw that their reactivity is a direct consequence of the polarization of the carbon—oxygen bond towards the more electronegative oxygen, making the carbon a site for nucleophilic attack. In Chapter 6 you also met the two most important organometallic compounds—organolithiums and organomagnesium halides (known as Grignard reagents). In these organometallic reagents the key bond is polarized in the opposite direction—towards carbon—making carbon a nucleophilic centre. This is true for most organometallics because, as you can see from this edited version of the periodic table, metals (such as Li, Mg, Na, and Al) all have lower electronegativity than carbon.

Pauling electronegativities of selected elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Electronegativity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The molecular orbital energy level diagram—the kind you met in Chapter 4—represents the C–Li bond in methyllithium in terms of the sum of the atomic orbitals of carbon and lithium. The more electronegative an atom is, the lower in energy are its atomic orbitals (p. 96). The filled C–Li σ orbital is closer in energy to the carbon’s sp³ orbital than to the lithium’s 2s orbital, so we can say that the carbon’s sp³ orbital makes a greater contribution to the C–Li σ bond and that the C–Li bond has a larger coefficient on carbon. Reactions involving the filled
σ orbital will therefore take place at C rather than Li. The same arguments hold for the C–Mg bond of organo-magnesium or Grignard reagents, named after their inventor Victor Grignard.

We can also say that, because the carbon’s sp³ orbital makes a greater contribution to the C–Li σ bond, the σ bond is close in structure to a filled C sp³ orbital—a lone pair on carbon. This useful idea can be carried too far: methyl lithium is not an ionic compound Me⁻Li⁺—although you may sometimes see MeLi or MeMgCl represented in mechanisms as Me⁻.

The true structure of organolithiums and Grignard reagents is rather more complicated! Even though these organometallic compounds are extremely reactive towards water and oxygen, and have to be handled under an atmosphere of nitrogen or argon, some have been studied by X-ray crystallography in the solid state and by NMR in solution. It turns out that they generally form complex aggregates with two, four, six, or more molecules bonded together, often with solvent molecules, one reason why apparently polar compounds such as BuLi dissolve in hydrocarbons. In this book we shall not be concerned with these details, and we shall represent organometallic compounds as simple monomeric structures.

Making organometallics

How to make Grignard reagents

Grignard reagents are made by reacting magnesium turnings with alkyl halides in ether solvents to form solutions of alkylmagnesium halide. Iodides, bromides, and chlorides can be used, as can both aryl and alkyl halides. Our examples include methyl, primary, secondary, and tertiary alkyl halides, aryl and allyl halides. They cannot contain any functional groups that would react with the Grignard reagent once it is formed. The final example has an acetal functional group as an example of one that does not react with the Grignard reagent. (See Chapter 23 for further discussion.)
The solvents in these examples are all ethers, either diethyl ether $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$ or THF. Other solvents that are sometimes used include the diethers dioxane and dimethoxyethane (DME).

The reaction scheme is easy enough to draw, but what is the mechanism? Overall it involves an insertion of magnesium into the carbon–halogen bond. There is also a change in oxidation state of the magnesium, from Mg(0) to Mg(II). The reaction is therefore known as an oxidative insertion or oxidative addition, and is a general process for many metals such as Mg, Li (which we meet shortly), Cu, and Zn. Mg(II) is much more stable than Mg(0) and this drives the reaction.

The mechanism of the reaction is not completely understood, and probably involves radical intermediates. But what is sure is that by the end of the reaction the magnesium has surrendered its lone pair of electrons and gained two $\sigma$ bonds. The true product is a complex between the Grignard reagent and, probably, two molecules of the ether solvent, as Mg(II) prefers a tetrahedral structure.

More on making Grignard reagents

The reaction takes place not in solution but on the surface of the metal, and how easy it is to make a Grignard reagent can depend on the state of the surface—how finely divided the metal is, for example. Magnesium is usually covered by a thin coating of magnesium oxide, and Grignard formation generally requires ‘initiation’ to allow the metal to come into direct contact with the alkyl halide. Initiation usually means adding a small amount of iodine or 1,2-diodoethane, or using ultrasound to dislodge the oxide layer. Once the Grignard starts to form, it catalyses further reactions of Mg(0), perhaps by this mechanism:

**How to make organolithium reagents**

Organolithium compounds may be made by a similar oxidative insertion reaction from lithium metal and alkyl halides. Each inserting reaction requires two atoms of lithium and generates one equivalent of lithium halide salt. As with Grignard formation, there is really very little limit on the types of organolithium that can be made this way.

You will notice secondary alkyllithiums, an aryllithium, and two vinyllithiums. The only other functional groups are alkenes and an ether. So far, that is quite like the formation of Grignard reagents. However, there are differences. Lithium goes from Li(0) to Li(I) during the
reaction and there is no halide attached to the Li. Instead a second Li atom has to be used to make the Li halide. Again, Li(I) is very much more stable than Li(0) so the reaction is irreversible. Although ether solvents are often used, there is less need for extra coordination and hydrocarbon solvents such as pentane or hexane are also good.

Commercially available organometallics

Some Grignard and organolithium reagents are commercially available. Most chemists (unless they were working on a very large scale) would not usually make the simpler organolithiums or Grignard reagents by these methods, but would buy them in bottles from chemical companies (who, of course, do use these methods). The table lists some of the most important commercially available organolithiums and Grignard reagents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organometallic</th>
<th>Solvent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methyllithium (MeLi)</td>
<td>Et₂O or DME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylmagnesium chloride, bromide, and iodide (MeMgX)</td>
<td>Et₂O, or THF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-butyllithium (n-BuLi or just BuLi)</td>
<td>in cyclohexane or hexanes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylmagnesium bromide (EtMgBr)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylmagnesium chloride (BuMgCl)</td>
<td>in Et₂O or THF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylmagnesium chloride and bromide (PhMgCl or PhMgBr)</td>
<td>in Et₂O or THF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylmagnesium chloride and bromide (PhMgCl or PhMgBr)</td>
<td>in Et₂O or THF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Organometallics as bases

Organometallics need to be kept absolutely free of moisture—even moisture in the air will destroy them. The reason is that they react very rapidly and highly exothermically with water to produce alkanes. Anything that can protonate them will do the same thing. The organometallic reagent is a strong base, and is protonated to form its conjugate acid—methane or benzene in these cases. The pKₐ of methane (Chapter 8) is somewhere around 50: it isn’t an acid at all and essentially nothing will remove a proton from methane.

The equilibria lie vastly to the right: methane and Li⁺ are much more stable than MeLi while benzene and Mg²⁺ are much more stable than PhMgBr. Some of the most important uses of organolithiums—n-butyllithium, in particular—are as bases and, because they are so strong, they will deprotonate almost anything. That makes them very useful as reagents for making other organolithiums.

Making organometallics by deprotonating alkynes

In Chapter 8 (p. 175) we talked about how hybridization affects acidity. Alkynes, with their C–H bonds formed from sp orbitals, are the most acidic of hydrocarbons, with pKₐ's of about 25.
They can be deprotonated by more basic organometallics such as butyllithium or ethylmagne- 
sium bromide. Alkynes are sufficiently acidic to be deprotonated even by nitrogen bases and 
you saw on p. 171 that a common way of deprotonating alkynes is to use NaNH₂ (sodium 
amide), obtained by reacting sodium with liquid ammonia. An example of each is shown here. 
Propyne and acetylene are gases, and can be bubbled through a solution of the base.

The metal derivatives of alkynes can be added to carbonyl electrophiles, as in the following 
examples. The first (we have reminded you of the mechanism for this) is the initial step of an 
important synthesis of the antibiotic erythronolide A, and the second is the penultimate step 
of a synthesis of the widespread natural product farnesol.

**Ethynyloestradiol**
The ovulation-inhibiting component of almost all oral contraceptive pills is a compound known as ethynyloestradiol, and this compound too is made by an alkynyllithium addition to the female sex hormone oestrone. A range of similar synthetic 
analogues of hormones containing an ethynyl unit are used in contraceptives and in treatments for disorders of the 
hormonal system.
**Triple bonds: stability and acidity**

You have now met all the more important compounds with triple bonds. They all have electrons in low-energy sp hybrid orbitals (shown in green on the diagrams below), a feature which gives them stability or even unreactivity. Remember, an sp orbital has 50% s character, so electrons in this orbital are on average closer to the nucleus, and therefore more stable, than electrons in an sp$^2$ or sp$^3$ orbital.

Nitrogen, N$_2$, has sp orbitals at both ends and is almost inert. It is neither basic nor nucleophilic and a major achievement of life is the ‘fixing’ (trapping in reductive chemical reactions) of nitrogen by bacteria such as those in the roots of leguminous plants (peas and beans). HCN has an sp orbital on nitrogen and a C–H σ bond at the other end. The nitrogen’s sp lone pair is not at all basic, but HCN is quite acidic with a pK$_a$ of 10 because the negative charge in the conjugate base (CN$^-$) is in an sp orbital. Nitriles have similar bonds and they are non-nucleophilic and non-basic. Finally, we have just met alkynes, which are among the most acidic of hydrocarbons, again because of the stability of an anion with its charge in an sp orbital.

![Diagram of nitrogen, HCN, nitrile, and alkyne structures with pK$_a$ values.](image)

**Halogen–metal exchange**

Deprotonation is not the only way to use one simple organometallic reagent to generate another more useful one. Organolithiums can also remove halogen atoms from alkyl and aryl halides in a reaction known as halogen–metal exchange.

![Diagram of bromine and lithium swap places in halogen–metal exchange.](image)

The bromine and the lithium simply swap places. As with many of these organometallic processes, the mechanism is not altogether clear, but can be represented as a nucleophilic attack on bromine by the butyllithium. But why does the reaction work? The product of our ‘mechanism’ is not PhLi and BuBr but a phenyl anion and a lithium cation. These could obviously combine to give PhLi and BuBr. But is this a reasonable interpretation and why does the reaction go that way and not the other? The key, again, is pK$_a$. We can think of the organolithiums as a complex between Li$^+$ and a carbanion.

![Diagram of organolithium complexes showing polarised σ-bonds.](image)

The lithium cation is the same in all cases: only the carbanion varies. So the stability of the complex depends on the stability of the carbanion ligand. Benzene, (pK$_a$ about 43) is more acidic than butane (pK$_a$ about 50) so the phenyl complex is more stable than the butyl complex and the reaction is a way to make PhLi from available BuLi. Vinyllithiums (the lithium must be bonded directly to the alkene) can also be made this way and a R$_2$N– substituent is acceptable. Bromides or iodides react faster than chlorides.

![Diagram of organolithium reactions with different substituents.](image)
Halogen–metal exchange tolls the knell of one appealing way to make carbon–carbon bonds. It may already have occurred to you that we might make a Grignard or organolithium reagent and combine it with another alkyl halide to make a new carbon–carbon σ bond.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
R^1\text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Et}_2\text{O}} & Mg & \xrightarrow{\text{R}^2\text{Br}} & R^1\text{MgBr} \\
\text{NOT successful}
\end{array}
\]

This reaction does not work because of transmetallation. The two alkyl bromides and their Grignard reagents will be in equilibrium with each other so that, even if the coupling were successful, three coupled products will be formed.

\[
R^1\text{MgBr} + R^2\text{Br} \rightleftharpoons R^1\text{Br} + R^2\text{MgBr}
\]

You will see later that transition metals are needed for this sort of reaction. The only successful reactions of this kind are couplings between metal derivatives of alkynes and alkyl halides. These do not exchange the metal as the alkynyl metal is much more stable than the alkyl metal.

A good example is the synthesis of a substituted alkyne starting from acetylene (ethyne) itself. One alkylation uses NaNH\textsubscript{2} as the base to make sodium acetylide and the other uses BuLi to make a lithium acetylide.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{H--H} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_2, \text{xylene, DMF}} & \text{H--Na} \\
\text{H--Bu} & \xrightarrow{\text{BuLi}} & \text{Li--Bu} & \xrightarrow{n\text{-C}_3\text{H}_{11}\text{Cl}} & \text{81% yield} \\
\text{81% yield}
\end{array}
\]

Transmetallation

Organolithiums can be converted to other types of organometallic reagents by transmetallation—simply treating with the salt of a less electropositive metal. The more electropositive Mg or Li goes into solution as an ionic salt, while the less electropositive metal such as Zn takes over the alkyl group.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
R\text{MgBr} & \xrightarrow{\text{ZnBr}_2} & Mg\text{Br}_2 + R\text{ZnR} \\
\text{Grignard} & \text{dialkylzinc} & \text{basic zinc hydroxide}
\end{array}
\]

But why bother? Well, the high reactivity—and in particular the basicity—of Grignard reagents and organolithiums sometimes causes unwanted side reactions. Their combination with very strong electrophiles like acid chlorides usually results in a violent uncontrolled reaction. If a much less reactive organozinc compound is used instead, the reaction is more under control. These organozinc compounds can be made from either Grignard reagents or organolithium compounds. E. Negishi, a pioneer of organozinc chemistry, got the Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 2010 with R. F. Heck and A. Suzuki for their work on organometallic compounds.

Using organometallics to make organic molecules

Now that you have met all of the most important ways of making organometallics (summarized here as a reminder), we shall move on to consider how to use them to make molecules:
what sorts of electrophiles do they react with and what sorts of products can we expect to get from their reactions? Having told you how you can make other organometallics, we shall really be concerned for the rest of this chapter only with Grignard reagents and organolithiums. In nearly all of the cases we shall talk about, the two classes of organometallics can be used interchangeably.

[Diagram of Ways of making organometallics]

**Making carboxylic acids from organometallics and carbon dioxide**

Carbon dioxide reacts with organolithiums and Grignard reagents to give carboxylate salts. Protonating the salt with acid gives a carboxylic acid with one more carbon atom than the starting organometallic. The reaction is usually done by adding solid CO2 to a solution of the organolithium in THF or ether, but it can also be done using a stream of dry CO2 gas.

[Diagram of Making carboxylic acids from organometallics and carbon dioxide]

The example below shows the three stages of the reaction: (1) forming the organometallic, (2) reaction with the electrophile (CO₂), and (3) the acidic work-up or quench, which protonates the product and destroys any unreacted organometallic. The three stages of
the reaction have to be monitored carefully to make sure that each is finished before the next is begun. In particular it is absolutely essential that there is no water present during either of the first two stages—water must be added only at the end of the reaction, after the organometallic has all been consumed by reaction with the electrophile. You may occasionally see schemes written out without the quenching step included, but it is nonetheless always needed.

carboxylic acids from organometallics

This next example shows that even very hindered chlorides can be used successfully. The significance of this will be clearer when you reach Chapter 15.

Making primary alcohols from organometallics and formaldehyde

You met formaldehyde, the simplest aldehyde, in Chapter 6, where we discussed the difficulties of using it in anhydrous reactions: it is either hydrated or a polymer paraformaldehyde, \((\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\), and in order to get pure, dry formaldehyde it is necessary to heat (‘crack’) the polymer to decompose it. But formaldehyde is a remarkably useful reagent for making primary alcohols, in other words alcohols that have just one carbon substituent on the hydroxy-bearing C atom. Just as carbon dioxide adds one carbon and makes an acid, formaldehyde adds one carbon and makes an alcohol.

In the next two examples, formaldehyde makes a primary alcohol from two deprotonated alkynes. The second reaction here (for which we have shown organolithium formation, reaction, and quench simply as a series of three consecutive reagents) forms one of the last steps of the synthesis of *Cecropia* juvenile hormone, whose structure you met right at the beginning of the chapter.
Something to bear in mind with all organometallic additions to carbonyl compounds is that the addition takes the oxidation level down one (oxidation levels were described in Chapter 2, p. 33). In other words, if you start with an aldehyde, you end up with an alcohol. More specifically,

- additions to CO₂ give carboxylic acids
- additions to formaldehyde (CH₂O) give primary alcohols
- additions to other aldehydes (RCHO) give secondary alcohols
- additions to ketones give tertiary alcohols

Secondary and tertiary alcohols: which organometallic, which aldehyde, which ketone?

Aldehydes and ketones react with organometallic reagents to form secondary and tertiary alcohols, respectively, and some examples are shown with the general schemes here.

Fenarimol

Fenarimol is a fungicide that works by inhibiting the fungus’s biosynthesis of important steroid molecules. It is made by reaction of a diarylketone with an organolithium derived by halogen–metal exchange.

To make any secondary alcohol, however, there may be a choice of two possible routes, depending on which part of the molecule you choose to make the organometallic and which part you choose to make the aldehyde. For example, the first example here shows the synthesis of a secondary alcohol from isopropylmagnesium chloride and acetaldehyde. But it is
equally possible to make this same secondary alcohol from isobutyraldehyde and methyl-lithium or a methylmagnesium halide.

Indeed, back in 1912, when this alcohol was first described in detail, the chemists who made it chose to start with acetaldehyde, while in 1983, when it was needed as a starting material for a synthesis, it was made from isobutyraldehyde. Which way is better? The 1983 chemists probably chose the isobutyraldehyde route because it gave a better yield. But, if you were making a secondary alcohol for the first time, you might just have to try both in the laboratory and see which one gave a better yield.

Or you might be more concerned about which uses the cheaper, or more readily available, starting materials—this was probably also a factor in the choice of methylmagnesium chloride and the unsaturated aldehyde in the second example. Both can be bought commercially, while the alternative route to this secondary alcohol would require a vinylolithium or vinylmagnesium bromide reagent that would have to be made from a vinyl halide, which is itself not commercially available, along with difficult-to-dry acetaldehyde.

There is another choice for secondary alcohols: the reduction of a ketone. The ketone reacts with sodium borohydride to give a secondary alcohol. An obvious case where this would be a good route is the synthesis of a cyclic alcohol. This bicyclic ketone gives the secondary alcohol in good yield, and in the second example a diketone has both its carbonyl groups reduced.

Flexibility in the synthesis of alcohols

As an illustration of the flexibility available in making secondary alcohols, one synthesis of bongkreic acid, a highly toxic compound that inhibits transport across certain membranes in the cell, requires both of these (very similar) alcohols. The chemists making the compound at Harvard University chose to make each alcohol from quite different starting materials: an unsaturated aldehyde and an alkyne-containing organolithium in the first instance, and an alkyne-containing aldehyde and vinylmagnesium bromide in the second.

With tertiary alcohols, there is even more choice. The example below is a step in a synthesis of the natural product, nerolidol. But the chemists in Paris who made this tertiary alcohol...
could in principle have chosen any of three routes. Note that we have dropped the aqueous quench step from these schemes to avoid cluttering them.

Only the reagents in orange are commercially available, but, as it happens, the green Grignard reagent can be made from an alkyl bromide, which is itself commercially available, making route 1 on the left the most reasonable.

Now, do not be dismayed! We are not expecting you to remember a chemical catalogue and to know which compounds you can buy and which you can’t. All we want you to appreciate at this stage is that there are usually two or three ways of making any given secondary or tertiary alcohol, and you should be able to suggest alternative combinations of aldehyde or ketone and Grignard or organolithium reagent that will give the same product. You are not expected to be able to assess the relative merits of the different possible routes to a compound. That is a topic we leave for a much later chapter on retrosynthetic analysis, Chapter 28.

**Oxidation of alcohols**

So far the metals we have used have had one oxidation state other than zero: Li(I), Mg(II), and Zn(II). If we want to oxidize organic compounds we need metals that have at least two higher oxidation states and that means transition metals. The most important by far is chromium, with Cr(III) and Cr(VI) as the useful oxidation states. Orange Cr(VI) compounds are good oxidizing agents: they remove hydrogen from organic compounds and are themselves reduced to green Cr(III). There are many Cr(VI) reagents used in organic chemistry, some of the more important ones are related to the polymeric oxide CrO₃. This is the anhydride of chromic acid and water breaks up the polymer to give a solution of chromic acid. Pyridine also breaks up the polymer to give a complex. This (Collins’ reagent) was used to oxidize organic compounds but it is rather unstable and pyridinium dichromate (PDC) and pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) are usually now preferred, especially as they are soluble in organic solvents such as CH₂Cl₂.

Oxidation by these reagents of the various primary and secondary alcohols we have been making in this chapter takes us to a higher oxidation level. Oxidation of primary alcohols gives aldehydes and then carboxylic acids, while oxidation of secondary alcohols gives ketones. Note that you can’t oxidize tertiary alcohols (without breaking a C–C bond).

The symbol [O] means an unspecified oxidizing agent.
You will notice that the oxidation steps involve the removal of two hydrogen atoms and/or the addition of one oxygen atom. In Chapter 6 you saw that reduction meant the addition of hydrogen (and can also mean the removal of oxygen). Hiding behind these observations is the more fundamental idea that reduction requires the addition of electrons while oxidation requires the removal of electrons. If we used basic reagents, we could remove the OH proton from a primary alcohol, but to get the aldehyde we should have to remove a C–H proton as well with a pair of electrons. We should have to expel a hydride ion \( \text{H}^- \) and this doesn't happen. So we need some reagent that can remove a hydrogen atom and a pair of electrons. That defines an oxidizing agent.

Here Cr(VI) can remove electrons to make Cr(III). It does so by a cyclic mechanism on a Cr(VI) ester. One hydrogen atom is removed (from the OH group) to make the ester and the second is removed (from carbon) in the cyclic mechanism. Notice how the arrows stop on the Cr atom and start again on the Cr=O bond, so two electrons are added to the chromium. This actually makes Cr(IV), an unstable oxidation state, but this gives green Cr(III) by further reactions.

Two examples of the use of PCC in these oxidations come from Vogel. Hexanol is oxidized to hexanal in dichloromethane solution and commercial carveol (an impure natural product) to pure carvone with PCC supported on alumina in hexane solution. In both cases the pure aldehyde or ketone was isolated by distillation.

But a word of warning: stronger oxidizing agents like calcium hypochlorite or sodium hypochlorite (bleach) may oxidize primary alcohols all the way to carboxylic acids, especially in water. This is the case with \( p \)-chloro benzyl alcohol and the solid acid is easily isolated by the type of acid/base extraction we met in the previous chapter.

You will find further discussion of oxidizing agents in later chapters of the book. We have introduced them here so that you can see how primary and secondary alcohols, made by addition of organometallic reagents, can be oxidized to aldehydes or ketones so that the process can be repeated. A secondary alcohol, which could be made in two ways, can be oxidized with the pyridine–CrO\(_3\) complex to the ketone and reacted with any Grignard or organolithium compound to give a range of tertiary alcohols.
**Looking forward**

In this chapter we have covered interconversions between ketones, aldehydes, and alcohols by forming C–C bonds using organometallics. We looked at oxidation and reduction as ways of complementing these methods—you should now be able to suggest at least one way of making any primary, secondary, or tertiary alcohol from simple precursors. In the next two chapters we will broaden our horizons beyond aldehydes and ketones to look at the reactivity of other carbonyl compounds—carboxylic acids and their derivatives such as esters and amides—and other nucleophiles. But the idea that we study organic reactions not only for their own sake but also so we can use them to make things should stay with you. We will come back to how to design ways of making molecules in Chapter 28. Many of these methods will employ the organometallics you have just met. We will then devote Chapter 40 to a broader range of more complex organometallic methods.

**Further reading**


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group

Connections

Building on
- Drawing mechanisms ch5
- Nucleophilic attack on carbonyl groups ch6 & ch9
- Acidity and pKa ch8
- Grignard and RLi addition to C=O groups ch9

Arriving at
- Nucleophilic attack followed by loss of leaving group
- What makes a good nucleophile
- What makes a good leaving group
- There is always a tetrahedral intermediate
- How to make acid derivatives
- Reactivity of acid derivatives
- How to make ketones from acids
- How to reduce acids to alcohols

Looking forward to
- Loss of carbonyl oxygen ch11
- Kinetics and mechanism ch12
- Reactions of enols ch20, ch25, & ch26
- Chemoselectivity ch23

You are already familiar with reactions of compounds containing carbonyl groups. Aldehydes and ketones react with nucleophiles at the carbon atom of their carbonyl group to give products containing hydroxyl groups. Because the carbonyl group is such a good electrophile, it reacts with a wide range of different nucleophiles: you have met reactions of aldehydes and ketones with (in Chapter 6) cyanide, water, and alcohols, and (in Chapter 9) organometallic reagents (organolithiums and organomagnesiums, or Grignard reagents).

In this chapter and Chapter 11 we shall look at some more reactions of the carbonyl group—and revisit some of the ones we touched on in Chapter 6. It is a tribute to the importance of this functional group for organic chemistry that we have devoted four chapters of this book to its reactions. Just like the reactions in Chapters 6 and 9, the reactions in Chapters 10 and 11 all involve attack of a nucleophile on a carbonyl group. The difference is that this step is followed by other mechanistic steps, which means that the overall reactions are not just additions but also substitutions.

The product of nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group is not always a stable compound

Addition of a Grignard reagent to an aldehyde or ketone gives a stable alkoxide, which can be protonated with acid to produce an alcohol (you met this reaction in Chapter 9). The same is not true for addition of an alcohol to a carbonyl group in the presence of base—in Chapter 6 we drew a reversible, equilibrium arrow for this transformation and said that the product, a hemiacetal, is formed to a significant extent only if it is cyclic.

The reason for this instability is that RO$^-$ is easily expelled from the molecule. We call groups that can be expelled from molecules, usually taking with them a negative charge, leaving groups. We’ll look at leaving groups in more detail later in this chapter and again in Chapter 15.
Leaving groups

Leaving groups are anions such as Cl\(^-\), RO\(^-\), and RCO_2\(^-\) that can be expelled from molecules taking their negative charge with them.

So, if the nucleophile is also a leaving group, there is a chance that it will be lost again and that the carbonyl group will reform—in other words, the reaction will be reversible. The energy released in forming the C=O bond (bond strength 720 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)) makes up for the loss of two C–O single bonds (about 350 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) each), one of the reasons for the instability of the hemiacetal product in this case.

The same thing can happen if the starting carbonyl compound contains a potential leaving group. The unstable negatively charged intermediate in the red box below is formed when a Grignard reagent is added to an ester.

Again, it collapses with loss of RO\(^-\) as a leaving group. This time, though, we have not gone back to starting materials: instead we have made a new compound (a ketone) by a substitution reaction—the OR group of the starting material has been substituted by the Me group of the product. In fact the ketone product can react with the Grignard reagent a second time to give a tertiary alcohol. Later in this chapter we’ll discuss why the reaction doesn’t stop at the ketone.

Carboxylic acid derivatives

Most of the starting materials for, and products of, these substitutions will be carboxylic acid derivatives, with the general formula RCOX. You met the most important members of this class in Chapter 2: here they are again as a reminder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carboxylic acid derivative</th>
<th>Carboxylic acid derivative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RCOCl</td>
<td>acid chloride or acyl chloride*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCOOR</td>
<td>ester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCO_2H</td>
<td>acid anhydride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCNH_2</td>
<td>amide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We shall use these two terms interchangeably.

Acid chlorides and acid anhydrides react with alcohols to make esters

Acetyl chloride will react with an alcohol in the presence of a base to give an acetate ester and we get the same product if we use acetic anhydride.
In each case, a substitution (of the black part of the molecule, $\text{Cl}^-$ or $\text{AcOO}^-$, by cyclohexanol) has taken place—but how? It is important that you learn not only the fact that acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides react with alcohols but also the mechanism of the reaction. In this chapter you will meet a lot of reactions, but relatively few mechanisms—once you understand one, you should find that the rest follow on quite logically.

The first step of the reaction is, as you might expect, addition of the nucleophilic alcohol to the electrophilic carbonyl group—we’ll take the acyl chloride first. The base is important because it removes the proton from the alcohol once it attacks the carbonyl group. A base commonly used for this is pyridine. If the electrophile had been an aldehyde or a ketone, we would have got an unstable hemiacetal, which would collapse back to starting materials by eliminating the alcohol. With an acyl chloride, the alkoxide intermediate we get is also unstable. It collapses again by an elimination reaction, this time losing chloride ion, to form the ester. Chloride is the leaving group here—it leaves with its negative charge.

With this reaction as a model, you should be able to work out the mechanism of ester formation from acetic anhydride and an alcohol. Try to write it down without looking at the acyl chloride mechanism above, and certainly not at the answer below. Here it is, with pyridine as the base. Again, addition of the nucleophile gives an unstable intermediate, which undergoes an elimination reaction, this time losing a carboxylate anion to give an ester.

We call the unstable intermediate formed in these reactions the tetrahedral intermediate because the trigonal ($sp^2$) carbon atom of the carbonyl group has become a tetrahedral ($sp^3$) carbon atom.

![Tetrahedral intermediates](image)

**Tetrahedral intermediates**
Substitutions at trigonal carbonyl groups go through a tetrahedral intermediate and then on to a trigonal product.
More details of this reaction

Acylation with acyl chlorides in the presence of pyridine has more subtleties than first meet the eye. If you are reading this chapter for the first time, you might skip this box, as it is not essential to the general flow of what we are saying. There are three more points to notice.

Pyridine is consumed during both of these reactions, since it ends up protonated. One whole equivalent of pyridine is therefore necessary and, in fact, the reactions are often carried out with pyridine as solvent.

The observant among you may also have noticed that the (weak—pyridine) base catalyst in this reaction works very slightly differently from the (strong—hydroxide) base catalyst in the hemiacetal-forming reaction on p. 197: pyridine removes the proton after the nucleophile has added; hydroxide removes the proton before the nucleophile has added. This is deliberate, and will be discussed further in Chapters 12 and 40. The basics of pyridine (pK\(_a\) for protonation 5.5) and hydroxide (pK\(_a\) of water 15.7) were discussed in Chapter 8.

Pyridine is, in fact, more nucleophilic than the alcohol, and it attacks the acyl chloride rapidly, forming a highly electrophilic (because of the positive charge) intermediate. It is then this intermediate that subsequently reacts with the alcohol to give the ester. Because pyridine is acting as a nucleophile to speed up the reaction, yet is unchanged by the reaction, it is called a nucleophilic catalyst.

Why are the tetrahedral intermediates unstable?

The alkoxide formed by addition of a Grignard reagent to an aldehyde or ketone is stable, lasting long enough to be protonated on work-up in acid to give an alcohol as product.

Tetrahedral intermediates are similarly formed by addition of a nucleophile, say ethanol in base, to the carbonyl group of acetyl chloride, but these tetrahedral intermediates are unstable. Why are they unstable? The answer is to do with leaving group ability. Once the nucleophile has added to the carbonyl compound, the stability of the product (or tetrahedral intermediate) depends on how good the groups attached to the new tetrahedral carbon atom are at leaving with the negative charge. In order for the tetrahedral intermediate to collapse (and therefore be just an intermediate and not the final product) one of the groups has to be able to leave and carry off the negative charge from the alkoxide anion formed in the addition.

The most stable anion will be the best leaving group. There were three choices for the leaving group: Cl\(^-\), EtO\(^-\), or Me\(^-\). We can make MeLi but not Me\(^-\) because it is very unstable so Me\(^-\) must be a very bad leaving group. EtO\(^-\) is not so bad—alkoxide salts are stable, but they are still strong, reactive bases. But Cl\(^-\) is the best leaving group: Cl\(^-\) ions are perfectly stable and quite unreactive, and happily carry off the negative charge from the oxygen atom.
You probably eat several grams of \( \text{Cl}^- \) every day but you would be unwise to eat \( \text{EtO}^- \) or \( \text{MeLi} \). So neither of these reactions occurs:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl}^- \text{OEt} & \quad \text{Me}^+ \quad \text{Cl}^- \text{OEt} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**How do we know that the tetrahedral intermediate exists?**

We don’t expect you to be satisfied with the bland statement that tetrahedral intermediates are formed in these reactions: of course, you wonder how we know that this is true. The first evidence for tetrahedral intermediates in the substitution reactions of carboxylic acid derivatives was provided by Bender in 1951. He made carboxylic acid derivatives \( \text{RCOX} \) that had been ‘labelled’ with an isotope of oxygen, \( ^{18}\text{O} \). This is a non-radioactive isotope that is detected by mass spectrometry. He then reacted these derivatives with water to make labelled carboxylic acids. By any reasonable mechanism, the products would have one \( ^{18}\text{O} \) atom from the labelled starting material. Because the proton on a carboxylic acid migrates rapidly from one oxygen to another, both oxygens are labelled equally.

He then reacted these derivatives with insufficient water for complete consumption of the starting material. At the end of the reaction, he found that the proportion of labelled molecules in the *remaining starting material* had decreased significantly: in other words, it was no longer completely labelled with \( ^{18}\text{O} \); some contained ‘normal’ \( ^{16}\text{O} \). The formation of the tetrahedral intermediate would be as before but rapid proton transfer would also mean that the two oxygen atoms would be the same. Now you may see the next step in the argument.

This result cannot be explained by direct substitution of \( \text{X} \) by \( \text{H}_2\text{O} \), but is consistent with the existence of an intermediate in which the unlabelled \( ^{16}\text{O} \) and labelled \( ^{18}\text{O} \) can ‘change places’. This intermediate is the *tetrahedral intermediate* for this reaction. Either isomer can lose \( \text{X} \) and in each case labelled carboxylic acid is formed.

But either tetrahedral intermediate could lose water instead. In one case (top line below) the original starting material is regenerated complete with label. But in the second case, labelled water is lost and *unlabelled starting material is formed*. This result would be difficult to explain without a tetrahedral intermediate with a lifetime long enough to allow for proton exchange. This ‘addition–elimination’ mechanism is now universally accepted.
pKa is a useful guide to leaving group ability

It’s useful to be able to compare leaving group ability quantitatively. This is impossible to do exactly, but a good guide is the pKₐ of the conjugate acid (Chapter 8). If X⁻ is the leaving group, the lower the pKₐ of HX, the better X⁻ is as a leaving group. If we go back to the example of ester formation from acyl chloride plus alcohol, there’s a choice of Me⁻, EtO⁻, and Cl⁻. HCl is a stronger acid than EtOH, which is a much stronger acid than methane. So Cl⁻ is the best leaving group and EtO⁻ the next best. These observations apply only to reactions at the carbonyl group.

Leaving group ability

The lower the pKₐ of HX, the better the leaving group of X⁻ in carbonyl substitution reactions.

The most important substituents in carbonyl reactions are alkyl or aryl groups (R), amino groups in amides (NH₂), alkoxy groups in esters (RO⁻), carboxylate groups (RCO₂⁻) in anhydrides, and chloride (Cl⁻) in acyl chlorides. The order of leaving group ability is then:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>carboxylic acid derivative</th>
<th>leaving group, X⁻</th>
<th>conjugate acid, HX</th>
<th>pKₐ of HX</th>
<th>leaving group?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acyl chloride</td>
<td>Cl⁻</td>
<td>HCl</td>
<td>&lt;0</td>
<td>excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anhydride</td>
<td>RCOO⁻</td>
<td>RCO₂H</td>
<td>about 5</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ester</td>
<td>RO⁻</td>
<td>ROH</td>
<td>about 15</td>
<td>poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amide</td>
<td>NH₂⁻</td>
<td>NH₃</td>
<td>about 25</td>
<td>very poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkyl or aryl derivative</td>
<td>R⁻</td>
<td>RH</td>
<td>&gt;40</td>
<td>not a leaving group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can use pKₐ to predict what happens if we react an acyl chloride with a carboxylate salt. We expect the carboxylate salt (here, sodium formate or sodium methanoate, HCO₂Na) to act as the nucleophile to form a tetrahedral intermediate, which could collapse in any one of three ways. We can straightaway rule out loss of Me⁻ and we might guess that Cl⁻ is a better leaving group than HCO₂⁻ as HCl is a much stronger acid than a carboxylic acid, and we’d be right. Sodium formate reacts with acetyl chloride to give a mixed anhydride.

Amines react with acyl chlorides to give amides

Using the principles we’ve outlined above, you should be able to see how these compounds can be interconverted by substitution reactions with appropriate nucleophiles. We’ve seen that acid chlorides react with carboxylic acids to give acid anhydrides, and with alcohols to give esters. They also react with amines (such as ammonia) to give amides.
The mechanism is very similar to the mechanism of ester formation. Notice the second molecule of ammonia, which removes a proton, and the loss of chloride ion—the leaving group—to form the amide. Ammonium chloride is formed as a by-product in the reaction.

Here is another example, using a secondary amine, dimethylamine. Try writing down the mechanism now without looking at the one above. Again, two equivalents of dimethylamine are necessary, although the chemists who published this reaction added three for good measure.

Schotten–Baumann synthesis of an amide
As these mechanisms show, the formation of amides from acid chlorides and amines is accompanied by production of one equivalent of HCl, which needs to be neutralized by a second equivalent of amine. An alternative method for making amides is to carry out the reaction in the presence of another base, such as NaOH, which then does the job of neutralizing the HCl. The trouble is, OH\(^-\) also attacks acyl chlorides to give carboxylic acids. Schotten and Baumann, in the late nineteenth century, published a way round this problem by carrying out these reactions in two-phase systems of immiscible water and dichloromethane. The organic amine (not necessarily ammonia) and the acyl chloride remain in the (lower) dichloromethane layer, while the base (NaOH) remains in the (upper) aqueous layer. Dichloromethane and chloroform are two common organic solvents that are heavier (more dense) than water. The acyl chloride reacts only with the amine, but the HCl produced can dissolve in, and be neutralized by, the aqueous solution of NaOH.

Using base strength to predict the outcome of substitution reactions of carboxylic acid derivatives
You saw that acid anhydrides react with alcohols to give esters: they will also react with amines to give amides. But would you expect esters to react with amines to give amides, or amides to react with alcohols to give esters? Both appear reasonable.
In fact only the top reaction works: amides can be formed from esters but esters cannot be formed from amides. The key question is: which group will leave from the common tetrahedral intermediate? The answer is MeO\(^-\) and not NH\(_2\)^-. You should have worked this out from the stability of the anions. Alkoxides are reasonably strong bases (pK\(_a\) of ROH about 15) so they are not good leaving groups. But NH\(_2\)^- is a very unstable anion (pK\(_a\) of NH\(_3\) about 25) and is a very bad leaving group.

So MeO\(^-\) leaves and the amide is formed. The base used to deprotonate the first formed intermediate may be either the MeO\(^-\) produced in the reaction or, to start with, another molecule of NH\(_3\).

Factors other than leaving group ability can be important

In fact, the tetrahedral intermediate would simply never form from an amide and an alcohol; the amide is too bad an electrophile and the alcohol not a good enough nucleophile. We’ve looked at leaving group ability: next we’ll consider the strength of the nucleophile Y and then the strength of the electrophile RCOX.

**Conditions for reaction**

If this reaction is to go:

1. X\(^-\) must be a better leaving group than Y\(^-\) (otherwise the reverse reaction would take place).
2. Y\(^-\) must be a strong enough nucleophile to attack RCOX.
3. RCOX must be a good enough electrophile to react with Y\(^-\).
Strength of nucleophile and leaving group ability are related and $pK_a$ is a guide to both

We have seen how $pK_a$ gives us a guide to leaving group ability: it is also a good guide to how strong a nucleophile will be. These two properties are the reverse of each other: good nucleophiles are bad leaving groups. A stable anion is a good leaving group but a poor nucleophile. Anions of weak acids (HA has high $pK_a$) are bad leaving groups but good nucleophiles towards the carbonyl group.

● Guide to nucleophilicity

*In general*, the higher the $pK_a$ of AH the better $A^-$ is as a nucleophile.

But just a moment—we’ve overlooked an important point. We have sometimes used anions as nucleophiles (for example when we made acid anhydrides from acid chlorides plus carboxylate salts, we used an anionic nucleophile $RCO_2^-$) but on other occasions we have used neutral nucleophiles (for example when we made amides from acid chlorides plus amines, we used a neutral nucleophile $NH_3$). Anions are better nucleophiles for carbonyl groups than are neutral compounds so we can choose our nucleophilic reagent accordingly.

For proper comparisons, we should use the $pK_a$ of $NH_4^+$ (about 10) if we are using neutral ammonia, but the $pK_a$ of $RCO_2H$ (about 5) if we’re using the carboxylate anion. Ammonia is a good nucleophile and we don’t usually need its anion but carboxylic acids are very weak nucleophiles and we often use their anions. You will see later in this chapter that we can alter this with acid catalysts. So this reaction works badly in either direction. We don’t make or hydrolyse esters this way.

![Chemical structures showing nucleophilicity and leaving group ability](Image)

While amines react with acetic anhydride quite rapidly at room temperature (reaction complete in a few hours), alcohols react extremely slowly in the absence of a base. On the other hand, an alkoxide anion reacts with acetic anhydride extremely rapidly—the reactions are often complete within seconds at 0 °C. We don’t have to deprotonate an alcohol completely to increase its reactivity: just a catalytic quantity of a weak base can do this job. All the $pK_a$s you need are in Chapter 8.

![Chemical structures showing nucleophilicity and leaving group ability](Image)

Not all carboxylic acid derivatives are equally reactive

We can list the common carboxylic acid derivatives in a ‘hierarchy’ of reactivity, with the most reactive at the top and the least reactive at the bottom. The nucleophile is the same in each case (water), as is the product, the carboxylic acid, but the electrophiles vary from very reactive to unreactive. The conditions needed for successful reaction show just how large is the variation on reactivity. Acid chlorides react violently with water. Amides need refluxing with 10% NaOH or concentrated HCl in a sealed tube at 100 °C overnight. We’ve seen that this hierarchy is partly due to how good the leaving group is (the ones at the top are best). But it also depends on the reactivity of the acid derivatives. Why is there such a large difference?
Delocalization and the electrophilicity of carbonyl compounds

Amides are the least reactive towards nucleophiles because they exhibit the greatest degree of delocalization. You met this concept in Chapter 7 and we shall return to it many times more. In an amide, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom can be stabilized by overlap with the \( \pi^* \) orbital of the carbonyl group—this overlap is best when the lone pair occupies a p orbital (in an amine, it would occupy an sp\(^3\) orbital).

The molecular orbital diagram shows how this interaction both lowers the energy of the bonding orbital (the delocalized nitrogen lone pair), making it neither basic nor nucleophilic, and raises the energy of the \( \pi^* \) orbital, making it less ready to react with nucleophiles. Esters are similar, but because the oxygen lone pairs are lower in energy, the effect is less pronounced. The degree of delocalization depends on the electron-donating power of the substituent and increases along the series of compounds below from almost no delocalization from Cl to complete delocalization in the carboxylate anion, where the negative charge is equally shared between the two oxygen atoms.

The greater the degree of delocalization, the weaker the C=O bond becomes. This is most clearly evident in the stretching frequency of the carbonyl group in the IR spectra of...
carboxylic acid derivatives—remember that the stretching frequency depends on the force constant of the bond, itself a measure of the bond’s strength. The carboxylate anion is included because it represents the limit of the series, with complete delocalization of the negative charge over the two oxygen atoms. There are two frequencies for the anhydride and the carboxylate anion because of symmetric and antisymmetric stretching of identical bonds.

Amides react as electrophiles only with powerful nucleophiles such as HO\textsuperscript{—}. Acid chlorides, on the other hand, react with even quite weak nucleophiles: neutral ROH, for example. They are more reactive because the electron-withdrawing effect of the chlorine atom increases the electrophilicity of the carbonyl carbon atom.

**Bond strengths and reactivity**

You may think that a weaker C=O bond should be more reactive. This is not so because the partial positive charge on carbon is also lessened by delocalization and because the molecule as a whole is stabilized by the delocalization. Bond strength is not always a good guide to reactivity!

For example, in acetic acid the bond strengths are surprising. The strongest bond is the O–H bond and the weakest is the C–C bond. Yet very few reactions of acetic acid involve breaking the C–C bond, and its characteristic reactivity, as an acid, involves breaking O–H; the strongest bond of them all!

The reason is that polarization of bonds and solvation of ions play an enormously important role in determining the reactivity of molecules. In Chapter 37 you will see that radicals are relatively unaffected by solvation and that their reactions follow bond strengths much more closely.

Infrared spectroscopy was introduced in Chapter 3.

**Carboxylic acids do not undergo substitution reactions under basic conditions**

Substitution reactions of RCO\textsubscript{2}H require a leaving group OH\textsuperscript{—}. The pK\textsubscript{a} of water is about 15, so acids should be about as electrophilic as esters. Esters react well with ammonia to give amides. However, if we try to react carboxylic acids with amines to give amides no substitution occurs: an ammonium salt is formed because the amines themselves are basic and remove the acidic proton from the acid.

Once the carboxylic acid is deprotonated, substitutions are prevented because (almost) no nucleophile will attack the carboxylate anion. Under neutral conditions, alcohols are just not reactive enough to add to the carboxylic acid but, with acid catalysis, esters can be formed from alcohols and carboxylic acids.

**Acid catalysts increase the reactivity of a carbonyl group**

We saw in Chapter 6 that the lone pairs of a carbonyl group may be protonated by acid. Only strong acids are powerful enough to protonate carbonyl groups: the pK\textsubscript{a} of protonated acetone is –7 so, for example, even 1M HCl (pH 0) would protonate only 1 in 10\textsuperscript{7} molecules of acetone. However, even proportions as low as this are sufficient to increase the rate of substitution reactions at carbonyl groups enormously because those carbonyl groups that are protonated become extremely powerful electrophiles.
the protonated carbonyl group
is a powerful electrophile

\[
\text{Nu} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Nu} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Nu} \quad \text{H}
\]

It is for this reason that alcohols will react with carboxylic acids under acid catalysis. The acid (usually HCl or H₂SO₄) reversibly protonates a small percentage of the carboxylic acid molecules, and the protonated carboxylic acids are extremely susceptible to attack by even a weak nucleophile such as an alcohol. This is the first half of the reaction:

acid-catalysed ester formation: forming the tetrahedral intermediate

\[
\text{Acid catalysts can make bad leaving groups into good ones}
\]

This tetrahedral intermediate is unstable because the energy to be gained by re-forming a C=O bond is greater than that used in breaking two C–O bonds. As it stands, none of the leaving groups (R−, HO−, or RO−) is very good. However, help is again at hand in the acid catalyst. It can protonate any of the oxygen atoms reversibly. Again, only a very small proportion of molecules are protonated at any one time but, once the oxygen atom of, say, one of the OH groups is protonated, it becomes a much better leaving group (water instead of HO−). Loss of ROH from the tetrahedral intermediate is also possible: this leads back to starting materials—hence the equilibrium arrow in the scheme above. Loss of H₂O is more fruitful, and takes the reaction forwards to the ester product.

acid-catalysed ester formation: decomposition of the tetrahedral intermediate

\[
\text{Ester formation is reversible: how to control an equilibrium}
\]

Loss of water from the tetrahedral intermediate is reversible too: just as ROH will attack a protonated carboxylic acid, H₂O will attack a protonated ester. In fact, every step in the sequence from carboxylic acid to ester is an equilibrium, and the overall equilibrium constant is about 1. In order for this reaction to be useful, it is therefore necessary to ensure that the equilibrium is pushed towards the ester side by using an excess of alcohol or carboxylic acid (usually the reactions are done in a solution of the alcohol or the carboxylic acid). In this reaction, for example, no water is added and an excess of alcohol is used. Using less than three equivalents of ethanol gave lower yields of ester.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ROH} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad \text{3 equiv. EtOH} \quad \text{dry HCl gas} \\
& \xrightarrow{68-72\% \text{ yield}} \\
\text{RO} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Et}
\end{align*}
\]
Alternatively, the reaction can be done in the presence of a dehydrating agent (concentrated H₂SO₄, for example, or silica gel) or the water can be distilled out of the mixture as it forms.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{lactic acid} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{cat. H₂SO₄} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{benzene (solvent)} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{remove water by distillation} & \quad \text{89–91% yield} \\
\text{AcOH} & \quad \text{cat. H₂SO₄} \\
\text{silica gel (drying agent)} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{57% yield} & \quad \text{O} \\
\end{align*}
\]

● Making esters from alcohols
You have now met three ways of making esters from alcohols:
- with acyl chlorides
- with acid anhydrides
- with carboxylic acids.

Try to appreciate that different methods will be appropriate at different times. If you want to make a few milligrams of a complex ester, you are much more likely to work with a reactive acyl chloride or anhydride, using pyridine as a weakly basic catalyst, than to try to distil out a minute quantity of water from a reaction mixture containing a strong acid that may destroy the starting material. On the other hand, if you are a chemist making simple esters (such as those in Chapter 2, p. 31) for the flavouring industry on a scale of many tons, you might prefer the cheaper option of carboxylic acid and a strong acid (e.g. H₂SO₄) in alcohol solution.

Acid-catalysed ester hydrolysis and transesterification

By starting with an ester, an excess of water, and an acid catalyst we can persuade the reverse reaction to occur: formation of the carboxylic acid plus alcohol with consumption of water. Such a reaction is known as a hydrolysis reaction because water is used to break up the ester into carboxylic acid plus alcohol (lysis = breaking).

Acid-catalysed ester formation and hydrolysis are the exact reverse of one another: the only way we can control the reaction is by altering concentrations of reagents to drive the reaction the way we want it to go. The same principles can be used to convert an ester of one alcohol into an ester of another, a process known as transesterification. It is possible, for example, to force this equilibrium to the right by distilling methanol (which has a lower boiling point than the other components of the reaction) out of the mixture.

The mechanism for this transesterification simply consists of adding one alcohol (here BuOH) and eliminating the other (here MeOH), both processes being acid-catalysed. Notice how easy it is now to confirm that the reaction is catalytic in H⁺.
**Polyester fibre manufacture**

A transesterification reaction is used to make the polyester fibres that are used for textile production. Terylene, or Dacron, for example, is a polyester of the dicarboxylic acid terephthalic acid and the diol ethylene glycol.

![Interactive structure of polyester fibres]

Terylene is actually made by ester exchange: dimethyl terephthalate is heated with ethylene glycol and an acid catalyst, distilling off the methanol as it is formed.

**Base-catalysed hydrolysis of esters is irreversible**

You can’t make esters from carboxylic acids and alcohols under basic conditions because the base deprotonates the carboxylic acid (see p. 207). However, you can reverse that reaction and hydrolyse an ester to a carboxylic acid (more accurately, a carboxylate salt) and an alcohol.

![Interactive structure of ester hydrolysis]

This time the ester is, of course, not protonated first as it would be in acid, but the unprotonated ester is a good enough electrophile because $\text{OH}^-$, and not water, is the nucleophile. The tetrahedral intermediate can collapse either way, giving back ester or going forward to acid plus alcohol.
The backward reaction is impossible because the basic conditions straightaway deprotonate the acid to make a carboxylate salt (which, incidentally, consumes the base, making at least one equivalent of base necessary in the reaction). Carboxylate salts do not usually react with nucleophiles, even those a good deal stronger than alcohols.

**How do we know this is the mechanism?**

Ester hydrolysis is such an important reaction that chemists have spent a lot of time and effort finding out exactly how it works. Many of the experiments that tell us about the mechanism involve oxygen-18 labelling. The starting material is an ester enriched in the heavy oxygen isotope $^{18}$O. By knowing where the heavy oxygen atoms start off, and following (by mass spectrometry—Chapter 3) where they end up, the mechanism can be established.

1. An $^{18}$O label in the ‘ether’ oxygen of the ester ends up in the alcohol product.

   ![Diagram of ester hydrolysis](image)

2. Hydrolysis with $^{18}$OH$_2$ gives $^{18}$O-labelled carboxylic acid, but no $^{18}$O-labelled alcohol.

   ![Diagram of hydrolysis](image)

These experiments tell us that a displacement (substitution) has occurred at the carbonyl carbon atom, and rule out the alternative displacement at saturated carbon.

One further labelling experiment showed that a tetrahedral intermediate must be formed: an ester labelled with $^{18}$O in its carbonyl oxygen atom passes some of its $^{18}$O label to the water. We discussed this on p. 201. There is more on the mechanism of ester hydrolysis in Chapter 12.

The saturated fatty acid tetradecanoic acid (also known as myristic acid) is manufactured commercially from coconut oil by hydrolysis in base. You may be surprised to learn that coconut oil contains more saturated fat than butter, lard, or beef dripping: much of it is the trimyristate ester of glycerol. Hydrolysis with aqueous sodium hydroxide, followed by reprotonation of the sodium carboxylate salt with acid, gives myristic acid. Notice how much longer it takes to hydrolyse this branched ester than it did to hydrolyse a methyl ester (p. 210).
**Saponification**

The alkaline hydrolysis of esters to give carboxylate salts is known as saponification because it is the process used to make soap. Traditionally, beef tallow (the tristearate ester of glycerol—stearic acid is octadecanoic acid, C\(_{17}\)H\(_{35}\)CO\(_2\)H) was hydrolysed with sodium hydroxide to give sodium stearate, C\(_{17}\)H\(_{35}\)CO\(_2\)Na, the principal component of soap. Finer soaps are made from palm oil and contain a higher proportion of sodium palmitate, C\(_{15}\)H\(_{31}\)CO\(_2\)Na. Hydrolysis with KOH gives potassium carboxylates, which are used in liquid soaps. Soaps like these owe their detergent properties to the combination of polar (carboxylate group) and non-polar (long alkyl chain) properties.

**Amides can be hydrolysed under acidic or basic conditions too**

In order to hydrolyse amides, the least reactive of the carboxylic acid derivatives, we have a choice: we can persuade the amine leaving group to leave by protonating it, or we can use brute force and forcibly eject it with concentrated hydroxide solution.

Amides are very unreactive as electrophiles, but they are also rather more basic than most carboxylic acid derivatives: a typical protonated amide has a \(pK_a\) of \(-1\); most other carbonyl compounds are much less basic. You might therefore imagine that the protonation of an amide would take place on nitrogen—after all, amine nitrogen atoms are readily protonated. And, indeed, the reason for the basicity of amides is the nitrogen atom’s delocalized lone pair, making the carbonyl group unusually electron rich. But amides are always protonated on the oxygen atom of the carbonyl group, never the nitrogen, because protonation at nitrogen would disrupt the delocalized system that makes amides so stable. Protonation at oxygen gives a delocalized cation (Chapter 8).

Protonation of the carbonyl group by acid makes the carbonyl group electrophilic enough for attack by water, giving a neutral tetrahedral intermediate. The amine nitrogen atom in the tetrahedral intermediate is much more basic than the oxygen atoms, so now it gets protonated, and the RNH\(_2\) group becomes really quite a good leaving group. Once it has left, it will immediately be protonated again, and therefore become completely non-nucleophilic. The conditions are very vigorous—70% sulfuric acid for 3 hours at 100 °C.
Hydrolysis of amides in base requires similarly vigorous conditions. Hot solutions of hydroxide are sufficiently powerful nucleophiles to attack an amide carbonyl group, although even when the tetrahedral intermediate has formed NH$_2^-$ (pK$_a$ of the ammonium ion 35) has only a slight chance of leaving when HO$^-$ (pK$_a$ of water 15) is an alternative. Nonetheless, at high temperatures amides are slowly hydrolysed by concentrated base since one product is the carboxylate salt and this does not react with nucleophiles. The ‘base’ for the irreversible step might be hydroxide or NH$_2^-$.

Secondary and tertiary amides hydrolyse much more slowly under these conditions. With all these amides a second mechanism kicks in if the hydroxide concentration is large enough. More hydroxide deprotonates the tetrahedral anion to give a dianion that must lose NH$_2^-$ as the only alternative is O$^{2-}$. This leaving group deprotonates water so the second molecule of hydroxide ion is simply a catalyst.

Secondary and tertiary amides hydrolyse much more slowly under these conditions. With all these amides a second mechanism kicks in if the hydroxide concentration is large enough. More hydroxide deprotonates the tetrahedral anion to give a dianion that must lose NH$_2^-$ as the only alternative is O$^{2-}$. This leaving group deprotonates water so the second molecule of hydroxide ion is simply a catalyst.

A similar mechanism is successful with only a little water and plenty of strong base. Then even tertiary amides can be hydrolysed at room temperature. Potassium tert-butoxide is a strong enough base (pK$_a$ of t-BuOH about 18) to deprotonate the tetrahedral intermediate.

**Hydrolysing nitriles: how to make the almond extract, mandelic acid**

Closely related to the amides are nitriles. You can view them as primary amides that have lost one molecule of water and, indeed, they can be made by dehydrating primary amides.

They can be hydrolysed just like amides too. Addition of water to the protonated nitrile gives a primary amide, and hydrolysis of this amide gives carboxylic acid plus ammonia.
You met a way of making nitriles—from HCN (or NaCN + HCl) plus aldehydes—in Chapter 6: the hydroxynitrile products are known as cyanohydrins. With this in mind, you should be able to suggest a way of making mandelic acid, an extract of almonds, from benzaldehyde.

This is how some chemists did it.

Acid chlorides can be made from carboxylic acids using SOCl₂ or PCl₅

We have looked at a whole series of interconversions between carboxylic acid derivatives and, after this next section, we shall summarize what you need to understand. We said that it is always easy to move down the series of acid derivatives we listed early in the chapter, and so far that is all we have done. But some reactions of carboxylic acids also enable us to move upwards in the series. What we need is a reagent that changes the bad leaving group HO⁻ into a good leaving group. Strong acid does this by protonating the OH⁻, allowing it to leave as H₂O. In this section we look at two more reagents, SOCl₂ and PCl₅, which convert the OH group of a carboxylic acid and also turn it into a good leaving group. Thionyl chloride, SOCl₂, reacts with carboxylic acids to make acyl chlorides.

This volatile liquid with a choking smell is electrophilic at the sulfur atom (as you might expect with two chlorine atoms and an oxygen atom attached) and is attacked by carboxylic acids to give an unstable, and highly electrophilic, intermediate.

Reprotonation of the unstable intermediate (by the HCl just produced, i.e. reversal of the last step above) gives an electrophile powerful enough to react even with the weak nucleophile Cl⁻ (HCl is a strong acid, so Cl⁻ is a poor nucleophile). The tetrahedral intermediate collapses to the acyl chloride, sulfur dioxide, and hydrogen chloride. This step is irreversible because SO₂ and HCl are gases that are lost from the reaction mixture.
Although HCl is involved in this reaction, it cannot be used as the sole reagent for making acid chlorides. It is necessary to have a sulfur or phosphorus compound to remove the oxygen. An alternative reagent for converting RCO₂H into RCOCl is phosphorus pentachloride, PCl₅. The mechanism is similar—try writing it out before looking at the scheme below.

The mechanism is closely related to the previous one, except that the formation of a very stable P=O bond is the vital factor rather than the loss of two gaseous reagents.

These conversions of acids into acid chlorides complete all the methods we need to convert acids into any acid derivatives. You can convert acids directly to esters and now to acid chlorides, the most reactive of acid derivatives, and can make any other derivative from them. The chart below adds reaction conditions, relevant pKₐs, and infrared stretching frequencies to the reactivity order we met earlier.

All these acid derivatives can, of course, be hydrolysed to the acid itself with water alone or with various levels of acid or base catalysis depending on the reactivity of the derivative.
To climb the reactivity order therefore, the simplest method is to hydrolyse to the acid and convert the acid into the acid chloride. You are now at the top of the reactivity order and can go down to whatever level you require.

**Making other compounds by substitution reactions of acid derivatives**

We’ve talked at length about the interconversions of acid derivatives, explaining the mechanism of attack of nucleophiles such as ROH, H₂O, and NH₃ on acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, acids, and amines, with or without acid or base present. We shall now go on to talk about substitution reactions of acid derivatives that take us out of this closed company of compounds and allow us to make compounds containing functional groups at other oxidation levels, such as ketones and alcohols.

**Making ketones from esters: the problem**

Substitution of the OR group of an ester by an R group would give us a ketone. You might therefore think that reaction of an ester with an organolithium or Grignard reagent would be a good way of making ketones. However, if we try the reaction, something else happens, as you saw at the start of this chapter.

Two molecules of Grignard have been incorporated and we get an alcohol! If we look at the mechanism we can understand why this should be so. First, as you would expect, the nucleophilic Grignard reagent attacks the carbonyl group to give a tetrahedral intermediate. The only reasonable leaving group is \( \text{RO}^- \), so it leaves to give us the ketone we set out to make.

Now, the next molecule of Grignard reagent has a choice. It can react with either the ester starting material or the newly formed ketone. Ketones are more electrophilic than esters so the Grignard reagent prefers to react with the ketone in the manner you saw in Chapter 9. A stable alkoxide anion is formed, which gives the tertiary alcohol on acid work-up.

**Making alcohols instead of ketones**

In other words, the problem here lies in the fact that the ketone product is more reactive than the ester starting material. We shall meet more examples of this general problem later (in Chapter 23, for example): in the next section we shall look at ways of overcoming it. Meanwhile, why not see it as a useful reaction? This compound, for example, was needed by some chemists in the course of research into explosives.

It is a tertiary alcohol with the hydroxyl group flanked by two identical R (butyl) groups. The chemists who wanted to make the compound knew that an ester would react twice with the same organolithium reagent, so they made it from this unsaturated ester (known as methyl methacrylate) and butyllithium.
Tertiary alcohol synthesis

Tertiary alcohols with two identical \( R^2 \) groups can be made from ester \( R^1\text{CO}_2R \) plus two equivalents of organolithium \( R^2\text{Li} \) or Grignard reagent \( R^2\text{MgBr} \).

This reaction works in reduction too if we use lithium aluminium hydride, \( \text{LiAlH}_4 \). This is a powerful reducing agent that readily attacks the carbonyl group of an ester. Again, collapse of the tetrahedral intermediate gives a compound, this time an aldehyde, which is more reactive than the ester starting material, so a second reaction takes place and the ester is converted (reduced) into an alcohol. Sodium borohydride, often used for the reduction of ketones, does not usually reduce esters.

A bit of shorthand

Before we go any further, we should introduce to you a little bit of chemical shorthand that makes writing many mechanisms easier. As you now appreciate, all substitution reactions at a carbonyl group go via a tetrahedral intermediate.

A convenient way to save writing a step is to show the formation and collapse of the tetrahedral intermediate in the same structure, by using a double-headed arrow, as in the diagrams below. Now, this is a useful shorthand, but it is not a substitute for understanding the true mechanism. Certainly, you must never ever write the reaction as a single step not involving the carbonyl group.

Here’s the ‘shorthand’ at work in the \( \text{LiAlH}_4 \) reduction you have just met.
Making ketones from esters: the solution

We diagnosed the problem with our intended reaction as one of reactivity: the product ketone is more reactive than the starting ester. To get round this problem we need to do one of two things:

1. make the starting material more reactive or
2. make the product less reactive.

Making the starting materials more reactive

A more reactive starting material would be an acyl chloride: how about reacting one of these with a Grignard reagent? This approach can work—for example this reaction is successful.

\[
\text{MeO} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OMe} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{MgBr}} \quad \text{OMe} \quad \text{O} \quad 81\% \text{ yield}
\]

Often, better results are obtained by transmetallating (see Chapter 9) the Grignard reagent, or the organolithium, with copper salts. Organocopper reagents are too unreactive to add to the product ketones, but they react well with the acyl chloride. Consider this reaction, for example: the product was needed for a synthesis of the antibiotic septamycin.

\[
\text{MeO} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{Me}_2\text{CuLi}} \quad \text{MeO} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \quad 97\% \text{ yield}
\]

Making the products less reactive

This alternative solution is often better. With the right starting material, the tetrahedral intermediate can become stable enough not to collapse to a ketone during the reaction; it therefore remains completely unreactive towards nucleophiles. The ketone is formed only when the reaction is finally quenched with acid but the nucleophile is also destroyed by the acid and none is left for further addition.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}_1 \quad \text{X} & \quad \xrightarrow{\text{R}_2\text{Li}} \quad \text{R}_1 \quad \text{O} \quad \text{R}_2 \\
\text{acid quench collapses the intermediate and simultaneously destroys unreacted organolithium}
\end{align*}
\]

We can illustrate this concept with a reaction of an unlikely looking electrophile, a lithium carboxylate. Towards the beginning of the chapter we said that carboxylic acids were bad electrophiles and that carboxylate salts were even worse. Well, that is true, but with a sufficiently powerful nucleophile (an organolithium) it is just possible to get addition to the carbonyl group of a lithium carboxylate.

We could say that the affinity of lithium for oxygen means that the Li–O bond has considerable covalent character, making the CO_2Li less of a true anion. And the intermediate after addition of MeLi is probably best represented as a covalent compound too. Anyway, the

Notice how this reaction illustrates the difference in reactivity between an acyl chloride functional group and an ester functional group.
product of this addition is a dianion of the sort that we met during one of the mechanisms of base-catalysed amide hydrolysis. But in this case there is no possible leaving group, so there the dianion sits. Only at the end of the reaction, when water is added, are the oxygen atoms protonated to give a hydrated ketone, which collapses immediately (remember Chapter 6) to give the ketone that we wanted. The water quench also destroys any remaining organolithium, so the ketone is safe from further attack.

This method has been used to make some ketones that are important starting materials for making cyclic natural products known as macrolides.

Another good set of starting materials that lead to non-collapsible tetrahedral intermediates is known as the Weinreb amides, after their inventor, S. M. Weinreb. Addition of organolithium or organomagnesium reagents to N-methoxy-N-methyl amides gives the tetrahedral intermediate shown, stabilized by chelation of the magnesium atom by the two oxygen atoms. Chelation means the coordination of more than one electron-donating atom in a molecule to a single metal atom.

This intermediate collapses to give a ketone only when acid is added at the end of the reaction.

The mechanism looks complicated but the reaction is easy to do:

This strategy even works for making aldehydes, if the starting material is dimethylformamide (DMF, Me₂NCHO). This is an extremely useful way of adding electrophilic CHO groups to organometallic nucleophiles. Once again, the tetrahedral intermediate is stable until acid is added at the end of the reaction and the protonated tetrahedral intermediate collapses.
A final alternative is to use a nitrile instead of an ester. The intermediate is the anion of an imine (see Chapter 12 for more about imines), which is not electrophilic at all—in fact, it’s quite nucleophilic, but there are no electrophiles for it to react with until the reaction is quenched with acid. It gets protonated and hydrolys (we’ll discuss this in the next chapter) to the ketone.

To summarize…

To finish, we should just remind you of what to think about when you consider a nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group.

And to conclude…

In this chapter you have been introduced to some important reactions—you can consider them to be a series of facts if you wish, but it is better to see them as the logical outcome of a few simple mechanistic steps. Relate what you have seen to what you gathered from Chapters 6 and 9, when we first started looking at carbonyl groups. All we did in this chapter was to build some subsequent transformations on to the simplest organic reaction, addition to a carbonyl group. You should have noticed that the reactions of all acid derivatives are related and are very easily explained by writing out proper mechanisms, taking into account the presence of acid or base. In the next two chapters we shall see more of these acid- and base-catalysed reactions of carbonyl groups. Try to view them as closely related to the ones in this chapter—the same principles apply to their mechanisms.

Further reading

Section 2, ‘Nucleophilic substitution to the carbonyl group’ in S. Warren, *Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group*, Wiley, Chichester, 1974. The dehydration of amides to give nitriles is described in *Vogel*, p. 716.
Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Introduction

Nucleophiles add to carbonyl groups to give compounds in which the trigonal carbon atom of the carbonyl group has become tetrahedral.

In Chapter 10 you saw that these compounds are not always stable: if the starting material contains a leaving group, the addition product is a tetrahedral intermediate, which collapses with loss of the leaving group to give back the carbonyl group, with overall substitution of the leaving group by the nucleophile.

In this chapter you will meet substitution reactions of a different type. Instead of losing a leaving group, the carbonyl group loses its oxygen atom. Here are two important examples: the carbonyl oxygen atom has been replaced by a nitrogen atom during imine formation and by two atoms of oxygen during acetal formation. Notice too the acid catalyst—we shall see shortly why it is required. These are examples of nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group with loss of carbonyl oxygen.

Acetals had walk-on parts in Chapters 2 and 6; in this chapter they are one of the stars. They are simply compounds with two oxygen atoms bound to the same saturated carbon atom. This example is cyclic, but others are not, for example CH₂(OMe)₂.
You have, in fact, already met some less important reactions in which the carbonyl oxygen atom can be lost, but you probably didn’t notice at the time. The equilibrium between an aldehyde or ketone and its hydrate (p. 134) is one such reaction.

When the hydrate reverts to starting materials, either of its two oxygen atoms must leave: one came from the water and one from the carbonyl group, so 50% of the time the oxygen atom that belonged to the carbonyl group will be lost. Usually, this is of no consequence, but it can be useful. For example, in 1968 some chemists studying the reactions that take place inside mass spectrometers needed to label the carbonyl oxygen atom of a ketone with the isotope $^{18}$O.

By stirring the ‘normal’ $^{16}$O compound with a large excess of isotopically labelled water for a few hours in the presence of a drop of acid they were able to make the required labelled compound. Without the acid catalyst, the exchange is very slow. Acid catalysis speeds the reaction up by making the carbonyl group more electrophilic so that equilibrium is reached more quickly.

### Aldehydes can react with alcohols to form hemiacetals

When acetaldehyde is dissolved in methanol, a reaction takes place: we know this because the IR spectrum of the mixture shows that a new compound has been formed. Most dramatically, the carbonyl frequency is no longer there. However, isolating the product is impossible: it decomposes back to acetaldehyde and methanol.

The product is in fact a hemiacetal. Like hydrates, most hemiacetals are unstable with respect to their parent aldehydes and alcohols, for example the equilibrium constant for reaction of acetaldehyde with simple alcohols is about 0.5.

So by making [MeOH] very large (using it as the solvent, for example) we can turn most of the aldehyde into the hemiacetal. However, if we try to purify the hemiacetal by removing the methanol, more hemiacetal keeps decomposing to maintain the equilibrium constant. That is why we can never isolate such hemiacetals in a pure form.

### Acid or base catalysts increase the rate of equilibration of hemiacetals with their aldehyde and alcohol parents

Acyclic hemiacetals form relatively slowly from an aldehyde or ketone plus an alcohol, but their rate of formation is greatly increased either by acid or by base. As you would expect from Chapters 6 and 10, acid catalysts work by increasing the electrophilicity of the carbonyl group.
Base catalysts, on the other hand, work by increasing the nucleophilicity of the alcohol by removing the OH proton before it attacks the C=O group. In both cases the energy of the starting materials is raised: in the acid-catalysed reaction the aldehyde is destabilized by protonation and in the base-catalysed reaction the alcohol is destabilized by deprotonation.

You can see why hemiacetals are unstable: they are essentially tetrahedral intermediates containing a leaving group and, just as acid or base catalyses the formation of hemiacetals, acid or base also catalyses their decomposition back to starting aldehyde or ketone and alcohol. That’s why the title of this section indicated that acid or base catalysts increase the rate of equilibration of hemiacetals with their aldehyde and alcohol components—catalysts never change the position of that equilibrium!

To summarize

Hemiacetal formation and decomposition are catalysed by acid or base.

Acetals are formed from aldehydes or ketones plus alcohols in the presence of acid

We said that a solution of acetaldehyde in methanol contains a new compound: a hemiacetal. We’ve also said that the rate of formation of hemiacetals is increased by adding an acid (or a base) catalyst to the alcohol plus aldehyde mixture. But, if we add catalytic acid to our acetaldehyde–methanol mixture, we find not only that the rate of reaction of the acetaldehyde with the methanol increases, but also that a different product is formed. This product is an acetal; the hemiacetal is half-way there.

In the presence of acid (but not base!) hemiacetals can undergo an elimination reaction (different from the one that just gives back aldehyde plus alcohol), losing the oxygen atom that once belonged to the parent aldehyde’s carbonyl group.
The stages are:

1. Protonation of the hydroxyl group of the hemiacetal.
2. Loss of water by elimination. This elimination leads to an unstable and highly reactive oxonium ion.
3. Addition of methanol to the oxonium ion (breaking the π bond and not the σ bond, of course).
4. Loss of a proton to give the acetal.

Oxonium ions

Oxonium ions have three bonds to a positively charged oxygen atom. All three bonds can be σ bonds, as in H$_3$O$^+$ or Meerwein’s salt, trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate, a stable (though reactive) alkylating agent, or one bond can be a π bond as in the acetal intermediate. The term ‘oxonium ion’ describes either of these structures. They are like alkylated ethers or O-alkylated carbonyl compounds.

Just as protonated carbonyl groups are much more electrophilic than unprotonated ones, these oxonium ions are powerful electrophiles. They can react rapidly with a second molecule of alcohol to form the new, stable compounds known as acetals. An oxonium ion was also an intermediate in the formation of hemiacetals in acid solution. Before reading any further, it would be worthwhile to write out the whole mechanism of acetal formation from aldehyde or ketone plus alcohol through the hemiacetal to the acetal, preferably without looking at the fragments of mechanism above or the answer overleaf.

Formation of acetals and hemiacetals

Hemiacetal formation is catalysed by acid or base, but acetal formation is possible only with an acid catalyst because an OH group must be made into a good leaving group.

The mechanism is the most complex you have met and it will help you to recall it if you see it in two halves, each very similar to the other. The reaction starts with a protonation on carbonyl oxygen and addition of an alcohol to the C=O π bond. When you get to the temporary haven of the hemiacetal, you start again with protonation of that same oxygen then lose the OH group by breaking what was the C=O σ bond to form an oxonium ion. Each half goes through an oxonium ion and the alcohol adds to each oxonium ion. The last step in the formation of both the acetal and the hemiacetal is the loss of a proton from the recently added alcohol. From your complete mechanism you should also be able to verify that acetal formation is indeed catalytic in acid.
Interactive mechanism for acetal formation

- Remember the oxonium ion!

When you wrote out your mechanism for acetal formation, we hope you didn’t miss out the oxonium ion! It’s easy to do so, but the mechanism most definitely does not go via a direct displacement of water by alcohol.

If you wonder how we know this, consult a specialized book on organic reaction mechanisms. After you have read Chapter 15 in this book, you will be able to spot that this substitution step goes via an $SN_1$ and not an $SN_2$ mechanism.

Making acetals

Just as with the ester formation and hydrolysis reactions we discussed in Chapter 10, every step in the formation of an acetal is reversible. To make acetals, therefore, we must use an excess of alcohol or remove the water from the reaction mixture as it forms, by distillation for example.

In fact, acetal formation is even more difficult than ester formation: while the equilibrium constant for acid-catalysed formation of ester from carboxylic acid plus alcohol is usually about 1, for acetal formation from an aldehyde and ethanol (shown above), the equilibrium constant is $K = 0.0125$. For ketones, the value is even lower: in fact, it is often very difficult to make the acetals of ketones (sometimes called ketals) unless they are cyclic (we consider cyclic acetics later in the chapter). However, there are several techniques that can be used to prevent the water produced in the reaction from hydrolysing the product.
para-Toluenesulfonic acid

para-Toluenesulfonic acid is commonly used to catalyse reactions of this sort. It is a stable solid, yet is as strong an acid as sulfuric acid. It is widely available and cheap because it is produced as a by-product in the synthesis of saccharin (for more details, see Chapter 21).

With the more reactive aldehyde, it was sufficient just to have an excess of one of the reagents (acetaldehyde) to drive the reaction to completion. Dry HCl gas can work too. With a less reactive ketone, molecular sieves (zeolite) were used to remove water from the reaction as it proceeded.

Acetals hydrolyse only in the presence of acid

Just as acetal formation requires acid catalysis, acetals can be hydrolysed only by using an acid catalyst. With aqueous acid, the hydrolysis of acyclic acetals is very easy. Our examples are the two acetals we made earlier.

We won’t go through the mechanism again—you’ve already seen it as the reverse of acetal formation, but the fact that acetals are stable to base is really a very important point, which we will use on the next page and capitalize on further in Chapter 23.

Cyclic acetals are more stable than acyclic acetals

Of course you want us to prove it. Well, in this example the starting material has three acetals: an ordinary acetal formed from methanol (in black), a five-membered cyclic acetal, and a dithioacetal. Only the black acetal hydrolyses under these mild conditions.

The acetals you have met so far were formed by reaction of two molecules of alcohol with one of carbonyl compound. Cyclic acetals, formed by reaction of a single molecule of a diol, a compound containing two hydroxyl groups, are also important. When the diol is ethylene glycol (as in this example) the five-membered cyclic acetal is known as a dioxolane.
Before looking at the answer below, try to write a mechanism for this reaction. If you need it, use the mechanism we gave for the formation of acyclic acetals.

Water is still generated, and needs to be got rid of: in the example above you can see that water was distilled out of the reaction mixture. This is possible with these diols because they have a boiling point above that of water (the boiling point of ethylene glycol is 197 °C). You can’t distil water from a reaction mixture containing methanol or ethanol because the alcohols distil too! One very useful piece of equipment for removing water from reaction mixtures containing only reagents that boil at higher temperatures than water is called a Dean Stark head.

**Dean Stark head**

When a mixture of toluene and water boils, the vapour produced is a constant ratio mixture of toluene vapour and water vapour known as an **azeotrope**. If this mixture is condensed, the liquid toluene and water, being immiscible, separate out into two layers with the water below. By using a Dean Stark apparatus, or Dean Stark head, the toluene layer can be returned to the reaction mixture while the water is removed. Reactions requiring removal of water by distillation are therefore often carried out in refluxing toluene or benzene under a Dean Stark head.

**Modifying reactivity using acetals**

Why are acetals so important? Well, they’re important to both nature and chemists because many carbohydrates are acetals or hemiacetals (see the box below). One important use that chemists have put them to is as **protecting groups**. One synthesis of the steroid class of compounds (about which more later) requires a Grignard reagent with an impossible structure. This compound cannot exist as the Grignard functional group would attack the ketone: it would react with itself. Instead, the protected Grignard reagent is used, made from the same bromoketone, but with an acetal-forming step.

Acetals, as we stressed, are stable to base and to basic nucleophiles such as Grignard reagents, so we no longer have a reactivity problem. Once the Grignard reagent has reacted with an electrophile, the ketone can be recovered by hydrolysing the acetal in dilute acid. The acetal is functioning here as a protecting group because it protects the ketone from attack by the Grignard reagent. Protecting groups are extremely important in organic synthesis and we will return to them in Chapter 23.
**Acetals in nature**

We showed you glucose as on p.137 an example of a stable, cyclic hemiacetal. Glucose can, in fact, react with itself to form an acetal known as maltose. Maltose is a disaccharide (made of two sugar units) produced by the enzymatic hydrolysis of starch or cellulose, which are themselves polyacetals made up of a string of glucose units.

**Amines react with carbonyl compounds**

The ketone carbonyl group of pyruvic acid (or 2-oxopropanoic acid) has a stretching frequency of a typical ketone, 1710 cm\(^{-1}\). When hydroxylamine is added to a solution of pyruvic acid, this stretching frequency slowly disappears. Later, a new IR absorption appears at 1400 cm\(^{-1}\). What happens?

You can probably apply something of what you know from Chapters 6 and 10 about the reactivity of carbonyl compounds towards nucleophiles to work out what is happening in this reaction between a carbonyl compound and an amine. The hydroxylamine first adds to the ketone to form an unstable intermediate similar to a hemiacetal.

Notice that it is the more nucleophilic nitrogen atom, and not the oxygen atom, of hydroxylamine that adds to the carbonyl group. Like hemiacetals, these intermediates are unstable and can decompose by loss of water. The product is known as an oxime and it is this compound, with its C=\(\equiv\)N double bond, that is responsible for the IR absorption at 1400 cm\(^{-1}\).
We know that the oxime is formed via an intermediate because the 1400 cm\(^{-1}\) absorption hardly appears until after the 1710 cm\(^{-1}\) absorption has almost completely gone. There must really be another curve to show the formation and the decay of the intermediate. The only difference is that the intermediate has no double bond to give an IR absorbance in this region of the spectrum. We come back to oximes later in the chapter.

**Imines are the nitrogen analogues of carbonyl compounds**

In fact, the oxime formed from a ketone and hydroxylamine is just a special example of an imine. All imines have a C=\(\text{N}\) double bond and are formed when any primary amine reacts with an aldehyde or a ketone under appropriate conditions, for example aniline and benzaldehyde.

You shouldn’t need us to tell you the mechanism of this reaction: even without looking at the mechanism we gave for the formation of the oxime it should come as no surprise to you by now. But as the reaction is very important in chemistry and biology, we’ll discuss it in some depth. First, the amine attacks the aldehyde and the intermediate known as a hemiacetal is formed. Amines are good nucleophiles for carbonyl groups, and aldehydes and ketones are electrophilic. There is no need for any catalysis in this step. Indeed, addition of acid would slow the reaction down as the nucleophilic amine would be removed as a salt.

**First step in imine formation:**
the amine attacks the carbonyl group to form the hemiaminal intermediate:

Dehydration of the hemiaminal gives the imine. Now there is some need for catalysis: acid must be added so that the OH group can become a good leaving group. This step resembles the conversion of hemiacetals to acetals. The difference is that the iminium ion can lose a proton and become a neutral imine.
Imine formation requires acid catalysis.

So acid is needed for the second step but hinders the first step. Clearly some compromise is needed. Without an acid catalyst, the reaction is very slow, although in some cases it may still take place. Imine formation is in fact fastest at about pH 4–6: at lower pH, too much amine is protonated and the rate of the first step is slow; above this pH the proton concentration is too low to allow protonation of the OH leaving group in the dehydration step. Imine formation is like a biological reaction: it is fastest near neutrality.

Imines are usually unstable and are easily hydrolysed

Like acetals, imines are unstable with respect to their parent carbonyl compound and amine, and must be formed by a method that allows removal of water from the reaction mixture.

Imines are formed from aldehydes or ketones with most primary amines. In general, they are stable enough to be isolated only if either the C or N of the imine double bond bears an aromatic substituent. Imines formed from ammonia are unstable, but can be detected in solution. CH$_2$=NH, for example, decomposes at temperatures above ~80 °C, but PhCH=NH is detectable by UV spectroscopy in a mixture of benzaldehyde and ammonia in methanol.

Imines are readily hydrolysed to the carbonyl compound and amine by aqueous acid—in fact, except for the particularly stable special cases we discuss below, most can be hydrolysed by water without acid or base catalysis. You have, in fact, already met an imine hydrolysis: at the end of Chapter 10 we talked about the addition of Grignard reagents to nitriles. The product is an imine that hydrolyses in acid solution to ketone plus ammonia.

The mechanism of the hydrolysis is the reverse of imine formation, going through the same hemiaminal intermediate and the same iminium and oxonium ions. All these steps are reversible and this should remind you that the relative stability of the starting material and product is as important in imine formation and hydrolysis as it is in acetal formation and hydrolysis.
Some imines are stable

Imines in which the nitrogen atom carries an electronegative group are usually stable: examples include oximes, hydrazones, and semicarbazones.

These compounds are more stable than imines because the electronegative substituent can participate in delocalization of the imine double bond. Delocalization decreases the small positive charge on the carbon atom of the imine double bond and raises the energy of the LUMO, making it less susceptible to nucleophilic attack. Oximes, hydrazones, and semicarbazones require acid or base catalysis to be hydrolysed.

Historical note

Because the hydrazone and semicarbazone derivatives of carbonyl compounds are often stable, crystalline solids, they used to be used to confirm the supposed identity of aldehydes and ketones. For example, the boiling points of these three isomeric five-carbon ketones are all similar and before the days of NMR spectroscopy it would have been hard to distinguish between them.

Their semicarbazones and 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazones, on the other hand, all differ in their melting points. By making these derivatives of the ketones, identification was made much easier. Of course, all of this has been totally superseded by NMR! However, these crystalline derivatives are still useful in the purification of volatile aldehydes and ketones, and in solving structures by X-ray crystallography.
**Iminium ions and oxonium ions**

Let’s return to the mechanism of imine formation, and compare it for a moment with that of acetal formation. The only difference to begin with is that there is no need for acid catalysis for the addition of the amine but there is need for acid catalysis in the addition of the alcohol, a much weaker nucleophile.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{acid-catalysed imine formation} \\
&\text{hemiaminal intermediate} \\
&\text{iminium ion} \\
&\text{acid-catalysed acetal formation} \\
&\text{hemiacetal intermediate} \\
&\text{oxonium ion}
\end{align*}
\]

Up to this point, the two mechanisms follow a very similar path, with clear analogy between the hemiaminal and hemiacetal intermediates, and between the iminium and oxonium ions. Here, though, they diverge, because the iminium ion carries a proton, which the oxonium ion doesn’t have. The iminium ion therefore acts as an acid, losing a proton to become the imine. The oxonium ion, on the other hand, acts as an electrophile, adding another molecule of alcohol to become the acetal.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{iminium ion} \\
&\text{oxonium ion} \\
&\text{imine} \\
&\text{acetal}
\end{align*}
\]

As you might guess, however, iminium ions can be persuaded to act as electrophiles, just like oxonium ions, provided a suitable nucleophile is present. We will spend the next few pages considering reactions in which an iminium ion acts as an electrophile. First, though, we will look at a reaction in which the iminium ion cannot lose an N–H proton because it has none.

**Secondary amines react with carbonyl compounds to form enamines**

Pyrrolidine, a secondary amine, reacts with isobutyraldehyde, under the sort of conditions you would use to make an imine, to give an enamine. The name enamine combines ‘ene’ (C=C double bond) and ‘amine’.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{TsOH catalyst} \\
&\text{benzene, heat} \\
&\text{H}_2\text{O (Dean Stark)} \\
&\text{ene amine}
\end{align*}
\]

The mechanism consists of the same steps as those that take place when imines form from primary amines, up to formation of the iminium ion. This iminium ion has no N–H proton to lose, so it loses one of the C–H protons next to the C=N to give the enamine. Enamines, like imines, are unstable to aqueous acid.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{secondary amine} \\
&\text{(pyrrolidine)} \\
&\text{enamine}
\end{align*}
\]
Imines and enamines

- Imines are formed from aldehydes or ketones with primary amines.
- Enamines are formed from aldehydes or ketones with secondary amines.

Both require acid catalysis and removal of water.

Enamines of primary amines, or even of ammonia, also exist, but only in equilibrium with an imine isomer. The interconversion between imine and enamine is the nitrogen analogue of enolization, which is discussed in detail in Chapter 20.

Iminium ions can react as electrophilic intermediates

We made the point above that the difference in reactivity between an iminium ion and an oxonium ion is that an iminium ion can lose H⁺ and form an imine or an enamine, while an oxonium ion reacts as an electrophile. Iminium ions can, however, react as electrophiles provided suitable nucleophiles are present. In fact, they are very good electrophiles, and are significantly more reactive than carbonyl compounds. For example, iminium ions are reduced rapidly by the mild reducing agent sodium cyanoborohydride, Na(CN)BH₃, while carbonyl compounds are not. An alternative to Na(CN)BH₃ is NaBH(OAc)₃ (sodium triacetoxyborohydride)—somewhat safer because strong acid can release deadly HCN from Na(CN)BH₃.

Amines from imines: reductive amination

A useful way of making amines is by reduction of imines (or iminium ions). This overall process, from carbonyl compound to amine, is called reductive amination. This is, in fact, one of the few successful ways, and the best way, of making secondary amines. This should be your first choice in amine synthesis.

This can be done in two steps, provided the intermediate is stable, but, because the instability of many imines makes them hard to isolate, the most convenient way of doing it is to form and reduce the imine in a single reaction. The selective reduction of iminium ions (but not carbonyl compounds) by sodium cyanoborohydride makes this possible. When Na(CN)BH₃ is added to a typical imine-formation reaction it reacts with the iminium ion but not with the starting carbonyl compound nor with the imine. Here is an example of an amine synthesis using reductive amination.
In the first step, the ketone and ammonia are in equilibrium with their imine, which, at pH 6, is partly protonated as an iminium ion. The iminium ion is rapidly reduced by the cyanoborohydride to give the amine. Reactions like this, using ammonia in a reductive amination, are often carried out with ammonium chloride or acetate as convenient sources of ammonia. At pH 6, ammonia will be mostly protonated anyway as the pKₐ of NH₄⁺ is about 10.

Ph Me
O
NH₂ pH 6

In the second step of the synthesis, amine plus formaldehyde gives an imine, present as its protonated iminium form, which gets reduced. Formaldehyde is so reactive that it reacts again with the secondary amine to give an iminium ion; this too is reduced to the amine.

Ph Me
N
H₂N
CH₂=O pH 6

Living things make amino acids using imines

The amino acid alanine can be made in moderate yield in the laboratory by reductive amination of pyruvic acid.

Me CO₂H
O
NH₂
pyruvic acid

50% yield

Me CO₂H
NH₂
alanine

Living things use a very similar reaction to manufacture amino acids from keto acids, but do it much more efficiently. The key step is the formation of an imine between pyruvic acid and the vitamin B₆-derived amine pyridoxamine.

Me CO₂H
O
N
H₂N
OH
pyruvic acid

Nature’s synthesis of alanine:
pyridoxamine

Me CO₂H
O
N R
HC N
OH
pyridoxal

This imine (biochemists call imines Schiff bases) is in equilibrium with an isomeric imine, which can be hydrolysed to pyridoxal and alanine. These reactions are, of course, all controlled by enzymes and coupled to the degradation of unwanted amino acids (the latter process converts the pyridoxal back to pyridoxamine). Nature was doing reductive aminations a long time before sodium cyanoborohydride was invented! We will come back to this in Chapter 42.

An alternative method for reductive amination uses hydrogenation (hydrogen gas with a metal catalyst) to reduce the imine in the presence of the carbonyl compound. Most of these reductions do not require such high temperatures or pressures.

Ph CHO
NH₂ 70 °C 90 atm.
NH₃

Hydrogenation is a good way of reducing a number of different functional groups, but not (usually) carbonyl groups. In Chapter 23 we will look in more detail at reducing agents (and other types of reagent) that demonstrate selectivity for one functional group over another (chemoselectivity).
Lithium aluminium hydride reduces amides to amines

We’ve talked about reduction of iminium ions formed from carbonyl compounds plus amines. Iminium ions can also be formed by reducing amides with lithium aluminium hydride. A tetrahedral intermediate is formed that collapses to the iminium ion.

The iminium ion is, of course, more electrophilic than the starting amides (amide carbonyl groups are about the least electrophilic of any!), so it gets reduced to the secondary amine. This reaction can be used to make secondary amines from primary amines and acyl chlorides. A similar reduction with lithium aluminium hydride gives a primary amine from a nitrile.

Cyanide will attack iminium ions: the Strecker synthesis of amino acids

Cyanide will react with iminium ions to form α amino nitriles. Although these compounds are relatively unimportant in their own right, a simple hydrolysis step produces α amino acids. This route to amino acids is known as the Strecker synthesis. Of course, it’s not usually necessary to make the amino acids that Nature produces for us in living systems: they can be extracted from hydrolysed proteins. This Strecker synthesis is of phenylglycine, an amino acid not found in proteins. Cyanide reacts more rapidly with the iminium ion generated in the first step than it does with the starting benzaldehyde.

The synthesis of a spider toxin: reductive amination

This compound is the toxin used by the orb weaver spider to paralyse its prey. Notice that it has a guanidine at its right-hand end. These are stable imines, and their powerful basicity was discussed in Chapter 8. Since the spider produces only minute quantities of the compound, chemists at the University of Bath set about synthesizing it in the laboratory so that they could study its biological properties. The toxin contains several amide and amine functional groups, and the chemists decided that the best way to make it was to link two molecules together at one of the secondary amine groups using a reductive amination.
Substitution of C=O for C=C: a brief look at the Wittig reaction

Before we leave substitution reactions of carbonyl groups, there is one more reaction that we must introduce. It is an important one and we will come back to it again later in this book, particularly in Chapter 27. It also has a rather different mechanism from most you have met in recent chapters, but we talk about it here because the overall consequence of the Wittig reaction is the substitution of a C=C bond for a C=O bond.

We don’t normally tell you the name of a reaction before even mentioning how to do it, but here we make an exception because the reagents are rather unusual and need explaining in detail. The Wittig reaction is a reaction between a carbonyl compound (aldehyde or ketone only) and a species known as a phosphonium ylid. An ylid (or ylide) is a species with positive and negative charges on adjacent atoms, and phosphonium ylids are made from phosphonium salts by deprotonating them with a strong base.

You have already met phosphonium salts in Chapter 5, where you saw the reaction of a phosphine (triphenylphosphine) with an alkyl halide (methyl iodide) to give the tetrahedral phosphonium salt.

So here is a typical Wittig reaction: it starts with a phosphonium salt, which is treated with a strong base such as BuLi or sodium hydride, and then with a carbonyl compound; the alkene forms in 85% yield.

What about the mechanism? We warned you that the mechanism is rather different from all the others you have met in this chapter, but nonetheless it begins with attack on the
carbonyl group by a nucleophile; the nucleophile is the carbanion part of the phosphonium ylid. This reaction generates a negatively charged oxygen that attacks the positively charged phosphorus and gives a four-membered ring called an oxaphosphetane.

Now, this four-membered ring (like many others) is unstable, and it can collapse in a way that forms two double bonds. Here are the curly arrows: the mechanism is cyclic and gives the alkene, which is the product of the reaction along with a phosphine oxide.

The chemistry of some elements is dominated by one particular property, and a theme running right through the chemistry of phosphorus is its exceptional affinity for oxygen. The $\text{P} = \text{O}$ bond, with its bond energy of 575 kJ mol$^{-1}$, is one of the strongest double bonds in chemistry, and the Wittig reaction is irreversible and is driven forward by the formation of this $\text{P} = \text{O}$ bond. No need here for the careful control of an equilibrium necessary when making acetals or imines.

**Summary**

In this chapter, as in Chapter 10, you have met a wide variety of reactions, but we hope you have again been able to see that they are all related mechanistically. Of course, we have not been exhaustive: it would be impossible to cover every possible reaction of a carbonyl group, but having read Chapters 6, 9, and 10 you should feel confident in writing a *reasonable mechanism* for any reaction involving nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group. You could try thinking about this, for example.

In the next chapter we examine in a little more detail the phrase ‘a reasonable mechanism’: how do we know what mechanisms are reasonable, and what can we do to understand them? We shall look in more detail at some of the topics raised in this chapter, such as equilibria and rates of reactions. Carbonyl groups next star in Chapter 20 where they reveal a thus far hidden nucleophilic side to their character.
Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
If you go into a chemistry laboratory, you will see some reactions being heated in boiling solvent (perhaps 80 to 120 °C), and you will see others being performed at maybe –80 °C or below. Some reactions are over in a few minutes; others are left for hours. In some reactions the amounts of reagents are critical; in others large excesses are used. Some reactions use water as a solvent; in others it must be rigorously excluded, and perhaps toluene, ether, ethanol, or DMF is essential for the success of the reaction. Why such a diverse range of conditions? How can conditions be chosen to favour the reaction we want? To explain all this we will need to work through some thermodynamic principles. We will take a practical, visual approach to the topic, and we will avoid detailed algebraic discussion: for that you are welcome to turn to a textbook of physical chemistry—there are some suggestions at the end of this chapter. In fact, we will use only two algebraic equations. Both are so important that you should memorize them; the second in particular can be extremely valuable when we think about how to get reactions to work.

How far and how fast?

In previous chapters we have said things about the reversibility of reactions:

‘Cyanohydrin formation is reversible: just dissolving a cyanohydrin in water can give back the aldehyde or ketone you started with’ (Chapter 6); ‘HCl transfers its proton almost completely to water, and is a strong acid. But the transfer of protons to water from carboxylic acids is only partial’ (Chapter 8); ‘This step is irreversible because SO₂ and HCl are gases that are lost from the reaction mixture’ (Chapter 10); ‘The tetrahedral intermediate can collapse either way, giving back ester or going forward to acid plus alcohol.’ (Chapter 10);

Note: The equation relating Gibbs free energy with the equilibrium constant appears incorrectly throughout this edition. The correct equation is $\Delta G^0 = -RT \ln K$, where the small circle denotes substances in their standard state (solutions at 1 M and gases at 1 bar partial pressure). For the change in Gibbs free energy in general, the correct equation is $\Delta G = RT \ln Q/K$, where $Q$ is the reaction quotient. For any system at equilibrium, $\Delta G = 0$.
about the relative stability of different compounds:

‘The most important factor in the strength of an acid is the stability of the conjugate base’ (Chapter 8); ‘F⁻ is much more stable than CH₃⁻ because fluorine is much more electronegative than carbon’ (Chapter 8); ‘Oximes are more stable than imines because the electronegative substituent can participate in delocalization of the imine double bond’ (Chapter 11);

and about the rate of reactions:

‘Benzaldehyde is reduced about 400 times faster than acetophenone in isopropanol’ (Chapter 6); ‘While amines react with acetic anhydride quite rapidly at room temperature (reaction complete in a few hours), alcohols react extremely slowly in the absence of a base’ (Chapter 10); ‘Secondary and tertiary amides are difficult to hydrolyse but a similar mechanism is successful with only a little water and plenty of a strong base’ (Chapter 10); ‘Acyclic hemiacetals form relatively slowly from an aldehyde or ketone plus an alcohol, but their rate of formation is greatly increased either by acid or by base’ (Chapter 11).

We are now going to consider in detail why some reactions can run forwards or backwards, why some form products irreversibly, why some reach an equilibrium, why some reactions go fast and some go slow, and what stability has to do with all of this. Understanding these factors will allow you to make the reactions you want to happen go faster and the reactions you don’t want to happen go slower, giving you a product in a useful yield. We shall be breaking reaction mechanisms down into steps and working out which step is the most important. But first we must consider what we really mean by the ‘stability’ of molecules and what determines how much of one substance you get when it is in equilibrium with another.

Stability and energy levels

So far we have been rather vague about the term ‘stability’, just saying things like ‘this compound is more stable than that compound’. What we really mean is that this compound has less energy than that one. For example, as you know from Chapters 4 and 7 alkenes can come in two forms we can call cis and trans. In general trans-alkenes are more stable than cis-alkenes. How do we know? Well, we can convert both cis- and trans-butene to the same alkane, butane, by adding a molecule of hydrogen. Energy is given out during the reaction, and if we measure how much energy we get from hydrogenation of trans-butene and compare it with the amount we get from cis-butene, we find that the cis-alkene give us about 2 kJ mol⁻¹ more. Cis-butene is higher in energy, and must therefore be less stable. We can represent this in the energy profile diagram on the right. The two red lines show the energies of the molecules, and the black arrows the amount of energy released when hydrogen is added.

This comparison of energy is most interesting when two compounds can interconvert. For example, as you saw in Chapter 7, rotation about the C–N bond of an amide is slow because delocalization of the N lone pair gives it some double-bond character. The C–N bond can rotate, but the rotation is slow and can be measured by NMR spectroscopy. We might expect to find two forms of an amide of the type R NH–COR: one with the two R groups trans to one another, and one with them cis. Depending on the size of R we should expect one form to be more stable than the other and we can represent this on an energy profile diagram showing the relationship between the two molecules in energy terms.
This time there is an axis along the bottom indicating the extent of rotation about the C–N bond. The two red lines show the energies of the molecules and the curved black line shows what must happen in energy terms as the two forms interconvert. Energy goes up as the C–N bond starts to rotate and reaches a maximum at point X when rotation by 90° has removed the conjugation (the nitrogen lone pair can’t delocalize into the C=O bond because it is perpendicular to the C=O π* orbital) before falling again as the conjugation is regained.

The relative energies of the two states will depend on the nature of R. The situation we have shown, with the cis arrangement being much less stable than the trans, would apply to large R groups. We can define an equilibrium constant \( K \) for this process. For large R groups, \( K \) will be very large:

\[
K = \frac{\text{[amide with R groups trans]}}{\text{[amide with R groups cis]}}
\]

At the other extreme is the case when both substituents on nitrogen are H. Then the two arrangements would have equal energies. The process which interconverts the structures is the same but there is now no difference between them. If you could measure an equilibrium constant, it would now be exactly \( K = 1 \).
In more general terms, amide rotation is a simple example of an equilibrium reaction. If we replace 'amount of C–N bond rotation' with 'reaction coordinate' we have a picture of a typical reaction in which reagents and products are in equilibrium.

**How the equilibrium constant varies with the difference in energy between reactants and products**

You saw that when the energies of the two forms of the amide were the same, the equilibrium constant for their interconversion must be $K = 1$. When one was higher in energy than the other, we just said that $K$ was 'large'. But we can be more specific. For any reaction in equilibrium, the equilibrium constant $K$ is related to the difference in energy between the starting materials and the products by the following equation:

$$
\Delta G = -RT \ln K
$$

where $\Delta G$ (the free energy of the reaction) is the difference in energy between the two states (in kJ mol$^{-1}$), $T$ is the temperature (in kelvin, not °C), and $R$ is a constant known as the gas constant and equal to 8.314 J K$^{-1}$ mol$^{-1}$.

This equation tells us that we can work out the equilibrium composition (how much of each component there is at equilibrium) provided we know the difference in energy between the products and reactants.

**An example: hydration of an aldehyde**

In Chapter 6 we showed you that water adds reversibly to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde: the aldehyde and the hydrate are in equilibrium. Here’s the example with isobutyraldehyde (2-methylpropanal). The equilibrium constant is the concentration of hydrate at equilibrium divided by the concentration of aldehyde, also at equilibrium.

$$
K = \frac{[\text{hydrate}]}{[\text{aldehyde}]} = \text{ca. 0.5}
$$

The concentrations of hydrate and aldehyde at equilibrium in water may be determined by measuring the UV absorption of known concentrations of aldehyde in water and comparing these with the absorptions in a solvent such as cyclohexane where no hydrate formation is possible. Such experiments reveal that the equilibrium constant for this reaction in water at 25 °C is approximately 0.5 so that there is about twice as much aldehyde as hydrate in the equilibrium mixture.

Using the equation above, we find that the corresponding value for $\Delta G$ is $-8.314 \times 298 \times \ln(0.5) = +1.7$ kJ mol$^{-1}$. In other words, the solution of the hydrate in water is 1.7 kJ mol$^{-1}$ higher in energy than the solution of the aldehyde in water. All this can be shown on an energy profile diagram.

**The sign of $\Delta G$ tells us whether products or reactants are favoured at equilibrium**

In the equilibrium above, the hydrate is higher in energy than the aldehyde: at equilibrium there is more aldehyde than hydrate, and the equilibrium constant is therefore less than 1. Whenever this is the case (i.e. the equilibrium lies to the side of the reactants, rather than the products).
products) $K$ will be less than 1. This means that its logarithm must be negative and, because $\Delta G = -RT \ln K$, $\Delta G$ must be positive. Conversely, for a reaction in which products are favoured over reactants, $K$ must be greater than 1, its logarithm will be positive, and hence $\Delta G$ must be negative. When $K$ is exactly 1, since $\ln 1 = 0$, $\Delta G$ will be zero.

- $\Delta G$ tells us about the position of equilibrium.
  - If $\Delta G$ for a reaction is negative, the products will be favoured at equilibrium.
  - If $\Delta G$ for a reaction is positive, the reactants will be favoured at equilibrium.
  - If $\Delta G$ for a reaction is zero, the equilibrium constant for the reaction will be 1.

A small change in $\Delta G$ makes a big difference in $K$

The tiny difference in energy between the hydrate and the aldehyde (1.7 kJ mol$^{-1}$) is small: the strength of a typical C–C bond is about 350 kJ mol$^{-1}$) gave an appreciable difference in the equilibrium composition. This is because of the logarithm term in the equation $\Delta G = -RT \ln K$: relatively small energy differences have a very large effect on $K$. The table below shows the equilibrium constants, $K$, that correspond to energy differences, $\Delta G$, between 0 and 50 kJ mol$^{-1}$. These are relatively small energy differences, but the equilibrium constants change by enormous amounts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variation of $K$ with $\Delta G$</th>
<th>$\Delta G$, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
<th>$K$</th>
<th>% of more stable state at equilibrium</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>77</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>99.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>3200</td>
<td>99.97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>580 000 000</td>
<td>99.9999998</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a typical chemical reaction, ‘driving an equilibrium over to products’ might mean getting, say, 98% of the products and only 2% of starting materials. You can see in the table that this requires an equilibrium constant of just over 50 and an energy difference of only 10 kJ mol$^{-1}$. This small energy difference is quite enough—after all, a yield of 98% is rather good!

How to make the equilibrium favour the product you want

The direct formation of esters

The formation and hydrolysis of esters was discussed in Chapter 10 where we established that acid and ester are in equilibrium and that the equilibrium constant is about 1. Since the position of the equilibrium favours neither the starting materials nor the products, how can we manipulate the conditions of the reaction if we actually want to make 100% ester?

$$K = \frac{[\text{RCO}_2\text{Me}][\text{H}_2\text{O}]}{[\text{RCO}_2\text{H}][\text{MeOH}]} \approx \text{ca. } 1$$
The important point is that, at any one particular temperature, the equilibrium constant is just that—constant. This gives us a means of forcing the equilibrium to favour the products (or reactants) since the ratio between them must remain constant. Imagine what happens if we add more methanol to the reaction above. [MeOH] increases, but the overall value of $K$ has to stay the same. The only way this can happen is if more of the ester converts to the acid. Alternatively, imagine removing water from the equilibrium. [$H_2O$] goes down, so to bring $K$ back to the value of 1, the concentrations of acid and methanol are going to have to go down too, by converting themselves to ester and water.

$$K = \frac{[RCO_2Me][H_2O]}{[RCO_2H][MeOH]} = \text{ca. 1}$$

This is exactly how the equilibrium is manipulated in practice. One way to make esters in the laboratory is to use a large excess of the alcohol and remove water continually from the system as it is formed, for example by distilling it out. This means that in the equilibrium mixture there is a tiny quantity of water, lots of the ester, lots of the alcohol, and very little of the carboxylic acid; in other words, we have converted the carboxylic acid into the ester. We must still use an acid catalyst, but the acid must be anhydrous since we do not want any water present—commonly used acids are toluenesulfonic acid (tosic acid, TsOH), concentrated sulfuric acid ($H_2SO_4$), or gaseous HCl. The acid catalyst does not alter the position of the equilibrium; it simply speeds up the rate of the reaction, allowing equilibrium to be reached more quickly. This is an important point that we will come back to shortly.

**Typical method for making an ester**

Reflex the carboxylic acid with an excess of the alcohol (or the alcohol with an excess of the carboxylic acid) with about 3–5% of a mineral acid (usually HCl or $H_2SO_4$) as a catalyst and distil out the water that is formed in the reaction. For example, butanol was heated under reflux with a fourfold excess of acetic acid and a catalytic amount of concentrated $H_2SO_4$ to give butyl acetate in a yield of 70%.

$$\text{MeOH (4 equiv.)} + \text{HO} - \text{CO}_2\text{H} \rightarrow \text{MeO} - \text{CO}_2\text{H} \text{ (70% isolated yield)}$$

It may also help to distil out the water that is formed in the reaction: diethyl adipate (the diethyl ester of hexanedioic acid) can be made in toluene solution using a sixfold excess of ethanol, concentrated $H_2SO_4$ as catalyst, heating in toluene, and distilling out the water using a Dean Stark apparatus. You can tell from the yield that the equilibrium is very favourable.

$$\text{HO}_2\text{C} - \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{EtOH (6 equiv.)} \rightarrow \text{EtO}_2\text{C} - \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \text{ (96% isolated yield)}$$

In these cases the equilibrium is made more favourable by using an excess of reagents and/or removing one of the products. The equilibrium constant remains the same.
Typical method for hydrolysing an ester

Almost all methods for hydrolysing an ester in order to convert it back to an acid and an alcohol simply make use of excess water. Increasing [H₂O] forces more acid and alcohol to form to restore the equilibrium, and in favourable situations high yields of the acid and alcohol are formed.

Entropy is important in determining equilibrium constants

The equation we introduced on p. 243 tells us that an equilibrium favours whichever of the reactants or products has lower energy. But you might reasonably ask this question: why does it just favour the components with lower energy? Why do you get any of the higher energy ones at all? For the hydration on p. 243, for example, the hydrate is 1.7 kJ mol⁻¹ higher in energy than the starting aldehyde, so why does the aldehyde react at all? Surely the equilibrium would attain a lower energy state, not with just an excess of aldehyde over hydrate, but with no hydrate at all?

The answer is due to entropy, a measure of disorder. Even when there is a difference in energy between the starting materials and products in an equilibrium, you still get some of the less stable components. Put simply, having a mixture of components is favourable because a mixture has higher entropy than a pure compound, and equilibria tend to maximize overall entropy. This may be quite a new concept to you, so we will now work our way stepwise through these ideas.

Energy, enthalpy, and entropy: ΔG, ΔH, and ΔS

The equation in the margin just above tells us that the sign and magnitude of the energy ΔG are the only things that matter in deciding whether an equilibrium goes in one direction or another. If ΔG is negative the equilibrium will favour the products and if ΔG is large and negative the reaction can go to completion. The table on p. 244 tells us that it is enough for ΔG to be only about −10 kJ mol⁻¹ to get complete reaction. But we haven’t yet considered what ΔG actually corresponds to physically.

To do this we need to introduce our second equation. The free energy of a reaction, ΔG, is related to two other quantities, the enthalpy of reaction, ΔH, and the entropy of reaction, ΔS, by the equation:

$$ΔG = ΔH - TΔS$$

As before, T is the temperature of the reaction in kelvin. Enthalpy, H, is a measure of heat, and the change in enthalpy, ΔH, in a chemical reaction is the heat given out or taken up in that reaction. Reactions which give out heat are called exothermic, and have negative ΔH; reactions which take in heat are called endothermic and have positive ΔH. Since breaking bonds requires energy and making bonds liberates energy, the enthalpy change gives an indication of whether the products have more stable bonds than the starting materials or not.

Entropy, S, is a measure of the disorder in the system, so ΔS represents the entropy difference—the change in disorder—between the starting materials and the products. More disorder gives a positive ΔS; less disorder a negative ΔS.

So ΔG represents a combination of heat and disorder. But what does this mean for you as a chemist wanting to get a reaction to work the way you want it to? We know that for a favourable change (i.e. an equilibrium favouring products) ΔG must be negative—in fact the more negative the better, as this gives a larger equilibrium constant. Since ΔG = ΔH − TΔS, we get a large, negative ΔG most readily if:

1. ΔH is negative, i.e. the reaction is exothermic.

and

2. ΔS is positive (and hence −TΔS is negative), i.e. the reaction becomes more disordered.
Of course, we can still get a negative $\Delta G$ from an endothermic reaction (i.e. from a positive $\Delta H$) but only if the reaction products are more disordered than the starting materials; likewise a reaction which becomes more ordered as it proceeds can still be favourable, but only if it is exothermic to compensate for the loss of entropy.

Because of the factor $T$ multiplying the entropy term, both the equilibrium constant $K$ (which depends on $\Delta G$) and the relative importance of the two quantities ($\Delta H$ and $\Delta S$) will vary with temperature (entropy changes are more important at higher temperatures). We’ll now look at some examples to see how this works in practice.

**Enthalpy versus entropy—some examples**

Entropy dominates equilibrium constants in the difference between inter- and intramolecular reactions. In Chapter 6 we explained that hemiacetal formation is often an equilibrium, with neither starting materials nor products strongly favoured. The addition of ethanol to acetaldehyde shown below on the left, for example, has an equilibrium constant not far from 1. Overall, $\Delta G$ must therefore be approximately 0 (in fact it’s very slightly positive). The enthalpy change associated with the reaction is the result of the change in bonding: in this case, a C=O double bond becomes two C–O single bonds, and these two single bonds are marginally more stable than the C=O double bond, therefore $\Delta H$ is slightly negative. But working against this is the fact that every molecule of hemiacetal that forms consumes two molecules of starting material. Decreasing the number of molecules (and moving from a mixture of aldehyde and alcohol towards pure hemiacetal) leads to an increase in the order of the mixture—in other words a decrease in entropy. $\Delta S$ is negative, so the $-T\Delta S$ is positive, just about counterbalancing the small negative $\Delta H$, and giving a slightly positive $\Delta G$.

A mixture has more entropy than a pure substance because there are many more ways of arranging a mixture. Imagine lining up every molecule in a mole of substance and a mole of a 1:1 mixture. For the pure substance, each member of the line of molecules has to be the same. For the mixture, at every position in the line there is a choice of two alternatives, giving a huge number of possible arrangements.

The reaction on the right is different because it is an intramolecular reaction: the hydroxyl group and aldehyde lie in the same molecule. $\Delta H$ will have essentially the same value as in the intermolecular reaction on the left, but as the intramolecular reaction progresses, one molecule stays one molecule—there is consequently a much less significant decrease in entropy. Our $T\Delta S$ term no longer weighs against the negative $\Delta H$ term, making $\Delta G$ negative overall and allowing the equilibrium to lie to the right.

In Chapter 11 we showed you how acetals can be used as base-stable protective groups to prevent nucleophiles attacking carbonyl groups. The acetals we chose to use were cyclic compounds known as dioxolanes, for a very good reason: cyclic acetals are more resistant to hydrolysis than their acyclic counterparts. They are also easier to make—they form quite readily, even from ketones. Again, we have entropic factors to thank for their stability. For the formation of an acyclic acetal (below on the left), three molecules go in and two come out, but for a cyclic one, a cyclic acetal, two molecules go in (ketone plus diol) and two molecules come out (acetal plus water), so the usually unfavourable $\Delta S$ factor is no longer against us.
Overcoming entropy: orthoesters

There is a neat way of sidestepping the entropic problem associated with making acyclic acetals: we can use an orthoester as a source of alcohol. Orthoesters can be viewed as the ‘acetals of esters’, which are hydrolysed by water, when catalysed by acid, to an ordinary ester and two molecules of alcohol.

Here is the mechanism for the hydrolysis—you should be feeling quite familiar with this sort of thing by now.

Ketones or aldehydes undergo acetal exchange with orthoesters. The mechanism starts off as if the orthoester is going to hydrolyse but the alcohol released adds to the ketone and acetal formation begins. The water produced is taken out of the equilibrium by hydrolysis of the orthoester, and we get two molecules from two: entropy is no longer our enemy.

Equilibrium constants vary with temperature

We have said (p. 245) that the equilibrium constant is a constant only as long as the temperature does not change. We can work out exactly how the equilibrium constant varies with temperature by putting our two all-important equations $\Delta G = -RT \ln K$ and $\Delta G = \Delta H - T \Delta S$ together to make

$$-RT \ln K = \Delta H - T \Delta S$$

If we divide throughout by $-RT$ we have

$$\ln K = -\frac{\Delta H}{RT} + \frac{\Delta S}{R}$$

This equation separates the equilibrium constant $K$ into enthalpy and entropy terms, but it is the enthalpy term that determines how $K$ varies with temperature. Plotting $\ln K$ against $1/T$ would give us a straight line with slope $-\Delta H/R$ and intercept $\Delta S/R$. Since $T$ (the temperature in kelvin) is always positive, whether the slope is positive or negative depends on the sign of $\Delta H$: if $\Delta H$ is negative then, as temperature increases, $\ln K$ (and hence $K$) increases. In other words, if the reaction is exothermic (that is, gives out heat) then at higher temperatures the equilibrium constant will be smaller. For an endothermic reaction, as the temperature is increased, the equilibrium constant increases.

Some reactions are reversible on heating: cracking

Notice that the equation above also tells us that enthalpy becomes a less important contributor to the equilibrium constant as temperature increases, so the higher the temperature, the more important is the entropy term. This fact means that some reactions favour one side of the equilibrium at low temperature but the other at high temperature. Here is an example: the dimerization of cyclopentadiene. You will meet the mechanism of this reaction in Chapter 34, but for...
now we can just treat it as a simple dimerization reaction in which two C–C π bonds are replaced by two C–C σ bonds—enthalpically a very favourable process because σ bonds are stronger than π bonds. On standing at low temperature, cyclopentadiene converts to the dimer even though two monomer molecules have more entropy than one molecule of the dimer.

But on heating, the dimer breaks down to give monomeric cyclopentadiene: the equilibrium constant now favours the starting materials. As we predicted, because the reaction is exothermic, heating it makes it less favourable. You can also think of it in terms of our earlier equation \( \Delta G = \Delta H - T \Delta S \); at low temperature, the large negative \( \Delta H \) term dominates, and \( \Delta G \) is large and negative too. But as \( T \) increases, the positive \( \Delta S \) becomes more important, and eventually \( T \Delta S \) overtakes \( \Delta H \) and \( \Delta G \) becomes positive, and the reaction now favours starting materials.

If you want to use cyclopentadiene, you have to heat the dimer to ‘crack’ it (‘cracking’ is the term used for getting monomers from dimers or polymers). If you lazily leave the monomer overnight and plan to do your reaction tomorrow, you will return in the morning to find dimer.

This idea becomes even more pointed when we look at polymerization. Polyvinyl chloride is the familiar plastic PVC and is made by reaction of large numbers of monomeric vinyl chloride molecules. There is, of course, an enormous decrease in entropy in this reaction any polymerization will not occur above a certain temperature. Some polymers can be depolymerized at high temperatures and this can be the basis for recycling.

\[
\text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{vinyl chloride} \\
\to \\
\text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{PVC (polyvinylchloride)}
\]

- **Summary: Practical points from thermodynamic theory**
  - The free energy change \( \Delta G \) in a reaction is proportional to \( \ln K \) (that is, \( \Delta G = -RT \ln K \)).
  - \( \Delta G \) and \( K \) are made up of enthalpy and entropy terms (that is, \( \Delta G = \Delta H - T \Delta S \)).
  - The enthalpy change \( \Delta H \) is the difference in stability (bond strength) of the reagents and products.
  - The entropy change \( \Delta S \) is the difference between the disorder of the reagents and that of the products.
  - The enthalpy term alone determines how \( K \) varies with temperature.
  - The entropy change come to dominate control of equilibrium as temperature is raised.

---

**Le Châtelier’s principle**

You may well be familiar with a rule that helps to predict how a system at equilibrium responds to a change in external conditions—**Le Châtelier’s principle**. This says that if we disturb a system at equilibrium it will respond so as to minimize the effect of the disturbance. An example of a disturbance is adding more starting material to a reaction mixture at equilibrium. What happens? More product is formed to use up this extra material. This is a consequence of the equilibrium constant being, well..., constant and hardly needs anybody’s principle.

Another disturbance is heating. If a reaction under equilibrium is heated, how the equilibrium changes depends on whether the reaction is exothermic or endothermic. If it is exothermic (that is, gives out heat), Le Châtelier’s principle would predict that, since heat is consumed in the reverse reaction, more of the starting materials will be formed. Again no ‘principle’ is needed—this change occurs because the equilibrium constant is smaller at higher temperatures in an exothermic reaction. Avoid using principles and rules without understanding the science underneath them or you may find yourself playing with fire (which incidentally most definitely does not obey Le Châtelier’s principle, for very good reasons...).
Introducing kinetics: how to make reactions go faster and cleaner

Although in chemistry laboratories you will see lots of reactions being heated, very rarely will this be to alter the equilibrium position. This is because most reactions are not carried out reversibly and so the ratio of products to reactants is not an equilibrium ratio. The main reason chemists heat up reactions is simple—it speeds them up. The study of the rates of reactions, as opposed to their equilibrium states, is known as kinetics.

- Thermodynamics is concerned with equilibria; kinetics is concerned with rates.

How fast do reactions go? Activation energies

The combustion of the hydrocarbon shown below, the major component of petrol (gasoline) trivially known as ‘isooctane’, proceeds with \( \Delta G = \text{–1000 kJ mol}^{-1} \) at 298 K.

\[
\text{‘isooctane’ (l)} + \text{O}_2 (g) \quad \xrightleftharpoons{} \quad 8 \text{CO}_2 (g) + 9 \text{H}_2\text{O(l)}
\]

\( \Delta G = \text{–1000 kJ mol}^{-1} \)

The table on p. 244 shows that even a \( \Delta G \) of only \( \text{–50 kJ mol}^{-1} \) gives rise to a huge equilibrium constant: \( \text{–1000 kJ mol}^{-1} \) gives an equilibrium constant of \( 10^{175} \) (at 298 K), a number too vast to contemplate (there are ‘only’ about \( 10^{86} \) atoms in the observable universe). This value of \( \Delta G \) (or the corresponding value for the equilibrium constant) suggests that isooctane simply could not exist in the presence of oxygen. Yet we put it into the fuel tanks of our cars every day—clearly something is wrong.

Since isooctane can exist in an atmosphere of oxygen despite the fact that the equilibrium position really would be completely on the side of the combustion products, the only conclusion we can draw must be that a mixture of isooctane and oxygen cannot be at equilibrium. A small burst of energy is needed to reach equilibrium: in a car engine, the spark plug provides this energy and combustion occurs. Without this burst of energy, the petrol is stable and no combustion occurs (as you will ruefully be aware if you have ever tried to start a car with a flat battery).

The mixture of petrol and oxygen is said to be thermodynamically unstable with respect to the products of the reaction, CO\(_2\) and H\(_2\)O, but kinetically stable. We can be certain that they are thermodynamically unstable because even if the same small energy burst were applied to the products CO\(_2\) and H\(_2\)O, they would never convert back to petrol and oxygen.

Kinetically stable means that although the mixture could convert to a more stable set of products, it doesn’t do so because an energy barrier separates it from those products. An energy level diagram for a reaction such as the combustion of isooctane is shown below. The products are more stable (lower in energy) than the reactants, but to become the products, the reactants have to overcome a barrier to reaction. This barrier is called the activation energy and is usually given the symbol \( E_a \) or \( \Delta G^\ddagger \).
If a reaction cannot proceed until the reactants have sufficient energy to overcome the activation energy barrier, it is clear that, the smaller the barrier, the easier it will be for the reaction to proceed. Likewise, the more energy we give the starting materials in the form of temperature, the more likely it is that they will collide with sufficient combined energy to cross the activation energy barrier. Unlike equilibria, which can change in either direction, reaction rates always increase at higher temperatures.

A word of warning, however: heating is not all good for the chemist—not only does it speed up the reaction we want, it will also probably speed up lots of other reactions that we don’t want, including perhaps decomposition of the product! We shall see how we can get round this, but first we shall take a closer look at what determines how fast a reaction takes place.

**The route from reactants to products: the transition state**

The combustion of kinetically stable fuel releases lots of energy by a very complex mechanism. To understand how energy is involved in the progress of a reaction we will need to take a much more simple and familiar mechanism. The reduction of a ketone to an alcohol with sodium borohydride will do. You met this reaction in Chapters 5 and 6 and it should by now be a familiar part of your chemical vocabulary. An example is shown in the margin: in this particular case, the ketone is rather hindered by the adjacent tert-butyl group, and the reaction must be heated to form the product. Evidently, then, there is an activation barrier that must be overcome.

Let’s think about what that barrier might be. Although the final product is an alcohol, as you know well, the first step is transfer of a hydrogen atom from boron to the carbonyl group, as shown in the mechanism below. Overall, as shown in the energy profile diagram, the products of this step are more stable than the starting materials ($\Delta G$ is negative), but to get there the reaction has to pass through the activation energy barrier ($\Delta G^\ddagger$). This barrier—the highest energy point on the profile—must correspond to some structure (which we have shown in square brackets) in which the hydrogen atom is only partly transferred from B to C, and the carbonyl group is only partly broken. We call this structure—the highest energy form through which the molecules must pass to get from reactants to products—the **transition state**. It is often represented in square brackets, frequently with a double dagger symbol $\ddagger$ (to match the activation energy $\Delta G^\ddagger$).

Notice that the transition state has some features of the reactants and some features of the products. The B–H bond is partly broken, so we represent it as a dotted line, and the new H–C bond is partly formed, so likewise that is dotted too, as is the breaking C=O bond. The negative charge, which starts associated with B and ends on the oxygen atom, is shown in brackets in both locations, to indicate that it is shared between them. It takes energy to get to the transition state because the H has to move away from the B without significant compensation.
But once the transition state is passed, the formation of a stable C–H bond and the migration of a charge to electronegative oxygen means that stability is regained. A transition state is always unstable and can never be isolated: if the reaction proceeds just a little more forwards or backwards, the energy of the system is lower. Isolating a transition state would be like balancing a marble on top of a bowling ball.

**Transition state**

A transition state is a structure that represents an energy maximum on passing from reactants to products. It is not a real molecule in that it may have partially formed or broken bonds and may have more atoms or groups around the central atom than allowed by valence bond rules. It cannot be isolated because it is an energy maximum and any change in its structure leads to a more stable arrangement. A transition state is often shown by putting it in square brackets with a double-dagger superscript.

**Why some reactions are done at low temperature**

So far in this chapter you have seen that while heating a reaction can change the position of an equilibrium, the usual reason for heating a reaction is to speed it up by giving the reactants more energy to allow them to overcome the activation barrier. But as we said in the introduction, in a typical laboratory you will see many reactions being carried out at low temperatures. Why might a chemist want to slow a reaction down?

Well, often molecules can react in several different ways. A good reaction will have a lower activation energy than these alternatives. But often there are other unavoidable reactions waiting in the wings that will compete with the one that is wanted if the molecules have enough energy. The ideal situation is to give the starting materials enough energy to do the reaction we want, but not enough to do anything else: and that means keeping the reaction cold.

A famous example of a reaction which must be kept cold is the diazotization of anilines to make diazonium salts. The reaction involves treating the amine with nitrous acid (HONO) made from NaNO₂ and HCl. You need not think about the mechanism at this stage—you will meet it in Chapter 22—but the key point is that the product is a rather unstable but very useful diazonium salt. The diazotization takes place readily at room temperature, but unfortunately so does the decomposition of the product to give a phenol. By lowering the temperature, we supply insufficient energy for the phenol formation, but the diazotization still works just fine.
The use of organolithiums (which you saw in Chapter 9) typically involves low temperatures, often as low as –78 °C. Organolithiums are very reactive, and the addition or deprotonation reactions they undergo have activation energies sufficiently low that they proceed even at such temperatures. However, they do also have a tendency to attack some of the solvents which they dissolve best in, such as THF. If lithiations are attempted at higher temperatures, THF also reacts with s-BuLi to give the surprising by-products discussed in Chapter 35.

**Reaction intermediates**

Our mechanism for reduction of the ketone with borohydride is of course not yet complete: there is another step to follow—the protonation of the alkoxide by the ethanol solvent. We can add this step to our energy profile diagram.

Now the product of the first stage of the reaction is the starting material for the second, which follows on straightaway because the activation energy for the second reaction, the proton transfer, is smaller than for the first one. Notice that we have now labelled the middle set of structures, which includes the alkoxide ‘intermediate’. An intermediate is a staging post in a reaction pathway: it is stable for a finite (if short) period. Unlike a transition state it is a minimum rather than a maximum on the reaction energy profile, and therefore has a finite existence—an intermediate could, in principle, be isolated, and many have been (particularly at low temperature).

**Intermediates and transition states**

- A transition state represents an energy maximum—any small displacement leads to a more stable product. It can never be isolated.
- An intermediate is a molecule or ion that represents a localized energy minimum—an energy barrier must be overcome before the intermediate forms something more stable. An intermediate can in principle be isolated (although in practice its high energy can make this difficult).
Catalysis

You’ve met the idea in several places in this book (and probably elsewhere) that a catalyst increases the rate of a reaction. From what you have just read, it must therefore be the case that a catalyst lowers the activation energy for a reaction. It can do this in one or both of two ways: it can lower the energy of the transition state (as shown in the diagram on the left, or it can raise the energy of the starting materials.

To illustrate the point with a simple example, let’s take a reaction which simply does not work without a catalyst: the isomerization of butene. As you saw on p. 105, cis-but-2-ene is about 2 kJ mol⁻¹ higher in energy than trans-but-2-ene. This small energy difference would correspond to a 2.2:1, 70:30, trans:cis ratio of alkenes if they were in equilibrium. But it’s a big if: the activation energy needed to get from one to the other is of the order of 260 kJ mol⁻¹, which is practically unattainable. A quick calculation predicts that the half-life for the reaction would be approximately 10²⁵ years at room temperature, a time many orders of magnitude longer than the age of the universe. At 500 °C, however, the half-life is a more reasonable 4 hours, but unfortunately, when most alkenes are heated to these sorts of temperatures other unwanted reactions occur.

In order to interconvert the cis and trans isomers we must use a different strategy: catalysis. You will meet several ways of doing this in Chapter 27, but for the moment we will use just one: catalytic acid. As you saw in Chapter 5, alkenes are nucleophiles, and either isomer of but-2-ene can react with H⁺ from acid to form a transient species known as a carbocation. The activation energy for formation of the carbocation is much less than that for rotation about the C=C bond. The carbocation can now easily lose a proton again, to reform either cis- or trans-but-2-ene, regenerating the catalyst and allowing the interconversion to take place. Overall, the activation energy is much lower than in the uncatalysed reaction. We will come back to other examples of catalysis later in the chapter.

Solvents

The nature of the solvent used in reactions often has a profound effect on how the reaction proceeds. Sometimes, if the solvent is also a reagent, the choice is easy: it’s a good idea to carry out hydrolyses of esters in water and formations of esters in the appropriate alcohol because
the large concentration of the solvent drives the reaction towards the product, as explained on p. 208. Likewise, the solvent may also catalyse a reaction: ester formation from an acid chloride and an alcohol is often carried out in pyridine as a solvent because pyridine acts as a base catalyst of the reaction (p. 199).

On occasions, the choice of solvent is limited by simple features of the starting materials and products, such as their solubility or reactivity. Simple examples are cases where an inorganic salt is a reagent: ionic compounds are relatively insoluble in most organic solvents. Sodium bromide, for example, dissolves well in water, reasonably well in methanol, a little in ethanol, and hardly at all in most other organic solvents.

The insolubility of some salts in organic solvents can be used to drive an equilibrium in the direction required. For example, in the synthesis of this alkyl iodide from the alkyl bromide by reaction with sodium iodide, acetone is used as the solvent. Why? Well, sodium iodide is rather more soluble in acetone than is sodium bromide, so as sodium bromide is removed from the equilibrium mixture, more of the starting materials have to convert to the products to restore the equilibrium constant. You will meet more on this reaction in Chapter 15.

Water dissolves sodium bromide well because it solvates both cations and anions: electrostatic interactions with its δ− oxygen atoms can stabilize the positive sodium ions, while attraction to its δ+ hydrogen atoms can stabilize the negative bromide ion. Solvents which have polarized bonds like this are known as polar. Water and other alcohols are also called protic solvents because they have δ+ protons that can interact readily with anions.

Another group of polar solvents lack δ+ protons: these are the polar aprotic solvents, such as DMSO or DMF. Although they have a localized δ− at oxygen, which can solvate cations, they are much less good at solvating anions because their molecules do not have a localized accessible δ− region. In Chapter 10 (p. 213) you met a specific combination of t-BuOK and DMSO to help hydrolyse an amide. This is why DMSO is used here: it solvates the K⁺ cation, leaving the t-BuO⁻ unstabilized by solvation. It is desperate to become neutral by finding a proton. Metal alkoxides in DMSO are extremely basic, and when even sodium chloride is dissolved in DMSO the usually innocuous chloride ion becomes quite a powerful nucleophile, as you will see in Chapter 25.

A third group of solvents are not polar at all, but may still dissolve organic molecules quite well. These include hydrocarbons, chlorinated solvents (chloroform), and aromatic solvents (toluene, benzene).

The table below groups common solvents in classes with shared features, and also indicates their polarity. Polarity is measured in various ways—here we give the ‘dielectric constants’—but you do not need to remember the numbers. Learning the general position of a solvent in this sequence of polarity will, however, be a wise investment of your time.
By virtue of their ability or inability to solvate charged species, solvents can affect the course of reactions by stabilizing or destabilizing a transition state or an intermediate. Here’s a very simple example: the effect of solvent on one of the first ‘reactions’ in this chapter—the rotation about the C–N bond of an amide. The table in the margin shows the activation energy $\Delta G^\ddagger$ for C–N bond rotation in dimethylacetamide (DMA) in a range of solvents. You can immediately deduce that the rate of the rotation is fastest in the least polar solvent, cyclohexane, because the barrier is lowest. Why might this be?

To understand rates, we have to think about activation energies, in other words the difference in energy between the starting materials and the transition state. As you know, an amide in its ground state (in other words, its lowest energy state) is delocalized because of conjugation between the nitrogen’s lone pair and the carbonyl group. This delocalization leads to a degree of charge separation and polarization of the amide. But as the C–N bond rotates, the conjugation is broken because the molecule has to pass through a transition state in which the N lone pair is perpendicular to the $\pi$ system of the carbonyl group. The transition state is therefore less polar than the ground state.

Now, if we compare the effect on this rotation of a non-polar solvent and a polar solvent, this is what will happen. The polar ground state will be stabilized by the polar solvent, and so will be lower in energy, as you see on the right of the diagram below. But the less polar transition state will have about the same energy, whatever the polarity of the solvent. So, in a polar solvent, the amount of energy required to get from the ground state to the transition state (this is the activation energy, $E_a$ or $\Delta G^\ddagger$) is greater than in a non-polar solvent, and bond rotation is slower.
In Chapter 15 you will go on to meet a pair of mechanisms in which the polarity of the transition state is very different. You will now be prepared to expect some very significant solvent effects when such reactions take place.

- Solvents can affect the rate of a reaction by:
  - participating as a reagent
  - acting as a catalyst
  - dissolving the reagents
  - differentially stabilizing the ground state and transition state.

## Rate equations

We’ve pointed out that reactions go faster at higher temperature because the starting materials have more energy. But temperature is not the sole controller of rate. Two molecules might well collide with plenty of energy, but unless they are two molecules that can actually react, that energy will be lost as heat. Going back again to the reduction of p. 251 (a reminder in the margin), it’s obvious that only collisions between ketone (A) and borohydride (B) get us anywhere—there will be plenty of non-productive collisions between A and A or B and B. Obviously the chance of a collision between A and B is increased the more of each you have, and especially if you have lots of A and lots of B. In fact, the chance of a successful reaction is proportional to the product of the concentration of A and the concentration of B. We can express this in a simple rate equation:

\[
\text{rate of reaction} = k \times [A] \times [B]
\]

where the value \( k \) represents the rate constant for the reaction. The value of \( k \) is different for different reactions, and it also varies with temperature. The size of \( k \) also contains information about how likely it is that the molecules will collide with the right orientation. We call this analysis of the factors affecting the rate of the reactions the kinetics of the reaction.

There is of course a link between the activation energy of a reaction and its rate, and the connection between them is known as the Arrhenius equation, after the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius (1859–1927) who formulated it and won the Nobel Prize in 1903.

\[
k = A e^{-Ea/RT}
\]

where \( k \) is the rate constant for the reaction, \( R \) is the gas constant (see p. 243), \( T \) is the temperature (in kelvin), and \( A \) is a quantity known as the pre-exponential factor. Because of the minus sign in the exponential term, the larger the activation energy, \( E_a \), the slower the reaction but the higher the temperature, the faster the reaction.

As we discussed on p. 253, the reaction between borohydride and the ketone to make an alkoxide is only the first step of this reaction. Since ethanol likewise has to collide with the alkoxide for this second step to take place, you might very reasonably ask yourself why the rate of formation of the alcohol product does not also depend on \([\text{EtOH}]\): why is the rate equation not

\[
\text{rate of reaction} = k \times [\text{ketone}] \times [\text{borohydride}] \times [\text{EtOH}]
\]

The answer is hinted at in the energy profile diagram you saw on p. 253, which is reproduced below. The activation energy for the proton transfer step is lower than for the addition step, so it happens faster. It fact, it can happen fast whatever the concentration of ethanol, so ethanol does not appear in the rate equation. The overall rate of any reaction is determined only by what happens in the mechanistic step that is slowest, known as the rate-determining step or rate-limiting step. This is a general point about anything that happens in several
steps: if you want to empty a football stadium through a set of turnstiles, it is only the rate at which the turnstiles operate that limits the emptying speed—it doesn’t matter how quickly or slowly people walk away after they are through.

At several points in Chapters 6, 9, 10, and 11 we have said things like ‘don’t worry about the details of the proton transfers’ and now you know why: proton transfers between N and O atoms are fast, and other steps are almost always rate determining. It doesn’t really matter how you get a proton from one electronegative atom to another—in reality it will be flitting all over the place and any reasonable route is just as correct as any other.

- Proton transfers, particularly between O or N, are always fast and only rarely rate determining.

**Kinetics gives us an insight into the mechanism of a reaction**

In Chapters 10 and 11 you met some other multistep reactions with intermediates. Take this example: an alkoxide RO⁻ will react with an acid chloride to form an ester. If we measure how the rate of the formation of the ester varies with the concentration of the alkoxide and of the acid chloride, we discover a rate equation

\[
rate = k[\text{MeCOCl}][\text{RO}^-]
\]

Both the acid chloride and alkoxide must therefore be involved in the rate-determining step, which, as you know from Chapter 10, must be the formation of the tetrahedral intermediate. This intermediate is less stable than the starting materials, so the reaction energy profile takes the form shown below, with the highest transition state corresponding to the addition step.
The presence of two species in the rate equation confirms that the reaction is bimolecular (i.e. it involves two molecules), and we call such rate equations second order.

Numerous kinetic studies have confirmed that this mechanism, with a tetrahedral intermediate, is the normal pathway by which substitution reactions at carbonyl groups take place, as we explained in Chapter 10. You could draw a similar pathway, and a similar energy profile, for all of the reactions shown on p. 215, adjusting the energies of the starting materials, products, and intermediates appropriately, but all of them are second order, with rate-limiting attack on the carbonyl group.

However, there are occasional exceptions. These are not important enough for you to consider them likely when you write substitution mechanisms, but they do illustrate the fact that kinetics tells us about mechanism.

Here is one: when an acid chloride is heated with an alcohol in the absence of base, an ester forms. However, it turns out that under these conditions the rate equation is first order: it does not matter how much or how little alcohol is added, the rate depends only on the concentration of the acid chloride:

\[
\text{rate of reaction} = k[R^1\text{COCl}]
\]

Evidently, from the rate equation, no collision between the acid chloride and the alcohol is required for this reaction to go. The rate-determining step must be unimolecular. What actually happens is that the acid chloride decomposes by itself to give a reactive cation with the loss of the good leaving group Cl⁻.

Unusual unimolecular mechanism for ester formation

There are three steps in this reaction scheme, although the last is a trivial deprotonation. The energy barrier must be highest in the first step, which involves the acid chloride alone. The cation is an intermediate (although a short-lived one) with a real existence that reacts rapidly with the alcohol in a step that does not affect the rate of the reaction. The easiest way to picture this detail is in an energy profile diagram:
Notice that the products are again lower in energy than the starting materials, and although there are three transition states in this reaction, only the highest-energy transition state (the first one here) matters in determining the reaction rate. The reaction now passes through two intermediates (local minima). It is often the case that when intermediates are involved in a reaction, the highest-energy transition state is associated with the formation of the highest-energy intermediate.

**What does third-order kinetics mean?**

The first-order kinetics of this unusual substitution reaction is here to illustrate a point, but it should not distract you from the fact that most nucleophilic substitutions of carboxylic acid derivatives (the reactions you met in Chapter 10) are bimolecular reactions with rate-determining formation of the tetrahedral intermediate.

However, something different again happens when we come to reactions of amides. Because of the delocalization of the nitrogen lone pair into the carbonyl group, nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group is very difficult. In addition, the leaving group (NH$_2^-$, with $pK_a$ of NH$_3$ about 35) is very bad indeed.
What happens as a consequence is that in the hydrolysis of amides the second step—the breakdown of the tetrahedral intermediate—becomes rate determining. But this offers the opportunity for base catalysis of this step. If a second hydroxide ion removes the proton from the tetrahedral intermediate, the loss of NH$_2$ from what is now a dianion is made easier, and a stable carboxylate ion is formed directly.

\[
\text{rate-determining step}
\]

Notice that in the first mechanism just one hydroxide ion is involved, whereas now two are involved: one is consumed to form product, but the second is in fact regenerated when the product NH$_2^-$ anion reacts with water—in other words the second hydroxide ion is a catalyst.

The rate equation for the amide hydrolysis reflects this involvement of two hydroxide ions: the rate depends on the square of the hydroxide ion concentration and it is third order. We’ll label the rate constant $k_3$ to emphasize this:

\[
\text{rate} = k_3[\text{MeCONH}_2] \times [\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

But you may be asking yourself where this third-order kinetics comes from, since the hydroxide ions are not actually involved in the rate-determining step. In fact, third-order kinetics hardly ever mean the real simultaneous termolecular collision of three molecules at once—such events are just too rare.

The rate-determining step here is actually unimolecular—the collapse of the dianion. So we expect

\[
\text{rate} = k[\text{dianion}]
\]

We don’t know the concentration of the dianion but we do know that it’s in equilibrium with the monoanion—we’ll call this equilibrium constant $K_2$:

\[
K_2 = \frac{[\text{dianion}]}{[\text{monoanion}][\text{HO}^-]}
\]

and so $[\text{dianion}] = K_2[\text{monoanion}][\text{HO}^-]$.

This sort of helps, but we still don’t know what $[\text{monoanion}]$ is, other than that it’s again in equilibrium, this time with the amide—we’ll call this equilibrium constant $K_1$:

\[
K_1 = \frac{[\text{monoanion}]}{[\text{amide}][\text{HO}^-]}
\]

and so $[\text{monoanion}] = K_1[\text{amide}][\text{HO}^-]$.

Substituting these values in the simple rate equation we discover that

\[
\text{rate} = k[\text{dianion}] \text{ becomes}
\]

\[
\text{rate} = kK_1K_2[\text{amide}][\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

The third-order kinetics result from two equilibria starting with the amide and involving two hydroxide ions, followed by a unimolecular rate-determining step, and the ‘third-order rate constant’ $k_3$ is actually a product of the two equilibrium constants and a first-order rate constant:

\[
k_3 = k \times K_1 \times K_2
\]

This often happens with reactions with late rate-determining steps: the rate constant can depend on the concentrations of any species involved before the rate-determining step (although not necessarily in that step itself) but never depends on species involved after the rate-determining step.
Just because a proposed mechanism gives a rate equation that fits the experimental data, it does not necessarily mean that it is the right mechanism; all it means is that it is consistent with the experimental facts so far, but there may be other mechanisms that also fit. It is then up to the experimenter to design cunning experiments to try to rule out other possibilities.

Mechanisms are given throughout this book—eventually you will learn to predict what mechanism to expect for a given type of reaction, but this is because earlier experimentalists have worked out the mechanisms by a study of kinetics and other methods.

**Catalysis in carbonyl substitution reactions**

The amide hydrolysis you have just met is much faster in base because base (in this case hydroxide) deprotonates the intermediate and makes it more reactive. The same is true for many other base-catalysed processes: often it is the nucleophile that is made more reactive by deprotonation to form an anion. For example, ester hydrolysis is faster at higher pH because the higher the pH the more hydroxide there is to act as a nucleophile.

We can plot this on a graph of rate vs. pH:

The rate equation at high pH is second order, as you expect, and depends on the concentration of hydroxide and the concentration of the ester. Notice, though, that below pH 7 the rate starts to increase again as the concentration of $[\text{H}^+]$ increases. This is because ester hydrolysis is also acid catalysed, as you saw in Chapter 10. At acidic pH, a new mechanism takes over in which protonation of the carbonyl group accelerates attack of weakly nucleophilic water.

The reaction is still bimolecular but the rate constant is different: we can represent the two processes by two rate equations, labelling the rate constants $k_a$ and $k_b$ with the suffixes ‘a’ for acid and ‘b’ for base to show more clearly what we mean:

rate of ester hydrolysis in acid (pH < 7) solution = $k_a[\text{MeCO}_2\text{R}][\text{H}_2\text{O}^+]$

rate of ester hydrolysis in basic (pH > 7) solution = $k_b[\text{MeCO}_2\text{R}][\text{HO}^-]$

This is typical acid–base catalysis, known as ‘specific acid–base catalysis’ because the specific acid and base involved are H⁺ (or $\text{H}_2\text{O}^+$) and OH⁻. The form of the pH dependence of the rate tells us that there is a choice of two mechanisms—the one that is faster is the one that is observed.

You met a reaction in Chapter 11 whose rate has a very different pH dependence: imine formation. To remind you, here is the mechanism again. We pointed out in Chapter 11 that
the reaction is acid catalysed because acid is needed to help water leave. But too much acid is a problem because it protonates the starting amine and slows the reaction down.

For these reasons, the pH–rate profile for imine formation looks like this: there is a maximum rate around pH 6, and either side the reaction goes more slowly.

The difference now is that at low pH, the rate-determining step changes from being the dehydration step (which can then go very fast because of the high concentration of acid) to being the addition step, which is slowed down by protonation of the amine. Whereas a reaction will always go by the fastest of the available mechanisms, it is also bound to go at the rate of the slowest step in that mechanism.

**Multistep reaction rates**

- The overall rate of a multistep reaction is decided by:
  - the fastest of the available mechanisms
  - the slowest of the possible rate-determining steps.

**Catalysis by weak bases**

In Chapter 10 we used pyridine as a catalyst in carbonyl substitution reactions, even though it is only a weak base. Catalysis by pyridine involves two mechanisms, and is discussed on p. 200. Acetate ion is another weak base which can catalyse the formation of esters from anhydrides:

The problem is, it is far too weak a base (acetic acid has a $pK_a$ of 5) to deprotonate the alcohol ($pK_a$ 15), so it can’t be forming alkoxide (in the way that hydroxide would for example). But what it can do is to remove the proton from the alcohol as the reaction occurs.
This type of catalysis, which is available to any base, not only strong bases, is called general base catalysis and will be discussed more in Chapter 39. It does not speed the reaction up very much but it does lower the energy of the transition state leading to the tetrahedral intermediate by avoiding the build-up of positive charge as the alcohol adds. The disadvantage of general base catalysis is that the first, rate-determining, step really is termolecular (unlike in the amide hydrolysis mechanism you met on p. 261). It is inherently unlikely that three molecules will collide with each other simultaneously. In this case, however, if ROH is the solvent, it will always be nearby in any collision so a termolecular step is just about acceptable.

Kinetic versus thermodynamic products

We started this chapter with a discussion of thermodynamics: the factors that govern equilibria. We then moved onto rates: the factors that determine the rate at which reactions proceed. Depending on the reaction, either may be more important, and in general:

- Reactions under thermodynamic control have outcomes that depend on the position of an equilibrium and therefore the relative stability of the possible products.
- Reactions under kinetic control have outcomes that depend on the rate at which the reaction proceeds, and therefore on the relative energies of the transition states leading to the alternative products.

Before we leave this chapter, we will introduce an example of a reaction where thermodynamic control and kinetic control lead to different outcomes—in other words, where the fastest reaction does not give the most stable possible product.

The reaction is one you have not yet met, but it is quite a simple one, and it follows an unsurprising mechanism. It is the reaction of an alkyne with hydrogen chloride in the presence of alumina (Al₂O₃). The reaction produces two geometrical isomers of a chloroalkene.

Alkynes, like alkenes, are nucleophiles, and so the mechanism involves first of all attack by the alkyne on HCl, followed by recombination of the vinyl cation, which is formed with the chloride anion.

The two alkenes are labelled E and Z. After about 2 hours the main product is the Z-alkene. However, this is not the case in the early stages of the reaction. The graph below shows how the proportions of the starting material and the two products change with time.

Points to note:

- When the alkyne concentration drops almost to zero (10 minutes), the only alkene that has been formed is the E-alkene.
• As time increases, the amount of $E$-alkene decreases as the amount of $Z$-alkene increases.
• Eventually, the proportions of $E$- and $Z$-alkene do not change.

Since it is the $Z$-alkene that dominates at equilibrium, this must be lower in energy than the $E$-alkene. Since we know the ratio of the products at equilibrium, we can work out the difference in energy between the two isomers:

\[
\text{ratio of } E:Z\text{-alkenes at equilibrium} = 1:35
\]

\[
K_{eq} = \frac{[Z]}{[E]} = 35
\]

\[
\Delta G = -RT \ln K = -8.314 \times 298 \times \ln(35) = -8.8 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}
\]

that is, the $Z$-alkene is 8.8 kJ mol$^{-1}$ lower in energy than the $E$-alkene.

However, although the $Z$-alkene is more stable, the $E$-alkene is formed faster under these conditions: the route to the $E$-alkene must have a smaller activation energy barrier than trans addition. This is quite easy to understand: the intermediate cation has no double-bond geometry because the cationic $C$ is sp hybridized (linear). When chloride attacks, it prefers to attack from the side of the H atom rather than the (bigger) methyl group.

There must then be some mechanism by which the quickly formed $E$-alkene is converted into the more stable $Z$-alkene. The conditions are acidic, so the most likely mechanism is the acid-catalysed alkene isomerization you saw earlier in the chapter:

This information can be summarized on an energy profile diagram:
Initially, the alkyne is converted into the \( \text{E-alkene} \) via the intermediate linear cation. The activation energy for this step is labelled \( \Delta G^\dagger_1 \). The \( \text{E-alkene} \) can convert to the \( \text{Z-isomer} \) via an intermediate, with activation energy \( \Delta G^\dagger_2 \). Since \( \Delta G^\dagger_1 \) is smaller than \( \Delta G^\dagger_2 \), the \( \text{E-alkene} \) forms faster than it isomerizes, and all the alkyne is rapidly converted to the \( \text{E-alkene} \). But over the course of the reaction, the \( \text{E-alkene} \) slowly isomerizes to the \( \text{Z-alkene} \). An equilibrium is eventually reached that favours the \( \text{Z-alkene} \) because it is more stable (by 8.8 kJ mol\(^{-1} \), as we calculated earlier). Why doesn’t the \( \text{Z-alkene} \) form faster than the \( \text{E} \)? Well, as we suggested above, the transition state for its formation from the linear cation must be higher in energy than the transition state for formation of the \( \text{E-alkene} \), because of steric hindrance.

**Kinetic and thermodynamic products**

- The \( \text{E-alkene} \) is formed faster and is known as the kinetic product or the product of kinetic control.
- The \( \text{Z-alkene} \) is more stable and is known as the thermodynamic product or the product of thermodynamic control.

If we wanted to isolate the kinetic product, the \( \text{E-alkene} \), we would carry out the reaction at low temperature and not leave it long enough for equilibration. If, on the other hand, we want the thermodynamic product, the \( \text{Z-alkene} \), we would leave the reaction for longer at higher temperatures to make sure that the larger energy barrier yielding the most stable product can be overcome.

**Summary of mechanisms from Chapters 6–12**

In Chapter 5 we introduced basic arrow-drawing. A lot has happened since then and this is a good opportunity to pull some strands together. You may like to be reminded:

1. When molecules react together, one is the electrophile and one is the nucleophile.
2. Electrons flow from an electron-rich to an electron-poor centre.
3. Charge is conserved in each step of a reaction.

These three considerations will help you draw the mechanism of a reaction that you have not previously met.

**Types of reaction arrows**

1. Simple reaction arrows showing that a reaction goes from left to right or right to left.

   ![Reaction Arrows](image)

2. Equilibrium arrows showing the extent and direction of equilibrium.

   ![Equilibrium Arrows](image)

3. Delocalization or conjugation arrows showing two different ways to draw the same molecule. The two structures (‘canonical forms’ or ‘resonance structures’) must differ only in the position of electrons.

   ![Delocalization Arrows](image)
Using curly arrows

1. The curly arrow should show clearly where the electrons come from and where they go to.

\[
\text{is better than}
\]

2. If electrophilic attack on a π or σ bond leads to the bond being broken, the arrows should show clearly which atom bonds to the electrophile.

\[
\text{is better than}
\]

3. Reactions of the carbonyl group are dominated by the breaking of the π bond. If you use this arrow first on an unfamiliar reaction of a carbonyl compound, you will probably find a reasonable mechanism.

Shortcuts in drawing mechanisms

1. The most important is the double-headed arrow on the carbonyl group used during a substitution reaction.

\[
\text{is equivalent to:}
\]

2. The symbol ±H⁺ is shorthand for the gain and loss of a proton in the same step (usually involving N, O, or S: such steps are usually kinetically very fast).

\[
\text{is equivalent to:}
\]

Further reading


A physical chemistry text such as *Physical Chemistry*, 9th edn, by P. Atkins and J. de Paula, OUP, Oxford, 2011, will give you much more mathematical detail.


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
The differences between carbon and proton NMR

We introduced nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) in Chapter 3 as part of a three-pronged attack on the problem of determining molecular structure. We showed that mass spectrometry weighs the molecules, infrared spectroscopy tells us about functional groups, and $^{13}$C and $^1$H NMR tell us about the hydrocarbon skeleton. We concentrated on $^{13}$C NMR because it’s simpler, and we were forced to admit that we were leaving the details of the most important technique of all—proton ($^1$H) NMR—until a later chapter because it is more complicated than $^{13}$C NMR. This is that chapter and we must now tackle those complications. We hope you will see $^1$H NMR for the beautiful and powerful technique that it surely is. The difficulties are worth mastering for this is the chemist’s primary weapon in the battle to solve structures.

We will make use of $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR evidence for structure throughout this book, and it is essential that you are familiar with the explanations in this chapter before you read further.

Proton NMR differs from $^{13}$C NMR in a number of ways.

- $^1$H is the major isotope of hydrogen (99.985% natural abundance), while $^{13}$C is only a minor isotope (1.1%).
- $^1$H NMR is quantitative: the area under the peak tells us the number of hydrogen nuclei, while $^{13}$C NMR may give strong or weak peaks from the same number of $^{13}$C nuclei.
- Protons interact magnetically (‘couple’) to reveal the connectivity of the structure, while $^{13}$C is too rare for coupling between $^{13}$C nuclei to be seen.

$^1$H NMR’ and ‘proton NMR’ are interchangeable terms. All nuclei contain protons of course, but chemists often use ‘proton’ specifically for the nucleus of a hydrogen atom, either as part of a molecule or in its ‘free’ form as $\text{H}^+$. This is how it will be used in this chapter.
• $^1$H NMR shifts give a more reliable indication of the local chemistry than that given by $^{13}$C spectra.

We shall examine each of these points in detail and build up a full understanding of proton NMR spectra.

Proton NMR spectra are recorded in the same way as $^{13}$C NMR spectra: radio waves are used to study the energy level differences of nuclei in a magnetic field, but this time they are $^1$H and not $^{13}$C nuclei. Hydrogen nuclei in a magnetic field have two energy levels: they can be aligned either with or against the applied magnetic field.

$^1$H and $^{13}$C spectra have many similarities: the scale runs from right to left and the zero point is given by the same reference compound, although it is the proton resonance of Me$_4$Si rather than the carbon resonance that defines the zero point. You will notice at once that the scale is much smaller, ranging over only about 10 ppm instead of the 200 ppm needed for carbon. This is because the variation in the chemical shift is a measure of the shielding of the nucleus by the electrons around it. There is inevitably less change possible in the distribution of two electrons around a hydrogen nucleus than in that of the eight valence electrons around a carbon nucleus. Here is the $^1$H NMR spectrum of acetic acid, which you first saw in Chapter 3.

Integration tells us the number of hydrogen atoms in each peak

You know from Chapter 3 that the position of a signal in an NMR spectrum tells us about its environment. In acetic acid the methyl group is next to the electron-withdrawing carbonyl group and so is slightly deshielded at about $\delta$ 2.0 ppm and the acidic proton itself, attached to O, is very deshielded at $\delta$ 11.2 ppm. The same factor that makes this proton acidic—the O–H bond is polarized towards oxygen—also makes it resonate at low field. So far things are much the same as in $^{13}$C NMR. Now for a difference. In $^1$H NMR the size of the peaks is also important: the area under the peaks is exactly proportional to the number of protons. Proton spectra are normally integrated, that is, the area under the peaks is computed and recorded as a line with steps corresponding to the area, like this.
Simply measuring the height of the steps with a ruler gives you the ratio of the numbers of protons represented by each peak. In many spectra this will be measured for you and reported as a number at the bottom of the spectrum. Knowing the atomic composition (from the mass spectrum) we also know the distribution of protons of various kinds. Here the heights are 6 mm and 18 mm, a ratio of about 1:3. The compound is C₂H₄O₂ so, since there are four H atoms altogether, the peaks must contain 1 × H and 3 × H, respectively.

In the spectrum of 1,4-dimethoxybenzene there are just two signals in the ratio of 3:2. This time the compound is C₈H₁₀O₂ so the true ratio must be 6:4. The positions of the two signals are exactly where you would expect them to be from our discussion of the regions of the NMR spectrum in Chapter 3: the 4H aromatic signal is in the left-hand half of the spectrum, between 5 and 10 ppm, where we expect to see protons attached to sp² C atoms, while the 6H signal is in the right-hand half of the spectrum, where we expect to see protons attached to sp³ C atoms.

In this next example it is easy to assign the spectrum simply by measuring the steps in the integral. There are two identical methyl groups (CMe₂) with six Hs, one methyl group by itself with three Hs, the OH proton (1 H), the CH₂ group next to the OH (two Hs), and finally the CH₃CH₂ group between the oxygen atoms in the ring (four Hs).

We will come back to the regions of the ¹H NMR spectrum in more detail in just a moment, but we introduced them in Chapter 3 on p. 60.
Before we go on, a note about the solvent peaks shown in brown in these spectra. Proton NMR spectra are generally recorded in solution in deuterochloroform (CDCl₃)—that is, chloroform (CHCl₃) with the ¹H replaced by ²H (deuterium). The proportionality of the size of the peak to the number of protons tells you why: if you ran a spectrum in CHCl₃, you would see a vast peak for all the solvent Hs because there would be much more solvent than the compound you wanted to look at. Using CDCl₃ cuts out all extraneous protons. ²H atoms have different nuclear properties and so don’t show up in the ¹H spectrum. Nonetheless, CDCl₃ is always unavoidably contaminated with a small amount of CHCl₃, giving rise to the small peak at 7.25 ppm. Spectra may equally well be recorded in other deuterated solvents such as water (D₂O), methanol (CD₃OD), or benzene (C₆D₆).

**Regions of the proton NMR spectrum**

All the H atoms in the last example were attached to sp³ carbons, so you will expect them to fall between 0 and 5 ppm. However, you can clearly see that H atoms that are nearer to oxygen are shifted downfield within the 0–5 ppm region, to larger δ values (here as far as 3.3 and 3.9 ppm). We can use this fact to build some more detail into our picture of the regions of the ¹H NMR spectrum.

These regions hold for protons attached to C: protons attached to O or N can come almost anywhere on the spectrum. Even for C–H signals the regions are approximate and overlap quite a lot. You should use the chart as a basic guide, and you should aim to learn these regions. But you will also need to build up a more detailed understanding of the factors affecting proton chemical shift. To help you achieve this understanding, we now need to examine the classes of proton in more detail and examine the reasons for their particular shifts. It is important that you grasp these reasons.

In this chapter you will see a lot of numbers—chemical shifts and differences in chemical shifts. We need these to show that the ideas behind ¹H NMR are securely based in fact. You do not need to learn these numbers. Comprehensive tables can be found at the end of Chapter 18, which we hope you will find useful for reference while you are solving problems.

**Protons on saturated carbon atoms**

**Chemical shifts are related to the electronegativity of substituents**

We shall start with protons on saturated carbon atoms. The top half of the diagram below shows how the protons in a methyl group are shifted more and more as the atom attached to them gets more electronegative.
When we are dealing with single atoms as substituents, these effects are straightforward and more or less additive. If we go on adding electronegative chlorine atoms to a carbon atom, electron density is progressively removed from it and the carbon nucleus and the hydrogen atoms attached to it are progressively deshielded. You can see this in the bottom half of the diagram above. Dichloromethane, CH₂Cl₂, and chloroform, CHCl₃, are commonly used as solvents and their shifts will become familiar to you if you look at a lot of spectra.

**Proton chemical shifts tell us about chemistry**

The truth is that shifts and electronegativity are not perfectly correlated. The key property is indeed electron withdrawal but it is the electron-withdrawing power of the whole substituent in comparison with the carbon and hydrogen atoms in the CH skeleton that matters. Methyl groups joined to the same element—nitrogen, say—may have very different shifts if the substituent is an amino group (CH₃–NH₂ has δH for the CH₃ group = 2.41 ppm) or a nitro group (CH₃–NO₂ has δH = 4.33 ppm). A nitro group is much more electron-withdrawing than an amino group.

What we need is a quick guide rather than some detailed correlations, and the simplest is this: all functional groups except very electron-withdrawing ones shift methyl groups from 1 ppm (where you find them if they are not attached to a functional group) downfield to about 2 ppm. Very electron-withdrawing groups shift methyl groups to about 3 ppm. This is the sort of thing it is worth learning.

---

### Estimating the chemical shift of a methyl group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methyl group attached to no electron-withdrawing functional groups</th>
<th>Methyl attached to electron-withdrawing or conjugating functional group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>standard Me signal at about 1 ppm</td>
<td>move downfield by 1 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me–X signal at about 3 ppm</td>
<td>move downfield by 2 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X can be...</td>
<td>X can be...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oxygen-based functional groups: ethers (OR), esters (OCOR)</td>
<td>carbonyl groups: acids (CO₂H), esters (CO₂R), ketones (COR), nitriles (CN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amides (NHCOR), sulfones (SO₂R)</td>
<td>amines (NHR), sulfides (SR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkene, arene, alkyné</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rather than trying to fit these data to some atomic property, even such a useful one as electronegativity, we should rather see these shifts as a useful measure of the electron-withdrawing power of the group in question. The NMR spectra are telling us about the chemistry. The largest shift you are likely to see for a methyl group is that caused by the nitro group, 3.43 ppm, at least twice the size of the shift for a carbonyl group. This gives us our first hint of some important chemistry: one nitro group is worth two carbonyl groups when it comes to electron-withdrawing power. You have already seen that electron withdrawal and acidity are related (Chapter 8) and in later chapters you will see that we can correlate the anion-stabilizing power of groups like carbonyl, nitro, and sulfone with proton NMR.

### Methyl groups give us information about the structure of molecules

It sounds rather unlikely that the humble methyl group could tell us much that is important about molecular structure—but just you wait. We shall look at four simple compounds and their NMR spectra—just the methyl groups, that is.

The first compound, the acid chloride in the margin, shows just one methyl signal containing nine Hs at δH 1.10. This tells us two things. All the protons in each methyl group are identical,
and all three methyl groups in the tertiary butyl ( t -butyl, or Me3C–) group are identical. This is because rotation about C–C single bonds, both about the CH3–C bond and about the (CH3)3C–C bond, is fast. Although at any one instant the hydrogen atoms in one methyl group, or the methyl groups in the t -butyl group, may differ, on average they are the same. The time-averaging process is fast rotation about a σ bond.

The second compound shows two 3H signals, one at 1.99 and one at 2.17 ppm. Unlike a C–C bond, the C=C double bond does not rotate at all and so the two methyl groups are different. One is on the same side of the alkene as (or ‘ cis to’) the –COCl group while the other is on the opposite side (or “trans”).

The next pair of compounds contain the CHO group. One is a simple aldehyde, the other an amide of formic acid: it is DMF, dimethylformamide. The first has two sorts of methyl group: a 3H signal at δH 1.81 for the SMe group and a 6H signal at δH 1.35 for the CMe2 group. The two methyl groups in the 6H signal are the same, again because of fast rotation about a C–C σ bond. The second compound also has two methyl signals, at 2.89 and 2.98 ppm, each 3H, and these are the two methyl groups on nitrogen. Restricted rotation about the N–CO bond must be making the two Me groups different. You will remember from Chapter 7 (p. 155) that the N–CO amide bond has considerable double-bond character because of conjugation: the lone pair electrons on nitrogen are delocalized into the carbonyl group.

Like double bonds, cage structures prevent bond rotation and can make the two protons of a CH2 group appear different. There are many flavouring compounds (terpenoids) from herbs that have structures like this. In the example here—myrtenal, from the myrtle bush—there is a four-membered ring bridged across a six-membered ring. The methyl groups on the other bridge are different because one is over the alkene while one is over the CH2. No rotation of any bonds within the cage is possible, so these methyl groups resonate at different frequencies (0.74 and 1.33 ppm). The same is true for the two H atoms of the CH2 group.

**CH and CH2 groups have higher chemical shift than CH3 groups**

Electronegative substituents have a similar effect on the protons of CH2 groups and CH groups, but with the added complication that CH3 groups have two other substituents and CH groups three. A simple CH2 (methylene) group resonates at 1.3 ppm, about 0.4 ppm further downfield than a comparable CH3 group (0.9 ppm), and a simple CH group resonates at 1.7 ppm, another 0.4 ppm downfield. Replacing each hydrogen atom in the CH3 group by a carbon atom causes a small downfield shift as carbon is slightly more electronegative (C 2.5; H 2.2) than hydrogen and therefore shields less effectively.

The benzyl group (PhCH2–) is very important in organic chemistry. It occurs naturally in the amino acid phenylalanine, which you met in Chapter 2. Phenylalanine has its CH2 signal at 3.0 ppm and is moved downfield from 1.3 ppm mostly by the benzene ring.

Amino acids are often ‘protected’ as the Cbz (carboxybenzyl) derivatives by reaction with an acid chloride (we’ll discuss this more in Chapter 23). Here is a simple example together
with the NMR spectrum of the product. Now the CH$_2$ group has gone further downfield to 5.1 ppm as it is next to both oxygen and phenyl.

![Chemical shifts of CH groups](image)

**Chemical shifts of CH groups**

A CH group in the middle of a carbon skeleton resonates at about 1.7 ppm—another 0.4 ppm downfield from a CH$_3$ group. It can have up to three substituents and these will cause further downfield shifts of about the same amount as we have already seen for CH$_3$ and CH$_2$ groups. Three examples from nature are nicotine, the methyl ester of lactic acid, and vitamin C. Nicotine, the compound in tobacco that causes the craving (although not the death, which is doled out instead by the carbon monoxide and tars in the smoke), has one hydrogen atom trapped between a simple tertiary amine and an aromatic ring at 3.24 ppm. The ester of lactic acid has a CH proton at 4.3 ppm. You could estimate this with reasonable accuracy using the guidelines in the two summary boxes on pp. 273 and 274. Take 1.7 (for the CH) and add 1.0 (for C=O) plus 2.0 (for OH) = 4.7 ppm—not far out. Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) has two CHs. One at 4.05 ppm is next to an OH group (estimate 1.7 + 2.0 for OH = 3.7 ppm) and one is next to a double bond and an oxygen atom at 4.52 ppm (estimate 1.7 + 1 for double bond + 2 for OH = 4.7 ppm). Again, not too bad for a rough estimate.

An interesting case is the amino acid phenylalanine whose CH$_2$ group we looked at a moment ago. It also has a CH group between the amino and the carboxylic acid groups. If we record the $^1$H NMR spectrum in D$_2$O, in either basic (NaOD) or acidic (DCl) solutions, we see a large shift of that CH group. In basic solution the CH resonates at 3.60 ppm and in acidic solution it resonates at 4.35 ppm. There is a double effect here: CO$_2$H and NH$_3^+$ are both more electron-withdrawing than CO$_2$ and NH$_3$ so both move the CH group downfield.

![Diagram of chemical shifts](image)
A simple guide to estimating chemical shifts

We suggest you start with a very simple (and therefore necessarily oversimplified) picture, which should be the basis for any further refinements. Start methyl groups at 0.9, methylenes (CH$_2$) at 1.3, and methines (CH) at 1.7 ppm. Any functional group is worth a 1 ppm downfield shift except oxygen and halogen which are worth 2 ppm. This diagram summarizes this approach.

![Chemical shift diagram](image)

The guide above is very rough and ready, but is easily remembered and you should aim to learn it. However, if you want to, you can make it slightly more accurate by adding further subdivisions and separating out the very electron-withdrawing groups (nitro, ester OCOR, fluoride), which shift by 3 ppm. This gives us the summary chart on this page, which we suggest you use as a reference. If you want even more detailed information, you can refer to the tables in Chapter 18 or better still the more comprehensive tables in any specialized text (see the Further reading section).

Summary chart of proton NMR shifts

![Summary chart of proton NMR shifts](image)
Answers deduced from this chart won’t be perfect but will give a good guide. Remember—these shifts are additive. Take a simple example, the ketoester below. There are just three signals and the integration alone distinguishes the two methyl groups from the CH₂ group. One methyl has been shifted from 0.9 ppm by about 1 ppm, the other by more than 2 ppm. The first must be next to C=O and the second next to oxygen. More precisely, 2.14 ppm is a shift of 1.24 ppm from our standard value (0.9 ppm) for a methyl group, about what we expect for a methyl ketone, while 3.61 ppm is a shift of 2.71 ppm, close to the expected 3.0 ppm for an ester joined through the oxygen atom. The CH₂ group is next to an ester and a ketone carbonyl group and so we expect it at 1.3 + 1.0 + 1.0 = 3.3 ppm, an accurate estimate, as it happens. We shall return to these estimates when we look at the spectra of unknown compounds.

The alkene region and the benzene region

In ¹³C NMR, alkene and benzene carbons came in the same region of the spectrum, but in the ¹H NMR spectrum the H atoms attached to arene C and alkene C atoms sort themselves into two groups. To illustrate this point, look at the ¹³C and ¹H chemical shifts of cyclohexene and benzene, shown in the margin. The two carbon signals are almost the same (1.3 ppm difference, < 1% of the total 200 ppm scale) but the proton signals are very different (1.6 ppm difference = 16% of the 10 ppm scale). There must be a fundamental reason for this.

The benzene ring current causes large shifts for aromatic protons

A simple alkene has an area of low electron density in the plane of the molecule because the π orbital has a node there, and the carbons and hydrogen nuclei lying in the plane gain no shielding from the π electrons.

The benzene ring looks similar at first sight, and the plane of the molecule is indeed a node for all the π orbitals. However, as we discussed in Chapter 7, benzene is aromatic—it has extra stability because the six π electrons fit into three very stable orbitals and are delocalized round the whole ring. The applied field sets up a ring current in these delocalized electrons that produces a local field rather like the field produced by the electrons around a nucleus. Inside the benzene ring the induced field opposes the applied field, but outside the ring it reinforces the applied field. The carbon atoms are in the ring itself and experience neither effect, but the hydrogens are outside the ring, feel a stronger applied field, and appear less shielded (i.e. more deshielded; larger chemical shift).
Cyclophanes and annulenes

You may think that it is rather pointless imagining what goes on inside an aromatic ring as we cannot have hydrogen atoms literally inside a benzene ring. However, we can get close. Compounds called cyclophanes have loops of saturated carbon atoms attached at both ends to the same benzene rings. You see here a structure for [7]-para-cyclophane, which has a string of seven CH₂ groups attached to the para positions of the same benzene ring. The four H atoms on the benzene ring itself appear as one signal at 7.07 ppm—a typical ring-current deshielded value for a benzene ring. The two CH₂ groups joined to the benzene ring (C1) are also deshielded by the ring current at 2.64 ppm. The next two sets of CH₂ groups on C2 and C3 are neither shielded nor deshielded at 1.0 ppm. But the middle CH₂ group in the chain (C4) must be pointing towards the ring in the middle of the π system and is heavily shielded by the ring current at –0.6 ppm.

With a larger aromatic ring it is possible actually to have hydrogen atoms inside the ring. Compounds are aromatic if they have 4n+2 delocalized electrons and this ring with nine double bonds, that is, 18 π electrons, is an example. The hydrogens outside the ring resonate in the aromatic region at rather low field (9.28 ppm) but the hydrogen atoms inside the ring resonate at an amazing –2.9 ppm, showing the strong shielding by the ring current. Such extended aromatic rings are called annulenes: you met them in Chapter 7.

Uneven electron distribution in aromatic rings

The 1H NMR spectrum of this simple aromatic amine has three peaks in the ratio 1:2:2, which must correspond to 3H:6H:6H. The 6.38 ppm signal clearly belongs to the protons round the benzene ring, but why are they at 6.38 and not at around 7.2 ppm? We must also distinguish the two methyl groups at 2.28 ppm from those at 2.89 ppm. The chart on p. 276 suggests that these should both be at about 2.4 ppm, close enough to 2.28 ppm but not to 2.89 ppm. The solution to both these puzzles is the distribution of electrons in the aromatic ring. Nitrogen feeds electrons into the π system, making it electron rich: the ring protons are more shielded and the nitrogen atom becomes positively charged and its methyl groups more deshielded. The peak at 2.89 ppm must belong to the NMe₂ group.

Other groups, such as simple alkyl groups, hardly perturb the aromatic system at all and it is quite common for all five protons in an alkyl benzene to appear as one signal instead of the three we might expect. Here is an example with some non-aromatic protons too: there is another on p. 275—the Cbz-protected amino acid.
The five protons on the aromatic ring all have the same chemical shift. Check that you can assign the rest. The OCH₃ group (green) is typical of a methyl ester (the chart on p. 276 suggests 3.9 ppm). One CH₂ group (yellow) is between two carbonyl groups (compare 3.35 ppm for the similar CH₂ group on p. 277). The other (red) is next to an ester and a benzene ring: we calculate 1.3 + 1.5 + 3.0 = 5.8 ppm for that—reasonably close to the observed 5.19 ppm. Notice how the Ph and the O together act to shift the Hs attached to this sp³ C downfield into what we usually expect to be the alkene region. Don’t interpret the regions on p. 272 too rigidly!

How electron donation and withdrawal change chemical shifts

We can get an idea of the effect of electron distribution by looking at a series of benzene rings with the same substituent in the 1 and 4 positions. This pattern makes all four hydrogens on the ring identical. Here are a few compounds listed in order of chemical shift: largest shift (lowest field; most deshielded) first. Conjugation is shown by the usual curly arrows, and inductive effects by a straight arrow by the side of the group. Only one hydrogen atom and one set of arrows are shown.

The largest shifts come from groups that withdraw electrons by conjugation. Nitro is the most powerful—this should not surprise you as we saw the same in non-aromatic compounds in both ¹³C and ¹H NMR spectra. Then come the carbonyl and nitrile group followed by groups showing simple inductive withdrawal. CF₃ is an important example of this kind of group—three fluorine atoms combine to exert a powerful effect.
In the middle of our sequence, around the position of benzene itself at 7.27 ppm, come the halogens, whose inductive electron withdrawal and lone pair donation are nearly balanced.

Alkyl groups are weak inductive donators, but the groups which give the most shielding—perhaps surprisingly—are those containing the electronegative atoms O and N. Despite being inductively electron withdrawing (the C–O and C–N \( \sigma \) bonds are polarized with \( \delta^+ C \)), on balance conjugation of their lone pairs with the ring (as you saw on p. 278) makes them net electron donors. They increase the shielding at the ring hydrogens. Amino groups are the best. Note that one nitrogen-based functional group (NO\(_2\)) is the best electron withdrawer while another (NH\(_2\)) is the best electron donor.

As far as the donors with lone pairs are concerned (the halogens plus O and N), two factors are important—the size of the lone pairs and the electronegativity of the element. If we look at the four halides at the top of this page the lone pairs are in 2p (F), 3p (Cl), 4p (Br), and 5p (I) orbitals. In all cases the orbitals on the benzene ring are 2p so the fluorine orbital is of the right size to interact well and the others too large. Even though fluorine is the most electronegative, it is still the best donor. The others don’t pull so much electron density away, but they can’t give so much back either.

If we compare the first row of the p block elements—F, OH, and NH\(_2\)—all have lone pairs in 2p orbitals so now electronegativity is the only variable. As you would expect, the most electronegative element, F, is now the weakest donor.

**Electron-rich and electron-deficient alkenes**

The same sort of thing happens with alkenes. We’ll concentrate on cyclohexene so as to make a good comparison with benzene. The six identical protons of benzene resonate at 7.27 ppm; the two identical alkene protons of cyclohexene resonate at 5.68 ppm. A conjugating and electron-withdrawing group such as a ketone removes electrons from the double bond as expected—but unequally. The proton nearer the C=O group is only slightly downfield from cyclohexene but the more distant one is over 1 ppm downfield. The curly arrows show the electron distribution, which we can deduce from the NMR spectrum.
Oxygen as a conjugating electron donor is even more dramatic. It shifts the proton next to it downfield by the inductive effect but pushes the more distant proton upfield a whole 1 ppm by donating electrons. The separation between the two protons is nearly 2 ppm.

For both types of substituent, the effects are more marked on the more distant (β) proton. If these shifts reflect the true electron distribution, we should be able to deduce something about the chemistry of the following three compounds. You might expect that nucleophiles will attack the electron-deficient site in the nitroalkene, while electrophiles will be attacked by the electron-rich sites in silyl enol ethers and enamines. These are all important reagents and do indeed react as we predict, as you will see in later chapters. Look at the difference—there are nearly 3 ppm between the shifts of the same proton on the nitro compound and the enamine!

Structural information from the alkene region

Alkene protons on different carbon atoms can obviously be different if the carbon atoms themselves are different and we have just seen examples of that. Alkene protons can also be different if they are on the same carbon atom. All that is necessary is that the substituents at the other end of the double bond should themselves be different. The silyl enol ether and the unsaturated ester below both fit into this category. The protons on the double bond must be different, because each is cis to a different group. We may not be able to assign which is which, but the difference alone tells us something. The third compound is an interesting case: the different shifts of the two protons on the ring prove that the N–Cl bond is at an angle to the C=\(\text{N}\) bond. If it were in line, the two hydrogens would be identical. The other side of the C=\(\text{N}\) bond is occupied by a lone pair and the nitrogen atom is trigonal (sp\(^3\) hybridized).

The aldehyde region: unsaturated carbon bonded to oxygen

The aldehyde proton is unique. It is directly attached to a carbonyl group—one of the most electron-withdrawing groups that exists—and is very deshielded, resonating with the largest shifts of any CH protons, in the 9–10 ppm region. The examples below are all compounds that we have met before. Two are just simple aldehydes—aromatic and aliphatic. The third is the solvent DMF. Its CHO proton is less deshielded than most—the amide delocalization that feeds electrons into the carbonyl group provides some extra shielding.
Conjugation with an oxygen lone pair has much the same effect—formate esters resonate at about 8 ppm—but conjugation with π bonds does not. The aromatic aldehyde above, simple conjugated aldehyde below, and myrtenal all have CHO protons in the normal region (9–10 ppm).

Non-aldehyde protons in the aldehyde region: pyridines

Two other types of protons resonate in the region around 9–10 ppm: some aromatic protons and some protons attached to heteroatoms like OH and NH. We will deal with NH and OH protons in the next section, but first we must look at some electron-deficient aromatic rings with distinctively large shifts.

Protons on double bonds, even very electron-deficient double bonds like those of nitroalkenes, hardly get into the aldehyde region. However, some benzene rings with very electron-withdrawing groups do manage it because of the extra downfield shift of the ring current, so look out for nitrobenzenes as they may have signals in the 8–9 ppm region.

More important molecules with signals in this region are the aromatic heterocycles such as pyridine, which you saw functioning as a base in Chapters 8 and 10. The NMR shifts clearly show that pyridine is aromatic: one proton is at 7.1 ppm, essentially the same as benzene, but the others are more downfield and one, at C2, is in the aldehyde region. This is not because pyridine is ‘more aromatic’ than benzene but because nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon. Position C2 is like an aldehyde—a proton attached to sp² C bearing a heteroatom—while C4 is electron deficient due to conjugation (the electron-negative nitrogen is electron withdrawing). Isoquinoline is a pyridine and a benzene ring fused together and has a proton even further downfield at 9.1 ppm—this is an imine proton that experiences the ring current of the benzene ring.

Protons on heteroatoms have more variable shifts than protons on carbon

Protons directly attached to O, N, or S (or any other heteroatom, but these are the most important) also have signals in the NMR spectrum. We have avoided them so far because the positions of these signals are less reliable and because they are affected by exchange.
In Chapter 2 you met the antioxidant BHT. Its proton NMR is very simple, consisting of just four lines with integrals 2, 1, 3, and 18. The chemical shifts of the tert-butyl group (brown), the methyl group on the benzene ring (orange), and the two identical aromatic protons (green) should cause you no surprise. What is left, the 1 H signal at 5.0 ppm (pink), must be the OH. Earlier on in this chapter we saw the spectrum of acetic acid, CH₃CO₂H, which showed an OH resonance at 11.2 ppm. Simple alcohols such as tert-butanol have OH signals in CDCl₃ (the usual NMR solvent) at around 2 ppm. Why such big differences?

This is a matter of acidity. The more acidic a proton is—that is, the more easily it can escape as H⁺ (this is the definition of acidity from Chapter 8)—the more the OH bond is polarized towards oxygen. The more the RO–H bond is polarized, the closer we are to free H⁺, which would have no shielding electrons at all, and so the further the proton goes downfield. The OH chemical shifts and the acidity of the OH group are—to a rough extent at least—related.

Thiols (RSH) behave in a similar way to alcohols but are not so deshielded, as you would expect from the smaller electronegativity of sulfur (phenols are all about 5.0 ppm, PhSH is at 3.41 ppm). Alkane thiols appear at about 2 ppm and arylthiols at about 4 ppm. Amines and amides show a big variation, as you would expect for the variety of functional groups involved, and are summarized below. Amides are slightly acidic, as you saw in Chapter 8, and amide protons resonate at quite low fields. Pyrroles are special—the aromaticity of the ring makes the NH proton unusually acidic—and they appear at about 10 ppm.

**Exchange of acidic protons is revealed in proton NMR spectra**

Compounds with very polar groups often dissolve best in water. NMR spectra are usually run in CDCl₃, but heavy water, D₂O, is an excellent NMR solvent. Here are some results in that medium.
Glycine is expected to exist as a zwitterion (Chapter 8, p. 167). It has a 2H signal (green) for the CH₂ between the two functional groups, which would do for either form. The 3H signal at 4.90 ppm (orange) might suggest the NH₃⁺ group, but wait a moment before making up your mind.

The aminothiol salt has the CMe₂ and CH₂ groups about where we would expect them (brown and green), but the SH and NH₃⁺ protons appear as one 4H signal.

The double salt of EDTA has several curious features. The two (green) CH₂ groups in the middle are fine, but the other four CH₂ (brown) groups all appear identical, as do all the protons on both the CO₂H and NH₃⁺ groups.

The best clue to why this is so comes from the strange coincidence of the chemical shifts of the OH, NH, and SH protons in these molecules. They are all the same within experimental error: 4.90 ppm for glycine, 4.80 ppm for the aminothiol, and 4.84 ppm for EDTA. In fact all correspond to the same species: HOD, or monodeuterated water. Exchange between XH (where X=O, N, or S) protons is extremely fast, and the solvent, D₂O, supplies a vast excess of exchangeable deuteriums. These immediately replace all the OH, NH, and SH protons in the molecules with D, forming HOD in the process. Recall that we do not see signals for deuterium atoms (that’s why deuterated solvents are used). They have their own spectra at a different frequency.
The same sort of exchange between OH or NH protons with each other or with traces of water in the sample means that the OH and NH peaks in most spectra in CDCl₃ are rather broader than the peaks for CH protons.

Two questions remain. First, can we tell whether glycine is a zwitterion in water or not? Not really: the spectra fit either or an equilibrium between both—other evidence leads us to expect the zwitterion in water. Second, why are all four CH₂CO groups in EDTA the same? This we can answer. As well as the equilibrium exchanging the CO₂H protons with the solvent, there will be an equally fast equilibrium exchanging protons between CO₂D and CO₂. This makes all four ‘arms’ of EDTA the same.

You should leave this section with an important chemical principle firmly established in your mind.

- Proton exchange between heteroatoms is fast
  Proton exchange between heteroatoms, particularly O, N, and S, is a very fast process in comparison with other chemical reactions, and often leads to averaged peaks in the ¹H NMR spectrum.

**Coupling in the proton NMR spectrum**

**Nearby hydrogen nuclei interact and give multiple peaks**

So far proton NMR has been not unlike carbon NMR on a smaller scale. However, we have yet to discuss the real strength of proton NMR, something more important than chemical shifts and something that allows us to look not just at individual atoms but also at the way the C–H skeleton is joined together. This is the result of the interaction between nearby protons, known as coupling.

An example we could have chosen in the last section is the nucleic acid component cytosine, which has exchanging NH₂ and NH protons giving a peak for HOD at 4.5 ppm. We didn’t choose this example because the other two peaks would have puzzled you. Instead of giving just one line for each proton, they give two lines each—doublets as you will learn to call them—and it is time to discuss the origin of this ‘coupling’.

- Cytosine is one of the four bases that, in combination with deoxyribose and phosphate, make up DNA. It is a member of the class of heterocycles called pyrimidines. We come back to the chemistry of DNA towards the end of this book, in Chapter 42.
You might have expected a spectrum like that of the heterocycle below, which like cytosine is also a pyrimidine. It too has exchanging NH$_2$ protons and two protons on the heterocyclic ring. But these two protons give the expected two lines instead of the four lines in the cytosine spectrum. It is easy to assign the spectrum: the green proton labelled H$^A$ is attached to an aldehyde-like C=N and so comes at lowest field. The red proton labelled H$^X$ is ortho to two electron-donating NH$_2$ groups and so comes at high field for an aromatic proton (p. 272). These protons do not couple with each other because they are too far apart. They are separated by five bonds whereas the ring protons in cytosine are separated by just three bonds.

\[ 2,6\text{-diaminopyrimidine} \]

Understanding this phenomenon is so important that we are going to explain it in three different ways—you choose which appeals to you most. Each method offers a different insight.

The diaminopyrimidine spectrum you have just seen has two single lines (singlets we shall call them from now on) because each proton, H$^A$ or H$^X$, can be aligned either with or against the applied magnetic field. The cytosine spectrum is different because each proton, say H$^A$, is near enough to experience the small magnetic field of the other proton H$^X$ as well as the field of the magnet itself. The diagram shows the result.

If each proton interacted only with the applied field we would get two singlets. But proton H$^A$ actually experiences two slightly different fields: the applied field plus the field of
HX or the applied field minus the field of HX. HX acts either to increase or decrease the field experienced by HA. The position of a resonance depends on the field experienced by the proton so these two situations give rise to two slightly different peaks—a doublet as we shall call it. And whatever happens to HA happens to HX as well, so the spectrum has two doublets, one for each proton. Each couples with the other. The field of a proton is a very small indeed in comparison with the field of the magnet and the separation between the lines of a doublet is very small. We shall discuss the size of the coupling later (pp. 294–300).

The second explanation takes into account the energy levels of the nucleus. In Chapter 4, when we discussed chemical bonds, we imagined electronic energy levels on neighbouring atoms interacting with each other and splitting to produce new molecular energy levels, some higher in energy and some lower in energy than the original atomic energy levels. When hydrogen nuclei are near each other in a molecule, the nuclear energy levels also interact and split to produce new energy levels. If a single hydrogen nucleus interacts with a magnetic field, we have the picture on p. 270 of this chapter: there are two energy levels as the nucleus can be aligned with or against the applied magnetic field, there is one energy jump possible, and there is a resonance at one frequency. This you have now seen many times and it can be summarized as shown below.

The spectrum of the pyrimidine on p. 286 shows exactly this situation: two protons well separated in the molecules and each behaving independently. Each has two energy levels, each gives a singlet, and there are two lines in the spectrum. But in cytosine, whose spectrum is shown on p. 285, the situation is different: each hydrogen atom has another hydrogen nucleus nearby and there are now four energy levels. Each nucleus HA and HX can be aligned with or against the applied field. There is one (lower) energy level where they are both aligned with the field and one (higher) level where they are both aligned against. In between there are two different energy levels in which one nucleus is aligned with the field and one against. Exciting H from alignment with to alignment against the applied field can be done in two slightly different ways, shown as A1 and A2 on the diagram. The result is two resonances very close together in the spectrum.
Please notice carefully that we cannot have this discussion about $H^4$ without discussing $H^X$ in the same way. If there are two slightly different energy jumps to excite $H^4$, there must also be two slightly different energy jumps to excite $H^X$. $A_1$, $A_2$, $X_1$, and $X_2$ are all different, but the difference between $A_1$ and $A_2$ is exactly the same as the difference between $X_1$ and $X_2$. Each proton now gives two lines (a doublet) in the NMR spectrum and the splitting of the two doublets is exactly the same. We describe this situation as coupling. We say ‘A and X are coupled’ or ‘X is coupled to A’ (and vice versa, of course). We shall be using this language from now on and so must you.

Now look back at the spectrum of cytosine at the beginning of this section. You can see the two doublets, one for each of the protons on the aromatic ring. Each is split by the same amount (this is easy to check with a ruler). The separation of the lines is the coupling constant and is called $J$. In this case $J = 4$ Hz. Why do we measure $J$ in hertz and not in ppm? We pointed out on p. 55 (Chapter 3) that we measure chemical shifts in ppm because we get the same number regardless of the rating of the NMR machine in MHz. We measure $J$ in Hz because we also get the same number regardless of the machine.

The spectra below show $^1H$ NMR spectra of the same compound run on two different NMR machines—one a 90 MHz spectrometer and one a 300 MHz spectrometer (these are at the lower and upper ends of the range of field strengths in common use). Notice that the peaks stay in the same place on the chemical shift scale (ppm) but the size of the coupling appears to change because 1 ppm is worth 90 Hz in the top spectrum but 300 Hz in the bottom.

Measuring coupling constants in hertz

To measure a coupling constant it is essential to know the rating of the NMR machine in MHz (megahertz). This is why you are told that each illustrated spectrum is, say, a ‘400 MHz $^1H$ NMR spectrum’. Couplings may be marked on the spectrum, electronically, but if not then to measure the coupling, measure the distance between the lines by ruler or dividers and use the horizontal scale to find out the separation in ppm. The conversion is then easy—to turn parts per million of megahertz into hertz you just leave out the million! So 1 ppm on a 300 MHz machine is 300 Hz. On a 500 MHz machine, a 10 Hz coupling is a splitting of 0.02 ppm.
When you change from one machine to another, say, from a 200 MHz to a 500 MHz NMR machine, chemical shifts (δ) stay the same in ppm and coupling constants (J) stay the same in Hz.

Now for the third way to describe coupling. If you look again at what the spectrum would be like without interaction between HA and HX you will see the pattern on the right, with the chemical shift of each proton clearly obvious.

But you don’t see this because each proton couples with the other and splits its signal by an equal amount either side of the true chemical shift. The true spectrum has a pair of doublets each split by an identical amount. Note that no line appears at the true chemical shift, but it is easy to measure the chemical shift by taking the midpoint of the doublet.

So this spectrum would be described as 7.5 (1H, d, J = 4 Hz, HA) and 5.8 (1H, d, J = 4 Hz, HX). The main number gives the chemical shift in ppm and then, in brackets, comes the integration as the number of Hs, the shape of the signal (here ‘d’ for doublet), the size of coupling constants in Hz, and the assignment, usually related to a diagram. The integration refers to the combined area under both peaks in the doublet. If the doublet is exactly symmetrical, each peak integrates to half a proton. The combined signal, however complicated, integrates to the right number of protons.

We have described these protons as A and X with a purpose in mind. A spectrum of two equal doublets is called an AX spectrum. A is always the proton you are discussing and X is another proton with a different chemical shift. The alphabet is used as a ruler: nearby protons (on the chemical shift scale—not necessarily nearby in the structure!) are called B, C, etc. and distant ones are called X, Y, etc. You will see the reason for this soon.

If there are more protons involved, the splitting process continues. Here is the NMR spectrum of a famous perfumery compound supposed to have the smell of ‘green leaf lilac’. The compound is an acetal with five nearly identical aromatic protons at the normal benzene position (7.2–7.3 ppm) and six protons on two identical OMe groups.

It is the remaining three protons that interest us. They appear as a 2H doublet at 2.9 ppm and a 1H triplet at 4.6 ppm. In NMR talk, triplet means three equally spaced lines in the ratio 1:2:1. The triplet arises from the three possible states of the two identical protons in the CH₂ group.

If one proton HA interacts with two protons HX, it can experience protons HX in three different possible states. Both protons HX can be aligned with the magnet or both against. These states will increase or decrease the applied field just as before. But if one proton HX is aligned with and one against the applied field, there is no net change to the field experienced by HA. There are two arrangements for this (see diagram overleaf). We’ll therefore see a signal of double intensity for HA at the correct chemical shift, one signal at higher field and one at lower field. In other words, a 1:2:1 triplet.
We could look at this result by our other methods too. There is one way in which both nuclei can be aligned with and one way in which both can be aligned against the applied field, but two ways in which they can be aligned one with and one against. Proton $\text{HA}$ interacts with each of these states. The result is a 1:2:1 triplet.

Using our third way of seeing coupling to see how the triplet arises, we can just make the peaks split in successive stages:
If there are more protons involved, we continue to get more complex systems, but the intensities can all be deduced simply from Pascal’s triangle, which gives the coefficients in a binomial expansion. If you are unfamiliar with this simple device, here it is.

You can read off from the triangle what pattern you may expect when a proton is coupled to \( n \) equivalent neighbours. There are always \( n + 1 \) peaks with the intensities shown by the triangle. So far, you’ve seen 1:1 doublets (line 2 of the triangle) from coupling to 1 proton, and 1:2:1 triplets (line 3) from coupling to 2. You will often meet ethyl groups (\( \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2X \)), where the \( \text{CH}_2 \) group couples to three identical protons and appears as a 1:3:3:1 quartet and the methyl group as a 1:2:1 triplet. In isopropyl groups, (\( \text{CH}_3 \))\( _2\text{CH}X \), the methyl groups appear as a 6H doublet and the \( \text{CH} \) group as a septuplet.

Here is a simple example: the four-membered cyclic ether oxetane. Its NMR spectrum has a 4H triplet for the two identical \( \text{CH}_2 \) groups next to oxygen and a 2H quintet for the \( \text{CH}_2 \) in the middle. Each proton \( H^X \) ‘sees’ four identical neighbours (\( H^0 \)) and is split equally by them all to give a 1:4:6:4:1 quintet. Each proton \( H^A \) ‘sees’ two identical neighbours \( H^X \) and is split into a 1:2:1 triplet. The combined integral of all the lines in the quintet together is 2 and of all the lines in the triplet is 4.
A slightly more complicated example is the diethyl acetal below. It has a simple AX pair of doublets for the two protons on the ‘backbone’ (red and green) and a typical ethyl group (2H quartet and 3H triplet). An ethyl group is attached to only one substituent through its CH₂ group, so the chemical shift of that CH₂ group tells us what it is joined to. Here the peak at 3.76 ppm can only be an OEt group. There are, of course, two identical CH₂ groups in this molecule.

In all of these molecules, a proton may have had several neighbours, but all those neighbours have been the same. And therefore all the coupling constants have been the same. What happens when coupling constants differ? Chrysanthemic acid, the structural core of the insecticides produced by pyrethrum flowers, gives an example of the simplest situation—where a proton has two different neighbours.
Chrysanthemic acid has a carboxylic acid, an alkene, and two methyl groups on the three-membered ring. Proton $H^A$ has two neighbours, $H^X$ and $H^M$. The coupling constant to $H^X$ is 8 Hz, and that to $H^M$ is 5.5 Hz. We can construct the splitting pattern as shown on the right.

The result is four lines of equal intensity called a **double doublet** or sometimes a **doublet of doublets**), abbreviation dd. The smaller coupling constant can be read off from the separation between lines 1 and 2 or between lines 3 and 4, while the larger coupling constant is between lines 1 and 3 or between lines 2 and 4. The separation between the middle two lines is not a coupling constant. You could view a double doublet as an imperfect triplet where the second coupling is too small to bring the central lines together: alternatively, look at a triplet as a special case of a double doublet where the two couplings are identical and the two middle lines coincide.

### Coupling is a through-bond effect

Do neighbouring nuclei interact through space or through the electrons in the bonds? We know that coupling is in fact a ‘through-bond effect’ because of the way coupling constants vary with the shape of the molecule. The most important case occurs when the protons are at either end of a double bond. If the two hydrogens are **cis**, the coupling constant $J$ is typically about 10 Hz, but if they are **trans**, $J$ is much larger, usually 15–18 Hz. These two chloro acids are good examples.

If coupling were through space, the nearer **cis** hydrogens would have the larger $J$. In fact, coupling occurs **through the bonds** and the more perfect parallel alignment of the bonds in the **trans** compound provides better communication and a larger $J$.

Coupling is at least as helpful as chemical shift in assigning spectra. When we said (p. 280) that the protons on cyclohexenone had the chemical shifts shown, how did we know? It was coupling that told us the answer. The proton next to the carbonyl group ($H^2$ in the diagram) has one neighbour ($H^3$) and appears as a doublet with $J = 11$ Hz, just right for a proton on a double bond with a **cis** neighbour. The proton $H^3$ itself appears as a double triplet. Inside each triplet the separation of the lines is 4 Hz and the two triplets are 11 Hz apart.

The coupling of $H^3$ is as complex as you have seen yet, but it can be represented diagrammatically by the same approach we have taken before.
As coupling gets more and more complicated it can be hard to interpret the results, but if you know what you are looking for things do become easier. Here is the example of heptan-2-one. The green protons next to the carbonyl group are a 2H triplet (coupled to the two red protons) with $J \approx 7$ Hz. The red protons themselves are next to four protons, and although these four protons are not identical the coupling constants are about the same: the red protons therefore appear as a 2H quintet, with a coupling constant also of 7 Hz. The brown signal is more complicated: we might call it a ‘4H multiplet’ but in fact we know what it must be: the signals for the four brown protons on carbons 5 and 6 overlap, and must be made up of a 2H quintet (protons on C5) and a 2H sextet (protons on C6). We can see the coupling of the protons on C6 with the terminal methyl group because the methyl group (orange) is a 3H triplet (also with a 7 Hz coupling constant).

Coupling constants depend on three factors

The coupling constants in cyclohexenone were different, but all the coupling constants in heptanone are about the same—around 7 Hz. Why?

- Factors affecting coupling constants
  - Through-bond distance between the protons.
  - Angle between the two C–H bonds.
  - Electronegative substituents.
The coupling constants we have seen so far have all been between hydrogen atoms on neighbouring carbon atoms—in other words, the coupling is through three bonds (H–C–C–H) and is designated $^3J_{HH}$. These coupling constants $^3J_{HH}$ are usually about 7 Hz in an open-chain, freely rotating system such as we have in heptanone. The C–H bonds vary little in length but in cyclohexenone the C–C bond is a double bond, significantly shorter than a single bond. Couplings ($^3J_{HH}$) across double bonds are usually larger than 7 Hz (11 Hz in cyclohexenone). $^3J_{HH}$ couplings are called vicinal couplings because the protons concerned are on neighbouring carbon atoms.

Something else is different too: in an open-chain system we have a time average of all rotational conformations (we will look at this in the next chapter). But across a double bond there is no rotation and the angle between the two C–H bonds is fixed: they are always in the same plane. In the plane of the alkene, the C–H bonds are either at 60° (cis) or 180° (trans) to each other. Coupling constants in benzene rings are slightly less than those across cis alkenes because the bond is longer (bond order 1.5 rather than 2).

In naphthalenes, there are unequal bond lengths around the two rings. The bond between the two rings is the shortest, and the lengths of the others are shown. Coupling across the shorter bond (8 Hz) is significantly stronger than coupling across the longer bond (6.5 Hz).

The effect of the third factor, electronegativity, is easily seen in the comparison between ordinary alkenes and alkenes with alkoxy substituents, known as enol ethers. We are going to compare two pairs of compounds with a cis or a trans double bond. One pair has a phenyl group at one end of the alkene and the other has an OPh group. For either pair, the trans coupling is larger than the cis, as you would now expect. But if you compare the two pairs, the enol ethers have much smaller coupling constants. The trans coupling for the enol ethers is only just larger than the cis coupling for the alkenes. The electronegative oxygen atom is withdrawing electrons from the C–H bond in the enol ethers and weakening communication through the bonds.

**Long-range coupling**

When the through-bond distance gets longer than three bonds, coupling is not usually seen. To put it another way, four-bond coupling $^4J_{HH}$ is usually zero. However, it is seen in some special cases, the most important being meta coupling in aromatic rings and allylic coupling in alkenes. In both, the orbitals between the two hydrogen atoms can line up in a zig-zag
fashion to maximize interaction. This arrangement looks rather like a letter ‘W’ and this sort of coupling is called W-coupling. Even with this advantage, values of $J_{HH}$ are usually small, about 1–3 Hz.

*Meta* coupling is very common when there is *ortho* coupling as well, but here is an example where there is no *ortho* coupling because none of the aromatic protons have immediate neighbours—the only coupling is *meta* coupling. There are two identical HAs, which have one *meta* neighbour and appear as a 2H doublet. Proton HX between the two MeO groups has two identical *meta* neighbours and so appears as a 1H triplet. The coupling is small ($J \sim 2.5$ Hz).

![Diagram showing W-coupling and meta-coupling.](image)

We have already seen a molecule with allylic coupling. We discussed in some detail why cyclohexenone has a double triplet for H3. But it also has a less obvious double triplet for H2. The triplet coupling is less obvious since $J$ is small (about 2 Hz) because it is $4J_{HH}$—allylic coupling to the CH2 group at C4. Here is a diagram of the coupling, which you would be able to spot in an expansion of the cyclohexenone spectrum on p. 293.

![Diagram showing allylic coupling.](image)

**Coupling between similar protons**

Identical protons do not couple with each other. The three protons in a methyl group may couple to some other protons, but *never* couple with each other. They are an $A_3$ system. Identical neighbours do not couple either. Turn back to p. 271 and you’ll see that even though each of the four protons on the *para*-disubstituted benzenes has one neighbour, they appear as one singlet because every proton is identical to its neighbour.

We have also seen how two different protons forming an AX system give two separate doublets. Now we need to see what happens to protons in between these two extremes. What happens to two similar neighbours? As two protons get closer and closer together, do the two doublets you see in the AX system suddenly collapse to the singlet of the $A_3$ system? You have probably guessed that they do not. The transition is gradual. Suppose we have two different neighbours on an aromatic ring. The spectra below show what we see. These are all 1,4-disubstituted benzene rings with different groups at the 1 and 4 positions.
You'll notice that when the two doublets are far apart, as in the first spectrum, they look like normal doublets. But as they get closer together the doublets get more and more distorted, until finally they are identical and collapse to a 4H singlet.

The critical factor in the shape of the peak is how the difference between the chemical shifts of the two protons (Δδ) compares with the size of the coupling constant (J) for the machine in question. If Δδ is much larger than J there is no distortion: if, say, Δδ is 2 ppm at 500 MHz (= 1000 Hz) and the coupling constant is a normal 7 Hz, then this condition is fulfilled and we have an AX spectrum of two 1:1 doublets. As Δδ approaches J in size, so the inner lines of the two doublets increase and the outer lines decrease until, when Δδ is zero, the outer lines vanish away altogether and we are left with the two superimposed inner lines—a singlet or an A2 spectrum. You can see this progression in the diagram on the right.
We call the last stages, where the distortion is great but the protons are still different, an AB spectrum because you cannot really talk about H¹ without also talking about H². The two inner lines may be closer than the gap between the doublets or the four lines may all be equally spaced. Two versions of an AB spectrum are shown in the diagram—there are many more variations.

It is a generally useful tip that a distorted doublet ‘points’ towards the protons with which it is coupled.

Or, to put it another way, the AB system is ‘roofed’ with the usual arrangement of low walls and a high middle to the roof. Look out for doublets (or any other coupled signals) of this kind.

We shall end this section with a final example illustrating para-disubstituted benzenes and roofing as well as an ABX system and an isopropyl group. The aromatic ring protons form a pair of distorted doublets (2H each), showing that the compound is a para-disubstituted benzene. Then the alkene protons form the AB part of an ABX spectrum. They are coupled to each other with a large (trans) J = 16 Hz and one is also coupled to another distant proton. The large doublets are distorted (AB) but the small doublets within the right-hand half of the AB system are equal in height. The distant proton X is part of an i-Pr group and is coupled to H⁶ and the six identical methyl protons. Both Js are nearly the same so it is split by seven protons and is an octuplet. It looks like a sextuplet because the intensity ratios of the lines in an octuplet would be 1:7:21:35:35:21:7:1 (from Pascal’s triangle) and it is hardly surprising that the outside lines disappear.

**Coupling can occur between protons on the same carbon atom**

We have seen cases where protons on the same carbon atom are different: compounds with an alkene unsubstituted at one end. If these protons are different (and they are certainly near to each other), then they should couple. They do, but in this case the coupling constant is usually very small. Here is the spectrum of an example you met on p. 281.
The small 1.4 Hz coupling is a $^2J_{HH}$ coupling between two protons on the same carbon that are different because there is no rotation about the double bond. $^2J_{HH}$ coupling is called geminal coupling.

This means that a monosubstituted alkene (a vinyl group) will have characteristic signals for each of the three protons on the double bond. Here is the example of ethyl acrylate (ethyl acrylate, a monomer for the formation of acrylic polymers). The spectrum looks rather complex at first, but it is easy to sort out using the coupling constants.

The largest $J$ (16 Hz) is obviously between the orange and green protons (trans coupling), the medium $J$ (10 Hz) is between the orange and red (cis coupling), and the small $J$ (4 Hz) must be between the red and green (geminal). This assigns all the protons: red, 5.60 ppm; green, 6.40 ppm; orange, 6.11 ppm. Assignments based on coupling are more reliable than those based on chemical shift alone.

**Coupling constants in a vinyl group**

- $^2J_{HH}$ cis coupling large 10–13 Hz
- $^2J_{HH}$ trans coupling v. large 14–18 Hz
- $^2J_{HH}$ geminal coupling v. small 0–2 Hz
Ethyl vinyl ether is a reagent used for the protection of alcohols. All its coupling constants are smaller than is usual for an alkene because of the electronegativity of the oxygen atom, which is now joined directly to the double bond. It is still a simple matter to assign the protons of the vinyl group because couplings of 13, 7, and 2 Hz must be trans, cis, and geminal, respectively. In addition, the orange H is on a carbon atom next to oxygen and so goes downfield while the red and green protons have extra shielding from the conjugation of the oxygen lone pairs (see p. 281).

Geminal coupling on saturated carbons can be seen only if the hydrogens of a CH₂ group are different. The bridging CH₂ group of myrtenal (p. 274) provides an example. The coupling constant for the protons on the bridge, $J_{AB}$, is 9 Hz. Geminal coupling constants in a saturated system can be much larger (typically 10–16 Hz) than in an unsaturated one.

**Typical coupling constants**

- **geminal** $J_{HH}$
  - saturated
    - $R$: 10–16 Hz
  - unsaturated
    - $R$: 0–3 Hz

- **vicinal** $J_{HH}$
  - saturated
    - $R$: 6–8 Hz
  - unsaturated trans
    - $R$: 14–18 Hz
  - unsaturated cis
    - $R$: 10–12 Hz
To conclude

You have now met, in Chapter 3 and this chapter, all of the most important spectroscopic techniques available for working out the structure of organic molecules. We hope you can now appreciate why proton NMR is by far the most powerful of these techniques, and we hope you will be referring back to this chapter as you read the rest of the book. We shall talk about proton NMR a lot, and specifically we will come back to it in detail in Chapter 18, where we will look at using all of the spectroscopic techniques in combination, and in Chapter 31, when we look at what NMR can tell us about the shape of molecules.

Further reading

A reminder: you will find it an advantage to have one of the short books on spectroscopic analysis to hand as they give explanations, comprehensive tables of data, and problems. We recommend Spectroscopic Methods in Organic Chemistry by D. H. Williams and Ian Fleming, McGraw-Hill, London, 6th edn, 2007.


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Some compounds can exist as a pair of mirror-image forms

One of the very first reactions you met, back in Chapter 6, was between an aldehyde and cyanide. The product was a compound containing a nitrile group and a hydroxyl group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{RCHO} + \text{CN}^- & \rightarrow \text{RCNHO} \\
\end{align*}
\]

How many products are formed in this reaction? Well, the straightforward answer is one—there's only one aldehyde, only one cyanide ion, and only one reasonable way in which they can react. But this analysis is not quite correct. One point that we ignored when we first talked about this reaction, because it was irrelevant at that time, is that the carbonyl group of the aldehyde has two faces. The cyanide ion could attack either from the front face or the back face, giving, in each case, a distinct product.

Interactive results of cyanide addition to carbonyls

- The bold wedges represent bonds coming towards you, out of the paper, and the cross-hatched bonds represent bonds going away from you, into the paper.

Interactive support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123 into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
As we explained in Chapter 6 (pp. 125–7), the cyanide attacks the \( \pi^* \) orbital of the aldehyde more or less at right angles to the plane of the molecule as it forms a new bond with the old \( p \) orbital on C. This translates into ‘front’ and ‘back’ on a diagram on paper. Compare the diagram on the left with the others to make sure this is clear.

Are these two products different? If we lay them side by side and try to arrange them so that they look identical, we find that we can’t—you can verify this by making models of the two structures. The structures are non-superimposable—so they are not identical. In fact, they are mirror images of each other: if we reflected one of the structures, A, in a mirror, we would get a structure that is identical with B.

We call two structures that are not identical but are mirror images of each other (like these two) **enantiomers**. Structures that are not superimposable on their mirror image, and can therefore exist as two enantiomers, are called **chiral**. In this reaction, the cyanide ions are just as likely to attack the ‘front’ face of the aldehyde as they are the ‘back’ face, so we get a 50:50 mixture of the two enantiomers.

Now consider another similar reaction—the addition of cyanide to acetone.

Again an adduct (a cyanohydrin) is formed. You might imagine that attacking the front or the back face of the acetone molecule could again give two structures, C and D.

However, this time rotating one to match the other shows that they are superimposable and therefore identical.
Make sure that you are clear about this: C and D are identical molecules, while A and B are mirror images of each other. Reflection in a mirror makes no difference to C or D; they are superimposable on their own mirror images and therefore cannot exist as two enantiomers. Structures that are superimposable on their mirror images are called achiral.

** Achiral structures are superimposable on their mirror images.**

### Chiral molecules have no plane of symmetry

What is the essential difference between these two compounds that means one is superimposable on its mirror image and one is not? The answer is symmetry. Acetone cyanohydrin has a plane of symmetry running through the molecule. This plane cuts the central carbon and the OH and CN groups in half, and has one methyl group on each side. All planar molecules (such as our simple aldehyde) cannot be chiral as the plane of the molecule must be a plane of symmetry. Cyclic molecules may have a plane of symmetry passing through two atoms of the ring, as in the cyclohexanone below. The plane passes through both atoms of the carbonyl group and bisects the methyl group as well as the hydrogen atom (not shown) on the same carbon atom. The bicyclic acetal looks more complicated but a plane of symmetry passes between the two oxygen atoms and the two ring-junction carbon atoms while bisecting the two methyl groups. None of these molecules is chiral.

On the other hand, the aldehyde cyanohydrin has no plane of symmetry: the plane of the paper has OH on one side and CN on the other while the plane at right angles to the paper has H on one side and RCH₂ on the other. This compound has no plane of symmetry (has asymmetry) and has two enantiomers.

**Planes of symmetry and chirality**

- Any structure that has no plane of symmetry is chiral and can exist as two mirror-image forms (enantiomers).
- Any structure with a plane of symmetry is not chiral and cannot exist as two enantiomers.

By ‘structure’, we don’t just mean chemical structure: the same rules apply to everyday objects. Some examples from among more familiar objects in the world around us should help make these ideas clear. Look around you and find a chiral object—a pair of scissors, a screw (but not the screwdriver), a car, and anything with writing on it, like this page. Look again for achiral objects with planes of symmetry—a plain mug, saucepan, chair, most simple manufactured objects without writing on them. The most significant chiral object near you is the hand you write with.
Gloves, hands, and socks

Most gloves exist in pairs of non-identical mirror-image forms: only a left glove fits a left hand and only a right glove fits a right hand. This property of gloves and of the hands inside them gives us the word ‘chiral’—cheir is Greek for ‘hand’. Hands and gloves are chiral; they have no plane of symmetry, and a left glove is not superimposable on its mirror image (a right glove). Feet are chiral too, as are shoes. But socks (usually!) are not. Although we all sometimes have problems finding two socks of a matching colour, once you’ve found them, you never have to worry about which sock goes on which foot because socks are achiral. A pair of socks is manufactured as two identical objects, each of which has a mirror plane.

The ancient Egyptians had less care for the chirality of hands and their paintings often show people, even Pharaohs, with two left hands or two right hands—they just didn’t seem to notice.

Tennis racquets and golf clubs

If you are left-handed and want to play golf, you either have to play in a right-handed manner or get hold of a set of left-handed golf clubs. Golf clubs are clearly therefore chiral; they can exist as either of two enantiomers. You can tell this just by looking at a golf club. It has no plane of symmetry, so it must be chiral. But left-handed tennis players have no problem using the same racquets as right-handed tennis players and tennis players of either chirality sometimes swap the racquet from hand to hand. Look at a tennis racquet: it has a plane of symmetry (indeed, usually two), so it’s achiral. It can’t exist as two mirror-image forms.
To summarize

- A structure with a plane of symmetry is achiral and superimposable on its mirror image and cannot exist as two enantiomers.
- A structure without a plane of symmetry is chiral and not superimposable on its mirror image and can exist as two enantiomers.

**Stereogenic centres**

Back to chemistry, and the product from the reaction of an aldehyde with cyanide. We explained above that this compound, being chiral, can exist as two enantiomers. Enantiomers are clearly isomers; they consist of the same parts joined together in a different way. In particular, enantiomers are a type of isomer called stereoisomers because the isomers differ not in the connectivity of the atoms, but only in the overall shape of the molecule.

**Stereoisomers and constitutional isomers**

Isomers are compounds that contain the same atoms bonded together in different ways. If the connectivity of the atoms in the two isomers is different, they are constitutional isomers. If the connectivity of the atoms in the two isomers is the same, they are stereoisomers. Enantiomers are stereoisomers, and so are $E$ and $Z$ double bonds. We shall meet other types of stereoisomers shortly.

We should also introduce you briefly to another pair of concepts here, which you will meet again in more detail in Chapter 16: configuration and conformation. Two stereoisomers really are different molecules: they cannot be interconverted without breaking a bond somewhere. We therefore say that they have different configurations. But any molecule can exist in a number of conformations: two conformations differ only in the temporary way the molecule happens to arrange itself, and can easily be interconverted just by rotating around bonds. Humans all have the same configuration: two arms joined to the shoulders. We may have different conformations: arms folded, arms raised, pointing, waving, etc.

**Configuration and conformation**

- Changing the configuration of a molecule always means that bonds are broken.
- A different configuration is a different molecule.
- Changing the conformation of a molecule means rotating about bonds, but not breaking them.
- Conformations of a molecule are readily interconvertible, and are all the same molecule.

The aldehyde cyanohydrin is chiral because it does not have a plane of symmetry. In fact, it cannot have a plane of symmetry because it contains a tetrahedral carbon atom carrying four different groups: OH, CN, RCH$_2$, and H. Such a carbon atom is known as a stereogenic or chiral centre. The product of cyanide and acetone is not chiral; it has a plane of symmetry and no chiral centre because two of the groups on the central carbon atom are the same.
If a molecule contains one carbon atom carrying four different groups it will not have a plane of symmetry and must therefore be chiral. A carbon atom carrying four different groups is a stereogenic or chiral centre.

We saw how the two enantiomers of the aldehyde cyanohydrin arose by attack of cyanide on the two faces of the carbonyl group of the aldehyde. We said that there was nothing to favour one face over the other, so the enantiomers must be formed in equal quantities. A mixture of equal quantities of a pair of enantiomers is called a racemic mixture.

A racemic mixture is a mixture of two enantiomers in equal proportions. This principle is very important. If all the starting materials and reagents in a reaction are achiral and the products are chiral they will be formed as a racemic mixture of two enantiomers.

Here are some more reactions you have come across that make chiral products from achiral starting materials. In each case, the principle must hold—equal amounts of the two enantiomers (racemic mixtures) are formed.

Many chiral molecules are present in nature as single enantiomers. Let’s turn to some simple, but chiral, molecules—the natural amino acids. All amino acids have a carbon carrying an amino group, a carboxyl group, a hydrogen atom, and the R group, which varies from amino acid to amino acid. So unless R = H (this is the case for glycine), amino acids always contain a chiral centre and lack a plane of symmetry.

It is possible to make amino acids quite straightforwardly in the laboratory. The scheme below shows a synthesis of alanine, for example. It is a version of the Strecker synthesis you met in Chapter 11.
Alanine made in this way must be racemic because the starting material and all reagents are achiral. However, if we isolate alanine from a natural source—by hydrolysing vegetable protein, for example—we find that this is not the case. Natural alanine is solely one enantiomer, the one drawn in the margin. Samples of chiral compounds that contain only one enantiomer are called enantiomerically pure. We know that ‘natural’ alanine contains only this enantiomer from X-ray crystal structures.

Enantiomeric alanine

In fact, nature does sometimes (but very rarely) use the other enantiomer of alanine, for example in the construction of bacterial cell walls. Some antibiotics (such as vancomycin) owe their selectivity to the way they can recognize these ‘unnatural’ alanine components and destroy the cell wall that contains them.

Chiral and enantiomerically pure

Before we go further, we should just mention one common point of confusion. Any compound whose molecules do not have a plane of symmetry is chiral. Any sample of a chiral compound that contains molecules all of the same enantiomer is enantiomerically pure. All alanine is chiral (the structure has no plane of symmetry) but laboratory-produced alanine is racemic (a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers) whereas naturally isolated alanine is enantiomerically pure.

● ‘Chiral’ does not mean ‘enantiomerically pure’.

Most of the molecules we find in nature are chiral—a complicated molecule is much more likely not to have a plane of symmetry than to have one. Nearly all of these chiral molecules in living systems are found not as racemic mixtures, but as single enantiomers. This fact has profound implications, for example in the chemistry of drug design, and we will come back to it later.

R and S can be used to describe the configuration of a chiral centre

Before going on to talk about single enantiomers of chiral molecules in more detail, we need to explain how chemists describe which enantiomer they’re talking about. We can, of course, just draw a diagram, showing which groups go into the plane of the paper and which groups come out of the plane of the paper. This is best for complicated molecules. Alternatively, we can use the following set of rules to assign a letter, R or S, to describe the configuration of groups at a chiral centre in the molecule.

1. Assign a priority number (1–4) to each substituent at the chiral centre. Atoms with higher atomic numbers get higher priority.

Alanine’s chiral centre carries one N atom (atomic number 7), two C atoms (atomic number 6), and one H atom (atomic number 1). So, we assign priority 1 to the NH₂ group, because N has the highest atomic number. Priorities 2 and 3 will be assigned to the CO₂H and the CH₂ groups, and priority 4 to the hydrogen atom; but we need a way of deciding which of CO₂H and CH₂ takes priority over the other. If two (or more) of the atoms attached to the chiral centre are identical, then we assign priorities to these two by assessing the atoms attached to those atoms. In this case, one of the carbon atoms carries oxygen atoms (atomic number 8) and one carries only hydrogen atoms (atomic number 1). So CO₂H is higher priority that CH₂; in other words, CO₂H gets priority 2 and CH₂ priority 3.

2. Arrange the molecule so that the lowest priority substituent is pointing away from you. In our example, naturally extracted alanine, H is priority 4, so we need to look at the molecule with the H atom pointing into the paper, like this.
3. Mentally move from substituent priority 1 to 2 to 3. If you are moving in a clockwise manner, assign the label R to the chiral centre; if you are moving in an anticlockwise manner, assign the label S to the chiral centre.

A good way of visualizing this is to imagine turning a steering wheel in the direction of the numbering. If you are turning your car to the right, you have R; if you are turning to the left you have S. For our molecule of natural alanine, if we move from NH₂ (1) to CO₂H (2) to CH₃ (3) we’re going anticlockwise (turning to the left), so we call this enantiomer (S)-alanine.

You can try working the other way, from the configurational label to the structure. Take lactic acid as an example. Lactic acid is produced by bacterial action on milk; it’s also produced in your muscles when they have to work with an insufficient supply of oxygen, such as during bursts of vigorous exercise. Lactic acid produced by fermentation is often racemic, although certain species of bacteria produce solely (R)-lactic acid. On the other hand, lactic acid produced by anaerobic respiration in muscles has the S configuration.

As a brief exercise, try drawing the three-dimensional structure of (R)-lactic acid. You may find this easier if you draw both enantiomers first and then assign a label to each. You should have drawn:

![Image of (R)-lactic acid structure]

Remember that, if we had made lactic acid in the laboratory from simple achiral starting materials, we would have got a racemic mixture of (R)- and (S)-lactic acid. Reactions in living systems can produce enantiomerically pure compounds because they make use of enzymes, themselves enantiomerically pure compounds of (S)-amino acids.

Is there a chemical difference between two enantiomers?

The short answer is no.* Take (S)-alanine (in other words, alanine extracted from plants) and (R)-alanine (the enantiomer found in bacterial cell walls) as examples. They have identical NMR spectra, identical IR spectra, and identical physical properties with a single important exception. If you shine plane-polarized light through a solution of (S)-alanine, you will find that the light is rotated to the right. A solution of (R)-alanine rotates plane-polarized light to the left and by the same amount. Racemic alanine doesn’t rotate such light at all.

The rotation of plane-polarized light is known as optical activity

Observation of the rotation of plane-polarized light is known as polarimetry; it is a straightforward way of finding out if a sample is racemic or if it contains more of one enantiomer than the other. Polarimetric measurements are carried out in a polarimeter, which has a single-wavelength (monochromatic) light source with a plane-polarizing filter, a sample holder, where a cell containing a solution of the substance under examination can be placed, and a detector with a read-out that indicates by how much the light is rotated. Rotation to the right is given a positive value, rotation to the left a negative one.

![Diagram of polarimeter setup]

* Plane-polarized light can be considered as a beam of light in which all of the light waves have their direction of vibration aligned parallel. It is produced by shining light through a polarizing filter.

* The longer answer is more involved, and we go into it in more detail in Chapter 41.
The angle through which a sample of a compound (usually a solution) rotates plane-polarized light depends on a number of factors, the most important ones being the path length (how far the light has to pass through the solution), concentration, temperature, solvent, and wavelength. Typically, optical rotations are measured at 20 °C in a solvent such as ethanol or chloroform, and the light used is from a sodium lamp, with a wavelength of 589 nm.

The observed angle through which the light is rotated is given the symbol \( \alpha \). By dividing this value by the path length \( \cdot \) (in dm) and the concentration \( c \) (in g cm\(^{-3}\)) we get a value, \([\alpha]\), which is specific to the compound in question. Indeed, \([\alpha]\) is known as the compound’s **specific rotation**. The choice of units is eccentric and arbitrary but is universal so we must live with it.

\[
[\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{c \cdot \lambda}
\]

Most \([\alpha]\) values are quoted as \([\alpha]_D\) (where the D indicates the wavelength of 589 nm, the ‘D line’ of a sodium lamp) or \([\alpha]_{20}\), the 20 indicating 20 °C. These define the remaining variables.

Here is an example. A simple acid, known as mandelic acid, can be obtained from almonds in an enantiomerically pure form. When 28 mg was dissolved in 1 cm\(^3\) of ethanol and the solution placed in a 10-cm-long polarimeter cell, an optical rotation \(\alpha\) of –4.35° was measured (that is, 4.35° to the left) at 20 °C with light of wavelength 589 nm. What is the specific rotation of the acid?

First, we need to convert the concentration to grammes per cubic centimetre: 28 mg in 1 cm\(^3\) is the same as 0.028 g cm\(^{-3}\). The path length of 10 cm is 1 dm, so

\[
[\alpha]_D = \frac{-4.35}{0.028 \times 1} = -155.4
\]

**Enantiomers can be described as (+) or (–)**

We can use the fact that two enantiomers rotate plane-polarized light in opposite directions to assign each a label that doesn’t depend on knowing its configuration. We call the enantiomer that rotates plane-polarized light to the right (gives a positive rotation) the (+)-enantiomer (or the **dextrorotatory** enantiomer) and the enantiomer that rotates plane-polarized light to the left (gives a negative rotation) the (–)-enantiomer (or the **laevorotatory** enantiomer). The direction in which light is rotated is not dependent on whether a stereogenic centre is R or S. An (R) compound is equally as likely to be (+) as (–)—of course, if it is (+) then its (S) enantiomer must be (–). The enantiomer of mandelic acid we have just discussed, for example, is (R)-(–)-mandelic acid because its specific rotation is negative, and (S)-alanine happens to be (S)-(+)alanine. The labels (+) and (–) were more useful before the days of X-ray crystallography, when chemists did not know the actual configuration of the molecules they studied, and could distinguish two enantiomers only by the signs of their specific rotations.

**Enantiomers can be described as D or L**

Long before the appearance of X-ray crystallography as an analytical tool, chemists had to discover the detailed structure and stereochemistry of molecules by a complex series of degradations. A molecule was gradually broken down into its constituents, and from the products that were formed the overall structure of the starting molecule was deduced. As far as stereochemistry was concerned, it was possible to measure the specific rotation of a compound, but not to determine its configuration. However, by using series of degradations it was possible to tell whether certain compounds had the same or opposite configurations.

Glyceraldehyde is one of the simplest chiral compounds in nature. Because of this, chemists took it as the standard against which the configurations of other compounds could be compared. The two enantiomers of glyceraldehyde were given the labels D (for dextro—because it was the (+)-enantiomer) and L (for laev—because it was the (–)-enantiomer). Any enantiomerically pure compound that could be related, by a series of chemical degradations and transformations, to D-(+)glyceraldehyde was labelled D, and any compound that could be
related to \(\text{L}-(-)\)-glyceraldehyde was labelled \(\text{L}\). The processes concerned were slow and laborious (the scheme below shows how \((-)\)-lactic acid was shown to be \(\text{D}(-)\)-lactic acid) and are never used today. \(\text{D}\) and \(\text{L}\) are now used only for certain well-known natural molecules, where their use is established by tradition, for example, the \(\text{L}\)-amino acids or the \(\text{D}\)-sugars. These labels, \(\text{D}\) and \(\text{L}\), are in \textit{small capital} letters.

- Remember that the \(R/S\), \(+/-\), and \(\text{D/L}\) nomenclatures all arise from different observations and the fact that a molecule has, say, the \(R\) configuration gives no clue as to whether it will have \(+\) or \(-\) optical activity or be labelled \(\text{D}\) or \(\text{L}\). Never try and label a molecule as \(\text{D/L}\) or \(+/-\) simply by working it out from the structure. Likewise, never try and predict whether a molecule will have a \(+\) or \(-\) specific rotation by looking at the structure.

**The correlation between \(\text{D}(-)\)-lactic acid and \(\text{D}(+)-\)glyceraldehyde**

Here, for example, is the way that \((-)\)-lactic acid was shown to have the same configuration as \(\text{D}(-)\)-glyceraldehyde. We do not expect you to have come across the reactions used here.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{D}(-)\text{-lactic acid} & \xrightarrow{\text{Na/Hg}} \text{(+)-isoserine} \\
\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_2, \text{HgO}} \text{HO}\text{-glyceric acid} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{HgO}} \text{D}(+)-\text{glyceraldehyde}
\end{align*}
\]

Notice from this scheme that the three intermediates all have the ‘same’ stereochemistry and yet one is \((R)\) and two are \((S)\). This is merely the consequence of the priority of the elements. \((R)\) can be \(\text{D}\) or \(\text{L}\) and \((+\) or \((-\).

**Diastereoisomers are stereoisomers that are not enantiomers**

Two enantiomers are chemically identical because they are mirror images of one another. Other types of stereoisomers may be chemically (and physically) quite different. These two alkenes, for example, are geometrical isomers (or \(\text{cis}–\text{trans}\) isomers). Their physical chemical properties are different, as you would expect, since they are quite different in shape. Neither is chiral of course as they are planar molecules.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HO}_2\text{C} & \xrightarrow{\text{fumaric acid}} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{cis}-\text{butenedioic acid} & \xrightarrow{\text{maleic acid}} \text{cis} & \text{trans}-\text{butenedioic acid (fumaric acid)} & \text{m.p. 299–300 °C} \\
\nom{\text{cis}} & \text{trans} & \text{cis}-\text{butenedioic acid (maleic acid)} & \text{m.p. 140–142 °C}
\end{align*}
\]

A similar type of stereoisomerism can exist in cyclic compounds. In one of these, \(4\text{-t}-\text{butylcyclohexanols}\), the two substituents are on the same side of the ring; in the other, they are on opposite sides of the ring. Again, the two compounds have chemical and physical properties that are quite different.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cis 4-t-butylcyclohexanol} & \xrightarrow{\text{cis isomer}} \text{mp 82–83 °C} \\
\text{trans 4-t-butylcyclohexanol} & \xrightarrow{\text{trans isomer}} \text{mp 80–81 °C}
\end{align*}
\]

\(1^H\text{NMR: }\delta_H \text{ of green proton 4.02} \quad \text{cis isomer} \quad \delta_H \text{ of green proton 3.50} \text{trans isomer}

Stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another are called \textit{diastereoisomers}. Both of these pairs of isomers fall into this category. Notice how the physical and chemical properties of a pair of diastereoisomers differ.

- The physical and chemical properties of enantiomers are identical; the physical and chemical properties of diastereoisomers differ. ‘Diastereoisomer’ is sometimes shortened to ‘diastereomer’.
Diastereoisomers can be chiral or achiral

This pair of epoxides was produced by chemists in Pennsylvania in the course of research on drugs intended to alleviate the symptoms of asthma. Clearly, they are again diastereoisomers, and again they have different properties. Although the reaction they were using to make these compounds gave some of each diastereoisomer, the chemists working on these compounds only wanted to use the first (trans) epoxide. They were able to separate it from its cis diastereoisomer by chromatography because the diastereoisomers differ in polarity.

\[
\text{trans epoxide} \quad \text{cis epoxide}
\]

This time, the diastereoisomers are a little more complex than the examples above. The first two pairs of diastereoisomers we looked at were achiral—they each had a plane of symmetry through the molecule.

Two pairs of achiral diastereoisomers

\[
\text{fumaric acid} \quad \text{maleic acid}
\]

The epoxide diastereoisomers, on the other hand, are chiral. We know this because they do not have a plane of symmetry and we can check that by drawing the mirror image of each one: it is not superimposable on the first structure.

\[
\text{structures have no plane of symmetry, so they must be chiral}
\]

If a compound is chiral, it can exist as two enantiomers. We’ve just drawn the two enantiomers of each of the diastereoisomers of our epoxide. This set of four structures contains two diastereoisomers (stereoisomers that are not mirror images). These are the two different chemical compounds, the cis and trans epoxides, that have different properties. Each can exist as two enantiomers (stereoisomers that are mirror images) indistinguishable except for rotation. We have two pairs of diastereoisomers, each being a pair of enantiomers. When you are considering the stereochemistry of a compound, always distinguish the diastereoisomers first and then split these into enantiomers if they are chiral.
In fact, the chemists working on these compounds wanted only one enantiomer of the \textit{trans} epoxide—the top left stereoisomer. They were able to separate the \textit{trans} epoxide from the \textit{cis} epoxide by chromatography because they are diastereoisomers. However, because they had made both diastereoisomers in the laboratory from achiral starting materials, both diastereoisomers were racemic mixtures of the two enantiomers. Separating the top enantiomer of the \textit{trans} epoxide from the bottom one was much harder because enantiomers have identical physical and chemical properties. To get just the enantiomer they wanted the chemists had to develop some completely different chemistry, using enantiomerically pure compounds derived from nature.

\textbf{Absolute and relative stereochemistry}

When we talk about two chiral diastereoisomers, we have no choice but to draw the structure of one enantiomer of each diastereoisomer because we need to include the stereochemical information to distinguish them, even if we’re talking about a racemic mixture of the two enantiomers. To avoid confusion, it’s best to write something definite under the structure, such as ‘±’ (meaning racemic) under a structure if it means ‘this diastereoisomer’ but not ‘this enantiomer of this diastereoisomer’. So in this case we should say that the chemists were able to separate these two diastereoisomers, but wanted only one enantiomer of the \textit{trans} diastereoisomer and that this could not be separated by physical means.

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{diagram.png}
\end{center}

When the stereochemistry drawn on a molecule means ‘this diastereoisomer’, we say that we are representing relative stereochemistry; when it means ‘this enantiomer of this diastereoisomer’ we say we are representing its absolute stereochemistry. Relative stereochemistry tells us only how the stereogenic centres within a molecule relate to each other.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{Enantiomers and diastereoisomers}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item Enantiomers are stereoisomers that are mirror images. A pair of enantiomers are mirror-image forms of the same compound and have opposite absolute stereochemistry.
\item Diastereoisomers are stereoisomers that are not mirror images. Two diastereoisomers are different compounds, and have different relative stereochemistry.
\item Diastereoisomers may be achiral (have a plane of symmetry) or they may be chiral (have no plane of symmetry).
\end{itemize}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{enantiomers_diagram.png}
\end{center}

\textbf{Diastereoisomers can arise when structures have more than one stereogenic centre}

Let’s analyse our set of four stereoisomers a little more closely. You may have already noticed that these structures all contain stereogenic centres—two in each case. Go back to the diagram of the four structures at the bottom of p. 312 and, without looking at the structures overleaf, assign an \textit{R} or \textit{S} label to each of the stereogenic centres.

You should have made assignments of \textit{R} and \textit{S} like this.

You need to know, and be able to use, the rules for assigning \textit{R} and \textit{S}; they were explained on p. 308. If you get any of the assignments wrong, make sure you understand why.
Converting enantiomers and diastereoisomers

- To go from one enantiomer to another, both stereogenic centres are inverted.
- To go from one diastereoisomer to another, only one of the two is inverted.

All the compounds that we have talked about so far have been cyclic because the diastereoisomers are easy to visualize: two diastereoisomers can be identified because the substituents are either on the same side or on opposite sides of the ring (cis or trans). But acyclic compounds can exist as diastereoisomers too. Take these two, for example. Both ephedrine and pseudoephedrine are members of the amphetamine class of stimulants, which act by imitating the action of the hormone adrenaline.

Ephedrine and pseudoephedrine are stereoisomers that are clearly not mirror images of each other—only one of the two stereogenic centres in ephedrine is inverted in pseudoephedrine—so they must be diastereoisomers. Thinking in terms of stereogenic centres is useful because, just as this compound has two stereogenic centres and can exist as two diastereoisomers, any compound with more than one stereogenic centre can exist in more than one diastereoisomeric form.

Both ephedrine and pseudoephedrine are produced in enantiomerically pure form by plants, so, unlike the anti-asthma intermediates above, in this case we are talking about single enantiomers of single diastereoisomers. Adrenaline (also known as epinephrine) is also chiral. In nature it is a single enantiomer but it cannot exist as other diastereoisomers as it has only one stereogenic centre.

Ephedrine and pseudoephedrine

Ephedrine is a component of the traditional Chinese remedy ‘Ma Huang’, extracted from Ephedra species. It is also used in nasal sprays as a decongestant. Pseudoephedrine is the active component of the decongestant Sudafed.

The ‘natural’ enantiomers of the two diastereomers are (−)-ephedrine and (+)pseudoephedrine, which does not tell you which is which, or (1R,2S)-(−)-ephedrine and (1S,2S)-(+)pseudoephedrine.
pseudoephedrine, which does. From that you should be able to deduce the corresponding structures.

Here are some data on \((1R,2S)-(\text{--})\)-ephedrine and \((1S,2S)-(\text{+})\)-pseudoephedrine and their ‘unnatural’ enantiomers (which have to be made in the laboratory), \((1S,2R)-(\text{+})\)-ephedrine and \((1R,2R)-(\text{--})\)-pseudoephedrine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>((1R,2S)-(\text{--}))-ephedrine</th>
<th>((1S,2R)-(\text{+}))-ephedrine</th>
<th>((1S,2S)-(\text{+}))-pseudoephedrine</th>
<th>((1R,2R)-(\text{--}))-pseudoephedrine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mp</td>
<td>40–40.5 °C</td>
<td>40–40.5 °C</td>
<td>117–118 °C</td>
<td>117–118 °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\alpha]D)_</td>
<td>(-6.3)</td>
<td>(+6.3)</td>
<td>(+52)</td>
<td>(-52)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The two diastereoisomers are different compounds with different names and different properties, while the pairs of enantiomers are the same compound with the same properties, differing only in the direction in which they rotate polarized light.

We can illustrate the combination of two stereogenic centres in a compound by considering what happens when you shake hands with someone. Hand-shaking is successful only if you each use the same hand! By convention, this is your right hand, but it’s equally possible to shake left hands. The overall pattern of interaction between two right hands and two left hands is the same: a right-handshake and a left-handshake are enantiomers of one another; they differ only in being mirror images. If, however, you misguided try to shake your right hand with someone else’s left hand you end up holding hands. Held hands consist of one left and one right hand; a pair of held hands have totally different interactions from a pair of shaking hands; we can say that holding hands is a diastereoisomer of shaking hands. We can summarize the situation when we have two hands, or two chiral centres, each one \(R\) or \(S\).

What about compounds with more than two stereogenic centres? The family of sugars provides lots of examples. Ribose is a five-carbon sugar that contains three stereogenic centres. The enantiomer shown here is the one used in the metabolism of all living things and, by convention, is known as \(d\)-ribose. The three stereogenic centres of \(d\)-ribose have the \(R\) configuration. For convenience, we will consider ribose in its open-chain form, but more usually it would be cyclic, as shown underneath.

\[ \text{Remember that } (\text{+}) \text{ and } (\text{--}) \text{ refer to the sign of the specific rotation, while } R \text{ and } S \text{ are derived simply by looking at the structure of the compounds. There is no simple connection between the two!} \]
In theory we can work out how many ‘stereoisomers’ there are of a compound with three stereogenic centres simply by noting that there are $8 (= 2^3)$ ways of arranging Rs and Ss.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
RRR & RRS & RSR & RSS \\
SSS & SSR & SRS & SRR
\end{array}
\]

But this method blurs the all-important distinction between diastereoisomers and enantiomers. In each case, the combination in the top row and the combination directly below it are enantiomers (all three centres are inverted); the four columns are diastereoisomers. Three stereogenic centres therefore give four diastereoisomers, each a pair of two enantiomers. Going back to the example of the $C_3$ aldoses, each of these diastereoisomers is a different sugar. In these diagrams each diastereoisomer is in a frame but the top line shows one enantiomer (D) and the bottom line the other (L).

**Structure of sugars**

A sugar has the empirical formula $C_nH_{2n}O_n$ and consists of a chain of carbon atoms, one being a carbonyl group and the rest carrying OH groups. If the carbonyl group is at the end of the chain (in other words, it is an aldehyde), the sugar is an aldose. If the carbonyl group is not at the end of the chain, the sugar is a ketose. We come back to all this in detail in Chapter 42. The number of carbon atoms, $n$, can be 3–8: aldoses have $n - 2$ stereogenic centres and ketoses $n - 3$ stereogenic centres. In fact, most sugars exist as an equilibrium mixture of this open-chain structure and a cyclic hemiacetal isomer (Chapter 6).

You’ve probably recognized that there’s a simple mathematical relationship between the number of stereogenic centres and the number of stereoisomers a structure can have. Usually, a structure with $n$ stereogenic centres can exist as $2^n$ stereoisomers. These stereoisomers consist of $2^{n-1}$ diastereoisomers, each of which has a pair of enantiomers.

**Fischer projections**

The stereochemistry of sugars used to be represented by Fischer projections. The carbon backbone was laid out in a vertical line and twisted in such a way that all the substituents pointed towards the viewer. Fischer projections are so unlike real molecules that you should never use them. However, you may see them in older books, and you should have an idea about how to interpret them. Just remember that all the branches down the side of the central trunk are effectively bold wedges (coming towards the viewer), while the central trunk lies in the plane of the paper. By mentally twisting the backbone into a realistic zig-zag shape you should end up with a reasonable representation of the sugar molecule.
**Why only usually?—achiral compounds with more than one stereogenic centre**

Sometimes, symmetry in a molecule can cause some stereoisomers to be degenerate, or ‘cancel out’—there aren’t as many stereoisomers as you’d expect. Take tartaric acid, for example. This stereoisomer of tartaric acid is found in grapes, and its salt, potassium hydrogen tartrate, can precipitate out as crystals at the bottom of bottles of wine. It has two stereogenic centres, so you’d expect $2^2 = 4$ stereoisomers; two diastereoisomers, each a pair of enantiomers.

![Interactive stereoisomers of tartaric acid](image)

While the pair of structures on the left are certainly enantiomers, if you look carefully at the pair of structures on the right, you’ll see that they are, in fact, not enantiomers but identical structures. To prove it, just rotate the top one through 180° in the plane of the paper.

(1R,2S)-Tartaric acid and (1S,2R)-tartaric acid are not enantiomers, but they are identical because, even though they contain stereogenic centres, they are achiral. By drawing (1R,2S)-tartaric acid after a 180° rotation about the central bond, you can easily see that it has a mirror plane, and so must be achiral. Since the molecule has a plane of symmetry, and R is the mirror image of S, the R,S diastereoisomer cannot be chiral.

![Interactive display of meso form of tartaric acid](image)

**Compounds that contain stereogenic centres but are themselves achiral are called meso compounds.** This means that there is a plane of symmetry with R stereochemistry on one side and S stereochemistry on the other.

So tartaric acid can exist as two diastereoisomers, one with two enantiomers and the other achiral (a meso compound). It’s worth noting that the formula stating that a compound with $n$ stereogenic centres has $2^{n-1}$ diastereoisomers has worked but not the formula that states there are $2^n$ ‘stereoisomers’. In general, it’s safer not to count up total ‘stereoisomers’ but to work out first how many diastereoisomers there are, and then to decide whether or not each one is chiral, and therefore whether or not it has a pair of enantiomers.

**Meso hand-shaking**

We can extend our analogy between hand-shaking and diastereoisomers to meso compounds as well. Imagine a pair of identical twins shaking hands. They could be shaking their left hands or their right hands and there would be a way to tell the two handshakes apart because they are enantiomers. But if the twins hold hands, you will not be able to distinguish left holds right from right holds left, because the twins themselves are indistinguishable—this is the meso hand-hold!
Chiral diastereoisomer

Achiral diastereoisomer

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
\text{Chiral diastereoisomer} & \text{Achiral diastereoisomer} \\
\hline
\text{(+)-tartaric acid} & \text{(-)-tartaric acid} & \text{meso-tartaric acid} \\
\hline
[\alpha]_D^{19} & +12 & -12 & 0 \\
m.p. & 168–170 °C & 168–170 °C & 146–148 °C \\
\end{array}
\]

Meso diastereoisomers of inositol

Look out for meso diastereoisomers in compounds that have a degree of symmetry in their overall structure. Inositol, one of whose diastereoisomers is an important growth factor, has six stereogenic centres. It’s a challenge to work out how many diastereoisomers it has—in fact all but one of them are meso.

Investigating the stereochemistry of a compound

When you want to describe the stereochemistry of a compound our advice is to identify the diastereoisomers and then think about whether they are chiral or not. Don’t just count up ‘stereoisomers’—to say that a compound with two stereogenic centres has four ‘stereoisomers’ is rather like saying that ‘four hands are getting married’. Two people are getting married, each with two hands.

Let’s work through how you might think about the stereochemistry of a simple example, the linear triol 2,3,4-trihydroxypentane or pentane-2,3,4-triol.

This is what you should do.

1. Draw the compound with the carbon skeleton in the usual zig-zag fashion running across the page, 1.

2. Identify the chiral centres, 2.

3. Decide how many diastereoisomers there are by putting the substituents at those centres up or down. It often helps to give each diastereoisomer a ‘tag’ name. In this case there are three diastereoisomers. The three OH groups can be all on the same side or else one of the end OHs or the middle one can be on the opposite side to the rest. We can call the first syn,syn because the two pairs of chiral centres (1 & 2, and 2 & 3) groups are both arranged with the OHs on the same side of the molecule (syn).

4. By checking on possible planes of symmetry, see which diastereoisomers are chiral. In this case only the plane down the centre can be a plane of symmetry.

5. Draw the enantiomers of any chiral diastereoisomer by inverting all the stereogenic centres. This can easily be achieved by reflecting the molecule in the plane of the paper, as if it were a mirror. Everything that was ‘up’ is now ‘down’ and vice versa.

6. Announce the conclusion. You could have said that there are four ‘stereoisomers’ but the following statement is much more helpful. There are three diastereoisomers, the syn,syn, the syn,anti, and the anti,anti. The syn,syn and the anti,anti are achiral (meso) compounds but the syn,anti is chiral and has two enantiomers.
The mystery of Feist’s acid

It is hard nowadays to realize how difficult structure solving was before the days of spectroscopy. A celebrated case was that of ‘Feist’s acid’, discovered by Feist in 1893 from a deceptively simple reaction. Early work without spectra led to two suggestions for its structure, both based on a three-membered ring, which gave the compound some fame because unsaturated three-membered rings were rare. The favoured structure was the cyclopropene.

The argument was still going on in the 1950s when the first NMR spectrometers appeared. Although infrared appeared to support the cyclopropene structure, one of the first problems resolved by the primitive 40 MHz instruments available was that of Feist’s acid, which had no methyl group signal but did have two protons on a double bond and so had to be the exomethylene isomer after all.

This structure has two chiral centres, so how will we know which diastereoisomer we have? The answer was simple: the stereochemistry has to be trans because Feist’s acid is chiral: it can be resolved (see later in this chapter) into two enantiomers. Now, the cis diacid would have a plane of symmetry, and so would be achiral—it would be a meso compound. The trans acid on the other hand is chiral. If you do not see this, try superimposing it on its mirror image—you will find that you cannot. In fact, Feist’s acid has an axis of symmetry, and you will see shortly that axes of symmetry are compatible with chirality.

Modern NMR spectra make the structure easy to deduce. There are only two proton signals as the CO$_2$H protons exchange in the DMSO solvent needed. The two protons on the double bond are identical (5.60 ppm) and so are the two protons on the three-membered ring, which come at the expected high field (2.67 ppm). There are four carbon signals: the C=O at 170 ppm, two alkene signals between 100 and 150 ppm, and the two identical carbons in the three-membered ring at 25.45 ppm.

Chiral compounds with no stereogenic centres

A few compounds are chiral, yet have no stereogenic centres. Try making a model of the allene in the margin. It has no stereogenic centre, but these mirror images are not superimposable and so the allene is chiral: the structures shown are enantiomers. Similarly, some biaryl compounds, such as the important bisphosphine below, known as BINAP, exist as two separate enantiomers because rotation about the green bond is restricted. If you were to look at this molecule straight down along the green bond, you would see that the two flat rings are at right angles to each other and so the molecule has a twist in it rather like the 90° twist in the allene. Compounds that are chiral because of restricted rotation about a single bond are called atropisomers (from the Greek for ‘won’t turn’).
These two examples rely on the rigidity of \( \pi \) systems but this simple saturated system is also chiral. These two rings have to be orthogonal because of the tetrahedral nature of the central carbon atom. There is no chiral centre, but there is no plane of symmetry. Cyclic compounds like this with rings joined at a single C atom are called spiro compounds. Spiro compounds are often chiral even when at a first glance they look quite symmetrical, and you should look particularly carefully for planes of symmetry when you think about their stereochemistry.

**Axes and centres of symmetry**

The fact that the three compounds we have just introduced (along with Feist's acid in the box on p. 319) were chiral might have surprised you, because at first glance they do look quite ‘symmetrical’. In fact, they do all have an element of symmetry, and it is only one which is compatible with chirality: an axis of symmetry. If a molecule can be rotated through 180° about an axis to give exactly the same structure then it has twofold axial symmetry, or \( C_2 \) symmetry. Compounds with an axis of symmetry will still be chiral, provided they lack either a plane or a centre of symmetry.

\( C_2 \) symmetry is common in many more everyday molecules than the ones in the last section. Below is an example of a compound with two diastereoisomers. One (we call it the *syn* diastereoisomer here—the two phenyl rings are on the same side) has a plane of symmetry—it must be achiral (and as it nonetheless has chiral centres we can also call it the *meso* diastereoisomer). The other has some degree of symmetry, but it has axial symmetry and can therefore be chiral. The \( C_2 \) axis of symmetry is shown in orange. Rotating 180° gives back the same structure, but reflecting in a mirror plane (brown) gives a non-superimposable mirror image.

So far we have used a *plane of symmetry* as the defining characteristic of an achiral molecule: we have said several times that a molecule is chiral if it lacks a plane of symmetry. We are now
going to introduce a second type of symmetry that is not compatible with chirality. If a molecule has a *centre of symmetry* it is not chiral. We will now explain how to spot a centre of symmetry.

The diamide skeleton in the margin has a plane of symmetry in the plane of the page and also a plane of symmetry at right angles to that plane passing through the two saturated carbon atoms (represented by the green dotted line). If we add substituents R to this structure we can have two diastereoisomers with the two R groups on the same side (*syn*) of the flat ring or on opposite (*anti*) sides. Although the plane of the paper is no longer a plane of symmetry, neither isomer is chiral as the other plane bisects the substituents and is still a plane of symmetry. So far nothing new.

Now consider the related double amide below. The plane of the page is again a plane of symmetry but there is now no plane of symmetry at right angles. This heterocycle is called a ‘diketopiperazine’ and can be made by dimerizing an amino acid: the compound in the margin is the dimer of glycine. With substituted amino acids, such as those below where $R \neq H$, there are again two diastereoisomers, *syn* and *anti*. But their symmetry properties are different. The *syn* isomer is chiral but the *anti* isomer is not.

The *syn* diastereoisomer has no plane of symmetry but you should be able to spot a $C_2$ axis of symmetry running straight through the middle of the ring. The axis is compatible with chirality of course. In this compound both chiral centres are $S$ and it has an enantiomer where both are $R$.

The *anti* diastereoisomer has no plane of symmetry, nor does it have an axis. Instead it has a *centre of symmetry*. This is marked with a black dot in the middle of the molecule and means that if you go in any direction from this centre and meet, say, an R group, you will meet the same thing if you go in the opposite direction (green arrows). The same thing applies to the brown arrows and, of course, to the ring itself. There is no centre of symmetry in the *syn* isomer as the green or brown arrows would point to R on one side and H on the other. The *anti* isomer is superimposable on its mirror image and is achiral.
Chirality in terms of planes, centres, and axes of symmetry

- Any molecule which has a plane of symmetry or a centre of symmetry is achiral.
- Any molecule which has an axis of symmetry is chiral, provided it does not also have a plane or a centre of symmetry. An axis of symmetry is the only symmetry element compatible with chirality.

Separating enantiomers is called resolution

Early in this chapter we said that most of the molecules in Nature are chiral, and that Nature usually produces these molecules as single enantiomers. We’ve talked about the amino acids, the sugars, ephedrine, pseudoephedrine, and tartaric acid—all compounds that can be isolated from natural sources as single enantiomers. On the other hand, in the laboratory, if we make chiral compounds from achiral starting materials we are doomed to get racemic mixtures. So how do chemists ever isolate compounds as single enantiomers, other than by extracting them from natural sources? We’ll consider this question in much more detail in Chapter 41, but here we will look at the simplest way: using Nature’s enantiomerically pure compounds to help us separate the components of a racemic mixture into its two enantiomers. This process is called resolution. Imagine the reaction between a chiral, but racemic, alcohol and a chiral, but racemic, carboxylic acid, to give an ester in an ordinary acid-catalysed esterification (Chapter 10).

The product contains two chiral centres, so we expect to get two diastereoisomers, each a racemic mixture of two enantiomers. Diastereoisomers have different physical properties, so they should be easy to separate, for example by chromatography.

We could then reverse the esterification step and hydrolyse either of these diastereoisomers, to regenerate racemic alcohol and racemic acid.

Remember that (±) means the compounds are racemic: we’re showing only relative, not absolute, stereochemistry.
If we repeat this reaction, this time using an enantiomerically pure sample of the acid, available from (R)-mandelic acid, the almond extract you met on p. 310, we will again get two diastereoisomeric products, but this time each one will be enantiomerically pure. Note that the stereochemistry shown here is absolute stereochemistry.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{H}^+ \\
\text{HO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{OMe} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{OMe} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\end{align*}
\]

If we now hydrolyse each diastereoisomer separately, we have done something rather remarkable: we have managed to separate two enantiomers of the starting alcohol.

A separation of two enantiomers is called a **resolution**. Resolutions can be carried out only if we make use of a component that is already enantiomerically pure: it is very useful that Nature provides us with such compounds; resolutions nearly always make use of compounds derived from nature.

**Natural chirality**

Why Nature uses only one enantiomer of most important biochemicals is an easier question to answer than how this asymmetry came about in the first place, or why l-amino acids and d-sugars were the favoured enantiomers, since, for example, proteins made out of racemic samples of amino acids would be complicated by the possibility of enormous numbers of diastereomers. Some have suggested that life arose on the surface of single chiral quartz crystals, which provided the asymmetric environment needed to make life’s molecules enantiomerically pure. Or perhaps the asymmetry present in the spin of electrons released as gamma rays acted as a source of molecular asymmetry. Given that enantiomerically pure living systems should be simpler than racemic ones, maybe it was just chance that the l-amino acids and the d-sugars won out.

Now for a real example. Chemists studying the role of amino acids in brain function needed to obtain each of the two enantiomers of the amino acid in the margin. They made a racemic sample using the Strecker synthesis of amino acids that you met in Chapter 11. The racemic amino acid was treated with acetic anhydride to make the mixed anhydride and then with the sodium salt of naturally derived, enantiomerically pure alcohol menthol to give two diastereoisomers of the ester.

One of the diastereoisomers turned out to be more crystalline (that is, to have a higher melting point) than the other and, by allowing the mixture to crystallize, the chemists were able to isolate a pure sample of this diastereoisomer. Evaporating the diastereoisomer left in solution (the ‘mother liquor’) gave them the less crystalline diastereoisomer.
Next the esters were hydrolysed by boiling them in aqueous KOH. The acids obtained were enantiomers, as shown by their (nearly) opposite optical rotations and similar melting points. Finally, a more vigorous hydrolysis of the amides (boiling for 40 hours with 20% NaOH) gave them the amino acids they required for their biological studies (see bottom of p. 322).

Note that the rotations of the pure diastereoisomers were not equal and opposite. These are single enantiomers of different compounds and there is no reason for them to have the same rotation.

Resolutions using diastereoisomeric salts

The key point about resolution is that we must bring together two stereogenic centres in such a way that there is a degree of interaction between them: separable diastereoisomers are created from inseparable enantiomers. In the last two examples, the stereogenic centres were brought together in covalent compounds, esters. Ionic compounds will do just as well—in fact, they are often better because it is easier to recover the compound after the resolution.
An important example is the resolution of the enantiomers of naproxen. Naproxen is a member of a family of compounds known as non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) which are 2-aryl propionic acids. This class also includes ibuprofen, the painkiller developed by Boots and marketed as Nurofen.

Both naproxen and ibuprofen are chiral but, while both enantiomers of ibuprofen are effective painkillers, and the drug is sold as a racemic mixture (and anyway racemizes in the body) only the (S) enantiomer of naproxen has anti-inflammatory activity. When the American pharmaceutical company Syntex first marketed the drug they needed a way of resolving the racemic naproxen they synthesized in the laboratory.

Since naproxen is a carboxylic acid, they chose to make the carboxylate salt of an enantiomerically pure amine, and found that the most effective was a glucose derivative. Crystals were formed, which consisted of the salt of the amine and (S)-naproxen, the salt of the amine with (R)-naproxen (the diastereoisomer of the crystalline salt) being more soluble and so remaining in solution. These crystals were filtered off and treated with base, releasing the amine (which can later be recovered and reused) and allowing the (S)-naproxen to crystallize as its sodium salt. This is an unusual resolving agent as a simpler amine might usually be preferred. However, it makes the point that many resolving agents may have to be tried before one is found that works.

You may consider it strange that it was necessary to market naproxen as a single enantiomer, in view of what we have said about enantiomers having identical properties. The two enantiomers of naproxen do indeed have identical properties in the laboratory, but once they are inside a living system they, and any other chiral molecules, are differentiated by interactions with the enantiomerically pure molecules they find there. An analogy is that of a pair of gloves—the gloves weigh the same, are made of the same material, and have the same colour—in these respects they are identical. But interact them with a chiral environment, such as a hand, and they become differentiable because only one fits.
The way in which drugs interact with receptors mirrors this hand-and-glove analogy quite closely. Drug receptors, into which drug molecules fit like hands in gloves, are nearly always protein molecules, which are enantiomerically pure because they are made up of just l-amino acids. One enantiomer of a drug is likely to interact much better than the other, or perhaps in a different way altogether, so the two enantiomers of chiral drugs often have quite different pharmacological effects. In the case of naproxen, the (S)-enantiomer is 28 times as effective as the (R). Ibuprofen, on the other hand, is still marketed as a racemate because the compound racemizes in the bloodstream.

Sometimes, the enantiomers of a drug may have completely different therapeutic properties. One example is Darvon, which is a painkiller. Its enantiomer, known as Novrad, is an anticough agent. Notice how the enantiomeric relationship between these two drugs extends beyond their chemical structures! In Chapter 41 we will talk about other cases where two enantiomers have quite different biological effects.

**Resolutions can be carried out by chromatography on chiral materials**

Interactions even weaker than ionic bonds can be used to separate enantiomers. Chromatographic separation relies on a difference in affinity between a stationary phase (often silica) and a mobile phase (the solvent travelling through the stationary phase, known as the eluent) mediated by, for example, hydrogen bonds or van der Waals interactions. If the stationary phase is made chiral by bonding it with an enantiomerically pure compound (often a derivative of an amino acid), chromatography can be used to separate enantiomers.

Chromatography on a chiral stationary phase is especially important when the compounds being resolved have no functional groups suitable for making the derivatives (usually esters or salts) needed for the more classical resolutions described above. For example, the two enantiomers of an analogue of the tranquillizer Valium were found to have quite different biological activities.
In order to study these compounds further, it was necessary to obtain them in enantiomerically pure form. This was done by passing a solution of the racemic compound through a column of silica bonded to an amino-acid-derived chiral stationary phase. The \((R)-(-)\)-enantiomer showed a lower affinity for the stationary phase and therefore was eluted from the column first, followed by the \((S)-(+)-\)enantiomer.

Two enantiomers of one molecule may be the same compound, but they are clearly different, although only in a limited number of situations. They can interact with biological systems differently, for example, and can form salts or compounds with different properties when reacted with a single enantiomer of another compound. In essence, enantiomers behave identically except when they are placed in a chiral environment. In Chapter 41 we will see how to use this fact to make single enantiomers of chiral compounds, but next we move on to three classes of reactions in which stereochemistry plays a key role: substitutions, eliminations, and additions.

**Further reading**


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution

Substitution is the replacement of one group by another. You met such reactions in Chapter 10, and an example is shown in the margin. This reaction is a substitution because the Cl group is replaced by the NH2 group. You learnt to call the molecule of ammonia (NH3) the nucleophile and the chloride you called the leaving group. In Chapter 10, the substitution reactions always took place at the trigonal (sp2) carbon atom of a carbonyl group.

In this chapter we shall be looking at reactions such as the second reaction in the margin. These are substitution reactions, because the Cl group is replaced by the PhS group. But the CH2 group at which the reaction takes place is a tetrahedral (sp3), or saturated, carbon atom, rather than a C=O group. This reaction and the one above may look superficially the same but they are quite different in mechanism. The requirements of good reagents are also different in substitutions at carbonyl groups and at saturated carbon—that’s why we changed the nucleophile from NH3 to PhS: ammonia would not give a good yield of PhCH2NH2 in the second reaction.

Let’s have a look at why the mechanisms of the two substitutions must be different. Here’s a summary of the mechanism of the first reaction.
In the first step the nucleophile attacks the $\text{C}=\text{O}$ $\pi$ bond. It’s immediately obvious that the first step is no longer possible at a saturated carbon atom. The electrons cannot be added to a $\pi$ bond as the CH$_2$ group is fully saturated. In fact there is no way for the nucleophile to add before the leaving group departs (as it did in the reaction above) because this would give an impossible five-valent carbon atom.

Instead, two new and different mechanisms become possible. Either the leaving group goes first and the nucleophile comes in later, or the two events happen at the same time. The first of these possibilities you will learn to call the $\text{SN}_1$ mechanism. The second mechanism, which shows how the neutral carbon atom can accept electrons provided it loses some at the same time, you will learn to call the $\text{SN}_2$ mechanism. You will see later that both mechanisms are possible with this molecule, benzyl chloride.

**Why is it important to know about the two mechanisms for substitution?**

If we know which mechanism a compound reacts by, we know what sort of conditions to use to get good yields in substitutions. For example, if you look at a commonly used nucleophilic substitution, the replacement of OH by Br, you’ll find that two quite different reaction conditions are used depending on the structure of the alcohol. Tertiary alcohols react rapidly with HBr to give tertiary alkyl bromides. Primary alcohols, on the other hand, react only very slowly with HBr and are usually converted to primary alkyl bromides with PBr$_3$. The reason is that the first example is an $\text{SN}_1$ reaction while the second is an $\text{SN}_2$ reaction: by the end of this chapter you will have a clear picture of how to predict which mechanism will apply and how to choose appropriate reaction conditions.

**Kinetic evidence for the $\text{SN}_1$ and $\text{SN}_2$ mechanisms**

Before we go any further we are going to look in a bit more detail at these two mechanisms because they allow us to explain and predict many aspects of substitution reactions. The evidence that convinced chemists that there are two different mechanisms for substitution at saturated carbon is kinetic: it relates to the rate of reactions such as the displacement of bromide by hydroxide, as shown in the margin.

It was discovered, chiefly by Hughes and Ingold in the 1930s, that some nucleophilic substitutions are first order (that is, the rate depends only on the concentration of the alkyl halide...
and does not depend on the concentration of the nucleophile), while others are second order (the rate depends on the concentrations of both the alkyl halide and the nucleophile). How can we explain this result? In what we called the ‘SN2 mechanism’ on p. 329 there is just one step. Here’s the one-step SN2 mechanism for substitution of n-butyl bromide by hydroxide:

\[
\text{Br}^- + \text{HO}^- \rightarrow \text{BrO}^- + \text{HO}^- + \text{n-Bu}^+
\]

With only one step, that step must be the rate-determining step. The rate of the overall reaction depends only on the rate of this step, and kinetic theory tells us that the rate of a reaction is proportional to the concentrations of the reacting species:

\[
\text{rate of reaction} = k[n-\text{BuBr}][\text{HO}^-]
\]

If this mechanism is right, then the rate of the reaction will be simply and linearly proportional to both [n-BuBr] and [HO−]. And it is. Ingold measured the rates of reactions like these and found that they were proportional to the concentration of each reactant—in other words they were second order. He called this mechanism Substitution, Nucleophilic, 2nd order; SN2 for short. The rate equation is usually given like this, with \(k_2\) representing the second-order rate constant.

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[n-\text{BuBr}][\text{HO}^-]
\]

**Significance of the SN2 rate equation**

This equation is useful for two reasons. Firstly, it gives us a test for the SN2 mechanism. Let’s illustrate this with another example: the reaction between NaSMe (an ionic solid—the nucleophile will be the anion MeS−) and MeI to give Me2S, dimethyl sulfide.

To study the rate equation, first, we keep the concentration of NaSMe constant and in a series of experiments vary that of MeI and see what happens to the rate. Then in another set of experiments we keep the concentration of MeI constant and vary that of MeSNa and see what happened to the rate. If the reaction is indeed SN2 we should get a linear relationship in both cases: the graphs in the margin show a typical set of results.

The first graph tells us that the rate is proportional to [MeI], that is, rate = \(k_a\)[MeI] and the second graph that it is proportional to [MeSNa], that is, rate = \(k_b\)[MeSNa]. But why are the slopes different? If you look at the rate equation for the reaction, you will see that we have incorporated a constant concentration of one of the reagents into what appears to be the rate constant for the reaction. The true rate equation is

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[n-\text{BuBr}][\text{HO}^-]
\]

If [MeSNa] is constant, the equation becomes

\[
\text{rate} = k_a[\text{MeI}], \text{ where } k_a = k_2[\text{MeSNa}]
\]

If [MeI] is constant, the equation becomes

\[
\text{rate} = k_b[\text{MeSNa}], \text{ where } k_b = k_2[\text{MeI}]
\]

If you examine the graphs you will see that the slopes are different because

\[
\text{slope 1} = k_a = k_2[\text{MeSNa}], \text{ but slope 2} = k_b = k_2[\text{MeI}]
\]

We can easily measure the true rate constant \(k_2\) from these slopes because we know the constant values for [MeSNa] in the first experiment and for [MeI] in the second. The value of \(k_2\)
from both experiments should be the same. The mechanism for this reaction is indeed $S_{N2}$: the nucleophile $\text{MeS}^-$ attacks as the leaving group $\Gamma$ leaves.

The second reason that the $S_{N2}$ rate equation is useful is that it confirms that the performance of an $S_{N2}$ reaction depends both on the nucleophile and on the carbon electrophile. We can therefore make a reaction go better (speed it up or improve its yield) by changing either. For example, if we want to displace $\Gamma$ from $\text{MeI}$ using an oxygen nucleophile we might consider using any of those in the table below.

### Oxygen nucleophiles in the $S_{N2}$ reaction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxygen nucleophile</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of conjugate acid</th>
<th>Rate in $S_{N2}$ reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\text{HO}^-$</td>
<td>15.7 ($\text{H}_2\text{O}$)</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{RCO}_2^-$</td>
<td>about 5 ($\text{RCO}_2\text{H}$)</td>
<td>moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>$-1.7$ ($\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$)</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{RSO}_2\text{O}^-$</td>
<td>0 ($\text{RSO}_2\text{OH}$)</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The same reasons that made hydroxide ion basic (chiefly that it is unstable as an anion and therefore reactive) make it a good nucleophile. Basicity can be viewed as nucleophilicity towards a proton, and nucleophilicity towards carbon must be related. So if we want a fast reaction, we should use NaOH rather than, say, $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ to provide the nucleophile. Even at the same concentration, the rate constant $k_2$ with $\text{HO}^-$ as the nucleophile is much greater than the $k_2$ with $\text{SO}_4^-$ as the nucleophile.

But that is not our only option. The reactivity and hence the structure of the carbon electrophile matter too. If we want reaction at a methyl group we can’t change the carbon skeleton, but we can change the leaving group. The table below shows what happens if we use the various methyl halides in reaction with NaOH. The best choice for a fast reaction (greatest value of $k_2$) will be to use $\text{MeI}$ and NaOH to give methanol.

### Halide leaving groups in the $S_{N2}$ reaction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Halide X in $\text{MeX}$</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of conjugate acid $HX$</th>
<th>Rate of reaction with NaOH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\text{F}$</td>
<td>$+3$</td>
<td>very slow indeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Cl}$</td>
<td>$-7$</td>
<td>moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Br}$</td>
<td>$-9$</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{I}$</td>
<td>$-10$</td>
<td>very fast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The rate of an $S_{N2}$ reaction depends on:
  - the nucleophile
  - the carbon skeleton
  - the leaving group

  along with the usual factors of temperature and solvent.

### Significance of the $S_{N1}$ rate equation

If we replace the substitution of $n$-butyl bromide with a substitution of $\text{t}$-butyl bromide, we get the reaction shown in the margin. It turns out that, kinetically, this reaction is first order: its rate depends only on the concentration of $\text{t}$-butyl bromide—but doesn’t matter how much hydroxide you add: the rate equation is simply...
The reason for this is that the reaction happens in two steps: first the bromide leaves, to generate a carbocation, and only then does the hydroxide ion move in to attack, forming the alcohol.

\[
\text{rate} = k_1 [t\text{-BuBr}]
\]

In the $S_N1$ mechanism, the formation of the cation is the rate-determining step. This makes good sense: a carbocation is an unstable species and so it will be formed slowly from a stable neutral organic molecule. But once formed, being very reactive, all its reactions will be fast, regardless of the nucleophile. The rate of disappearance of $t\text{-BuBr}$ is therefore simply the rate of the slow first step: the hydroxide nucleophile is not involved in this step and therefore does not appear in the rate equation and hence cannot affect the rate. If this is not clear to you, think of a crowd of people trying to leave a railway station or a football match through some turnstiles. It doesn't matter how fast they walk, run, or are driven away in taxis afterwards, it is only the rate of struggling through the turnstiles that determines how fast the station or stadium empties.

Once again, this rate equation is useful because we can determine whether a reaction is $S_N1$ or $S_N2$. We can plot the same graphs as we plotted before. If the reaction is $S_N2$, the graphs look like those we have just seen. But if it is $S_N1$, the graphs in the margin show what happens when we vary $t\text{-BuBr}$ at constant $[\text{NaOH}]$ and then vary $[\text{NaOH}]$ at constant $[t\text{-BuBr}]$.

The slope of the first graph is simply the first-order rate constant because rate $= k_1 [t\text{-BuBr}]$. But the slope of the second graph is zero. The rate-determining step does not involve NaOH so adding more of it does not speed up the reaction. The reaction shows first-order kinetics (the rate is proportional to one concentration only) and the mechanism is called $S_N1$, that is, Substitution, Nucleophilic, 1st order.

This observation is very significant. The fact that the nucleophile does not appear in the rate equation means that not only does its concentration not matter—its reactivity doesn't matter either! We are wasting our time opening a tub of NaOH to add to this reaction—water will do just as well. All the oxygen nucleophiles in the table above react at the same rate with $t\text{-BuBr}$ although they react at very different rates with MeI. Indeed, $S_N1$ substitution reactions are generally best done with weaker, non-basic nucleophiles to avoid the competing elimination reactions discussed in Chapter 17.

**The rate of an $S_N1$ reaction depends on:**

- the carbon skeleton
- the leaving group

along with the usual factors of temperature and solvent.

But NOT the nucleophile.

**How can we decide which mechanism ($S_N1$ or $S_N2$) will apply to a given organic compound?**

So, substitution reactions at saturated C go via one of two alternative mechanisms, each with a very different dependence on the nature of the nucleophile. It's important to be able to predict which mechanism is likely to apply to any reaction, and rather than doing the kinetic experiments to find out, we can give you a few simple pointers to predict which will operate
in which case. The factors that affect the mechanism of the reaction also help to explain why that mechanism operates.

The most important factor is the structure of the carbon skeleton. A helpful generalization is that compounds that can form relatively stable carbocations generally do so and react by the $S_N1$ mechanism, while the others have no choice but to react by the $S_N2$ mechanism. As you will see in a moment, the most stable carbocations are the ones that have the most substituents, so the more carbon substituents at the reaction centre, the more likely the compound is to react by the $S_N1$ mechanism.

As it happens, the structural factors that make cations stable usually also lead to slower $S_N2$ reactions. Heavily substituted compounds are good in $S_N1$ reactions, but bad in an $S_N2$ reaction because the nucleophile would have to squeeze its way into the reaction centre past the substituents. It is better for an $S_N2$ reaction if there are only hydrogen atoms at the reaction centre—methyl groups react fastest by the $S_N2$ mechanism. The effects of the simplest structural variations are summarized in the table below (where $R$ is a simple alkyl group like methyl or ethyl).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure type</th>
<th>$S_N1$ reaction?</th>
<th>$S_N2$ reaction?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>moderate</td>
<td>moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertiary</td>
<td>excellent</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The only doubtful case is the secondary alkyl derivative, which can react by either mechanism, although it is not very good at either. The first question you should ask when faced with a new nucleophilic substitution is this ‘Is the carbon electrophile methyl, primary, secondary, or tertiary?’ This will start you off on the right foot, which is why we introduced these important structural terms in Chapter 2.

Later in this chapter we will look in more detail at the differences between the two mechanisms and the structures that favour each, but all of what we say will build on the table above.

**A closer look at the $S_N1$ reaction**

In our discussion of the $S_N1$ reaction above, we proposed the $t$-butyl carbocation as a reasonable intermediate formed by loss of bromide from $t$-butyl bromide. We now need to explain the evidence we have that carbocations can indeed exist, and the reasons why the $t$-butyl carbocation is much more stable than, for example, the $n$-butyl cation.

In Chapter 12 we introduced the idea of using a reaction energy profile diagram to follow the progress of a reaction from starting materials to products, via transition states and any intermediates. The energy profile diagram for the $S_N1$ reaction between $t$-butyl bromide and water looks something like this:
The carbocation is shown as an intermediate—a species with a finite (if short) lifetime for reasons we shall describe shortly. And because we know that the first step, the formation of the carbocation, is slow, that must be the step with the higher energy transition state. The energy of that transition state, which determines the overall rate of the reaction, is closely linked to the stability of the carbocation intermediate, and it is for this reason that the most important factor in determining the efficiency of an SN1 reaction is the stability or otherwise of any carbocation that might be formed as an intermediate.

**Shape and stability of carbocations**

We discussed the planar shape of the methyl cation in Chapter 4 (p. 103), and the tert-butyl cation is similar in structure: the electron-deficient central carbon atom has only six electrons, which it uses to form three σ bonds, and therefore also carries an empty p orbital. Any carbocation will have a planar carbon atom with an empty p orbital. Think of it this way: only filled orbitals contribute to the energy of a molecule, so if you have to have an unfilled orbital (which a carbocation always does) it is best to make that unfilled orbital as high in energy as possible to keep the filled orbitals low in energy. p orbitals are higher in energy than s orbitals (or hybrid sp, sp², or sp³ orbitals for that matter) so the carbocation always keeps the p orbital empty.

We know that the tert-butyl cation is stable enough to observe because of the work of George Olah, who won the Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 1994. The challenge is that carbocations are very reactive electrophiles, so Olah’s idea was to have a solution containing no nucleophiles. Any cation must have an anion to balance the charge, so the important advance was to find anions, consisting of a negatively charged atom surrounded by tightly held halogen atoms, which are just too stable to be nucleophilic. Examples include BF₄⁻, PF₆⁻, and SbF₆⁻. The first is small and tetrahedral and the others are larger and octahedral.

In these anions, the negative charge does not correspond to a lone pair of electrons (they are like BH₄⁻ in this respect) and there is no orbital high enough in energy to act as a nucleophile. By using a non-nucleophilic solvent, liquid SO₂, at low temperature, Olah was able to turn alcohols into carbocations with these counterions. This is what happens when tert-butanol is treated with SbF₅ and HF in liquid SO₂. The acid protonates the hydroxyl group, allowing it to
leave as water, while the SbF₅ grabs the fluoride ion, preventing it from acting as a nucleophile. The cation is left high and dry.

Olah's preparation of the tert-butyl cation in liquid SO₂

The proton NMR of this cation showed just one signal for the three methyl groups at 4.15 ppm, quite far downfield for C–Me groups. The ¹³C spectrum also showed downfield Me groups at 47.5 ppm, but the key evidence that the cation was formed was the shift of the central carbon atom, which came at an amazing 320.6 ppm, way downfield from anything you have met before. This carbon is very deshielded—it is positively charged and extremely electron deficient.

From Olah's work we know what the tert-butyl cation looks like by NMR, so can we use NMR to try to detect it as an intermediate in substitution reactions? If we mix t-BuBr and NaOH in an NMR tube and let the reaction run inside the NMR machine, we see no signals belonging to the cation. But this proves nothing. We would not expect a reactive intermediate to be present in any significant concentration. There is a simple reason for this. If the cation is unstable, it will react very quickly with any nucleophile around and there will never be any appreciable amount of cation in solution. Its rate of formation will be much slower than its rate of reaction.

**Alkyl substituents stabilize a carbocation**

Olah found that he could measure the spectrum of the tert-butyl cation, but he was never able to observe the methyl cation in solution. Why do those extra substituents stabilize the cationic centre?

Any charged organic intermediate is inherently unstable because of the charge. A carbocation can be formed only if it has some extra stabilization, and extra stabilization can come to the planar carbocation structure from weak donation of σ bond electrons into the empty p orbital of the cation. In the tert-butyl cation, three of these donations occur at any one time: it doesn’t matter if the C–H bonds point up or down; one C–H bond of each methyl group must be parallel to one lobe of the empty p orbital at any one time. The first diagram shows one overlap in orbital terms and the second and third diagrams, three as dotted lines.

There is nothing special about the C–H bond donating electrons into an empty orbital: a C–C bond is just as good and some bonds are better (C–Si, for example). But there must be a bond of some sort—a hydrogen atom by itself has no lone pairs and no σ bonds so it cannot stabilize a cation.

Planarity is so important to the structure of a carbocation that if a tertiary cation cannot become planar, it is not formed. A classic case is the structure in the margin, which does not react with nucleophiles either by S₅₁ or by S₅₂. It does not react by S₅₁ because the cation cannot become planar, nor by S₅₂ because the nucleophile cannot approach the carbon atom from the right direction.

In general, though, simple tertiary structures undergo efficient S₅₁ substitution reactions. With good leaving groups such as halides, substitutions can be done under neutral conditions; with less good leaving groups such as alcohols or ethers, acid catalysis is required. The following group of reactions give an idea of the types of S₅₁ reactions that work well.
An adjacent C=C π system stabilizes a carbocation: allylic and benzylic carbocations

Tertiary carbocations are more stable than primary ones, but powerful stabilization is also provided when there is genuine conjugation between the empty π orbital and adjacent π or lone pair electrons. The allyl cation has a filled (bonding) orbital containing two electrons delocalized over all three atoms and an important empty orbital with coefficients on the end atoms only. It’s this orbital that is attacked by nucleophiles. The curly arrow picture tells us the same thing.

Allylic electrophiles react well by the S_N1 mechanism because the allyl cation is relatively stable. Here’s an example of a reaction working in the opposite direction from most of those you have seen so far—we start with the alcohol and form the bromide. Treatment of cyclohexenol with HBr gives the corresponding allylic bromide.

In this case, only one compound is formed because attack at either end of the allyl cation gives the same product. But when the allylic cation is unsymmetrical this can be a nuisance as a mixture of products may be formed. It doesn’t matter which of these two butenols you treat with HBr, you get the same delocalized allylic cation.
When this cation reacts with Br\(^-\), about 80% goes to one end and 20% to the other, giving a mixture of butenyl bromides. This **regioselectivity** (where the nucleophile attacks) is determined by steric hindrance: attack is faster at the less hindered end of the allylic system.

Sometimes this ambiguity is useful. The tertiary allylic alcohol 2-methylbut-3-en-2-ol is easy to prepare and reacts well by the S\(_{\text{n}1}\) mechanism because it can form a stable carbocation that is both tertiary and allylic. The allylic carbocation intermediate is unsymmetrical and reacts only at the less substituted end to give ‘prenyl bromide’.

![2-methylbut-3-en-2-ol and 'prenyl bromide'](image)

The benzyl cation is about as stable as the allyl cation but lacks its ambiguity of reaction. Although the positive charge is delocalized around the benzene ring, to three positions in particular, the benzyl cation always reacts on the side chain so that aromaticity is preserved.

![Delocalization in the benzyl cation](image)

An exceptionally stable cation is formed when three benzene rings can help to stabilize the same positive charge. The result is the triphenylmethyl cation or, for short, the trityl cation. Trityl chloride is used to form an ether with a primary alcohol group by an S\(_{\text{n}1}\) reaction. You will notice that pyridine is used as solvent for the reaction. Pyridine (a weak base: the pK\(_a\) of its conjugate acid is 5.5—see Chapter 8) is not strong enough to remove the proton from the primary alcohol (pK\(_a\) about 15), and there would be no point in using a base strong enough to make \(\text{RCH}_2\text{O}^-\) as the nucleophile makes no difference to an S\(_{\text{n}1}\) reaction. Instead the TrCl ionizes first to trityl cation, which now captures the primary alcohol and finally pyridine is able to remove the proton from the oxonium ion. Pyridine does not catalyse the reaction; it just stops it becoming too acidic by removing the HCl formed. Pyridine is also a convenient polar organic solvent for ionic reactions.

![Trityl ether formation](image)

The table below shows the rates of solvolysis (i.e. a reaction in which the solvent acts as the nucleophile) in 50% aqueous ethanol for substituted allylic chlorides compared with benzylic chlorides and simple alkyl chlorides. The values give you an idea of the relative reactivity towards substitution of the different classes of compound. These rates are mostly S\(_{\text{n}1}\), but there will be some S\(_{\text{n}2}\) reactivity with the primary compounds.
Rates of solvolysis of alkyl chlorides in 50% aqueous ethanol at 44.6 °C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>primary chloride: probably all $S_N2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>secondary chloride: can do $S_N1$ but not very well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>2100</td>
<td>tertiary chloride: very good at $S_N1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>primary but allylic: $S_N1$ all right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>allylic cation is secondary at one end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>130000</td>
<td>allylic cation is tertiary at one end: compare with 2100 for simple tertiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhCl</td>
<td>7700</td>
<td>primary but allylic and benzylic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Carbocations are stabilized by an adjacent lone pair**

The alkyl chloride known as methyl chloromethyl ether, MeOCH₂Cl, reacts very well with alcohols to form ethers. Being a primary alkyl chloride, you might think that its reactions would follow an $S_N2$ mechanism, but in fact it has characteristic $S_N1$ reactivity. As usual, the reason for its preference for the $S_N1$ mechanism is its ability to form a stabilized carbocation. Loss of the chloride ion is assisted by the adjacent lone pair, and we can draw the resulting cation either as an oxonium ion or as a carbocation.

![Diagram of carbocations](image)

**The methoxymethyl cation**

Olah has used the methods described above to make the methoxymethyl cation in solution. Although this cation can be drawn either as an oxonium ion or as a primary carbocation, the oxonium ion structure is the more realistic. The proton NMR spectrum of the cation compared with that of the isopropyl cation (this is the best comparison we can make) shows that the protons on the CH₂ group resonate at 9.9 ppm instead of at the 13.0 ppm of the true carbocation.

If you think back to Chapter 11, you will recall that the first step in the hydrolysis of an acetal is a similar reaction, with one alkoxy group replaced by water to give a hemiacetal. We considered the mechanism for this reaction in Chapter 11 but did not then concern ourselves with a label for the first step. It is in effect an $S_N1$ substitution reaction: the decomposition of the protonated acetal to give an oxonium ion. If you compare this step with the reaction of the chloroether we have just described you will see that they are very similar in mechanism.
**A common mistake**

Don’t be tempted to shortcut this mechanism by drawing the displacement of the first molecule of methanol by water as an $S_N^2$ reaction.

An $S_N^2$ mechanism is unlikely at such a crowded carbon atom. However, the main reason why the $S_N^2$ mechanism is wrong is that the $S_N1$ mechanism is so very efficient, with a neighbouring MeO group whose lone pair can stabilize the carbocation intermediate. The $S_N2$ mechanism doesn’t get a chance.

This mechanism for the $S_N1$ replacement of one electronegative group at a carbon atom by a nucleophile where there is another electronegative group at the same carbon atom is very general. You should look for it whenever there are two atoms such as O, N, S, Cl, or Br joined to the same carbon atom. The better leaving groups (such as the halogens) need no acid catalyst but the less good ones (N, O, S) usually need acid.

We now have in the box below a complete list of the sorts of structures that normally react by the $S_N1$ mechanism rather than by the $S_N2$ mechanism.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stable carbocations as intermediates in $S_N1$ reactions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type of cations</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple alkyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conjugated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heteroatom-stabilized</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interactive mechanism for acetal hydrolysis

Think back to the formation and reactions of iminium ions in Chapter 11 for further examples.
A closer look at the $S_N2$ reaction

Among simple alkyl groups, methyl and primary alkyl groups always react by the $S_N2$ mechanism and never by $S_N1$. This is partly because the cations are unstable and partly because the nucleophile can push its way in easily past the hydrogen atoms.

A common way to make ethers is to treat an alkoxide anion with an alkyl halide. If the alkyl halide is a methyl compound, we can be sure that the reaction will go by the $S_N2$ mechanism. A strong base, here NaH, will be needed to form the alkoxide ion, since alcohols are weak acids ($pK_a$ about 16). Methyl iodide is a suitable electrophile.

$$\begin{align*}
\text{alcohol} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaH}} \text{alkoxide ion} & \xrightarrow{\text{methyl iodide}} \text{methyl ether} \\
\text{phenol} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} (\text{MeO})_2\text{SO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{dimethyl sulfate}} \text{stable sulfate anion}\end{align*}$$

With the more acidic phenols ($pK_a$ about 10), NaOH is a strong enough base and dimethyl sulfate, the dimethyl ester of sulfuric acid, is often used as the electrophile. It is worth using a strong base to make the alcohol into a better nucleophile because as we discussed on p. 331 the rate equation for an $S_N2$ reaction tells us that the strength and concentration of the nucleophile affects the rate of the reaction.

The transition state for an $S_N2$ reaction

Another way to put this would be to say that the nucleophile, the methyl group, and the leaving group are all present in the transition state for the reaction. The transition state is the highest energy point on the reaction pathway. In the case of an $S_N2$ reaction it will be the point where the new bond from the nucleophile is partly formed while the old bond to the leaving group is not yet completely broken. It will look something like this:

The dashed bonds in the transition state indicate partial bonds (the C–Nu bond is partly formed and the C–X bond partly broken) and the charges in brackets indicate substantial partial charges (about half a minus charge each in this case). Transition states are often shown in square brackets and marked with the symbol $\dagger$.

Another way to look at this situation is to consider the orbitals. The nucleophile must have lone-pair electrons, which will interact with the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the C–X bond.
In the transition state the carbon atom in the middle has a p orbital that shares one pair of electrons between the old and the new bonds. Both these pictures suggest that the transition state for an Sn2 reaction has a more or less planar carbon atom at the centre with the nucleophile and the leaving group arranged at 180° to each other. This picture can help us explain two important observations concerning the Sn2 reaction—firstly the types of structures that react efficiently, and secondly the stereochemistry of the reaction.

**Adjacent C=\(\pi\) or C=O systems increase the rate of Sn2 reactions**

We have already established that methyl and primary alkyl compounds react well by the Sn2 mechanism, while secondary alkyl compounds undergo Sn2 reactions only reluctantly. But there are other important structural features that also encourage the Sn2 mechanism. Two of these, allyl and benzyl groups, also encourage the Sn1 mechanism.

Allyl bromide reacts well with alkoxides to make ethers, and shown below is the typical Sn2 mechanism for this reaction. Also shown is the transition state for this reaction. Allyl compounds react rapidly by the Sn2 mechanism because the \(\pi\) system of the adjacent double bond can stabilize the transition state by conjugation. The p orbital at the reaction centre (shown in brown, and corresponding to the brown orbital in the diagram on p. 340) has to make two partial bonds with only two electrons—it is electron deficient, and so any additional electron density it can gather from an adjacent \(\pi\) system will stabilize the transition state and increase the rate of the reaction.

The benzyl group acts in much the same way using the \(\pi\) system of the benzene ring for conjugation with the p orbital in the transition state. Benzyl bromide reacts very well with alkoxides to make benzyl ethers.

Among the fastest of all Sn2 reactions are those where the leaving group is adjacent to a carbonyl group. With \(\alpha\)-bromo carbonyl compounds, two neighbouring carbon atoms are both powerfully electrophilic sites. Each has a low-energy empty orbital—\(\pi^*\) from C=O and \(\sigma^*\) from C–Br (this is what makes them electrophilic)—and these can combine to form a new LUMO (\(\pi^* + \sigma^*\)) lower in energy than either. Nucleophilic attack will occur easily where this new orbital has its largest coefficient, shown in orange on the diagram.

The effect of this interaction between antibonding orbitals is that each group becomes more electrophilic because of the presence of the other—the C=O group makes the C–Br bond more reactive and the Br makes the C=O group more reactive. In fact, it may well be that the nucleophile will attack the carbonyl group, but this will be reversible whereas displacement of bromide is irreversible.

There are many examples of this type of reaction. Reactions with amines go well and the aminoketone products are widely used in the synthesis of drugs.
Quantifying structural effects on $S_N2$ reactions

Some actual data may help at this point. The rates of reaction of the following alkyl chlorides with KI in acetone at 50 °C broadly illustrate the patterns of $S_N2$ reactivity we have just analysed. These are relative rates with respect to $n$-BuCl as a 'typical primary halide'. You should not take too much notice of precise figures but rather observe the trends and notice that the variations are quite large—the full range from 0.02 to 100,000 is eight powers of ten.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alkyl chloride</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me—Cl</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>least hindered alkyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>secondary alkyl chloride; slow because of steric hindrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\equiv$Cl</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>allyl chloride accelerated by $\pi$ conjugation in transition state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl—Cl</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>benzyl chloride a bit more reactive than allyl: benzene ring slightly better at $\pi$ conjugation than isolated double bond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me—O—Cl</td>
<td>920</td>
<td>conjugation with oxygen lone pair accelerates reaction (this is an $S_N1$ reaction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\equiv$O—Cl</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>conjugation with carbonyl group much more effective than with simple alkene or benzene ring; these $\alpha$-halo carbonyl compounds are the most reactive of all</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contrasts between $S_N1$ and $S_N2$

You have now met the key features of both important mechanisms for substitution. You should at this stage in the chapter have a grasp of the kinetics, the nature of the intermediates and transition states, and the simple steric and electronic factors that control reactivity in $S_N1$ and $S_N2$ reaction pathways.

We are now going to look in more detail at some other aspects where there are significant contrasts between the mechanisms, either because they lead to different outcomes or because they lead to a change in reactivity towards one or the other of the two pathways.

A closer look at steric effects

We have already pointed out that having more alkyl substituents at the reaction centre makes a compound more likely to react by $S_N1$ than by $S_N2$ for two reasons: firstly they make a carbocation more stable, so favouring $S_N1$, and secondly they make it hard for a nucleophile to get close to the reaction centre in the rate-determining step, disfavouring $S_N2$. Let’s look in more detail at the transition state for the slow steps of the two reactions and see how steric hindrance affects both.
In the approach to the SN2 transition state, the carbon atom under attack gathers in another substituent and becomes (transiently) five-coordinate. The angles between the substituents decrease from tetrahedral to about 109°.

In the starting material there are four angles of about 109°. In the transition state (enclosed in square brackets and marked ‡ as usual) there are three angles of 120° and six angles of 90°, a significant increase in crowding. The larger the substituents R, the more serious this is, and the greater the increase in energy of the transition state. We can easily see the effects of steric hindrance if we compare these three structural types:

- methyl: CH₃–X: very fast SN2 reaction
- primary alkyl: RCH₂–X: fast SN2 reaction
- secondary alkyl: R₂CH–X: slow SN2 reaction.

The opposite is true of the SN1 reaction. The rate-determining step is simply the loss of the leaving group, and the transition state for this step will look something like the structure shown below—with a longer, weaker, and more polarized C–X bond than the starting material. The starting material is again tetrahedral (four angles of about 109°) and in the intermediate there are just three angles of 120°—fewer and less serious interactions. The transition state will be on the way towards the cation, and because the R groups are further apart in the transition state than in the starting material, large R groups will actually decrease the energy of the transition state relative to the starting material. SN1 reactions are therefore accelerated by alkyl substituents both for this reason and because they stabilize the cation.

Stereochemistry and substitution

Look back at the scheme we showed you for the SN2 reaction on p. 340. It shows the nucleophile attacking the carbon atom on the opposite side from the leaving group. Look carefully at the carbon atom it is attacking and you see that its substituents end up turning inside out as the reaction goes along, just like an umbrella in a high wind. If the carbon atom under attack is a stereogenic centre (Chapter 14), the result will be inversion of configuration. Something very different happens in the SN1 reaction, and we will now illustrate the difference with a simple sequence of reactions.

Starting with the optically active secondary alcohol sec-butanol (or butan-2-ol, but we want to emphasize that it is secondary), the secondary cation can be made by the method described on p. 338. Quenching this cation with water regenerates the alcohol but without any optical
activity. Water must attack the two faces of the planar cation with exactly equal probability: the product is an exactly 50:50 mixture of (S)-butanol and (R)-butanol. It is racemic.

Alternatively, we can first make the hydroxyl group into a good enough leaving group to take part in an $S_N2$ reaction. The leaving group we shall use, a sulfonate ester, will be introduced to you in a few pages’ time, but for now you just need to accept that nucleophilic attack of the OH group on a sulfonyl chloride in pyridine solution gives the sulfonate ester shown below in orange: no bonds have been formed or broken at the chiral carbon atom, which still has (S) stereochemistry.

Now we can carry out an $S_N2$ reaction on the sulfonate with an acetate anion. A tetra-alkyl ammonium salt is used in the solvent DMF to avoid solvating the acetate, making it as powerful a nucleophile as possible and getting a clean $S_N2$ reaction. This is the key step and we don’t want any doubt about the outcome. The sulfonate is an excellent leaving group—the charge is delocalized across all three oxygen atoms.

The product sec-butyl acetate is optically active and we can measure its optical rotation. But this tells us nothing. Unless we know the true rotation for pure sec-butyl acetate, we don’t yet know whether it is optically pure nor even whether it really is inverted. We expect it to have (R) stereochemistry, but we can easily find out for sure. All we have to do is to hydrolyse the ester and get the original alcohol back again. We know the true rotation of the alcohol—it was our starting material—and we know that ester hydrolysis (Chapter 10) proceeds by attack at the carbonyl carbon—it can’t affect the stereochemistry of the chiral centre.

Now we really know where we are. This new sample of sec-butanol has the same rotation as the original sample, but with the opposite sign. It is (–)-(R)-sec-butanol. It is optically pure and inverted. Somewhere in this sequence there has been an inversion, and we know it wasn’t in the formation of the sulfonate or the hydrolysis of the acetate as no bonds are formed or broken at the stereogenic centre in these steps. It must have been in the $S_N2$ reaction itself.

- An $S_N2$ reaction goes with inversion of configuration at the carbon atom under attack but an $S_N1$ reaction generally goes with racemization.

The effect of solvent

Why was the $S_N2$ reaction we have just shown you carried out in DMF? You will generally find $S_N2$ reactions are carried out in aprotic, and often less polar, solvents. $S_N1$ reactions are
typically carried out in polar, protic solvents. A common solvent for an S\textsubscript{N2} reaction is acetone—just polar enough to dissolve the ionic reagents, but not as polar as, say, acetic acid, a common solvent for the S\textsubscript{N1} reaction.

It is fairly obvious why the S\textsubscript{N1} reaction needs a polar solvent: the rate-determining step involves the formation of ions (usually a negatively charged leaving group and a positively charged carbocation) and the rate of this process will be increased by a polar solvent that can solvate these ions. More precisely, the transition state is more polar than the starting materials (note the charges in brackets in the scheme above) and so is stabilized by the polar solvent. Hence solvents like water or carboxylic acids (RCO\textsubscript{2}H) are ideal.

It is less obvious why a less polar solvent is better for the S\textsubscript{N2} reaction. The most common S\textsubscript{N2} reactions use an anion as the nucleophile. The transition state is then less polar than the localized anion as the charge is spread between two atoms. Here’s an example: the formation of an alkyl iodide from an alkyl bromide. Acetone fails to solvate the iodide well, making it more reactive; the transition state is less in need of solvation, so overall the reaction is faster.

[Diagram showing the mechanism of S\textsubscript{N1} and S\textsubscript{N2} reactions]

DMF and DMSO, the polar aprotic solvents we discussed in Chapter 12 (p. 255) are also good solvents for S\textsubscript{N2} reactions because they dissolve ionic compounds well but fail to solvate anions well, making them more reactive. The choice of Bu\textsubscript{4}N\textsuperscript{+}—a large, non-coordinating cation—as the counterion for the reaction on p. 344 was also made with this in mind.

**Quantifying the rates of S\textsubscript{N1} and S\textsubscript{N2} reactions**

The data below illustrate the effect of structure on the rates of S\textsubscript{N1} and S\textsubscript{N2} reactions. The green curve on the graph shows the rates (k\textsubscript{1}) of an S\textsubscript{N1} reaction: the conversion of alkyl bromides to alkyl formate esters in formic acid at 100 °C. Formic acid is a polar solvent and a weak nucleophile: perfect for an S\textsubscript{N1} reaction. The red curve shows the rates of displacement of Br\textsuperscript{−} by radioactive ^82Br\textsuperscript{−} in acetone at 25 °C. Acetone solvent and the good nucleophile Br\textsuperscript{−} favour S\textsubscript{N2}. The rates (k\textsubscript{2}) are multiplied by 10\textsuperscript{5} to bring both curves onto the same graph.

Both curves are plotted on a log scale, the log\textsubscript{10} of the actual rate being used on the y-axis. The x-axis has no real significance; it just shows the four points corresponding to the four basic structures: MeBr, Me\textsubscript{2}CHBr, Me\textsubscript{2}CH\textsubscript{2}Br, and Me\textsubscript{3}CB\textsubscript{r}.

[Graph showing the rates of S\textsubscript{N1} and S\textsubscript{N2} reactions for simple alkyl bromides]
The values are also summarized in the table below, which gives the relative rates compared with that of the secondary halide, i-PrBr, set at 1.0 for each reaction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alkyl bromide type</th>
<th>CH₃Br methyl</th>
<th>CH₃CH₂Br primary</th>
<th>(CH₃)₂CHBr secondary</th>
<th>(CH₃)₃CBr tertiary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( k_1 ) (s⁻¹)</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>10⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( 10^2 k_2 ) (M⁻¹ dm⁻³ s⁻¹)</td>
<td>13,000</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.0003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative ( k_1 )</td>
<td>2 × 10⁻²</td>
<td>4 × 10⁻²</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4 × 10⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative ( k_2 )</td>
<td>6 × 10³</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5 × 10⁻⁵</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although the reactions were chosen to give as much \( \text{S}_1 \) reaction as possible in one case and as much \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction as possible in the other, of course you will understand that we cannot prevent the molecules doing the ‘wrong’ reaction! The values for the ‘\( \text{S}_1 \)’ reaction of MeBr and MeCH₂Br are actually the low rates of \( \text{S}_2 \) displacement of the bromide ion by the weak nucleophile HCO₂H, while the ‘\( \text{S}_2 \)’ rate for t-BuBr may be the very small rate of ionization of t-BuBr in acetone.

**A closer look at electronic effects**

We mentioned above that adjacent \( \pi \) systems increase the rate of the \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction by stabilizing the transition state, and likewise increase the rate of \( \text{S}_1 \) reactions by stabilizing the carbocation. The effect on the \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction applies to both C=O (electron-rich) and C=O (electron-deficient) \( \pi \) systems, but only C=C \( \pi \) systems increase the rate of \( \text{S}_1 \) reactions. Adjacent C=O groups in fact significantly decrease the reactivity of alkyl halides towards \( \text{S}_1 \) reactions because the electron-withdrawing effect of the carbonyl group greatly destabilizes the carbocation.

Electron-withdrawing or -donating groups can also tip finely balanced cases from one mechanism to another. For example, benzylic compounds react well by either \( \text{S}_1 \) or \( \text{S}_2 \), and a change of solvent, as just discussed, might switch them from one mechanism to another. Alternatively, a benzylic compound that has a well-placed electron-donating group able to stabilize the cation will also favour the \( \text{S}_1 \) mechanism. Thus 4-methoxybenzyl chloride reacts by \( \text{S}_1 \) for this reason: here we show the methoxy group stabilizing the cation intermediate by assisting departure of the chloride.

![Electron donation favours the \( \text{S}_1 \) mechanism](image)

On the other hand, an electron-withdrawing group, such as a nitro group, within the benzylic compound will decrease the rate of the \( \text{S}_1 \) reaction and allow the \( \text{S}_2 \) mechanism to take over.

![Electron withdrawal disfavours the \( \text{S}_1 \) mechanism](image)

Rate measurements for benzylic chlorides illustrate the importance of this effect. We can force them all to react by \( \text{S}_1 \) by using methanol as the solvent (methanol is a poor nucleophile and a polar solvent; both disfavour \( \text{S}_2 \)). Comparing with the rate of substitution of benzyl chloride itself, PhCH₂Cl, 4-methoxybenzyl chloride reacts with methanol about 2500 times faster and the 4-nitrobenzyl chloride about 3000 times more slowly.
Summary of structural variations and nucleophilic substitution

We are now in a position to summarize the structural effects on both mechanisms we have been discussing over the last few pages. The table lists the structural types and rates each reaction qualitatively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrophile</th>
<th>Me - X</th>
<th>R - X</th>
<th>R - X</th>
<th>R - X</th>
<th>R - X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>primary</td>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>tertiary</td>
<td>'neopentyl'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ \text{SN}_1 \text{ mechanism?} \]
bad   bad   poor   excellent   bad

\[ \text{SN}_2 \text{ mechanism?} \]
excellent   good   poor   bad   bad

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrophile</th>
<th>X</th>
<th>Ar</th>
<th>RO</th>
<th>R - X</th>
<th>R - X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allylic</td>
<td></td>
<td>benzylic</td>
<td>(\alpha) -alkoxy (adj. lone pair)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\alpha) -carbonyl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\alpha) -carbonyl and tertiary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ \text{SN}_1 \text{ mechanism?} \]
good   good   good   bad   bad

\[ \text{SN}_2 \text{ mechanism?} \]
good   good   okay but \(\text{SN}_1\) better   excellent   possible

We have considered the important effects of the basic carbon skeleton and of solvent on the course of \(\text{SN}_1\) and \(\text{SN}_2\) reactions and we shall now look at two final structural factors: the nucleophile and the leaving group. We shall tackle the leaving group first because it plays an important role in both \(\text{SN}_1\) and \(\text{SN}_2\) reactions.

The leaving group in \(\text{SN}_1\) and \(\text{SN}_2\) reactions

The leaving group is important in both \(\text{SN}_1\) and \(\text{SN}_2\) reactions because departure of the leaving group is involved in the rate-determining step of both mechanisms.

So far you have mostly seen halides and water (from protonated alcohols) as leaving groups. Leaving groups involving halides or oxygen atoms are by far the most important, and now we need to establish the principles that make for good and bad leaving groups. As a chemist, we want leaving groups to have some staying power, so that our compounds are not too unstable, but we also don’t want them to outstay their welcome—they must have just the right level of reactivity.

Halides as leaving groups

With halide leaving groups two main factors are at work: the strength of the C–halide bond and the stability of the halide ion. The strengths of the C–X bonds can be measured easily, but how can we measure anion stability? One way, which you met in Chapter 8, was to use the \(pK_a\) values of the acids \(HX\). \(pK_a\) quantifies the stability of an anion relative to its conjugate acid. We want to know about the stability of an anion relative to that anion bonded to C, not H, but \(pK_a\) will do as a guide.
The table in the margin shows both bond strengths and $\mathrm{pK_a}$. It is clearly easiest to break a C–I bond and most difficult to break a C–F bond. Iodide sounds like the best leaving group. We get the same message from the $\mathrm{pK_a}$ values: HI is the strongest acid, so it must ionize easily to $\mathrm{H}^+$ and I$. This result is quite correct—iodide is an excellent leaving group and fluoride a very bad one, with the other halogens in between.

**Nucleophilic substitutions on alcohols: how to get an OH group to leave**

Now what about leaving groups joined to the carbon atom by a C–O bond? There are many of these but the most important are OH itself, the carboxylic esters, and the sulfonate esters. First we must make one thing clear: alcohols themselves do not react with nucleophiles. In other words, $\mathrm{OH}^-$ is never a leaving group. Why not? For a start hydroxide ion is very basic, and if the nucleophile were strong enough to displace hydroxide ion it would be more than strong enough to remove the proton from the alcohol.

$$\text{Nu}^- \text{O}^+ \text{H}^+ \text{H}^+ \text{Nu}^-$$

But we do want to use alcohols in nucleophilic substitution reactions because they are easily made (by the reactions in Chapter 9, for example). The simplest solution is to protonate the OH group with strong acid. This will work only if the nucleophile is compatible with strong acid, but many are. The preparation of $t$-BuCl from $t$-BuOH simply by shaking it with concentrated HCl is a good example. This is obviously an $\mathrm{S_N}1$ reaction with the $t$-butyl cation as intermediate.

Similar methods can be used to make secondary alkyl bromides with HBr alone and primary alkyl bromides using a mixture of HBr and $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$.

The second of these two reactions must be $\mathrm{S_N}2$, with substitution of the protonated hydroxyl group by bromide.

Another way to approach the substitution of OH is to make it a better leaving group by combination with an element that forms very strong bonds to oxygen. The most popular choices are phosphorus and sulfur. Making primary alkyl bromides with PBr$_3$ usually works well. The phosphorus reagent is first attacked by the OH group (an $\mathrm{S_N}2$ reaction at phosphorus) and the displacement of an oxyanion bonded to phosphorus is now a good reaction because of the anion stabilization by phosphorus.
Sulfonate esters—tosylates and mesylates—from alcohols

The most widely used way of making a hydroxyl group into a good leaving group is to make it into a sulfonate ester. Primary and secondary alcohols are easily converted to sulfonate esters by treating with sulfonyl chlorides and base. The sulfonate esters are often crystalline, and are so widely used that they have been given trivial names—**tosylates** for $p$-toluenesulfonates and **mesylates** for methanesulfonates—and the functional groups have been allocated the ‘organic element’ symbols $Ts$ and $Ms$.

**Tosylates** ($p$-toluenesulfonates) are made by treating alcohols with $p$-toluenesulfonyl chloride (or tosyl chloride) in the presence of pyridine. A similar reaction (but with a different mechanism, which we will discuss in Chapter 17) with methanesulfonyl chloride (mesyl chloride) gives a mesylate (methanesulfonate).

![Chemical structures](image1)

Sulfonic acids $RSO_3H$ are strong acids ($pK_a$ around 0) and so any sulfonate $RSO_3^-$ is a good leaving group: tosylates and mesylates can be displaced by almost anything. As you saw in Chapter 8, the lithium derivative of an alkyne can be prepared by deprotonation with the very strong base butyllithium. In the example below, the tosyl derivative of a primary alcohol reacts with this lithium derivative in an $S_N2$ reaction. Note that the tosylate leaving group is represented as $TsO^-$ (not $Ts^-$).

![Chemical structures](image2)

On p. 344 you saw a tosylate (we just called it a sulfonate ester then) being displaced by acetate in an $S_N2$ reaction. Acetate is not a very good nucleophile, and it is a testament to the power of the sulfonate esters that they are willing to act as leaving groups even with acetate, which is usually too weak to react by $S_N2$.

**Substituting alcohols with the Mitsunobu reaction**

Rather than use two steps to convert the OH group first to a sulfonate ester, and then displace it, it is possible to use a method that allows us to put an alcohol straight into a reaction mixture and get an $S_N2$ product in one operation. This is the Mitsunobu reaction. In this reaction, the alcohol becomes the electrophile, the nucleophile is usually relatively weak (the conjugate base of a carboxylic acid, for example), and there are two other reagents.

![Chemical structures](image3)

---

**Oyo Mitsunobu** (1934–2003) worked at the Aoyama Gakuin University in Tokyo. Western chemists often misspell his name: make sure you don’t!

---

349

THE LEAVING GROUP IN $S_N1$ AND $S_N2$ REACTIONS
One of these reagents, Ph₃P, triphenylphosphine, is the simple phosphine you met in Chapter 11. Phosphines are nucleophilic, but not basic like amines. The other reagent deserves more comment. Its full name is diethyl azodicarboxylate, or DEAD.

So how does the Mitsunobu reaction work? It’s a long mechanism, but don’t be discouraged: there is a logic to each step and we will guide you through it gently. The first stage involves neither the alcohol nor the added nucleophile. The phosphine adds to the weak N=N π bond to give an anion stabilized by one of the ester groups.

You will note that the nucleophile has been added as its conjugate acid ‘HNu’—often this might be a carboxylic acid, for example benzoic acid. The anion produced by this first stage is basic enough to remove a proton from this acid, generating Nu⁻ ready for reaction.

Oxygen and phosphorus have a strong affinity, as we saw in the conversion of alcohols to bromides with PBr₃ (p. 348) and in the Wittig reaction (Chapter 11, pp. 237–8), and the positively charged phosphorus is now attacked by the alcohol, displacing a second nitrogen anion in an SN₂ reaction at phosphorus. The nitrogen anion generated in this step is stabilized by conjugation with the ester, but rapidly removes the proton from the alcohol to give an electrophilic R–O–PPh₃⁺ species and a by-product, the reduced form of DEAD.

Finally, the anion of the nucleophile can now attack this phosphorus derivative of the alcohol in a normal SN₂ reaction at carbon with the phosphine oxide as the leaving group. We have arrived at the products.

The whole process takes place in one operation. The four reagents are all added to one flask and the products are the phosphine oxide, the reduced azo diester with two NH bonds replacing the N=N double bond, and the product of an SN₂ reaction on the alcohol. Another way to look at this reaction is that a molecule of water must formally be lost: OH must be removed from the alcohol and H from the nucleophile. These atoms end up in very stable molecules—the P=O and N–H bonds are strong where the N=N bond was weak, compensating for the sacrifice of the strong C–O bond in the starting alcohol.

If this is all correct, then the vital SN₂ step should lead to inversion as it always does in SN₂ reactions. This turns out to be one of the great strengths of the Mitsunobu reaction—it is a
reliable way to replace OH by a nucleophile with inversion of configuration. The most dramatic example is probably the formation of esters from secondary alcohols with inversion. Normal ester formation leads to retention as the C–O bond of the alcohol is not broken: compare these two reactions and note the destination of the coloured oxygen (and hydrogen) atoms.

ester formation from a secondary alcohol with inversion by the Mitsunobu reaction

\[
\text{R} \text{OH} + \text{PhCl} \xrightarrow{\text{Ph}_3\text{P}} \text{R} \text{O} \text{Ph} + \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\text{O}
\]

ester formation from a secondary alcohol with retention

\[
\text{R} \text{OH} + \text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{EtO}_2\text{C}=\text{N}} \text{R} \text{O} \text{Ph}
\]

**Ethers as electrophiles**

Ethers are stable molecules that do not react with nucleophiles: THF and Et₂O are widely used as solvents for this reason. To make them react, we need to make the oxygen positively charged so that it can accept electrons more readily, and we also need to use a very good nucleophile. A good way of doing both is to treat with HBr or HI, which protonate the oxygen. Iodide and bromide are excellent nucleophiles in S₂ reactions (see below), and attack will occur preferentially at the carbon atom more susceptible to S₂ reactions (usually the less hindered one). Aryl alkyl ethers cleave only on the alkyl side—you cannot get attack through the benzene ring.

\[
\text{phenyl methyl ether (anisole, or methoxybenzene)} \xrightarrow{\text{HI}} \text{MeI} \rightarrow \text{OH}
\]

So far we have used only protic acids to help oxygen atoms to leave. But Lewis acids—species other than H⁺ that also have an empty orbital capable of accepting a lone pair—work well too, and the cleavage of aryl alkyl ethers with BBr₃ is a good example. Trivalent boron compounds have an empty p orbital so they are very electrophilic and prefer to attack oxygen. The resulting oxonium ion can be attacked by Br⁻ in an S₂ reaction.

\[
\text{BBr₃ acts as a Lewis acid—empty p orbital accepts a lone pair of electrons}
\]

**Epoxides as electrophiles**

One family of ethers reacts in nucleophilic substitution even without protic or Lewis acids. They are the three-membered cyclic ethers called epoxides (or oxiranes). The leaving group is genuinely an alkoxide anion RO⁻, so obviously some special feature must be present in these ethers making them unstable. This feature is ring strain, which comes from the angle between the bonds in the three-membered ring that has to be 60° instead of the ideal tetrahedral angle of 109°. You could subtract these numbers and say that there is ‘49° of strain’ at each carbon atom, making about 150° of strain in the molecule. This is a lot: the molecule would be much...
more stable if the strain were released by opening up to restore the ideal tetrahedral angle at all atoms. This can be done by one nucleophilic attack.

Epoxides react cleanly with amines to give amino alcohols. We have not so far featured amines as nucleophiles because their reactions with alkyl halides are often bedevilled by overreaction (see the next section), but with epoxides they give good results.

It is easy to see that inversion occurs in these \( S_N2 \) reactions when the epoxide is attached to (or ‘fused with’) another ring. With this five-membered ring nucleophilic attack with inversion gives the \( \text{trans} \) product. As the epoxide in the starting material is \( \text{up} \), attack has to come from underneath. The new C–N bond is \( \text{down} \) and inversion has occurred.

The nucleophile in \( S_N1 \) reactions

We established earlier that in an \( S_N1 \) reaction the nucleophile is not important with regard to \textit{rate}. The rate-determining step of the reaction is loss of the leaving group, so good and bad nucleophiles all give products. We don’t need to deprotonate the nucleophile to make it more reactive (water and hydroxide work just as well as each other) and this means that \( S_N1 \) reactions are often carried out under acidic conditions, to assist departure of a leaving group.

Compare, for example, these typical conditions used to make a methyl ether and a \textit{tert}-butyl ether. The methyl ether is made, as you saw on p. 340, using methyl iodide in an \( S_N2 \) reaction. It needs a good nucleophile, so the alcohol is deprotonated to make an alkoxide with sodium hydride in DMF, which, as you saw on p. 345, is a good solvent for \( S_N2 \) reactions. The \textit{tert}-butyl ether on the other hand is made simply by stirring the alcohol with \textit{tert}-butanol and a little acid. No base is needed, and the reaction proceeds rapidly to give the \textit{tert}-butyl ether.
A very bad nucleophile in a good S\textsubscript{N}1 reaction: the Ritter reaction

An interesting result of the unimportance of the nucleophile to the rate (and therefore the usefulness) of an S\textsubscript{N}1 reaction is that very poor nucleophiles indeed may react in the absence of anything better. Nitriles, for example, are very poorly basic and nucleophilic because the lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen atom is in a low-energy sp orbital. However, if t-butanol is dissolved in a nitrile as solvent and strong acid is added, a reaction does take place. The acid does not protonate the nitrile, but does protonate the alcohol to produce the t-butyl cation in the usual first step of an S\textsubscript{N}1 reaction. This cation is reactive enough to combine with even such a weak nucleophile as the nitrile.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{OH} \\ &\text{H}^+ \\ &\text{OH}_2 \\ &\text{N} \equiv \text{R} \\ &\text{t-butyl cation} \\ &\text{OH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

The resulting cation is captured by the water molecule released in the first step and an exchange of protons leads to a secondary amide. The overall process is called the Ritter reaction and it is one of the few reliable ways to make a C–N bond to a tertiary centre.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{N} \equiv \text{R} \\ &\text{OH}_2 \\ &\text{new C–N bond}
\end{align*}
\]

The nucleophile in the S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction

In an S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction, a good nucleophile is essential. We finish this chapter with a survey of effective choices for forming new bonds to sp\textsuperscript{3} by S\textsubscript{N}2 reactions, and a description of the factors that determine how good a nucleophile will be.

Nitrogen nucleophiles: a problem and a solution

Amines are good nucleophiles, but reactions between ammonia and alkyl halides rarely lead cleanly to single products. The problem is that the product of the substitution is at least as nucleophilic as the starting material, so it competes for reaction with the alkyl halide.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{XR} &\rightarrow \text{RN} \equiv \text{H} \\ \text{NH}_3 &\rightarrow \text{RN} \equiv \text{H} + \text{NH}_4^+ \\ \text{primary amine formed} &\text{in reaction mixture} \\ \text{NH}_3 &\rightarrow \text{RN} \equiv \text{H} + \text{RNH}_3^+ \\ \text{secondary amine formed} &\text{in reaction mixture}
\end{align*}
\]

Even this is not all! The alkylation steps keep going, forming the secondary and tertiary amines, and stopping only when the non-nucleophilic tetra-alkylammonium ion R\textsubscript{4}N\textsuperscript{+} is formed. The problem is that the extra alkyl groups push more and more electron density onto N, making each product more reactive than the previous. The quaternary ammonium salt could probably be made cleanly if a large excess of alkyl halide RX is used, but other more controlled methods are needed for the synthesis of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines.

One solution for primary amines is to replace ammonia with azide ion N\textsubscript{3}⁻. This linear triatomic species, nucleophilic at both ends, is a slender rod of electrons able to insert itself into almost any electrophilic site. It is available as the water-soluble sodium salt NaN\textsubscript{3}.
Azide reacts only once with alkyl halides because the product, an alkyl azide, is no longer nucleophilic. However, rarely is the azide product required: it is usually reduced to a primary amine by catalytic hydrogenation (H₂ over a Pd catalyst—see Chapter 23), LiAlH₄, or triphenylphosphine.

$$RX + NaN_3 \rightarrow RN_3 \rightarrow RNH_2$$

Azides react with epoxides too. This epoxide is one diastereoisomer (trans) but racemic and the symbol (±) under each structure reminds you of this (Chapter 14). Azide attacks at either end of the three-membered ring (the two ends are the same) to give the hydroxy-azide. The reaction is carried out in a mixture of water and an organic solvent with ammonium chloride as buffer to provide a proton for the intermediate. Triphenylphosphine in water is used for reduction to the primary amine.

The mechanism of the reduction of azides by triphenylphosphine can be found on p. 1176.

**Sulfur nucleophiles are better than oxygen nucleophiles in Sₙ2 reactions**

Thiolate anions RS⁻ make excellent nucleophiles in Sₙ2 reactions on alkyl halides. It is enough to combine the thiol, sodium hydroxide, and the alkyl halide to get a good yield of the sulfide.

$$PhSH + NaOH + \text{ } n\text{-}BuBr \rightarrow PhSBu + NaBr$$

Thiols are more acidic than water (pKₐ of RSH is typically 9–10, pKₐ of PhSH is 6.4, pKₐ of H₂O is 15.7) and rapid proton transfer from sulfur to oxygen gives the thiolate anion that acts as a nucleophile in the Sₙ2 reaction.

But how do you make a thiol in the first place? The obvious way to make aliphatic thiols would be by an Sₙ2 reaction using NaSH on the alkyl halide.

This works well but, unfortunately, the product easily exchanges a proton and the reaction normally produces the symmetrical sulfide—this should remind you of what happened with amines!
The solution is to use the anion of thioacetic acid, usually the potassium salt. This reacts cleanly through the more nucleophilic sulfur atom and the resulting ester can be hydrolysed in base to liberate the thiol.

Effectiveness of different nucleophiles in the $S_N2$ reaction

In Chapter 10 we pointed out that basicity is nucleophilicity towards protons. At that stage we said that nucleophilicity towards the carbonyl group parallels basicity almost exactly. We are able to use $pK_a$ as a guide to the effectiveness of nucleophilic substitution reactions at the carbonyl group.

During this chapter you have had various hints that nucleophilicity towards saturated carbon is not so straightforward. Now we must look at this question seriously and try to give you helpful guidelines.

1. If the atom that is forming the new bond to carbon is the same over a range of nucleophiles—it might be oxygen, for example, and the nucleophiles might be HO$^-$, PhO$^-$, AcO$^-$, and TsO$^-$—then nucleophilicity does parallel basicity. The anions of the weakest acids are the best nucleophiles. The order for the nucleophiles we have just mentioned will be: HO$^-$ > PhO$^-$ > AcO$^-$ > TsO$^-$.

   The actual values for the rates of attack of the various nucleophiles on MeBr in EtOH relative to the rate of reaction with water (= 1) are given in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile $X^-$</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of HX</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HO$^-$</td>
<td>15.7</td>
<td>$1.2 \times 10^4$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhO$^-$</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>$2.0 \times 10^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AcO$^-$</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>$9 \times 10^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_2$O</td>
<td>$-1.7$</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClO$_4^-$</td>
<td>$-10$</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. If the atoms that are forming the new bond to carbon are not the same over the range of nucleophiles we are considering, then another factor is important. In the very last examples we have been discussing we have emphasized that RS$^-$ is an excellent nucleophile for saturated carbon. Let us put that another way: RS$^-$ is a better nucleophile for saturated carbon than RO$^-$, even though RO$^-$ is more basic than RS$^-$ (see table below).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile $X^-$</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of HX</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PhS$^-$</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>$5.0 \times 10^7$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhO$^-$</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>$2.0 \times 10^3$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sulfur is plainly a better nucleophile than oxygen for saturated carbon. Why should this be? As we discussed back in Chapter 5, there are two main factors controlling bimolecular reactions: (1) electrostatic attraction (simple attraction of opposite charges or partial charges) and (2) bonding interactions between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the electrophile.
A proton is, of course, positively charged, so electrostatic attraction is the more important factor in nucleophilicity towards H\(^+\), or pK\(_a\). The carbonyl group too has a substantial positive charge on the carbon atom, arising from the uneven distribution of electrons in the C=O π bond, and reactions of nucleophiles with carbonyl groups are also heavily influenced by electrostatic attraction, with HOMO–LUMO interactions playing a smaller role.

When it comes to saturated carbon atoms carrying leaving groups, polarization is typically much less important. There is, of course, some polarity in the bond between a saturated carbon atom and, say, a bromine atom, but the electronegativity difference between C and Br is less than half that between C and O. In alkyl iodides, one of the best classes of electrophiles in S\(_{N2}\) reactions, there is in fact almost no dipole at all—the electronegativity of C is 2.55 and that of I is 2.66.

Electrostatic attraction is often unimportant in S\(_{N2}\) reactions. What does matter is the strength of the HOMO–LUMO interaction. In a nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group, the nucleophile adds in to the low-energy π* orbital. In a nucleophilic attack on a saturated carbon atom, the nucleophile must donate its electrons to the σ* orbital of the C–X bond, as illustrated in the margin for an alkyl bromide reacting with the non-bonding lone pair of a nucleophile.

σ* antibonding orbitals are, of course, higher in energy than non-bonding lone pairs, but the higher the energy of the nucleophile’s lone pair, the better the overlap. The 3sp\(^3\) lone-pair electrons of sulfur overlap better with the high-energy σ* orbital of the C–X bond than do the lower energy 2sp\(^3\) lone-pair electrons on oxygen because the higher energy of the sulfur electrons brings them closer in energy to the C–X σ* orbital. The conclusion is that nucleophiles from lower down the periodic table are more effective in S\(_{N2}\) reactions than those from the top rows.

Electronegativities:
C: 2.55  I: 2.66  Br: 2.96  O: 3.44

Electrophiles in substitution reactions
Relative rates (water = 1) of reaction of nucleophiles with MeBr in EtOH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile</th>
<th>F(^-)</th>
<th>H(_2)O</th>
<th>Cl(^-)</th>
<th>Et(_3)N</th>
<th>Br(^-)</th>
<th>PhO(^-)</th>
<th>EtO(^-)</th>
<th>I(^-)</th>
<th>PhS(^-)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relative rate</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>(2.0 \times 10^3)</td>
<td>(6 \times 10^4)</td>
<td>(1.2 \times 10^6)</td>
<td>(5.0 \times 10^7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hard and soft nucleophiles

The fact that some nucleophiles, like $R_3P^-$ and $RS^-$, react very fast at saturated C atoms (they have high-energy lone pairs), but very poorly at C=O groups (they are either uncharged or have charge spread diffusely over large orbitals) gives them a different type of character from strongly basic nucleophiles like $HO^-$ that attack C=O groups rapidly. We call nucleophiles that react well at saturated carbon soft nucleophiles; those that are more basic and react well with carbonyl groups are referred to as hard nucleophiles. These are useful and evocative terms because the soft nucleophiles are indeed rather large and flabby with diffuse high-energy electrons while the hard nucleophiles are small and spiky with closely held electrons and high charge density.

When we say ‘hard’ (nucleophile or electrophile) we refer to species whose reactions are dominated by electrostatic attraction and when we say ‘soft’ (nucleophile or electrophile) we refer to species whose reactions are dominated by HOMO–LUMO interactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of the characteristics of the two types of nucleophile.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hard nucleophiles X</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic (HX weak acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low-energy HOMO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like to attack C=O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>such as RO${^-}$, NH$_2^-$, MeLi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nucleophiles and leaving groups compared

In Chapter 10 we explained that, in a nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group, a good nucleophile is a bad leaving group and vice versa. We set you the challenge of predicting which way the following reaction would go.

\[
\text{ester} \quad \text{NH}_3 \quad ? \quad \text{MeOH} \quad \text{amide ester} \\
\text{OMe} \quad \text{NH}_2 \quad \text{MeOH} \quad \text{NH}_2 \quad \text{amide}
\]

You should by now understand well that the reaction goes from ester to amide rather than the other way round, because NH$_3$ is a better nucleophile than MeOH and NH$_2^-$ is a worse leaving group than MeO$^-$.

The $S_2$ reaction is different: some of the best nucleophiles are also the best leaving groups. The most important examples of this are bromide and iodide. As the table on p. 356 showed, iodide ion is one of the best nucleophiles towards saturated carbon because it is at the bottom of its group in the periodic table and its lone-pair electrons are very high in energy. Alkyl iodides are readily formed from alkyl chlorides or tosylates. Here are two examples. The first is assisted by the solvent, acetone, which allows NaCl to precipitate and drives the reaction forward.
The second example is from the preparation of a phosphonium salt used in a synthesis of terpenes. An unsaturated primary alcohol was first made into its tosylate, the tosylate was converted into the iodide, and the iodide into the phosphonium salt.

\[
\text{OH} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{TsCl, pyridine}} \quad \text{OTs} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{I, benzene}} \quad \phi \text{Ph}^3 \quad \xrightarrow{\text{acetone}} \quad \text{phosphonium salt}
\]

But why this roundabout route via the iodide? The answer is that as well as being an excellent nucleophile, iodide is such a good leaving group that alkyl iodides are often used as intermediates to encourage substitution with other nucleophiles. Yields are often higher if the alkyl iodide is prepared than if the eventual nucleophile is reacted directly with the alkyl tosylate or chloride.

However, iodine is expensive, and a way round that problem is to use a catalytic amount of iodide. The phosphonium salt below is formed slowly from benzyl bromide but the addition of a small amount of LiI speeds up the reaction considerably.

\[
\text{Br} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{Ph}^3 \text{P}, \text{reflux in xylene}} \quad \text{reaction takes days}
\]

\[
\text{Br} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{Ph}^3 \text{P}, \text{catalytic LiI, reflux in xylene}} \quad \text{reaction complete in 2 hours}
\]

The iodide reacts both as a better nucleophile than Ph\(^3\)P and then as a better leaving group than Br\(^-\). Each iodide ion goes round the cycle many times as a nucleophilic catalyst.

Looking forward: elimination and rearrangement reactions

Simple nucleophilic substitutions at saturated carbon atoms are fundamental reactions found wherever organic chemistry is practised. They are used in industry on an enormous scale and in pharmaceutical laboratories to make important drugs. They are worth studying for their importance and relevance.

There is another side to this simple picture. These were among the first reactions whose mechanisms were thoroughly investigated by Ingold in the 1930s and since then they have probably been studied more than any other reactions. All our understanding of organic mechanisms begins with \(S_N1\) and \(S_N2\) reactions, and you need to understand these basic mechanisms properly.

The carbocations you met in this chapter are reactive intermediates not only in \(S_N1\) substitutions but in other reactions too. One of the most convincing pieces of evidence for their formation is that they undergo reactions other than simple addition to nucleophiles. For example, the carbon skeleton of the cation may rearrange, as we will discuss in Chapter 36.
Another common fate of cations, and something that may also happen instead of an intended $S_N1$ or $S_N2$ reaction, is elimination. Here an alkene is formed by the nucleophile acting as a base to remove HX instead of adding to the molecule.

You will meet elimination reactions in the next chapter but one (17) after some further exploration of stereochemistry.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Conformational analysis

Connections

Building on
- How to determine a molecule’s structure ch3 & ch13
- How some molecules can exist as stereoisomers ch14

Arriving at
- If I could see a molecule, what would its three-dimensional shape (conformation) be?
- What effect does a molecule’s shape have on its reactions?
- How single bonds are free to rotate, but spend most of their time in just two or three well-defined arrangements
- How rings of atoms are usually not planar, but ‘puckered’
- How ‘puckered’ six-membered rings have the most well-defined arrangements of atoms
- How to draw six-membered rings accurately
- How to use the known arrangements of the atoms in a six-membered ring to predict and explain their reactions

Looking forward to
- How conformation, and the alignment of atoms, can affect elimination reactions ch17
- How NMR spectroscopy backs up what we have said in this chapter ch31
- How the conformation of molecules dictates how they react, e.g. from which direction they will be attacked by reagents ch32 & ch33
- How the alignment of bonds can allow groups in molecules to move around (rearrangement reactions) or allow C–C bonds to break (fragmentation reactions) ch36
- How the alignment of orbitals controls reactivity (stereoelectronics) ch31
- The accurate drawing of rings as transition states is necessary ch32, ch34, & ch35

Bond rotation allows chains of atoms to adopt a number of conformations

Several chapters of this book have considered how to find out the structure of molecules. We have seen X-ray crystallography pictures, which reveal exactly where the atoms are in crystals; we have looked at IR spectroscopy, which gives us information about the bonds in the molecule, and at NMR spectroscopy, which gives us information about the atoms themselves and how they are joined up. Up to now, we have mainly been interested in determining which atoms are bonded to which other atoms and also the shapes of small localized groups of atoms. For example, a methyl group has three hydrogen atoms bonded to one carbon atom and the atoms around this carbon are located at the corners of a tetrahedron; a ketone consists of a carbon atom bonded to two other carbon atoms and doubly bonded to an oxygen atom, with all these atoms in the same plane.

But, on a slightly larger scale, shape is not usually so well defined. Rotation is possible about single bonds and this rotation means that, while the localized arrangement of atoms stays the same (every saturated carbon atom is still always tetrahedral), the molecule as a whole can adopt a number of different shapes. Shown on the next page are several snapshot views of one molecule—it happens to be a pheromone used by pea moths to attract a mate. Although the structures look dissimilar, they differ from one another only by rotation about one or more single bonds. Whilst the overall shapes differ, the localized structure is still the
same: tetrahedral sp³ carbons; trigonal planar sp² carbons. Notice another point too, which we will pick up on later: the arrangement about the double bond always remains the same because double bonds can’t rotate.

At room temperature in solution, all the single bonds in the molecule are constantly rotating—the chances that two molecules will have exactly the same shape at any one time are quite small.

Yet, even though no two molecules have exactly the same shape at any one time, they are still all the same chemical compound—they have all the same atoms attached in the same way. We call the different shapes of molecules of the same compound different conformations.

**Conformation and configuration**

To get from one conformation to another, we can rotate about as many single bonds as we like. The one thing we can’t do though is to break any bonds. This is why we can’t rotate about a double bond—to do so we would need to break the π bond. Below are some pairs of structures that can be interconverted by rotating about single bonds: they are all different conformations of the same molecule.

three compounds, each shown in two conformations

The next block of molecules is something quite different: these pairs can only be interconverted by breaking a bond. This means that they have different configurations—configurations can be interconverted only by breaking bonds. Compounds with different configurations are called stereoisomers and we dealt with them in Chapter 14.

three pairs of stereoisomers: each member of a pair has a different configuration

**Rotation or bond breaking?**

- Structures that can be interconverted simply by rotation about single bonds are conformations of the same molecule.
- Structures that can be interconverted only by breaking one or more bonds have different configurations, and are stereoisomers.
**Conformation and configuration**

Different conformations of a person – Some more stable than others …

A different configuration

---

**Barriers to rotation**

We saw in Chapter 7 that rotation about the C–N bond in an amide is relatively slow at room temperature—the NMR spectrum of DMF clearly shows two methyl signals (p. 156). In Chapter 12 you learned that the rate of a chemical process is associated with an energy barrier (this holds both for reactions and simple bond rotations): the lower the rate, the higher the barrier. Rotation about single bonds is fast at room temperature, but there is nonetheless a barrier to rotation in ethane (A), for example, of about 12 kJ mol$^{-1}$.

![energy barriers](image)

The energy barrier for rotation about the single bond in butadiene (B) is slightly larger because of the weak conjugation between the double bonds, but the barrier to rotation about the genuine double bond in but-2-ene (D) is enormous and no rotation is seen. The energy barrier to the rotation about the C–N bond in an amide such as DMF (C) is usually about 80 kJ mol$^{-1}$, translating into a rate of about 0.1 s$^{-1}$ at 20 °C. The conjugation in amides is well developed, and the C–N bond has significant double-bond character.
Rates and barriers

It can be useful to remember some simple guidelines to the way in which energy barriers relate to rates of rotation, as discussed in Chapter 12. For example:

- A barrier of 73 kJ mol$^{-1}$ allows one rotation every second at 25 °C (that is, the rate is 1 s$^{-1}$).
- Every 6 kJ mol$^{-1}$ changes the rate at 25 °C by about a factor of 10.

To see signals in an NMR spectrum for two different conformations, they must interconvert no faster than (very roughly) 1000 s$^{-1}$—a barrier of about 55 kJ mol$^{-1}$ at 25 °C. This is why NMR shows two methyl signals for DMF, but only one set of signals for butadiene. See p. 374 for more on this.

For conformations to interconvert slowly enough for them to exist as different compounds, the barrier must be over 100 kJ mol$^{-1}$. The barrier to rotation about a C=C double bond is 260 kJ mol$^{-1}$—which is why we can separate E and Z isomers.

Conformations of ethane

Why should there be an energy barrier in the rotation about a single bond? In order to answer this question, we should start with the simplest C–C bond possible—the one in ethane. Ethane has two extreme conformations called the staggered and eclipsed conformations. Three different views of these are shown below.

You can see why the conformations have these names by looking at the end-on views in the diagram. In the eclipsed case the near C–H bonds completely block the view of the far bonds, just as in a solar eclipse the Moon blocks the Sun as seen from the Earth. In the staggered conformation, the far C–H bonds appear in the gaps between the near C–H bonds—the bonds are staggered.

Chemists often want to draw these two conformations quickly and two different methods are commonly used, each with its own merits. In the first method, shown on the right, we simply draw the side view of the molecule and use wedged and hashed lines to show bonds not in the plane of the paper (as you saw in Chapter 14). Particular attention must be paid to which of the bonds are in the plane and which go into and out of the plane.

In the second method we draw the end-on view, looking along the C–C bond. This view is known as a Newman projection, and Newman projections are subject to a few conventions:

- The carbon atom nearer the viewer is at the junction of the front three bonds.
- The carbon further away (which can’t in fact be seen in the end-on view) is represented by a large circle. This makes the perspective inaccurate, but this doesn’t matter.
- Bonds attached to this further carbon join the edge of the circle and do not meet in the centre.
- Eclipsed bonds are drawn slightly displaced for clarity—as though the bond were rotated by a tiny fraction.

Newman projections of the staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane

The staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane are not identical in energy: the staggered conformation is lower in energy than the eclipsed by 12 kJ mol\(^{-1}\), the value of the rotational barrier. Of course, there are other possible conformations too with energies in between these extremes, and we can plot a graph to show the change in energy of the system as the C–C bond rotates. We define the dihedral angle, \(\theta\) (sometimes called the torsion angle), to be the angle between a C–H bond at the nearer carbon and a C–H bond at the far carbon. In the staggered conformation, \(\theta = 60^\circ\) whilst in the eclipsed conformation, \(\theta = 0^\circ\).

The energy level diagram shows the staggered conformation as a potential energy minimum whilst the eclipsed conformation represents an energy maximum. This means that the eclipsed conformation is not a stable conformation since any slight rotation will lead to a conformation lower in energy. The molecule will actually spend the vast majority of its time in a staggered or nearly staggered conformation and only briefly pass through the eclipsed conformation en route to another staggered conformation.

But why is the eclipsed conformation higher in energy than the staggered conformation? There are two reasons. The first is that the electrons in the bonds repel each other and this repulsion is at a maximum when the bonds are aligned in the eclipsed conformation. The second is that there may be some stabilizing interaction between the C–H \(\sigma\) bonding orbital on one carbon and the C–H \(\sigma^*\) antibonding orbital on the other carbon, which is greatest when the two orbitals are exactly parallel: this only happens in the staggered conformation. The same effects—repulsion between filled orbitals (a form of steric effect, see p. 129) and stabilization by donation into antibonding orbitals—govern the favoured conformations about all rotating bonds.
Conformations of propane

Propane is the next simplest hydrocarbon. Before we consider what conformations are possible for propane we should first look at its geometry. The C–C–C bond angle is not 109.5° (the tetrahedral angle, see Chapters 2 and 4) as we might expect, but 112.4°. Consequently, the H–C–H bond angle on the central carbon is smaller than the ideal angle of 109.5°, only 106.1°. This does not necessarily mean that the two methyl groups on the central carbon clash in some way, but instead that two C–C bonds repel each other more than two C–H bonds do.

As in the case of ethane, two extreme conformations of propane are possible—in one the C–H and C–C bonds are staggered, in the other they are eclipsed.

The rotational barrier is now slightly higher than for ethane: 14 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) as compared to 12 kJ mol\(^{-1}\). This again reflects the greater repulsion of electrons in the coplanar bonds in the eclipsed conformation rather than any steric interactions. The energy graph for bond rotation in propane would look exactly the same as that for ethane except that the barrier is now 14 kJ mol\(^{-1}\).

Conformations of butane

With butane things start to get slightly more complicated. Now we have effectively replaced two hydrogen atoms in ethane by larger methyl groups. These are large enough to get in the way of each other, and steric repulsion becomes a significant contribution to the rotational energy barriers. However, the main complication is that, as we rotate about the central C–C bond, not all the staggered conformations are the same, and neither are all the eclipsed conformations. The six conformations that butane can adopt as the central C–C bond is rotated in 60° intervals are shown below. The green Me group and the brown hydrogens are rotating while the substituents on the other carbon atom remain still.

Look closely at these different conformations. The conformations with dihedral angles 60° and 300° are actually mirror images of each other, as are the conformations with angles 120° and 240°. This means that we really only have four different maxima or minima in energy as we rotate about the central C–C bond: two types of eclipsed conformation, which will represent maxima in the energy–rotation graph, and two types of staggered conformation, which will represent minima. These four different conformations have names, shown in the bottom row of the diagram. In the syn-periplanar and anti-periplanar conformations the two C–Me bonds lie in the same plane; in the synclinal (or gauche) and anticlinal conformations they slope towards (syn) or away from (anti) one another.
Before we draw the energy–rotation graph, let’s just stop and think what it might look like. Each of the eclipsed conformations will be energy maxima but the syn-periplanar conformation \( (\theta = 0^\circ) \) will be higher in energy than the two anticlinal conformations \( (\theta = 120^\circ \text{ and } 240^\circ) \): in the syn-periplanar conformation two methyl groups are eclipsing each other whereas in the anticlinal conformations each methyl group is eclipsing only a hydrogen atom. The staggered conformations will be energy minima but the two methyl groups are furthest from each other in the anti-periplanar conformation so this will be a slightly lower minimum than the two synclinal (gauche) conformations.

As in ethane, the eclipsed conformations are not stable since any rotation leads to a more stable conformation. The staggered conformations are stable since they each lie in a potential energy well. The anti-periplanar conformation, with the two methyl groups opposite each other, is the most stable of all. We can therefore think of a butane molecule as rapidly interconverting between synclinal and anti-periplanar conformations, passing quickly through the eclipsed conformations on the way. The eclipsed conformations are energy maxima, and therefore represent the transition states for interconversion between conformations.

If we managed to slow down the rapid interconversions in butane (by cooling to very low temperature, for example), we would be able to isolate the three stable conformations—the anti-periplanar and the two synclinal conformations. These different stable conformations of butane are some sort of isomers. They are called conformational isomers or conformers for short.

You now have a more thorough explanation of the zig-zag arrangement of carbon chains, first introduced in Chapter 2 when we showed you how to draw molecules realistically. This is the shape you get if you allow all the C–C bonds to take up the anti-periplanar conformation, and it will be the most stable conformation for any linear alkane.

**Ring strain**

Up to now, we haven’t given an entirely accurate impression of rings. We have been drawing them all as though they were planar, although this is actually not the case. In this section you will learn how to draw rings more accurately and to understand the properties of the different conformations adopted.

If we assume that in fully saturated carbocyclic rings each carbon is sp\(^3\) hybridized, then each bond angle would ideally be 109.5°. However, in a planar ring, the carbon atoms don’t
have the luxury of choosing their bond angles: internal angle depends only on the number of
atoms in the ring. If this angle differs from the ideal 109.5°, there will be some sort of strain
in the molecule. This is best seen in the picture below, where the atoms are forced planar. The
more strained the molecules are, the more the bonds curve—in a strain-free molecule, the
bonds are straight.

Notice how in the smaller rings the bonds curve outwards, whilst in the larger rings the
bonds curve inwards. The table gives values for the internal angles for regular planar polygons
and an indication of the strain per carbon atom due to the deviation of this angle from the
ideal tetrahedral angle of 109.5°.

These data are best presented as a graph, and the ring strain per carbon atom in planar rings
for ring sizes up to 17 are shown on the next page. Whether the bonds are strained inwards or
outwards is not important so only the magnitude of the strain is shown.

From these figures (represented in the graph on p. 368), note:

- These are calculated data for hypothetical planar rings. As you will see, real rings are
  rather different.
- The calculated ring strain is largest for three-membered rings but rapidly decreases
  through a four-membered ring and reaches a minimum for a five-membered ring.
- The calculated ring strain increases again (although less rapidly) as the rings get larger
  after the minimum at 5.

But what we really need is a measure of the strain in actual compounds, not just a theoreti-
cal prediction in planar rings, so that we can compare this with the theoretical angle strain.
A good measure of the strain in real rings is obtained using heats of combustion. Look at the
following heats of combustion for some straight-chain alkanes. What is striking is that the
difference between any two in the series is very nearly constant at around –660 kJ mol⁻¹.

Heats of combustion for some straight-chain alkanes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Straight-chain alkane</th>
<th>CH₃(CH₂)nCH₃, n =</th>
<th>ΔH_combustion, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
<th>Difference, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ethane</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1560</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propane</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2220</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butane</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2877</td>
<td>657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pentane</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3536</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hexane</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4194</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heptane</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4853</td>
<td>659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octane</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5511</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonane</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6171</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decane</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6829</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecane</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7487</td>
<td>658</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dodecane</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8148</td>
<td>661</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If we assume (as is reasonable) that there is no strain in the straight-chain alkanes, then each
extra methylene group, –CH₂–, contributes on average an extra 658.7 kJ mol⁻¹ to the heat of
combustion for the alkane. A cycloalkane (CH₂)n is simply a number of methylene groups
joined together. If the cycloalkane is strain-free, then its heat of combustion should be n × 658.7
kJ mol⁻¹. If, however, there is some strain in the ring that makes the ring less stable (that is,
raises its energy) then more energy is given out on combustion. Now, let’s put all this together
in a graph showing, for each ring size: (a) angle strain per CH₂ group and (b) heat of combus-
tion per CH₂ group.
Points to notice in graph above:

- The greatest strain by far is in the three-membered ring, cyclopropane \( n = 3 \).
- The strain decreases rapidly with ring size but reaches a minimum for cyclohexane, not cyclopentane as you might have predicted from the angle calculations.
- The strain then increases but not nearly as quickly as the angle calculation suggested: it reaches a maximum at around \( n = 9 \) and then decreases once more.
- The strain does not go on increasing as ring size increases but instead remains roughly constant after about \( n = 14 \).
- Cyclohexane \( n = 6 \) and the larger cycloalkanes \( n \geq 14 \) all have heats of combustion per \(-\text{CH}_2\) group of around 658 kJ mol\(^{-1}\), the same value as that of a \(-\text{CH}_2\) group in a straight-chain alkane, that is, they are essentially strain-free.

You might ask yourself some questions now:

Why are six-membered rings and large rings virtually strain-free?

Why is there still some strain in five-membered rings even though the bond angles in a planar structure are almost 109.5°?

The answer to both these questions, as you may already have guessed, is that the assumption that the rings are planar is simply not correct. It is easy to see how large rings can fold up into many different conformations as easily as acyclic compounds do. It is less clear to predict what happens in six-membered rings.

**Six-membered rings**

If you were to join six tetrahedral carbon atoms together, you would probably find that you ended up with a shape like this.

All the carbon atoms are certainly not in the same plane, and there is no strain because all the bond angles are 109.5°. If you squash the model against the desk, forcing the atoms to lie in the same plane, it springs back into this shape as soon as you let go. If you view the model from one side (the second picture above) you will notice that four carbon atoms lie in the same plane, with the fifth above the plane and the sixth below it (although it’s important to realize that all six are identical—you can check this by rotating your model). The slightly overly imaginative name for this conformation—the **chair conformation**—derives from this view.
There is another conformation of cyclohexane that you might have made that looks like this.

This conformation is known as the **boat conformation**. In this conformation there are still four carbon atoms in one plane, but the other two are both above this plane. Now all the carbon atoms are not the same—the four in the plane are different from the ones above. However, this is not a stable conformation of cyclohexane, even though there is no bond angle strain (all the angles are 109.5°). In order to understand why not, we must go back a few steps and answer our other question: why is cyclopentane strained even though a planar conformation has virtually no angle strain?

**Smaller rings (three, four, and five members)**

The three carbon atoms in cyclopropane must lie in a plane since it is always possible to draw a plane through any three points. All the C–C bond lengths are the same, which means that the three carbon atoms are at the corners of an equilateral triangle. From the large heat of combustion per methylene group (p. 368) we know that there is considerable strain in this molecule. Most of this is due to the bond angles deviating so greatly from the ideal tetrahedral value of 109.5°. Most—but not all. If we view along one of the C–C bonds we can see a further cause of strain—all the C–H bonds are eclipsed.

The eclipsed conformation of ethane is an energy maximum and any rotation leads to a more stable conformation. In cyclopropane it is not possible to rotate any of the C–C bonds and so all the C–H bonds are forced to eclipse their neighbours. In fact, in any planar conformation all the C–H bonds will be eclipsed with their neighbours. In cyclobutane, the ring distorts from a planar conformation in order to reduce the eclipsing interactions, even though this reduces the bond angles further and so increases the bond angle strain. Cyclobutane adopts a puckered or ‘wing-shaped’ conformation.
This explains why cyclopentane is not entirely strain-free even though in a planar conformation the C–C–C bond angles are close to 109.5°. The heat of combustion data give us an indication of the total strain in the molecule, not just the contribution of angle strain. There is strain in planar cyclopentane caused by the eclipsing of adjacent C–H bonds. As in cyclobutane, the ring distorts to reduce the eclipsing interactions but this increases the angle strain. Whatever happens, there is always going to be some strain in the system. The minimum energy conformation adopted is a balance of the two opposing effects. Cyclopentane adopts a shape approximating to an ‘open envelope’, with four C atoms in a plane and one above or below it. The atoms in the ring rapidly take turns not to be in the plane, and cyclopentanes have much less well-defined conformational properties than cyclohexanes, to which we shall now return.

A closer look at cyclohexane

The heats of combustion data on p. 368 show that cyclohexane is virtually strain-free. This must mean that not only is there no angle strain, but there is also no strain from eclipsing interactions either. A model of the chair conformation of cyclohexane including all the hydrogen atoms looks like this.

The view along two of the C–C bonds clearly shows that there are no eclipsing C–H bonds in the chair conformation of cyclohexane—in fact, all the bonds are fully staggered, giving the lowest energy possible. This is why cyclohexane is strain-free. Contrast this with the boat conformation. Now four pairs of C–H bonds are eclipsed, and there is a particularly bad interaction between the ‘flagstaff’ C–H bonds.

This explains why the boat conformation is much less important than the chair conformation. Even though both are free from angle strain, the eclipsing interactions in the boat conformation make it approximately 25 kJ mol⁻¹ higher in energy than the chair conformation. In fact, as we shall see later, the boat conformation represents an energy maximum in cyclohexane whilst the chair conformation is an energy minimum. Earlier we saw how the eclipsing interactions in planar cyclobutane and cyclopentane could be reduced by distortion of the ring. The same is true for the boat conformation of cyclohexane. The eclipsing interactions can be relieved slightly if the two ‘side’ C–C bonds twist relative to each other.
Pushing these two carbon atoms in the direction shown... gives a slightly different conformation in which the eclipsing interactions have been reduced: the 'twist-boat' conformation shows the reduced eclipsing interactions.

This twisting gives rise to a slightly different conformation of cyclohexane called the twist-boat conformation, which, although not as low in energy as the chair form, is lower in energy (by 4 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)) than the boat form and is a local energy minimum, as we shall see later. Cyclohexane has two stable conformers, the chair and the twist-boat. The chair form is approximately 21 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) lower in energy than the twist-boat form.

**Axial and equatorial**

Take another look at the chair conformation on p. 368. All six carbon atoms are identical, but there are two types of protons—one type stick either vertically up or down and are called axial hydrogen atoms; the other sort stick out sideways and are called equatorial hydrogen atoms. As you go round the ring, notice that each of the CH\(_2\) groups has one hydrogen sticking up and one sticking down. However, all the ‘up’ ones alternate between axial and equatorial, as do all the ‘down’ ones.

Before going any further, it’s important that you learn how to draw cyclohexane properly. Without cluttering the structure with Cs and Hs, a chemist would draw cyclohexane as one of these three structures.

Up to now, we have simply used the hexagon A to represent cyclohexane. We shall see that, whilst this is the least informative of the three, it is nonetheless still useful. The more informative structures B and C (which are actually just different views of the same molecule) take some practice to draw properly, but you need to be able to draw convincing cyclohexanes and it is worth taking the time to learn how to now.

**Guidelines for drawing cyclohexane**

**The carbon skeleton**

Trying to draw the chair conformation of cyclohexane in one continuous line can lead to some dreadful diagrams. The easiest way to draw a chair conformation is by starting off with one end.

Next draw in two parallel lines of equal length.

At this stage, the top of the new line should be level with the top of the original pair.

Finally, the last two lines should be added. These lines should be parallel to the first pair of lines as shown and the lowest points should also be level.
Adding the hydrogen atoms

This is often the trickiest part. Just remember that you are trying to make each of the carbon atoms look tetrahedral. (Note that we don’t normally use wedged and hashed bonds in these chair-shaped diagrams; otherwise things get really messy.)

The axial bonds are relatively easy to draw in. They should all be vertically aligned and alternate up and down all round the ring.

The equatorial bonds require a little more care to draw. The thing to remember is that each equatorial bond must be parallel to two C–C bonds.

The complete diagram with all the hydrogen atoms should look like this. Most of the time you won’t want to draw in all the Hs but you need to know how to orientate them in case you do need to.

Common mistakes

If you follow all the guidelines above, you will soon be drawing good conformational diagrams. However, a few common mistakes have been included to show you what not to do!

how not to draw cyclohexanes...

The chair has been drawn with the middle bonds horizontal, so the upper points of the chair are not level. This means the axial hydrogens can no longer be drawn correctly vertical.

The axial hydrogens have been drawn alternating up and down on the wrong carbons. This structure is impossible because none of the carbons can be tetrahedral.

The red hydrogens have been drawn at the wrong angles—look for the parallel lines and the ‘W’ and ‘M’.
The ring inversion (flipping) of cyclohexane

Given that this chair conformer is the preferred conformation for cyclohexane, what would you expect its $^{13}$C NMR spectrum to look like? All six carbon atoms are the same so there should only be one signal (and indeed there is, at 25.2 ppm). But what about the $^1$H NMR spectrum? The two different sorts of protons (axial and equatorial) ought to resonate at different frequencies, so two signals should be seen (each with coupling to neighbouring protons). In fact, there is only one resonance in the proton spectrum, at 1.40 ppm. In a monosubstituted cyclohexane there should be two isomers detectable—one with the substituent axial, the other with the substituent equatorial. But again at room temperature only one set of signals is seen.

This changes when the NMR spectrum is run at low temperature. Now two isomers are visible, and this gives us a clue as to what is happening: the two isomers are conformers that interconvert—rapidly at room temperature, but more slowly when the temperature is lowered. Recall that NMR does not distinguish between the three different stable conformers of butane (two synclinal and one anti-periplanar) because they are all rapidly interconverting so fast that only an average is seen. The same happens with cyclohexane—just by rotating bonds (that is, without breaking any!) cyclohexane can ring invert or ‘flip’. After ring inversion has taken place, all the bonds that were axial are now equatorial and vice versa.

The whole inversion process can be broken down into the conformations shown below. The green arrows show the direction in which the individual carbon atoms should move in order to get to the next conformation.

The energy profile (below) for this ring inversion shows that the half-chair conformation is the energy maximum on going from a chair to a twist-boat. The true boat conformation is the energy maximum on interchanging between two mirror-image twist-boat conformers, the second of which is converted to the other chair conformation through another half-chair.

This would be a good point to remind you again of Chapter 12. This energy profile shows the conversion of one chair to another via two twist-boat intermediates (local energy minima). In between the energy minima are energy maxima, which are the transition states for the process. The progress of the ring-flipping ‘reaction’ is shown along an arbitrary ‘reaction coordinate’.

Interactive conformations of cyclohexane
Drawing other cyclohexane conformations

In the half-chair conformation of cyclohexane, four adjacent carbon atoms are in one plane with the fifth above this plane and the sixth below it. You will meet this conformation again later—it represents the energy minimum for cyclohexene, for example.

There are also a number of ways of drawing a twist-boat conformer but the easiest is this:

It’s clear from the diagram that the barrier to ring inversion of cyclohexane is 43 kJ mol⁻¹, a rate at 25°C of about 2 × 10⁵ s⁻¹. Ring inversion also interconverts the axial and equatorial protons, so these are also exchanging at a rate of 2 × 10⁵ s⁻¹ at 25°C—too fast for them to be detected individually by NMR, which is why they appear as an averaged signal.

Rates and spectroscopy

NMR spectrometers behave like cameras with a shutter speed of about 1/1000 s. Anything happening faster than that, and we get a blurred picture; things happening more slowly give a sharp picture. In fact, a more exact number for the ‘shutter speed’ of an NMR machine (not a real shutter speed—just figuratively speaking!) is given by the equation

\[ k = \pi \Delta \nu / \sqrt{2} = 2.22 \times \Delta \nu \]

where \( k \) is the fastest exchange rate that still gives individual signals and \( \Delta \nu \) is the separation of those signals in the NMR spectrum measured in hertz. For example, on a 400 MHz spectrometer, two signals separated by 0.5 ppm are 100 Hz apart, so any process exchanging with a rate slower than 222 s⁻¹ will still allow the NMR machine to show two separate signals; if they exchange with a rate faster than 222 s⁻¹ only an averaged signal will be seen.

The equation above holds for any spectroscopic method, provided we think in terms of differences between signals or peaks measured in hertz. So, for example, a difference between two IR absorptions of 100 cm⁻¹ can be represented as a wavelength of 0.01 cm (1 × 10⁻⁴ m) or a frequency of 3 × 10¹² s⁻¹. IR can detect changes happening a lot faster than NMR can—its ‘shutter speed’ is of the order of one-trillionth of a second.

Substituted cyclohexanes

In a monosubstituted cyclohexane, there can exist two different chair conformers: one with the substituent axial, the other with it equatorial. The two chair conformers will be in rapid equilibrium (by the process we have just described) but they will not have the same energy. In almost all cases, the conformer with the substituent axial is higher in energy, which means there will be less of this form present at equilibrium.

For example, in methylcyclohexane (X = CH₃), the conformer with the methyl group axial is 7.3 kJ mol⁻¹ higher in energy than the conformer with the methyl group equatorial. This energy difference corresponds to a 20:1 ratio of equatorial:axial conformers at 25°C.

There are two reasons why the axial conformer is higher in energy than the equatorial conformer. The first is that the axial conformer is destabilized by the repulsion between the axial group X and the two axial hydrogen atoms on the same side of the ring. This interaction is known as the 1,3-diaxial interaction. As the group X gets larger, this interaction becomes more severe and there is less of the conformer with the group axial. The second reason is that
in the equatorial conformer the C–X bond is anti-periplanar to two C–C bonds, while, for the axial conformer, the C–X bond is synclinal (gauche) to two C–C bonds.

The table shows the preference of a number of substituted cyclohexanes for the equatorially substituted conformer over the axially substituted conformer at 25 °C.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>Equilibrium constant, K</th>
<th>Energy difference between axial and equatorial conformers, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
<th>Percentage with substituent equatorial</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMe</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Et</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-Pr</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-Bu</td>
<td>&gt;3000</td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
<td>&gt;99.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following points (also referred to in Chapter 12).

- The three columns in the table are three different ways of expressing the same information. However, just looking at the percentages column, it is not immediately obvious to see how much more of the equatorial conformer there is—after all, the percentages of equatorial conformer for methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, t-buty1, and phenyl-cyclohexanes are all 95% or more. Looking at the equilibrium constants gives a much clearer picture.

- The amount of equatorial conformer present does increase in the order Me < Et < i-Pr < t-Bu, but perhaps not quite as expected. The ethyl group must be physically larger than a methyl group but there is hardly any difference in the equilibrium constants. The increase in the proportion of equatorial conformer on going from Et to i-Pr is only a factor of two, but for t-buty1cyclohexane it is estimated that there is about 3000 times more of the equatorial conformer than the axial conformer.

- The same anomaly occurs with the methoxy group—there is a much greater proportion of the conformer with a methoxy group axial than with a methyl group axial. This is despite the fact that a methoxy group is physically larger than a methyl group.

- The equilibrium constant does not depend on the actual size of the substituent, but rather its interaction with the neighbouring axial hydrogens. In the axial conformer of methylcyclohexane there is a direct interaction between the methyl group and the axial hydrogen atoms.

- In the case of the methoxy group, the oxygen acts as link and removes the methyl group away from the ring, lessening the interaction.
• The groups Me, Et, i-Pr, and t-Bu all need to point some atom towards the other axial hydrogens, and for Me, Et, and i-Pr this can be H.

• Only for t-Bu must a methyl group be pointing straight at the axial hydrogens, so t-Bu has a much larger preference for the equatorial position than the other alkyl groups. In fact, the interactions between an axial t-Bu group and the axial hydrogen atoms are so severe that the group virtually always stays in the equatorial position. As we shall see later, this can be very useful.

What happens with more than one substituent on the ring?

When there are two or more substituents on the ring, stereoisomerism is possible. For example, there are two isomers of 1,4-cyclohexanediol—in one (the cis isomer) both the substituents are either above or below the cyclohexane ring; in the other (the trans isomer) one hydroxyl group is above the ring whilst the second is below. For a cis 1,4-disubstituted cyclohexane with both the substituents the same, ring inversion leads to a second identical conformation, while for the trans configuration there is one conformation with both groups axial and one with both groups equatorial.

The chair-structure diagrams contain much more information than the simple ‘hexagon’ diagrams that we have used up to now. The former show both configuration and conformation—they show which stereoisomer (cis or trans) we are talking about and also (for the trans compound) the conformation adopted (diaxial or the more stable diequatorial). In contrast, the simpler hexagon diagrams carry no information about the conformation—only information about which isomer we are dealing with. This can be useful because it enables us to talk about one configuration of a compound without specifying the conformation. When you are solving a problem requiring conformational diagrams to predict the configuration of a product, always start and finish with a configurational (hexagon) drawing.

The chair conformer of cis-1,4-disubstituted cyclohexane has one substituent equatorial, the other axial. This will not necessarily be the case for other substitution patterns, for example the chair conformer of a cis-1,3-disubstituted cyclohexane has either both substituents axial or both equatorial. Remember, the ‘cis’ and ‘trans’ prefixes merely indicate that both groups are on the same ‘side’ of the cyclohexane ring. Whether the substituents are both axial/equatorial or one axial and the other equatorial depends on the substitution pattern. Each time you meet a molecule, draw the conformation or make a model to find out which bonds are axial and which are equatorial.
What if the two substituents on the ring are different? For the cis-1,3-disubstituted example above, there is no problem because the favoured conformation will still be the one that places these two different substituents equatorial. But when one substituent is axial and the other equatorial (as they happen to be in the trans diastereoisomer above) the preferred conformation will depend on what those substituents are. In general, the favoured conformation will place the maximum number of substituents equatorial. If both conformations have the same number of equatorial substituents, the one with the larger substituent equatorial will win out, and the smaller group will be forced to be axial. Various possibilities are included in the examples below.

This is only a guideline, and in many cases it is not easy to be sure. Instead of concerning ourselves with these uncertainties, we shall move on to some differentially substituted cyclohexanes for which it is absolutely certain which conformer is preferred.

**Locking groups—t-butyI groups, decalins, and steroids**

We have already seen how a t-butyI group always prefers an equatorial position in a ring. This makes it very easy to decide which conformation the two different compounds below will adopt.
cis-1,4-di-t-butylcyclohexanol

An axial t-butyl group really is very uncomfortable. In cis-1,4-di-t-butylcyclohexane, one t-butyl group would be forced axial if the compound existed in a chair conformation. To avoid this, the compound prefers to pucker into a twist-boat so that the two large groups can both be in equatorial positions (or ‘pseudoequatorial’, since this is not a chair).

Decalins

It is also possible to lock the conformation of a cyclohexane ring by joining another ring to it. Decalin is two cyclohexane rings fused at a common C–C bond. Two diastereoisomers are possible, depending on whether the hydrogen atoms at the ring junction are cis or trans. For cis-decalin, the second ring has to join the first so that it is axial at one point of attachment and equatorial at the other; for trans-decalin, the second ring can be joined to the first in the equatorial position at both attachment points.

When a cyclohexane ring inverts, the substituents that were equatorial become axial and vice versa. This is fine for cis-decalin, which has an axial–equatorial junction, but it means that ring inversion is not possible for trans-decalin. For trans-decalin to invert, the junction would have to become axial–axial, and it’s not possible to link the axial positions to form a six-membered ring. Cis-decalin, on the other hand, ring inverts easily.

Flipping cis-decalin: not so difficult once you know how

If you find it hard to visualize the ring inversion of cis-decalin, you are not alone! The best way to think about it is to ignore the second ring until the very end: just concentrate on what happens to one ring (black in this diagram), the hydrogens at the ring junction, and the (orange) bonds next to these hydrogens that form the ‘stumps’ of the second ring. Flip the black ring, and the ‘stumps’, and the hydrogens swap from axial to equatorial and vice versa. Draw the result, but don’t fill in the second ring yet or it will usually just come out looking like a flat hexagon (as in diagram A). Instead, rotate the complete (black) ring 60° about a vertical axis so that both of the orange ‘stumps’ can form part of a chair, which can now be filled in (diagram B). To make a chair (and not a hexagon) they must be pointing in a convergent direction, as the orange bonds are in B but not A.
Steroids

Steroids are an important class of compounds occurring in all animals and plants, which have many important functions from regulating growth (anabolic steroids) and sex drive (all sex hormones are steroids) to acting as a self-defence mechanism in plants, frogs, and even sea cucumbers. A steroid is defined by its structure: all steroids contain a basic carbon framework consisting of four fused rings—three cyclohexane rings and one cyclopentane ring—labelled and joined together as shown in the margin.

Just as in the decalin system, each ring junction could be cis or trans, but it turns out that all steroids have all trans-junctions except where rings A and B join, which is sometimes cis. Examples are cholestanol (all trans) and coprostanol (A and B fused cis).

Because steroids (even those with a cis A–B ring junction) are essentially substituted trans-decalins, they can’t ring-flip. This means, for example, that the hydroxyl group in cholestanol is held equatorial on ring A while the hydroxyl group in coprostanol is held axial on ring A. The steroid skeleton really is remarkably stable—samples of sediment 1.5 × 10⁹ years old have been found to contain steroids still with the same ring-junction stereochemistry.

**Axially and equatorially substituted rings react differently**

We shall be using ring structures throughout the rest of the book, and you will learn how their conformation affects their chemistry extensively. In many reactions of six-membered rings, the outcome may depend on whether a functional group is axial or equatorial. We shall conclude this chapter with two examples in which a functional group will be held in its axial or equatorial position by ‘locking’ the ring using a t-butyl group or a fused ring system such as trans-decalin.

In the last chapter we looked at two mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution: S_N1 and S_N2. We saw that the S_N2 reaction involved an inversion at the carbon centre. Recall that the incoming nucleophile had to attack the σ* orbital of the C–X bond. This meant that it had to approach the leaving group directly from behind, leading to inversion of configuration.
inversion during nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon

What do you think would happen if a cyclohexane derivative underwent an $S_n2$ reaction? If the conformation of the molecule is fixed by a locking group, the inversion mechanism of the $S_n2$ reaction means that, if the leaving group is axial, then the incoming nucleophile will end up equatorial and vice versa.

Substitution reactions are not very common for substituted cyclohexanes. The electrophilic carbon in a cyclohexane ring is a secondary centre—in the last chapter we saw that secondary centres do not react well via either $S_n1$ or $S_n2$ mechanisms (p. 347). To encourage an $S_n2$ mechanism, we need a good attacking nucleophile and a good leaving group. One such example is shown—the substitution of tosylate by $\text{PhS}^-$. The substitution of an axial substituent proceeds faster than the substitution of an equatorial substituent. There are several contributing factors making up this rate difference, but the most important is the direction of approach of the nucleophile. The nucleophile must attack the $\sigma^*$ of the leaving group, that is, directly behind the $\text{C–X}$ bond. In the case of an equatorially substituted compound, this line of attack is hindered by the (green) axial hydrogens—it passes directly through the region of space they occupy. For an axial leaving group, the direction of attack is parallel with the (orange) axial hydrogens anti-periplanar to the leaving group, and approach is much less hindered.
We must assume that this holds even for simple unsubstituted cyclohexanes, and that substitution reactions of cyclohexyl bromide, for example, occur mainly on the minor, axial conformer. This slows down the reaction because before it can react, the prevalent equatorial conformer must first flip to the axial.

If this flip to an axial leaving group is not possible, it may be that the reaction just won’t happen at all. This is exactly what happens in a trans-decalin. There are two diastereoisomers of this simple substituted trans-decalin: one with an equatorial and one with an axial leaving group (X could be Br, OTs, etc.).

![Equatorial vs. Axial Leaving Groups](image)

Attack by a nucleophile on the compound with the axial leaving group is straightforward. The nucleophile can approach along the axis of the C–X bond and normal SN₂ reaction occurs with inversion—the product is the equatorial compound. The equatorial leaving group, on the other hand, would require the nucleophile to approach through the middle of the molecule and that cannot be achieved. A totally different reaction occurs—a rearrangement that you will meet in Chapter 36.

**To conclude...**

You may wonder why we have spent most of this chapter looking at six-membered rings, ignoring other ring sizes almost totally. Apart from the fact that six is the most widespread ring size in organic chemistry, the reactions of six-membered rings are also the easiest to explain and to understand. The conformational principles we have outlined for six-membered rings (relief of ring strain, staggered favoured over eclipsed, equatorial favoured over axial, direction of attack) hold, in modified form, for other ring sizes as well. These other rings are less well behaved than six-membered rings because they lack the well-defined strain-free conformations that cyclohexane is blessed with. We shall now leave stereochemistry in rings for some time, but we come back to these more difficult rings—and how to tame them—in two chapters on stereochemistry in cyclic compounds, Chapters 31 and 32.

**Further reading**


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)


Substitution and elimination

Substitution reactions of t-butyl halides, you will recall from Chapter 15, invariably follow the S_N1 mechanism. In other words, the rate-determining step of their substitution reactions is unimolecular—it involves only the alkyl halide. This means that, no matter what the nucleophile is, the reaction goes at the same rate. You can’t speed this S_N1 reaction up, for example, by using hydroxide instead of water, or even by increasing the concentration of hydroxide. You’d be wasting your time, we said (see p. 332).

Nucleophilic substitution reactions of t-BuBr

You’d also be wasting your alkyl halide. This is what actually happens if you try the substitution reaction with a concentrated solution of sodium hydroxide.

Reaction of t-BuBr with concentrated solution of NaOH

Remember the turnstiles at the railway station (see p. 332).

Connections

Building on
- Stereochemistry ch14
- Mechanisms of nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon ch15
- Conformation ch16

Arriving at
- Elimination reactions
- What factors favour elimination over substitution
- The three important mechanisms of elimination reactions
- The importance of conformation in elimination reactions
- How to use eliminations to make alkenes (and alkynes)

Looking forward to
- Electrophilic additions to alkenes (the reverse of the reactions in this chapter) ch19
- How to control double-bond geometry ch27

Online support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123 into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
The reaction stops being a substitution and an alkene is formed instead. Overall, HBr has been lost from the alkyl halide, and the reaction is called an elimination.

In this chapter we will talk about the mechanisms of elimination reactions—as in the case of substitutions, there is more than one mechanism for eliminations. We will compare eliminations with substitutions—either reaction can happen from almost identical starting materials, and you will learn how to predict which is the more likely. Much of the mechanistic discussion relates very closely to Chapter 15, and we suggest that you make sure you understand all of the points in that chapter before tackling this one. This chapter will also tell you about uses for elimination reactions. Apart from a brief look at the Wittig reaction in Chapter 11, this is the first time you have met a way of making simple alkenes.

**Elimination happens when the nucleophile attacks hydrogen instead of carbon**

The elimination reaction of t-buty1 bromide happens because the nucleophile is basic. You will recall from Chapter 10 that there is some correlation between basicity and nucleophilicity: strong bases are usually good nucleophiles. Being a good nucleophile doesn’t get hydroxide anywhere in the substitution reaction because it doesn’t appear in the first-order rate equation. But being a good base does get it somewhere in the elimination reaction because hydroxide is involved in the rate-determining step of the elimination, and so it appears in the rate equation. This is the mechanism.

\[
\text{rate} = k_2 \left[ \text{t-BuBr} \right] \left[ \text{HO}^- \right]
\]

The hydroxide is behaving as a base because it is attacking the hydrogen atom, instead of the carbon atom it would attack in a substitution reaction. The hydrogen atom is not acidic, but proton removal can occur because bromide is a good leaving group. As the hydroxide attacks, the bromide is forced to leave, taking with it the negative charge. Two molecules—t-buty1 bromide and hydroxide—are involved in the rate-determining step of the reaction. This means that the concentrations of both appear in the rate equation, which is therefore second-order and this mechanism for elimination is termed E2, for elimination, bimolecular.

**Note:** No subscripts or superscripts, just plain old E2.

Now let’s look at another sort of elimination. We can approach it again by thinking about another SN1 substitution reaction, the reverse of the one at the beginning of the chapter: an alcohol is converted into an alkyl halide.

Bromide, the nucleophile, is not involved in the rate-determining step, so we know that the rate of the reaction will be independent of the concentration of Br\(^-\). Indeed the first step, to form the cation, will happen just as fast even if there is no bromide at all. But what happens to the carbocation in such a case? To find out, we need to use an acid whose counterion is such a weak nucleophile that it won’t even attack the positive carbon of the carbocation. Here is an example—t-butanol in sulfuric acid doesn’t undergo substitution, but undergoes elimination instead.
The HSO₄⁻ anion is not involved in the rate-determining formation of the carbocation, and is also a very bad nucleophile, so it does not attack the C atom of the carbocation. Neither is it basic, but you can see from the mechanism that it does behave as a base (that is, it removes a proton). It does this only because it is even more feeble as a nucleophile. The rate equation will not involve the concentration of HSO₄⁻ and the rate-determining step is the same as that in the S₅₁ reaction—unimolecular loss of water from the protonated t-BuOH. This elimination mechanism is therefore called E₁.

We will shortly come back to these two mechanisms for elimination, plus a third, but it is worth noting at this stage that the choice between E₁ and E₂ is not based on the same grounds as the choice between S₅₁ and S₅₂: you have just seen both E₁ and E₂ elimination from a substrate that would only undergo S₅₁. The difference between the two reactions was the strength of the base, so first we need to answer the question: when does a nucleophile start behaving as a base?

**Elimination in carbonyl chemistry**

We have left detailed discussion of the formation of alkenes until this chapter, but we used the term ‘elimination’ in Chapters 10 and 11 to describe the loss of a leaving group from a tetrahedral intermediate. For example, the final steps of acid-catalysed ester hydrolysis involve E₁ elimination of ROH to leave a double bond: C=O rather than C=C.

In Chapter 11 you even saw an E₁ elimination giving an alkene. That alkene was an enamine—here is the reaction.

**How the nucleophile affects elimination versus substitution**

**Basicity**

You have just seen molecules bearing leaving groups being attacked at two distinct electrophilic sites: the carbon to which the leaving group is attached, and the hydrogen atoms on the carbon adjacent to the leaving group. Attack at carbon leads to substitution; attack at hydrogen leads to elimination. Since strong bases attack protons, it is generally true that, the more basic the nucleophile, the more likely that elimination is going to replace substitution as the main reaction of an alkyl halide.

Here is an example of this idea at work: a weak base (EtOH) leads to substitution while a strong base (ethoxide ion) leads to elimination.
Elimination, substitution, and hardness

We can also rationalize selectivity for elimination versus substitution, or attack on H versus attack on C in terms of hard and soft electrophiles (p. 357). In an \( \text{SN}_2 \) substitution, the carbon centre is a soft electrophile—it is essentially uncharged, and with leaving groups such as halide the C–X \( \sigma^* \) is a relatively low-energy LUMO. Substitution is therefore favoured by nucleophiles whose HOMOs are best able to interact with this LUMO—in other words soft nucleophiles. In contrast, the C–H \( \sigma^* \) is higher in energy because the atoms are less electronegative. This, coupled with the hydrogen’s small size, makes the C–H bond a hard electrophilic site, and as a result hard nucleophiles favour elimination.

Size

For a nucleophile, attacking a carbon atom means squeezing past its substituents—and even for unhindered primary alkyl halides there is still one alkyl group attached. This is one of the reasons that \( \text{SN}_2 \) is so slow on hindered alkyl halides—the nucleophile has difficulty getting to the reactive centre. Getting at a more exposed hydrogen atom in an elimination reaction is much easier, and this means that, as soon as we start using basic nucleophiles that are also bulky, elimination becomes preferred over substitution, even for primary alkyl halides. One of the best bases for promoting elimination and avoiding substitution is potassium \( t \)-butoxide. The large alkyl substituent makes it hard for the negatively charged oxygen to attack carbon in a substitution reaction, but it has no problem attacking hydrogen.

Temperature

Temperature has an important role to play in deciding whether a reaction is an elimination or a substitution. In an elimination, two molecules become three (count them). In a substitution, two molecules form two new molecules. The two reactions therefore differ in the change in entropy during the reaction: \( \Delta S \) is greater for elimination than for substitution. In Chapter 12, we discussed the equation

\[
\text{This explanation is simplified because what matters is the rate of the reaction, not the stability of the products. A detailed discussion is beyond the scope of the book, but the general argument still holds.}
\]
This equation says that a reaction in which $\Delta S$ is positive becomes more favourable ($\Delta G$ becomes more negative) at higher temperature. Eliminations should therefore be favoured at high temperature, and this is indeed the case: most eliminations you will see are conducted at room temperature or above.

- Elimination versus substitution
  - Nucleophiles that are strong bases favour elimination over substitution.
  - Nucleophiles (or bases) that are bulky favour elimination over substitution.
  - High temperatures favour elimination over substitution.

**E1 and E2 mechanisms**

Now that you have seen a few examples of elimination reactions, it is time to return to our discussion of the two mechanisms for elimination. To summarize what we have said so far:

- E1 describes an elimination reaction (E) in which the rate-determining step is unimolecular (1) and does not involve the base. The leaving group leaves in this step, and the proton is removed in a separate second step.

  \[
  \text{general mechanism for E1 elimination} \\
  \text{rate} = k[\text{alkyl halide}]
  \]

- E2 describes an elimination (E) that has a bimolecular (2) rate-determining step that must involve the base. Loss of the leaving group is simultaneous with removal of the proton by the base.

  \[
  \text{general mechanism for E2 elimination} \\
  \text{rate} = k[B^\text{-}][\text{alkyl halide}]
  \]

There are a number of factors that affect whether an elimination goes by an E1 or E2 mechanism. One is immediately obvious from the rate equations: only the E2 is affected by the concentration of base, so at high base concentration E2 is favoured. The rate of an E1 reaction is not even affected by what base is present—so E1 is just as likely with weak as with strong bases, while E2 goes faster with strong bases than weak ones: strong bases at whatever concentration will favour E2 over E1. If you see that a strong base is required for an elimination, it is certainly an E2 reaction. Take the first elimination in this chapter as an example.

\[
\text{reaction of } t\text{-butyl bromide with concentrated hydroxide} \\
\text{HO}^- \quad \text{Br}^- \\
\text{HOH} \quad \text{Br}^-
\]

With less hindered alkyl halides hydroxide would not be a good choice as a base for an elimination because it is rather small and still very good at $S_N2$ substitutions (and even with tertiary alkyl halides, substitution outpaces elimination at low concentrations of hydroxide). So what are good alternatives?
We have already mentioned the bulky t-butoxide—ideal for promoting E2 as it’s both bulky and a strong base ($pK_a$ of t-BuOH = 18). Here it is at work converting a dibromide to a diene with two successive E2 eliminations. Since dibromides can be made from alkenes (you will see how in the next chapter), this is a useful two-step conversion of an alkene to a diene.

The product of the next reaction is a ‘ketene acetal’. Unlike most acetals, this one can’t be formed directly from ketene (ketene, CH$_2$=C=O, is too unstable), so instead the acetal is made by the usual method from bromoacetaldehyde and then HBr is eliminated using t-BuOK.

Among the most commonly used bases for converting alkyl halides to alkenes is one that you met in Chapter 8: DBU. This base is an amidine—delocalization of one nitrogen’s lone pair onto the other, and the resulting stabilization of the protonated amidinium ion, makes it particularly basic, with a $pK_a$ (of the protonated amidine) of about 12.5. There is not much chance of getting those voluminous fused rings into tight corners—so they pick off the easy-to-reach protons rather than attacking carbon atoms in substitution reactions.

DBU will generally eliminate HX from alkyl halides to give alkenes. In these two examples, the products were used as intermediates in the synthesis of natural products.
Substrate structure may allow E1

The first elimination of the chapter (t-BuBr plus hydroxide) illustrates something very important: the starting material is a tertiary alkyl halide and would therefore substitute only by $S_N 1$, but it can eliminate by either E2 (with strong bases) or E1 (with weak bases). The steric factors that disfavour $S_N 2$ at hindered centres don’t exist for eliminations. Nonetheless, E1 can occur only with substrates that can ionize to give relatively stable carbocations—tertiary, allylic, or benzylic alkyl halides, for example. Secondary alkyl halides may eliminate by E1, while primary alkyl halides only ever eliminate by E2 because the primary carbocation required for E1 would be too unstable. The chart below summarizes the types of substrate that can undergo E1—but remember that any of these substrates, under the appropriate conditions (in the presence of strong bases, for example), may also undergo E2. For completeness, we have also included in this chart three alkyl halides that cannot eliminate by either mechanism simply because they do not have any hydrogens to lose from carbon atoms adjacent to the leaving group.

Can a proton just ‘fall off’ a cation?

In E1 mechanisms, once the leaving group has departed almost anything will serve as a base to remove a proton from the intermediate carbocation. Weakly basic solvent molecules (water or alcohols), for example, are quite sufficient, and you will often see the proton just ‘falling off’ in reaction mechanisms, with the assumption that there is a weak base somewhere to capture it. We showed the loss of a proton like this in the last example, and in the chart on this page.

In very rare cases, such as the superacid solutions we described in Chapter 15 (p. 335), the cation is stable because counterions such as $BF_4^-$ and $SbF_6^-$ are not only non-nucleophilic but also so non-basic that they won’t even accept a proton. This fact tells us that despite this common way of writing the E1 mechanism, some sort of weak base is necessary even for E1.
Polar solvents also favour E1 reactions because they stabilize the intermediate carbocation. E1 eliminations from alcohols in aqueous or alcohol solution are particularly common and very useful. An acid catalyst is used to promote loss of water, and in dilute H$_2$SO$_4$, H$_3$PO$_4$, or HCl the absence of good nucleophiles ensures that substitution does not compete. With phosphoric acid, for example, the secondary alcohol cyclohexanol gives cyclohexene.

![Diagram of E1 elimination](image)

But the best E1 eliminations of all are with tertiary alcohols. The alcohols can be made using the methods of Chapter 9: nucleophilic attack by an organometallic on a carbonyl compound. Nucleophilic addition, followed by E1 elimination, is an excellent way of making this substituted cyclohexene, for example. Note that the proton required in the first step is recovered in the last—the reaction requires only catalytic amounts of acid.

Cedrol is important in the perfumery industry—it has a cedar wood fragrance. Corey’s synthesis includes this step—the acid (toluenesulfonic acid, see p. 227) catalyses both the E1 elimination and the hydrolysis of the acetal.

At the end of the last chapter you met some bicyclic structures. These sometimes pose problems for elimination reactions. For example, this compound will not undergo elimination by either an E1 or an E2 mechanism.

![Diagram of bicyclic structure](image)

We shall see shortly what the problem with E2 is, but for E1 the hurdle to be overcome is the formation of a planar carbocation. The bicyclic structure prevents the bridgehead carbon becoming planar so, although the cation would be tertiary, it is very high in energy and does not form. You could say that the non-planar structure forces the cation to have an empty sp$^3$ orbital instead of an empty p orbital, and we saw in Chapter 4 that it is always best to leave the orbitals with the highest possible energy empty.
Bredt’s rule
The impossibility of planar bridgehead carbons means that double bonds can almost never be formed to bridgehead carbons in bicyclic systems. This principle is known as Bredt’s rule, but, as with all rules, it is much more important to know the reason than to know the name, and Bredt’s rule is simply a consequence of the strain induced by a planar bridgehead carbon.

The role of the leaving group
We haven’t yet been very adventurous with our choice of leaving groups for eliminations: all you have seen so far are E2 from alkyl halides and E1 from protonated alcohols. This is deliberate: the vast majority of the two classes of eliminations use one of these two types of starting materials. But since the leaving group is involved in the rate-determining step of both E1 and E2, in general any good leaving group will lead to a fast elimination. You may, for example, see amines acting as leaving groups in eliminations of quaternary ammonium salts.

Eliminations from quaternary ammonium ions

Both E1 and E2 are possible, and from what you have read so far you should be able to spot that there is one of each here: in the first example, a stabilized cation cannot be formed (so E1 is impossible), but a strong base is used, allowing E2. In the second, a stabilized tertiary cation could be formed (so either E1 or E2 might occur), but no strong base is present, so the mechanism must be E1.

You have just seen that hydroxyl groups can be turned into good leaving groups in acid, but this is only useful for substrates that can react by E1 elimination. The hydroxyl group is never a leaving group in E2 eliminations, since they have to be done in base. A strong base would remove the proton from the OH group instead.

- OH⁻ is never a leaving group in an E2 reaction.

For primary and secondary alcohols, the hydroxyl is best made into a leaving group for elimination reactions by sulfonylation with para-toluenesulfonfyl chloride (tosyl chloride, TsCl) or methanesulfonfyl chloride (mesyl chloride, MeSO₂Cl or MsCl).
Toluenesulfonate esters (tosylates) can be made from alcohols (with TsCl, pyridine). We introduced tosylates in Chapter 15 because they are good electrophiles for substitution reactions with non-basic nucleophiles. With strong bases such as t-BuOK, NaOEt, or DBU they undergo very efficient elimination reactions. Here are two examples.

**E2 eliminations of tosylates**

Methanesulfonyl esters (or mesylates; Chapter 15) can be eliminated using DBU, but a good way of using MsCl to convert alcohols to alkenes is to do the mesylation and elimination steps in one go, using the same base (Et₃N) for both. Here are two examples making biologically important molecules. In the first, the mesylate is isolated and then eliminated with DBU to give a synthetic analogue of uracil, one of the nucleotide bases present in RNA. In the second, the mesylate is formed and eliminated in the same step using Et₃N, to give a precursor to a sugar analogue.

The second example here involves (overall) the elimination of a tertiary alcohol—so why couldn’t an acid-catalysed E1 reaction have been used? The problem here, nicely solved by the use of the mesylate, is that the molecule contains an acid-sensitive acetal functional group. An acid-catalysed reaction would also have risked eliminating methanol from the other tertiary centre.

**E1 reactions can be stereoselective**

For some eliminations only one product is possible. For others, there may be a choice of two (or more) alkene products that differ either in the location or stereochemistry of the double bond. We shall now move on to discuss the factors that control the stereochemistry (geometry—*cis* or *trans*) and regiochemistry (that is, where the double bond is) of the alkenes, starting with E1 reactions.
only one alkene possible

two regioisomeric alkenes possible

two stereoisomeric alkenes possible

**E and Z alkenes**

You met the idea that alkenes can exist as geometrical cis and trans isomers in Chapters 3 and 7, and now that you have read Chapter 14 we can be more precise with our definitions. *cis* and *trans* are rather loosely defined terms (like *syn* and *anti*), although no less useful for it. But for formal assignment of geometry, we use the stereochemical descriptors *E* and *Z*. For disubstituted alkenes, *E* corresponds to *trans* and *Z* corresponds to *cis*. To assign *E* or *Z* to tri-or tetrasubstituted alkenes, the groups at either end of the alkene are given an order of priority according to the same rules as those outlined for *R* and *S* in Chapter 15. If the two higher priority groups are *cis*, the alkene is *Z*; if they are *trans* the alkene is *E*. Of course, molecules don’t know these rules, and sometimes (as in the second example here) the *E* alkene is less stable than the *Z*.

*E* alkenes (and transition states leading to *E* alkenes) are usually lower in energy than *Z* alkenes (and the transition states leading to them) for steric reasons: the substituents can get further apart from one another. A reaction that can choose which it forms is therefore likely to favour the formation of *E* alkenes. For alkenes formed by E1 elimination, this is exactly what happens: the less hindered *E* alkene is favoured. Here is an example.

The geometry of the product is determined at the moment that the proton is lost from the intermediate carbocation. The new $\pi$ bond can only form if the vacant p orbital of the carbocation and the breaking C–H bond are aligned parallel. In the example shown there are two possible conformations of the carbocation with parallel orientations, but one is more stable than the other because it suffers less steric hindrance. The same is true of the transition states on the route to the alkenes—the one leading to the *E* alkene is lower in energy, and more *E* alkene than *Z* alkene is formed. The process is stereoselective because the reaction chooses to form predominantly one of two possible stereoisomeric products.
Tamoxifen

Tamoxifen is an important drug in the fight against breast cancer, one of the most common forms of cancer. It works by blocking the action of the female sex hormone oestrogen. The tetrasubstituted double bond can be introduced by an E1 elimination: there is no ambiguity about where the double bond goes, although the two stereoisomers form in about equal amounts. Tamoxifen is the Z isomer.

E1 reactions can be regioselective

We can use the same ideas when we think about E1 eliminations that can give more than one regiosomeric alkene. Here is an example. The major product is the alkene that has the more substituents because this alkene is the more stable of the two possible products.

- More substituted alkenes are more stable.
This is quite a general principle. But why should it be true? The reason for this is related to the reason why more substituted carbocations are more stable. In Chapter 15 we said that the carbocation is stabilized when its empty p orbital can interact with the filled orbitals of parallel C–H and C–C bonds. The same is true of the π system of the double bond—it is stabilized when the empty π* antibonding orbital can interact with the filled orbitals of parallel C–H and C–C bonds. The more C–C or C–H bonds there are, the more stable the alkene.

The more substituted alkene is more stable, but this does not necessarily explain why it is the one that forms faster. To do that, we should look at the transition states leading to the two alkenes. Both form from the same carbocation, but which one we get depends on which proton is lost. Removal of the proton on the right (brown arrow) leads to a transition state in which there is a monosubstituted double bond partly formed. Removal of the proton on the left (orange arrow) leads to a partial double bond that is trisubstituted. This is more stable—the transition state is lower in energy, and the more substituted alkene forms faster.

This explanation of both stereo and regioselectivity in E1 reactions is based on kinetic arguments—which alkene forms faster. But it is also true that some E1 eliminations are reversible: the alkenes may be protonated in acid to re-form carbocations, as you will see in the next chapter. This reprotonation allows the more stable product to form preferentially under thermodynamic control. In any individual case, it may not be clear which is operating. However, with E2 reactions, which follow, only kinetic control applies: E2 reactions are never reversible.
E2 eliminations have anti-periplanar transition states

Although E1 reactions show some stereo and regioselectivity, the level of selectivity in E2 reactions can be much higher because of the more stringent demands on the transition state for E2 elimination. In an E2 elimination, the new \( \pi \) bond is formed by overlap of the \( C-H \) \( \sigma \) bond with the \( C-X \) \( \sigma^* \) antibonding orbital. The two orbitals have to lie in the same plane for best overlap, and now there are two conformations that allow this. One has \( H \) and \( X \) syn-periplanar, the other anti-periplanar. The anti-periplanar conformation is more stable because it is staggered (the syn-periplanar conformation is eclipsed) but, more importantly, only in the anti-periplanar conformation are the bonds (and therefore the orbitals) truly parallel.

E2 eliminations therefore take place preferentially from the anti-periplanar conformation. We shall see shortly how we know this to be the case, but first we consider an E2 elimination that gives mainly one of two possible stereoisomers. 2-Bromobutane has two conformations with \( H \) and \( Br \) anti-periplanar, but the one that is less hindered leads to more of the product, and the \( E \) alkene predominates.

There is a choice of protons to be eliminated—the stereochemistry of the product results from which proton is anti-periplanar to the leaving group when the reaction takes place, and the reaction is stereoselective as a result.

E2 eliminations can be stereospecific

In the next example there is only one proton that can take part in the elimination. Now there is no choice of anti-periplanar transition states. Whether the product is \( E \) or \( Z \), the E2 reaction has only one course to follow. And the outcome depends on which diastereoisomer of the starting material is used. When the first diastereoisomer is drawn with the proton and
bromine anti-periplanar, as required, and in the plane of the page, the two phenyl groups have to lie one in front and one behind the plane of the paper. As the hydroxide attacks the C–H bond and eliminates Br\(^-\), this arrangement is preserved and the two phenyl groups end up \textit{trans} (the alkene is \textit{E}). This is perhaps easier to see in the Newman projection of the same conformation.

The second diastereoisomer forms the \textit{Z} alkene for the same reasons: the two phenyl groups are now on the same side of the H–C–C–Br plane in the reactive anti-periplanar conformation (again, this is clear in the Newman projection) and so they end up \textit{cis} in the product. Each diastereoisomer gives a different alkene geometry, and they do so at different rates. The first reaction is about ten times as fast as the second because, although this anti-periplanar conformation is the only reactive one, it is not necessarily the most stable. The Newman projection for the second reaction shows clearly that the two phenyl groups have to lie synclinal (gauche) to one another: the steric interaction between these large groups will mean that, at any time, a relatively small proportion of molecules will adopt the right conformation for elimination, slowing the process down.

Reactions in which the stereochemistry of the product is determined by the stereochemistry of the starting material are called \textit{stereospecific}.

\textbf{Stereoselective or stereospecific?}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Stereoselective reactions} give one predominant product because the reaction pathway has a choice. Either the pathway of lower activation energy is preferred (kinetic control) or the more stable product is preferred (thermodynamic control).
  \item \textbf{Stereospecific reactions} lead to the production of a single isomer as a direct result of the mechanism of the reaction and the stereochemistry of the starting material. There is no choice. The reaction gives a different diastereoisomer of the product from each stereoisomer of the starting material.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{E2 eliminations from cyclohexanes}

The stereospecificity of the reactions you have just met is very good evidence that E2 reactions proceed through an anti-periplanar transition state. We know with which diastereoisomer we started, and we know which alkene we get, so there is no question over the course of the reaction.

More evidence comes from the reactions of substituted cyclohexanes. You saw in Chapter 16 that substituents on cyclohexanes can be parallel with one another only if they are both axial. An equatorial C–X bond is anti-periplanar only to C–C bonds and cannot take part in an elimination. For mono-substituted cyclohexyl halides treated with base, this is not a problem because, although the axial conformer is less stable, there is still a significant amount present (see the table on p. 375), and elimination can take place from this conformer.
For E2 elimination in cyclohexanes, both C–H and C–X must be axial.

These two diastereoisomeric cyclohexyl chlorides derived from menthol react very differently under the same conditions with sodium ethoxide as base. Both eliminate HCl but diastereoisomer A reacts rapidly to give a mixture of products, while diastereoisomer B (which differs only in the configuration of the carbon atom bearing chlorine) gives a single alkene product but very much more slowly. We can safely exclude E1 as a mechanism because the same cation would be formed from both diastereoisomers, and this would mean the ratio of products (although not necessarily the rate) would be the same for both.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{elimination of diastereoisomer A} & \\
\text{elimination of diastereoisomer B}
\end{align*}
\]

The key to explaining reactions like this is to draw the conformation of the molecules. Both will adopt a chair conformation, and generally the chair having the largest substituent equatorial (or the largest number of substituents equatorial) is the more stable. In these examples the isopropyl group is most influential—it is branched and will have very severe 1,3-diaxial interactions if it occupies an axial position. In both diastereoisomers, an equatorial i-Pr also means an equatorial Me: the only difference is the orientation of the chlorine. For diastereoisomer A, the chlorine is forced axial in the major conformer: there is no choice because the relative configuration is fixed in the starting material. It’s less stable than equatorial Cl, but is ideal for E2 elimination and there are two protons that are anti-periplanar available for removal by the base. The two alkenes are formed as a result of each of the possible protons with a 3:1 preference for the more substituted alkene.

For diastereoisomer B, the chlorine is equatorial in the lowest-energy conformation. Once again there is no choice. But equatorial leaving groups cannot be eliminated by E2: in this conformation there is no anti-periplanar proton. This accounts for the difference in rate between the two diastereoisomers. A has the chlorine axial virtually all the time ready for E2, while B has an axial leaving group only in the minute proportion of the molecules that happen not to be in the lowest-energy conformation, but that have all three substituents axial. The all-axial conformer is much higher in energy, but only in this conformer can Cl\(^{−}\) be eliminated. The concentration of reactive molecules is low, so the rate is also low. There is only one proton anti-periplanar and so elimination gives a single alkene.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{conformation of diastereoisomer A} & \\
\text{conformation of diastereoisomer B}
\end{align*}
\]
E2 elimination from vinyl halides: how to make alkenes

An anti-periplanar arrangement of C–Br and C–H is attainable with a vinylic bromide too, provided the Br and H are trans to one another. E2 elimination from the Z isomer of a vinyl bromide gives an alkyne rather faster than elimination from the E isomer because in the E isomer the C–H and C–Br bonds are syn-periplanar.

Vinyl bromides can themselves be made by elimination reactions of 1,2-dibromoalkanes. Watch what happens when 1,2-dibromopropane is treated with three equivalents of R₂NLi: first, elimination to the vinyl halide, then elimination of the vinyl halide to the alkyne. The terminal alkyne is amply acidic enough to be deprotonated by R₂NLi, and this is the role of the third equivalent. Overall, the reaction makes a lithiated alkyne (ready for further reactions) from a fully saturated starting material. This may well be the first reaction you have met that makes an alkyne from a starting material that doesn’t already contain a triple bond.

The regioselectivity of E2 eliminations

Here are two deceptively similar elimination reactions. The leaving group changes and the reaction conditions are very different but the overall process is elimination of HX to produce one of two alkenes.

In the first example acid-catalysed elimination of water from a tertiary alcohol produces a trisubstituted alkene. Elimination of HCl from the corresponding tertiary alkyl chloride promoted by a very hindered alkoxide base (more hindered than t-BuOK because all the ethyl groups have to point away from one another) gives exclusively the less stable disubstituted alkene.

The reason for the two different regioselectivities is a change in mechanism. As we have already discussed, acid-catalysed elimination of water from tertiary alcohols is usually E1, and you already know the reason why the more substituted alkene forms faster in E1 reactions (p. 394). It should come as no surprise to you now that the second elimination, with a strong, hindered base, is an E2 reaction. But why does E2 give the less substituted product? This time, there is no problem getting C–H bonds anti-periplanar to the leaving group: in the conformation...
with the Cl axial there are two equivalent ring hydrogens available for elimination, and removal of either of these would lead to the trisubstituted alkene. Additionally, any of the three equivalent methyl hydrogens are in a position to undergo E2 elimination to form the disubstituted alkene whether the Cl is axial or equatorial—and yet it is these and only these that are removed by the hindered base. The diagram summarizes two of the possibilities.

The base attacks the methyl hydrogens because they are less hindered—they are attached to a primary carbon atom, well away from the other axial hydrogens. E2 eliminations with hindered bases typically give the less substituted double bond because the fastest E2 reaction involves deprotonation at the least-substituted site. The hydrogens attached to a less substituted carbon atom are also more acidic. Think of the conjugate bases: a \( t \)-butyl anion is more basic (because the anion is destabilized by the three electron-donating alkyl groups) than a methyl anion, so the corresponding alkane must be less acidic. Steric factors are evident in the following E2 reactions, where changing the base from ethoxide to \( t \)-butoxide alters the major product from the more to the less substituted alkene.

- **Elimination regioselectivity**
  - E1 reactions give the more substituted alkene.
  - E2 reactions may give the more substituted alkene, but become more regioselective for the less substituted alkene with more hindered bases.

**Hofmann and Saytsev**

Traditionally, these two opposite preferences—for the more or the less substituted alkenes—have been called Saytsev’s rule and Hofmann’s rule, respectively. You will see these names used (along with a number of alternative spellings—acceptable for Saytsev, whose name is transliterated from Russian, but not for Hofmann: this Hofmann had one f and two n’s), but there is little point remembering which is which (or how to spell them)—it is far more important to understand the reasons that favour formation of each of the two alkenes.

**Anion-stabilizing groups allow another mechanism—E1cB**

To finish this chapter, we consider a reaction that at first sight seems to go against what we have told you so far. It’s an elimination catalysed by a strong base (KOH), so it looks like E2. But the leaving group is hydroxide, which we categorically (and truthfully) stated cannot be a leaving group in E2 eliminations.

The key to what is going on is the carbonyl group. In Chapter 8 you met the idea that negative charges are stabilized by conjugation with carbonyl groups, and the list on p. 176 demonstrated how acidic a proton adjacent to a carbonyl group is. The proton that is removed in this elimination reaction is adjacent to the carbonyl group, and is therefore also rather acidic (\( pK_a \) about 20). This means that the base can remove it without the leaving group departing at the
same time—the anion that results is stable enough to exist because it can be delocalized on to the carbonyl group.

Although the anion is stabilized by the carbonyl group, it still prefers to lose a leaving group and become an alkene. This is the next step.

This step is also the rate-determining step of the elimination—the elimination is unimolecular and so is some kind of E1 reaction. The leaving group is not lost from the starting molecule, but from the conjugate base of the starting molecule, so this sort of elimination, which starts with a deprotonation, is called E1cB (cB for conjugate base). Here is the full mechanism, generalized for other carbonyl compounds.

It’s important to note that, while \( \text{HO}^- \) is never a leaving group in E2 reactions, it can be a leaving group in E1cB reactions. The anion it is lost from is already an alkoxide—the oxy-anion does not need to be created as the \( \text{HO}^- \) is lost. The establishment of conjugation in the product also assists loss of \( \text{HO}^- \). As the scheme above implies, other leaving groups are possible too. Here are two examples with methanesulfonate leaving groups.

The first looks E1 (stabilized cation), the second E2—but in fact both are E1cB reactions. The most reliable way to spot a likely E1cB elimination is to see whether the alkene in the product is conjugated with a carbonyl group. If it is, the mechanism is probably E1cB.

\( \beta \)-Halocarbonyl compounds can be rather unstable: the combination of a good leaving group and an acidic proton means that E1cB elimination is extremely easy. This mixture of diastereoisomers is first of all lactonized in acid (Chapter 10), and then undergoes E1cB
elimination with triethylamine to give a product known as a butenolide. Butenolides are common structures in naturally occurring compounds.

You will have noticed that we have shown the deprotonation step in the last few mechanisms as an equilibrium. Both equilibria lie rather over to the left-hand side because neither triethylamine (pKₐ of Et₃NH⁺ about 10) nor hydroxide (pKₐ of H₂O 15.7) is basic enough to remove completely a proton next to a carbonyl group (pKₐ > 20). However, because the loss of the leaving group is essentially irreversible, only a small amount of deprotonated carbonyl compound is necessary to keep the reaction going. The important point about substrates that undergo E1cB is that there is some form of anion-stabilizing group next to the proton to be removed—it doesn’t have to stabilize the anion very well but, as long as it makes the proton more acidic, an E1cB mechanism has a chance. Here is an important example with two phenyl rings helping to stabilize the anion, and a carbamate anion (R₂N—CO₂⁻) as the leaving group.

The proton to be removed has a pKₐ of about 25 because its conjugate base is an aromatic cyclopentadienyl anion (we discussed this in Chapter 8). The E1cB elimination takes place with a secondary or tertiary amine as the base. Spontaneous loss of CO₂ from the eliminated product gives an amine, and you will meet this class of compounds again in Chapter 23, where we discuss the Fmoc protecting group.

The E1cB rate equation
The rate-determining elimination step in an E1cB reaction is unimolecular, so you might imagine it would have a first-order rate equation. In fact, the rate is also dependent on the concentration of base. This is because the unimolecular elimination involves a species—the anion—whose concentration is itself determined by the concentration of base by the equilibrium we have just been discussing. Using the following general E1cB reaction, the concentration of the anion can be expressed as shown.
The rate is proportional to the concentration of the anion, and we now have an expression for that concentration. We can simplify it further because the concentration of water is effectively constant.

\[
rate = k \frac{K}{[\text{H}_2\text{O}]} \left[ \frac{\text{RO}^+ \text{OH}}{[\text{RO}^+ \text{OH}]} \right] = \text{constant} \times \left[ \frac{\text{RO}^+ \text{OH}}{[\text{RO}^+ \text{OH}]} \right] \]

Just because the base (hydroxide) appears in this rate equation doesn’t mean to say it is involved in the rate-determining step. Increasing the concentration of base makes the reaction go faster by increasing the amount of anion available to eliminate.

**E1cB eliminations in context**

We can also compare the E1cB mechanism with the other elimination reactions you have met by thinking of the relative timing of proton removal and leaving group departure. E1 is at one end of the scale: the leaving group goes first and proton removal follows in a second step. In E2 reactions, the two events happen at the same time: the proton is removed as the leaving group leaves. In E1cB the proton removal moves in front of leaving group departure.

We talked about regio- and stereoselectivity in connection with E1 and E2 reactions. With E1cB, the regioselectivity is straightforward: the location of the double bond is defined by the position of (a) the acidic proton and (b) the leaving group.

E1cB reactions may be stereoselective—the one above, for example, gives mainly the \( E \) alkene product (2:1 with \( Z \)). The intermediate anion is planar, so the stereochemistry of the starting materials is irrelevant, the less sterically hindered (usually \( E \)) product is preferred. This double E1cB elimination, for example, gives only the \( E, E \) product.
To finish this chapter we need to tell you about two E1cB eliminations that you may meet in unexpected places. We have saved them till now because they are unusual in that the leaving group is actually part of the anion-stabilizing group itself. First of all, try spotting the E1cB elimination in this step from the first total synthesis of penicillin V.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HN} & \quad \text{S} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{PhO} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{t-BuO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{Et}_3\text{N} \quad \text{HN} & \quad \text{S} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{t-BuO}_2\text{C} \\
\text{PhO} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{several steps} \quad \text{penicillin V} 
\end{align*}
\]

The reaction is deceptively simple—formation of an amide in the presence of base—and you would expect the mechanism to follow what we told you in Chapter 10. But the acyl chloride is, in fact, set up for an E1cB elimination—and you should expect this whenever you see an acyl chloride with acidic protons next to the carbonyl group used in the presence of a base such as triethylamine.

The product of the elimination is a substituted ketene—a highly reactive species whose parent structure is the molecule \( \text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{O} \) that you will meet in the next chapter. It is the ketene that reacts with the amine to form the amide.

The second ‘concealed’ E1cB elimination is disguised in the mechanism of formation of methanesulfonates (mesylates). When we introduced sulfonate esters in Chapter 15, and revisited them on p. 391 of this chapter, we avoided (uncharacteristically, you may say) explaining the mechanism by which they are formed from sulfonyl chlorides. This was deliberate because, while \( \text{TsCl} \) reacts with alcohols by the mechanism you might predict, the reaction with \( \text{MsCl} \) involves an elimination step.

Here is the mechanism by which alkyl tosylates are formed from alcohols. The alcohol acts as a nucleophile towards the electrophilic sulfonyl chloride, and pyridine removes a proton to give the product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{formation of toluenesulfonates (tosylates): reagents ROH + TsCl + pyridine} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Methanesulfonyl chloride by contrast has a feature it shares with the acyl chlorides just above: a relatively acidic proton that can be removed by base. This deprotonation, followed by loss of chloride, is the first step in the formation of a mesylate ester. It is an E1cB elimination and the product is called a sulfene.
The sulfene is electrophilic in a slightly odd way: the alcohol acts as a nucleophile for sulfur and generates an anion of carbon which undergoes a proton transfer to give the mesylate. It is not uncommon for anions to form adjacent to sulfur, as you will see again in Chapter 27. Notice how similar the overall mechanism is to the acylation mechanism we showed you above.

**To conclude**

We finish with brief summaries of three important discussions we have had in this chapter.

**Elimination versus substitution**

The table below summarizes the general pattern of reactivity expected from various structural classes of alkyl halides (or tosylates, mesylates) in reactions with a representative range of nucleophiles (which may behave as bases).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Poor nucleophile (e.g. H₂O, ROH)</th>
<th>Weakly basic nucleophile (e.g. I⁻, RS⁻)</th>
<th>Strongly basic, unhindered nucleophile (e.g. RO⁻)</th>
<th>Strongly basic, hindered nucleophile (e.g. DBU, t-BuO⁻)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>no reaction</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary (unhindered)</td>
<td>no reaction</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
<td>E₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary (hindered)</td>
<td>no reaction</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
<td>E₂</td>
<td>E₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>Sₙ1, E₁ (slow)</td>
<td>Sₙ2</td>
<td>E₂</td>
<td>E₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertiary</td>
<td>E₁ or Sₙ₁</td>
<td>Sₙ1, E₁</td>
<td>E₂</td>
<td>E₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β to anion-stabilizing group</td>
<td>E₁cB</td>
<td>E₁cB</td>
<td>E₁cB</td>
<td>E₁cB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some points about the table:

- Methyl halides cannot eliminate as there are no appropriately placed protons.
- Increasing branching favours elimination over substitution and strongly basic hindered nucleophiles always eliminate unless there is no option.
- Good nucleophiles undergo substitution by S_N2 unless the substrate is tertiary and then the intermediate cation can eliminate by E1 as well as substitute by S_N1.
- High temperatures favour elimination by gearing up the importance of entropy in the free energy of reaction \(\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S\). This is a good way of ensuring E1 in ambiguous cases.

**Summary of the stabilities of types of alkene**

Alkenes are stabilized by:

- **conjugation**—anything that can conjugate with an alkene stabilizes it, including carbonyl groups, nitriles, benzene rings, RO or RNH groups, or another alkene. This is the strongest stabilization and usually dominates.

- **substitution**—alkyl groups stabilize alkenes weakly by \(\sigma\)-conjugation, so the more alkyl groups the better—but beware of the next point.

- **lack of steric hindrance**—as alkenes are planar, large, especially branched, substituents arranged syn on the alkene destabilize it, so tetra-substituted alkenes are usually less stable than tri-substituted ones. If the alkene is in a stable ring, this does not apply as the ring substituents have to be syn for the ring to exist.

**Alkene stereochemistry: a summary of terminology**

The official way of assigning alkene geometry is \(E\) and \(Z\). \(Z\) comes from the German zusammen (together) and means that the two highest ranking substituents (by the same rules introduced in Chapter 14 for \(R\) and \(S\)) are on the same side of the alkene. The letter \(Z\) is a particularly unfortunate choice as it looks like a \(trans\) alkene! \(E\) comes from the German entgegen (opposed) and means that the two highest ranking substituents are on opposite sides (and, if anything also unfortunately looks like a \(cis\) alkene). The green numbers in the structures below show the relative rankings of the two substituents at each end of the alkene and the consequent assignment of geometry.

![Structures showing \(E\) and \(Z\) configurations](image)

But possibly the most common method of referring to alkene geometry is to use \(cis\) and \(trans\). These require a diagram as they refer to two substituents being on the same (\(cis\)) or opposite (\(trans\)) sides of the alkene. There is no specified order of priority and the speaker chooses substituents that are significant to the structure or to the reaction under discussion, making this a more flexible and versatile way of talking about alkenes. We have assigned \(cis\) and \(trans\) to the alkenes above to indicate their most important features, but notice the ambiguities that may occur.

- This terminology may be used only for alkenes and not for three-dimensional stereochemistry.
- Much the same are the terms \(syn\) and \(anti\), introduced on p. 317 and used for relative three-dimensional stereochemistry. There is no formal definition, and a diagram is needed for clarity.
Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Review of spectroscopic methods

This is the first of two review chapters on spectroscopic methods taken as a whole. In Chapter 31 we shall tackle the complete identification of organic compounds, including the vital aspect of stereochemistry, introduced in Chapters 14 and 17. In this chapter we gather together some of the ideas introduced in previous chapters on spectroscopy and mechanism, and show how they are related. We shall explain the structure of the chapter as we go along.

There are three reasons for this chapter

1. To review the methods of structure determination we met in Chapters 3 and 13, to extend them a little further, and to consider the relationships between them.
2. To show how these methods may be combined to determine the structure of unknown molecules.
3. To provide useful tables of data for you to use when you are attempting to determine unknown structures.

The main tables of data appear at the end of the chapter (pp. 423–425) so that they are easy to refer to when you are working on problems. You may also wish to look at them, along with the tables in the text, as you work through this chapter.

We shall deal with points 1 and 2 together, looking first at the interplay between the chemistry of the carbonyl group (as discussed in Chapters 10 and 11) and spectroscopy, solving some structural problems, then moving on to discuss, for example, NMR of more...
than one element in the same compound, doing some more problems, and so on. We hope that the lessons from each section will help in your overall understanding of structure solving. The first section deals with the assignment of carbonyl compounds to their various classes.

**Spectroscopy and carbonyl chemistry**

Chapters 10 and 11 completed our systematic survey of carbonyl chemistry, and we can now put together chemistry and spectroscopy on this most important of all functional groups.

We have divided carbonyl compounds into two main groups:

1. **aldehydes** (RCHO) and **ketones** (R¹COR²)
2. **acids** (RCO₂H) and their derivatives (in order of reactivity):
   - **acid chlorides** (RCOCl)
   - **anhydrides** (RCO₂COR)
   - **esters** (R¹CO₂R²)
   - **amides** (RCONH₂, R¹CONMe₂, etc.).

Which spectroscopic methods most reliably distinguish these two groups? Which help us to separate aldehydes from ketones? Which allow us to distinguish the various acid derivatives? Which offer the most reliable evidence on the chemistry of the carbonyl group? These are the questions we tackle in this section.

**Distinguishing aldehydes and ketones from acid derivatives**

The most consistently reliable method for doing this is ¹³C NMR. It doesn’t much matter whether the compounds are cyclic or unsaturated or have aromatic substituents, they all give carbonyl ¹³C shifts in about the same regions. There is a selection of examples on the facing page which we now discuss. First, look at the shifts arrowed into the carbonyl group on each structure. All the aldehydes and ketones fall between 191 and 208 ppm regardless of structure, whereas all the acid derivatives (and these are very varied indeed!) fall between 164 and 180 ppm. These two sets do not overlap and the distinction is easily made. Assigning the spectrum of the ketoacid in the margin, for example, is easy.

> ¹³C NMR distinguishes acid derivatives from aldehydes and ketones

The carbonyl carbons of all aldehydes and ketones resonate at about 200 ppm, while acid derivatives usually resonate at about 175 ppm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbonyl group</th>
<th>¹³C NMR shifts (ppm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aldehydes</td>
<td>195–205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ketones</td>
<td>195–215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acids</td>
<td>170–185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acid chlorides</td>
<td>165–170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acid anhydrides</td>
<td>165–170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esters</td>
<td>165–175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amides</td>
<td>165–175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
More on these structures

Aldehydes and ketones

The first aldehyde is vanillin, which comes from the vanilla pod and gives the characteristic vanilla flavour in, for example, ice cream. Vanilla is the seed pod of a South American orchid. 'Vanilla essence' is made with synthetic vanillin and tastes slightly different because the vanilla pod contains other flavour components in small quantities. The second aldehyde is retinal. As you look at this structure your eyes use the light reaching them to interconvert cis and trans retinal in your retina to create nervous impulses (see also Chapter 27).

The two ketones are all flavour compounds too. The first, (–)-carvone, is the chief component (70%) of spearmint oil. Carvone is an interesting compound: in Chapter 14 you met the mirror-image isomers known as enantiomers, and (–)-carvone’s mirror image, (+)-carvone, is the chief component (35%) of dill oil. Our taste can tell the difference, although an NMR machine can’t and both carvones have identical NMR spectra. See Chapter 14 for more detail! The second ketone is ‘raspberry ketone’, which is largely responsible for the flavour of raspberries. It is entirely responsible for the flavour of some ‘raspberry’ foods. The signal for the aromatic carbon joined to OH is at 154.3 ppm (in the 100–150 ppm region because it is an unsaturated carbon atom joined to oxygen) and cannot possibly be confused with the ketone signal at 208.8 ppm. Both ketones have C=O shifts at about 200 ppm, and both lack any signals in the proton NMR of δ > 8.

Acid derivatives

Lipoic acid uses its S–S bond in redox reactions (Chapter 42), while shikimic acid is an intermediate in the formation of compounds with benzene rings, such as phenylalanine, in living things (Chapter 42). Salicylic acid’s acetate ester is aspirin, which is, of course, like the last example ibuprofen, a painkiller.

The first acid chloride is a popular reagent for the synthesis of acetate esters and you have seen its reactions in Chapter 10. We have chosen three cyclic anhydrides as examples because they are all related to an important reaction (the Diels–Alder reaction), which you will meet in Chapter 34.

The first ester, methyl methacrylate, is a bulk chemical. It is the monomer whose polymerization gives Perspex, the rigid transparent plastic used in windows and roofs. The second ester is an important local anaesthetic used for minor operations.

One amide is the now-familiar DMF, but the other is a tetrapeptide and so contains one carboxylic acid group at the end and three amide groups. Although the four amino acids in this peptide are identical (alanine, Ala for short), the carbon NMR faithfully picks up four different C=O signals, all made different by being different distances from the end of the chain.
The distinction can be vital in structural problems. The symmetrical alkyne diol below cyclizes in acid with Hg(II) catalysis to a compound having, by proton NMR, the structural fragments shown. The product is unsymmetrical in that the two CMe₂ groups are still present, but they are now different. In addition, the chemical shift of the CH₂ group shows that it is next to C=O but not next to oxygen. This leaves us with two possible structures. One is an ester and one a ketone. The C=O shift is 218.8 ppm and so there is no doubt that the second structure is correct.

Distinguishing aldehydes from ketones is simple by proton NMR

Now look at the first two groups, the aldehydes and ketones. The two aldehydes have smaller carbonyl shifts than the two ketones, but they are too similar for this distinction to be reliable. What distinguishes the aldehydes very clearly is the characteristic proton signal for CHO at 9–10 ppm. So you should identify aldehydes and ketones by C=O shifts in carbon NMR and then separate the two by proton NMR.

Distinguishing acid derivatives by carbon NMR is difficult

Now examine the other panels on p. 409. The four carboxylic acids are all important biologically or medicinally. Their C=O shifts are very different from each other as well as from those of the aldehydes or ketones.

The next five compounds (two acid chlorides and three anhydrides) are all reactive acid derivatives, and the five esters and amides below them are all unreactive acid derivatives and yet the C=O shifts of all ten compounds fall in the same range. The C=O chemical shift is obviously not a good way to check on chemical reactivity.

What the carbon NMR fails to do is distinguish these types of acid derivative. There is more variation between the carboxylic acids on display than between the different classes of acid derivatives. This should be obvious if we show you some compounds containing two acid derivatives. Would you care to assign these signals?

No, neither would we. In each case the difference between the carbonyl signals is only a few ppm. Although acid chlorides are extremely reactive in comparison with esters or amides, the electron deficiency at the carbon nucleus as measured by deshielding in the NMR spectrum evidently does not reflect this. Carbon NMR reliably distinguishes acid derivatives as a group from aldehydes and ketones as another group but it fails to distinguish even very reactive (for
Acid derivatives are best distinguished by infrared

A much better measure is the difference in IR stretching frequency of the C=O group. We discussed this in Chapter 10 (p. 206), where we noted a competition between conjugation by lone-pair electron donation into the carbonyl from OCOR, OR, or NH₂ and inductive withdrawal from the C=O group because of the electronegativity of the substituent. Conjugation donates electrons into the π* orbital of the π bond and so lengthens and weakens it. The C=O bond becomes more like a single bond and its stretching frequency moves towards the single-bond region, that is, it goes down. The inductive effect removes electrons from the π orbital and so shortens and strengthens the π bond. It becomes more like a full double bond and moves up in frequency.

These effects are balanced in different ways according to the substituent. Chlorine is poor at lone-pair electron donation (its lone pair is in a large 3p orbital and overlaps badly with the 2p orbital on carbon) but strongly electron-withdrawing so acid chlorides absorb at high frequency, almost in the triple-bond region. Anhydrides have an oxygen atom between two carbonyl groups. Inductive withdrawal is still strong but conjugation is weak because the lone pairs are pulled both ways. Esters have a well-balanced combination with the inductive effect slightly stronger (oxygen donates from a compatible 2p orbital but is very electronegative and so withdraws electrons strongly as well). Finally, amides are dominated by conjugation as nitrogen is a much stronger electron donor than oxygen because it is less electronegative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid chlorides</th>
<th>Anhydrides</th>
<th>Esters</th>
<th>Amides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Acid chloride" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Anhydride" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Ester" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Amide" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inductive effect dominates</td>
<td>tug-of-war for lone pair; inductive effect dominates</td>
<td>inductive effect slightly dominates</td>
<td>conjugation strongly dominates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1815 cm⁻¹</td>
<td>two peaks: ~1790, 1810 cm⁻¹</td>
<td>1745 cm⁻¹</td>
<td>~ 1650 cm⁻¹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conjugation with π electrons or lone pairs affects IR C=O stretches

We need to see how conjugation works when it is with a π bond rather than with a lone pair. This will make the concept more general as it will apply to aldehydes and ketones as well as to acid groups. How can we detect whether an unsaturated carbonyl compound is conjugated or not? Well, compare these two unsaturated aldehydes.
The key differences are the frequency of the C=O stretch (lowered by 40 cm⁻¹ by conjugation) and the strength (that is, the intensity) of the C=C stretch (increased by conjugation) in the IR. In the ¹³C NMR, C3 in the conjugated enal is moved out of the alkene region just into the carbonyl region, showing how electron-deficient this carbon atom must be. In the proton NMR there are many effects but the downfield shift of the protons on the alkene, especially C3 (again!), is probably the most helpful.

Because the infrared carbonyl frequencies follow such a predictable pattern, it is possible to make a simple list of correlations using just three factors. Two are the ones we have been discussing—conjugation (frequency-lowering) and the inductive effect (frequency-raising). The third is the effect of small rings and this we next need to consider in a broader context.

**Small rings introduce strain inside the ring and higher s character outside it**

Cyclic ketones can achieve the perfect 120° angle at the carbonyl group only if the ring is at least six-membered. The smaller rings are ‘strained’ because the orbitals have to overlap at a less than ideal angle.

For a four-membered ring, the actual angle is 90°, so there is 120° − 90° = 30° of strain at the carbonyl group. The effects of this strain on five-, four-, and three-membered rings are shown here.
But why should strain raise the frequency of a carbonyl group? It is evidently shortening and strengthening the C=O bond as it moves it towards the triple-bond region (higher frequency), not towards the single-bond region (lower frequency). In a six-membered ring, the sp² orbitals forming the σ framework around the carbonyl group can overlap perfectly with the sp³ orbitals on neighbouring carbon atoms because the orbital angle and the bond angle are the same. In a four-membered ring the orbitals do not point towards those on the neighbouring carbon atoms, but point too far out, effectively forcing the bonds to be bent and lowering the degree of overlap.

Ideally, we should like the orbitals to have an angle of 90° as this would make the orbital angle the same as the bond angle. In theory it would be possible to have a bond angle of 90° if we used pure p orbitals instead of sp² hybrid orbitals. The diagram in the margin shows this hypothetical situation. If we did this, we should leave a pure s orbital for the σ bond to oxygen. This extreme is not possible, but a compromise is. Some more p character goes into the ring bonds—maybe they become s°p³—so that they can approach the 90° angle needed, and the same amount of extra s character goes into the σ bond to oxygen. The more s character there is in the orbital, the shorter it gets as s orbitals are much smaller than p orbitals.

**Simple calculations of C=O stretching frequencies in IR spectra**

The best way is to relate all our carbonyl frequencies to those for saturated ketones (1715 cm⁻¹). We can summarize what we have just learned in a table.

Notice in this simple table (for full details you should refer as usual to a specialist book) that the adjustment ‘30 cm⁻¹’ appears quite a lot (~30 cm⁻¹ for both alkene and aryl, for example), that the increment for small rings is 35 cm⁻¹ each time (30 to 65 cm⁻¹ and then 65 to 100 cm⁻¹), and that the extreme effects of Cl and NH₂ are +85 and ~85 cm⁻¹, respectively. These effects are additive. If you want to estimate the C=O frequency of a proposed structure, just add or subtract all the adjustments to 1715 cm⁻¹ and you will get a reasonable result.

**Effects of substituents on IR carbonyl frequencies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Group</th>
<th>C=O stretch, cm⁻¹</th>
<th>Frequency change, cm⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inductive effect</td>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>+ 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OCOR</td>
<td>1765, 1815</td>
<td>+ 50, +100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OR</td>
<td>1745</td>
<td>+ 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>1730</td>
<td>+ 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conjugation</td>
<td>C=C</td>
<td>1685</td>
<td>~30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aryl</td>
<td>1685</td>
<td>~30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NH₂</td>
<td>1630</td>
<td>~85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring strain</td>
<td>5-membered ring</td>
<td>1745</td>
<td>+ 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4-membered ring</td>
<td>1780</td>
<td>+ 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-membered ring</td>
<td>1815</td>
<td>+ 100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Difference between stretching frequency of C=O and stretching frequency of a typical saturated ketone (1715 cm⁻¹).*
Try this out with the five-membered unsaturated (and conjugated) lactone (cyclic ester) in the margin. We must add 30 cm\(^{-1}\) for the ester, subtract 30 cm\(^{-1}\) for the double bond, and add 30 cm\(^{-1}\) for the five-membered ring. Two of those cancel out, leaving just 1715 + 30 = 1745 cm\(^{-1}\). These compounds absorb at 1740–1760 cm\(^{-1}\). Not bad!

**NMR spectra of alkynes and small rings**

This idea that small rings have more p character in the ring and more s character outside the ring also explains the effects of small rings on proton NMR shifts. These hydrogens, particularly on three-membered rings, resonate at unusually high fields, between 0 and 1 ppm in cyclopropanes instead of the 1.3 ppm expected for CH\(_2\) groups, and may even appear at negative \(\delta\) values. High p character in the framework of small rings also means high s character in C–H bonds outside the ring and this will mean shorter bonds, greater shielding, and small \(\delta\) values.

### Three-membered rings and alkynes

You have also seen the same argument used in Chapter 8 to justify the unusual acidity of C–H protons on triple bonds (such as alkynes and HCN), and alluded to in Chapter 3 to explain the stretching frequency of the same C–H bonds. Like alkynes, three-membered rings are also unusually easy to deprotonate in base. Here is an example where deprotonation occurs at a different site in two compounds identical except for a C–C bond closing a three-membered ring. The first is an ortholithiation of the type discussed in Chapter 24.

Now what about the NMR spectra of alkynes? By the same argument, protons on alkynes ought to appear in the NMR at quite high field because the C atom is sp hybridized, so it makes its \(\sigma\) bonds with sp orbitals (i.e. 50% s character). Protons on a typical alkene have \(\delta_H\) about 5.5 ppm, while the proton on an alkyne comes right in the middle of the protons on saturated carbons at about \(\delta_H\) 2–2.5 ppm. This is rather a large effect just for increased s character and some of it is probably due to better shielding by the triple bond, which surrounds the linear alkyne with \(\pi\) bonds without a nodal plane.

This means that the carbon atoms also appear at higher field than expected, not in the alkene region but from about \(\delta_C\) 60–80 ppm. The s character argument is important, however, because shielding can’t affect IR stretching frequencies, yet C≡C–H stretches are strong and at about 3300 cm\(^{-1}\), just right for a strong C–H bond.

A simple example is the ether 3-methoxyprop-1-yne. Integration alone allows us to assign the spectrum and the 1H signal at 2.42 ppm, the highest field signal, is clearly the alkyne proton. Notice also that it is a triplet and that the OCH\(_2\) group is a doublet. This \(J_{HH}\) is small (about 2 Hz) and, although there is nothing like a letter ‘W’ in the arrangement of the bonds, coupling of this kind is often found in alkynes.
A more interesting example comes from the base-catalysed addition of methanol to buta-1,3-diyne (diacetylene). The compound formed has one double and one triple bond and the $^{13}$C NMR shows clearly the greater deshielding of the double bond.

You may have noticed that we have drawn the double bond with the cis (Z) configuration. We know that this is true because of the proton NMR, which shows a 6.5 Hz coupling between the two alkene protons (much too small for a trans coupling; see p. 295). There is also the longer-range coupling ($^2J = 2.5$ Hz) just described and even a small very long-range coupling ($^5J = 1$ Hz) between the alkyne proton and the terminal alkene proton.

**Proton NMR distinguishes axial and equatorial protons in cyclohexanes**

Coupling is a through-bond phenomenon, as we know from the couplings in cis and trans alkenes, where trans alkenes have much larger coupling constants as their orbitals are perfectly parallel. Another case of perfectly parallel orbitals occurs with trans-diaxial protons in cyclohexanes. Typical coupling constants are 10–12 Hz for trans-diaxial protons, but much smaller (2–5 Hz) for axial/equatorial and equatorial/equatorial protons.

This makes assignment of conformation easy. The simple ester below has a triple triplet for the black H, with two large coupling constants (8.8 Hz) that must be to axial protons (green) and two small coupling constants (3.8 Hz) that must be to equatorial Hs (brown). This is possible only if the black H is axial and the ester group must therefore be equatorial. The acetal ester on the right is very different: it is a simple triplet with two small coupling constants (3.2 Hz), which is too small for an axial/axial coupling. The only possibility therefore is that the black proton is equatorial, and one of the 3.2 Hz couplings is to its equatorial neighbour, and the other to its axial neighbour. The ester group must be axial in this compound.

**Interactions between different nuclei can give enormous coupling constants**

We have looked at coupling between hydrogen atoms and you may have wondered why we have ignored coupling between other NMR active nuclei. Why does $^{13}$C not cause similar couplings? In this section we are going to consider not only couplings between the same kind of nuclei,
such as two protons, called **homonuclear coupling**, but also coupling between different nuclei, such as a proton and a fluorine atom or $^{13}$C and $^{31}$P, called **heteronuclear coupling**.

Two nuclei are particularly important, $^{19}$F and $^{31}$P, since many organic compounds contain these elements and both are at essentially 100% natural abundance and have spin $I = 1/2$. We shall start with organic compounds that have just one of these nuclei and see what happens to both the $^1$H and the $^{13}$C spectra. In fact, it is easy to find a $^{19}$F or a $^{31}$P atom in a molecule because these elements couple to all nearby carbon and hydrogen atoms. Since they can be directly bonded to either, $^1J$ coupling constants such as $^1J_{CF}$ or $^1J_{PH}$ become possible, as well as the more ‘normal’ couplings such as $^2J_{CF}$ or $^2J_{PH}$, and these $^1J$ coupling constants can be enormous.

We shall start with a simple phosphorus compound, the dimethyl ester of phosphorous acid (H$_3$PO$_3$). There is an uncertainty about the structure of both the acid and its esters. They could exist as $P$(III) compounds with a lone pair of electrons on phosphorus, or as $P$(V) compounds with a $P$=$O$ double bond.

In fact, dimethyl phosphite has a $^1$H doublet with the amazing coupling constant of 693 Hz: on a 250 MHz machine the two lines are over 2 ppm apart and it is easy to miss that they are two halves of the same doublet. This can only be a $^1J_{PH}$ as it is so enormous. The compound has to have a $P$–$H$ bond and the $P$(V) structure is correct. The coupling to the protons of the methyl group is much smaller but still large for a three-bond coupling ($^3J_{PC}$ of 18 Hz).

Next, consider the phosphonium salt you met at the end of Chapter 11 for use in the Wittig reaction, turning aldehydes and ketones to alkenes. It has a $^2J_{PH}$ of 18 Hz. There is no doubt about this structure—it is just an illustration of coupling to phosphorus. There is coupling to phosphorus in the carbon spectrum too: the methyl group appears at $\delta$C 10.6 ppm with a $^1J_{PC}$ of 57 Hz, somewhat smaller than typical $^2J_{PH}$. We haven’t yet talked about couplings to $^{13}$C: we shall now do so.

**Coupling in carbon NMR spectra**

We shall use coupling with fluorine to introduce this section. Fluorobenzenes are good examples because they have a number of different carbon atoms all coupled to the fluorine atom.

The carbon directly joined to fluorine (the **ipso** carbon) has a very large $^1J_{CF}$ value of about 250 Hz. More distant coupling is evident too: all the carbons in the ring couple to the fluorine in PhF with steadily diminishing $^1J$ values as the carbons become more distant.

Trifluoroacetic acid is an important strong organic acid (Chapter 8) and a good solvent for $^1$H NMR. The carbon atom of the CF$_3$ group is coupled equally to all the three fluorines and so appears as a quartet with a large $^1J_{CF}$ of 283 Hz, about the same as in PhF. Even the carbonyl
The group is also a quartet, although the coupling constant is much smaller ($J_{CF}$ is 43 Hz). Notice too how far downfield the CF$_3$ carbon atom is!

### 13C NMR spectrum

50 MHz

trifluoroacetic acid

283 Hz

### Coupling between protons and 13C

In view of all this, you may ask why we don’t apparently see couplings between 13C and 1H in either carbon or proton spectra. In proton spectra the answer is simple: we don’t see coupling to 13C because of the low abundance (1.1%) of 13C. Most protons are bonded to 12C: only 1.1% of protons are bonded to 13C. If you look closely at proton spectra with very flat baselines, you may see small peaks either side of strong peaks at about 0.5% peak height. These are the 13C ‘satellites’ for those protons that are bonded to 13C atoms.

As an example, look again at the 500 MHz 1H NMR spectrum of heptan-2-one that we saw on p. 294. When the baseline of this spectrum is vertically expanded, the 13C satellites may be seen. The singlet due to the methyl protons is actually in the centre of a tiny doublet due to the 1% of protons coupling to 13C. Similarly, each of the triplets in the spectrum is flanked by two tiny triplets. The two tiny triplets on either side make up a doublet of triplets with a large $J_{CH}$ coupling constant to the 13C (around 130 Hz) and smaller $J_{CH}$ coupling to the two equivalent protons.

13C satellites are usually lost in the background noise of the spectrum and need concern us no further. You do, however, see coupling in the 1H NMR spectrum with compounds deliberately labelled with 13C because the 13C abundance can then approach 100%. The same Wittig reagent we saw a moment ago shows a 3H doublet of doublets with the typically enormous $J_{CH}$ of 135 Hz when labelled with pure 13C in the methyl group.

$\delta_H$ 3.25 (3H, dd, $J_{CH}$ 135, $J_{FH}$ 18 Hz)
But this begs the question—where is the 135 Hz coupling in the $^{13}$C NMR? Surely we should see this coupling to the protons in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum too?

**Why is there no coupling consistently seen in carbon spectra?**

We get the singlets consistently seen in carbon spectra because of the way we record the spectra. The values of $^{1}$J$_{CH}$ are so large that, if we recorded $^{13}$C spectra with all the coupling constants, we would get a mass of overlapping peaks. When run on the same spectrometer, the frequency at which $^{13}$C nuclei resonate turns out to be about a quarter of that of the protons. Thus a 400 MHz machine (remember that the magnet strength is usually described by the frequency at which the protons resonate) gives $^{13}$C spectra at 100 MHz. Coupling constants ($^{1}$J$_{CH}$) of 100–250 Hz would cover 2–5 ppm and a CH$_3$ group with $^{1}$J$_{CH}$ of about 125 Hz would give a quartet covering nearly 8 ppm (see the example on the previous page).

Since the proton-coupled $^{13}$C spectrum can so easily help us to distinguish CH$_3$, CH$_2$, CH, and quaternary carbons, you might wonder why they are not used more. The above example was chosen very carefully to illustrate proton-coupled spectra at their best. Unfortunately, this is not a typical example. More usually, the confusion from overlapping peaks makes this just not worthwhile. So $^{13}$C NMR spectra are recorded while the whole 10 ppm proton spectrum is being irradiated with a secondary radio frequency source. The proton energy levels are equalized by this process and all coupling disappears. Hence the singlets we are used to seeing.

For the rest of this chapter we shall not be introducing new theory or new concepts; we shall be applying what we have told you to a series of examples where spectroscopy enables chemists to identify compounds.

**Identifying products spectroscopically**

**An ambiguous reaction product**

In Chapter 3 we gave an example of a compound which was misidentified because an O atom and an N atom were mistaken for one another, even in the X-ray crystal structure.
Another famous case of ambiguity between structures containing O or N arises in the identification of the product of addition of hydroxylamine (NH$_2$OH) to a simple enone. This condensation reaction gives a compound with the formula C$_6$H$_{11}$NO. But what is its structure? We can first of all think about what we expect to happen: it is not always necessary to do this in order to identify a structure, but it can help. Nitrogen is more nucleophilic than oxygen so we might expect it to add first. But will it add directly to the carbonyl group or in the conjugate fashion we shall describe in Chapter 22? Either way, an intermediate will be formed that can cyclize.

The two possible isomeric products were once the subject of a long-running controversy, but with IR and proton NMR spectra of the product, doubt vanished. The IR showed no NH stretch. The NMR showed no alkene proton but did have a CH$_2$ group at 2.63 ppm. Only the second structure is possible.

We need to look now at a selection of problems of different kinds to show how the various spectroscopic methods can cooperate in structure determination.

**Reactive intermediates can be detected by spectroscopy**

Some intermediates proposed in reaction mechanisms look so unlikely that it is comforting if they can be isolated and their structure determined. We feel more confident in proposing an intermediate if we are sure that it can really be made. Of course, this is not necessarily evidence that the intermediate is actually formed during reactions and it certainly does not follow that the failure to isolate a given intermediate disproves its involvement in a reaction. We shall use ketene as an example.

Ketene looks pretty unlikely! It is CH$_2$=C=O with two π bonds (C=C and C=O) to the same carbon atom. The orbitals for these π bonds must be orthogonal because the central carbon atom is sp hybridized with two linear σ bonds and two p orbitals at right angles both to the σ bonds and to each other. Can such a molecule exist? When acetone vapour is heated to very high temperatures (700–750 °C) methane is given off and ketene is supposed to be the other product. What is isolated is a ketene dimer (C$_4$H$_4$O$_2$) and even the structure of this is in doubt as two reasonable structures can be written.

The spectra fit the ester structure well, but not the more symmetrical diketone structure at all. There are three types of proton (cyclobuta-1,3-dione would have just one), with allylic coupling between one of the protons on the double bond and the CH$_2$ group in the ring. The carbonyl group has the shift (185 ppm) of an acid derivative (not that of a ketone, which would be about 200 ppm) and all four carbons are different.
Ozonolysis of ketene dimer gives a very unstable compound that can be observed only at low temperatures (–78 °C or below). It has two carbonyl bands in the IR and reacts with amines to give amides, so it looks like an anhydride (Chapter 10). Can it be the previously unknown cyclic anhydride of malonic acid?

The two carbonyl bands are of high frequency, as would be expected for a four-membered ring—using the table on p. 413 we estimate 1715 + 50 cm⁻¹ (for the anhydride) + 65 cm⁻¹ (for the four-membered ring) = 1830 cm⁻¹. Both the proton and the carbon NMR are very simple: just a 2H singlet at 4.12 ppm, shifted downfield by two carbonyls, a C=O group at 160 ppm, right for an acid derivative, and a saturated carbon shifted downfield but not as much as a CH₂O group.

All this is reasonably convincing, and is confirmed by allowing the anhydride to warm to –30 °C, at which temperature it loses CO₂ (detected by the ¹³C peak at 124.5 ppm) and gives another unstable compound with the strange IR frequency of 2140 cm⁻¹. Could this be monomeric ketene? It’s certainly not either of the possible ketene dimers as we know what their spectra are like, and this is quite different: just a 2H singlet at 2.24 ppm and ¹³C peaks at 194.0 and, remarkably, 2.5 ppm. It is indeed monomeric ketene.

Squares and cubes: molecules with unusual structures

Some structures are interesting because we believe they can tell us something fundamental about the nature of bonding while others are a challenge because many people argue that they cannot be made. What do you think are the prospects of making cyclobutadiene, a conjugated four-membered ring, or the hydrocarbons tetrahedrane and cubane, which have, respectively, the shapes of the perfectly symmetrical Euclidean solids, the tetrahedron and the cube?

With four electrons, cyclobutadiene is anti-aromatic—it has 4n instead of 4n + 2 electrons. You saw in Chapter 7 that cyclic conjugated systems with 4n electrons (cyclooctatetraene, for example) avoid being conjugated by puckering into a tub shape. Cyclobutadiene cannot do this: it must be more or less planar, and so we expect it to be very unstable. Tetrahedrane has four fused three-membered rings. Although the molecule is tetrahedral in shape, each carbon atom is nowhere near a tetrahedron, with three bond angles of 60°. Cubane has six fused four-membered rings and is again highly strained.

In fact, cubane has been made, cyclobutadiene has a fleeting existence but can be isolated as an iron complex, and a few substituted versions of tetrahedrane have been made. The most convincing evidence that you have made any of these three compounds would be the extreme simplicity of the spectra. Each has only one kind of hydrogen and only one kind of carbon. They all belong to the family (CH)ₙ.

Cubane has a molecular ion in the mass spectrum at 104, correct for C₈H₈, only CH stretches in the IR at 3000 cm⁻¹, a singlet in the proton NMR at 4.0 ppm, and a single line in the carbon
NMR at 47.3 ppm. It is a very symmetrical molecule and a stable one in spite of all those four-
membered rings.

Stable compounds with a cyclobutadiene and a tetrahedrane core can be made if each hydrogen
atom is replaced by a t-buty group. The very large groups round the edge of the molecule
repel each other and hold the inner core tightly together. Now another difficulty arises—it is
rather hard to tell the compounds apart. They both have four identical carbon atoms in the
core and four identical t-butyl groups round the edge. The starting material for a successful
synthesis of both was the tricyclic ketone below identified by its strained C=O stretch and
partly symmetrical NMR spectra. When this ketone was irradiated with UV light (indicated by
‘hv’ in the scheme), carbon monoxide was evolved and a highly symmetrical compound
(t-BuC)₄ was formed. But which compound was it?

The story is made more complicated (but in the end easier!) by the discovery that this com-
 pound on heating turned into another very similar compound. There are only two possible
structures for (t-BuC)₄, so clearly one compound must be the tetrahedrane and one the cyclo-
butadiene. The problem simplifies with this discovery because it is easier to distinguish two
 possibilities when you can make comparisons between two sets of spectra. Here both com-
 pounds gave a molecular ion in the mass spectrum, neither had any interesting absorptions in
the IR, and the proton NMRs could belong to either compound as they simply showed four
identical t-Bu groups. So did the carbon NMR, of course, but it showed the core too. The first
 product had only saturated carbon atoms, while the second had a signal at 152.7 ppm for the
unsaturated carbons. The tetrahedrane is formed from the tricyclic ketone on irradiation but it
isomerizes to the cyclobutadiene on heating.

Identifying compounds from nature

The next molecules we need to know how to identify are those discovered from nature—
natural products. These often have biological activity and many useful medicines have been
discovered this way. We shall look at a few examples from different fields. The first is the sex
pheromone of the Trinidad butterfly Lycorea ceres ceres. The male butterflies start courtship by
emitting a tiny quantity of a volatile compound. Identification of this type of compound is
very difficult because of the minute amounts available but this compound was crystallized
and gave enough for a mass spectrum and an IR. The highest peak in the mass spectrum was
at 135. This is an odd number so we might have one nitrogen atom and a possible composition
of C₈H₁₀ON. The IR showed a carbonyl peak at 1680 cm⁻¹. With only this meagre information,
the first proposals were for a pyridine aldehyde.

Eventually a little more compound (6 mg!) was available and a proton NMR spectrum was
run. This showed at once that this structure was wrong. There was no aldehyde proton and
only one methyl group. More positive information was the pair of triplets showing a −CH₂CH₂−
unit between two electron-withdrawing groups (N and C=O?) and the pair of doublets for
neighbouring protons on an aromatic ring, although the chemical shift and the coupling
constant are both rather small for a benzene ring.

If we look at what we have got so far, we see that we have accounted for four carbon atoms
in the methyl and carbonyl groups and the −CH₃CH₂− unit. This leaves only four carbon
atoms for the aromatic ring. We must use nitrogen too as the only possibility is a pyrrole
ring. Our fragments are now those shown below (the black dotted lines show joins to
another fragment). These account for all the atoms in the molecule and suggest structures
such as these.
Now we need to use the known chemical shifts and coupling constants for these sorts of molecules. An N–Me group would normally have a larger chemical shift than 2.2 ppm so we prefer the methyl group on a carbon atom of the pyrrole ring. Typical shifts and coupling constants around pyrroles are shown below. Chemists do not, of course, remember these numbers; we look them up in tables. Our data, with chemical shifts of 6.09 and 6.69 ppm and a coupling constant of 2.5 Hz, clearly favour hydrogen atoms in the 2 and 3 positions, and suggest this structure for the sex pheromone, which was confirmed by synthesis and is now accepted as correct.

### Tables

The final section of this chapter contains some tables of NMR data, which we hope you will find useful in solving problems. In Chapter 13 there were a few guides to chemical shift—summaries of patterns that you might reasonably be expected to remember. But we have left the main selections of hard numbers—that you are not expected to remember—until now.

There are a few comments to explain the tables, but you will probably want to use this section as reference rather than bedtime reading. The first four tables give detailed values for various kinds of compounds and the final table gives a simple summary. We hope that you will find this last table particularly useful.

#### Effects of electronegativity

This table shows how the electronegativity of the atom attached directly to a methyl group affects the shifts of the CH₃ protons (δₖ) and the CH₃ carbon atom (δₓ) in their NMR spectra.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Electronegativity</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>δₖ, ppm</th>
<th>δₓ, ppm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>CH₃–Li</td>
<td>−1.94</td>
<td>−14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>CH₃–SiMe₃</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>CH₃–I</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>−23.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>CH₃–SMe</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>18.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>CH₃–NH₂</td>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>26.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>CH₃–Cl</td>
<td>3.06</td>
<td>24.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>CH₃–OH</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>50.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>CH₃–F</td>
<td>4.27</td>
<td>75.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Effects of functional groups

Many substituents are more complicated than just a single atom and electronegativity is only part of the story. We need to look at all the common substituents and see what shifts they cause relative to the CH skeleton of the molecule. Our zero really ought to be at about 0.9 ppm for protons and at 8.4 ppm for carbon, that is, where ethane (CH3–CH3) resonates, and not at the arbitrary zero allocated to Me4Si. In the table below we give such a list. The reason for this is that the shifts (from Me4Si) themselves are not additive but the shift differences (from 0.9 or 8.4 ppm) are.

Chemical shifts of methyl groups bonded to functional groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional group</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>δH, ppm</th>
<th>δH – 0.9, ppm</th>
<th>δC, ppm</th>
<th>δC – 8.4, ppm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>silane</td>
<td>Me4Si</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>–0.9</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>–8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkane</td>
<td>Me–Me</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkene</td>
<td>Me2C=CMe2</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzene</td>
<td>Me–Ph</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkyne</td>
<td>Me–C=CR</td>
<td>1.86</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitride</td>
<td>Me–CN</td>
<td>2.04</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>–6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acid</td>
<td>Me–CO2H</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ester</td>
<td>Me–CO2Me</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amide</td>
<td>Me–CONHMe</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>22.3</td>
<td>13.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ketone</td>
<td>Me2C=O</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>30.8</td>
<td>21.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aldehyde</td>
<td>Me–CHO</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>30.9</td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfide</td>
<td>Me2S</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfoxide</td>
<td>Me2S=O</td>
<td>2.71</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>32.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfone</td>
<td>Me2SO3</td>
<td>3.14</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>44.4</td>
<td>36.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amine</td>
<td>Me–NH3</td>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amide</td>
<td>MeCONH–Me</td>
<td>2.79</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>17.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitro</td>
<td>Me–NO2</td>
<td>4.33</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>53.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ammonium salt</td>
<td>Me2N+Cl+</td>
<td>3.20</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>58.0</td>
<td>49.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alcohol</td>
<td>Me–OH</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>2.60</td>
<td>50.3</td>
<td>44.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ether</td>
<td>Me–OBu</td>
<td>3.32</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>58.5</td>
<td>50.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enol ether</td>
<td>Me–OPh</td>
<td>3.78</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>46.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ester</td>
<td>Me–CO2Me</td>
<td>3.78</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>51.5</td>
<td>47.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phosphonium salt</td>
<td>Ph3P+=Me</td>
<td>3.22</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*R=CH2OH; compound is but-2-yn-1-ol.

The effects of groups based on carbon (the methyl group is joined directly to another carbon atom) appear in entries 2 to 11. All the electron-withdrawing groups based on carbonyl and cyanide have about the same effect (1.1–1.3 ppm downfield shift from 0.9 ppm). Groups based on nitrogen (Me–N bond) show a similar progression through amine, ammonium salt, amide, and nitro compound (entries 15–18). Finally, all the oxygen-based groups (Me–O bond) show large shifts (entries 19–22).
Effects of substituents on CH$_2$ groups

It is more difficult to give a definitive list for CH$_2$ groups as they have two substituents. In the table below we set one substituent as phenyl (Ph) just because so many compounds of this kind are available, and give the actual shifts relative to PhCH$_2$CH$_3$ for protons (2.64 ppm) and PhCH$_2$CH$_3$ for carbon (28.9 ppm), again comparing the substituent with the CH skeleton.

If you compare the shifts caused on a CH$_2$ group by each functional group in the table below with the shifts caused on a CH$_3$ group by the same functional group in the table on p. 423 you will see that they are broadly the same.

Chemical shifts of CH$_2$ groups bonded to phenyl and functional groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional group</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>$\delta_\text{H, ppm}$</th>
<th>$\delta_\text{H} - 2.64, \text{ppm}$</th>
<th>$\delta_\text{C, ppm}$</th>
<th>$\delta_\text{C} - 28.9, \text{ppm}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. silane</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$SiMe$_3$</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>27.5</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hydrogen</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$H</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. alkane</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-CH$_3$</td>
<td>2.64</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. benzene</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-Ph</td>
<td>3.95</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>41.9</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. alkene</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-CH=CH$_2$</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>41.2</td>
<td>12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. nitrile</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-CN</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. acid</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-CO$_2$H</td>
<td>3.71</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>41.1</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ester</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-CO$_2$Me</td>
<td>3.73</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>41.1</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. amide</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-CONEt$_2$</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ketone</td>
<td>(PhCH$_3$)$_2$C=O</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>49.1</td>
<td>20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. thiol</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-SH</td>
<td>3.69</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. sulfide</td>
<td>(PhCH$_3$)$_2$S</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>35.5</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. sulfoxide</td>
<td>(PhCH$_3$)$_2$S=O</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>57.2</td>
<td>28.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. sulfone</td>
<td>(PhCH$_3$)$_2$SO$_2$</td>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>57.9</td>
<td>29.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. amine</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-NH$_3$</td>
<td>3.82</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>46.5</td>
<td>17.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. amide</td>
<td>HCONH-CH$_2$Ph</td>
<td>4.40</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>42.0</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. nitro*</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-NO$_2$</td>
<td>5.20</td>
<td>2.56</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>52.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. ammonium salt</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-NMe$_3$</td>
<td>4.5/4.9</td>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>26.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. alcohol</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-OH</td>
<td>4.54</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>65.3</td>
<td>36.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. ether</td>
<td>(PhCH$_3$)$_2$O</td>
<td>4.52</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>72.1</td>
<td>43.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. enol ether</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-OAr$_4$</td>
<td>5.02</td>
<td>2.38</td>
<td>69.9</td>
<td>41.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. ester</td>
<td>MeCO$_2$-CH$_2$Ph</td>
<td>5.10</td>
<td>2.46</td>
<td>68.2</td>
<td>39.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. phosphonium salt</td>
<td>Ph$_3$P-CH$_2$Ph</td>
<td>5.39</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. chloride</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-Cl</td>
<td>4.53</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>46.2</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. bromide</td>
<td>PhCH$_2$-Br</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>33.5</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Compound is (4-chloromethylphenoxymethyl)benzene.
Shifts of a CH group

We can do the same with a CH group, and in the left-hand side of the table below we take a series of isopropyl compounds, comparing the measured shifts with those for the central proton (CHMe$_2$) or carbon (CHMe$_2$) of 2-methylpropane. We set two of the substituents as methyl groups and just vary the third. Yet again the shifts for the same substituent are broadly the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>Effects on $C_\alpha$ (Me$_2$CH–X), ppm</th>
<th>Effects on $C_\beta$ (Me$_2$CH–X), ppm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\delta_H$</td>
<td>$\delta_H - 1.68$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>-14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>-0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH=CH$_2$</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>2.90</td>
<td>1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHO</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMe</td>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO$_2$H</td>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO$_2$Me</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>0.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONH$_2$</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>2.71</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH$_2$</td>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>1.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO$_3$</td>
<td>4.68</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH</td>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>1.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si-Pr</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OH</td>
<td>4.01</td>
<td>2.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oi-Pr</td>
<td>3.65</td>
<td>1.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$O_2CMe$</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>3.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>4.19</td>
<td>2.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br</td>
<td>4.29</td>
<td>2.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>4.32</td>
<td>2.36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*There is coupling between the CH and the Me$_2$ groups in the proton NMR.

Shifts in proton NMR are easier to calculate and more informative than those in carbon NMR

This final table, on p. 426, helps to explain something we have avoided so far. Correlations of shifts caused by substituents in proton NMR really work very well. Those in $^{13}$C NMR work much less well and more complicated equations are needed. More strikingly, the proton shifts often seem to fit better with our understanding of the chemistry of the compounds. There are two main reasons for this.

First, the carbon atom is much closer to the substituent than the proton. In the compounds in the table on p. 423 the methyl carbon atom is directly bonded to the substituent, while the protons are separated from it by the carbon atom of the methyl group. If the functional group is based on a large electron-withdrawing atom like sulfur, the protons will experience a simple inductive electron withdrawal and have a proportional downfield shift. The carbon atom is close enough to the sulfur atom to be shielded as well by the lone-pair electrons in the large 3sp$^3$ orbitals. The proton shift caused by S in Me$_2$S is about the same (1.23 ppm) as that caused by a set of more or less equally strong electron-withdrawing groups like CN (1.14 ppm) or ester (1.18 ppm). The carbon shift (9.7 ppm) is less than that caused by an ester (11.2 ppm) but much more than that caused by CN, which actually shifts the carbon upfield (–6.6 ppm) relative to the effect of a methyl group.
Second, the carbon shift is strongly affected not only by what is directly joined to that atom ($\alpha$ position), but also by what comes next ($\beta$ position). The right-hand half of the table on p. 424 shows what happens to methyl shifts when substituents are placed on the next carbon atom. There is very little effect on the proton spectrum: all the values are much less than the shifts caused by the same substituent on a methyl group in the table on p. 423. Carbonyls give a downfield shift of about 1.2 ppm when directly joined to a methyl group, but only of about 0.2 ppm when one atom further away. By contrast, the shifts in the carbon spectrum are of the same order of magnitude in the two tables, and the $\beta$ shift may even be greater than the $\alpha$ shift! The CN group shifts a directly bonded methyl group upfield (~6.6 ppm) when directly bonded, but downfield (14.4 ppm) when one atom further away. This is an exaggerated example, but the point is that these carbon shifts must not be used to suggest that the CN group is electron-donating in the $\alpha$ position and electron-withdrawing in the $\beta$ position. The carbon shifts are erratic but the proton shifts give us useful information and are worth understanding as a guide to both structure determination and the chemistry of the compound.

When you use this table and are trying to interpret, say, a methyl group at 4.0 ppm then you have no problem. Only one group is attached to a methyl group so you need a single shift value—it might be a methyl ester, for example. But when you have a CH$_2$ group at 4.5 ppm and you are interpreting a downfield shift of 3.2 ppm you must beware. There are two groups attached to each CH$_2$ group and you might need a single shift of about 3 ppm (say, an ester again) or two shifts of 1.5 ppm, and so on. The shifts are additive.

### Approximate additive functional group (X) shifts in 1H NMR spectra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Functional group X</th>
<th>$^1$H NMR shift difference, ppm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>alkene (–C=CR)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>alkyne (–C≡C)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>phenyl (–Ph)</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>nitrile (–C≡N)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>aldehyde (–CHO)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ketone (–COR)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>acid (–CO$_2$H)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ester (–CO$_2$R)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>amide (–CONH$_2$)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>amine (–NH$_2$)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>amide (–NHCOR)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>nitro (–NO$_2$)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>thiol (–SH)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>sulfide (–SR)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>sulfone (–SO$_2$R)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>alcohol (–OH)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>ether (–OR)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>aryl ether (–OAr)</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>ester (–O$_2$R)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>fluoride (–F)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>chloride (–Cl)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>bromide (–Br)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>iodide (–I)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*To be added to 0.9 ppm for MeX, 1.3 ppm for CH$_2$X, or 1.7 ppm for CHX.

### Further reading


### Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Electrophilic addition to alkenes

Connections

Building on
- Elimination reactions that form alkenes ch17
- Stability of carbocations, and their reactions during the S_{\text{N}}1 reaction ch15

Arriving at
- Reactions of simple, unconjugated alkenes with electrophiles
- Converting C=C double bonds to other functional groups by electrophilic addition
- How to predict which end of an unsymmetrical alkene reacts with the electrophile
- Stereoselective, stereospecific, and regioselective reactions of alkenes
- How to make alkyl halides, epoxides, alcohols, and ethers through electrophilic addition
- How to cleave an alkene into two carbonyl compounds

Looking forward to
- Electrophilic addition to alkenes carrying oxygen substituents (enols and enolates) ch20
- Electrophilic addition to aromatic rings ch21
- Nucleophilic additions to electron-deficient alkenes ch22
- Reactions of alkenes by pericyclic reactions ch34
- Rearrangement reactions ch36

Alkenes react with bromine

Bromine (Br_{2}) is brown, and one of the classic tests for alkenes is that they turn a brown aqueous solution of bromine colourless. Alkenes decolourize bromine water: alkenes react with bromine. The product of the reaction is a dibromoalkane, and the reaction on the right shows what happens with the simplest alkene, ethylene (ethene).

In order to understand this reaction, and the other similar ones you will meet in this chapter, you need to think back to Chapter 5, where we started talking about reactivity in terms of nucleophiles and electrophiles. As soon as you see a new reaction, you should immediately think to yourself, ‘Which reagent is the nucleophile; which reagent is the electrophile?’ Evidently, neither the alkene nor bromine is charged, but Br_{2} has a low-energy empty orbital (the Br–Br \sigma^*), and is therefore an electrophile. The Br–Br bond is exceptionally weak, and bromine reacts with many nucleophiles like this.

In the reaction with ethylene, the alkene must be the nucleophile, and its HOMO is the C=C \pi bond. Other simple alkenes are similarly electron-rich and they typically act as nucleophiles and attack electrophiles.

- Simple, unconjugated alkenes are nucleophilic and react with electrophiles.
When it reacts with Br₂, the alkene’s filled π orbital (the HOMO) will interact with the bromine’s empty σ* orbital to give a product. But what will that product be? Look at the orbitals involved.

The highest electron density in the π orbital is right in the middle, between the two carbon atoms, so this is where we expect the bromine to attack. The only way the π HOMO can interact in a bonding manner with the σ* LUMO is if the Br₂ approaches end-on—and this is how the product forms. The symmetrical three-membered ring product is called a bromonium ion.

How shall we draw curly arrows for the formation of the bromonium ion? We have a choice. The simplest way is just to show the middle of the π bond attacking Br–Br, mirroring what we know happens with the orbitals.

But there is a problem with this representation: because only one pair of electrons is moving, we can’t form two new C–Br bonds. We should really then represent the C–Br bonds as partial bonds. Yet the bromonium ion is a real intermediate with two proper C–Br bonds (the box in the margin presents evidence of this). So an alternative way of drawing the arrows is to involve a lone pair on bromine.

We think the first way represents more accurately the key orbital interaction involved, and we shall use that one, but the second is acceptable too.

Of course, the final product of the reaction isn’t the bromonium ion. The second step of the reaction follows on at once: the bromonium ion is itself an electrophile, and it reacts with the bromide ion lost from the bromine in the addition step. We can now draw the correct mechanism for the whole reaction, which is termed electrophilic addition to the double bond, because bromine (Br₂) is an electrophile. Overall, the molecule of bromine adds across the double bond of the alkene.
Attack of Br on a bromonium ion is a normal S_N2 substitution—the key orbitals involved are the HOMO of the bromide and the σ* of one of the two carbon–bromine bonds in the strained three-membered ring. As with all S_N2 reactions, the nucleophile maintains maximal overlap with the σ* by approaching in line with the leaving group but from the opposite side, resulting in inversion at the carbon that is attacked. The stereochemical outcome of more complicated reactions (discussed below) is important evidence for this overall reaction mechanism. You may wonder why the bromine attacks a carbon atom in the bromonium ion rather than the positively charged bromine atom. Well, in fact, it can do this as well, but the result is just regeneration of bromine and the alkene: the first step of the reaction is reversible.

Another way of thinking about bromonium ions
You can think of the bromonium ion as a carbocation that has been stabilized by interaction with a nearby bromine atom. You have seen a similar effect with oxygen—this ‘oxonium ion’ was an intermediate, for example, in the S_N1 substitution of MOM chloride on p. 338 of Chapter 15. The bromine is one atom further away but, with bromine being lower in the periodic table and having more diffuse lone pairs, it can have a similar stabilizing effect, despite the angle strain in a three-membered ring.

The two types of stabilization are not equivalent: the cation and the bromonium ion are different molecules with different shapes, while the two representations of the oxonium ion are just that—they aren’t different molecules. This stabilization of an adjacent cationic centre by a heteroatom with at least one lone pair to form a three-membered ring intermediate is not restricted to bromine or the other halogens, but is also an important aspect of the chemistry of compounds containing oxygen, sulfur, or selenium, as you will see in Chapter 27.

Oxidation of alkenes to form epoxides
The electrophilic addition of bromine to alkenes is an oxidation. The starting alkene is equivalent in oxidation level to an alcohol, but the product has two carbons at the alcohol oxidation level—the elimination reactions of dibromides to give alkynes that you met in Chapter 17 (p. 398) should convince you of this. There are a number of other oxidants containing electrophilic oxygen atoms that react with nucleophilic alkenes to produce epoxides (oxiranes). You can view epoxides as the oxygen analogues of bromonium ions, but unlike most bromonium ions they are quite stable.

The simplest epoxide, ethylene oxide (or oxirane itself), can be produced on the tonne scale by the direct oxidation of ethene with oxygen at high temperature over a silver catalyst. These conditions are hardly suitable for general laboratory use, and the most commonly used epoxidizing agents are peroxo-carboxylic acids. These peroxo-acids (or peracids) have an extra oxygen atom between the carbonyl group and their acidic hydrogen—they are esters of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2). They are rather less acidic than carboxylic acids because their conjugate base is no longer stabilized by delocalization into the carbonyl group. But they are electrophilic at the oxygen shown here in green because attack there by a nucleophile displaces carboxylate, a good leaving group. The LUMO of a peroxo-carboxylic acid is the σ* orbital of the weak O–O bond.

You have met epoxides being formed by intramolecular substitution reactions, but the oxidation of alkenes is a much more important way of making them. Their alternative name derives from a systematic way of naming rings: ‘ox’ for the O atom, ‘ir’ for the three-membered ring, and ‘ane’ for full saturation. You may meet oxetane (remember the oxaphosphetane in the Wittig reaction, Chapter 11, p. 238) and, while THF is never called oxolane, dioxolane is another name for five-membered cyclic acetals.
Making peroxy-acids

Peroxy-acids are prepared from the corresponding acid anhydride and high-concentration hydrogen peroxide. In general, the stronger the parent acid, the more powerful the oxidant (because the carboxylate is a better leaving group): one of the most powerfully oxidizing peroxy-acids is peroxy-trifluoroacetic acid. Hydrogen peroxide, at very high concentrations (> 80%), is potentially explosive and difficult to transport.

\[
\text{trifluoroacetic anhydride} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}_2} \text{peroxy-trifluoroacetic acid} + \text{trifluoroacetic acid}
\]

The most commonly used peroxy-acid is known as \textit{m}-CPBA, or \textit{meta}-chloroperoxybenzoic acid. \textit{m}-CPBA is a safely crystalline solid. Here it is, reacting with cyclohexene, to give the epoxide in 95% yield.

\[
\text{H}\xrightarrow{\text{Cl}}\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{O}}\text{H} + \text{HOCl}
\]

95% yield

As you would expect, the nucleophilic alkene attacks the peroxy-acid from the centre of the HOMO, its \(\pi\) orbital. First, here is the orbital involved.

\[
\text{bonding interaction}
\]

HOMO = filled \(\pi\) orbital

LUMO = empty \(\sigma^*\) orbital

And now the curly arrow mechanism. The essence of the mechanism is attack by the \(\pi\) orbital of the alkene on the weak, polarized, electrophilic O–O bond, which we can represent most simply as shown in the margin. But, in the real reaction, a proton (shown in brown in this mechanism) has transferred from the epoxide oxygen to the carboxylic acid by-product. You can represent this all in one step if you draw the arrows carefully. Start with the nucleophilic \(\pi\) bond: send the electrons on to oxygen, breaking O–O and forming a new carbonyl bond. Use those electrons to pick up the proton, and use the old O–H bond’s electrons to make the second new C–O bond. Don’t be put off by the spaghetti effect—each arrow is quite logical when you think the mechanism through. The transition state for the reaction makes the bond-forming and -breaking processes clearer.

\[
\text{transition state for epoxidation}
\]

Epoxidation is stereospecific

Because both new C–O bonds are formed on the same face of the alkene’s \(\pi\) bond, the geometry of the alkene is reflected in the stereochemistry of the epoxide. The reaction is therefore stereospecific. Here are two examples demonstrating this: \textit{cis}-alkene gives \textit{cis}-epoxide and \textit{trans}-alkene gives \textit{trans}-epoxide.
More substituted alkenes epoxidize faster

Peracids give epoxides from alkenes with any substitution pattern (except ones conjugated with electron-withdrawing groups, for which a different reagent is required: see Chapter 22), but the chart below shows how the rate varies according to the number of substituents on the double bond.

Not only are more substituted double bonds more stable (as you saw in Chapter 17), but they are more nucleophilic. We showed you in Chapter 15 that alkyl groups are electron-donating because they stabilize carbocations. This same electron-donating effect raises the energy of the HOMO of a double bond and makes it more nucleophilic. You can think of it this way: every C–C or C–H bond that can allow its σ orbital to interact with the π orbital of the alkene will raise the HOMO of the alkene slightly, as shown by the energy level diagram. The more substituents the alkene has, the more the energy is raised.

The differences in reactivity between alkenes of different substitution patterns can be exploited to produce the epoxide only of the more reactive alkene of a pair, provided the supply of oxidant is limited. In the first example below, a tetrasubstituted alkene reacts in preference to a cis disubstituted one. Even when two alkenes are equally substituted, the effect of epoxidizing one of them is to reduce the nucleophilicity of the second (the new oxygen atom is electron-withdrawing, and dienes are in general more nucleophilic than alkenes; see below). The monoepoxide of cyclopentadiene is a useful intermediate and can be prepared by direct epoxidation of the diene under buffered conditions.
Nitroperoxybenzoic acid is dangerously explosive, and it is sufficiently reactive to produce this remarkable and highly strained spiro epoxide (oxaspiropentane), which was made in order to study its reactions with nucleophiles.

\[ \text{Dimethylidoxirane and carcinogenic epoxides} \]

Certain fungi, especially the mould Aspergillus sp. (which grows on damp grain), produce a group of the most carcinogenic substances known to man, the aflatoxins. One of the toxins (which are, of course, entirely natural) is metabolized in the human body to the epoxide shown below. Some chemists in the USA decided to synthesize this epoxide to investigate its reaction with DNA, hoping to discover exactly how it causes cancer. The epoxide is far too reactive to be made using a peroxy-acid (because of the acidic by-product), and instead these chemists used a reagent called dimethylidoxirane.

Dimethylidoxirane is made by oxidizing acetone with KHSO₅, but is too reactive to be stored for more than a short period in solution. After it has transferred an oxygen atom in the epoxidation step, only innocuous acetone is left, as shown by the mechanism below.

The liver is home to a wide variety of enzymes that carry out oxidation—the aim is to make unwanted water-insoluble molecules more polar and therefore soluble by peppering them with hydroxyl groups. Unfortunately, some of the intermediates in the oxidation processes are highly reactive epoxides that damage DNA. This is the means by which aromatic hydrocarbons may cause cancer, for example. Note that it is very hard to oxidize benzene by chemical (rather than biological) methods.
Electrophilic addition to unsymmetrical alkenes is regioselective

In epoxidation reactions, and in electrophilic additions of bromine, each end of the alkene is joined to the same sort of atom (Br or O). But in the addition reactions of other electrophiles, H–Br for example, there is a choice: which carbon gets the H and which gets the Br? You will need to be able to predict, and to explain, reactions of unsymmetrical alkenes with HBr, but we should start by looking at the reaction with a symmetrical alkene—cyclohexene. This is what happens. When H–Br reacts as an electrophile, it is attacked at H, losing Br\(^-\). Unlike a bromine atom, a hydrogen atom can’t form a three-membered ring cation—it has no lone pairs to use. So electrophilic addition of a proton (which is what this is) to an alkene gives a product best represented as a carbocation. This carbocation rapidly reacts with the bromide ion just formed. Overall, H–Br adds across the alkene. This is a useful way of making simple alkyl bromides.

Here are two more syntheses of alkyl bromides, but this time we need to ask our question about which end of the alkene is attacked because the alkenes are unsymmetrical (they have different substituents at each end). First, the results.

In each case, the bromine atom ends up on the more substituted carbon, and the mechanism explains why. There are two possible outcomes for protonation of styrene by HBr, but you should immediately be able to spot which is preferred, even if you don’t know the outcome of the reaction. Protonation at one end gives a stabilized benzylic cation, with its positive charge delocalized into the benzene ring.

Protonation at the other end would give a highly unstable primary cation, and therefore does not take place.

You get the same result with isobutene (2-methylpropene): the more stable tertiary cation leads to the product; the alternative primary cation is not formed.
Markovnikov’s rule
There is a traditional guideline called Markovnikov’s rule for electrophilic additions of H–X to alkenes, which can be stated as: ‘The hydrogen ends up attached to the carbon of the double bond that had more hydrogens to start with.’ We don’t suggest you learn this rule, although you may hear it referred to. As with all ‘rules’ it is much more important to understand the reason behind it. For example, you can now predict the product of the reaction below. With all due respect, Markovnikov couldn’t.

The protonation of alkenes to give carbocations is quite general. The carbocations may trap a nucleophile, as you have just seen, or they may simply lose a proton to give back an alkene. This is just the same as saying the protonation is reversible, but it needn’t be the same proton that is lost. A more stable alkene may be formed by losing a different proton, which means that acid can catalyse the isomerization of alkenes—both between Z and E geometrical isomers and between regioisomers.

E1 and isomerization
The isomerization of alkenes in acid is probably a good part of the reason why E1 eliminations in acid generally give E alkenes. In Chapter 17 we explained how kinetic control could lead to E alkenes: interconversion of E and Z alkenes under the conditions of the reaction allows the thermodynamic product to prevail. This was also discussed in Chapter 12.

Other nucleophiles may also intercept the cation, for example alkenes can be treated with HCl to form alkyl chlorides, with HI to form alkyl iodides, and with H₂S to form thiols.
**Electrophilic addition to dienes**

Earlier in the chapter you saw the epoxidation of a diene to give a monoepoxide: only one of the double bonds reacted. This is quite a usual observation: dienes are more nucleophilic than isolated alkenes. This is easy to explain by looking at the relative energy of the HOMO of an alkene and a diene—this discussion is on p. 138 of Chapter 7. Dienes are therefore very susceptible to protonation by acid to give a cation. This is what happens when 2-methylbuta-1,3-diene (isoprene) is treated with acid. Protonation gives a stable delocalized allylic cation.

![Diagram of protonation and subsequent reactions](image)

Why protonate this double bond and not the other one? The cation you get by protonating the other double bond is also allylic, but it cannot benefit from the additional stabilization from the methyl group because the positive charge is not delocalized on to the carbon carrying the methyl.

If the acid is HBr, then nucleophilic attack by Br on the cation follows. The cation is attacked at the less hindered end to give the important compound prenyl bromide. This is very much the sort of reaction you met in Chapter 15—it is the second half of an $S_n1$ substitution reaction on an allylic compound.

![Diagram of nucleophilic attack and product formation](image)

Overall, the atoms H and Br are added to the ends of the diene system. The same appears to be the case when dienes are brominated with Br$_2$.

![Diagram of bromination reaction](image)

Changing the conditions slightly gives a different outcome. If the reaction is done at lower temperatures, the bromine just adds across one of the double bonds to give a 1,2-dibromide.

![Diagram of 1,2-dibromide formation](image)

This compound turns out to be the kinetic product of the bromination reaction. The 1,4-dibromide is formed only when the reaction is heated, and is the thermodynamic product. The mechanism is electrophilic attack on the diene to give a bromonium ion, which bromide opens to give the dibromide. We have shown the bromide attacking the more substituted end of the bromonium ion—although we can’t know this for sure (attack at either end gives the same product), you are about to see (in the next section) evidence that this is the usual course of reactions of unsymmetrical bromonium ions.
This 1,2-dibromide can still react further because it can undergo nucleophilic substitution. Bromide is a good nucleophile and a good leaving group and, with an allylic system like this, an $S_N1$ reaction can take place in which both the nucleophile and the leaving group are bromide. The intermediate is a cation, but here the carbocation is disguised as the bromonium ion because bromine's lone pair can help stabilize the positive charge. Bromide can attack where it left, returning to starting material, but it can also attack the far end of the allylic system, giving the 1,4-dibromide. The steps are all reversible at higher temperatures, so the fact that the 1,4-dibromide is formed under these conditions must mean it is more stable than the 1,2-dibromide. It is not hard to see why: it has a more substituted double bond and the two large bromine atoms are further apart.

Unsymmetrical bromonium ions open regioselectively

We ignored the issue of symmetry in the alkene when we discussed the bromination of alkenes because even unsymmetrical alkenes give the same 1,2-dibromides, whichever way the bromide attacks the bromonium ion.

But when a bromination is done in a nucleophilic solvent—water or methanol, for example—solvent molecules compete with the bromide to open the bromonium ion. As you know, alcohols are much worse nucleophiles than bromide but, because the concentration of solvent is so high (remember—the concentration of water in water is 55 M), the solvent gets there first most of the time. This is what happens when isobutene is treated with bromine in methanol. An ether is formed by attack of methanol only at the more substituted end of the bromonium ion. When a functional group can react in more than one position, the choice is known as the regioselectivity of the reaction. We will return to the concept of regioselectivity in Chapter 24.

Methanol is attacking the bromonium ion where it is most hindered, so there must be some effect at work more powerful than steric hindrance. One way of looking at this is to reconsider our assumption that bromonium ion opening is an $S_N2$ process. Here, it hardly looks $S_N2$. We have a tertiary centre, so naturally you expect $S_N1$, via the cation below. But we have already said that cations like this can be stabilized by formation of the three-membered bromonium ion and, if we let this happen, we have to attack the bromonium ion, which gets us back to where we started: an $S_N2$ mechanism!
The answer to the conundrum is that substitution reactions don’t always go by pure SN1 or pure SN2 mechanisms: sometimes the mechanism is somewhere in between. Perhaps the leaving group starts to leave, creating a partial positive charge at carbon, which is intercepted by the nucleophile. This provides a good explanation of what is going on here. The bromine begins to leave and a partial positive charge builds up at carbon. The departure of bromine can get to a more advanced state at the tertiary end than at the primary end because the substituents stabilize the build-up of positive charge. A more accurate representation of this bromonium ion is shown in the margin, with one C–Br bond longer than the other and more polarized than the other.

The nucleophile now has a choice: does it attack the more accessible, primary end of the bromonium ion, or does it attack the more charged end with the weaker C–Br bond? Here, the latter is clearly the faster reaction. The transition state has considerable positive charge on carbon and is known as a loose SN2 transition state.

The products of bromination in water are called bromohydrins. They can be treated with base, which deprotonates the alcohol. A rapid intramolecular SN2 reaction follows: bromide is expelled as a leaving group and an epoxide is formed. This can be a useful alternative synthesis of epoxides avoiding peroxy-acids.

Rates of bromination of alkenes
The pattern you saw for epoxidation with peracids (more substituted alkenes react faster) is followed by bromination reactions too. The bromonium ion is a reactive intermediate, so the rate-determining step of the brominations is attack of bromine. The scale below shows the effect on the rate of reaction with bromine in methanol of increasing the number of alkyl substituents from none (ethylene) to four. Each additional alkene substituent produces an enormous increase in rate. The degree of branching (Me versus n-Bu versus t-Bu) within the substituents has a much smaller, negative effect (probably of steric origin) as does the geometry (E versus Z) and substitution pattern (1,1-disubstituted versus 1,2-disubstituted) of the alkene.
The regioselectivity of epoxide opening can depend on the conditions

Although epoxides, like bromonium ions, contain strained three-membered rings, they require either acid catalysis or a powerful nucleophile to react well. Compare these two reactions of a 1,1,2-trisubstituted epoxide. They are nucleophilic substitutions related to those we introduced in Chapter 15 (p. 352) but in that chapter we carefully avoided discussing epoxides of the unsymmetrical variety. In this example, the regiochemistry reverses with the reaction conditions. Why?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{reaction of epoxide with} & \quad \text{reaction of epoxide with} \\
\text{basic methoxide} & \quad \text{acidic methanol} \\
\text{attack at less substituted end} & \quad \text{attack at more substituted end}
\end{align*}
\]

We’ll start with the acid-catalysed reaction because it is more similar to the examples we have just been discussing—opening happens at the more substituted end. Protonation by acid produces a positively charged intermediate that bears a passing resemblance to the corresponding bromonium ion. The two alkyl groups make possible a build-up of charge on the carbon at the tertiary end of the protonated epoxide, and methanol attacks here, just as it does in the bromonium ion. You could think of the protonated leaving group ‘pulling’ the otherwise unreactive methanol in towards the reactive centre.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{MeOH, } & \quad \text{MeOH, } \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{MeO}^{-} & \quad \text{MeOH, HCl} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{MeO} \\
\text{MeOH, } & \quad \text{MeOH, HCl} \\
\text{attack at} & \quad \text{attack at more substituted end}
\end{align*}
\]

In base there can be no protonation of the epoxide and no build-up of positive charge. Without protonation, the epoxide oxygen is a poor leaving group, and leaves only if ‘pushed’ by a strong nucleophile: the reaction becomes pure SN2. Steric hindrance becomes the controlling factor and methoxide attacks only the primary end of the epoxide.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{nucleophile approaches less hindered end} & \quad \text{nucleophile approaches less hindered end} \\
\text{S_{n}2 transition state} & \quad \text{S_{n}2 transition state}
\end{align*}
\]

This example makes the matter look deceptively clear cut. But with epoxides, regioselectivity is not as simple as this because, even with acid catalysts, S_{n}2 substitution at a primary centre is fast. For example, Br⁻ in acid attacks the epoxide below mainly at the less substituted end, and only 24% of the product is produced by the ‘cation-stabilized’ pathway. It is very difficult to override the preference of epoxides unsubstituted at one end to react at that end.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HBr, } & \quad \text{HBr, H₂O} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{HO} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{76%} & \quad \text{24%}
\end{align*}
\]

For most substitution reactions of epoxides, then, regioselectivity is much higher if you give in to the epoxide’s desire to open at the less substituted end and enhance it with a strong nucleophile under basic conditions.
Electrophilic additions to alkenes can be stereospecific

Although they really belong in Chapter 15 with other nucleophilic substitution reactions, we included the last few examples of epoxide-opening reactions here because they have many things in common with the reactions of bromonium ions. Now we are going to make the analogy work the other way by looking at the stereochemistry of the reactions of bromonium ions, and hence at the stereoselectivity of electrophilic additions to alkenes. We shall first remind you of an epoxide reaction from Chapter 15, where you saw this.

\[
\text{Me}_2\text{NH} + \text{HO} + \text{Me}_2\text{N} \rightarrow \text{Me}_2\text{N} \quad \text{SN}_2
\]

The epoxide ring opening is stereospecific: it is an \( \text{SN}_2 \) reaction and it goes with inversion. The epoxide starts on the top face of the ring and the amino group therefore ends up on the bottom face. In other words, the two groups end up \( \text{anti} \) or \( \text{trans} \) across the ring. You now know how to make this epoxide—you would use cyclopentene and \( m \)-CPBA, and in two steps you could ‘add’ an OH group and a \( \text{Me}_2\text{N} \) group \( \text{anti} \) across the double bond.

Now we can move on to look at the stereochemistry of electrophilic addition to alkenes.

**Electrophilic addition to alkenes can produce stereoisomers**

When cyclohexene is treated with bromine in carbon tetrachloride, the racemic \( \text{anti-1,2-di-bromocyclohexane} \) is obtained exclusively.

\[
\text{H} + \text{Br}_2 \rightarrow \text{Br} + \text{Br} \quad \text{CCl}_4 \text{ solvent}
\]

The result is no surprise if we think first of the formation of the bromonium ion that is opened with inversion in an \( \text{SN}_2 \) reaction.

Bromination of alkenes is stereospecific because the geometry of the starting alkene determines which product diastereoisomer is obtained. We couldn’t demonstrate this with cyclohexene because only a \( Z \) double bond is possible in a six-membered ring. But bromination or chlorination of \( Z \) and \( E \)-2-butene in acetic acid produces a single diastereoisomer in each case, and they are different from each other. \( \text{Anti} \) addition occurs in both cases—more evidence that a bromonium ion is the intermediate.
The stereochemistry of the products is a bit clearer if we redraw them, and in the scheme below the product of each reaction is shown in two different ways. Firstly, the products have been rotated to place the carbon chain in the plane of the paper: in this conformation you can clearly see that there has been an \textit{anti} addition across the \textit{E} double bond. Secondly, the middle bond has been twisted 180° to give an (unrealistically) eclipsed conformation. We show this conformation for two reasons: now you can clearly see that there has been an \textit{anti} addition across the \textit{Z} double bond too. It also makes it quite clear that the product of the \textit{E}-butene bromination is achiral: you can see the plane of symmetry in this conformation, and this is why we haven’t placed (±) signs next to the products from the \textit{E} alkene.

Note that in all three different views of each product the same stereoisomer is represented. There is no change of configuration, only changes of conformation to help you understand what is going on. If you cannot follow any of the ‘redrawing’ steps, make a model. With practice, you will soon learn to manipulate mental models in your head, and to see what happens to substituents when bonds are rotated. Most importantly, don’t let all of this more subtle stereochemical discussion cloud the simple message:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Bromine undergoes \textit{anti} addition to alkenes.
\end{itemize}
Bromonium ions as intermediates in stereoselective synthesis

You will not be surprised to learn that the other nucleophiles (water and alcohols) you saw intercepting bromonium ions earlier in the chapter also do so stereospecifically. The following reaction can be done on a large scale and produces a single diastereoisomer of the product (racemic, of course) because water opens the bromonium ion with inversion.

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}^+ \quad \text{bromonium opens with inversion}
\]

\[
\text{N-Bromosuccinimide (NBS)}
\]

The reagent used to form the bromonium ion here is called \textit{N}-bromosuccinimide, or NBS for short. Unlike the noxious brown liquid bromine, NBS is an easily handled crystalline solid and is perfect for electrophilic addition of bromine to alkenes when the bromonium ion is not intended to be opened by Br\(^-\). It works by providing a very small concentration of Br\(_2\) in solution: a small amount of HBr is enough to get the reaction going and thereafter every addition reaction produces another molecule of HBr, which liberates more Br\(_2\) from NBS. In a sense, NBS is a source of ‘Br\(^+\)’. NBS is known to act as a source of Br\(_2\) because the results of reactions of NBS and of Br\(_2\) in low concentration are identical.

When 1-methylcyclohexene is used as the starting material, there is additionally a question of regioselectivity. The alcohol attacks the more hindered end of the bromonium ion—the end where there can be greatest stabilization of the partial positive charge in the ‘loose S\(_\text{N}2\)’ transition state (see p. 437). This reaction really does illustrate the way in which a mechanism can lie in between S\(_\text{N}1\) and S\(_\text{N}2\). Configurational inversion, indicative of an S\(_\text{N}2\) reaction, happens at a tertiary centre, where you would usually expect S\(_\text{N}1\).
Adding two hydroxyl groups: dihydroxylation

Many important compounds—the carbohydrates, for example—have two hydroxyl groups on adjacent carbon atoms. They are called 1,2-diols. A good way of making a 1,2-diol is to add two hydroxyl groups across a double bond. This can be done in two ways, each of which can give a different diastereoisomer of the product.

The first way uses chemistry you have already met. When a nucleophile opens an epoxide, it generates an alcohol. If the nucleophile is water, the product is the diol. The epoxide opening in an SN2 reaction goes with stereochemical inversion, so in this example the two hydroxyl groups end up on opposite sides of the six-membered ring: the product is an anti diol. The epoxide opening reaction can be done in acid or in base.

To get the syn diol, a completely different method is used, involving the reagent osmium tetroxide, OsO4. OsO4 reacts with alkenes to deliver two hydroxyl groups—one to each end of the double bond—in a single step. Because both groups are delivered at the same time, they are always syn to one another: OsO4 carries out a syn dihydroxylation of the double bond.

The mechanism of the reaction is different from ones you have met before and goes like this: the Os starts as tetrahedral osmium(VIII) and ends up as osmium(VI). The immediate product of the reaction is an osmate ester, but these reactions are carried out in the presence of water, and hydrolysis always follows on fast, giving the diol.

Because Os(VI) is produced in the reaction, and a simple oxidation will restore it to Os(VIII), the most effective version of this reaction makes use of just a catalytic amount of Os(VIII) and a stoichiometric amount of a reoxidant, often the compound NMO, or N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide. In the example below there is only one new chiral centre, so no possibility of diastereoisomers.

Because OsO4 adds two hydroxyl groups to an alkene in a syn fashion, the overall product depends on the geometry of the alkene starting material: it is stereospecific. It is similar to bromination (p. 439) in that respect, although of course bromination is an anti addition. You can see how two different diastereoisomers are produced from different alkenes in these two examples: both dihydroxylations are mechanistically syn, but redrawing the product from the Z alkene in its more extended form reveals anti stereochemistry.
Breaking a double bond completely: periodate cleavage and ozonolysis

Sometimes it can be necessary to cleave a double bond completely, in other words to oxidize not just its $\pi$ bond (as you have seen with Br$_2$ and OsO$_4$) but its $\sigma$ bond too, as shown in the margin. This can be done in two steps using OsO$_4$ in conjunction with the reagent sodium periodate, NaIO$_4$. The diol product forms a periodate ester, which decomposes to give two molecules of aldehyde by a cyclic mechanism similar to that for the OsO$_4$ step. The NaIO$_4$ also reoxidizes the Os(VI) to Os(VIII) so only a catalytic amount of Os is required.

The process proceeds by two successive oxidations—first of the $\pi$, and then the $\sigma$ bond—with different reagents (which can be added in one step or in two—you can use NaIO$_4$ to cleave any diol, whether or not you made it using OsO$_4$). But there is another reagent that will achieve double oxidation in one step: ozone.

Ozone is a symmetrical bent molecule with a central positively charged oxygen atom and two terminal oxygen atoms that share a negative charge. Ozone is unstable, and is generated immediately before use from oxygen (using a device called an ‘ozonizer’) and bubbled into the reaction mixture. Like OsO$_4$, it adds to alkenes by a cyclic mechanism: the product is a five-membered ring with three oxygen atoms. It is extremely unstable and collapses by breaking a weak O–O bond and a C–C $\sigma$ bond, but gains two strong C=O bonds in the process.

The immediate products are a simple aldehyde on the left and a new, rather unstable looking molecule known as a carbonyl oxide on the right. But treatment of this mixture with a very mild reducing agent such as dimethyl sulfide, Me$_2$S, or triphenylphosphine, Ph$_3$P, removes the ‘spare’ oxygen and reveals the two aldehydes.

This cleavage of an alkene by ozone is an important reaction and is known as ozonolysis. Ozonolysis can be used to generate not only aldehydes, but also other functional groups. Completing the reaction with oxidizing agents such as H$_2$O$_2$ will give carboxylic acids, and more powerful reducing agents such as NaBH$_4$ will give alcohols. Here are the overall transformations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ozonolysis of Alkenes to...</th>
<th>1. Ozonolysis</th>
<th>2. Reducing Agent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aldehydes</td>
<td>Me$_2$S</td>
<td>Alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carboxylic Acids</td>
<td>H$_2$O$_2$</td>
<td>Alcohols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohols</td>
<td>NaBH$_4$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ozonolysis of cyclohexenes is particularly useful as it gives 1,6-dicarbonyl compounds that are otherwise difficult to make. In the simplest case we get hexane-1,6-dioic acid (adipic acid), a monomer for nylon manufacture.

**Adding one hydroxyl group: how to add water across a double bond**

In Chapter 17 you saw alkenes being made from alcohols by E1 elimination—dehydration—under acid catalysis. The question we are going to answer in this section is: how can you make this elimination run backwards—in other words, how can you hydrate a double bond?

It is possible on occasion simply to use aqueous acid to do this. The reaction works only if protonation of the alkene can give a stable, tertiary cation. The cation is then trapped by the aqueous solvent.

In general, though, it is difficult to predict whether aqueous acid will hydrate the alkene or dehydrate the alcohol. The method we are about to show you is much more reliable. The key is to use a transition metal to help you out. Alkenes are soft nucleophiles (p. 357) and interact well with soft electrophiles such as transition metal cations. In the margin, for example, is the complex formed between an alkene and mercury(II) cation. The complex should remind you of a bromonium ion, and rightly so because its reactions are similar. Even relatively feeble nucleophiles such as water and alcohols, when used as the solvent, open the ‘mercurinium’ ion and give alcohols and ethers. In the next scheme, the mercury(II) is supplied as mercury(II) acetate, Hg(OAc)$_2$, which we shall represent with two covalent Hg–O bonds. Unsurprisingly, water attacks at the more substituted end of the positively charged mercurinium ion.

We’ve added OH and Hg(II) across the alkene, and the reaction is termed an ‘oxymercuration’. But a problem remains: how to get rid of the metal. The C–Hg bond is very weak and the simplest way to replace Hg with H is by using a reducing agent: NaBH$_4$ works fine.

Below is an example of oxymercuration–demercuration at work. The intermediate mercury compound is not isolated.
Hydration of alkynes

Oxymercuration works particularly well with alkynes. Here are the conditions, and the product, following the analogy of alkene hydration, should be the compound shown at the right-hand end of the scheme below.

But the product isolated from an alkyne oxymercuration is in fact a ketone. You can see why if you just allow a proton on this initial product to shift from oxygen to carbon—first protonate at C then deprotonate at O. C=O bonds are stronger than C=C bonds, and this simple reaction is very fast.

We now have a ketone, but we also still have the mercury. That is no problem when there is a carbonyl group adjacent because any weak nucleophile can remove mercury in the presence of acid, as shown below. Finally, another proton transfer (from O to C again) gives the real product of the reaction: a ketone.

This is a very useful way of making methyl ketones because terminal alkynes can be made using the methods of Chapter 9 (addition of metallated alkynes to electrophiles).

Anticancer compounds

The anthracyclinone class of anticancer compounds (which includes daunomycin and adriamycin) can be made using a mercury(II)-promoted alkyne hydration. You saw the synthesis of alkynes in this class on Chapter 9, where we discussed additions of metallated alkynes to ketones. Here is the final step in a synthesis of the anticancer compound deoxydaunomycinone: the alkyne is hydrated using Hg²⁺ in dilute sulfuric acid to give the final product.
**Hydroboration**

These methods for adding water across a double or triple bond involve cationic intermediates, and always end up putting the new hydroxyl group at the position best able to stabilize a positive charge (see p. 433). By what about addition of water the other way round? How would you do the reaction in the margin for example?

The answer is to make use of yet another element: boron. Boranes, including both BH₃ itself and analogues with one or two alkyl groups, HBR₂ (an important example is shown in the margin), add to alkenes to make a new C–H bond and a new C–B bond by a mechanism we can write like this. The alkene pushes electrons into the boron’s empty p orbital, while the hydrogen transfers onto the alkene.

![Interactive mechanism of hydroboration](image)

Importantly, if the alkene is unsymmetrical, the boron tends to end up on the less substituted carbon atom. This reaction can happen several times so, for example, if you start with an alkene and BH₃, you will typically end up with a trialkylborane:

![Interactive mechanism of hydroboration](image)

So far so good, if you want to make boranes, but we started out this section posing ourselves the problem of adding water across a double bond. This is where a quirk of boron chemistry helps us out. The C–B bond(s) we have just created can be oxidized to C–O bonds by using a mixture of NaOH and H₂O₂. The mixture generates the hydroperoxide anion HO⁻O⁻, which adds to that important empty p orbital on boron. The product is a negatively charged structure, shown below.

![Interactive mechanism of hydroboration](image)

This is not stable, and it can decompose by a mechanism you should look at closely. It is not one which is familiar to you, but it makes sense if you think about it. The O–O bond is weak and can break, losing HO⁻. As it does so, one of the alkyl groups on boron can migrate from B to O, relieving the boron atom of its negative charge, to give the structure shown below.

![Interactive mechanism of hydroboration](image)

We now have the C–O bond where we want it, and all that has to happen is for the hydroxide anion to come back in and displace B from the alcohol product. The product, on protonation, is our alcohol. How can we be sure the correct R group will migrate? Well, if we use BH₃, we will get a trialkyborane, where all three groups on boron are the same, and all three C–B bonds can be oxidized one after another. If we use the HBR₂ reagent 9-BBN, then only the non-cyclic substituent formed in the hydroboration reaction will migrate, selectively giving us the product we want.
To conclude...a synopsis of electrophilic addition reactions

Electrophilic addition to double bonds gives three-membered ring intermediates with \( \text{Br}_2 \), with \( \text{Hg}^{2+} \), and with peroxy-acids (in which case the three-membered rings are stable and are called epoxides). All three classes of three-membered rings react with nucleophiles to give 1,2-difunctionalized products with control over (1) regioselectivity and (2) stereoselectivity. Protonation of a double bond gives a cation, which also traps nucleophiles, and this reaction can be used to make alkyl halides. Some of the sorts of compounds you can make by the methods of this chapter are shown below.

Further reading

Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
We make no apologies for the number of pages we have devoted to carbonyl chemistry. The first reactions you met, in Chapter 6, involved carbonyl compounds. Then in Chapters 9, 10, and 11 we considered different aspects of nucleophilic attack on electrophilic carbonyl compounds. But carbonyl compounds have two opposed sides to their characters. They can be nucleophilic as well: electrophilic attack on aldehydes, ketones, and acid derivatives is a useful reaction too. How can the same class of compound be subject to both nucleophilic and electrophilic attack? The resolution of this paradox is the subject of this chapter, where we shall see that most carbonyl compounds exist in two forms—one electrophilic and one nucleophilic. The electrophilic form is the carbonyl compound itself and the nucleophilic form is called the enol.

Would you accept a mixture of compounds as a pure substance?

You can buy dimedone (5,5-dimethylcyclohexane-1,3-dione) from chemical suppliers. If, as is wise when you buy any compound, you run an NMR spectrum of the compound to check on its purity, you might be inclined to send the compound back. In CDCl₃ solution it is clearly a mixture of two compounds. Overleaf you can see ¹H and ¹³C NMR spectra of the mixture, with the peaks of the dione in red.
The majority of the sample is indeed 5,5-dimethylcyclohexane-1,3-dione. What is the rest? The other component has a similar spectrum and is clearly a similar compound: it has the 6H singlet for the CMe₂ group and the two CH₂ groups at the side of the ring; it also has five signals in its ¹³C NMR spectrum. But it has a broad signal at δ₇ 8.15, which looks like an OH group, and importantly a sharp signal at δ₇ 5.5 in the double-bond region. It also has two different sp² carbon atoms. All this fits the enol structure below.

Tautomerism: formation of enols by proton transfer

An enol is exactly what the name implies: an ene-ol. It has a C=O double bond and an OH group joined directly to it. In the case of dimedone, the enol must be formed by a transfer of a proton from the central CH₂ group of the keto form to one of the OH groups, a reaction known as enolization.

Notice that there is no change in pH—a proton is lost from carbon and gained on oxygen. It is a strange reaction in which little happens: the only change is the transfer of one
proton and the shift of the double bond. Interconversions like this are given the name tautomerism.

**Tautomerism**

Any reaction that simply involves the intramolecular transfer of a proton, and nothing else, is called a tautomerism. Here are two other examples.

![Tautomerism in a carboxylic acid](image1)

![Tautomerism in an imidazole](image2)

This sort of chemistry was discussed in Chapter 8, where the acidity and basicity of atoms were the prime considerations. In the first case the two tautomers are the same and so the equilibrium constant must be exactly 1 (the mixture must be exactly 50:50). In the second case (imidazole-containing compounds appear on p. 178) the equilibrium will lie on one side or the other depending on the nature of R.

---

**Why don’t simple aldehydes and ketones exist as enols?**

When we were looking at the spectra of carbonyl compounds in Chapters 13 and 18 we saw no signs of enols in IR or NMR spectra. Dimedone is exceptional (we will discuss why later) and while any carbonyl compound with protons adjacent to the carbonyl group can enolize, simpler carbonyl compounds like cyclohexanone or acetone have only a trace of enol present under ordinary conditions. The equilibrium lies well over towards the keto form (the equilibrium constant $K$ for acetone enolization is about $10^{-6}$).

This is because the combination of a C=O double bond and an O–H single bond is (slightly) less stable than the combination of a C=O double bond and a C–H single bond. The balance between the bond energies is quite fine. On the one hand, the O–H bond in the enol is a stronger bond than the C–H bond in the keto but, on the other hand, the C=O bond of the ketone is much stronger than the C=C bond of the enol. Some average values for these bonds are shown on the right.

Typical amounts of enols in solution are about one part in $10^5$ for normal ketones. So why do we think they are important? Because enolization is just a proton transfer, it is occurring all the time even though we cannot detect the minute proportion of the enol. Let’s look at the evidence for this statement.

---

**Evidence for the equilibration of carbonyl compounds with enols**

If you dissolve a simple carbonyl compound (for example, 1-phenylpropan-1-one, ‘propiopheneone’) in D$_2$O and run a series of $^1$H NMR spectra over a period of time, the signal for protons next to the carbonyl group very slowly disappears. If the compound is isolated from the solution afterwards, the mass spectrum shows that those hydrogen atoms have been replaced by deuterium atoms: there is a peak at $(M + 1)^+$ or $(M + 2)^+$ instead of at $M^+$.

Enolization usually means losing a proton from C and gaining one at O. But in D$_2$O all of the ‘protons’ are in fact ‘deuterons’ (D$^+$, or 2H$^+$), so initially an enol with an ‘OD’ group forms. This doesn’t matter, though, because when the enol form reverts to the keto form, it loses the D from O. But what does matter is that it also picks up a deuteron instead of a proton at C.

![1-phenyl-1-propanone](image3)

Notice that the double bond in this enol could be either E or Z. It is drawn as Z here, but in reality is probably a mixture of both, although this is irrelevant to the reaction. We shall not be concerned with the geometry of enols in this chapter, but there are some reactions that you will meet in later chapters where it is important, and you need to appreciate that the possibility exists.
The process can now be repeated: either the D or the H could be lost this time, but eventually it is certain that the huge excess of D over H in the solvent will mean that both H atoms adjacent to the carbonyl group are replaced by D.

We can detect this exchange by the slow disappearance of the 2H signal for the protons on the carbon next to the carbonyl group. There are, of course, eight other hydrogen atoms in the molecule but they are not affected by enolization.

**Enolization is catalysed by acids and bases**

Enolization is, in fact, quite a slow process in neutral solution, even in D<sub>2</sub>O (the exchange described above might take place over a period of hours to days at room temperature), and we would catalyse it with acid or base if we really wanted it to happen fast. In the acid-catalysed reaction, the molecule is first protonated on oxygen and then loses a proton from C in a second step. We shall use a different example here to show that aldehydes form enols too, but acid or base will catalyse enolization of any carbonyl compound in the same way.

**Acid-catalysed enolization of an aldehyde**

This is a more detailed mechanism for enolization than those we have been drawing because it shows that something (here a water molecule) must actually be removing the proton from carbon. Although this reaction will occur faster than the uncatalysed enolization, the equilibrium is not changed and we still cannot detect the enol spectroscopically.

In the base-catalysed reaction the C–H proton is removed first by the base, say a hydroxide ion, and the proton added to the oxygen atom in a second step.

**Base-catalysed enolization of an aldehyde**

This is a good mechanism too because it shows that something must remove the proton from carbon and something (here a water molecule—we don’t, of course, have protons available in basic solution) must put the proton on the oxygen atom.

Notice that both of these reactions are genuinely catalytic. You get the proton back again (in the form of H<sub>3</sub>O<sup>+</sup>) at the end of the acid-catalysed mechanism, and you get the hydroxide ion back again at the end of the base-catalysed mechanism.

**The intermediate in the base-catalysed reaction is an enolate ion**

There are some more insights to be gained from the base-catalysed reaction. The intermediate anion is called the **enolate ion**. It is the conjugate base of the enol and can be formed either
directly from the carbonyl compound by the loss of a C–H proton or from the enol by loss of the O–H proton.

The enolate ion is one of those three-atom four-electron systems related to the allyl anion that you met in Chapter 7. The negative charge is mainly on oxygen, the most electronegative atom. We can show this with curly arrows using the simplest enolate possible (from \(\text{MeCHO}\)).

The enolate is a delocalized system, with negative charge carried on both C and O—we use a double-headed conjugation arrow to connect these two representations because the oxyanion and carbanion structures are just two different ways to represent the same thing. We shall usually prefer the oxyanion structure as it is more realistic.

You can say the same thing in orbitals.

On the left you see the populated orbitals of the allyl anion and on the right the corresponding orbitals of the enolate ion. The allyl anion is, of course, symmetrical. Two changes happen when we replace one carbon by an oxygen atom. Because oxygen is more electronegative, both orbitals go down in energy. The orbitals are also distorted. The lower-energy atomic orbital of the more electronegative oxygen contributes more to the lower-energy orbital (\(\psi_1\)) and correspondingly less to \(\psi_2\). The charge distribution comes from both populated orbitals so the negative charge is spread over all three atoms, but is mostly on the ends. The important reactive orbital is the HOMO (\(\psi_2\)), which has the larger orbital on the terminal carbon atom.

In the enolate, the oxygen atom has more of the negative charge, but the carbon atom has more of the HOMO. One important consequence is that we can expect reactions dominated by charges and electrostatic interactions to occur on oxygen and reactions dominated by orbital interactions to occur on carbon. Thus acyl chlorides tend to react at oxygen to give enol esters.

It’s important to recognize the difference between this conjugation and the tautomerism that interconverts the keto and enol forms of a carbonyl compound, which is a real equilibrium between two different structures and must be represented by equilibrium arrows.

In other words, the oxygen is a hard nucleophilic centre and the carbon is a soft nucleophilic centre. See Chapter 15, p. 357.
acetone base enolate anion reacts through oxygen with acyl chloride

enolate anion reacts through carbon with alkyl halide

acetone base enolate anion reacts through oxygen with acyl chloride

acetone base enolate anion reacts through carbon with alkyl halide

 acetone

while alkyl halides tend to react at carbon.

We shall be looking at these reactions in detail in Chapter 25. For the rest of this chapter we will turn to some simpler consequences of enolization and some reactions of enolates with simple heteroatom-based electrophiles.

**Summary of types of enol and enolate**

Time to recap and summarize the various kinds of enol and enolate that can form from carbonyl compounds. You have already seen that ketones and aldehydes enolize. With an unsymmetrical ketone, more than one enol or enolate ion is possible.

Enolizable ketones

- cyclohexanone
- 2-butanone
- 2,2-dimethylpropanal (pivaldehyde)

Enolizable aldehydes

- benzaldehyde
- benzophenone
- 2,2-dimethylpropanal (pivaldehyde)
- formaldehyde

Non-enolizable carbonyl compounds

- formaldehyde
- benzaldehyde
- benzophenone

All carboxylic acid derivatives can form enols of some kind. Those of esters are particularly important and either enols or enolates are easily made. It is obviously necessary to avoid water in the presence of acid or base, as esters hydrolyse under these conditions. One solution is to use the alkoxide belonging to the ester (MeO⁻ with a methyl ester, EtO⁻ with an ethyl ester, and so on) to make enolate ions.

\[
\text{MeO}^- + \text{H}_2\text{C}==\text{O} \rightarrow \text{MeO}^- \cdot \text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{C}==\text{O}^- \cdot \text{Me}\]

Then, if the alkoxide does act as a nucleophile, there’s no harm done as the same ester is simply regenerated.
The carbonyl group is accepting electrons in both the enolization step and the nucleophilic attack. The same compounds that are the most electrophilic are also the most easily enolizable. This makes acyl chlorides very enolizable. To avoid nucleophilic attack, we cannot use chloride ion as base since chloride is not basic, so we must use a non-nucleophilic base such as a tertiary amine. The resulting enolate is not stable as it can eliminate chloride ion, a good leaving group, to form a ketene. This works particularly well in making dichloroketene from dichloroacetyl chloride as the proton to be removed is very acidic.

Carboxylic acids do not form enolate anions easily as the base first removes the acidic OH proton. This also protects acids from attack by most nucleophiles.

In acid solution, there are no such problems and ‘ene-diols’ are formed.

Amides (unless they are tertiary) also have rather acidic protons, though not, of course, as acidic as those of carboxylic acids. Attempted enolate ion formation in base removes an N–H proton rather than a C–H proton. Amides are also the least reactive and the least enolizable of all acid derivatives, and their enols and enolates are rarely used in reactions.

It is not even necessary to have a carbonyl group to observe very similar reactions. Imines and enamines are related by the same kind of tautomeric equilibria.
With a primary amine (here PhNH₂) a reasonably stable imine is formed, but with a secondary amine (here a simple cyclic amine) the imine itself cannot be formed and the iminium salt is less stable than the enamine.

Just as enamines are the nitrogen analogues of enols, aza-enolates are the nitrogen analogues of enolates. They are made by deprotonating enamines with strong base. Nitroalkanes are much more acidic and form enolate-like anions in quite weak base.

\[
\text{Formation of aza-enolate} \quad \text{Formation of nitromethane anion}
\]

Nitriles (cyanides) also form anions and require strong base as the negative charge is delocalized onto only a single nitrogen atom. The anion is a linear system like ketene, allene, or carbon dioxide.

\[
\text{Formation of nitromethane anion}
\]

**Requirement for enolization**

Any organic compound with an electron-withdrawing functional group, with at least one π bond joined to a saturated carbon atom having at least one hydrogen atom, may form an enol in neutral or acid solution. Many also form enolates in basic solution (exceptions being carboxylic acids, and primary and secondary amides).

The enols will probably not be detectable in solution (only about one part in 10⁴–10⁶ is enol for most compounds). Some compounds by contrast form stable enols, and we’ll look at these next, before coming back to how enols and enolates react.

**Stable enols**

We have established that the enol is, in general, less stable than the keto form of the molecule. We might hope to see stable enols if we changed that situation by adding some feature to the molecule that stabilized the enol thermodynamically. Or we might try to create an enol that would revert only slowly to the keto form—in other words, it would be kinetically stable. We shall look at this type first.

**Kinetically stable enols**

The formation of enols is catalysed by acids and bases. The reverse of this reaction—the formation of ketone from enol—must therefore also be catalysed by the same acids and bases. If you prepare simple enols in the strict absence of acid or base they have a reasonably long lifetime. A famous example is the preparation of the simplest enol, vinyl alcohol, by heating ethane-1,2-diol (glycol—antifreeze) to very high temperatures (900 °C) at low pressure. Water is lost and the enol of acetaldehyde is formed. It survives long enough for its proton NMR spectrum to be run, but gives acetaldehyde slowly.
The spectrum illustrates the electronic effect of the oxygen atom on the double bond. The alkene proton next to OH (in green) is deshielded and the two alkene protons on the other carbon atom (in orange) are shielded as you would expect from the feeding of electrons into the double bond by the OH group. The coupling constants across the double bond are as expected too: a large trans coupling (14.0 Hz) and a smaller cis coupling (6.5 Hz). The very small geminal coupling is typical of a terminal double bond CH₂ group.

Other enols can be made that are stable because it is very difficult for the carbon atom to be protonated. In the example on the right, the two substituted benzene rings crowd the enol and prevent approach of a protonating agent. The rings twist out of the plane of the double bond and shield both faces of the enol from attack by a proton.

**Thermodynamically stable enols: 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds**

We started this chapter by looking at a molecule that contained about 33% enol in solution—dimedone (shown on the right). In fact, this is just one example of the class of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds (also called \(\beta\)-dicarbonyls), many of which contain substantial amounts of enol and may even be completely enolized in polar solvents.

We need now to examine why these enols are so stable. The main reason is that this unique (1,3) arrangement of the two carbonyl groups leads to enols that are conjugated—rather like a carboxylic acid.

Look back at the NMR spectrum of dimedone (p. 450) and you’ll see that the two CH₂ groups within the ring seem to be the same, although they are different (a and b)—even the delocalization we have just proposed does not make them equivalent. This must mean that the enol is in rapid equilibrium with another identical enol. This is not delocalization—a proton is moving—so it is **tautomerism**.
Once again, this is very like the situation in a carboxylic acid. The two enols equilibrate (tautomerize) so fast in CDCl₃ solution that the NMR spectrometer records an ‘averaged’ spectrum. By contrast, equilibration between the enol and keto forms is sufficiently slow that the NMR spectrometer records separate signals for the keto and enol forms.

Other 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds also exist largely in the enol form. In some examples there is an additional stabilizing factor, intramolecular hydrogen bonding. Acetylacetone (propane-2,4-dione) has a symmetrical enol stabilized by conjugation. The enol form is also stabilized by a very favourable intramolecular hydrogen bond in a six-membered ring.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{enol form of acetylacetone stabilized by an intramolecular hydrogen bond} \\
\text{enol form of acetylacetone stabilized by conjugation}
\end{align*}
\]

The hydrogen-bonded enol structure looks unsymmetrical, but in fact, as with dimedone, the two identical enol structures interconvert rapidly by proton transfer, that is, by tautomerism.

The 1,3-dicarbonyl compound need not be symmetrical, and if it is not then two different enol forms will interconvert by proton transfer. Below is a cyclic keto-aldehyde that exists entirely as a pair of rapidly equilibrating enols. The proportions of the three species can be measured by NMR: there is <1% keto-aldehyde, 76% of the first enol, and 24% of the second.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{two different stable enols rapidly interconverting by tautomerism}
\end{align*}
\]

More examples of stable enols

Pfizer’s anti-inflammatory drug ‘Feldene’ (used to treat arthritis) is a stable enol based on a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound. It also contains amide and sulfonamide groups but you should be able to pick out the enol part.

\[
\begin{align*}
Piroxicam (\text{Feldene}^{\text{®}}) & \quad \text{once-a-day treatment for arthritis} \\
\text{Leptospermone (\text{Callisto}^{\text{®}})} & \quad \text{herbicide produced by the bottle-brush plant}
\end{align*}
\]

Stable enols occur in nature too. Leptospermone is a herbicide produced by \textit{Callistemon citrinus}, the bottle-brush plant, to keep down competitors, and it has been used commercially as ‘Callisto’ to protect maize. It is a tetraketone, but exists entirely as a mixture of tautomeric enols. Note that the carbonyl group in orange is unable to form an enol: it has no \(\alpha\) hydrogens.

Vitamin C has a five-membered ring containing two carbonyl groups but normally exists as a very conjugated ene-diol.
We can show the delocalization and explain why vitamin C is called ascorbic acid at the same time. The green enol proton is acidic because the anion is delocalized over the 1,3-dicarbonyl system.

The ultimate in stable enols has to be the Ph-enol. Aromatic alcohols, or phenols, which prefer the substantial advantage of aromaticity to the slight advantage of a C=O over a C=C double bond. They exist entirely in the phenol form. Like ascorbic acid, phenol is also quite acidic (pKₐ 10)—it used to be called carbolic acid.

Consequences of enolization

Unsaturated carbonyl compounds prefer to be conjugated

It is difficult to keep a β,γ-unsaturated carbonyl compound because the double bond tends to move into conjugation with the carbonyl group in the presence of traces of acid or base. The intermediate is, of course, an enol in acid solution but an enolate ion in base.

Protonation at the α position takes the molecule back to the unconjugated ketone, but protonation in the γ position gives the more stable conjugated isomer. All the reactions are equilibria so the conjugated isomer ends up predominating.

Racemization

Any stereogenic centre next to a carbonyl group is precarious because enolization will destroy it. It would be foolish to try and make optically active β-keto esters whose only stereogenic centre was between the two carbonyl groups. Although the keto-ester is chiral, the enol is flat and cannot be chiral. The two forms are in rapid equilibrium so all optical activity would quickly be lost.
Compounds with one carbonyl group next to the stereogenic centre can be made but care still needs to be taken. The α amino acids, the component parts of proteins, are like this. They are perfectly stable and do not racemize in aqueous acid or base. In base they exist as carboxylate anions that do not enolize, as explained above. Enolization in acid is prevented by the –NH₃⁺ group, which inhibits the protonation of the carbonyl group necessary for enol formation.

Amino acids can be converted into their N-acetyl derivatives with acetic anhydride. These N-acetyl amides can be racemized on recrystallization from hot acetic acid, no doubt by enolization. The amino group is no longer basic, and is not protonated in acid, so protonation on the carbonyl group and hence enolization is now possible.

You may think it a crazy idea to want to racemize an amino acid. Supposing, however, that you are preparing a pure (S)-amino acid from a racemate by resolution. Half your material ends up as the wrong (R)-enantiomer and you don’t want just to throw it away. If you racemize it you can put it back into the next resolution and convert half of it into the (S)-acid. Then you can racemize what remains and so on.

Racemization in vivo

Some compounds may be racemized inside the human body. Bacterial cell walls are built partly from ‘unnatural’ (R)-amino-acids, which humans can’t digest. But we can use enzymes to racemize them.

There is an important group of analgesic (pain-killing) drugs, such as ibuprofen, based on the aryl-propionic acid structure. Ibuprofen can be bought over the counter in chemists’ shops as Nurofen. Only the (S)-enantiomer of ibuprofen is an effective painkiller but the compound is administered as the racemate. The body does the rest, racemizing the compound by enolizing it.

Reaction with enols or enolates as intermediates

We have already seen that exchange of hydrogen for deuterium, movement of double bonds into conjugation, and racemization can occur with enols or enolates as intermediates. These are chemical reactions of a sort, but it is time to look at some reactions that make significant changes to the carbonyl compound.
Halogenation

Carbonyl compounds can be halogenated in the α position by halogens (such as bromine, Br₂) in acidic or basic solutions. We shall look at the acid-catalysed reaction first because it is simpler. Ketones can usually be cleanly brominated using acetic acid as solvent.

\[
\text{acetone} + \text{Br}_2 + \text{HOAc} \rightarrow \text{bromoacetone}
\]

The first step is acid-catalysed enolization and the electrophilic bromine molecule then attacks the nucleophilic carbon of the enol. The arrows show why this particular carbon is the one attacked.

Notice that the acid catalyst is regenerated at the end of the reaction. The reaction need not be carried out in an acidic solvent, or even with a protic acid at all. Lewis acids make excellent catalysts for the bromination of ketones. This example with an unsymmetrical ketone gives 100% yield of the bromoketone with catalytic AlCl₃ in ether as solvent.

Bromination occurs nowhere else in the molecule—not on the benzene ring (which, as you will see in the next chapter, it easily might under these conditions), nor on any other atom of the aliphatic side chain. This is because only one position can form an enol and the enol is more reactive towards bromine than the aromatic ring.

These mechanisms should remind you of alkene bromination (p. 427)—except that here the attack on the bromine is assisted by an electron pair on oxygen. Enols are more nucleophilic than simple alkenes—the HOMO is raised by the interaction with the oxygen's lone pairs and looks not unlike the HOMO of the enolate anion we discussed on p. 453. The product, instead of being a bromonium ion (which would undergo further reactions), loses a proton (or the Lewis acid) to give a ketone.

Bromination of acid derivatives is usually carried out not on the acid itself but by converting it to an acyl bromide or chloride, which is not isolated but gives the α-bromoacyl halide via the enol. This used to be done in one step with red phosphorus and bromine, but a two-step
process is usually preferred now, and the bromoester is usually made directly without isolating any of the intermediates. We can summarize the overall process like this.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \xrightarrow{SOCl_2} \text{Cl} & \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{MeOH} \text{BrO} & \text{OMe} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The formation of the acyl chloride with \(\text{SOCl}_2\) and the conversion of the \(\alpha\)-bromoacyl chloride into the bromoester with \(\text{MeOH}\) are simple nucleophilic substitutions at the carbonyl group, as described in Chapter 10. The intermediate stage, the bromination of the very easily enolized acyl chloride, is a typical enol bromination.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Cl} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Cl} & + \text{HBr} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Base-promoted halogenation**

In base, bromination is different and more complicated because it usually won’t stop with the introduction of one halogen atom. We’ll use the bromination of acetone as our example: the first step will now be a base-catalysed enolization to give the enolate ion instead of the enol. The enolate ion can attack a bromine molecule in a very similar way to the attack of the enol on bromine. The enolate will, of course, be even more reactive than the enol (the enolate carries a negative charge).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{BrOH}} \text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{BrOH}} \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Br} & + \text{Br}^\text{\text{\text{o}}} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The problem is that the reaction does not stop at this point. The first step was the removal of a proton and the protons between the carbonyl group and the bromine atom in the product are more acidic than those in the original acetone because of the electron-withdrawing bromine atom. Bromoacetone forms an enolate faster than acetone does.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{BrOH}} \text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{BrOH}} \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Br} & + \text{Br}^\text{\text{\text{o}}} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Dibromoacetone is formed. Now we have one remaining proton in between the carbonyl group and two bromine atoms. It is even more acidic and so forms a new enolate ion even more quickly. The first product observable in any amount is tribromoacetone.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{BrOH}} \text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{BrOH}} \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{Br} & + \text{Br}^\text{\text{\text{o}}} \\
\end{align*}
\]

But even this is not the end of the story. To see why, we need to backtrack a bit. You may already have asked yourself, ‘Why doesn’t the hydroxide ion, being a nucleophile, attack the carbonyl group?’ This is a general question you might ask about all enolizations in base. The answer is that it does. The reaction is shown in the margin. A tetrahedral intermediate forms.

What can happen now? This tetrahedral intermediate will revert to a carbonyl compound by expelling the best leaving group. \(\text{Me}^-\) can never act as a leaving group: the only possible leaving group is the hydroxide ion (\(\text{pK}_a\) of water = 15.7), so it just drops out again.

This state of affairs continues until we reach the tribromoketone. The \(\text{CBr}_3^-\) group now has a chance to be a leaving group since the carbanion is stabilized by three bromine atoms. A real reaction occurs:
These initial products exchange a proton to reveal the true products of the reaction—the anion of a carboxylic acid and tribromomethane (CHBr₃).

The same thing happens with iodine, and we can summarize the whole process with iodine using a general structure for a carbonyl compound bearing a methyl group. It must be a methyl group because three halogens are necessary to make the carbanion into a leaving group. This reaction is often called the ‘iodoform’ reaction. Iodoform was an old name for triiodomethane, just as chloroform is still used for trichloromethane. It is one of the rare cases where nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group results in the cleavage of a C–C single bond.

Acid conditions are best for halogenation

Halogenation of carbonyl compounds should be carried out in acid solution. Attempts in basic solution lead to multiple substitutions and C–C bond cleavage.

Why does acid-catalysed halogenation work better?

The reason why halogenation in base continues until all the hydrogens have been replaced is clear: each successive halide makes the remaining proton(s) more acidic and the next enolization easier. But why does acid-catalysed halogenation stop after the introduction of one halogen? It would be more accurate to say that it can be made to stop after one halogen is introduced if only one equivalent of halogen is used. Acid-catalysed halogenation will continue if there is more halogen available.

However, the second halogen goes on the other side of the carbonyl group, if it can. It is evidently the case that the second halogenation is slower than the first. Most of the intermediates are positively charged and hence destabilized by the presence of a halogen. The bromoketone is less basic than acetone so less of the reactive protonated form is present. This slows down any further electrophilic attack.

The second step is the rate-determining step, and the presence of a bromine atom at the α position slows this step down still further: if a proton can be lost from a different α position—one without a Br atom—it will be. The transition state for proton removal illustrates why bromine slows this step down. The part of the structure close to the bromine atom is positively charged.
We can add a useful piece of evidence to this weak-sounding explanation. The halogenation of an unsymmetrical dialkyl ketone gives different results in acid and in base. In base halogenation occurs preferentially on a methyl group, that is, on the less highly substituted side. In acid solution by contrast, the first (and only) halogenation occurs on the more substituted side of the carbonyl group. Alkyl groups have the opposite effect to bromine atoms—they stabilize positive charges. So the reactions of an enol, with a positively charged transition state, are faster at more highly substituted positions. Enolates react through negatively charged transition states and are faster at less highly substituted carbon atoms.

**Nitrosation of enols**

Now for a reaction with nitrogen as an electrophile that illustrates enol reactivity and reminds us that tautomerism happens with functional groups other than the carbonyl. Let us suppose you have a carbonyl compound and wish to introduce another carbonyl group next to the first. One way you might go about it is like this:

The first step involves the formation of the weak acid nitrous acid (HNO₂ or, more helpfully, HONO) from the sodium salt and the strong acid HCl. Nitrous acid is itself protonated and then loss of water creates the reactive electrophile NO⁺.

This diatomic cation, isoelectronic with carbon monoxide, is electrophilic at nitrogen and attacks the enol of the ketone to form an unstable nitroso compound.
The nitroso compound is unstable because it can tautomerize with the transfer of a proton from carbon to the oxygen of the nitroso group. This process is exactly like enolization but with \( \text{N}=\text{O} \) in the place of the \( \text{C}=\text{O} \) group. It gives an oxime as the stable ‘enol’. The oxime’s \( \text{O}–\text{H} \) can form an intramolecular hydrogen bond with the ketone carbonyl group. Hydrolysis of the oxime reveals the second ketone.

If the ketone is unsymmetrical, this reaction will occur on the more substituted side, for the same reason that acid-catalysed enol bromination gives the more substituted \( \alpha \)-bromocarbonyl compound (see the box on p. 463).

Before we move on to any more reactions, we want you to take away this message from the reactions of enols and enolates with \( \text{Br}_2 \) and with \( \text{NO}^+ \):

- **Enols and enolates generally react with electrophiles at carbon.**

### The nitroso group

The difference between the nitro and nitroso groups is one of oxidation state and conjugation. The much more stable nitro group has a trigonal nitrogen atom with no lone pair; the \( \text{N}=\text{O} \) bond is delocalized. The nitroso group has a trigonal nitrogen atom with a lone pair in the plane; the \( \text{N}=\text{O} \) bond is not delocalized. Both can form ‘enols’ but the equilibria are biased in different directions.

### Stable equivalents of enolate ions

#### Lithium enolates

Even with fairly strong bases such as hydroxides or alkoxides, most carbonyl compounds are converted to their enolates only to a very small extent. A typical value for the \( pK_a \) of protons adjacent (\( \alpha \)) to a carbonyl group is 20–25, while the \( pK_a \) of methanol is around 16, so we can only hope for about 1 part enolate in \( 10^4 \) parts carbonyl compound. With a much stronger base this all changes, and the enolate is formed quantitatively from the carbonyl compound. This is a very important result that we shall capitalize on in Chapters 25 and 26. The base usually used is LDA (lithium diisopropylamide), and it works like this.
LDA is bulky, so it does not take part in nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group, and it is basic—the $pK_a$ of diisopropylamine is about 35, which is plenty basic enough to deprotonate next to any carbonyl group. The lithium enolate is stable at low temperature (–78°C) but reactive enough to be useful. Lithium enolates are the most commonly used stable enolate equivalents in chemistry.

**Silyl enol ethers**

Second only to lithium enolates in usefulness are silyl enol ethers. Silicon is less electropositive than lithium, and silyl enol ethers are more stable, and less reactive, than lithium enolates. They are made by treating an enolate with a silicon electrophile. Silicon electrophiles invariably react with enolates at the oxygen atom firstly because they are hard (see pp. 357 and 467) and secondly because of the very strong Si–O single bond. The most common silicon electrophile is trimethylsilyl chloride ($\text{Me}_3\text{SiCl}$), an intermediate made industrially in bulk and used to make the NMR standard tetramethylsilane ($\text{Me}_4\text{Si}$).

Silicon–oxygen bonds are so strong that silicon reacts with carbonyl compounds on oxygen even without a strong base to form the enolate: the reaction probably goes through the small amount of enol present in neutral solution and just needs a weak base (Et$_3$N) to remove the proton from the product. An alternative view is that the silicon reacts with oxygen first, and the base just converts the oxonium ion to the silyl enol ether. Both mechanisms are given below—either might be correct. This is one of the two best ways to make a stable enol derivative from virtually any enolizable carbonyl compound.

Silyl enol ethers can also be made from lithium enolates just by treating them with trimethylsilyl chloride.

Occasionally, it can be useful to run this reaction in reverse, generating the lithium enolate from the silyl enol ether. This can be done with methyl lithium, which takes part in nucleophilic substitution at silicon to generate the lithium enolate plus tetramethylsilane.
We shall be returning to silyl enol ethers and lithium enolates later in the book, but for the moment you should view them simply as enol derivatives that are stable enough to be formed quantitatively from carbonyl compounds before being used in further reactions.

**Enol and enolate reactions at oxygen: preparation of enol ethers**

You have just seen that silyl enol ethers are easy to make. But, if enolate ions have most of their negative charge on the oxygen atom, it ought to be possible to make ordinary, carbon-based ethers from them too. It is—but only under strange conditions. Normally, enols and enolate ions prefer to react with alkylating agents (such as alkyl halides) at carbon, as we shall see in Chapter 25. If enolate ions are prepared with potassium bases in dipolar aprotic solvents (such as dimethyl sulfoxide, DMSO) that cannot solvate the oxygen anion, and are treated with dimethylsulfate or trimethyloxonium ion—powerful methylating agents that react best with charged atoms—some at least of the enol ether is formed. The Me₃O⁺ ion is found in the stable (though reactive) compound trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate, or Meerwein's salt, Me₃O⁺BF₄⁻. This compound and dimethylsulfate, Me₂SO₄, are hard electrophiles with highly polarized C–O bonds which therefore react with the enolate at hard O rather than soft C.

The yield in this reaction is about 60–70% of enol ether, the rest being mainly C-alkylated product. A more reliable method for making an enol ether is the acid-catalysed decomposition of an acetal in the strict absence of water:

The reaction starts as though the acetal were being hydrolysed, but there is no water to continue the hydrolysis, so a proton is lost instead. In other words, with no suitable nucleophile for S₈₁ substitution, E₁ elimination takes place.
These enol ethers are rather unstable, particularly towards acid-catalysed hydrolysis (as described in the next section) and are not as useful as the silyl enol ethers. We shall next look at the enol-like reactions of both groups of enol ethers.

### Reactions of enol ethers

#### Hydrolysis of enol ethers

Enols have an OH group and are alcohols of a sort. Normal alcohols form stable ethers that are difficult to convert back to the alcohol. Powerful reagents such as HI or BBr₃ are required and these reactions were discussed in Chapter 15. The reaction with HI is an $S_{N}2$ attack on the methyl group of the protonated ether and that is why a good nucleophile for saturated carbon, such as iodide or bromide, is needed for the reaction. Enol ethers, by contrast, are relatively unstable compounds that are hydrolysed back to the carbonyl compound simply with aqueous acid—dilute HCl or H₂SO₄, for example.

\[
\text{HI} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{S}_{N}2 \quad \text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{OH}
\]

Why the big difference? The reason is that the enol ether can be protonated at carbon using the delocalization of the oxygen lone pair in the enol derivative to produce a reactive oxonium ion.

\[
\text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me}
\]

This oxonium ion could be attacked on the methyl group in the same way that the ordinary ether was attacked.

\[
\text{X} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me}
\]

We wouldn’t really expect this reaction to happen much faster than the same reaction on an ordinary ether, so there must be another better and faster mechanism. That mechanism is attack on the $\pi$ bond instead of attack on the $\sigma$ bond.

\[
\text{X} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me}
\]

In aqueous acid the nucleophile $X^{-}$ is just water and we find ourselves in the middle of the mechanism of hydrolysis of acetals (Chapter 11, p. 226). The oxonium ion is an intermediate common to both mechanisms.

\[
\text{OH}_{2} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Me}
\]
A similar reaction occurs when enol ethers react with alcohols in acid solution and in the absence of water, but now we are starting in the middle of the acetal hydrolysis mechanism and going the other way, in the direction of the acetal. A useful example is the formation of THP (tetrahydropyranyl) derivatives of alcohols from the enol ether dihydropyran. You will see THP derivatives of alcohols being used as protecting groups in Chapter 23.

![Diagram of THP formation from enol ether](image)

Silyl enol ethers hydrolyse by a slightly different mechanism, although the first step is the same—protonation at carbon using the lone pair on oxygen. We have already seen how easy it is to attack silicon with nucleophiles, especially those with oxygen or a halogen as the nucleophilic atom. This tips the balance towards attack by water at silicon for the next step.

![Diagram of silyl enol ether hydrolysis](image)

The aldehyde is formed immediately. What happens to the other product illustrates again just how easy nucleophilic substitution at silicon can be. Two of these compounds combine together to give a disilyl ether, called a disiloxane.

![Diagram of disiloxane formation](image)

### Reactions of silyl enol ethers with halogen and sulfur electrophiles

In comparison with other ethers, enol ethers of all kinds are rather unstable. As alkenes they are also more reactive than normal alkenes because of the lone pair of electrons on the oxygen atom. They react with electrophiles like bromine or chlorine on the α carbon atom, behaving like enol derivatives and not like alkenes.

Electrophilic attack occurs at the α carbon atom and the halide ion released in this step then attacks the silicon atom to release the product and a molecule of Me₃SiX, which will be hydrolysed during the work-up.

![Diagram of silyl enol ether reaction with halogen electrophiles](image)

This procedure avoids the difficulties we outlined earlier in the direct halogenation of aldehydes and ketones. It allows the preparation of haloacetates on the less substituted side of the carbonyl group, for instance.

![Diagram of haloacetate formation](image)

---

See the discussion of THP protecting groups on p. 550 for the mechanism of this reaction, although you should be able to work it out without looking there!

**Pyrans**

Pyran is a six-membered oxygen-containing heterocyclic ring system with two double bonds. It is not aromatic although compounds like pyrones are. The compound with only one double bond is therefore dihydropyran, and the saturated ring system is tetrahydropyran.
A similar method with the good soft electrophile PhSCI allows sulfonylation next to the carbonyl group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \overset{\text{Me}_3\text{SiCl}}{\text{Et}_3\text{N}} \text{O} & \overset{\text{PhSCI}}{\text{R}} & \text{SiMe}_3 \text{Cl} & \text{SPh} \\
\text{R} & \overset{\text{H}}{\text{O}} & \overset{\text{H}}{\text{SiMe}_3} & \text{SPh} & \text{R} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The mechanism is very similar: the electrophilic sulfur atom attacks the \( \alpha \) carbon atom of the silyl enol ether, releasing a chloride ion that removes the Me\(_3\)Si group from the intermediate.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \overset{\text{SPh}}{\text{SiMe}_3} & \text{R} & \overset{\text{Cl}^-}{\text{O}} & \text{SPh} & \text{R} & \text{SiMe}_3 \\
\text{R} & \overset{\text{O}}{\text{SiMe}_3} & \text{SPh} & \text{R} & \text{H} & \text{SPh} & \text{Cl} \\
\end{align*}
\]

To conclude

You have now seen how enols and enolates react with electrophiles based on hydrogen (deuterium), carbon, halogens, silicon, sulfur, and nitrogen. What remains to be seen is how new carbon–carbon bonds can be formed with alkyl halides and carbonyl compounds in their normal electrophilic mode. These reactions are the subject of Chapters 25–26, but next we look at the ways aromatic compounds react with electrophiles. You will see similarities with the behaviour of enols.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Electrophilic aromatic substitution

Connections

Building on
- Structure of molecules ch4
- Conjugation ch7
- Mechanisms and catalysis ch12
- Electrophilic addition to alkenes ch19
- Enols and enolates ch20

Arriving at
- Phenols as aromatic enols
- Benzene and alkenes compared: what is special about aromatic compounds?
- Electrophilic attack on benzene
- Activation and deactivation of the benzene ring
- Position of substitution
- Elaborating aromatic structures: competition and cooperation
- Problems with some aromatic substitution reactions and how to solve them

Looking forward to
- Nucleophilic aromatic substitution ch22
- Oxidation and reduction ch23
- Regioselectivity and ortholithiation ch24
- Retrosynthetic analysis ch28
- Aromatic heterocycles ch29 & ch30
- Rearrangements ch36
- Transition-metal catalysed couplings to aromatic compounds ch40

Introduction: enols and phenols

In the last chapter you saw that many ketones have a nucleophilic ‘alter ego’ known as an enol tautomer. Formation of the enol tautomer is catalysed by acid or by base, and because the ketone and enol are in equilibrium, enolization in the presence of D₂O can lead to replacement of the protons in the α positions of ketones by deuterium atoms. This is what happens to pentan-3-one in acidic D₂O:

![Enolization and deuteration process](image)

Because the enolization and deuteration process can be repeated, eventually all of the α-protons are replaced by deuterium.

The way this ketone is deuterated provides evidence that its enol form exists, even though the keto/enol equilibrium greatly favours the ketone form at equilibrium. In this chapter we shall be discussing similar reactions of a compound that exists entirely in its enol form. That very stable enol is phenol and its stability is a consequence of the aromaticity of its benzene ring.

Online support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123 into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
The proton NMR spectrum for phenol is shown below. Before reading any further cover up the rest of this page and make sure you can assign the spectrum.

The next spectrum is the proton NMR after shaking phenol with acidic D₂O. Most of the peaks have almost disappeared because the H atoms have been replaced with D. Only one signal remains the same size, and even that is simplified because it has lost any coupling to adjacent protons it may have had previously.

The signal that remains is the 2H signal for the protons in the 3 and 5 positions of the aromatic ring, so the product must be the one shown in the margin. We can explain why by using the same mechanism we used with the ketone on the previous page. Phenol is deuterated in the same way as other enols, except that the final product remains in the very stable, aromatic, enol form rather than reverting to the keto form. The first step (after initial replacement of the OH with OD) is addition of D₃O⁺ to the enol.

Now this cation could lose the D from oxygen to leave a ketone (brown arrow below), or it could lose the proton from carbon to leave the phenol (orange arrows below). Alternatively, it could just lose the D and go back to the starting material, which is why there is an equilibrium arrow in the scheme above.

Our spectrum tells us that three ring protons are replaced by D—the ones at the 2, 4, and 6 positions. It's not hard to see how the same process on the other side of the OH group replaces the proton at C-6. But how does the D at position 4 get there? The enol of phenol is conjugated, and we can push the curly arrows one stage further, like this:
The end product on treating phenol with $^3\text{D}O^+$ has the protons in the 2, 4, and 6 positions (that is, the ortho and para positions) substituted by deuterium. $^3\text{D}O^+$ is an electrophile, and the overall process is called electrophilic substitution. It is a reaction characteristic of not only phenol but of other aromatic compounds, and it forms the subject of this chapter.

When aromatic compounds react with electrophiles they generally do so by electrophilic aromatic substitution.

**Benzene and its reactions with electrophiles**

We’ll start with the most straightforward aromatic compound: benzene. Benzene is a planar symmetrical hexagon with six trigonal (sp$^2$) carbon atoms, each having one hydrogen atom in the plane of the ring. All the bond lengths are 1.39 Å (compare C–C 1.47 Å and C=C 1.33 Å). All the $^{13}\text{C}$ shifts are the same ($\delta_{\text{C}}$ 128.5).

The special stability of benzene (aromaticity) comes from the six $\pi$ electrons in three molecular orbitals formed by the overlap of the six atomic $p$ orbitals on the carbon atoms. The energy levels of these orbitals are arranged so that there is exceptional stability in the molecule (a notional 140 kJ mol$^{-1}$ over a molecule with three conjugated double bonds), and the shift of the six identical hydrogen atoms in the NMR spectrum ($\delta_{\text{H}}$ 7.2) is evidence of a ring current in the delocalized $\pi$ system.

**Drawing benzene rings**

Benzene is symmetrical and the structure with a circle in the middle best represents this. However, it is impossible to draw curly arrow mechanisms using this representation so we shall usually make use of the Kekulé form with three double bonds. This does not mean that we think the double bonds are localized! It makes no difference which Kekulé structure you draw—any mechanism can be equally well drawn using either.

Aromatic substituents

A reminder (see pp. 36 and 416) of the names we give to the positions around a benzene ring relative to any substituent:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positions</th>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ortho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>meta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>para</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ortho, meta, and para are sometimes abbreviated to $o$, $m$, and $p$. The concept of aromaticity is central to this chapter: we will elaborate considerably on the introduction to aromatic compounds we presented in Chapter 7.
In substituted aromatic molecules such as phenol, the C–C bond lengths in the ring are no longer exactly the same. However, it is still all right to use either representation, depending on the purpose of the drawing. With some aromatic compounds, such as naphthalene, it does matter which Kekulé structure you use as there is some alternation of bond lengths. Only the first Kekulé representation shows that the central bond is the strongest and shortest in the molecule and that the C1–C2 bond is shorter than the C2–C3 bond. And if a circle in a ring indicates six $\pi$ electrons, then two circles suggests 12, even though naphthalene has only 10, making this representation less satisfactory too.

**Electrophilic attack on benzene and on cyclohexene**

Simple alkenes, including cyclohexene, react rapidly with electrophiles such as bromine or peroxy-acids (Chapter 19). Bromine gives the product of *trans* addition, peracids give epoxides by *cis* addition. Under the same conditions benzene reacts with neither reagent.

![Diagram](image)

Benzene can, however, be persuaded to react with bromine if a Lewis acid catalyst such as AlCl$_3$ is added. The product contains bromine but is not from either *cis* or *trans* addition.

The bromine atom has replaced an atom of hydrogen, so this is a substitution reaction. The reagent (Br$_2$) is electrophilic and benzene is aromatic so the reaction is *electrophilic aromatic substitution*, the subject of this chapter.

We can compare the bromination of cyclohexene and of benzene directly.

![Diagram](image)

The intermediate in both reactions is a cation but the first (from cyclohexene) adds an anion while the second (from benzene) loses a proton so that the aromatic system can be restored. Notice also that neutral bromine reacts with the alkene but the cationic AlCl$_3$ complex is needed to get reaction with benzene. Bromine itself is a very reactive electrophile. It is indeed a dangerous compound and should be handled only with special precautions. Even so it does not react with benzene. It is difficult to get benzene to react with anything.

**Benzen is very unreactive**

- It combines only with very reactive (usually cationic) electrophiles.
- It gives substitution and not addition products.

**The intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution is a delocalized cation**

We will return again and again to this mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution during this chapter. In its most general form the mechanism has two stages: attack by an electrophile to give an intermediate cation and loss of a proton from the cation to restore the aromaticity.
The cationic intermediate is, of course, unstable compared with the starting materials or the product. But it is nonetheless stabilized by delocalization. The arrows below show how the positive charge can be delocalized to the two ortho positions and to the para position, or can be drawn as a single delocalized structure with partial (dotted) bonds and about one-third of a positive charge (+) at three atoms.

It’s very important to note that although it is delocalized, this cation is not aromatic: there is no cyclic array of p orbitals because the ring contains a single tetrahedral (sp$^3$ hybridized) carbon atom. We have emphasized this tetrahedral atom by drawing in the hydrogen atom at the point of substitution—the one that will be lost when aromaticity is regained. We suggest that when you write mechanisms for electrophilic aromatic substitution you do the same. Given this loss of aromaticity, it is not surprising that formation of the cationic intermediate is the rate-determining step of an electrophilic aromatic substitution.

**How do we know the cationic intermediate exists?**

In strong acid, the electrophile is a proton and it is actually possible to observe this cationic intermediate. The trick is to pick a non-nucleophilic and non-basic counterion $X^-$, such as SbF$_5$. In this octahedral anion, the central antimony atom is surrounded by the fluorine atoms with the negative charge spread over all seven atoms. The protonation is carried out using FSO$_3$H and SbF$_5$ at –120 °C. A similar trick was described in Chapter 15 as a means to show the existence of simple carbocations as intermediates in the $S_{N1}$ mechanism.

Under these conditions it is possible to record the $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR spectra of the cation. The shifts show that the positive charge is spread over the ring but is greatest (i.e. the electron density is least) at the ortho and para positions. Using the data for the $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR shifts ($\delta_H$ and benzene $\delta_C$, respectively), a charge distribution can be calculated that closely matches the predictions of the curly arrows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>position</th>
<th>$\delta_H$</th>
<th>$\delta_C$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>52.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, 6</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>186.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, 5</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>136.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>178.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzene (for comparison)</td>
<td>7.33</td>
<td>129.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nitration of benzene**

Now we’ve introduced to you the general principles of electrophilic aromatic substitution we need to delve into the details a little more and show you some real reactions of benzene. In each case, a powerful cationic electrophile is needed to persuade the unreactive benzene to act as a nucleophile.
We’ll start with nitration, the introduction of a nitro \((\text{NO}_2)\) group. Nitration requires very powerful reagents, the most typical being a mixture of concentrated nitric and sulfuric acids.

Sulfuric acid is the stronger acid and it produces the powerful electrophile \(\text{NO}_2^+\) by protonating the nitric acid so that a molecule of water can leave.

The nitronium ion \((\text{NO}_2^+)\) is linear—it’s isoelectronic with \(\text{CO}_2\), with an sp-hybridized nitrogen atom at the centre. It’s this nitrogen that is attacked by benzene, breaking one of the N=O bonds to avoid a five-valent nitrogen.

**Sulfonation of benzene**

Benzene reacts slowly with sulfuric acid alone to give benzenesulfonic acid. One molecule of sulfuric acid protonates another and loses a molecule of water. Notice the similarity with the first step of the nitration above.

The cation produced is very reactive and attacks benzene by the same mechanism we have seen for bromination and nitration—slow addition to the \(\pi\) system followed by rapid loss of a proton to regenerate aromaticity.

The product contains the sulfonic acid group \(\text{–SO}_2\text{OH}\). Sulfonic acids are strong acids, about as strong as sulfuric acid itself. They are stronger than HCl, for example, and can be isolated...
from the reaction mixture as their crystalline sodium salts if an excess of NaCl is added. Not many compounds react with NaCl!

![Sulfonation with H₂SO₄ or SO₃ in H₂SO₄ converts aromatic compounds (ArH) into aromatic sulfonic acids (ArSO₂OH). The electrophile is SO₃ or SO₃H⁺.](image1)

### Alkyl and acyl substituents can be added to a benzene ring by the Friedel–Crafts reaction

So far we have added heteroatoms only—bromine, nitrogen, or sulfur. Adding a carbon substituent to a reluctant aromatic nucleophile requires reactive carbon electrophiles and that means carbocations. In Chapter 15 you learned that any nucleophile, however weak, will react with a carbocation in the S₈₁ reaction: benzene rings are no exception. The classic S₈₁ electrophile is the tert-butyl cation, which is generated from tert-butanol with acid.

![Interactive mechanism for Friedel–Crafts alkylation](image2)

![Interactive mechanism for Friedel–Crafts acylation](image3)

This is, in fact, an unusual way to carry out such reactions. The Friedel–Crafts alkylation, as this is known, usually involves treating benzene with a tertiary alkyl chloride and the Lewis acid AlCl₃. Rather in the manner of the reaction with bromine, AlCl₃ removes the chlorine atom from t-BuCl and releases the t-Bu cation for the alkylation reaction.

![Interactive mechanism for Friedel–Crafts acylation](image4)

We have not usually bothered with the base that removes the proton from the intermediate. Here it is chloride ion as the by-product is HCl, so you can see that even a very weak base will do. Anything, such as water, chloride, or other counterions of strong acids, will do this job well enough and you need not in general be concerned with the exact agent.

A more important variation of this reaction is the Friedel–Crafts acylation with acid chlorides and AlCl₃. Aluminium chloride behaves with acyl chlorides much as it does with alkyl chlorides—it removes chloride to leave behind a cation. In this case the cation is a linear acylim ion, with the carbocation stabilized by the adjacent oxygen lone pair. When the acylim ion attacks the benzene ring it gives an aromatic ketone: the benzene ring has been acylated.

Charles Friedel (1832–1899), a French chemist, and James Crafts (1839–1917), an American mining engineer, both studied with Wurtz and then worked together in Paris, where in 1877 they discovered the reaction which now carries their names.
The acylation is better than the alkylation because it does not require any particular structural feature in the acyl chloride—R can be almost anything. In the alkylation step it is essential that the alkyl group can form a cation, otherwise the reaction does not work very well. In addition, for reasons we are about to explore, the acylation stops cleanly after one reaction whereas the alkylation often gives mixtures of products.

- **Friedel–Crafts reactions**

Friedel–Crafts alkylation with t-alkyl chlorides and Lewis acids (usually AlCl₃) gives t-alkyl benzenes. The more reliable Friedel–Crafts acylation with acid chlorides and Lewis acids (usually AlCl₃) gives aryl ketones.

**Summary of electrophilic substitution on benzene**

This completes our preliminary survey of the most important reactions in aromatic electrophilic substitution. We shall switch our attention to the benzene ring itself now and see what effects various types of substituent have on these reactions. During this discussion we will return to each of the main reactions and discuss them in more detail. Meanwhile, we conclude this introduction with an energy profile diagram for a typical substitution.

Since the first step involves the temporary disruption of the aromatic π system, and is therefore rate determining, it must have the higher-energy transition state. The intermediate is unstable and has a much higher energy than either the starting material or the products, close to that of the transition states for its formation and breakdown. The two transition states will be similar in structure to the intermediate and we shall use the intermediate as a model for the important first transition state.

- **Summary of the main electrophilic substitutions on benzene**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reaction</th>
<th>Reagents</th>
<th>Electrophile</th>
<th>Product</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bromination</td>
<td>Br₂ and Lewis acid, e.g. AlCl₃, FeBr₃, Fe powder</td>
<td>![Br] Br MXₙ</td>
<td>![Br] Br</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitration</td>
<td>HNO₃ + H₂SO₄</td>
<td>![O] N O</td>
<td>![NO₂] N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfonation</td>
<td>concentrated H₂SO₄ or H₂SO₄ + SO₃ (oleum)</td>
<td>![O] O O S O O S O O</td>
<td>![SO₂OH] O S O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedel–Crafts alkylation</td>
<td>RX + Lewis acid usually AlCl₃</td>
<td>![R] R</td>
<td>![R] R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedel–Crafts acylation</td>
<td>RCOCl + Lewis acid usually AlCl₃</td>
<td>![R] R O</td>
<td>![R] R O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This argument is based on the Hammond postulate, which suggests that structures close in energy that transform directly into each other are also similar in structure. For more on this, see Chapter 39.
Electrophilic substitution on phenols

We started this chapter by comparing phenols with enols and now we return to phenols and look at electrophilic substitution in full detail. You will find that the reaction is much easier than it was with benzene itself because phenols are like enols and the same reactions (bromination, nitration, sulfonation, and Friedel–Crafts reactions) occur more easily. There is a new question too: the positions round the phenol ring are no longer equivalent—so where does substitution take place?

Phenols react rapidly with bromine

Benzene does not react with bromine except with Lewis acid catalysis. Phenols react in a very different manner: no Lewis acid is needed, the reaction occurs very rapidly, and the product contains three atoms of bromine in specific positions. All that needs to be done is to add bromine dropwise to a solution of phenol in ethanol. Initially, the yellow colour of the bromine disappears but if, when the colour just remains, water is added, a white precipitate of 2,4,6-tribromophenol is formed.

The product shows that bromination has occurred at the para position and at both ortho positions. What a contrast to benzene! Phenol reacts three times, without catalysis, at room temperature. Benzene reacts once, and needs a Lewis acid to make the reaction go at all. The difference is, of course, the enol nature of phenol. The non-bonding lone pair of electrons at oxygen contribute to a much higher-energy HOMO than the low-energy bonding electrons in a benzene ring. We should let our mechanism show this. Starting in the para position:

Notice that we start the chain of arrows with the lone pair electrons on the OH group and push them through the ring so that they emerge at the para position to attack the bromine molecule. The benzene ring is acting as a conductor, allowing electrons to flow from the OH group to the bromine molecule.

Now the reaction is repeated, but this time at one of the two equivalent ortho positions:

Again the lone pair electrons on the OH group are fed through the benzene ring to emerge at the ortho position. A third bromination in the remaining ortho position—you could draw the mechanisms for this as practice—gives the final product 2,4,6-tribromophenol.
If you want to put just one bromine atom into a phenol, you must work at low temperature (<5 °C) and use just one equivalent of bromine. The best solvent is the rather dangerously inflammable carbon disulfide (CS₂), the sulfur analogue of CO₂. Under these conditions, para-bromophenol is formed in good yield as the main product (which is why we started the mechanism for bromination of phenol in the para position). The minor product is ortho-bromophenol.

\[
\text{HO} \quad \text{Br} \\
1 \times \text{Br}_2 \quad \text{CS}_2, <5 \, ^\circ\text{C} \\
\text{HO} \\
\text{4-bromophenol} \quad 85\% \text{ yield}
\]

The OH group is said to be ortho, para-directing towards electrophiles. No substitution occurs in either meta position. We can understand this by looking at the curly arrow mechanisms or by looking at the molecular orbitals. In Chapter 20 (p. 453) we looked at the π system of an enolate and saw how the electron density is located mainly on the end atoms (the oxygen and the carbon). In phenol it is the ortho and para positions that are electron-rich (and, of course, the oxygen itself). We can show this using curly arrows.

The curly arrows actually give an indication of the electron distribution in the HOMO of the molecule. The reason is that the HOMO has large coefficients at alternate atoms, just as the allyl anion had large coefficients at its ends but not in the middle (Chapter 7).

**NMR can give us some confirmation of the electron distribution**

The ¹H NMR shifts of phenol give us an indication of the electron distribution in the π system. The more electron density that surrounds a nucleus, the more shielded it is and so the smaller the shift (see Chapter 13). All the chemical shifts for the ring protons in phenol are smaller than those for benzene (7.26 ppm), which means that overall there is greater electron density in the ring. There is little difference between the ortho and the para positions: these are where the electron density is greatest and hence these are the sites for electrophilic attack. The chemical shift at the meta positions is not significantly different from those in benzene—this is where the electron density is lowest.

**Electrophilic attack on phenols**

OH groups on benzene rings are ortho, para-directing and activating.

You will get the right product if you start your arrows at a lone pair on the OH group.

**Oxygen substituents activate a benzene ring**

To brominate phenol, all we had to do was to mix bromine and phenol—if we do this with benzene itself, nothing happens. We therefore say that, relative to benzene, the OH group in phenol activates the ring towards electrophilic attack. The OH group is both activating and ortho, para-directing. Other groups that can donate electrons also activate and direct ortho, para. Anisole (methoxybenzene) is the ‘enol ether’ equivalent of phenol. It reacts faster than benzene with electrophiles.
2,4-D

The multiple chlorination of another oxygen-substituted compound, phenoxyacetic acid, leads to a useful product. Chlorination with two equivalents of chlorine provides 2,4-dichlorophenoxy acetic acid, which is the herbicide 2,4-D. The oxygen substituent again activates the ring and directs the chlorination to the ortho and para positions.

![Chemical Structure of Phenoxyacetic Acid and 2,4-Dichlorophenoxyacetic Acid]

Nitration of phenol is also very fast and can be problematic under the usual nitration conditions (conc. HNO₃, conc. H₂SO₄) because concentrated nitric acid oxidizes phenols. The solution is to use dilute nitric acid. The concentration of NO₂⁺ will be small but that does not matter with such a reactive benzene ring.

![Chemical Structure of Nitrophenols]

The product is a mixture of ortho- and para-nitrophenol from which the ortho compound can be separated by steam distillation. A strong intramolecular hydrogen bond reduces the availability of the OH group for intermolecular hydrogen bonding so the ortho compound has a lower boiling point.

**Paracetamol from a phenol**

The remaining para-nitrophenol is used in the manufacture of the painkiller paracetamol (also known as acetaminophen).

![Chemical Structure of Paracetamol]

The phenoxide ion is even more reactive towards electrophilic attack than phenol. It manages to react with such weak electrophiles as carbon dioxide. This reaction, known as the Kolbe–Schmitt process, is used industrially to prepare salicylic acid (2-hydroxybenzoic acid), a precursor in making aspirin.

![Chemical Structure of Salicylic Acid and Aspirin]
The O⁻ substituent is ortho, para-directing but the electrophilic substitution step with CO₂ gives mostly the ortho product. There must be some coordination between the sodium ion and the oxygen atoms of both the phenoxide and CO₂ that delivers the electrophile to the ortho position.

![Diagram of sodium phenoxide and sodium salicylate coordination](image)

**A nitrogen lone pair activates even more strongly**

Aniline (phenylamine) is even more reactive towards electrophiles than phenols, phenyl ethers, or phenoxide ions. Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, the lone pair is higher in energy and so even more available to interact with the π system than is the lone pair on oxygen. Reaction of aniline with bromine is very vigorous and rapidly gives 2,4,6-tri-bromoaniline. The mechanism is very similar to the bromination of phenol so we show only one ortho substitution to remind you of how it goes.

![Diagram of aniline bromination](image)

The ¹H NMR spectrum of aniline supports the increased electron density in the π system—the aromatic protons are even less deshielded than those of phenol as a result.

Just how good nitrogen is in donating electrons into the π system is shown by comparing the relative rates for the bromination of benzene, methoxybenzene (anisole), and N,N-dimethylaniline.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>Relative rate of bromination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benzene</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methoxybenzene (anisole)</td>
<td>OMe</td>
<td>10³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N,N-dimethylaniline</td>
<td>NMe₂</td>
<td>10¹⁴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Making aromatic amines less reactive**

The high reactivity of aniline can actually be a problem. Suppose we wanted to put just one bromine atom onto the ring. With phenol, this is possible (p. 480)—if bromine is added slowly to a solution of phenol in carbon disulfide solution and the temperature is kept below 5 °C, the main product is para-bromophenol. Not so if aniline is used—the main product is the triply substituted product.
How then could we prevent oversubstitution from occurring? What we need is a way to make aniline less reactive by preventing the nitrogen lone pair from interacting so strongly with the π system of the ring. Fortunately, it is very simple to do this. In Chapter 8 (p. 175) we saw how the nitrogen atom in an amide is much less basic than a normal amine because it is conjugated with the carbonyl group. This is the strategy that we will use here—simply acylate the amine to form an amide. The lone pair electrons on the nitrogen atom of the amide are conjugated with the carbonyl group as usual but their delocalization into the benzene ring is weaker than in the amine. The amide nitrogen donates less electron density into the ring, so the electrophilic aromatic substitution is more controlled. The lone pair is still there, but its power is tamed. Reaction still occurs in the ortho and para positions (mainly para) but it occurs once only.

After the reaction, the amide can be hydrolysed (here, with aqueous acid) back to the amine.

- Anilines react rapidly with electrophiles to give polysubstituted products. Their amide derivatives react in a more controlled manner to give para-substituted products.

**Selectivity between ortho and para positions**

Phenols and anilines react in the ortho and/or para positions for electronic reasons. These are the most important effects in deciding where an electrophilic substitution will occur on a benzene ring. When it comes to choosing between ortho and para positions we need to consider steric effects as well. You will have noticed that we have seen one ortho selective reaction—the formation of salicylic acid from phenol—and several para selective reactions such as the bromination of an amide just discussed.

If the reactions occurred merely statistically, we should expect twice as much ortho as para product because there are two ortho positions. However, we should also expect more steric hindrance in ortho substitution since the new substituent must sit closely beside the one already there. With large substituents, such as the amide, steric hindrance will be significant and it is not surprising that we get more para product.

There is another effect that decreases the amount of ortho substitution, and that is the inductive electron-withdrawing effect of an electronegative substituent. As you’ve seen, oxygen and nitrogen, although they are electronegative, activate the ring towards attack by donating π electron density from their lone pairs. At the same time, the C–O or C–N σ bond is polarized back towards the O or N atom—in other words, they donate electron density to the π system but withdraw electron density from the σ framework. This is inductive electron withdrawal—it affects the atoms nearest the O or N atom the most, and has the effect of decreasing the likelihood that attack will happen in the ortho positions.
Alkyl benzenes also react at the ortho and para positions

This is what happens when toluene (methylbenzene) meets bromine:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{Br} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me}
\end{align*}
\]

about 60% ortho  about 35% para  about 5% meta

Toluene reacts 4000 times faster than benzene (this may sound like a lot, but the rate constant for N,N-dimethylaniline is \(10^{14}\) times greater), and the electrophile attacks mostly the ortho and para positions. These two observations together suggest that the methyl groups may be increasing the electron density in the \(\pi\) system of the benzene ring, specifically in the ortho and para positions, rather like a weaker version of an OR group. The \(^1\)H NMR chemical shifts for toluene (see margin) do suggest that there is slightly more electron density in the para position than in the meta positions. All the shifts are smaller than those of benzene (but not by much) and the shielding is much less than it is in phenols or anilines.

The methyl group donates electrons weakly by conjugation. In phenol, a lone pair on oxygen is conjugated with the \(\pi\) system. In toluene there is no lone pair but one of the C–H \(\sigma\) bonds can still interact with the \(\pi\) system in a similar way. This interaction is known as \(\sigma\) conjugation. Just as the conjugation of the oxygen lone pair increases the electron density at the ortho and para positions, so too does \(\sigma\) conjugation, but far less so.

\(\sigma\) conjugation also means toluene's \(\pi\) electrons—its HOMO—become slightly higher in energy than those of benzene. It is best to regard alkyl benzenes as rather reactive benzenes, and to draw mechanisms using their \(\pi\) electrons as the nucleophile, like this:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{E} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{E} & \quad \text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

Electrophilic attack occurs on alkyl benzenes so that the positive charge ends up on the carbon bearing the alkyl group. This carbon is tertiary, making the cation there more stable. This condition is fulfilled if toluene is attacked at the ortho position, as shown above, but also at the para position, because in both cases the positive charge is delocalized onto the same three carbons atoms.

If, on the other hand, the electrophile were to attack at the meta position, the charge would end up delocalized over three carbon atoms, none of which are tertiary, so no stabilization by the alkyl group is possible. The situation is no worse than that of benzene, but given that toluene reacts some \(10^3\) times faster than benzene at the ortho and para positions these reactions win out. Nonetheless, unlike phenol, toluene does give trace amounts of meta-substituted products.
Protonating toluene with a superacid

On p. 475 we described how to observe the cationic intermediate in electrophilic substitution reactions of benzene by protonation in an NMR tube using a superacid. In benzene the cation which forms is symmetrical. Doing the same experiment with toluene leads to protonation in the para position.

The ortho (to the Me group) carbon has a shift ($\delta$ 139.5) only 10 ppm greater than that of benzene ($\delta$ 129.7) but the ipso and meta carbons have the very large shifts that we associate with cations. The charge is mainly delocalized to these carbons but the greatest charge is at the ipso carbon.

The sulfonation of toluene

Direct sulfonation of toluene with concentrated sulfuric acid gives a mixture of ortho and para sulfonic acids from which about 40% of toluene para sulfonic acid can be isolated as the sodium salt.

We shall use SO₃ as the electrophile in this case and draw the intermediate with the charge at the ipso carbon to show the stabilization from the methyl group.

You met the para-toluene sulfonate group (tosylate, OTs) as an important leaving group if you want to carry out an Sₘ₂ reaction on an alcohol (Chapter 15, p. 349) and the acid chloride (tosyl chloride, TsCl) needed to make tosylates can be made from the acid in the usual way (p. 215) with PCl₅. It can also be made directly from toluene by sulfonation with chlorosulfonic acid CISO₂OH. This reaction favours the ortho sulfonyl chloride, which is isolated by distillation.
No other acid is needed because chlorosulfonic acid is a very strong acid indeed and protonates itself to give the electrophile. This explains why OH is the leaving group rather than Cl and why chlorosulfonation rather than sulfonation is the result.

In drawing the mechanism we can again get the positive charge onto the tertiary ipso atom. No treatment with NaCl is needed in this reaction as the major product (the ortho acid chloride) is isolated by distillation.

It is fortunate that the ortho acid chloride is the major product in the chlorosulfonation because it is needed in the synthesis of saccharin, the first of the non-fattening sweeteners. The formation of the sulfonamide is like that of an ordinary amide, but the oxidation of the methyl group with potassium permanganate is probably new to you. It’s a rather vigorous reaction, but one which very usefully turns toluene derivatives into benzoic acid derivatives.

Alkylbenzenes react with electrophiles faster than benzene and give mixtures of ortho- and para-substituted products.

**Electron-withdrawing substituents give meta products**

So far, all of the substituted benzene rings we have considered have carried substituents capable of donating electron density to the ring: despite being electronegative atoms, oxygen and nitrogen have lone pairs which conjugate with the ring’s $\pi$ system; a similar but weaker effect results from $\sigma$ conjugation from a methyl group. Two consequences arise from these substituents: the ring becomes more reactive than benzene, and substitution takes place in the ortho and para positions.

So what happens with groups which pull electron density away from the ring? Such a group is the trimethylammonium substituent: the nitrogen is electronegative but unlike in aniline this electronegativity is not offset by donation of a lone pair—the nitrogen is tetrahedral and no longer has one to donate. Nitration of the phenyltrimethyl ammonium ion yields mainly...
the *meta* product. And it does so slowly too—this nitration proceeds about $10^7$ times more slowly than that of benzene.

The same thing happens with the CF$_3$ group. The three very electronegative fluorine atoms polarize the C–F bonds so much that the Ar–C bond is polarized too. Nitration of trifluoromethylbenzene gives a nearly quantitative yield of *meta* nitro compound.

Draw the mechanism for this reaction and you see the reason for the switch to *meta* selectivity.

If, on the other hand, the electrophile were to attack the *ortho* or *para* position (the hypothetical reaction *para* to CF$_3$ is shown below) then the carbon next to CF$_3$ would have to carry a positive charge, which would be destabilized by the electron withdrawal, making this a high-energy intermediate.

Think of it this way: the electron-deficient ring would really rather not react with an electrophile (hence the slower rate) but if it has to (because the electrophile is so reactive) then it takes the least bad course of keeping the positive charge away from the electron-withdrawing groups—and that means *meta* substitution.

**Some substituents withdraw electrons by conjugation**

Aromatic nitration is important because it is a convenient way of adding a nitrogen substituent to the ring and because it stops cleanly after one nitro group has been added. Double nitration of benzene is possible but stronger conditions must be used—fuming nitric acid instead of normal concentrated nitric acid—and the mixture must be refluxed at around 100 °C.
The second nitro group is introduced \textit{meta} to the first: evidently the nitro group is deactivating and \textit{meta}-directing.  

The nitro group is conjugated with the $\pi$ system of the benzene ring and is strongly electron withdrawing—and it withdraws electrons specifically from the \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions. We can use curly arrows to show this:

![Curly arrows showing electron withdrawal from \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions](image)

The nitro group withdraws electron density from the $\pi$ system of the ring thereby making the ring less reactive towards an electrophile. Since more electron density is removed from the \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions, the least electron-deficient position is the \textit{meta} position. Hence the nitro group is \textit{meta} directing. In the nitration of benzene, it is much harder to nitrate a second time and, if we insist, the second nitro group goes in \textit{meta} to the first.

Other reactions go the same way: bromination of nitrobenzene gives \textit{meta}-bromonitrobenzene in good yield. The combination of bromine and iron powder provides the necessary Lewis acid catalyst ($\text{FeBr}_3$) while the high temperature needed for this unfavourable reaction is easily achieved as the boiling point of nitrobenzene is over 200 °C.

![Bromination reaction](image)

In drawing the mechanism it is best to draw the intermediate and to emphasize that the positive charge must not be delocalized to the carbon atom bearing the nitro group.

![Mechanism showing delocalization of intermediate cation](image)

Nitro is just one of a number of groups that are also deactivating towards electrophiles and \textit{meta} directing because of electron withdrawal by conjugation. Others include carbonyl groups (aldehydes, ketones, esters, etc.), nitriles, and sulfonates. The $^1\text{H}$ NMR shifts of rings carrying these substituents confirm that they remove electrons principally from the \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions.
Points to note:

- Each of the compounds contains the unit Ph–X=Y, where Y is an electronegative element, usually oxygen.
- In each compound, all the protons have larger chemical shifts than benzene because the electron density at carbon is less.
- The protons in the meta position have the smallest shift and so the greatest electron density.

Nitro is the most electron-withdrawing of these groups and some of the other compounds are nearly as reactive (in the meta position, of course) as benzene itself. It is easy, for example, to nitrate methyl benzoate and the m-nitro ester can then be hydrolysed to meta-nitrobenzoic acid very easily.

One group of substituents remains and they are slightly odd. They are ortho, para-directing but they are also deactivating. They are the halogens.

**Halogens show evidence of both electron withdrawal and donation**

So far we have steered clear of the reactions of halogenated derivatives of benzene. Before we explain their reactions, have a look at the table, which shows the rates of nitration of fluoro, chloro, bromo, and iodobenzene relative to benzene itself, and also gives an indication of the products formed in each case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Products formed (%)</th>
<th>Nitrination rate (relative to benzene)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PhF</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.6 86 0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhCl</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.9 64 0.064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhBr</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>0.9 56 0.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhI</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.3 54 0.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We’ll come back to this table a few times in the next page or so, but the first thing to note is that all the halobenzenes react more slowly than benzene itself. Evidently, electron withdrawal by the electronegative halogen deactivates the ring towards attack. But the second thing that should strike you is that, unlike the deactivating groups we have just been discussing, halogens are ortho, para-directing—very few meta-nitrated products are formed.

The only way this makes sense is if there are two opposing effects: electron donation by conjugation and electron withdrawal by induction. The halogen has three lone pairs, one of which may conjugate with the ring just like in phenol or aniline. Yet the conjugation is much less good than in phenol or aniline, for one of two reasons. When Cl, Br, or I is the substituent, the problem is size: the 2p orbitals from the carbon atoms overlap poorly with the bigger p orbitals from the halogen (3p for chlorine, 4p for bromine, and 5p for iodine). This size mismatch is clearly illustrated by comparing the reactivities of aniline and chlorobenzene:
chlorine and nitrogen have approximately the same electronegativity, but aniline is much more reactive than chlorobenzene because of the better overlap between the carbon and nitrogen 2p orbitals. Fluorine 2p orbitals are the right size to overlap well with the carbon 2p orbitals, but now there is another problem: the orbitals of fluorine are much lower in energy than the orbitals of carbon since fluorine is so electronegative.

So, all four halogens are less good at donating electrons to the ring than an OH or NH$_2$ group, but not only are the halobenzenes less reactive than phenol or aniline, they are even less reactive than benzene itself. Now, when we looked at aniline and phenol, we didn’t worry about any electron withdrawal by induction, even though both oxygen and nitrogen are of course rather electronegative. Electron donation from their N and O lone pairs is evidently much more important. But with the conjugation in the halobenzenes already weak, inductive electron withdrawal takes over as the dominant factor in determining reactivity.

With all this in mind, how would you expect fluorobenzene to react? Most electron density is removed first from the ortho positions by induction, then from the meta positions, and then from the para position. Any conjugation of the lone pairs on fluorine with the π system would increase the electron density in the ortho and para positions. Both effects favour the para position and this is where most substitution occurs. But is the ring more or less reactive than benzene? This is hard to say and the honest answer is that sometimes fluorobenzene is more reactive in the para position than benzene (for example, in proton exchange and in acetylation—see later) and sometimes it is less reactive than benzene (for example, in nitration, as shown by the table above). In all cases, fluorobenzene is significantly more reactive than the other halobenzenes. We appreciate that this is a rather surprising conclusion, but the evidence supports it. For example, fluorobenzene reacts with bromine and an iron catalyst (it does need a catalyst: it is not as reactive as phenol) at only –20 °C to give the para-bromo derivative.

Let’s now look back in bit more detail at the table above. We can now also explain two other features of the results:

- The percentage of the ortho product increases from fluorobenzene to iodobenzene. We might have expected the amount to decrease as the size of the halide increases because of increased steric hindrance at the ortho position but this is clearly not the case. Instead the greater inductive effect of the more electronegative atoms (F, Cl) withdraws electron density mostly from the ortho positions, lessening their reactivity.
- The rates of the reactions fall into two pairs and follow a ‘U-shaped’ sequence: fluorobenzene nitrates most quickly, followed closely by iodobenzene; chloro-, and bromobenzene nitrate at around half these rates. Chlorine and bromine suffer because both are quite electronegative and neither has good lone pair overlap: in fluorine, overlap is good; in iodine, electronegativity is much less.

In practical terms, it is usually possible to get high yields of para products from electrophilic substitution reactions of halobenzenes. Both nitration and sulfonation of bromobenzene give enough material to make the synthesis worthwhile. Although mixtures of products are always bad in a synthesis, electrophilic aromatic substitution is usually simple to carry out on a large enough scale to make separation of the major product, ideally by crystallization, a workable method. A 68% yield of sodium p-bromobenzenesulfonate can be achieved by recrystallization of the sodium salt from water and a 70% yield of p-bromonitrobenzene by separation from the ortho isomer by recrystallization from EtOH.
Summary of directing and activating effects

Now we can summarize the stage we have reached in terms of activation and direction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electronic effect</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Activation</th>
<th>Direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>donation by conjugation</td>
<td>–NR₂, –OR</td>
<td>very activating</td>
<td>ortho, para only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donation by inductive effect</td>
<td>alkyl</td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>mostly ortho, para but some meta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donation by conjugation and withdrawal</td>
<td>F, Cl, Br, I</td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>ortho and (mostly) para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdrawal by inductive effect</td>
<td>–CF₃, –NR₂⁺</td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>meta only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdrawal by conjugation</td>
<td>–NO₂, –CN, –COR, –SO₃R</td>
<td>very deactivating</td>
<td>meta only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two or more substituents may cooperate or compete

The directing effects of two or more substituents can work with or against one another. Bromoxynil and ioxynil are contact herbicides especially used in spring cereals to control weeds resistant to other weedkillers, and both are synthesized from p-hydroxybenzaldehyde by double halogenation. The aldehyde directs meta and the OH group directs ortho: both effects work together to promote bromination or iodination at the same two positions.

In other cases substituents compete by directing to different positions. The antioxidant BHT (p. 58) is made from 4-methylphenol (known as p-cresol) by a Friedel–Crafts alkylation. Usually, both the methyl and OH groups are ortho, para directors. The para positions are obviously both blocked, but the positions ortho to each of the groups are different. Since the –OH group is much more powerfully directing than the methyl group it ‘wins’ and directs the electrophile (a t-buty1 cation) ortho to itself.

In this case the t-buty1 cation is made from the alkene and protic acid; alternative reagents would be t-butanol with protic acid or t-buty1 chloride with AlCl₃.

Even a ‘watered-down’ activating group like the amide –NHCOMe, which provides an extra pair of electrons, will ‘win’ over a deactivating group or an activating alkyl group. Bromination of this amide goes ortho to the –NHCOMe group but meta to the methyl group.
When looking at any compound where competition is an issue it is sensible to consider electronic effects first and then steric effects. For electronic effects, in general, any activating effects are more important than deactivating ones. For example, the aldehyde below has three groups—two methoxy groups that direct ortho and para and an aldehyde that directs meta.

Despite the fact that the aldehyde group withdraws electron density from positions 2 and 6, C6 is still the position for nitration. The activating methoxy groups dominate electronically and the choice is really between C2, C5, and C6. Now consider steric factors: reaction at C2 or C5 would lead to three adjacent substituents. Substitution occurs at position 6.

Some problems and some opportunities

You’ve seen plenty of electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions in this chapter that are reliable and widely used—bromination and nitration, for example. But others pose problems:

- Friedel–Crafts alkylation works only when the intermediate cation is stable, so how do we add an n-alkyl chain to an aromatic ring?
- There is no good way of introducing an oxygen electrophile to an aromatic ring, so how do we make Ar–O bonds?
- Electron-donating groups always direct ortho, para, so how do we put in a group meta to, for example, an amino group?

We will consider some answers to these questions in this last section of this chapter.

A closer look at Friedel–Crafts chemistry

Reactions such as nitration and sulfonation add a very deactivating substituent. They usually stop cleanly after a single substitution unless there is also a strongly activating substituent. Even then it may be possible to stop after a single substitution. Weakly electron-withdrawing substituents like the halogens can be added once, but multiple substitution is common when the starting arene carries strongly activating substituents like OH and NH₂.

Two reasons to avoid a Friedel–Crafts alkylation

When electron-donating substituents are added, multiple substitution is always a threat. The principal reaction where multiple substitution is a genuine problem is the Friedel–Crafts alkylation reaction. Here’s an example: preparation of diphenylmethane from benzene and benzyl chloride is a useful reaction but the product has two benzene rings, each more reactive than benzene itself. A 50% yield is the best we can do and that requires a large excess of benzene to ensure that it competes successfully for the reagent with the reactive, electron-rich product.
Multiple substitution is just one of the potential pitfalls of Friedel–Crafts alkylations. The other is important to be aware of too: **Friedel–Crafts alkylations work well only with stable cations.** This is what happens when we try a Friedel–Crafts reaction with \( n \)-propyl chloride.

Recall from Chapter 15 that primary halides don’t form cations easily, so the Friedel–Crafts reaction with \( n \)-propyl chloride has to go via an \( S_N2 \) mechanism.

So where does the major product of the reaction come from? The three carbons are arranged not as an \( n \)-propyl group but as an iso-propyl group: a *rearrangement* has occurred. This is the mechanism:

- Rerangement (migration of green H) leads to isopropyl benzene

The green hydrogen migrates to allow a secondary rather than a primary alkyl cation to be formed, and iso-propylbenzene results. This leaves us with a problem: how can you add primary alkyl groups to benzene rings?

**The solution: use Friedel–Crafts acylation instead**

We can kill two birds with one stone here: both problems common to the Friedel–Crafts alkylation are solved when the acylation is used instead. Firstly, the product of the acylation is a ketone: the reaction introduces a deactivating, electron-withdrawing, conjugating carbonyl group to the ring, so the product is less reactive than the starting material. Reaction will stop cleanly after one acylation. Here’s benzene reacting with propionyl chloride.

If we want the ketone then all well and good. But a simple reduction also allows us to get the alkylated product—this compound (trivially called propiophenone) is reduced to
propylbenzene using any of a number of reduction methods, for example zinc amalgam in hydrochloric acid.

\[
\text{Zn/Hg} \quad \text{HCl} \quad \rightarrow \quad n\text{-propylbenzene}
\]

The reduction of a Friedel–Crafts acylation product like this always gives an \( n \)-alkylbenzene, exactly the sort of compound that causes the problems in Friedel–Crafts alkylation. Friedel–Crafts acylations also work well when anhydrides are used in the place of acid chlorides. The acylium ion is formed in the same way:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{AlCl} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{AlCl}_3 \\
\text{R} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{AlCl}_3 & \quad + \\
\text{acylium ion} & \quad \text{anhydride}
\end{align*}
\]

If a cyclic anhydride is used, the product is a keto-acid.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{+} & \quad 2.2 \text{ equivalents} \\
\text{2-benzoylpropanoic acid} & \quad \text{succinic anhydride} (\text{the anhydride of butanedioic acid, or succinic acid}) \\
\text{AlCl}_3 & \quad \text{3-benzoylpropanoic acid}
\end{align*}
\]

Reduction of the ketone can give a simpler carboxylic acid, but we can go one step further and do another acylation—because the reaction is intramolecular, it goes even with just a strong acid (phosphoric acid): the strong acid makes the OH into a good leaving group (water) and the acylium ion is again an intermediate.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{Zn / Hg} & \quad \text{HCl} \\
\text{4-phenylbutanoic acid} & \quad \text{H}_3\text{PO}_4 \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

\begin{itemize}
\item The advantages of acylation over alkylation
\item Two problems in Friedel–Crafts alkylation do not arise with acylation.
\item The acyl group in the product withdraws electrons from the \( \pi \) system, making multiple substitutions harder. Indeed, if the ring is too deactivated to start off with, Friedel–Crafts acylation may not be possible at all—nitrobenzene is inert to Friedel–Crafts acylation and is often used as a solvent for these reactions.
\item Rearrangements are also no longer a problem because the electrophile, the acylium cation, is already relatively stable.
\item The acyl groups of the products can be reduced to primary alkyl groups, which are impossible to introduce cleanly by Friedel–Crafts alkylation.
\end{itemize}

### Exploiting the chemistry of the nitro group

The nitro group is remarkably useful in a number of ways:

\begin{itemize}
\item It is easy to introduce by nitration chemistry (p. 476).
\item Unlike most N- or O-based functional groups, it is a meta director (p. 488).
\item It can be reduced to an amino group.
\item It can be replaced with other substituents using diazonium chemistry.
\end{itemize}
You have met the first two of these features, but the last two may be new to you. An aromatic nitro group is easy to turn into an amino group—a number of reagents will do this, but the most common are tin in dilute HCl or hydrogenation with a palladium catalyst supported on charcoal (written as Pd/C).

\[
\text{NO}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2, \text{Pd/C} \text{ or Sn, dil. HCl}} \text{NH}_2
\]

This simple transformation is extremely important because it turns the meta-directing nitro group into an ortho, para-directing amino group (although as you saw on p. 483, the amino group may need ‘taming’ to make its reactivity useful). The sequence of nitration—reduction allows us to introduce a useful NH\textsubscript{2} equivalent into an aromatic molecule, and can let us make otherwise difficult-to-form meta-substituted amino compounds.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HNO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \rightarrow \text{NO}_2 \\
\text{H}_2, \text{Pd/C} \text{ or Sn, dil. HCl} & \rightarrow \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

The reduction to an amino group also opens up the possibility of replacing the nitrogen substituent completely, by converting it first to a diazonium group. Treatment of an amine with nitrous acid converts it to an unstable diazonium salt, whose mechanism of formation and chemistry we will discuss in the next chapter. Not surprisingly, diazonium salts very readily lose nitrogen gas, and this substitution of N\textsubscript{2} by a nucleophile opens yet more opportunities to compounds derived from nitrobenzene derivatives. It also involves nucleophilic substitution at the aromatic ring, which forms the subject of the next chapter.

\[
\text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NaNO}_2, \text{HCl, 0 °C}} \text{diazonium salt} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{OH}
\]

### Summary

#### Products from electrophilic substitution reactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Reaction</th>
<th>Reagents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Br</td>
<td>bromination</td>
<td>Br\textsubscript{2} and Lewis acid, e.g. AlCl\textsubscript{3}, FeBr\textsubscript{3}, Fe powder</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO\textsubscript{2}</td>
<td>nitrulation</td>
<td>HNO\textsubscript{3} + H\textsubscript{2}SO\textsubscript{4}</td>
<td>476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH\textsubscript{2}</td>
<td>reduction of nitro compounds</td>
<td>From ArNO\textsubscript{2}; Sn, HCl or H\textsubscript{2}, Pd/C</td>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diazonium salts are discussed on p. 520. Chapter 40 introduces the idea of using transition metals in the formation of bonds to aromatic rings, while Chapter 24 revisits the methods available when control of regiochemistry (i.e. ortho, meta, or para selectivity) is needed.
Products from electrophilic substitution reactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Reaction</th>
<th>Reagents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
X \\
\end{array}
\]
| substitution of diazonium salts | From ArNH₂: 1. NaNO₂, HCl; 2. X⁻ | See Chapter 22, p. 520 |
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
X = OH, CN, Br, I... \\
\end{array}
\]| | | |
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
SO₃H \\
\end{array}
\]| sulfonation | concentrated H₂SO₄ or H₂SO₄ + SO₃ (oleum) | 476 |
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
SO₂Cl \\
\end{array}
\]| chlorosulfonation | CISO₃H | 486 |
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
R \\
\end{array}
\]| Friedel–Crafts alkylation | RX + Lewis acid, usually AlCl₃ | 477 |
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
O \\
\end{array}
\]| Friedel–Crafts acylation | RCOCl + Lewis acid, usually AlCl₃ | 477 |
| \[
\begin{array}{c}
R \\
\end{array}
\]| Friedel–Crafts acylation and reduction | From ArCOR: Zn/Hg, HCl | 493 |

Reactions of aromatic compounds in this chapter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Starting material</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Activating/deactivating</th>
<th>Directing effect</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benzene, PhH</td>
<td></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phenol, PhOH</td>
<td></td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>ortho, para</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anisole, PhOMe</td>
<td></td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>ortho, para</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aniline, PhNH₂</td>
<td></td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>ortho, para</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ArNHCOR (anilides)</td>
<td></td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>ortho, para</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toluene and alkylbenzenes, PhR</td>
<td></td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>ortho, para</td>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reactions of aromatic compounds in this chapter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Starting material</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Activating/deactivating</th>
<th>Directing effect</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nitrobenzene, PhNO₂</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="nitrobenzene" /></td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>meta</td>
<td>488*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acylbenzenes, PhCOR (acetophenone, benzophenone)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="acylbenzenes" /></td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>meta</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzonitrile, PhCN</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="benzonitrile" /></td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>meta</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halobenzenes, PhX</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="halobenzenes" /></td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>ortho, para</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For methods of converting nitro substituents to other groups by reduction, diazotization and substitution, see pp. 520 and 567, and Chapters 22 and 24.

**Further reading**


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Conjugate addition and nucleophilic aromatic substitution

Alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups

To start this chapter, let us take you back to one of the first reactions we introduced: nucleophilic addition to carbonyl groups. Here are two examples, both of which give products which you should fully expect. We've included details of the IR spectra of the products to confirm firstly that the product has no carbonyl group and secondly that the alkene is still there.

Now let’s tweak the conditions: we repeat the first reaction at a higher temperature, and we add to the second a small amount of a copper salt. Now the products are different:
Both products A and B have kept their carbonyl group (IR peak at 1710–1715 cm$^{-1}$) but have lost the C=C. Yet A, at least, is unquestionably an addition product because it contains a C≡N peak at 2250 cm$^{-1}$.

Well, the identities of A and B are revealed here: they are the products of addition, not to the carbonyl group, but to the C=C bond. Here’s a mechanism, for both reactions of cyanide: firstly the direct addition to C=O and secondly addition to the C=C bond.

This type of reaction, where a nucleophile adds to a C=C double bond, is called conjugate addition, and this chapter is about the sorts of alkenes (and arenes) that do this kind of thing. We will also explain how such small differences in reaction conditions (temperature, or the presence of CuCl) manage to change the outcome so dramatically.

But first we need to place these conjugate additions into context. As you found out in Chapter 19, alkenes are nucleophilic. Almost regardless of their substituents, they react with electrophiles such as bromine to form adducts in which the π bond of the alkene has been replaced by two σ bonds.

Even when the alkene is conjugated with an electron-withdrawing group, as the alkenes on the last page were, bromine addition still occurs, although less readily. Never lose sight of this: alkenes are nucleophilic.

But as we have just seen, this last type of alkene also reacts with nucleophiles (such as cyanide, Grignard reagents, and, as you see below, more besides), and we now need to consider why.

**Conjugated alkenes can be electrophilic**

Conjugate additions occur only when the C=C double bond is immediately adjacent to the C=O group. They don’t occur to C=C bonds that aren’t conjugated (see the box on p. 501 for an illustration of this).

Compounds with double bonds adjacent to a C=O group are known as α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Many α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds have trivial names, and some are shown here. Some classes of α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds also have names such as ‘enone’, made up of ‘ene’ (for the double bond) + ‘one’ (for ketone).
The α and β refer to the distance of the double bond from the C=O group: the α carbon is the one next to C=O (not the carbonyl carbon itself), the β carbon is one further down the chain, and so on.

Most types of nucleophiles can be made to undergo conjugate additions with α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, and seven examples are shown below. Note that many of these nucleophiles would not add to a simple carbonyl group: we will explain why shortly. Conjugate addition is also known as Michael addition, and the reactive α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds shown here are often known as Michael acceptors.

Nucleophile:
- cyanide
  \[ \text{KCN} + \text{C} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{NC} = \text{O} \]
- amines
  \[ \text{Et}_2\text{NH} + \text{C} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{Et}_2\text{N} = \text{O} \]
- alcohols
  \[ \text{MeOH} + \text{C} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{MeO} = \text{O} \]
- thiols
  \[ \text{MeSH} + \text{C} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{MeS} = \text{O} \]
- bromide
  \[ \text{HBr} + \text{C} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{Br} = \text{O} \]
- chloride
  \[ \text{HCl} + \text{C} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{Cl} = \text{O} \]
- benzene
  \[ \text{C} + \text{C} \rightarrow \text{C} = \text{O} \]

The reason that α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds react differently is conjugation, the phenomenon we discussed in Chapter 7. There we introduced you to the idea that bringing two π systems (two C=C bonds, for example, or a C=C bond and a C=O bond) close together leads to a stabilizing interaction. It also leads to modified reactivity, because the π bonds no longer react as independent functional groups but as a single, conjugated system.

- Conjugation makes alkenes electrophilic
  - C=C double bonds are nucleophilic
  - C=C double bonds conjugated with carbonyl groups can be electrophilic
Termite self-defence and the reactivity of alkenes
Soldier termites of the species Schedorhinotermes lamanianus defend their nests with secretions of the enone shown below (compound 1), which is very effective at taking part in conjugate addition reactions with thiols (RSH). This makes it highly toxic, since many important biochemicals carry SH groups (one is described on p. 508). The worker termites of the same species—who build the nests—need to be able to avoid being caught in the crossfire, so they are equipped with an enzyme that allows them to reduce compound 1 to compound 2. This still has a double bond, but the double bond is completely unreactive towards nucleophiles because it is not conjugated with a carbonyl group. The workers escape unharmed.

Alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups become polarized
To show why alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups behave differently from unconjugated alkenes, we use curly arrows to indicate delocalization of the π electrons over the four atoms in the conjugated system. Both representations are extremes, and the true structure lies somewhere in between, but the polarized structure indicates why the conjugated C=C bond is electrophilic and why the β carbon is attacked by nucleophiles.

Polarization is detectable spectroscopically
IR spectroscopy provides us with evidence for polarization in C=C bonds conjugated to C=O bonds. An unconjugated ketone C=O absorbs at 1715 cm$^{-1}$ while an unconjugated alkene C=C absorbs (usually rather weakly) at about 1650 cm$^{-1}$. Bringing these two groups into conjugation in an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound leads to two peaks at 1675 and 1615 cm$^{-1}$, respectively, both quite intense. The lowering of the frequency of both peaks is consistent with a weakening of both π bonds (notice that the polarized structure has only single bonds where the C=O and C=C double bonds were). The increase in the intensity of the C=C absorption is consistent with polarization brought about by conjugation with C=O: a conjugated C=C bond has a significantly larger dipole moment than its unconjugated cousins.

The polarization of the C=C bond is also evident in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum, with the signal for the sp$^2$ carbon atom furthest from the carbonyl group moving downfield relative to an unconjugated alkene to about 140 ppm, and the signal for the other double bond carbon atom staying at about 120 ppm.

Molecular orbitals control conjugate additions
We have spectroscopic evidence that a conjugated C=C bond is polarized, and we can explain this with curly arrows, but the actual bond-forming step must involve movement of electrons from the HOMO of the nucleophile to the LUMO of the unsaturated carbonyl compound. This example is an efficient (the reaction happens even at 0 °C) addition to acrolein (propanal) with methoxide as the nucleophile.
But what does this LUMO look like? It will certainly be more complicated than the $\pi^*$ LUMO of a simple carbonyl group. The nearest thing you have met so far (in Chapter 7) are the orbitals of butadiene ($\text{C}=$ $\text{C}$ conjugated with $\text{C}=$ $\text{C}$), which we can compare with the $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated aldehyde acrolein ($\text{C}=$ $\text{C}$ conjugated with $\text{C}=$ $\text{O}$). The orbitals in the $\pi$ systems of butadiene and acrolein are shown here. They are different because acrolein’s orbitals are perturbed (distorted) by the oxygen atom (Chapter 4). You need not be concerned with exactly how the sizes of the orbitals are worked out, but for the moment just concentrate on the shape of the LUMO, the orbital that will accept electrons when a nucleophile attacks.

In the LUMO, the largest coefficient is on the $\beta$ carbon of the $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated system, shown with an asterisk. And it is here, therefore, that nucleophiles attack. In the reaction you have just seen, the HOMO is the methoxide oxygen’s lone pair, so this will be the key orbital interaction that gives rise to the new bond.

The second largest coefficient is on the $\text{C}=\text{O}$ carbon atom, so it’s not surprising that some nucleophiles attack here as well—remember the example right at the beginning of the chapter where you saw cyanide attacking either the double bond or the carbonyl group depending on the conditions of the reaction. We shall next look at some conjugate additions with alcohols and amines as nucleophiles, before reconsidering the question of where the nucleophile attacks.
Conjugate additions have enolates or enols as intermediates

So much for the addition step of the reaction. But the product of this step is of course not the final product of the reaction—it is in fact an enolate. We hope you recognize these species from Chapter 20, where you saw them being made by treating carbonyl compounds with base. Conjugate addition is another way of generating an enolate, and as with all enolates, protonation gives back a carbonyl compound. The proton has to come from somewhere, so conjugate additions are usually done in protic solvents (such as alcohols or water). Here is another example with an alcohol as the nucleophile:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{NaOH} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}, -5 °\text{C} \\
\end{align*}
\]

60% yield

In alkaline solution, a small amount of alkoxide is produced (the \( pK_a \) of an alcohol is slightly higher than that of water), which attacks the \( \text{C} = \text{C} \) double bond in a conjugate addition. The product is an enolate, which is protonated by water to give the final aldehyde, and regenerates hydroxide as it does so: only a catalytic amount of base is required for this type of reaction.

Amines are good nucleophiles for conjugate addition. In the reaction below, aqueous dimethylamine is used in a sealed system to stop the amine evaporating (dimethylamine is a gas even at room temperature).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{Me}_2\text{NH} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{50 °C, 1 h} \\
\end{align*}
\]

50% yield

Amines are neutral nucleophiles, and the amine itself provides a proton for the enolate.

If you survey the initial overview of conjugate additions on p. 500 you will see that several take place under acidic conditions. Treatment of this \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated ketone with HCl, for example, gives a chloroketone. The first step must be protonation of the carbonyl group, which makes the enone even more electrophilic by giving it a positive charge. Chloride attacks the \( \beta \) carbon to give an enol.
All that remains to happen now is tautomerism of the enol to its keto form by proton transfer from O to C.

**Conjugate addition or direct addition to the carbonyl group?**

We have shown you several examples of conjugate additions using various nucleophiles and α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, but we haven’t yet addressed one important question. When do nucleophiles do conjugate addition (also called 1,4-addition) and when do they add directly to the carbonyl group (1,2-addition)? Several factors are involved—they are summarized here, and we will spend the next section of this chapter discussing them in turn.

The way that nucleophiles react depends on:
- the conditions of the reaction
- the nature of the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound
- the type of nucleophile.

**Reaction conditions**

The very first conjugate addition reaction in this chapter depended on the conditions of the reaction. Treating an enone with cyanide and an acid catalyst at low temperature gives a cyanohydrin by direct attack at C=O, while heating the reaction mixture leads to conjugate addition. What is going on?

We’ll consider the low-temperature reaction first. As you know from Chapter 6, it is quite normal for cyanide to react with a ketone under these conditions to form a cyanohydrin. You also know from Chapter 6 that cyanohydrin formation is reversible. Even if the equilibrium for cyanohydrin formation lies well over to the side of the products, there will always be a small amount of starting enone remaining. Most of the time, this enone will react to form more cyanohydrin and, as it does, some cyanohydrin will decompose back to enone plus cyanide—such is the nature of a dynamic equilibrium. But every now and then—at a much slower rate—the starting enone will undergo a *conjugate addition* with the cyanide.
Now we have a different situation: conjugate addition is essentially an irreversible reaction, so once a molecule of enone has been converted to conjugate addition product, its fate is sealed: it cannot go back to enone again. Very slowly, therefore, the amount of conjugate addition product in the mixture will build up. In order for the enone–cyanohydrin equilibrium to be maintained, any enone that is converted to conjugate addition product will have to be replaced by reversion of cyanohydrin to enone plus cyanide. Even at room temperature, we can therefore expect the cyanohydrin to be converted bit by bit to conjugate addition product. This may take a very long time, but reaction rates are faster at higher temperatures, so at 80 °C this process does not take long at all and, after a few hours, the cyanohydrin has all been converted to conjugate addition product.

The contrast between the two products is this: the cyanohydrin is formed faster than the conjugate addition product, and is known as the product of kinetic control (or the kinetic product), but the conjugate addition product is the more stable compound and is the product of thermodynamic control (or the thermodynamic product). Typically, kinetic control involves lower temperatures and shorter reaction times, which ensures that only the fastest reaction has the chance to occur. And, typically, thermodynamic control involves higher temperatures and long reaction times to ensure that even the slower reactions have a chance to occur, and all the material is converted to the more stable compound.

---

**Kinetic and thermodynamic control**

- The product that forms faster is called the kinetic product.
- The product that is the more stable is called the thermodynamic product.

Similarly,

- Conditions that give rise to the kinetic product are called kinetic control.
- Conditions that give rise to the thermodynamic product are called thermodynamic control.

---

Why is direct addition faster than conjugate addition? Well, although the carbon atom β to the C=O group carries some positive charge, the carbon atom of the carbonyl group carries more, and so electrostatic attraction for the charged nucleophiles will encourage it to attack the carbonyl group directly rather than undergo conjugate addition.

And why is the conjugate addition product the more stable? In the conjugate addition product, we gain a C–C σ bond, losing a C=σ bond, but keeping the C=O π bond. With direct addition, we still gain a C–C bond, but we lose the C=O π bond and keep the C=O σ bond. C=O π bonds are stronger than C=C π bonds, so the conjugate addition product is more stable.

Practically, then, to get conjugate addition to occur you just have to give the reaction plenty of energy and maybe plenty of time to find its way to the most stable product. Here’s an example: note the temperature!

---

**Structural factors**

So far we have shown you conjugate additions mainly of α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and unsaturated α,β-ketones. You won’t be at all surprised to learn, however, that unsaturated acids, esters, amides, and nitriles—in fact all carboxylic acid derivatives—can also take part in conjugate addition reactions. Two examples, an amide and an ester, are shown on the right below. But notice how the selectivity of these reactions depends on the structure of the unsaturated compound: compare the way butyllithium adds to this α,β-unsaturated aldehyde and α,β-unsaturated amide. Both additions are irreversible, and BuLi attacks the reactive carbonyl group of the aldehyde, but prefers conjugate addition to the less reactive amide. Similarly, ammonia reacts with this acyl chloride to give an amide product that derives from direct...
addition to the carbonyl group, while with the ester it undergoes conjugate addition to give an amine.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{1. BuLi, } & \ -70 ^\circ \text{C to } +20 ^\circ \text{C} \\
\text{2. } H_2O
\end{align*}
\]

In both of these cases, the site of nucleophilic attack is determined simply by reactivity: the more reactive the carbonyl group, the more direct addition to \( C=O \) will result. The most reactive carbonyl groups, as you saw in Chapter 10, are those that are not conjugated with \( O \) or \( N \) (as they are in esters and amides), and particularly reactive are acyl chlorides and aldehydes. In general, the proportion of direct addition to the carbonyl group follows the reactivity sequence in the margin.

Sodium borohydride is a nucleophile that you have seen reducing simple aldehydes and ketones to alcohols, but it will also do conjugate addition reactions. Which of the alternatives actually takes place depends on the reactivity of the \( C=O \) group. \( NaBH_4 \) usually reacts with \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated aldehydes to give alcohols by direct addition to the carbonyl group.

Quite common with ketones, however, is the outcome below.

The borohydride has reduced not only the carbonyl group but the double bond as well. In fact, it’s the double bond that’s reduced first in a conjugate addition, followed by addition to the carbonyl group.

Luche reduction
It is possible to force \( NaBH_4 \) to attack only the \( C=O \) group by adding \( CeCl_3 \) to the reaction mixture. This modification is known as the Luche reduction, after its discoverer.

For esters and other less reactive carbonyl compounds conjugate addition is the only reaction that occurs because \( NaBH_4 \) doesn’t reduce esters or amides.

The nature of the nucleophile: hard or soft
Among the best nucleophiles of all at doing conjugate addition are thiols, the sulfur analogues of alcohols. In this example, the nucleophile is thiophenol (phenol with the \( O \) replaced by \( S \)).
Remarkably, no acid or base catalyst is needed (as it was with the alcohol additions), and the product is obtained in 94% yield under quite mild reaction conditions.

So what’s so special about a thiol? As you’ve seen already, attraction between nucleophiles and electrophiles is governed by two related interactions—electrostatic attraction between positive and negative charges and orbital overlap between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the electrophile. Successful reactions usually result from a combination of both, but sometimes reactivity can be dominated by one or the other. The dominant factor, be it electrostatic or orbital control, depends on the nucleophile and electrophile involved. Nucleophiles containing small, electronegative atoms (such as O or Cl), which we call ‘hard’, tend to react under predominantly electrostatic control, while ‘soft’ nucleophiles containing larger atoms (including the sulfur of thiols, but also P, I, and Se) are predominantly subject to control by orbital overlap.

The table below divides some nucleophiles into the two categories (plus some that lie in between)—but don’t try to learn it! Rather, convince yourself that the properties of each one justify its location in the table. Most of these nucleophiles you have not yet seen in action, and the most important ones at this stage are indicated in bold type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hard and soft nucleophiles</th>
<th>Borderline</th>
<th>Soft nucleophiles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hard nucleophiles</td>
<td>Borderline</td>
<td>Soft nucleophiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F⁻, OH⁻, RO⁻, SO₄²⁻, Cl⁻</td>
<td>N₂⁻, CN⁻</td>
<td>F⁻, RS⁻, RSe⁻, S²⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂O, ROH, ROR', RCO'R</td>
<td>R NH₂, R¹R²NH</td>
<td>RSH, RSR', R¹P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH₃, RMgBr, RLi</td>
<td>Br⁻</td>
<td>alkenes, aromatic rings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not only can nucleophiles be classified as hard or soft, but electrophiles can too. For example, H⁺ is a very hard electrophile because it is small and charged, while Br₂ is a soft electrophile: its orbitals are diffuse and it is uncharged. You saw Br₂ reacting with an alkene earlier in the chapter, and we explained in Chapter 5 that this reaction happens solely because of orbital interactions: no charges are involved.

**Hard/soft reactivity**

- Reactions of hard species are dominated by charges and electrostatic effects.
- Reactions of soft species are dominated by orbital effects.
- Hard nucleophiles tend to react well with hard electrophiles.
- Soft nucleophiles tend to react well with soft electrophiles.

What has all this to do with the conjugate addition of thiols? Well, an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound is unusual in that it has two electrophilic sites, one of which is hard and one of which is soft. The carbonyl group has a high partial charge on the carbonyl carbon and will tend to react with hard nucleophiles, such as organolithium and Grignard reagents, that have a high partial charge on the nucleophilic carbon atom. Conversely, the β carbon of the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl system does not have a high partial positive charge but is the site of the largest coefficient in the LUMO. This makes the β carbon a soft electrophile and likely to react well with soft nucleophiles such as thiols.

**Hard/soft—direct/conjugate addition**

- Hard nucleophiles tend to react at the carbonyl carbon (hard) of an enone.
- Soft nucleophiles tend to react at the β carbon (soft) of an enone and lead to conjugate addition.
Anticancer drugs that work by conjugate addition of thiols

Drugs to combat cancer act on a range of biochemical pathways, but most commonly on processes that cancerous cells need to use to proliferate rapidly. One class attacks DNA polymerase, an enzyme needed to make the copy of DNA that has to be provided for each new cell. Helenalin and vernolepin are two such compounds, and if you look closely at their structure you should be able to spot two α,β-unsaturated carbonyl groups in each. Biochemistry is just chemistry in very small flasks called cells, and the reaction between DNA polymerase and these drugs is simply a conjugate addition reaction between a thiol (the SH group of one of the enzyme’s cysteine residues) and the unsaturated carbonyl groups. The reaction is irreversible and shuts down completely the function of the enzyme.

For this reason any compound capable of conjugate addition is potentially dangerous to living things. Even simple compounds like ethyl acrylate are labelled ‘cancer suspect agents’. They attack enzymes, particularly the DNA polymerase involved in cell division by conjugate addition to thiol and amino groups in the enzyme. Fortunately, we are offered some degree of protection by an important compound present in most tissues. The compound is glutathione, a tripeptide—a compound made from three amino acids. We shall discuss such compounds in more detail later in the book (Chapter 42) but notice for the moment that this compound can be divided into three at the two amide bonds.

Promoting conjugate addition with copper(I) salts

Grignard reagents add directly to the carbonyl group of α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones to give allylic alcohols: you have seen several examples of this, and you can now explain it by saying that the hard Grignard reagent prefers to attack the harder C=O rather than the softer C=C electrophilic centre. Here is a further example—the addition of MeMgBr to a cyclic ketone to give an allylic alcohol, plus, as it happens, some of a diene that arises from this alcohol by loss of water (dehydration). Below this example is the same reaction to which a very small amount (just 0.01 equivalents, that is, 1%) of copper(I) chloride has been added. The effect of the copper is dramatic: it makes the Grignard reagent undergo conjugate addition, with only a trace of the diene.
Organocopper reagents undergo conjugate addition

The copper works by *transmetallating* the Grignard reagent to give an organocopper reagent—simply put, the magnesium is exchanged for copper. Organocoppers are softer than Grignard reagents, and add in a conjugate fashion to the softer C=C double bond. Once the organocopper has added, the copper salt is available to transmetallate some more Grignard, and only a catalytic amount is required.

The organocopper is shown here as ‘Me–Cu’ because its precise structure is not known. But there are other organocopper reagents that also undergo conjugate addition and are much better understood. The simplest result from the reaction of two equivalents of organolithium with one equivalent of a copper (I) salt such as CuBr in ether or THF solvent at low temperature. The lithium cuprates (R₂CuLi) that are formed are not stable and must be used immediately.

The silicon works by reacting with the negatively charged intermediate in the conjugate addition reaction to give a silyl enol ether—a type of molecule we met in Chapter 20. Here is a possible mechanism for a reaction between Bu₂CuLi and an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde in the presence of Me₃SiCl. The silyl enol ether simply hydrolysates to the ketone at the end of the reaction.

Summary: factors controlling conjugate addition

At this point in the chapter it is worthwhile talking stock of the factors controlling the two modes of addition to α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds.
Conjugate (1,4 or Michael) vs direct (1,2) addition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reaction conditions (for reversible additions):</th>
<th>Conjugate addition favoured by</th>
<th>Direct addition to C=O favoured by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermodynamic control: high temperatures, long reaction times</td>
<td>Unreactive C=O group, amide, ester</td>
<td>Reactive C=O group, aldehyde, acyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kinetic control: low temperatures, short reaction times</td>
<td>Unhindered β carbon</td>
<td>Hindered β carbon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Structure of α,β-unsaturated compound:
- Unreactive C=O group (amide, ester)
- Unhindered β carbon
- Soft nucleophiles
- Organocoppers or catalytic Cu(I)
- Hard nucleophiles
- Organolithiums, Grignard reagents

Extending the reaction to other electron-deficient alkenes

It’s not only carbonyl-based groups that make alkenes react with nucleophiles rather than the more usual electrophiles. Other electron-withdrawing groups do just the same thing. Here are two examples: a nitrile and a nitro group. These compound classes appeared in Chapter 21 in the context of aromatic substitution reactions where we saw them pulling electron density away from the ring. The same thing happens here.

Unsaturated nitriles and nitro compounds

The simplest conjugated nitrile is acrylonitrile. This compound adds amines readily. No special conditions are needed to encourage attack at C=C rather than C≡N because the nitrile carbon is rather unreactive as an electrophilic centre.

\[ \text{Et}_2\text{NH} \quad \text{Et}_2\text{N}^+ \quad \text{CN}^- \quad \text{MeHN} \quad \text{MeN}^+ \quad \text{CN}^- \]

The amine first attacks the alkene in a typical conjugate addition to make an anion stabilized by being next to the nitrile. The anion can have its charge drawn on C or N: it is delocalized like an enolate. Do not be put off by the odd appearance of the ‘enolate’. The dot between the two double bonds is a reminder that there is a linear sp carbon atom at this point.

Protonation at carbon restores the nitrile and gives the product—an amino-nitrile. The whole process adds a 2-cyano-ethyl group to the amine and is known industrially as cyanoethylation.

With a primary amine, the reaction need not stop at that stage as the product is still nucleophilic and a second addition can occur to replace the second hydrogen atom on nitrogen.
Other elements such as O, S, or P can add too. Phenyl phosphine can undergo a double addition just as in the last example, but alcohols can add only once. If there is competition between a first-row (for example N or O) and a second-row (for example S or P) element, the second-row element normally wins, for the reasons discussed above (p. 507).

The nitro group \((\text{NO}_2)\) is extremely electron-withdrawing—about twice as electron-withdrawing as a carbonyl group. It is also unreactive as an electrophilic centre, which makes conjugate addition to nitro-alkenes a very reliable reaction. In this example, sodium borohydride attacks the \(\text{C}=\text{C}\) bond in a conjugate manner to give an intermediate looking rather like an enolate anion, with a negatively charged oxygen atom conjugated to an \((\text{N}=\text{C})\) double bond. It reacts like an enolate too, picking up a proton on carbon to re-form the nitro group and give a stable product.

**Conjugate substitution reactions**

Just as direct addition to \(\text{C}=\text{O}\) (Chapter 6) becomes substitution at \(\text{C}=\text{O}\) (Chapter 10) when there is a leaving group at the carbonyl carbon, so conjugate addition becomes conjugate substitution if there is a leaving group, such as \(\text{Cl}\), at the \(\beta\) carbon atom. Here is an example: substitution replaces \(\text{Cl}\) with \(\text{OMe}\), just as it would have done in a reaction with an acyl chloride.

As with substitution at \(\text{C}=\text{O}\), this apparently simple reaction does not involve a direct displacement of the leaving group in a single step. The mechanism starts in exactly the same way as for conjugate addition, giving an enol intermediate.

Now the leaving group can be expelled by the enol: the double bond moves back into its original position in an elimination reaction—the sequence is often called an addition–elimination
reaction. The ‘new’ double bond has the more stable \( E \) configuration. In the next example, two consecutive conjugate substitution reactions give a 1,1-diamine.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{PhNH}_2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[ \text{NHPhO} \quad \text{98\% yield} \]

At first sight, the product looks rather unstable—sensitive to water, or traces of acid perhaps. But, in fact, it is remarkably resistant to reaction with both. The reason is conjugation: this isn’t really an amine (or a diamine) at all because the lone pairs of the nitrogen atoms are delocalized through into the carbonyl group, very much as they are in an amide. This makes them less basic, and makes the carbonyl group less electrophilic.

**Conjugate substitution and the synthesis of anti-ulcer drugs**

Just as the cyanide (CN) and nitro (NO\(_2\)) groups can be used to bring about conjugate addition, so also can they initiate conjugate substitution. Examples of these reactions play important roles in the synthesis of two of the most significant drugs in the development of modern medicinal chemistry: the anti-ulcer compounds cimetidine (marketed as Tagamet) and ranitidine (Zantac). We looked at some aspects of the structure of these drugs in Chapter 8 (p. 178) and we are now going to see how conjugate addition is used in their synthesis.

The simple cyanoimine on the left, with two SMe groups as built-in leaving groups, is readily available and reacts with amines to give guanidines in two stages. Each of the reactions is a conjugate substitution. It will be clearer if we draw the reaction with a generalized primary amine RNH\(_2\) first: conjugate addition, exactly as we saw with acrylonitrile, is followed by expulsion of the best leaving group. Thiols are acidic compounds, and MeS\(^-\) is a better leaving group than RNH\(^-\).

The reaction stops cleanly at this point and more vigorous conditions are required to displace the second MeS\(^-\) group. This is because the first product is less reactive than the starting material: the new amino group is electron-donating and conjugation is established between it and the cyano group, deactivating the molecule towards a second conjugate substitution (as shown in the margin). But under more forcing conditions a second and different amine can be introduced and the second MeS\(^-\) group displaced. In the synthesis of cimetidine the second amine is MeNH\(_2\) and the molecule is complete.
Ranitidine’s right-hand portion is made in a similar way from an unsaturated nitro compound. This time the methylamine substitution is done first, followed by addition of the rest of the molecule.

**Nucleophilic epoxidation**

The conjugate substitutions we have just been discussing rely on a starting material containing a leaving group. In this section we are going to look at what happens if the leaving group is not attached to the unsaturated carbonyl compound, but instead is attached to the nucleophile. We shall look at this class of compounds—nucleophiles with leaving groups attached—in more detail in Chapter 38, but for the moment the most important will be hydroperoxide, the anion of hydrogen peroxide.

Hydroperoxide is a good nucleophile because of the **alpha effect**: interaction of the two lone pairs on adjacent oxygen atoms raises the HOMO of the anion and makes it a better and softer nucleophile than hydroxide. Hydroperoxide is also less basic than hydroxide because of the inductive electron-withdrawing effect of the second oxygen atom. Basicity and nucleophilicity usually go hand in hand—not here though. This means that the hydroperoxide anion can be formed by treating hydrogen peroxide with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

This is what happens when this mixture is added to an enone. First, there is the conjugate addition.
But the product is not stable because hydroxide can be lost from the oxygen atom that was the nucleophile. Hydroxide is fine as a leaving group here—after all, hydroxide is lost from enolates in E1cB eliminations, and here the bond breaking is a weak O–O bond. The product is an epoxide.

The electrophilic epoxidizing agents such as \( m \)-CPBA, which you met in Chapter 19, work reliably only with nucleophilic alkenes, and for \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated carbonyl compounds and other electron-deficient alkenes, hydroperoxide—a nucleophilic epoxidizing agent—is often used instead.

There is another significant difference between hydrogen peroxide and \( m \)-CPBA, highlighted by the pair of reactions below.

\( m \)-CPBA epoxidation is stereospecific because the reaction happens in one step. But nucleophilic epoxidation with hydroperoxide is a two-step reaction: there is free rotation about the bond marked in the anionic intermediate, and the more stable, \( trans \)-epoxide results, whatever the geometry of the starting alkene.

**Nucleophilic aromatic substitution**

In this next section we are going to consider reactions related to conjugate substitutions but in which the double bond is part of an aromatic ring. We spent some considerable time in Chapter 21 explaining that aromatic rings are **nucleophilic**: electrophiles attack them, and typical aromatic reactivity is to undergo electrophilic substitution.

In general, nucleophilic substitutions of aromatic halides—such as the one proposed here in which hydroxide is attempting to displace bromide—**do not happen**. You might well ask, ‘Why not?’ The reaction looks all right and, if the ring were saturated, it **would be** all right.

This is an \( S_N^2 \) reaction, and we know (Chapter 15) that attack must occur in line with the C–Br bond from the back, where the largest lobe of the \( \sigma^* \) orbitals lies. That is perfectly all right for the aliphatic ring because the carbon atom is tetrahedral and the C–Br bond is not in the plane of the ring. Substitution of an equatorial bromine goes like this:
But in the aromatic compound, the C–Br bond is in the plane of the ring as the carbon atom is trigonal. To attack from the back, the nucleophile would have to appear inside the benzene ring and invert the carbon atom in an absurd way. This reaction is of course not possible. This is another example of the general rule:

- $S_N2$ at $sp^2$ C does not occur.

If $S_N2$ is impossible, what about $S_N1$? This is possible but very unfavourable unless the leaving group is an exceptionally good one (see below for an example). It would involve the unaided loss of the leaving group and the formation of an aryl cation. All the cations we saw as intermediates in the $S_N1$ reaction (Chapter 15) were planar with an empty $p$ orbital. This cation is planar but the $p$ orbital is full—it is part of the aromatic ring—and the empty orbital is an $sp^2$ orbital outside the ring.

Yet some aromatic compounds do undergo nucleophilic substitution. Just as normally nucleophilic alkenes can be made to undergo conjugate substitution if they carry electron-withdrawing substituents, so normally nucleophilic aromatic rings also become electrophilic if they have the right substituents. The mechanism by which they undergo nucleophilic substitution also closely parallels that of conjugate substitution which you have just seen.

**The addition–elimination mechanism**

Imagine a cyclic $\beta$-fluoro-enone reacting with a secondary amine in a conjugate substitution reaction. The normal addition to form the enolate followed by return of the negative charge to expel the fluoride ion gives the product.

Now imagine just the same reaction with two extra double bonds in the ring. These play no part in our mechanism; they just make what was an aliphatic ring into an aromatic one. Conjugate substitution has become nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

The mechanism involves *addition* of the nucleophile followed by *elimination* of the leaving group—the **addition–elimination mechanism**. It is not necessary to have a carbonyl group—any electron-withdrawing group will do—the only requirement is that the electrons must be able to get out of the ring into this anion-stabilizing group. Here is an example with a para-nitro group.
Everything is different about this example—the nucleophile (HO\(^-\)), the leaving group (Cl\(^-\)), the anion-stabilizing group (NO\(_2\)), and its position (para)—but the reaction still works. The nucleophile is a good one, the negative charge can be pushed through on to the oxygen atom(s) of the nitro group, and chloride is a better leaving group than OH.

**A typical nucleophilic aromatic substitution has:**

- an oxygen, nitrogen, or cyanide nucleophile
- a halide for a leaving group
- a carbonyl, nitro, or cyanide group ortho and/or para to the leaving group.

Since the nitro group is usually introduced by electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 21) and halides direct ortho/para in nitrination reactions, a common sequence is nitrination followed by nucleophilic substitution.

This sequence is useful because the nitro group could not be added directly to give the final product as nitrination would go in the wrong position. The nitrile is meta-directing, while the alkyl group (R) is ortho, para-directing.

Two activating electron-withdrawing groups are better than one and dinitration of chlorobenzene makes a very electrophilic aryl halide. Reaction with hydrazine gives a useful reagent.

**The intermediate in the addition–elimination mechanism**

What evidence is there for intermediates like the ones we have been using in this section? When reactions like this last example are carried out, a purple colour often appears in the reaction mixture and then fades away. In some cases the colour is persistent and thought to be due to the intermediate. Here is an example with RO\(^-\) attacking a nitrated aniline. This intermediate is persistent because neither potential leaving group (NR\(_2\) or OR) is very good.
What is the nature of this intermediate? Well, in essence it is an anion delocalized over five sp² hybridized carbons of a six-membered ring (the sixth, the point at which the nucleophile attacked, is sp³ hybridized). It’s possible to make a simple homologue of such a species by deprotonating cyclohexadiene. Delocalizing the anion generates the three structures below.

You’ve seen before that ¹³C NMR spectra are revealing when it comes to distribution of charge, and the details of the ¹³C NMR spectrum of this anion are shown below, along with those of benzene itself and also of the cation generated by protonating benzene (which, as you will remember from Chapter 21, corresponds to the intermediate generated in electrophilic aromatic substitution).

These results are very striking. The shifts of the meta carbons in both ions are very slightly different from those of benzene itself (about 130 ppm). But the ortho and para carbons in the anion have gone upfield to much smaller shifts, indicating greater electron density. By contrast, ortho and para carbons in the cation have gone downfield to much larger shifts. The differences are very great—about 100 ppm between the cation and the anion! It is very clear from these spectra that the ionic charge is delocalized almost exclusively to the ortho and para carbons in both cases. The alternative structures in the margin show this delocalization.

This means that stabilizing groups, such as nitro or carbonyl in the case of the anion, can only have an effect if they are on carbons ortho or para to the position being attacked by the nucleophile. A good illustration of this is the selective displacement of one chlorine atom out of these two. The chlorine ortho to the nitro group is lost; the one meta is retained.

The mechanism works well if the nucleophile (the anion derived from the thiol) attacks the carbon bearing the chlorine ortho to the nitro group as the negative charge can then be pushed into the nitro group. Satisfy yourself that you cannot do this if you attack the other chlorine position. This is a very practical reaction and is used in the manufacture of a tranquillizing drug.
The leaving group and the mechanism

In the first nucleophilic aromatic substitution that we showed you, we used fluoride ion as a leaving group. Fluoride works very well in these reactions and even such a simple compound as 2-halo-l-nitrophenyl fluoride reacts efficiently with a variety of nucleophiles, as in these examples.

The same reactions happen with the other 2-halo-l-nitrobenzenes but less efficiently. The fluoro-compound reacts about $10^3$–$10^4$ times faster than the chloro or bromo compounds and the iodo compound is even slower.

This ought to surprise you. When we were looking at other nucleophilic substitutions such as those at the carbonyl group or saturated carbon, we never used fluoride as a leaving group! The C–F bond is very strong—the strongest of all the single bonds to carbon—and it is difficult to break. As a consequence, these reactions are not a good prospect:

This reaction is never used: This reaction is rarely used:

So why is fluoride so good in nucleophilic aromatic substitution when the reverse is true with other reactions? You will notice that we have not said that fluoride is a better leaving group in nucleophilic aromatic substitution. It isn’t! The explanation depends on a better understanding of the mechanism of the reaction. We shall use azide ion as our nucleophile because this has been well studied and because it is one of the best.

The mechanism is exactly the same as that we have been discussing all along—a two-stage addition–elimination sequence. In a two-step mechanism, one step is slower and rate determining; the other is unimportant to the rate. You may guess that, in the mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution, it is the first step that is slower because it disturbs the aromaticity. The second step restores the aromaticity and is faster. The effect of fluoride, or any other leaving group, can only come from its effect on the first step. How good a leaving group it might be does not matter: the rate of the second step—the step where fluoride leaves—has no effect on the overall rate of the reaction.

Fluoride accelerates the first step through its inductive effect. It is the most electronegative element of all and it stabilizes the anionic intermediate, assisting the acceptance of electrons by the benzene ring.
**The activating anion-stabilizing substituent**

We have used nitro groups very extensively so far because they are the best at stabilizing the anionic intermediate. Others that work include carbonyl, cyanide, and sulfur-based groups such as sulfoxides and sulfones. A direct comparison of the different groups \( Z \) that can assist the displacement of bromide (by the secondary amine piperidine in this example) is shown in the margin.

All the compounds react more slowly than the nitro compound. We have already mentioned (Chapters 8 and 21) the great electron-withdrawing power of the nitro group—here is a new measure of that power. The sulfone reacts 18 times slower, the nitrile 32 times slower, and the ketone 80 times slower.

Nitro is the best activating group, but the others will all perform well, especially when combined with a fluoride rather than a bromide as the leaving group. Here are two reactions that work well in a preparative sense with other anion-stabilizing groups. Note that the trifluoromethyl group works by using only its powerful inductive effect.

---

**To summarize**

An anion-stabilizing (electron-withdrawing) group *ortho* or *para* to a potential leaving group can be used to facilitate nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

---

**Conjugate and nucleophilic aromatic substitution reactions in action: the synthesis of an antibiotic**

We want to convince you that this chemistry is useful and also that it works in more complicated molecules so we are going to describe in part the preparation of the antibiotic ofloxacin. The sequence starts with an aromatic compound having four fluorine atoms. Three are replaced sequentially by nucleophiles and the last is present in the antibiotic itself.

The first reaction is a conjugate substitution of the ethoxy group marked in orange. An amino alcohol is used as the nucleophile and it is the more nucleophilic amino group (rather than the hydroxyl group) that adds to the alkene.

Now for the first nucleophilic aromatic substitution. The amino group attacks in the position *ortho* to the carbonyl group so that an enolate intermediate can be formed. The first fluoride is expelled in the elimination step.
Treatment with base (NaH can be used) now converts the OH group into an alkoxide, which takes part in the next aromatic nucleophilic substitution. In this reaction we are attacking the position meta to the ketone so we cannot put the negative charge on the oxygen atom. The combined inductive effect of the remaining three fluorines is enough to stabilize the anion.

Only two fluorines are left, and one of these is now displaced by an external nucleophile—an amine. The site of attack of the amine is determined by the need to stabilize the charge in the intermediate, which is an enolate.

All that is left is to hydrolyse the ester to the free acid with aqueous base (Chapter 10). Every single reaction in this quite complicated sequence is one that you have met earlier in the book, and it illustrates the power of simple organic mechanisms to allow chemists to make important life-saving compounds.

Nucleophilic substitution on aromatic rings is possible by alternative mechanisms as well. We will now turn to these.

The $S_{N}1$ mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution: diazonium compounds

If we really want to make aromatic compounds undergo nucleophilic substitution in a general way, the way to do it is to use absolutely the best leaving group of all—nitrogen gas. In fact, the diazonium compound below is so good at nucleophilic aromatic substitution that is does so even without activating groups. On warming, the nitrogen molecule just departs, leaving behind a cation, which is captured by a nucleophile, in this case water. Do you find this reminiscent of the $S_{N}1$ reaction? We hope so.
Before we talk about this group of aromatic S_{\text{n}1} reactions in more detail, let’s consider how to make the diazonium salt. The reagent we need is the reactive nitrogen electrophile \( \text{NO}^+ \). You met \( \text{NO}^+ \) in Chapter 20, but to remind you, it forms when the nitrite anion (usually sodium nitrite) is treated with acid at around 0 °C. Protonation of nitrite gives nitrous acid, HONO; protonation again gives a cation, which can lose water to form \( \text{NO}^+ \). Butyl nitrite (or other alkyl nitrites) can also be used as a source of \( \text{NO}^+ \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sodium nitrite} & \quad \text{H}^+ \\
\text{add HCl, 0 °C} & \quad \text{nitrous acid} \\
\text{BuO}^+ \text{N}^+ \text{O} & \quad \text{butyl nitrite}
\end{align*}
\]

A diazonium salt is formed when \( \text{NO}^+ \) reacts with an amine. The lone pair of the amine attacks the \( \text{NO}^+ \) cation, and then water is lost. The mechanism is actually quite simple, but it does involve a lot of proton transfers. There is, of course, an anion associated with the nitrogen cation, and this will be the conjugate base (Cl⁻ usually) of the acid used to form \( \text{NO}^+ \). This reaction is known as diazotization.

If the amine is an alkyl amine, this diazonium salt is very unstable and immediately loses nitrogen gas to give a planar carbocation, which normally reacts with a nucleophile in an S_{\text{n}1} process (Chapter 15), loses a proton in an E1 process (Chapter 17), or rearranges (Chapter 36). It may, for example, react with water to give an alcohol:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{RNH}_2 & \quad \text{N} \quad \text{H} \\
\text{N} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{R} \quad \text{OH}
\end{align*}
\]

If the amine is an aryl amine, then the reaction you saw at the beginning of this section will take place and a phenol will form. This is in fact rather a useful reaction as it is difficult to add an oxygen atom to a benzene ring by normal electrophilic substitution: there is no good reagent for \( \text{OH}^- \). A nitrogen atom can be added easily by nitration, and reduction and diazotization provide a way of replacing the nitro group by a hydroxyl group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \quad \text{NO}_2 \\
\text{Pd/C} & \quad \text{NaNO}_2, \text{HCl} \\
\text{H}_2 \text{O}, 5 °C \text{ heat} & \quad \text{R} \quad \text{OH}
\end{align*}
\]

We alluded to this sequence at the end of Chapter 21.

**Substitution reactions in the synthesis of a drug**

The synthesis of the drug thymoxamine (Moxsylyte) provides a practical example of how this reaction can be used.
It seems obvious to make this compound by alkylation and acylation of a dihydroxybenzene, but how are we to make sure that the acylation and alkylation go on the right OH groups? French pharmaceutical chemists had an ingenious answer: start with a compound having only one OH group, alkylate that, and only then introduce the second using the diazonium salt method. They used a simple phenol and introduced nitrogen as a nitroso (NO) rather than a nitro (NO₂) group. This means using the same reagent as we have been using for diazotization. These were the first two steps.

The reduction of NO is easier than that of NO₂, and H₂S is enough to do the job. The amine can now be converted to an amide to lessen its nucleophilicity so that alkylation of the phenol occurs cleanly—a form of protection (see Chapter 23).

Finally, the amide must be hydrolysed, the amino converted into an OH group by diazotization and hydrolysis, and the new phenol acetylated.

However, an aryl carbocation is much less stable than an alkyl carbocation because its empty orbital is an sp² rather than a p orbital. This makes the loss of nitrogen slower. If the diazotization is done at temperatures around 0°C (classically at 5°C), the diazonium salt is stable and can be reacted with various nucleophiles other than water.

Other nucleophiles

Aryl iodides are not as easy to make by electrophilic substitution as aryl chlorides or bromides because iodine is not reactive enough to attack benzene rings. But adding potassium iodide to the diazonium salt gives an aryl iodide by nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

Other nucleophiles, such as chloride, bromide, and cyanide, are best added as copper(I) salts. Since aromatic amines are usually made by reduction of nitro compounds, a common sequence of reactions goes like this:
As often in aromatic chemistry, it's the versatility of the nitro group that makes this sequence work—easy introduction by electrophilic substitution, easy reduction, and easy nucleophilic substitution of its diazonium derivative.

**The benzyne mechanism**

We now need to introduce you to one last mechanism for aromatic nucleophilic substitution and you may well feel that this is the weirdest mechanism you have yet seen with the most unlikely intermediate ever! For our part, we hope to convince you that this mechanism is not only possible but also useful.

Earlier in this chapter we said that the displacement by nucleophiles of bromide from bromobenzene does not occur. In fact substitution reactions of bromobenzene can occur but only under the most vigorous conditions, such as when bromobenzene and NaOH are melted together (fused) at very high temperature. A similar reaction with the very powerful reagent NaNH₂ (which supplies NH₂⁻ ion) also happens, at a rather lower temperature.

These reactions were known for a long time before anyone saw what was happening. They do not happen by an S₈₂ mechanism, as we explained earlier, and they can't happen by the addition–elimination mechanism because there is nothing to stabilize the negative charge in the intermediate. The first clue to the true mechanism is that all the nucleophiles that react in this way are very basic. They start the reaction off by removing a proton ortho to the leaving group.

The carbanion is in an sp² orbital in the plane of the ring. Indeed, this intermediate is very similar to the aryl cation intermediate in the S₈₁ mechanism from diazonium salts. That had no electrons in the sp² orbital; the carbanion has two. Why should this proton be removed rather than any other? The bromine atom is electronegative and the C–Br bond is in the plane of the sp² orbital and removes electrons from it. The stabilization is nonetheless weak and only exceptionally strong bases will do this reaction.

The next step is the loss of bromide ion in an elimination reaction. This is the step that is difficult to believe as the intermediate we are proposing looks impossible. The orbitals are bad for the elimination too—it is a syn- rather than an anti-periplanar elimination. But it happens.

The intermediate is called benzyne as it is an alkyne with a triple bond in a benzene ring. But what does this triple bond mean? It certainly isn't a normal alkyne as these are linear. In fact one π bond is normal—it is just part of the aromatic system. One π bond—the new one—is abnormal and is formed by overlap of two sp² orbitals outside the ring. This external π bond
is very weak and benzyne is a very unstable intermediate. Indeed, when the structure was proposed few chemists believed it and some pretty solid evidence was needed before they did. We shall come to that shortly, but let us first finish the mechanism. Unlike normal alkynes, benzyne is electrophilic as the weak third bond can be attacked by nucleophiles.

The whole mechanism from bromobenzene to aniline involves an elimination to give benzyne followed by an addition of the nucleophile to the triple bond of benzyne. In many ways, this mechanism is the reverse of the normal addition–elimination mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution and it is sometimes called the elimination–addition mechanism.

Any nucleophile basic enough to remove the ortho proton can carry out this reaction. Known examples include oxyanions, amide anions (R₂N⁻), and carbanions. The rather basic alkoxide t-butoxide will do the reaction on bromobenzene if the potassium salt is used in the dipolar aprotic solvent DMSO to maximize reactivity. One rather special feature of the benzyne mechanism allows us to be certain that this proposed mechanism is correct, and this is the fact that the triple bond could in principle be attacked by nucleophiles at either end. This is of no consequence with bromobenzene as the products would be the same, but we can make the ends of the triple bond different and then we see something interesting. ortho-Chloro aryl ethers are easy to prepare by chlorination of the ether (Chapter 21). When these compounds are treated with NaNH₂ in liquid ammonia, a single amine is formed in good yield.

The new amino group finds itself in the meta position even though the chlorine was at the ortho position. It would be very difficult to explain this other than by the benzyne mechanism. Using the same elimination–addition sequence, this must be the mechanism:

That shows how the meta product might be formed, but why should it be formed? Attack could also occur at the ortho position, so why is there no ortho product? There are two reasons: electronic and steric. Electronically, the anion next to the electronegative oxygen atom is preferred because oxygen is inductively electron-withdrawing. The same factor facilitates deprotonation next to Cl in the formation of the benzyne. Sterically, it is better for the amide anion to attack away from the OMe group rather than come in alongside it. Nucleophilic attack on a benzyne has to occur in the plane of the benzene ring because that is where the orbitals are. This reaction is therefore very sensitive to steric hindrance as the nucleophile must attack in the plane of the substituent as well.
This is a useful way to make amino ethers with a meta relationship as both groups are ortho, para-directing and so the meta compounds cannot be made by electrophilic substitution. 

Para-Disubstituted halides can again give only one benzyne and most of them give mixtures of products. A simple alkyl substituent is too far from the triple bond to have much steric effect.

If the substituent is an electron-repelling anion, then the meta product is formed exclusively because this puts the product anion as far as possible from the anion already there. This again is useful as it creates a meta relationship between two ortho, para-directing groups.

Other evidence for benzyne as an intermediate

As you would expect, the formation of benzyne is the slow step in the reaction so there is no hope of isolating benzyne from the reaction mixture or even of detecting it spectroscopically. However, it can be made by other reactions where there are no nucleophiles to capture it, for example from this diazotization reaction.

This diazotization is particularly efficient as you can see by the quantitative yield of 2-iodobenzoic acid on capture of the diazonium salt with iodide ion. However, if the same diazonium salt is neutralized with NaOH, it gives a zwitterion with the negative charge on the carboxylate balancing the positive charge on the diazonium group. This diazotization is done with an alkyl nitrite in an organic solvent to avoid the chance that nucleophiles such as chloride or water might capture the product. When the zwitterion is heated it decomposes in an entropically favourable reaction to give carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and benzyne.

You can’t isolate the benzyne because it reacts with itself to give a benzyne dimer having a four-membered ring between two benzene rings. If the zwitterion is injected into a mass spectrometer, there is a peak at 152 for the dimer but also a strong peak at 76, which is benzyne itself. The lifetime of a particle in the mass spectrometer is about $2 \times 10^{-8}$ s so benzyne can exist for at least that long in the gas phase.
To conclude...

Alkenes and arenes are usually nucleophiles. This chapter is about the occasions on which they are not, and instead react as electrophiles. Remember that, important though the reactions in this chapter are, the principal reactivity you can expect from these compound classes is nucleophilicity.

The table below summarizes these reactions and also other similar ones you will find elsewhere in the book.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Type of alkene</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>unsaturated carbonyl compounds</td>
<td>![Image of conjugate addition example]</td>
<td>conjugate addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
<td>unsaturated nitriles and nitoalkenes</td>
<td>![Image of conjugate addition example]</td>
<td>conjugate addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511</td>
<td>enones, etc. with β leaving group</td>
<td>![Image of conjugate substitution example]</td>
<td>conjugate substitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513</td>
<td>unsaturated carbonyl</td>
<td>![Image of nucleophilic epoxidation example]</td>
<td>nucleophilic epoxidation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515</td>
<td>aryl chlorides/fluorides/ethers with ortho or para electron-withdrawing groups</td>
<td>![Image of nucleophilic aromatic substitution example]</td>
<td>nucleophilic aromatic substitution: addition–elimination mechanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>520</td>
<td>aryl cations (from diazonium salts)</td>
<td>![Image of nucleophilic aromatic substitution example]</td>
<td>nucleophilic aromatic substitution: S&lt;sub&gt;n&lt;/sub&gt;1 mechanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525</td>
<td>benzyne</td>
<td>![Image of nucleophilic aromatic substitution example]</td>
<td>nucleophilic aromatic substitution: elimination–addition mechanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch. 26</td>
<td>enolates and enolate equivalents as nucleophiles</td>
<td>![Image of conjugate addition example]</td>
<td>conjugate addition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Selectivity

Most organic molecules contain more than one functional group, and most functional groups can react in more than one way, so organic chemists often have to predict which functional group will react, where it will react, and how it will react. These questions are what we call selectivity.

Selectivity comes in three sorts: chemoselectivity, regioselectivity, and stereoselectivity. Chemoselectivity is which group reacts; regioselectivity is where it reacts. Stereoselectivity is how the group reacts with regard to the stereochemistry of the product.

- **Selectivity**

  There are three main types of selectivity:
  - chemoselectivity: which functional group will react (this chapter)
  - regioselectivity: where it will react (Chapter 24)
  - stereoselectivity: how it will react (stereochemistry of the products) (Chapters 32, 33, and 41)

We have talked a lot about regioselectivity, without calling it that, in the last two chapters. In Chapter 21 you learned how to predict and explain which product(s) you get from electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions. The functional group is the aromatic ring: where it reacts is the reaction’s regioselectivity. In Chapter 22 you saw that nucleophilic addition to an unsaturated ketone can take place in a 1,2- or 1,4-fashion—the question of which happens (where the unsaturated ketone reacts) is a question of regioselectivity. We will address regioselectivity in much more detail in the next chapter.
But this chapter is about chemoselectivity—in a compound with more than one functional group, which group reacts? Let’s start with a straightforward example—the synthesis of the painkiller paracetamol. 4-Aminophenol could react with acetic anhydride at both nitrogen and oxygen to give a compound containing an amide and an ester functional group. This is what happens on heating with excess acetic anhydride (Ac₂O) in toluene.

But with just one equivalent of acetic anhydride in the presence of a base (pyridine) only the NH₂ group is acylated, and paracetamol is the product. This is chemoselectivity, and it is to be expected that the NH₂ group is more nucleophilic than the OH group. It is even possible to hydrolyse the doubly acetylated product to paracetamol with aqueous sodium hydroxide. The ester is more reactive than the amide and hydrolyses much more easily. This is another chemoselective reaction.

We know that ketones are more reactive towards Grignard reagents and organolithiums than esters because you can’t isolate a ketone from the reaction of an ester with a Grignard reagent or an organolithium. Chemists at the pharmaceutical company Pfizer made use of this fact while they were developing anticonvulsants related to the tranquillizer oblivon. By adding lithium acetylide to ketones, they were able to make a tertiary alcohol by chemoselective reaction of a ketone in the presence of an ester.

These last two reactions work because, although each starting material contains two carbonyl groups, one is more electrophilic and therefore more reactive towards nucleophiles (OH⁻ in the first case; lithium acetylide in the second) than the other. We can order carbonyl compounds into a sequence in which it will usually be possible to react those on the left with nucleophiles in the presence of those on the right.
We’ve already discussed this sequence of reactivity in relation to acid derivatives in Chapter 10—make sure you understand the reason for the ordering of ester > amide > carboxylate. Here we’re adding to the list aldehyde (the most reactive, for steric reasons—it is the least hindered) and ketone (more reactive than esters because the carbonyl group is not stabilized by conjugation with a lone pair).

Reducing agents

Chemists at Glaxo exploited this reactivity sequence in their synthesis of the anti-asthma drug salmefamol (sister compound to the bestseller salbutamol). Three reducing agents are used in the sequence: sodium borohydride (NaBH₄), hydrogen gas over a palladium catalyst, and lithium aluminium hydride (LiAlH₄).

Why not use LiAlH₄ all the time?

In general, it’s best to use the mildest conditions possible for any particular reaction—the potential for unwanted side-reactions is lessened. What is more, NaBH₄ is a lot easier to handle than LiAlH₄—for example, it simply dissolves in water while LiAlH₄ catches fire if it gets wet. NaBH₄ is usually used to reduce aldehydes and ketones, even though LiAlH₄ also works.

We shall use this synthesis as a basis for discussion on chemoselectivity in reductions. In the first step, sodium borohydride leaves the carbonyl group of the ester untouched while it reduces the ketone (in orange); in the last step, lithium aluminium hydride reduces the ester (in black). These chemoselectivities are typical of these two most commonly used reducing agents: borohydride can usually be relied upon to reduce an aldehyde or a ketone in the presence of an ester, while lithium aluminium hydride will reduce almost any carbonyl group.

Reduction of carbonyl groups

We should now look in detail at reductions of carbonyl compounds, and in doing so we shall introduce a few more specialized reducing agents. Then we will come back to the other type of reduction in the salmefamol synthesis—catalytic hydrogenation.

How to reduce aldehydes and ketones to alcohols

We don’t need to spend much time on this—sodium borohydride, which you met in Chapter 6, does it very well. Sodium borohydride will reduce only in protic solvents (usually ethanol or methanol) or in the presence of electrophilic metal cations such as Li⁺ or Mg²⁺ (LiBH₄ can be used in THF, for example). The mechanism follows a course which can be represented like this.

The essence of the reaction is the transfer of a hydrogen atom with two electrons (called hydride transfer, although no hydride ion is involved) from boron to carbon. The developing
negative charge on oxygen is protonated by the alcohol, and resulting alkoxide adds to the boron during or immediately after the reduction. The by-product, an alkoxyborohydride anion, is itself a reducing agent, and can go on to reduce three more molecules of carbonyl compound, transferring step-by-step all of its hydrogen atoms.

**How to reduce esters to alcohols**

LiAlH$_4$ is often the best reagent, and gives alcohols by the mechanism we discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 217). As a milder alternative (needed because LiAlH$_4$ has caused countless fires through careless handling), lithium borohydride in alcoholic solution will reduce esters—in fact, it has useful selectivity for esters over acids or amides that LiAlH$_4$ does not have. Sodium borohydride reduces most esters only very slowly.

**How to reduce amides to amines**

Again, LiAlH$_4$ is a good reagent for this transformation. The mechanism follows a similar course to the reduction of esters: both are written out in detail below, and there is a key difference at the steps boxed in orange and in green. In the orange box, loss of alkoxide from the tetrahedral intermediate forms an aldehyde, which is reduced further. This doesn’t happen with amides; instead the anionic oxygen is lost—assisted by coordination to aluminium—to form an iminium ion. A good alternative for the reduction of amides to amines is borane (BH$_3$), described in the next section.

**LiAlH$_4$ reduction of esters**

**LiAlH$_4$ reduction of amides**

**How to reduce carboxylic acids to alcohols**

The best reagent for this is borane, BH$_3$. Borane is, in fact, a gas with the structure B$_2$H$_6$, but it can be ‘tamed’ as a liquid by complexing it with ether (Et$_2$O), THF, or dimethyl sulphide (DMS, Me$_2$S).

Although borane appears superficially similar to borohydride, it is not charged, and that makes all the difference to its reactivity. Whereas borohydride reacts best with the most electrophilic carbonyl groups, borane’s reactivity is dominated by its desire to accept an electron pair into the boron’s empty p orbital. In the context of carbonyl group reductions, this means that borane reduces electron-rich carbonyl groups fastest. The carbonyl groups of
ACYL CHLORIDES AND ESTERS ARE RELATIVELY ELECTRON-POOR (Cl AND OR ARE VERY ELECTRONEGATIVE); BORANE WILL NOT TOUCH ACYL CHLORIDES AND REDUCES ESTERS ONLY SLOWLY. BUT IT WILL REDUCE VERY EFFECTIVELY BOTH CARBOXYLIC ACIDS AND AMIDES.

BORANE REACTS WITH CARBOXYLIC ACIDS FIRST OF ALL TO FORM TRIACYLBORATES, WITH EVOLUTION OF HYDROGEN GAS. ESTERS ARE USUALLY LESS ELECTROPHILIC THAN KETONES BECAUSE OF CONJUGATION BETWEEN THE CARBONYL GROUP AND THE LONE PAIR OF THE SP³ HYBRIDIZED OXYGEN ATOM—but, IN THESE BORON ESTERS, THE OXYGEN NEXT TO THE BORON HAS TO SHARE ITS LONE PAIR BETWEEN THE CARBONYL GROUP AND THE BORON’S EMPTY P ORBITAL, SO THEY ARE CONSIDERABLY MORE REACTIVE THAN NORMAL ESTERS.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \quad \text{O} \quad \text{B} \quad \text{R} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{BH}_3 \\
\text{O} \quad \text{OH} & \quad \xrightarrow{\text{BH}_3} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{B} \quad 3 \\
& \quad \text{fast} + 3 \times \text{H}_2
\end{align*}
\]

BORANE IS A HIGHLY CHEMOSELECTIVE REAGENT FOR THE REDUCTION OF CARBOXYLIC ACIDS IN THE PRESENCE OF OTHER REDUCIBLE FUNCTIONAL GROUPS SUCH AS ESTERS, AND EVEN KETONES.

BORANE AND LITHIUM BOROHYDRIDE ARE A MOST USEFUL PAIR OF REDUCING AGENTS, WITH OPPOSITE SELECTIVITIES. JAPANESE CHEMISTS USED AN ENZYME TO MAKE A SINGLE ENANTIOMER OF THE ACID BELOW, AND WERE ABLE TO REDUCE EITHER THE ESTER OR THE CARBOXYLIC ACID BY CHOOSING LITHIUM BOROHYDRIDE OR BORANE AS THEIR REAGENT. CHECK FOR YOURSELF THAT THE LACTONES (CYCLIC ESTERS) IN BLACK FRAMES ARE ENANTIOMERS.

Because borane reacts well with electron-rich carbonyl groups, it is also a good alternative to LiAlH₄ for reducing amides to amines, and is chemoselective even in the presence of an ester:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{H}_2 \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{Me}
\end{align*}
\]

The carbonyl group of an amide is electron-rich because it receives electron density from the delocalized N lone pair. It therefore complexes well with the empty p orbital of the Lewis acidic borane. Hydride transfer is then possible from anionic boron to electrophilic carbon. The resulting tetrahedral intermediate collapses to an iminium ion that is reduced again by the borane.
**How to reduce esters or amides to aldehydes**

The step boxed in orange in the ester reduction scheme on p. 531 gave an aldehyde. The aldehyde is more readily reduced than the ester, so the reduction doesn’t stop there, but carries on to the alcohol oxidation level. How, then, can you reduce an ester to an aldehyde? This is a real problem in synthetic chemistry—the ester below, for example, is easy to make by methods you will meet in Chapter 25, but an important synthesis of the antibiotic monensin requires the aldehyde.

![Reduction of Carbynol Groups](image)

In this case, the chemists decided simply to put up with the fact that LiAlH₄ gives the alcohol, and oxidize the alcohol back to the aldehyde using chromium(VI), the oxidant you met in Chapter 9 (p. 194). There is, however, a reagent that will sometimes do the job in a single step, although you must bear in mind that this is not at all a general reaction. The reagent is known as DIBAL or DIBALH—diisobutyl aluminium hydride, i-Bu₂AlH.

DIBAL is an alane: its structure is shown in the margin. Its chemistry is in many ways like borane—it exists as a bridged dimer, and it becomes a reducing agent only after it has formed a Lewis acid–base complex, so like borane it too reduces electron-rich carbonyl groups most rapidly. DIBAL will reduce esters even at –70 °C, and at this temperature the tetrahedral intermediate, formed by the transfer of hydride from aluminium to carbon (and shown below), may be stable. Only in the aqueous work-up does it collapse to the aldehyde. This step also destroys any excess DIBAL so no further reduction is possible.

![Reduction of Carbynol Groups](image)

**Lactols from lactones**

A stable tetrahedral intermediate is more likely in the reduction of lactones, for the same reasons that cyclic hemiacetals are more stable than acyclic ones. DIBAL is most reliable in the reduction of lactones to cyclic hemiacetals (also known as lactols), as in this reaction from E. J. Corey’s synthesis of the prostaglandins.
In the amide reduction scheme on p. 533, the step framed in green gives an iminium ion. Stopping the reaction before the iminium ion forms would therefore provide a way of making aldehydes from amides because in the absence of the aluminium, this tetrahedral intermediate collapses to an aldehyde. Because tetrahedral intermediates like these formed during amide reduction are rather more stable than those from ester reduction, this can often be achieved simply by carrying out the amide reduction and quenching with water, all at 0 °C.

DIBAL is also good for reducing nitriles to aldehydes. Indeed, this reaction and the reduction of lactones to lactols (see box above) are the best things that DIBAL does.

The box below summarizes the chemoselectivity of all of these reagents.

**Summary of reducing agents for carbonyl groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reducing Agent</th>
<th>Aldehyde</th>
<th>Ketone</th>
<th>Ester</th>
<th>Amide</th>
<th>Carboxylic Acid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NaCNBH₃</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaBH₄</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiBH₄</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiAlH₄</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH₃</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – NHR</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – OH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – OH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – OH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – NHR</td>
<td>Reduced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – OH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – OH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R – OH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hydrogen as a reducing agent: catalytic hydrogenation**

The simplest reducing agent is hydrogen itself, H₂. Hydrogen can’t generally be used as a reducing agent for carbonyl compounds—it isn’t nucleophilic enough. However, it can act as
a reducing agent for other, weaker, double and triple bonds, such as C=–C, C=–N, C≡–C and C≡–N. To do these reactions, a metal catalyst is required and the process is known as catalytic hydrogenation. The hydrogen is provided by a cylinder, perhaps via a balloon, or can be made by electrolysis and pumped with the substrate over the catalyst. In the example below, the alkene is reduced while the aldehyde remains untouched.

The catalysts used to make hydrogen react with double bonds are transition metals: usually palladium (as in this example) or platinum, but sometimes nickel, rhodium, or ruthenium. We will talk about several different reductions in this section, but the mechanisms of all of them are similar, and very different from those involved in carbonyl reductions.

Catalytic hydrogenation takes place on the surface of the metal. The metal must therefore be finely divided, and is usually dispersed on the surface of an inert support. This is what ‘Pd/C’ means—finely divided palladium carried on a charcoal support. The first step is chemical absorption of hydrogen onto the metal surface, a process that results in breakage of the H–H bonds and distributes hydrogen atoms where they can react with the organic substrate. Now the alkene can also bond to the metal, and hydrogen can be transferred from the metal to the alkene.

How to reduce alkenes to alkanes

Hydrogenation with a palladium or a platinum catalyst is the most common way of reducing alkenes. You may find our mechanism rather unsatisfactory, but it is hard to draw curly arrows for the reactions involved here. There is, however, plenty of evidence that the hydrogenation occurs like this, for example the alkene below reacts in such a way that the major product receives both hydrogen atoms on the same face of the molecule—just what we would expect from a reaction at a surface.
**Hydrogenated vegetable oil**

Plants such as soya, rapeseed, cottonseed, and sunflower are useful sources of edible vegetable oils, but these oils are unsuitable as butter substitutes because of their low melting points. Their low melting points relative to animal fats are largely due to cis double bonds that disrupt the packing of the alkyl chains in the solid state. Treating the crude vegetable oil with hydrogen over a metal catalyst removes some of these double bonds, increases the proportion of saturated fat in the oil, and raises its melting point, making it suitable for making margarine.

![melting points of some common fatty acids](image)

The reaction is usually stopped before all the double bonds are hydrogenated, of course: margarine manufacturers are desperate to tell us that their products are still ‘high in unsaturated fatty acids’. Many also advertise that they are ‘low in trans unsaturated fatty acids’ because of a suggested link between incidence of coronary heart disease and trans unsaturated fatty acid intake.

Where have these trans double bonds come from? Well, partial hydrogenation can lead to significant double-bond isomerization, not just to regioisomers but to geometrical isomers too.

**How to reduce α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds**

It should not now surprise you that regioselective reduction of the C=C double bond of an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound is best done using catalytic hydrogenation as the C=C bond is more susceptible to hydrogenation than the C=O bond. The flavouring compound known as raspberry ketone is made by this method.

![raspberry ketone](image)

But what if you want instead to reduce the C=O group selectively? You should immediately think of using NaBH₄. But in Chapter 22 we pointed out that hydride reducing agents in general are not good choices for the selective reduction of the C=O bond of unsaturated carbonyl compounds because they tend to add to the double bond as well, giving first the saturated carbonyl compound, which is then reduced to the alcohol. The way to get regioselective addition directly to the carbonyl group is to use NaBH₄ in the presence of a hard, Lewis-acidic metal salt, such as CeCl₃. This combination of reagents is known as the Luche reduction.

See Chapter 22 for a discussion of the reactivity of α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds.
How to reduce benzene rings to cyclohexanes

Even aromatic rings can be hydrogenated in preference to C=O groups: in these examples the ester and acid survive while phenyl is reduced to a cyclohexyl group.

\[
\text{NaBH}_4 + \text{CeCl}_3 \rightarrow \text{NaBH}_4 \rightarrow \text{alkene} \rightarrow \text{alkane}
\]

The catalyst used in each reduction can be a matter of trial and error, and it is difficult to predict which metal will be most successful—generally Pt, Rh, or Ni is used for arenes.

How to reduce alkynes to alkenes

A catalyst known as Lindlar’s catalyst (which you will meet again in Chapter 27) is used to reduce alkynes to alkenes, but does not easily reduce alkenes to alkanes. This requires rather subtle chemoselectivity: alkynes are usually hydrogenated at least as fast as alkynes, so we need to be sure the reaction stops once the alkene has been formed. The Lindlar catalyst is a palladium catalyst (Pd/\text{CaCO}_3) deliberately poisoned with lead. The lead lessens the activity of the catalyst and makes further reduction of the alkene product slow: most palladium catalysts would reduce alkynes all the way to alkanes. Best selectivities are obtained if quinoline is also added to the reaction, and alkyne to alkene reductions work with Pd/\text{BaSO}_4 + quinoline too. Even so, Lindlar reactions often have to be monitored carefully to make sure that over-reduction is not taking place.

How to reduce acid chlorides to aldehydes

Catalytic hydrogenation is often chosen as a method for reduction because of its chemoselectivity for C=C over C=O groups, and an important hydrogenation involving a carbonyl compound is not actually a reduction of the C=O double bond. Hydrogenation of acyl chlorides gives aldehydes in a reaction known as the Rosenmund reaction—really a hydrogenolysis of a C–Cl bond.

\[
\text{acyl chloride} + \text{H}_2 + \text{BaSO}_4 \rightarrow \text{aldehyde}
\]

This is a good way of reducing compounds at the carboxylic acid oxidation level to aldehydes, which is why we included it in the table of carbonyl reductions on p. 534.
The quinoline is needed both to neutralize the HCl produced in the reaction and to moderate the activity of the catalyst, preventing over-reduction.

**Reductive amination by catalytic hydrogenation**

The unreactivity of carbonyl groups towards catalytic hydrogenation allows us to use hydrogenation in a similar way to sodium cyanoborohydride to carry out reductive aminations of amines and carbonyl compounds. For example, in the synthesis of salmefamol we presented on p. 530, one step involves the formation of the imine from an amine and a ketone in the presence of acid, hydrogen, and a palladium catalyst. The imine (in its protonated iminium form) is hydrogenated to yield an amine, while the ketone (and the aromatic systems) remains untouched.

![Imine formation and hydrogenation](image)

**How to reduce nitro groups to amines**

In Chapters 21 and 22 we saw how the sequence of nitration of aromatic rings followed by reduction was a useful route to aromatic amines. The reduction of the nitro group can be carried out by Sn/HCl but catalytic hydrogenation is much simpler. The reaction is usually done in ethanol with a Pd or Pt catalyst, and it may be necessary to add a weak acid to prevent the amine produced from poisoning the catalyst. The real gain over the Sn/HCl method is in the work-up. Instead of separating and disposing of voluminous toxic tin residues, a simple filtration to remove the catalyst, evaporation, and crystallization or distillation gives the amine.

![Nitro reduction](image)

**Hydrogenolysis: breaking C–O and C–N bonds**

In the reductive amination above we skirted over the fact that the starting amine in the synthesis of salmefamol (look back at p. 530) in fact carries two benzyl groups, which disappear during the hydrogenation.

![Hydrogenolysis](image)

What happens to them is a hydrogenolysis—a reaction that is liable to occur under catalytic hydrogenation conditions whenever a heteroatom (in particular O or N) finds itself bonded to a carbon atom adjacent to a benzene ring, in other words with benzylic amines, alcohols or ethers.
Hydrogenolysis happens under similar conditions to alkene hydrogenation, but involves breakage of a C–O or C–N bond rather than a C=C π bond. It is particularly important for removing benzyl protecting groups, to which we will return later in the chapter.

- We can draw up a sequence of reactivity towards hydrogenation. The precise ordering varies with the catalyst, and some catalysts are particularly selective towards certain classes of compound—for example, Pt, Rh, and Ru will selectively hydrogenate aromatic rings in the presence of benzyl C–O bonds, while with Pd catalysts the benzyl C–O bonds are reduced faster.

**Getting rid of functional groups**

Functional groups can be useful for putting a molecule together, but they aren’t always needed in the final product. We need ways of getting rid of them. Hydrogenation of alkenes is one way that you have seen. Hydrogenation of alkynes to alkanes is very useful because we can build long chains of carbon atoms by alkylating alkynes, then hide the evidence by hydrogenation:

Alcohols can be got rid of either by elimination to alkenes and then hydrogenation or by tosylation and substitution using borohydride to provide a nucleophilic hydrogen atom.
Removal of carbonyl groups is harder, although there are several possible methods. C–O bonds are strong, but C–S bonds are much weaker and are often easily reduced with Raney nickel. We can get rid of aldehyde and ketone carbonyl groups by making them into thiaoacetals, sulfur analogues of acetals, formed in a reaction analogous to acetal formation (see Chapter 11) but using a dithiol with a Lewis acid catalyst. Freshly prepared Raney nickel carries enough H₂ (p. 537) to reduce the thioacetal without added hydrogen.

A slightly more vigorous method, known as the Wolff–Kishner reduction, is driven by the elimination of nitrogen gas from a hydrazone. Hot concentrated sodium hydroxide solution deprotonates the hydrazone, which can then lose nitrogen to form an alkyl anion, which is immediately protonated by water.

The third method is the simplest to do, but has the most complicated mechanism. The Clemmensen reduction is also rather violent, and really reasonable only for compounds with just the one functional group. It uses zinc metal dissolving in concentrated hydrochloric acid. As the metal dissolves, it gives up two electrons—in the absence of something else to do, these electrons would reduce the H⁺ in the acid to H₂, and give ZnCl₂ and H₂. But in the presence of a carbonyl compound, the electrons go to reduce the C=O bond.

The mechanism has a good deal in common with a whole class of reductions, of which the Clemmensen is a member, known as dissolving metal reductions. We shall now look at these as our third (after metal hydrides and catalytic hydrogenation) important class of reducing agents.

Two synthetic routes to muscalure—the house fly pheromone

Many insects attract a mate by releasing a volatile organic compound known as a pheromone. Pheromones are highly specific to species and provide a cunning means of controlling pests: place a pad of cotton wool soaked in male pheromone inside a trap and in drop all the female pests—no next generation. If insect control is to rely on a supply of the pheromone, that supply has to be synthetic—it takes enormous numbers of squashed insects to provide even a few milligrams of most pheromones.

Two syntheses of the very simple pheromone of a very common insect—the house fly—provide an illustration of how to use two of the reduction methods we have just described. The pheromone, known as muscalure, is a Z-alkene.
One approach, used by some American chemists in the early 1970s, was very simple. These chemists noted the similarity between the structures of muscalure and the fatty acid known as erucic acid, which is abundant in rapeseed oil, and decided to make muscalure from erucic acid. They first reacted the acid with two equivalents of methyllithium—the first equivalent deprotonates the acid to make a lithium carboxylate salt, while the second reacts with the lithium carboxylate to make a ketone (see p. 219).

\[
\text{erucic acid, a fatty acid extracted from rapeseed oil}
\]

The next step is to remove the ketone functional group. The method chosen was the Wolff–Kishner reaction described on p. 540: make a hydrazone and heat in the presence of base. Muscalure is the product.

Later some Russian chemists made the same compound by a different route. They chose to introduce the Z double bond by hydrogenation of an alkyne over Lindlar’s catalyst (p. 537). To make the alkyne they needed, they took 1-decyne, treated it with LiNH₂ to remove the acidic terminal proton, and reacted the anion with an n-alkyl bromide. By stirring the alkyne with Lindlar’s catalyst under an atmosphere of hydrogen they were able to make muscalure.

**Dissolving metal reductions**

You will be familiar with the idea that many metals react with acid to liberate hydrogen, forming a salt at the same time. There is an example in the margin. The metal cation (Mg²⁺ in this example) results from the loss of electrons, and these electrons reduce \(2 \times \text{H}^+\) to give \(\text{H}_2\).

The same thing happens even in very weak acids (water, alcohols…even liquid ammonia) if the metal is very reactive (sodium or potassium, say). You can think of the process here in two steps: first sodium releases an electron, then the electron is captured by a proton from NH₃ to give H, which forms H₂. Sodium ethoxide (NaOEt) and sodium amide (NaNH₂, p. 171) are made by dissolving sodium in ethanol or liquid ammonia, respectively.

But what if, instead of just reducing the solvent to liberate hydrogen, we harness the electrons by giving them a more easily reduced substrate instead? A dissolving metal reduction results: note dissolving. The electrons have to be captured as the metal releases them, otherwise they will just reduce the solvent to give \(\text{H}_2\).
Dissolving metal reductions work because the electrons released as reactive metals form soluble cations that can be harnessed to do other, more useful, reductions. Electrons are the simplest possible reducing agents, and they will reduce carbonyl compounds, alkynes, or aromatic rings—in fact any functional group with a low-energy $\pi$ orbital into which the electron can go.

**Birch reduction of arenes**

We shall start by looking at the dissolving metal reduction of aromatic rings, known as the **Birch reduction**. The margin shows the reaction of benzene with lithium in liquid ammonia. At first sight this reaction looks improbable, with an aromatic ring ending up as an unconjugated diene. The mechanism will explain why we get this regiochemistry, and also why the reaction stops there—in other words, why the dissolving lithium reduces an aromatic ring more readily than an alkene.

The first thing to note is that when lithium or sodium dissolve in ammonia they give an intense blue solution. Blue is the colour of solvated electrons: these group 1 metals ionize to give Li$^+$ or Na$^+$ and e$^-$($\text{NH}_3$)$_n$. With time, the blue colour fades, as the electrons reduce the ammonia to $\text{NH}_2^-$ and H$_2$.

Birch reductions use those blue solutions, with their solvated electrons, as reducing agents. The reduction of NH$_3$ to $\text{NH}_2^-$ and H$_2$ is quite slow, and a better electron acceptor will get reduced in preference. With benzene, the electrons go into the lowest lying antibonding orbital (benzene’s LUMO). The species we get can be represented in several ways, all of them radical anions (molecules with one excess unpaired electron). The radical anion is very basic, and it picks up a proton from the ethanol that is in the reaction mixture.

The molecule is now no longer anionic, but it is still a radical. It can pick up another electron, which pairs with the radical to give an anion, which is quenched again by the proton source (ethanol). Overall we have arrived at two additional H atoms by sequentially adding two electrons plus two protons.

More questions of regioselectivity arise when there are substituents around the aromatic ring. Here are two examples.
These examples serve to illustrate a general principle:

- Electron-withdrawing groups promote *ipsos*, *para* Birch reduction.
- Electron-donating groups promote *ortho*, *meta* Birch reduction.

The explanation must lie in the distribution of electron density in the intermediate radical anions. Electron-withdrawing groups stabilize electron density at the *ipsos* and *para* positions, and protonation occurs *para*.

![Chemical structures showing electron-withdrawing and donating groups in Birch reduction](image)

while electron-donating groups stabilize *ortho* and *meta* electron density:

![Chemical structures showing electron-withdrawing and donating groups in Birch reduction](image)

If you want the conjugated dienes as products, it is quite a simple matter to isomerize them using an acid catalyst. In fact, a small amount (about 20%) of the conjugated product is produced anyway in the reaction of anisole above. With anilines, it is impossible to stop the isomerization taking place during the reaction, and Birch reduction always gives conjugated dienamines.

![Chemical structures showing isomerization into conjugation](image)

**Birch reduction of alkynes**

Birch reduction works for alkynes too and reduces them to *trans* alkenes.

![Chemical structures showing Birch reduction of alkynes](image)

The mechanism follows the same course as the reduction of aromatic rings, but the vinyl anion is basic enough to deprotonate ammonia, so no added proton source is required. Vinyl anions are geometrically unstable, and choose to be *E*. Again, the two green H atoms come from two electrons and two protons.
Selectivity in oxidation reactions

In Chapter 9 you met some chromium-based oxidants that convert primary or secondary alcohols to aldehydes or ketones. We mentioned in that chapter the possibility, when an aldehyde is the product of the oxidation, that a further oxidation will take place to make a carboxylic acid. The problem does not arise of course when a secondary alcohol is oxidized to a ketone.

Since then you have met some other oxidizing agents too, particularly in Chapter 19:

- On p. 429 you saw peracids as oxidizing agents for \(\text{C} = \text{C}\) double bonds—they give epoxides.
- On p. 442 you saw osmium tetroxide (\(\text{OsO}_4\)) giving diols from alkenes.
- On p. 443 we introduced ozone (\(\text{O}_3\)) as a means of cleaving alkenes to carbonyl compounds by ozonolysis.

Unlike Cr(VI), none of these reagents will oxidize a hydroxyl group: they are chemoselective for \(\text{C} = \text{C}\) double bonds, but do not react with hydroxyl groups. By contrast, Cr(VI) oxidizes alcohols but not alkenes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxidizing agents</th>
<th>Chemoselective for alcohols or carbonyl compounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemoselective for (\text{C} = \text{C}) double bonds</td>
<td>Chemoselective for alcohols or carbonyl compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peracids, (\text{RCO}_3\text{H}) (Chapter 19)</td>
<td>Cr(VI) compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osmium tetroxide, (\text{OsO}_4) (Chapters 19 and 34)</td>
<td>Mn(VII) compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ozone, (\text{O}_3) (Chapters 19 and 34)</td>
<td>some high oxidation state Hal, N, or S compounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this section we will be concerned only with oxidizing agents that oxidize alcohols and carbonyl compounds, and in particular we shall be concerned with ways of choosing whether to arrest the oxidation of primary alcohols at the aldehyde stage or let it continue to the carboxylic acid.

The most commonly used methods for oxidizing alcohols are based around metals in high oxidation states, often chromium(VI) (which you met in Chapter 9) or manganese(VII), and you will see that mechanistically they are quite similar—they both rely on the formation of a bond between the hydroxyl group and the metal. Another class of oxidations, those that use halogens, sulfur, or nitrogen in high oxidation states, we will deal with relatively briefly.

How to oxidize secondary alcohols to ketones

You met methods for this reaction in Chapter 9, where you met the use of Cr(VI) in the form of \(\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7^{2-}\). One common version of this reaction is the Jones oxidation, shown in the margin. The mechanism starts with the formation of \(\text{HCrO}_4^-\) ions, that is, Cr(VI), from dichromate ion in solution. In acid, these Cr(VI) species form chromate esters with alcohols. Chromate esters decompose by elimination of a Cr(IV) species, which subsequently reacts with Cr(VI) to yield 2 \(\times\) Cr(V). These Cr(V) species can oxidize alcohols in the same way and are thereby reduced to Cr(III) (the final metal-containing by-product). Cr(VI) is orange and Cr(III) is green, so the progress of the reaction is easy to follow by colour change.
Chromic acid is best avoided if acid-sensitive alcohols are to be oxidized, and an alternative reagent for these is PCC (pyridinium chlorochromate), which can be used in dichloromethane.

**How to oxidize primary alcohols to aldehydes**

Aqueous methods like the Jones oxidation are no good for this, since the aldehyde that forms is further oxidized to acid via its hydrate. The oxidizing agent treats the hydrate as an alcohol, and oxidizes it to the acid.

The key thing is to avoid water, so PCC in dichloromethane works quite well. The related reagent PDC (pyridinium dichromate) is particularly suitable for oxidation to aldehydes. Some very mild oxidizing agents are being more and more widely used for the synthesis of very sensitive aldehydes. One of these is known as TPAP (tetra-n-propylammonium perruthenate, pronounced ‘tee-pap’). TPAP can be used catalytically, avoiding the large amounts of toxic heavy metal by-products generated by most chromium oxidations. The stoichiometric oxidant in this reaction is NMO (N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide), which is reduced to the amine, reoxidizing the ruthenium to Ru(VII).

Another important mild oxidant is a high-valent iodine compound known as the Dess–Martin periodinane. It can be made from 2-iodobenzoic acid.

It will oxidize even very sensitive alcohols to carbonyl compounds—few others, for example, would give the cis-α,β-unsaturated aldehyde in the margin from a cis-allylic alcohol without isomerizing it to trans, or producing other by-products. We shall leave detailed discussion of one more method till much later, in Chapter 27, since the mechanism involves some sulfur chemistry you will meet there, but we introduce it here because of its synthetic importance. Known as the Swern oxidation, it uses a sulfoxide [sulfur(IV)] as the oxidizing agent. The sulfoxide is reduced to a sulfide, while the alcohol is oxidized to an aldehyde.

---

The abbreviations THP and TBDMS will be explained later in this chapter (p. 550).

For more details, and the mechanism of the Swern oxidation, see p. 667.
How to oxidize primary alcohols or aldehydes to carboxylic acids

Sometimes the ‘over-oxidation’ we were trying to avoid in oxidizing alcohols to aldehydes is actually the reaction you want. It’s best done with an aqueous solution of Cr(VI) or Mn(VII). Acidic or basic aqueous potassium permanganate is often a good choice. From alcohols in acidic solution the mechanism follows very much the lines of the chromic acid mechanism; from aldehydes, the mechanism is very similar.

\[
\begin{align*}
R\text{O}H & \xrightarrow{\text{oxidation of aldehydes with Mn(VII)}} R\text{CHO} + \text{Mn}(V) \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{hydrate}} R\text{OH} + \text{Mn}(V) \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{oxidation of aldehydes with Mn(VII)}} R\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{Mn}^2+
\end{align*}
\]

Competing reactivity: choosing which group reacts

We hope that our survey of the important methods for reduction and oxidation has shown you that, by choosing the right reagent, you can often get reaction only at the functional group you want. The chemoselectivity you obtain is kinetic chemoselectivity—reaction at one functional group is simply faster than at another.

Now look at the acylation of an amino alcohol (which is, in fact, a synthesis of the painkiller isobucaine) using benzoyl chloride under acid conditions. The hydroxyl group is acylated to form an ester. Yet under basic conditions, the selectivity is quite different, and an amide is formed.

A clue to why the selectivity reverses is shown below—it is, in fact, possible to interconvert the ester and the amide simply by treating either with acid or with base.

The selectivity in these reactions is thermodynamic chemoselectivity. Under conditions in which the ester and amide can equilibrate, the product obtained is the more stable of the two, not necessarily the one that is formed faster. In base the more stable amide predominates, while in acid the amine is protonated, which prevents it from acting as a nucleophile and removes it from the equilibrium, giving the ester.
How to react the less reactive group (I): react both then ‘unreact’ one

The relative reactivity of the alcohol and amine in the example just given could be overturned by conducting a reaction under thermodynamic control. In kinetically controlled reactions, the idea that you can conduct chemoselective reactions on the more reactive of a pair of functional groups—carbonyl-based ones, for example—is straightforward. But what if you want to react the less reactive of the pair? There are two commonly used solutions. The first is illustrated by a compound needed by chemists in Cambridge to study an epoxidation reaction. They were able to make the following diol, but wanted to acetylate only the more hindered secondary hydroxyl group.

Treatment with one equivalent of an acetylating agent is no good because the primary hydroxyl group is more reactive; instead, the chemists acetylated both hydroxyl groups, and then treated the bis-acetate with mildly basic methanol (K₂CO₃, MeOH, 20 °C), which reacted only at the less hindered acetoxy group and gave the desired compound in 65% yield.

In other words, start by letting both groups react and then go backwards so the reaction is reversed, but at only one of the two groups. Steric hindrance means that the less favourable reaction (in other words, reaction at the less reactive group) was also less readily reversed.

Chemoselectivity in the reactions of dianions

A similar idea is central to a useful bit of chemoselectivity that can be obtained in the reactions of dianions. 1-Propynol can be deprotonated twice by strong bases—first, at the hydroxyl group to make an alkoxide anion (the pKₐ of the OH group is about 16) and, secondly, at the alkyne (pKₐ of the order of 25) to make a dianion. When this dianion reacts with electrophiles it always reacts at the alkynyl anion and not at the alkoxide.

This reaction is important in a synthesis of the perfumery compound cis-jasmone. The alkyne is the precursor to cis-jasmone’s alkene side chain.

- Reactivity of dianions
  The anion that is formed last reacts first.
Vollhardt used this sort of chemoselectivity in his 1977 synthesis of the female sex hormone oestrone. He needed an alkyl iodide, which could be made by reacting an anion of a bis-alkyne with ethylene oxide.

Although anions can often be formed straightforwardly next to alkynes, there are two other more acidic protons (black) in the molecule that would be removed by base before the green proton. However, treatment with three equivalents of butyl lithium removes all three, and the trianion reacts with ethylene oxide at the last-formed anionic centre to give the required compound.

**How to react the less reactive group (II): protecting groups**

The more usual way of reacting a less reactive group in the presence of a more reactive one is to use a **protecting group**. This tertiary alcohol, for example, could be made from a keto-ester if we could get phenylmagnesium bromide to react with the ester rather than with the ketone.

As you would expect, simply adding phenylmagnesium bromide to ethyl acetoacetate leads mainly to addition to the more electrophilic ketone.

One way of making the alcohol we want is to **protect** the ketone from attack by disguising it from the nucleophile. An acetal protecting group (shown in black) is used.

The first step puts the protecting group on to the (more electrophilic) ketone carbonyl, making it no longer reactive towards nucleophilic addition. The Grignard then adds to the ester, and finally a ‘deprotection’ step, acid-catalysed hydrolysis of the acetal, gives us back the ketone. An acetal is an ideal choice here—acetals are stable to base (the conditions of the reaction we want to do), but are readily cleaved in acid.
A survey of protecting groups

A dioxolane can be used in this way to protect aldehydes and ketones from powerful, basic nucleophiles, and makes the first entry in the tour of important protecting groups we shall conduct you through in the next few pages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>To protect</th>
<th>To deprotect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetal (dioxolane)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>ketones, aldehydes</td>
<td>nucleophiles, bases</td>
<td>$H^+$, $H_2O$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By protecting sensitive functional groups like ketones it becomes possible to make reagents that would otherwise be unstable. In a synthesis of the natural product porantherine, a compound based on the structure in the margin was needed. As it’s a symmetrical secondary alcohol (see p. 216), a good way to make it is to add a Grignard reagent twice to ethyl formate.

![Grignard reagent](image)

But, of course, a ketone-containing Grignard is an impossibility as it would self-destruct, so an acetal-protected compound was used. Acid-catalysed hydrolysis of the two dioxolanes, coloured green, reveals the diketone.

![Acetal hydrolysis](image)

Strongly nucleophilic reagents like Grignard reagents and organolithiums are also strong bases and may need protecting from acidic protons as well as from electrophilic carbonyl groups. Among the most troublesome are the protons of hydroxyl groups. When some American chemists wanted to make the antiviral agent Brefeldin A, they needed the simple alkynol in the margin.

A synthesis could start with the same bromoketone as the one above: reduction gives an alcohol, but alkylation of an alkynyl anion with this compound is not possible because the anion will just deprotonate the hydroxyl group.

![Alkylation problem](image)

The answer is to protect the hydroxyl group with a group resistant to base, and the group chosen here was a silyl ether. Such ethers are made by reacting the alcohol with a trialkylsilyl chloride (here tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride, or TBDMScI) in the presence of a weak base, usually imidazole, which also acts as a nucleophilic catalyst (Chapter 12).
Silicon has a strong affinity for electronegative elements, particularly O, F, and Cl, so trialkysilyl ethers are attacked by hydroxide ion, water, or fluoride ion but are more stable to carbon or nitrogen bases or nucleophiles. They are usually removed with aqueous acid or fluoride salts, particularly \( \text{Bu}_4\text{N}^+\text{F}^- \) (tetra-n-butyrammonium fluoride, known as TBAF and pronounced ‘tea-baff’), which is soluble in organic solvents. In fact, TBDMS is one member of a whole family of trialkysilyl protecting groups and their relative stability to nucleophiles of various kinds is determined by the three alkyl groups carried by silicon. The most labile, trimethylsilyl (TMS), is removed simply on treatment with methanol, while the most stable require hydrofluoric acid.

Although not important to our discussion here, these substitution reactions are not the simple \( S_2 \) reactions (Chapter 15) they might appear to be. The nucleophile adds to silicon first to form a five-valent anion, which decomposes with the loss of the alcohol.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Deprotection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trialkysilyl, e.g. TBDMS</td>
<td>RO—SiMe(_3)</td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>nucleophiles, C or N bases</td>
<td>( \text{R}_3\text{SiCl}, \text{base} )</td>
<td>( \text{H}^+, \text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{or F}^- )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Why can’t we just use a simple alkyl ether (methyl, say) to protect a hydroxyl group? There is no problem making the ether, and it will survive most reactions—but there is a problem getting an ether off again. This is always a consideration in protecting group chemistry—you want a group that is stable to the conditions of whatever reaction you are going to do (in these examples, strong bases and nucleophiles), but can then be removed under mild conditions that do not result in decomposition of a sensitive molecule. What we need then is an ether that has an Achilles’ heel—a feature that makes it susceptible to attack by some specific reagent or under specific conditions. One such group is the tetrahydropyranyl (THP) group. Although it is stable under basic conditions, as an ether would be, it is an acetal—the presence of the second oxygen atom is its Achilles’ heel and makes the THP protecting group susceptible to hydrolysis under acidic conditions. You could see the lone pair on the second oxygen atom as a safety catch that is released only in the presence of acid.

Making the THP acetal has to be done in an unfamiliar way because the usual ‘carbonyl plus two alcohols’ method is inappropriate (work out why!). Alcohols are protected by treating them with an enol ether, dihydropyran, under acid catalysis. Notice the oxonium intermediate (formed by a familiar mechanism from Chapter 12)—just as in a normal acetal-forming reaction. In this example the THP group is at work preventing a hydroxyl group from interfering in the reduction of an ester.

There is more chemistry of enol ethers in Chapter 20.
The THP-protected compound above was used as an intermediate in a synthesis of the insecticide milbemycin. It needed to be converted to the alkyne in the margin—to do this the other hydroxyl group also needed protecting.

This time, however, TBDMS will not do because the protecting group needs to withstand the acidic conditions needed to remove the THP protecting group! What is more, the protecting group needs to be able to survive acid conditions in later steps of the synthesis of the insecticide. The answer is to use a third type of hydroxyl-protecting group, a benzyl ether. Benzyl (Bn) protecting groups are put on using strong base (usually sodium hydride) plus benzyl bromide, and are stable to both acid and base.

The benzyl ether's Achilles' heel is the aromatic ring and, after reading the first half of this chapter, you should be able to suggest conditions that will take it off again: hydrogenation (hydrogenolysis) over a palladium catalyst, which cleaves benzylic C–O bonds.

Benzyl ethers can alternatively sometimes be removed by acid, if the acid has a nucleophilic conjugate base. HBr, for example, will remove a benzyl ether because Br⁻ is a good enough nucleophile to displace ROH, although only at the reactive, benzylic centre.
We said earlier that simple methyl ethers are inappropriate as protecting groups for OH because they are too hard to take off again. That is usually true, but not if the OH is phenolic—ArOH is a better leaving group than ROH, so HBr will take off methyl groups from aryl methyl ethers too.

Protecting groups may be useful, but they are also wasteful—both of time, because there are two extra steps to do (putting the group on and taking it off), and of material, because these steps may not go in 100% yield. Here’s one way to avoid using them. During the development of the anti-asthma drug salbutamol, the triol below was needed. With large quantities of salbutamol already available, it seemed most straightforward to make the triol by adding phenylmagnesium bromide to an ester available from salbutamol. Unfortunately, the ester also contains three acidic protons, making it look as though the hydroxyl and amine groups all need protecting. But, in fact, it was possible to do the reaction just by adding a large excess of Grignard reagent: enough to remove the acidic protons and to add to the ester.

This strategy is easy to try, and, providing the Grignard reagent isn’t valuable (you can buy PhMgBr in bottles), is much more economical than putting on protecting groups and taking them off again. But it doesn’t always work—there is no way of telling whether it will until you try the reaction in the laboratory. In this closely related reaction, for example, the same chemists found that they needed to protect both the phenolic hydroxyl group (but not the other alcohol OH) as a benzyl ether and the amine NH as a benzyl amine. Both protecting groups come off in one hydrogenation step.

Benzyl groups are one way of protecting secondary amines against strong bases that might deprotonate them. But it is the nucleophilicity of amines that usually poses problems of chemoselectivity, rather than the acidity of their NH groups. The potential for pitfalls is
nowhere more acute than in the synthesis of one of the most important classes of biological molecules: peptides.

**Peptide synthesis**

Peptide synthesis has become one of the most reliable and predictable fields of practical organic chemistry, principally because of the effectiveness of the protecting groups it employs. For this reason, peptides are one of the few classes of complex organic molecules that can routinely be made by machines, such as the one on the right, in which much of the chemistry we are about to talk about takes place without any human intervention.

Biology makes peptides and proteins by selectively coupling together members of a pool of 20 or so amino acids. To do the same in the laboratory, we need to overcome a number of challenges. For example, we'll start by thinking about how to react two amino acids together, to make a dipeptide—leucine and glycine, for example. If we want the NH$_2$ group of glycine to react with the CO$_2$H group of leucine we will first have to activate the carboxylic acid towards nucleophilic substitution—by making the acyl chloride, say, or a particularly reactive ester, which we will represent as RCOX.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Leu} & \quad \text{Gly} \\
\text{HN} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Leu} & \quad \text{Gly} \\
\text{HN} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

The main problem, though, is that there is another free CO$_2$H, which could react with the COX group to form an anhydride, and two different free amines, either of which might react, giving both LeuLeu (which we don't want) and LeuGly (which we do).

For this reason, we need to protect both the NH$_2$ group of leucine and the CO$_2$H group of glycine. What sort of protecting groups do they need to be? We will need to be able to take them off again once they have done their job, so there is no point using, say, an amide to protect the amine since we would have great difficulty hydrolysing the amide in the presence of the amide bond we are trying to form. Not only do we want the protecting groups to be removable under mild conditions, but we want two groups (one for each of NH$_2$ and CO$_2$H) which we can take off under different conditions. We then have the opportunity to modify either end of the dipeptide at will.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Leu} & \quad \text{Gly} \\
\text{HN} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Leu} & \quad \text{Gly} \\
\text{HN} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

A good choice for a pair of conditions might be acid and base—we might protect the NH$_2$ group with a protecting group we can remove only in base, and the CO$_2$H group with protection we can remove only in acid.
The amino acids

For reference, a full list of the amino acids appearing in the structure of peptides is given here, along with the codes used to describe them in abbreviated structures. The side chains are shown in black, with side chain functional groups in green. More chemistry of amino acids will follow in Chapter 42.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Three-letter code</th>
<th>One-letter code</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>glycine</td>
<td>Gly</td>
<td>G</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Glycine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alanine</td>
<td>Ala</td>
<td>A</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Alanine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valine</td>
<td>Val</td>
<td>V</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Valine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leucine</td>
<td>Leu</td>
<td>L</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Leucine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isoleucine</td>
<td>Ile</td>
<td>I</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Isoleucine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phenylalanine</td>
<td>Phe</td>
<td>F</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Phenylalanine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tryptophan</td>
<td>Trp</td>
<td>W</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Tryptophan" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proline</td>
<td>Pro</td>
<td>P</td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Proline" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serine</td>
<td>Ser</td>
<td>S</td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Serine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threonine</td>
<td>Thr</td>
<td>T</td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Threonine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyrosine</td>
<td>Tyr</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td><img src="image11" alt="Tyrosine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Three-letter code</td>
<td>One-letter code</td>
<td>Structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cysteine</td>
<td>Cys</td>
<td>C</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cysteine structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methionine</td>
<td>Met</td>
<td>M</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Methionine structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histidine</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>H</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Histidine structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lysine</td>
<td>Lys</td>
<td>K</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lysine structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arginine</td>
<td>Arg</td>
<td>R</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Arginine structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspartic acid</td>
<td>Asp</td>
<td>D</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Aspartic acid structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asparagine</td>
<td>Asn</td>
<td>N</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Asparagine structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glutamic acid</td>
<td>Glu</td>
<td>E</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Glutamic acid structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glutamine</td>
<td>Gln</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Glutamine structure" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Cbz protecting group—oxytocin

\[ \text{H}_2\text{N–Cys–Tyr–Ile–Gln–Asn–Cys–Pro–Leu–Gly–CONH}_2 \]

Oxytocin is a hormone involved in controlling the onset of labour in women and the subsequent release of milk. It was the first peptide hormone to be synthesized, in 1953, by du Vigneaud and Bodanszky. First, the carboxylic acid of the glycine was protected as an ethyl ester. Making an ester is the obvious way to stop CO₂H groups interfering as acids or as nucleophiles. However, simple methyl and ethyl esters may pose problems—they can still react with such nucleophiles as amines. Ethyl esters of amino acids are therefore stable only if the NH₂ group is protected. The glycine ethyl ester had to be stored as its hydrochloride salt: in effect, the –NH₂ group is ‘protected’ as –NH₃⁺.

We introduced the dipeptide LeuGly as an example because it appears at one end of the peptide hormone oxytocin. The first step in the synthesis of oxytocin is indeed the coupling of glycine (through its amino group) with leucine. This is how it was done by du Vigneaud and Bodanszky. The ‘synthetic’ version of the hormone, syntocinon (identical, of course, with the natural version isolated from human placentas, although without the dangers of biological contamination), is regularly used in modern obstetrics to induce labour in women whose babies are overdue.
A more commonly used carboxylic-acid-protecting group that is rather more stable towards attack by nucleophiles is the t-butyl ester. t-Butyl esters can be made by reacting the carboxylic acid with the cation generated from isobutene in sulfuric acid.

Steric bulk means that t-butyl esters are resistant to nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group, and that includes hydrolysis under basic conditions (nucleophilic attack by HO⁻). But they do hydrolyse relatively easily in acid because the mechanism of hydrolysis of t-butyl esters in acid is quite different. Instead of undergoing nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group, the t-butyl ester loses a stable carbocation, which is either captured by solvent in an S_N1 reaction or loses a proton in an E1 reaction.

In the event, the chemists needed a group that they could later react with ammonia to make the primary amide that is present in oxytocin. They also wanted a group that was stable to mild acid—so they chose the ethyl ester.

As for the leucine residue, it had to have its NH₂ group protected using a base-stable protecting group because base would be needed to release the NH₂ group of the glycine hydrochloride salt. The group that was used is one of the most important nitrogen-protecting groups and is known as the Cbz group (Cbz stands for carboxybenzyl). Cbz groups are put on by treating with benzyl chloroformate (BnOCOCl) and weak base.

Cbz-protected amines are actually carbamates: just like amides they are no longer nucleophilic because the nitrogen’s lone pair is tied up in conjugation with the carbonyl group. They are resistant to both aqueous acid and aqueous base, but they have, to use the analogy we developed earlier, an Achilles’ heel—the benzyl group. Removal of the benzyl group under the same two sets of conditions that remove benzyl ethers (p. 551) releases the safety catch and removes Cbz:
cleavage of Cbz (Z) in HBr/AcOH

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \text{N} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph}
\end{align*}
\]

HBr is a strong acid

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \text{N} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{Br}^{-} \text{ is a good nucleophile}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \text{N} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph}
\end{align*}
\]

benzylic C–O bond


c cleavage of Cbz (Z) by hydrogenolysis

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \text{N} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph}
\end{align*}
\]

H\text{H}_2, \text{Pd}

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \text{N} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{CO}_2
\]

+ PhMe

The carboxylic acid of the Cbz-protected leucine next has to be activated to allow it to react with the glycine. The acyl chloride won’t do as it is unstable, and an alternative in peptide chemistry is to make a p-nitrophenyl or 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl ester. Phenoxide, especially when substituted with electron-withdrawing substituents, is a good leaving group, and Cbz-leucine p-nitrophenyl ester reacts with the glycine hydrochloride ethyl ester in the presence of a weak base (triethylamine, to release the glycine’s NH\textsubscript{2} group).

The dipeptide is now coupled—but is still protected. Deprotection (HBr/AcOH) gave the HCl salt of LeuGly ethyl ester for further reaction. The rest of the peptide was built up in much the same way—each amino acid being introduced as the Cbz-protected p-nitrophenyl ester before being deprotected ready for the next coupling, until all nine of oxytocin’s amino acids had been introduced.

The Boc protecting group—gastrin and aspartame

Gastrin is a hormone released from the stomach that controls the progress of digestion. Early work on the hormone showed that only the four C-terminal amino acids of the peptide (the C-terminal tetrapeptide) were necessary for its physiological activity.

The synthesis starts with the coupling of two more amino acids: aspartic acid and phenylalanine. As you would expect, the carboxylic acid group of phenylalanine is protected, this time as a methyl ester, and the NH\textsubscript{2} group of aspartic acid is protected as a Cbz derivative. Since aspartic acid has two carboxylic acid groups, one of these also has to be protected. Here is the method—first the Cbz group is put on; then both acids are protected as benzyl esters. Then just one of the benzyl esters is hydrolysed. It may seem surprising to you that this chemoselective hydrolysis is possible, and you could not have predicted that it would work without trying it out in the laboratory.
Accidental aspartame

At this point in one synthesis of the tetrapeptide in the laboratories of Searle, the now defunct American pharmaceutical company, a remarkable discovery occurred. The AspPhe methyl ester was accidentally found to taste sweet—extremely sweet—about 200 times as sweet as sucrose. AspPhe is now known as aspartame, marketed under the brand name NutraSweet. It goes without saying that despite this extraordinary discovery, tasting anything in the laboratory, accidentally or otherwise, is extremely unwise, ill-judged, and outright dangerous. Donald Rumsfeld was once chief executive of Searle.

The protected acid is next activated as its 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl ester, ready for coupling with the phenylalanine methyl ester in base. Now you see why the benzyl ester was chosen to protect Asp's side-chain carboxylic acid group—hydrogenolysis can be used to cleave both the Cbz group and the benzyl ester at the same time.

The next amino acid in the peptide is methionine, and it will of course need N-protecting and C-activating. The N-protecting group used this time was different—still a carbamate, although not Cbz—it was Boc, which stands for t-butyloxycarbonyl and is pronounced 'bock'. The Boc group, t-BuOCO, is introduced with (t-BuOCO)2O, known as Boc anhydride. Like Cbz, the Boc group is a carbamate protecting group. But, unlike Cbz, it can be removed simply with dilute aqueous acid. Just 3M HCl will hydrolyse it, again by protonation, loss of t-butyl cation, and decarboxylation. Base, on the other hand, cannot touch the Boc group—the carbonyl group is too hindered to be attacked even by OH−, and Boc is strongly resistant to basic hydrolysis.

The mechanism for this hydrolysis is comparable to the acid-catalysed cleavage of Cbz groups, but remember that here the t-Bu group leaves in an S N1 step. Cbz groups are cleaved by using a good nucleophile, Br−, because an S N2 step is involved; any old acid will cleave Boc.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{MeS} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{N} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH}
\end{align*}
\]

methionine

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{t-Bu} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{t-Bu} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Boc} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{R} & \quad \text{R} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

Boc-Met

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \quad \text{R} \\
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \quad \text{R} \\
\text{CO}_2 & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{CO}_2 & \quad \text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

removal of the Boc group in acid
Meanwhile, back at the tetrapeptide synthesis, methionine (Met) has been Boc-protected, and is ready for activation—as a 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl ester (abbreviated to Ar below) this time—and coupling with the deprotected AspPhe–OMe. Aqueous acid takes off the Boc group without hydrolysing peptide or ester bonds, and a repeat of this cycle with Boc-tryptophan trichlorophenyl ester (BocHN–Trp–OAr) followed by formation of the amide with ammonia finally gives the tetrapeptide.

The Fmoc protecting group

Our final protecting group has a susceptibility inverse to that of Boc. The Fmoc (pronounced ‘eff-mock’), or fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl, protecting group cannot be lost by substitution in the manner of Cbz or t-Boc because neither S_N1 nor S_N2 mechanisms can operate at the ringed carbon atom: it is both primary and hindered.

So, where is the safety catch? Fmoc’s Achilles’ heel is its rather acidic proton (pK_a about 25), shown in green. It’s acidic because the anionic product of deprotonation is aromatic. Only a very small concentration of this aromatic anion ever forms, but as it does it immediately undergoes elimination. Fmoc-protected amines are readily deprotected in base.

In Chapter 15 we analysed in detail the structural features which favour and disfavour substitution reactions of this type.

The aromaticity of cyclopentadienyl anions of this type was discussed in Chapter 17, p. 401.
The table of protecting groups, built up slowly over this chapter, is now complete. You should from this point on be able to write a structure for each of the ones listed below, and you should also be familiar with the types of conditions necessary for protection and deprotection with each member of the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>To protect</th>
<th>To deprotect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetal (dioxolane)</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>ketones, aldehydes</td>
<td>nucleophiles, bases</td>
<td>H^+, H_2O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trialkysilyl R_3Si</td>
<td>RO–SiMe_3</td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>nucleophiles, C or N bases</td>
<td>R_3SiCl, base</td>
<td>H^+, H_2O, or F^-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e.g. TBDMS)</td>
<td>RO–SiMe_2t-Bu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetrahydropyranyl (THP)</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>strong bases</td>
<td></td>
<td>H^+, H_2O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzyl ether (OBn)</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>almost everything</td>
<td>NaH, Br</td>
<td>H_2, Pd/C, or HBr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methyl ether (ArOMe)</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>phenols (ArOH)</td>
<td>bases</td>
<td>NaH, MeI, or (MeO)_2SO_2</td>
<td>BBr_3, HBr, HI, Me_3Si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-butyl ester (CO_2t-Bu)</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>carboxylic acids</td>
<td>nucleophiles</td>
<td>isobutene, H^+</td>
<td>strong acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cbz (Z) (OCOBn)</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>electrophiles</td>
<td>BnOCOCl, base</td>
<td>HBr, AcOH; or H_2, Pd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-Boc (OCO-t-Bu)</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>electrophiles</td>
<td>(t-BuOCO)_2O, base</td>
<td>H^+; H_2O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fmoc</td>
<td>see text</td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>electrophiles</td>
<td>Fmoc-Cl</td>
<td>base, e.g. amine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chemoselective methods for oxidation and reduction, and protecting groups to help control chemoselectivity, will appear throughout this book, and we shall return in detail to peptides and their biological functions in Chapter 42. Before then we will address in detail stereoselectivity (in Chapters 32, 33, and 41) but the very next chapter will deal with the other aspect of selectivity—regioselectivity.
Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Regioselectivity

Introduction

We met chemoselectivity—which group reacts—in the last chapter. Chemoselectivity means that there are two separate functional groups and that a reagent must choose between them. By contrast, regioselectivity implies that there is one functional group that can react in two different places and a reagent must choose where to react. Simple examples include addition of HX to an alkene (Chapter 19) and nucleophilic attack on the epoxide derived from that alkene (Chapter 15).

It might also mean that two functional groups are combined in a single conjugated system that can again react in two (or more) places. Examples include the addition of bromine to dienes (two conjugated alkenes) and addition of a nucleophile to a conjugated carbonyl compound (carbonyl group conjugated to an alkene).
The choice between ortho/para and meta substitution when an electrophile attacks a benzene ring (Chapter 21) is also a matter of regioselectivity. We shall discuss all these examples in further detail in this chapter, and extend these ideas to new reactions as well.

**Regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution**

We start with electrophilic aromatic substitution. It was established in Chapter 21 that an electron-donating substituent favours ortho/para and an electron-withdrawing substituent favours meta substitution. Although meta substitution is usually slower than ortho/para substitution (because electron-withdrawing groups deactivate the ring), it usually gives the meta product alone.

![Reaction Scheme](image)

Most reactions of benzene rings with electron-donating substituents give ortho/para mixtures and, if the substituent is very electron-donating, may lead to both ortho and para substitution in the same molecule. Control in favour of the para product can usually be achieved by reducing the reactivity of the substituent and increasing its size.

![Reaction Scheme](image)

Of course, if the para position is blocked, ortho substitution is the only option, and we will come back to the idea of blocking substituents shortly. But there is a general way of directing electrophiles to the ortho position using activation by metallation.

![Reaction Scheme](image)

**Making organometallics by deprotonating aromatic rings: ortholithiation**

Look at the reaction below: butyllithium deprotonates an sp² hybridized carbon atom to give an aryllithium. It works because the protons attached to sp² carbons are more acidic than protons attached to sp³ carbons (although they are a lot less acidic than alkyne protons).

![Reaction Scheme](image)

But there must be another factor involved to account for exclusive ortho substitution, which is after all the most hindered site. The functional group containing oxygen (sometimes nitrogen) is next to the proton to be removed. This functional group 'guides' the butyllithium, so that it attacks the adjacent protons. It does this by forming a complex with the Lewis acidic lithium atom, much as ether solvents dissolve Grignard reagents by complexing.
their Lewis-acidic metal ions. This mechanism means that it is only the protons ortho to the functional group that can be removed, and the reaction is known as an ortholithiation.

The example below shows ortholithiation, activated by the nitrogen atom of a tertiary amine, being used to make a new C–C bond. Here it is the nitrogen atom that directs attack of the butyllithium, again by complexation with the Li atom.

Ortholithiation is a useful way of making reactive organometallics because the starting material does not need to contain a halogen atom. But it is much less general than the other ways we have told you about for making organolithiums, as there are rather tight restrictions on what sorts of groups the aromatic ring must carry. The best ortholithiation-directing substituents have lone pairs to donate electrons to Li and are also electronegative so they withdraw electrons from the benzene ring and help stabilize the anion forming at the ortho position.

Fredericamycin

Fredericamycin is a curious aromatic compound extracted in 1981 from the soil bacterium Streptomyces griseus. It is a powerful antibiotic and antitumour agent, and its structure is shown below. The first time it was made in the laboratory, in 1988, the chemists in Boston started their synthesis with three consecutive lithiation reactions: two are ortholithiations, and the third is slightly different. You needn’t be concerned about the reagents that react with the organolithiums; just look at the lithiation reactions themselves. In each one, one or more oxygen atoms (colour-coded green) directs a strongly basic reagent to remove a nearby proton (colour-coded black). As it happens, none of the steps uses n-BuLi itself, but instead its more reactive cousins, sec-BuLi and tert-BuLi (see the table on p. 186). The third lithiation step uses a different kind of base related to LDA, made by deprotonating an amine (pKₐ about 35). The black proton removed in this third lithiation is more acidic because it is next to an aromatic ring.
**Sulfonation may lead to ortho selectivity without lithiation**

We introduced sulfonation in Chapter 21 but have left detailed discussion until now because sulfonation has some features that make it more interesting than first meets the eye. One important difference between sulfonation and other examples of electrophilic substitution is that sulfonation is reversible. Heating an arenesulfonic acid causes it to decompose with loss of gaseous SO₃.

Here’s an example of how we can exploit this to gain control of regioselectivity without resorting to lithiation. In stage 1 the phenol is sulfonated twice—the first sulfonic acid group (which adds para to the OH group) is electron-withdrawing and deactivates the ring, making the introduction of the second group (which goes ortho to the OH and meta to the first sulfonic acid) harder and that of the third group harder still, which is why we can isolate the disulfonated phenol.

![Sulfonation reaction](image)

In the second stage, the bromination, the OH directs to the ortho and para positions, but only one ortho position is vacant, so the bromine attacks there. Sodium hydroxide is needed to deprotonate the sulfonic acid groups to make them less deactivating. The sulfonation reaction is reversible, and in the third stage it is possible to drive the reaction over to the products by distilling out the relatively volatile 2-bromophenol at high temperature. The loss of SO₃ involves attack of H⁺ on the aromatic ring.

![Bromination reaction](image)

Overall, we have succeeded in making 2-bromophenol where direct bromination of phenol itself would have given (at low temperatures) mainly p-bromophenol and at higher temperatures, 2,4,6-tribromophenol. The sulfonic acid groups are useful reversible blocking groups.

The same method can be used with anilines because para-sulfonation of aromatic amines is possible. This seems surprising because in sulfuric acid essentially all the amine will be protonated. You might expect the resulting ammonium ion to react in the meta position (because NH₃⁺ is no longer electron-rich) but instead the para-sulfonic acid (sulfanilic acid) is formed. At the high temperature of the reaction, it is probable that any meta-substituted product reverts to the starting material, while the para-sulfonic acid accumulates because it is stabilized by delocalization and is less hindered.

![Aniline sulfonation reaction](image)

**Regioselective reactions of naphthalene**

We introduced you to the 10-electron aromatic system of naphthalene in Chapter 7. As you would expect, it undergoes electrophilic aromatic substitution with the same reagents you met in Chapter 21, but the regioselectivity of its reactions is of a different type to the ortho, meta,
para selectivity we have been talking about. Naphthalene has 10 carbons: two form the ring junction, and aren’t available for substitution reactions, and the other eight are of just two types $\alpha$ (the 1-position, next to the ring junction) and $\beta$ (the 2-position).

Electrophilic substitution on naphthalene normally occurs at a site next to the ring junction ($\alpha$). This is because the HOMO has its largest coefficient at this atom, but you can rationalize the result by looking at the long, linear delocalization in the resulting cation, which can be represented by a single train of arrows. This extended conjugation makes naphthalene more nucleophilic than benzene. So, bromination occurs at the $\alpha$-position in good yield even without a Lewis acid.

Reaction at the other position ($\beta$) is less favourable as the intermediate cation is cross-conjugated. The cation delocalizes into both rings, but no long linear chain of arrows is possible.

If the reaction is irreversible, the $\alpha$-product is usually formed. But if the reaction is reversible, as is the case with sulfonation, the position of substitution may be determined by temperature. Sulfonation at low temperatures gives the $\alpha$-product by kinetic control, while sulfonation at high temperatures gives the $\beta$-product by thermodynamic control. The $\beta$-product is formed more slowly but it is more stable as there is less steric hindrance between the large sulfonic acid group and the orange hydrogen on the other ring. Under conditions allowing reversible sulfonation, eventually all the product ends up $\beta$.

Regiocontrol by choice of route

Choosing the right route to an aromatic product is essential if you want to get one particular isomer. We can illustrate this with the synthesis of the isomers of bromonitrobenzene. Because the bromo substituent is ortho, para-directing and the nitro group meta-directing, it’s possible to make all three isomers, providing we exploit the regioselectivity of electrophilic substitution. Nitration of bromobenzene would give the ortho and para isomers while bromination of nitrobenzene would give the meta isomer. The selectivity of the first reaction is not good: bromine is small and not very electrophilic, so steric hindrance is weak and the ortho positions are not deactivated. Furthermore there are two ortho positions but only one para: a typical result is about 37% ortho, 1% meta, and 62% para. Both compounds are industrial products, made by nitration and separated.
Bromination of nitrobenzene is remarkably good, considering the unreactivity of nitrobenzene in electrophilic aromatic substitution. One recipe uses iron powder and bromine at 140 °C and gives 74% of the meta product. We shall need these reactions in the next section.

Before we move on, consider why this selectivity works: we can get all three isomers because we have one ortho/para director and one meta director. But what if we had two ortho/para directors—say, amino and bromo—and wanted the meta isomer?

The solution in these cases is often to make use of the transformation of the nitro group (a meta director) into an amino group (a para director) by reduction.

Since the amino group can be substituted by diazotization (p. 520), many problems of regioselectivity can be solved by using nitro compounds as intermediates. You could, for example, use the product above to make the otherwise challenging 3-bromoiodobenzene:

**Regioselectivity in nucleophilic aromatic substitution**

As you saw in Chapters 21 and 22, diazonium salts need no activation to undergo nucleophilic aromatic substitution, but for other leaving groups a nitro group is commonly used as an activator. The three fluoronitrobenzenes are all commercial products but only the ortho and para isomers can do the nucleophilic substitution. This is because the nitro group must be able to stabilize the addition intermediate by accepting the negative charge.

By carefully combining electrophilic and nucleophilic substitution it is possible to make aromatic compounds with substituents arranged in a precise and predictable fashion. So, if we nitrates o-dichlorobenzene, all positions are favourable but the nitro group goes in para to one Cl atom because of steric hindrance at the ortho positions. Although chlorine is small, two chlorines next to each other have a butressing effect as each pushes the other away. It is difficult to get three adjacent substituents on a benzene ring. If we now do a nucleophilic
aromatic substitution, only the Cl para to the nitro group is displaced. We can even reduce the nitro group to the corresponding amine.

The last successful method for nucleophilic aromatic substitution uses a benzyne intermediate—on p. 524 you saw benzyne chemistry being used to make meta-aminoanisole, like this:

Now that the amino group is fixed; we can displace it via a diazonium salt using any chosen nucleophile—copper cyanide for example:

Regioselectivity of intramolecular reactions

A cunning way to get unusual regioselectivity is to make the reaction intramolecular. The synthesis from benzene of the cyclic ketone known as tetralone may look difficult as we must get an ortho relationship on the benzene ring. But if we make the final bond in the ring by a Friedel–Crafts acylation there is no problem. The alkyl group is ortho,para-directing and the acid cannot reach the para position.

Notice the use of a cyclic anhydride in the first Friedel–Crafts acylation. It doesn't matter where the acylation occurs and the reaction stops there as the ring is deactivated by the ketone and the carboxylic acid released in the reaction is much less electrophilic than the anhydride. The ketone is then reduced to a CH₂ group by the Clemmensen method (see Chapter 23) and polyphosphoric acid is used to carry out the intramolecular acylation step.

A more subtle approach is to use a ‘tether’—something that holds two reagents together and is afterwards cleaved. An example is halolactonization. The idea is simple. A halogen, say bromine, attacks an alkene and the bromonium ion intermediate is captured intramolecularly by the anion of a carboxylic acid. The reaction therefore uses bromine and NaHCO₃—a weak base, but one strong enough to deprotonate a carboxylic acid. The anion attacks the more highly substituted end of the bromonium ion, as explained in Chapter 19, and forms a five-membered ring.

Usually a more powerful catalyst (AlCl₃) is needed, but intramolecular acylations are fast enough without this.
Although any halogen might be used in this reaction, iodine is the most versatile and the reaction is commonly called iodolactonization. The tether is the C–O bond of the lactone and this can be cleaved with an alkoxide.

The reaction with methoxide needs some explanation. Attack on the carbonyl group cleaves the lactone, releasing an alkoxide that cyclizes to form an epoxide. A second molecule of methoxide now attacks the epoxide, opening it from the less hindered end as we should expect in an anionic reaction (Chapter 19).

Another example shows that reaction may occur at the other end of the iodonium ion. Attack at the tertiary carbon would be difficult sterically and, in any case, would give an unstable four-membered ring. The lactone formed has the iodine β to the carbonyl group and so eliminates easily in base (pyridine works well) by the E1cB mechanism (Chapter 17) to give the unsaturated lactone. Although the relative stereochemistry of the iodolactone is controlled by the inversion in the opening of the iodonium ion, it is irrelevant as it disappears in the elimination step.

Regioselectivity in elimination reactions

This question was discussed in Chapter 17 but we can return to it here with more sophisticated examples. The regioselectivity in the last reaction of the sequence above dictates the position of the alkene in the product. Of all of the protons adjacent to the iodo group, only a black one is lost:

The orange hydrogen cannot be lost by E2 as it is cis to the iodine and E2 reactions prefer a trans (anti-periplanar) arrangement. The green hydrogens are not lost because they are less acidic than the black hydrogens. In fact, this is not an E2 elimination at all. Because one of the black hydrogens can be lost in enolate formation, this is an E1cB elimination.
But now another regioselectivity question arises: if elimination occurs preferably towards the carbonyl group, how can we make the starting material for the iodolactonization sequence, which has the alkene not in conjugation with the carboxylic acid? It turns out that it is better to make the ester with the ‘wrong’ regioselectivity. This is easily done by a Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction using a phosphonate ester. This Wittig-style reaction is explained in Chapter 27.

\[
\text{O} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{NaH}} \quad \text{(EtO)}_2\text{P} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{O}} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Et} + \quad \text{O} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{NaH}} \quad \text{(EtO)}_2\text{P} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{O}} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Et}
\]

Now comes the remarkable regioselectivity. The ester is hydrolysed, as usual, in aqueous NaOH. On acidification to pH 3, the free acid is released and the double bond has moved into the ring.

\[
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{pH 3}} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H}
\]

Alkenes like to be conjugated with carbonyl groups but they also prefer to be inside six-membered rings rather than outside—in this case presumably because the ester group otherwise has to eclipse a ring carbon. Conjugation with an ester group pulls the alkene out of the six-membered ring in the lactone we made above, but when the carbonyl group is a carboxylate anion, conjugation is very weak and the double bond moves into the ring.

**Electrophilic attack on alkenes**

You met electrophilic attack on alkenes in Chapter 19 and we shall just briefly revisit its regioselectivity. Unsymmetrical alkenes add HBr to give the more stable of the two possible cations. If R is alkyl or aryl, this means the more substituted cation.

\[
\text{unstable primary cation not formed}
\]

If you want to get the other regioisomer, with the heteroatom at the end, you can use hydroboration (Chapter 19) or the radical reactions described in the next section. Here is a brief reminder of hydroboration. Reaction between a borane having at least one B–H bond with an alkene gives an alkyl borane in which all the hydrogens are replaced by alkyl groups. Oxidation gives the terminal alcohol.

\[
\text{R} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{BH}_3} \quad \text{BH}_2 \quad \xrightarrow{\text{BH}_3} \quad \text{BH}_3 \quad \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \text{NaOH}} \quad \text{OH} + \text{NaB(OH)}_4
\]

The regioselectivity comes from the first step. The boron’s empty p orbital bonds to the more nucleophilic end of the alkene and hydride is transferred to give a borane. Reaction with alkaline H$_2$O$_2$ leads to migration of an alkyl group from boron to oxygen and eventually to the alcohol.
Borane is unstable but can easily be made from NaBH₄ and BF₃. In this synthesis of hexan-1-ol from hex-1-ene, a water molecule has been added to the alkene, but with the opposite regioselectivity to reactions with H₂O in acid or HBr.

\[ \text{NaBH}_4, \text{BF}_3, \text{OEt}_2 \rightarrow \text{B} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O}_2, \text{NaOH} \rightarrow \text{OH} \]

\[ \text{81\% yield} \]

**Regioselectivity in radical reactions**

Almost every reaction we have discussed so far has been ionic, but in this short section we need to give you a preview of another group of reactions we return to in Chapter 37—those of radicals. When HBr adds to an unsymmetrical alkene we use arrows that represent the movement of two electrons to give charged intermediates that combine in a second step to give a neutral product. The strong H–Br bond breaks to give a bromide ion and a stable alkyl cation. This bond breaks *heterolytically*—that is, unsymmetrically—as does the alkene bond. We can predict the regiochemistry of these reactions by making the most stable anions and cations as intermediates, in this case a tertiary alkyl cation and a bromide anion.

![Radical addition](image)

**Radical addition**

The regioselectivity in the reaction below is opposite: a primary alkyl bromide is formed, by a different mechanism involving radicals.

In radical reactions, bonds break *homolytically* with one electron going one way and one the other. The radicals that are formed have an odd number of electrons, one of which must be unpaired. This makes them very reactive and they are not usually isolated. Even strong bonds can break into ions provided they are polarized, but to make radicals we need weak symmetrical bonds such as O–O, Br–Br or I–I. Dibenzoyl peroxide, the Ph(CO₂)₂ catalyst in this reaction, readily undergoes homolysis like this—the one-electron movements are represented by ‘fish-hook’ arrows having one barb and odd electrons on atoms are represented by dots.

\[ \text{dibenzoyl peroxide} \rightarrow \text{Ph CO} \cdot \text{O} - \text{O} \text{Ph} \rightarrow \text{Ph CO} \cdot \text{O} + \cdot \text{O Ph} \]

\[ \Delta G^\ddagger = 139 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \]

Now we can use the new radicals we have just made to cleave the strong HBr bond homolytically because a new and very strong OH bond will be formed. As we start with one radical intermediate that must have an unpaired electron, we must finish with another radical with an unpaired electron. In this case, it is a bromine radical.

\[ \text{Ph CO} \cdot \text{O} + \text{H} - \text{Br} \rightarrow \text{Ph CO} \cdot \text{OH} + \text{Br}^- \]

If we do this reaction in the presence of the alkene we have just reacted with HBr, the bromine radical adds to the alkene in one of the two possible ways. Although radicals are neutral,
they are electron-deficient (the C atom is one electron short) and, rather like cations, are more stable the more substituents they have. So the tertiary radical is formed rather than the primary radical, and the bromine ends up at the primary position.

We have still not reached the end of the reaction as our product is still a radical. How can it become a molecule with only paired electrons? The answer is simple. It reacts with another HBr molecule to produce more bromine radicals. Now you see something important to all radical reactions: only a small amount of the radical is needed as more radicals are produced every time the reaction gives product. The overall process is a radical chain reaction.

Because of this we also need only very small amounts of dibenzoyl peroxide, the radical initiator, which is just as well as it is potentially explosive, like many radical generators. Here is the reaction being used to make a bromoacid:

Radical abstraction

We sneaked a new reaction into that sequence. The removal of a hydrogen atom (note: not a proton) from HBr by the peroxide radical is an abstraction reaction. The bromine radical will also abstract hydrogen atoms and will do so from the same alkene we have just used but with yet another different outcome, as you see in the margin.

When light shines on bromine, the weak Br–Br bond breaks to give two bromine radicals. Heat will do the job too but light is cleaner and, as bromine is brown, it absorbs most wavelengths of visible light.

Radicals are very unstable and reactive, and these bromine radicals may simply recombine or they may react with other compounds. You already know that bromide anions are good nucleophiles in $S_N2$ reactions, but bromine radicals do two quite different reactions: abstraction and addition. The Br radical may abstract a hydrogen atom from the alkene or it may add to the $\pi$ bond. Notice that each reaction produces a new carbon-centred radical and, in the first case, a molecule of HBr. Whereas the Br–Br bond is weak, the H–Br bond is much stronger ($366 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$) and, unlike ionic reactions, radical reactions are dominated by bond strength.

The first reaction introduces another important aspect of regioselectivity: why does the radical abstract that H atom, and not one from the alkene?
Removal of an alkene H gives a carbon-centred radical localized on the sp² atom but the removal of an H from a methyl group gives a much more stable delocalized allylic radical. In addition there are six such H atoms but only two alkene H atoms.

The reaction obviously cannot end there with the formation of another radical, however stable, and this allylic radical collects a bromine atom from a bromine molecule. Note that the allylic radical doesn’t react with a bromine radical in this step: radicals are very unstable and the concentration of radicals at any one time is so low that it is rare for two of them to meet.

This step also produces a new bromine radical that can start a new series of reactions. Like the addition of HBr above, the reaction is a radical chain reaction, and only a small amount of Br₂ needs to break down to Br• to get the reaction going. This is important as you already know what happens when bromine molecules react with alkenes: addition occurs by an ionic mechanism. Add too much Br₂ and the bromine molecules attack the alkene directly and do not abstract H atoms.

If we want to make the dibromide, we use plenty of bromine, but if we want to use a radical process to make the allylic bromide we must take advantage of the greater reactivity of the radical and keep the bromine concentration low. A good way to do this is to use the compound NBS (N-bromosuccinimide), which you met in Chapter 19. NBS acts as a sort of turnstile which only lets a molecule of Br₂ out when a molecule of HBr is formed (and of course HBr is the by-product in the radical bromination).

Br₂ is slowly released into the reaction as it proceeds, and the concentration never builds up enough to generate the dibromide. In this example, dibenzoyl peroxide is the initiator and allylic bromination gives the useful cyclohexenyl bromide.

These radical reactions will be described in much greater detail in Chapter 37. For the moment you need only notice that they can have quite different regioselectivity from ionic reactions with the same reagents.
Nucleophilic attack on allylic compounds

The allylic bromides that can be made by these radical reactions display interesting regioselectivity. We shall start with some substitution reactions with which you are familiar from Chapter 15. There we said that allyl bromide is about 100 times more reactive towards simple SN2 reactions than is propyl bromide or other saturated alkyl halides.

The double bond stabilizes the SN2 transition state by conjugation with the p orbital at the carbon atom under attack. This full p orbital (shown in orange in the diagram below) forms a partial bond with the nucleophile and with the leaving group in the transition state. Any stabilization of the transition state will, of course, accelerate the reaction by lowering the energy barrier.

There is an alternative mechanism for this reaction that involves nucleophilic attack on the alkene instead of on the saturated carbon atom. This mechanism leads to the same product and is often called the SN2’ (pronounced ‘S-N-two-prime’) mechanism.

We can explain both mechanisms in a unified way if we look at the frontier orbitals involved. The nucleophile must attack an empty orbital (the LUMO), which we might expect to be simply $\sigma^*$ ($C-Br$) for the SN2 reaction. But this ignores the alkene. The interaction between $\pi^*$ ($C=C$) and the adjacent $\sigma^*$ ($C-Br$) will as usual produce two new orbitals, one higher and one lower in energy. The lower-energy orbital, $\pi^* + \sigma^*$, will now be the LUMO. To construct this orbital we must put all the atomic orbitals parallel and make the contact between $\pi^* + \sigma^*$ a bonding interaction.
If the allylic halide is unsymmetrically substituted, a question of regioselectivity arises. The products from $S_N2$ and $S_N2'$ are different and the normal result is that nucleophilic attack occurs at the less hindered end of the allylic system, whether that means $S_N2$ or $S_N2'$. This important allylic bromide, known as prenyl bromide, normally reacts entirely via the $S_N2$ reaction.

The two ends of the allylic system are contrasted sterically: direct ($S_N2$) attack is at a primary carbon while allylic ($S_N2'$) attack is at a tertiary carbon atom so that steric hindrance favours the $S_N2$ reaction. In addition, the number of substituents on the alkene product means that the $S_N2$ product is nearly always preferred—$S_N2$ gives a trisubstituted alkene while the $S_N2'$ product has a less stable monosubstituted alkene.

An important example is the reaction of prenyl bromide with phenols. This is simply carried out with $K_2CO_3$ in acetone as phenols are acidic enough ($pK_a \approx 10$) to be substantially deprotonated by carbonate. The product is almost entirely from the $S_N2$ route, and is used in the Claisen rearrangement (Chapter 35).

If we make the two ends of the allyl system more similar, say one end primary and one end secondary, things are more equal. We could consider the two isomeric butenyl chlorides.

All routes look reasonable, although we might again expect faster attack at the primary carbon. The reactions in the left-hand box are preferred to those in the right-hand box. But there is no special preference for the $S_N2$ over the $S_N2'$ mechanism or vice versa—the individual case decides. If we react the secondary butenyl chloride with an amine we get the $S_N2'$ mechanism entirely.

If the primary chloride is used, once again we get nucleophilic attack at the primary centre. The more stable product with the more highly substituted alkene is formed this time by the $S_N2$ reaction. Here is a slightly more advanced example:
Notice that these reactions take place with allylic chlorides. We should not expect an alkyl chloride to be particularly good at $S_{N2}$ reactions as chloride ion is only a moderate leaving group and we should normally prefer to use alkyl bromides or iodides. Allylic chlorides are more reactive because of the alkene. Even if the reaction occurs by a simple $S_{N2}$ mechanism without rearrangement, the alkene is still making the molecule more electrophilic.

You might ask a very good question at this point. How do we know that these reactions really take place by $S_{N2}$ and $S_{N2}'$ mechanisms and not by an $S_{N1}$ mechanism via the stable allyl cation? Well in the case of prenyl bromide, we don’t! In fact, we suspect that the cation probably is an intermediate because prenyl bromide and its allylic isomer are in rapid equilibrium in solution at room temperature.

The equilibrium is entirely in favour of prenyl bromide because of its more highly substituted double bond. Reactions on the tertiary allylic isomer are very likely to take place by the $S_{N1}$ mechanism: the cation is stable because it is tertiary and allylic and the equilibration tells us it is already there. Even if the reactions were bimolecular, no $S_{N2}'$ mechanism would be necessary for the tertiary bromide because it can equilibrate to the primary isomer more rapidly than the $S_{N2}$ or $S_{N2}'$ reaction takes place.

Even the secondary system we also considered is in rapid equilibrium when the leaving group is bromide. This time both allylic isomers are present, and the primary allylic isomer (known as crotyl bromide) is an $E/Z$ mixture. The bromides can be made from either alcohol with HBr and the same ratio of products results, indicating a common intermediate in the two mechanisms. You saw at the beginning of Chapter 15 that this reaction is restricted to alcohols that can react by $S_{N1}$.

Displacement of the bromide by cyanide ion, using the copper(I) salt as the reagent, gives a mixture of nitriles in which the more stable primary nitrile predominates even more. These can be separated by a clever device. Hydrolysis in concentrated HCl is successful with the predominant primary nitrile but the more hindered secondary nitrile does not hydrolyse. Separation of compounds having two different functional groups is easy: in this case the acid can be extracted into aqueous base, leaving the neutral nitrile in the organic layer.

Once again, we do not know for sure whether this displacement by cyanide goes by the $S_{N1}$ or $S_{N2}'$ mechanism, as the reagents equilibrate under the reaction conditions. However, the
chlorides do not equilibrate and so, if we want a clear-cut result on a single well-defined starting material, the chlorides are the compounds to use. But you already see that regioslectivity with allylic compounds may depend on steric hindrance, rates of reaction, and stability of the product.

**Regiospecific preparation of allylic chlorides**

Allylic alcohols are good starting materials for making allylic compounds with control over where the double bond and the leaving group will be. Allylic alcohols are easily made by addition of Grignard reagents or organolithium compounds to enals or enones (Chapter 9) or by reduction of enals or enones (Chapter 23). More to the point, they do not equilibrate except in strongly acidic solution, so we know which allylic isomer we have.

\[
\begin{align*}
R\text{OH} & \quad \text{MeSO}_2\text{Cl}, \text{LiCl} \\
& \quad \text{DMF, base} \\
\rightarrow \\
R\text{Cl} & \quad \text{S}_{\text{N}2}
\end{align*}
\]

Conversion of the alcohols into the chlorides is easier with the primary than with the secondary alcohols. We need to convert OH into a leaving group and provide a source of chloride ion to act as a nucleophile. One way to do this is with methanesulfonyl chloride (MeSO$_2$Cl) and LiCl.

\[
\begin{align*}
R\text{OH} & \quad \text{MeSO}_2\text{Cl}, \text{LiCl} \\
& \quad \text{DMF, base} \\
\rightarrow \\
R\text{Cl} & \quad \text{S}_{\text{N}2}
\end{align*}
\]

This result hardly looks worth reporting and, anyway, how do we know that equilibration or $S_{\text{N}1}$ reactions aren't happening? Well, here the mechanism must be $S_{\text{N}2}$ because the corresponding $Z$-allylic alcohol preserves its alkene configuration. If there were equilibration of any sort, the $Z$-alkene would give the $E$-alkene because $E$- and $Z$-allylic cations are not geometrically stable.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{E alcohol} & \quad \text{MeSO}_2\text{Cl}, \text{LiCl} \\
& \quad \text{DMF, base} \\
\rightarrow \\
\text{E chloride} & \quad \text{S}_{\text{N}2}
\end{align*}
\]

S我相信, 这个方法没有保留的完整性 secondary allylic alcohol, which gives a mixture of allylic chlorides.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \quad \text{MeSO}_2\text{Cl}, \text{LiCl} \\
& \quad \text{DMF, base} \\
\rightarrow \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{about 3:1}
\end{align*}
\]

Reliable clean $S_{\text{N}2}$ reactions with secondary allylic alcohols can be achieved only with Mitsunobu chemistry. Here is a well-behaved example with a $Z$-alkene. The reagents have changed since your last encounter with a Mitsunobu-type reaction: instead of DEAD and a carboxylic acid we have hexachloroacetone, with, of course, triphenylphosphine.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \quad \text{ClC\text{CCl}_3} \\
& \quad \text{Ph}_3\text{P} \\
\rightarrow \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{about 3:1}
\end{align*}
\]
The first thing that happens is that the lone pair on phosphorus attacks one of the chlorine atoms in the chloroketone. The leaving group in this SN₂ reaction at chlorine is an enolate, which is a basic species and can remove the proton from the OH group in the allylic alcohol.

Now the alkoxide anion can attack the positively charged phosphorus atom. This is a good reaction in two ways. First, there is the obvious neutralization of charge and, second, the P–O bond is very strong.

The next step is a true SN₂ reaction at carbon as the very good leaving group is displaced. The already strong P–O single bond becomes an even stronger P=O double bond to compensate for the loss of the strong C–O single bond. There is obviously no SN₁ component in this displacement (otherwise the Z-alkene would have partly isomerized to the E-alkene) and very little SN₂' presumably as only 0.5% of the rearrangement product is formed. These displacements of Ph₃P=O are often the ‘tightest’ of SN₂ reactions.

Now for the really impressive result. Even if the alcohol is secondary, and the rearranged product would be thermodynamically more stable, very little of it is formed and almost all the reaction is clean SN₂.

There is a bit more rearrangement than there was with the other isomer but that is only to be expected. The very high proportion of direct SN₂ product shows that there is a real preference for the SN₂ over the SN₂' reaction in this displacement.

Now that we know how to make allylic chlorides of known structure—whether primary or secondary—we need to discover how to replace the chlorine with a nucleophile with predictable regioselectivity. We have said little so far about carbon nucleophiles (except cyanide ion) so we shall concentrate on simple carbon nucleophiles in the SN₂' reaction of allylic chlorides.

The SN₂' reaction of carbon nucleophiles on allylic chlorides

Ordinary carbon nucleophiles such as cyanide or Grignard reagents or organolithium compounds fit the patterns we have described already. They usually give the more stable product by SN₂ or SN₂' reactions depending on the starting material. If we use copper compounds, there is a tendency—no more than that—to favour the SN₂ reaction. You will recall that copper(I) was the metal we used to ensure conjugate addition to enones (Chapter 22) and its use in SN₂ reactions is obviously related. Simple alkyl copper reagents (RCu, known as Gilman reagents) generally favour the SN₂' reaction but we can do much better by using RCu complexed with BF₃.

The nature of metal–alkene complexes is discussed in Chapter 40.
The copper must complex to the alkene and then transfer the alkyl group to the $S_N2'$ position as it gathers in the chloride. This might well be the mechanism, although it is often difficult to draw precise mechanisms for organometallic reactions.

The secondary allylic isomer also gives almost entirely the rearranged product. This is perhaps less surprising, as the major product is the more stable isomer, but it means that either product can be formed in high yield simply by choosing the right (or should we say wrong, since there is complete allylic rearrangement during the reaction) isomer. The reaction is regiospecific.

The most remarkable result of all is that prenyl chloride gives rearranged products in good yield. This is about the only way in which these compounds suffer attack at the tertiary centre by $S_N2'$ reaction when there is the alternative of an $S_N2$ reaction at a primary centre.

Electrophilic attack on conjugated dienes

Another way to make allylic chlorides is by treating dienes with HCl. Electrophiles attack conjugated dienes more readily than they do isolated alkenes. There was some discussion of this in Chapter 19, establishing the main point that the terminal carbon atoms are the most nucleophilic and that the initial attack produces an allylic cation. A simple example is the addition of HCl to cyclopentadiene.

Although there is a question of regioselectivity in the initial protonation, the allylic cation is symmetrical and attack by chloride at either end produces the same product. However, if the electrophile is a halogen rather than HCl or HBr then the reaction becomes regioselective as the cationic intermediate is no longer symmetrical. What happens is this:

The alternative is direct attack on the bromonium ion intermediate, which we assume would occur at the allylic site (black arrows) and not at the other (green arrows). Although this 1,2-dibromide product is not observed, it is still possible that this reaction happens because the 1,2-product can rearrange by bromide shift to the observed 1,4-dibromide.

By ‘bromide shift’ we mean the reversible isomerization of allylic bromides you saw on p. 576.
The final product of this reaction could in fact be either of two compounds as the two bromine atoms may be cis or trans. Bromination in chloroform at \(-20\, ^\circ\text{C}\) gives mostly a liquid cis dibromide while reaction in hydrocarbon solvents gives the crystalline trans isomer. On standing the cis isomer slowly turns into the trans.

This suggests that the cis bromide is the kinetic product and the more stable trans compound is the thermodynamic product, formed by reversible loss of bromide and reformation of the bromonium ion.

Similar questions arise when nucleophilic substitution occurs on the dibromides. Reaction of either the cis or the trans dibromide with dimethylamine gives the trans isomer of a diamine. But look at the regioselectivity—it’s not the diamine you might expect. The only explanation is one SN2 displacement and one SN2' displacement.

But what about the stereochemistry? Starting with the cis isomer, one SN2 displacement with inversion might be followed by an intramolecular SN2' displacement and finally another SN2 displacement with inversion at the allylic centre.

The reaction with the trans isomer is almost identical: the same three-membered ring is an intermediate in both sequences so the products are bound to be the same.

If the nucleophile is different from the electrophile we can get a bit more information about the course of the reaction. When butadiene is treated with bromine in methanol as solvent, two adducts are formed in a 15:1 ratio along with some dibromide. Methanol is a weak nucleophile and adds to the bromonium ion mainly at the allylic position (black arrow below); only a small amount of product is formed by attack at the far end of the allylic system. Note that no attack occurs at the other end of the bromonium ion (green dotted arrow).
Conjugate addition

In Chapter 22 we devoted considerable space to discussing conjugate addition and the reasons why some reactions occur by direct attack on the carbonyl group of an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound and why others occur by conjugate addition. We shall briefly revise the regioselectivity aspects of these reactions.

Direct (or 1,2) addition means that the nucleophile attacks the carbonyl group directly. An addition compound is formed which may lose X⁻, if it is a leaving group, or become protonated to give an alcohol.

Conjugate (or 1,4) addition means that the nucleophile adds to the end of the alkene furthest from the carbonyl group. The electrons move through into the carbonyl group to produce an enolate anion that usually becomes protonated to give a ketone.

The first difference between the two routes is that the product from direct addition keeps the alkene but loses the carbonyl group while conjugate addition keeps the carbonyl group but loses the alkene. As a C=O π bond is stronger than a C=C π bond, **conjugate addition gives the thermodynamic product.** But as the carbonyl group is more electrophilic than the far end of the alkene, especially to charged, hard nucleophiles, **direct addition gives the kinetic product.** So direct addition is favoured by low temperatures and short reaction times while conjugate addition is favoured by higher temperatures and longer reaction times, provided the 1,2 addition is reversible.

The second difference depends on how electrophilic is the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound. The more electrophilic such as aldehydes and acid chlorides tend to prefer direct addition while the less electrophilic such as ketones or esters tend to prefer conjugate addition.
It is similar with the choice of nucleophile: more nucleophilic species, such as MeLi or Grignard reagents, prefer direct addition, particularly as they react irreversibly, while less nucleophilic species like amines and thiols prefer conjugate addition. These nucleophiles add reversibly to the C=O group, giving an opportunity for any direct addition product to revert to starting materials and react again.

![Diagram of conjugate and direct addition]

**Regioselectivity in action**

We finish with an example that illustrates several aspects of chemoselectivity as well as introducing the subjects of the next two chapters. The first synthetic sweetener was saccharin but newer ones such as the BASF compound thiophenesaccharin are much in demand. The sodium salt is the active sweetener but the neutral compound has to be made via the simpler intermediate thiophene.

![Structures of saccharin, salt of thiophenesaccharin, thiophenesaccharin, and intermediate thiophene]

The synthesis started with a conjugate addition of a thiol to an unsaturated ester. The thiol is obviously the nucleophile and regioselectively chooses conjugate addition rather than attack on either ester group.

![Diagram of the reaction]

In the next step the diester is treated with base and a carbonyl condensation reaction occurs of the type you will meet in Chapter 26. There is a real question of regioselectivity here: an enolate could form next to either ester (as shown by the orange circles) and would then attack the other ester as a nucleophile. There is little to choose between these alternatives but the first was wanted and was selected by careful experimentation, although only in 50% yield. This was acceptable on a large scale as the product could be separated by crystallization, the most practical of all methods.

![Diagram of the second step in the reaction]

Reactions such as this—the attack of enolates on carbon electrophiles—form the subject of the next two chapters, where we will discuss in detail the mechanism of this type of reaction.
Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book's Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Carbonyl groups show diverse reactivity

In earlier chapters we discussed the two types of reactivity displayed by the carbonyl group. We first described reactions that involve nucleophilic attack on the carbon of the carbonyl, and in Chapter 9 we showed you that these are among the best ways of making new C–C bonds. In this chapter we shall again be making new C–C bonds, but using electrophilic attack on carbonyl compounds: in other words, the carbonyl compound will be reacting as the nucleophile in the reaction. We introduced the nucleophilic forms of carbonyl compounds—enols and enolates—in Chapter 20. There you saw them reacting with electrophiles based on elements other than carbon, but they will also react well with carbon electrophiles provided the reaction is thoughtfully devised. Much of this chapter will concern that phrase, ‘thoughtfully devised’.

Thought is needed to ensure that the carbonyl compound exhibits the right sort of reactivity. In particular, the carbonyl compound must not act as an electrophile when it is intended to be a nucleophile. If it does, it may react with itself to give some sort of dimer—or even a polymer—rather than neatly attacking the desired electrophile. This chapter will consider ways of avoiding unwanted nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl C=O bond.

Fortunately, over the last four decades lots of thought has already gone into the problem of controlling the reactions of enolates with carbon electrophiles. This means that there are many excellent solutions to the problem: our task in this chapter is to help you understand which to use, and when to use them, in order to design useful reactions.

Some important considerations that affect all alkylations

The alkylations in this chapter will each consist of two steps. The first is the formation of a stabilized anion—usually (but not always) an enolate—by deprotonation with base.
The second is a substitution reaction: attack of the nucleophilic anion on an electrophilic alkyl halide. All the factors controlling SN1 and SN2 reactions, which we discussed at length in Chapter 15, are applicable here.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R1} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{R1} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{R2} & \quad \text{X} \\
\end{align*}
\]

In each case, we shall take one of two approaches to the choice of base.

- A strong base (with a conjugate acid of pK_a greater than that of the carbonyl compound) can be chosen to deprotonate the starting material completely. There is complete conversion of the starting material to the anion before addition of the electrophile, which is added in a subsequent step.
- Alternatively, a weaker base may be used in the presence of the electrophile. The weaker base will not deprotonate the starting material completely because its conjugate acid has a lower pK_a than the carbonyl compound: only a small amount of anion will be formed, but that small amount will react with the electrophile. More anion is formed as alkylation uses it up.

The second approach is easier practically (just mix the starting material, base, and electrophile), but works only if the base and the electrophile are compatible and don’t react together. With the first approach, which is practically more demanding, the electrophile and base never meet each other, so their compatibility is not a concern. We shall start with some compounds that avoid the problem of competing aldol reactions completely because they are not electrophilic enough to react with their own nucleophilic derivatives.

**Nitriles and nitroalkanes can be alkylated**

Problems that arise from the electrophilicity of the carbonyl group can be avoided by replacing C=O by functional groups that are much less electrophilic but are still able to stabilize an adjacent anion. We shall consider two examples, both of which you met in Chapter 20.

**Alkylation of nitriles**

The nitrile group, which mirrors the carbonyl group in general reactivity, is much less easily attacked by nucleophiles (N is less electronegative than O). The anion formed by deprotonating a nitrile using strong base will not react with other molecules of nitrile but will react very efficiently with alkyl halides. The slim, linear structure of the anions makes them good nucleophiles for SN2 reactions.

The nitrile does not have to be deprotonated completely for alkylation: with sodium hydroxide only a small amount of anion is formed. In the example below, such an anion reacts with propyl bromide to give 2-phenylpentanenitrile.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{CN} \\
\text{NaOH, BnEt}_3\text{N}^+\text{Cl}^- & \quad 35 \degree \text{C} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{CN} \\
84\% \text{ yield} & \\
\end{align*}
\]
Nitrile-stabilized anions are so nucleophilic that they will react with alkyl halides rather well even when a crowded quaternary centre (a carbon bearing no H atoms) is being formed. In this example the strong base, sodium hydride, was used to deprotonate the branched nitrile completely and benzyl chloride was the electrophile. The greater reactivity of benzyl electrophiles compensates for the poorer leaving group. In DMF, the anion is particularly reactive because it is not solvated (as you saw in Chapter 12, p. 255, DMF solvates only the Na$^+$ cation).

![Structure](image)

The compatibility of sodium hydride with electrophiles means that, by adding two equivalents of base, alkylation can be encouraged to occur more than once. This dimethylated acid was required in the synthesis of a potential drug, and it was made in two steps from a nitrile.

![Structure](image)

Double alkylation with two equivalents of NaH in the presence of excess methyl iodide gave the methylated nitrile, which was hydrolysed to the acid. The monoalkylated product is not isolated—it goes on directly to be deprotonated and react with a second molecule of MeI.

![Structure](image)

With two nitrile groups, the delocalized anion is so stable that even a weak, neutral amine (triethylamine) is sufficiently basic to deprotonate the starting material. Here double alkylation again takes place, in 100% yield: note that the electrophile is good at SN2, and the dipolar aprotic solvent DMSO (like DMF) cannot solvate the ‘enolate’ anion, making it more reactive.

![Structure](image)

If the electrophile and the nitrile are in the same molecule and the spacing between them is appropriate, then intramolecular alkylation entails cyclization to form rings. The preparation of a cyclopropane is shown using sodium hydroxide as the base and chloride as a leaving group. With an intramolecular alkylation, the base and the electrophile necessarily have to be present together, but the cyclization is so fast that competing SN2 substitution of Cl$^-$ by HO$^-$ is not a problem.

![Structure](image)

Alkylation of nitroalkanes

The powerful electron-withdrawing nature of the nitro group means that deprotonation is possible even with quite weak bases. The pK$_a$ of MeNO$_2$ is 10, about the same as phenol.
Protons adjacent to a nitro group are in fact about as acidic as the same proton adjacent to two carbonyl groups; you can think of a nitro group as having double the electron-withdrawing power of a carbonyl group. Nitro-stabilized anions (‘nitronate anions’) react with carbon electrophiles and a wide variety of nitro-containing products can be produced. The anions are not, of course, enolates, but replacing the nitrogen with a carbon should help you to recognize the close similarity of these alkylations with the enolate alkylations described later.

Surprisingly few simple nitroalkanes are commercially available but more complex examples can be prepared readily by alkylation of the anions derived from nitromethane, nitroethane, and 2-nitropropane. For example, deprotonation of nitropropane with butyllithium followed by the addition of butyl iodide gives 3-nitroheptane in good yield. This reaction really does have to be done in two steps: BuLi is not compatible with alkyl halides!

 Nitroalkanes can be alkylated in a single step with hydroxide as a base: phase transfer conditions (see p. 585) keep the HO\(^{-}\) and the electrophile apart, preventing alcohol formation. The reaction below on the left works despite the quaternary carbon atom in the product. The reaction on the right gives a cyclic nitroalkane: now there really is no alternative: the base and electrophile must cohabit in the reaction mixture, so a weaker base such as potassium carbonate must be used—hydroxide or amines are no good here because they would undergo substitution reactions with the halide.

**Choice of electrophile for alkylation**

Enolate alkylations are S\(_2\)2 reactions (polar solvents, good charged nucleophile) so the electrophile needs to be S\(_2\)2-reactive if the alkylation is to succeed: primary and benzylic alkyl halides are among the best alkylating agents. More branched halides tend to prefer unwanted E2 elimination reactions because the anions themselves are basic. As a result, tertiary halides are useless for enolate alkylation. We shall see a way round this problem later in the chapter.

**Lithium enolates of carbonyl compounds**

The problem of self-condensation of carbonyl compounds (that is, enolate reacting with unenolized carbonyl) under basic conditions does not exist if there is absolutely no unenolized carbonyl compound present. One way to achieve this is to use a base sufficiently strong
(\(pK_a\) at least 3 or 4 units higher than \(pK_a\) of the carbonyl compound) to ensure that all of the starting carbonyl is converted into the corresponding enolate. This will work only if the resulting enolate is sufficiently stable to survive until the alkylation is complete. As you saw in Chapter 20, lithium enolates are stable, and are among the best enolate equivalents for use in alkylation reactions.

The best base for making lithium enolates is usually LDA, made from diisopropylamine (\(i-Pr_2NH\)) and BuLi. LDA will deprotonate virtually all ketones and esters that have an acidic proton to form the corresponding lithium enolates rapidly, completely, and irreversibly even at the low temperatures (about –78°C) required for some of these reactive species to survive. Deprotonation occurs through a cyclic mechanism, which is illustrated below for ketones and esters. The basic nitrogen anion removes the proton as the lithium is delivered to the forming oxyanion.

**Alkylation of lithium enolates**

The reaction of these lithium enolates with alkyl halides is one of the most important C–C bond-forming reactions in chemistry. Alkylation of lithium enolates works with both acyclic and cyclic ketones as well as with acyclic and cyclic esters (lactones). The general mechanism is shown below.

Typical experimental conditions for reactions of kinetic enolates involve formation of the enolate at very low temperature (–78°C) in THF. The strong base LDA is used to avoid self-condensation of the carbonyl compound but, while the enolate is forming, there is always a chance that self-condensation will occur. The lower the temperature, the slower the self-condensation reaction, and the fewer by-products there are. Once enolate formation is complete, the electrophile is added (still at –78°C: the lithium enolates may not be stable at higher temperatures). The reaction mixture is then usually allowed to warm up to room temperature to speed up the rate of the \(S_N2\) alkylation.

**Alkylation of ketones**

Precisely this sequence was used to methylate the ketone below, with LDA acting as base followed by methyl iodide as electrophile.
Their stability at low temperature means that lithium enolates are usually preferred, but sodium and potassium enolates can also be formed by abstraction of a proton by strong bases. The increased separation of the metal cation from the enolate anion with the larger alkali metals leads to more reactive but less stable enolates. Typical very strong Na and K bases include the hydrides (NaH, KH) or amide anions derived from ammonia (NaNH$_2$, KNH$_2$) or hexamethyldisilazane (NaHMDS, KHMDS). The instability of the enolates means that they are usually made and reacted in a single step, so the base and electrophile need to be compatible. Here are two examples of cyclohexanone alkylation: the high reactivity of the potassium enolate is demonstrated by the efficient tetramethylation with excess potassium hydride and methyl iodide.

**Alkylation of esters**

In Chapter 26 you will meet the reaction of an ester with its own enolate: the Claisen condensation. This reaction can be an irritating side reaction in the chemistry of lithium ester enolates when alkylation is desired, and again it can be avoided only if the ester is converted entirely to its enolate under conditions where the Claisen condensation is slow. A good way of stopping this happening is to add the ester to the solution of LDA (and not the LDA to the ester) so that there is never excess ester for the enolate to react with. Another successful tactic is to make the group R as large as possible to discourage attack at the carbonyl group. Tertiary butyl esters are particularly useful in this regard because they are readily made, t-butyli is extremely bulky, and yet they can still be hydrolysed in aqueous acid under mild conditions by the method discussed on p. 556. In this example, deprotonation of t-butyli acetate gives a lithium enolate that reacts with butyl iodide as the reaction mixture is warmed to room temperature.

**Alkylation of carboxylic acids**

The lithium enolates of carboxylic acids can be formed if two equivalents of base are used: one to make the carboxylate anion and one to make the enolate. It is not necessary to use a strong base to remove the first proton but, since the second deprotonation requires a strong base such as LDA, it is often convenient to use two equivalents of LDA to form the dianion. With carboxylic acids, even BuLi can be used on occasion because the intermediate lithium carboxylate is much less electrophilic than an aldehyde or a ketone.

The next alkylation of an acid enolate is of a carbamate-protected amino acid, glycine. As you saw in Chapter 23, carbamate protecting groups are stable to basic reaction conditions. Three acidic protons are removed by LDA, but alkylation takes place only at carbon—the site of the last proton to be removed. Alkylation gets rid of one of the negative charges, so that, if the molecule gets a choice, it alkylates to get rid of the least stable anion, keeping the two more
stabilized charges. A good alternative to using the dianion is to alkylate the ester or nitrile and then hydrolyse to the acid.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{NHBoc} & \text{OH} & \text{t-BuO} & \text{N} & \text{Li} & \text{OLi} & \text{O} & \text{t-BuO} & \text{N} & \text{Li} & \text{OLi} & \text{O} & \text{Ph} & \text{Br} & \text{Ph} & \text{Li} & \text{BocHN} & \text{OH} \\
&\text{enolate trianion}
\end{align*}
\]

- Alkylation of ketones, esters, and carboxylic acids is best carried out using the lithium enolates.

**Why do enolates alkylate on carbon?**

Enolates have two nucleophilic sites: the carbon and the oxygen atoms. On p. 453 we showed that:

- carbon has the greater coefficient in the HOMO, and is the softer nucleophilic site
- oxygen carries the greater total charge and is the harder nucleophilic site. In Chapter 20 you saw that hard electrophiles prefer to react at oxygen—that is why it is possible to make silyl enol ethers, for example. Some carbon electrophiles with very good leaving groups also tend to react on oxygen, but soft electrophiles such as alkyl halides react at carbon, and you will see only this type of electrophile in this chapter.

In general:

- hard electrophiles, particularly alkyl sulfates and sulfonates (mesylates, tosylates), tend to react at oxygen
- soft electrophiles, particularly alkyl halides (I > Br > Cl), react at carbon
- polar aprotic solvents (DMSO, DMF) promote O-alkylation by separating the enolate anions from each other and the counterion (making the bond more polar and increasing the charge at O) while ethereal solvents (THF, DME) promote C-alkylation
- larger alkali metals (Cs > K > Na > Li) give more separated ion pairs (more polar bonds), which are harder and react more at oxygen.

Hard electrophiles react at O

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{O} & \text{Me} & \text{X} & \text{R} & \text{O} & \text{Me} \\
&\text{X} = \text{OMs}, \text{OSO}_2\text{OMe}, \text{O} & \text{OMe}_2
\end{align*}
\]

Soft electrophiles react at C

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{O} & \text{Me} & \text{X} & \text{R} & \text{O} & \text{Me} \\
&\text{X} = \text{I}, \text{Br}, \text{Cl}
\end{align*}
\]

**Alkylation of aldehydes: avoid LDA**

Aldehydes are so electrophilic that, even with LDA at –78°C, the rate at which the deprotonation takes place is not fast enough to outpace reactions between the forming lithium enolate and still-to-be-deprotonated aldehyde remaining in the mixture. Direct addition of the base to the carbonyl group of electrophilic aldehydes can also pose a problem.

Avoid using lithium enolates of aldehydes.
Using specific enol equivalents to alkylate aldehydes and ketones

These side reactions mean that aldehyde enolates are not generally useful reactive intermediates. Instead, there are a number of aldehyde enol and enolate equivalents in which the aldehyde is present only in masked form during the enolization and alkylation step. The three most important of these specific enol equivalents are:

- enamines
- silyl enol ethers
- aza-enolates derived from imines.

You met these enolate equivalents briefly in Chapter 20, and we shall discuss how to use them to alkylate aldehydes shortly. All three types of specific enol equivalent are useful not just with aldehydes, but with ketones as well, and we shall introduce each class with examples for both types of carbonyl compound.

Enamines are alkylated by reactive electrophiles

Enamines are formed when aldehydes or ketones react with secondary amines. The mechanism is given in Chapter 11. The mechanism below shows how they react with alkylating agents to form new carbon–carbon bonds: the enamine here is the one derived from cyclohexanone and pyrrolidine. The product is at first not a carbonyl compound: it’s an iminium ion or an enamine (depending on whether an appropriate proton can be lost). But a mild acidic hydrolysis converts the iminium ion or enamine into the corresponding alkylated carbonyl compound.

The overall process, from carbonyl compound to carbonyl compound, amounts to an enolate alkylation, but no strong base or enolates are involved so there is no danger of self-condensation. The example below shows two specific examples of cyclohexanone alkylation using an enamine. Note the relatively high temperatures and long reaction times: enamines are among the most reactive of neutral nucleophiles, but they are still a lot less nucleophilic than enolates.
The choice of the secondary amine for formation of the enamine is not completely arbitrary even though it does not end up in the final alkylated product. Simple dialkyl amines can be used but cyclic amines such as pyrrolidine, piperidine, and morpholine are popular choices as the ring structure makes both the starting amine and the enamine more nucleophilic (the alkyl groups are ‘tied back’ and can’t get in the way). The higher boiling points of these amines allow the enamine to be formed by heating.

\( \alpha \)-Bromo carbonyl compounds are excellent electrophiles for \( S_2 \) reactions because of the rate-enhancing effect of the carbonyl group (Chapter 15). The protons between the halogen and the carbonyl are significantly more acidic than those adjacent to just a carbonyl group and there can be a serious risk of an enolate nucleophile acting as a base. Enamines are only very weakly basic, but react well as nucleophiles with \( \alpha \)-bromo carbonyl compounds, and so are a good choice.

The starting ketone here is unsymmetrical, so two enamines are possible. However, the formation of solely the less substituted enamine is typical. The outcome may be explained as the result of thermodynamic control: enamine formation is reversible so the less hindered enamine predominates. For the more substituted enamine, steric hindrance forces the enamine to lose planarity, and destabilizes it. The less substituted enamine, on the other hand, is rather more stable.

There is, however, a major problem with enamines: reaction at nitrogen. Less reactive alkylating agents—simple alkyl halides such as methyl iodide, for example—react to a significant degree at N rather than at C. The product is a quaternary ammonium salt, which hydrolyses back to the starting material and leads to low yields.
Enamines work best with reactive alkylating agents:
- allylic halides
- benzyl halides
- \( \alpha \)-halo carbonyl compounds.

That said, enamines are a good solution to the aldehyde enolate problem. Aldehydes form enamines very easily (one of the advantages of the electrophilic aldehyde) and these are immune to attack by nucleophiles—including, most importantly, the enamines themselves. Below are two examples of aldehyde alkylation using the enamine method. Both again use highly \( S_N2 \)-reactive electrophiles, and this is the main limitation of enamines.

Aza-enolates react with a wider range of \( S_N2 \)-reactive electrophiles

Enamines are the nitrogen analogues of enols and provide one solution to the aldehyde enolate problem when the electrophile is reactive. Imines are the corresponding nitrogen analogues of aldehydes and ketones: a little lateral thinking should therefore lead you to expect some useful reactivity from the nitrogen equivalents of enolates, known as aza-enolates. Aza-enolates are formed when imines are treated with LDA or other strong bases.

In basic or neutral solution, imines are less electrophilic than aldehydes: they react with organolithiums, but not with many weaker nucleophiles (they are more electrophilic in acid when they are protonated). So, as the aza-enolate forms, there is no danger at all of self-condensation.

Note that aza-enolates are formed from imines, which can be made only from primary amines. Enamines are made from aldehydes or ketones with secondary amines.
The overall sequence involves formation of the imine from the aldehyde that is to be alkylated—usually with a bulky primary amine such as t-butyl- or cyclohexylamine to discourage even further nucleophilic attack at the imine carbon. The imine is not usually isolated, but is deprotonated directly with LDA or a Grignard reagent (these do not add to imines, but they will deprotonate them to give magnesium aza-enolates).

\[
\text{aza-enolate formation} \\
\text{imine} \\
\text{aza-enolate}
\]

The resulting aza-enolate reacts like a ketone enolate with SN2-reactive alkylating agents—here, benzyl chloride—to form the new carbon–carbon bond and to re-form the imine. The alkylated imine is usually hydrolysed by the mild acidic work-up to give the alkylated aldehydes.

\[
\text{aza-enolate alkylation}
\]

In the next example, a lithium base (lithium diethylamide) is used to form the aza-enolate. The ease of imine cleavage in acid is demonstrated by the selective hydrolysis to the aldehyde without any effect on the acetal introduced by the alkylation step. The product is a mono-protected dialdehyde, which is difficult to prepare by other methods.

\[
\text{Aza-enolate alkylation is so successful that it has been extended from aldehydes, where it is essential, to ketones, where it can be a useful option. Cyclohexanones are among the most electrophilic simple ketones and can suffer from undesirable side reactions. The imine from cyclohexanone and cyclohexylamine can be deprotonated with LDA to give a lithium aza-enolate. In this example, iodomethylstannane was the alkylating agent, giving the tin-containing ketone after hydrolysis.}
\]

\[
\text{Aldehyde alkylation}
\]

Aza-enolates are the best general solution for alkylating aldehydes with most electrophiles. With very SN2-reactive alkylating agents, enamines can be used, and with very SN1-reactive alkylating agents, silyl enol ethers must be used.
Silyl enol ethers are alkylated by $S_n$-1-reactive electrophiles in the presence of Lewis acid

While the greater nucleophilicity of azaenolates means that they will react with a wider range of electrophiles, their basicity, like that of lithium enolates, means that they will not react with $S_n$-1-reactive electrophiles like tertiary alkyl halides. The solution to this problem is to use silyl enol ethers, which are less reactive and so require a more potent electrophile to initiate reaction. Carbocations will do, and they can be generated in situ by abstraction of a halide or other leaving group from a saturated carbon atom.

![Carbocation formation](image)

The best alkylating agents for silyl enol ethers are tertiary alkyl halides: they form stable carbocations in the presence of Lewis acids such as TiCl$_4$ or SnCl$_4$. Most fortunately, this is just the type of compound that is unsuitable for reaction with lithium enolates or enamines, as elimination results rather than alkylation: a nice piece of complementary selectivity. Below is an example: the alkylation of cyclopentanone with 2-chloro-2-methylbutane. The ketone was converted to the trimethylsilyl enol ether with triethylamine and trimethylsilylchloride: we discussed this step on p. 466 (Chapter 20). Titanium tetrachloride in dry dichloromethane promotes the alkylation step.

![Alkylation reaction](image)

**Summary: specific enol equivalents for aldehydes and ketones:**

- Lithium enolates can be used with $S_n$-2-reactive electrophiles, but cannot be made from aldehydes.
- Aza-enolates of aldehydes or ketones can be used with the same $S_n$-2-reactive electrophiles, but can be made from aldehydes.
- Enamines of aldehydes or ketones can be used with allylic, benzylic, or $\alpha$-halocarbonyl compounds.
- Silyl enol ethers of aldehydes or ketones can be used with $S_n$-1-reactive electrophiles such as allylic, benzylic, or tertiary alkyl halides.

**Alkylation of $\beta$-dicarbonyl compounds**

The presence of two, or even three, electron-withdrawing groups on a single carbon atom makes the remaining proton(s) sufficiently acidic ($pK_a$ 10–15) that even mild bases can lead to complete enolate formation. Bases of the strength of alkoxides ($pK_a$ of ROH = ca. 16) cannot deprotonate simple carbonyl compounds ($pK_a$ 20–25) completely, but readily generate anions stabilized by more than one electron-withdrawing group. The most important enolates of this type are those of 1,3-dicarbonyl (or $\beta$-dicarbonyl) compounds.

The resulting anions are alkylated very efficiently. This diketone is enolized even by potassium carbonate, and reacts with methyl iodide in good yield. Carbonate is such a bad nucleophile that the base and the electrophile can be added in a single step.
alkylation of a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound (or β-dicarbonyl compound)

Among the β-dicarboxyls two compounds stand out in importance—diethyl (or dimethyl) malonate and ethyl acetoacetate. You should make sure you remember their structures and trivial names.

With these two esters, the choice of base is important: nucleophilic addition can occur at the ester carbonyl, which could lead to transesterification (with alkoxides), hydrolysis (with hydroxide), or amide formation (with amide anions). The best choice is usually an alkoxide identical with the alkoxide component of the ester (that is, ethoxide for diethyl malonate, methoxide for dimethyl malonate). Alkoxides are basic enough to deprotonate between two carbonyl groups but, should substitution occur at C=O, there is no overall reaction.

In the first example below the electrophile is the allylic cyclopentenyl chloride, and the base is ethoxide in ethanol—most conveniently made by adding one equivalent of sodium metal to dry ethanol. The same base is used in the second alkylation, of ethyl acetoacetate with butyl bromide.

Various electron-withdrawing groups can be used in almost any combination with good results. In this example an ester and a nitrile cooperate to stabilize an anion. Nitriles are not quite as anion-stabilizing as carbonyl groups so this enolate requires a stronger base (sodium hydride) in an aprotic solvent (DMF) for success. The primary alkyl tosylate serves as the electrophile.

These doubly stabilized anions are alkylated so well that it is common to carry out an alkylation between two carbonyl groups, only to remove one of them at a later stage. This is made possible by the fact that carboxylic acids with a β-carbonyl group decarboxylate (lose carbon dioxide) on heating. The mechanism below shows how. After alkylation of the dicarbonyl compound the unwanted ester is first hydrolysed in base. Acidification and heating lead to

You met the stable enols of related compounds in Chapter 20.

If you need a reminder about the tosylate leaving group, turn back to p. 349.
decarboxylation via a six-membered cyclic transition state in which the acid proton is transferred to the carbonyl group as the key bond breaks, liberating a molecule of carbon dioxide. The initial product is the enol form of a carbonyl compound that rapidly tautomerizes to the more stable keto form—now with only one carbonyl group. Using this technique, β-keto-esters give ketones while malonate esters give simple carboxylic acids (both ester groups hydrolyse but only one can be lost by decarboxylation). Decarboxylation can occur only with a second carbonyl group appropriately placed β to the acid, because the decarboxylated product must be formed as an enol.

The alkylation of ethyl acetoacetate with butyl bromide on p. 596 was done with the expressed intention of decarboxylating the product to give hexan-2-one. These are the conditions for this decarboxylation: the heating step drives off the CO₂ by increasing the gearing on the entropy term (ΔS°) of the activation energy (two molecules are made from one).

Esters are much easier to work with than carboxylic acids, and a useful alternative procedure removes one ester group without having to hydrolyse the other. The malonate ester is heated in a polar aprotic solvent—usually DMSO—in the presence of sodium chloride and a little water. No acid or base is required and, apart from the high temperature, the conditions are fairly mild. The scheme below shows a dimethyl malonate alkylation (note that NaOMe is used with the dimethyl ester) and removal of the methyl ester.
The mechanism of decarboxylation is a rather unusual type of ester cleavage reaction. The bond that breaks is not the MeO–CO bond but instead the O–alkyl bond: the reaction is an SN2 substitution of carboxylate by Cl$^-$. 

Chloride is a poor nucleophile, but it is more reactive in DMSO, by which it cannot be solvated. And, as soon as the carboxylate is displaced, the high temperature encourages (entropy again) irreversible decarboxylation. The other by-product, MeCl, is also lost as a gas. The ‘decarboxylation’ (in fact, removal of a CO$_2$Me group, not CO$_2$) is known as the Krapcho decarboxylation. Because of the SN2 step, it works best with methyl malonate esters.

We have only looked at single alkylations of dicarbonyl compounds, but there are two acidic protons between the carbonyl groups and a second alkylation is usually possible. Excess of base and alkyl halide gives two alkylations in one step. More usefully, it is possible to introduce two different alkyl groups by using just one equivalent of base and alkyl halide in the first step.

With a dihaloalkane, rings can be formed by two sequential alkylation reactions: this is an important way of making cycloalkanecarboxylic acids. Even the usually more difficult (see Chapter 31) four-membered rings can be made in this way.

**Ketone alkylation poses a problem in regioselectivity**

Ketones are unique because they can have enolizable protons on both sides of the carbonyl group. Unless the ketone is symmetrical, or unless one side of the ketone happens to have no enolizable protons, two regioisomers of the enolate are possible and alkylation can occur on either side to give regioisomeric products. We need to be able to control which enolate is formed if ketone alkylations are to be useful.
**Thermodynamically controlled enolate formation**

Selective enolate formation is straightforward if the protons on one side of the ketone are significantly more acidic than those on the other. This is what you have just seen with ethyl acetoacetate: it is a ketone, but with weak bases ($pK_a$ of the conjugate acid < 18) it only ever enolizes on the side where the protons are acidified by the second electron-withdrawing group. If two new substituents are introduced, in the manner you have just seen, they will always both be joined to the same carbon atom. This is an example of thermodynamic control: only the more stable of the two possible enolates is formed.

This principle can be extended to ketones whose enolates have less dramatic differences in stability. Since enols and enolates are alkenes, the more substituents they carry the more stable they are. So, in principle, even additional alkyl groups can control enolate formation under thermodynamic control. Formation of the more stable enolate requires a mechanism for equilibration between the two enolates, and this must be proton transfer. If a proton source is available—and this can even be just excess ketone—an equilibrium mixture of the two enolates will form. The composition of this equilibrium mixture depends very much on the ketone but, with 2-phenylcyclohexanone, conjugation ensures that only one enolate forms. The base is potassium hydride: it’s strong, but small (and so has no difficulty removing the more hindered proton) and can be used under conditions that permit enolate equilibration.

The more substituted lithium enolates can also be formed from the more substituted silyl enol ethers by substitution at silicon—a reaction you met in Chapter 20. The value of this reaction now becomes clear because the usual way of making silyl enol ethers ($Me_3SiCl$, Et$_3N$) typically produces, from unsymmetrical ketones, the more substituted of the two possible ethers. Because the silyl enol ether (unlike the enolate itself) can be purified, fully regiochemically pure enolates can be formed in this way.
One possible explanation for the thermodynamic regioselectivity in the enol ether-forming step is related to our rationalization of the regioselectivity of bromination of ketones in acid on p. 464. Triethylamine is too weak a base ($pK_a$ of Et$_3$NH$^+$ is about 10) to deprotonate the starting carbonyl compound ($pK_a$ ca. 20), and the first stage of the reaction is probably an oxygen–silicon interaction. Loss of a proton now takes place through a cationic transition state, and this is stabilized rather more if the proton being lost is next to the methyl group: methyl groups stabilize partial cations just as they stabilize cations.

An alternative view is that reaction takes place through the enol: the Si–O bond is so strong that even neutral enols react with Me$_3$SiCl, on oxygen, of course. The predominant enol is the more substituted, leading to the more substituted silyl enol ether.

**Kinetic and thermodynamic control** were discussed in Chapters 12, 23, and 24, pp. 264, 546, and 581.

> To understand why less substituted C atoms have more acidic C–H bonds, think of base strengths: MeLi is a weaker base than t-BuLi, so the conjugate acid must be a stronger acid.

> There must never be more ketone in the mixture than base, or exchange of protons between ketone and enolate will lead to equilibration. Kinetic enolate formations with LDA must be done by adding the ketone to the LDA so that there is excess LDA present throughout the reaction.

**Kinetically controlled enolate formation**

LDA is too hindered to attack most carbonyl C=O bonds, so it attacks C–H instead. And, if there is a choice of C–H bonds, it will attack the least hindered possible. It will also prefer to attack more acidic C–H bonds, and C–H bonds on less substituted carbons are indeed more acidic. Furthermore, statistics helps, since a less substituted C atom has more protons to be removed (three versus two in this example) so, even if the rates were the same, the less substituted enolate would predominate.

These factors multiply to ensure that the enolate that forms will be the one with the fewer substituents—provided we now prevent equilibration of the enolate to the more stable, more substituted one. This means keeping the temperature low, typically -78°C, keeping the reaction time short, and using an excess of strong base to deprotonate irreversibly and ensure that there is no remaining ketone to act as a proton source. The enolate that we then get is the one that formed faster, under kinetic control—known as the ‘kinetic enolate’—and not necessarily the one that is more stable.
In general, this effect is sufficient to allow selective kinetic deprotonation of methyl ketones, that is, where the distinction is between Me and alkyl:

The same method works very well for 2-substituted cyclohexanones: the less substituted enolate forms. Even with 2-phenylcyclohexanone, which, as you have just seen, has a strong thermodynamic preference for the conjugated enolate, only the less substituted enolate forms.

2-Methylcyclohexanone can be regioselectively alkylated using LDA and benzyl bromide by this method.

### Regioselective formation of enolates from ketones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thermodynamic enolates are:</th>
<th>Kinetic enolates are:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• more substituted</td>
<td>• less substituted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• more stable</td>
<td>• less stable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• favoured by excess ketone, high temperature, long reaction time</td>
<td>• favoured by strong, hindered base (e.g. LDA), low temperature, short reaction time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Dianions allow unusual regioselectivity in alkylations of methyl acetoacetate

In Chapter 23, we introduced the idea that the last-formed anion in any dianion or trianion is the most reactive. Methyl acetoacetate is usually alkylated on the central carbon atom because that is the site of the most stable enolate. But methyl acetoacetate dianion—formed by removing a second proton from the usual enolate with a very strong base (usually butyllithium)—reacts first on the less stable anion: the terminal methyl group. Protonation of the more stable enolate then leads to the product. Butyllithium can be used as a base because the anionic enolate intermediate is not electrophilic.

### Enones provide a solution to regioselectivity problems

Enolates can be made regiospecifically from, for example, silyl enol ethers or enol acetates just by treating them with an alkyllithium. These are both substitution reactions in which RLi
displaces the enolate: one is SN2(Si) and the other is attack at C=O. Provided there is no proton source, the enolate products have the same regiochemistry as their stable precursors, and single enolate regioisomers are formed.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{silyl enol ether} & \quad \text{MeLi} \\
\text{lithium enolate} & \quad \text{SiMe}_4
\end{align*}
\]

But there is a problem: forming enol ethers or enol esters will usually itself require a regioselective enolization! There are two situations in which this method is nonetheless useful: when the more substituted lithium enolate (which is hard to make selectively otherwise) is required, and when a silyl enol ether can be formed by a method not involving deprotonation. These methods are what we shall now consider.

**Dissolving metal reduction of enones gives enolates regiospecifically**

In Chapter 23 you met the Birch reduction: the use of dissolving metals (K, Na, or Li in liquid ammonia, for example) to reduce aromatic rings and alkynes. The dissolving metal reduction of enones by lithium metal in liquid ammonia is similar to these reactions—the C=C bond of the enone is reduced, with the C=O bond remaining untouched. An alcohol is required as a proton source and, in total, two electrons and two protons are added in a stepwise manner, giving net addition of a molecule of hydrogen to the double bond.

The mechanism follows that described on p. 543: transfer of an electron forms a radical anion that is protonated by the alcohol to form a radical. A second electron transfer forms an anion that can undergo tautomerization to an enolate.

The enolate is stable to further reduction and protonation during the work-up will give a ketone. But reaction with an alkyl halide is more fruitful: because the enolate forms only where the double bond of the enone was, regioselective alkylation becomes possible.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{enol acetate} & \quad \text{MeLi} \times 2 \\
\text{by-product} & \quad \text{MeLi}
\end{align*}
\]

The example below leads to the regioselective methylation of methylcyclohexanone. Only 2% of the minor regioisomer is formed.
The transfer of electrons is not susceptible to steric hindrance so substituted alkenes pose no problem. In the next example, the enolate reacts with allyl bromide to give a single diastereoisomer of the product (the allyl bromide attacks from the face opposite the methyl group). Naturally, only one regioisomer is formed as well.

**Conjugate addition to enones gives enolates regiospecifically**

Although we did not talk in detail about them at that time, you will recall from Chapter 22 that conjugate addition to enones generates first an enolate, which is usually protonated in the work-up. But, again, more fruitful things can be done with the enolate under the right conditions.

The simplest products are formed when \( \text{Nu} = \text{H} \), but this poses a problem of regioselectivity in the nucleophilic attack step: a nucleophilic hydride equivalent that selectively undergoes conjugate addition to the enone is required. This is usually achieved with extremely bulky hydride reagents such as lithium or potassium tri( sec-butyl)borohydride (often known by the trade names of L- or K-Selectride, respectively). In this example, K-Selectride reduces the enone to an enolate that is alkylated by methyl iodide to give a single regioisomer.

With organocopper reagents, conjugate addition introduces a new alkyl group and, if the resulting enolates are themselves alkylated, two new C–C bonds can be formed in a single step (a tandem reaction: one C–C bond formation rides behind another). In Chapter 22 we explained that the best organocuprate additions are those carried out in the presence of Me₃SiCl: the product of these reactions is a silyl enol ether, formed regioselectively (the ‘enol’ double bond is always on the side where the enone used to be).
The silyl enol ethers are too unreactive for direct alkylation by an alkyl halide, but by converting them to lithium enolates all the usual alkylation chemistry becomes possible. This type of reaction forms the key step in a synthesis of the natural product α-chamigrene. Conjugate addition of Me₂CuLi gives an enolate that is trapped with trimethylsilyl chloride. Methylthiophilum converts the resulting silyl enol ether into a lithium enolate by substitution at Si. The natural product has a spiro six-membered ring attached at the site of the enolate, and this is made by alkylating with a dibromide (you saw this done on p. 598). The first substitution is at the more reactive allylic bromide. A second enolization is needed to make the ring, but this can be done under equilibrating conditions because the required six-membered ring forms much faster than the unwanted eight-membered ring that would arise by attack on the other side of the ketone.

Among the most important of these tandem conjugate addition–alkylation reactions are those of cyclopentenones. With cyclopentenone itself, the trans diastereoisomer usually results because the alkylating agent approaches from the less hindered face of the enolate.

This is the sort of selectivity evident in the next example, which looks more complicated but is really just addition of an arylcopper reagent followed by alkylation (trans to the bulky Ar group) with an iodoester.

**Synthesis of prostaglandin E₂**

One of the most dramatic illustrations of the power of conjugate addition followed by alkylation is the short synthesis of the important biological molecule prostaglandin E₂ by Ryoji Noyori in Japan. The organocopper reagent and the alkylating agent contain all the functionality required for both side chains of the target in protected form. The required trans stereochemistry is assembled in the key step, which gives a 78% yield of a product requiring only removal of the silyl ether and ester protecting groups. The organometallic nucleophile was prepared from a vinyl iodide by halogen–metal exchange (Chapter 9). In the presence of copper iodide this vinyllithium adds to the cyclopentenone in a conjugate sense to give an intermediate enolate. Because in this case the starting enone already has a stereogenic centre, this step is also stereoselective: attack on the less hindered face (opposite the silyl ether) gives the trans product. The resulting enolate was alkylated with the allylic iodide containing the terminal ester: once again the trans product was formed. It is particularly vital that enolate equilibration is avoided in this reaction to prevent the inevitable E1cB elimination of the silyloxy group that would occur from the other enolate. Deprotection of the silyl groups using TBAF (Chapter 23) gives the product.
Using Michael acceptors as electrophiles

α,β-Unsaturated carbonyl compounds are, as you have just seen, an excellent source of regio-defined enolate equivalents. But they are also very effective electrophiles for reaction with enolates. In this last section we will consider conjugate addition reactions of enolates as an alternative way of making C–C bonds.

As with other conjugate additions, it is important in such reactions to choose conditions that prevent the nucleophile (here the enolate) attacking the C=O group directly. The same factors discussed in Chapter 22 govern the eventual outcome of the reaction. Thermodynamic control leads to conjugate addition but kinetic control leads to direct addition, so the key to successful conjugate addition is to ensure that direct addition to the carbonyl group is reversible. This enables the conjugate addition to compete and, as its product is more stable (it loses the weaker C=C π bond rather than the stronger C=O π), it eventually becomes the sole product.

One of the most important ways of making the direct addition reversible is to use a more stabilized enolate, since expulsion of the stable anion from the direct addition product is more favourable. An additional consequence of adding a second electron-withdrawing group such as CO₂Et is that the direct addition product is more hindered (and therefore less stable) than the conjugate addition product.

The nature of the carbonyl group in the α,β-unsaturated electrophile is also important as the more electrophilic carbonyl groups give more direct addition and the less electrophilic...
carbonyl groups (esters, amides) give more conjugate addition. Aldehydes and ketones can be pushed towards conjugate addition pathways by careful choice of enolate equivalent, while esters and amides are much less electrophilic at the carbonyl carbon and so are good substrates for conjugate addition.

- Conjugate addition is thermodynamically controlled; direct addition is kinetically controlled.

Stabilized enolates promote conjugate addition by:
- making direct addition (aldol reaction) more reversible
- making the direct addition (aldol) product more hindered.

Less reactive Michael acceptors promote conjugate addition by:
- making direct addition (aldol reaction) more reversible
- making the carbonyl group less electrophilic.

1,3-Dicarboxyl compounds undergo conjugate addition

β-Diesters (malonates and substituted derivatives, see p. 595) combine three useful features in conjugate addition reactions:
- they form stable enolate anions that undergo clean conjugate addition
- if required, one of the ester groups can be removed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation
- the remaining acid or ester is ideal for conversion into other functional groups.

Diethyl malonate adds to diethyl fumarate in a conjugate addition reaction promoted by sodium ethoxide in dry ethanol to give a tetraester. Diethyl fumarate is an excellent Michael acceptor because two ester groups withdraw electrons from the alkene. The mechanism involves deprotonation of the malonate, conjugate addition, and reprotonation of the product enolate by ethanol solvent. In this reaction two ester groups stabilize the enolate and two more promote conjugate addition.

The value of malonate esters is illustrated in this synthesis of a substituted cyclic anhydride by conjugate addition to ethyl crotonate, hydrolysis, and decarboxylation, followed by dehydration with acetic anhydride. This route is very general and could be used to make a range of anhydrides with different substituents simply by choosing an appropriate unsaturated ester.

If the nucleophile is sufficiently enolized under the reaction conditions then the enol itself is able to attack the unsaturated carbonyl compound. Enols are neutral and thus soft nucleo-
philes favouring conjugate attack. 1,3-Diketones are enolized to a significant extent (Chapter 20), and under acidic conditions conjugate addition proceeds very efficiently even though there can be absolutely no base present. In this example methyl vinyl ketone (butenone) reacts with a cyclic β-diketone promoted by acetic acid to form a quaternary centre.

$$\text{methyl vinyl ketone} + \text{AcOH/H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{quaternary \ Centre}$$

1 h, 75 °C

The mechanism involves acid-catalysed conversion of the keto form of the cyclic β-diketone into the enol form, which is able to attack the protonated enone. The mechanistic detail is precisely analogous to the attack of an enolate; the only difference is that both reactants are protonated. The product is the enol form of the triketone, which rapidly tautomerizes to the more stable keto form.

$$\text{enolization}$$

The thermodynamic control of conjugate addition allows even enals that are very electrophilic at the carbonyl carbon to participate successfully. As you will see in the next chapter, an aldol reaction (direct addition to \( \text{C}=\text{O} \)) must be possible here, but it is reversible and 1,4-addition eventually wins out. Acrolein combines with this five-membered diketone under very mild conditions to give a quantitative yield of product.

$$\text{acrolein} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{product}$$

room temperature

Alkali metal (especially Na, K) enolates can undergo conjugate addition

The use of two anion-stabilizing groups is a sure way of promoting conjugate addition, but it is not essential. Simple lithium enolates are not ideal nucleophiles for thermodynamically controlled conjugate addition because lithium binds strongly to oxygen and so tends to stabilize the aldol product. Better results are often observed with sodium or potassium enolates, which are more dissociated. Potassium tert-butoxide is the ideal base for this example as it is hindered and so will not attack the ester but is basic enough to deprotonate the ketone to a certain extent.

Two enolates are possible but, under the equilibrating conditions, the more stable enolate is the one leading to the product with a quaternary carbon atom.

$$\text{enolate}$$

If the enolate carries a leaving group, we get a nice way of making a cyclopropane because the enolate formed by the conjugate addition can itself be alkylated.
Enamines are convenient stable enol equivalents for conjugate addition

If you want a more reliable way of doing a conjugate addition of an aldehyde or ketone without having a second anion-stabilizing group, you need some stable and relatively unreactive enol equivalent. On p. 591 you saw how enamines, particularly those derived from cyclic secondary amines, are useful in alkylation reactions. These neutral species are also perfect for conjugate addition as they are soft nucleophiles but are more reactive than enols and can be prepared quantitatively in advance. The reactivity of enamines is such that heating the reactants together, sometimes neat, is all that is required. Acid catalysis can also be used to catalyse the reaction at lower temperature.

\[
\text{enamine} + \text{ketone} \rightarrow \text{keto-acid product}
\]

1. mix neat
2. acid work-up

The mechanism is rather like enol addition. The differences are that the enamine is more nucleophilic because of the nitrogen atom and that the product is also an enamine, which can be converted into the corresponding carbonyl by mild acidic hydrolysis. This is usually performed during the work-up and so does not really constitute an extra step. The amine is washed out as the hydrochloride salt so isolation is straightforward. After conjugate addition the resulting enolate-iminium ion undergoes proton transfer rapidly to produce the more stable carbonyl-enamine tautomer. This is shown as an intramolecular process but it could just as easily be drawn with an external base and source of protons. The resulting enamine is then stable until aqueous acid is added at the end of the reaction. Hydrolysis occurs via the iminium ion to reveal the second carbonyl group and release the secondary amine.

In these two examples enamines from cyclohexanone formed with pyrrolidine and morpholine add in good yield to an \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated carbonyl compound with an extra electron-withdrawing methylthio or phenylsulfonyl group.

Conjugate addition of silyl enol ethers leads to the silyl enol ether of the product

The best alternatives to enamines for conjugate addition of enols of aldehyde, ketone, and carboxylic acid derivatives are silyl enol ethers. These stable neutral nucleophiles react very well with Michael acceptors either spontaneously or with Lewis acid catalysts such as \(\text{TiCl}_4\) at low temperature. If the 1,5-dicarbonyl compound is required, then an aqueous work-up with either acid or base cleaves the silicon–oxygen bond in the product.
Addition of the silyl enol ether derived from acetophenone (PhCOME) to a disubstituted enone promoted by titanium tetrachloride is very rapid and gives the diketone product in good yield even though a quaternary carbon atom is created in the conjugate addition. This is a typical example of this very powerful class of conjugate addition reactions.

It is even possible to use a silyl enol ether to create a new C–C bond that joins two new quaternary centres. Silyl ketene acetals (the silyl enol ethers of esters) are more nucleophilic than ordinary silyl enol ethers, and in this example the silyl ketene acetal undergoes conjugate addition to an unsaturated ketone catalysed by the usual Lewis acid (TiCl₄) for such reactions.

**Ketene acetals**

Because enol ethers of esters have two identical OR groups joined to the same end of the same double bond, you will see them called ‘ketene acetals’ or, here, ‘silyl ketene acetals’. This is a reasonable description as you can imagine the carbonyl group of a ketene forming an acetal in the same way as an aldehyde. In fact, they cannot be made this way.

In these reactions, the electrophile coordinates to the TiCl₄ Lewis acid first, producing an activated enone that is attacked by the silylated nucleophile. It is difficult to determine at what stage the trimethylsilyl group moves from its original position and whether it is transferred intramolecularly to the product. In many cases the anion liberated from the Lewis acid (Cl⁻, RO⁻, Br⁻) is a good nucleophile for silicon so it is reasonable to assume that there is a free trimethylsilyl species (Me₃SiX) that captures the titanium enolate:

**A variety of electrophilic alkenes will accept enol(ate) nucleophiles**

The simplest and best Michael acceptors are those α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds with exposed unsaturated β carbon atoms, such as exo-methylene ketones, lactones, and vinyl ketones. However, their extreme reactivity can make them hard to handle (they polymerize readily), and in the next chapter (p. 621) you will meet a method that makes them in situ to circumvent these problems.
One trick to persuade a stubborn enolate to do conjugate rather than direct substitution is to add an extra anion-stabilizing substituent in the α position. The margin shows a selection of reagents that do this. In each case the extra group (CO$_2$Et, SPh, SOPh, SO$_2$Ph, SiMe$_3$, and Br) can be removed after the conjugate addition is complete.

Unsaturated esters are good Michael acceptors because they are not very electrophilic. Unsaturated amides are even less electrophilic and (provided they are tertiary and have no acidic NH protons) will even give conjugate addition products with lithium enolates.

Unsaturated esters are good Michael acceptors because they are not very electrophilic. Unsaturated amides are even less electrophilic and (provided they are tertiary and have no acidic NH protons) will even give conjugate addition products with lithium enolates.

The nitrile group is not as reactive towards direct attack by nucleophiles as its carbonyl cousins but is equally able to stabilize an adjacent negative charge. Alkenes conjugated with nitriles are thus activated towards nucleophilic attack without the complications of competing direct addition to the activating group.

With base, methyl benzyl ketone forms its more stable enolate, which undergoes smooth and rapid conjugate addition to acrylonitrile. Acrylonitrile is one of the best Michael acceptors for enolates.

The cyanide group can also act as an anion-stabilizing group in the nucleophile. In combination with an ester group, the enolizable proton is acidified to such an extent that potassium hydroxide can be used as base.

The simplest amino acid, glycine, would be an ideal starting material for the synthesis of more complicated amino acids but it does not easily form enols or enolates. By conversion to the methyl ester of its benzaldehyde imine, two electron-withdrawing groups are introduced to help stabilization of the enolate and conjugate addition of acrylonitrile is now possible. The base used was solid potassium carbonate. Simple hydrolysis of the alkylated product leads to the extended amino acid.

You saw on p. 606 how two ester groups in fumarate diesters encourage conjugate addition, but what if there are two different groups at the ends of the Michael acceptor? Then you must make a judgement as to which is more electron-withdrawing. One case is clear-cut. The nitro group is worth two carbonyl groups (p. 586) so that conjugate addition occurs β to the nitro group in this case.
Nitroalkanes are superb nucleophiles for conjugate addition

In this chapter so far you have seen that highly stabilized anions, such as those derived from β-dicarbonyl compounds, are particularly good at nucleophilic addition because their stability helps to reverse the unwanted alternative direct C=O addition (aldol) pathway, and facilitates proton transfer in the catalytic version of the reaction. The nitro group is so powerfully electron-withdrawing that just one is equivalent to two carbonyls in pK_a terms (p. 586). Thus if β-dicarbonyls are good for conjugate addition, you might expect nitroalkanes to undergo conjugate addition in just the same way. The good news is that they do, very well. The first stage is a base-catalysed conjugate addition.

The product enolate that is formed is much more basic than the anion of the nitro compound so it removes a proton from the nitro compound and provides another molecule of anion for the second round of the reaction.

The acidifying effect of the nitro group is so profound that very mild bases can be used to catalyse the reaction. This enables selective removal of the proton next to the nitro group and helps to avoid side reactions of the carbonyl component. Common examples of mild bases include amines, quaternary ammonium hydroxides, and fluorides. Even basic alumina (a largely inert powder) is sufficient to catalyse virtually quantitative addition of this benzylic nitroalkane to cyclohexenone at room temperature!

Anions of nitro compounds form quaternary centres with ease in additions to α,β-unsaturated mono- and diesters. The difference between the acidity of the protons next to a nitro group and those next to the esters in the products combined with the very mild basic conditions ensures that no unwanted side reactions occur.

The effectiveness of nitro compound conjugate addition makes it ideal for use in combination with other reactions in making several bonds in one pot. The next example combines conjugate addition and intramolecular conjugate addition to make a six-membered ring.
The base used for both steps is Cs₂CO₃. The large caesium cation forms fully ionic compounds so the uncomplexed carbonate ion can exert its full basicity. Deprotonation of the conjugate addition product next to the nitro group produces a second anion, which does an intra-molecular S₅N₂ displacement of iodide to form a six-membered ring.

The nitro group can be converted into other useful functional groups following conjugate addition. Reduction gives primary amines while hydrolysis reveals ketones. The hydrolysis is known as the Nef reaction and used to be achieved by formation of the nitro-stabilized anion with a base such as sodium hydroxide followed by hydrolysis with sulfuric acid. These conditions are rather unforgiving for many substrates (and products) so milder methods have been developed. One of these involves reaction of the nitro ‘enolate’ with ozone (ozonolysis) at low temperature rather than treatment with acid. Base-catalysed conjugate addition of nitropropane to methyl vinyl ketone occurred smoothly to give the nitroketone. Formation of the salt with sodium methoxide was followed by oxidative cleavage of the C≡N linkage with ozone. The product was a 1,4-diketone, which was isolated without further aldol reaction by this route.

The conjugate addition uses a base, benzyltrimethylammonium hydroxide, marketed as Triton B, which allows hydroxide to be soluble in organic solvents.

This is a good general method for the synthesis of 1,4-diketones, which can otherwise be difficult to make, and additional substituents are easily accommodated on the enone—a characteristic of conjugate addition.

The synthesis of a drug that acts on brain chemistry

We end this chapter with a simple commercial synthesis of a drug molecule—vivalan—described as a ‘dopaminergic antagonist’. It uses four reactions that you have met: conjugate addition of an enolate to acrylonitrile, reduction of CN to a primary amine, alkylation, and reduction of the amide. There is another reaction involved—cyclization to an amide—but this occurs spontaneously.

To conclude...

We have considered the reactions of enolates and their equivalents with alkyl halides and electrophilic alkenes. In the next chapter we move on to consider reactions we have deliber-
ately taken steps to avoid up to this point. We shall consider the same types of enolate equivalents reacting with carbonyl compounds themselves.

## Summary of methods for alkylating enolates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific enol equivalent</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate esters</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA → lithium enolate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use diethyl- or dimethylmalonate and decarboxylate</td>
<td>gives acid (NaOH, HCl) or ester (NaCl, DMSO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate aldehydes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use enamine</td>
<td>with reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with S$_1$-reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use aza-enolate</td>
<td>with S$_2$-reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate symmetrical ketones</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA → lithium enolate</td>
<td>equivalent to alkylation acetone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use acetoacetate and decarboxylate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use enamine</td>
<td>with reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with S$_1$-reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use aza-enolate</td>
<td>with S$_2$-reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate unsymmetrical ketones on more substituted side</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Me$_3$SiCl, Et$_3$N → silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with S$_1$-reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Me$_3$SiCl, Et$_3$N → silyl enol ether → lithium enolate with MeLi</td>
<td>with S$_2$-reactive alkylation agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• alkylate acetoacetate twice and decarboxylate</td>
<td>two successive alkylations of ethyl acetoacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• addition or reduction of enone to give specific lithium enolate or silyl enol ether</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate unsymmetrical ketones on less substituted side</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA → kinetic lithium enolate</td>
<td>with S$_2$-reactive electrophiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA then Me$_3$SiCl → silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with S$_1$-reactive electrophiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use dianion of alkylated acetoacetate and decarboxylate</td>
<td>two successive alkylations of ethyl acetoacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use enamine</td>
<td>with reactive electrophiles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Further reading


## Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Reactions of enolates with carbonyl compounds: the aldol and Claisen reactions

## Connections

### Building on
- Carbonyl compounds reacting with cyanide, borohydride, and bisulfite nucleophiles ch6
- Carbonyl compounds reacting with organometallic nucleophiles ch9
- Carbonyl compounds taking part in nucleophilic substitution reactions ch10 & ch11
- How enols and enolates react with heteroatomic electrophiles such as Br₂ and NO⁺ ch20
- How enolates and their equivalents react with alkylating agents ch25

### Arriving at
- Reactions with carbonyl compounds as both nucleophile and electrophile
- How to make hydroxy-carbonyl compounds or enones by the aldol reaction
- How to be sure that you get the product you want from an aldol reaction
- The different methods available for doing aldol reactions with enolates of aldehydes, ketones, and esters
- How to use formaldehyde as an electrophile
- How to predict the outcome of intramolecular aldol reactions
- How esters react with enolates: the Claisen condensation
- How to acylate the enolates of esters and ketones
- How to get C-acylation and avoid O-acylation
- How to make cyclic ketones by intramolecular acylation
- Enamines in acylation reactions
- Modelling acylation on nature

### Looking forward to
- Retrosynthesis ch28
- Synthesis of aromatic heterocycles ch29 & ch30
- Asymmetric synthesis ch41
- Biological organic chemistry ch42

## Introduction

The last chapter was about reactions of enols and enolates with alkylating agents such as alkyl halides and α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds. We emphasized how important it was to avoid nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group.

![alkylation of an enolate](image)

This chapter is about deliberately getting nucleophilic attack by enols and enolates on carbonyl groups of aldehydes or ketones (the aldol reaction in the first half of the chapter) or on acylating agents (the second half of the chapter).
The aldol reaction

The simplest enolizable aldehyde is acetaldehyde (ethanal, CH₃CHO). What happens if we add a small amount of base, say NaOH, to this aldehyde? Some of it will form the enolate ion.

$$\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O}$$

acetaldehyde enolate ion

$$\text{NaOH} \quad \text{HO}$$

Only a small amount of the nucleophilic enolate ion is formed: as we pointed out in Chapter 25, hydroxide is not basic enough to enolize an aldehyde completely. Each molecule of enolate is surrounded by molecules of the aldehyde that are not enolized and so still have the electrophilic carbonyl group intact. The enolate ion will attack one of these aldehydes to form an alkoxide ion, which will be protonated by the water molecule formed in the first step.

$$\text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H}$$

The product is an aldehyde with a hydroxy (ol) group and it has the trivial name aldol. The name aldol is given to the whole class of reactions between enolates (or enols) and carbonyl compounds even if in most cases the product is not a hydroxy-aldehyde at all. Notice that the base catalyst (hydroxide ion) is regenerated in the last step, so it is truly a catalyst.

This reaction is so important because of the carbon–carbon bond formed when the nucleophilic enolate attacks the electrophilic aldehyde. This bond is shown as a black bond in this version of the key step.

The reaction occurs with ketones as well. Acetone is a good example for us to use at the start of this chapter because it gives an important product, and as it is a symmetrical ketone, there can be no argument over which way it enolizes. Each step is the same as the aldol sequence with acetaldehyde, and the product is again a hydroxy-carbonyl compound, but this time a hydroxy-ketone.

$$\text{HO} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H}$$

The acetaldehyde reaction works well when one drop of dilute sodium hydroxide is added to acetaldehyde. The acetone reaction is best done with insoluble barium hydroxide, Ba(OH)₂. Both approaches keep the base concentration low. Without this precaution, the aldol products are not the compounds isolated from the reaction. With more base, further reactions occur because the aldol products dehydrate rather easily under the reaction conditions to give stable conjugated unsaturated carbonyl compounds.
These are elimination reactions, and you met them in Chapter 17, where the possible mechanisms are discussed. You cannot normally eliminate water from an alcohol in basic solution as hydroxide is a bad leaving group. It is the carbonyl group that allows elimination here: these are E1cB reactions, with a second enolization allowing the loss of OH⁻.

In the examples that follow you will see that the base-catalysed aldol reaction sometimes gives the aldol and sometimes the elimination product. The choice is partly based on conditions—the more vigorous the conditions (stronger base, higher temperature, longer time) the more likely elimination is to occur—and partly on the structure of the reagents.

The elimination is even easier in acid solution and acid-catalysed aldol reactions commonly give unsaturated products instead of aldols. In this simple example with a symmetrical cyclic ketone, the enone is formed in good yield in acid or base. We shall use the acid-catalysed reaction to illustrate the mechanism. First the ketone is enolized under acid catalysis as you saw in Chapter 20.

Then the aldol reaction takes place. Enols are less nucleophilic than enolates, and the reaction occurs because the electrophilic carbonyl component is protonated: the addition is acid-catalysed. An acid-catalysed aldol reaction takes place.

The aldol is a tertiary alcohol and would be likely to eliminate by an E1 mechanism in acid even without the carbonyl group. But the carbonyl ensures that only the stable conjugated enone is formed. Notice too that the dehydration is genuinely acid-catalysed as the acid reappears in the very last step.
None of these intermediates is detected or isolated in practice—simple treatment of the ketone with acid gives the enone in good yield. A base-catalysed reaction gives the same product via the aldol-E1cB elimination mechanism.

**Aldol reactions of unsymmetrical ketones**

If the ketone is blocked on one side so that it cannot enolize—in other words it has no protons on that side—only one aldol reaction is possible. Ketones of this type might bear a tertiary alkyl or an aryl substituent. *tert*-Butyl methyl ketone (3,3-dimethylbutan-2-one), for example, gives aldol reactions with various bases in 60–70% yield. Enolization cannot occur towards the *t*-butyl group and must occur towards the methyl group instead.

An especially interesting case of the blocked carbonyl compound is the lactone or cyclic ester. Open-chain esters do not give aldol reactions: they prefer a different reaction that is the subject of the second half of this chapter. But lactones are in some ways quite like ketones (the stretching frequencies of their C=O groups in the IR are similar, and unlike esters they react with NaBH₄ and give unsaturated carbonyl products under basic catalysis. Enolization is unambiguous because the ester oxygen atom blocks enolization on one side.

---

**Aldol condensations**

The term ‘condensation’ is often used for reactions like this. Condensations are reactions where two molecules combine with the loss of another small molecule—usually water. In this case, two ketones combine with the loss of water. This reaction is called an aldol condensation and chemists may say ‘two molecules of cyclopentanone condense together to give a conjugated enone’. You will also find the term ‘condensation’ used for all aldol reactions whether they occur with dehydration or not. The distinction is no longer important.
The enolate then attacks the carbonyl group of an unenolized lactone just as we have seen with aldehydes and ketones.

![aldol reaction of a lactone (cyclic ester)](image)

The last step is the familiar dehydration. As this reaction is being carried out in base we had better show the E1cB mechanism via the enolate of the aldol product.

![dehydration step](image)

You might have been surprised that the intermediate in the aldol step of this reaction did not decompose. This intermediate could be described as a tetrahedral intermediate in a nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group (Chapter 10). Why then does it not break down in the usual way?

The equilibrium does not affect the eventual product; it simply withdraws some of the material out of the productive reaction. We call this sort of equilibrium a parasitic equilibrium as it has no real life of its own—it just sucks the blood of the reaction.

The best leaving group is the alkoxide and the product is quite reasonable. But what is it to do now? The only reasonable next step is for it to close back up again. Because the lactone is a cyclic ester, the leaving group cannot escape—it must stay attached to the molecule. This reaction is reversible, but dehydration is effectively irreversible because it gives a stable conjugated product. Normal, acyclic esters are different: their alkoxide leaving groups can leave, and the result is a different sort of reaction, which you will meet later in this chapter.

**Cross-condensations**

So far we have considered only ‘self-condensations’—dimerization reactions of a single carbonyl compound. These form only a tiny fraction of known aldol reactions. Those that occur between two different carbonyl compounds, one acting as a nucleophile in its enol or enolate form, and the other as an electrophile, are called cross-condensations. They are more interesting than self-condensations, but working out what happens needs more thought. We shall start with an example that works well. The ketone PhCOMe reacts with 4-nitrobenzaldehyde in aqueous ethanol under NaOH catalysis to give a quantitative yield of an enone.

![cross-condensation](image)

The first step must be the formation of an enolate anion using NaOH as a base. Although both carbonyl compounds are unsymmetrical, there is only one site for enolization as there is only one set of α protons, on the methyl group of the ketone. The aldehyde has no α protons at all.
To get the observed product, the enolate obviously attacks the aldehyde to give an aldol, which then dehydrates by the E1cB mechanism.

Now, in this step there was a choice. The enolate could have attacked another molecule of unenolized ketone. It didn’t, because ketones are less reactive than aldehydes (Chapter 6). In this case the aldehyde has an electron-withdrawing nitro substituent too, making it even more reactive. The enolate selects the better electrophile—that is, the aldehyde.

In other cases the balance may shift towards self-condensation. You might think that a crossed aldol reaction between acetaldehyde and benzophenone (diphenylketone Ph₂C=O) should work well.

After all, only the aldehyde can enolize and the enolate could attack the ketone.

But it won’t work. The ketone is very hindered and very conjugated. It is less electrophilic than a normal ketone and normal ketones are less electrophilic than aldehydes. Given a choice between attacking this ketone and attacking another (but unenolized) molecule of acetaldehyde, the enolate will choose the aldehyde every time. The reaction at the start of the chapter occurs, while the ketone is just a spectator.

**Successful crossed aldol reactions**

For this kind of crossed aldol reaction to work well we must have two conditions:

- One partner only must be capable of enolization.
- The other partner must be incapable of enolization and be more electrophilic than the enolizable partner.

Everyone remembers the first of these conditions, but it is easy to forget the second.
The Mannich reaction

At first sight formaldehyde (methanal, CH₂=O) seems the ideal electrophilic partner in a mixed aldol reaction. It cannot enolize. (Usually we are concerned with α hydrogen atoms in an aldehyde. Formaldehyde does not even have α carbon atoms.) And it is a super aldehyde. Aldehydes are more electrophilic than ketones because a hydrogen atom replaces one of the alkyl groups. Formaldehyde has two hydrogen atoms.

The trouble is that it is too reactive. It tends to react more than once and to give extra unwanted reactions as well. You might think that condensation between acetaldehyde and formaldehyde in base would be quite simple. The acetaldehyde alone can form an enolate, and this enolate will attack the more electrophilic carbonyl group, which is formaldehyde. In each reaction the only possible enolate attacks another molecule of formaldehyde. By now you have got the idea so we simply draw the next enolate and the structure of the third aldol.

This aldol is formed all right but it is not the final product of the reaction because, with an electrophile as powerful as formaldehyde, a second and a third aldol follow swiftly on the heels of the first.

Even this is not all. A fourth molecule of formaldehyde reacts with hydroxide ion and then reduces the third aldol. This reduction is known as the Cannizzaro reaction, and is described in the box below. The final product is the highly symmetrical ‘pentaerythritol’, C(CH₂OH)₄, with four CH₂OH groups joined in a tetrahedral array about the same carbon atom. The overall reaction uses four molecules of formaldehyde and can give a high yield (typically 80% with NaOH but as much as 90% with Mg(OH)₂ of the product.

The Cannizzaro reaction

As you know, aldehydes are generally at least partly hydrated in water. Hydration is catalysed by base, and we can represent the hydration step in base like this. The hydration product is an anion but, if the base is sufficiently strong (or concentrated) and as long as the aldehyde cannot be enolized, at least some will be present as a dianion.
The dianion is very unstable, and one way in which it can become much more stable is by behaving like a tetrahedral intermediate. Which is the best leaving group? Out of a choice of $O^2-$, $R^-$, and $H^-$, it’s $H^-$ that (if reluctantly) has to go. Hydride is, of course, too unstable to be released into solution but, if there is a suitable electrophile at hand (another molecule of aldehyde, for example), it is transferred to the electrophilic centre in a mechanism that bears some resemblance to a borohydride reduction.

A general solution to using formaldehyde in aldol reactions is to use the Mannich reaction. A typical example is shown in the margin: the reaction involves an enolizable aldehyde or ketone (here we use cyclohexanone), a secondary amine (here dimethylamine), the Mannich reaction formaldehyde as its aqueous solution, and catalytic $HCl$. The product is an amino-ketone from the addition of one molecule each of formaldehyde and the amine to the ketone.

The mechanism involves the preliminary formation of an imine salt from the amine and formaldehyde. The amine is nucleophilic and attacks the more electrophilic of the two carbonyl compounds available, which is, of course, formaldehyde. No acid is needed for this addition step, but acid-catalysed dehydration of the addition product gives the imine salt. In the normal Mannich reaction, this is just an intermediate but it is quite stable and the corresponding iodide is sold as Eschenmoser’s salt for use in Mannich reactions.

The electrophilic salt can now add to the enol (we are in acid solution) of the ketone to give the product of the reaction, an amine sometimes called a Mannich base.

By using this reaction, you can add one molecule of formaldehyde—and one only—to carbonyl compounds. You might, of course, reasonably object that the product is not actually an aldol product at all—indeed, if you wanted the aldol product, the Mannich reaction would be of little use to you. It nevertheless remains a very important reaction. First of all, it is a simple way to make amino-ketones and many drug molecules belong to this class.

Secondly, the Mannich products can be converted to enones. The most reliable method for making the enone is to alkylate the amine product of the Mannich reaction with $MeI$ and then treat the ammonium salt with base. Enolate ion formation leads to an $E1cB$ reaction rather like the dehydration of aldols, but with a better leaving group.

1. alkylate amine to give ammonium salt
2. treat with base: $E1cB$ elimination gives enone

Enones like this, with two hydrogen atoms at the end of the double bond, are called exomethylene compounds; they are very reactive and cannot easily be made or stored. They certainly cannot be made by aldol reactions with formaldehyde alone as we have seen. The solution
is to make the Mannich product, store that, and then to alkylate and eliminate only when the enone is needed. We have seen how useful this is in the Michael reaction in Chapter 25.

If the enone is wanted, any secondary amine will do as it does not end up in the molecule so the more convenient (less volatile and less smelly) cyclic amines, pyrrolidine, and piperidine, are often used. The very electrophilic enones with monosubstituted double bonds can be made in this way.

**Carbonyl compounds that are electrophilic but cannot enolize**

Good crossed aldol condensations require one component to enolize and act as a nucleophile and the other not to enolize and to act as the electrophile. Here follows a list of carbonyl substituents that prevent enolization and therefore force a carbonyl compound to take the role of the electrophilic partner. They are arranged roughly in order of reactivity with the most reactive towards nucleophilic attack by an enolate at the top. You do, of course, need two substituents to block enolization so typical compounds also appear in the list. Note that the last two entries—esters and amides—do not normally do aldol reactions with enolates, but they do react as acylating agents for enolates, as you will see later in this chapter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substituent</th>
<th>Typical compounds</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most electrophilic</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>needs special methods: see Mannich reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CF₃Cl</td>
<td>made by halogenation of enols (Chapter 20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>t-alkyl</td>
<td>many other t-alkyl groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alkenyl</td>
<td>nucleophile may attack alkene: see Chapter 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aryl</td>
<td>many other aromatic rings, e.g. heterocycles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OR</td>
<td>formate esters and carbonates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>least electrophilic</td>
<td>NR₂</td>
<td>this is DMF: other amides unreactive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compounds that can enolize but that are not electrophilic**

We can complement this type of selectivity with the opposite type. Are there any compounds that can enolize but that cannot function as electrophiles? No carbonyl compound can fill this role, but in Chapter 25 (p. 585) we met some ‘enolizable’ compounds that lacked carbonyl...
groups altogether. Most notable among these were the nitroalkanes. Deprotonation of nitroalkanes is not enolization nor is the product an enolate ion, but the whole thing is so similar to enolization that it makes sense to consider them together. You saw these anions, sometimes called nitronates, reacting with Michael acceptors in Chapter 25, and they also react well with aldehydes and ketones.

\[
\text{anion of nitromethane}
\]

This particular example, using cyclohexanone as the electrophile and nitromethane itself as the source of the ‘enolate’, works quite well with NaOH as the base in methanol solution to give the ‘aldol’ in reasonable yield. Once again this reaction involves choice. Either compound could enolize and, indeed, cyclohexanone reacts well with itself under essentially the same conditions.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3\text{NO}_2 & \quad \text{NaOH, MeOH} \\
\text{CH}_3\text{NO}_2 & \quad \text{NaOH, MeOH}
\end{align*}
\]

70% yield

Although cyclohexanone forms an enolate in the absence of nitromethane, when both ketone and nitroalkane are present, the base prefers to remove a proton from nitromethane. This is simply a question of pK\textsubscript{a} values. The pK\textsubscript{a} of a typical ketone is about 20 but that of nitromethane is 10. It is not even necessary to use as strong a base as NaOH (pK\textsubscript{a} of H\textsubscript{2}O = 15.7) to deprotonate nitromethane: an amine will do (pK\textsubscript{a} of R\textsubscript{2}NH\textsubscript{2} about 10) and secondary amines are often used.

The elimination step also occurs easily with nitro compounds and is difficult to prevent in reactions with aromatic aldehydes. Now you can see how the useful nitroalkene Michael acceptors in Chapter 22 were made.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CHO} & \quad \text{CH}_3\text{NO}_2 \\
\text{CHO} & \quad \text{NaOH, MeOH}
\end{align*}
\]

85% yield

**Nitroalkenes as termite defence compounds**

Termites are social insects, and every species has its own ‘soldier’ termites that defend the nest. Soldier termites of the species *Prorhinotermes simplex* have huge heads from which they spray a toxic nitroalkene on their enemies.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{defensive nitroalkene from termite soldiers}
\end{align*}
\]

Although this compound kills other insects and even other species of termites, it has no effect on the workers of the same species. To find out why this was so, Prestwich made some radioactive compound using the aldol reaction. First, the right aldehyde was made using an S\textsubscript{2} reaction with radioactive (\textsuperscript{14}C) cyanide ion on a tosylate followed by DIBAL reduction (Chapter 23) of the nitrile. The position of the \textsuperscript{14}C atom in each compound is shown in black.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \quad \text{CN} \\
\text{Na} & \quad \text{DIBAL (i-Bu}_2\text{AlH)}
\end{align*}
\]
Then the aldol reaction was carried out with nitromethane and acetic anhydride in pyridine to give the nitro aldol. Elimination using sodium methoxide gave the defence compound (E-1-nitropentadec-1-ene) in 37% yield over the four steps.

If the worker termites were sprayed with the labelled compound, they were able to make it harmless by using an enzyme to reduce the nitroalkene to a nitroalkane. The still radioactive labelled nitroalkane could be re-isolated only from workers of the same species: other insects do not have the enzyme.

If an aldol reaction can be done with:
- only one enolizable component
- only one set of enolizable protons
- a carbonyl electrophile more reactive than the compound being enolized

then you are lucky and the crossed aldol method will work. But most aldol reactions aren’t like this: they are cross-condensations of aldehydes and ketones of various reactivities with several different enolizable protons. Crossedaldols on most pairs of carbonyl compounds lead to hopeless mixtures of products. In all cases that fail to meet these three criteria, a specific enol equivalent will be required: one component must be turned quantitatively into an enol equivalent, which will be reacted in a separate step with an electrophile. That is what the next section is about—and you will find that some of the methods have a lot in common with those we used for alkylating enolates in Chapter 25.

### Specific enol equivalents can be used to control aldol reactions

In Chapter 25 we saw that the alkylation of enolates was most simply controlled by preparing a specific enol equivalent from the carbonyl compound. The same approach is the most powerful of all the ways to control the aldol reaction. The table is a reminder of some of the most useful of these specific enol equivalents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important specific enol equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R-OH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### oxygen derivatives:
- R-O-SiMe\text{$_3$}
- R-O-Li

#### nitrogen derivatives:
- R-NR\text{$_2$}
- R-N-Li

#### 1,3-dicarbonyls:
- R-C(=O)OEt
- R-C(=O)OEt
- R-C(=O)OEt
Specific enol equivalents are intermediates that still have the reactivity of enols or enolates but are stable enough to be prepared in good yield from the carbonyl compound. That was all we needed to know in Chapter 25. Now we know that a further threat is the reaction of the partly formed enol derivative with its unenolized parent and we should add that ‘no aldol reaction should occur during the preparation of the specific enol equivalent’.

Sensible choice of an appropriate specific enol equivalent will allow almost any aldol reaction to be performed successfully. The first two compounds in our list, the silyl enol ethers and the lithium enolates, have a particularly wide application and we should look first at the way these work. As the table suggests, silyl enol ethers are more like enols: they are non-basic and not very reactive. Lithium enolates are more like enolate anions: they are basic and reactive. Each is appropriate in different circumstances.

Lithium enolates in aldol reactions

Lithium enolates are usually made at low temperature in THF with a hindered lithium amide base (often LDA) and are stable under those conditions because of the strong O–Li bond. The formation of the enolate begins with Li–O bond formation before the removal of the proton from the position by the basic nitrogen atom.

This reaction happens very quickly—so quickly that the partly formed enolate does not have a chance to react with unenolized carbonyl compound before proton removal is complete.

Now, if a second carbonyl compound is added, it too complexes with the same lithium atom. This allows the aldol reaction to take place by a cyclic mechanism in the coordination sphere of the lithium atom. The aldol step itself is now a very favourable intramolecular reaction with a six-membered cyclic transition state. The product is initially the lithium alkoxide of the aldol, which gives the aldol on work-up.

This reaction works well even if the electrophilic partner is an enolizable aldehyde. In this example, an unsymmetrical ketone (blocked on one side by an aromatic ring) reacts as the enol partner in excellent yield with a very enolizable aldehyde. This is the first complete aldol reaction we have shown you using a specific enol equivalent: notice the important point that it is done in two steps:

- first, form the specific enol equivalent (here, the lithium enolate at low temperature)
- then add the electrophile.
Contrast the crossed aldols earlier in the chapter, where enolizable component, base, and electrophile were all mixed together in one step.

The next example is particularly impressive. The enol partner is a symmetrical ketone that is very hindered—there is only one hydrogen on either side. The electrophilic partner is a conjugated enal that is not enolizable but that might accept the nucleophile in a conjugate manner. In spite of these potential problems, the reaction goes in excellent yield.

You may wonder why we did not mention the stereochemistry of the first of these two products. Two new stereogenic centres are formed and the product is a mixture of diastereoisomers. In fact, both of these products were wanted for oxidation to the 1,3-diketone so the stereochemistry is irrelevant. This sequence shows that the aldol reaction can be used to make diketones too.

**Silyl enol ethers in aldol reactions**

The silyl enol ether can be prepared from its parent carbonyl compound by forming a small equilibrium concentration of enolate ion with weak base such as a tertiary amine and trapping the enolate with the very efficient oxygen electrophile Me₃SiCl. The silyl enol ether is stable enough to be isolated but is usually used immediately without storing.

You should look upon silyl enol ethers as rather reactive alkenes that combine with things like protons or bromine (Chapter 20), but do not react with aldehydes and ketones without catalysis: they are much less reactive than lithium enolates. As with alkylation (pp. 595 and 609), a Lewis acid catalyst is needed to get the aldol reaction to work, and a Ti(IV) compound such as TiCl₄ is popular.

The immediate product is actually the silyl ether of the aldol product but this is hydrolysed during work-up and the aldol is formed in good yield. The Lewis acid presumably bonds to the carbonyl oxygen atom of the electrophile.

Now the aldol reaction can occur: the positive charge on the titanium-complexed carbonyl oxygen atom makes the aldehyde reactive enough to be attacked even by the not very nucleophilic silyl enol ether. Chloride ion removes the silyl group and the titanium alkoxide...
This mechanism looks complicated, and it is. It is, in fact, not clear that the details of what we have written here are right: the titanium may well coordinate to both oxygens throughout the reaction, and some of the steps that we have represented separately probably happen simultaneously. However, all reasonable mechanisms will agree on two important points, which you must understand:

- Lewis acid is needed to get silyl enol ethers to react.
- The key step is an aldol reaction of the silyl enol ether with the Lewis-acid complexed electrophile.

The use of silyl enol ethers can be illustrated in a synthesis of manicone, a conjugated enone that ants use to leave a trail to a food source. It can be made by an aldol reaction between pentan-3-one (as the enol component) and 2-methylbutanal (as the electrophile). Both partners are enolizable so we shall need to form a specific enol equivalent from the ketone. The silyl enol ether works well. The aldol product will be a mixture of diastereoisomers but it eliminates to give a single compound.

The silyl enol ether is not isolated but is treated immediately with the aldehyde to give an excellent yield of the aldol. Dehydration in acid solution with toluenesulfonic acid (TsOH) gives the enone. You can see by the high yield in the aldol reaction that there is no significant self-condensation of either partner in the aldol reaction.

**Conjugated Wittig reagents as specific enol equivalents**

When the Wittig reaction was introduced (Chapter 11) we saw it simply as an alkene synthesis. Now if we look at one group of Wittig reagents, those derived from α-halo-carbonyl compounds, we can see that they behave as specific enol equivalents in making unsaturated carbonyl compounds.

You notice that we have drawn the intermediate ylid as an enolate just to emphasize that it is an enolate derivative: it can also be represented either as the ylid or as an equivalent C=P ‘phosphorane’ structure. If we look at the details of this sort of Wittig reaction, we shall see that ylid formation is like enolate anion formation (indeed it is enolate anion formation). Only a weak base is needed as the enolate is stabilized by the Ph₃P⁺ group as well.
The first step of the Wittig reaction proper is just like an aldol reaction as it consists of an enolate attacking an electrophilic carbonyl compound. But, instead of forming an ‘aldol’ product, this adduct goes on to form an unsaturated carbonyl compound directly.

The final stages follow the mechanism of the Wittig reaction you met in Chapter 11: you can now see them as a special case of dehydration of an ‘aldol’ made favourable by the formation of a phosphine oxide and an unsaturated carbonyl compound.

The conjugated ylides derived from aldehydes, ketones, and esters are all sufficiently stable to be commercially available as the ylids—one of the few examples of specific enolate equivalents that you can actually buy. The ylid corresponding to the enolate of acetaldehyde is a solid, m.p. 185–188°C, that reacts well with other aldehydes, even if they are enolizable.

The stability of the phosphonium-stabilized enolates also means that, although they react well with aldehydes, their reactions with ketones are often poor, and it is better in these cases to use phosphonate-stabilized enolates. Being anionic, rather than neutral, these enolates are more nucleophilic. If an ester enolate equivalent is being used, the best base is the alkoxide ion belonging to the ester; with a ketone enolate equivalent, use sodium hydride or an alkoxide.

These last reagents, where the anion is stabilized both by the adjacent carbonyl group (as an enolate) and by the adjacent P=O group, are just one of many examples of enolate anions stabilized by two electron-withdrawing groups. The most important members of this class, enolates of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds, are the subject of the next section.

**Specific enol equivalents from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds**

Although these are the oldest of the specific enol equivalents, they are still widely used because they need no special conditions—no low temperatures or strictly anhydrous solvents. The two most important are derived from malonic acid and ethyl acetoacetate.
Ethyl acetoacetate is partly enolized under normal conditions. So, you might ask, why doesn't it immediately react with itself by the aldol reaction? There are two aspects to the answer. First, the enol is very stable (see Chapter 20 for a full discussion) and, second, the carbonyl groups in the unenolized fraction of the sample are poorly electrophilic ester and ketone groups. The second carbonyl group of the enol is not electrophilic because of conjugation. When a normal carbonyl compound is treated with catalytic acid or base, we have a small proportion of reactive enol or enolate in the presence of large amounts of unenolized electrophile. Aldol reaction (self-condensation) occurs. With 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds we have a small proportion of not particularly reactive unenolized compound in the presence of large amounts of stable (and hence unreactive) enol. No aldol occurs.

If we want a crossed aldol reaction with a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound, we simply add a second, electrophilic carbonyl compound such as an aldehyde, along with a weak acid or base. Often a mixture of a secondary amine and a carboxylic acid is used.

Reaction no doubt occurs via the enolate ion generated by the amine while the carboxylic acid buffers the solution, neutralizing the product and preventing enolization of the aldehyde. The amine ($pK_a$ $R_2NH_2$ about 10) is a strong enough base to form a significant concentration of enolate from the 1,3-dicarbonyl compound ($pK_a$ about 13) but not strong enough to form the enolate from the aldehyde ($pK_a$ about 20). The formation of the enolate can be drawn from either tautomer of the malonate.

Now the enolate ion can attack the aldehyde in the usual way, and the buffer action of the acid produces the aldol product in the reaction mixture.

There is still one proton between the two carbonyl groups so enolate anion formation is again easy and dehydration follows to give the unsaturated product.
You may not want a product with both ester groups present, and we discussed in Chapter 25 how one of two 1,3-related ester groups may be removed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation. There is a simpler route with the aldol reaction. If, instead of the malonate diester, malonic acid is used, the decarboxylation occurs spontaneously during the reaction. The catalysts this time are usually a more basic mixture of piperidine and pyridine.

The reaction presumably uses the enolate anion of the monocarboxylate anion of malonic acid. Although this enolate is a dianion, its extensive delocalization and the intramolecular hydrogen bond make it really quite stable.

Next comes the aldol step. The dianion attacks the aldehyde, and after proton exchange the aldol is formed (still as the monocarboxylate in this basic solution).

Finally comes the decarboxylation step, which can occur though a cyclic mechanism (compare the decarboxylation mechanisms in Chapter 25). The decarboxylation could give either an $E$ or a $Z$ double bond depending on which acid group is lost as $\text{CO}_2$, but the transition state leading to the more stable $E$ product must be lower in energy since the product has $E$ geometry.

In the first part of this chapter we have looked at general solutions to the problem of controlling crossed aldol reactions. We’ll now turn to the detailed ways those solutions are used with different classes of enolizable compounds.
How to control aldol reactions of esters

Among the enolates of carboxylic acid derivatives, esters are the most widely used. Ester enolates cannot be used as such in crossed aldols with aldehydes because the aldehyde is both more enolizable and more electrophilic than the ester. It will just condense with itself and ignore the ester. The same is true for ketones. A specific enol equivalent for the ester will therefore be needed for a successful aldol reaction of an ester enolate.

Fortunately, because this is a classic problem, many solutions are available. You can use the lithium enolate or the silyl enol ether, usually made best via the lithium enolate.

A good example is the first step in a synthesis of the natural product himalchene by Oppolzer and Snowden. Even though the ester and the aldehyde are both crowded with substituents, the aldol reaction works well with the lithium enolate of the ester. The cyclic mechanism ensures that the enolate adds directly to the carbonyl group of the aldehyde and not in a conjugate (Michael) fashion.

Zinc enolates, made from the bromoesters, are a good alternative to lithium enolates of esters. The mechanism for zinc enolate formation should remind you of the formation of a Grignard reagent.

There is no danger of self-condensation with zinc enolates as they do not react with esters. But they do react cleanly with aldehydes and ketones to give aldols on work-up. You will appreciate that the use of zinc enolates is therefore special to esters: you cannot make a zinc enolate from a 2-bromoaldehyde or an α-bromo ketone as then you would get self-condensation.
Ester enolate equivalents

For aldol reactions with an ester enolate equivalent, use:

- lithium enolates or
- silyl enol ethers or
- zinc enolates.

\[
R^1\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{OLi}} \xrightarrow{\text{OSiMe}_3} \xrightarrow{\text{OZnBr}}
\]

lithium enolate  silyl enol ether  zinc enolate

How to control aldol reactions of aldehydes

Aldehydes enolize very readily but also self-condense rather easily. Lithium enolates of aldehydes can’t be made cleanly because the self-condensation reaction happens even at –78 °C and is as fast as the enolization by LDA. Silyl enol ethers are a much better choice. They clearly must not be made via the lithium enolate, and amine bases are usually used. As each molecule of enolate is produced in the equilibrium, it is efficiently trapped by the silylating agent.

These silyl enol ethers are probably the best way of carrying out crossed aldol reactions with an aldehyde as the nucleophilic (enol or enolate) partner. An example is the reaction of the enol of the not very enolizable isobutyraldehyde with the very enolizable 3-phenylpropanal. Mixing the two aldehydes and adding base would of course lead to an orgy of self-condensation and cross-couplings.

Preliminary formation of the silyl enol ether from either aldehyde, in the absence of the other, would be trouble-free as Me_3SiCl captures the enolate faster than self-condensation occurs. Here we need the silyl enol ether from isobutyraldehyde. The other aldehyde is now added along with the necessary Lewis acid, here TiCl_4. The mechanism described on p. 627 gives the aldol after work-up in an excellent 95% yield. No more than 5% of other reactions can have occurred.

Other useful specific enol equivalents of aldehydes and ketones are enamines and aza-enolates, which you saw in use in alkylation reactions in Chapter 25. Aza-enolates—the lithium enolates of imines—derived from aldehydes are also useful in aldol reactions. Cyclohexylamine gives a reasonably stable imine even with acetaldehyde and this can be isolated and lithiated with LDA to give the aza-enolate. The mechanism is similar to the formation of lithium enolates and the lithium atom binds the nitrogen atom of the aza-enolate, just as it binds the oxygen atom of an enolate.
The aza-enolate reacts cleanly with other aldehydes or ketones to give aldol products. Even the most challenging of cross-couplings—attack on another similar enolizable aldehyde—occurs in good yield.

The initial product is a new imine, which is easily hydrolysed during acidic aqueous work-up. The alkoxide is protonated, the imine hydrolysed, and finally the aldol is dehydrated to give the enal—65% overall yield in this case.

The key to the success of the aza-enolates is that the imine is first formed from the aldehyde with the primary amine, a relatively weak base, and under these conditions imine formation is faster than self-condensation. Only after the imine is formed is LDA added when self-condensation cannot occur simply because no aldehyde is left.

Except in certain cases (and you will meet some of these in Chapter 41) enamines are not generally used in aldol condensations, partly because they are not reactive enough, but mainly because they are too much in equilibrium with the carbonyl compound itself and exchange would lead to self-condensation and the wrong cross-couplings. You will see later that enamines come into their own when we want to acylate enols with the much more reactive acid chlorides.

● **Aldehyde enolate equivalents**

For crossed aldol reactions with an aldehyde as the enol partner, use:
- silyl enol ethers or
- aza-enolates.

For acylation of aldehyde enolates (see later), use silyl enol ethers or enamines.
How to control aldol reactions of ketones

The enolization of ketones, unless they are symmetrical, poses a special problem. Not only do we need to prevent them self-condensing (although this is less of a problem than with aldehydes), but we also need to control which side of the carbonyl group the ketone enolizes. In this section we shall introduce aldol reactions with unsymmetrical ketones where one of two possible enols or enolates must be made.

Making the less substituted enolate equivalent: kinetic enolates

Treatment of methyl ketones with LDA usually gives only the lithium enolate on the methyl side. This is the enolate that forms the fastest and is therefore known as the kinetic enolate. It is formed faster because:

- the protons on the methyl group are more acidic
- there are three of them as against two on the other side, and
- there is steric hindrance to attack by LDA on the other side of the carbonyl group.

A simple example from the first report of this reaction by Gilbert Stork and his group in 1974 is the condensation of pentan-2-one with butanal to give the aldol and then the enone oct-4-en-3-one by acid-catalysed dehydration. The yields may seem disappointing, but this was the first time anyone had carried out a crossed aldol reaction like this with an unsymmetrical ketone and an enolizable aldehyde and got just one aldol product in any reasonable yield at all.

An uncontrolled ketone aldol

A more typical result from the days before specific enol condensation between butanone and butanal with equivalents had been invented is this attempted crossed catalytic base. Two products were isolated in low yield.

Product A is from the enolate of the more substituted side of the ketone reacting with the aldehyde, and product B is just the self-condensation product from the aldehyde.

These kinetic lithium enolates are stable in THF at −78°C for a short time but can be preserved at room temperature in the form of their silyl ethers.
Aldol reactions can be carried out with either the lithium enolate or the silyl enol ether. As an example we shall use the synthesis of a component of the flavour of ginger. The hotness of ginger comes from ‘gingerol’—the ‘pungent principle’ of ginger. Gingerol is a 3-hydroxyketone, so we might consider using an aldol reaction to make it. We shall need the enol (or enolate) on the methyl side of an unsymmetrical ketone to react with a simple aldehyde (pentanal) as the electrophilic partner in the aldol reaction. Pentanal is an enolizable aldehyde, so we must stop it enolizing. The diagram summarizes the proposed aldol reaction.

We might consider using the lithium enolate or the silyl enol ether. As we need the kinetic enolate (the enolate formed on the less substituted side of the ketone), we shall be using the lithium enolate to make the silyl enol ether, so it would make sense to try that first. There is another problem too. The ketone has a free OH group on the far side of the ring that will interfere with the reaction. We must protect that first as an ordinary silyl ether (not a silyl enol ether).

Now we can make the kinetic lithium enolate with a hindered lithium amide base. In fact, the one chosen here was even more hindered than LDA as it has two Me,Si groups on the nitrogen atom.

**Lithium hexamethyldisilazide**

Lithium hexamethyldisilazide (LiHMDS) is a little more hindered than LDA and a little less basic. It is made by deprotonating hexamethyldisilazane with BuLi.

An aldol reaction with this lithium enolate on pentanal was successful and the protecting group (the silyl ether) was conveniently hydrolysed during work-up to give gingerol itself. However, the yield was only 57%. When the silyl enol ether was used with TiCl₄ as the Lewis
acid catalyst, the yield jumped to 92%. This is one of the many successful uses of this style of aldol reaction by Mukaiyama, the inventor of the method.

Making the more substituted enolate equivalent: thermodynamic enolates

Being an alkene, an enol or enolate is more stable if it has more substituents. So the way to make the more substituted enolate equivalent is to make it under conditions where the two enolates can interconvert: equilibration will give the more stable form. You have seen in Chapter 25 (p. 599) how the silyl enol ether on the more substituted side of a ketone can be made by treating the ketone with Me₃SiCl and a weak base, but these thermodynamic silyl enol ethers have been little used in aldol reactions. One successful example is the thermodynamic silyl enol ether of 1-phenylpropan-2-one: enolization on the conjugated side is overwhelmingly favoured thermodynamically. The aldol reaction with a 2-ketoaldehyde goes exclusively for the more reactive aldehyde group.

This concludes our general survey of specific enolates in the aldol reaction. Later you will see many of the same reagents used in acylation at carbon. We are left with some reactions that are particularly easy to do.

Intramolecular aldol reactions

Now for something easy. When an aldol reaction can form a five- or six-membered ring, you need no longer worry about specific enols or anything like that. Equilibrium methods with weak acids or bases are quite enough to give the cyclic product by an intramolecular aldol reaction because intramolecular reactions are faster than intermolecular ones. We shall illustrate intramolecular reactions by looking at the cyclization of a series of diketones of increasing complexity, starting with one that can form four equivalent enols: cyclodeca-1,6-dione.

It doesn't matter where enolization occurs because the same enol is formed. And once the enol is formed, there is only one thing it can reasonably do: attack the other ketone to form a stable five-membered ring. It also gives a reasonably stable seven-membered ring, but that is by the way. In weak acid or base, only a small proportion of carbonyl groups will be enolized, so the chance of two being in the same molecule is very low. No intermolecular condensation is found and the yield of the bicyclic enone from the intramolecular reaction is almost 100% (96% with Na₂CO₃).
This may look like a long stretch for the enol to reach across the ten-membered ring to reach the other ketone, but the conformational drawing in the margin shows just how close they can be. You should compare this conformation with that of a decalin (Chapter 16).

The key point to remember with intramolecular aldols is this:

- Intramolecular reactions giving five- or six-membered rings are preferred to those giving strained three- or four-membered rings on the one hand or medium rings (eight- to thirteen-membered) on the other.

Acid-catalysed cyclization of the symmetrical diketone nona-2,8-dione could give two enols.

One enol can cyclize through an eight-membered cyclic transition state and the other through a six-membered one. In each case the product would first be formed as an aldol but would dehydrate to the cyclic enone having the same ring size as the transition state. In practice, only the less strained six-membered ring is formed and the enone can be isolated in 85% yield.

Most diketones lack symmetry, and will potentially have four different sites for enolization. Consider what might happen when this diketone is treated with KOH. There are four different places where an enolate anion might be formed as there are four different carbon atoms. There are also two different electrophilic carbonyl groups so that there are many possibilities for inter- and intramolecular condensation. Yet only one product is formed, in 90% yield.
We can deduce the mechanism of the reaction simply from the structure of the product by working backwards. The double bond is formed from an aldol whose structure we can predict and hence we can see which enolate anion was formed and which ketone acted as the electrophilic partner.

Must we argue that this one enolate is more easily formed than the other three? No, of course not. There is little difference between all four enolates and almost no difference between the three enolates from CH₂ groups. We can argue that this is the only aldol reaction that leads to a stable conjugated enone in a stable six-membered ring. This must be the mechanism; the others are just too slow to compete. Protonation and dehydration follow as usual.

Now try some of the alternatives in which the same ketone forms an enolate on the other side. These reactions give unstable four-membered rings or bridged bicyclic systems that would revert to the enolate. Providing the reaction is done under equilibrating conditions, the whole process would go into reverse back to the original diketone and the observed (six-membered ring) cyclization would eventually predominate. The key point about the bridged compound in the margin is that dehydration is impossible. No enolate can form at the bridgehead because bridgehead carbons cannot be planar (Chapter 17, p. 389) and the enone product cannot exist for the same reason: the carbons marked (●) in the brown structure would all have to lie in the same plane. The aldol has a perfectly acceptable conformation but that elimination is impossible. The aldol product remains in equilibrium with the alternative aldol products, but only one elimination is possible—and that is irreversible, so eventually all the material ends up as the one enone.

The Robinson annelation

One of the most important applications of the intramolecular aldol reaction is a ring synthesis (annelation or annulation) that takes place in two steps, both involving enols. The compound made by Robinson in the first example is a bicyclic diketone that contains the basic structure of rings A and B of the steroids. The bonds made in the two steps are marked.
Only a weak base is needed to form the stable enolate of the 1,3-diketone and this does
conjugate addition onto the enone (Chapter 25). The intermediate triketo may be isolated
but often isn’t.

The second stage starts with the intramolecular aldol reaction. You should be able to see
that the alternatives to a six-membered ring are a four-membered ring and bridged products.
The hydroxy-ketone, which happens to have the cis stereochemistry, can also be isolated but
eliminates by the E1cB mechanism to complete the aldol sequence.

Other ways to carry out this same reaction are to use a secondary amine as the weak base. This
gives an excellent yield of the hydroxyketone that can be converted into the enone with acid.

In this sequence the new ring is built onto the side of an old ring but this is not necessary.
Any combination of an easily enolizable compound and an enone may give a Robinson
annelation product. A simple example combines a non-enolizable enone with ethyl acetacetate to give an excellent yield of a cyclohexenone. As these compounds are so robust a
stronger base can be used.

**The Darzens reaction**

Tandem reactions, in which a second enolate reaction follows on from the first, can allow us
to make cyclopropanes (see Chapter 25, p. 586), by conjugate addition followed by C-alkylation,
or epoxides, by aldol addition followed by O-alkylation. This epoxide was used in the synthesis of the drug Darusentan.
The formation of epoxides in this way complements their formation from alkenes with m-CPBA because it involves construction of a C–C bond. Epoxide formation from α-halogenated carbonyl compounds is known as the Darzens reaction.

**Acetylation at carbon**

**Introduction: the Claisen ester condensation and the aldol reaction compared**

We began this chapter with the treatment of acetaldehyde with base. This led initially to the formation of an enolate anion and then to the aldol reaction. We are going to start this section by looking at what happens if you just treat ethyl acetate with base. To start with, there is hardly any difference. We shall use ethoxide as base rather than hydroxide as hydroxide would hydrolyse the ester, but otherwise the first steps are very similar. Here they are, side by side.

The next step in both cases is nucleophilic attack by the enolate ion on unenolized carbonyl compound. The concentration of enolate is low and each enolate ion is surrounded by unenolized aldehyde or ester molecules, so this reaction is to be expected. Here is that step, again shown for both aldehyde and ester.

Only now does something different happen. The aldehyde dimer simply captures a proton from the solvent to give an aldol product. The ‘aldol’ from the ester (not, in fact, an aldol at all) has a leaving group, EtO−, instead of a hydrogen atom and is actually the tetrahedral intermediate in a nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group. Compare the two different steps again.

Even though the last step is different, the two products are quite similar. Both are dimers of the original two-carbon chain and both have carbonyl groups at the end of the chain and oxygen substituents at position three. The two reactions obviously belong to the same family but are usually given different names. The ester reaction is sometimes known as the Claisen ester condensation and sometimes as the Claisen–Schmidt reaction. More important than remembering the name is being familiar with the reaction and its mechanism.
This is another of those reactions where the base is not strong enough to transform the ester entirely into the enolate. Only a small equilibrium concentration is produced, which reacts with the ester electrophile. The by-product from the reaction is ethoxide ion and so it looks at first sight as though we get our catalyst back again—the aldol, if you remember, is catalytic in base. But not the Claisen reaction. The second step of the reaction is also really an equilibrium, and the reaction works only because the product can be irreversibly deprotonated by the ethoxide by-product, consuming ethoxide in the process. You recall that the aldol reaction often works best when there is an extra driving force to push it across—dehydration to an enone, for example. Similarly, the ester dimerization works best when the product reacts with the ethoxide ion to give a stable enolate ion.

The point is that the base used, ethoxide ion EtO−, is too weak (EtOH has a pKₐ of about 16) to remove the proton completely from ethyl acetate (pKₐ about 25), but is strong enough to remove a proton from the acetoacetate product (pKₐ about 10). Under the conditions of the reaction, a small amount of the enolate of ethyl acetate is produced—just enough to let the reaction happen—but the product is completely converted into its enolate. The neutral product, ethyl acetoacetate itself, is formed on acidic work-up.

The final product has been formed by the acylation at carbon of the enolate of an ester. This general process—acylation at carbon—is the subject of the second part of this chapter. It so happened in this case that the acylating agent was another molecule of the same ester, but the general process we shall consider is the acylation of enolates at carbon. We shall use a variety of enols, enolates, and specific enol equivalents and a variety of acylating agents, but the basic idea is that the enolate of one carbonyl compound will have an acyl group (here the R²CO group in orange) added to the enolate carbon atom.

**Problems with acylation at carbon**

The main problem with the acylation of enolates is that reaction tends to occur at oxygen rather than at carbon.
The product of acylation on oxygen is an enol ester. The tendency to attack through oxygen is most marked with reactive enolates and reactive acylating agents. The combination of a lithium enolate and an acid chloride, for example, is pretty certain to give an enol ester.

If we want acylation at carbon we must use either:

- less reactive specific enol equivalents, such as enamines or silyl enol ethers, with reactive acylating agents such as acid chlorides or
- reactive enols, such as the enolate anions themselves, with less reactive acylating agents such as esters.

We introduced this chapter with an example of the second type of reaction, and we shall continue with a more detailed consideration of the Claisen ester condensation and related reactions.

**Reaction at oxygen—not a problem in the aldol reaction**

Earlier in this chapter, we mentioned no trouble with reaction at oxygen in the aldol reaction. This may now seem surprising, in view of what we have said about esters, as the electrophiles were aldehydes and ketones—not so very different from esters. We can resolve this by looking at what would happen if an aldehyde did attack an enolate on the oxygen atom.

The only plausible leaving group from the intermediate is the enolate oxygen: the reaction just reverses.

**The Claisen ester condensation and other self-condensations**

The self-condensation of ethyl acetate is the most famous example of the Claisen ester condensation and it works in good yield under convenient conditions. The product (ethyl acetoacetate) is commercially available for this very reason—and cheap too—so you are unlikely to want to do this particular example.

A more generally useful reaction is the self-condensation of simple substituted acetates $RCH_2CO_2Et$. These work well under the same conditions ($EtO^-$ in EtOH). The enolate anion is formed first in low concentration and in equilibrium with the ester. It then carries out a nucleophilic attack on the more abundant unenolized ester molecules.

These steps are all unfavourable equilibria and, on their own, would give very little product. However, as we mentioned before, the reaction works because the equilibrium is driven over by the essentially irreversible formation of a stable, delocalized enolate from the product.
Finally, the reaction is worked up in acid and the β keto-ester product is formed. Notice that all products of Claisen ester condensations have a 1,3-dicarbonyl relationship. These compounds are useful in the preparation of specific enol equivalents and you have seen them in action in Chapters 20 and 25, and in this chapter.

**How do we know that deprotonation drives the reaction?**

If the original ester has two substituents on the α carbon atom (C2 of the ester), the formation of the stable enolate of the product is no longer possible as there are no hydrogen atoms left to remove.

As you might expect, all the equilibria are now unfavourable, and this reaction does not go well under the normal equilibrating conditions (EtO− in EtOH). It can be made to go in reasonable yield if a stronger base is used. Traditionally, triphenylmethyl sodium is chosen. This is made from Ph3CCl and sodium metal, and is a very conjugated carbanion. Triphenylmethyl carbanion is a strong enough base to convert an ester entirely into its enolate. Reaction of the enolate with a second molecule of ester then gives the keto-ester in good yield.

**Crossed ester condensations**

Much the same arguments apply here as applied in the crossed aldol reaction. We must be quite sure that we know which compound is going to act as the enol partner and which as the acylation partner.

**Reactive esters that cannot enolize**

There are several useful esters of this kind, of which the four in the margin are the most important. They cannot act as the enol partner, and the first three are more electrophilic than most esters, so they should acylate an ester enolate faster than the ester being enolized can.

These four are arranged in order of reactivity towards nucleophiles, the most electrophilic at the top and the least electrophilic at the bottom. Oxalates are very reactive because each carbonyl group makes the other more electrophilic. The molecular LUMO is the sum of the two π* orbitals and is lower in energy than either.
Formate esters look a bit like aldehydes but their ester character dominates. The hydrogen atom just makes them very electrophilic as they lack the $\sigma$ conjugation (and steric hindrance) of simple esters.

Carbonates are particularly useful as they introduce a $\text{CO}_2\text{R}$ group on to an enolate. It is perhaps not immediately obvious why they are more electrophilic than simple esters. Normal esters are (slightly) less electrophilic than ketones because the deactivating lone pair donation by the oxygen atom is more important than the inductive effect of the electronegative oxygen atom.

The result is a small difference between two large effects. In carbonate esters there are two oxygen atoms on the same carbonyl group. Both can exert their full inductive effect but the lone pairs have to share the same $\pi^*$ orbital. The balance is changed—the summed inductive effects win out—and carbonates are more electrophilic than ordinary esters.

Finally, esters of aromatic acids cannot enolize but are less reactive than ordinary esters because of conjugation from the aromatic ring. These compounds may still be useful, as we shall see.

**Crossed Claisen ester condensations between two different esters**

To illustrate some Claisen reactions which are easy to do, we shall now give a few examples of crossed Claisen ester condensations between ordinary esters and the compounds we have just discussed. First, a reaction between a simple linear ester and diethyl oxalate performed under equilibrating conditions with ethoxide as the base. The weak base means a lower enolate concentration.

Only the simple ester can give an enolate, and the low concentration of this enolate reacts preferentially with the more electrophilic diethyl oxalate in a typical acylation
at carbon. No self-condensation of the simple ester occurs as the oxalate is much more electrophilic.

The product has an acidic hydrogen atom so it is immediately converted into a stable enolate, which is protonated on work-up in aqueous acid to give the tricarbonyl compound back again.

Another important example leads to the preparation of diethyl phenylmalonate. This compound cannot be made by ‘alkylation’ of diethyl malonate as aryl halides do not undergo nucleophilic substitution (Chapter 22).

A crossed Claisen ester condensation between very enolizable ethyl phenylacetate and unenolizable but electrophilic diethyl carbonate works very well indeed under equilibrating conditions.

Claisen condensations between ketones and esters

Claisen condensations are acylations that always involve esters as the electrophilic partner, but enolates of other carbonyl compounds—ketones, for example—may work equally well as the enol partner. In a reaction with a carbonate, only the ketone can enolize and the reactive carbonate ester is more electrophilic than another molecule of the ketone. A good example is this reaction of cyclooctanone. It does not matter which side of the carbonyl group enolizes—they are both the same.

Unsymmetrical ketones often give a single product, even without the use of a specific enol equivalent, as reaction usually occurs on the less substituted side. This is another consequence of the final enolization being the irreversible step. In this example, both possible products may form, but only one of them can form a stable enolate. Under the equilibrating conditions of the reaction, only the enolate is stable, and all the material ends up as the isomer shown.
Unsymmetrical ketones work well even when one side is a methyl group and the other a primary alkyl chain. This example gives an impressive yield and shows that, as expected, a remote alkene does not affect the reaction.

![Chemical structure](image1)

Even when both enolates can form, the less substituted dicarbonyl enolate is preferred because it constrains fewer groups to lie in the hindered plane of the tetrasubstituted enolate double bond.

![Chemical structure](image2)

Diethyl oxalate also gives well-controlled condensations with ketones and we shall take the synthesis of a new drug as an example. One way to try to prevent heart disease is to reduce the amount of ‘bad’ lipoproteins in the blood. The drug Acifran does this, and a key step in its synthesis is the base-catalysed reaction between diethyl oxalate and a methyl ketone.

![Chemical structure](image3)

Notice that the hydroxyl group on the ketone does not interfere with the reaction. No doubt the first molecule of base removes the OH proton and the second molecule forms the enolate (the only possible enolate in either molecule). Fast condensation with highly electrophilic diethyl oxalate follows. The drug itself results from simple acid treatment of this product.

![Chemical structure](image4)

The other two unenolizable esters we mentioned on p. 643 undergo cross-condensations with ketones. Unlike formaldehyde, formate esters are well behaved—no special method is necessary to correspond with the Mannich reaction in aldol chemistry. Here is what happens with cyclohexanone.

![Chemical structure](image5)

The product aldehyde is not at risk from nucleophilic attack, as it appears to be, because it immediately enolizes in base. On work-up, the product is formed as a stable enol with an intramolecular hydrogen bond.
Summary of the preparation of keto-esters by the Claisen reaction

It is worth pausing at this moment to summarize which keto-esters can be made easily by the two methods we have discussed, namely

- Claisen ester condensation
- acylation of ketones with carbonates.

Ethyl acetoacetate (ethyl 3-oxobutyrate) can of course be made by the self-condensation of ethyl acetate. This ester is cheap to buy but homologues, available by the self-condensation of other esters, are usually made in the laboratory. Which esterifying group is used (OEt, OMe, etc.) is not important as long as the same alkoxide is used as the base.

Compounds with only one of the R substituents in this structure are also easy to make. If the R substituent is at C2, it is best introduced by alkylation of the unsubstituted ester (see Chapter 25, p. 595).

Attempts to make this compound by the Claisen ester condensation would require one of the approaches in the diagram below. The dashed curly arrows suggest the general direction of the condensation required and the coloured bonds are those that would be formed if the reaction worked.

But neither reaction will work! The black route requires a controlled condensation between two different enolizable esters—a recipe for a mixture of products. The simple alkylation route above removes the need for control. The green route requires a condensation between an unsymmetrical ketone and diethyl carbonate. This condensation will work all right, but not to give this product. As you saw on p. 645, Claisen condensations prefer to give the less substituted dicarbonyl compound, and condensation would occur at the methyl group of the ketone on the right to give the other unsymmetrical keto-ester. So this isomer can be made easily too.

Making β keto-esters: a checklist

A combination of self-condensation, condensation with diethyl carbonate, and alkylation of keto-esters prepared by one of these means will allow us to make most β keto-esters that we are likely to want. Look out for all the usual problems of enolate chemistry and if any of these is a problem, try an alkylation route.

- Will the right carbonyl compound enolize?
- If it is a ketone, will it enolize in the right way?
- Will the enolate react with the right acylation partner?
Controlling acylation with specific enol equivalents

In the first part of this chapter we saw how specific enol equivalents could be used to control aldol reactions. We now need to look at the same type of control in the acylation of enolates and extend our discussion to specific enolates of carboxylic acid derivatives.

We established in Chapter 10 a hierarchy for the electrophilic reactivity of acid derivatives that should by now be very familiar to you—acyl chlorides at the top to amides at the bottom. But what about the reactivity of these same derivatives towards enolization at the position, that is, the CH₂ group between R and the carbonyl group in the various structures? You might by now be able to work this out. The principle is based on the mechanisms for the two processes.

See how similar these two mechanisms are. In particular, they are the same at the carbonyl group itself. Electrons move into the C=O π* orbital: the C=O bond becomes a C–O single bond as a negative charge develops on the oxygen atom. It should come as no surprise that the order of reactivity for enolization is the same as the order of reactivity towards nucleophilic attack. Aldehydes are more electrophilic and more easily enolized than ketones and ketones are more electrophilic and more easily enolized than esters, although exact comparisons between aldehydes and ketones on the one hand and acid derivatives on the other are unwise.

In Chapter 20 we established that enolates can be formed from acid chlorides, but that they decompose to ketenes. Enolates can be formed from amides with difficulty, but with primary or secondary amides one of the NH protons is likely to be removed instead. For the remainder of this section we shall look at how to make specific enol equivalents of acids, esters, aldehydes, and ketones.

Directed C-acylation of esters

The danger we have to face is that acylation is inclined to occur on oxygen rather than on carbon. In the extreme case, naked enolates (those with completely non-coordinating cations) acylate cleanly on oxygen with anhydrides or acid chlorides.

Fortunately, the reagents we have just discussed for aldol reactions (lithium and zinc enolates) are also acylated at carbon rather than on oxygen. Even with acid chlorides magnesium enolates, particularly those of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds, give reliable C-acylation. The magnesium atom bonds strongly to both oxygens, lessening their effective negative charge.
Hydrolysis and decarboxylation in the usual way lead to keto-esters or keto-acids. Of the more common metals used to form enolates, lithium is the most likely to give good C-acylation as, like magnesium, it forms a strong O–metal bond. It is possible to acylate simple lithium enolates with enolizable acid chlorides.

We shall describe two examples of this reaction being used as part of the synthesis of natural products. The first is pallescensin A, a metabolite of a sponge. It is quite a simple compound and some chemists in Milan conceived that it might be made from the chloro-diketone shown below, which might in turn be made by acylation of the enolate of a symmetrical ketone.

![Chemical structure of pallescensin A and symmetrical ketone](image)

The route chosen was to react the lithium enolate of 4-t-butyl cyclohexanone with the correct acid chloride. This reaction worked well, as did the rest of the synthesis of pallescensin A, which was first made by this route. The key step, the acylation of the lithium enolate, is interesting because alkylation could have occurred instead. The acid chloride is more electrophilic than the alkyl chloride in this reaction, although alkylation does occur in the next step. Notice how the lithium atom holds the molecules together during the reaction.

![Chemical reaction of acylation](image)

Even the dilithio derivatives of carboxylic acids, made by treating a carboxylic acid with two molecules of LDA, can give good reactions with acid chlorides. In these reactions it is not necessary to have a proton remaining between the two carbonyl groups of the product as the reaction is between a strong nucleophile and a strong electrophile and is under kinetic control.

![Chemical reaction of dilithio derivatives](image)

It is rather more common to use enamines or silyl enol ethers in acylations with acid chlorides. These are more general methods—enamines work well for aldehydes and ketones while silyl enol ethers work for all classes of carbonyl compounds. It is possible to combine two enolizable molecules quite specifically by these methods, and we shall consider them next.

**The acylation of ketones via enamines and aza-enolates**

Enamines are made from secondary amines and aldehydes or ketones via the iminium salt: you met them in Chapter 11 and have seen them in action in Chapters 20 and 25. In Chapter 25 we saw that reliable C-alkylation of enamines occurs with reactive allyl halides and
α-halocarbonyl compounds, but that unwanted N-alkylation often competes with simple alkyl halides. We also noted earlier in this chapter that they are rarely used for aldol reactions as they are not reactive enough.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NR}_2 \quad \text{RX} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Acylation with the much more reactive acid chlorides could follow the same two pathways, but with one big difference. The products of N-acylation are unstable salts and N-acylation is reversible. Acylation on carbon, on the other hand, is irreversible. For this reason enamines end up acylated reliably on carbon.

The Swiss chemist Oppolzer used just such a reaction in a synthesis of the natural product longifolene. He first prepared an acid chloride from cyclopentadiene, and the enamine from cyclopentanone and the secondary amine morpholine.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Combining the enamine with the acid chloride led to a clean acylation at carbon in 82% yield and eventually to a successful synthesis of longifolene.

Aza-enolates also react cleanly at carbon with acid chlorides. Good examples come from dimethylhydrazones of ketones. When the ketone is unsymmetrical, the aza-enolate forms on the less substituted side, even when the distinction is between primary and secondary carbons. The best of our previous regioselective acylations have distinguished only methyl from more highly substituted carbon atoms.
You will not be surprised to find that the immediate product tautomerizes to an acyl-enamine further stabilized by an internal hydrogen bond. Mild acidic work-up releases the diketone product. The overall procedure may sound complicated—Me₂NNH₂ then base then acyl chloride then acidic methanol—but it is performed in a single flask and the products, the 1,3-diketones, are formed in excellent yield—in this case 83% overall.

**Acylation of ketones under acidic conditions**

Acylations of ketone enols with anhydrides are catalysed by Lewis acids such as BF₃. This process will remind you of Friedel–Crafts acylation (p. 477) but a better analogy is perhaps the aldol reaction, where metals such as lithium hold the reagents together so that reaction can occur around a six-membered ring.

![Interactive mechanism for hydrazone enolate alkylation](image)

The mechanism obviously involves attack by the enol (or ‘boron enolate’) of the ketone on the anhydride, catalysed by the Lewis acid. Probably the boron atom holds the reagents together, much as the lithium atom does in aldol reactions of lithium enolates (p. 625).

Under the conditions of the reaction, the product forms a stable boron enolate, which needs to be decomposed to the diketone with refluxing aqueous sodium acetate.

**Acylation of free carboxylic acids**

You might think that the presence of the acidic proton in a carboxylic acid would present an insuperable barrier to the formation and use of any enol derivatives. In fact, this is not a problem with either the lithium enolates or the silyl enol ethers. Addition of BuLi or LDA to a carboxylic acid immediately results in the removal of the acidic proton and the formation of the lithium salt of the carboxylic acid. If BuLi is used, the next step is addition of BuLi to the carbonyl group and the eventual formation of a ketone (see Chapter 10, p. 218). But, if LDA is used, it is possible to form the lithium enolate of the lithium derivative of the carboxylic acid.
The enolate derivative is rather strange as it has two OLi groups on the same double bond, but it can be cleanly converted to the corresponding silyl enol ether. Both lithium enolates and silyl enol ethers from acids can be used in aldol reactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Useful enolates for the aldol reaction and for acylation at carbon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enolate type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lithium enolate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silyl enol ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aza-enolate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinc enolate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This concludes our general survey of specific enolates in acylation at carbon. We are left with some reactions that are particularly easy to do.

**Intramolecular crossed Claisen ester condensations**

In the same way as with intramolecular aldol condensations, we do not have to worry so much about controlling where enolization occurs providing that one product is more stable than the others—for example, it might have a five- or a six-membered ring (rather than a four- or eight-membered one)—and we carry out the reaction under equilibrating conditions. A couple of examples should show what we mean. Although there are two sites for enolate anion formation, one would give a four-membered ring and can be ignored. Only enolization of the methyl group leads to a stable six-membered ring.

In this next example the two possible sites for enolate anion formation would both lead to stable five-membered rings. The product forms a stable enolate under the reaction conditions but the alternative cannot form a stable enolate as there is no hydrogen atom between the two carbonyl groups.
In the next example, there are three possible sites for enolate anion formation, but only one product is formed and in good yield too. If we consider all three possible enolate anions, the choice is more easily made. First, the reaction that does happen. An enolate anion is formed from the ketone at the green site and acylation at carbon follows. The product is a fused rather than a bridged bicyclic structure and can easily form a stable enolate anion.

We could form the enolate anion on the other side of the ketone at the orange site and attack the ester in the same way. The product would be a bridged bicyclic diketone, and is not formed (see above). The third possible enolate site (brown) could give an aldol reaction but the product would again be a bridged bicyclic compound and is not formed.

**Symmetry in intramolecular crossed Claisen condensations**

If cyclization is to be followed by decarboxylation, a cunning plan can be set in motion. Addition of an amine by an $S_N$2 reaction to an $\alpha$-halo-ester followed by conjugate addition to an unsaturated ester gives a substrate for Claisen ester cyclization.

This diester is unsymmetrical so cyclization is likely to lead to two different keto-esters. Either can form a stable enolate so both are indeed formed. This sounds like very bad news since it gives a mixture of products.

The cunning plan is that the relative positions of the ketone and the nitrogen atom in the five-membered ring are the same in both products. All that differs is the position of the

### Bicyclic compounds

In Chapter 32 we will discuss the differences between fused compounds (one bond in common), spiro compounds (one atom in common), and bridged compounds (rings joined at two non-adjacent atoms). Each of these three examples has two five-membered rings.
CO$_2$Et group. When the two different products are hydrolysed and decarboxylated they give the same amino-ketone!

Just occasionally it is possible to carry out cross-condensations between two different enolizable molecules under equilibrating conditions. A notable example is the base-catalysed reaction between methyl ketones and lactones. With sodium hydride—a strong base that can convert either starting material entirely into its enolate anion—good yields of products from the attack of the enolate of the ketone on the electrophilic lactone can be obtained.

Kinetic enolate formation must occur at the methyl group of the ketone followed by acylation with the lactone. Lactones are rather more electrophilic than non-cyclic esters, but the control in this sequence is still remarkable. Notice how a stable enolate is formed by proton transfer within the first-formed product.

**Carbonyl chemistry—where next?**

This chapter concludes a survey of the reactions of carbonyl compounds which started way back in Chapter 6 with an introduction to addition reactions at the C=O group, and moved on through the following stages:

- Chapter 9: C–C bonds by adding organometallics to C=O
- Chapter 10: Substitution at C=O (carboxylic acid derivatives)
- Chapter 11: Substitution at C=O with loss of the carbonyl O (acetals, imines, etc.)
- Chapter 20: Enols and enolates
- Chapter 25: Alkylating enolates
- Chapter 26: Adding enols and enolates to C=O groups: the aldol and Claisen reactions

Carbonyl groups are the ‘hooks’ that allow chemists to put molecules together, and in the chapter after next (Chapter 28) we will discuss how we think about the science of synthesis using carbonyl reactivity. We will revisit many of the reactions you have seen not just in this next chapter, but beyond—in particular in the synthesis of heterocycles (Chapter 30) and in diastereoselective and enantioselective reactions (Chapters 33 and 41).

**Further reading**

Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book's Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Sulfur, silicon, and phosphorus in organic chemistry

Useful main group elements

Organic chemists make use of most elements in the periodic table: you have already seen organic compounds of Li, B, F, Na, Mg, Al, Si, P, S, Cl, K, Cu, Br, and I—but that’s only the start. Three of the most important of these are sulfur, phosphorus, and silicon. They all form stable organic compounds and play nearly as important roles in organic chemistry as oxygen, nitrogen, and the halogens. They are second row elements, coming immediately below carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen, to which they have some similarity. Electronegativity (shown in the margin) diminishes from right to left and downwards.

The main difference from C, N, and O is that Si, P, and S can form more bonds than the first row elements. This is because they have more orbitals: the five 3d orbitals added to the 3s and three 3p orbitals. Silicon forms tetrahedral silanes, rather like alkanes, but also forms stable five-valent anions. Phosphorus forms phosphines, rather like amines, but also tetrahedral phosphine oxides. Sulfur can have any coordination number from zero to seven, forming sulfides, like ethers, and tetrahedral sulfones with six bonds to sulfur. And it is with sulfur that we start.

Sulfur: an element of contradictions

The first organosulfur compounds in this book were the dreadful smell of the skunk and the wonderful smell of the truffle, which pigs can detect through a metre of soil and which is so
delightful that truffles cost more than their weight in gold. Sulfur compounds can be reducing or oxidizing agents, anions or cations, nucleophiles or electrophiles as well as foul- or sweet-smelling.

Useful sulfur compounds include the leprosy drug dapsone (Chapter 6), the arthritis drug feldene (Chapter 20), glutathione (Chapter 22), a scavenger of oxidizing agents that protects most living things against oxidation and contains the natural amino acid cysteine, and, of course, the famous antibiotics, the penicillins, mentioned in several chapters.

![Sulfone](image1)

---

Important reactions include sulfur as nucleophile and leaving group in the $S_N2$ reaction, sulfonation of aromatic rings (Chapter 21), and formation and reduction of thioacetals (Chapter 23). This $S_N2$ reaction uses a sulfur nucleophile and a sulfur-based leaving group.

---

**Some facts about sulfur**

Sulfur is a p-block element in group VI (or 16 if you prefer) immediately below oxygen and between phosphorus and chlorine. It is natural for us to compare sulfur with oxygen but we will, strangely, compare it with carbon as well.

Sulfur is much less electronegative than oxygen; in fact, it has the same electronegativity as carbon, so it is no good trying to use the polarization of the $C-S$ bond to explain anything! It forms reasonably strong bonds to carbon—strong enough for the compounds to be stable but weak enough for selective cleavage in the presence of the much stronger $C-O$ bonds. It also forms fairly strong bonds to itself. Elemental crystalline yellow sulfur consists of $S_8$ molecules—eight-membered rings of sulfur atoms.

Because sulfur is in the second row of the periodic table it forms many types of compounds not available to oxygen. Compounds with $S-S$ and $S-halogen$ bonds are quite stable and can be isolated, unlike the unstable and often explosive $O-halogen$ and $O-O$ compounds. Sulfur’s $d$ orbitals allow it to have oxidation states of 0, 2, 4, or 6 and coordination numbers from 0 to 7. Here is a selection of compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compounds of sulfur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oxidation state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordination number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>example</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sulfur is a very versatile element**

As well as this variety of oxidation states, sulfur shows a sometimes surprising versatility in function. Simple $S(II)$ compounds are good nucleophiles, as you would expect from the
high-energy non-bonding lone pairs (3sp$^3$ rather than the 2sp$^3$ of oxygen). A mixture of a thiol (RSH, the sulfur equivalent of an alcohol) and NaOH reacts with an alkyl halide to give the sulfide alone by nucleophilic attack of RS$^-$.

Thiols (RSH) are more acidic than alcohols so the first step is a rapid proton exchange between the thiol and hydroxide ion. The thiolate anion then carries out a very efficient $S_N2$ displacement on the alkyl bromide to give the sulfide. Notice that the thiolate anion does not attack the carbonyl group. Small basic oxyanions have high charge density and low-energy filled orbitals—they are hard nucleophiles that prefer to attack protons and carbonyl groups. Large, less basic thiolate anions have high-energy filled orbitals and are soft nucleophiles. They prefer to attack saturated carbon atoms. Thiols and thiolates are good soft nucleophiles.

- Thiols (RSH) are more acidic than alcohols (ROH) but sulfur compounds are better nucleophiles than oxygen compounds towards saturated carbon atoms ($S_N2$).

They are also good soft electrophiles. Sulfenyl chlorides (RSCl) are easily made from disulfides (RS–SR) and sulfuryl chloride (SO$_2$Cl$_2$). This S(VI) chloride has electrophilic chlorine atoms and is attacked by the nucleophilic disulfide to give two molecules of RSCl and gaseous SO$_2$. There’s a lot of sulfur chemistry here! We start with a nucleophilic attack by one sulfur atom of the disulfide. The intermediate contains a tricoordinate sulfur cation or sulfonium salt. The chloride ion now attacks the other sulfur atom of this intermediate and two molecules of RSCl result. Each atom of the original disulfide has formed an S–Cl bond. One sulfur atom was a nucleophile towards chlorine and the other an electrophile.

The product of this reaction, the sulfenyl chloride, is also a good soft electrophile towards carbon atoms, particularly towards alkenes. The reaction is very like bromination, with a three-membered cyclic sulfonium ion intermediate replacing the bromonium ion of Chapter 19. The reaction is stereospecific and the product is $anti$.

At higher oxidation states the compounds become harder electrophiles as the positive charge on sulfur increases. We have already mentioned tosyl (para-toluenesulfonyl) chloride, TsCl, as an electrophile for alkoxide ions in this chapter and in earlier chapters.

At this higher oxidation state it might seem unlikely that sulfur could also be a good nucleophile, but consider the result of reacting TsCl with zinc metal. Zinc provides two electrons and turns the compound into an anion. This anion can also be drawn in two ways.
Surprisingly, this anion is also a good soft nucleophile and attacks saturated carbon atoms through the sulfur atom. In this case attack occurs at the less substituted end of an allylic bromide to give an allylic sulfone, which we will use later on.

- Sulfur compounds may be good nucleophiles and good electrophiles.

### Sulfur-based functional groups

You have already met a number of sulfur-containing functional groups: the following list brings them together for reference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Importance</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thiol (or mercaptan)</td>
<td>RSH</td>
<td>strong smell, usually bad, but heavenly in low concentrations</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="thiol" /></td>
<td>smell and taste of coffee and grapefruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thiolate anion</td>
<td>RS−</td>
<td>good soft nucleophiles</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="thiolate" /></td>
<td>cystine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disulfide</td>
<td>RS−SR</td>
<td>cross-links proteins</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="disulfide" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfenyl chloride</td>
<td>RS−Cl</td>
<td>good soft electrophiles</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfenyl chloride" /></td>
<td>smell and taste of pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfide (or thioether)</td>
<td>R−S−R</td>
<td>molecular link</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfide" /></td>
<td>ylid used in epoxidations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfonium salt</td>
<td>R₂S⁺</td>
<td>important reagents</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfonium salt" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfoxide</td>
<td>R₂S=O or R₂S−O−</td>
<td>many reactions; can be chiral</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfoxide" /></td>
<td>DMSO (dimethyl sulfoxide)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfone</td>
<td>R₂SO₂</td>
<td>anion-stabilizing group</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfone" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfonic acid</td>
<td>RSO₂OH</td>
<td>strong acids</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfonic acid" /></td>
<td>p-toluenesulfonic acid, TsOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfonyl chloride</td>
<td>RSO₂Cl</td>
<td>turns alcohols into leaving groups</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="sulfonyl chloride" /></td>
<td>p-toluenesulfonyl chloride, TsCl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As this chapter develops you will see other examples of the versatility of sulfur. You will see that it can be removed from organic compounds in either an oxidative or a reductive fashion, and you will see that it can stabilize anions or cations on adjacent carbon atoms. The stabilization of anions is the first main section of the chapter.

**Sulfur-stabilized anions**

The stabilization of anions by sulfides, sulfoxides, and sulfones is a theme that runs right through this chapter. Sulfur has six electrons in its outer shell. As a sulfide, therefore, the sulfur atom carries two lone pairs. In a sulfoxide, one of these lone pairs is used in a bond to an oxygen atom—sulfoxides can be represented in at least two alternative but equivalent ways. The sulfur atom in a sulfone uses both of its lone pairs in bonding to oxygen, and is usually represented with two $S=O$ double bonds.

![Methyl phenyl sulfide](image1)

![Methyl phenyl sulfoxide](image2)

![Methyl phenyl sulfone](image3)

**Chiral sulfoxides**

Sulfoxides have the potential for chirality—the tetrahedral sulfur atom is surrounded by four different groups (here Ph, Me, O, and the lone pair) and (unlike, say, the tetrahedral nitrogen atom of an amide) has a stable tetrahedral configuration. We will revisit chirality in sulfoxides later in the chapter.

![Enantiomers of a chiral sulfoxide](image4)

Treatment of any of these compounds with strong base produces an anion on what was the methyl group. How does the sulfur stabilize the anion? This question has been the subject of many debates and we have not got space to go into the details of all of them. There are at least two factors involved, and the first is evident from this chart of $pK_a$ values for protons next to sulfone, sulfoxide, and sulfide functional groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional Group</th>
<th>$pK_a$ Difference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfone</td>
<td>Increase in acidity by ca. 19 $pK_a$ units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfoxide</td>
<td>Increase in acidity by 4 $pK_a$ units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfide</td>
<td>Acidifies adjacent protons by ca. 17 $pK_a$ units</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clearly, the oxygen atoms are important—the best anion stabilizer is the sulfone, followed by the sulfoxide and then the sulfide. You could compare deprotonation of a sulfone with deprotonation of a ketone to give an enolate (Chapter 20). Enolates have a planar carbon atom and the anion is mainly on the oxygen atom. Sulfone-stabilized carbanions have two oxygen atoms and the anionic carbon atom is probably planar, with the negative charge in a $p$ orbital aligned midway between the $S=O$ bonds.

![Planar enolate](image5)

![Sulfone-stabilized anion](image6)
Yet the attached oxygen atoms cannot be the sole reason for the stability of anions next to sulfur because even the sulfide functional group also acidifies an adjacent proton quite significantly. There is some controversy over exactly why this should be, but the usual explanation is that polarization of the sulfur's 3s and 3p electrons (which are more diffuse, and therefore more polarizable, than the 2s and 2p electrons of oxygen) contributes to the stabilization.

**Anion stabilization by adjacent sulfur**

It was long thought that delocalization into sulfur's empty 3 orbitals provided the anion stabilization required, but theoretical work in the last 20 years or so suggests this may not be the case. Thus, *ab initio* calculations suggest that the C–S bond in −CH₂SH is longer than that in CH₃SH. The converse would be true if delocalization into the sulfur's d orbitals were important. Delocalization would shorten the bond because it would have partial double-bond character. More likely as an additional factor is delocalization into the σ* orbital of the C–S bond on the other side of the sulfur atom—the equatorial proton of dithiane (see p. 662 for more on dithiane) is more acidic than the axial one, and the equatorial anion is more stable because it is delocalized into the C–S bond's σ* orbital.

**A sulfoxide-stabilized anion in a synthesis**

A sulfoxide alkylation formed the key step of a synthesis of the important vitamin biotin. Biotin contains a five-membered heterocyclic sulfide fused to a second five-membered ring, and the bicyclic skeleton was easy to make from a simple symmetrical ester. The vital step is a double SN₂ reaction on primary carbon atoms.

The next step was to introduce the alkyl chain—this was best done by first oxidizing the sulfide to a sulfoxide, using sodium periodate. The sulfoxide was then deprotonated with *n*-BuLi and alkylated with an alkyl iodide containing a carboxylic acid protected as its tert-butyl ester. Reduction of the sulfoxide and hydrolysis back to the free acid gave biotin.

**Thioacetals**

Although sulfide deprotonations are possible, the protons adjacent to two sulfide sulfur atoms are rather more acidic and alkylation of thioacetals is straightforward.
In general, thioacetals can be made in a similar way to ‘normal’ (oxygen-based) acetals—by treatment of an aldehyde or a ketone with a thiol and an acid catalyst—although a Lewis acid such as BF₃ is usually needed rather than a protic acid. The most easily made, most stable toward hydrolysis, and most reactive towards alkylation are cyclic thioacetals derived from 1,3-propanedithiol, known as dithianes.

Dithianes are extremely important compounds in organic synthesis because going from carbonyl compound to thioacetal inverts the polarity at the functionalized carbon atom. Aldehydes, as you are well aware, are electrophiles at the C=O carbon atom, but dithioacetals, through deprotonation to an anion, are nucleophilic at this same atom.

**Dithianes in synthesis**

An example: chemists wanted to make this compound (a ‘metacyclophane’) because they wanted to study the independent rotation of the two benzene rings, which is hindered in such a small ring. An ideal way would be to join electrophilic benzylc bromides to nucleophilic carbonyl groups, if that were possible.

The dibromide and dialdehyde were both available—what they really wanted was a nucleophilic equivalent of the dialdehyde to react with the dibromide. So they made the dithiane. Sulfur is less basic than oxygen, so the protonated species is lower in concentration at a given pH, and the sulfur 3p lone pairs are less able to form a stable π bond to carbon than are the oxygen 2p lone pairs.

After the dithianes have been alkylated, they can be hydrolysed to give back the carbonyl groups. Alternatively, hydrogenation using Raney nickel replaces the thioacetal with a CH₂ group and gives the unsubstituted cyclophane.
Dithianes are rather more stable than acetals, and special reagents have to be used to assist their hydrolysis and reveal the hidden carbonyl group. Sulfur is less basic than oxygen, so the protonated species is lower in concentration at a given pH, and the sulfur 3p lone pairs are less able to form a stable π bond to carbon than are the oxygen 2p lone pairs.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{poor reaction...} & \quad \text{good reaction...} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{weakly basic} \\
\text{lone pairs}
\end{array} & \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{higher concentration}
\end{array} & \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{strong O=\(\pi\) bond}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

- Sulfur compounds are less basic than oxygen compounds and C=S compounds are less stable than C=O compounds.

The most obvious solution to this problem is to provide a better electrophile than the proton for sulfur. Mercury, Hg(II), is one solution. Another is oxidation of one sulfur to the sulf oxide. Protonation can now occur on the more basic oxygen atom of the sulfoxide and the concentration of the vital intermediate is increased.

A third solution is methylation, since sulfur is a better nucleophile than oxygen for saturated carbon. The sulfonium salt can decompose in the same way to give the free aldehyde. There are many more methods for hydrolysing dithioacetals and their multiplicity should make you suspicious that none is very good.

Hydrogenation of C–S bonds in both sulfi des and thioacetals is often achieved with Raney nickel, the finely divided form of nickel made by dissolving away the aluminium from a powdered nickel–aluminium alloy using alkali. It can be used either as a catalyst for hydrogenation with gaseous hydrogen or as a reagent since it often contains sufficient adsorbed hydrogen (from the reaction of aluminium with alkali) to effect reductions alone. Thioacetalization followed by Raney nickel reduction is a useful way of replacing a C=O group with CH₂.

**Dithianes are ‘acyl anion equivalents’**

A sequence in which a carbonyl group has been masked as a sulfur derivative, alkylated with an electrophile, and then revealed again is a nucleophilic acylation. These nucleophilic equivalents of carbonyl compounds are known as acyl anion equivalents. In the retrosynthetic terms of Chapter 28 they are d¹ reagents corresponding to the acyl anion synthon.

**Anions from sulfones**

If the sulfur is at a higher oxidation level, it is much easier to make adjacent anions, and sulfones excel in this regard. The allylic sulfone we made earlier in the chapter (p. 659) can be deprotonated and added to an unsaturated ester to give a cyclopropane. Notice how much weaker a base (MeO⁻) is needed here, as the anion is stabilized by sulfone and alkene.
The first step is conjugate addition of the highly stabilized anion. The intermediate enolate then closes the three-membered ring by favourable nucleophilic attack on the allylic carbon. The leaving group is the sulfinate anion and the stereochemistry comes from the most favourable arrangement in the transition state for this ring closure. The product is the methyl ester of the important chrysanthemic acid found in the natural pyrethrum insecticides.

**Sulfonium salts**

Sulfides are nucleophiles even when not deprotonated—the sulfur atom will attack alkyl halides to form sulfonium salts. This is, of course, a familiar pattern of reactivity for amines, and you have seen phosphonium salts formed in a similar way.

This reaction is an equilibrium and it may be necessary in making sulfonium salts from less reactive sulfides (sterically hindered ones, for example) to use more powerful alkylating agents with non-nucleophilic counterions, for example Me₃O⁺BF₄⁻, trimethyloxonium fluoroborate (also known as Meerwein’s salt). The sulfur atom captures a methyl group from O⁺, but the reverse does not happen and the BF₄⁻ anion is not a nucleophile. Not only is dimethyl ether a poor nucleophile, it is also a gas and is lost from the reaction mixture. The same principle is used to make sulfides from other sulfides.

The most important chemistry of sulfonium salts is based on one or both of two attributes:

1. Sulfonium salts are electrophiles: nucleophilic substitution displaces a neutral sulfide leaving group.
2. Sulfonium salts can be deprotonated to give sulfonium ylids.

**Sulfonium salts as electrophiles**

During the First World War, mustard gas was developed as a chemical weapon—it causes the skin to blister and is an intense irritant of the respiratory tract. Its reactivity towards human tissue is related to the following observation and is gruesome testimony to the powerful electrophilic properties of sulfonium ions.

This reaction goes 600 times faster than...
In both cases, intramolecular displacement of the chloride leaving group by the sulfur atom—or, as we should call it, participation by sulfur—gives a three-membered cyclic sulfonylum ion intermediate (an episulfonium or thiiranium ion). Nucleophilic attack on this electrophilic sulfonylum ion, either by water or by the structural proteins of the skin, is very fast. Of course, mustard gas can react twice in this way. You will see several more examples of reactions in which a sulfonylum ion intermediate acts as an electrophile in the next section.

**Sulfonylum ylids**

The positive charge carried by the sulfur atom means that the protons next to the sulfur atom in a sulfonylum salt are significantly more acidic than those in a sulfide, and sulfonylum salts can be deprotonated to give sulfonylum ylids.

In Chapter 11 we discussed the Wittig reaction of phosphonium ylids with carbonyl compounds. Sulfonylum ylids react with carbonyl compounds too, but in quite a different way—compare these two reactions.

Phosphonium ylids give alkenes while sulfonylum ylids give epoxides. Why should this be the case? The driving force in the Wittig reaction is formation of the strong P=O bond—that force is much less in the sulfur analogues (the P=O bond strength in Ph₃PO is 529 kJ mol⁻¹; in Ph₂SO the S=O bond strength is 367 kJ mol⁻¹). The first step is the same in both reactions: the carbanion of the ylid attacks the carbonyl group in a nucleophilic addition reaction. The intermediate in the Wittig reaction cyclizes to give a four-membered ring but this does not happen with the sulfur ylids. Instead, the intermediate decomposes by intramolecular nucleophilic substitution of Me₂S by the oxyanion.

Sulfonylum ylids are therefore useful for making epoxides from aldehydes or ketones; other ways you have met of making epoxides (Chapter 19) started with alkenes that might themselves be made with phosphorus ylids.

Some chemists working on a route to some potential β-blocker drugs needed the epoxide below, and since 4-cyclopropylbenzaldehyde was more readily available than 4-cyclopropyl styrene, they decided to use the aldehyde as the starting material and make the epoxide in one step using a sulfonylum ylid.
'Stabilized' sulfonium ylids

If there is a conjugating group on the carbanion carbon atom of the ylid, the ylid is more stable and its reactions may change. Firstly, an example where the ylid is stabilized by a cyanide. As you have just seen, the simple sulfonium ylid gives the epoxide from this α,β-unsaturated ketone. But the ‘stabilized’ ylid gives the cyclopropane instead.

In the absence of the conjugated alkene, both types of ylid give epoxides—the ester-stabilized ylid, for example, reacts with the diketone known as benzil to give an epoxide but with methyl vinyl ketone (but-3-en-2-one) to give a cyclopropane.

Why does the stabilized ylid prefer to react with the double bond? The enone has two electrophilic sites, but from Chapter 22, in which we discussed the regioselectivity of attack of nucleophiles on Michael acceptors like this, you would expect that direct 1,2-attack on the ketone is the faster reaction. This step is irreversible, and subsequent displacement of the sulfide leaving group by the alkoxide produces an epoxide. Whether a cyclopropane product would have been more stable is irrelevant to the outcome: the epoxide forms faster and is therefore the kinetic product.

With a stabilized ylid, direct addition to the carbonyl group is, in fact, probably still the faster reaction. But in this case, the starting materials are sufficiently stable that the reaction is reversible, and the sulfonium ylid is re-expelled before the epoxide has a chance to form. Meanwhile, some ylid adds to the ketone in a 1,4 (Michael or conjugate) fashion. 1,4-Addition, although slower, is energetically more favourable because the new C–C π bond is gained at the expense of a (relatively) weak C=C π bond rather than a (relatively) strong C=O π bond, and is therefore irreversible. Eventually, all the ylid ends up adding in a 1,4-fashion, generating an enolate as it does so, which cyclizes to give the cyclopropane, which is the thermodynamic product. This is another classic example of kinetic versus thermodynamic control, and you can add it to your mental list of examples.
Sulfoxonium ylids

There is another, very important, class of stabilized sulfur ylids that owe their stability not to an additional anion-stabilizing substituent but to a more anion-stabilizing sulfur group. These are the sulfoxonium ylids, made from dimethylsulfoxide by SN2 substitution with an alkyl halide. Note that the sulfur atom is the nucleophile rather than the oxygen atom in spite of the charge distribution. The high-energy sulfur lone pair is better at SN2 substitution at saturated carbon—a reaction that depends very little on charge attraction (Chapter 15).

Sulfoxonium ylids react with unsaturated carbonyl compounds in the same way as the stabilized ylids that you have met already—they form cyclopropanes rather than epoxides. The example below shows one consequence of this reactivity pattern—by changing from a sulfonium to a sulfoxonium ylid, high yields of either epoxide or cyclopropane can be formed from an unsaturated carbonyl compound (this one is the terpene known as carvone).

The Swern oxidation

This important reaction featured briefly in Chapter 23 as an important method of oxidizing alcohols to aldehydes. We said there that we would discuss this interesting reaction later and now is the time.

In the first step, DMSO reacts with oxaly chloride to give an electrophilic sulfur compound. You should not be surprised that it is the charged oxygen atom that attacks the carbonyl group rather than the soft sulfur atom. Chloride is released in this acylation and it attacks the positively charged sulfur atom, expelling a remarkable leaving group that fragments into three pieces: CO2, CO, and a chloride ion. Entropy favours this reaction.
The alcohol has been a spectator in these events so far but the chlorosulfonium ion now formed can react with it to give a new sulfonium salt. This is the sole purpose of all the reactions up to this point. This sulfonium salt is deprotonated by the base (Et$_3$N) to form an ylid. The final step completes the redox reaction: the transfer of a proton to the anionic carbon gives an aldehyde, with overall reduction of dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) to dimethylsulfide (DMS).

### Silicon and carbon compared

Silicon is immediately below carbon in the periodic table and the most obvious similarity is that both elements normally have a valency of four and both form tetrahedral compounds. There are important differences in the chemistry of carbon and silicon—silicon is less important and many books are devoted solely to carbon chemistry but relatively few to silicon chemistry. Carbon forms many stable trigonal and linear compounds containing π bonds; silicon forms few. The most important difference is the strength of the silicon–oxygen σ bond (368 kJ mol$^{-1}$) and the relative weakness of the silicon–silicon (230 kJ mol$^{-1}$) bond. Together these values account for the absence, in the oxygen-rich atmosphere of earth, of silicon analogues of the plethora of structures possible with a carbon skeleton.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Average bond energies, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Several of the values in the table give insight into the reactivity differences between carbon and silicon. Bonds to electronegative elements are generally stronger with silicon than with carbon; in particular, the silicon–fluorine bond is one of the strongest single bonds known, while bonds to electropositive elements are weaker. Silicon–hydrogen bonds are much weaker than their carbon counterparts and can be cleaved easily. Here are a few organosilicon compounds.

In this section we will mostly discuss compounds with four Si–C bonds. Three of these bonds will usually be the same so we will often have a Me$_3$Si group attached to an organic molecule. We shall discuss reactions in which something interesting happens to the organic molecule as one of the Si–C bonds reacts to give a new Si–F or Si–O bond. We shall also discuss organosilicon compounds as reagents, such as triethylsilane (Et$_3$SiH), which is a reducing agent whereas Et$_3$C–H is not.
The carbon–silicon bond is strong enough for the trialkyl silyl group to survive synthetic transformations on the rest of the molecule but weak enough for it to be cleaved specifically when we want. In particular, fluoride ion is a poor nucleophile for carbon compounds but attacks silicon very readily. Another important factor is the length of the C–Si bond (1.89 Å)—it is significantly longer than a typical C–C bond (1.54 Å). Silicon has a lower electronegativity (1.8) than carbon (2.5) and therefore C–Si bonds are polarized towards the carbon. This makes the silicon susceptible to attack by nucleophiles. The strength of the C–Si bond means that alkyl silanes are stable but the most useful chemistry arises from carbon substituents other than simple alkyl groups.

**Silicon has an affinity for electronegative atoms**

The most effective nucleophiles for silicon are the electronegative ones that will form strong bonds to silicon. Those based on oxygen or halide ions (chloride and fluoride) are pre-eminent. You saw this in the choice of reagent for the selective cleavage of silyl ethers in Chapter 23. Tetrabutylammonium fluoride is often used as this is an organic-soluble ionic fluoride and forms a silyl fluoride as the by-product. The mechanism is not a simple SN2 process and has no direct analogue in carbon chemistry. It looks like a substitution at a hindered tertiary centre, which ought to be virtually impossible. Two characteristics of silicon facilitate the process: the long silicon–carbon bonds relieve the steric interactions and the d orbitals of silicon provide a target for the nucleophile that does not have the same geometric constraints as a C–O σ* orbital.

Attack of the fluoride on the empty d orbital leads to a negatively charged pentacoordinate intermediate that breaks down with loss of the alkoxide. The discrete pentacoordinate trigonal bipyramid intermediate contrasts with the similarly shaped pentacoordinate transition state of a carbon-based SN2 reaction. It is often omitted in mechanistic schemes because it is formed slowly and decomposes quickly, and the mechanism is still referred to as ‘SN2 at silicon’.

**Nucleophilic substitution at silicon**

You may wonder why trimethylsilyl chloride does not use the SN1 mechanism familiar from the analogous carbon compound t-buty!l chloride. There is, in fact, nothing wrong with the Me₃Si⁺ cation—it can be detected in mass spectra, for example. The reason is simply that the ‘SN2’ reaction at silicon is too good for SN1 to compete.
When a Me₃Si group is removed from an organic molecule with hydroxide ion, the product is not the silanol as you might expect but the silyl ether ‘hexamethyldisiloxane’.

The other side of the coin is that the Sₙ2 reaction at carbon is not much affected by partial positive charge (δ⁺) on the carbon atom. The ‘Sₙ2’ reaction at silicon is affected by the charge on silicon. The most electrophilic silicon compounds are the silyl triflates and it is estimated that they react some $10^8$–$10^9$ times faster with oxygen nucleophiles than do silyl chlorides. Trimethylsilyl triflate is, in fact, an excellent Lewis acid and can be used to form acetals or silyl enol ethers from carbonyl compounds, and to react these two together in aldol-style reactions. In all three reactions the triflate attacks an oxygen atom. In the acetal formation, silylation occurs twice at the carbonyl oxygen atom and the final leaving group is hexamethyldisiloxane.

You should compare this with the normal acid-catalysed mechanism described in Chapter 11, where the carbonyl group is twice protonated and the leaving group is water.

**Silyl ethers are versatile protecting groups for alcohols**

Silicon-based protecting groups for alcohols are the best because they are the most versatile. They are removed by nucleophilic displacement with fluoride or oxygen nucleophiles and the rate of removal depends mostly on the steric bulk of the silyl group. The simplest is trimethylsilyl (Me₃Si or often just TMS), which is also the most easily removed as it is the least hindered. In fact, it is removed so easily by water with a trace of base or acid that special handling is required to keep this labile group in place. These protecting groups are discussed in Chapter 23.

Replacement of the one of the methyl groups with a much more sterically demanding tertiary butyl group gives the t-butyldimethylsilyl (TBDMS) group, which is stable to normal handling and survives aqueous work-up or column chromatography on silica gel. The stability to these isolation and purification conditions has made TBDMS (sometimes over-abbreviated to TBS) a very popular choice for organic synthesis. TBDMS is introduced by a substitution reaction on the corresponding silyl chloride with imidazole in DMF. Yields are usually virtually quantitative and the conditions are mild. Primary alcohols are protected in the presence of secondary alcohols. Removal relies on the strong affinity of fluoride for silicon and is usually very efficient and selective.

However, a protecting group is useful only if it can be introduced and removed in high yield without affecting the rest of the molecule and if it can survive a wide range of conditions in the course of the synthesis. The extreme steric bulk of the t-butyldiphenylsilyl (TBDPS) group makes it useful for selective protection of unhindered primary alcohols in the presence of secondary alcohols.

The most stable common silyl protecting group (trisopropylsilyl or TIPS) has three branched alkyl substituents to protect the central silicon from attack by nucleophiles, which would lead to cleavage. All three hindered silyl groups (TBDMS, TBDPS, and TIPS) have excellent stability but can still be removed with fluoride.
The Peterson elimination

There are many reactions in organic chemistry in which an Me₃Si group acts like a proton. Just as acidic protons are removed by bases, silicon is readily removed by hard nucleophiles, particularly F⁻ or RO⁻, and this can promote an elimination. An example is shown here.

This reaction is known as the Peterson elimination. It is rather like those we discussed in Chapter 17—eliminations of alcohols under acidic conditions to give alkenes. But, unlike those reactions, it is fully regioselective and so is particularly useful for making double bonds where other elimination methods might give the wrong regioisomer or mixtures of regioisomers. In this next example only one product is formed, in high yield, and it has an exocyclic double bond. Just think what would have happened without the silicon atom (ignore the one attached to the oxygen—that’s just a protecting group). This compound is, in fact, an intermediate in a synthetic route to the important anticancer compound Taxol.

The Peterson reaction is particularly useful for making terminal or exocyclic double bonds connectively because the starting material (the magnesium derivative shown above) is easily made from available Me₃SiCH₂Br.

Alkynyl silanes are used for protection and activation

Terminal alkynes have an acidic proton (pKₐ ca. 25) that can be removed by very strong bases such as organometallic reagents (Grignards, RLi, etc.). While this is often what is intended, in other circumstances it may be an unwanted side reaction that would consume an organometallic reagent or interfere with the chosen reaction. Exchange of the terminal proton of an alkyne for a trimethylsilyl group exploits the relative acidity of the proton and provides a neat solution to these problems. The SiMe₃ group protects the terminus of the alkyne during the reaction but can then be removed with fluoride or sodium hydroxide. A classic case is the removal of a proton next door to a terminal alkyne.

Additionally, acetylene itself is a useful two-carbon building block but is not very convenient to handle as it is an explosive gas. Trimethylsilylacetylene is a distillable liquid that is a convenient substitute for acetylene in reactions involving the lithium derivative as it has only one acidic proton. The synthesis of this alkynyl ketone is a classic case of deprotonation with butyl lithium provides the alkynyl ketone as an example. Deprotonation with butyl lithium provides the alkynyl ketone that reacted with the alkyl chloride in the presence of iodide as nucleophilic catalyst (see Chapter 15). Removal of the trimethylsilyl
group with potassium carbonate in methanol allowed further reaction on the other end of the alkyne.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \text{SiMe}_3 \\
\text{BuLi} \rightarrow \text{THF} & \text{SiMe}_3 \\
\text{Li} & \text{THF} \\
\text{DMPU} & \text{Bu}_4\text{Ni} \\
\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 & \text{MeOH} \\
\end{align*}
\]

78% yield

**Silicon stabilizes a positive charge on the β carbon**

In common with ordinary alkynes, silylated alkynes are nucleophilic towards electrophiles. The presence of the silicon has a dramatic effect on the regioselectivity of this reaction: attack occurs only at the atom directly bonded to the silicon. This must be because the intermediate cation is stabilized.

![Diagram of silicon stabilization](image)

The familiar hierarchy of carbocation stability—tertiary > secondary > primary—is due to the stabilization of the positive charge by donation of electron density from adjacent C–H or C–C bonds (their filled σ orbitals to be precise) that are aligned correctly with the vacant orbital. The electropositive nature of silicon makes C–Si bonds even more effective donors: a silyl group β to a positive charge (i.e., attached to the next-door carbon) stabilizes a positive charge so effectively that the course of a reaction involving cationic intermediates is often completely controlled. This is stabilization by σ donation.

![Diagram of carbocation stabilization](image)

The stabilization of the cation also weakens the C–Si bond by delocalization so that the bond is more easily broken. Attack of a nucleophile (particularly a halogen or oxygen nucleophile) on silicon removes it from the organic fragment and the net result is electrophilic substitution in which the silicon has been replaced by the electrophile.

This is useful for the synthesis of alkynyl ketones, which are difficult to make directly with conventional organometallic reagents such as alkynyl–Li or –MgBr because they add a second time to the ketone product. Alkynyl silanes react in a Friedel–Crafts manner with acid chlorides in the presence of Lewis acids, such as aluminium chloride, to give the ketones.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Bu} & \text{SiMe}_3 \\
\text{Cl} & \text{Bu} \\
\text{AlCl}_3 & \text{Bu} \\
\text{SiMe}_3 & \text{Bu} \\
\text{Cl} & \text{SiMe}_3 \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Aryl silanes undergo ipso substitution with electrophiles**

Exactly the same sort of mechanism accounts for the reactions of aryl silanes with electrophiles under Friedel–Crafts conditions. Instead of the usual rules governing ortho, meta, and para substitution using the directing effects of the substituents, there is just one rule: the silyl group is replaced by the electrophile at the same atom on the ring—this is known as **ipso**
substitution. Actually, this selectivity comes from the same principles as those used for ordinary aromatic substitution (Chapter 21): the electrophile reacts to produce the most stable cation—in this case \( \beta \) to silicon. Cleavage of the weakened C–Si bond by any nucleophile leads directly to the ipso product.

There is an alternative site of attack meta to silicon that would lead to a cation \( \beta \) to Si. But this cation is not particularly stable because the vacant p orbital is orthogonal to the C–Si bond and so cannot interact with it as the C–Si bond is still in the plane of the ring. This illustrates that it is more important to understand the origin of the effect based on molecular orbitals rather than simply to remember the result.

This reactivity of aryl silanes is used to convert stable phenyldimethylsilyl compounds into more reactive compounds such as alcohols by a reaction such as that shown in the margin. Several reagents can be used, all of which induce ipso substitution of the phenyl silane. The reaction with bromine is typical. Bromobenzene is produced together with a silyl bromide that is activated towards subsequent oxidation.

The mechanism of electrophilic desilylation is the same as that for electrophilic aromatic substitution except that the proton is replaced by the trimethylsilyl group. The silicon stabilizes the intermediate cation, and hence the transition state leading to it, to such an extent that the rate is many orders of magnitude faster. This is the first step with bromine.

The rest of the reaction sequence involves displacement of Br\(^-\) by HOO\(^-\), addition of hydroxide, rearrangement, and hydrolysis.

Vinyl silanes offer a regio- and stereoselective route to alkenes

Vinyl silanes react with electrophiles in a similarly regioselective process in which the silicon is replaced by the electrophile at the ipso carbon atom. The stereochemistry of the vinyl silane is important because this exchange usually occurs with retention of geometry as well.
This is a curious and interesting reaction that deserves explanation. Addition of the electrophile next to silicon leads to the more stable cation \( \beta \) to silicon. In the vinyl silane the C–Si bond is orthogonal to the p orbitals of the \( \pi \) bond, but as the electrophile attacks the \( \pi \) bond, say from underneath, the Me\(_3\)Si group starts to move upwards. As it rotates, the angle between the C–Si bond and the remaining p orbital decreases from 90°. As the angle decreases, the interaction between the C–Si bond and the empty p orbital of the cation increases. There is every reason for the rotation to continue in the same direction and no reason for it to reverse. The diagram shows that, in the resulting cation, the electrophile is in the position formerly occupied by the Me\(_3\)Si group, \( \text{trans} \) to Ph. Loss of the group now gives retention of stereochemistry.

The intermediate cation has only a single bond and so rotation might be expected to lead to a mixture of geometrical isomers of the product but this is not observed. The bonding interaction between the C–Si bond and the empty p orbital means that rotation is restricted. This stabilization weakens the C–Si bond and the silyl group is quickly removed before any further rotation can occur. The stabilization is effective only if the C–Si bond is correctly aligned with the vacant orbital, which means it must be in the same plane—rather like a \( \pi \) bond. Here is the result for both \( E \) and \( Z \) isomers of the vinyl silane.

It is unusual for silicon to be required in the final product of a synthetic sequence and the stereospecific removal of silicon from vinyl silanes makes them useful reagents that can be regarded as rather stable vinylc organometallic reagents that will react with powerful electrophiles, preserving the double bond location and geometry. Protodesilylation, as the process of replacing silicon with a proton is known, is one such important reaction. The halogens are also useful electrophiles while organic halides, particularly acid chlorides, in the presence of Lewis acids, form vinyl halides and unsaturated ketones of defined geometry.
**Allyl silanes as nucleophiles**

If the silyl group is moved along the carbon chain by just one atom, an allyl silane results. Allyl silanes can be produced from allyl organometallic reagents but there is often a problem over which regioisomer is produced and mixtures often result. Better methods control the position of the double bond. Two useful examples take advantage of the Wittig reaction and the Peterson elimination to construct the alkene linkage. The reagents are prepared from trimethylsilyl halides either by formation of the corresponding Grignard reagent or alkylation with a primary Wittig reagent and deprotonation to form a new ylid. The Grignard reagent, with added cerium trichloride, adds twice to esters to give the corresponding tertiary alcohol, which loses one of its Me₃Si groups in a Peterson elimination to reveal the remaining Me₃Si group as part of allyl silane.

![Chemical structure showing the formation of allyl silane from Grignard reagent and Peterson elimination](image)

The Wittig reagent is made by alkylation of the simplest ylid with the same silicon reagent. Notice that the leaving group (iodide) is on the carbon next to silicon, not on the silicon itself. Anion formation occurs next to phosphorus because Ph₃P⁺ is much more anion-stabilizing than Me₃Si. The ylid reacts with carbonyl compounds such as cyclohexanone in the usual way to produce the allyl silane with no ambiguity over which end of the allyl system is silylated.

![Chemical structure showing the formation of allyl silane from Wittig reaction](image)

The carbon–silicon bond has two important effects on the adjacent alkene. The presence of a high-energy filled σ orbital of the correct symmetry to interact with the π system produces an alkene that is more reactive with electrophiles, due to the higher-energy HOMO, and the same σ orbital stabilizes the carbocation if attack occurs at the remote end of the alkene. This lowers the transition state for electrophilic addition and makes allyl silanes much more reactive than isolated alkenes.

**Allyl silanes are more reactive than vinyl silanes but also react through β-silyl cations**

Vinyl silanes have C–Si bonds orthogonal to the p orbitals of the alkene—the C–Si bond is in the nodal plane of the π bond—so there can be no interaction between the C–Si bond and the π bond. Allyl silanes, by contrast, have C–Si bonds that can be, and normally are, parallel to the p orbitals of the π bond so that interaction is possible.

![Chemical structure showing the interaction between parallel orbitals compared to orthogonal orbitals](image)

Allyl silanes react with electrophiles with even greater regioselectivity than that of vinyl silanes. The cation β to the silyl group is again formed but there are two important differences. Most obviously, the electrophile attacks at the other end of the allylic system and there is no rotation necessary as the C–Si bond is already in a position to overlap efficiently with the intermediate cation. The process is terminated by loss of silicon in the usual way to regenerate an alkene.
Molecular orbitals demonstrate the smooth transition from the allyl silane, which has a π bond and a C–Si σ bond, to the allylic product with a new π bond and a new σ bond to the electrophile. The intermediate cation is mainly stabilized by σ donation from the C–Si bond into the vacant p orbital but it has other σ-donating groups (C–H, C–C, and C–E) that also help. The overall process is electrophilic substitution with allylic rearrangement. Both the site of attachment of the electrophile and the position of the new double bond are dictated by the silicon.

Allyl silanes are rather like silyl enol ethers: they react with electrophiles, provided they are activated, for example by a Lewis acid. Titanium tetrachloride is widely used but other successful Lewis acids include boron trifluoride, aluminium chloride, and trimethylsilyl triflate. Electrophiles include acylium ions produced from acid chlorides, carbocations from tertiary halides or secondary benzylic halides, activated enones, and epoxides all in the presence of Lewis acid. In each case the new bond is highlighted in black.

**β-Silyl cations are important intermediates**

Vinyl and aryl silanes react with electrophiles at the same (ipso or α) atom occupied by silicon. Allyl silanes react at the end of the alkene furthest from silicon (γ). In both cases a β-silyl cation is an intermediate.

**Lewis acids promote couplings via oxonium ions**

Allyl silanes will also attack carbonyl compounds when they are activated by coordination of the carbonyl oxygen atom to a Lewis acid. The Lewis acid, usually a metal halide such as TiCl₄ or ZnCl₂, activates the carbonyl compound by forming an oxonium ion with a metal–oxygen bond. The allyl silane attacks in the usual way and the β-silyl cation is desilylated with the halide ion. Hydrolysis of the metal alkoxide gives a homoallylic alcohol.
A closely related reactive oxonium ion can be prepared by Lewis acid catalysed breakdown of the corresponding acetal. Alternatively, especially if the acetal is at least partly a silyl acetal, the same oxonium ion can be produced \textit{in situ} using yet more silicon in the form of TMSOTf as the Lewis acid catalyst. All these intermediate oxonium ions act as powerful electrophiles towards allyl silanes, producing homoallylic alcohols or ethers.

The regiocontrol that results from using an allyl silane to direct the final elimination is illustrated by this example of an intramolecular reaction on to an acetal promoted by tin tetrachloride. The same reaction can be run in the absence of silicon but the intermediate cation can then lose a range of protons to produce five different products!

---

**The selective synthesis of alkenes**

S, Si, P, and other main group elements have several important functions in organic chemistry, and one in which all of S, Si, and P each play a star role is in the synthesis of alkenes. You have met alkenes participating in reactions in a number of chapters, but our discussion of how to make alkenes has so far been quite limited. Chapter 17 was about elimination reactions, and there you met E1 and E2 reactions. You had a glimpse of the importance of phosphorus in alkene synthesis in Chapter 11, where you met the Wittig reaction, and earlier in this chapter you saw silicon participating in the Peterson elimination. We're now going to look at related reactions in more detail, addressing especially how to form alkenes with control over their geometry. First we need to establish that this is an important task and remind you of some reactions you have already met that can be used for it.

**The properties of alkenes depend on their geometry**

Geometrical isomers of alkenes are different compounds with different physical, chemical, and biological properties. They are often hard to separate by chromatography or distillation, so it is important that chemists have methods for making them as single isomers.
Different biological properties: juvenile hormone as a pest control

If insect pests can be prevented from maturing they fail to reproduce and can thus be brought under control. Juvenile insects control their development by means of a ‘juvenile hormone’, one of which is the monoepoxide of a triene:

\[
\text{cecropia juvenile hormone: activity} = 1000
\]

Synthetic analogues of this compound, such as the trienes below, are also effective at arresting insect development, providing that the double bond geometry is controlled. The \(Z,E,E\) geometrical isomer of the triene is over twice as active as the \(E,E,E\) isomer, and over 50 times as active as the \(Z,Z,E\) or \(Z,E,Z\) isomers.

activité of juvenile hormone analogues (natural hormone = 1000)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{the } Z,E,E\text{-triene; activity} & = 100 \\
\text{Z,Z,E\text{-triene; activity}} & < 2 \\
\text{Z,E,Z\text{-triene; activity}} & < 2 \\
\text{E,E,E\text{-triene}} & = 40
\end{align*}
\]

Elimination reactions and stereoselectivity

Unfortunately, most elimination reactions (Chapter 17) offer little control over the geometry of the product: treating sec-butanol in acid, for example, gives mainly the more substituted 2-butene, but as a 3:1 mixture of geometrical isomers. But there are some important exceptions. If the product has the double bond inside a ring of less than eight members, it has to be a \(cis\) double bond. Examples include the simple dehydration of a cyclopentanol and an intramolecular aldol reaction. The six-membered ring is formed before the dehydration step.

But how can we use elimination reactions to give single geometrical isomers of open-chain compounds? These reactions fall into four main classes, and we shall look at each in turn before summarizing the most important methods at the end of the chapter.

- Ways of making single geometrical isomers of double bonds
  1. Using the fact that only one geometrical isomer is possible (for example, a \(cis\) double bond in a six-membered ring).
  2. The geometrical isomers are in equilibrium and the more stable (usually \(E\)) is formed.
  3. The reaction is stereoselective and the \(E\) alkene or the \(Z\) alkene is formed as the main product by kinetic control.
  4. The reaction is stereospecific and the alkene geometry depends on the stereochemistry of the starting materials and the mechanism of the reaction.

Exploiting cyclic compounds

You may think that this method is rather too trivial to be called a method for controlling the geometry of double bonds, as it’s only of any use for making cyclic alkenes. Well, chemists are more ingenious than that! It is not necessary to have an all-carbon ring to preserve the \(cis\) geometry of a double bond. Lactones (cyclic esters) and cyclic anhydrides are useful too.
A double bond in a five- or six-membered compound must have a cis configuration and compounds like these are readily made. Dehydration of this hydroxylactone can give only a cis double bond and ring-opening with a nucleophile (alcohol, hydroxide, amine) gives an open-chain compound also with a cis double bond.

E J Corey used a similar idea to make the insect hormone we introduced on p. 678. He realized that the essential Z double bond would be easy to make if he were to start with a cyclic molecule (in which only cis double bonds are possible) that could be ring-opened to the compound he needed. This is how he did it.

Birch reduction (Chapter 23, p. 542) of a simple aromatic ether generated two cis double bonds. The more reactive (because it is more electron-rich) of these reacts with ozone to give an aldehyde-ester in which the Z geometry is preserved. NaBH₄ reduces the aldehyde group to a hydroxyl group, which needs to be got rid of: a good way to do this is to tosylate and reduce with LiAlH₄, which substitutes H for OTs. The LiAlH₄ also does the job of reducing the ester to an alcohol, giving the Z-configured compound that Corey needed.

**Equilibration of alkenes**

Acyclic E alkenes are usually more stable than acyclic Z alkenes because they are less sterically hindered. Yet Z alkenes do not spontaneously convert to E alkenes because the π bond prevents free rotation: the energy required to break the π bond is about 260 kJ mol⁻¹ (rotation about a σ bond requires about 10 kJ mol⁻¹). You may therefore find the following result surprising. Dimethyl maleate is easily made by refluxing maleic anhydride in methanol with an acid catalyst. If the product is isolated straight away, a liquid boiling at 199–202 °C is obtained. This is dimethyl maleate. However, if the product is left to stand, crystals of dimethyl fumarate (the E isomer of dimethyl maleate) form. How has the geometry been inverted so easily?

A clue is that the process is accelerated enormously by a trace of amine. Michael addition of this amine, or of methanol, or any other nucleophile, provides a chemical mechanism by which the π bond can be broken. There is free rotation in the intermediate, and re-elimination of the nucleophile can give either E or Z alkene. The greater stability and crystallinity of the E alkene means that it dominates the equilibrium. Michael addition therefore provides a mechanism for the equilibration of Z alkenes to E alkenes.

**Double bonds in rings**

The smallest stable ring that can contain a trans double bond is cyclooctene—trans-cycloheptene can exist but is very unstable.

**Nomenclature alert**

Beware! The terms cis and trans do not always translate directly into Z and E. Consider the preparation of an enamine from cyclohexanone, which forms a double bond that you’d probably call cis (it’s in a ring). But applying the rigorous rules laid down for E/Z nomenclature (p. 405), it is E. The same is true for the green double bond in the Birch reduction product above. As with the useful terms syn and anti (Chapter 14), there are no rigid rules for deciding whether a double bond is cis or trans. So there must be a diagram to make things clear if you use cis and trans.
Similar mechanisms account for the double bond geometry obtained in aldol reactions followed by dehydration to give α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Any Z alkene that is formed is equilibrated to E by reversible Michael addition during the reaction. The two examples which follow illustrate how effective this method is.

**Equilibration of non-conjugated alkenes**

Iodine will add reversibly not only to Michael acceptors but also to most other alkenes. It can therefore be a useful reagent for equilibrating double bond geometrical isomers.

Some Japanese chemists needed the E,E diene below for a synthesis of a neurotoxic compound that they had isolated from poison dart frogs. Unfortunately, their synthesis (which used a Wittig reaction—described in detail later in this chapter) gave only 4:1 E selectivity at one of the double bonds. To produce pure E,E diene, they equilibrated the E,Z diene to E,E by treating with iodine and irradiating with a sun-lamp.

**Using light to make Z alkenes from E alkenes**

Light allows the interconversion of the two isomers of an alkene by promoting a π electron into the π* orbital and transiently breaking the π bond, but the way light favours formation of the Z isomer is rather subtle. One difference between cis and trans alkenes is that the trans alkenes usually absorb light better than the cis alkenes—they absorb light of a higher wavelength and they absorb more of it, particularly when conjugated with carbonyl groups. Steric hindrance forces the cis alkene to twist about the σ bond joining the alkene to the carbonyl group and conjugation is then less efficient. In a mixture of E and Z alkenes, the E alkene is more prone to isomerization by light, so the Z isomer builds up in the mixture.

Here is an example. Aldol condensation of cyclohexanone and benzaldehyde gives pure E alkene for the reasons explained above. Irradiation with longer-wavelength UV light equilibrates this to the Z alkene in excellent yield.
It is not possible for the benzene ring and the enone system to be planar in the Z-enone and so they twist, making conjugation not as good as in the E-enone. Longer-wavelength light is absorbed only by the E-enone, which is continually equilibrated back to the excited state. Eventually, all the E-enone is converted to the Z-enone, which is not as efficiently excited by the light. The final mixture of E- and Z-enone is known as a 'photostationary state'.

The chemistry of vision

The human eye uses a cis alkene, 11-cis-retinal, to detect light, and a cis–trans isomerism reaction is at the heart of the chemical mechanism by which we see. The light-sensitive pigment in the cells of the retina is an imine, formed by reaction of 11-cis-retinal with a lysine residue of a protein, opsin. Absorption of light by the opsin–retinal compound, known as rhodopsin, promotes one of the electrons in the conjugated polyene system to an antibonding orbital. Free rotation in this excited state allows the cis double bond to isomerize to trans, and the conformational changes in the protein molecule that result trigger a cascade of reactions that ultimately leads to a nerve signal being sent to the brain.

E and Z alkenes can be made by stereoselective addition to alkynes

Alkenes can be made from alkynes by reduction or addition, and under the right conditions either the Z double bond or the E double bond can be formed stereoselectively.

Z-selective reduction of alkynes using Lindlar’s catalyst

The Z alkene below was needed pure for studies on the mechanism of a rearrangement reaction. In Chapter 23 you met catalytic hydrogenation as a means of reducing alkenes to alkanes,
and we introduced Lindlar’s catalyst (palladium and lead acetate on a support of calcium carbonate) as a means of controlling chemoselectivity so that alkynes could be reduced to alkenes. What we did not emphasize then was that the two hydrogen atoms add to the alkyne in a syn fashion and the alkene produced is a Z alkene. The stereoselectivity arises because two hydrogen atoms, bound to the catalyst, are delivered simultaneously to the alkyne.

The compound below is the pheromone of a destructive beetle. The synthetic pheromone can be used to trap the beetles, but it is active only as the Z isomer. Reduction of the alkyne with the Lindlar catalyst gives pure Z isomer, while the alternative way of making Z alkenes, the Wittig reaction, gives significant amounts of the E isomer.

**E-selective reduction of alkynes using sodium in liquid ammonia**

The best way of ensuring anti addition of hydrogen across any triple bond is to treat the alkyne with sodium in liquid ammonia.

The sodium donates an electron to the LUMO of the triple bond (one of the two orthogonal π* orbitals). The resulting radical anion can pick up a proton from the ammonia solution to give a vinyl radical. A second electron, supplied again by the sodium, gives an anion that can adopt the more stable trans geometry. A final proton quench by a second molecule of ammonia or by an added proton source (t-butanol is often used, as in the Birch reduction) forms the E alkene.

An alternative, and more widely used, method is to reduce alkynes with LiAlH₄ or the related reducing agent known as RedAl. This reaction works only if there is a hydroxy or an ether functional group near to the alkyne because it relies on delivery of the reducing agent to the triple bond through complexation to this oxygen atom.

Making alkenes by addition to alkynes offers two distinct advantages. Firstly, the starting materials can often be made straightforwardly by alkylation of alkynyl anions. Secondly, the same alkyne can be used to make either E or Z alkene. In some early work on sphingosine (a constituent of cell membranes), some Swiss chemists needed to make both E and Z
isomers of the naturally occurring compound. This was an easy task once they had made the alkyne.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & & \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{R} & & \text{LiAlH}_4 \\
& & \text{sphingosine, 85\% yield, >98\% E}
\end{align*}
\]

Earlier in this chapter you were introduced to the significance of geometrically pure vinyl silanes, which can act as precursors to other alkenes. Controlled reduction of alkynyl silanes gives the corresponding vinyl silanes, with the method of reduction dictating the stereochemistry. Lindlar hydrogenation adds a molecule of hydrogen across the alkyne in a \textit{cis} fashion to produce the \textit{Z}-vinyl silane. RedAl reduction of a propargylic alcohol leads instead to the \textit{E} isomer.

The mechanism of the aluminium hydride reductions with LiAlH\(_4\) or RedAl involve a \textit{trans} hydroalumination helped by coordination of Al to the triple bond and external nucleophilic attack. The regioselectivity of the hydroalumination is again determined by silicon: the electrophilic Al attacks the alkyne on the carbon bearing the silyl group (the \textit{ipso} carbon).

\section*{Addition of nucleophiles to alkenes}

This rarer, and rather surprising, approach to \textit{Z} alkenes can give excellent results, particularly in the addition of nucleophiles to butadiyne. The base-catalysed addition of methanol gives an excellent yield of \textit{Z}-1-methoxybut-1-en-3-yne. This reaction is so easy to do that the product is available commercially. Notice that methanol adds once only: you would not expect nucleophiles to add to a simple alkyne and it is the conjugation that makes addition possible.

\[\text{Me}_3\text{Si} \equiv \text{OH} \quad 1. \text{Red Al}^\oplus \quad \text{ligand exchange} \quad \text{Me}_3\text{Si} \equiv \text{OH} \quad 2. \text{H}_2\text{O}^+ \]

Methoxide ion adds to one of the alkyynes to give a conjugated anion. The anion is linear with the negative charge delocalized into the second alkyne. The charge is therefore in a \textit{p} orbital in the plane of the molecule, with a second conjugated \textit{\pi} system oriented at right angles to the plane of the molecule.
When the anion reacts with a molecule of methanol, protonation occurs on the lobe of the p orbital away from the MeO group and the Z alkene is formed.

**Predominantly E alkenes can be formed by stereoselective elimination reactions**

In Chapter 17 you saw that E1 elimination reactions usually give mainly E alkenes (there's an example earlier in this chapter) because the transition state leading to an E double bond is lower in energy than that leading to a Z double bond. In other words, E1 reactions are stereoselective, and their stereoselectivity is **kinetically controlled**. E2 reactions are similar if there is a choice of protons that can be removed: the E alkene is preferred, but a mixture is still formed. Again, this is kinetic control.

Both stereo- and regioselectivity are usually better in E1cB reactions, such as the opening of this unsaturated lactone in base. The double bond inside the ring remains Z but the new one, formed as the ring opens, prefers the E geometry. The transition state for the elimination step already looks like the product and prefers the E geometry for simple steric reasons.

**Sulfoxide elimination—oxidation to enones**

Sulfoxides occupy a useful and interesting part of the middle ground between sulfides and sulfones—they are weakly nucleophilic, like sulfides (and can be alkylated with methyl
iodide to give sulfoxonium salts, as we saw on p. 667), but at the same time they stabilize anions almost as well as sulfones. They are easily made by controlled oxidation of sulfides and the chart below gives the main ways to get from sulfides to the two oxidized functional groups.

Sulfoxides can be used to make alkenes stereoselectively because sulfoxides next to electron-withdrawing or conjugating groups are unstable on heating, decomposing by an elimination process. The rather unstable phenylsulfenic acid (PhSOH) is eliminated and the reaction occurs partly because of the creation of conjugation and partly because PhSOH decomposes to volatile products. The starting material was made from cycloheptanone by sulfenylation of its enolate followed by oxidation.

The elimination follows a type of mechanism we call a pericyclic reaction. Once you have read Chapter 34 you should be able to identify the reaction as a reverse cycloaddition, but for now you can just think of it as an elimination in which the proton is removed by the leaving group. The alkene product in this case is in a seven-membered ring—it has to be cis.

This reaction provides a useful way of introducing a double bond next to a carbonyl group. Here it is in a synthesis of the Queen Bee Substance (the compound fed by the workers to those bee larvae destined to become queens). The compound is also a pheromone of the termite and is used to trap these destructive pests. The sulfur is introduced by reacting the enolate of the ester with the sulfur electrophile MeSSMe. Next, the protecting group is removed with acid, and the sulfide is oxidized to the sulfoxide with sodium periodate (NaIO₄) ready for elimination. Heating to 110°C then gives the Queen Bee Substance in 86% yield.

This elimination takes place more easily still when sulfur is replaced by a selenium—PhSe groups can be introduced by the same method, and oxidized to selenoxides with m-CPBA at
low temperature. The selenoxides are rarely isolated because the elimination takes place rapidly at room temperature.

The Julia olefination is regiospecific and connective

Sulfoxide eliminations are a valuable way of introducing a double bond to an already intact carbon skeleton. The alkene synthesis we are about to show you is also based on sulfur chemistry, but is connective— the alkene is formed by joining together two separate fragments. It is called the Julia olefination and is probably the most important application of the sulfone-stabilized anions you saw earlier in the chapter. Only the alkene shown is formed, with the double bond joining the two carbons that carried the PhSO2 and PhCO2 groups. This elimination is promoted by a reducing agent, traditionally sodium amalgam (a solution of sodium metal in mercury) and works for a variety of compounds providing they have a phenylsulfonyl group adjacent to a leaving group.

Common leaving groups are carboxylates such as acetate or benzoate, and the starting materials are very easily made. The sulfone-stabilized anion adds to aldehydes and a simple esterification step, which can be done in the same reaction vessel, introduces the acetate or benzoate group. This is how the starting material for the elimination above was made.

The Julia olefination is stereoselective

Here are the results of a few simple Julia olefinations. Notice that deprotonations can be with BuLi or EtMgBr and that the acylation step works with acetic anhydride or with benzoyl chloride. As you can see, they are all highly stereoselective for the $E$ isomer, and the Julia olefination is one of the most important ways of making $E$ double bonds connectively.
The reason for the $E$ selectivity lies in the mechanism of the elimination. The details are not fully clear, but the first step, under the basic conditions of the reduction, appears to be the elimination of the acetate or benzoate ester to give a vinyl sulfone.

The stereochemistry of the vinyl sulfone does not matter because it is immediately reduced by an electron from sodium to give a vinyl radical. Much as you saw above, in the Birch reduction of alkynes, the vinyl radical collects a second electron and becomes a vinyl anion, which chooses to adopt the more stable $E$ configuration before being protonated to give the predominantly $E$ alkene.

We know that there must be an anion intermediate because the elimination is not stereospecific—in other words, whichever diastereoisomer of the starting material you use (all of the examples in this section have been mixtures of diastereoisomers) you always get the $E$ alkene product.

**The one-step Julia olefination**

The Julia reaction is remarkably versatile but it does need three steps to make the alkene: addition, acylation, and reduction. A more recent version of the reaction cuts this down to one by using not a phenylsulfone but instead a sulfone carrying an electron-deficient heterocycle, for example a tetrazole. The anion of the sulfone is made with a strong base (here potassium hexamethyldisilazide, KHMDS—see p. 635) and is added to an aldehyde to give an alkene directly.

The elimination works because after the addition to the aldehyde, the alkoxide that is formed makes itself into a leaving group by grabbing the heterocyclic ring from the sulfur.

The final elimination is driven by loss of $\text{SO}_2$, and typically gives an $E$ alkene, although by choosing carefully the base and solvent the selectivity can be tuned to give predominantly $Z$. 
Stereospecific eliminations can give pure single isomers of alkenes

You met a stereospecific elimination in Chapter 17. The requirement for the H and the Br to be anti-periplanar in the E2 transition state meant that the two diastereoisomers of this alkyl bromide eliminated to alkenes with different double bond geometries (p. 396).

However, reactions like this are of limited use—their success relies on the base’s lack of choice of protons to attack. Logic dictates that only trisubstituted double bonds can be made stereospecifically in this way: the reaction must not have a choice of hydrogen atoms or an E alkene will result stereoselectively (as in the example on p. 684). The answer is, of course, to move away from eliminations involving H, and we can do this by returning to the Peterson elimination, which you met on p. 671.

The Peterson reaction is stereospecific

The stereospecificity of this elimination involving silicon arises because it is an E2 elimination proceeding via an anti-periplanar transition state. In principle, it can therefore be used to make single geometrical isomers of alkenes, the geometry depending on the relative stereochemistry of the starting material. However, this use of the Peterson reaction is limited by difficulties in making diastereoisomerically pure starting materials.

There is another, complementary, version of the Peterson reaction that uses base to promote the elimination. The starting materials are the same as for the acid-promoted Peterson reaction. When base (such as sodium hydride or potassium hydride) is added, the hydroxyl group is deprotonated and the oxyanion attacks the silicon atom intramolecularly. Elimination takes

Interactive mechanism for stereospecific E2

Interactive mechanism for stereospecific Peterson elimination
place this time via a \textit{syn-periplanar} transition state—it has to because the oxygen and the silicon are now bonded together, and it is the strength of this bond that drives the elimination forward.

The two versions of the Peterson reaction give opposite geometrical isomers from the same diastereoisomer of the starting material, so from any single diastereoisomer of hydroxy silane we can make either geometrical isomer of alkene product by choosing whether to use acid or base. The problem is still making those single diastereoisomers!

In Chapter 17 you saw that anti-periplanar transition states are usually preferred for elimination reactions because this alignment provides the best opportunity for good overlap between the orbitals involved. Syn-periplanar transition states can, however, also lead to elimination—and the base-promoted Peterson reaction should remind you of the Wittig reaction, which you first met in Chapter 11, with its four-membered cyclic intermediate. It is with the Wittig reaction, and a detailed discussion of its stereoselectivity, that we now finish this chapter.

\textbf{Perhaps the most important way of making alkenes—the Wittig reaction}

The Wittig reaction is another member of the class we have been talking about—it’s an elimination that does not involve loss of H. You met it in Chapter 11, where we gave a brief outline of its mechanism.

Conceptually, the Wittig reaction is like the base-promoted Peterson reaction: it is a \textit{syn} elimination, driven by the strength of an oxygen–heteroatom bond, although in this case the heteroatom is phosphorus. But the elimination step of the Wittig reaction occurs only from an intermediate and not from isolated starting materials. This intermediate is made \textit{in situ} in the reaction and decomposes spontaneously: the Wittig reaction is therefore another connective alkene-forming reaction, but its simplicity makes it more widely used than the Julia or Peterson reactions.

To understand the details of the reaction, we must start at the beginning. Phosphorus atoms, especially those that are positively charged or that carry electronegative substituents, can increase the acidity of protons adjacent to them on the carbon skeleton. Phosphonium salts (made in a manner analogous to the formation of ammonium salts from amines, in other words by reaction of an alkyl halide with a phosphine) can therefore be deprotonated by a moderately strong base to give a species known as an \textit{ylid} (sometimes spelled \textit{ylide}), carrying (formally) a positive and a negative charge on adjacent atoms. Ylids can alternatively be represented as doubly bonded species, called \textit{phosphoranes}.

Phosphorus is like sulfur in this regard: you can compare the phosphonium ylid with the sulfonyl-stabilized anions you met earlier.
Ylids can be isolated, but are usually used in reactions immediately they are formed. They are nucleophilic species that will attack the carbonyl groups of aldehydes or ketones, generating the four-membered ring oxaphosphetane intermediates. Oxaphosphetanes are unstable: they undergo elimination to give an alkene (65% yield for this particular example) with a phosphine oxide as a by-product. The phosphorus–oxygen double bond is extremely strong and it is this that drives the whole reaction forward.

\[ \text{Ph}_3\text{P} = \text{O} \rightarrow \text{alkene} 65\% \text{ yield} \]


**Stereoselectivity in the Wittig reaction depends on the ylid**

The Wittig reactions below were all used in the synthesis of natural products. You will notice that some reactions are Z selective and some are E selective. Look closer, and you see that the stereoselectivity is dependent on the nature of the substituent on the carbon atom of the ylid.

We can divide ylids into two types: those with conjugating or anion-stabilizing substituents adjacent to the negative charge (such as carbonyl groups) and those without. We call the first sort stabilized ylids because the negative charge is stabilized not only by the phosphorus atom but by the adjacent functional group—we can draw an alternative enolate-type structure to represent this extra stabilization. The rest we call unstabilized ylids.

---

In Chapter 11, to help you understand the reaction, we showed the addition to the carbonyl group to make the four-membered ring taking place in two steps. These steps are probably in fact concerted (they both happen at the same time), and a better representation of the reaction is the single-step formation of the four-membered ring shown here.

[Diagram showing the concerted reaction]

---

**The stereochemistry of the Wittig reaction**

The general rule is:

- with stabilized ylids the Wittig reaction is E selective
- with unstabilized ylids the Wittig reaction is Z selective.

**The Z-selective Wittig reaction**

The Z selectivity observed with simple alkyl R groups is nicely complementary to the E selectivity observed in the Julia olefination. This complementarity was exploited by some chemists who wanted to make isomers of capsaicin (the compound that gives chilli peppers...
their ‘hotness’) to follow up suggestions that capsaicin might be carcinogenic. The key intermediates in the synthesis of the $E$ and $Z$ isomers of capsaicin were the $E$ and $Z$ unsaturated esters shown below. By using a Wittig reaction with an unstabilized ylid it was possible to make the $Z$ isomer selectively, whilst the Julia olefination gave the $E$ isomer.

How can the $Z$ selectivity in Wittig reactions of unstabilized ylids be explained? We have a more complex situation in this reaction than we had for the other eliminations we considered because we have two separate processes to consider: formation of the oxaphosphetane and decomposition of the oxaphosphetane to the alkene. The elimination step is the easier one to explain—it is stereospecific, with the oxygen and phosphorus departing in a syn-periplanar transition state. Addition of the ylid to the aldehyde can, in principle, produce two diastereoisomers of the intermediate oxaphosphetane. Provided that this step is irreversible, then the stereospecificity of the elimination step means that the ratio of the final alkene geometrical isomers will reflect the stereoselectivity of this addition step.

When R is not conjugating or anion-stabilizing, the syn diastereoisomer of the oxaphosphetane is formed preferentially, and the predominantly $Z$ alkene that results reflects this. The $Z$-selective Wittig reaction therefore consists of a stereoselective first step, to form the syn oxaphosphetane, followed by a stereospecific elimination from this intermediate to give a $Z$ alkene.

The $E$-selective Wittig reaction

Stabilized ylids, that is ylids whose anion is stabilized by further conjugation, usually with a carbonyl group, give $E$ alkenes on reaction with aldehydes.
These stabilized ylids really are stable—this one, for example, can be recrystallized from water and the ylid is more stable than the phosphonium salt from which it might be made. This stability means though that they are not very reactive, and often it is better not to use the phosphonium salt but a phosphonate instead.

Phosphonate esters can be deprotonated with sodium hydride or alkoxide anions to give enolate-type anions that react well with aldehydes or ketones to give $E$ alkenes. Alkene-forming reactions with phosphonates are called Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons (or Horner–Emmons, Wadsworth–Emmons, or even Horner–Wittig) reactions. This example is a reaction that was used by some Japanese chemists in the synthesis of polyzonimine, a natural insect repellent produced by millipedes.

The synthesis below offers a nice illustration of the contrasting selectivity of the two classes of Wittig reagent. The female silkworm moth attracts mates by producing a pheromone known as bombykol. Bombykol is an $E,Z$-diene, and in this synthesis two successive Wittig reactions use first a stabilized and second an unstabilized ylid to control the stereochemistry of the product.

So why is there a change to $E$ stereoselectivity when the ylid is stabilized? Again, the details are still unclear, and there are several possible explanations. Here we give one which is gaining ground, supported by recent experimental and computational evidence. It seems that, as with unstabilized ylids, the stereochemistry of the alkene product is determined by the stereochemistry of the intermediate oxaphosphetane, which with stabilized ylids must be anti.

It used to be thought that the formation of the anti oxaphosphetane was under thermodynamic control, but it now seems likely that it too is formed stereoselectively under kinetic control. The difference from the alkyl-substituted unstabilized ylids lies in the repulsion experienced between the polarized $\text{C}=\text{O}$ bond of the aldehyde and the electronegative stabilizing group shown here as an ester $\text{CO}_2\text{R}$. As the four-membered ring flattens out, the $\text{CO}_2\text{R}$ and Ph groups end up on opposite sides of the four-membered ring.
To conclude

In this chapter we have dealt for the first time with the problem of producing compounds as single stereoisomers—the stereoisomers concerned were geometrical isomers of alkenes. In future chapters we shall look in more detail at making stereoisomers, but we shall move out of two dimensions into three and consider reactions that exhibit diastereoselectivity and enantioselectivity. Methods for controlling stereochemistry in two and in three dimensions are closely related: single diastereoisomers are often made by addition reactions of single geometrical isomers of double bonds and, as you saw with the Peterson and Wittig reactions, single diastereoisomers can lead stereospecifically to single geometrical isomers.

### Summary of methods for making alkenes stereospecifically

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To make cis (Z) alkenes</th>
<th>To make trans (E) alkenes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wittig reaction of unstabilized ylid</td>
<td>Wittig reaction of stabilized ylid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrain the alkene in a ring</td>
<td>Equilibration to the more stable isomer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syn addition of hydrogen across an alkyne</td>
<td>Simple unselective elimination reactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peterson elimination</td>
<td>Trans selective reduction of alkyne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peterson elimination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Retrosynthetic analysis

Connections

Building on
- Carbonyl chemistry ch6, ch10, & ch11
- S_N1 and S_N2 reactions ch15
- Electrophilic aromatic substitution ch21
- Chemistry of enols and enolates ch20, ch25, & ch26
- Conjugate addition ch22

Arriving at
- Synthesis and retrosynthesis
- Thinking backwards
- How to make amines and ethers
- What are synthons?
- Choosing which C–C bonds to make
- Two-group disconnections are best
- Logical planning in enolate chemistry

Looking forward to
- Diastereoselectivity ch32 & ch33
- Pericyclic reactions ch34 & ch35
- Synthesis of aromatic heterocycles ch30
- Asymmetric synthesis ch41
- Natural products ch42

Creative chemistry

Chemistry is above all a creative science. Nearly all that you have learned so far in this book has had one underlying aim: to teach you how to make molecules. This is after all what most chemists do, for whatever reason. Small amounts of many drugs can be isolated from plants or marine animals; much greater quantities are made by chemists in laboratories. A limited range of dyes can be extracted from plants; many more vivid and permanent ones are made by chemists in the laboratory. Synthetic polymers, created by chemists, have replaced more expensive and less durable alternatives like rubber. Despite the bad press it has received, the use of PVC as insulating material for electric wires has prevented numerous fires and saved many lives. Food is healthier and people live longer because well-designed and controlled pesticides allow agriculture to supply copious quantities of disease-free food to the shelves of our shops, markets, and supermarkets. Most of the improvements in the quality of life over the last 50 to 100 years can be traced to new molecules created by chemists. But, faced with the challenge of making a new compound, how do chemists go about deciding how to make it?

Synthetic planning starts with the product, which is fixed and unchangeable, and works backwards towards the starting materials. This process is called retrosynthesis, and the art of planning the synthesis of a target molecule is called retrosynthetic analysis. The aim of this chapter is to introduce you to the principles of retrosynthetic analysis: once you have read and understood it you will be well on the way to designing your own organic syntheses.

Retrosynthetic analysis: synthesis backwards

Most of the chemistry you have learned so far has concentrated on reactions (questions like ‘What do you need to add to X to get Y?’) or on products (questions like ‘What will happen if X and Y react together?’). Now we’re looking at starting materials (questions like ‘What X and Y do you need to react together to make Z?’). We’re looking at reactions in reverse, and we have a special symbol for a reverse reaction called a retrosynthetic arrow (the ‘implies’ arrow from logic). A scheme with a retrosynthetic arrow (margin) means ‘Z could be made from X plus Y’.

Online support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123 into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
Here's a very simple first example. This compound is used as an insect repellent. As it's an ester, we know that it can be made from alcohol plus acyl chloride, and we can represent this using a retrosynthetic arrow.

\[
\text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{ester} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Cl} + \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{acyl chloride}
\]

The aromatic amide amelfolide is a cardiac antiarrhythmic agent. Because we see that it is an amide, we know that it can be made quite simply from \( p \)-nitrobenzoyl chloride and 2,6-dimethylaniline—again, we can represent this using a retrosynthetic arrow. Mentally breaking a molecule into its component parts like this is known as disconnection, and it's helpful to indicate the site of the disconnection with a wiggly line as we have here.

**Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions**

The chemists who first made amelfolide chose to make it from an amine and an acyl chloride because they knew that this reaction, a standard way of making an amide, had a very good chance of success. They chose to disconnect the C–N bond because this disconnection corresponds to a reliable reaction in a way that no other possible disconnection of this molecule does.

Now that you've seen the principle of retrosynthetic analysis at work, you should be able to suggest a reasonable disconnection of the compound in the margin, known as daminozide. You probably spotted immediately that daminozide is again an amide, so the best disconnection is the C–N bond, which could take us back to acyl chloride and dimethylhydrazine. This time we've written ‘C–N amide’ above the retrosynthetic arrow as a reminder of why we've made the disconnection and we advise you to follow this practice.

Now, in fact, there is a problem with this acyl chloride—it would be unstable as it can cyclize to an anhydride. But this poses no problem for the synthesis of daminozide—we could just use the anhydride instead, since the reaction should be just as reliable. A better retrosynthesis therefore gives the anhydride and indeed this is how daminozide is made.

**Synthons are idealized reagents**

In the synthesis of daminozide an anhydride is used out of necessity rather than out of choice, but it often turns out that there are several alternative reagents all corresponding to
the same disconnection. Paracetamol, for example, is an amide that can be disconnected either to amine + acyl chloride or to amine + anhydride.

\[
\text{paracetamol} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{amine} + \text{acyl chloride or anhydride.}
\]

Which reagent is best can often only be determined by experimentation—commercially, paracetamol is made from para-aminophenol and acetic anhydride largely because the by-product, acetic acid, is easier to handle than HCl. In a retrosynthetic analysis, we don’t really want to be bothered by this sort of decision, which is best made later, so it’s useful to have a single way of representing the key attributes of alternative reagents. We can depict both anhydride and acyl chloride in this scheme as an ‘idealized reagent’—an electrophilic acetyl group MeCO⁺.

We call such idealized reagents synths. Synthons are fragments of molecules with an associated polarity (represented by a ‘+’ or ‘−’) which stand for the reagents we are going to use in the forward synthesis. They are not themselves reagents, although they may occasionally turn out to be intermediates along the reaction pathway. By disconnecting bonds to synthons rather than to actual reagents we can indicate the polarity of the bond-forming reaction we are going to use without having to specify details of the reagents.

We can apply these ideas to the synthesis of the herbicide 2,4-D (2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid). The most reasonable disconnection of an ether is the C–O bond because we know that ethers can be made from alkyl halides by substitution with an alkoxide anion. We don’t at this stage need to decide exactly which alkyl halide or alkoxide to use, so we just write the synthons.

Once the retrosynthetic analysis is done, we can go back and use our knowledge of chemistry to think of reagents corresponding to these synthons. Here, for example, we should certainly choose the anion of the phenol as the nucleophile and some functionalized acetic acid molecule with a leaving group in the α position.

We can then write out a suggested synthesis in full from start to finish. It isn’t reasonable to try to predict exact conditions for a reaction: to do that you would need to conduct a thorough search of the chemical literature and do some experiments. However, all of the syntheses in this chapter are real examples and we shall often give full details of conditions to help you become familiar with them.
Choosing a disconnection

The hardest task in designing a retrosynthetic analysis is spotting where to make the disconnections. We shall offer some guidelines to help you, but the best way to learn is through experience and practice. The overall aim of retrosynthetic analysis is to get back to starting materials that are available from chemical suppliers, and to do this as efficiently as possible.

**Guideline 1**

Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions.

We have already mentioned that disconnections must correspond to known reliable reactions and it’s the most important thing to bear in mind when working out a retrosynthesis. When we disconnected the ether 2,4-D we chose to disconnect next to the oxygen atom because we know about the synthesis of ethers. We chose not to disconnect on the aryl side of the oxygen atom because we know of no reliable reaction corresponding to nucleophilic attack of an alcohol on an unactivated aromatic ring.

![Bad choice of disconnection: no reliable equivalent reaction](image)

**Guideline 2**

For compounds consisting of two parts joined by a heteroatom, disconnect next to the heteroatom.

In all the retrosynthetic analyses you’ve seen so far there is a heteroatom (N or O) joining the rest of the molecule together, and in each case we made the disconnection next to that N or O. This guideline works for esters, amides, ethers, amines, acetals, sulfides, and so on because these compounds are often made by a substitution reaction. Chlorbenside is used to kill ticks and mites. Using Guideline 2 we can suggest a disconnection next to the sulfur atom; using Guideline 1 we know that we must disconnect on the alkyl and not on the aryl side.

![Chlorbenside: retrosynthetic analysis](image)

We can now suggest reagents corresponding to the synthons and propose a synthetic scheme.
The next example is the ethyl ester of, and precursor to, cetaben, a drug that can be used to lower blood lipid levels. It is an amine, so we disconnect next to the nitrogen atom.

The alkyl bromide is available but we shall need to make the aromatic amino-ester and the best disconnection for an ester is the C–O bond between the carbonyl group and the esterifying group.

We have now designed a two-step synthesis of our target molecule, and this is how it is carried out.

Multiple step syntheses: avoid chemoselectivity problems

The next compound was an intermediate in the synthesis of the potential anti-obesity drug ICI-D7114. You can spot that, with two ethers and an amine functional group, it requires several disconnections to take it back to simple compounds. The question is, which do we do first? One way to solve the problem is to write down all the possibilities and see which looks best. Here there are four reasonable disconnections: one at each of the ether groups (a and b) or on either side of the amine (c and d).
Both \(a\) and \(b\) pose problems of chemoselectivity as it would be hard to alkylate the phenol in the presence of the basic nitrogen atom. Between \(c\) and \(d\), \(c\) appears to be the better choice because the next disconnection after \(d\) will have to be an alkylation of O in the presence of an NH\(_2\) group. To avoid chemoselectivity problems like this, we want to try to introduce reactive groups late in the synthesis. In terms of retrosynthetic analysis, then, we can formulate another guideline.

- **Guideline 3**

  Consider alternative disconnections and choose routes that avoid chemoselectivity problems—often this means disconnecting reactive groups first.

This guideline helps us in the next retrosynthetic step for the ICI-D7114 intermediate. Disconnection \(c\) gave us a compound with two ethers that might be disconnected further by disconnection \(e\) or \(f\).

Disconnection \(e\) requires alkylation of a compound that is itself an alkylation agent. Disconnection \(f\) is much more satisfactory and leads to a compound that is easily disconnected to 4-hydroxyphenol and 1,2-dibromoethane. Using Guideline 3, we can say that it’s best to disconnect the bromoethyl group \(f\) before the benzyl group \(g\) because the bromoethyl group is more reactive and more likely to cause problems of chemoselectivity.

**ICI-D7114 intermediate: synthesis**

Functional group interconversion

The antihypertensive drug ofornine contains an amide and an amine functional group, and we need to decide which to disconnect first. If we disconnect the secondary amine first \(b\), we will have chemoselectivity problems constructing the amide in the presence of the resulting NH\(_2\) group.

Yet disconnection \(a\), on the face of it, seems to pose an even greater problem because we now have to construct an amine in the presence of an acyl chloride! However, we shall want to make the acyl chloride from the carboxylic acid, which can then easily be disconnected to 2-aminobenzoic acid (anthranilic acid) and 4-chloropyridine.
The retrosynthetic transformation of an acyl chloride to a carboxylic acid is not really a disconnection because nothing is being disconnected. We call it instead a functional group interconversion, or FGI, as written above the retrosynthetic arrow. Functional group interconversions often aid disconnections because the sort of reactive functional groups (acyl chlorides, alkyl halides) we want in starting materials are not desirable in compounds to be disconnected because they pose chemoselectivity problems. They are also useful if the target molecule contains functional groups that are not easily disconnected.

By using an appropriate reagent or series of reagents, almost any functional group can be converted into any other. You should already have a fair grasp of reasonable functional group interconversions. They mostly fall into the categories of oxidations, reductions, and substitutions (Chapters 10, 11, 15, and 23).

**Amine synthesis using functional group interconversions**

The synthesis of amines poses a special problem because only in certain cases is the obvious disconnection successful.

The problem is that the product is usually more reactive than the starting material and there is a danger that multiple alkylation will take place.

The few successful examples you have seen so far in this chapter have been exceptions, for either steric or electronic reasons, and from now on we advise you to avoid disconnecting an amine in this way. Sometimes further alkylation is made unfavourable by the increased steric hindrance that would result: this is probably the case for the cetaben ethyl ester we made by this reaction.
If the alkylating agent contains an inductive electron-withdrawing group, the product may be less reactive than the starting material—benzylamine was only alkylated once by the alkyl bromide in the synthesis of ICI-D7114 on p. 699 because of the electron-withdrawing effect of the aryl group.

What are the alternatives? There are two main ones, and both involve functional group interconversion, with the reactive amine being converted to a less reactive derivative before disconnection. The first solution is to convert the amine to an amide and then disconnect that. The reduction of amide to amine is quite reliable, so the FGI is a reasonable one.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{amines: retrosynthetic analysis 1} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}^1\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{FGI}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2\xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{Cl}\text{R}^2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{amines: synthesis 1} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{Cl}\text{R}^2 & \xrightarrow{\text{LiAlH}_4 \text{ or BH}_3, \text{THF}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{Cl}\text{R}^2
\end{align*}
\]

The amide reduction approach was used in a synthesis of this amine, although catalytic hydrogenation was used to reduce the amide.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{retrosynthetic analysis:} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \xrightarrow{\text{FGI}} \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} \text{NH}_2 + \text{Cl}\text{R}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{synthesis:} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NH} + \text{ClRH} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{NH} + \text{ClRH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2, \text{catalyst}} \text{NH} + \text{ClRH}
\end{align*}
\]

The second alternative is to convert to an imine, which can be disconnected to amine plus carbonyl compound. This approach is known as reductive amination and we discussed it in detail in Chapter 11.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{amines: retrosynthetic analysis 2} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}^1\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{FGI}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2\xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{H}\text{R}^2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{amines: synthesis 2 (reductive amination)} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{H} + \text{O} & \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+ \text{cat.}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{H} + \text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{NaBH}_4 \text{ or NaNBH}_3 \text{ or H}_2, \text{cat.}} \text{R}^1\text{NH}_2 + \text{H} + \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

Ocftentanil is an opioid painkiller that lacks the addictive properties of morphine. Disconnection of the amide gives a secondary amine that we can convert to an imine for disconnection to a ketone plus 2-fluoroaniline.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ocfentanil: retrosynthetic analysis} &
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} \xrightarrow{\text{FGI}} \text{Ph} \xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} \text{Ph} \xrightarrow{\text{FGI}} \text{Ph} \xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} \text{Ph}
\end{align*}
\]

The synthesis is straightforward: a reductive amination followed by acylation of the only remaining NH group. The tertiary amine in the left-hand ring interferes with neither of these reactions.
There are several conceivable routes to the neuroactive drug fenfluramine—one analysis, which uses both the amide and the imine FGI methods, is shown below and this is the route used to make the drug. Notice that the oxime is used instead of the imine. N-unsubstituted imines are very unstable, and the much more stable—indeed isolable—oxime serves the same purpose. Oximes are generally reduced with LiAlH₄.

You should now be able to suggest a plausible analysis of the secondary amine terodilin. The structure is in the margin; write down a retrosynthetic analysis and suggested synthesis before looking at the actual synthesis below.

You should find yourself quite restricted in choice: the amide route clearly works only if there is a CH₂ group next to the nitrogen (this comes from the C=O reduction), so we have to use an imine.

In the synthesis of terodilin, it was not necessary to isolate the imine—reduction of imines is faster than reduction of ketones, so formation of the imine in the presence of a mild reducing agent (usually NaCNBH₃ or catalytic hydrogenation) can give the amine directly.

**Two-group disconnections are better than one-group disconnections**

This compound was needed for some research into the mechanisms of rearrangements. We can disconnect on either side of the ether oxygen atom, but (b) is much better because (a) does not correspond to a reliable reaction: it might be hard to control selective alkylation of the primary hydroxyl group in the presence of the secondary one.
You might think that the best reagent to use as the equivalent of the synthon B would be bromide C. Be more ingenious! A much better solution is to use the epoxide D. Nucleophilic attack on the less hindered terminal carbon atom of the epoxide gives us the type of compound we want, and this was how the target molecule was made.

In using the epoxide we have gone one step beyond all the disconnections we have talked about so far because we have used one functional group to help disconnect another—in other words, we noticed the alcohol adjacent to the ether we wanted to disconnect and managed to involve them both in the disconnection. Such disconnections are known as two-group disconnections, and you should always be on the look-out for opportunities of using them because they are an efficient way of getting back to simple starting materials. We call this epoxide disconnection a 1,2-disconnection because the two functional groups in the two-group disconnection are in a 1,2-relationship.

Drug molecules often have 1,2-related functional groups: 2-amino alcohols form one important class. Phenylpyridinol, for example, is a muscle relaxant. A simple two-group disconnection takes it straight back to 2-amino pyridine and styrene oxide.

Notice that we have written ‘1,2-diX’ above the arrow to show that it’s a two-group (‘diX’) disconnection—we’ve also numbered the carbon atoms in the starting material to show the 1,2-relationship. It may seem trivial in such a simple example, but it’s a useful part of the process of writing retrosynthetic analyses because it helps you to spot opportunities for making two-group disconnections.

1,2-Disconnections

The drug propranolol is a beta-blocker that reduces blood pressure and was once one of the top-selling drugs worldwide. It has two 1,2-relationships in its structure but it is best to disconnect the more reactive amine group first. The second disconnection can’t make use of an epoxide, but a simple ether disconnection takes us back to 1-naphthol and epichlorohydrin, a common starting material for this type of compound.
Moxnidazole is an antiparasitic drug, and our next target molecule is an important intermediate in its synthesis. The obvious first disconnection is of the carbamate group, revealing two 1,2-relationships. A 1,2-diX disconnection gives an epoxide that can be made by alkylation of morpholine with epichlorohydrin.

1,2-Disconnections with carbonyl compounds

Just as epoxides are useful reagents for synthon A, so α-halocarbonyl compounds are useful reagents for the carbonyl equivalent, synthon B. We can consider disconnection to this synthon to be a two-group disconnection because the α-halocarbonyl compounds are easily made by halogenation of a ketone, ester, or carboxylic acid (see Chapter 20) and the carbonyl group adjacent to the halide makes them extremely reactive electrophiles (Chapter 15).

Nafimidone is an anticonvulsant drug with an obvious two-group disconnection of this type. The α-chloroketone is simply made by chlorination, and substitution is rapid and efficient even with the weakly basic (Chapter 8) heterocycle imidazole.
The aldehyde below was needed by ICI when they were developing a thromboxane antagonist. Two-group disconnection gives a 2-halo-aldehyde that can be made from isobutyraldehyde.

ICI aldehyde: retrosynthetic analysis

![ICI aldehyde: retrosynthetic analysis](image)

The synthesis requires a normal bromination of a carbonyl compound in acid solution but the next step is a most unusual S$_2$2 reaction at a tertiary centre. This happens because of the activation by the aldehyde group (Chapter 15) and is further evidence that the functional groups must be thought of as working together in this type of synthesis.

ICI aldehyde: synthesis

![ICI aldehyde: synthesis](image)

1,3-Disconnections

In Chapter 22 you saw how α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds undergo conjugate additions—reactions like this:

![1,3-Disconnections](image)

Two-group 1,3-disconnections are therefore possible because they correspond to this forward reaction. These Michael acceptors have an electrophilic site two atoms away from the carbonyl group, and are therefore the reagents corresponding to this synthon.

![1,3-diX](image)

This type of reaction is available only when the alkene is conjugated to an electron-withdrawing group—usually carbonyl, but it can be nitro, cyanide, etc. (Chapter 22). This disconnection is available only at this oxidation level. We can do a two-group 1,3-disconnection on this sulfide, for example.

retrosynthetic analysis

![retrosynthetic analysis](image)

Remember that not all nucleophiles will successfully undergo Michael additions—you must bear this in mind when making a 1,3-disconnection of this type. Most reliable are those based on nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen (Chapter 22). Our second example is an amine structurally similar to the ‘deadly nightshade’ drug, atropine, which has the ability to calm involuntary muscle movements. There is a 1,3-relationship between the amine and ketone functional groups, and 1,3-disconnection takes us back to piperidine and an unsaturated ketone.
To summarize...

Before we leave C–X disconnections and go on to look at C–C disconnections we should just review some important points. We suggested three guidelines for choosing disconnections and now that you have met the principle of two-group disconnections, we can add a fourth:

● **Guidelines for good disconnections**

1. Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions.
2. For compounds consisting of two parts joined by a heteroatom, disconnect next to the heteroatom.
3. Consider alternative disconnections and choose routes that avoid chemoselectivity problems—often this means disconnecting reactive groups first.
4. Use two-group disconnections wherever possible.

Two-group disconnections reduce the complexity of a target molecule more efficiently than one-group disconnections, and you should always be on the look-out for them. You will meet more two-group disconnections in the next section, which deals with how to disconnect C–C bonds.

**C–C disconnections**

The disconnections we have made so far have all been of C–O, C–N, or C–S bonds, but, of course, the most important reactions in organic synthesis are those that build the carbon skeleton by forming C–C bonds. We can analyse C–C disconnections in much the same way as we’ve analysed C–X disconnections. Consider, for example, how you might make the simple compound in the margin, which is an intermediate in the synthesis of a carnation perfume.

The only functional group is the triple bond, and we shall want to use the chemistry of alkyne anions to show us where to disconnect. You know that alkylation of alkynes is a reliable reaction, so a sensible disconnection is next to the triple bond.

Alkynes are particularly valuable as synthetic intermediates because they can be reduced either to cis or to trans double bonds.
It’s often a good idea to start retrosynthetic analysis of target molecules containing isolated double bonds by considering FGI to the alkyne because C–C disconnections can then become quite easy. The cis-alkene below is an intermediate in the synthesis of a component of violet oil. FGI to the alkyne reveals two further disconnections that make use of alkyne alkylations. The reagent we need for the first of these is, of course, the epoxide as there is a 1,2-relationship between the OH group and the alkyne.

The next example is the pheromone of the pea-moth, and can be used to trap the insects. After disconnecting the ester, FGI on the trans double bond gives an alkyne.

Disconnection on either side of the alkyne leads us back to a bromo-alcohol alkylating agent. In the synthesis of the pheromone, it turned out to be best if the hydroxyl group was protected as its THP ether. You should be able to think of other alkylation-type reactions that you have met that proceed reliably and therefore provide a good basis for a disconnection—the alkylation of enolates of esters or ketones, for example (Chapter 25).

You met these reductions in Chapter 27.

There are, of course, many other ways of disconnecting double bonds: you are about to meet an important disconnection of double bonds conjugated with carbonyl groups. Chapter 27 covered the alternative methods available for making double bonds and controlling their stereochemistry.

Protecting groups were discussed in detail in Chapter 23 and THP is on p. 551.

### 1,2 C–C disconnections

This next ester was needed for a synthesis of the sedative rogletimide (see later for the full synthesis). The ethyl group is disconnected because it can be readily introduced by alkylation of the ester enolate.
We have labelled the disconnection ‘1,2 C–C’ because the new C–C bond is forming two atoms away from the carbonyl group. To spot disconnections of this sort, you need to look for alkyl groups in this 2-position.

Arildone is a drug that prevents polio and herpes simplex viruses from ‘unwrapping’ their DNA, and renders them harmless. It has just the structural characteristic you should be looking for: a branch next to a carbonyl group,

With two carbonyl groups, the alkylation should be particularly straightforward since we can use a base like methoxide. The ether disconnection is then immediately obvious. In the synthesis of arildone the alkyl iodide was used for the alkylation.

We introduced the chemistry of malonate esters in Chapters 20 and 25 as a useful way of controlling the enolization of carbonyl compounds. Alkylation followed by decarboxylation means that we can treat acetoacetate and malonate esters as equivalent for these synthons.

This unsaturated ketone is an important industrial precursor to β-carotene, vitamin A, and other similar molecules. Disconnection using the carbonyl group gives a synthon for which a good reagent will be acetoacetate.
This organophosphorus compound, belfosil, is a Ca\(^{2+}\) channel blocker. You haven’t met many phosphorus compounds yet, but you should be able to reason that a good disconnection will be the C–P bond by analogy with the sulfides you met earlier in the chapter. We could use bromide as a leaving group, but alkyl bromides are inconvenient to disconnect further, so we go back to the more versatile diol—in the forward synthesis we shall need a way of making the OH groups into good leaving groups. There is still no obvious disconnection of the diol, but FGI to the ester oxidation level reveals a malonate derivative.

\[
\text{PhO} \quad \text{P(OBu)}_2 \quad \text{C–P} \quad \text{FGI} \quad \text{reduction} \quad 1,2 \text{ C–C}
\]

In the synthesis, the diol was converted to the bis-tosylate (see Chapter 15 if you’ve forgotten about tosylates and mesylates) and combined with a phosphorus nucleophile.

\[
\text{belfosil: synthesis}
\]

Notice how we disconnected the phosphorus-based functional groups straight back to alcohols in the retrosynthetic analysis, and not, say, to alkyl halides. Oxygen-based functional groups (alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, esters, and acids) have one important property in common—versatility. They are easily converted into each other by oxidation and reduction, and into other groups by substitution. What is more, many of the C–C disconnections you will meet correspond to reactions of oxygen-based groups, and particularly carbonyl groups. Faced with an unusual functional group in a target molecule the best thing to do is convert it to an oxygen-based group at the same oxidation level—it usually makes subsequent C–C disconnections simpler. So we add a new guideline.

**Guideline 5**

*Convert to oxygen-based functional groups to facilitate C–C disconnections.*

In each of the cases you have met so far, we have used a functional group present in the molecule to help us to disconnect the C–C bond using a 1,2 C–C disconnection. You can look for 1,2 C–C disconnections in alkynes, carbonyl compounds, and alkylated aromatic rings. And, if the target isn’t a carbonyl compound, consider what would be possible if functional groups such as hydroxyl groups were converted to carbonyl groups (just as we did with belfosil).

**1.1 C–C disconnections**

All of these disconnections relied on the reaction of a carbon electrophile with a nucleophilic functional group. The alternative, reaction of a carbon nucleophile (such as a Grignard reagent) with an electrophilic functional group, allows us to do C–C disconnections on alcohols. For example, this compound, which has a fragrance reminiscent of lilac, is a useful perfume in soap because (unlike many other perfumes that are aldehydes or ketones) it is stable to alkali.
We look to the one functional group, the hydroxyl, to tell us where to disconnect, and disconnection next to the OH group gives two synthons for which sensible reagents are a Grignard reagent and acetone. The perfume is made from benzyl chloride and acetone in this way. Notice that we label these disconnections 1,1 C–C because the bond being disconnected is attached to the same carbon atom as the hydroxyl functional group.

This similar alcohol has a ‘peony-like fruity odour’ and could be disconnected in three ways.

Disconnection (c) leads back to a ketone, which is cheaply made starting from acetone and benzaldehyde, and this was the route that was chosen for the synthesis.

**Double disconnections can be a short cut**

Tertiary alcohols with two identical groups next to the hydroxyl group are often made by attack of two equivalents of a Grignard reagent on an ester. The synthesis of the antihistamine compound fenpiprane provides an example: the tertiary alcohol is a precursor to the drug and can be disconnected to ester + Grignard reagent because of the two Ph groups. The ester required has a 1,3 functional group relationship, and can be disconnected to amine plus Michael acceptor.

The fact that Grignard reagents add twice to esters means that disconnection of a ketone in this way is often not reliable because the Grignard reagent adds to the ketone.
An alternative is to first convert to the alcohol oxidation level, then disconnect. This was the method chosen for this starting material for the synthesis of chlorphedianol.

---

**chlorphedianol starting material: retrosynthetic analysis**

```
O
Cl
FGI
OH
Cl
```

**chlorphedianol starting material: synthesis**

```
Cl
Cl
1. Mg, Et₂O
2. PhCHO
OH
Cl
```

- A summary: 1,1-disconnections using Grignard reagents

**secondary alcohols**

```
OH
R¹
\( \text{1,1 C–C} \)
R²
```

**tertiary alcohols**

```
OH
R¹
\( \text{1,1 C–C} \)
R²
```

**ketones**

```
O
R¹
\( \text{FGI} \)
R²
\( \text{oxidation} \)
```

---

### Available starting materials

Although any of the three routes to the ‘fruity peony perfume’ on p. 710 would give an acceptable synthesis, the key factor in choosing route (c) was the ease of synthesis of the starting materials from available compounds. But how can you know which materials will be available? So far in this chapter we have avoided this question, and often our retrosynthetic analyses have been incomplete because the suggested starting materials must themselves be synthesized in the laboratory. From now on, however, we will take every analysis back to available starting materials to help you get a feel for what is, and is not, available.

The only way to be absolutely sure what you can buy is to look up a compound in a supplier’s catalogue, and this is what a chemist would do when assessing possible alternative synthetic routes. A good rule of thumb is that compounds with up to about six carbon atoms and with one functional group (alcohol, aldehyde, ketone, acid, amine, double bond, or alkyl halide) are usually available. This is less true for heavily branched compounds, but most straight-chain compounds with these functional groups are available up to eight or more carbon atoms. Cyclic compounds with one functional group from five-to-eight-membered are also available. Of course, many other compounds are available too, including some difunctional compounds. Here are a few of them.

- **acetoacetates**

```
O
R = H, Me, Et
```

- **malonates**

```
O
R = H, Me, Et
```

- **acrylates** (R = H); **methacrylates** (R = Me)

```
\( \text{CO}_2\text{R} \)
```

You will soon start to appreciate what is available as you see which compounds we use as starting materials. Supplier’s catalogues are available free for the asking and make quite useful
textbooks. You could consider getting one. In addition, online and CD catalogues are available in most chemistry departments and can be searched by structure.

**Donor and acceptor synthons**

You’ve now met a variety of synthons and it’s useful to be able to classify them as donor or acceptor synthons. We call a negatively polarized synthon a donor synthon and give it the symbol ‘d’. Positively polarized synthons are called acceptor synthons and are given the symbol ‘a’.

We can classify the synthons further according to where the functional group is in relation to the reactive site. The first synthon in the diagram below, which corresponds to an aldehyde, we call an a₁ synthon because it is an acceptor that carries a functional group on the same carbon as its reactive centre. The second is a d² synthon because it is a donor whose reacting site is in the 2-position relative to the carbonyl group. Earlier you met two other types of synthon, corresponding to epoxide and Michael acceptor, and we can now classify these as a² and a³ synthons.

This terminology is useful because it reduces synthons to the bare essentials: what polarity they are and where the polarity is sited. The actual functional group they carry is, as you now appreciate, less important because FGI will usually allow us to turn one functional group into another.

**Synthons are classified as a (acceptor) or d (donor)**

A number shows the position of the acceptor or donor site relative to a functional group.

An example of an a₁ synthon is a carbonyl compound and an example of a d² synthon is an enolate or an enolate equivalent.

**Two-group C–C disconnections**

**1,3-Difunctionalized compounds**

It’s not only Grignard reagents that will react with aldehydes or ketones to make alcohols: enolates will too—we spent Chapter 26 discussing this reaction, the aldol reaction, its variants, and ways to control it.

The aldol reaction is extremely important in organic synthesis because it makes compounds with two functional groups in a 1,3-relationship. Whenever you spot this 1,3-relationship in a target molecule—think aldol! In disconnection terms we can represent it like this.
We call this disconnection a two-group C–C disconnection because we are using the OH and the C=O groups together to guide our disconnection. The disconnection gives us a d^2 synthon, for which we shall use an enolate equivalent, and an a' synthon, for which we shall use an aldehyde or a ketone. Chapter 26 has many examples and perhaps gingerol is the best. As soon as you see the 1,3-relationship, the disconnection should be obvious.

The β-hydroxy carbonyl products of aldol reactions are often very easily dehydrated to give α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds and if you spot an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl group in the molecule, you should aim to make it by an aldol reaction. You will first need to do an FGI to the β-hydroxy carbonyl compound, then disconnect as before.

This aldehyde is an intermediate in the synthesis of the tranquillizer oxanamide. Because both components of the aldol reaction are the same, no special precautions need to be taken to prevent side reactions occurring. In the synthesis, the dehydration happens spontaneously.

Because this disconnection of unsaturated carbonyl compounds is so common, it’s often written using a shorthand expression.

The next compound was needed for an early synthesis of carotene. Again, it’s an α,β-unsaturated ketone so we can disconnect using the same ‘α,β’ disconnection. The aldehyde generated by this first disconnection is also α,β-unsaturated, so we can do another α,β disconnection, back to a ketone whose synthesis we have already discussed (p. 708).

An aldol reaction using the enolate of acetaldehyde and requiring it to react with a ketone is doomed to failure: acetaldehyde itself is far too good an electrophile. In the forward synthesis, therefore, this first step was carried out at the ester oxidation level, and the ester was subsequently converted to the aldehyde by a reduction of the kind discussed in Chapter 23.
There was no problem with selectivity in the second aldol reaction because the aldehyde is not enolizable. The Reformatsky reaction in this sequence illustrates the fact that, as you saw in Chapter 26, aldol-type reactions happen at the ester oxidation level as well, and you should equally look to disconnect β-hydroxy or α,β-unsaturated esters, acids, or nitriles in this way. Just remember to look for 1,3-relations, convert the functional groups to oxygen-based ones, and disconnect them to $d^2$ plus $a^1$ synthons.

The next compound was needed when chemists were developing a thromboxane antagonist to inhibit blood clot formation. You can immediately spot the 1,3-relationship between the ester and the hydroxyl group, so 1,3-diO disconnection is called for.

A good equivalent for the ‘ester enolate’ $d^2$ synthon is a β-dicarbonyl compound because it can easily be disconnected to diethyl malonate and an alkylating agent.

This unsaturated amide is known as cinflumide and is a muscle relaxant. Disconnection of the amide gives an acid chloride that we can make by FGI from the acid. You should then spot the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl disconnection, a masked 1,3-diO disconnection, back to $m$-fluorobenzaldehyde.

Again, the forward reaction was best done using malonate chemistry, but the variant with malonic acid was used (p. 630). The cyclopropylamine unit (here as an amide) is present in many biologically active compounds and the free amine is available.

**Look out for concealed functional group relationships**

The analgesic doxpicomine is a more difficult problem than those you have seen so far. At first sight it has no useful disconnections, especially as there are no carbonyl groups. However,
removal of the acetal reveals a 1,3-diol that could be formed by reduction of a much more promising diester.

**doxpicomine: retrosynthetic analysis I**

![Image of retrosynthetic analysis I](image)

The diester has a 1,3-diCO relationship and could be disconnected but we have in mind using malonate so we would rather disconnect the alternative 3-amino carbonyl compound (the MeN group has a 1,3-relationship with both ester groups) by a 1,3-diX disconnection giving an unsaturated ester. This α,β-unsaturated ester disconnects nicely to a heterocyclic aldehyde and diethyl malonate.

**doxpicomine: retrosynthetic analysis II**

![Image of retrosynthetic analysis II](image)

The synthesis is shorter than the retrosynthetic analysis and involves only four steps. Good retrosynthetic analysis, using two-group disconnections, should lead to short syntheses.

**doxpicomine: synthesis**

![Image of synthesis](image)

**Aldol-style disconnections with N and O in a 1,3-relationship: I**

Nitriles form another important class of compounds that undergoes aldol-type additions to aldehydes and ketones. Because nitriles can be reduced to amines, this reaction provides another useful route to 3-amino alcohols.

![Image of Aldol-style disconnections with N and O in a 1,3-relationship: I](image)

This reaction, coupled with the reduction of cyanohydrins (Chapter 6), means that compounds with either a 1,3- or a 1,2-relationship between N and O can be made from nitriles.

![Image of Aldol-style disconnections with N and O in a 1,3-relationship: II](image)

Venlafaxine is an antidepressant and, like many neuroactive agents, it is an amino-alcohol. In this case, the two functional groups are 1,3-related, so we aim to use a 1,3-diO disconnection. Usually, you would convert the amine to an alcohol to simplify the disconnection, but
by spotting the opportunity for using a nitrile you can avoid the need for this extra step. A preliminary removal of the two N-Me groups is necessary.

In the forward synthesis, it turned out that the nitrile reduction was best done using hydrogen and a metal (Rh) catalyst. The final methylation of the primary amine had to be done via the imine and iminium ion (see Chapter 23) to prevent further unwanted alkylations. The reagent was an excess of formaldehyde (methanal CH₂=O) in the presence of formic acid (HCO₂H), which acts as a reducing agent.

**Aldol-style disconnections with N and O in a 1,3-relationship: II—the Mannich reaction**

Another important reaction for making amines with a 1,3-relationship to a carbonyl group is the Mannich reaction. You met this reaction in Chapter 26 as a way of doing otherwise unreliable aldol additions to formaldehyde. Because the amine is introduced directly and not by reduction of a nitrile, it can have two alkyl groups from the start. Compare this scheme with the one above using a nitrile group as the source of the amine.

Our example is clobutinol—an antitussive (cough medicine). A preliminary 1,1 C–C disconnection of the tertiary alcohol is necessary to provide a 3-amino ketone that we can make by a Mannich reaction. The product is a mixture of diastereoisomers.
You can immediately spot the 1,3 relationship in this analogue of the antidepressant nisoxetine, but, unfortunately, it can’t be disconnected straight back to an amino-alcohol because that would require nucleophilic substitution on an electron-rich aromatic ring. We have to disconnect the ether on the other side, giving an alkyl chloride.

nisoxetine analogue: retrosynthetic analysis

Using Guideline 5 (p. 709) we want to convert the halide to an oxygen-based group, and a sensible solution is to choose the ketone. 1,3-Disconnection of this compound corresponds to a Mannich reaction. This is another case where FGI of the amine to an alcohol is not desirable because the Mannich reaction will produce the amine directly.

nisoxetine analogue: synthesis

The Claisen ester disconnection: a 1,3-diO relationship needing two carbonyl groups

1,3-Diketones can be disconnected in a similar way: this time the disconnection corresponds to a Claisen condensation, but it’s still 1,3-diO and again you need to look out for the 1,3 relationship. The synthons are still d^2 plus a^1 but the a^1 synthon is used at the ester oxidation level. This diketone is the starting material for the synthesis of the antidepressant tazadolene. With 1,3-diketones, there’s always a choice where to disconnect, and you should be guided by which disconnection (a) corresponds to the most reliable reaction and (b) gives the simplest starting materials. In this case, it’s much better to disconnect back to cyclohexanone.

TWO-GROUP C–C DISCONNECTIONS
The 1,3-dicarbonyl relationship may not be revealed in the target molecule and C–hetero-atom disconnections or FGIs may be needed before the 1,3-diO C–C disconnection. Bropirimine is a bromine-containing antiviral and anticancer drug. The bromine atom can be put in last of all by electrophilic bromination.

Disconnection of two C–N bonds removes a molecule of guanidine and reveals a 1,3-dicarbonyl relationship with a straightforward disconnection.

In the event, the 1,3-dicarbonyl was made using malonate chemistry with an unusual twist: the lithium derivative gave C–acylation in good yield. Simply refluxing the product with guanidine formed the heterocycle and bromination gave bropirimine.

**Summary: 1,3-diO disconnections**

3-hydroxy carbonyls and α,β-unsaturated carbonyls: use the aldol reaction

3-amino ketones and alcohols: use Mannich or nitrile aldol

1,3-diketones: use the Claisen condensation
1,5-Related functional groups

This compound has a 1,5 rather than a 1,3 relationship between two carbonyl groups. Disconnection to give an enolate as one reagent therefore requires an $\alpha^3$ rather than an $\alpha^1$ synthon: in other words a Michael acceptor.

As discussed in Chapter 25, the synthesis will be successful only if (a) the right reagent enolizes and (b) the nucleophile undergoes conjugate (and not direct 1,2-) addition to the unsaturated carbonyl compound. Malonate derivatives enolize easily and do Michael additions and are therefore a good choice for this type of reaction.

Michael addition of enolates to $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated compounds is a good way of making 1,5-difunctionalized compounds, and you should look for these 1,5-relationships in target molecules with a view to making them in this way. Our example is rogletimide, a sedative that can be disconnected to a 1,5-diester. Further 1,5-diCO disconnection gives a compound we made earlier by ethylation of the ester enolate.

The synthesis was most efficient with an unsaturated amide as Michael acceptor.

'Natural reactivity' and 'umpolung'

Cast your mind back over the synthons we have used in these two-group C–C disconnections.
Notice that the acceptor synthons have odd numbers; the donor synthon has an even number: donor and acceptor properties alternate along the chain as we move away from a carbonyl group. This ‘natural reactivity’ of carbonyl compounds explains why we find it easy to discuss ways of making 1,3- and 1,5-difunctionalized compounds—because they arise from a\(^1\) + d\(^2\) and from a\(^2\) + d\(^3\). Reagents corresponding to synthons like d\(^1\) or a\(^2\) are rarer, and therefore compounds with 1,2- or 1,4-related functional groups require special consideration retrosynthetically.

You have in fact met one example of each of the ‘unnatural’ synthons with a\(^2\) and d\(^1\) reactivity. Such synthons are given the German name *umpolung*, meaning ‘inverse polarity’, because their natural reactivity is reversed, and umpolung reagents are the key to the synthesis of 1,2- and 1,4-difunctionalized compounds.

We shall finish this chapter by looking at disconnections of 1,2- and 1,4-difunctionalized compounds because these require us to use reagents with umpolung equivalent to d\(^1\), d\(^3\), a\(^2\), and a\(^4\) synthons. There are very many reagents for these synthons—if you are interested to learn more, consult a specialized book.

### 1,2-Difunctional compounds

You met ways of making 1,2-difunctionalized compounds when we first talked about two-group disconnections, and we used an epoxide as an a\(^2\) synthon. Epoxides are, of course, also 1,2-functionalized, and in fact this is often the key to making 1,2-functionalized compounds: use something with the 1,2 relationship already in place. You saw lots of examples of this type of strategy earlier in this chapter. Perhaps the simplest approach is electrophilic addition to alkenes. If the alkene is made by a Wittig reaction, the disconnection is (eventually) between the two functionalized carbon atoms in the target molecule. This example shows dihydroxylation as the electrophilic addition but there is also epoxidation, bromination, and bromination in water to give Br and OH as the functional groups.

A normal C–C disconnection is also a possibility, but disconnection to the ‘natural’ a\(^1\) synthon and the umpolung d\(^1\) is necessary. One very useful umpolung reagent is cyanide, and you can see it in action in this synthesis of the tranquillizer phenaglycodol. The tertiary alcohol with two R groups the same should prompt you to think of doing a double Grignard addition to an ester. FGI then reveals the nitrile functional group necessary for a 1,2-di\(\mathrm{X}\) disconnection to cyanide plus ketone.

The starting material is obviously available by a Friedel–Crafts acylation of chlorobenzene and the rest of the synthesis follows. Note that the nitrile can be converted directly into the ester with acidic ethanol and that an excess of Grignard reagent is needed because the free OH group destroys some of it.
1,4-Difunctional compounds

There are more possibilities here and we shall finish this chapter with a brief analysis of them to show you how much of this subject lies beyond what we can do in this book.

If we start with a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound we might consider first disconnection of the central bond.

We can use an enolate for one reagent but the other will have to have umpolung. This is not a very difficult kind of umpolung as an α-bromo carbonyl compound will do the job nicely if we select our enol(ate) equivalent carefully. In Chapter 25 we suggested enamines for this job. The synthesis becomes:

If we attempt the disconnection of one of the other bonds, two possibilities are available because the two fragments are different. We can use either a d1 + a3 strategy or an a1 + d3 strategy. In each case we have one natural synthon and one with umpolung.

These strategies are more difficult to realize with the reagents you have met so far but conjugate addition of a cyanide to an unsaturated carbonyl compound would be an example of the d1 + a3 strategy. We have included these to try to convince you that there is no escape from umpolung in the synthesis of a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound. If you were making this keto-ester you would have to consider seriously two of the above three strategies.
There is one way to avoid umpolung and that is to make the disconnection outside the 1,4 relationship. As it happens, we have already seen this strategy in action (p. 568). It involves a Friedel–Crafts acylation of benzene (Chapter 21) with a cyclic anhydride and leads directly to this product by quite a short route. This strategy is available only if there happens to be a starting material available to suit any particular case.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} & \rightarrow \text{FGI} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \rightarrow \text{Friedel–Crafts}
\end{align*}
\]

**To conclude…**

The best synthetic route to a molecule cannot be predicted with certainty. Retrosynthetic analysis allows you to suggest several different strategies for any given target molecule, and thorough literature searching plus experimentation in the laboratory will allow you to whittle the possibilities down to the most likely to succeed. Thinking like this underpins the design of syntheses of molecules, from the relatively simple molecules forming the next generation of drugs or agrochemicals to the most complex molecules known. Retrosynthetic thinking also reinforces the concept that the combination of electrophile and nucleophile is the basis for the understanding of organic reactions. Synthesis and reactions are two sides of the same coin. From now on we shall use the methods and terminology introduced in this chapter when we think that they will help you to develop your understanding.

**Further reading**


Most of the examples are of medicinal compounds and the data are from the patent literature. We suggest you don’t try to use that but, if you are interested in the original work, look at these papers:


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Aromatic heterocycles 1: reactions

Introduction

Benzene is aromatic because it has six electrons in a cyclic conjugated system. We know it is aromatic because it is exceptionally stable, it has a ring current and hence large chemical shifts in the proton NMR spectrum, and it has special chemistry involving substitution rather than addition with electrophiles. This chapter and the next are about the very large number of other aromatic systems in which one or more atoms in the benzene ring are replaced by heteroatoms such as N, O, and S. There are thousands of these systems with five- and six-membered rings, and we will examine just a few.

Online support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123 into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
Our subject is aromatic heterocycles and it is important that we treat it seriously because most—probably about two-thirds of—organic compounds belong to this class, and they number among them some of the most significant compounds for human beings. If we think only of drugs we can define the history of medicine by heterocycles. Even in the sixteenth century quinine was used to prevent and treat malaria, although the structure of the drug was not known. The first synthetic drug was antipyrine (1887) for the reduction of fevers. The first effective antibiotic was sulfapyridine (1938). The first multi-million pound drug (1970s) was Tagamet, the anti-ulcer drug, and among the most topical of current drugs is Viagra (1997) for treatment of male impotence.

All these compounds have heterocyclic aromatic rings shown in black. Three have single rings, five- or six-membered, two have five- or six-membered rings fused together. The number of nitrogens in the rings varies from one to four. We will start by looking at the simple six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom: pyridine.

Aromaticity survives when parts of benzene’s ring are replaced by nitrogen atoms

There is no doubt that benzene is aromatic. Now we must ask: how can we insert a heteroatom into the ring and retain aromaticity? What kind of atom is needed? If we want to replace one of the carbon atoms of benzene with a heteroatom, we need an atom that can be trigonal to keep the flat hexagonal ring, and that has a $p$ orbital to keep the six delocalized electrons. Nitrogen fits all of these requirements. This is what happens if we replace a CH group in benzene with a nitrogen atom.

The orbitals in the ring have not changed in position or shape and we still have the six electrons from the three double bonds. One obvious difference is that nitrogen is trivalent and thus there is no NH bond. Instead, a lone pair of electrons occupies the space of the C–H bond in benzene.

In theory then, pyridine is aromatic. But is it in real life? The most important evidence comes from the proton NMR spectrum. The six protons of benzene resonate at 7.27 ppm, some 2 ppm downfield from the alkene region, clear evidence for a ring current (Chapter 13). Pyridine is not as symmetrical as benzene but the three types of proton all resonate in the same region. As we will see, pyridine is also very stable and, by any reasonable assessment, pyridine is aromatic.

We could continue the process of replacing, on paper, more CH groups with nitrogen atoms, and would find three new aromatic heterocycles: pyridazine, pyrimidine, and pyrazine:

There is another way in which we might transform benzene into a heterocycle. Instead of using just one electron from N to replace an electron in the $\pi$ system, we could use nitrogen’s lone pair of electrons to replace two electrons in the $\pi$ system. We can substitute a CH=CH unit in benzene with a nitrogen atom providing that we can use the lone pair in the delocalized system. This means putting it into a $p$ orbital. We still have the four electrons from the
remaining double bonds and, with the two electrons of the lone pair on nitrogen, that makes six in all. The nitrogen atom must still be trigonal with the lone pair in a p orbital so the N–H bond is in the plane of the five-membered ring.

The \(^1\)H NMR spectrum of pyrrole is slightly less convincing as the two types of proton on the ring resonate at higher field (6.5 and 6.2 ppm) than those of benzene or pyridine but they still fall in the aromatic rather than the alkene region. Pyrrole is also more reactive towards electrophiles than benzene or pyridine, but it does the usual aromatic substitution reactions (Friedel–Crafts, nitration, halogenation) rather than addition reactions: pyrrole is also aromatic.

Inventing heterocycles by further replacement of CH groups by nitrogen in pyrrole leads to two compounds, pyrazole and imidazole, after one replacement, to two triazoles after two replacements, and to a single tetrazole after three.

All of these compounds are generally accepted as aromatic too as they broadly have the NMR spectra and reactivities expected for aromatic compounds. As you may expect, introducing heteroatoms into the aromatic ring and, even more, changing the ring size actually affect the chemistry a great deal. We must now return to pyridine and work our way more slowly through the chemistry of these important heterocycles to establish the principles that govern their behaviour.

**More nomenclature**

The ending "-ole" is systematic and refers to a five-membered heterocyclic ring. All the five-membered aromatic heterocycles with nitrogen in the ring are sometimes called 'the azoles'. Oxazole and thiazole are used for the oxygen and sulfur analogues of imidazole.

**Pyridine is a very unreactive aromatic imine**

The nitrogen atom in the pyridine ring is planar and trigonal with the lone pair in the plane of the ring. This makes it an imine. Most of the imines you have met before (in Chapter 11, for example), have been unstable intermediates in carbonyl group reactions, but in pyridine we have a stable imine—stable because of its aromaticity. All imines are more weakly basic than saturated amines and pyridine is a weak base with a \(pK_a\) (for its conjugate acid) of 5.5. This means that the pyridinium ion is about as strong an acid as a carboxylic acid.
Pyridine is a reasonable nucleophile for carbonyl groups and is often used as a nucleophilic catalyst in acylation reactions. Esters are often made in pyridine solution from alcohols and acid chlorides (the full mechanism is on p. 199 of Chapter 10).

Pyridine is nucleophilic at the nitrogen atom because the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen cannot be delocalized around the ring. They are in an sp² orbital orthogonal to the p orbitals in the ring and there is no interaction between orthogonal orbitals. Try it for yourself, drawing arrows. All attempts to delocalize the electrons lead to impossible results!

Our main question about the reactivity of pyridine must be this: what does the nitrogen atom do to the rest of the ring? The important orbitals—the p orbitals of the aromatic system—are superficially the same as in benzene, but the more electronegative nitrogen atom will lower the energy of all the orbitals. Lower-energy filled orbitals mean a less reactive nucleophile but a lower-energy LUMO means a more reactive electrophile. This is a good guide to the chemistry
of pyridine. It is less reactive than benzene in electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions, but nucleophilic substitution, which is difficult for benzene, comes easily to pyridine.

**Pyridine is bad at electrophilic aromatic substitution**

The lower energy of the orbitals of pyridine’s π system means that electrophilic attack on the ring is difficult. Another way to look at this is to see that the nitrogen atom destabilizes the cationic would-be intermediate, especially when it can be delocalized onto nitrogen.

An equally serious problem is that the nitrogen lone pair is basic and a reasonably good nucleophile—this is the basis for its role as a nucleophilic catalyst in acylations. The normal reagents for electrophilic substitution reactions, such as nitration, are acidic. Treatment of pyridine with the usual mixture of HNO₃ and H₂SO₄ merely protonates the nitrogen atom. Pyridine itself is not very reactive towards electrophiles: the pyridinium ion is totally unreactive.

Other reactions, such as Friedel–Crafts acylations, require Lewis acids and these too react at nitrogen. Pyridine is a good ligand for metals such as Al(III) or Sn(IV) and, once again, the complex with its cationic nitrogen is completely unreactive towards electrophiles.

**Pyridine does not undergo electrophilic substitution**

Aromatic electrophilic substitution on pyridine is not a useful reaction. The ring is unreactive and the electrophilic reagents attack nitrogen, making the ring even less reactive. Avoid nitration, sulfonation, halogenation, and Friedel–Crafts reactions on simple pyridines.

**Nucleophilic substitution is easy with pyridines**

By contrast, the nitrogen atom makes pyridines more reactive towards nucleophilic substitution, particularly at the 2- and 4-positions, by lowering the LUMO energy of the π system of pyridine. You can see this effect in action in the ease of replacement of halogens in these positions by nucleophiles.
The intermediate anion is stabilized by electronegative nitrogen and by delocalization round the ring. These reactions have some similarity to nucleophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 22) but are more similar to carbonyl reactions. The intermediate anion is a tetrahedral intermediate that loses the best leaving group to regenerate the stable aromatic system. Nucleophiles such as amines or thiolate anions work well in these reactions.

The leaving group does not have to be as good as chloride in these reactions. Continuing the analogy with carbonyl reactions, 2- and 4-chloropyridines are rather like acid chlorides but we need only use less reactive pyridyl ethers, which react like esters, to make amides. Substitution of a 2-methoxypyridine allows the synthesis of flupirtine.

Pyridones are good substrates for nucleophilic substitution

The starting materials for these nucleophilic substitutions (2- and 4-chloro- or methoxypyridines) are themselves made by nucleophilic substitution on pyridones. If you were asked to propose how 2-methoxypyridine might be made, you would probably suggest, by analogy with the corresponding benzene compound, alkylation of a phenol. Let us look at this in detail.

The starting material for this reaction is a 2-hydroxypyridine that can tautomerize to an amide-like structure known as a pyridone by the shift of the acidic proton from oxygen to nitrogen. In the phenol series there is no doubt about which structure will be stable as the ketone is not aromatic; for the pyridine both structures are aromatic.
In fact, 2-hydroxypyridine prefers to exist as the ‘amide’ because that has the advantage of a strong C=O bond and is still aromatic. There are two electrons in each of the C=C double bonds and two also in the lone pair of electrons on the trigonal nitrogen atom of the amide. Delocalization of the lone pair in typical amide style makes the point clearer.

Pyridones are easy to prepare (see Chapter 30) and can be alkylated on oxygen as predicted by their structure. A more important reaction is the direct conversion to chloropyridines with PCl₃. The reaction starts by attack of the oxygen atom at phosphorus to create a leaving group, followed by aromatic nucleophilic substitution. The overall effect is very similar to acyl chloride formation from a carboxylic acid (Chapter 10).

The same reaction occurs with 4-pyridone, which is also delocalized in the same way and exists in the ‘amide’ form, but not with 3-hydroxypyridine, which exists in the ‘phenol’ form. Its only tautomer is a zwitterion but the pyridine nitrogen is too weak to remove a proton from the hydroxyl group.

Interactive tautomerism between 2-hydroxypyridine and pyridone

Pyridones are easy to prepare (see Chapter 30) and can be alkylated on oxygen as predicted by their structure. A more important reaction is the direct conversion to chloropyridines with PCl₃. The reaction starts by attack of the oxygen atom at phosphorus to create a leaving group, followed by aromatic nucleophilic substitution. The overall effect is very similar to acyl chloride formation from a carboxylic acid (Chapter 10).

The same reaction occurs with 4-pyridone, which is also delocalized in the same way and exists in the ‘amide’ form, but not with 3-hydroxypyridine, which exists in the ‘phenol’ form. Its only tautomer is a zwitterion but the pyridine nitrogen is too weak to remove a proton from the hydroxyl group.

Activated pyridines will do electrophilic aromatic substitution

Useful electrophilic substitutions occur only on pyridines having electron-donating substituents such as NH₂ or OMe. These activate benzene rings too (Chapter 21) but here their help is vital. They supply a non-bonding pair of electrons that raises the energy of the HOMO and carries out the reaction. Simple amino- or methoxypyridines react reasonably well ortho and para to the activating group. These reactions happen in spite of the molecule being a pyridine, not because of it.

A practical example occurs in the manufacture of the analgesic flupirtine where a doubly activated pyridine having both MeO and NH₂ groups is nitrated just as if it were a benzene ring. The nitro group goes in ortho to the amino group and para to the methoxy group. The activation is evidently enough to compensate for the molecule being almost entirely protonated under the conditions of the reaction.

Interactive tautomerism between 2-hydroxypyridine and pyridone

This is the starting material for the flupirtine synthesis on p. 728.
Pyridine N-oxides are reactive towards both electrophilic and nucleophilic substitution

This is all very well if the molecule has such activating groups, but supposing it doesn’t? How are we to nitrate pyridine itself? The answer involves an ingenious trick. We need to activate the ring with an electron-rich substituent that can later be removed and we also need to stop the nitrogen atom reacting with the electrophile. All of this can be done with a single atom!

Because the nitrogen atom is nucleophilic, pyridine can be oxidized to pyridine N-oxide with reagents such as \( m \)-CPBA or just \( \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \) in acetic acid. These N-oxides are stable dipolar species with the electrons on oxygen delocalized around the pyridine ring, raising the HOMO of the molecule. Reaction with electrophiles occurs at the 2- (ortho) and 4- (para) positions, chiefly at the 4-position to keep away from positively charged nitrogen.

Now the oxide must be removed and this is best done with trivalent phosphorus compounds such as \( (\text{MeO})_3\text{P} \) or \( \text{PCl}_3 \). The phosphorus atom detaches the oxygen atom in a single step to form the very stable \( \text{P} = \text{O} \) double bond. In this reaction the phosphorus atom is acting as both a nucleophile and an electrophile, but mainly as an electrophile since \( \text{PCl}_3 \) is more reactive here than \( (\text{MeO})_3\text{P} \).

The same activation that allowed simple electrophilic substitution—oxidation to the N-oxide—can also allow a useful nucleophilic substitution. The positive nitrogen atom encourages nucleophilic attack and the oxygen atom can be turned into a leaving group with \( \text{PCl}_3 \). Our example is nicotinic acid, whose biological importance we will discuss in Chapter 42.

The N-oxide reacts with \( \text{PCl}_3 \) through oxygen and the chloride ion released in this reaction adds to the most electrophilic position between the two electron-withdrawing groups. Now a simple elimination restores aromaticity and gives a product looking as though it results from chlorination rather than nucleophilic attack.

The reagent \( \text{PCl}_3 \) also converts the carboxylic acid to the acyl chloride, which is hydrolysed back again in the last step. This is a useful sequence because the chlorine atom has been introduced into the 2-position, from which it may in turn be displaced by, for example, amines.
Pyridine N-oxides

Pyridine N-oxides are useful for both electrophilic and nucleophilic substitutions on the same carbon atoms (2-, 4-, and 6-) in the ring.

Nucleophilic addition at an even more distant site is possible on reaction with acid anhydrides if there is an alkyl group in the 2-position. Acylation occurs on oxygen as in the last reaction but then a proton is lost from the side chain to give an uncharged intermediate.

\[ \text{Ac} \rightarrow \text{O} \rightarrow \text{N} \rightarrow \text{O} \]

This compound rearranges with migration of the acetate group to the side chain and the restoration of aromaticity. This may be an ionic reaction or a type of rearrangement that you will learn to call a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement (Chapter 35).

\[ \text{[3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement} \]

Pyridine as a catalyst and reagent

Since pyridine is abundant and cheap and has an extremely rich chemistry, it is not surprising that it has many applications. One of the simplest ways to brominate benzenes is not to bother with the Lewis acid catalysts recommended in Chapter 21 but just to add liquid bromine to the aromatic compound in the presence of a small amount of pyridine. Only about one mole per cent is needed and even then the reaction has to be cooled to stop it getting out of hand.

As we have seen, pyridine attacks electrophiles through its nitrogen atom. This produces the reactive species, the N-bromo-pyridinium ion, which is attacked by the benzene. Pyridine is a better nucleophile than benzene and a better leaving group than bromide. This is another example of nucleophilic catalysis.

\[ \text{Pyridine recycled} \]

Another way to use pyridine in brominations is to make a stable crystalline compound to replace the dangerous liquid bromine. This compound, known by names such as pyridinium tribromide, is simply a salt of pyridine with the anion Br\(_3\)\(^-\). It can be used to brominate reactive compounds such as alkenes (Chapter 19).

\[ \text{pyridinium tribromide} \]

Both of these methods depend on the lack of reactivity of pyridine’s π system towards electrophiles such as bromine. Notice that, in the first case, both benzene and pyridine are present together. The pyridine attacks bromine only through nitrogen (and reversibly at that) and never through carbon.

Oxidation of alcohols is normally carried out with Cr(VI) reagents (Chapter 23) but these, like the Jones’ reagent (Na\(_2\)Cr\(_2\)O\(_7\) in sulfuric acid), are usually acidic. Some pyridine complexes
of Cr(VI) compounds solve this problem by having the pyridinium ion \((pK_a 5)\) as the only acid. The two most famous are PDC (pyridinium dichromate) and PCC (pyridinium chlorochromate). Pyridine forms a complex with \(\text{CrO}_3\) but this is liable to burst into flames. Treatment with \(\text{HCl}\) gives PCC, which is much less dangerous. PCC is particularly useful in the oxidation of primary alcohols to aldehydes as over-oxidation is avoided in the only slightly acidic conditions (Chapter 23).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CrO}_3 + \text{PDC} & \rightarrow \text{PCC} + \text{HCl} \\
\text{PCC} & \rightarrow \text{aldehyde}
\end{align*}
\]

**Bipyridyl (bipy)**

The ability of pyridine to form metal complexes is greatly enhanced in a dimer—the famous ligand ‘bipy’ or \(2,2'\)-bipyridyl. It is bidentate and because of its ‘bite’ it is a good ligand for many transition metals, with a partiality for Fe(II).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{bipy} & \rightarrow \text{FeCl}_2 \\
\text{FeCl}_2 & \rightarrow \text{bipy}
\end{align*}
\]

It looks like a rather difficult job to persuade two pyridine rings to join together in this way to form bipy. It is indeed very difficult unless you make things easier by using a reagent that favours the product. And what better than Fe(II) to do the job? Bipy is manufactured by treating pyridine with \(\text{FeCl}_2 \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O}\) at high temperatures and high pressures. Only a small proportion of the pyridine is converted to the Fe(II) complex of bipy (about 5%) but the remaining pyridine goes back in the next reaction. This is probably a radical process (Chapter 37) within the coordination sphere of Fe(II).

**Six-membered aromatic heterocycles can have oxygen in the ring**

Although pyridine is overwhelmingly the most important of the six-membered aromatic heterocycles, there are oxygen heterocycles, pyrones, that resemble the pyridones. The pyrones are aromatic, although \(\alpha\)-pyrone is rather unstable.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{2-pyrone or } \alpha\text{-pyrone} & \rightarrow \text{2-pyrone or } \alpha\text{-pyrone} \\
\text{4-pyrone or } \gamma\text{-pyrone} & \rightarrow \text{4-pyrone or } \gamma\text{-pyrone}
\end{align*}
\]

The pyrylium salts are stable aromatic cations and are responsible as metal complexes for some flower colours. Heterocycles with six-membered rings based on other elements (for example, P) do exist but they are outside the scope of this book.
Five-membered aromatic heterocycles are good at electrophilic substitution

Just about everything is the other way round with pyrrole. Electrophilic substitution is much easier than it is with benzene—almost too easy in fact—while nucleophilic substitution is more difficult. Pyrrole is not a base nor can it be converted to an N-oxide. We need to find out why this is. The big difference is that the nitrogen lone pair is delocalized round the ring. The NMR spectrum suggests that all the positions in the ring are about equally electron-rich with chemical shifts about 1 ppm smaller than those of benzene. The ring is flat and the bond lengths are very similar, although the bond opposite the nitrogen atom is a bit longer than the others.

The delocalization of the lone pair can be drawn equally well to any ring atom because of the five-membered ring and we shall soon see the consequences of this. All the delocalization pushes electrons from the nitrogen atom into the ring and we expect the ring to be electron-rich at the expense of the nitrogen atom. The HOMO should go up in energy and the ring become more nucleophilic.

An obvious consequence of this delocalization is the decreased basicity of the nitrogen atom and the increased acidity of the NH group. In fact, the pKₐ of pyrrole acting as a base is about –4, and protonation occurs at carbon below pH –4. By contrast, the NH proton (pKₐ 16.5) can be removed by much weaker bases than those that can remove protons on normal secondary amines. The nucleophilic nature of the ring means that pyrrole is attacked readily by electrophiles. Reaction with bromine requires no Lewis acid and leads to substitution (confirming the aromaticity of pyrrole) at all four free positions. Contrast pyridine’s reactivity with bromine (p. 731): it reacts just once, at nitrogen.

This is a fine reaction in its way, but we don’t usually want four bromine atoms in a molecule so one problem with pyrrole is to control the reaction to give only monosubstitution. Another problem is that strong acids cannot be used. Although protonation does not occur at nitrogen, it does occur at carbon and the protonated pyrrole then adds another molecule like this.

Some reactions can be controlled to give good yields of monosubstituted products. One is the Vilsmeier reaction, in which a combination of an N,N-dimethylamide and POCl₃ is used to make a carbon electrophile in the absence of strong acid or Lewis acid. It is a substitute for the Friedel–Crafts acylation, and works with aromatic compounds at the more reactive end of the scale (where pyrrole is).
In the first step, the amide reacts with POCl₃, which makes off with the amide oxygen atom and replaces it with chlorine. This process would be very unfavourable but for the formation of the strong P–O bond, and is the direct analogy of the chloropyridine-forming reaction you have just seen.

The product from this first step is an iminium cation that reacts with pyrrole to give a more stable iminium salt. The extra stability comes from the conjugation between the pyrrole nitrogen and the iminium group. The work-up with aqueous Na₂CO₃ hydrolyses the imine salt and removes any acid formed. This method is particularly useful because it works well with Me₂NCHO (DMF) to add a formyl (CHO) group. This is difficult to do with a conventional Friedel–Crafts reaction.

You may have noticed that the reaction occurred only at the 2-position on pyrrole. Although all positions react with reagents like bromine, most reagents go for the 2- (or 5-) position and attack the 3- (or 4-) position only if the 2- and 5-positions are blocked. A good example is the Mannich reaction. In these two examples N-methylpyrrole reacts cleanly at the 2-position while the other pyrrole with both 2- and 5-positions blocked by methyl groups reacts cleanly at the 3-position. These reactions are used in the manufacture of the non-steroidal anti-inflammatory compounds tolmecin and clopirac.

Now we need an explanation. The mechanisms for both 2- and 3-substitutions look good and we will draw both, using a generalized E⁺ as the electrophile. Both mechanisms can occur very readily. Reaction in the 2-position is somewhat better than in the 3-position but the difference is small. Substitution is favoured at all positions. Calculations show that the HOMO of pyrrole does indeed have a larger coefficient in the 2-position, and one way to explain this result is to look at the structure of the intermediates. The intermediate from attack at the
2-position has a linear conjugated system. In both intermediates the two double bonds are, of course, conjugated with each other, but only in the first intermediate are both double bonds conjugated with N⁺. The second intermediate is 'cross-conjugated', while the first has a more stable linear conjugated system.

Since electrophilic substitution on pyrroles occurs so easily, it can be useful to block substitution with a removable substituent. This is usually done with an ester group. Hydrolysis of the ester (this is particularly easy with t-butyl esters—see Chapter 23) releases the carboxylic acid, which decarboxylates on heating. There is no doubt that the final electrophilic substitution must occur at C2.

The decarboxylation is a general reaction of pyrroles: it’s a kind of reverse Friedel–Crafts reaction in which the electrophile is a proton (provided by the carboxylic acid itself) and the leaving group is carbon dioxide. The protonation may occur anywhere but it leads to reaction only if it occurs where there is a CO₂H group.

**Furan and thiophene are oxygen and sulfur analogues of pyrrole**

The other simple five-membered heterocycles are furan, with an oxygen atom instead of nitrogen, and thiophene, with a sulfur atom. They also undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution very readily, although not so readily as pyrrole. Nitrogen is the most powerful electron donor of the three, oxygen the next, and sulfur the least. Thiophene is very similar to benzene in reactivity.

Thiophene is the least reactive of the three because the p orbital of the lone pair of electrons on sulfur that conjugates with the ring is a 3p orbital rather than the 2p orbital of N or O, so overlap with the 2p orbitals on carbon is less good. Both furan and thiophene undergo more or less normal Friedel–Crafts reactions, although the less reactive anhydrides (here acetic anhydride, Ac₂O) are used instead of acid chlorides, and weaker Lewis acids than AlCl₃ are preferred.

Notice that the regioselectivity is the same as it was with pyrrole—the 2-position is more reactive than the 3-position in both cases. The product ketones are less reactive towards electrophiles than the starting heterocycles and deactivated furans can even be nitrated.
with the reagents used for benzene derivatives. Notice that reaction has occurred at the 5-position in spite of the presence of the ketone. The preference for 2- and 5-substitution is quite marked.

**Electrophilic addition may be preferred to substitution with furan**

So far, thiophenes and furans look much the same as pyrrole but there are other reactions in which they behave quite differently and we shall now concentrate on those. Furan is less aromatic than pyrrole, and if there is the prospect of forming stable bonds such as C–O single bonds by addition, this may be preferred to substitution. A famous example is the reaction of furan with bromine in methanol. In non-hydroxylic solvents, polybromination occurs as expected, but in MeOH no bromine is added at all!

Bromination must start in the usual way, but a molecule of methanol captures the first formed cation in a 1,4-addition to furan.

The bromine atom that was originally added is now pushed out by the furan oxygen atom to make a relatively stable conjugated oxonium ion, which adds a second molecule of methanol.

This product conceals an interesting molecule. At each side of the ring we have an acetal, and if we were to hydrolyse the acetals, we would have ‘maleic dialdehyde’ (cis-butenedial)—a molecule that is too unstable to be isolated. The furan derivative may be used in its place.

The same 1,4-dialdehyde can be made by oxidizing furan with the mild oxidizing agent dimethyldioxirane, which you met on p. 432. In this sequence, it is trapped in a Wittig reaction to give an E,Z-diene, which is easily isomerized to E,E.

We can extend this idea of furan being the origin of 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds if we consider that furan is, in fact, an enol ether on both sides of the ring. If these enol ethers were hydrolysed we would get a 1,4-diketone.
This time the arrow is solid, not dotted, because this reaction really happens. You will discover in the next chapter that furans can also be made from 1,4-diketones so this whole process is reversible. The example we are choosing has other features worth noting. The cheapest starting material containing a furan is furan-2-aldehyde or ‘furfural’, a by-product of breakfast cereal manufacture. Here it reacts in a typical Wittig process with a stabilized ylid.

Now comes the interesting step: treatment of this furan with acidic methanol gives a white crystalline compound having two 1,4-dicarbonyl relationships. You might like to try and draw a mechanism for this reaction.

The thiophene ring can also be opened up, but in a very different way. Reductive removal of the sulfur atom with Raney nickel reduces not only the C–S bonds but also the double bonds in the ring and the four carbons in the ring form a saturated alkyl chain. If the reduction follows two Friedel–Crafts reactions on thiophene the product is a 1,6-diketone instead of the 1,4-diketones from furan. Thiophene is well behaved in Friedel–Crafts acylations, and reaction occurs at the 2- and 5-positions unless these are blocked.

**Lithiation of thiophenes and furans**

A reaction that furans and thiophenes do particularly well and that fits well with these last two reactions is metallation, particularly lithiation, of a C–H group next to the heteroatom. Metallation of benzene rings (Chapter 24) is carried out by lithium–halogen (Br or I) exchange—a method that works well for heterocycles too as we will see later with pyridine—or by directed (ortho) lithiation of a C–H group next to an activating group such as OMe. With thiophene and furan, the heteroatom in the ring provides the necessary activation.

Activation is by coordination of O or S to Li followed by proton removal by the butyl group—the by-product is gaseous butane. These lithium compounds have a carbon–lithium σ bond and are soluble in organic solvents. We shall represent them very simply, but in fact they are typically dimers or more complex aggregates, with the coordination sphere of Li completed by THF molecules.
These lithium compounds are very reactive and will combine with most electrophiles—in this example the organolithium is alkylated by a benzylic halide. Treatment with aqueous acid gives the 1,4-diketone by hydrolysis of the two enol ethers.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{Ar} \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O}
\]

1. BuLi, Et\(_2\)O  
2. Br\(\text{-}\text{Ar}\)

\[\text{Ar} = \rho\text{-tolyl}\]

\[
\text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}
\]

Treatment of this diketone with \textit{anhydrous} acid would cause recyclization to the same furan (see Chapter 30) but it can alternatively be cyclized in base by an intramolecular aldol reaction (Chapter 26) to give a cyclopentenone.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{base} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O}
\]

This completes our exploration of chemistry special to thiophene and furan, and we now return to all three heterocycles (pyrrole in particular) and look at \textit{nucleophilic} substitution.

**More reactions of five-membered heterocycles**

**Nucleophilic substitution requires an activating group**

Nucleophilic substitution is a relatively rare reaction with pyrrole, thiophene, or furan and requires an activating group such as nitro, carbonyl, or sulfonyl, just as it does with benzene (Chapter 22). This intramolecular example is used to make the painkiller ketorolac.

\[
\text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{SO}_2\text{Me} \quad \text{MeO}_2\text{C} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Me}
\]

NaOEt  
\[
\text{Ph} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{SO}_2\text{Me} \quad \text{MeO}_2\text{C} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Me}
\]

ketorolac

The nucleophile is a stable enolate and the leaving group is a sulfinate anion. An intermediate must be formed in which the negative charge is delocalized onto the carbonyl group on the ring, just as you saw in the benzene ring examples in Chapter 22. Attack occurs at the 2-position because the leaving group is there and because the negative charge can be delocalized onto the ketone from that position.

**Five-membered heterocycles act as dienes in Diels—Alder reactions**

All of the reactions of pyrrole, furan, and thiophene we have discussed so far have been variations on reactions of benzene. But heterocycles also do reactions totally unlike those of benzene and we are now going to explore two of them.
The first is a reaction you will meet in detail in Chapter 34. It is known as the Diels–Alder reaction, and although it has a number of subtleties we will not discuss here, it has a simple cyclic mechanism in which six electrons (three curly arrows) move around to form a new six-membered ring.

Here is an example with the Boc derivative of pyrrole. The electron-deficient Boc group makes pyrrole less nucleophilic and promotes the Diels–Alder reaction with an alkynyl sulfone. Benzene, and even many other heterocycles, will not do this sort of reaction.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \quad \text{Boc} \\
\text{SO}_2\text{Ar} \\
\text{N} \quad \text{Boc} \\
\text{SO}_2\text{Ar}
\end{array}
\]

The product is a useful intermediate in the synthesis of the analgesic epibatidine. Selective reduction of the non-conjugated double bond is followed by addition of a pyridine nucleophile (a lithium derivative can be prepared from a bromopyridine) to the vinyl sulfone.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \quad \text{Boc} \\
\text{SO}_2\text{Ar} \\
\text{N} \quad \text{Boc} \\
\text{SO}_2\text{Ar}
\end{array}
\]

Furan is particularly good at Diels–Alder reactions but it gives the thermodynamic product, the \textit{exo} adduct, because with this aromatic diene the reaction is reversible.

Aromaticity prevents thiophene taking part in Diels–Alder reactions, but oxidation to the sulfone destroys the aromaticity because both lone pairs become involved in bonds to oxygen. The sulfone is unstable and reacts with itself but will also do Diels–Alder reactions. With an alkyne, loss of SO₂ gives a substituted benzene derivative.

Similar reactions occur with \(\alpha\)-pyrones. These are also rather unstable and barely aromatic and they react with alkynes by Diels–Alder reactions followed by reverse Diels–Alder reactions to give benzene derivatives with the loss of CO₂.
Nitrogen anions can be easily made from pyrrole

Pyrrole is much more acidic than comparable saturated amines. The $pK_a$ of pyrrolidine is about 35, but pyrrole has a $pK_a$ of 16.5, making it some $10^{23}$ times more acidic! Pyrrole is about as acidic as a typical alcohol so bases stronger than alkoxides will convert it to its anion. We should not be too surprised at this as the corresponding hydrocarbon, cyclopentadiene, is also extremely acidic, with a $pK_a$ of 15. The reason is that the anions are aromatic with six delocalized $\pi$ electrons. The effect is much greater for cyclopentadiene because the hydrocarbon is not aromatic and much less for pyrrole because it is already aromatic and has less to gain.

In all of the reactions of pyrrole that we have so far seen, new groups have added to the carbon atoms of the ring. The anion of pyrrole is useful because it reacts at nitrogen. The nitrogen atom has two lone pairs of electrons in the anion: one is delocalized around the ring but the other is localized in an $sp^2$ orbital on nitrogen. This high-energy pair is the new HOMO and this is where the molecule reacts. $N$-acylated derivatives in general can be made in this way. A commonly used base is sodium hydride (NaH) but weaker bases produce enough anion for reaction to occur.

$\text{Anions of pyroles react with electrophiles at the nitrogen atom.}$

This is how the $N$-Boc pyrrole was made for use in the synthesis of epibatidine on p. 739. The base used was the pyridine derivative DMAP, which you met earlier in the chapter (p. 726). Its conjugate acid has a $pK_a$ of 9.7 and so produces small, equilibrating amounts of the anion as well as acting as a nucleophilic catalyst. ‘Boc anhydride’ is used as the acylating agent.

Anion formation is important in the next main section of this chapter, which is about what happens when we insert more nitrogen atoms into the pyrrole ring.

Five-membered rings with two or more nitrogen atoms

Imidazole

At the beginning of this chapter we imagined adding more nitrogen atoms to the pyrrole ring and noticed then that there were two compounds with two nitrogen atoms: pyrazole and imidazole.
Only one nitrogen atom in a five-membered ring can contribute two electrons to the aromatic sextet. The other replaces a CH group, has no hydrogen, and is like the nitrogen atom in pyridine. The black nitrogens are the pyrrole-like nitrogens; the green ones are pyridine-like. The lone pairs on the black nitrogens are delocalized round the ring; those on the green nitrogens are localized in sp² orbitals on nitrogen. We can expect these compounds to have properties intermediate between those of pyrrole and pyridine. Imidazole is a stronger base than either pyrrole or pyridine—the imidazolium ion has a \( pK_a \) of almost exactly 7, meaning that it is 50% protonated in neutral water. Imidazole is also more acidic than pyrrole, with a \( pK_a \) of 14.5.

These curious results are a consequence of the 1,3 relationship between the two nitrogen atoms. Both the (protonated) cation and the (deprotonated) anion share the charge equally between the two nitrogen atoms—they are perfectly symmetrical and unusually stable. Another way to look at the basicity of imidazole would be to say that both nitrogen atoms can act at once on the proton being attacked. It has to be the pyridine-like nitrogen that actually captures the proton but the pyrrole nitrogen can help by using its delocalized electrons like this:

Nature makes use of this property by having imidazole groups attached to proteins in the form of the amino acid histidine and using them as nucleophilic, basic, and acidic catalytic groups in enzyme reactions (this will be discussed in Chapter 42). We use this property in the same way when we add a silyl group to an alcohol. Imidazole is a popular catalyst for these reactions.

A weakly basic catalyst is needed here because we want to discriminate between the primary and secondary alcohols in the diol. Imidazole is too weak a base to remove protons from an alcohol (\( pK_a \sim 16 \)) but it can remove a proton after the OH group has attacked the silicon atom.

In fact, the imidazole is also a nucleophilic catalyst of this reaction, and the first step is substitution of Cl by imidazole—that is why the leaving group in the last scheme was shown as ‘X’. The reaction starts off like this:
The same idea leads to the use of carbonyl diimidazole (CDI) as a double electrophile when we want to link two nucleophiles together by a carbonyl group. Phosgene (COCl₂) has been used for this but it is appallingly toxic (it was used in the First World War as a poison gas with dreadful effects). CDI is safer and more controlled. In these reactions imidazole acts (twice) as a leaving group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{MeO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{N\text{Et}} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \overset{\text{CDI}}{\rightarrow} \\
\text{MeO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{Et} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The amino group probably attacks first to displace one imidazole anion, which returns to deprotonate the ammonium salt. The alcohol can then attack intramolecularly, displacing the second imidazole anion, which deprotonates the OH group in its turn. The other product is just two molecules of imidazole.

The relationship between the delocalized imidazole anion and imidazole itself is rather like that between an enolate anion and an enol. It will come as no surprise therefore that, like an enol, imidazole tautomerizes rapidly at room temperature in solution. For the parent compound the two tautomers are the same, but with unsymmetrical imidazoles the tautomerism is more interesting. We will explore this question alongside electrophilic aromatic substitution of imidazoles. Imidazoles with a substituent between the two nitrogen atoms (position 2) can be nitrated with the usual reagents and the product consists of a mixture of tautomers.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{N} & \quad \overset{\text{R}}{\equiv} \\
\text{N} & \quad \equiv \overset{\text{R}}{\equiv} \\
\text{H} & \quad \\
\end{align*}
\]

The initial nitration may occur at either of the remaining sites on the ring with the electrons coming from the pyrrole-like nitrogen atom. Tautomerism after nitration gives the mixture. Tautomerism is rapid and the tautomers cannot be separated.

The tautomerism can be stopped by alkylation at one of the nitrogen atoms. If this is done in basic solution, the anion is an intermediate and the alkyl group adds to the nitrogen atom next to the nitro group. Again, it does not matter from which tautomer the anion is derived—there is only one anion delocalized over both nitrogen atoms and the nitro group. One reason for the formation of this isomer is that it has the linear conjugated system between the pyrrole-like nitrogen and the nitro group (see p. 734).
Important medicinal compounds are made in this way. The antiparasitic metronidazole comes from 2-methyl imidazole by nitration and alkylation with an epoxide in base.

The triazoles

There are two triazoles, and each has one pyrrole-like nitrogen and two pyridine-like nitrogens. Both triazoles have the possibility of tautomerism (in 1,2,3-triazole the tautomers are identical) and both give rise to a single anion.

The 1,2,4-triazole is more important because it is the basis of the best modern agricultural fungicides as well as drugs for fungal diseases in humans. The extra nitrogen atom, inevitably of the pyridine type, makes it more weakly basic than imidazole, but it increases its acidity so that the anion is now easy to make.

The fungicides are usually made by the addition of the triazole anion to an epoxide or other carbon electrophile. The anion normally reacts at one of the two linked nitrogen atoms (it does not matter which—the product is the same).
A modern example of an agent used against human fungal infections is Pfizer’s fluconazole, which actually contains two triazoles. The first is added as the anion to an α-chloroketone and the second is added to an epoxide made with the sulfur ylid chemistry you met in Chapter 27. Note that weak bases were used to catalyse both of these reactions. Triazole is acidic enough for even NaHCO₃ to produce a small amount of the anion.

![Manufacture of Pfizer’s fluconazole](image)

**Tetrazole**

There is only one isomer of tetrazole or of C-substituted tetrazoles, as there is only one carbon atom in the ring, although there may be several tautomers. The main interest in tetrazoles is that they are rather acidic: the pKₐ for the loss of the NH proton to form an anion is about 5, essentially the same as that of a carboxylic acid. The anion is delocalized over all four nitrogen atoms (as well as the one carbon atom), and four nitrogen atoms do the work of two oxygen atoms.

![Two tautomers of a tetrazole](image)

Because tetrazoles have similar acidities to those of carboxylic acids, they have been used in drugs as replacements for the CO₂H unit when the carboxylic acid has unsatisfactory properties for human medicine. A simple example is the anti-arthritis drug indomethacin whose carboxylic acid group may be replaced by a tetrazole with no loss of activity.

![Indomethacin tetrazole substitute](image)

**Nitrogen atoms and explosions**

Compounds with even two or three nitrogen atoms joined together, such as diazomethane (CH₂N₂) or azides (RN₃), are potentially explosive because they can suddenly give off stable gaseous nitrogen. Compounds with more nitrogen atoms, such as tetrazoles, are likely to be more dangerous and few people have attempted to prepare pentazoles. The limit is reached with diazotetrazole, with the amazing formula CN₆! It is made by diazotization of 5-aminotetrazole, which first gives a diazonium salt.

![Nitrogen atoms and explosions](image)
The diazonium salt is extremely dangerous: ‘It should be emphasised that [the diazonium salt] is extremely explosive and should be handled with great care. We recommend that no more than 0.75 mmol be isolated at one time. Ethereal solutions are somewhat more stable but explosions have occurred after standing at –70 °C for 1 hr.’ So much for that, but what about the diazo compound? It is extremely unstable and decomposes to a carbene with loss of one molecule of nitrogen and then loses two more to give...

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{the diazonium salt} & \quad \text{highly explosive!} \\
\text{the diazo compound} & \quad \text{highly explosive!}
\end{align*}
\]

All that is left is a carbon atom and this is one of very few ways to make carbon atoms chemically. The carbon atoms have remarkable reactions and these have been studied briefly, but the hazardous preparation of the starting materials discourages too much research. However, you will see in the next chapter that 1-amino tetrazole is a useful starting material for making an anti-allergic drug.

Benzo-fused heterocycles

Indoles are benzo-fused pyrroles

Indomethacin and its tetrazole analogue contain pyrrole rings with benzene rings fused to the side. Such bicyclic heterocyclic structures are called indoles and are our next topic. Indole itself has a benzene ring and a pyrrole ring sharing one double bond, or, if you prefer to look at it this way, it is an aromatic system with 10 electrons—eight from four double bonds and the lone pair from the nitrogen atom.

Indole is an important heterocyclic system because it is built into proteins in the form of the amino acid tryptophan (Chapter 42) because it is the basis of important drugs such as indomethacin, and because it provides the skeleton of the indole alkaloids—biologically active compounds from plants including strychnine and LSD (alkaloids are discussed in Chapter 42).

In many ways the chemistry of indole is that of a reactive pyrrole ring with a relatively unreactive benzene ring standing on one side—electrophilic substitution almost always occurs on the pyrrole ring, for example. But indole and pyrrole differ in one important respect. In indole, electrophilic substitution is preferred in the 3-position with almost all reagents whereas it occurs in the 2-position with pyrrole. Halogenation, nitration, sulfonation, Friedel−Crafts acylation, and alkylation all occur cleanly at that position.
This is, of course, the reverse of what happens with pyrrole. Why should this be? A simple explanation is that reaction at the 3-position simply involves the rather isolated enamine system in the five-membered ring and does not disturb the aromaticity of the benzene ring. The positive charge in the intermediate is, of course, delocalized round the benzene ring, but it gets its main stabilization from the nitrogen atom. It is not possible to get reaction in the 2-position without seriously disturbing the aromaticity of the benzene ring.

**Electrophilic substitution on pyrrole and indole**

Pyrrole reacts with electrophiles at all positions but prefers the 2- and 5-positions, while indole much prefers the 3-position.

A simple example of electrophilic substitution is the Vilsmeier formylation with DMF and POCl₃, showing that indole has similar reactivity, if different regioselectivity, to pyrrole. If the 3-position is blocked, reaction occurs at the 2-position and this at first seems to suggest that it is all right after all to take the electrons the ‘wrong way’ round the five-membered ring. This intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation is an example.

An ingenious experiment showed that this cyclization is not as simple as it seems. If the starting material is labelled with tritium (radioactive ³H) next to the ring, the product shows exactly 50% of the label where it is expected and 50% where it is not.

To give this result, the reaction must have a symmetrical intermediate and the obvious candidate arises from attack at the 3-position. The product is formed from the intermediate *spiro* compound, which has the five-membered ring at right angles to the indole ring—each CH₂ group has an exactly equal chance of migrating.

It is now thought that most substitutions in the 2-position go by this migration route but that some go by direct attack with disruption of the benzene ring. A good example of indole’s 3-position preference is the Mannich reaction, which works as well with indole as it does with pyrrole or furan.
The electron-donating power of the indole and pyrrole nitrogens is never better demonstrated than in the use to which these Mannich bases (the products of the reaction) are put. You may remember that normal Mannich bases can be converted to other compounds by alkylation and elimination (see p. 621). No alkylation is needed here as the indole nitrogen can even expel the Me₂N group when NaCN is around as a base and nucleophile. The reaction is slow and the yield not wonderful but it is amazing that it happens at all. The reaction is even easier with pyrrole derivatives.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{NMe}_2 \text{H} \\
\text{CN} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{CN} \\
\text{NMe}_2 \\
\text{H} \\
\text{CN} \\
\text{NaCN} \\
\end{array}
\]

All of the five-membered rings we have looked at have their benzo-derivatives but we will concentrate on just one, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, both because it is an important compound and because we have said little about simple 1,2,3-triazoles.

**HOBt is an important reagent in peptide synthesis**

1-Hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) is a friend in need in the lives of biochemists. It is added to many reactions where an activated ester of one amino acid is combined with the free amino group of another (see Chapter 23 for some examples). It was first made in the nineteenth century by a remarkably simple reaction.

The structure of HOBt appears quite straightforward, except for the unstable N–O single bond, but we can easily draw some other tautomers in which the proton on oxygen—the only one in the heterocyclic ring—can be placed on some of the nitrogen atoms. These structures are all aromatic, the second and third are nitrones, and the third structure looks less good than the other two.

HOBt comes into play when amino acids are being coupled together in the laboratory. The reaction is an amide formation, but in Chapter 23 we mentioned that amino-acyl chlorides cannot be used to make polypeptides—they are too reactive and they lead to side reactions. Instead, activated amino-esters (with good RO⁻ leaving groups) are used, such as the phenyl esters of Chapter 23. It is even more common to form the activated ester in the coupling reaction, using a coupling reagent, the most common being DCC, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide. DCC reacts with carboxylic acids like this:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{C} \\
\text{R} \\
\text{R} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{BocHN} \\
\text{R} \\
\text{R} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{C} \\
\text{R} \\
\text{R} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{BocHN} \\
\text{R} \\
\text{R} \\
\end{array}
\]

The product ester is activated because substitution with any nucleophile expels this very stable urea as a leaving group.
The problem with attacking this ester directly with the amino group of the second amino acid is that some racemization of the active ester is often found. A better method is to have plenty of HOBt around. It intercepts the activated ester first and the new intermediate does not racemize, mostly because the reaction is highly accelerated by the addition of HOBt. The second amino acid, protected on the carboxyl group, attacks the HOBt ester and gives the dipeptide in a very fast reaction without racemization.

**Putting more nitrogen atoms in a six-membered ring**

At the beginning of the chapter we mentioned the three six-membered aromatic heterocycles with two nitrogen atoms—pyridazine, pyrimidine, and pyrazine. In these compounds both nitrogen atoms must be of the pyridine sort, with lone pair electrons not delocalized round the ring.

We are going to look at these compounds briefly here. Pyrimidine is more important than either of the others because of its involvement in DNA and RNA—you will find this in Chapter 42. All three compounds are very weak bases—hardly basic at all in fact. Pyridazine is slightly more basic than the other two because the two adjacent lone pairs repel each other and make the molecule more nucleophilic (the \( \alpha \) effect again: see p. 513). The chemistry of these very electron-deficient rings mostly concerns nucleophilic attack and displacement of leaving groups such as Cl by nucleophiles such as alcohols and amines. To introduce this subject we need to take one heterocyclic synthesis at this point, although these are properly the subject of the next chapter. The compound maleic hydrazide has been known for some time because it is easily formed when hydrazine is acylated twice by maleic anhydride.

The compound actually prefers to exist as the second tautomer (in the green frame). Reaction with POCl₃, in the way we have seen for pyridine gives the undoubtedly aromatic pyridazine dichloride. Now we come to the point. Each of these chlorides can be displaced in turn with an oxygen or nitrogen nucleophile. Only one chloride is displaced in the first reaction, if that is required, and then the second can be displaced with a different nucleophile.
How is this possible? The mechanism of the reactions is addition to the pyridazine ring followed by loss of the leaving group. When the second nucleophile attacks it is forced to attack a less electrophilic ring. An electron-withdrawing group (Cl) has been replaced by a strongly electron-donating group (NH₂) so the rate-determining step, the addition of the nucleophile, is slower.

The same principle applies to other easily made symmetrical dichloro derivatives of these rings and their benzo analogues. The nitrogen atoms can be related 1,2, 1,3, or 1,4, as in these examples. The first two are used to link the quinine-derived ligands required for the Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation, which will be described in Chapter 41.

**Fusing rings to pyridines: quinolines and isoquinolines**

A benzene ring can be fused on to the pyridine ring in two ways, giving the important heterocycles quinoline, with the nitrogen atom next to the benzene ring, and isoquinoline, with the nitrogen atom in the other possible position. Quinoline forms part of quinine (structure at the head of this chapter) and isoquinoline forms the central skeleton of the isoquinoline alkaloids, which we will discuss in Chapter 42. In this chapter we need not say much about quinoline because it behaves rather as you would expect—its chemistry is a mixture of that of benzene and pyridine. Electrophilic substitution favours the benzene ring and nucleophilic substitution favours the pyridine ring. So nitration of quinoline gives two products—the 5-nitroquinolines and the 8-nitroquinolines—in about equal quantities (although you will realize that the reaction really occurs on protonated quinoline).

This is obviously rather unsatisfactory but nitration is actually one of the better behaved reactions. Chlorination gives ten products (at least!), of which no fewer than five are chlorinated quinolines of various structures. The nitration of isoquinoline is rather better behaved, giving 72% of one isomer (5-nitroisoquinoline) at 0 °C.

To get reaction on the pyridine ring, the N-oxide can be used—as with pyridine itself. A good example is acridine, with two benzene rings, which gives four nitration products, all on the benzene rings. Its N-oxide, on the other hand, gives just one product in good yield—nitration takes place at the only remaining position on the pyridine ring.
In general, these reactions are not of much use and most substituents are put into quinolines during ring synthesis from simple precursors, as we will explain in the next chapter. There are a couple of quinoline reactions that are unusual and interesting. Vigorous oxidation goes for the more electron-rich ring, the benzene ring, and destroys it leaving pyridine rings with carbonyl groups in the 2- and 3-positions.

A particularly interesting nucleophilic substitution occurs when quinoline N-oxide is treated with acylating agents in the presence of nucleophiles. These two examples show that nucleophilic substitution occurs in the 2-position and you may compare these reactions with those of pyridine N-oxide. The mechanism is similar.

In considering quinolines and indoles with their fused rings we kept the benzene and heterocyclic rings separate. Yet there is a way in which they can be combined more intimately, and that is to have a nitrogen atom at a ring junction.

**A nitrogen atom can be at a ring junction**

It has to be a pyrrole-type nitrogen as it must have three σ bonds, so the lone pair must be in a p orbital. This means that one of the rings must be five-membered and the simplest member of this interesting class is called indolizine—it has pyridine and pyrrole rings fused together along a C–N bond. If you examine this structure you will see that there is definitely a pyrrole ring but that the pyridine ring is not all there. Of course, the lone pair and the π electrons are all delocalized but this system, unlike indole and quinoline, is much better regarded as a ten-electron outer ring than as two six-electron rings joined together. Indolizidine reacts with electrophiles on the five-membered rings by substitution reactions as expected.

**Fused rings with more than one nitrogen**

It is easily possible to continue to insert nitrogen atoms into fused ring systems and some important compounds belong to these groups. The purines are part of DNA and RNA, one example is adenine and another is guanine in the box below, but simple purines play an important part in our lives. Coffee and tea owe their stimulant properties to caffeine, a simple trimethyl purine derivative. It has an imidazole ring fused to a pyrimidine ring and is aromatic in spite of the two carbonyl groups.
Uric acid, gout, and allopurinol

Another purine, uric acid, occurs widely in nature—it is used by birds, and to some extent by humans, as a way to excrete excess nitrogen—but it causes much distress in humans when crystalline uric acid is deposited in joints. We call the pain ‘gout’. The solution is a specific inhibitor of the enzyme producing uric acid and it is no surprise that a compound closely resembling uric acid, allopurinol, is the best.

Two of the carbonyl groups have gone and the imidazole ring has been replaced by a pyrazole ring. Purines from DNA are degraded in the body to xanthine, which is oxidized to uric acid. Allopurinol binds to the enzyme xanthine oxidase but inactivates it by not reacting. In fact it imitates not uric acid but the true substrate xanthine in a competitive fashion. This enzyme plays a minor part in human metabolism so inhibiting it is not serious—it just prevents overproduction of uric acid.

Other fused heterocycles have very attractive flavour and odour properties. Pyrazines, in general, are important in many strong food flavours: a fused pyrazine with a ring junction nitrogen atom is one of the most important components in the smell of roast meat. You can read about the simple pyrazine that provides green peppers with their flavour in the box on the next page.

Finally, the compounds in the margin form a medicinally important group of molecules, which includes antitumour compounds for humans and anthelmintics (compounds that get rid of parasitic worms) for animals. They are derived from a 6/5 fused aromatic ring system that resembles the ten-electron system of the indolizine ring system but has three nitrogen atoms.

All this multiple heteroatom insertion is possible only with nitrogen and we need to look briefly at what happens when we combine nitrogen with oxygen or in heterocycles.

Aromatic heterocycles can have many nitrogens but only one sulfur or oxygen in any ring

A neutral oxygen or sulfur atom can have only two bonds and so it can never be like the nitrogen atom in pyridine—it can only be like the nitrogen atom in pyrrole. We can put as many pyridine-like nitrogens as we like in an aromatic ring, but never more than one pyrrole-like nitrogen. Similarly, we can put only one oxygen or sulfur atom in an aromatic ring. The simplest examples are oxazoles and thiazoles, and their less stable isomers isoxazoles and isothiazoles.

The instability of the ‘iso-’ compounds comes from the weak O–N or S–N bond. These bonds can be cleaved by reducing agents, which then usually reduce the remaining functional groups further. The first product from reduction of the N–O bond is an unstable imino-enol. The enol tautomerizes to the ketone and the imine may be reduced further to the amine.

Such heterocycles with even more nitrogen atoms exist but are relatively unimportant and we shall mention just one, the 1,2,5-thiadiazole, because it is part of a drug, timolol.
The discovery of the compound responsible for the flavour of green peppers provides us with a chance to review some spectroscopy. This powerful compound was isolated from the oil of the green pepper (*Capsicum annuum* var. *grossum*). The oil makes up about 0.0001% of the mass of the peppers and the main pepper flavour comes from one compound which is 30% of the oil. It had an even molecular ion at 166 and looks like a compound without nitrogen, perhaps C_{11}H_{18}O. But a high-resolution mass spectrum revealed that M⁺ was actually 166.1102, which corresponds almost exactly to C_{9}H_{14}N_{2}O (166.1106).

The IR had no OH, NH, or C=O peaks, and the proton NMR looked like this.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>δ_H ppm</th>
<th>Integral</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>J, Hz</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>6H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Me₂CH⁺</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1–2.4</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>CH₃CH⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.91</td>
<td>3H</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—OCH₃?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.80</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>aromatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.93</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>aromatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ‘CH’ feature in the Me₂CH and CH₃CH signals must be the same CH and it must be the signal at 1.1–2.4 ppm described as a ‘multiplet’ as it is the only one showing enough coupling. It will be a septuplet of triplets, that is, 21 lines. We can easily reconstruct the aliphatic part of the molecule because it has two methyl groups and a CH₂ group joined to the same CH group.

We also have an OMe group (only oxygen is electronegative enough to take a methyl group to nearly 4 ppm). This adds up to C_{9}H_{12}O. What is left? Only C_{4}H_{2}N_{2}—and no clue yet as to the nitrogen functionality. We also have an aromatic ring that must have nitrogen in it (because there are only five carbon atoms—not enough for a benzene ring!) and the coupling constant between the two aromatic hydrogens is 2.4 Hz. So could we perhaps have a pyrrole ring? Well, no, and for two reasons. If we try and construct such a molecule, we can’t fit in the last nitrogen! If we put it on the end of the dotted line, it would have to be an NH₂ group, and there isn’t one.

A better reason is that the chemical shifts are all wrong. The protons on an electron-rich pyrrole ring come at around 6–6.5 ppm, upfield from benzene (7.27 ppm). But these protons are at 7.8–8.0 ppm, downfield from benzene. We have a deshielded (electron-poor) ring, not a shielded (electron-rich) ring. From what you now know of heterocyclic chemistry, the ring must be a six-membered one, and we must put both nitrogen atoms in the ring. There are three ways to do this.
The small coupling constant really fits the pyrazine alone and the chemical shifts are about right for that molecule too, although not as far downfield. But we have a MeO group on the ring feeding electrons into the aromatic system and that will increase the shielding slightly and move the protons upfield. This gives us a unique structure.

There is only one way to be sure and that is to make this compound and see if it is the same as the natural product in all respects, including biological activity. The investigators did this but then wished that they hadn’t! The structure was indeed correct but the biological activity—the smell of green peppers—was so intense that they had to seal up the laboratory where the work was done as no one would work there. Human beings can detect 2 parts in $10^{12}$ of this compound in water.

There are thousands more heterocycles out there

But we’re not going to discuss them and we hope you’re grateful. In fact, it’s about time to stop, and we shall leave you with a hint of the complexity that is possible. If pyrrole is combined with benzaldehyde a good yield of a highly coloured crystalline compound is formed: a porphyrin. Now, what about this ring system—is it aromatic? It’s certainly highly delocalized and your answer to the question clearly depends on whether you include the nitrogen electrons or not. In fact, if you ignore the pyrrole-like nitrogen atoms but include the pyridine-like nitrogens and weave round the periphery, you have nine double bonds and hence 18 electrons—a $4n+2$ number. Most people agree that these compounds are aromatic.

Some heterocycles are simple, some very complex, but we cannot live without them. We shall end this chapter with a wonderful story of heterocyclic chemistry at work. Folic acid is much in the news today as a vitamin that is particularly important for pregnant women, but is involved in the metabolism of all living things. Folic acid is built up in nature from three pieces: a heterocyclic starting material (red), $p$-aminobenzoic acid (black), and the amino acid glutamic acid (green). Here you see the precursor, dihydrofolic acid.

Although folic acid is vital for human health, we don’t have the enzymes to make it: it’s a vitamin, which means we must take it in our diet or we die. Bacteria, on the other hand, do make folic acid. This is very useful because it means that if we inhibit the enzymes of folic acid synthesis we can kill bacteria but we cannot possibly harm ourselves as we don’t have those enzymes. The sulfa drugs, such as sulfamethoxypyridazine or sulfamethoxazole, imitate $p$-aminobenzoic acid and inhibit the enzyme dihydropteroate synthase. Each has a new heterocyclic system added to the sulfonamide part of the drug.
The next step in folic acid synthesis is the reduction of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate. This can be done by both humans and bacteria, and although it looks like a rather trivial reaction (see black portion of molecules), it can only be done by the very important enzyme dihydrofolate reductase.

Although both bacteria and humans have this enzyme, the bacterial version is different enough for us to attack it with specific drugs. An example is trimethoprim—yet another heterocyclic compound with a pyrimidine core (black on diagram). These two types of drugs that attack the folic acid metabolism of bacteria are often used together.

We will see in the next chapter how to make these heterocyclic systems and, in Chapter 42, other examples of how important they are in living things.

**Which heterocyclic structures should you learn?**

This is, of course, nearly a matter of personal choice. Every chemist really must know the names of the simplest heterocycles and we give those below along with a menu of suggestions. First of all, those every chemist must know:

1. **Imidazole**
   - The most important five-membered ring with two nitrogen atoms
   - Part of the amino acid histidine, occurs in proteins and is important in enzyme mechanisms
   - A substituted imidazole is an essential part of the anti-ulcer drug cimetidine

   ![Imidazole](imidazole.png)

   ![Histidine](histidine.png)

   ![Cimetidine](cimetidine.png)

2. **Pyrimidine**
   - The most important six-membered ring with two nitrogen atoms
   - Three functionalized pyrimidines are part of DNA and RNA structure, e.g. uracil
   - Many antiviral drugs, particularly anti-HIV drugs, are modified pieces of DNA and contain pyrimidines

   ![Pyrimidine](pyrimidine.png)

   ![Uracil](uracil.png)

   ![AZT](AZT.png)
3 Quinoline

one of two benzo-pyridines with many applications

occurs naturally in the important antimalarial drug quinine

'cyanine' dyestuffs used as sensitizers for particular light wavelengths in colour photography

4 Isoquinoline

the other benzo-pyridine with many applications

occurs naturally in the benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids like papaverine

5 Indole

the more important benzo-pyrrole

occurs in proteins as tryptophan and in the brain as the neurotransmitter serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine)

Important modern drugs are based on serotonin, including sumatriptan for migraine and ondansetron, an antiemetic for cancer chemotherapy

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
In this chapter you will revisit the heterocyclic systems you have just met and find out how to make them. You’ll also meet some new heterocyclic systems and find out how to make those. With so many heterocycles to consider, you’d be forgiven for feeling rather daunted by this prospect, but do not be alarmed. Making heterocycles is easy—that’s precisely why there are so many of them. Just reflect…

- Intramolecular reactions are preferred to intermolecular reactions.
- Forming five- and six-membered rings is easy.
- We are talking about aromatic, that is, very stable molecules.

If we are to use these bullet points to our advantage we must think strategy before we start. When we were making benzene compounds we usually started with a preformed simple benzene derivative—toluene, phenol, aniline—and added side chains by electrophilic substitution. In this chapter our strategy will usually be to build the heterocyclic ring with most of its substituents already in place and add just a few others, perhaps by electrophilic substitution, but mostly by nucleophilic substitution.

We will usually make the rings by cyclization reactions with the heteroatom (O, N, S) as a nucleophile and a suitably functionalized carbon atom as the electrophile. This electrophile
will almost always be a carbonyl compound of some sort and this chapter will help you revise your carbonyl chemistry from Chapters 10, 11, 20, 25, and 26 as well as the approach to synthesis described in Chapter 28.

**Thermodynamics is on our side**

Some of the syntheses we will meet will be quite surprisingly simple! It sometimes seems that we can just mix a few things together with about the right number of atoms and let thermodynamics do the rest. A commercial synthesis of pyridines combines acetaldehyde and ammonia under pressure to give a simple pyridine.

The yield is only about 50%, but what does that matter in such a simple process? By counting atoms we can guess that four molecules of aldehyde and one of ammonia react, but exactly how is a triumph of thermodynamics over mechanism. Much more complex molecules can sometimes be made very easily too. Take allopurinol, for example, which you met in the last chapter. It is not too difficult to work out where the atoms go—the hydrazine obviously gives rise to the pair of adjacent nitrogen atoms in the pyrazole ring and the ester group must be the origin of the carbonyl group (the colours and numbers illustrate this)—but would you have planned this synthesis?

We will see that this sort of ‘witch’s brew’ approach to heterocyclic synthesis is restricted to a few basic ring systems and that, in general, careful planning is just as important here as elsewhere. The difference is that the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles is very forgiving—it often ‘goes right’ instead of going wrong. We’ll now look seriously at planning the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles.

**Disconnect the carbon–heteroatom bonds first**

The simplest synthesis for a heterocycle emerges when we remove the heteroatom and see what electrophile we need. We shall use pyrroles as examples. The nitrogen forms an enamine on each side of the ring and we know that enamines are made from carbonyl compounds and amines.

If we do the same disconnection with a pyrrole, omitting the intermediate stage, we can repeat the C–N disconnection on the other side too:

What we need is an amine—ammonia in this case—and a diketone. If the two carbonyl groups have a 1,4 relationship we will get a pyrrole out of this reaction. So hexane-2,5-dione reacts with ammonia to give a high yield of 2,5-dimethyl pyrrole. Making furans is even easier because the heteroatom (oxygen) is already there. All we have to do is to dehydrate the 1,4-diketone instead of making enamines from it. Heating with acid is enough.
Avoiding the aldol product

1,4-Diketones also self-condense rather easily in an intramolecular aldol reaction (see Chapter 26, p. 636) to give a cyclopentenone with an all-carbon five-membered ring. This too is a useful reaction but we need to know how to control it. The usual rule is:

- Base gives the cyclopentenone.
- Acid gives the furan.

For thiophenes we could in theory use H₂S or some other sulfur nucleophile but, in practice, an electrophilic reagent is usually used to convert the two C=O bonds to C=S bonds. Thioketones are much less stable than ketones and cyclization is swift. Reagents such as P₂S₅ or Lawesson’s reagent are the usual choice here.

● Making five-membered heterocycles

Cyclization of 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen, sulfur, or oxygen nucleophiles gives the five-membered aromatic heterocycles pyrrole, thiophene, and furan.

It seems a logical extension to use a 1,5-diketone to make substituted pyridines but there is a slight problem here as we will introduce only two of the required three double bonds when the two enamines are formed. To get the pyridine by enamine formation we should need a double bond somewhere in the chain between the two carbonyl groups. But here another difficulty arises—it will have to be a cis (Z) double bond or cyclization would be impossible.

On the whole it is easier to use the saturated 1,5-diketone and oxidize the product to the pyridine. As we are going from a non-aromatic to an aromatic compound, oxidation is easy and we can replace the question mark above with almost any simple oxidizing agent, as we shall soon see.

● Making six-membered heterocycles

Cyclization of 1,5-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen nucleophiles leads to the six-membered aromatic heterocycle pyridine.

Heterocycles with two nitrogen atoms come from the same strategy

Reacting a 1,4-diketone with hydrazine (NH₂NH₂) makes a double enamine again and this is only an oxidation step away from a pyridazine. This is also a good synthesis.
If we use a 1,3-diketone instead we will get a five-membered heterocycle and the imine and enamine formed are enough to give aromaticity without any need for oxidation. The product is a pyrazole. The two heteroatoms do not, of course, need to be joined together for this strategy to work. If an amidine is combined with the same 1,3-diketone we get a six-membered heterocycle. As the nucleophile contains one double bond already, an aromatic pyrimidine is formed directly.

Since diketones and other dicarbonyl compounds are easily made by enolate chemistry (Chapters 25, 26, and 28) this strategy has been very popular and we will look at some detailed examples before moving on to more specialized reactions for the different classes of aromatic heterocycles.

**Pyrroles, thiophenes, and furans from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds**

We need to make the point that pyrrole synthesis can be done with primary amines as well as with ammonia and a good example is the pyrrole needed for clopirac, a drug we discussed in Chapter 29. The synthesis is very easy.

For an example of furan synthesis we choose menthofuran, which contributes to the flavour of mint. It has a second ring, but that is no problem if we simply disconnect the enol ethers as we have been doing so far.

The starting material is again a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound but as there was no substituent at C1 of the furan, that atom is an aldehyde rather than a ketone. This might lead to problems in the synthesis so a few changes (using the notation you met in Chapter 28) are made to the intermediate before further disconnection.

- Halo aldehydes are unstable and should be avoided.
Notice in particular that we have ‘oxidized’ the aldehyde to an ester to make it more stable—in the synthesis reduction will be needed. Here is the alkylation step of the synthesis, which does indeed go very well with the α-iodo-ester.

Cyclization with acid now causes a lot to happen. The 1,4-dicarbonyl compound cyclizes to a lactone, not to a furan, and the redundant ester group is lost by hydrolysis and decarboxylation. Notice that the double bond moves into conjugation with the lactone carbonyl group. Finally, the reduction gives the furan. No special precautions are necessary—as soon as the ester is partly reduced, it loses water to give the furan whose aromaticity prevents further reduction even with LiAlH₄.

A reminder

Cyclization of 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen, sulfur, or oxygen nucleophiles gives the five-membered aromatic heterocycles pyrrole, thiophene, and furan.

Now we need to take these ideas further and discuss an important pyrrole synthesis that follows this strategy but includes a cunning twist. It all starts with the porphyrin found in blood. In Chapter 29 we gave the structure of porphyrin and showed that it contains four pyrrole rings joined in a macrocycle. We are going to look at one of those pyrroles.

Porphyrins can be made by joining together the various pyrroles in the right order and what is needed for this one (and also, in fact, for another—the one in the north-east corner of the porphyrin) is a pyrrole with the correct substituents in positions 3 and 4, a methyl group in position 5, and a hydrogen atom at position 2. Position 2 must be free. Here is the molecule drawn somewhat more conveniently, together with the disconnection we have been using so far.

No doubt such a synthesis could be carried out but it is worth looking for alternatives for a number of reasons. We would prefer not to make a pyrrole with a free position at C2 as that would be very reactive and we know from Chapter 29 that we can reversibly block such a position with a t-butyl ester group. This gives us a very difficult starting material with four different carbonyl groups.

See p. 733 for a discussion of how to control pyrrole’s reactivity.
We have made a problem for ourselves by having two carbonyl groups next to each other. Could we escape from that by replacing one of them with an amine? We should then have an ester of an \( \alpha \) amino acid, a much more attractive starting material, and this corresponds to disconnecting just one of the C–N bonds.

At first we seem to have made no progress but just see what happens when we move the double bond round the ring into conjugation with the ketone. After all, it doesn't matter where the double bond starts out—we will always get the aromatic product.

Each of our two much simpler starting materials needs to be made. The keto-ester is a 1,5-dicarbonyl compound so it can be made by a conjugate addition of an enolate, a process greatly assisted by the addition of a second ester group.

The other compound is an amino-keto-ester and will certainly react with itself if we try to prepare it as a pure compound. The answer is to release it directly into the reaction mixture and this can be done by nitrosation and reduction (Chapter 20) of another stable enolate.

Zinc in acetic acid (Chapter 23) reduces the oxime to the amine and we can start the synthesis by doing the conjugate addition and then reducing the oxime in the presence of the keto-diester.

This reaction forms the required pyrrole in one step! First, the oxime is reduced to an amine, then the amino group forms an imine with the most reactive carbonyl group (the...
ketone) in the ketodiester. Finally, the very easily formed enamine cyclizes onto the other ketone.

This pyrrole synthesis is important enough to be given the name of its inventor—it is the Knorr pyrrole synthesis. Knorr himself made a rather simpler pyrrole in a remarkably efficient reaction. See if you can work out what is happening here.

Names for heterocyclic syntheses

Standard heterocyclic syntheses tend to have a name associated with them and it is simply not worthwhile learning these names. Few chemists use any but the most famous of them: we will mention the Knorr pyrrole synthesis, the Hantzsch pyridine synthesis, and the Fischer and Reissert indole syntheses. We did not mention that the synthesis of furans from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds is known as the Feist–Benary synthesis, and there are many more like this. If you are really interested in these other names we suggest you consult a specialist book on heterocyclic chemistry.

How to make pyridines: the Hantzsch pyridine synthesis

The idea of coupling two keto-esters together with a nitrogen atom also works for pyridines except that an extra carbon atom is needed. This is provided as an aldehyde and another important difference is that the nitrogen atom is added as a nucleophile rather than an electrophile. These are features of the Hantzsch pyridine synthesis. This is a four-component reaction from simple starting materials.

You are hardly likely to understand the rationale behind this reaction from that diagram so let’s explore the details. The product of the reaction is actually the dihydropyridine, which has to be oxidized to the pyridine by a reagent such as HNO₃, Ce(IV), or a quinone.

The reaction is very simply carried out by mixing the components in the right proportions in ethanol. The presence of water does not spoil the reaction and the ammonia, or some added amine, ensures the slightly alkaline pH necessary. Any aldehyde can be used, even formaldehyde, and yields of the crystalline dihydropyridine are usually very good.

Arthur Hantzsch, 1857–1935, the ‘fiery stereochemist’ of Leipzig, was most famous for the work he did with Werner at the ETH in Zurich where in 1890 he suggested that oximes could exist in cis and trans forms.
This reaction is an impressive piece of molecular recognition by small molecules and writing a detailed mechanism is a bold venture. We can see that certain events have to happen, but which order they happen in is a matter of conjecture. The ammonia has to attack the ketone groups, but it would prefer to attack the more electrophilic aldehyde so this is probably not the first step. The enol or enolate of the keto-ester has to attack the aldehyde (twice!) so let us start there.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \text{O} \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \text{O} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\end{align*}
\]

This adduct is in equilibrium with the stable enolate from the keto-ester and elimination now gives an unsaturated carbonyl compound. Such chemistry is associated with the aldol reactions we discussed in Chapter 26. The new enone has two carbonyl groups at one end of the double bond and is therefore a very good Michael acceptor (Chapter 25). A second molecule of enolate does a conjugate addition to complete the carbon skeleton of the molecule. Now the ammonia attacks either of the ketones and cyclizes on to the other. As ketones are more electrophilic than esters it is to be expected that ammonia will prefer to react there.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \text{R} & \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \\
\text{O} & \text{O} & \text{O} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The necessary oxidation is easy both because the product is aromatic and because the nitrogen atom can help to expel the hydrogen atom and its pair of electrons from the 4-position. If we use a quinone as oxidizing agent, both compounds become aromatic in the same step.

To recap this mechanism, the essentials are:
- aldol reaction between the aldehyde and the keto-ester
- Michael (conjugate) addition to the enone
- addition of ammonia to one ketone
- cyclization of the imine or enamine on to the other ketone

although several of the steps could happen in a different order.

The Hantzsch pyridine synthesis is an old discovery (1882) which sprang into prominence in the 1980s with the discovery that the dihydropyridine intermediates prepared from aromatic aldehydes are calcium channel-blocking agents and therefore valuable drugs for heart disease with useful effects on angina and hypertension.
So far, so good. But it also became clear that the best drugs were unsymmetrical—some in a trivial way such as felodipine but some more seriously such as Pfizer’s amlodipine. At first sight it looks as though the very simple and convenient Hantzsch synthesis cannot be used for these compounds.

Clearly, a modification is needed in which half of the molecule is assembled first. The solution lies in early work by Robinson, who made the very first enamines from keto-esters and amines. One half of the molecule is made from an enamine and the other half from a separately synthesized enone. We can use felodipine as a simple example.

Other syntheses of pyridines
The Hantzsch synthesis produces a reduced pyridine but there are many syntheses that go directly to pyridines. One of the simplest is to use hydroxylamine (NH$_2$OH) instead of ammonia as the nucleophile. Reaction with a 1,5-diketone gives a dihydropyridine but then water is lost and no oxidation is needed.

The example below shows how these 1,5-diketones may be quickly made by the Mannich (Chapter 26) and Michael (Chapter 25) reactions. Our pyridine has a phenyl substituent and a fused saturated ring. First we must disconnect to the 1,5-diketone.
Further disconnection reveals a ketone and an enone. There is a choice here and both alternatives would work well.

It is convenient to use the amine products of Mannich reactions ('Mannich bases') instead of the very reactive unsaturated ketones and we will continue with disconnection 'a'.

The synthesis is extraordinarily easy. The stable Mannich base is simply heated with the other ketone to give a high yield of the 1,5-diketone. Treatment of that with the HCl salt of NH₂OH in EtOH gives the pyridine directly, also in good yield.

Another direct route leads, as we shall now demonstrate, to pyridones. These useful compounds are the basis for nucleophilic substitutions on the ring (Chapter 29). We choose an example that puts a nitrile in the 3-position. This is significant because the role of nicotinamide in living things (Chapter 42) makes such products interesting to make. Aldol disconnection of a 3-cyano pyridone starts us on the right path. If we now disconnect the C–N bond forming the enamine on the other side of the ring we will expose the true starting materials. This approach is unusual in that the nitrogen atom that is to be the pyridine nitrogen is not added as ammonia but is already present in a molecule of cyanoacetamide.

The keto-aldehyde can be made by a simple Claisen ester condensation (Chapter 26) using the enolate of the methyl ketone with ethyl formate (HCO₂Et) as the electrophile. It actually exists as a stable enol, like so many 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds (Chapter 20).

In the synthesis, the product of the Claisen ester condensation is actually the enolate anion of the keto-aldehyde and this can be combined directly without isolation with cyanoacetamide to give the pyridone in the same flask.
What happens here is that the two compounds must exchange protons (or switch enolates if you prefer) before the aldol reaction occurs. Cyclization probably occurs next through C–N bond formation and, finally, dehydration is forced to give the Z alkene.

In planning the synthesis of a pyrrole or a pyridine from a dicarbonyl compound, considerable variation in oxidation state is possible. The oxidation state is chosen to make further disconnection of the carbon skeleton as easy as possible. We can now see how these same principles can be applied to pyrazoles and pyridazines.

**Pyrazoles and pyridazines from hydrazine and dicarbonyl compounds**

Disconnection of pyridazines reveals a molecule of hydrazine and a 1,4-diketone with the proviso that, just as with pyridines, the product will be a dihydropyrazine and oxidation will be needed to give the aromatic compound. As with pyridines, we prefer to avoid the cis double bond problem.

As an example we can take the cotton herbicide made by Cyanamid. Direct removal of hydrazine would require a problematic cis double bond in the starting material.

If we remove the double bond first, a much simpler compound emerges. Note that this is a ketoester rather than a diketone.

When hydrazine is added to the keto-ester an imine is formed with the ketone but acylation occurs at the ester end to give an amide rather than the imino-ester we had designed.
Aromatization with bromine gives the aromatic pyridazolone by bromination and dehydrobromination, and now we invoke the nucleophilic substitution reactions introduced in Chapter 29. First we make the chloride with POCl₃ and then displace with methanol.

The five-membered ring pyrazoles are even simpler as the starting material is a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound available from the aldol or Claisen ester condensations.

**Chemistry hits the headlines—Viagra**

In 1998 chemistry suddenly appeared in the media in an exceptional way. Normally not a favourite of TV or the newspapers, chemistry produced a story with all the right ingredients—sex, romance, human ingenuity—and all because of a pyrazole. In the search for a heart drug, Pfizer uncovered a compound that allowed impotent men to have active sex lives. They called it Viagra. The molecule contains a sulfonamide and a benzene ring as well as the part that interests us most—a bicyclic aromatic heterocyclic system of a pyrazole fused to a pyrimidine. We shall discuss in detail how Pfizer made this part of the molecule and just sketch in the rest. The sulfonamide can be made from the sulfonic acid that can be added to the benzene ring by electrophilic aromatic sulfonation (Chapter 21).

Inspection of what remains reveals that the carbon atom in the heterocycles next to the benzene ring (marked with an orange blob) is at the oxidation level of a carboxylic acid. If, therefore, we disconnect both C—N bonds to this atom we will have two much simpler starting materials.
The aromatic acid is available and we need consider only the pyrazole (the core pyrazole ring in black in the diagram). The aromatic amino group can be put in by nitration and reduction, and the amide can be made from the corresponding ester. This leaves a carbon skeleton, which must be made by ring synthesis.

Following the methods we have established so far in this chapter, we can remove the hydrazine portion to reveal a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound. In fact, this is a tricarbonyl compound, a diketo-ester, because of the ester already present and it contains 1,2-, 1,3-, and 1,4-dicarbonyl relationships. The simplest synthesis is by a Claisen ester condensation and we choose the disconnection so that the electrophile is a reactive (oxalate) diester that cannot enolize. The only control needed will then be in the enolization of the ketone.

The Claisen ester condensation gives the right product just by treatment with base. The reasons for this are discussed in Chapter 26. We had then planned to treat the keto-diester with methylhydrazine but there is a doubt about the regioselectivity of this reaction—the ketones are more electrophilic than the ester all right, but which ketone will be attacked by which nitrogen atom?

We have already seen the solution to this problem in Chapter 29. If we use symmetrical hydrazine, we can deal with the selectivity problem by alkylation. Dimethyl sulfate turns out to be the best reagent.

The stable pyrazole acid from the hydrolysis of this ester is a key intermediate in Viagra production. Nitration can occur only at the one remaining free position and then amide formation and reduction complete the synthesis of the amino pyrazole amide ready for assembly into Viagra.

The alkylation is regioselective because the methylated nitrogen must become the pyrrole-like nitrogen atom and the molecule prefers the longest conjugated system involving that nitrogen and the ester.
The rest of the synthesis can be summarized very briefly as it mostly concerns material outside the scope of this chapter. You might like to notice how easy the construction of the second heterocyclic ring is—the nucleophilic attack of the nitrogen atom of one amide on to the carbonyl of another would surely not occur unless the product were an aromatic heterocycle.

Pyrimidines can be made from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and amidines

In Chapter 29 we met some compounds that interfere in folic acid metabolism and are used as antibacterial agents. One of them was trimethoprim and it contains a pyrimidine ring (black on the diagram). We are going to look at its synthesis briefly because the strategy used is the opposite of that used with the pyrimidine ring in Viagra. Here we disconnect a molecule of guanidine from a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound.

The 1,3-dicarbonyl compound is a combination of an aldehyde and an amide but is very similar to a malonic ester so we might think of making this compound by alkylation of that stable enolate (Chapter 25) with the convenient benzylic bromide.
The alkylation works fine but it turns out to be better to add the aldehyde as an electrophile (cf. the pyridone synthesis on p. 766) rather than try to reduce an ester to an aldehyde. The other ester is already at the right oxidation level.

Condensation with ethyl formate (HCO₂Et) and cyclization with guanidine gives the pyrimidine ring system but with an OH instead of the required amino group. Aromatic nucleophilic substitution the pyridone style from Chapter 29 gives trimethoprim.

Unsymmetrical nucleophiles lead to selectivity questions

The synthesis of thiazoles is particularly interesting because of a regioselectivity problem. If we try out the two strategies we have just used for pyrimidines, the first requires the reaction of a carboxylic acid derivative with a most peculiar enamine that is also a thioenol. This does not look like a stable compound.

The alternative is to disconnect the C–N and C–S bonds on the other side of the heteroatoms. Here we must be careful what we are about or we will get the oxidation state wrong. We shall do it step by step to make sure. We can rehydrate the double bond in two ways. We can first try putting the OH group next to nitrogen.

Or we can rehydrate it the other way round, putting the OH group next to the sulfur atom, and disconnect in the same way. In both cases we require an electrophilic carbon atom at the alcohol oxidation level and one at the aldehyde or ketone oxidation level. In other words we need an α-haloketone.
The nucleophile is the same in both cases and it is an odd-looking molecule. That is, until we realize that it is just a tautomer of a thioamide. Far from being odd, thioamides are among the few stable thiocarbonyl derivatives and can be easily made from ordinary amides with $P_2S_5$, or Lawesson’s reagent.

So the only remaining question is: when thioamides combine with $\alpha$-haloketones, which nucleophilic atom (N or S) attacks the ketone, and which atom (N or S) attacks the alkyl halide? Carbonyl groups are ‘hard’ electrophiles—their reactions are mainly under charge control and so they react best with basic nucleophiles (Chapter 10). Alkyl halides are ‘soft’ electrophiles—their reactions are mainly under frontier orbital control and they react best with large uncharged nucleophiles from the lower rows of the periodic table. The ketone reacts with nitrogen and the alkyl halide with sulfur.

Fentiazac, a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug, is a simple example. Disconnection shows that we need thiobenzamide and an easily made $\alpha$-haloketone (easily made because the ketone can enolize on this side only—see Chapter 20).

The synthesis involves heating these two compounds together and the correct thiazole forms easily with the double bonds finding their right positions in the product—the only positions for a stable aromatic heterocycle.

**Isoxazoles are made from hydroxylamine or by cycloaddition**

The two main routes for the synthesis of isoxazoles are (a) the attack of hydroxylamine ($\text{NH}_2\text{OH}$) on diketones and (b) a reaction of nitrile oxides called a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition. They thus form a link between the strategy we have been discussing (cyclization of a nucleophile with two heteroatoms and a compound with two electrophilic carbon atoms) and the next strategy—cycloaddition reactions.

Simple symmetrical isoxazoles are easily made by the hydroxylamine route. If $R^1 = R^3$, we have a symmetrical and easily prepared 1,3-diketone as starting material. The central $R^2$ group can be inserted by alkylation of the stable enolate of the diketone (Chapter 25).
When $R_1 \neq R_3$, we have an unsymmetrical dicarbonyl compound and we must be sure that we know which way round the reaction will proceed. The more nucleophilic end of $NH_2OH$ will attack the more electrophilic carbonyl group. It seems obvious that the more nucleophilic end of $NH_2OH$ will be the nitrogen atom but that depends on the pH of the solution. Normally, hydroxylamine is supplied as the crystalline hydrochloride salt and a base of some kind added to give the nucleophile. The relevant $pK_a$'s are shown in the margin. Bases such as pyridine or sodium acetate produce some of the reactive neutral $NH_2OH$ in the presence of the less reactive cation, but bases such as NaOEt produce the anion. Reactions of keto-aldehydes with acetate-buffered hydroxylamine usually give the isoxazole from nitrogen attack on the aldehyde as expected.

Modification of the electrophile may also be successful. Reaction of hydroxylamine with 1,2,4-diketo-esters usually gives the isoxazole from attack of nitrogen at the more reactive keto group next to the ester.

A clear demonstration of selectivity comes from the reactions of bromoenones. It is not immediately clear which end of the electrophile is more reactive but the reactions tell us the answer.

The alternative approach to isoxazoles relies on the reaction of nitrile oxides with alkynes. We shall see in Chapter 34 that there are two good routes to these reactive compounds, the $\gamma$-elimination of chlorooximes or the dehydration of nitroalkanes.

A few nitrile oxides are stable enough to be isolated (those with electron-withdrawing or highly conjugating substituents, for example) but most are prepared in the presence of the alkyne by one of these methods because otherwise they dimerize rapidly. Both methods of forming nitrile oxides are compatible with their rapid reactions with alkynes. With aryl alkynes the reaction is usually clean and regioselective.

The reaction forms the five-membered ring in a single step: it is a cycloaddition, in which the alkyne is using its HOMO to attack the LUMO of the nitrile oxide (see Chapter 34 for an explanation). If the alkyne has an electron-withdrawing group, mixtures of isomers are usually formed as the HOMO of the nitrile oxide also attacks the LUMO of the alkyne. Intramolecular reactions are usually clean regardless of the preferred electronic orientation if...
the tether is too short to allow any cyclization except one. In this example, even the more favourable orientation looks very bad because of the linear nature of the reacting species, but only one isomer is formed.

\[
\begin{align*}
R^1 - & N = O \\
\text{EtO}_2C - & \text{H}_2C = \text{O} - \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \\
\text{O} - & \text{N} + \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Tetrazoles and triazoles are also made by cycloadditions**

Disconnection of tetrazoles with a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition in mind is easy to see once we realize that a nitrile (RCN) is going to be one of the components. It can be done in two ways: disconnection of the neutral compound would require the dangerous hydrazoic acid (HN₃) as the dipole but the anion disconnects directly to azide ion.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HN}_2 & - \text{N}_2 \\
\text{R} & \text{N} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Unpromising though this reaction may look, it actually works well if an ammonium chloride-buffered mixture of sodium azide and the nitrile is heated in DMF. The reagent is really ammonium azide and the reaction occurs faster with electron-withdrawing substituents in R. In the reaction mixture, the anion of the tetrazole is formed but neutralization with acid gives the free tetrazole.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{RCN} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaN}_3, \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}} \text{R} - \text{N} \\
\text{LiCl, DMF, 100 °C} & \rightarrow \text{R} - \text{N} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+} \text{N} - \text{N} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+} \text{N} - \text{N} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+} \text{N} - \text{N} \\
\end{align*}
\]

As nitriles are generally readily available this is the main route to simple tetrazoles. More complicated ones are made by alkylation of the product of a cycloaddition. The tetrazole substitute for indomethacin that we mentioned in Chapter 29 is made by this approach. First, the nitrile is prepared from the indole. The 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition works well by the azide route we have just discussed, even though this nitrile will form an ‘enol’ rather easily. Finally, the indole nitrogen atom must be acylated. The tetrazole is more acidic so it is necessary to form a dianion to get reaction at the right place. The usual rule is followed (see Chapter 23)—the second anion formed is less stable and so it reacts first.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me} & \xrightarrow{\text{MeNH}_2, \text{CH}_2=\text{O}} \xrightarrow{\text{MeCN}} \xrightarrow{\text{NaN}_3, \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}} \text{Me} \\
\text{Mannich} & \text{LiCl, DMF, 100 °C} \rightarrow \text{Me} \\
\end{align*}
\]
The synthesis of the anti-inflammatory drug broperamole illustrates modification of a tetra-
zole using its anion. The tetrazole is again constructed from the nitrile—it’s an aromatic
nitrile with an electron-withdrawing substituent so this will be a good reaction.
Conjugate addition to acrylic acid (Chapter 22) occurs to give the other tautomer to the one
we have drawn. The anion intermediate is, of course, delocalized and can react at any of the
nitrogen atoms. Amide formation completes the synthesis of broperamole.

One of the best reactions of all is the related cycloaddition of a substituted azide to an
alkyne. Just mixing together and heating an azide and an alkyne will give a triazole, but often
as a mixture of two regioisomers.

However, a simple addition to the reaction mixture improves the situation hugely: a cata-
lytic amount of Cu(I), often made in situ by adding CuSO₄ and a mild reducing agent, makes
the reaction much faster and gives the 1,4-disubstituted triazole selectively. The work of
Sharpless has turned this reaction into not only a very powerful way of making triazoles, but
also a very simple way of linking two otherwise relatively unreactive molecules together—the
reaction even works in water.

**The Fischer indole synthesis**

You are about to see one of the great inventions of organic chemistry. It is a remarkable reac-
tion, amazing in its mechanism, and it was discovered in 1883 by one of the greatest organic
chemists of all, Emil Fischer. Fischer had earlier discovered phenylhydrazine (PhNHNH₂)
and, in its simplest form, the Fischer indole synthesis occurs when phenylhydrazine is heated
in acidic solution with an aldehyde or ketone.
The first step in the mechanism is formation of the phenylhydrazone (the imine) of the ketone. This can be isolated as a stable compound (Chapter 11).

\[
\text{phenylhydrazine} + \text{ketoacid} \rightarrow \text{cyclohexanone phenylhydrazone}
\]

The hydrazone then needs to tautomerize to the enamine, and now comes the key step in the reaction. The enamine can rearrange with formation of a strong C–C bond and cleavage of the weak N–N single bond by moving electrons round a six-membered ring.

Next, re-aromatization of the benzene ring (by proton transfer from carbon to nitrogen) creates an aromatic amine that immediately attacks the other imine. This gives an aminal, the nitrogen equivalent of an acetal.

Finally, acid-catalysed decomposition of the aminal in acetal fashion with expulsion of ammonia allows the loss of a proton and the formation of the aromatic indole.

This is admittedly a complicated mechanism but if you remember the central step—the rearrangement of the enamine—the rest should fall into place. The key point is that the C–C bond is established at the expense of a weak N–N bond. Naturally, Fischer had no idea of any of the steps in the mechanism. He was sharp enough to see that something remarkable had happened and skilful enough to find out what it was.

The Fischer method is the main way of making indoles, but it is not suitable for them all. We need now to consider its applicability to various substitution patterns. If the carbonyl compound can enolize on one side only, as is the case with an aldehyde, then the obvious product is formed.
If the benzene ring has only one ortho position, then again cyclization must occur to that position. Other substituents on the ring are irrelevant.

Another way to secure a single indole as product from the Fischer indole synthesis is to make sure the reagents are symmetrical. These two examples should make plain the types of indole available from symmetrical starting materials.

The substitution pattern of the first example is particularly important as the neurotransmitter serotonin is an indole with a hydroxyl group in the 5-position, and many important drugs follow that pattern. Sumatriptan (marketed as Imigran, the migraine treatment) is an analogue of serotonin, whose synthesis starts with the formation of a diazonium salt (Chapter 22) from the aniline shown below. Nitrosation gives the diazonium salt, and reduction with SnCl₂ and HCl returns the salt of the phenylhydrazine.

The required aldehyde (3-cyanopropanal) is added as an acetal to prevent self-condensation. The acidic conditions release the aldehyde, which forms the phenylhydrazone, ready for the next step.

The Fischer indole synthesis itself is catalysed in this case by polyphosphoric acid (PPA), a sticky gum based on phosphoric acid (H₃PO₄) but dehydrated so that it contains some oligomers. It is often used as a catalyst in organic reactions and residues are easily removed in water.

All that remains is to introduce the dimethylamino group. The nitrile is reduced by hydrogenation and the two methyl groups added by reductive amination with formaldehyde. The reducing agent is formic acid, and the reaction works by sequential formation...
and reduction of an imine, followed by an iminium formation and reduction to introduce the second methyl group.

For some indoles it is necessary to control regioselectivity with unsymmetrical carbonyl compounds. Ondansetron, the anti-nausea compound that is used to help cancer patients take larger doses of antitumour compounds than was previously possible, is an example. It contains an indole and an imidazole ring.

The 1,3 relationship between C–N and C–O suggests a Mannich reaction to add the imidazole ring (Chapters 26 and 28), and that disconnection reveals an indole with an unsymmetrical right-hand side, having an extra ketone group. Fischer disconnection will reveal a diketone as partner for phenylhydrazine. We shall leave aside for the moment when to add the methyl group to the indole nitrogen.

The diketone has two identical carbonyl groups and will enolize (or form an enamine) exclusively towards the other ketone. The phenylhydrazone therefore forms only the enamine we want.

In this case, the Fischer indole reaction was catalysed by a Lewis acid, ZnCl₂, and base-catalysed methylation followed. The final stages are summarized below.

In the worst case, there is no such simple distinction between the two sites for enamine formation and we must rely on other methods of control. The non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug indomethacin is a good example. Removing the N-acyl group reveals an indole with substituents in both halves of the molecule.
The benzene ring portion is symmetrical and is ideal for the Fischer synthesis but the right-hand half must come from an unsymmetrical open-chain keto-acid. Is it possible to control such a synthesis?

The Fischer indole is acid-catalysed so we must ask: on what side of the ketone is enolization (and therefore enamine formation) expected in acid solution? The answer (see Chapter 20) is away from the methyl group and into the alkyl chain. This is what we want and the reaction does indeed go this way. In fact, the tert-butyl ester is used instead of the free acid.

Acylation at the indole nitrogen atom is achieved with acid chloride in base and removal of the tert-butyl ester gives free indomethacin.

There are many other indole syntheses but we will give a brief mention to only one other, which allows the synthesis of indoles with a different substitution pattern in the benzene ring. If you like names, you may call it the Reissert synthesis, and this is the basic reaction.

Ethoxide is a strong enough base to remove a proton from the methyl group, delocalizing the negative charge into the nitro group. The anion then attacks the reactive diester (diethyl oxalate) and is acylated by it.
The rest of the synthesis is more straightforward: the nitro group can be reduced to an amine, which immediately forms an enamine by intramolecular attack on the more reactive carbonyl group (the ketone) to give the aromatic indole. Since the nitro compound is made by nitration of a benzene ring, the preferred symmetry is very different from that needed for the Fischer synthesis. Nitration of \( \text{para-xylene} \) (1,4-dimethylbenzene) is a good example.

The ester products we have been using so far can be hydrolysed and decarboxylated by the mechanism described in the last chapter if a free indole is required. In any case, it is not necessary to use diethyl oxalate as the electrophilic carbonyl compound. The synthesis below, using the acetal of DMF as the electrophile, forms part of the synthesis of the strange antibiotic chuangxinmycin.

**Quinolines and isoquinolines**

Quinoline forms part of the structure of quinine, the malaria remedy found in cinchona bark and known since the time of the Incas. The quinoline in quinine has a 6-MeO substituent and a side chain attached to C4. In discussing the synthesis of quinolines, we will be particularly interested in this pattern. This is because the search for anti-malarial compounds continues and other quinolines with similar structures are among the available anti-malarial drugs.

We shall also be very interested in quinolones, analogous to pyridones, with carbonyl groups at positions 2 and 4, as these are useful antibiotics. A simple example is pefloxacin, which has typical 6-F and 7-piperazine substituents.
When we consider the synthesis of a quinoline, the obvious disconnections are, first, the C–N bond in the pyridine ring and, then, the C–C bond that joins the side chain to the benzene ring. We will need a three-carbon (C₃) synthon, electrophilic at both ends, which will yield two double bonds after incorporation. The obvious choice is a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound.

![imine](image)

The choice of an aromatic amine is a good one as the NH₂ group reacts well with carbonyl compounds and it activates the ortho position to electrophilic attack. However, the dialdehyde is malonic dialdehyde, a compound that does not exist, so some alternative must be found. If the quinoline is substituted in the 2- and 4-positions this approach looks better.

![imine](image)

The initially formed imine will tautomerize to a conjugated enamine and cyclization now occurs by electrophilic aromatic substitution. The enamine will normally prefer to adopt the first configuration shown in which cyclization is not possible, and (perhaps for this reason or perhaps because it is difficult to predict which quinoline will be formed from an unsymmetrical 1,3-dicarbonyl compound) this has not proved a very important quinoline synthesis. However, the synthetic plan is sound, and we shall describe two important variants on this theme, one for quinolines and one for quinolones.

![imine](image)

In the synthesis of pyridines it proved advantageous to make a dihydropyridine and oxidize it to a pyridine afterwards. The same idea works well in probably the most famous quinoline synthesis, the Skraup reaction. The diketone is replaced by an unsaturated carbonyl compound so that the quinoline is formed regiospecifically. The first step is conjugate addition of the amine. Under acid catalysis the ketone now cyclizes in the way we have just described to give a dihydroquinoline after dehydration. Oxidation to the aromatic quinoline is an easy step accomplished by many possible oxidants.
Traditionally, the Skraup reaction was carried out by mixing everything together and letting it rip. A typical mixture to make a quinoline without substituents on the pyridine ring would be the aromatic amine, concentrated sulfuric acid, glycerol, and nitrobenzene all heated up in a large flask at over 100 °C with a wide condenser.

The glycerol was to provide acrolein (CH$_2$=CH-CHO) by dehydration, the nitrobenzene was to act as oxidant, and the wide condenser...? All too often Skraup reactions did let rip—with destructive results. A safer approach is to prepare the conjugate adduct first, cyclize it in acid solution, and then oxidize it with one of the reagents we described for pyridine synthesis, particularly quinones such as DDQ.

The more modern style of Skraup synthesis is used to make 8-quinolinol or 'oxine'. ortho-Aminophenol has only one free position ortho to the amino group and is very nucleophilic, so acrolein can be used in weak acid with only a trace of strong acid. Iron(III) is the oxidant, with a bit of boric acid for luck, and the yield is excellent.

Quinolones also come from anilines by cyclization to an ortho position

The usual method for making quinolone antibiotics is possible because they all have a carboxylic acid in the 3-position. The disconnection we used for quinoline suggests a rather unstable malonic ester derivative as starting material.

In fact, the enol ether of this compound is easily made from diethyl malonate and ethyl orthoformate [HC(OEt)$_3$]. The aromatic amine reacts with this compound by an addition–elimination sequence, giving an enamine that cyclizes on heating. This time the geometry of the enamine is not a concern.
For examples of quinolone antibiotics we can choose ofloxacin, whose synthesis was discussed in detail in Chapter 22, and rosoxacin, whose synthesis is discussed below. Both molecules contain the same quinolone carboxylic acid framework, outlined in black, with another heterocyclic system at position 7 and various other substituents here and there.

To make rosoxacin two heterocyclic systems must be constructed. Workers at the pharmaceutical company Sterling decided to build the pyridine in an ingenious version of the Hantzsch synthesis using acetylenic esters on 3-nitrobenzaldehyde. The ammonia was added as ammonium acetate. Oxidation with nitric acid made the pyridine, hydrolysis of the esters and decarboxylation removed the acid groups, and reduction with Fe(II) and HCl converted the nitro group into the amino group required for the quinolone synthesis.

Now the quinolone synthesis can be executed with the same reagents we used before and all that remains is ester hydrolysis and alkylation at nitrogen. Notice that the quinolone cyclization could in theory have occurred in two ways as the two positions ortho to the amino group are different. In practice cyclization occurs away from the pyridine ring as the alternative quinolone would be impossibly crowded.

Since quinolones, like pyridones, can be converted into chloro-compounds with POCl₃, they can be used in nucleophilic substitution reactions to build up more complex quinolines.
We will give just one important synthesis of isoquinolines here. It is a synthesis of a dihydroisoquinoline by what amounts to an intramolecular Vilsmeier reaction in which the electrophile is made from an amide and POCl₃. Oxidation (in this case a dehydrogenation with Pd(0)) gives the quinoline.

More heteroatoms in fused rings mean more choice in synthesis

The imidazo-pyridazine ring system forms the basis for a number of drugs in human and animal medicine. The synthesis of this system uses the chemistry discussed in Chapter 29 to build the pyridazine ring. There we established that it was easy to make dichloropyridazines and to displace the chlorine atoms one by one with different nucleophiles. Now we will move on from these intermediates to the bicyclic system.

A 2-bromo-acid derivative is the vital reagent. It reacts at the amino nitrogen atom with the carbonyl group and at the pyridazine ring nitrogen atom with the alkyl halide. This is the only way the molecule can organize itself into a ten-electron aromatic system.

In Chapter 29 we also gave the structure of timolol, a thiadiazole-based β-blocker drug for reduction of high blood pressure. This compound has an aromatic 1,2,5-thiadiazole ring system and a saturated morpholine as well as an aliphatic side chain. Its synthesis relies on ring formation by rather a curious method followed by selective nucleophilic substitution, rather in the style of the last synthesis. The aromatic ring is made by the action of S₂Cl₂ on ‘cyanamide’.

This reaction must start by attack of the amide nitrogen on the electrophilic sulfur atom. Cyclization cannot occur while the linear nitrile is in place so chloride ion (from disproportionation of CIS⁻) must first attack CN. Thereafter cyclization is easy.
Reaction with epichlorohydrin followed by amine displacement puts in one of the side chains and nucleophilic substitution with morpholine on the ring completes the synthesis.

Summary: the three major approaches to the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles

We end this chapter with summaries of the three major strategies in the synthesis of heterocycles:

- ring construction by ionic reactions
- ring construction by cycloadditions
- modification of existing rings by electrophilic or nucleophilic aromatic substitution or by lithiation and reaction with electrophiles.

We will summarize the different applications of these strategies, and also suggest cases for which each strategy is not suitable. This section revises material from Chapter 29 as well since most of the ring modifications appear there.

Ring construction by ionic cyclization

The first strategy you should try out when faced with the synthesis of an aromatic heterocyclic ring is the disconnection of bonds between the heteroatom or atoms and carbon, with the idea of using the heteroatoms as nucleophiles and the carbon fragment as a double electrophile.

Heterocycles with one heteroatom

five-membered rings

- pyrroles, thiophenes, and furans ideally made by this strategy from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds
six-membered rings
• pyridines made by this strategy from 1,5-dicarbonyl compounds with oxidation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{O} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{O} \text{R}_1 \text{O}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{NH}_3}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{[O]}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\]
dihydropyridines pyridines

Heterocycles with two adjacent heteroatoms
five-membered rings
• pyrazoles and isoxazoles ideally made by this strategy from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{N} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\text{pyrazoles}

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{O} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{O} \text{R}_1 \text{O}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{HO} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\text{isoxazoles}

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{O} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{O} \text{R}_1 \text{O}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{HS} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{S} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{S}
\end{array}
\text{isothiazoles}
\]

Note. This strategy is not suitable for isothiazoles as ‘thiolamine’ does not exist

six-membered rings
• pyrimidines ideally made by this strategy from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{[O]}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\]
an amidine a pyrimidine

Heterocycles with two non-adjacent heteroatoms
five-membered rings
• imidazoles and thiazoles ideally made by this strategy from α-halocarbonyl compound

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{R}_1 \text{S} \text{Br} \xrightarrow{\text{R}_3}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\text{a thiazole}

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br} \text{R}_3}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\text{an imidazole}
\]

Note. This strategy is not suitable for oxazoles as amides are not usually reactive enough: cyclization of acylated carbonyl compounds is usually preferred

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{HN} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^\text{+}}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\text{an oxazole}
\]

six-membered rings
• pyrimidines ideally made by this strategy from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{R}_1}}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}_1 \text{N} \text{R}_2 \\
\text{R}_1 \text{R}_2 \text{N}
\end{array}
\]
an amidine a pyrimidine
Ring construction by cycloadditions

1,3-dipolar cycloaddition reactions

- ideal for the construction of isoxazoles, 1,2,3-triazoles, and tetrazoles

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{1,3-dipolar cycloaddition} & \quad \text{heat} \\
\text{an isoxazole} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{1,3-dipolar cycloaddition} & \quad \text{heat} \\
a \text{1,2,3-triazole} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{1,3-dipolar cycloaddition} & \quad \text{heat} \\
a \text{tetrazole} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

...or sigmatropic rearrangements

- a special reaction that is the vital step of the Fischer indole synthesis

Ring modification

Electrophilic aromatic substitution

- works very well on pyrroles, thiophenes, and furans, where it occurs best in the 2- and 5-positions and nearly as well in the 3- and 4-positions
- often best to block positions where substitution not wanted
- works well for indole—occurs only in the 3-position but the electrophile may migrate to the 2-position

Nucleophilic aromatic substitution

- works particularly well for pyridine and quinoline where the charge in the intermediate can rest on nitrogen
• especially important for pyridones and quinolones with conversion to the chloro-compound and displacement of chlorine by nucleophiles and, for quinolines, displacement of fluorine atoms on the benzene ring

\[ \text{N} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Nu}^\ominus \]

• works well for the six-membered rings with two nitrogens (pyridazines, pyrimidines, and piperazines) in all positions

\[ \text{F} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Nu} \]

Lithiation and reaction with electrophiles

• works well for pyrrole (if NH blocked), thiophene, or furan next to the heteroatom. Exchange of Br or I for Li works well for most electrophiles providing any acidic hydrogens (including the NH in the ring) are blocked

\[ \text{Z} = \text{NR}, \text{S}, \text{or O} \quad \text{BuLi} \quad \text{Z} \quad \text{E}^\ominus \]

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics

Connections

Building on
- Acetals and hemiacetals ch11
- Stereochemistry ch13
- The conformation of cyclic molecules ch16
- Stereospecific elimination reactions ch17
- Proton NMR ch18
- Aldol reactions ch26
- Aromatic heterocycles ch29 & ch30

Arriving at
- Putting a heteroatom in a ring changes the reactivity of the heteroatom
- Ring-opening reactions: the effect of ring strain
- Lone pairs in heterocycles have precise orientations
- Some substituents prefer to be axial on some six-membered saturated heterocycles
- Interactions of lone pairs with empty orbitals can control conformation
- Ring-closing reactions: why five-membered rings form quickly and four-membered rings form slowly
- Baldwin’s rules: why some ring closures work well while others don’t work at all
- How conformation and ring size affect coupling constants
- Geminal coupling
- The relationship between symmetry and NMR spectra: diastereotopicity

Looking forward to
- Stereoselectivity in cyclic systems ch32
- Diastereoselectivity ch33
- Asymmetric synthesis ch41
- Chemistry of life ch42

Introduction

Rings make a difference to the way molecules react and the ways they can be made, and we have just devoted two chapters to the reactions and synthesis of flat, aromatic heterocycles. In this chapter and the one that follows we shall continue to look at rings, but not flat aromatic ones. Once you put saturated atoms into rings the rings become flexible and display interesting chemical features. We introduced ways of talking about conformation in rings in Chapter 16, and we will revisit ideas from that chapter—in particular we will build on the idea that rings make it easier to think about stereochemistry because they restrict the number of conformations a molecule can adopt. We will also introduce a theme which we develop over the next few chapters of the book: stereoselectivity—how to make single diastereoisomers of a product.

It may seem strange that heterocycles—rings containing not just carbon atoms, but oxygen, nitrogen, or sulfur as well—deserve three whole chapters, but you will soon see that this is justified both by the sheer number and variety of heterocycles that exist and by their special chemical features. We dealt with the special stereochemical features of aromatic heterocycles...
in the last two chapters, in particular their distinctive reactivity, stability, and ease of synthesis. Some examples of saturated heterocycles, a few of which may be familiar to you, are shown below.

The saturated heterocyclic rings are shown in black, and names for the most important ring types are given: some (like piperidine, morpholine) you will need to remember; others (tetrahydrofuran, pyrrolidine) are more obviously derived from the names for aromatic heterocycles you met in the last chapter. Some of these compounds (nicotine, coniine, cocaine) are plant products falling into the class called alkaloids, which are discussed in Chapter 42. Another important class of saturated heterocycles, sugars, will also appear in Chapter 42.

But what are the ‘special chemical features’ of saturated heterocycles? Putting a heteroatom into a ring does two important things, and these lead to the most important new topics in this chapter.

- Firstly, the heteroatom makes the ring easy to make by a ring-closing reaction, or (in some cases) easy to break by a ring-opening reaction. Closing and opening reactions of rings are subject to constraints that you will need to know about, and the principles that govern these reactions are discussed later in the chapter.
- Secondly, the ring fixes the orientation of the heteroatom—and, in particular, the orientation of its lone pairs—relative to the atoms around it. This has consequences for the reactivity and conformation of the heterocycle which can be explained using the concept of stereoelectronics.

*Stereoelectronic effects are chemical consequences of the arrangement of orbitals in space.*

**Reactions of saturated heterocycles**

**Saturated nitrogen heterocycles: amines, but more nucleophilic**

In many reactions the simple saturated nitrogen heterocycles—piperidine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, and morpholine—behavior simply as secondary amines that happen to be cyclic.
They do the sorts of things that other amines do, acting as nucleophiles in addition and substitution reactions. Morpholine, for example, is acylated by 3,4,5-trimethoxybenzoyl chloride to form the tranquillizer and muscle relaxant trimetozine, and N-methylpiperazine can be alkylated in an $S_N1$ reaction with diphenylmethyl chloride to give the travel-sickness drug cyclizine.

The addition of pyrrolidine to aldehydes and ketones is a particularly important reaction because it leads to enamines, the valuable enol equivalents discussed in Chapter 25.

Enamines formed from pyrrolidine and piperidine are particularly stable because pyrrolidine and piperidine are rather more nucleophilic than comparable acyclic amines such as diethylamine. This is a general feature of cyclic amines (and cyclic ethers, too, as you will see shortly), and is a steric effect. The alkyl substituents, being tied back into a ring, are held clear of the nucleophilic lone pair, allowing it to approach an electrophile without hindrance. This effect is well illustrated by comparing the rates of reaction of methyl iodide with three amines—tertiary this time. The two cyclic compounds are bridged—quinuclidine is a bridged piperidine while the diamine known as DABCO (1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane) is a bridged piperazine. The table below shows the relative rates, along with $pK_a$ values, for triethylamine, quinuclidine, and DABCO.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Relative Rate</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of $R_3NH^+$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>triethylamine</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quinuclidine</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABCO</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8.8 (and 3.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$Relative rate of reaction with MeI in MeCN at 20°C.
Quinuclidine and DABCO are 40–60 times more reactive than triethylamine. This is again due to the way the ring structures keep the nitrogen’s substituents away from interfering with the lone pair as it attacks the electrophile. You should contrast the effect that the cyclic structure has on the basicity of the amines: none! Triethylamine and quinuclidine are equally basic and, as you can see in the margin, so (more or less) are diethylamine, dibutylamine, and piperidine. A proton is so small that it cares very little whether the alkyl groups are tied back or not.

Much more important in determining $pK_a$ is how electron-rich the nitrogen is, and this is the cause of the glaring discrepancy between the basicity of quinuclidine and that of DABCO, or between the basicities of piperidine ($pK_a$ 11.2) and morpholine ($pK_a$ 9.8) or piperazine ($pK_a$ 8.4). The extra heteroatom, through an inductive effect, withdraws electron density from the nitrogen atom, making it less nucleophilic and less basic. In this sense, morpholine can be a very useful base, less basic than triethylamine but somewhat more so than pyridine ($pK_a$ 5.2). Notice how much lower is the second $pK_a$ (that is, the $pK_a$ for protonation of the second nitrogen) of the diamines DABCO and piperazine: the protonated nitrogen of the monoprotonated amine withdraws electrons very effectively from the unprotonated one.

The Baylis–Hillman reaction

One of the most important uses of DABCO is in the Baylis–Hillman reaction, discovered in 1972 by two chemists at the Celanese Corporation in New York. Their reaction is a modification of the aldol reaction (Chapter 26), except that instead of the enolate being formed by deprotonation it is formed by conjugate addition. You have seen the enolate products of conjugate addition being trapped by alkylating agents in Chapter 25, but in the Baylis–Hillman reaction the electrophile is an aldehyde and is present right from the start of the reaction, which is done just by stirring the components at room temperature. Here is a typical example.

The reaction starts with the (relatively nucleophilic) DABCO undergoing conjugate addition to ethyl acrylate. This will form an enolate that can then attack the acetaldehyde in an aldol reaction.

E1cB eliminations often follow aldol reactions and lead to $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated products. In this case, though, DABCO is a much better leaving group than the hydroxyl group, so enolization leads to loss of DABCO in an E1cB elimination, giving the product of the reaction. DABCO is recovered and is a catalyst.

A disadvantage of the Baylis–Hillman reaction is its rate: typically, several days’ reaction time are required. Pressure helps speed the reaction up, but as a catalyst DABCO is about the best. It is nucleophilic because of the ‘tied back’ alkyl groups, but importantly it is a good leaving group because it has a relatively low $pK_a$, meaning that it leaves easily in the last step. As you have seen before, good nucleophiles are usually bad leaving groups, although there are many exceptions. DABCO’s combination of nucleophilicity and leaving group ability is perfect here.
The exposed nature of the nitrogen atom in cyclic amines means that nitrogen heterocycles are very frequently encountered in drug molecules, particularly those operating on the central nervous system (cocaine, heroin, and morphine all contain nitrogen heterocycles, as do codeine and many tranquillizers, such as Valium). But the ring can also be used as a support for adding substituents that hinder the nitrogen’s lone pair. Just as the nitrogen atom of piperidine is permanently exposed, the nitrogen atom of 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine (TMP) nestles deep in a bed of methyl groups. The lithium salt of TMP (LiTMP) is an analogue of LDA—a base that experiences enormous steric hindrance that can be used in situations where the selectivity even of LDA fails.

Aziridine: ring strain promotes ring opening

Aziridine and azetidine are stable, if volatile, members of the saturated nitrogen heterocycle family, and aziridine has some interesting chemistry of its own. Like pyrrolidine and piperidine, aziridine can be acylated by treatment with an acyl chloride, but the product is not stable. The ring opens with attack of chloride, a relatively poor nucleophile, and an open-chain secondary amide results.

You can view this ring opening as very similar to the ring opening of an epoxide (Chapter 19)—in particular, a protonated epoxide, in which the oxygen bears a positive charge. The positive charge is very important for aziridine opening because, when the reaction is done in the presence of a base, removal of the proton leads immediately to the neutral acyl aziridine, which is stable.

The ring opening of aziridine is a useful way of making larger heterocycles: anything that puts a positive charge on nitrogen encourages the opening by making N a better leaving group, whether it’s protonation or, as shown below, alkylation. Alkylation of aziridine in base gives the N-substituted aziridine as you might expect, but a second alkylation leads to a positively charged aziridinium salt that opens immediately to a useful bromoamine.
We have just mentioned the protonation of aziridine, and you might imagine from what we said earlier about the comparative nucleophilicity and basicity of nitrogen heterocycles and their acyclic counterparts that aziridine will be even more nucleophilic than pyrrolidine, and about as basic. Well, it isn’t. The idea that ‘tying back’ the alkyl groups increases nucleophilicity is only valid for unstrained five or six-membered rings: with small rings another effect takes over.

Aziridine is, in fact, much less basic than pyrrolidine and piperidine: the $pK_a$ for its protonation is only 8.0. This is much closer to the $pK_a$ of a compound containing an $sp^2$ hybridized nitrogen atom—the imine in the margin, for example. This is because the nitrogen’s lone pair is in an orbital with much more s character than is typical for an amine, due to the three-membered ring. This is an effect we have discussed before, in Chapter 18, and you should re-read pp. 412–415 if you need to refresh your memory. There we compared three-membered rings with alkynes, explaining that both could be deprotonated relatively easily. The anion carries a negative charge in a low-energy orbital with much s character: the same type of orbital carries aziridine’s lone pair.

The s character of the aziridine nitrogen’s lone pair has other effects too. The lone pair interacts very poorly with an adjacent carbonyl group, so N-acyl aziridines such as the one you saw on p. 973 behave not at all like amides. The nitrogen atom is pyramidal and not planar, and the stretching frequency of the C=O bond (1706 cm$^{-1}$) is much closer to that of a ketone (1710 cm$^{-1}$) than that of an amide (1650 cm$^{-1}$).

The s character of the lone pair means that the nitrogen atom inverts very slowly, rather like a phosphine. Usually it is not possible for nitrogen to be a stereogenic centre because inversion is too rapid—the transition state for nitrogen inversions (in which the lone pair is in a p orbital) is low in energy. But with an aziridine, getting the lone pair into a p orbital requires much more activation energy, so nitrogen can be stereogenic. The two stereoisomers of the N-substituted aziridine in the margin can be separated and isolated.

### Oxygen heterocycles

Ring-opening chemistry is characteristic of oxygen heterocycles too, and there is no need for us to revisit epoxide opening here. Epoxides are particularly reactive because ring-opening releases ring strain, driving the reaction forward. In general, though, oxygen heterocycles, as cyclic ethers, are relatively unreactive: ethers are the least reactive of all the common functional groups. This is one of the main reasons why THF and dioxane are such important solvents. A second reason is that they solvate organometallics by donating a lone pair to stabilize an electron-deficient metal cation (Li, for example). Cyclic ethers are better donors (more nucleophilic) than acyclic ones for the same reason that cyclic amines are more nucleophilic than acyclic ones.

This interaction of the lone pair with a Lewis acid can be exploited to make ethers more reactive. BF$_3$ is commonly used to activate cyclic ethers towards nucleophilic attack, and even with epoxides it increases the rate and yield of the reaction when organometallic reagents are used as nucleophiles. BuLi does not react with oxetane unless a Lewis acid, such as BF$_3$, is added, when it opens the four-membered ring to give a quantitative yield of $n$-heptanol. Without ring strain to help the reaction along, THF, by contrast, gives only a low yield of the product even with a Lewis acid.
A more common (if often unwanted) reaction between BuLi and THF is not nucleophilic attack, but deprotonation. You will have noticed that reactions involving BuLi in THF are invariably carried out at temperatures of 0 °C or below—usually –78 °C. This is because, at temperatures above 0 °C, deprotonation of THF begins to take place. The deprotonated THF is unstable, and it undergoes a reaction we call a reverse [2 + 3] cycloaddition (see Chapter 34). Here is the mechanism (we have represented the organolithium as an anion to help with the arrows). The products are: (1) the (much less basic) enolate of acetaldehyde and (2) ethylene. The first tends to polymerize, and the second usually (but see the box below!) evaporates from the reaction mixture.

The case of the unexpected ethyl group

Some chemists in Belgium were studying the reactions of the organolithium shown here to find out whether the anionic centre would attack the double bond to form a five-membered ring. The reaction was slow, and they stirred the organolithium in THF for 6 hours at 0 °C. When they worked the reaction up they found no five-membered ring products: instead they got a compound with an extra ethyl group! They showed that this ethyl group, in fact, comes from THF: the organolithium did not add to the double bond in the same molecule, but it did add slowly and in low yield to the double bond of the ethylene that is formed by decomposition of THF.

The most common use of tetrahydropyran derivatives is as protecting groups: you met this in Chapter 23.

Sulfur heterocycles

As you saw in Chapter 27, sulfur stabilizes an adjacent anion, meaning that sulfur heterocycles are much easier to deprotonate than THF. The most important of these contains two sulfur atoms: dithiane. Deprotonation of dithiane occurs in between the two heteroatoms, and you saw some chemistry that arises from this on p. 661. The series of reactions below illustrates nicely both dithiane chemistry and the ring opening of oxygen heterocycles in the presence of BF₃. This substituted derivative of dithiane is deprotonated by BuLi to give a nucleophilic organolithium that will attack electrophiles—even oxygen heterocycles—provided BF₃ is present. The products are formed in excellent yield, even when the electrophile is THP, with no ring strain to drive the reaction. After the addition reaction the dithiane ring can be hydrolysed with mercury(II) to give a ketone carrying other useful functional groups.

THF stability

The half-life of n-BuLi in THF (in the presence of TMEDA) is 40 minutes at 20 °C, 5.5 hours at 0 °C, and 2 days at –20 °C. Diethyl ether is much less readily deprotonated: at 20 °C in ether n-BuLi has a half life of 10 hours. With more basic organolithiums, the rate of decomposition of THF is even faster, and t-BuLi can be used in THF only at –78 °C. At –20 °C t-BuLi has a half-life in THF of only 45 minutes; in ether its half-life at this temperature is 7.5 hours.
Conformation of saturated heterocycles

Using NMR to study conformation: the Karplus relationship

In Chapters 13 and 18 we explained that coupling in NMR spectra is a through-bond (and not a through-space) effect—that is why trans alkenes have bigger coupling constants than cis alkenes, and why axial–axial coupling in six-membered rings is larger than axial–equatorial or equatorial–equatorial coupling. We now need to build some more detail into your understanding of the relationship between conformation and coupling constants so we can use NMR to probe the conformations adopted by saturated rings.

The coupling constants in a cyclohexane tell us that coupling is greatest when the C–H bonds involved are most parallel—in other words when their dihedral angle is close to 180° or 0°. C–H bonds in simple cyclohexanes can have dihedral angles of only 60° or 180°, but by examining coupling constants in a range of other compounds, it is possible to draw up a description of the way coupling varies with dihedral angle. For example, in the bicyclic compound in the margin, the black protons have a dihedral angle close to 90° and the coupling constant is 0 Hz. The complete correlation was worked out by Karplus in the 1960s and is called the Karplus relationship. It is easiest to understand as a graph of $J$ against dihedral angle.

Examine the graph above carefully and note these principal features:

- Coupling is largest at 180° when the orbitals of the two C–H bonds are perfectly parallel (the situation in a trans alkene or the trans-diaxial C–H bonds of a cyclohexane).
- Coupling is nearly as large at 0° when the orbitals are in the same plane but not parallel (the situation in a cis alkene).
- Coupling is zero when the dihedral angle is 90°—orthogonal orbitals do not interact.
- The curve is flattened around 0°, 90°, and 180°—$J$ varies little in these regions from compound to compound.
- The curve slopes steeply at about 60° and 120°—$J$ varies a lot in this region with small changes of angle and from compound to compound.
- Numerical values of $J$ vary with substitution, ring size, etc., but the Karplus relationship still works—it gives good relative values.

The determination of conformation by NMR may determine configuration at the same time. This often occurs when there are two or more substituents on the ring. Here is a simple example: you saw in Chapter 16 that the reduction of 4-t-butylcyclohexanone can be controlled by choice of reagent to give either a cis or a trans alcohol.

---

Dihedral angles

The dihedral angle is obvious in a Newman projection—it is the angle between the two C–H bonds projected on a plane orthogonal to the C–C bond. In a Newman projection this plane is the plane of the paper, and here the angle is 180°.

Another way to think of the dihedral angle is by imagining the C–C bond lying along the spine of a partially opened book. If the C–H bonds are written one on one page and the other on the other, then the dihedral angle is the angle between the pages of the book.
The products are easy to tell apart because the green H appears quite different in the NMR spectrum in the two cases. In one it is quite a fine multiplet; in the other it is much broader.

The bulky t-butyl group always goes equatorial, and each OH group has two identical axial neighbours and two identical equatorial neighbours (two are shown in black in the scheme at the bottom of p. 796—there are two more at the front). Each coloured H appears as a triplet of triplets. In the cis alcohol both couplings are small (2.72 and 3.00 Hz) but in the trans alcohol the axial–axial coupling is much larger (11.1 Hz) than the axial–equatorial (4.3 Hz) coupling.

The same ideas can be used to study conformation in saturated heterocyclic systems. Hydrogenation of the double bond in this unsaturated acetal gives the saturated compound as a single isomer. But which one? Are the two substituents, Me and OEt, cis or trans?

The appearance of the two black hydrogens in the NMR spectrum reveals the answer and also shows what conformation the molecule adopts. There is a 1H signal at 3.95 ppm (which is therefore next to oxygen) and it is a double quartet. It must be the hydrogen next to the methyl group because of the quartet coupling. The quartet coupling constant has the ‘normal’
CHAPTER 31 SATURATED HETEROCYCLES AND STEREOELECTRONICS

\[ \delta_4 \text{H} 3.95, 1\text{H}, \text{dq}, J_9 \text{ and } 6.5 \text{ Hz} \]

\[ \delta_4 \text{H} 4.40, 1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J_9 \text{ and } 2 \text{ Hz} \]

\[ J \text{ value of } 6.5 \text{ Hz}. \text{ The doublet coupling is } 9 \text{ Hz and this is too large to be anything other than an axial–axial coupling. This hydrogen is axial.} \]

There is another 1H signal at 4.40 ppm (next to two oxygens), which is a doublet doublet with \( J = 9 \) and 2 Hz. This must also be an axial proton as it shows an axial–axial (9 Hz) and an axial–equatorial coupling. We now know the conformation of the molecule.

Both black hydrogens are axial so both substituents are equatorial. That also means in this case that they are \textit{cis}. But note that this is because they are both on the same, upper side of the ring, not because they are both equatorial! The hydrogen at the front has two neighbours—an axial (brown) H, \( J = 9 \), and an equatorial (green) H, \( J = 2 \) Hz. All this fits the Karplus relationship as expected. You may have spotted that the H at the back appears to be missing a small coupling to its equatorial neighbour. No doubt it does couple, but that small coupling is not noticed in the eight lines of the double quartet. Small couplings can easily be overlooked.

When this compound is allowed to stand in slightly acidic ethanol it turns into an isomer. This is the \textit{trans} compound and its NMR spectrum is again very helpful. The proton next to the methyl group is more or less the same but the proton in between the two oxygen atoms is quite different. It is at 5.29 ppm and is an unresolved signal of width about 5 Hz. In other words it has no large couplings and must be an equatorial proton. The conformation of the \textit{trans} compound is shown in the margin.

Because coupling constants in six-membered rings are well-defined, the formation of a heterocyclic ring can be used as a tool to determine stereochemistry. Suppose you have one diastereoisomer of a 1,3-diol and you want to find out which stereoisomer it is. You might think of using the NMR coupling constants of the two black protons. But that will do no good because the molecule has no fixed conformation. Free rotation about all the \( \sigma \) bonds means that the Karplus equation cannot be used and a time-averaged value of about 6–7 Hz will probably be observed for both protons regardless of stereochemistry.

Suppose now we make an acetal from the 1,3-diol with benzaldehyde. Acetal formation is under thermodynamic control, so the most stable possible conformation will result with the large phenyl group equatorial and the two R groups either both equatorial or one equatorial and one axial, depending on which diastereoisomer you started with.

\[ \text{This diastereoisomer} \quad \text{gives an acetal in this conformation} \]

\[ \text{this diastereoisomer} \quad \text{gives an acetal in this conformation} \]

Now the molecule has a fixed conformation and the coupling constants of the black Hs to the neighbouring CH\(_2\) group can be determined—an axial H will show one large \( J \) value, an equatorial H only small \( J \) values.

\[ \text{Deducing the stereochemistry of a new antibiotic} \]

Only fully saturated six-membered rings are really chairs or boats. Even with one double bond in the ring, the ring is partly flattened: here we will look at an even flatter example. A unique antibiotic has been discovered in China and called ‘\text{chuangxinmycin}’ (meaning ‘a new kind of mycin’ where mycin = antibiotic). It is unique because it is a sulfur-containing indole: few natural products and no other antibiotics have this sort of structure.

The structure itself was easy to elucidate, but the stereochemistry of the two black hydrogens was not so obvious. The coupling constant \( (J) \) was 3.5 Hz. During attempts to synthesize the compound, Kozikowski hydrogenated the alkene ester below to give an undoubted \textit{cis} product (hydrogenation is \textit{cis} selective: see Chapter 23, p. 535).

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{chuangxinmycin} & \quad \text{NaOH} \\
\text{Me}^+ & \quad \text{H}_2 \text{O} \\
\text{minor by-product: trans stereoisomer}
\end{align*} \]
The $3J$ coupling between the black hydrogens in this compound was 4.1 Hz, much the same as in the antibiotic and, when the ester group was hydrolysed in aqueous base, the main product was identical to natural chuangxinmycin. However, there was a minor product, which was the trans isomer. It had $3J = 6.0$ Hz. Note how much smaller this value is than the axial–axial couplings of 10 Hz or more in saturated six-membered rings. The flattening of the ring reduces the dihedral angle, reducing the size of $J$.

Coupling constants do not always give unambiguous information about stereochemistry, and in the next section we look at one technique which allows structural information to be extracted from NMR spectra without relying on coupling.

**Determining stereochemistry when coupling constants are no help: the nuclear Overhauser effect**

The coupling constant between the green protons of the compound below is rather large, at 11 Hz—about the same as the trans diaxial coupling in a cyclohexane. The Karplus relationship suggests the green protons must therefore spend much of their time with their bonds arranged with a dihedral angle close to 180°, and from this we can deduce that the compound has the conformation, as well as the configuration, shown. A more difficult problem is the assignment of the stereochemistry of the elimination product from this bromoamine and base. It's not a simple question, because the elimination also involves rearrangement of the amino group. The product is an alkene with two possible geometries.

Usually we would use coupling constants to determine alkene geometry, but they are no use here as there is only one proton on the alkene: it will be a singlet in both compounds. In such cases, we can make use of a quirk of NMR known as the **nuclear Overhauser effect** (NOE). NOE is rather different from coupling in the information it provides: it tells us which hydrogens are close in space rather than their relationship through bonds as revealed by coupling constants.

The details of the origin of the nuclear Overhauser effect are beyond the scope of this book, but we can give you a general idea of what the effect is. As you learned in Chapters 3 and 13, when a proton NMR spectrum is acquired, a pulse of radio frequency electromagnetic radiation jolts the spins of the protons in the molecule into a higher energy state. The signal we observe is generated by those spins dropping back to their original states. So far we have assumed that the drop back down is spontaneous, just like a rock falling off a cliff. In fact it isn’t—something needs to ‘help’ the protons to drop back again—a process called relaxation. And that ‘something’ is other nearby magnetically active nuclei—usually more protons. Notice nearby—nearby in space not through bonds. With protons, relaxation is always fast, and the number of nearby protons does not affect the appearance of the NMR spectrum.

Although in a normal spectrum peak intensity is independent of the number of nearby protons, by using methods whose description is beyond the scope of this book it is possible to modify the intensity of the peaks very slightly according to the number of protons that are nearby. The basis of the method is that certain protons (or groups of identical protons) are irradiated selectively (in other words, they are jolted into their high energy state and held there by a pulse of radiation at exactly the right frequency—not the broad pulse needed in a normal NMR experiment). Under the conditions of the experiment, this causes protons that were relying on those irradiated protons to relax them to appear as a slightly more intense (by maybe just a few per cent) peak in the NMR spectrum. This effect is known as the nuclear Overhauser effect, and the increase in intensity of the peak the nuclear Overhauser enhancement. Both are shortened to ‘NOE’.

**Why you can’t integrate $^{13}$C NMR spectra**

Relaxation is the real reason why you can’t integrate $^{13}$C signals. Relaxation of $^{13}$C is slow, but is fastest with lots of nearby protons. This is the reason that you will often find that $–\text{CH}_3$ groups show strong signals in the $^{13}$C NMR, while quaternary carbons, with no attached protons, show weak ones: quaternary carbons relax only slowly, so we don’t detect such an intense peak. Allowing plenty of time for all $^{13}$C atoms to relax between pulses gives more proportionally sized peaks, but at the expense of a very long NMR acquisition time.
All you need to be aware of at this stage is that irradiating protons in an NOE experiment gives rise to enhancements at other protons that are nearby in space—no coupling is required, and NOE is not a through-bond phenomenon. The effect also drops off very rapidly: the degree of enhancement is proportional to $1/r^6$ (where $r$ is the distance between the protons) so moving two protons twice as far apart decreases the enhancement one can give to the other by a factor of 64. NOE spectra are usually presented as differences: the enhanced spectrum minus the unenhanced, so that the small enhancements of intensity in the peaks of certain protons can be spotted immediately.

Applying NOE to the problem in hand solves the structure. If the protons next to the nitrogen atom in the piperidine ring are irradiated, the signal for the alkene proton increases in intensity, so these two groups of protons must be near in space. The compound is the $E$ alkene.

Data from NOE experiments nicely supplement information from coupling constants in the determination of three-dimensional stereochemistry too. Reduction of this bicyclic ketone with a bulky hydride reducing agent gives one diastereoisomer of the alcohol, but which? Irradiation of the proton next to the OH group leads to an NOE to the green proton. This suggests that the two protons are on the same side of the molecule and that reduction has occurred by hydride delivery to the face of the ketone opposite the two methyl groups on the three-membered ring.

A combination of coupling constants and NOE effects is routinely used to assign the stereochemistry of reaction products.

Heteroatoms in rings have axial and equatorial lone pairs

To a first approximation, the conformation of five- and six-membered saturated heterocycles follows very much the same principles as the conformation of carbocyclic compounds that we detailed in Chapter 16. For dithiane the conformation is as shown in the margin. Since the sulfur atoms have lone pairs, they too occupy axial and equatorial positions. The same is true of dioxane or of piperidine.

We have coloured the lone pairs green or black according to whether they are axial or equatorial, but you can also consider the colour coding in a different way: black lone pairs are parallel with C–C or C–heteroatom bonds in the ring; green lone pairs are parallel with axial C–H bonds outside the ring, or, if the ring has substituents, with the bonds to those substituents. This substituted tetrahydropyran illustrates all this. Notice that the equatorial substituents next to the heteroatom are parallel with neither the green nor the black lone pair.

Why is this important? There are many reactions in which lone pairs have an important role to play. For example, in an acetal hydrolysis, stabilization of the forming positive charge by an adjacent lone pair facilitates the elimination step of the mechanism. Let’s consider what happens in this acetal hydrolysis where the acetal is a saturated heterocycle. From Chapter 11, you expect this to be the mechanism:
Yet when we try to draw the conformation of the lone pairs we run into a problem: neither overlaps with the C–O bond that is breaking and so neither can donate its electron density into the C–O $\sigma^*$. Another way of looking at this is to say that the intermediate oxonium ion—with a C=O double bond formed by one of the oxygen’s lone pairs—would be extremely strained. Not surprisingly, the rate of hydrolysis of this acetal is very slow compared with similar ones in which overlap between the oxygen lone pair and the C–O $\sigma^*$ is possible. The acetal on the right hydrolyses about $10^{10}$ times faster.

You have just seen that overlap between orbitals governs NMR coupling constants; other situations where orbital overlap is important are:

- E2 elimination reactions (Chapter 17)
- reactions of cyclic molecules (Chapter 32)
- the Felkin–Anh transition state conformation (Chapter 33)
- fragmentations and rearrangements (Chapter 36).

Together, these effects are called stereoelectronic effects because they all depend on the orientation of orbitals.

Some substituents of saturated heterocycles prefer to be axial: the anomeric effect

Many of the stereoelectronic effects in the list above govern reactivity, but the next section will deal with how stereoelectronic effects affect structure—and in particular conformation. Some of the most important saturated oxygen heterocycles are the sugars. Glucose is a cyclic hemiacetal—a pentasubstituted tetrahydropyran if you like—whose major conformation in solution is shown below. About two-thirds of glucose in solution exists as this stereoisomer, but hemiacetal formation and cleavage is rapid, and this is in equilibrium with a further one-third that carries the hemiacetal hydroxyl group axial (<1% is in the open-chain form).

Having read Chapter 16 you will not be surprised that glucose prefers all its substituents to be equatorial. For four of them, of course, there is no choice: they are either all-equatorial or all-axial, and the only way they can get from one to the other is by ring-flipping. But for the fifth substituent, the hydroxyl group next to the ring oxygen (known as the anomeric hydroxyl group), a choice between axial or equatorial is made available by hemiacetal cleavage and re-formation—it can invert its configuration. What is perhaps surprising is that the equatorial preference of this hydroxyl group is so small—only 2.1. Even more surprising is that, for most derivatives of glucose, the anomeric substituents prefer to be axial rather than equatorial.
Move away from glucose and the effect is still there in other substituted tetrahydro-
pyrans. Listed below are the NMR signals of the chloro compound in the margin. There are
now only two possible conformations (no configurational changes are possible because
this is not a hemiacetal)—both shown—and from the NMR spectrum you should be able
to work out which one this compound has.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>δ</th>
<th>J, Hz</th>
<th>H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.78</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>H1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.03</td>
<td></td>
<td>H2, H3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.86</td>
<td></td>
<td>H4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.37</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>H5a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>H5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>OAc × 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The key point is that axial–axial couplings are large (>8 Hz, say), even with adjacent electro-
negative atoms (which tend to lower coupling constants). So if H1 were an axial proton, you
would expect it to have a large coupling to H2. But it doesn’t—it couples to H2 with J of only
2.0 Hz. (The other coupling is a W-coupling to H3, also of 2.0 Hz: see p. 296.) Similarly, we
know that the 12.9 Hz coupling shared by the two H5 protons must be a geminal (J) coupling.
One of H5a or H5b must be axial, yet both couple to H4 with J < 4 Hz, so H4 cannot be axial.
With this evidence, we have to conclude that H1 and H4 (and therefore H2 and H3) are equa-
torial, so the compound must exist mainly in the all-axial conformation. (The 0.6 Hz cou-
pling to H5b is another W-coupling, and shows that H5b is the equatorial proton and H5a
therefore the axial one.) This axial preference is called the anomeric effect.

**The anomeric effect**

In general, any tetrahydropyran bearing an electronegative substituent in the 2-position will
prefer that substituent to be axial. This is known as the anomeric effect.

But why? This goes against all of what we said in Chapter 16 about axial substituents being
more hindered, making conformations carrying axial substituents disfavoured. The key again
is stereoelectronics, and we can now link up with the message we left you with at the end of the
last section: elimination reactions are possible only when the orbitals involved are parallel.

An amide is more stable (less reactive) than a ketone because the p orbital of the N and the
low-lying C=O π* of the carbonyl can lie parallel—they can overlap and electron density can
move from nitrogen into the C=O bond, weakening C=O. (Evidence for this comes from the
lower IR stretching frequency of an amide C=O, among other things.) But C–X bonds also
have low-lying antibonding orbitals—the C–X σ*—so we would expect a molecule likewise to
be stabilized if an adjacent heteroatom could donate electrons into this orbital. Take the
generalized tetrahydropyran in the box above, for example, with X=Cl, say. This molecule is
most stable if an oxygen lone pair can overlap with C–Cl σ*, as shown in the margin.

But it can do this only if the chlorine is axial! Remember what we pointed out earlier: the
oxygen’s equatorial lone pairs are parallel with nothing but bonds in the ring, so the oxygen’s
axial lone pair is the only one that can help stabilize the molecule, and it can only do this
when the Cl is axial. Only the axial conformation benefits from the stabilization, and this is
the origin of the anomeric effect.

How shall we represent the stabilization? Comparing again with the amide stabilization, you
might think about how to represent it with curly arrows: this is straightforward with the amide
and you have seen it many times. But it looks odd with our heterocycle: electron density moves
from O to Cl, and the C–Cl bond is weakened. If the process carried right on, Cl$^-$ would leave.

This is exactly what did happen in the acetal we presented you with as an example on p. 801: only the axial OAr could leave, however, because of the same requirement for overlap with an oxygen lone pair. In the real structure that we are now looking at, the Cl is still there: the C–Cl bond is weaker, and some of the oxygen’s electron density is delocalized on to Cl. This can be seen in crystal structures: compounds exhibiting an anomeric effect have a longer (and therefore weakened) bond outside the ring and a shorter, stronger C–O bond within the ring.

### The anomeric effect in spiroketals

Now that you know about the anomeric effect, you should add it to your mental array of possible ways to explain ‘unexpected’ results. Here is an example. Many fruit flies have pheromones based around a ‘spiroketal’ structure, which we could represent without stereochemistry as shown below. You can imagine the spiroketal (that is, an acetal of a ketone made of two rings joined at a single atom) being made from a dihydroxyketone—and, indeed, this is very often how they are made synthetically. But this is a bad representation because these compounds do have stereochemistry, and the stereochemistry is very interesting.

Let’s start with the simplest example, with R=H (a pheromone of the olive fly). Once you have drawn one ring in its chair conformation, there are three ways of attaching the other ring, shown here. If you think they all look the same, consider the orientation of each C–O bond with respect to the ring that it is not part of: you can have each C–O axial or equatorial, and there are three possible arrangements (three conformations).

Without knowing about the anomeric effect, you would find it hard to predict which conformation is favoured, and, indeed, you might expect to get a mixture of all three. But NMR tells us that this compound exists entirely in one conformation: the last one here, in which each oxygen is axial on the other ring. Only in this conformation can both C–O bonds benefit from an anomeric effect—this is often known as the double anomeric effect.

### Related effects in other types of compounds

The key requirement for the anomeric effect is that there is a heteroatom with a lone pair (O, N, S usually) adjacent to (that is, in a position to interact with) a low-lying antibonding orbital—usually a C–X $\sigma^*$ (where X=halogen or O). The C–X bond doesn’t have to be within the ring—for example, the nitrogen heterocycle on the left prefers to have the R group axial so that the nitrogen gets an equatorial lone pair. Equatorial lone pairs are parallel with bonds within the ring, one of which is C–O, and this conformation is therefore stabilized by an N lone pair/C–O $\sigma^*$ interaction.
It would be a bit much for the 1,3,5-triazine on the right to have all three t-butyl groups axial (too much steric hindrance), but it can get away with having one of them axial, benefitting from the resulting equatorial lone pair, which can overlap with two C–N σ* s in the ring.

It’s not only in six-membered rings that stereoelectronic interactions between filled and unfilled orbitals stabilize some conformations more than others. Steroelectronic effects control the conformations of many types of molecules.

- Any conformation in which a lone pair is anti-periplanar to a low-energy antibonding orbital will be stabilized by a stereoelectronic interaction.

We shall look at three common compounds that are stabilized by stereoelectronic effects: in two cases, the stabilization is specific to one conformation, and we can use stereoelectronics to explain what would otherwise be an unexpected result.

We start with a compound that is so simple that it has only one conformation because it has no rotatable bonds: dichloromethane. You may have wondered why it is that, while methyl chloride (chloromethane) is a reactive electrophile that takes part readily in substitution reactions, dichloromethane is so unreactive that it can be used as a solvent in which substitution reactions of other alkyl halides take place. You may think that this is a steric effect: indeed, Cl is bigger than H. But CH₂Cl₂ is much less reactive as an electrophile than ethyl chloride or propyl chloride: there must be more to its unreactivity. And there is: dichloromethane benefits from a sort of ‘permanent anemic effect’. One lone pair of each chlorine is always anti-periplanar to the other C–Cl bond so that there is always stabilization from this effect.

Among the most widespread classes of acyclic compounds to exhibit stereoelectronic control over conformation are acetals. Take the simple acetal of formaldehyde and methanol, for example: what is its conformation? An obvious suggestion is to draw it fully extended so that every group is fully antiperiplanar to every other—this would be the lowest energy conformation of pentane, which you get if you just replace the Os with CH₂s.

The trouble is, in this conformation none of the oxygen lone pairs get the chance to donate into the C–O σ* orbitals. Although putting the bonds anti-periplanar to one another makes steric sense, electronically, the molecule much prefers to put the lone pairs anti-periplanar to the C–O bonds, so the bonds themselves end up gauche (synclinal) to one another. This is known as the gauche effect, but is really just another way in which the stereoelectronic effects that give rise to the anomeric effect turn up in acyclic systems.

Finally, an even more familiar example that you may never have thought about. You are well aware now that amides are planar, with partially double C–N bonds, and that tertiary amides have one alkyl group cis to oxygen and one trans. But what about esters? Esters are less reactive than acyl chlorides because of donation from the oxygen p orbital into the carbonyl π*, so we expect them to be planar too, and they are. But there are two possible planar conformations for an ester: one with R cis to oxygen and one with R trans. Which is preferred?
Here are the two conformations drawn out for ethyl acetate. When the ethyl group (= R) and O are cis, not only can one oxygen lone pair interact with the C=O π*, but the other lone pair can also donate into the π* of the C=O bond. This is not possible when Et and O are trans: they are no longer anti-periplanar. The cis conformation of esters is generally the preferred one, even in formate esters, where the alkyl group ends up in what is clearly a more sterically hindered orientation.

Cyclic esters—lactones—cannot lie cis because of the ring, and this is one of the reasons why lactones are distinctly more reactive than esters and in many reactions behave more like ketones: lactones are quite easy to reduce with NaBH₄, for example.

Making heterocycles: ring-closing reactions

We have talked about the structure of saturated heterocycles, particularly with regard to stereoelectronic control over conformation, and before that we looked at some of their reactions. We will now look at how to make them. By far the most important way of making them is by ring-closing reactions because we can usually use the heteroatom as the nucleophile in an intramolecular substitution or addition reaction. Ring-closing reactions are, of course, just the opposite of the ring-opening reactions we talked about earlier in the chapter, and we can start with a reaction that works well in both directions: ring closure to form an epoxide. You know well that epoxides can be formed using m-CPBA and an alkene, but you have already seen examples where they form by an intramolecular substitution reaction such as this.

The same method can also be used to generate larger cyclic ethers. Oxetane, for example, is conveniently made by adding 3-chloropropyl acetate to hot potassium hydroxide. The first step in this reaction is the hydrolysis of the ester. The alkoxide produced then undergoes an intramolecular substitution reaction to yield oxetane.

Tetrahydropyran was prepared as early as 1890 by a ring closure that occurs when a mixture of 1,5-pentanediol with sulfuric acid is heated.

These are all S₂2 reactions, so you will not be surprised that nitrogen heterocycles can be prepared in the same way. Aziridine itself, for example, was first prepared in 1888 from 2-chloroethylamine. Related reactions can be used to form three-, five-, and six-membered nitrogen heterocycles, but fail to form four-membered rings. In fact, four-membered rings are generally among the hardest of all to form.
To illustrate this, the green columns of the table below show the rates (relative to six-membered ring formation = 1) at which bromoamines of various chain lengths cyclize to saturated nitrogen heterocycles of three to seven members.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ring size</th>
<th>Product9</th>
<th>Relative ratea</th>
<th>Assessment of rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>![H,N]</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>![NH]</td>
<td>0.0001</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>![NH]</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>very fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>![NH]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>![NH]</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>![NH]</td>
<td>0.00015</td>
<td>very slow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Productb</th>
<th>Relative ratea</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![CO2Et]</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![EtO2C]</td>
<td>833</td>
<td>very fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![EtO2C]</td>
<td>0.0087</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![EtO2C]</td>
<td>0.00015</td>
<td>very slow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aRelative to six-membered ring formation; bE = CO2Et

At first sight it may seem that these rates have been produced by a random number generator! There seems to be no rhyme or reason to them, and no consistent trend. To convince you that these numbers mean something, the table also shows, in the orange columns, the relative rates for another ring-closing reaction, this time forming four- to seven-membered rings that are not even heterocycles by intramolecular alkylation of a substituted malonate. Although the numbers are quite different in the two cases, the ups and downs are the same, and the final column summarizes the relative rates. Put another way, a rough guide (only rough—it doesn’t work in all cases) to the rate of ring formation is this.

**Rough guide to the rate of formation of saturated rings**

Fastest 5 > 6 > 3 > 7 > 4 > 8–10 slowest

We show the numbers in colour to highlight the fact that this seemingly illogical ordering of numbers actually conceals two superimposed trends. Once you get to five-membered rings, the rate of formation drops consistently as the ring size moves from ‘normal’ (5 and 6) to ‘medium’ (8 to 13) sized rings. ‘Small’ (3 and 4) rings insert into the sequence after 6.

The reason for the two superimposed trends is two opposing factors. Firstly, small rings form slowly because forming them introduces ring strain. This ring strain is there even at the transition state, raising its energy and slowing down the reaction. The activation energy for forming
a three-membered ring is very high, due to strain, but decreases as the ring gets larger. This explains why three- and four-membered rings don’t fit straightforwardly into the sequence.

But if the reaction rate simply depended on the strain of the product, the slowest reaction would be the formation of the three-membered ring, and six-membered rings (which are essentially strain-free) would form fastest. Yet the data shows that four-membered rings form more slowly than three-membered ones, and five-membered ones faster than six-membered ones. To explain this, we need to remind you of an equation we presented in Chapter 12.

\[ \Delta G^\ddagger = \Delta H^\ddagger - T \Delta S^\ddagger \]

The activation energy barriers \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) of our reactions are made up of two parts: an enthalpy of activation \( \Delta H^\ddagger \), which tells us about the energy required to bring atoms together against the strain and repulsive forces they usually have, and an entropy of activation \( \Delta S^\ddagger \), which tells us about how easy it is to form an ordered transition state from a wriggling and randomly rotating molecule.

\( \Delta G^\ddagger \) for three- and four-membered ring formation is large because \( \Delta H^\ddagger \) is large: energy is needed to bend the molecule into the strained small-ring conformation. \( \Delta H^\ddagger \) for five-, six-, and seven-membered rings is smaller: this is the quantifiable representation of the ‘ring strain’ factor we have just introduced. The second factor is one that depends on \( \Delta S^\ddagger \): how much order must be imposed on the molecule to get it to react. Think of it this way: a long chain has a lot of disorder, and to get its ends to meet up and react means it has to give up a lot of freedom. So, for the formation of medium and large rings, \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) is large and negative, contributing to a large \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) and slow reactions. For three-membered rings, on the other hand, the reacting atoms are already very close together and almost no order needs to be imposed on the molecule to get it to cyclize: rotation about just one bond is all that is needed to ensure that the amine group is in the perfect position to attack the \( \sigma^* \) of the C–Br bond in our example above. \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) is very small for three-membered rings so, while \( \Delta H^\ddagger \) is large, there is little additional contribution from the \( T \Delta S^\ddagger \) term and cyclization is relatively fast. Four-membered rings suffer the worst of both worlds: forming a four-membered ring introduces ring strain (\( \Delta H^\ddagger \)) and requires order (\( \Delta S^\ddagger \)) to be imposed on the molecule. They form very slowly as a result.

These results are summarized in the following box.

**Ring formation**

- Three-membered ring formation is fast—the product is strained so \( \Delta H^\ddagger \) is large but this is offset by the reacting atoms being as close as they can get in a freely rotating chain.
- Four-membered rings form slowly—the product is still significantly strained but the reacting atoms are now not right next to each other to offset this.
- Five-membered ring formation is often fastest of all. Significantly less strain and the ends are still not too far apart.
- Six-membered ring formation experiences no strain but neither does it have the advantage of the ends being close.
- Seven-membered rings and beyond form more slowly as \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) increases.
Thermodynamic control over ring size

In this section we have discussed the rate at which rings form: in other words the kinetics of ring formation. However, there are many ring-forming reactions that are under thermodynamic and not kinetic control. For example, you have already seen that glucose exists predominantly as a six-membered ring in solution. It could also exist as a five-membered ring: it doesn’t because although five-membered rings form faster than six-membered ones, they are usually less stable (remember, a six-membered ring is essentially strain-free). For similar thermodynamic reasons, it doesn’t exist as a seven-membered ring, even though you can draw a reasonable structure for it.

Thermodynamic control is important in other ways in carbohydrate chemistry because control over ring size allows selective protection of the hydroxyl groups of sugars. Compare these two reactions. Both of them give acetals from the same starting material, mannitol.

Don’t be put off by the way in which we have had to twist half the molecule round to draw the left-hand structure: the stereochemistry hasn’t changed. The important thing is that acetone reacts with mannitol to form three five-membered acetals (dioxolanes) while benzaldehyde forms only two six-membered acetals. This is quite a common result: when there is a choice, acetone prefers to react across a 1,2-diol to give a five-membered acetal, while aldehydes prefer to react across a 1,3-diol to form a six-membered acetal. Drawing a conformational diagram of the product on the right helps to explain why. All of the substituents are equatorial, making this a particularly stable structure. Now imagine what would happen if acetone formed this type of six-membered ring acetal. There would always be an axial methyl group, and the six-membered rings would be less stable.

Combatting ΔS‡—the Thorpe–Ingold effect

The rate of ring formation is affected not just by ring size but by substituents on the ring being formed. Compare the following relative rates ($k_{rel}$) for epoxide-forming cyclization reactions. The second looks as though it suffers more steric hindrance but nonetheless it is tens of thousands of times faster!

Adding substituents to other ring-forming reactions makes them go faster too: in the next two examples the products are oxetanes and pyrrolidines.
This effect is quite general, and is known as the Thorpe–Ingold effect after the first chemists to note its existence, in 1915.

> The Thorpe–Ingold effect

The Thorpe–Ingold effect is the way in which substituents on the ring increase the rate, or equilibrium constant, for ring-forming reactions.

As the box says, it’s not only rate that can be affected by additional substitution. Here are the relative equilibrium constants for the formation of an anhydride from a 1,4-dicarboxylic acid (the unsubstituted acid is called succinic acid, and the values are scaled so that $K_{rel}$ for the formation of succinic anhydride is 1). More substituents mean more cyclized product at equilibrium. The Thorpe–Ingold effect is both a kinetic and a thermodynamic phenomenon.

Now we need to explain why this is. The explanation comes in two parts, one of which may be more important than the other, depending on the ring being formed. The first part is more applicable to the formation of small rings, such as the first example we gave you.

If you measure the bond angles of chains of carbon atoms, you expect them to be close to the tetrahedral angle, 109.5°. The crystal structure of the 1,3-dicarboxylic acid in the margin, for example, shows a C–C–C bond angle of 110°. Now imagine adding substituents to the chain. They will repel the carbon atoms already there, and force them a little closer than they were, making the bond angle slightly less. X-ray crystallography tells us that adding two methyl groups to our 1,3-dicarboxylic acid decreases the bond angle by about 4°.

We can assume that the same is true in the alcohol starting materials for the epoxide-forming reactions on p. 808 (we can’t measure the angle directly because the compounds aren’t crystalline). Now consider what happens when both of these alcohols form an epoxide. The bond angle has to become about 60°, which involves about 50° of strain for the first diacid, but only 46° for the second. By distorting the starting material, the methyl groups have made it slightly easier to form a ring.

This part of the argument works only for small rings. For larger rings, we need another explanation, and it involves entropy. We’ll use the pyrrolidine-forming reaction as an example. We have explained the effect of $\Delta S^\circ$ (entropy of activation) on the rate of ring formation: as larger rings form they have to lose more entropy at the transition state, and this contributes to a less favourable $\Delta G^\circ$.
But, when the starting material has more substituents, it starts off with less entropy anyway. More substituents mean that some conformations are no longer accessible to the starting material—the green arcs on the structures on the right above show how the methyl groups hinder rotation of the N and CH₂Br substituents into that region of space. Of those fewer conformations, many approximate to the conformation in the transition state, and moving from starting material to transition state involves a smaller loss of entropy: ΔS‡ is less negative so ΔG‡ (= ΔH‡ – TΔS‡) is more negative and the ring forms faster. The same arguments apply to ΔS for the reaction as a whole (the difference in entropy between starting material and products), so increased substitution favours ring closure even under thermodynamic control.

Baldwin’s rules

Nearly all of the cyclization reactions that we have discussed have been intramolecular S₉2 reactions where one end of the molecule acted as the nucleophile displacing the leaving group on the other end. We kept to this sort of reaction in order to make valid comparisons between different ring sizes. But you can imagine making saturated heterocycles in plenty of other ways—intramolecular substitution at a carbonyl group, for example, such as happens in this lactonization reaction, or intramolecular addition of an oxyanion on to an alkyne.

Cyclization reactions can be classified by a simple system involving: (1) the ring size being formed, (2) whether the bond that breaks as the ring forms is inside (endo) or outside (exo) the new ring, and (3) whether the electrophile is an sp (digonal), sp² (trigonal), or sp³ (tetrahedral) atom. This system places three of the cyclizations just shown in the following classes.

1. The ring being formed has three members; the breaking C–Br bond is outside the new ring (exo); the C carrying Br is a tetrahedral (sp³) atom (tet).

2. The ring being formed has five members; the breaking C=O bond is outside the new ring (exo); the C being attacked is a trigonal (sp²) atom (trig).

3. The ring being formed has six members; the breaking C≡C bond is inside the new ring (endo); the C being attacked is a digonal (sp) atom (dig).

The classes of cyclization reactions are important, not because we have a compulsive Victorian desire to classify everything, but because which class a reaction falls into determines whether or not it is likely to work. Not all cyclizations are successful, even though they may look fine on paper! The guidelines that describe which reactions will work are known as Baldwin’s rules: empirical observations backed up by some sound stereoelectronic reasoning. Reactions can be classified according to these rules as ‘favoured’ and ‘disfavoured’. We will deal with the rules step by step and then summarize them in a table at the end.

Firstly, and not surprisingly (because we have been talking about them for much of this chapter):

- all exo-tet cyclizations are favoured

and, similarly (again you can find many examples in this book):

- all exo-trig cyclizations are favoured
Despite the variation in rate we have described for this type of reaction, *exo-tet* cyclizations have no stereoelectronic problems: the lone pair and the C–X σ* (X is the leaving group) can overlap successfully irrespective of ring size. The ring closures in the table on p. 809 all fall into this category. The same is true for *exo-trig* reactions: it is easy for the nucleophilic lone pair to overlap with the C=X π* to form a new bond. Examples include lactone formation such as the one on p. 810.

*Endo-tet* reactions are rather different. For a start:

- **5 and 6-endo-tet are disfavoured.**

*Endo-tet* reactions would not actually make a ring, but they fall conveniently into the system and we will look at them here. Here is a reaction that looks as though it contradicts what we have just said. The arrows in the reasonable-looking mechanism on the right describe a 6-endo-tet process because the breaking Me–O bond is within the six-membered ring transition state (even if no ring is formed).

![6-endo-tet reaction](image)

But Eschenmoser showed that, for all its appeal (intramolecular reactions usually outpace all alternatives), this mechanism is wrong. He mixed together the starting material for the reaction above with the hexadeuterated compound shown below, and re-ran the reaction. If the reaction had been intramolecular, the products would have contained either no deuterium, or six deuteriums. In the event, the product mixture contained about 25% of each of these compounds, with a further 50% containing three deuteriums. The products cannot have been formed intramolecularly, and this distribution is exactly what would be expected from an intermolecular reaction.

![Intermolecular reaction](image)

With *endo-trig* reactions, whether they work or not depends on the ring size.

- **3-, 4-, and 5-endo-trig are disfavoured; 6 and 7-endo-trig are favoured.**

The most important case in the *endo-trig* class is the disfavoured 5-endo-trig reaction and, if there is one message you take away from this section, it should be that 5-endo-trig reactions are disfavoured. The reason we say this is that 5-endo-trig cyclizations are reactions that look perfectly fine on paper, and at first sight it seems quite surprising that they won’t work. This intramolecular conjugate addition, for example, appears to be a reasonable way of making a substituted pyrrolidine.
But this reaction doesn’t happen: instead, the amine attacks the carbonyl group in a (favoured) 5-exo-trig cyclization.

Why is 5-endo-trig so bad? The problem is that the nitrogen’s lone pair has problems reaching round to the π* orbital of the Michael acceptor. There is no problem reaching as far as the electrophilic carbon in the plane of the substituents but, if it bends out of this plane, which it must if it is to overlap with the π* orbitals, it moves too far away from the methylene carbon to react. It’s like a dog chained just out of reach of a bone.

Lengthen the chain, though, and the dog gets his dinner. Here’s a perfectly straightforward 6-endo-trig, for which orbital overlap presents no problem.

Exceptions to Baldwin’s rules

Baldwin’s rules are only guidelines and, when a reaction is thermodynamically very favourable (Baldwin’s rules, of course, describe the kinetic favourability of a reaction) and there is no other possible pathway, 5-endo-trig reactions can take place. The most striking example is one that you met quite early on in this book (Chapter 11): the formation of a cyclic acetal (dioxolane) from a carbonyl compound and ethylene glycol. We don’t need to give again the full mechanism here, but you should check that you can still write it. The key step with regard to Baldwin’s rules is shown with a green arrow. It’s a 5-endo-trig reaction but it works!

In fact, cations frequently disobey Baldwin’s rules. Other well-defined exceptions to Baldwin’s rules include pericyclic reactions (Chapters 34 and 35) and reactions in which second-row atoms such as sulfur are included in the ring.

This 5-endo-trig reaction, the sulfur analogue of the amine cyclization that didn’t work, is fine. C–S bonds are long, and the empty 3d orbitals of sulfur may play a role by providing an initial interaction with the C–C π orbital.

With tet and trig cyclizations, exo is better than endo; with dig cyclizations, the reverse is true.

● All endo-dig cyclizations are favoured.
Move from 5-endo-trig to 5-endo-dig, and the reactions become much easier: even 4-endo-dig reactions work. Here is an example of 5-endo-dig.

We warned you to look out for 5-endo-trig reactions because they are disfavoured even though on paper they look fine. Now the alert is the other way round! We expect you’d agree that these endo-dig reactions look awful on paper: the linear alkyne seems to put the electrophilic carbon well out of reach of the nucleophile, even further away than in the 5-endo-trig reaction. The important thing with endo-dig cyclizations, though, is that the alkyne has two π* orbitals, one of which must always lie in the plane of the new ring, making it much easier for the nucleophile to get at.

● 3 and 4-exo-dig are disfavoured; 5 to 7-exo-dig are favoured.

These reactions are less important and we will not discuss them in detail.

**Baldwin’s rules and ring opening**

Baldwin’s rules work because they are based on whether or not orbital overlap can be readily achieved in the conformation required at the transition state. But the transition state is the same whether the reaction is going forwards or backwards—the principle of microscopic reversibility (which is discussed further in Chapter 39) says that, if a reaction goes via a certain mechanism, the reverse reaction must follow exactly the same path in the opposite direction. So Baldwin’s rules also apply to ring-opening reactions. This is where the unfavourability of 5-endo-trig really is important: this tetrahydrofuranyl ester, for example, looks set up to do an E1cB elimination in base. Indeed, when it is treated with methoxide in deuterated methanol it exchanges the proton α to the ester for deuterium, proving that the enolate forms. But it does not eliminate: elimination would be a reverse 5-endo-trig process and is disfavoured.

Whenever you think about a ring-opening reaction, consider its reverse, and assess whether it is favoured according to Baldwin’s rules.

Baldwin’s rules can be summarized in a chart. You should note the general outline of this chart: commit to memory that, broadly speaking, endo-tet and endo-trig are disfavoured; exo-tet and exo-trig are favoured, and the reverse for dig. Then you just need to learn the cut-off points that indicate the exceptions to this broad-brush view: 6-endo-trig falls into the favoured category while 4-exo-dig falls into the disfavoured one. And, if you really can remember only one thing, it should be that 5-endo-trig is disfavoured!
On p. 796 we considered the effect of changes in the dihedral angle on coupling constants. But the dihedral angle is not the only angle worth measuring: we should also consider how the two C–H bonds are spread out in space. The dihedral angle is what we see when we look down the spine of the book in our earlier analogy—now we want to look at the pages in the normal way, at right angles to the spine, as if we were going to read the book. We can show what we mean by fixing the dihedral angle at $0^\circ$ (the C–H bonds are in the same plane) and looking at the variation of $J$ with the ring size of some simple cyclic alkenes.

The wider apart the hydrogens are spread, the smaller the coupling constant. Remember, the dihedral angle stays the same ($0^\circ$)—we are just varying the angle in the plane. A dramatic illustration of this comes with the product of dehydrogenation of the natural product guaiol with elemental sulfur. From the brown, smelly reaction mixture, guaiazulene, a deep blue oil, can be distilled.

Some assignments are clear. The 6H doublet and the 1H septuplet are the isopropyl group, and the two 3H singlets belong to the two methyl groups—we can’t really say which belongs to which. The 1H singlet must be the green hydrogen as it has no neighbours and that leaves us with two coupled pairs of protons. One pair has $J = 4$ Hz and the other $J = 11$ Hz. From the values above, we expect to find larger coupling where the H–C–C–H angle is smaller, so we can say that the 4 Hz coupling is between the pair on the five-membered ring and the 11 Hz coupling is between the pair on the seven-membered ring.

When protons on a double bond in a ring have neighbours on saturated carbon, the coupling constants are all small and for the same reason—the angles in the plane of the ring are approaching $90^\circ$ even though the dihedral angles are $45–60^\circ$ in the examples on the left. A bizarre result of this is that the $J$ coupling between the red and black hydrogens is often about
the same as the allylic \((\delta\beta)\) coupling between the red and the green hydrogens. An example follows in a moment.

The ‘spreading out’ effect also affects vicinal \((\delta\alpha)\) couplings in simple saturated rings. No other ring size has so well defined a conformation as that of the six-membered ring, but we can still note useful trends as we move from 6 to 5 to 4 to 3. Briefly, in five-membered rings, cis and trans couplings are about the same. In four- and three-membered rings, cis couplings are larger than trans. But in all cases the absolute values of \(J\) go down as the ring gets smaller and the C–H bonds are ‘spread out’ more. Indeed, you can say that all coupling constants are smaller in small rings, as we shall see. But we need to examine a few examples in a bit more detail.

**Three-membered rings**

Three-membered rings have to be flat with all bonds eclipsed so the dihedral angle is \(0^\circ\) for cis Hs and \(109^\circ\) for trans Hs. Looking at the Karplus curve on p. 796, we expect the cis coupling to be larger, and it is. A good example is chrysanthemic acid, which is part of the pyrethrin group of insecticides found in the pyrethrum plant. Both cis and trans chrysanthemic acids are important, and in both isomers the coupling between the green proton on the ring and its brown neighbour on the double bond is 8 Hz. In the cis compound, the green proton is a triplet so the cis coupling in the ring is also 8 Hz. In the trans compound it is a double doublet with the second coupling, trans across the ring to the black H, of 5 Hz.

The most important three-membered rings are the epoxides. You saw in Chapter 13 (p. 295) that electronegative atoms reduce coupling constants by withdrawing electron density from the bonds that transmit the coupling ‘information’. This means that epoxide couplings are very small—much smaller than those of their closely related alkenes, for example. Compare the four coupling constants in the diagram: for the epoxide, all couplings are small, but cis coupling is larger than trans coupling. In alkenes, trans coupling is larger (Chapter 13, p. 293). The table summarizes the coupling constants for alkenes, epoxides, and cyclopropanes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Typical coupling constants (J, \text{ Hz})</th>
<th>Stereoochemistry</th>
<th>Alkene</th>
<th>Cyclopropane</th>
<th>Epoxide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cis</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans</td>
<td>14–18</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cerulenin**

The natural product cerulenin is an antibiotic containing a cis epoxide. The coupling constant between the black hydrogens is 5.5 Hz. The compound has been made from an unsaturated lactone by epoxidation and ring opening. Follow what happens to the coupling constant between the black hydrogens as this sequence develops.

The cis coupling in the alkene is small because it is in a five-membered ring. It gets smaller in the bicyclic epoxide because the black Hs are now in both five- and three-membered rings and both are next to oxygen, but it gets larger in cerulenin itself because the five-membered ring has been opened.
Four-membered rings

A similar situation exists with four-membered rings—the cis coupling is larger than the trans but they are generally both smaller than those in larger rings. A good example is the amino acid in the margin, the skeleton of the penicillins. The NMR spectrum contains three 1H signals in the middle regions. There is a singlet at δH 4.15 ppm that clearly belongs to the isolated green proton and two doublets at δH 4.55 and 5.40 ppm that must belong to the black protons. The coupling constant between them is 5 Hz and they are cis-related.

There are now large numbers of β-lactam antibiotics known and one family has the opposite (trans) stereochemistry around the four-membered ring. The typical member is thienamycin. We will analyse the spectrum in a moment, but first look at the differences—apart from stereochemistry—between this structure and the last. The sulfur atom is now outside the five-membered ring, the acid group is on a double bond in the same ring, and the amino group has gone from the β-lactam to be replaced by a hydroxyalkyl side chain.

Turning to the spectrum and the key question of stereochemistry, this is what the Merck discoverers said in their original article: "1H NMR spectra of thienamycin (and derivatives). . . show small vicinal coupling constants J ≤ 3 Hz for the two β-lactam hydrogens. Past experience with penicillins. . . shows the cis relationship of the β-lactam hydrogens to be always associated with the larger coupling." As we have just seen penicillins have J ~ 5 Hz for these hydrogens.

The NMR spectrum of a thienamycin derivative with protecting groups on the amine and carboxylic acids is shown below. Try your hand at interpreting it before you read the explanation. Your aim is to find the coupling constant across the four-membered ring.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shift (δH), ppm</th>
<th>Integration</th>
<th>Multiplicity</th>
<th>Coupling constants (J), Hz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>3H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.95</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>not resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.08</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.15</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>2.5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.35</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>9, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.37</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>not resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>dq</td>
<td>7, 6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.19</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>dt</td>
<td>2.5, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.08</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.23 and 5.31</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>AB systema</td>
<td>AB system: 12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.80</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>broad</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.34</td>
<td>10 H</td>
<td>multiplet</td>
<td>not resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aSee p. 297 for discussion of AB systems.

The simple answer is 2.5 Hz. The signals at 3.15 and 4.19 ppm are the protons on the β-lactam ring and the 9 Hz extra coupling is to the CH2 in the five-membered ring. If you went into this spectrum in detail you may have been worried about the 12.5 and especially the 18 Hz couplings. These are J (geminal) couplings and we will discuss them in the next section. The full assignment is shown below.
We should emphasize that a coupling constant of 5 or 2.5 Hz in isolation would not allow us to assign stereochemistry across the four-membered ring but, when we have both, we can say with confidence that the larger coupling is between cis Hs and the smaller coupling between trans Hs.

**Five-membered rings**

You can visualize the conformation of a five-membered ring simply as a chair cyclohexane with one of the atoms deleted. But this picture is simplistic because the five-membered ring flexes (rather than flips) and any of the carbon atoms can be the one out of the plane. All the hydrogen atoms are changing positions rapidly and the NMR spectrum 'sees' a time-averaged result. Commonly, both cis and trans couplings are about 8–9 Hz in this ring size.

The best illustration of the similarity of cis and trans couplings in five-membered rings is a structure that was incorrectly deduced for that very reason. Canadensolide is an antifungal compound found in a *Penicillium* mould. The gross structure was quite easy to deduce from the mass spectrum, which gave the formula C_{11}H_{14}O_{4} by exact mass determination, the infrared, which showed (at 1780 and 1667 cm\(^{-1}\)) a conjugated five-ring lactone, and some aspects of the proton NMR. The proposed structure is shown in the margin.

The stereochemistry of the ring junction Hs (shown in black and green) is not in question. They are certain to be cis as it is virtually impossible for two five-membered rings to be fused trans. The stereochemical uncertainty involves the third stereogenic centre on the left-hand ring. The coupling constant between the black and green Hs is 6.8 Hz, while that between the green and brown Hs is 4.5. Is this different enough for them to be trans? The original investigators decided that it was.

The mistake emerged when some Japanese chemists made this compound by an unambiguous route. The NMR spectrum was quite like that of canadensolide, but not the same. In particular, the coupling between the green and brown Hs was 1.5 Hz—quite different! So they also made the other possible diastereoisomer and found that it was identical to natural canadensolide. The details are in the margin.

**An example of vicinal coupling in structural analysis: aflatoxins**

We can bring together a lot of these points in the structure of one compound, the dreaded aflatoxin. Aflatoxins were mentioned in Chapter 19: they occur in moulds, including those that grow on some foods, and cause liver cancer. These slow-acting poisons are among the most toxic compounds known. Aflatoxin B\(_1\) is an example. The four red protons on saturated carbons in the five-membered ring in the margin appear as two triplets: \(\delta_H 2.61\) (2H, t, \(J 5\) Hz) and \(\delta_H 3.42\) (2H, t, \(J 5\) Hz). The cis and trans couplings are the same. The yellow proton, on the junction between the two five-membered cyclic ethers, is a doublet \(\delta_H 6.89\) (1H, d, \(J 7\) Hz).

This is, of course, the cis coupling to the black hydrogen. The black hydrogen has this coupling too, but it appears as a doublet of triplets with a triplet coupling of 2.5 Hz: \(\delta_H 4.81\) (1H, dt, \(J 7\), 2.5, 2.5 Hz). These small couplings can only be to the two green hydrogens: the \(^3J\) and \(^4J\) couplings are indeed the same.

Finally there is another strange coincidence—each green hydrogen appears as a triplet with 2.5 Hz couplings. Evidently, the cis coupling across the double bond is also 2.5 Hz. We expect cis coupling in a cyclopentene to be small (it was 4 Hz in the azulene on p. 814), but not that small—it must be the electronegative oxygen atom that is reducing the value still further.

**Geminal (\(^2J\)) coupling**

For coupling to be seen, the two hydrogen atoms in question must have different chemical shifts—identical protons do not couple. For \(^2J\), or geminal, couplings the two hydrogen atoms are on the same carbon atom, so in order to discuss geminal coupling we must first consider what leads the two hydrogens of a CH\(_2\) group to have different shifts.

To introduce the topic, an example. It may seem to you that any six-membered ring might show different chemical shifts for axial and equatorial groups. But this doesn’t happen. Consider the result of this Robinson annelation reaction.
The two methyl groups at C4 give rise to a single signal in the $^{13}$C NMR at 27.46 ppm. Even though one of them is (pseudo)axial and one (pseudo)equatorial, the molecule exists in solution as a rapidly equilibrating mixture of two conformations. The axial green methyl in the left-hand conformer becomes equatorial in the right-hand conformer, and vice versa for the black methyl group. The equilibrium position must be 50:50 and fast exchange averages the chemical shifts of the two methyl groups. The same is true for the CH$_2$ groups around the back of the ring, which each appear as a triplet.

However, the enone is not the only product of this reaction. A methanol adduct is also formed by Michael addition of methanol to the conjugated enone. This product has two methyl signals at 26.1 and 34.7 ppm. If we examine the molecule by conformational analysis as we did for the first product we see a similar situation.

Similar but not the same. This time, the two conformations are not identical. One has the OMe group equatorial and the other has it axial. Even the two methyl groups do not entirely change places in the two conformations. True, the green methyl is axial on the left and equatorial on the right, but it has a gauche (dihedral angle 60°) relationship with the OMe group in both conformations. The black Me group is gauche to OMe on the left but anti-periplanar to the OMe group on the right. Averaging the two different conformations, in each of which the black and green methyl groups are different (that is, they don't just change places), does not lead to equalization of the two methyl groups.

Perhaps a simpler way to discover this is to use a configurational, rather than a conformational, diagram. The green methyl group is on the same face of the molecule as the MeO group, while the black methyl group is on the other face. No amount of ring flipping can make them the same. They are diastereotopic, a term we shall define shortly. And so are all three CH$_2$ groups in the ring. The green Hs are on the same face of the molecule as the MeO group while the black Hs are on the other face.

A proton NMR example confirms this, and here is one from an odd source. There are fungi that live on animal dung, called coprophilous fungi. They produce antifungal compounds, presumably to fight off competition! Anyway, in 1995 two new antifungal compounds were discovered in a fungus living on lemming dung. They were named coniochaetones A and B and their structures were deduced with the usual array of mass and NMR spectra. The proton spectra, run on a 600 MHz machine, are shown below, and they reveal considerable detail.

Some of the spectrum is essentially the same for the two compounds, but other parts are quite different. Coniochaetone A has a very simple spectrum, very easily assigned. Coniochaetone B is rather more interesting. The spectrum is much more complicated, even though it has only one more C–H (the grey one) than coniochaetone A. The reason is that addition of that H atom creates a stereogenic centre and makes the top and bottom faces of the molecule different. Each H in both CH$_2$ groups becomes differentiated from its partner.
The green Hs are coupled to each other ($J = 18$ Hz) and to each of the black Hs with a different coupling constant. One of the green hydrogens also shows a long-range ($J = 1.4$ Hz) W-coupling to the red H. The black Hs are too complex to analyse, even at 600 MHz, but the different couplings to the red Hs are shown by the signal at 5.43 ppm.

**The size of the geminal coupling constant**

The 18 Hz geminal coupling constant between the green protons of coniochaetone B is large, but not unusually so for a geminal coupling. A more typical figure in a six-membered ring might be closer to 14 Hz, and we will see shortly why the value in coniochaetone B is bigger than this. The example below provides an opportunity to examine coupling constants in another example where NMR was essential for determining the structure. The compound is pederin, a toxic amide of the blister beetle *Paederus fuscipes*. After some incorrect early suggestions, the actual structure of the compound was eventually deduced as shown.

We are not going to discuss the full structure elucidation, but will concentrate on the stereochemistry of the right-hand ring. The five (green) protons on the ring gave the signals listed in the margin.

Three of the protons have shifts $\delta_H 3–4$, and are obviously on carbons attached to oxygen atoms. The other two, $\delta_H$ about 2, must be the diastereotopic pair at C5. The coupling of 12 Hz, which appears in both signals, must be the geminal coupling and the other couplings are found in the signals at $\delta_H 3.75$ and 3.85. The signal at $\delta_H 3.75$ has no other couplings and must be from C4 so that leaves $\delta_H 3.85$ for the hydrogen atom at C6, which is also coupled to the hydrogen in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coniochaetone A</th>
<th>Coniochaetone B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_H$ ppm</td>
<td>Coupling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.41 (3H)</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.70 (2H)</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.07 (2H)</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10 (1H)</td>
<td>dddd, $J$ 1.4, 5.1, 9.4, 18 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.81 (1H)</td>
<td>ddd, $J$ 5.1, 9.3, 18 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.77 (1H)</td>
<td>broad s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.69 (1H)</td>
<td>broad s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.21 (1H)$^a$</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$Exchanges with D$_2$O.
the side chain. The 10 Hz coupling must be axial–axial—the others are all much smaller, meaning there is just the one axial–axial coupling. The left-hand side chain must therefore occupy an axial position as shown in the margin. This is perhaps a bit surprising—it’s large and branched—but the molecule has no choice but to place one of the two side chains axial.

One of the most important compounds from the last 25 years is Taxol, the anti-cancer compound isolated from the bark of the Pacific yew tree. Taxol’s structure has four rings—with eight, six (twice), and four members—and is too complex to analyse in detail, but the NMR spectrum of the closely related compound in the margin gives us the opportunity to illustrate how much geminal couplings in rings may vary and to analyse some of the factors which control this variation. The coupling between the black Hs is 20 Hz while that between the green Hs is just 6 Hz. 20 Hz is a very large coupling constant, even for geminal coupling, and the reason it is so big is the adjacent π bond. If a CH2 group is next to an alkene, aromatic ring, C=O group, CN group, or any other π-bonded functional group, it will have a larger geminal coupling constant. This effect also explains the large 18 Hz coupling in coniochaetone B (p. 819).

But why is the green coupling so small? The reason is the four-membered ring. You saw on p. 814 that vicinal couplings are small in small rings; the same is true of geminal couplings. Another factor comes into play here as well—the adjacent oxygen atom. Electronegative atoms always tend to reduce coupling constants.

The size of 2J and 3J coupling constants

We have now covered all of the important influences on the size of coupling constants. They are:

- dihedral angle: 3J greatest at 180° and 0°; about 0 Hz at 90°
- ring size, which leads to ‘spreading out’ of bonds and lower 2J and lower 3J in small rings
- electronegative atoms, which decrease 2J and 3J coupling constants between protons
- π systems, which increase 2J coupling constants between protons.

Diastereotopic groups

You have now seen several examples where two protons attached to the same carbon are not the same, and it is time to examine more closely the appearance of these CH2 groups in NMR spectra. To do this, we shall have to discuss some aspects of symmetry that build on what you learned in Chapter 14. You will see that there are three possibilities for the symmetry associated with a CH2 group, and these three possibilities have an effect both on the chemistry of the molecule and on what its NMR spectrum will look like.

First, an example in which the two hydrogens are indeed the same. Although the molecule is of course achiral, we may draw one hydrogen coming towards us and one going away, but the two Hs are the same. This is easy to demonstrate. If we colour one H black and one green, and then rotate the molecule through 180°, the black H appears in the place of the green H and vice versa. The rotated molecule hasn’t changed because the other two substituents (OMe here) are also the same.

If we had given out uncoloured models of this molecule with this book, and asked each reader to paint one H green and one H black, we would have no way at all of giving instructions about which to paint what colour. But it wouldn’t matter because, even without these instructions, every reader would produce an identical model, whichever way they painted their Hs.

The correct description for this pair of hydrogen atoms is homotopic. They are the same (homo) topologically and cannot be distinguished by chemical reagents, enzymes, NMR machines, or human beings.

Homotopic groups

Homotopic groups cannot be distinguished by any means whatsoever: they are chemically entirely identical.

What happens when the other two substituents are different? At first sight the situation does not seem to have changed. Surely the two hydrogens are still the same as one another?
In fact, they aren't—not quite. If we had given out uncoloured models of this molecule and just said 'paint one H green and one H black', we would not have got just one type of model. However, this time we could give instructions about which H we wanted which colour. To get the first of these two, we just need to say 'Take the MeO group in your left hand and the Ph group in your right, kink the carbon chain upwards. The hydrogen coming towards you is to be painted black.' All the models produced by readers would then be identical—as long as the readers knew their left from their right. This is a very important point: the green and black hydrogens in this molecule (unlike the first one) can be described only in phrases incorporating the words 'left' or 'right', and are distinguishable only by a system that knows its left from its right.

Human beings are such a system: so are enzymes and the asymmetric reagents you will meet in Chapter 41. But NMR machines are not. NMR machines cannot distinguish right and left—the NMR spectra of two enantiomers are identical, for example. There is no question of enantiomers in the molecule in question—it has a plane of symmetry and is achiral. Nonetheless, the relationship between these two hydrogens is rather like the relationship between enantiomers (the two possible ways of colouring the Hs are enantiomers—mirror images) and so they are called enantiotopic. Enantiotopic protons appear identical in the NMR spectrum.

**Enantiotopic groups**

Enantiotopic groups can be distinguished by systems that can tell right from left, but are still magnetically equivalent and appear identical in the NMR spectrum.

The third situation usually arises when the molecule has a stereogenic centre. As an example we can take the Michael product from the beginning of this section. It is now very easy to distinguish the two hydrogens on each ring carbon atom and, if we want to give instructions on how to paint a model of this molecule, we can just say 'Make all the Hs on the same side of the ring as OMe green, and the ones on the opposite side to OMe black.' We do not need to use the words 'right' or 'left' in the instructions, and it is not necessary to know your right from your left to tell the two types of Hs apart. Ordinary chemical reagents and NMR machines can do it. These Hs are different in the way that diastereoisomers are different and they are diastereotopic. We expect them to have different chemical shifts in the proton NMR spectrum. The same is true of the methyl groups: they too are diastereotopic and we expect them to have different shifts.

**Diastereotopic groups**

Diastereotopic groups are chemically different: they can be distinguished even by systems that cannot tell right from left, and they can appear at different chemical shifts in the NMR spectrum.

**How to tell if protons are homotopic, enantiotopic, or diastereotopic**

What we have said so far explains to you why homotopic and enantiotopic groups always appear identical in the NMR spectrum, but diastereotopic protons may not. Now we will give a quick guide to determining what sort of pair you are dealing with in a given molecule.

The key is to draw your molecule twice. In each drawing (or model if you prefer) replace one of the Hs (we'll assume we're looking at protons, but the argument works for other groups too—Me groups, for example) with an imaginary group 'G'. Write down the first structure you get, with stereochemistry shown. Next, write down the structure you get by replacing the other H with the group G. Now the more difficult bit: identify the stereochemical relationship between the two molecules you have drawn.

* If they are identical molecules, the protons are homotopic.
* If they are enantiomers, the protons are enantiotopic.
* If they are diastereoisomers, the protons are diastereotopic.

This is really just a simpler way of doing what we did with black and green above, but it is easy to do for any molecule. Take the first of our examples, and replace each H in turn by G. These two molecules are identical because just turning one over gives the other: the protons are homotopic.
Now for the next example. The two molecules are not identical: to make one into the other you need to reflect in the plane of the paper, so they are enantiomers, and the Hs are enantiotopic. There is another term we must introduce you to in relation to this molecule, which will become useful in the next chapter, and that is ‘prochiral’. The molecule we started with here was not chiral—it had a plane of symmetry. But by changing just one of the Hs to a different group we have made it chiral. Molecules that are achiral but can become chiral through one simple change are called prochiral.

Now we will choose one of the three pairs of Hs in the cyclohexanone example. The starting molecule is, of course, now chiral, and the two molecules we get when we replace each H by G are now diastereoisomers: one has G and OMe anti, the other syn, and the pairs of hydrogens are diastereotopic. The same is true for the other CH₂ groups. Furthermore, the methyl groups attached to the ring will be diastereotopic too, and we expect them to appear as two 3H singlets.

### Spotting diastereotopic protons in the NMR spectrum

A CH₂ group with diastereotopic Hs isolated from any other Hs will give rise to two signals, one for each H, and they will couple to each other so that the complete signal is a pair of doublets. A typical geminal (2J) coupling constant is 14 Hz—relatively large. Because chemical shift differences (Δδ) between Hs on the same carbon atom tend to be small—usually less than 1 ppm—the signals have Δδ ~ J and are distorted into a ‘roof-topped’ AB system.

Here is an example. The pheromone frontaline is a remarkable compound used by both insects and by elephants to attract a mate. Its structure and ¹H NMR spectrum are shown below.

The red and green hydrogens are diastereotopic, and have no other couplings. They give the pair of doublets at 3.42 and 3.93 ppm., each with J 7 Hz (an AB system) in the ¹H NMR. The coupling constant here is small for 2J—only 7 Hz—but that should not surprise you since we have a five-membered ring and a nearby oxygen atom.

The coupling constant in an AB system is easy to extract—it is the difference in Hz between the two lines highlighted same colour in the spectrum above. But the chemical shifts are not so easily measured. The chemical shift of each proton is at the weighted mean of the two lines—the more distorted the signal, the nearer the chemical shift to that of the larger inner line.

### Diastereotopic protons in acyclic compounds

The same principles apply to open-chain compounds, such as amino acids. All of the amino acids in proteins except glycine are chiral. Glycine has a CH₂ group that gives a singlet in the NMR spectrum as its Hs are enantiotopic. Similarly, the N-benzyl derivative of glycine has a second CH₂ group (NCH₂Ph) that gives another singlet in the NMR spectrum as these Hs too are enantiotopic.
The plane of the paper is a plane of symmetry for both of the CH$_2$ groups of N-benzyl glycine in the way it is drawn here. But for the other amino acids, which are all chiral, the symmetry is different. The $^1$H NMR spectrum of N-benzyl alanine is shown below. There is now no plane of symmetry, so the Hs of the NCH$_2$Ph group are diastereotopic. The CH$_2$ group appears as an AB pattern.

In the way in which the molecule is drawn, the green H is on the same side as the Me group and the brown H on the other. It does not matter that there is free rotation in this molecule—the two diastereotopic protons are never in the same environment so even after averaging over all the conformations available to the molecule they always appear at different chemical shift. If a molecule is chiral, all CH$_2$ groups in that molecule—however flexible it may be and however far they are from any chiral centre—are diastereotopic, and can potentially appear in the spectrum as an AB system.

It is more common to find diastereotopic CH$_2$ groups with neighbours, and an example arises when aspartic acid is dissolved in D$_2$O with NaOD present. The NH$_2$ protons are exchanged for deuterium atoms and do not show up in the spectrum—the molecule exists as its dianion.
**To summarize...**

We have covered a lot of ground in this chapter, and have used the huge topic of saturated heterocycles to explain a lot, not just about the reactivity and conformation of rings. Many of these explanations involved consideration of the alignment of orbitals—we called these stereoelectronic effects. The same analysis allowed us to make sense of the NMR spectra, and in particular the coupling constants, of cyclic molecules, both heterocyclic and carbocyclic. And by thinking about symmetry in these cyclic molecules we were also able to deduce the origins of symmetry-related features (such as diastereotopic protons) in the NMR spectra of acyclic compounds.

The next chapter is the fourth consecutive chapter to take rings as a theme. It will introduce you to practical ways of controlling stereochemistry in cyclic systems—the first step towards making molecules with a particular stereochemistry, which will continue in Chapter 33 and culminate in Chapter 41 on asymmetric synthesis.

**Further reading**

Another reminder: you will find it an advantage to have one of the short books on spectroscopic analysis to hand as they give explanations, comprehensive tables of data, and problems. We recommend D. H. Williams and Ian Fleming, *Spectroscopic Methods in Organic Chemistry*, McGraw-Hill, London, 6th edn, 2007.


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
\section*{Stereoselectivity in cyclic molecules}

\begin{connections}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Building on
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Stereochemistry ch14
      \item Conformational analysis ch16
      \item Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics ch31
    \end{itemize}
  \item Arriving at
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Stereoselectivity in cyclic systems is easy to understand
      \item Flattened four-and five-membered rings are attacked \textit{anti} to large substituents
      \item Flattened six-membered rings are attacked from an axial direction
      \item Bicyclic structures are attacked on the outside face
      \item Tethering together nucleophile and electrophile forces one stereochernical outcome
      \item Hydrogen bonding can reverse the normal stereochernical outcome of a reaction
    \end{itemize}
  \item Looking forward to
    \begin{itemize}
      \item Diastereoselectivity ch33
      \item Pericyclic reactions ch34 & ch35
      \item Asymmetric synthesis ch41
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
\end{connections}

\section*{Introduction}

In the last chapter we looked at how the NMR spectra of cyclic molecules tell us a lot about their shape—both their conformation and their configuration. We are now going to go beyond simply studying stereochemistry and start to explain how to control stereochemistry. We have already, in Chapter 27, spent some time looking at controlling one aspect of stereochemistry—double bond geometry. But stereochemistry is about much more than this, and in this chapter and the next we will explain how to make single diastereoisomers and single enantiomers.

We start with stereochemistry in rings. Not only is stereochemistry easier to understand in cyclic compounds, it is also \textit{better behaved} in cyclic compounds. Suppose you were to reduce this ketone to one of the corresponding alcohols.

To achieve a stereoselective reaction at the new stereogenic centre (shown in black) the green stereogenic centre would somehow have to influence the direction of attack of the nucleophile on the $C=O$ group. Separated from it by three bonds, in a molecule with a high degree of flexibility, makes this a very tall order. A more or less 50:50 mixture of the two diastereoisomers would be expected.
However, if we join up the molecule into a ring, as shown in the margin, things are suddenly quite different. (This is not, of course, a chemical reaction—just a thought process!) The cyclic ketone has a fixed conformation controlled by the determination of the tert-butyl group to be equatorial. The two faces of the carbonyl group are therefore clearly quite different, and in fact by careful choice of reducing agent it is possible to attack either at will, giving almost exclusively either the axial or the equatorial alcohol. As we will explain shortly (p. 828) large reagents prefer to approach equatorially while small reagents prefer to approach axially, putting the new OH group into an equatorial position. These are stereoselective reactions and, because the two different outcomes are diastereoisomers, we can call them diastereoselective.

The key to the difference between these two compounds is in their conformations. The six-membered ring of the cyclic ketone has one conformation and the two approaches to the faces of the ketone are very different. In the open-chain compound rotation about all the C–C bonds is possible and very many conformations will be populated. In any one conformation, attack on one face of the ketone or the other may happen to be preferred, but summed over all of them the average selectivity will be close to 1:1. There is all the difference in the world between cyclic and open-chain compounds when it comes to stereoselective reactions.

In this chapter we shall look at reactions happening to cyclic compounds, reactions with cyclic intermediates, and reactions with cyclic transition states. We shall investigate what happens to stereochemistry when two (or even more) rings are joined together at a bond or at an atom. You have already looked in detail at reactions which close rings (Chapter 31, p. 805), and many of the reactions in this chapter you will have met earlier in the book. Our task is to reveal new features and subtleties, and to show you how to use these reactions to control stereochemistry.

**Stereochemical control in six-membered rings**

As you saw in Chapter 16, cyclohexanes benefit from very well defined conformational preferences. Substituents are orientated either axially or equatorially, and usually prefer the equatorial orientation, especially when they are large. The strong preference for substituents to adopt the equatorial position means that when diastereoisomeric cyclohexanes equilibrate by processes such as enolization they may give high selectivity for the all-equatorial compound. For example, this fine perfumery material is made worthless by enolization.

The reason the equilibrium favours the worthless trans isomer (it forms 92% of the equilibrium mixture) is that the two substituents are both in the more stable equatorial positions.
Six-membered rings containing one sp²-hybridized carbon atom: cyclohexanone

If we're interested in the reactions of six-membered rings, then we are going to have to consider what happens to their conformation when they contain reactive functional groups such as carbonyl groups and alkenes—in other words, the effect of introducing sp² C atoms into the ring. For just one sp² carbon atom the simple answer is that nothing changes—the conformation is not significantly altered by the presence of just one sp² centre in a ring. The conformations of methylenecyclohexene and cyclohexanone are shown below.

Six-membered rings with more than one sp² C atom do lose their chair conformation—they become flattened to some degree when there are one or more double bonds included in the ring and we shall come on to those in the next section.

**Axial or equatorial attack is possible on a cyclohexanone**

So, what happens when a cyclohexanone is attacked by a nucleophile? For cyclohexanone itself, the reaction below gives a product which can adopt either of the two conformations shown, with Nu axial or equatorial, depending on the relative size of Nu and OH. This reaction does not tell us much about the attack on the C=O group itself—we can't tell, for example, whether Nu attacked the axial or the equatorial face of the C=O group.

Now think of a nucleophile attacking 4-t-butylcyclohexanone. Since the t-butyl group locks the ring (t-Bu can never be axial), whether Nu is axial or equatorial will depend only on which face of the C=O group it attacks. Attack on the same face as the t-butyl group leaves the nucleophile axial and the hydroxyl group equatorial; attack on the opposite face leaves the nucleophile equatorial and the hydroxyl group axial. The nucleophile is said to attack either in an axial or equatorial manner, depending on where it ends up. It's easier to see this in a diagram.

Now for an observation—we'll try and explain it shortly. In general, large nucleophiles attack equatorially and small nucleophiles attack axially. For example, reduction of 4-t-butylcyclohexanone with lithium aluminium hydride in Et₂O gives 90% of the *trans* alcohol; 90%
of the hydride has added axially. AlH$_4^-$ is quite small as nucleophiles go: to make more of the cis alcohol we need a larger nucleophile—lithium tri-sec-butylborohydride, for example, sold under the name of L-selectride®. This is so large that it attacks only equatorially, yielding typically 95% of the cis alcohol.

Carbon-centred nucleophiles follow the same trend—the table shows that, as size increases from the slender ethynyl anion through primary and secondary organometallics to t-BuMgBr, the axial selectivity drops off correspondingly. PhLi behaves as though it were quite small because it is flat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile</th>
<th>Axial attack</th>
<th>Equatorial attack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HC≡CLi</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeLi</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhLi</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeMgBr</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtMgBr</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-PrMgBr</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-BuMgBr</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now the difficult part—why? This is a question to which the answer really is not known for certain. It’s certainly true that the direction of approach for axial attack is more hindered than for equatorial attack, and this is certainly the reason large nucleophiles prefer to attack equatorially.

But if this is the case, why do small ones actually prefer to attack axially? There must be another factor that favours axial attack for those nucleophiles small enough to avoid the bad interactions with the other axial hydrogens. At the transition state, the forming –O$^-$ oxygen substituent is moving in either an axial or an equatorial direction. Just as the axial substituent is less favourable than an equatorial one, so is the transition state leading there, and the route leading to the equatorial hydroxyl group is favoured.

When chemists made the drug alphaprodine using the reaction shown below, they found that the combination of the equatorial preference of a methyl group adjacent to C=O and an equatorial preference for attack on the C=O group were enough to favour the formation of one diastereoisomer. Here is the reaction, with the starting material and product represented as a conformational diagram.

We can also represent the reaction in configurational terms. This is less good for explaining the stereoselectivity, but you should always be prepared to turn conformational diagrams into standard configurational ones.
In the next reaction, stereoselectivity is not so good. Zeneca (now AstraZeneca) announced the manufacture of a drug by the addition of a lithiated thiophene to another heterocyclic ketone, which initially gave a mixture of diastereoisomers.

Such a mixture is no good for manufacture of a pure drug, but the compound can be equilibrated in dilute acid by repeated $S_N1$ formation of a tertiary cation and recapture by water so that the required product (which is more stable as it has both Me and the thiophene equatorial) dominates by 92:8 and can be purified by crystallization. The unwanted isomer can be recycled in the next batch.

In these reactions the molecule has a free choice whether to place a substituent in an axial or equatorial position and this is the only consideration because the starting materials in the reactions—ketones or carbocations—have six-membered rings that are already in the chair conformation even though they have one trigonal (sp$^2$) atom in the ring.

**Six-membered rings with two or more sp$^2$ carbons: cyclohexenes**

With more than two trigonal carbon atoms in the ring, a cyclohexene can no longer adopt a chair conformation. At least four of the atoms in the ring must now be in a plane, and the best way to represent this is in the diagrams shown below. The four atoms in the plane are nearest you, with the remaining two placed one above and one below that plane.

Cyclohexene itself flips rapidly between these two conformations, with a barrier of about 22 kJ mol$^{-1}$, about half that of cyclohexane. As in cyclohexane, hydrogen atoms on the saturated carbons of the cyclohexene structure adopt two types of positions, but as they are not quite orientated in the same way as in cyclohexane, we call the two orientations ‘pseudoaxial’ and ‘pseudoequatorial’.

**Only axial attack is possible with cyclohexenes**

These conformations of six-membered rings with more than one trigonal carbon are quite plainly not chairs, and are much less stable than chairs. Anything which allows them to become a chair is likely to be highly favoured, and the stereoselectivity of a reaction is likely
to be driven by the need for the transition state and product to have a chair rather than a boat conformation. This can override the preference for substituents to go into equatorial positions. The choice of axial attack controls the stereoselectivity of reactions of cyclohexenes (and, as you will see, their epoxides), six-membered cyclic enolates, and six-membered cyclic enones.

- The number of trigonal carbon atoms in the ring decides which factors control stereoselectivity
  - Six-membered rings with one trigonal (sp²) carbon atom are already chairs and can undergo axial or equatorial attack.
  - Six-membered rings with two or more trigonal carbon atoms are not chairs and undergo axial attack in order to form chairs rather than boats. The final product may end up with axial or equatorial substitution, but this is not a consideration in the reaction itself.

Alkylations of enolates, enamines, and silyl enol ethers of cyclohexanone usually show substantial preference for axial attack. The enamine of 4-t-butylicyclohexanone, which has a fixed conformation because of the t-butyl group, gives 90% axial alkylation and only 10% equatorial alkylation with n-PrI.

To get at the reason for this result we need to look at the conformation of the enamine intermediate. At this point we shall generalize a bit more and write a structure that represents any enol derivative where X may be OH, O⁻, OSiMe₃, NR₂, and so on. The double bond (2 × sp² centres) in the ring means the conformation is a partially flattened chair, as described above. We place the t-butyl group in an equatorial position because, as with cyclohexanes, it is so bulky it cannot go axial. This means that there is only one conformation to consider—the one shown in the margin.

Now, the electrophile must attack the π system of this conformation, and to do so it has to attack from more or less directly above or below because only then can it interact with one of the lobes of the p orbital at the enol position shown in orange. The need to interact with the π system is the reason cyclohexenes and related compounds react in an axial direction. The top of the molecule looks to be more open to attack so we shall try that approach first.

As the electrophile forms a bond to the trigonal carbon atom, that atom must become tetrahedral and it does so by forming a vertical bond upwards. The result is shown in the diagram—the ring turns into a twist-boat conformation. Now, of course, after the reaction is over, the ring can flip into a chair conformation and the new substituent will then be equatorial, but that information is not present in the transition state for the reaction. We could say that, at the time of reaction, the molecule doesn’t ‘know’ it can later be better off and get the substituent equatorial: all it sees is the formation of an unstable twist boat with a high-energy transition state leading to it.

Attack from the apparently more hindered bottom face makes the trigonal carbon atom turn tetrahedral in the opposite sense by forming a vertical bond to the electrophile downwards. The ring goes directly to a chair form with the electrophile in the axial position.
When the carbonyl group is restored by hydrolysis (if necessary—with an enolate X is already O) the ring need not flip: it’s already a chair with the t-butyl equatorial, and the new substituent is axial on the chair. This is the observed product of the reaction.

It’s important that you understand what is going on here. The reagent has to attack from an axial direction to interact with the p orbital. If it attacks from above, the new substituent is axial on an unstable twist boat. If it attacks from below, the new substituent is axial on a chair—granted, this is not as good as equatorial on a chair, but that’s not an option—it has to be axial on something, and a chair is better than a twist boat. So this is the product that forms.

It’s just hard luck for the substituent that it can’t know that if it did weather it out on the twist boat it could later get equatorial—it plumps for life on the chair and so has to be content with ending up axial.

Here is an example with an unsaturated carbonyl compound as an electrophile: the reaction is a Michael addition. The ketone here is slightly different—it has the t-butyl group in the 3- rather than the 4-position, and the reacting centre becomes quaternary during the Michael reaction. But the result is still axial attack.

This result is more impressive because the large electrophile ends up on the same side of the ring as the t-butyl group, so the stereoselectivity cannot be based on any simple idea of reaction on the less hindered side of the ring. It is genuine axial attack, as the conformational diagram of the product confirms.

Cyclohexenones are even flatter than cyclohexenes, but it is convenient to draw them in a similar conformation. Conjugate addition to the substituted cyclohexenone in the margin gives the trans product.

This is also axial addition to form a chair directly (rather than a twist boat) with the nucleophile approaching from the bottom. We must draw the ring as a flattened chair.

The 5-alkyl cyclohexenone that we have chosen as our example gives the best results. The mechanism suggests that the enolate intermediate is protonated on the top face (axial addition again), although we cannot tell this because the product has no stereogenic centre there. But, if we carry out a tandem reaction with the enolate trapped by a different electrophile, it becomes clear that the product is again that of axial attack.
We shall end this section on conformational control in six-membered rings with the preparation of a useful chiral molecule, 8-phenylmenthol, from the natural product \((R)-(+)\)-pulegone. The first step is a copper-promoted conjugate addition to an exocyclic alkene. A new stereogenic centre is formed by protonation of the enolate intermediate but with virtually no stereoselectivity.

Now thermodynamic control can be brought into play. The position next to the ketone can be epimerized via the enolate to give the more stable isomer with both substituents equatorial. This improves the ratio of diastereoisomers from 55:45 to 87:13.

Now the ketone can be reduced with a small reagent (see p. 826)—Na in \(i\)-PrOH works well—to put the hydroxyl group equatorial. This means that all the product has OH \(\text{trans}\) to the large group next to the ketone, although it is still an 87:13 mixture of diastereoisomers with respect to the relative configuration at the centre bearing Me.

These alcohols can be separated (they are, of course, diastereoisomers and not enantiomers) and the major, all-equatorial, one is the useful one. This is an impressive example of conformational control by thermodynamic and by kinetic means originating only from a distant methyl group in a six-membered ring.

Reactions on small rings

The conformational principles which apply to rings other than six-membered ones are rather more sketchy because only six-membered rings adopt well-defined chair (or, for cyclohexenes, half-chair) conformations. But we can still give you some general guidelines and principles, and illustrate them with some important examples. We will look in detail at four- and five-membered rings.
**Four-membered rings can be flat**

Saturated four-membered rings have a slightly bent conformation but four-membered lactones are flat. The enolates of these lactones can be made in the usual way with LDA at $-78 \, ^\circ C$ and are stable at that temperature, and they react with electrophiles just as you saw in Chapter 25. If the $\beta$-lactone has a substituent already then there may be a choice as to which face of the enolate is attacked by an electrophile. In the example below, simple alkylation with a variety of alkyl halides gives essentially only one diastereoisomer of the product.

![Diastereoselectivity reactions of racemic compounds](image)

The enolate, as we have seen, is planar, and the phenyl group is in the plane (which is why it doesn’t matter which of the two possible diastereoisomers of the starting material is used). The isopropyl group is the only thing out of the plane. The electrophile simply adds to the face of the enolate not blocked by the isopropyl group. This is a very simple case of a diastereoselective reaction.

**Lactone enolates**

This lithium enolate works well even though it might be expected to be unstable because of a simple elimination reaction. In general, it is not possible to make open-chain lithium enolates with $\beta$ oxygen substituents like this because they do undergo elimination.

![Lactone enolates](image)

But, in the four-membered ring, the $p$ orbitals of the enolate and the C–O single bond are orthogonal (see diagram below) so that no interaction between them, and no elimination, can occur. In the terminology of Baldwin’s rules (Chapter 31, p. 810) it would be a disfavoured 4-endo-trig reaction.

![Diastereoselective reactions of racemic compounds](image)

Reduction of substituted four-membered ring ketones is usually reasonably stereoselective. If the substituent is in the 3-position and small reagents like NaBH$_4$ are used, the cis isomer is favoured. Like saturated four-membered rings, cyclobutanones are slightly puckered to reduce eclipsing interactions between hydrogen atoms on adjacent carbon atoms, but attack of the reducing agent still occurs from the direction away from the other substituent to give the cis product.
Five-membered ketones are flexible

A saturated five-membered ring has a conformation often called an ‘envelope’. It looks a bit like an opened envelope with one atom at the point of the flap. The arrangement closely matches what you get if you cut one atom out of a cyclohexane ring. At any one moment, one of the carbon atoms is at the point of the envelope but rapid ring flipping equilibrates all these conformers so that all five atoms are, on average, the same.

Substituted cyclopentanes can have substituents in pseudoaxial or pseudoequatorial positions (in other words, they are somewhat like the axial and equatorial positions in a cyclohexane), but rapid equilibration means that overall we have a very flexible and labile system. As a result, reduction of 2-substituted cyclopentanones may not be very stereoselective. What selectivity there is (about 3:1) in the reduction of 2-methylpentanone with LiAlH₄ favours pseudoaxial attack in the conformation drawn, as is reasonable for a small nucleophile.

The use of a much more bulky reducing agent such as LiBH(s-Bu)₃ dramatically reverses and increases the stereoselectivity. Essentially only the cis compound is formed.

Regard five-membered rings with two or more sp³ carbons as flat

When there are two or three trigonal carbons in the ring, the ring is flatter and reactions such as enolate alkylation and conjugate addition give excellent stereoselectivity even with a simple cyclopentane ring. Unsaturated five-membered lactones (known as ‘butenolides’) give a very clear illustration of stereochemically controlled conjugate addition. There is only one possible stereogenic centre and the ring is almost planar so we expect nucleophilic attack to occur from the less hindered face. Cuprates are good nucleophiles for this reaction and here Me₂CuLi adds to the unsaturated lactone.

With a single enantiomer of the starting material below, the product is the single enantiomer of an insect pheromone.

It is not even necessary to have a stereogenic centre in an unsaturated ring if we want to create stereochemistry. A tandem conjugate addition and alkylation creates two new stereogenic centres in one operation. The conjugate addition of a lithium cuprate makes a lithium enolate, which will react in turn with an alkyl halide. The product is usually trans.
The key step is the alkylation of the enolate intermediate. Enolates in five-membered rings are almost flat and the incoming orange allyl bromide prefers the less hindered face away from the recently added green vinyl group.

Our main example of enolate reactions in five-membered rings is one of some general importance. It illustrates how stereochemical information can be transmitted across a ring even though the original source of that information may be lost during the reaction. That may sound mysterious, but all will become clear. The first reaction is to make a five-membered cyclic acetal from an optically active hydroxy-acid. Our example shows (S)-(+) -mandelic acid reacting with t-BuCHO.

\[
\text{(S)-(+) -mandelic acid} + \text{H}^+ \text{cat.} \rightarrow \text{24:1 cis:trans} \rightarrow \text{both substituents pseudoequatorial}
\]

Acetal formation involves nucleophilic attack of the OH group on the aldehyde so there is no change at the stereogenic centre. The stereochemistry of the new (acetal) centre may surprise you—why should the cis isomer be so favoured? This is a conformational effect as both substituents can occupy pseudoequatorial positions.

Now, if we make the lithium enolate with LDA, the original stereogenic centre is destroyed as that carbon becomes trigonal and planar. The only stereogenic centre left is the newly introduced one at the acetal position.

The ring is now essentially flat, owing to the C=C bond within it, and reaction of the enolate with an electrophile is again a simple matter of addition to the face of the enolate opposite to the t-butyl group.

If the acetal is now hydrolysed, the new stereogenic centre is revealed as an alkylated version of the starting material. It may appear that the alkylation has happened stereospecifically with retention, but what has really happened is that the new stereogenic centre in the acetal intermediate has relayed the stereochemical information through the reaction.

Five-membered rings also allow us to explore electrophilic attack on alkenes. A simple 4-substituted cyclopentene has two different faces—one on the same side as the substituent and one on the opposite side. Epoxidation with a peroxy-acid occurs preferentially on the less hindered face.

The conjugate addition forms a lithium enolate regiospecifically, and that was why you met this sequence in Chapter 25. We showed you a dramatic use of the stereoselectivity there as well, in a synthesis of a prostaglandin (p. 604).

Check that you can write the mechanisms for acetal formation (Chapter 11). Acetal formation is under thermodynamic control so the product produced is the more stable.

Note that this reaction is diastereoselective—but neither starting material nor products are chiral. Diastereoselectivity need have nothing to do with chirality!
In the transition state (marked ‡) the peroxyacid prefers to be well away from R, even if R is only a methyl group (the selectivity is 76:24 with R=Me).

The opposite stereoselectivity can be achieved by bromination in water. The bromonium ion intermediate is formed stereoselectively on the less hindered side and the water is forced to attack stereospecifically in an SN2 reaction from the more hindered side.

Treatment of the product with base (NaOH) gives an epoxide by another SN2 reaction in which oxygen displaces bromide. This is again stereospecific and gives the epoxide on the same side as the R group.

Two substituents on the same side of a five-membered ring combine to dictate approach from the other side by any reagent, and the two epoxides can be formed each with essentially 100% selectivity.

**Regiochemical control in cyclohexene epoxides**

The two reactions above illustrate two important ways of making an epoxide. We are now going to look in a little more detail at what happens when epoxides are opened—a reaction that is essentially the reverse of the epoxide-closing reaction you have just seen. Here are both reactions with the epoxide fused to a cyclohexane ring:

Epoxides can be formed from compounds containing an adjacent hydroxyl group and a leaving group by treatment with base. The epoxide formation is an intramolecular SN2 reaction, and as with any SN2 substitution, inter- or intramolecular, the incoming nucleophile must still attack into the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the leaving group. And the only way that can happen, as you can see from the diagrams below, is (a) if the hydroxyl group and leaving group are trans to one another and (b) if the hydroxyl group and leaving group are both orientated axially. For the trans diastereoisomer, the groups can of course adopt either a diequatorial or a diaxial arrange-
ment (the diequatorial arrangement is favoured, as you saw in Chapter 16) but only the diaxial can react. The cis diastereoisomer cannot form an epoxide.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{trans-2-bromocyclohexanol} & \quad \text{cis-2-bromocyclohexanol} \\
\text{both groups equatorial} & \quad \text{with two groups axial, oxygen can attack the C–Br} \sigma^* \text{orbital} \\
\text{epoxide can’t form because oxygen can’t reach} \sigma^* \text{orbital} & \quad \text{Br axial, O– equatorial} \\
\end{align*}
\]

How should we draw this epoxide fused to a six-membered ring? It is impossible for the CO bonds of the product epoxide ring to adopt perfectly axial and equatorial positions. If you make a model of cyclohexene oxide (as we can call this epoxide) you will see that the ring is a slightly deformed chair—in fact it is like the half-chair conformation of cyclohexene, in which four of the carbon atoms are in the same plane (you met this on p. 829).

The usual way of drawing cyclohexene oxide is shown below: the distortion due to the three-membered ring changes the orientation of the axial and equatorial hydrogens next to the ring—they are pseudoaxial and pseudoequatorial. The hydrogens on the back of the ring (this part of the ring remains about the same as in the chair conformation) can be still considered as ‘normal’ axial and equatorial hydrogens.

You saw above that the epoxide-forming reaction is essentially the reverse of the epoxide-opening reaction. If we took a snapshot of the transition state for either reaction, we would not be able to tell whether it was the RO\(^-\) that was attacking the C–X \(\sigma^*\) orbital to form the epoxide with X\(^-\) as a leaving group, or a nucleophile X\(^-\) attacking the C–O \(\sigma^*\) orbital of the epoxide to form a ring-opened alcohol. In other words, the transition state is the same for both reactions.
Since ring closure is possible only when the starting material is diaxially substituted, this has to mean that ring opening is similarly possible only if the product is diaxial. This is a general principle: ring opening of cyclohexene oxides always leads directly to diaxial products. The diaxially substituted product may then subsequently flip to the diequatorial one, but it is always the one that is initially formed.

How do we know this to be true? If the ring bears a bulky substituent, ring flipping is impossible and the diaxial product has to stay diaxial. An example is nucleophilic attack of halide on the two epoxides shown below. The fact that the ring is a piperidine, rather than a cyclohexane, does not matter. The equatorial phenyl group fixes the conformation, and the regiochemistry of the epoxide opening with azide depends only on the relative stereochemistry of the starting material.

Points to note:
- The nucleophile must attack from the opposite side of the epoxide, allowing it to put electrons into the C–O $\sigma^*$ orbital. This means that the nucleophile and hydroxyl group always end up trans in the product.
- The phenyl group locks the conformation of the epoxide. It stays equatorial, so we only have one epoxide conformation to consider in each case.
- In each case the epoxide opens only at the end that gives the diaxially substituted chair. Ring opening at the other end would still give a diaxially substituted product, but it is a diaxially substituted high-energy twist-boat conformation. The twist boat can, in fact, flip to give an all-equatorial product, but in a kinetically controlled
process such as this, it is the barrier to reaction that matters, not the stability of the final product.

Some general observations on stereo- and regioselectivity in six-membered rings:

- Six-membered rings which are not already a chair (such as cyclohexenes and cyclohexene oxides) react in such a way that they immediately become a chair.
- They do so by reacting from an axial direction: this may also dictate the regioselectivity of the reaction.
- Six-membered rings which are chairs already (such as cyclohexanones) remain a chair, and react from either the axial or equatorial direction according to the size of the attacking reagent.

Stereoselectivity in bicyclic compounds

We have just looked at the way the reactivity of an epoxide gains additional subtleties when it is fused into a bicyclic structure with a six-membered ring. We’re now going to look more generally at bicyclic compounds and their reactivity, and consider some features of their stereoselective reactions.

Bridged bicyclic rings

There are broadly three kinds of bicyclic compounds. If we imagine adding a second five-membered ring to one already there, we could do this in a bridged, fused, or spiro fashion, as you see in the margin. Bridged bicyclic compounds are just what the name implies—a bridge of atom(s) is thrown across from one side of the ring to the other. Fused bicyclic compounds have one bond common to both rings, while spiro compounds have one atom common to both rings.

You will notice that these three types of bicyclic compounds with five-membered rings have different numbers of atoms added to a ‘parent’ five-membered ring. The bridged compound has two extra atoms, the fused compound three, and the spiro compound four. These are marked in green with the original five-membered ring in red. We shall consider stereoselectivity in each of these types of bicyclic ring systems, starting with bridged structures.

The bridged ring shown in the margin is known as norbornane: it’s a simple but very important skeleton on which many other structures are based, and it’s worth spending a moment learning how to draw it convincingly. The instructions in the box overleaf tell you how! Another way of looking at norbornane is as a six-membered ring held in a boat conformation by a one-carbon bridge. The bridge has to be axial at both bridgehead positions (or it wouldn’t be able to form a ring) so the cyclohexane has no choice but to be a boat.

Naming bicyclic compounds

As usual we shall not spend too long on nomenclature, but you may hear norbornane structures referred to as ‘bicyclo[2.2.1]heptanes’. The ‘bicyclo’ and ‘heptane’ parts are self explanatory. The numbers (always separated by dots) refer to the lengths of the bridges linking the two bridgehead carbons. The other two compounds in the margin above are thus bicyclo[3.3.0]octane and spiro[4.4]nonane.
How to draw norbornane structures

The easiest way to draw a convincing norbornane is to start with the bridge: draw a sort of skewed upwards chevron as shown in 1. Then join the ends of the chevron with three bonds, as in 2, making sure to break one of them as it passes behind the chevron, to give an impression of the three-dimensional shape of the molecule. Finally, link the second ring round to the right, 3.

A selection of important bridged bicyclic compounds is shown in the margin. Bridged structures (sometimes called cage structures) are generally very rigid, spending most of their time in a single, well-defined conformation, and this rigidity is reflected in the stereochemistry of their reactions. For example, attack on norbornanone occurs predominantly from the side of the one-atom bridge (the green arrow) rather than the two-atom bridge (the orange arrow).

This selectivity is completely reversed in camphor because the one-atom bridge then carries two methyl groups. One of these must project over the line of approach of the hydride reducing agent.

The two methyl groups on the bridge of the camphor molecule are key features in stereoselective reactions—take them away and the result often changes dramatically. This bicyclic system, with and without methyl groups, has been so widely used to establish stereochemical principles that the two faces of, say, the ketone group in camphor, or the C=C double bond in norbornene (the alkene derivative of norbornane) have been given the names endo and exo. These refer to inside (endo) and outside (exo) the boat-shaped six-membered ring shown in black. In general, reactions of norbornane-type structures occur from the less hindered exo face, but the methyl groups of camphor reverse this selectivity to favour endo attack:

In a similar style, epoxidation of the two alkenes is totally stereoselective, occurring exo in norbornene and endo when methyl groups are present on the bridge. These stereoselectivities would be remarkable in a simple monocyclic compound, but in a rigid bridged bicyclic structure they are almost to be expected.
Reactions that break open bridged molecules can preserve stereochemistry

Some powerful oxidizing agents are able to cleave C–C bonds. Oxidation of camphor with concentrated nitric acid cleaves a C–C bond adjacent to the C=O group and produces a diacid known as camphoric acid. The usual reagent is nitric acid (HNO₃) and oxidation goes via camphor’s enol.

Because the bridge holds the molecule in a fixed conformation, the cleaved diacid has to have a specific stereochemistry. There is no change at the stereogenic centres, so the reaction must give retention of configuration. We can confidently write the structure of camphoric acid with cis-CO₂H groups, but any doubt is dispelled by the ability of camphoric acid to form a bridged bicyclic anhydride.

Fused bicyclic compounds

trans-Fused rings

The ring junction of a fused 6,5-membered ring system can have cis or trans stereochemistry, and so can any pair of larger rings. For smaller rings, trans 5,5- and 6,4-ring junctions can be made, with difficulty, but with smaller rings trans ring junctions are essentially impossible.

The trans-fused 6,6 systems—trans-decalins—have been very widely studied because they form an important part of the structure of steroids. Their conformation was discussed in Chapter 16: they prefer a trans ring junction as trans-decalins have all-chair structures with every bond staggered from every other bond. We can show this by giving a 6,6 system the choice: reducing this enone with lithium metal gives a lithium enolate (Chapter 25). Protonation of this anion with the solvent (liquid ammonia) gives a trans ring junction.
The lithium enolate remains and can be alkylated with an alkyl halide in the usual way. When there are hydrogen atoms at both ring junction positions, axial alkylation occurs just as you should now expect, and a new ketone with three stereogenic centres is formed with >95% stereoselectivity.

However, if there is anything else—even a methyl group—at the ring junction, so that axial approach would give a bad 1,3-diaxial interaction in the transition state, the usual stereoselectivity is overridden and the reaction switches to alkylation on the other face:

**cis-Fused rings**

Almost any cis-fused junction from 3,3 upwards can be made. Even bicyclo[1.1.0]butane exists, although it is not very stable. cis-Fused 4,5, 4,6, and 5,5 systems are common and are much more stable than their trans isomers.

Any method of making such bicyclic compounds will therefore automatically form this stereochemistry. Consider this hydrogenation:

You can think of cis-fused rings as looking like a butterfly or an open book. The key to stereoselectivity in their reactions is that everything happens on the outside (on the cover of the book—the exo face). Nucleophiles add to carbonyl groups from the outside, enolates react with alkyl halides or Michael acceptors on the outside, and alkenes react with peroxyacids on the
outside. Notice that this means the same side as the substituents at the ring junction. The rings are folded away from these ring-junction substituents, which are also on the outside.

A real example comes in the acylation (Chapter 26) of the enolate from the keto-acetal below. The molecule is folded downwards and the enolate is essentially planar, so the outside face is the top face as drawn. Addition presumably occurs entirely from the outside, although the final stereochemistry of the product is controlled thermodynamically because of reversible enolization of the product, allowing the black ester group to adopt the less hindered outside position.

Reduction of the ketone product also occurs exclusively from the outside and this has the surprising effect of pushing the new OH group into the inside position. Attack from the inside is very hindered in this molecule because one of the acetal oxygen atoms is right on the flight path.

The important metabolite biotin has a cis bicyclic structure in which an alkyl chain lies on the more hindered face of the molecule, and any successful synthesis has to address this particular problem. You saw in Chapter 27 that sulfur stabilizes an adjacent anion, but the direct alkylation of the sulfide below is no good because the new alkyl group will go exo. Instead, the sulfide was oxidized to a sulfoxide from the exo face, giving an 8:1 ratio of exo:endo sulfoxides. Alkylation of the cyclic sulfoxide results in trans stereochemistry between the new alkyl group and the sulfoxide oxygen atom, forcing formation of the desired (endo) product. The synthesis is diastereoselective—but not enantioselective since there is no way of distinguishing the left and right sides of the symmetrical sulfoxide.

A simple example of epoxidation occurs with a cyclobutene fused to a five-membered ring. This is a very rigid system and attack occurs exclusively from the outside to give a single epoxide in good yield.
Epoxidation is stereospecific and cis—both new C–O bonds have to be on the same face of the old alkene. But Chapter 19 introduced you to several electrophilic additions to alkenes that were stereospecific and trans, many of them proceeding through a bromonium ion. If stereospecific trans addition occurs on a cis-fused bicyclic alkene, the electrophile will first add to the outside of the molecule, meaning the nucleophile will then be forced to add from the inside. A telling example occurs when the 5,4 fused unsaturated ketone below is treated with N-bromoacetamide in water.

The bromonium ion is formed on the outside of the rigid structure and the water is then forced to add from the inside to get trans addition. As well as exhibiting stereospecificity (trans addition) and stereoselectivity (bromonium forms on outside), this reaction also exhibits regioselectivity in the attack of water on the bromonium ion. Water must come from inside, and it attacks the less hindered end of the bromonium ion.

After protection of the OH group, treatment with base closes a three-membered ring to give a remarkably strained molecule. The ketone forms an enolate and the enolate attacks the alkyl bromide intramolecularly to close the third ring. This enolate is in just the right position to attack the C–Br bond from the back, precisely because of the folding of the molecule.

Inside/outside selectivity may allow the distinction between two otherwise similar functional groups. The cis-fused bicyclic diester below may look at first rather symmetrical but ester hydrolysis leaves one of the two esters alone while the other is converted to an acid.

Only the outside ester—on the same side as the ring junction hydrogens—is hydrolysed. In the mechanism for ester hydrolysis, the rate-determining step is the attack by the hydroxide ion so the functional group increases in size in the rate-determining step. This will be much easier for the ester in the outside than for the one inside the half-open book.

The end result is again that the larger of the two groups is on the inside! There are other ways to do this too. If we alkylate the enolate of a bicyclic lactone, the alkyl group (black) goes on...
the outside as expected. But what will happen if we repeat the alkylation with a different alkyl group? The new enolate will be flat and the stereochemistry at the enolate carbon will be lost. When the new alkyl halide comes in, it will approach from the outside (green) and push the alkyl group already there into the inside.

Should you wish to reverse the positions of the two groups, you simply add them in the reverse order. Whichever group is added first finishes on the inside; the other finishes on the outside.

Reactions of cis-decalins

You saw in Chapter 16 that while trans-decalins are rigid, cis-decalins can flip rapidly between two all-chair conformations. During the flip, all substituents change their conformation. The substituent R is axial on ring B in the first conformation of cis-decalin shown below but equatorial in the second. The ring junction Hs are always axial on one ring and equatorial on the other. The green hydrogen is equatorial on ring A and axial on ring B in the first conformation and vice versa in the second. Of course, they are cis in both. Because R gets equatorial, the second conformation is preferred in this case.

A standard reaction that gives substituted decalins is the Robinson annelation (Chapter 26). A Robinson annelation product available in quantity is the keto-enone known sometimes as the Wieland–Miescher ketone and used widely in steroid synthesis. The non-conjugated keto group can be protected or reduced without touching the more stable conjugated enone.

If either of these products is reduced with hydrogen and a Pd catalyst (the alcohol is first made into a tosylate), the cis-decalin is formed because the enone, although flattened, is already folded to some extent. A conformational drawing of either molecule shows that the top surface is better able to bind to the flat surface of the catalyst.
Each of these products shows interesting stereoselective reactions. The ketal can be converted into an alkene by Grignard addition and E1 elimination, and then epoxidized. Everything happens from the outside as expected, with the result that the methyl group is forced inside at the epoxidation stage.

Treatment of the other product, the keto-tosylate, with base leads to an intramolecular enolate alkylation—a cyclization on the inside of the folded molecule that actually closes a four-membered ring. The reaction is easily seen in conformational terms and the product cannot readily be drawn in conventional diagrams.

A similar reaction happens on the epoxide to produce a beautiful cage structure. This time it is a five-membered ring that is formed, but the principle is the same—the molecule closes across the fold rather easily. The new stereogenic centres can only be formed with this configuration: no other stereoisomer would be a feasible structure.

---

**A summary of stereoselective reactions that occur on cis-fused rings**

1. **Reactions on the outside.**
   - Nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups in the ring.
   - Reactions of enolates of the same ketones with electrophiles: alkyl halides, aldols, Michael additions.
   - cis-Additions to cyclic alkenes: hydrogenation, hydroboration, epoxidation.

2. **Reactions on the outside and then the inside.**
   - trans-Additions to cyclic alkenes: bromination, epoxidation, and epoxide opening.

3. **Reactions on the inside.**
   - Bond formation across the ring(s).

---

**Spirocyclic compounds**

Spirocyclic rings meet at one single atom. This means that the two rings are orthogonal about the tetrahedral atom that is common to both. Even symmetrical-looking versions are unexpectedly chiral. The compound in the margin, for example, is not superimposable on its mirror image, and its symmetry is similar to that of an allene (see Chapter 14).

These sorts of compounds may look rather difficult to come by, but some simple ones are readily made. Cyclization of this keto-acid with polyphosphoric acid leads to a spirocyclic diketone. The *spiro* compound is formed because the more substituted enol is preferred in acid solution.
It is much more difficult to pass stereochemical information from one ring to the other in spirocyclic compounds because of the orthogonality of the rings. Still, some reactions are surprisingly stereoselective—one such is the reduction of the spirocyclic diketone that we made a moment ago. Treatment with LiAlH₄ gives one diastereoisomer of the spirocyclic diol.

The diol can be resolved and used to make the very simple spiro-diene as a single enantiomer. The diene is chiral even though it has no chiral centre because it does not have a plane of symmetry.

Reactions with cyclic intermediates or cyclic transition states

Rings are so good at controlling stereochemistry (as you have seen) that it’s well worth introducing them where they are not really necessary in the final product, simply in order to enjoy those high levels of stereochemical control. In the rest of this chapter we shall consider the use of temporary rings in stereochemical control: these might be cyclic intermediates in a synthetic pathway, or cyclic reaction intermediates, or even merely cyclic transition states. All aid good stereocontrol. We shall concentrate on examples where the ring reverses the normal stereoselectivity so that some different result is possible.

Tethered functional groups can reach only one side of the molecule

The proverbial donkey starved to death in the field with two heaps of hay because it could not decide which one to go for first. If the donkey had been tethered to a stake near one heap it would have been able to reach that heap alone and it could have feasted happily.

This principle can be applied to molecules. If a nucleophile is joined to the group it is to attack by a short chain of covalent bonds, it may be able to reach only one side. We can illustrate this idea with a reaction you met in Chapter 24: iodolactonization. To remind you, iodolactonization involves treating a non-conjugated unsaturated acid with iodine in aqueous NaHCO₃. The product is an iodolactone.

The cyclization reaction is a typical two-stage electrophilic addition to an alkene (Chapter 19) with attack by the nucleophile at the more substituted end of the intermediate iodonium ion. The ring opening is a stereospecific Sₘ,2 and the stereochemistry of the alkene will be reproduced in the product.

In Chapter 14 we explained that planes of symmetry, not chiral centres, are the things to look for when deciding whether or not a compound is chiral.

Iodolactonization is described on p. 569.
The starting acid contains an E alkene, giving a trans iodonium ion. Inversion occurs in the attack of the carboxylate anion on the iodonium ion and we have shown this by bringing the nucleophile in at 180° to the leaving group, with both bonds in the plane of the paper. A single diastereoisomer of the iodolactone results from a stereospecific reaction.

Things get more interesting again when the starting material is cyclic. The iodolactonization below gives only one diastereoisomer.

The relationship between the two stereogenic centres on the old alkene is not an issue—inversion during opening of the iodonium ion means that the I and the O must lie trans. But during the cyclization the carboxylic acid can attack only the nearer side of what was the double bond—in other words the bridge in black has no choice but to be cis across the red six-membered ring. The reason for this is that, while formation of the iodonium ion is reversible, only the iodonium ion with the I and CO$_2$H groups trans to each other can cyclize. Tethering the nucleophilic CO$_2$H group to the alkene dictates the stereochemistry of the product.

This reaction can be used to solve a general problem in the synthesis of steroids: the construction of a diketone with trans-fused 6,5 rings and a quaternary carbon atom at the ring junction. One solution to this problem uses the lactone just made.

The lactone makes a good temporary tether because it can be hydrolysed or reduced to break the ring at the C–O bond and reveal new stereogenic centres on the old structure. In this sequence the lactone ring controls all the subsequent stereochemistry of the molecule in two ways: it fixes the conformation rigidly in one chair form—hence forcing the iodide to be axial—and it blocks one face of the ring. From the lactone above, an alkene is introduced by E2 reaction on the iodide. This stereospecific reaction requires an anti-periplanar H atom so it has to take the only available neighbouring axial hydrogen atom, shown in green. The brown and orange hydrogens are not anti-periplanar and anyway elimination with the brown one would produce a bridgehead alkene.

The resulting alkene has its top face blocked by the lactone bridge so epoxidation occurs entirely from the bottom face.
Now the epoxide is opened with HBr. Only the trans diaxial opening product is possible, so the bromide ion is forced to attack from the top face.

![Diagram of ring opening with HBr]

Do you see how the functional groups are being pushed round the ring? This process is extended further by a second elimination, after protection, which again seeks out the only neighbouring axial hydrogen.

![Diagram of second elimination]

The protecting silyl group is removed in acid, ready for the next important reaction: a Michael addition requiring the alcohol to be oxidized to a ketone. Allylic (or benzylic) alcohols can be oxidized by manganese dioxide, and with three atoms now trigonal the ring becomes even further flattened. But-3-enyl Grignard reagent is added with Cu(I) catalysis to make sure that conjugate addition occurs. Conjugate addition normally gives the axial product, as we saw earlier, and fortunately this is not the direction blocked by the bridge.

![Diagram of Michael addition]

The bridge has now done its work and is removed by zinc metal reduction. This reaction removes leaving groups on the atoms next to carbonyl groups. In this case it is the axial carboxylate that is driven out by the zinc. The released carboxyl group is esterified.

![Diagram of zinc metal reduction]

The last stages are shown below. The ketone is protected, and the alkene oxidized to a carbonyl group by ozonolysis (Chapter 19). The diester can be cyclized by a Claisen ester condensation (Chapter 26). The stereogenic centres in the ring are not affected by any of these reactions so a trans ring junction must result from this reaction. After ester hydrolysis, HCl decarboxylates the product and removes the protecting group.
It is not easy to set up a trans-fused 5,6 system. In this sequence the molecule is effectively tricked into making the trans ring junction by the work done with the lactone tether.

**Cyclic transition states can reverse normal stereoselectivity**

Formation of a ring in an intermediate is a means of enforcing a certain stereochemistry—the example you have seen made use of a lactone. But even transient formation of a ring in a cyclic transition state can be enough to control stereochemistry highly effectively. You will see further examples in the next chapter, but here we just present one type of reaction with this property: epoxidation.

Of course epoxidation reactions form rings, and you have seen examples of epoxidations with \( m \)-CPBA even in this chapter (p. 848) of alkenes such as cyclohexene. We pointed out in Chapter 19 that epoxidation is stereospecific because both new C–O bonds form to the same face of the alkene.

If we block one face of the ring with a substituent—even quite a small one, such as an acetate group—epoxidation becomes stereoselective for the face *anti* to the substituent already there.

![Diagram of epoxidation](image)

But there is one important exception to this rule, when the substituent is a hydroxyl group. When an allylic alcohol is epoxidized, the peroxy-acid attacks the face of the alkene *syn* to the hydroxyl group, even when that face is more crowded. For cyclohexenol the ratio of *syn* epoxide to *anti* epoxide is 24:1 with \( m \)-CPBA and it rises to 50:1 with CF\(_3\)CO\(_2\)H.

![Diagram of epoxidation with hydroxyl group](image)

The reason is shown in the transition state: the OH group can hydrogen bond, through the H of the alcohol, to the peroxy-acid, stabilizing the transition state when the epoxidation is occurring *syn*. This hydrogen bond means that peroxy-acid epoxidations of alkenes with adjacent hydroxyl groups are much faster than epoxidations of simple alkenes, even when no stereochemistry is involved.

Peroxy-acids work for epoxidizing allylic alcohols *syn* to the OH group, but another reagent is better when the OH group is further from the alkene. 4-Hydroxycyclopentene, for example, can be converted into either diastereomer of the epoxide. If the alcohol is protected with a large group such as TBDM (\( t \)-butyl-dimethylsilyl), it becomes a simple blocking group and the epoxide is formed on the opposite face of the alkene. The selectivity is reasonable (83:17) given that the blocking group is quite distant. But if the OH group is not blocked at all but left free, and the epoxidation reagent is the vanadium complex VO(acac)\(_2\) combined with \( t \)-BuOOH, the *syn* epoxide is formed instead. The vanadyl group chelates reagent and alcohol, and delivers the reactive oxygen atom to the same face of the alkene as shown.
In both epoxidation examples, the stereoselectivity is due to the cyclic nature of the transition state: the fact that there is a hydrogen bond or O–metal bond ‘delivering’ the reagent to one face of the alkene. Effectively we have moved on from the tethered nucleophiles of the last section to (transiently) tethered reagents. This is a very important concept, and we revisit it in the next chapter: cyclic transition states are the key to getting good stereoselectivity in reactions of acyclic compounds.

To summarize...

Diastereoselectivity in rings generally follows a few simple principles:

- Flattened three-, four-, or five-membered rings, especially ones with two or more trigonal carbons in the ring, are generally attacked from the less hindered face.
- Flattened six-membered rings with two or more trigonal carbons in the ring (that is, which are not already a chair—so six-membered rings with one trigonal C atom don’t count here) react in such a way that the product becomes an axially substituted chair.
- Bicyclic compounds react on the outside face.
- Reaction on the more hindered face can be encouraged by: (1) tethered nucleophiles or (2) cyclic transition states (tethered reagents).

Diastereoselectivity in compounds without rings is different: it is less well controlled because there are many more conformations available to the molecule. But even in acyclic compounds rings can still be important, and some of the best diastereoselectivities arise when there is a ring formed temporarily in the transition state of the reaction. With or without cyclic transition states, in some cases we have good prospects of predicting which diastereoisomer will be the major reaction product, or explaining the diastereoselectivity if we already know this. That is the subject of the next chapter.

Further reading


The elegant work of Jeffrey Aubé, describing the selective formation of substituted piperidines by control of their conformation, is in *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* 2011, 50, 2734.

Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Looking back

You have had two chapters in a row about stereochemistry: this is the third, and it is time for us to bring together some ideas from earlier in the book. We aim firstly to help you grasp some important general concepts and secondly to introduce some principles in connection with stereoselective reactions in acyclic systems. But, first, some revision.

We introduced the stereochemistry of structures in Chapter 14. We told you about two types of stereoisomers.

● Enantiomers and diastereoisomers
  • Enantiomers—stereoisomers that are mirror images of one another.
  • Diastereoisomers—stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another.

In this chapter we shall talk about how to make compounds as single diastereoisomers. Making single enantiomers is treated in Chapter 41. Chapter 32 was also about making single diastereoisomers, and we hope that, having read that chapter, you are used to thinking stereochemically. We shall meet two different ways of making single diastereoisomers.

● Reactions that make single diastereoisomers
  • Stereospecific reactions—reactions where the mechanism means that the stereochemistry of the starting material determines the stereochemistry of the product and there is no choice involved.
  • Stereoselective reactions—reactions where one stereoisomer of product is formed predominantly because the reaction has a choice of pathways, and one pathway is more favourable than the other.
These terms were introduced in Chapter 17 in connection with elimination reactions, and many of the reactions we mention will be familiar from earlier chapters (particularly Chapters 15–19, 25, and 26). A common misapprehension is that stereospecific means merely very stereoselective. It doesn’t—the two terms describe quite different properties of the stereochemistry of a reaction. For the purposes of making a single diastereoisomer, you can think of stereospecific reactions as ones which simply exchange different forms of stereochemical ‘currency’ (double bond geometry and three-dimensional relative stereochemistry, for example) while stereoselective reactions create additional new stereochemical value.

Making single diastereoisomers using stereospecific reactions of alkenes

The essence of the definition we have just stated is much easier to grasp with some familiar examples. Here are two.

- $S_{N}2$ reactions are stereospecific: they proceed with inversion so that the absolute stereochemistry of the starting material determines the absolute stereochemistry of the product.

  ![SN2 reaction](image)

- E2 reactions are stereospecific: they proceed through an anti-periplanar transition state, with the relative stereochemistry of the starting material determining the geometry of the product.

  ![E2 reaction](image)

Both of these examples are interesting because they show how, once we have some stereochemistry in a molecule, we can change the functional groups but keep the stereochemistry—this is the essence of a stereospecific reaction. In the second example, we change the bromide to a double bond, but we keep the stereochemistry (or ‘stereochemical information’) because the geometry of the double bond tells us which bromide we started with.

This is a good place to begin if we want to make single diastereoisomers because we can reverse this type of reaction: instead of making a single geometry of alkene from a single diastereoisomer, we make a single diastereoisomer from a single geometry of double bond. Here is an example of this—again, one you have already met (Chapter 19). Electrophilic addition of bromine to alkenes is stereospecific and leads to anti addition across a double bond. So if we want the anti dibromide we choose to start with the trans double bond; if we want the syn dibromide we start with the cis double bond. The geometry of the starting material determines the relative stereochemistry of the product.

![Interactive mechanism for stereospecific anti addition to alkenes](image)

Iodolactonization has a similar mechanism; notice how in these two examples the geometry of the double bond in the starting material defines the relative stereochemistry highlighted in black in the product.
For a stereospecific alkene transformation, choose the right geometry of the starting material to get the right diastereoisomer of the product. Don’t try to follow any ‘rules’ over this—just work through the mechanism.

Now for some examples with epoxides. Epoxides are very important because they can be formed stereospecifically from alkenes: cis alkenes give cis (or syn) epoxides and trans alkenes give trans (or anti) epoxides.

Epoxides also react stereospecifically because the ring-opening reaction is an S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction. A single diastereoisomer of epoxide gives a single diastereoisomer of product.

Leukotrienes
Leukotrienes are important molecules that regulate cell and tissue biology. Leukotriene C\textsubscript{4} (LTC\textsubscript{4}) is a single diastereoisomer with an anti 1,2,S,O functional group relationship. In nature, this single diastereoisomer is made by an epoxide opening: since the opening is S\textsubscript{N}2 the epoxide must start off anti and, indeed, the epoxide precursor is another leukotriene, LTA\textsubscript{4}.

When Corey was making these compounds in the early 1980s he needed to be sure that the relative stereochemistry of LTC\textsubscript{4} would be correctly controlled, and to do this he had to make a trans epoxide. Disconnecting LTA\textsubscript{4} led back to a simpler epoxide.

The trans allylic alcohol needed to make this compound was made using one of the methods we introduced in Chapter 27: reduction of an alkynyl alcohol with LiAlH\textsubscript{4}. Here is the full synthesis: alkylation of an ester enolate with prenyl bromide gives a new ester, which itself is turned into an alkylating agent by reduction and tosylation. The alkyne is introduced as its lithium derivative with the alcohol protected as a THP acetal. Hydrolysis of the acetal with
aqueous acid gives the hydroxy-alkyne needed for reduction to the \( E \) double bond, which is then epoxidized.

**Stereoselective reactions**

For most of the rest of the chapter we shall discuss stereoselective reactions. You have already met several examples and we start with a summary of the most important methods.

- **E1** reactions are stereoselective: they form predominantly the more stable alkene.
- Nucleophilic attack on six-membered ring ketones is stereoselective: small nucleophiles attack axially and large ones equatorially.

- Alkylation of cyclic enolates is stereoselective, with reaction taking place on the less hindered face (four- or five-membered rings) or via axial attack (six-membered rings).

- Epoxidation of cyclic alkenes is stereoselective, with reaction taking place on the less hindered face, or directed by hydrogen bonding to a hydroxyl group.

**A comment on structural drawings of single diastereoisomers**

In the two reactions just above, a racemic starting material gives a racemic product as a single diastereoisomer. It is easy to draw a racemic compound with just one stereogenic centre—we just avoid showing stereochemistry. But in the products we have to show relative stereochemistry because we need to indicate which diastereoisomer is formed. There is no way of doing this except by arbitrarily choosing one enantiomer and drawing that. If there is a danger of confusion, we might sometimes write ‘(±)’ under the structure.
Prochirality

Take another look at the reactions in the chapter so far—in particular those that give single diastereoisomers (rather than single enantiomers or geometrical isomers), in other words, those that are diastereoselective. They all involve the creation of a new, tetrahedral stereogenic centre at a carbon that was planar and trigonal. This leads us to our first new definition. Trigonal carbons that aren’t stereogenic (or chiral) centres but can be made into them are called prochiral.

At the very start of Chapter 15 we introduced stereochemistry by thinking about the reactions of two sorts of carbonyl compounds. They are shown again here: the first has a prochiral carbonyl group. The second, on the other hand, is not prochiral because no stereogenic centre is created when the compound reacts.

A tetrahedral carbon atom can be prochiral too—if it carries two identical groups (and so is not a chiral centre) but replacement of one of them leads to a new chiral centre, then the carbon is prochiral.

Glycine is the only common α amino acid without a chiral centre, but replacing one of the two protons on the central carbon with, say, deuterium creates one: the CH₂ carbon is prochiral. Similarly, converting a malonate derive into its monoester makes a chiral centre where there was none: the central C is prochiral. Now, does this ring any bells? It should remind you very much of the definitions in Chapter 31 of enantiotopic and diastereotopic in connection with NMR spectra. Replacing one of two enantiotopic groups with another group leads to one of two enantiomers; replacing one of two diastereotropic groups with another group leads to
one of two diastereoisomers. Diastereotopic groups are chemically different; enantiotopic
groups are chemically identical.

Exactly the same things are true for the faces of a prochiral carbonyl group or double bond.
If reaction on one of two faces of the prochiral group generates one of two enantiomers, the
faces are enantiotopic; if the reaction generates one of two diastereoisomers, the faces are
diastereotopic. We will now apply this thinking to the first few reactions in this chapter: they
are shown again below. The two examples in the top row have prochiral C=C or C=O bonds
with diastereotopic faces: choosing which face of the double bond or carbonyl group to react
on amounts to choosing which diastereoisomer to form. In the third example, the faces of the
prochiral carbonyl group are enantiotopic: choosing which face to attack amounts to choos-
ing which enantiomer to form. In the fourth example, the two faces of C=O are homotopic:
an identical product is formed whichever face is attacked.

Knowing this throws some new light on the last chapter. Almost without exception, every
stereoselective reaction there involved a double bond (usually C=C, sometimes C=O) with
diastereotopic faces. The diastereotopic faces were distinguished by steric hindrance, or
by a nearby hydrogen-bonding group, and so were able to react differently with an incoming
reagent.

Using an R/S-type system to name prochiral faces and groups

Just as stereogenic centres can be described as R or S, it is possible to assign labels to the enantiotopic groups at pro-
chiral tetrahedral carbon atoms or the enantiotopic faces of prochiral trigonal carbon atoms. The basis of the system is
the usual R,S system for stereogenic centres, but pro-R and pro-S are used for groups and Re and Si for faces.
Pro-R and pro-S can be assigned to a pair of enantiotopic groups simply by using the usual rules to assign R or S to the centre
created if the group in question is artificially elevated to higher priority than its enantiotopic twin. We’ll use G to replace H as
we did in Chapter 31: just assume that G has priority immediately higher than H. The method is illustrated for glycine.
Faces of a prochiral trigonal carbon atom are assigned Re and Si by viewing the carbon from that side and counting down the groups in priority 1–3. Counting round to the right (clockwise) means the face is Re; counting round to the left (anticlockwise) means it’s Si. Remember our advice from Chapter 14: think of turning a steering wheel in the direction of the numbers: does the car go to the right or the left?

Like R and S, these stereochemical terms are merely labels: they are of no consequence chemically.

Just like diastereotopic signals in an NMR spectrum, diastereotopic faces are always different in principle, but sometimes not so in practice. The very first reaction of Chapter 32 is a case in point: this C=O group has two diastereotopic faces, which, due to free rotation about single bonds, average out to about the same reactivity, so we cannot expect any reasonable level of diastereoselectivity.

We put Chapter 32 first because in rings conformation is well defined, and this ‘averaging’ effect is held at bay. We are about to let it out again, but we will show you how it can be tamed to surprisingly good effect.

**Additions to carbonyl groups can be diastereoselective even without rings**

What happens if we bring the stereogenic centre closer to the carbonyl group than it was in the last example? You might expect it to have a greater influence over the carbonyl group’s reactions. And it does. Here is an example.

There is three times as much of one of the two diastereisomeric products as there is of the other, and the major (anti) diastereoisomer is the one in which the nucleophile has added to the front face of the carbonyl group as drawn here. We can make these same two diastereomers by addition of an organometallic to an aldehyde. For example, this Grignard reagent gives three times as much of the syn diastereoisomer as the anti diastereoisomer. The major product has changed, but the product still arises from attack on the front face of the carbonyl as shown.
Drawing diastereoisomers of acyclic molecules

The three structures below all show the same diastereoisomer (the major product from the last reaction), but in three different conformations (we are just rotating about a bond to get from one to another).

Which is the best? A good guideline, which we suggested in Chapter 14, is to place the longest carbon chain zig-zagging across the page in the plane of the paper, and allow all the smaller substituents to extend above or below that chain. The first structure here is drawn like that. But this is only a guideline, and the second structure here is a bit more informative regarding the reaction because, when it is drawn like this, you can clearly see from which direction the ethyl group has attacked the carbonyl. Our advice would be that you first of all draw the product of any reaction in more or less the same conformation as the starting material to ensure you make no mistakes, and then rotate about a single bond to place the longest chain in the plane of the paper.

If you still have problems manipulating structures mentally—for example, if you find it hard to work out whether the substituents that aren’t in the plane should be in front of or behind the page—build some models.

These two reactions are not nearly as diastereoselective as most of the reactions of cyclic compounds you met in the last chapter. But we do now need to explain why they are diastereoselective at all, given the free rotation possible in an acyclic molecule. The key, as much with acyclic as with cyclic molecules, is conformation.

The conformation of a chiral aldehyde

What will be the conformation of the aldehyde in the margin? Using the principles we outlined in Chapter 16, we can expect it to be staggered, with no eclipsing interactions, and also with large substituents as far apart from one another as possible. A Newman projection of one of the possible conformers might look like the one shown in the margin. There are no eclipsing interactions, and the large phenyl group is held satisfactorily far away from the O and the H atoms of the aldehyde.

By rotating about the central bond of the aldehyde (the one represented by a circle in the Newman projection) we can suggest a series of possible conformations. Provided we move in 60° steps, none of them will have any eclipsing interactions. The full set of six conformers is shown here. Look at them for a moment and notice how they differ.

Only two of them, boxed in orange, place the large Ph group perpendicular to the carbonyl group. These yellow-boxed conformations are therefore the lowest-energy conformers and, for the purpose of the discussion that follows, they are the only ones whose reactions we need to consider.
Lowest-energy conformations of a carbonyl compound

The most important conformations of a carbonyl compound with a stereogenic centre adjacent to the carbonyl group are those that place the largest group perpendicular to the carbonyl group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{L} &= \text{large group, e.g. Ph} \\
\text{M} &= \text{medium-sized group, e.g. Me} \\
\text{S} &= \text{small group, e.g. H}
\end{align*}
\]

The major product arises from the most reactive conformer

Now that we have decided which are the important conformations, how do we know which gives the product? We need to decide which is the most reactive. All we need to do is to remember that any nucleophile attacking the carbonyl group will do so from the Bürgi–Dunitz angle—about 107° from the \( \text{C}=\text{O} \) bond. The attack can be from either side of \( \text{C}=\text{O} \), and the following diagrams show the possible trajectories superimposed on the two conformations we have selected, which are in equilibrium with one another.

The black flight path is the best and the three brown flight paths are hindered by Ph or Me

Not all four possible ‘flight paths’ for the nucleophile are equally favourable. For the three shown in brown, the nucleophile passes within 30° or so of another substituent. But, for the one shown in black, there is no substituent nearby except \( \text{H} \) to hinder attack: the conformation on the left is the most reactive one, and it reacts to give the diastereoisomer shown below.

In order to avoid making mistakes, we suggest you:

- first draw the product in a conformation similar to that of the starting material
- then redraw to put the longest chain in the plane of the paper.

Here, this just means drawing the view from the top of the Newman projection—there is no need to rotate any bonds in this case.

With \( \text{Nu}=\text{Et} \) we have the right product and, more importantly, we can be pretty sure it is for the right reason: this model of the way a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl compound, called the Felkin–Anh model, is supported by theoretical calculations and numerous experimental results. Notice that we don’t have to decide which is the lower energy of the two conformations: this is not necessary because the attack in black will occur even if the conformer on the left is the minor one in the mixture.
The same reasoning accounts for the diastereoselectivity of the reduction on p. 858: first we need to draw the two important conformers of the ketone; the ones that have the large group (Ph) perpendicular to the C=O group.

Now choose the angle of attack that is the least hindered and draw a Newman projection of the product. Finally, redraw the Newman projection as a normal structure, preferably with the longest chain in the plane of the paper.

**The effect of electronegative atoms**

One of the most powerful anticancer agents known is dolastatin, isolated from the sea-hare *Dolabella*. Dolastatin contains an unusual amino acid, with three stereogenic centres, and chemists in Germany managed to exploit Felkin–Anh control very effectively to make it from the much more widespread amino acid isoleucine. This is the sequence of reactions.

![Interactive Felkin–Anh model for ketone reduction](image)

The key step is the aldol reaction of the enolate of methyl acetate with the protected amino aldehyde. To rationalize the stereoselectivity, we first need to draw the two most important conformations of this aldehyde with the large group perpendicular to C=O. The trouble is, which do we choose as ‘large’: the NBn2 group or the branched alkyl group? Since we know which diastereoisomer is produced we can work backwards to find that it must be the NBn2 group that sits perpendicular to C=O in the reactive transition state, and not alkyl. We can draw the best conformation without worrying about alternatives.

Now look at the diastereoselectivity of the reaction: it is much greater than the 3:1 we saw before—more like 20:1. This really does suggest that there is a further factor at work here, and that further factor is the electronegative N atom.

Carbonyl groups increase the reactivity of adjacent leaving groups towards nucleophilic substitution by several orders of magnitude. This was an effect that we noted in Chapter 15, where we showed that the ketone below reacts by the SN2 mechanism 5000 times as fast as methyl chloride itself. We explained this effect by saying that the $\pi^*$ of the C=O and the $\sigma^*$ of C–Cl overlap to form a new, lower-energy (and therefore more reactive) LUMO. What we did not
note then, because it was not relevant, is that this overlap can only occur when the C–Cl bond is perpendicular to the C=O bond, because only then are the \( \pi^* \) and \( \sigma^* \) orbitals aligned correctly.

The same thing happens even with electronegative atoms X that are not leaving groups in the \( S_N2 \) reaction (for example, \( X=OR, NR_2, SR, \) etc.). The \( \pi^* \) and \( \sigma^* \) orbitals add together to form a new, lower-energy molecular orbital, more susceptible to nucleophilic attack. But, if \( X \) is not a leaving group, attack on this orbital will result not in nucleophilic substitution but in addition to the carbonyl group. Again, this effect will operate only when the C–X and C=O bonds are perpendicular so that the orbitals align correctly.

What does this mean for stereoselectivity? Conformations of the chiral carbonyl compound that place an electronegative atom perpendicular to the C=O bond will be more reactive—size doesn’t matter. So, in the dolastatin amino acid example, the conformations with NBn2 perpendicular to C=O are the only conformations we need to consider.

**Using the Felkin–Anh model**

To predict or explain the stereoselectivity of reactions of a carbonyl group with an adjacent stereogenic centre, use the Felkin–Anh model. If you look at the next example, just below this box, you can follow exactly the series of steps we suggest you take:

- Draw Newman projections of the conformations of the starting material that place a large group or an electronegative group perpendicular to C=O.
- Allow the nucleophile to attack along the least hindered trajectory, taking into account the Bürgi–Dunitz angle.
- Draw a Newman projection of the product that arises from attack in this way.
- Carefully flatten the Newman projection on to the page to produce a normal structure, preferably with the longest chain of C atoms in the plane of the page. Check that you have done this last step correctly; it is very easy to make mistakes here. Use a model if necessary, or do the ‘flattening out’ in two stages—first view the Newman projection from above or below and draw that; then rotate some of the molecule about a bond if necessary to get the long chain into the plane of the page.

**Chelation can reverse stereoselectivity**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{SMe} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Li}^+ \text{R}_3\text{BH}^+ \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{SMe} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{Li}^+ \text{R}_3\text{BH}^+
\end{align*}
\]
You should now be in a position to explain the outcome of this reaction without much difficulty. Sulfur is the electronegative atom, so the conformations we need to consider are the two following. Unhindered attack on the second gives the diastereoisomer shown.

But, from what we have told you so far, the next reaction would present a problem: changing the metal from lithium to zinc has reversed the stereoselectivity. Using the simple Felkin–Anh model no longer works: it gives the wrong answer.

The reason is that zinc can chelate sulfur and the carbonyl group. Chelation is the coordination of two heteroatoms carrying lone pairs to the same metal atom, and here it changes the conformation of the starting material. No longer does the most reactive or most populated conformation place the electronegative S atom perpendicular to C=O; instead it prefers S to lie as close to the carbonyl oxygen as possible so that Zn can bridge between S and O, like this:

When chelation is possible, this is the conformation to consider—the one with the carbonyl O and the other chelating atom almost eclipsing one another. It is the most populated because it is stabilized by the chelation, and it is also the most reactive, because the Lewis-acidic metal atom increases the reactivity of the carbonyl group. Attack is still along the less hindered pathway, but this now leads to the other face of the carbonyl group, and the stereochemical outcome is reversed.

Two things are needed for chelation to occur:

- a heteroatom with lone pairs available for coordination to a metal
- a metal ion that prefers to coordinate to more than one heteroatom at once—these are mainly more highly charged ions, as shown in the table.

Here is another example of a reversal in selectivity that can be explained using a non-chelated Felkin–Anh model with Na⁺ and a chelated model with Mg²⁺.

Not only does chelation control reverse the stereoselectivity, it gives a much higher degree of stereoselectivity. Stereoselectivities in chelation-controlled additions to C=O groups are typically >95:5. But this fits in nicely with the ideas we presented at the end of the last chapter: stereoselectivity is likely to be high if a cyclic transition state is involved. Chelation involves
just such a transition state, so it should be no surprise that it lets us achieve much higher levels of control than the acyclic Felkin–Anh model does.

**Chelation, rate, and stereoselectivity**

The correlation of rate of addition with diastereoselectivity was demonstrated in a series of experiments that involved reacting Me₂Mg with protected α-hydroxy-ketones. As the protecting group was changed from a methyl ether to a trimethylsilyl ether and then through a series of increasingly bulky silyl ethers, both the rate of the reaction and the diastereoselectivity decreased. With small protecting groups the reaction takes place through the chelated transition state—the selectivity shows this—and the rate is faster because of the activating effect of the Lewis-acidic magnesium ion. But with larger protecting groups chelation of Mg⁺⁺ between the two oxygen atoms is frustrated: the rate drops off and the selectivity becomes more what would be expected from the Felkin–Anh model.

![Chemical structures and reactions](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>&gt; 99:1</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiMe₃</td>
<td>99:1</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiEt₃</td>
<td>96:4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiMe₂t-Bu</td>
<td>88:12</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiPh₂t-Bu</td>
<td>63:37</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si(i-Pr)₃</td>
<td>42:58</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Chelation:**
  - may change the direction of diastereoselectivity
  - leads to high levels of diastereoselectivity
  - increases the rate of the addition reaction.

Chelation is possible through six- as well as five-membered rings and the reduction of the ketone below is a nice example of the reversal of diastereoselectivity observed when chelating Ce³⁺ ions are added to a normal sodium borohydride reduction. The products were important for making single geometrical isomers of alkenes in a modification of the Wittig reaction. Notice too that the rate changes: with Ce³⁺ the reaction can be done at –78°C.

![Chemical structures and reactions](image)
**Attack on α chiral carbonyl compounds: summary**

The flow chart summarizes what you should consider when you need to predict or explain the stereochemical outcome of nucleophilic attack on a chiral carbonyl compound.

- **is there a heteroatom at the chiral centre?**
  - yes
  - no

- **is there a metal ion capable of chelation with the heteroatom?**
  - yes
  - no

- **use Felkin–Anh model:**
  - consider reactions on conformations with largest group perpendicular to C=O
  - consider reactions on conformations with most electronegative atom perpendicular to C=O

- **use chelation model:**
  - consider reactions on conformation with C=O and heteroatom held close in space

---

**Stereoselective reactions of acyclic alkenes**

Earlier in the chapter we discussed how to make single diastereoisomers by stereospecific additions to double bonds of fixed geometry. But if the alkene also contains a chiral centre there will be a stereoselective aspect to its reactions too: its faces will be diastereotopic, and there will be two possible outcomes even if the reaction is fully stereospecific. Here is an example where the reaction is an epoxidation.

**The Houk model**

In order to explain reactions of chiral alkenes like this, we need to assess which conformations are important and consider how they will react, just as we have done for chiral carbonyl compounds. Much of the work on alkene conformations was done by K. N. Houk using theoretical computer models, and we will summarize the most important conclusions of these studies. The theoretical studies looked at two model alkenes, shown in the margin.

The calculations found that the low-energy conformations in each case were those in which a substituent eclipses the double bond. For the simple model alkene 1, the lowest-energy conformation is the one that has the proton in the plane of the alkene. Another low-energy conformation—only 3.1 kJ mol⁻¹ higher—has one of the methyl groups eclipsing the double bond, so that when we start looking at reactions of this type of alkene, we shall have to consider both conformations.

K. N. Houk works at the University of California in Los Angeles. He has provided explanations for a number of stereochemical results by using powerful computational methods.
model alkene 1 has two low-energy conformations

```
Me

Me
```

lowest energy: H eclipses plane of double bond

```
Me

Me
```

slightly higher energy: Me eclipses plane of double bond

model alkene 2 has only one low-energy conformation

```
Me

Me
```

only important conformer:
H eclipses double bond

```
Me

Me
```

high-energy conformation
due to Me–Me interaction

For the model alkene 2, with a cis substituent, the conformation is more predictable and the only low-energy conformer is the one with the hydrogen eclipsing the double bond. There is no room for a methyl group to eclipse the double bond because if it did it would get too close to the cis substituent at the other end of the double bond.

The message from the calculations is this:

- The lowest-energy conformation of a chiral alkene will have H eclipsing the double bond.
- If there is a cis substituent on the alkene, this will be the only important conformation; if there is no cis substituent, other conformations may be important too.

Now we can apply the theoretical model to some real examples.

**Stereoselective epoxidation**

We started this section with a diastereoselective epoxidation of an alkene. The alkene was this one, and it has a substituent cis to the stereogenic centre. We can therefore expect it to have one important conformation, with H eclipsing the double bond. When a reagent—m-CPBA here—attacks this conformation, it will approach the less hindered face, and the outcome is shown.

```
Me

SiMe2Ph
```

cis-substituted alkene
only important conformer
has H eclipsing double bond

```
m-CPBA attacks the
less hindered face
```

>95% one diastereoisomer

Without the cis substituent, selectivity is much lower.

```
SiMe2Ph
```

```
m-CPBA
```

```
+ SiMe2Ph
```

61:39 ratio of diastereoisomers

*m*-CPBA still attacks the less hindered face of the alkene, but with no cis substituent there are two low-energy conformations: one with H eclipsing the double bond, and one with Me eclipsing. Each gives a different stereochemical result, explaining the low stereoselectivity of the reaction.
You saw at the end of the last chapter that the reactions of $m$-CPBA can be directed by hydroxyl groups, and the same thing happens in the reactions of acyclic alkenes. This allylic alcohol epoxidizes to give a 95:5 ratio of diastereoisomers.

![Diagram]

Drawing the reactive conformation explains the result. The thing that counts is the cis methyl group: the fact that there is a trans one too is irrelevant as it is just too far away from the stereogenic centre to have an effect on the conformation. The reaction uses a racemic mixture, but to explain the diastereoselectivity we just have to pick one enantiomer and show what happens to that.

- **To explain the stereoselectivity of reactions of chiral alkenes:**
  - Draw the conformation with H eclipsing the double bond.
  - Allow the reagent to attack the less hindered of the two faces or, if coordination is possible, to be delivered to the face syn to the coordinating group.
  - Draw the product in the same conformation as the starting material.
  - Redraw the product as a normal structure with the longest chain in the plane of the paper.

**Stereoselective enolate alkylation**

Chiral enolates can be made from compounds with a stereogenic centre β to a carbonyl group. Once the carbonyl is deprotonated to form the enolate, the stereogenic centre is next to the double bond and in a position to control the stereoselectivity of its reactions. The scheme below shows stereoselectivity in the reactions of some chiral enolates with methyl iodide.
The enolate is a cis-substituted alkene because either O or OEt must be cis to the stereogenic centre, so that to explain the stereoselectivity we need consider only the conformation with H eclipsing the double bond. Notice how the diastereoselectivity increases as the group R gets bigger because there is then more contrast between the size of Me and R. In each case, the electrophile adds to the less hindered face, opposite R.

The other diastereoisomer can be made just by having the methyl group in place first and then protonating the enolate. The selectivities are lower (because a proton is small), but this does illustrate the way in which reversing the order of introduction of two groups can reverse the stereochemical outcome of the reaction.

**Aldol reactions can be stereoselective**

In Chapter 26 you met the aldol reaction: reaction of an enolate with an aldehyde or a ketone. Many of the examples you saw approximated to this general pattern.

Only one new stereogenic centre is created, so there is no question of diastereoselectivity. But with substituted enolates, two new stereogenic centres are created and we need to be able to predict which diastereoisomer will be formed. Here is an example from p. 626. We did not consider stereochemistry at that stage, but we can now reveal that the syn diastereoisomer is the major product of the reaction.

The important point about substituted enolates is that they can exist as two geometrical isomers, cis or trans. Which enolate is formed is an important factor controlling the diastereoselectivity because it turns out that, in many examples of the aldol reaction, cis enolates give syn aldols preferentially and trans enolates give anti aldols preferentially.
Diastereoselectivity in aldol reactions

Generally (but certainly not always!) in aldol reactions:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cis enolate} & \quad \text{syn aldol} \\
\text{trans enolate} & \quad \text{anti aldol}
\end{align*}
\]

Let’s start by showing some examples and demonstrating how we know this to be the case. Some enolates can exist only as \text{trans} enolates because they are derived from cyclic ketones. This enolate, for example, reacts with aldehydes to give only the \text{anti} aldol product.

If we choose the group ‘X’, next to the carbonyl group, to be large, then we can be sure of getting just the \text{cis} enolate. So, for example, the lithium enolate of this \text{t}-butyl ketone forms just as one geometrical isomer, and reacts with aldols to give only the \text{syn} aldol product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cis enolate keeps Me and t-Bu apart} & \quad \text{syn aldol}
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{cis and trans, E and Z, syn and anti}

Before going further, there are two points we must clarify. The first is a problem of nomenclature, and concerns the enolates of esters. Here are two closely related ester enolate equivalents, drawn with the same double bond geometry.

\[
\text{The answer is both! For the Li enolate, the usual rule makes OLi of lower priority than OMe (because Li has a smaller atomic number than C), so it’s E, while the silyl enol ether (or ‘silyl ketene acetal’) has OSi of higher priority than OMe (Si has a larger atomic number than C), so it’s Z. This is merely a nomenclature problem, but it would be irritating to have to reverse all our arguments for lithium and boron enolates (as opposed to, say, tin or silicon ones). So, for the sake of consistency, it is much better to avoid the use of E and Z with enolates and instead use cis and trans, which then always refer to the relationship between the substituent and the anionic oxygen (bearing the metal).}

The other point concerns \textit{syn} and \textit{anti}. We said earlier that there is no precise definition of these terms: they are a useful way of distinguishing two diastereoisomers provided the structure of at least one of them is presented in diagrammatic form. For aldol products the convention is that \textit{syn} or \textit{anti} refers to the enolate substituent (the green Me in the last example) and the new hydroxyl group, provided the main chain is in the plane of the paper, the way we have encouraged you to draw molecules.

The aldol reaction has a chair-like transition state

These are the experimental facts: how can we explain them? Aldol reactions are another class of stereoselective process with a cyclic transition state. During the reaction, the lithium is transferred from the enolate oxygen to the oxygen of the carbonyl electrophile. This is represented in the margin both in curly arrow terms and as a transition state structure. A six-membered ring is involved, and we can expect this ring to adopt more or less a chair
conformation. The easiest way to draw this is first to draw the chair, and then convert atoms to O or Li as necessary. Here it is.

In drawing this chair, we have one choice: do we allow the aldehyde to place R equatorial or axial? Both are possible but, as you should now expect, there are fewer steric interactions if R is equatorial. Note that the enolate doesn’t have the luxury of choice. If it is to have three atoms in the six-membered ring, as it must, it can do nothing but place the methyl group pseudoaxial. The aldol formed from the favoured transition state structure, with R pseudoaxial, is shown below—first in the conformation of the transition state, and then flattened out on to the page, and it is anti.

We can do the same for the cis enolate. The enolate has no choice but to put its methyl substituent pseudoaxial, but the aldehyde can choose either pseudoaxial or pseudoequatorial. Again, pseudoaxial is better and the reaction gives the product shown—the syn aldol.

Stereoselective enolization is needed for stereoselective aldols

The cyclic transition state explains how enolate geometry controls the stereochemical outcome of the aldol reaction. But what controls the geometry of the enolate? For lithium enolates of ketones the most important factor is the size of the group that is not enolized. Large groups force the enolate to adopt the cis geometry; small groups allow the trans enolate to form. Because we can’t separate the lithium enolates, we just have to accept that the reactions of ketones with small R will be less diastereoselective.

With boron enolates, we don’t have to rely on the structure of the substrate—we choose the groups on boron—and we can get either cis or trans depending on which groups these are. Boron enolates are made by treating the ketone with an amine base (often Et₂N or i-PrNEt₂) and R₂B–X, where X⁻ is a good leaving group such as chloride or triflate (CF₃SO₃⁻). With bulky
groups on boron, such as two cyclohexyl groups, a trans enolate forms from most ketones. The boron enolate reacts reliably with aldehydes to give anti aldol products through the same six-membered transition state that you saw for lithium enolates.

\[ \text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{ClB(c-Hex)}_2 \quad \text{B(c-Hex)}_2 \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{RCHO} \quad \text{ClB(c-Hex)}_2 \]

With smaller B substituents, the cis enolate forms selectively. Here, the boron is part of a bicyclic structure known as 9-BBN (9-borabicyclononane). The bicyclic part may look large but, as far as the rest of the molecule is concerned, it’s ‘tied back’ behind the boron, and the methyl group can easily lie cis to oxygen. The cis enolate then gives syn aldol products. Di-n-butyliboron triflate (Bu₂BOTf) also gives cis enolates.

\[ \text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Et₃N} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{R} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{RCHO} \quad \text{B} \quad \text{TfO} \quad \text{B} \]

**Summary: How to make syn and anti aldols**

To make syn aldols of ketones:
- use boron enolate with 9-BBN-OTf or Bu₂BOTf
- from a ketone RCOEt with bulky R, use lithium enolate

To make anti aldols of ketones:
- use boron enolate with (c-Hex)₂BCl
- from a cyclic ketone, use lithium enolate

---

**Single enantiomers from diastereoselective reactions**

The aldol reactions in the last section made single diastereoisomers from two achiral compounds. No enantiomerically pure reagents were used, so the reaction had no choice but to give the product diastereoisomer as a racemic mixture of its two enantiomers.

In all the other diastereoselective reactions in this chapter, the starting material has been chiral, with the formation of new chiral centres controlled by the configuration of the starting material. Whatever the diastereoselectivity of the reaction, if the starting material is racemic, so will be the product; if the starting material is enantiomerically pure, so will be the product. The epoxidation of the allylic alcohol in the margin illustrates this point.

The reaction starts with racemic material (no stereochemistry is shown at the chiral centre) and makes a racemic product. Of course we have only drawn one enantiomer—the only way to draw one diastereoisomer is to choose one enantiomer and draw that—but the indication ‘±’ underneath tells you to expect an equal amount of the other enantiomer as well. Even without this indication, you should be able to work out, in any given case, whether a compound is racemic or not, providing you know where it comes from. Here the starting material is racemic and the reagent is achiral so the product must be racemic.

The example of this reaction earlier in the chapter (p. 856) was this type of reaction. The starting alcohol was racemic and the product was just one racemic diastereoisomer—the all cis compound. But if the starting material had been enantiomerically pure, so would the product. One enantiomer gives one enantiomer of the product: the other enantiomer of the alcohol...
gives the other. Both products are the same diastereoisomer (all cis) but they are mirror images of each other. If you start with enantiomerically pure compounds, the products will be enantiomerically pure as well.

We gave an example of this during the discussion of the Felkin–Anh model. The starting material was the natural amino acid isoleucine and was the enantiomer shown. The product of the aldol reaction was therefore also a single enantiomer. The original chiral centre in both these examples is not affected by the reaction and remains unchanged.

It is much more useful to make enantiomerically pure as well as diastereoisomerically pure compounds, particularly in the synthesis of a drug. The strategy used here is to make the starting material from an enantiomerically pure compound available from nature: in this case an amino acid. These available enantiomerically pure compounds are known collectively as the chiral pool. You can read more about this in Chapter 41 on asymmetric synthesis.

If you are making an enantiomerically pure compound with more than one stereogenic centre, only one needs be borrowed from the chiral pool, provided diastereoselective reactions can be used to introduce the others with control over relative stereochemistry. Because the first chiral centre has defined absolute configuration, any diastereoselective reaction that controls the relative stereochemistry of a new chiral centre also defines its absolute configuration.

We’ll use as an illustration a synthesis of a rare sugar, methyl mycaminoside, containing five chiral centres. Only one chiral centre comes directly from the chiral pool—the rest are introduced diastereoselectively. The naturally derived, enantiomerically pure compound used as the starting material is (S)-lactic acid. The starting chiral centre, preserved right through the sequence, is ringed in green.

The ring was built up using familiar chemistry from acetylated (S)-lactic acid, and a cyclization step introduced the second chiral centre in the final step of the scheme below. The methyl group goes pseudoequatorial on the newly formed ring, while the anomeric effect, which was explained on p. 801 of Chapter 31, induces the methoxy group to prefer the pseudoaxial position.

The third stereogenic centre was controlled by reduction of the ketone from the axial direction to give the equatorial alcohol, which then directed introduction of the fourth and fifth stereogenic centres by epoxidation.
Finally, the simple nucleophilic amine Me₂NH attacks the epoxide with inversion of configuration to give methyl mycaminoside. The conformational drawing shows that all substituents except the MeO group, which prefers to be axial because of the anomeric effect. Starting from an enantiomerically pure compound containing one chiral centre, four new chiral centres are introduced in sequence by diastereoselective reactions of various kinds. The final product is necessarily a single enantiomer.

The structure and synthesis of penaresidin

Our last example is a natural product called penaresidin A. It was isolated from a Japanese sponge in 1991, and is now known to have the structure shown below. When it was first discovered, it proved difficult to find out the stereochemistry and, in particular, the relative stereochemistry between the two remotely related groups of chiral centres was not initially known.

What is sure is the relative stereochemistry around the four-membered azetidine ring: the NMR methods described in Chapter 31 give that. What is also certain is that natural penaresidin A is enantiomerically pure. What Mori and his co-workers set out to do was to make, using unambiguous stereoselective methods, the possible diastereoisomers of penaresidin A to discover which was the same as the natural product.

The challenge of constructing the three chiral centres at the left-hand end of the molecule can be solved by taking just one of them from a natural source—in this case the amino acid L-serine. The amino group of serine was protected as the Boc derivative, and the hydroxyl and amino groups condensed with the dimethoxyacetal of acetone to form a five-membered ring. Now the free ester could be reduced with LiBH₄ and oxidized to the aldehyde by the Swern method (Chapter 27).

How will this aldehyde react with nucleophiles such as lithiated alkynes? Consider a Felkin–Anh transition state: again, we know that the substituted nitrogen atom, being electronegative and bulky, will lie perpendicular to the carbonyl group in the most reactive conformation. Looking at the two alternatives shown below, it’s easy to see that the one on the right allows unhindered attack, and in the synthesis an alkynyl anion was used to make the product shown.
The alkyne was then reduced to an E alkene by a dissolving metal reduction, a step which also hydrolysed the five-membered heterocycle. The next step, an epoxidation, is needed to install the third of the chiral centres at the left-hand end of penarisidine. However, hydrogen-bond directed epoxidation of this allylic alcohol would be expected to give the syn product shown, which has the wrong relative stereochemistry between the brown OH group and the epoxide.

The solution is to use a large blocking group to prevent this brown OH group hydrogen bonding to the m-CPBA. The t-butyldimethylsilyl group (TBDMS) is the best, and when both OH groups are protected, some of the right diastereoisomer is formed by attack of m-CPBA on the top face of the alkene. Reduction of the epoxide with DIBAL (i-Bu2AlH) now gives the correct diastereoisomer.

To close the ring, the green hydroxyl group was converted to a good leaving group, mesylate (MeSO3−), ready for an attack by the nitrogen with inversion on treatment with base. Make sure you can see how inversion at this centre gives the stereochemistry shown! The chemists knew at this stage they were on the right track with regard to relative stereochemistry because the NMR spectrum of structures containing any long alkyl chain R were very similar to that of the natural compound.

**Confirming the stereochemistry by synthesis**

The other two chiral centres at the right-hand end of the chain are so far removed from the ring (by 10 CH2 groups) that there is no simple way to determine their stereochemistry relative to the three at the left-hand end by NMR. The solution to problems of assignment like this is often to make the various isomers by unambiguous synthesis and compare the NMR spectra of the natural and synthetic compounds. This is what Mori did in this case.

The chiral pool can again be called into play by using another amino acid, l-isoleucine, as starting material. First the amino group must be converted to a leaving group by diazotization with nitrous acid (sodium nitrite in dilute HCl) and substituted by water to give a hydroxy acid. The acid is esterified and reduced to a diol.
Conversion of the diol's primary hydroxyl group to a leaving group (here a tosylate) allows the epoxide to be formed with retention of the two stereogenic centres of the starting material. Cyclization in base gives an epoxide. Overall, the enantiomerically pure starting material is converted stereospecifically into a single enantiomer of a single diastereoisomer of the epoxide.

Before we go on, look back at the first reaction of this sequence—the conversion of L-leucine to the hydroxy acid. The stereochemistry may surprise you: look carefully and you will see that the amino group has been displaced with retention of stereochemistry. Retentive substitutions usually indicate double inversions, and here the carboxylic acid gets involved in the displacement to give (with inversion) a very unstable compound called an $\alpha$-lactone whose strained ring is opened by water, also with inversion.

The epoxide may now be opened with a nucleophile to give the right-hand half of the target molecule. The alkyne shown below, which has an anti relationship between the hydroxyl and methyl groups, was made and linked to the left-hand half of penaresidin A by using it to attack the aldehyde the method described above. However, the final product was not the same as natural penaresidin A!

Clearly, some aspect of relative stereochemistry was wrong. So the synthesis was repeated, this time using the syn diastereoisomer of the substituted alkyne obtained using one of the methods we will describe in Chapter 41. With this isomer the final compound had spectroscopic data identical with the natural product, and the question of its stereochemistry was solved. It is not uncommon for synthesis to be the only reliable way of proving the detailed structure of a compound.
Looking forward

Once you have got hold of a molecule as a single enantiomer, however simple that molecule may be, you can always use reliably diastereoselective reactions of the type described in this chapter and the one before to decorate it with further chiral centres. This is a very important point that underlies the field of asymmetric synthesis, which we will cover in Chapter 41. There you will see developments of the ideas we have just been describing, where chiral centres derived from nature are used to introduce new stereochemistry even though they themselves need not appear in the final product. But before we move on to such reactions, we need to cover a handful of important new reaction mechanisms, many of which provide further ways of introducing new stereochemical features into molecules. The first of these new classes of reactions is cycloadditions.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Pericyclic reactions 1: cycloadditions

A new sort of reaction

Most organic reactions are ionic. Electrons move from an electron-rich atom towards an electron-poor atom: anions or cations are intermediates. Formation of a cyclic ester (a lactone) is an example. The reaction involves five steps and four intermediates. The reaction is acid-catalysed and each intermediate is a cation. Electrons flow in one direction in each step—towards the positive charge. This is an ionic reaction.

![Chemical structures](image)

This chapter is about a totally different reaction type. Electrons move round a circle and there are no positive or negative charges on any intermediates—indeed, there are no inter-
mediates at all. This type of reaction is called **pericyclic**. The most famous example is the **Diels–Alder reaction**. This reaction goes in a single step simply on heating. We can draw the mechanism with the electrons going round a six-membered ring.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{+} \\
\text{heat} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\end{array}
\]

Each arrow leads directly to the next, and the last arrow connects to the first. We have drawn the electrons rotating clockwise, but it would make no difference at all if we drew the electrons rotating anticlockwise.

Both mechanisms are equally correct. The electrons do not really rotate at all. In reality two \(\pi\) bonds disappear and two \(\sigma\) bonds take their place by the electrons moving smoothly out of the \(\pi\) orbitals into the \(\sigma\) orbitals. Such a reaction is called a **cycloaddition**. We must spend some time working out how this could happen. First, just consider the orbitals that overlap to form the new bonds. Providing the reagents approach in the right way, nothing could be simpler.

The black \(p\) orbitals are perfectly aligned to make a new \(\sigma\) bond, as are the two green orbitals, while the two brown orbitals are exactly right for the new \(\pi\) bond at the back of the ring. As this is a one-step reaction there are no intermediates but there is one transition state looking something like this:

\[
\text{transition state has six delocalized } \pi \text{ electrons}
\]

One reason that the Diels–Alder reaction goes so well is that the transition state has six delocalized \(\pi\) electrons and thus is aromatic in character, having some of the special stabilization of benzene. You could look at it as a benzene ring having all its \(\pi\) bonds but missing two \(\sigma\) bonds. This simple picture is fine as far as it goes, but it is incomplete. We shall return to a more detailed orbital analysis when we have described the reaction in more detail.
General description of the Diels–Alder reaction

Diels–Alder reactions occur between a conjugated diene and an alkene, usually called the dienophile. Here are some examples: first an open-chain diene with a simple unsaturated aldehyde as the dienophile.

\[
\text{diene} \quad \text{dienophile} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{product}
\]

The mechanism is the same and a new six-membered ring is formed having one double bond. Now a reaction between a cyclic diene and a nitroalkene.

\[
\text{diene} \quad \text{dienophile} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{product}
\]

The mechanism leads clearly to the first drawing of the product but this is a cage structure and the second drawing is better. The new six-membered ring is outlined in black in both diagrams. A more elaborate example shows that quite complex molecules can be quickly assembled with this wonderful reaction.

The diene

The diene component in the Diels–Alder reaction can be open-chain or cyclic and it can have many different kinds of substituents. There is only one limitation: it must be able to take up the conformation shown in the mechanism. Butadiene normally prefers the s-trans conformation with the two double bonds as far away from each other as possible for steric reasons. The barrier to rotation about the central \( \sigma \) bond is small (about 30 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) at room temperature) and rotation to the less favourable but reactive s-cis conformation is rapid.

The ‘s’ in the terms ‘s-cis’ and ‘s-trans’ refers to a \( \sigma \) bond and indicates that these are conformations about a single bond and not configurations about a double bond.
Cyclic dienes that are permanently in the s-cis conformation are exceptionally good at Diels–Alder reactions—cyclopentadiene is a classic example—but cyclic dienes that are permanently in the s-trans conformation and cannot adopt the s-cis conformation will not do the Diels–Alder reaction at all. The two ends of these dienes cannot get close enough to react with an alkene and, in any case, the product would have an impossible trans double bond in the new six-membered ring. (In the Diels–Alder reaction, the old σ bond in the centre of the diene becomes a π bond in the product and the conformation of that σ bond becomes the configuration of the new π bond in the product.)

The diene

The diene must have the s-cis conformation.

The dienophile

The dienophiles you have seen in action so far all have one thing in common. They have an electron-drawing group conjugated to the alkene. This is a common, although not exclusive, feature of Diels–Alder dienophiles. There must be some extra conjugation—at least a phenyl group or a chlorine atom—or the cycloaddition does not occur. You will often see the reaction between butadiene and a simple alkene (even ethylene) given in books as the basic Diels–Alder reaction. This occurs in only poor yield. Attempts to combine even such a reactive diene as cyclopentadiene with a simple alkene lead instead to the dimerization of the diene. One molecule acts as the diene and the other as the dienophile to give the cage structure shown.

Cyclopentadiene

Cyclopentadiene is formed in considerable amounts during the refining of petroleum. It exists as its dimer at room temperature but can be dissociated into the monomer on heating—the effect of the increased importance of entropy at higher temperatures (Chapter 12). It can be chlorinated to give hexachlorocyclopentadiene, and the Diels–Alder product of this diene with maleic anhydride is a flame retardant.

Simple alkenes that do undergo the Diels–Alder reaction include conjugated carbonyl compounds, nitro compounds, nitriles, sulfones, aryl alkenes, vinyl ethers and esters, haloalk-
enes, and dienes. In addition to those you have seen so far, a few examples are shown in the margin. In the last example it is the isolated double bond in the right-hand ring that accepts the diene. Conjugation with the left-hand ring activates this alkene. But what exactly do we mean by ‘activate’ in this sense? We shall return to that question in a minute.

Dieldrin and Aldrin

In the 1950s two very effective pesticides were launched and their names were ‘Dieldrin’ and ‘Aldrin’. As you may guess they were made by the Diels–Alder reaction. Aldrin is derived from two consecutive Diels–Alder reactions. In the first, cyclopentadiene reacts with acetylene to give a simple symmetrical cage molecule ‘norbornadiene’ (bicyclo[2.2.1]heptadiene). Norbornadiene is not conjugated and cannot take part in a Diels–Alder reaction as a diene. However, it is quite strained because of the cage and it reacts as a dienophile with perchlorocyclopentadiene to give Aldrin.

![Diagram of norbornadiene and Aldrin](image)

This is quite a complex product but we hope you can see how it is made up by looking at the two new bonds marked in black. Dieldrin is the epoxide of Aldrin. The use of these compounds, like that of many organochlorine compounds, was eventually banned when it was found that chlorine residues were accumulating in the fat of animals high up in the food chain, such as birds of prey and humans.

The product

Recognizing a Diels–Alder product is straightforward. Look for the six-membered ring, the double bond inside the ring, and the conjugating group outside the ring and on the opposite side of the ring from the alkene. These three features mean that the compound is a possible Diels–Alder product.

The simplest way to find the starting materials is to carry out a disconnection that is closer to a real reaction than most. Just draw the reverse Diels–Alder reaction. To do this, draw three arrows going round the cyclohexene ring, starting the first arrow in the middle of the double bond. It doesn’t, of course, matter which way round you go.

![Diagram of disconnection](image)

The reaction couldn’t be simpler—just heat the components together without solvent or catalyst. Temperatures of around 100–150°C are often needed and this may mean using a sealed tube if the reagents are volatile, as here.

![Reaction diagram](image)

Stereochemistry

The Diels–Alder reaction is stereospecific. If there is stereochemistry in the dienophile, then it is faithfully reproduced in the product. Thus cis and trans dienophiles give different diastereoisomers of the product. Esters of maleic and fumaric acids provide a simple example.
In both cases the ester groups simply stay where they are. They are cis in the dienophile in the first reaction and remain cis in the product. They are trans in the dienophile in the second reaction and remain trans in the product. The second example may look less convincing—may we remind you that the diene actually comes down on top of the dienophile like this:

One of the CO₂Me groups is tucked under the diene in the transition state and then, when the product molecule is flattened out in the last drawing, that CO₂Me group appears underneath the ring. The brown hydrogen atom remains cis to the other CO₂Me group.

The search by the Parke-Davis company for drugs to treat strokes provided an interesting application of dienophile stereochemistry. The kinds of compound they wanted were tricyclic amines. They don’t look like Diels–Alder products at all. But if we insert a double bond in the right place in the six-membered ring, Diels–Alder (D–A) disconnection becomes possible.

Butadiene is a good diene, but the enamine required is not a good dienophile. An electron-withdrawing group such as a carbonyl or nitro group is preferable: either would do the job. In the event a carboxylic acid that could be converted into the amine by a rearrangement with \((\text{PhO})₂\text{PON}_3\) was used.

The stereochemistry at the ring junction must be cis because the cyclic dienophile can have only a cis double bond. Hydrogenation removes the double bond in the product and shows just how useful the Diels–Alder reaction is for making saturated rings, particularly when there is some stereochemistry to be controlled.

**Stereochemistry of the diene**

This is slightly more complicated as the diene can be cis,cis, or cis,trans (there are two of these if the diene is unsymmetrical), or trans,trans. We shall look at each case with the same dienophile, an acetylene dicarboxylate, as there is then no stereochemistry in the triple bond! Starting with cis,cis-dienes is easy if we make the diene cyclic.
The diene has two sets of substituents—inside and outside. The inside one is the bridging CH$_2$ group and it has to end up on one side of the molecule (above in the last diagram) while the two green hydrogens are outside and remain so. In the final diagram they are below the new six-membered ring. With a trans,trans-diene we simply exchange the two sets of substituents, in this example putting Ph where H was and putting H where the bridging CH$_2$ group was. This is the reaction:

$$\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} + \text{CO}_2\text{Me} & \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Ph} + \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \\
\text{Ph} + \text{CO}_2\text{Me} & \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{Ph} + \text{CO}_2\text{Me}
\end{align*}$$

The green Ph groups end up where the hydrogens were in the first example—beneath the new six-membered ring—and the hydrogens end up above. It may seem puzzling at first that a trans,trans-diene gives a product with the two phenyls cis. Another way to look at these two reactions is to consider their symmetry. Both have a plane of symmetry throughout and the products must have this symmetry too because the reaction is concerted and no significant movement of substituents can occur. The orange dotted line shows the plane of symmetry, which is at right angles to the paper.

The remaining case—the cis,trans-diene—is rarer than the first two, but is met sometimes. This unsymmetrical diene means the two substituents clearly end up on opposite sides of the new six-membered ring.

The red R group may seem to get in the way of the reaction but, of course, the dienophile is not approaching in the plane of the diene but from underneath. It is difficult to find a convincing example of this stereochemistry as there are so few known, partly because of the difficulty of making E,Z dienes. One good approach uses two reactions you met in Chapter 29 for the control of double-bond geometry. The cis double bond is put in first by the addition of methanol to butadiyne and the trans double bond then comes from LiAlH$_4$ reduction of the intermediate acetylenic alcohol.
The acetate of this alcohol is used in a Diels–Alder reaction with the interesting dienophile DEAD (diethyl azodicarboxylate—in orange). The product is formed in excellent yield and has the *trans* stereochemistry that was predicted. The amide nitrogen atoms are planar, so there is no question of stereochemistry there. DEAD itself can equilibrate rapidly between *E* and *Z* isomers, but the *E* predominates.

![Reaction diagram](image)

Now to the most interesting cases of all, when both the diene and the dienophile have stereochemistry.

**The endo rule for the Diels–Alder reaction**

It is probably easier to see this when both the diene and the dienophile are cyclic. All the double bonds are *cis* and the stereochemistry is clearer. In the most famous Diels–Alder reaction of all time, that between cyclopentadiene and maleic anhydride, there are two possible products that obey all the rules we have so far described. They are the only possible diastereoisomers of the product—although it has four stereogenic centres, any other diastereoisomers would be impossibly strained.

![Stereochemical structures](image)

The two green hydrogen atoms must be *cis* in the product, but now there are two such compounds, known as the *exo* and *endo* products. When the reaction is carried out, the product is, in fact, the *endo* compound. Only one diastereoisomer is formed, and it is the less stable one. How do we know this? Well, for cases in which the Diels–Alder reaction is reversible and therefore under thermodynamic control, the *exo* product is formed instead. The best known example results from the replacement of cyclopentadiene with furan in reaction with the same dienophile.

![Reversible Diels–Alder reaction](image)

Why is the *exo* product the more stable? Look again at these two structures. On the left-hand side of the molecules, there are two bridges across the ends of the new bonds (highlighted in black): a one-C-atom bridge and a two-C-atom bridge. There is less steric hindrance if the smaller (that is, the one-atom) bridge eclipses the anhydride ring.

The *endo* product is less stable than the *exo* product and yet it is preferred in irreversible Diels–Alder reactions—it must be the kinetic product of the reaction. It forms faster because
a bonding interaction between the electron-deficient carbonyl groups of the dienophile and
the developing π bond at the back of the diene lowers the energy of the transition state, lead-
ing to the \( \text{endo} \) product.

The same result is found with acyclic dienes and dienophiles. Normally one diastereoisomer
is preferred—the one with the carbonyl groups of the dienophile closest to the developing π
bond at the back of the diene. Here is an example.

From our previous discussion (it’s a \( \text{trans,trans} \) diene) we expect the two methyl groups to be
cis to each other and the only question remaining is the stereochemistry of the aldehyde
group—up or down? The aldehyde will be \( \text{endo} \)—but which compound is that? The easiest
way to find the answer is to draw the reagents coming together in three dimensions. Here is
one way to do this.

1. Draw the mechanism of the reaction and diagrams of the product to show what you
are trying to decide. Put in the known stereochemistry if you wish. This we have just
done (see above).

2. Draw both molecules in the plane of the paper with the diene on top and the
carbonyl group of the dienophile tucked under the diene so it can be close to the
developing π-bond.

3. Now draw in all the hydrogen atoms on the carbon atoms that are going to become
stereogenic centres, that is, those shown in green here.

4. Draw a diagram of the product. Unfold the molecule to show the six-membered ring.
All the substituents to the right in the previous diagram are on one side of the new
molecule. That is, all the green hydrogen atoms are cis to each other.

5. Draw a final diagram of the product with the stereochemistry of the other substituents
shown too in the usual way. This is the \( \text{endo} \) product of the Diels–Alder reaction.

**Time for some explanations**

We have accumulated rather a lot of unexplained results.

- Why does the Diels–Alder reaction work so well?
- Why must we have a conjugating group on the dienophile?
- Why is the stereochemistry of each component retained so faithfully?
- Why is the \( \text{endo} \) product preferred kinetically?
There is more. The simpler picture we met earlier in this chapter also fails to explain why the Diels–Alder reaction occurs simply on heating while attempted additions of simple alkenes (rather than dienes) to maleic anhydride fail on heating but succeed under irradiation with UV light.

We shall now explain all this in one section using frontier molecular orbitals. Of all the kinds of organic reactions, pericyclic ones are the most tightly controlled by orbitals, and the development of the ideas we are about to expound is one of the greatest triumphs of modern theoretical chemistry. It is a beautiful and satisfying set of ideas based on very simple principles.

The frontier orbital description of cycloadditions

When an ionic cyclization reaction occurs, such as the lactonization at the head of this chapter, one important new bond is formed. It is enough to combine one full orbital with one empty orbital to make the new bond. But in a cycloaddition two new bonds are formed at the same time. We have to arrange for two filled p orbitals and two empty p orbitals to be available at the right place and with the right symmetry. See what happens if we draw the orbitals for the reaction above. We could try the HOMO (\(\pi\)) of the alkene and the LUMO (\(\pi^*\)) of the double bond in the anhydride (as in the margin). This combination is bonding at one end, but antibonding at the other so that no cycloaddition reaction occurs. It obviously doesn’t help to use the other HOMO/LUMO pair, that is the HOMO of the aldehyde and the LUMO of the alkene, as they will have the same mismatched symmetry.

Now see what happens when we replace the alkene with a diene. We shall again use the LUMO of the electron-poor anhydride. Now the symmetry is right because there is a node in the middle of the HOMO of the diene (the HOMO is \(\psi_2\) of the diene) just as there is in the LUMO of the dienophile.

If we had tried the opposite arrangement, the LUMO of the diene (\(\psi_3\)) and the HOMO of the dienophile, the symmetry would again be right. The LUMO of the diene has two nodes and gives the same symmetry as the HOMO of the dienophile, which has no nodes. So either combination is excellent. In fact most Diels–Alder reactions use electron-deficient dienophiles and electron-rich dienes so we prefer the first arrangement. The electron-deficient dienophile has a low-energy LUMO and the electron-rich diene has a high-energy HOMO so this combination gives a better overlap in the transition state. The energy levels will look like this, and the interaction shown in orange is better than the interaction shown in brown because the orbitals are closer in energy.

You may need to remind yourself about the orbitals of conjugated \(\pi\) systems by re-reading Chapter 7.
This is why we usually use dienophiles with conjugating groups for good Diels–Alder reactions. Dienophiles react rapidly with electrophiles because their HOMOs are relatively high in energy, but simple alkenes are not suitable electrophiles because they have relatively high energy LUMOs. The most effective modification we can make is to lower the energy of the alkene’s LUMO by conjugating the double bond with an electron-withdrawing group such as carbonyl or nitro. These are the most common type of Diels–Alder reactions—between electron-rich dienes and electron-deficient dienophiles.

Dimerizations of dienes by cycloaddition reactions

Because dienes have relatively high-energy HOMOs and low-energy LUMOs they should be able to take part in cycloadditions with themselves. And indeed, dienes do dimerize, by a Diels–Alder reaction. One molecule of the diene plays the role of the dienophile. The symmetry is correct for the interaction shown, and we call such reactions (like all the Diels–Alder reactions in this chapter) ‘[4 + 2] cycloadditions’—the numbers referring to the number of atoms of each component taking part in the reaction.

What dienes cannot do is form an eight-membered ring in one step in a [4 + 4] cycloaddition (although this is possible photochemically or with transition metal catalysis, as we shall see later).

You should have expected this failure because the ends of the required orbitals must again have the wrong symmetry, just as they had when we tried the alkene dimerization.

The orbital explanation for endo preference in Diels–Alder reactions

We are going to use a diene dimerization to add more detail to our explanation of the formation of endo products. To make matters even easier we shall look at the dimerization of a cyclic diene—we might almost say the cyclic diene—cyclopentadiene. We introduced the preference for endo products on p. 885 by saying there was a favourable electronic interaction between the conjugating group on the dienophile and the back of the diene.

If we now draw the frontier orbitals in the two components as they come together for the reaction, we can see first of all that the symmetry is correct for bond formation (orbitals shown in black). But we can also see what is happening at the back of the diene (orbitals in green). The symmetry of the orbitals is correct for a bonding interaction at the back of the diene too. This interaction does not lead to the formation of any new bonds but it leaves its imprint in the stereochemistry of the product. The endo product is favoured because of this bonding interaction across the space between the orbitals.
The solvent in the Diels–Alder reaction

We discussed some effects of varying the solvent in Chapter 12, and we shall now introduce a remarkable and useful special solvent effect in the Diels–Alder reaction. The reaction does not need a solvent and often the two reagents are just mixed together and heated. Solvents can be used but, because there are no ionic intermediates, it seems obvious that which solvent is unimportant—any solvent that simply dissolves both reagents will do. This is, in general, true and hydrocarbon solvents are often the best.

However, in the 1980s an extraordinary discovery was made. Water, a most unlikely solvent for most organic reactions, has a large accelerating effect on the Diels–Alder reaction. Even some water added to an organic solvent accelerates the reaction. And that is not all. The endo selectivity of these reactions is often superior to those in no solvent or in a hydrocarbon solvent. Here is a simple example.

The suggestion is that the reagents, which are not soluble in water, are clumped together in oily drops by the water and forced into close proximity. Water is not exactly a solvent—it is almost an anti-solvent! Reactions like this are sometimes called reactions ‘on water’ rather than reactions ‘in water’.

Intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions

When the diene and the dienophile are already part of the same molecule it is not so important for them to be held together by bonding interactions across space and the exo product is often preferred. Indeed, many intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions are governed more by normal steric considerations than by the endo rule.

This reaction happens only because it is intramolecular. There is no conjugating group attached to the dienophile and so there are no orbitals to overlap with the back of the diene. The molecule simply folds up in the sterically most favourable way (as shown in the margin, with the linking chain adopting a chair-like conformation) and this leads to the trans ring junction. You can see this easily in the arrangement of the hydrogen atoms.

In the next example there is a carbonyl group conjugated with the dienophile. Now the less stable cis ring junction is formed because the molecule can fold so that the carbonyl group can enjoy a bonding overlap with the back of the diene. This time the linking chain has to adopt a boat-like conformation.
Intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions may give the endo product or they may not! Be prepared for either exo or endo products or a mixture.

Regioselectivity in Diels–Alder reactions

The compounds that we are now calling dienophiles were the stars of Chapters 22 and 25, where we called them Michael acceptors as they were the electrophilic partners in conjugate addition reactions. Nucleophiles always add to the β carbon atoms of these alkenes because the product is then a stable enolate. Ordinary alkenes do not react with nucleophiles.

\[
\text{OMe} \\ O \\ Nu \\ OMe \\ O \\ Nu \] 

In frontier orbital terms this is because conjugation with a carbonyl group lowers the energy of the LUMO (the π* orbital of the alkene) and at the same time distorts it so that the coefficient on the β carbon atom is larger than that on the α carbon atom. Nucleophiles approach the conjugated alkene along the axis of the large p orbital of the β carbon atom.

These same features can ensure regioselective Diels–Alder reactions. The same orbital of the dienophile is involved and, if the HOMO of the diene is also unsymmetrical, the regioselectivity of the reaction will be controlled by the two largest coefficients bonding together.

So what about distortion of the HOMO in the diene? If a diene reacts with an electrophile, the largest coefficient in the HOMO will direct the reaction. Consider the attack of HBr on a diene. We should expect attack at the ends of the diene because that gives the most stable possible cation—an allyl cation as an intermediate.

\[
\text{OMe} \\ O \\ Nu \\ OMe \\ O \\ Nu \] 

In orbital terms attack occurs at the ends of the diene because the coefficients in the HOMO are larger there. We need simply to look at the HOMO (ψ₂) of butadiene, shown in the margin, to see this. So it is not surprising that the dienes react in the Diels–Alder reaction through their end carbons. But supposing the two ends are different—which reacts now? We can again turn to the reaction with HBr as a guide. Addition of HBr to an unsymmetrical diene will give the more stable of the two possible allyl cations as the intermediate.
In orbital terms, this must mean that the HOMO of the diene is distorted so that the end that reacts has the larger coefficient. When the unsymmetrical diene and the unsymmetrical dienophile combine in a Diels–Alder reaction, the reaction itself becomes unsymmetrical. It remains concerted but, in the transition state, bond formation between the largest coefficients in each partner is more advanced and this determines the regioselectivity of the reaction.

It is not ‘cheating’ to use the regioselectivity of chemical reactions to tell us about the coefficients in orbitals. Chemistry is about using experimental evidence to find out about the theoretical background and not about theory telling us what ought to happen. In fact, computational chemists have calculated the HOMO energies and coefficients of unsymmetrical dienes and have reached the same conclusions.

The simplest way to decide which product will be formed is to draw an ‘ionic’ stepwise mechanism for the reaction to establish which end of the diene will react with which end of the dienophile. Of course this stepwise mechanism is not completely correct but it does lead to the correct orientation of the reagents and you can draw the right mechanism afterwards.

As an example, try a diene with a substituent in the middle. This is the reaction:

\[
\text{MeO} + \text{CN} \xrightarrow{\text{Diels–Alder}} \text{CN} \quad \text{MeO} \quad \text{CN} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{MeO} \quad \text{MeO} \quad \text{CN}
\]

First decide where the diene will act as a nucleophile and where the dienophile will act as an electrophile. This indicates where the largest coefficients of the HOMO and LUMO must lie. The two circles represent those largest coefficients.

Now draw the reagents in the correct orientation for these two ends to combine and draw a concerted Diels–Alder reaction.

This is an important example because an enol ether functional group is present in the product, which can be hydrolysed to a ketone in aqueous acid (Chapter 20).

**Summary of regioselectivity in Diels–Alder reactions**

The important substitution patterns are a diene with an electron-donating group (X) at one end or in the middle and a dienophile with an electron-withdrawing group (Z) at one end. These are the products formed.
A useful mnemonic

If you prefer a rule to remember, try this one.

- The Diels–Alder reaction is a cycloaddition with an aromatic transition state that is ortho and para directing.

You can see that this mnemonic works if you look at the two products above: the first has the two substituents X and Z on neighbouring carbon atoms, just like ortho substituents on a benzene ring, while the second has 1,4-related X and Z just like para substituents. The connection with aromaticity (the ‘aromatic transition state’) simply means that the transition state is cyclic and has six electrons. We have not yet explored the consequences of this, but we will do shortly.

Lewis acid catalysis in Diels–Alder reactions

Where the reagents are unsymmetrical, a Lewis acid that can bind to the electron-withdrawing group of the dienophile often catalyses the reaction by lowering the LUMO of the dienophile still further. It has another important advantage: it increases the difference between the coefficients in the LUMO (a Lewis-acid complexed carbonyl group is a more powerful electron-withdrawing group) and may therefore increase regioselectivity.

This Diels–Alder reaction is useful because it produces a substitution pattern (para) common in natural terpenes (see Chapter 42). But the regioselectivity introduced by one methyl group on the diene is not very great—this reaction gives a 71:29 mixture when the two compounds are heated together at 120°C in a sealed tube. In the presence of the Lewis acid (SnCl₄) the reaction can be carried out at lower temperatures (below 25°C) without a sealed tube and the regioselectivity improves to 93:7.

Regioselectivity in intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions

Just as the stereoselectivity may be compromised in intramolecular reactions, so may the regioselectivity. It may be simply impossible for the reagents to get together in the ‘right’ orientation. The examples below have a very short chain—just three carbon atoms—joining diene to dienophile and so the same regioselectivity is found regardless of the position of the conjugating carbonyl group.

The first example has the ‘right’ orientation (ortho) but the second has the ‘wrong’ orientation (meta). The short tether entails no prospect of any other orientation and, as the reaction is intramolecular, it goes anyway. Notice the lower temperature required for the Lewis acid (ROAlCl₂) catalysed reaction.
The Woodward–Hoffmann description of the Diels–Alder reaction

Kenichi Fukui and Roald Hoffmann won the Nobel prize in 1981 (Woodward died in 1979 and so couldn’t share this prize: he had already won a Nobel prize in 1965 for his work on synthesis) for the application of orbital symmetry to pericyclic reactions. Theirs is an alternative description to the frontier orbital method we have used and you need to know a little about it. They started by considering a more fundamental correlation between the symmetry of all the orbitals in the starting materials and all the orbitals in the products. This is rather too complex for us to cover here, and we shall concentrate only on a summary of the conclusions—the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. The most important of these states:

- **Woodward–Hoffmann rules**
  In a thermal pericyclic reaction the total number of \((4q + 2)s\) and \((4r)a\) components must be odd.

This needs some explanation. A component is a bond or orbital taking part in a pericyclic reaction as a single unit. A double bond is a \(\pi_2\) component. The number 2 is the most important part of this designation and simply refers to the number of electrons. The prefix \(\pi\) tells us the type of electrons. A component may have any number of electrons (a diene is a \(\pi_4\) component) but may not have mixtures of \(\pi\) and \(\sigma\) electrons. Now look back at the rule. Those designations \((4q + 2)\) and \((4r)\) simply refer to the number of electrons in the component where \(q\) and \(r\) are integers. An alkene is a \(\pi_2\) component and so it is of the \((4q + 2)\) kind while a diene is a \(\pi_4\) component and so is of the \((4r)\) kind. You have already seen the importance of \(4n + 2\) numbers in aromaticity; here the significance is closely related.

Now what about the suffixes ‘s’ and ‘a’? The suffix ‘s’ stands for suprafacial and ‘a’ for antarafacial. A **suprafacial** component forms new bonds on the same face at both ends while an **antarafacial** component forms new bonds on opposite faces at both ends. If you find it easier to understand, you can think of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules like this:

- **Woodward–Hoffmann rules: alternative version**
  In an allowed thermal pericyclic reaction this sum:
  
  \[
  \text{number of suprafacial components with 2, 6, or 10 electrons} + \text{number of antarafacial components with 0, 4, or 8 electrons} = \text{an odd number}
  \]

  It’s the number of relevant components that must be odd, not (obviously) the number of electrons, and you must ignore any components which aren’t mentioned in the sum (for example you can have as many suprafacial components with four electrons as you like—they just don’t count).

See how this works for the Diels–Alder reaction. Here is the routine.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction (we shall choose a general one).

2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others.

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!). The orbitals are just unshaded \(p\) orbitals, and do not make up HOMOs or LUMOs nor any particular molecular orbital. Don’t attempt to mix frontier orbital and Woodward–Hoffmann descriptions of pericyclic reactions.
4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Coloured dotted lines are often used.

5. Label each component ‘s’ or ‘a’ depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides. In all of the cycloadditions you have seen so far (and indeed the vast majority of those you will ever see), both components react suprafacially.

6. Count the number of $(4q + 2)_s$ and $(4r)_a$ components. If the total count is odd, the reaction is allowed. In this case, there is one $(4q + 2)_s$ component (the alkene) and no $(4r)_a$ components. Total = 1 so it is an allowed reaction. Components of the other symmetry, that is $(4q + 2)_a$ and $(4r)_s$ components, do not count. You can have as many of these as you want.

You may well feel that there is very little to be gained from the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment of the Diels–Alder reaction. It does not explain the *endo* selectivity nor the regioselectivity. However, the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment of other pericyclic reactions (particularly electrocyclic reactions, in the next chapter) is very helpful.

**Trapping reactive intermediates by cycloadditions**

In Chapter 22 you met the remarkable intermediate benzyne. Convincing evidence for the existence of this implausible structure is provided by the fact that it can be trapped in a Diels–Alder reaction. One way of generating benzyne for this purpose is the diazotization of anthranilic acid (2-aminobenzoic acid).

![Image of benzene formation](image)

Benzyne may not look like a good dienophile but it is an unstable electrophilic molecule so it must have a low-energy LUMO (π* of the triple bond). If benzyne is generated in the presence of a diene, efficient Diels–Alder reactions take place. Anthracene gives a specially interesting product with a symmetrical cage structure.

![Image of Diels-Alder reaction with anthracene](image)

It is difficult to draw this mechanism convincingly. The two flat molecules approach each other in orthogonal planes, so that the (orbitals) of the localized π bond of benzyne interact with the p orbitals on the central ring of anthracene.
Another intermediate for which a cycloaddition product provides convincing evidence is the oxyallyl cation. This compound can be made from α,α′-dibromoketones on treatment with zinc metal. The first step is the formation of a zinc enolate (compare the Reformatsky reaction), which can be drawn in terms of the attack of zinc on oxygen or bromine. Now the other bromine can leave as an anion. It could not do so before because it was next to an electron-withdrawing carbonyl group. Now it is next to an electron-rich enolate so the cation is stabilized by conjugation.

![Interactive mechanism for [4 + 3] cycloaddition]

The allyl cation has three atoms but only two electrons so it can take part in cycloadditions with dienes—the total number of electrons is six, just as in the Diels–Alder reaction. This is a [4 + 3] all-suprafacial cycloaddition.

![Interactive mechanism for [4 + 3] cycloaddition]

**Other thermal cycloadditions**

A simple consequence of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules is that cycloadditions involving a total \((4n + 2)\) electrons, if they are all suprafacial, are always allowed: they must always involve an odd number of \((4q + 2)\) components. Such reactions are often referred to as having ‘aromatic transition states’ because of the obvious link with the aromatic requirement for \((4n + 2)\) electrons. Six is the most common \((4n + 2)\) number, but there are also a few cycloadditions involving ten electrons. These are mostly diene + triene, that is, \([4,4,6]\), cycloadditions. Here are a couple of examples.

![Interactive mechanism for [4 + 6] cycloaddition]

In the first case, there is an endo relationship between the carbonyl group and the back of the diene—this product is formed in 100% yield. In the second case Et₂NH is lost from the first product under the reaction conditions to give the hydrocarbon shown. This type of reaction is more of an oddity: by far the most important type of cycloaddition is the Diels–Alder reaction.

**The Alder ‘ene’ reaction**

The Diels–Alder reaction was originally called the ‘diene reaction’ so, when half of the famous team (Kurt Alder) discovered an analogous reaction that requires only one alkene, it was called the Alder ene reaction and the name has stuck. Compare here the Diels–Alder and the Alder ene reactions.
The simplest way to look at the ene reaction is to picture it as a Diels–Alder reaction in which one of the double bonds in the diene has been replaced by a C–H bond (green). The reaction does not form a new ring, the product has only one new C–C bond (shown in black on the product), and a hydrogen atom is transferred across space. Otherwise, the two reactions are remarkably similar.

The ene reaction is rather different in orbital terms. For the Woodward–Hoffmann description of the reaction we must use the two electrons of the C–H bond to replace the two electrons of the double bond in the Diels–Alder reaction, but we must make sure that all the orbitals are parallel, as shown.

The C–H bond is parallel with the p orbitals of the ene so that the orbitals that overlap to form the new $\pi$ bond are already parallel. The two molecules approach one another in parallel planes so that the orbitals that overlap to form the new $\sigma$ bonds are already pointing towards each other. Because the electrons are of two types, $\pi$ and $\sigma$, we must divide the ene into two components, one $\pi_2$ and one $\sigma_2$. We can then have an all-suprafacial reaction with three components.

All three components are of the $(4q + 2)$, type so all count and the total is three—an odd number—so the reaction is allowed. We have skipped the step-by-step approach we used for the Diels–Alder reaction because the two are so similar, but you should convince yourself that you can apply it here.

Now for some real examples. Most ene reactions with simple alkenes are with maleic anhydride. Other dienophiles—or enophiles as we should call them in this context—do not work very well. However, with one particular alkene, the natural pine tree terpene $\beta$-pinene, a reaction does occur with enophiles such as acrylates.

The major interaction between these two molecules is between the nucleophilic end of the exocyclic alkene and the electrophilic end of the acrylate. These atoms have the largest coefficients in the HOMO and LUMO, respectively, and, in the transition state, bond formation between these two will be more advanced than anywhere else. For most ordinary alkenes and enophiles, Lewis acid catalysis to make the enophile more electrophilic, or an intramolecular reaction (or both!), is necessary for an efficient ene reaction.

The ‘ene’ component is delivered to the bottom face of the enone, as its tether is too short for it to reach the top face, and a cis ring junction is formed. The stereochemistry of the third centre is most easily seen by a Newman projection (Chapter 16) of the reaction. In the diagram in the margin we are looking straight down the new C–C bond and the colour coding should help you to see how the stereochemistry follows.
Since the twin roles of the enophile are to be attacked at one end by a C–C double bond and at the other by a proton, a carbonyl group is actually a very good enophile. These reactions are usually called ‘carbonyl ene’ reactions.

The important interaction is between the HOMO of the ene system and the LUMO of the carbonyl group—and a Lewis-acid catalyst can lower the energy of the LUMO still further. If there is a choice, the more electrophilic carbonyl group (the one with the lower LUMO) reacts.

\[ \text{MeO} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{MeO} \]
\[ \text{MeO} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H} \]
\[ \text{Ti(OR)}_4 \]
\[ \text{MeO} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H} \]

It may not be obvious that an ene reaction has occurred because of the symmetry of the alkene. The double bond in the product is not, in fact, in the same place as it was in the starting material, as the mechanism shows.

One carbonyl ene reaction is of commercial importance as it is part of a process for the production of menthol used to give a peppermint smell and taste to many products. This is an intramolecular ene reaction on another terpene derivative.

\[ \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{OH} \]
\[ \text{OH} \]
\[ \text{H}_2/\text{Ni} \]
\[ \text{ZnBr}_2 \]
\[ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{ZnBr}_2 \]
\[ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \]
\[ \text{Me} \quad \text{brown Me equatorial on trans-decalin-like system} \]
\[ \text{Me} \]

It is not obvious what has happened in the first step, but the movement of the alkene and the closure of the ring with the formation of one (not two) new C–C bonds should give you the clue that this is a Lewis-acid-catalysed carbonyl ene reaction.

The stereochemistry comes from an all-chair arrangement in the conformation of the transition state. The methyl group will adopt an equatorial position in this conformation, fixing the way the other bonds are formed. Again, colour coding should make it clearer what has happened.

\[ \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{ZnBr}_2 \]

\[ \text{Allowed reactions} \]
Because a reaction is ‘allowed’ doesn’t mean that it will happen. It just means it is theoretically possible. In the same way you might be ‘allowed’ to jump off a three metre wall, but you wouldn’t do it.

\[ \text{Interactive mechanism for the intramolecular carbonyl ene reaction} \]

\[ \text{Menthol manufacture} \]
It may seem odd to you to have a chemical process to produce menthol, which would be available naturally from mint plants. This process is now responsible for much of the world’s menthol production so it must make some sort of sense! The truth is that menthol cultivation is wasteful in good land that could produce food crops such as rice while the starting material for menthol manufacture is the same \( \beta \)-pinene we have just met. This is available in large quantities from pine trees grown on poor land for paper and furniture. The earlier stages of the process are discussed in Chapter 41.

\[ \text{Photochemical [2 + 2] cycloadditions} \]
We shall now leave six-electron cycloadditions such as the Diels–Alder and ene reactions and move on to some four-electron cycloadditions. Clearly, four is not a \((4n + 2)\) number, but when we described the Woodward–Hoffman rules on p. 892 we used the term ‘thermally’. All
suprafacial cycloadditions with $4n$ electrons are allowed if the reaction is not thermal (that is, driven by heat energy) but \textit{photochemical} (that is, driven by light energy). Under photochemical conditions, the rules switch such that all the cycloadditions that are not allowed thermally are allowed photochemically. This works because the problem of the incompatible symmetry in trying to add two alkenes together is avoided by converting one of them into the excited state photochemically. First, one electron is excited by the light energy from the $\pi$ to the $\pi^*$ orbital.

Now, combining the excited state of one alkene with the ground state of another solves the symmetry problem. Mixing the two $\pi$ orbitals leads to two molecular orbitals, and two electrons go down in energy while only one goes up. Mixing the two $\pi^*$ orbitals is as good—one electron goes down in energy and none goes up. The result is that three electrons go down in energy and only one goes up. Bonding can occur.

Alkenes can be dimerized photochemically in this way, but reaction between two different alkenes is more interesting. If one alkene is bonded to a conjugating group, it alone will absorb UV light and be excited while the other will remain in the ground state. It is difficult to draw a mechanism for these reactions as we have no simple way to represent the excited alkene. Some people draw it as a diradical (since each electron is in a different orbital); others prefer to write a concerted reaction on an excited alkene marked with an asterisk.

The reaction is stereospecific within each component but there is no \textit{endo} rule—there is a conjugating group but no ‘back of the diene’. The least hindered transition state usually results. The dotted lines on the central diagram simply show the bonds being formed. The two old rings keep out of each other’s way during the reaction and the conformation of the product looks reasonably unhindered.

You may be wondering why the reaction works at all, given the strain in a four-membered ring: why doesn’t the product just go back to the two starting materials? This reverse reaction is governed by the Woodward–Hoffmann rules, just like the forward one, and to go back again the four-membered ring products would have to absorb light. But since they have now lost
their π bonds they have no low-lying empty orbitals into which light can promote electrons (see Chapter 7). The reverse photochemical reaction is simply not possible because there is no mechanism for the compounds to absorb light.

**Regioselectivity in photochemical \([2 + 2]\) cycloadditions**

The observed regioselectivity is shown below. If we had combined the HOMO of the alkene with the LUMO of the enone, as we should in a thermal reaction, we would expect the opposite orientation so as to use the larger coefficients of the frontier orbitals and to maximize charge stabilization in the transition state.

But we are not doing a thermal reaction. If you look back at the orbital diagram on p. 897, you will see that it is the HOMO/HOMO and LUMO/LUMO interactions that now matter in the reactions of the excited state. The sizes of the coefficients in the LUMO of the alkene are the other way round to those in the HOMO. There is one electron in this pair of orbitals—in the LUMO of the enone in fact, as the enone has been excited by the light—so overlap between the two LUMOs (shown in the frame) is bonding and leads to the observed product. The easiest way to work it out quickly is to draw the product you do *not* expect from a normal HOMO/LUMO or curly arrow controlled reaction.

**Thermal \([2 + 2]\) cycloadditions**

Despite what we have told you about allowed cycloadditions, there *are* some thermal \([2 + 2]\) cycloadditions giving four-membered rings. These feature a simple alkene reacting with an electrophilic alkene of a peculiar type. It must have two double bonds to the *same* carbon atom. The most important examples are ketenes and isocyanates. The structures have two π bonds at right angles.

Here are typical reactions of dimethyl ketene to give a cyclobutanone and chlorosulfonyl isocyanate to give a β-lactam.

To understand why these reactions work, we need to consider a new and potentially fruitful way for two alkenes to approach each other. As you saw on p. 886, thermal cycloadditions between two alkenes do not work because the HOMO/LUMO combination is antibonding at one end.

If one alkene turns at 90° to the other, there is a way in which the HOMO of one might bond at both ends to the LUMO of the other. First we turn the HOMO of one alkene so that we are
looking down on the p orbitals. Then we add the LUMO of the other alkene on top of this HOMO and at 90° to it so that there is the possibility of bonding overlap at both ends.

This arrangement looks quite promising until we notice that there is antibonding at the other two corners! Overall there is no net bonding. We can tilt the balance in favour of bonding by adding a p orbital to one end of the LUMO and at a right angle to it so that both orbitals of the HOMO can bond to this extra p orbital. There are now four bonding interactions but only two antibonding. The balance is in favour of a reaction. This is also quite difficult to draw!

Ketenes have a central sp carbon atom with an extra π bond (the C=O) at right angles to the first alkene—perfect for thermal [2 + 2] cycloadditions. They are also electrophilic and so have suitable low-energy LUMOs.

**Ketene [2 + 2] cycloadditions**

Ketene itself is usually made by high-temperature pyrolysis of acetone but some ketenes are easily made in solution. The very acidic proton on dichloroacetyl chloride can be removed even with a tertiary amine and loss of chloride ion then gives dichloroketene in an E1cB elimination reaction. If the elimination is carried out in the presence of cyclopentadiene a very efficient regio- and stereospecific [2 + 2] cycloaddition occurs.

The most nucleophilic atom on the diene adds to the most electrophilic atom on the ketene and the cis geometry at the ring junction comes from the cis double bond of cyclopentadiene. It is impressive that even this excellent diene undergoes no Diels–Alder reaction with ketene as dienophile. The [2 + 2] cycloaddition must be much faster.

**Using the products**

Dichloroketene is convenient to use, but the two chlorine atoms are not usually needed in the product. Fortunately, these can be removed by zinc metal in acetic acid solution. Zinc forms a zinc enolate, which is converted into the ketone by the acid. Repetition removes both chlorine atoms. You saw the reductive formation of a zinc enolate earlier in the chapter (p. 894) and in the Reformatsky reaction (Chapter 26, p. 631).

But what do we do if we want the product of a ketene [4 + 2] cycloaddition? We must use a compound that is not a ketene but that can be transformed into a ketone afterwards—a masked ketene or a ketene equivalent. The two most important types are nitroalkenes and compounds such as the ‘cyanohydrin ester’ in the second example.

**Finding the starting materials for a cyclobutanone synthesis**

The disconnection of a four-membered ring is very simple—you just split in half and draw the two alkenes. There may be two ways to do this.
Both sets of starting materials look all right—the regiochemistry is correct for the first and doesn’t matter for the second. However, we prefer the second because we can control the stereochemistry by using cis-butene as the alkene and we can make the reaction work better by using dichloroketene instead of ketene itself, reducing out the chlorine atoms with zinc.

**Synthesis of β-lactams by [2 + 2] cycloadditions**

Now the disconnections are really different—one requires addition of a ketene to an imine and the other the addition of an isocyanate to an alkene. Isocyanates are like ketenes, but have a nitrogen atom instead of the end carbon atom. Otherwise the orbitals are the same.

And the good news is that both work, providing we have the right substituents on nitrogen. The dichloroacetyl chloride trick works well with imines and, as you ought to expect, the more nucleophilic nitrogen atom attacks the carbonyl group of the ketene so that the regioselectivity is right to make β-lactams.

If both components have one substituent, these will end up trans on the four-membered ring just to keep out of each other’s way. This example has more functionality and the product is used to make β-lactams with antibiotic activity.

You will notice that in both of these examples there is an aryl substituent on the nitrogen atom of the imine. This is simply because N-aryl imines are more stable than their NH analogues (Chapter 11, p. 231).

When we wish to make β-lactams by the alternative addition of an isocyanate to an alkene, a substituent on nitrogen is again required, but for quite a different reason. Because alkenes are only moderately nucleophilic, we need a strongly electron-withdrawing group on the isocyanate that can be removed after the cycloaddition, and the most popular by far is the chlorosulfonyl group. The main reason for its popularity is the commercial availability of chlorosulfonyl isocyanate. It reacts even with simple alkenes.
The alkene's HOMO interacts with the isocyanate's LUMO, and the most electrophilic atom is the carbonyl carbon so this is where the terminal carbon atom of the alkene attacks. The chlorosulfonyl group can be removed simply by hydrolysis under mild conditions via the sulfonic acid.

With a more electron-rich alkene—an enol ether, for example, or the following example with its sulfur analogue, a vinyl sulfide—the reaction ceases to be a concerted process and occurs stepwise. We know this must be the case in the next example because, even though the starting material is an \(E/Z\) mixture, the product has only \(trans\) stereochemistry: it is stereo-selective rather than stereospecific, indicating the presence of an intermediate in which free rotation can take place.

![Diagram of alkene reaction](image)

**Making five-membered rings: 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions**

We have seen how to make four-membered rings by \([2 + 2]\) cycloadditions, how to make six-membered rings by \([4 + 2]\) cycloadditions, and an example of making a seven-membered ring by a \([4 + 3]\) cycloaddition. But what about five-membered rings? What we need is a three-atom, four-electron equivalent of a 'diene' and we can do a Diels–Alder reaction. Such molecules exist: they are called 1,3-dipoles and they are good reagents for \([3 + 2]\) cycloadditions. The molecule containing N and O atoms labelled 'four-electron component' is an example. It has a nucleophilic end \((\text{O}^-)\) and an electrophilic end—the end of the double bond next to the central \(\text{N}^+\). These are 1,3-related, so it is indeed a 1,3-dipole.

![Diagram of 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition](image)

This functional group is known as a nitrone. You could think of it as the \(\text{N}-\text{oxide}\) of an imine. The nitrone gets its four electrons in this way: there are two \(\pi\) electrons in the \(\text{N}=\text{C}\) double bond and the other two come from one of the lone pairs on the oxygen atom. The two-electron component in each of these reactions is an alkene which, in a Diels–Alder reaction, would be called a dienophile. Here it is called a dipolarophile. Simple alkenes (which are bad dienophiles) are good dipolarophiles and so are electron-deficient alkenes. The difference between dienes and 1,3-dipoles is that dienes are nucleophilic and prefer to use their HOMO in cycloadditions with electron-deficient dienophiles while 1,3-dipoles, as their name implies, are both electrophilic and nucleophilic. They can use either their HOMO or their LUMO depending on whether the dipolarophile is electron-deficient or electron-rich.

![Diagram of nitrone reactivity](image)

**N-O functionality**

There are many functional groups containing \(\text{N}-\text{O}\) bonds. Here are a few:

- \(\text{H}^+\text{HO}\): hydroxylamine
- \(\text{R}^+\text{NO}\): nitro compound
- \(\text{R}^-\text{NO}\): nitrate
- \(\text{R}^+\text{NO}\): nitrite
- \(\text{R}^-\text{NO}\): nitroso compound
- \(\text{R}^-\text{NO}\): nitrile oxide
- \(\text{R}^-\text{N}^++\text{OH}\): oxime
- \(\text{R}^-\text{N}^++\text{O}^-\): nitrone
One important nitrone is a cyclic compound that has the structure in the margin and adds to dipolarophiles (essentially any alkene) in a \([3 + 2]\) cycloaddition to give two five-membered rings fused together. The stereochemistry comes from the best approach with the least steric hindrance, as shown. There is no endo rule in these cycloadditions as there is no conjugating group to interact across space at the back of the dipole or dipolarophile. The product shown here is the more stable exo product.

If the alkene is already joined on to the nitrone by a covalent bond, the dipolar cycloaddition is an intramolecular reaction, and one particular outcome may be dictated by the impossibility of the alternatives. In the simple case below, the product has a beautifully symmetrical cage structure. The mechanism shows the only way in which the molecule can fold up to allow a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition to occur.

The importance of the Diels–Alder reaction is that it makes six-membered rings with control over stereochemistry. The importance of 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions is not so much in the heterocyclic products but in what can be done with them. Almost always, the first formed heterocyclic ring is broken down in some way by carefully controlled reactions. The nitrone adducts we have just seen contain a weak N–O single bond that can be selectively cleaved by reduction. Reagents such as LiAlH₄ or zinc metal in various solvents (acetic acid is popular) or hydrogenation over catalysts such as nickel reduce the N–O bond to give NH and OH functionality without changing the structure or stereochemistry of the rest of the molecule. From the examples above, we get these products:

In each cycloaddition, one permanent C–C and one C–O bond (shown in brown) were made. These were retained while the N–O bond present in the original dipole was discarded. The final product is an amino-alcohol with a 1,3-relationship between the OH and NH groups.

**Linear 1,3-dipoles**

In the Diels–Alder reaction, the dienes had to have an s-cis conformation about the central single bond so that they were already in the shape of the product. Many useful 1,3-dipoles are actually linear and although their 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions look very awkward they still work well. We shall start with the nitrile oxides, which have a triple bond where the nitrone had a double bond.

**Making nitrile oxides**

There are two important routes to these compounds, both of which feature interesting chemistry. Oximes, easily made from aldehydes with hydroxylamine (NH₂–OH), are rather enol-like and can be chlorinated on carbon.
Treatment of the chloro-oxime with base (Et₃N is strong enough) leads directly to the nitrile oxide with the loss of HCl. This is an elimination of a curious kind as we cannot draw a connected chain of arrows for it. We must use two steps—removal of the OH proton and then loss of chloride. It is a γ elimination rather than the more common β elimination.

The other method starts from nitroalkanes and is a dehydration. Inspect the two molecules and you will see that the nitro compound contains one molecule of H₂O more than the nitrile oxide. But how to remove the molecule of water? The reagent usually chosen is phenyl isocyanate (Ph–N=C=O), which removes the molecule of water atom-by-atom to give aniline (PhNH₂) and CO₂. This is probably the mechanism, although the last step might not be concerted, as we have shown.

As you might expect, this [3 + 2] cycloaddition is a reaction involving the HOMO of the alkene and the LUMO of the nitrile oxide so that the leading interaction that determines the structure of the product is the one in the margin. If there is stereochemistry in the alkene, it is faithfully reproduced in the heterocyclic adduct as is usual for a concerted cycloaddition.

Both partners in nitrile oxide cycloadditions can have triple bonds—the product is then a stable aromatic heterocycle called an isoxazole.

Reduction of the N–O bond and the C=N double bond of the nitrile oxide cycloadducts produces useful amino alcohols with a 1,3-relationship between the two functional groups. As the N–O bond is the weaker of the two, it is alternatively possible to reduce just that and leave the C=N bond alone. This gives an imine, which usually hydrolyses during work-up.
Any stereochemistry in the adduct is preserved right through this reduction and hydrolysis sequence: you might like to compare the products with the products of the stereoselective aldol reactions you saw in Chapter 33.

We shall end this section with the illustration of a beautiful intramolecular 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition that was used in the synthesis of the vitamin biotin. Starting at the beginning of the synthesis will allow you to revise some reactions from earlier chapters. The starting material is a simple cyclic allylic bromide that undergoes an efficient SN2 reaction with a sulfur nucleophile. In fact, we don’t know (or care!) whether this is an SN2 or SN2’ reaction as the product of both reactions is the same. This sort of chemistry was discussed in Chapter 24 if you need to check up on it. Notice that it is the sulfur atom that does the attack—it is the soft end of the nucleophile and better at SN2 reactions. The next step is the cleavage of the ester group to reveal the thiolate anion.

**Biotin**

Biotin is an enzyme cofactor that activates and transports CO₂ for use as an electrophile in biochemical reactions.

The nucelophilic thiolate anion does a conjugate addition (Chapter 22) on to a nitroalkene.

Now comes the exciting moment. The nitroalkene gives the nitrile oxide directly on dehydration with PhN=C=O and the cycloaddition occurs spontaneously in the only way it can, given the intramolecular nature of the reaction.
In the margin we show how this reaction works—the nitrile oxide comes up from the underside of the seven-membered ring, pushing the black hydrogen atoms upwards and making all the rings join up in a cis fashion. Next the cycloadduct is reduced completely with LiAlH₄ so that both the N–O and C=N bonds are cleaved. This step is very stereoselective so the C=N reduction probably precedes the N–O cleavage and the hydride has to attack from the outside (top) face of the molecule. These considerations are explored more thoroughly in Chapter 32.

The sulfur-containing ring and the stereochemistry of biotin are already defined. In the seven steps that follow, the rest of the molecule is assembled. The most important is the breaking open of the seven-membered ring by a Beckmann rearrangement (which you will meet in Chapter 36).

**Two very important synthetic reactions: cycloaddition of alkenes with osmium tetroxide and with ozone**

We shall end this chapter with two very important reactions, both of which we have alluded to earlier in the book (Chapter 19). These reactions are very important not just because of their mechanisms, which you must be aware of, but even more because of their usefulness in synthetic chemistry, and in that regard they are second only to the Diels–Alder reaction when considering all the reactions in this chapter. They are both oxidations—one involves osmium tetroxide (OsO₄) and one involves ozone (O₃) and they both involve cycloaddition.

**OsO₄ adds two hydroxyl groups syn to a double bond**

In Chapter 19 we emphasized the stereospecificity of this reaction but now we want to consider the nature of the first step (in the green frame). This is a cycloaddition between the osmium tetroxide and the alkene. You can treat the OsO₄ like a dipole, although it isn't drawn as one because osmium has plenty of orbitals to accommodate four double bonds. The reaction is a [3 + 2] cycloaddition or a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition, whichever you prefer.
The osmate ester isn’t the required product, and the reaction is usually done in the presence of water (the usual solvent is a t-BuOH-water mixture), which hydrolyses the osmate ester to the diol. Because both oxygen atoms were added in one concerted step during the cycloaddition, their relative stereochemistry must remain syn.

Note that, in the cycloaddition, one arrow stops on osmium and another starts on the other side. Osmium therefore gains a lone pair of electrons and is reduced from Os(VIII) to Os(VI)—the reaction is therefore an oxidation, and it’s one that is very specific to C= C double bonds (as we mentioned in Chapter 23). As written, it would involve a whole equivalent of the expensive, toxic, and heavy metal osmium, but it can be made catalytic by introducing a reagent to oxidize Os(VI) back to Os(VIII). The usual reagent is N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMO) or Fe(III), and typical conditions for an osmylation, or dihydroxylation, reaction are shown in the scheme below.

In behaviour that is typical of a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition reaction, OsO₄ reacts almost as well with electron-poor as with electron-rich alkenes. OsO₄ simply chooses to attack the alkene HOMO or its LUMO, depending on which gives the best interaction. This is quite different from the electrophilic addition of m-CPBA or Br₂ to alkenes.

A cycloaddition that destroys bonds: ozonolysis

Our last type of cycloaddition is most unusual. It starts as a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition but eventually becomes a method of cleaving π bonds in an oxidative fashion so that they end up as two carbonyl groups. The reagent is ozone, O₃. Again, you met this reaction in Chapter 19, but we can now show you the full, remarkable details of the reaction mechanism.

Ozone is a symmetrical bent molecule with a central positively charged oxygen atom and two terminal oxygen atoms that share a negative charge. It is a 1,3-dipole and does typical 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions with alkenes. The product is a very unstable compound. The O–O single bond (bond energy 140 kJ mol⁻¹) is a very weak bond—much weaker than the N–O bond (180 kJ mol⁻¹) we have been describing as weak in previous examples—and this heterocycle has two of them. It immediately decomposes—by a reverse 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition.

The products are a simple aldehyde on the left and a new, rather unstable looking molecule—a 1,3-dipole known as a carbonyl oxide—on the right. At least it no longer has any true O–O single bonds (the one that looks like a single bond is part of a delocalized system like the one in ozone). Being a 1,3-dipole, it now adds to the aldehyde in a third cycloaddition step. It might just add back the way it came, but it much prefers to add in the other way round, with the nucleophilic oxyanion attacking the carbon atom of the carbonyl group like this.
This compound—known as an ozonide—is the first stable product of the reaction with ozone. It is the culmination of two 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions and one reverse 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition. It is still not that stable and is quite explosive, so for the reaction to be of any use it needs decomposing. The way this is usually done is with dimethylsulfide or Ph₃P, which attacks the ozonide to give DMSO and two molecules of aldehyde.

The ozonide will also react with oxidizing agents such as H₂O₂ to give carboxylic acids, or with more powerful reducing agents such as NaBH₄ to give alcohols. Here are the overall transformations—each cleaves a double bond—it is called an ozonolysis.

**Summary of cycloaddition reactions**

- A cycloaddition is a one-step ring-forming reaction between two conjugated π systems in which two new σ bonds are formed, joining the two reagents at each end. The mechanism has one step with no intermediates, and all the arrows start on π bonds and go round in a ring.

- The cycloadditions are suprafacial—they occur on one face only of each π system—and for a thermally allowed reaction there should be 4n + 2 electrons in the mechanism, but 4n in a photochemical cycloaddition. These rules are dictated by orbital symmetry.

- Cycloaddition equilibria generally lie over on the right-hand side in a thermal reaction because C–C σ bonds are stronger than C–C π bonds. In a photochemical cycloaddition the product loses its π bonds and therefore its means of absorbing energy. It is therefore the kinetic product of the reaction even if it has a strained four-membered ring.
• The stereochemistry of each component is faithfully reproduced in the product—the reactions are stereospecific—and the relationship between their stereochemistries may be governed by orbital overlap to give an endo product.

In the next chapter we meet two more classes of pericyclic reactions: electrocyclic reactions and sigmatropic rearrangements.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Pericyclic reactions 2: sigmatropic and electrocyclic reactions

Connections

Building on
- Cycloadditions and the principles of pericyclic reactions (essential reading!) ch34
- Acetal formation ch11
- Conformational analysis ch16
- Elimination reactions ch17
- Controlling alkene geometry and main group chemistry ch27
- The synthesis of aromatic heterocycles ch30

Arriving at
- The second and third types of pericyclic reaction
- Stereochemistry from chair-like transition states
- What decides whether these pericyclic reactions go 'forwards' or 'backwards'
- Special chemistry of N, S, and P
- Why substituted cyclopentadienes are unstable
- What 'con'- and 'dis'-rotatory means

Looking forward to
- Rearrangements ch36
- Asymmetric synthesis ch41
- Natural products ch42

Cycloadditions, the subject of the last chapter, are just one of the three main classes of pericyclic reaction. In this chapter we consider the other two classes: sigmatropic rearrangements and electrocyclic reactions. We will analyse them in a way that is similar to our dealings with cycloadditions.

Sigmatropic rearrangements

The Claisen rearrangement was the first to be discovered

The original sigmatropic rearrangement occurred when an aryl allyl ether was heated without solvent and an ortho-allyl phenol resulted. This is the Claisen rearrangement. The first step in this reaction is a pericyclic reaction of a type that you will learn to call a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement.

![Interactive mechanism for aromatic Claisen rearrangement](image)

This is a one-step mechanism without ionic intermediates or any charges, just like a cycloaddition. The arrows go round in a ring. The difference between this and a cycloaddition is that one of the arrows starts on a \( \sigma \) bond instead of on a \( \pi \) bond. The second step in the reaction is a simple ionic proton transfer to regenerate aromaticity.

Online support. The icon in the margin indicates that accompanying interactive resources are provided online to help your understanding: just type [www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123](http://www.chemtube3d.com/clayden/123) into your browser, replacing 123 with the number of the page where you see the icon. For pages linking to more than one resource, type 123-1, 123-2 etc. (replacing 123 with the page number) for access to successive links.
How do we know that this is the mechanism? If the allyl ether is unsymmetrical, it turns ‘inside out’ during Claisen rearrangement, as required by the mechanism. Check for yourself that this is right.

The aliphatic Claisen rearrangement also occurs

It was later found that the same sort of reaction occurs without the aromatic ring. This is called either the aliphatic Claisen rearrangement or the Claisen–Cope rearrangement. Here is the simplest possible example.

All these reactions are called sigmatropic because a σ bond appears to move from one place to another during the reaction. This particular reaction is called a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement because the new σ bond has a 3,3 relationship to the old σ bond. You can see this if you number both ends of the old σ bond ‘1’ and count round in both directions to the ends of the new σ bond in the product. You will find that the ends of the new σ bond both have the number ‘3’.

These [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements happen through a chair-like transition state, which allows us both to get the orbitals right and to predict the stereochemistry (if any) of the new double bond. The orbitals look something like this.

Note that these do not represent any specific frontier orbitals, they simply show that, in this conformation, the new σ bond is formed from two p orbitals that point directly at each other and that the two new σ bonds are formed from orbitals that are already parallel.

Alkene stereochemistry in the Claisen rearrangement comes from a chair-like transition state

Stereochemistry may arise if there is a substituent on the saturated carbon atom next to the oxygen atom. If there is, the resulting double bond strongly favours the trans (E) geometry. This is because the substituent prefers an equatorial position on the chair transition state.
The substituent \( R \) prefers an equatorial position as the molecule reacts and \( R \) retains this position in the product. The new alkene bond is shown in green. Notice that the trans geometry of the alkene in the product is already there in the conformation chosen by the starting material and in the transition state.

The starting material for these aliphatic Claisen rearrangements consists of ethers with one allyl and one vinyl group. We need now to consider how such useful molecules might be made. There is no problem about the allyl half—allylic alcohols are stable, easily made compounds. But what about the vinyl half? ‘Vinyl alcohol’ is just the enol of acetaldehyde (MeCHO).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{R} & \quad \text{R}
\end{align*}
\]

The solution is to use an acetal of the aldehyde in an acid-catalysed exchange process with the allylic alcohol. It is not necessary to isolate the allyl vinyl ether as long as some of it is formed and rearranges into the final product.

The methanol is distilled off as it is the most volatile of the components in this mixture. A second molecule of methanol is now lost in an acid-catalysed elimination reaction to give the vinyl group.

**The Claisen rearrangement is a general synthesis of \( \gamma,\delta \)-unsaturated carbonyl compounds**

The [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement itself can be carried out by heat as part of the same step or as a separate step depending on the compounds. This is a very flexible reaction sequence and can be used for aldehydes (as shown above), ketones, esters, or amides. In each case acetal-like compounds are used—acetals themselves for aldehydes and ketones; orthoesters and orthoaides for the other two (although the orthoaides are often called ‘amide acetals’).
The common feature in the products of these Claisen rearrangements is a \(\gamma,\delta\)-unsaturated carbonyl group. If this is what you need in a synthesis, make it by a Claisen rearrangement.

**Orbital descriptions of \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangements**

It is possible to give a frontier orbital description of a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement but this is not a very satisfactory treatment because we don’t have two separate reagents recognizing each other across space as we did in cycloadditions. There are three components in these reactions—two non-conjugated \(\pi\) bonds that do have to overlap across space and a \(\sigma\) bond in the chain joining the two \(\pi\) bonds. The Woodward–Hoffmann rules give a more satisfying description and we shall follow the routine outlined on p. 892 for cycloadditions. Note that for stage 3, we can use the three-dimensional diagram we have already made.

First a reminder of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules:

1. **The Woodward–Hoffman rules**

   In a thermal pericyclic reaction the total number of \((4q + 2)\), and \((4r)_a\) components must be odd.

   

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction (we shall stay with a familiar one).

2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others.

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!). Note that we have dropped the shading in the orbital from the previous diagrams earlier in the chapter.

4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.

5. Label each component \(s\) or \(a\) depending whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides. See below for the \(\sigma\) bond symmetry.
6. Add up the number of \((4q + 2)\), and \((4r)\) components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed. Here there is:

- **one** \((4q + 2)\) component (one alkene) and
- **no** \((4r)\) components.

Total = 1, so this is an allowed reaction. As you saw in Chapter 34 (p. 893), the \(\pi_{2a}\) and \(\sigma_{2a}\) components have irrelevant symmetry and are not counted.

One new aspect of orbital symmetry has appeared in this diagram—how did we deduce a \(\sigma\) or \(s\) symmetry in the way the \(\sigma\) bond reacted? For \(\pi\) bonds it is simple—if both bonds are formed on the same side of the old \(\pi\) bond, it has reacted suprafacially; if on opposite sides, antarafacially.

With a \(\sigma\) bond the symmetry is not so obvious. We want to know if it does the **same** thing at each end (s) or a **different** thing (a). But what is the ‘thing’ it does? It reacts using the large lobe of the sp\(^3\) orbital (retention) or the small lobe (inversion). If it reacts with retention at both ends or inversion at both ends, it reacts suprafacially, while if it reacts with retention at one end and inversion at the other, it reacts antarafacially. There are four possibilities.

- **σ bond reacting suprafacially**
  - retention at both ends
  - inversion at both ends

- **σ bond reacting antarafacially**
  - inversion at one end
  - retention at the other end

In the routine above, we chose to use our \(σ\) bond so that we got inversion at one end and retention at the other. That was why we identified it as an antarafacial component. If we had chosen another style we should have got different descriptions of the components, but the reaction would still have been allowed, for example changing just one connecting line, as in the margin, changes the symmetry of the \(σ\) bond so that it becomes a \(σ_{2a}\) component but it also changes the symmetry of one of the \(π\) bonds so that it becomes a \(π_{2a}\) component. The net result is still only one component of the Woodward–Hoffmann symmetry, the sum is still 1, and the reaction still allowed.

### The direction of [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements

Orbital symmetry tells us that [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements are allowed but says nothing about which way they will go. They are allowed in either direction. So why does the Claisen–Cope rearrangement always form the carbonyl-containing product? Think back to our discussion on enols (Chapter 20) and you may recall that the combination of a carbonyl group and a C–C \(σ\) bond made the keto form more stable than the enol form with its combination of a C=C \(π\) bond and a C–O \(σ\) bond. The same is true here. It is the stability of the carbonyl group that drives the reaction to the right.

### Directing the Cope rearrangement by the formation of a carbonyl group

The Cope rearrangement is a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement with only carbon atoms in the ring. In its simplest version it is not a reaction at all. The starting material and the product are the same.

We can drive this reaction too by the formation of a carbonyl group if we put an OH substituent in the right place.
The product of the sigmatropic step is the enol of the final product. It turns out that the reaction is accelerated if the starting alcohol is treated with base (KH is the best) to make the alkoxide. The product is then the potassium enolate, which is more stable than the simple potassium alkoxide starting material. As the reaction proceeds, conjugation is growing between $O^-$ and the new $\pi$ bond.

Some remarkable compounds can be made by this method. One of the strangest—a ‘bridgehead’ alkene—was made by a potassium alkoxide-accelerated Cope rearrangement in which a four-membered ring was expanded into an eight-membered ring containing a trans double bond (shown in green).

A combination of an oxygen atom in the ring and another one outside the ring is very powerful at promoting [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements and easy to arrange by making the lithium enolate of an ester of an allylic alcohol.

Sometimes it is better to convert the lithium enolate into the silyl enol ether before heating to accomplish the [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement. In any case, both products give the unsaturated carboxylic acid on work-up.

This reaction is known as the Ireland–Claisen rearrangement as it was a variation of the Claisen rearrangement invented by R. E. Ireland in the 1970s and widely used since. If the substituents are suitably arranged, it shows the same $E$ selectivity as the simple Claisen rearrangement and for the same reason.
In some cases simple Cope rearrangements without any oxygen atoms at all can be directed by an unstable starting material or a stable product. The instability might be strain and the stability might simply be more substituents on the double bonds. In the next reaction the driving force is the breaking of a weak σ bond in a three-membered ring. This reaction goes in 100% yield at only just above room temperature, so it is very favourable. In the second example, the trisubstituted double bonds inside the five-membered rings of the product are more stable than the exomethylene groups in the starting material.

**An industrial synthesis of citral**

‘Citral’ is a key intermediate in the synthesis of vitamin A, and it is manufactured by a remarkable process that involves two successive [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements, a Claisen followed by a Cope. The allyl vinyl ether needed for the Claisen rearrangement is an enol ether of an unsaturated aldehyde with an unsaturated alcohol. The two starting materials are themselves derived from a common precursor, making this a most efficient process! Heating the enol ether promotes [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement propelled by the formation of a carbonyl group.

But the product of this rearrangement is now set up for a second [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement, this time made favourable by a shift into conjugation and the formation of two trisubstituted double bonds from two terminal ones. Overall, the prenyl group walks from one end of the molecule to the other, inverting twice as it goes.

**Seaweed sex censored by a sigmatropic shift**

In order to reproduce, the female gametes of marine brown algae must attract mobile male gametes. This they do by releasing a pheromone, long thought to be the cycloheptadiene ectocarpene. In 1995 results were published that suggested that, in fact, the pheromone was a cyclopropane, and that ectocarpene was ineffective as a pheromone.

How had the confusion arisen? Well, the remarkable thing is that the cyclopropyl pheromone inactivates itself with a half-life of several minutes at ambient temperature, by [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement to the cycloheptadiene, driven by release of strain from the three-membered ring. This not only confused the earlier pheromone chemists, but it also provides a marvellously precise way for the algae to signal their presence and readiness for reproduction without saturating the sea water with meaningless pheromone.
Applications of \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangements using other elements

There is no need to restrict our discussion to carbon and oxygen atoms. We shall finish this section with two useful reactions that use other elements. You met the most famous synthesis of indoles in Chapter 30—the Fischer indole synthesis—and we can now look in more detail at the key step of this remarkable reaction. Condensation of phenylhydrazine with a ketone in slightly acidic solution gives a phenylhydrazone.

\[
\text{phenylhydrazine} + \text{ketone} \xrightarrow{\text{slightly acidic solution}} \text{phenylhydrazone}
\]

If the ketone is enolizable, this imine is in equilibrium with the corresponding enamine. The important bonds are given in black in the diagram. The enamine is ideally set up for a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement in which the \(\sigma\) bond to be broken is the weak \(N-N\) \(\sigma\) bond and one of the \(\pi\) bonds is in the benzene ring.

\[
\text{phenylhydrazone} \xrightarrow{[3,3]} \text{an enamine} \xrightarrow{\text{enamine}} \text{indole}
\]

The product is a highly unstable double imine. But aromaticity is immediately restored and a series of proton shifts and \(C-N\) bond formation and cleavage reactions give the aromatic indole.

That was a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic reaction involving two nitrogens. There follows one with two oxygens and a chromium atom. When tertiary allylic alcohols are oxidized with \(\text{CrO}_3\) in acid solution, no direct oxidation can take place, but a kind of conjugate oxidation occurs.

\[
\text{RLi} + \text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{RLi, CrO}_3, H^+} \text{RCr} + H_2O
\]

The first step in \(\text{Cr(VI)}\) oxidations can take place to give a chromate ester but this intermediate has no proton to lose so it transfers the chromate to the other end of the allylic system, where there is a proton. The chromate transfer can be drawn as a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement. The final step is the normal oxidation in which chromium drops down from orange \(\text{Cr(VI)}\) to \(\text{Cr(IV)}\) and eventually by disproportionation to green \(\text{Cr(III)}\).
[2,3]-Sigmatropic rearrangements

All [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements have six-membered cyclic transition states. It is no accident that the size of the ring is given by the sum of the two numbers in the square brackets and this is universally the case for sigmatropic rearrangements. We are now going to look at [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements so we will be needing five-membered cyclic transition states. There is a problem here. You cannot draw three arrows going round a five-membered ring without stopping or starting on an atom, not a bond. This can be OK if the atom is a carbanion.

The starting material is a benzyl allyl ether and undergoes [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement to make a new C–C σ bond at the expense of a C–O σ bond—a bad bargain this as the C–O bond is stronger. The balance is tilted by the greater stability of the oxyanion in the product than of the carbanion in the starting material. The new bond has a 2,3 relationship to the old and the transition state is a five-membered ring.

The transition state can be quite chair-like so that the new π bond will be trans if it has a choice. There will be a choice if the ether has been made from a substituted allyl alcohol.

We cannot draw a complete chair as we haven’t got a six-membered ring, but the part that is to become the new π bond can be in a chair-like part of the five-membered ring. The substituent R prefers an equatorial position and the resulting trans arrangement of the groups is outlined in green.

We can use the same conformational diagram to show how the orbitals overlap as the new bond is formed. When we come to use the Woodward–Hoffmann rules on these [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements, we find something new. We have a π bond and a σ bond and a carbanion. How are we to represent a carbanion (or a carbocation) that is just a p orbital on an atom? The new symbol we use for a simple p orbital is ω (lower case omega).
A carbanion is an $\omega^2$ component and a carbocation is an $\omega^0$ component as it has zero electrons. If the two new bonds are formed to the same lobe of the p orbital of the carbanion, we have an $\omega^2_s$ component, but if they are formed to different lobes we have an $\omega^2_a$ component.

Without going through the whole routine again, the [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement we have been discussing can be described as an $\omega^2_s + \omega^2_s + \omega^a$ reaction. There is one $(4q + 2)_s$ and no $(4r)_a$ component so the reaction is thermally allowed.

**[2,3]-Sigmatropic rearrangements with S and Se**

There are many [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements involving a variety of heteroatoms as well as carbon. The mechanism is common with elements that are prepared to change their oxidation state by two so that an arrow can both start and finish on that atom. The examples in this section involve sulfur and selenium, which can both form stable compounds at three oxidation states: S or Se(II), S or Se(IV), and S or Se(VI).

![Interactive mechanism for the [2,3]-sigmatropic shift of sulfoxides](image)

Reaction of an allylic alcohol with PhSCI gives an unstable sulfenate ester that rearranges on heating to an allylic sulfoxide by a [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement involving both O and S. Notice that arrows both start and stop on the sulfur atom, which changes from S(II) to S(IV) during the reaction. The new functional group with an S=O bond is a sulfoxide, and this is a good way of making allylic sulfoxides. The product forms an anion stabilized by sulfur, which can be alkylated.

We have said that all these sigmatropic rearrangements are reversible but now we can prove it. If this product is heated in methanol with a nucleophile such as (MeO)$_3$P (trimethylphosphite), which has a liking for sulfur, the [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement runs backwards and a sulfenate ester is again formed.

This is an unfavourable reaction because the equilibrium lies over on the sulfoxide side. But the nucleophile traps the sulfenate ester and the methanol ensures that the alkoxide ion formed is immediately protonated so that we get another allylic alcohol.

So what is the point of going round in circles like this? The net result is the alkylation of an allylic alcohol in a position where alkylation would not normally be considered possible.
A related reaction of selenium in its +4 oxidation state (as selenium dioxide, SeO₂) allows us to make allylic alcohols and enals from simple alkenes. The overall reaction is the simple oxidation shown in the margin, but the route by which the compound gets there involves two successive pericyclic reactions.

Selenium dioxide will react with alkenes in a [4 + 2] cycloaddition reminiscent of the ene reaction.

\[
\text{R} = \text{SeO}_2 \rightarrow \text{R} + \text{SeO}_2 \quad \text{[4 + 2]}
\]

The initial product is an allylic seleninic acid—and just like an allylic sulfoxide (but more so because the C–Se bond is even weaker) it undergoes allylic rearrangement to give an unstable compound that rapidly decomposes to an allylic alcohol. In some cases, particularly this most useful oxidation of methyl groups, the oxidation continues to give an aldehyde or ketone.

Overall, CH₃ has been replaced by CH₂OH or CH=O in an allylic position, a transformation similar to the allylic bromination reaction with NBS that you met in Chapter 24, but with a very different mechanism. The by-product of the oxidation is a selenium(II) compound, and it can be more practical to carry out the reaction with only a catalytic amount of SeO₂, with a further oxidizing agent, t-butyl hydroperoxide, to reoxidize the Se(II) after each cycle of the reaction. This eliminates the need to get rid of large amounts of selenium-containing products, which are toxic and usually smelly.

### [1,5]-Sigmatropic hydrogen shifts

When one of the numbers in square brackets is ‘1’, the old and new σ bonds are to the same atom, so we are dealing with the migration of a group around a conjugated system. In the case of a [1,5]-sigmatropic rearrangement the transition state is a six-membered ring (remember—just add together the numbers in square brackets). There is an important example in the margin. Let us first check that this is indeed a [1,5]-sigmatropic rearrangement by numbering the position of the new σ bond with respect to the old. Note that we must go the long way round the five-membered ring because that is the way the mechanism goes.

It is a [1,5]-sigmatropic rearrangement. The figure ‘1’ in the square brackets shows that the same atom is at one end of the new σ bond as was at one end of the old σ bond. One atom has moved in a 1,5 manner and these are often called [1,5]-sigmatropic shifts. This is often abbreviated to [1,5]H shift to show which atom is moving. This particular example is important because sadly it prohibits most attractive idea. The aromatic cyclopentadienyl anion is easily formed, stable, and readily alkylated. This sequence of alkylation and Diels–Alder reaction looks very good.

But sadly this sequence is, in fact, no good at all. A mixture of three Diels–Alder adducts is usually obtained resulting from addition to the three cyclopentadienes present in solution as
the result of rapid [1,5]H shifts. The one drawn above is a minor product because there is more of the other two dienes, which have an extra substituent on the double bonds.

An excellent example comes from the intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions explored by Dreiding in 1983. One particular substituted cyclopentadiene was made by a fragmentation reaction (see Chapter 36). It might have been expected to give a simple Diels–Alder adduct.

There is nothing wrong with this reaction—indeed, the product looks beautifully stable—but it is not formed because the [1,5]H shift is too quick and gives a more stable cyclopentadiene with more substituents on a double bond. Then it does the Diels–Alder reaction.

Notice that in these compounds the ketone is not conjugated to any of the alkenes and so does not influence the reaction. If we increase the reactivity of the dienophile by putting an ester group in conjugation with it, most of the compound does the Diels–Alder reaction before it does the [1,5]H shift.

**Orbital description for the [1,5]H sigmatropic shift**

It is equally satisfactory to use frontier orbitals or the Woodward–Hoffmann rules for these reactions. We can take the diene as one component (HOMO or LUMO or π) and the C–H bond as the other (LUMO or HOMO or σ). Let us start by using the LUMO of the diene (ψ₃) and the HOMO of the C–H bond (its filled σ orbital), as shown in the margin. If the circle around the H atom surprised you, perhaps it will also remind you that hydrogen has only a 1s orbital, which is spherical. You can probably see already that all the orbitals are correctly lined up for the reaction.

The hydrogen atom slides across the top face of the planar cyclopentadiene ring. We call this a suprafacial migration, meaning that the migrating group leaves from one face of the π system and rejoins that same face (the top face in this example). Antarafacial migration would mean leaving the top face and rejoining the bottom face—a clear impossibility here.
If you use the Woodward–Hoffmann rules, you need to note that the hydrogen atom must react with retention. The 1s orbital is spherically symmetrical and has no node, so wherever you draw the dotted line from that orbital it always means retention. Choosing the components is easy—the diene is a \( \pi \) and the C–H bond a \( \sigma \) component.

The easiest way to join them up is to link the hydrogen atom’s 1s orbital to the top lobe of the \( \pi \) orbital at the back of the diene and the black sp\(^3\) orbital to the top lobe at the front of the diene. This gives us \( \pi \) and \( \sigma \) components and there is one \( 4q + 2 \), and no \( 4r \), components so the sum is odd and the reaction is allowed. Both approaches give us the same picture—a suprafacial migration of the hydrogen atom with (inevitably) retention at the migrating group.

These [1,5]-sigmatropic shifts are not restricted to cyclopentadienes. In Chapter 34 we bemoaned the lack of Diels–Alder reactions using \( E,Z \) dienes. One reason for the shortage of examples is that such dienes undergo [1,5]H shifts rather easily and mixtures of products result.

The consequences of orbital symmetry for sigmatropic hydrogen shifts are simple. In thermal reactions, [1,5]H shifts occur suprafacially but [1,3]H and [1,7]H shifts must be antarafacial. Antarafacial [1,3]H shifts are impossible, even though they are allowed, because a rigid three-carbon chain is too short to allow the H atom to transfer from the top to the bottom—the H atom just can’t reach. This is just as well, as otherwise double bonds would just wander around molecules by repeated [1,3]H shifts.

When we come to [1,7]H shifts, the situation is different. Now the much longer chain is just flexible enough to allow antarafacial migration. The hydrogen atom leaves the top side of the triene and adds back in on the bottom side. The diagram shows this in orbital terms: the LUMO of hexatriene has three nodes. Antarafacial [1,7]H migration is allowed and possible.

### Summary of thermal sigmatropic migrations of hydrogen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stereochemistry</td>
<td>antarafacial</td>
<td>suprafacial</td>
<td>antarafacial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feasibility</td>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>possible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Photochemical [1,n] H sigmatropic shifts follow the opposite rules

As you should by now expect, all this is reversed in photochemical reactions. The margin shows an example of a [1,7]H shift that cannot occur antarafacially because the molecule is a rigid ring, but that can and does occur photochemically in a suprafacial manner.

A [1,7]H shift occurs in the final stages of the human body’s synthesis of vitamin D from cholesterol. Here is the last step of the biosynthesis.
This step happens spontaneously, without the need for light, so the [1,7]H shift must be antarafacial. That’s no problem in this triene system—there is enough flexibility for the hydrogen atom to migrate from the top to the bottom face.

Why, then, does the body famously need sunlight to make vitamin D? The reason is the previous step, which can only occur when light shines on the skin.

This ring opening is clearly pericyclic—the electrons go round in a ring, and the curly arrows could be drawn either way—but it is neither a cycloaddition (only one π system is involved) nor a sigmatropic rearrangement (a σ bond is broken rather than moved). It is, in fact, a member of the third and last kind of pericyclic reaction, an electrocyclic reaction.

**Electroyclic reactions**

In an electrocyclic reaction a ring is always broken or formed. Rings may, of course, be formed by cycloadditions as well, but the difference with electrocyclic reactions is that just one new σ bond is formed (or broken) across the ends of a single conjugated π system. In a cycloaddition, two new σ bonds are always formed (or broken), and in a sigmatropic rearrangement one σ bond forms while one breaks.

- The types of pericyclic reactions are distinguished by the number of σ bonds made or broken

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of pericyclic reactions</th>
<th>Cycloadditions</th>
<th>Sigmatropic rearrangements</th>
<th>Electroyclic reactions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two new σ bonds are formed...</td>
<td>...or broken.</td>
<td>One new σ bond is formed...</td>
<td>...or broken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Delta \sigma = \pm 2 )</td>
<td>( \Delta \sigma = 0 )</td>
<td>( \Delta \sigma = \pm 1 )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One of the simplest electrocyclic reactions occurs when hexatriene is heated to 500 °C. It is a pericyclic reaction because the electrons go round in a ring (you could equally draw the arrows going the other way); it’s electrocyclic because a new σ bond is formed across the ends of a π system. The reaction goes because the σ bond that is formed is stronger than the π bond that is lost.

The opposite is true for the electrocyclic opening of cyclobutene—ring strain in the four-membered ring means that the reverse (ring-opening) reaction is preferred to ring closure.

In one famous case, the release of ring strain is almost exactly counterbalanced by the formation of a σ bond at the expense of a π bond. Cycloheptatriene exists in equilibrium with a bicyclic isomer known as norcaradiene. Usually cycloheptatriene is the major component of the equilibrium, but the norcaradiene structure is favoured with certain substitution patterns.
Rules for electrocyclic reactions

Whether they go in the direction of ring opening or ring closure, electrocyclic reactions are subject to the same rules as all other pericyclic reactions. With most of the pericyclic reactions you have seen so far, we have given you the choice of using either HOMO–LUMO reasoning or the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. With electrocyclic reactions, you really have to use the Woodward–Hoffmann rules because (at least for the ring closures) there is only one molecular orbital involved.

Electrocyclic reactions

- An electrocyclic reaction is the formation of a new $\sigma$ bond across the ends of a conjugated polyene or the reverse.

It is important that you do not confuse electrocyclic reactions with pericyclic reactions. Pericyclic is the name for the whole family of reactions involving no charged intermediates in which the electrons go round the outside of the ring. Electroyclic reactions, cycloadditions, and sigmatropic rearrangements are the three main classes of pericyclic reactions.

Let’s start with the hexatriene ring closure from the beginning of this section, first looking at the orbitals and then following the same procedure that we taught you for cycloadditions and sigmatropic rearrangements to see what the Woodward–Hoffmann rules have to say about the reaction.

Hexatriene is, of course, a $6\pi$ electron ($\pi_6$) conjugated system and, on forming cyclohexadiene, the end two orbitals must rotate through $90^\circ$ to form a $\sigma$ bond.

So, now for the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction.

2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others.

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!).

4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.

5. Label each component s or a depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides. We called this reaction ‘s’ because the top halves of the two $\pi$ orbitals join together.

6. Add up the number of $(4q + 2)$, and $(4r)_a$ components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed. Here there is one $(4q + 2)$ component and no $(4r)_a$ components. Total = 1 so this is an allowed reaction.

We can give the same treatment to the cyclobutene ring-opening reaction—the Woodward–Hoffmann rules tell us nothing about which way the reaction will go, only if the reaction is allowed, and it is usually easier with electrocyclic reactions to consider the ring-closing reaction even if ring opening is favoured thermodynamically. This is the process we need to consider:

Reminder. In a thermal pericyclic reaction the total number of $(4q + 2)$, and $(4r)_a$ components must be odd.
And the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment again.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction.

2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others.

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!).

4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.

5. Label each component s or a depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides.

6. Add up the number of \((4q + 2)_s\) and \((4r)_a\) components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed. There are no \((4q + 2)_s\) components and no \((4r)_a\) components. Total = 0 so this is a disallowed reaction.

Oh dear! We know that the reaction works, so something must be wrong. It certainly isn’t Woodward and Hoffmann’s Nobel-prize-winning rules—it’s our way of drawing the orbital overlap that is at fault. We were fine up to stage 3 (we had no choice till then)—but see what happens if we make the orbitals overlap in a different way.

1. As before.

2. As before.

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way in which the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!).

4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.

5. Label each component s or a depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides.

6. Add up the number of \((4q + 2)_s\) and \((4r)_a\) components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed. There are no \((4q + 2)_s\) components and one \((4r)_a\) component. Total = 1 so this is an allowed reaction.

Now it works! In fact, extension of this reasoning to other electrocyclic reactions tells you that they are all allowed—provided you choose to make the conjugated system react with itself suprafacially for \((4n + 2)\) \(\pi\) systems and antarafacially for \((4n)\) \(\pi\) systems. This may not seem particularly informative, since how you draw the dotted line has no effect on the reaction product in these cases. But it can make a difference. Here is the electrocyclic ring closure of an octatriene, showing the product from (a) suprafacial reaction and (b) antarafacial reaction.
**Conrotatory and disrotatory reactions**

Whether the reaction is supra- or antarafacial ought to be reflected in the relative stereochemistry of the cyclized products—and indeed it is. The reaction above gives solely the diastereoisomer on the left, with the methyl groups syn—clear proof that the reaction is suprafacial. This is a difficult result to explain without the enlightenment provided by the Woodward–Hoffmann rules! This electrocyclic cyclobutene ring opening also gives the product as a single stereoisomer.

![Diagram](image)

Again, if we draw the reverse reaction, we can see that the reaction required has to be antarafacial for the stereochemistry to be right.

We have drawn little green arrows on the diagrams to show how the methyl groups move as the new σ bonds form. For the allowed suprafacial reaction of the 6π electron system they rotate in opposite directions so the reaction is called **disrotatory** (yes, they both go up, but one has to rotate clockwise and one anticlockwise) while for the allowed antarafacial reaction of the 4π electron system they rotate in the same direction so the reaction is called **conrotatory** (both clockwise as drawn, but they might equally well have both gone anticlockwise).

We can sum up the course of all electrocyclic reactions quite simply using these words.

**Rules for electrocyclic reactions**

- All electrocyclic reactions are allowed.
- Thermal electrocyclic reactions involving \((4n + 2)\) π electrons are **disrotatory**.
- Thermal electrocyclic reactions involving \((4n)\) π electrons are **conrotatory**.
- In **conrotatory** reactions the two groups rotate in the same turning sense: both clockwise or both anticlockwise.
- In **disrotatory** reactions, one group rotates clockwise and one anticlockwise.

This rotation is the reason why you must carefully distinguish electrocyclic reactions from all other pericyclic reactions. In cycloadditions and sigmatropic rearrangements there are small rotations as bond angles adjust from 109° to 120° and vice versa, but in electrocyclic reactions rotations of nearly 90° are required as a planar polyene becomes a ring or vice versa. These rules follow directly from application of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules—you can check this for yourself.

**Electroyclic reactions in nature: the endiandric acids**

A beautiful example of electrocyclic reactions at work is provided by the chemistry of the endiandric acids. This family of natural products, of which endiandric acid D is one of the simplest, is remarkable in being racemic—most chiral natural products are enantiomerically pure (or at least enantiomerically enriched) because they are made by enantiomerically pure enzymes (we discuss all this in Chapter 42). So it seemed that the endiandric acids were formed by non-enzymatic cyclization reactions, and in the early 1980s their Australian discoverer, Black, proposed that their biosynthesis might involve a series of electrocyclic reactions, starting from an acyclic polyene precursor.
What made his proposal so convincing was that the stereochemistry of the endiandric acid D is just what you would expect from the requirements of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. The first step from the precursor is an 8π electrocyclic reaction, and would therefore be conrotatory.

This sets up a new 6π system, which can undergo an electrocyclic reaction in disrotatory fashion. Because there are already chiral centres in the molecule, there are, in fact, two possible diastereoisomeric products from this reaction, both arising from disrotatory cyclization. One is endiandric acid D; one is endiandric acid E.

Of course, this was only a hypothesis—until in 1982 K.C. Nicolaou’s group synthesized the proposed endiandric acid precursor polyene—and in one step made both endiandric acids D and E, plus endiandric acid A, which arises from a further pericyclic reaction—an intramolecular Diels–Alder cycloaddi-

**Photochemical electrocyclic reactions**

After your experience with cycloadditions and sigmatropic rearrangements, you will not be surprised to learn that, in photochemical electrocyclic reactions, the rules regarding conrotatory and disrotatory cyclizations are reversed.
We can now go back to the reaction that introduced this section—the photochemical electrocyclic ring opening of ergosterol to give provitamin D$_2$. By looking at the starting material and product we can deduce whether the reaction is conrotatory or disrotatory.

It's clearly conrotatory, and a little more thought will tell you why it has to be—a disrotatory thermal $6\pi$ cyclization would put an impossible trans double bond into one of the two six-membered rings. Vitamin D deficiency is endemic in those parts of the world where sunlight is scarce for many months of the year—and all because of orbital symmetry.

**Cations and anions**

What we have just been telling you should convince you that the two reactions below are electrocyclic reactions, not least because the stereochemistry reverses on going from thermal to photochemical reaction.

They are examples of what is known, after its Russian discoverer, as the Nazarov cyclization. In its simplest form, the Nazarov cyclization is the ring closure of a doubly $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated ketone to give a cyclopentenone. Nazarov cyclizations require acid, and protonation of the ketone sets up the conjugated $\pi$ system required for an electrocyclic reaction.

One of the five $\pi$ orbitals involved is empty—so the cyclization is a $4\pi$ electrocyclic reaction, and the orbitals forming the new $\sigma$ bond must interact antarafacially. Loss of a proton and tautomerism gives the cyclopentenone.
The example below confirms that the reaction is thermally conrotatory and photochemically disrotatory.

Dienyl cations and dienyl anions both undergo electrocyclic ring closure—a nice example occurs when this cyclooctadiene is deprotonated with butyllithium. There are still five $\pi$ orbitals involved in the cyclization, but now there are six $\pi$ electrons, so the reaction is disrotatory.

In this case, it is the conrotatory photochemical cyclization that is prevented by strain (it was tried—cyclooctadienyl anion is stable for at least a week at –78 °C in broad daylight) as the product would be a 5,5 trans-fused system. The same strain prevents thermal electrocyclic ring closure of cyclooctadienyl cations.

All electrocyclic reactions are allowed

It would be a good point here to remind you that, although all electrocyclic reactions are allowed both thermally and photochemically providing the rotation is right, the steric requirements for con- or disrotatory cyclization or ring opening may make one or both modes impossible.

Small rings are opened by electrocyclic reactions

Ring strain is important in preventing a reaction that would otherwise change your view of a lot of the chemistry you know. Allyl cations are conjugated systems containing 2$\pi$ electrons, so if you knew no other chemistry than what is in this chapter you might expect them to cyclize via disrotatory electrocyclic ring closure. The product would be a cyclopropyl cation.

In fact, it is the cyclopropyl cations that undergo this reaction (very readily indeed—cyclopropyl cations are virtually unobservable) because ring strain encourages them to undergo electrocyclic ring opening to give allyl cations. The instability of cyclopropyl cations means that, even as they start to form as intermediates, they spring open to give allyl cation-derived products. Try nucleophilic substitution on a cyclopropane ring and this happens.
Electrocyclic ring opening of one type of three-membered ring tells us about the stereochemistry of the process. Many aziridines are stable compounds, but those bearing electron-withdrawing groups are unstable with respect to electrocyclic ring opening. The products are azomethine ylids and can be trapped by $[3 + 2]$ cycloaddition reactions with dipolarophiles.

Because the cycloaddition is stereospecific (suprafacial on both components), the stereochemistry of the products can tell us the stereochemistry of the intermediate ylid, and confirms that the ring opening is conrotatory (the ylid is a $4\pi$ electron system).

The synthesis of a cockroach pheromone using pericyclic reactions

We finish this pair of chapters about pericyclic reactions with a synthesis whose simplicity is outclassed only by its elegance. Periplanone B is a remarkable bis-epoxide that functions as the sex pheromone of the American cockroach. Insect sex pheromones often have economic importance because they can form the key to remarkably effective traps for insect pests.

In 1984, Schreiber published a synthesis of the pheromone in which the majority of steps involve pericyclic reactions. Make sure you understand each one as it appears—re-read the appropriate part of Chapter 34 or this chapter if you have any problems. The first step is a photochemical $[2 + 2]$ cycloaddition. You could not have predicted the regiochemistry, but it is typical of the cycloaddition of allenes with unsaturated ketones.

The product is a mixture of diastereoisomers because of the chiral centre already in the molecule (ringed in green), but it is, of course, fully stereospecific for the two new orange chiral centres in the four-membered ring. The next step adds vinylmagnesium bromide to the ketone—again a mixture of diastereoisomers results.

All the carbon atoms in the 12-membered ring are now present, and they are sorted out by the two steps that follow. The first is a Cope rearrangement: a $[3,3]$-sigmatropic rearrangement, accelerated as we have described (p. 914) by the presence of an alkoxide substituent.
The six-membered ring has expanded to a ten-membered ring. Now for a second ring-expansion step—heating the compound to 175 °C makes it undergo electrocyclic ring opening of the four-membered ring, giving the 12-membered ring we want. Or rather not quite—the new double bond in the ring is formed as a mixture of cis and trans isomers, but irradiation isomerizes the less stable cis to the more stable trans double bond.

The remaining steps in the synthesis involve the insertion of another Z alkene and two epoxides. Pericyclic reactions are particularly valuable in the synthesis and manipulation of rings.

We must now take our leave of this trio of pericyclic reactions and move on to two reaction classes that have appeared frequently in these two chapters, but that also involve mechanisms other than pericyclic ones and deserve a chapter of their own: rearrangements and fragmentations.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Participation, rearrangement, and fragmentation

Connections

- Building on
  - Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon ch15
  - Conformational analysis ch16
  - Elimination reactions ch17
  - Electrophilic aromatic substitution ch21
  - Controlling stereochemistry ch14, ch32, & ch33
  - Main group chemistry ch27
  - Stereoelectronics ch31
  - Sigmatropic rearrangements ch35

- Arriving at
  - Participation: nucleophiles that are already part of the molecule
  - Participation may mean rearrangement
  - Participating groups can have lone pairs or $\pi$ electrons
  - Carbocations often rearrange by alkyl migration
  - How to work out the mechanism of a rearrangement
  - Ring expansion by rearrangement
  - Using rearrangements in synthesis
  - Insertion of O, N, or C next to a ketone
  - How fragmentation splits molecules into three pieces by C–C bond cleavage
  - Controlling rearrangements and fragmentations
  - Control of fragmentations by stereochemistry

- Looking forward to
  - Carbene chemistry ch38
  - Determination of mechanism ch39
  - The chemistry of life ch42

The last two chapters introduced pericyclic reactions, and the next one will cover reactions of radicals. Together with the ionic reactions which have been the subject of most of this book, these three classes cover all organic mechanisms. But before we move on to consider radicals, we need to fill a gap in our coverage of ionic reactions. You have met the most important types of ionic reactions—additions, substitutions, and eliminations. But two remain and they are closely related. In rearrangements the molecule changes its carbon skeleton and in fragmentations the carbon skeleton splits into pieces. We lead up to these types of reaction by looking at a phenomenon known as participation.

Neighbouring groups can accelerate substitution reactions

Compare the rates of the following substitution reactions. Each is a substitution of the leaving group (OTs or Cl) by solvent, known as a solvolysis.

A solvolysis was defined in Chapter 15 as ‘a reaction in which the solvent is also the nucleophile’.
Nearby groups can evidently increase the rate of substitution reactions significantly. Now, you may be thinking back to Chapter 15 and saying ‘yes, yes, we know that’—when we were discussing the mechanisms of substitution reactions we pointed out that a cation-stabilizing group at the reaction centre makes SN1 reactions very fast, for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{PhS-Cl} & \text{ reacts with water 600 times faster than} \\
\text{Ph-OTs} & \text{ reacts with CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H 3000 times faster than} \\
\text{PhCl} & \text{ reacts with acetic acid 670 times faster than} \\
\text{Ph-OTs} & \text{ reacts with acetic acid 10}^{11} \text{ times faster than}
\end{align*}
\]

In the four examples above, though, it is not at the reaction centre itself that the functional groups change but at the carbon next to the reaction centre, and we call these groups neighboring groups. The mechanism by which they speed up the reactions is known as neighboring group participation. Compare the reaction of this ether and this sulfide with an alcohol.

In both cases, ionization of the starting material is assisted by the lone pair of an electron-rich functional group. The ether in the first example assists by forming a π bond, the sulfide assists by forming a σ bond in a three-membered ring, and a common feature of all mechanisms involving neighbouring group participation is the formation of a cyclic intermediate.

**Stereochemistry can indicate neighbouring group participation**

How do we know that neighbouring group participation is taking place? Well, the first bit of evidence is the increase in rate. The neighbouring groups become involved only if they can increase the rate of the substitution reaction—otherwise the mechanism will just follow the ordinary SN2 pathway. But more important information comes from reactions where stereochemistry is involved, and one of these is the last of the four examples at the start of the chapter. Here it is again in more detail. Not only does the first of these reactions go faster than the second—itits stereochemical course is different too.

Although one starting material has *syn* and the other *anti* stereochemistry, the products have the same (*anti*) stereochemistry one substitution goes with retention and one goes with
inversion. Again, neighbouring group participation is the reason. To explain this, we should first draw the six-membered rings in their real conformation. For the anti compound, both substituents can be equatorial. However, not much can happen in this conformation—but, if we allow the ring to flip, you can see immediately that the acetate substituent is ideally placed to participate in the departure of the tosylate group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{AcO} & \quad \text{OTs} \\
\text{both substituents} & \quad \text{equatorial} \\
\text{ring flip} & \\
\text{both substituents} & \quad \text{axial} \\
\text{symmetrical intermediate} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

What results is an entirely symmetrical intermediate—the positive charge on one of the oxygens is, of course, delocalized over both of them. The intramolecular S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction takes place with inversion, as required by the orbitals, so now the junction of the two rings is cis.

The next step is attack of acetic acid on the intermediate. This is another S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction, which also proceeds with inversion and gives back a trans product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HOAc} & \quad \text{AcO} \\
\text{ring flip} & \\
\text{AcO} & \quad \text{AcO} \\
\text{symmetrical intermediate} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Overall, we have retention of stereochemistry. As you know, S\textsubscript{N}2 reactions go with inversion and S\textsubscript{N}1 reactions with loss of stereochemical information, so this result is possible only if we have two sequential S\textsubscript{N}2 reactions taking place—in other words neighbouring group participation.

Why, then, does the other diastereoisomer react with inversion of stereochemistry? Well, try drawing the mechanism for intramolecular displacement of the tosyl group. Whether you put the tosylate or the acetate group equatorial doesn’t matter; there is no way in which the acetate oxygen's lone pair can reach the \(\sigma^*\) orbital of the tosylate C–O bond.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OTs} & \quad \text{AcO} \\
\text{ring flip} & \\
\text{AcO} & \quad \text{AcO} \\
\text{neighbouring group participation} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Neighbouring group participation is impossible, and substitution goes simply by intermolecular displacement of OTs by AcOH. Just one S\textsubscript{N}2 step means overall inversion of configuration, and no participation means a slower reaction.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{AcO} & \quad \text{HOAc} \\
\text{ring flip} & \\
\text{AcO} & \quad \text{AcO} \\
\text{neighbouring group participation} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Retention of configuration is an indication of neighbouring group participation**

Enantiomerically pure (R)-2-bromopropanoic acid reacts with concentrated sodium hydroxide to give (S)-lactic acid. The reaction goes with inversion and is a typical S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction—and a good one too, since the reaction centre is adjacent to a carbonyl group (see Chapter 15). If, on the other hand, the reaction is run using Ag\textsubscript{2}O and a low concentration of sodium hydroxide, (R)-lactic acid is obtained—there is overall retention of stereochemistry.
Nucleophilic substitution reactions that go with retention of stereochemistry are rather rare and mostly go through two successive inversions with neighbouring group participation, like the example you saw in the last section. This time the neighbouring group is carboxylate: the silver oxide is important because it encourages the ionization of the starting material by acting as a halogen-selective Lewis acid. A three-membered ring intermediate forms, which then gets opened by hydroxide in a second SN₂ step.

Why does the carboxylate group participate only at low HO⁻ concentration and in the presence of Ag⁺? You can think of the situation in these two reactions in terms of the factors that favour SN₁ and SN₂ reactions. In the first, we have conditions suited to an SN₂ reaction: a very good nucleophile (HO⁻) and a good leaving group (Br⁻). Improve the leaving group by adding Ag⁺ (Ag⁺ assists Br⁻'s departure much as H⁺ assists the departure of OH⁻ by allowing it to leave as H₂O) and worsen the nucleophile (H₂O instead of HO⁻, of which there is now only a low concentration), and we have the sorts of conditions that would favour an SN₁ reaction. The trouble is, without neighbouring group participation, the cation here would be rather unstable—right next to a carbonyl group. The carboxylate saves the day by participating in the departure of the Br⁻ and forming the lactone. The key thing to remember is that a reaction always goes by the mechanism with the fastest rate.

What sorts of groups can participate?

You’ve already met the most important ones—sulphides, esters, carboxylates. Ethers and amines (you will see some of these shortly) can also assist substitution reactions through neighbouring group participation. The important thing that they have in common is an electron-rich heteroatom with a lone pair that can be used to form the cyclic intermediate. Sulphides are rather better than ethers—this sulhide reacts with water much faster than n-PrCl but the ether reacts with acetic acid four times more slowly than n-PrOSO₂Ar.

The OMe group slows the reaction down just because it is electronegative more than it accelerates it by participation. A more distant OMe group can participate: this 4-MeO alkyl sulphonate reacts with alcohols 4000 times faster than the n-Bu sulphonate.
Again neighbouring group participation is involved, but this time through a five- rather than a three-membered ring. Participation is most commonly through three- and five-membered rings, less often six-membered ones, and very rarely four- or more than seven-membered ones.

![Diagram of five-membered ring intermediate]

**Mustard gas**

Participation of sulfides through three-membered rings was used to gruesome effect in the development of mustard gas during the Second World War. Mustard gas itself owes its toxicity to the neighbouring group participation of sulfur, which accelerates its alkylation reactions.

![Diagram of mustard gas]

**Not all participating groups have lone pairs**

Another of the four examples we started with shows that even the π electrons of a C=C double bond can participate. Retention of stereochemistry in the product (the starting tosylate and product acetate are both anti to the double bond) and the extremely fast reaction (10^{11} times that of the saturated analogue) are tell-tale signs of neighbouring group participation.

![Diagram of reaction with orbitals involved in π participation]

**What is the structure of the intermediate?**

During the 1950s and 1960s, this sort of question provoked a prolonged and acrimonious debate, which we have no intention of stirring up, and all we will do is point out that the intermediate in this reaction is not fully represented by the structure we have here: it is symmetrical and could be represented by two structures with three-membered rings or by a delocalized structure in which two electrons are shared between three atoms. The difference need not concern us.

![Possible structures for the intermediate]

Finally, an example with a neighbouring phenyl group. Participation is suggested by the retention of relative stereochemistry.

![Diagram of reaction with phenyl group]

Again, π electrons are involved, but the reaction is now electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 21) rather like an intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation with a delocalized intermediate often termed a phenonium ion.
More stereochemical consequences of neighbouring group participation

The phenonium ion is symmetrical. The acetic acid can attack either atom in the three-membered ring to give the same product.

The phenonium ion is nonetheless still chiral, since it has an axis (and not a plane or centre) of symmetry, so if we use an enantiomerically pure starting material we get an enantiomerically pure product.

Not so with the other diastereoisomer of this compound! Now, the phenonium ion is symmetrical with a plane of symmetry—it is therefore achiral, and the same whichever enantiomer we start from. Attack on each end of the phenonium ion gives a different enantiomer, so whichever enantiomer of starting material we use we get the same racemic mixture of products. You can compare this reaction with the loss of stereochemical information that occurs during an $S_N1$ reaction of enantiomerically pure compounds. Both reactions pass through an achiral intermediate.

There is a subtlety here that you should not overlook and that makes this study, which was carried out by Cram in 1949, exceedingly elegant. Reactions of both of these diastereoisomers are stereospecific: the relative stereochemistry of the products depends on the relative stereochemistry of the starting materials. Yet, while the absolute stereochemistry of the starting materials is retained in one case (we get a single enantiomer of a single diastereoisomer), it is lost in the other (we get a racemic mixture of both enantiomers of a single diastereoisomer). These are important distinctions, and if you are in any doubt about these terms, re-read Chapters 14 and 33. Donald Cram (1919–2001) of UCLA was awarded the Nobel prize in 1987 jointly with Jean-Marie Lehn (1939–) of Strasbourg and Paris, and Charles Pedersen (a Norwegian born in Korea in 1904) of DuPont for ‘their development and use of molecules with structure-specific interactions of high selectivity’.
The same loss of absolute stereochemical information (but retention of relative stereochemistry) occurs in another reaction that you met at the start of this chapter. We then emphasized two features: the acceleration in rate and the retention of stereochemistry.

\[ \text{anti diastereoisomer} \rightarrow \text{AcOH} \rightarrow \text{anti diastereoisomer} \]

The intermediate oxonium ion is delocalized and achiral. If a single enantiomer of the starting material is used, racemic product is formed through this achiral intermediate. Attack at one carbon atom gives one enantiomer; attack at the other gives the mirror image.

\[ \text{AcOH} \rightarrow \text{(+) the other enantiomer of the anti diastereoisomer} \]

In this case the neighbouring group can be caught in the act—when the rearrangement is carried out in ethanol, the intermediate is trapped by attack at the central carbon atom. It is as though someone switched the light on while the acetate’s fingers were in the biscuit tin. The product is an orthoester and is achiral too. This chemistry should remind you of the formation of acetals, as described in Chapter 11.

\[ \text{anti diastereoisomer} \rightarrow \text{EtOH} \rightarrow \text{51% yield} \]

**Rearrangements occur when a participating group ends up bonded to a different atom**

Because the intermediates in these examples are symmetrical, 50% of the time one substituent ends up moving from one carbon atom to another during the reaction. This is clearer in the following example: the starting material is prepared such that the carbon atom carrying the phenyl group is an unusual isotope—carbon-14. This doesn’t affect the chemistry, but means that the two carbon atoms are easily distinguishable. Reacting the compound with trifluoroacetic acid scrambles the label between the two positions: the intermediate is symmetrical and, in the 50% of reactions with the nucleophile that take place at the labelled carbon atom, the phenyl ends up migrating to the unlabelled carbon atom in a rearrangement reaction.

\[ \text{14C label} \rightarrow \text{RCO2H} \rightarrow \text{unrearranged product} \rightarrow \text{rearranged product} \]

Now, consider this substitution reaction, in which OH replaces Cl but with a change in the molecular structure. The substitution goes with complete rearrangement—the amine ends up attached to a different carbon atom. We can easily see why if we look at the mechanism. The reaction starts off looking like a neighbouring group participation of the sort you are now familiar with (the carbon atoms are numbered for identification).
The intermediate is an aziridinium ion (aziridines are three-membered rings containing nitrogen—the nitrogen analogues of epoxides). The hydroxide ion chooses to attack only the less hindered terminal carbon 1, and a rearrangement results—the amine has migrated from carbon 1 to carbon 2.

We should just pause here for a moment to consider why this rearrangement works. We start with a secondary alkyl chloride that contains a very bad leaving group (Et₂N) and a good one (Cl⁻)—but the good one is hard for HO⁻ to displace because it is at a secondary centre (remember—secondary alkyl halides are slow to react by SN₁ or SN₂). But the NEt₂ can participate to make an aziridinium intermediate—now there is a good leaving group (RNEt₂ without the negative charge) at the primary as well as the secondary carbon, so HO⁻ does a fast SN₂ reaction at the primary carbon.

Another way to look at this reaction is to see that the good internal nucleophile Et₂N will compete successfully for the electrophile with the external nucleophile HO⁻. Intramolecular reactions are usually faster than bimolecular reactions.

The Payne rearrangement

The reaction of an epoxy alcohol in base does not always give the expected product.
Now we do have a reactive, primary electrophilic site, which undergoes an $S_N2$ reaction with the $t$-BuS$^-$ under the conditions of the rearrangement. Notice how the black OH, which started on the carbon labelled 1, has ended up on carbon 2.

**The direction of rearrangement can depend on the nucleophile**

Compare these reactions: you saw the first on p. 938 but the second is new.

In the first reaction, the amine migrates from the primary to the secondary position; in the other from secondary to primary. Both go through very similar aziridinium intermediates, so the difference must be due to the regioselectivity with which this aziridinium ion opens in each case.

The only important difference is the nucleophile used in the reaction. Hydroxide opens the aziridinium at the less hindered end; water opens the aziridinium ion at the more hindered (more substituted) end. Why?

We can think of the aziridinium ion as a compound containing two alternative leaving groups—one from a primary centre and one from a secondary one. Primary centres can take part in fast $S_N2$ reactions, but cannot undergo $S_N1$. Secondary centres can undergo either $S_N1$ or $S_N2$ reactions, but, in general, do neither very well. Now, the rate of an $S_N2$ reaction depends on the nucleophile, so a good nucleophile (like HO$^-$) can do fast $S_N2$ reactions, while a bad one (like H$_2$O) cannot. The fastest reaction HO$^-$ can do then is $S_N2$ at the primary centre (remember: you see only the reaction that goes by the fastest mechanism). Water, on the other hand, takes part only reluctantly in substitution reactions—but this does not matter if they are $S_N1$ reactions because their rates are independent of nucleophile. H$_2$O waits until the leaving group has left of its own accord to give a cation, which rapidly grabs *any* nucleophile—water will do just as well as HO$^-$. This can happen only at the secondary centre because the primary cation is too unstable to form.

All the rearrangements you have met so far occurred during substitution reactions. All happened because reaction *with* rearrangement is faster than reaction *without* rearrangement—in other words, rearrangement occurs because of a kinetic preference for the rearrangement pathway. You could see these reactions as ‘special case’ examples of neighbouring group participation—in both participation and rearrangement the neighbouring group speeds up the
reaction, but in rearrangement reactions the neighbouring group gets rather more than it bargained for, and ends up elsewhere in the molecule. Both proceed through a cyclic transition state or intermediate, and it is simply the way in which that transition state or intermediate collapses that determines whether rearrangement occurs.

Rearrangement can involve migration of alkyl groups

This example is a nucleophilic substitution under conditions (Ag\(^+\), H\(_2\)O) designed to encourage \(S_n1\) reactions (excellent leaving group, poor nucleophile). First of all, this is what does not happen (and indeed without Ag\(^+\) nothing happens at all).

\[
\text{I} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{AgNO}_3, \text{H}_2\text{O}} \quad \text{OH}
\]

Compounds like this, with a \(t\)-butyl group next to the electrophilic centre, are notoriously slow to undergo substitution reactions. They can’t do \(S_n2\), they are too hindered; they can’t do \(S_n1\), the cation you would get is primary. In fact, a rearrangement occurs. One of the methyl groups moves (‘migrates’) from carbon 2 to carbon 1, the new OH group taking its place at carbon 2.

How has this happened? Well, firstly, our principle (p. 934) tells us that it has happened because \(S_n1\) and \(S_n2\) are both so slow that this new rearrangement mechanism is faster than either. Adding Ag\(^+\) makes \(\text{I}^-\) desperate to leave, but unassisted this would mean the formation of a primary carbocation. The molecule does the only thing it can to stop this happening and uses the electrons in an adjacent C–C bond to assist the departure of \(\text{I}^-\). Having participated, the methyl group continues to migrate to carbon 1 because by doing so it allows the formation of a stable tertiary carbocation, which then captures water in a step reminiscent of the second half of an \(S_n1\) reaction. Note the cyclic transition state where the migrating group is partially bonded to two carbon atoms.

In the migration step we used a slightly unusually S-shaped curly arrow to represent the movement of a group (Me) along a bond taking its bonding electrons with it. We shall use this type of arrow when a group migrates from one atom to another during a rearrangement.

Carbocations readily rearrange

In Chapter 15 we showed you that it is possible to run the NMR spectra of carbocations by using a polar but non-nucleophilic solvent such as liquid SO\(_2\) or SOCl\(_2\). Treating an alkyl halide \(RX\) with the powerful Lewis acid Sb\(_2\)F\(_5\) under these conditions gives a solution of carbocation: the carbocation reacts neither with solvent nor the Sb\(_2\)F\(_5\)\(^-\) counterion because neither is nucleophilic. We know, for example, that the chemical shifts in both the \(\delta^1^C\) and \(\delta^1^H\) NMR spectra of the \(t\)-butyl cation are very large, particularly the \(\delta^1^C\) shift at the positively charged centre.
NMR can be used to follow the course of rearrangement reactions involving carbocations too. We can illustrate this with an experiment that tries to make the neopentyl cation by the substitution reaction you have just seen. This time the starting material and solvent are slightly different, but the outcome is nonetheless most revealing. Dissolving neopentyl tosylate in fluorosulfonic acid (a strong, non-nucleophilic acid) at –77°C gives a 77% yield of a cation whose spectrum is shown below. Assigning the peaks is not hard once you know that the same spectrum is obtained when 2,2-dimethyl-2-butanol is dissolved in fluorosulfonic acid with SbF₅ added.

Clearly, the spectrum is the tertiary 2-methylbutyl cation and the neopentyl cation never saw the light of day. The reaction is the same rearrangement that you saw in the substitution reaction of neopentyl iodide, but here the rate of rearrangement can be measured and it is extremely fast. Neopentyl tosylate reacts to form a cation under these conditions about 10⁴ times as fast as ethyl tosylate, even though both tosylates are primary. This massive rate difference shows that if migration of an alkyl group can allow rearrangement to a more stable carbocation, it will happen, and happen rapidly.

Primary cations can never be observed by NMR—they are too unstable. But secondary cations can, provided the temperature is kept low enough. sec-Butyl chloride in SO₂ClF at –78°C gives a stable, observable cation. But, as the cation is warmed up, it rearranges to the t-butyl cation. Now this rearrangement truly is a carbocation rearrangement: the starting material is an observable carbocation and so is the product, and we should just look at the mechanism in a little more detail.

With rearrangements like this it is best to number the C atoms so you can see clearly what moves where. If we do this, we see that the methyl group we have labelled 4 and the H on C₃ have changed places. (Note that C₃ starts off as a CH₂ group and ends up as CH₃.)

Top tip for rearrangements
Number the carbon atoms in the starting material and product before you try to work out the mechanism.

Using the sort of arrows we introduced on p. 940, we can draw a mechanism for this in which first the Me migrates, and then the hydride. We say hydride migration rather than hydrogen (or proton) because the H atom migrates with its pair of electrons.

As these rearrangements are a new type of reaction, we should just spend a moment looking at the molecular orbitals that are involved. For the first step, migration of the methyl group,
the LUMO must clearly be the empty p orbital of the cation, and the HOMO is the C–C σ bond, which is about to break.

The methyl group can slide smoothly from one orbital to another—there are bonding interactions all the way. The next step, migration of H, is just the same—except that the HOMO is now a C–H σ bond. The methyl migration is thermodynamically unfavourable as it transforms a secondary cation into an unstable primary cation but the hydride migration puts that right as it gives a stable tertiary cation. The whole reaction is under thermodynamic control.

**Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements**

Carbocation rearrangements involving migration of H or alkyl groups don’t just happen in NMR machines. They happen during normal reactions too. For example, acid-catalysed dehydration of the natural product camphenilol gives the alkene santene (a key component of the fragrance of sandalwood oil) in a reaction involving migration of a methyl group.

The mechanism shows why the rearrangement happens: the first-formed cation cannot eliminate H⁺ in an E1 reaction because loss of the only available proton would give a very strained bridgehead alkene (make a model and see!).

However, migration of a methyl group both stabilizes the cation—it becomes tertiary instead of secondary—and allows E1 elimination of H⁺ to take place to give a stable alkene.

The migration of an alkyl group to a cationic centre is known as a Wagner–Meerwein rearrangement or Wagner–Meerwein shift, and this migration is, of course, a synthetic manifestation of the rearrangement we have just been looking at in NMR spectra. Wagner–Meerwein shifts have been studied extensively in the class of natural products to which both of these natural products belong—terpenes. For the moment, though, we will just illustrate this type of reaction with one more example—another acid-catalysed dehydration, of isoborneol to give camphene.
This one seems much more complicated—but, in fact, only one alkyl migration is involved. To see what has happened, remember the ‘top tip’—number the carbons. You can number the starting material any way you choose—we’ve started with the gem-dimethyl group because it will be easy to spot in the product. The numbers just follow round the ring, with C8 being the methyl group attached to C5.

Now for the hard bit—we need to work out which carbon in the starting material becomes which carbon in the product. The best thing is just to have a go—mistakes will soon become obvious and you can always try again.

- Use the substituents to help you—some will have changed, but most will be the same or similar, for example C1 is still easy to spot as the carbon carrying the dimethyl group.
- Use connectivity to help you—again, a C–C bond or two may have broken or formed, but most of the C–C bonds in the starting material will be there in the product. C1 and C2 will probably still be next door to one another—C2 was a bridgehead carbon in the starting material, and there is a bridgehead C attached to C1 in the product; assume that’s C2.
- C3 and C4 were unsubstituted carbons in the starting material, and are identifiable in the product too. The other easily spotted atom is C7—an unsubstituted C attached to C2.
- C5, C6, and C8 are harder. We can assume that C8 is the =CH₂ carbon—it was a methyl group but perhaps has become involved in an elimination. C5 was attached to C1, C4, C6, and C8: one of the remaining carbons is attached to C1 and C8, so that seems more likely to be C5, which leaves C6 as the bridgehead, attached as before to C7 and C5.

Now we have the whole picture and we can assess what has happened in the reaction—which old bonds have broken and which new bonds have formed.

Numbering the atoms this way identifies the likely point of rearrangement—the only bond broken is between C4 and C5. Instead we have a new one between C4 and C6: C4 appears to have migrated from C5 to C6.

Now for the mechanism. The first step will, of course, be loss of water to generate a secondary cation at C6. The cation is next to a quaternary centre, and migration of any of three bonds could generate a more stable tertiary carbocation. But we know that the new bond in the product is between C4 and C6, so let’s migrate carbon 4. Manipulating the diagrams a bit turns up a structure remarkably similar to our product, and all we need to do is lose a proton from C8.
Although migration of an alkyl group that forms part of a ring leads to much more significant changes in structure than simple migration of a methyl group, the reason why it happens is still just the same.

- **Alkyl migrations occur in order to make a carbocation more stable.**

### Ring expansion means rearrangement

‘More stable’ usually means ‘more substituted’, but cations can also be made more stable if they become less strained. So, for example, four-membered rings adjacent to cations readily rearrange to five-membered rings in order to relieve ring strain.

This time the cation is formed by protonation of an alkene, not departure of a leaving group, but writing a mechanism should now be a straightforward matter to you.

Although the rearrangement step transforms a stable tertiary cation into a less stable secondary cation, relief of strain in expansion from a four- to a five-membered ring makes the alkyl migration favourable. A synthesis of the natural product α-caryophyllene alcohol makes use of a similar ring expansion. Notice the photochemical [2 + 2] cycloaddition (Chapter 34) in the synthesis of the starting material.

Rearrangement of this tertiary alcohol in acid gives the target natural product. The four-membered ring has certainly disappeared but it may not be obvious at first what has taken its place.

As usual, numbering the atoms makes clear what has happened: carbon 7 has migrated from carbon 6 to carbon 5. Loss of water gives a tertiary carbocation that undergoes rearrangement to a secondary carbocation with expansion of a four- to a five-membered ring.
Carbocation rearrangements: blessing or curse?

Well, that depends. You have now seen a few useful carbocation rearrangements that give single products in high yield. But you have also met at least one reaction that cannot be done because of carbocation rearrangements: as we mentioned in Chapter 15, Friedel–Crafts alkylation using primary alkyl halides leads to products derived from rearranged cations. The alkylation in the margin illustrates the problems of trying to use carbocation rearrangements to make single products in high yield. We can give three guidelines to spotting this type of reaction.

1. The rearrangement must be fast so that other reactions do not compete.
2. The product cation must be sufficiently more stable than the starting one so that the rearrangement happens in high yield.
3. Subsequent trapping of the product cation must be reliable: cations are high-energy intermediates, and are therefore unselective about how they react.

A reaction is no good if the cation reacts in more than one way—it may react with a nucleophile, eliminate, or undergo further rearrangement—but it must do only one of these! For the rest of the chapter, we will address only reactions that, unlike this Friedel–Crafts reaction, follow these guidelines. The reactions we will talk about all happen in good yield.

The pinacol rearrangement

When the 1,2-diol pinacol is treated with acid, a rearrangement takes place.

Whenever you see a rearrangement, especially in acid, you should now think ‘carbocation’. Here, protonation of one of the hydroxyl groups allows it to leave as water, giving the carbocation.

You now know that carbocations rearrange by alkyl shifts to get as stable as they can be—but this carbocation is already tertiary, and there is no ring strain, so why should it rearrange? Well, here we have another source of electrons to stabilize the carbocation: lone pairs on an oxygen atom. We pointed out early in the chapter that oxygen is very good at stabilizing a positive charge on an adjacent atom, and somewhat less good at stabilizing a positive charge two atoms away. By rearranging, the first-formed carbocation gets the positive charge into a position where the oxygen can stabilize it, and loss of a proton from oxygen then gives a stable ketone.
You can view the pinacol as a rearrangement with a ‘push’ and a ‘pull’. The carbocation left by the departure of water ‘pulls’ the migrating group across at the same time as the oxygen’s lone pair ‘pushes’ it. A particularly valuable type of pinacol rearrangement forms spirocyclic ring systems. You may find this one harder to follow, although the mechanism is identical with that of the last example. Our ‘top tip’ of numbering the atoms should help you to see what has happened: atom 2 has migrated from atom 1 to atom 6.

When drawing the mechanism it doesn’t matter which hydroxyl group you protonate or which adjacent C–C bond migrates—they are all the same. One five-membered ring expands to a six-membered ring but the reason this reaction happens is the formation of a carbonyl group, as in all pinacol rearrangements.

Epoxides rearrange with Lewis acids in a pinacol fashion

The intermediate cation in a pinacol rearrangement can equally well be formed from an epoxide, and treating epoxides with acid, including Lewis acids such as MgBr₂, promotes the same type of reaction.

Rearrangement of epoxides with magnesium salts means that opening epoxides with Grignard reagents can give surprising results.

The alkyllithium reaction is quite straightforward as long as the alkyllithium is free of lithium salts. A clue to what has happened with the Grignard reagents comes from the fact that treating this epoxide with just MgBr₂ (not RMgBr) gives an aldehyde.

With a Grignard reagent, rearrangement occurs faster than addition to the epoxide, and then the Grignard reagent adds to the aldehyde.
**Some pinacol rearrangements have a choice of migrating group**

With these symmetrical diols and epoxides, it does not matter which hydroxyl group is protonated and leaves, nor which end the epoxide opens, nor which group migrates. When an unsymmetrical diol or epoxide rearranges, it is important which way the reaction goes. Usually, the reaction leaves behind the more stable cation. So, for example, this unsymmetrical diol gives the ring-expanded ketone, a starting material for the synthesis of analogues of the drug methadone.

This product is formed because the green OH group leaves more readily than the black as the carbocation stabilized by two phenyl groups forms more readily than the carbocation stabilized by two alkyl groups. The migration step which follows has no choice: both alkyl groups on the black alcohol are the same.

Most unsymmetrical diols or epoxides give mixtures of products on rearrangement. The problem is that there is a choice of two leaving groups and two alternative rearrangement directions, and only for certain substitution patterns is the choice clear-cut.

**Semipinacol rearrangements are pinacol reactions with no choice about which way to go**

For some work on perfumery compounds, this seven-membered cyclic ketone was needed. A reasonable starting material to use is the diol shown because it can be made in two steps from the natural product isonopinone.

The reaction needed for the last stage is a pinacol rearrangement—the primary hydroxyl group needs persuading to leave as the ring expands. The problem is, of course, that the tertiary hydroxyl group is much more likely to leave since it leaves behind a more stable carbocation.

The solution to this problem is to force the primary hydroxyl group to be the leaving group by making it into a tosylate. The primary hydroxyl group reacts more rapidly with TsCl than the tertiary one because it is less hindered. A weak base is now all that is needed to make the compound rearrange in what is known as a semipinacol rearrangement.
Semipinacol rearrangements are rearrangements in which a hydroxyl group provides the electrons to ‘push’ the migrating group across, but the ‘pull’ comes from the departure of leaving groups other than water—tosylate in this example, but typically also halide or nitrogen (N₂). Since tosylation occurs at the less hindered hydroxyl group of a diol, not only can semipinacol rearrangements be more regioselective than pinacol rearrangements, but their regioselectivity may be in the opposite direction.

Corey exploited this in a synthesis of the natural product longifolene. He needed to persuade an easily made 6,6-fused ring system to undergo rearrangement to a ring-expanded ketone. Again, a normal acid-catalysed pinacol rearrangement is no good—the tertiary, allylic hydroxyl group is much more likely to ionize, and the acid-sensitive protecting group would be hydrolysed too. Tosylation of the secondary alcohol in the presence of the tertiary is possible, and semipinacol rearrangement gives the required ketone.

The leaving group need not be tosylate: in the following example, part of a synthesis of bergamotene (a component of valerian root oil and the aroma of Earl Grey tea), a 2-iodo alcohol rearranges.

**Semipinacol rearrangements of diazonium salts**

You saw in Chapter 21 how aromatic amines can be converted to diazonium salts by treatment with acidic sodium nitrite.

[Treating 2-halo alcohols with base is, of course, a good way to make epoxides. Using AgNO₃ to improve iodide’s leaving ability without increasing the nucleophilicity of the hydroxyl group favours rearrangement at the expense of epoxide formation. There would certainly be a danger of epoxide formation in strong base.](#)

[It might be an idea to review pp. 520–523 of Chapter 22 to be sure you understand the mechanism of this reaction.](#)
Aryldiazonium salts are stable but alkyldiazonium salts are not: nitrogen gas is the world’s best leaving group, and, when it goes it leaves behind a carbocation.

\[
\text{R} = \text{alkyl} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{NaNO}_2, \text{HCl} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\cdot \text{N} \\
\cdot \text{N} \\
\cdot \text{Cl}
\end{array}
\end{array} \quad R^\ominus \quad \text{further reactions}
\]

One of the ‘further reactions’ this carbocation can undergo is rearrangement. If the starting amine is a 2-amino alcohol, the cation can be stabilized by a semipinacol rearrangement.

While alkyldiazonium salts are unstable, their conjugate bases, diazoalkanes, are stable enough to be prepared and are nucleophilic towards carbonyl compounds. Diazoalkanes are neutral compounds having one fewer proton than diazonium salts, and are delocalized structures with a central sp nitrogen atom.

When diazomethane (a compound we will investigate in more detail in Chapter 38) adds to a ketone, the product undergoes a ring expansion by rearrangement of the same type of intermediate.

The problem with reactions like this is that both the starting material and product are ketones, so they work cleanly only if the starting material is more reactive than the product. Cyclohexanone is more reactive as an electrophile than either cyclopentanone or cycloheptanone, so it ring expands cleanly to cycloheptanone. But expansion of cyclopentanone to cyclohexanone is messy and gives a mixture of products.

**The dienone-phenol rearrangement**

The female sex hormone oestrone is the metabolic product of another hormone, progesterone, itself made in the body from cholesterol.

Oestrone lacks one of progesterone’s methyl groups, probably removed in the body as CO₂ after oxidation. In 1946, Carl Djerassi, a man whose work led directly to the invention of the contraceptive pill, showed that another derivative of cholesterol could be rearranged to the oestrone analogue 1-methyloestradiol—notice how the methyl group has this time migrated to an adjacent carbon atom. At the same time, the dienone has become a phenol.
This type of rearrangement is known helpfully as a dienone-phenol rearrangement, and we can consider it quite simply as a type of reverse pinacol rearrangement. Pinacol and semipinacol rearrangements are driven by the formation of a carbonyl group. The rearranged cation is stabilized by being next to oxygen and it can rapidly lose H\(^+\) to give a carbonyl compound. In the key step of a dienone-phenol rearrangement, a protonated carbonyl compound rearranges to a tertiary carbocation. The reaction is driven from dienone to phenol because the product cation can rapidly undergo elimination of H\(^+\) to become aromatic.

The benzilic acid rearrangement

You have seen rearrangements in which carbonyl groups form at the migration origin: the migrating group in the pinacol and semipinacol rearrangements is ‘pushed’ by the oxygen’s lone pair as it forms the new carbonyl group. You have also seen carbonyl groups being destroyed at the migration terminus: the migrating group in the dienone-phenol rearrangement is ‘pulled’ towards the protonated carbonyl group. The first rearrangement reaction ever to be described has both of these at once.

In 1838, Justus von Liebig found that treating ‘benzil’ (1,2-diphenylethan-1,2-dione) with hydroxide gave, after acid quench, 2-hydroxy-2,2-diphenylacetic acid, which he called ‘benzilic acid’. The mechanism of this benzilic acid rearrangement starts with attack of hydroxide on one of the carbonyl groups. The tetrahedral intermediate can collapse in a reaction reminiscent of a semipinacol rearrangement.

The Favorskii rearrangement

We hope you have appreciated the smooth mechanistic progression so far in this chapter, from Wagner–Meerwein to pinacol and semipinacol through dienone-phenol to benzilic acid.
Our aim is to help you gain an overall view of the types of rearrangements that take place (and why) and not to present you with lots of disconnected facts. It is at this point, however, that our mechanistic journey takes a hairpin bend. The bend comes as a surprise because when we show you the next rearrangement, the Favorskii, you would be forgiven for thinking that surely it’s just a variant of the benzilic acid rearrangement?

Well, this is what chemists thought until 1944, when some American chemists found that two isomeric α-chloro ketones gave exactly the same product on treatment with methoxide. They suggested that both reactions went through the same intermediate.

There is also a pericyclic mechanism for the ring-closure step. The enolate simply loses chloride to give an ‘oxyallyl cation’—a dipolar species with an oxyanion and a delocalized allylic cation. This species can cyclize in a two-electron disrotatory electrocyclic reaction (Chapter 35) to give the same cyclopropanone.

Cyclopropanones are very reactive towards nucleophiles, and the tetrahedral intermediate arising from the attack of methoxide springs open to give the ester product. The more stable carbanion leaves: although the carbanion is not actually formed as a free species, there must be considerable negative charge at the carbon atom as the three-membered ring opens. Here the benzyl group is the better leaving group.
Favorskii rearrangement of cyclic 2-bromoketones leads to ring contraction and this has become one of the most fruitful uses of the rearrangement in synthesis. Bromination of cyclohexanone (Chapter 20) and treatment with methoxide gives the methyl ester of cyclopentane carboxylic acid in good yield.

Enolization occurs on the side of the ketone away from the bromine atom and the enolate cyclizes as before but the cyclopropanone intermediate is symmetrical so that the product is the same whichever C–C bond breaks after nucleophilic attack by the methoxide ion.

Cubane from a Favorskii rearrangement

In 1964, two American chemists synthesized for the first time a remarkable molecule, cubane. Two of the key steps were Favorskii rearrangements, which allowed the chemists to contract five-membered rings to four-membered rings. Here is one of them. Two more steps decarboxylate the product to give cubane itself.

The overall consequence of the Favorskii rearrangement is that an alkyl group is transferred from one side of a carbonyl group to the other. This means that it can be used to build up heavily branched esters and carboxylic acids—the sort that are hard to make by alkylation (Chapter 25) because of the problems of hindered enolates and unreactive secondary alkyl halides. Heavily substituted acids, where CO₂H is attached to a tertiary carbon atom, would be hard to make by any other method.

The Favorskii rearrangement is also a key step in the synthesis of the powerful obstetric painkiller pethidine. But try writing a mechanism for this last reaction and you run into a problem—there are no acidic protons so the ketone cannot be enolized! Yet the Favorskii rearrangement still works. Despite our warnings against confusing the mechanisms of the Favorskii and benzilic acid rearrangements, the Favorskii rearrangement may, in fact, follow a benzilic-type rearrangement mechanism, if there are no acidic hydrogens available.
Migration to oxygen: the Baeyer–Villiger reaction

In 1899, two Germans, A. Baeyer and V. Villiger, found that treating a ketone with a peracid (RCO₂H) can produce an ester. An oxygen atom is ‘inserted’ next to the carbonyl group. You saw a similar ‘insertion’ reaction earlier in the chapter, and the mechanism here is not dissimilar.

Both peracids and diazomethane contain a nucleophilic centre that carries a good leaving group, and addition of peracid to the carbonyl group gives a structure that should remind you of a semipinacol intermediate with one of the carbon atoms replaced by oxygen.

Carboxylates are not such good leaving groups as nitrogen, but the oxygen–oxygen single bond is very weak. Once the peracid has added, loss of carboxylate is concerted with a rearrangement driven by formation of a carbonyl group.

Baeyer–Villiger reactions are among the most useful of all rearrangement reactions, and the most common reagent is m-CPBA (meta-chloroperbenzoic acid) because it is commercially available.

Which group migrates? (I): the facts

A question we have deliberately avoided up to this point is this: when there is a competition between two migrating groups, which group migrates? This question arises in pinacol, semipinacol, and dienone-phenol rearrangements and in Baeyer–Villiger reactions (in the benzilic acid and Favorskii rearrangements, there is no choice) and the awkward fact is that the answer is different in each case! However, let’s start with the Baeyer–Villiger reaction because here the question is always valid except when the ketone being oxidized is symmetrical. Here are some examples; you can probably begin to draw up guidelines for yourself.
The order, with tert-alkyl the best at migrating, then sec-alkyl closely followed by Ph, then Et, then Me, very roughly follows the order in which the groups are able to stabilize a positive charge. Primary groups are much more reluctant to undergo migration than secondary ones or aryl groups, and this makes regioselective Baeyer–Villiger reactions possible.

The Baeyer–Villiger reaction has solved a regioselectivity problem here. L-tyrosine, a relatively cheap amino acid, can be converted to the important drug L-dopa provided it can be hydroxylated ortho to the OH group. This is where electrophilic substitutions of the phenol take place, but electrophilic substitutions with ‘HO⁺’ are not possible. However, after a Friedel–Crafts acylation, the acyl group can be converted to hydroxyl by the Baeyer–Villiger reaction and hydrolysis. The Baeyer–Villiger reaction means that MeCO⁺ can be used as a synthetic equivalent for ‘HO⁺’. Note the unusual use of the less reactive H₂O₂ as oxidizing agent in this reaction. This is possible only when the migrating group is an electron-rich aromatic ring; these reactions are sometimes called Dakin reactions.

**Unsaturated ketones may epoxidize or undergo Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement**

Peracids may epoxidize alkenes faster than ketones take part in Baeyer–Villiger reactions, so unsaturated ketones are not often good substrates for Baeyer–Villiger reactions. The balance is rather delicate. The two factors that matter are: how electrophilic is the ketone and how nucleophilic is the alkene? You might like to consider why this reaction does work, and why the C=O double bond here is particularly unreactive.

Small-ring ketones can relieve ring strain by undergoing Baeyer–Villiger reactions—this cyclobutanone (an intermediate in a synthesis of the perfumery compound cis-jasmone) is
made by a ketene [2 + 2] cycloaddition, and is so reactive that it needs only H₂O₂ to rearrange. Unlike CF₃CO₂H or m-CPBA, H₂O₂ will not epoxidize double bonds unless they are electron-deficient (see Chapter 22).

One point to note about both of the last two reactions is that the insertion of oxygen goes with retention of stereochemistry. You may think this is unsurprising in a cyclic system like this and, indeed, the first of the two cannot possibly go with inversion. However, this is a general feature of Baeyer–Villiger reactions, even when inversion would give a more stable product.

Even when you might imagine that racemization would occur, as in this benzylic ketone, retention is the rule.

By looking at the orbitals involved, you can see why this must be so. The sp³ orbital of the migrating carbon just slips from one orbital to the next with the minimum amount of structural reorganization. The large lobe of the sp³ orbital is used so the new bond forms to the same face of the migrating group as the old one, and stereochemistry is retained.

The orbital interactions in all 1,2-migrations are similar, and the migrating group retains its stereochemistry in these too. In the more familiar S₅2 reaction, inversion occurs because the antibonding σ* orbital rather than the bonding σ orbital is used. In the S₅2 reaction, carbon undergoes nucleophilic attack with inversion; in rearrangements the migrating carbon atom undergoes electrophilic attack with retention of configuration.

- In 1,2-migrations, the migrating group retains its stereochemistry.

Which group migrates? (II): the reasons

Why does the more substituted group migrate in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction? The transition state has a positive charge spread out over the molecule as the carboxylate leaves as an anion. If the migrating group can take some responsibility for the positive charge the transition state will be more stable. The more stable the charge, the faster the rearrangement.
When a benzene ring migrates, π participation is involved as the benzene ring acts as a nucleophile and the positive charge can be spread out even further. Note that the Ph is stabilizing the charge here in the way that it stabilizes the intermediate in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction—like a pentadienyl cation rather than like a benzylic cation. What was a transition state in alkyl migration becomes an intermediate in phenyl migration.

The situation in other rearrangements is much more complicated—and indeed more complicated than many textbooks would have you believe. We shall look just briefly at the dienone-phenol rearrangement again, this time considering reactions in which there is competition between two different migrating groups. As in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, the transition state is cationic, so you would expect cation-stabilizing groups to migrate more readily. This appears to be true for Ph versus Me, but is most definitely not true for Ph versus CO₂Et. The cation destabilizing group CO₂Et migrates even though Ph is much better at stabilizing a positive charge!

The reason is that CO₂Et is so cation destabilizing that it prefers to migrate rather than be left behind next door to a cation. In this case, then, it is the cation-stabilizing ability of the group that does not migrate that matters most.

**Which group migrates? (III): stereochemistry matters too**

Selectivity in rearrangement reactions is affected by the electronic nature of both the group that migrates and the group that is left behind. But there is more! Stereochemistry is important too. The outcome of diazotization and semipinacol rearrangement (Tiffeneau–Demjanov
rearrangement, p. 949) of this amino-alcohol depends entirely on the diastereoisomer you start with. There are four diastereoisomers, and we have drawn each one in the only conformation it can reasonably adopt, with the t-butyl group equatorial.

In all of these reactions, the OH group provides the electronic ‘push’. In the first two reactions, the ring contracts by an alkyl migration from the secondary alcohol, while in the third it is H that migrates from the same position.

The only difference between the compounds is stereochemistry and, if we look at the orbitals involved in the reactions, we can see why this is so important. As the $\text{N}_2$ leaving group departs, electrons in the bond to the migrating group have to flow into the C–N $\sigma^*$ orbital—we discussed this on p. 949. But what we didn’t talk about then was the fact that best overlap between these two orbitals (\(\sigma\) and $\sigma^*$) occurs if they are anti-periplanar to one another—just as in an E2 elimination reaction.

For the first two compounds, with the –$\text{N}_2^+$ group equatorial, the group best placed to migrate is the alkyl group that forms the ring; for the third reaction, there is a hydrogen atom anti-periplanar to the leaving group, so H migrates.

The fourth reaction has, rather than a group that might migrate, the hydroxyl group ideally placed to displace $\text{N}_2$ and form an epoxide.
The requirement for the migrating group to be anti-periplanar to the leaving group is quite general in rearrangement reactions. The reason we haven’t noticed its effect before is that most of the compounds we have considered have not been conformationally constrained in the way that these are. Free rotation means that the right geometry for rearrangement is always obtainable—stereochemistry is not a factor in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, for example. We will come back to some more aspects of stereochemical control later in the chapter, when we deal with fragmentation reactions. Before then, we will consider one last rearrangement reaction, in which stereochemistry again plays an important controlling role.

The Beckmann rearrangement

The industrial manufacture of nylon relies on the alkaline polymerization of a cyclic amide known trivially as caprolactam. Caprolactam can be produced by the action of sulfuric acid on the oxime of cyclohexanone in a rearrangement known as the Beckmann rearrangement.

The mechanism of the Beckmann rearrangement follows the same pattern as a pinacol or Baeyer–Villiger reaction: acid converts the oxime OH into a leaving group, and an alkyl group migrates to nitrogen as water departs. The product cation is then trapped by water to give an amide.

This rearrangement is not confined to cyclic oximes, and other ways of converting OH to a leaving group also work, such as PCl₅, SOCl₂, and other acyl or sulfonyl chlorides. In an acyclic Beckmann rearrangement, the product cation is better represented as this nitrilium ion. When we write the mechanism we can then involve the nitrogen’s lone pair to ‘push’ the migrating group back on to N.

Which group migrates in the Beckmann rearrangement?

In the Beckmann rearrangement of unsymmetrical ketones there are two groups that could migrate. There are also two possible geometrical isomers of an unsymmetrical oxime: C=N double bonds can exhibit cis/trans isomerism just as C=C double bonds can. When mixtures of geometrical isomers of oximes are rearranged, mixtures of products result, but the ratio of products mirrors exactly the ratio of geometrical isomers in the starting materials—the group that has migrated is in each case the group trans to the OH in the starting material.
We have already touched on the idea that, for migration to occur, a migrating group has to be able to interact with the \( \sigma^* \) of the bond to the leaving group, and this is the reason for the specificity here. In the example a couple of pages back the stereospecificity of the reaction was due to the starting material being constrained in a conformationally rigid ring. Here it is the C=N double bond that provides the constraint. If one of the alkyl chains is branched, more of the oxime with the OH group \textit{anti} to that chain will be formed and correspondingly more of the branched group will migrate.

Conditions that allow those double bond isomers to interconvert can allow either group to migrate— which one does so will then be decided, as in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, by electronic factors. Most protic acids allow the oxime isomers to equilibrate, so, for example, this tosylated oxime rearranges with full stereospecificity in Al\(_2\)O\(_3\) (the \textit{anti} methyl group migrates), but with TsOH, equilibration of the oxime geometrical isomers means that either group could migrate—in the event, the propyl group (which is more able to support a positive charge) migrates faster.

Notice that the effect of the Beckmann rearrangement is to insert a nitrogen atom next to the carbonyl group. It forms a useful trio with the Baeyer–Villiger oxygen insertion and the diazoalkane carbon insertion.

**The Beckmann fragmentation**

To introduce the theme of the last section of this chapter, a Beckmann rearrangement that is not all that it seems. \( t \)-Butyl groups migrate well in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction and, indeed, Beckmann rearrangement of the compound in the margin appears to be quite normal too. But, when this compound and another compound with a tertiary centre next to the oxime are mixed together and treated with acid, it becomes apparent that what is happening is not an intramolecular reaction.
Each migrating tertiary group must have lost contact with the amide fragment it started out with. The molecule must fall apart to give a $t$-alkyl cation and a nitrile: the Beckmann rearrangement now goes via a fragmentation mechanism.

Migrating groups have to provide some degree of cation stabilization. But if they stabilize a cation too well there is a good chance that fragmentation will occur and the ‘migrating group’ will be lost as a carbocation.

Here is a more convincing example of the same fragmentation reaction: the conditions, but not the results, are those of a Beckmann rearrangement. In this reaction, the ring structure means the cation cannot be trapped by the nitrile, and a fragmentation product is isolated.

The mechanism is straightforward once you know what happens to Beckmann rearrangements when the migrating group is tertiary—but hard to follow unless you number the atoms!

Polarization of C–C bonds helps fragmentation

Up to now, you have met few fragmentation reactions—reactions in which C–C bonds are broken—largely because the C–C bond is so strong. Why then does the Beckmann...
For both carbon and hydrogen, a bond to oxygen is stronger than a bond to carbon. Yet we have no hesitation in breaking O–H bonds (of, say, carboxylic acids) with even the weakest of bases and we have spent much of this chapter showing C–O bonds of protonated alcohols rupturing spontaneously! What is going on?

The answer is polarization. Oxygen's electronegativity means that C–O and O–H bonds are polarized and are easy to break with hard nucleophiles and bases; C–C and C–H bonds are (usually) not polarized and, although weaker, are harder to break. It follows that to break a C–C bond it helps a lot if it is polarized—there needs to be a source of electrons at one end and an electron 'sink' (into which they can flow) at the other.

### Fragmentations require electron push and electron pull

Fragmentations are reactions in which the molecule breaks open by the cleavage of a C–C single bond, and we start this section with some examples. Both diastereoisomers of this cyclic diol fragment in acid to give an aldehyde.

Numbering the atoms shows which bond fragments—now we need to provide a source and a sink for the electrons to polarize the bond. Protonation of a hydroxyl group provides the sink—it can now leave as water. And the lone pair of the other oxygen provides the source. You can think of the electrons in the C–C bond being 'pushed' by the oxygen's lone pair and 'pulled' by the departing water—until the bond breaks. A bit of extra impetus comes from release of ring strain: C–C bonds in three- and four-membered rings are weaker than usual (by about 120 kJ mol$^{-1}$).

We talked about ‘pushing’ and ‘pulling’ electrons when we introduced the pinacol rearrangement, and a very similar thing is happening here but the electron source and sink are separated by one atom instead of being adjacent.

Protonated carbonyl compounds can be electron sinks too (remember the dienone-phenol rearrangement?) and this bicyclic methoxy ketone fragments to a seven-membered ring in acid. Note the same 1, 2, 3, 4 arrangement, with the bond between carbon atoms 2 and 3 fragmenting.
A leaving group such as mesylate can exercise the ‘pull’ and in the next example a carbonyl group provides the ‘push’ after it has been attacked by a nucleophile. This five-membered cyclic ketone fragments on treatment with base—can you detect hints of the benzylic acid rearrangement?

Analysing the Beckmann fragmentation on p. 960 in the same way, we can identify the electron sink (the departing acetate group), although the source in this case is a little more obscure. Saying that the tertiary cation is stable is really saying that the neighbouring C–C and C–H bonds provide electrons (through $\sigma$-conjugation, see p. 334) to stabilize it, so these are the electron sources (the ‘push’). A good alternative is to write loss of a proton concerted with fragmentation, which gives one particular C–H bond as the source of electrons.

The retro-aldol is a fragmentation reaction

We should perhaps remind you here of the reversibility of the aldol reaction (Chapter 26): a retro-aldol is a fragmentation reaction with a carbonyl group as electron sink and OH as electron source. The aldol reaction usually goes in the other direction of course, but where steric or ring-strain factors are involved, this may not be the case.

Fragmentations are controlled by stereochemistry

The control of rearrangements can be stereoelectronic in origin—if a molecule is to rearrange, orbitals have to be able to overlap. This means that, for a Beckmann rearrangement, the migrating group has to be trans to the leaving group. Not surprisingly, the same is true for Beckmann fragmentations like the one at the end of the last section, where the green fragmenting bond is trans to the leaving group. Before we extend these ideas any further, consider these two quite different reactions of quite similar compounds.
Just as with the rearrangements we looked at on p. 933, we need to draw these compounds in reasonable chair conformations in order to understand what is going on. In the cis isomer, both substituents can be equatorial; in the trans isomer one has to be axial, and this will be mainly the OTs group, since the two methyl groups of NMe₂ suffer greater 1,3-diaxial interactions.

Now, the cis isomer has clearly undergone a fragmentation reaction and, as usual, numbering the atoms can help to identify the bond that breaks. The nitrogen lone pair pushes, the departing tosylate pulls, and the resulting iminium ion hydrolyses to the product aldehyde.

Yet the trans isomer does this only in very low yield. Mostly it eliminates TsOH to give a mixture of alkenes. Why? Well, notice that, in the cis isomer, the fragmenting bond is trans to the leaving group—indeed, it is both parallel and trans (in other words anti-periplanar) to the leaving group. Electrons can flow smoothly from the breaking σ bond into the σ* of the C–OTs bond, forming as they do so a new π bond.

For the trans isomer, fragmentation of the most populated conformation is impossible because the leaving group is not anti-periplanar to any C–C bond. The only bonds anti-periplanar to OTs are C–H bonds, making this compound ideally set up for another reaction whose requirement for anti-periplanarity you have already met—E2 elimination.

The other conformation can fragment because now the OTs is anti-periplanar to the right C–C bond, and this is probably where the 11% fragmentation product comes from.

**Ring expansion by fragmentation**

Ring sizes greater than eight are hard to make. Yet five- and six-membered rings are easy to make. Once you realize that a fused pair of six-membered rings is really a ten-membered ring with a bond across the middle, the potential for making medium rings by fragmentation becomes apparent.

Interactive explanation of the stereochemistry of fragmentations
All you need to do is to make the bond to be broken the 2–3 bond in a 1, 2, 3, 4 electron source-sink arrangement and the ten-membered ring should appear out of the wreckage of the fragmentation. Here is an example:

This is the simple overall result, but there is more to explore. The starting hydroxytosylate can exist as four diastereoisomers: two trans-decalins and two cis-decalins. What is more, the product has a double bond in a ten-membered ring: will it be cis or trans? (Both are possible in a ring with more than eight members: see Chapter 29.) One of the four diastereoisomers of the starting material cannot place the tosylate anti-periplanar to the ring-fusion bond, so it can’t fragment. The other three diastereoisomers all can, but two of them give a trans double bond while the third gives cis.

Looking at the alignment of the bonds that end up flanking the double bond in the product shows you where the geometrical isomers come from: these are the black bonds in the starting material, and are trans across the forming $\pi$ system in the first two isomers and cis in the third. Fragmentations are stereospecific with regard to double-bond geometry, much as E2 elimination reactions are.

Caryophyllene by fragmentation
Corey applied this stereospecificity in conjunction with a ring expansion reaction to make the natural product caryophyllene. Caryophyllene is a bicyclic molecule with a nine-membered ring containing an $E$ trisubstituted double bond. The right relative stereochemistry in the starting material leads both to fragmentation of the right bond and to formation of the alkene with the right stereochemistry.

Muscone and exaltone are important perfumery compounds with even-harder-to-make 15-membered ring structures. Cyclododecanone is commercially available: addition of a fused five-membered ring and fragmentation of the 12,5-ring system is a useful route to these 15-membered ring compounds.
The Eschenmoser fragmentation

In the late 1960s, the Swiss chemist Albert Eschenmoser discovered an important reaction that can be used to achieve similar ring expansions and that now bears his name, the Eschenmoser fragmentation. The starting material for an Eschenmoser fragmentation is the epoxide of an \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated ketone. The fragmentation happens when this epoxyketone is treated with tosylhydrazine, and one of the remarkable things about the product is that it is an alkyne. The fragmentation happens across the epoxide (shown in black), and the product contains both a ketone (in a different place from the ketone in the starting material) and an alkyne. You can see how in this case hydrogenation of the triple bond can give muscone (\( R = \text{Me} \)) or exaltone (\( R = \text{H} \)).

The Eschenmoser fragmentation does not have to be a ring expansion, and it is a useful synthetic method for making keto-alkynes. The following reaction, which we will use to discuss the fragmentation’s mechanism, was used to make an intermediate in the synthesis of an insect pheromone, \textit{exo}-brevicomin.

The reaction starts with formation of the tosylhydrazone from the epoxyketone. The tosylhydrazone is unstable with respect to opening of the epoxide in an elimination reaction, and it is this elimination that sets up the familiar 1, 2, 3, 4 system ready for fragmentation. The ‘push’ comes from the newly created hydroxyl group, and the ‘pull’ from the irresistible concerted loss of a good leaving group (Ts\(^-\)) and an even better one (N\(_2\)). Notice how all the (green) bonds that break are parallel to one another, held anti-periplanar by two double bonds. Perfect!

Controlling double bonds using fragmentation

Juvenile hormone (a compound you met in Chapter 27, p. 677) is a compound whose synthesis presents a major challenge: it requires the control of three trisubstituted double bonds (one of which ends up as an epoxide). The key intermediate shown contains two of them.
The chemists who succeeded in making this compound reasoned that, if this intermediate could be made stereospecifically by fragmenting a cyclic starting material, the (hard-to-control) double-bond stereochemistry would derive directly from the (easier-to-control) relative stereochemistry of the cyclic compound. The starting material they chose was a 5,6-fused system, which fragments to give one of the double bonds.

The product of this reaction is prepared for another fragmentation by addition of methyl-lithium (you might like to consider why you get this diastereoisomer) and tosylation of the less hindered secondary alcohol. Base promotes the second fragmentation and gives the ketone with the two double bonds in place.

In the next chapter you will meet, among many other reactions, more fragmentations, but they will be radical fragmentations rather than ionic fragmentations, and involve homolytic cleavage of C–C bonds.

**The synthesis of nootkatone: fragmentation showcase**

To finish this chapter, we will present three different synthetic routes to the same compound, all of which illustrate the power of fragmentation in the synthesis of cyclic compounds. The story starts with grapefruit, which contains a simple bicyclic enone called nootkatone. It was assumed, wrongly as it happens, that the scent of grapefruit came from this compound, and in the 1970s there was quite a rush to synthesize this compound in various laboratories. A remarkable feature of many successful syntheses was the use of fragmentation reactions. We shall describe parts of three syntheses involving the fragmentation of a six-, a four-, and a three-membered ring.

Most syntheses make the side-chain alkene by an elimination reaction so the first ‘disconnection’ is an FGI adding HX back into the alkene. The last C–C bond-forming operation in most syntheses is an intramolecular aldol reaction to make the enone so that can be disconnected next. It is the starting material for the aldol, a simple monocyclic diketone, which is usually made by a fragmentation reaction because this is a good way to set up the stereochemistry.
Fragmentation of a three-membered ring

This synthesis does not look as though it will lead to nootkatone because the fragmentation product still requires a great deal of modification. It has the advantage that the stereochemistry is correct at one centre at least. The sequence starts from natural (–)-carone: conjugate addition of the enolate to butenone without control leads to a bicyclic diketone with one extra stereogenic centre. The enone adds to the bottom face of the enolate opposite the dimethylcyclopropane ring so the methyl group is forced upwards.

Now the diketone is cyclized by a Robinson-style aldol condensation in HCl to give a bicyclic enone. But during the reaction, a new six-membered ring has been formed while the old three-membered ring has disappeared, evidently by fragmentation.

The fragmentation is pulled by the enone (with some help from the acid) and pushed by the stability of a tertiary carbocation as well as the release of strain as the single bond that is fragmented is in a three-membered ring.

Addition of a proton to the end of the enol and a chloride ion to the cation gives the product. The further development of this compound into nootkatone is beyond the scope of this book.

Fragmentation of a four-membered ring

This approach leads directly to the enone needed for nootkatone. A diketone prepared from a natural terpene is also treated with HCl and much the same reactions ensue except that the fragmentation now breaks open a four-membered ring. First, the intramolecular aldol reaction to make the second six-membered ring.

Now the fragmentation, which follows much the same course as the last one: the enone again provides the electron pull while the cleavage of a strained C–C single bond in a four-membered ring to give a tertiary carbocation provides the electron push. A simple elimination is all that is needed to make nootkatone from this bicyclic chloroenone.
Fragmentation of a six-membered ring

This chemistry is quite different from the examples we have just seen. The starting material has a bridged bicyclic structure and was made by a Diels–Alder reaction. Fragmentation is initiated by formic acid (HCO₂H), which protonates the tertiary alcohol and creates a tertiary carbocation. The ether provides the push. More serious electronic interactions are needed in this fragmentation as the C–C bond being broken is not in a strained ring.

The yield of 50% may not seem wonderful, but there is obviously a lot of chemistry going on here so it is perfectly acceptable when so much is being achieved. The first stage is the fragmentation itself. Drawing the product first of all in the same shape as the starting material and then redrawing, to ensure that we don’t make a mistake, we discover that we are well on the way to nootkatone. Note that the stereochemistry of the two methyl groups comes directly from the stereochemistry of the starting materials and no new stereogenic centres are created in the fragmentation. Although one six-membered ring is fragmented, another remains.

The first-formed product now cyclizes to form the second six-membered ring. This recreates a carbocation at the tertiary centre like the one that set off the fragmentation as the more nucleophilic end of the isolated alkene attacks the end of the conjugate electrophile. This is a thermodynamically controlled reaction with the new stereogenic centre choosing to have an equatorial substituent.

The cation picks up the only nucleophile available—formic acid. This gives the product of the fragmentation, which contains two unstable functional groups—a tertiary formate ester and an enol ether—and this product is not isolated from the reaction mixture. In water it hydrolyses to the enone, which undergoes elimination of formate to give nootkatone on heating.
Yet after all this effort, none of the synthetic samples of nootkatone delivered that intense grapefruit smell—for the simple reason that nootkatone is not the flavour principle of grapefruit! The samples of nootkatone that had been isolated from grapefruit contained minute traces of the true flavour principle—a simple thiol. Humans can detect $2 \times 10^{-5}$ ppb (parts per billion) of this compound, so even the tiniest trace is very powerful. Nonetheless, the syntheses allowed chemists to correct a misconception.

**Looking forward**

Fragmentation reactions cleave C–C single bonds by a combination of electron push and electron pull so that both electrons in the bond move in the same direction as the bond breaks. In the next chapter we shall see reactions that break C–C bonds in a quite different way. No electron push or pull is required because one electron goes one way and one the other. These are radical reactions.

**Further reading**


**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Radical reactions

You may remember that at the beginning of Chapter 8 we said that the cleavage of H–Cl into H⁺ and Cl⁻ is possible in solution only because the ions that are formed are solvated: in the gas phase, the reaction is endothermic with \( \Delta G = +1347 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \), a value so vast that even if the whole universe were made of gaseous HCl at 273 K, not a single molecule would be dissociated into H⁺ and Cl⁻ ions. At temperatures above about 200 °C, however, HCl does begin to dissociate, but not into ions. Instead of the chlorine atom taking both bonding electrons with it, leaving a naked proton, the electron pair forming the H–Cl bond is shared out between the two atoms. \( \Delta G \) for this reaction is a much more reasonable +431 kJ mol⁻¹ and, at high temperatures (above about 200 °C, that is), HCl gas can be dissociated into H and Cl atoms.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HCl} & \rightarrow \text{gas phase} \rightarrow \text{H}^+ + \text{Cl}^- \\
\text{HCl} & >200 \degree C \rightarrow \text{H}^+ + \text{Cl}^- \\
\text{H}^+ & \quad 1 \text{ electron} \\
\text{Cl}^- & \quad 8 \text{ electrons in outer shell} \\
\text{HCl} & \quad 7 \text{ electrons in outer shell}
\end{align*}
\]

**Heterolysis and homolysis**

- When bonds break and one atom gets both bonding electrons, the process is called **heterolysis**. The products of heterolysis are, of course, ions.
- When bonds break and the atoms get one bonding electron each, the process is called **homolysis**. The products of homolysis are radicals, which may be atoms or molecules, but must contain an unpaired electron.
In Chapter 24 we introduced the fact that bromine radicals react regioselectively with alkenes. Let us remind you of one reaction you met then: radical addition to an alkene. The product is an alkyl bromide, and is a different alkyl bromide from the one formed when HBr adds to an alkene in an ionic manner.

What does the peroxide do to change the mechanism of the reaction? Peroxides undergo homolysis of the weak O–O bond extremely easily to form two radicals. We said that HCl in the gas phase undergoes homolysis in preference to heterolysis: other types of bond are even more susceptible to homolysis. You can see this for yourself by looking at this table of bond dissociation energies ($\Delta G$ for $X–Y \rightarrow X^* + Y^*$).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond X–Y</th>
<th>$\Delta G$ for $X–Y \rightarrow X^* + Y^*$, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H–OH</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{CH}_3$–H</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2$C–OH</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2$C–CH$_3$</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H–Cl</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H–Br</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H–I</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_3$–Cl</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dialkyl peroxides (dimethyl peroxide is shown in the table) contain the very weak O–O bond. The radicals formed by homolytic cleavage of these bonds, stimulated by a little heat or light, initiate what we call a radical chain reaction, which results in the formation of the Br• radicals, which add to the alkene’s C=C double bond (see Chapter 24).

**Radicals form by homolysis of weak bonds**

This is the most important way of making radicals: unpairing a pair of electrons by homolysis, making two new radicals. Temperatures of over 200 °C will homolyse most bonds; on the other hand, some weak bonds will undergo homolysis at temperatures little above room temperature. Light is a possible energy source for the homolysis of bonds too. Red light has associated with it 167 kJ mol$^{-1}$; blue light has about 293 kJ mol$^{-1}$. Ultraviolet (200 nm), with an associated energy of 586 kJ mol$^{-1}$, will decompose many organic compounds (including the DNA in skin cells: sunbathers beware!).

There are a number of compounds whose homolysis is particularly important to chemists, and the most important ones are discussed in turn below. They all have weak σ bonds, and generate radicals that can be put to some chemical use. The halogens are quite readily homolyzed by light, as you can see from the bond strengths in the table above, a fact that drives the radical halogenation reactions that we shall discuss later.

As you saw in Chapter 24, dibenzoyl peroxide is an important compound because it can act as another initiator of radical reactions. It undergoes homolysis simply on heating.
Another compound that is often used in synthetic reactions for the same reason (although it reacts with a different set of compounds) is AIBN (azobisisobutyronitrile).

\[ \Delta G^\ddagger = 131 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \]

This decomposition mechanism accounts for the separate movements of all the electrons, but we can also draw the mechanism in a slightly different way: we show two radical (‘fish hook’) arrows forming the molecule of nitrogen but only one arrow to break each of the C–N bonds. It can be assumed that the electrons ‘left behind’ form radicals as well.

Another way of cutting back on the number of arrows without losing precision in the mechanism is to draw one arrow for each step all in the same (which can be either) direction. The first mechanism has the advantage of complete clarity; the other two make for neater diagrams. Choose which suits you best.

The important thing is to use the right type of arrow and to make it clear whether you are moving one, and not two, electrons. A simpler example is the abstraction of a hydrogen atom by an oxygen-centred radical: any of the mechanisms below is fine.

**Radicals form by abstraction**

Notice that we didn’t put HBr on the list of molecules that form radicals by homolysis: relative to the weak bonds we have been talking about, the H–Br bond is quite strong (just about as strong as a C–C bond). We described in Chapter 24 how oxygen radicals abstract hydrogen atoms from HBr. You might now like to compare this mechanism with similar ionic reactions.

Hydrogen abstraction is the removal of a hydrogen atom with its one electron. It is not the removal of a proton: that would be the removal of a hydrogen atom with no electrons, which happens in ionic reactions.

The ability of radicals to propagate by abstraction is a key feature of radical chain reactions, which we shall come to later. There is an important difference between homolysis and abstraction as a way of making radicals: homolysis is a reaction of a spin-paired molecule that produces two radicals; abstraction is a reaction of a radical with a spin-paired molecule that produces one new radical and a new spin-paired molecule.
As the comparison above shows, radical abstractions are in fact substitution reactions (at \( \text{H} \) in this case). However, radical substitutions differ considerably from \( S_N^1 \) or \( S_N^2 \) reactions: importantly, radical substitutions almost never occur at carbon atoms. We shall come back to radical substitutions, or abstractions (depending on whether you take the point of view of the \( \text{H} \) atom or the \( \text{Br} \) atom), and explain why this should be, later in the chapter.

First radical detected

The very first radical to be detected, the triphenylmethyl radical, was made in 1900 by abstraction of \( \text{Cl}^* \) from \( \text{Ph}_3\text{CCl} \) by \( \text{Ag} \) metal. Many metal atoms such as \( \text{Ag}^* \) and \( \text{Li}^* \) have single unpaired electrons. This radical is relatively stable (we shall see why shortly), but reacts with itself reversibly in solution. The product of the dimerization of triphenylmethyl was for 70 years believed to be hexaphenyl ethane but, in 1970, NMR showed that it was, in fact, an unsymmetrical dimer.

Radicals form by addition

The key step in the radical addition of \( \text{HBr} \) to an alkyne in Chapter 24 was the formation of a radical by radical addition. The \( \text{Br}^* \) radical (which, you will remember, was formed by abstraction of \( \text{H}^* \) from \( \text{HBr} \) by \( \text{RO}^* \)) adds to the alkene to give a new, carbon-centred radical. This is the radical addition mechanism:

\[
\text{radical addition} \quad \text{Br}^* + \text{alkene} \rightarrow \text{carbon-centred radical}
\]

Just as charge must be conserved through a chemical reaction, so must the spin of the electrons involved. If a reactant carries an unpaired electron, then so must a product. Addition of a radical to a spin-paired molecule always generates a new radical. Radical addition is therefore a second type of radical-forming reaction.

The simplest radical addition reactions occur when a single electron is added to a spin-paired molecule. This process is a reduction. You have already met some examples of single-electron reductions: Birch reductions (Chapter 23) use the single electron formed when a Group I metal (sodium, usually) is dissolved in liquid ammonia to reduce organic compounds. Group I metals are common sources of single electrons: by giving up their odd s electron they form a stable \( \text{M}^+ \) ion. They will donate this electron to several classes of molecules, for example ketones can react with sodium to form ketyl radicals.

\[
\text{Na} + \text{alkene} \rightarrow \text{carbon-centred radical} + \text{M}^+
\]

We shall discuss ketyl radicals and their reactions on p. 980.
Radicals form by elimination

A fourth class of radical-forming reaction is elimination. For an example, we can go back to dibenzoyl peroxide, the unstable compound we considered earlier in the chapter. The radicals formed from dibenzoyl peroxide by homolysis are themselves unstable and each can break down by cleavage of a C–C bond, generating CO₂ and a phenyl radical. This is a radical elimination reaction, and is the reverse of a radical addition reaction.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{dibenzoyl peroxide} & \xrightarrow{\text{homolysis}} \text{radical} \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{radical elimination}} \text{phenyl radical} + \text{CO}_2
\end{align*}
\]

To summarize methods of radical formation

Radicals form from spin-paired molecules by:

- homolysis of weak σ bonds, e.g.

\[
\text{RO} - \text{OR} \longrightarrow \text{RO}^+ \quad (\times 2)
\]

- electron transfer, that is, reduction (addition of an electron), e.g.

\[
\text{O} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{e}^-} \text{O}^-
\]

Radicals form from other radicals by:

- substitution (abstraction)

\[
\text{X}^+ \quad \text{Y} \quad \text{Z} \quad \longrightarrow \quad \text{X}^- \quad \text{Y}^- \quad \text{Z}^+
\]

- addition

\[
\text{X}^+ \quad \text{Y} \quad \text{Z} \quad \longrightarrow \quad \text{X} \quad \text{Y}^- \quad \text{Z}^+
\]

- elimination (homolysis)

\[
\text{X}^+ \quad \text{Y} \quad \text{Z} \quad \longrightarrow \quad \text{X} = \text{Y} \quad + \quad \text{Z}^+
\]

Most radicals are extremely reactive...

Unpaired electrons are desperate to be paired up again. This means that radicals usually have a very short lifetime; they don't survive long before undergoing a chemical reaction. Chemists are more interested in radicals that are reactive because they can be persuaded to do interesting and useful things. However, before we look at their reactions, we shall consider some radicals that are unreactive so that we can analyse the factors that contribute to radical reactivity.

...but a few radicals are very unreactive

Whilst simple alkyl radicals are extremely short-lived, some other radicals survive almost indefinitely. Such radicals are known as persistent radicals. We mentioned the triphenylmethyl...
radical on p. 973: this yellow substance exists in solution in equilibrium with its dimer, but it is persistent enough to account for 2–10% of the equilibrium mixture.

Persistent radicals with the single electron carried by an oxygen or a nitrogen atom are also known: these four radicals can all be handled as stable compounds. The first, known as TEMPO, is a commercial product and can even be sublimed.

Vitamin E tames radicals

Many of the molecules that make up the structure of human tissue are susceptible to homolysis in intense light, and the body makes use of sophisticated chemistry to protect itself from the action of the reactive radical products. Vitamin E plays an important role in the ‘taming’ of these radicals: abstraction of H from the phenolic hydroxyl group produces a relatively stable radical that does no further damage.

There are two reasons why some radicals are more persistent than others: (1) steric hindrance and (2) electronic stabilization. In the four extreme cases above, their exceptional stability is conferred by a mixture of these two effects. Before we can analyse the stability of other radicals, however, we need to look at what is known about the shape and electronic structure of radicals.

How to analyse the structure of radicals: electron spin resonance

For the last few pages we have been discussing the species we call radicals without offering any evidence that they actually exist. Well, there is evidence, and it comes from a spectroscopic technique known as electron spin resonance, or ESR (also known as EPR, electron paramagnetic resonance). ESR not only confirms that radicals do exist, but it can also tell us quite a lot about their structure.

Unpaired electrons, like the nuclei of certain atoms, have a magnetic moment associated with them. Proton NMR probes the environment of hydrogen atoms by examining the energy difference between the two possible orientations of their magnetic moments in a magnetic field; ESR works in a similar way for unpaired electrons. The magnetic moment of an electron is much bigger than that of a proton, so the difference in energy between the possible quantum
states in an electron field is also much bigger. This means that the magnets used in ESR spectrometers can be weaker than those in NMR spectrometers, usually about 0.3 tesla; even at this low field strength, the resonant frequency of an electron is about 9000 MHz (for comparison, the resonant frequency of a proton at 9.5 tesla is 400 MHz; in other words, a 400 MHz NMR machine has a magnetic field strength of 9.5 tesla).

But there are strong similarities between the techniques. ESR shows us, for example, that unpaired electrons couple with protons in the radical. The spectrum below is that of the methyl radical, \( \text{CH}_3 \). The 1:3:3:1 quartet pattern is just what you would expect for coupling to three equivalent protons; coupling in ESR is measured in millitesla (or gauss; 1 gauss = 0.1 mT), and for the methyl radical the coupling constant (called \( a_H \)) is 2.3 mT.

ESR hyperfine splittings (as the coupling patterns are known) can give quite a lot of information about a radical. For example, here is the hyperfine splitting pattern of the cycloheptatrienyl radical. The electron evidently sees all seven protons around the ring as equivalent, and must therefore be fully delocalized. A localized radical would see several different types of proton, resulting in a much more complex splitting pattern.

Even the relatively simple spectrum of the methyl radical tells us quite a lot about its structure. For example, the size of the coupling constant \( a_H \) indicates that the methyl radical is planar; the trifluoromethyl radical is, on the other hand, pyramidal. The oxygenated radicals \( \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \) and \( \text{CMe}_2\text{OH} \) lie somewhere in between. The calculations that show this lie outside the scope of this book.

**Radicals have singly occupied molecular orbitals**

ESR tells us that the methyl radical is planar: the carbon atom must therefore be \( sp^2 \) hybridized, with the unpaired electron in a \( p \) orbital. We can represent this in an energy level diagram.
In Chapter 4 we talked about the HOMO (highest occupied molecular orbital) and LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbital) of organic molecules. CH₃ (like all radicals) has an orbital containing one electron, which we call a singly occupied molecular orbital (SOMO).

As with all molecules, it is the energy of the electrons in the molecular orbitals of the radical that dictate its stability. Any interaction that can decrease the energy levels of the filled molecular orbitals increases the stability of the radical (in other words, decreases its reactivity). Before we use this energy level diagram of the methyl radical to explain the stability of radicals, we need to look at some experimental data that allow us to judge just how stable different radicals are.

**Radical stability**

On p. 971 we used bond strength as a guide to the likelihood that bonds will be homolysed by heat or light. Since bond energies give us an idea of the ease with which radicals can form, they can also give us an idea of the stability of those radicals once they have formed.

\[ \Delta G = \text{energy required to homolyse bond} \]

\[ \Delta G = \text{energy released in combining radicals} \]

This is particularly true if we compare the strengths of bonds between the same atoms, for example carbon and hydrogen, in different molecules; this table does this.

A few simple trends are apparent. For example, C–H bonds decrease in strength in R–H when R goes from primary to secondary to tertiary. Tertiary alkyl radicals are therefore the most stable; methyl radicals the least stable.

C–H bonds next to conjugating groups such as allyl or benzyl are particularly weak, so allyl and benzy radical s are more stable. But C–H bonds to alkynyl, alkenyl, or aryl groups are strong. We saw the effects of this in Chapter 24.
Adjacent functional groups appear to weaken C–H bonds: radicals next to carbonyl, nitrile, or ether functional groups, or centred on a carbonyl carbon atom, are more stable than even tertiary alkyl radicals.

Whether the functional group is electron withdrawing or electron donating is clearly irrelevant here: both types seem to stabilize radicals. We can explain all of this if we look at how the different groups next to the radical centre interact electronically with the radical.

**Radicals are stabilized by conjugating, electron-withdrawing, and electron-donating groups**

Let’s consider first what happens when a radical centre finds itself next to an electron-withdrawing group. Groups like C=O and C≡N are electron withdrawing because they have a low-lying empty π* orbital. By overlapping with the (usually p) orbital containing the radical (the SOMO), two new molecular orbitals are generated. One electron (the one in the old SOMO) is available to fill the two new orbitals. It enters the new SOMO, which is of lower energy than the old one, and the radical experiences stabilization because this electron drops in energy.

We can analyse what happens with electron-rich groups, such as RO groups, in a similar way. Ether oxygen atoms have relatively high-energy filled n orbitals, their lone pairs. Interacting this with the SOMO again gives two new molecular orbitals. Three electrons are available to fill them. The SOMO is now higher in energy than it was to start with, but the lone pair is lower. Because two electrons have dropped in energy and only one has risen, there is an overall stabilization of the system, even though the new SOMO is of higher energy than the old one. We shall see later what effect the energy of the SOMO, rather than the overall energy of the radical, has on its reactivity.
In Chapter 15 you saw how the electrons in C–H σ bonds stabilize cations: they stabilize radicals in the same way, which is why tertiary radicals are more stable than primary ones. Conjugation, too, is effective at stabilizing radicals. We know from their ESR spectra (p. 976) that radicals next to double bonds are delocalized; that they are more stable is evident from the bond dissociation energies of allylic and benzylic C–H bonds.

---

**Anything that would stabilize an anion or a cation will stabilize a radical:**
- electron-withdrawing groups
- electron-donating groups (including alkyl groups with C–H σ bonds)
- conjugating groups.

---

**Steric hindrance makes radicals less reactive**

On p. 975 we showed you some radicals that are remarkably stable (persistent): some can even be isolated and purified. You should now be able to see at least part of the reason for their exceptional stability: two of them have adjacent powerful electron-donating groups, one has a powerful electron-withdrawing group as well, and three of the four are conjugated.

But electronic factors alone are not sufficient to explain the exceptional stability of all four radicals, since the two radicals on the right receive just about the same electronic stabilization as the first two above, but are much more reactive.

In fact, the stability of the triphenylmethyl radical we know to be due mainly to steric, rather than electronic, factors. X-ray crystallography shows that the three phenyl rings in this compound are not coplanar but are twisted out of a plane by about 30°, like a propeller. This means that the delocalization in this radical is less than ideal (we know that there is some delocalization from the ESR spectrum) and, in fact, it is little more delocalized than the diphenyldimethyl or even the benzyl radical, even though it is much more stable than either. This must be because the central carbon, which bears most of the radical character, is sterically shielded by the twisted phenyl groups, making it very hard for the molecule to react.
The rest of this chapter is devoted to the reactions of radicals, and you will see that the two effects we have talked about—electronic stabilization and steric hindrance—are key factors that control these reactions.

**How do radicals react?**

A reactive radical has a choice: it can either find another radical and combine to form a spin-paired molecule (or more than one spin-paired molecule), or it can react with a spin-paired molecule to form a new radical. Both are possible, and we shall see examples of each. A third alternative is for a radical to decompose in a unimolecular reaction, giving rise to a new radical and a spin-paired molecule.

- **Three possibilities:**
  - radical + radical $\rightarrow$ spin-paired molecule
    \[
    \begin{array}{c}
    \text{Br} \\
    \text{Br} \\
    \end{array}
    \xrightarrow{\text{Br} \quad \text{Br}} \quad \text{Br} - \text{Br}
    \]
  - radical + spin-paired molecule $\rightarrow$ new radical + new spin-paired molecule
    \[
    \begin{array}{c}
    \text{R}_1\text{O} \\
    \text{H} \\
    \text{R}_2 \\
    \end{array}
    \xrightarrow{\text{R}_1\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{R}_2} \quad \text{R}_1\text{OH} + \text{R}_2^*
    \]
  - radical $\rightarrow$ new radical + spin-paired molecule
    \[
    \begin{array}{c}
    \text{O} \\
    \text{C} \quad \text{O} \\
    \text{R} \\
    \end{array}
    \xrightarrow{\text{R} \quad \text{CO}_2} \quad \text{R}^* + \text{CO}_2
    \]

**Radical–radical reactions**

In view of the energy released when unpaired electrons pair up, you might expect this type of radical reaction to be more common than reaction with a spin-paired molecule, in which no net pairing of electrons takes place. Radical–radical reactions certainly do take place, but they are not the most important type of reaction involving radicals. We shall see why they are not as common as you might expect shortly, but first we can look at the few examples of radical–radical reactions which do work well.

**The pinacol reaction is a radical dimerization**

We outlined on p. 973 a way of making radicals by single electron transfer: effectively, the addition reaction of a single electron to a spin-paired molecule. The types of molecules that undergo this reaction are those with low-lying antibonding orbitals for the electron to go into, in particular aromatic systems and carbonyl compounds. The radical anion formed by addition of an electron to a ketone is known as a ketyl. The single electron is in the $\pi^*$ orbital, so we can represent a ketyl with the radical on oxygen or on carbon and the anion on the other atom.

Ketyl radicals behave in a manner that depends on the solvent that they are in. In protic solvents (ethanol, for example), the ketyl becomes protonated and then accepts a second electron from the metal (sodium is usually used in these cases). An alkoxide anion results, which, on addi-
tion of acid at the end of the reaction, gives an alcohol. Notice that this is a reaction using sodium metal in ethanol, and not sodium ethoxide, which is the basic product that forms once sodium has dissolved in ethanol. It is important that the sodium is dissolving as the reaction takes place, since only then are the free electrons available.

In aprotic solvents, such as benzene or ether, no protons are available so the concentration of ketyl radical builds up significantly and the ketyl radical anions start to dimerize. As well as being a radical–radical process, this dimerization process is an anion–anion reaction, so why doesn't electrostatic repulsion between the anions prevent them from approaching one another? The key to success is to use a metal such as magnesium or aluminium, which forms strong, covalent metal–oxygen bonds and can coordinate to more than one ketyl at once. Once two ketyls are coordinated to the same metal atom, they react rapidly.

The example shows the dimerization of acetone to give a diol (2,3-dimethylbutane-2,3-diol) whose trivial name, pinacol, is used as a name for this type of reaction using any ketone. Sometimes pinacol reactions create new chiral centres: in this example, the two diastereoismeric diols are formed in a 60:40 mixture. If you want to make a single diastereoisomer of a diol, a pinacol reaction is not a good choice!

**Benzophenone as an indicator in THF stills**

As you should have gathered by now, THF is an important organic solvent in which many low-temperature, inert atmosphere reactions are conducted. It has a drawback, however: it is quite hygroscopic, and often the reactions for which it is used as a solvent must be kept absolutely free of water. It is therefore always distilled immediately before use from sodium metal, which reacts with any traces of water in the THF. However, it is necessary to have an indicator to show that the THF is dry and that the sodium has done its job. The indicator used is a ketone, benzophenone.

When the THF is dry, the distilling liquid containing the benzophenone becomes bright purple. This colour is due to the ketyl of benzophenone, the formation of which under these conditions should not surprise you. It should also come as no surprise that this ketyl, being stabilized by conjugation and quite hindered, is persistent (long-lived)—it does not undergo pinacol dimerization (as we explained above, you would not normally choose sodium to promote pinacols anyway). However, if water is present, the ketyl is rapidly quenched in the manner of the reduction described above to give the (colourless) alkoxide anion: only when all the water is consumed does the colour return.
Pinacol reactions can be carried out intramolecularly, from compounds containing two carbonyl groups. In fact, the key step of one of the very first syntheses of the important anti-cancer compound Taxol was an intramolecular pinacol reaction using titanium as the source of electrons.

The titanium metal that is the source of electrons is produced during the reaction by reduction of TiCl₃ using a zinc–copper mixture. This reaction is, in fact, unusual because, as we shall see below, pinacol reactions using titanium do not normally stop at the diol, but give alkenes.

**Titanium promotes the pinacol coupling and then deoxygenates the products: the McMurry reaction**

Titanium can be used as the metal source of electrons in the pinacol reaction and, provided the reaction is kept cold and not left for too long, diols can be isolated from the reaction, as in the example above. However, unlike magnesium or aluminium, titanium reacts further with these diol products to give alkenes in a reaction known as the McMurry reaction, after its inventor.

Notice that the titanium(0), which is the source of electrons in the reaction, is produced during the reaction by reacting a Ti(III) salt, usually TiCl₃, with a reducing agent such as LiAlH₄ or Zn/Cu. The reaction does not work with, say, powdered titanium metal. The McMurry reaction is believed to be a two-stage process involving firstly a pinacol radical–radical coupling.

The Ti(0) then proceeds to deoxygenate the diol by a mechanism not fully understood, but thought to involve binding of the diol to the surface of the Ti(0) particles produced in the reduction of TiCl₃.
We expect you to be mildly horrified by the inadequacy of the mechanism above. But, unfortunately, we can’t do much better because no-one really knows quite what is happening. The McMurry reaction is very useful for making tetrasubstituted double bonds—there are few other really effective ways of doing this. However, the double bonds really need to be symmetrical (in other words, have the same substituents at each end) because McMurry reactions between two different ketones are rarely successful.

\[
\text{TiCl}_3, \text{Zn/Cu} \quad 96\% \text{ yield}
\]

McMurry reactions also work very well intramolecularly, and turn out to be quite a good way of making cyclic alkenes, especially when the ring involved is medium or large (over about eight members). For example, the natural product flexibilene, with a 15-membered ring, can be made by cyclizing a 15-keto-aldehyde.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{Et} \\
\text{NaO} \\
\text{Et}_2\text{O}
\end{array} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{Et} \\
\text{NaO} \\
\text{Et}_2\text{O}
\end{array}
\]

**Esters undergo pinacol-type coupling: the acyloin reaction**

You’ve seen examples of pinacol and McMurry reactions of ketones and aldehydes. What about esters? You would expect the ketyl radical anion to form from an ester in the same way, and then to undergo radical dimerization, and this is indeed what happens.

\[
\text{NaO} \quad \text{Na} \\
\text{EtO} \quad \text{OEt} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{NaO} \\
\text{EtO} \\
\text{OEt}
\end{array}
\]

The product of the dimerization looks very much like a tetrahedral intermediate in a carbonyl addition–elimination reaction, and it collapses to give a 1,2-diketone.

\[
\text{EtO} \quad \text{OEt} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{EtO} \\
\text{OEt}
\end{array}
\]

The diketone is, however, still reducible—in fact, 1,2-diketones are more reactive towards electrophiles and reducing agents than ketones because their $\pi^*$ is lower in energy and straight away two electron transfers take place to form a molecule, which we could term an **enediolate**. On quenching the reaction with acid, this dianion is protonated twice to give the enol of an $\alpha$-hydroxy-ketone, and it is this $\alpha$-hydroxy-ketone that is the final product of the acyloin reaction. The yield in this example is a quite respectable 70%. However, in many other cases, this usefulness of the acyloin reaction is hampered by the formation of by-products that arise because of the reactivity of the enediolate dianion. It is, of course, quite nucleophilic, and is likely to be formed in the presence of the highly electrophilic diketone. It is also basic, and often catalyses a competing Claisen condensation of the esters being reduced.
The solution to these problems is to add trimethylsilyl chloride to the reaction mixture. The silyl chloride silylates the enediolate as it is formed, and the product of the acyloin reaction becomes a bis-silyl ether.

These silyl ethers are rarely wanted as final products, and they can easily be hydrolysed to $\alpha$-hydroxyketones with aqueous acid. This improved version makes four-membered rings efficiently.

It’s not by accident that these two examples of the acyloin reaction show the formation of cyclic compounds. It is a particularly powerful method of making carbocyclic rings from four-membered upwards: the energy to be gained by pairing up the two electrons in the radical–radical reaction step more than compensates for the strain that may be generated in forming the ring.

The pinacol, McMurry, and acyloin reactions are exceptional

We’ve already said that this type of reaction, in which two radicals dimerize, is relatively uncommon. Most radicals are simply too reactive to react with one another! This may sound nonsensical, but the reason is simply that highly reactive species are unselective about what they react with. Although it might be energetically favourable for them to find another radical and dimerize, they are much more likely to collide with a solvent molecule, or a molecule of some other compound present in the mixture, than another radical. Reactive radicals are only ever present in solution in very low concentrations, so the chances of a radical–radical collision are very low. Radical attack on spin-paired molecules is much more common and, because the product of such reaction is also a radical, they give rise to the possibility of radical chain reactions.

Radical chain reactions

In looking at how radicals form, you’ve already seen examples of how radicals react. In fact, we’ve already dealt (if only very briefly) with every step of the sequence of reactions that makes up the mechanism of the radical reaction you met at the beginning of the chapter, and shown below.
Let's now consider each step in turn and in more detail.

1. The dialkyl peroxide is homolysed (by heat or light) to give two alkoxy radicals.

2. RO\textsuperscript* abstracts H from HBr (radical substitution) to give Br\textsuperscript*.

3. Br\textsuperscript* adds to isobutene to give a carbon-centred radical.

4. The carbon-centred radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from H–Br to form the final addition product and regenerate Br\textsuperscript*, which can react with another molecule of alkene.

So the whole process is a cycle with the bromine radical regenerated in the last step, the one in which the product is formed.

In each step in the cycle a radical is consumed and a new radical is formed. This type of reaction is therefore known as a radical chain reaction, and the two steps that form the cyclic process that keeps the chain running are known as the chain propagation steps. Only one molecule of peroxide initiator is necessary for a large number of product molecules to be formed and, indeed, the peroxide needs to be added in only catalytic quantities (about 10 mol%) for this reaction to proceed in good yield.

Any less than 10 mol%, however, and the yield drops. The problem is that the chain reaction is not 100% efficient. Because the concentration of radicals in the reaction mixture is low, radical–radical reactions are rare, but nonetheless they happen often enough that more peroxide keeps being needed to start the chain off again.

Reactions like this are known as termination steps and are actually an important part of any chain reaction; without termination steps the reaction would be uncontrollable.
Selectivity in radical chain reactions

In the radical–radical reactions we looked at earlier, there was never any question of what would react with what: only one type of radical was formed and the radicals dimerized in identical pairs. Look at the chain reaction above though—there are three types of radical present, Br•, BrCH2Me2CH•, and RO•, and they all react specifically with a chosen spin-paired partner: Br• with the alkene, and BrCH2Me2CH• and RO• with HBr. We need to understand the factors that govern this chemoselectivity. In order to do so we shall look at another radical reaction with chemoselectivity and regioselectivity that is measurable.

Chlorination of alkanes

Alkanes will react with chlorine radicals to give alkyl chlorides. For example, cyclohexane plus chlorine gas, in the presence of light, gives cyclohexyl chloride and hydrogen chloride.

\[
\text{Cyclohexane} + \text{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{hv} \text{Cyclohexyl chloride} + \text{HCl}
\]

The Toray process

A variant of this reaction, known as the Toray process, is used on an industrial scale to produce caprolactam, a precursor to nylon. Instead of chlorine, nitrosyl chloride is used to form a nitroso compound that rapidly tautomerizes to an oxime. As you saw in Chapter 36, this oxime undergoes a Beckmann rearrangement under acid conditions to form caprolactam.

Interactive mechanism for radical addition of Cl₂ to cyclohexane

Interactive mechanism for radical termination steps

We have already suggested two reasons why the Br• radical adds to the alkene with this characteristic regioselectivity, giving a primary alkyl bromide when the polar addition of HBr to an alkene would give a tertiary alkyl bromide: (1) attack at the unsubstituted end of the alkene is less sterically hindered and (2) the tertiary radical thus formed is more stable than a primary radical. In fact, of all the hydrogen halides, only HBr will add to alkenes in this fashion: HCl and HI will undergo only polar addition to give the tertiary alkyl halide. Why? We need to be able to answer this type of question too.
event (photolysis of chlorine). Be warned: reactions like this can be explosive in sunlight and are carried out in specialized facilities, not in the open laboratory.

When the chlorine radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from the cyclohexane, only one product can be formed because all 12 hydrogen atoms are equivalent. For other alkanes this may not be the case, and mixtures of alkyl chlorides can result. For example, propane is chlorinated to give a mixture of alkyl chlorides containing 45% 1-chloropropane and 55% 2-chloropropane, and isobutane is chlorinated to give 63% iso-butyl chloride and 37% tert-butyl chloride.

How can we explain the ratios of products that are formed? The key is to look at the relative stabilities of the radicals involved in the reaction and the strengths of the bonds that are formed and broken. First, the chlorination of propane. A chlorine radical, produced by photolysis, can abstract either a primary hydrogen atom, from the end of the molecule, or a secondary hydrogen atom, from the middle. For the two processes, we have these energy gains and losses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abstraction</th>
<th>ΔH, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>-431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>+423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abstraction of the secondary hydrogen atom is more exothermic than abstraction of the primary hydrogen atom for the related reasons that: (1) secondary C–H bonds are weaker than primary ones and (2) secondary radicals are more stable than primary ones. So, we get more 2-chloropropane than 1-chloropropane. But in this case, that isn’t the only factor involved: remember that there are six primary hydrogen atoms and only two secondary ones, so the relative reactivity of the primary and secondary positions is even more different than the simple ratio of products from the reaction suggests. This statistical factor is more evident in the second example we gave above, the chlorination of isobutane. Now the choice is between formation of a tertiary radical and formation of a primary one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abstraction</th>
<th>ΔH, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>-431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary</td>
<td>+397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>-34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tertiary radical formation is more exothermic, yet more primary alkyl chloride is formed than tertiary alkyl chloride. However, once the 9:1 ratio of primary to tertiary hydrogen atoms is taken into account, the relative reactivities, as determined experimentally, turn out to be as shown in the table below.
The rate of attack by Cl• on a tertiary C–H bond, then, is about five times the rate of attack by Cl• on a primary C–H bond. We said that this is because the formation of the tertiary radical is more exothermic than the formation of the primary radical. But the rate of a reaction depends not on Δ\( \text{H} \) for that reaction but on the activation energy of the reaction; in other words, the energy needed to reach the transition state for the reaction. But we can still use the stability of the product radicals as a guide to the stability of the transition state because the transition state must have significant radical character.

The energy diagram above illustrates this point. As the reactants (Cl• plus isobutane) move towards the products, they pass through a transition state (TS\(_3\) for formation of the primary radical, TS\(_3\) for formation of the tertiary) in which the radical character of the Cl• starting material is spread over both the Cl and the C centres. The greater stability of a tertiary radical compared with a primary one must be reflected to a lesser degree in these transition states: a radical shared between Cl and a tertiary centre will be more stable than a radical shared between Cl and a primary centre. The transition state TS\(_3\) for the reaction at the tertiary C–H bond is therefore of lower energy than the transition state TS\(_1\) for reaction at the primary C–H bond. In other words, the activation energy Δ\( G^\ddagger \) is smaller than Δ\( G^\ddagger \), so reaction at the tertiary C–H bond is faster.

**Bromination of alkanes is more selective**

Bromine will also halogenate alkanes, and it does so much more selectively than chlorine. For example, the following reaction yields tert-butyl bromide with less than 1% of the primary isomer.

\[
\text{Br}_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} \text{Br}^+ + \text{Br}^- \]

\[
\rightarrow \text{Br}^- + \text{tert-Br} \text{Br}^- >99% <1%\]

In this case, the first step of the radical chain reaction, the abstraction of H by Br•, is endothermic for both the primary and tertiary hydrogen atoms, but more so for primary radical formation, so the tertiary radical is preferred.
Of course, in both brominations and chlorinations the overall reaction is favourable because the second step—the halogenation of the alkyl radical—is significantly exothermic, by about 106 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) for chlorination and about 83 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) for bromination. The same is true for fluorination, but with fluorine this step is so exothermic that fluorination becomes dangerously explosive. Conversely, radical iodination is impossible because the final step is insufficiently exothermic to make up for the endothermic formation of an alkyl radical.

Why is bromination so much more selective than the chlorination of alkanes? This is a good example of the Hammond postulate, applied to real chemistry. Because the products of the first step of the bromination (R\(^•\) plus HBr) are higher in energy than the starting materials, the transition state must be similar in structure and energy to the radical being formed; the difference in energies of the primary and tertiary product radicals should therefore be markedly reflected in the different energies of the transition states TS\(_1\) and TS\(_3\), and \(\Delta G_1^\ddagger\) will be significantly larger than \(\Delta G_3^\ddagger\). For the chlorination reaction, the products were just slightly lower in energy than the starting materials, so the transition states for the two possible reactions both resembled the starting materials rather more and the products rather less. These are the same for both tertiary and primary hydrogen abstractions, of course, so the difference in energy of the product radicals exerts a less pronounced effect on the difference in energy of the transition states.

**Allylic bromination**

Because radical brominations are so selective, they can be used successfully in the laboratory to make alkyl bromides. There are relatively few ways of functionalizing an unfunctionalized centre, and radical allylic bromination is one of the most effective. We introduced this reaction in Chapter 24, where we contrasted the radical reactivity of Br\(_2\) towards alkenes (leading to an allyl bromide by hydrogen abstraction) with its ionic reactivity (leading to addition of bromine across the alkene). We can now look in a little more detail at the selectivities involved.
Here is a typical allylic bromination. NBS (N-bromosuccinimide) is used to form a small amount of Br₂ and to keep the Br₂ concentration low.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NBS, CCl₄, } h\nu &\rightarrow \text{Br₂} & \text{85% yield} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Photolysis of Br₂ initiates the reaction, which then propagates as shown below. The mechanism also illustrates the first aspect of selectivity: only a (green) allylic H atom is abstracted because an allylic C–H bond is considerably weaker than a secondary C–H bond (364 vs. 410 kJ mol⁻¹ from the table on p. 977).

There is a problem with this reaction if bromine itself is used because an alternative radical addition reaction can compete with radical abstraction.

The first step of this competing addition reaction is reversible; the reaction is driven forward by the participation of a second molecule of bromine that traps the product alkyl radical. This side reaction can be prevented if the concentration of Br₂ in the reaction is kept very low, which is the role of NBS. The alternative competing polar addition of Br₂ to the alkene is likewise prevented with the low bromine concentration provided by NBS, although the non-polar solvent CCl₄ also disfavours the formation of the cationic bromonium ion intermediate.

While radical halogenation of alkanes is used only rarely in the laboratory, radical allylic bromination of alkenes is a versatile and commonly used way of making allylic bromides. Nucleophilic substitution reactions can then be used to convert the bromide to other functional groups. For example, some chemists in Manchester needed to make the two diastereoisomers of 5-tert-butyl-cyclohex-2-en-1-ol to study their reactions with osmium tetroxide. tert-Butyl cyclohexene is readily available, so they used a radical allylic bromination to introduce the functional group in the allylic position, which they converted to a hydroxyl group using aqueous base. Steric effects also play a role here in the regioselectivity of the reaction: only the less hindered allylic hydrogen atoms further from the tert-butyl group are removed.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NBS, CCl₄, H₂O, K₂CO₃} &\rightarrow \text{both formed as mixtures of diastereoisomers} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Reversing the selectivity: radical substitution of Br by H**

Radical substitution reactions can also be used to *remove* functional groups from molecules. A useful reagent for this (and, as you will see, for other radical reactions too) is tributyltin.
hydride, Bu₃SnH. The Sn–H bond is weak and Bu₃SnH will react with alkyl halides to replace the halogen atom with H, producing Bu₃SnHal as a by-product.

Clearly, for this reaction to be energetically favourable, the new bonds formed (Sn–Br and C–H) must be stronger than the old bonds broken (Sn–H and C–halogen). Look at this table of average bond energies and you will see that this is indeed so. The use of a tin hydride is crucial to this reaction: Sn–H bonds are weaker than Sn–Br bonds, while, for carbon, C–H bonds are stronger. Bu₃SnH is therefore an effective source of Bu₃Sn• radicals, and the Bu₃Sn• radical will abstract halogens, particularly I or Br, but also Cl, from organic halides, breaking a weak C–halogen (C–Hal) bond and forming a strong Sn–Hal bond. The complete mechanism of the reaction reveals a chain reaction.

Homolysis of Bu₃SnH is promoted by the initiator AIBN

As you would imagine, the weakest C–Hal bonds are the easiest to cleave, so alkyl bromides are reduced more rapidly than alkyl chlorides, and alkyl fluorides are unreactive. With alkyl iodides and bromides, daylight can be sufficient to initiate the reaction, but with alkyl chlorides, and often with alkyl bromides as well, it is generally necessary to produce a higher concentration of Bu₃Sn• radicals by adding an initiator to the reaction. The best choice is usually AIBN, which you met earlier in the chapter (p. 972). This compound undergoes thermal homolysis above 60 °C to give nitrile-stabilized radicals that abstract the hydrogen atom from Bu₃SnH.

Why use AIBN as an initiator; why not a peroxide? Since we want to cleave only a weak Sn–H bond, we can get away with using a relatively unreactive nitrile-stabilized radical. Peroxides, on the other hand, generate RO• radicals. These are highly reactive and will abstract hydrogen from almost any organic molecule, not just the weakly bonded hydrogen atom of Bu₃SnH, and this would lead to side reactions and lack of selectivity. AIBN is needed only in sufficient quantities to be an initiator of the reaction; it is the Bu₃SnH that provides the hydrogen atoms that end up in the product, so usually you need only 0.02 to 0.05 equivalents of AIBN and a slight excess (1.2 equivalents) of Bu₃SnH.
Carbon–carbon bond formation with radicals

You have now met these examples of radical chain reactions:

1. radical addition of halogens to double bonds
2. radical substitution of hydrogen by halogens, or of halogens by hydrogen.

You have seen how the selectivity of these reactions depends upon the bond strengths of the bond being formed or broken. Until about 1975, these reactions, with a few exceptions, were all that were expected of radicals. Since that date, however, the use of radicals in synthetic chemistry has increased tremendously, to the point where complex ring structures such as those of the natural product hirsutene or the steroids can be made from simple acyclic precursors in one radical-promoted step.

What has made this all possible is that chemists have learned how to understand the selectivity of radical reactions to such a degree that they can design starting materials and reagents to define precisely the bonds that will break and form during the reactions. We shall now go on to look at the most important consequence of this ability to control radical reactions: they can be used to make carbon–carbon bonds.

The radical reaction in the margin forms a new carbon–carbon bond. The mechanism is quite similar to that of the very first radical reaction we showed you, right at the beginning of the chapter. Now, with your additional appreciation of the role of bond strength in the selectivity of radical reactions, you should be able to understand why each step proceeds in the way that it does.

First the weakest bond, C–Br, is broken by the light being shone on to the reaction. Two radicals form, CCl₃• and Br•, and it is the CCl₃• that adds to the (less hindered) unsubstituted end of the alkene to produce a (more stable) secondary benzylic radical.

This radical abstracts a Br atom from the BrCCl₃, breaking the (weakest) C–Br bond, forming the product, and regenerating •CCl₃, which adds to another molecule of alkene. Notice that the carbon-centred radical abstracts Br* and not •CCl₃ from BrCCl₃—to abstract •CCl₃ would require a radical substitution at carbon—remember, radicals want the easy pickings from the front of the display; they don’t go nosing round the back to see if there’s anything better to be had.

This reaction works quite well, giving 78% of the product, but it relies on the fact that the starting material, BrCCl₃, has an unusually weak C–Br bond (the •CCl₃ radical is highly stabilized by those three chlorine atoms). You can’t use most other alkyl bromides for a number of reasons, not least of them being that the product is also an alkyl bromide and, without the selectivity provided by the CCl₃ group, the result would be a mixture of polymers. The problem is that we want the product radical to abstract Br from the starting alkyl bromide to make...
a new alkyl bromide and a new starting radical, and there is no energetic driving force behind this transformation.

For a way of overcoming this problem, let’s go back to the reaction we looked at a few pages ago, the dehalogenation of alkyl halides by Bu₃SnH. The mechanism involves formation of an alkyl (carbon-centred) radical by abstraction of Br by Bu₃Sn•. This alkyl radical then just abstracted H• from Bu₃SnH.

Is it not possible to use this alkyl radical more constructively, and encourage it to react with another molecule (an alkene, say, as •CCl₃ did)? The answer is a qualified yes: look at this reaction:

We have added a carbon-centred radical to an alkene in a radical chain reaction! Here is the mechanism:

Something important has happened here: the product radical no longer has to abstract the halogen from the starting material, but instead has to abstract H from Bu₃SnH; it is the Bu₃Sn• thus formed that then regenerates the starting radical. The driving force is provided by formation of C–H at the expense of Sn–H and then Sn–Br at the expense of C–Br.

The use of tin hydrides increases the power of radical reactions in organic synthesis tremendously, and all of the steps in these radical chain processes have been studied in great detail because of the importance of the reactions. We won’t dwell excessively on these details, but we need to go back and re-examine some points about this reaction because there are some further subtleties that you need to understand. Bear in mind that we have four radicals all in the reaction mixture at the same time. Yet each reacts with its chosen partner, forsaking all others.

Let’s take each type of radical in turn, and look at its selectivity. Clearly bond strength has something to do with this, but how do you explain the opposing selectivities of R• and the nitrile-stabilized radicals? We shall see that the origins of the selectivities impose some restrictions on the type of starting material that can be used for these C–C bond-forming reactions.
For the tin radical, Bu₃Sn•, there is a choice of reaction partners: we need it to abstract the halide from the starting material, but it could alternatively add to the alkene. The Sn–C bond is relatively weak, so addition to the alkene becomes a significant reaction only if:

- there is a large excess of alkene present, and
- the starting alkyl halide is relatively unreactive. This means that only alkyl bromides and iodides can be used effectively to form carbon–carbon bonds; alkyl chlorides are just too unreactive.

The contrasting reactivity of the alkyl radical R• and the nitrile-containing radicals needs a little more analysis, and we will look at how both concentration and electronics affect their selectivities.

**Concentration effects**

You know that R• is perfectly capable of abstracting H from Bu₃SnH because that is what happened in the dehalogenation reaction on p. 991, but here a different reaction happens: addition to the alkene. In fact, the rate constant for reaction of R• with Bu₃SnH is about the same as that for reaction with acrylonitrile (CH₂=CHCN), so the only way in which good yields can be obtained is by ensuring that the concentration of acrylonitrile is always at least 10 times that of the tin hydride. The difference in rates will then be sufficient to give 10 times as much addition to the alkene as reduction by the tin hydride. Too much acrylonitrile in the reaction mixture causes problems with side reactions, so a good way of achieving this is to add the tin hydride very slowly during the reaction—often a device known as a syringe pump is used for this. Of course, for complete reaction, a whole equivalent of hydride is necessary, but this can be added over a period of hours.

An elegant alternative is to use a technique conceptually similar to the use of NBS to provide a low concentration of Br₂ for radical allylic substitution. Instead of adding one equivalent of Bu₃SnH, a catalytic amount (usually 0.1–0.2 equivalents) of Bu₃SnCl is added at the beginning of the reaction, with 1 equivalent of NaBH₄. NaBH₄ will reduce Bu₃SnHal to Bu₃SnH, so about 0.1 equivalent of Bu₃SnH is formed immediately. With each cycle of the chain reaction, a molecule of this Bu₃SnH is converted to Bu₃SnBr, which NaBH₄ can reduce back to Bu₃SnH. Only as much Bu₃SnH is produced as is needed because the rate of production is limited by the rate of reaction.

This method was used in the following example, in which an enantiomerically pure lactone, a useful synthetic building block, was made from naturally occurring glyceraldehyde.
Frontier orbital effects

The second key to success in making sure that the alkyl radical behaves well is to use a reactive radical trap. In fact, this is a major limitation of intermolecular radical carbon–carbon bond-forming reactions: for the trapping of alkyl radicals only electrophilic alkenes (attached to electron-withdrawing groups such as –CN, –CO₂Me, and –COMe) will do. This is a limitation, but nonetheless cyclohexyl iodide adds to all these alkenes with the yields shown and the rate of addition to most of these alkenes is 10¹ to 10⁴ times that of addition to 1-hexene.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alkene</th>
<th>% yield</th>
<th>Alkene</th>
<th>% yield</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–CN</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>–CN</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–CN</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>–CN</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>–Ph</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–H</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>–Cl</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To explain why, we have to go back to our analysis (on p. 978) of the electronic structure of radicals and the energy of SOMOs. We said there that, while both electron-withdrawing groups and electron-donating groups will stabilize radicals, electron-withdrawing groups tend to lower the energy of the SOMO, while electron-donating groups tend to raise the energy of the SOMO.

Electrophilic and nucleophilic radicals

- **Low-energy SOMOs** are more willing to accept an electron than to give one up; radicals adjacent to electron-withdrawing groups are therefore **electrophilic**.
- **High-energy SOMOs** are more willing to give up an electron than to accept an electron; radicals adjacent to electron-donating groups are therefore **nucleophilic**.

Hence the preferred reactivity of these alkyl radicals: they are relatively nucleophilic and therefore prefer to react with electrophilic alkenes. Reaction between a nucleophilic alkyl radical and an unfunctionalized (and therefore nucleophilic) alkene is much slower. Similarly, radicals adjacent to electron-withdrawing groups do not react well with electrophilic alkenes. We can represent all this on an energy level diagram.
We can now consider the third type of radical in the reaction mixture highlighted on p. 993—the nitrile-stabilized alkyl radicals. The diagram above explains the third aspect of radical chemoselectivity in the reaction: why both the product radical and the radicals produced by AIBN choose to react with Bu₃SnH and not with acrylonitrile. These radicals are electrophilic—they have an electron-withdrawing nitrile group attached to the radical centre, so reaction with an electron-poor alkene is slow.

### Summary of requirements for the successful use of the tin method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requirement</th>
<th>Bu₃SnH</th>
<th>R–X starting material</th>
<th>Radical trap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Should be added or generated slowly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Must contain a weak C–X bond (C–I or C–Br)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Must be an electrophilic alkene that is at least 10 times the concentration of Bu₃SnH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electrophilic radicals**

Having seen the energy diagram above, you will not be surprised to learn that the malonate radical adds readily to nucleophilic alkenes, but to nucleophilic alkenes, such as this vinyl ether, which carries an electron-donating oxygen substituent. The malonate radical is electron deficient; it has a low-energy SOMO which interacts best with the relatively high-energy HOMO of the electron-rich, nucleophilic alkene.
This difference in reactivity applies to non-carbon-centred radicals too. For example, the methyl radical ‘CH₃’ and the chlorine radical Cl· will both abstract a hydrogen atom from propionic acid. As you would expect, the methyl radical abstracts the hydrogen atom from next to the carbonyl group to form a carbonyl-stabilized radical. Perhaps surprisingly (in view of what we said earlier about the selectivity of radical chlorinations), the chlorine radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from the terminal methyl group of the acid, despite the fact that this C–H bond is stronger. The reason has to be to do with HOMO–LUMO interactions. The methyl radical is nucleophilic, with a high-energy SOMO. It therefore attacks the C–H bond with the lowest LUMO, in other words, α to the carbonyl group. The chlorine atom, on the other hand, is electrophilic: it has a low-energy SOMO (because it is an electronegative element) and attacks the C–H bonds of the terminal methyl group because they have the highest-energy HOMO. Chlorination of functionalized compounds is not as straightforward as that of simple alkanes!

**Copolymerization**

Radical chain reactions are particularly suited to the synthesis of polymers, and there is one example of a polymerization that is worth including here since it demonstrates very nicely the effect of electron-withdrawing or -donating substituents on radical reactivity. When a mixture of vinyl acetate and methyl acrylate is treated with a radical initiator, a rather remarkable polymerization takes place. The polymer produced contains *alternating* vinyl acetate and methyl acrylate monomers along the length of its chain.

The mechanism of the reaction shows you why. The nucleophilic radical from vinyl acetate (adjacent to filled n orbital of OAc; high-energy SOMO) prefers to add to the electrophilic alkene (the acrylate). The new radical (adjacent to the empty π* orbital of CO₂Me; low-energy SOMO) is electrophilic and prefers to add to nucleophilic alkene (the vinyl acetate). This produces a new nucleophilic radical, which again prefers to add to the electrophilic alkene, and the whole cycle occurs repeatedly.

The radical produced by addition to vinyl acetate is nucleophilic, so it adds to methyl acrylate; the radical produced by addition to methyl acrylate is electrophilic, so it adds to vinyl acetate. This reaction is a clear demonstration of the power of frontier orbital theory to explain the reactivity of organic molecules—it would be hard to come up with any other convincing explanation.

**The reactivity pattern of radicals is quite different from that of polar reagents**

The first reaction that you met in this book, in Chapter 6, was nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group. Yet we have shown you no examples of radicals adding to carbonyl groups. This typical reaction of polar reagents is really quite rare with radicals. In Chapter 8 we introduced the concept of pKₐ in which we saw acids and bases exchanging protons. Among the strongest organic acids are those containing O–H bonds. Yet you have seen no radical reactions in which an O–H bond is broken. Carbon acids tend to be much weaker—yet you’ve seen plenty of examples of C–H bonds being broken by radical attack.

In Chapter 15 we introduced nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon, using as an example some alkyl bromides. Now, radicals do react with alkyl halides—but not at carbon! Instead they abstract the halogen, leaving an alkyl radical.
The difference in reactivity between, say, organolithiums and radicals, both of them highly reactive, is nicely illustrated by the way in which they react with enones.

![1,4-addition](image)

We used the terms *hard* and *soft* in Chapters 15 and 22. From all these reactions it’s evident that radicals are very soft species: their reactions are driven not at all by the charge density on an atom but by the strength of the bonds being attacked and by the coefficients and energies of the frontier orbitals. O–H bonds are easily broken by strong bases and C=O bonds attacked by strong nucleophiles because of the polarization in the O–H and C=O bond. O–H and C=O bonds are strong, and radicals care nothing for polarization, so radicals prefer to attack the much weaker C–H bonds which (because they are unpolarized) are often inert towards ionic reagents.

**Summary of typical reactivity patterns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>With</th>
<th>Polar nucleophiles typically react like this</th>
<th>Radicals typically react like this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unsaturated C=O compounds</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="image" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="image" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X–H bonds</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="image" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="image" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkyl halides</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="image" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Alkyl radicals from boranes and oxygen**

Although the tin hydride + alkyl halide method is very efficient, tin compounds are falling out of favour because of their toxicity. The reaction between boranes and oxygen provides a simple alternative, and many of the reactions carried out formerly using the tin hydride radical chemistry of pp. 993–997 can now be done using the method we are about to describe.

Mixing trialkylboranes with α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds in the presence of water gives conjugate addition of one of the alkyl groups from the boron. The carbonyl compound can be an aldehyde (R² = H) or a ketone (R² = alkyl).

![image](image)

There was a dispute at first as to whether this was a radical reaction or an ionic reaction. The ionic reaction might have been a kind of pericyclic reaction with the intermediate boron enolate being hydrolysed by the water.
However, H. C. Brown discovered that the reaction was completely inhibited by just 5% of the stable radical galvinoxyl (shown on p. 975), known to be an efficient scavenger for radicals. But where were the radicals coming from? Further experiments showed that small amounts of oxygen were needed to make the reaction work. As you saw in Chapter 3, oxygen is a triplet diradical and displaces alkyl radicals from the trialkyl borane. This reaction looks at first like an \( S_N2 \) and is called an \( S_H2 \) (second order homolytic displacement), but in reality the oxygen adds to the empty p orbital of planar trigonal boron to release an alkyl radical and start the chain reaction.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}_1 \text{B} & \quad \text{R}_1 \quad \text{OO} \\
& \quad \text{R}_1 \quad \text{B} \quad \text{R}_1
\end{align*}
\]

The alkyl radical now adds to the enone to give a delocalized intermediate that can be represented as a carbon- or oxygen-centred radical.

The chain is completed by displacement of another alkyl radical from a trialkylborane at oxygen by the delocalized radical and the formation of the same boron enolate proposed in the ionic reaction. This alkyl radical adds in its turn to the enone, and the boron enolate which forms is hydrolysed to the ketone product. Only small amounts of oxygen are needed to initiate the chain and it is not surprising that the air around the reaction mixture is enough to start a typical reaction. The water (which is inert to radicals, so can be present in the reaction mixture) again hydrolyses the boron enolate.

By combining a hydroboration step, which forms the borane, with the radical addition it is possible to carry out transformations such as the one below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Me}_3\text{SiO} \\
\text{Bu}_3\text{SnH} & \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{SnH} \\
\text{AIBN} & \quad \text{AIBN} \\
\text{THF, H}_2\text{O, 25 °C} & \quad \text{THF, H}_2\text{O, 25 °C}
\end{align*}
\]

85% yield

**Intramolecular radical reactions are more efficient than intermolecular ones**

All of the reactions you have met so far involve radical attack of one molecule on another. We’ve pointed out some of the drawbacks when C–C bonds are made in this way: the radical trap has to be activated (that is, electrophilic to capture nucleophilic radicals) and must often be present in excess, and the radical starting material must contain very weak C–X bonds (such as C–Br, C–I). The requirements are much less stringent, however, if the radical reaction is intramolecular. For example, this reaction works:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me}_3\text{SiO} & \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{SnH} \\
\text{Bu}_3\text{SnH} & \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{SnH} \\
\text{AIBN} & \quad \text{AIBN} \\
\text{75% yield, mixture of diastereoisomers} & \quad \text{75% yield, mixture of diastereoisomers}
\end{align*}
\]
Notice that the double bond is not activated: in fact, it is nucleophilic, and the reaction still works even though the radical is also substituted with an electron-donating group. The C–S bond that is broken is also relatively strong, yet nonetheless a high yield of product is obtained. Why should this be so? What difference does it make that the reactions are intramolecular?

The key is that the intramolecular cyclization of the radical is now enormously favoured over other possible courses of action for the radical. Remember that when we were carrying out radical reactions intermolecularly, addition to the radical trap was encouraged by increasing the concentration of radical trap and decreasing the concentration of Bu3SnH to avoid radical reduction. For intramolecular reactions, the double bond that acts as the radical trap is always held close to the radical, and cyclization takes place extremely rapidly, even on to unactivated double bonds. The hydride donor (Bu3SnH) doesn’t get a look in, and can be present in higher concentrations than would otherwise be possible. Moreover, as there is only one equivalent of radical trap, and the trap need not be highly reactive, there is little danger of high concentrations of Bu3Sn• reacting with it, so the concentration of Bu3Sn• can build up to levels where the rate of abstraction of groups like Cl, SPh, and SePh is acceptable, despite their stronger C–X bonds.

For all these reasons, intramolecular radical reactions are very powerful, and are often used to make five-membered rings.

It is possible to make other ring sizes also, but the range is rather limited. Because of ring strain, three- and four-membered rings cannot be formed by radical reactions. Otherwise, smaller rings form faster than larger ones: look at these selectivities.
The preference for formation of a smaller ring is a very powerful one: in this reaction, the five-membered ring forms and not the six-membered one, even though cyclization to give a six-membered ring would also give a more stabilized radical.

We said earlier that the toxicity of tin poses some problems, so it is useful that the borane–oxygen method (p. 998) works well for initiating radical cyclizations too. It is not necessary to incorporate boron into the starting material, since a combination of Et₃B, O₂, and hypophosphorous acid, H₃PO₂, can generate a radical from a halide which will cyclize in the same way as the tin-promoted examples you have just seen. Once again, a five-membered ring is preferred to the alternative six-membered ring.

Notice that the ethyl groups from Et₃B are not incorporated into the product. The displacement of Et• from Et₃B initiates the chain reaction by abstracting the iodine atom from the starting material. The radical cyclizes to give a five-membered ring, as expected. A cis ring junction is inevitable because of the acetal ‘tether’.

The product radical has to collect a hydrogen from somewhere, and this is the role of the hypophosphorous acid. Abstraction of H gives a radical that can be drawn either as P-centred or O-centred.
The chain is finally completed by a hydrogen abstraction from $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_2$, which gives a radical that attacks the borane, just like oxygen did in the initiation step. A new ethyl radical is generated, which starts the cycle again.

![Diagram of radical reactions]

**Looking forward**

Radicals are important because they react in ways difficult to achieve with anions and cations, and show usefully different selectivity. Although radical reactions are generally less important than ionic reactions, environmental and biological radical reactions are remarkably common in an atmosphere that is 20% oxygen diradical. Diradicals will feature to a greater extent in the next chapter, in which we move on from carbon atoms carrying seven valence electrons to carbon atoms carrying only six valence electrons, called *carbenes*.

**Further reading**


The evidence that the McMurry reaction happens on a metal surface is quite nice, though, and if you’re interested you can read McMurry’s own account of it in *Accounts of Chemical Research*, 1983, 16, 405 and J. E. McMurry, *Chem. Rev.*, 1989, 89, 1513.


The borane-oxygen method of making radicals is reviewed by C. Ollivier and P. Renaud in *Chemical Reviews*, 2001, 101, 3415. In common with most *Chemical Reviews*, this is a long scholarly article but reviews like this are essential to chemists wanting to know about a new reagent, method, or synthesis.

**Check your understanding**

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Synthesis and reactions of carbenes

Diazomethane makes methyl esters from carboxylic acids

In 1981, some chemists in Pennsylvania needed to convert this carboxylic acid into its methyl ester as part of the synthesis of an antibiotic compound. What reagent did they choose to do the reaction?

You remember, of course, that esters can be made from carboxylic acids and alcohols under acid catalysis, so you might expect them to use this type of method. On a small scale, it’s usually better to convert the acid to an acyl chloride before coupling with an alcohol, using pyridine (or DMAP) as a base; this type of reaction might have been a reasonable choice too.

But, in fact, they chose neither of these methods. Instead, they simply treated the carboxylic acid with a compound called diazomethane, CH₂N₂, and isolated the methyl ester.
Diazomethane, CH_2N_2, is a rather curious compound that has to be drawn as a dipole. There are several different ways of expressing its structure.

Diazomethane methylates carboxylic acids because carboxylic acids readily protonate it, giving an extremely unstable diazonium cation. This compound is desperate to lose N_2, the world’s best leaving group, and so it does, with the N_2 being substituted by the carboxylate anion. The carboxylate anion is in exactly the right position to carry out the S_N2 reaction shown below.

Diazomethane methylation is a good way of making methyl esters from carboxylic acids on a small scale because yields are excellent and the only by-product is nitrogen. However, there is a drawback: diazomethane has a boiling point of –24 °C, and it is a toxic and highly explosive gas. It therefore has to be used in solution, usually in ether; the solution must be dilute, because concentrated solutions of diazomethane are also explosive. It is usually produced by reaction of N-methyl-N-nitrosourea or N-methyl-N-nitrosotoluenesulfonamide with base, and distilled out of that reaction mixture as an azeotrope with ether, straight into a solution of the carboxylic acid.

Conveniently, solutions containing diazomethane are yellow, so the reaction is self-titrating—as the carboxylic acid reacts, the yellow diazomethane is removed, but as long as excess diazomethane remains the yellow colour persists.

The mechanism of the reaction that forms diazomethane is shown below. The key step is base-catalysed elimination, although the curly arrows we have to draw to represent this are rather tortuous!

Diazomethane will also methylate phenols because they too are acidic enough to protonate it. Ordinary alcohols, though, are not methylated because they are not strong enough acids to protonate diazomethane.
Selective methylation

Chemists studying the hormone degradation products present in the urine of pregnant women needed to methylate the phenolic hydroxyl group of the steroid oestriol. By using diazomethane, they avoided reaction at the two other hydroxyl groups. When, subsequently, they did want to methylate the other two hydroxyl groups, they had to add acid (HBF₄⁻) to the reaction to protonate the diazomethane.

![Chemical structures](image)

Photolysis of diazomethane produces a carbene

Alcohols can be methylated by diazomethane if the mixture is irradiated with light.

\[
\text{OH} + \text{CH}_2\text{N}_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} \text{OMe} \quad \text{low yield}
\]

The mechanism is now totally different because the light energy promotes loss of nitrogen (N₂) from the molecule without protonation. This means that what is left behind is a carbon atom carrying just two hydrogen atoms (CH₂), and having only six electrons. Species like this are called carbenes, and they are the subject of this chapter.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

- Carbenes are neutral species containing a carbon atom with only six valence electrons.

The six electrons of a carbene are located two in each bond, plus two non-bonding electrons often represented as :CR₂ (as though they were a lone pair). As you will see later, this can be misleading, but :CR₂ is a widely used symbol for a carbene. In the case of :CH₂ generated from diazomethane, the carbene is trapped by the alcohol to make an ether.

Like the radicals in Chapter 37, carbenes are extremely reactive species. More important than their reaction with alcohols to make ethers are their reactions with alkenes to make cyclopropanes and their insertion into C–H bonds.

![Carbene reactions diagram](image)

- Typical carbene reactions

  The carbene inserts itself into a σ bond or a π bond.

  - Insertion in an O–H bond
  - Insertion in a C=C bond
  - Insertion in a C–H bond

We will discuss the mechanisms of these three important reactions shortly, but we have introduced them to you now because they demonstrate that the reactions of carbenes are dominated by insertion (here, insertion into O–H, C=C, and C–H) driven by their extreme...
electrophilicity. A carbon atom with only six electrons will do almost anything to get another two!

**How do we know that carbenes exist?**

The best evidence for the existence of carbenes comes from a group of structures which contain a carbene but are stable compounds. The most important of these are known as the ‘N-heterocyclic carbenes’—the carbene is incorporated into a five-membered ring and stabilized by the presence of two adjacent electron-donating nitrogen atoms and the bulky N-substituents. The example below was first made in 1991: it is crystalline, and its X-ray crystal shows the bond angle at the carbene carbon to be 102°, and 13C NMR confirms that the carbene C atom is electron deficient. We will come back to the significance of this later.

These stable carbenes are very much the exception: most carbenes are too reactive to be isolated. Reactive carbenes can, however, be observed by irradiating precursors (often diazo compounds like diazomethane, which we have just been discussing) trapped in frozen argon at very low temperatures (less than 77 K). IR and ESR spectroscopy (see p. 975) can then be used to determine their structure.

**Ways to make carbenes**

Carbenes are usually formed from precursors by the loss of small, stable molecules. We will discuss some of the most important methods in turn, but you have already seen one in action: the loss of nitrogen from a diazo compound.

**Carbenes from diazo compounds**

We showed you the formation of a carbene from diazomethane to illustrate how this reaction was different from the (ionic) methylation of carboxylic acids. But this is not a very practical way of generating carbenes, not least because of the explosive nature of diazalkanes. However, diazocarbonyl compounds are a different matter.

They are much more stable, because the electron-withdrawing carbonyl group stabilizes the diazo dipole, and are very useful sources of carbenes carrying a carbonyl substituent. There are two main ways of making diazocarbonyl compounds:

1. by reacting an acyl chloride with diazomethane

   ![Diazoalkane reaction](image)

   **Diazoalkane reaction**

2. by reacting the parent carbonyl compound with tosyl azide, TsN₃, in the presence of base.

   ![Tosyl azide reaction](image)

   **Tosyl azide reaction**
The reaction of diazomethane with acyl chlorides starts as a simple acylation to give a diazonium compound. If there is an excess of diazomethane, a second molecule acts as a base to remove a rather acidic proton between the carbonyl and the diazonium groups to give the diazocarbonyl compound.

\[ \text{RCl} + \text{H}_2\text{C}=\text{NN} \rightarrow \text{R} = \text{C} = \text{NO} + \text{MeCl} \]

What happens to that second molecule of diazomethane? By collecting a proton it turns into the very reactive diazonium salt, which collects a chloride ion, and MeCl is given off as a gas. The second method uses tosyl azide, which is just N\(_2\) attached to a good leaving group.

\[ \text{tosyl azide, TsN}_3 + \text{R} = \text{C} = \text{NO} \rightarrow \text{R} = \text{C} = \text{N} + \text{MeSO}_2\text{NH}_2 + \text{MeCl} \]

Diazocarbonyl compounds can be decomposed to carbenes by heat or light. The loss of gaseous nitrogen compensates energetically for the formation of the unstable carbene.

\[ \text{R} = \text{C} = \text{N} \rightarrow \text{R} = \text{C} + \text{N}_2 \]

It is much more common in modern chemistry to use a transition metal, such as copper or rhodium, to promote formation of the carbene.

\[ \text{RhL}_n \text{RC} = \text{N} \rightarrow \text{RH} = \text{C} + \text{N}_2 \]

Carbenes formed in this way are, in fact, not true carbenes because they remain complexed with the metal used to form them. They are known as carbenoids, and their reactions are discussed later in the chapter.

**Fischer carbenes**

While these rhodium and copper carbenoids are unstable, some transition metals such as tungsten and chromium form stable, isolable carbenoids, called metallocarbenes or Fischer carbenes.

\[ \text{Cr(CO)}_6 \quad \text{W(CO)}_5 \]

**Carbenes from tosylhydrazones**

Many more carbenes can be made safely from diazoalkanes if the diazoalkane is just an intermediate in the reaction and not the starting material. Good starting materials for these reactions are tosylhydrazones, which produce transient diazo compounds by base-catalysed elimination of toluenesulfinate. The diazo compound is not normally isolated, and decomposes to the carbene on heating.
Carbenes are formed in a number of other similar reactions—for example, loss of carbon monoxide from ketenes or elimination of nitrogen from azirines—but these are rarely used as a way of deliberately making carbenes.

**Carbene formation by α elimination**

In Chapter 17 we discussed β elimination in detail—reactions in which a hydrogen atom is removed from the carbon atom β to the leaving group. α Eliminations (eliminations in which both the proton and the leaving group are located on the same atom) are also possible—in fact, the reaction we've just been talking about (elimination of toluenesulfitinate from tosylhydrazones) is an α elimination. α Eliminations follow a mechanism akin to an E1cB β elimination—a strong base removes an acidic proton adjacent to an electron-withdrawing group to give a carbanion. Loss of a leaving group from the carbanion creates a carbene.

One of the best known α elimination reactions occurs when chloroform is treated with base. This is the most important way of making dichlorocarbene, :CCl₂, and other dihalocarbenes too, although it must be said that the widespread use of dichlorocarbene in chemistry is due mainly to the ease with which it can be made using this method!

Hydroxide and alkoxide anions are strong enough bases to promote α elimination from chloroform, and from other trihalomethanes. Carbenes can be formed from dihaloalkanes by deprotonation with stronger bases such as LDA, and even from primary alkyl chlorides using the extremely powerful bases phenylsodium or t-BuLi/t-BuOK (weaker bases just cause β elimination).

It is unfortunate that the term carbenoid is used for two distinct classes of molecule—usually it refers to the transition-metal bound carbene formed by metal-catalysed decomposition of diazo compounds (see p. 1018)—and for this reason the carbenoids that we are discussing here are best referred to as 'lithium carbenoids', with the metal specified.

When geminal dibromoalkanes are treated with BuLi, a halogen–metal exchange reaction produces a lithium carbenoid, with a metal atom and a halogen attached to the same carbon atom. Lithium carbenoids are stable at very low temperatures—they can be observed by NMR, but they decompose to carbenes at about −100 °C.
The essence of this type of carbenoid is that it should have a leaving group, such as a halogen, that can accept a pair of electrons and another, usually a metal, that can donate a pair of electrons. If the metal leaves first, a carbanion is created that can lose the halogen to make a carbene. They might also leave together. Both mechanisms are $\alpha$ eliminations.

While lithium carbenoids have limited applicability, an analogous zinc carbenoid, which can be formed by insertion of zinc into diiodomethane, is a reagent in one of the most widely used carbenoid reactions in chemistry—the Simmons–Smith reaction.

The problem with many of these reactions is that they require strong bases—either the organometallic compound itself is basic or a base must be used to create the carbanion. Carbenes are so unstable that they must be formed in the presence of the compound they are intended to react with, and this can be a problem if that compound is base-sensitive. For dichlorocarbene, a way round the problem is to make the carbanion by losing CO$_2$ instead of a metal or a proton. Decarboxylation of sodium trichloroacetate is ideal as it happens at about 80 °C in solution.

**Carbene formation by deprotonation of a cation**

Our final method is in some ways the most straightforward in terms of mechanism: simple removal of a proton from a stable cation. This is the method used to make very stable carbenes, and it works because both the cation used as the starting material and the carbene product are stabilized by one or more adjacent lone pairs. Here is an example. Imidazoles are nucleophilic, and can be alkylated to give relatively stable imidazolium cations, which we can represent with the charge delocalized between the two nitrogen atoms, although there is another possible representation with the charge on carbon.

When the imidazolium cation is treated with a strong base, for example sodium hydride, the proton of this central, partially positively charged carbon is removed, to give a compound which initially looks like a carbanion.
But we can use a curly arrow to move the negative charge towards the positively charged nitrogen, leaving a neutral species with a lone pair at carbon. A close look at the central carbon shows, however, that it has only two substituents—it is a carbene. Carbines with adjacent lone pairs can often be thought of in this way, the lone pair partially delocalized onto the C atom to help stabilize the electron-deficient carbene.

● Summary: the most important ways of making carbenes

Carbenes are neutral species containing a carbon atom with only six valence electrons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of carbene</th>
<th>Method of formation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>metal (rhodium or copper)-catalysed decomposition of diazocarbonyl compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R C</td>
<td>thermal decomposition of diazo compound, often derived from tosylhydrazone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl C Cl</td>
<td>α elimination of chloroform with base or decarboxylation of trichloroacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R C X</td>
<td>Deprotonation of R CH=X+ cation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carbenes can be divided into two types

We made two important observations in the box on p. 1016 regarding the structure of carbenes that we will now return to and seek an explanation for. Firstly, we said that the X-ray crystal structure of the stable, crystalline carbene on the left shows that the bond angle at the carbene C is 102° and, secondly, we said that many carbenes can be observed by ESR—in other words, they have unpaired electrons.

Spectroscopic investigations of a number of carbenes of differing structures have shown that they fall broadly into two groups: (1) those (which you will learn to call ‘triplets’) that ESR spectroscopy demonstrates have unpaired electrons and whose bond angles are 130–150° and (2) those (like the stable crystalline carbene above, and which you will learn to call ‘singlets’) that have bond angles of 100–110° but cannot be observed by ESR. Many carbenes, like CH₂ itself, can be found in either group, although one may be more common.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type 1: triplet carbenes</th>
<th>Type 2: singlet carbenes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bond angle 130–150°</td>
<td>bond angle 100–110°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observable by ESR</td>
<td>all electrons paired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::CH₂</td>
<td>::CCl₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::CPH₂</td>
<td>::CHCl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>::CHR</td>
<td>::C(OMe)₂</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All these observations can be accounted for by considering the electronic structure of a carbene. Carbines have two-coordinate carbon atoms: you might therefore expect them to have a linear (diagonal) structure—like that of an alkyne—with an sp hybridized carbon atom.
Such a linear carbene would have six electrons to distribute amongst two σ orbitals and two (higher-energy) p orbitals. The two electrons in the degenerate p orbitals would remain unpaired because of electron repulsion in the same way as in molecular oxygen •O–O•.

Yet few carbenes are linear: most are bent, with bond angles between 100° and 150°, suggesting a trigonal (sp$^2$) hybridization state. An sp$^2$ hybridized carbene would have three (lower-energy) sp$^2$ orbitals and one (high-energy) p orbital in which to distribute its six electrons. There are two ways of doing this. Either all of the electrons can be paired, with each pair occupying one of the sp$^2$ orbitals, or two of the electrons can remain unpaired, with one electron in each of the p orbitals and one of the sp$^2$ orbitals.

These two possibilities explain our two observed classes of carbene, and the two possible arrangements of electrons (spin states) are termed triplet and singlet. The orbitals are the same in both cases but in triplet carbenes we have one electron in each of two molecular orbitals and in singlet carbenes both electrons go into the sp$^2$ orbital.

Singlet and triplet carbenes

Triplet carbenes have two unpaired electrons, one in each of an sp and a p orbital, while singlet carbenes have a pair of electrons in a non-bonding sp$^2$ orbital and have an empty p orbital.
The existence of the two spin states explains the different behaviour of triplet and singlet carbenes towards ESR spectroscopy; the orbital occupancy also explains the smaller bond angle in singlet carbenes, which have an electron-repelling lone pair in an sp² orbital.

### Triplet carbenes

Two unpaired electrons: observable by ESR

Larger bond angle (130–150°)

Only one electron; less repulsion

### Singlet carbenes

No unpaired electrons: not observable by ESR

Smaller bond angle (100–110°)

Two electrons; more repulsion

In the table on p. 1010 we saw that the substituents on the carbene affect which of the two classes (which we now call singlet and triplet) it falls into. Why? All carbenes have the potential to exist in either the singlet or the triplet state, so what we mean when we say that a carbene such as :CH₂ is a ‘triplet carbene’ is that the triplet state for this carbene is lower in energy than the singlet state. The opposite is true for :CCl₂. Most type of carbenes are more stable as triplets because the energy to be gained by bringing the electron in the p orbital down into the sp² orbital is insufficient to overcome the repulsion that exists between two electrons in a single orbital.

For most triplet carbenes the singlet spin state that would arise by pairing up the two electrons lies only about 40 kJ mol⁻¹ above the ground (triplet) state: in other words, 40 kJ mol⁻¹ is required to pair up the two electrons.

Carbenes that have singlet ground states (such as :CCl₂) all have electron-rich substituents carrying lone pairs adjacent to the carbene centre. These lone pairs can interact with the p orbital of the carbene to produce a new, lower-energy orbital which the two electrons occupy. This stabilization of the lone pair provides the incentive that the electron in the p orbital needs to pair up in the sp² orbital.

This interaction corresponds to the point we made above about adjacent lone pairs stabilizing carbenes via the delocalization shown in the margin. As these arrows suggest, carbenes that have heavily electron-donating substituents are less electrophilic than other carbenes: indeed, diamino carbenes can be quite nucleophilic. The division of carbenes into two types explains...
their structure. It also helps to explain some of their reactions, especially those that have a stereochemical implication. We will spend the rest of this chapter discussing how carbenes react.

**The structure of carbenes depends on how they are made**

So far we have considered only the most stable possible structure, singlet or triplet, of a given carbene. In reality, a carbene will be formed in a chemical reaction and may well be formed as the less stable of the alternatives. If a reaction occurs by an ionic mechanism on a molecule with all electrons paired (as most molecules are!) then it must be formed as a singlet. Follow the α elimination mechanism, for example.

The starting material, a molecule of chloroform CHCl₃, has all paired electrons. The C–H σ bond breaks and the two paired electrons from it form the lone pair of the carbanion. The carbanion also has all paired electrons. The two paired electrons of one of the C–Cl bonds leaves the carbanion and the carbene is formed. It has two paired electrons in each of the two remaining C–Cl bonds and the lone pair, also paired. It is formed as a singlet. As it happens, the singlet version of CCl₂ is also the more stable. But if the carbene were instead CH₂ and if it reacted rapidly, it might not have a chance to change into the more stable triplet state. Since carbenes are very reactive, this question can be important. In explaining their reactions in the next section we shall need to consider:

- how the carbene was formed
- how rapidly it reacts
- whether it can change into the other state (singlet or triplet).

**How do carbenes react?**

Carbenes are desperate to find another pair of electrons with which to complete their valence shell of electrons. In this respect they are like carbocations. Like carbocations, they are electrophilic but, unlike carbocations, they are uncharged. This has consequences for the type of nucleophiles carbenes choose to react with. Carbocations attack nucleophiles with high charge density—those carrying a negative or partial negative charge (think of the type of nucleophiles that will take part in S₈ or Friedel–Crafts reactions). Carbenes, on the other hand, attack compounds we’d normally never consider as nucleophiles—even simple alkanes—by taking electrons from their HOMO. Of course, a carbocation will usually react with the HOMO of a molecule, but it will be much more selective about which HOMOs will do—usually these have to be lone pairs or electron-rich alkenes. For carbenes, any HOMO will do—a lone pair, a C=O double bond (electron-rich or -poor), or even a C–H bond.

As you will see (and as we generalized at the beginning of the chapter), many of these reactions can be considered as insertion reactions—overall the carbene appears to have found a bond and inserted itself in the middle of it. It’s important to remember that the term ‘insertion’ describes the overall consequence of the reaction, but isn’t always an accurate description of the reaction’s mechanism.

**Carbenes react with alkenes to give cyclopropanes**

This reaction is the most important way of making cyclopropanes, and is probably the most important reaction of carbenes. The mechanism of this type of reaction (an example is shown in the margin) depends on whether the carbene is a singlet or a triplet, and the outcome of the reaction can provide our first chemical test of the conclusions we came to in the
previous section. Singlet carbenes, like this one here (remember that substituents with lone pairs stabilize the singlet spin state) can add to alkenes in an entirely concerted manner: the curly arrows for the process can be written as shown in the margin.

Because the process is concerted, we expect that the geometry of the alkene should be preserved in the product—the reaction ought to be stereospecific. The two examples below show that this is indeed the case. It is more impressive that the Z alkene gives the cis-cyclopropane as this is less stable than the trans-cyclopropane and would change to E if it could.

The alkene insertion reaction is stereospecific only for singlet carbenes. For triplet carbenes, the reaction is non-stereospecific. In the example below, a triplet carbene gives a mixture of cyclopropane diastereoisomers from a pure Z alkene.

The mechanism of the reaction must be different with a triplet carbene. In fact, a concerted reaction is impossible for triplet carbenes because of the spins of the electrons involved. The spins of a triplet carbene aren’t paired, so once the carbene has added to the alkene in a radical reaction, the diradical (triplet) intermediate must wait until one of the spins inverts (‘flips’) before the second C–C bond can be formed with paired electrons.

Spin-flipping, which can occur only through collision with another molecule (of solvent usually), is relatively slow on the time-scale of molecular rotations and, by the time the electrons are in a fit state to pair up, the stereochemistry of the starting material has been scrambled by free rotation in the intermediate.
The same constraints arising from the need for conservation of electron spin apply to the formation as well as to the reaction of carbenes. When a carbene forms by α elimination, say, from a molecule with all electrons paired, it must be formed as the singlet, whether or not the triplet state is lower in energy. Only later may the carbene undergo spin-flipping to the triplet state. Since most carbene reactions are very rapid, this means that carbenes that are known to have triplet ground states may, in fact, react in their first-formed singlet state because they don’t have time to spin-flip to the triplet. This is true for :CH₂, produced from CH₂N₂, which adds stereospecifically to double bonds because it is formed as a singlet and because the singlet state is more reactive than the triplet.

**Some evidence for triplet carbenes in cyclopropane formation**

If the reaction is diluted with a large amount of an inert solvent such as C₃F₈ (perfluoropropane) then :CH₂ undergoes more collisions before it reacts and so the chances of spin-flipping of singlet :CH₂ to triplet :CH₂ is increased. Addition to alkenes is then less stereospecific.

![Interactive comparison of singlet and triplet carbenes in cyclopropane formation](image)

Stereospecificity (or lack of it) in the addition of a carbene to an alkene can be a good test of whether the carbene reacts as a singlet or triplet: lack of stereospecificity in a carbene addition almost certainly indicates that a triplet carbene is involved, but the fact that an addition is stereospecific doesn’t mean that the carbene must be a singlet. In some cases, bond rotation may be quite slow, and spin-flipping rapid, leading to stereospecific addition. Notice that in this example the less stable cis (Z) alkene was used: the reaction will give the less encumbered trans-cyclopropane if it can.

The addition of a triplet carbene to an alkene can be considered to be rather like a radical addition to a double bond. The concerted addition of a singlet carbene, on the other hand, is a pericyclic reaction, and from Chapter 34 you should be able to classify it as a [1 + 2] cycloaddition.

Addition of triplet carbenes is a radical reaction

Addition of singlet carbenes is a [1+2] cycloaddition

As a cycloaddition, singlet carbene addition to an alkene must obey the rules of orbital symmetry discussed in Chapters 34 and 35. We might consider the empty p orbital of the carbene (LUMO) interacting with the π bond (HOMO) of the alkene or the lone pair of the carbene in its filled sp² orbital (HOMO) interacting with the π* antibonding orbital of the alkene (LUMO).

![Interactive examples of other cheletropic reactions with SO₂](image)

You can immediately see that there is a problem when we try to interact these orbitals constructively to build two new bonds—direct approach of the carbene to the alkene is impossible because there is always an antibonding interaction. Two new bonds can be formed, however, if the carbene approaches the alkene in a ‘sideways-on’ manner.
The cyclopropane product must, of course, have a more or less tetrahedral arrangement about the carbon atom that was the carbene so that, even if the carbene approaches in a sideways-on manner, it must then swing round through 90° as the bonds form.

Making cyclopropanes

Many natural products and biologically active compounds contain cyclopropane rings: we shall feature just a few. First, a most important natural insecticide, a pyrethrin from the East African pyrethrum daisy, and its synthetic analogue decamethrin, one of the most important insecticides in agriculture. Very low doses of this highly active and non-persistent insecticide are needed.

The ‘ozone’ or ‘iodine’ smell of the sea has nothing to do with O₃ or I₂. It’s more likely a dictyopterene, a family of volatile cyclopropanes used by female brown algae to attract male gametes.

Other cyclopropanes include two natural but highly unusual amino acids. Hypoglycin is a blood sugar level lowering agent from the unripe fruit of the ackee tree. It’s the causative agent of Jamaican vomiting sickness. Don’t eat the green ackee.

The second and simpler amino acid is found in apples, pears, and grapefruit, and encourages fruit ripening by degradation to ethylene.

Our last and most extraordinary example is an antifungal antibiotic first synthesized in 1996 and containing no fewer than five cyclopropanes. It has the prosaic name FR-900848 but is known unofficially as ‘jawsamycin’.
Most chemical syntheses of compounds containing cyclopropyl groups make use of the addition of a carbene, or carbene equivalent, to an alkene. What do we mean by carbene equivalent? Usually, this is a molecule that has the potential to form a carbene, although it may not actually react via a carbene intermediate. One such example is the zinc carbenoid formed when diiodomethane reacts with zinc metal (most conveniently as a mixture with copper—a ‘zinc–copper couple’). It reacts with alkenes just as a carbene would—it undergoes addition to the π bond and produces a cyclopropane.

The reaction is known as the Simmons–Smith reaction, after the two chemists at the DuPont chemical factory who discovered it in 1958. Even after several decades, it is the most important way of making cyclopropane compounds, although nowadays a variant that uses more easily handled starting materials is often used. Diethyl zinc replaces the Zn/Cu couple of the traditional Simmons–Smith reaction. In this example, a double cyclopropanation on a C_2 symmetric diene derived from tartaric acid gives very good stereoselectivity for reasons we will soon discuss.

The mechanism of the Simmons–Smith reaction appears to be a carbene transfer from the metal to the alkene without any free carbene being released. It may look something like this.

Some of the evidence for this comes from a reaction that not only throws light on to the mechanism of Simmons–Smith cyclopropanations, but makes them of even greater value in synthesis. When an allylic alcohol is cyclopropanated, the new methylene group adds stereoselectively to the same face of the double bond as the hydroxyl group.

Allylic alcohols are also cyclopropanated over 100 times faster than their unfunctionalized alkene equivalents. Coordination between the zinc atom and the hydroxyl group in the transition state explains both the stereoselectivity and the rate increase. Unfortunately, while the Simmons–Smith reaction works well when a methylene (CH_2) group is being transferred, it is less good with substituted methylene groups (RCH: or R_2C:).

The carbene derived by metal-catalysed decomposition of ethyl diazoacetate attacks alkenes to introduce a two-carbon fragment into a cyclopropane—an industrial synthesis of ethyl chrysanthenate, a precursor to the pyrethrin insecticides (see p. 1016), uses this reaction. The diene in the starting material is more nucleophilic (has a higher energy HOMO; see Chapter 19) than the single alkene in the product, so the reaction can be stopped after one carbene addition.
The intramolecular version of this reaction is more reliable, and has often been used to make compounds containing multiply substituted cyclopropanes. Corey made use of it in a synthesis of sirenin, the sperm-attractant of a female water mould.

As you might imagine, carbenes like this, substituted with electron-withdrawing carbonyl groups, are even more powerful electrophiles than carbenes like :CCl₂, and will even add to the double bonds of benzene. The product is not stable, but immediately undergoes electrocyclic ring opening.

**Comparison of ‘-enoid’ reagents**

Before we leave this section on cyclopropanes, we want you to take a step back from simply thinking about carbenes, and consider the types of reagents that form three-membered rings generally. They all have something in common, which we could call ‘-enoid’ character. Cyclopropanes form when a carbene (which, in the singlet state, has an empty, electrophilic p orbital and a full, nominally nucleophilic sp² orbital) attacks alkenes. The Simmons–Smith carbenoid is not a carbene, but nonetheless has a carbon atom with joint nucleophilic (alkyl zinc) and electrophilic (alkyl iodide) character. When you think about it, the same is true for peracid epoxidation, which forms the oxygen analogue of a cyclopropane by attacking an alkene using an oxygen atom bearing both a lone pair (nucleophilic) and a carboxylate leaving group (electrophilic). It’s an ‘oxenoid’. In Chapter 27 you met other reagents that form cyclopropanes and epoxides by transferring CH₂—sulfonium ylids. These yet again have a carbon atom carrying both a negative charge and a leaving group. You can consider them to be particularly stable carbenoids.

**Insertion into C–H bonds**

We said that the formation of cyclopropanes by addition of substituted carbenes to alkenes was rare—in fact, alkyl-substituted carbenes undergo very few intermolecular reactions at all because they decompose very rapidly. When primary alkyl halides are treated with base, alkenes are formed by elimination. Having read Chapter 17, you should expect
the mechanism of this elimination to be E2 and, if you started with a deuterated compound like this, the alkene product would be labelled with two deuterium atoms at its terminus.

This is indeed what happens if the base is sodium methoxide ($pK_a[\text{MeOH}]$ about 16). If, however, it is phenylsodium ($pK_a[\text{benzene}]$ about 50), only 6% of the product is labelled in this way while 94% of the product has only one deuterium atom.

Evidently a hydrogen atom has ‘migrated’ from the 2-position to the 1-position. The overall mechanism of the elimination with very strong bases like phenylsodium is thought to be: (1) formation of a carbene by $\alpha$ elimination and then (2) 1,2-migration of a hydrogen atom on to the carbene centre. Carbones with $\beta$ hydrogens undergo extremely rapid 1,2-migration of hydrogen to the carbene centre, giving alkenes.

The reason for the rapid migration is that the electrophilic carbene has found a nearby source of electrons—the HOMO of the C–H bond—and it has grabbed the electrons for itself, ‘inserting’ into the C–H bond, as shown in the margin.

This type of reaction is better demonstrated by two examples in which the ‘insertion reaction’ is a bit more obvious: when there are no $\beta$ hydrogens, the carbene inserts into C–H bonds a little further away in the same molecule or even in the solvent (cyclohexane in the second example). In the first case, the carbene is formed by $\alpha$ elimination (using one of the ‘Schlosser bases’, see p. 1008) and, in the second case, by photolysis of a diazoketone.

Because these insertion reactions create new bonds at completely unfunctionalized centres, they can be very useful in synthesis. This next carbene is created between two carbonyl groups from a diazocompound with rhodium catalysis and selectively inserts into a C–H bond five atoms away to form a substituted cyclopentanone.
Pentalenolactone synthesis using carbenes

Pentalenolactone is the name given to an antibiotic extracted from Streptomyces fungi with an interesting tricyclic structure.

Two groups of chemists, within one year of each other, published syntheses of this compound using rhodium-promoted carbene insertions into C–H bonds. Cane’s insertion reaction (route 1) proceeds stereospecifically with retention of stereochemistry. This is excellent evidence for a concerted singlet carbene reaction. In Taber’s synthesis, the carbene inserts into the six-membered tetrahydropyran ring selectively to give the less strained 5,5-trans ring junction.

![route 1: Cane’s synthesis of pentalenolactone](image1)

![route 2: Taber’s synthesis of pentalenolactone](image2)

In these C–H insertion reactions, the similarity with cyclopropane formation by insertion into alkenes is clear, and the mechanisms mirror one another quite closely. As with the cyclopropanation reactions, the mechanism depends on whether the carbene is a singlet or triplet. Singlet carbenes can insert in a concerted manner, with the orbitals overlapping constructively provided the carbene approaches side-on.

![orbital interactions during the insertion of a singlet carbene into a C–H bond](image3)

This mechanism implies that, if the C–H bond is at a stereogenic centre, the stereochemistry at that centre will be retained through the reaction, as in Cane’s synthesis of pentalenolactone (see box above). A nice example of this result is this ingenious synthesis of α-cuparenone using a stereospecific carbene insertion.

![α-cuparenone](image4)

**Rearrangement reactions**

We talked just at the beginning of this section about migration reactions of hydrogen on to carbenes to give alkenes, and said that these reactions can be viewed as insertion reactions of...
carbenes into adjacent C–H bonds. Carbenes with no β hydrogens often insert into other C–H bonds in the molecule. However, carbenes with no β-hydrogen atoms can also undergo rearrangement reactions with alkyl or aryl groups migrating.

The most common example of this type of migration is that in which the carbene is adjacent to a carbonyl group. The initial product of what is known as the Wolff rearrangement is a ketene, which cannot be isolated but is hydrolysed to the acid in the work-up. Wolff rearrangement is a typical result of heating diazoketones, although as you saw above (p. 1019) these species also undergo intramolecular C–H insertion reactions.

One important application of this reaction is the chain extension of acyl chlorides to their homologous esters, known as the Arndt–Eistert reaction. Notice that the starting material for the Wolff rearrangement is easily made from RCO₂H by reaction of the acyl chloride with diazomethane; the product is RCH₂CO₂H—the carboxylic acid with one more carbon atom in the chain. A CH₂ group, marked in green, comes from diazomethane and is inserted into the C–C bond between R and the carbonyl group.

A synthesis of grandisol using the Arndt–Eistert chain extension

The boll weevil is a serious pest of cotton bushes, and it produces a sex pheromone known as grandisol. A common strategy for preventing insect damage in agriculture is to lure the weevils into a trap using synthetic versions of their own sex pheromones, and chemists soon showed that it was an easy matter to synthesize a related ester by a conjugate addition of an organocopper derivative (Chapter 22) and then alkylation of an ester enolate (Chapter 25). The enolate reacts with MeI on the face opposite the propenyl side chain—a good example of stereochemical control with cyclic compounds (Chapter 32).

This ester is one carbon atom short of the full side chain of grandisol, so an Arndt–Eistert reaction was used to lengthen the chain by one atom. First, the ester was converted into the diazoketone with diazomethane and then the Wolff rearrangement was initiated by formation of the carbene with a silver(II) salt.
Nitrenes are the nitrogen analogues of carbenes

The Wolff rearrangement has some important cousins that we must now introduce to you—they deserve a mention because they bear a family likeness even though they do not, in fact, involve carbenes. They are a group of reactions that proceed through an intermediate nitrene—the nitrogen analogue of a carbene. The simplest to understand, because it is the direct nitrogen analogue of the Wolff rearrangement, is the Curtius rearrangement. It starts with an acyl azide, which can be made by nucleophilic substitution on an acyl chloride by sodium azide. The acyl azide is what you would get if you just replaced the –CH=N=N_2 of a diazoketone with –N=N_2. And, if you heat it, it is not surprising that it decomposes to release nitrogen (N_2), forming the nitrene. The nitrene N has only one bond and has two lone pairs, making six electrons in all, like a carbene.

Nitrenes, like carbenes, are immensely reactive and electrophilic, and the same Wolff-style migration (insertion into an adjacent C–C bond) takes place in which the substituent R migrates from carbon to the electron-deficient nitrogen atom of the nitrene. The product is an isocyanate. Isocyanates are unstable to hydrolysis: attack by water on the carbonyl group gives a carbamic acid, which decomposes to an amine. Alternatively, reaction with an alcohol gives a carbamate. If the alcohol is BnOH, the product is a Cbz-protected amine.

Overall, then, the Curtius rearrangement converts an acid chloride (or an acid) to an amine with loss of a carbon atom—very useful. Also useful is the related Hofmann rearrangement, which turns an amide into an amine with loss of a carbon atom. This time we start with a primary amide and make a nitrene by treatment with base and bromine. Notice how close this nitrene-forming reaction is to the carbene-forming reactions we talked about on p. 1008. The nitrene rearranges just as in the Curtius reaction, giving an isocyanate that can be hydrolysed to the amine.
**Attack of carbenes on lone pairs**

Wolff rearrangements, involving shifts of alkyl groups, are effectively intramolecular insertions into C–C bonds. Carbenes will also insert into other bonds, especially O–H and N–H bonds, although the mechanism in these cases involves initial attack on the lone pair of the heteroatom.

Carbene attack is followed by proton transfer to generate a neutral molecule from the first formed zwitterion (or ‘ylid’). However, if the heteroatom does not carry a hydrogen, the ylid cannot rearrange in this way and this type of reaction is a very useful way of making reactive ylids that are inaccessible by other means.

As carbonyl-substituted carbenes (like carbonyl-substituted radicals) are electrophilic, their insertion into O–H and N–H bonds can be a useful way of making bonds in an umpolung (polarity-reversed, see Chapter 28) sense. Because of the difficulties in forming β-lactams (the four-membered rings found in the penicillin classes of antibiotics), the pharmaceutical company Merck decided to design a synthesis of the class of compounds known as carbapenems around a rhodium-catalysed carbene insertion into an N–H bond, building the five-membered ring on to the side of the four-membered ring.

**Alkene metathesis**

In this example, and in many before it, the formation of the carbene is initiated by a metal—often copper, rhodium, or silver. The carbene intermediates in these reactions are formed as reactive complexes with those metals, but in other cases the complexes are extremely stable. For example, decomposition of phenyldiazomethane in the presence of a ruthenium(II) complex gives a carbene complex stable enough to be isolated and stored for months. This complex, and a family of related Ru complexes, are among the most important of carbene-derived reagents because of a remarkable reaction known as alkene (or olefin) metathesis.

The reaction is most easily understood when a simple diene reacts with a very small amount (in this case 2 mol%) of the catalyst. A cyclization reaction occurs and the product is also an alkene. It contains no atoms from the catalyst: indeed, it has lost two carbon atoms, which are given off as ethylene.
What happens is a metathesis—an exchange of groups between the two arms of the molecule. But how? The mechanism is not difficult, but is unlike any other you have met before, except, perhaps, the Wittig reaction, which also forms alkenes. First, the carbene complex adds to one of the alkenes in what can be drawn as a \([2 + 2]\) cycloaddition (Chapter 34) to give a four-membered ring with the metal atom in the ring (a ‘metallacyclobutane’).

Now the same reaction happens in reverse, either unproductively to give back the starting materials or, by cleavage of the other two bonds, a new carbene complex and styrene.

This new complex has the same reactivity as the catalyst we started with, so it will quickly find another alkene to undergo \([2 + 2]\) cycloaddition with. There is now one in the same molecule, so a fast intramolecular reaction joins up the five-membered ring and produces a second metallacyclobutane. As before, there are two alternative ways for this metallacyclobutane to break down, and the productive one gives a third carbene complex and the cyclic product.

This new carbene complex is then ready to attack another molecule of starting material and the cycle is repeated, with the minor difference that ethylene (ethene) is now lost instead of styrene in the first step.

Not a lot can go wrong in this sequence, which is one reason why the yield is so high. Most of the steps are reversible, and the overall reaction is driven by the only irreversible step—the loss of ethylene as a gas. Even if the carbene complex adds the wrong way round to the alkene, nothing is lost because the only thing the resulting metallacycle can do is revert back to starting materials.
**Metathesis catalysts**

As you might imagine, the discovery of such a simple and efficient way of making new C=C bonds was a revolutionary point in organic chemistry, and earned a Nobel Prize in 2005 for the three chemists instrumental in its development—Yves Chauvin, Richard Schrock, and Robert Grubbs. The catalyst we have just been working with was developed by Grubbs and is often known by his name. The early years of the 21st century also saw a rapid improvement in the effectiveness of the catalysts used for metathesis. The most important development was the discovery of alternatives to the phosphine ligands, a change which increases the activity of the catalyst. The most important alternative ligands are themselves carbenes of the stable ‘N-heterocyclic’ type we introduced on p. 1006. Here is an important example, made by deprotonation of a heterocyclic cation:

There is a lot of delocalization in this structure, and usually these ligands are represented with a curved line to show the donation of both nitrogen lone pairs to the carbene C atom. You might prefer to include the formal + and – charges, but these compounds really do stretch the classical valence bond representation almost to breaking point, and conventionally the charges are not shown as they cancel out.

The remaining lone pair on carbon (which is not delocalized) can coordinate to Ru, just like the phosphine lone pair, giving a catalyst known as ‘Grubbs II’ (the ‘second generation’ of the ‘Grubbs I’ we made use of in the metathesis described above). In another widely used catalyst (known as the ‘Hoveyda–Grubbs catalyst’) the second phosphine is also replaced by intramolecular coordination.

**Cross metathesis**

The first metathesis we introduced you to is known, for obvious reasons, as a *ring closing metathesis* reaction, and the formation of rings—even of difficult ring sizes (see Chapters 16 and 31) is one of the supreme applications of metathesis chemistry. However, intermolecular metathesis reactions can also work under certain circumstances, especially when the coupling partners have very different electronic or steric properties. The challenge is of course avoiding each alkene coupling with itself. When one of the two partners is hindered and the other isn’t, the cross metathesis reaction works well: the four carbons of the two alkenes swap partners and a new alkene is produced (as its E isomer), along with ethylene as a by-product.
It’s not difficult to understand why the less reactive and more hindered alkene doesn’t react with itself, but why doesn’t the more reactive alkene just dimerize? The point is...it does! But it doesn’t matter because even the dimer is reactive as a metathesis substrate, and can still go on to form the product. All the metathesis steps proceed through the reversible [2+2] cycloaddition mechanisms you saw earlier.

Ene-yne metathesis

Before we leave metathesis, and carbenes, we need to introduce one final reaction where metathesis leads to a remarkable transformation. Metathesis works on any C=C π bond, but the π bonds need not be an alkene—it can be an alkyne. The scheme below shows what happens: the two C=C double bonds change places. When an alkene reacts with an alkene, the result is two new alkenes, but when an alkene reacts with an alkyne, there is still a single bond remaining from the original alkyne, which ends up linking the two products together as a diene.

The mechanism follows exactly the same sequence of events as before. First the ruthenium carbene catalyst undergoes [2+2] cycloaddition with the alkyne. The intermediate is now a metallacyclobutene, and when the reverse [2+2] takes place the Ru carbene is still connected to the alkene product.

Now the new carbene can undergo [2+2] cycloaddition and reverse [2+2] cycloaddition again, this time with the alkene component, and out comes the diene, plus a Ru carbene ready to start the cycle again.
Ene-yne metathesis is therefore a valuable way of constructing dienes—of the type you might require for a Diels–Alder reaction, for example. Unlike more reactive organometallics such as organolithiums and Grignard reagents, the Ru carbenes are fully compatible with acidic NH and OH bonds and with electrophilic carbonyl groups. You will meet more of the mild chemistry possible with organometallics in Chapter 40.

Summary

We have seen in this chapter how carbenes can be formed from many other reactive intermediates, such as carbocations, carbanions, and diazoalkanes, and how they can react to give yet further reactive intermediates such as ylids. Here is a summary of the main relationships between a carbene :CR₂ and these other compounds.

In the last few chapters we have concentrated a lot on what we call reactive intermediates, species like radicals, carbenes, or carbocations that are hard to observe but that definitely exist. Much of the evidence for their existence derives from the study of the mechanisms of reactions. We have discussed some aspects of this as we have met the species concerned, but in the next chapter we will look in detail at how mechanisms are elucidated and the methods used to determine more precisely the structure of reactive intermediates.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Determining reaction mechanisms

There are mechanisms and there are mechanisms

There are two types of answer to the question ‘What is the mechanism of this reaction?’ If you were asked to draw the mechanism of an ester hydrolysis in basic solution you should have no trouble in giving a good answer of the first type. It wouldn’t matter if you had never seen this particular ester before or even if you knew that it had never actually been made, because you would recognize that the reaction belonged to a class of well-known reactions (carbonyl substitution reactions, Chapter 10) and you would assume that the mechanism was the same as that for other ester hydrolysies. And you would be right—nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group to form a tetrahedral intermediate is followed by loss of the alkoxide leaving group and formation of the anion of the carboxylic acid.

Yet someone at some time had to determine this mechanism in full detail. That work was done in the 1940s to 1960s and it was done so well that nobody seriously challenges it.
You might also recall from Chapter 12 that, if we change the carbonyl compound to an acid chloride, the mechanism may change to an S_N1 reaction with an acylium ion intermediate because the leaving group is now much better: Cl^- is more stable (less basic) than RO^-; it would not be worth using hydroxide for this reaction: as the first step is the slow step, water will do just as well. Again someone had to determine this mechanism, had to show which was the slow step, and had to show that leaving group ability depended on the pK_a of its conjugate base.

If the reaction were the hydrolysis of an amide, you might remember from Chapter 12 that third-order kinetics are often observed for the expulsion of such bad leaving groups and that this extra catalysis makes it worthwhile using concentrated base. Again, someone had to find out that: (1) the slow step is now the decomposition of the tetrahedral intermediate, (2) there are third-order kinetics involving two molecules of hydroxide, and (3) the first molecule acts as a nucleophile and the second as a base.

These three mechanisms are all versions of the same reaction. For you, writing these mechanisms chiefly means recognizing the type of reaction (nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group) and evaluating how good the leaving group is. For the original chemists, determining these reaction mechanisms meant: (1) determining exactly what the product is (that may sound silly, but it is a serious point), (2) discovering how many steps there are and the structures of the intermediates, (3) finding out which is the slow (rate-determining) step, and (4) finding any catalysis. This chapter describes the methods used in this kind of work—the detailed, second type of answer to ‘What is the mechanism of this reaction?’.

Now, suppose you were asked what the mechanisms of the next two reactions might be. This is a rather different sort of problem as you may well not recognize any of these reagents and you probably cannot fit any of the reactions into one of the classes you have seen so far. You may not even see at once which of the three main classes of mechanism you should use: ionic, pericyclic, or radical.

You may do your best to write a mechanism based on your understanding of organic chemistry, moving the electrons from nucleophiles to electrophiles, choosing sensible intermediates, and arriving at the right products. You would not claim any authority for the result, but you would hope, as an organic chemist, to propose one or more reasonable possibilities.

This process of proposing reasonable mechanisms is actually an essential preliminary to answering the question in the second way—finding the real, experimentally verified, mechanism for the reaction. We will now look at some of the techniques used to find such answers with an old curiosity of a reaction, the Cannizzaro reaction, as an example.
Determining reaction mechanisms: the Cannizzaro reaction

So how do we know the mechanism of a reaction? The simple answer is that we don’t for certain. Organic chemists have to face situations where the structure of a compound is initially thought to be one thing but later corrected to be something different. The same is true of mechanisms. It is the nature of science that all we can do is try to account for observations by proposing a hypothesis. We then test the hypothesis by experiment and, when the experiment does not fit the hypothesis, we must start again with a new hypothesis. This is exactly the case with mechanisms. When a new reaction is discovered, one or more mechanisms are proposed; evidence is then sought for and against these mechanisms until one emerges as the best choice. That one then remains the accepted mechanism for the reaction until fresh evidence comes along that does not fit the mechanism.

We are going to look at one reaction, the Cannizzaro reaction, and use this to introduce the different techniques used in elucidating mechanisms so that you will be able to appreciate the different information each experiment brings to light and how all the pieces fit together to leave us with a probable mechanism. Under strongly basic conditions, an aldehyde with no α hydrogens undergoes disproportionation to give half alcohol and half carboxylate. Disproportionation means one half of the sample is oxidized by the other half, which is itself reduced. In this case, half the aldehyde reduces the other half to the primary alcohol and in the process is oxidized to the carboxylic acid. Before the discovery of LiAlH₄ in 1946, this was one of the few reliable ways to reduce aldehydes and so was of some use in synthesis.

Here is a simple mechanistic scheme of what happens—the sort of thing you might reasonably propose if you had not seen the reaction before.

\[ R\text{-CHO} + \text{HO}^- \rightarrow R\text{-CH(OH)OH} \rightarrow R\text{-CO}^- + \text{HO}^- + H^+ \]

It’s not the only possible mechanism by any means—and you may spot that it is slightly different from the one in Chapter 26, where we showed a dianion as an intermediate. We’ll now work through some of the alternative mechanisms that have been proposed for the Cannizzaro reaction, along with the evidence for or against them. Most of these alternatives have been eliminated, leaving just the ones you have already met. Finally, we will see that even these mechanisms do not explain everything absolutely.

Proposed mechanism A: a radical mechanism

Early on it was thought that the hydrogen transfer might be taking place via a radical chain reaction. If this were the case, then the reaction should go faster if radical initiators are added and it should slow down when radical inhibitors are added. When this was tried, there was no change in the rate, so this proposed mechanism was ruled out.

Kinetic evidence for an ionic mechanism

The first piece of evidence that must be accounted for is the rate law. For the reaction of benzaldehyde with hydroxide, the reaction is first order with respect to hydroxide ions and second order with respect to benzaldehyde (third order overall).

\[ \text{rate} = k_4[\text{PhCHO}]^2[\text{HO}^-] \]

For some aldehydes, such as formaldehyde and furfural, the order with respect to the concentration of hydroxide varies between one and two depending on the exact conditions. In high concentrations of base it is fourth order.

\[ \text{rate} = k_4[\text{RCHO}]^2[\text{HO}^-]^2 \]
At lower concentrations of base the rate law is a mixture of both third- and fourth-order terms.

\[
\text{rate} = k_3[RCHO]^2[\text{HO}^-] + k_4[RCHO]^2[\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

Just because the overall order of reaction is third or fourth order, it does not mean that all the species must simultaneously collide in the rate-determining step. You saw in Chapter 12 that the rate law actually reveals all the species that are involved up to and including the rate-determining step.

**Isotopic labelling**

When the reaction is carried out in D\(_2\)O instead of in H\(_2\)O it is found that there are no C—D bonds in the products. This tells us that the hydrogen must come from the aldehyde and not from the solvent.

**Proposed mechanism B: formation of an intermediate dimeric adduct**

A possible mechanism that fits all the experimental evidence so far involves nucleophilic attack of the usual tetrahedral intermediate on another aldehyde to give an intermediate adduct. This adduct could then form the products directly by hydride transfer. You may not like the look of this last step, but the mechanism was proposed and evidence is needed to disprove it.

Which step would be rate determining for this mechanism? It could not be step 1 since, if this were the case, the rate law would be first order with respect to the aldehyde rather than the observed second-order relationship. Also, if the reaction is carried out in water labelled with oxygen-18, the oxygen in the benzaldehyde exchanges with the \(^{18}\text{O}\) from the solvent much faster than the Cannizzaro reaction takes place. This can only be because of a rapid equilibrium in step 1 and so step 1 cannot be rate determining.

So, for mechanism B, either step 2 or step 3 could be rate determining—either case would fit the observed rate law. Step 2 is similar to step 1: in both cases an oxyanion nucleophile attacks the aldehyde. Since the equilibrium in step 1 is very rapid, it is reasonable to suggest that the equilibrium in step 2 should also be rapid and thus that the hydride transfer in step 3 must be rate determining. So mechanism B can fit the rate equation.

How can mechanism B be ruled out? One way is to change the attacking nucleophile. The Cannizzaro reaction works equally well if methoxide is used in a mixture of methanol and water. If mechanism B were correct, the reaction with methoxide would be as follows.
One of the products would be different by this mechanism: benzyl methyl ether would be formed instead of benzyl alcohol. None is observed experimentally. Moreover, under the conditions of the experiment, benzyl methyl ether does not react to form benzyl alcohol, so it cannot be the case that the ether is formed but then reacts to form the products. Mechanism B can therefore be ruled out.

**Proposed mechanism C: formation of an ester intermediate**

This mechanism is like mechanism B but the hydride transfer in the adduct formed in step 2 displaces OH\(^-\) to form an ester (benzyl benzoate) that is then hydrolysed to the products. This was at one time held to be the correct mechanism for the Cannizzaro reaction. One piece of evidence for this, and at first glance a very good one, is that by cooling the reaction mixture and avoiding excess alkali, some benzyl benzoate could be isolated during the reaction. An important point is that this does not mean that the ester must be an *intermediate* in the reaction—it might be formed at the end of the reaction, for example. However, it does mean that any mechanism we propose must be able to account for its formation. For now though we want to try to establish whether the ester is an intermediate rather than a by-product in the Cannizzaro reaction.

An early objection to mechanism C was that the ester would not be hydrolysed fast enough. When someone actually tried it under the conditions of the experiment, they found that benzyl benzoate is very rapidly hydrolysed (the moral here is ‘don’t just think about it, try it!’). However, just because the ester *could be* hydrolysed, it still did not show that it actually was an intermediate in the reaction. How this was eventually shown was rather clever. The argument goes like this. We can measure the rate constant for step 4 by seeing how quickly pure benzyl benzoate is hydrolysed to benzyl alcohol and benzoate under the same conditions as those of the Cannizzaro reaction. We also know how quickly these products are formed during the Cannizzaro reaction itself. Since, if this mechanism is correct, the only way the products are formed is from this intermediate, it is possible to work out how much of the intermediate ester must be present at any time to give the observed rate of formation of the products. If we can measure the amount of ester that is actually present and it is significantly less than that which we predict, then this cannot be the correct mechanism. It turned out that there was never enough ester present to account for the formation of the products in the Cannizzaro reaction and mechanism C could be ruled out.

**The correct mechanism for the Cannizzaro reaction**

The only mechanism that has not been ruled out and that appears to fit all the evidence is the one we have already given (p. 1031). The fact that the rate law for this mechanism is overall third and sometimes fourth order depending on the aldehyde and the conditions can be explained by the involvement of a second hydroxide ion deprotonating the tetrahedral intermediate to give a dianion. When methoxide is used in a methanol/water mix, some methyl ester is formed. This does not stay around for long—under the conditions of the experiment it is quickly hydrolysed to the carboxylate.
Even this mechanism does not quite fit all the evidence

We said earlier that we can never prove a mechanism—only disprove it. Unfortunately, just as the ‘correct’ mechanism seems to be found, there are some observations that make us doubt this mechanism. In Chapter 37 you saw how a technique called electron spin resonance (ESR) (or electron paramagnetic resonance, EPR) detects radicals and gives some information about their structure. When the Cannizzaro reaction was carried out with benzaldehyde and a number of substituted benzaldehydes in an ESR spectrometer, a radical was detected. For each aldehyde used, the ESR spectrum proved to be identical to that formed when the aldehyde was reduced using sodium metal. The radical formed was the radical anion of the aldehyde.

Our mechanism does not explain this result, but small amounts of radicals are formed in many reactions in which the products are actually formed by simple ionic processes. Detection of a species in a reaction mixture does not prove that it is an intermediate. Few chemists think that radicals are involved in the Cannizzaro reaction. Most think the mechanism we have given is correct.

Variation in the structure of the aldehyde

Before leaving the Cannizzaro reaction, look at these rates of reactions for aromatic aldehydes with different substituents in the para position. These aldehydes may be divided into two classes: those that react faster than unsubstituted benzaldehyde and those that react more slowly. Those that go slower all have something in common—they all have substituents on the ring that donate electrons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rate of Cannizzaro reaction with aromatic aldehydes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me₂N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO₂</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We have already seen how substituents on a benzene ring affect the rate of electrophilic substitution (Chapter 21). Electron-donating groups such as MeO and Me₂N dramatically speed up the rate at which an aromatic ring is attacked by an electrophile, whereas electron-withdrawing groups, particularly nitro groups, slow the reaction down. The Cannizzaro reaction is not taking place on the benzene ring itself, but substituents on the ring still make their presence known. The fact that the Cannizzaro reaction goes much slower with electron-donating groups and faster with electron-withdrawing groups tells us that, for this reaction, rather than a positive charge developing, as in the case of electrophilic substitution on an aromatic ring, there must be negative charge accumulating somewhere near the ring. The accumulation of more negative charge is disfavoured by the presence of a group that is already offloading electron density into the ring. In agreement with this, our mechanism has mono- and dianion intermediates, which are stabilized by electron-withdrawing groups and destabilized by electron-donating groups.
The rest of the chapter is devoted to discussions of methods similar to those we have briefly surveyed for the Cannizzaro reaction, with examples of the use of each method. You can assume that the mechanisms we have discussed in this book have been verified (not, of course, proved) by these sorts of methods.

**Be sure of the structure of the product**

This seems a rather obvious point. However, there is a lot to be learned from the detailed structure of the product: its connectivity (which atom goes where) as well as its stereochemistry. You will see that it may be necessary to alter the structure of the starting material in subtle ways to make sure that we know exactly what happens to all its atoms by the time it reaches the product.

Suppose you are studying the addition of HCl to this alkene. You find that you get a good yield of a single adduct and you might be a bit surprised that you do not get a mixture of the two obvious adducts. You may wonder if there is some participation of the ether oxygen or whether perhaps the ketone enolizes during the reaction and controls the outcome.

![Diagram](image)

If you are cautious you might check on the structure of the product before you start a mechanistic investigation. The NMR spectrum (above) tells you at once that the product is neither of these suggestions. It contains a \((\text{CH}_2)_3\text{Cl}\) unit and can no longer have an eight-membered ring. A ring contraction has given a five-membered ring and a mechanistic investigation is hardly needed. Simply knowing what the product is allows us to propose a mechanism. A rearrangement has occurred and we could use the method suggested in Chapter 36: number the atoms in the starting material and find them in the product. This is quite easy as only one numbering system makes any sense.

![Diagram](image)

This numbering suggests that the carbon skeleton is unaffected by the reaction, that protonation has occurred at C5, that the ether oxygen has acted as an internal nucleophile across the ring at C4, and that the chloride ion has attacked C7. The mechanism is straightforward.
It may be disappointing to find that every step in this mechanism is well known and that the reaction is exactly what we ought to have expected with an eight-membered ring as these rings are famous for their transannular (across-ring) reactions to form 5/5 fused systems. However, it is good that a prolonged investigation is not necessary.

- Find out for sure what the structure of the product is before you start a mechanistic investigation.

A more subtle distinction occurred in a study of the bromination of alkynes. Bromination of benzyl alkynes in acetic acid gave the products of addition of one molecule of bromine—the 1,2-dibromoalkenes. The reaction was successful with a variety of para substituents and there seems at first to be no special interest in the structure of the products.

Closer investigation revealed an extraordinary difference between them, not at all obvious from their NMR spectra: the compound from X=OMe was the Z-dibromoalkene from cis addition of bromine while the product from X=CF3 was the E alkene from trans addition. What mechanism could explain this difference?

The anti addition is more easily explained: it is the result of formation of a bromonium ion, similar, in fact, to the normal mechanism for the bromination of alkenes. Bromine adds from one side of the alkene and the bromide ion must necessarily form the E-dibromo product regardless of which atom it attacks.

So why does the p-methoxy-substituted compound behave differently? It cannot react by the same mechanism and a reasonable explanation is that the much more electron-donating ring participates in the reaction to give a carbocyclic three-membered ring intermediate that is attacked in an anti fashion to give the Z alkene. Both intermediates are three-membered ring cations and both are attacked with inversion but the p-MeO compound undergoes double inversion by participation of the ring.

A similar aryl participation in saturated compounds, giving a ‘phenonium ion’ intermediate, appears in Chapter 36, p. 936.
Labelling experiments reveal the fate of individual atoms

It often happens that the atoms in starting material and product cannot be correlated without at least one of them being labelled. The fact that many elements exist as different isotopes provides us with a perfect way of doing this: a neutron more or less in the nucleus affects the physics (and hence the spectroscopic features) of an atom, but not its chemistry.

The isomerization of Z-1-phenylbutadiene to the E diene in acid looks like a simple reaction. Protonation of the Z alkene would give a stabilized secondary benzylic cation that should last long enough to rotate. Loss of the proton would then give the more stable E diene.

However, reaction with D⁺ in D₂O reveals that this mechanism is incorrect. The product contains substantial amounts of deuterium at C4, not at C2 as predicted by the proposed mechanism. Protonation must occur at the end of the conjugated system to produce the more stable conjugated cation, which rotates about the same bond and loses H or D from C4 to give the product. More H than D will be lost, partly because there are two Hs and only one D, but also because of the kinetic isotope effect, of which more later.

The easiest labels to use for this job are D for H, ¹³C, and ¹⁸O. None of these is radioactive; all can be found by mass spectrometry, while D and ¹³C can be found by NMR. Older work on mechanisms used radioactive tracers such as T (tritium, ³H) for H and ¹⁴C.

The first evidence for benzyne as the intermediate in the reaction of chlorobenzene with NH₂⁻ came from radioactive labelling. If benzyne is an intermediate, the product should have 50% label at C1 and 50% at the two identical ortho carbons, as the scheme below shows.

The labelled aniline was degraded by the reactions shown here, which you must agree was a lot of work for the chemists concerned. Each potentially labelled carbon atom had to be isolated from any other labelled atom and the radioactivity measured. We shall follow the fate of the two labelled atoms with black and green spots. Since the two ortho positions are identical, we must put a black spot on both of them.

Most of these reactions are well known—the Beckmann rearrangement is described in Chapter 36 and the Curtius reaction in Chapter 38—but the oxidation of the diamine to the
dicarboxylic acid is not a standard procedure and is not recommended. All the label came out in the CO₂ and almost exactly half of it was from the black and half from the green labelled carbons. This was the original evidence that convinced organic chemists in 1953 that benzyne was involved in the reaction. The evidence presented in Chapter 22 is much more modern.

**The value of double labelling experiments**

An altogether more modern approach to a labelling study was used in the surprising rearrangement of a hydroxy-acid in acidic solution. The structure of the product suggests a CO₂H migration as the most likely mechanism. This mechanism resembles closely the cationic rearrangements of Chapter 36.

![CO₂H migration](image)

But there are other possibilities: received wisdom (Chapter 36) suggests that the best migrating group in cationic rearrangements is the one best able to bear a positive charge, by which logic the more familiar Ph and Me migrations ought to be preferred. A more elaborate mechanism can be written: it involves two methyl migrations and one phenyl migration and it also needs consideration.

![Alternative mechanisms](image)

These mechanisms can be tested by finding out whether the CO₂H group remains attached to its original position or becomes attached to the other carbon in the skeleton of the molecule. This can be done by double labelling. If a compound is prepared with two ¹³C labels, one on the CO₂H group itself and one on the benzylic carbon, the NMR spectrum of the product will show what has happened. In fact, the two ¹³C labels end up next to each other with a coupling constant \( J_{CC} = 71 \text{ Hz} \). It is the CO₂H group that has migrated.

So why does the CO₂H group migrate? It does so not because it is a good migrating group, but because it cannot bear to be left behind. The rearranged cation from CO₂H migration is a stable tertiary alkyl cation. The cation from Me migration is a very unstable cation, with the positive charge next to the CO₂H group. Such cations are unknown as the carbonyl group is very electron withdrawing.

**‘Crossover’ experiments**

There is still one tiny doubt. Supposing the reaction is not intramolecular at all, but intermolecular. The CO₂H group might be lost from one molecule as protonated CO₂ and be picked up by another molecule of alkene. No migration would be involved at all.
This mechanism can be checked by using a 50:50 mixture of doubly labelled and unlabelled starting material. The molecule of alkene that captures the roving protonated labelled CO$_2$ might happen to be labelled too but equally well it might be unlabelled. If this last mechanism is correct, we should get a mixture of unlabelled, singly labelled, and doubly labelled product in the ratio 1:2:1 as there are two types of singly labelled product. The two singly labelled compounds are called the crossover products and the experiment is called a crossover experiment as it discovers whether any parts of one molecule cross over to another.

In fact, no singly labelled compounds were found: NMR analysis showed that the product consisted entirely of unlabelled or doubly labelled molecules. The CO$_2$H group remains attached to the same molecule (though not to the same atom) and the first mechanism is correct.

Crossover experiments demand some sort of double labelling, which does not have to be isotopic. An example where crossover products are observed is the light-initiated isomerization of allylic sulfides.

This is formally a [1,3] sigmatropic shift of sulfur (Chapter 35) but that is an unlikely mechanism (and you should be able to suggest why). A crossover experiment was carried out in which the two molecules had either two phenyl groups or two para-tolyl groups. The mixture was allowed to rearrange in daylight and the products were examined by mass spectroscopy. There was a roughly 1:2:1 mixture of products having two phenyl groups, one phenyl and one para-tolyl group, and two para-tolyl groups. The diagram shows the starting materials and the two crossover products only.

Clearly, the ArS group had become separated from the rest of the molecule and the most likely explanation was a radical chain reaction (Chapter 37) with the light producing a small amount of ArS$^*$ to initiate the chain. The para-methyl group acts as a label. The whole system is in equilibrium and the more highly substituted alkene is the product.
Systematic structural variation

In this last example, the hope is that the para-methyl group will have too weak an electronic or steric effect and in any case will be too far away to affect the outcome. It is intended to make nearly as slight a change in the structure as an isotopic label. Many structural investigations have exactly the opposite hope. Some systematic change is made in the structure of the molecule in the expectation of a predictable change in rate. A faster or slower reaction will lead to some definite conclusion about the charge distribution in the transition state.

Allylic compounds can react efficiently with nucleophiles by either the $S_N1$ or $S_N2$ mechanisms (Chapter 15). Here are two examples.

\[
\text{OMs} \overset{\text{H}_2\text{O}}{\longrightarrow} \text{OH} \quad \text{OMs} \overset{\text{Nal}}{\longrightarrow} \text{I}
\]

The carbon skeleton is the same in both reactions but the leaving groups and the nucleophiles are different. These reactions might both go by $S_N1$ or $S_N2$ or one might go by $S_N1$ and the other by $S_N2$. One way to find out is to make a large change in the electronic nature of the carbon skeleton and see what happens to the rate of each reaction. In these experiments one of the methyl groups was changed for a CF$_3$ group—exchanging a weakly electron-donating group for a strongly electron-withdrawing group. If a cation is an intermediate, as in the $S_N1$ reaction, the fluorinated compound will react much more slowly. Here is the result in the first case.

\[
\text{OMs} \overset{\text{H}_2\text{O}}{\longrightarrow} \text{OH} \quad \text{OMs} \overset{\text{F}_3\text{C}}{\longrightarrow} \text{OH}
\]

The fluorinated compound reacts half a million times more slowly so this looks very much like an $S_N1$ mechanism. The slow step in an $S_N1$ mechanism is the formation of a carbocation so any group that destabilizes the positive charge would have (and evidently does have) a large effect on the rate. Rate ratios of several powers of ten often are worth noticing and a rate ratio of nearly $10^6$ is considerable. In the second case the rate difference is much less.

\[
\text{Cl} \overset{\text{Nal}}{\longrightarrow} \text{I} \quad \text{F}_3\text{C} \text{Cl} \overset{\text{Nal}}{\longrightarrow} \text{I}
\]

A rate ratio of 11 is not worth noticing. The point is not that the fluorinated compound reacts faster but that the two compounds react at about the same rate. This strongly suggests that no charge is generated in the transition state and an $S_N1$ mechanism is not happening. The $S_N2$ mechanism makes good sense with its concerted bond formation and bond breaking requiring no charge on the carbon skeleton.

\[
\text{OMs} \overset{\text{H}_2\text{O}}{\longrightarrow} \text{OH} \quad \text{OMs} \overset{\text{F}_3\text{C}}{\longrightarrow} \text{OH}
\]

The CF$_3$ group works well here as a mechanistic probe because it is held well out of the way of the reaction site by a rigid $\pi$ system but is connected electronically by that same allylic system. Steric effects should be minimized and electronic effects clearly seen. This approach is clearly limited by the small number of groups having properties like those of the CF$_3$ group and the small number of reactions having such favourable carbon skeletons. We will now present the most important serious correlation between structure and reactivity.
The Hammett relationship

What we would ideally like to do is find a way to quantify the effects that electron-donating or -withdrawing groups have on the transition state or intermediate during the course of a reaction. This will then give us an idea of what the transition state is really like. The first question is: can we define exactly how efficient a given group is at donating or withdrawing electrons? Hammett took the arbitrary decision to use the pKₐ of an acid as a guide. For example, the rate of hydrolysis of esters might well correlate with the pKₐ of the corresponding acid.

When Hammett plotted the rates of ethyl ester hydrolyses (as log k since pKₐ has a log scale) against the pKₐs of the corresponding acids, the initial results were not very encouraging as there was a random scatter of points over the whole graph.

Hammett had used some aliphatic acids (substituted acetic acids) and some aromatic acids (substituted benzoic acids) and he noticed that many of the points towards the top of the graph belonged to the substituted acetic acids. Removing them (brown points) made the graph a lot better. He then noticed that the remaining aromatic compounds were in two classes: the ortho-substituted esters reacted more slowly than their meta- and para-isomers and came towards the bottom of the graph (orange points). Removing them made the graph quite good (remaining green points).

It was not a perfect correlation but Hammett had removed the examples where steric hindrance was important. Aliphatic compounds can adopt a variety of conformations (Chapter 16) and the substituent in some of them will interfere with the reaction. Similarly, in ortho-substituted aromatic compounds the nearby substituent might exert steric hindrance on the reaction. Only with meta- and para-substituted compounds was the substituent held out of the way, on a rigid framework, and in electronic communication with the reaction site through the flat but conjugated benzene ring.

Notice that the straight line is not perfect. This graph is an invention of the human mind. It is a correlation between things that are not directly related. If you determine a rate constant by plotting the right function of concentration against time and get an imperfect straight line, that is your fault because you haven’t done your measurements carefully enough. If you make a Hammett plot and the points are not on a straight line (and they won’t be) then that is not your fault. The points really don’t fit on a perfectly straight line. As you will see soon, this doesn’t actually matter.
The Hammett substituent constant $\sigma$

A quick glance at the $pK_a$s of some substituted benzoic acids in the table below will show how well they correlate electron donation with $pK_a$. The substituents at the top of the table are electron donating and the anions of the benzoic acids are correspondingly less stable so these are the weakest acids. At the bottom of the table we have the electron-withdrawing groups, which stabilize the anion and make the acid stronger. The whole range is not that great, only one pH unit or so, because the carboxylate anion is not conjugated with the ring.

Hammett decided not to use the $pK_a$s themselves for his correlation but defined a new parameter, which he called $\sigma$. This $\sigma$ shows how electron donating or withdrawing a group is relative to H as a difference between the $pK_a$s of a benzoic acid derivative with the substituent and benzoic acid itself. If the acid required to determine $\sigma$ for a new substituent was not available, $\sigma$ could be determined by correlation with other reactions. Here are the equations and the table of $\sigma$ values for the most important substituents. A different value of $\sigma$ for any given substituent was needed for the meta and the para positions and these are called $\sigma_m$ and $\sigma_p$, respectively.

$$\sigma_X = \log \left( \frac{K_a(XC_6H_4COOH)}{K_a(C_6H_5COOH)} \right) = pK_a(C_6H_5COOH) - pK_a(XC_6H_4COOH)$$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substituent X</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of $p$-$XC_6H_4COOH$</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of $m$-$XC_6H_4COOH$</th>
<th>$\sigma_p$</th>
<th>$\sigma_m$</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NH$_2$</td>
<td>4.82</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>−0.62</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>groups that donate electrons have negative $\sigma$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCH$_3$</td>
<td>4.49</td>
<td>4.09</td>
<td>−0.29</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>there are no values for ortho substituents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_3$</td>
<td>4.37</td>
<td>4.26</td>
<td>−0.17</td>
<td>−0.06</td>
<td>$\sigma_p &lt; \sigma_m$ for inductive withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>$\sigma_p &gt; \sigma_m$ for conjugating substituents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>3.86</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>3.97</td>
<td>3.85</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>3.98</td>
<td>3.83</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>$\sigma_p &gt; \sigma_m$ for conjugating substituents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br</td>
<td>3.97</td>
<td>3.80</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO$_2$CH$_3$</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>3.87</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COCH$_3$</td>
<td>3.71</td>
<td>3.83</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>3.53</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO$_2$</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>3.47</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>groups that withdraw electrons have positive $\sigma$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no point learning the precise figures in this table, but it will help if you form a general idea of what a $\sigma$ value means. If $\sigma = 0$ the substituent has no effect: it is electronically the same as H. If $\sigma$ is positive, the substituent is electron withdrawing. This is unfortunate perhaps, but just remember that the comparison is with acid strength, and acids with electron-withdrawing substituents are stronger. Positive $\sigma$ means a stronger acid so the substituent is electron withdrawing. The more positive the charge induced on the ring by a substituent, the larger its $\sigma$ value. Negative $\sigma$ means weaker acid and electron donation. Inductive effects from polarization of $\sigma$ bonds are greater for $\sigma_m$ than for $\sigma_p$ because the substituent is nearer.
Conjugation is generally more effective in the para position (see Chapter 21) so \( \sigma_p > \sigma_m \) for conjugating substituents. Indeed, the \( \text{NH}_2 \) group has a large negative \( \sigma_p \) and a zero \( \sigma_m \). The \( \text{NH}_2 \) group donates electrons strongly to the carbonyl group of benzoic acid from the para position but does not conjugate in the meta position where its donation happens just to balance the effect of electronegative nitrogen.

The OMe group has a negative \( \sigma_p \) but a positive \( \sigma_m \) because a weaker electron donation from the lone pairs is more important in the para position but the effect of very electronegative oxygen on the \( \sigma \) framework of the ring in the meta position is more important than lone pair donation that doesn’t reach the carbonyl group. You do not need to learn any \( \sigma \) values but you should be able to work out the sign of \( \sigma \) for well-known substituents and estimate a rough value.

The Hammett reaction constant \( \rho \)

Now we can return to our reaction: the alkaline hydrolysis of various meta- and para-substituted ethyl benzoates. We sketched the graph earlier (p. 1041) but now we can add some more quantitative detail. The rate constants for this second-order reaction have been measured and shown here is a graph of \( \log (k_X/k_H) \) versus \( \sigma \), where \( k_X \) is the rate constant for the reaction with the substituted benzoate and \( k_H \) is that for the unsubstituted reaction (\( X=\text{H} \)).

We can see straight away that there is a good correlation between how fast the reaction goes and the value of \( \sigma \); in other words, the points lie more or less on a straight line. The gradient of this best-fit line, given the symbol \( \rho \) (rho), tells us how sensitive the reaction is to substituent effects in comparison with the ionization of benzoic acids. The gradient is \( \rho = 2.6 \). This tells us that the reaction responds to substituent effects in the same way (because it is +) as the ionization of benzoic acids but by much more \( (10^{1.6} \) times more) because it is 2.6 instead of 1.0. We already know what the mechanism of this reaction is:
The first step is quite like the ionization of benzoic acid. A negative charge is appearing on
the carbonyl oxygen atom and that negative charge will be stabilized by electron-withdrawing X groups. If the first step is rate determining, a positive $\rho$ makes sense.

We need now to look at some other reactions to get a grasp of the meaning of the value of
the Hammett $\rho$.

**The Hammett reaction constant $\rho$ measures the sensitivity of the reaction to electronic effects.**

- A positive $\rho$ value means more electrons in the transition state than in the starting material.
- A negative $\rho$ value means fewer electrons in the transition state than in the starting material.

![Typical Hammett plots](image)

**Equilibria with positive Hammett $\rho$ values**

To take a simple example, let’s just see what happens to $\rho$ if we simply move the carboxylic acid away from the ring. The $\rho$ value for ionization gets less. This is just what you would expect—the further it is from the aromatic ring, the less the acid cares about how electron rich or poor the ring is. With two saturated carbons between the benzene ring and the carboxylic acid, there is almost no effect on $pK_a$. But restore electronic communications with a double bond, and $\rho$ goes back up again.

![Equilibria](image)

If the negative charge on the anion can actually be delocalized round the ring, as it can in substituted phenols, we should expect the size of $\rho$ to increase. Both the phenol and the anion are delocalized but delocalization is more important for the anion. The effect is even more significant for the ionization of anilinium salts as the acid ArNH$_3^+$ does not have a delocalized lone pair but the conjugate base (ArNH$_2^-$) does.

![Reactions](image)

**Reactions with positive Hammett $\rho$ values**

The size and sign of the value of $\rho$ tell us about what is happening in the rate-determining step of a reaction. Any reaction that involves nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group as the rate-
The determining step is going to have a ρ value of about 2–3, the same as for the hydrolysis of esters, as we have already seen. Large positive ρ values usually indicate extra electrons in the transition state delocalized into the ring itself. A classic example is nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the addition–elimination mechanism (Chapter 22). The ρ value is +4.9, but even this large value does not mean a complete anion on the benzene ring as the nitro group, present in all cases, takes most of the negative charge. The substituent X merely helps.

We get the full value when there are no nitro groups to take the brunt of the negative charge. This vinylic substitution has a ρ value of +9.0. It cannot be an SN2 reaction or it would have a small ρ value and it cannot be an SN1 reaction or it would have a negative ρ value (fewer electrons in the transition state). It must be an addition–elimination mechanism through a benzyllic anion delocalized round both benzene rings.

Reactions with negative Hammett ρ values

Negative ρ values mean electrons flowing away from the ring. A representative example is the SN2 displacement of iodide from EtI by phenoxide anions. This has a ρ value of exactly −1.0. Although the transition state has a negative charge, that charge is decreasing on the aromatic ring as the starting material approaches the transition state.

An SN1 reaction on the carbon atom next to the ring has a large negative ρ value. In this example, a tertiary benzylic cation is the intermediate and the rate-determining step is, of course, the formation of the cation. The cation is next to the ring but delocalized round it and the ρ value is −4.5, about the same value, though negative, as that for the nucleophilic substitution on nitrobenzenes by the addition–elimination mechanism that we saw in the last section.

The largest negative ρ values come from electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 21), where the electrons of the ring are used in the reaction, leaving a positive charge on the ring itself in the intermediate. Some of this charge is already there in the transition state. This simple nitration has ρ = −6.4 and ρ values for electrophilic aromatic substitution are usually in the range −5 to −9. Negative ρ values mean electrons flowing out of the ring.
Reactions with small Hammett $\rho$ values

Small Hammett $\rho$ values arise in three ways. The aromatic ring being used as a probe for the mechanism may simply be too far away for the result to be significant. This trivial case of the alkaline hydrolysis of the 3-aryl propionate ester has a $\rho$ value of $+0.5$ and it is surprising that it is even that large.

The second case is the informative one where the reaction is not dependent on electrons flowing into or out of the ring. Pericyclic reactions are important examples and the Diels–Alder reaction of arylbutadienes with maleic anhydride shows a small negative $\rho$ value of $-0.6$. The small value is consistent with a mechanism not involving charge accumulation or dispersal, but the sign is interesting. We explained this type of Diels–Alder reaction in Chapter 34 by using the HOMO of the diene and the LUMO of the dienophile. The negative sign of $\rho$, small though it is, supports this view because the reaction is somewhat faster with electron-donating groups on Ar, which raise the energy of the HOMO of the diene.

The third case is in many ways the most interesting. We have seen that the alkaline hydrolysis of ethyl esters of benzoic acids (ArCO$_2$Et) has a $\rho$ value of $+2.6$ and that this is a reasonable value for a reaction involving nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group conjugated with the aromatic ring. The hydrolysis of the same esters in acid solution, which also involves nucleophilic attack on the same carbonyl group, has a $\rho$ value of $+0.1$. In other words, substituted benzoic esters hydrolyse at more or less the same rate in acid solution, irrespective of their substituents. We need to look at the full mechanism to explain this remarkable result.

Steps 1, 3, and 5 cannot be slow as they are just proton transfers between oxygen atoms, and proton transfer between electronegative atoms is always fast. That leaves only steps 2 and 4 as possible rate-determining steps. The bimolecular addition of the weak nucleophile water to the low concentration of protonated ester (step 2) is the most attractive candidate, as step 4—the unimolecular loss of ethanol and re-formation of the carbonyl group—should be fast. What $\rho$ value would be expected for the reaction if step 2 were the rate-determining step? It would be made up of two parts. There would be an equilibrium $\rho$ value for the protonation step and a reaction $\rho$ value for the addition of water. Step 1 involves electrons flowing out of the molecule and step 2 involves electrons flowing in so the $\rho$ values for these two steps would...
have opposite charges. We know that the \( \rho \) value for step 2 would be about +2.5 (it’s just like the step in the ester hydrolysis) and a value of about −2.5 for the equilibrium protonation is reasonable. This is indeed the explanation: step 2 is the rate-determining step and the \( \rho \) values for steps 1 and 2 almost cancel each other out. All steps before the rate-determining step are present in the rate equation and also affect the Hammett \( \rho \) value.

**Summary: interpreting Hammett \( \rho \) values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( \rho ) value</th>
<th>( \rho ) values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0+</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0–</td>
<td>−1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−2</td>
<td>−2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−3</td>
<td>−3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−4</td>
<td>−4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−5</td>
<td>−5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>−6</td>
<td>−6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- large positive \( \rho \) values: positive charge on ring or delocalized round benzene ring
- moderate positive \( \rho \) values: electrons flow into transition state negative charge near ring loss of conjugation
- small \( \rho \) values: 1. Ar too far away 2. No electron change 3. Two \( \rho \)-values cancel each other out
- moderate negative \( \rho \) values: electrons flow out of transition state positive charge near ring loss of conjugation
- large negative \( \rho \) values: positive charge on ring or delocalized round benzene ring

You should not, of course, learn the numbers in this scheme, but you need an idea of roughly what each group of values means. You should see now why it is unimportant whether the Hammett correlation gives a good straight line or not. We just want to know whether \( \rho \) is + or − and whether it is, say, 3 or 6. It is meaningless to debate the significance of a \( \rho \) value of 3.4 as distinct from one of 3.8.

**Using the Hammett \( \rho \) values to uncover mechanisms**

Electrophilic attack on alkenes by bromine often goes through three-membered ring cyclic bromonium ions and we can sometimes tell that this is so by studying the stereochemistry. Here are two reactions of styrenes that look very similar—a reaction with bromine and another with PhSCl. With no further information, we might be tempted to assume that they both go by the same mechanism. However, the Hammett \( \rho \) values for the two reactions are rather different.

\[
\begin{align*}
X & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{PhSCl} \\
\rho & = -2.7
\end{align*}
\]

The \( \rho \) value for bromination is definitely in the 'large' range and can only mean that a positive charge is formed that is delocalized round the benzene ring. Bromine evidently does not form a bromonium ion with these alkenes but prefers to form a secondary benzylic cation instead, which can be stabilized more effectively by delocalization.

\[
\begin{align*}
X & \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\rho & = -5.7
\end{align*}
\]

The sulfenylation, on the other hand, has a moderate negative \( \rho \) value. No cation is formed that is delocalized round the ring, but electrons flow out of the ring and we suspect some loss of conjugation. All this fits well with the formation of a three-membered ring intermediate. From experiments like this we learn that PhSCl is much more likely than bromine to react stereospecifically with alkenes through cyclic cation intermediates.
A complete picture of the transition state from Hammett plots

More information can be gained on the mechanism of the reaction if two separate experiments can be carried out with the mechanistic probe inserted at two different sites on the reagents. If we are studying a reaction between a nucleophile and an electrophile, it may be possible to make Hammett plots from the variation of substituents on both reagents. The acylation of amines with acid chlorides is an example.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{H} \\
\text{NH}_3 & \quad ++ \\
\end{align*}
\]

If we vary the structure of the acid chloride we get a \( \rho \) value of +1.2, typical of nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group. If we vary the amine we get a \( \rho \) value of –3.2, typical of a reaction in which electrons that were conjugated round the ring move away to form a new bond. Comparing the numbers tells us the rate depends on the nucleophilicity of the amine 100 times more than on the electrophilicity of the acid chloride.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{H}_2 \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{X} \\
\text{Y} & \quad \rho = + 1.2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

Non-linear Hammett plots

The Hammett plot for hydrolysis of the acid chlorides of benzoic acids in aqueous acetone is very odd indeed. Hammett plots need not be perfectly linear to give useful information, but this one is clearly made up of two intersecting straight lines. This might look like disaster at first but, in fact, it tells us something rather important. The right-hand part of the curve, where the more electron-withdrawing substituents lie, has a slope of +2.5: just what we should expect for rate-determining attack of water on the carbonyl group. As we go to less electron-withdrawing substituents, the rate of the reaction suddenly starts to increase as we pass the para-chloro compound and the left-hand part of the curve has a slope of –4.4.

What can this mean? If the reaction becomes faster as we pass the discontinuity in the curve—and it gets faster whether we go from right to left or left to right—there must be a change in mechanism. If there is a choice between two mechanisms, the faster of the two will operate. Mechanism 1 is the rate-determining nucleophilic attack by water on the carbonyl group.

The new mechanism goes faster for more electron-donating substituents and has quite a large negative \( \rho \) value, suggesting the formation of a cation in the rate-determining step. This mechanism (mechanism 2) must surely be the \( S_N1 \)-like preliminary formation of an acylium ion by loss of chloride ion.
When the Hammett plot bends the other way, so that the rate of the reaction decreases as it passes the discontinuity, we have a single mechanism with a change in rate-determining step. A reaction goes by the fastest possible mechanism but its rate is limited by the slowest of the steps in that mechanism. An example is the intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation of a diphenyl derivative where the alkylating agent is a diarylmethanol attached to one of the benzene rings in the ortho position.

The carbocation intermediate in the Friedel–Crafts reaction (Chapter 21) is rather stable, being tertiary and benzylic, and the formation of the cation, normally the rate-determining step, with inevitably a negative \( \rho \) value, goes faster and faster as the electron-donating power of the substituents increases until it is faster than the cyclization, which becomes the rate-determining step. The cyclization puts electrons back into the carbocation and has a positive \( \rho \) value. As the two steps have more or less the reverse electron flow to and from the same carbon atom, it is reasonable for the size of \( \rho \) to be about the same but of opposite sign.

A reaction occurs by the faster of two possible mechanisms but by the slower of two possible rate-determining steps.

We shall see more examples of Hammett \( \rho \) values used in conjunction with other evidence as the chapter develops but now it is time to look at what other evidence is available.
Other kinetic evidence for reaction mechanisms

The kinetic isotope effect

Up to now you have probably (and rightly) assumed that isotopes of an element are chemically identical. They differ only in the number of neutrons in their nuclei: chemistry generally depends on charge, orbitals, and electrons. It may come as a surprise to find that this is not quite true. Isotopes may differ chemically, because some chemical properties do depend on atomic mass. However, this difference is only significant for hydrogen—no other element has one isotope twice as massive as another! Kinetic isotope effects are the changes in rate observed when a (¹H) hydrogen atom is replaced by a (²H) deuterium atom in the same reaction. For any reaction, the kinetic isotope effect (KIE) is defined as

\[ \text{KIE} = \frac{k_\text{H}}{k_\text{D}} \]

where \( k_\text{H} \) is the rate with a ¹H atom in the molecule and \( k_\text{D} \) is the rate with a ²H (deuterium, D) atom in the molecule.

How do kinetic isotope effects come about? Even in its lowest energy state a covalent bond never stops vibrating. If it did it would violate a fundamental physical principle, Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle, which states that position and momentum cannot be known exactly at the same time: a non-vibrating pair of atoms have precisely zero momentum and precisely fixed locations. The minimum vibrational energy a bond can have is called the zero point energy, and the zero point energy depends on the mass of the atoms attached to the bond—heavier atoms have a lower zero point energy than lighter ones.

In order to break a covalent bond, a certain amount of energy is required to separate the nuclei from their starting position. This energy has to raise the vibrational state of the bond to the point where it breaks. For the sake of argument, imagine taking a C–H bond in its lowest energy state and breaking it—the diagram shows the amount of energy required, which we can call \( \Delta G^\ddagger \text{H} \). Now do the same for a C–D bond: because the zero point energy of a C–D bond is smaller than that for a C–H bond, the C–D bond needs that little bit more energy \( \Delta G^\ddagger \text{D} \) to break: in other words a C–D bond is marginally stronger than a C–H bond. This means reactions in which C–H bonds break go faster than reactions in which C–D bonds break, providing the bond to H (or D) is involved in the rate-determining step. The theoretical maximum value of...
the KIE is about 7 for reactions at room temperature in which a bond to H or D is being broken. For example, the rates of these two eliminations can be compared, and $k_H/k_D$ turns out to be 7.1 at 25 °C.

In this case the fact that the KIE is non-zero tells us that the C–H (or C–D) bond is being broken during the rate-determining step, and so the reaction must be an E2 elimination. In E1 eliminations, the rate-determining step does not involve a breaking C–H bond.

In Chapter 21 we told you that the rate-determining step in the nitration of benzene was the attack of the electrophile on the benzene ring. This is easily verified by replacing the hydrogen atoms round the benzene ring with deuteriums. The rate of the reaction stays the same, so the C–H (or C–D) bonds cannot be involved in the rate-determining step. If the second step, which does involve the breaking of a C–H bond, were the rate-determining step it would go more slowly if the H were replaced by D.

By contrast, for the iodination of phenol in basic solution there is a deuterium isotope effect of $k_H/k_D = 4.1$. Clearly, the loss of the proton from the intermediate must now be the rate-determining step—the phenolate ion reacts so rapidly that the first step is faster than the second.

The deuterium isotope effect can add to the information from Hammett plots in building up a picture of a transition state. Three separate Hammett $\rho$ values can be measured for the elimination reaction and this information is very valuable. In addition, a large KIE $k_H/k_D = 7.1$ is observed for the hydrogen atom under attack.

It is no surprise that the base ($\text{ArO}^-$) donates electrons and the leaving group ($\text{ArSO}_3^-$) accepts them, as the $\rho$ values indicate. The large deuterium isotope effect tells us that the reaction is E2, but additional information comes from the moderate positive $\rho(Y)$ value for the aromatic ring adjacent to the proton being lost. It might have been expected that this ring is merely a spectator, but in fact the reaction must involve a build-up of negative charge, which can be stabilized by an electron-donating substituent Y. This can be explained if we assume
that the removal of the proton is slightly more advanced at the transition state than loss of the leaving group.

**Entropy of activation**

The entropy of activation, \( \Delta S^\ddagger \), of a reaction tells us about the increase or decrease in order in a reaction as the starting material goes to the transition state. A positive \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) means an increase in entropy or a decrease in order, and a negative \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) means an increase in order. Normally, unimolecular reactions in which one molecule gives two products have a positive \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) and bimolecular reactions have a negative \( \Delta S^\ddagger \). Fragmentations (Chapter 36), such as this decarbonylation in which one molecule fragments to three, have positive values of \( \Delta S^\ddagger \), in this case \( \Delta S^\ddagger = +36.8 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} \).

At the other extreme are cycloadditions (Chapter 34) such as the Diels–Alder reaction we examined a few pages back. Not only do two reagents become one product but a very precise orientation is required in the transition state, usually meaning a large negative \( \Delta S^\ddagger \). Diels–Alder reactions usually have \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) of about \(-120\) to \(-160 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} \). The classic cyclopentadiene addition to maleic anhydride has \( \Delta S^\ddagger = -144 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} \).

These numbers give you the range of entropies of activation you may expect to find. Large negative numbers are common but only small positive numbers are found. The largest negative numbers apply to bimolecular reactions where neither reagent is in great excess. Smaller negative numbers may mean a bimolecular reaction with solvent or some other reagent in large excess. The acid-catalysed opening of styrene oxides in methanol is a good example.

The Hammett \( \rho \) value of \(-4.1 \) suggests a carbocation intermediate, as does the regioselectivity of the reaction (MeOH attacks the benzylic position) but the stereochemistry (the reaction occurs with inversion) and a modest negative entropy of activation (\( \Delta S^\ddagger = -48 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} \))
suggest rather an $S_N2$ reaction with a loose transition state having substantial positive charge at the benzylic carbon. Neither piece of evidence alone would be enough to define the mechanism.

**Acid and base catalysis**

As you have seen throughout this book, acids and bases provide the most widely used ways of speeding up reactions. If you want to make an ester—add some acid. If you want to hydrolyse an ester—add some base. We explained in Chapter 12 the ways in which acid and base catalysts help reactions along, and we introduced you to the terms **specific acid** and **specific base**, **general acid** and **general base**. We will now look in a little more detail at these types of catalysis and give some pointers as to how to establish which of them, if any, is operative in any given reaction.

As a preliminary, let’s look at an example of **specific acid catalysis**. This is the kind operating in the reaction just above—epoxides don’t react with methanol but, if we protonate the epoxide first, then the reaction works. Specific acid catalysis protonates electrophiles and makes them more electrophilic.

We could, on the other hand, have reasoned that although methanol is not a good enough nucleophile, deprotonating with a base will make it into the much more nucleophilic methoxide, and the reaction will also work. This sort of base catalysis—deprotonating nucleophiles to make them more nucleophilic—is **specific base catalysis**.

**Specific acid catalysis**

Specific acid catalysis (SAC) involves a rapid protonation of the compound followed by the slow step, which is accelerated in comparison with the uncatalysed reaction because of the greater reactivity of the protonated compound. You have just seen an example with an epoxide; ester hydrolysis (or formation) is another, as you saw in Chapter 12.

A more interesting reaction is the dienone–phenol rearrangement. Rearrangement in the absence of acid is very slow but once the ketone oxygen is protonated, it occurs very rapidly.
Again we have fast equilibrium protonation, followed by a rate-determining step involving a reaction of the protonated species: this is SAC.

This catalysis depends only on the protonating power of the solution. The compound must be protonated to react, so the catalyst must be a strong enough acid to do the job. It is not necessary that every molecule is protonated—just enough to set the reaction going because the catalytic acid is regenerated at the end. In a specific acid catalysed reaction, the rate of the reaction depends on the pH of the reaction mixture. SAC works only if the pH is similar to, or below, the p\(K_a\) of the conjugate acid of the substrate, and the log of the rate of the reaction is proportional to the pH of the solution.

There is one rather remarkable experimental indication of this mechanism. If the reaction is carried out in a deuterated solvent (D\(_2\)O instead of H\(_2\)O) the rate of the reaction increases. This is a solvent isotope effect rather than a kinetic isotope effect and needs some explanation. If you examine the three examples of SAC in the previous pages you will see that they share these characteristics: a fast proton exchange is followed by a rate-determining step that does not involve the making or breaking of any bonds to hydrogen.

\[
\text{rate} = k[XH^+] 
\]

The concentration of the intermediate [XH\(^+\)] is related to the pH and to the concentration of the substrate by the equilibrium constant, \(K\), of the protonation. This gives us:

\[
\text{rate} = kK[H^+][X] 
\]

In the acid-catalysed reaction, the bond to H (or D) is not broken in the rate-determining step, so \(k\) cannot change when hydrogen is replaced by deuterium. That means that if a reaction goes faster in D\(_2\)O than in H\(_2\)O then it must be \(K\) that is different (i.e. larger) in D\(_2\)O. SAC is more effective with D\(_2\)O\(^+\) in D\(_2\)O than with H\(_2\)O\(^+\) in H\(_2\)O because more of the substrate is protonated at any one time.

- An inverse solvent isotope effect (\(k[D_2O] > k[H_2O]\)) is indicative of specific acid catalysis.

This is sometimes explained by saying that D\(_2\)O\(^+\) is a stronger acid than H\(_2\)O\(^+\). This is partly true. The full truth is that D\(_2\)O\(^+\) in D\(_2\)O is a stronger acid than H\(_2\)O\(^+\) in H\(_2\)O. Water (H\(_2\)O) is a better solvating agent for H\(_2\)O\(^+\) than D\(_2\)O is for D\(_2\)O\(^+\) because O–H bonds are longer than O–D bonds. Look again at the potential energy curve we showed you on p. 1050 and reproduced below, this time representing the energies of O–H and O–D bonds. The average length of a bond is the mid-point of the line in the potential energy well representing its energy level. You can easily see that the mid-point for the O–H is further out than the mid-point for the O–D bond because of the asymmetry of the well. O–H bonds are longer than O–D bonds, and can therefore make stronger hydrogen bonds. These hydrogen bonds are better at allowing solvation of H\(_2\)O\(^+\), making H\(_2\)O\(^+\) in H\(_2\)O less willing to protonate a substrate than D\(_2\)O\(^+\) in D\(_2\)O.
Let’s illustrate all this with an example. The Z allylic alcohol below dehydrates in acid solution to the E diene. We have lots of data on this mechanism, all summarized in the diagrams. You may like to note as well that the product contains no deuterium after dehydation in D₂O.

\[
\rho = -6.0 \quad k(H_2O) = 1.0 \quad k(D_2O) = 2.5
\]

\[
\Delta S^\ddagger = +24 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}
\]

The Hammett \( \rho \) value of –6.0 suggests a carbocation intermediate and the positive entropy of activation suggests a rate-determining step in which disorder increases, perhaps one molecule breaking into two. The inverse solvent deuterium isotope effect (faster reaction in D₂O than in H₂O) strongly suggests SAC. Putting all this together we have a mechanism—a simple example of SAC. There is no protonation at carbon.

---

**Summary of features of specific acid catalysis**

1. Only H₃O⁺ is an effective catalyst; pH alone matters.
2. Usually means rate-determining reaction of protonated species.
3. Effective only at pHs near or below the pK₆ of the substrate's conjugate acid.
4. Proton transfer is not involved in the rate-determining step.
5. Only simple unimolecular and bimolecular steps—moderate + or –\( \Delta S^\ddagger \).
6. Inverse solvent isotope effect \( k(H_2O) < k(D_2O) \).

---

**Specific base catalysis**

The other side of the coin is specific base catalysis (SBC). SBC usually involves the removal of a proton from the substrate in a fast pre-equilibrium step followed by a rate-determining reaction of the anion. Most of the base-catalysed reactions you are familiar with work by SBC. Examples include opening of epoxides with thiols.
As with SAC, the rate of the reaction depends on the pH of the solution. If it is around or higher than the pK\textsubscript{a} of the thiol, thiolate anion will be formed and this opens the epoxide much faster than does the unionized thiol. The nucleophile is then regenerated by the oxyanion produced in the rate-determining step.

It is quite common for specific acid and specific base catalysis to operate on the same reaction, depending on the pH at which the reaction is carried out. In fact, you have already seen this for ester hydrolysis in Chapter 12. The pH–rate profile (Chapter 12) for the hydrolysis of a simple ester such as ethyl acetate shows just two straight lines meeting each other (and zero rate) at about neutrality. Ethyl acetate hydrolysis occurs by SAC or SBC only.

\[
\text{variation of rate of ester hydrolysis with pH}
\]

Removal of a proton from heteroatoms by heteroatom bases is never rate determining because it is always fast, but removal of a proton from carbon can be the rate-determining step. A remarkably large inverse solvent deuterium isotope effect was found with this elimination of a tertiary amine in basic solution.

\[
\frac{k(\text{H}_2\text{O})}{k(\text{D}_2\text{O})} = 1.0 \quad 7.7
\]

The detailed mechanism cannot be E2 or the isotope effect, if any, would be the other way round. With SBC, however, the mechanism can be E1cB having a carbanion as an intermediate.

\[
\text{The isotope effect observed is certainly inverse (the reaction is faster with H}_2\text{O than D}_2\text{O) but the magnitude of the effect is too large to be a solvent isotope effect and looks much more like an inverse kinetic isotope effect. And so it is. The tertiary amine is not a very good leaving group in spite of its positive charge (pK}_a\text{ of R}_3\text{NH}^+\text{ is about 10) so the carbanion mostly reverts to starting materials. The isotope effect is a kinetic isotope effect on this reverse step—the protonation of the carbanion. This reaction involves a proton transfer from H}_2\text{O or D}_2\text{O and will be much faster (7.7 times in fact) in H}_2\text{O due to an ordinary kinetic isotope effect. The elimination reaction goes faster in D}_2\text{O because the back reaction goes more slowly and more of the carbanion goes on to product.}
\]

**Microscopic reversibility**

There is only one least-energy pathway between two interconverting compounds such as the starting material and the intermediate here. Every microscopic detail of the back reaction is exactly the same as that for the forward reaction. This is the principle of microscopic reversibility. Here we use evidence from the back reaction (slow proton transfer from water to the carbanion) to tell us about the forward reaction.

**Summary of features of specific base catalysis**

1. Only HO\textsuperscript{−} is an effective catalyst; pH alone matters.
2. Usually means rate-determining reaction of deprotonated species.
3. Effective only at pHs near or above the pK\textsubscript{a} of the substrate.
4. Proton transfer is not involved in the rate-determining step, unless C–H bonds are involved.
5. Only simple unimolecular and bimolecular steps—moderate $+\Delta S^\ddagger$.
6. Inverse solvent isotope effect $k(\text{H}_2\text{O}) < k(\text{D}_2\text{O})$. 

$E1$, $E2$, and $E1cB$ mechanisms are described in Chapter 17.
General base catalysis

In Chapter 12 (p. 263) we pointed out that even weak bases—too weak to deprotonate a nucleophile by the mechanism we have just described for SBC—can still act as catalysts. Such catalysts are known as general base catalysts, and are the promoters of a parallel kind of acid–base catalysis called ‘general’ rather than ‘specific’. General base catalysis, abbreviated GBC, depends not only on pH (i.e. the concentration of hydroxide ion) but also on the concentration of other bases too. General acid catalysis, abbreviated GAC, likewise depends not only on pH (i.e. the concentration of H\textsubscript{3}O\textsuperscript{+}) but also on the concentration of other undissociated acids HA. General acid–base catalysis is a milder kind of catalysis and is characteristic of reactions catalysed by enzymes in the metabolism of living things.

In a general base-catalysed reaction, proton transfer is not complete before the rate-determining step (as it was in SBC) but occurs during the rate-determining step. A simple example is the catalysis by acetate ion of the formation of esters from alcohols and acetic anhydride.

\[
\text{nucleophile} + \text{electrophile} + \text{catalyst} \rightarrow \text{product} + \text{catalyst, regenerated}
\]

How can this catalysis work? At first sight there seems to be no mechanism available. Acetate cannot act as a specific base—it is far too weak (pK\textsubscript{a} AcOH 4.7) to remove a proton from an alcohol (pK\textsubscript{a} about 15). It can’t operate as a nucleophile, as pyridine does (p. 200), as nucleophilic attack on acetic anhydride would be a non-reaction, simply regenerating starting materials. The only thing it can do is to remove the proton from the alcohol as the reaction occurs.

\[
\text{nucleophile} \quad \text{electrophile} \quad \text{general base catalyst} \quad \text{rate-determining step} \quad \text{product} \\
\]

You will see at once that there is a great disadvantage in this mechanism: the rate-determining step is termolecular—three molecules have to collide. This comes out most clearly in the entropy of activation, which has an enormous negative value—around \(\Delta S^\ddagger = -168\ \text{J} \text{mol}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}\) for this reaction. For this reason, GBC or GAC reactions are normally effective only if one of the three molecules is present in large excess—this reaction might be done in ROH as a solvent, for example, so that ROH is always present. We would also expect a normal kinetic isotope effect for ROD compared with ROH as a bond to hydrogen is being formed and broken in the rate-determining step: it is \(k_H/k_D = 2.4\) here.

In understanding how this GBC works it is helpful to look at the mechanism without catalysis.

\[
\text{nucleophile} \quad \text{electrophile} \quad \text{rate-determining step} \quad \text{product} \\
\]

The acetate catalyst cannot remove a proton from the starting material but it can easily remove a proton from the intermediate, which has a complete positive charge on the alcohol oxygen atom. The starting material has a pK\textsubscript{a} above the pK\textsubscript{a} of HOAc but the product has a pK\textsubscript{a} well below it. Somewhere in the middle of the rate-determining step, the pK\textsubscript{a} of the ROH proton passes through the pK\textsubscript{a} of acetic acid and then acetate is a strong enough base to remove it. The GBC is effectively deprotonating the transition state.

There was some discussion of this reaction in Chapter 12. Chapter 10 refers to the difficulty of pinpointing proton transfers in mechanisms involving the carbonyl group.

The first time you met third-order kinetics (where it arose from a combination of more than one step, see p. 261) we pointed out how unlikely real termolecular steps are.
So how do we find GAC or GBC? Well, first we must remove the more powerful ‘specific’ style of catalysis by working at constant pH because SAC or SBC depends on pH alone. If we find that the rate of the reaction changes with the concentration of a weak base at constant pH, we have GBC. The formation of three- and five-membered cyclic ethers shows the contrast between GBC and SBC. The formation of epoxides is straightforward SBC with a simple linear dependence on pH between pH 8 and 12, and no acceleration at constant pH by carbonate (CO$_3^{2-}$) ions. There is an inverse solvent isotope effect and an aryl substituent at the electrophilic carbon atom gives the small positive $\rho$ value expected for SN2 with an anion.

Formation of tetrahydrofuran (THF) is also faster at higher pH but, by contrast, is additionally accelerated by various bases at constant pH. If anions of phenols (ArO$^-$) are used as catalysts, a Hammett $\rho$ value of +0.8 shows that electrons are flowing away from the aromatic ring. There is a small normal kinetic isotope effect $k(H)/k(D) = 1.4$. Both SBC and GBC are therefore operating in this reaction. Here is the mechanism with ArO$^-$ as GBC.

Why are the two different? The THF is easy to form, the transition state is unstrained, and only a little help is needed to make the reaction go—GBC will do. The epoxide is very strained indeed and the starting material needs to be raised in energy before cyclization will occur. Only the most powerful form of catalysis—SBC—is good enough.

- **Summary of features of general base catalysis**
  1. Any base is an effective catalyst; pH also matters.
  2. Proton transfer is involved in the rate-determining step.
  3. Effective at neutral pHs even if below the pK$_a$ of the substrate.
  4. Catalyst often much too weak a base to deprotonate the reagent.
  5. Catalyst removes a proton, which is becoming more acidic in the rate-determining step.
  6. Some other bond making or bond breaking also involved unless proton is on carbon.
  7. Often termolecular rate-determining step: large $-\Delta S^\ddagger$.
  8. Normal kinetic isotope effect $k(H) > k(D)$.

**General acid catalysis**

GAC involves transfer of a proton from a weak acid (too weak to protonate the substrate completely) during the rate-determining step. A few examples will demonstrate to you how this works. They are all examples where GAC occurs because of a modification to a familiar reaction involving SAC.

In the first one, the termolecular problem (i.e. the fact that in GAC and GBC three molecules have to come together in the transition state) is avoided by making a reaction intramolecular. Normally, ester formation and hydrolysis are specific-acid-catalysed only, but here there is catalysis by a weak acid: acetic acid. A normal kinetic isotope effect $k$(HOAc)/$k$(DOAc) = 2.3 shows that proton transfer occurs in the rate-determining step and there is a large negative $\Delta S^\ddagger = -156$ J mol$^{-1}$ K$^{-1}$. This is GAC of nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group, admittedly in a rather special molecule.
In Chapter 11 we emphasized the importance of the mechanism for the formation and hydrolysis of acetals. These are SAC reactions: alcohols are bad leaving groups and usually need to be fully protonated by strong acids before they will go, even with the help of the lone pair of another oxygen atom.

If we speed up the slow step by adding to the molecule some feature that stabilizes the cation intermediate, GAC may be found. One example is the aromatic cation formed in the hydrolysis of cycloheptatrienone acetals. The normal kinetic isotope effect announces the appearance of GAC.

Even adding one extra alkoxy group so that we have an orthoester instead of an acetal is enough. These compounds show catalysis with a variety of weak acids at not very acidic pH (5–6). As one OMe group is protonated, two others help in pushing it out, and they both help to stabilize the intermediate cation. Nature prefers these milder methods of catalysis, as we will see in Chapter 42.

For another contrast between SAC and GAC we need only refer you back to the two Z/E isomerizations earlier in the chapter. Isomerization of the diene is GAC—protonation at carbon is the slow step—and isomerization of the allylic alcohol is SAC. What we didn’t tell you earlier was that the GAC reaction has a normal kinetic isotope effect of $k(H)/k(D) = 2.5$ and a negative entropy of activation $\Delta S^\ddagger = -36$ J mol$^{-1}$ K$^{-1}$—just what we should expect for a bimolecular reaction involving rate-determining proton transfer from oxygen to carbon. Notice that the intermediate cation is the same whichever the route; only the ways of getting there, including the rate-determining steps, are different.
These examples show you that GAC is possible with strong acids, especially when protonation is at carbon and that in such cases no other bond-making or -breaking steps need be involved.

**Summary of features of general acid catalysis**

1. Any acid is an effective catalyst; pH also matters.
2. Proton transfer is involved in the rate-determining step.
3. Effective at neutral pHs even if above the pKₐ of the conjugate acid of the substrate.
4. Catalyst often much too weak an acid to protonate reagent.
5. Catalyst adds proton to a site that is becoming more basic in the rate-determining step.
6. Some other bond-making or bond-breaking also involved unless proton is on carbon.
7. Often termolecular rate-determining step: large −ΔS°.
8. Normal kinetic isotope effect k(H) > k(D).

The detection of intermediates

In earlier chapters we revealed how some reactive intermediates can be prepared, usually under special conditions rather different from those of the reaction under study, as a reassurance that some of these unlikely looking species can have real existence. Intermediates of this kind include the carbocation in the S₈₁ reaction (Chapter 15), the cations and anions in electrophilic (Chapter 21) and nucleophilic (Chapter 22) aromatic substitutions, and the enols and enolates in various reactions of carbonyl compounds (Chapters 20, 25, and 26). We have also used labelling in this chapter to show that symmetrical intermediates are probably involved in, for example, nucleophilic aromatic substitution with a benzyne intermediate (Chapter 22).

We have hedged this evidence around with caution since the fact that an intermediate can be prepared does not by any means prove that it is involved in a reaction mechanism. In this section we are going to consider other and better evidence for intermediates and at the same time revise some of the earlier material.

Trapping reactions

A more impressive piece of evidence is the design of a molecule that has built into it a functional group that could react with the intermediate in a predictable way but could not reasonably react with other species that might be present. For example, aromatic ethers react with nitrating agents in the ortho or para positions (Chapter 21). The intermediate has a positive charge delocalized over three of the carbon atoms in the benzene ring. If a nucleophilic group is built into the structure in the right way, it might trap this intermediate and stop it reacting further.

If we try drawing a mechanism for the formation of this remarkable compound, we discover that a necessary intermediate is also an intermediate in our preferred mechanism for aromatic nitration. The amide has trapped the cation we would propose as an intermediate in aromatic nitration.
nitration, so we feel more confident about that mechanism. The product is an enol ether that will hydrolyse to the observed enone.

This mechanism explains everything, including the stereochemistry. The NO₂⁻ attacks the aromatic ring para to the OMe group and on the opposite side to the amide. The amide is now in the perfect position to capture the cation at the meta position and, because the tether is short, it must form a cis bridge.

To be convincing, evidence for an intermediate should include:

- detection of the intermediate in the reaction mixture, perhaps by a trapping reaction
- a demonstration that the intermediate gives the product when added to the reaction mixture (this also means that it must be prepared as an at least reasonably stable compound)
- kinetic evidence that the rate of formation and rate of disappearance are adequate
- other suitable evidence of the kind that we have been discussing in this chapter.

A neat intramolecular trap for a benzyne works in this way. A standard benzyne-generating reaction, the diazotization of an ortho-amino benzoic acid (Chapter 22), gives a zwitterion that loses nitrogen and CO₂ to release the benzyne. A furan tethered to the next ortho position traps the benzyne in an intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction. The yield is impressive and the trap is very efficient.

This reaction cannot really be explained without a benzyne intermediate. This same method of making benzyne is used on other o-amino benzoic acids and so we deduce that they presumably create benzenes too.

**A collection of reactions linked by a common intermediate**

Particularly convincing evidence can develop when a number of chemists suggest the same intermediate for a number of different reactions and show that it is possible to trap the intermediate from one reaction, put it into the others, and get the normal products. We are going to describe one such set of related reactions. In Chapter 36 we suggested a mechanism for the Favorskii rearrangement involving a series of remarkable intermediates. Here is an example.
We’ll summarize the evidence on this particular example. If the reaction is run in MeOD instead of MeOH, the starting material becomes deuterated at the site of enolate formation, suggesting that this is a fast and reversible step. The entropy of activation for the reaction is $\Delta S^\ddagger = +64 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$, suggesting that the slow step is one molecule breaking into two. There is only one such step—the second, ionization step. If various substituted phenyl groups are used, the Hammett $\rho$ value is $-5$. This large negative value also suggests that the ionization is the slow step as the cation is delocalized into the benzene ring.

There is evidence for the first intermediate—the exchange of deuterium from the solvent. In fact formation of the enolate can even become the rate-determining step. If we merely add an extra methyl group to the chloroketone the reaction becomes 220 times faster and the rate-determining step changes. There is no longer any exchange of deuterium from the solvent and the Hammett $\rho$ value changes from $-5$ to $+1.4$. This small positive value, showing some modest increase in electron density near the ring, matches typical known $\rho$ values for enolate formation.

However, it’s not too surprising that an enolate ion is formed from a ketone in basic solution. The oxyallyl cation is a much more unusual species. How can we be convinced that it really is an intermediate? One way is to make it by an alternative route. If basic nucleophiles such as the methoxide ion are avoided and reaction of zinc with an $\alpha,\alpha'$-dibromoketone in a non-nucleophilic solvent like diglyme is used instead, the oxyallyl cation can be trapped in a Diels–Alder reaction. This is the basis for a good synthesis of seven-membered rings.

But does the oxyallyl cation go on to give cyclopropanones? In fact, there is good evidence that the two are in equilibrium. If the same method is used to create the diphenyl oxyallyl cation in methanol instead of in diglyme, the normal Favorskii product is produced. Evidently, methoxide is needed only to produce the enolate—methanol alone is enough to decompose the cyclopropanone.

Further information comes from another reaction. If a suitable (1,3-di-t-butyl) allene is epoxidized with $m$-CPBA the unstable allene oxide can actually be isolated. On heating, this
epoxide gives a stable trans-di-t-butylcyclopropanone. It is very difficult to see how this reaction could happen except via the oxyallyl cation intermediate.

![Reaction Diagram]

But can the same cyclopropanone be an intermediate in the Favorskii reaction? If the bromoketone is treated with methoxide in methanol, it gives the Favorskii product, but if it is treated with a much more hindered base, such as the potassium phenoxide shown, it gives the same cyclopropanone.

![Reaction Diagram]

Other, less stable, cyclopropanones—such as this 2,2-dimethyl compound—can be made by carbene addition (Chapter 38) to ketenes. This compound did the Favorskii reaction with methoxide in methanol: the only product came from the expected loss of the less unstable carbanion. This will, of course, be general acid catalysed by methanol as no free carbanion can be released into an alcoholic solvent.

![Reaction Diagram]

The same cyclopropanone gives a cycloadduct with furans—this must surely be a reaction of the oxyallyl cation and we can conclude that the isomeric reactive intermediates are in equilibrium, and react to give products according to the conditions they find themselves in.

![Reaction Diagram]

Although it is never possible to prove a mechanism, this interlocking network of intermediates, all known to be formed under the reaction conditions, all being trapped in various ways, and all known to give the products, is very convincing. If any part of the mechanism were not correct, that would throw doubt on all the other reactions as well.

**Stereochemistry and mechanism**

Although we have left stereochemistry to the last, it is one of the most important tools in unravelling complex mechanisms. You have already seen how inversion of configuration is a vital piece of evidence for an $S_N2$ mechanism (Chapter 15) while retention of configuration is the best evidence for participation (Chapter 36). You have seen the array of stereochemical evidence for pericyclic mechanisms (Chapters 34 and 35). The chapters devoted to diastereoselectivity (32 and 33) give many examples where information about the mechanism follows from the stereochemistry. We shall not go over that material again, but summarize the types of evidence with new examples. The first example looks too trivial to mention.
Retention or inversion?

Although this reaction looks like a simple $S_N2$ displacement by the naphthyl oxide anion on the primary alkyl chloride, there is, in fact, a reasonable alternative—the opening of the epoxide at the less hindered primary centre followed by closure of the epoxide the other way round. The electrophile is known as epichlorohydrin and has two reasonable sites for nucleophilic attack.

It looks difficult to tell these mechanisms apart since both involve the same kind of reaction. Stereochemistry is the answer. If enantiomerically pure epichlorohydrin is used, the two mechanisms give different enantiomers of the product. Although each $S_N2$ reaction takes place at a primary centre and the stereogenic centre remains the same, the products shown in orange and in brown are obviously enantiomers.

Finding out the mechanism of this process is not idle curiosity as a group of drugs used to combat high blood pressure and heart disease, such as propranolol, are made from epichlorohydrin and it is essential to know which enantiomer to use to get the right enantiomer of the drug. In fact, the epoxide is attacked initially, in preference to the chloride.

A more complicated example arises from the strange reactions used to make malic acid from chloral and ketene. An initial $[2 + 2]$ cycloaddition is followed by acid treatment and then treatment with an excess of aqueous NaOH. Neutralization gives malic acid.

The mechanism of this reaction also looks straightforward: normal ester hydrolysis followed by hydrolysis of the CCl$_3$ group to CO$_2$H. Caution suggests investigation, particularly as four-membered lactones sometimes hydrolyse by $S_N2$ displacement at the saturated ester carbon rather than by attack on the carbonyl group, like the three-membered lactones discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 934). The solution was urgently needed when it was found that enantiomerically pure lactone could be prepared as a single enantiomer. The sequence was repeated with enantiomerically pure lactone: lactone hydrolysis occurred with retention of configuration and must be normal ester hydrolysis by attack of water at the carbonyl group. But the hydrolysis of the CCl$_3$ group surprisingly occurred with inversion of configuration.
The answer must be a mechanism related to the one we have just seen for epichlorohydrin. Attack by hydroxide on CCl₃ is almost unknown and it is much more likely that intramolecular attack by alkoxide to give an epoxide should occur. The carboxylate anion can then invert the stereogenic centre by intramolecular S_N2 displacement. Notice that the tether ensures attack at the nearer end of the epoxide. The second four-membered lactone also hydrolyses by attack at the carbonyl group.

**The Ritter reaction and the Beckmann fragmentation**

Another collection of related intermediates occurs in the Ritter reaction and the Beckmann fragmentation. The Ritter reaction involves the combination of a tertiary alcohol and a nitrile in acid solution and the proposed mechanism involves a series of intermediates.

**Ritter reaction**

Evidence that the two reactions are intimately related comes from the formation of the same amide from two different starting materials: a tertiary alcohol and an oxime, both based on the decalin skeleton. The oxime has its OH group *anti* to the ring junction to minimize steric hindrance as oxime formation is under thermodynamic control (Chapter 11).

**Beckmann fragmentation**

The experiments also provide stereochemical evidence that a carbocation is an intermediate in both reactions. Both starting materials are *cis*-decalins but the product is a *trans*-decalin. The carbocation intermediate has no stereochemistry and can react with the nitrile from either face: since axial attack is preferred the product is the more stable *trans*-decalin. Here’s the mechanism for the Beckmann fragmentation:
It is also possible to trap the carbocation in other ways. The Beckmann fragmentation of this oxime of an aryl seven-membered ring ketone gives a tertiary carbocation that might be expected to cyclize to give an amide. However, this reaction would give an unfavourable eight-membered ring (see Chapter 32) and does not happen. Instead, the chain twists round the other way and forms a much more stable six-membered ring by intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation.

In the Ritter reaction a rather different kind of evidence for the cation is the fact that families of isomeric alcohols all give the same product. In all these cases, rearrangements of the first-formed carbocation can easily account for the products. An example in the decalin series is this Ritter reaction with KCN as the nitrile in acidic solution so that HCN is the reagent. The starting material is a spirocyclic tertiary alcohol but the product is a trans-decalin formed by rearrangement.

Trapping the nitrilium cation is also possible. A famous example is the heterocycle (an oxazine, Chapter 32) produced by intramolecular capture of the nitrilium ion with a hydroxyl group. Note that the tertiary alcohol reacts to give the cation while the secondary alcohol acts as the nucleophilic trap.

An important example in which the diastereoisomer produced was critical in determining the mechanism is the synthesis of cis-aminindanol, a part of Merck’s anti-HIV drug Crixivan (indinavir). The reaction involves treatment of indene epoxide with acetonitrile (MeCN) in acidic solution. The product is a cis fused heterocycle. It is easy to see which atoms have come from the nitrile (green) but the substitution of nitrogen for oxygen at one end of the epoxide has occurred with retention of configuration as the cis-epoxide has given the cis product. Clearly, we have some sort of Ritter reaction and the nitrilium ion has been trapped with an OH group.
What about the regioselectivity? The obvious explanation is that a cation is formed from the epoxide by a specific acid-catalysed ring opening. But why should the nitrile attack the bottom face of the cation? We should expect it to attack the top face preferentially as the hydroxyl group partly blocks the bottom face.

A reasonable suggestion is that the nitrile adds reversibly to the cation. Every time it adds to the top face, it drops off again as the OH group cannot reach round to form the heterocycle. But every time it adds to the bottom face (which may well be less often), it is quickly captured by the OH group because 5,5 fused rings are favourable when the ring junction is cis. Eventually, all the compound is converted to the heterocycle.

The mechanism of this reaction is of great importance because it is the foundation stone of the synthesis of Crixivan (indinavir)—an anti-HIV drug that has saved thousands of lives.

**Summary of methods for the investigation of mechanism**

This brief summary is for guidance only and the figures quoted are approximate ranges only. The full text above should be used for detail. All methods would not be used in one investigation.

1. **Make sure of the structure of the product**
   - Basic structure (Chapters 3, 13, and 18) and stereochemistry (Chapter 31) by spectroscopic methods.
   - Detail of the fate of individual atoms by labelling with D, 13C, and 18O. Double labelling may help.
   - The stereochemical course of the reaction (enantio- or diastereoselectivity) may be critical.

2. **Kinetic methods**
   - Rate equation gives the composition of main transition state.
   - Deuterium isotope effect: \( k_H > k_D \) shows bond to H formed and/or broken in transition state. Values of \( k_H/k_D \) of 2–7 typical.
   - Entropy of activation shows increase (\( \Delta S^\ddagger \) positive) or decrease (\( \Delta S^\ddagger \) negative) in disorder. Typical values and deductions:
     - \( \Delta S^\ddagger \) positive (rarely larger than \(+50 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}\)): one molecule breaks into two or three
     - moderate negative values: no change in number of molecules (one goes to one etc.) or bimolecular reaction with solvent
large negative values: two molecules go to one or unimolecular reaction with ordered transition state (cycloaddition, etc.)

3. Correlation of structure and reactivity
   - Replace one group by another of similar size but different electronic demand (CF₃ for CH₃ or OMe for CH₃).
   - Systematic Hammett σ/ρ correlation with m- and p-substituted benzenes:
     - sign of ρ: +ρ indicates electrons flowing into and –ρ electrons flowing out of ring in transition state
     - magnitude of ρ shows effect on the benzene ring:
       - large (around 5), charge on ring (+p, anion; –p, cation)
       - moderate (around 2–4), charge on atom next to ring—may be gain or loss of conjugation
       - small (<1), ring may be distant from scene of action or ρ may be balance of two ρs of opposite sign.

4. Catalysis
   - pH–rate profile reveals specific acid or base catalysis.
   - Rate variation with [HA] or [B] at constant pH reveals GAC or GBC.
   - Deuterium isotope effect: normal (k_H > k_D) shows GA/BC, inverse solvent k(D₂O) > k(H₂O) shows SA/BC.
   - GA/BC is termolecular and has large negative entropy of activation.

5. Intermediates
   - Independent preparation or, better, isolation from or detection in reaction mixture helps.
   - Must show that intermediate gives product under reaction conditions.
   - Designed trapping experiments often most convincing.

Further reading


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Organometallic chemistry

Connections

Building on
- Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon ch15
- Conjugate addition ch22
- Controlling stereochemistry ch14, ch32, & ch33
- Oxidation and reduction ch23
- Chemistry of Si and Sn ch27
- Aromatic heterocycles ch29 & ch30
- Cycloadditions ch34
- Rearrangements ch35 & ch36
- Radicals and carbenes ch37 & ch38

Arriving at
- Transition metals form organic compounds
- The structure of σ and π complexes and the meaning of η numbers
- The bonding is described with the usual orbitals
- Most stable complexes have 18 valence electrons
- Metals catalyse ‘impossible’ reactions
- Oxidative insertion, reductive elimination, and ligand migration from metal to carbon are key steps
- Carbon monoxide inserts into metal–carbon bonds
- Palladium is the most important metal
- C–C, C–O, and C–N bonds can be made with Pd catalysis
- Cross-coupling of two ligands is common
- Allyl cation complexes are useful electrophiles

Looking forward to
- Asymmetric synthesis ch41
- The chemistry of life, especially nucleic acids ch42

Transition metals extend the range of organic reactions

Some of the most exciting reactions in organic chemistry make use of transition metals, and in recent years three Nobel prizes have been awarded for work in this area. How about this example? It is a Heck reaction, which allows nucleophilic addition to an unactivated alkene. Just a catalytic amount of palladium is needed to make the reaction go: the most useful organometallic reactions are those in which the metal acts catalytically.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{I} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{cat. Pd(OAc)}_{2} & \quad \text{Ph}_{3}P \\
\text{the catalytic Heck reaction} & \quad \text{O} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Reagents and complexes containing transition metals are important in modern organic synthesis because they allow apparently impossible reactions to occur easily. Their chemistry complements traditional functional group chemistry and significantly broadens the range of
reactions a chemist can expect to use to make molecules. This chapter introduces the concepts of metal–ligand interaction, describes the most important reactions that can occur while ligands are bound to the metal, and demonstrates the power of organometallic chemistry in synthesis. The efficiency of transition metal-catalysed reactions means that they are routinely used in industrial synthesis. It is important that you understand the rules by which organometallic chemistry works.

The 18 electron rule

There is a contradiction in what is required of a metal complex for it to be useful to us. Initially, it will need to be stable and have a long enough lifetime to enable study and, ideally, storage. But once it enters the reaction vessel, stability is a disadvantage: instead we want reactivity. Our ideal catalyst is a complex that is stable in the resting state, but quickly becomes activated in solution—perhaps by loss of a ligand—so that it can interact with the substrate. Fortunately, there is a simple guide to the stability of transition metal complexes: the 18 electron rule. If a complex satisfies the 18-electron rule it means that the metal at the centre of the complex has the noble gas configuration of 18 electrons in the valence shell, and the complex is likely to be stable. The requirement for 18 electrons comes from the need to fill one ‘s’ orbital, five ‘d’ orbitals, and three ‘p’ orbitals with two electrons in each. The 18 electrons we need can come from those the metal already possesses plus those donated by any coordinating ligands.

The table below gives you the number of valence electrons each metal starts with before it acquires any ligands. Notice that the ‘new’ group numbers 1–18 give you the answer without any calculation. The most important are highlighted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>IVB (4)</th>
<th>VB (5)</th>
<th>VIB (6)</th>
<th>VIIB (7)</th>
<th>VIIIB (8, 9, and 10)</th>
<th>1A (11)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of valence electrons</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8, 9, 10, 11</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d electrons</td>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>Co</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4d electrons</td>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>Ru</td>
<td>Rh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5d electrons</td>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Re</td>
<td>Os</td>
<td>Ir</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Metals to the left-hand side of this list obviously need many more electrons to make up the magic 18. Chromium, for example, forms stable complexes with a benzene ring, giving it six electrons, and three molecules of carbon monoxide, giving it two each: 6 + 6 + 2 + 2 + 2 = 18. Palladium is happy with just four triphenylphosphines (Ph₃P) giving it two each: 10 + 2 + 2 + 2 + 2 = 18.

You may already know from your study of inorganic chemistry that there are exceptions to the 18-electron rule, particularly among complexes of Ti, Zr, Ni, Pd, and Pt, which can all form stable 16-electron complexes. The important 16-electron Pd(II) complex with two chlorides and two acetonitriles (MeCN) will feature heavily in this chapter. The so-called platinum metals Ni, Pd, and Pt are extremely important in catalytic processes, as you will see later on. Their stable 16-electron configuration results from a high-energy vacant orbital caused by the complex adopting a square planar geometry.

Ligands can be attached in many different ways

Transition metals can have a number of ligands attached to them and each ligand can be attached in more than one place. This affects the reactivity of the ligand and the metal because each additional point of attachment means the donation of more electrons. We can show the number of atoms involved in bonding to the metal by a hapto number η. A simple Grignard reagent is η¹ (pronounced ‘eta-one’) as the magnesium is attached only to one carbon atom. A metal–alkene complex is η² because both carbon atoms of the alkene are equally involved in bonding to the metal. In these cases the η designation is not very informative as there are no alternatives, and it is usually omitted.
The bonding in these two complexes is very different. In the first there is a simple \( \sigma \) bond between the metal and the alkyl group as in a Grignard reagent \( \text{R–MgBr} \) and this type of complex is called a \( \sigma \) complex. In the alkene complex, bonding is to the \( p \) orbitals only. There are no \( \sigma \) bonds to the metal, which sits in the middle of the \( \pi \) bond in between the two \( p \) orbitals. This type of complex is called a \( \pi \) complex.

Representing bonds in transition metal complexes

It is difficult to know exactly how to draw the bonding in metal complexes and there are often several different acceptable representations. There is no problem when the metal forms a \( \sigma \) bond to atoms such as \( \text{Cl or C} \) as the simple line we normally use for covalent bonds means exactly what it says. The problems arise with ligands that form \( \sigma \) bonds by donating both their electrons, and with \( \pi \) complexes. Everyone writes phosphine–borane complexes with two charges but we normally draw the same sort of bond between a phosphine and, say, \( \text{Pd} \) as a simple line with no charges.

\[
\text{Ph}_3\text{P} - \text{BH}_3 \quad \text{Ph}_3\text{P} - \text{BH}_3
\]

16 electrons 18 electrons

You will sometimes see \( \pi \) complexes drawn with simpler dotted lines going to the middle of the \( \pi \) bond, sometimes with dotted \( \pi \) bonds, and sometimes with bonds (simple or dotted) going to the ends of the old \( \pi \) bond. These are all acceptable as the bonding is complex, as you will see. We might almost say that the ambiguity is helpful: we often don’t know either the exact nature of the bonding or the number of other ligands in the complex. In the diagrams in this section we have shown the main bond from metal to ligand as a heavy line in the simplest representation but we also offer alternatives with simple and dotted bonds. Don’t worry about this—things will become clearer as the chapter develops. When you have to draw the structure of a complex but you don’t know the exact bonding, just draw a line from metal to ligand.

These labels are useful where there is a choice of type of bonding, as with allylic ligands. The metal can either form a \( \sigma \) bond to a single carbon (hence \( \eta^1 \)), or form a \( \pi \) complex with the \( p \) orbitals of all three carbons of the allyl system—this would be \( \eta^3 \). If the \( \pi \) complex is made from an allyl cation, the ligand has two electrons, but it has four if it is made from an allyl anion. Similarly, a cyclopentadienyl anion can act as a \( \sigma \) ligand (\( \eta^1 \)), an allyl ligand (\( \eta^3 \)), or, most usually, as a cyclopentadienyl ligand (\( \eta^5 \)). The distinction is very important for electron counting as these three different situations contribute two, four, or six electrons, respectively, to the complex.

Neutral ligands can also bond in a variety of ways. Cyclooctatetraene can act as an alkene (\( \eta^2 \)), a diene (\( \eta^4 \)), a triene (\( \eta^6 \)), or a tetaene (\( \eta^8 \)), and the reactivity of the ligand changes accordingly. These are all \( \pi \) complexes with the metal above or below the black portion of the ring and with the thick bond to the metal at right angles to the alkene plane.

To determine the number of electrons around the transition metal in a complex the valence electrons from the metal ion are added to those contributed by all the ligands. The numbers of electrons donated by various classes of ligands are summarized in the table. Anions such as halides, cyanide, alkoxide, hydride, and alkyl donate two electrons, as do neutral ligands with a lone pair such as phosphines, amines, ethers, sulfides, carbon monoxide, nitriles, and...
isonitriles. Unsaturated ligands can contribute as many as eight electrons and can be neutral or negatively charged. If the overall total is 18, then the complex is likely to be stable. If the overall total is less than 18 the complex is called coordinatively unsaturated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ligand characteristics</th>
<th>Formal charge</th>
<th>Electrons donated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anionic ligands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl^−</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br^−</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I^−</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN^−</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR^−</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH^−</td>
<td>−1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkyl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral σ-donor ligands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R−P−R−</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bonding and reactions in transition metal complexes

The majority of ligands have a lone pair of electrons in a filled $sp^n$ type orbital that can overlap with a vacant metal ‘$dsp$’ orbital, derived from the vacant d, p, and s orbitals of the metal, to form a conventional two-electron two-centre $\sigma$ bond. Ligands of this type increase the electron density on the central metal atom.

A bonding interaction is also possible between any filled d orbitals on the metal and vacant ligand orbitals of appropriate symmetry such as $\pi^*$ orbitals. This leads to a reduction of electron density on the metal and is known as back-bonding. An example would be a complex with carbon monoxide. Many metals form these complexes and they are known as metal carbonyls. The ligand (CO) donates the lone pair on carbon into an empty orbital on the metal while the metal donates electrons into the low-energy $\pi^*$ orbital of CO. Direct evidence for this back-bonding is an increase in the C–O bond length and a lowering of the infrared stretching frequency from the population of the $\pi^*$ orbital of the carbonyl.

When an unsaturated ligand such as an alkene approaches the metal sideways to form a $\pi$ complex, similar interactions lead to bonding. The filled $\pi$ orbitals of the ligand bond to empty d orbitals of the metal, while filled d orbitals on the metal bond to the empty $\pi^*$ orbitals of the ligand. The result is a $\pi$ complex with the metal–alkene bond perpendicular to the plane of the alkene. The bond has both $\sigma$ and $\pi$ character.

Coordination to a metal by any of these bonding methods changes the reactivity of the ligands dramatically and this is exploited in the organometallic chemistry we will be discussing in the rest of the chapter. You do not need to understand all the bonding properties of metal complexes but you need to be able to count electrons, to recognize both $\sigma$ and $\pi$ complexes, and to realize that complexes show a balance between electron donation and electron withdrawal by the metal.

Oxidative addition inserts metal atoms into single bonds

Potential ligands that do not have a lone pair or filled $\pi$-type orbital are still able to interact with transition metal complexes but only by breaking a $\sigma$ bond. This is the first step in a wide variety of processes and is described as oxidative addition because the formal oxidation state of the transition metal is raised by two, for example M(0) to M(II), in the process. This is the result of having two extra ligands bearing a formal negative charge. You have seen this process in the formation of Grignard reagents (Chapter 9).
The number of coordinated ligands also increases by two so the starting complex is usually in low oxidation state (0 or 1; the diagram shows 0) and coordinatively unsaturated, that is, it has an empty site for a ligand and, say, only 16 electrons, like (MeCN)2PdCl2, whereas the product is usually coordinatively saturated, that is, it cannot accept another ligand unless it loses one first.

Oxidative addition occurs for a number of useful neutral species, including molecular hydrogen, carbon–hydrogen bonds, and silanes as well as polarized bonds or electrophilic species containing at least one electronegative atom. The resulting species with metal–ligand bonds allow useful chemical transformations to occur. Important examples include the oxidative addition of Pd(0) to aryl iodides and the activation of Wilkinson’s catalyst for hydrogenation in solution by oxidative addition to a hydrogen molecule.

Vaska’s complex

There are a number of possible mechanisms for oxidative addition and the precise one followed depends on the nature of the reacting partners. Vaska’s complex [Ir(PPh3)2COCl] has been extensively studied and it reacts differently with hydrogen and methyl iodide. Hydrogen is added in a cis fashion, consistent with concerted formation of the two new iridium–hydrogen bonds. The 16e (count them!), d8, Ir(I) complex becomes a new 18e, d6, Ir(III) species. With methyl iodide the kinetic product is that of trans addition, which is geometrically impossible from a concerted process. Instead, an SN2-like mechanism is followed involving nucleophilic displacement of iodide followed by ionic recombination.

Reductive elimination removes metal atoms and forms new single bonds

If we want to use organometallic chemistry to make organic compounds other than those containing metals, we must be able to remove the ligands from the coordination sphere of the metal at the end of the reaction. Neutral organic species such as alkenes, phosphines, and carbon monoxide can simply dissociate in the presence of other suitable ligands but those that are bound to the metal with shared electrons require a more active process. Fortunately, most reactions that occur around a transition metal are reversible and so the reverse of oxidative addition, known as reductive elimination, provides a simple route for the release of neutral organic products from a complex. Our general reaction shows M(II) going to M(0), releasing X–Y. These two ligands were separate in the complex but are bound together in the product. A new X–Y σ bond has been formed.
The ligands to be eliminated must be cis to one another for reductive elimination to occur. This is because the process is concerted. Two examples from palladium chemistry make this point clear. Warming in DMSO causes ethane production from the first palladium complex because the two methyl groups are cis in the square planar complex. The more elaborate second bisphosphine forces the two methyl groups to be trans and reductive elimination does not occur under the same conditions.

Of course, no one wants to make ethane that way (if at all) but many other pairs of ligands can be coupled by reductive elimination. Reductive elimination is one of the most important methods for the removal of a transition metal from a reaction sequence, leaving a neutral organic product. We will see many examples as the chapter develops but here is an indole synthesis that depends on a reductive elimination at palladium as a last step. In the starting material, palladium has two σ bonds sharing electrons with C, and is Pd(II). In the reaction the two C substituents bond together to form the indole ring and a Pd(0) species is eliminated.

**Migratory insertion builds ligand structure**

Two ligands can also react together to produce a new complex that still has the composite ligand attached to the metal, ready for further modification. This process involves migration of one of the ligands from the metal to the other ligand, and insertion of one of the ligands into the other metal–ligand bond. It is known as **migratory insertion**. The insertion process is reversible and, as the metal effectively loses a ligand in the process, the overall insertion may be driven by the addition of extra external ligands (L) to produce a coordinatively saturated complex. As with reductive elimination, a cis arrangement of the ligands is required and the migrating group (X) retains its stereochemistry (if it has any) during the migration.

Wilkinson’s catalyst is used in homogeneous hydrogenation of alkenes. The catalyst is soluble in many organic solvents such as EtOH, chloroform, or some hydrocarbons. The alkene complexes with the metal and migratory insertion forms an alkyl metal complex by hydrogen transfer. The next step, reductive elimination, usually follows rapidly to give the alkane and a complex that adds a hydrogen molecule to regenerate the catalyst.
Migratory insertion is the principal way of building up the chain of an organic ligand before elimination. The group to be inserted must be unsaturated in order to accommodate the additional bonds and common examples include carbon monoxide, alkenes, and alkynes, producing metal–acyl, metal–alkyl, and metal–alkenyl complexes, respectively. In each case the insertion is driven by additional external ligands, which may be an increased pressure of carbon monoxide in the case of carbonylation or simply excess phosphine for alken and alkyne insertions. In principle, the chain extension process can be repeated indefinitely to produce polymers by Ziegler–Natta polymerization.

An example of the carbonylation process is the reaction of the tetracarbonyl ferrate dianion \([\text{Fe(CO)}_4]^{2-}\) with alkyl halides. This reagent is made by dissolving metal reduction of the 18-electron Fe(0) compound Fe(CO)₅. Addition of two electrons would give an unstable 20-electron species but the loss of one of the ligands with its two electrons restores the stable 18-electron structure.

This iron anion is a good soft nucleophile for alkyl halides and can be used twice over to produce first a monoanion with one alkyl group and then a neutral complex with two alkyl groups and four CO ligands. Each of these complexes has 18 electrons. If extra CO is added by increasing the pressure, CO inserts into one Fe–C bond to form an iron acyl complex. Finally, reductive elimination couples the acyl group to the other alkyl group in a conceptually simple ketone synthesis. It does not matter which Fe–C bond accepts the CO molecule: the same unsymmetrical ketone is produced at the end.

Any good two-electron ligand will cause the CO insertion: \(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}\) is often used instead of an increased CO pressure. The phosphine adds to the iron and pushes out the poorest ligand (one of the alkyl groups) on to a CO ligand in a process of ligand migration. We can represent this as the mechanism below, although the phosphine addition and alkyl migration may well be concerted to avoid the formation of a 20-electron complex as an intermediate.
Carbon monoxide incorporation extends the carbon chain

Carbonylation (the addition of carbon monoxide to organic molecules) is an important industrial process as carbon monoxide is a convenient one-carbon feedstock and the resulting metal–acyl complexes can be converted into aldehydes, acids, and their derivatives. The OXO process is the hydroformylation of alkenes such as propene and uses two migratory insertions to make higher value aldehydes. Although a mixture is formed, this is acceptable from very cheap and abundant starting materials. Here the metal complex is a catalyst, not a stoichiometric reagent.

A catalytic cycle (going clockwise from the top) shows the various stages of alkene coordination, hydrometallation (migratory insertion) to produce an alkyl metal species, coordination of carbon monoxide followed by another migratory insertion, and finally reductive cleavage with hydrogen to produce the metal–hydride intermediate, which is then ready for another cycle. The steps leading to the other regioisomeric aldehyde and the ligands on the metal are omitted for clarity.

The mechanisms of the two key migratory insertion steps are worth discussion. Hydrometallation occurs by initial \( \pi \) complex formation followed by addition of the metal to one end of the alkene and hydrogen to the other. Both of the possible regioisomers are formed. The carbonyl insertion reaction is another migration from the metal to the carbon atom of a CO ligand.

Insertion reactions are reversible

The reverse process, decarbonylation, is also fast but can be arrested by maintaining a pressure of carbon monoxide above the reaction mixture. The reverse of hydrometallation involves the elimination of a hydride from the adjacent carbon of a metal alkyl to form an alkene complex.
This process is known as β hydride elimination or simply β elimination. It requires a vacant site on the metal as the number of ligands increases in the process and so is favoured by the shortage of ligands in 16-electron complexes. In more complex structures, the metal and the hydride must be syn to each other on the carbon chain for the elimination to be possible. The product is an alkene complex that can lose the neutral alkene simply by ligand exchange. β elimination is an important final step in a number of transition-metal catalysed processes, but it can be a nuisance because Pd–Et (and other similar Pd–alkyl) complexes cannot be used as β elimination is too fast.

Palladium is the most widely used metal in homogeneous catalysis

These elementary steps form the basis for most of organo-transition metal chemistry, and are the same regardless of the metal and the detailed structure of the ligands. Transition metal catalysis is an enormous and rapidly expanding field that we just do not have the space to discuss in comprehensive detail. Instead, we will concentrate on the chemistry of one important, and representative, transition metal: palladium. Pd-catalysed reactions are widely used in both industrial and academic laboratories, on both a minute and very large scale. The variety of reactions that can be catalysed by Pd together with the range of functional groups tolerated, and usually excellent chemo- and regioselectivity, means that most syntheses of organic molecules of any complexity will now involve palladium chemistry in one or more key steps.

Choice of palladium complex

There are many available complexes of palladium(0) and palladium(II). Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), Pd(PPh₃)₄, and tris(dibenzylidene-acetone)dipalladium(0), Pd₂(dba)₃, or the chloroform complex, Pd₂(dba)₃·CHCl₃, which is air-stable, are the most common sources of palladium(0). The detailed structures of some palladium complexes, particularly the dimers, are beyond the scope of this book but we will discuss the reactions in detail. Palladium(II) complexes are generally more stable than their palladium(0) counterparts. The dichloride PdCl₂ exists as a polymer and is relatively insoluble in most organic solvents. However, (PhCN)₂PdCl₂ and (MeCN)₂PdCl₂ (both easily prepared from PdCl₂) are soluble forms of PdCl₂, as the nitrile ligands are readily displaced in solution. Bis(phosphine)palladium(II) chloride complexes are also air-stable and readily prepared from PdCl₂. Palladium is, of course, an expensive metal—these complexes cost about £50–100 per gram—but very little is needed for a catalytic reaction.

Let’s start with a review of the basic chemistry of palladium, as you will be seeing many more examples of these steps in specialized situations. Palladium chemistry is dominated by two oxidation states. The lower, palladium(0), present in tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium, for example, is nominally electron-rich, and will undergo oxidative addition with suitable substrates such as organic halides, resulting in a palladium(II) complex. Oxidative addition is thought to occur on the coordinatively unsaturated 14-electron complex, formed by ligand dissociation in solution.
The resulting Pd–R \( \sigma \) bond in such complexes is very reactive, especially towards carbon–carbon \( \pi \) bonds. Thus an alkene in the reacting system will lead to coordination followed by migratory insertion into the palladium–carbon \( \sigma \) bond. Like hydrometallation this process is a migratory insertion and is called **carbopalladation** because carbon and palladium become attached to the ends of the alkene system. There is no change in oxidation state during this process, although the ligands (often phosphines) must dissociate to allow coordination of the alkene and associate to provide a stable final 16-electron product.

With some metals the process of olefin coordination and insertion may continue, leading to polymerization, but with palladium the metal is expelled from the molecule by a \( \beta \)-hydride elimination reaction and the product is an alkene, plus a Pd(II) complex. For the whole process to be catalytic, this Pd(II) product of \( \beta \)-hydride elimination must be converted to a Pd(0). This occurs in the presence of base, which removes HX from the palladium(II) species. This is another example of reductive elimination: one that forms a hydrogen halide rather than a carbon–carbon or carbon–hydrogen bond, as you saw earlier.

The speed of the \( \beta \)-hydride elimination (which is intramolecular and very fast) means that the original substrate for the oxidative addition reaction must be chosen with care—the presence of hydrogen at an sp\(^3\) carbon in the \( \beta \) position must be avoided. Thus, substrates for oxidative addition reactions in palladium chemistry are frequently vinylic, allylic, or aromatic and never ethyl or \( n \)-propyl.

**The Heck reaction couples together an organic halide or triflate and an alkene**

All the individual steps outlined above combine to make up the catalytic pathway in the **Heck reaction** with which we started the chapter. The Heck reaction couples an alkene with an organic halide or triflate \( \text{R}^1 \text{--X} \) to form a new alkene. The \( \text{R}^1 \) group in \( \text{R}^1 \text{--X} \) can be aryl, vinyl, or any alkyl group without \( \beta \) hydrogens on an sp\(^3\) carbon atom. The group X can be a halogen (Br or I) or triflate (\( \text{OSO}_2\text{CF}_3 \)). The alkene can be mono- or disubstituted and can be electron-rich, -poor, or -neutral. The base need not be at all strong and can be \( \text{Et}_3\text{N} \), NaOAc, or aqueous Na\(_2\)CO\(_3\). The reaction is very accommodating!

**Triflates**

The triflate (trifluoromethanesulfonate) anion, \( \text{CF}_3\text{SO}_2^- \), or TfO\(^-\), is an excellent, non-basic leaving group. It is often used as an oxygen-based alternative to halides, and metals will insert into the C--OSO\(_2\text{CF}_3\) bond. Triflates, particularly aryl and vinyl triflates, can be made conveniently with Comins’ reagent.
This palladium-catalysed addition of aryl, vinyl, or substituted vinyl groups to organic halides or triflates is one of the most synthetically useful palladium-catalysed reactions. The method is very efficient, and carries out a transformation that is difficult by more traditional techniques. The mechanism involves the oxidative addition of the halide, insertion of the olefin, and elimination of the product by a β-hydride elimination process. A base then regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst. The whole process is a catalytic cycle.

Here is the Heck reaction at work coupling two heterocyclic substrates. Easy chemistry to do, but impossible without a Pd catalyst.

Notice the regioselectivity: unlike the carbonylation on p. 1077, the Heck reaction favours one isomer, and when the alkene is polarized by an electron-withdrawing group the new C–C bond forms at the other end of the alkene. Notice also in this example and those below that the Pd is added as Pd(II), not Pd(0): the box below explains how this works.

The mild conditions of the Heck reaction mean that protected amino acids can be made without any racemization. The two examples below use a more hindered analogue of triphenyl phosphine, but the mechanism is the same.

**In situ formation of Pd(0) by reduction of Pd(II)**

In reactions requiring palladium(0), formation of the active complex may be achieved more conveniently by reduction of a palladium(II) complex, for example Pd(OAc)₂. Any phosphine may then be used in the reaction, without the need to synthesize and isolate the corresponding palladium(0)–phosphine complex. The reduction of palladium(II) to palladium(0) can be achieved with amines, phosphines, alkenes, and organometallics such as DIBAL-H, butyllithium, or trialkylaluminium. The mechanisms are worth surveying as they illustrate the basic steps of organometallic chemistry.
In contrast, electron-donating groups such as ethers lead to attack at the end of the alkene substituted by oxygen to produce the 1,1-disubstituted product. These reactions must be dominated by the interaction of the filled π orbital of the alkene with an empty d orbital on Pd. In the example below, the Heck reaction works even in the absence of a phosphine ligand.

Because β-hydride elimination is reversible, when there is a choice the more stable of the possible alkenes usually results. The reaction of allylic alcohols is particularly important as the more stable of the two alkenes is the enol and a carbonyl compound is formed.

**Hydropalladation–dehydropalladation can lead to alkene isomerization**

Reversible β-hydride eliminations provide a mechanism for interconverting regioisomers of an alkene, and the following reaction sequence also illustrates another point about the reductive elimination step: it is a syn elimination, and the C–Pd and C–H bonds have to eclipse one another for the Pd–H bond to form. Oxidative addition of the aryl iodide to a palladium(0) complex, formed from Pd(OAc)$_2$ by reduction, gives the active palladium(II) complex ArPdOAcL$_2$. Carbopalladation occurs as expected on an electron-rich alkene to give the product of aryl addition to the oxygen end of the alkene in a syn fashion. β-Hydride elimination must occur away from the aryl group because there is only one C–H bond syn to the C–Pd bond. The alkene has moved one position round the ring.
Hydropalladation in the reverse sense gives a new $\sigma$ complex, which could eliminate either the black or the green hydrogens. Elimination of the green H gives the enol ether, which is the most stable alkene possible due to conjugation.

This product now undergoes a second Heck reaction involving naphthyl iodide:

The initial mechanism is much the same. However, the enol ether has two diastereotopic faces: syn or anti to the aromatic substituent (Ar$^1$) introduced in the first step. Palladium is very sensitive to steric effects and generally forms less hindered complexes where possible, so the palladium(II) complexes the face of the enol ether anti to Ar$^1$. This in turn controls all the subsequent steps, which must be syn, leading to a final product with anti stereocchemistry. The requirement for syn $\beta$-hydride elimination also explains the regiochemical preference of the elimination. In the $\sigma$-bonded cyclic structure there is only one hydrogen (green) that is syn to the palladium; the one on the carbon bearing the naphthyl substituent is anti and cannot be eliminated. Further migrations of the alkene by hydropalladation are prevented by the silver carbonate, which rapidly removes iodide from the intermediate, preventing readdition of Pd–H to the alkene.

Cross-coupling of organometallics and halides

Other than $\beta$-hydride elimination, another important pathway by which palladium(II) intermediates can lead to neutral organic fragments is reductive elimination. This forms the basis of the mechanism for cross-coupling reactions between an organometallic reagent and an organic halide or triflate.

This is a reaction that seems very attractive for synthesis but, in the absence of a transition metal catalyst, the yields are very low. We showed in Chapter 27 how vinyl silanes can be made with control over stereochemistry and converted into lithium derivatives with retention. Neither of these vinyl metals couple with vinyl halides alone. But in the presence of a transition metal—Cu(I) for Li and Pd(0) for Sn—coupling occurs stereospecifically and in good yield.
The mechanism of palladium-catalysed cross-coupling starts, as in the Heck reaction, with oxidative addition of the halide or triflate to the initial palladium(0) phosphine complex to form a palladium(II) species. But the next step is new: it is a transmetalation, so-called because the nucleophile (R₁) is transferred from the metal in the organometallic reagent to the palladium and the counternion (X = halide or triflate) moves in the opposite direction. The new palladium(II) complex with two organic ligands undergoes reductive elimination to give the coupled product and the palladium(0) catalyst, ready for another cycle.

The reaction is important because it allows the coupling of two different components (R₁ and R₂), distinguished by being bonded either to the metal M or to the halide or triflate X. Both components form σ complexes with Pd but the halide partner (R₂X) bonds first by oxidative addition and this R₂–Pd bond must survive while the metal partner (R₁M) transfers R₁ to Pd by transmetalation. Once the two components are joined to the palladium atom, only the cross-coupled product can be formed. R₂X combines with Pd(0) and R₁M with Pd(II). There can then be no confusion. In contrast to the Heck reaction, here the metal defines the location of the new C–Pd bond.

The halide partner (R₂X) must be chosen with care, as β-hydride elimination would decompose the first intermediate during the slow transmetalation step. The choice for R₂ is restricted to substituents without β-hydrogen atoms on sp³ carbon atoms: vinyl, allyl, benzyl, and polyfluoroalkyl halides, triflates, and phosphates have all been coupled successfully. The organometallic reagent (R₁M) can be based on magnesium, zinc, copper, tin, silicon, zirconium, aluminium, or boron and the organic fragment can have a wide variety of structures as coupling is faster than β-hydride elimination.

Named coupling reactions
Palladium-catalysed reactions involving organometallic partners based on B, Mg, Sn, and Zn are particularly important and are often referred to by the names of their discoverers: Suzuki coupling for B, Kumada coupling for Mg, Stille coupling for Sn, and Negishi coupling for Zn.
In spite of the wide range of organometallic reagents that can be used there are two classes that have proved particularly popular because they are stable intermediates in their own right and can be prepared and purified separately before the coupling reaction. These cross-couplings are known by the names of the two chemists whose work made the reactions so valuable. The Stille coupling employs a stannane as the organometallic component (R\textsubscript{1}M) while the Suzuki coupling relies on a boronic acid.

### The Stille coupling uses stannanes as the organometallic component

Since its discovery in the late 1970s, the Stille coupling has been widely used for the coupling of both aromatic and vinylic systems.

The mechanism involves the oxidative addition of the vinyl or aromatic triflate or halide to give an organopalladium intermediate. Transmetallation with the organostannane forms another organopalladium intermediate with two Pd–C σ bonds. A reductive elimination step releases the product and thereby regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst. Vinyl triflates can be made from enolizable aldehydes or ketones and aryl triflates from phenols, but the reaction also works with vinyl and aryl halides.

The Stille reaction is widely used to make bonds between sp\textsuperscript{2} carbon atoms, but it also works with sp carbons: the example below is a challenging formation of a 10-membered ring containing two alkynes.

The Stille coupling may be combined with carbonylation in two ways. Acid chlorides may be used as substrates for the reaction with vinyl or aryl stannanes, although an atmosphere of carbon monoxide is frequently required to prevent decarbonylation after the oxidative addition step.
Simply performing a normal Stille reaction in the presence of carbon monoxide may also lead to carbonylated products. These reactions can take place in a CO saturated solution, under one atmosphere of pressure. Using these conditions, excellent yields of the carbonylated product can be obtained, without any of the normal coupling product being present.

\[
\text{PhI} + \text{Me}_3\text{SnOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{catalytic Pd(PPh}_3)_4/\text{CO}, 1,4\text{-dioxane}} \text{OEt} \equiv \text{CO} + \text{OEt} \\
\text{not formed}
\]

The mechanism follows that of a normal Stille coupling except that the carbon monoxide first exchanges for one of the phosphine ligands and then very rapidly inserts to produce an acyl palladium(II) complex. Transmetalation with the vinyl stannane in the usual way forms trimethylstannyl iodide and the key palladium complex carrying two carbon ligands. Transmetalation is always the slow step in these coupling reactions, allowing time for the carbon monoxide insertion. The final step—reductive elimination—releases the Pd(0) catalyst for the next cycle.

**Interactive mechanism for the carbonylative Stille coupling catalytic cycle**

**Acyl palladium species react like activated acid derivatives**

Carbonylation of a halide or triflate provides a direct route to a range of chain-extended acyl derivatives. A carbonyl group substituted with PdX (X = halide or triflate) is a reactive acylating agent, rather like an acid anhydride, as PdX is a good leaving group. Reaction with alcohols and amines gives esters and amides, while reduction with tributyltin hydride gives the aldehyde. Intramolecular attack by alcohols leads to lactones, as demonstrated in the conversion of a vinyl iodide into a 2H-furanone (butenolide). We will see more of these reactions later.

**The Suzuki coupling couples boronic acids to halides**

The Suzuki coupling of a boronic acid or ester with a vinyl or aryl halide or triflate is probably the most commonly used of all cross-coupling reactions. The original version, first reported in 1979, involved hydroboration of an alkyne with catecholborane, followed by palladium(0)-catalysed coupling of the resulting vinyl boronate with an aromatic iodide or bromide. The hydroboration is generally regioselective for the less hindered position and addition of boron and hydrogen occurs cis stereospecifically.
As in the Stille coupling, the geometry of both unsaturated components is preserved during the coupling so this is an excellent method for the stereoselective synthesis of dienes. Hydroboration of octyne followed by hydrolysis of the boronate gave exclusively the E-vinyl boronic acid. Coupling with the Z-vinyl bromide in toluene with palladium(0) catalysis with potassium hydroxide as the base gave the E,Z-diene in good yield. These dienes are very useful in the Diels–Alder reaction (Chapter 34).

\[ \text{H-BO}_2 \text{C}_6\text{H}_{13} \xrightarrow{1. \text{heat}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{13} \text{C}_6\text{H}_{13} \xrightarrow{2. \text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{B(OH)}_2 \text{C}_6\text{H}_{13} \]

90% yield 75% yield

This sort of reaction has been used in the synthesis of the unsaturated units of a range of natural products, including trisporol B. The key step is the stereocontrolled synthesis of an \(E,Z\)-diene. The geometry of both double bonds comes stereospecifically with retention of configuration from single geometrical isomers of the starting materials.

The mechanism of the Suzuki coupling is very similar to that of the Stille coupling. Oxidative addition of the vinylic or aromatic halide to the palladium(0) complex generates a palladium(II) intermediate. This then undergoes a transmetallation with the alkenyl boronate, from which the product is expelled by reductive elimination, regenerating the palladium(0) catalyst. The important difference is the transmetallation step, which explains the need for an additional base, usually sodium or potassium ethoxide or hydroxide, in the Suzuki coupling. The base accelerates the transmetallation step, leading to the borate directly, presumably via a more nucleophilic ‘ate’ complex.

Sterically demanding substrates are tolerated well and Suzuki coupling is often used for aryl–aryl cross-couplings. This example has three ortho substituents around the newly formed bond (marked in black) and still goes in excellent yield.

Aromatic heterocycles also couple well. The 2-position of a pyridine is very electrophilic and not at all nucleophilic (Chapter 29) but couplings at this position are fine with either the
halide or the boronic acid in that position. Clearly, it is a mistake to see either of these substituents as contributing a ‘nucleophilic carbon’. It is better to see the reaction as a coupling of two equal partners with the two substituents (the halide and the boronic acid) as control elements to ensure cross-coupling and prevent dimerization.

**Coupling to alkynes: the Sonogashira reaction**

The coupling of terminal alkynes with aryl or vinyl halides under palladium catalysis is known as the Sonogashira reaction and is rather like the Heck reaction. It is a catalytic process, requiring a palladium(0) complex; it is performed in the presence of base, and generally uses copper iodide as a co-catalyst. One partner—the aryl or vinyl halide—is the same as in the Stille and Suzuki couplings but the alkyne needs no metal to activate it: the reaction works with the alkyne itself.

The mild conditions usually employed, frequently room temperature, mean that the reaction can be used with thermally sensitive substrates. By now, you should not be surprised by the mechanism! Oxidative addition of the organic halide gives a palladium(II) intermediate that undergoes transmetallation with the alkynyl copper (generated from the terminal alkyne, base, and copper iodide). Reductive elimination with coupling of the two organic ligands gives the product and regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst.

It is usually more convenient, as in the Heck reaction, to use a stable and soluble Pd(II) derivative such as bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II) chloride instead of Pd(0). This is rapidly reduced in situ to give a coordinatively unsaturated, catalytically active, palladium(0) species. The geometry of the alkene is generally preserved so that cis (Z) and trans (E) dichloroethylene give the two different geometrical isomers of the enyne below in >99% stereochemical purity as well as excellent yield.
Ene-diynes and the Bergmann cyclization

The Sonogashira reaction provides an important way to make the ene-diyne antibiotics. Symmetrical ene-diynes may be synthesized in one step from two molecules of a terminal alkyne and Z-dihaloethylene. The ene-diyne part of the molecule does the remarkable Bergmann cyclization to give a benzene diradical; the ene-diyne is able to penetrate DNA and the diradical is able to react with it, giving the compounds anticancer activity. To make the most biologically active compounds, however, the reaction is performed sequentially, allowing different functionality on each of the alkyne units.

\[
\text{R} \quad \text{R} \quad \text{H} \\
\text{X} \quad \text{X}
\]

\[
Pd(0), CuI \\
\text{Bergmann cyclization}
\]

\[
\text{ene-diynel}
\]

\[
\text{reactive diradical} \\
can damage DNA
\]

Palladium-catalysed coupling reactions: a summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coupling an aryl or vinyl halide with...</th>
<th>Typical example (X=I, Br, OTf)</th>
<th>See page</th>
<th>Name of reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>an alkene</td>
<td>(\text{Ar–X} \xrightarrow{\text{Pd cat. + ligands}} \text{Ar} \text{-Ar} )</td>
<td>1079</td>
<td>Heck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an aryl or vinyl stannane</td>
<td>(\text{SnBu3} \xrightarrow{\text{Pd cat. + ligands}} \text{SnBu3} \text{-SnBu3} )</td>
<td>1084</td>
<td>Stille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an aryl or vinylboronic acid or ester</td>
<td>(\text{B(OR)2} \xrightarrow{\text{Pd cat. + ligands}} \text{B(OR)2} \text{-B(OR)2} )</td>
<td>1085</td>
<td>Suzuki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an alkyne</td>
<td>(\text{Ar–X} \xrightarrow{\text{Pd cat. + ligands}} \text{Ar} \text{-Ar} )</td>
<td>1087</td>
<td>Sonogashira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an amine</td>
<td>(\text{R}^1 \text{NH} \xrightarrow{\text{Pd cat. + ligands}} \text{R}^1 \text{N} \text{-R}^2 )</td>
<td>1092</td>
<td>(later in Buchwald-Hartwig) Hartwig</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Allylic electrophiles are activated by palladium(0)

Allylic compounds with good leaving groups, such as bromide and iodide, are excellent allylating agents but they suffer from loss of regiochemistry due to competition between the direct \(S_n2\) and \(S_n2'\) reactions. This problem was described in Chapter 24. In contrast, \(\pi\)-allyl...
cation complexes of palladium allow both the stereochemistry and regiochemistry of nucleophilic displacement reactions to be controlled.

In addition, leaving groups (X) that are usually regarded as rather unreactive still work, which makes the purification and handling of the starting materials easier. Acetate (X=OAc) is the most commonly used leaving group, but a range of other functional groups (X=OCO₂R, OPO(OR)₂, Cl, Br, OPh) will perform a similar role. The full catalytic cycle is shown below, with the intermediate π-allyl complex in equilibrium between the neutral version, which has the leaving group coordinated to palladium, and the cationic π-allyl complex.

Soft nucleophiles generally give the best results: stabilized enolates such as malonates, or cyanide, are best for carbon–carbon bond formation, but for C–X (X=O, N, S) bond formation the reaction is successful with alkoxides, amines, and thiolates (RS⁻). In the example below an amine nucleophile attacks the allyl system to generate the more stable product with the double bond within the ring.

The intramolecular reaction works well to give heterocyclic rings—the regioselectivity is usually determined by the length of the chain and how far it can reach. Here a 6/5 fused product is preferred to a bridged product containing two seven-membered rings.

The reaction usually proceeds with retention of configuration at the reacting centre. As in S₈₂ substitution reactions going with retention (Chapter 36), this actually suggests a double inversion. Coordination of Pd to the double bond of the allylic acetate occurs on the less hindered face opposite the leaving group and we can think of the oxidative addition step as an invertive nucleophilic displacement of the leaving group by a pair of Pd electrons. The nucleophile then adds to the face of the π-allyl Pd cation complex opposite the Pd. The net result is displacement of the leaving group by the nucleophile with retention. Thereafter, the
nucleophile attacks from the less hindered face of the resulting \( \pi \)-allyl complex (that is, away from the metal), leading to overall retention of configuration.

The reaction of this allylic acetate with the sodium salt of Meldrum's acid demonstrates the retention of configuration in the palladium(0)-catalysed process. The tetraacetate and the intermediate \( \pi \)-allyl complex are symmetrical, thus removing any ambiguity in the formation or reaction of the \( \pi \)-allyl complex and hence in the regiochemistry of the overall reaction.

Vinyl epoxides provide their own alkoxide base

Vinyl epoxides and allylic carbonates are especially useful electrophiles because under the influence of palladium(0) they generate an alkoxide base, so no added base is required with these substrates. The overall reaction proceeds under almost neutral conditions—ideal with complex and sensitive substrates. The relief of strain in the three-membered ring drives the reaction with palladium(0) to produce the zwitterionic intermediate. Proton transfer activates the nucleophile, and attack at the less hindered end of the \( \pi \)-allyl palladium intermediate preferentially leads to overall 1,4-addition of NuH.

Retention of stereochemistry is demonstrated by the reaction of a substituted malonate with epoxycyclopentadiene. Palladium adds to the side opposite the epoxide so the nucleophile is forced to add from the same side as the OH group. This, no doubt, helps 1,4-regioselectivity.

Allylic carbonates produce the required alkoxide by decarboxylation of the carbonate anion that is displaced in the formation of the \( \pi \)-allyl palladium intermediate. Deprotonation activates the nucleophile, which rapidly traps the \( \pi \)-allyl palladium complex to give the allylated product, regenerating the palladium(0) catalyst.
Trost and his group have used both of these palladium-catalysed alkylations in a synthesis of aristeromycin from epoxycyclopentadiene. The cis stereochemistry of this carbocyclic nucleotide analogue is of paramount importance and was completely controlled by retention of configuration in both substitutions.

The first reaction is between epoxycyclopentadiene and adenine, one of the heterocyclic building blocks of nucleic acids, and follows the mechanism we have just described to give a cis-1,4-disubstituted cyclopentene.

![Mechanism of palladium-catalysed alkylation](image)

The alcohol is then activated by conversion into the carbonate, which reacts with phenylsulfonylnitromethane, and could later be converted into an alcohol. Once again, retention of stereochemistry during the palladium-catalysed substitution gives the cis product.

![Steps of the alkylation reaction](image)

**Intramolecular alkylations make rings**

π-Allyl intermediates may also be used in cyclization reactions, including the synthesis of small and medium-sized rings using an intramolecular nucleophilic displacement. Three-membered rings form surprisingly easily, taking advantage of the fact that the leaving group can be remote from the nucleophile. The precursors can also be prepared by allylic alkylation. The sodium salts of malonate esters react with this monoacetate under palladium catalysis at the less hindered end to give the allylic alcohol.

![Steps of intramolecular alkylation](image)

Acetylation activates the second alcohol to displacement so that the combination of sodium hydride as base and palladium(0) catalyst leads to cyclization to the cyclopropane.

**Palladium can catalyse cycloaddition reactions**

The presence of five-membered rings such as cyclopentanes, cyclopentenes, and dihydrofurans in a wide range of target molecules has led to a variety of methods for their preparation. One of the most successful of these is the use of trimethylenemethane \([3 + 2]\) cycloaddition, catalysed by palladium(0) complexes. The trimethylenemethane unit in these reactions is derived from 2-\([(\text{trimethylsilyl})\text{methyl}]\)-2-propen-1-yl acetate, which is at the same time an allyl silane and an allylic acetate. This makes it both a weak nucleophile and an electrophile in the presence of palladium(0). Formation of the palladium π-allyl complex is followed by removal of the trimethylsilyl group by nucleophilic attack of the
resulting acetate ion, thus producing a zwitterionic palladium complex that can undergo cycloaddition reactions.

Trimethylenemethane
The symmetrical molecule with three CH₂ groups arranged trigonally about a carbon atom is interesting theoretically. It could have a singlet structure with two charges, both of which can be delocalized, but no neutral form can be drawn. Alternatively, it could be a triplet with the two unpaired electrons equally delocalized over the three CH₂ groups. This form is probably preferred and the singlet form is definitely known only as the palladium complex we are now describing. You might compare the singlet and triplet structures of trimethylenemethane with those of carbenes in Chapter 38.

The normal way to do the cycloadditions is to react the complex with an alkene bearing electron-withdrawing substituents that make the substrate prone to Michael-type conjugate addition. Cyclopentenones illustrate the reaction nicely.

The mechanism is thought to be stepwise (in other words, not a real cycloaddition at all) with conjugate addition of the carbanion followed by attack of the resulting enolate on the π-allyl palladium unit to form a new five-membered ring having an exo methylene group.

Palladium-catalysed amination of aromatic rings
You've seen that palladium catalysis helps form carbon–carbon bonds that are difficult to make using conventional reactions. It can also help form carbon–heteroatom bonds that are difficult to make, and you have already seen some examples in the reactions of π-allyl complexes. Work starting in the 1990s by Buchwald and Hartwig has shown that Pd can be used to promote nucleophilic substitution at a vinylic or aromatic centre—a reaction which would not normally be possible. For example, aromatic amines can be prepared directly from the corresponding bromides, iodides, or triflates and the required amine in the presence of palladium(0) and a strong alkoxide base.
The mechanisms and catalysts used in this ‘Buchwald–Hartwig’ chemistry mirror those of coupling reactions involving oxidative addition, transmetallation, and reductive elimination. The first step, as usual, is oxidative insertion of Pd(0) into the aryl–halogen bond. The Pd(II) complex now adds the amine so that both coupling partners find themselves bonded to the same palladium atom. The base eliminates H–I from the complex and reductive elimination forms the Ar–N bond.

Various bases, such as t-BuONa, MeONa, LiN(TMS)_2, or K_2CO_3, have been successful and some of the most successful ligands (coordinating groups shown in brown) are shown below. The fourth structure is a preformed complex used in catalytic amounts.

The range of compounds which can be made is very great: both electron-withdrawing and electron-donating substituents are acceptable; hindered compounds or those with acidic hydrogens such as phenols are tolerated. Even aryl chlorides, which are much cheaper than bromides or iodides, can also be successful.

Aromatic heterocyclic halides also work well whether they are electron-deficient or electron-rich. These couplings use the more hindered ligand shown in the margin.

It is tempting to view the amine as the ‘nucleophile’ in these reactions but it is clear that nucleophilicity has little to do with it as amides also couple to aromatic rings under similar conditions. The ability to act as a ligand for palladium is the important thing. The ligand xantphos (see above) is used in these reactions and again the nature of the substituents on the benzene ring is of little account. Even strained azetidines react well.
These reactions have been very widely used in the pharmaceutical industry in the making of medicinal compounds. When Sepracor wanted to make their anti-fungal compound itraconazole, it was obvious that they should make the two ends with stereochemistry and join them together with a central achiral section. Right in the middle is a piperazine ring joined to two different benzene rings, one connected through O and one through N. The C–N coupling chemistry of Buchwald and Hartwig could have been made for this problem.

We have already seen that p-bromophenol can be joined to an amine with palladium catalysis, so it should be easy to join it to piperazine. However, there is a potential problem of selectivity: we want to add this benzene ring just once, and the way to do this is to protect one nitrogen atom by reductive amination with benzaldehyde. The remaining NH group can then be coupled to the aromatic ring and the benzyl group removed by hydrogenation.

The workers at Sepracor then added the left-hand end of the molecule (we shall call this R1) to the free OH group. The other aromatic ring, already functionalized with the right-hand end of the molecule (we shall call this R2) was coupled as its bromide to the free NH group by a second Buchwald–Hartwig amination reaction process. It’s easy to see how this chemistry simplifies the assembly of such a large and complex molecule.

The bisphosphine BINAP is shown on p. 319. It is a chiral compound, but that is irrelevant to its use here.
Nucleophilic aromatic substitution and palladium catalysis compared

You will have noticed that Buchwald–Hartwig chemistry accomplishes the same as nucleophilic aromatic substitution (SNAr, Chapter 22): the replacement of a halogen by a nucleophile. So what are the differences?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>S_NAr</th>
<th>Buchwald–Hartwig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the leaving group</td>
<td>F &gt; Cl &gt; Br &gt; I</td>
<td>I &gt; Br &gt; Cl &gt; F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fluoride is not the best leaving group but it accelerates the addition</td>
<td>iodide is best at the oxidative addition step but chloride will do and aryl chlorides are cheaper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regiochemistry</td>
<td>there must be an electron-withdrawing group ortho or para to the halide</td>
<td>any substitution pattern acceptable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The synthesis of a drug to control blood clotting gives us the opportunity to review both methods. This compound also has a central piperazine ring and disconnection of the right-hand side chain reveals an amine that could be functionalized by alkylation with a suitable benzylic halide or reductive amination.

A standard way to make aromatic amines is by nitration and reduction (Chapter 21) so we can think of making this aminobenzene from the nitrobenzene below. Now we can disconnect the two C–N bonds with the idea of putting a halide (X) at the point of substitution in each aromatic coupling partner.

The substituents on the right-hand ring are both electron withdrawing and are ortho and para to the leaving group. As you know from Chapter 22, this is perfect for ordinary nucleophilic aromatic substitution—so much so that chloride is a good enough choice and it is not necessary to use fluoride. The left-hand ring has again a good electron-withdrawing substituent but it is meta to the halide and so nucleophilic aromatic substitution will not work. Palladium catalysis is needed. Chemists at Berlex Biosciences chose to introduce the left-hand ring first.
Alkenes coordinated to palladium(II) are attacked by nucleophiles

Now for another case where a transition metal catalysis facilitates a reaction that would not occur under normal conditions: nucleophilic attack on an isolated double bond. Usually alkenes react with nucleophiles only when conjugated with an electron-withdrawing group. But coordination of an electron-rich alkene to a transition metal ion such as palladium(II) changes its reactivity dramatically: electron density is drawn towards the metal and away from the π orbitals of the alkene. This leads to activation towards attack by nucleophiles, just as in conjugate addition, and unusual chemistry follows. Unusual, that is, for the alkene; the palladium centre behaves exactly as expected.

\[
\begin{align*}
R &= \text{alkene} \\
\text{PdCl}_2 &= \text{palladium(II) chloride} \\
\text{Nu} &= \text{nucleophile} \\
\text{Cl} &= \text{chloride ion} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Many nucleophiles, such as water, alcohols, and carboxylates, are compatible with an alkene–Pd(II) complex and can attack the complexed alkene from the side opposite the palladium. The attack of the nucleophile is regioselective for the more substituted position. This parallels attack on bromonium ions but is probably governed by the need for the bulky palladium to be in the less hindered position.

\[
\begin{align*}
R \quad \text{PdCl}_2 \quad \text{Pd(II)} \quad \text{ coordination} \\
R \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Pd-L} \quad \text{Cl} \\
R \quad \text{Nu} \quad \text{Pd} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{nucleophilic attack} \\
R \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Pd(II)} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The resulting Pd(II) σ-alkyl species decomposes by β-hydride elimination to reveal the substituted alkene. Reductive elimination of a proton and the leaving group, usually chloride, leads to palladium(0). The weakness of this reaction is that the catalytic cycle is not complete: Pd(II), not Pd(0), is needed to complex the next alkene.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Nu} \quad \text{product} \\
\text{PdCl}_2 \quad \text{Pd(II)} \quad \beta\text{-hydride elimination} \\
\text{HCl} \quad \text{HCl} \quad \text{reductive elimination} \\
\text{PdL}_2 \quad \text{Pd(II)} \quad \text{CuCl}_2 \quad \text{CuCl}_2 \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{CuCl}_2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

There are two solutions to this problem. We could use stoichiometric Pd(II) but this is acceptable only if the product is very valuable or the reaction is performed on a small scale. It is better to use an external oxidant to return the palladium to the Pd(II) oxidation state so that the cycle can continue. Air alone does not react fast enough (even though Pd(0) must be protected from air to avoid oxidation) but, in combination with copper(II) chloride, oxygen completes the catalytic cycle. \(\text{CuCl}_2\) oxidizes Pd(0) to Pd(II) and is itself oxidized back to Cu(II) by oxygen, ready to oxidize more palladium.

**Oxypalladation and the Wacker oxidation**

This combination of reagents has been used to oxidize terminal vinyl groups to methyl ketones and is known as the **Wacker oxidation**. The nucleophile is simply water, which attacks the activated alkene at the more substituted end in an oxypalladation step. β-Hydride elimination from the resulting σ-alkyl palladium complex releases the enol, which is rapidly converted into the more stable keto form. Overall, the reaction is a hydration of a terminal alkene that can tolerate a range of functional groups.
A related reaction is the oxidation of silyl enol ethers to enones. This requires stoichiometric palladium(II), although reoxidation of Pd(0) with benzoquinone can cut that down to about half an equivalent. The reaction provides a valuable way of turning regioselective methods for making silyl enol ethers (Chapter 20) into regioselective methods for oxidizing ketones to enones. The first step is again oxypalladation and β elimination puts the alkene in conjugation with the ketone: there are no β hydrogens on the other side.

![Diagram](image)

An example of catalytic oxypalladation is the rearrangement of allylic acetates with Pd(II). The reaction starts with oxypalladation of the alkene and it is the acetate already present in the molecule that provides the nucleophile to attack the alkene. The intermediate can reverse the oxypalladation in either direction and the product is whichever allylic acetate has the more substituted alkene. In this case, trisubstituted beats monosubstituted easily.

![Diagram](image)

The reaction is $E$-selective, which means that a simple synthesis of an $E,Z$-diene is possible from the symmetrical acetate with two $Z$-allylic alkenes. The one that rearranges goes $E$ and the one that stays behind remains $Z$. The driving force for this rearrangement, from one disubstituted alkene to another, is establishment of conjugation.

![Diagram](image)

**Alcohols and amines as intramolecular nucleophiles**

Cyclic ethers and amines can be formed with an intramolecular alcohol or amine nucleophile. Stoichiometric palladium can be avoided by using benzoquinone as the stoichiometric oxidant with a catalytic amount of palladium. In this example intramolecular oxypalladation of a diene is followed by attack of an external nucleophile on a π-allyl complex.

![Diagram](image)

Palladium coordinates to one face of the diene, promoting intramolecular attack by the alcohol on the opposite face. The resulting π-allyl palladium can form a π-allyl complex with the palladium on the lower face simply by sliding along to interact with the double bond. Nucleophilic attack of chloride from the lithium salt then proceeds in the usual way on the face opposite palladium. The overall addition to the diene is therefore $cis$. 

![Diagram](image)
Nitrogen nucleophiles also attack alkenes activated by Pd(II), and benzoquinone can again act as a reoxidant, allowing the use of catalytic quantities of palladium. The mechanism follows the same pattern as for oxygen nucleophiles, and a final isomerization produces the most stable regioisomer of product. In this example the product is an aromatic indole, so the double bond migrates into the five-membered ring.

If the substrate lacks a hydrogen suitable for β elimination and there is another alkene present in the molecule, the σ-alkyl palladium intermediate can follow the Heck pathway to form a bicyclic structure in a tandem reaction sequence. Once again, the final step is a palladium-hydride-mediated isomerization to give the endocyclic alkene.

**Palladium catalysis in the total synthesis of a natural alkaloid**

We take our leave of palladium by presenting a synthesis of an alkaloid, N-acetyl clavicipitic acid methyl ester, by Hegedus. The power of organometallic chemistry is illustrated in five of the steps in this seven-step process (the metals are highlighted in orange). Each of the organometallic steps catalysed by Pd(0) or Pd(II) has been described in this chapter. The overall yield is 18%, a remarkably good result for a molecule of such complexity.

The first step is to make an indole by Pd(II)-catalysed cyclization in the presence of benzoquinone as reoxidant. The nucleophilic nature of the 3-position of the indole (Chapter 30) was exploited to introduce the required iodide functionality. Rather than direct iodination, a high-yielding two-step procedure involving mercuration followed by iodination was employed.

Aryl iodides are more reactive towards oxidative addition than aryl bromides, and a selective Heck coupling (without phosphine ligands) with an unsaturated side chain left the bromide in place. A second Heck reaction of this bromide with an allylic alcohol was used to introduce a second side chain. Cyclization of the amide on to the allylic alcohol was achieved with palladium catalysis, not as might have been expected with palladium(0) but instead with palladium(II), to produce the seven-membered ring. Finally, the conjugated double bond was reduced and the sulfonamide removed under photolytic conditions.
An overview of some other transition metals

Some metals—palladium chief among them—see continual service in catalysis but others have their day and then fall out of favour when better alternatives become available. Tin is less popular now than it was 20 years ago because of its toxicity. A more serious case is mercury. Mercury(II) is an excellent catalyst for the addition of water to alkynes. But mercury is very toxic indeed, and the last ten years have seen its role largely superseded by gold. Do not recoil at the expense! Gold is expensive on the scale used to make rings, plates, medals, and coins, but here it is used in only catalytic quantities. Gold is in fact less expensive than palladium, rhodium, or ruthenium. Part of the age-old appeal of gold is its unreactivity as a metal: it is very stable but it does form Au(I) and Au(III) salts such as AuCl and AuCl₃. Both are available commercially and are generally used as their phosphine complexes.

Gold: activating alkynes

Au(I) and Au(III) form cationic \( \pi \) complexes with alkynes and these react with nucleophiles of many kinds. With water the result is simple: it adds to the more substituted end of the alkyne and the net result is hydration to give a ketone.

Ruthenium: alkene (olefin) metathesis

The theme of this chapter is that transition metals let you do things to organic molecules which are unthinkable without them. Nowhere is this more true than in metathesis reactions, and we finish the chapter with a reminder of the power of the ruthenium catalysts we introduced in Chapter 38. There we discussed the carbene-based mechanism of the reaction, and we showed you some simple examples such as this cyclization of a symmetrical amine to give a five-membered heterocycle using a catalytic amount of the ruthenium complex known as Grubbs I catalyst.
The synthesis of a sleep-inducing drug by GlaxoSmithKline in their laboratories at Verona used a very similar metathesis, although on an unsymmetrical amine and giving a six-membered heterocycle. The starting material is also a single enantiomer and the stereochemistry is important as the cyclopropane, introduced by a Simmons–Smith reaction (Chapter 38), must be on the opposite face of the six-membered ring to the side chain.

At another GlaxoSmithKline site, in the USA, the development of a drug for osteoporosis and osteoarthritis required a seven-membered heterocycle with two controlled chiral centres. This time the Hoveyda–Grubbs catalyst had to be used but the loading is very low indeed. Notice also that a free OH group does not interfere.

Our third example comes from Syngenta’s crop protection laboratory in Basel. It is another cyclization but this time to form an oxygen heterocycle with four chiral centres. The final product of this synthesis is malayamycin A, a natural fungicide found in bacteria. The metathesis step is early in the synthesis and you will notice that the alkene formed in this cyclization is used to provide two more chiral centres in malayamycin.

In the next chapter you will see more ways in which ruthenium—along with osmium, titanium, rhodium, and others—can be used to solve the challenges of synthesis as we look at ways of making molecules as single enantiomers.
Further reading


*Organic Syntheses* are a good source of ways to make reagents and ways to carry out reactions. Comins’ reagent is featured in *Organic Syntheses*, 1997, 74, 77.


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Asymmetric synthesis

Nature is asymmetric

‘How would you like to live in Looking-glass House, Kitty? I wonder if they’d give you milk in there? Perhaps looking-glass milk isn’t good to drink…’ Lewis Carroll, Through the looking-glass and what Alice found there, Macmillan, 1872.

You are chiral, and so are Alice, Kitty, and all living organisms. You may think you look fairly symmetrical in a looking-glass, but as you read this book you are probably turning the pages with your right hand and processing the information with the left side of your brain. Some organisms are rather more obviously chiral: snails, for example, carry shells that could spiral to the left or to the right. Not only is nature chiral, but by and large it exists as just one enantiomer—although some snail shells spiral to the left, the vast majority of marine snail shells spiral to the right; humans have their stomach on their left and their liver on their right; honeysuckle (Lonicera) climbs by spiralling to the left and all bindweed (Convolvulus) spirals to the right.

Nature has a left and a right, and it can tell the difference between them. You may think that human beings are sadly lacking in this respect, since as children we all had to learn, rather laboriously, which is which. Yet at an even earlier age, you could no doubt distinguish the smell of oranges from the smell of lemons, even though this is an achievement at least as remarkable as getting the right shoe on the right foot. The smells of orange and lemon differ in being the left- and right-handed versions of the same molecule, limonene. \((R)-(+)\)-Limonene smells rounded and orangey; \((S)-(−)\)-limonene is sharp and lemony. Similarly, spearmint and caraway seeds smell quite different, although again this pair of aromas differs only in being the enantiomeric forms of the ketone carvone. Evolution has left many of us regrettably sensitive to \((+)-\)androstenone, the smell of stale human urine. \((−)-\)Androstenone is essentially odourless.

‘L’univers est dissymétrique’.
Louis Pasteur, Comptes Rendus Acad. Sci., Paris June 1, 1874.

This chapter builds on the concepts introduced in Chapter 14: make sure you understand all the terms used to describe stereochemistry that are defined there. In particular make sure you are absolutely clear on the meanings of chiral, achiral, enantiomer, and diastereoisomer, along with what the designators \(R\), \(S\), \(+\), \(−\), \(L\), and \(D\) refer to.
Even bacteria know their right from their left: *Pseudomonas putida* can use aromatic hydrocarbons as a foodstuff, degrading them to diols. The diol produced from bromobenzene is formed as one enantiomer only.

How can this be? We said in Chapter 14 that enantiomers are chemically identical, so how is it that we can distinguish them with our noses and bacteria can produce them selectively? Well, the answer lies in a proviso to our assumption about the identity of enantiomers: they are identical *until they are placed in a chiral environment*. This concept will underlie all we say in this chapter about how to make single enantiomers in the laboratory. We take our lead from nature: all life is chiral, so all living systems are chiral environments.

The sheer complexity of life means that nature has to build its living structures from molecules that are chiral, principally amino acids and sugars. For all of those chiral molecules, evolution has forced the use of a single enantiomeric form, for example every amino acid in your body has the same configuration (usually labelled S). From this fact derives the larger-scale chirality of all living structures, from the right-handed double helix of DNA to the location of a blue whale’s internal organs. The answer to the question posed by Alice at the start of the chapter is most certainly no—her kitten’s digestive system will be able to hydrolyse the achiral fats in the looking-glass milk quite easily (achiral compounds are superimposable on their mirror image), but looking-glass proteins (which will be made of d-amino acids) and l-lactose will be quite indigestible.

For a perfumer or flavour and fragrance manufacturer, the distinction between the differently scented enantiomers of the same molecule is clearly of great importance. Nonetheless, we could all get by with caraway-flavoured toothpaste. Yet when it comes to drug molecules, making the right enantiomer can be a matter of life and death. Parkinson’s disease sufferers are treated with the non-proteinogenic amino acid dopa (3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)alanine). Dopa is chiral, and only (S)-dopa (known as l-dopa) is effective in restoring nerve function. (R)-Dopa is not only ineffective, it is quite toxic, so the drug must be marketed as a single enantiomer.

(+)-Androstenone is also a pig pheromone. You may not wish to know that it is the active component of DuPont’s Boarmate, used by pig farmers to prepare sows for artificial insemination.

---

The molecules of life are examined in detail in the next chapter.

### Natural l-amino acids all look like this:

All have S stereochemistry except cysteine (R=SH), where the priority rules mean the chiral centre is R. Some bacteria make their cell walls from ‘unnatural’ R-amino acids to make them unassailable by the (S-amino acid-derived) enzymes used by higher organisms to hydrolyse peptides (see p. 1141).
In other cases, only one of the two enantiomers of a drug molecule possesses activity: the antidepressant citalopram and the painkiller naproxen are both marketed only as their $S$ enantiomer because the $R$ enantiomers are essentially inactive. In a few cases, the enantiomers both have activity, but in different ways: (+)-Darvon and (-)-Novrad are a painkiller and a cough suppressant, respectively.

It is not only drugs that have to be manufactured enantiomerically pure. This simple lactone is the pheromone released by the Japanese beetle *Popilia japonica* as a means of communication. The beetles, whose larvae are serious crop pests, are attracted by the pheromone, and synthetic pheromone is marketed as ‘Japonilure’ to bait beetle traps. Provided the synthetic pheromone is the stereoisomer shown, with the $Z$ double bond and the $R$ configuration at the stereogenic centre, only 25 μg per trap catches thousands of beetles. You met this compound in Chapter 27, where we pointed out that double bond stereocontrol is important since the $E$ isomer of the pheromone is virtually useless as a bait (it retains only about 10% of the activity). Even more important is control over the configuration at the chiral centre because the $S$ enantiomer of the pheromone is not only inactive in attracting the beetles, but acts as a powerful inhibitor of the $R$ enantiomer—even 1% of $S$ enantiomer in a sample of pheromone destroys the activity.

So you see why chemists need to be able to make compounds as single enantiomers. In Chapters 32 and 33 we looked at *relative* stereochemistry and how to control it; this chapter is about how to control *absolute* stereochemistry. We call this asymmetric synthesis.

In the last 25 years or so, this subject has occupied more organic chemists than possibly any other, and we are now at a point where it is not only possible (and in fact essential because of strict regulatory rules) to make many drug molecules as single enantiomers, but it is also even possible to make many chiral molecules that are indigenous to nature more cheaply in the laboratory. By 2007, for example, at least 30% of the world’s supply of menthol was not extracted from plants but made synthetically. A thousand tonnes of (-)-menthol a year is made by the company Takasago in Japan using the techniques of asymmetric synthesis that you will meet later in this chapter.

**The chiral pool: Nature’s chiral centres ‘off the shelf’**

When we first introduced you to enantiomers and chirality in Chapter 14, we stressed that any imbalance in enantiomers always derives ultimately from nature. A laboratory synthesis of a chiral compound from achiral or racemic starting materials alone always gives a racemic mixture of enantiomers. If you want to make just one enantiomer, you have to use a starting material or reagent which is also just one enantiomer. This seems like a chicken-and-egg situation, until you realize that nature provides a collection of ‘off the shelf’ enantiomerically pure compounds that we can exploit in various ways. This collection of natural, enantiomerically pure compounds is called the chiral pool. The principal groups of compounds in the chiral pool are:

1. The amino acids. There is a full list of the natural amino acids found in proteins on p. 554, but for the purposes of this chapter you should make sure you are familiar with the structures below. They all have simple side chains that are simple alkyl groups or functionalized chains with plenty of versatile chemistry, and can be obtained by hydrolysis of protein.
2. Simple derivatives of the amino acids: amino alcohols and hydroxy acids. It's easy to reduce amino acids to amino alcohols with borane (BH$_3$), usually generated in the reaction mixture by treating sodium borohydride with concentrated sulfuric acid. We will use a number of naturally derived amino alcohols as starting materials in this chapter.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{NH}_2 & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{NHMe}
\end{align*}
\]

Ephedrine is an amino alcohol which is itself a useful member of the chiral pool—it’s a plant extract readily available as either diastereoisomer (see p. 314), each, unusually, also available as either enantiomer.

It's also easy to make hydroxy acids from amino acids by diazotization. You saw this being done in Chapter 33, but as a reminder nitrous acid generates a diazonium salt, which undergoes substitution by water via an intermediate α-lactone. Two configurational inversions are involved, so the product alcohol retains $S$ stereochemistry.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{H}_2\text{O} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

Some hydroxy acids are themselves available from nature, and are therefore also members of the chiral pool: both ($R$)- and ($S$)-lactic acid, for example, can be made by bacterial fermentation; mandelic, malic, and tartaric acids are extracted from almonds, apples, and grapes, respectively.

3. Carbohydrates and their derivatives. There are a great many simple carbohydrates available, but one of the most useful is mannose. Reduction to the alcohol gives the $C_2$-symmetric compound mannitol, which can be converted to a useful aldehyde by selective protection as a bis-acetal with acetone and a Lewis acid. Cleavage of the remaining diol with sodium periodate gives two equivalents of a useful protected form of glyceraldehyde.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{CHO} & \quad \text{CHO} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

In this chapter we will show you the many and varied ways in which members of the chiral pool can be put to work in asymmetric synthesis, but the most straightforward application is simply to spot that a target molecule has a close structural similarity with, say, an amino
acid. This is what Mori did when he made another important insect pheromone, ipsenol. The left-hand half of the molecule has the same structure as the side chain of leucine, and the $S$ chiral centre can also come from ($S$)-leucine.

![structural similarity with leucine](image)

Mori used ($S$)-leucine as the starting material and converted it to the ($S$)-hydroxy acid by the method on p. 875. The hydroxyl group was protected as the THP derivative (Chapter 23).

Reduction of the acid, via the ester, then allowed introduction of the tosylate leaving group, which was displaced to make an epoxide. The epoxide was opened by a Grignard reagent to introduce the diene portion and give the target molecule.

![This drawback is highlighted in the synthesis of oseltamivir in Chapter 43 (p. 1174).](image)

![Resolution can be used to separate enantiomers](image)

This might seem rather long-winded, and long-windedness can be a drawback of syntheses starting from the chiral pool: you have to shoe-horn your synthetic route into the available starting materials. Another drawback of syntheses starting from the chiral pool is the fact that many natural compounds are only available as one enantiomer or, if both enantiomers are available, one is much more expensive than the other. You will see some ingenious ways of circumventing this problem later in the chapter, but we deal with a very simple one in the next section.

In Chapter 14 we introduced you to resolution as a means of separating enantiomers. Resolution requires an enantiomerically pure resolving agent, which must be a compound from the chiral pool or a simple derivative of that compound. When the Swiss company Cilag wanted one enantiomer of the unusual chiral amino acid in the margin in order to make some potential drug candidates, the chemists there decided the easiest way to get hold of it quickly and in large quantities was to make it in racemic form and then resolve it. It turned out that one of the two enantiomers of the protected derivative below forms a crystalline salt with cheap, readily available (–)-ephedrine, while the other remains in solution. Filtration and treatment with acid to remove the protecting group and protonate the acid gave them a single enantiomer of their target amino acid.
Of course, with resolution, there is a maximum yield of 50% because if you only want one enantiomer, the other is wasted. But there are many cases where you might want both enantiomers. You may need to test them both for biological activity, for example. In that case, resolution is ideal—in the example above the chemists at Cilag could get hold of the other enantiomer of the amino acid just by evaporating the mother liquors from the recrystallization. This is a big advantage of resolution: it lets you get both enantiomers using just one compound from the chiral pool.

**Chiral auxiliaries**

In Chapter 33 we showed you methods for making single diastereoisomers using diastereoselective reactions. Diastereoselective reactions work just as well whether the starting material is racemic or enantiomerically pure—you get the same diastereoisomeric outcome in each case, but if you start with racemic material you get racemic product and if you start with enantiomerically pure material you get enantiomerically pure product. Here’s an example, from p. 867:

So if you use a starting material from the chiral pool, you can build new chiral centres in enantiomerically pure form just by using diastereoselective reactions. We showed you two syntheses at the end of Chapter 33 using this idea: the chiral pool starting materials (S)-lactic acid and (S)-serine were converted to two natural products using a series of diastereoselective reactions to introduce further chiral centres into the molecules.

The syntheses rely on the fact that the structure of the chiral pool starting material is still there in the product. But the same idea can work even if the starting chiral compound is no longer part of the target you are making. In this case the chiral starting material is called a chiral auxiliary. Chiral auxiliaries are extremely versatile because they can be used to make a whole variety of target molecules in enantiomerically pure form. We will explain how they work with two examples.
The product of a Diels–Alder reaction between cyclopentadiene and benzyl acrylate must necessarily be racemic as both reagents are achiral. Although only one diastereoisomer—the *endo* product—is formed, it must be formed as an exactly 50:50 mixture of *enantiomers*. There is nothing to tell the diene whether to attack the top or the bottom face of the dienophile so it does both, each 50% of the time.

\[
\text{BnOH} + \text{Cl} \rightarrow \text{OBn} \quad \text{achiral diene} \quad + \quad \text{achiral dienophile}
\]

\[
\text{attack on top or bottom face of dienophile equally likely}
\]

\[
\text{must form as a 50:50 mixture of two enantiomers}
\]

Now see what happens if we replace the achiral benzyl ester group of the dienophile with an amide derived from the amino acid valine. Here's the synthesis of such a dienophile using the amino acid reduction you saw on p. 1105.

\[
\text{Me}_{2}S.BH_{3} \quad (S)-\text{valine} \\
\text{Cl} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{HN} \quad \text{EtO} \quad \text{EtO} \quad \text{K}_{2}\text{CO}_{3} \quad 1. \text{NaH} \quad 2. \text{OEt}
\]

The two faces of the double bond of the dienophile are now different because of the chiral centre: they are diastereotopic, and the diene can distinguish between them. If we now do the Diels–Alder reaction in the presence of a Lewis acid, Et_{2}AlCl, the aluminium chelates the oxygen atoms of the dienophile to form the rigid and reactive structure shown below. The isopropyl group is held in such a way that its steric bulk prevents the diene attacking that face of the prochiral alkene. The diene has no choice but to attack from above, and only one of the possible diastereoisomeric products is formed.

We call the green valine-derived part of this molecule the *chiral auxiliary*—it assists the substrate to react in a diastereoselective way such that only one of the two possible products is allowed to form. The chiral auxiliary was enantiomerically pure to start with, so the product must be diastereoisomerically *and* enantiomerically pure.

Finally comes the step which shows the power of chiral auxiliary strategy: we just remove the chiral auxiliary from the product by treating with a nucleophile. The auxiliary can in principle be used again, but most importantly of all, the product obtained is just one of the two enantiomers we made in the racemic version of this reaction. This isn't a resolution—all...
of these steps go in high yield—it is truly an enantioselective synthesis of the Diels–Alder product, using a chiral auxiliary to help us.

Overall, by sequential attachment of the auxiliary, diastereoselective reaction, and removal of the auxiliary we have made the same product but as a single enantiomer.

---

**This is what we mean by a chiral auxiliary strategy**

1. An enantiomerically pure compound (usually derived from a simple natural product like an amino acid), called a chiral auxiliary, is attached to the starting material.
2. A diastereoselective reaction is carried out, which, because of the enantiomeric purity of the chiral auxiliary, gives only one enantiomer of the product.
3. The chiral auxiliary is removed by, for example, hydrolysis, leaving the product of the reaction as a single enantiomer. The best chiral auxiliaries (of which the example above is one) can be recycled, so although stoichiometric quantities are needed, there is no waste.

We have introduced you to this chiral auxiliary before any other because it is more commonly used than any other. It is a member of the oxazolidinone (the name of the heterocyclic ring) family of auxiliaries developed by David Evans at Harvard University, and is easily and cheaply made from the amino acid (S)-valine. Even though it is cheap, it can be recycled. The last step of the route above regenerates the auxiliary ready for re-use.

The most versatile chiral auxiliaries should also be available as both enantiomers. For the valine-derived one here, this is not the case—(R)-valine is quite expensive since it is not found in nature. However, by starting with the naturally occurring (and cheap) compound nor-ephedrine, we can make an auxiliary that, although not enantiomeric with the one derived from (S)-valine, acts as though it were.

As the diagram shows, the two substituents of the auxiliary lie on the top face of the dienophile and force the cyclopentadiene this time to attack the bottom face. Now when the auxiliary is cleaved from the product the opposite enantiomer is formed. We can choose which enantiomer we want simply by choosing the right auxiliary for the job.

**Alkylation of enolates**

Chiral auxiliaries can be used in plenty of other reactions, and some of the most common are reactions of enolates. Evans’s oxazolidinone auxiliaries are particularly appropriate here.

---

Enolates are a sort of alkene and can form as cis or trans geometrical isomers. One of the consequences of this is discussed in Chapter 33.
because they are readily turned into enolizable carboxylic acid derivatives. Treatment with
base (usually LDA) at low temperature produces an enolate, the bulky auxiliary means that
only the cis enolate forms: the trans enolate is too hindered.

Coordination of the lithium ion to the other carbonyl oxygen makes the whole structure
rigid, fixing the isopropyl group round the back of the molecule, where it can provide
maximum hindrance to attack on the ‘wrong’ face of the enolate. Electrophiles have little
choice but to attack the enolate from the front, and the table shows the ratio of diastereo-
isomers (the diastereoisomeric ratio, abbreviated to d.r.) produced for a selection of alkylating
agents.

As you can see, none of these reactions is truly 100% diastereoselective and, indeed, only
the best chiral auxiliaries (of which this is certainly one) give >98% of a single diastereoiso-
er. The problem with less than perfect diastereoselectivity is that, when the chiral auxiliary
is removed, the final product is contaminated with some of the other enantiomer. A 94:6 ratio
of diastereoisomers will result in a 94:6 ratio of enantiomers, or a sample of 94:6 e.r. (e.r. for
enantiomeric ratio).

Enantiomeric excess
Compounds that are neither racemic nor enantiomerically pure are usually called enantio-
merically enriched. Chemists have two ways of referring to the ratio of enantiomers in an
enantiomerically enriched sample. The first is the simple one we have just used: e.r. or enan-
tiomer ratio, expressed as two numbers adding to 100. More common, however, is to
express this ratio as an enantiomeric excess. Enantiomeric excess (or ee) is defined as the excess
of one enantiomer over the other, expressed as a percentage of the whole. So a 94:6 mixture
of enantiomers consists of one enantiomer in 88% excess over the other, and we call it an
enantiomerically enriched mixture with 88% ee. Why not just say that we have 94% of one
enantiomer? Enantiomers are not like other isomers because they are simply mirror images.
The 6% of the minor enantiomer can be paired with 6% of the major isomer to form a race-
mic mixture amounting to 12% of the total. The mixture contains 12% racemate and 88% of
one enantiomer, hence 88% ee.
We will see shortly how we can make further use of the chiral auxiliary to increase the ee of the reaction products. But first, we should consider how to measure ee. One way is simply to measure the angle through which the sample rotates plane-polarized light. The angle of rotation is approximately proportional to the enantiomeric excess of the sample (see box). The problem with this method is that to measure an actual value for ee you need to know what rotation a sample of 100% ee gives, and that is not always possible. Also, polarimeter measurements are notoriously unreliable—they depend on temperature, solvent, and concentration, and are subject to massive error due to small amounts of highly optically active impurities.

**Is optical rotation proportional to enantiomeric excess?**

Imagine you have a sample, A, of an enantiomerically pure compound—a natural product perhaps—and, using a polarimeter, you find that it has an \([\alpha]_D\) of +10.0. Another sample, B, of the same compound, which you know to be chemically pure (perhaps it is a synthetic sample), shows an \([\alpha]_D\) of +8.0. What is its enantiomeric excess? Well, you would have got the same value of 8.0 for the \([\alpha]_D\) of B if you had mixed 80% of your enantiomerically pure sample A with 20% of a racemic (or achiral) compound with no optical rotation. Since you know that sample B is chemically pure, and is the same compound as A, it must therefore indeed consist of 80% enantiomerically pure material plus 20% racemic material, or 80% of one enantiomer plus 20% of a 1:1 mixture of the two enantiomers—which is the same as 90% of one enantiomer and 10% of the other, or 80% enantiomeric excess. Optical rotations can give a guide to enantiomeric excess—sometimes called optical purity in this context—but slight impurities of compounds with large rotations can distort the result and there are some examples where the linear relationship between ee and optical rotation fails because of what is known as the Horeau effect. You can read more about this in Eliel and Wilen, Stereochemistry of organic compounds, Wiley, 1994.

Chemists now usually use chromatography, or occasionally spectroscopy, to quantify ratios of enantiomers. You may think that this should be impossible—since enantiomers are chemically identical and have identical NMR spectra, how can chromatography or spectroscopy tell them apart? Well, again, they are identical unless they are in a chiral environment. We introduced HPLC on a chiral stationary phase as a way of separating enantiomers preparatively in Chapter 14. The same method can be used analytically—less than a milligram of chiral compound can be passed down a narrow column containing silica modified which a chiral additive. One enantiomer passes through the silica faster than the other; the two enantiomers are separated and the quantity of each can be measured (usually by UV absorption or by refractive index changes) and an ee derived. Gas chromatography can be used in the same way—the columns are packed with a chiral stationary phase such as the isoleucine derivative shown in the margin.

Distinguishing enantiomers spectroscopically relies again on putting them into a chiral environment. One way of doing this, if the compound is, say, an alcohol or an amine, is to make a derivative (an ester or an amide) with an enantiomerically pure and racemization-proof acyl chloride. The one most commonly used is known as Mosher’s acyl chloride, after its inventor Harry Mosher, although there are many others. The two enantiomers of the alcohol or amine now become diastereoisomeric esters, and give different sets of peaks in the NMR spectrum—the integrals can be used to determine ee and, although the \(^1\)H NMR of such a mixture of diastereoisomers may become quite cluttered because it is a mixture, the presence of the CF₃ group means that the ratio can alternatively be measured by integrating the two singlets in the otherwise featureless plain of the \(^19\)F NMR spectrum.

Another powerful method of discriminating between enantiomers is to add an enantiomerically pure compound to the NMR sample that simply forms a complex with the compound under investigation. The complexes formed from the two opposite enantiomers are diastereoisomeric, and therefore have different chemical shifts and, by integrating the NMR signals, the ratio of enantiomers can be determined. Among the most commonly used is this alcohol, 2,2,2-trifluoro-1-(9-anthryl)ethanol, or TFAE, which can both hydrogen-bond to and form...
π-stacked complexes with a range of functionalized compounds, and often splits NMR signals due to enantiomeric compounds very cleanly.

Time to go back to chiral auxiliaries. We pointed out that, although we want to get maximum levels of stereoselectivity in our chiral-auxiliary-controlled reaction, we may still have a small percentage of a minor diastereoisomer, which, once we have removed our chiral auxiliary, will compromise the ee of our final product. It is at this point that we can use a trick that essentially employs the chiral auxiliary in a secondary role as a resolving agent. Provided the products are crystalline, it will usually be possible to recrystallize our 94:6 mixture of diastereoisomers to give essentially a single diastereoisomer, rather like carrying out a resolution with an enormous head start. Once this has been done, the chiral auxiliary can be removed and the product may be very close to 100% ee. Of course, the recrystallization sacrifices a few percentage points of yield, but these are invariably much less valuable than the few percentage points of ee gained! Here is an example from the work of Evans himself. During his synthesis of the complex antibiotic X-206 he needed large quantities of the small molecule below. He decided to make it by a chiral-auxiliary-controlled allylation, followed by reduction to give the alcohol. The auxiliary needed is the one derived from norephedrine, and the reaction of the enolate with allyl iodide gives a 98:2 mixture of diastereoisomers. However, recrystallization converts this into an 83% yield of a single diastereoisomer in >99% purity, giving material of essentially 100% ee after removal of the auxiliary.

This is one big bonus of using a chiral auxiliary—it’s much easier to purify diastereoisomers than enantiomers and a chiral auxiliary-controlled reaction necessarily produces diastereoisomeric products.

Both these examples of auxiliary-controlled alkylation make use of LiAlH₄ reduction to the alcohol in the step which removes the auxiliary. You saw attack with an alkoxide above, and several other alternative methods are possible as well, summarized below. DIBAL (i-Bu₂AlH, p. 533) reduces the product to an aldehyde, while converting the product to a Weinreb amide (p. 219) makes formation of a ketone possible.

Simple hydrolysis under acid or basic conditions risks epimerizing the newly created chiral centre, and a good solution is to use the less basic, more nucleophilic hydroperoxide anion. This was the approach taken by chemists making this component of a collagenase inhibitor. Notice that this auxiliary is a variant based on l-phenylalanine.
These various ways of removing auxiliaries illustrate the ways in which it is possible to make a virtue out of one of their big disadvantages: chiral auxiliaries must first be attached to the compound under construction, and after they have done their job they must be removed. The best auxiliaries can be recycled, but even then there are still at least two ‘unproductive’ steps in the synthesis.

**Oxazolidinones are not the only auxiliaries**

Other auxiliaries are also used, and the choice of auxiliary may depend not only on the selectivity of the reaction under investigation but also on the physical properties of the products. The camphor-based auxiliary of Oppolzer is reputed to confer crystallinity on its derivatives, while the pseudoephedrine auxiliary of Myers is cheap, readily available, and very easy to introduce. More bulky auxiliaries such as 8-phenylmenthol work well where control over long-range interactions, such as conjugate additions, are required.

**Chiral reagents**

A chiral auxiliary is a chiral molecule attached to the starting material of the reaction; diastereoselective reactions of compounds from the chiral pool are likewise controlled by chirality in the starting material, and we call this type of stereocontrol *substrate control*. But is it also possible for enantioselective reactions to be controlled by chiral reagents. For example, a typical achiral base will just remove a proton from a substrate, but an enantiomerically pure chiral base can select one of two enantiotopic protons and form a product enantioselectively. The product of course has to be chiral, so we can’t use a chiral base to make planar enolates enantioselectively, for example, but we can a chiral base to make chiral organolithiums.

Alkylolithiums are sufficiently strong as bases to remove the protons adjacent to the nitrogen atom of N-Boc pyrrolidine, shown in the margin. The product of deprotonation is an organolithium which is a chiral molecule: the lithium-bearing carbon is chiral.

Alkylolithiums can be turned into chiral bases in quite a simple way—by complexation with a chiral ligand. A widely used example is the tetracyclic diamine (−)-sparteine. Sparteine’s structure looks complex, but it is a relatively widely available natural product which folds around the lithium atom of an alkylolithium and places the base in a chiral environment.

This chiral base can now choose to remove from the pyrrolidine substrate just one of the enantiotopic protons adjacent to nitrogen, and form a chiral, enantiomerically enriched organolithium. The stereochemistry of the organolithium is preserved through its reactions with electrophiles such as the ketone shown here.
Asymmetric catalysis

If we want to create a new chiral centre in a molecule, our starting material must have prochirality—the ability to become chiral in one simple transformation. The most common prochiral units that give rise to new chiral centres are the trigonal carbon atoms of alkenes and carbonyl groups, which become tetrahedral by addition reactions. In the last section you saw a prochiral, tetrahedral CH₂ group becoming a chiral organolithium by enantioselective removal of one enantiotopic proton. Much more common are the reactions you saw in the section before that, where in every case a prochiral alkene (we can count enolates as alkenes for this purpose) reacted selectively on one face because of the influence of the chiral auxiliary, which made the faces of the alkene diastereotopic.

Catalytic asymmetric reduction of ketones

One of the simplest transformations you could imagine of a prochiral unit into a chiral one is the reduction of a ketone. Although chiral auxiliary strategies have been used to make this type of reaction asymmetric, conceptually the simplest way of getting the product as a single enantiomer would be to use a chiral reducing agent—in other words, to attach the chiral influence not to the substrate (as we did with chiral auxiliaries) but to the reagent. We need an asymmetric version of NaBH₄.

The active reducing agent is generated when the heterocycle forms a complex with borane. Only catalytic amounts (usually about 10%) of the boron heterocycle are needed because borane is sufficiently reactive to reduce ketones only when complexed with the nitrogen atom. The rest of the borane just waits until a molecule of catalyst becomes free.

CBS reductions are best when the ketone’s two substituents are well-differentiated sterically—just as Ph and Me are in the example above. The reaction works because the heterocyclic
catalyst brings together the borane (which complexes to its basic nitrogen atom) and the carbonyl compound (which complexes to its Lewis-acidic boron atom). Complexation activates both partners towards reaction: donating electron density to the borane is essential to persuade it to transfer hydride, and withdrawing electron density from the carbonyl group makes it electrophilic enough to react with a weak hydride source. The hydride is delivered via a six-membered cyclic transition state, with the enantioselectivity arising from the preference of the larger of the ketone’s two substituents (Rl) for the pseudoequatorial position on this ring.

**Making the CBS catalyst**

To make the CBS heterocycle, (S)-proline has to be protected as its N-Cbz derivative (Chapter 23) and converted to its methyl ester. Esters react with Grignard twice to give tertiary alcohols (Chapter 10), so PhMgBr followed by deprotection gives the amino alcohol needed. Condensation with methylboronic acid (MeB(OH)2) gives the stable catalyst.

Until recently, the CBS reagent was one of the most commonly used asymmetric reducing agents for ketones. But in the early years of the 21st century a new reaction has taken over that role—one in which the job of bringing together the ketone and the reducing agent is taken by an atom of ruthenium. The ruthenium is added as Ru(II) in a 16-electron complex (see p. 1116) with an aromatic compound such as 1,3,5-trimethylbenzene (known as mesitylene). A chiral ligand is needed—the diamine derivative shown here is best. Only very small amounts (often << 1%) of the catalyst and ligand are required, which is a good thing as both are much more expensive than the reagents in the CBS reduction. The reducing agent itself can be hydrogen or, more conveniently, a more easily handled source of hydrogen atoms such as isopropanol (which gets oxidized to acetone) or formic acid (which gets oxidized to carbon dioxide). Here’s a typical example; we will explain how it works shortly.
You have met several reactions of ruthenium complexes, especially in Chapters 38 and 40, where you saw ruthenium carbenes catalysing the metathesis of alkenes. Ruthenium is one of a select group of transition metals (Pd, Ru, Rh, Cu, Os, and Ti being the others) which play an important role in asymmetric catalysis. The key to their success is the transition metal coordination chemistry we looked at in the last chapter: the metals can act as coordination sites for substrates, and by using other ligands which are chiral and enantiomerically pure, the reactions they catalyse can be made to take place in an asymmetric environment.

The ruthenium-catalysed reduction of ketones starts with coordination of the tosyl-diamine ligand ((S,S)-N-toluenesulfonyl 1,2-phenylenediamine, or ‘TsDPEN’) to the ruthenium metal. This is a 16-electron complex, and can be reduced by formic acid to an 18-electron ruthenium hydride.

\[
\text{RuCl}_2 \text{PhPhNNTs} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{NNTs} \text{RuPhPh} + \text{CO}_2
\]

Now comes the reduction. Provided the ketone approaches the ruthenium complex in the right orientation, with the smaller methyl group tucked in under the ruthenium and the larger aryl group pointing away from the bulky ligands, the 18e complex can transfer hydrogen atoms simultaneously: **H**⁻ from Ru and **H**⁺ from the protonated nitrogen. The chiral ligand means that the alcohol is formed as a single enantiomer, and the ruthenium catalyst is regenerated.

\[
\text{RuCl}_2 \text{PhPhNNTs} + \text{CMe}_3\text{CHCO}_2\text{H} \rightarrow \text{RuCl}_2 \text{PhPhNNTs} + \text{S-enantiomer} + \text{CO}_2
\]

The reduction shown below is particularly important because it generates a late intermediate in the industrial synthesis of the anti-asthma drug montelukast (Singulair). Several methods have been used, but in 2008 chemists at the Croatian pharmaceutical company Pliva patented a method using the ruthenium catalyst with a derivative of TsDPEN as a ligand to gives the product in 83% yield and 99.8% ee on a scale of several kilograms.

\[
\text{RuCl}_2 \text{PhPhNNTs} + \text{TsDPEN ligand} \rightarrow \text{RuCl}_2 \text{PhPhNNTs} + \text{S-enantiomer} + \text{CO}_2
\]

83% yield, 99.8% ee
Two methods for reducing carbonyl compounds enantioselectively

\[
\text{H} + \text{OH} \rightarrow \text{RL} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{RS} + \text{BH}_3
\]

\[
\text{RL} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{RS} \quad \text{H}_2 \quad \text{NHTs}
\]

\[
\text{Ph} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{TsDPEN}
\]

\[
\text{Ph} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{H}_2 \quad \text{N} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{TsDPEN}
\]

Catalytic asymmetric hydrogenation of alkenes

Reduction of a ketone can give a chiral secondary alcohol, but reduction of an alkene by addition of hydrogen to one of its two enantiotopic faces can give all sorts of products, creating either one or two chiral centres, depending on the substituents on the alkene. By way of illustration (and explanation will follow soon) the alkene hydrogenation below creates, in one step, the two chiral centres of a precursor to the anti-obesity drug taranabant. A single diastereoisomer is formed by syn addition of hydrogen, and a chiral ligand ensures that one enantiomer is formed preferentially.

You have seen numerous hydrogenations of alkenes using hydrogen over a solid catalyst of palladium supported on charcoal (‘heterogeneous hydrogenation’), but catalytic asymmetric hydrogenation of alkenes uses a different type of catalyst—a soluble complex, often of Ru or Rh with phosphine-containing ligands. The substrates for asymmetric alkene hydrogenation are also more limited than those for hydrogenation with Pd/C because they must carry a functional group close to the alkene, allowing coordination to the transition metal catalyst. In the example above, that functional group is the amide directly adjacent to the alkene.

The inspiration for these catalysts came from the work of Wilkinson in London in the 1960s, who showed that RhCl(PPPh3)_3 (known as Wilkinson’s catalyst) promoted homogeneous hydrogenation of alkenes (i.e. during the reaction there is only one, solution, phase). Wilkinson’s catalyst is a 16-electron complex of Rh(I), and it works as a catalyst because it can easily lose one of the phosphine ligands to form a 14-electron complex. This undergoes addition of H2, giving a 16-electron Ru(III) complex.
The complex is still coordinatively unsaturated, so an alkene can form a π complex with a full complement of 18 electrons. Migratory insertion of one of the hydrogen atoms, followed by reductive elimination, gives back the 14-electron Rh complex and the reduced alkane.

The conceptual advance which allows this sort of hydrogenation to become asymmetric is the replacement of the two achiral triphenylphosphine ligands of Wilkinson’s catalyst with chiral phosphine ligands. Notice that two of the triphenylphosphines remain coordinated through the whole reaction mechanism, so by doing this we can ensure that the Rh always remains in a chiral environment.

The usual solution is to use one chiral molecule containing two phosphorus atoms, and the most important of these is BINAP. BINAP is a chelating diphosphine: the metal sits between the two phosphorus atoms, firmly anchored in a chiral environment. The chirality here is of an unusual sort, since BINAP, which you met in Chapter 14 (p. 319), has no chiral centres. It is one of the class of chiral molecules, known as atropisomers, whose chirality arises from the inability of the bond between the two naphthalene rings to rotate.

Incorporating (S)- or (R)-BINAP into a hydrogenation with Rh can lead to high enantiomeric excesses in the products because during the migratory insertion step the complex is forced to transfer hydrogen to only one of the two possible enantiotopic faces of the alkene. As we remarked before, asymmetric hydrogenations require a functional group which can coordinate to the metal, and with Rh the best substrates are N-acyl enamines. Those of the type shown below give excellent results, and usefully with (S)-BINAP the products are protected amino acids of the opposite enantiomeric series to those found in nature.

It is even economical for the more expensive of the natural amino acids to be made synthetically by this type of reaction rather than isolated from natural sources—phenylalanine, which is of industrial importance as a component of the artificial sweetener aspartame (NutraSweet), is manufactured using enantioselective hydrogenation.

Noyori found that using ruthenium instead of rhodium broadens greatly the scope of the substrates that will undergo asymmetric hydrogenation. They still need a functional group—usually the OH group of an alcohol or a carboxylic acid—to allow coordination to the metal, but the alkene itself can be a simple allylic alcohol or unsaturated acid derivative. BINAP is again a good ligand, and of course by choosing which enantiomer of BINAP you use you can choose which enantiomer of the product you get.
Two important industrial asymmetric syntheses which routinely use this chemistry are the production of the painkiller (S)-naproxen and the synthetic intermediate and perfumery compound (R)-citronellol. It is gratifying to note that this chemistry, using <1% of Ru, gives citronellol in higher enantiomeric purity than many natural sources of the same compound!

Reduction of unsaturated carboxylic acids gives products that you might alternatively think of making by auxiliary-controlled alkylation methods. When the NutraSweet company needed this chiral branched carboxylic acid as a single enantiomer, they initially used the auxiliary methods of p. 1110 to make a small amount, but they found that ruthenium-catalysed hydrogenation was greatly to be preferred on a large scale: just 22 g of the ruthenium-(S)-BINAP complex is needed to produce 50 kg of product with 90% ee.

In the last 20 years, the variety of ligands available for rhodium and ruthenium-catalysed hydrogenations has increased to the point where the right combination of metal and ligand will reduce almost any unsaturated carboxylic acid derivative in high enantiomeric excess. Details are beyond the scope of this book, but we leave you with four examples, all from industrial drug syntheses, to illustrate how versatile the method can be.

**Resolution of BINAP**

BINAP is not derived from a natural product, and has to be synthesized in the laboratory and resolved using a naturally derived resolving agent. The scheme shows one method by which enantiomerically pure BINAP may be made—the resolution step is unusual because it relies on formation of a molecular complex, not a salt. The bis phosphine oxide of (S)-BINAP co-crystallizes with di-O-benzoyl-L-tartrate, leaving the (R)-phosphine oxide in solution. Base releases the pure (R)-phosphine oxide that is resolved, which is then reduced to the phosphine with trichlorosilane.
Asymmetric epoxidation

Asymmetric hydrogenation of an alkene can create two new chiral centres, but introduces no new functionality as it does so. Asymmetric oxidation of an alkene is different: it can create two new chiral centres and two new functional groups at the same time. We will now look at two examples of asymmetric oxidation, both products of the laboratories of Professor Barry Sharpless.

The first of Sharpless’s reactions is an oxidation of alkenes by asymmetric epoxidation. You met vanadium as a transition-metal catalyst for epoxidation with t-butyl hydroperoxide in Chapter 32, and this new reaction makes use of titanium, as titanium tetraisopropoxide, Ti(O-i-Pr)_4, to do the same thing. Sharpless and his co-worker Tsutomu Katsuki surmised that by adding a chiral ligand to the titanium catalyst they might be able to make the reaction asymmetric. The ligand that works best is diethyl tartrate, and one example of the reaction is shown below.

Transition-metal-catalysed epoxidations work only on allylic alcohols, so this is a limitation of the method, but otherwise there are few restrictions on what can be epoxidized enantioselectively, and when this reaction was discovered in 1981 it was by far the best asymmetric reaction known. Because of its importance, a lot of work went into discovering exactly how the reaction worked, and the scheme below shows what is believed to be the active complex, formed from two titanium atoms bridged by two tartrate ligands (shown in orange). Each titanium atom retains two of its isopropoxide ligands and is coordinated to one of the carbonyl groups of the tartrate ligand. The reaction works best if the titanium and tartrate are left to stir for a while so that these dimers can form cleanly. When the oxidizing agent (t-BuOOH, shown in green) is added to the mixture, it displaces one of the remaining isopropoxide ligands and one of the tartrate carbonyl groups.

For this oxidizing complex to react with an allylic alcohol, the alcohol must become coordinated to the titanium too, displacing a further isopropoxide ligand. Because of the shape
of the complex the reactive oxygen atom of the bound hydroperoxide has to be delivered to the lower face of the alkene (as drawn), and the epoxide is formed in high enantiomeric excess. Displacement of the product by another molecule of hydroperoxide starts the cycle again.

Different allylic alcohols coordinate in the same way to the titanium and reliably present the same enantiotopic face to the bound oxidizing agent, and the preference for oxidation with 1-(-)-DET is shown in the schematic diagram below. Tartrate is ideal as a chiral ligand because it is available relatively cheaply as either enantiomer. L-tartrate is extracted from grapes; D-(–)-tartrate is rarer and more expensive, but still cheap by the standards of some of the bisphosphine ligands used in the last section. By using D-(–)-tartrate it is, of course, possible to produce the other enantiomer of the epoxide equally selectively.

Sharpless also found that this reaction works with only a catalytic amount of titanium–tartrate complex because the reaction products can be displaced from the metal centre by more of the two reagents. The catalytic version of the asymmetric epoxidation is well suited to industrial exploitation, and the American company J. T. Baker has employed it to make synthetic disparlure, the pheromone of the gypsy moth, by oxidation of the epoxy alcohol to an aldehyde with pyridinium dichromate (PDC) (p. 543), Wittig reaction (p. 689), and hydrogenation.

Not many target molecules are themselves epoxides, but the great thing about the epoxide products is that they are highly versatile—they react with many types of nucleophiles to give 1,2-disubstituted products. You met the chiral beta-blocker drug propranolol in Chapter 28, and its 1,2,3-substitution pattern makes it a good candidate for synthesis using asymmetric epoxidation.
Unfortunately, the obvious starting material, allyl alcohol itself, gives an epoxide that is hard to handle, so Sharpless, who carried out this synthesis of propranolol, used this silicon-substituted allylic alcohol instead. The hydroxyl group was mesylated and displaced with 1-naphthoxide and, after treatment with fluoride to remove the silicon, the epoxide was opened with isopropylamine.

Chemists at the drug company Wyeth needed the amine shown in the margin. The 1,2,3-functional group pattern led them to think of using the Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation, and epoxidation of a fluorinated allylic alcohol using D-(–)-diisopropyl tartrate (DIPT) gave them the enantiomer they wanted with slightly better selectivity than diethyl tartrate. The benzylic end of the epoxide is more reactive towards nucleophilic substitution, and in the presence of Ti(Oi-Pr)₄, this time simply acting as a Lewis acid, the lithiated heterocycle opens the epoxide with inversion of configuration.

Finally, it’s necessary to bring in the amino group, and this can be done by tosylation of the less hindered primary hydroxyl group selectively, closing to an epoxide in base, and then reopening the epoxide at the less hindered terminal position with methylamine.

The Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation is reliable, but it works only for allylic alcohols. There is an alternative, however, which works with simple alkenes. The method was developed by Eric Jacobsen and employs a manganese catalyst with a chiral ligand built from a simple diamine. The diamine is not a natural compound and has to be made in enantiomeric form by resolution, but at least that means that both enantiomers are readily available. The diamine is condensed with a derivative of salicylaldehyde to make a bis-imine known as a ‘salen’.

‘Salen’ is an abbreviation of salicyl ethylenediamine and simpler salens had long been used as tetridentate ligands for coordination chemistry.
Mn(III) sits neatly in a tetracoordinate pocket in the ligand, and catalyses the epoxidation of simple alkenes by sodium hypochlorite, NaOCl, ordinary domestic bleach. Best results are obtained when the alkenes are cis (although an alternative range of ligands, developed by Tsutomu Katsuki, work well with trans alkenes), and one of the most significant applications of the Jacobsen epoxidation is with indene, which gives an epoxide in 84% ee with <1% of the catalyst. The mechanism of the reaction is complex and not fully understood, although it probably involves a Mn(V) oxo species and may involve radical intermediates.

Together, the epoxidations of Sharpless, Jacobsen, and Katsuki, plus others we do not have space to cover, provide valuable solutions to many synthetic problems—in particular because epoxides are such useful reactive synthetic intermediates. But no epoxidation reaction is as general as the oxidation reaction we cover next.

**Asymmetric dihydroxylation**

This alternative asymmetric oxidation really is probably the best asymmetric reaction of all. It is an asymmetric version of the syn dihydroxylation of alkenes by osmium tetroxide. Here is an example—although the concept is quite simple, the recipe for the reactions is complicated so we need to approach it step by step.

The active reagent is based on osmium(VIII) and is used in just catalytic amounts. This means that there has to be a stoichiometric quantity of another oxidant to reoxidize the osmium after each catalytic cycle—K₃Fe(CN)₆ is most commonly used. Because OsO₄ is volatile and toxic, the osmium is usually added as K₂OsO₂(OH)₄, which forms OsO₄ in the reaction mixture. The ‘other additives’ include K₂CO₃ and methanesulfonamide (MeSO₂NH₂), which increases the rate of the reaction by regenerating the catalyst at the end of each catalytic cycle.

Now for the chiral ligand. Tertiary amines are good ligands for osmium and increase the rate of dihydroxylation: one of the reasons that NMO is used in the racemic version of the reaction (see p. 442) is that the by-product, N-methylmorpholine, accelerates the reaction. Sharpless chose some available chiral tertiary amines as ligands, and it turned out that the best ones are based on the alkaloids dihydroquinidine and dihydroquinine, whose structures are shown below. They coordinate to the osmium through the green nitrogen atom.

---

This epoxide plays a starring role in the synthesis of the anti-HIV compound indinavir: see Chapter 43.
The alkaloids (usually abbreviated to DHQD and DHQ, respectively) must be attached to an aromatic group Ar, the choice of which varies according to the substrate. The most generally applicable ligands are these two phthalazines in which each aromatic group Ar carries two alkaloid ligands, either DHQ or DHQD.

Dihydroquinine and dihydroquinidine are not enantiomeric (although the chiral centres ringed in orange are of opposite configuration in each of the pairs, those ringed in brown remain the same in both), but they act on the dihydroxylation as though they were.

Here, after all that introduction, is a real example, and probably the most remarkable of any in this chapter. \textit{trans}-Stilbene dihydroxylates more selectively than any other alkene, and this particular example is one of the most enantioselective catalytic reactions ever invented.

\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{cat. K}_2\text{OsO}_2\text{(OH)}_4, K_2\text{Fe(CN)}_6, K_2\text{CO}_3, \text{MeSO}_2\text{NH}_2 & \quad t\text{-BuOH, H}_2\text{O, 0 }^\circ\text{C} & \quad \text{cat. DHQD}_2\text{PHAL} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{trans-stilbene} & \quad \text{cat. K}_2\text{OsO}_2\text{(OH)}_4, K_2\text{Fe(CN)}_6, K_2\text{CO}_3, \text{MeSO}_2\text{NH}_2 & \quad t\text{-BuOH, H}_2\text{O, 0 }^\circ\text{C} & \quad \text{cat. DHQ}_2\text{PHAL} \\
\end{align*}

\[99.8\% \text{ ee} \quad >99.5\% \text{ ee}\]

We can sum up the usual selectivity of the AD reaction with the diagram shown below. With the substrate arranged as shown, with the largest (R_L) and next largest (R_M) groups bottom left and top right, respectively, DHQD-based ligands will direct OsO_4 to dihydroxylate from the top face of the alkene and DHQ-based ligands the bottom face.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Enantioselectivity in the Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation}
\end{itemize}

The reason for this must come from the way in which the substrate interacts with the osmium–ligand complex. However, the detailed mechanism of the asymmetric dihydroxylation is still far from clear-cut. What is known is that the ligand forms some sort of ‘chiral pocket’, like an enzyme active site, with the osmium sitting at the bottom of it. Alkenes can only approach the osmium if they are correctly aligned in the chiral pocket, and steric hindrance forces the alignment shown in the scheme above. The analogy with an enzyme active
site goes even further, since it appears that part of the pocket is ‘attractive’ to aromatic or strongly hydrophobic groups. This part appears to accommodate \( R_L \), part of the reason why the selectivity in the dihydroxylation of \( \text{trans-stilbene} \) is so high.

The asymmetric dihydroxylation is much less fussy about the alkenes it will oxidize than Sharpless’ asymmetric epoxidation. Osmium tetroxide itself is a remarkable reagent, since it oxidizes more or less any sort of alkene, electron-rich or electron-poor, and the same is true of the asymmetric dihydroxylation reagent. The following example illustrates both this and a synthetic use for the diol product.

The chemists at Lilly in Spain who made this diol wanted to turn it into the protected amino acid shown after the dotted arrow as part of the synthesis of an anti-HIV compound. The ease with which diols can be made means that there are a number of reliable methods for transforming them into derivatives which undergo the sort of substitution needed. The one used here was to make the diol into a cyclic sulfate using sulfuryl chloride, \( \text{SO}_2\text{Cl}_2 \). Cyclic sulfates behave like epoxides, and this one opens easily with azide at the more reactive position adjacent to the carbonyl group. Hydrolysis of the remaining sulfate ester, hydrogenation of the azide to the amine, and protection with Boc gave the target compound.

An alternative way of achieving the same transformation to the cyclic sulfate is to use thionyl chloride (\( \text{SOCl}_2 \)) to give a sulfite, followed by ruthenium-catalysed oxidation to the sulfate. Diols can even be converted with retention of stereochemistry directly to epoxides. Treatment of a diol with trimethyl orthoacetate and acetyl bromide gives firstly the cyclic orthoester, which opens with bromide to a regioisomeric mixture of the bromoacetates. The regiochemistry is irrelevant because treatment with base hydrolyses the ester and closes both of the resulting bromoalcohols to the same epoxide.
It’s no surprise that when chemists from Bristol Myers Squibb needed the epoxide below, they turned to asymmetric dihydroxylation rather than either of the epoxidation methods we have shown you. Sharpless epoxidation works only with allylic alcohols, and Jacobsen epoxidation performs poorly here, giving only 70–74% ee (mainly because the substrate is not a cis alkene). However, asymmetric dihydroxylation saves the day with 98% ee and around 90% yield, and a variant of the reaction we have just shown you gives the epoxide, also in 90% yield—well worth the extra step.

![Chemical structure](image)

**Ligand-accelerated catalysis**

Asymmetric dihydroxylation is such a good reaction not just because of the careful way in which the ligands have been designed. It is a good reaction for a more fundamental reason: the reaction on which it is based (osmium-catalysed dihydroxylation) works only very poorly in the absence of the amine ligand. The chiral amine ligands don’t just provide a chiral environment, they accelerate the reaction at the same time. This is what we mean by ‘ligand accelerated catalysis’.

In any asymmetric reaction, we want the reagents to combine with one another only in the presence of the asymmetric influence provided by the chiral ligands. If the reaction works anyway, even without the chiral ligands, we have an uphill struggle because the reagents are quite capable of producing racemic product on their own. Racemic ‘background’ reactions are the reason why many of the reactions you are familiar with because they work so well racemically—addition of Grignard reagents to aldehydes, for example—don’t really have good asymmetric versions. In the next section you will meet some more examples of reactions which are significantly accelerated by the presence of a chiral ligand.

**Asymmetric formation of carbon–carbon bonds**

One of the first reactions you met in this book (Chapters 6 and 9) was the addition of an organometallic reagent to an aldehyde or a ketone. If the products of such an addition are chiral they are of course racemic. How might we make such a reaction enantioselective? One way would be to exploit the idea of ligand-accelerated catalysis and use a reaction which really doesn’t work very well in the racemic series.

This is the case when the organometallic reagent is a dialkylzinc. Diethylzinc is commercially available as a solution in toluene or hexane, but it reacts only very slowly with an aldehyde...
if the two are just left to stir together. However, if a chiral amino alcohol is added, the reaction becomes much faster. The amino alcohol forms a zinc alkoxide in the reaction mixture, and the coordination of this anionic chiral ligand to zinc both accelerates the transfer of zinc's alkyl groups to the aldehyde and makes that transfer enantioselective.

With alkyne nucleophiles, this reaction works with just catalytic amounts of zinc because the alkynylzinc forms in the reaction mixture when a weak base is added. It’s a good way of making alkyne-containing alcohols.

Asymmetric conjugate addition

In Chapter 22 we discussed the fact that copper promotes conjugate addition to electron-deficient double bonds. We can again exploit the low reactivity of organozinc compounds with carbonyl compounds, and with alkenes, if we add a catalytic amount of copper and a chiral phosphorus-containing ligand based on the atropisomeric binaphthyl structure you saw in BINAP. The organozinc has to transmetallate to the organocopper in order to react, and the copper always remains bound to the chiral ligand. Conjugate addition can only take place in a chiral environment, and good ees result.

Organocatalysis

It will not have escaped your notice that most of the reactions we have presented in this chapter have made use of metals. Metals have labile coordination sites that can carry chiral ligands at the same time as they allow substrates and reagents to meet together in a chiral environment and then let the products dissociate so that the catalytic cycle can proceed. But in the early years of the 21st century, several chemists around the world realized that it is not always necessary to use a metal to initiate high levels of enantioselectivity in catalytic reactions. Simple chiral and enantiomerically pure organic molecules, many of them amines, can also react reversibly with substrates, providing a chiral environment and simultaneously activating them towards enantioselective attack.

Here is an example, which picks up where we left off: a catalytic enantioselective conjugate addition. As you know from Chapter 11, aldehydes and ketones react with secondary amines to form enamines, via iminium ions. But this unsaturated aldehyde can't form an enamine because the iminium ion that is generated by condensation with the cyclic secondary amine is not a good enough electrophile.
cannot lose a proton. The iminium ion is the end of the line for this condensation: it is very reactive towards attack by water (which would reversibly regenerate starting materials), but also towards attack by other nucleophiles. We have just what we want for good asymmetric catalysis—an intermediate species that is reactive, chiral, and enantiomerically pure.

If this condensation is done in the presence of a weak nucleophile—strong enough to attack the positively charged iminium ion but not strong enough to attack the aldehyde itself—an addition reaction takes place. A pyrrole will do: pyrroles react well with cations. The phenyl ring highlighted in green hangs over the front of the molecule so the pyrrole has no choice but to attack diastereoselectively, from behind. The product is an enamine, which in the acid conditions of the reaction is hydrolysed by the water generated in the initial condensation, revealing the aldehyde in enantiomerically enriched form (93% ee) and regenerating the secondary amine catalyst.

This catalyst and strategy were invented by the Glaswegian chemist David MacMillan at the California Institute of Technology (now at Princeton in New Jersey) and given the name ‘organocatalysis’. Organocatalysis makes use of small organic molecules to achieve catalytic asymmetric transformations, and can be distinguished from the more widespread methods of catalysis which typically use metals. We’ll introduce another type of organocatalysis towards the end of the chapter, but before we move on it’s worth looking at this amine catalyst and the way it works in a little more detail.

The geminal dimethyl group highlighted in orange above is also important to the functioning of the catalyst. Without it, there is clearly a danger that the pyrrole will add directly to the C=N bond of the iminium ion, a reaction that would kill the catalyst because the product is an amine and not an enamine. The methyl groups on both faces of the iminium C=N bond stop this happening. The other thing it ensures is the geometry of the iminium C=N bond. This bond is trans so that the alkene can keep away from the quaternary carbon bearing the two orange groups; the benzyl group with the green phenyl may be bigger in terms of total number of atoms, but there is more space for the alkene on that side because the nearest carbon also carries just an H atom. Why is the geometry of the imine important? Well, if any of it were cis, it would present the other face to the pyrrole and would be likely to give the opposite enantiomer of product.

Catalysts aren’t used in such great quantities as chiral auxiliaries, and so in general their synthesis does not need to be quite so direct. Nonetheless as you can see from the examples here, organocatalysts are still generally used in much greater quantities (10–20 mol%) than some of the best metal catalysts. In this case you should be able to spot that the left-hand
portion of the cyclic amine is a derivative of l-phenylalanine. Condensation of its N-methyl amide with an equivalent of acetone gives the catalyst itself.

Here’s a related catalyst—as with the Rh- and Ru-catalysed reactions, fine tuning of the catalyst is important—being used in the synthesis of an important pharmaceutical compound, a COX-2 inhibitor. This time the nucleophile is an indole reacting characteristically at its 3-position.

Asymmetric aldol reactions

You saw in Chapter 33 that it is possible to use aldol reactions to create two new chiral centres in a single step, and that the relative stereochemistry of the two chiral centres depends in many cases on the geometry of the enolate used to do the aldol reaction. The power of an asymmetric aldol reaction is easy to see: it creates two new chiral centres with control over their absolute stereochemistry, and also constructs a new C–C bond. What is more, the products of aldol reactions are very common features in a huge number of natural products known as polyketides—as you will see in the next chapter, polyketides are made by living things using a series of successive enzyme-controlled aldol reactions.

Chiral auxiliary-controlled aldol reactions: the Evans aldol

An aldol reaction is the addition of an enolate to an electrophile, where the electrophile is an aldehyde or a ketone. You have already seen earlier in this chapter how enolates can be used to make new C–C bonds enantioselectively when we explained how to control enolate alkylation with Evans’ chiral auxiliaries. Evans’ auxiliaries also provide one of the most straightforward ways of carrying out asymmetric aldol reactions, and we will start with an example before explaining how asymmetric aldol reactions can be done using catalytic methods.

This aldol reaction is carried out using a base (triethylamine) and dibutylboron triflate plus benzaldehyde. The aldol product is formed with outstandingly good selectivity and in high yield, and all that remains is to remove the auxiliary with base and isolate the hydroxy-acid as a single diastereoisomer and a single enantiomer.

Aldol reactions using the lithium enolate of the acylated auxiliary shown here fail to give good selectivities, so instead we use the boron enolate. The combination of triethylamine and the boron triflate form the stable boron enolate, which has to be cis because the size of the auxiliary prevents the trans enolate forming. Boron has an empty p orbital, and donation into this orbital from the oxygen of the carbonyl group stabilizes the enolate.
Now the aldehyde is added. If the reaction is to take place, the aldehyde must coordinate to the boron because boron enolates aren’t reactive enough to attack aldehydes unless they are activated by coordination to a Lewis acid. However, the aldehyde can’t simply coordinate to the boron atom of the enolate because then the boron will end up with five bonds, which is impossible for a first-row element. So, if the reaction is to continue, the boron has to let go of the auxiliary’s carbonyl group and coordinate to the aldehyde instead.

At this stage something rather remarkable happens: now that the boron is no longer holding the two oxygen atoms of the enolate close together, repulsion between them (they are both electron-rich atoms) forces the auxiliary part of the enolate to swing round through 180° and end up pointing in the opposite direction. This is highly significant for what happens next because you can see from the last structure in the scheme above that this rotation ends up swinging the isopropyl group of the auxiliary round to the underside of the enolate and therefore forcing the auxiliary to react from the front instead of the back.

The diagrams below continue the story. The aldehyde has to attack the front face of the auxiliary, but it also has to do so through what we termed in Chapter 33 a ‘Zimmerman–Traxler transition state’—a six-membered, chair-like cyclic structure which allows the enolate to attack the aldehyde while simultaneously transferring the metal (here the boron) from the enolate oxygen to the new hydroxyl group.

All the usual advantages and disadvantages of chiral auxiliaries apply here: the products are formed in very high selectivity and can be purified to high ee, but the extra steps required to introduce and remove the auxiliary may compromise the overall yield and efficiency of the reaction. Nonetheless, using this method and many others like it, it has now become possible routinely to make polyketide natural products by successive aldol reactions, mimicking nature’s approach to these compounds. In a spectacular demonstration of the power of synthetic chemistry to outperform natural sources, chemists at the Swiss pharmaceutical company Novartis made 60 g of the anticancer compound discodermolide by a synthetic route, including five aldol reactions. Four of these, shown by black C–C bonds in the structure below, used the aldol or alkylation reactions controlled by Evans’ oxazolidinone chiral auxiliaries. To obtain the same quantity from the natural source, the sponge Discodermia, is impossible: the sponge produces minuscule amounts of discodermolide and can be harvested only by using manned submersible vehicles, at some cost to the marine environment.
A variety of catalytic ways of doing asymmetric aldol reactions have also been invented, but space prevents us discussing all but one. This one we highlight firstly because it illustrates the use of a supremely simple biologically derived compound to catalyse a complex reaction, and secondly because this discovery was part of the revolution in catalytic thinking which launched the field of organocatalysis in the early years of the 21st century.

The catalyst we will use is the amino acid l-proline—no derivatization or protection required. It was actually back in 1971 that it was first noted that l-proline will catalyse asymmetric aldols, but until the year 2000 examples were limited to this one cyclization. Treatment of a triketone with proline leads to selective cyclization onto one of the two enantiotopic carbonyl groups. A molecule of proline must condense with the least hindered ketone, and in this case an enamine (rather than an iminium ion) can form. The chiral enamine can select to react with only one of the two other carbonyl groups, and it turns out that it chooses with rather high selectivity the one coloured green in the scheme below. Cyclization, in the manner of a Robinson annelation, and hydrolysis of the resulting iminium ion follow on, releasing the molecule of l-proline to start another catalytic cycle. The isolated product is the bicyclic ketone, in 93% ee.

This remained an oddity of a reaction until 2000, when chemists at the Scripps Institute in California, and then others around the world, took the simple expedient of adding l-proline to many other aldol reactions, with considerable success. With care, excellent results can be obtained. Here is an example.

You will remember from Chapter 26 that crossed aldol reactions between enolizable partners, like these, usually need one of the reagents to be converted to an enolate equivalent to ensure selective reaction. Here, the acetone is in excess, but the components are just stirred together at room temperature in DMSO! The key to success is that one of the two components must be more able to form a reactive enamine with proline than the other. In the case above, the acetone-derived enamine is favoured because (1) enamine formation is reversible, (2) the acetone is in excess, and (3) the enamine from acetone is less hindered and more reactive than the enamine that would arise from the aldehyde.
In the aldol reaction itself, proline's carboxyl group has a key role to play because it can participate in a hydrogen bond that organizes the six-membered transition state in such a way that only one of the possible enantiomeric products can form. The diagram below shows how. Water generated in the initial condensation hydrolyses the iminium product of the aldol and regenerates the proline catalyst.

Organocatalytic aldol reactions also work well with hydroxylated ketones—the reaction below, for example. In this case, the enamine forms with an E double bond, which means that the hydroxyl group has to be equatorial on the six-membered transition state. You should be able to work out from this that the anti aldol has to form.

Enzymes as catalysts

We pointed out at the beginning of the chapter that all enantiomeric purity must ultimately derive from nature. We have almost come full circle: the reactions we have just been looking at use one of nature's protein building blocks, L-proline, directly as a catalyst. Even more intriguingly, the reaction just above, which forms a ketodiol, is extremely reminiscent of the aldol reactions which nature uses to build carbohydrates, as you will see in the next chapter.

Yet nature does not use single amino acids to catalyse asymmetric reactions, it uses enzymes. Enzymes are vastly more efficient than L-proline and catalyse a much wider range of reactions, but while they are also much more complicated, their reactivity derives ultimately from the amino acids they are made up of.

Life uses enzymes to catalyse asymmetric reactions, so the question is—can chemists? The answer is yes, and there are many enzymes that can be produced in quantities large enough to be used in the catalytic synthesis of enantiomerically pure molecules. This field—known as biocatalysis—melds ideas in chemistry and biology, and we do not have the space here to discuss it in detail. We leave you with just one example: the reduction of a ketone to an alcohol with an enzyme known as a ketoreductase.

The ketoreductase takes hydride from the reducing agent NADPH (which you will meet in the next chapter) and transfers it enantioselectively to the carbonyl group in the active site of
the enzyme. This ketoreductase, isolated from yeast, may never have met this non-biological substrate—benzoyloxyacetone—before, but the reaction works. In fact this sort of reaction works so well that ketoreductases are used to carry out the reduction needed to produce the pharmaceutical intermediate discussed on p. 1116 on a 230 kg scale.

Many other groups of enzymes behave similarly: they have evolved to take part in particular biochemical pathways, but they are sufficiently promiscuous that they will happily accept alternative substrates and provide chemically useful products from them. Enzymes are catalysts, like any other. In the next chapter, we take a more detailed look at those biochemical pathways and discuss the organic chemistry of life.

### Summary of the main methods for asymmetric synthesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>resolution</td>
<td>both enantiomers available</td>
<td>maximum 50% yield</td>
<td>synthesis of BINAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral pool</td>
<td>100% ee usually guaranteed</td>
<td>often only one enantiomer available</td>
<td>amino acid and sugar derived syntheses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral auxiliary</td>
<td>often excellent ees; can recrystallize to purify to high ee</td>
<td>extra steps to introduce and remove auxiliary</td>
<td>oxazolidinones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral reagent</td>
<td>achieve some otherwise difficult transformations</td>
<td>only a few reagents are successful and often for few substrates</td>
<td>alkyl lithium–(−)-sparteine complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral catalyst</td>
<td>economical: only small amounts of recyclable material used</td>
<td>only a few reactions are really successful; recrystallization can improve only already high ees</td>
<td>asymmetric hydrogenation, epoxidation, dihydroxylation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Further reading


### Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at [http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/](http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/)
Primary metabolism

Life runs on chemistry, and the chemical side of biology is fascinating for that reason alone. It is humbling to realize that the same molecules are present in all living things, from the simplest single-cell creatures to ourselves. Nucleic acids contain the genetic information of every organism, and they control the synthesis of proteins. Proteins are partly structural—as in connective tissue—and partly functional—as in enzymes, the catalysts for biological reactions. Sugars and lipids used to be thought of as the poor relations of the other two, storing energy and building membranes, but it is now clear that they also have a vital part to play in recognition and transport.

The chemistry common to all living things is known as primary metabolism and the chart overleaf shows the molecules of primary metabolism and the connections between them, and needs some explanation. It shows a simplified relationship between the key structures (emphasized in large black type). It shows their origins—from CO₂ in the first instance—and picks out some important intermediates. Glucose, pyruvic acid, citric acid, acetyl coenzyme A (acetyl CoA), and ribose are players on the centre stage of metabolism and are built into many
important biological molecules. Use this chart to keep track of the relationships between the molecules of metabolism as you develop a more detailed understanding of them. We start with nucleic acids.

**life begins with nucleic acids**

Nucleic acids store genetic information. They are polymers whose building blocks (monomers) are the nucleotides, themselves made of three parts—a heterocyclic base, a sugar, and a phosphate ester. In the example below, adenine is the base (shown in black), adenosine is the nucleoside (base and sugar), and the nucleotide is the whole molecule (base + sugar + phosphate). This nucleotide is called AMP—adenosine monophosphate. Phosphates are key compounds in nature because they form useful stable linkages between molecules and can also be built up into reactive molecules by simply multiplying the number of phosphate residues. The most important of these nucleotides is also one of the most important molecules in nature—adenosine triphosphate or ATP.
ATP is a highly reactive molecule because phosphates are stable anions and good leaving groups. It can be attacked by hard nucleophiles at a phosphate group (usually the end one) or by soft nucleophiles at the CH₂ group on the sugar. When a new reaction is initiated in nature, very often the first step is a reaction with ATP to make the compound more reactive. This is rather like our use of TsCl to make alcohols more reactive or converting acids to acid chlorides to make them more reactive.

There are five heterocyclic bases in DNA and RNA

Nucleic acids are made up of a selection of five bases, two sugars, and the phosphate group. The bases are monocyclic pyrimidines or bicyclic purines and are all aromatic.

- There are only two purine bases found in nucleic acids: adenine (A), which we have already met, and guanine (G)
- The three pyrimidine bases are simpler: uracil (U), thymine (T), and cytosine (C). Cytosine is found in DNA and RNA, uracil in RNA only, and thymine in DNA only.

The coloured parts of the molecules below emphasize the characteristic features of the bases.

The stimulants in tea and coffee are methylated purines

An important stimulant for many is a fully methylated purine present in tea and coffee—caffeine. Caffeine is a crystalline substance easily extracted from coffee or tea with organic solvents. It is extracted industrially with supercritical CO₂ (or, if you prefer, ‘nature’s effervescence’) to make decaffeinated tea and coffee.

If we, as chemists, were to add those methyl groups we would choose to use a reagent such as methyl iodide, but nature uses a much more complicated molecule. There is a great deal of methylating going on in living things—and the methyl groups are usually added by (S)-adenosyl methionine (or SAM), formed by reaction of methionine with ATP. This is a good reaction because sulfur is a good soft nucleophile, triphosphate is a good leaving group, and substitution at primary carbon is easy.
SAM is a sulfonium salt and could be attacked by nucleophiles at three different carbon atoms. Two are primary centres—good for $S_N2$ reactions—but the third is the methyl group, which is even better. Many nucleophiles attack SAM in this way. In the coffee plant, theobromine (a purine also found in cocoa) is converted into caffeine with a molecule of SAM. The methylation occurs on nitrogen partly because this preserves both the aromatic ring and the amide functionality and also because the enzyme involved brings the two molecules together in the right orientation for $N$-methylation.

At this point we should just point out something that it’s easy to forget: there is only one chemistry. There is no magic in biological chemistry, and nature uses the same chemical principles as we do in the chemical laboratory. All the mechanisms that you have studied so far will help you to draw mechanisms for biological reactions and most reactions that you have met have their counterparts in nature. The difference is that nature is very, very good at chemistry, and we humans are only just learning. We still do much more sophisticated reactions inside our bodies without thinking about them than we can do outside our bodies with all the most powerful ideas available to us in the 21st century.

**Nucleic acids exist in a double helix**

One of the most important discoveries of modern science was the elucidation of the structures of DNA and RNA as the famous double helix by Watson and Crick in 1953. They realized that the basic structure of base–sugar–phosphate was ideal for a three-dimensional coil. The structure of a small part of DNA is shown on the right. Notice that the 2′ (pronounced ‘two prime’) position on the ribose ring is vacant. There is no hydroxyl group there: that is why it is called deoxyribonucleic acid. The nucleotides link the two remaining OH groups on the ribose ring and these are called the 3′- and 5′-positions. This piece of DNA has three nucleotides (adenine, adenine, and thymine) and so would be called –AAT– for short.

Each polymeric strand of DNA coils up into a helix and is bonded to another strand by hydrogen bonds between the bases. Each base pairs up specifically with another base—adenine with thymine (A–T) and guanine with cytosine (G–C)—like this.
There is quite a lot to notice about these structures. Each purine (A or G) is bonded specifically to one pyrimidine (T or C) by two or by three hydrogen bonds. The hydrogen bonds are of two kinds: one links an amine to a carbonyl group (black in the diagram) and one links an amine to an imine (green in the diagram). A purine has to pair with a pyrimidine because only the combination of larger purine and smaller pyrimidine bridges the gap between the nucleic acid coils. Look back at the green and orange parts of the structures on p. 1136 and you will see that only one hydrogen bond pairing pattern can work. In this way, each nucleotide reliably recognizes another and reliably pairs with its partner. The short strand of DNA above (–AAT–) would pair reliably with –TTA–.

HIV and AIDS are treated with modified nucleosides

Modified nucleosides are among the best antiviral compounds. The anti-HIV drug AZT (zidovudine) is a slightly modified DNA nucleoside (3'-azidothymidine). It has an azide at C3' instead of the hydroxyl group in the natural nucleoside. A more radically modified nucleoside 3-TC (lamivudine) is active against AZT-resistant viruses. This drug is based on cytosine with the sugar replaced by a different heterocycle, although it is recognizably similar, especially in the stereochemistry. Acyclovir (Zovirax), the cold sore (herpes) treatment, is a modified guanosine in which only a ghost of the sugar remains. There is no ring at all and no stereochemistry.

Cyclic nucleosides and stereochemistry

DNA is more stable than RNA because its sugars lack the 2' hydroxyl groups. In ribonucleic acids, the fact that the 2'- and 3'-OH groups are on the same side of the ring makes alkaline hydrolysis exceptionally rapid by intramolecular nucleophilic catalysis.
The base removes a proton from the 2′-OH group, which cyclizes on to the phosphate link—possible only if the ring fusion is cis. The next reaction involves breakdown of the penta-covalent phosphorus intermediate to give a cyclic phosphate. One nucleoside is released by this reaction and the second follows when the cyclic phosphate is itself cleaved by base.

Another cyclic phosphate that can be formed from a nucleotide is important as a biological messenger that helps to control such processes as blood clotting and acid secretion in the stomach. It is cyclic AMP (cAMP), formed enzymatically from ATP by nucleophilic displacement of pyrophosphate by the 3′-OH group.

Proteins are made of amino acids

DNA encodes the information needed to make proteins in the form of triplets of bases (codons), for example thymine–adenine–cytosine (TAC) in the diagram below. As RNA is synthesized from DNA, these are turned into complementary codons (in the example below, AUG) by pairing up the bases as shown on p. 1138. This RNA forms the instructions for protein synthesis by the ribosome—perhaps the most elaborate molecular structure in the known universe. Each codon of the RNA chain tells the ribosome to add a specific amino acid to the growing protein. For example, the codon AUG indicates methionine, which we met as a component of SAM. Methionine is a typical amino acid of the kind present in proteins, but is also the starter unit of all proteins.

The next codon of RNA directs the ribosome to add the next amino acid, linked to the previous one in the chain by an amide bond. Amino acids used to make proteins have the same basic structure and stereochemistry, shown in the margin, and differ only in the group R.

The process continues as more amino acids are added in turn to the right-hand end of the growing molecule. A section of the final protein might look like the structure below. The skeleton of the protein zig-zags up and down in the usual way; the amide bonds (shown in black) are rigid because of the amide conjugation and are held in the shape shown.

Note that cAMP has a trans 6,5-fused ring junction.

There is a list of the naturally occurring amino acids in Chapter 23 (p. 554), where we discussed the laboratory synthesis of peptides.

Much of the function of enzymes and other proteins derives from their detailed folded conformation, discussion of which is beyond the scope of this book.
Amino acids combine to form peptides and proteins

In nature, the amino acids are combined to give proteins with hundreds or even thousands of amino acids in each one. Small assemblies of amino acids are known as peptides and the amide bond that links them is called a peptide bond.

An important tripeptide is glutathione, present in the tissues of both animals and plants. Glutathione is the ‘universal thiol’ that removes dangerous oxidizing agents by allowing itself to be oxidized to a disulfide. Glutathione is, however, not quite a typical tripeptide. The left-hand amino acid is normal glutamic acid but it is joined to the next amino acid through its \( \gamma\)-CO₂H group instead of the more normal \( \alpha\)-CO₂H group. The middle amino acid is the vital one for the function—cysteine with a free SH group. The C-terminal acid is glycine.

\[
\text{glutathione} = RSH
\]

\[
\gamma\text{-Glu (glutamic acid joined through its } \gamma\text{-CO₂H group)}
\]

\[
\text{cysteine}
\]

\[
\text{glycine}
\]

Thiols are easily oxidized to disulfides and glutathione sacrifices itself if it meets an oxidizing agent. The oxidized form of glutathione can later be converted back to the thiol by reduction with NADH, which you will meet later in this chapter.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{2 } \times \text{ glutathione} & \rightarrow \text{ oxidizing agent} & \rightarrow \gamma\text{-Glu} \\
& \quad \text{reducing agent} & \text{glycine}
\end{align*}
\]

Glutathione also detoxifies some of the compounds we described earlier in this book as dangerous carcinogens such as Michael acceptors and 2,4-dinitrohalobenzenes. The thiol acts as a nucleophile, inactivating the electrophiles. Covalently bound to glutathione they are harmless and can be excreted. More glutathione will be synthesized from glutamic acid, cysteine, and glycine to replace that which is lost.

Some short peptides, of around ten amino acids, are hormones. Angiotensin II, for example, is a peptide that causes blood pressure to rise—a very necessary thing in some situations but too much and too often leads to heart attacks and strokes.

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) is the zinc-dependent enzyme that cleaves two amino acids from the end of angiotensin I to give angiotensin II, and ACE inhibitors are used as treatment for high blood pressure because they inhibit this enzyme. Lisinopril is an example: it is a dipeptide mimic, having two natural amino acids and something else. The ‘something else’ is the left-hand part of the molecule, linked to the dipeptide (Lys–Pro) through an amine and not
by an amide bond. This stops enzymes from hydrolysing the molecule. Lisinopril binds to ACE because it is like a natural dipeptide but it inhibits it because it is not a natural dipeptide. Many people are alive today because of this simple deception practised on an enzyme.

**Structural proteins must be tough and flexible**

In contrast with the functional enzymes, proteins such as collagen are purely structural. Collagen is the tough protein of tendons and connective tissue, and is present in skin, bone, and teeth. It contains large amounts of glycine (every third amino acid is glycine), proline, and hydroxyproline (again about a third of the amino acids are either Pro or Hyp).

Hydroxyproline is a specialized amino acid that appears almost nowhere else and, along with proline, it establishes a very strong triply coiled structure for collagen. The glycine is necessary as there is no room in the triple coil for any larger amino acid. Functionalized amino acids are rare in collagen.

**Hydroxyproline and scurvy**

Hydroxyproline is a very unusual amino acid. It is not incorporated into the growing protein chain when collagen is synthesized—instead the collagen molecule is assembled with Pro where Hyp is need. Once the protein is complete, some of the proline residues are oxidized to hydroxyproline. This oxidation requires vitamin C, and without it collagen cannot be formed. This is why vitamin C deficiency causes scurvy—the symptoms of scurvy suffered by 18th-century sailors (loose teeth, sores, and blisters) were caused by the inability to make collagen.

**Antiobiotics exploit the special chemistry of bacteria**

We have repeatedly emphasized that all life has very similar chemistry. From the biochemical point of view the most important division is that separating prokaryotes from eukaryotes. Prokaryotes, which include bacteria, evolved first and have simple cells with no nucleus. Eukaryotes, which include plants, mammals, and all other multicellular creatures, evolved later and have more complex cells, including nuclei. Even then, much of the biochemistry on both sides of the divide is the same.

When medicinal chemists are looking for ways to attack bacteria, one approach is to interfere with chemistry carried out by prokaryotes but not by us. The most famous of these attacks is aimed at the construction of the cell walls of some bacteria that contain ‘unnatural’ (R)- (or D-) amino acids. Bacterial cell walls are made from glycopeptides of an unusual kind. Polysaccharide chains are cross-linked with short peptides containing (R)-alanine (D-Ala). Before they are linked up, one chain ends with a glycine molecule and the other with D-Ala–D-Ala. In the final step in the cell wall synthesis, the glycine attacks the D-Ala–D-Ala sequence to form a new peptide bond by displacing one D-Ala residue.

---

The reason bacteria have evolved to use these ‘unnatural’ D-amino acids in their cell walls is to protect them against the enzymes in animals and plants, which cannot digest proteins containing D-amino acids.
The antibiotic penicillin works by interfering with this step—although this was not even suspected when penicillin was discovered. Penicillin inhibits the enzyme that catalyses the D-Ala transfer in a very specific way. It first binds specifically to the enzyme (so it must be a mimic of the natural substrate) and it then reacts with the enzyme and inactivates it by blocking a vital OH group at the active site. If we emphasize the peptide nature of penicillin and compare it with D-Ala–D-Ala, the mimicry may become clearer.

Penicillin imitates D-Ala and binds to the active site of the enzyme, encouraging the OH group of a serine residue to attack the reactive strained β-lactam. This same OH group of the same serine residue would normally be the catalyst for the D-Ala–D-Ala cleavage used in the building of the bacterial cell wall. The reaction with penicillin ‘protects’ the serine and irreversibly inhibits the enzyme. The bacterial cell walls cannot be completed, and the bacterial cells literally burst under the pressure of their contents. Penicillin does not kill bacteria whose cell walls are already complete but it does prevent new bacteria being formed.

**Sugars—just energy sources?**

Sugars are the building blocks of carbohydrates. They used to be thought of as essential but rather dull molecules whose function was principally the (admittedly useful) storage of energy. In fact they have much more interesting and varied roles than that. We have already noted that ribose plays an intimate role in DNA and RNA structure and function. Sugars are also often found in intimate association with proteins and are involved in recognition and adhesion processes.

Here are two examples. How does a sperm recognize the egg and penetrate its wall? Recognition of a carbohydrate attached to the membrane of the egg was the first event in all of our lives. And how does a virus get inside a cell? Here again, the recognition process involves specific carbohydrates. One of the ways in which AIDS is being tackled with some success is by a combination of the antiviral drugs we met earlier in this chapter with HIV protease inhibitor drugs, which aim to prevent recognition and penetration of cells by HIV.

**Sugars normally exist in cyclic forms with much stereochemistry**

The most important sugar is glucose. It has a saturated six-membered ring containing oxygen and it is best drawn in a chair conformation with nearly all the substituents equatorial. It can also be drawn as a flat configurational diagram. We have already met one sugar in this chapter, ribose, because it was part of the structure of nucleic acids. This sugar is a five-membered saturated oxygen heterocycle with many OH groups. Indeed, you can define a sugar as an oxygen heterocycle with every carbon atom bearing an oxygen-based functional group—usually OH, but alternatively C=O.
The drawings of glucose and ribose show a number of stereogenic centres, with one centre undefined—an OH group shown with a wavy bond. This is because one centre in both sugars is a hemiacetal and therefore the molecule is in equilibrium with an open-chain hydroxy-aldehyde. For glucose, the open-chain form is this.

When the ring closes again, any of the OH groups could cyclize on to the aldehyde but there is no real competition—the six-membered ring is more stable than any of the alternatives (which could have three-, four-, five-, or seven-membered rings—check for yourself). However, with ribose there is a reasonable alternative.

The most important sugars may exist in an open-chain form, as a five-membered oxygen heterocycle (called a furanose, after the five-membered aromatic compound furan) or a six-membered oxygen heterocycle (called a pyranose, after the six-membered pyran). Glucose prefers the pyranose structure; ribose prefers the furanose structure.

**Sugars can be fixed in one shape by acetal formation**

The simplest way to fix glucose in the pyranose form is to trap it as an acetal. Acid-catalysed condensation with an alcohol, methanol, for example, gives an acetal and, remarkably, the acetal has an axial OR group. Acetal formation is under thermodynamic control (Chapter 11) so the axial compound must be the more stable. This is because of the anomeric effect—so-called because this C atom is called the anomeric position and the acetal diastereoisomers are called anomers. The effect is a bonding interaction between the axial lone pair on the oxygen atom in the ring and the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the OMe group.

The formation of acetals allows a remarkable degree of control over the chemistry of sugars. Apart from the simple glucoside acetal we have just seen, there are three important acetals worth understanding because of the way in which they illustrate stereoelectronic effects—the interplay of stereochemistry and mechanism. If we make an acetal from methyl glucoside and benzaldehyde, we get a single compound as a single stereoisomer.
The new acetal could have been formed between any of the adjacent OH groups in the starting material but it chose the only pair (the black OH groups) which give a six-membered ring. The stereochemistry of glucose is such that the new six-membered ring is trans-fused to the old so that a beautifully stable all-chair bicyclic structure results, with the phenyl group in an equatorial position in the new chair acetal ring. Acetal formation is under thermodynamic control and this product is the most stable possible acetal.

Acetal formation from sugars and acetone shows quite different selectivity. For a start, cyclic acetals of acetone prefer to be five- rather than six-membered rings. In a six-membered ring, one of the acetone's methyl groups would have to be axial, so the five-membered ring is preferred. A 5,5 or 5,6 ring fusion is more stable if it is cis, and so acetone acetals (acetonides) form preferentially from cis 1,2-diols. Glucose has no neighbouring cis hydroxyls in the pyranose form, but in the furanose form it can have two pairs. Formation of an acetal with acetone fixes glucose in the furanose form. This is all summarized in the scheme below.

The open-chain form of glucose is in equilibrium with both the pyranose and the furanose forms through reversible hemiacetal formation using the black and green OH groups, respectively. Normally, the pyranose form is preferred, but the furanose form can form a double acetal with acetone, one acetal having two cis-fused five-membered rings and the other being on the side chain. This double acetal is the product isolated from the reaction.

If we want to fix glucose in the open-chain form, we must make an ‘acetal’ of quite a different kind using a thiol (RSH) instead of an alcohol, an aldehyde, or a ketone. The thiol combines with the aldehyde group of the open-chain form to give a stable dithioacetal. The dithioacetal is evidently more stable than the alternative hemiacetals or monothioacetals that could be formed from the pyranose or furanose forms.

Glycosides in nature

Many alcohols, thiols, and amines occur in nature as glycosides, that is as O-, S-, or N-acetals at the anomeric position of glucose. The purpose of attaching these compounds to glucose is often to improve solubility or transport across membranes—to expel a toxin from the cell, for example. Sometimes glucose is attached in order to stabilize the compound so that glucose appears as nature’s protecting group, rather as a chemist might use a THP group (Chapter 23).

The most important N-glycosides are, of course, the nucleotides, which we have already described in some detail.

You saw an example in Chapter 6 (p. 129) where acetone cyanohydrin is found in the cassava plant as a glucoside.
O-Glycosides occur in immense variety with glucose and other sugars being joined to the OH groups of alcohols and phenols to form acetals. The stereochemistry of these compounds is usually described by the Greek letters \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \). If the OR bond is down, it’s an \( \alpha \)-glycoside; if up, a \( \beta \)-glycoside. An attractive example is the pigment of red roses, which is an interesting aromatic oxygen heterocycle (an anthocyanidin). Two of the phenolic OH groups are present as \( \beta \)-glycosides.

It’s often proposed that there are special benefits to health in eating broccoli and brussels sprouts because of the sulfur-containing antioxidants they contain. These compounds are unstable isothiocyanates. They are not usually present in the plant; damage—by cutting or cooking, for example—induces a glycosidase (an enzyme which hydrolyses glycosides) to releases the sulfur compound from its glucose protection. A simple example is sinigrin. The S-glycosides of the sinigrin group start to hydrolyse in the same way. The sulfur atom is the better leaving group when it leaves as an anion (though worse than oxygen when the hydrolysis occurs in acidic conditions) and the anion is additionally stabilized by conjugation.

The next step is surprising. A rearrangement occurs, rather similar to the Beckmann rearrangement, in which the alkyl group migrates from carbon to nitrogen and an isothiocyanate \( (R-N=C=S) \) is formed. Sinigrin occurs in mustard and horseradish, and it is the release of the allyl isothiocyanate that gives these their ‘hot’ taste. When mustard powder is mixed with water, the hot taste develops over some minutes as sinigrin is hydrolysed to the isothiocyanate.

The S-glycoside in broccoli and brussels sprouts that is proposed to offer protection from cancer is somewhat similar but has one more carbon atom in the chain and contains a sulfoxide group as well. Hydrolysis of the S-glycoside is followed by the same rearrangement, producing a molecule called sulforaphane. Sulforaphane protects against cancer-causing oxidants by inducing the formation of a reductive enzyme.

\( \alpha \)- and \( \beta \)-glycosides

It is easy to remember which is which, as long as you accept that people who devise nomenclature must be maliciously foolish. Just as \( E \) means trans and \( Z \) means cis (each letter has the shape of the wrong isomer), so \( \alpha \) means below and \( \beta \) means above—each word begins with the wrong letter.

The Beckmann rearrangement is described in Chapter 36, p. 958.
Vitamin C is a derivative of glucose
Nature makes some important compounds from simple sugars. Vitamin C—ascorbic acid—is one of these. It certainly looks very like a sugar as it has six carbon atoms, each having an oxygen atom as substituent as well as an oxygen heterocycle. Like glutathione, it protects cells from stray oxidants as well as being involved in primary redox pathways (we mentioned earlier its role in collagen synthesis). Its reduced and oxidized forms are shown below.

Most sugars are embedded in complex carbohydrates
The most familiar of all sugars is sucrose—the mixed acetal formed from glucose and fructose. Sucrose is of course sweet, and is easily metabolized into fats. But if three of the OH groups in sucrose are replaced by chlorine atoms, a compound 600 times as sweet is produced: less of it is needed to get the same sweet taste and the chlorines reduce the rate of metabolism so that much less fat is made. This is the compound sucralose, discovered by chemists at Tate & Lyle and now used to sweeten soft drinks.

Sucrose is a disaccharide—two simple sugars linked by an acetal. In general, saccharides have the same relationship to sugars as peptides and proteins have to amino acids. One of the most abundant compounds in nature is a saccharide: cellulose, the structural material of plants. It is a glucose polymer and is produced in simply enormous quantities (about $10^{15}$ kg per year). Each glucose molecule is joined to the next through an acetal formed by attack of the C4 hydroxyl group of one glucose molecule on the anomeric carbon atom of the next. Here is that basic arrangement.
Notice that the anomeric bonds are all equatorial. This means that the cellulose molecule is linear in general outline. It is made rigid by extra hydrogen bonds between the 3-OH groups and the ring oxygen atoms—like this.

The polymer is also coiled to increase stability still further. All this makes cellulose very difficult to hydrolyse, and humans cannot digest cellulose as we do not have the necessary enzymes. Other mammals have evolved devices such as multiple stomachs (in ruminants, such as cattle) to enable them to degrade cellulose.

**Amino sugars add versatility to saccharides**

Amino sugars are carbohydrates into which nitrogen is incorporated. These molecules allow proteins and sugars to combine and produce structures of remarkable variety and beauty. The most common amino sugars are N-acetyl glucosamine and N-acetyl galactosamine, which differ only in stereochemistry. The hard outer skeletons of insects and crustaceans contain chitin, a polymer very like cellulose but made of acetyl glucosamine instead of glucose itself. It coils up in a similar way and provides the toughness of crab shells and beetle cases.

Cell membranes must not be so impermeable as they need to allow the passage of water and complex molecules. These membranes contain *glycoproteins*—proteins with amino sugar residues attached to asparagine, serine, or threonine in the protein. The attachment is at the anomeric position so that these compounds are O- or N-glycosides of the amino sugars. The structure below shows N-acetyl galactosamine attached to an asparagine residue as an N-glycoside.

**Lipids**

Lipids (fats) are the principal components of cell membranes. Along with cholesterol, also a component of the cell membrane, they have acquired a bad name, but they are nonetheless essential to the function of membranes as selective barriers to the movement of molecules. The most common types of lipids are esters of glycerol. Glycerol is just propane-1,2,3-triol but it has interesting stereochemistry. It is not chiral as it has a plane of symmetry, but the two primary OH groups are enantiotopic. If one of them is modified—by esterification, for
example—the molecule becomes chiral. Natural glycerol 3-phosphate is such an ester and it is optically active.

A typical lipid in foodstuffs is the triester formed from glycerol and oleic acid, which is the most abundant lipid in olive oil. Oleic acid is a mono-unsaturated fatty acid—it has one Z double bond in the middle of the C18 chain. This bond gives the molecule a marked kink in the middle. The compound actually present in olive oil is the triester, also kinked.

Oil and water do not mix

The lipid has, more or less, the conformation shown in the diagram with all the polar ester groups at one end and the hydrocarbon chains bunched together in a non-polar region. Oil and water do not mix, it is said, but triglyceride lipids associate with water in a special way. A drop of oil spreads out on water in a very thin layer. It does so because the ester groups sit inside the water and the hydrocarbon side chains stick out of the water and associate with each other.

When triglycerides are boiled with alkali, the esters are hydrolysed and a mixture of carboxylate salts and glycerol is formed. This is how soap is made—hard soap is the sodium salt and soft soap the potassium salt.

When a soap is suspended in water, the carboxylate groups have a strong affinity for the water and so oily globules or micelles are formed with the hydrocarbon side chain inside. It is these globules that remove greasy dirt from you or your clothes.
Mechanisms in biological chemistry

Nature uses the same chemistry as we do in the laboratory, and to do that chemistry she needs reagents. Chemists are free to use temperatures typically ranging 100 °C either side of 20 °C, any solvents they choose, inert or reactive atmospheres, and so on. Not so nature: all nature’s reagents must work at ambient temperature in the presence of water and in the presence of a reactive gas, oxygen. In this section we will survey some of nature’s solutions to these challenges.

Nature’s NaBH₄ is a nucleotide: NADH or NADPH

You met nucleotides, and their role in the structure of nucleic acids, earlier in this chapter. Nature also uses nucleotides as reagents. Here is the structure of AMP, just to remind you of a structure you met before, side by side with a pyridine-containing nucleotide.

AMP—an adenine nucleotide

\[
\text{AMP} = \begin{array}{c}
\text{adenine} \\
\text{phosphate} \\
\text{ribose}
\end{array}
\]

A nicotinamide nucleotide

\[
\text{nicotinamide} \\
\text{nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, or NAD (or NAD\textsuperscript{+}—note the positively charged pyridinium). Notice that the link is not at all the same as in the nucleic acids. The latter are joined by one phosphate that links the 3’ and 5’ positions. Here we have a pyrophosphate link between the two 5’ positions.}
\]

These two nucleotides can combine together as a pyrophosphate to give a dinucleotide called nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, or NAD (or NAD\textsuperscript{+})—note the positively charged pyridinium. Notice that the link is not at all the same as in the nucleic acids. The latter are joined by one phosphate that links the 3’ and 5’ positions. Here we have a pyrophosphate link between the two 5’ positions.

Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide

\[
\text{NAD\textsuperscript{+}} \\
\text{Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide}
\]

the reactive part of NAD\textsuperscript{+} and of NADP

NADP has a phosphate group at the 2’ position. This group does not alter the mechanism of action.
The positively charged pyridinium ring is the part of the molecule which does all the work and from now on we will draw only the reactive part for clarity. NAD⁺ is one of nature’s most important oxidizing agents. Some biochemical pathway reactions use NADP instead, but this differs only in having an extra phosphate group on the adenosine portion so the same part structure will do for both. NAD⁺ and NADP both work by accepting a hydrogen atom and a pair of electrons from another compound. The reduced compounds are called NADH and NADPH.

The reduction of NAD⁺ (and NADP) is reversible, and NADH is itself a reducing agent. We will first look at one of its reactions: a typical reduction of a ketone. The ketone is pyruvic acid and the reduction product is lactic acid—both important metabolites. The reaction is catalysed by an alcohol dehydrogenase.

This is a reaction that would also work in the laboratory with NaBH₄ as the reducing agent, but there is a big difference. The product from the NaBH₄ reaction must be racemic—the starting material, reagent, and solvent are all achiral.

But the product from the enzymatic reaction is optically active. The two faces of pyruvic acid’s carbonyl group are enantiotopic and, by controlling the addition so that it occurs from one face only, the enzyme-catalysed reaction gives a single enantiomer of lactic acid.

**Reductive amination in nature**

One of the best methods for making amines in the laboratory is reductive amination, in which an imine (formed from a carbonyl compound and an amine) is reduced to a saturated amine. Common reducing agents include NaCNBH₄ and hydrogen with a catalyst.
This reaction, of course, produces racemic amines. But nature transforms this simple reaction into an enantioselective and reversible one that is beautiful in its simplicity. The reagents are a pair of substituted pyridines called pyridoxamine and pyridoxal, and the enzyme is an aminotransferase.

The mechanism of the amination starts with the formation of an imine from the black amino group and the green carbonyl. Removal of the now very acidic proton between the protonated pyridine and the conjugated imino-carboxylic acid gives a dihydropyridine, which rearomatizes by protonation next to the carboxylic acid. This step is enantioselective, with the proton being delivered from the enzyme. Finally, hydrolysis of the new imine gives pyridoxal and a single enantiomer of the amino acid.

Nature breaks down glucose to produce energy, and in doing so produces smaller molecules which enter the citric acid cycle and are converted ultimately to carbon dioxide. In the other direction, the six-carbon sugar fructose can be made from two three-carbon fragments. The key reaction in both cases is the step in which the C–C bond linking the two C₃ sugars is formed or broken. The C₃ sugars are glyceraldehyde and dihydroxyacetone, both as their phosphate esters, and the reaction between them is an aldol condensation. The enol of dihydroxyacetone phosphate attacks the electrophilic aldehyde carbonyl group of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, catalysed by an enzyme named aldolase. The product is a ketohexose (i.e. a six-carbon sugar with a ketone carbonyl group), fructose-1,6-bisphosphate.
No enolate ion is formed in this aldol reaction. Instead a lysine residue in the aldolase enzyme forms an imine with the keto-triose.

Proton transfers allow this imine to be converted into an enamine, which acts as the nucleophile in the aldol reaction. Stereochemical control (it’s a syn aldol) comes from the way in which the two molecules are held by the enzyme as they combine. The product is the imine, which is hydrolysed to the open-chain form of fructose-1,6-bisphosphate.

Many other reactions in nature use enamines, mostly those formed from lysine. However, a more common enol equivalent is based on thiol esters derived from coenzyme A. Coenzyme A is an adenine nucleotide at one end, linked by a 5′-pyrophosphate to pantothenic acid, a compound that looks rather like a tripeptide, and then to an amino thiol. Here is the structure broken down into its parts.

By now you will realize that most of this molecule is there to allow interaction with the various enzymes that catalyse the reactions of coenzyme A. Coenzyme A is conveniently abbreviated in structures to CoASH, where the SH is the vital thiol functional group, and all the
reactions we will be interested in are those of esters of CoASH. These are thiol esters, as opposed to normal alcohol esters, and the difference is worth a few comments.

Thiol esters are less conjugated than ordinary esters, and ester hydrolysis occurs more rapidly with thiol esters than with ordinary esters because in the rate-determining step (nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group) there is less conjugation to destroy. The thiolate is also a better leaving group.

Another reaction that goes better with thiol esters than with ordinary esters is enolization. This is an equilibrium reaction and the enol has lost the conjugation present in the ester. Again, a thiol ester has less to lose so is more enolized, and it is the enolization of thiolesters of coenzyme A that we are now going to discuss.

We mentioned the citric acid cycle earlier but we have not so far discussed the chemistry involved. The citric acid cycle allows metabolism to shunt carbon atoms between small molecules, and the key step is the synthesis of citric acid from oxaloacetate and acetyl CoA. The reaction is essentially an aldol reaction between the enol of an acetate ester and an electrophilic ketone, and the enzyme which catalyses the reaction is known as citrate synthase.

The mechanism shows the enol of acetyl CoA attacking the reactive ketone. In nature all these reactions are catalysed by the enzyme. In the C–C bond-forming step, one histidine residue removes the enol proton and another histidine, in its protonated form, is placed to donate a proton to the oxygen atom of the ketone. You should see now why histidine is so useful to enzymes: its imidazole ring means it can act either as an acid or as a base at neutral pH.

Even the hydrolysis of the reactive thiol ester is catalysed by the enzyme and histidine again functions as a proton donor, with the hydrolysis, like the enolization, being enhanced by the thiol ester.

The two enol equivalents that we have met so far are quite general: lysine enamines can be used for any aldehyde or ketone and CoA thiol esters for any ester. Another class of enol equivalent—the enol ester—has just one representative but it is a most important one.

**Phosphoenolpyruvate**

Pyruvic acid is an important metabolite in its own right, as we shall see shortly. It is the simplest α-keto-acid (2-oxopropanoic acid). Having the two carbonyl groups adjacent makes them more reactive: the ketone is more electrophilic and enolizes more readily, and the acid is stronger.

Nature uses the enol phosphate of pyruvic acid (phosphoenolpyruvate or PEP) as an important reagent. We might imagine making this compound by first forming the enol and then esterifying on oxygen by some phosphorylating agent such as ATP.
Now, in fact, this reaction does occur in nature as part of the glycolysis pathway, but it occurs almost entirely in reverse. PEP is used as a way to make ATP from ADP during the oxidation of energy-storing sugars. An enol is a better leaving group than an ordinary alcohol, especially if it can be protonated at carbon. The reverse reaction might look like this.

PEP is also used as an enol in the making of carbon–carbon bonds when the electrophile is a sugar molecule. But if PEP is not made by enolization of pyruvate, how is it made? The answer is by dehydration. The phosphate is already in place when the dehydration occurs, catalysed by the enzyme enolase.

You saw in Chapter 17 how simple OH groups can be lost in dehydration reactions. Either the OH group was protonated by strong acid (this is not an option in living things) or an enol or enolate pushed the OH group out in an E1cB-like mechanism. This must be the case here as the better leaving group (phosphate) is ignored and the worse leaving group (OH) expelled.

The shikimic acid pathway

The shikimic acid pathway is responsible for the biosynthesis of a large number of aromatic compounds, particularly in plants. Most important for many mammals is the fact that plants manufacture the aromatic amino acids Phe (phenylalanine), Tyr (tyrosine), and Trp (tryptophan). These are 'essential' amino acids for humans—we have to have them in our diet as we cannot make them ourselves.

So how do plants make aromatic rings? A clue to the chemistry involved comes from the structure of caffeyl quinic acid, a compound that forms about 13% of the soluble solids from coffee beans. A substantial proportion of instant coffee is caffeyl quinic acid.
This ester has two six-membered rings—one aromatic and one saturated. You might imagine making an aromatic ring by the dehydration (losing three molecules of water) of a cyclohexane triol and the saturated ring in caffeyl quinic acid looks a good candidate. It is now known that both rings (shown in black) come from the same intermediate, shikimic acid.

This key intermediate has given its name to nature’s general route to aromatic compounds and many other related six-membered ring compounds: the shikimic acid pathway. This pathway contains some of the most interesting reactions (from a chemist’s point of view) in biology. It starts with an aldol reaction between phosphoenol pyruvate as the nucleophilic enol component and the C₄ sugar erythrose 4-phosphate as the electrophilic aldehyde.

Hydrolysis of the phosphate releases the aldol product, a C₇ α-keto-acid with one new stereogenic centre, which is in equilibrium with a hemiacetal, just like a sugar. This intermediate has the right number of carbon atoms for shikimic acid and the next stage is a cyclization. If we redraw the uncyclized C₇ α-keto-acid in the right shape for cyclization we can see what is needed. The green arrow shows which bond needs to be formed. This bond could be formed by another aldol reaction, and there is an obvious route to the required enol by elimination of phosphate. However, this would require the removal of a proton (green in the diagram) that is not at all acidic.

The problem can be avoided if the hydroxyl group at C₅ is first oxidized to a ketone (using NAD⁺ as the oxidant). Then the green proton is much more acidic, and the elimination becomes an E1cB reaction, similar to the one in the synthesis of PEP. True, the ketone must be reduced back to the alcohol afterwards but nature can deal with that easily. There are obviously several more steps to get to shikimic acid but all the C–C bonds are in place, the most significant of them being formed by aldol reactions.
You can find more on the shikimic acid pathway in the online chapter 'Mechanisms in biological chemistry'.

Natural products

Organic chemists mean something particular by the phrase ‘natural products’. Of course, all the compounds we have so far discussed are natural and their chemistry is common to most living things. But living things also make chemicals by the processes of secondary metabolism that are found in few, if any, other organisms. The flavouring principles of herbs and fruit, the antibiotics from moulds and the toxic alkaloids in plants are all examples. These compounds are what we mean by ‘natural products’, especially if they are useful to humans.

Natural products often seem to have little value to the organism itself, and are made by the processes of secondary metabolism. They are classified by the way they are made into terpenes and steroids, alkaloids, and polyketides.

Solanaceae alkaloids

The Solanaceae family includes not only deadly nightshade (Atropa belladonna—hence atropine) plants but also potatoes and tomatoes. Parts of these plants also contain toxic alkaloids, for example you should not eat green potatoes because they contain the toxic alkaloid solanine.

Atropine is a racemic compound but the (S)-enantiomer occurs in henbane (Hyoscyamus niger) and was given a different name, hyoscyamine, before the structures were known. In fact, hyoscyamine racemizes very easily just on heating in water or on treatment with weak base. This is probably what happens in the deadly nightshade plant.

Thujone is a terpene that is thought to be the poisonous principle in absinthe—the drink that reduced many artists and writers to idiocy in Paris around 1900. Conine is an alkaloid and the poison in hemlock with which Socrates was executed. Thromboxane is a polyketide involved in blood-clot formation and is a human natural product.

Alkaloids are made by amino acid metabolism

Alkaloids were known in ancient times because they are easy to extract from plants and some of them have powerful and deadly effects. Any plant contains thousands of chemical compounds, but some plants, like the deadly nightshade, can be mashed up and extracted with aqueous acid to give a few compounds soluble in that medium, which precipitate on neutralization. These compounds were seen to be ‘like alkali’ and in 1819 Meissner, the apothecary from Halle, named them ‘alkaloids’. Lucrezia Borgia already knew all about this and put the deadly nightshade extract atropine in her eyes (to make her look beautiful: atropine dilates the pupils) and in the drinks of her political adversaries to avoid any trouble in the future. Now, we would simply say that they are basic because they are amines. Below is a selection with the basic amino groups marked in black. Natural products are often named by a combination of the name of the organism from which they are isolated and a chemical part name. These compounds are all amines so all their names end in ‘-ine’. They appear very diverse in structure but all are made in nature from amino acids.
Pyrrolidine alkaloids are made from the amino acid ornithine

Pyrrolidine is the simple five-membered cyclic amine and pyrrolidine alkaloids such as nicotine contain this ring. All are made in nature from ornithine. Ornithine is an amino acid not usually found in proteins (it’s one carbon atom shorter than lysine) but most organisms use it, often in the excretion of toxic substances. If birds are fed benzoic acid (PhCO₂H) they excrete dibenzoyl ornithine. When dead animals decay, the decarboxylation of ornithine leads to putrescine, the smell of rotten meat.

Biosynthetic pathways are usually worked out by isotopic labelling of potential precursors and in the schemes below the isotopically labelled atom is shown with a coloured blob. Some plants—notably the coca plant—produce the simple pyrrolidine alkaloid hygrine, which we will take as an illustration. If ornithine is made with a ¹⁴C label at its α position and fed to the plant, labelled hygrine is isolated. If each amino group in ornithine is labelled in turn with ¹⁵N, the α amino group is lost but the γ amino group is retained.

Further labelling experiments along these lines showed that the CO₂H group as well as the α amino group was lost from ornithine and that the rest of the molecule makes the pyrrolidine ring. The three-carbon side chain in hygrine comes from acetate, or rather from acetyl CoA, and the N-methyl group comes from (S)-adenosyl methionine (SAM, see p. 1136).

Labelling studies such as these tell us the origin of the atoms in the natural product, and we can now work through the biosynthesis—how the molecule is put together from those precursors. The first step is a pyridoxal-catalysed decarboxylation of ornithine.

Now the terminal amino group is methylated by SAM and the secondary amine cyclizes onto the pyridoxal imine to give an aminal. Decomposition of the aminal the other way round expels pyridoxamine and releases the salt of an electrophilic imine.
The rest of the hygrine structure comes from two molecules of acetyl CoA. We saw earlier in this chapter that the thiol ester is a good electrophile and also enolizes easily. We need both reactivities now in a Claisen ester condensation of acetyl CoA. The new keto-ester is very like the acetoacetates we used in Chapter 25 to make stable enolates and the CoA thiol ester will exist mainly as its enol, stabilized by conjugation.

The cell has a good stock of acetyl CoA and its condensation product, and as soon as the iminium ion above is generated, it is attacked by the acetoacetyl CoA. All that remains to form hygrine is the hydrolysis of the CoA thiol ester and decarboxylation of the keto-acid. This is standard chemistry, but you should ensure that you can draw the mechanisms for these steps.

Tropinone is made from hygrine and it is clear what is needed. The methyl ketone must enolize and it must attack another iminium ion resembling the first but on the other side of the ring. A biological oxidant such as NADP is needed.

**Robinson’s tropinone synthesis**

This complex route to tropinone was imitated as long ago as 1917 in one of the most celebrated reactions of all time, Robinson’s tropinone synthesis. Robinson argued on purely chemical grounds that the sequence of imine salts and enols, which later (as shown in 1970) turned out to be nature’s route, could be produced under ‘natural’ conditions (aqueous solution at pH 7) from a C₄ dialdehyde, MeNH₂, and acetone dicarboxylic acid. It worked and the intermediates must be very similar to those in the biosynthesis.
**Benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids are made from tyrosine**

The benzyl isoquinolines are another family of alkaloids of rather different structure. They all have a benzyl group attached to position 2 of an isoquinoline ring. Usually the alkaloids are oxygenated on the benzene ring and many are found in opium poppies (*Papaver somniferum*). For all these reasons papaverine is an ideal example.

[Diagram of structures]

Labelling shows that these alkaloids come from two molecules of tyrosine. One must lose CO₂ and the other NH₃. We can easily see how to divide the molecule in half, but the details will have to wait a moment.

[Diagram showing labelling and tyrosine]

The question of when the extra OH groups are added was also solved by labelling and it was found that dihydroxyphenyl pyruvate (DHPP) was incorporated into both halves but the dihydroxyphenylalanine (an important metabolite, and also a useful medicine, usually called dopa) was incorporated only into the isoquinoline half.

[Diagram showing DHPP and dihydroxyphenylalanine]

The amino acid and the keto-acid are related by a pyridoxal-mediated transaminase and the hydroxylation must occur right at the start.

[Diagram showing transamination and hydroxylation]

Pyridoxal-mediated decarboxylation of dopa gives dopamine and this reacts with the keto-acid to form an iminium ion perfectly placed for an intramolecular electrophilic aromatic substitution by the electron-rich dihydroxyphenyl ring.
This closes the isoquinoline ring in a Mannich-like process with the phenol replacing the enol in the pyrrolidine alkaloid biosynthesis.

The cyclization product is still an amino acid and it can be decarboxylated by pyridoxal. Now we have something quite like papaverine but it lacks the methyl groups and the aromatic heterocyclic ring, which are introduced by methylation with SAM and oxidation.

**Synthesis of isoquinolines**

As with tropinone, it is possible to make benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids very simply under mild conditions in the laboratory, providing that we use an aldehyde as the carbonyl component. The reaction (sometimes known as the Pictet–Spengler reaction) gives a reduced heterocyclic ring, as does the biosynthesis, but chemical oxidation can be used to give the isoquinoline.

The mechanism is straightforward—the imine is formed and will be protonated at pH 6, ready for the C–C bond formation, which is both a Mannich reaction and an electrophilic aromatic substitution.
Notice that it was not necessary to protect the OH groups—the acetal on the lower ring is not for protection, and this group (methylenedioxy or dioxolane) is present in many benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids. It is formed in nature by oxidation of an MeO group ortho to an OH group on a benzene ring.

Fatty acids and other polyketides are made from acetyl CoA

In the last part of this chapter we will show how nature can take a very simple molecule—acetyl CoA—and build it up into an amazing variety of structures. There are two main pathways from acetyl CoA through malonyl CoA and mevalonic acid and each gives rise to two important series of natural products. Malonyl CoA leads to fatty acids and polyketides while mevalonic acid gives terpenes and steroids. We start with the simplest, the fatty acids. The list below shows just a few of the fatty acids that exist: all are present in a typical diet and you’ll find many referred to on the labels of processed foods.

Fatty acids have some important features which you should note:

- They have straight chains with no branching.
- They have even numbers of carbon atoms.
- They may be saturated with no double bonds in the chain or they may have one or more C=C double bonds in the chain, in which case they are usually cis (Z) alkenes. If there is more than one C=C double bond, they are not conjugated (either with the CO₂H group or with each other)—there is normally one saturated carbon atom between them.

Palmitic acid (C₁₆ saturated) is the most common fatty acid in living things. Oleic acid (C₁₈ mono-unsaturated) is the major fatty acid in olive oil. Arachidonic acid (C₂₀ tetra-unsaturated)
is a rare fatty acid, which is the precursor of the very important biological messengers the prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes.

The prevalence of fatty acids with even numbers of carbon atoms suggests a two-carbon building block, the most obvious being acetate. If labelled acetate is fed to plants, the fatty acids emerge with labels on alternate carbons like this.

\[
\text{biosynthesis} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{biosynthesis} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O}
\]

The green blob might represent deuterium (as a CD₃ group) and the black blob ¹³C. In fact, the reactions are more complex than this suggests as CO₂ is also needed as well as CoA and it turns out that only the first two-carbon unit is put in as acetyl CoA. The remainder are added as malonyl CoA. If labelled malonyl CoA is fed, the starter unit, as it is called, is not labelled.

Malonyl CoA
Malonyl CoA is the thiol ester of CoASH and malonic acid. It is biosynthesized by acylation of acetyl CoA with carbon dioxide.

The first stage in fatty acid biosynthesis is a condensation between acetyl CoA (the starter unit) and malonyl CoA with the loss of CO₂. This reaction could be drawn like this, with CO₂ being lost as the new C–C bond is formed. When chemists use malonates, we like to make the stable enol using both carbonyl groups, condense, and only afterwards release CO₂ (Chapter 25). As you saw on p. 1158, nature does this in making acetoacetyl CoA during alkaloid biosynthesis, but here things work differently.

\[
\text{biosynthesis} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{no label} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O}
\]

The next step is reduction of the ketone group. This NADPH reaction is typically stereo- and chemoselective, although the stereochemistry is rather wasted here as the next step is a dehydration, typical of what is now an aldol product, and occurring by an enzyme-catalysed E1cB mechanism. The elimination is known to be a cis removal of H and OH, and the double bond is exclusively trans (E). Finally in this cycle, the double bond is reduced using another molecule of NADPH to give the saturated side chain.

\[
\text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{SR} \quad \text{SR} \\
\text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{SR} \quad \text{SR} \\
\text{SR} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{SR} \quad \text{SR}
\]

Now the whole cycle can start again using this newly made C₄ fatty acid as the starter unit and building a C₆ fatty acid and so on. Each time the cycle turns, two carbon atoms are added to the acyl end of the growing chain.

\[
\text{SR} \quad \text{O} + \text{CO}_2 + 2 \times \text{NADPH} \\
\text{SR} \quad \text{O} + \text{SR} \quad \text{O} + 2 \times \text{NADPH}
\]

What is so important about unsaturated fatty acids?
Mammals can insert a cis alkene into the chain, providing that it is no further away from the carbonyl group than C9. We cannot synthesize linoleic or linolenic acids (see chart on p. 1161) directly as they have alkenes at C12 and C15, so these acids must be present in our diet.
But why are we so keen to have them? They are needed for the synthesis of arachidonic acid, a C₂₀ tetraenoic acid that is the precursor for some very interesting and important compounds. This is the biosynthesis of arachidonic acid.

The final product of this chain of events—arachidonic acid—is one of the eicosanoids, so-called because eicosa is Greek for twenty. The leukotrienes resemble arachidonic acid most closely, the prostaglandins have a closed chain forming a five-membered ring, and the thromboxanes resemble the prostaglandins but have a broken chain. All are C₂₀ compounds with the sites of the alkenes (C₅, C₈, C₁₁, and C₁₄) marked by functionality or some other structural feature.

These compounds, made by oxidation of arachidonic acid, are all unstable and all are involved in transient events such as inflammation, blood clotting, fertilization, and immune responses. They are produced locally and decay quickly, and are implicated in autoimmune diseases like asthma and arthritis.

**Aromatic polyketides**

Other starter units such as 4-hydroxycinnamic acid, made from shikimic acid, can be used to build up aromatic compounds. The addition of three malonyl CoA units gives a linear
tetra-"ketone (hence the same of this class of natural product) that can cyclize to resveratrol, a compound in red grape skins that has been suggested as one of the compounds in red wine that protects against heart disease.

Redrawing this intermediate shows how easily it can cyclize to a six-membered ring. Enol formation allows a very favourable aldol cyclization to give a six-membered ring then dehydration and enolization to make the aromatic ring with hydrolysis of the CoA ester and decarboxylation gives resveratrol.

Terpenes are volatile constituents of plants

Terpenes were originally named after turpentine, the volatile oil from pine trees used in oil painting, whose major constituent is α-pinene. The term was rather vaguely used for all the volatile oily compounds, insoluble in water and usually with resinous smells from plants. Oils distilled from plants, which often contain perfumery or flavouring materials, are called essential oils and these too contain terpenes. Examples include camphor from the camphor tree, which is used to preserve clothes from moths, and humulene from hops, which helps to give beer its flavour.

You will notice that they are all aliphatic compounds with a scattering of double bonds and rings, few functional groups, and an abundance of methyl groups. A better definition (that is, a biosynthetically based definition) arose when it was noticed that all these compounds have 5n carbon atoms. Pinene and camphor are C10 compounds while humulene is C15. It seemed obvious that terpenes were made from a C5 precursor and the favourite candidate was isoprene (2-methylbuta-1,3-diene) as all these structures can be drawn by joining together 2-, 3-, or 4-isoprene skeletons end to end.
In fact, this is not correct. Isoprene is not an intermediate, and the discovery of the true pathway started when acetate was, rather surprisingly, found to be the original precursor for all terpenes. The key intermediate is mevalonic acid, formed from three acetate units and usually isolated as its lactone.

The first step is the Claisen ester condensation of two molecules of acetyl CoA, one acting as an enol and the other as an electrophilic acylating agent to give acetoacetyl CoA. We saw the same reaction in the biosynthesis of the pyrrolidine alkaloids earlier in this chapter.

The third molecule of acetyl CoA also functions as a nucleophilic enol and attacks the keto group of acetoacetyl CoA. This is not a Claisen ester condensation—it is an aldol reaction between the enol of a thiol ester and an electrophilic ketone.

We have drawn the product with stereochemistry even though it is not chiral. This is because one of the two enantiotopic thiol esters is hydrolysed while this intermediate is still bound to the enzyme, so a single enantiomer of the half-acid/half-thiol ester results.

The remaining thiol ester is more electrophilic than the acid and can be reduced by the nucleophilic hydride from NADPH. Just as in LiBH₄ reductions of esters (Chapter 23), the reaction does not stop at the aldehyde level, and two molecules of NADPH are used to make the alcohol. This is mevalonic acid.

Mevalonic acid is indeed the true precursor of the terpenes but it is a C₆ compound and so it must lose a carbon atom to give the C₅ precursor. The spare carbon atom becomes CO₂ by an elimination reaction. First, the primary alcohol is pyrophosphorylated with ATP; then the CO₂H group and the tertiary alcohol are lost in a concerted elimination.
So is isopentenyl pyrophosphate the C₅ intermediate at last? Well, yes and no. There are actually two closely related C₅ intermediates, each of which has a specific and appropriate role in terpene biosynthesis. Isopentenyl pyrophosphate is in equilibrium with dimethylallyl pyrophosphate by a simple allylic proton transfer.

The two C₅ intermediates now react with each other. The dimethylallyl pyrophosphate is the better electrophile because it is allylic, and allylic compounds are good at both S₅1 and S₅2 reactions (Chapter 15). Isopentenyl pyrophosphate is the better nucleophile because it can react through an unhindered primary carbon atom to produce a tertiary cation—we can draw the reaction like this:

Although this idea reveals the thinking behind the reaction, in fact it does not go quite like this. The product is one particular positional and geometrical isomer of an alkene and the cation is not an intermediate. Indeed, the reaction is also stereospecific (discovered again by proton labelling, but we will not give the rather complex details) and this too suggests a concerted process.

As soon as we start to make typical cyclic monoterpenes from geranyl pyrophosphate we run into a snag. We cannot cyclize geranyl pyrophosphate because it has a trans double bond! We could cyclize the cis compound (neryl pyrophosphate), and it used to be thought that this was formed from the trans compound as an intermediate.

It is now known that nature gets round this problem without making neryl pyrophosphate. An allylic rearrangement occurs to move the pyrophosphate group to the tertiary centre. This is an unfavourable rearrangement thermodynamically and probably occurs via the allyl cation and is catalysed by Mg(II). There is no longer any geometry about the alkene. The molecule can now rotate freely about a single bond and cyclization can occur. Even if only a small amount of the rearranged allylic pyrophosphate is present, that can rearrange and more can isomerize.
More interesting compounds come from the cyclization of the first formed cation. The remaining alkene can attack the cation to form what looks at first to be a very unstable compound but which is actually a tertiary carbocation with the pinene skeleton. There are many thousands of terpenes with multiple C₅ units all made from mevalonic acid.

The steroids are another group of compounds derived from mevalonic acid. They include sex hormones such as testosterone and progesterone, and the cholesterol needed to build cell membranes but also implicated in the damage to arteries caused by atherosclerosis.

The elucidation of the ways in which organic chemistry underpins life, along with the use of organic chemistry to construct in the laboratory the molecules used by nature, has been one of the greatest scientific success stories of recent decades. In this chapter we have revealed but a glimpse of the immense complexity of the world of biological organic chemistry; you will find an extended version of this discussion in the three chapters on the web, and a book on biochemistry will fill in more detail. The beautiful molecular structures of nature and the reactions used to make them have provided an example for organic chemists to follow—sometimes at a distance, but always in hot pursuit. The next and final chapter of this book tells a few stories of how such scientific inspiration is the key to the future of chemistry, not only for its own sake, but also for the sake of the millions of people whose lives have been improved or even saved by the ingenuity of chemists.

**Further reading**

Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Science advances through interaction between disciplines

Just as the stonemasons who worked out how to build the great gothic cathedrals of the middle ages transformed architecture, the organic chemists who build molecules on a scale $10^{10}$ times smaller have transformed our expectations of everyday life. When we are ill, we expect there to be a drug to treat us; when we need to mend something, we expect there to be a sealant, glue, or coating to solve our problem. We expect paints, plastics, and clothes of any colour. If an engineer needs a material with certain properties of strength and flexibility, she expects organic chemists to be able to make it. If a biologist needs a molecule to inhibit an enzyme selectively, he expects organic chemists to be able to make it. In the future the same will be true of plastics that conduct electricity or emit light, or drugs tailored to your own individual genetic makeup. The creative art of organic chemistry has transformed our ability to understand and manipulate the world on a molecular scale and above, and it has been able to do this because of the collaboration between those who can make molecules and those who can use them—between chemists, physicists, engineers, and materials scientists.

The most dramatic scientific developments involving organic chemistry at the beginning of the 21st century are new methods in medicine from collaborations between organic chemists and biologists. Progress is slow but secure across a whole range of diseases long thought impregnable to treatment. That media favourite, ‘the cure for cancer’, is already not just ‘a cure’ but hundreds of successful cures for the hundreds of diseases collectively called ‘cancer’. At the turn of the twenty-first century, it was the case that there was some chance of survival for all known types of childhood cancer. The drug Glivec, launched in 2001, now essentially cures 75% of patients with chronic myeloid leukemia. 5-Fluorouracil is a well-established chemotherapy drug that slows down the progression of cancer. But in conjunction with Avastin, which prevents tumours developing their own blood supply, it is much more effective against certain colon cancers. Avastin in conjunction with Taxol (launched in 1992) increases Taxol’s effectiveness against breast cancer. Avastin was launched in 2004, and is expected to be the world’s biggest selling drug by 2014.
5-Fluorouracil could hardly be simpler: it interferes with cell proliferation by modifying natural uracil to incorporate a stubbornly unreactive fluorine. Taxol is a rare metabolite of the Pacific yew tree that can be made at great expense in the laboratory, and for a while was produced by chemical modification of a common precursor that can be harvested. It is now made by fermentation using cultured yew tree cells. Avastin is at the other end of the scale of complexity: it is an antibody against a protein involved in blood vessel growth, and we have represented only its gross structure: a detailed structural diagram would be huge. The antibody was induced in mice, its protein sequence was determined and then modified using the techniques of molecular biology which grew out of organic chemistry in the 1960s and 1970s, and it is produced by expression of the modified gene in bacteria. Which of this is chemistry, which is biology, and which is medicine? There is no point deciding.

Chemistry vs viruses

We are going to spend most of this chapter discussing two medical developments, both battles pitting chemists against viruses: one is partly won, and one has fortunately not yet been fought. Like cancer, viruses are an insidious menace because they subvert the body’s own biochemical machinery to cause harm, but since the middle of the last century, with antibiotics being used to treat bacterial infections, the threat from infectious disease seemed to be in retreat. So when AIDS (acquired immune deficiency syndrome) first came into the news in the 1980s, medics struggled to explain the mysterious deaths from normally harmless diseases after the patient’s immune system had been weakened and eventually destroyed. But the cause was soon identified by biologists as a new virus, HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), and antiviral drugs, notably AZT, were used with some success. These drugs imitate natural nucleosides (AZT imitates deoxythymidine) and inhibit the virus from copying its RNA into DNA inside human cells by inhibiting the reverse transcriptase enzyme.

As is often the problem with antiviral (and anticancer) chemotherapy, the drugs also inhibit the normal function of essential human enzymes and are very toxic. But biologists discovered an alternative point of attack. An enzyme unique to the virus cuts up long proteins into small pieces essential for the formation of new HIV particles. If this enzyme could be inhibited, no new viruses would be formed and neither should the inhibitor interfere with human biochemistry.

Blocking HIV protease inhibitors means mimicking the proteins they slice up, but real peptides are usually poor drugs because humans have their own peptidases which quickly cut up ingested proteins by hydrolysis of the amide link. The solution is to make a drug which looks like the peptide but can’t be hydrolysed because the C–N bond of the peptide has been replaced by a C–C bond (green parts of the structures below).
This stops the drug being hydrolysed, but the drug also has to stop the viral protein being hydrolysed. To get it to do this, medicinal chemists used another trick. Enzymes work by binding the transition state for a reaction, and while of course the chemists couldn’t make a transition state (it is by its nature unstable) they made a molecule with a sufficient resemblance to the tetrahedral intermediate for amide hydrolysis (black parts of molecules above) that the protease is tricked into taking it into its active site, where it blocks the protease’s function.

The knowledge that only one of the two hydroxyl groups of the tetrahedral intermediate was needed was acquired from an X-ray crystal structure showing how the enzyme binds the substrate. Other structural information was also used to design the drugs: for example, HIV protease is a dimeric enzyme and experience with this class of protease suggested correctly that more or less symmetrically placed aromatic or heterocyclic rings would greatly improve binding. Two successful protease inhibitors are shown below, with the active site binding portion in brown and the heterocyclic binding portions in green.

These developments looked so promising that Merck set up a new research station at West Point, Pennsylvania, dedicated to this work. The biochemist in charge, Dr Irving Sigal, was one of the victims of the Lockerbie bombing in 1988 but his work lived on in Crixivan (indinavir). In combination with the antiviral agents AZT and 3TC (Lamivudine), shown with the nucleoside it imitates, indinavir revolutionized the treatment of HIV in the 1990s. Before the use of ‘combination therapy’, as it is known, most of those with HIV were dead within 2 years. Now no-one knows how long they will survive as the combination of the three drugs reduces the amount of virus to undetectably low levels.

The AIDS crisis led to cooperation between the pharmaceutical companies unparalleled since the development of penicillin during the Second World War. Fifteen companies set up an AIDS drug development collaboration programme, with government agencies and universities contributing as well. The battle is not yet won, of course, and the HIV protease inhibitors have now been joined by a new generation of non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, such as the DuPont–Merck compound efavirenz. These commonly join the other drugs of the types mentioned above as part of the drug regimes known as ‘highly active antiretroviral therapy’ or HAART. The mixture of drugs used to combat HIV changes as discoveries are made, but life-saving combination therapy of this sort would not be possible without the sort of collaboration between organic chemists, biochemists, virologists, X-ray crystallographers, and molecular modellers that went into discovering and making indinavir.

After indinavir was found to be effective, the job of the chemists was an exceptionally urgent task. They knew that a kilo of compound was needed to keep each patient alive and well for a year (newer HIV protease inhibitors require much smaller doses). Merck built a dedicated plant for the manufacture of Crixivan at Elkton, Virginia, in 1995. Within a year, production was running at full blast and there are millions of people alive today as a result.
The synthesis of indinavir

Indinavir was a formidable synthetic target. It was probably the most complex compound ever made in quantity by organic synthesis and the 3 g per day dose meant that huge quantities were required. The complexity largely arises from the stereochemistry. As with all chiral new drugs, it is a single enantiomer: there are five stereogenic centres, marked with coloured circles on the diagram below, and their disposition means that three separate pieces of asymmetric synthesis must be devised.

The challenge with indinavir, as with any drug, is to make it efficiently: high yields, few steps. We can start by looking at some likely disconnections, summarized in the scheme above. They are all disconnections of the sorts you met in Chapter 28, and they all correspond to reliable reactions. These disconnections split the molecule into five manageable fragments, three of which contain stereogenic centres and will have to be made as single enantiomers. One of the orange stereogenic centres would have to be made in the enolate alkylation step, so this step will need to be diastereoselective.

Let’s take the three chiral fragments in turn. First, the simplest one: the central epoxide. The reagent we need here will carry a leaving group, such as a tosylate, to allow it to alkylate the piperazine to the left, and it can easily be made from an epoxyalcohol. This gives a very good way of making this compound as a single enantiomer—a Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation of allyl alcohol.

Next, the piperazine fragment. This has two nucleophilic nitrogen atoms and they will both need protecting with different protecting groups to allow them to be revealed one at a time. It will also need to be made as a single enantiomer. In an early route to indinavir, this was done by resolution, but enantioselective hydrogenation provides a better alternative. Starting from a pyrazine derivative, a normal hydrogenation over palladium on charcoal could be stopped at the tetrahydropyrazine stage. The two nitrogens in this compound have different reactivities because one is conjugated with the amide while one is not (the curly arrows in the margin show this). The more nucleophilic nitrogen—the one not conjugated with the amide—was protected with benzyl chloroformate to give the Cbz derivative. Now the less reactive nitrogen can be protected with a Boc group, using DMAP as a base.
You met asymmetric hydrogenation using BINAP complexes of rhodium in Chapter 41 as a method for the synthesis of amino acids. The substrate and catalyst are slightly different here, but the principle is the same: the chiral ligand, BINAP, directs addition of hydrogen across one of the enantiotopic faces of the double bond with almost perfect enantioselectivity and in very high yield. A further hydrogenation step allowed selective removal of the Cbz group, preparing one of the two nitrogen atoms for alkylation.

![Chemical structure]

The remaining chiral fragment is a compound whose synthesis was discussed in Chapter 39. It can be made on a reasonably large scale (600 kg) in one reaction vessel, starting from indene. First, the double bond is epoxidized, not with m-CPBA but with the cheaper hydrogen peroxide in an acetonitrile/methanol mixture, which generates a peroxyimidic acid (the C=N analogue of a peracid) as the active oxidant. Acid-catalysed opening of the epoxide leads to a cation, which takes part in a reversible Ritter reaction with the acetonitrile solvent, leading to a single diastereoisomer of a heterocyclic intermediate, which is hydrolysed to the amino-alcohol.

![Chemical structure]

The product is, of course, racemic but, as it is an amine, resolution with an acid should be straightforward. Crystallization of its tartrate salt, for example, leads to the required single enantiomer in 99.9% ee. With such cheap starting materials, resolution is just about acceptable, even though it wastes half the material. It would be better to oxidize the indene enantioselectively, and the solution here, as you saw in Chapter 41, is to use a Jacobsen epoxidation, which gives the epoxide in 79% yield and 84% ee.

![Chemical structure]

Only one, orange, stereogenic centre remains, and its stereoselective formation turns out to be the most remarkable reaction of the whole synthesis. The centre is the one created in the planned enolate alkylation step, shown in the margin. The obvious way to make this centre is to make Y a chiral auxiliary, which would direct a diastereoselective alkylation before being removed and replaced with the amino-alcohol portion.

But the Merck chemists noticed that amino alcohol itself, certainly once protected, has a remarkable similarity to Evans’ oxazolidinone auxiliaries anyway, and it turns out that this amino alcohol will function very successfully as a chiral auxiliary, which does not need to be removed, avoiding waste and saving steps! The amino alcohol was acylated with the acyl chloride, and the amide was protected as the nitrogen analogue of an acetonide by treating with 2-methoxypropene (the methyl enol ether of acetone) and an acid catalyst. The enolate

Turn to pp. 1066–1067 for details of the mechanisms in this reaction sequence and an explanation for its cis diastereoselectivity.

---

**CHEMISTRY VS VIRUSES**

2069_Book.indb   1173 12/12/2011   8:56:26 PM
of this amide reacts highly diastereoselectively with alkylating agents, including, for example, allyl bromide.

The reason for the stereoselectivity is not altogether clear, but we would expect the bulky nitrogen substituents to favour formation of the cis enolate. With the amino-alcohol portion arranged as shown, the top face is more open to attack by electrophiles. The enolate also reacts diastereoselectively with the epoxy-tosylate prepared earlier. The epoxide, being more electrophilic than the tosylate, is opened first, giving an alkoxide, which closes again to give a new epoxide. The absolute configuration at the stereogenic centre within the epoxide was, of course, already fixed (by the earlier enantioselective Sharpless epoxidation).

Three of the five fragments have now been assembled, and only the two amine alkylations remain. The first alkylation makes use of the epoxide to introduce the required 1,2-amino-alcohol functionality. The protected enantiomerically pure piperazine reacted with the epoxide, and the product was treated with acid to deprotect both the second piperazine nitrogen and the gem-dimethyl group left over from the earlier chiral auxiliary step. The newly liberated secondary amine was alkylated with the reactive electrophile 3-chloromethyl pyridine, and the final product was crystallized as its sulfate salt.

**The synthesis of oseltamivir**

Our second example of the use of chemistry to save lives is more recent. Several times in the last century major epidemics of influenza have caused deaths, sometimes running into millions. Virologists tell us that a global influenza pandemic is a constant danger, and a number of times in recent years highly aggressive forms of the flu virus have found their way from other animals (often poultry or pigs) into the human population. Fortunately, at the time of writing, none has caused more than a few thousand deaths, the most serious being the swine flu pandemic of 2009–10, which claimed the lives of 18,000 people, many of them in Mexico.
To put this in context, the 1918 flu epidemic, which was caused by the same strain (H1N1) of virus, killed 50–100 million, 3% of the world’s population at the time.

Vaccination can prevent the spread of flu, but influenza vaccines are slow to produce and difficult to generalize because of the rate of mutation of the virus. So the first line of defence is a class of antiviral compounds known as neuraminidase inhibitors. Neuraminidase is an enzyme used by the flu virus that targets human cell-surface carbohydrates containing neuraminic acids and allows the virus to release itself from the host cell. Inhibition of this enzyme prevents the new virus particles from spreading.

The drug oseltamivir (Tamiflu), developed by the companies Gilead and Roche, is a neuraminidase inhibitor. Like the HIV proteases described above, it has enough structural similarity with the enzyme’s substrate to bind to the enzyme, but once bound it blocks the enzyme’s activity. No-one knows how much oseltamivir might be needed if ever a flu pandemic took hold, but clearly the safest course of action is to stockpile the compound in readiness for such an event. The first manufacturing route to oseltamivir made use of the natural product (–)-quinic acid as a naturally derived starting material. Quinic acid is found in coffee beans, but is not available in sufficient quantities for widespread use.

A preferable starting material, and the one that for several years now has been used as the source of the commercial drug, is (–)-shikimic acid. Shikimic acid is the plant metabolite that provides the biochemical precursor to the aromatic amino acids such as phenylalanine, tyrosine, and tryptophan. It is abundant in the spice star anise, grown in China, which can yield 3–7% of shikimic acid.

The similarity of both quinic and shikimic acid with the target drug is obvious; what is perhaps remarkable is just how many steps it takes to get from one to the other. The majority of these steps are concerned with the introduction of the two amino substituents with inversion of stereochemistry at the coloured stereogenic centres. Chiral pool syntheses often have to take long convoluted routes to correct relatively minor ‘errors’ of structure and stereochemistry. Here this is simply the price we have to pay for a starting material that has the valuable qualities of enantiomeric purity and the right hydrocarbon skeleton.

Oseltamivir is an ethyl ester, and esterification comes first, followed by selective protection of the cis diol (the cis-6,5-ring system is more stable than the alternative trans) and conversion of the remaining hydroxyl group to a methanesulfonate leaving group.

The dioxolane, which is crystalline and easily purified, is then exchanged for the acetal derived from pentan-3-one, ready for a reduction to the rather challenging hindered ether (direct alkylation with a hindered alkyl halide would struggle to avoid competing E2 elimination).
The reduction of the acetal is catalysed by a Lewis acid and goes via an oxonium ion, which collects hydride from the mild reducing agent triethylsilane. Silanes react only with cationic electrophiles. The oxonium ion could open either way, but this one is less hindered and possibly allows the titanium some favourable interaction with the mesylate substituent.

As often in the synthesis of 1,2-difunctionalized compounds, an epoxide is a key intermediate, and in this case an epoxide forms by closure of the newly revealed hydroxyl group onto the mesylate leaving group in base.

Two amino groups now need introducing with rather specific stereoselectivity, and the next key intermediate is an aziridine, the nitrogen analogue of an epoxide. Azide is not completely regioselective in opening this epoxide, but both regioisomers are formed with complete inversion of configuration.

Azides may be reduced to amines with triphenylphosphine in what is known as the Staudinger reaction. The probable mechanism involves attack of triphenylphosphine on the azide and formation of a phosphinimine via a four-membered intermediate—notice the similarity with the Wittig reaction!

The phosphinimine, in the presence of water, hydrolys to an amine—overall a molecule of nitrogen is lost and a molecule of water is ‘dismembered’ and shared between the reagents.

When the azide has an adjacent hydroxyl group, something more interesting happens: the phosphinimine intermediate in the reaction is intercepted by the alcohol, which turns itself into a leaving group. Extrusion of the stable phosphine oxide gives an aziridine, with inversion of stereochemistry as the nitrogen displaces the leaving group. Here is the result with the major azide from the oseltamivir synthesis:
In this case, it doesn’t matter which azide you start with: triphenylphosphine converts them both to the same aziridine. Like epoxides, aziridines open with nucleophiles under acid catalysis, and azide is used again to put in the second amino group by attack at the less hindered end of the aziridine. To get the right amino group acetylated, the amide is formed before the azide is reduced, this time with tributylphosphine. The drug is formulated as a stable phosphate salt by treatment with phosphoric acid.

This is not, by any stretch of the imagination, an efficient synthesis, not least because there are two uses of potentially explosive azides, and large amounts of waste are produced from the phosphine steps. However, for several years it was the best route available, and Roche operated it as a manufacturing process on a tonne scale. In the last few years, however, several modifications have been published, and among the most efficient of the alternatives was one devised in 2006 by the Nobel prize-winning chemist E. J. Corey. Corey’s route built on the fact that oseltamivir is a cyclohexene, and as you saw in Chapter 34 cyclohexenes are made efficiently by a Diels–Alder reaction.

Corey’s research group combined the two very cheap reagents butadiene and trifluoroethyl acrylate in the first step of their alternative synthesis: the cycloadduct already has the scaffold of oseltamivir. Not starting with a natural product has its advantages and disadvantages: no longer is supply limited by the world production of coffee beans or star anise, and no longer is there a need to make do with a compound of the wrong relative stereochemistry, wasting valuable resources inverting stereogenic centres in the course of the synthesis. However, as you know from Chapter 41, making an enantiomerically pure compound like oseltamivir must involve a natural compound somewhere along the line. Diels–Alder reactions are catalysed by
Lewis acids, and so by using a catalytic amount of the chiral Lewis acid (whose structure is evidently based on that of the CBS catalyst) it was possible to induce the cycloaddition to proceed enantioselectively.

The product of the Diels–Alder reaction has the ester substituent in place, and the stereochemistry at the single chiral centre has to be used to control stereochemistry at new centres in the molecule. We discussed strategies for doing this in Chapters 32 and 33, and in this case the use of a tethered nucleophile (p. 847) allowed the first amino group to be introduced with the correct stereochemistry. Conversion of the ester to an amide followed by treatment with iodine induced in the nitrogen equivalent of an iodolactonization (an iodolactamization), placing the nitrogen syn to the ester and the iodide trans.

The next key intermediate is a diene, which is reached by an overall oxidation of the iodide: protection of nitrogen and elimination of the iodide gives the only possible alkene. Radical bromination with NBS followed by treatment with base in ethanol both hydrolyses the lactam and eliminates bromide to give the diene.

Now for the second nitrogen substituent. Bromination of the less electron deficient end of the diene with N-bromoacetamide in the presence of SnBr4 leads to an intermediate bromonium ion which is opened by the acetamide by-product at the more reactive end adjacent to the alkene, giving a trans diaxial product.

Treatment with base leads to cyclization to an aziridine, and this time the ether is introduced by a copper-catalysed ring opening of the aziridine with 3-pentanol. Treatment with phosphoric acid removes the Boc protecting group and converts the product to oseltamivir phosphate.

Overall, Corey’s route uses just 12 steps, and gives a yield of 30%—about double that of the route from shikimic acid. But much work remains to be done: several of the steps require
conditions or solvents (such as carbon tetrachloride) that are unsuitable for industrial use. Advances are still being made, with even shorter routes being reported since 2006. In some ways it would be best if this vital work were never made necessary, but across the world chemists are working in similar ways to relieve suffering, and potential suffering, caused by illness and disease.

The future of organic chemistry

Not all organic chemists can be involved in such exciting projects as the launching of a life-saving antiviral drug. Some most certainly have to be: resistant bacteria are fast catching up with our current range of antibiotics, and it is teams of organic chemists, in conjunction with biologists, who will be able to erect the next line of defence against these infections. But the chemistry used in such frontline projects is often the product of work by chemists in other institutions who had no idea that it would eventually be used to make a vital drug.

Take the millions of lives saved by the synthesis of indinavir, for example. This drug would not have been possible had not the Sharpless and Jacobsen asymmetric epoxidations, the catalytic asymmetric reduction, and the stereoselective enolate alkylation, along with many of the methods tried but not used in the final synthesis, been invented and developed by organic chemists in academic and industrial research laboratories. Some of the more famous names involved, like Sharpless, Jacobsen, and Noyori, invented new methods, while others modified and optimized those methods, and still others applied the methods to new types of molecules. Yet all built on the work of other chemists.

We can delve deeper into one of the steps in the indinavir synthesis. In 1980 Giovanni Casiraghi, a rather less famous chemist from the University of Parma, published a paper in the Journal of the Chemical Society about selective reactions between phenols and formaldehyde. He and his colleagues made the modest discovery that controlled reactions to give salicylaldehydes could be achieved in toluene with SnCl4 as catalyst. The reaction is regioselective for the ortho isomer and the paper described the rather precise conditions needed to get a good yield.

The reaction was also successful for substituted salicylaldehydes. When Jacobsen came to develop his asymmetric epoxidation, he chose salens as his catalysts, partly because they could be made so easily from salicylaldehydes.

Jacobsen epoxidation turned out to be the best large-scale method for preparing the cis-aminoindanol for the synthesis of indinavir. This process is very much the cornerstone of the whole synthesis. It cannot have entered Casiraghi’s wildest dreams that his work might someday be useful in a matter of life and death. Neither did his four co-workers nor Jacobsen’s more numerous co-workers see clearly the future applications of their work. By its very nature it is impossible to predict the outcome or the applications of research. But one thing is certain: good research and exciting discoveries come from a thorough understanding of the fundamentals of organic chemistry.

When Jacobsen’s epoxidation was fully described in 1998–99, the Casiraghi method was abandoned in favour of an even older method discovered in the 1930s by Duff. The remarkable Duff reaction uses hexamethylenetetramine, the oligomer of formaldehyde and ammonia, to provide the extra carbon atom. The now otherwise unknown Duff worked at Birmingham Technical College. Later in 1972, a William E. Smith, working in the GEC chemical laboratories...
at Schenectady, New York, found how to make the Duff reaction more general and better yielding by using CF₃CO₂H as catalyst. Even so, this method gives a lower yield than the Casiraghi method but it uses less toxic reagents (in particularly it avoids stoichiometric tin) and is more suitable for large-scale work. When Duff was inventing his reaction or Smith was modifying the conditions, asymmetric synthesis was not even a gleam in anyone’s eyes. It is impossible even for the inventor to predict whether a discovery is important or not.

Where is organic chemistry going next? As we write this chapter, advances are being made in reactions which would have seemed outlandish even just ten years ago. Work published in the years since 2005 has shown, for example, that many reactions of cations can be made to form single enantiomers of products even if they take place just in the vicinity of a chiral anion. Reactions such as the one below, from 2008, promise to revolutionize, yet again, some of the ways in which chemists make chiral compounds.

Finding drugs is a difficult job, and the number of new drugs launched each year is dropping as it becomes harder and more expensive to advance beyond existing treatments and as demands for more stringent safety rightly increase. But new drugs are made because... they can be made! What about all those classes of molecules which have never been made, simply because they have never been needed? Among them may well be molecules that will have all the specific attributes we want a potential drug to exhibit. Techniques known as diversity orientated synthesis are now addressing this idea—how to make and study great families of fundamentally different but potentially revolutionary molecules simply and efficiently. It’s too early to tell, but the hope is that these techniques will provide breakthroughs in the fight against disease by finding completely new ways to attack their causes.

Nature is a superb synthetic chemist, and organic chemists have spent the last century exploring efficient ways of building molecular structures more efficiently than nature. Nature builds molecules a certain way because there is no alternative—molecules can be biosynthesized only if the enzymes to make them exist; enzymes are only made from the same 20 amino acids; amino acids are built into proteins by the same ribosome. The ribosome is the most complex and beautiful molecular structure in the known universe, but it can make only proteins. Chemists, with the periodic table, a supply of raw materials, a laboratory, and their ingenuity can make anything. Sometimes chemists use Nature’s enzymes to do a job, or even force them to evolve to do a job better. By cloning useful enzymes in bacteria and forcing them to mutate, high-speed evolution can be induced, and enzymes can be created which do a job better, faster, or at a different temperature from their original ‘wild type’ ancestors.

More often chemists use reactions nature can never use—Rh, Ru, Pd, or phosphine ligands for that matter have never been exploited by any known biological process. What molecules chemists will make next, and how they make them, may determine the well-being of huge numbers of people in the future, but we may well not know it until then.
That future is yours as you continue your studies in organic chemistry beyond the scope of this book, and if you do you will want to read about modern work in more specialized areas. Your university library should have a selection of books on related topics we have only touched on, such as orbitals and chemical reactions, NMR spectroscopy, molecular modelling physical organic chemistry, photochemistry, enzyme mechanisms, biosynthesis, organometallic chemistry, asymmetric synthesis, supramolecular chemistry, and polymer and materials chemistry. This book will equip you with enough fundamental organic chemistry to explore these topics with understanding and enjoyment, and, perhaps, to discover what you want to do for the rest of your life. All of the chemists mentioned in this chapter and throughout the book began their careers as students of chemistry at universities somewhere in the world. You have the good fortune to study chemistry at a time when more is understood about the subject than ever before, when information is easier to retrieve than ever before, and when organic chemistry is more interrelated with other disciplines than ever before.

Further reading

For an informative overview of the most important drug molecules of the 20th century, see Chemical and Engineering News, 2005, Jun 20 edition.


Check your understanding

To check that you have mastered the concepts presented in this chapter, attempt the problems that are available in the book’s Online Resource Centre at http://www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/
Figure acknowledgements

Page 4  Photo of a pair of skunks © Tom Friedel, licensed under Creative Commons: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en
Page 5  Photo of a gypsy moth © Olaf Leillinger, licensed under Creative Commons: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/deed.en
Page 6  Photo of an oil refinery © Peter Facey, licensed under Creative Commons: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en
Page 6  Photo of sugarcane © Rufino Uribe, licensed under Creative Commons: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en
Page 18 Mona Lisa, Bridgeman Art Library. Cartoon by Jeremy Dennis
Page 25 Photo of a Geodesic dome © iStock/Daniel Loiselle
Page 45 Photo of an X-ray diffractometer courtesy of Edward E Mayer
Page 47 Photo of a Mass Spectrometer courtesy of the U.S. Department of Energy’s EMSL
Page 52 Photo of NMR machine courtesy of the U.S. Department of Energy’s EMSL
Page 52 Photo of an MRI scanner courtesy of the Institute of Psychiatry, King’s College London
Page 80 DNA structure © Jonathan Crowe
Page 81 Photo of a diamond ring © Alice Mumford
Page 82 Photo of a streetlight © Alice Mumford
Page 144 Benzene diffraction image from Chemistry: a European journal by GESELLSCHAFT DEUTSCHER CHEMIKER. Reproduced with permission of WILEY - VCH VERLAG GMBH & CO. KGAA via Copyright Clearance Center
Page 150 Photo of blue jeans © Alice Mumford
Page 163 Photo of soluble aspirin © Alice Mumford
Page 305 Photo of a pair of hands © Alice Mumford
Page 305 Photo of a pair of feet © iStock/Valua Vitaly
Page 305 Photo of gloves and of socks © Alice Mumford
Page 305 Egyptian art depicting Queen Nefertari © Sandro Vannini/Corbis
Page 305 Photo of a tennis racquet © iStock/Skip Odonnell
Page 305 Photo of golf clubs © iStock/Okea
Page 315 Photo of a handshake © iStock/kokouu
Page 315 Photo of held hands © iStock/euclyn
Page 368 Photo of a deckchair © Alice Mumford
Page 369 Photo of boats © Alice Mumford
Page 458  Photo of *Callistemon citrinus* (bottle brush plant) © J J Harrison, licensed under Creative Commons: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en
Page 553  Photo of a peptide synthesiser courtesy of Activotec Ltd., Cambridge
Page 1002  Photo of snail © Alice Mumford
Page 1137  DNA structure © Jonathan Crowe
Page 1156  Photo of deadly nightshade *Atropa belladonna* © H. Zell, licensed under Creative Commons: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en
Periodic table of the elements
Other artificially-produced elements have been isolated, but are of no practical interest to organic chemists.
This page intentionally left blank
acyl chlorides. 13C NMR chemical shifts of carbonyl (continued)
from carboxylic acids 214–15, 730
in Friedel-Crafts acylations 492–3
IR for identification of 411
reaction with alcohols 198–200
reaction kinetics of 254–9
reaction with amines 202–3, 695, 701, 714
reaction with aza-enolates to acylate carbon 650–1
reaction with aziridine 793
reaction with diazomethane 1006–7
reaction with enolates 453
reaction with saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791
reaction with water 206
reduction to aldehydes 537
uses of 31
N-acyl aziridines, 793–4
acylation, at carbon 640–55
catalysed by DMAP 726
chemoselective (N vs O) 529, 546–7
Friedel-Crafts see Friedel-Crafts acylation of alcohols 198–9, 208
of aza-enolates, regioselectivity in 650
of enamines 650
of enolates 641
control with specific enol equivalents 649–52
problem with 641
of free carboxylic acids 651–2
of Grignard reagents and organolithiums 218
of indole nitrogen 779
of ketones 649, 651
of pyrrole by Vilsmeier reaction 733–4
of pyrrole nitrogen 740
of saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791, 793
acylim ion, as intermediate in Friedel-Crafts acylations 477, 493–4
acyloin reaction 983–4
intramolecular 984
with trimethylsilyl chloride (TMSCI) 983–4
AD see asymmetric dihydroxylation
Adams’ catalyst 535
addition, 1,4-, see conjugate addition
conjugate see conjugate addition
conjugate vs direct, control of 605–6
of alcohols to carbonyl compounds 136–7
of alkyl radicals to alkenes, tin method, summary 996
of alkyl radicals to alkenes, tin method 993–6
of Grignard reagents and organolithiums to carbonyl compounds 132–3
of water to carbonyl group 133–5
oxidative 184–5
radical see radical additions
addition-elimination reactions 201–2, 511–14 see also conjugate substitution
adenine 750, 1135–6
in aristemycin synthesis 1091
adenosine diphasphate see ADP
adenosine monophosphate see AMP

13C NMR chemical shifts of carbonyl (continued)
from carboxylic acids 214–15, 730
in Friedel-Crafts acylations 492–3
IR for identification of 411
reaction with alcohols 198–200
reaction kinetics of 254–9
reaction with amines 202–3, 695, 701, 714
reaction with aza-enolates to acylate carbon 650–1
reaction with aziridine 793
reaction with diazomethane 1006–7
reaction with enolates 453
reaction with saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791
reaction with water 206
reduction to aldehydes 537
uses of 31
N-acyl aziridines, 793–4
acylation, at carbon 640–55
catalysed by DMAP 726
chemoselective (N vs O) 529, 546–7
Friedel-Crafts see Friedel-Crafts acylation of alcohols 198–9, 208
of aza-enolates, regioselectivity in 650
of enamines 650
of enolates 641
control with specific enol equivalents 649–52
problem with 641
of free carboxylic acids 651–2
of Grignard reagents and organolithiums 218
of indole nitrogen 779
of ketones 649, 651
of pyrrole by Vilsmeier reaction 733–4
of pyrrole nitrogen 740
of saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791, 793
acylim ion, as intermediate in Friedel-Crafts acylations 477, 493–4
acyloin reaction 983–4
intramolecular 984
with trimethylsilyl chloride (TMSCI) 983–4
AD see asymmetric dihydroxylation
Adams’ catalyst 535
addition, 1,4-, see conjugate addition
conjugate see conjugate addition
conjugate vs direct, control of 605–6
of alcohols to carbonyl compounds 136–7
of alkyl radicals to alkenes, tin method, summary 996
of alkyl radicals to alkenes, tin method 993–6
of Grignard reagents and organolithiums to carbonyl compounds 132–3
of water to carbonyl group 133–5
oxidative 184–5
radical see radical additions
addition-elimination reactions 201–2, 511–14 see also conjugate substitution
adenine 750, 1135–6
in aristemycin synthesis 1091
adenosine diphasphate see ADP
adenosine monophosphate see AMP

13C NMR chemical shifts of carbonyl (continued)
from carboxylic acids 214–15, 730
in Friedel-Crafts acylations 492–3
IR for identification of 411
reaction with alcohols 198–200
reaction kinetics of 254–9
reaction with amines 202–3, 695, 701, 714
reaction with aza-enolates to acylate carbon 650–1
reaction with aziridine 793
reaction with diazomethane 1006–7
reaction with enolates 453
reaction with saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791
reaction with water 206
reduction to aldehydes 537
uses of 31
N-acyl aziridines, 793–4
acylation, at carbon 640–55
catalysed by DMAP 726
chemoselective (N vs O) 529, 546–7
Friedel-Crafts see Friedel-Crafts acylation of alcohols 198–9, 208
of aza-enolates, regioselectivity in 650
of enamines 650
of enolates 641
control with specific enol equivalents 649–52
problem with 641
of free carboxylic acids 651–2
of Grignard reagents and organolithiums 218
of indole nitrogen 779
of ketones 649, 651
of pyrrole by Vilsmeier reaction 733–4
of pyrrole nitrogen 740
of saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791, 793
acylim ion, as intermediate in Friedel-Crafts acylations 477, 493–4
acyloin reaction 983–4
intramolecular 984
with trimethylsilyl chloride (TMSCI) 983–4
AD see asymmetric dihydroxylation
Adams’ catalyst 535
addition, 1,4-, see conjugate addition
conjugate see conjugate addition
conjugate vs direct, control of 605–6
of alcohols to carbonyl compounds 136–7
of alkyl radicals to alkenes, tin method, summary 996
of alkyl radicals to alkenes, tin method 993–6
of Grignard reagents and organolithiums to carbonyl compounds 132–3
of water to carbonyl group 133–5
oxidative 184–5
radical see radical additions
addition-elimination reactions 201–2, 511–14 see also conjugate substitution
adenine 750, 1135–6
in aristemycin synthesis 1091
adenosine diphasphate see ADP
adenosine monophosphate see AMP
to epoxides with sulfoxonium ylids 665–7
disproportionation of, in the Cannizzaro reaction 1031–4
drawing structure of 31
enol and enolate equivalents for 591–5, 632
in nature 1151–3
enolization of 451, 454
formation of enamine by reaction with cyclic amine 791
from pinacol rearrangement of epoxides 946
γ,δ-unsaturated, synthesis by Claisen rearrangement 911–12
hydration of 243
in Julia olefination to form alkenes 686–8
in McMurry reaction to form alkenes 983
nucleophilic addition to 125–40
oxidation to carboxylic acids 546
pinacol radical reaction of 982
protection as acetals 228
reaction with alcohols, to form acetals 224–7, 247
to form hemiacetals 135–8, 197, 223–4, 247
reaction with amines, to form enamines 233–4
to form imines 229–37
reaction with organometallics 190–1
in retrosynthesis 711
reaction with water 133–5
reduction to primary alcohol 131–3, 530–1
region in 1H NMR 281–2
smell of 30–31
specific enol equivalents for, summary 595
synthesis from organometallics and DMF 219–20
unsaturated, synthesis of 545
use of 13C NMR to distinguish from acid derivatives 408–10
aldehyde enolates, problem with 590
Alder ene reaction 894–6
Alder, Kurt 878
aldol disconnection, in retrosynthetic analysis 712–13
aldol reaction 614–40
acid-catalysed 616
asymmetric 1129–32
base-catalysed 615, 618
compared with Claisen condensation 640
competing, how to avoid during alkylation 585–613
conditions for aldol addition or elimination product 616
control in 631–6
controlling geometry of enolates for 870–1
dehydration product of 616
diastereoselective, effect of enolate geometry 868–71
disconnection in heterocycle synthesis 762
Evans 1129–30
in nature 1151–6, 1164, 1165
intramolecular 636–40, 738, 759
mechanism of 615
Mukaiyama 636
of 1,3-dicarboxyl compounds (Knoevenagel reaction) 629–30
of lactone 617, 618
of silyl enol ether, mechanism 626
of unsymmetrical ketones 617
transition state for 869–70
with a lithium enolate 625–6
aldol self-condensation, unwanted in aldheyde enolate alkylation 590
aldolase enzyme 1151–3
aldose 315
aldrin 881
alga, pheromone of 915
alkaloids 745, 755
alkali metal enolates, conjugate addition 672
alkane 28
bond length of C–C in 295
bonding product of 267–95
by conjugate addition 680
by elimination 382–4
from alcohols 389
from alkyl halides 385–8
of selenoxides 686
of sulfones 684–5
by migration in carbene 1019
by reduction of alkynes 681–3
by stereospecific synthesis 681–8
by stereoselective synthesis 681–8
by stereoselective Peterson elimination 688–9
by stereospecific synthesis 688–93
by synthesis of cyclic compounds 679–93
by Wittig reaction 689–93
summary 678, 693
via cyclic compounds 678–9
by conjugate addition 680
by light 680
in rings 678–9
summary of terminology 405
alkene metathesis 1023–7 see also metathesis
alkenes 28,
[3+2] cycloaddition with nitrile oxide 903
1H NMR, coupling in 415
allylic coupling in 1H NMR 301
allyl radical bromination of 990
as dienophiles in Diels–Alder reactions 881
as electrophiles 498–514
summary table of reactions 526
as nucleophiles 118, 427–8
Baeyer–Villiger oxidation in presence of 954–5
bond length of C–C 295
bonding in and molecular orbitals of 100–1
bridgehead, from Cope rearrangement 914
bromination of 427–9
comparison with bromination of enol 461
evidence for mechanism 440–1
radical and ionic regiochemistry compared 573
stereospecificity and stereoselectivity of 836, 853
stereoselectivity of 440–1
via ionic mechanism 971
by elimination 382–4
from alcohols 389
from alkyl halides 385–8
of selenoxides 686
of sulfones 684–5
by migration in carbene 1019
by reduction of alkynes 681–3
by stereospecific synthesis 681–8
by stereoselective synthesis 681–8
by stereoselective Peterson elimination 688–9
by stereospecific synthesis 688–93
by synthesis of cyclic compounds 679–93
by Wittig reaction 689–93
summary 678, 693
via cyclic compounds 678–9
by conjugate addition 680
by light 680
in rings 678–9
summary of terminology 405
alkene metathesis 1023–7 see also metathesis
alkenes 28,
alkenes (continued)

- from McMurry reaction of ketones 982–3
- functional group interconversions of 707
- geometry see alkenes geometry
- HOMO and LUMO of in Diels-Alder 886–91
- hydration of 444–5
- regioselectivity of 444–7
- via boranes 446–7
- hydroboration of 446–7
- hydrobromination of 118–19, 433–4
- radical and ionic regiochemistry compared 571
- hydroformylation of using OXO process 1077
- hydrohalogenation of 433–5
- in Alder ene reaction 894–5
- in rings, diastereoselectivity of reactions 835–6, 842, 844–5
- IR spectrum of 70
- isomerization of, acid catalysed 434–5
- by hydrosilylation-dehydropalladation 1081–2
  - for regiocontrol 570
- isomerization of, in acid 254, 264–6
- isomers of 105
- neighbouring group participation by 935
- NMR spectra of 281
- oxidative cleavage of 443–4, 906–7
- photosomerization of 105
- preference for ring position 570
- radical addition of alkyl halides to 992–6
- radical bromination of 971, 973
- radical reaction with HBr 984–5
- rates of bromination 437–8
- reaction with carbenes to form
  - cyclopropanes 1013–18
  - with hydrogen halides 434–5
  - with hydrogen sulfide 434–5
  - with NBS and alcohol or water 441–2
  - with osmium tetroxide to form diols 442–3, 905–6
- regio- and stereoselective synthesis using
  - vinyl silanes 673–4
  - region in 1H NMR 277–81
- retrosynthetic analysis of 707
- Simmons-Smith cyclopropanation of 1017
- stability of E vs Z 679
- stereoselective electrophilic addition to 439
- stereoselective epoxidation of 866–7
- stereoselective formation 677–93 see also
  - alkenes geometry
- stereospecific electrophilic additions to
  - 440–1, 853–4
- stereospecific formation, from E2
  - elimination reactions 853
- substituted, by palladium catalysis 1096
- summary of stabilizing effects on 405
- Wacker oxidation of to form ketones 1096
- alkoxides, as base for enolate formation
  - 454–6, 595
- as leaving groups 199, 202, 204, 728
- as nucleophile in conjugate addition 503, 511
- as nucleophile in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 518

choice of for deprotonation of ester 596
alkoxy, as functional group 29
alkyl bromides 30 see also alkyl halides
- by reaction of primary alcohols with
  - PBr₃, 329
- by reaction of tertiary alcohol with
  - HBr 329
- from hydrogen bromide and alkene 343–4
- reaction with sodium cyanide to form nitrile 716
- synthesis from alcohols 348
alkyl chains, assembly of 339
alkyl chlorides 30 see also alkyl halides
- from alcohols 348
- from hydrogen chloride and alkene 434–5
- in Friedel–Crafts alkylation 492–3
- rates of solvolysis 338
- reaction with saturated nitrogen heterocycles 791
- synthesis from alcohols 348
alkyl cyanides see nitriles
alkyl diazonium salt 521
alkyl group, migration of 940–4
alkyl halides 30 see also alkyl bromides, alkyl chlorides
- α-elimination of 1008–9
- from alcohols 329–30, 336–7, 348
- from hydrogen halide and alkenes 434–5
- radical addition to alkene 992–6
- reaction with enolates 453
- S₄,1 reaction with alcohols to give ethers 338
- S₂,2 reaction with alcohols to give ethers 340–1
- substitution of halogen for hydrogen 991
- tertiary, alkylation of enolates with 595
- reaction with water 334, 336
alkyl iodides see alkyl halides
alkyl nitrile, as source of nitrogen 521
alkyl radicals, conjugate addition of 998–9, 993–4
- from borane-oxygen method 998–9
- alkyl tosylate, as alkylation agent 596
- alkylating agents 225 see also alkyl alkylation
- and electrophile choice (table) 587
- chiral auxiliary-controlled 1109–10, 1112
- diastereoselective, of trans-fused bicyclic enolates 841–2
- double, of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds 598
- intramolecular 586
- multiple, how to control 586, 589
- multiple, of amines 700–1
- of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds 595–8
- of a six-membered cyclic enamine, axial attack 830–1
- of acetoacetate dianion, regioselectivity of 601
- of aldehydes 590–5, 613
- summary 594
- via aza-enolates 593–4
- of alkenes 189, 706–7
- of amines 698, 700–1, 704
- of benzene by Friedel–Crafts reaction 477–8

of butenolides, stereochemical control in 834–5
of carboxylic acids 589–90
of chiral enolates 1110
of dienions 601
of enamines 591–3, 650
of enolates 584–613
- as disconnection in heterocycle synthesis 760, 770
- C-alkylation vs O-alkylation 590
- formed by conjugate addition 603–5
- regioselectivity of 590, 592, 595–7, 598–604, 613
- stereoselective, in indinavir synthesis 1172–4
- summary of methods (table) 612
- with α-halo carbonyl compounds 760–1
- of esters 589, 595–8, 613
- of imines 593–4
- of indole nitrogen 778
- of ketones 588–9, 591–7, 600–4, 613
- of Mannich base 621
- of nitroalkanes 586–7
- of pyrazole with dimethyl sulfate 769
- of saturated nitrogen heterocycles 793
- of sulfoxide anion 661
- of symmetrical ketones 588–9, 591–7, 613
- of unsymmetrical ketones, on less
  - substituted side 588, 592, 600–3, 613
- on more substituted side 595–7, 599–600, 602–4, 613
- S₄,1 of cyclopentanone 595
- of silyl enol ethers 595
- stereoselective, of chiral enolate 867–8
- using palladium 1088–91
- alkylbenzenes, α-conjugation in 484
- alkylcinnamates, as chiral bases 1113–14
- alkynes 28–9
- 1H NMR of 414
- addition to, in stereoselective formation of
  - alkenes 264, 681–4
- alkylation of 189, 706–7
- bonding in and molecular orbitals of 102
- bromination of, reaction mechanism 1036
- by elimination reactions of vinyl halides 398
- complex with mercury 445–6
- coupling by Sonogashira coupling reaction 1087–8
- cyloaddition, with azide 776
- with nitrile oxide 773–4, 903
- deprotonation with strong base 170–1, 176, 187
- hydration of, using gold 1099
- insertion into 1076
- IR spectra of 67–9
- metal derivatives of 187
- metathesis of 1026–7
allyl acetate, from electrocyclic reaction of allyl, meaning of 37 allicin 37 allenes, arrangement of p orbitals 146 alkynyl silanes, reduction to give vinyl silanes 683 allylic ethers, sigmatropic rearrangement of allylic coupling, in 1H NMR 295–6, 301, 814–15 allylic bromides, in S1 reactions in S2 and S2′ reactions 341, 574–9 allylic radical 573 allylic rearrangement, palladium catalysed 1097 allylic strain 866 allylic sulfoxide, by [2+3]-sigmatropic rearrangement of sulfinyl 918 almond extract, mandelic acid (synthesis of) 310 α-elimination see elimination, α α-halocarbonyl compounds, alkylation of enolate with 760–1 as reagents for 1,4-disconnection 721 in 1,2-disconnections 704 in S2 reactions 341–2 α-haloketone, Favorovski rearrangement of 950–3 α-hydroxyketone, from acylon reaction of esters 983–4 α-keto acids, biosynthesis 1153–5 α,β-unsaturated aldehydes 500 see also α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds by dehydration 632 by Reformatsky reaction 713 1H NMR spectrum 282 reactions of 502–3, 505–6, 509 α,β-unsaturated amides, retro-synthetic analysis of 714 α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds 498–502 as electrophiles 498–514 as enolate equivalents 602–5 Baylis-Hilman reaction with aldehyde 792 bromination of 499 by dehydration of aldol product 616 by EtCl elimination 399–404, 161 by elimination of selenoxides 684–5 chlorination of 503–4 conjugate addition of enolates to 605–10 conjugate addition vs direct addition 504–7 epoxidation of 514 from alkenes and selenium dioxide 919 in retro-synthetic analysis 705 molecular orbitals compared with dienes 502 polarization of alken 501–3 reactions of 498–514 with anilines 781 with organocopper reagents 509 with tetrazole 775 reduction with sodium borohydride 506 retro-synthetic analysis of 713–15 α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acid derivatives, reactions of 500, 508 α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acids, hydrogenation 1118, 1119 retro-synthetic analysis of 714 α,β-unsaturated esters, from aldol reaction 628 retro-synthetic analysis of 714–15 α,β-unsaturated ketones 500 see also α,β-unsaturated carboxyl compounds from aldol reaction 628 Nazarov cyclization of 927 reactions of 503–5, 507–12, 514 α,β-unsaturated nitriles, as electrophiles in conjugate substitution 510–13 alphaprodine 829 aluminium trichloride, as electrophile 113–14 as Lewis acid catalyst 180–1, 676 catalyst for electrophilic aromatic substitution 474, 477, 493–4 amelfolide 695 ‘amide’ anion 174 amide bond, conjugation and delocalization in 241–2 rotation of, energy profile of 256 rate constants 256 indicated by 1H NMR 274 structure and conjugation 154–6 amide linkage 31 amides 31 α,β-unsaturated, conjugate addition to 505–6 γ,δ-unsaturated, synthesis by Claisen rearrangement 912 13C NMR chemical shifts of carbonyl 408–9 1H NMR spectra of 283 as functional group by Schotten-Baumann method 203 difficulty of formation from carboxylic acids and amines 207 enolates from 456–7 formation using DCC 747–8 from amines, and acyl chlorides 202–3, 403, 695, 701, 714 and anhydrides 177, 695, 701, 714 and esters 203–4 and ketenes 403 from Beckmann rearrangement 958–9 from nitriles by Ritter reaction 353 Hofmann rearrangement to amines 1022 hydrolysis of 212–13 reaction kinetics for 260–1 IR for identification of 411 protonation of 212 reaction with Grignard reagents or organolithiums to form ketones 219 reaction with Lawesson’s reagent 772 reaction with water 206 reduction, to aldehyde 533–4 to amine 236, 701–2 with borane 532–3 with DIBAL 533 with lithium aluminium hydride 531 retro-synthetic analysis of 695, 696, 701 slow rotation about C–N bond in 241–3 see also amide bond rotation stabilization through conjugation 206 unsaturated, as Michael acceptors 610 Weinreb (N-methoxy-N-methyl amide) 219 amidines, as bases, elimination with 387 in synthesis of pyrimidine 760, 770–1 amination, Buchwald-Hartwig 1092–5
bromobenzene, by ipso substitution of aryl silanes (continued)
oxidation by Pseudomonas putida 1103
sulfonation of 490
bromobutane, from reaction of n-butanol
with PbO, 329
bromocarboxylic compounds, by bromination of enols and enolates 461–4
bromofuran (2H-furanone), butyl nitrite, as
butene, isomerization in acid 254
n-butanol, 13C NMR spectrum 62
substitution of aryl bromobenzene, by
ipso bromonium ion 428
bromolactonization, for regiocontrol 568–9
bromoform
bromocarbonyl compounds, by bromination of bromobutane, from reaction of
butadiene, barrier to rotation in 362
but-2-ene, barrier to rotation in 362
burimamide 179
buckminsterfullerene (‘buckyball’) 25, 80–1
Buchwald–Hartwig cross-coupling reaction
broperamole 775
Brønsted base 165, 180
Brønsted acid 165, 180
bromoxynil 491
butan-1-ol
butadiyne, molecular orbitals of 683
butane, barrier to rotation in 366
butanal, 1H and 13C NMR spectrum 62
butenolide, structure of 1013–18
Cahn–Ingold–Prelog (CIP) rules 308
C2 axis of symmetry 320–1
C=O see carbonyl
Cannizzaro reaction 164, 620, 1031–4
determining reaction mechanism 1031–4
carbanion, [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements
of 917–18
from amine with chloroformates 728
carbamion, [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements of 917–18
sulfur-stabilized 660
carbapenems 1023
Carbon 14
Carbon 13
Carbon 13 NMR (carbon nuclear magnetic
insertion, into C=O 1015–16
carbon, allotropes of 80–1
carbometallation 1076, 1079–82
carbon, aromatic substitution 1015
in Diels–Alder reaction 889–90
in Diels–Alder reactions 882
molecular orbitals of 146–8, 502
reaction with bromine in methanol 580–1
reactivity and stability compared with
ethylene 147–8
butadiyne, molecular orbitals of 683
Z-alkenes from 148–3
butan-1-ol see n-butanol
butane, barrier to rotation in 366
bond angles in 365
conformation 36–5
pKb of 188
n-butanol, 13C NMR spectrum 62
reaction with PbO, 329
butenal see acrolein
butene, isomerization in acid 254
butenolide (2H-furanone), butyl nitrite, as
source of nitronium ion 521
by E1cB elimination from lactone 400–1
enolate from, diastereoselectivity in 834
synthesis of, 1085
butylated hydroxytoluene see BHT
butyllithium see also alkyllithium
as nucleophile in conjugate addition 505–6
in ortholithiation 563–4
reaction with furan 737–8
reaction with thiophene 737
13C, 14C see carbon-13, carbon-14
13C NMR is indexed at carbon-13 NMR
caesium, electronegativity of 612
cesium carbonate, as base for conjugate
addition of nitroalkanes 611–12
cafeic acid 1155
caffeine 750–1, 1136–7
caffeinquinic acid 1154–5
cage see bridged bicyclic
cahn–ingold–prelog (CIP) rules 308
calcium hypochlorite, as oxidizing agent 195
calcium, electronegativity of 612
camphor 840, 1164
camphenilol, Wagner–Meerwein
rearrangement of isoborneol 943–4
camphene, from Wagner–Meerwein
rearrangement of 942
camphor 840, 1164
diastereoselective reactions of 840
oxidative cleavage of 841
camphoric acid and anhydride 841
primary camphorsultam, as chiral auxiliary 1113
canadensolide, structure of 817
Cane, David E. 1020
cannabinoids, [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements of 917–18
1H and 13C NMR spectra 335
allylic, in S1 336–7
as intermediate in electrophilic additions
433–5
in alkene isomerization 254
benzylic, in S1 337
formation by migration 940
formation using superacids 334–5
heteroatom stabilization in S1 338–9
HOMO and LUMO of 941–2
electrocyclic reactions 927–8
in S1, 1 alklylation of silyl enol ethers 595
in intermediate in S1, 334
involvement in S1 reactions (table) 339
isopropyl, 1H NMR spectrum 338
primary, instability of 335
rearrangement of 940–4
shape and structure 334
stability of 334–9, 394
stabilization, by alkyl substituents 335–6
by conjugation 336–9
by silicon 672
tet-butyllithium, 1H and 13C NMR of 940–1
tertiary, stability of 334–5
carbohydrates 29, 1105, 1142, 1146
carbometallation 1076, 1079–82
carbon, allotropes of 80–1
compared with silicon 668–74
carbon-13, abundance of 50, 269
in mass spectrometry 50
isotopic labelling with, for elucidating
biosynthetic pathways 1159, 1162
13C NMR (carbon nuclear magnetic
resonance) 54–69, 269–70, 408–9
coupling in 416–18
integration in 799
interpretation of 62–3
of compounds labelled with 13C 417
proton decoupled spectra 418
regions of spectrum 56
INDEX
INDEX

1197

carbon-14, half-life of and use as radioactive label 1038
isotopic labelling with, for elucidating biosynthetic pathways 1157
carbon acids, pK of 176–7, 237
carbon atoms, chemical synthesis of 745
carbon chains, abbreviations 23
branched 25–7
drawing 22
isomers of 26
names for 23
carbon dioxide, as solvent 480
in primary metabolism 1134–5
reaction with organometallics 190–1
reaction with phenol 481–2
supercritical, as solvent 1136
carbon rings, naming 24
carbon suboxide 878
carbon acids, pK of 154
carbon–oxygen bond strength 198, 451
carbon–carbon bond length 144
carbon-14, half-life of and use as radioactive label 1038
isotopic labelling with, for elucidating biosynthetic pathways 1157
carbon acids, pK of 176–7, 237
carbon atoms, chemical synthesis of 745
carbon chains, abbreviations 23
branched 25–7
drawing 22
isomers of 26
names for 23
carbon dioxide, as solvent 480
in primary metabolism 1134–5
reaction with organometallics 190–1
reaction with phenol 481–2
supercritical, as solvent 1136
carbon rings, naming 24
carbon suboxide 878
carbon acids, pK of 154
carbon–oxygen bond strength 198, 451
carbon–carbon bond length 144

enolization of 451
evidence for tautomerism of 451–2
hydration of, equilibrium constants for 135
acid/base catalysis of 137–8
evidence from IR 135
steric effects on 134
IR spectra to distinguish between 70, 411
lithium enolates of 587–90
lowest energy conformations of 859–60
models for stereoselective reactions of 859–62, 865
most reactive conformer of 860, 861–2
nitration of 464–5
non-enolizable 454, 622
nucleophilic addition to 125–140
pinacol reaction of 981–4
protection as acetics 228
reaction, with alcohols 135–8, 197, 223–8, 247
with amines to form enamines 233–4
with amines to form imines 229–37
with cyanide ion 125
with enolates 614–54
with phosphonium ylids to form cyclopropanes 666–7
with tosyl azide 1006–7
reactivity series towards nucleophiles 529
self-condensation of, how to avoid 585–613
substitution of 14O for 16O 223
substitution of the carbonyl oxygen atom 222–3
thioacetal formation from 662
unsaturated, migration of double bonds by enolization 459
carbonyl dimidazolide (CDI), as electrophile 742
carbonyl ene reaction 895–6
as functional group 31
acyclic, chelation-controlled attack on 862–5
acyclic, diastereoselective reactions of 858–65
addition of bisulphite 138–40
addition of organometallic reagents to 133, 182, 187, 190–4, 216
α-substituted, effect of substituent size on stereoselectivity 864–5
α,β-unsaturated see α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds
as nucleophiles 584–613, 614–655
Bouveau–Blanc reduction to alcohol 981
bromination of 461–4
by oxidative cleavage of alkenes 443–4
complete reduction to alkane 493–4
conversion to epoxides with sulfinium ylids 665–7
cyanohydrins from 125
 cyclic, effect of ring strain on reactivity 135
electrophilic but non-enolizable 622
electrophilic but non-enolizable 622
enantiomeric reduction of 1117
electrophilic, with organometallic reagents 132–3
with water (hydrate formation) 134
with sodium borohydride 130–2
 removal of via thioacetals 540
substitution of C=O 222–39
substitution reactions at 197–221
carbonyl oxide, intermediate in ozonolysis 443, 906
carbonylation, by OXO process, palladium catalysed 1084–5
transition metal catalysed 1076–7
carbopalladation, in palladium catalysed coupling 1079, 1082, 1098
carboxybenzyl see Cbz
carboxyl group 31
carboxylic acid derivatives see also individual functional groups: esters, amides, etc. 198
bromination of 461–2
identification by IR 206, 215, 411
interconversion of, summary 215
reactivity of 205–7, 215
use of 13C NMR to distinguish from aldehyde and ketone 408–10
carboxylic acids, 13C NMR chemical shifts of carbonyl 408–9
acylation of 651–2
alkylation of 589–90
as functional group 31
by amide hydrolysis 212–13
decarboxylation of malonate derivatives 596
by ester hydrolysis 209–10
by oxidation of alcohol 195
by ozonolysis of alkenes 443–4, 907
by Wolff rearrangement 1021
chain extension by Arndt–Eistert reaction 1029
conversion to acyl chlorides 214–15, 730
Curtius rearrangement to amines 1022
ene-diols from in acid solution 456
enolates from 455
from alcohols 546
from aldehydes 546
from nitrites 214, 586
from organometallics and carbon dioxide 190–1
IR spectrum of 67–8
 protection of 555–7
reaction with alcohols under acid catalysis 208
reaction with diazomethane 1003–4
reduction to alcohols 531–2
cis and trans dienophiles, Diels–Alder reactions 881–2
 cis chrysanthemic acid, 1H NMR coupling in 815
cis/trans isomerization, of butane 254
cis/trans isomers 306, 311
cis-9,10-octadecenamide 5
cis-alkenes, from alkynes 537
cis-butenedial (maleic dialdehyde), from furan 736
cis-decalin 378–9, 845
 stereoselective reactions of 845–6 substituted, by hydrogenation of Wieland–Miescher ketone 845
cis-enolate, effect on diastereoselectivity of aldol 868–71
cis-fused bicyclic rings, stereoselectivity in 842–6
cis-jasmone 2, 9, 547
cis-stilbene, epoxidation of 431
citalopram 1103
citratal, industrial synthesis 915
citrinate synthase 1153
citrus fruits, smell of 28
CLA see conjugated linoleic acid
Claisen condensation 640–55
avoiding self-condensation during alkylation 589
between ketones and esters 640
compared with aldol reaction 640
in biosynthesis 1165
in heterocycle synthesis 769
in retrosynthetic analysis 717
intramolecular 652–4
mechanism 640
symmetry in 653–4
to form 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds 766–7
Claisen rearrangement 909–12
Claisen synthesis 848–9
clavicipitic acid 1098–9
clavulanic acid, structure of 790
cleavage, of alkenes, by ozonolysis 906–7
Clemmensen reduction 494, 540, 568
‘click’ chemistry 776
clobutilol 716
clopirac, synthesis of 734, 760
cloproamide 617
condensing enzyme 1162
conditions, of reaction, choice of according to mechanism 329–32, 345
configuration 306, 361–2
absolute and relative 313
assignment of (E/Z) 308
assignment of (R/S) 308–9
determination by NMR 796–7
inversion of, in S2, S3 343–4, 351, 352, 380–1
retention of in Baeyer–Villiger oxidation 935
retention of, in neighbouring group participation 932–4, 936–7
conformation 306, 360–81
effect on coupling constants 796–9, 802
energy difference in staggered vs eclipsed 494, 495
envelope, in five-membered rings 834
half-chair (flattened chair) in cyclohexenes 829
names for (in six-membered rings) 370–1, 373
names for (open chain) 365–6
of 1,3,5-triazine 804
of acyclic acetals 804
of acyclic structures 363–6
of bridged bicyclics 839–40
of butane 365–6
of chiral alkenes 865–6
of chiral compunds 859–60
of chiral enolates 867–8
of cyclobutane 369
of cyclohexanes 374–7
of cyclopentane 370
of cyclopropane 369
of esters 804–5
e of ethane 363–4
five-membered rings 370
of fused bicyclics 841, 842
of norbornane 839–40
of pentane 804
of propane 365
of ring structures 366–79
of saturated heterocycles 796–805
of spiroketals 803
of sugars 801–2

coffee, chemical responsible for smell and taste of 659
instant, component of 1154
collagen 1141
collagenes inhibitor 1112–13
Collins’ reagent 194
collisions, between molecules 108
colour, conjugation and 141, 148–9
combination therapy, in treatment of AIDS 1171
combustion, heat of, for alkanes 367–8
for isooctane (petrol) 250
Comins’ reagent 1079
common names 38 see also trivial names
common organic acids, pK, of 172–3
concentration effects, in radical addition 994–5
condensation, aldol see also aldol
condensation 617
condensing enzyme 1162
coenzymes, definition of 44
coal, as source of organic compounds 3
collagen 1141
pollen, as source of organic compounds 3
combustion, heat of, for alkanes 367–8
for isooctane (petrol) 250
Comins’ reagent 1079
common names 38 see also trivial names
common organic acids, pK, of 172–3
concentration effects, in radical addition 994–5
condensation, aldol see also aldol
condensation 617
condensing enzyme 1162
INDEX

conformation (continued)
of sulfur stabilized anions 660
role in diastereoselective reactions 859–65
twist-boat 830
conformational analysis 360–81
conformational preference, in cyclohexene
oxides 837–8
in five-membered rings 834–5
in four-membered rings 833
in six-membered rings 826–32, 837–9
conformer 366
axial and equatorial, energy difference
374–7
in diastereoselective reactions of acyclic
chiral carboxyls 860, 861–2
conine 790, 1156
coniochaetone A and B, structure and
coniine 790, 1156
conformational analysis
continued
conformation ((1,2-addition) 504–7
effect of nucleophile 506–9
effect of reaction conditions 504–5
effect of structure 505–6
conjugate base 167
in Et18 elimination 399
conjugate reduction 603
conjugate substitution 511–14
conjugated carbonyl compounds see α,β-
unsaturated carbonyl compounds
conjugated linoleic acid 5
conjugation 141–62
and delocalization, defined 145
and heteroatom stabilization of
carbocations in S,N 338–9
effect of solvents on 256
effect on barrier to bond rotation 362
effect on IR spectra 411–12
effect on LUMO of 1,2-dicarbonyl 643–4
effect on NMR 412
effect on radical stability 977–9
effect on reactivity of carbonyl group
205–7, 500–3
effects on enol stability 457–9
in alkenes, effect on 1H NMR chemical
shifts 280–1
in allyl cations 336–7
in amides 241–2
in aromatic rings, effect on 1H NMR
278–80
in pyrrole 735
in thioesters and esters compared 1153
stabilization of carbocation by 336–9
stabilization of transition state in SN2
reaction by 341–2
conrotatory 925–6
conservation of charge, in reaction
mechanisms 118
constant, equilibrium, definition of
242–3 see also equilibrium constant
constitutional isomers 306
contraceptive, oral 187, 949
cooking, hydrolysis during 1145–6
coordinatively saturated 1074
coordinatively unsaturated 1074
Cope rearrangement 913–17
copolymerization 997
cooper, in acylation of Grignard reagents and
organolithiums 218
in Sharpless synthesis of 1,2,4-triazoles 775
copper iodide, use as co-catalyst in
Sonogashira coupling reaction
1087–8
cooper(I) salts, for regioselective nucleophilic
addition to allylic compounds 576
in reaction with diazonium salts 522–3
promotion of conjugate addition by 508–9,
603–5
transmetallation with 508–9
coprostanol 379
Corey, Elías James 1177
synthesis of oseltamivir (Tamiflu) by
1177–9
Corey–Bakshi–Shibata catalyst see CBS
catalyst 1114–15
coryne, synthesis of 793
corylone (caramel and roast meat flavour) 9
COT see cyclooctatetraene
cotton, herbicide for 767
coupling constant, α,β in EPR 976
coupling constant, J, in 1H NMR 288
and conformation 796–9, 802
cis and trans, in rings 814–17
cis and trans, alkenes 293–4, 295, 299–300
factors affecting (summary) 294–5, 300–1
typical values of (table) 300–1
coupling, in 1H NMR 285–301
heteronuclear, in NMR 415–16
1J (geminal) 298–300, 817–24
AB pattern 822–3
and ring size 819–20
between diastereotopic protons 820–4
effect of n-contribution 820
in six-membered rings 819
1J and 3J, influence on magnitude of
(1J,3J) in cyclic alkenes 820
1J (vicinal) 295, 300, 822–3
and Karplus relationship 796–8
and ring size 814–17
axial-axial 797–9, 802, 820
axial-equatorial 797–9
effect of dihedral angle on 796–8
in beta-lactams 816
in cis and trans chrysanthemical acid 815
in cyclic acetals 814
in epoxides 815
in five-membered rings 817
in four-membered rings 815
in furans 817
in penicillins 816
in six-membered rings 797–9, 802
in saturated heterocycles 798
in thienamycin 816–17
in three-membered rings 815
orbital effects in 796–8, 800–1
1J (meta, W, or allylic) in aromatic rings
and alkenes 295–6, 301
allylic, in 1H NMR 295–6, 301
in cyclic alkenes 814–15
long-range 295–6, 301
coupling reaction see cross coupling
Buchwald–Hartwig 1092–5
C–C, palladium catalysed 1079–88, 1098–9
C–N, palladium catalysed 1092–5
Heck 1069, 1079–81
of amino acids 747–8
of organometallics and halides 1082–8
palladium catalysed, summary 1088
COX-2 inhibitor, synthesis of 1129
cracking, of dimers and polymers 248–9
Cram, Donald 936
Cram’s rule, for nucleophilic additions to
carbonyls 860
Crick, Francis 1137
Cristian see indinavir
cross metathesis 1025–6
cross-condensation, of esters 643
in aldol reactions 618
cross-coupling reactions, palladium-catalysed
1082–8
reactivity of halides and triflates 1083–4
crossed aldol reactions 639
asymmetric 1131–2
involving formaldehyde 620
crossover experiments 1038–9
crotonaldehyde 616
crotyl bromide 576
 crude oil, as source of organic compounds 3, 6
cubane, 1H and NMR spectra 420
synthesis via Favorovskii rearrangement 952
α-cuparenone, synthesis via intramolecular C–H carbene insertion 1020
cuprates, in conjugate addition 509, 603–5
atom-specific 119, 131
double headed 217
fish hook, in radical reaction mechanisms 972
in reaction mechanisms 120–4
S-shaped for migration 940
summary 120
tips on drawing 267
Curran–Hammett principle 860
Curtius rearrangement 882, 1022
Cyanamid 767
cyano 31
as functional group 972
as leaving group 128
as nucleophile in conjugate addition 500, 721
as nucleophile towards carbonyl group 112
bonding and molecular orbitals of 127
reaction with formaldehyde 108
reaction with imines to form aminonitriles 236
cyanine dyestuff 755
cyano group 31 see also nitrile
as activating substituent in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 519
cyanoacetamide, 1H spectrum 65
cyanoacrylohydroxide see sodium
cyanoacrylohydroxide
cyanoethyhydroxymethane, with acrylonitrile 510
cyanoheprdin 127–9
enzymatic hydrolysis of 129
from aldehyde and cyanide 121
from carbonyl compounds 125
in synthesis 128
release of hydrogen cyanide from 129
reversibility of formation 128
cyclamate 25
cylic acetal, synthesis and stability 227–8, 247–8 see also acetals, cyclic
 cyclic AMP (cAMP) 1139
cyclic hemiacetals, stability of 223, 247 see also hemiacetals, cyclic
cyclic molecules, effect on nucleophilicity of heteroatoms 791–2, 794
reactions of, stereoelectronic effects in 801
stereoselectivity in 825–51
cyclic nucleosides 1138–9
 cyclic phosphate, in cAMP 1139
cyclic sulfite, from diol and sulfuryl chloride 1125
cyclic transition state, aldol reaction 625, 626
for lithium enolate formation 625
cyclization, Baldwin’s rules for 810–13
by alkene metathesis 1023–4
electrocyclic 922–3, 927
of radicals 999–1002
palladium catalysed 1091
cyclization, synthesis of 791
covaladditions 877–908
[1+2], of singlet carbones to alkenes 1015
[2+2], in alkene metathesis 1024
in synthesis of β-lactams 898, 900–1
ketenes in 898–900
photochemical 896–8
thermal 898–901
[3+2] 901–7 see also 1,3-dipolar
covaladditions as disconnection in heterocyclic synthesis 772
HOMO and LUMO in 901, 903
intramolecular 902, 904–5
of alkyne and nitrile oxide 773–4
of azide and alkyn 776
of azide and nitrile 774
palldium catalysed 1091–2
reverse, in decompostion of THF 795
in, ozoneolysis 906
stereochemistry of 902–5
to form five-membered rings 901–5
[4+2] 878–93 see also Diels–Alder
ketene equivalents in 899
of selenium dioxide and alkenes 919
as nucleophile towards 839–4
of alkene and alkenes 919
[4+3] 893–4
[4+4], failure of 887, 893
Diels–Alder 877–93 see also Diels–Alder reaction
dimerization of dienes 880, 887–8
entropy of activation in 1052
for trapping reactive intermediates 893–4
frontier orbital description 886
meaning of square brackets 894
of alkenes with osmium tetroxide 905–6
diels alkenes and trienes 904
palladium catalysed 1091–2
photochemical 896–8
reverse see reverse covaladdition
summary 907–8
stereochemistry of 907–8
stereoselective epoxidations of 856
stereochemical requirements for formation by S2+ 836–7
cyclohexenes and cyclohexenones, axial attack on 829–32
barrier to inversion 829
by E1 elimination 389
conformational preference in 829
reactions of 830–2, 850–1
stereoselective epoxidations of 856
cyclohexenol, reaction with HBr 433
cyclohexene oxides, conformational preference in 837–8
regioselectivity of ring opening 836–9, 873
stereochemical requirements for formation by S2+ 836–7
cyclohexenes, and cyclohexenones, axial attack on 829–32
barrier to inversion 829
by E1 elimination 389
conformational preference in 829
reactions of 830–2, 850–1
stereoselective epoxidations of 856
stereochemical requirements for formation by S2+ 836–7
cyclooctadiene, electrocyclic ring closure of 928
cyclooctatetraene, as metal ligand 1071
dianion and dication 158–9, 160
heat of hydrogenation 157–8
structure and bond length of 157, 160
cyclooctene, heat of hydrogenation 157–8
cyclopentadiene, [1,5]-sigmatropic hydrogen shifts in 919
bromination of 579–80
dimerization 248–9
HOMO and LUMO of 920–1
hydroboronation of 446
hydrochlorination of 579
in Diels–Alder reactions 880–1, 884, 1108–9
in synthesis of longifolene 650
monooxidation of 432
stable anion from 162
substituted, by fragmentation reaction 920
cyclohexa-1,3-diene, in Diels–Alder reaction 880
cyclohexadienes, isomerization of 543
cyclohexane, 1H and 13C NMR spectra 60–1, 373–4
barrier to ring-flipping 373–4
how to draw 371–4
cyclohexanes, conformation of 368–9, 370–9
coupling constants and dihedral angles in 796
effects of conformation on E2 elimination 396–7
reactions of 379–81, 826–9, 837–9
stereoisomerism in 376–8
cyclohexanol, pK of 173
cyclohexanone, 1H NMR spectrum 293
cyclohexanones, alkylation of 589
cyclohexene oxides, conformational preference in 827
equatorial vs axial attack 827–9, 832
equilibration and conformational preference of 826, 837–9
how to draw 827
cyclohexene, 1H NMR and 13C NMR spectra 277, 280
heat of hydrogenation 157–8
reaction with hydrogen bromide 433
cyclohexene oxides, conformational preference in 837–8
regioselectivity of ring opening 836–9, 873
stereochemical requirements for formation by S2+ 836–7.
cyclopentadienyl anion 162
as intermediate in E1C elimination 401
as ligand, σ or π complex 1071
cyclopentane, conformation of 370
cyclopentanone, enamine formation from 650
from Nazarov cyclization 927
pseudoequatorial vs pseudoequatorial attack of nucleophiles on 834
substituted, from intramolecular C–H carbene insertion 1019
cyclopentenes, diastereoselectivity of electrophilic addition to 835–6
cyclopentenones, diastereoselectivity in 854–6
synthesis from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds 759
cyclopane 662
[7]-pana, 1H NMR spectrum 278
cyclopropane, conformation of 369
examples of compounds containing 1016
cyclopropanes, [3,3]-sigmatropic opening of 915
as intermediate in Favorovkii rearrangement 951–2
by alkylation of conjugate addition product 607
by intramolecular alkylation 586
by Simmons-Smith reaction 1017
formation from carbenes and alkenes 1013–19
from sulfur ylid and unsaturated carbonyl compound 666–7
palladium-catalysed formation of 1091
cyclopropyl cation, electrocyclic ring opening of 928
cyclization, Nazarov 927
cypermethrin 128
cystine 555
in glutathione 1140
stereochemistry of 1103
cytidine, modified for HIV treatment 1138
cysteine 1136
1H NMR spectrum 285

D
2,4-D see dichlorophenoxyacetic acid, 2,4-D
D,D see deuterium oxide as NMR solvent 272, 284–5
DABCO (1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane), pK, of 791
in the Baylis–Hillman reaction 792
structure of 840
Dacron (polyester) 210
Dakin reactions 954
damascenon 4
daminoside 695
dapsone 140, 657
darvon 326, 1103
darzens reaction 639
dashed bonds 302
dative bond 110
dba see dibenzylidene acetone
DBU (1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene) 175
as base in E2 elimination 387
basicity of 741
in E2 elimination 391
DCC (dicyclohexylcarbodiimide), in amino acid coupling 747–8
DDQ (dichlorodicyanoquinonione) 3
in oxidation of dihydropridine 764
DEAD (diethyl azodicarboxylate) 39
in Diels–Alder reaction 884
in Mitsunobu reaction 349–50
deadly nightshade (Atropa belladonna) 705–6, 1156
Dean–Stark head 228, 245
decimalization, 1H NMR 597–8
of nucleophilic addition to chiral carbonyl 881–9
of electrophilic addition to cyclic alkenes 865–8
of aldol reactions 868–71
of alkylations of butenolides 834–5
of oxime 232
of aldol reaction 626
of alkylation of enolates 603, 604–5
of aldolization of butenolides 834–5
of formation of 791
incorporation as evidence of enolization 835–6
of diastereoisomers 825–76
importance of conformational control 859–65
in acyclic compounds 852–76
in enantiomerically pure compounds 871–80
in rings 825–51
β-lactones and cyclobutanones 833
bridged bicyclic 840
cyclohexanones 826–9, 832
cyclohexenes 829–32
cyclopentanones 834
cyclopentenes 834–6
fused bicyclic 841–2, 844–5
summary 851
of aldol reactions 868–71
of alkylation of butenolides 834–5
of alkylation of enolates 603, 604–5
of aldol reactions 881–9
of electrophilic addition to acyclic alkenes 865–8
of electrophilic addition to cyclic alkenes 835–6
of nucleophilic addition to chiral carbonyl compounds 858–65
diastereotopic, definition of 821
faces 850, 856

determination of absolute configuration 310–11
determination of mechanisms 1029–68
deuterated solvents, for NMR 272
deuteration, of phenol 472
deuterium, exchangeable, in 1H NMR 275, 284–5
incorporation as evidence of enolization 451–2
isotopic labelling with 811
for elucidating biosynthetic pathways 1162, 1166
deuterobenzene, as solvent for NMR 272
deuterocloroform (CDCl3) as solvent for NMR 55, 272
deuteromethanol, as solvent for NMR 272
dewar benzene 143
dextrorotary 310
dehydrogenation, of alkenes 616
DHPP (dihydroxyphenylpyruvate) 1159
DHQ (dihydroquinone), as chiral ligand 1123–6
DHQD (dihydroquinidine), as chiral ligand 1123–6
diamond, atomic structure 81
dianions, chemoselective reactions of 547
of acetate derivatives, regioselective alkylation of 601
diastereoisomers 311, 313, 315, 852
and enantiomers, distinction between 313–16
chirality of 312–13
different chemical properties of 376
drawing and interpretation of 855–6, 859
from aldol reaction 626
from stereoselective reactions 855–6
from stereospecific reactions 853–5
separation by chromatography 312, 323
diastereomers see diastereoisomers
diastereoselectivity 825–76
importance of conformational control 859–65
in acyclic compounds 852–76
in enantiomerically pure compounds 871–80
in rings 825–51
β-lactones and cyclobutanones 833
bridged bicyclic 840
cyclohexanones 826–9, 832
cyclohexenes 829–32
cyclopentanones 834
cyclopentenes 834–6
fused bicyclic 841–2, 844–5
summary 851
of aldol reactions 868–71
of alkylation of butenolides 834–5
of alkylation of enolates 603, 604–5
of Diels–Alder reactions 881–9
of electrophilic addition to acyclic alkenes 865–8
of electrophilic addition to cyclic alkenes 835–6
of nucleophilic addition to chiral carbonyl compounds 858–65

INDEX
1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-undecene-7
dicarbonyl compounds
1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane
diaxial interactions 374–7
diastereotopicity 820–4
dibutylamine, pKd
Dibenzoyl peroxide, as radical initiator 571, 696, 697
DIBAL (diisobutylaluminium hydride) 26, 39
Diazotization 521
Diazomethane 3, 350
Diazo transfer agent 1007
Diazonium salt 495, 521
Diels–Alder reaction 877–93 see also cycloaddition, [4+2]
and Alder ene reaction, compared 894–5
chiral auxiliary-controlled 1108–9
effect of solvent 888
enantioselective 1108–9, 1112, 1177–8
in retrosynthetic analysis 882
intramolecular 888–9
kinetic and thermodynamic control in 884–5
Lewis acid catalysis of 891
mechanism of 878–9
molecular orbital diagram of 886
of pyrones 739
of thiophene sulfone 739
preference for endo product 884–5, 887–8
regioselectivity in 889–91
reverse electron demand 887
stereochemistry of, in Diels–Alder reactions 882–9, 921
stereospecific synthesis via Suzuki coupling reaction 1086
by oxypalladation 1097
diene-phenol rearrangement 949–50
specific acid catalysis in 1054
which group migrates in 956
dienophiles 880–1
chiral 1108
HOMO and LUMO of 886–91
stereochemistry of 881–2, 884–9
diethyl adipate 245
diethyl azodicarboxylate see DEAD
diethyl carbonate, in Claisen condensations 645
in crossed ester condensation 643
diethyl ether, as nucleophile 117
from acid-catalysed reaction of ethanol 121–2
stability in the presence of organolithiums 795
use of ‘ether’ as trivial name for 37
diethyl fumarate, conjugate addition to 606
diethyl malonate see malonates
diethyl oxalate, in Claisen condensations 645
in crossed ester condensations 643
in Reissert indole synthesis 779
diethyl tartrate (DET), in asymmetric epoxidation 1120–2
diethylaluminium chloride, as Lewis acid for asymmetric Diels–Alder 1108
diethylamine, pKd of 792
diethylzinc, asymmetric addition to an aldehyde 1126–7
difluoroacetic acid, pKa of 176
difunctional compounds, 1,2-, retrosynthetic analysis of 720
dig nomenclature, in Baldwin’s rules 810
dihedral angle 364, 796
effect on coupling constants in 'H NMR 796–8
dihydrofolic acid synthase 754
dihydrofolic acid 753
dihydropterato synthase 753
dihydropyran, for protection of alcohols 469
dihydropyridines, as heart drugs 764–5
from Hantzsch synthesis 763–4
oxidation of 763, 764
dihydroxyacetone (DHA), as chiral ligand 1123–6
dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) 1159
dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) 1159
dihydroxypropionyl (DHP) 1159
from diborane diisobutylaluminium hydride see DIBAL
diisopropylamine, for synthesis of LDA 588

INDEX 1203
elimination (continued)
for enone or enal formation 616
from aldol product 616
from Mannich product 621
in mechanism of Fmoc deprotection 559
in nature 1154, 1156, 1162
leaving groups in 400
of β-halocarbonyl compounds 400–1
rate determining step and rate equation
401–2
regio and stereoselectivity 402, 569
stabilization of intermediate 401
to form E-alkenes 684
E2 382–3, 386
anti-periplanar transition state of 395–7
effects of base on regioselectivity of 398–9
effects of steric hindrance 395
evidence for reaction mechanism 396–7
examples of substrates 388
for making alkynes 398
from cyclohexanes, effects of
conformation 396–7
in diene formation 387
of alkyl halides 383, 385–7
of vinyl halides to give alkynes 398
rate equation for 383, 386
regioselectivity of 398–9
stereoelectronic effects in 801–2
stereospecificity of 395–6, 853
with basic nucleophile 382–3
‘Hofmann’s rule’ 399
Peterson 671
radical 974
reductive see reductive elimination
‘Saytsev’s rule’ 399
step in acetal formation 225
elimination reactions, comparison of E1, E2,
and E1Cβ 402
effects of concentration 386
effects of nucleophile 384–5
effects of steric hindrance 385–7
effects of temperature 385–6
entropic effects 385–6
in bicyclic structures 389–90
leaving groups in 390
stereoselective 678, 684–93
vs substitution reactions 384–6, 404–5
elimination-addition mechanism, in benzene
reactions 523–4
enals 500 see α,β-unsaturated aldehydes
enamines 233–4
[3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement of 916
1H NMR spectrum 280–1
acylation of with acyl chlorides 650
addition to carbonyl compounds 591–3
alkylating agents for 591–3, 650
as specific enol equivalents 608, 624, 632
axial attack on 830–1
formation 233, 591, 791
thermodynamic control over 592
from lysine, enolate equivalent in nature
1151–3
nucleophilicity compared to enolates 591
stability 233
autotomic forms 456–7
enantiomeric excess, measurement of 1110–12
enantiomerically enriched 1110
enantiomerically pure 308
enantiomers 303, 309, 313, 315, 852
and diastereoisomers, distinction between
313–16
difference between 5, 309
in nature 322, 1104–6
separation of 322–7
enantioselective see also asymmetric
enantioselective synthesis 1102–33
enantiotopic 821
faces, definition and examples of 856
endocyclic acids 250–3, 320–3
endo face, in bridged bicyclic compounds 840
endo nomenclature, in Baldwin’s rules 810
endo selectivity, in Diels–Alder reaction
884–5, 887–8, 1108–9
ene reaction 894–6 see also Alder ene reaction
eneediolate, from acyloin reaction of esters
983–4
ene-diols, from carboxylic acids 456
ene-diones 1088
energy, activation see activation energy
energy of, intermediate and transition states
250–3, 320–3
energy barriers 108–9
relation to rate of bond rotation 363
energy difference, between axial and
equatorial conformers 374–8
between E- and Z-alkenes 265
energy level diagram, of helicoid molecule 91
of hydrogen molecule 89
of nitrogen molecule 94
of nitric oxide (NO) 96
of nitroglyceride molecule 94
energy, minimia, local and global, defined 370
energy profile diagram 241–65
of S1 reaction 334
e-ne-yne metathesis 1026–7
ene-halogen decomposition 608, 624, 632
ene halogenate see enone enolate
ene equivalents, enanlates as, in conjugate
addition 608
for enones (and ketones) 591–5
in nature 1151–4
ene esters 642
ene ethers see also silyl enol ethers
by acetal decomposition 467–8
by methylation of enolate 467
comparing with alkenes and ethers 469
covalent constants in 1H NMR of 280–1,
295, 300
from aldehyde 467–8
from Diels–Alder cycloadditions 890
from enols and enolates 466–8
hydrolysis of 468
reaction with alcohols 469
ene form, of carbonyl compound 450
see also enols
enol, specific equivalent of 624 see also enols;
specific enol equivalents
enolate equivalents 465–6 see also specific
enolate equivalents
for aldehydes 632
for ketones 634
enolates 449–70
alkali metal, conjugate addition of 607
alkylation of 584–613, 760–1
summary of types (table) 612
regioselective 590, 592, 595–7, 598–604,
613
stereoselective 603, 604–5, 844–5,
867–8, 1110
anion stabilizing substituents to promote
conjugate addition of 610
as intermediates in E1Cβ elimination
reactions 399–404
as nucleophiles 453, 460–8
axial attack on six-membered ring 831–2
base catalysed bromination of 462–3
by base catalysed enolization 452–4
charge distribution in 453
chiral, enolization of 867–8
stereoselective enolization of 867–8,
1110
cis and trans 869
condensation with ethyl formate 771
conjugate addition of 605–13
control of regiochemistry by use of enones
601–5
cyclization of, in Favorskii rearrangement
952
equilibration of 600
for aldol reaction and acylation at carbon,
summary (table) 652
formation of, by conjugate addition 503,
603–5, 792
choice of base 454–6, 595
kinetic and thermodynamic control
599–601, 634–6, 654
geometry of, controlling 869–1
enantioselective control of 868–71,
1132
lithium see lithium enolates
molecular orbitals of 453
of aldehydes, problems with 590
of amides 453
of diethyl malonate 629
of esters 454–5, 631
of ketones, regioselectivity in formation
454, 601
of β-lactones 833
of malonic acid 629–30
preference for alkylation at C or O
466–8, 590
reaction, with acyl chlorides 453
with alkyl halides 453
with carboxyl compounds 614–54
silyl enol ethers as stable enolate
equivalents of 466–7
sodium and potassium 589
stability of, influence of substitution 599,
610
stable equivalents 465–6 see also specific
enolate equivalents
summary of types 453
synthons representing 712
enolization 450–1
acid catalysed 452, 461
as mechanism for racemization or epimerization 459–60, 826
base catalysed 452–4, 615, 618
chemoselectivity of 582
impossibility of 454, 622
migration of double bonds by 459
nitrogen analogue of imine/enamine equilibrium 234
of amino acids 460
requirements for 456
substituents preventing (table) 622
enols 449–70 see also enolates

erti, enthalpy, enoyl-ACP reductase enzyme 1162
enophiles 895
enones 500
see also
envelope conformation, of five-membered rings 825–32
of enol ethers 600
of non-conjugated and conjugated alkenes 679–81
enol-ACP reductase 1132
enoyl-ACP reductase 1162
condensing 1162
-cetoacyl-ACP reductase 1162

and equilibria, 246–7
and decomposition 249
and equilibria 246–9 as a factor in the formation of hemiacetals and acetals 247–8
in intra- and intermolecular reactions 247
entropy, ΔS, 246–7
and decomposition 249
and equilibria 246–9 as a factor in the formation of hemiacetals and acetals 247–8
in intra- and intermolecular reactions 247
entropy of activation in opening of 1052–3
epoxidation; alkenes, epoxidation of non-conjugated and conjugated alkenes 703–4

\[ \Delta G \]

\[ \Delta H \]

ΔS variation with temperature 248–9
enthalpy and 246–9
control of 208–10, 244–6
between hemiacetals and acetals 247–8
in Eschenmoser fragmentation 965
in EPR (electron paramagnetic resonance) 975–6
drawbacks of using for mechanistic determination 1034
for observation of carbenes 1006, 1010
equation, Arrhenius 257
rate 257–62
equatorial and axial attack, on six-membered rings 825–32
equatorial and axial conformers, energy difference 374–7
equatorial attack, impossibility for cyclohexenes 829–32
equatorial substituents 371, 374–8
equilibration, as means of stereochemical control 826, 829, 832
of enol ethers 607
of non-conjugated and conjugated alkenes 679–81
equilibrium 240–9, 264–6
constant 242–3
acidity (K_a) 169
relationship to equilibrium composition 243–4
variation with temperature 248–9
variation with ΔG 243–4
between acetal and carbonyl compound 226, 247
between axial and equatorial conformers 374–8
between hemiacetal and carbonyl compound 223, 247
control of 208–10, 244–6
enthalpy and 246–9
terrestrial 618
erectile dysfunction, drug for treatment of 768–70
ergosterol, photochemical [1,7]-sigmatropic shift of 922
erthronolide A 187
erthrose 4-phosphate 1155
Eschenmoser fragmentation 965
Eschenmoser rearrangement see orthoamides
Eschenmoser, Albert 965
Eschenmoser’s salt 621
Eschweiler–Clarke method 716, 778
esomprazole 11
ESR see EPR
esential oils 1164
esterification 208
using pyridine as nucleophilic catalyst 726
esters 31
13C NMR chemical shifts of carbonyl 408–9

reagents for synthesis 429–33, 513–14
ring strain in 351–2
sensitivity to acid 432
spiro 432
stereochemical requirements for formation by ring closure 836–7
vinyl, synthesis 1090
epoxidizing agents 429–33, 513–14
epoxyketone 513
in Eschenmoser fragmentation 965

EPR (electron paramagnetic resonance) 975–6
esters (continued)
  acyloin reaction of to form α-hydroxy-  
  ketones 983–4
  aldol reactions of, controlling 631–2
  alkylation of, 589, 595–8, 613
  by Arndt–Eistert carbene homologation of
  acid 1021
  by Baeyer–Villiger oxidation of a ketone
  953–8
  by Favorskii rearrangement of α-halo
  ketones 950–2
  chemoselective hydrolysis in presence of
  amide 529, 557–8
  Claisen condensation of 645
  compared with carbonates 644
  lactones 804–5
  thioesters 1153
  conformation and stereoelectronic effects
  804–5
  enol equivalents of 631–2
  in nature 1151–3
  enolates from 454–5
  formation of, stereochemical issues 351
  from alcohols and acyl chlorides 198–9
  formation of, stereochemical issues 351
  from alcohols and anhydrides 198–9
  from alcohols and epoxides 703–4
  by reaction of alcohols with sulfuric acid
  173–4
  cleavage by Lewis acids 351
  cyclic, by intramolecular oxypalladation
  1097
  increased reactivity with Lewis Acids 794
  ring-opening of 794
  from alcohol and alkyl halide 338, 340
  from phenols 173, 1004
  neighbouring group participation by 934–5
  retrosynthetic analysis of 696, 698, 699,
  704, 708, 717
  trityl 337
  ethoxide, as base 596, 642
  ethyl acetate 37
  in Claisen ester condensation 641
  ethyl acetocetate, alkylation of 596
  as specific enol equivalent 629
  in Robinson annelation 639
  synthesis of by Claisen condensation 642
  ethyl acrylate, 1H NMR spectrum 299
  ethyl benzoate, in crossed ester
  condensations 643
  ethyl chrysanthemate 1017–18
  ethyl ester, as protecting group 555
  ethyl formate, in crossed ester condensation
  643, 771
  ethyl group, 1H NMR spectrum 292
  ethyl octadecanoate 6
  ethyl stearate 6
  ethyl vinyl ether, 1H NMR spectrum 300
  ethylene glycol (ethane-1,2-diol) 228, 247
  dehydration of 457
  ethylene oxide 429, 794
  ethylene, bonding in and molecular orbitals
  of 100–1, 142
  ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid see ETDA
  ethyne, bonding in 102 see also acetylene
  ethynylolactone 187
  eukaryotes 1141
  Evans’ aldol reaction 1129–30
  Evans’ auxiliary 1108–13, 1129–30
  evolution, directed, in enzyme development
  1180
  exact mass, atomic, of common elements S
  exaltone, synthesis by ring expansion 964–5
  exchange, of acidic protons in 1H NMR
  283–5
  rate of, in NMR (equation) 374
  excited state, in atomic emission
  spectroscopy 82
  of alkene 897
  exclusion principle, of Pauli 84
  exo face, in bridged compounds, definition
  of 840
  exo nomenclature, in Baldwin’s rules 810
  exo product, from Diels–Alder reaction 884
  exo-brevicomin, synthesis by Eschenmoser
  fragmentation 965
  exo-methylene carbonyl compounds 609, 621
  exoskeleton, of insects and crustaceans 1147
  explosives 354, 744–5
  extraction, acid–base 164–5

F

19F NMR, use in analysis of enantiomeric
excess 1111–12
famesol 187
fats, hydrolysis of 211–12
saturated and unsaturated 536, 1148
structure of 31
fatty acids 17, 211–12, 1161
biosynthesis 1161–3
unsaturated 1162–3
Favorskii rearrangement 950–3, 1061–3
Feist’s acid, structure determination of 318–19
Feldene see piroxicam
Felkin–Anh model 859–62, 874
effect of electronegative atoms in 801,
861–2
felodipine, structure and synthesis 765
fenamidol 192
fenfluramine 702
fenpiprane 710
fentiazac 772
ferrate salts, in AD reaction 1123–6
ferrocene, structure 1072
FGI see functional group interconversion
filauridine 12
field strength, in 1H NMR, and effect on
spectra 288–9
fingerprint region 72
first-order kinetics 259–60, 329–31
Fischer carbones 1007
Fischer esterification 208–9
Fischer indole synthesis 775–80
[3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement in 916
recognizing substitution pattern from
773–9
Fischer projections 316
Fischer, Emil 775–6, 1084
Five-membered rings, by intramolecular
radical reactions 1000–1
by [3+2] cycloadditions 901–5
conformation of 370, 834–5
diastereoselective reactions of 835–6
rate of formation 806–7
flagstaff position 370
flattened chair see half-chair
flavour chemistry, terpenoids in 274
flavouring, synthetic 9
Fleming, Ian 913
Fleming–Tamao, oxidation 673
flexibilene, by intramolecular McMurry
reaction 983
flipping see ring flipping, spin flipping
fluranzole, structure and synthesis 744
fluorenylmethylxyloxy-carbonyl see Fmoc
fl uoride, alkyl, as functional group 30
fl uoride, as leaving group in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 515, 518
fl uorine atom, energy level diagram of 86
fl uorine, coupling to 19F in NMR 416–17
fl uoroacetic acid, p
formate esters, 1H NMR spectrum 282
fl uoric acid, structure and biological synthesis
Fmoc protecting group 559
fl upirtine, synthesis of 728
5-fl uorouracil 1169–70
fl uoride, as leaving group in nucleophilic
fl uorobenzene, 13C NMR spectrum 416
fl uoroalkane, as functional group 30
four-membered rings, and 1H NMR 816–17
foscarnet 12
formic acid 37
formate ion, as reducing agent 620
fl uorine, coupling to 19F in NMR 416–17
fl uorine atom, energy level diagram of 86
friedel–crafts 492–4
free energy, 243–4, 246–9
effect on equilibrium constant 243–4
friedel–crafts acylation, advantages over alkylation 493–4

INDEX

G
GAC see general acid catalysis
galactosamine 1147
galvinoxyl 975, 998–9
γ,δ-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, by Claisen rearrangement 911–12
garlic, taste and smell of 37
gas chromatography, use in analysis of enantiomeric excess 1111
gas constant, R 243
gasoline, combustion energy 250
gauze (synclinal) conformation 365–6
gauze effects, in cyclic acetals 804
ge"auss, as unit of coupling in EPR 976
gbc see general base catalysis
GC see gas chromatography
geminal (H) coupling see coupling
general acid catalysis, evidence for 1058–60
in acetal hydrolysis 1059
in nature 1059
of orthoester hydrolysis 1059
general base catalysis 263–4
evidence for 1057–8
in acetylation 1057–8
in nature 1059
in synthesis of alkenes, summary of 693
geminal isomers 306, 311
calculating energy difference between 265
control of 681–93
equilibration in acid 254, 264–6
of imines and oximes 231
properties of 677–8
geometry see also alken geometry
assigning E or Z 392
of alkenes, summary of terminology 405
do dienes, in Diels–Alder reactions 882–9
do dienophiles in Diels–Alder reactions 881–2
do enolates 869–871
geraniol, asymmetric hydrogenation of 1119
geranium oil 790

G
GAC see general acid catalysis
galactosamine 1147
galvinoxyl 975, 998–9
γ,δ-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, by Claisen rearrangement 911–12
garlic, taste and smell of 37
gas chromatography, use in analysis of enantiomeric excess 1111
gas constant, R 243
gasoline, combustion energy 250
gauze (synclinal) conformation 365–6
gauze effects, in cyclic acetals 804
ge"auss, as unit of coupling in EPR 976
gbc see general base catalysis
GC see gas chromatography
geminal (H) coupling see coupling
general acid catalysis, evidence for 1058–60
in acetal hydrolysis 1059
in nature 1059
of orthoester hydrolysis 1059
general base catalysis 263–4
evidence for 1057–8
in acetylation 1057–8
in nature 1059
in synthesis of alkenes, summary of 693
geminal isomers 306, 311
calculating energy difference between 265
control of 681–93
equilibration in acid 254, 264–6
of imines and oximes 231
properties of 677–8
geometry see also alken geometry
assigning E or Z 392
of alkenes, summary of terminology 405
do dienes, in Diels–Alder reactions 882–9
do dienophiles in Diels–Alder reactions 881–2
do enolates 869–871
geraniol, asymmetric hydrogenation of 1119
geranium oil 790

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50

INDEX

1209
furfural 737
furanol 9
fused bicyclic compounds, cis and trans 841–2
compared with spiro and bridged 653
conformation of 378–9, 841, 842
stereoselectivity in 841–6, 848–50
H

1H NMR see NMR, 1H
HIN1 virus 1174–5
HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy) 1171
Hajos-Parrish-Eder-Sauer-Wiechert reaction 1131
half-chair (flattened chair) conformation in cyclohexene 829
of cyclohexene 373–4
of cyclohexene oxide 837–8
halides, as nucleophiles in conjugate addition 500
haloalkanes 30 see also alkyl halides from alkenes 427–9
elimination to give alkenes 398
from 1,2 dibromoalkanes 398
halobenzenes see also chlorobenzenes, bromobenzenes, iodobenzenes from diazonium salts 522–3
nitration of 489–90
reactivity towards nucleophilic aromatic substitution 518
haloform reaction 462–3
halogen, reduction by tributyltin hydride 991–2
halogenation, of enols and enolates 461–4, 469
of silyl enol ethers 469
halogen-lithium exchange 188
halogen-metal exchange 188–9
halogens, as aromatic substituents 489–90 as electrophiles 115
compounds containing 12
homolysis by light 971
halolactonization, for regiocontrol 568–9
halomalon 12
Hammett, Louis P. 1041
Hammett reaction constant, σ 1043–4
Hammett relationship, in ester hydrolysis 1041–4
in mechanism determination 1041–8
non-linear plots 1048
Hammett substituent constant, σ 1042–3
Hammond postulate 899
Hantzsch, Arthur 763
Hantzsch pyridine synthesis 763–5, 783
haptot number η, definition 1070
hard and soft nucleophiles 357, 507, 568
and conjugate addition 506–7
and enolate alkylation 590
attack on ATP 1136
hashed bonds 302
HCl see hydrogen chloride, hydrochloric acid
heats of combustion, of alkanes 367–8
heavy water (D2O), as NMR solvent 272
Heck reaction 1069, 1079–82
Hedgeus, Louis 1098–9
Heisenberg, Uncertainty Principle of 83
helain 508
hemiacets, acid/base catalysed formation of 137–8, 223–4
by reduction of lactones 533
cyclic, anomeric effects in 801
from hydroxy aldehydes 136–7
from hydroxy ketones 137
decomposition 224
formation, by acetal hydrolysis 338–9
from alcohols and carbonyl compounds 135–8, 197, 223–4, 247
in nature 229
in sugars 229, 801, 1143
instability 198, 223–4, 247
stable cyclic 136–7, 247
hemimann 230–1
hemlock, poison from 1156
henbane (Hyoscyamus niger) 1156
Henry reaction 622–4
heptan-2-one, 1H NMR spectrum 294
mass spectrum of 48, 51
heroin 793
herpes virus, drug 708, 1138
hertz, conversion to ppm, in NMR 298
heteroatoms, definition of 32
nucleophilicity in rings 791–2, 794
protons attached to, in 1H NMR 282–5
heterocycles 723-824, 1089
aromatic,amination by Buchwald-Hartwig cross-coupling reaction 1093
benzo-fused, structure and reactions 745–8
coupling by Suzuki coupling reaction 1086
examples (table) 754–5
five-membered, synthesis of 759, 903–4
in Diels-Alder reactions 738–40
natural products containing 723
nitrogen and oxygen containing, isoxazole 751
oxazole 751
nitrogen and sulfur containing, 1,2,5-thiadiazole 752
isothiazole 751
thiazole 751
nitrogen containing, acridine 750
adenine 750
imidazole 725
indole 745
indolizine 750
isouquinoline 749
purine 750–1
pyrazole 725
pyridone 728–9
quinoline 749
tetrazole 744
triazole 725
pyrazidine 24
pyridine 24
pyrimidine 724
pyrrole 725
oxygen containing, furan 735–8
pyrrolidine 732
pyrone 732
retrosynthetic analysis of 757–88
six-membered, synthesis of 759–60
index
INDEX

structures and reactions of 723–56
sulfur containing, thiophene 735–7
synthesis, by ring modiﬁcation 787–8
synthesis by cycloaddition reactions
(summary) 787
synthesis of (summary) 785–8
aromaticity of 162
as nucleotide bases 1135–6
nomenclature used for 724, 725
saturated 789–824
conformation of 796–805
effect of stereoelectronics on
conformation 801–5
examples of natural products containing
790
from intramolecular Michael additions
812
from intramolecular nucleophilic
substitution 805–10, 812
nitrogen containing, anomeric effect on
conformation of 804
as nucleophiles 791
by ring-closing reactions 806
in drugs 793
reactions of 790–4
ring opening 793
nomenclature 793
orientation of lone pairs in 800–1
oxygen containing, 1H NMR coupling
in 801–3
anomeric effects in 801–3
in sugars 801–2
reactions of 794–5
ring opening of 794
spiroketals, anomeric effect in 803
reactions of 790–5
sulfur containing, reactions of 795
synthesis of 805–14
by ring-closing reactions 805–13
N-heterocyclic carbenes, as ligands in
metathesis catalysts 1025
representation of 1025
structure and 13C NMR of carbene in 1006,
1010
heterolysis (heterolytic cleavage), deﬁnition
of 571, 970
heteronuclear coupling, in NMR 415–16
hexachloroacetone, in synthesis of secondary
allylic chlorides 577–8
hexadecanoic acid (palmitic acid) 212
hexamethyldisiloxane 469, 670
hexamethylenetetramine 1179–80
hexanedioic acid 35
by ozonolysis of cyclohexene 444
X-ray crystal structure of 44
hexatriene, electrocyclic ring closing of 922–3
shape and NMR spectrum 145
high performance liquid chromatography
see HPLC
highest occupied molecular orbital see
HOMO
highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)
1171
high-resolution mass spectrometry (HRMS) 50
himalchene 631
hindrance, steric see steric hindrance

hirsutene 992
histamine, pKa of 178
histidine, as acid and base 555, 754, 1153
HIV (human immunodeﬁciency virus) 1170
HIV, drugs for treatment of 1066–7, 1123,
1125, 1138, 1142
HIV protease inhibitors 1142, 1170–4
HOBt see hydroxybenzotriazole
Hoffmann, Roald 892
Hofmann rearrangement 1022
Hofmann’s rule 399
HOMO, deﬁnition of 111
of allyl cation and anion 150–3
of butadiene 889–90
of carbocation 941–2
of cyclopentadiene 920–1
of nucleophile 111, 356
of pyridine 729–30
of pyrrole 733, 744
role in Diels–Alder reactions 886–91
homoallylic alcohols, epoxidation of 856
from allyl silanes and carbonyl compounds
676–7
homogeneous catalysis 1078–101
homogeneous hydrogenation 1117–19
HOMO–LUMO interaction 110–11
in [3+2] cycloadditions 901, 903
in conjugate addition 502–3
in photochemical [2+2] cycloadditions
897–8
in reactions of carbonyl group 126–7
in SN2 355–6
in thermal [2+2] cycloadditions 898–901
homolysis (homolytic cleavage), deﬁnition of
571, 970
ease of (table) 971
of hydrogen chloride 970
photochemical 971
homotopic 820
faces, example of 856
Hooke’s Law 64
hops, terpenes from 1164
Horeau effect 1111
hormones 1140
sex 1167, 379
Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons reaction 570,
628, 692
Horner–Wittig reaction see Horner–
Wadsworth–Emmons reaction
Houk, K. N. 865
Houk model, for reactive conformation of
chiral alkenes 865–7
house ﬂy, pheromone of 540–1
Hoveyda–Grubbs catalyst, for metathesis
1025, 1100
HPLC, use in determination of enantiomeric
excess 1111
HRMS see high-resolution mass spectrometry
Hückel’s rule 161–2
Hughes, Edward David 329–30
human immunodeﬁciency virus see HIV
humulene 1164
Hund’s rule 86
hybridization 99–103
change during reactions of carbonyl
group 127

1211

effect on pKa 175–6
hydrate formation (hydration) 134–5
equilibrium constants for 135
hydration, of aldehyde, energy proﬁle 243
of alkenes 444–5
of alkynes 445–6
hydrazine, by reduction of diazonium salt 777
in synthesis of pyridazine and pyrazole
759–60, 767–8
reaction with epoxide 704
hydrazone 232
formation in Fischer indole synthesis 776
in aza-enolate formation 650
hydride ion, H−, as base 130 see also sodium
hydride, potassium hydride
energy level diagram 84
lack of nucleophilicity of 586
pKa 237
hydride migration 941–2
hydride transfer 530–1
hydroalumination, of alkynes 683
hydroboration 446–7
strategies for regiocontrol 570
hydrobromination, of alkenes 118–19
radical and ionic compared 571–2
hydrocarbon chains see carbon chains
hydrocarbon framework 17
branched 25–7, 36
drawing 22
naming 34
hydrochloric acid, strength in water 166
hydrochlorination, of cyclopentadiene 579
hydroformylation of alkenes 1077
hydrogen, abundance of 1H 269
hydrogen (1H) NMR see NMR, 1H
hydrogen abstraction 972–3
hydrogen atom, energy level diagram 84
hydrogen bonding, in epoxidation of allylic
alcohols 856
in IR spectra 67–8
in stabilization of enols 458
hydrogen bromide, addition to dienes 435
pKa of 172
hydrogen chloride, addition to alkenes 434–5
dissociation of 970
ionization of 166, 970
pKa of 169, 172
SN1 reaction with alcohols 348
hydrogen cyanide, pKa of 188
hydrogen ﬂuoride, pKa of 171, 172
hydrogen iodide, addition to alkenes 434–5
pKa of 170, 172
hydrogen molecule, energy level diagram 89
hydrogen peroxide, for synthesis of peroxy
acids 430
in Baeyer–Villiger oxidation 954
in oxidation of pyridine to N-oxides 730
reaction with boranes 446–7
hydrogen sulﬁde, addition to alkenes 434–5
hydrogenation 534–9 see also catalytic
hydrogenation
asymmetric, of alkenes 1117–19
by Lindlar’s catalyst 681–2
enantioselective, in indinavir synthesis
1172
heat of, as measure of stability 157–8, 241


hydroxide, as base in E2 elimination 386
hydrolysis, of acetals 227, 247, 338–9
hydronium ion (H3O+)
hydrometallation 1076–7
hydroxylamine 229, 901
hydroxyl group
see also alcohol 29
hydroxybenzotriazole, in amino acid 1078
hydroxy ketones, synthesis from nitrile 1078
hydroxy acids, by diazotization of amino 893–4
imines, alkylation of 586
imidazole 178, 451, 725, 741, 754
acid/base properties 741
as catalyst in silyl ether formation 741
delocalization in 741
nitration of 742
PKa of 178, 741
reaction with electrophile 742–3
structure of 725
tautomerism of 451, 742
imidazolium cation, deprotonation of in carbene formation 1009–10
Imigran 777
imines, alkylation of 593–4
comparison (and interconversion) with enamines 233–4, 456–7
formation of 229–37
variation of rate with pH 263
comparison with acetal formation 233
hydrolysis of 231–2, 594, 632
in aldol reactions 632
in synthesis of β-lactams by [2+2] cycloadditions 900
PKa of 726, 793
reaction with cyanide 236
reduction of 234–6
stability of 231–2
tautomerism in 456–7
iminium ions 233
iminium salt, formation of 621
indene, asymmetric epoxidation with 1123
indole 745
acylation of nitrogen 779
by palladium catalysed cyclization 1098
electrophilic aromatic substitution 745–6
enantiomeric alkylation of 1129
Fischer synthesis 775–80
Mannich reaction of 746–7
methylolation of nitrogen 778
regioselective reactions, compared with pyrrole 745–6
Reissert synthesis 779–80
retrosynthetic analysis of 775–9
role in biochemistry and medicine 755
substitution of Mannich product 747
Vilsmeier reaction of 746
indole alkaloids 745
indolizine, structure of 750
indomethacin 744, 779
tetrazole substitute 774
inductive effect 134
on aromatic 1H NMR chemical shifts 279–80
on ester electrophilicity 644
on IR spectra 411–12
on nucleophlicity and basicity of cyclic amines 792
influenza, drug for treatment of 1174–9
infrared spectroscopy see IR spectroscopy
infrared stretching frequency see stretching frequency
Ingold, Sir Christopher 240, 308, 329–30, 358
initiation, of radical reactions 571–3
initiator, radical, AIBN as 971, 985
borane-oxygen as 998–9
dibenzoyl peroxide as 971, 985
inorganic acids, PKa of 170
inositol 318
insecticide, decamethrin 1016
pyrethrin group 664, 815
insertion, oxidative 184–5
insertion reaction, intramolecular, of α,β-dicarbonyl 1019
of carbones, summary 1005
into C–C 1013–18
into C–C 1021
into C–H 1018–20
into O–H and N–H 1023
of nitrene into C–C 1022
of oxygen, in Baeyer–Villiger 953–7
tetrazole substitute 774
reissert synthesis 779–80
retrosynthetic analysis of 775–9
role in biochemistry and medicine 755
substitution of Mannich product 747
Vilsmeier reaction of 746
indole alkaloids 745
indolizine, structure of 750
indomethacin 744, 779
tetrazole substitute 774
inductive effect 134
on aromatic 1H NMR chemical shifts 279–80
on ester electrophilicity 644
on IR spectra 411–12
on nucleophlicity and basicity of cyclic amines 792
influenza, drug for treatment of 1174–9
infrared spectroscopy see IR spectroscopy
infrared stretching frequency see stretching frequency
Ingold, Sir Christopher 240, 308, 329–30, 358
initiation, of radical reactions 571–3
initiator, radical, AIBN as 971, 985
borane-oxygen as 998–9
dibenzoyl peroxide as 971, 985
inorganic acids, PKa of 170
inositol 318
insecticide, decamethrin 1016
pyrethrin group 664, 815
insertion, oxidative 184–5
insertion reaction, intramolecular, of α,β-dicarbonyl 1019
of carbones, summary 1005
into C–C 1013–18
into C–C 1021
into C–H 1018–20
into O–H and N–H 1023
of nitrene into C–C 1022
of oxygen, in Baeyer–Villiger 953–7
integration, of 13C NMR 799
of 1H NMR 270
intermediates, cyclic, in neighbouring group participations 932
to control stereochemistry 847–50
detection by spectroscopy 419–20, 1060–3
effect of solvent on reaction 256
experimental evidence for 1061
in reaction pathways 253
trapping 893–4
variation of concentration with time 264
intermolecular and intramolecular reactions, enthalpy and entropy in 247
International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry see IUPAC
intramolecular [3+2] cycloaddition 902, 904–5
aldol reaction 636–40
alkylation 586
Claisen condensations 652–4
Diels–Alder reactions 888–9, 891
radical reactions 999–1002
rates, compared to intermolecular 938
intramolecular reactions, regiocontrol from 568–9
inverse solvent isotope effect, in specific acid catalysis 1054
inversion of configuration in S_n2 343–4, 351, 352, 380–1
iodide, aryl, synthesis from diazonium salts 522–3 see also iodoarenes
iodide, as a nucleophilic catalyst 358
as leaving group in semipinacol rearrangement 948
S_n2 reaction with ethers to form alcohols 351
iodide, alkyl, as functional group 30 see also alkyl iodides
iodolactonization, regioselectivity 568–9
iodolactamization, in synthesis of oseltamivir 545
iodine, hypervalent compounds for oxidation 522–3 see
iron, as catalyst for bromination 488, 498–9
iodobenzene, from diazonium salts 522–3 see
iron, as catalyst for bromination 488, 498–9
iodoform reaction 462–3
see
isobutanol, 13C NMR spectrum 62
isobucaine, synthesis of 546
isobutene, reaction with hydrogen bromide 847–8, 853–4
isobutyraldehyde, in crossed aldol reactions 433–4
isobutyl group 26
isobutyl propionate, flavour of 31
isocyanates, β-lactams from 898, 900–1
from Curtius or Hofmann rearrangement 1022
in [2+2] cycloadditions 898, 900–1
isoelectronic structures 102–3
isomerization of an amide bond, rate constants for 256
of alkenes, by acid catalysis 254, 264–6, 434–5
by hydropalladation–dehydropalladation sequence 1081–2
of allyl bromides 435–6
isomers, constitutional 306
geometrical, properties of 677–8
stereo- 306, 311
isopinocampheyl, structure of 947
isoctane (2,2,4-trimethylpentane) 3, 28
isonopinone, structure of 947
isomers, constitutional 306
geometrical, properties of 677–8
stereo- 306, 311
isopropyl group 26
isopropyl cation, 1H NMR spectrum 338
isopropanol, as hydrogen source 1115–17
isoprene (2-methylbuta-1,3-diene) 1164–5
isopentyl pyrophosphate 1166
isotopic labelling, 13C, detection by NMR 417
by 82Br to show rate of S_n2 345–6
detection of by mass spectrometry 49–50
radioactive, use and disadvantages of 755
examples of atoms used 1037
for elucidating biosynthetic pathways 1157,1159, 1162, 1166
in crossover experiments 1038–9
in mechanism determination 211, 1019, 1032, 1037–8
in mechanism of ester hydrolysis 211
kinetic isotope effect 1050–2
of carbonyl compounds with 18O 223
to show neighbouring group participation 937
with 13C 417, 1038–9
with 14C 623
with 18O 201–2, 211, 223
with deuterium 311, 1162, 1166
isoxazole, by [3+2] cycloaddition 903
from 1,3-dicarbonyl and hydroxylamine 772–3
from nitrile oxide and alkene 772–4
reduction of 751
retrosynthetic analysis of 772
structure and aromaticity of 751, 903
itraconazole 1094
IUPAC 34

INDEX

J

J, coupling constant, definition of 288 see also coupling constant 434–5
Jacobson, Eric 1122
Jacobson epoxidation 1122–3, 1126, 1173
Jamaican vomiting sickness, causative agent 1016
Japanese beetle pheromone 4, 1104
japonilure 4, 1104
jasmine 2, 9
jawasymycin see FR-900848 1016
Johnson–Claisen rearrangement see orthoesters
Jones oxidation; Jones’ reagent 544, 731–2
Julia, Marc 686
Julia, Sylvestre 686–8
Julia olefi nation 686–8
Julia, Sylvestre 686–8
one-step 687–8
Julia–Kociénski reaction 687–8
juvenile hormone 183, 191, 677–8, 965–6

K

K, as symbol for equilibrium constant 242–3
k, as symbol for rate constant 257
Kw, as symbol for acidity constant 169
Kaprus relationship 796–8
Katsuki, Tsutomu 1120, 1123
kcal (kilocalories), use of unit 244
Kekulé structure of benzene 143, 473
ketene, dimer of, NMR spectrum 419–20
ketene acetics, from E2 elimination 387
in conjugate addition 609
ketene equivalents, in [4+2] cycloadditions 899
ketenes, cyclobutane from 898–900
formation from Wolff rearrangement 1021
from acyl chlorides 455
from E1cB elimination of acyl chloride 403
ketenes, cyclobutanone from (continued) in [2+2] cycloadditions 898–900 IR and NMR spectra 420 orbitals of 419 keto acids 235 from Friedel–Crafts acylation 494 keto alkyne, from Eschenmoser fragmentation 965 keto form, of carbonyl compound 450 keto-enol tautomerism 450–1, 471 ketohexose 1151 keto form, of carbonyl compound 450 see also carbonyl compounds ketohexose 1151 keto acids 235 McMurry reaction to form alkenes 982–3 mechanism of lithium enolate formation from 588 nitrosation of 464–5 nucleophilic addition to 125–40 pinacol reaction of 981 prochiral, definition of 856–7 protection as acetals 228, 548 reaction with alcohols to form acetals 224–8, 247–8 with alcohols to form hemiacetals 135–8, 197, 223–4, 247 with borohydride 119, 130–1, 251, 253, 257–8, 530–1 with enolates 614–54 with organometallics 190–1 with primary amines to form imines 229–37 with secondary amines to form enamines 233–4 with sulfur ylids 744 with water 133–5 spirocyclic, diastereoselective reduction of 487 symmetrical, alkylation of 588–9, 591–7, 613 unsymmetrical, alkylation on less substituted side 588, 592, 600–3, 613 alkylation on more substituted side 595–7, 599–600, 602–4, 613 unsymmetrical, alkylation on less substituted side 588, 592, 600–3, 613 use of 13C NMR to distinguish from acid derivatives 408–10 Wieland–Miescher 845 γ,δ-unsaturated, synthesis by Claissen rearrangement 912 ketoreductase, enzyme 1132 ketorolac 738 ketone 315 ketyl radical anion, as indicator in THF distillation 981 formation and structure 980 reaction in protic vs aprotic solvents 981 ketone 973 KHMDS see potassium hexamethyldisilazide KIE see kinetic isotope effect 1050–2 kinetic product see kinetic control kinetics, of reactions 250–66 \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) as examples 329–33 Knoevenagel, Emil 629–30 Knoevenagel reaction 629–30 Knorr pyrrole synthesis 761–3 Knowles, William 1116 Kociénski, Philip 687 Kolbe–Schmidt process 481 Krapcho decarboxylation 597–8 K-selectride (potassium tri-sec-butylborohydride), to reduce enones to enolates 603 \( K_w \) (ionization constant of water) 168 L L and \( L \) meaning of 1075 labelling see isotopic labelling lactam, C–O stretching frequency 413 lactam, \( \beta \) see \( \beta \)-lactam lactate dehydrogenase 28 lactic acid 28, 209, 309, 311, 1105 \( \beta \)-lactam \( \text{NMR spectrum } 54, 56 \) \( \beta \)-lactam see \( \beta \)-lactam n-HMR of methyl ester 275 synthesis 872–3, 1107 by reduction of pyruvic acid by NADH 1150 lactol 136–7 lactones, enolization of 617, 618 fused bicyclic, by iodolactonization 848 in Claisen condensations 654 reactivity compared to esters 804–5 reduction by sodium borohydride 617 reduction by hemiacetals 533 lactonization 400–1 laetrile 31–2 laevorotatory 310 LAH see lithium aluminium hydride lamivudine (3TC) 1138, 1171 Langmuir trough experiment 1148 large rings 368, 807 rate of reaction 806–7 lauric acid 1161 Lawesson’s reagent 759 in synthesis of thioamide 772 LCAO 88–99 LDA (lithium diisopropylamide) 22, 39, 174 as base in E2 elimination 398 chemoselectivity in formation of enolates 465–6 compared with LiTMP 793 for makingaza-enolates from imines 594 for making enol ethers 642 for making lithium enolates 465–6, 1110 formation of 588 in aldol chemistry 625–6, 631, 634 regioselectivity in kinetic enolate formation 600–1 variants of 588 L-dopa see dopa Le Châtelier’s principle 249 leaving group ability, and relationship to \( pK_a \) 202–4, 792
INDEX

m- as prefix see meta-
Macmillan, David 1128
macrolide 219
magnesium enolates 649
magnesium(II), as catalyst in nature 166–7
magnetic field, induced 54
role in $^1$H NMR 270, 277
magnetic resonance imaging see NMR
malaria, drug for treatment of 724
malayamycin A 1100
maleic acid 105
structure and melting point 311
maleic anhydride, $^13$C NMR spectrum 409
as dienophile in Diels–Alder reaction 880, 884
maleic dialdehyde (cis-butenedial), from furan 736
maleic hydrazide, structure and synthesis of 748
malic acid 31, 1105
malonate esters, in retrosynthesis 708 see also malonates
malonate radical, reactivity of 996–7
malonates, alkylation of 590
malonates, reductive removal of 590
L-selectride (lithium tri-sec-butylborohydride), to reduce enones to enolates 603
diastereoselective reductions of cyclic ketones with 828, 834
LTPM see lithium tetramethylpiperidide
Luche reduction 506, 536–7
LUMO 111
of alkyl cation and anion 150–3
carbocation 941–2
carbonyl groups with adjacent electronegative atoms 862
of cyclopentadiene 920–1
electrophile 111, 356
of nitrile oxide 903
of pyridine 726–7
role in Diels–Alder reactions 886–91
LUMO–HOMO interaction see HOMO–LUMO interaction
lycopen, red plant pigment 141
lysergic acid diethylamide see LSD
lysine 16, 23, 555
X-ray crystal structure 20
lysine enamines, enolate equivalent in biochemistry 1151–3
lyxose 316

and ring strain 351–2
effect of acid catalysts 208
effect on rate of $\mathrm{S}_\text{N}1$ and $\mathrm{S}_\text{N}2$ 331, 347–8
effect on stability of tetrahedral intermediates 200
leaving groups and nucleophiles compared 357–8
leaving groups 197–8
axial and equatorial 379–81
DAIBCO, in Bayliss–Hilman reaction 792
hydroxide as, rare cases 400, 1154
in elimination reactions 390
in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 516, 518, 728
in $\mathrm{S}_\text{N}1$ and $\mathrm{S}_\text{N}2$ 347–52, 357–8
phosphates in ATP 1136
Lehn, Jean-Marie 936
see chiral ligands
ligand-accelerated catalysis 1126
ligand migration 1076
leaving groups 17, 536, 1161, 1163
lipoic acid 1161, 1163
lipids 1134–5, 1147–9
in cell membranes 1147
Liptor see atorvastatin
lipoid acid, $^13$C NMR spectrum 409
lisinopril 1140–1
lithiation 563–4
of furan 737–8
of thiophene 737
lithium acetylide, by deprotonation of ethyne 189
lithium aluminium hydride, diastereoselective reductions of cyclic ketones with 828, 834
for removal of chiral auxiliary 1110, 1112
in reduction of esters to alcohols 217, 531
reduction of amides to amines 236
reduction of nitriles to amines 236
lithium atom, energy level diagram 85
lithium carboxylates, reaction with organolithiums 218–19
lithium carboxylate, for enolization 461
for ring-opening of cyclic ethers 794
in Alder ene reaction 895
in aldol reactions 626
in cleavage of aryl alkyl ethers 351
in conjugate addition of silyl enol ethers 608–9
in Diels–Alder reaction 891
in Friedel–Crafts reactions 477
in reactions of allyl silanes 676
in $\mathrm{S}_\text{N}2$ alkylation of silyl enol ethers 595
Lewis base 180
LHMDS see lithium hexamethyldisilazide
LiAlH$_4$
LiTMP
lysine enolates, [3,3]-sigmatropic Cope rearrangement of 914
alkylation of 588–90, 604, 607, 610
as specific enol equivalents 465–6, 624, 625
control of geometry 870–1
cyclic mechanism for formation 625
formation using LDA 465–6
from silyl enol ethers 626–7
geometry of 870–1
in aldol reactions 625
in conjugate addition 607
mechanism of formation 588
of carbonyl compounds, to prevent self-condensation 587–90
of esters 631
tetrameric structure of 625, 626
lithium hexamethyldisilazide (LHMDS) 588, 635
lithium tetramethylpiperidide 588, 793
lithium tri-sec-butylborohydride see L-selectride
LTPM see lithium tetramethylpiperidide
liver alcohol dehydrogenase 1150
local energy minimum 370
locking groups, and effect on conformation of cyclohexanes 377–9
lone pairs, as nucleophiles 112
drawing 21
orientation of 790, 794, 800–1, 803–5
longifolene, synthesis of 650, 948
long-range coupling 295–6, 301
loose $\mathrm{S}_\text{N}2$ transition state 437–8, 441
Loosen rearrangement 1022
Low-temperature baths, for reactions 133
low temperatures, to slow reactions 252–3, 266
lowest unoccupied molecular orbital see LUMO

INDEX

1215
manganese(VII), for oxidation of alcohols
manganese, as catalyst in asymmetric epoxidation
Mannich base, formation of 621
Mannich disconnection, in retrosynthetic analysis
Mannich reaction 620
in heterocycle synthesis 766, 778
in synthesis of 3-amino alcohol 716–17
of indole 746–7
of pyroles 734
D-mannose 1105
marginine, manufacture of 536
Markovnikov’s rule 433–4
masked ketene see ketene equivalent
mass spectrometer, components of 46–7
mass spectrometry 46–52
ionization techniques 46
isotope patterns 49
use in identifying unknown compounds
McMurry reaction 982–3
meta-CPBA (meta-chloroperbenzoic acid), for epoxidation of alkenes 430–2
for oxidation of pyridine to N-oxide 730
for oxidation of sulfides and selenides 685–6
in Baeyer-Villiger oxidations 953
in diastereoselective epoxidation 836, 840–1, 843–4
stereoselective epoxidation of cis-fused bicyclic alkene 843–4
MDMA 5
Me, definition of 23
mechanisms, detailed study of 240–68, 1029–68
drawing curly arrows for 120–4
in biological chemistry 1149–56
relationship to kinetics of reaction 258
shorthand versions 204, 217, 267
summary of 266–7
mechanistic determination, by detection of intermediates 1060–3
by systematic structural variation 1040
methods for, summary 1067–8
of benzene reactions 1061
of Favorsski rearrangement 1061–3
of S₈,1 vs S₈,2 1040, 1044–8
using crossover experiments 1038–9
using entropy of activation 1052–3
using general acid/base catalysis 1057–60
using Hammett relationships 1041–8
using isotopic labelling 1032
using kinetic isotope effects 1050–2
using solvent isotope effect 1054–6
using specific base catalysis 1055–6
using stereochemistry 1063–7
medium rings, definition of 368, 806
transannular interactions in 807
Meerwein’s salt (trimethylxonium tetrafluoroborate) 225, 467, 664
megahertz, conversion to ppm, in NMR 288
Mellssner, Carl F. W. 1156
Meldrum’s acid, structure and pKₐ 1090
memory of stereochemical information, example of 835
methylfuran, structure and synthesis 760
metabolism, primary and secondary 1134, 1156
methyl group, in 1H NMR 272–6
methyl ethers, as protecting groups 552
methyl lactate, 1H NMR spectrum 295–6, 301
metabolism, primary and secondary 1134, 1156
methyl chloroperbenzoic acid see m-CPBA
catalyzed decomposition 1138
metacyclophane 662
metal carbonyls 1073
metallacyclobutane, intermediate in metathesis 1024
metallacyclobutene, intermediate in ene-yne metathesis 1026–7
metallation, of furan 737–8
of thiophene 737
regioselective, of aromatic compounds 563–4
metal-ligand interaction, concepts 1069–72
metallocarbenes 1007
metals in complexes, oxidation states of 1072
meta-substitution, regioselective formation of 525
metathesis 1023–7, 1099–100
catalysts for 1023
cross 1025–6
e-ne 1026–7
mechanism of 1024
ring-closing 1023–4
methadone, synthesis via pinacol rearrangement 947
methane, bonding and molecular orbitals 98–100
pKₐ of 170
shape of 81
methanesulfonate, as leaving group 349, 390–1
methanesulfonate esters, E1cB step in mechanism of formation 403–4
in eliminations 391, 400
synthesis from alcohols 349
methanesulfonyl acid, pKₐ of 173
methanesulfonyl chloride, elimination to sulfene 404
in synthesis of allylic chlorides 577
methanol, as solvent for S₈,1 reactions 346–7
methine group, in 1H NMR 274–6
methionine 16, 23, 555, 1136, 1139
crystal structure of 44
methoxide, as base in Claissen condensation 647
as nucleophile in conjugate addition 502
N-methoxy-N-methyl amide (Weinreb amide) 219
methoxymethyl cation, in SN1 reactions 338
methyl acetoacetate, 1H NMR spectrum 276
methyl benzenesulfonate, 1H NMR spectrum 488
methyl benzoate, 1H NMR spectrum 488
methylation, shape of 103
methyl chloroformate see chloroformates
methyl cyanoacrylate see superglue
methyl esters, from diazomethane with carboxylic acid 1003–4 see also esters
methyl ethers, as protecting groups 552
methyl group, in 1H NMR 272–6
methyl lactate, 1H NMR spectrum 275
methyl methacrylate, 13C NMR spectrum 409
methyl mycamaminoside, synthesis of 872–3, 1107
N-methyl-N-nitrosotoluensulfonamide, as source of diazomethane 1004
N-methyl-N-nitrosoureia, as source of diazomethane 1004
methyl phenyl sulfide 660
methyl phenyl sulfoxide 660
methyl phenyl sulfone 660
methyl propionate (methyl propynoate), IR spectrum of 390–1
methyl radical, EPR and absorption spectrum of 976
methyl vinyl ketone, conjugate addition to 606
N-methylaniline, IR spectrum of 66
methylation 467 see also alkylation
in biological chemistry 1136–7
of amines by reductive amination with formaldehyde 234–5
of indole nitrogen 778
methylene group, diastereotopicity in 820–4
in 1H NMR 288
methylene insertion reactions, by diazaaldanes 953
methylene synthesis of carbonyl compounds by the Wittig reaction 237–8
methylolithium, 13C NMR spectrum 152
addition to α,β-unsaturated esters 582
N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide see NMO
2-methylxirane see propylene oxide
2-methylpropan-1-ol see isobutanol
2-methylpropan-2-ol see tert-butanol
methyltritylphosphonium bromide, 1H NMR spectrum 416–17
metamid 178–9
metromidazole, synthesis of 743
mevalonic acid 1161, 1165–7
mevalonolactone 1165
MHz, conversion to ppm, in NMR 288
mellisine 1148–9
Michael acceptors 623 see also α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds
examples of 500, 605, 609–10
reaction with nitronates 623
unsaturated amides as 610
unsaturated nitriles as 610
nitration, conditions for (continued)
regioselectivity of 486–7
trapping of intermediates 1060–1
nitrenes, formation and rearrangement 1022
nitric acid, for oxidative cleavage of camphor 841
in oxidation of dihydroxybenzidine 783
nitric oxide (NO) 95–6
2] cycloaddition of 773–4,
+ nitric oxide (NO) 95–6
nitro compounds 30, 901
nitro aldol reaction (Henry reaction) 622–4
nitrobenzenes 487–9
in Skraup quinoline synthesis 782
nitration of 487–9
1N, isotopic labelling with, for elucidating biosynthetic pathways 1157
nitrogen, N$_2$, energy level diagram of 86
in oxidation of dihydroxybenzidine 783
substitution on 518
nitrogen acids and bases 174
compared with oxygen bases 177
nitrogen fixing bacteria 188
nitrogen-containing compounds, in mass spectrometry 520–3
comparing with oxygen containing compounds 518
and relation to reactivity 280, 281
summary (table) 276
compared with 13C 269–70
conformation of saturated rings by
796–800, 802
coupling 285–301 see also coupling
determination of configuration by 796–7
diastereotopic protons 822–3
effect of chiral shift reagents 1111–12
effect of electronegativity on chemical shifts in 61, 272–3
electron distribution in aromatic rings 278–9
evidence for ring-flipping in cyclohexane 373–4
exchange of acidic protons in 283–5
factors affecting coupling constants (summary) 294–5, 300–1
inductive effects in 279–81
integration in 270–2
negative chemical shift 414
nuclear Overhauser effect in 799–800, 802
of alkenes 414–15
of methyl group (table) 273
of protons attached to nitrogen 283–5
of small rings 272–85
chemical shift 59,
coupling 373–4
5) see also coupling
determination of configuration by 796–7
diastereotopic protons 822–3
effect of chiral shift reagents 1111–12
effect of electronegativity on chemical shifts in 61, 272–3
electron distribution in aromatic rings 278–9
evidence for ring-flipping in cyclohexane 373–4
exchange of acidic protons in 283–5
factors affecting coupling constants (summary) 294–5, 300–1
inductive effects in 279–81
integration in 270–2
negative chemical shift 414
nuclear Overhauser effect in 799–800, 802
of alkenes 414–15
of methyl group (table) 273
of protons attached to nitrogen 283–5
of small rings 272–85
chemical shift 59,
coupling 373–4
5) see also coupling
determination of configuration by 796–7
diastereotopic protons 822–3
effect of chiral shift reagents 1111–12
effect of electronegativity on chemical shifts in 61, 272–3
electron distribution in aromatic rings 278–9
evidence for ring-flipping in cyclohexane 373–4
exchange of acidic protons in 283–5
factors affecting coupling constants (summary) 294–5, 300–1
inductive effects in 279–81
integration in 270–2
negative chemical shift 414
nuclear Overhauser effect in 799–800, 802
of alkenes 414–15
of methyl group (table) 273
of protons attached to nitrogen 283–5
of small rings 272–85
chemical shift 59,
coupling 373–4
5) see also coupling
determination of configuration by 796–7
diastereotopic protons 822–3
effect of chiral shift reagents 1111–12
effect of electronegativity on chemical shifts in 61, 272–3
electron distribution in aromatic rings 278–9
evidence for ring-flipping in cyclohexane 373–4
exchange of acidic protons in 283–5
factors affecting coupling constants (summary) 294–5, 300–1
inductive effects in 279–81
integration in 270–2
negative chemical shift 414
nuclear Overhauser effect in 799–800, 802
of alkenes 414–15
of methyl group (table) 273
of protons attached to nitrogen 283–5
of small rings 272–85
chemical shift 59,
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug

norcaradiene, by electrocyclic closure of norbornene, diastereoselective attack on norbornanone, diastereoselective attack on nootkatone, synthesis via fragmentation

nomenclature, systematic 34–41

of saturated heterocycles 793

systematic 34–41
terms used in Baldwin’s rules 810
trivial 33–4, 36–9

of prochiral faces and groups 856–7

of bicyclic compounds 839

of enolate geometry 869

of prochiral faces and groups 856–7

of saturated heterocycles 793

terms used in Baldwin’s rules 810
trivial 33–4, 36–9

of prochiral faces and groups 856–7

of saturated heterocycles 793

systematic 34–41

of prochiral faces and groups 856–7

of saturated heterocycles 793

systematic 34–41

terms used in Baldwin’s rules 810
trivial 33–4, 36–9

of prochiral faces and groups 856–7

of saturated heterocycles 793

systematic 34–41

of prochiral faces and groups 856–7

of saturated heterocycles 793
INDEX

1221

P

p- as prefix see para-
p orbital 86
Pacific yew tree 1170
paclitaxel see Taxol 1169–70

in situ reduction of, mechanism 1080–1
palladium, π-allyl complexes of, use in
synthesis 1089–92
activation of allylic electrophiles by
1088–92
allylations and alkylations with 1088–91
amination catalysed by 1092–5
as catalyst for hydrogenation 535–9

catalysis by 1069–99
choice and cost 1078
coordination to alkenes 1096–8

on carbon, for reduction of aromatic nitro
groups 495
stable complexes of 1070
tetraakis(triphenylphosphine) 12
palladium(0), catalysis by 1069–99
palladium(II), catalysis by 1072, 1078, 1080–1,
1096–9
pallescensin A 649
palm oil 212
palmitic acid (hexadecanoic acid) 212, 1161
pallytoxin 15
pantothenic acid 1152
Papaver somniferum (opium poppy) 1159
paper, meaning of 36, 479
para-toluenesulf., see toluenesulf...
para-xylene (1,4-dimethyl benzene), nitration
of 780
paracetamol 31, 696
13C NMR spectrum 58–9
IR spectrum 68
paracetamol, synthesis 481
paraformaldehyde 621
parasitic equilibrium 618
paraformaldehyde 621
paracetamol, synthesis 553–9
paracetamol 31, 696
paracetamol 31, 696
para, meaning of 36, 479

PDC (pyridinium dichromate) 194, 731–2,
545, 731–2
Paracoccus denitrificans 495
parallel reactions 922
Patterson synthesis 1140–2
Peptide bond 31, 1140
Peptides 156, 1140
Peptide bond 31, 1140
Pentenal, IR and NMR 412
Pentazole 744
pentane, lowest energy conformation of 804
pentazol 744
peneglucosidase 495
Penicillum 657
penaresidin A, synthesis of 873–5, 1107
Penfl oxacin 780–1
Penicillin V, E1cB elimination in synthesis
of 873–5, 1107
Penicillin 657
Penicillin 657
pentaerythritol, synthesis of 620
pentenolactone 1020
pentane, lowest energy conformation of 804
pentazol 744
penetral, IR and NMR 412
PEP (phosphoenolpyruvate) 1153–4
peptide bond 31, 1140
peptides 156, 1140
13C NMR spectrum 58–9

1H NMR spectrum 274
3,5-dimethylpyrazine 430
persistent radicals 974–5, 979
peracetic acid 470
peracetic acid, comparison with carbenoids
1018
peracetic acid, for epoxidation of alkenes 429–32
in Baeyer–Villiger oxidations 953
synthesis of 430
persistent radicals 974–5, 979
pest control, compound used for 183
Peterson elimination 671, 675, 688–9
stereospecificity of 689–90
petition, synthesis by Favorskii
rearrangement 952–3
petrol, combustion energy 250
Pfizer 11, 529, 657, 744, 768
ph 24–5
pH 166
effect on rate of imine formation 231, 263
effect on reactions of hydroxylamines 773
of stomach 163
relationship to pK, 167, 168–9
phase transfer catalysis 585
phase, of orbital 87
phenacylcodol 720–1
phenol 37
1H NMR spectrum 472, 480
comparison with enols 471–2
deuteration with D2O 472
electron distribution in 480
ketone form 472
nitration of 481
orbitals of 480
ortho, para-directing effect in 480
pK, of 173
reaction with bromine 479–80
reaction with carbon dioxide 481–2
stabilizing effect of aromaticity 471–2
phenols, by rearrangement of diene 949–50
electrophilic aromatic substitution of
479–82
from aniline via diazonium salt 521
IR spectrum of 67
preference for enol form 459
reaction with diazomethane 1004
reaction with formaldehyde in synthesis of
salicycalddehydes 1179
phenonium ion, in neighbouring group
participation 935–6
phenyl (Ph) 24
neighbouring group participation by 935–6
L-phenylalanine, as source of chiral auxiliary
1113
phenylalanine 16, 554, 1104, 1154
1H NMR spectrum 274
in aspartate synthesis 1118
phenylglycine 236
phenylhydrazine 232
in Fischer indole synthesis 916
reaction with carbonyl compounds 775–6
phenylhydrazine 232
[3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement of 916
8-phenylmenthol, as chiral auxiliary 1113
synthesis of 832
phenylsilane 668
phenylsodium, deprotonation of
phenylsilane 668
8-phenylmenthol, as chiral auxiliary 1113
phenylhydrazine 232
phenylglycine 236
phosphorus oxychloride (POCl₃), reaction
with quinolones 784
phosphorus pentachloride (PCl₅), in synthesis
of acyl chlorides 215
phosphorus pentoxide (P₂O₅), in synthesis
of nitriles from amides 213
phosphorus tribromide (PB₃), in synthesis
of alkyl bromides 348
phosphorus, coupling to ³¹P in NMR 416
phosphorus–oxygen bond, energy of P–O
double bond 238
phosphoryl chloride see phosphorus
oxychloride
phosphorylation, in nature, by ATP 1154
photochemical [2+2] cycloadditions 896–8
electrocyclic reactions 926–7
sigmatropic shifts 921–2
photolysis, of diazomethane 1005
of halogens 986, 988
phosphorous pentoxide (P₂O₅), in synthesis
of nitriles from amides 213
phosphorus trihalides, in synthesis
of halogens 986, 988
photolysis, of diazomethane 1005
of halogens 986, 988
phosphorus, coupling to ³¹P in NMR 416
phenylhydrazine 232
in Fischer indole synthesis 916
reaction with carbonyl compounds 775–6
phenylhydrazine 232
[3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement of 916
8-phenylmenthol, as chiral auxiliary 1113
synthesis of 832
phenylsilane 668
phenylsodium, deprotonation of
phenylsilane 668
8-phenylmenthol, as chiral auxiliary 1113
phenylhydrazine 232
phenylglycine 236
phosphorus oxychloride (POCl₃), reaction
with quinolones 784
phosphorus pentachloride (PCl₅), in synthesis
of acyl chlorides 215
phosphorus pentoxide (P₂O₅), in synthesis
of nitriles from amides 213
phosphorus tribromide (PB₃), in synthesis
of alkyl bromides 348
phosphorus, coupling to ³¹P in NMR 416
phosphorus–oxygen bond, energy of P–O
double bond 238
phosphoryl chloride see phosphorus
oxychloride
phosphorylation, in nature, by ATP 1154
photochemical [2+2] cycloadditions 896–8
electrocyclic reactions 926–7
sigmatropic shifts 921–2
photolysis, of diazomethane 1005
of halogens 986, 988
phosphorous pentoxide (P₂O₅), in synthesis
of nitriles from amides 213
phosphorus trihalides, in synthesis
of halogens 986, 988
photolysis, of diazomethane 1005
of halogens 986, 988
INDEX

brazilaldehyde acetal, for 1,3-diols 808
benzaldehyde amine, for amine 552
benzyl ester, for carboxylic acids 557
benzyl ether, for alcohols 551
Boc, for amine 558, 739–40, 1172
Cbz, 1H NMR spectrum 275
Cbz, for amine 556–7, 1172
Fmoc, for amine 559
glucose as nature’s 1144–5
methyl ether, for alcohols 551
silyl ether, for alcohols 550, 635, 670–1
silyl, for terminal alkenes 671
tert-butyl ester, for carboxylic acids 555, 1172
THP (tetrahydropyranylo), for alcohols 550
protecting groups, assessing the need for 552
for peptide synthesis 553–9
for sugars 808
summary 560
protection see protecting groups
proteins 1134–5, 1139–42
biosynthesis of 1139–42
structural 1141
protic solvents 255–6
protodesilylation 674
proton (1H) NMR see NMR, 1H
proton exchange, in 1H NMR 284–5, 833
proton nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) see NMR, 1H
proton transfer, alternative mechanisms for 136
during enolization 450–1
in tetrahedral intermediates 201–2
rate of 257–8
proton, as electrophile 117
push-pull effect, in fragmentation 961–2
pulegone, synthesis of 832
Purines, as bases in nucleic acids 1136
Psuedomonas putida 1103
P-toluene sulfinyl… see toluenesulf…
PTSA see toluenesulfonic acid
pucker, conformation of cyclobutane 369
puffer fish, poison from 790
pulegone, synthesis of 832
purine degradation, in human metabolism 751
purines, as bases in nucleic acids 1136
structure of 750–1
push-pull effect, in fragmentation 961–2
in pinacol rearrangements 945–6
putrescine 29, 1157
PVC see poly(vinyl chloride)
pyran ring 469
in sugars 1143
pyranose 1143
pyridine 37
  \( ^1H \) NMR spectrum 282, 724
  activated, electrophilic aromatic substitution of 729–30
  as a polar organic solvent 337, 726
  as a weak base 337
  as nucelophilic catalyst of acylation 199–200
  as nucelophilic catalyst of bromination 726, 731
  comparison of structure with benzene 724
  complex with chromium trioxide (Collins’ reagent) 194
  conjugation in 282
  electrophilic aromatic substitution of 726–7
  Hantzsch synthesis 763–5, 783
  HOMO of 729–30
  nucleophilic substitution on 728
  orbital structure of 724
  pK\(_a\) of 175, 630, 726, 792
  reactivity of 725–6
  retrosynthetic analysis of 763, 766
  synthesis from 1,5-diketones 739, 765–6
  synthesis, from acetaldehyde and ammonia 758
  unreactivity towards Friedel–Crafts acylation 727
  unreactivity towards nitration 727
  use in Mannich reaction 624
  pyridine N-oxide 730–1
  2-methyl, reaction with acetic anhydride 731
  reduction to pyridine 730
  pyridinium chlorochromate see PCC
  pyridinium dichromate see PDC
  pyrimidine 724
  \( ^1H \) NMR spectrum 285–6
  pK\(_a\) of 748
  pyrimidines, as bases in nucleic acids 1136
  from amide and 1,3-diketone 760, 770–1
  retrosynthetic analysis of 770
  role in biochemistry and medicine 754
  pyrolysis, of formate group 968
  pyrones, Diels–Alder reaction of 739
  structure and regioisomers of 732
  pyrophosphate (PP) 1166
  pyruvic acid (2-oxopropanoic acid) 28, 229, 1153–4
  pyruvate 1153–4
  pyruvic acid (2-oxopropanoic acid) 28, 229, 1134–5, 1153–4
  conversion to alanine by reductive amination 235
  reduction by NADH to form (S)-(+) lactic acid 1150
  as additive in catalytic hydrogenation 537–8
  by reaction of aniline with \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated carbonyl compounds 781
  from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and anilines 781–2
  nitration of 749
  N-oxide 750
  oxidation with potassium permanganate 750
  retrosynthetic analysis and synthesis of 782–1
  role in biochemistry and medicine 755
  Skaup synthesis 781–2
  nucleophilic aromatic substitution of 784
  8-quinolinox (oxine) 782
  quinolone 781
  reaction with POCl\(_3\), 783–4
  retrosynthetic analysis and synthesis of 782–3
  synthesis, from enamine diester 783
  quinolone antibiotics 782–3
  quinone, as dienophile in Diels–Alder reaction 879
  quinuclidine, pK\(_a\) of 791
  structure of 791

R
R see gas constant
R\(_S\) nomenclature 308–9
racemic mixture 307–8
racemization, in \( S_\alpha \) 343–4
of drugs in vivo 460
of stereogenic centres adjacent to carbonyl groups 459–60
radical abstraction 572–3, 972–3
radical addition, borane-oxygen method 998–9
C–C bonds by 992–9
concentration effects in 994–5
for formation of carbon-carbon bonds 993–4
frontier orbital effects in 995–6
of triplet carbenes to alkenes 1015
regioselectivity of 571–2, 574
tin method 993–6
to acrylonitrile 993–4
to alkenes 571–2, 971, 973, 992–7
radical anions and cations, in mass spectrometry 47
radical bromination, allylic 989–90
of alkanes 988–9
radical chain reaction 571–4, 984–1102
of alkene with HBr 984–5
summary of steps in 985–6
radical chlorination, regioselectivity of 986–8
radical copolymerization 997
radical initiator, AIBN as 991–2
borane-oxygen as 998–9
radical reactions 571–4, 970–1002
intramolecular 999–1002
regiocontrol in 571
radical substitution 972–3, 990–2
regiocontrol see also regioselectivity
in synthesis of aromatic compounds 566–8
strategies for 563–82 see also regioselectivity
using tethers 568–9
regioselectivity 562–83
by kinetic or thermodynamic control 566
enones to control in enolate formation
601–5
from elimination reactions 569–70
of alkylation of acetate acidianion 601
of alkylation of ketone enolates 590, 592,
595–604, 613
of allylic substitution using palladium
1088–92
of aromatic sulfonation 565
of attack on cyclic sulfates 1125
of Baeyer–Villiger oxidation 953–8
of aromatic sulfonation 565
of sulfonation of toluene 485–6
of SN1 reactions 336–7
of ring opening of aziridine 939
of reactions of vinyl, aryl, and allyl silanes
676
of ring opening of aziridine 939
of S,1 reactions 336–7
of sulfonation of toluene 485–6
regioselective, definition of 577
Reissert indole synthesis 779–80
relative configuration 313, 1104
relative stereochemistry 313, 1104
control of 825–76
relaxation, of protons, in 1H NMR 799
between axial substituents 374–8
between molecules 108–9
between orbitals in eclipsed conformation
364–5
resolution 322–7, 1106–7, 1111, 1133, 1173
resolving agent 325
resveratrol 6, 1164
retinal 1, 681
13C NMR spectrum 409
retro-aldol reaction 605–6
retro-Diels–Alder reaction 739–740, 884–5
retro-synthetic analysis (retrosynthesis)
694–722
chemoselectivity problems in 698–9
common starting materials for 711–12
definition of terms used in 697, 712
donor and acceptor synths in 712
functional group interconversion (FGI) in
699–702
of 1,2-difunctional compounds 720
of 1,3-difunctional compounds 713, 717
of 1,4-difunctional compounds 721–2,
760, 770
of 1,5-difunctional compounds 719
of 2-amino alcohols 715
of 3-amino alcohols 715, 716–17
of 3-amino ketones 716
of 3-hydroxy ketones 713
of acetics 715
of alkenes 707, 720
donor and acceptor synths in 712
formation of enamines and enols 592
of formation of enolates from ketones,
summary 601
of halogenation of ketones 469
of halolactonization 568–9
of Heck reaction 1080–1
of hydration of alkenes and alkynes 444–7,
571
of hydroboration of alkenes 446–7
of intramolecular reactions 568–9, 653–4, 891
of nitration of ketones 464–5
of nucleophilic aromatic substitution
515–17
of nucleophilic attack on bromonium ions
436–7
of opening of cyclohexene epoxides 836–9
of photochemical [2+2] cycloadditions 898
of radical bromination of an alkene 986
of radical reactions compared with ionic
reactions 571–1, 986
of reactions of indole 746
of reactions of pyrrole, thiophene, and
furan 735
of reactions of silanes 672–7
of reactions of vinyl, aryl, and allyl silanes
676
of ring opening of aziridine 939
of S,1 reactions 336–7
of sulfonation of toluene 485–6
regioselective, definition of 577
Reissert indole synthesis 779–80
relative configuration 313, 1104
relative stereochemistry 313, 1104
control of 825–76
relaxation, of protons, in 1H NMR 799
for carbene insertion 1019–20, 1023
for hydrogenation 535
for nitrile reduction 716
carbene complex of 1007
rhodopsin 681
ribofuranose 1143
ribonucleic acid see RNA
ribonucleotide 1143
ribopyranose 1143
ribose 137, 315–16, 1134–7, 1142–3
ribose 1139, 1180
ring-closing metathesis 1023–4
ring-closing reactions, activation energy of
806–7
classification of, by Baldwin’s rules 810
effect on ring size on reactions 806–7
in synthesis of saturated heterocycles
805–13
thermodynamic control of 808–10
Thorpe-Ingold effect in 808–10
ring closure, electrocyclic 922–3
ring contraction, in Favorskii rearrangement
952
ring current, effect on 1H NMR chemical
shifts 277
ring expansion, by fragmentation 963–5
in α-caryophyllene alcohol synthesis 944–5
of cyclic ketone using diazomethane 949
ring flipping, of cis-decalin, 845
impossibility of in trans-decalins and
steroids 378–9, 381
in substituted cyclohexanes 838
of six-membered rings 373–4, 376–81
ring formation, kinetic control of 806–10
rate and relation to size 806–7
thermodynamic control of 808–10
Thorpe-Ingold effect in 808–10
ring inversion see ring flipping
ring opening, Baldwin’s rules for 810, 813–14
electrocyclic 922–4, 928–9
of aziridine 793, 929
of cyclic ethers 794
of epoxides, stereoselectivity of 854
of small rings, by electrolycyclic reactions
928–9
regioselective, of cyclohexene oxides of
reactions 836–9
ring size, and 1H NMR 814–17
and geminal (J) coupling 819–20
and neighbouring group participation 935
small, medium, and large, definition of
806
thermodynamic control of in acetal
formation 808
ring strain 366–8
and leaving group ability 351–2
driving ring-opening reactions 793–4
driving rearrangement 944–5
effect on IR carbonyl stretching frequency
413
effect on orbital hybridization 413
effect on rate of ring formation 806–7
ring synthesis, by double alkylation of
1,3-dicarboxyl compounds 598
by intramolecular acyloan reaction of
esters 984
INDEX

1227

by intramolecular alkylation 586–7
by intramolecular radical reactions 1000–1
by palladium catalysed cyclization 1091
five-membered, by [3+2]-dipolar cycloadditions 901–5
four-membered, by [2+2] cycloadditions 897–901
heterocycles, aromatic 757–788
saturated 805–14
seven membered, by [4+3] cycloadditions 893–4
ten-membered, using Stille coupling 1084
by alkene metathesis 1023–4
rings, bicyclic, stereoselectivity in 839–49
bond angles in (table) 367
bridged bicyclic, stereoselectivity in 839–41
cis and trans alkenes in 678–9
diastereoselectivity in, summary 851
effect on nucleophilicity of heteroatoms 791–2, 794
evidence for lack of planarity in 368, 370
five-membered, 1H NMR couplings in 817
conformation of 370, 834–5
steroselective reactions of 835–6
formation by metathesis 1099–100
four-membered, 1H NMR coupling in 816–17
conformation of 369, 833
steroselective reactions of 833
fused bicyclic, stereoselectivity in 841–6, 841–6, 848–50
in transition states and intermediates 847–51
saturated, rate of ring-closing reactions 806
six-membered, 1H NMR and axial/ equatorial substitution 797–9, 802, 818–19
conformational preference in 456, 457–74, 826–32, 837–9
diastereoselective attack on 826–9
equatorial vs axial attack on 825–32
geminal (2) couplings in 819–20
how to draw 371–4
opening of epoxides fused to 836–9
reactions of 826–32, 837–9, 850–1
small, effect on pK_s 794
fragmentation in 961
small, medium, and large, definitions of 368
spirocyclic, stereoselectivity in 846–7
temporary, for control of stereochemistry 847–51
three-membered, conformation of 369
NMR coupling in 815
ritonavir 10
Ritter reaction 353, 1173
determination of mechanism 1065–6
relationship to Beckmann fragmentation 959–60
RNA (ribonucleic acid) 1136, 1138–9
biological synthesis of 1139
stability compared with DNA 1138–9
Robinson, Robert 638
Robinson, tropine synthesis of 1158
Robinson annelation 638–9
roguetimide 707–8, 719
‘roofing’, in 1H NMR 298, 822
rose oxide ketone 790
rose, pigment from 1145
smell of 4
rosocin, structure and synthesis of 783
rotation, of amide bond, rate constants 256
of bonds 360–1
energy barriers 362–3
in 1H NMR 274
rotation, of plane-polarized light (optical rotation) 309–10
ruminants, cellulose digestion in 1147
ruhenium, as catalyst 1099–100
for alkene metathesis 1023–7
for asymmetric reduction of carbonyl group 1115–17
for hydrogenation 535
in asymmetric hydrogenations of alkenes 1116–19

S
s orbital 84–5
SAC see specific acid catalysis
saccharides 1146–7
saccharin, synthesis of 485
para-toluenesulfonic acid as by-product 227
S-adenosyl methionine (SAM) 1136–7, 1157–8, 1160
salbutamol, protecting group strategy in synthesis of 552
selenocysteine (s-cysteine) ligand 1122–3, 1172
salicylic acid, synthesis and 13C NMR spectrum 409, 481–2
salmefamol 530
SAM (S-adenosyl methionine) 1136–7, 1157–8, 1160
saturated carbons, protons attached to in saponification 212
saturated fats 31, 211, 536
S-sec-butanol, inversion by SN2 343
second law of thermodynamics 246
second-order reaction 258–9, 329, 331–3
secondary carbon, meaning of 27
secondary, meaning of 29
second-order reaction 258–9, 329, 331–3
self-condensation, avoiding 585–613
semicarbazide 232
semicarbazone 232
semicarbazide, synthesis of 232
selenium, and sulfur compared 686
selenoxides, by oxidation of selenides 685–6
elimination to form alkenes 686
in [2+3]-sigmatropic rearrangements 918–19
self-condensation, avoiding 585–613
in aldol reactions 616–18
semincarbazide 232
semincarbazone 232
sempipinol rearrangement 947–9
separation of enantiomers 322–7
serotonin 1, 755, 777
serricomin 4
seven-membered ring synthesis, by [4+3] cycloaddition 893–4
sex hormone 379, 949, 1167
S-glycosides 1145–6
shape, of molecules 80–105
Sharpless, K. Barry 1116
Sharpless asymmetric aminohydroxylations (AA) 1120
Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylations (AD) 1120, 1123–6
Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation (AE) 1120–3, 1172
Sharpless ‘click’ synthesis of triazoles 775
shell, in electronic structure 86
shielding, in NMR 53, 270
shifts, chemical see chemical shifts
sigmatropic 919 see also sigmatropic shifts
shikimic acid 1154–6, 1163
13C NMR spectrum 409
in synthesis of oseltamivir (Tamiflu) 1175
pathway 1154–6
short-cuts (short-hand), allowable when drawing mechanisms 204, 217, 267
shower gel, ingredients of 6–8
SI and Re in assignment of prochiral faces and groups 856–7
σ bond, as a nucleophile 113, 119
σ orbital 91–5
σ* orbital 91–5
σ, substituent constant 1042–3
σ-complex 1071
σ-conjugation 484
sigmatropic 910
[1,3]-sigmatropic hydrogen shifts 921, 919–22
[1,5]-sigmatropic hydrogen shifts 919–21
[1,7]-sigmatropic hydrogen shifts 921
singlet, in 1H NMR 286
singly occupied molecular orbital see SOMO
Singulair see montelukast
sinigin 1145
sirenin 1018
six-membered rings 456, 457–74
1H NMR of axial vs equatorial substitution 818–19
conformational preference in 826–32, 837–9
equatorial vs axial attack 825–32
fragmentation of in synthesis of nootkatone 968
geminal (γ) couplings in 819–20
how to draw 371–4
opening of epoxides fused to 836–9
rate of reaction 806–7
S,2 reactions on 379–81
stereochemical control in 826–32, 837–9
synthesis by [4+2] cycloadditions 878–93
vicinal (γ) coupling in 797–9, 802
16-electron complexes 1070
skeletal, of insects and crustaceans 1147
Skrup quinoline synthesis 781–2
skunk, smell of 4, 657
small rings, definition of 368, 806
effect on pKₐ, 794
smell, and stereochemistry 1102–3
Smith, Kline and French 178
Smith–Kline Beecham 178
Sn, S, and S, see also substitution
S₃,1 and S,2 mechanisms, choice between
333, 347
contrasts between 342–7
effect of leaving group 347–52, 357–8
effect of nucleophile 352–8
electronic effects 346–7
kinetic evidence for 329–33
reaction rate and structure (table) 342,
345–6, 347, 355–6
relative rates compared 345–6
solvent effects 344–6
stereochemical consequences 343–4
steric effects 342–3, 380–1
S₃,1 reaction, competition with E₁
elimination 467–8
energy profile diagram 334
examples of 336, 558
of allyl systems 576
regioselectivity in 336–7
with aromatic electrophiles see nucleophilic aromatic substitution, S₃,1 mechanism
with benzene as nucleophile 477
S,2 reaction 340–2, 557
at secondary centre 341–3, 347
at tertiary centre 343, 347, 705
effect of nucleophiles, (tables) 355–6
in opening of epoxide 438
inversion of stereochemistry in 439–41
loose see loose S,2
molecular orbitals and 536
on allylic compounds 574, 578–9
on six-membered rings 379–81
stereospecificity of 853
transition state of 340–1, 343
S,2′ reaction 574
compared with S,2 574–5
S,Ar see nucleophilic aromatic substitution
S,Ar see electrophilic aromatic substitution
soap 212, 1148
SOCI₂ see thionyl chloride
sodium, for reduction of carbonyl group 973, 981, 983–4
sodium acetylide, from deprotonation of acetylene 171, 187, 189
sodium amalgam, as reducing agent in Julia olefination 686
sodium amide, as base 170–1, 187, 589
in formation of benzene 523–5
sodium borohydride 131–2, 193, 251, 253 see also borohydride
chemoselectivity of reactions with carbonyl compounds 132
comparison with lithium aluminium hydride 132
for reduction of aldehydes and ketones 130–2, 530–1
in demercuration 444–6
in radical chain reactions 994
mechanism of reduction with 131
reduction of lactones 617
of α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds 506, 536–7
of α,β-unsaturated nitro compounds 511
sodium bromide, insolubility in acetone 255
sodium chloride, bonding in 96–7
energy level diagram of 97
in Krapcho decarboxylation of esters 598
reaction with sulfonic acid 477
sodium cyanide see cyanide
sodium cyanoborohydride 234
sodium enolates 589, 607
sodium ethoxide, as base 644, 596
sodium hexamethyldisilazide (NaHMDS) 589
sodium hydride, as base in Claisen condensation 645, 654
sodium hypochlorite (bleach) 195, 1123
sodium iodide, solubility in acetone 255
sodium iodide, solubility in acetone 255
sodium nitrite, in formation of diazonium compounds 521
in nitrosation of enols 464–5
sodium peridote 443, 661
sodium triacetoxoborohydride 234
sodium trichloroacetate 818–19
solvent isotope effect, use in determining reaction mechanisms 1055–6
solvent peak, in $^{13}$C NMR 55
solvent, as catalyst 256–7
as nucleophile 337–8, 345–6, 353
as reagent 255 see also solvolysis
choice of, for ionic salts 187, 345
classes of (protic, aprotic, polar, non-polar) 163, 255–6
deuterated, for NMR 272, 284–5
dielectric constants (polarity) of (table) 256
effect on reactions rates and products 255–7
effect on $S_n_1$ vs $S_n_2$ substitution reaction 344–6
for organolithium and Grignard reagents 186, 255, 795
in limiting $p_K_a$ 170–1
pyridine as 337, 726
solvolysis 337–8, 931–2
SOMO (singly occupied molecular orbital) 976–7, 995–7
Sonogashira coupling 1083, 1087–8
specific rotation 310
specific enol equivalents (table) 624–5
for aldehydes and ketones 591–5, 595
in acetal hydrolysis 1059
in dienone–phenol rearrangement 1054
in ester hydrolysis 1053
inverse solvent isotope effect in 1054–5
specific base catalysis (SBC) 262, 1053
specific acid catalysis (SAC) 262, 1053
evidence for 1053–5
in acetal hydrolysis 1059
in dienone–phenol rearrangement 1054
in ester hydrolysis 1053
inverse solvent isotope effect in 1054–5
specific base catalysis (SBC) 262, 1053
evidence for 1053–5
in epoxide opening 1055
in hydrolysis of ester 1056
specific enol equivalents (table) 624–5
for aldehydes and ketones 591–5, 595, 632, 634
for control of acylation 648–52
for esters 631
from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds 628
Wittig reagents as 627
specific rotation 310
spectrometry, mass see mass spectrometry
spectroscopic methods, for identification of unknown compounds 72–8, 418–22
summary of 46, 408
spectroscopy 43
and rates 374
EPR (ESR) see EPR
for detection of reactive intermediates 419–20
NMR see NMR, $^1H$ NMR or $^{13}C$ NMR
spingosine 683
spider toxin, synthesis of 236–7
spin, of electrons 84
spin-flipping, in carbenes 1014–15
spiro compounds 432, 653
chirality of 320
spiroacetals 803
spirocycles, stereoselectivity in 847
synthesis via pinacol rearrangement 946
spiroepoxides 432
spiroketalts 803
square brackets, in nomenclature of
spiroketals 803
spin–orbit coupling 1014–15
spin, of electrons 84
spider toxin, synthesis of 236–7
sphingosine 683
spectroscopy 43
chirality of 320
effect on reaction rates and products 255–7
effect on $S_n_1$ vs $S_n_2$ substitution reaction 344–6
in chromatography 325–7
in determination of enantiomeric excess 1111
in solvolysis 337–8
Staudinger reaction 1176
stearic acid (octadecanoic acid) 212, 536, 1161
stereoelectronic and steric effects 799–824
stereoelectronic effects 789–824
and fragmentation of saturated heterocycles 801–5
anomeric effect 801–3
of elimination reactions 678, 853–5
of electrophilic addition reactions 440–1
of Claisen rearrangement 910–11
of cycloadditions 897, 900–1
Felkin–Anh control 864
of cycloadditions 897, 900–1
in reactions of vinyl silanes 673–4
in alkylation of enolates 603, 604–5, 867–8
in bicyclic molecules 839–49
bridged bicyclic compounds 839–41
fused bicyclic compounds 841–6, 848–50
spirocyclic bicyclic compounds 846–7
in cyclic molecules 825–51
in Diels–Alder reaction 881–9
in five-membered rings 834–6
in four-membered rings 833
in synthesis of alkenes, summary 693
of Alder ene reaction 895–6
of alkenes 842, 845
of allylic substitution using palladium 1088–92
of carbonyl ene reaction 896
of catalytic hydrogenation 535
of Claisen rearrangement 910–11
of electrophilic addition to alkenes 439
of elimination reactions 678, 853–5
of epoxidations of alkenes 514, 866–7
of cyclization of alkenes 843–4, 850–1, 855
of rearrangement reactions 957–8
of the Heck reaction 1082–1
of the Julia olefination 868–7
of the Wittig reaction 869–3
with cyclic transition states and cyclic intermediates 847–51
stereospecificity, definition of 396, 852
stereospecificity, in cross-coupling reactions 1085
in synthesis of alkenes 868–93
of electrophilic addition reactions 440–1, 853–4
of epoxide opening reactions 854
of iodolactonization reactions 853–4
of Peterson elimination 868–9
of singlet vs triplet carbene reaction with alkenes 1014–15
of $S_n_2$ reactions 853
stereoelectronic effects 789–824
and conformations of saturated heterocycles 801–5
anomeric effect 801–3
explanation for Baldwin’s rules 810–14
in acyclic acetals 804
in esters 804–5
orbital requirements for 804
synthesis of saturated heterocycles 801–5
anomeric effect 801–3
how to draw 309
nitrogen as in aziridine 794
compound with more than one 313–17
stereoisomers 303, 306, 309, 311, 361
number of possible 316–18
of imines and oximes 338
of substituted cyclohexanes 376–8
stereoselective, definition of 396, 852
stereoselectivity, effect of chelation 862–5
Felkin–Anh control 864
in [2+2] cycloadditions 897, 900–1
INDEX
1229
in reactions of vinyl silanes 673–4
in alkylation of enolates 603, 604–5, 867–8
in bicyclic molecules 839–49
bridged bicyclic compounds 839–41
fused bicyclic compounds 841–6, 848–50
spirocyclic bicyclic compounds 846–7
in cyclic molecules 825–51
in Diels–Alder reaction 881–9
in five-membered rings 834–6
in four-membered rings 833
in synthesis of alkenes, summary 693
of Alder ene reaction 895–6
of alkenes 842, 845
of allylic substitution using palladium 1088–92
of carbonyl ene reaction 896
of catalytic hydrogenation 535
of Claisen rearrangement 910–11
of electrophilic addition to alkenes 439
of elimination reactions 678, 853–5
of epoxidations of alkenes 514, 866–7
of cyclization of alkenes 843–4, 850–1, 855
of rearrangement reactions 957–8
of the Heck reaction 1082–1
of the Julia olefination 868–7
of the Wittig reaction 869–3
with cyclic transition states and cyclic intermediates 847–51
stereospecificity, definition of 396, 852
stereospecificity, in cross-coupling reactions 1085
in synthesis of alkenes 868–93
of electrophilic addition reactions 440–1, 853–4
of epoxide opening reactions 854
of iodolactonization reactions 853–4
of Peterson elimination 868–9
of singlet vs triplet carbene reaction with alkenes 1014–15
of $S_n_2$ reactions 853
stereoelectronic effects 789–824
and conformations of saturated heterocycles 801–5
anomeric effect 801–3
explanation for Baldwin’s rules 810–14
in acyclic acetals 804
in esters 804–5
orbital requirements for 804
synthesis of saturated heterocycles 801–5
anomeric effect 801–3
how to draw 309
nitrogen as in aziridine 794
compound with more than one 313–17
stereoisomers 303, 306, 309, 311, 361
number of possible 316–18
of imines and oximes 338
of substituted cyclohexanes 376–8
stereoselective, definition of 396, 852
stereoselectivity, effect of chelation 862–5
Felkin–Anh control 864
in [2+2] cycloadditions 897, 900–1
stiffening, in IR 64 see also IR spectra
structural variation, for determination of reaction mechanisms 1034, 1036, 1040–8
structure determination 43–78, 407–26
by 1H NMR 269–301
by degradation 1037
structure, of molecules 80–105
strychnine 25, 745
styrone, reaction with hydrogen bromide 433
substitution constant, σ 1042–3
substituent effects, in Hammett relationship 1041–8
substituents, axial and equatorial 371, 374–7
substituent effects, in Hammett relationship 1041–8
substituents, axial and equatorial 371, 374–7
substituent effects, in Hammett relationship 1041–8
sulfanilamide 565
sulfamethoxypyridazine 753
sulfamethoxazole 753
sulfa drugs 753–4
sulfamethoxypyridazine 753
sulfanilamide 565
sulfa drugs 753–4
sulfur, bond strengths to 657
crystalline 657
electron negativity of 657
functional groups containing 659–60
in organic chemistry 656–68
oxidation states of 657
stabilization of adjacent anion 660, 795
versatility of 657
sulfuric acid, as dehydrating reagent 637
for hydrolysis of nitrile to carboxylic acid 586
in catalysis of E1 elimination of alcohols 389
in E1 elimination 383–4
pKs of 170
sulfuryl chloride 658, 659
sumatriptan, structure and synthesis 755, 777, 778
superacid 334–5, 485
supercritical carbon dioxide 1136
superimposable mirror images, and chirality 303–4
super-protons, silyl groups as 671–3
suprafacial 892
in sigmatropic rearrangements 913
Suzuki, Akira 1084
Suzuki coupling 1083, 1085–7
Swern oxidation 545, 626, 667–8
mechanism of 668
swine flu 1174–5
symmetric stretch, in IR spectra 67, 70
symmetry, centre of 320–2
planes of 304–6, 312, 320–1
planes of, centres of, and axes of, summary 322
syn aldol product 868–71
syn diols, from alkenes and osmium tetroxide 905–6
syn/anti nomenclature 858
synclinal (gauche) conformation 365–6
syn-periplanar 365–6
Syntex 325
synthesis, asymmetric 3102–33
diversity orientated 1180
of natural products 872–5
planning see retrosynthetic analysis
synthon 695–6, 712
donor and acceptor 712, 719–20
systematic nomenclature 34–41
T
Taber, Douglass F. 1020
Tamoxifen oxidation see Fleming–Tamao oxidation 673
Tamiflu see oseltamivir
tamoxifen, synthesis of 393
tandem reactions 603–5, 640
Taranabant 1117
tartaric acid 31, 317–18, 1105
tautomerism 629
in NMR 449–50
in thioamide 772
keto-enol 450–1
of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds 457–8
of carboxylic acids 451
of hydroxypyridines 728
of imidazole 451
of imines 456–7
of tetrazole 744
tautomers 629
Taxol (paclitaxel) 1169–70
geminal (\(\gamma\)) coupling in 820
synthesis via pinacol radical reaction 982
tazadoline 717
TBAF (tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride) 550, 669
TBDMS (tert-butyldimethylsilyl), as protecting group 549–50, 670
TBDPs (tert-butyldiphenylsilyl), as alcohol protecting group 670
t-Bu, t-butyl see tert-butyl
TCP 480
temperature, convenience of –78 °C 253
effect on equilbrium constants 248–9
effect on rates of reaction 250–3, 257, 266
TEMPO (2,2′,6,6′-tetramethylpiperidine N-oxide) 975
ten-membered ring, conformational drawing of 637
formation, using Stille coupling 1084
terephthalic acid 210
ten-membered ring, conformational drawing
of 637–8
formation, using Stille coupling 1084
tetramethylsilane (TMS), in 1H NMR 55–6, 794
thiophene 735–7
thioether
thiocetic acid, 13C NMR spectrum
thiocarbonyl compounds, stability of 662
thioamide 772
thioiranium 785
thienamycin 816–17
thiranium see episolonium
thioacetals 657, 661–2 see also dithianes
for removal of carboxyl groups 540
hydrolysis of 663
of glucose 1144
thioacetate, as nucleophile in S\(_n\)2 355
thioglycollic acid 772
thiobenzoin 657, 678
thiocarbonyl compounds, stability of 662
thiociacetic acid, 1H NMR spectrum see lipic acid
thioesters 355
compared with esters 1153
of coenzyme A 1152–3
thioether see sulfide 659
thiol 27, 657–8
in glutathione 1140
reaction with epoxide 121–3
sulfide from 336
thiolate anion 1146
conjugate addition to nitroalkane 904
in nucleophilic aromatic substitution 517, 728
in Payne rearrangement 938–9
thiols 4
as nucleophiles 354–5
from hydrogen sulfide and alkene 434–5
in conjugate addition 500–1, 506–8, 852
oxidation to disulfides 1140
thionyll chloride, in synthesis of acyl chlorides 214–15, 462, 658
thiophene 735–7
desulphonization 737
electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions 735, 737
from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds 759
oxidation of 739
reaction with butyllithium 737
regioselectivity in reactions of 735
sulfone 739
sulfoxide 739
thiophenesaccharin, synthesis of 582

INDEX
INDEX

1233

U

ulcer treatment drug, cimetidine 178–80
ultraviolet absorption, for detection in HPLC 1111
ultraviolet light, associated energy of 971
for radical initiation 572
ultraviolet-visible (UV-vis) spectroscopy 148–50
umpolung 720
Uncertainty Principle, Heisenberg’s 83
unimolecular reactions 259–60
Uncertainty Principle, Heisenberg’s 83
umpolung 720

W

Wacker oxidation 1096
Wadsworth-Emmons reaction see Horner-Wadsworth-Emmons reaction
Wagner-Meerwein rearrangement 942–4
water, addition to carbonyl group 133–5
as a solvent for organic compounds 163–4
as an acid and a base 167–8, 170
as nuclophile 113
as solvent in Wittig reaction 237, 689–93

X

X, as abbreviation for halogen 30
xanthine oxidase 751
xanthine, oxidation to uric acid 751
XantPhos 1093
X-ray crystallography 44–5
xylene, as solvent 358
xylose, as solvent 316

Y

yew tree 1170
yld (ylide) 237

V

valerian root oil 948
valine 554, 1104
chiral auxiliary from 1108
Valium 326, 793
vanadyl acetoacetonate 850–1
vancomycin 308, 1142
vanillin 9

V

valine 554, 1104
chiral auxiliary from 1108
Valium 326, 793
vanadyl acetoacetonate 850–1
vancomycin 308, 1142
vanillin 9

INDEX

1233
Z

Z/E-alkenes, calculating energy difference between 265
Z-alkenes see alkenes
Zantac see ranitidine
zeolite 226
Ziegler–Natta polymerization 1076

zig-zag, drawing carbon chains as framework 18–19
Zimmerman–Traxler transition state, for aldol reaction 869–70, 1130
zinc carbenoid, in Simmons-Smith reaction 1009, 1017
zinc enolates, [4+3] cycloaddition reaction of 893–4

formation of 631
zinc, as reducing agent 494, 658–9, 899, 902
organometallic derivatives of 189
Zovirax see acyclovir
zwitterion 167, 174
of glycine, 1H NMR spectrum 284–5
WHAT LECTURERS HAVE SAID ABOUT THE FIRST EDITION:

'A magnificent resource.' Angewandte Chemie

'Refreshing, exciting, and motivational.' Tony Barrett, Imperial College London

'This is a book we have all been waiting for! It is based on sound mechanistic reasoning and contains thousands of useful examples for teaching.'

Adam Nelson, University of Leeds

'Represents a milestone in the field of organic chemistry textbooks.'

Times Higher Education

Inspiring and motivating its readers from the moment it was published, Organic Chemistry has established itself in just one edition as the students' choice of organic chemistry text. At heart, the second edition remains true to the first, being built on three principles:

An explanatory approach, through which you are motivated to understand the subject and not just learn the facts;

A mechanistic approach, giving you the skills to explain the chemistry of compounds and to predict the success of reactions you may not have met before;

An evidence-based approach, setting out clearly how spectroscopic and other physical methods tell us the facts of organic chemistry, giving critical depth and context to your understanding.

New to this edition:

► All chapters have been revised and refined to provide a more student-friendly, more logical, and more coherent presentation of the subject.

► Chapters are extensively cross-linked to a bank of over 500 interactive online resources, which help you visualize molecular structure, and gain a deeper and richer understanding of reaction mechanisms.

► Early chapters have been recast to give a more carefully graded learning curve, which builds up chemical ideas step by step and avoids confronting you with too much, too soon.

► Coverage of those topics with particular practical relevance that have developed in the last ten years has been enhanced, including the presentation of metathesis, modern methods of asymmetric synthesis (including organocatalysis), 'click chemistry,' and palladium-catalysed couplings.

► A new chapter on regioselectivity has been introduced, providing (along with the chapter on chemoselectivity) a pause for thought and 'revision session' in the middle of the book.

► Suggestions for further reading have been added to all chapters to help you take the next step in your learning.

A solutions manual to accompany the book, written by Jonathan Clayden, is also available.
Solutions manual to accompany

Organic Chemistry

Second Edition

Jonathan Clayden, Nick Greeves, and Stuart Warren

Jonathan Clayden
University of Manchester

Stuart Warren
University of Cambridge
Suggested solutions for Chapter 2

PROBLEM 1

Draw good diagrams of saturated hydrocarbons with seven carbon atoms having (a) linear, (b) branched, and (c) cyclic structures. Draw molecules based on each framework having both ketone and carboxylic acid functional groups in the same molecule.

Purpose of the problem

To get you drawing simple structures realistically and to steer you away from rules and names towards more creative and helpful ways of representing molecules.

Suggested solution

There is only one linear hydrocarbon but there are many branched and cyclic options. We offer some possibilities, but you may have thought of others.

- **linear saturated hydrocarbon (n-heptane)**

- **some branched hydrocarbons**

- **some cyclic hydrocarbons**

We give you a few examples of keto-carboxylic acids based on these structures. A ketone has to have a carbonyl group not at the end of a chain; a carboxylic acid functional group by contrast has to be at the end of a chain. You will notice that no carboxylic acid based on the first three cyclic structures is possible without adding another carbon atom.
LINEAR MOLECULES CONTAINING KETONE AND CARBOXYLIC ACID

SOME BRANCHED KETO-ACIDS

SOME CYCLIC KETO-ACIDS

PROBLEM 2

Draw for yourself the structures of amoxicillin and Tamiflu shown on page 10 of the textbook. Identify on your diagrams the functional groups present in each molecule and the ring sizes. Study the carbon framework: is there a single carbon chain or more than one? Are they linear, branched, or cyclic?

Purpose of the problem

To persuade you that functional groups are easy to identify even in complicated structures: an ester is an ester no matter what company it keeps and it can be helpful to look at the nature of the carbon framework too.

Suggested solution

The functional groups shouldn’t have given you any problem except perhaps for the sulfide (or thioether) and the phenol (or alcohol). You should have seen that both molecules have an amide as well as an amine.
The ring sizes are easy and we hope you noticed that one bond between the four- and the five-membered ring in the penicillin is shared by both rings.

The carbon chains are quite varied in length and style and are broken up by N, O, and S atoms.
PROBLEM 3
Identify the functional groups in these two molecules

the heart drug candosatril
a derivative of the sugar ribose

Purpose of the problem
Identifying functional groups is not just a sterile exercise in classification: spotting the difference between an ester, an ether, an acetal and a hemiacetal is the first stage in understanding their chemistry.

Suggested solution
The functional groups are marked on the structures below. Particularly important is to identify an acetal and a hemiacetal, in which both ‘ether-like’ oxygens are bonded to a single carbon, as a single functional group.
PROBLEM 4
What is wrong with these structures? Suggest better ways to represent these molecules.

Purpose of the problem
To shock you with two dreadful structures and to try to convince you that well-drawn realistic structures are more attractive to the eye as well as easier to understand and quicker to draw.

Suggested solution
The bond angles are grotesque with square planar saturated carbon atoms, bent alkynes with 120° bonds, linear alkenes with bonds at 90° or 180°, bonds coming off a benzene ring at the wrong angles and so on. If properly drawn, the left-hand structure will be clearer without the hydrogen atoms. Here are better structures for each compound but you can think of many other possibilities.

PROBLEM 5
Draw structures for the compounds named systematically here. In each case suggest alternative names that might convey the structure more clearly if you were speaking to someone rather than writing.
(a) 1,4-di-(1,1-dimethylethyl)benzene
(b) 1-(prop-2-enyloxy)prop-2-ene
(c) cyclohexa-1,3,5-triene

Purpose of the problem
To help you appreciate the limitations of systematic names, the usefulness of part structures and, in the case of (c), to amuse.
Suggested solution

(a) A more helpful name would be *para*-di-*t*-butyl benzene. It is sold as 1,4-di-*t*-butyl benzene, an equally helpful name. There are two separate numerical relationships.

(b) This name conveys neither the simple symmetrical structure nor the fact that it contains two allyl groups. Most chemists would call it 'diallyl ether' though it is sold as 'allyl ether'.

(c) This is of course simply benzene!

PROBLEM 6

Translate these very poor structural descriptions into something more realistic. Try to get the angles about right and, whatever you do, don’t include any square planar carbon atoms or any other bond angles of 90°.

(a) C₆H₅CH(OH)(CH₂)₄CO₂C₂H₅
(b) O(CH₂CH₂)₂O
(c) (CH₃O)₂CH=CHCH(OCH₃)₂

Purpose of the problem

An exercise in interpretation and composition. This sort of ‘structure’ is sometimes used in printed text. It gives no clue to the shape of the molecule.

Suggested solution

You probably need a few ‘trial and error’ drawings first but simply drawing out the carbon chain gives you a good start. The first is straightforward—the (OH) group is a substituent joined to the chain and not part of it. The second compound must be cyclic—it is the ether solvent commonly known as dioxane. The third gives no hint as to the shape of the alkene and we have chosen *trans*. It also has two ways of representing a methyl group. Either is fine, but it is better not to mix the two in one structure.
PROBLEM 7

Identify the oxidation level of all the carbon atoms of the compounds in problem 6.

Purpose of the problem

This important exercise is one you will get used to very quickly and, before long, do without thinking. If you do it will save you from many trivial errors. Remember that the oxidation state of all the carbon atoms is +4 or C(IV). The oxidation level of a carbon atom tells you to which oxygen-based functional group it can be converted without oxidation or reduction.

Suggested solution

Just count the number of bonds between the carbon atom and heteroatoms (atoms which are not H or C). If none, the atom is at the hydrocarbon level (□), if one, the alcohol level (○), if two the aldehyde or ketone level, if three the carboxylic acid level (●) and, if four, the carbon dioxide level.

Why alkenes have the alcohol oxidation level is explained on page 33 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 8
Draw full structures for these compounds, displaying the hydrocarbon framework clearly and showing all the bonds in the functional groups. Name the functional groups.
(a) $\text{AcO(CH}_2\text{)}_3\text{NO}_2$
(b) $\text{MeO}_2\text{CCH}_2\text{OCOEt}$
(c) $\text{CH}_2=\text{CHCONH(CH}_2\text{)}_2\text{CN}$

Purpose of the problem
This problem extends the purpose of problem 6 as more thought is needed and you need to check your knowledge of the ‘organic elements’ such as Ac.

Suggested solution
For once the solution can be simply stated as no variation is possible. In the first structure ‘AcO’ represents an acetate ester and that the nitro group can have only four bonds (not five) to N. The second has two ester groups on the central carbon, but one is joined to it by a C–O and the other by a C–C bond. The last is straightforward.

![Structures](AcO(CH2)3NO2, MeO2CCH2OCOEt, CH2=CHCONH(CH2)2CN)

PROBLEM 9
Draw structures for the following molecules, and then show them again using at least one ‘organic element’ symbol in each.
(a) ethyl acetate
(b) chloromethyl methyl ether
(c) pentanenitrile
(d) $N$-acetyl $p$-aminophenol
(e) 2,4,6-tri-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenylamine

Purpose of the problem
Compound names mean nothing unless you can visualize their structures. More practice using ‘organic elements’.
Suggested solution

The structures are shown below—things to look out for are the difference between acetyl and acetate, the fact that the carbon atom of the nitrile group is included in the name, and the way that a \textit{tert}-butyl group can be named as ‘1,1-dimethylethyl’.

![Structures](image)

PROBLEM 10

Suggest at least six different structures that would fit the formula $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7\text{NO}$. Make good realistic diagrams of each one and say which functional groups are present.

Purpose of the problem

The identification and naming of functional groups is more important than the naming of compounds, because the names of functional groups tell you about their chemistry. This was your chance to experiment with different groups and different carbon skeletons and to experience the large number of compounds you could make from a formula with few atoms.

Suggested solution

We give twelve possible structures – there are of course many more. You need not have used the names in brackets as they are ones more experienced chemists might use.
alkyne, primary amine
primary alcohol

(cyclic) amide
(lactam)

ketone, alkene,
primary amine (enamine)

ether, alkene
secondary amine

(cyclic) tertiary amine
aldehyde

alkene, amine, alcohol
(cyclic hydroxylamine)

(cyclic) ketone
primary amine

oxime
amine and alcohol

ether, nitrile

primary alcohol,
nitrile

imine, ether
(isoxazoline)

alkene, primary amide
Suggested solutions for Chapter 3

PROBLEM 1

Assuming that the molecular ion is the base peak (100% abundance) what peaks would appear in the mass spectrum of each of these molecules:

(a) C\textsubscript{2}H\textsubscript{5}BrO
(b) C\textsubscript{60}
(c) C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4}BrCl

In cases (a) and (c) suggest a possible structure of the molecule. What is (b)?

Purpose of the problem

To give you some practice with mass spectra and, in particular, at interpreting isotopic peaks. The molecular ion is the most important ion in the spectrum and often the only one that interests us.

Suggested solution

Bromine has two isotopes, \textsuperscript{79}Br and \textsuperscript{81}Br in about a 1:1 ratio. Chlorine has two isotopes \textsuperscript{35}Cl and \textsuperscript{37}Cl in about a 3:1 ratio. There is about 1.1% \textsuperscript{13}C in normal compounds.

(a) C\textsubscript{2}H\textsubscript{5}BrO will have two main molecular ions at 124 and 126. There will be very small (2.2%) peaks at 125 and 126 from the 1.1% of \textsuperscript{13}C at each carbon atom.

(b) C\textsubscript{60} has a molecular ion at 720 with a strong peak at 721 of 60 x 1.1 = 66%, more than half as strong as the \textsuperscript{12}C peak at 720. This compound is buckminsterfullerene.

(c) This compound is more complicated. It will have a 1:1 ratio of \textsuperscript{79}Br and \textsuperscript{81}Br and a 3:1 ratio of \textsuperscript{35}Cl and \textsuperscript{37}Cl in the molecular ion. There are four peaks from these isotopes (ratios in brackets) C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{79}Br\textsuperscript{35}Cl (3), C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{81}Br\textsuperscript{35}Cl (3), C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{79}Br\textsuperscript{37}Cl (1), and C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{81}Br\textsuperscript{37}Cl (1), the masses of these peaks being 190, 192, 192, and 194. So the complete molecular ion will have three main peaks at 190, 192, and 194 in a ratio of 3:4:1 with peaks at 191, 193, and 194 at 6.6% of the peak before it.

Compounds (a) and (c) might be isomers of compounds such as these:

\[\text{Br} \quad \text{OH} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Br} \\ \text{Cl} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Br} \\ \text{Br} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} \\ \text{Br} \end{array}\]
PROBLEM 2
Ethyl benzoate PhCO₂Et has these peaks in its ¹³C NMR spectrum: 17.3, 61.1, 100–150 (four peaks) and 166.8 ppm. Which peak belongs to which carbon atom? You are advised to make a good drawing of the molecule before you answer.

Purpose of the problem
To familiarize you with the four regions of the spectrum.

Suggested solution
It isn’t possible to say which aromatic carbon is which and it doesn’t matter. The rest are straightforward.

PROBLEM 3
Methoxatin was mentioned on page 44 of the textbook where we said ‘it proved exceptionally difficult to solve the structure by NMR.’ Why is it so difficult? Could anything be gained from the ¹³C or ¹H NMR? What information could be gained from the mass spectrum and the infra red?

Purpose of the problem
To convince you that this structure really needs an X-ray solution but also to get you to think about what information is available by the other methods. Certainly mass spectroscopy, NMR, and IR would have been tried first.

Suggested solution
There are only two hydrogens on carbon atoms and they are both on aromatic rings. There are only two types of carbon atom: carbonyl groups and unsaturated ring atoms. This information is mildly interesting but is essentially negative—it tells us what is not there but gives us no information on the basic skeleton, where the carboxylic acids are, nor does it reveal the 1,2-diketone in the middle ring.
The mass spectrum would at least give the molecular formula C₁₄H₆N₂O₈ and the infra-red would reveal an N–H group, carboxylic acids, and perhaps the 1,2-diketone. The X-ray was utterly convincing and the molecule has now been synthesized, confirming the structure.

![Chemical structure diagram](image)

**PROBLEM 4**

The solvent formerly used in some correcting fluids is a single compound C₂H₃Cl₃, having¹³C NMR peaks at 45.1 and 95.0 ppm. What is its structure? How would you confirm it spectroscopically? A commercial paint thinner gives two spots on chromatography and has¹³C NMR peaks at 7.0, 27.5, 35.2, 45.3, 95.6, and 206.3 ppm. Suggest what compounds might be used in this thinner.

**Purpose of the problem**

To start you on the road to structure identification with one very simple problem and some deductive reasoning. It is necessary to think about the size of the chemical shifts to solve this problem.

**Suggested solution**

With the very small molecule C₂H₃Cl₃ it is best to start by drawing all the possible structures. In fact there are only two.

![Chemical structures](image)

The first would have a peak for the methyl group in the 0–50 region and one for the CCl₃ group at a very large chemical shift because of the three chlorine atoms. The second isomer would have two peaks in the 50–100 region, not that far apart. The second structure looks better but it would be easily confirmed by proton NMR as the first structure would have one peak only but the second would have two peaks for different CHs. The solvent is indeed the second structure 1,1,2-trichloroethane.

Two of the peaks (45.3 and 95.6) in the paint thinner are much the same as those for this compound (chemical shifts change slightly in a mixture as...
the two compounds dissolve each other). The other compound has a carbonyl group at 206.3 and three saturated carbon atoms, two close to the carbonyl group (larger shifts) and one further away. Butanone fits the bill perfectly. You were not expected to decide which CH₂ group belongs to which molecule—that can be found out by running a spectrum of pure butanone.

PROBLEM 5
The ‘normal’ O–H stretch in the infrared (i.e. without hydrogen bonding) comes at about 3600 cm⁻¹. What is the reduced mass (μ) for O–H? What happens to the reduced mass when you double the mass of each atom in turn, i.e. what is μ for O–D and what is μ for S–H? In fact, both O–D and S–H stretches come at about 2,500 cm⁻¹. Why?

Purpose of the problem
To get you thinking about the positions of IR bands in terms of the two main influences: reduced mass and bond strength.

Suggested solution
Using the equation on page 64 of the textbook we find that the reduced mass of OH is 16/17 or about 0.94. When you double the mass of H, the reduced mass of OD becomes 32/18 or about 1.78—nearly double that of OH. But when you double the mass of O, the reduced mass of SH is 32/33 or about 0.97—hardly changed from OH! The change in the reduced mass from OH to OD is enough to account for the change in stretching frequency—a change of about √2. But the change in reduced mass from OH to SH cannot account for the change in frequency. The explanation is that the S–H bond is weaker than the O–H bond by a factor of about 2. So both both O–D and S–H absorb at about the same frequency.

There is an important principle to be deduced from this problem. Very roughly, all the reduced masses of all bonds involving the heavier elements (C, N, O, S etc.) differ by relatively small amounts and the differences in stretching frequency are mainly due to changes in bond strength, though it can be significant in comparing, say, C–O with C–Cl. With bonds involving hydrogen the reduced mass becomes by far the most important factor.
**Problem 6**

Three compounds, each having the formula $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{NO}$, have the IR data summarized here. What are their structures? Without $^{13}\text{C}$ NMR data it might be easier to draw some or all possible structures before trying to decide which is which. In what ways would $^{13}\text{C}$ NMR data help?

(a) One sharp band above 3000 cm$^{-1}$ and one strong band at about 1700 cm$^{-1}$

(b) Two sharp bands above 3000 cm$^{-1}$ and two bands between 1600 and 1700 cm$^{-1}$

(c) One strong broad band above 3000 cm$^{-1}$ and a band at about 2200 cm$^{-1}$

**Purpose of the problem**

To show that IR alone does have some use but that NMR data are usually essential as well. In answers to exam questions of this type it is important to show how you interpret the data as well as to give a structure. If you get the structure right, this doesn’t matter, but if you get it wrong, you may still get credit for your interpretation.

**Suggested solution**

(a) One sharp band above 3000 cm$^{-1}$ must be an N–H and one strong band at about 1700 cm$^{-1}$ must be a carbonyl group. That leaves $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4$, so we might have one of the structures shown below, though other less likely structures are possible too. $^{13}\text{C}$ NMR data would help as it would definitely show two types of saturated carbon (along with the carbonyl group) for the first compound, but only one for the second.

(b) Two sharp bands above 3000 cm$^{-1}$ must be an NH$_2$ group and two bands between 1600 and 1700 cm$^{-1}$ suggest a carbonyl group and an alkene. This leaves us with three hydrogen atoms so we must have something like the molecules below. $^{13}\text{C}$ NMR data would help as it would show an alkene carbon shifted downfield by being joined to electronegative nitrogen in the second case.

(c) One strong broad band above 3000 cm$^{-1}$ must be an OH group and a band at about 2200 cm$^{-1}$ must be a triple bond, presumably CN as otherwise

---

You will meet other ways of distinguishing these compounds in chapters 13 and 18.
we have nowhere to put the nitrogen atom. This means structures of this sort.

![N-containing structures]

**PROBLEM 7**
Four compounds having the formula C₄H₆O₂ have the IR and NMR data given below. How many DBEs (double bond equivalents—see p. 75 in the textbook) are there in C₄H₆O₂? What are the structures of the four compounds? You might again find it useful to draw a few structures to start with.

(a) IR: 1745 cm⁻¹; ¹³C NMR 214, 82, 58, and 41 ppm
(b) IR: 3300 cm⁻¹ (broad); ¹³C NMR 62 and 79 ppm.
(c) IR: 1770 cm⁻¹; ¹³C NMR 178, 86, 40, and 27 ppm.
(d) IR: 1720 and 1650 cm⁻¹ (strong); ¹³C NMR 165, 133, 131, and 54 ppm.

**Purpose of the problem**
First steps in identifying a compound from two sets of data. Because the molecules are so small (only four carbon atoms) drawing out a few trial structures is a good way to start.

**Suggested solution**
Here are some possible structures for C₄H₆O₂. It is clear that there are two double bond equivalents and that double bonds and rings are likely to feature. Functional groups are likely to include alcohol, aldehyde, ketone and carboxylic acid.

![Possible structures]

(a) IR: 1745 cm⁻¹ must be a carbonyl group; ¹³C NMR 214 must be an aldehyde or ketone, 82 and 58 look like two carbons next to oxygen and 41 is a carbon not next to oxygen but not far away. As the second oxygen doesn’t show up in the IR, it must be an ether. As there is only one double bond, the compound must be cyclic. This suggests just one structure.

(b) IR: 3300 cm⁻¹ (broad) must be an OH; ¹³C NMR 62 and 79 show a symmetrical molecule and no C=O so it must have a triple bond and a saturated carbon next to oxygen. This again gives only one structure.
(c) IR: 1770 cm\(^{-1}\) must be some sort of carbonyl group; \(^{13}\)C NMR 178 suggests an acid derivative, 86 is a saturated carbon next to oxygen, 40 and 27 are saturated carbons not next to oxygen. There is only one double bond so it must be a ring. Looks like a close relative of (a).

(d) IR 1720 and 1650 cm\(^{-1}\) (strong) must be C=C and C=O; \(^{13}\)C NMR 165 is an acid derivative, 131 and 133 must be an alkene, and 54 is a saturated carbon next to oxygen. That defines all the carbon atoms. It is not significant that we cannot say which alkene carbon is which.

PROBLEM 8
You have dissolved tert-butanol in MeCN with an acid catalyst, left the solution overnight, and found crystals in the morning with the following characteristics. What are the crystals?

IR: 3435 and 1686 cm\(^{-1}\); \(^{13}\)C NMR: 169, 50, 29, and 25 ppm; \(^1\)H NMR: 8.0, 1.8, and 1.4 ppm; Mass spectrum (%): 115 (7), 100 (10), 64 (5), 60 (21), 59 (17), 58 (100), and 56 (7). Don’t try to assign all the peaks in the mass spectrum.

Purpose of the problem
This is a common situation: you carry out a reaction and find a product that is not starting material, but what is it? You’ll need to use all the information and some logic. What you must not do is to decide in advance what the product is from your (limited) knowledge of chemistry and make the data fit.

Suggested solution
The molecular ion in the mass spectrum is 115 and is presumably C\(_6\)H\(_{13}\)NO—the sum of the two reagents t-BuOH and MeCN. It appears that they have added together but the IR shows that neither OH nor CN has survived. So what do we know?

- The IR tells us we have an N–H and a C=O group, accounting for both heteroatoms.
- The \(^{13}\)C NMR shows a carbonyl group (169) and three types of saturated carbon.
• There must be a lot of symmetry, suggesting that the t-Bu group has survived.

This leaves four fragments: NH, C=O, Me, and t-Bu, confirmed also by the 1H NMR spectrum, which tells us that we have three types of H atoms. We can join these fragments up in two ways:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Me}
\end{align*}
\]

We might prefer the second as it retains the skeleton of MeCN, but a better reason is the base (100%) peak in the mass spectrum at 58. This is Me₂C=NH₂⁺ which could easily come from the second structure but only by extensive reorganization of the first structure.

The second structure is in fact correct but we need further analysis of the proton NMR (chapter 13) to be sure.

PROBLEM 9

How many signals would you expect in the 13C NMR spectrum of these compounds?

![Diagram of compounds A, B, C, D, and E]

**Purpose of the problem**

To get you thinking about symmetry.

**Suggested solution**

Compound A has tetrahedral symmetry and there are only two types of carbon: every CH₂ is the same, as is every CH, so it has two signals. This is the famous compound adamantane—a crystalline solid in spite of its being a hydrocarbon with only ten carbon atoms. If you do not see the symmetry, make a model—it is a beautiful structure.
Compound B is symmetrical too: the two C=O groups are the same and so are all the other carbon atoms in the ring. It is an orange crystalline solid called quinone. Two signals.

Compound C is naphthalene and has high symmetry: the two benzene rings are the same and there are only three types of carbon atom. Three signals.

Compound D is ‘triethanolamine’ used a lot by biochemists. It has threefold symmetry and only two types of carbon atom. Two signals.

Compound E is ‘EDTA’ (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid) an important chelating agent for metals. This time there are three types of carbon atom. Three signals.
PROBLEM 10
When benzene is treated with tert-butyl chloride and aluminium trichloride, a crystalline product A is formed that contains only C and H. Mass spectrometry tells us the molecular mass is 190. The $^1$H NMR spectrum looks like this:

If crystals of A are treated again with more tert-butyl chloride and aluminium chloride, a new oily compound B may be isolated, this time with a molecular mass of 246. Its $^1$H NMR spectrum is similar to that of A, but not quite the same:

What are the two compounds? How many signals do you expect in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of each compound?

Purpose of the problem
Identifying compounds from spectroscopic data, whether you know the reaction or not, is a key skill you must develop.
Suggested solution

The $^1$H NMR spectrum is so simple that both compounds must have a lot of symmetry. Each of the two signals is in a different region of the spectrum (see p. 60 of the textbook), so both compounds have one type of H attached to sp$^2$-hybridized C atoms (presumably from the benzene starting material) and one type of H attached to sp$^3$-hybridized C atoms (presumably from the tert-butyl chloride starting material).

Often a good place to start with this sort of problem is to use the molecular mass to work out approximately how many of each of the starting molecules have been incorporated into the product: benzene has a mass of 78 and the tert-butyl group a mass of 57 (the chloride must be lost as there is no chlorine in the product), so it looks as though A is made up from one benzene molecule plus two tert-butyl groups and B from one benzene molecule and three tert-butyl groups (with loss of two or three hydrogen atoms where the tert-butyls are bonded to the benzene ring).

So, the only question left is how the substituents are arranged. Two tert-butyl groups could be arranged ortho, meta or para to each other, but only the para arrangement is possible for A because only when the two groups are para are all the protons of the aromatic ring identical (check for yourself).

With three tert-butyl groups, there are three possible arrangements (again, draw them for yourself to check), but as before only one of these allows all the protons on the benzene ring to be identical, each sandwiched between two tert-butyl groups. We have our structures for A and B. Both of them will show four signals in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum, two of them between 100 and 150 ppm (C atoms in aromatic rings) and two of them between 0 and 50 ppm (saturated C atoms).
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 4

**PROBLEM 1**
Textbooks sometimes describe the structure of sodium chloride like this ‘an electron is transferred from the valence shell of a sodium atom to the valence shell of a chlorine atom.’ Why would this not be a sensible way to make sodium chloride?

**Purpose of the problem**
To make you think about genuine ways to make compounds rather than theoretical ways.

**Suggested solution**
Of course sodium chloride consists of arrays of sodium cations without their 2s electron and chloride anions that have eight electrons in the 2s and 2p orbitals, but that is not how sodium chloride is made. Sodium atoms are present in sodium metal but where would you get the chlorine atoms? Mixing sodium and chlorine (Cl₂) would undoubtedly give sodium chloride but these are two aggressive reagents that would probably explode. Indeed, you would be more likely to make sodium and chlorine by the electrolysis of sodium chloride than the other way round. In any case, why make sodium chloride? Salt mines and the oceans are full of it.

**PROBLEM 2**
The H–C–H bond angle in methane is 109.5°. The H–O–H bond angle of water is close to this number but the H–S–H bond angle of H₂S is near 90°. What does this tell us about the bonding in water and H₂S? Draw a diagram of the molecular orbitals in H₂S.

**Purpose of the problem**
An exploration of hybridization.

**Suggested solution**
If the bond angle in water is close to the tetrahedral angle of perfectly symmetrical methane, water must be more or less tetrahedral (with respect to the arrangement of its electrons) too. We can think of the 2s and 2p electrons in water as hybridized into four pairs of electrons, two in H–O
bonds and two as lone pairs on the oxygen atom. But H₂S has a near right angle for its H–S–H bond. This suggests that the bonds are formed with p orbitals on the sulfur atom and that H₂S is not hybridized. Orbital diagram of H₂S: you might have drawn something like this:

PROBLEM 3
Though the helium molecule He₂ does not exist (p. 91 of the textbook explains why), the cation He₂⁺ does exist. Why?

Purpose of the problem
To encourage you to think about the filling of molecular orbitals and to accept surprising conclusions.

Suggested solution
He₂ does not exist because the number of anti-bonding electrons is the same as the number of bonding electrons. The bond order is zero. But if we remove an electron from the diagram on p. 91 of the textbook we have He₂⁺, with two bonding electrons and only one anti-bonding electron. The bond order is one half. He₂⁺ does exist.
**PROBLEM 4**
Construct an MO diagram for LiH and suggest what type of bond it might have.

**Purpose of the problem**
To demonstrate that a simple MO treatment can be applied to ionic as well as covalent structures.

**Suggested solution**
H has of course only one electron in a 1s orbital. Li has three – a full 1s shell and one electron in the 2s orbital. Li is very electropositive so its 2s orbital is high in energy—much higher than that of the 1s orbital of H. An electron is more stable in the 1s orbital of H than in the 2s orbital of Li, and the molecule is ionic. Both ions have the same electronic configuration: 1s^2.

**PROBLEM 5**
What is the hybridization and shape of each carbon atom in these molecules?

**Purpose of the problem**
To give you practice at selecting the correct hybridization of carbon atoms.

**Suggested solution**
Simply count the number of σ-bonds at each carbon atom (not forgetting the hydrogens that may not be shown). Two σ-bonds means sp and linear, three means sp^2 and trigonal, and four means sp^3 and tetrahedral. In each case the bonds stay as far from each other as they can.
PROBLEM 6
Draw detailed structures for these molecules and predict their shapes. We have deliberately made non-committal drawings to avoid giving away the answer to the question. Don’t use these sorts of drawings in your answer.

\[
\text{CO}_2, \text{CH}_2=\text{NCH}_3, \text{CHF}_3, \text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{CH}_2, (\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**
To give you practice at selecting the right hybridization state for carbon atoms and translating this information into three-dimensional structures for the molecules.

**Suggested solution**
Carbon dioxide is linear as it has only two C–C σ-bonds and no lone pairs on C. The C atom must be sp hybridized and the only trick is to get the two π-bonds orthogonal to each other. They must be like that because the p orbitals on C used to make the two π-bonds are themselves orthogonal (p\(_x\) and p\(_y\)). Most people draw the O atoms as sp\(^2\) hybridized rather than sp or even unhybridized but this doesn’t matter as you really can’t tell.

The imine has a C=\(\text{N}\) double bond so it must have sp\(^2\) hybridized C and N. This means that the lone pair on nitrogen is in an sp\(^2\) orbital and not in a p orbital. The molecule is planar (except for the methyl group which is, of course, tetrahedral) and is bent at the nitrogen atom.
Trifluoromethane is, of course, tetrahedral with an sp\(^3\) hybridized carbon atom. The arrangement of the lone pairs round the fluorine (not shown) can also be assumed to be tetrahedral.

The next molecule CH\(_2\)=C=CH\(_2\) is allene and it has the same shape as CO\(_2\), and for the same reasons. We can now be sure that the end carbons are sp\(^2\) hybridized as they are planar, with the hydrogen substituents at 120° to each other and to the rest of the molecule. As with CO\(_2\), the two π bonds are orthogonal, meaning that the planes of the two terminal carbon atoms are also orthogonal, meaning that the molecule as a whole is not planar.

Finally, (CH\(_2\))\(_2\)O must be a three-membered ring and therefore the C–C–O skeleton must be planar (three points are always in a plane!). The two carbon atoms are sp\(^3\) hybridized (four σ bonds) and are tetrahedral (though very distorted as the ring angle is 60°) with the H atoms above and below the ring. The oxygen atom is presumably also sp\(^3\) hybridized, but it’s hard to tell experimentally.

**Problem 7**

Draw the shapes, showing estimated bond angles, of the following molecules:
(a) hydrogen peroxide, H\(_2\)O\(_2\)
(b) methyl isocyanate CH\(_3\)NCO
(c) hydrazine, NH\(_2\)NH\(_2\)
(d) diimide, N\(_2\)H\(_2\)
(e) the azide anion, N\(_3^-\)

**Purpose of the problem**

To think about shape and bond angles at elements other than carbon.
Suggested solution

Hydrogen peroxide, $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$, has only single bonds: each oxygen atom has two lone pairs and the electron pairs, both bonding and non-bonding, are arranged tetrahedrally. The bond angles at oxygen will be approximately the tetrahedral angle of 109°.

In methyl isocyanate, $\text{CH}_3\text{NCO}$, the interesting atoms are the N and the C. The N atom must have a double bond to C, for which it must use a p orbital, leaving an s and two p orbitals for the remainder of the electrons. The N atom is sp² and trigonal, with one lone pair, so the bond angle at N is about 120°. The C atom is double bonded to both N and O, so the C atom is like the one in CO₂—linear, and sp hybridized.

In hydrazine, $\text{NH}_2\text{NH}_2$, there are only single bonds: both nitrogens are like amine nitrogens, pyramidal and sp³ hybridized.

In diimide the only reasonable structure has a double bond between the two nitrogen atoms, HN=NH, making the nitrogens trigonal (they must use a p orbital to make this double bond, leaving an s and two p orbitals for the remainder of the bonding, i.e. they are sp² hybridized). Each nitrogen is trigonal, with 120° bond angles. An interesting point about diimide is that, like an alkene, it can have a cis and a trans isomer.

Bonding in the azide anion $\text{N}_3^-$ is identical with that in carbon dioxide: the two molecules are isoelectronic (count the electrons to make sure). The central nitrogen is sp hybridized and linear.

**PROBLEM 8**

Where would you expect to find the lone pairs in (a) water, (b) acetone ($\text{Me}_2\text{C}=\text{O}$), and (c) nitrogen ($\text{N}_2$)?

**Purpose of the problem**

More thinking about the arrangements of electrons at O and N. The location of lone pairs might not seem easy to determine, but it affects the way that molecules form coordination complexes, for example.

**Suggested solution**

The oxygen atom of water is surrounded by eight electrons in two bonding and two non-bonding orbitals: it is sp³ hybridized and the electron pairs are
arranged tetrahedrally, so the lone pairs point towards the remaining two vertices of a tetrahedron.

In acetone, the oxygen atom must use one of its p orbitals to form the \( \pi \) bond to carbon, so it is left with an s and two p orbitals to accommodate the six electrons making up the \( \sigma \) bond to C and the two lone pairs. These three electron pairs are presumably arranged trigonally, so the lone pairs will lie in the plane of the carbonyl group, about 120° apart.

The two nitrogen atoms of \( \text{N}_2 \) each need two of their p orbitals to form the two \( \pi \) bonds, so they are left with one s and one p orbital for the two remaining electron pairs: the \( \sigma \) bond and the lone pair. The nitrogen atoms are sp hybridized and the lone pairs are 180° from the other N.
This page intentionally left blank
**Suggested solutions for Chapter 5**

**PROBLEM 1**

Each of these molecules is electrophilic. Identify the electrophilic atom and draw a mechanism for a reaction with a generalized nucleophile \( \text{Nu}^- \), giving the structure of the product in each case.

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

The recognition of electrophilic sites is half the battle in starting to understand mechanisms.

**Suggested solution**

We have two cations, two carbonyl compounds and two compounds with \( \sigma \)-bonds only. One of the cations has three bonds to a positively charged carbon so that is the electrophilic site as it has an empty orbital. The nucleophile will attack here.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

The other cation has a three-valent oxygen atom that cannot be the electrophilic site. The nucleophile must attack the proton instead. Some nucleophiles might attack the carbon atom joined to the cationic oxygen.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

The two carbonyl compounds will be attacked at the carbonyl group by the nucleophile. In general, \( \pi \)-bonds are more easily broken than \( \sigma \)-bonds and the negative charge goes on to the electronegative oxygen atom. In fact these anions will not be the final products of the reactions. As we will explore in more detail in later chapters, the first will pick up a proton to give an alcohol but the second might decompose with the release of the stable carboxylate anion.
The remaining electrophiles have σ-bonds only, one of which must break. Chlorine is symmetrical so it doesn’t matter which end you attack. You have more choice with MeSCl but the stability of the chloride ion wins the day: attack occurs at sulfur.

PROBLEM 2

Each of these molecules is nucleophilic. Identify the nucleophilic atom and draw a mechanism for a reaction with a generalized nucleophile $E^+$, giving the structure of the product in each case.

Purpose of the problem

The recognition of nucleophilic sites is the other half of the battle in starting to understand mechanisms.

Suggested solution

This time there are three anions but two of them (the alkyne and the sulfur anions) have lone pair electrons. We should start our arrows from the negative charges and they are the points of attachment of the electrophile in the product.
The third anion is like the borohydride anion discussed on p. 119 of the textbook. The negative charge does not represent a pair of electrons on Al: all the electrons are in the Al–H bonds and we must start our arrow from one of those. The nucleophilic site is a hydrogen atom.

The remaining nucleophiles have lone pairs. The nitrogen-containing molecule is hydrazine: both nitrogens are the same, and the product is positively charged, so it will lose a proton to become more stable.

The phosphorus compound has four atoms with lone pairs, the P and three O atoms. The lone pairs on oxygen are in lower energy orbitals than the one on phosphorus (P is lower down the periodic table and less electronegative than O), so it is the lone pair on P that reacts. The product is positively charged but this time it can’t lose a proton.

**PROBLEM 3**

Complete these mechanisms by drawing the structure of the product(s).

**Purpose of the problem**

Practice in interpreting curly arrows and drawing the products. Once the arrows are drawn, there is no more scope for decision making, so just draw the products.
Suggested solution

Just break the bonds that are broken and make the bonds that are being formed. Don’t forget to put in any charges and make sure you have neither created nor destroyed charge overall. You might straighten out the products a bit so that there are no funny angles.

\[
\text{PROBLEM 4}
\]
Put in the curly arrows on these starting materials to show how the product is formed. The compounds are drawn in a convenient arrangement to help you.

Purpose of the problem

To encourage you to be prepared to try and draw mechanisms for reactions you have never seen and to show you how easy it is.

Suggested solution

Just work out which bonds are lost and which are formed and draw arrows out of the one into the space for the other. Start your arrows on a source of electrons: an oxyanion in both these cases. End your arrows on an electronegative atom: oxygen in the first and bromine in the second example here.
Don’t worry if your arrows are not exactly the same as ours – so long as they start and finish in the right place they're all right. The notes on the mechanisms are just to help you see what is going on: you would not normally include them. The second reaction looks more complicated than the first but it is actually easier: just move electrons through the molecule.

**PROBLEM 5**

Draw mechanisms for the reactions in the following sequence.

- \( \text{I} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{NaH}} \text{O}^- \)
- \( \text{PhCH}_2\text{Br} \xrightarrow{} \text{O}^- \text{Ph} \)

**Purpose of the problem**

Practice in drawing curly arrows for a simple sequence of reactions.

**Suggested solution**

First look for the bond being broken and the bond being formed. In the first reaction, the weak C–I bond is breaking and a C–O is forming. The new OH group must come from the hydroxide, so here we have our nucleophile: HO\(^-\). The electrophile is the alkyl iodide. Make your first arrow start on a source of electrons in the nucleophile—in this case that has to be the hydroxide's negative charge. Those electrons make the new C–O bond, so send them towards C. The old C–I bond must break at the same time, forming an iodide anion.
In the next step, we just lose H, or rather H⁺, from the hydroxyl group. Sodium hydride is the reagent, and hydride is a base. Bases are just nucleophiles which attack H, so we can start our arrow on the negative charge again, attack H and break the H–O bond, pushing the electrons onto oxygen to make the anion. You need to draw out the bond between O and H to represent this mechanism clearly. The other product is of course gaseous hydrogen.

In the final step, the oxyanion must act as the nucleophile and the electrophile is benzyl bromide. The arrows start on the negative charge, and show the new C–O bond forming and the old C–Br bond breaking.

**PROBLEM 6**

Each of these electrophiles could react with a nucleophile at one of (at least) two atoms. Identify these atoms and draw a mechanism and products for each reaction.

**Purpose of the problem**

Considering possible alternative reactions. One of the reactions might seem trivial, but it isn’t.

**Suggested solution**

In each case one of the electrophilic sites is an acidic proton. There is also the electrophilic π bond (C=N⁺ or C=O). For the first case, we draw the two reactions separately.
In case you were seduced by the positively charged nitrogen atom (we hope you weren’t), we should also remind you of a reaction that most definitely cannot happen: direct attack at N: the supposed product has an impossible five bonds to nitrogen.

In the second compound there are three possibilities. The acidic proton of the carboxylic acid and the electrophilic C=O bond are both possible reaction sites, but now so is the positively charged phosphorus. Phosphorus comes below nitrogen in the periodic table so, unlike N, it can have five bonds.
PROBLEM 7
These three reactions all give the products shown, but not by the mechanisms drawn! For each mechanism, explain what is wrong, and draw a better one.

Purpose of the problem
Getting a feel for how you can, and can’t, use curly arrows to represent mechanisms.

Suggested solution
In the first reaction, the nucleophile is the amine and the electrophile is the methyl iodide, so the arrow is right in the sense that it starts on the nucleophile, where the electrons come from. However, we have stressed that a curly arrow should start on a representation of an electron pair, in other words on a lone pair, a bond or a negative charge. Here the arrow just starts on an atom: this is no good, and we must draw in the lone pair. The other problem is at the end of the arrow. It shows a new bond being formed to C, so unless a bond breaks then the C atom will have an impossible five bonds. We need another arrow to show the C–I bond breaking.
In the second reaction we form a cation by attack of a proton on an alkene. Which is the nucleophile? It can’t be H⁺: by definition a proton can’t have a pair of electrons! The arrow must therefore start on the alkene and show the electrons moving towards the proton, not the other way round. The electrons come from the π bond, so the double bond is where we start the arrow. We only need one arrow, because as the new C–H bond forms, the C atom at other end of the old π bond is left with only 6 electrons, and becomes positively charged.

The last reaction forms a new S–Cl bond. The arrow we have drawn starts on a lone pair, but if electrons are moving from Cl to S, surely the S will become negatively charged? The mistake is that the arrow is the wrong way round: the sulfur atom is the nucleophile, and the more electronegative chlorine is the electrophile. Start the arrow on the sulfur lone pair, and break the old Cl–Cl bond as the electrons arrive at Cl.

**PROBLEM 8**

In your corrected mechanisms for problem 7, explain in each case which orbital is the HOMO of the nucleophile and which orbital is the LUMO of the electrophile.

**Purpose of the problem**

Reinforcing the link between curly arrows and molecular orbitals.

**Suggested solution**

The nucleophilic amine of the first reaction uses its lone pair to form the new bond: the HOMO is the sp³ orbital containing this non-bonding electron pair. The empty orbital used by the electrophile must be an antibonding orbital, since as the electrons arrive there they cause the C–I bond to break: the LUMO is the C–I σ* orbital.

When the alkene is protonated, it loses its π bond, and we have already pointed out that the electrons must come from this bond (that’s why we
start the arrow there). So the HOMO is the C=C π orbital. The LUMO is the only orbital the H⁺ ion has available: its empty 1s orbital.

In the third reaction, the LUMO of the electrophile is easy to spot: it must be the Cl–Cl σ* orbital, since that is the bond that breaks. The nucleophile uses the lone pair on sulfur to react, so the HOMO is the non-bonding orbital occupied by this lone pair.

**PROBLEM 9**

draw a mechanism for the following reaction. (This is harder, but if you draw out the structures of the reactants first, and consider that one is an acid and one is a base, you will make a good start.)

\[
\text{PhCHBrCHBrCO}_2\text{H} + \text{NaHCO}_3 \rightarrow \text{PhCH=CHBr} + \text{NaHCO}_3
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

Working out the mechanism for a more difficult transformation.

**Suggested solution**

Working out the structure of the starting material, even through it’s written very unhelpfully, is straightforward if you take into account the fact that each carbon has four substituents. Bicarbonate is a base, so you expect the carboxylic acid to be deprotonated to form a carboxylate anion.

![Structure](image)

Now for the real reaction. Looking at the product tells us we have to lose CO₂, along with one of the bromine atoms, so the bonds that have to break are the ones shown in the structure above. The best thing to do in this case is to start ‘pushing arrows’—one of the reasons they are so powerful is they often lead you through to the product. Start at the obvious place—the negative charge—and be guided by the bonds that have to break and form.

![Mechanism](image)

Everything works and the electrons end up happily on a bromide anion.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 6

**PROBLEM 1**

Draw mechanisms for these reactions:

1. \( \text{NaBH}_4 \xrightarrow{\text{EtOH, H}_2\text{O}} \text{CHO} \)
2. \( \text{LiAlH}_4 \xrightarrow{\text{1. LiAlH}_4, \text{2. H}_2\text{O}} \text{OH} \)

**Purpose of the problem**

Rehearsal of a simple but important mechanism that works for all aldehydes and ketones.

**Suggested solution**

Draw out the BH\(_4\) and AlH\(_3\) anions, with the carbonyl compound positioned so that one of the hydrogens can be transferred to the carbonyl group, and then transfer the hydrogen from B or Al to C. A proton transfer is needed to make the alcohol: from the solvent in the first case and during the work-up with water in the second.

This reaction shows that you can reduce aldehydes with lithium aluminium hydride, even if you would usually prefer the more practical sodium borohydride.
PROBLEM 2

Cyclopropanone exists as the hydrate in water but 2-hydroxyethanal does not exist as the hemiacetal. Explain.

Purpose of the problem
To get you thinking about equilibria and hence the stability of compounds.

Suggested solution
Hydration is an equilibrium reaction so the mechanism is not strictly relevant to the question, though there is no shame in including mechanisms whenever you can. To answer the question we must consider the effect of the three-membered ring on the relative stability of starting material and product. All three-membered rings are very strained because the bond angles are 60° instead of 109° or 120°. Cyclopropanone is particularly strained because the sp² carbonyl carbon would like a bond angle of 120°—there is ‘60° of strain.’ In the hydrate that carbon atom is sp³ hybridized and so there is only about ‘49° of strain.’ Not much gain, but the hydrate is more stable than the ketone.

The second case is totally different. The hydroxy-aldehyde is not strained at all but the hemiacetal has ‘49° of strain’ at each atom. Even without strain, hydrates and hemiacetals are usually less stable than their aldehydes or ketones because one C=O bond is worth more than two C–O bonds. In this case the hemiacetal is even less stable and, unlike the cyclopropanone, can escape strain by breaking a C–O ring bond.
PROBLEM 3
One way to make cyanohydrins is illustrated here. Suggest a detailed mechanism for the process.

Purpose of the problem
To help you get used to mechanisms involving silicon and revise an important way to promote additions to the carbonyl group.

Suggested solution
The silyl cyanide is an electrophile while the cyanide ion in the catalyst is the nucleophile. Cyanide adds to the carbonyl group and the oxyanion product is captured by silicon, liberating another cyanide ion for the next cycle.

PROBLEM 4
There are three possible products from the reduction of this compound with sodium borohydride. What are their structures? How would you distinguish them spectroscopically, assuming you can isolate pure compounds?

Purpose of the problem
To let you think practically about reactions that may give more than one product.

Suggested solution
The three compounds are easily drawn: one or other carbonyl group, or both, may be reduced.
The third compound, the diol, has no carbonyl group in the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum or the infrared and has a molecular ion two mass units higher than the other two products. Distinguishing those is more tricky, and needs techniques you will meet in detail in chapter 18. The hydroxyketone has a conjugated carbonyl group (C=O stretch at about 1680 cm$^{-1}$ in the infrared spectrum) while the hydroxyaldehyde is not conjugated (C=O stretch at about 1730 cm$^{-1}$ in the infrared). The chemical shift of the C–OH carbons will also be different because the benzene ring is joined to this carbon in the aldehyde but not in the ketone.

**PROBLEM 5**

The triketone shown here is called ‘ninhydrin’ and is used for the detection of amino acids. It exists in aqueous solution as a hydrate. Which ketone is hydrated and why?

**Purpose of the problem**

To let you think practically about reactions that may give more than one product.

**Suggested solution**

The two ketones next to the benzene ring are stabilized by conjugation with it but also destabilized by the central ketone—two electron-withdrawing groups next to each other is a bad thing. The central carbonyl group is not stabilized by conjugation and is destabilized by two other ketones so it forms the hydrate. Did you remember that hydrate formation is thermodynamically controlled?
**PROBLEM 6**

This hydroxyketone shows no peaks in its infrared spectrum between 1600 and 1800 cm\(^{-1}\), but it does show a broad absorption at 3000–3400 cm\(^{-1}\). In the \(^{13}\)C NMR spectrum there are no peaks above 150 ppm but there is a peak at 110 ppm. Suggest an explanation.

**Purpose of the problem**

Structure determination to solve a conundrum.

**Suggested solution**

The evidence shows that there is no carbonyl group in the molecule but that there is an OH group. The peak at 110 ppm looks at first sight like an alkene, but it could also be an unusual saturated carbon atom bonded to two oxygens. You might have argued that an alcohol and a ketone could combine to give a hemiacetal, and that is, of course, just what it is. The compound exists as a stable hemiacetal because it has a favourable five-membered ring.

P. 136 of the textbook explains why cyclic hemiacetals are stable.
PROBLEM 7
Each of these compounds is a hemiacetal and therefore formed from an alcohol and a carbonyl compound. In each case give the structures of the original materials.

Purpose of the problem
To give you practice in seeing the underlying structure of a hemiacetal.

Suggested solution
Each OH group represents a carbonyl group in disguise (marked with a grey circle). Just break the bond between this carbon and the other oxygen atom and you will see what the hemiacetal was made from. The first example shows how it is done.

The next is similar but the alcohol is a different molecule.

Do not be deceived by the third example. There is one hemiacetal (two oxygens joined to the same carbon atom) but the other OH is just a tertiary alcohol.
The last two examples are not quite the same. The first is indeed symmetrical but the second has one oxygen atom in a different position so that there is only one hemiacetal. Note that these hemiacetals may not be stable.

PROBLEM 8
Trichloroethanol may be prepared by the direct reduction of chloral hydrate in water with sodium borohydride. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. Take note that sodium borohydride does not displace hydroxide from carbon atoms!

Purpose of the problem
To help you detect bad mechanisms and find concealed good ones.

Suggested solution
If sodium borohydride doesn’t displace hydroxide from carbon atoms, then what does it do? We know it attacks carbonyl groups to give alcohols and to get trichloroethanol we should have to reduce chloral. Hemiacetals are in equilibrium with their carbonyl equivalents, so...

[Diagram of reactions involving chloral hydrate and trichloroethanol]
PROBLEM 9
It has not been possible to prepare the adducts from simple aldehydes and HCl. What would be the structure of such compounds, if they could be made, and what would be the mechanism of their formation? Why can’t these compounds be made?

Purpose of the problem
More revision of equilibria to help you develop a judgement on stability.

Suggested solution
This time we need a mechanism so that we can work out what would be formed. Protonation of the carbonyl group and then nucleophilic addition of chloride ion would give the supposed products.

There’s nothing wrong with the mechanism, it’s just that the reaction is an equilibrium that will run backwards. Hemiacetals are unstable because they decompose back to carbonyl compounds. Chloride ion is very stable and decomposition will be faster than it is for hemiacetals.

PROBLEM 10
What would be the products of these reactions? In each case give a mechanism to justify your prediction.

Purpose of the problem
Giving you practice in the art of predicting products—more difficult than simply justifying a known answer.

Suggested solution
The Grignard reagent will add to the carbonyl group and the work-up will give a tertiary alcohol as the final product.
The second reaction should give you brief pause for thought as you need to recall that borohydride reduces ketones but not esters.
This page intentionally left blank
PROBLEM 1
Are these molecules conjugated? Explain your answer in any reasonable way.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the basic kinds of conjugation and how to show conjugation with curly arrows.

Suggested solution
The first compound is straightforward with one conjugated system (an enone) and a non-conjugated alkene. You could draw curly arrows to show the conjugation, like this, and/or give a diagram to show the distribution of the electrons.

The last three compounds obviously form a related group with the same skeleton and only the alkene moved round. There is of course ester conjugation in all three and this is the only conjugation in the last molecule. The first has extended conjugation between the nitrogen lone pair and the carbonyl group and the second has simple conjugation between the alkene and the ester.
The only conjugation in the last compound is the delocalization of the ester oxygen lone pair. This is of course there in all the other compounds too.

PROBLEM 2
How extensive is the conjugated system(s) in these compounds?

Purpose of the problem
To explore more extensive conjugated systems.

Suggested solution
Both compounds are completely conjugated: even including the nitrogen atom in the first and the carbonyl group in the second. You can draw the arrows going either way round the ring to give different ways of writing the same structure. The arrows on the second compound should end on the carbonyl oxygen.
PROBLEM 3
Draw diagrams to represent the conjugation in these molecules. Draw two types of diagram:
(a) Show curly arrows linking at least two different ways of representing the molecule
(b) Indicate with dotted lines and partial charges (where necessary) the partial double bond (and charge) distribution.

Purpose of the problem
A more exacting exploration of the precise details of conjugation.

Suggested solution
Treating each compound separately in the styles demanded by the question, the first (the guanidinium ion) is a very stable cation because of conjugation. The charge is delocalized onto all three nitrogen atoms as the first three structures show. Each nitrogen has an equal positive charge so our fourth diagram shows one third + on each.

The second compound is what you will learn to call an enolate anion. The negative charge is delocalized throughout the molecule, mostly on the oxygens but some on carbon. It is difficult to represent this with partial charges but the charges on the oxygens will be nearly a half each.
The third compound is naphthalene. The structure drawn in the question is the best as both rings are benzene rings. The results of curly arrow diagrams show how naphthalene is delocalized all round the outer ring. In fact these diagrams show the ten electrons in the outer ring – this is a $4n + 2$ number and all three diagrams show that naphthalene is aromatic.

**PROBLEM 4**

Draw curly arrows linking alternative structures to show the delocalization in
(a) diazomethane $\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2$
(b) nitrous oxide, $\text{N}_2\text{O}$
(c) dinitrogen tetroxide, $\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$

**Purpose of the problem**

Delocalization in some neutral molecules we nonetheless have to draw using charges.

**Suggested solution**

You saw on page 154 of the textbook that the nitro group, although it is neutral, can be represented as a pair of delocalized structures containing charges. The same is true for the explosive gas diazomethane. It has a linear structure, and we can draw two alternative structures, both with charges, even though it is a neutral compound. They’re linked with the double headed arrow used for alternative representations for the same compound. We hope you remembered to avoid the trap of giving nitrogen five bonds!

Nitric oxide is very similar—in fact it is isoelectronic with diazomethane. You can think of it as a nitrogen molecule in which an oxygen atom has captured one of the lone pairs.

Dinitrogen tetroxide is a gas which decomposes to the more familiar brown air pollutant nitrogen dioxide ($\text{NO}_2$) at higher temperatures. The
only way we can draw it seems most unsatisfactory: both nitrogens with positive charges! Even though these are not full positive charges, and this molecule does bring into focus the inadequacy of some valence bond representations, perhaps our discomfort with the structure is an indication of why this N–N bond is so weak…

PROBLEM 5
Which (parts) of these compounds are aromatic? Justify your answer with some electron counting. You may treat rings separately or together as you wish. You may notice that two of them are compounds we met in problem 2 of this chapter.

Purpose of the problem
A simple exploration of the idea of aromaticity: can you count up to six? Remember: count only those $\pi$ electrons in the ring and on no account put one electron on both atoms at either end of the bond: put the electrons where they are—in the bond.

Suggested solution
The numbers show how many $\pi$ electrons there are in each bond or at each atom. The first compound has a lone pair on nitrogen in a p-orbital shared between both rings. Each ring has six electrons and the periphery of the whole molecule has ten electrons. Both rings and the entire molecule are aromatic. The second has four $\pi$ electrons only so there is no aromaticity anywhere. The third has six $\pi$ electrons in the ring including the lone pair...
on oxygen but not including the carbonyl group which is outside the ring. The compound is aromatic.

For the rest we have put the number of $\pi$ electrons inside each ring and there are two aromatic rings in each compound. Again we don’t count carbonyl group electrons as they are outside the ring. So one ring in aklavinone has only four electrons and is not aromatic while one of the seven-membered rings in colchicine is aromatic. Each compound has one saturated ring that cannot be aromatic.

**PROBLEM 6**

The following compounds are considered to be aromatic. Account for this by identifying the appropriate number of delocalized electrons.

**Purpose of the problem**

Accounting for aromaticity in less familiar circumstances.

**Suggested solution**

Indole, as drawn here, has eight double bonds, which give eight delocalized electrons. To be aromatic, it needs $2n+2$, so two more electrons must come from the lone pair of the nitrogen atom.
Azulene is isomeric with naphthalene, and it’s quite easy to find the ten electrons – four in one ring and six in the other.

Pyridone has six electrons—two from the double bonds in the ring and two from nitrogen. That means that the carbonyl group, whose double bond is not part of the ring, does not contribute to the aromatic sextet. This is generally true for double bonds which stick out of the ring—see problem 2.

Adenine is one of the four bases which carry the genetic code in DNA. Its ten electrons arise as shown: eight from the double bonds and two from one of the nitrogen atoms in the five-membered ring. The other three nitrogens don’t contribute their lone pairs, because they are not delocalized—like the lone pair in pyridine.
PROBLEM 7

Cyclooctatetraene (see p. 158 of the textbook) reacts readily with potassium metal to form a salt, K₂[cyclooctatetraene]. What shape do you expect the ring to have in this compound? A similar reaction of hexa(trimethylsilyl)benzene with lithium also gives a salt. What shape do you expect this ring to have?

Purpose of the problem

The consequences of aromaticity and 'antiaromaticity'.

Suggested solution

Cyclooctatetraene, as explained on p. 158 of the textbook, is 'tub-shaped' and not planar, because its eight π electrons do not form a 2n+2 number. However, two atoms of potassium can reduce the cyclooctatetraene to a dianion by giving it two electrons, so now it has ten electrons, is aromatic, and is planar. Just one of the many possible delocalized structures of the product is shown here.

When lithium reduces hexa(trimethylsilyl)benzene, the aromatic sextet is increased to a total of eight delocalized electrons, so the compound is no longer aromatic. The six membered ring in the salt is no longer flat.
**PROBLEM 8**
How would you expect the hydrocarbon below to react with bromine, Br₂?

![Diagram of a hydrocarbon reacting with bromine](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
The consequences of aromaticity for reactivity.

**Suggested solution**
Aromatic rings typically react by substitution, so that they can retain the aromatic sextet. By contrast, alkenes react by electrophilic addition—the classic test for an alkene is that they decolourize bromine water. So, how will our hydrocarbon (known as indene) react? It contains an aromatic ring, but the five-membered ring is not aromatic—it contains a saturated carbon atom. So there is a choice of substitution on the six-membered ring or addition to the alkene in the five-membered ring. Alkenes are more reactive than benzene, so the alkene reacts first:

![Product of addition to the alkene](image)

**PROBLEM 9**
In aqueous solution, acetaldehyde (ethanal) is about 50% hydrated. Draw the structure of the hydrate of acetaldehyde. Under the same conditions, the hydrate of N,N-dimethylformamide is undetectable. Why the difference?

![Structures of acetaldehyde and N,N-dimethylformamide](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
The consequences of delocalization for reactivity.
Suggested solution

As you saw in chapter 6, aldehydes are readily hydrated. For amides, however, there is a price to pay: the delocalization that contributes to the stability of the amide would be lost on hydration, so dimethylformamide is not hydrated in aqueous solution.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 8

**PROBLEM 1**
How would you separate a mixture of these three compounds?

- Naphthalene
- Pyridine
- Para-toluic acid

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of simple acidity and basicity in a practical situation.

**Suggested solution**
Pyridine is a weak base (pKₐ of the pyridinium ion is about 5.5) and can be dissolved in aqueous acid. Naphthalene is neither an acid nor a base and is not soluble in water at any pH. para-Toluic acid is a weak acid (pKₐ about 4.5) and can be dissolved in aqueous base. So dissolve the mixture in an organic solvent immiscible with water (say ether Et₂O or dichloromethane CH₂Cl₂) and extract with aqueous acid. This will dissolve the pyridine as its cation. Then extract the remaining organic layer with aqueous base such as NaHCO₃ which will remove the toluic acid as its water-soluble anion. You now have three solutions. Evaporate the organic solution to give crystalline naphthalene. Acidify the basic solution of para-toluic acid and the free acid will precipitate out and can be recrystallized. Add base to the pyridine solution, extract the pyridine with an organic solvent, and distil the pyridine. It doesn’t matter if you extract the original solution with base first and acid second.

**PROBLEM 2**
In the separation of benzoic acid from toluene on p. 164 of the textbook we suggested using KOH solution. How concentrated a solution would be necessary to ensure that the pH was above the pKₐ of benzoic acid (4.2)? How would you estimate how much KOH solution to use?

**Purpose of the problem**
To ensure you understand the relationship between pH and concentration.
Suggested solution

Even a very weak solution of KOH has a pH>4.2. If we want a pH of 5 (just above the pKₐ of benzoic acid) we must ensure that we have [H₃O⁺] = 10⁻⁵ mol dm⁻³. The ionic product of water is [H₃O⁺] x [HO⁻] = 10⁻¹⁴ and so we need 10⁻⁹ mol dm⁻³ of KOH. This is very dilute! The trouble would be that you need one hydroxide ion for each molecule of benzoic acid and so if you had, say, 1.22 g PhCO₂H (= 0.01 equiv.) you would need 1000 litres (dm³) of KOH solution. It makes more sense to use a much more concentrated solution, say 0.1M. This would give an unnecessarily high pH (13) but you would need only 100 ml (0.1 dm³) to extract your benzoic acid.

PROBLEM 3

What species would be present in a solution of this hydroxy-acid in (a) water at pH 7, (b) aqueous alkali at pH 12, and (c) in concentrated mineral acid?

Purpose of the problem

To get you thinking about what really is present in solution using rough pKₐ as a guide in a practical situation.

Suggested solution

The CO₂H group will have a pKₐ of about 4–5 and the phenolic OH a pKₐ of about 10. So the carboxylic acid but not the phenol will be ionized at pH 7, they will both be ionized at pH 12, and there will be a mixture of free acid and protonated acid at very low pH. The proton will be on the carbonyl oxygen atom as this gives a delocalized cation.

See page 173 of the textbook for the pKₐ of phenol.
PROBLEM 4
What would you expect to be the site of (a) protonation and (b) deprotonation if these compounds were treated with the appropriate acid or base? In each case suggest a suitable acid or base and give the structure of the products.

Purpose of the problem
Progressing to more taxing judgements on more interesting molecules.

Suggested solution
The simple amine piperidine will easily be protonated by even weak acids as the conjugate base has a pKₐ of about 11. Any mineral acid such as HCl will do the job as would weaker acids such as RCO₂H. Deprotonation will remove the NH proton as nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon but a very strong base such as BuLi will be needed as the pKₐ will be about 30–35. You could represent the product with an N–Li bond or as an anion.

The second example is more complicated but contains a normal tertiary amine so protonation will occur there with most acids as as the conjugate base has a pKₐ of about 11. We use TsOH this time but that has no special significance. The tertiary amine cannot be deprotonated and in any case the alcohol is more acidic and a strong base will be needed, say NaH.

The third example is more complicated still. There is a normal OH group (pKₐ of about 16) and a slightly acidic alkyne (pKₐ of about 32). The basic group is not a simple amine but a delocalized amidine. Protonation occurs
on the top (imine) nitrogen as the positive charge is then delocalized over both nitrogens. Protonation on the other nitrogen does not occur. The $pK_a$ of the conjugate base is about 12.

The first proton to be removed by base will be from the alcohol and this will need a reasonably strong base such as NaH. Removal of the alkyne proton requires a much stronger base such as BuLi. You might represent the product as an alkyne anion or a covalently bonded alkylolithium.

PROBLEM 5
Suggest what species would be formed by each of these combinations of reagents. You are advised to use estimated $pK_a$ values to help you and to beware of those cases where nothing happens.

(a) (b) (c)

Purpose of the problem
Learning to compare species of similar acidity or basicity.

Suggested solution
In each case one of the reagents might take a proton from the other. In example (a), would the phenolate anion remove a proton from acetic acid? The answer is yes because acetic acid is a much stronger acid than phenol. The difference is five pH units so the equilibrium constant would be about $10^5$ and the equilibrium would lie far across to the right.
Example (b) has a similar possible reaction but this time the $pK_a$ difference is much smaller and the other way so the equilibrium constant is 100 and favours the starting materials.

Example (c) is rather different. We do have another carboxylic acid but this is a much stronger acid because of the three fluorine atoms and the equilibrium is far over to the left.

PROBLEM 6
What is the relationship between these two molecules? Discuss the structure of the anion that would be formed by the deprotonation of each compound.

Purpose of the problem
To help you recognize that conjugation may be closely related to tautomerism.

Suggested solution
They are tautomers: they differ only in the position of one hydrogen atom. It is on nitrogen in the first structure and on oxygen in the second. As it happens the first structure is more stable. They are both aromatic (check that you see why) but the first has a strong carbonyl group while the second
has a weaker imine. Deprotonation may appear to give two different anions but they are actually the same because of delocalization. Note the different ‘reaction’ arrows: equilibrium sign for deprotonation and double headed arrow for delocalization.

PROBLEM 7

The carbon NMR spectrum of these compounds can be run in D₂O under the conditions shown. Why are these conditions necessary? What spectrum would you expect to observe?

Purpose of the problem

NMR revision and practice at judging the states of compounds at different pHs. Observation of hidden symmetry from conjugation.

Suggested solution

Both compounds are quite polar and not very soluble in the usual NMR solvents. In addition they have NH or OH protons that exchange in solution and broaden the spectrum. With acid or base catalysis the NH and OH protons are exchanged with deuterium and sharp signals appear. But in the strong acid or base used here, ions are formed. The first compound, a strongly basic guanidine (see p. 167 of the textbook) forms a cation in DCl. The cation is symmetrical, unlike the original guanidine, and a very simple spectrum results: just three types of carbon in the benzene ring and one very low field carbon (at large δ) for the carbon in the middle of the cation.

The second compound loses a proton from the OH group to give a delocalized symmetrical anion. There will be five signals in the NMR: the
two methyl groups are the same (at small δ) as are the two CH₂ groups in the ring (at slightly larger δ). There is one unique carbon joined to the two methyl groups (at small δ) and another in the middle of the anion (at large δ). Finally both carbonyl groups are the same (at even larger δ).

PROBLEM 8
These phenols have approximate pKₐ values of 4, 7, 9, 10, and 11. Suggest with explanations which pKₐ value belongs to which phenol.

Purpose of the problem
Detailed examination of electronic effects to estimate pKₐ values.

Suggested solution
Electron-withdrawing effects make phenols more acidic and electron-donating effects make them less acidic. Phenol itself (the fourth example) has a pKₐ of 10. The only compound less acidic than phenol must be the third with three weakly electron-donating methyl groups. One chlorine atom has an inductive electron-withdrawing effect so the last compound has pKₐ 9. The remaining two have the powerful electron-withdrawing nitro group. So the first compound, with two nitro groups, must have pKₐ of 4 (making it as strong an acid as acetic acid) and the second, with one nitro group, must have pKₐ of 7.
PROBLEM 9

The pH values of these two amino acids are as follows:

(a) cysteine: 1.8, 8.3, and 10.8
(b) arginine: 2.2, 9.0, and 13.2.

Assign these pH values to the functional groups in each amino acid and draw the most abundant structure that each molecule will have at pH 1, 7, 10, and 14.

Purpose of the problem

Further revision in thinking about acidity and basicity of functional groups, and reinforcement of expected pH values for functional groups. Amino acids are particularly important.

Suggested solution

At high pH cysteine exists as a dianion as both the thiol and the carboxylic acid are anions. If we now add acid, at about pH 10 (actually 10.8) the amine will get protonated, then the thiol will be protonated at about pH 8 (actually 8.3) and finally the carboxylic acid will be protonated at low pH, rather lower than say MeCO₂H, as the electron-withdrawing ammonium group increases its acidity (actually at 1.8).
At high pH arginine exists as a monoanion—even the very basic guanidine group cannot be protonated at pH 14. If we now add acid, at about pH 13 the guanidine will get protonated, then the amino group will be protonated at about pH 10 (actually 9.0) and finally the carboxylic acid will be protonated at low pH. This carboxylic acid is rather more acidic than you might expect, but not surprisingly it is harder to protonate an anion in a molecule which already has an overall positive charge.

PROBLEM 10
Neither of these two methods for making pentan-1,4-diol will work. What will happen instead?

Purpose of the problem
To help you appreciate the disastrous effects that innocent-looking groups may have because of their weak acidity.
Suggested solution

The OH group is the Wicked Witch of the West in this problem. Whoever planned these syntheses expected it to lie quietly and do nothing. All chemists have to learn that things don’t go our way just because we want them to do so. Here, although the OH group is only a weak acid (pKₐ about 16) it will give up its proton to the very basic Grignard reagents. In the first case, one molecule of Grignard is destroyed but the reaction might succeed if two equivalents were used.

![Chemical structure 1]

The second case is hopeless as the Grignard reagent destroys itself by intramolecular deprotonation. This synthesis could be rescued by putting a protecting group on the OH.

![Chemical structure 2]

PROBLEM 11

Which of these bases would you choose to deprotonate the following molecules? Very strong bases are more challenging to handle so you should aim to use a base which is just strong enough for the job, but not unnecessarily strong.

![Chemical structures 3]

Choice of bases:

KOH NaH BuLi NaHCO₃

Purpose of the problem

To help you match basicity to acidity—an important part of choosing reagents for many reactions.
Suggested solution

We can start by estimating the $pK_a$ of the most acidic proton in each of the substrates to be deprotonated, and likewise estimating the $pK_a$ of the conjugate acids of the proposed bases. Most of these values were discussed in chapter 8, and you were encouraged to commit some of them to memory.

Any of the bases will deprotonate compounds above and to the left of them. So, to deprotonate the least acidic of these, the amine, you would choose to use butyllithium. To deprotonate the alkyne (a reaction which is commonly used to make C–C bonds) you could use BuLi, or alternatively sodium hydride (NaH). BuLi has to be handled under an inert atmosphere, while NaH, although it reacts with water, can be spooned out safely as a suspension in oil.

The alcohol has a $pK_a$ close to that of water, so hydroxide is not a good choice for complete deprotonation, and sodium hydride is commonly used for this purpose. Hydroxide will however deprotonate both the carboxylic acid, to make a carboxylate salt, or the ammonium ion, to make the free amine. Bicarbonate is also commonly used for this purpose: although it is only just basic enough to do the job, the deprotonation reaches completion because it is not an equilibrium: protonated bicarbonate forms carbonic acid which decomposes irreversibly to water and carbon dioxide.
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 9

**PROBLEM 1**
Propose mechanisms for the first four reactions in the chapter.

1. **PhMgBr**
   - 1. \( \text{PhMgBr} \rightarrow \text{HO Ph} \)
   - 2. \( \text{H}^+, \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{HO Ph} \)

2. **Li**
   - 1. \( \text{Li} \rightarrow \text{HO Ph} \)
   - 2. \( \text{H}^+, \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{HO Ph} \)

3. **MgCl**
   - 1. \( \text{MgCl} \rightarrow \text{HO H} \)
   - 2. \( \text{H}^+, \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{HO H} \)

4. **Li**
   - 1. \( \text{Li} \rightarrow \text{HO H} \)
   - 2. \( \text{H}^+, \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{HO H} \)

**Purpose of the problem**
Rehearsal of the basic mechanisms from chapter 9.

**Suggested solution**
Each reaction involves nucleophilic attack of the organometallic reagent on the aldehyde or ketone followed by protonation. You may draw the intermediate as an anion or with an O–metal bond as you please. Note the atom-specific arrows to show which atom is the nucleophile. In the third reaction the allyl-Li might attack through either end.
PROBLEM 2

What products would be formed in these reactions?

Purpose of the problem

The toughest test: predicting the product. The sooner you get practice the better.

Suggested solution

Though prediction is harder than explanation, you should get these right the first time as only the last one has a hint of difficulty. In the first example, the ethyl Grignard reagent acts as a base to remove a proton from the alkyne. Whether you draw the intermediate as an alkyne anion or a Grignard reagent is up to you. Notice that sometimes we give the protonation step at the end and sometimes not. This is the general practice among organic chemists and you may or you may not bother to draw the mechanism of this step.
For the second example, just make the organometallic reagent and add it to the carbonyl group. Cyclobutanone is more electrophilic than many other ketones because of the strain of a carbonyl group in a four-membered ring. This time the protonation is shown.

The third example raises the question of which halogen is replaced. In fact bromine is more easily replaced than chlorine. Iodine is more easily replaced than either and fluorine usually does not react. Don’t be disappointed if you failed to see this.

PROBLEM 3
Suggest alternative routes to fenarimol different from the one in the textbook on p. 192. Remind yourself of the answer to problem 2 above.

Purpose of the problem
Practice in choosing alternative routes.

Suggested solution
Three aromatic rings are joined to a tertiary alcohol in fenarimol, so the alternatives are to make organometallic reagents from different aromatic compounds. Two aromatic compounds must be joined to form a ketone and the third added as an organometallic reagent. You will meet ways to make ketones like these in chapter 21. You’ll need the insight from problem 2 above to help you choose Br as the functional group to be lithiated or converted into a Grignard reagent. Here are two possible methods:
PROBLEM 4
Suggest two syntheses of the bee pheromone heptan-2-one.

Purpose of the problem
Further exploration of the use of organometallic compounds. This time you'll probably need the oxidation of alcohols from p. 194 of the textbook.

Suggested solution
There are of course many different solutions but the most obvious are to make the corresponding secondary alcohol and oxidize it. Two alternatives are shown here.
PROBLEM 5
The antispasmodic drug biperidin is made by the Grignard addition reaction shown here. What is the structure of the drug? Do not be put off by the apparent complexity of the structure: just use the chemistry of Chapter 9.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Br} & \quad \text{1. Mg, Et}_2\text{O} \quad \text{biperidin} \\
& \quad \text{2.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

How would you suggest that the drug procyclidine should be made?

Purpose of the problem
Exercise in product prediction in a more complicated case and a logical extension to something new.

Suggested solution
A Grignard reagent must be formed from the alkyl bromide and this must add to the ketone. Aqueous acidic work up (not mentioned in the problem as is often the case) must give a tertiary alcohol and that is biperidin.

To get procyclidine, we must change both the alkyl halide and the ketone but the reaction is very similar.
PROBLEM 6
The synthesis of the gastric antisecretory drug rioprostil requires this alcohol.

(a) Suggest possible syntheses starting from ketones and organometallics.
(b) Suggest possible syntheses of the ketones in part (a) from aldehydes and organometallics (don’t forget about CrO₃ oxidation).

Purpose of the problem
Your first introduction to sequences of reactions where more complex molecules are created.

Suggested solution
There are three one-step syntheses from ketones and organometallic compounds. We have used ‘M’ to indicate the metal—it might be Li or MgX (in other words, the organometallic could be an organolithium or a Grignard reagent).

Each of these ketones can be made by oxidation of an alcohol that can in turn be made from an organometallic compound and an aldehyde.
PROBLEM 7
Why is it possible to make the lithium derivative A by Br/Li exchange, but not the lithium derivative B?

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the stability of carbanions and its relevance to lithium/bromine exchange.

Suggested solution
The first example is a vinyl bromide and vinyl (sp²) carbanions are more stable than saturated (sp³) carbanions because of the greater s-character in the C–Li bond. The second example is saturated, like BuLi, but it is a tertiary alkyl bromide. The t-alkyl carbanion would be less stable than the primary one and its lithium derivative less stable than BuLi, so it is not formed.
**PROBLEM 8**

How could you use these four commercially available starting materials to make the following three compounds?

\[ \text{PhCHO} \quad \text{EtI} \quad \text{CO}_2 \quad \text{Br} \]

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Thinking about synthesis: how to put molecules together

**Suggested solution**

The first compound contains a phenyl and an ethyl group, so you could convert the ethyl iodide to a Grignard reagent and add it to the aldehyde. The product is an alcohol, so you need to use \( \text{CrO}_3 \) to oxidize it to the ketone.

![Synthesis reaction](image)

The second compound is a carboxylic acid, which can come from addition of the Grignard reagent derived from cyclopentyl bromide to carbon dioxide.

![Synthesis reaction](image)

The third compound is a tertiary alcohol, which you could make by addition of the same cyclopentyl Grignard reagent to a ketone. The ketone will also need to be made by oxidation of an alcohol, itself derived from benzaldehyde and the cyclopentyl Grignard reagent.

![Synthesis reaction](image)
Suggested solutions for Chapter 10

**PROBLEM 1**

Suggest reagents to make the drug phenaglycodol by the route below.

Purpose of the problem

Simple revision of addition to carbonyl groups from chapter 6.

Suggested solution

The first step is a simple addition of cyanide to a ketone (p. 127 of the textbook) usually carried out with NaCN and an acid, such as acetic acid. The second step is an acid-catalysed addition of an alcohol to a nitrile (p. 213 of the textbook). Finally there is a double addition of an organometallic reagent to an ester (p. 216 of the textbook). One way of doing all this is shown below.
**PROBLEM 2**

Direct ester formation from carboxylic acids \((R^1\text{CO}_2\text{H})\) and alcohols \((R^2\text{OH})\) works in acid solution but not in basic solution. Why not? By contrast, ester formation from alcohols \((R^2\text{OH})\) and acid anhydrides \([R^1\text{CO}_2\text{O}]\) or chlorides \((R^1\text{COCl})\) is commonly carried out in basic solution in the presence of bases such as pyridine. Why does this work?

**Purpose of the problem**

These questions may sound trivial but students starting organic chemistry often fall into the trap of trying to make esters from carboxylic acids and alcohols in basic solution. Thinking about the reasons may help you avoid this error.

**Suggested solution**

The direct reaction works in acid solution as the carboxylic acid is protonated (at the carbonyl group, note) and becomes a good electrophile. Later the tetrahedral intermediate is protonated and can lose a molecule of water.

In basic solution, the first thing that happens is the removal of the proton from the carboxylic acid to form a stable delocalized anion. Nucleophiles cannot attack this anion and no further reaction occurs.

Acid anhydrides and acid chlorides do not have this acidic hydrogen so the alcohol attacks them readily and the base is helpful in removing the acidic proton from the intermediate. The weak base pyridine (pKₐ of the conjugate acid 5.5) is ideal. The product from the uncatalysed reaction would be HCl from the acid chloride and the base also removes that.
PROBLEM 3
Predict the success or failure of these attempted substitutions at the carbonyl group. You should use estimated $pK_a$ values in your answer and, of course, draw mechanisms.

Purpose of the problem
A chance to try out the correlation between leaving group ability and $pK_a$ explained in the textbook (p. 205).

Suggested solution
You need to draw mechanisms for the formation of the tetrahedral intermediate and check that it is in the right protonated form. Then you need to check which potential leaving group is the best, using appropriate estimated $pK_a$ values. The first and the last proposals will succeed but the second will not as chloride ion is a better leaving group than even a protonated amine and this reaction would go backwards.
Solutions Manual to accompany Organic Chemistry

PROBLEM 4
Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Drawing mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution on important compounds including cyclic and dicarbonyl compounds.

Suggested solution
In the first reaction there are two nucleophilic substitutions and you must decide which nucleophile attacks first. The amine is a better nucleophile than the alcohol. The cyclization occurs because, in the intermediate for the second substitution, there are two alcohols as potential leaving groups. Either can leave but when the ring opens again, the alcohol is still part of the molecule and will re-cyclize, but if the ethoxide leaves it is lost into solution and does not come back.
The second reaction is more straightforward. The amide proton is quite acidic and will be removed by the base making a better nucleophile. Notice that in these suggested solutions we are using the shorthand of the double-headed arrow on the carbonyl group.

**PROBLEM 5**

In making esters of the naturally occurring amino acids (general structure below) it is important to keep them as their hydrochloride salts. What would happen to these compounds if they were neutralized?

**Suggested solution**

The amino acids do not usually react with themselves as they exist mostly as the zwitterion. But after the acid is esterified it is much more electrophilic and the amino group is now nucleophilic.
The amine of one compound attacks the ester group of another to form a dimer (a peptide) which may cyclize to form a double amide, known as a diketopiperazine. The cyclization is usually faster than the dimerization as it is an intramolecular reaction forming a stable six-membered ring.

PROBLEM 6

It is possible to make either the diester or the monoester of butanedioic acid (succinic acid) from the cyclic anhydride as shown. Why does one method give the diester and one the monoester?

Purpose of the problem

An exploration of selectivity in carbonyl substitutions. Mechanistic thinking allows you to say confidently whether a reaction will happen or not. This problem builds on problem 2.

Suggested solution

In basic solution the nucleophile is methoxide ion. This strong nucleophile attacks the carbonyl group to give a tetrahedral intermediate having two possible leaving groups. The ester anion is preferred ($pK_a$ of RCO$_2$H about 5) to the alkoxide ion ($pK_a$ of ROH about 15). This carboxylate anion cannot be protonated in basic solution and is not attacked by methoxide ion.
In acid solution the first reaction is similar, though the tetrahedral intermediate is neutral, and the carboxyl is still the better leaving group. The second esterification is now all right because methanol can attack the protonated carboxylic acid and water can be driven out after a second protonation. The second step is an equilibrium, with water and methanol about equal as leaving groups, but methanol is present in large excess as the solvent and drives the equilibrium across. We have omitted proton transfer steps.

**PROBLEM 7**

Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining why these particular products are formed.

**Purpose of the problem**

A contrast between very reactive (acid chloride), less reactive (anhydride) and unreactive (amide) carbonyl compounds.

**Suggested solution**

The acid chloride reacts rapidly with the water and the carboxylic acid produced reacts rapidly with a second molecule of acid chloride. The anhydride reacts much more slowly (pKₐ of HCl is –7 but the pKₐ of RCO₂H is about 5) with water so there is a good chance of stopping the reaction there, especially when we use a low concentration of water in acetone solution. In this instance the chance is made a certainty because the anhydride precipitates from the solution and is no longer in equilibrium.
with the other reagents. It is usually possible to descend the reactivity sequence of acid derivatives.

\[
\text{PhCl} \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \text{PhCl} \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \text{PhO} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}} \text{PhO}
\]

The second reaction is an example of the alkaline hydrolysis of amides. Though the nitrogen atom is never a good leaving group, it will leave from the dianion and, once gone, it is quickly protonated and does not come back. This example also benefits from the release of the slight strain in the five-membered ring.

**Purpose of the problem**

Analysis of a sequence of reactions where the first stops at the halfway stage but the second does not.

**Suggested solution**

One of the carbonyl groups of the anhydride must be attacked by LiAlH₄ and we need to follow that reaction through to see what happens next. The first addition of AlH₄⁻ produces a tetrahedral intermediate that decomposes with the loss of the only possible leaving group, the carboxylate ion, to give an aldehyde. That too is quickly reduced by AlH₄⁻ to give the hydroxy-acid as its anion, which is resistant to further reduction. In the acidic aqueous work-up, excess LiAlH₄ is instantly destroyed and the hydroxy-acid cyclizes to the lactone. The fact that the lactone is not formed under the reaction conditions is important: if it were, then it too would be reduced by the LiAlH₄.
The second reaction starts similarly with the Grignard reagent adding to the ester carbonyl group and the tetrahedral intermediate losing the only possible leaving group. Again, a reactive carbonyl compound is produced: a ketone that is more electrophilic than the ester, so it adds the Grignard reagent even faster. Work-up in aqueous acid gives the diol.

**PROBLEM 9**

This reaction goes in one direction in acid solution and in the other direction in basic solution. Draw mechanisms for the reactions and explain why the product depends on the conditions.

**Purpose of the problem**

A reminder that carbonyl substitutions are equilibria and that removal of a product from an equilibrium may decide which way the reaction goes. Practice at drawing mechanisms for intramolecular reactions.

**Suggested solution**

The equilibrium we are concerned with is that between the two products and we can draw what would happen in neutral solution.
The amine attacks the ester in the usual way to give the tetrahedral intermediate which decomposes with the loss of the better leaving group: phenols are reasonably acidic ($pK_a \text{ PhOH} = 10$) so the phenoxy anion is a much better leaving group than $\text{ArNH}^-$. In strongly basic solution, the phenol product is fully deprotonated, so again, the equilibrium lies to the right. In acidic solution the starting amine is fully protonated, pulling the equilibrium back over to the left.

\[ \text{NH}_2 \quad \text{O} \quad \text{NH}_3 \]

in acidic solution

\[ \text{NH}_2 \quad \text{O} \quad \text{NH}_3 \]

in basic solution

**PROBLEM 10**

Amelfolide is a drug used to treat cardiac arrhythmia. Suggest how it could be made from 4-nitrobenzoic acid and 2,5-dimethylaniline.

\[ \text{H}_2\text{N} \quad \text{amelfolide} \quad \text{O}_2\text{N} \quad \text{4-nitrobenzoic acid} \quad \text{O}_2\text{N} \quad \text{2,6-dimethylaniline} \]

**Purpose of the problem**

A reminder to avoid a common error in proposed reactions of carboxylic acids.

**Suggested solution**

It is tempting to try and react the amine directly with the acid, but unfortunately the only product this would give is the ammonium carboxylate salt: the amine deprotonates the acid, and the carboxylate anion that results is no longer electrophilic. With alcohols, esters can be formed from carboxylic acids under acid catalysis, but with amines the acid catalyst just protonates the amine, and it is no longer nucleophilic! The simplest
solution is to convert the carboxylic acid to an acid chloride and allow that to react with the amine. Additional base will neutralize the HCl by-product.

\[ \text{PhOH} + \text{PhNH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{SOCl}_2} \text{PhOCl} + \text{PhNH}_3^+ \]

\[ \text{PhOCl} + \text{H}_2\text{N} \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \text{PhNHCOOH} \]

**PROBLEM 11**

Given that the $pK_a$ of tribromomethane, CHBr$_3$ (also known as bromoform) is 13.7, suggest what will happen when this ketone is treated with sodium hydroxide.

\[ \text{CHBr}_3 \]

**Purpose of the problem**

Predicting reactivity with an unusual leaving group.

**Suggested solution**

The best approach to new reactions is to start drawing curly arrows for steps you know are reasonable, and to see where they take you. Here, we are treating a carbonyl compound, an electrophile, with hydroxide, a nucleophile, so the first step is likely to be addition of hydroxide to the C=O group. You have seen many, many reactions that start this way.

\[ \text{CHBr}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{HO}^{-}} \text{CHB} + \text{HO}^{-} \]

\[ \text{CHB} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{pK}_a \text{ about 5}} \text{CHB}_2 + \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ \]
The result looks like a tetrahedral intermediate: the only possible leaving groups are the hydroxide (which takes us back to starting materials) or the anion Br₃C⁻. You learnt in chapter 10 to use pKₐ to estimate leaving group ability, so the relatively low value of 13.7 should encourage you to eject it, giving a carboxylic acid as well. Neutralization of the acid by the tribromomethyl anion gives the products—the carboxylate anion and tribromomethane.

**PROBLEM 12**

This sequence of reactions is used to make a precursor to the anti-asthma drug montelukast (Singulair). Suggest structures for compounds A and B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reaction</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CO₂Et</td>
<td>LiAlH₄</td>
<td>CO₂Et</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M⁺ = 134</td>
<td>pyridine</td>
<td>M⁺ = 206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR: 3600 (broad)</td>
<td>IR: 3600 (broad), 3050, 2950, 1710 (strong), 1600, 1500 cm⁻¹</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2950 cm⁻¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purpose of the problem**

Deducing the presence of functional groups from mass and infra-red spectra.

**Suggested solution**

Lithium aluminium hydride reduces esters to alcohols, so the only question here is whether it reduces one, or both esters. The IR tells us that there is an alcohol (3600 cm⁻¹) and no carbonyl group (which you would expect around 1700 cm⁻¹) so we can assume that both esters have been reduced. The diol structure below is consistent with the mass of the molecular ion.

Alcohols react with acid chlorides to form esters, so again we have the choice between a single or double ester formation. The IR tells us that one of the alcohols is still present, along with a carbonyl at 1710 cm⁻¹, and the mass of the product is consistent with the structure below.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 11

PROBLEM 1

Draw mechanisms for these reactions, both of which involve loss of the carbonyl's oxygen atom.

Purpose of the problem

To see if you can draw mechanisms for two of the main classes of reactions in the chapter.

Suggested solution

As MeOH is present in large excess as the solvent, it probably adds first. This also makes the intermediate for the addition of chloride a stable oxonium ion. The mechanism is very like that for acetal formation and, if you added chloride first, that is also a reasonable mechanism.

The second example is imine formation—attack by an amine nucleophile and dehydration of the intermediate. Don’t forget to protonate the OH group so that it can leave as a water molecule.
PROBLEM 2
Each of these compounds is an acetal, that is a molecule made from an aldehyde or ketone and two alcohol groups. Which compounds were used to make these acetals?

Purpose of the problem
Practice at the recognition of acetals and working out how to make them.

Suggested solution
All we have to do is to identify the hidden carbonyl group by finding the only carbon atom having two C–O bonds. This atom is marked with a grey circle. If you imagine breaking the two C–O bonds you will discover the carbonyl group and the alcohols.
**PROBLEM 3**

Suggest mechanisms for these two reactions of the smallest aldehyde, formaldehyde (methanal CH$_2$=O).

**Purpose of the problem**

Extension of simple acetal chemistry into related reactions with nitrogen.

**Suggested solution**

Both reactions start in the same way by attack of a nitrogen nucleophile on formaldehyde. Acid catalysis is not necessary for this step. The first reaction ends with the formation of the iminium ion by acid-catalysed dehydration.

In the other reaction a second amino group is waiting to capture the iminium ion by cyclization to form a stable five-membered ring.
PROBLEM 4
In the textbook (p. 104) we showed you a selective hydrolysis of an acetal. Why were the other acetals (one is a thioacetal) not affected by this treatment? How would you hydrolyse them? Chloroform (CHCl₃) is the solvent.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the different types of acetal and their relative reactivity.

Suggested solution
Cyclic acetals are more stable than non-cyclic ones as we explain on p. 228 of the textbook. Hydrolysis needs more vigorous conditions. Thioacetals are much harder to hydrolyse because sulfides are even less basic than ethers. They can be hydrolysed using electrophiles that attack sulfur readily, such as Hg(II) or methylating agents. This is one possible solution:
PROBLEM 5
In the textbook (p. 228) we say that the Grignard reagent below is ‘an unstable structure—impossible to make.’ Why is this? What would happen if you tried to make it?

![Chemical structure](image)

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the danger of mutually destructive functional groups.

Suggested solution
There are various possibilities that all arise from the presence of a carbonyl group and a Grignard in the same molecule. These two would react together. They might cyclize to form a four-membered ring or a bimolecular reaction might lead to a dimer and perhaps polymerization.

![Chemical structures](image)

PROBLEM 6
Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

![Chemical structures](image)

Purpose of the problem
Extension of acetal and imine formation into examples where the intermediate is trapped by a different nucleophile.
Suggested solution

The first reaction starts with the usual attack of an alcohol on the aldehyde but the second nucleophile is the carboxylic acid. Though a poor nucleophile, it is good enough to react with an oxonium ion, particularly in a cyclization.

The second reaction starts with nucleophilic attack by the amine on the more electrophilic carbonyl group—the ketone. Imine formation is followed by cyclization and this second step is normal nucleophilic substitution of an ester (chapter 10). The imine double bond moves into the ring to secure conjugation with the ester.

The third example uses very simple molecules and again starts with imine formation. Cyanide is the nucleophile that captures the iminium ion and a second imine formation completes the mechanism.
PROBLEM 7

Don’t forget the problem in the summary on p. 238 of the textbook: suggest a mechanism for the formation of this thioacetal.

Purpose of the problem

Extension of the mechanism for acetal formation to dithioacetal (dithiane) formation.

Suggested solution

The mechanism is a direct analogue of acetal formation. The dehydration step is more difficult: the C=S bond is less stable than the C=O bond because overlap of 2p and 3p orbitals is not as good as overlap of two 2p orbitals of similar size and energy.
PROBLEM 8

In chapter 6 we described how the anti-leprosy drug dapsone could be made soluble by the formation of a ‘bisulfite adduct’. Now that you know about the reactions described in chapter 11, you should be able to draw a mechanism for this reaction. The adduct is described as a ‘prodrug’, meaning that it is not the drug but gives rise to the drug by chemistry within the body. How might this happen?

Purpose of the problem

Revision of chemistry from chapter 6 with a challenging mechanistic problem: did you avoid the trap?

Suggested solution

The trap is to go straight to the product by displacing hydroxide ion from the formaldehyde bisulfite adduct. Hydroxide is a very bad leaving group and reactions like this never occur.

To avoid this trap we must use carbonyl chemistry. First we must make formaldehyde from its adduct and add it to the amino group of dapsone.

Now we can form an iminium salt and add the bisulfite back into this reactive electrophile to give the final product. This is loss of carbonyl oxygen in an unusual setting as the carbonyl was not there at the start and is present only in the intermediates.
PROBLEM 9
This stable product can be isolated from the reaction between benzaldehyde and ammonia. Suggest a mechanism.

\[
\text{CHO} + \text{NH}_3 \xleftrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{NH} + \text{N}
\]

Purpose of the problem
Revision of aminal formation—the all-nitrogen version of acetal formation.

Suggested solution
Imine formation follows the usual pathway (pp. 230–32 of the textbook) but this imine is unstable, as are most primary imines, and it reacts with more benzaldehyde. This reaction starts normally enough but dehydration of the first intermediate produces a strange looking cation with two double bonds to the same nitrogen atom. Addition of another imine gives the final product. The benzene rings play no part in these reactions so we shall represent them as Ph, but they do stabilize the final product by conjugation with the imines.
**PROBLEM 10**

In the following scheme

(a) Identify the functional group in each molecule, and
(b) Suggest a reagent or reagents for carrying out each transformation represented by an arrow.

**Purpose of the problem**

Some important transformations of nitrogen containing functional groups.

**Suggested solution**

Primary amines are transformed into amides by substitution reactions of acid chlorides, and to imines by condensation with an aldehyde in the presence of an acid catalyst. Both amides and imines may be reduced to amines: amides need LiAlH₄ while imines may be reduced by sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, or hydrogenation over a palladium catalyst.

Secondary amines react with aldehydes to form enamines, which may be reduced to amines by hydrogenation, or (via their iminium ion tautomer) with sodium borohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride.
PROBLEM 11

Three chemical steps convert cyclohexane-1,4-dione into a compound which is used for the synthesis of the anti-migraine drug frovatriptan. Suggest how this transformation is carried out.

Purpose of the problem

Designing a route to a real pharmaceutical target.

Suggested solution

Both carbonyl groups have undergone substitution. One of them is converted to an acetal, so we must treat the ketone with a diol and an acid catalyst. Primary amines are transformed into amides by substitution reactions of acid chlorides, and to imines by condensation with an aldehyde in the presence of an acid catalyst.

The other ketone must be converted into an amine, so we can use reductive amination: we could first make the imine with methylamine, and reduce it; alternatively we can use NaCNBH₃ to reduce the imine as it forms.
MeNH₂
NaCNBH₃
PROBLEM 1
In the comparison of stability of the last intermediates in the substitution at the carbonyl group of acid chlorides or anhydrides to make esters (chapter 10) we preferred one of these intermediates to the other:

Why is the one more stable than the other? If you were to treat an ester with acid, which of the two would be formed?

Purpose of the problem
Revision of contribution of delocalization to stability, particularly of cations.

Suggested solution
The positive charge on the more stable cation is delocalized over both oxygen atoms making it more stable than the other that has a localized cation on one oxygen atom. Protonation of the ester gives the more stable cation as both oxygens combine to make the carbonyl oxygen more nucleophilic.
PROBLEM 2
This reaction shows third-order kinetics as the rate expression is

$$\text{rate} = [\text{keto}ne][\text{HO}^-]^2$$

Suggest a mechanism for the reaction.

Purpose of the problem
Interpretation of unexpected kinetics to find a mechanism

Suggested solution
The hydroxide ion must attack the ketone to form a tetrahedral intermediate. The best leaving group from this intermediate is the hydroxide ion that has just come in (p$K_a$ of H$_2$O is about 15) rather than the alkyne anion. If we use the second hydroxide ion to deprotonate the intermediate, only one leaving group remains, though it is a poor one, and the decomposition of the dianion must be the rate-determining step. This mechanism is found for substitutions at the carbonyl group with very bad leaving groups, as in the hydrolysis of amides (p. 213 in the textbook).
PROBLEM 3
Draw an energy profile diagram for this reaction. You will of course need to draw the mechanism first. Suggest which step in this mechanism is likely to be the slow step and what kinetics would be observed

Purpose of the problem
Practice at drawing energy profile diagrams as one way to present the energetics of mechanisms.

Suggested solution
The first thing is to draw the mechanism of the reaction.

The first step is bimolecular and forms a new C–C bond. The second step is just a proton transfer between oxygen atoms and is certainly fast. The first step must be the rate-determining step and the intermediate must have a higher energy than the starting material or the product. In this answer we have used the style of energy-profile diagrams used in the textbook (e.g. p. 252) but there is nothing sacred about this—any similar diagram is fine.
PROBLEM 4

What would be the effect of solvent changes on these reactions? Would the reactions be accelerated or retarded by a change from a polar to a non-polar solvent?

Ph₃P \xrightarrow{Br_2, \text{solvent}} Ph₃P^\ominus - Br

O
\text{solvent} \quad O
\text{heat} \quad O
R
\xrightarrow{NH_3, \text{solvent}} R

Purpose of the problem

Practice at assessing the likely effect of solvent polarity in terms of the mechanism of the reaction.

Suggested solution

It is essential to draw a mechanism for each reaction and to identify the rate-determining step in each case. The first two reactions are one-step processes so that makes life easier.
Now we need to draw the transition state for each reaction so that we can assess whether it is more or less polar than the starting materials. The way to do this is described on p. 251 of the textbook.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph}_3\text{P} \rightleftharpoons \text{Br} \quad \text{Ph}_3\text{P} \rightleftharpoons \text{Br} \\
\text{NMe}_3 \quad \text{NMe}_3
\end{align*}
\]

In the first reaction uncharged starting materials form a partly charged transition state. A polar solvent will stabilize the transition state and accelerate the reaction. In the second case a charged (zwitterionic) starting material gives a partly charged transition state. A polar solvent will stabilize both starting material and transition state but it will stabilize the starting material more. The energy gap will increase and the reaction go more slowly.

The third reaction is different as it has more than one step. It is a carbonyl substitution of the kind we met in chapter 10. The nucleophile (ammonia) attacks the carbonyl group to form a tetrahedral intermediate that decomposes with the loss of the better leaving group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} \quad \text{OMe} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{NH}_3 \\
\text{R} \quad \text{OMe} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{NH}_3 \\
\end{align*}
\]

We have marked two steps ‘fast’ because they are just proton transfers between nitrogen and oxygen atoms. Either of the other two steps might be rate determining. In this substitution the leaving group is relatively good (compare problem 2) and the rate-determining step is the first: the usual one for carbonyl substitutions. In this step, neutral starting materials turn into a charged (zwitterionic) intermediate so the transition state is becoming charged and the reaction is accelerated by more polar solvents.

**PROBLEM 5**

Comment on the effect of acid and base on these equilibria.

**Purpose of the problem**

Practice at assessing how equilibrium constants respond to acid and base.
The mechanisms in acid and in base are described on p. 208 and p. 210 of the textbook.

**Suggested solution**

The first example is cyclic ester (lactone) formation that will go well in acid solution. In base the acidic proton will be removed and cyclization is no longer possible (see p. 210 in the textbook).

![Cyclic ester formation](image1)

The second example is cyanohydrin formation from a ketone (see p. 127 in the textbook). The reaction is reversible but in basic solution the cyanide anion is more stable than the oxyanion of the cyanohydrin and the carbonyl group is more stable than C–O plus C–C so the reaction runs backwards. In more acidic solution (pH less than about 12) the oxyanion will be protonated and the reaction driven towards the right.

![Cyanohydrin formation](image2)
PROBLEM 1
How many signals will there be in the \(^1\)H NMR spectrum of each of these compounds? Estimate the chemical shifts of the signals.

Purpose of the problem
Considering the effects of symmetry on proton (rather than carbon) NMR, and practice in estimating chemical shift.

Suggested solution
Considerations of symmetry apply equally to \(^1\)H and to \(^13\)C NMR. This is the answer, with different types of proton marked with different letters.

Estimating the chemical shift in \(^1\)H NMR requires you to modify your experience of \(^13\)C NMR to the narrower range of proton shifts and to consider that aromatic protons are in a distinct region from alkene protons. In each case we give a reasonable estimate and then the actual values. If your values agree with our estimates, you have done well. If you get something near the actual values, be very proud of yourself. The first compound has hydrogens on sp\(^3\) carbon atoms bonded to two nitrogen atoms—hence the very large shift. The fourth molecule has two methyl groups directly bonded to electropositive silicon—hence the very small shift. The rest are more easily explained.
PROBLEM 2

The following products might possibly be formed from the reaction of MeMgBr with the cyclic anhydride shown. How would you tell the difference between these compounds using IR and \(^{13}\)C NMR? With \(^1\)H NMR available as well, how would your task be easier?

Purpose of the problem

Further thinking the other way round—from structure to data. Contrasting the limitations of \(^{13}\)C NMR with data from \(^1\)H NMR spectra.

Suggested solution

The molecular formula of the compounds varies so a mass spectrum would be useful. The compounds with an OH group would show a broad U-shaped band at above 3000 cm\(^{-1}\). The cyclic ester would have a C=O stretch at about 1775 cm\(^{-1}\), the ketones at about 1715 cm\(^{-1}\), and the CO\(_2\)H group a band at about 1715 cm\(^{-1}\) as well as a very broad band from 2500 to 3500 cm\(^{-1}\). In the \(^{13}\)C NMR the acid and ester would have a carbonyl peak at about 170–180 ppm, but the ketones would have one at about 200 ppm. The number and position of the other signals would also vary.
Solutions for Chapter 13 – $^1$H NMR: proton nuclear magnetic resonance

In the proton NMR, all compounds would show two linked CH$_2$ groups as a pair of triplets except in the second compound as there the symmetry makes the two the same and would give a singlet. All except the second have a 6H singlet for the CMe$_2$ group. The second compound has two singlets because of the symmetry. The last has an isolated Me group. The OH and CO$_2$H protons might show up as broad signals at any chemical shift.

**PROBLEM 3**

One isomer of dimethoxybenzoic acid has the $^1$H NMR spectrum $\delta$ (ppm) 3.85 (6H, s), 6.63 (1H, t, $J$ 2 Hz), and 7.17 (2H, d, $J$ 2 Hz). One isomer of coumalic acid has the $^1$H NMR spectrum $\delta$ (ppm) 6.41 (1H, d, $J$ 10 Hz), 7.82 (1H, dd, $J$ 2, 10 Hz), and 8.51 (1H, d, $J$ 2 Hz). In each case, which isomer is it? The bonds sticking into the centre of the ring can be to any carbon atom.

**Purpose of the problem**

First steps in using coupling to decide structure.

**Suggested solution**

The coupling constants in the first spectrum are all too small to be between hydrogens on neighbouring carbon atoms, and there must be symmetry in the molecule. There is only one structure that answers these criteria: 3,5-dimethoxybenzoic acid.
The second compound has one coupling of 10 Hz, and this must be between protons on neighbouring carbon atoms. The other coupling is 2 Hz and this is too small to be anything but meta coupling. There are two structures that might be right. In fact the first one is correct and you might have worked this out from the very large chemical shift—almost in the aldehyde region—of the isolated proton with only a 2 Hz coupling. This proton is on an alkene carbon bonded to oxygen in the first structure, but on a simple alkene carbon in the second.
PROBLEM 4
Assign the NMR spectra of this compound and justify your assignments. ‘Assign’ means ‘say which signal belongs to which atom’.

Purpose of the problem
Practice in the interpretation of real NMR spectra – this is harder than if the spectra have already been analysed and reported as a list of peaks.

Suggested solution
There is no coupling in this proton NMR spectrum which makes it much easier, but you should measure the chemical shifts and estimate the number of protons in each signal from the integration. Here we have: $\delta_H ($ppm$) 1.4$
(6H), 1.8 (3H), 2.9 (2H) and 5.6 (1H). The peak at 7.5 is CHCl₃ impurity in the CDCl₃ solvent. This is enough to assign the spectrum but we should check that the chemical shifts are right and they are.

The carbon spectrum is more familiar to you from chapter 3 and you will remember that integration means little here. There are three peaks in the 0–50 ppm region corresponding to the methyl group on the alkene, the CH₂ group and the pair of methyls on the same carbon atom. The 1:1:1 triplet at 77 ppm is the solvent CDCl₃. The other signal in the 50–100 ppm region must be the carbon next to oxygen in the Me₂C group. The two signals in the 100–150 ppm region are the two carbons of the alkene and the very small peak at 150 ppm is the carbonyl group. No further assignment is necessary.

PROBLEM 5

Assign the ¹H NMR spectra of these compounds and explain the multiplicity of the signals

Purpose of the problem

First serious practice in correlating splitting patterns and chemical shift.

Suggested solution

Redrawing the molecules with all the hydrogens showing probably helps at this stage, though you will not do this for long. The spectrum of 1-nitrobutane can be assigned by integration and splitting pattern without even looking at the chemical shifts! Just counting the number of neighbours
and adding one gives the multiplicity and leads to the assignment. Alternatively you could inspect the chemical shifts which get smaller the further the protons are from the nitro group. Everything fits.

The next compound has an isopropyl group, typically a 6H doublet at about δ 1 ppm and a 1H septuplet with a larger chemical shift. Assigning the two triplets for the two CH₂ groups in the ring is not so easy as they are very similar. It doesn’t really matter which is which as this uncertainty does not affect our identification of the compound.

The aromatic ketone happens to have all five aromatic protons overlapping so they cannot be sorted out. This is not unusual and a signal in the 6.5–8 region described as ‘5H, m’ usually means a monosubstituted benzene ring. The side chain is straightforward with the CH₂ group next to the ketone having the largest shift. All the coupling constants happen to be the same (7 Hz) as is usual in an open-chain compound.
PROBLEM 6

The reaction below was expected to give the product A and did indeed give a compound with the correct molecular formula by its mass spectrum. However, the NMR spectrum of this product was:

\[ \delta_H \text{ (ppm)}: 1.27 \text{ (6H, s)}, 1.70 \text{ (4H, m)}, 2.88 \text{ (2H, m)}, 5.4–6.1 \text{ (2H, broad s, exchanges with D}_2\text{O)} \text{ and 7.0–7.5 (3H, m).} \]

Though the detail is missing from this spectrum, how can you already tell that this is not the expected product?


Purpose of the problem

To show that it is helpful to predict the NMR spectrum of an expected product provided that the structure is rejected if the NMR is 'wrong'.

Suggested solution

The spectrum is all wrong. There are only three aromatic Hs instead of the four expected. There are two exchanging hydrogens, presumably in NH$_2$ and not the one expected. The only thing that is expected is the chain of three CH$_2$ groups. If you managed to work out the product that was actually formed, you should be very pleased.

Now you know the structure of the product, you should be able to assign the spectrum and confirm the result.
PROBLEM 7

Assign the 400 MHz $^1$H NMR spectrum of this enynone as far as possible, justifying both chemical shifts and coupling patterns.

Purpose of the problem

Practice at interpretation of more complicated $^1$H NMR spectra.

Suggested solution

First measure the spectrum and list the data. The expansions make it easier to see the coupling but even so we are going to have to call the signal at 5.6 ppm a multiplet. For the rest of the signals you should have measured the $J$ values. Coupling is measured in Hz and at 400 MHz each chemical shift unit of 1 ppm is 400 Hz, so each subunit of 0.1 ppm is 40 Hz.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\delta$/ppm</th>
<th>integration</th>
<th>multiplicity</th>
<th>coupling, $J$/Hz</th>
<th>comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>alkene region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.05</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>d with fine splitting</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>alkene region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.97</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>d with fine splitting</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>alkene region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>t with fine splitting</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>next to C=O or C=C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.47</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>t with fine splitting</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>next to C=O or C=C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>q with fine splitting</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>next to C=O or C=C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>t with fine splitting</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>next to C=O or C=C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>broad s</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>alkyne?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.77</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>not next to anything</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
That gives us three protons in the alkene region, five CH₂ groups and one solitary proton which must be on the alkyne. In the alkene region, the multiplet must be H² which couples to the the CH₂ at C3 and the other two alkene Hs. On C1, H₁a has a large trans coupling (16 Hz) to H² while H₁b has a smaller cis coupling (10 Hz). The coupling between H₁a and H₁b is very small.

Of the five CH₂ groups, the quintet at small chemical shift must be C7. Those at C4, C6, and C8 have two neighbours and are basically triplets, but that at C3 couples to three protons and must be the quartet at 2.32 ppm.

**PROBLEM 8**
A nitration product (C₈H₁₁N₃O₂) of this pyridine has been isolated which has a nitro group somewhere in the molecule. From the spectrum deduce where the nitro group is and give a full analysis of the spectrum.

**Purpose of the problem**
Practice at working out the structure of a reaction product.
Suggested solution

The nitro group might go on the pyridine ring or on the aliphatic side chain or even, perhaps, on the nitrogen atom. Checking the integral shows that it must have gone on the pyridine: the propyl side chain is still there (CH₃ triplet, CH₂ quintet, and a CH₂ triplet with a large chemical shift). The NH proton is still there at 4.0 ppm. But there are now only three protons on the pyridine ring (at 6.7, 8.3, and 8.8 ppm).

There are four possible structures. The most significant feature of the aromatic ring is the proton at very large chemical shift (8.8) with only very small coupling. Protons next to nitrogen in pyridine rings have very large chemical shifts so this rules out all the structures except the second.

The nitro group also increases the shifts of neighbouring protons and so we can assign the spectrum. The rather high field of the proton on the pyridine ring at 6.6 ppm is explained by the electron-donating effect of the amino group.
PROBLEM 9
Interpret this $^1$H NMR spectrum.

Purpose of the problem
Further correlation of chemical shift and coupling with interpretation of longer-range coupling.

Suggested solution
The ethyl group is easy to find—a typical 3H triplet at 1.2 ppm and a 2H quartet at 4.3 ppm. The large shift of the CH$_2$ group tells us it is next to O. The methyl group is also easy—a 3H singlet at 2.3 ppm, typical of a methyl group on an alkene. At the other end of the spectrum, the broad singlet at 12.5 ppm can be only the OH or the NH; the other is at 5.4 ppm. That leaves the three signals in the aromatic region. You may not be able to see clearly the couplings, but they are: $\delta_H$ (ppm) 7.2 (1H, dd, $J$ 9 Hz), 7.5 (1H, d, $J$ 9 Hz), and 8.4 (1H, d, $J$ 2 Hz). The larger coupling is typical ortho and the small coupling typically meta so we can assign the whole spectrum.
PROBLEM 10

Suggest structures for the products of these reactions, interpreting the spectroscopic data. Most of the reactions will be new to you, and you should aim to solve the structures from the data, not by guessing what might happen.

**A.** C_{10}H_{14}O

\[ \text{\(v_{\text{max}}\) (cm\(^{-1}\)} \text{ C–H and fingerprint only}} \]

\[ \delta_{\text{C}} \text{ (ppm) 153, 141, 127, 115, 59, 33, 24} \]

\[ \delta_{\text{H}} \text{ (ppm) 1.21 (6H, d, J 7 Hz), 2.83 (1H, septuplet, J 7 Hz), 3.72 (3H, s), 6.74 (2H, d, J 9 Hz) and 7.18 (2H, d, J 9 Hz)} \]

**B.** C_{8}H_{14}O_{3}

\[ \text{\(v_{\text{max}}\) (cm\(^{-1}\)} 1745, 1730} \]

\[ \delta_{\text{C}} \text{ (ppm) 202, 176, 62, 48, 34, 22, 15} \]

\[ \delta_{\text{H}} \text{ (ppm) 1.21 (6H, s), 1.8 (2H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.24 (2H, t, J 7 Hz), 4.3 (3H, s) and 10.01 (1H, s)} \]

**C.** C_{14}H_{15}NO_{2}

\[ \text{\(v_{\text{max}}\) (cm\(^{-1}\)} 1730} \]

\[ \delta_{\text{C}} \text{ (ppm) 191, 164, 132, 130, 115, 64, 41, 29} \]

\[ \delta_{\text{H}} \text{ (ppm) 2.32 (6H, s), 3.05 (2H, t, J 6 Hz), 4.20 (2H, t, J 6 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J 7 Hz), 7.82 (2H, d, J 7 Hz) and 9.97 (1H, s)} \]

**Purpose of the problem**

Practice at determining the structures of reaction products of moderate complexity. This is a very common pastime of real chemists!

**Suggested solution**

Compound A contains the two reagents combined with the loss of HBr. The four Hs at 6.4 and 7.18 suggest the other reagent is attached to the benzene ring. The OMe group is still there (3H singlet at 3.72 ppm) and the new signals are a coupled 6H doublet and 1H septuplet—an isopropyl group. The compound is one of three isomers.
The two 2H doublets coupled with $J = 9$ Hz show that the product has symmetry and only the para isomer will fit, as both the ortho and meta compounds have four different protons. We have used the proton NMR alone but we could have mentioned that there are no functional groups other than the ether and that the four aromatic signals in the $^{13}$C NMR reflect the symmetry of the product.

Compound B combines the two reagents with the loss of Me$_3$Si and the gain of H. Both the IR and the $^{13}$C NMR show the appearance of a second carbonyl group—the ester (1745 cm$^{-1}$ and 176 ppm) has been joined by an aldehyde or ketone (1730 cm$^{-1}$ and 202 ppm). The proton NMR shows it is an aldehyde (10.01, 1H, s). There is also a CMe$_2$ group but it is no longer part of an alkene (proton and carbon NMR show that the alkene has gone). The OMe of the ester has survived. Finally, and very helpfully, there are two open chain CH$_2$ groups linked together (the two triplets with $J = 7$ Hz). One of them (2.24 ppm) has to be next to something and that can only be a carbonyl group as there is nothing else. So we have:

Though saying what 'ought to happen' is not always helpful, it obviously makes much more sense to consider first a solution in which the ester group stays where it is, on a chain of two carbon atoms, than one in which it moves mysteriously to the other end of the molecule. We prefer the first of these two possibilities:
Real evidence comes from the lack of coupling of the aldehyde proton which would surely be a triplet in the second structure. The first structure is indeed correct.

Adding up the atoms for compound C reveals that the two reagents have joined together with the loss of HF. The 1,4-disubstituted benzene ring is still there (same pattern as compound A) as is the aldehyde (1730 cm⁻¹, 191 ppm and 9.97 ppm). The NMe₂ group and the CH₂–CH₂ chain from the other reagent have also survived. It looks as though the fluoride has been displaced by the oxygen of the alcohol and this is indeed what has happened.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 14

PROBLEM 1
Are these molecules chiral? Draw diagrams to justify your answer.

![Molecules](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Reinforcement of the very important criterion for chirality. Make sure you understand the answer.

**Suggested solution**
Only one thing matters: does the molecule have a plane of symmetry? We need to redraw some of them to see if they do. On no account look for chiral centres or carbon atoms with four different groups or anything else. *Just look for a plane of symmetry.* If the molecule has one, it isn’t chiral. The first compound has been drawn with carboxylic acids represented in two different ways. The two CO₂H groups are in fact the same and the molecule has a plane of symmetry (shown by the dashed lines). It isn’t chiral.

![Molecules](image)

The second compound is chiral but if you got this wrong don’t be dismayed. Making a model would help but there are only two plausible candidate
planes of symmetry: the ring itself, in the plane of the page, and a plane at right angles to the ring. The molecule redrawn below with the tetrahedral centre displayed shows that the plane of the page isn’t a plane of symmetry as the CO₂H is on one side and the H on the other, and neither is the plane perpendicular to the ring, as Ph is on one side and H on the other. No plane of symmetry: molecule is chiral.

The third compound is not chiral because of its high symmetry. All the CH₂ groups are identical so the alcohol can be attached to any of them. The plane of symmetry (shown by the dotted lines) may be easier to see after redrawing, and will certainly be much easier to see if you make a model.

The fourth compound needs only the slightest redrawing to make it very clear that it is not chiral. The dashed line shows the plane of symmetry at right angles to the paper.

The final acetal (which is a spiro compound) is drawn flat but the central carbon atom must in fact be tetrahedral so that the two rings are orthogonal. By drawing first one and then the other ring in the plane of the page it is easy to see that neither ring is a plane of symmetry for the other because of the oxygen atoms.
PROBLEM 2
If a solution of a compound has an optical rotation of +12, how could you tell if this was actually +12 or really –348 or +372?

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the meaning of optical rotation and what it depends on.

Suggested solution
Check the equation (p. 310 of the textbook) that states that rotation depends on three things: the rotating power of the molecule, the length of the cell used in the polarimeter, and the concentration of the solution. We can't change the first, we may be able to change the second, but the third is easiest to change. If we halve the concentration, the rotation will change to +6, –174, or +186. That is not quite good enough as the last two figures are the same, but any other change of concentration will distinguish them.

PROBLEM 3
Cinderella's glass slipper was undoubtedly a chiral object. But would it have rotated the plane of polarized light?

Purpose of the problem
Revision of cause of rotation and optical activity.

Suggested solution
No. The macroscopic shape of an object is irrelevant. Only the molecular structure matters as light interacts with electrons in the molecules. Glass is not chiral (it is usually made up of inorganic borosilicates). Only if the slipper had been made of single enantiomers of a transparent substance would it have rotated the plane of polarized light. The molecules of Cinderella's left foot are the same as those in her right foot, despite both feet being macroscopically enantiomeric.
**PROBLEM 4**

Discuss the stereochemistry of these compounds. *Hint:* this means saying how many diastereoisomers there are, drawing clear diagrams of each, and stating whether they are chiral or not.

---

**Purpose of the problem**

Making sure you can handle this important approach to the stereochemistry of molecules.

**Suggested solution**

Just follow the hint in the question! Diastereoisomers are different compounds so they must be distinguished first. Then it is easy to say if each diastereoisomer is chiral or not. The first two are simple:

---

The third structure could exist as two diastereoisomers. The one with the *cis* ring junction has a plane of symmetry and is not chiral. The one with the *trans* ring junction has no plane of symmetry and is chiral (it has $C_2$ symmetry). Only one enantiomer is shown here.

---

The last compound is most complicated as it has no symmetry at all. We can have two diastereoisomers and neither has a plane of symmetry. Both the *cis* compound and the *trans* compound can exist as two enantiomers.
PROBLEM 5
In each case state, with explanations, whether the products of these reactions are chiral and/or enantiomerically pure.

Purpose of the problem
Combining mechanism and stereochemical analysis for the first time.

Suggested solution
We need a mechanism for each reaction, a stereochemical description for each starting material (achiral, chiral? enantiomerically enriched?) and an analysis of what happens to the stereochemistry in each reaction. Don’t forget: you can’t get single enantiomers out of nothing—if everything that goes into a reaction is racemic or achiral, so is the product.

In the first reaction the starting material is achiral as the two CH$_2$OH side chains are identical. The product is chiral as it has no plane of symmetry but it cannot be one enantiomer as that would require one of the CH$_2$OH side chains to cyclize rather than the other. It must be racemic.
The starting material for the second reaction is planar and achiral. If the reagent had been sodium borohydride, the product would be chiral but racemic. But an enzyme, because it is made up of enantiomerically pure components (amino acids), can deliver hydride to one side of the ketone only. We expect the product to be enantiomerically enriched.

In the third reaction, the starting material is one enantiomer of a chiral compound. So we need to ask what happens to the chiral centre during the reaction. The answer is nothing as the reaction takes place between the amine and the carboxylic acid. The product is a single enantiomer too.

The final problem is a bit of a trick. The starting material is chiral, but racemic while the product is achiral as the two CH₂CH₂OH side chains are identical so there can be a plane of symmetry between them. The mechanism doesn’t really matter but we might as well draw it.

**Problem 6**

This compound racemizes in base. Why is that?

**Purpose of the problem**

To draw your attention to the dangers in working with nearly symmetrical molecules and revision of ester exchange (textbook p. 209).
Suggested solution

Ester exchange in base goes in this case through a symmetrical (achiral) tetrahedral intermediate with a plane of symmetry. Loss of the right hand leaving group gives one enantiomer of the ester and loss of the left hand leaving group gives the other.

PROBLEM 7

Assign a configuration (R or S) to each of these compounds.

Purpose of the problem

Nomenclature may be the least important of the organic chemist’s necessary skills, but giving R or S designation to simple compounds is an essential skill. These three examples check your basic knowledge of the rules.

Suggested solution

Carrying out the procedure given in the chapter (pp. 308–9 of the textbook) we prioritize the substituents 1–4 and deduce the configuration. In all these cases ‘4’ is H and goes at the back when we work out the configuration. The first compound is Pirkle’s chiral solvating agent, used to check the purity of enantiomerically enriched samples. The next is the amino acid cysteine and, despite being the natural enantiomer, is R because S ranks higher than O (all other natural amino acids are S). The third is natural citronellol having three carbon atoms on the chiral centre. They are easily ranked by the next atom along the chain or the atom beyond that if necessary.
PROBLEM 8

Just for fun, you might try and work out just how many diastereoisomers there are of inositol and how many of them are chiral.

Purpose of the problem

Fun, it says! There is a more serious purpose in that the relationship between symmetry and stereochemistry is interesting, and, for this human brain chemical, important to understand.

Suggested solution

If we start with all the OH groups on one side and gradually move them over, we should get the answer. If you got too many diastereoisomers, check that some are not the same as others. There are eight diastereoisomers altogether and, remarkably, only one is chiral. All the others have at least one plane of symmetry (shown as dotted lines).
Solutions for Chapter 14 – Stereochemistry

- All OHs up: achiral (many planes)
- Four OHs up: achiral
- Five OHs up: three OHs up
- Three OHs up: achiral
- Three OHs up: achiral (many planes)
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 15

**PROBLEM 1**
Suggest mechanisms for the following reactions, commenting on your choice of $S_N1$ or $S_N2$.

Purpose of the problem
Simple example of the two important mechanisms of chapter 15: $S_N1$ and $S_N2$.

Suggested solution
NaOH ($pK_a$ of water about 16) removes the proton from PhSH ($pK_a$ about 7) rapidly as this is a proton transfer between electronegative atoms. Clearly the methyl group must be transferred from O to S and this must be an $S_N2$ reaction.

The first reagent in the second reaction resembles the reagent in the first reaction but it is the free sulfonic acid and not the ester. The ether product must come from the displacement of OH from one molecule of $t$-BuOH by the OH group of the other and this can only be an $S_N1$ reaction. The OH group leaves as H$_2$O after being protonated by the sulfonic acid.
PROBLEM 2

Arrange the following in order of reactivity towards the nucleophile sodium azide. Give a brief comment for each compound to explain what factor influences its place in the reactivity scale.

Purpose of the problem

Revision of the factors affecting reactivity in a series of S$_{N2}$-reactive molecules.

Suggested solution

None of these compounds has structural features necessary to promote S$_{N1}$ (not even the third: notice that the bromine is attached to a primary carbon, even though there is a tert-butyl group in the molecule), so we need to think about S$_{N2}$ reactivity only. In general, steric hindrance slows down S$_{N2}$ reactions, so we can start by saying that methyl bromide > n-butyl bromide > cyclohexyl bromide. But how do the other two fit into the scale? An adjacent carbonyl group accelerates S$_{N2}$ reactions enormously, so the ketone will react even faster than methyl bromide. On the other hand, a bulky tert-butyl group adjacent to a reaction centre leads to very slow substitution, so this compound (‘neopentyl bromide’) goes at the bottom of the scale.
**PROBLEM 3**

Draw mechanisms for these reactions, explaining why these particular products are formed.

Purpose of the problem

How to choose between SN1 and SN2 when the choice is more subtle.

**Suggested solution**

The first compound has two leaving groups—both secondary chlorides. The one that leaves is next to oxygen so that suggests SN1 (the oxygen lone pair can stabilize the cation) as does the reagent: surely MeO⁻ would be used for SN2.

The second compound has only one leaving group and that must be protonated before it can leave. It has two possible sites for attack by the nucleophile (Cl⁻), one primary and one secondary. As the primary is chosen, this must be SN2.
PROBLEM 4
Suggest how to carry out the following transformations.

Purpose of the problem
Choosing reagents for substitution reactions of alcohols.

Suggested solution
The first compound can react by $S_N 1$, so we have an opportunity to use an excellent reaction: just treating the alcohol with HBr will give the bromide. The second compound is primary, so we have to make it react by $S_N 2$. But we can’t simply try to get $\text{OH}^-$ to leave (hydroxide is never a leaving group!). We have to convert the alcohol into a better leaving group, and we can do this just by treating with $\text{PCl}_3$ (or we could make a sulfonate leaving group and displace with chloride).

The final example must be an $S_N 2$ reaction because it involves an inversion of configuration. Again, hydroxide cannot be a leaving group, so we have to make the alcohol into a tosylate first. We could then use hydroxide as a nucleophile, but to avoid competing elimination reactions the next step is usually done in two stages using acetate as the nucleophile and then hydrolysing to the alcohol.
PROBLEM 5
Draw mechanisms for these reactions and give the stereochemistry of the product.

Purpose of the problem
Drawing mechanisms for two types of nucleophilic substitution in the same sequence to make a β-lactam antibiotic.

Suggested solution
We need an S_N2 reaction at a primary carbon and a nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group with the amino group as the nucleophile in both cases. The carbonyl group reaction probably happens first. Don’t worry if you didn’t deprotonate the amide before the S_N2 reaction. The stereochemistry is the same as that of the starting material (CO_2Et up as drawn) as no change has occurred at the chiral centre.
**PROBLEM 6**

Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. You will find it helpful first of all to draw good diagrams of reagents and products.

\[ \text{t-BuNMe}_2 + (\text{MeCO})_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{Me}_2\text{NCOMe} + \text{t-BuO}_2\text{CMe} \]

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of chapter 2 and practice at drawing mechanisms of unusual reactions.

**Suggested solution**

First draw good diagrams of the molecules as the question suggests.

With an unfamiliar reaction, it is best to identify the nucleophile and the electrophile and see what happens when we unite them. The nitrogen atom is obviously the nucleophile and one of the carbonyl groups must be the electrophile.

We must lose a t-butyl group from this intermediate to give one of the products and unite it with the acetate ion to give the other. This must be an \(S_N1\) rather than an \(S_N2\) at a t-butyl group.
**PROBLEM 7**

Predict the stereochemistry of these products. Are they diastereoisomers, enantiomers, racemic or what?

![Reaction Scheme](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of stereochemistry from chapter 14 and practice at applying it to substitution reactions.

**Suggested solution**

The starting material in the first reaction has a plane of symmetry so it is achiral: the stereochemistry shows only which diastereoisomer we have. Attack by the amine nucleophile at either end of the epoxide (the two ends are the same) must take place from underneath for inversion to occur. The product is a single diastereoisomer but cannot, of course, be a single enantiomer so it doesn’t matter which enantiomer you have drawn. The stereochemistry of the Ph group cannot change—it is just a spectator.

![Intermediate Scheme](image)

The starting material for the second reaction is also achiral as it too has a plane of symmetry. The stereochemistry merely shows that the two OTs groups are on the same side of the molecule as drawn. Displacement with sulfur will occur with inversion and it is wise to redraw the intermediate before the cyclization. This ‘inverts’ the chiral centre so that we can see that the stereochemistry of the product has the methyl groups *cis*. There are various ways to draw this.
PROBLEM 8
What are the mechanisms of these reactions, and what is the role of the ZnCl₂ in the first step and the NaI in the second?

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of two different kinds of catalysis in substitution reactions.

Suggested solution
The ZnCl₂ acts as a Lewis acid and can be used either to remove chloride from MeCOCl or to complex with its carbonyl oxygen atom, in either case making it a better electrophile so that it can react with the unreactive oxygen atom of the cyclic ether. Ring cleavage by chloride follows.

The second reaction is an S_N2 displacement of a reasonable leaving group (chloride) by a rather weak nucleophile (acetate). The reaction is very slow unless catalysed by iodide ion—a better nucleophile than acetate and a better leaving group than chloride.
PROBLEM 9
Describe the stereochemistry of the products of these reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Nucleophilic substitution and stereochemistry, with a few extra twists.

Suggested solution
The ester in the first example is removed by reduction leaving an oxyanion that cyclizes by intramolecular $S_N2$ reaction with inversion giving one diastereoisomer (cis) of the product. The product is achiral.

The second case involves an intramolecular $S_N2$ reaction on one end of the epoxide. The reaction occurs stereospecifically with inversion and so one enantiomer of one diastereoisomer of the product is formed. Some redrawing is needed and we have left the epoxide in its original position to avoid mistakes.

You can read more about this in B. S. Furniss et al., Vogel's textbook of organic chemistry (5th edn), Longmans, Harlow, 1989, p. 492.
**PROBLEM 10**

State, with reasons, whether these reactions will be $S_N1$ or $S_N2$.

**Purpose of the problem**

Taxing examples of the choice between our two main mechanisms. The last two differ only in reaction conditions.

**Suggested solution**

The first reaction offers a choice between an $S_N2$ reaction at a tertiary carbon or an $S_N1$ reaction next to a carbonyl group. Neither looks very good but experiments have shown that these reactions go with inversion of configuration and they are about the only examples of $S_N2$ reactions at tertiary carbon. They work because the $p$ orbital in the transition state is stabilized by conjugation with the carbonyl group: $S_N2$ reactions adjacent to C=O groups are usually fast.

The moment that you see acetal-like compounds in the second example, you should suspect $S_N1$ with oxonium ion intermediates. In fact the compounds are orthoesters but this makes no difference to the mechanism. If you are not sure of this sort of chemistry, have a look at chapter 11. The OH group displaces the OMe group by an acid-catalysed $S_N1$ reaction.
The last two examples add the same group (OPr) to the same compound (an epoxide) to give different products. We can tell that the first is $S_N1$ as PrOH adds to the more substituted (tertiary and benzylic) position. Inversion occurs because the nucleophile prefers to add to the less hindered face opposite the OH group. If you said that it is an $S_N2$ reaction at a benzylic centre with a loose cationic transition state, you may well be right.

The second is easier as the more reactive anion adds to the less hindered centre with inversion and this must be $S_N2$. 
**PROBLEM 11**

The pharmaceutical company Pfizer made the antidepressant reboxetine by the following sequence of reactions. Suggest a reagent for each step, commenting on aspects of stereochemistry or reactivity.

Purpose of the problem

Thinking about substitution reactions in a real synthesis. It might look challenging, but each step uses a reaction you have already met.

Suggested solution

The first step is the attack of a nucleophile on an epoxide. It’s an S\textsubscript{N}2 reaction, because it goes with inversion of configuration, and we need a phenol as the nucleophile. To make the phenol more reactive, we probably want to deprotonate it to make the phenoxide, and NaOH will do this. Why does this end of the epoxide react? Well, it is next to a phenyl ring, and benzylic S\textsubscript{N}2 reactions are faster than reactions at ‘normal’ secondary carbons. Next the end hydroxyl group is made into a leaving group (a ‘mesylate’), for which we need methanesulfonyl chloride (mesyl chloride) and triethylamine. The primary hydroxyl group must react faster than the secondary one because it is less hindered.
The next stage is an intramolecular substitution leading to formation of a new epoxide. The hydroxyl group is the nucleophile and the methanesulfonate (MsO−) group the leaving group. We need base to do this, and sodium hydroxide is a good choice. Now the epoxide can be opened (at its more reactive, less hindered end) with a nitrogen nucleophile: ammonia might be a possible choice, but often better is azide, followed by reduction by hydrogenation or LiAlH₄. The amine product is converted into an amide, so we need an acid chloride and base.

Another intramolecular substitution follows, this time with an alcohol nucleophile displacing a chloride leaving group to make a new ring. A strong base will make the alcohol nucleophilic by deprotonating it to form the epoxide, and KOt-Bu works here (though if you just suggested ‘base’ that is fine: only experimentation will show which works best). Finally, the amide is reduced to an amine, for which we need LiAlH₄.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 16

PROBLEM 1
Identify the chair or boat rings in the following structures and say why this particular structure is adopted.

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of simple examples of chair and boat forms.

Suggested solution
The first three are relatively simple. The first has a chair with all substituents equatorial. The second is forced to have a boat as no chair is possible but the third has a normal chair with a 1,3-diaxial bridge.

Two have nothing but boats as chairs are impossible. One has three boats and the other just the one as there is only one six-membered ring.

The remaining molecule is adamantane – a tiny fragment of a diamond. It is more symmetrical than a paper diagram can show but a model reveals a beautifully symmetrical structure. All the rings are chairs, though some don’t look very chair-like in our diagrams.
**PROBLEM 2**

Draw clear conformational drawings of these molecules, labelling each substituent as axial or equatorial.

Purpose of the problem

Simple practice at drawing chair cyclohexanes with axial and equatorial substituents.

Suggested solution

Your drawings may look different from ours but make sure the rings have parallel sides and don’t ‘climb upstairs’ (pp. 371–372 in the textbook). Make sure that the axial bonds are vertical and the equatorial bonds parallel to the next ring bond but one. The easiest strategy with this question is to draw a ring accurately, and then to add the substituents. The first molecule is simple: there is only one substituent, a large bromine atom, so it goes equatorial. In the second molecule, the two substituents have to be on opposite sides of the ring: this allows them both to be equatorial, which of course they prefer. The last two molecules are dominated by the large t-butyl group which insists on being equatorial. Once you have put an equatorial t-butyl group on the last molecule you find that there is no choice but to put the Me and OH groups axial.
**PROBLEM 3**

Would the substituents in these molecules be axial, equatorial, or a mixture between the two?

![Molecules](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Simple practice at drawing chair cyclohexanes and deciding whether the substituents are axial or equatorial. Remember to decide by drawing and not by trying to remember rules.

**Suggested solution**

All three molecules have a free choice as the substituents aren’t large and are about the same size. Note that all three molecules have their substituents ‘trans’ but in two they are both equatorial and in one they are axial/equatorial.

![Molecules](image)

**PROBLEM 4**

Which of these two compounds would form an epoxide on treatment with base?

![Molecules](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Exploration of the relationship between conformation and mechanism.
Suggested solution

The mechanism is easy (intramolecular S$_{N}$2) and the conformation of a trans decalin is fixed so we can start with the conformational drawings.

![Conformational drawings]

The first compound can get the necessary ‘attack from the back’ angle of 180° between the nucleophile (O$^-$) and the leaving group (Br) for the intramolecular reaction. But this is impossible for the second compound.

PROBLEM 5

It is more difficult to form an acetal from the first of these compounds than from the second. Why is this?

![Acetal formation]

Purpose of the problem

Exploration of the effect of conformation on equilibria in thermodynamically controlled reactions.

Suggested solution

The mechanism of the reaction is normal acetal formation and is irrelevant to the question as acetal formation is thermodynamically controlled: it is only the structure and stability of the product that matters. We need to look at the conformations of the molecules to find out which is the more stable.
Axial groups 1,3-related to the ketone are not important as there is no axial group on the ketone. But one of the oxygen atoms in the acetal must be axial and there is now a bad 1,3-diaxial interaction with the methyl group in the first but not in the second acetal. Though the first ketone is slightly less stable than the second, the first acetal is markedly less stable than the second.

**PROBLEM 6**

Hydrolysis of the tricyclic bromide below in water gives an alcohol. What is the conformation of the bromide and what will be the stereochemistry of the alcohol?

Purpose of the problem

Exploring the conformation of a tricyclic system and discovering that conformation can control stereochemistry even of $S_{N}1$ reactions. (Yes, you do need to work out for yourself that this is an $S_{N}1$ reaction.)

Suggested solution

The mechanism of the reaction is obviously $S_{N}1$ as it is a tertiary bromide and the reagent is water, a weak nucleophile. The water molecule can approach from either side of the planar cation intermediate. There is a unique conformation of the starting material with all three rings in chair conformations and this will be much preferred in the product. The reaction goes with retention as it is under thermodynamic control.
PROBLEM 7
Treatment of the triol below with benzaldehyde in acid solution produces one diastereoisomer of an acetal but none of the alternative acetal. Why is one acetal preferred? (Hint: what controls acetal formation?) What is the stereochemistry of the undefined centre in the acetal that is formed?

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of conformational control in acetal formation.

Suggested solution
Acetal formation is thermodynamically controlled (p. 226 in the textbook) so we need look only for the most stable possible product. The one that is not formed is a cis-decalin as that would be significantly less stable than the trans-decalin that is formed. The phenyl group prefers to adopt an equatorial position and that will decide the stereochemistry as all the acetals are in equilibrium. The remaining OH has to be axial because of its configuration in the starting material.
**PROBLEM 8**
The compound below is the painkiller tramadol. Draw the most likely conformation of its six-membered ring.

**Purpose of the problem**
Conformation of a drug molecule.

**Suggested solution**
As before, just draw a chair, then add substituents. Here we have one carbon with two substituents, but the large aryl ring will prefer to be equatorial. This also allows the amine substituent to be equatorial.
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 17

**PROBLEM 1**
Draw mechanisms for these elimination reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Exercise in drawing simple eliminations.

Suggested solution
These are both E2 reactions as the leaving groups are on primary carbons. In fact both of these reaction are in the textbook (pp. 387 and 391 of the textbook).

The structure of the amidine base, DBU, and why it is used in elimination reactions is discussed in the textbook on p. 387.
PROBLEM 2
Give a mechanism for the elimination reaction in the formation of tamoxifen, a breast cancer drug, and comment on the roughly 50:50 mixture of geometrical isomers (cis- and trans-alkenes)

Purpose of the problem
Thinking about the stereochemical consequences of E1.

Suggested solution
The tertiary alcohol leaving group, the acid catalyst, and the 50:50 mixture all suggest E1 rather than E2. There is only one proton that can be lost and, as there is very little difference between the isomeric alkenes, equilibration probably gives the 50:50 mixture.

The fact that equilibration of the products of E1 elimination gives the most stable possible alkene is discussed in the textbook on p. 394.
PROBLEM 3
Suggest mechanisms for these eliminations. Why does the first give a mixture and the second a single product?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \quad \text{H}_3\text{PO}_4 \quad \text{heat} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Heat \quad \text{64\% yield, 4:1 ratio}

Heat \quad 48\% \text{HBr}

Purpose of the problem
Regioselectivity of eliminations.

Suggested solution
Whether the first reaction is E1 or E2, there are two sets of hydrogen atoms that could be lost in the elimination. The conditions suggest E1 and the major product may be so because of equilibration.

The second reaction produces a more stable tertiary cation from which any of six protons could be lost, but all give the same product. Repetition gives the diene.

The fact that equilibration of the products of E1 elimination gives the most stable possible alkene is discussed in the textbook on p. 394.
PROBLEM 4
Explain the position of the alkene in the products of these reactions. The starting materials are enantiomerically pure. Are the products also enantiomerically pure?

**Purpose of the problem**
Examples of E1cB in the context of absolute stereochemistry.

**Suggested solution**
The first reaction is an E1cB elimination of a β-hydroxy-ketone. The product is still chiral although it has lost one stereogenic centre. The other (quaternary) centre is not affected by the reaction so the product is enantiomerically pure.

E1cB reactions are on p. 399 in the textbook

The second example already has an electron-rich alkene (an enol ether) present in the starting material so this is more of an E1 than an E1cB mechanism. The intermediate is a hemiacetal that hydrolyses to a ketone (p. 224 in the textbook). The product has two chiral centres unaffected by the reaction and is still chiral so it is also enantiomerically pure.
**PROBLEM 5**

Explain the stereochemistry of the alkenes in the products of these reactions.

**Purpose of the problem**

Display your skill in a deceptive example of control of alkene geometry by elimination.

**Suggested solution**

The first reaction is stereospecific cis addition of hydrogen to an alkyne to give the cis-alkene. The intermediate is therefore a cis,cis-diene and it may seem remarkable that it should become a trans,trans-diene on elimination. However, when we draw the mechanism for the elimination, we see that there need be no relationship between the stereochemistry of the intermediate and the product as this is an E1 reaction and the cationic intermediate can rotate into the most stable shape before conversion to the aldehyde.

The hydrogenation of alkynes to give cis alkenes is described on p. 537 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 6
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and explain why the product is so stable.

Purpose of the problem
Exploring what might happen on the way to an elimination and explaining special stability.

Suggested solution
The obvious place to start is cyclization of the phenol onto a ketone to form a six-membered ring. The product is a hemiacetal that will surely eliminate by a combination of hemiacetal hydrolysis and the E1cB mechanism.

The final product is particularly stable as the right hand ring is aromatic. It has two alkenes and a lone pair on oxygen, making six electrons in all. If you prefer you can show the delocalization to make the ring more benzene-like.
PROBLEM 7
Comment on the position taken by the alkene in these eliminations.

Purpose of the problem
Further exploration of the site occupied by the alkene after an elimination.

Suggested solution
The first is an E1cB reaction after methylation makes the amine into a leaving group. The alkene has to go where the amine was (and in conjugation with the ketone).

The second is also E1cB and so the alkene must end up conjugated with the ketone. But this time the leaving group is on the ring so that is where the alkene goes. The stereochemistry is irrelevant as the enolate has lost one chiral centre and there is no requirement in E1cB for H and OH to be antiperiplanar.

The third is an E2 reaction so there is now a requirement for H and Br to be anti-periplanar. This means that the Br must be axial and only one hydrogen is then in the right place.
PROBLEM 8
Why is it difficult (though not impossible) for cyclohexyl bromide to undergo an E2 reaction? What conformational changes must occur during this reaction?

Purpose of the problem
Simple exploration of the relationship between conformation and mechanism.

Suggested solution
Cyclohexyl bromide prefers the chair conformation with the bromine equatorial. It cannot do an E2 reaction in this conformation as E2 requires the reacting C–H and C–Br bonds to be anti-periplanar. This can be achieved if the molecule first flips to put the C–Br bond in an unfavourable axial conformation.
PROBLEM 9

Only one of these bromides eliminates to give alkene A. Why? Neither alkene eliminates to give alkene B. Why not?

Purpose of the problem

Helping you to understand that cage molecules often have restricted opportunity for elimination.

Suggested solution

The first molecule has one H antiperiplanar to the Br atom so elimination can occur. The second has no hydrogens antiperiplanar to Br. Alkene B is a bridgehead alkene and cannot exist (see the textbook, pp. 389–390).
PROBLEM 10
Account for the contrasting results of these two reactions.

Purpose of the problem
How configuration controls mechanism, and an alternative type of elimination.

Suggested solution
The two compounds differ only in their configuration, and as they both have a tert-butyl group they have no choice about their conformation. The bromide must be the leaving group, and when you draw the molecules you find that it must also be axial. In the first case there is a proton antiperiplanar to it that can lead to a conjugated alkene. In the second case, the bond antiperiplanar to the bromine is a C–C bond, but that’s OK on this occasion because decarboxylation can take place by the mechanism shown. There is an antiperiplanar C–H bond on the other side of course, but the decarboxylation must be faster than simple E2 elimination.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 18

PROBLEM 1
A compound C_6H_5FO has a broad peak in the infrared at about 3100-3400 cm^{-1} and the following signals in its (proton decoupled) ^{13}C NMR spectrum. Suggest a structure for the compound and interpret the spectra.

δ_C (ppm) 157.4 (d, J=229 Hz), 151.2 (s), 116.3 (d, J=7.5 Hz), and 116.0 (d, J=23.2 Hz).

Purpose of the problem
A reminder that coupling may occur in ^{13}C NMR spectra too and can be useful.

Suggested solution
All the signals are in the sp^2 region and two (at >150 ppm) are of carbons attached to electronegative elements. As the formula contains C_6, a benzene ring is strongly suggested. The IR spectrum tells us that we have an OH group, so the compound is one of these three:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{F} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{F} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{F}
\end{align*}
\]

The symmetry of the spectrum suggests the para disubstituted compound as there are only four types of carbon atom. We can assign the spectrum by noting that the very large coupling (J=229) must be a 2^J_CF and the zero coupling must be the carbon furthest from F, i.e. the para carbon. The intermediate couplings are for the other two carbons and the CF coupling diminishes with distance.
PROBLEM 2
The natural product bullatenone was isolated in the 1950s from a New Zealand myrtle and assigned the structure A. Then authentic compound A was synthesized and found not to be identical to natural bullatenone. Predict the expected $^1H$ NMR spectrum of A. Given the full spectroscopic data, not available in the 1950s, say why A is definitely wrong and suggest a better structure for bullatenone.

Spectra of isolated bullatenone:
Mass spectrum: m/z 188 (10%) (high resolution confirms C$_{12}$H$_{12}$O$_2$), 105 (20%), 102 (100%), and 77 (20%)
Infrared: 1604 and 1705 cm$^{-1}$
$^1H$ NMR: $\delta_H$ (ppm) 1.43 (6H, s), 5.82 (1H, s), 7.35 (3H, m), and 7.68 (2H, m).

Purpose of the problem
Detecting wrong structures teaches us to be alert to what the spectra are telling us rather than what we expect or want.

Suggested solution
The mass spectrum and IR are all right for A but the NMR shows at once that the structure is wrong. There is a monosubstituted benzene ring all right, but the aliphatic protons are a 6H singlet, presumably a CMe$_2$ group, and a 1H singlet in the alkene region at 5.82 ppm.

The fragments we have are Ph, carbonyl, a CMe$_2$ group, and an alkene with one proton on it. That adds up to C$_{12}$H$_{12}$O leaving only one oxygen to fit in somewhere. There must still be a ring or there would not be enough hydrogen atoms and the ring must be five-membered (just try other possibilities yourself). There are three ring systems we can choose and each can have the Ph group at either end of the alkene, making six possibilities in all.
The last four are esters (cyclic esters or lactones) and they would have a C=O frequency at 1745–1780 cm^{-1} so D–G are all wrong. The hydrogen on the alkene cannot be next to oxygen as it would have a very large chemical shift indeed whereas it is close to the ‘normal’ alkene shift of 5.25 ruling out structure C. Structure B is correct and the spectrum can be assigned. Compound B has now been synthesized and proved identical to natural bullatenone.

PROBLEM 3
Suggest structures for each of these reaction products, interpreting the spectroscopic data. You are not expected to give mechanisms for the reactions and you must resist the temptation to say what ‘ought to happen’. These are all unexpected products.

A. C_6H_{12}O_2
\n\nu_{\text{max}} (\text{cm}^{-1}) \ 1745
\n\delta_{\text{C}} (\text{ppm}) 179, 52, 39, 27
\n\delta_{\text{H}} (\text{ppm}) 1.20 (9H, s) and 3.67 (3H, s)

B. C_6H_{10}O_3
\n\nu_{\text{max}} (\text{cm}^{-1}) 1745, 1710
\n\delta_{\text{C}} (\text{ppm}) 203, 170, 62, 39, 22, 15
\n\delta_{\text{H}} (\text{ppm}) 1.28 (3H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.21 (3H, s)
3.24 (2H, s) and 4.2 (2H, q, J 7 Hz)

C. m/z 118
\n\nu_{\text{max}} (\text{cm}^{-1}) 1730
\n\delta_{\text{C}} (\text{ppm}) 202, 45, 22, 15
\n\delta_{\text{H}} (\text{ppm}) 1.12 (6H, s), 2.28 (3H, s)
and 9.8 (1H, s)

Purpose of the problem
A common situation in real life—you carry out a reaction, isolate the product, and it’s something quite different from what you were expecting. What is it?

Suggested solution

Compound A has a carbonyl group (IR) that is an acid derivative (179 ppm in the 13C NMR). The 9H singlet in the proton NMR must be a t-Bu group and the 3H singlet at 3.67 ppm must be an OMe group. Putting these four fragments together we get a structure immediately. The IR is typical for an ester (1715 + 30 = 1745 cm$^{-1}$).

![Structure A]

Compound B again has an ester (1745 cm$^{-1}$ and 170 ppm) but it also has a ketone (1710 cm$^{-1}$ and 203 ppm). The proton NMR shows an OEt group (3H triplet and 2H quartet) together with another methyl group next to something electron-withdrawing (that can only be a C=O as there isn’t anything else), and a CH$_2$ group with no coupling at 3.24 ppm. This is 2 ppm away from a ‘normal’ CH$_2$ but it can’t be next to O as we’ve used up all the O atoms already. It must be between two electron-withdrawing groups. These can only be carbonyls so this CH$_2$ is isolated between the two carbonyl groups and we have the structure.

![Structure B]

Compound C has no formula given, just a molecular ion in the mass spectrum. The most obvious formula is C$_5$H$_{10}$O$_3$ but S is 32 while O is 16 so it might be C$_5$H$_{10}$OS. We must look at the rest of the spectra for clarification. There is a carbonyl group (1730 cm$^{-1}$) that is an aldehyde or ketone (202 ppm). The proton NMR shows a CM$_2$ group (6H, s), a methyl group at 2.8 ppm that doesn’t look like an OMe (expected 3-3.5 ppm), but might be an SMe. The carbon spectrum also suggests SMe rather than OMe at 45 ppm, and one hydrogen atom at 9.8 ppm that looks like an aldehyde. We know we have these fragments:

![Fragments C]

It is not possible to construct a molecule with two extra oxygen atoms but without an OMe, and those we could propose look rather unstable, such as:
Only one compound is possible if we have an S atom—this fits the data very much better and indeed is the correct structure. It has a genuine aldehyde (not a formate ester) and SMe fits better than OMe the signal at $\delta$H 2.8 ppm and $\delta_C$ 45 ppm.

**PROBLEM 4**

Suggest structures for the products of these reactions.

**Compound A**: C$_7$H$_{12}$O$_3$; IR 1725 cm$^{-1}$; $\delta$H (ppm) 1.02 (6H, s), 1.66 (2H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.51 (2H, t, J 7 Hz), and 4.6 (2H, s).

**Compound B**: m/z 149/151 (M$^+$ ratio 1:3); IR 2250 cm$^{-1}$; $\delta$H (ppm) 2.0 (2H, quintet, J 7 Hz), 2.5 (2H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.9 (2H, t, J 7 Hz), and 4.6 (2H, s).

**Purpose of the problem**

More practice at the important skill of total structure determination.

**Suggested solution**

The starting material for A is C$_7$H$_{12}$O$_3$ and appears just to have lost an oxygen atom. As the reagent is NaBH$_4$, the chances are that two hydrogens have been added and the oxygen lost as a water molecule. The IR spectrum shows a carbonyl group and the frequency suggests an ester or a strained ketone. The NMR shows two joined CH$_2$ groups, one at 2.51 being next to a functional group, not O and so it must be C=O. There is also an unchanged CMe$_3$ group and an isolated CH$_3$ group next to oxygen at 3.9 ppm. There is only one reasonable structure.
The mass spectrum of compound B shows that it has chlorine in it, the IR shows a CN group and the proton NMR shows eight Hs. If we assume that no carbons have been lost, the most reasonable formula is C₅H₈ClNS. The compound has lost a water molecule. The NMR shows three linked CH₂ groups with triplets at the ends and a quintet in the middle. The shifts of the terminal CH₂s show that they are next to functional groups but not Cl. This means we must have a unit –SCH₂CH₂CH₂CN. All that remains is the isolated CH₂ group with a large chemical shift evidently joined to both the S and Cl. The large shift comes from 1.5 + 1 (S) + 2 (Cl) = 4.5 ppm. Again only one structure emerges.
PROBLEM 5
Two alternative structures are shown for the products of these reactions. Explain in each case how you would decide which product is actually formed. Several pieces of evidence will be required and estimated values are better than general statements.

Purpose of the problem
To get you thinking the other way round: from structure to data. What are the important pieces of evidence?

Suggested solution
There are many acceptable ways in which you could answer this question ranging from choosing just one vital statistic for each pair to analysing all the data. We'll adopt a middle way and point out several important distinctions. In the first example, one main difference is the ring size, seen mainly in the IR. Both are esters (about 1745 cm⁻¹) but we should add 30 cm⁻¹ for the five-membered ring. The functional group next to OCH₂ is also different—an OH in one case and an ester in another. There will be other differences too of course.

In the second case there are also differences in the IR C=O stretch between the aldehyde (about 1730 cm⁻¹) and the conjugated ketone (about
1680 cm\(^{-1}\)). The aldehyde proton and the number of protons next to oxygen make a clear distinction. There will also be differences in the \(^1H\) and \(^{13}C\) NMR signals of the benzene rings as one is conjugated to a C=O group and the other is not. This reaction actually gave a mixture of both compounds.

![NMR spectra of sodium fluoropyruvate in D\(_2\)O](image)

**PROBLEM 6**
The NMR spectra of sodium fluoropyruvate in D\(_2\)O are given below. Are these data compatible with the structure shown? If not, suggest how the compound might exist in this solution.

\[
\begin{align*}
\delta_H (\text{ppm}) & \quad 4.43 (2\text{H}, d, J 47 \text{ Hz}); \\
\delta_C (\text{ppm}) & \quad 83.5 (d, J 22 \text{ Hz}), 86.1 (d, J 171 \text{ Hz}), \text{ and } 176.1 (d, J 2 \text{ Hz}).
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**
To show how NMR spectra can reveal more than just the identity of a compound.

**Suggested solution**
The proton NMR spectrum is all right as we expect a large shift: from the chart on p. 276 of the textbook, we can predict 1.3 + 1 (C=O) + 2 (F) = 4.3 ppm and the coupling to fluorine is fine. The carbon NMR shows the carboxylate carbon at 176 ppm with a small coupling to F as it is so far away. The \(CH_2\) carbon is at 86.1 ppm with a huge coupling as it is joined directly to F. So far, so good. But what about the C=O group itself? We should expect it at about 200 ppm but it is at 83.5 with the expected intermediate coupling. It cannot be a carbonyl group at all. So what could have happened in D\(_2\)O? The obvious answer is that a hydrate is formed from this very electrophilic carbonyl group.
PROBLEM 7

An antibiotic isolated from a microorganism was crystallized from water and formed different crystalline salts in either acid or base. The spectroscopic data were:

- Mass spectrum 182 (M+, 9%), 109 (100%), and 74 (15%).
- \( \delta^H \) (ppm in D\(_2\)O at pH<1) 3.67 (2H, d, \( J7 \)), 4.57 (1H, t, \( J7 \)), 8.02 (2H, m), and 8.37 (1H, m).
- \( \delta^C \) (ppm in D\(_2\)O at pH<1) 33.5, 52.8, 130.1, 130.6, 130.9, 141.3, 155.9, and 170.2.

Suggest a structure for the antibiotic.

Purpose of the problem

Structure determination of a compound with biological activity from a natural source.

Suggested solution

The solubility and salt formation suggest the presence of both acidic and basic groups, perhaps CO\(_2\)H and NH\(_2\) as this is a natural compound. If so, the \( ^{13}C \) peak at 170.2 ppm is the CO\(_2\)H group. The five carbons in the sp\(^2\) region and protons at 8.0 and 8.4 suggest an aromatic ring, probably a pyridine. The mass spectrum gives an even molecular ion (182) so there must be another nitrogen atom beyond the one in the pyridine. The two sets of aliphatic protons are coupled and the large shift of the \( ^1H \) signal at 4.57 ppm suggests a proton between CO\(_2\)H and NH\(_3^+\) (pH <1). We have these fragments:

Presumably the aliphatic part must be X or Y, and that leaves just one oxygen atom for a formula of C\(_8\)H\(_{10}\)N\(_2\)O\(_3\) = 182. Only six of the ten H atoms show up in the NMR because the OH, NH\(_3^+\), and CO\(_2\)H protons all exchange rapidly at pH <1.

**PROBLEM 8**
Suggest structures for the products of these two reactions.

![Reaction diagram]

**Compound A:**
- m/z 170 (M+, 1%), 84 (77%), and 66 (100%);
- IR 1773, 1754 cm⁻¹;
- δ₂ (ppm, CDCl₃) 1.82 (6H, s) and 1.97 (4H, s);
- δ₁ (ppm, CDCl₃) 22, 23, 28, 105, and 169.

**Compound B:**
- m/z 205 (M+, 40%), 161 (50%), 160 (35%), 105 (100%), and 77 (42%);
- IR 1670, 1720 cm⁻¹;
- δ₂ (ppm, CDCl₃) 2.55 (2H, m), 3.71 (1H, t, J 6 Hz), 3.92 (2H, m), 7.21 (2H, d, J 8 Hz), 7.35 (1H, t, J 8 Hz), and 7.62 (2H, d, J 8 Hz);
- δ₁ (ppm, CDCl₃) 21, 47, 48, 121, 127, 130, 138, 170, and 172.

**Purpose of the problem**
The other important kind of structure determination: compounds isolated from a chemical reaction.

**Suggested solution**
Compound A is much simpler so we start with that. The two reagents are C₅H₆O₄ and C₅H₈O₂; these add up to C₁₀H₁₄O₆ (230) so 60 has been lost. This looks like C₅H₄O₂ or, less likely (because it must be saturated—it has no double bond equivalents), C₅H₈O. If the first is right, A is C₈H₁₀O₄ which at least fits the proton NMR. The IR suggests two carbonyl groups. The ¹³C NMR shows only one, but there must be some symmetry as there are only five signals for eight carbon atoms. The only unsaturation we have identified is the two carbonyl groups so the signal at 105 ppm is very strange. It must be next to two oxygen atoms to have such a large shift. Either 22 or 105 must...
be the C of CMe₂. C₈H₁₀O₄ would have four double bond equivalents, so the last two degrees of unsaturation must be rings. The cyclopropane provides one and the other must link the two oxygen atoms in the second part-structure. So we have:

```
O
|  |
|---|---|
| O | O |
```

This accounts for all the atoms in A so all we need to do is join these two fragments together! The carbonyls are arranged rather like those in cyclic anhydrides and the two carbonyl peaks must be the symmetric and antisymmetric stretches.

```
O
|  |
|---|---|
| O | O |
```

Compound B has nitrogen in it (it has an odd molecular weight) and clearly has a benzene ring from the NMR spectra, so we can put down PhN (= 91) as part of the structure. It also has two carbonyl groups (in the IR the one at 1670 cm⁻¹ looks like an amide) and they are both acid derivatives (you can see that in the ¹³C NMR). There are three aliphatic carbons, two CH₂s and one CH. Adding that together gives C₁₁H₁₀NO₃ = 188 so there is 17 missing that looks like OH. Since we need a second acid derivative and the OH is the only remaining heteroatom, it must be a carboxylic acid. Given that the CH is a triplet, it must be joined to one of the CH₂ groups and, as they are both multiplets, they must be joined to each other. There is one double bond equivalent to account for and that must be a ring. So we have:

```
O
|  |
|---|---|
| O | O |
```

To assemble these three fragments into a molecule we must plug the amide into the C₃ fragment and put the CO₂H group in the last free position. We can do this in two ways. Proton NMR distinguishes them. The end CH₃ is attached either to the nitrogen atom (which would give an estimated shift
of 3.2 ppm) or to the carbonyl group (estimated shift 2.2 ppm) of the amide. The observed value (3.92) fits the first better. A similar estimate for the CH gives the same answer and the first structure is indeed correct.

PROBLEM 9
Treatment of this epoxy-ketone with tosyl hydrazine gives a compound with the spectra shown below. What is its structure?

![Diagram](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Further practice at structure determination, adding a curious chemical shift.

**Suggested solution**
The compound is an alkyne formed by a reaction known as the Eschenmoser fragmentation. It is not possible to assign all the $^{13}$C NMR signals but you can spot the alkyne carbons in the region 70–85 ppm and the alkyne CH at about 2 in the proton NMR. The triple bond signals in the IR at about 2150 cm$^{-1}$ is a give-away too. Alkyne C–H bonds are strong and come well above 3000 in the IR. The lack of vicinal coupling in the $^1$H NMR helps identify the rest of the skeleton of the molecule.

---


**PROBLEM 10**

Reaction of the epoxy-alcohol below with LiBr in toluene gave a 92% yield of compound A. Suggest a structure for this compound from the data:

- **mass spectrum** gives C₈H₁₂O;
- **ν** max (cm⁻¹) 1685, 1618;
- **δ**H (ppm) 1.26 (6H, s), 1.83, 2H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.50 (2H, dt, J 2.6, 7 Hz), 6.78 (1H, t (J 2.6 Hz), and 9.82 (1H, s);
- **δ**C (ppm) 189.2, 153.4, 152.7, 43.6, 40.8, 30.3, and 25.9.

**Purpose of the problem**

Further practice at structure determination including a change in the carbon skeleton—a ring contraction.

**Suggested solution**

The compound A is a simple cyclopentenal. The ¹³C NMR assignment is not at all certain.

---

PROBLEM 11
Female boll weevils (a cotton pest) produce two isomeric compounds that aggregate the males for food and sex. A few mg of two isomeric active compounds, grandisol and Z-ochtodenol, were isolated from 4.5 million insects. Suggest structures for these compounds from the data below. Signals marked * exchange with D₂O.

Z-ochtodenol:
m/z 154 (C₁₀H₁₈O), 139, 136, 121, 107, 69 (100%);
ν_max (cm⁻¹) 3350, and 1660;
δ_H (ppm) 0.89 (6H, s), 1.35-1.70 (1H, broad m), 1.41* (1H, s), 1.96 (2H, s), 2.06 (2H, t, J 6 Hz), 4.11 (2H, d, J 7 Hz), and 5.48 (1H, t, J 7 Hz).

Grandisol:
m/z 154 (C₁₀H₁₈O), 139, 136, 121, 109, 68 (100%);
ν_max (cm⁻¹) 3630, 3520, 3550, and 1642;
δ_H (ppm) 1.15 (3H, s), 1.42 (1H, dddd, J 1.2, 6.2, 9.4, 13.4 Hz), 1.35-1.45 (1H, m), 1.55-1.67 (2H, m), 1.65 (3H, s), 1.70-1.81 (2H, m), 1.91-1.99 (1H, m), 2.52* (1H, broad t, J 9.0 Hz), 3.63 (1H, dddd, J 5.6, 9.4, 10.2 Hz), 3.66 (1H, dddd, J 6.2, 9.4, 10.2 Hz), 4.62 (1H, broad s), and 4.81 (1H, broad s);
δ_C (ppm) 19.1, 23.1, 28.3, 29.2, 38.8, 41.2, 52.4, 59.8, 109.6, and 145.1.

Purpose of the problem
Further practice at structure determination of natural products.

Suggested solution
These are the structures. If you have other answers, check that these structures fit the data better.

---

PROBLEM 12
Suggest structures for the products of these reactions.

\[ \text{Compound A:} \]
\[ \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{13}\text{OP, IR (cm}^{-1}\text{)} 1610, 1235; \]
\[ \delta (\text{ppm}) 6.5-7.5 (5\text{H, m}), 6.42 (1\text{H, t, } J 17 \text{ Hz}), 7.47 (1\text{H, dd, } J 17, 23 \text{ Hz}), \text{ and } 2.43 \]
\[ (6\text{H, d, } J 25 \text{ Hz}). \]

\[ \text{Compound B:} \]
\[ \text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{O}_{2}, \text{ IR (cm}^{-1}\text{)} \text{ C-H and fingerprint only;} \]
\[ \delta (\text{ppm}) 7.25 (5\text{H, s}), 4.28 (1\text{H, d, } J 4.8 \text{ Hz}), 3.91 (1\text{H, d, } J 4.8 \text{ Hz}), 2.96 (3\text{H, s}), 1.26 \]
\[ (3\text{H, s}) \text{ and } 0.76 (3\text{H, s}). \]

Purpose of the problem
Structure determination of reaction products with extra twists: a nucleus with spin (P) and protons on the same carbon atom that are different in the NMR.

Suggested solution
The coupling constants $^3J_{PH}$ across the alkene are very large. Typically cis $^3J_{PH}$ is about 20 and trans $^3J_{PH}$ about 40. Geminal ($^2J_{PH}$) are also large but more variable. In B there is a stereogenic centre, meaning that the hydrogen atoms and methyl groups in the ring are different: they are either on the same side as MeO or the same side as Ph. (The term we will introduce in chapter 31 to describe such groups is 'diastereotopic'). We cannot say which H gives which signal.

**Problem 13**

Identify the compounds produced in these reactions. Warning! Do not attempt to deduce the structures from the starting materials, but use the data. These molecules are so small that you can identify them from $^1$H NMR alone.

Data for **A**: $C_4H_8; \delta_H (ppm)$ 5.35 (2H, s) and 1.00 (4H, s)

Data for **B**: $C_6H_10O; \delta_H (ppm)$ 3.00 (2H, s), 0.90 (2H, d, $J$ 3 Hz) and 0.80 (2H, d, $J$ 3 Hz)

Data for **C**: $C_4H_8O; \delta_H (ppm)$ 3.02 (4H, d, $J$ 5 Hz) and 1.00 (2H, quintet, $J$ 5 Hz).

**Purpose of the problem**

Structure determination of reaction products by $^1$H NMR alone.

**Suggested solution**

The very small shifts of cyclopropane protons may have worried you but they often have shifts of less than 1 ppm. Compounds **A** and **C** are simple enough but **B** may have amazed you. It is unstable but can be isolated and the two three-membered rings sit at right angles to each other, so as in problem 12 the protons on each side of the cyclopropane ring are different.
PROBLEM 14

The yellow crystalline antibiotic frustulosin was isolated from a fungus in 1978 and it was suggested the structure was an equilibrium mixture of A and B. Apart from the difficulty that the NMR spectrum clearly shows one compound and not an equilibrium mixture of two compounds, what else makes you unsure of this assignment? Suggest a better structure. Signals marked * exchange with D$_2$O.

Frustulosin:
m/z 202 (100%), 174 (20%);

\[ \nu_{\text{max}} \text{ (cm}^{-1}) \] 3279, 1645, 1613, and 1522;

\[ \delta_{\text{H}} \text{ (ppm)} \] 2.06 (3H, dd, J 1.0, 1.6 Hz), 5.44 (1H, dq, J 2.0, 1.6 Hz), 5.52 (1H, dq, J 2.0, 1.0 Hz), 4.5* (1H, broad s), 7.16 (1H, d, J 9.0 Hz), 6.88 (1H, dd, J 9.0, 0.4 Hz), 10.31 (1H, d, J 0.4 Hz), and 11.22* (1H, broad s);

\[ \delta_{\text{C}} \text{ (ppm)} \] 22.8, 80.8, 100.6, 110.6, 118.4, 118.7, 112.6, 125.2, 129.1, 151.8, 154.5, and 196.6.

**Warning!** This is difficult—after all, the original authors got it wrong initially.

**Hint:** How might the DBEs be achieved without a second ring?

**Purpose of the problem**

A serious and difficult determination of a natural product as a final challenge.

**Suggested solution**

Structure B is definitely wrong because the NMR shows only one methyl group, not two, and only one carbonyl group, not two. Structure A looks unlikely because it appears to be unstable, but that is not evidence. The NMR shows two protons on the same end of a double bond (at 5.44 and 5.52 ppm) with the characteristic small coupling, but they are coupled to a methyl group, presumably by allylic coupling, and the methyl group is too far away in B. But what is the signal at 80.8 in the $^{13}$C NMR? The ‘hint’ was meant to guide you towards suggesting an alkyne. That solves many of the problems even though the carbons of the alkene and the aromatic ring
cannot be assigned with confidence. At least the revised structure is one compound and not two.

**Suggested solutions for Chapter 19**

**PROBLEM 1**
Predict the orientation of HCl addition to these alkenes.

**Purpose of the problem**
Simple examples of addition with regioselectivity.

**Suggested solution**
The first and last alkenes have different numbers of substituents at each end of the alkene and will give the more stable, more highly substituted cation on protonation. The middle one has the same number of substituents (one) at each end but they are very different in kind. The secondary benzylic cation is preferred to the non-conjugated alternative.
PROBLEM 2
Suggest mechanism and products for these reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Checking that you understand the bromination mechanism.

Suggested solution
The question of what product is formed is easily answered as we know bromine adds trans to alkenes. The products are both racemic, of course, as all reagents are achiral and only the relative stereochemistry is shown.

The mechanism is bromonium ion formation by electrophilic attack of bromine on the alkene and trans opening of the bromonium ion by bromide ion.
PROBLEM 3
What will be the products of the addition of bromine water to these alkenes?

Purpose of the problem
Checking that you understand the bromonium ion mechanism with an external nucleophile.

Suggested solution
The bromonium ion is formed again but now water attacks as the nucleophile as it is in large excess as the solvent. If the alkene is unsymmetrical, water attacks the more substituted end of the bromonium ion (p. 441 of the textbook). In any case, it does so with inversion.
PROBLEM 4
By working at low temperature with one equivalent of buffered solution of a peroxo-acid, it is possible to prepare the monoepoxide of cyclopentadiene. Why are these precautions necessary and why does a second epoxidation not occur under these conditions?

Purpose of the problem
A more complicated electrophilic addition with questions of stability and selectivity to consider.

Suggested solution
One of the alkenes in the diene reacts in the usual way to give, first of all, the monoepoxide. The reaction can be stopped there only if the remaining alkene is less nucleophilic than the alkenes in cyclopentadiene. This is indeed the case because the HOMO of a diene is higher in energy than the HOMO of a simple alkene. The HOMO of the diene ($\Psi_2$) results from antibonding addition of the two separate $\pi$-orbitals, making the diene more reactive than an isolated alkene.

The other questions concern the low temperature, which favours the kinetic product and encourages epoxide formation on the remaining alkene. A by-product from the reaction is RCO$_2$H which could catalyse the opening of the epoxide to give a stable allyl cation (p. 336 in the textbook). The buffer prevents the mixture becoming too acidic.
PROBLEM 5
The synthesis of a tranquilizer uses this step. Give mechanisms for the reactions.

Purpose of the problem
An electrophilic addition followed by a substitution: revision of chapter 17.

Suggested solution
HBr adds to the alkene to form the tertiary cation that captures bromide ion.

The bromide is hydrolysed by water. This must be an $S_N1$ reaction as the bromide is tertiary and the nucleophile is water. The same cation is an intermediate in both reactions.
**PROBLEM 6**
Explain this result:

![Chemical structure diagram](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
An electrophilic addition followed by an elimination (revision of chapter 17) and a substitution (revision of chapter 15).

**Suggested solution**
Addition of bromine occurs first to give the trans dibromide in the usual way. Base then eliminates one of the bromides in an E2 reaction using the only available trans hydrogen atom. This gives a reactive allylic bromide (p. 336 in the textbook) that reacts with cyanide ion by a favourable S_N2 reaction to give the product.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

**PROBLEM 7**
Suggest a mechanism for the following reaction. What is the stereochemistry and conformation of the product? The product has these signals in its ^1^H NMR spectrum: δ_H 3.9 (1H, ddq, J 12, 4, 7) and δ_H 4.3 (1H, dd, J 11, 3).

![Chemical structure diagram](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Drawing a mechanism for bromination of an alkene with an internal nucleophile, and revision of NMR.
Suggested solution

The mechanism is formation of the bromonium ion and nucleophilic attack by the OH group at the more substituted carbon. The product has one carbon with two methyl groups, of which one must be axial and one equatorial. The remaining substituted carbons, with a Br and a Me substituent, could be axial or equatorial: you might expect them to prefer to be equatorial but is there any evidence? The NMR spectrum shows that the two protons listed, whose large shift indicates that they are next to Br and O, both have large coupling constants. You will see details of the values of coupling constants in six-membered rings in chapter 31, but you already know that large $J$ values indicate parallel bonds (see pp. 293–4 of the textbook). This suggests that these C–H bonds are parallel (antiperiplanar) to their neighbours, something that is possible only if the C–H bonds are axial. The Br and the methyl group must therefore be equatorial.

PROBLEM 8

The two alkenes below can be converted into two regioisomers or two diastereoisomers as shown. Suggest reagents to achieve these transformations. What alternative starting material could you use to make the trans diol (bottom right)?

Purpose of the problem

Overview of methods for controlling selectivity in the reactions of alkenes.
Suggested solution

Hydration of the top alkene with aqueous acid goes via a carbocation intermediate, and would therefore give the product on the left. To get the product on the right we need a more roundabout method, involving hydroboration to place boron on the less hindered carbon and then oxidation to the alcohol (p. 446 of the textbook).

\[
\text{OH} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{H}^+ \quad 1. \text{HBR}_2 \quad 2. \text{H}_2\text{O}_2, \text{NaOH}
\]

Using osmium tetroxide to add two hydroxyl groups to the second alkene will give the diastereoisomer on the left, because the mechanism ensures both O atoms add to the same side of the alkene (p. 442 of the textbook). To get the *trans* diol, we can make an epoxide with *m*-CPBA and then open it with water, an $S_{N}2$ reaction that proceeds with inversion of configuration.

\[
\text{OH} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{OsO}_4 \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{H}^+ \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{OH}
\]

A possible alternative would be to start with the *cis* alkene: the product will be the diol shown, which, if we redraw it in an open chain conformation, is the same diol as the one that comes from the *trans* alkene via the epoxide.

\[
\text{OH} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{OsO}_4 \quad \text{rotate about this bond} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{OH}
\]
PROBLEM 1
Draw all possible enol forms of these carbonyl compounds and comment on their stability.

Purpose of the problem
Simple exercise in drawing enols with an extra twist.

Suggested solution
There is only one enol for the first compound and it might be stable because it is aromatic (two alkenes and one oxygen giving two electrons each, making six in all).

The second compound has more possibilities, one of which is very stable indeed as it has two benzene rings. We haven’t drawn the mechanism for each enolization this time but note the different reaction arrows for tautomerism (equilibrium) and delocalization (two ways of drawing the same compound).

Aromaticity is discussed in chapter 7 of the textbook, pages 157–162. Compounds in which lone pairs contribute to the aromatic sextet are introduced on page 162, but also have two whole chapters devoted to them (chapters 29 and 30). These chapters are more advanced than you need at this stage.
**PROBLEM 2**

The proportions of enol in a neat sample of the two ketones below are rather different. Why is this?

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Thinking about the stability of enols bearing stabilizing substituents.

**Suggested solution**

The first compound is an ordinary ketone with its strong C=O bond and so the less stable enol with its weaker C=C bond is present in only tiny amounts. The second compound has the special 1,3-relationship between two carbonyl groups that means a very stable enol. The stability comes from a major reason—conjugation of C=C and C=O—and a minor reason—intramolecular hydrogen bonding.
**PROBLEM 3**
The NMR spectrum of this dimethyl ether is complicated: the two MeO groups are different as are all the hydrogen atoms on the rings. However the diphenol has a very simple NMR spectrum—there are only two types of proton on the rings marked 'a' and 'b' on the diagram. Explain.

---

**Purpose of the problem**
Exploring the way that tautomerism leads to equivalence.

**Suggested solution**
The protons in the ether are obviously all different as it has no symmetry. Tautomerization interconverts carbonyl groups and enols, and can make either of the enols in the diphenol into a carbonyl group and can make the carbonyl group into an enol, so all structures are equivalent. If this proton transfer (note that it is not a delocalization) is fast on the NMR timescale, all the H's will appear in one signal and all the H's will appear in another signal.

---

The idea that some interconversions take place too fast to be detected by NMR (they are fast on the NMR timescale) is covered in the blue boxes on p. 363 and p. 374 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 4

Suggest mechanisms for these reactions:

1. Mg
2. PhCN
3. H⁺, H₂O

Purpose of the problem

Revision of mechanisms plus exploration of reactions involving enols.

Suggested solution

The first reaction starts with acetal hydrolysis and the product is an enone that is not conjugated. It can become conjugated in acid solution via the enol.

The second sequence starts with the reaction of a nitrile with a Grignard reagent and the hydrolysis of the product to a ketone; this is mentioned on pp. 220 and 231 of the textbook. The bromination in acid solution makes use of the only enol possible.
**Problem 5**

Suggest mechanisms for these reactions and explain why these products are formed.

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Making sure that you understand why enols usually react through carbon but sometimes react through oxygen.

**Suggested solution**

The same ketone reacts in similar acidic conditions with different selectivity according to the electrophile. The bromination occurs at carbon as we should expect but the anhydride reacts at oxygen. So we can draw mechanisms to suit the product.

![Mechanisms](image)

Acid anhydrides, being carbonyl electrophiles, respond to charge density (they are ‘hard’ electrophiles) and react well with oxygen nucleophiles. Bromine, by contrast, is uncharged and unpolarized (it is a ‘soft’ electrophile) and reacts well with neutral nucleophiles such as alkenes.
PROBLEM 6
1,3-Dicarbonyl compounds such as A are usually mostly enolized. Why is this? Draw the enols available to compounds B-E and explain why B is 100% enol but C, D, and E are 100% ketone.

Purpose of the problem
Exploring enols of different kinds of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds—an important class of enolizable compounds.

Suggested solution
Compound A is mostly enol because only the enol is delocalized over five atoms. A minor reason for this particular compound is the intramolecular hydrogen bond in the enol.

You might also have pointed out that there is another equally good enol that has the other carbonyl group enolized. The two enols are tautomers of each other and of the keto-ester.

That compound B is completely enolized shows that conjugation is much more important than hydrogen bonding, which is impossible with B. However, B has extra conjugation from the lone pairs on the extra oxygen atoms.
The remaining compounds have problems with enolization. Compound C can form an enol on the side away from the other carbonyl group, but cannot form an enol between the two ketones as it would be a 'bridgehead alkene'. These do not generally exist as the four substituents around the alkene cannot become planar.

Compound D seems to have a perfectly reasonable enol. But the very large tert-butyl group, which would be out of the plane in the diketone, would have to lie in the plane if the enol were formed. The four-membered ring in E is already strained enough with two sp² atoms having 90° bond angles. The enol would have three such atoms and this is too much strain.

**PROBLEM 7**

Attempted nitrosation of this carboxylic acid leads to formation of an oxime with loss of CO₂. Why?

**Purpose of the problem**

Nitrosation of an enol, followed by an unusual step.

**Suggested solution**

Sodium nitrite in acid generates NO⁺, which usually reacts with enols to form nitroso compounds and then oximes (p. 464 of the textbook). Let's
follow the mechanism through with this acid. Enolization gives the nucleophile, which picks up NO⁺.

This nitroso compound can’t tautomerize because there are no adjacent protons, so instead the compound forms an oxime by losing CO₂. We can draw a cyclic mechanism for this:

PROBLEM 8
This molecule is a perfumery compound with an intense flowery odour, but it isomerizes rapidly in base to its odourless diastereoisomer. Why?

Purpose of the problem
The stereochemical consequences of enolization in a cyclohexane.

Suggested solution
Base will catalyse the enolization of our aldehyde, and when the carbonyl compound reforms, the proton could return to either the face it left from or the other side, allowing the compound to intercovert with its diastereoisomer. If we draw the compounds in their chair conformation, you can see that while the starting aldehyde has an axial substituent (which must be the less bulky CHO group), the diastereoisomer formed through enolization has two equatorial substituents and is more stable. In fact, the equilibrated mixture contains 92% of the equatorial product.
Solutions for Chapter 20 – Formation and reactions of enols and enolates

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CHO group axial} & \quad \text{both equatorial: more stable}
\end{align*}
\]
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 21

PROBLEM 1
All you have to do is to spot the aromatic rings in these compounds. It may not be as easy as you think and you should give some reasons for questionable decisions.

Thyroxine: human hormone regulating metabolic rate
Aklavinone: tetracycline antibiotic
Colchicine: anti-cancer agent from the autumn crocus
Calistephin: natural red flower pigment
Methoxatin: coenzyme from bacteria living on methane

Purpose of the problem
Simple exercise in counting electrons with a few hidden tricks.

Suggested solution
Truly aromatic rings are marked with bold lines. Thyroxine has two benzene rings—obviously aromatic—and that’s that. Aklavinone also has two aromatic benzene rings and we might argue about ring 2. It has four electrons as drawn, and you might think that you could push electrons round from the OH groups to give ring 2 six electrons as well. But if you try it, you’ll find you can’t.
Colchicine has one benzene ring and a seven-membered conjugated ring with six electrons in double bonds (don’t count the carbonyl electrons as they are out of the ring). It perhaps looks more aromatic if you delocalize the electrons and represent it as a zwitterion. Either representation is fine.

Methoxatin has one benzene ring and one pyrrole ring—an example of an aromatic compound with a five-membered ring. The six electrons come from two double bonds and the lone pair on the nitrogen atom. The middle ring is not aromatic—even if you try drawing other delocalized structures, you can never get six electrons into this ring.
PROBLEM 2
First, as some revision, write out the detailed mechanism for these steps.

\[
\text{HNO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \rightarrow \text{NO}_2 \\
\text{NO}_2 \rightarrow \text{NO}_2
\]

In a standard nitration reaction with, say, \( \text{HNO}_3 \) and \( \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \), each of these compounds forms a single nitration product. What is its structure? Explain your answer with at least a partial mechanism.

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of the basic nitration mechanism and extension to compounds where selectivity is an issue.

**Suggested solution**

The basic mechanisms for the formation of \( \text{NO}_2^+ \) and its reaction with benzene appear on p. 476 of the textbook. Benzoic acid has an electron-withdrawing substituent so it reacts in the meta position. The second compound is activated in all positions by the weakly electron-donating alkyl groups (all positions are either ortho or para to one of these groups) but will react at one of the positions more remote from the alkyl groups because of steric hindrance.

\[
\text{CO}_2\text{H} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{Me} \rightarrow \text{Me} \rightarrow \text{O}_2\text{N}
\]

The remaining two compounds have competing ortho,para-directing substituents but in each case the one with the lone pair of electrons (N or O) is a more powerful director than the simple alkyl group. In the first case nitrogen directs ortho but in the second oxygen activates both ortho and para and steric hindrance makes the para position marginally more reactive.
PROBLEM 3

How reactive are the different sites in toluene? Nitration of toluene produces the three possible products in the ratios shown. What would be the ratios if all the sites were equally reactive? What is the actual relative reactivity of the three sites? You could express this as \(xy:1\) or as \(a:b:c\) where \(a+b+c = 100\). Comment on the ratio you deduce.

Purpose of the problem

A more quantitative assessment of relative reactivities.

Suggested solution

As there are two ortho and two meta sites, the ratio if all were equally reactive would be 2:2:1 \(o:m:p\). The observed reactivity is 30:2:37 or 15:1:18 or 43:3:54 depending on how you expressed it. The ortho and para positions are roughly equally reactive because the methyl group is electron-donating. The para is slightly more reactive than the ortho because of steric hindrance. The meta position is an order of magnitude less reactive because the intermediate is not stabilized by electron-donation (\(\sigma\)-conjugation) from the methyl group.
PROBLEM 4

Draw mechanisms for these reactions and explain the positions of substitution.

**Purpose of the problem**

More advanced questions of orientation with more powerful electron-donating groups.

**Suggested solution**

The OH group has a lone pair of electrons and dominates reactivity and selectivity. Steric hindrance favours the para product in the first reaction. The bromination has to occur ortho to the phenol as the para position is blocked.
The second example has two Friedel-Crafts alkylations with tertiary alkyl halides. The first occurs para to bromine, a deactivating but ortho,para-directing group (see p. 489 in the textbook), preferring para because of steric hindrance. The second is a cyclization—the new ring cannot stretch any further than the next atom.

PROBLEM 5
Nitration of these compounds gives products with the ¹H NMR spectra shown. Deduce the structures of the products and explain the position of substitution. WARNING: do not decide the structure by saying where the nitro group 'ought to go'! Chemistry has many surprises and it is the evidence that counts.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the relationship between NMR and substitution pattern.
Suggested solution

The first product has only eight hydrogens so two nitro groups must have been added. The molecule is clearly symmetrical and the coupling constant is right for neighbouring hydrogens so a substitution on each ring must have occurred in the para position. Note that the hydrogen next to the nitro group has the larger shift. We can deduce that each benzene ring is an ortho,para-directing group on the other because the intermediate cation is stabilized by conjugation.

The hydrogen count reveals that the next two products are mono-nitro compounds. There are two hydrogens ortho to nitro in the second compound and one of them also has a typical ortho coupling to a neighbouring hydrogen while the other has only a small coupling (2 Hz) which must be a meta coupling. Substitution has occurred para to one of the chlorines and ortho to the other. The chlorines are ortho,para-directing thus activating all remaining positions so steric hindrance must explain the site of nitration.

The third compound has the extra complication of couplings to fluorine. The coupling of 7 Hz shown by one hydrogen and 6 Hz shown by the other must be to fluorine as they occur once only. The symmetry of the compound and the typical ortho coupling between the hydrogens (8 Hz) shows that para substitution must have occurred.
PROBLEM 6
Attempted Friedel-Crafts acylation of benzene with t-BuCOCl gives some of the expected ketone A as a minor product, as well as some t-butylbenzene B, but the major product is the substituted ketone C. Explain how these compounds are formed and suggest the order in which the two substituents are added to form compound C.

Purpose of the problem
Detailed analysis of a revealing example of the Friedel-Crafts reaction.

Suggested solution
The expected reaction to give A is a simple Friedel-Crafts acylation with the usual acylium ion intermediate.

Product B must arise from a t-butyl cation and the only way that might be formed is by loss of carbon monoxide from the original acylium ion. Such a reaction happens only when the resulting carbocation is reasonably stable.
The main product C comes from the addition of both these electrophiles, but which adds first? The ketone in A is deactivating and *meta* directing but the *t*-butyl group in B is activating and *para*-directing so it must be added first.

That answers the question but you might like to go further. Both A and C are formed by the alkylation of benzene as the first step. The decomposition of the acylium ion is evidently *faster* than the acylation of benzene. However, when B reacts further, it is mainly by acylation as only a small amount of di-*t*-butyl benzene is formed. Evidently the decomposition of the acylium ion is *slower* than the acylation of B! This is not unreasonable as the *t*-butyl group accelerates electrophilic attack—but it is a dramatic demonstration of that acceleration.

**PROBLEM 7**

Nitration of this heterocyclic compound with the usual HNO₃/H₂SO₄ mixture gives a single nitration product with the "H NMR spectrum shown below. Suggest which product is formed and why.

- δ₃4 (2H, t, J 7 Hz)
- 3.68 (2H, t, J 7 Hz)
- 6.45 (1H, d, J 8 Hz)
- 7.28 (1H, broad s)
- 7.81 (1H, d, J 1 Hz)
- 7.90 (1H, dd, J 8, 1 Hz)

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of NMR and an attempt to convince you that the methods of chapter 21 can be applied to molecules you’ve not met before.

**Suggested solution**

The two 2H triplets and the broad NH signal show that the heterocyclic ring is intact. One nitro group has been added to the benzene ring. The proton at 7.81 with only one small (*meta*) coupling must be between the nitro group and the other ring and is marked on the two possible structures.
You could argue that NH is ortho, para-directing and so the second structure is more likely. But this is a risky argument as the reaction is carried out in strong acid solution where the nitrogen will mostly be protonated. It is safer to use the predicted $\delta_H$ from tables. Here we get:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proton</th>
<th>ortho</th>
<th>meta</th>
<th>para</th>
<th>predicted $\delta_H$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$H^+$</td>
<td>NO₂ = +0.95</td>
<td>CH₂ = –0.14</td>
<td>NH = –0.25</td>
<td>7.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$H^+$</td>
<td>NO₂ = +0.95</td>
<td>NH = –0.75</td>
<td>CH₂ = –0.06</td>
<td>7.31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There’s not much difference but $H^+$ at 7.73 is closer to the observed 7.81, so it looks as though the small amount of unprotonated amine directs the reaction.

PROBLEM 8
What are the two possible isomeric products of this reaction? Which structure do you expect to predominate? What would be the bromination product from each?

Purpose of the problem
Getting you to think about alternative products and possible reactions on compounds that haven’t been made (yet).

Suggested solution
The reaction is a Friedel-Crafts cyclization, as you could have deduced by the simple loss of water. The resulting cation could cyclize in two ways, arbitrarily called A and B. Steric hindrance suggests that A would be the more likely product.
Bromination will go either ortho or para to the methoxy group: A has two different positions ortho to the OMe, but the para position is blocked. The least sterically hindered position gives a 1,2,4,5-tetrasubstituted ring. B might give a mixture of ortho and para substitution.
PROBLEM 9
On p. 479 of the textbook we explain the formation of 2,4,6-tribromophenol by bromination of phenol in water. It looks as though we can go no further as all the ortho and para positions are brominated. But we can if we treat the tribromo-compound with bromine in an organic solvent. Account for the formation of the tetrabromo-compound.

![Reaction Diagram]

The product is useful in brominations as it avoids using unpleasant Br₂. Suggest a mechanism for the following bromination and account for the selectivity.

![Reaction Diagram]

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of interesting chemistry associated with electrophilic substitution on benzene rings.

Suggested solution
Phenol is so reactive that the fourth bromine adds in the para position. Now the molecule has a problem as there is no hydrogen on that carbon to be lost. So the phenolic hydrogen is lost instead. It is surprising but revealing that this loss of aromaticity is preferred to the alternative bromination at the meta position.
In the second reaction, one of the reactive bromines in the \textit{para} position is transferred to the amine. It could have added \textit{ortho} or \textit{para} to the NMe\textsubscript{2} group but CF\textsubscript{3} is small and NMe\textsubscript{2} is large, because the two methyl groups lie in the plane of the ring, so steric hindrance rules. The other product is recovered tribromophenol.

\begin{itemize}
  \item Note that the meta directing effect of the deactivating CF\textsubscript{3} group is irrelevant (see p. 491 of the textbook).
\end{itemize}

\textbf{PROBLEM 10}

How would you make each of the following compounds from benzene?

\begin{itemize}
  \item \begin{tikzpicture}
    \node (A) at (0,0) {\text{O}};
    \node (B) at (1,0) {\text{NH}_2};
    \draw[->] (A) -- (B);
  \end{tikzpicture}
  \item \begin{tikzpicture}
    \node (A) at (0,0) {\text{Br}};
    \node (B) at (1,0) {\text{NO}_2};
    \draw[->] (A) -- (B);
  \end{tikzpicture}
  \item \begin{tikzpicture}
    \node (A) at (0,0) {\text{Br}};
    \node (B) at (1,0) {\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3};
    \draw[->] (A) -- (B);
  \end{tikzpicture}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Purpose of the problem}

Choosing a synthetic route, taking into account the directing effects of the substituents involved.

\textbf{Suggested solution}

The first compound has a ketone substituent, which is electron-withdrawing and therefore \textit{meta}-directing, and an amino group, which is electron-donating and therefore \textit{ortho,para}-directing. Aromatic amino groups are best made by reduction of nitro groups, which are also meta directing, so there are two possibilities. We can either start with a Friedel-Crafts acylation of benzene to give the ketone, which we can nitrate in the \textit{meta} position and then reduce, or we can start by nitrating benzene, then do the acylation and then reduce. Either is a reasonable solution.
The second compound has a bromo substituent, which is ortho,para-directing, and a meta-directing nitro group. We need the para relationship, so we must put the bromine in first, then nitate.

Finally, a compound with two para-directors arranged meta to one another. This may seem a problem, but we must introduce the alkyl group by Friedel-Crafts acylation and reduction, since primary alkyl groups cannot be introduced by Friedel-Crafts alkylation. The acyl group will be meta directing, so that solves both problems. First acylate, then brominate, then reduce.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 22

PROBLEM 1
Draw a mechanism for this reaction. Why is base unnecessary?

\[
\text{PhPH}_2 + \overset{\text{excess}}{\overset{\text{CN}}{\text{CN}}} \rightarrow \text{Ph} \overset{\text{P}}{\text{P}} \overset{\text{CN}}{\text{CN}}
\]

Purpose of the problem
Simple example of conjugate addition with a nucleophile from the second row of the periodic table.

Suggested solution
The phosphine is a good soft nucleophile with a high energy lone pair, well able to add in a conjugate fashion without help. In particular, the neutral phosphine does not need to be converted into its anion. The intermediate is a good base and removes a proton from itself, not necessarily intramolecularly.

\[
\text{PhPH}_2 \rightarrow \text{PhP} \overset{\text{CN}}{\text{CN}} \text{and repeat}
\]
PROBLEM 2
Which of the two routes suggested here would actually lead to the product?

Purpose of the problem
Do you understand the essentials of conjugate addition? Can you say when it won’t happen?

Suggested solution
To get the product, the chloride must add in a conjugate fashion and ethyl Grignard in a direct fashion that removes the carbonyl group. Conjugate addition can happen only if the carbonyl group is intact so HCl must be added first.

In the other sequence, EtMgBr is likely to add to the carbonyl group direct and further addition of HCl may either substitute on the allylic alcohol or add the ‘wrong way round’ to the alkene.
**PROBLEM 3**

Suggest reasons for the different outcome of each of these reactions. Your answer must of course be mechanistically based.

![Chemical Structures]

**Purpose of the problem**

A reminder of the reactions possible with enones.

**Suggested solution**

The three reactions are: enolization and trapping with silicon, direct addition with a hard irreversible nucleophile, and conjugate addition with a softer reversible nucleophile.
PROBLEM 4
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction.

**Purpose of the problem**
Combination of conjugate addition and electrophilic aromatic substitution.

**Suggested solution**
The weakly nucleophilic benzene has evidently added in conjugate fashion to the enone in a kind of Friedel-Crafts reaction and we can use the Lewis acid to make the enone into the necessary cation.

PROBLEM 5
What is the structure of the product of this reaction and how is it formed? It has δC 191, 164, 132, 130, 115, 64, 41, 29 and δH 2.32 (6H, s), 3.05 (2H, t, J 6 Hz), 4.20 (2H, t, J 6 Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J 7 Hz), 7.82 (2H, d, J 7 Hz), 9.97 (1H, s). You should obviously interpret the spectra to get the structure.

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of NMR with an exercise in nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

**Suggested solution**
Summing the formulae of the two starting materials shows that this is a substitution of fluoride (the product is the sum of the starting materials less...
HF). The aldehyde is still there (from the IR and the proton at 10 ppm) so the spectra are best interpreted by this structure:

That suggests a simple nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the addition-elimination mechanism with both F and CHO assisting the first step.

PROBLEM 6
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction, explaining the selectivity.

Purpose of the problem
Introduction to the mechanism and selectivity of nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

Suggested solution
Both ortho and para positions are activated by the ketone towards nucleophilic attack by the amine, but the para position is preferred because of steric hindrance between the large heterocyclic ring and the ketone. The
substitution works because those five fluorine atoms make the ring very electron-deficient.

PROBLEM 7

Pyridine is a six-electron aromatic system like benzene. You have not yet been taught anything systematic about pyridine (that will come in chapter 29) but see if you can work out why 2- and 4-chloropyridines react with nucleophiles but 3-chloropyridine does not.

Purpose of the problem

Extension of the ideas on nucleophilic aromatic substitution into new compounds.

Suggested solution

The problem is to find somewhere to park the negative charge in the intermediate and the only possible place is on the pyridine nitrogen atom. This is easy with 2- and 4-chloropyridine but impossible with 3-chloropyridine. Using a general nucleophile:
Amine formation by this reaction is particularly important as you will see in chapters 29 and 30. The mechanism is the same with a few proton transfers.

**PROBLEM 8**

How would you carry out these two conversions?

**Purpose of the problem**

Application of nucleophilic aromatic substitution in synthesis.

**Suggested solution**

Usually you would think of introducing NH$_2$ by nitration and reduction (chapter 21), but the regioselectivity is wrong for the first reaction: the methoxy group will direct nitration ortho to itself. An alternative is to introduce both NH$_2$ and CN as nucleophiles, but the ring is unactivated so we can’t use the addition-elimination mechanism (there is nowhere for the negative charge to go). The successful alternatives are electrophilic aromatic substitution followed by diazonium salt formation and the benzyne method. Here are two possible routes. Nitration will insert the nitro group ortho to
the more strongly electron-donating MeO group. Reduction, diazotization and substitution with copper cyanide by the $S_{N1}$ mechanism gives one product.

![Chemical structure]

The other product could come from chlorination, elimination to give a benzyne, addition of amide anion to put the anion ortho to MeO (p. 524 in the textbook) and protonation.

![Chemical structure]

**PROBLEM 9**

Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, pointing out why you chose the pathways.

![Chemical structures]

**Purpose of the problem**

Studies in selectivity and choosing the right mechanism.

**Suggested solution**

In the first reaction, the nucleophile adds in the ‘wrong’ position (i.e. where the leaving group isn’t) so a benzyne mechanism is likely. Notice that the
nucleophile and the benzyne are formed with the same strong base, that the anion is recycled and that the nucleophile adds to the benzyne to put the negative charge next to OMe (p. 524 in the textbook).

The second reaction is a straightforward substitution by the addition-elimination mechanism activated by the nitro group. The amino group is a spectator.

**PROBLEM 10**

When we discussed reduction of cyclopentenone to cyclopentanol, we suggested that conjugate addition of borohydride must occur before direct addition of borohydride: in other words, the scheme below must be followed. What is the alternative scheme? Why is the scheme shown definitely correct?

**Purpose of the problem**

Serious thinking about mechanisms is an advantage when reactions get more complex.

**Suggested solution**

The alternative scheme would be to reduce the ketone first and the alkene second. This order must be wrong though, because simple alkenes are nucleophilic and are not reduced by NaBH₄. NaBH₄ is a nucleophilic reducing agent and attacks alkenes only if they are conjugated with an
electron-withdrawing group. The conjugate addition must always occur first so as to keep the carbonyl group intact for the second step.

PROBLEM 11
Stirring thioacetic acid with acrolein (propanaldehyde) in acetone gives a compound with the NMR data shown below. What is the compound?

δ\textsubscript{H}: 2.28 (3H, s), 3.58 (2H, d, J 8), 4.35 (1H, td, J 8, 6), 6.44 (1H, t, J 6), 7.67 (1H, d, J 6).
δ\textsubscript{C}: 23.5, 31.0, 99.3, 144.2, 196.5.

Purpose of the problem
Using NMR to gain insight into a conjugate addition.

Suggested solution
The product formula is the sum of the reaction partners, and all 5 C and 8 H atoms are visible in the NMR spectra, so this looks like an addition reaction. The \textsuperscript{13}C NMR tells us that there are two alkene carbons and one carbonyl, and the proton NMR clearly shows the aldehyde has gone. But it can’t be direct addition to the C=O group, because the coupling pattern isn’t right for a terminal alkene. The product is in fact the enol formed from conjugate addition of the sulfur, which is stable under these conditions. The low coupling constant across the alkene tells us it’s formed unusually as the Z-isomer, probably because of an intramolecular proton transfer from the thioacid to the new OH group. The anhydrous conditions in dry acetone prevent the enol from tautomerizing back to the aldehyde.

This work is described by Lukas Hintermann in *J. Org. Chem.*, 2012, 77, 11345.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 23

Several problems in this chapter ask you to suggest ways to carry out conversions of one molecule into another. We always give one possible answer and sometimes comment on alternatives but you should realize that there are usually many possible ‘right’ answers to questions of this sort. Make sure you understand the principle behind the question and, if your answer is very different from ours, check with someone with experience of synthesis.

PROBLEM 1
How would you convert this bromo-aldehyde chemoselectively into the two products shown?

Purpose of the problem
A simple exercise in chemoselectivity and protection.

Suggested solution
You would like to add an organometallic reagent to go to the right and that’s very simple as no protection is needed. A Grignard reagent will do the job.

The other product demands more care to avoid the reactions we have just done. The aldehyde needs to be protected, as an acetal, say, before we make
the Grignard reagent from the aryl bromide. Then we can add to RCHO, and deprotect with acid, and we have our product.

PROBLEM 2
How would you convert this lactone selectively into either the hydroxyacid or the unfunctionalized acid?

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of chemoselectivity.

Suggested solution
The conversion into the hydroxy-acid is just hydrolysis and can be carried out in aqueous base. Conversion into the unfunctionalized acid demands selective reduction of the C–O at the secondary benzylic centre. Possibilities include catalytic hydrogenolysis (p. 539 in the textbook) or HBr followed by C–Br reduction.

**PROBLEM 3**
Predict the products of Birch reduction of these aromatic compounds.

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Exploring the principles of Birch reduction.

**Suggested solution**
In each case a unique product results if you draw a dianion intermediate placing the electron-withdrawing groups where they can stabilize the negative charges, and put the electron-donating groups on the alkenes, where they don’t destabilize the negative charges.

![Chemical reactions](image)

**PROBLEM 4**
How would you carry out these reactions? In some cases more than one step may be required.

![Chemical reactions](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Reduction, selectivity, and protection in the same sequence.
The final product was used to make an analogue of thromboxane, a human blood clotting agent, by M. Hayashi and group, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1979, 3661.

**Suggested solution**

Every step is straightforward except the final reduction where a less reactive ester must be reduced in the presence of a more reactive ketone. Protection is the answer and an acetal is suitable.

PROBLEM 5

How would you convert this nitro compound into the two products shown? Explain the order of events with special regard for reduction steps.

Purpose of the problem

Reduction, selectivity, and protection in two related sequences.

**Suggested solution**

The nitro group must be reduced to an amino group and cyclized onto the ketone or the carboxylic acid. Reductive amination (pp. 234–7 in the textbook) allows the amine to cyclize onto the more electrophilic ketone.

Forming the six-membered ring requires more control. Protection of the ketone (say as the acetal) before reduction will give the six-membered cyclic amide. Now the amide carbonyl must be reduced with LiAlH₄ (p. 236 in the textbook) and the ketone deprotected. There are many good alternative answers to this problem.
PROBLEM 6
Why is this particular amine formed by reductive amination here?

Purpose of the problem
Extending the concept of reductive amination by combining it with deprotection and cyclization.

Suggested solution
The two acetals will be hydrolysed at pH 5.5 to give the amine a choice between cyclization to one or other of the two aldehydes.

Cyclization to a five-membered ring is preferred to cyclization to a (strained) four-membered ring so reductive amination occurs to the right and not to the left (as drawn). Cyanoborohydride is stable under the weakly acidic conditions and does not reduce the remaining aldehyde.
PROBLEM 7

Account for the chemoselectivity of the first reaction and the stereoselectivity of the second. A conformational drawing of the intermediate is essential.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{HO} & \quad \text{OH} & \quad \text{H}_2, \text{Pd/C} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{H}_2, \text{Pd/C} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem

Extending chemoselectivity into more subtle distinctions and conformational analysis.

Suggested solution

The two ketones are different only because one is conjugated. Since acetal formation is a thermodynamically controlled reversible reaction, the one that is formed retains the enone as the stabilizing effect of conjugation can be retained. A conformational diagram of the intermediate shows that there is inevitably one axial oxygen atom belonging to the acetal preventing the bottom face of the alkene from getting close to the catalyst. The axial methyl group is further away and more in the plane of the alkene. Hydrogen is delivered from the top face and the observed product results.

The conformation of decalin is discussed on pp. 378–9 of chapter 16 of the textbook. The ‘flattening’ effect of the alkene is dealt with in chapter 32.
**PROBLEM 8**

How would you convert this diamine to either of these two protected derivatives?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \text{NH}_2 \\
\rightarrow & \\
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \text{NH} \text{Boc} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{BocHN} \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

Using protecting groups to reveal reactive groups selectively.

**Suggested solution**

The Boc group is a common acid-sensitive protecting group for amines, and making the first derivative is easy because the amine attached to the primary carbon is less hindered and more reactive. Treating the diamine with one equivalent of ‘Boc anhydride’ (Boc\(_2\)O) gives the correctly protected product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \text{NH}_2 \\
\rightarrow & \\
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \text{NH} \text{Boc}
\end{align*}
\]

The second is more of a challenge, because we have to protect the less reactive amino group. The solution is first to protect with a different protecting group: Cbz will do, using CbzCl (benzyl chloroformate) and base. Now the other amino group can be protected with Boc, and finally the Cbz protecting group removed by hydrogenation. Other protecting groups might be all right too, but they have to be removable without using acid, which would remove the Boc group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \text{NH}_2 \\
\rightarrow & \\
\text{H}_2\text{N} & \text{NH} \text{Cbz} \\
\rightarrow & \\
\text{BocHN} & \text{NH} \text{Cbz} \\
\rightarrow & \\
\text{BocHN} & \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

This chemistry was used by chemists in Bordeaux and Manchester to build some new polymeric structures out of the two different amine products.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 24

PROBLEM 1
Two routes are proposed for the preparation of this amino-alcohol. Which do you think is more likely to succeed and why?

![Chemical structures]

**Purpose of the problem**
Practical application of the choice of reagent to ensure the correct regioselectivity in a conjugate addition.

**Suggested solution**
Either route might give the product but enals are more likely to undergo direct addition to the carbonyl group rather than conjugate addition while conjugated esters are better at conjugate addition. So the ester is probably better.

![Chemical structures]

PROBLEM 2
Predict the products of these reactions.

![Chemical structures]

**Purpose of the problem**
Practice at predicting the regioselectivity of a direct or conjugate addition.
Suggested solution

Both reactions involve addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated carbonyl compounds. The key difference is the metal. With Cu(I) as catalyst, the Grignard reagent will give conjugate addition in the first case. MeLi will give direct addition in the second.

PROBLEM 3

Explain the different regioselectivity in these two brominations of 1,2-dimethylbenzene.

Purpose of the problem

Regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution and in radical substitution.

Suggested solution

AlCl₃ is a commonly used Lewis acid in electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions. Here it activates the bromine to form the electrophile ‘Br⁺’, which attacks the aromatic ring. Methyl groups are ortho,para directors, so any of the four unsubstituted positions could be attacked, but steric hindrance directs the first bromine to go to one of the positions that does not lead to a 1,2,3-trisubstituted ring.

Now we have three ortho,para directors, and bromine (with its lone pairs) is the strongest, so the next bromine will go ortho to the bromine in the less sterically hindered of the two possibilities.
In the presence of light, bromine's weak Br–Br bond undergoes homolysis, and Br' radicals are formed. One of these can abstract a hydrogen atom, breaking the weakest C–H bond. The methyl groups' C–H bonds are weaker than those of the phenyl ring because the benzyl radical that forms is delocalized into the aromatic ring. The benzyl radical attacks another molecule of bromine, and the cycle continues.

The mechanism is shown here for the first bromination; the same thing can happen on the other methyl group.

**PROBLEM 4**

The nitro compound below was needed for the synthesis of an anti-emetic drug. It was proposed to make it by nitration of the hydrocarbon shown. How successful do you think this would be?

![Diagram of nitration reaction]

**Purpose of the problem**

Predicting regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution where directing effects are more subtle.

**Suggested solution**

The standard conditions for nitration generate the electrophile NO$_2^+$, and to get the product shown here, this species has to attack the ring as shown below. The intermediate cation looks quite all right, since the positive charge can be delocalized even into the other ring.
What about the alternatives? A similar cation is formed if the electrophile attacks the position labelled ‘1’, but the nitro group is in a more hindered position here, so we don’t expect this to contribute much to the product mixture. Position ‘2’ gives the cation shown below, which although perfectly feasible as an intermediate, does not benefit from the same degree of stabilization as the one in the reaction we want (it can’t be delocalized into the other ring). Position 4 is similar but more hindered. Overall we can reasonably expect the reaction to give the product we want.

**PROBLEM 5**  
Comment on the regioselectivity and chemoselectivity of the reactions shown below.

**Purpose of the problem**  
Regioselectivity in electrophilic aromatic substitution with an intramolecular electrophile: an important reaction for making heterocycles.

**Suggested solution**  
The reaction of an aldehyde with an amine gives an imine, and in acid (HCl), protonation gives an iminium ion, the electrophile that attacks the aromatic ring. The iminium ion is tethered to the ring, so it has only two choices of reaction site, since it can’t reach any further than the positions
ortho to the tether. The one it chooses is the less hindered. It is also para to an electron-donating methoxy group, so the reaction works well.

In the second case, there is only one methoxy group, and both the positions ortho to the tether are meta to it, where it can't activate substitution. The positions ortho to itself, where it can activate, are too far away for the iminium to reach, so no substitution takes place. Presumably the iminium ion forms, but it is just hydrolysed back to the aldehyde.

PROBLEM 6
Identify A and B and account for the selectivity displayed in this sequence of reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Analysing selectivity in a useful ring-forming sequence.

Suggested solution
The Friedel-Crafts acylation in the first step is controlled by the bromo substituent, which is an ortho,para director: here we get para selectivity as usual for steric reasons. Work through the mechanism and you find a ketoacid as the product A.
The next step is the reduction we introduced on p. 540 of the textbook, the ‘Wolff-Kishner’ reduction. The mechanism is there so we need not repeat it here; the product is the acid B (or, rather, its potassium salt). Now adding acid forms a ring in another Friedel-Crafts acylation. The electrophile must be the acylium ion: usually Friedel-Crafts acylations need more than just strong acid, but this one is fast because it is intramolecular. What about regioselectivity? Well, the only positions the electrophile can reach are ortho to the carbon chain, so it must react there (they are both the same) even though that means it has to attack meta to the Br group. It’s still ortho to the alkyl chain though, which is ortho,para directing.

**PROBLEM 7**

The sequence of reactions below shows the preparation of a compound needed for the synthesis of a powerful anti-cancer compound. Explain the regioselectivity of the reactions. Why do you think two equivalents of BuLi are needed in the second step?

**Purpose of the problem**

Explaining regioselectivity in ortholithiation reactions.
Suggested solution

Both reactions involve ortholithiation—deprotonation of the aromatic ring to form an intermediate aryllithium. As we explain on pp. 563–4 of the textbook, the deprotonation occurs where the BuLi can be ‘guided in’ by coordinating oxygen atoms. The methoxymethyl acetal, with its two oxygen atoms, is very good at doing this, so we expect deprotonation at one of the two positions ortho to this group. The other acetal is also a complexing group, so the deprotonation happens in between the two oxygen atoms.

In the second step, deprotonation can again take place next to the methoxymethyl group. Two equivalents of BuLi are needed because the most acidic proton is in fact one of the protons of the methyl group: a benzyllithium forms first, and then a more reactive aryllithium. When the electrophile (DMF) is added, it reacts only with the last formed, more basic anion.


Phenyllithiums are more basic than benzyllithiums, because in benzyllithiums the ‘anion’ is conjugated with the ring; in phenyllithiums the ‘anion’ is perpendicular to the \( \pi \) system (like the lone pair in pyridine).

Selectivity in the reactions of dianions is described on p. 547 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 8
Comment on the regioselectivity and chemoselectivity of the reactions in the sequence below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{MeO} \\
\text{BnBr} & \quad \text{N} \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{NaBH}_4, \text{EtOH} & \quad \text{N} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{MeO} \quad \text{CO} \\
\text{NaHCO}_3 & \quad \text{MeO} \quad \text{CO} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem
Practice using simple principles of reactivity to explain why nucleophiles and electrophiles choose to react at particular sites, and using your knowledge of reactivity to deduce mechanisms for some unfamiliar reactions.

Suggested solution
Benzyl bromide is a good electrophile and it reacts well with alkoxides to make ethers. With neutral alcohols however the substitution is very slow, so only the more nucleophilic (and more basic) pyridine nitrogen is attacked, to make a pyridinium salt.

The pyridinium salt is a bit like an iminium ion, so sodium borohydride attacks it at the C=N+ bond to make a neutral enamine. Looking at the product, you can see that another reduction must take place as well, but enamines are nucleophilic, so the borohydride can’t attack directly. What must happen instead is that the enamine is protonated to make another iminium, which can then be reduced. The final double bond is safe from attack, since it is an isolated, electron-rich alkene.
In the final step, another electrophile is added: it’s an acid chloride, though a slightly unusual one, usually called ‘methyl chloroformate’. As in the first step, the most nucleophilic atom is the pyridine N, so we use its lone pair to attack the carbonyl group and displace chloride. Now we have to lose the benzyl group, but the only reagent we have to help us is the chloride we just lost. Chloride is a nucleophile—a weak one, but powerful enough to attack the cationic species we have just generated. Which is the site most susceptible to nucleophilic substitution? The benzylic carbon, quite reasonably, because of the accelerating effect of the adjacent π system. Nucleophilic substitution here gives the final product.

**PROBLEM 9**

Explain the regioselectivity displayed in this synthesis of the drug tanomastat.

**Purpose of the problem**

Explaining why moderately complex molecules choose to react selectively.
Suggested solution

The first reaction is a Friedel-Crafts acylation. There are two rings and two carbonyl groups, so we must explain first of all the choice between each of these pairs. One ring is chlorinated: chlorine has a deactivating effect on electrophilic aromatic substitution, so the non-chlorinated ring reacts. The two carbonyls differ in that the top one is (a) less hindered and (b) not conjugated, both of which contribute to its greater reactivity. There is also the question of regioselectivity in the way that the acylation occurs at the \( \text{para} \) position of the non-chlorinated ring. Aryl substituents are ortho,para directing, because they can delocalize the positive charge formed from attack in this way; steric factors favour the \( \text{para} \) over the \( \text{ortho} \) positions.

In the second step, thiophenol gives the conjugate addition, rather than the direct addition product to either carbonyl group. Sulfur nucleophiles are soft, and this is typical behaviour for thiols.

PROBLEM 10

This compound is needed as a synthetic precursor to the drug etalocib. Suggest a synthesis. \textit{Hint}: consider using nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

Purpose of the problem

Thinking about regioselectivity and reactivity in the synthesis of a moderately complex aromatic compound.
Suggested solution

There are lots of ortho relationships in this compound! And somehow we have to join the two aromatic rings together to make an ether. This can only really be done by nucleophilic aromatic substitution, so we need to look for an electron-withdrawing group to help us. The nitrile is in the right place, provided we have a leaving group (such as fluoride) ortho to it. So our last step can be as shown here:

![Chemical structure](image1)

To make the left hand ring we have to consider what methods are available to introduce the three substituents we have. It’s always easier to add C-substituents than O-substituents, so we might consider how to alkylate the phenol below. Both the OH and OMe groups are ortho,para directing, so we could consider a Friedel-Crafts reaction, but there are problems with this approach. One is the usual problem with primary alkyl groups—we would have to do an acylation and then reduce. Another is more serious: the less hindered positions the other side of the OMe or OH groups are also activated, so we will have a regioselectivity problem. The solution used by the chemists making this compound for the first time was to use ortholithiation, making the dianion with two equivalents of BuLi and making use of the fact that two O substituents guide the BuLi in to deprotonate the position between them.

![Chemical structure](image2)

See pp. 514–520 of the textbook for a reminder of nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

The work is described by Sawyer et al., J. Med. Chem. 1993, 38, 4411.
This page intentionally left blank
**Suggested solutions for Chapter 25**

**PROBLEM 1**
Suggest how these compounds might be made by alkylation of an enol or enolate.

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
An exercise in choosing good routes to simple compounds.

**Suggested solution**
As you can see from the carbonyl groups in these compounds, it is pretty obvious which is the new bond to be made. In both cases, the electrophile will need to be an allylic halide. These are good electrophiles for S_N2 reactions so they will work well here. We need to use the electrophile twice in the first case and the enolate is that of diethyl malonate. The second case will require an enol or enolate equivalent to prevent self-condensation: a silyl enol ether (p. 595 in the textbook) or an enamine (p. 591 in the textbook) is ideal. If you use a silyl enol ether, don’t forget the Lewis acid!

![Reaction scheme](image)

- The reason why allylic halides make good electrophiles is discussed in the textbook on p. 341.
PROBLEM 2
How might these compounds be made using alkylation of an enol or enolate as one step in the synthesis?

Purpose of the problem
An exercise in using enolate chemistry to make carbonyl compounds disguised as acetals.

Suggested solution
The only functional group in either compound is an acetal. Cyclic acetals are made from diols and carbonyl compounds so we need to have a look at the deprotected molecules before taking any further decisions.

If we are going to use enolate chemistry, we have to make the diols by reduction of carbonyl compounds. As both diols have a 1,3-relationship between the OH groups, the carbonyl precursors will be the very enolizable 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds, which can be alkylated and reduced. We have chosen arbitrarily to use ethyl esters here, so we should use ethoxide as the base in the alkylation step.
PROBLEM 3
How might these amines be prepared using enolate-style alkylation as part of the synthesis?

Purpose of the problem
An exercise in using enolates and related compounds in the synthesis of amines.

Suggested solution
The first amine could be made by reduction of a nitrile, and that could be made by alkylation of the ‘enolate’ from PhCH₂CN.

The second amine could be made by reductive amination of a ketone so we need to make the ketone by alkylation of an enolate. You could have chosen various specific enol equivalents for this job—we have chosen an enamine.
PROBLEM 4
This attempted enolate alkylation does not give the required product. What has gone wrong? What products would actually be formed? How would you make the required product?

Purpose of the problem
An exercise in trouble-shooting—it is important for you to recognize what might go wrong and how to get round the problem.

Suggested solution
The intention was obviously to make the lithium enolate of the aldehyde and to alkylate it with i-PrCl, but BuLi will attack the aldehyde carbonyl group rather than remove a proton. Even if it did make some of the enolate, the enolate would react with the aldehyde and self-condense (p. 590 in the textbook).

There is also a problem with i-PrCl: it is a secondary halide and chloride is the worst leaving group among the halogens Cl, Br, I—it is prone to elimination rather than substitution reactions. To make the required product, an aza-enolate (p. 593 in the textbook) or a silyl enol ether (p. 595 in the textbook) would be a better bet.
PROBLEM 5

Draw mechanisms for the formation of this enamine, its reaction with the alkyl halide, and the hydrolysis of the product.

Purpose of the problem

Exploration of the details of enamine formation and reaction. These are often misunderstood.

Suggested solution

The first step of the mechanism for enamine formation is not acid-catalysed—amines need no help in attacking carbonyl compounds. But the dehydration step is acid-catalysed as HO⁻ is not a good leaving group. The selectivity for elimination into the unbranched chain is because the enamine is planar and there would be a bad steric clash between the methyl group and the nitrogen substituents (all of which are in the same plane) if elimination occurred the other way.

The mechanism of enamine formation is given on p. 233 of the textbook.
The reaction of the enamine with the alkyl halide goes as expected—these very good S_{N}2 electrophiles work particularly well with enamines and the first product under the reaction conditions is another enamine.

Finally the enamine is hydrolysed by reprotonation to the same iminium salt and addition of water. These steps are the exact reverse of what happens in enamine formation.

**PROBLEM 6**

How would you produce specific enols or enolates at the points marked with the arrows (not necessarily starting with the ketones themselves)?

**Purpose of the problem**

First steps in making enol(ate)s with regiochemical control.
Suggested solution

The last two ketones have two different $\alpha$-positions so there is a good chance of controlling enol formation from the parent ketone. But the first ketone has two primary $\alpha$-positions and the difference appears only in the two $\beta$-positions. The obvious solution is conjugate addition and trapping (described in the textbook on p. 603). The thermodynamic enol is needed from the second ketone and direct silylation is a good bet. The third requires kinetic enolate formation and LDA is a good way to do that.

![Chemical structures showing the formation of enolates through conjugate addition and trapping, followed by silylation and LDA activation.]

PROBLEM 7

How would the enol(ate) equivalents we have just made react with (a) bromine and (b) a primary alkyl halide $RCH_2Br$?

Purpose of the problem

Moving on from the formation of enol(ate)s to their reactions.

Suggested solution

The two silyl enol ethers will react well with bromine and won’t need Lewis acid catalysis as bromine is such a powerful electrophile—so powerful that it might be dangerous to react the lithium enolate directly with bromine and making the silyl enol ether first might be advisable.

![Chemical structures showing the reaction of the silyl enol ethers with bromine and alkyl halides.]
In the reaction with the primary alkyl halide, the boot is on the other foot as there will be a good reaction with the lithium enolate but no reaction with the more stable silyl enol ethers. Lewis acid won't help here either as primary cations are unstable. Preliminary conversion into a lithium enolate or a 'naked' enolate (using fluoride ion) would be better.

PROBLEM 8
Draw a mechanism for the formation of this imine:

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the often forgotten mechanism for imine formation.

Suggested solution
The main points in the mechanism are addition of the amine to the carbonyl group without catalysis and dehydration of the intermediate with acid catalysis.

The mechanism of imine formation is given on p. 230 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 9
How would the imine from problem 8 react with the reagents below? Draw mechanisms for each step: the reaction with LDA, the addition of BuBr, and the work-up.

Purpose of the problem
Checking you know how to make and use an aza-enolate.

Suggested solution
LDA removes the most acidic proton of the imine so that the Li atom is transferred to the nitrogen atom to give the aza-enolate. Electrophiles, even alkyl halides, then add to the ‘enolate’ position and the work-up is hydrolysis of the imine with aqueous acid.

PROBLEM 10
What would happen if you tried this short cut for the reactions in problems 8 and 9?

Purpose of the problem
Reminder of the problems with lithium enolates of aldehydes.
Suggested solution

Some aldehydes can be converted directly into lithium enolates but this is not usually very successful because the rate of reaction of the lithium enolate with the very electrophilic aldehyde is too great and at least some aldol reaction will occur.

\[ \text{RCHO} \xrightarrow{\text{LDA}} \text{RCH}_2\text{OLi} \xrightarrow{\text{RCHO}} \text{RCH}_2\text{OH} \]

PROBLEM 11

Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

1. \( \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \rightarrow \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \) (NaOEt, EtOH)
2. \( \text{NaOH, H}_2\text{O} \)
3. \( \text{H}^+, \text{heat} \) ester hydrolysis

Purpose of the problem

Learning to unravel complicated looking sequences that are quite easy when you get into them.

Suggested solution

Double alkylation of the malonate enolate gives the four-membered ring and hydrolysis and decarboxylation gives the carboxylic acid product.

\[ \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{Br}} \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+, \text{heat}} \text{HO}_2\text{C} \]

The problem of aldol reactions competing with alkylations is mentioned in the green box on p. 584 and on p. 590 of the textbook. The aldol reaction itself is the subject of chapter 26.

The hydrolysis-decarboxylation sequence is explained on p. 597 of the textbook.
**PROBLEM 12**
How does this synthesis of a cyclopropyl ketone work?

Enols and enolates are involved in an unlikely looking sequence that you can work out if you persist.

**Suggested solution**
Alkylation of the enolate with the epoxide gives an alkoxide that cyclizes to give the lactone.

Now $S_{N2}$ opening of the protonated lactone with the soft nucleophile (bromide ion) gives the $\gamma$-bromoketone that cyclizes through its enolate. The formation of three-membered rings is favoured kinetically.
PROBLEM 13
Give the structures of the intermediates in the following reaction sequence and mechanisms for the reactions.

Purpose of the problem
A reminder that enolate-like intermediates can be formed at nitrogen as well as carbon providing that an oxygen atom can carry the negative charge.

Suggested solution
The first base removes the proton from nitrogen to make an enolate-like intermediate that reacts at nitrogen. Now that the NH is blocked, the second base makes the amide enolate that is alkylated on carbon.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 26

**PROBLEM 1**
The aldehyde and the ketone below are self-condensed with aqueous NaOH so that an unsaturated carbonyl compound is the product in both cases. Give a structure for each product and explain why you think this product is formed.

Purpose of the problem

Drawing mechanisms for the simplest of aldols: self-condensation of aldehydes and ketones.

Suggested solution

In both cases only one compound can form an enolate and only one compound—the same one—can be the electrophile. This is very obvious with the aldehyde.

With the ketone, there is a question of regioselectivity in enolate formation, but the aldol product can lose water only if the enolate from the methyl group is the nucleophile. If we draw both enolates and combine them with the ketone in an aldol reaction, it is clear that one can dehydrate as it has two enolizable H atoms but the other cannot dehydrate as it has no H atoms on the vital carbon atom (in grey). The mechanism is the same as the one with the aldehyde and the elimination in both cases is by the E1cB mechanism.

See p. 399 and p. 616 in the textbook for the E1cB mechanism.
PROBLEM 2
Propose mechanisms for the ‘aldol’ and dehydration steps in the termite defence compound presented on p. 623 in the textbook.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of elimination reactions and the mechanism for ‘an aldol that can’t go wrong.’

Suggested solution
The nitro group is twice as electron-withdrawing as a carbonyl group so it will readily form an ‘enolate.’ It cannot self-condense as nucleophilic attack rarely occurs on nitro groups so it attacks the aldehyde instead. Notice that the alkoxide product is basic enough to deprotonate another molecule of nitromethane so the reaction is catalytic in base.

The elimination step involves acylation of the hydroxyl group and an E1cB elimination again driven by the ‘enolate’ of the nitro group. Note that pyridine, a weak base, is strong enough.

See p. 587 in the textbook: a nitro group acidifies adjacent C–H bonds as much as two carbonyl groups.

E1cB elimination is on pp. 399 and 616 in the textbook.
PROBLEM 3
How would you synthesize the following compounds?

[Chemical structures are shown]

**Purpose of the problem**
Application of the aldol reaction to make unsaturated carbonyl compounds.

**Suggested solution**
Just find the conjugated alkene and so find the hidden carbonyl group. In the first case, cyclohexanone provides two enols to react with benzaldehyde. The phenyl rings in the product lie *trans* to the carbonyl group so that they can be planar.

In the second case, more options are available. Our solution suggests using a Wittig reaction for the first as we need the enolate of acetaldehyde (p. 628 in the textbook), and malonic acid for the second (p. 630 in the textbook). There are many alternatives such as using an aldol reaction for the first step, but with an excess of acetaldehyde, to compensate for self-condensation.
PROBLEM 4
How would you use a silyl enol ether to make this aldol product? Why is it necessary to use this particular intermediate? What would be the products be if the two carbonyl compounds were mixed and treated with base?

Purpose of the problem
Exploring control, and the lack of it, in different styles of aldol reaction.

Suggested solution
This is about the most difficult type of aldol reaction: two slightly different aldehydes, both enolizable, both capable of self-condensation. The only solution is to couple the silyl enol ether of one aldehyde with the other aldehyde using a Lewis acid as catalyst. This gives the aldol itself that can be dehydrated to the enal.

Without this control, each aldehyde would self-condense and would condense with the other aldehyde giving four products in unpredictable amounts. One of the cross-condensation products is, of course, the enal we are trying to make.
**PROBLEM 5**

In what way does this reaction resemble an aldol reaction? Comment on the choice of base. How can the same product be made without using phosphorus chemistry?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{EtO} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{(EtO)}_2P & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{EtCHO} \quad \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 \quad \text{water}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{(EtO)}_2P & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

Showing that there are reactions closely related to the aldol reaction that give similar products.

**Suggested solution**

The formation of an alkene and the loss of phosphorus are typical of a Wittig reaction but the formation of an unsaturated carbonyl compound using an enolate is very like an aldol reaction. The phosphonate ester reagent is also like a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound, with P replacing C. The very weak base used shows how stable the enolate must be. The enolate attacks the aldehyde, perhaps to form an intermediate oxyanion.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(EtO)}_2P & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

There is no doubt that the next intermediate is formed. It is a stable four-membered ring (phosphorus likes 90° bond angles). Finally phosphorus captures oxygen (the P–O bond is very strong) eliminating the alkene in its preferred trans stereochemistry.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(EtO)}_2P & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

The final product could also be made by the aldol condensation of a silyl enol ether and the same aldehyde. The silyl enol ether is the less substituted possibility so it will have to be made via the lithium enolate. The product will be the aldol itself and this can be dehydrated to the enone with TsOH.

This type of Wittig reaction was introduced on p. 628 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 6
Suggest a mechanism for this attempted aldol reaction. How could the aldol product be made?

Purpose of the problem
A demonstration of one way that aldol reactions with formaldehyde may fail.

Suggested solution
The aldol reaction appears to have taken place and then the ketone has been reduced. The only possible reducing agent is more formaldehyde and the reduction takes place by the Cannizarro reaction (p. 620 in the textbook). The aldol can be successful if a weaker base such as Na₂CO₃ is used as the Cannizarro requires a dianion intermediate.
PROBLEM 7
The synthesis of six-membered ketones by intramolecular Claisen condensation was described in the chapter where we pointed out that it doesn’t matter which way round the cyclization happens as the product is the same.

Strangely enough, five-membered heterocyclic ketones can be made by a similar sequence. The starting material is not symmetrical and two cyclized products are possible. Draw structures for these products and explain why it is unimportant which is formed.

Purpose of the problem
To make sure you understand how extra ester groups can solve apparently complex acylation problems.

Suggested solution
The cyclization can occur in two different ways to give two different products as either ester can form an enolate that attacks the other in an intramolecular acylation. We should draw the two products.
Though these compounds are different, each gives the same ketone after hydrolysis and decarboxylation as the ketone carbonyl group is on the same position in the ring in both compounds.

**PROBLEM 8**

Attempted acylation at carbon often fails. What would be the actual products of these attempted acylations and how would you successfully make the target molecules?

![Reaction schemes showing attempted acylations and products](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of simple enolate reactions (chapter 20) and encouragement to clear thinking about what happens when you put carbonyl compounds in basic solutions.

**Suggested solution**

In the first case we want the aldehyde to form an enolate and then attack the ester. The first part is all right: the aldehyde will form an enolate more readily than the ester. But under these equilibrating conditions, the small amount of enolate that is formed will react faster with the aldehyde than with the less electrophilic ester. The aldehyde will self-condense in an aldol reaction.

![Aldol reaction scheme](image)

To make the required compound we shall need to convert the aldehyde into a specific enol equivalent. There are various alternatives of which the best are an enamine or a silyl enol ether. Esters fail to acylate either and an acid chloride should be used instead. Don’t forget the Lewis acid if you use the silyl enol ether.
The enolate formation in the second example is a separate step and will work well because the two carbonyl groups cooperate in forming a stable enolate and NaOMe is quite strong enough to convert the diketone entirely into the enolate. The problem is the acylation step. With a sodium enolate and a reactive acylating agent such as PhCOCl, a charge-controlled (hard/hard) interaction will occur at the oxygen atom to give an enol ester.

The escape route from this problem suggested in the chapter (p. 648) was to use a lithium or magnesium enolate. Magnesium is chelated by the two oxygen atoms of the stable enolate and blocks attack there so that C-acylation occurs even with acid chlorides.
PROBLEM 9
Acylation of the phenolic ketone gives compound A, which is converted into an isomeric compound B in base. Cyclization of B gives the product shown. Suggest mechanisms for the reactions and structures for A and B.

Purpose of the problem
Predicting products of acylation reactions. This is always more difficult than just drawing mechanisms but here you might work backwards from the final product as well as forwards.

Suggested solution
The starting material is C_8H_8O_2 so A has an extra C_7H_4O. This looks like the addition of PhCOCl with the loss of HCl. The most obvious reaction is acylation of the phenolic oxygen rather than enolate formation as OH is much more acidic than CH and pyridine is a weak base. This phenol is unusually acidic as the carbonyl group helps to stabilize the anion. Compound A is simply the benzoate ester of the phenol. Treatment with KOH isomerizes A to B and this is the heart of the problem. An intramolecular acylation of the only possible enolate can be catalysed by KOH even though it produces only a little enol as cyclization to form a six-membered ring is so easy.

The final step is acid-catalysed and clearly involves the attack of the phenolic OH group on one of the ketones. This intramolecular reaction much prefers to form a six-membered ring rather than a strained four-membered ring, and dehydration gives an aromatic ring—two electrons each from the double bonds and two from a lone pair on oxygen making six in all. Drawing the delocalization may help you to see this.
PROBLEM 10

How could these compounds be made using the acylation of an enol or enolate as a key step?

Purpose of the problem

Practice in using acylation at carbon to make compounds.

Suggested solution

The first problem has two possible solutions by direct acylation, labelled A and B in the diagram. A would have to be controlled as the straight chain ester could self-condense. B needs no control as only the ketone can enolize. Diethyl carbonate (EtO)₂CO is more electrophilic than a ketone and only the wanted product can enolize again and form a stable enolate under the reaction conditions. However, route B adds only one carbon atom.

Route A can be realized with either a lithium enolate or a silyl enol ether, as explained on p. 649 of the textbook, using an acid chloride as the electrophile.
Route B requires the synthesis of the ketone starting material and this could be done by Grignard methods (chapter 9) or by acylation of an organo-copper compound with an acid chloride. Acylation with diethyl carbonate requires no special control.

**PROBLEM 11**

Suggest how the following reactions might be made to work. You will probably have to select a specific enol equivalent.

Purpose of the problem

Making reactions work is an important part of organic chemistry.

Suggested solution

The first reaction is a standard acylation of an aldehyde creating a quaternary centre. You might have used a silyl enol ether but an enamine, such as one made from a cyclic secondary amine, is probably better.
The second example might just go with simple base (MeO⁻) catalysis as the conjugated ketone enolate is much more stable than the enolate of the ester. However, it’s probably safer to use a lithium enolate (or a silyl enol ether—though you’d then have to use an acid chloride as the electrophile).

**PROBLEM 12**
Base-catalysed reaction between these two esters allows the isolation of a product A in 82% yield.

The NMR spectrum of this product shows that two species are present. Both show two 3H triplets at about $\delta_H = 1$ and two 2H quartets at about $\delta_H = 3$ ppm. One has a very low field proton and an ABX system at 2.1–2.9 with $J_{AB} 16$ Hz, $J_{AX} 8$ Hz, and $J_{BX} 4$ Hz. The other has a 2H singlet at 2.28 and two protons at 5.44 and 8.86 coupled with $J_{13} 13$ Hz. One of these protons exchanges with D₂O. Any attempt to separate the mixture (for example by distillation or chromatography) gives the same mixture. Both compounds, or the mixture, on treatment with ethanol in acid solution give the same product B.

Compound B has IR 1740 cm⁻¹, $\delta_H$ 1.15–1.25 (four t, each 3H), 2.52 (2H, ABX system $J_{AB} 16$ Hz), 3.04 (1H, X of ABX split into a further doublet by $J 5$ Hz), and 4.6 (1H, d, $J 5$ Hz). What are the structures of A and B?

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of enol structure by NMR and a further exploration of what happens to acylation products.
**Suggested solution**

Only the diester can form an enolate and ethyl formate (HCO₂Et—it is half an ester and half an aldehyde) is much more electrophilic than the diester. We should expect the diester to be acylated by ethyl formate.

The compound A₁ fits the formula for A and the ¹H NMR spectrum of the compound with the low field signal (assigned to the CHO proton). This structure would also show an ABX system in its ¹H NMR spectrum. But what is the other compound (A₂)? It is obviously in equilibrium with A₁ and it lacks both the aldehyde proton and the ABX system and it sounds like an enol. Compound A₁ is chiral so the CH₂ group appears as an ABX system but A₂ is not chiral so the CH₂ group is a singlet. Here are the structures with their NMR assignments. In both cases the 3H triplets and 2H quartets are ethyl groups.

Treatment with acidic ethanol simply makes the acetal from the aldehyde group of A₁. Since A₁ and A₂ are in equilibrium, all A₂ is eventually converted into A₁ and then into B. Compound B is again chiral so the ABX system reappears with further coupling of X with the acetal proton. There are now four triplets and four quartets from the four ethyl groups.
PROBLEM 1
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction, commenting on the selectivity and the stereochemistry.

Purpose of the problem
The opportunity to explore the consequences of the intramolecular version of an important reaction.

Suggested solution
The ylid forms in the usual way but can’t reach across the ring to attack the carbonyl group directly so it has to do conjugate addition instead. It also has to attack from the top face as it is tethered there. Completion of the cyclopropane forming reaction leaves the sulfur still attached to the angular methyl group. Raney nickel reduces the C–S bond (this reagent is commonly used for this purpose). This reaction shows that simple sulfonium ylids can do conjugate addition—they just prefer to add to carbonyl groups if that possibility is available.

PROBLEM 2

Explain the regiochemistry and stereochemistry of this reaction.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Br} & \quad \text{O} \\
& \quad \text{Me}_2\text{S} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \quad \rightarrow \\
& \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem

Exploration of sulfur ylid chemistry.

Suggested solution

The ylid is stabilized by conjugation with the ester group—you can think of it also as an enolate. We can expect reversible addition to the carbonyl group and hence conjugate addition under thermodynamic control. The stereochemistry of the ring junction is inevitable: only a \textit{cis} ring can be made (a \textit{trans}-fused ring would be too strained). The interesting centre is that of the ester on the three-membered ring. It too is in a more stable configuration: on the outside of a folded molecule. The intermediate is probably a mixture of diastereoisomers, but as the conjugate addition is reversible the cyclopropane may be formed by cyclization of only the diastereoisomer that can give the more stable product.
The first reaction is an acetal exchange controlled by entropy: three molecules go in and four come out (the product, two molecules of methanol and one of water). We show just part of the mechanism.
Now the sulfur atoms work to stabilize an anion (organolithium) formed by deprotonation. Alkylation and hydrolysis with a mercury catalyst gives the product.

PROBLEM 4
Suggest a mechanism by which this cyclopropane might be formed.

Attempts to repeat this synthesis on the related compound below led to a different type of product. What is different this time?

Purpose of the problem
Can you disentangle a curious variation on a simple mechanism?
**Suggested solution**

The first reaction is a straightforward cyclopropane formation with a sulfoxonium ylid and a conjugated ketone. The only unusual feature, the MeO group, makes no difference.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{OMe} \\
\text{MeO} & \quad \text{SMe}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{OMe} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Br}
\end{align*}
\]

In the second example, the bromine atom and the phenolic OH evidently do make a difference. No doubt the reaction starts in the same way and a cyclopropane is formed. Under the reaction conditions, the phenol will exist as an anion and this displaces the bromine. This unusual S_N2 reaction at a tertiary centre is possible because of activation by the carbonyl group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{Br} & \quad \text{Me}_2\text{SC}_2\text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Br}
\end{align*}
\]

**PROBLEM 5**

Deduce the structure of the product of this reaction from the NMR spectra and explain the stereochemistry. Compound A has \(\delta_H 0.95 (6H, d, J 7 \text{ Hz}), 1.60 (3H, d, J 5), 2.65 (1H, double septuplet, J 4 and 7), 5.10 (1H, dd, J 10 and 4), \) and \(5.35 (1H, dq, J 10 \text{ and 5}).\)

**Purpose of the problem**

A simple way to make Z-alkenes, with a bit of NMR revision.

**Suggested solution**

This is obviously a Wittig reaction and we should expect a Z-alkene as the ylid is not stabilized by further conjugation. The evidence is plain: the signals at 5.10 and 5.35 are the alkene hydrogens and the coupling constant between them is 10 Hz. This is definitely a Z-alkene.
PROBLEM 6
A single geometrical isomer of an insect pheromone was prepared in the following way. Which isomer is formed and why?

Purpose of the problem
Testing your knowledge of the stereochemistry of the Wittig reaction.

Suggested solution
The first Wittig with a stabilized ylid gives the E-enal A. The second, with an unstabilized ylid, gives a Z-alkene so the final product is an E,Z-diene.
PROBLEM 7
How would you prepare samples of both geometrical isomers of this compound?

Purpose of the problem
A simple stereocontrolled alkene synthesis but both isomers are needed.

Suggested solution
There are many methods that can be used to tackle this question. The only snags are protecting the OH group if necessary and care in isolating the Z-compound as it may isomerize easily to the E-compound by reversible conjugate addition. One way to the Z-alkene uses reduction of an alkyne to control the stereochemistry. The OH group is protected as a benzyl ether removed by hydrogenation, perhaps under the same conditions as the reduction of the alkyne.

The E-alkene might be produced by reduction of the alkyne with an alkali metal in liquid ammonia but a Wittig reaction is probably easier. Either a phosphonium ylid or a phosphonate ester could be used. Protection of the alcohol as an ester allows hydrolysis of both esters in one step.
PROBLEM 8
Which alkene would be formed in each of these elimination reactions? Explain your answer mechanistically.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the three main methods for stereoselective (or stereospecific) alkene bond formation.

Suggested solution
The first is sort of a Wittig reaction (the starting material is made by opening an epoxide with Ph₃P), the second a Julia reaction and the third and the fourth are Peterson reactions under different conditions. Each is described in detail in chapter 27 of the textbook. The Wittig reaction is under kinetic control and is a stereospecific cis elimination. In this case the product is a Z-alkene.

The Julia reaction is under thermodynamic control as equilibration occurs under the reaction conditions. The stereoselective product is the E-alkene.
The Peterson reaction is a syn-elimination under basic conditions, giving the Z-alkene from this starting material, but an E2 anti-elimination under acidic conditions, giving the E-alkene from this starting material.

PROBLEM 9

Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the role of silicon.

Purpose of the problem

Reminder of the anion-stabilizing role of sulfones and the excellence of the mesylate leaving group plus the special role of fluoride as a nucleophile for silicon.

Suggested solution

Sodium hydride removes a proton from the sulfone to give an anion that can act as a nucleophile. Displacement of mesylate gives an allyl silane, which is converted into an allylic anion by fluoride. Addition to the ketone gives a 5/5 fused system with the more stable cis ring junction.
PROBLEM 10

Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the role of silicon. Why is this type of lactone difficult to make by ordinary acid- or base-catalysed reactions?

Purpose of the problem

Basic organosilicon chemistry: the Peterson reaction and allyl silanes as nucleophiles.

Suggested solution

Acylation of the Grignard reagent is followed by a second attack on the ketone as expected but the tertiary alcohol is a Peterson intermediate and eliminates to give the alkene.

Now a Lewis acid catalysed reaction of the allyl silane via a $\beta$-silyl cation gives the lactone. The double bond in these ‘exo-methylene’ lactones easily moves into the ring in acid or base so mild conditions are ideal for these reactions.
PROBLEM 11
How would you carry out the first step in this sequence? Give a mechanism for the
second step and suggest an explanation for the stereochemistry. You may find
that a Newman projection helps.

Purpose of the problem
An important way to make an allyl silane and an important reaction of the
product.

Suggested solution
The best route to the allyl silane is the Wittig reaction (p. 675 of the
textbook). The ylid is not stabilized by extra conjugation so the Z-isomer is favoured.

The reaction with EtAlCl₂ is a Lewis acid-catalysed conjugate addition of
the allyl silane to the enone. Conjugate addition is preferred because the
nucleophile (the allyl silane) is tethered to the electrophile (enone) and the
five-membered ring is preferred to a seven-membered ring.

The stereochemistry comes from the way the molecule prefers to fold and
the Newman projection below should make that clear. The hydrogen atom
on the allyl silane tucks underneath the six-membered ring while the double bond of the allyl silane projects out into space to give the stereochemistry found in the product. The ratio between this diastereoisomer and the other varies from 2:1 to 7.5:1 depending on conditions so the preference is really quite weak.

PROBLEM 12
The following reaction between a phosphonium salt, base, and an aldehyde gives a hydrocarbon C₆H₁₂ with the 200 MHz 'H NMR spectrum shown. Give a structure for the product and comment on its stereochemistry.

Purpose of the problem
Confirming the stereochemistry of the product from a Wittig reaction.
Suggested solution

We'll approach this as a spectroscopic problem, rather than predicting the outcome and then making the data fit. First analyse the data, measuring chemical shifts, integrals and $J$ values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\delta$ ppm</th>
<th>integral</th>
<th>multiplicity</th>
<th>$J$ values Hz</th>
<th>comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>6H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>CHMe$_2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>3H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>MeCHX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.70</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>double septuplet</td>
<td>7,4</td>
<td>Me$_2$CH-CH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.15</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>10, 4</td>
<td>alkene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.35</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>1:3:4:4:3:1?</td>
<td>5?</td>
<td>alkene</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From this alone we can see an alkene with two vicinal Hs, a methyl group, and an isopropyl group. That adds up to C$_6$H$_{12}$ so we have found everything and we can join it up in two ways as the alkene could be cis or trans. There is also a puzzle over the $J$ values—there are too many 5 Hz couplings and the second 10 Hz coupling is missing, but we'll unravel that later.

![Chemical structure](image)

The isopropyl group contains a 7 Hz coupling between the two methyl groups and the H at 2.70 ppm which is coupled to one of the alkene protons with $J = 4$ Hz. The remaining coupling of the alkene proton at 5.15 ppm (10 Hz) must be to the other alkene proton and that fits with a cis double bond. Working from the other end, the methyl group at 1.60 ppm is coupled to the alkene proton at 5.35 Hz with $J = 5$ Hz. Now we can solve the coupling constant mystery. We know that the alkene proton at 5.35 is actually a double quartet but it just so happens that the double coupling is exactly twice the quartet coupling. So we have two 1:3:3:1 quartets overlapping so that the inner lines coincide and give six lines in the ratio 1:3:4:4:3:1. The compound is cis (Z) 4-methylpent-2-ene. This is a Wittig reaction with an unstabilized ylid, so you should expect to find a cis double bond.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 28

PROBLEM 1
How would you make these four compounds? Give your disconnections, explain why you chose them and then give reagents for the synthesis.

Purpose of the problem
Exercises in basic one-group C–X disconnections.

Suggested solution
We wish to disconnect one of the C–N bonds and prefer the one not to the benzene ring as we aim to use reductive amination (p. 234 of the textbook) as the best way to make amines.

However the second aromatic amine can be made a different way. The two nitro groups promote nucleophilic aromatic substitution (p. 514 of the textbook) and the compound can be made by the addition-elimination mechanism from the dinitro chloro compound that can be made by direct nitration.
For the ether we again have a choice from two C–O disconnections. We prefer not to add the t-butyl group by SN2 (though we could by SN1) and disconnect on the other side. The synthesis is trivial: we just mix the two reagents with base or make the anion from the alcohol first.

For the sulfide we shall want to use an SN2 reaction and there is a slight preference for the disconnection we show as the allylic halide is very reactive. You would not be wrong if you had chosen the alternative C–S bond. This time only a weak base will be needed as the SH group is much more acidic than the OH group.

**PROBLEM 2**
How would you make these compounds? Give your disconnections, explain why you chose them and then give reagents for the synthesis.

**Purpose of the problem**
Exercises in basic one-group C–C disconnections.
Suggested solution

There are obviously more choices when you use C–C disconnections, but choose wisely! We suggest a solution, but you may have thought of others. The first compound is an alkyne and disconnection next to the alkyne (but not on the side of the benzene ring) makes a simple synthesis.

![Chemical structure and synthesis diagram]

The alcohol has some symmetry: you will want to use Grignard or organolithium chemistry (chapter 9) and you could disconnect one or two of the identical groups using a ketone or an ester as the electrophile. The double disconnection leads to a shorter synthesis.

![Chemical structure and synthesis diagram]

PROBLEM 3

Suggest ways to make these two compounds. Show your disconnections and make sure you number the functional group relationships.

![Chemical structures]

Purpose of the problem

First steps in using two functional groups to design a synthesis.
Suggested solution

Both compounds have two oxygens singly bonded to the same carbon atom: they are acetals so they come from a carbonyl compound. Disconnecting the acetals helps us see what we are really trying to make.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{acetal} & \xrightarrow{1,1-\text{diX}} \text{1,1-diX} \\
\text{MeO} & \xrightarrow{1,1-\text{diX}} \text{CHO} + 2 \text{MeOH}
\end{align*}
\]

The diol has a 1,3-relationship between the two alcohols so we need aldol or Claisen ester chemistry (chapter 26). One alcohol will have to be changed into a carbonyl group, perhaps an aldehyde or ester. Since we shall reduce all carbonyl groups to alcohols, it doesn’t really matter whether we have aldehydes, ketones, or esters.

We prefer to make the disconnection between C2 and C3 to cut the molecule more or less in half and simplify the problem. There are various ways to do this—either the lithium or the zinc enolate would do, and below we show the use of zinc in a Reformatsky reaction.

If the keto-ester is used as a starting material it can be made by the same strategy (disconnection A) or alternatively (disconnection B) by first removing just one methyl group to reveal a symmetrical keto-ester made by a Claisen ester condensation.
Disconnection A

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Disconnection B} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{EtO} & \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} &
\end{align*}
\]

The advantage of disconnection B is that the synthesis involves a simple self-condensation of ethyl propionate. Methylation of the resulting keto-ester followed by reduction to the diol and acetal formation gives the target molecule.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \\
\text{EtO} & \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{EtO} & \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} &
\end{align*}
\]

The other compound has a 1,5-relationship between the two functional groups and will need some sort of conjugate addition of an enolate (chapter 25). This time we want to reduce only one of the two carbonyl groups so we must make sure they are different. We already have an aldehyde so we choose an ester for the other one.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CHO} & \\
\text{R}_2\text{NH} & \\
\text{CHO} & \\
\text{CHO} &
\end{align*}
\]

We must use a specific enol equivalent for the aldehyde enolate to avoid self-condensation: an enamine or a silyl enol ether would be fine. Since we must reduce the ester in the presence of the aldehyde, it makes sense to put the acetal in before we do this.
PROBLEM 4
Propose syntheses of these two compounds, explaining your choice of reagents and how any selectivity is achieved.

Purpose of the problem
First steps in designing syntheses in which selectivity is required.

Suggested solution
The first compound is an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound and this is one of the most important functional group combinations for you to recognize in planning syntheses. It is the product of an aldol reaction so simply disconnect the alkene and write a new carbonyl group at the far end of the old one. Don't lose any carbon atoms!

We need a crossed aldol reaction between two ketones so we also need chemoselectivity. We have to make one enol(ate) from an unsymmetrical ketone so we need regioselectivity as well. The obvious solution is to use a lithium enolate, a silyl enol ether, or a β-ketoester. Here is one solution.

The second compound contains another common functional group: a lactone or cyclic ester. We should first disconnect the structural C-O bond to see the carbon skeleton.
We discover that we have a 1,5-relationship between the functional groups and so we shall need conjugate addition. We must change the alcohol into a ketone, and the acid group to an ester. Notice that there are two reasonable disconnections and that we have added an ester group to each potential enolate as the way of making a specific enolate.

One possibility is to add malonate to the unsaturated ketone, which is an aldol dimer of acetone and readily available. We can reduce the ketone, expecting cyclization to be spontaneous, and decarboxylate to give our target molecule.

- The strategy of using decarboxylation of a \( \beta \)-dicarbonyl compound is described on p. 597 of the textbook.
PROBLEM 5
The reactions to be discussed in this problem were planned to give syntheses of these three molecules.

In the event each reaction gave a different product from what was expected, as shown below. What went wrong? Suggest syntheses that would give the target molecules above.

Purpose of the problem
Finding out what might go wrong is an important part of planning a synthesis.

Suggested solution
The aldol reaction planned for target molecule 1 looks all right but enol formation has occurred on the wrong side. This is not surprising in acid solution, so use base instead.

In the second case, alkylation of the enolate of the ketone was planned but evidently it is easier to form the enolate of the chloro-ester. The reaction
that occurred is the Darzens condensation. To avoid this problem use a specific enolate of the ketone such as an enamine or a β-ketoester.

In the third case, the cyclopentanone has self-condensed and ignored the enone. The answer again is to use a specific enolate, such as the easily made β-keto-ester below. The six-membered ring is then easily formed by intramolecular aldol reaction. These two reactions together make a Robinson annelation. Finally the CO$_2$Me group must be removed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation.
PROBLEM 6
The natural product nuciferal was synthesized by the route summarized here.

(a) Suggest a synthesis of the starting material.
(b) Suggest reagents for each step.
(c) Draw the retrosynthetic analysis giving the disconnections that you consider the planners may have used and label them suitably.
(d) Which synthon does the starting material represent?

Purpose of the problem
Practice at an important skill—learning from published syntheses—as well as a popular style of exam question.

Suggested solution
(a) Grignard reagents are made from the corresponding halide and the rest of the analysis used simple C–X disconnections.

It turns out that the addition of HBr to the unsaturated aldehyde (trivially known as acrolein) and the protection as an acetal can be carried out in a single step as both are acid-catalysed.
(b) The Grignard has obviously been added to a ketone to give the tertiary alcohol, but how do we replace OH by H? One way is direct catalytic hydrogenation but an easier way is to eliminate the tertiary (and benzylic) alcohol and hydrogenate the alkene. The acid used for dehydration will also remove the acetal.

The last step is an aldol reaction between two aldehydes. The easiest way to do this is by a Wittig reaction but a specific enol of propanal would also be fine.

(c) and (d) The retrosynthetic analysis is straightforward except for the last step. It is not obvious what reagent to use for the synthon in brackets. But you already know what was used: a Grignard reagent with a protected aldehyde, i.e. a d₃ reagent. This is needed because the 1,4 relationship between OH and CHO requires *umpolung* (p. 720 of the textbook).
PROBLEM 7
Show how the relationship between the alkene and the carboxylic acid influences your suggestions for a synthesis of these three compounds.

Purpose of the problem
An exploration of the importance of functional group relationships.

Suggested solution
The first is an $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compound and can best be made by an aldol reaction using some sort of specific enol equivalent for the acid part. A Wittig reagent, a malonate, or a silyl enol ether look the best.

The second synthesis is difficult because the alkene can easily slip into conjugation with the carbonyl group. Perhaps the easiest strategy is to use cyanide ion as synthetic equivalent of $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ since then the electrophile is an allylic halide. Other alternative routes could include alkyne reduction.

The third is best approached by alkylation of a malonate with allyl bromide itself followed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation.
Solutions for Chapter 28 – Retrosynthetic analysis

301

PROBLEM 8
How would you make these compounds?

Purpose of the problem
A reminder of reductive amination and that simple syntheses of apparently related compounds may require very different chemistry.

Suggested solution
The secondary amine is best made by reductive amination via the imine (not usually isolated).

The secondary alcohol can be made by some sort of Grignard chemistry. Cyclohexyl Grignard could be added twice to ethyl formate or once to the cyclohexane aldehyde.
The carboxylic acid could be made by double alkylation of malonate or some other specific enol equivalent.

Finally the primary amine could be made by reductive amination of a ketone that could in turn be made by oxidation of the secondary alcohol we have already made. Among many alternatives is the displacement of the tosylate of the same alcohol with azide ion and reduction of the azide.

**PROBLEM 9**
Show how the relationship between the two carbonyl groups influences your choice of disconnection when you design a synthesis for each of these ketones.
**Purpose of the problem**

An exercise in counting to reinforce the way that odd and even relationships affect the choice of a synthetic route.

**Suggested solution**

The three diketones have 1,3-, 1,4-, and 1,5-dicarbonyl relationships. In each case the obvious disconnection is of the bond joining the ring to the chain. But the chemistry is very different in each case. The 1,3-diketone can be made by acylation of a specific enolate. An enamine or a silyl enol ether is a good choice.

![1,3-diketone synthesis](image)

The same disconnection on the 1,4-diketone leads to different chemistry (alkylation of an enolate) and requires an enamine as the specific enol.

![1,4-diketone synthesis](image)

The 1,5-diketone requires conjugate addition of the same enolate and we suggest a different specific enolate equivalent though others would be just as good. This time the specific enol equivalent is needed to stop self-condensation of the cyclopentanone.

![1,5-diketone synthesis](image)
PROBLEM 10

A synthesis of this enantiomerically pure ant pheromone was required for the purposes of pest control. Given a supply of the enantiomerically pure alkyl bromide as a starting material, suggest a synthesis of the pheromone.

Purpose of the problem

Planning the strategy of a synthesis from a given starting material.

Suggested solution

We know what the disconnection must be, since we have been given one starting material. This looks like an enolate alkylation, and we need to use a specific enolate to stop the ketone self-condensing. The best enolate equivalent will be one that is not too basic, to avoid competing elimination. The simplest solution is probably to use a keto-ester, easily made by Claisen condensation with diethyl carbonate. After alkylation, the ester group is removed by decarboxylation.
Solutions for Chapter 28 – Retrosynthetic analysis

analysis

C–C alkylation

\[ \text{alkylation} \rightarrow \text{target molecule} \]

specific enolate equivalent needed

synthesis

NaOEt

\[ \text{NaOEt} \]

CO(OEt)\(_2\)

\[ \text{CO(OEt)}_2 \]

1. NaOEt

2. RBr

\[ \text{Et}_2\text{C} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \rightarrow \text{H}^+, \text{H}_2\text{O} \]

target molecule
Suggested solutions for Chapter 29

PROBLEM 1
For each of the following reactions (a) state what kind of substitution is suggested and (b) suggest what product might be formed if monosubstitution occurred.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{Br}_2 & \quad ? \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{HNO}_3 & \quad \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \quad ? \\
\text{S} & \quad \text{MeCOCl} & \quad \text{SnCl}_4 & \quad ? \\
\text{F} & \quad \text{MeO}^\ominus & \quad ? \\
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem
A simple exercise in aromatic substitution on heterocycles.

Suggested solution
The first three reactions are all electrophilic substitutions: a bromination of a pyrrole, the nitration of quinoline, and a Friedel-Crafts reaction of thiophene. Bromination of the pyrrole occurs at the only remaining site. Nitration of quinoline occurs on the benzene rather than the pyridine ring (actually giving a mixture of 5- and 8-nitroquinolines) and the acylation occurs next to sulfur.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{Br}_2 & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{S} & \quad \text{MeCOCl} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{F} & \quad \text{MeO}^\ominus & \quad ? \\
\end{align*}
\]

You needn't be concerned with the mixture of 5- and 8-nitroquinoline here, but p. 749 of the textbook has more detail.
The last reaction is a nucleophilic aromatic substitution on a pyridine. It occurs only at the site where the negative change in the intermediate can be delocalized onto the nitrogen.

![Reaction mechanism]

**PROBLEM 2**

Give a mechanism for this side-chain extension of a pyridine.

![Mechanism diagram]

**Purpose of the problem**

An exercise in thinking about the reactivity of alkylated pyridines.

**Suggested solution**

The strong base (LHMDS, lithium hexamethyldisilazide) removes a proton from the methyl group so that the anion is stabilized both by the nitrile and the pyridine nitrogen atom. Acylation occurs outside the ring to preserve the aromaticity. If you drew the lithium atom covalently bound to nitrogen, your answer is better than ours.

---

PROBLEM 3
Give a mechanism for this reaction, commenting on the position in the furan ring that reacts.

Purpose of the problem
An unusual electrophilic substitution on furan with interesting selectivity.

Suggested solution
Furans normally prefer substitution at the α-positions (2 or 5) but one α-position is already blocked and the other is too far away to reach the allyl cation. Attack at the other end of the allylic system would give an eight-membered ring with a trans alkene in it. This would theoretically be possible but closure of a six-membered ring is much faster. In other words, the electrophile and nucleophile are tethered.

PROBLEM 4
Suggest which product might be formed in these reactions and justify your choice.
**Purpose of the problem**
Regioselectivity test with contrasted electrophilic aromatic substitution.

**Suggested solution**
In each case we have a choice between reaction on a benzene ring or an aromatic heterocycle. The pyrrole is more reactive than the benzene and the pyridine less so. The pyrrole does a Vilsmeier reaction (p. 734 of the textbook) in the remaining free position while nitration occurs on the benzene. Pyridine acts as an electron-withdrawing and deactivating substituent, and therefore directs *meta*.

![Chemical structures](image1)

**PROBLEM 5**
Explain the formation of the product in this Friedel-Crafts alkylation of an indole.

![Chemical structures](image2)

**Purpose of the problem**
Checking up on your understanding of indole chemistry.

**Suggested solution**
The Lewis acid combines with allyl bromide to give either the allyl cation or the complex we show here. In either case, electrophilic attack occurs at the 3-position of the indole. The benzyl group migrates to the 2-position where there is a proton that can be lost to restore aromaticity.

![Chemical structures](image3)
PROBLEM 6
Suggest what the products of these nucleophilic substitutions might be.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NH}_2 \text{Me} \text{Cl} + \text{CO}_2\text{Et} & \rightarrow ? \\
\text{Cl} \text{N} \text{Cl} + \text{N} & \rightarrow ?
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem

Checking your understanding of nucleophilic aromatic substitution involving decisions on chemoselectivity and regioselectivity.

Suggested solution

Each compound has potential nucleophilic and electrophilic sites. In the first case the benzene ring is not activated towards nucleophilic substitution but the pyridine is, both by the pyridine nitrogen atom and by the ester group. The NH₂ on the benzene ring is much more nucleophilic than the pyridine nitrogen atom.

In the second case, the chlorine on the heterocyclic ring is much more reactive towards nucleophilic substitution as the intermediate is stabilized by two nitrogen atoms and the benzene ring is not disturbed. The saturated heterocycle (piperazine) can be made to react once only as the product under the reaction conditions is strictly the hydrochloride of the unreacted amino group. This is much more basic than the one that has reacted as that lone pair is conjugated with the heterocyclic ring.
PROBLEM 7
Suggest how 2-pyridone might be converted into the amine shown. This amine undergoes nitration to give compound A with the NMR spectrum given. What is the structure of A? Why is this isomer formed?

NMR of A: \( \delta_h: \) 1.0 (3H, t, \( J = 7 \text{ Hz} \)), 1.7 (2H, sextet, \( J = 7 \text{ Hz} \)), 3.3 (2H, t, \( J = 7 \text{ Hz} \)), 5.9 (1H, broad s), 6.4 (1H, d, \( J = 8 \text{ Hz} \)), 8.1 (1H, dd, \( J = 8 \text{ and } 2 \text{ Hz} \)), and 8.9 (1H, d, \( J = 2 \text{ Hz} \)).

Compound A was needed for conversion into the enzyme inhibitor below. How might this be achieved?

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of proof of structure together with electrophilic and nucleophilic substitution on pyridines and a bit of synthesis.

**Suggested solution**
The first step requires nucleophilic substitution so we could convert the pyridine into 2-chloropyridine and displace the chlorine with the amine.
The nitration occurs only because this pyridine is activated by the extra amino group so you could start by predicting which compound might be made. Alternatively you could work out the structure from the NMR. The key points are (i) A has only three aromatic protons so nitration has occurred on the ring, (ii) there is only one coupling large enough to be between ortho hydrogens (8 Hz), and (iii) there is a proton that has only meta coupling (2 Hz) a long way downfield (at large chemical shift). The pyridine nitrogen causes large downfield shifts at positions 2, 4, and 6, the nitro group causes large downfield ortho shifts, and the amino group causes upward ortho shifts (to smaller δ). All this fits the structure and mechanism shown. The amino group directs ortho, para and para is preferred sterically.

To get the enzyme inhibitor we need to reduce the nitro group to an amine and add the new chain to the other amine. This conjugate addition is best done first while there is only one nucleophilic amine. The ester is probably the best derivative to use, but you may have chosen something else.
PROBLEM 8

The reactions outlined in the chart below were the early stages in a synthesis of an antiviral drug by the Parke-Davis company. Consider how the reactivity of imidazoles is illustrated in these reactions, which involve not only the skeleton of the molecule but also the reagent D. You will need to draw mechanisms for the reactions and explain how they are influenced by the heterocycles.

Purpose of the problem

An exploration of the chemistry of imidazole beyond that considered in chapter 29.

Suggested solution

The first reaction is the nitration of an imidazole in one of only two free positions. The position next to one nitrogen is more nucleophilic than the one between the two nitrogens. Imidazole has one pyridine-like and one pyrrole-like nitrogen so it is more nucleophilic than pyridine but less so than pyrrole.

The second reaction is like an aldol condensation between the methyl group on the ring and the benzaldehyde as the electrophile. The nitro group provides some stabilization for the ‘enolate’ but that would not be enough without the imidazole—ortho-nitro toluene would not do this reaction. The elimination is E1cB-like, going through a similar ‘enol’ intermediate.
Next, alkylation occurs on one of the nitrogen atoms in the imidazole ring. We need the anion of the imidazole which could be alkylated on either nitrogen. Alkylation on the lower N is preferred because the product has the longer conjugated system—we’ve put in the curly arrows to show it.

Ozonolysis of the alkene of C frees the carboxylic acid of D which reacts with carbonyl diimidazole E (CDI) in a nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group, with the relatively stable imidazole anion as the leaving group. The product is an ‘activated ester’, like an anhydride, from which the anion of nitromethane displaces the second molecule of imidazole to give the product F.

E = carbonyl diimidazole (CDI)

See pp. 622–3 of the textbook for some chemistry of the anion of nitromethane.
**PROBLEM 9**
What aromatic system might be based on this ring system? What sort of reactivity might it display?

![Pyrocoline structure]

**Purpose of the problem**
A chance for you to think creatively about aromatic heterocycles.

**Suggested solution**
The aromatic system has the poetic name 'pyrocoline' and you will have found it by trial and error. One ring looks like a pyridine and one like a pyrrole but counting the electrons should have made you realize that you need the lone pair on nitrogen to give a ten electron system. The nitrogen is therefore pyrrole-like and so if you predicted that this compound would react well in electrophilic substitutions on the five-membered ring you would be right: that is exactly what it does. The easiest pyrocolines to make have alkyl groups at position 3 and these compounds are nitrated to give the 4-nitro compounds. Friedel-Crafts reactions happen at the same atom.

![Pyrocoline reactions]

**PROBLEM 10**
Explain the order of events and the choice of bases in this sequence.

![Furan reaction sequence]

**Purpose of the problem**
The use of selective lithiation in furan chemistry.
**Suggested solution**

The allylic group evidently goes into the 2-position so deprotonation of the starting material by LDA must occur there, directed by both the oxygen and bromine atoms. The second electrophile (MeI) takes the place of the Br atom, so BuLi must lead to bromine-lithium exchange rather than deprotonation. The alternative order of events would require selective lithiation adjacent to the methyl group—not something you would expect to work reliably.

![Chemical structure diagram](image)

- Ortholithiation is introduced on pp. 563–4 of the textbook, and the lithiation of furan is on p. 737. Halogen-metal exchange is on p. 188.

This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 30

PROBLEM 1
Suggest a mechanism for this synthesis of a tricyclic aromatic heterocycle.

Purpose of the problem
A simple exercise in the synthesis of a pyridine fused to a pyrrole (or an indole with an extra nitrogen atom).

Suggested solution
The first step must be the formation of an enamine between the primary amine and the ketone. Now, because we have a pyridine and not a benzene ring, nucleophilic aromatic substitution can occur. These ‘aza-indoles’ are more easily formed than indoles.
PROBLEM 2
Is the heterocyclic ring created in this reaction aromatic? How does the reaction proceed? Comment on the regioselectivity of this cyclization.

Purpose of the problem
Exploring the synthesis and aromaticity of an unfamiliar heterocycle.

Suggested solution
The left-hand ring is obviously aromatic as it is a benzene ring. The right-hand ring has four electrons from the double bonds and can have two from a lone pair on oxygen, making six in all. This is more obvious in a delocalized form. Alternatively the whole system can be considered as a 10-electron molecule. Strangely enough, this is easier to see in the other Kekulé form.

The first step in the reaction is a transesterification and cyclization then occurs in the ortho position, para to the other hydroxyl group. Cyclization might have happened to the position in between the two substituents, as the other OH is ortho, para-directing, but the position chosen is more reactive for both steric and electronic reasons.
**PROBLEM 3**

Suggest mechanisms for this unusual indole synthesis. How does the second mechanism relate to electrophilic substitution on indoles (p. 746)?

**Purpose of the problem**

A combination of a Fischer indole synthesis with revision of a bit of indole chemistry from the last chapter.

**Suggested solution**

The first step starts off as a normal Fischer indole synthesis (we have omitted the first step); you just have to draw the molecules carefully to show the *spiro* ring system, and you have to stop before an indole is formed as the quaternary centre prevents aromatization.

Treatment with a Lewis acid initiates a rearrangement very like those occurring when 3-substituted indoles are attacked by electrophiles (p. 746 of the textbook). The aromatic ring is a better migrating group than the primary alkyl alternative and an indole can finally be formed.

PROBLEM 4

Explain the reactions in this partial synthesis of methoxatin, the coenzyme of bacteria living on methanol.

Purpose of the problem

A combination of Fischer indole synthesis with revision of indole chemistry from chapter 29.

Suggested solution

There is clearly a Fischer indole synthesis in the second step but the first step makes the usual hydrazone in a most unusual way. The first reaction is a diazotization so we have to combine the diazonium salt with the enolate of the keto-ester. That creates a quaternary centre and the KOH deacylates it to give the aryl hydrazone needed for the next step.
Now that we have the hydrazone, the Fischer indole step is straightforward and gives the indole-2-carboxylic acid derivative. There is only one site for an enamine and the indole is formed on the side of the benzene ring away from the other substituents.

The next stage must involve the primary amine as nucleophile and the conjugated keto-diester as electrophile. You may have expected direct addition of the amine to the ketone as that gives the product by a reasonable mechanism. In fact, conjugate addition must occur first as the tertiary alcohol A can be isolated. The dehydration is obviously acid-catalysed and the oxidation by air [or Ce(IV)] is also acid-catalysed.
**PROBLEM 5**

Explain why these two quinoline syntheses from the same starting materials give (mainly) different products.

![Chemical structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

An exercise in regioselectivity in a heterocyclic synthesis controlled by pH.

**Suggested solution**

You have a choice here: either you first form an enol(ate) from butanone and do an aldol reaction with the aromatic ketone or you first make an imine and then form enamines from that. In either case, you would expect enol or enamine formation on the more substituted side in acid but the less substituted side in base.
PROBLEM 6
Give mechanisms for these reactions used to prepare a fused pyridine. Why is it necessary to use a protecting group?

Purpose of the problem
Saturated and aromatic heterocycles combined with stereochemistry make an interesting synthesis for you to explore.

Suggested solution
The first starting material is a stable cyclic enamine and conjugate addition is what we should expect with an enone. Of course, if the aldehyde were unprotected, direct addition might occur there as well as carbonyl condensations. The product is in equilibrium with both its enols, one of which can cyclize to form the new six-membered ring.
The enol must attack the five-membered ring in a cis fashion as the tether is too short to reach the other side. There is no control over one stereogenic centre (represented with a wiggly line) but that is unimportant as it is soon to disappear.

Now the reaction with hydroxylamine in acid solution. Formation of the oxime of the ketone produces one molecule of water—just enough to hydrolyse the acetal—and the pyridine synthesis is completed by cyclization and a double dehydration (p. 765 of the textbook).

**PROBLEM 7**

Identify the intermediates and give mechanisms for the steps in this synthesis of a triazole.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \overset{\text{cat.}}{\underset{\text{H}^+}{\longrightarrow}} \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{NH}_2 & \overset{\text{NaNO}_2, \text{HCl}}{\longrightarrow} \text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 \\
\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 & \overset{\text{NaOAc, NaN}_3}{\longrightarrow} \text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 \\
\text{C}_6\text{H}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 & \overset{\text{HCl, EtOH}}{\underset{\text{reflux}}{\longrightarrow}} \text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{21}\text{N}_5\text{O}_3 \\
\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{21}\text{N}_5\text{O}_3 & \overset{\text{1. HCl}}{\longrightarrow} \text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO} \\
\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO} & \overset{\text{CHCl}_3}{\longrightarrow} \text{A} \\
\text{A} & \overset{\text{CHCl}_3}{\longrightarrow} \text{B} \\
\text{B} & \overset{\text{1. HCl, EtOH}}{\longrightarrow} \text{C} \\
\text{C} & \overset{\text{1. HCl, EtOH}}{\longrightarrow} \text{4-NO}_2\text{Ph} \\
\end{align*}
\]
Purpose of the problem

Revision of aromatic nucleophilic substitution and a chance to unravel an interesting mechanism.

Suggested solution

The first reaction forms A, just the enamine from the ketone and the secondary amine (morpholine). Below we have diazotization of an aromatic amine and replacement by azide to give B. This nucleophilic substitution could occur by the addition-elimination mechanism activated by the nitro group or by the S_N1 mechanism (chapter 22).

Now comes the interesting bit. The two reagents A and B combine without losing anything—it is evident that the enamine must be the nucleophile and so the azide must be the electrophile. We can see from the final product that the enamine attacks one end or the other of the azide. Trial and error takes over! Here is one possible solution with some side chains in the intermediate abbreviated for clarity. This product C can be isolated but its stereochemistry is not known.

Finally, the new aromatic system (a triazole) is formed by elimination of the aminal. Protonation of the most basic nitrogen is followed by expulsion of morpholine and aromatization by deprotonation.

An alternative is a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition, see chapter 34.

This synthesis was discovered in Milan during a mechanistic study of the reactions between enamines and azides: R. Fusco et al., Gazz. Chim. Ital., 1961, 91, 849.
PROBLEM 8
Give detailed mechanisms for this pyridine synthesis.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of aldol and conjugate addition reactions of enol(ate)s and a synthesis involving two furans and one pyridine.

Suggested solution
The first reactions are an aldol condensation and a conjugate addition. We have shown just the first steps, but make sure that you can draw full mechanisms for both. The last step is a standard pyridine synthesis.
**PROBLEM 9**
Suggest a synthesis for this compound.

**Purpose of the problem**
The synthesis of an indole with a slight twist.

**Suggested solution**
This looks very much like a perfect subject for the Fischer indole synthesis. Let’s see.

This looks fine, though we may wonder how we are going to have an amino group in that position on the keto ester. Surely it will cyclize onto the ester to form a lactam? One solution would be to protect it with something like a Boc group, but the solution found by the Sterling drug company was partly motivated by a desire to make a variety of compounds with different amine substituents. They chose hydroxyl as an easily replaceable group and accepted that the starting material would exist as a lactone. They made it like this:

The first step is a typical Claisen ester condensation and the second is an acid-catalysed thermodynamically controlled transesterification (the lactone and ethyl ester exchange alcohol partners) to give the more stable six-membered lactone, followed by decarboxylation. Now the Fischer indole synthesis works well and work-up with dry HCl in methanol gave the alkyl
chloride that could be displaced with amines to give a series of anti-depressants.

PROBLEM 10
How would you synthesize these aromatic heterocycles?

Purpose of the problem
A chance to devise syntheses for five-membered aromatic heterocycles with one or two heteroatoms.

Suggested solution
These compounds all look much the same but the strategies needed for each are rather different. Removing the heteroatom from the thiophene reveals a 1,4-diketone to be made by one of the methods in chapter 28. We have chosen to propose an enamine and an \( \alpha \)-bromoketone though there are many other good choices.

The second compound is a thiazole and we want to use a thioamide to make it (see p. 771 of the textbook). We should disconnect C–N and C–S...
bonds to give the thioamide and another α-bromoketone remembering to let the nucleophiles exercise their natural preferences: sulfur attacking saturated carbon and nitrogen attacking the carbonyl group.

![Diagram of reaction](image1)

The third compound has the two heteroatoms joined together so we should keep them that way. We disconnect both C–N bonds revealing the hidden molecule of hydrazine (NH₂NH₂). We then need a 1,3-diketone so we need Claisen ester chemistry (chapter 26).

![Diagram of reaction](image2)
Suggested solutions for Chapter 31

PROBLEM 1
Predict the most favourable conformation for these insect pheromones.

Purpose of the problem
Practice at drawing the conformations of cyclic acetals.

Suggested solution
There are many good ways to draw these conformations and yet more not quite so good. The one thing you must do is place each acetal oxygen atom *axial* on the other ring to enjoy the full anomeric effect. We show three ways of drawing each compound. You get extra credit if you noticed that these compounds can each exist as two diastereoisomers and each diastereoisomer as two enantiomers.

The natural products are two compounds in the middle according to R. Baker *et al.*, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 1982, 601.
PROBLEM 2

The *Lolium* alkaloids have a striking saturated heterocyclic skeleton. One way to make this skeleton appears below. Suggest a mechanism and explain the stereochemistry.

![Chemical structure](image)

*Lolium* alkaloid skeleton

**Purpose of the problem**

Analysis of a reaction to make a bicyclic heterocycle stereospecifically.

**Suggested solution**

Bromine, of course, attacks the alkene to form a bromonium ion. If it has the right stereochemistry, it cyclizes but, if it doesn’t, it reverts to starting materials. The reaction may remind you of halolactonization (p. 568 of the textbook).

![Chemical structure](image)

This particular reaction was used by S. R. Wilson et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 1981, **46**, 3887, to help establish the correct structure of the *Lolium* alkaloids.
**PROBLEM 3**

One of the sugar components of the antibiotic kijanimycin has the basic structure shown here and NMR spectrum given below. What is the stereochemistry? When you have deduced the structure, suggest which conformation the molecule will prefer.

![Chemical structure](image)

\[ \delta: 1.33 (3H, d, J 6 Hz), 1.61^* (1H, broad s), 1.87 (1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 3.5 Hz), 2.21 (1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 1.5 Hz), 2.87 (1H, dd, J 10, 3 Hz), 3.40 (3H, s), 3.99 (1H, dq, J 10, 3 Hz), 3.40 (3H, s), 1.33 (3H, d, J 6 Hz), 4.24 (1H, ddd, J 3, 3, 3.5 Hz) and 4.79 (1H, dd, J 3.5, 1.5 Hz). The signal marked * exchanges with D$_2$O.]

**Purpose of the problem**

Using NMR to deduce stereochemistry and seeing how stereoelectronics decide the conformation of a cyclic acetal.

**Suggested solution**

You can make some preliminary assignments from a combination of shift and coupling:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Integral and splitting</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>3H, d, J 6</td>
<td>3H, d must be CHMe</td>
<td>Me\textsuperscript{7}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.61*</td>
<td>1H broad s</td>
<td>exchanges so must be OH</td>
<td>OH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.87</td>
<td>1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 3.5</td>
<td>14 Hz looks like CH\textsubscript{2}</td>
<td>H\textsuperscript{2} or H\textsuperscript{3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 1.5</td>
<td>2.21 and 1.87 are CH\textsubscript{2}</td>
<td>H\textsuperscript{2} or H\textsuperscript{3}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.87</td>
<td>1H, dd, J 10, 3</td>
<td>must be axial H (10 Hz)</td>
<td>H\textsuperscript{4} or H\textsuperscript{5}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.40</td>
<td>3H, s</td>
<td>one OMe group</td>
<td>OMe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.47</td>
<td>3H, s</td>
<td>the other OMe group</td>
<td>OMe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.99</td>
<td>1H, dq, J 10, 6</td>
<td>q means H\textsuperscript{6} (axial)</td>
<td>H\textsuperscript{6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.24</td>
<td>1H, ddd, J 3, 3, 3.5</td>
<td>small J must be equatorial</td>
<td>H\textsuperscript{4} or H\textsuperscript{5}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.79</td>
<td>1H, dd, J 3.5, 1.5</td>
<td>small J must be equatorial</td>
<td>H\textsuperscript{1}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We don’t mind which is H\textsuperscript{2} or H\textsuperscript{3} as they don’t affect the stereochemistry, but we do mind which is H\textsuperscript{4} or H\textsuperscript{5}. Since H\textsuperscript{6} is a 10 Hz doublet coupled with H\textsuperscript{1}, we know that H\textsuperscript{1} is at 2.87 and is axial. This gives the entire assignment...
and the stereochemistry: H^5 and H^6 are axial; H^1 and H^4 are equatorial. That is why there are no large vicinal ($^3J$) couplings to the diastereotopic CH$_2$ group (H^2 and H^3). All couplings not shown on the second diagram are $<4$ Hz.

PROBLEM 4

Explain why this cyclization gives a preponderance (3:1) of the oxetane, though the tetrahydrofuran is much more stable.

Purpose of the problem

A reminder that Baldwin’s rules may apply to any cyclization.

Suggested solution

Clearly iodine attacks the alkene and the OH group adds to the intermediate iodonium ion. Let’s draw this first without stereochemistry to see what happens. The starting material is in the middle, with the pathway to the tetrahydrofuran (THF) running to the left and the oxetane to the right.

Whether the oxetane or the tetrahydrofuran is formed depends on which end of the iodonium ion is attacked by the OH group. In terms of Baldwin’s rules, oxetane formation is a simple 4-exo-tet reaction and is favoured. The THF formation is slightly more complicated. It is a 5-exo-tet as far as the SN$_2$ reaction is concerned, but in the transition state the nucleophile, the carbon atom under attack and the leaving group are also all in the same six-membered ring—there is disfavoured 6-endo-tet character. It is very difficult.
to get the two dotted lines in the transition state diagram at the required 180° to each other.

Now what about the stereochemistry? Did you notice that each product has an all-trans arrangement of substituents around the ring? And what about the second alkene? The two alkenes are in fact diastereotopic and which one is attacked by iodine as well as on which face determines the stereochemistry of the product. This is rather like iodolactonization. Iodine adds randomly and reversibly to both faces of both alkenes. Only when cyclization can give the most stable all-trans product does the reaction continue.

**PROBLEM 5**

Draw a mechanism for the following multistep reaction. Do the cyclization steps follow Baldwin’s rules?

**Purpose of the problem**

Baldwin’s rules at work in the synthesis of a bicyclic heterocycle with one nitrogen atom in both rings.

**Suggested solution**

Hydrolysis of the acetal releases an aldehyde and Mannich-style condensation leads to the product. The iminium ion forms by (favoured) 5-exo-trig attack on the aldehyde. The cyclization step in which the enol attacks the iminium ion is 6-endo-trig and is thus also favoured. By folding
This new synthesis of a bicyclic amine was reported by F. D. King, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1983, 24, 3281.

The molecule into a chair a reasonable overlap between the required p orbitals is possible.

![Diagram of molecular structures and reactions](image)

**PROBLEM 6**
Consider the question of Baldwin’s rules for each of these reactions. Why do you think they are both successful?

![Diagram of molecular structures and reactions](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Developing judgement in using Baldwin’s rules in the synthesis of heterocyclic compounds.

**Suggested solution**
The first ring system is the same as the one we have just been considering but the route to it is decidedly different and is more demanding of Baldwin’s rules, though we should still describe it as 6-endo-trig. Manganese dioxide is a specific oxidant for allylic alcohols and conjugate addition of the amine to the enone gives the bicyclic amine. This works because *endo* reactions are just about all right when six-membered rings are formed and because conjugate addition is under thermodynamic control: as long as *some* of the reaction occurs, the product is the most stable compound in the mixture—any competing attack of the amine on the ketone gives a much less stable four-membered ring.

Solutions for Chapter 31 – Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics

The second example is again 6-endo-trig but it is acid-catalysed: protonation increases the reactivity of the enone and reduces its rigidity. Both these 6-endo-trig reactions occur through chair-like transition states rather like the example in the previous problem.

PROBLEM 7
A revision problem in spectroscopy. A Pacific sponge contains 2.8% dry weight of a sweet-smelling oil with the following spectroscopic details. What is its structure and stereochemistry?

Mass spectrum gives formula: C₉H₁₆O. IR 1680 and 1635 cm⁻¹.
δH 0.90 (6H, d, J 7), 1.00 (3H, t, J 7), 1.77 (1H, m), 2.09 (2H, t, J 7), 2.49 (2H, q, J 7), 5.99 (1H, d, J 16), and 6.71 (1H, dt, J 16, 7).
δC 8.15 (q), 22.5 (two qs), 28.3 (d), 33.1 (t), 42.0 (t), 131.8 (d), 144.9 (d), and 191.6 (s).

Purpose of the problem
A reminder of stereochemistry in two dimensions.

Suggested solution
The IR suggests a conjugated carbonyl compound, confirmed by the carbonyl and two alkene signals in the carbon NMR with the additional information that the carbonyl group is an aldehyde or ketone (δC about 200). The proton NMR shows it is a ketone (no CHO proton), that the alkene has two protons (5.99 and 6.71), and that they are trans (J = 16 Hz). We also see an ethyl group (2H q and 3H t) attached to something with no Hs (could it be the carbonyl group?). This suggests the unit in the margin which leaves only C₄H₈. We know we have Me₂CH- from the 6H d and that leaves only CH₂. We have a structure:

![Diagram of molecular structure]
PROBLEM 8

Reaction between this aldehyde and ketone in base gives a compound $A$ with the proton NMR spectrum: $\delta_H 1.10 \,(9H, \text{s}), 1.17 \,(9\text{H, s}), 6.4 \,(1\text{H, d, } J 15), \text{and } 7.0 \,(1\text{H, d, } J 15)$. What is its structure? (Don’t forget stereochemistry!). When this compound reacts with $\text{HBr}$ it gives compound $B$ with this NMR spectrum: $\delta_H 1.08 \,(9\text{H, s}), 1.13 \,(9\text{H, s}), 2.71 \,(1\text{H, dd, } J 1.9, 17.7), 3.25 \,(dd, \, J 10.0, 17.7), \text{and } 4.38 \,(1\text{H, dd, } J 1.9, 10.0)$. Suggest a structure, assign the spectrum, and give a mechanism for the formation of $B$.

Purpose of the problem

Slightly more difficult determination of stereochemistry moving from two to three dimensions. Revision of the Karplus relationship and of conjugate addition.

Suggested solution

The structure of $A$ is easy. It has a $\text{trans}$ alkene with two H’s ($J 15$) and two tertiary butyl groups. There isn’t much else except a carbonyl group so it must be an aldol product between the enolizable ketone and the unenolizable aldehyde.

$B$ is more difficult. The alkene has obviously gone (no signals beyond 4.48) and there is one extra H. It looks as though $\text{HBr}$ has added. The 17.7 coupling cannot be a $\text{trans}$ alkene as the chemical shifts are too small, so it must be geminal coupling. This means that the molecule must be chiral so
that the two hydrogens on the same carbon are diastereotopic. In fact, the expected conjugate addition of HBr to the enone has occurred.

\[ \text{HBr} \quad \text{A} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \]

The three hydrogens that we have drawn form an ABX system: A and B are the diastereotopic CH\(_2\) group (\(J_{AB} = 17.7\)) and X is the CHBr proton (\(J_{AX} = 10\) and \(J_{BX} = 1.9\)). It is not normally possible to say which proton is A and which B but here the large groups, along with the big difference between the two coupling constants, allow us to surmise there is one favoured conformation with dihedral angles of about 180° and 60°.

\[ \text{favoured conformation has large groups anti-periplanar} \]

\[ \begin{align*}
2J & = 17.7 \text{ Hz} \\
3J & = 1.9 \text{ Hz}
\end{align*} \]

\(60^\circ\) angle \(180^\circ\) angle

**PROBLEM 9**

Two diastereoisomers of this cyclic keto-lactam have been prepared. The NMR spectra have many overlapping signals but the marked proton can be seen clearly. In isomer A it is at \(\delta = 4.12\) (1H, q, \(J = 3.5\)) and in isomer B it is \(\delta = 3.30\) (1H, dt, \(J = 4, 11\)). Which isomer has which stereochemistry?

**Purpose of the problem**

Assignment of three-dimensional stereochemistry from NMR when only one signal can be clearly seen.

Suggested solution

The two isomers have *cis* and *trans* ring junctions so we should start by making conformational drawings of both. The *trans* compound is easy as it has a fixed *trans*-decalin shape. The *cis* compound can have two conformations as both conformers can flip.

The vital proton is clearly axial in isomer B as it has two large couplings (10 Hz) to other axial protons so this must be the *trans* isomer. Isomer A has three equal small couplings and this fits one conformation of the *cis* isomer.

---

**PROBLEM 10**

Given a sample of each of these two compounds, how would you determine the stereochemistry?

---

**Purpose of the problem**

An approach from the other end: how would you do the job? Also to remind you that we can determine the *relative* stereochemistry (i.e. which diastereoisomer do we have?) but not the absolute stereochemistry (i.e. which enantiomer do we have?) by NMR.
Suggested solution

By NMR of course. Both compounds are six-membered rings so we should first make conformational diagrams of all the possibilities. Both will have the \( t \)-butyl group equatorial. The first compound can have the methyl group \( cis \) or \( trans \) to the \( t \)-butyl group while the second compound can have both methyl groups on the same side, on the other side to the \( t \)-butyl group, or one on each side. Two of these are \textit{meso} compounds though this doesn't affect the assignment.

The key H atoms in the NMR spectrum are those shown below. In the first compound \( H^D \) tells us nothing as it has no neighbours and no coupling. \( H^B \) and \( H^C \) are useful as they tell us about \( H^A \). \( H^A \) is easily identified by its quartet coupling to the methyl group. If it has a large axial-axial coupling (about 10 Hz) to \( H^B \) we have the \textit{cis} compound, but if all its couplings are small (perhaps \(< 4 \) Hz) then it is the \textit{trans} compound.

In the second compound a difficulty emerges: there is no coupling! We can tell by symmetry whether we have, on the one hand, the symmetrical \textit{cis}, \textit{cis}- or the \textit{trans}, \textit{trans}- compounds or, on the other hand, the non-symmetrical \textit{cis}, \textit{trans}- compound. The symmetrical compounds will of course show only one peak for the two methyl groups, for example. But how can we tell which of the symmetrical compounds we have? The chemical shifts will be different but we won't know which is which. However, if we irradiate the signal for the methyl groups, we should get a strong NOE (pp. 799–800 of the textbook) at \( H^A \) for the \textit{trans} compound and not for the \textit{all-cis} compound.
PROBLEM 11

The structure and stereochemistry of the antifungal antibiotic ambruticin was in part deduced from the NMR spectrum of this simple cyclopropane which forms part of its structure. Interpret the NMR and show how it gives definite information on the stereochemistry.

\[ \delta \text{H} 1.21 (3\text{H}, \text{d}, J 7 \text{Hz}), 1.29 (3\text{H}, \text{t}, J 9), 1.60 (1\text{H}, \text{t}, J 6), 1.77 (1\text{H}, \text{ddq}, J 13, 6, 7), 2.16 (1\text{H}, \text{dt}, J 6, 13), 4.18 (2\text{H}, \text{q}, J 9), 6.05 (1\text{H}, \text{d}, J 20), \text{and} 6.62 (1\text{H}, \text{dd}, J 20, 13). \]

**Purpose of the problem**

Assigning a more complex NMR and making decisions about stereochemistry in small rings.

**Suggested solution**

In cyclopropanes the cis coupling is usually larger than the trans coupling because the dihedral angle for cis Hs is 0° but that of trans Hs is not 180°.

Assigning the three ring hydrogens depends on (a) the quartet coupling to the methyl group, and (b) the 13 Hz coupling to the proton on the alkene. This means that the third proton on the ring (t, J 7) must be next to the carbonyl group. The two trans couplings round the ring are the same (6 Hz) and smaller than the cis coupling (7 Hz). The double bond geometry is on more certain grounds as 20 Hz can be only a trans coupling.
**PROBLEM 12**

A reaction produces two diastereoisomers of the product below: isomer A has δH 3.08 (1H, dt, J 4, 9, 9) and 4.32 (1H, d, J 9), while isomer B has δH 4.27 (1H, d, J 4). All other protons (except those of the Me groups) overlap in the NMR. Isomer B is converted into isomer A in base. What is the stereochemistry of A and B?

**Purpose of the problem**

Determining stereochemistry with the minimum of information.

**Suggested solution**

There are only two diastereoisomers and the difference in coupling constants is striking. The observed Hs must be those next to the functional groups. These compounds are not true cyclohexanes as they are flattened by the benzene ring and are best drawn as cyclohexenes. You should imagine the benzene ring coming towards you from the double bond.

The two protons we can see in isomer A must be H1 and H2 as they have the largest shifts. The proton with only one coupling must be H1 as it has only one neighbour H2. The coupling between these two is 9 Hz so they must both be axial. Isomer A is therefore the trans compound. H2 is a double triplet because it has two axial neighbours and one equatorial neighbour (H4). Isomer B shows H1 alone and it is clearly equatorial (J 4) and so it must be the cis isomer.

- A reminder: we are showing only relative configuration here; NMR tells us nothing about whether we have one or both enantiomers of each diastereoisomer.
Conversion to A occurs by enolate formation and the \textit{trans} compound is more stable than the \textit{cis}, as you might expect.

\textbf{PROBLEM 13}

Muscarine, the poisonous component of the death cap mushroom, has the structure below. We give the proton NMR spectrum. Can you see any definite evidence for the stereochemistry? Couplings are in Hz, m stands for multiplet, and * means that the proton exchanges with D$_2$O.

\begin{align*}
\delta & \quad 1.16 \ (3H, d, J \ 6.5), \ 1.86 \ (1H, ddd, J \ 12.5, 9.5, 9.5), \ 2.02 \ (1H, ddd, J \ 12.5, 6.0, 2.0), \\
& \quad 3.36 \ (9H, s), \ 3.54 \ (1H, dd, J \ 13, 9.0), \ 3.92 \ (1H, dq, J \ 2.5, 6.5), \ 4.03 \ (1H, m), \ 4.30^* \ (1H, d, J \ 3.5), \text{ and } 4.68 (1H, m).
\end{align*}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics{muscarine_structure}
\end{center}

\textbf{Purpose of the problem}

Demonstrating that it can be difficult to determine stereochemistry even with all the information.

\textbf{Suggested solution}

Couplings round five-membered rings tend to be much the same whether they are $^2J$ (geminal), $^3J_{\text{cis}}$ or $^3J_{\text{trans}}$ (vicinal). Even so, the two diastereotopic CH$_2$ groups are easy to find with their large $^2J$ couplings of 13 and 12.5 Hz. The one with extra coupling must be in the side chain and the other in the ring. Here is the full analysis. You will see that it is very difficult to get conclusive evidence on stereochemistry from NMR alone without using NOE. You should see that, in general, \textit{cis} couplings in five-membered rings tend to be larger than \textit{trans}, though there are many, many exceptions!

\begin{center}
\includegraphics{muscarine_analysis}
\end{center}

\hspace{1cm} The details are in J. Mulzer et al., \textit{Liebigs Ann. Chem.}, 1987, 7
PROBLEM 14
Treatment with base of the two compounds shown here gives an unknown compound with the spectra given below. What is its structure?

Treatment with base of the two compounds shown here gives an unknown compound with the spectra given below. What is its structure?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CHO} & + \text{Cl} \overset{\text{base}}{\longrightarrow} ? \\
\text{m/z: } 241 (M^+, 60\%), 90 (100\%), 89 (62\%) \\
\delta^H \text{ (ppm in CDCl}_3\text{): } 3.89 (1H, d, J 3 \text{ Hz}), 4.01 (1H, d, J 3 \text{ Hz}), 7.31 (5H, s), 7.54 (2H, d, J 10 \text{ Hz}) \text{ and } 8.29 (2H, d, J 10 \text{ Hz}) \\
\delta^C \text{ (ppm in CDCl}_3\text{): } 62, 64, 122, 125, 126, 127, 130, 136, \text{ and } 148 \text{ (the last three are weak).}
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem
Further practice at structure determination, making use of the size of the coupling constant.

Suggested solution
The compound is an epoxide: the coupling constants around the three-membered ring are small (3 Hz: contrast 10 Hz on the benzene ring) because of ring size and the oxygen atom. All the Hs on the Ph ring happen to come at the same chemical shift. Those on the nitrated ring are at lower field and separated by the nitro group.
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 32

PROBLEM 1
Explain how the stereo- and regio-chemistry of these reactions are controlled. Why is the epoxidation only moderately diastereoselective, and why does the amine attack where it does?

Purpose of the problem
An exercise to remind you how important conformational analysis is in any stereoselective reactions of saturated six-membered rings.

Suggested solution
The conformation of the cyclohexene will place the ester group in an equatorial position, almost in the plane of the alkene, so that it offers only slight steric hindrance. The opening of the epoxide is dominated by conformation: approach a would give a twist-boat product but approach b gives the chair cyclohexane observed.

Before cyclization, the compound must go into a boat form so that the amine and the ester can approach one another. This boat is fixed in the final bicyclic structure. The cyclization does not affect the stereochemistry.
PROBLEM 2

Explain the stereochemistry of this sequence of reactions, noting the second step in particular.

Purpose of the problem

To show how even 'non-reactions' can influence stereochemistry.

Suggested solution

The hydrogenation will add a molecule of hydrogen in cis fashion to give what appears at first to be the wrong product.

The second step is important as it changes the stereochemistry. Ethoxide will form the enolate of the ester reversibly and allow it to move to the outside, convex face of the folded molecule. Though neutral nitrogen is not normally a chiral centre because it undergoes rapid pyramidal inversion, here it is fixed by the need of the 5/5 fused system to have a cis ring junction. The last step is just reduction of the ester with no change in stereochemistry.
PROBLEM 3

Comment on the control over stereochemistry achieved in this sequence.

Purpose of the problem

An exploration of stereochemistry in rings.

Suggested solution

The reducing agent could attack either side of the ring in the first step but by reacting with the OH group it can deliver hydride intramolecularly from the bottom face. The mesylation does not affect the stereochemistry as no bonds are formed or broken at any of the stereogenic centres.

The reaction with ammonia probably starts with displacement of the primary mesylate and the second displacement is intramolecular. It is also stereospecific as $S_N$2 reactions must occur with inversion and, fortunately, the amine is on the bottom face.

As described by E. J. Corey and group in *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1979, 671.
PROBLEM 4
What controls the stereochemistry of this product? You are advised to draw the mechanism first and then consider the stereochemistry.

![Chemical structure]

**Purpose of the problem**

To show how ring-closing reactions, particularly those on the side of an already existing ring, can give excellent stereochemical control. And again, the importance of conformation in six-membered rings.

**Suggested solution**

We’d better draw the mechanism first, as the question suggests. Grignard reagents tend to do direct rather than conjugate addition to enones, and the product shows that the methyl group has done just that. But the OH group is in the wrong position to cyclize to the ester and there doesn’t seem to be much scope for stereochemical control so we probably get a mixture of diastereoisomers.

The first product is a tertiary allylic alcohol so it will lose water under the acidic work-up conditions to form a carbocation. Readdition of water to the other end of the allylic cation gives an alcohol that could cyclize to the final product.

An alternative and probably better mechanism is that the ester, or the acid derived from it by hydrolysis, cyclizes onto the allylic cation. In our first mechanism, the OH group would have to be on the same side of the ring as
the ester or acid to allow the lactone to form, but this cyclization gives the cis lactone directly from the allylic cation intermediate.

PROBLEM 5
Why is one of these esters more reactive than the other?

Purpose of the problem
Reminder of the power of folded molecules with concave and convex sides.

Suggested solution
The molecule is folded along the ring junction with one of the esters inside the fold (on the concave side) and one out in the open (on the convex side). In the rate-determining step of ester hydrolysis, the attack of the hydroxide ion on the carbonyl group, the forming tetrahedral intermediate is larger than the starting ester. This means that the ester on the outside, which has more room to 'expand', reacts faster than the ester on the inside.
Problem 6

Explain the stereoselectivity in these reactions.

Purpose of the problem

Another cyclization reaction and an example of a controlled inversion of configuration not using the $S_N2$ reaction.

Suggested solution

The first stereoselective reaction is surprising as it may appear that the initial alkylation decides the stereochemistry. But that is not the case as you will see if you draw the mechanism. The ester enolate is very easily formed as it is stabilized by the pyridine ring and the nitrile as well as by the ester. Even a weakish base such as carbonate is good enough.

The first intermediate produced by alkylation with the primary alkyl bromide (or the epoxide) has two stereogenic centres and will no doubt be formed as a mixture of diastereoisomers. But this doesn’t matter as the enolate has to be reformed for the next alkylation, and that destroys one of the chiral centres. We are back to a single compound again.
All now depends on the arrangement of the molecule for the cyclization step. The mechanism is straightforward enough but drawing the transition state is tricky. We offer two representations: an attempt at a conformational diagram and a Newman projection. The vital feature in both is that the enolate carbon and the C–O bond of the epoxide must be collinear. The molecule folds so that the five-membered ring bends upwards away from the large pyridine ring. This is not obvious even when you know the answer. You may have a better diagram.

The rest of the reactions are straightforward. Cyclization is spontaneous in base and the oxidation and reduction simply invert the OH group as the borohydride ion approaches the ketone from the side opposite the large pyridine ring.

PROBLEM 7
The synthesis of a starting material used in chapter 32 (p. 834 of the textbook) is a good example of how cyclic compounds can be used in a simple way to control stereo-chemistry. Draw mechanisms for each reaction and explain the stereochemistry.
**Purpose of the problem**

Reinforcement of material from chapter 32 and some important reactions.

**Suggested solution**

Tosylation of the primary alcohol is followed by ester exchange with methanol to release the anion of a secondary alcohol that promptly closes to an epoxide. There is no change at the stereogenic centre.

\[ 	ext{TsO} \rightarrow \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 \rightarrow \text{MeOH} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \]

Now the vinyl cuprate attacks the epoxide at its less substituted end, releasing the same oxyanion, which promptly closes the lactone again. Once more there is no change at the stereogenic centre.

\[ \text{CuR} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{Se} \text{Ph} \]

Finally, the double bond is introduced by selenium chemistry (p. 686 of the textbook). The steps are straightforward and the geometry of the alkene is dictated by the ring.
PROBLEM 8

Draw conformational drawings for these compounds. State in each case why the substituents have the positions you give. To what extent could you confirm your predictions experimentally?

Purpose of the problem

Further exploration of conformation and establishing the link with NMR spectra.

Suggested solution

The first two compounds have no choice about their conformation but the third does. The two functional groups prefer to be equatorial rather than axial.

Confirming the conformations experimentally means measuring coupling constants in the proton NMR so we need to look at the vital protons (marked ‘H’ in the diagrams below) and consider whether they can be seen in the spectrum. Fortunately the interesting protons are all next to functional groups so they will all be easily recognizable. We may find it difficult to identify the axial proton at the ring junction in the first example but trans decalins must have axial groups at the ring junction so that it not important.

In the first molecule, proton H has two neighbours, one axial (H⁺) and one equatorial (H⁻) so it will appear as a double doublet with characteristic large axial/axial and small axial/equatorial couplings. By contrast the two
marked equatorial Hs in the second compound have each got two axial and two equatorial neighbours and all the coupling constants will be about the same and small. They will both appear as narrow triplets of triplets but may be difficult to analyse. The important thing is that they have no large couplings. The two axial protons in the third example have each got two axial and two equatorial neighbours (one pair shown) and will again appear as triple triplets but this time one triplet will have a large axial/axial coupling.

**PROBLEM 9**
Predict which products would be formed on opening these epoxides with a nucleophile, say cyanide ion.

![Epoxide structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Practice at choosing the correct regiochemistry of a stereoelectronically controlled epoxide opening.

**Suggested solution**
The opening of cyclohexene epoxides is controlled by the need to get the *trans* diaxial products. To get the right answer we need merely to draw the only possible *trans* diaxial (i.e. with CN and O– diaxial) product from each of these conformationally fixed *trans* decalins. Cyanide must, of course, open the epoxide with inversion so the OH group in the products is on the same side as the oxygen atom in the original epoxides.

![Reaction pathways](image)
PROBLEM 10
These two sugar analogues are part structures of two compounds used to treat poultry diseases. Which conformation will they prefer?

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of conformations in natural products with many substituents.

Suggested solution
Trial and error gives the conformation with the most equatorial substituents. The first compound can have all its substituents equatorial. The second can have three groups equatorial and one OH group axial, the preferred conformation due to the anomeric effect (pp. 801–3 of the textbook).

PROBLEM 11
Suggest a mechanism for the following reaction. The product has the following signals in its $^1$H NMR spectrum: $\delta$H 3.9 (1H, ddq, $J_{12, 4, 7}$) and 4.3 (1H, dd, $J_{11, 3}$). What is the stereochemistry and conformation of the product?

Purpose of the problem
A variation of a familiar mechanism, and illustration of how even limited spectroscopic data can help identify stereochemistry.
**Suggested solution**

The mechanism is formation of a bromonium ion by attack on the electron-rich alkene, followed by intramolecular nucleophilic attack by the OH group at the more substituted carbon atom. The NMR spectrum shows that the protons next to Br and O (shown as H^a and H^b) are both axial, since they have a large coupling constant of around 12 Hz (see pp. 796–9 of the textbook). The Br atom and the Me group must therefore be equatorial.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

**PROBLEM 12**

Revision problem. Give mechanisms for each step in this synthesis and explain any regio- or stereochemistry.

![Synthesis diagram](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of chapters 11 (acetal formation and hydrolysis) and 17 (eliminations) together with two reactions from this chapter: epoxidation and conformationally controlled opening of an epoxide on a six-membered ring.

**Suggested solution**

The first step is the standard formation of an acetal from a ketone. The epoxidation occurs from the bottom face of the ring (as drawn) because the axial methyl group blocks the top face. Ring opening with HF gives the trans di-axial product. The elimination is by the E1cB mechanism and the hydroxyl group is easily lost as it is axial.
This page intentionally left blank
Suggested solutions for Chapter 33

PROBLEM 1
How would you make each diastereoisomer of this product from the same alkene?

Purpose of the problem
A gentle introduction to stereochemical control in open-chain compounds.

Suggested solution
The compounds are acetals and can be made from the corresponding diols with no change in stereochemistry. The question really is: how do you make cis and trans diols from the alkene?

The cis diol is best made by dihydroxylation with OsO₄ as the reagent and a co-oxidant to regenerate it. The trans diol comes from the epoxide by nucleophilic attack with water.
**PROBLEM 2**

Explain the stereochemistry shown in this sequence of reactions.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{1. } & 
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{Zn(BH}_4\text{)}_2
\end{array} \\
& 
\begin{array}{c}
\text{CO}_2\text{Bn} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem

Chelation-controlled reduction is an important method for stereochemical control in open-chain compounds.

Suggested solution

In both reductions the zinc atom is coordinated to the oxygen of the nearer functional group (CO₂Bn in the first and OH in the second) and the oxygen of the ketone being reduced. This fixes the conformation of the molecule and the borohydride ion attacks from the less hindered side. *Anti* stereochemistry results in both cases.

---

You might prefer to draw the zinc-chelated structures as Newman projections, as shown in the textbook on p. 863.
PROBLEM 3
How is the relative stereochemistry of this product controlled? Why was this method chosen?

\[ \text{SO}_{2}\text{Ph} + \text{I} \rightarrow \text{OBn} \]

**Purpose of the problem**
This may seem trivial but the principle is important.

**Suggested solution**
The relationship between the two chiral centres in the product is 1,5 and that is too remote for any realistic control. The only plan is to disconnect between the two centres and add a removable anion-stabilizing group to one side and a leaving group to the other. The starting materials must of course be single enantiomers—then only one diastereoisomer can be formed.

\[ \text{OBn} \quad \text{OBn} \]

PROBLEM 4
When this hydroxy-ester is treated with a two-fold excess of LDA and then alkylated, one diastereoisomer of the product predominates. Why?

\[ \text{CO}_2\text{Et} + \text{Br} \rightarrow \text{OH} \]

**Purpose of the problem**
Analysis of an apparently simple case where chelation has the last word.
**Suggested solution**

The first LDA molecule removes the OH proton and only the second gives the lithium enolate. The enolate is held in a ring by chelation to the first lithium atom so that the allyl group adds to the less hindered face—opposite the methyl group. We’ve rotated the right hand end of the product to compare the stereochemistry clearly with the structure in the problem: make sure you can see that there is no change at the ester-bearing centre when you do this.

PROBLEM 5

Explain the stereochemical control in this reaction, drawing all the intermediates.

**Purpose of the problem**

Aldols are versatile and important ways of controlling open-chain stereochemistry by way of a cyclic transitions state.

**Suggested solution**

The geometry of the enolate is all important (p. 868 of the textbook) and here the large t-butyl group will direct the formation of the cis lithium enolate. Then the aldol reaction goes through a six-membered cyclic transition state (Zimmerman-Traxler) with the R group of the aldehyde taking up an equatorial position. This gives the syn aldol product.
PROBLEM 6
Explain how the stereochemistry of this epoxide is controlled.

Purpose of the problem
An example of the important iodolactonization reaction.

Suggested solution
The bicarbonate (NaHCO₃) is a strong enough base to remove the proton from the carboxylic acid. Iodine attacks the alkene reversibly to give a mixture of diastereoisomers of the iodonium ion. If the I⁻ and Me groups are on the same side of the chain, the carboxylate group can attack the iodonium ion from the back and set up a trans iodolactone. The iodolactone is cleaved by methoxide and the oxyanion displaces iodide to give the epoxide.
PROBLEM 7
Explain how these reactions give different isomers of the same product.

**Purpose of the problem**
Practice at analysing stereochemical control using the Felkin-Anh model.

**Suggested solution**
In each case we have nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group with a neighbouring chiral centre. The Felkin-Anh analysis tells us first to put the largest group perpendicular to the carbonyl group and then to bring the nucleophile in alongside the smaller substituent. This is best shown as a Newman projection. In the first case it is better to rotate the front atom in the product so that the two Ph groups are at 180° and we can then draw the structure in the same arrangement.
PROBLEM 8

Explain the stereoselectivity of this reaction. What isomer of the epoxide would be produced by treatment of the product with base?

Purpose of the problem

A stereoelectronically controlled Felkin-Anh analysis.

Suggested solution

In this case the chloro substituent dominates because it has an electronic interaction with the carbonyl group. The two alkyl chains come out opposite one another so it is easy to draw the product in a reasonable fashion by imagining yourself observing the Newman projection from the top right.

To draw the stereochemistry of the epoxide formation it is sensible to put the reacting groups in the plane of the paper and arranged so that the oxyanion can do an $S_N^2$ displacement.
PROBLEM 9
How could this cyclic compound be used to produce the open-chain compound with correct relative stereochemistry?

Purpose of the problem
Practice at relating the stereochemistry of cyclic and open-chain compounds.

Suggested solution
We should first discover which atoms in the cyclic compound provide which atoms in the product. Numbering the atoms is the easiest way and it shows little change except that C9 has gone and C8 has become an aldehyde.

We need to hydrolyse the ester and the acetal and oxidize the 1,2-diol to cleave the C–C bond between the two OH groups. The stereochemistry at C3 and C7 is unchanged and neither is threatened by any of the reaction conditions.

---

Oxidative cleavage of diols is on p. 443 of the textbook.
**PROBLEM 10**
How would you transform this alkene stereoselectively into either of the diastereoisomers of the amino alcohol?

\[ \text{alkene} \rightarrow \text{OH} \quad \text{NH}\_2 \]

**Purpose of the problem**
A more difficult extension of problem 1.

**Suggested solution**
Opening the epoxide with a nitrogen nucleophile makes one isomer. At least the alkene is symmetrical so it doesn’t matter which end of the epoxide is attacked by the nucleophile. We have chosen azide ion as the nucleophile. You were not asked to make both diastereoisomers so we can stop there.

\[ \text{m-CPBA} \rightarrow \text{OH} \quad \text{NaN}_3 \rightarrow \text{OH} \quad \text{H}_2/\text{Pd/C} \rightarrow \text{NH}\_2 \]

**PROBLEM 11**
Explain the formation of essentially one stereoisomer in this reaction.

**Purpose of the problem**
A more difficult extension of problem 4 with added Felkin-Anh considerations.

**Suggested solution**
The \textit{syn} selectivity of the aldol reactions comes from the chair conformation of the cyclic (Zimmerman-Traxler) transition state. Ignoring the stereochemistry of the aldehyde we have this simplified explanation. The
transition state contains a chair in which the methyl group has no choice but to be axial while the aldehyde’s R substituent chooses to be equatorial.

We have inevitably drawn the syn aldol product as one enantiomer but so far we have no explanation for the control of absolute stereochemistry. The aldehyde itself is a single enantiomer so the two faces of the carbonyl group are diastereotopic and we might expect one would be chosen by the normal Felkin-Anh argument.

To our surprise this is not the preferred isomer. In fact the ‘anti-Felkin’ isomer predominates by about 3:1. The compound is entirely the syn aldol, as predicted, but attack has occurred on the aldehyde in the alternative conformation.

There is an important lesson to be learnt here. The principles we have been explaining are generally true but in any new individual case the result may not follow the principle. This is particularly true of Felkin-Anh control with aldehydes as the small size of the H atom allows other conformations to become relatively favourable.
PROBLEM 12
The following sequences show parts of the syntheses of two different HIV protease inhibitors. What reagents are required for steps 1–4? (For steps 1 and 3, consider carefully how the stereochemistry of the product might be controlled.)

Purpose of the problem
Choosing reagents to achieve desired stereo- and chemoselectivity.

Suggested solution
In step 1, we need to achieve diastereoselectivity during the addition of a nucleophile, CN–, to a carbonyl group adjacent to a stereogenic centre. The question is: do we need chelation control, or just Felkin-Anh control? Drawn out below is the conformation in which the aldehyde would react with cyanide if simple Felkin-Anh control were operating: check for yourself that the product is the correct one (you may need to build a model if you cannot see this easily). No chelation is needed. In step 2, the nitrile is hydrolysed to the acid and the benzyl groups are hydrogenolysed. This has to be the order; hydrogenolysis first risks reducing the nitrile to an amine.

In the second sequence, the nucleophile in step 3 must be a vinyl anion equivalent, maybe vinylmagnesium bromide. Comparison of the relative configuration of this product with the one above it immediately suggests that Felkin-Anh control is not operative here, since the opposite

In fact, this step was carried out with KCN in the presence of a Lewis acid (Me3Al) because the bulky benzyl groups prevent the nitrogen participating in chelation.
diastereoisomer is formed. Drawn below is the expected reactive conformation for a reaction involving chelation control: note that the acidic NH proton must be removed by any basic nucleophile. The outcome is correct: we need to achieve chelation control, so a magnesium counterion is a good choice (Mg$^{2+}$ readily takes part in chelated transition states). The final C=C bond cleavage in step 4 can be achieved by ozonolysis.

Methods for breaking a C=C bond to form a C=O bond are outlined on p. 443 of the textbook.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 34

**PROBLEM 1**
Predict the structure of the product of this Diels-Alder reaction.

```
  OMe  CO₂Me
Me₃SiO  +  ?  \[\text{[4 + 2]}\]
```

**Purpose of the problem**
Can you deal with a moderately complicated Diels-Alder?

**Suggested solution**
The diene is electron-rich and will use its HOMO in the cycloaddition. It will therefore prefer the alkene with the lowest LUMO and that must be the unsaturated ester. Both substituents on the diene direct reaction to the same end. We can predict this from electron donation from either of the oxygen atoms of the diene and in other ways.

The stereochemistry of the alkene (H and CO₂Me *cis*) will be faithfully reproduced in the product. The stereochemistry at the OMe group comes from *endo* attack—we should tuck the ester group underneath (or above—makes no difference) the diene so that it can overlap with the orbitals of the middle two atoms of the diene. If you also said that this product would eliminate methanol on workup so that only the stereochemistry of the ring junction matters, you’d be right.

\[\text{This chemistry is part of a synthesis of the antitumour agent vernolepin by S. Danishefsky and group, J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1976, 98, 3028.}\]
PROBLEM 2
Comment on the difference in rate between these two reactions.

Purpose of the problem
More details of the intramolecular Diels-Alder reaction.

Suggested solution
The dienes are the same, the ring sizes are the same, and the only difference is the presence of a benzene ring in the faster reacting compound. We should draw a mechanism for one of the reactions to see what is happening.

We are making two new rings. The six-membered ring containing an alkene in the product presents no problem. The eight-membered ring with a ketone in it might present a problem, but the ten-membered ring containing a trans alkene is definitely a problem. It is much easier to make medium rings (8- to 14-membered) when there is a cis alkene in the ring and the benzene ring helps there. It also increases the population of conformers with
the ends of their chains close together and probably lowers the LUMO energy by conjugation with the ketone.

**PROBLEM 3**
Justify the stereoselectivity in this intramolecular Diels-Alder reaction.

**Purpose of the problem**
Exploring the stereochemistry of an intramolecular Diels-Alder reaction.

**Suggested solution**
Intramolecular Diels-Alder reactions can give *endo* - or *exo* - products. We should first discover which this is. Drawing the transition state for the *endo* reaction, we find that it is correct—the *endo* product is formed. So electronic factors dominate, perhaps because the dienophile has such a low-energy LUMO and it has two carbonyl groups for secondary orbital overlap with the back of the diene.

PROBLEM 4
Explain the formation of single adducts in these reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Investigating the regio- and stereoselectivity of one inter- and one intramolecular Diels-Alder reaction.

Suggested solution
The stereochemistry of the first reaction is straightforward: it gives the endo product.

The regiochemistry is not quite so simple. The diene has the larger HOMO coefficient at the top end as drawn, so we must deduce that the largest LUMO coefficient in the unsymmetrical quinone is at the top left as drawn. This would result from the electron-donating MeO group making the top carbonyl group and the right-hand alkene less electrophilic, while the bottom carbonyl activates the top end of the left-hand alkene. Or, if you use the mnemonic, this is an ‘ortho’ product.
The second example is intramolecular so the regiochemistry is determined by that alone: the ester linkage between the diene and the dienophile is too short for any variation. This same link ('tether') also forces the dienophile to approach the diene from below. All that remains is the endo/exo question and the diagram shows that the product is endo with the carbonyl group tucked under the back of the diene.

**PROBLEM 5**

Suggest two syntheses of this spirocyclic ketone from the starting materials shown. Neither starting material is available.

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of synthesis (chapters 24 and 28) with some cycloaddition. Helping you to see that there are alternative ways of making six-membered rings.

**Suggested solution**

The most obvious disconnection is of the α,β-unsaturated ketone with an aldol reaction in mind. This reveals a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound. Direct disconnection to one of the starting materials is now possible and each can be made by a Diels-Alder reaction.
The Diels-Alder reaction has the right (‘para’) regioselectivity, especially if we use a Lewis acid catalyst such as SnCl₄, and we shall need a non-basic specific enol equivalent for the alkylation: an enamine will do fine.

The other route demands a different disconnection of the keto-aldehyde plus one further aldol disconnection. The starting material is more easily made by Birch reduction than by a Diels-Alder reaction.

The Birch reduction gives the enol ether of the ketone and demands careful hydrolysis to avoid the alkene moving into conjugation with the ketone. The aldol reaction requires some kind of control—perhaps the silyl enol ether of acetone will do. Now we need a reagent for ‘–CHO’ that will do conjugate addition. The most obvious choices are cyanide ion or nitromethane. The last step is the same as in the first synthesis.
**PROBLEM 6**

Draw mechanisms for these reactions and explain the stereochemistry.

\[
\text{1. Ph} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{N-O}} \quad \text{2. LiAlH}_4
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

Exploration of stereochemical control by 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition reactions. Revision of the importance of cyclic compounds in stereochemistry.

**Suggested solution**

The nitrile oxide adds in one step to the cis alkene to give a single diastereoisomer of the 1,3-dipolar cycloadduct. This is a [3+2] cycloaddition with the three-carbon dipole supplying four electrons. The two methyl groups on the alkene start cis and remain so in the adduct.

The first reduction must be of the imine as it is stereoselective, with hydride being transferred to the face of the five-membered ring opposite to the methyl groups. N–O reduction follows.

If reduction of the N–O bond occurred first, we should expect little control in the reduction of the open chain imine.
PROBLEM 7
Give mechanisms for these reactions and explain the regio- and stereochemical control (or lack of it!). Note that MnO₂ oxidizes allylic alcohols to enones.

Purpose of the problem
Selectivity and application of a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition.

Suggested solution
The first thing to do is to sort out the mechanism for the cycloaddition. The nitrone uses its LUMO (the \(\pi^*\) of the C=N bond) to react with the HOMO of the diene whose largest coefficient is at the end away from the phenyl group (this is where an electrophile would react). There is no selectivity as there is no conjugation and no \(exo/endo\) selection.

Reduction with zinc cleaves the N–O bond and MnO₂ oxidizes the allylic alcohol to the enone. At this point there is only one chiral centre so the mixture of diastereoisomers has become one compound. Conjugate addition of the amine gives the new ring.

The stereochemistry is more difficult to explain. The product will choose a \(trans\) ring junction (the nitrogen can invert and \(trans\) 6,6-ring fusions are

The 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition was developed by J. J. Tufariello and R. G. Gatrone, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1978, 2753.
more stable), but that means the phenyl group has to be axial, which is presumably not the more stable arrangement. It seems likely that this is the kinetic product. It looks as though the ring closes with the best overlap between the nitrogen lone pair and the $\pi^*$ orbital of the enone to give a cis ring junction that equilibrates by pyramidal inversion at nitrogen to the more stable trans ring junction. Axial phenyl is not so bad here as there is only one 1,3-diaxial interaction to the phenyl group, and even that is just with a hydrogen atom.

![Chemical structure](image1.png)

**PROBLEM 8**

Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and explain the stereo- and regiochemistry.

![Chemical structure](image2.png)

**Purpose of the problem**

Two non-routine Diels-Alder-type reactions.

**Suggested solution**

The reaction is clearly a cycloaddition but at first sight the selectivity is all wrong. The puzzle is solved when we realize that this is a reverse electron demand Diels-Alder. The diene is very electron-deficient with its two conjugated carbonyl groups so the dienophile needs to be electron-rich. It is not very electron rich as drawn, but its enol is. The first formed adduct loses carbon dioxide in a reverse cycloaddition.

![Chemical structure](image3.png)
PROBLEM 9
Photochemical cycloaddition of these two compounds is claimed to give the
diastereoisomer shown. The chemists who did this work claimed that the
stereochemistry of the adduct is simply proved by its conversion into a lactone on
reduction. Comment on the validity of this deduction and explain the
stereochemistry of the cycloaddition.

Purpose of the problem

Suggested solution
Either of the two starting materials could absorb the light to provide the
SOMO for the cycloaddition. This does not affect the stereochemistry of the
reaction. There is no \textit{endo} effect in [2 + 2] photocycloadditions so the
molecules simply come together with the rings arranged in an \textit{exo} fashion to
give the least steric hindrance.

The stereochemistry is easy to explain as the molecule is folded in such a
way that only the bottom face of the carbonyl group is open to nucleophilic
attack. The oxyanion produced can immediately cyclize to form the lactone.
Clearly this is possible only if the O\textsuperscript{−} group is up but also only if the CO\textsubscript{2}Me
groups are on the same side of the middle four-membered ring as the O\textsuperscript{−}
group. The formation of the lactone does indeed prove the stereochemistry.
Thioketones, with a C=S bond, are not usually stable. However, this thioketone is quite stable and undergoes reaction with maleic anhydride to give an addition product. Comment on the stability of the thioketone, the mechanism of the reaction, and the stereochemistry of the product.

Purpose of the problem

Exploration of a new structure, revision of aromaticity, and an encounter with [8 + 2] cycloadditions.

Suggested solution

This particular thioketone is stable because the C=S bond is very polarized by delocalization making the seven-membered ring an aromatic cation with six electrons in it. You can represent this in various ways.

The cycloaddition uses maleic anhydride as a two-electron component with a low LUMO. Although in principle this could undergo a Diels-Alder reaction with one of the dienes in the thioketone, it prefers to react by including the sulfur atom, using eight electrons in a component with a high HOMO coefficient. The tricyclic product is clearly folded back on itself so that the triene in the seven-membered ring and the carbonyl groups in the anhydride are close to each other. From the outcome, it seems there must be an endo effect in this [8 + 2] cycloaddition.
PROBLEM 11

This unsaturated alcohol is perfectly stable until it is oxidized with Cr(VI): it then cyclizes to the product shown. Explain.

Purpose of the problem

Discovery of a common effect in intramolecular cycloadditions.

Suggested solution

The starting material might undergo a Diels-Alder reaction but the diene and the dienophile are poorly matched. Both have high energy HOMOs and there isn’t a low energy LUMO in sight. Once the enone is formed, the alkene becomes electron-deficient: now the energies match well and cycloaddition is fast. The stereochemistry comes from an endo arrangement.
PROBLEM 12
Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the stereochemistry.

Purpose of the problem
Looking at [2 + 2] cycloadditions of ketenes.

Suggested solution
Treatment of acid chlorides with tertiary amines produces ketenes. In this case an intramolecular [2 + 2] cycloaddition is possible. The stereochemistry is trivial: a cis ring junction is the only one possible.

If a more reactive alkene (in this case the electron-donating O makes the enol ether more reactive) is available, the ketene adds to that instead. Note that the alkene must be present as the ketene is generated. The mechanism and part of the stereochemistry are simple. Because the cyclic alkene has cis stereochemistry, the two hydrogens on the six-membered ring must be cis in the product. The regiochemistry arises because the alkene is an enol ether and the large coefficient in its HOMO interacts with the central atom of the ketene, the one with the larger LUMO coefficient.
The stereochemistry at the remaining centre comes from the way the two molecules approach one another. The two components are orthogonal and the dotted lines in the middle diagram below show how the new bonds are formed. The carbonyl group of the ketene will prefer to be in the middle of the ring and the side chain of the ketene will bend down away from the top ring. These [2 + 2] thermal cycloadditions normally give an all cis product.

Suggested solutions for Chapter 35

PROBLEM 1
Give mechanisms for these steps, commenting on the regioselectivity of the pericyclic step and the different regioselectivity of the two metals.

![Mechanisms](image)

Purpose of the problem
A gentle introduction to an electrocyclic reaction without stereoselectivity.

Suggested solution
Grignard reagents generally prefer direct to conjugate addition, especially with unsaturated aldehydes. MnO₂ specializes in oxidizing allylic alcohols and is the gentle oxidant we need to produce the unstable enone.

![Mechanisms](image)

The pericyclic process comes next and it is a Nazarov reaction (p. 927 of the textbook), a conrotatory electrocyclic closure of a pentadienyl cation to give a cyclopentenyl cation. There is no stereochemistry and the only regiochemistry is the position of the alkene at the end of the reaction. It prefers the more substituted side of the ring.

![Mechanisms](image)
The final cuprate addition goes in a conjugate fashion as we should expect as this is what Cu(I) cuprates do. The cis 5,5 ring junction is much preferred to trans and can equilibrate on work-up by enolization.

**PROBLEM 2**

Predict the product of this reaction.

**Purpose of the problem**

A gentle introduction to a sigmatropic reaction without stereo- or regioselectivity.

**Suggested solution**

This is a classic Claisen [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement sequence starting with an allylic alcohol and forming a vinyl ether by acetal (or in this case orthoester) exchange. The reaction is very trans selective.

This product was used in a synthesis of chrysanthemic acid by Jacqueline Ficini and Jean d'Angelo: *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1976, 2441.
PROBLEM 3
Give mechanisms for this alternative synthesis of two fused five-membered rings.

Purpose of the problem
Exploring another aspect of the Nazarov cyclization.

Suggested solution
The first stage is an aliphatic Friedel-Crafts reaction with an acylium ion attacking the alkene.

Next, a Nazarov reaction catalysed by a different Lewis acid closes the five-membered ring and puts the alkene in the only place it can go. The electrocyclic step is conrotatory but that has no meaning with this achiral product.

PROBLEM 4
Explain what is going on here.

Purpose of the problem
Two pericyclic reactions: a sigmatropic shift and a cycloaddition in one reaction scheme.

Suggested solution
The aromatic anion of cyclopentenone displaces tosylate from the alkyl group and then a [1,5] hydrogen shift gives the first product. Such a shift is allowed suprafacially on the ring.

Now there is an intramolecular Diels-Alder reaction requiring a high temperature because the dienophile is not activated. The stereochemistry is not obvious but there is no endo effect so the molecule folds to give the new five-membered ring a cis junction with the old.

**PROBLEM 5**

A tricyclic hydroxyketone was made by hydrolysis of a bis silyl ether. Further reaction gave a new compound. Explain these reactions including the stereochemistry. The diene has the proton NMR spectrum: $\delta = 6.06$ (1H, dd, $J = 10.3, 12.1$), $6.23$ (1H, dd, $J = 10.3, 14.7$), $6.31$ (1H, d, $J = 14.7$), and $7.32$ (1H, d, $J = 12.1$). Does this agree with the structure given?

**Purpose of the problem**

Relating the material of this chapter to that of previous chapters with some revision of basic mechanisms.

**Suggested solution**

The first sequence of reactions is simple. Protonation of the enol ether occurs on the convex face so the OH group is pushed into the endo side. Hydrolysis gives the hydroxy-ketone and the tosylate.

The tosylate is displaced with inversion by the excellent $S_n2$ nucleophile PhS$^-$ and reduction of the ketone from the exo face followed by acetylation gives the key intermediate.
Heating this product leads to a retro Diels-Alder reaction: cyclopentadiene is released and a cyclobutene is formed stereospecifically \textit{trans}. This now decomposes by a four-electron conrotatory electrocyclic reaction that could give either the \textit{E,E}- or the \textit{Z,Z}- diene.

The NMR spectrum clearly shows that the \textit{E,E}-diene is formed. The coupling constants for the simple doublets must be for the terminal hydrogens and 14.7 Hz is definitely a \textit{trans} coupling. You might think 12.1 is a bit small for the other \textit{trans} coupling as it is on the low side but the alkene has an electronegative substituent (OAc) and this reduces $J$.

\begin{itemize}
\item It's worth noting for future reference that enol ethers (and enol esters) often have surprisingly small alkene coupling constants.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{PROBLEM 6}

Treatment of this imine with base followed by an acidic work-up gives a cyclic product with two phenyl groups \textit{cis} to one another. Why is this?

\textbf{Purpose of the problem}

An unusual example of an electrocyclic reaction on an anion.

\textbf{Suggested solution}

The proton from the middle of the molecule is removed to give an anion stabilized by two nitrogens and three phenyl groups. A six-electron
electrocyclic reaction closes the five-membered ring and this must be disrotatory, moving both phenyl groups up (or down).

PROBLEM 7
This problem concerns the structure and chemistry of an unsaturated nine-membered ring. Comment on the structure. Explain its different behaviour under thermal or photochemical conditions.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of aromaticity and two alternative electrocyclic reactions.

Suggested solution
The amine has eight electrons in alkenes and two on the nitrogen atom making ten in all. It could be aromatic with $4n + 2$ electrons ($n = 2$). The two reactions are clearly electrocyclic and must be disrotatory to get cis ring junctions, the only possible arrangement for two flat rings. Thermally this means a six electron process, but photochemically an eight electron process is all right. The nitrogen does not appear to be involved in either reaction.

This was an investigation into the aromaticity of the starting material by A. G. Anastassiou and J. H. Gebran, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1969, 5239.
PROBLEM 8
Propose a mechanism for this reaction that accounts for the stereochemistry of the product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{heat} \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{H} & \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem
Another electrocyclic/cycloaddition combination for you to work out.

Suggested solution
The three-membered ring opens using the lone pair on nitrogen in a four-electron conrotatory electrocyclic process. One phenyl group must rotate inwards and the other outwards. Then a cycloaddition of the four-electron 1,3-dipole onto the two-electron dienophile goes without change of stereochemistry. The ester groups remain \( \text{cis} \) and the phenyls must be one up and one down.

PROBLEM 9
Treatment of this amine with base at low temperature gives an unstable anion that isomerizes to another anion above \(-35 ^\circ\text{C}\). Aqueous work-up gives a bicyclic amine. What are the two anions? Explain the stereochemistry of the product. In the NMR spectrum of the product the two protons in the grey box appear as an ABX system with \( J_{AX} 15.4 \text{ Hz} \). Comment.

Purpose of the problem

An unusual electrocyclic reaction on an anion with stereochemistry and NMR revision.

Suggested solution

The first anion A is formed by removal of the only possible proton: one from the NCH$_2$ group. This anion might be considered aromatic (six electrons from the three alkenes, two from N and two from the anion) but it is clearly unstable as it closes in an electrocyclic reaction at $> -35 \ ^\circ\text{C}$. This is a six-electron process and must therefore be disrotatory. The rotating hydrogens are shown on the structure of A. It is essential that the 5,5 ring closure must be cis and that demands a disrotatory reaction. Both anions A and B are extensively delocalized and it is a matter of choice where you draw the anion.

Anion B is protonated by water with preservation of the right hand aromatic ring. The final product is a chiral molecule having no plane of symmetry so the boxed CH$_2$ group is diastereotopic with $J_{AB}$ 15.4 Hz. This is larger than usual because of the $\pi$-contribution: a neighbouring $\pi$-bond increases $J$ by about 2 Hz.

---

This study was originally aimed at finding out the nature of the starting material, A. G. Anastassiou and group, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.*, 1981, 647.
PROBLEM 10
How would you make the starting material for these reactions? Treatment of the anhydride with butanol gives an ester that in turn gives two inseparable compounds on heating. On treatment with an amine, an easily separable mixture of an acidic and a neutral compound is formed. What are the components of the first mixture and how are they formed?

Purpose of the problem
Exploration of alternative conrotatory openings of a cyclobutene.

Suggested solution
The starting material is made by a photochemical [2 + 2] cycloaddition of acetylene and maleic anhydride. Treatment with butanol and base gives the monoester because, after butanol has attacked once, the product is the anion of a carboxylic acid and cannot be attacked again by the nucleophile.

Heat opens the cyclobutene in a conrotatory four-electron electrocyclic reaction. As the two groups are cis on the cyclobutene, one must rotate outwards and one inwards. The two groups are similar but not the same so there is little selection and both products are formed.
Treatment with the tertiary amine forms the anions of the carboxylic acids. The one from B can do a conjugate addition to the unsaturated ester and form a lactone but that of A is too far away and cannot react.

![Chemical structure image]

**PROBLEM 11**

Treatment of this keto-aldehyde (which exists largely as an enol) with the oxidizing agent DDQ (a quinone—see p. 764 of the textbook) gives an unstable compound that turns into the product shown. Explain the reactions and comment on the stereochemistry.

![Chemical structure image]

**Purpose of the problem**

Exploration of a less well defined pericyclic sequence.

**Suggested solution**

DDQ oxidizes the position between the two carbonyl groups to insert an alkene conjugated with both. We can now put in some stereochemistry as the three-membered ring must be cis fused to both six-membered rings. The diene undergoes electrocyclic ring opening to form a seven-membered ring. This is a six-electron and therefore disrotatory reaction and the two bonds to the old three-membered ring are therefore allowed to rotate inwards—the only rotation that can give the product.

![Chemical structure image]
**PROBLEM 12**

Explain the following observations. Heating this phenol brings it into rapid equilibrium with a bicyclic compound that does not spontaneously give the final product unless treated with acid.

![Chemical structure](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

A sigmatropic rearrangement involving a three-membered ring. The \(\sigma\)-bonds in three-membered rings are strained and more reactive than normal \(\sigma\)-bonds and take part readily in pericyclic reactions.

**Suggested solution**

The first step is a Cope rearrangement—a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement made favourable in this case because the \(\sigma\)-bond that is broken is in a three-membered ring. The product cannot go directly to an aromatic compound as that would require a [1,3] (or a [1,7] depending on how you count) hydrogen shift. Such a shift would have to be antarafacial on the \(\pi\)-system and that is impossible in such a rigid structure.

![Chemical structure](image)

The aromatization can happen instead by an ionic mechanism. If the extended enol is protonated at the remote end, it can lose a proton from the ring junction to reform the phenol.

![Chemical structure](image)

---

This reaction was carried out as part of a mechanistic study by E. N. Marvell and S. W. Almond, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1979, 2777.
PROBLEM 13

Treatment of cyclohexa-1,3-dione with this acetylenic amine gives a stable enamine in good yield. Refluxing the enamine in nitrobenzene gives a pyridine after a remarkable series of reactions. Fill in the details, give mechanisms for the reaction, structures for the intermediates, and suitable explanations for each pericyclic step. A mechanism is not required for the last step as nitrobenzene simply acts as an oxidant.

Purpose of the problem

Practice in unravelling complicated reaction sequences involving pericyclic steps.

Suggested solution

The formation of the enamine requires only patient adding and subtracting of protons.

The cascade of reactions in hot nitrobenzene starts with a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement that is unusual in that it forms an allene but is otherwise straightforward. To get to the next intermediate, we must go from the ketone to the enol and back again, but with the alkene now in conjugation.
Now we can transfer a proton from nitrogen to the middle of the allene. This is formally a [1,5]-H shift and is, of course, allowed, but it may be an ionic reaction as nitrogen is involved. This gives a diene that can twist round for a six-electron electrocyclic reaction. This is no doubt disrotatory but we can’t tell as no stereochemistry is involved.

PROBLEM 1
Rearrangements by numbers: just draw a mechanism for each reaction.

Purpose of the problem
This problem is just to help you acquire the skill of tracking down rearrangements by numbering (arbitrarily) the atoms in the starting material and working out where they’ve gone in the product.

Suggested solution
The first reaction is the preparation of Corey’s ‘OBO’ protecting group for carboxylic acids. The Lewis acid complexes one of the oxygen atoms and all the atoms of the starting material survive in the product. Atoms 3 and 5 are easy to identify in the product and it doesn’t much matter which of the CH₂ groups you label 1, 2, and 4. Of course you may use a completely different numbering system and that’s fine. The dotted lines show which new bonds are made and which old bonds are broken.
There is more than one reasonable mechanism: here are two possibilities, the second being perhaps the better.

The second reaction is even easier to work out. Atoms 2 and 3 are easy to find and they identify 1 and 4 in the product.

As the compounds are acetals we must use oxonium ions and not S_N2 reactions. Loss of BF_3 and rotation of the last intermediate gives the product.

The third reaction involves a cyclization. Atoms 1 and 7 clearly make the new bond and the rest of the atoms fit into place except that the bromine has gone and the alkene has moved from 7/8 to 8/9. Zinc inserts oxidatively into the C–Br bond and the mechanism follows from the nucleophilic nature of the organometallic compound.
PROBLEM 2

Explain this series of reactions.

Purpose of the problem

Working out the stereochemistry and mechanism of the Beckmann rearrangement.

Suggested solution

The first reaction forms the oxime by the usual mechanism (chapter 11). This reaction is under thermodynamic control so the OH group will bend away from the aryl substituent. Then we have the Beckmann rearrangement itself (p. 958 of the textbook). The group anti to the OH group migrates from C to N and that gives the product after rehydration and adjustment of protons.

PROBLEM 3
Draw mechanisms for the reactions and structures for the intermediates. Explain the stereochemistry, especially of the reactions involving boron. Why was 9-BBN chosen as the hydroborating agent?

Purpose of the problem
Rearrangements involving boron and a ring-closing rearrangement of sorts plus stereochemistry.

Suggested solution
The starting material is symmetrical so it doesn’t matter which face of which alkene you attack. The only important things are that boron binds to the more nucleophilic end of the alkene and that R₂B and H are added cis. Alkaline H₂O₂ makes the hydroperoxide anion (HOO⁻) which attacks boron.

The mesylate cyclizes in aqueous base. The more nucleophilic end of the remaining alkene displaces the mesylate with inversion to make the cis ring junction much preferred by the 5,5 fused system. Water adds to the tertiary cation to give the next intermediate.
Elimination of the alcohol (E1 of course as it is tertiary) gives the alkene and a repeat of the hydroboration from the outside (convex face) of the folded molecule gives the final alcohol with five new stereogenic centres.

9-BBN was chosen because it is very large and reinforces the natural electronic preference of boron to bind to the less substituted end of the alkene with an extra steric effect. It also has bridgehead atoms bound to boron and they make poor migrating groups, forcing the migration of the third B substituent.

**PROBLEM 4**

It is very difficult to prepare three-membered lactones. One attempted preparation, by the epoxidation of di-t-butyl ketone, gave an unstable compound with an IR stretch at 1900 cm⁻¹. This compound decomposed rapidly to a four-membered ring lactone that could be securely identified. Do you think they made the three-membered ring?

**Purpose of the problem**

Rearrangements as a proof of structure?
Suggested solution

The expected three-membered lactone would have a very high carbonyl stretching frequency because of ring strain. Three-membered cyclic ketones have carbonyl stretches at about 1815 cm⁻¹ and lactones have higher frequencies than ketones. So it might be the lactone. If it is, we should find a mechanism for the ring expansion to the four-membered lactone isolated. There is a good mechanism involving migration of a methyl group from one of the t-butyl groups. The general conclusion is that R. Wheeland and P. D. Bartlett did indeed make the first α-lactone.

PROBLEM 5
Suggest a mechanism for this rearrangement.

Purpose of the problem
Working out the mechanism of a new rearrangement.

Suggested solution
The starting material is an enamine and will react with bromine in the manner of an enol. Addition of hydroxide gives the starting material for the rearrangement. Notice that the nitrogen atom migrates rather than the carbon atom and this suggests that it does so by participation. If you numbered the atoms you would have found that the gem-dimethyl group and the nitrogen atom give the answer away immediately.
PROBLEM 6
A single enantiomer of the epoxide below rearranges with Lewis acid catalysis to give a single enantiomer of the product. Suggest a mechanism and comment on the stereochemistry.

Purpose of the problem
An unusual group migrates and stereochemistry gives a clue to mechanism.

Suggested solution
The mechanism for the reaction must involve Lewis acid complexation of the epoxide oxygen atom, cation formation, and migration of CO$_2$Et. This last point may surprise you but inspection of the product shows that CO$_2$Et is indeed bonded to the other carbon of what was the epoxide.

Although something like this must happen, our mechanism raises as many questions as it answers:

- Why does that bond of the epoxide open? *Answer.* Because the tertiary benzylic cation is much more stable than a secondary cation with a CO$_2$Et substituent.
- Why does CO$_2$Et migrate rather than the H atom? *Answer.* For the same reason! If the H atom migrates, the product would be a cation (or at least a partial positive charge would appear in the transition state) next to the CO$_2$Et group.
Surely the carbocation intermediate is planar and the product would be racemic? Answer. This was the purpose of the investigation. One chiral centre is lost in the reaction so only absolute stereochemistry is relevant. One explanation is that the cation is short-lived and that bond rotation is fast in the direction shown (the CO$_2$Et group is already down and has to rotate by only 30° to get to the right position for migration). The other is that migration is concerted with epoxide opening. This looks unlikely as the overlap is poor.

![Mechanism of carbocation formation](image)

**PROBLEM 7**

The ‘pinacol’ dimer of cyclobutanone rearranges with expansion of one of the rings in acid solution to give a cyclopentanone fused spiro to the remaining four-membered ring. Draw a mechanism for this reaction. Reduction of the ketone gives an alcohol that rearranges to a bicyclic alkene also in acid. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and suggest why the rearrangements happen.

![Mechanism of pinacol rearrangement](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

An illustration of the easy rearrangement of four-membered rings to form five-membered rings.

**Suggested solution**

The first reaction is a simple pinacol rearrangement. The diol is symmetrical so protonation of either alcohol and migration of either C–C bond give the product.

![Mechanism of pinacol rearrangement](image)
Reduction to the alcohol is trivial and then acid treatment allows the loss of water and ring expansion of the remaining four-membered ring. You may well have drawn this as a stepwise process. Elimination gives the most substituted alkene. Both rearrangements occur very easily because of the relief of strain in going from a four- to a five-membered ring.

![Diagram of the reduction process]

**PROBLEM 8**

Give the products of Baeyer-Villiger rearrangements on these compounds, with reasons.

![Compounds for Problem 8]

**Purpose of the problem**

Prediction in rearrangements is as important as elsewhere and the Baeyer-Villiger is one of the more predictable rearrangements.

**Suggested solution**

There are a few minor traps here that we’re sure you’ve avoided. The first compound has two carbonyl groups but esters don’t do the Baeyer-Villiger rearrangement so only the ketone reacts. The more substituted carbon migrates with retention of configuration. The aldehyde rearranges with migration of the benzene ring in preference to the hydrogen atom. The last compound is $C_2$ symmetric so it doesn’t matter which group you migrate as long as you ensure retention of configuration. Take care when drawing the product as the migrating group has to be drawn the other way up.

![Compounds for Suggested solution]
PROBLEM 9
Suggest mechanisms for these rearrangements, explaining the stereochemistry in the second reaction.

Purpose of the problem
Unravelling one rearrangement after another with some stereochemistry.

Suggested solution
The first reaction is a simple ring expansion. The amine is not involved, presumably because it is fully protonated. The final loss of proton might be concerted with the migration as this would help explain the position of the alkene in the product.

The second reaction starts with bromination of the alkene and interception of the bromonium ion by the amine. Only when bromine adds to the opposite face of the alkene can the amine cyclize so this reaction resembles iodolactonization. Probably the bromination is reversible.
Finally, the weak base bicarbonate ($\text{HCO}_3^-$) is enough to remove a proton from the nitrogen atom and allow participation in nitrogen migration by displacement of bromide. This alkene is formed because the C–N' bond to tertiary carbon is broken preferentially.

**PROBLEM 10**

Give mechanisms for these reactions that explain any selectivity.

**Purpose of the problem**

To show that ring expansion from three- to four-membered rings and ring contraction the other way are about as easy.

**Suggested solution**

The first mechanism is a pinacol rearrangement and the compound is symmetrical so it doesn’t matter which alcohol is protonated. Both three- and four-membered rings are strained and the $\sigma$-bonds are more reactive than normal (they have a high energy HOMO). This makes ring contraction an easy reaction even though the strain is not relieved.

The second example looks at first to be a similar pinacol rearrangement. But the resulting ketone cannot easily be transformed into the product.
Breaking open one of the three-membered rings gets us off to a better start. This gives a hydroxy-ketone that can rearrange in a pinacol fashion with ring expansion of the remaining cyclopropane.

PROBLEM 11
Attempts to produce the acid chloride from this unusual amino acid by treatment with SOCl₂ gave instead a β-lactam. What has happened?

Purpose of the problem
To show that ring expansion in small rings is even easier in heterocycles because of participation.

Suggested solution
The formation of the acid chloride might go to completion or it might be that some intermediate on the way to the acid chloride rearranges. We shall use an intermediate. Whichever you use, it is participation by nitrogen that starts the ring expansion going, though the next intermediate is very unstable. When chloride attacks the bicyclic cation, it cleaves the most strained bond, the one common to two three-membered rings.
PROBLEM 12

Treatment of this hydroxy-ketone with base followed by acid gives the enone shown. What is the structure of intermediate A, how is it formed, and what is the mechanism of its conversion to the final product?

Purpose of the problem

Fragmentation may be followed by another reaction.

Suggested solution

Removal of the hydroxyl proton by the base promotes a fragmentation that is a reverse aldol reaction. It works because the C–C bond being broken is in a four-membered ring. Then an acid catalysed aldol reaction in the normal direction and elimination via the enol (E1cB) allows the formation of the much more stable six-membered ring.
PROBLEM 13
Just to check your skill at finding fragmentations by numbers, draw the mechanism for each of these one-step fragmentations in basic solution with acidic work-up.

Purpose of the problem
As the problem says, to help you unravel simple fragmentations.

Suggested solution
We can identify the six-membered ring in both compounds—the sequence 1–6 is clearly the same in both with a side chain at C3. The fragmentation is easy enough too—the OH proton is removed and the mesylate must be the leaving group so the groups doing the ‘pushing’ and ‘pulling’ are clear from the start.

The two CO₂H groups in the second product might cause a moment’s concern but one is on a –CH₂–CH₂– side chain and the other is at a branch point and we can soon fill in the rest of the numbers.
Clearly the OH proton is removed and one of the carboxyls is a leaving group. The stereochemistry disappears in the fragmentation but it is important, as the conformational drawing shows. One lone pair on the O⁻, the bond being fragmented, and the bond to the leaving group are all parallel (shown in thick lines).

**PROBLEM 14**

Explain why both these tricyclic ketones fragment to the same diastereoisomer of the same cyclo-octane.

**Purpose of the problem**

Fragmentations linked to ester hydrolysis.

**Suggested solution**

It is obvious from the reactions that two features have disappeared from the starting materials: an ester group (OAc) and a four-membered ring. The ester can be hydrolysed by KOH and the four-membered ring disappears in the fragmentation. As usual, draw the mechanism first and worry about the stereochemistry later. For the first compound, this sequence gives the enolate of a diketone and hence the diketone itself.
The second compound follows the same sequence and a different enolate emerges, but it is simply another enolate of the same ketone. Both compounds give the same basic structure.

But what about stereochemistry? We are not told the stereochemistry of the starting materials but know that 5,4 fused rings must have a cis ring junction. This junction survives in the first compound so the stereochemistry must have changed. The second compound gives us the clue as to how. When it tautomerizes to the ketone it will select the more stable trans 8,5 ring junction. In the same way, the enolate from the first sequence is in equilibrium under the reaction conditions with all the other enolates of the same ketone, including those at ring junctions. This is a stereotype selective reaction.
PROBLEM 15
Suggest a mechanism for this fragmentation and explain the stereochemistry of the alkenes in the product. This is a tricky problem, but find the mechanism and the stereochemistry will follow.

Purpose of the problem
Probably the most beautiful application of fragmentation yet by a true genius of chemistry, Albert Eschenmoser.

Suggested solution
The tosylate is obviously the leaving group, the two oxygens in the ring must become the ester group, and the CO$_2^-$ must leave as CO$_2$. All that remains is to trace a pathway from CO$_2^-$ to OTs via one of the ring oxygens using parallel bonds. Though you could draw a mechanism for this double fragmentation, it is not convincing. The only electrons anti-parallel to the C–OTs bond are those in the ring junction bond and the equatorial lone pair on one of the ring oxygens. Marking these with heavy lines, we carry out the first fragmentation. We’ve also drawn in the hydrogen that ends up on the alkene so you can see clearly where the trans geometry comes from.

The second fragmentation is easier to see if we redraw the intermediate so that we can see which groups are antiparallel. A conformational drawing also reveals the correct alkene geometry.
PROBLEM 16
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and explain why the molecule is prepared to abandon a stable six-membered ring for a larger ring.

Purpose of the problem
A simple example of fragmentation used to create a medium size (11-membered) ring.

Suggested solution
The strong base removes the proton from the OH group and the oxyanion attacks one of the carbonyl groups (they are the same). This intermediate might decompose back to starting materials but it can also fragment with the loss of an enolate. The product is then an ester, and protonation of the enolate completes the reaction. The eleven-membered ring is more stable than usual because of the benzene ring (see problem 2, chapter 34), and because the ester does not suffer from cross-ring interactions in its favoured s-trans conformation.

J. R. Mahajan and H. de Carvalho, 
*Synthesis*, 1979, 518.
PROBLEM 17
Give mechanisms for these reactions, comment on the fragmentation.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of conjugate addition of enols, another ring expansion with an enolate as leaving group and an interesting piece of stereochemistry.

Suggested solution
The first step is enamine formation and the second is conjugate addition. This appears to lead to a dead end as we cannot find a way to make the intermediate from the product.

The answer is to exchange the enamine of the ketone with the enamine of the aldehyde. Under the conditions, enamine formation is reversible and
there are various ways you could draw details. Cyclization of this compound now gives the intermediate we are looking for.

The last two diagrams show where the stereochemistry comes from. The final product has a chair six-membered ring. The 1,3-bridge on the bottom of this ring must be diaxial or it cannot reach round. The pyrrolidine is equatorial and the five-membered ring must be cis fused. No doubt the stereochemistry as well as the intermediates are under thermodynamic control.

Finally the fragmentation itself. Methylation of the nitrogen makes it into a leaving group and addition of hydroxide to the ketone provides the electronic push. Notice that the C–N' bond, the C–C bond being fragmented, and a lone pair on the O' group are all parallel. The stereochemistry is already there in the intermediate.

**PROBLEM 18**
Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the alkene geometry in the first case. Do you consider that they are fragmentations?
**Purpose of the problem**

Simple fragmentations involving the opening of three-membered rings.

**Suggested solution**

The first reaction is a fragmentation without any ‘push’ but that is all right because the bond that is being broken is in a three-membered ring. You may have drawn a concerted mechanism or a stepwise one with a cation as intermediate. Either may be correct. The stereochemistry of the alkene is thermodynamically controlled.

![Diagram of first reaction with HBr and HBrO3 reactions](image1)

The second reaction is base-catalysed and starts with the hydrolysis of the ester by NaOH. This fragmentation also needs ‘push’, though only a three-membered ring is being broken, because the leaving group is an enolate, nowhere near as electron-withdrawing as the water molecule or the carbocation in the first example. Are they fragmentations? In both cases a C–C bond is being broken but we would understand if you felt the first was not strictly a fragmentation, particularly if it goes stepwise. Neither reaction breaks the molecule into three pieces and the terminology is merely a matter of opinion.

![Diagram of second reaction with NaOH and NaOAc reactions](image2)
PROBLEM 19
What steps would be necessary to carry out an Eschenmoser fragmentation on this ketone, and what products would be formed?

Purpose of the problem
Revision of an important and complex reaction involving fragmentation.

Suggested solution
The Eschenmoser fragmentation (p. 965 of the textbook) uses the tosylhydrazone of an α,β-epoxy-ketone. The epoxide can be made with alkaline hydrogen peroxide and the tosylhydrazone needs just tosylhydrazine to form what is essentially an imine. Then the fun can begin. The stereochemistry doesn’t matter for once.

The fragmentation is initiated with base that removes the proton from the NHTs group. This anion fragments the molecule one way and then the oxyanion fragments it the other way with nitrogen gas and Ts⁻ as leaving groups. The product is an acetylenic aldehyde or ketone.
PROBLEM 20
Revision content. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions to explain the stereochemistry.

Purpose of the problem
Rearrangements and a fragmentation.

Suggested solution
The ring opening and the rearrangement cannot be concerted because the group on the ‘wrong’ side of the molecule migrates. There must be a cationic intermediate. In contrast, attack of bromide occurs stereospecifically from the side opposite the migrating group, so this is presumably concerted with the rearrangement.

The second reaction is a fragmentation. Silver(I) is an excellent Lewis acid for halogens and probably produces a secondary carbocation intermediate. Push from the OH group completes the fragmentation.

As it happens the starting epoxide is that of natural α-pinene so it and the product are single enantiomers. P. H. Boyle et al., J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun., 1971, 395.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 37

PROBLEM 1
Give a mechanism for the formation of this silylated ene-diol and explain why the Me₃SiCl is necessary.

Purpose of the problem
Reminder of an important radical reaction.

Suggested solution
This is an acyloin condensation linking radicals derived from esters by electron donation from a dissolving metal (here sodium). If the esters can form enolates, the addition of Me₃SiCl protects against that problem by removing the MeO⁻ by-product.

The first product is a very electrophilic 1,2-dione and it accepts electrons from sodium atoms even more readily than do the original esters. The product is an ene diolate that is also silylated under the reaction conditions.

PROBLEM 2
Heating the diazonium salt below in the presence of methyl acrylate gives a reasonable yield of a chloroacid. Why is this unlikely to be nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the $S_{N}1$ mechanism (p. 520 of the textbook)? Suggest an alternative mechanism that explains the regioselectivity.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{N}_2 \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \quad \text{heat} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of nucleophilic aromatic substitution with diazonium salts and contrasting cations and radicals.

**Suggested solution**
The cation mechanism is perfectly reasonable as far as the diazonium salt is concerned but it will not do for the alkene. Conjugated esters are electrophilic and not nucleophilic alkenes. Even if it were to attack the aryl cation, we should find the reverse regioselectivity.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{N}_2 \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The only way to produce the observed product is to decompose the diazonium salt homolytically. To do this we can draw the salt as a covalent compound or transfer one electron from the chloride ion to the diazonium salt. The other product would be a chlorine radical. Addition to the alkene gives the more stable radical which abstracts chlorine from the diazonium salt and keeps the chain going.
**PROBLEM 3**
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and comment on the ring size formed. What is the minor product likely to be?

---

**Purpose of the problem**
Activated alkenes are not necessary in radical cyclizations.

**Suggested solution**
The peroxide is a source of benzoyl radicals (PhCO₂⁻) and these capture hydrogen atoms to give the most stable radical. The best one here is stabilized by both CN and CO₂Et. Cyclization onto the alkene gives mainly a secondary radical on a six-membered ring and this abstracts a hydrogen from starting material to complete the cycle.

The alternative is to add to the more substituted end of the alkene. This gives a less stable primary radical, but this ‘5-exo’ ring closure is often
preferred because the orbital alignment is better. The minor product has a five-membered ring.

PROBLEM 4
Treatment of this aromatic heterocycle with NBS (N-bromosuccinimide) and AIBN gives mainly one product but this is difficult to purify from minor impurities containing one or three bromine atoms. Further treatment with 10% aqueous NaOH gives one easily separable product in modest yield (50%). What are the mechanisms for the reactions?

Purpose of the problem
An important radical reaction: bromination at benzylic and allylic positions by NBS, and an application.

Suggested solution
Two preliminary reactions need to take place: NBS is a source of a low concentration of bromine molecules and AIBN initiates the radical chain by forming a nitrile-stabilized tertiary radical.

The new radical abstracts hydrogen atoms from the benzylic positions to make stable delocalized radicals. These react with bromine to give the benzylic bromide and release a bromine atom.
All subsequent hydrogen abstractions are carried out by bromine atoms, either of the kind we have just seen or to remove a hydrogen atom from the other methyl group. This reaction provides the HBr that generates more bromine from NBS.

Finally the dibromide reacts with NaOH to give the new heterocycle. Both $S_N2$ displacements are very easy at a benzylic centre and the second is intramolecular.

**PROBLEM 5**

Propose a mechanism for this reaction accounting for the selectivity. Include a conformational drawing of the product.

**Purpose of the problem**

Another important radical reaction: cyclization of alkyl bromides onto alkenes.
**Suggested solution**

This time AIBN abstracts the hydrogen from Bu₃SnH and the tin radicals carry the chain along. First they remove the bromine atom from the starting material to make a vinyl radical that cyclizes onto the unsaturated ketone to give a radical stabilized by conjugation with the carbonyl group. The chain is completed by abstraction of hydrogen from another molecule of Bu₃SnH, the tin radical formed then allowing the cycle to restart.

![Chemical diagram](image)

The stereochemistry of the product comes from the requirement of a 1,3-bridge to be diaxial as this is the only way the bridge can reach across the ring. At the moment of cyclization, the vinyl radical side chain must be in an axial position.

![Chemical diagram](image)
**PROBLEM 6**
An ICI process for the manufacture of the diene used to make pyrethroid insecticides involved heating these compounds to 500 °C in a flow system. Propose a radical chain mechanism for the reaction.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad 500 \degree C \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{H} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**
Learning how to avoid a trap in writing radical reactions and to show you that radical reactions can be useful.

**Suggested solution**
The most likely initiation at 500 °C is the homolytic cleavage of the C–Cl bond to release allyl and chloride radicals. The chloride radicals then attack the alkene and abstract a hydrogen atom to give more of the same allylic radical.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad 500 \degree C \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{H} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The trap is to form the product by dimerizing the allylic radical. Dimerizing radicals does sometimes occur (in the acyloin reaction for example) but it is a rare process.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{only rarely} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Much more likely is a chain reaction. If we add the allylic radical to the alkene part of the allylic chloride we make a stable tertiary radical that can lose chloride radical and propagate the chain.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\end{align*}
\]

The original workers at ICI suggested a different mechanism: D. Holland and D. J. Milner, *Chem. and Ind.* (London), 1979, 707.
PROBLEM 7
Heating this compound to 560 °C gives two products with the spectroscopic data shown below. What are they and how are they formed?

\[ \text{Cl} \quad 560 ^\circ C \quad \text{A} \quad \text{+} \quad \text{B} \]

**A** has IR 1640 cm \(^{-1}\); \( m/z \) 138 (100%) and 140 (33%), \( \delta_H \) (ppm) 7.1 (4H, s), 6.5 (1H, dd, \( J \) 17, 11 Hz), 5.5 (1H, dd, \( J \) 17, 2 Hz), and 5.1 (1H, dd, \( J \) 11, 2 Hz).

**B** has IR 1700 cm \(^{-1}\); \( m/z \) 111 (45%), 113 (15%), 139 (60%), 140 (100%), 141 (20%), and 142 (33%), \( \delta_H \) (ppm) 9.9 (1H, s), 7.75 (2H, d, \( J \) 9 Hz), and 7.43 (2H, d, \( J \) 9 Hz).

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of structure determination and a radical reaction with a difference.

**Suggested solution**

Compound **A** contains chlorine \((m/z \) 138/140, 3:1) and that fits \( \text{C}_8\text{H}_7\text{Cl} \). It still has the 1,4-disubstituted benzene ring (four aromatic Hs) and it is an alkene (IR 1640) with three hydrogens on it with characteristic coupling. We can write the structure immediately as there is no choice. The four aromatic hydrogens evidently have the same chemical shift.

\[ \text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Cl} \quad 560 ^\circ C \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Cl} \]

\( \delta_H \) 6.5, 5.1, 5.5

Compound **B** has \( m/z \) 140/142, 3:1 and a carbonyl group (at 1700 cm \(^{-1}\)) which fits \( \text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{ClO} \) and looks like an aldehyde \( (\delta_H \) 9.9). It still has the disubstituted benzene. The structure is even easier this time!

\[ \text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Cl} \quad 560 ^\circ C \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Cl} \]

\( \delta_H \) 7.75, 7.43, 9.9

So how are these products formed? At such high temperatures, \( \sigma \)-bonds break and the weakest bonds in the molecule are the C–C and C–O bonds in
the four-membered ring next to the benzene ring. Breaking these bonds releases strain and allows one of the radical products to be secondary and delocalized.

PROBLEM 8
Treatment of methylcyclopropane with peroxides at very low temperature (−150 °C) gives an unstable species whose ESR spectrum consists of a triplet with coupling of 20.7 gauss and fine splitting showing dtt coupling of 2.0, 2.6, and 3.0 gauss. Warming to a mere −90 °C gives a new species whose ESR spectrum consists of a triplet of triplets with coupling 22.2 and 28.5 gauss and fine splitting showing small ddd coupling of less than 1 gauss.

If methylcyclopropane is treated with t-BuOCl, various products are obtained but the two major products are C and D. At lower temperatures more of C is formed and at higher temperatures more of D.

Treatment of the more substituted cyclopropane below with PhSH and AIBN gives a single product in quantitative yield. Account for all these reactions, identifying A and B and explaining the differences between the various experiments.

Purpose of the problem
Working out the consequences of an important substituent effect on radical reactions: the cyclopropyl group.
Suggested solution

The peroxide is a source of \( t\text{-BuO}^- \) radicals and these abstract a hydrogen from the methyl group of the hydrocarbon. The first spectrum is that of the cyclopropylmethyl radical. The odd electron is in a \( p \) orbital represented by a circle and the planar \( \text{CH}_2^- \) group is orthogonal to the plane of the ring but the two \( H \)'s are the same because of rapid rotation. The odd electron has a large coupling to the two hydrogens (\( H^a \)) on the same carbon, a smaller doublet coupling to \( H^b \), and small couplings to the two \( H \)'s and two \( H^b \)'s. The coupling to \( H^b \) is small because the \( p \) orbital containing the odd electron is orthogonal to the \( C-H^b \) bond.

![Diagram of cyclopropylmethyl radical](image1)

Warming to \(-90^\circ C\) causes decomposition to an open-chain radical. The odd electron is coupled to the two hydrogens on its own carbon (\( H^a \)) and those on the next carbon (\( H^b \)) each giving a triplet (22.2 and 28.5). Coupling to the more remote hydrogens is small.

![Diagram of open-chain radical](image2)

Decomposition of the same hydrocarbon with \( t\text{-BuOCl} \) produces the same sequence of radicals but they can now be intercepted by the chlorine atom of the reagent, releasing more \( t\text{-BuO}^- \) radicals and a radical chain is started. At lower temperatures the ring opening is slower so more of the cyclopropane is captured.

![Diagram of radical chain](image3)

The last example also produces a radical next to a cyclopropane ring but this time it can decompose very easily to give a stable secondary benzylic radical. This captures a hydrogen atom from \( \text{PhSH} \) releasing \( \text{PhS}^- \) and maintaining an efficient radical chain. Ring opening of cyclopropanes is now a standard way of detecting radicals.
**PROBLEM 9**
The last few stages of Corey’s epibatidine synthesis are shown here. Give mechanisms for the first two reactions and suggest a reagent for the last step.

**Purpose of the problem**
Application of radical reactions in an important sequence plus revision of conformation and stereochemistry.

**Suggested solution**
The first step involves deprotonation of the rather acidic amide (the CF<sub>3</sub> group helps) and the displacement of the only possible bromide—the one on the opposite face of the six-membered ring as the SN<sub>2</sub> reaction must take place with inversion.

The second step is a standard dehalogenation by Bu<sub>3</sub>SnH. AIBN generates Bu<sub>3</sub>Sn· by hydrogen abstraction from the reagent and this removes the bromine. Make sure you complete the chain and do not use H· at any point.
Finally we need to hydrolyse the amide. This normally requires strong acid or alkali but the CF₃ group makes this amide significantly more electrophilic than most and milder conditions can be used. Corey actually used NaOMe in methanol at 13 °C for two hours and got a yield of 96%. Any reasonable conditions you may have chosen would be fine too.

**PROBLEM 10**

How would you make the starting material for this sequence of reactions? Give a mechanism for the first reaction that explains its regio- and stereoselectivity. Your answer should include a conformational drawing of the product. What is the mechanism of the last step? Attempts to carry out this last step by iodine/lithium exchange and reaction with allyl bromide failed. Why? Why is the alternative shown here successful?

**Purpose of the problem**

Application of radical reactions when the alternative ionic reactions fail.

**Suggested solution**

The starting material is an obvious Diels-Alder product as it is a cyclohexene with a carbonyl group outside the ring on the opposite side. The first step is iodolactonization. Iodine attacks the alkene reversibly on both sides but, when it attacks opposite the carboxylate anion, the lactone ring snaps shut.
The problem asks for a conformational drawing of the product and indeed that is necessary. The 1,3-lactone bridge must be diaxial as that is the only way for the carboxylate to reach across and therefore it must attack from an axial direction too.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{initiation} & \quad \text{thereafter} \\
\text{NC} & \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^- \\
\end{align*}
\]

The last step is initiated by AIBN which removes the iodine atom from the compound to make a secondary radical. This attacks the allyl stannane and the intermediate loses Bu$_3$Sn$^-$ and that takes over the job of removing iodine atoms to keep the chain going. The radical intermediate has no stereochemistry at the planar radical carbon and attack occurs from the bottom face to avoid the blocking lactone bridge.

Anionic reactions cannot be used for this allylation. If the iodine were metallated, the organometallic compound would immediately expel the lactone bridge as carboxylate ion is a good leaving group. The radical is stable because the C–O bond is strong and not easily cleaved in radical reactions.
PROBLEM 11

Suggest a mechanism for this reaction explaining why a mixture of diastereoisomers of the starting material gives a single diastereoisomer of the product. Is there any other form of selectivity?

\[
\text{OEt} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{1. Bu}_3\text{SnH, AIBN} \\
\text{2. Cr(VI), H}_2\text{SO}_4 \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{SnBu}_3 \quad \text{CN} \\
\text{initiation} \\
\text{thereafter}
\]

Purpose of the problem

A radical ring-closing reaction with a curious stereochemical outcome.

Suggested solution

The abstraction of bromine, at first by AIBN and thereafter by Bu₃Sn⁺ produces a radical that again does not eliminate but adds to an alkene. A five-membered ring is formed (this is usually the more favourable closure) by attack on the alkene on the opposite side from that occupied by the i-Pr group. The product is a mixture of diastereoisomers as no change occurs at the acetal centre.

Acid-catalysed oxidation first hydrolys the acetal and then oxidizes either the hemiacetal or the aldehyde to the lactone. Now the molecule is one diastereoisomer as the ambiguous centre is planar. The other form of selectivity is the ring size (see the textbook, p. 1000).
PROBLEM 12

Reaction of this carboxylic acid (C₆H₈O₂) with bromine in the presence of dibenzoyl peroxide gives an unstable compound A (C₅H₆Br₂O₂) that gives a stable compound B (C₅H₅BrO₂) on treatment with base. Compound B has IR 1735 and 1645 cm⁻¹ and NMR δH 6.18 (1H, s), 5.00 (2H, s) and 4.18 (2H, s). What is the structure of the stable product B? Deduce the structure of the unstable compound A and mechanisms for the reactions.

Purpose of the problem

Revision of structural analysis in combination with an important radical functionalization.

Suggested solution

The starting material is C₆H₈O₂ so the stable compound B has gained a bromine and lost three hydrogens. There must be an extra double bond equivalent (DBE) somewhere in B. The IR spectrum shows that the OH has gone and suggests a carbonyl group, possibly an ester because of the high frequency, and an alkene. The NMR shows that both methyl groups have gone and have been replaced by CH₂ groups. The bromine must be on one of them and the ester oxygen on the other. The extra DBE is a ring.

Since both methyl groups are functionalized, unstable A must have one Br on each methyl group. The peroxide produces benzoyl radicals that abstract protons from both allylic positions to give stabilized radicals that stack bromine molecules to give bromide radicals to continue the chain reaction. In base the carboxylate cyclizes onto the cis CH₃Br group.
Initially, the reaction proceeds with the formation of compound A, which is an unstable compound.

Thereafter, the reaction continues with the formation of compound B, which is a stable compound.

Base catalysis is involved in the conversion of unstable compound A to stable compound B.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 38

PROBLEM 1
Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

Purpose of the problem
Two simple carbene reactions initiated by base.

Suggested solution
Going to the right we must remove the rather acidic proton from CHBr₃ to give the carbanion. This loses bromide to give dibromocarbene and insertion into cyclohexene gives the product.

The second reaction is very similar. α-Elimination of HCl gives a carbene that inserts into an alkene. These are the simplest reactions of carbenes and are very common.
PROBLEM 2
Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and explain the stereochemistry.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N}_2 & \quad \text{CuSO}_4 \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Me} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{N}_2 & \quad \text{CuSO}_4 \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Me} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

Purpose of the problem
Another important carbene method used in the synthesis of a natural antibiotic.

Suggested solution
The diazo compound decomposes to gaseous nitrogen and a carbene under catalysis by Cu(II). Insertion into the exposed alkene gives the three-membered ring. The stereochemistry partly comes from the 'tether'—the linkage between the carbene and the rest of the molecule that delivers the carbene to the bottom face of the alkene. The rest comes from the inevitable cis fusion between the five- and three-membered rings.

PROBLEM 3
Comment on the selectivity shown in these reactions.

Purpose of the problem
A study in chemoselectivity during carbene insertion into alkenes.
Suggested solution

The first reaction is a variation on Simmons-Smith cyclopropanation. Though strictly a carbenoid rather than a carbene, it delivers a CH₂ group from an organozinc compound bound to an oxygen atom, in this case the OMe group. Only that alkene reacts.

The second cyclopropanation occurs at the only remaining alkene with a carbene generated from a diazoester. The stereoselectivity comes from attack on the opposite side of the ring from the already established cyclopropane.

PROBLEM 4
Suggest a mechanism for this ring contraction.

Purpose of the problem

Drawing mechanisms for a rearrangement involving a carbene formed photochemically.

There is little selectivity for the stereochemistry of the CO₂Et group but this fortunately did not matter in the synthesis of a natural defence substance from a sponge by G. A. Schieser and J. D. White, J. Org. Chem., 1980, 45, 1864.
**Suggested solution**

The carbene formed by loss of nitrogen from the diazoketone rearranges with the migration of either C–C bond to give a ketene picked up by methanol.

**PROBLEM 5**

Suggest a mechanism for the formation of this cyclopropane.

**Purpose of the problem**

An unusual type of carbene but it behaves normally.

**Suggested solution**

There is no doubt that t-BuO⁻ is a base, but which proton does it remove? The OH proton perhaps, but that doesn't lead to a carbene. The proton on the alkyne? That molecule has a leaving group, but is it too far away?

Not if you push the electrons through the molecule in a γ-elimination. Normal elimination is β-elimination: both α- and γ-elimination can produce carbenes. The arrows are easy to make sense of if you think of a carbene as a carbon with both a + and a − charge. The carbene is an allenyl carbene with no substituent at the carbene centre. It inserts into the alkene in the other molecule.
**Problem 6**

Decomposition of this diazo compound in methanol gives an alkene \( \text{A} \) (\( \text{C}_8\text{H}_{14}\text{O} \)) whose NMR spectrum contains two signals in the alkene region: \( \delta \) 3.50 (3H, s), 5.50 (1H, dd, \( J \) 17.9, 7.9), 5.80 (1H, ddd, \( J \) 17.9, 9.2, and 4.3), 4.20 (1H, m) and 1.3–2.7 (8H, m). What is its structure and geometry?

When you have done that, suggest a mechanism for the reaction using this extra information: Compound \( \text{A} \) is unstable and even at 20 °C isomerizes to \( \text{B} \). If the diazo compound is decomposed in methanol containing a diene, compound \( \text{A} \) is trapped as the adduct shown. Account for all these reactions.

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of structural analysis, alkene geometry, and cycloadditions with carbenes as a mechanistic link.

**Suggested solution**

The starting material is \( \text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_2 \) so it has lost nitrogen and gained \( \text{CH}_3\text{O} \)—one molecule of methanol. We can see the MeO group at \( \delta \) 3.50 and the four CH\(_2\) groups in the ring are still there (8H m at 1.3–2.7). All that is left is a multiplet at \( \delta \) 4.2, obviously next to OMe, and a pair of alkene protons at \( \delta \) 5.5 and 5.8, coupled with \( J \) 17.9—obviously a \textit{trans} alkene. That at \( \delta \) 5.5 is coupled to one proton and the one at 5.8 is coupled to two. We now have these fragments:
But these add up to $C_5H_5$ too much! Clearly the CH attached to OMe and the CH attached to the alkene are the same atom and the CH$_3$ at the other end of the alkene must be one end of the chain of four CH$_3$s. We now have a structure but it doesn’t join up!

This is the test of your belief in spectroscopy—the dotted ends must join up to give A. Yes, this does put an $E$-alkene in a seven-membered ring, and it is difficult to draw, but you were warned that A is unstable. The CH$_2$ group next to the CHOMe group is diastereotopic so the coupling constants are different.

Now that we know the structure of A, it is easy enough to find a mechanism. Loss of nitrogen produces a carbene that gives an allene in a pericyclic process and this twisted compound (the two alkenes are at 90° to each other) and protonation gives the $trans$ alkene as a cation that reacts with methanol to give A.

The twisted alkene is unstable and rotates to the much more stable $cis$ alkene even at 20 °C. It can rotate because the overlap between the p orbitals is weak as they are not parallel. Trapping in a Diels-Alder reaction preserves the $trans$ stereochemistry.

---

This was the discovery of H. Jendralla, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.*, 1980, 19, 1032. If you were really on the ball, you’ll have noticed that a $trans$-cycloheptene is chiral, so this compound must be a single diastereoisomer though we don’t know which.
**Problem 7**

Give a mechanism for the formation of the three-membered ring in the first of these reactions and suggest how the ester might be converted into the amine with retention of configuration.

\[
\text{Ph} = \text{N}_2 = \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}(I)} \text{Ph} \text{CH} = \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{?} \text{Ph} \text{NH}_2
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

A routine carbene insertion and a reminder of nitrenes as analogues of carbenes.

**Suggested solution**

The diazoester gives the carbene under Cu(I) catalysis and insertion into the alkene follows its usual course. The only extra is stereoselectivity: the insertion happens more easily if the two large groups (Ph and CO\text{$_2$}Et) keep as far apart as possible.

\[
\text{N}_2 = \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}(I)} \text{Ph} \text{CH} = \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \rightarrow \text{Ph} \text{CH} = \text{CO}_2\text{Et}
\]

Conversion of acid derivatives into amines with the loss of the carbonyl group can be done in various ways. In chapter 36 we recommended the Curtius and the Hofmann. The Hofmann degradation is the easier if we start with an ester, converting into the amide with ammonia and then treating with bromine in basic solution. The N-bromo amide undergoes $\alpha$-elimination to a nitrene that rearranges to an isocyanate.

\[
\text{Ph} \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_3} \text{Ph} \text{CONH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2, \text{NaOH}} \text{Ph} \text{N} = \text{C}=\text{O}
\]

PROBLEM 8
Explain how this highly strained ketone is formed, albeit in very low yield, by these reactions. How would you attempt to make the starting material?

Purpose of the problem
To show that intramolecular carbene insertion is a powerful way to make cage compounds.

Suggested solution
Oxalyl chloride makes the acid chloride, and diazomethane converts this into the diazoketone.

Now the carbene chemistry. Treatment with Cu(I) removes nitrogen and forms the carbene. Remarkably, this is able to reach across the molecule and insert into the alkene, thus forming one three- and two new four-membered rings in one step. You will not be surprised at the yield: 10%.

How would you attempt to make the starting material? The original workers used another carbene reaction—the Cu(I) catalysed insertion of a diazoester into bis-trimethylsilyl acetylene.
PROBLEM 9
Attempts to prepare compound A by phase-transfer catalysed cyclization required a solvent immiscible with water. When chloroform (CHCl₃) was used, compound B was formed instead and it was necessary to use the more toxic CCl₄ for success. What went wrong?

Purpose of the problem
Carbene chemistry is not always what is wanted: how do you avoid it?

Suggested solution
Product B is clearly the adduct of product A and dichlorocarbene which must have come from the chloroform and base. The good news is that product A was evidently formed in the basic reaction mixture so, if we simply avoid a solvent that is also a carbene source, all is well.

PROBLEM 10
Revision content. How would you carry out the first step in this sequence? Propose mechanisms for the remaining steps explaining any selectivity.

Purpose of the problem
Revision of specific enol formation, rearrangement reactions, electrocyclic reactions and conjugate addition plus some carbene chemistry.

Suggested solution
The first step requires a specific enol from an enone. Treatment with LDA achieves kinetic enolate formation by removing one of the more acidic hydrogens immediately next to the carbonyl group. The lithium enolate is trapped with Me₃SiCl to give the silyl enol ether.

The next step is dichlorocarbene insertion into the more nucleophilic of the two alkenes. Dichlorocarbene is an electrophilic carbene so the main interaction is between the HOMO ($\pi$) of the alkene and the empty p orbital of the carbene. The carbene is formed by decarboxylation, a process that needs no strong base.
You can draw the ring expansion in a number of ways. All start with the removal of the Me₃Si group with water. You might then simply use a one-step mechanism (a) but an electrocyclic process via the cyclopropyl cation (b) might be better. This is allowed since the inevitable cis ring junction requires H and OH to rotate outwards.

Finally, a double conjugate addition of MeNH₂ to the dienone forms the bicyclic amine. Conjugate addition probably occurs first on the more electrophilic chloroenone, though it doesn’t much matter. There is some stereoselectivity in that the remaining chlorine prefers the equatorial position on the new six-membered ring but this is thermodynamic control as that position is easily enolized.

PROBLEM 11
How would you attempt to make these alkenes by metathesis?
**Purpose of the problem**

Applications of this important and powerful method.

**Suggested solution**

Metathesis is usually *E*-selective and these are both *E*-alkenes so prospects are good. We must disconnect each compound at the alkene and add something to the end of each, probably just CH₂ as the by-product will then be volatile ethylene.

Each starting material must now be made. The stereochemistry of the first tells us that we should add an allyl metal compound to an epoxide. The metathesis catalyst will be one of those mentioned in the chapter.

The second molecule is not symmetrical but this is all right as it will be an intramolecular (ring-closing) metathesis so we can expect few cross-products. There are many ways to make the starting material: alkylation of a ketone is probably the simplest though conjugate addition would have its advantages. The same catalyst can be used and very little would be needed.
PROBLEM 12
Heating this acyl azide in dry toluene under reflux for three hours gives a 90% yield of a heterocycle. Suggest a mechanism, emphasizing the role of any reactive intermediates.

![Chemical structure diagram](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Demonstrating the practical nature of nitrene chemistry in the context of heterocyclic synthesis.

**Suggested solution**
Heating an azide liberates nitrogen gas and forms a nitrene. In this case, rearrangement to an isocyanate is followed by intramolecular nucleophilic attack by the ortho amino group.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

PROBLEM 13
Give mechanisms for the steps in this conversion of a five- into a six-membered aromatic heterocycle.

![Chemical structure diagram](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
It is the turn of carbene chemistry to show its usefulness in that most practical of all subjects: heterocyclic synthesis.
Suggested solution

Decomposition of trichloroacetate ion releases the Cl₃C⁻ carbanion. Loss of chloride gives dichlorocarbene and addition to one of the double bonds in the pyrrole gives a bicyclic intermediate.

Ring expansion can be drawn in various ways. There is a direct route from the neutral amine, or its anion, that doesn’t look very convincing, or you can ionize one of the chlorides first and open the cyclopropyl cation in an electrocyclic reaction. However you explain it, this is a good way to make 3-substituted pyridines.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 39

PROBLEM 1
Propose three fundamentally different mechanisms (other than variations of the same mechanism with different kinds of catalysis) for this reaction. How would (a) D labelling and (b) ¹⁸O labelling help to distinguish the mechanisms? What other experiments would you carry out to rule out some of these mechanisms?

Purpose of the problem
Investigating a reaction where there are several reasonable mechanisms.

Suggested solution
The reaction is an ester hydrolysis so the obvious mechanism is to attack the carbonyl group with hydroxide. Notice that we draw out each stage of the mechanism and do not use any summary or shorthand.

Mechanism 1: Normal ester hydrolysis
But the ester oxygen atom is attached to an aromatic ring with a para nitro group. Nucleophilic aromatic substitution would give the same product.

Mechanism 2: Nucleophilic aromatic substitution
Finally, the ester can be transformed into an enolate, using hydroxide as a base. Elimination gives a ketene that can be attacked by hydroxide as a nucleophile to give the product.

**Mechanism 3: Enolate elimination to give a ketene**

Mechanism 3 requires the exchange of at least one hydrogen atom with the solvent so, if D$_2$O were used as the solvent, or better deuterated starting material were used, the exchange of one whole deuterium atom would indicate mechanism 3 while no exchange, or only minor amounts from the inevitable enolization, would show mechanisms 1 or 2. In mechanisms 1 and 3, the added OH group ends up in CO$_2$H but in mechanism 2 it ends up as the phenol. Using H$_2$¹⁸O as solvent, or better labelling the ester oxygen as $^{18}$O would separate mechanisms 1 and 3 from 2.

Other experiments we could do might include trying to trap the ketene intermediate in a [2 + 2] cycloaddition, studying the reaction by UV, hoping to see the release of $p$-nitrophenolate in mechanism 3, changing the structure of the starting material so that one or other of the mechanisms would be difficult, even measuring the effects of the substituent on the benzene ring on the rate, or looking for a deuterium isotope effect in the labelled lactone.
PROBLEM 2

Explain the stereochemistry and labelling pattern in this reaction.

Purpose of the problem

A combination of labelling and stereochemistry reveals the details of a surprisingly interesting rearrangement.

Suggested solution

The randomization of the label and the racemization suggest that the carboxylate falls off the allyl cation and then comes back on again at either end. While they are detached the distinction between the two ends of both cation and anion disappears as they are delocalized.

The product is racemic because the two intermediates each have a plane of symmetry and are achiral. The retention of relative stereochemistry (formation of the trans product from trans starting material) could result from stereoselective recombination (the two faces of the allyl cation are not the same) or from the two ions sticking together as an ion pair so that the acetate slides across one face of the cation. An alternative [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement would not randomize the labels in the same way.

This question is based on more complex chemistry described by H. L. Goering et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1964, 86, 1951.
PROBLEM 3
The Hammett ρ value for migrating aryl groups in the acid-catalysed Beckmann rearrangement is –2.0. What does that tell us about the rate-determining step?

Purpose of the problem
The Hammett relationship gives an intimate picture of the Beckmann rearrangement.

Suggested solution
The normal mechanism for the Beckmann rearrangement (pp. 958–960 of the textbook) involves protonation at OH and migration of the group anti to the N–O bond: in this case the substituted benzene ring.

![Chemical reaction diagram]

If this mechanism is correct here, we should expect the migration itself to be the slow step. The first step is just a proton transfer to oxygen and must be fast. The steps after the migration involve attack of water on a carbocation and proton transfers to O and N and these must all be fast. The migration breaks a C–C bond, forms a C–N bond and creates an unstable cation. But does this agree with the evidence? Starting material and product in the migration step are cations so the transition state must be a cation too. Any contribution to cation stability made by the migrating group should help and we should therefore expect electron-donating groups to migrate faster. This is what we see: a ρ value of –2.0 shows a modest acceleration by electron-donating groups (p. 1041 ff.).

In the Beckmann rearrangement, the anti group migrates but in other rearrangements the migrating group is chosen for a very different reason: it is normally the group that is best able to stabilize a positive charge and benzene rings can do this by π participation. This would be the participation mechanism:
The Hammett $\rho$ value of $-2.0$ gives very definite evidence that participation does not occur. If it did the closure of the unstable three-membered ring would be the slow step and a positive charge would form on the benzene ring itself. This would give a much larger $\rho$ value of something like $-5.0$. One reason that participation does not occur is that the starting material is planar and the $p$ orbitals in the benzene ring cannot point in the right direction to interact with the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the N–O bond. They are orthogonal to it.

**PROBLEM 4**

Between pH 2 and 7 the rate of hydrolysis of this ester is independent of pH. At pH 5 the rate is proportional to the concentration of acetate ion ($\text{AcO}^-$) in the buffer solution and the reaction goes twice as fast in $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ as in $\text{D}_2\text{O}$. Suggest a mechanism for the pH-independent hydrolysis. Above pH 7 the rate increases with pH. What kind of change is this?

![Chemical structure](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

Time for you to try your skill at interpreting pH-rate profiles.

**Suggested solution**

The second part of the question is easily dealt with. In alkaline solution the rate of hydrolysis simply increases with pH and we have the normal specific base-catalysed reaction in which hydroxide ion attacks the carbonyl group.

![Chemical structure](image)

But this is no ordinary ester. The leaving group is a thiol ($pK_a$ about 8) not the usual alcohol ($pK_a$ about 16) and so the thiolate anion is a much better leaving group than $\text{EtO}^-$. Also the CF$_3$ group is very electron-withdrawing so...
nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group will be unusually fast. This is why there is a region of pH-independent hydrolysis not found with EtOAc. You might have suggested that acetate is a nucleophile or a general base catalyst but the solvent deuterium isotope effect suggests that it is a general base. The change at pH 7 is a change of mechanism as the faster of two mechanisms applies—a sketch of the pH-rate profile will show you the upward curve.

PROBLEM 5
In acid solution, the hydrolysis of this carbodiimide has a Hammett ρ value of –0.8. What mechanism might account for this?

Purpose of the problem
Interpretation of a small Hammett ρ value.

Suggested solution
The most obvious explanation for a low Hammett ρ value, that the aromatic ring is too far away from the reaction, will not wash here as the aromatic rings are joined directly to the reacting nitrogen atoms of the carbodiimide. The reaction must surely start with the protonation of one of the nitrogens. This cannot be the slow step and it would in any case have a large negative ρ value. The small ρ value observed suggests that the rate-determining step must have a large positive ρ value that nearly cancels out the large negative value for the first step. Attack by water on the protonated carbodiimide looks about right.
The expected equilibrium Hammett $\rho$ value for the protonation would be about $-2.5$ to $-3$ so the kinetic Hammett $\rho$ value for the attack of water would have to be about $+2$ to give a net Hammett $\rho$ value of $-0.8$. This looks fine. The rest of the mechanism involves proton transfers, hydrolysis of an imide, and decarboxylation.

**PROBLEM 6**

Explain the difference between these Hammett $\rho$ values by mechanisms for the two reactions. In both cases the ring marked with the substituent $X$ is varied. When $R = H$, $\rho = -0.3$ but when $R = \text{Ph}$, $\rho = -5.1$.

**Purpose of the problem**

Interpretation of a variation in Hammett $\rho$ value with another structural variation.

**Suggested solution**

The reaction is obviously nucleophilic substitution at the benzylic centre so we are immediately expecting $S_N1$ or $S_N2$. When $R = H$, the reaction occurs at a primary alkyl group and $S_N2$ is expected. When $R = \text{Ph}$, the reaction occurs at a secondary benzylic centre and $S_N1$ is expected.

The hydrolysis of carbodiimides in acid and base was studied by S. Hünig et al., *Liebigs Annalen*, 1953, 579, 87.
Since $S_N1$ produces a cation delocalized round the benzene ring in the slow step, a large negative Hammett $\rho$ value is reasonable. It is not obvious what sign the Hammett $\rho$ value would have in the $S_N2$ reaction but as there is no build-up of negative charge on the carbon atom in the transition state, a small value is reasonable. The actual value (−0.3) is very small indeed but, if we can read anything into it, it suggests a loose $S_N2$ transition state with a small positive charge on carbon.

**PROBLEM 7**

Explain how chloride catalyses this reaction.

**Purpose of the problem**

An extreme example of surprising catalysis.

**Suggested solution**

At first you might ask how chloride can catalyse anything at all. It is a weak base and not a very good nucleophile for the carbonyl group. However, in polar aprotic solvents like acetonitrile (MeCN), chloride is not solvated and is both more basic and more nucleophilic. In this reaction it cannot be a nucleophilic catalyst as attack on the carbonyl group simply regenerates...
starting material. It cannot be a specific base as it is too weak, even in acetonitrile, to remove a proton from methanol. But it can act as a general base. As methanol attacks the carbonyl group its proton becomes more acidic and, in the transition state, chloride is at last able to act.

PROBLEM 8

The hydrolysis of this oxaziridine in 0.1M sulfuric acid has \( k(H_2O)/k(D_2O) = 0.7 \) and an entropy of activation of \( \Delta S = -76 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} \). Suggest a mechanism.

Purpose of the problem

Deducing a mechanism from isotope effects and entropy of activation.

Suggested solution

The inverse solvent deuterium isotope effect indicates specific acid catalysis and the modest negative entropy of activation suggests some bimolecular involvement. There are various mechanisms you might have proposed and a likely one involves cleavage of the three-membered ring in the protonated amine. The second or possibly the third step could be rate-determining.

Once the three-membered ring is opened, the rest of the mechanism amounts to acid-catalysed hemiacetal hydrolysis. The original workers favoured an alternative mechanism that starts with protonation of the
oxygen atom and ends up with the hydrolysis of an imine. Again, the second or third step could be rate-determining.

PROBLEM 9
Explain how both methyl groups in the product of this reaction come to be labelled. If the starting material is reisolated at 50% reaction, its methyl group is also labelled.

Purpose of the problem
Exploring a mechanism through labelling.

Suggested solution
The role of silver ion (Ag⁺) is the removal of the halide to give an acylium ion that reacts, not at the carbonyl group, but at the methyl group to give CO₂ and a methylated benzene ring. The simple Friedel-Crafts route cannot be the whole story: it explains how the added methyl group is labelled, but not why it is only partly labelled and how label gets into the other methyl group.

The only way in which we can explain those extra features is to suggest that methylation initially occurs on the oxygen atom and that a methyl group is transferred from there to the benzene ring. We should never have
detected this detail without the labelling experiment. Alkylation on oxygen provides an alkylating agent that can transfer either CH₃ or CD₃ and also explains the formation of trideuterotoluene.

PROBLEM 10

The pKₐ values of some protonated pyridines are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>3-Cl</th>
<th>3-Me</th>
<th>4-Me</th>
<th>3-MeO</th>
<th>4-MeO</th>
<th>3-NO₂</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pKₐ</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>2.84</td>
<td>5.68</td>
<td>6.02</td>
<td>4.88</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can the Hammett correlation be applied to pyridines using the σ values for benzene? What equilibrium ρ value does it give and how do you interpret it? Why are no 2-substituted pyridines included in the list?

**Purpose of the problem**

Making sure you understand the ideas behind the Hammett relationship.

**Suggested solution**

The obvious thing to do is to plot the pKₐ values against the σ values for the substituents using the *meta* values for the 3-substituted and *para* values for the 4-substituted compounds (see table on p. 1042 of the textbook). This gives quite a good straight line and we get a slope (Hammett ρ value) of +5.9. The sign is of course positive as the same electronic effects that make benzoic acids more acidic will also make pyridinium ions more acidic. The large ρ value may have surprised you, but reflect: ionization of benzoic acids occurs outside the ring and the charge isn’t delocalized round the ring. Deprotonation of pyridinium ions occurs on the ring and the charge (positive this time) is delocalized round the ring.
There are no 2-substituted pyridines on the list since, like ortho-substituted benzenes, they cannot be expected to give a good correlation because of steric effects.

**PROBLEM 11**

These two reactions of diazo compounds with carboxylic acids give gaseous nitrogen and esters as products. In both cases the rate of reaction is proportional to [diazo compound][RCO₂H]. Use the data for each reaction to suggest mechanisms and comment on the difference between them.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ar} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{RCO₂H} & \quad \text{Ar} \\
\text{Ar} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{R} & \quad + \text{N}_2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\rho = 1.6 \\
\frac{k(\text{RCO}_2\text{H})}{k(\text{RCO}_2\text{D})} = 3.5
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{RCO₂H} & \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} \\
\text{EtO}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{R} & \quad + \text{N}_2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{k(\text{RCO}_2\text{D})}{k(\text{RCO}_2\text{H})} = 2.9
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

Application of contrasting isotope effects to detailed mechanistic analysis.

**Suggested solution**

The first reaction has a normal kinetic isotope effect (RCO₂H reacts faster than RCO₂D) while the second has an inverse deuterium isotope effect (RCO₂H reacts slower than RCO₂D). This suggests that there is a rate-determining proton transfer in the first reaction but specific acid catalysis in the second (i.e. fast equilibrium proton transfer followed by slow reaction of the protonated species). Protonation occurs at carbon in both reactions, and this can be a slow step.
The second reaction follows much the same pathway except that loss of nitrogen is now difficult because the cation would be very unstable (primary and next to a CO₂Et group) so the second step is S₈2 and rate determining.

PROBLEM 12
Suggest mechanisms for these reactions and comment on their relevance to the Favorskii family of mechanisms.

Purpose of the problem
Extension of a section of the chapter (pp. 1061–3 of the textbook) into new reactions with internal trapping of intermediates.

Suggested solution
In the first reaction the bromination must occur on the alkene to give a dibromide. We cannot suggest stereochemistry at this stage and it is better to continue with the standard Favorskii mechanism and see what happens. Everything follows until the very last step when the opening of the cyclopropane provides electrons in just the right place to eliminate the second bromide and put the alkene back where it was. This alternative
behaviour of a proposed intermediate gives us confidence that the intermediate really is involved.

The stereochemistry of the initial bromination turns out to be irrelevant as it disappears when the oxyallyl cation is formed. We know the stereochemistry of the final product so we know the stereochemistry of the cyclopropanone: it must be on the opposite face of the five-membered ring to the methyl group. The disrotatory closure of the oxyallyl cation evidently goes preferentially one way with the H and the CMe₂Br substituents going upwards and the carbonyl group going down.

The second reaction to the right is a normal Favorskii. The only point of interest is the way the three-membered ring breaks up. The more stable carbanion is the doubly benzylic one so that leaves.

The reaction with excess bromoketone starts the same way but the oxyallyl cation is intercepted by one of the benzene rings in a four-electron conrotatory electrocyclic reaction like the Nazarov reaction (p. 927 of the textbook).
You may wonder how excess MeO\(^{-}\) stops this from happening. It doesn’t. The oxyallyl cation and the cyclopropanone are in equilibrium and excess MeO\(^{-}\) captures the cyclopropanone and drives the normal Favorskii onwards. If there is no excess MeO\(^{-}\) the oxyallyl cation lasts long enough for the five-membered ring to be the main product.

**PROBLEM 13**

A typical Darzens reaction involves the base-catalysed formation of an epoxide from an \(\alpha\)-haloketone and an aldehyde. Suggest a mechanism consistent with the data below.

![Chemical structure](https://example.com/structure.png)

(a) The rate expression is: rate = \(k[\text{PhCOCH}_2\text{Cl}][\text{ArCHO}][\text{EtO}^-]\)

(b) When Ar is varied, the Hammett \(\rho\) value is +2.5.

(c) The following attempted Darzens reactions produced unexpected results:

![Chemical structure](https://example.com/structure2.png)

**Purpose of the problem**

Trying to get a complete picture of a reaction using physical data and structural variation.

**Suggested solution**

The ethoxide is not incorporated into the product but appears in the rate expression. Its role must be as a base and there is only one set of enolizable protons. We start by making the enolate of the chloroketone. This cannot be the slow step as the aldehyde appears in the rate expression. Then we can

---

This work was part of a thorough investigation into the mechanism of the Favorskii rearrangement by F. G. Bordwell and group, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1970, 92, 2172.
attack the aldehyde with the enolate and finally close the epoxide ring by nucleophilic displacement of chloride ion.

If this mechanism is right, the kinetic data show that the second step is rate-determining (a reasonable deduction as it is a bimolecular step) and that the first step is a pre-equilibrium. We can write:

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[\text{enolate}][\text{ArCHO}]
\]

And we know from the pre-equilibrium that

\[
K_1 = \frac{[\text{enolate}]}{[\text{PhCOCH}_2\text{Cl}][\text{EtO}^-]}
\]

So the rate expression becomes when we substitute for [enolate]:

\[
\text{rate} = K_1 k_2[\text{PhCOCH}_2\text{Cl}][\text{EtO}^-][\text{ArCHO}]
\]

and this matches the observed rate expression though the apparently third order rate constant is revealed as the product of an equilibrium constant and a second order rate constant.

The Hammett \( \rho \) value shows a modest gain of electrons near the Ar group in the rate-determining step. We must not take the pre-equilibrium into account as ArCHO is not involved in this step. In fact a Hammett \( \rho \) value of +2.5 is typical of nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group conjugated to the benzene ring.

The unexpected products come from variations in this mechanism. para-Methoxybenzaldehyde is conjugated and unreactive so the enolate ignores it and reacts with the unenolized version of itself.

With salicylaldehyde, the second example, the phenolic OH group will exist as an anion under the reaction conditions. Alkylation by the
chloroketone allows enolate formation leading to an intramolecular aldol reaction.

PROBLEM 14
If you believed that this reaction went by elimination followed by conjugate addition, what experiments would you carry out to try and prove that the enone is an intermediate?

Purpose of the problem
Turning the usual question backwards: what evidence do you want, rather than how to interpret what you are given.

Suggested solution
The suggested mechanism of elimination followed by conjugate addition might be contrasted with direct $S_{N}2$ to see what evidence is needed.
There are many types of evidence you might suggest: here are some of them.

- Exchange of protons in D$_2$O/EtOD would suggest elimination/addition.
- Kinetic evidence (tricky as you cannot be sure which is the slow step.
- A Hammett plot with substituted benzene rings. The $S_N$2 mechanism would have a small $\rho$ as the benzene ring is a long way from the action.
- Base catalysis: mechanism 2 is base catalysed, mechanism 1 isn’t.
- Kinetic isotope effect might be found in mechanism 2.
- Stereochemistry. If a substituent were added to make the terminal carbon chiral, inversion would be expected for mechanism 1 and racemization for mechanism 2. But choose a small substituent otherwise it would be a very different compound.
Suggested solutions for Chapter 40

**PROBLEM 1**
Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the role of palladium in the first step.

![Chemical structures and reactions diagram]

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of enol ethers and bromination, the Wittig reaction, and, of course, first steps in palladium chemistry.

**Suggested solution**
The first step is a reaction of an enol with an allylic acetate catalysed by palladium(0) via an \( \eta^3 \) allyl cation. There is no regiochemistry to worry about as the diketone and allylic acetate are both symmetrical.

![Chemical structures and reactions diagram]

NBS in aqueous solution is a polar brominating agent, ideal for reaction with an enol ether. The intermediate is hydrolysed to the ketone by the usual acetal style mechanism.

You might have drawn the \( \eta^3 \) allyl cation complex in various satisfactory ways—some are mentioned on p. 1089 of the textbook.
Finally, an intramolecular Wittig reaction. This is a slightly unusual way to do what amounts to an aldol reaction but the 5,5 fused enone system is strained and the Wittig went under very mild conditions (\(\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3\) in aqueous solution). The stereochemistry of the new double bond is the only one possible and Wittig reactions with stabilized ylids generally give the most stable of the possible alkene.

PROBLEM 2
This Heck-style reaction does not lead to regeneration of the alkene. Why not? What is the purpose of the formic acid (\(\text{HCO}_2\text{H}\)) in the reaction mixture?

**Purpose of the problem**
Making sure you understand the steps in the mechanism of the Heck reaction.

**Suggested solution**
The reaction must start with the oxidative addition of Pd(0) into the Ph–I bond. The reagent added is Pd(II) so one of the reduction methods on page 1081 of the textbook must provide enough Pd(0) to start the reaction going. The oxidative addition gives PhPdI and this does the Heck reaction on the alkene. Addition occurs on the less hindered top (\(\text{exo}\)) face and the phenyl group is transferred to the same face.
Normally now the alkyl palladium(II) species would lose palladium by $\beta$-elimination. This is impossible in this example as there is no hydrogen atom syn to the PdI group. Instead, an external reducing agent is needed and that is the role of the formate anion: it provides a hydride equivalent by ‘transfer hydrogenation’ when it loses CO$_2$.

**PROBLEM 3**
Cyclization of this unsaturated amine with catalytic Pd(II) under an atmosphere of oxygen gives a cyclic unsaturated amine in 95% yield. How does the reaction work? Why is the atmosphere of oxygen necessary? Explain the stereochemistry and regiochemistry of the reaction. How would you remove the CO$_2$Bn group from the product?

**Purpose of the problem**
Introducing you to ‘aminopalladation’: like oxypalladation, nucleophilic attack on a palladium $\pi$-complex.

**Suggested solution**
The $\pi$-complex between the alkene and Pd(II) permits nucleophilic attack by the amide on its nearer end and in a cis fashion because the nucleophile is tethered by a short chain of only two carbon atoms. Nucleophilic attack and elimination of Pd(0) occur in the usual way. The removal of the CO$_2$Bn group would normally be done by hydrogenolysis but in this case ester hydrolysis by, say, HBr would be preferred to avoid reduction of the alkene. The free acid decarboxylates spontaneously.
This general synthesis of heterocycles was introduced by J.-E. Bäckvall and group, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1995, **36**, 7749.

**PROBLEM 4**

Suggest a mechanism for this lactone synthesis.

Purpose of the problem

Introducing you to carbonyl insertion into a palladium (II) σ-complex.

Suggested solution

Oxidative insertion into the aryl bromide, carbonylation, and nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group with elimination of Pd(0) form the catalytic cycle. No doubt the palladium has a number (1 or 2?) of phosphine ligands complexed to it during the reaction and these keep the Pd(0) in solution between cycles.

* M. Moru *et al.*, *Heterocycles*, 1979, **12**, 921.
PROBLEM 5
Explain why enantiomerically pure lactone gives syn but racemic product in this palladium-catalysed reaction.

Purpose of the problem
Helping you to understand the details of palladium-catalysed allylation.

Suggested solution
Following the usual mechanism, the palladium complexes to the face of the alkene opposite the bridge. The ester leaves to give an allyl cation complex. This is attacked by the malonate anion from the opposite face to the palladium. So the overall result is retention of configuration, the syn starting material giving the syn product.

The racemization comes from the structure of the allyl cation complex. It is symmetrical with a plane of symmetry running vertically through the complex as drawn. Attack by the malonate anion occurs equally at either side of the plane giving the two enantiomers of the syn diasterereoisomer in equal amounts.

**PROBLEM 6**

Explain the reactions in this sequence, commenting on the regioselectivity of the organometallic steps.

![Chemical Reaction Diagram]

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of allylic Grignard reagents, the synthesis of pyridines, and the mechanism of the Wacker oxidation.

**Suggested solution**

The allylic Grignard reagent does direct addition from the end remote to the magnesium atom, as often happens. Hydrolysis of the silyl enol ether reveals an aldehyde.

![Chemical Reaction Diagram]

Now the Wacker oxidation, by whatever detailed mechanism you prefer, must involve the addition of water to a Pd(II) π-complex of the alkene and β-elimination of palladium to give Pd(0) which is recycled by oxidation with oxygen mediated by copper.
Finally, the pyridine synthesis is simply a double enamine/imine formation between ammonia and the two carbonyl groups. Probably the aldehyde reacts first.

**PROBLEM 7**

Give a mechanism for this carbonylation reaction. Comment on the stereochemistry and explain why the yield is higher if the reaction is carried out under a carbon monoxide atmosphere.

Hence explain this synthesis of part of the antifungal compound pyrenophorin.

**Purpose of the problem**

More carbonylation with a Stille coupling.
Suggested solution

The tin-palladium exchange (transmetallation) occurs with retention of configuration at the alkene. The exchange of the benzyl group for the benzoyl group is necessary to get the reaction started.

\[
\text{Bu}_3\text{Sn} + \text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl} \rightarrow \text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-CH}_2\text{Ph} + \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn-Cl}
\]

\[
\text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl} + \text{PhCOCl} \rightarrow \text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl-PhCO} + \text{PhCH}_2\text{Cl}
\]

Now the coupling can take place on the palladium atom producing the product and Pd(0) which can insert oxidatively into the C–Cl bond. Transmetallation sets up a sustainable cycle of reactions. It is better to have an atmosphere of carbon monoxide because the acyl palladium complex can give off CO and leave a PdPh σ-complex. The atmosphere of CO reverses this reaction.

\[
\text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl-PhCO} \rightarrow \text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl} + \text{PhCO}
\]

\[
\text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl-PhCO} + \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn} \rightarrow \text{Ph}_3\text{P-Pd-Cl} + \text{PhCH}_2\text{Cl}
\]

The second sequence starts with a radical hydrostannylation (chapter 37) giving the E-vinyl stannane preferentially if a slight excess of Bu₃SnH is used.

\[
\text{Bu}_3\text{Sn} + \text{OBn} \rightarrow \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn-OBn}
\]

\[
\text{Bu}_3\text{Sn-OBn} \rightarrow \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn-CO}_2\text{Bn}
\]

Now the coupling with the acid chloride takes place as before though this time we have an aliphatic carbonyl complex. There is no problem with β-elimination as that would give a ketene. Again, the stereochemistry of the vinyl stannane is retained in the product.
PROBLEM 8
A synthesis of an antifungal drug made use of this palladium-catalysed reaction. Give a mechanism, explaining the regio- and stereochemistry.

Purpose of the problem
A simple example of amine synthesis using palladium.

Suggested solution
The palladium forms the usual allyl cation complex and the nitrogen nucleophile attacks the less hindered end thus also retaining the conjugation. Attack at the triple bond would give an allene. The $E$ stereochemistry of the palladium complex is retained in the product.
PROBLEM 9
Work out the structures of the compounds in this sequence and suggest mechanisms for the reactions, explaining any selectivity.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{CHO} & \text{CHO} & \text{CHO} \\
\text{heat with} & \text{Pd(II)} & \text{KOH} \\
\text{catalytic acid} & \text{CuCl, O}_2 & \text{H}_2\text{O, THF} \\
\end{array}
\]

B has IR: 1730, 1710 cm\(^{-1}\), \(\delta_h\) 9.4 (1H, s), 2.6 (2H, s), 2.0 (3H, s), and 1.0 (6H, s).
C has IR: 1710 cm\(^{-1}\), \(\delta_h\) 7.3 (1H, d, \(J\ 5.5\ Hz\)), 6.8 (1H, d, \(J\ 5.5\ Hz\)), 2.1 (2H, s), and 1.15 (6H, s).

Purpose of the problem
An intramolecular aldol reaction (p. 636 of the textbook) and a Wacker oxidation (p. 1096 of the textbook).

Suggested solution
B clearly has aldehyde and ketone functional groups with nothing but singlets in the NMR. On the other hand C has a cis disubstituted alkene with a small (and therefore cis) \(J\) value and is a cyclopentenone.
**PROBLEM 10**

A synthesis of the Bristol-Myers Squibb anti-migraine drug Avitriptan (a 5-HT receptor antagonist) involves this palladium-catalysed indole synthesis. Suggest a mechanism and comment on the regioselectivity of the alkyne attachment.

---

**Purpose of the problem**

A new reaction for you to try— a palladium-catalysed indole synthesis.

**Suggested solution**

Although palladium(II) is added to the solution, the aryl iodide tells you that this is an oxidative insertion of Pd(0) produced by one of the methods described on p. 1081 of the textbook. The resulting Pd(II) species complexes to the alkyne and the amine can now attack the triple bond. This gives a heterocycle with the Pd(II) in the ring. Coupling of the two organic fragments extrudes Pd(0) to start a new cycle. The nitrogen attacks the more hindered end of the alkyne so that the palladium can occupy the less hindered end.
PROBLEM 1

Explain how this synthesis of amino acids, starting with natural proline, works. Explain the stereoselectivity of each step after the first.

Purpose of the problem

A simple exercise in the creation of a new stereogenic centre via a cyclic intermediate.

Suggested solution

Nothing exciting happens until the hydrogenation step. The stereoselectivity of the reaction with ammonia is interesting but not of any consequence as that stereochemistry disappears in the elimination. This gives the $E$-enone as expected since the alkene and the carbonyl group are in the same plane.

The new stereogenic centre is created in the hydrogenation step. The molecule is slightly folded and the catalyst interacts best with the outside (convex) face so that it adds hydrogen from the same face as the ring junction hydrogen. All that remains is to hydrolyse the product without racemization. Did you notice that the configuration of the new amino acid (S) is the same as that of the natural amino acids?

**PROBLEM 2**

This is a synthesis of the racemic drug tazodolene. If the enantiomers of the drug are to be evaluated for biological activity, they must be separated. At which stage would you recommend separating the enantiomers and how would you do it?

**Purpose of the problem**

First steps in planning an asymmetric synthesis by resolution.

**Suggested solution**

You need to ask: which is the first chiral intermediate? Can it be conveniently resolved? Will the chirality survive subsequent steps? The first
intermediate is chiral but it enolizes very readily and the enol is achiral, so that’s no good. The second intermediate is chiral but it has three chiral centres and these are evidently not controlled. We would have to separate the diastereoisomers before resolution and that would be a waste of time and material since all of them give the next intermediate anyway.

The next intermediate, the amino alcohol is ideal: it has only one chiral centre and that is not affected by the last reaction. It has two ‘handles’ for resolution—the amine and the alcohol. We might make a salt with tartaric acid or an ester of the alcohol with some chiral acid. Alternatively we could resolve tazadolene itself: it still has an amino group and we could form a salt with a suitable acid.

**PROBLEM 3**

How would you make enantiomerically enriched samples of these compounds (either enantiomer)?

**Purpose of the problem**

First steps in planning an asymmetric synthesis.

**Suggested solution**

There are many possible answers here. What we had in mind was some sort of asymmetric Diels-Alder reaction for the first, an asymmetric aldol for the second or else opening an epoxide made by Sharpless epoxidation, asymmetric dihydroxylation for the third, and perhaps asymmetric dihydroxylation of a Z-alkene for the fourth. Of course you might have used resolution or asymmetric hydrogenation, or the chiral pool, or any other strategy from chapter 41.
PROBLEM 4

In the following reaction sequence, the stereochemistry of mandelic acid is transmitted to a new hydroxy-acid by stereochemically controlled reactions. Give mechanisms for each reaction and state whether it is stereospecific or stereoselective. Offer some rationalization for the creation of new stereogenic centres in the first and last reactions.

Purpose of the problem

Your chance to examine an ingenious method of asymmetric induction.

Suggested solution

The first reaction amounts to cyclic acetal formation except that one of the 'alcohols' is a carboxylic acid. The reaction is stereospecific (no change) at the original chiral centre and stereoselective at the new one.
The second reaction creates a lithium enolate and alkylates it. It is again stereospecific at the unchanged chiral centre and stereoselective at the new one. Finally, acetal hydrolysis preserves the new quaternary centre unchanged (stereospecific) by a mechanism that is the reverse of the first step.

Now, as far as the rationalization is concerned, the first step takes place through a sequence of reversible reactions and therefore under thermodynamic control so the most stable product will be formed. It may seem surprising that this should be the cis compound, but the conformation of this chair-like five-membered ring prefers to have the two substituents pseudoequatorial.

The alkylation is under kinetic control and, as a lithium enolate has more or less a flat ring, the alkyl halide approaches the opposite face to the t-Bu group. It has to approach orthogonally to the ring as it must overlap with the p orbital of the enolate.

This is Seebach's clever method of preserving the knowledge of a chiral centre while it is destroyed in a reaction. First a temporary centre (at the t-buty1 group) is created in a stereoselective reaction; the original centre is destroyed by enolization but the temporary centre can be used to re-create it: D. Seebach et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1983, 105, 5390.
PROBLEM 5
This reaction sequence can be used to make enantiomerically enriched amino acids. Which compound is the origin of the chirality and how is it made? Suggest why this particular enantiomer of the product amino acid might be formed. Suggest reagents for the last stages of the process. Would the enantiomerically enriched starting material be recovered?

Purpose of the problem
Step-by-step discussion of a simple but useful sequence.

Suggested solution
The amine, phenylethylamine, is the origin of the chirality. It is easily made by resolution, for example by crystallizing the salt of the racemic amine with tartaric acid. This means that both enantiomers are readily available.

This particular enantiomer of the amino acid product belongs to the natural (S) series. The unnatural (R) enantiomer would also be valuable and can be made from the other enantiomer of the starting material. The last stages of the process require cleavage of one C–N bond and hydrolysis of the nitrile. It will be important to do this without racemizing the newly created centre.

The C–N bond can be cleaved reductively by hydrogenation as it is an N-benzyl bond. This would also hydrogenate the nitrile so that must first be
hydrolysed using acid or base, as weak as possible. The starting material is not recovered and the chirality is lost as the by-product is just ethyl benzene, the nitrogen atom being transferred to the product.

PROBLEM 6
Explain the stereochemistry and mechanism in the synthesis of the chiral auxiliary 8-phenylmenthol from (+)-pulegone. After the reaction with Na in i-PrOH, what is the minor (13%) component of the mixture?

Purpose of the problem
A combination of conformational analysis, stereoselective reactions, and resolution to get a single enantiomer.

Suggested solution
The first reaction is a conjugate addition that evidently goes without any worthwhile stereoselectivity. The stereochemistry is not fixed in the addition but in the protonation of the enolate in the work-up. Equilibration of the mixture by reversible enolate formation with KOH in ethanol gives mostly the all-equatorial compound.
Reduction by that smallest of reagents, an electron, gives the all-equatorial product. Since the stereochemical ratio in the product is the same as in the starting materials (87:13), the reduction must be totally stereoselective. The all-equatorial ketone gives 100% all-equatorial alcohol and the minor isomer must give one other diastereoisomer (we cannot say which).

The mixture still has to be separated and, as it is a mixture of diastereoisomers, it can be separated by physical means. The chloroacetate is just a convenient crystalline derivative.

**PROBLEM 7**
Suggest syntheses for single enantiomers of these compounds.

**Purpose of the problem**
Devising your own asymmetric syntheses.

**Suggested solution**
The first compound is an ester derived from a cyclic secondary alcohol that could be made from the corresponding enone by asymmetric reduction.
Reduction with Corey’s CBS reducing agent gave the alcohol in 93% ee.

The second compound could be made by a Wittig reaction with a stabilized ylid and the required diol aldehyde derived from an epoxy-alcohol and hence an allylic alcohol by Sharpless epoxidation.

The first part of the synthesis gives an intermediate that had been used in the synthesis of the antibiotic methymycin. In practice the Wittig was carried out on the epoxy-aldehyde and treatment of the last intermediate with aqueous acid gave the target molecule.

This compound was used to make a compound from the gingko tree by E. J. Corey and A. V. Gaval, Tetrahedron Lett., 1988, 29, 3201.

S. Masamune et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1975, 97, 3512
PROBLEM 8
This compound is a precursor to a Novartis drug used for the control of inflammation. How might it be made from a chiral pool starting material?

Purpose of the problem
Spotting in a target structural features of available chiral pool compounds.

Suggested solution
The hydrocarbon skeleton of the target is that of the amino acid phenylalanine. The configuration is \((S)\), the same as the natural amino acid, so we can use the standard amino acid to hydroxy acid conversion via diazotization, described on p. 1105 of the textbook, which goes with retention of configuration. The aromatic ring needs hydrogenating too.

L-phenylalanine
PROBLEM 9
Propose catalytic methods for the asymmetric synthesis of these four precursors to drug molecules.

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{propose catalytic methods for the asymmetric synthesis of these four precursors to drug molecules.}
\end{align*} \]

Purpose of the problem
Identifying reliable catalytic reactions that give desired structural features.

Suggested solution
The sertraline precursor is a chiral alcohol with the stereogenic centre adjacent to an aromatic ring. An obvious approach is to make the hydroxyl group by asymmetric reduction of the corresponding ketone. CBS reduction is a possibility, as is a ruthenium-catalysed hydrogenation using the ligand TsDPEN (p. 1115 of the textbook).

The second compound is a chiral sulfide. Although there are direct asymmetric ways of making chiral sulfur compounds, a reliable approach to sulfides is to use S$_2$2 substitution of a more readily made chiral precursor, because a thiolate is usually a good nucleophile. The S$_2$2 reaction goes with inversion, so we need the chiral alcohol shown below, converted to a derivative (such as a tosylate) capable of undergoing substitution. Care will be needed to avoid elimination, but thiolates are excellent nucleophiles and not too basic, so you would expect a successful outcome.

- You should not try to remember which enantiomer of the ligand you need for which enantiomer of the product: that can easily be looked up later. It is much more important to recognize the classes of molecules that can be reliably prepared by catalytic asymmetric reactions.
The third compound contains a 1,2,3-trifunctionalized arrangement that should prompt you to think of asymmetric epoxidation. Azide is a good nucleophile for opening epoxides, so we can start with the allylic alcohol shown here, carry out an asymmetric epoxidation, and convert to the target with inversion of configuration.

The final compound is a diol, so asymmetric dihydroxylation is a possible approach. The precursor is a rather unreactive alkene, but asymmetric dihydroxylation is a versatile reaction which can still perform well on challenging substrates.

**PROBLEM 10**

The triatomine bug which causes Chagas’ disease can be trapped by using synthetic samples of its communication pheromone, which consists of a 4:1 mixture of the enantiomers of this heterocycle. How would you synthesize the required mixture of enantiomers? Why would the other diastereoisomer of this compound be more of a challenge to make?

**Purpose of the problem**

Identifying structural features that can be made by asymmetric synthesis.
Suggested solution

To make a 4:1 mixture of enantiomers you need either to mix them in the right proportions, or to mix equal amounts of racemic mixture and a single enantiomer. In either case you need an asymmetric synthesis. The target compound is an acetal that can be made from a chiral diol, so you should immediately consider asymmetric dihydroxylation. The advantage of Sharpless’ asymmetric dihydroxylation is that it can very easily give either enantiomer: in fact, it is one reaction where the enantioselective version is better than the racemic one, so you would be advised to make the two enantiomers using the two alternative chiral ligands, mix them in the correct proportions, then form the acetal. Note that the starting alkene is trans.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{K}_3\text{Fe(CN)}_6 & \\
\text{DHQ}_2\text{PHAL} \quad \text{(or DHQD}_2\text{PHAL for other enantiomer)} & \\
\text{K}_2\text{OsO}_2(OH)_4 & \\
\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3, \quad \text{MeSO}_2\text{NH}_2 & \\
\text{H}^+ \text{ cat.} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Making the other diastereoisomer would require the cis alkene. This is not a problem in itself, but more of a challenge for the catalyst, because now it has to distinguish between two similar groups (Et and Me) in order to oxidize one face of the alkene enantioselectively (for the trans alkene, the selection is between either Et and H or Me and H; switching Et for Me makes no difference to the outcome).

The discovery and synthesis of this pheromone is described by C. R. Unelius and co-workers in *Org. Lett.* 2010, **12**, 5601.
**PROBLEM 11**

This compound was developed by the Nutrasweet company as an artificial sweetener. Propose a strategy for its synthesis. Would your proposed approach still be suitable if the compound had turned out to be a successful product, required in multi-tonne quantities?

![Chemical Structure]

**Purpose of the problem**

Proposing an efficient synthetic route to a chiral target molecule: a common challenge in the pharmaceutical and related industries.

**Suggested solution**

The target can be best disconnected into three fragments at the amide bonds. The aminopyridine can be made by the standard methods of heterocycle synthesis (chapter 30), so we are more interested in the other two chiral fragments. The middle one is an amino acid, and you should recognize it as a member of the chiral pool, (S)-glutamic acid, so this poses no problem of synthesis. (Though it will need to be appropriately protected to form the correct amide).

![Disconnected Structures]

The final fragment is a simple chiral carboxylic acid, so we need a method for its asymmetric synthesis. The most obvious choice is probably an asymmetric alkylation using Evans’ oxazolidinone auxiliary: formation of the appropriate derivative of hexanoic acid is simple, and the enolate will be alkylated diastereoselectively by methyl iodide. You would probably take this approach if you need to make a few grams for initial studies.
If this compound were needed on the tonne scale then auxiliary chemistry is no good, however efficient recycling may be. A good alternative for the synthesis of compounds with unfunctionalized chiral centres adjacent to carboxylic acids or alcohols is the use of ruthenium-catalysed hydrogenation.

PROBLEM 12

The two aldehydes below are valuable products in the perfumery industry (Tropional® is a component of Issey Miyake’s L’Eau d’Issey and Florhydral® is a component of Allure by Chanel). How would you make them as single enantiomers?

Purpose of the problem

Designing a synthesis where absolute stereochemistry must be controlled.

Suggested solution

Both targets have a single, simple chiral centre carrying a methyl group, so we need to devise a synthesis passing through an achiral precursor. For Tropional, you might imagine alkylating a derivative of Evans’ auxiliary, followed by reduction to the aldehyde, but a more economical approach would be to use asymmetric reduction of an unsaturated carboxylic acid, since the compound required is readily made using an aldol-type condensation of the available aldehyde piperonal.
Florhydral has the methyl group β to the aldehyde. One possible approach is an asymmetric conjugate addition, but again asymmetric reduction of the acid (or allylic alcohol) is preferable, since the required alkene is easy to make by aldol chemistry. Here we show one example with the acid and one with the alcohol, but either are possibilities in both cases.
**Suggested solutions for Chapter 42**

**PROBLEM 1**
Do you consider that thymine and caffeine are aromatic compounds? Explain.

![Thymine and Caffeine Structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**
Revision of aromaticity and exploration of the structures of nucleic acid bases.

**Suggested solution**
Thymine, a pyrimidine, has an alkene and lone pair electrons on two nitrogens, making six in all for an aromatic structure. You may have shown this by drawing delocalized structures.

![Thymine Delocalization Structures](image)

Caffeine, a purine, is slightly more complicated as it has two rings. You might have said that each ring is aromatic if you counted all the lone pairs on nitrogen except those on the ‘pyridine-like’ nitrogen (see p. 741 of the textbook for what we mean here) in the five-membered ring. Or you might have drawn a delocalized structure with ten electrons around its periphery.
PROBLEM 2

Human hair is a good source of cystine, the disulfide dimer of cysteine. Hair is boiled with aqueous HCl and HCO₂H for a day, the solution concentrated, and a large amount of sodium acetate added. About 5% of the hair by weight crystallizes out as pure cystine \([\alpha]_D = -216\). How does the process work? Why is such a high proportion of hair cystine? Why is no cysteine isolated by this process? Make a drawing of cystine to show why it is chiral. How would you convert the cystine to cysteine?

Suggested solution

Prolonged boiling with HCl hydrolyses the peptide linkages (shown as thick bonds below in a generalized structure) and breaks the hair down into its constituent amino acids. The cystine crystallizes at neutral pHs and the mixture of HCl and NaOAc provides a buffer. Hair is much cross-linked by disulfide bridges and these are not broken down by hydrolysis.

Purpose of the problem

Some slightly more complicated amino acid chemistry including stereochemistry and the SH group.
No cysteine is isolated because (i) most of it is present as cystine in hair and (ii) any cysteine released in the hydrolysis will be oxidized in the air to cystine. The stereochemistry of cysteine is preserved in cystine which has $C_2$ symmetry and no plane or centre of symmetry so either of the diagrams below will suit. It is not important whether you draw the zwitterion or the uncharged structure. Reduction of the S–S bond by NaBH$_4$ converts cystine to cysteine.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{S} \\
\quad & \quad \text{S} \\
\text{CO}_2 & \quad \text{NH}_3
\end{align*}
\quad
\begin{align*}
\text{OH}_2\text{C} & \quad \text{S} \\
\quad & \quad \text{S} \\
\text{NH}_2 & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

**PROBLEM 3**

The amide of alanine can be resolved by pig kidney acylase. Which enantiomer of alanine is acylated faster with acetic anhydride? In the enzyme-catalysed hydrolysis, which enantiomer hydrolyses faster? In the separation, why is the mixture heated in acid solution, and what is filtered off? How does the separation of the free alanine by dissolution in ethanol work?

If the acylation is carried out carelessly, particularly if the heating is too long or too strong, a by-product is formed that is not hydrolysed by the enzyme. How does this happen?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NH}_2 & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
racemic \text{alanine} & \quad \text{Ac}_2\text{O, AcOH}
\end{align*}
\quad
\begin{align*}
\text{HN} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{pig kidney acylase} & \quad \text{pH 8, 37 °C, 4 hours}
\end{align*}
\]

**Purpose of the problem**

Rehearsal of some basic amino acid and enzyme chemistry plus revision of stereochemistry and asymmetric synthesis.
Suggested solution

The acylation takes place by the normal mechanism for the formation of amides from anhydrides, that is, by nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group and loss of the most stable anion (acetate) from the tetrahedral intermediate. The two isomers of alanine are enantiomers and enantiomers must react at the same rate with achiral reagents.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{N}
\end{align*}
\]

In the enzyme-catalysed reaction, the acylase hydrolyses the amide of one enantiomer but not the other. This time the two enantiomers do not react at the same rate as the reagent (or catalyst if you prefer) is the single enantiomer of a large peptide. Not surprisingly, the enzyme cleaves the amide of natural alanine and leaves the other alone.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{HN} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

The purification and separation first requires removal of the enzyme. This is soluble in pH 8 buffer but acidification and heating denature the enzyme (this is rather like what happens to egg white on heating) and destroy its structure. The solid material filtered off is this denatured enzyme. The separation in ethanol works because the very polar amino acid is soluble only in water but the amide is soluble in ethanol.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{HN} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \quad \text{NH}_2
\end{align*}
\]

Overheating the acid solution causes cyclization of the amide oxygen atom onto the carboxylic acid. This reaction happens only because the formation of a five-membered ring, an ‘azlactone’. These compounds are dreaded by chemists making peptides because they racemize easily by enolization (the enol is achiral).
PROBLEM 4
A patent discloses this method of making the anti-AIDS drug d4T. The first few stages involve differentiating the three hydroxyl groups of 5-methyluridine as we show below. Explain the reactions, especially the stereochemistry at the position of the bromine atom.

Suggest how the synthesis might be completed.

Purpose of the problem
A chance for you to explore nucleoside chemistry, particularly the remarkable control the heterocyclic base can exert over the stereochemistry of the sugar.

Suggested solution
There is a remarkable regio- and stereochemical control in this sequence. How are three OH groups converted into three different functional groups with retention of configuration? The first step must be the formation of the trimesylate. Then treatment with base brings the pyrimidine into play and
allows replacement of one mesylate by participation through a five-membered ring.

Now the weakly nucleophilic benzoate can replace the only primary mesylate and the participation process is brought to completion with HBr. Opening the ring gives a bromide with double inversion—that is, retention.

To complete the synthesis of the drug, some sort of elimination is needed, removing both Br and Ms in a syn fashion. You might do this in a number of ways probably by metellation of the bromide and loss of mesylate. It turns out that the two-electron donor zinc does this job well. Finally the benzoate protecting group must be removed. There are many ways to do this but butylamine was found to work well.
PROBLEM 5
How are phenyl glycosides formed from phenols (in nature or in the laboratory)?
Why is the configuration of the glycoside not related to that of the original sugar?

Purpose of the problem
Revision of the mechanism of acetal formation and the anomeric effect.

Suggested solution
The hemiacetal gives a locally planar oxonium ion that can add the phenol from the top or bottom face. The bottom face is preferred because of the anomeric effect and acetal formation is under thermodynamic control.

PROBLEM 6
‘Caustic soda’ (NaOH) was used to clean ovens and blocked drains. Many commercial products for these jobs still contain NaOH. Even concentrated sodium carbonate (Na₂CO₃) does quite a good job. How do these cleaners work? Why is NaOH so dangerous to humans especially if it gets into the eye?

Purpose of the problem
Relating the structure of fats to everyday things as well as to everyday chemical reactions.

Suggested solution
The grease in ovens and blockages in drains are generally caused by hard fats that solidify there. Fats are triesters of glycerol (p. 1148 of the textbook) and are hydrolysed by strong base giving liquid glycerol and the water-soluble sodium salts of the acids.
Sodium hydroxide is dangerous to humans because it not only hydrolysates esters but attacks proteins. It damages the skin and is particularly dangerous in the eyes as it quickly destroys the tissues there. Strong bases are more dangerous to us than are strong acids, though they are bad enough. The sodium salts from fats as well as glycerol are used in soaps.

**PROBLEM 7**

Draw all the keto and enol forms of ascorbic acid (the reduced form of vitamin C). Why is the one shown here the most stable?

**Purpose of the problem**

Revision of enols and an assessment of stability by conjugation.

**Suggested solution**

There can be two keto forms with one carbonyl group and two keto (or ester) forms with two carbonyl groups.

Two forms have greater conjugation than the other two and the favoured form preserves the ester rather than a ketone and so has extra conjugation.
PROBLEM 8

The amino acid cyanoalanine is found in leguminous plants (*Lathyrus* spp.) but not in proteins. It is made in the plant from cysteine and cyanide by a two-step process catalysed by pyridoxal phosphate. Suggest a mechanism. We suggest you use the shorthand form of pyridoxal phosphate shown here.

Purpose of the problem

Exploration of a new reaction in pyridoxal chemistry using pyridoxal itself rather than pyridoxamine.

Suggested solution

The reaction starts with the formation of the usual imine/enamine equilibrium but what looks like an $S_N2$ displacement of $\sim$SH by $\sim$CN turns out to be an elimination followed by a conjugate addition. Any attempt at an $S_N2$ displacement would simply remove the proton from the SH group. Notice that the pyridoxal is regenerated.
PROBLEM 9
Assign each of these natural products to a general class (such as amino acid metabolite, terpene, polyketide) explaining what makes you choose that class. Then assign them to a more specific part of the class (such as pyrrolidine alkaloid).

Purpose of the problem
Practice at the recognition needed to classify natural products.

Suggested solution
Grandisol and polyzonimine have ten carbon atoms each with branched chains having methyl groups at the branchpoints. They are terpenes and specifically monoterpenes. You might also have said that polyzonimine is an alkaloid as it has a basic nitrogen. Serotonin is an amino acid metabolite derived from tryptophan. Scytalone has the characteristic unbranched chain and alternate oxygen atoms of a polyketide, an aromatic pentaketide in fact. Pelletierine is an alkaloid, specifically a piperidine alkaloid.

They are also an insect pheromone (grandisol), a defence substance (polyzonimine), an important human metabolite (serotonin), a fungal metabolite (scytalone), and a toxic compound from hemlock (pelletierine).
PROBLEM 10
The piperidine alkaloid pelletierine, mentioned in problem 9, is made in nature from the amino acid lysine by pyridoxal chemistry. Fill in the details from this outline:

H₂N  \[ \rightarrow \]  CO₂H  \[ \rightarrow \]  NH₂  \[ \rightarrow \]  lysine

\[
\text{RNH}_2 \text{ is pyridoxamine}
\]

\[
\text{CoAS} \rightarrow \text{N} \quad \text{H}  \quad \text{NHR}  \quad \text{H}  \quad \text{Enz}
\]

\[
\text{HN}  \quad \text{NH}  \quad \text{CO₂H}  \quad \text{HN}  \quad \text{NH}  \quad \text{pelletierine}
\]

Purpose of the problem
A more thorough exploration of the biosynthesis of one group of alkaloids.

Suggested solution
The first stage produces the usual pyridoxal imine/enamine compound and decarboxylation gives a compound that can cyclize and give the cyclic iminium salt by loss of pyridoxamine.

\[
\text{H₂N} \quad \text{CO₂H} \quad \text{RCHO} \quad \text{pyridoxal} \quad \text{RNH}_2 \quad \text{is pyridoxamine}
\]

\[
\text{H₂N} \quad \text{CO₂H} \quad \text{HN} \quad \text{NH} \quad \text{R} \quad \text{HN} \quad \text{RNH}_2 \quad \text{Enz}
\]

Now the enol of acetyl CoA adds to the iminium salt to complete the skeleton of the piperidine alkaloids. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation gives pelletierine.
PROBLEM 11

Aromatic polyketides are typically biosynthesized from linear ketoacids with a carboxylic acid terminus. Suggest what polyketide starting material might be the precursor of orsellinic acid and how the cyclization might occur.

Purpose of the problem

More detail on polyketide folding.

Suggested solution

Looking at this problem as if it were a chemical synthesis, we could disconnect orsellinic acid by aldol style chemistry.

But how are we to go further? Those cis alkenes and alcohols are a problem. This is easily resolved as the alkenes are enols and we need to replace them by the corresponding ketones.

We discover a linear polyketide derived from an acetate starter and three malonyl CoA units. The only C–C bond that needs to be made is the one

See p. 1162 of the textbook.
that closes the six-membered ring. Enolization then gives aromatic orsellinic acid.

**PROBLEM 12**

Chemists like to make model compounds to see whether their ideas about mechanisms in nature can be reproduced in simple organic compounds. Nature’s reducing agent is NADPH and, unlike NaBH₄, it reduces stereospecifically (p. 1150 of the textbook). A model for a proposed mechanism uses a much simpler molecule with a close resemblance to NADH. Acylation and treatment with Mg(II) causes stereospecific reduction of the remote ketone. Suggest a mechanism for this stereochemical control. How would you release the reduced product?

![Chemical reactions and structures](image)

**Purpose of the problem**

An example of a model compound to support mechanistic suggestions.

**Suggested solution**

The ketone is too far away from the chiral centre for there to be any interaction across space. The idea was that the side chain would bend backwards so that the benzene ring would sit on top of the pyridine ring and that this could happen with NADH too.
This is a difficult problem but examination of the proposed mechanism should show you that binding to the magnesium holds the side chain over the pyridine ring. Enzymatic reactions often use binding to metals to hold substrates in position. Of course, in this example, the substrate is covalently bound to the reagent but simple ester exchange with MeO⁻ in MeOH releases it.

**PROBLEM 13**

Both humulene, a flavouring substance in beer, and caryophylene, a component of the flavour of cloves, are made in nature from farnesyl pyrophosphate. Suggest detailed pathways. How do the enzymes control which product will be formed?

---

**Purpose of the problem**

Some serious terpene biosynthesis for you to unravel.

**Suggested solution**

Judging from the number of carbon atoms (15) and the pattern of their methyl groups, these closely related compounds are clearly sequiterpenes. They can both be derived from the same intermediate by cyclization of farnesyl pyrophosphate without the need to isomerize an alkene. The eleven-membered ring in humulene can accommodate three E-alkenes.

Caryophyllene needs a second cyclization to give a four-membered ring—the stereochemistry is already there in the way that the molecule folds—and a proton must be lost. The enzymes control the processes so that the starting material is held in the right shape and, more subtly, to make the ‘wrong’
(more substituted) end of the alkene cyclize in the humulene synthesis. It might do this by removing the proton as the cyclization happens.

PROBLEM 14
This experiment aims to imitate the biosynthesis of terpenes. A mixture of products results. Draw a mechanism for the reaction. To what extent is it biomimetic, and what can the natural system do better?

Purpose of the problem
Reminder of the weaknesses inherent in, and the reassurance possible from, biomimetic experiments.

Suggested solution
The relatively weak leaving group (acetate) is lost from the allylic acetate with Lewis acid catalysis to give a stable allyl cation. This couples with the other (isopentenyl) acetate in a way very similar to the natural process. However, what happens to the resulting cation is not well controlled. Loss of each of the three marked protons gives a different product. In the enzymatic reaction, loss of the proton would probably be concerted with C–C bond formation as a basic group, such as an imidazole of histidine or a carboxylate anion, would be in the right position to remove one of the protons selectively.

These experiments still give us confidence that the rather remarkable reactions proposed for the biosynthesis are feasible: M. Julia et al., J. Chem. Res., 1978, 268, 269
The second edition of the Solutions manual to accompany Organic Chemistry provides detailed worked solutions to all of the problems that have been written to accompany Organic Chemistry, second edition, by Clayden, Greeves, and Warren. The problems themselves may be found online at www.oxfordtextbooks.co.uk/orc/clayden2e/

The purpose behind each problem is briefly discussed, and a suggested solution is presented. As in the parent textbook, the emphasis is on understanding rather than factual knowledge alone, and the authors provide friendly guidance in the explanation of each solution. Helpful notes in the margin highlight important principles, make general comments, or direct the reader to further information in the chemical literature.
Clayden, Greeves, Warren and Wothers

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY
## Table of Contents

1 What is organic chemistry? .......................... 1
   Organic chemistry and this book ................. 16
2 Organic structures ................................ 19
3 Determining organic structures .................. 47
4 Structure of molecules ............................ 81
5 Organic reactions .................................. 113
6 Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group .... 135
7 Delocalization and conjugation .................... 151
8 Acidity, basicity, and pKa ......................... 181
9 Using organometallic reagents to make C-C bonds 209
10 Conjugate addition ................................ 227
11 Proton nuclear magnetic resonance .............. 243
12 Nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl (C=0) group 279
13 Equilibria, rates, and mechanisms: summary of mechanistic principles 305
14 Nucleophilic substitution at C=0 with loss of carbonyl oxygen 339
15 Review of spectroscopic methods ................. 361
16 Stereochemistry ................................... 381
17 Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon .... 407
18 Conformational analysis ................................ 447
19 Elimination reactions ................................ 477
20 Electrophilic addition to alkenes .................. 503
21 Formation and reactions of enols and enolates .... 523
22 Electrophilic aromatic substitution ............... 547
23 Electrophilic alkenes ................................ 581
24 Chemoselectivity: selective reactions and protection 615
25 Synthesis in action .................................. 643
26 Alkylation of enolates ................................ 663
27 Reactions of enolates with aldehydes and ketones: the aldol reaction 689
28 Acylation at carbon ................................... 723
29 Conjugate addition of enolates ..................... 749
30 Retrosynthetic analysis .............................. 771
31 Controlling the geometry of double bonds ........ 803
32 Determination of stereochemistry by spectroscopic methods .... 823
33 Stereoselective reactions of cyclic compounds .... 851
34 Diastereoselectivity .................................. 881
35 Pericyclic reactions 1: cycloadditions ............. 905
36 Pericyclic reactions 2: sigmatropic and electrocyclic reactions 943
37 Rearrangements ..................................... 969
38 Fragmentation ....................................... 1003
39 Radical reactions .................................... 1019
40 Synthesis and reactions of carbenes .............. 1053
41 Determining reaction mechanisms .................. 1079
42 Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics .... 1121
43 Aromatic heterocycles 1: structures and reactions 1147
44 Aromatic heterocycles 2: synthesis ................ 1185
45 Asymmetric synthesis ................................ 1219
46 Organo-main-group chemistry I: sulfur .......... 1247
47 Organo-main-group chemistry II: boron, silicon, and tin 1277
48 Organometallic chemistry ........................... 1311
49 The chemistry of life ................................ 1345
50 Mechanisms in biological chemistry ............... 1381
51 Natural products .................................... 1413
52 Polymerization ...................................... 1451
53 Organic chemistry today ............................ 1481
Index .................................................. 1491
What is organic chemistry?

Organic chemistry and you

You are already a highly skilled organic chemist. As you read these words, your eyes are using an organic compound (retinal) to convert visible light into nerve impulses. When you picked up this book, your muscles were doing chemical reactions on sugars to give you the energy you needed. As you understand, gaps between your brain cells are being bridged by simple organic molecules (neurotransmitter amines) so that nerve impulses can be passed around your brain. And you did all that without consciously thinking about it. You do not yet understand these processes in your mind as well as you can carry them out in your brain and body. You are not alone there. No organic chemist, however brilliant, understands the detailed chemical working of the human mind or body very well.

We, the authors, include ourselves in this generalization, but we are going to show you in this book what enormous strides have been taken in the understanding of organic chemistry since the science came into being in the early years of the nineteenth century. Organic chemistry began as a tentative attempt to understand the chemistry of life. It has grown into the confident basis of vast multinational industries that feed, clothe, and cure millions of people without their even being aware of the role of chemistry in their lives. Chemists cooperate with physicists and mathematicians to understand how molecules behave and with biologists to understand how molecules determine life processes. The development of these ideas is already a revelation at the beginning of the twenty-first century, but is far from complete. We aim not to give you the measurements of the skeleton of a dead science but to equip you to understand the conflicting demands of an adolescent one.

Like all sciences, chemistry has a unique place in our pattern of understanding of the universe. It is the science of molecules. But organic chemistry is something more. It literally creates itself as it grows. Of course we need to study the molecules of nature both because they are interesting in their own right and because their functions are important to our lives. Organic chemistry often studies life by making new molecules that give information not available from the molecules actually present in living things.

This creation of new molecules has given us new materials such as plastics, new dyes to colour our clothes, new perfumes to wear, new drugs to cure diseases. Some people think that these activities are unnatural and their products dangerous or unwholesome. But these new molecules are built by humans from other molecules found on earth using the skills inherent in our natural brains. Birds build nests; man makes houses. Which is unnatural? To the organic chemist this is a meaningless distinction. There are toxic compounds and nutritious ones, stable compounds and reactive ones—but there is only one type of chemistry: it goes on both inside our brains and bodies and also in our flasks and reactors, born from the ideas in our minds and the skill in our hands. We are not going to set ourselves up as moral judges in any way. We believe it is right to try and understand the world about us as best we can and to use that understanding creatively. This is what we want to share with you.

Organic compounds

Organic chemistry started as the chemistry of life, when that was thought to be different from the chemistry in the laboratory. Then it became the chemistry of carbon compounds, especially those found in coal. Now it is both. It is the chemistry of the compounds of carbon along with other elements such as are found in living things and elsewhere.
The organic compounds available to us today are those present in living things and those formed over millions of years from dead things. In earlier times, the organic compounds known from nature were those in the ‘essential oils’ that could be distilled from plants and the alkaloids that could be extracted from crushed plants with acid. Menthol is a famous example of a flavouring compound from the essential oil of spearmint and cis-jasmon an example of a perfume distilled from jasmine flowers.

Even in the sixteenth century one alkaloid was famous—quinine was extracted from the bark of the South American cinchona tree and used to treat fevers, especially malaria. The Jesuits who did this work (the remedy was known as ‘Jesuit’s bark’) did not of course know what the structure of quinine was, but now we do.

The main reservoir of chemicals available to the nineteenth century chemists was coal. Distillation of coal to give gas for lighting and heating (mainly hydrogen and carbon monoxide) also gave a brown tar rich in aromatic compounds such as benzene, pyridine, phenol, aniline, and thiophene.

Phenol was used by Lister as an antiseptic in surgery and aniline became the basis for the dyestuffs industry. It was this that really started the search for new organic compounds made by chemists rather than by nature. A dyestuff of this kind—still available—is Bismarck Brown, which should tell you that much of this early work was done in Germany.

In the twentieth century oil overtook coal as the main source of bulk organic compounds so that simple hydrocarbons like methane (CH₄, ‘natural gas’) and propane (CH₃CH₂CH₃, ‘calor gas’) became available for fuel. At the same time chemists began the search for new molecules from new sources such as fungi, corals, and bacteria and two organic chemical industries developed in parallel—‘bulk’ and ‘fine’ chemicals. Bulk chemicals like paints and plastics are usually based on simple molecules produced in multiton quantities while fine chemicals such as drugs, perfumes, and flavouring materials are produced in smaller quantities but much more profitably.

At the time of writing there were about 16 million organic compounds known. How many more are possible? There is no limit (except the number of atoms in the universe). Imagine you’ve just made the longest hydrocarbon ever made—you just have to add another carbon atom and you’ve made another. This process can go on with any type of compound ad infinitum.

But these millions of compounds are not just a long list of linear hydrocarbons; they embrace all kinds of molecules with amazingly varied properties. In this chapter we offer a selection.
What do they look like? They may be crystalline solids, oils, waxes, plastics, elastics, mobile or volatile liquids, or gases. Familiar ones include white crystalline sugar, a cheap natural compound isolated from plants as hard white crystals when pure, and petrol, a mixture of colourless, volatile, flammable hydrocarbons. Isooctane is a typical example and gives its name to the octane rating of petrol.

The compounds need not lack colour. Indeed we can soon dream up a rainbow of organic compounds covering the whole spectrum, not to mention black and brown. In this table we have avoided dyestuffs and have chosen compounds as varied in structure as possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>dark red hexagonal plates</td>
<td>3’-methoxybenzocycloheptatriene-2’-one</td>
<td><img src="structure1.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>amber needles</td>
<td>dichloro dicyano quinone (DDQ)</td>
<td><img src="structure2.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>toxic yellow explosive gas</td>
<td>diazomethane</td>
<td><img src="structure3.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>green prisms with a steel-blue lustre</td>
<td>9-nitroso julolidine</td>
<td><img src="structure4.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>deep blue liquid with a peppery smell</td>
<td>azulene</td>
<td><img src="structure5.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purple</td>
<td>deep blue gas condensing to a purple solid</td>
<td>nitroso trifluoromethan</td>
<td><img src="structure6.png" alt="Structure" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Colour is not the only characteristic by which we recognize compounds. All too often it is their odour that lets us know they are around. There are some quite foul organic compounds too; the smell of the skunk is a mixture of two thiols—sulfur compounds containing SH groups.

skunk spray contains:

- ![Structure](structure7.png) + ![Structure](structure8.png)
But perhaps the worst aroma was that which caused the evacuation of the city of Freiburg in 1889. Attempts to make thioacetone by the cracking of trithioacetone gave rise to ‘an offensive smell which spread rapidly over a great area of the town causing fainting, vomiting and a panic evacuation—the laboratory work was abandoned’.

It was perhaps foolhardy for workers at an Esso research station to repeat the experiment of cracking trithioacetone south of Oxford in 1967. Let them take up the story. ‘Recently we found ourselves with an odour problem beyond our worst expectations. During early experiments, a stopper jumped from a bottle of residues, and, although replaced at once, resulted in an immediate complaint of nausea and sickness from colleagues working in a building two hundred yards away. Two of our chemists who had done no more than investigate the cracking of minute amounts of trithioacetone found themselves the object of hostile stares in a restaurant and suffered the humiliation of having a waitress spray the area around them with a deodorant. The odours defied the expected effects of dilution since workers in the laboratory did not find the odours intolerable . . . and genuinely denied responsibility since they were working in closed systems. To convince them otherwise, they were dispersed with other observers around the laboratory, at distances up to a quarter of a mile, and one drop of either acetone gem-dithiol or the mother liquors from crude trithioacetone crystallisations were placed on a watch glass in a fume cupboard. The odour was detected downwind in seconds.’

There are two candidates for this dreadful smell—propane dithiol (called acetone gem-dithiol above) or 4-methyl-4-sulfanylpentan-2-one. It is unlikely that anyone else will be brave enough to resolve the controversy.

Nasty smells have their uses. The natural gas piped to our homes contains small amounts of deliberately added sulfur compounds such as tert-butyl thiol \((\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CSH}\). When we say small, we mean very small—humans can detect one part in 50,000,000,000 parts of natural gas.

Other compounds have delightful odours. To redeem the honour of sulfur compounds we must cite the truffle which pigs can smell through a metre of soil and whose taste and smell is so delightful that truffles cost more than their weight in gold. Damascenones are responsible for the smell of roses. If you smell one drop you will be disappointed, as it smells rather like turpentine or camphor, but next morning you and the clothes you were wearing will smell powerfully of roses. Just like the compounds from trithioacetone, this smell develops on dilution.

Humans are not the only creatures with a sense of smell. We can find mates using our eyes alone (though smell does play a part) but insects cannot do this. They are small in a crowded world and they find others of their own species and the opposite sex by smell. Most insects produce volatile compounds that can be picked up by a potential mate in incredibly weak concentrations. Only 1.5 mg of serricornin, the sex pheromone of the cigarette beetle, could be isolated from 65,000 female beetles—so there isn’t much in each beetle. Nevertheless, the slightest whiff of it causes the males to gather and attempt frenzied copulation.

The sex pheromone of the Japanese beetle, also given off by the females, has been made by chemists. As little as 5 \(\mu\)g (micrograms, note!) was more effective than four virgin females in attracting the males.

The pheromone of the gypsy moth, disparlure, was identified from a few \(\mu\)g isolated from the moths and only 10 \(\mu\)g of synthetic material. As little as \(2 \times 10^{-12}\) g is active as a lure for the males in field tests. The three pheromones we have mentioned are available commercially for the specific trapping of these destructive insect pests.
Don’t suppose that the females always do all the work; both male and female olive flies produce pheromones that attract the other sex. The remarkable thing is that one mirror image of the molecule attracts the males while the other attracts the females!

What about taste? Take the grapefruit. The main flavour comes from another sulfur compound and human beings can detect $2 \times 10^{-5}$ parts per billion of this compound. This is an almost unimaginably small amount equal to $10^{-4}$ mg per tonne or a drop, not in a bucket, but in a good-sized lake. Why evolution should have left us abnormally sensitive to grapefruit, we leave you to imagine.

For a nasty taste, we should mention ‘bittering agents’, put into dangerous household substances like toilet cleaner to stop children eating them by accident. Notice that this complex organic compound is actually a salt—it has positively charged nitrogen and negatively charged oxygen atoms—and this makes it soluble in water.

Other organic compounds have strange effects on humans. Various ‘drugs’ such as alcohol and cocaine are taken in various ways to make people temporarily happy. They have their dangers. Too much alcohol leads to a lot of misery and any cocaine at all may make you a slave for life.

Again, let’s not forget other creatures. Cats seem to be able to go to sleep at any time and recently a compound was isolated from the cerebrospinal fluid of cats that makes them, or rats, or humans go off to sleep quickly. It is a surprisingly simple compound.

This compound and disparlure are both derivatives of fatty acids, molecules that feature in many of the food problems people are so interested in now (and rightly so). Fatty acids in the diet are a popular preoccupation and the good and bad qualities of saturates, monounsaturates, and polyunsaturates are continually in the news. This too is organic chemistry. One of the latest molecules to be recognized as an anticancer agent in our diet is CLA (conjugated linoleic acid) in dairy products.
Another fashionable molecule is resveratrole, which may be responsible for the beneficial effects of red wine in preventing heart disease. It is a quite different organic compound with two benzene rings and you can read about it in Chapter 51.

For our third edible molecule we choose vitamin C. This is an essential factor in our diets—indeed, that is why it is called a vitamin. The disease scurvy, a degeneration of soft tissues, particularly in the mouth, from which sailors on long voyages like those of Columbus suffered, results if we don’t have vitamin C. It also is a universal antioxidant, scavenging for rogue free radicals and so protecting us against cancer. Some people think an extra large intake protects us against the common cold, but this is not yet proved.

**Organic chemistry and industry**

Vitamin C is manufactured on a huge scale by Roche, a Swiss company. All over the world there are chemistry-based companies making organic molecules on scales varying from a few kilograms to thousands of tonnes per year. This is good news for students of organic chemistry; there are lots of jobs around and it is an international job market. The scale of some of these operations of organic chemistry is almost incredible. The petrochemicals industry processes (and we use the products!) over 10 million litres of crude oil every day. Much of this is just burnt in vehicles as petrol or diesel, but some of it is purified or converted into organic compounds for use in the rest of the chemical industry. Multinational companies with thousands of employees such as Esso (Exxon) and Shell dominate this sector.

Some simple compounds are made both from oil and from plants. The ethanol used as a starting material to make other compounds in industry is largely made by the catalytic hydration of ethylene from oil. But ethanol is also used as a fuel, particularly in Brazil where it is made by fermentation of sugar cane wastes. This fuel uses a waste product, saves on oil imports, and has improved the quality of the air in the very large Brazilian cities, Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo.

Plastics and polymers take much of the production of the petrochemical industry in the form of monomers such as styrene, acrylates, and vinyl chloride. The products of this enormous industry are everything made of plastic including solid plastics for household goods and furniture, fibres for clothes (24 million tonnes per annum), elastic polymers for car tyres, light bubble-filled polymers for packing, and so on. Companies such as BASF, Dupont, Amoco, Monsanto, Laporte, Hoechst, and ICI are leaders here. Worldwide polymer production approaches 100 million tonnes per annum and PVC manufacture alone employs over 50 000 people to make over 20 million tonnes per annum.

The washing-up bowl is plastic too but the detergent you put in it belongs to another branch of the chemical industry—companies like Unilever (Britain) or Procter and Gamble (USA) which produce soap, detergent, cleaners, bleaches, polishes, and all the many essentials for the modern home. These products may be lemon and lavender scented but they too mostly come from the oil industry. Nowadays, most products of this kind tell us, after a fashion, what is in them. Try this example—a well known brand of shaving gel along with the list of contents on the container:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aqua, palmitic acid,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triethanolamine,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycereth-26, isopentane,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oleamide-DEA, oleth-2,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stearic acid, Isobutane,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEG-14M, parfum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allantoin,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxyethyl-cellulose,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxypropil-cellulose,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEG-150 distearate,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI 42053, CI 47005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It doesn’t all make sense to us, but here is a possible interpretation. We certainly hope the book will set you on the path of understanding the sense (and the nonsense!) of this sort of thing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Chemical meaning</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aqua</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>solvent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palmitic acid</td>
<td>CH₁₄(CH₂)₁₄CO₂H</td>
<td>acid, emulsifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triethanolamine</td>
<td>N(CH₂CH₂OH)₃</td>
<td>base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glycereth-26</td>
<td>glyceryl(OCH₂CH₂)₁₀OH</td>
<td>surfactant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isopentane</td>
<td>(CH₃)₂CHCH₂CH₃</td>
<td>propellant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oleamide-DEA</td>
<td>CH₄(CH₂)₇CH=CH(CH₂)₇CONEt₂</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oleth-2</td>
<td>Oleyl(OCH₂CH₂)₂OH</td>
<td>surfactant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stearic acid</td>
<td>CH₃(CH₂)₁₆CO₂H</td>
<td>acid, emulsifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isobutane</td>
<td>(CH₃)₂CHCH₃</td>
<td>propellant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEG-14M</td>
<td>polyoxyethylene glycol ester</td>
<td>surfactant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parfum</td>
<td>perfume</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allantoin</td>
<td></td>
<td>promotes healing in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>case you cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yourself while shaving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydroxyethyl-cellulose</td>
<td>cellulose fibre from wood pulp with –OCH₂CH₂OH groups added</td>
<td>gives body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydroxypropyl-cellulose</td>
<td>cellulose fibre from wood pulp with –OCH₂CH(OH)CH₃ groups added</td>
<td>gives body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEG-150 distearate</td>
<td>polyoxyethylene glycol diester</td>
<td>surfactant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl 42053</td>
<td>Fast Green FCF (see box)</td>
<td>green dye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl 47005</td>
<td>Quinoline Yellow (see box)</td>
<td>yellow dye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The structures of two dyes

Fast Green FCF and Quinoline Yellow are colours permitted to be used in foods and cosmetics and have the structures shown here. Quinoline Yellow is a mixture of isomeric sulfonic acids in the two rings shown.

The particular acids, bases, surfactants, and so on are chosen to blend together in a smooth emulsion when propelled from the can. The result should feel, smell, and look attractive and a greenish colour is considered clean and antiseptic by the customer. What the can actually says is this: ‘Superior lubricants within the gel prepare the skin for an exceptionally close, comfortable and effective shave. It contains added moisturisers to help protect the skin from razor burn. Lightly fragranced.’
Another oil-derived class of organic chemical business includes adhesives, sealants, coatings, and so on, with companies like Ciba–Geigy, Dow, Monsanto, and Laporte in the lead. Nowadays aircraft are glued together with epoxy-resins and you can glue almost anything with ‘Superglue’ a polymer of methyl cyanoacrylate.

There is a big market for intense colours for dyeing cloth, colouring plastic and paper, painting walls, and so on. This is the dyestuffs and pigments industry and leaders here are companies like ICI and Akzo Nobel. ICI have a large stake in this aspect of the business, their paints turnover alone being £2 003 000 000 in 1995.

The most famous dyestuff is probably indigo, an ancient dye that used to be isolated from plants but is now made chemically. It is the colour of blue jeans. More modern dyestuffs can be represented by ICI’s benzodifuranones, which give fashionable red colours to synthetic fabrics like polyesters.

We see one type of pigment around us all the time in the form of the colours on plastic bags. Among the best compounds for these are the metal complexes called phthalocyanines. Changing the metal (Cu and Fe are popular) at the centre and the halogens round the edge of these molecules changes the colour but blues and green predominate. The metal atom is not necessary for intense pigment colours—one new class of intense ‘high performance’ pigments in the orange–red range are the DPP (1,4-diketopyrrolo[3,4-c]pyrroles) series developed by Ciba–Geigy. Pigment Red 254 is used in paints and plastics.

Colour photography starts with inorganic silver halides but they are carried on organic gelatin. Light acts on silver halides to give silver atoms that form the photographic image, but only in black and white. The colour in films like Kodachrome then comes from the coupling of two colourless organic compounds. One, usually an aromatic amine, is oxidized and couples with the other to give a coloured compound.
That brings us to flavours and fragrances. Companies like International Flavours and Fragrances (USA) or Givaudan–Roure (Swiss) produce very big ranges of fine chemicals for the perfume, cosmetic, and food industries. Many of these will come from oil but others come from plant sources. A typical perfume will contain 5–10% fragrances in an ethanol/water (about 90:10) mixture. So the perfumery industry needs a very large amount of ethanol and, you might think, not much perfumery material. In fact, important fragrances like jasmine are produced on a >10 000 tonnes per annum scale. The cost of a pure perfume ingredient like cis-jasmone, the main ingredient of jasmine, may be several hundred pounds, dollars, or euros per gram.

The world of perfumery

Perfume chemists use extraordinary language to describe their achievements: ‘Paco Rabanne pour homme was created to reproduce the effect of a summer walk in the open air among the hills of Provence: the smell of herbs, rosemary and thyme, and sparkling freshness with cool sea breezes mingling with warm soft Alpine air. To achieve the required effect, the perfumer blended herbaceous oils with woody accords and the synthetic aroma chemical dimethylheptanol which has a penetrating but indefinable freshness associated with open air or freshly washed linen’. (J. Ayres, Chemistry and Industry, 1988, 579)

Chemists produce synthetic flavourings such as ‘smoky bacon’ and even ‘chocolate’. Meaty flavours come from simple heterocycles such as alkyl pyrazines (present in coffee as well as roast meat) and furonol, originally found in pineapples. Compounds such as corylone and maltol give caramel and meaty flavours. Mixtures of these and other synthetic compounds can be ‘tuned’ to taste like many roasted foods from fresh bread to coffee and barbecued meat.

Some flavouring compounds are also perfumes and may also be used as an intermediate in making other compounds. Two such large-scale flavouring compounds are vanillin (vanilla flavour as in ice cream) and menthol (mint flavour) both manufactured on a large scale and with many uses.

Food chemistry includes much larger-scale items than flavourings. Sweeteners such as sugar itself are isolated from plants on an enormous scale. Sugar’s structure appeared a few pages back. Other sweeteners such as saccharin (discovered in 1879!) and aspartame (1965) are made on a sizeable scale. Aspartame is a compound of two of the natural amino acids present in all living things and is made by Monsanto on a large scale (over 10 000 tonnes per annum).
The pharmaceutical businesses produce drugs and medicinal products of many kinds. One of the great revolutions of modern life has been the expectation that humans will survive diseases because of a treatment designed to deal specifically with that disease. The most successful drug ever is ranitidine (Zantac), the Glaxo–Wellcome ulcer treatment, and one of the fastest-growing is Pfizer’s sildenafil (Viagra). ‘Success’ refers both to human health and to profit!

You will know people (probably older men) who are ‘on β-blockers’. These are compounds designed to block the effects of adrenaline (epinephrine) on the heart and hence to prevent heart disease. One of the best is Zeneca’s tenormin. Preventing high blood pressure also prevents heart disease and certain specific enzyme inhibitors (called ‘ACE-inhibitors’) such as Squibb’s captopril work in this way. These are drugs that imitate substances naturally present in the body.

The treatment of infectious diseases relies on antibiotics such as the penicillins to prevent bacteria from multiplying. One of the most successful of these is Smith Kline Beecham’s amoxicillin. The four-membered ring at the heart of the molecule is the ‘β-lactam’.

We cannot maintain our present high density of population in the developed world, nor deal with malnutrition in the developing world unless we preserve our food supply from attacks by insects and fungi and from competition by weeds. The world market for agrochemicals is over £10 000 000 000 per annum divided roughly equally between herbicides, fungicides, and insecticides.

At the moment we hold our own by the use of agrochemicals: companies such as Rhône-Poulenc, Zeneca, BASF, Schering–Plough, and Dow produce compounds of remarkable and specific activity. The most famous modern insecticides are modelled on the natural pyrethrins, stabilized against degradation by sunlight by chemical modification (see coloured portions of decamethrin) and targeted to specific insects on specific crops in cooperation with biologists. Decamethrin has a safety factor of >10^6 for mustard beetles over mammals, can be applied at only 10 grams per hectare (about one level tablespoon per football pitch), and leaves no significant environmental residue.
As you learn more chemistry, you will appreciate how remarkable it is that Nature should produce three-membered rings and that chemists should use them in bulk compounds to be sprayed on crops in fields. Even more remarkable in some ways is the new generation of fungicides based on a five-membered ring containing three nitrogen atoms—the triazole ring. These compounds inhibit an enzyme present in fungi but not in plants or animals.

One fungus (potato blight) caused the Irish potato famine of the nineteenth century and the various blights, blotches, rots, rusts, smuts, and mildews can overwhelm any crop in a short time. Especially now that so much is grown in Western Europe in winter, fungal diseases are a real threat.

Organic chemistry and the periodic table

All the compounds we have shown you are built up on hydrocarbon (carbon and hydrogen) skeletons. Most have oxygen and/or nitrogen as well; some have sulfur and some phosphorus. These are the main elements of organic chemistry but another way the science has developed is an exploration of (some would say take-over bid for) the rest of the periodic table. Some of our compounds also had fluorine, sodium, copper, chlorine, and bromine. The organic chemistry of silicon, boron, lithium, the halogens (F, Cl, Br, and I), tin, copper, and palladium has been particularly well studied and these elements commonly form part of organic reagents used in the laboratory. They will crop up throughout this book. These ‘lesser’ elements appear in many important reagents, which are used in organic chemical laboratories all over the world. Butyllithium, trimethylsilyl chloride, tributyltin hydride, and dimethylcopper lithium are good examples.

The halogens also appear in many life-saving drugs. The recently discovered antiviral compounds, such as fialuridine (which contains both F and I, as well as N and O), are essential for the fight against HIV and AIDS. They are modelled on natural compounds from nucleic acids. The naturally occurring cytotoxic (antitumour) agent halomon, extracted from red algae, contains Br and Cl.

Another definition of organic chemistry would use the periodic table. The key elements in organic chemistry are of course C, H, N, and O, but also important are the halogens (F, Cl, Br, I),
p-block elements such as Si, S, and P, metals such as Li, Pd, Cu, and Hg, and many more. We can construct an organic chemist’s periodic table with the most important elements emphasized:

So where does inorganic chemistry end and organic chemistry begin? Would you say that the antiviral compound foscarnet was organic? It is a compound of carbon with the formula $\text{CPO}_5\text{Na}_3$, but it has no C–H bonds. And what about the important reagent tetrakis triphenyl phosphine palladium? It has lots of hydrocarbon—twelve benzene rings in fact—but the benzene rings are all joined to phosphorus atoms that are arranged in a square around the central palladium atom, so the molecule is held together by C–P and P–Pd bonds, not by a hydrocarbon skeleton. Although it has the very organic-looking formula $\text{C}_{72}\text{H}_{60}\text{P}_4\text{Pd}$, many people would say it is inorganic. But is it?

The answer is that we don’t know and we don’t care. It is important these days to realize that strict boundaries between traditional disciplines are undesirable and meaningless. Chemistry continues across the old boundaries between organic chemistry and inorganic chemistry on the one side and organic chemistry and biochemistry on the other. Be glad that the boundaries are indistinct as that means the chemistry is all the richer. This lovely molecule $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$ belongs to chemistry.
We have told you about organic chemistry's history, the types of compounds it concerns itself with, the things it makes, and the elements it uses. Organic chemistry today is the study of the structure and reactions of compounds in nature of compounds, in the fossil reserves such as coal and oil, and of those compounds that can be made from them. These compounds will usually be constructed with a hydrocarbon framework but will also often have atoms such as O, N, S, P, Si, B, halogens, and metals attached to them. Organic chemistry is used in the making of plastics, paints, dyestuffs, clothes, foodstuffs, human and veterinary medicines, agrochemicals, and many other things. Now we can summarize all of these in a different way.

This book is about all these things. It tells you about the structures of organic molecules and the reasons behind them. It tells you about the shapes of those molecules and how the shape relates to their function, especially in the context of biology. It tells you how those structures and shapes are discovered. It tells you about the reactions the molecules undergo and, more importantly, how and why they behave in the way they do. It tells you about nature and about industry. It tells you how molecules are made and how you too can think about making molecules.

We said 'it tells' in that last paragraph. Maybe we should have said 'we tell' because we want to speak to you through our words so that you can see how we think about organic chemistry and to encourage you to develop your own ideas. We expect you to notice that four people have written this book and that they don’t all think or write in the same way. That is as it should be. Organic chemistry is too big and important a subject to be restricted by dogmatic rules. Different chemists think in different ways about many aspects of organic chemistry and in many cases it is not yet possible to be sure who is right.

We may refer to the history of chemistry from time to time but we are usually going to tell you about organic chemistry as it is now. We will develop the ideas slowly, from simple and fundamental ones using small molecules to complex ideas and large molecules. We promise one thing. We are not going to pull the wool over your eyes by making things artificially simple and avoiding the awkward questions. We aim to be honest and share both our delight in good complete explanations and our puzzlement at inadequate ones. So how are we going to do this? The book starts with a series of chapters on the structures and reactions of simple molecules. You will meet the way structures are determined and the theory that explains those structures. It is vital that you realize that theory is used to explain what is known by experiment and only then to predict what is unknown. You will meet mechanisms—the dynamic language used by chemists to talk about reactions—and of course some reactions.
The book starts with an introductory section of four chapters:

1. What is organic chemistry?
2. Organic structures
3. Determining organic structures
4. Structure of molecules

In Chapter 2 you will look at the way in which we are going to present diagrams of molecules on the printed page. Organic chemistry is a visual, three-dimensional subject and the way you draw molecules shows how you think about them. We want you too to draw molecules in the best way available now. It is just as easy to draw them well as to draw them in an old-fashioned inaccurate way.

Then in Chapter 3, before we come to the theory of molecular structure, we shall introduce you to the experimental techniques of finding out about molecular structure. This means studying the interactions between molecules and radiation by spectroscopy—using the whole electromagnetic spectrum from X-rays to radio waves. Only then, in Chapter 4, will we go behind the scenes and look at the theories of why atoms combine in the ways they do. Experiment comes before theory. The spectroscopic methods of Chapter 3 will still be telling the truth in a hundred years time, but the theories of Chapter 4 will look quite dated by then.

We could have titled those three chapters:

2. What shapes do organic molecules have?
3. How do we know they have those shapes?
4. Why do they have those shapes?

You need to have a grasp of the answers to these three questions before you start the study of organic reactions. That is exactly what happens next. We introduce organic reaction mechanisms in Chapter 5. Any kind of chemistry studies reactions—the transformations of molecules into other molecules. The dynamic process by which this happens is called mechanism and is the language of organic chemistry. We want you to start learning and using this language straight away so in Chapter 6 we apply it to one important class of reaction. This section is:

5. Organic reactions

6. Nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group

Chapter 6 reveals how we are going to subdivide organic chemistry. We shall use a mechanistic classification rather than a structural classification and explain one type of reaction rather than one type of compound in each chapter. In the rest of the book most of the chapters describe types of reaction in a mechanistic way. Here is a selection.

7. Using organometallic reagents to make C–C bonds

8. Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon

9. Electrophilic addition to alkenes

10. Electrophilic aromatic substitution

11. Conjugate Michael addition of enolates

12. Radicals

Interspersed with these chapters are others on physical aspects, organic synthesis, stereochemistry, structural determination, and biological chemistry as all these topics are important parts of organic chemistry.

‘Connections’ section

Chemistry is not a linear subject! It is impossible simply to start at the beginning and work through to the end, introducing one new topic at a time, because chemistry is a network of interconnecting ideas. But, unfortunately, a book is, by nature, a beginning-to-end sort of thing. We have arranged the chapters in a progression of difficulty as far as is possible, but to help you find your way around
we have included at the beginning of each chapter a ‘Connections’ section. This tells you three things divided among three columns:

(a) what you should be familiar with before reading the chapter—in other words, which previous chapters relate directly to the material within the chapter ('Building on' column)

(b) a guide to what you will find within the chapter ('Arriving at' column)

(c) which chapters later in the book fill out and expand the material in the chapter ('Looking forward to' column)

The first time you read a chapter, you should really make sure you have read any chapter mentioned under (a). When you become more familiar with the book you will find that the links highlighted in (a) and (c) will help you see how chemistry interconnects with itself.

Boxes and margin notes

The other things you should look out for are the margin notes and boxes. There are four sorts, and they have all appeared at least once in this chapter.

End-of-chapter problems

You can’t learn organic chemistry—there’s just too much of it. You can learn trivial things like the names of compounds but that doesn’t help you understand the principles behind the subject. You have to understand the principles because the only way to tackle organic chemistry is to learn to work it out. That is why we have provided end-of-chapter problems. They are to help you discover if you have understood the material presented in each chapter. In general, the 10–15 problems at the end of each chapter start easy and get more difficult. They come in two sorts. The first, generally shorter and easier, allow you to revise the material in that chapter. The second asks you to extend your understanding of the material into areas not covered by the chapter. In the later chapters this second sort will probably revise material from previous chapters.

If a chapter is about a certain type of organic reaction, say elimination reactions (Chapter 19), the chapter itself will describe the various ways (‘mechanisms’) by which the reaction can occur and it will give definitive examples of each mechanism. In Chapter 19 there are three mechanisms and about 65 examples altogether. You might think that this is rather a lot but there are in fact millions of examples known of these three mechanisms and Chapter 19 only scarpes the surface. Even if you totally comprehended the chapter at a first reading, you could not be confident of your understanding about elimination reactions. There are 13 end-of-chapter problems for Chapter 19. The first three ask you to interpret reactions given but not explained in the chapter. This checks that you can use the ideas in familiar situations. The next few problems develop specific ideas from the chapter concerned with why one compound does one reaction while a similar one behaves quite differently.
Finally there are some more challenging problems asking you to extend the ideas to unfamiliar molecules.

The end-of-chapter problems should set you on your way but they are not the end of the journey to understanding. You are probably reading this text as part of a university course and you should find out what kind of examination problems your university uses and practise them too. Your tutor will be able to advise you on suitable problems for each stage of your development.

**The solutions manual**

The problems would be of little use to you if you could not check your answers. For the maximum benefit, you need to tackle some or all of the problems as soon as you have finished each chapter without looking at the answers. Then you need to compare your suggestions with ours. You can do this with the solutions manual (*Organic Chemistry: Solutions Manual*, Oxford University Press, 2000). Each problem is discussed in some detail. The purpose of the problem is first stated or explained. Then, if the problem is a simple one, the answer is given. If the problem is more complex, a discussion of possible answers follows with some comments on the value of each. There may be a reference to the source of the problem so that you can read further if you wish.

**Colour**

You will already have noticed something unusual about this book: almost all of the chemical structures are shown in red. This is quite intentional: emphatic red underlines the message that structures are more important than words in organic chemistry. But sometimes small parts of structures are in other colours: here are two examples from p. 000, where we were talking about organic compounds containing elements other than C and H.

Why are the atom labels black? Because we wanted them to stand out from the rest of the molecule. In general you will see black used to highlight important details of a molecule—they may be the groups taking part in a reaction, or something that has changed as a result of the reaction, as in these examples from Chapters 9 and 12.

We shall often use black to emphasize ‘curly arrows’, devices that show the movement of electrons, and whose use you will learn about in Chapter 5. Here is an example from Chapter 10: notice black also helps the ‘+’ and ‘−’ charges to stand out.
Occasionally, we shall use other colours such as green, or even orange, yellow, or brown, to highlight points of secondary importance. This example is part of a reaction taken from Chapter 19: we want to show that a molecule of water ($H_2O$) is formed. The green atoms show where the water comes from. Notice black curly arrows and a new black bond.

Other colours come in when things get more complicated—in this Chapter 24 example, we want to show a reaction happening at the black group in the presence of the yellow H (which, as you will see in Chapter 9, also reacts) and also in the presence of the green ‘protecting’ groups, one of the topics of Chapter 24.

And, in Chapter 16, colour helps us highlight the difference between carbon atoms carrying four different groups and those with only three different groups. The message is: if you see something in a colour other than red, take special note—the colour is there for a reason.

That is all we shall say in the way of introduction. On the next page the real chemistry starts, and our intention is to help you to learn real chemistry, and to enjoy it.
There are over 100 elements in the periodic table. Many molecules contain well over 100 atoms—palytoxin, for example (a naturally occurring compound with potential anticancer activity) contains 129 carbon atoms, 221 hydrogen atoms, 54 oxygen atoms, and 3 nitrogen atoms. It’s easy to see how chemical structures can display enormous variety, providing enough molecules to build even the most complicated living creatures. But how can we understand what seems like a recipe for confusion? Faced with the collection of atoms we call a molecule, how can we make sense of what we see? This chapter will teach you how to interpret organic structures. It will also teach you how to draw organic molecules in a way that conveys all the necessary information and none of the superfluous.

Palytoxin was isolated in 1971 in Hawaii from *Limu make o Hana* (‘deadly seaweed of Hana’) which had been used to poison spear points. It is one of the most toxic compounds known requiring only about 0.15 microgram per kilogram for death by injection. The complicated structure was determined a few years later.

---

**Connections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building on:</th>
<th>Leading to:</th>
<th>Looking forward to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ● This chapter does not depend on Chapter 1 | ● The diagrams used in the rest of the book  
● Why we use these particular diagrams  
● How organic chemists name molecules in writing and in speech  
● What is the skeleton of an organic molecule  
● What is a functional group  
● Some abbreviations used by all organic chemists  
● Drawing organic molecules realistically in an easily understood style | ● Ascertaining molecular structure spectroscopically ch3  
● What determines a molecule’s structure ch4 |
Hydrocarbon frameworks and functional groups

As we explained in Chapter 1, organic chemistry is the study of compounds that contain carbon. Nearly all organic compounds also contain hydrogen; most also contain oxygen, nitrogen, or other elements. Organic chemistry concerns itself with the way in which these atoms are bonded together into stable molecular structures, and the way in which these structures change in the course of chemical reactions.

Some molecular structures are shown below. These molecules are all amino acids, the constituents of proteins. Look at the number of carbon atoms in each molecule and the way they are bonded together. Even within this small class of molecules there’s great variety—glycine and alanine have only two or three carbon atoms; phenylalanine has nine. Lysine has a chain of atoms; tryptophan has rings.

In methionine the atoms are arranged in a single chain; in leucine the chain is branched. In proline, the chain bends back on itself to form a ring.

Yet all of these molecules have similar properties—they are all soluble in water, they are all both acidic and basic (amphoteric), they can all be joined with other amino acids to form proteins. This is because the chemistry of organic molecules depends much less on the number or the arrangement of carbon or hydrogen atoms than on the other types of atoms (O, N, S, P, Si…) in the molecule. We call parts of molecules containing small collections of these other atoms functional groups, simply because they are groups of atoms that determine the way the molecule works. All amino acids contain two functional groups: an amino (NH$_2$ or NH) group and a carboxylic acid (CO$_2$H) group (some contain other functional groups as well).

The functional groups determine the way the molecule works both chemically and biologically.
That isn’t to say the carbon atoms aren’t important; they just play quite a different role from those of the oxygen, nitrogen, and other atoms they are attached to. We can consider the chains and rings of carbon atoms we find in molecules as their skeletons, which support the functional groups and allow them to take part in chemical interactions, much as your skeleton supports your internal organs so they can interact with one another and work properly.

We will see later how the interpretation of organic structures as hydrocarbon frameworks supporting functional groups helps us to understand and rationalize the reactions of organic molecules. It also helps us to devise simple, clear ways of representing molecules on paper. You saw in Chapter 1 how we represented molecules on paper, and in the next section we shall teach you ways to draw (and ways not to draw) molecules—the handwriting of chemistry.

This section is extremely important, because it will teach you how to communicate chemistry, clearly and simply, throughout your life as a chemist.

Drawing molecules

Be realistic

Below is another organic structure—again, you may be familiar with the molecule it represents; it is a fatty acid commonly called linoleic acid.

We could also depict linoleic acid as

\[
\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}
\]

or as

X-ray crystallography discovers the structures of molecules by observing the way X-rays bounce off atoms in crystalline solids. It gives clear diagrams with the atoms marked as circles and the bonds as rods joining them together.
You can see that the chain of carbon atoms is not linear, but a zig-zag. Although our diagram is just a two-dimensional representation of this three-dimensional structure, it seems reasonable to draw it as a zig-zag too.

This gives us our first guideline for drawing organic structures.

---

**Guideline 1**

**Draw chains of atoms as zig-zags**

Realism of course has its limits—the X-ray structure shows that the linoleic acid molecule is in fact slightly bent in the vicinity of the double bonds; we have taken the liberty of drawing it as a ‘straight zig-zag’. Similarly, close inspection of crystal structures like this reveals that the angle of the zig-zag is about 109° when the carbon atom is not part of a double bond and 120° when it is. The 109° angle is the ‘tetrahedral angle’, the angle between two vertices of a tetrahedron when viewed from its centre. In Chapter 4 we shall look at why carbon atoms take up this particular arrangement of bonds. Our realistic drawing is a projection of a three-dimensional structure onto flat paper so we have to compromise.

**Be economical**

When we draw organic structures we try to be as realistic as we can be without putting in superfluous detail. Look at these three pictures.

1. is immediately recognizable as Leonardo da Vinci’s Mona Lisa. You may not recognize (2)—it’s also Leonardo da Vinci’s Mona Lisa—this time viewed from above. The frame is very ornate, but the picture tells us as much about the painting as our rejected linear and 90° angle diagrams did about
our fatty acid. They’re both correct—in their way—but sadly useless. What we need when we draw molecules is the equivalent of (3). It gets across the idea of the original, and includes all the detail necessary for us to recognize what it’s a picture of, and leaves out the rest. And it was quick to draw—this picture was drawn in less than 10 minutes: we haven’t got time to produce great works of art!

Because functional groups are the key to the chemistry of molecules, clear diagrams must emphasize the functional groups, and let the hydrocarbon framework fade into the background. Compare the diagrams below:

![Linoleic acid](image1)

The second structure is the way that most organic chemists would draw linoleic acid. Notice how the important carboxylic acid functional group stands out clearly and is no longer cluttered by all those Cs and Hs. The zig-zag pattern of the chain is much clearer too. And this structure is much quicker to draw than any of the previous ones!

To get this diagram from the one above we’ve done two things. Firstly, we’ve got rid of all the hydrogen atoms attached to carbon atoms, along with the bonds joining them to the carbon atoms. Even without drawing the hydrogen atoms we know they’re there—we assume that any carbon atom that doesn’t appear to have its potential for four bonds satisfied is also attached to the appropriate number of hydrogen atoms. Secondly, we’ve rubbed out all the Cs representing carbon atoms. We’re left with a zig-zag line, and we assume that every kink in the line represents a carbon atom, as does the end of the line.

We can turn these two simplifications into two more guidelines for drawing organic structures.

- **Guideline 2**
  Miss out the Hs attached to carbon atoms, along with the C–H bonds (unless there is a good reason not to)

- **Guideline 3**
  Miss out the capital Cs representing carbon atoms (unless there is a good reason not to)

**Be clear**

Try drawing some of the amino acids represented on p. 000 in a similar way, using the three guidelines. The bond angles at tetrahedral carbon atoms are about 109°. Make them look about 109° projected on to a plane! (120° is a good compromise, and it makes the drawings look neat.)

Start with leucine — earlier we drew it as the structure to the right. Get a piece of paper and do it now; then see how your drawing compares with our suggestions.
It doesn’t matter which way up you’ve drawn it, but your diagram should look something like one of these structures below.

![Structural diagrams](image)

The guidelines we gave were only guidelines, not rules, and it certainly does not matter which way round you draw the molecule. The aim is to keep the functional groups clear, and let the skeleton fade into the background. That’s why the last two structures are all right—the carbon atom shown as ‘C’ is part of a functional group (the carboxyl group) so it can stand out.

Now turn back to p. 000 and try redrawing the some of the other eight structures there using the guidelines. Don’t look at our suggestions below until you’ve done them! Then compare your drawings with our suggestions.

![Structural diagrams](image)

Remember that these are only suggestions, but we hope you’ll agree that this style of diagram looks much less cluttered and makes the functional groups much clearer than the diagrams on p. 000. Moreover, they still bear significant resemblance to the ‘real thing’—compare these crystal structures of lysine and tryptophan with the structures shown above, for example.

**Structural diagrams can be modified to suit the occasion**

You’ll probably find that you want to draw the same molecule in different ways on different occasions to emphasize different points. Let’s carry on using leucine as an example. We mentioned before that an amino acid can act as an acid or as a base. When it acts as an acid, a base (for example, hydroxide, OH⁻) removes H⁺ from the carboxylic acid group in a reaction we can represent as

\[
\text{leucine (acid form)} + \text{OH}^- \rightarrow \text{leucine (salt form)} + \text{H}_2\text{O}
\]

The product of this reaction has a negative charge on an oxygen atom. We have put it in a circle to make it clearer, and we suggest you do the same when you draw charges: +’s and −’s are easily mislaid. We shall discuss this type of reaction, the way in which reactions are drawn, and what the ‘curly arrows’ in the diagram mean in Chapter 5. But for now, notice that we drew out the CO₂H as the fragment left because we wanted to show how the O–H bond was broken when the base attacked. We modified our diagram to suit our own purposes.
When leucine acts as a base, the amino (NH₂) group is involved. The nitrogen atom attaches itself to a proton, forming a new bond using its *lone pair*.

We can represent this reaction as

![Diagram of the reaction](image)

Notice how we drew the lone pair at this time because we wanted to show how it was involved in the reaction. The oxygen atoms of the carboxylic acid groups also have lone pairs but we didn’t draw them in because they weren’t relevant to what we were talking about. Neither did we feel it was necessary to draw CO₂H in full this time because none of the atoms or bonds in the carboxylic acid functional group was involved in the reaction.

**Structural diagrams can show three-dimensional information on a two-dimensional page**

Of course, all the structures we have been drawing only give an idea of the real structure of the molecules. For example, the carbon atom between the NH₂ group and the CO₂H group of leucine has a tetrahedral arrangement of atoms around it, a fact which we have so far completely ignored.

We might want to emphasize this fact by drawing in the hydrogen atom we missed out at this point as in structure 1 (in the right-hand margin).

We can then show that one of the groups attached to this carbon atom comes towards us, out of the plane of the paper, and the other one goes away from us, into the paper. There are several ways of doing this. In structure 2, the bold, wedged bond suggests a perspective view of a bond coming towards you, while the hashed bond suggests a bond fading away from you. The other two ‘normal’ bonds are in the plane of the paper.

Alternatively we could miss out the hydrogen atom and draw something a bit neater though slightly less realistic as structure 3.

We can assume the missing hydrogen atom is behind the plane of the paper, because that is where the ‘missing’ vertex of the tetrahedron of atoms attached to the carbon atom lies. These conventions allow us to give an idea of the three-dimensional shape (stereochemistry) of any organic molecule—you have already seen them in use in the diagram of the structure of palytoxin at the beginning of this chapter.

---

**Reminder**

*Organic structures should be drawn to be realistic, economical, clear.*

We gave three guidelines to help you achieve this when you draw structures:

- **Guideline 1:** Draw chains of atoms as zig-zags
- **Guideline 2:** Miss out the Hs attached to carbon atoms, along with the C–H bonds
- **Guideline 3:** Miss out the capital Cs representing carbon atoms

---

The guidelines we have given and conventions we have illustrated in this section have grown up over decades. They are used by organic chemists because they work! We guarantee to follow them for the rest of the book—try to follow them yourself whenever you draw an organic structure. Before you ever draw a capital C or a capital H again, ask yourself whether it’s really necessary!

Now that we have considered how to draw structures, we can return to some of the structural types that we find in organic molecules. Firstly, we’ll talk about hydrocarbon frameworks, then about functional groups.
Hydrocarbon frameworks

Carbon as an element is unique in the variety of structures it can form. It is unusual because it forms strong, stable bonds to the majority of elements in the periodic table, including itself. It is this ability to form bonds to itself that leads to the variety of organic structures that exist, and indeed to the possibility of life existing at all. Carbon may make up only 0.2% of the earth’s crust, but it certainly deserves a whole branch of chemistry all to itself.

Chains

The simplest class of hydrocarbon frameworks contains just chains of atoms. The fatty acids we met earlier have hydrocarbon frameworks made of zig-zag chains of atoms, for example. Polythene is a polymer whose hydrocarbon framework consists entirely of chains of carbon atoms.

A section of the structure of polythene

At the other end of the spectrum of complexity is this antibiotic, extracted from a fungus in 1995 and aptly named linearmycin as it has a long linear chain. The chain of this antibiotic is so long that we have to wrap it round two corners just to get it on the page.

Names for carbon chains

It is often convenient to refer to a chain of carbon atoms by a name indicating its length. You have probably met some of these names before in the names of the simplest organic molecules, the alkanes. There are also commonly used abbreviations for these names: these can be very useful in both writing about chemistry and in drawing chemical structures, as we shall see shortly.

Names and abbreviations for carbon chains

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of carbon atoms in chain</th>
<th>Name of group</th>
<th>Formula†</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Name of alkane (= chain + H)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>-CH₃</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>methane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ethyl</td>
<td>-CH₂CH₃</td>
<td>Et</td>
<td>ethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>propyl</td>
<td>-CH₂CH₂CH₃</td>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>propane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>butyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₃CH₃</td>
<td>Bu</td>
<td>butane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pentyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₄CH₃</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>hexyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₅CH₃</td>
<td>—‡</td>
<td>hexane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>heptyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₆CH₃</td>
<td>—‡</td>
<td>heptane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>octyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₇CH₃</td>
<td>—‡</td>
<td>octane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nonyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₈CH₃</td>
<td>—‡</td>
<td>nonane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>decyl</td>
<td>-(CH₂)₉CH₃</td>
<td>—‡</td>
<td>decane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

† This representation is not recommended.
‡ Names for longer chains are not commonly abbreviated.
Organic elements

You may notice that the abbreviations for the names of carbon chains look very much like the symbols for chemical elements: this is deliberate, and these symbols are sometimes called ‘organic elements’. They can be used in chemical structures just like element symbols. It is often convenient to use the ‘organic element’ symbols for short carbon chains for tidiness. Here are some examples. Structure 1 to the right shows how we drew the structure of the amino acid methionine on p. 24. The stick representing the methyl group attached to the sulfur atom does, however, look a little odd. Most chemists would draw methionine as structure 2, with ‘Me’ representing the CH$_3$ (methyl) group. Tetraethyllead used to be added to petrol to prevent engines ‘knocking’, until it was shown to be a health hazard. Its structure (as you might easily guess from the name) is shown as item 3. But it’s much easier to write as PbEt$_4$ or Et$_4$Pb.

Remember that these symbols (and names) can only be used for terminal chains of atoms. We couldn’t abbreviate the structure of lysine from

![Lysine structure](image)

for example, because Bu represents

![Butyl structure](image)

and not

![Butyl structure](image)

Before leaving carbon chains, we must mention one other very useful organic element symbol, R. R in a structure can mean anything—it’s a sort of wild card. For example, structure 4 would indicate any amino acid, where R = H is glycine, R = Me is alanine… As we’ve mentioned before, and you will see later, the reactivity of organic molecules is so dependent on their functional groups that the rest of the molecule can be irrelevant. In these cases, we can choose just to call it R.

Carbon rings

Rings of atoms are also common in organic structures. You may have heard the famous story of Auguste Kekulé first realizing that benzene has a ring structure when he dreamed of snakes biting their own tails. You have met benzene rings in phenylalanine and aspirin. Paracetamol also has a structure based on a benzene ring.

![Benzene structure](image)

When a benzene ring is attached to a molecule by only one of its carbon atoms (as in phenylalanine, but not paracetamol or aspirin), we can call it a ‘phenyl’ group and give it the organic element symbol Ph.

![Phenyl group structure](image)

**Benzene has a ring structure**

In 1865, August Kekulé presented a paper at the Academie des Sciences in Paris suggesting a cyclic structure for benzene, the inspiration for which he ascribed to a dream. However, was Kekulé the first to suggest that benzene was cyclic? Some believe not, and credit an Austrian schoolteacher, Josef Loschmidt with the first depiction of cyclic benzene structures. In 1861, 4 years before Kekulé’s dream, Loschmidt published a book in which he represented benzene as a set of rings. It is not certain whether Loschmidt or Kekulé—or even a Scot named Archibald Couper—got it right first.
Any compound containing a benzene ring, or a related (Chapter 7) ring system is known as ‘aromatic’, and another useful organic element symbol related to Ph is Ar (for ‘aryl’). While Ph always means C₆H₅, Ar can mean any substituted phenyl ring, in other words, phenyl with any number of the hydrogen atoms replaced by other groups.

For example, while PhOH always means phenol, ArOH could mean phenol, 2,4,6-trichlorophenol (the antiseptic TCP), paracetamol or aspirin (among many other substituted phenols). Like R, the ‘wild card’ alkyl group, Ar is a ‘wild card’ aryl group.

The compound known as muscone has only relatively recently been made in the lab. It is the pungent aroma that makes up the base-note of musk fragrances. Before chemists had determined its structure and devised a laboratory synthesis the only source of musk was the musk deer, now rare for this very reason. Muscone’s skeleton is a 13-membered ring of carbon atoms.

The steroid hormones have several (usually four) rings fused together. These are testosterone and oestradiol, the important human male and female sex hormones.

Some ring structures are much more complicated. The potent poison strychnine is a tangle of interconnecting rings.

One of the most elegant ring structures is shown above and is known as Buckminsterfullerene. It consists solely of 60 carbon atoms in rings that curve back on themselves to form a football-shaped cage.

Count the number of bonds at any junction and you will see they add up to four so no hydrogens need be added. This compound is C₆₀. Note that you can’t see all the atoms as some are behind the sphere.

Rings of carbon atoms are given names starting with ‘cyclo’, followed by the name for the carbon chain with the same number of carbon atoms.
To the right, structure 1 shows chrysanthemic acid, part of the naturally occurring pesticides called pyrethrins (an example appears in Chapter 1), which contains a cyclopropane ring. Propane has three carbon atoms. Cyclopropane is a three-membered ring. Grandisol (structure 2), an insect pheromone used by male boll weevils to attract females, has a structure based on a cyclobutane ring. Butane has four carbon atoms. Cyclobutane is a four-membered ring. Cyclamate (structure 3), formerly used as an artificial sweetener, contains a cyclohexane ring. Hexane has six carbon atoms. Cyclohexane is a six-membered ring.

**Branches**

Hydrocarbon frameworks rarely consist of single rings or chains, but are often branched. Rings, chains, and branches are all combined in structures like that of the marine toxin palytoxin that we met at the beginning of the chapter, polystyrene, a polymer made of six-membered rings dangling from linear carbon chains, or of β-carotene, the compound that makes carrots orange.

Just like some short straight carbon chains, some short branched carbon chains are given names and organic element symbols. The most common is the isopropyl group. Lithium diisopropylamide (also called LDA) is a strong base commonly used in organic synthesis.

Iproniazid is an antidepressant drug with i-Pr in both structure and name. Notice how the ‘propyl’ part of ‘isopropyl’ still indicates three carbon atoms; they are just joined together in a different way—in other words, as an isomer of the straight chain propyl group. Sometimes, to avoid confusion, the straight chain alkyl groups are called ‘n-alkyl’ (for example, n-Pr, n-Bu)—n for ‘normal’—to distinguish them from their branched counterparts.

**Isomers** are molecules with the same kinds and numbers of atoms joined up in different ways. n-propanol, n-PrOH, and isopropanol, i-PrOH, are isomeric alcohols. Isomers need not have the same functional groups, these compounds are all isomers of C₄H₈O.
The isobutyl (i-Bu) group is a CH₂ group joined to an i-Pr group. It is \( i\text{-PrCH}_2\) –
Two isobutyl groups are present in the reducing agent diisobutyl aluminium hydride (DIBAL).

\[
\text{diisobutyl aluminium hydride (DIBAL) is equivalent to } \text{HAl-Bu}_2
\]

The painkiller ibuprofen (marketed as Nurofen\textsuperscript{®}) contains an isobutyl group.

There are two more isomers of the butyl group, both of which have common names and abbreviations. The \( s\)-butyl group (\( s\)-butyl or \( s\)-Bu) has a methyl and an ethyl group joined to the same carbon atom. It appears in an organolithium compound, \( s\)-butyl lithium, used to introduce lithium atoms into organic molecules.

The \( t\)-butyl group (\( t\)-butyl or \( t\)-Bu) group has three methyl groups joined to the same carbon atom. Two \( t\)-Bu groups are found in BHT ('butylated hydroxy toluene'), an antioxidant added to some processed foods.

\[
\text{The prefixes } s\text{- and } t\text{- are really short for secondary and tertiary, terms that refer to the carbon atom that attaches these groups to the rest of the molecular structure.}
\]

- **Primary, secondary, and tertiary**

  The prefixes \( s\)- and \( t\)- are really short for secondary and tertiary, terms that refer to the carbon atom that attaches these groups to the rest of the molecular structure.

  - methyl (no attached C)
  - primary (1 attached C)
  - secondary (2 attached C)
  - tertiary (3 attached C)
  - quaternary (4 attached C)

  A primary carbon atom is attached to only one other C atom, a secondary to two other C atoms, and so on. This means there are five types of carbon atom.

  These names for bits of hydrocarbon framework are more than just useful ways of writing or talking about chemistry. They tell us something fundamental about the molecule and we shall use them when we describe reactions.
This quick architectural tour of some of the molecular edifices built by nature and by man serves just as an introduction to some of the hydrocarbon frameworks you will meet in the rest of this chapter and of this book. Yet, fortunately for us, however complicated the hydrocarbon framework might be, it serves only as a support for the functional groups. And, by and large, a functional group in one molecule behaves in much the same way as it does in another molecule. What we now need to do, and we start in the next section, is to introduce you to some functional groups, and to explain why it is that their attributes are the key to understanding organic chemistry.

**Functional groups**

If you can take ethane gas (CH\(_3\)CH\(_3\), or EtH, or even \(\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_3\), though a single line like this doesn’t look much like a chemical structure) and bubble it through acids, bases, oxidizing agents, reducing agents—in fact almost any chemical you can think of—it will remain unchanged. Just about the only thing you can do with it is burn it. Yet ethanol (CH\(_3\)CH\(_2\)OH, or EtOH, or preferably EtOH) not only burns, it reacts with acids, bases, and oxidizing agents.

The difference between ethanol and ethane is the functional group—the OH or hydroxyl group. We know that these chemical properties (being able to react with acids, bases, and oxidizing agents) are properties of the hydroxyl group and not just of ethanol because other compounds containing OH groups (in other words, other alcohols) have similar properties, whatever their hydrocarbon frameworks.

Your understanding of functional groups will be the key to your understanding of organic chemistry. We shall therefore now go on to meet some of the most important functional groups. We won’t say much about the properties of each group; that will come in Chapter 5 and later. Your task at this stage is to learn to recognize them when they appear in structures, so make sure you learn their names. The classes of compound associated with some functional groups also have names: for example, compounds containing the hydroxyl group are known as alcohols. Learn these names too as they are more important than the systematic names of individual compounds.

We’ve told you a few snippets of information about each group to help you to get to know something of the group’s character.

**Alkanes contain no functional groups**

The alkanes are the simplest class of organic molecules because they contain no functional groups. They are extremely unreactive, and therefore rather boring as far as the organic chemist is concerned. However, their unreactivity can be a bonus, and alkanes such as pentane and hexane are often used as solvents, especially for purification of organic compounds. Just about the only thing alkanes will do is burn—methane, propane, and butane are all used as domestic fuels, and petrol is a mixture of alkanes containing largely isooctane.

**Alkenes (sometimes called olefins) contain C=C double bonds**

It may seem strange to classify a type of bond as a functional group, but you will see later that C=C double bonds impart reactivity to an organic molecule just as functional groups consisting of, say, oxygen or nitrogen atoms do. Some of the compounds produced by plants and used by perfumers are alkenes (see Chapter 1). For example, pinene has a smell evocative of pine forests, while limonene smells of citrus fruits.

**Ethanol**

The reaction of ethanol with oxidizing agents makes vinegar from wine and sober people from drunk ones. In both cases, the oxidizing agent is oxygen from the air, catalysed by an enzyme in a living system. The oxidation of ethanol by microorganisms that grow in wine left open to the air leads to acetic acid (ethanoic acid) while the oxidation of ethanol by the liver gives acetaldehyde (ethanal).

**Human metabolism and oxidation**

The human metabolism makes use of the oxidation of alcohols to render harmless other toxic compounds containing the OH group. For example, lactic acid, produced in muscles during intense activity, is oxidized by an enzyme called lactate dehydrogenase to the metabolically useful compound pyruvic acid.
You’ve already met the orange pigment β-carotene. Eleven C=C double bonds make up most of its structure. Coloured organic compounds often contain chains of C=C double bonds like this. In Chapter 7 you will find out why this is so.

Alkynes contain C≡C triple bonds
Just like C=C double bonds, C≡C triple bonds have a special type of reactivity associated with them, so it’s useful to call a C≡C triple bond a functional group. Alkynes are linear so we draw them with four carbon atoms in a straight line. Alkynes are not as widespread in nature as alkenes, but one fascinating class of compounds containing C≡C triple bonds is a group of antitumour agents discovered during the 1980s. Calicheamicin is a member of this group. The high reactivity of this combination of functional groups enables calicheamicin to attack DNA and prevent cancer cells from proliferating. For the first time we have drawn a molecule in three dimensions, with two bonds crossing one another—can you see the shape?

Alcohols (R–OH) contain a hydroxyl (OH) group
We’ve already talked about the hydroxyl group in ethanol and other alcohols. Carbohydrates are peppered with hydroxyl groups; sucrose has eight of them for example (a more three-dimensional picture of the sucrose molecule appears in Chapter 1).

Molecules containing hydroxyl groups are often soluble in water, and living things often attach sugar groups, containing hydroxyl groups, to otherwise insoluble organic compounds to keep them in solution in the cell. Calicheamicin, a molecule we have just mentioned, contains a string of sugars for just this reason. The liver carries out its task of detoxifying unwanted organic compounds by repeatedly hydroxylating them until they are water-soluble, and they are then excreted in the bile or urine.

Ethers (R¹–O–R²) contain an alkoxy group (–OR)
The name ether refers to any compound that has two alkyl groups linked through an oxygen atom. ‘Ether’ is also used as an everyday name for diethyl ether, Et₂O. You might compare this use of the word ‘ether’ with the common use of the word ‘alcohol’ to mean ethanol. Diethyl ether is a highly flammable solvent that boils at only 35 °C. It used to be used as an anaesthetic. Tetrahydrofuran (THF) is another commonly used solvent and is a cyclic ether.

Brevetoxin B is a fascinating naturally occurring compound that was synthesized in the laboratory in 1995. It is packed with ether functional groups in ring sizes from 6 to 8.
Amines (R–NH₂) contain the amino (NH₂) group
We met the amino group when we were discussing the amino acids: we mentioned that it was this group that gave these compounds their basic properties. Amines often have powerful fishy smells: the smell of putrescine is particularly foul. It is formed as meat decays. Many neurologically active compounds are also amines: amphetamine is a notorious stimulant.

Nitro compounds (R–NO₂) contain the nitro group (NO₂)
The nitro group (NO₂) is often incorrectly drawn with five bonds to nitrogen which you will see in Chapter 4, is impossible. Make sure you draw it correctly when you need to draw it out in detail. If you write just NO₂ you are all right!

Several nitro groups in one molecule can make it quite unstable and even explosive. Three nitro groups give the most famous explosive of all, TNT (trinitrotoluene), its kick.

However, functional groups refuse to be stereotyped. Nitrazepam also contains a nitro group, but this compound is marketed as Mogadon®, the sleeping pill.

Alkyl halides (fluorides R–F, chlorides R–Cl, bromides R–Br, or iodides R–I) contain the fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo groups
These three functional groups have similar properties—though alkyl iodides are the most reactive and alkyl fluorides the least. PVC (polyvinyl chloride) is one of the most widely used polymers—it has a chloro group on every other carbon atom along a linear hydrocarbon framework. Methyl iodide (MeI), on the other hand, is a dangerous carcinogen, since it reacts with DNA and can cause mutations in the genetic code.
Aldehydes (R–CHO) and ketones (R¹–CO–R²) contain the carbonyl group C=O

Aldehydes can be formed by oxidizing alcohols—in fact the liver detoxifies ethanol in the bloodstream by oxidizing it first to acetaldehyde (ethanal, CH₃CHO). Acetaldehyde in the blood is the cause of hangovers. Aldehydes often have pleasant smells—2-methylundecanal is a key component of the fragrance of Chanel No 5™, and ‘raspberry ketone’ is the major component of the flavour and smell of raspberries.

Carboxylic acids (R–CO₂H) contain the carboxyl group CO₂H

As their name implies, compounds containing the carboxylic acid (CO₂H) group can react with bases, losing a proton to form carboxylate salts. Edible carboxylic acids have sharp flavours and several are found in fruits—citric, malic, and tartaric acids are found in lemons, apples, and grapes, respectively.

Esters (R¹–CO₂R²) contain a carboxyl group with an extra alkyl group (CO₂R)

Fats are esters; in fact they contain three ester groups. They are formed in the body by condensing glycerol, a compound with three hydroxyl groups, with three fatty acid molecules.

Other, more volatile esters, have pleasant, fruity smells and flavours. These three are components of the flavours of bananas, rum, and apples:

Amides (R–CONH₂, R¹–CONHR², or R¹CONR²R³)

Proteins are amides: they are formed when the carboxylic acid group of one amino acid condenses with the amino group of another to form an amide linkage (also known as a peptide bond). One protein molecule can contain hundreds of amide bonds. Aspartame, the artificial sweetener marketed as NutraSweet®, on the other hand contains just two amino acids, aspartic acid and phenylalanine, joined through one amide bond. Paracetamol is also an amide.
Nitriles or cyanides (R–CN) contain the cyano group –C≡N
Nitrile groups can be introduced into molecules by reacting potassium cyanide with alkyl halides. The organic nitrile group has quite different properties associated with lethal inorganic cyanide: Laetrile, for example, is extracted from apricot kernels, and was once developed as an anticancer drug. It was later proposed that the name be spelt ‘liar-trial’ since the results of the clinical trials on laetrile turned out to have been falsified!

Acyl chlorides (acid chlorides) (R–COCl)
Acyl chlorides are reactive compounds used to make esters and amides. They are derivatives of carboxylic acids with the –OH replaced by –Cl, and are too reactive to be found in nature.

Acetals
Acetals are compounds with two single bonded oxygen atoms attached to the same carbon atom. Many sugars are acetals, as is laetrile which you have just met.

Carbon atoms carrying functional groups can be classified by oxidation level
All functional groups are different, but some are more different than others. For example, the structures of a carboxylic acid, an ester, and an amide are all very similar: in each case the carbon atom carrying the functional group is bonded to two heteroatoms, one of the bonds being a double bond. You will see in Chapter 12 that this similarity in structure is mirrored in the reactions of these three types of compounds, and in the ways in which they can be interconverted. Carboxylic acids, esters, and amides can be changed one into another by reaction with simple reagents or reducing agents. A reducing agent (a reagent which adds hydrogen atoms). We say that the carbon atoms carrying functional groups that can be interconverted without the need for reducing agents (or oxidizing agents) have the same oxidation level—in this case, we call it the ‘carboxylic acid oxidation level’.

In fact, amides can quite easily be converted into nitriles just by dehydration (removal of water), so we must give nitrile carbon atoms the same oxidation level as carboxylic acids, esters, and amides. Maybe you’re beginning to see the structural similarity between these four functional groups that you could have used to assign their oxidation level? In all four cases, the carbon atom has three bonds to heteroatoms, and only one to C or H. It doesn’t matter how many heteroatoms there are, just how many bonds to them. Having noticed this, we can also assign both carbon atoms in ‘CFC-113’, one of the environmentally unfriendly aerosol propellants/refrigerants that have caused damage to the earth’s ozone layer, to the carboxylic acid oxidation level.

Aldehydes and ketones contain a carbon atom with two bonds to heteroatoms; they are at the ‘aldehyde oxidation level’. The common laboratory solvent dichloromethane also has two bonds to heteroatoms, so it too contains a carbon atom at the aldehyde oxidation level, as do acetals.
Alcohols, ethers, and alkyl halides have a carbon atom with only one single bond to a heteroatom. We assign these the ‘alcohol oxidation level’, and they are all easily made from alcohols without oxidation or reduction.

Lastly, we must include simple alkanes, which have no bonds to heteroatoms, as an ‘alkane oxidation level’.

The small class of compounds that have a carbon atom with four bonds to heteroatoms is related to CO₂ and best described as at the carbon dioxide oxidation level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zero bonds to heteroatoms</th>
<th>One bond to heteroatom</th>
<th>Two bonds to heteroatoms</th>
<th>Three bonds to heteroatoms</th>
<th>Four bonds to heteroatoms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alkanes</td>
<td>Alcohol oxidation level</td>
<td>Aldehyde oxidation level</td>
<td>Carboxylic acid oxidation level</td>
<td>Carbon dioxide oxidation level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R₂⁻ R₃⁻ R₄⁻</td>
<td>R OH</td>
<td>R HC</td>
<td>R CO₂</td>
<td>O C O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alcohols</td>
<td>ketones</td>
<td>carboxylic acids</td>
<td>carbon dioxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ethers</td>
<td>acetal</td>
<td>esters</td>
<td>diethyl carbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>nitriles</td>
<td>amides</td>
<td>CFC-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alkyl halides</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alkenes and alkynes obviously don’t fit easily into these categories as they have no bonds to het-
eroatoms. Alkenes can be made from alcohols by dehydration without any oxidation or reduction so
it seems sensible to put them in the alcohol column. Similarly, alkynes and aldehydes are related by
hydration/dehydration without oxidation or reduction.

**Naming compounds**

So far, we have talked a lot about compounds by name. Many of the names we’ve used (palytoxin,
muscone, brevetoxin…) are simple names given to complicated molecules without regard for the
actual structure or function of the molecule—these three names, for example, are all derived from
the name of the organism from which the compound was first extracted. They are known as trivial
names, not because they are unimportant, but because they are used in everyday scientific conversa-
tion.

Names like this are fine for familiar compounds that are widely used and referred to by chemists,
biologists, doctors, nurses, perfumers alike. But there are over 16 million known organic com-
ponds. They can’t all have simple names, and no one would remember them if they did. For this
reason, the IUPAC (International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry) have developed systemat-
ic nomenclature, a set of rules that allows any compound to be given a unique name that can be
deduced directly from its chemical structure. Conversely, a chemical structure can be deduced from
its systematic name.

The problem with systematic names is that they tend to be grotesquely unpronounceable for any-
thing but the most simple molecules. In everyday speech and writing, chemists therefore do tend to
disregard them, and use a mixture of systematic and trivial names. Nonetheless, it’s important to
know how the rules work. We shall look next at systematic nomenclature, before going on to look at
the real language of chemistry.

**Systematic nomenclature**

There isn’t space here to explain all the rules for giving systematic names for compounds—they fill
several desperately dull volumes, and there’s no point knowing them anyway since computers will do
the naming for you. What we will do is to explain the principles underlying systematic nomencla-
ture. You should understand these principles, because they provide the basis for the names used by
chemists for the vast majority of compounds that do not have their own trivial names.

Systematic names can be divided into three parts: one describes the hydrocarbon framework; one
describes the functional groups; and one indicates where the functional groups are attached to the
skeleton.

You have already met the names for some simple fragments of hydrocarbon framework (methyl,
etyl, propyl…). Adding a hydrogen atom to these alkyl fragments and changing -yl to -ane makes
the alkanes and their names. You should hardly need reminding of their structures:

**Names for the hydrocarbon framework**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One carbon</th>
<th>Methane</th>
<th>( \text{CH}_4 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two carbons</td>
<td>Ethane</td>
<td>( \text{CH}_3 - \text{CH}_3 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three carbons</td>
<td>Propane</td>
<td>( \text{CH}_3 - \text{CH}_3 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclopropane</td>
<td>( \triangle )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The name of a functional group can be added to the name of a hydrocarbon framework either as a suffix or as a prefix. Some examples follow. It is important to count all of the carbon atoms in the chain, even if one of them is part of a functional group: so pentanenitrile is actually BuCN.

Compounds with functional groups attached to a benzene ring are named in a similar way. Numbers are used to locate functional groups

Sometimes a number can be included in the name to indicate which carbon atom the functional group is attached to. None of the above list needed a number—check that you can see why not for each one. When numbers are used, the carbon atoms are counted from one end. In most cases, either of two numbers could be used (depending on which end you count from); the one chosen is always the lower of the two. Again, some examples will illustrate this point. Notice again that some functional groups are named by prefixes, some by suffixes, and that the number always goes directly before the functional group name.
Here are some examples of compounds with more than one functional group.

Again, the numbers indicate how far the functional groups are from the end of the carbon chain. Counting must always be from the same end for each functional group. Notice how we use di-, tri-, tetra- if there are more than one of the same functional group.

With cyclic compounds, there isn’t an end to the chain, but we can use numbers to show the distance between the two groups—start from the carbon atom carrying one of the functional groups, then count round.

These rules work for hydrocarbon frameworks that are chains or rings, but many skeletons are branched. We can name these by treating the branch as though it were a functional group:

**Ortho, meta, and para**

With substituted benzene rings, an alternative way of identifying the positions of the substituents is to use the terms ortho, meta, and para. Ortho compounds are 1,2-disubstituted, meta compounds are 1,3-disubstituted, and para compounds are 1,4-disubstituted. Some examples should make this clear. ortho, meta, and para are often abbreviated to o, m, and p.
The terms ortho, meta, and para are used by chemists because they’re easier to remember than numbers, and the words carry with them chemical meaning. ‘Ortho’ shows that two groups are next to each other on the ring even though the atoms may not happen to be numbered 1 and 2. They are one example of the way in which chemists don’t always use systematic nomenclature but revert to more convenient ‘trivial’ terms. We consider trivial names in the next section.

What do chemists really call compounds?

The point of naming a compound is to be able to communicate with other chemists. Most chemists are happiest communicating chemistry by means of structural diagrams, and structural drawings are far more important than any sort of chemical nomenclature. That’s why we explained in detail how to draw structures, but only gave an outline of how to name compounds. Good diagrams are easy to understand, quick to draw, and difficult to misinterpret.

But we do need to be able to communicate by speech and by writing as well. In principle we could do this by using systematic names. In practice, though, the full systematic names of anything but the simplest molecules are far too clumsy for use in everyday chemical speech. There are several alternatives, mostly based on a mixture of trivial and systematic names.

Names for well known and widely used simple compounds

A few simple compounds are called by trivial names not because the systematic names are complicated, but just out of habit. We know them so well that we use their familiar names.

You may have met this compound before (left), and perhaps called it ethanoic acid, its systematic name. But in a chemical laboratory, everyone would refer to this acid as acetic acid, its trivial name. The same is true for all these common substances.

Trivial names like this are often long-lasting, well understood historical names that are less easy to confuse than their systematic counterparts. ‘Acetaldehyde’ is easier to distinguish from ‘ethanol’ than is ‘ethanal’.

Trivial names also extend to fragments of structures containing functional groups. Acetone, acetaldehyde, and acetic acid all contain the acetyl group (MeCO-, ethanoyl) abbreviated Ac and chemists often use this ‘organic element’ in writing AcOH for acetic acid or EtOAc for ethyl acetate.

Chemists use special names for four fragments because they have mechanistic as well as structural significance. These are vinyl and allyl; phenyl and benzyl.
Giving the vinyl group a name allows chemists to use simple trivial names for compounds like vinyl chloride, the material that polymerizes to give PVC (poly vinyl chloride) but the importance of the name lies more in the difference in reactivity (Chapter 17) between vinyl and allyl groups.

The allyl group gets its name from garlic (*Allium* sp.), because it makes up part of the structure of the compounds responsible for the taste and smell of garlic.

Allyl and vinyl are different in that the vinyl group is attached directly to a double bonded C=C carbon atom, while the allyl group is attached to a carbon atom adjacent to the C=C double bond. The difference is extremely important chemically: allyl compounds are typically quite reactive, while vinyl compounds are fairly unreactive.

For some reason, the allyl and vinyl groups have never acquired organic element symbols, but the benzyl group has and is called Bn. It is again important not to confuse the benzyl group with the phenyl group: the phenyl group is joined through a carbon atom in the ring, while the benzyl group is joined through a carbon atom attached to the ring. Phenyl compounds are typically unreactive but benzyl compounds are often reactive. Phenyl is like vinyl and benzyl is like allyl.

We shall review all the organic element element symbols you have met at the end of the chapter.

### Names for more complicated but still well known molecules

Complicated molecules that have been isolated from natural sources are always given trivial names, because in these cases, the systematic names really are impossible!

Strychnine is a famous poison featured in many detective stories and a molecule with a beautiful structure. All chemists refer to it as strychnine as the systematic name is virtually unpronounceable. Two groups of experts at IUPAC and *Chemical Abstracts* also have different ideas on the systematic name for strychnine. Others like this are penicillin, DNA, and folic acid.

But the champion is vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, a complicated cobalt complex with a three-dimensional structure of great intricacy. No chemist would learn this structure but would look it up in an advanced textbook of organic chemistry. You will find it in such books in the index under vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and not under its systematic name. We do not even know what its systematic name might be and we are not very interested. This is vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.

Even fairly simple but important molecules, the amino acids for example, that have systematic names that are relatively easy to understand are normally referred to by their trivial names.
trivial names which are, with a bit of practice, easy to remember and hard to muddle up. They are
given in full in Chapter 49.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{alanine, or} & \quad \text{2-aminopropanoic acid} \\
\text{leucine, or} & \quad \text{2-amino-4-methylpentanoic acid} \\
\text{lysine, or} & \quad \text{2,6-diaminohexanoic acid}
\end{align*}
\]

A very flexible way of getting new, simple names for compounds can be to combine a bit of sys-
tematic nomenclature with trivial nomenclature.

Alanine is a simple amino acid that occurs in proteins. Add a phenyl group and you have phenyl-
lalanine a more complex amino acid also in proteins.

Toluene, the common name for methylbenzene, can be combined (both chemically and in mak-
ing names for compounds!) with three nitro groups to give the famous explosive trinitrotoluene or
TNT.

Compounds named as acronyms

Some compounds are referred to by acronyms, shortened versions of either their systematic or their triv-
ial name. We just saw TNT as an abbreviation for TriNitroToluene but the commoner use for acronyms
is to define solvents and reagents in use all the time. Later in the book you will meet these solvents.

![The names and structures of these common solvents need learning too.]

The following reagents are usually referred to by acronym and their functions will be introduced
in other chapters so you do not need to learn them now. You may notice that some acronyms refer to
trivial and some to systematic names. There is a glossary of acronyms for solvents, reagents, and
other compounds on p. 000.

LDA
\text{Lithium Di-isopropyl Amide}

DIBAL
\text{Di-isoButylAluminiumhydride}

PCC
\text{Pyridinium Chlorochromate}

DEAD
\text{DiEthyl Azo-Dicarboxylate}

Compounds for which chemists use systematic names

You may be surprised to hear that practising organic chemists use systematic names at all in view of
what we have just described, but they do! Systematic names really begin with derivatives of pentane
\((C_5H_{12})\) since the prefix pent- means five, whereas but- does not mean four. Chemists refer to sim-
ple derivatives of open chain and cyclic compounds with 5 to about 20 carbon atoms by their system-
atic names, providing that there is no common name in use. Here are some examples.

- cyclopentadiene
- cyclo-octa-1,5-diene
- cyclocodeca-1,5,9-triene
- 2,7-dimethyl-3,5-octadiyne-2,7-diol
These names contain a syllable that tells you the framework size: penta- for C₅, octa- for C₈, nona- for C₉, undeca- for C₁₁, and dodeca- for C₁₂. These names are easily worked out from the structures and, what is more important, you get a clear idea of the structure from the name. One of them might make you stop and think a bit (which one?), but the others are clear even when heard without a diagram to look at.

Complicated molecules with no trivial names

When chemists make complex new compounds in the laboratory, they publish them in a chemical journal giving their full systematic names in the experimental account, however long and clumsy those names may be. But in the text of the paper, and while talking in the lab about the compounds they have made, they will just call them ‘the amine’ or ‘the alkene’. Everyone knows which amine or alkene is meant because at some point they remember seeing a chemical structure of the compound. This is the best strategy for talking about almost any molecule: draw a structure, then give the compound a ‘tag’ name like ‘the amine’ or ‘the acid’. In written chemistry it’s often easiest to give every chemical structure a ‘tag’ number as well.

To illustrate what we mean, let’s talk about this compound.

This carboxylic acid was made and used as an intermediate when chemists in California made brevetoxin (see p. 000) in 1995. Notice how we can call a complicated molecule ‘this acid’—a ‘tag’ name—because you’ve seen the structure. It also has a tag number (19), so we can also call it ‘compound 19’, or ‘acid 19’, or ‘brevetoxin fragment 19’. How much more sensible than trying to work out its systematic name.

How should you name compounds?

So what should you call a compound? It really depends on circumstances, but you won’t go far wrong if you follow the example of this book. We shall use the names for compounds that real

---

### Our advice on chemical names—six points in order of importance

- Draw a structure first and worry about the name afterwards
- Learn the names of the functional groups (ester, nitrile, etc.)
- Learn and use the names of a few simple compounds used by all chemists
- In speech, refer to compounds as ‘that acid’ (or whatever) while pointing to a diagram
- Grasp the principles of systematic (IUPAC) nomenclature and use it for compounds of medium size
- Keep a notebook to record acronyms, trivial names, structures, etc. that you might need later
chemists use. There’s no need to learn all the commonly used names for compounds now, but you should log them in your memory as you come across them. Never allow yourself to pass a compound name by unless you are sure you know what chemical structure it refers to. You will find many of the commonly used names for compounds on the endpapers of this book. Refer to these, or to the shorter glossary on p. 000 to refresh your memory should you ever need to.

We’ve met a great many molecules in this chapter. Most of them were just there to illustrate points so don’t learn their structures! Instead, learn to recognize the names of the functional groups they contain. However, there were 10 names for simple compounds and three for common solvents that we advised you to learn. Cover up the structures on the rest of this page and draw the structures for these 13 compounds.

That’s all we’ll say on the subject of nomenclature—you’ll find that as you practise using these names and start hearing other people referring to compounds by name you’ll soon pick up the most important ones. But, to reiterate, make sure you never pass a compound name by without being absolutely sure what it refers to—draw a structure to check.
1. Draw good diagrams of saturated hydrocarbons with seven carbon atoms having (a) linear, (b) branched, and (c) cyclic frameworks. Draw molecules based on each framework having both ketone and carboxylic acid functional groups.

2. Study the structure of brevetoxin on p. 000. Make a list of the different types of functional group (you already know that there are many ethers) and of the numbers of rings of different sizes. Finally study the carbon framework—is it linear, cyclic, or branched?

3. What is wrong with these structures? Suggest better ways of representing these molecules.

4. Draw structures corresponding to these names. In each case suggest alternative names that might convey the structure more clearly to someone who is listening to you speak.
   (a) 1,4-di-1(1-dimethylethyl)benzene
   (b) 2-(prop-2-enyloxy)prop-1-ene
   (c) cyclohexa-1,3,5-triene

5. Draw one possible structure for each of these molecules, selecting any group of your choice for the ‘wild card’ substituents.

6. Translate these very poor ‘diagrams’ of molecules into more realistic structures. Try to get the angles about right and, whatever you do, don’t include any square coplanar carbon atoms or other bond angles of 90°!

7. Suggest at least six different structures that would fit the formula C₆H₇NO. Make good realistic diagrams of each one and say which functional group(s) are present.

8. Draw and name a structure corresponding to each of these descriptions.
   (a) An aromatic compound containing one benzene ring with the following substituents: two chlorine atoms having a para relationship, a nitro group having an ortho relationship to one of the chlorine atoms, and an acetyl group having a meta relationship to the nitro group.
An alkyne having a trifluoromethyl substituent at one end and a chain of three carbon atoms at the other with a hydroxyl group on the first atom, an amino group on the second, and the third being a carboxyl group.

9. Draw full structures for these compounds, displaying the hydrocarbon framework clearly and showing all the bonds present in the functional groups. Name the functional groups.

- AcO(CH₂)₃NO₂
- MeO₂C.CH₂.COEt
- CH₂=CH.CO.NH(CH₂)₂CN

10. Identify the oxidation level of each of the carbon atoms in these structures with some sort of justification.

11. If you have not already done so, complete the exercises on pp. 000 (drawing amino acids) and 000 (giving structures for the 10 common compounds and three common solvents).
Determining organic structures

Introduction

Organic structures can be determined accurately and quickly by spectroscopy

Having urged you, in the last chapter, to draw structures realistically, we now need to answer the question: what is realistic? How do we know what structures molecules actually have? Make no mistake about this important point: we really do know what shape molecules have. You wouldn’t be far wrong if you said that the single most important development in organic chemistry in modern times is just this certainty, as well as the speed with which we can be certain. What has caused this revolution can be stated in a word—spectroscopy.

Structure of the chapter

We shall first consider structure determination as a whole and then introduce three different methods:

- Mass spectrometry (to determine mass of molecule and atomic composition)
- Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy (to determine carbon skeleton of molecule)
- Infrared spectroscopy (to determine functional groups in molecule)

Of these, NMR is more important than all the rest put together and so we shall return to it in Chapter 11. Then in Chapter 15, after we’ve discussed a wider range of molecules, there will be a review chapter to bring the ideas together and show you how unknown structures are really determined.
you would like more details of any of the spectroscopic methods we discuss, you should refer to a specialized book.

**X-ray is the final appeal**

In Chapter 2 we suggested you draw saturated carbon chains as zig-zags and not in straight lines with 90° or 180° bond angles. This is because we know they are zig-zags. The X-ray crystal structure of the ‘straight’ chain diacid, hexanedioic acid, is shown below. You can clearly see the zig-zag chain the planar carboxylic acid groups, and even the hydrogen atoms coming towards you and going away from you. It obviously makes sense to draw this molecule realistically as in the second drawing.

\[
\text{HO}_2\text{C}-(\text{CH}_2)_4-\text{CO}_2\text{H}
\]

hexanedioic acid

shape of hexanedioic acid

data for structure taken from Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre

This is one question that X-ray answers better than any other method: what shape does a molecule have? Another important problem it can solve is the structure of a new unknown compound. There are bacteria in oil wells, for example, that use methane as an energy source. It is amazing that bacteria manage to convert methane into anything useful, and, of course, chemists really wanted to know how they did it. Then in 1979 it was found that the bacteria use a coenzyme, given the trivial name ‘methoxatin’, to oxidize methane to methanol. Methoxatin was a new compound with an unknown structure and could be obtained in only very small amounts. It proved exceptionally difficult to solve the structure by NMR but eventually methoxatin was found by X-ray crystallography to be a polycyclic tricarboxylic acid. This is a more complex molecule than hexanedioic acid but X-ray crystallographers routinely solve much more complex structures than this.

**X-ray crystallography has its limitations**

If X-ray crystallography is so powerful, why do we bother with other methods? There are two reasons.

- X-ray crystallography works by the scattering of X-rays from electrons and requires crystalline solids. If an organic compound is a liquid or is a solid but does not form good crystals, its structure cannot be determined in this way.
X-ray crystallography is a science in its own right, a separate discipline from chemistry because it requires specific skills, and a structure determination can take a long time. Modern methods have reduced this time to a matter of hours or less, but nonetheless by contrast a modern NMR machine with a robot attachment can run more than 100 spectra in an overnight run. So we normally use NMR routinely and reserve X-rays for difficult unknown structures and for determining the detailed shape of important molecules.

Outline of structure determination by spectroscopy

Put yourself in these situations.

- Finding an unknown product from a chemical reaction
- Discovering an unknown compound from Nature
- Detecting a suspected food contaminant
- Routinely checking purity during the manufacture of a drug

In all cases except perhaps the second you need a quick and reliable answer. Suppose you are trying to identify the heart drug propranolol, one of the famous ‘beta blockers’ used to reduce high blood pressure and prevent heart attacks. You would first want to know the molecular weight and atomic composition and this would come from a mass spectrum: propranolol has a molecular weight (relative molecular mass) of 259 and the composition $C_{16}H_{21}NO_2$. Next you would need the carbon skeleton—this would come from NMR, which would reveal the three fragments shown.

There are many ways in which these fragments could be joined together and at this stage you would have no idea whether the oxygen atoms were present as OH groups or as ethers, whether the nitrogen would be an amine or not, and whether Y and Z might or might not be the same atom, say N. More information comes from the infrared spectrum, which highlights the functional groups, and which would show that there is an OH and an NH in the molecule but not functional groups such as CN or NO$_2$. This still leaves a variety of possible structures, and these could finally be distinguished by another technique, $^1$H NMR. We are in fact going to avoid using $^1$H NMR in this chapter, because it is more difficult, but you will learn just how much information can be gained from mass spectra, IR spectra, and $^{13}$C NMR spectra.

Now we must go through each of these methods and see how they give the information they do. For this exercise, we will use some compounds you encounter in everyday life, perhaps without realizing it.

[Note: This text contains chemical structures and diagrams that are not as easily interpreted in natural text format.]
Mass spectrometry

Mass spectrometry weighs the molecule

A mass spectrometer has three basic components: something to volatilize and ionize the molecule into a beam of charged particles; something to focus the beam so that particles of the same mass:charge ratio are separated from all others; and something to detect the particles. All spectrometers in common use operate in a high vacuum and usually use positive ions. Two methods are used to convert neutral molecules into cations: electron impact and chemical ionization.

Mass spectrometry by electron impact

In electron impact (E.I.) mass spectrometry the molecule is bombarded with highly energetic electrons that knock a weakly bound electron out of the molecule. If you think this is strange, think of throwing bricks at a brick wall: the bricks do not stick to the wall but knock loose bricks off the top of the wall. Losing a single electron leaves behind a radical cation: an unpaired electron and a positive charge. The electron that is lost will be one of relatively high energy (the bricks come from the top of the wall), and this will typically be one not involved in bonding, for example, an electron from a lone pair. Thus ammonia gives NH₃⁺ and a ketone gives R₂C=O⁺⁺. If the electron beam is not too high in energy, some of these rather unstable radical cations will survive the focusing operation and get to the detector. Normally two focusing operations are used: the beam is bent magnetically and electrostatically to accelerate the cations on their way to the detector and it takes about 20 μs for the cations to get there. But if, as is often the case, the electron beam supplies more than exactly the right amount of energy to knock out the electron, the excess energy is dissipated by fragmentation of the radical cation. Schematically, an unknown molecule first forms the radical cation M⁺⁺ which then breaks up (fragments) to give a radical X⁻ and a cation Y⁺. Only charged particles (cations in most machines) can be accelerated and focused by the magnetic and electrostatic fields and so the detector records only the molecular ion M⁺⁺ and positively charged fragments Y⁺. Uncharged radicals X⁻ are not recorded.

### What each spectroscopic method tells us

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method and what it does</th>
<th>What it tells us</th>
<th>Type of data provided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mass spectrum weighs the molecule</td>
<td>molecular weight (relative molecular mass) and composition</td>
<td>259; C₁₈H₂₁NO₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¹³C NMR reveals all different carbon nuclei</td>
<td>carbon skeleton</td>
<td>no C=O group; ten carbons in aromatic rings; two carbons next to O; three other saturated C atoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrared reveals chemical bonds</td>
<td>functional groups</td>
<td>no C=O group; one OH; one NH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A typical result is the E.I. mass spectrum for the alarm pheromone of the honey bee. The bees check every insect coming into the hive for strangers. If a strange insect (even a bee from another hive) is detected, an alarm pheromone is released and the intruder is attacked. The pheromone is a simple volatile organic molecule having this mass spectrum.

The strongest peak, at 43 mass units in this case, is assigned an 'abundance' of 100% and called the base peak. The abundance of the other peaks is shown relative to the base peak. In this spectrum, there is only one other strong peak (58 at 50%) and the peak of highest mass at 114 (at 5%) is the molecular ion corresponding to a structure $C_7H_{14}O$. The main fragmentation is to a $C_5H_{11}{\cdot}$ radical (not observed as it isn’t charged) and a cation $C_2H_3O^+$, which forms the base peak. The pheromone is the simple ketone heptan-2-one.

The problem with E.I. is that for many radical cations even 20 $\mu$s is too long, and all the molecular ions have decomposed by the time they reach the detector. The fragments produced may be useful in identifying the molecule, but even in the case of the bee alarm pheromone it would obviously be better to get a stronger and more convincing molecular ion as the weak (5%) peak at 114 might also be a fragment or even an impurity.
Mass spectrometry by chemical ionization

In chemical ionization (C.I.) mass spectrometry the electron beam is used to ionize a simple molecule such as methane which in turn ionizes our molecule by collision and transfer of a proton. Under electron bombardment, methane loses a bonding electron (it doesn’t have any other kind) to give CH₄⁺ which reacts with a unionized methane molecule to give CH₃ and CH₅⁺. Before you write in complaining about a mistake, just consider that last structure in a bit more detail. Yes, CH₅⁺ does have a carbon atom with five bonds. But it has only eight electrons! These are distributed between five bonds (hence the + charge) and the structure is thought to be trigonal bipyramidal. This structure has not been determined as it is too unstable. It is merely proposed from theoretical calculations.

This unstable compound is a powerful acid, and can protonate just about any other molecule. When it protonates our sample, a proton has been added rather than an electron removed, so the resulting particles are simple cations, not radical cations, and are generally more stable than the radical cations produced by direct electron impact. So the molecular ion has a better chance of lasting the necessary 20 μs to reach the detector. Note that we now observe [M + H]⁺ (i.e. one more than the molecular mass) rather than M⁺ by this method.

Having more functional groups helps molecular ions to decompose. The aromatic amine 2-phenylethylamine is a brain active amine found in some foods such as chocolate, red wine, and cheese and possibly implicated in migraine. It gives a poor molecular ion by E.I., a base peak with a mass as low as 30 and the only peak at higher mass is a 15% peak at 91. The C.I. mass spectrum on the other hand has a good molecular ion: it is [M + H]⁺ of course. Normally a fragmentation gives one cation and another radical, only the cation being detected. It is relatively unusual for one bond to be able to fragment in either direction, but here it does, which means that both fragments are seen in the spectrum.

Mass spectrometry separates isotopes

You will know in theory that most elements naturally exist as mixtures of isotopes. If you didn’t believe it, now you will. Chlorine is normally a 3:1 mixture of ³⁵Cl and ³⁷Cl (hence the obviously false relative atomic mass of ‘35.5’ for chlorine) while bromine is an almost 1:1 mixture of ⁷⁹Br and ⁸¹Br (hence the ‘average’ mass of 80 for bromine!). Mass spectrometry separates these isotopes so that you get true not average molecular weights. The molecular ion in the E.I. mass spectrum of the bromo-amide below has two peaks at 213 and 215 of roughly equal intensity. This might just represent the loss of molecular hydrogen from a molecular ion 215, but, when we notice that the first fragment (and base peak) has the same pattern at 171/173, the presence of bromine is a more likely explanation. All the smaller fragments at 155, 92, etc. lack the 1:1 pattern and also therefore lack bromine.
The mass spectrum of chlorobenzene (PhCl, C₆H₅Cl) is very simple. There are two peaks at 112 (100%) and 114 (33%), a peak at 77 (40%), and very little else. The peaks at 112/114 with their 3:1 ratio are the molecular ions, while the fragment at 77 is the phenyl cation (Ph⁺ or C₆H₅⁺).

The mass spectrum of DDT is very revealing. This very effective insecticide became notorious as it accumulated in the fat of birds of prey (and humans) and was phased out of use. It can be detected easily by mass spectrometry because the five chlorine atoms produce a complex molecular ion at 252/254/256/258/260 with ratios of 243:405:270:90:15:1 (the last is too small to see). The peak at 252 contains nothing but ³⁵Cl, the peak at 254 has four atoms of ³⁵Cl and one atom of ³⁷Cl, while the invisible peak at 260 has five ³⁷Cl atoms. The ratios need some working out, but the first fragment at 235/237/239 in a ratio 9:6:1 is easier. It shows just two chlorine atoms as the CCl₃ group has been lost as a radical, leaving C₁₃H₆Cl₂⁺.

Table 3.1 Summary table of main isotopes for mass spectra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Carbon</th>
<th>Chlorine</th>
<th>Bromine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isotopes</td>
<td>¹²C, ¹³C</td>
<td>³⁵Cl, ³⁷Cl</td>
<td>⁷⁹Br, ⁸¹Br</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rough ratio</td>
<td>1.1% ¹³C (90:1)</td>
<td>3:1</td>
<td>1:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It’s worth remembering that the Ph⁺ weights 77: you’ll see this mass frequently.

Remember: mass spectroscopy is very good at detecting minute quantities.
Carbon has a minor but important isotope \(^{13}\text{C}\)

Many elements have minor isotopes at below the 1% level and we can ignore these. One important one we cannot ignore is the 1.1% of \(^{13}\text{C}\) present in ordinary carbon. The main isotope is \(^{12}\text{C}\) and you may recall that \(^{14}\text{C}\) is radioactive and used in carbon dating, but its natural abundance is minute. The stable isotope \(^{13}\text{C}\) is not radioactive, but it is NMR active as we shall soon see. If you look back at the mass spectra illustrated so far in this chapter, you will see a small peak one mass unit higher than each peak in most of the spectra. This is no instrumental aberration: these are genuine peaks containing \(^{13}\text{C}\) instead of \(^{12}\text{C}\). The exact height of these peaks is useful as an indication of the number of carbon atoms in the molecule. If there are \(n\) carbon atoms in a molecular ion, then the ratio of \(M^+\) to \([M + 1]^+\) is 100: \((1.1) \times n\).
The electron impact mass spectrum of BHT gives a good example. The molecular ion at 220 has an abundance of 34% and [M + 1]+ at 221 has 5–6% abundance but is difficult to measure as it is so weak. BHT is C15H26O so this should give an [M + 1]+ peak due to $^{13}\text{C}$ of 15 \times 1.1\% of M+, that is, 16.5\% of M+ or $34 \times 16.5 = 5.6\%$ actual abundance. An easier peak to interpret is the base peak at 205 formed by the loss of one of the six identical methyl groups from the $t$-butyl side chains (don’t forget what we told you in Chapter 2—all the ‘sticks’ in these structures are methyl groups and not hydrogen atoms). The base peak (100%) 205 is [M—Me]+ and the $^{13}\text{C}$ peak 206 is 15%, which fits well with $14 \times 1.1\% = 15.4\%$.

Other examples you have seen include the DDT spectrum, where the peaks between the main peaks are $^{13}\text{C}$ peaks: thus 236, 238, and 240 are each 14\% of the peak one mass unit less, as this fragment has 13 carbon atoms. If the number of carbons gets very large, so does the $^{13}\text{C}$ peak; eventually it is more likely that the molecule contains one $^{13}\text{C}$ than that it doesn’t. We can ignore the possibility of two $^{13}\text{C}$ atoms as 1.1\% of 1.1\% is very small (probability of $1.32 \times 10^{-5}$).

Table 3.2 summarizes the abundance of the isotopes in these three elements. Notice that the ratio for chlorine is not exactly 3:1 nor that for bromine exactly 1:1; nevertheless you should use the simpler ratios when examining a mass spectrum. Always look at the heaviest peak first: see whether there is chlorine or bromine in it,
and whether the ratio of $M^+$ to $[M + 1]^+$ is about right. If, for example, you have what seems to be $M^+$ at 120 and the peak at 121 is 20% of the supposed $M^+$ at 120, then this cannot be a $^{13}$C peak as it would mean that the molecule would have to contain 18 carbon atoms and you cannot fit 18 carbon atoms into a molecular ion of 120. Maybe 121 is the molecular ion.

**Atomic composition can be determined by high resolution mass spectrometry**

Ordinary mass spectra tell us the molecular weight (MW) of the molecule: we could say that the bee alarm pheromone was MW 114. When we said it was C$_7$H$_{14}$O we could not really speak with confidence because 114 could also be many other things such as C$_8$H$_{18}$ or C$_6$H$_{16}$O$_2$ or C$_6$H$_{14}$N$_2$. These different atomic compositions for the same molecular weight can nonetheless be distinguished if we know the exact molecular weight, since individual isotopes have non-integral masses (except $^{12}$C by definition). Table 3.3 gives these to five decimal places, which is the sort of accuracy you need for meaningful results. Such accurate mass measurements are called high resolution mass spectrometry.

For the bee alarm pheromone, the accurate mass turns out to be 114.1039. Table 3.4 compares possible atomic compositions, and the result is conclusive. The exact masses to three places of decimals fit the observed exact mass only for the composition C$_7$H$_{14}$O. You may not think the fit is very good when you look at the two numbers, but notice the difference in the error expressed as parts per million. One answer stands out from the rest. Note that even two places of decimals would be enough to distinguish these four compositions.

A more important case is that of the three ions at 28: nitrogen, carbon monoxide, and ethylene (ethene, CH$_2$=CH$_2$). Actually mass spectra rarely go down to this low value because some nitrogen is usually injected along with the sample, but the three ions are all significant and it is helpful to see how different they are. Carbon monoxide CO is 27.9949, nitrogen N$_2$ is 28.0061, and ethylene 28.0313.

One thing you may have noticed in Table 3.4 is that there are no entries with just one nitrogen atom. Two nitrogen atoms, yes; one nitrogen no! This is because any complete molecule with one nitrogen in it has an odd molecular weight. Look back at the mass spectrum of the compounds giving good molecular ions by C.I. for an example. The nitro compound had M = 127 and the amine M = 121. This is because C, O, and N all have even atomic weights—only H has an odd atomic weight. Nitrogen is the only element from C, O, and N that can form an odd number of bonds (3). Molecules with one nitrogen atom must have an odd number of hydrogen atoms and hence an odd molecular weight. Molecules with only C, H, and O or with even numbers of nitrogen atoms have even molecular weights.

If we are talking about fragments, that is, cations or radicals, the opposite applies. A fragment has, by definition, an unused valency. Look back at the fragments in this section and you will see that this is so. Fragments with C, H, O alone have odd molecular weights, while fragments with one nitrogen atom have even molecular weights.

**Nuclear magnetic resonance**

What does it do?

Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) allows us to detect atomic nuclei and say what sort of environment they are in, within their molecule. Clearly, the hydrogen of, say, propanol's hydroxyl group is...
different from the hydrogens of its carbon skeleton—it can be displaced by sodium metal, for example. NMR (actually $^1$H, or proton, NMR) can easily distinguish between these two sorts of hydrogens. Moreover, it can also distinguish between all the other different sorts of hydrogen atoms present. Likewise, carbon (or rather $^{13}$C) NMR can easily distinguish between the three different carbon atoms. In this chapter we shall look at $^{13}$C NMR spectra and then in Chapter 11 we shall look at proton ($^1$H) NMR spectra in detail.

NMR is incredibly versatile: it can even scan living human brains (see picture) but the principle is still the same: being able to detect nuclei (and hence atoms) in different environments. We need first to spend some time explaining the principles of NMR.

**NMR uses a strong magnetic field**

Imagine for a moment that we were able to ‘switch off’ the earth’s magnetic field. One effect would be to make navigation much harder since all compasses would be useless. They would be free to point in whatever direction they wanted to and, if we turned the needle round, it would simply stay where we left it. However, as soon as we switched the magnetic field back on, they would all point north—their lowest energy state. Now if we wanted to force a needle to point south we would have to use up energy and, of course, as soon as we let go, the needle would return to its lowest energy state, pointing north.

In a similar way, some atomic nuclei act like tiny compass needles and have different energy levels when placed in a magnetic field. The compass needle can rotate through 360° and have an essentially infinite number of different energy levels, all higher in energy than the ‘ground state’ (pointing north). Fortunately, our atomic nucleus is more restricted—its energy levels are quantized, just like the energy levels of an electron, which you will meet in the next chapter, and there are only certain specific energy levels it can adopt. This is like allowing our compass needle to point, say, only north or south. Some nuclei (including ‘normal’ carbon-12) do not interact with a magnetic field at all and cannot be observed in an NMR machine. The nuclei we shall be looking at, $^1$H and $^{13}$C, do interact and have just two different energy levels. When we apply a magnetic field to these nuclei, they can either align themselves with it, which would be the lowest energy state, or they can align themselves against the field, which is higher in energy.

Let us return to the compass for a moment. We have already seen that if we could switch off the earth’s magnetic field it would be easy to turn the compass needle round. When it is back on we need to push the needle (do work) to displace it from north. If we turned up the earth’s magnetic field still more, it would be even harder to displace the compass needle. Exactly how hard it is to turn the compass needle depends on how strong the earth’s magnetic field is and also on how well our needle is magnetized—if it is only weakly magnetized, it is much easier to turn it round and, if it isn’t magnetized at all, it is free to rotate.

Likewise, with our nucleus in a magnetic field, the difference in energy between the nuclear spin aligned with and against the applied field depends on how strong the magnetic field is, and also on the properties of the nucleus itself. The stronger the magnetic field we put our nucleus in, the greater the energy difference between the two alignments. Now here is an unfortunate thing about NMR: the energy difference between the nuclear spin being aligned with the magnetic field and against it is really very small—so small that we need a very, very strong magnetic field to see any difference at all.
NMR also uses radio waves

A $^1$H or $^{13}$C nucleus in a strong magnetic field can have two energy levels. We could do work to make our nucleus align against the field rather than with it (just like turning the compass needle round). But since the energy difference between the two states is so small, we don’t need to do much work. In fact, the amount of energy needed to flip the nucleus can be provided by electromagnetic radiation of radio-wave frequency. Radio waves flip the nucleus from the lower energy state to the higher state. The nucleus now wants to return to the lower energy state and, when it does so, the energy comes out again and this (a tiny pulse of radiofrequency electromagnetic radiation) is what we detect.

We can now sum up how an NMR machine works.

1. The sample of the unknown compound is dissolved in a suitable solvent and put in a very strong magnetic field. Any atomic nuclei with a nuclear spin now have different energy levels, the exact number of different energy levels depending on the value of the nuclear spin. For $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR there are two energy levels

2. The sample is irradiated with a short pulse of radiofrequency energy. This disturbs the equilibrium balance between the two energy levels: some nuclei absorb the energy and are promoted to a higher energy level

3. We then detect the energy given out when the nuclei fall back down to the lower energy level using what is basically a sophisticated radio receiver

4. After lots of computation, the results are displayed in the form of intensity (i.e. number of absorptions) against frequency. Here is an example, which we shall return to in more detail later

Why do chemically distinct nuclei absorb energy at different frequencies?

In the spectrum you see above, each line represents a different kind of carbon atom: each one absorbs energy (or resonates—hence the term nuclear magnetic resonance) at a different frequency. But why should carbon atoms be ‘different’? We have told you two factors that affect the energy difference (and therefore the frequency)—the magnetic field strength and what sort of nucleus is being studied. So you might expect all carbon-13 nuclei to resonate at one particular frequency and all protons ($^1$H) to resonate at one (different) frequency. But they don’t.
The variation in frequency for different carbon atoms must mean that the energy jump from nucleus-aligned-with to nucleus-aligned-against the applied magnetic field must be different for each type of carbon atom. The reason there are different types of carbon atom is that their nuclei experience a magnetic field that is not quite the same as the magnetic field that we apply. Each nucleus is surrounded by electrons, and in a magnetic field these will set up a tiny electric current. This current will set up its own magnetic field (rather like the magnetic field set up by the electrons of an electric current moving through a coil of wire or solenoid), which will oppose the magnetic field that we apply. The electrons are said to shield the nucleus from the external magnetic field. If the electron distribution varies from $^{13}$C atom to $^{13}$C atom, so does the local magnetic field, and so does the resonating frequency of the $^{13}$C nuclei. Now, you will see shortly (in Chapter 5) that a change in electron density at a carbon atom also alters the chemistry of that carbon atom. NMR tells us about the chemistry of a molecule as well as about its structure.

As an example, consider ethanol, CH$_3$CH$_2$OH. The carbon attached to the OH group will have relatively fewer electrons around it compared to the other carbon since the oxygen atom is more electronegative and draws electrons towards it, away from the carbon atom.

The magnetic field that this (red) carbon nucleus feels will therefore be slightly greater than that felt by the (green) carbon with more electrons since the red carbon is less shielded from the applied external magnetic field—in other words it is deshielded. Since the carbon attached to the oxygen feels a stronger magnetic field, there will be a greater energy difference between the two alignments of its nucleus. The greater the energy difference, the higher the resonant frequency. So for ethanol we would expect the red carbon with the OH group attached to resonate at a higher frequency than the green carbon, and indeed this is exactly what the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum shows.

The chemical shift scale
When you look at an NMR spectrum you will see that the scale does not appear to be in magnetic field units, nor in frequency units, but in ‘parts per million’ (p.p.m.). There is an excellent reason for
this and we need to explain it. The exact frequency at which the nucleus resonates depends on the external applied magnetic field. This means that, if the sample is run on a machine with a different magnetic field, it will resonate at a different frequency. It would make life very difficult if we couldn’t say exactly where our signal was, so we say how far it is from some reference sample, as a fraction of the operating frequency of the machine. We know that all protons resonate at approximately the same frequency in a given magnetic field and that the exact frequency depends on what sort of chemical environment it is in, which in turn depends on its electrons. This approximate frequency is the operating frequency of the machine and simply depends on the strength of the magnet—the stronger the magnet, the larger the operating frequency. The precise value of the operating frequency is simply the frequency at which a standard reference sample resonates. In everyday use, rather than actually referring to the strength of the magnet in tesla, chemists usually just refer to its operating frequency. A 9.4 T NMR machine is referred to as a 400 MHz spectrometer since that is the frequency in this strength field at which the protons in the reference sample resonate; other nuclei, for example $^{13}\text{C}$, would resonate at a different frequency, but the strength is arbitrarily quoted in terms of the proton operating frequency.

**The reference sample—tetramethylsilane, TMS**

The compound we use as a reference sample is usually tetramethylsilane, TMS. This is silane ($\text{SiH}_4$) with each of the hydrogen atoms replaced by methyl groups to give $\text{Si(CH}_3)_4$. The four carbon atoms attached to silicon are all equivalent and, because silicon is more electronegative than carbon, are fairly electron-rich (or shielded), which means they resonate at a frequency a little less than that of most organic compounds. This is useful because it means our reference sample is not bang in the middle of our spectrum!

The chemical shift, $\delta$, in parts per million (p.p.m.) of a given nucleus in our sample is defined in terms of the resonance frequency as:

$$\delta = \frac{\text{frequency (Hz)} - \text{frequency TMS (Hz)}}{\text{frequency TMS (MHz)}}$$

No matter what the operating frequency (i.e. strength of the magnet) of the NMR machine, the signals in a given sample (e.g. ethanol) will always occur at the same chemical shifts. In ethanol the (red) carbon attached to the OH resonates at 57.8 p.p.m. whilst the (green) carbon of the methyl group resonates at 18.2 p.p.m. Notice that by definition TMS itself resonates at 0 p.p.m. The carbon nuclei in most organic compounds resonate at greater chemical shifts, normally between 0 and 200 p.p.m.

Now, let’s return to the sample spectrum you saw on p. 000 and which is reproduced below, and you can see the features we have discussed. This is a 100 MHz spectrum; the horizontal axis is actually frequency but is usually quoted in p.p.m. of the field of the magnet, so each unit is one p.p.m. of 100 MHz, that is, 100 Hz. We can tell immediately from the three peaks at 176.8, 66.0, and 19.9 p.p.m. that there are three different types of carbon atom in the molecule.

But we can do better than this: we can also work out what sort of chemical environment the carbon atoms are in. All $^{13}\text{C}$ spectra can be divided into four major regions: saturated carbon atoms (0–50 p.p.m.), saturated carbon atoms next to oxygen (50–100 p.p.m.), unsaturated carbon atoms (100–150 p.p.m.), and unsaturated carbon atoms next to oxygen, i.e. $\text{C}=\text{O}$ groups (150–200 p.p.m.).
The spectrum you just saw is in fact of lactic acid (2-hydroxypropanoic acid). When you turned the last page, you made some lactic acid from glucose in the muscles of your arm—it is the breakdown product from glucose when you do anaerobic exercise. Each of lactic acid’s carbon atoms gives a peak in a different region of the spectrum.

Different ways of describing chemical shift

The chemical shift scale runs to the left from zero (where TMS resonates)—i.e. backwards from the usual style. Chemical shift values around zero are obviously small but are confusingly called ‘high field’ because this is the high magnetic field end of the scale. We suggest you say ‘large’ or ‘small’ chemical shift and ‘large’ or ‘small’ δ, but ‘high’ or ‘low’ field to avoid confusion. Alternatively, use ‘upfield’ for high field (small δ) and ‘downfield’ for low field (large δ).

One helpful description we have already used is shielding. Each carbon nucleus is surrounded by electrons that shield the nucleus from the applied field. Simple saturated carbon nuclei are the most shielded: they have small chemical shifts (0–50 p.p.m.) and resonate at high field. One electron-negative oxygen atom moves the chemical shift downfield into the 50–100 p.p.m. region. The nucleus has become deshielded. Unsaturated carbon atoms experience even less shielding (100–150 p.p.m.) because of the way in which electrons are distributed around the nucleus. If the π bond is to oxygen, then the nucleus is even more deshielded and moves to the largest chemical shifts around 200 p.p.m. The next diagram summarizes these different ways of talking about NMR spectra.

A guided tour of NMR spectra of simple molecules

We shall first look at NMR spectra of a few simple compounds before looking at unknown structures. Our very first compound, hexanedioic acid, has the simple NMR spectrum shown here. The first question is: why only three peaks for six carbon atoms? Because of the symmetry of the molecule, the two carboxylic acids are identical and give one peak at 174.2 p.p.m. By the same token C2 and C5 are identical while C3 and C4 are identical. These are all in the saturated region 0–50 p.p.m. but it is likely that the carbons next to the electron-withdrawing CO₂H group are more deshielded than the others. So we assign C2/C5 to the peak at 33.2 p.p.m. and C3/C4 to 24.0 p.p.m.
The bee alarm pheromone (heptan-2-one) has no symmetry so all its seven carbon atoms are different. The carbonyl group is easy to identify (208.8 p.p.m., highlighted in red) but the rest are more difficult. Probably the two carbon atoms next to the carbonyl group come at lowest field, while C7 is certainly at highest field (13.9 p.p.m.). It is important that there are the right number of signals at about the right chemical shift. If that is so, we are not worried if we cannot assign each frequency to a precise carbon atom.

You met BHT on p. 000: its formula is C15H24O and the first surprise in its NMR spectrum is that there are only seven signals for the 15 carbon atoms. There is obviously a lot of symmetry; in fact the molecule has a plane of symmetry vertically as it is drawn here. The very strong signal at $\delta = 30.4$ p.p.m. belongs to the six identical methyl groups on the t-butyl groups and the other two signals in the 0–50 p.p.m. range are the methyl group at C4 and the central carbons of the t-butyl groups. In the aromatic region there are only four signals as the two halves of the molecule are the same. As with the last example, we are not concerned with exactly which is which; we just check that there are the right number of signals with the right chemical shifts.

Paracetamol is a familiar painkiller with a simple structure—it too is a phenol but in addition it has an amide on the benzene ring. Its NMR spectrum contains one saturated carbon atom at 24 p.p.m. (the methyl group of the amide side chain), one carbonyl group at 168 p.p.m., and four other peaks at 115, 122, 132, and 153 p.p.m. These are the carbons of the benzene ring. Why four peaks? The two sides of the benzene ring are the same because the NHCO-CH3 side chain can rotate rapidly so that C2 and C6 are the same and C3 and C5 are the same. Why is one of these aromatic peaks in the C=O region at 153 p.p.m.? This must be C4 as it is bonded to oxygen, and it just reminds us that carbonyl groups are not the only unsaturated carbon atoms bonded to oxygen (see the chart on p. 000), though it is not as deshielded as the true C=O group at 168 p.p.m.
The effects of deshielding within the saturated carbon region

We have mentioned deshielding several times. The reference compound TMS (Me₄Si) has very shielded carbon atoms because silicon is more electropositive than carbon. Oxygen moves a saturated carbon atom downfield to larger chemical shifts (50–100 p.p.m.) because it is much more electronegative than carbon and so pulls electrons away from a carbon atom by polarizing the C–O bond. In between these extremes was a CO₂H group that moved its adjacent carbon down to around 35 p.p.m. These variations in chemical shift within each of the 50 p.p.m. regions of the spectrum are a helpful guide to structure as the principle is simple.

- **Electronegative atoms move adjacent carbon atoms downfield (to larger δ) by deshielding.**

For the carbon atom next to the carboxylic acid, the oxygen atoms are, of course, no longer adjacent but one atom further away, so their deshielding effect is not as great.

The reverse is true too: electropositive atoms move adjacent carbon atoms upfield by shielding. This is not so important as there are few atoms found in organic molecules that are more electropositive than silicon and so few carbons are more shielded than those in Me₄Si. About the only important elements like this are the metals. When a carbon atom is more shielded than those in TMS, it has a negative δ value. There is nothing odd about this—the zero on the NMR scale is an arbitrary point. Table 3.5 shows a selection of chemical shift changes caused to a methyl group by changes in electronegativity.

**Table 3.5** Effect of electronegativity on chemical shift

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electronic effect</th>
<th>Electronegativity of atom bonded to carbon</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>δ(CH₃)</th>
<th>δ(CH₃) – 8.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>donation</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>CH₃–Li</td>
<td>-14</td>
<td>-22.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>CH₃–H</td>
<td>-2.3</td>
<td>-10.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>CH₃–SiMe₃</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>-8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no effect</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>CH₃–CH₃</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>CH₃–NH₂</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>C H₃–COR</td>
<td>-30</td>
<td>-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↓</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>CH₃–OH</td>
<td>50.2</td>
<td>41.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdrawal</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>CH₃–F</td>
<td>75.2</td>
<td>66.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The last column in Table 3.5 shows the effect that each substituent has when compared to ethane. In ethane there is no electronic effect because the substituent is another methyl group so this column gives an idea of the true shift caused by a substituent. These shifts are roughly additive. Look back at the spectrum of lactic acid on p. 000: the saturated carbons occur at 19.9 and 66.0. The one at 66.0 is next both to an oxygen atom and a carbonyl group so that the combined effect would be about 42 + 22 = 64—not a bad estimate.

**NMR is a powerful tool for solving unknown structures**

Simple compounds can be quickly distinguished by NMR. These three alcohols of formula C₄H₁₀O have quite different NMR spectra.
Each alcohol has a saturated carbon atom next to oxygen, all close together. Then there are carbons next door but one to oxygen: they are back in the 0–50 p.p.m. region but at its low field end—about 30–35 p.p.m.. Notice the similarity of these chemical shifts to those of carbons next to a carbonyl group (Table 3.5 on p. 000). In each case we have C–C–O and the effects are about the same. Two of the alcohols have carbon(s) one further away still at yet smaller chemical shift (further upfield, more shielded) at about 20 p.p.m., but only the \( n \)-butanol has a more remote carbon still at 15.2. The number and the chemical shift of the signals identify the molecules very clearly.

A more realistic example would be an unknown molecule of formula C\(_3\)H\(_6\)O. There are seven reasonable structures, as shown. Simple symmetry can distinguish structures A, C, and E from the rest as these three have only two types of carbon atom. A more detailed inspection of the spectra makes identification easy. The two carbonyl compounds, D and E, each have one peak in the 150–220 p.p.m. region but D has two different saturated carbon atoms while E has only one. The two alkenes, F and G, both have one saturated carbon atom next to oxygen, but F has two normal unsaturated carbon atoms (100–150 p.p.m.) while the enol ether, G, has one normal alkene and one unsaturated carbon joined to oxygen. The three saturated compounds (A–C) present the greatest problem. The epoxide, B, has two different carbon atoms next to oxygen (50–100 p.p.m.) and one normal saturated carbon atom. The remaining two both have one signal in the 0–50 and one in the 50–100 p.p.m. regions. Only proton NMR (Chapter 11) and, to a certain extent, infrared spectroscopy (which we will move on to shortly) will distinguish them reliably.

Here are NMR spectra of three of these molecules. Before looking at the solutions, cover up the rest of the page and see if you can assign them to the structures above. Try also to suggest which signals belong to which carbon atoms.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n-butanol</th>
<th>isobutanol</th>
<th>t-butanol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>70.2</td>
<td>69.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.0</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>32.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

The C atoms have been arbitrarily colour-coded.

The meanings of \( n \), iso-, and \( t \) were covered in Chapter 2 (p. 000).

An epoxide is a three-membered cyclic ether.
These shouldn’t give you too much trouble. The only carbonyl compound with two identical carbons is acetone, $\text{Me}_2\text{CO}$ (E) so spectrum 3 must be that one. Notice the very low field C=O signal (206.6 p.p.m.) typical of a simple ketone. Spectrum 1 has two unsaturated carbons and a saturated carbon next to oxygen so it must be F or G. In fact it has to be F as both unsaturated carbons are similar (137 and 116 p.p.m.) and neither is next to oxygen (>150 p.p.m., cf. 206.6 in spectrum 3). This leaves spectrum 2, which appears to have no carbon atoms next to oxygen as all chemical shifts are less than 50 p.p.m. No compound fits that description (impossible for $\text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{O}$ anyway!) and the two signals at 48.0 and 48.2 p.p.m. are suspiciously close to the borderline. They are, of course, next to oxygen and this is compound B.

Infrared spectra

Functional groups are identified by infrared spectra

Some functional groups, for example, C=O or C=C, can be seen in the NMR spectrum because they contain carbon atoms, while the presence of others like OH can be inferred from the chemical shifts of the carbon atoms they are joined to. Others cannot be seen at all. These might include NH$_2$ and NO$_2$, as well as variations around a carbonyl group such as COCl, CO$_2$H, and CONH$_2$. Infrared (IR) spectroscopy provides a way of finding these functional groups because it detects the stretching and bending of bonds rather than any property of the atoms themselves. It is particularly good at detecting the stretching of unsymmetrical bonds of the kind found in functional groups such as OH, C=O, NH$_2$, and NO$_2$.

NMR requires electromagnetic waves in the radio-wave region of the spectrum to make nuclei flip from one state to another. The amount of energy needed for stretching and bending individual bonds, while still very small, corresponds to rather shorter wavelengths. These wavelengths lie in the infrared, that is, heat radiation just to the long wavelength side of visible light. When the carbon skeleton of a molecule vibrates, all the bonds stretch and relax in combination and these absorptions are unhelpful. However some bonds stretch essentially independently of the rest of the molecule. This occurs if the bond is either:

- much stronger or weaker than others nearby, or
- between atoms that are much heavier or lighter than their neighbours

Indeed, the relationship between the frequency of the bond vibration, the mass of the atoms, and the strength of the bond is essentially the same as Hooke’s law for a simple harmonic oscillator.

$$\nu = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sqrt{\frac{f}{\mu}}$$

The equation shows that the frequency of the vibration $\nu$ is proportional to the (root of) a force constant $f$—more or less the bond strength—and inversely proportional to the (root of) a reduced mass $\mu$, that is, the product of the masses of the two atoms forming the bond divided by their sum.

$$\mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2}$$

Stronger bonds vibrate faster and so do lighter atoms. You may at first think that stronger bonds ought to vibrate more slowly, but a moment’s reflection will convince you of the truth: which stretches and contracts faster, a tight steel spring or a slack steel spring?

Infrared spectra are simple absorption spectra. The sample is exposed to infrared radiation and the wavelength scanned across the spectrum. Whenever energy corresponding to a specific wavelength is absorbed, the intensity of the radiation reaching a detector momentarily decreases, and this is recorded in the spectrum. Infrared spectra are usually recorded using a frequency measurement called wavenumber ($\text{cm}^{-1}$) which is the inverse of the true wavelength $\lambda$ in centimetres to give convenient numbers (500–4000 cm$^{-1}$). Higher numbers are to the left of the spectrum because it is really wavelength that is being scanned.
We need to use another equation here:

\[ E = h\nu = h\frac{c}{\lambda} \quad \text{since} \quad \lambda = \frac{c}{\nu} \]

The energy, \( E \), required to excite a bond vibration can be expressed as the inverse of a wavelength \( \lambda \) or as a frequency \( \nu \). Wavelength and frequency are just two ways of measuring the same thing. More energy is needed to stretch a strong bond and you can see from this equation that larger \( E \) means higher wavenumbers (cm\(^{-1}\)) or smaller wavelength (cm).

To run the spectrum, the sample is either dissolved in a solvent such as CHCl\(_3\) (chloroform) that has few IR absorptions, pressed into a transparent disc with powdered solid KBr, or ground into an oily slurry called a mull with a hydrocarbon oil called ‘Nujol’. Solutions in CHCl\(_3\) cannot be used for looking at the regions of C–Cl bond stretching nor can Nujol mulls be used for the region of C–H stretching. Neither of these is a great disadvantage, especially as nearly all organic compounds have some C–H bonds anyway.

We shall now examine the relationship between bond stretching and frequency in more detail. Hooke’s law told us to expect frequency to depend on both mass and bond strengths, and we can illustrate this double dependence with a series of bonds of various elements to carbon.

| Values chiefly affected by mass of atoms: (lighter atom, higher frequency) |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| C–H             | C–D            | C–O            | C–Cl           |
| 3000 cm\(^{-1}\) | 2200 cm\(^{-1}\) | 1100 cm\(^{-1}\) | 700 cm\(^{-1}\) |

| Values chiefly affected by bond strength (stronger bond, higher frequency) |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| C\(=\)O        | C=O            | C–O            |
| 2143 cm\(^{-1}\) | 1715 cm\(^{-1}\) | 1100 cm\(^{-1}\) |

Just because they were first recorded in this way, infrared spectra have the baseline at the top and peaks going downwards. You might say that they are plotted upside down and back to front. At least you are now accustomed to the horizontal scale running backwards as that happens in NMR spectra too. A new feature is the change in scale at 2000 cm\(^{-1}\) so that the right-hand half of the spectrum is more detailed than the left-hand half. A typical spectrum looks like this.
There are four important regions of the infrared spectrum

You will see at once that the infrared spectrum contains many lines, particularly at the right-hand (lower frequency) end; hence the larger scale at this end. Many of these lines result from several bonds vibrating together and it is actually the left-hand half of the spectrum that is more useful.

The first region, from about 4000 to about 2500 cm\(^{-1}\) is the region for C–H, N–H, and O–H bond stretching. Most of the atoms in an organic molecule (C, N, O, for example) are about the same weight. Hydrogen is an order of magnitude lighter than any of these and so it dominates the stretching frequency by the large effect it has on the reduced mass. The reduced mass of a C–C bond is \((12 \times 12)/(12 + 12)\), i.e. 144/24 = 6.0. If we change one of these atoms for H, the reduced mass changes to \((12 \times 1)/ (12 + 1)\), i.e. 12/13 = 0.92, but, if we change it instead for F, the reduced mass changes to \((12 \times 19)/ (12 + 19)\), i.e. 228/31 = 7.35. There is a small change when we increase the mass to 19 (F), but an enormous change when we decrease it to 1 (H).

Even the strongest bonds—triple bonds such as C≡C or C≡N—absorb at slightly lower frequencies than bonds to hydrogen: these are in the next region from about 2500 to 2000 cm\(^{-1}\). This and the other two regions of the spectrum follow in logical order of bond strength as the reduced masses are all about the same: double bonds such as C=C and C=O from about 1900–1500 cm\(^{-1}\) and single bonds at the right-hand end of the spectrum. These regions are summarized in this chart, which you should memorize.

Looking back at the typical spectrum, we see peaks in the X–H region at about 2950 cm\(^{-1}\) which are the C–H stretches of the CH\(_3\) and CH\(_2\) groups. The one rather weak peak in the triple bond region (2270 cm\(^{-1}\)) is of course the C≡N group and the strong peak at about 1670 cm\(^{-1}\) belongs to the C=O group. We shall explain soon why some IR peaks are stronger than others. The rest of the spectrum is in the single bond region. This region is not normally interpreted in detail but is characteristic of the compound as a whole rather in the way that a fingerprint is characteristic of an individual human...
being—and, similarly, it cannot be ‘interpreted’. It is indeed called the fingerprint region. The useful information from this spectrum is the presence of the CN and C=O groups and the exact position of the C=O absorption.

The X–H region distinguishes C–H, N–H, and O–H bonds

The reduced masses of the C–H, N–H, and O–H combinations are all about the same. Any difference between the positions of the IR bands of these bonds must then be due to bond strength. In practice, C–H stretches occur at around 3000 cm\(^{-1}\) (though they are of little use as virtually all organic compounds have C–H bonds), N–H stretches occur at about 3300 cm\(^{-1}\), and O–H stretches higher still. We can immediately deduce that the O–H bond is stronger than N–H which is stronger than C–H. IR is a good way to measure such bond strengths.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond</th>
<th>Reduced mass, (\mu)</th>
<th>IR frequency, cm(^{-1})</th>
<th>Bond strength, kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–H</td>
<td>12/13 = 0.92</td>
<td>2900–3200</td>
<td>CH(_4): 440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N–H</td>
<td>14/15 = 0.93</td>
<td>3300–3400</td>
<td>NH(_3): 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O–H</td>
<td>16/17 = 0.94</td>
<td>3500–3600(^a)</td>
<td>H(_2)O: 500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)When not hydrogen-bonded: see below.

The X–H IR stretches are very different in these four compounds.

The IR peak of an NH group is different from that of an NH\(_2\) group. A group gives an independent vibration only if both bond strength and reduced mass are different from those of neighbouring bonds. In the case of N–H, this is likely to be true and we usually get a sharp peak at about 3300 cm\(^{-1}\), whether the NH group is part of a simple amine (R\(_2\)NH) or an amide (RCONHR). The NH\(_2\) group is also independent of the rest of the molecule, but the two NH bonds inside the NH\(_2\) group have identical force constants and reduced masses and so vibrate as a single unit. Two equally strong bands appear, one for the two N–H bonds vibrating in phase (symmetric) and one for the two N–H bonds vibrating in opposition (antisymmetric). The antisymmetric vibration requires more energy and is at slightly higher frequency.
The O–H bands occur at higher frequency, sometimes as a sharp absorption at about 3600 cm\(^{-1}\). More often, you will see a broad absorption at anywhere from 3500 to 2900 cm\(^{-1}\). This is because OH groups form strong hydrogen bonds that vary in length and strength. The sharp absorption at 3600 cm\(^{-1}\) is the non-hydrogen-bonded OH and the lower the absorption the stronger the H bond.

Alcohols form hydrogen bonds between the hydroxyl oxygen of one molecule and the hydroxyl hydrogen of another. These bonds are variable in length (though they are usually rather longer than normal covalent O–H bonds) and they slightly weaken the true covalent O–H bonds by varying amounts. When a bond varies in length and strength it will have a range of stretching frequencies distributed about a mean value. Alcohols typically give a rounded absorption at about 3300 cm\(^{-1}\) (contrast the sharp N–H stretch in the same region). Carboxylic acids (RCO2H) form hydrogen-bonded dimers with two strong H bonds between the carbonyl oxygen atom of one molecule and the acidic hydrogen of the other. These also vary considerably in length and strength and usually give very broad V-shaped absorbances.

Good examples are paracetamol and BHT. Paracetamol has a typical sharp peak at 3330 cm\(^{-1}\) for the N–H stretch and then a rounded absorption for the hydrogen-bonded O–H stretch from 3300 down to 3000 cm\(^{-1}\) in the gap between the N–H and C–H stretches. By contrast, BHT has a sharp absorption at 3600 cm\(^{-1}\) as the two large and roughly spherical t-butyl groups prevent the normal H bond from forming.
You may be confused the first time you see the IR spectrum of a terminal alkyne, \( R-\text{C} \equiv \text{C}-\text{H} \), because you will see a strongish sharp peak at around \( 3300 \text{ cm}^{-1} \) that looks just like an \( \text{N}–\text{H} \) stretch. The displacement of this peak from the usual \( \text{C}–\text{H} \) stretch at about \( 3000 \text{ cm}^{-1} \) cannot be due to a change in the reduced mass and must be due to a marked increase in bond strength. The alkyne \( \text{C}–\text{H} \) bond is shorter and stronger than alkane \( \text{C}–\text{H} \) bonds.

The double bond region is the most important in IR spectra

In the double bond region, there are three important absorptions, those of the carbonyl (\( \text{C}=\text{O} \)), alkene (\( \text{C}==\text{C} \)), and nitro (\( \text{NO}_2 \)) groups. All give rise to sharp bands: \( \text{C}=\text{O} \) to one strong (i.e. intense) band anywhere between 1900 and 1500 cm\(^{-1}\); \( \text{C}==\text{C} \) to one weak band at about 1640 cm\(^{-1}\); and \( \text{NO}_2 \) to two strong (intense) bands in the mid-1500s and mid-1300s cm\(^{-1}\). The number of bands is easily dealt with. Just as with \( \text{OH} \) and \( \text{NH}_2 \), it is a matter of how many identical bonds are present in the same functional group. Carbonyl and alkene clearly have one double bond each. The nitro group at first appears to contain two different groups, \( \text{N}^+–\text{O}^- \) and \( \text{N}=\text{O} \), but delocalization means they are identical and we see absorption for symmetrical and antisymmetrical stretching vibrations. As with \( \text{NH}_2 \), more work is needed for the antisymmetrical vibration which occurs at higher frequency (>1500 plus cm\(^{-1}\)).
The strength of an IR absorption depends on dipole moment

Now what about the variation in strength (i.e. intensity, the amount of energy absorbed)? The strength of an IR absorption varies with the change of dipole moment when the bond is stretched. If the bond is perfectly symmetrical, there is no change in dipole moment and there is no IR absorption. Obviously, the C=C bond is less polar than either C=O or N=O and is weaker in the IR. Indeed it may be absent altogether in a symmetrical alkene. By contrast the carbonyl group is very polar (Chapter 4) and stretching it causes a large change in dipole moment and C=O stretches are usually the strongest peaks in the IR spectrum. You may also have noticed that O–H and N–H stretches are stronger than C–H stretches (even though most organic molecules have many more C–H bonds than O–H or N–H bonds); the reason is the same.

Dipole moments

Dipole moment depends on the variation in distribution of electrons along the bond, and also its length, which is why stretching a bond can change its dipole moment. For bonds between unlike atoms, the larger the difference in electronegativity, the greater the dipole moment, and the more it changes when stretched. For identical atoms (C=C, for example) the dipole moment, and its capacity to change with stretching, is much smaller. Stretching frequencies for symmetrical molecules are measured using Raman spectra. This is an IR-based technique using scattered light that relies on polarizability of bonds. Raman spectra are outside the scope of this book.

This is a good point to remind you of the various deductions we have made so far about IR spectra.

Absorptions in IR spectra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position of band depends on →</th>
<th>reduced mass of atoms</th>
<th>light atoms give high frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bond strength</td>
<td></td>
<td>high frequency strong bonds give high frequency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Strength of band depends on → | change in dipole moment | large dipole moment gives strong absorption |

| Width of band depends on → | hydrogen bonding | strong H bond gives wide peak |

We have seen three carbonyl compounds so far in this chapter and they all show peaks in the right region (around 1700 cm⁻¹) even though one is a carboxylic acid, one a ketone, and one an amide. We shall consider the exact positions of the various carbonyl absorptions in Chapter 15 after we have discussed some carbonyl chemistry.
The single bond region is used as a molecular fingerprint

The region below 1500 cm\(^{-1}\) is where the single bond vibrations occur. Here our hope that individual bonds may vibrate independently of the rest of the molecule is usually doomed to disappointment. The atoms C, N, and O all have about the same atomic weight and C–C, C–N, and C–O single bonds all have about the same strength.

In addition, C–C bonds are likely to be joined to other C–C bonds with virtually identical strength and reduced mass, and they have essentially no dipole moments. The only one of these single bonds of any value is C–O which is polar enough and different enough (Table 3.7) to show up as a strong absorption at about 1100 cm\(^{-1}\). Some other single bonds such as C–Cl (weak and with a large reduced mass) are quite useful at about 700 cm\(^{-1}\). Otherwise the single bond region is usually crowded with hundreds of absorptions from vibrations of all kinds used as a ‘fingerprint’ characteristic of the molecule but not really open to interpretation.

Among the hundreds of peaks in the fingerprint region, there are some of a quite different kind. Stretching is not the only bond movement that leads to IR absorption. Bending of bonds, particularly C–H and N–H bonds, also leads to quite strong peaks. These are called deformations. Bending a bond is easier than stretching it (which is easier, stretching or bending an iron bar?). Consequently, bending absorptions need less energy and come at lower frequencies than stretching absorptions for the same bonds. These bands may not often be useful in identifying molecules, but you will notice them as they are often strong (they are usually stronger than C=C stretches for example) and may wonder what they are.

Finally in this section, we summarize all the useful absorptions in the fingerprint region. Please be cautious in applying these as there are other reasons for bands in these positions.

### Table 3.7 Single bonds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pair of atoms</th>
<th>Reduced mass</th>
<th>Bond strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–C</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>350 kJ mol(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–N</td>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>305 kJ mol(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–O</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>360 kJ mol(^{-1})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3.8 Useful deformations (bending vibrations)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Frequency, cm(^{-1})</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH(_2)</td>
<td>1440–1470</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)</td>
<td>~1380</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH(_2)</td>
<td>1550–1650</td>
<td>medium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3.9 Useful absorptions in the fingerprint region

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency, cm(^{-1})</th>
<th>Strength</th>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1440–1470</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>CH(_2)</td>
<td>deformation (present in nujol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~1380</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>CH(_3)</td>
<td>deformation (present in nujol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~1350</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>NO(_2)</td>
<td>symmetrical N=O stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1250–1300</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>P=O</td>
<td>double bond stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1310–1350</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>SO(_2)</td>
<td>antisymmetrical S=O stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120–1160</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>SO(_2)</td>
<td>symmetrical S=O stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~1100</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>C=O</td>
<td>single bond stretch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>950–1000</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>C=CH</td>
<td>trans alkene (out-of-plane deformation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~690 and ~750</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>Ar–H</td>
<td>five adjacent Ar–H (out-of-plane)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~750</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>Ar–H</td>
<td>four adjacent Ar–H (out-of-plane)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~700</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>C–Cl</td>
<td>single bond stretch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mass spectra, NMR, and IR combined make quick identification possible

If these methods are each as powerful as we have seen on their own, how much more effective they must be together. We shall finish this chapter with the identification of some simple unknown
compounds using all three methods. The first is an industrial emulsifier used to blend solids and liquids into smooth pastes. Its electron impact mass spectrum has peaks at 75 and 74 (each about 20%) and a base peak at 58. The two peaks at 75 and 74 cannot be isotopes of bromine as the separation is only one mass unit, nor can 75 be a $^{13}\text{C}$ peak as it is far too strong. It looks as though 75 might be the molecular ion and 74 an unusual loss of a hydrogen atom. However a chemical ionization mass spectrum reveals a molecular ion at 90 (MH$^+$) and hence the true molecular ion at 89. An odd molecular weight (89) suggests one nitrogen atom, and high resolution mass spectrometry reveals that the formula is C$_4$H$_{11}$NO.

The $^{13}\text{C}$ NMR spectrum has only three peaks so two carbon atoms must be the same. There is one signal for saturated carbon next to oxygen, and two for other saturated carbons, one more downfield than the other. The IR spectrum reveals a broad peak for an OH group with two sharp NH$_2$ peaks just protruding. If we put this together, we know we have C–OH and C–NH$_2$. Neither of these carbons can be duplicated (as there is only one O and only one N!) so one of the remaining carbons must be duplicated.
The next stage is one often overlooked. We don’t seem to have much information, but try and put the two fragments together, knowing the molecular formula, and there’s very little choice. The carbon chain (shown in red) could either be linear or branched and that’s it!

linear carbon chain

branched carbon chain

There is no room for double bonds or rings because we need to fit in the eleven hydrogen atoms. We cannot put N or O in the chain because we know from the IR that we have the chain terminating groups OH and NH₂. Of the seven possibilities only the last two, A and B, are serious since they alone have two identical carbon atoms (the two methyl groups in each case); all the other structures would have four separate signals in the NMR. How can we choose between these? The base peak in the mass spectrum was at 58 and this fits well with a fragmentation of one structure but not of the other: the wrong structure would give a fragment at 59 and not 58. The industrial emulsifier is 2-amino-2-methylpropan-1-ol.

Double bond equivalents help in the search for a structure

The last example was fully saturated but it is usually a help in deducing the structure of an unknown compound if, once you know the atomic composition, you immediately work out how much unsaturation there is. This is usually expressed as ‘double bond equivalents’. It may seem obvious to you that, if C₄H₁₁NO has no double bonds, then C₄H₇NO (losing two hydrogen atoms) must have one double bond, C₄H₉NO two double bonds, and so on. Well, it’s not quite as simple as that. Some possible structures for these formulae are shown below.

some structures for C₄H₇NO

some structures for C₄H₉NO
Some of these structures have the right number of double bonds (C=C and C=O), one has a triple bond, and three compounds use rings as an alternative way of ‘losing’ some hydrogen atoms. Each time you make a ring or a double bond, you have to lose two more hydrogen atoms. So double bonds (of all kinds) and rings are called **Double Bond Equivalents (DBEs)**.

You can work out how many DBEs there are in a given atomic composition just by making a drawing of one possible structure (all possible structures have the same number of DBEs). Alternatively, you can calculate the DBEs if you wish. A saturated hydrocarbon with \( n \) carbon atoms has \((2n + 2)\) hydrogens. Oxygen doesn’t make any difference to this: there are the same number of Hs in a saturated ether or alcohol as in a saturated hydrocarbon.

So, for a compound containing C, H, and O only, take the actual number of hydrogen atoms away from \((2n + 2)\) and divide by two. Just to check that it works, for the unsaturated ketone \( C_7H_{12}O \) the calculation becomes:

1. Maximum number of H atoms for 7 Cs \( 2n + 2 = 16 \)
2. Subtract the actual number of H atoms (12) \( 16 – 12 = 4 \)
3. Divide by 2 to give the DBEs \( 4/2 = 2 \)

C\(_7\)H\(_{12}\)O = two DBE

The unsaturated ketone does indeed have an alkene and a carbonyl group. The unsaturated cyclic acid has: \( 16 – 10 = 6 \) divided by \( 2 = 3 \) DBEs and it has one alkene, one C=O and one ring. Correct. The aromatic ether has \( 16 – 8 = 8 \) divided by \( 2 \) gives 4 DBEs and it has three double bonds in the ring and the ring itself. Correct again.

Nitrogen makes a difference. Every nitrogen adds one extra hydrogen atom because nitrogen can make three bonds. This is one fewer hydrogen to subtract. The formula becomes: subtract actual number of hydrogens from \((2n + 2)\), add one for each nitrogen atom, and divide by two. We can try this out too.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Maximum number of H atoms for 7 Cs</th>
<th>( 2n + 2 = 16 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Subtract the actual number of H atoms (12)</td>
<td>( 16 – 12 = 4 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Divide by 2 to give the DBEs</td>
<td>( 4/2 = 2 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C\(_7\)H\(_{12}\)O = two DBE

The saturated compound has \((2n + 3)\) Hs instead of \((2n + 2)\). The saturated nitro compound has \((2n + 2) = 16\) less 15 (the actual number of Hs) plus one (the number of nitrogen atoms) = 2. Divide this by \( 2 \) and you get 1 DBE, which is the N=O bond. The last compound (we shall meet this later as ‘DMAP’) has:

1. Maximum number of H atoms for 7 Cs \( 2n + 2 = 16 \)
2. Subtract the actual number of H atoms (10) \( 16 – 10 = 6 \)
3. Add number of nitrogens \( 6 + 2 = 8 \)
4. Divide by 2 to give the DBEs \( 8/2 = 4 \)

There are indeed three double bonds and a ring, making four in all. You would be wise to check that you can do these calculations without much trouble.

If you have other elements too it is simpler just to draw a trial structure and find out how many DBEs there are. You may prefer this method for all compounds as it has the advantage of finding one possible structure before you really start! One good tip is that if you have few hydrogens relative to the number of carbon atoms (and at least four DBEs) then there is probably an aromatic ring in the compound.
An unknown compound from a chemical reaction

Our second example addresses a situation very common in chemistry—working out the structure of a product of a reaction. The situation is this: you have treated propenal (acrolein) with HBr in ethane-1,2-diol (or glycol) as solvent for one hour at room temperature. Distillation of the reaction mixture gives a colourless liquid, compound X. What is it?

### Working out the DBEs for an unknown compound

1. Calculate the expected number of Hs in the saturated structure
   - (a) For $C_n$ there would be: $2n + 2$ Hs if C, H, O only
   - (b) For $C_nN_m$ there would be $2n + 2 + m$ Hs

2. Subtract the actual number of Hs and divide by 2. This gives the DBEs

3. If there are other atoms (Cl, B, P, etc.) it is best to draw a trial structure

4. If there are few Hs, e.g. less than the number of Cs, suspect a benzene ring

5. A benzene ring has *four* DBEs (three for the double bonds and one for the ring)

6. A nitro group has *one* DBE only

---

**mass spectrometry of compound X**

 mass spectrometry of compound X

**$^{13}$C NMR spectrum for propenal**

**$^{13}$C NMR spectrum for compound X**
The mass spectrum shows a molecular ion (181) much heavier than that of the starting material, \( \text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{O} = 56 \). Indeed it shows two molecular ions at 181/179 typical of a bromo-compound, so it looks as if HBr has added to the aldehyde somehow. High resolution reveals a formula of \( \text{C}_5\text{H}_9\text{BrO}_2 \) and the five carbon atoms make it look as though the glycol has added in too. If we add everything together we find that the unknown compound is the result of the three reagents added together less one molecule of water. A trial structure reveals one DBE.

\[
\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CHO} + \text{HOCH}_2\text{OH} + \text{HBr} \rightarrow \text{C}_5\text{H}_9\text{BrO}_2
\]

The next thing is to see what remains of the propenal. The NMR spectrum of \( \text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CHO} \) clearly shows one carbonyl group and two carbons on a double bond. These have all disappeared in the product and for the five carbon atoms we are left with four signals, two saturated, one next to oxygen, and one at 102.6 p.p.m. just creeping into the double bond region. It can’t be an alkene as an alkene is impossible with only one carbon atom! The IR spectrum gives us another puzzle—there appear to be no functional groups at all! No OH, no carbonyl, no alkene—what else can we have? The answer is an ether—or rather two ethers as there are two oxygen atoms. Now that we suspect an ether, we can look for the C–O single bond stretch in the IR spectrum and find it at 1128 cm\(^{-1}\). Each ether oxygen must have a carbon atom on each side of it. Two of these could be the same, but where are the rest?

We can solve this problem with a principle you may have guessed at before. If one oxygen atom takes a saturated carbon atom downfield to 50 p.p.m. or more, what could take a carbon downfield to 100 p.p.m. or more? We have established that chemical shifts are roughly additive so two oxygen atoms would just do. This would give us a fragment C–O–C–O–C accounting for three of the five carbon atoms. If you try and join the rest up with this fragment, you will find that you can’t do it without a double bond, for example, the structure in the margin.

But we know we haven’t got a double bond, (no alkene and no C=O) so the DBE must be a ring. You might feel uncomfortable with rings, but you must get used to them. Five-, six-, and seven-membered rings are very common. In fact, most known organic compounds have rings in them. We could join the skeleton of the present molecule up in many rings of various sizes like this one in the margin.

But this won’t do as it would have five different carbon atoms. It is much more likely that the basic skeletons of the organic reagents are preserved, that is, that we have a two-carbon and a three-carbon fragment joined through oxygen atoms. This gives four possibilities.
These are all quite reasonable, though we might prefer the third as it is easier to see how it derives from the reagents. A decision can easily be reached from the base peak in the mass spectrum at 73. This is a fragment corresponding to the five-membered ring and not to the six-membered ring. The product is in fact the third possibility.

Looking forward to Chapters 11 and 14

We have only begun to explore the intricate world of identification of structure by spectroscopy. It is important that you recognize that structures are assigned, not because of some theoretical reason or because a reaction ‘ought’ to give a certain product, but because of sound evidence from spectra. You have seen three powerful methods—mass spectra, \(^{13}\)C NMR, and IR spectroscopy in this chapter. In Chapter 11 we introduce the most important of all—proton (\(^{1}\)H) NMR and, finally, in Chapter 14 we shall take each of these a little further and show how the structures of more complex unknown compounds are really deduced. The last problem we have discussed here is not really solvable without proton NMR and in reality no-one would tackle any structure problem without this most powerful of all techniques. From now on spectroscopic evidence will appear in virtually every chapter. Even if we do not say so explicitly every time a new compound appears, the structure of this compound will in fact have been determined spectroscopically. Chemists make new compounds, and every time they do they characterize the compound with a full set of spectra. No scientific journal will accept that a new compound has been made unless a full description of all of these spectra are submitted with the report. Spectroscopy lets the science of organic chemistry advance.

Problems

1. How does the mass spectrum give evidence of isotopes in the compounds of bromine, chlorine, and carbon. Assuming the molecular ion of each of these compounds is of 100% abundance, what peaks (and in what intensity) would appear around that mass number? (a) \(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{BrO}\), (b) \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\), (c) \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{BrCl}\). Give in cases (a) and (c) a possible structure for the compound. What compound is (b)?

2. The \(^{13}\)C NMR spectrum for ethyl benzoate contains these peaks: 17.3, 61.1, 100–150 p.p.m. (four peaks), and 166.8 p.p.m. Which peak belongs to which carbon atom?

3. The thinner used in typists’ correction fluids is a single compound, \(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{Cl}_3\), having \(^{13}\)C NMR peaks at 45.1 and 95.0 p.p.m. What is its structure? A commercial paint thinner gives two spots on thin layer chromatography and has \(^{13}\)C NMR peaks at 7.0, 27.5, 35.2, 45.3, 95.6, and 206.3 p.p.m. Suggest what compounds might be used to make up this thinner.

4. The ‘normal’ O–H stretch (i.e. without hydrogen bonding) comes at about 3600 cm\(^{-1}\). What is the reduced mass (\(\mu\)) for O–H? What happens to the reduced mass when you double the atomic weight of each atom in turn, that is, what is \(\mu\) for O–D and what is \(\mu\) for S–H? In fact, both O–D and S–H stretches come at about 2500 cm\(^{-1}\).

5. Four compounds, each having the formula \(\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{NO}\), have the IR spectra summarized here. What are their structures? Without \(^{13}\)C NMR data, it may be easier to tackle this problem by first writing down all the possible structures for \(\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{NO}\). In what specific ways would \(^{13}\)C NMR data help?

   (a) One sharp band above 3000 cm\(^{-1}\); one strong band at about 1700 cm\(^{-1}\)
   (b) Two sharp bands above 3000 cm\(^{-1}\); two bands between 1600 and 1700 cm\(^{-1}\)
   (c) One strong broad band above 3000 cm\(^{-1}\); a band at about 2200 cm\(^{-1}\)

6. Four compounds having the molecular formula \(\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{O}_2\) have the IR and \(^{13}\)C NMR spectra given below. How many DBEs are there in \(\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{O}_2\)? What are the structures of the four compounds? You might again find it helpful to draw out some or all possibilities before you start.
Three compounds of molecular formula C₄H₈O have the IR and ¹³C NMR spectra given below. Suggest a structure for each compound, explaining how you make your deductions.

**compound A** IR: 1730 cm⁻¹; ¹³C NMR: 13.3, 15.7, 45.7, and 201.6 p.p.m.

**compound B** IR: 3200 (broad) cm⁻¹; ¹³C NMR: 36.9, 61.3, 117.2, and 134.7 p.p.m.

**compound C** IR: no peaks except CH and fingerprint; ¹³C NMR: 25.8 and 67.9 p.p.m.

**compound D** IR: 3200 (broad) cm⁻¹; ¹³C NMR: 15.2, 20.3, 36.0, and 62.9 p.p.m.

Compound A reacts with NaBH₄ to give compound D. Compound B reacts with hydrogen gas over a palladium catalyst to give the same compound D. Compound C reacts with neither reagent. Suggest a structure for compound D from the data given and explain the reactions. (Note: H₂ reduces alkenes to alkanes in the presence of a palladium catalyst.)

You have dissolved t-BuOH (Me₂COH) in MeCN with an acid catalyst, left the solution overnight, and found crystals with the following characteristics there in the morning. What are they?

**9.** How many isomers of trichlorobenzene are there? The 1,2,3-trichloro isomer is illustrated. Could they be distinguished by ¹³C NMR?

**10.** How many signals would you expect in the ¹³C NMR of the following compounds?

**11.** How would mass spectra help you distinguish these structures?
Note from the authors to all readers

This chapter contains mathematical material that some readers may find daunting. Organic chemistry students come from many different backgrounds since organic chemistry occupies a middle ground between the physical and the biological sciences. We hope that those from a more physical background will enjoy the material as it is. If you are one of those, you should work your way through the entire chapter. If you come from a more biological background, especially if you have done little maths at school, you may lose the essence of the chapter in a struggle to understand the equations. We have therefore picked out the more mathematical parts in boxes and you should abandon these parts (and any others!) if you find them too alien. The general principles behind the chapter—why molecules have the structures they do—are obviously so important that we cannot omit this essential material but you should try to grasp the principles without worrying too much about the equations. The ideas of atomic orbitals overlapping to form bonds, the molecular orbitals that result, and the shapes that these orbitals impose on organic molecules are at least as central for biochemistry as they are for organic chemistry. Please do not be discouraged but enjoy the challenge.

Introduction

You may recognize the model above as DNA, the molecule that carries the genetic information for all life on earth. It is the exact structure of this compound that determines precisely what a living thing
is—be it man or woman, frog, or tree—and even more subtle characteristics such as what colour eyes or hair people have.

What about this model?

You may also have recognized this molecule as buckminsterfullerene, a form of carbon that received enormous interest in the 1980s and 1990s. The question is, how did you recognize these two compounds? You recognized their shapes. All molecules are simply groups of atoms held together by electrons to give a definite three-dimensional shape. What exactly a compound might be is determined not only by the atoms it contains, but also by the arrangement of these atoms in space—the shape of the molecule. Both graphite and buckminsterfullerene are composed of carbon atoms only and yet their properties, both chemical and physical, are completely different.

There are many methods available to chemists and physicists to find out the shapes of molecules. One of the most recent techniques is called Scanning Tunnelling Microscopy (STM), which is the closest we can get to actually 'seeing' the atoms themselves.

Most techniques, for example, X-ray or electron diffraction, reveal the shapes of molecules indirectly.

In Chapter 3 you met some of the spectroscopic methods frequently used by organic chemists to determine the shape of molecules. Spectroscopy would reveal the structure of methane, for example, as tetrahedral—the carbon atom in the centre of a regular tetrahedron with the hydrogen atoms at the corners. In this chapter we are going to discuss why compounds adopt the shapes that they do.

This tetrahedral structure seems to be very important—other molecules, both organic and inorganic, are made up of many tetrahedral units. What is the origin of this tetrahedral structure? It could simply arise from four pairs of electrons repelling each other to get as far as possible from each other. That would give a tetrahedron.

The dark brown blobs in this STM picture recorded at a temperature of 4 K are individual oxygen atoms adsorbed on a silver surface. The light blobs are individual ethylene (ethene) molecules. Ethylene will only adsorb on silver if adjacent to an oxygen atom. This is an atomic scale view of a very important industrial process—the production of ethylene oxide from ethylene and oxygen using a silver catalyst.

The picture on the right is an X-ray structure of a catenane—a molecule consisting of two interlocking rings joined like two links in a chain. The key to the synthesis depends on the self-stacking of the planar structures prior to ring closure.

methane is tetrahedral
the H atoms form a tetrahedron
methane is tetrahedral
This simple method of deducing the structure of molecules is called Valence Shell Electron Pair Repulsion Theory (VSEPRT). It says that all electron pairs, both bonding and nonbonding, in the outer or valence shell of an atom repel each other. This simple approach predicts (more or less) the correct structures for methane, ammonia, and water with four electron pairs arranged tetrahedrally in each case.

VSEPRT seems to work for simple structures but surely there must be more to it than this? Indeed there is. If we really want to understand why molecules adopt the shapes they do, we must look at the atoms that make up the molecules and how they combine. By the end of this chapter, you should be able to predict or at least understand the shapes of simple molecules. For example, why are the bond angles in ammonia 107°, while in hydrides of the other elements in the same group as nitrogen, PH₃, AsH₃, and SbH₃, they are all around 90°? Simple VSEPRT would suggest tetrahedral arrangements for each.

Atomic structure

You know already what makes up an atom—protons, neutrons, and electrons. The protons and neutrons make up the central core of an atom—the nucleus—while the electrons form some sort of cloud around it. As chemists, we are concerned with the electrons in atoms and more importantly with the electrons in molecules: chemists need to know how many electrons there are in a system, where they are, and what energy they have. Before we can understand the behaviour of electrons in molecules, we need to look closely at the electronic structure of an atom. Evidence first, theory later.

Atomic emission spectra

Many towns and streets are lit at night by sodium vapour lamps. You will be familiar with their warm yellow-orange glow but have you ever wondered what makes this light orange and not white? The normal light bulbs you use at home have a tungsten filament that is heated white hot. You know that this white light could be split by a prism to reveal the whole spectrum of visible light and that each of the different colours has a different frequency that corresponds to a distinct energy. But where does the orange street light come from? If we put a coloured filter in front of our white light, it would absorb some colours of the spectrum and let other colours through. We could make orange light this way but that is not how the street lights work—they actually generate orange light and orange light only. Inside these lights is sodium metal. When the light is switched on, the sodium metal is slowly vaporized and, as an electric current is passed through the sodium vapour, an orange light is emitted. This is the same colour as the light you get when you do a flame test using a sodium compound.

The point is that only one colour light comes from a sodium lamp and this must have one specific frequency and therefore one energy. It doesn’t matter what energy source is used to generate the light, whether it be electricity or a Bunsen burner flame; in each case light of one specific energy is given out. Looking at the orange sodium light through a prism, we see a series of very sharp lines with two particularly bright orange lines at around 600 nm. Other elements produce similar spectra—indeed two elements, rubidium and cesium, were discovered by Robert Bunsen after studying such spectra. They are actually named after the presence of a pair of bright coloured lines in their spectra—cesium from the Latin caesius meaning bluish grey and rubidium from the Latin rubidus meaning red. Even hydrogen can be made to produce an atomic spectrum and, since a hydrogen atom is the simplest atom of all, we shall look at the atomic spectrum of hydrogen first.

If enough energy is supplied to a hydrogen atom, or any other atom, an electron is eventually knocked completely out of the atom. In the case of hydrogen a single proton is left. This is, of course, the ionization of hydrogen.

What if we don’t quite give the atom enough energy to remove an electron completely? It’s not too hard to imagine that, if the energy is not enough to ionize the atom, the electron would be
‘loosened’ in some way—the atom absorbs this energy and the electron moves further away from the nucleus and now needs less energy to remove it completely. The atom is said to be in an excited state. This process is a bit like a weight lifter lifting a heavy weight—he can hold it above his head with straight arms (the excited state) but sooner or later he will drop it and the weight will fall to the ground. This is what happens in our excited atom—the electron will fall to its lowest energy, its ground state, and the energy put in will come out again. This is the origin of the lines in the atomic spectra not only for hydrogen but for all the elements. The flame or the electric discharge provides the energy to promote an electron to a higher energy level and, when this electron returns to its ground state, this energy is released in the form of light.

Line spectra are composed of many lines of different frequencies, which can only mean that there must be lots of different energy transitions possible, but not just any energy transitions. Quantum mechanics says that an electron, like light, cannot have a continuous range of energies, only certain definite energies, which in turn means that only certain energy transitions are possible. This is rather like trying to climb a flight of stairs—you can jump up one, two, five, or even all the steps if you have enough energy but you cannot climb up half or two-thirds of a step. Likewise coming down, you can jump from one step to any other—lots of different combinations are possible but there is a finite number, depending on the number of steps. This is why there are so many lines in the atomic spectra—the electron can receive energy to promote it to a higher energy level and it can then fall to any level below and a certain quantity of light will be released.

We want to predict, as far as we can, where all the electrons in different molecules are to be found including the ones not involved with bonding. We want to know where the molecule can accommodate extra electrons and from where electrons can be removed most easily. Since most molecules contain many electrons, the task is not an easy one. However, the electronic structure of atoms is somewhat easier to understand and we can approximate the electronic structure of molecules by considering how the component atoms combine.

The next section is therefore an introduction to the electronic structure of atoms—what energies the electrons have and where they may be found. Organic chemists are rarely concerned with atoms themselves but need to understand the electronic structure in atoms before they can understand the electronic structure in molecules. As always, evidence first!

**The atomic emission spectrum of hydrogen**

The atomic emission spectrum of hydrogen is composed of many lines but these fall into separate sets or series. The first series to be discovered, not surprisingly, were those lines in the visible part of the spectrum. In 1885, a Swiss schoolmaster, Johann Balmer, noticed that the wavelengths, \( \lambda \), of the lines in this series could be predicted using a mathematical formula. He did not see why; he just saw the relationship. This was the first vital step.

\[
\lambda = \text{constant } \times \frac{n^2}{n^2 - 2^2} \quad (n \text{ is an integer greater than } 2)
\]

As a result of his work, the lines in the visible spectrum are known as the Balmer series. The other series of lines in the atomic emission spectrum of hydrogen were discovered later (the next wasn’t discovered until 1908). These series are named after the scientists who discovered them; for example, the series in the ultraviolet region is known as the Lyman series after Theodore Lyman.

Balmer’s equation was subsequently refined to give an equation that predicts the frequency, \( \nu \), of any of the lines in any part of the hydrogen spectrum rather than just for his series. It turns out that his was not the most fundamental series, just the first to be discovered.

\[
\nu = \text{constant } \times \left( \frac{1}{n_1^2} - \frac{1}{n_2^2} \right)
\]

Each series can be described by this equation if a particular value is given for \( n_1 \) but \( n_2 \) is allowed to vary. For the Lyman series, \( n_1 \) remains fixed at 1 while \( n_2 \) can be 2, 3, 4, and so on. For the Balmer series, \( n_1 \) is fixed at 2 while \( n_2 \) can be 3, 4, 5, and so on.
Atomic emission spectra are evidence for electronic energy levels

Atomic emission spectra give us our first clue to understanding the electronic energy levels in an atom. Since the lines in the emission spectrum of hydrogen correspond to the electron moving between energy levels and since frequency is proportional to energy, \( E = h \nu \), the early equations must represent just the difference between two energy levels. This in turn tells us that the electron’s energy levels in an atom must be inversely proportional to the square of an important integer ‘\( n \)’. This can be expressed by the formula

\[
E_n = -\frac{\text{constant}}{n^2}
\]

where \( E_n \) is the energy of an electron in the \( n \)th energy level and \( n \) is an integer \( \geq 1 \) known as the principal quantum number. Note that, when \( n = \infty \), that is, when the electron is no longer associated with the nucleus, its energy is zero. All other energy levels are lower than zero because of the minus sign in the equation. This is consistent with what we know already—we must put energy in to ionize the atom and remove the electron from the nucleus.

**Electronic energy levels**

In more detail, the constant in this equation can be broken down into a universal constant, the Rydberg constant \( R_H \), which applies to any electron on any atom, and a constant \( Z \) which has a particular value for each atom.

\[
E_n = -\frac{R_H Z^2}{n^2}
\]

The Rydberg constant \( R_H \) is measured in units of energy. For a given atom (i.e. \( Z \) is constant) there are many different energy levels possible (each corresponding to a different value of \( n \)). Also, as \( n \) gets bigger, the energy gets smaller and smaller and approaches zero for large \( n \). The energy gets smaller as the electron gets further away from the nucleus. For electrons in the same energy level but in different atoms, (i.e. keeping \( n \) constant but varying \( Z \)), the energy of an electron depends on the square of the atomic number. This makes sense too—the more protons in the nucleus, the more tightly the electron is held in the atom.

The electrons in any atom are grouped in energy levels whose energies are universally proportional to the inverse square of a very important number \( n \). This number is called the principal quantum number and it can have only a few integral values (\( n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots \)). The energy levels also depend on the type of atom.

An energy level diagram gives some idea of the relative spacing between these energy levels.

- The electrons in any atom can be grouped in energy levels whose energies are universally proportional to the inverse square of a very important number \( n \). This number is called the **principal quantum number** and it can have only a few integral values (\( n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots \)). The energy levels also depend on the type of atom.

---

Notice how the spacing between the energy levels gets closer and closer. This is a consequence of the energy being inversely proportional to the square of the principal quantum number. It tells us that it becomes easier and easier to remove an electron completely from an atom as the electron is located in higher and higher energy levels. As we shall see later, the increasing value of the principal quantum number also correlates with the electron being found (on average) further and further from the nucleus and being easier and easier to remove. This is analogous to a rocket escaping from a planet—the further away it is, the less it experiences the effects of gravity and so the less energy it requires to move still further away. The main difference is that there seems to be no quantization of the different energy levels of the rocket—it appears (to us in our macroscopic world at least) that any energy is possible. In the case of the electron in the atom, only certain values are allowed.
Three quantum numbers come from the Schrödinger equation

There is no doubt about the importance of \( n \), the principal quantum number, but where does it come from? This quantum number and two other quantum numbers come from solving the Schrödinger equation. We are not going to go into any details regarding Schrödinger’s equation or how to solve it—there are plenty of more specialized texts available if you are interested in more detail.

Solutions to Schrödinger’s equation come in the form of wave functions (symbol \( \Psi \)), which describe the energy and position of the electrons thought of as waves. You might be a little unsettled to find out that we are describing electrons using waves but the same wave–particle duality idea applies to electrons as to light. We regularly think of light in terms of waves with their associated wavelengths and frequencies but light can also be described using the idea of photons—individual little light ‘particles’. The same is true of the electron; up to now, you will probably have thought of electrons only as particles but now we will be thinking of them as waves.

It turns out that there is not one specific solution to the Schrödinger equation but many. This is good news because the electron in a hydrogen atom can indeed have a number of different energies. It turns out that each wave function can be defined by three quantum numbers (there is also a fourth quantum number but this is not needed to define the wave function). We have already met the principal quantum number, \( n \). The other two are called the orbital angular momentum quantum number (sometimes called the azimuthal quantum number), \( \ell \), and the magnetic quantum number, \( m_\ell \).

A specific wave function solution is called an orbital. The different orbitals define different energies and distributions for the different electrons. The name ‘orbital’ goes back to earlier theories where the electron was thought to orbit the nucleus in the way that planets orbit the sun. It seems to apply more to an electron seen as a particle, and orbitals of electrons thought of as particles and wave functions of electrons thought of as waves are really two different ways of looking at the same thing. Each different orbital has its own individual quantum numbers, \( n, \ell, \) and \( m_\ell \).

Summary of the importance of the quantum numbers

What does each quantum number tell us and what values can it adopt? You have already met the principal quantum number, \( n \), and seen that this is related to the energy of the orbital.

The principal quantum number, \( n \)

Different values for \( n \) divide orbitals into groups of similar energies called shells. Numerical values for \( n \) are used in ordinary speech. The first shell ( \( n = 1 \) ) can contain only two electrons and the atoms H and He have one and two electrons in this first shell, respectively.

The orbital angular momentum quantum number, \( \ell \)

The orbital angular momentum quantum number, \( \ell \), determines, as you might guess, the angular momentum of the electron as it moves in its orbital. This quantum number tells us the shape of the orbital, spherical or whatever. The values that \( \ell \) can take depend on the value of \( n \); \( \ell \) can have any value from 0 up to \( n - 1 \): \( \ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1 \). The different possible values of \( \ell \) are given letters rather than numbers and they are called s, p, d, and f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>value of ( n )</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possible values of ( \ell )</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0, 1</td>
<td>0, 1, 2</td>
<td>0, 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>1s</td>
<td>2s, 2p</td>
<td>3s, 3p, 3d</td>
<td>4s, 4p, 4d, 4f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The magnetic quantum number, \( m_\ell \)

The magnetic quantum number, \( m_\ell \), determines the spatial orientation of the angular momentum. In simple language it determines where the orbitals are in space. Its value depends on the value of \( \ell \), varying from \( -\ell \) to \( +\ell \): \( m_\ell = \ell, \ell - 1, \ell - 2, \ldots, -\ell \). The different possible values of \( m_\ell \) are given suffixes on the letters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>value of ( n )</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>value of ( \ell )</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>1s</td>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible values of ( m_\ell )</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+1, 0, -1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>1s</td>
<td>2s</td>
<td>2p, 2p, 2p, 2p, 2p</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
defining the quantum number $\ell$. These letters refer to the direction of the orbitals along the $x$-, $y$-, or $z$-axes. Organic chemists are concerned mostly with $s$ and $p$ orbitals ($\ell = 0$ or 1) so the subdivisions of the $d$ orbitals can be omitted.

Each quantum number gives subdivisions for the one before. There are no subdivisions in the lowest value of each quantum number: and the subdivisions increase in number as each quantum number increases. Now we need to look in more detail at the meanings of the various values of the quantum numbers.

### Atomic orbitals

**Nomenclature of the orbitals**

For a hydrogen atom the energy of the orbital is determined only by the principal quantum number, $n$, and $n$ can take values 1, 2, 3, and so on. This is the most fundamental division and is stated first in the description of an electron. The electron in a hydrogen atom is called 1s$^1$. The 1 gives the value of $n$: the most important thing in the foremost place. The designation $s$ refers to the value of $\ell$. These two together, 1s, define and name the orbital. The superscript 1 tells us that there is one electron in this orbital.

The orbital angular momentum quantum number, $\ell$, determines the shape of the orbital. Instead of expressing this as a number, letters are used to label the different shapes of orbitals. $s$ orbitals have $\ell = 0$, and $p$ orbitals have $\ell = 1$.

Using both these quantum numbers we can label orbitals 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 3d, and so on. Notice that, since $\ell$ can only have integer values up to $n - 1$, we cannot have a 1p or 2d orbital.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value of $\ell$</th>
<th>Name of orbital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>$s$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>$p$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>$d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>$f$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One other point to notice is that, for the hydrogen atom (and, technically speaking, any one-electron ion such as He$^+$ or Li$^{2+}$), a 2s orbital has exactly the same energy as a 2p orbital and a 3s orbital has the same energy as the 3p and 3d orbitals. Orbitals that have the same energy are described as degenerate. In atoms with more than one electron, things get more complicated because of electron–electron repulsion and the energy levels are no longer determined by $n$ alone. In such cases, the 2s and 2p or the 3s, 3p, and 3d orbitals or any other orbitals that share the same principal quantum number are no longer degenerate. In other words, in multielectron atoms, the energy of a given orbital depends not only on the principal quantum number, $n$, but also in some way on the orbital angular momentum quantum number, $\ell$.

Values of the magnetic quantum number, $m_\ell$, depend on the value of $\ell$. When $\ell = 0$, $m_\ell$ can only take one value (0); when $\ell = 1$, $m_\ell$ has three possible values (+1, 0, or −1). There are five possible values of $m_\ell$ when $\ell = 2$ and seven when $\ell = 3$. In more familiar terms, there is only one sort of $s$ orbital; there are three sorts of $p$ orbitals, five sorts of $d$ orbitals, and seven sorts of $f$ orbitals. All three $p$ orbitals are degenerate as are all five $d$ orbitals and all seven $f$ orbitals (for both single-electron and multielectron atoms). We shall see how to represent these orbitals later.

### There is a fourth quantum number

The spin of an electron is the angular momentum of an electron spinning about its own axis, although this is a simplified picture. This angular momentum is different from the angular momentum, $\ell$, which represents the electron’s angular momentum about the nucleus. The magnitude of the electron’s spin is constant but it can take two orientations. These are represented using the fourth quantum number, the spin angular momentum quantum number, $m_\sigma$, which can take the value of +1 or −1 in any orbital, regardless of the values of $n$, $\ell$, or $m_\ell$. Each
orbital can hold a maximum of two electrons and then only when the electrons have different ‘spin’, that is, they must have different values of $m_s$, +1 or –1. The rule that no more than two electrons may occupy any orbital (and then only if their spins are paired) is known as the Pauli exclusion principle.

- **Every electron is unique!**
  If electrons are in the same atom, they must have a unique combination of the four quantum numbers. Each orbital, designated by three quantum numbers, $n$, $\ell$, and $m_\ell$, can contain only two electrons and then only if their spin angular quantum numbers are different.

### How the periodic table is constructed

All the quantum numbers for all the electrons with $n = 1$ and 2 can now be shown in a table like the ones earlier in this chapter. Though we have so far been discussing the hydrogen atom, in fact, the H atom never has more than two electrons. Fortunately, the energy levels deduced for H also apply to all the other elements with some minor adjustments. This table would actually give the electronic configuration of neon, Ne.

In this table, the energy goes up from left to right, though all the 2p orbitals are degenerate. To add $n = 3$, one column for the 3s, three columns for the 3p, and five columns for the 3d orbital would be needed. Then all five 3d orbitals would be degenerate.

Another way to show the same thing is by an energy diagram showing how the quantum numbers divide and subdivide.
These numbers explain the shape of the periodic table. Each element has one more electron (and one more proton and perhaps more neutrons) than the one before. At first the lowest energy shell ($n = 1$) is filled. There is only one orbital, 1s, and we can put one or two electrons in it. There are therefore two elements in this block, H and He. Next we must move to the second shell ($n = 2$), filling 2s first so we start the top of groups 1 and 2 with Li and Be. These occupy the top of the red stack marked ‘s block’ because all the elements in this block have one or two electrons in their outermost s orbital and no electrons in the outermost p orbital. Then we can start on the 2p orbitals. There are three of these so we can put in six electrons and get six elements B, C, N, O, F, and Ne. They occupy the top row of the black p block. Most of the elements we need in this book are in these blocks. Some, Na, K, and Mg for example, are in the s block and others, Si, P, and S for example, are in the second row of the p block.

The layout of the periodic table

Graphical representations of orbitals

One problem with wave functions is trying to visualize them: what does a wave function look like? Various graphs of wave functions can be plotted but they are not much help as $\Psi$ itself has no physical meaning. However the square of the wave function, $\Psi^2$, does have a practical interpretation; it is proportional to the probability of finding an electron at a given point. Unfortunately, we can’t do

There is some justification for this interpretation that the wave function squared is proportional to the probability of finding an electron. With light waves, for example, while the wavelength provides the colour (more precisely the energy) of the wave, it is the amplitude squared that gives the brightness.

But this is looking at light in terms of waves. In terms of particles, photons, the intensity of light is proportional to the density of photons.
better than probability as we are unable to say exactly where the electron is at any time. This is a consequence of Heisenberg’s uncertainty principle—we cannot know both the exact position and the exact momentum of an electron simultaneously. Here we know the momentum (energy) of the electron and so its exact position is uncertain.

How do we depict a probability function? One way would be to draw contours connecting regions where there is an equal probability of finding the electron. If $\Psi^2$ for a 1s orbital is plotted, a three-dimensional plot emerges. Of course, this is a two-dimensional representation of a three-dimensional plot—the contours are really spherical like the different layers of an onion. These circles are rather like the contour lines on a map except that they represent areas of equal probability of finding the electron instead of areas of equal altitude.

Another way to represent the probability is by a density plot. Suppose we could see exactly where the electron was at a given time and that we marked the spot. If we looked again a little later, the electron would be in a different place—let us mark this spot too. Eventually, if we marked enough spots, we would end up with a fuzzy picture like those shown for the 1s and 2s orbitals. Now the density of the dots is an indication of the probability of finding an electron in a given space—the more densely packed the dots (that is, the darker the area), the greater the probability of finding the electron in this area. This is rather like some maps where different altitudes are indicated by different colours.

The 2s orbital, like the 1s orbital, is spherical. There are two differences between these orbitals. One is that the 2s orbital is bigger so that an electron in a 2s orbital is more likely to be found further away from the nucleus than an electron in a 1s orbital. The other difference between the orbitals is that, within the 2s orbital but not within the 1s orbital, there is a region where there is no electron density at all. Such a region is called a nodal surface. In this case there is no electron density at one set radius from the nucleus; hence this is known as a radial node. The 2s orbital has one radial node.

Nodes are important for musicians

You can understand these nodal surfaces by thinking in terms of waves. If a violin or other string instrument is plucked, the string vibrates. The ends cannot move since they are fixed to the instrument. The note we hear is mainly due to the string vibrating as shown in the diagram for the first harmonic.

However, there are other vibrations of higher energy known as harmonics, which help to give the note its timbre (the different timbres allow us to tell the difference between, say, a flute and a violin playing the same note). The second and third harmonics are also shown.

Each successive harmonic has one extra node—while the first harmonic has no nodes (if you don’t count the end stops), the second harmonic has one and the third has two and so on. These are points where the string does not vibrate at all (you can even ‘select out’ the second harmonic on a stringed instrument if you gently press halfway along the vibrating string).
What does a \( \Psi^2 \) for a 2p orbital look like? The probability density plot is no longer spherically symmetrical. This time the shape is completely different—the orbital now has an orientation in space and it has two lobes. Notice also that there is a region where there is no electron density between the two lobes—another nodal surface. This time the node is a plane in between the two lobes and so it is known as a nodal plane. One representation of the 2p orbitals is a three-dimensional plot, which gives a clear idea of the true shape of the orbital.

Plots of 3p and 4p orbitals are similar—each has a nodal plane and the overall shape outlined in each is the same. However, the 3p orbital also has a radial node and the 4p has two radial nodes and once again the size of the orbital increases as the principal quantum number increases.

All this explains why the shape of an orbital depends on the orbital angular quantum number, \( \ell \). All s orbitals (\( \ell = 0 \)) are spherical, all p orbitals (\( \ell = 1 \)) are shaped like a figure eight, and d orbitals (\( \ell = 2 \)) are yet another different shape. The problem is that these probability density plots take a long time to draw—organic chemists need a simple easy way to represent orbitals. The contour diagrams were easier to draw but even they were a little tedious. Even simpler still is to draw just one contour within which there is, say, a 90% chance of finding the electron. This means that all s orbitals can be represented by a circle, and all p orbitals by a pair of lobes.

**The phase of an orbital**

The wave diagrams need further discussion to establish one fine point—the phase of an orbital.

Just as an electromagnetic wave, or the wave on a vibrating string, or even an ocean wave possesses different ‘phases’ (for example, the troughs and peaks of an ocean wave) so too do the atom’s wave functions—the orbitals. After each node in an orbital, the phase of the wave function changes. In the
2p orbital, for example, one lobe is one phase; the other lobe is another phase with the nodal plane in between. In the standing wave above the different phases are labelled positive and negative. The phases of a p orbital could be labelled in the same way (and you may sometimes see this) but, since chemists use positive and negative signs to mean specific charges, this could get confusing. Instead, one half of the p orbital is usually shaded to show that it has a different phase from the other half.

The magnetic quantum number, $m_\ell$

The magnetic quantum number, $m_\ell$, determines the spatial orientation of the orbital’s angular momentum and takes the values $-\ell$ to $+\ell$. An s orbital ($\ell = 0$), being spherical, can only have one orientation in space—it does not point in any one direction and hence it only has one value for $m_\ell (0)$. However, a p orbital could point in any direction. For a p orbital ($\ell = 1$) there are three values of $m_\ell = -1, 0, +1$. These correspond to the p orbitals aligned along the mutually perpendicular $x$-, $y$-, and $z$-axes. These orbitals, designated $p_x$, $p_y$, and $p_z$, are all degenerate. They differ only in their spatial orientations.

Summary so far

- Electrons in atoms are best described as waves
- All the information about the wave (and hence about the electron) is in the wave function, $\Psi$, the solution to the Schrödinger equation
- There are many possible solutions to the Schrödinger equation but each wave function (also called an orbital) can be described using three quantum numbers
- The principal quantum number, $n$, is largely responsible for the energy of the orbital (in one-electron systems, such as the hydrogen atom, it alone determines the energy). It takes integer values 1, 2, 3, 4, and so on, corresponding to the first, second, third, and so on shells of electrons
- The orbital angular momentum quantum number, $\ell$, determines the angular momentum that arises from the motion of an electron moving in the orbital. Its value depends on the value of $n$ and it takes integer values $0, \ldots, n-1$ but the orbitals are usually known by letters ($s$ when $\ell = 0$, $p$ when $\ell = 1$, $d$ when $\ell = 2$, and $f$ when $\ell = 3$). Orbitals with different values of $\ell$ have different shapes—s orbitals are spherical, p orbitals are shaped like a figure of eight
- The magnetic quantum number, $m_\ell$, determines the spatial orientation of the orbital. Its value depends on the value of $\ell$ and it can take the integer values: $-\ell, \ldots, 0, \ldots, +\ell$. This means that there is only one type of s orbital, three different p orbitals (all mutually perpendicular), five different d orbitals, and seven different f orbitals. The three different p orbitals are all degenerate, that is, they have the same energy (as do the five d orbitals and the seven f orbitals)
There is also a fourth quantum number, the spin angular momentum quantum number, $m_s$, which can take values of +1 or −1. The spin is not a property of orbitals but of the electrons that we put in the orbitals.

No two electrons in any one atom can have all four quantum numbers the same—this means that each orbital as described by the (first) three quantum numbers can hold a maximum of two electrons and then only if they have opposing spins.

We usually use a shorthand notation to describe an orbital such as 1s or 2p_y.

The number tells us the principal quantum number, $n$.

The letter tells us the orbital angular momentum quantum number, $l$.

The subscript letter tells us the magnetic quantum number, $m_l$.

These three quantum numbers, $n$, $l$, and $m_l$, define an orbital.

A few points are worth emphasis. Orbitals do not need to have electrons in them—they can be vacant (there doesn’t have to be someone standing on a stair for it to exist!). So far we have mainly been talking about the hydrogen atom and this has only one electron. Most of the time this electron is in the 1s orbital (the orbital lowest in energy) but if we give it enough energy we can promote it to a vacant orbital higher in energy, say, for example, the 3p_x orbital.

Another point is that the electrons may be found anywhere in an orbital except in a node. In a p orbital containing one electron, this electron may be found on either side but never in the middle. When the orbital contains two electrons, one electron doesn’t stay in one half and the other electron in the other half—both electrons could be anywhere (except in the node).

Finally, remember that all these orbitals are superimposed on each other. The 1s orbital is not the middle part of the 2s orbital. The 1s and 2s orbitals are separate orbitals in their own rights and each can hold a maximum of two electrons but the 2s orbital does occupy some of the same space as the 1s orbital (and also as the 2p orbitals, come to that). Neon, for example, has ten electrons in total: two will be in the 1s orbital, two in the 2s orbital, and two in each of the 2p orbitals. All these orbitals are superimposed on each other but the pairs of electrons are restricted to their individual orbitals. If we tried to draw all these orbitals, superimposed on each other as they are, in the same diagram the result would be a mess!

Putting electrons in orbitals

Working out where the electrons are in any atom, that is, which orbitals are populated, is easy. We simply put two electrons into the lowest energy orbital and work upwards. This ‘building up’ of the different atoms by putting electrons in the orbitals until they are full and then filling up the orbital next lowest in energy is known as the **Aufbau principle** (**Aufbau** is German for ‘building up’). The first and only electron in the hydrogen atom must go into the 1s orbital. In this sort of diagram the energy levels are represented as horizontal lines stacked roughly in order with the lowest energy at the bottom. Electrons are represented as vertical arrows. Arrows pointing upwards show one spin ($m_s = +1$ or −1) and arrows pointing downwards the other (which is which doesn’t matter).
The helium atom has two electrons and they can both fit into the 1s orbital providing they have opposite spins. The other change to the diagram is that, with two electrons and electron repulsion a factor, the 2s orbital is now lower in energy than the three 2p orbitals, though these three are still degenerate.

Lithium has one more electron but the 1s orbital is already full. The third electron must go into the next lowest orbital and that is the 2s. In this three-electron system, like that of the two-electron He atom, the three 2p orbitals are higher in energy than the 2s orbital. By the time we come to boron, with five electrons, the 2s is full as well and we must put the last electron into a 2p orbital. It doesn’t matter which one; they are degenerate.

Carbon has one more electron than boron but now there is a bit of a problem—where does the last electron go? It could either be paired with the electron already in one of the p orbitals or it could go into one of the other degenerate p orbitals. It turns out that the system is lower in energy (electron–electron repulsion is minimized) if the electrons are placed in different degenerate orbitals with their spins parallel (that is, both spins +1 or both –1). Another way of looking at this is that putting two electrons into the same orbital with their spins paired (that is, one +1, one –1) requires some extra amount of energy, sometimes called pairing energy.

This is known as Hund’s rule. An atom adopts the electronic configuration that has the greatest number of unpaired electrons in degenerate orbitals. Whilst this is all a bit theoretical in that isolated atoms are not found very often, the same rule applies for electrons in degenerate orbitals in molecules.
Nitrogen, with one more electron than carbon, has a single electron in each of the 2p orbitals. The new electron pairs up with another already in one of the 2p orbitals. It doesn’t enter the 3s orbital (the orbital next lowest in energy) since this is so much higher in energy and to enter the 3s orbital would require more energy than that needed to pair up with a 2p electron.

Molecular orbitals—homonuclear diatomics

So far the discussion has concerned only the shapes and energies of atomic orbitals (AOs). Organic chemists really need to look at the orbitals for whole molecules. One way to construct such molecular orbitals (MOs) is to combine the atomic orbitals of the atoms that make up the molecule. This approach is known as the Linear Combination of Atomic Orbitals (LCAO).

Atomic orbitals are wave functions and the different wave functions can be combined together rather in the way waves combine. You may be already familiar with the ideas of combining waves—they can add together constructively (in-phase) or destructively (out-of-phase).

Atomic orbitals can combine in the same way—in-phase or out-of-phase. Using two 1s orbitals drawn as circles (representing spheres) with dots to mark the nuclei and shading to represent phase, we can combine them in-phase, that is, add them together, or out-of-phase when they cancel each other out in a nodal plane down the centre between the two nuclei. The resulting orbitals belong to both atoms—they are molecular rather than atomic orbitals. As usual, the higher energy orbital is at the top.
When the two orbitals combine out-of-phase, the resulting molecular orbital has a nodal plane between the two nuclei. This means that if we were to put electrons into this orbital there would be no electron density in between the two nuclei. By contrast, if the molecular orbital from in-phase combination contained electrons, they would be found in between the two nuclei. Two exposed nuclei repel each other as both are positively charged. Any electron density between them helps to bond them together. So the in-phase combination is a bonding molecular orbital. As for the electrons themselves, they can now be shared between two nuclei and this lowers their energy relative to the 1s atomic orbital. Electrons in the orbital from the out-of-phase combination do not help bond the two nuclei together; in fact, they hinder the bonding. When this orbital is occupied, the electrons are mainly to be found anywhere but between the two nuclei. This means the two nuclei are more exposed to each other and so repel each other. This orbital is known as an antibonding molecular orbital and is higher in energy than the 1s orbitals.

The combination of the atomic 1s orbitals to give the two new molecular orbitals is simply shown on an energy level diagram. With one electron in each 1s orbital, two hydrogen atoms combine to give a hydrogen molecule.

There are several points to notice about this diagram.

- Two atomic orbitals (AOs) combine to give two molecular orbitals (MOs)
- By LCAO we add the two AOs to make the bonding orbital and subtract them to make the antibonding orbital
- Since the two atoms are the same, each AO contributes the same amount to the MOs
- The bonding MO is lower in energy than the AOs
- The antibonding MO is higher in energy than the AOs
- Each hydrogen atom initially had one electron. The spin of these electrons is unimportant
• The two electrons end up in the MO lowest in energy. This is the bonding MO
• Just as with AOs, each MO can hold two electrons as long as the electrons are spin paired
• The two electrons between the two nuclei in the bonding MO hold the molecule together—they are the chemical bond
• Since these two electrons are lower in energy in the MO than in the AOs, energy is given out when the atoms combine
• Or, if you prefer, we must put in energy to separate the two atoms again and to break the bond

From now on, we will always represent molecular orbitals in energy order—the highest-energy MO at the top (usually an antibonding MO) and the lowest in energy (usually a bonding MO and the one in which the electrons are most stable) at the bottom. We suggest you do the same.

When we were looking at the electronic configuration of atoms, we simply filled up the atomic orbitals starting from the lowest in energy and worked up. With molecules we do the same: we just fill up the molecular orbitals with however many electrons we have, starting from the lowest in energy and remembering that each orbital can hold two electrons and then only if they are spin paired.

**Breaking bonds**

If an atom is supplied with energy, an electron can be promoted to a higher energy level and it can then fall back down to its ground state, giving that energy out again. What would happen if an electron were promoted in a hydrogen molecule from the lowest energy level, the bonding MO, to the next lowest energy level, the antibonding MO? Again, an energy level diagram helps.

Now the electron in the antibonding orbital ‘cancels out’ the bonding of the electron in the bonding orbital. Since there is no overall bonding holding the two atoms together, they can drift apart as two separate atoms with their electrons in 1s atomic orbitals. In other words, promoting an electron from the bonding MO to the antibonding MO breaks the chemical bond. This is difficult to do with hydrogen molecules but easy with, say, bromine molecules. Shining light on \( \text{Br}_2 \) causes it to break up into bromine atoms.

**Bonding in other elements: helium**

A hydrogen molecule is held together by a single chemical bond since the pair of electrons in the bonding orbital constitutes this single bond. What would the MO energy level diagram for \( \text{He}_2 \) look like? Each helium atom has two electrons \((1s^2)\) so now both the bonding MO and the antibonding MO are full. Any bonding due to the electrons in the bonding orbital is cancelled out by the electrons in the antibonding orbital.

This idea will be developed in Chapters 5 and 6 when we look at bond-breaking steps in organic reaction mechanisms.
There is no overall bonding, the two helium atoms are not held together, and He$_2$ does not exist. Only if there are more electrons in bonding MOs than in antibonding MOs will there be any bonding between two atoms. In fact, we define the number of bonds between two atoms as the bond order (dividing by two since two electrons make up a chemical bond).

\[
\text{bond order} = \frac{(\text{no. of electrons in bonding MOs}) - (\text{no. of electrons in antibonding MOs})}{2}
\]

Hence the bond orders for H$_2$ and He$_2$ are

\[
\text{bond order (H}_2) = \frac{2-0}{2} = 1 \quad \text{i.e. a single bond}
\]
\[
\text{bond order (He}_2 = \frac{2-2}{2} = 0 \quad \text{i.e. no bond}
\]

**Bond formation using 2s and 2p atomic orbitals**

So far we have been looking at how we can combine the 1s atomic orbitals to give the molecular orbitals of simple molecules. However, just as there are lots of higher, vacant energy levels in atoms, so there are in molecules too. Other atomic orbitals combine to give new molecular orbitals and the 2s and 2p orbitals concern organic chemistry most of all. The 2s AOs combine in exactly the same way as the 1s orbitals do and also give rise to a bonding and an antibonding orbital. With p orbitals as well, there are more possibilities.

Since we are beginning to talk about lots of different MOs, we shall need to label them with a little more thought. When s orbitals combine, the resulting MOs, both bonding and antibonding, are totally symmetrical about the axis joining the two nuclei.

Antibonding orbitals are designated with a * e.g. $\sigma^*$, or $\pi^*$

Both MOs have rotational symmetry about the axis through the two nuclei.

When orbitals combine in this end-on overlap to give cylindrically symmetrical MOs, the resulting orbitals are said to possess sigma ($\sigma$) symmetry. Hence the bonding MO is a sigma orbital and electrons in such an orbital give rise to a sigma bond. In the hydrogen molecule the two hydrogen atoms are joined by a $\sigma$ bond.
What MOs result from the combination of two p orbitals? There are three mutually perpendicular p orbitals on each atom. As the two atoms approach each other, these orbitals can combine in two different ways—one p orbital from each atom can overlap end-on, but the other two p orbitals on each atom must combine side-on.

The end-on overlap (in-phase and out-of-phase) results in a pair of MOs that are cylindrically symmetrical about the internuclear axis—in other words, these combinations have $\sigma$ symmetry. The two molecular orbitals resulting from the end-on combination of two 2p orbitals are labelled the 2p$\sigma$ and the 2p$\sigma^*$ MOs.

The side-on overlap of two p orbitals forms an MO that is no longer symmetrical about the internuclear axis. If we rotate about this axis, the phase of the orbital changes. The orbital is described as having $\pi$ symmetry—a $\pi$ orbital is formed and the electrons in such an orbital make up a $\pi$ bond. Since there are two mutually perpendicular pairs of p orbitals that can combine in this fashion, there are a pair of degenerate mutually perpendicular $\pi$ bonding MOs and a pair of degenerate mutually perpendicular $\pi^*$ antibonding MOs.

The two sorts of molecular orbitals arising from the combinations of the p orbitals are not degenerate—more overlap is possible when the AOs overlap end-on than when they overlap side-on. As a
result, the $p_\sigma$ orbital is lower in energy than the $p_\pi$ orbital. We can now draw an energy level diagram to show the combination of the 1s, 2s, and 2p atomic orbitals to form molecular orbitals.

Let us now look at a simple diatomic molecule—nitrogen. A nitrogen molecule is composed of two nitrogen atoms, each containing seven electrons in total. We shall omit the 1s electrons because they are so much lower in energy than the electrons in the 2s and 2p AOs and because it makes no difference in terms of bonding since the electrons in the $1s_\sigma^*$ cancel out the bonding due to the electrons in the $1s_\sigma$ MO. The electrons in the 1s AOs and the 1s MOs are described as core electrons and so, in discussing bonding, we shall consider only the electrons in the outermost shell, in this case the 2s and 2p electrons. This means each nitrogen contributes five bonding electrons and hence the molecular orbitals must contain a total of ten electrons.

The electrons in the $\sigma$ and $\sigma^*$ MOs formed from the 2s MOs also cancel out—these electrons effectively sit on the atoms, two on each, and form lone pairs—nonbonding pairs of electrons that do not contribute to bonding. All the bonding is done with the remaining six electrons. They fit neatly into a $\sigma$ bond from two of the $p$ orbitals and two $\pi$ bonds from the other two pairs. Nitrogen has a triple bonded structure.

**Heteronuclear diatomics**

Up to now we have only considered combining two atoms of the same element to form homonuclear diatomic molecules. Now we shall consider what happens when the two atoms are different. First of all, how do the atomic orbitals of different elements differ? They have the same sorts of orbitals 1s, 2s, 2p, etc. and these orbitals will be the same shapes but the orbitals will have different energies. For
example, removing an electron completely from atoms of carbon, oxygen, or fluorine (that is, ionizing the atoms) requires different amounts of energy. Fluorine requires most energy, carbon least, even though in each case we are removing an electron from the same orbital, the 2p AO. The energies of the 2p orbitals must be lowest in fluorine, low in oxygen, and highest in carbon.

We are talking now about electronegativity. The more electronegative an atom is, the more it attracts electrons. This can be understood in terms of energies of the AOs. The more electronegative an atom is, the lower in energy are its AOs and so any electrons in them are held more tightly. This is a consequence of the increasing nuclear charge going from left to right across the periodic table. As we go from Li across to C and on to N, O, and F, the elements steadily become more electronegative and the AOs lower in energy.

So what happens if two atoms whose atomic orbitals were vastly different in energy, such as Na and F, were to combine? An electron transfers from sodium to fluorine and the product is the ionic salt, sodium fluoride, $\text{NaF}$.

The important point is that the atomic orbitals are too far apart in energy to combine to form a new molecular orbital and no covalent bond is formed. The ionic bonding in NaF is due simply to the attraction between two oppositely charged ions. When the atomic orbitals have exactly the same energy, they combine to form new molecular orbitals, one with an energy lower than the AOs, the other with an energy higher than the AOs. When the AOs are very different in energy, electrons are transferred from one atom to another and ionic bonding results. When the AOs are slightly different in energy, they do combine and we need now to look at this situation in more detail.
The AOs combine to form new MOs but they do so unsymmetrically. The more electronegative atom, perhaps O or F, contributes more to the bonding orbital and the less electronegative element (carbon is the one we shall usually be interested in) contributes more to the antibonding orbital. This applies both to $\sigma$ bonds and to $\pi$ bonds so here is an idealized case.

These three different cases where the two combining orbitals differ greatly in energy, only a little, or not at all are summarized below.

### Energies of AOs both the same
- Large interaction between AOs
- Bonding MO much lower in energy than AOs
- Antibonding MO is much higher in the energy than the AOs
- Both AOs contribute equally to the MOs
- Electrons in bonding MO are shared equally between the two atoms
- Bond between A and B would classically be described as purely covalent
- Easiest to break bond into two radicals (homolytic fission). Heterolytic fission of bond is possible and could give either $A^+$ and $B^-$ or $A^-$ and $B^+$

### AO on atom B is a little lower in energy than AO on atom A
- Less interaction between AOs
- Bonding MO is lowered only by a small amount relative to AO on atom B
- Antibonding MO is raised in energy by only a small amount relative to AO on atom B
- The AO on B contributes more to the bonding MO and the AO on A electrons in bonding MO are shared between atoms but are associated more with atom B than A
- Bond between A and B is covalent but there is also some electrostatic (ionic) attraction between atoms
- Easiest to break bond into two ions, $A^+$ and $B^-$, although it is also possible to give two radicals

### AO on atom B is a lot lower in energy than AO on atom A
- AOs are too far apart in energy to interact
- The filled orbital on the anion has the same energy as the AO on atom B
- The empty orbital on the cation has the same energy as the AO on atom A
- Only one AO contributes to each ‘MO’
- Electrons in the filled orbital are located only on atom B
- Bond between A and B would classically be described as purely ionic
- Compound already exists as ions $A^+$ and $B^-$
As an example of atomic orbitals of equal and unequal energies combining, let us consider the $\pi$ bonds resulting from two carbon atoms combining and from a carbon atom combining with an oxygen atom. With the C–C $\pi$ bond, both p orbitals have the same energy and combine to form a symmetrical $\pi$ bond. If the bonding MO ($\pi$) is occupied, the electrons are shared equally over both carbon atoms. Compare this with the $\pi$ bond that results from combining an oxygen p AO with a carbon p AO.

Now the bonding MO ($\pi$) is made up with a greater contribution from the oxygen p orbital than from the carbon p orbital. If this MO contained electrons, there would be more electrons around the oxygen atom than around the carbon. This C–O $\pi$ bond is covalent but there is also some electrostatic contribution to its bond strength. This electrostatic interaction actually makes a C–O double bond much stronger than a C–C double bond (bond strength for C=O, about 725–60 kJ mol$^{-1}$; for C=C, 600–25 kJ mol$^{-1}$; compare also a C–O single bond, 350–80 kJ mol$^{-1}$ with a C–C single bond, 340–50 kJ mol$^{-1}$). Because the electrons in the populated MO ($\pi$) are associated more with the oxygen atom than with the carbon, it is easier to break this bond heterolytically with both electrons moving completely on to the oxygen atom than it is to break it homolytically to get a diradical with one electron moving on to the carbon and one on to the oxygen atom. This will be the first chemical reaction we study in detail in Chapters 5 and 6.

Other factors affecting degree of orbital interaction

Having similar energies is not the only criterion for good interaction between two atomic orbitals. It also matters how the orbitals overlap. We have seen that p orbitals overlap better in an end-on fashion (forming a $\sigma$ bond) than they do side-on (forming a $\pi$ bond). Another factor is the size of the atomic orbitals. For best overlap, the orbitals should be the same size—a 2p orbital overlaps much better with another 2p orbital than it does with a 3p or 4p orbital.

A third factor is the symmetry of the orbitals—two atomic orbitals must have the appropriate symmetry to combine. Thus a 2p$_x$ orbital cannot combine with a 2p$_y$ or 2p$_z$ orbital since they are all perpendicular to each other (they are orthogonal). In one case the two p orbitals have no overlap at all; in the other case any constructive overlap is cancelled out by equal amounts of destructive overlap.
overlap. Likewise, an s orbital can overlap with a p orbital only end-on. Sideways overlap leads to equal amounts of bonding and antibonding interactions and no overall gain in energy.

**Molecular orbitals of molecules with more than two atoms**

We now need to look at ways of combining more than two atoms at a time. For some molecules, such as H₂S and PH₃, that have all bond angles equal to 90°, the bonding should be straightforward—the p orbitals (which are at 90°) on the central atom simply overlap with the 1s orbitals of the hydrogen atoms.

But how do we account for the bond angles in water (104°) and ammonia (107°) when the only atomic orbitals are at 90° to each other? All the covalent compounds of elements in the row Li to Ne raise this difficulty. Water (H₂O) and ammonia (NH₃) have angles between their bonds that are roughly tetrahedral and methane (CH₄) is exactly tetrahedral but how can the atomic orbitals combine to rationalize this shape? The carbon atom has electrons only in the first and second shells, and the 1s orbital is too low in energy to contribute to any molecular orbitals, which leaves only the 2s and 2p orbitals. The problem is that the 2p orbitals are at right angles to each other and methane does not have any 90° bonds. (So don’t draw any either! Remember Chapter 2.). Let us consider exactly where the atoms are in methane and see if we can combine the AOs in such a way as to make satisfactory molecular orbitals.

Methane has a tetrahedral structure with each C–H bond 109 pm and all the bond angles 109.5°. To simplify things, we shall draw a molecule of methane enclosed in a cube. It is possible to do this since the opposite corners of a cube describe a perfect tetrahedron. The carbon atom is at the centre of the cube and the four hydrogen atoms are at four of the corners.

Now, how can the carbon’s 2s and 2p atomic orbitals combine with the four hydrogen 1s atomic orbitals? The carbon’s 2s orbital can overlap with all four hydrogen 1s orbitals at once with all the orbitals in the same phase. In more complicated systems like this, it is clearer to use a diagram of the AOs to see what the MO will be like.

Each of the 2p orbitals points to opposite faces of the cube. Once more all four hydrogen 1s orbitals can combine with each p orbital but this time the hydrogen AOs on the opposite faces of the cube must be differently phased.

Again we are not going to draw these three molecular orbitals but you can see from the AO diagrams what they look like. They are degenerate (that is, they have the same energy) and each orbital has one nodal plane (it is easiest to see in the middle diagram passing vertically down the middle of the cube and dividing shaded orbitals on the right from unshaded orbitals on the left). Only the bonding overlap between the AOs is shown but of course there is an antibonding interaction for
every bonding interaction, which means there are eight MOs altogether (which is correct since there were eight AOs to start with).

Organic chemists can just about understand this ‘correct’ MO picture of methane and theoretical chemists are able to construct correct MOs for very much more complex molecules than methane. There is experimental evidence too that these pictures are correct. Other experiments reveal that all four C–H bonds in methane are exactly the same and yet the MOs for methane are not all the same. There is no contradiction here! The molecular orbital approach tells us that there is one MO of one kind and three of another but the electrons in them are shared out over all five atoms. No one hydrogen atom has more or less electrons than any other—they are all equivalent. Techniques that tell us the structure of methane do not tell us where bonds are; they simply tell us where the atoms are located in space—we draw in bonds connecting atoms together. Certainly the atoms form a regular tetrahedron but exactly where the electrons are is a different matter entirely. The classical picture of two atoms held together by a pair of electrons is not necessarily correct—the five atoms in methane are held together by electrons but these are in molecular orbitals, which spread over all the atoms. We are going to need the classical picture when we draw mechanisms. Methane only has one carbon atom—imagine what it would be like with larger compounds that can contain hundreds of carbon atoms! Fortunately, there is another, simpler method we can use to describe bonding that preserves the important points from this theory.

**Hybridization of atomic orbitals**

For most of organic chemistry, it is helpful to consider the molecule as being made up of atoms held together by bonds consisting of a pair of electrons. When working out the MOs for methane, we used the carbon 2s and all three of the 2p orbitals to combine with the hydrogen 1s orbitals. Each orbital combined with all the hydrogen orbitals equally. Another way to consider the bonding would be to combine the carbon 2s and 2p orbitals first to make four new orbitals. Each of these orbitals would be exactly the same and be composed of one-quarter of the 2s orbital and three-quarters of one of the p orbitals. The new orbitals are called sp³ hybrid orbitals to show the proportions of the AOs in each. This process of mixing is called hybridization.

Combining four atomic orbitals on the same atom gives the same total number of hybrid orbitals. Each of these has one-quarter s character and three-quarters p character. The sp³ orbital has a planar node through the nucleus like a p orbital but one lobe is larger than the other because of the extra contribution of the 2s orbital, which adds to one lobe but subtracts from the other.

The four sp³ orbitals on one carbon atom point to the corners of a tetrahedron and methane can be formed by overlapping the large lobe of each sp³ orbital with
the 1s orbital of a hydrogen atom. Each overlap forms an MO \((2sp^3 + 1s)\) and we can put two elec-
trons in each to form a C–H \(\sigma\) bond. There will of course also be an antibonding MO, \(\sigma^*\) \((2sp^3 - 1s)\) in each case, but these orbitals are empty.

The great advantage of this method is that it can be used to build up structures of much larger
molecules quickly and without having to imagine that the molecule is made up from isolated atoms.
So it is easy to work out the structure of ethene (ethylene) the simplest alkene. Ethene is a planar
molecule with bond angles close to 120°. Our approach will be to hybridize all the orbitals needed
for the C–H framework and see what is left over. In this case we need three bonds from each carbon
atom (one to make a C–C bond and two to make C–H bonds).

Therefore we need to combine the 2s orbital on each carbon atom with two p orbitals to make the three bonds. We
could hybridize the 2s, 2p_x, and 2p_y orbitals (that is, all the AOs in the plane) to form three equal \(sp^2\) hybrid atomic
orbitals, leaving the 2p_z orbital unchanged. These \(sp^2\) hybrid orbitals will
have one-third s character and only two-
thirds p character.

The three \(sp^2\) hybrid atomic orbitals on
each carbon atom can overlap with three
other orbitals (two hydrogen 1s AOs and one \(sp^2\) AO from the other carbon) to form three \(\sigma\) MOs.
This leaves the two 2p_z orbitals, one on each carbon, which combine to form the \(\pi\) MO. The skeleton
of the molecule has five \(\sigma\) bonds (one C–C and four C–H) in the plane and the central \(\pi\) bond is
formed by two 2p_z orbitals above and below the plane.

Ethyne (acetylene) has a C–C triple bond. Each carbon bonds to only two other atoms to form a
linear CH skeleton. Only the carbon 2s and 2p_x have the right symmetry to bind to only two atoms at
once so we can hybridize these to form two sp hybrids on each carbon atom leaving the 2p_y and 2p_z
to form \(\pi\) MOs with the 2p orbitals on the other carbon atom. These sp hybrids have 50% each s and
p character and form a linear carbon skeleton.
We could then form the MOs as shown below. Each sp hybrid AO overlaps with either a hydrogen 1s AO or with the sp orbital from the other carbon. The two sets of p orbitals combine to give two mutually perpendicular π MOs.

Hydrocarbon skeletons are built up from tetrahedral (sp\(^3\)), trigonal planar (sp\(^2\)), or linear (sp) hybridized carbon atoms. It is not necessary for you to go through the hybridization process each time you want to work out the shape of a skeleton. In real life molecules are not made from their constituent atoms but from other molecules and it doesn’t matter how complicated a molecule might be or where it comes from; it will have an easily predictable shape. All you have to do is count up the single bonds at each carbon atom. If there are two, that carbon atom is linear (sp hybridized), if there are three, that carbon atom is trigonal (sp\(^2\) hybridized), and, if there are four, that carbon atom is tetrahedral (sp\(^3\) hybridized).

This hydrocarbon (hex-5-en-2-yne) has two linear sp carbon atoms (C\(_2\) and C\(_3\)), two trigonal sp\(^2\) carbon atoms (C\(_5\) and C\(_6\)), a tetrahedral sp\(^3\) CH\(_2\) group in the middle of the chain (C\(_4\)), and a tetrahedral sp\(^3\) methyl group (C\(_1\)) at the end of the chain. We had no need to look at any AOs to deduce this—we needed only to count the bonds.

If you had drawn the molecule more professionally as shown in the margin, you would have to check that you counted up to four bonds at each carbon. Of course, if you just look at the double and triple bonds, you will get the right answer without counting single bonds at all. Carbon atoms with no π bonds are tetrahedral (sp\(^3\) hybridized), those with one π bond are trigonal (sp\(^2\) hybridized), and those with two π bonds are linear (sp hybridized). This is essentially the VSEPR approach with a bit more logic behind it.

All normal compounds of carbon have eight electrons in the outer shell \((n = 2)\) of the carbon atom, all shared in bonds. It doesn’t matter where these electrons come from; just fit them into the right MOs on sp, sp\(^2\), or sp\(^3\) atoms.

We can hybridize any atoms

Hybridization is a property of AOs rather than specifically of carbon and, since all atoms have AOs, we can hybridize any atom. A tetrahedral arrangement of atoms about any central atom can be rationalized by describing the central atom as sp\(^3\) hybridized. The three molecules shown here all have a tetrahedral structure and in each case the central atom can be considered to be sp\(^3\) hybridized.

Each of these three molecules has four equivalent σ bonds from the central tetrahedral sp\(^3\) atom, whether this is B, C, or N, and the same total number of bonding electrons—the molecules are said to be isoelectronic. These three elements come one after the other in the periodic table so each nucleus has one more proton than the last: B has 5, C has 6, and N has 7. This is why the charge on the central atom varies.

Compounds of the same three elements with only three bonds are more complicated. Borane, BH\(_3\), has only three pairs of bonding electrons. The central boron atom bonds to only three other atoms. We can therefore describe it as being sp\(^2\) hybridized with an empty p orbital.

Each of the B–H bonds results from the overlap of an sp\(^2\) orbital with the hydrogen 1s orbital. The
The p orbital is not needed and contains no electrons. Do not be tempted by the alternative structure with tetrahedral boron and an empty sp³ orbital. You want to populate the lowest energy orbitals for greatest stability and sp² orbitals with their greater s character are lower in energy than sp³ orbitals. Another way to put this is that, if you have to have an empty orbital, it is better to have it of the highest possible energy since it has no electrons in it and doesn’t affect the stability of the molecule.

Borane is isoelectronic with the methyl cation, CH₃⁺. All the arguments we have just applied to borane also apply to Me⁺ so it too is sp² hybridized with a vacant p orbital. This will be very important when we discuss the reactions of carbocations in Chapter 17.

Now what about ammonia, NH₃? Ammonia is not isoelectronic with borane and Me⁺! As well as three N–H bonds, each with two electrons, the central nitrogen atom also has a lone pair of electrons. We have two choices: either we could hybridize the nitrogen atom sp² and put the lone pair in the p orbital or we could hybridize the nitrogen sp³ and have the lone pair in an sp³ orbital.

This is the opposite of the situation with borane and Me⁺. The extra pair of electrons does contribute to the energy of ammonia so it should be in the lower-energy orbital, sp³, rather than pure p. Experimentally the H–N–H bond angles are all 107.3°. Clearly, this is much closer to the 109.5° sp³ angle than to the 120° sp² angle. But the bond angles are not exactly 109.5°, so ammonia cannot be described as pure sp³ hybridized. VSEPR says the lone pair repels the bonds more than they repel each other. Alternatively, you could say that the orbital containing the lone pair must have slightly more s character while the N–H bonding orbitals must have correspondingly more p character.

The methyl anion, CH₃⁻, and hydronium ion, H₃O⁺, are both isoelectronic with ammonia so that all share the same pyramidal structure. Each is approximately tetrahedral with a lone pair in an sp³ orbital. These elements follow each other in the periodic table so the change in charge occurs because each nucleus has one more proton than the last. VSEPR also gives this answer.

**Shape of phosphine**

Phosphine, PH₃, has bond angles of about 90° and there is no need for hybridization. The three H 1s AO can overlap with the three 3p orbitals of the phosphorus atom, which leaves the lone pair in the 3s orbital. This 'pure s' lone pair is less energetic and therefore less reactive than the sp³ lone pair in ammonia which explains why ammonia is more basic than phosphine (see Chapter 8). In general atoms from Na to Ar are less likely to be hybridized than those from Li to Ne because the longer bonds mean the substituents are further from the central atom and steric interaction is less. VSEPR does not give this answer.

**Double bonds to other elements**

The C=O double bond is the most important functional group in organic chemistry. It is present in aldehydes, ketones, acids, esters, amides, and so on. We shall spend Chapters 5–10 discussing its chemistry so it is important that you understand its electronic structure. As in alkenes, the two atoms that make up this double bond are sp² hybridized. The carbon atom uses all three sp² orbitals for overlap with other orbitals to form σ bonds, but the oxygen uses only one for overlap with another orbital (the sp² orbitals on the carbon atom) to form a σ bond. However, the other two sp² orbitals are not vacant—they contain the oxygen’s two lone pairs. A π orbital from the carbon and one from the oxygen make up the π bond which also contains two electrons.
The less important double bonds to nitrogen (imines) are very similar but now there is only one lone pair on nitrogen and a second $\sigma$ bond to whatever substituent is on the nitrogen atom. Looking down on the planar structures of alkenes, imines, and ketones we see only the ends of the $p$ orbitals but the rest of the structures are clearly related.

*Alkenes* have a planar trigonal framework of $sp^2$ carbon atoms. Each uses one $sp^2$ orbital to form a $\sigma$ bond to the other carbon atom and two $sp^2$ orbitals to form $\sigma$ bonds to the substituents (here the general ‘R’). Two carbon $p$ orbitals are used for a $C$–$C$ $\pi$ bond. There are no lone pairs of electrons on either carbon atom.

*Imines* have a planar trigonal framework of an $sp^2$ carbon atom and an $sp^2$ nitrogen atom. Each uses one $sp^2$ orbital to form a $\sigma$ bond to the other atom and a $p$ orbital to form a $\pi$ bond to the other atom. The carbon uses two $sp^2$ orbitals and the nitrogen one to form $\sigma$ bonds to the substituents (here the general ‘R’). There is one lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen atom.

*Carbonyl compounds* have a planar trigonal framework of an $sp^2$ carbon atom and an $sp^2$ oxygen atom. Each uses one $sp^2$ orbital to form a $\sigma$ bond to the other atom and a $p$ orbital to form a $\pi$ bond to the other atom. The carbon uses two $sp^2$ orbitals to form $\sigma$ bonds to the substituents (here the general ‘R’). There are two lone pairs of electrons on the oxygen atom.

Where ‘R’ is joined to the double bond through a carbon atom, the nature of R determines which orbital will be used to pair up with the $sp^2$ orbital. In all the compounds shown below a saturated carbon atom with four bonds is joined to the double bond. The $C$–$C$ single bond is a $\sigma$ bond between
an sp² orbital on the ketone, imine, or alkene and an sp³ orbital on the substituent. It doesn’t make any difference that the second two compounds contain rings. In all cases the black bond joins a saturated, tetrahedral, sp³ carbon atom to the double bond and all the black σ bonds are between sp² and sp³ carbons or nitrogens.

All the other combinations are possible—here are just a few. It should be clear by now that σ bonds can form between any sort of orbitals that can point towards each other but that π bonds can form only between p orbitals.

Triple bonds can be formed between carbon and other elements too. The most important is the CN triple bond present in cyanides or nitriles. Both C and N are sp hybridized in these linear molecules, which leaves the lone pair on nitrogen in an sp orbital too. You will see (Chapter 8) how this affects the basicity of nitriles.

Conclusion

We have barely touched the enormous variety of molecules, but it is important that you realize at this point that these simple ideas of structural assembly can be applied to the most complicated molecules known. We shall use AOs and combine them into MOs to solve the structure of very small molecules and to deduce the structures of small parts of much larger molecules. With the additional ideas in Chapter 7 (conjugation) you will be able to grasp the structures of any organic compound. From now on we shall use terms like AO and MO, 2p orbital, sp² hybridization, σ bond, energy level, and populated orbital without further explanation. If you are unsure about any of them, refer back to this chapter for an explanation.

Problems

1. In the (notional and best avoided in practice) formation of NaCl from a sodium atom and a chlorine atom, descriptions like this abound in textbooks: ‘an electron is transferred from the valency shell of the sodium atom to the valency shell of the chlorine atom’. What is meant, in quantum number terms, by ‘valency shell’? Give a complete description in terms of all four quantum numbers of that transferred electron: (a) while it is in the sodium atom and (b) after it has been transferred to the chlorine atom. Why is the formation of NaCl by this process to be discouraged?
2. What is the electronic structure of these species? You should consult a periodic table before answering.

\[ \text{H}^0, \text{HS}^-, \text{K}^+, \text{Xe} \]

3. What sort of bonds can be formed between s orbitals and p orbitals? Which will provide better overlap, 1s + 2p or 1s + 3p? Which bonds will be stronger, those between hydrogen and C, N, O, and F on the one hand or those between hydrogen and Si, P, S, and Cl on the other? Within the first group, bond strength goes in this order: HF > OH > NH > CH. Why?

4. Though no helium ‘molecule’ He\(_2\) exists, an ion He\(_2^+\) does exist. Explain.

5. You may be surprised to know that the molecule CH\(_2\), with divalent carbon, can exist. It is of course very unstable but it is known and it can have two different structures. One has an H–C–H bond angle of 180° and the other an angle of 120°. Suggest structures for these species and say which orbitals will be occupied by all bonding and nonbonding electrons. Which structure is likely to be more stable?

6. Construct an MO diagram for the molecule LiH and suggest what type of bond it might have.

7. Deduce the MOs for the oxygen molecule. What is the bond order in oxygen and where are the 2p electrons?

8. Construct MOs for acetylene (ethyne) without hybridization.

9. What is the shape and hybridization of each carbon atom in these molecules?

10. Suggest detailed structures for these molecules and predict their shapes. We have deliberately made noncommittal drawings to avoid giving away the answer to the question. Don’t use these sorts of drawing in your answer.

\[ \text{CO}_2, \text{CH}_2=\text{NCH}_3, \text{CHF}_3, \text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{CH}_2, (\text{CH}_2)_2\text{O} \]
Chemical reactions

Most molecules are at peace with themselves. Bottles of water, or acetone (propanone, Me₂C=O), or methyl iodide (iodomethane CH₃I) can be stored for years without any change in the chemical composition of the molecules inside. Yet when we add chemical reagents, say, HCl to water, sodium cyanide (NaCN) to acetone, or sodium hydroxide to methyl iodide, chemical reactions occur. This chapter is an introduction to the reactivity of organic molecules: why they don’t and why they do react; how we can understand reactivity in terms of charges and orbitals and the movement of electrons; how we can represent the detailed movement of electrons—the mechanism of the reaction—by a special device called the curly arrow.

To understand organic chemistry you must be familiar with two languages. One, which we have concentrated on so far, is the structure and representation of molecules. The second is the description of the reaction mechanism in terms of curly arrows and that is what we are about to start. The first is static and the second dynamic. The creation of new molecules is the special concern of chemistry and an interest in the mechanism of chemical reactions is the special concern of organic chemistry.

Molecules react because they move. They move internally—we have seen (Chapter 3) how the stretching and bending of bonds can be detected by infrared spectroscopy. Whole molecules move continuously in space, bumping into each other, into the walls of the vessel they are in, and into the solvent if they are in solution. When one bond in a single molecule stretches too much it may break and a chemical reaction occurs. When two molecules bump into each other, they may combine with the formation of a new bond, and a chemical reaction occurs. We are first going to think about collisions between molecules.

Not all collisions between molecules lead to chemical change

All organic molecules have an outer layer of many electrons, which occupy filled orbitals, bonding and nonbonding. Charge–charge repulsion between these electrons ensures that all molecules repel each other. Reaction will occur only if the molecules are given enough energy (the activation energy for the reaction) for the molecules to pass the repulsion and get close enough to each other. If two molecules lack the required activation energy, they will simply collide, each bouncing off the electrons on the surface of the other and exchanging energy as they do so, but remain chemically...
unchanged. This is rather like a collision in snooker or pool. Both balls are unchanged afterwards but are moving in different directions at new velocities.

**Charge attraction brings molecules together**

In addition to this universal repulsive force, there are also important attractive forces between molecules if they are charged. Cations (+) and anions (−) attract each other electrostatically and this may be enough for reaction to occur. When an alkyl chloride, RCl, reacts with sodium iodide, NaI, in acetone (propanone, Me₂C=O) solution a precipitate of sodium chloride forms. Sodium ions, Na⁺, and chloride ions, Cl⁻, ions in solution are attracted by their charges and combine to form a crystalline lattice of alternating cations and anions—the precipitate of crystalline sodium chloride.

This inorganic style of attraction is rare in organic reactions. A more common cause of organic reactions is attraction between a charged reagent (cation or anion) and an organic compound that has a dipole. An example that we shall explore in this chapter is the reaction between sodium cyanide (a salt, NaCN) and a carbonyl compound such as acetone. Sodium cyanide is made up of sodium cations, Na⁺, and cyanide anions, CN⁻, in solution. Acetone has a carbonyl group, a C=O double bond, which is polarized because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon. The negative cyanide ion is attracted to the positive end of the carbonyl group dipole.

It is not even necessary for the reagent to be charged. Ammonia also reacts with acetone and this time it is the lone pair of electrons—a pair of electrons not involved in bonding and concentrated on the nitrogen atom of the uncharged ammonia molecule—that is attracted to the positive end of the carbonyl group dipole.

Polarity can arise from σ bonds too. The most electronegative element in the periodic table is fluorine and three fluorine atoms on electropositive boron produce a partially positively charged boron atom by σ bond polarization. The negative end of the acetone dipole (the oxygen atom) is attracted to the boron atom in BF₃.

But we have not told you the whole story about BF₃. Boron is in group 3 and thus has only six electrons around it in its trivalent compounds. A molecule of BF₃ is planar with an empty p orbital. This is the reverse of a lone pair. An empty orbital on an atom does not repel electron-rich areas of other molecules and so the oxygen atom of acetone is attracted electrostatically to the partial positive charge and one of the lone pairs on oxygen can form a bonding interaction with the empty orbital. We shall develop these ideas in the next section.
So, to summarize, the presence of a dipole in a molecule represents an imbalance in the distribution of the bonding electrons due to polarization of a $\sigma$ bond or a $\pi$ bond or to a pair of electrons or an empty orbital localized on one atom. When two molecules with complementary dipoles collide and together have the required activation energy to ensure that the collision is sufficiently energetic to overcome the general electronic repulsion, chemical change or reaction can occur.

**Orbital overlap brings molecules together**

Other organic reactions take place between completely uncharged molecules with no dipole moments. One of the old ‘tests’ for unsaturation was to treat the compound with bromine water. If the brown colour disappeared, the molecule was unsaturated. We don’t use ‘tests’ like these any more (spectroscopy means we don’t need to) but the reaction is still an important one. A simple symmetrical alkene combines with symmetrical bromine in a simple addition reaction.

The only electrons that might be useful in the kind of attraction we have discussed so far are the lone pair electrons on bromine. But we know from many experiments that electrons flow out of the alkene towards the bromine atom in this reaction—the reverse of what we should expect from electron distribution. The attraction between these molecules is not electrostatic. In fact, we know that reaction occurs because the bromine molecule has an empty orbital available to accept electrons. This is not a localized atomic orbital like that in the BF$_3$ molecule. It is the antibonding orbital belonging to the Br–Br $\sigma$ bond: the $\sigma^*$ orbital. There is therefore in this case an attractive interaction between a full orbital (the $\pi$ bond) and an empty orbital (the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the Br–Br bond). The molecules are attracted to each other because this one interaction is between an empty and a full orbital and leads to bonding, unlike all the other repulsive interactions between filled orbitals. We shall develop this less obvious attraction as the chapter proceeds.

Most organic reactions involve interactions between full and empty orbitals. Many also involve charge interactions, and some inorganic reactions involve nothing but charge attraction. Whatever the attraction between organic molecules, reactions involve electrons moving from one place to another. We call the details of this process the **mechanism of the reaction** and we need to explain some technical terms before discussing this.

**Electron flow is the key to reactivity**

The vast majority of organic reactions are polar in nature. That is to say, electrons flow from one molecule to another as the reaction proceeds. The electron donor is called a **nucleophile** (nucleus-loving) while the electron acceptor is called the **electrophile** (electron-loving). These terms come from the idea of charge attraction as a dominating force in reactions. The nucleophile likes nuclei because they are positively charged and the electrophile likes electrons because they are negatively charged. Though we no longer regard reactions as controlled only by charge interactions, these names have stuck.

Examples of reactions where the nucleophile is an anion and the electrophile is a cation and a new bond is formed simply by charge attraction leading to the combination of opposite charges include the reaction of sodium hydroxide with positively charged phosphorus compounds. The new bond between oxygen and phosphorus is formed by the donation of electrons from the nucleophile (hydroxide ion HO$^-$) to the electrophile (the positively charged phosphorus atom).
More often, reaction occurs when electrons are transferred from a lone pair to an empty orbital as in the reaction between an amine and BF$_3$. The amine is the nucleophile because of the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen and BF$_3$ is the electrophile because of the empty p orbital on boron.

The kind of bond formed in these two reactions used to be called a ‘dative covalent bond’ because both electrons in the bond were donated by the same atom. We no longer classify bonds in this way, but call them σ bonds or π bonds as these are the fundamentally different types of bonds in organic compounds. Most new bonds are formed by donation of both electrons from one atom to another.

These simple charge or orbital interactions may be enough to explain simple inorganic reactions but we shall also be concerned with nucleophiles that supply electrons out of bonds and electrophiles that accept electrons into antibonding orbitals. For the moment accept that polar reactions usually involve electrons flowing from a nucleophile and towards an electrophile.

### In reaction mechanisms

- Nucleophiles donate electrons
- Electrophiles accept electrons

Since we are describing a dynamic process of electron movement from one molecule to another in this last reaction, it is natural to use some sort of arrow to represent the process. Organic chemists use a curved arrow (called a ‘curly arrow’) to show what is going on. It is a simple and eloquent symbol for chemical reactions.

The curly arrow shows the movement of a pair of electrons from nitrogen into the gap between nitrogen and boron to form a new σ bond between those two atoms. This representation, what it means, and how it can be developed into a language of chemical reactions is our main concern in this chapter.

### Orbital overlap controls angle of successful attack

Electrostatic forces provide a generalized attraction between molecules in chemical reactions. In the reaction between chloride anions and sodium cations described above, the way in which these two spherical species approached one another was unimportant because the charges attracted one another from any angle. In most organic reactions the orbitals of the nucleophile and electrophile are directional and so the molecular orbitals of the reacting molecules exert important control. If a new bond is to be formed as the molecules collide, the orbitals of the two species must be correctly aligned in space. In our last example, only if the sp$^3$ orbital of the lone pair on nitrogen points directly at the empty orbital of the BF$_3$ can bond formation take place. Other collisions will not lead to reaction. In the first frame a successful collision takes place and a bond can be formed between the orbitals. In the second frame are three examples of unsuccessful collisions where no orbital overlap is possible. There are of course many more unproductive collisions but only one productive collision. Most collisions do not lead to reaction.
The orbitals must also have about the right amount of energy to interact profitably. Electrons are to be passed from a full to an empty orbital. Full orbitals naturally tend to be of lower energy than empty orbitals—that is after all why they are filled! So when the electrons move into an empty orbital they have to go up in energy and this is part of the activation energy for the reaction. If the energy gap is too big, few molecules will have enough energy to climb it and reaction will be bad. The ideal would be to have a pair of electrons in a filled orbital on the nucleophile and an empty orbital on the electrophile of the same energy. There would be no gap and reaction would be easy. In real life, a small gap is the best we can hope for.

Now we shall discuss a generalized example of a neutral nucleophile, Nu, with a lone pair donating its electrons to a cationic electrophile, E, with an empty orbital. Notice the difference between the curly arrow for electron movement and the straight reaction arrow. Notice also that the nucleophile has given away electrons so it has become positively charged and that the electrophile has accepted electrons so it has become neutral.

If we look at different possible relative energies for the lone pair orbital and the empty orbital, we might have equal energies, a small gap, or a large gap. Just as in Chapter 4, the horizontal lines represent energy levels, the arrows on them represent electrons, and the vertical scale is energy with high energy at the top and low energy at the bottom.

At first this picture suggests that the electrons will have to climb up to the empty orbital if it is higher in energy than the filled orbital. This is not quite true because, when atomic orbitals interact, their energies split to produce two new molecular orbitals, one above and one below the old orbitals. This is the basis for the static structure of molecules described in the last chapter and is also the key to reactivity. In these three cases this is what will happen when the orbitals interact (the new molecular orbitals are shown in black between the old atomic orbitals).
In each case there is actually a gain in energy when the electrons from the old lone pair drop down into the new stable bonding molecular orbital formed by the combination of the old atomic orbitals. The energy gain is greatest when the two orbitals are the same and least when they are very far apart in energy. The other new MO is higher in energy than either of the old AOs but it does not have to be occupied.

Only the highest-energy occupied orbitals of the nucleophile are likely to be similar in energy to only the lowest unoccupied orbitals of the electrophile. This means that the lower-lying completely filled bonding orbitals of the nucleophile can usually be neglected and only the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) of the nucleophile and the lowest unoccupied molecular orbital (LUMO) of the electrophile are relevant. These may be of about the same energy and can then interact strongly. Orbital overlap—of both direction and energy—is therefore an important requirement for successful reaction between two organic molecules.

- Molecules repel each other because of their outer coatings of electrons. Molecules attract each other because of:
  - attraction of opposite charges
  - overlap of high-energy filled orbitals with low-energy empty orbitals

For reaction, molecules must approach each other so that they have:
- enough energy to overcome the repulsion
- the right orientation to use any attraction

We need now to look at which types of molecules are nucleophiles and which types are electrophiles. When you consider the reactivity of any molecule, this is the first question you should ask: is it nucleophilic or electrophilic?

**Nucleophiles donate high-energy electrons to electrophiles**

Nucleophiles are either negatively charged or neutral species with a pair of electrons in a high energy filled orbital that they can donate to electrophiles. The most common type of nucleophile has a nonbonding lone pair of electrons. Usually these are on a heteroatom such as O, N, S, or P.

These four neutral molecules, ammonia, water, trimethylphosphine, and dimethylsulfide, all have lone pairs of electrons in \( sp^3 \) orbitals and in each case this is the donor or nucleophilic orbital. The group VI atoms (O and S) have two lone pairs of equal energy. These are all nonbonding electrons and therefore higher in energy than any of the bonding electrons.
Anions are often nucleophiles too and these are also usually on heteroatoms such as O, S, or halogen which may have several lone pairs of equal energy. The first diagram for each of our examples shows the basic structure and the second diagram shows all the lone pairs. It is not possible to allocate the negative charge to a particular lone pair as they are the same.

There are a few examples of carbon nucleophiles with lone pairs of electrons, the most famous being the cyanide ion. Though linear cyanide has a lone pair on nitrogen and one on carbon, the nucleophilic atom is usually anionic carbon rather than neutral nitrogen as the sp orbital on carbon has a higher energy than that on the more electronegative nitrogen. Most anionic nucleophiles containing carbon have a heteroatom as the nucleophilic atom such as the anion methane thiolate shown above.

Neutral carbon electrophiles usually have a π bond as the nucleophilic portion of the molecule. When there are no lone pair electrons to supply high-energy nonbonding orbitals, the next best is the lower-energy filled π orbitals rather than the even lower-energy σ bonds. Simple alkenes are weakly nucleophilic and react with strong electrophilic species such as bromine. In Chapter 20 we shall see that the reaction starts by donation of the π electrons from the alkene into the σ* orbital of the bromine molecule (which breaks the Br–Br bond) shown here with a curly arrow. After more steps the dibromoalkane is formed but the molecules are attracted by overlap between the full π orbital and the empty σ* orbital.

It is possible for σ bonds to act as nucleophiles and we shall see later in this chapter that the borohydride anion, BH₄⁻, has a nucleophilic B–H bond and can donate those electrons into the π* orbital of a carbonyl compound breaking that bond and eventually giving an alcohol as product. The first stage of the reaction has electrons from the B–H single bond of nucleophilic anion BH₄⁻, which lacks lone pair electrons or π bonds, as the nucleophile.

In this section you have seen lone pairs on anions and neutral molecules acting as nucleophiles and, more rarely, π bonds and even σ bonds able to do the same job. In each case the nucleophilic electrons came from the HOMO—the highest occupied molecular orbital—of the molecule. Don’t worry if you find the curly arrows strange at the moment. They will soon be familiar. Now we need to look at the other side of the coin—the variety of electrophiles.

**Electrophiles have a low-energy vacant orbital**

Electrophiles are neutral or positively charged species with an empty atomic orbital (the opposite of a lone pair) or a low-energy antibonding orbital. The simplest electrophile is the proton, H⁺, a species without any electrons at all and a vacant 1s orbital. It is so reactive that it is hardly ever found and almost any nucleophile will react with it.

Each of the nucleophiles we saw in the previous section will react with the proton and we shall look at two of them together. Hydroxide ion combines with a proton to give water. This reaction is
governed by charge control. Then water itself reacts with the proton to give H$_3$O$^+$, the true acidic species in all aqueous strong acids.

We normally think of protons as acidic rather than electrophilic but an acid is just a special kind of electrophile. In the same way, Lewis acids such as BF$_3$ or AlCl$_3$ are electrophiles too. They have empty orbitals that are usually metallic p orbitals. We saw above how BF$_3$ reacted with Me$_3$N. In that reaction BF$_3$ was the electrophile and Me$_3$N the nucleophile. Lewis acids such as AlCl$_3$ react violently with water and the first step in this process is nucleophilic attack by water on the empty p orbital of the aluminium atom. Eventually alumina (Al$_2$O$_3$) is formed.

Few organic compounds have vacant atomic orbitals and most organic electrophiles have low-energy antibonding orbitals. The most important are $\pi^*$ orbitals as they are lower in energy than $\sigma^*$ orbitals and the carbonyl group (C=O) is the most important of these—indeed it is the most important functional group of all. It has a low-energy $\pi^*$ orbital ready to accept electrons and also a partial positive charge on the carbon atom. Previously we said that charge attraction helped nucleophiles to find the carbon atom of the carbonyl group.

Charge attraction is important in carbonyl reactions but so are the orbitals involved. Carbonyl compounds have a low-energy bonding $\pi$ orbital. Carbonyl compounds have a dipole because in this filled orbital the electrons are more on electronegative oxygen than on carbon. The same reason (electro-negative oxygen) makes this an exceptionally low-energy orbital and the carbonyl group a very stable structural unit. This orbital is rarely involved in reactions. Going up the energy scale we next have two degenerate (equal in energy) lone pairs in nonbonding orbitals. These are the highest-energy electrons in the molecule (HOMO) and are the ones that react with electrophiles.

When we consider the carbonyl group as an electrophile, we must look at antibonding orbitals too. The only one that concerns us is the relatively low-energy $\pi^*$ orbital of the C=O double bond (the LUMO). This orbital is biased towards the carbon to compensate for the opposite bias in the filled $\pi$ orbital. How do we know this if there are no electrons in it? Simply because nucleophiles, whether charged or not, attack carbonyl groups at the carbon atom. They get the best overlap with the larger orbital component of the $\pi^*$ orbital.

Protic and Lewis acids

Protic acids (also known as Brønsted acids) are electrophiles (like HCl) that can donate protons (H$^+$) to nucleophiles. They will be discussed in detail in Chapter 8. Lewis acids are also electrophiles but they donate more complicated cations to nucleophiles. They are usually metal halides such as LiCl, BF$_3$, AlCl$_3$, SnCl$_4$, and TiCl$_4$. We shall meet them in many later chapters, particularly in Chapters 22–8 when we discuss carbon–carbon bond formation.
So now we can draw a mechanism for the attack of a nucleophile on the carbonyl group. The lone pair electrons on the nucleophile move into the $\pi^*$ orbital of the C=O double bond and so break the $\pi$ bond, though not, of course, the $\sigma$ bond. Here is that process in curly arrow terms.

The lone pair electrons on oxygen interact better with empty orbitals such as the 1s of the proton and so carbonyl compounds are protonated on oxygen.

The resulting cation is even more electrophilic because of the positive charge but nucleophiles still attack the carbon atom of the carbonyl group because the $\pi^*$ orbital still has more contribution from carbon. The positive charge is neutralized even though the nucleophile does not attack the positively charged atom.

Even $\sigma$ bonds can be electrophilic if the atom at one end of them is sufficiently electronegative to pull down the energy of the $\sigma^*$ orbital. Familiar examples are acids where the acidic hydrogen atom is joined to strongly electronegative oxygen or a halogen thus providing a dipole moment and a relatively low-energy $\sigma^*$ orbital.

These two diagrams suggest two different ways of looking at the reaction between a base and an acid, but usually both interactions are important. Notice that an acid is just an electrophile that has an electrophilic hydrogen atom and a base is just a nucleophile that acts on a hydrogen atom. This question is explored more in Chapter 8. Bonds between carbon and halogen are also polarized in some cases though the electronegativity difference is sometimes very small.

It is easy to exaggerate the importance of single-bond polarization. The electronegativity difference between H and Cl is 0.9 but that...
between C and Br only 0.3 while the C–I bond is not polarized at all. When carbon–halogen σ bonds act as electrophiles, polarity hardly matters but a relatively low-energy σ* orbital is vitally important. The bond strength is also important in these reactions too as we shall see.

Some σ bonds are electrophilic even though they have no dipole at all. The halogens such as bromine (Br₂) are examples. Bromine is strongly electrophilic because it has a very weak Br–Br σ bond. Symmetrical bonds have the energies of the σ orbital and the σ* orbital roughly evenly distributed about the nonbonding level. A weak symmetrical σ bond means a small energy gap while a strong symmetrical σ bond means a large energy gap. Bromine is electrophilic but carbon–carbon σ bonds are not. Reverting to the language of Chapter 4, we could say that the hydrocarbon framework is made up of strong C–C bonds with low-energy populated and high-energy unpopulated orbitals, while the functional groups react because they have low LUMOs or high HOMOs.

An example would be the rapid reaction between a sulfide and bromine. No reaction at all occurs between a sulfide and ethane or any other simple C–C σ bond. Lone pair electrons are donated from sulfur into the Br–Br σ* orbital, which makes a new bond between S and Br and breaks the old Br–Br bond.

**Summary: interaction between HOMO and LUMO leads to reaction**

Organic reactions occur when the HOMO of a nucleophile overlaps with the LUMO of the electrophile to form a new bond. The two electrons in the HOMO slot into the empty LUMO. The reacting species may be initially drawn together by electrostatic interaction of charges or dipoles but this is not necessary. Thus at this simplest of levels molecular recognition is required for reaction. The two components of a reaction must be matched in terms of both charge–charge attraction and the energy and orientation of the orbitals involved.

Nucleophiles may donate electrons (in order of preference) from a lone pair, a π bond, or even a σ bond and electrophiles may accept electrons (again in order of preference) into an empty orbital or into the antibonding orbital of a π bond (π* orbital) or even a σ bond (σ* orbital). These antibonding orbitals are of low enough energy to react if the bond is very polarized by a large electronegativity difference between the atoms at its ends or, even for unpolarized bonds, if the bond is weak.

The hydrocarbon framework of organic molecules is unreactive. Functional groups such as NH₂ and OH are nucleophilic because they have nonbonding lone pairs. Carbonyl compounds and alkyl halides are electrophilic functional groups because they have low-energy LUMOs (π* for C=O and σ* for C–X, respectively).
Organic chemists use curly arrows to represent reaction mechanisms

You have seen several examples of curly arrows so far and you may already have a general idea of what they mean. The representation of organic reaction mechanisms by this means is so important that we must now make quite sure that you do indeed understand exactly what is meant by a curly arrow, how to use it, and how to interpret mechanistic diagrams as well as structural diagrams.

A curly arrow represents the actual movement of a pair of electrons from a filled orbital into an empty orbital. You can think of the curly arrow as representing a pair of electrons thrown, like a climber’s grappling hook, across from where he is standing to where he wants to go. In the simplest cases, the result of this movement is to form a bond between a nucleophile and an electrophile. Here are two examples we have already seen in which lone pair electrons are transferred to empty atomic orbitals.

Note the exact position of the curly arrow as the value of this representation lies in the precision and uniformity of its use. The arrow always starts with its tail on the source of the moving electrons, representing the filled orbital involved in the reaction. The head of the arrow indicates the final destination of the pair of electrons—the new bond between oxygen and hydrogen or oxygen and aluminium in these examples. As we are forming a new bond, the head of the arrow should be drawn to a point on the line between the two atoms.

When the nucleophile attacks an antibonding orbital, such as the weak Br–Br bond we have just been discussing, we shall need two arrows, one to make the new bond and one to break the old.

The bond-making arrow is the same as before but the bond-breaking arrow is new. This arrow shows that the two electrons in the bond move to one end (a bromine atom) and turn it into an anion. This arrow should start in the centre of the bond and its head should rest on the atom (Br in this case) at the end of the bond. Another example would be the attack of a base on the strong acid HBr.

It is not important how much curvature you put into the arrows or whether they are above or below the gaps of the bonds, both on the same side, or on opposite sides so long as they begin and end in the right places. All that matters is that someone who reads your arrows should be able to deduce exactly what is happening in the reaction from your arrows. We could have drawn the ammonia/HBr reaction like this if we had wished.

Charge is conserved in each step of a reaction

In all these examples we have reacted neutral molecules together to form charged species. Because the starting materials had no overall charge, neither must the products. If we start with neutral molecules and make a cation, we must make an anion too. Charge cannot be created or destroyed. If
our starting materials have an overall charge—plus or minus—then the same charge must appear in the products.

When it is a \( \pi \) bond that is being broken rather than a \( \sigma \) bond, only the \( \pi \) bond is broken and the \( \sigma \) bond should be left in place. This is what commonly happens when an electrophilic carbonyl group is attacked by a nucleophile. Just as in the breaking of a \( \sigma \) bond, start the arrow in the middle of the \( \pi \) bond and end by putting the arrowhead on the more electronegative atom, in this case oxygen rather than carbon.

In this case the starting materials had an overall negative charge and this is preserved as the oxyanion in the product. The charge disappears from the hydroxide ion because it is now sharing a pair of electrons with what was the carbonyl carbon atom and a charge appears on what was the carbonyl oxygen atom because it now has both of the electrons in the old \( \pi \) bond.

Electrons can be donated from \( \pi \) bonds and from \( \sigma \) bonds too. The reaction of an alkene with HBr is a simple example of a C–C \( \pi \) bond as nucleophile. The first arrow (on the nucleophile) starts in the middle of the \( \pi \) bond and goes into the gap between one of the carbon atoms and the hydrogen atom of HBr. The second arrow (on the electrophile) takes the electrons out of the H–Br \( \sigma \) bond and puts them on to the bromine atom to make bromide ion. This sort of reaction makes us place alkenes among the functional groups as well as part of the framework of organic molecules.

Notice that it was important to draw the two reagents in the right orientation since both are unsymmetrical and we want our arrow to show which end of the alkene reacts with which end of HBr. If we had drawn them differently we should have had trouble drawing the mechanism. Here is a less satisfactory representation.

If you find yourself making a drawing like this, it is worth having another go to see if you can be clearer. Drawing mechanisms is often rather experimental—try something and see how it looks: if it is unclear, try again. One way to avoid this particular problem is to draw an atom-specific curly arrow passing through the atom that reacts. Something like this will do.

This reaction does not, in fact, stop here as the two ions produced (charge conservation requires one cation and one anion in this first reaction) now react with each other to form the product of the reaction. This reaction is pretty obvious as the anion is the nucleophile and the cation, with its empty p orbital, is the electrophile.
The reaction that occurs between the alkene and HBr occurs in two stages—the formation of the ions and their combination. Many reactions are like this and we call the two stages steps so that we talk about 'the first step' and 'the second step', and we call the ions intermediates because they are formed in one step and disappear in the next. We shall discuss these intermediates in several later chapters (for example, 17 and 19).

When σ bonds act as nucleophiles, the electrons also have to go to one end of the σ bond as they form a new bond to the electrophile. We can return to an earlier example, the reaction of sodium borohydride (NaBH₄) with a carbonyl compound, and complete the mechanism. In this example, one of the atoms (the hydrogen atom) moves away from the rest of the BH₄ anion and becomes bonded to the carbonyl compound. The LUMO of the electrophile is, of course, the π* orbital of the C=O double bond.

The arrow on the nucleophile should again start in the middle of the bond that breaks and show which atom (the black H in this case) is transferred to the electrophile. The second arrow we have seen before. Here again you could use an atom-specific arrow to make it clear that the electrons in the σ bond act as a nucleophile through the hydrogen and not through the boron atom.

This reaction also occurs in two steps and the oxyanion is an intermediate, not a product. The reaction is normally carried out in water and the oxyanion reacts with water by proton transfer.

We shall discuss this reaction, the reduction of carbonyl compounds by NaBH₄, in detail in Chapter 6.

The decomposition of molecules

So far we have described reactions involving the combination of one molecule with another. Many reactions are not like this but involve the spontaneous decomposition of one molecule by itself without any assistance from any other molecule. In these reactions there is no electrophile or nucleophile. The usual style of reaction consists of a weak, often polarized σ bond breaking to give two new molecules or ions. The dissociation of a strong acid HX is a simple example.

In organic chemistry spontaneous dissociation of diazonium salts, compounds containing the N₂⁺ group, occurs very easily because one of the products, nitrogen gas (‘dinitrogen’) is very stable. It does not much matter what R is (alkyl or aryl); this reaction happens spontaneously at room temperature.

This is not, of course, the end of the reaction as R⁺ is very reactive and we shall see the sort of things it can do in Chapters 17 and 19. More commonly, some sort of catalysis is involved in decomposition reactions. An important example is the decomposition of tertiary alcohols in acid solution. The carbon–oxygen bond of the alcohol does not break by itself but, after the oxygen atom has been protonated by the acid, decomposition occurs.

This two-step mechanism is not finished because the positive ion (one particular example of R⁺) reacts further (Chapter 17). In the decomposition step the positive charge on the oxygen atom as well as the fact that the other product is water helps to break the strong C–O σ bond. In these three
examples, the functional group that makes off with the electrons of the old σ bond (X, N\(^{2+}\), and OH\(^{2+}\)) is called the leaving group, and we shall be using this term throughout the book. The spontaneous decomposition of molecules is one of the clearest demonstrations that curly arrows mean the movement of two electrons. Chemical reactions are dynamic processes, molecules really do move, and electrons really do leave one atomic or molecular orbital to form another.

These three examples all have the leaving group taking both electrons from the old σ bond. This type of decomposition is sometimes called heterolytic fission or simply heterolysis and is the most common in organic chemistry. There is another way that a σ bond can break. Rather than a pair of electrons moving to one of the atoms, one electron can go in either direction. This is known as homolytic fission as two species of the same charge (neutral) will be formed. It normally occurs when similar or indeed identical atoms are at each end of the σ bond to be broken. Both fragments have an unpaired electron and are known as radicals. This type of reaction occurs when bromine gas is subjected to sunlight.

The weak Br–Br bond breaks to form two bromine radicals. This can be represented by two single-headed curly arrows, fish hooks, to indicate that only one electron is moving. This is virtually all you will see of this special type of curly arrow until we consider the reactions of radicals in more detail (Chapter 39). When you meet a new reaction you should assume that it is an ionic reaction and use two-electron arrows unless you have a good reason to suppose otherwise.

Curly arrows also show movement of electrons within molecules

So far all the mechanisms we have drawn have used only one or two arrows in each step. In fact, there is no limit to the number of arrows that might be involved and we need to look at some mechanisms with three arrows. The third arrow in such mechanisms usually represents movement of electrons inside of the reacting molecules. Some pages back we drew out the addition of a nucleophile to a carbonyl compound.

This is a two-arrow mechanism but, if we lengthen the structure of the carbonyl compound by adding a double bond in the right position, we can add the nucleophile to a different position in the molecule by moving electrons within the molecule using a third arrow.

The first arrow from the nucleophile makes a new σ bond and the last breaks the carbonyl π bond. The middle arrow just moves the C–C π bond along the molecule. If you inspect the product you will see that its structure follows precisely from the arrows. The middle arrow starts in the middle of a π bond and ends in the middle of a σ bond. All it does is to move the π electrons along the molecule. It turns the old π bond into a σ bond and the old σ bond into a π bond. We shall discuss this sort of reaction in Chapter 10.

In some mechanisms there is a second step in the mechanism and both are three-arrow processes. Here is the first step in such a mechanism. See if you can understand each arrow before reading the explanation in the next paragraph.

The arrow from the hydroxide ion removes a proton from the molecule making a new O–H bond in a molecule of water. The middle arrow moves the electrons of a C–H bond into a C–C bond making it into a π bond and the third arrow polarizes the carbonyl π bond leaving an oxyanion as the product. Charge is conserved—an anion gives an anion. In fact this ‘product’ is only an intermediate and the second step also involves three arrows.
Starting from the oxyanion, the first arrow re-forms the carbonyl group, the middle arrow moves a π bond along the molecule, and the third arrow breaks a C–O σ bond releasing hydroxide ion as one of the products of the reaction. We shall meet this sort of reaction in detail later (Chapters 19 and 27).

Mostly for entertainment value we shall end this section with a mechanism involving no fewer than eight arrows. See if you can draw the product of this reaction without looking at the result.

The first arrow forms a new C–S σ bond and the last arrow breaks a C–Br σ bond but all the rest just move π bonds along the molecule. The product is therefore:

We shall not be discussing this reaction anywhere in the book! We have included it just to convince you that, once you understand the principle of curly arrows, you can understand even very complicated mechanisms quite easily. At this stage we can summarize the things you have learned about interpreting a mechanism drawn by someone else.

Summary: what do curly arrows mean?

- A curly arrow shows the movement of a pair of electrons
- The tail of the arrow shows the source of the electron pair, which will be a filled orbital (HOMO) such as a lone pair or a π bond or a σ bond
- The head of the arrow indicates the ultimate destination of the electron pair which will either be:
  - an electronegative atom that can support a negative charge (a leaving group)
  - or an empty orbital (LUMO) when a new bond will be formed
  - or an antibonding orbital (π* or σ*) when that bond will break
- Overall charge is always conserved in a reaction. Check that your product obeys this rule

Now would be a good time to do Problems 1 and 2 at the end of the chapter, which will give you practice in the interpretation of mechanisms.

Drawing your own mechanisms with curly arrows

Curly arrows must be drawn carefully! The main thing you need to remember is that curly arrows must start where there is a pair of electrons and end somewhere where you can leave a pair of electrons without drawing an absurd structure. That sounds very simple—and it is—but you need some practice to see what it means in detail in different circumstances. Let us look at the implications with a reaction whose products are given: the reaction of triphenylphosphine with methyl iodide.

First observe what has happened: a new bond has been formed between the phosphorus atom and the methyl group and the carbon–iodine bond has been broken. Arrows represent movement of electron pairs not atoms so the reactants must be drawn within bonding distance before the mechanism can be drawn. This is analogous to the requirement that molecules must collide before they can react. First draw the two molecules so that the atoms that form the new bond (P and C) are near each other and draw out the bonds that are involved (that is, replace ‘MeI’ with a proper chemical structure).

Now ask: which is the electrophile and which the nucleophile (and why)? The phosphorus atom has a lone pair and the carbon atom does not so Ph₃P must be the nucleophile and the C–I bond of MeI must be the electrophile. All that remains is to draw the arrows.

Admittedly, that was quite an easy mechanism to draw but you should still be pleased if you succeeded at your first try.
Warning! Eight electrons is the maximum for B, C, N, or O

We now ought to spell out one thing that we have never stated but rather assumed. Most organic atoms, if they are not positively charged, have their full complement of electrons (two in the case of hydrogen, eight in the cases of carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen) and so, if you make a new bond to one of those elements, you must also break an existing bond. Suppose you just ‘added’ Ph3P to MeI in this last example without breaking the C–I bond: what would happen?

This structure must be wrong because carbon cannot have five bonds—if it did it would have ten electrons in the 2s and the 2p orbitals. As there are only four of those (2s, 2p_x, 2p_y, and 2p_z) and they can have only two electrons each, eight electrons is the maximum and that means that four bonds is the maximum.

If you make a new bond to uncharged H, C, N, or O you must also break one of the existing bonds in the same step.

There is a nasty trap when a charged atom has its full complement of electrons. Since BH\textsubscript{4} and NH\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{+} are isoelectronic with methane and have four \( \sigma \) bonds and hence eight electrons, no new bonds can be made to B or N. The following attractive mechanisms are impossible because boron has no lone pair in BH\textsubscript{4} and nitrogen has no empty orbital in NH\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{+}.

Reactions with BH\textsubscript{4} always involve the loss of H and a pair of electrons using the BH bond as nucleophile and reactions with NH\textsubscript{4}\textsuperscript{+} always involve the loss of H without a pair of electrons using the NH bond as electrophile.

Similarly, nucleophiles do not attack species like H\textsubscript{3}O\textsuperscript{+} at oxygen, even though it is the oxygen atom that carries the positive charge. Reaction occurs at one of the protons, which also neutralizes the positive charge. Or, to put it another way, H\textsubscript{3}O\textsuperscript{+} is an acid (electrophilic at hydrogen) and not electrophilic at oxygen.

Try a simple example: primary alcohols can be converted into symmetrical ethers in acid solution. Suggest a mechanism for this acid-catalysed conversion of one functional group into another.
The reaction must start by the protonation of something and the only candidate is the oxygen atom as it alone has lone pair electrons. This gives us a typical oxonium ion with three bonds to oxygen and a full outer shell of eight electrons.

To make the ether a second molecule of alcohol must be added but we must not now be tempted to attack the positively charged oxygen atom with the nucleophilic OH group. The second molecule could attack a proton, but that would just make the same molecules. Instead it must attack at carbon expelling a molecule of water as a leaving group and creating a new oxonium ion.

Finally, the loss of the proton from the new oxonium ion gives the ether. Though this is a three-step mechanism, two of the steps are just proton transfers in acidic solution and the only interesting step is the middle one. Here is the whole mechanism.

Drawing a two-step mechanism: cyanohydrin formation

Now what about this slightly more complicated example? Sodium cyanide is added to a simple aldehyde in aqueous solution. The product is a cyanohydrin and we shall discuss this chemistry in Chapter 6.

This reaction is presented in a style with which you will become familiar. The organic starting material is written first and then the reagent over the reaction arrow and the solvent under it. We must decide what happens. NaCN is an ionic solid so the true reagent must be cyanide ion. As it is an anion, it must be the nucleophile and the carbonyl group must be the electrophile. Let us try a mechanism.

This is a good mechanism but it doesn’t quite produce the product. There must be a second step in which the oxyanion picks up a proton from somewhere. The only source of protons is the solvent, water, so we can write:

This is the complete mechanism and we can even make a prediction about the reaction conditions from it. The second step needs a proton and water is not a very good proton donor. A weak acid as catalyst would help.

Now for a real test: can you draw a mechanism for this reaction?

You might well protest that you don’t know anything about the chemistry of three-membered rings or of either of the functional groups, SH and cyclic ether. Be that as it may, you can still draw a mechanism for the reaction. It is important that you are prepared to try your hand at mechanisms for new reactions as you can learn a lot this way. Ask first of all: which bonds have been formed and which broken? Clearly the S–H bond has been broken and a new S–C bond formed. The three-membered ring has gone by the cleavage of one of the C–O bonds. The main chain of carbon atoms is unchanged. We might show these ideas in some way such as this.
Now you could continue in many ways. You might say ‘what breaks the SH bond?’ This must be the role of the base as a base removes protons. You might realize that the reaction cannot happen while the sulfur atom is so far away from the three-membered ring (no chance of a collision) and redraw the molecule so that the reaction can happen.

Now draw the mechanism. It is easy once you have done the preparatory thinking. The sulfur anion must be the nucleophile so the C–O bond in the three-membered ring must be the electrophile. Here goes!

That is not quite the product so we must add a proton to the oxyanion. Where can the proton come from? It must be the proton originally removed by the base as there is no other. We can write B for the base and hence BH⁺ for the base after it has captured a proton.

Your mechanism probably didn’t look as neat as the printed version but, if you got it roughly right, you should be proud. This is a three-step mechanism involving chemistry unknown to you and yet you could draw a mechanism for it. Are you using coloured arrows, by the way? We are using black arrows on red diagrams but the only point of that is to make the arrows stand out. We suggest you use any colour for your arrows that contrasts with your normal ink.

**Decide on a ‘push’ or a ‘pull’ mechanism**

In one step of a reaction mechanism electrons flow from a site rich in electrons to an electron-deficient site. When you draw a mechanism you must make sure that the electrons flow in one direction only and neither meet at a point nor diverge from a point. One way to do this is to decide whether the mechanism is ‘pushed’ by, say, a lone pair or an anion or whether it is ‘pulled’ by, say, a cation, an empty orbital, or by the breaking of a reactive weak π bond or σ bond. This is not just a device either. Extremely reactive molecules, such as fluorine gas, F₂, react with almost anything—in this case because of the very electrophilic F–F σ bond (low energy F–F σ⁺ orbital). Reactions of F₂ are ‘pulled’ by the breaking of the F–F bond. The nearest thing in organic chemistry is probably the reactions of carbon cations such as those formed by the decomposition of diazonium salts.

In the first step the electrons of the σ bond are pulled away by the positive charge and the very stable leaving group, N₂. In the second step lone pair electrons are pulled into the very reactive cation by the nonbonding empty orbital on carbon. Even very weak nucleophiles such as water will react with such cations as a real example shows.

In all our previous examples we have drawn the first arrow from the nucleophile, anion, lone pair, or whatever and pushed the electrons along the chain of arrows. This is a natural thing to do; indeed the skill of drawing mechanisms is sometimes derisively referred to as ‘electron pushing’, but some mechanisms are more easily understood as ‘electron pulling’. In general, if a cation, an acid, or a Lewis acid is a reagent or a catalyst, the reaction is probably pulled. If an anion or a base is involved as a reagent, the reaction is probably pushed. In any case it isn’t so important which approach you adopt as that you should do one or the other and not muddle them up.
A more interesting example of a pull mechanism is the reaction of isoprene (2-methylbutadiene) with HBr. The product is an unsaturated alkyl bromide (a bromoalkene).

What has happened? HBr has clearly added to the diene while one of the double bonds has vanished. However, the remaining double bond, whichever it is, has moved to a new position in the middle of the molecule. So how do we start? HBr is a strong acid so the reaction must begin with the protonation of some atom in the diene by HBr. Which one? If you examine the product you will see that one atom has an extra hydrogen and this must be where protonation occurs.

The only change is at the left-hand end of the molecule where there is an extra proton. We must add the proton of HBr to that atom. The highest-energy orbital at that atom is the rather unreactive alkene π bond so we must use that as the nucleophile, though the electrons are really being pulled out of the π bond by reactive HBr.

It is not necessary to draw in that hydrogen atom in the product of this step. It is, of course, necessary to put the positive charge on the carbon atom in the middle that has lost electrons. Now we can add bromide ion (the other product of the first step) to this cation but not where we have written the plus charge as that will not give us the right product. We must move the remaining double bond along the molecule as we add the bromide ion. This too is a ‘pulled’ reaction as the unstable plus charge on carbon pulls electrons towards itself.

So this is a two-step reaction and the driving force for the two steps is a strongly acidic electrophile in the first and a strongly electrophilic cation at carbon in the second. Here is the full mechanism.

Now we can summarize the extra points we have made in this section as a series of guidelines.

**Extra guidelines for writing your own mechanisms**

- Decide on the structure of any ambiguous reagents, for example, salt or a covalent compound?
- Decide which is the nucleophilic and which the electrophilic atom
- Decide whether to think in a *push* or a *pull* manner
- Mark lone pairs on the nucleophilic atom
- Draw the molecule(s) in a spatial arrangement that makes reaction possible
- Curly arrows always move in the same direction. They never meet head on!
- If you make a new bond to H, C, N, or O you must also break one of the existing bonds in the same step
- Draw your arrows in colour to make them stand out
- Mark charges clearly on reactants and intermediates
- Make sure that overall charge is conserved in your mechanism

We have only given you a preliminary trial run as a learner driver of curly arrows in this section. The way forward is practice, practice, practice.
Curly arrows are vital for learning organic chemistry

Curly arrows can be used to explain the interaction between the structure of reactants and products and their reactivity in the vast majority of organic reactions, regardless of their complexity. When used correctly they can even be used to predict possible outcomes of unknown processes and hence to design new synthetic reactions. They are thus a powerful tool for understanding and developing organic chemistry and it is vital that you become proficient in their use. They are the dynamic language of organic reaction mechanisms and they will appear in every chapter of the book from now on.

Another equally important reason for mastering curly arrows now, before you start the systematic study of different types of reactions, is that the vast number of ‘different reactions’ turn out not to be so different after all. Most organic reactions are ionic; they therefore all involve nucleophiles and electrophiles and two-electron arrows. There are relatively few types of organic electrophiles and nucleophiles and they are involved in all the ‘different’ reactions. If you understand and can draw mechanisms, the similarity between seemingly unrelated reactions will become immediately apparent and thus the number of distinct reaction types is dramatically reduced.

Drawing curly arrow mechanisms is a bit like riding a bike. Before you’ve mastered the skill, you keep falling off. Once you’ve mastered the skill, it seems so straightforward that you wonder how you ever did without it. You still come across busy streets and complex traffic junctions, but the basic skill remains the same.

If you still feel that drawing mechanisms for yourself is difficult, this stage-by-stage guide may help you. Once you’ve got the idea, you probably won’t need to follow it through in detail.

A guide to drawing mechanisms with curly arrows

1. Draw out the reagents as clear structures following the guidelines in Chapter 2. Check that you understand what the reagents and the solvent are under the conditions of the reaction, for example, if the reaction is in a base, will one of the compounds exist as an anion?

2. Inspect the starting materials and the products and assess what has happened in the reaction. What new bonds have been formed? What bonds have been broken? Has anything been added or removed? Have any bonds moved around the molecule?

3. Identify the nucleophilic centres in all the reactant molecules and decide which is the most nucleophilic. Then identify the electrophiles present and again decide which is the most electrophilic.

4. If the combination of these two centres appears to lead to the product, draw the reactants, complete with charges, so as to position the nucleophilic and electrophilic centres within bonding distance ensuring that the angle of attack of the nucleophile is more or less consistent with the orbitals involved.

5. Draw a curly arrow from the nucleophile to the electrophile. It must start on the filled orbital or negative charge (show this clearly by just touching the bond or charge) and finish on the empty orbital (show this clearly by the position of the head). You may consider a ‘push’ or a ‘pull’ mechanism at this stage.

6. Consider whether any atom that has been changed now has too many bonds; if so one of them must be broken to avoid a ridiculous structure. Select a bond to break. Draw a curly arrow from the centre of the chosen bond, the filled orbital, and terminate it in a suitable place.

7. Write out the structures of the products specified by the curly arrows. Break the bonds that are the sources of the arrows and make those that are the targets. Consider the effect on the charges on individual atoms and check that the overall charge is not changed. Once you have drawn the curly arrows, the structure of the products is already decided and there is no room for any further decisions. Just write what the curly arrows tell you. If the structure is wrong, then the curly arrows were wrong so go back and change them.

8. Repeat stages 5–7 as required to produce a stable product.
When you have read through all the different types of reaction mechanism, practise drawing them out with and without the help of the book. Complete the exercises at the end of the chapter and then try to devise mechanisms for other reactions that you may know. You now have the tools to draw out in the universal pictorial language of organic chemists virtually all the mechanisms for the reactions you will meet in this book and more besides!

**Problems**

1. Each of these molecules is electrophilic. Identify the electrophilic atom and draw a mechanism for reaction with a generalized nucleophile Nu–, giving the product in each case.

![Chemical structures](image.png)

2. Each of these molecules is nucleophilic. Identify the electrophilic atom and draw a mechanism for reaction with a generalized electrophile E+, giving the product in each case.

![Chemical structures](image.png)

3. Complete these mechanisms by drawing the structure of the products in each case.

![Mechanism 1](image.png)

![Mechanism 2](image.png)

4. Each of these electrophiles could react with a nucleophile at (at least) two different atoms. Identify these atoms and draw a mechanism for each reaction together with the products from each.

![Chemical structures](image.png)

5. Put in the arrows on these structures (which have been drawn with all the atoms in the right places!) to give the products shown.

![Chemical structures](image.png)

6. Draw mechanisms for these reactions. The starting materials have not necessarily been drawn in a helpful way.

![Mechanism 3](image.png)

![Mechanism 4](image.png)

7. Draw a mechanism for this reaction.

\[
\text{PhCHBr.CHBr.CO}_2\text{H} + \text{NaHCO}_3 \rightarrow \text{PhCH=CHBr}
\]

*Hints.* First draw good diagrams of the reagents. NaHCO₃ is a salt and a weak base—strong enough only to remove which proton? Then work out which bonds are formed and which broken, decide whether to push or pull, and draw the arrows. What are the other products?
Molecular orbitals explain the reactivity of the carbonyl group

We are now going to leave to one side most of the reactions you met in the last chapter—we will come back to them all again later in the book. In this chapter we are going to concentrate on just one of them—probably the simplest of all organic reactions—the addition of a nucleophile to a carbonyl group. The carbonyl group, as found in aldehydes, ketones, and many other compounds, is without doubt the most important functional group in organic chemistry, and that is another reason why we have chosen it as our first topic for more detailed study.

You met nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group on p. 114 and 119, where we showed you how cyanide reacts with acetone to give an alcohol. As a reminder, here is the reaction again, with its mechanism.

![Reaction Scheme]

The reaction has two steps: nucleophilic addition of cyanide, followed by protonation of the anion. In fact, this is a general feature of all nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups.

- Additions to carbonyl groups generally consist of two mechanistic steps:
  1. Nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group
  2. Protonation of the anion that results

The addition step is more important, and it forms a new C–C σ bond at the expense of the C=O π bond. The protonation step makes the overall reaction addition of HCN across the C=O π bond.
Why does cyanide, in common with many other nucleophiles, attack the carbonyl group? And why does it attack the carbon atom of the carbonyl group? To answer these questions we need to look in detail at the structure of carbonyl compounds in general and the orbitals of the C=O group in particular.

The carbonyl double bond, like that found in alkenes (whose bonding we discussed in Chapter 4), consists of two parts: one σ bond and one π bond. The σ bond between the two sp² hybridized atoms—carbon and oxygen—is formed from two sp² orbitals. The other sp² orbitals on carbon form the two σ bonds to the substituents while those on oxygen are filled by the two lone pairs. The sp² hybridization means that the carbonyl group has to be planar, and the angle between the substituents is close to 120°. The diagram illustrates all this for the simplest carbonyl compound, formaldehyde (or methanal, CH₂O). The π bond then results from overlap of the remaining p orbitals—again, you can see this for formaldehyde in the diagram.

Notice that we have drawn the π bond skewed towards oxygen. This is because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon, polarizing the orbital as shown. Conversely, the unfilled π* antibonding orbital is skewed in the opposite direction, with a larger coefficient at the carbon atom. Put all of this together and we get the complete picture of the orbitals of a carbonyl group.

Electronegativities, bond lengths, and bond strengths

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond Energy (kJ mol⁻¹)</th>
<th>Bond Length (Å)</th>
<th>Electronegativity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–O 351</td>
<td>C=O 720</td>
<td>C 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O 3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because there are two types of bonding between C and O, the C=O double bond is rather shorter than a typical C–O single bond, and also over twice as strong—so why is it so reactive? Polarization is the key. The polarized C=O bond gives the carbon atom some degree of positive charge, and this charge attracts negatively charged nucleophiles (like cyanide) and encourages reaction. The polarization of the antibonding π* orbital towards carbon is also important, because, when the carbonyl group reacts with a nucleophile, electrons move from the HOMO of the nucleophile (an sp orbital in this case) into the LUMO of the electrophile—in other words the π* orbital of the C=O bond. The greater coefficient of the π* orbital at carbon means a better HOMO–LUMO interaction, so this is where the nucleophile attacks.

As our nucleophile—which we are representing here as ‘Nu’—approaches the carbon atom, the electron pair in its HOMO starts to interact with the LUMO (antibonding π*) to form a new σ bond.
Filling antibonding orbitals breaks bonds and, as the electrons enter the antibonding $\pi^*$ of the carbonyl group, the $\pi$ bond is broken, leaving only the C–O $\sigma$ bond intact. But electrons can’t just vanish, and those that were in the $\pi$ bond move off on to the electronegative oxygen, which ends up with the negative charge that started on the nucleophile. You can see all this happening in the diagram below.

Notice how the trigonal, planar $sp^2$ hybridized carbon atom of the carbonyl group changes to a tetrahedral, $sp^3$ hybridized state in the product. For each class of nucleophile you meet in this chapter, we will show you the HOMO–LUMO interaction involved in the addition reaction.

**Cyanohydrins from the attack of cyanide on aldehydes and ketones**

Now that we’ve looked at the theory of how a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl group, let’s go back to the real reaction with which we started this chapter: cyanohydrin formation from a carbonyl compound and sodium cyanide. Cyanide contains $sp$ hybridized C and N atoms, and its HOMO is an $sp$ orbital on carbon. The reaction is a typical nucleophilic addition reaction to a carbonyl group: the electron pair from the HOMO of the CN$^-$ (an $sp$ orbital on carbon) moves into the C=O $\pi^*$ orbital; the electrons from the C=O $\pi$ orbital move on to the oxygen atom. The reaction is usually carried out in the presence of acid, which protonates the resulting alkoxide to give the hydroxyl group of the composite functional group known as a cyanohydrin. The reaction works with both ketones and aldehydes, and the mechanism below shows the reaction of a general aldehyde.
Cyanohydrins are important synthetic intermediates — for example, the cyanohydrin formed from this cyclic amino ketone forms the first step of a synthesis of some medicinal compounds known as 5HT₃ agonists, which were designed to reduce nausea in chemotherapy patients. Cyanohydrins are also components of many natural and industrial products, such as the insecticides cypermethrin (marketed as ‘Ripcord’, ‘Barricade’, and ‘Imperator’) and fluvalinate.

Cyanohydrin formation is reversible: just dissolving a cyanohydrin in water can give back the aldehyde or ketone you started with, and aqueous base usually decomposes cyanohydrins completely.

Cyanohydrin formation is therefore an equilibrium between starting materials and products, and we can only get good yields if the equilibrium favours the products. The equilibrium is more favourable for aldehyde cyanohydrins than for ketone cyanohydrins, and the reason is the size of the groups attached.

Some equilibrium constants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aldehyde or ketone</th>
<th>$K_{eq}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PhCHO</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCN</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cyanohydrins and cassava

The reversibility of cyanohydrin formation is of more than theoretical interest. In parts of Africa the staple food is cassava. This food contains substantial quantities of the glucoside of acetone cyanohydrin (a glucoside is an acetal derived from glucose). We shall discuss the structure of glucose later in this chapter, but for now, just accept that it stabilizes the cyanohydrin.

The glucoside is not poisonous in itself, but enzymes in the human gut break it down and release HCN. Eventually 50 mg HCN per 100 g of cassava can be released and this is enough to kill a human being after a meal of unfermented cassava. If the cassava is crushed with water and allowed to stand (‘ferment’), enzymes in the cassava will do the same job and then the HCN can be washed out before the cassava is cooked and eaten. The cassava is now safe to eat but it still contains some glucoside. Some diseases found in eastern Nigeria can be traced to long-term consumption of HCN. Similar glucosides are found in apple pips and the kernels inside the stones of fruit such as peaches and apricots. Some people like eating these, but it is unwise to eat too many at one sitting!
to the carbonyl carbon atom. As the carbonyl carbon atom changes from sp² to sp³, its bond angles change from about 120° to about 109°—in other words, the substituents it carries move closer together. This reduction in bond angle is not a problem for aldehydes, because one of the substituents is just a (very small) hydrogen atom, but for ketones, especially ones that carry larger alkyl groups, this effect can disfavour the addition reaction. Effects that result from the size of substituents and the repulsion between them are called steric effects, and we call the repulsive force experienced by large substituents steric hindrance.

The angle of nucleophilic attack on aldehydes and ketones

Having introduced you to the sequence of events that makes up a nucleophilic attack at C=O (interaction of HOMO with LUMO, formation of new σ bond, breakage of π bond), we should now tell you a little more about the direction from which the nucleophile approaches the carbonyl group. Not only do nucleophiles always attack carbonyl groups at carbon, but they also always approach from a particular angle. You may at first be surprised by this angle, since nucleophiles attack not from a direction perpendicular to the plane of the carbonyl group but at about 107° to the C=O bond. This approach route is known as the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory after the authors of the elegant crystallographic methods that revealed it. You can think of the angle of attack as the result of a compromise between maximum orbital overlap of the HOMO with π* and minimum repulsion of the HOMO by the electron density in the carbonyl π bond.

Any other portions of the molecule that get in the way of (or, in other words, that cause steric hindrance to) the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory will greatly reduce the rate of addition and this is another reason why aldehydes are more reactive than ketones. The importance of the Bürgi–Dunitz trajectory will become more evident later—particularly in Chapter 34.

Nucleophilic attack by ‘hydride’ on aldehydes and ketones

Nucleophilic attack by the hydride ion, H⁻, is not a known reaction. This species, which is present in the salt sodium hydride, NaH, is so small and has such a high charge density that it only ever reacts as a base. The reason is that its filled 1s orbital is of an ideal size to interact with the hydrogen
atom’s contribution to the $\sigma^*$ orbital of an H–X bond (X can be any atom), but much too small to interact easily with carbon’s more diffuse 2p orbital contribution to the LUMO ($\pi^*$) of the C=O group.

Nevertheless, adding H– to the carbon atom of a C=O group would be a very useful reaction, as the result would be the formation of an alcohol. This process would involve going down from the aldehyde or ketone oxidation level to the alcohol oxidation level (Chapter 2, pp. 25–36) and would therefore be a reduction. It cannot be done with NaH, but it can be done with some other compounds containing nucleophilic hydrogen atoms.

The most important of these compounds is sodium borohydride, NaBH₄. This is a water-soluble salt containing the tetrahedral BH₄⁻ anion, which is isoelectronic with methane but has a negative charge since boron has one less proton in the nucleus than does carbon.

But beware! The boron’s negative charge doesn’t mean that there is a lone pair on boron—there isn’t. You cannot draw an arrow coming out of this charge to form another bond. If you did, you would get a pentacovalent B(V) compound, which would have 10 electrons in its outer shell. Such a thing is impossible with a first row element as there are only four available orbitals (1 $\times$ 2s and 3 $\times$ 2p). Instead, since all of the electrons (including that represented by the negative charge) are in B–H $\sigma$ orbitals, it is from a B–H bond that we must start any arrow to indicate reaction of BH₄⁻ as a nucleophile. By transferring this pair of electrons we make the boron atom neutral—it is now trivalent with just six electrons.

What happens when we carry out this reaction using a carbonyl compound as the electrophile? The hydrogen atom, together with the pair of electrons from the B–H bond, will be transferred to the carbon atom of the C=O group.

Though no hydride ion, H–, is actually involved in the reaction, the transfer of a hydrogen atom with an attached pair of electrons can be regarded as a ‘hydride transfer’. You will often see it described this way in books. But be careful not to confuse BH₄⁻ with the hydride ion itself. To make it quite clear that it is the hydrogen atom that is forming the new bond to C, this reaction may also be helpfully represented with a curly arrow passing through the hydrogen atom.

The oxyanion produced in the first step can help stabilize the electron-deficient BH₃ molecule by adding to its empty p orbital. Now we have a tetravalent boron anion again, which could transfer a second hydrogen atom (with its pair of electrons) to another molecule of aldehyde.
This process can continue so that, in principle, all four hydrogen atoms could be transferred to molecules of aldehyde. In practice the reaction is rarely as efficient as that, but aldehydes and ketones are usually reduced in good yield to the corresponding alcohol by sodium borohydride in water or alcoholic solution. The water or alcohol solvent provides the proton needed to form the alcohol from the alkoxide.

Sodium borohydride is one of the weakest hydride donors available. The fact that it can be used in water is evidence of this as more powerful hydride donors such as lithium aluminium hydride, LiAlH₄, react violently with water. Sodium borohydride reacts with both aldehydes and ketones, though the reaction with ketones is slower: for example, benzaldehyde is reduced about 400 times faster than acetophenone in isopropanol.

Sodium borohydride does not react at all with less reactive carbonyl compounds such as esters or amides: if a molecule contains both an aldehyde and an ester, only the aldehyde will be reduced.

The next two examples illustrate the reduction of aldehydes and ketones in the presence of other reactive functional groups. No reaction occurs at the nitro group in the first case or at the alkyl halide in the second.
Addition of organometallic reagents to aldehydes and ketones

The next type of nucleophile we shall consider is the organometallic reagent. Lithium and magnesium are very electropositive metals, and the Li–C or Mg–C bonds in organolithium or organomagnesium reagents are highly polarized towards carbon. They are therefore very powerful nucleophiles, and attack the carbonyl group to give alcohols, forming a new C–C bond. For our first example, we shall take one of the simplest of organolithiums, methyllithium, which is commercially available as a solution in Et₂O, shown here reacting with an aldehyde. The orbital diagram of the addition step shows how the polarization of the C–Li bond means that it is the carbon atom of the nucleophile that attacks the carbon atom of the electrophile and we get a new C–C bond.

The course of the reaction is much the same as you have seen before, but we need to highlight a few points where this reaction scheme differs from those you have met earlier in the chapter. First of all, notice the legend ‘1. MeLi, THF; 2. H₂O’. This means that, first, MeLi is added to the aldehyde in a THF solvent. Reaction occurs: MeLi adds to the aldehyde to give an alkoxide. Then (and only then) water is added to protonate the alkoxide. The ‘2. H₂O’ means that water is added in a separate step only when all the MeLi has reacted: it is not present at the start of the reaction as it was in the cyanide reaction and some of the borohydride addition reactions. In fact, water must not be present during the addition of MeLi (or of any other organometallic reagent) to a carbonyl group because water destroys organometallics very rapidly by protonating them to give alkanes (organolithiums and organomagnesiums are strong bases as well as powerful nucleophiles). The addition of water, or sometimes dilute acid or ammonium chloride, at the end of the reaction is known as the work-up.

Because they are so reactive, organolithiums are usually reacted at low temperature, often –78 °C (the sublimation temperature of solid CO₂), in aprotic solvents such as Et₂O or THF. Organolithiums also react with oxygen, so they have to be handled under a dry, inert atmosphere of nitrogen or argon.

Other common, and commercially available, organolithium reagents include n-butyllithium and phenyllithium, and they react with both aldehydes and ketones. Note that addition to an aldehyde gives a secondary alcohol while addition to a ketone gives a tertiary alcohol.

Organomagnesium reagents known as Grignard reagents (RMgX) react in a similar way. Some simple Grignard reagents, such as methyl magnesium chloride, MeMgCl, and phenyl magnesium bromide, PhMgBr, are commercially available, and the scheme shows PhMgBr reacting with an aldehyde. The reactions of these two classes of organometallic reagent—organolithiums and Grignard reagents—with carbonyl compounds are among the most important ways of making carbon–carbon bonds, and we will consider them in more detail in Chapter 9.
Addition of water to aldehydes and ketones

Nucleophiles don’t have to be highly polarized or negatively charged to react with aldehydes and ketones: neutral ones will as well. How do we know? This $^{13}$C NMR spectrum was obtained by dissolving formaldehyde, $\text{H}_2\text{C}=\text{O}$, in water. You will remember from Chapter 3 that the carbon atoms of carbonyl groups give $^{13}$C signals typically in the region of 150–200 p.p.m. So where is formaldehyde’s carbonyl peak? Instead we have a signal at 83 p.p.m.—where we would expect tetrahedral carbon atoms singly bonded to oxygen to appear.

What has happened is that water has added to the carbonyl group to give a compound known as a hydrate or 1,1-diol.

This reaction, like the cyanohydrin formation we discussed at the beginning of the chapter, is an equilibrium, and is quite general for aldehydes and ketones. But, as with the cyanohydrins, the position of the equilibrium depends on the structure of the carbonyl compound. Generally, the same steric factors (pp. 138–139) mean that simple aldehydes are hydrated to some extent while simple ketones are not. However special factors can shift the equilibrium towards the hydrated form even for ketones, particularly if the carbonyl compound is reactive or unstable.

Formaldehyde is an extremely reactive aldehyde as it has no substituents to hinder attack—it is so reactive that it is rather prone to polymerization (Chapter 52). And it is quite happy to move from sp$^2$ to sp$^3$ hybridization because there is very little increased steric hindrance between the two hydrogen atoms as the bond angle changes from 120° to 109° (p. 139). This is why our aqueous solution of formaldehyde contains essentially no $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$—it is completely hydrated. A mechanism for the hydration reaction is shown below. Notice how a proton has to be transferred from one oxygen atom to the other, mediated by water molecules.
Formaldehyde reacts with water so readily because its substituents are very small: a steric effect. Electronic effects can also favour reaction with nucleophiles—electronegative atoms such as halogens attached to the carbon atoms next to the carbonyl group can increase the extent of hydration according to the number of halogen substituents and their electron-withdrawing power. They increase the polarization of the carbonyl group, which already has a positively polarized carbonyl carbon, and make it even more prone to attack by water. Trichloroacetaldehyde (chloral, Cl₃CHO) is hydrated completely in water, and the product ‘chloral hydrate’ can be isolated as crystals and is an anaesthetic. You can see this quite clearly in the two IR spectra. The first one is a spectrum of chloral hydrate from a bottle—notice there is no strong absorption between 1700 and 1800 cm⁻¹ (where we would expect C=O to appear) and instead we have the tell-tale broad O–H peak at 3400 cm⁻¹. Heating drives off the water, and the second IR spectrum is of the resulting dry chloral: the C=O peak has reappeared at 1770 cm⁻¹, and the O–H peak has gone.

The chart shows the extent of hydration (in water) of a small selection of carbonyl compounds: hexafluoroacetone is probably the most hydrated carbonyl compound possible!

Cyclopropanones—three-membered ring ketones—are also hydrated to a significant extent, but for a different reason. You saw earlier how acyclic ketones suffer increased steric hindrance when the bond angle changes from 120° to 109° on moving from sp² to sp³ hybridization. Cyclopropanones...
(and other small-ring ketones) conversely prefer the small bond angle because their substituents are already confined within a ring. Look at it this way: a three-membered ring is really very strained, with bond angles forced to be 60°. For the sp² hybridized ketone this means bending the bonds 60° away from their ‘natural’ 120°. But for the sp³ hybridized hydrate the bonds have to be distorted by only 49° (= 109° – 60°). So addition to the C=O group allows some of the strain inherent in the small ring to be released—hydration is favoured, and indeed cyclopropanone and cyclobutanone are very reactive electrophiles.

The same structural features that favour or disfavour hydrate formation are important in determining the reactivity of carbonyl compounds with other nucleophiles, whether the reactions are reversible or not. Steric hindrance and more alkyl substituents make carbonyl compounds less reactive towards any nucleophile; electron-withdrawing groups and small rings make them more reactive.

**Hemiacetals from reaction of alcohols with aldehydes and ketones**

Since water adds to (at least some) carbonyl compounds, it should come as no surprise that alcohols do too. The product of the reaction is known as a hemiacetal, because it is halfway to an acetal, a functional group, which you met in Chapter 2 (p. 35) and which will be discussed in detail in Chapter 14. The mechanism follows in the footsteps of hydrate formation: just use ROH instead of HOH.

A proton has to be transferred from one oxygen atom to the other: we have shown ethanol doing this job, with one molecule being protonated and one deprotonated. There is no overall consumption of ethanol in the protonation/deprotonation steps, and the order in which these steps happen is not important. In fact, you could reasonably write them in one step as shown in the margin, without involving the alcohol, and we do this in the next hemiacetal-forming reaction below. As with all these carbonyl group reactions, what is really important is the addition step, not what happens to the protons.

Hemiacetals formation is reversible, and hemiacetals are stabilized by the same special structural features as those of hydrates. However, hemiacetals can also gain stability by being cyclic—when the carbonyl group and the attacking hydroxyl group are part of the same molecule. The reaction is now an intramolecular (within the same molecule) addition, as opposed to the intermolecular (between two molecules) ones we have considered so far.

*Intermolecular reactions occur between two molecules*

*Intramolecular reactions occur within the same molecule*

We shall discuss the reasons why intramolecular reactions are more favourable, and why cyclic hemiacetals and acetals are more stable, in Chapter 14.
Although the cyclic hemiacetal (also called ‘lactol’) product is more stable, it is still in equilibrium with some of the open-chain hydroxyaldehyde form. Its stability, and how easily it forms, depend on the size of the ring: five- and six-membered rings are free from strain (their bonds are free to adopt 109° or 120° angles—compare the three-membered rings on p. 145), and five- or six-membered hemiacetals are common. Among the most important examples are many sugars. Glucose, for example, is a hydroxyaldehyde that exists mainly as a six-membered cyclic hemiacetal (>99% of glucose is cyclic in solution), while ribose exists as a five-membered cyclic hemiacetal.

### Ketones can form hemiacetals

Hydroxyketones also form hemiacetals, but (as you should now expect) they usually do so less readily than hydroxyaldehydes. However, this hydroxyketone must exist solely as the cyclic hemiacetal because it shows no C=O stretch in its IR spectrum. The reason? The starting hydroxyketone is already cyclic, with the hydroxyl group poised to attack the ketone— it can’t get away, so cyclization is highly favoured.

### Acid and base catalysis of hemiacetal and hydrate formation

In Chapter 8 we shall look in detail at acids and bases, but at this point we need to tell you about one of their important roles in chemistry: they act as catalysts for a number of carbonyl addition reactions, among them hemiacetal and hydrate formation. To see why, we need to look back at the mechanisms of hemiacetal formation on p. 145 and hydrate formation on p. 143. Both involve proton-transfer steps like this.

A catalyst increases the rate of a chemical reaction but emerges from the reaction unchanged.

In the first proton-transfer step, ethanol acts as a base, removing a proton; in the second it acts as an acid, donating a proton. Strong acids or strong bases (for example, HCl or NaOH) increase the rate of hemiacetal or hydrate formation because they allow these proton-transfer steps to occur before the addition to the carbonyl group.
In acid (dilute HCl, say), this is the mechanism. The first step is now protonation of the carbonyl group’s lone pair: the positive charge makes it much more electrophilic so the addition reaction is faster. Notice how the proton added at the beginning is lost again at the end—it really is a catalyst. In acid it is also possible for the hemiacetal to react further with the alcohol to form an acetal, but this need not concern you at present.

And this is the mechanism in basic solution. The first step is now deprotonation of the ethanol by hydroxide, which makes the addition reaction faster by making the ethanol more nucleophilic. Again, base (hydroxide) is regenerated in last step, making the overall reaction catalytic in base. The reaction in base always stops with the hemiacetal—acetals never form in base.

The final step could equally well involve deprotonation of ethanol to give alkoxide—and alkoxide could equally well do the job of catalysing the reaction. In fact, you will often come across mechanisms with the base represented just as ‘B–’ because it doesn’t matter what the base is.

These two mechanisms typify acid- and base-catalysed additions to carbonyl groups and we can summarize the effects of the two catalysts.

- For nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups:
  - Acid catalysts work by making the carbonyl group more electrophilic
  - Base catalysts work by making the nucleophile more nucleophilic

Acid and base catalysis of hemiacetal and hydrate formation
Bisulfite addition compounds

The last nucleophile of this chapter, sodium bisulfite, NaHSO₃, adds to aldehydes and some ketones to give what is usually known as a **bisulfite addition compound**. The reaction occurs by nucleophilic attack of a lone pair on the carbonyl group, just like the attack of cyanide. This leaves a positively charged sulfur atom but a simple proton transfer leads to the product.

The products are useful for two reasons. They are usually crystalline and so can be used to purify liquid aldehydes by recrystallization. This is of value only because this reaction, like several you have met in this chapter, is reversible. The bisulfite compounds are made by mixing the aldehyde or ketone with saturated aqueous sodium bisulfite in an ice bath, shaking, and crystallizing. After purification the bisulfite addition compound can be hydrolysed back to the aldehyde in dilute aqueous acid or base.

The reversibility of the reaction makes bisulfite compounds useful intermediates in the synthesis of other adducts from aldehydes and ketones. For example, one practical method for making cyanohydrins involves bisulfite compounds. The famous practical book 'Vogel' suggests reacting acetone first with sodium bisulfite and then with sodium cyanide to give a good yield (70%) of the cyanohydrin.

What is happening here? The bisulfite compound forms first, but only as an intermediate on the route to the cyanohydrin. When the cyanide is added, reversing the formation of the bisulfite compound provides the single proton necessary to give back the hydroxyl group at the end of the reaction. No dangerous HCN is released (always a hazard when cyanide ions and acid are present together).
The bisulfite compound of formaldehyde (CH₂O) has special significance. Earlier in this chapter we mentioned the difficulty of working with formaldehyde because it is either an aqueous solution or a dry polymer. One readily available monomeric form is the bisulfite compound. It can be made in water (in which it is soluble) but addition of ethanol (in which it isn’t) causes it to crystallize out.

The compound is commercially available and, together with the related zinc salt, is widely used in the textile industry as a reducing agent.

The second reason that bisulfite compounds are useful is that they are soluble in water. Some small (that is, low molecular weight) aldehydes and ketones are water-soluble—acetone is an example. But most larger (more than four or so carbon atoms) aldehydes and ketones are not. This does not usually matter to most chemists as we often want to carry out reactions in organic solvents rather than water. But it can matter to medicinal chemists, who make compounds that need to be compatible with biological systems. And in one case, the solubility of bisulfite adduct in water is literally vital.

Dapsone is an antileprosy drug. It is a very effective one too, especially when used in combination with two other drugs in a ‘cocktail’ that can be simply drunk as an aqueous solution by patients in tropical countries without any special facilities, even in the open air. But there is a problem! Dapsone is insoluble in water.

The solution is to make a bisulfite compound from it. You may ask how this is possible since dapsone has no aldehyde or ketone—just two amino groups and a sulfone. The trick is to use the formaldehyde bisulfite compound and exchange the OH group for one of the amino groups in dapsone.

Now the compound will dissolve in water and release dapsone inside the patient. The details of this sort of chemistry will come in Chapter 14 when you will meet imines as intermediates. But at this stage we just want you to appreciate that even the relatively simple chemistry in this chapter is useful in synthesis, in commerce, and in medicine.
Problems

1. Draw mechanisms for these reactions.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaBH}_4} \text{OH} \\
\text{CHO} & \xrightarrow{\text{LiAlH}_4} \text{OH}
\end{align*}
\]

2. Cyclopropanone exists as the hydrate in water but 2-hydroxyethanal does not exist as its hemiacetal. Explain.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cyclopropanone} & \rightarrow \text{hydrate} \\
\text{2-hydroxyethanal} & \xrightarrow{\text{hemiacetal}} \text{hemiacetal}
\end{align*}
\]

3. One way to make cyanohydrins is illustrated here. Suggest a detailed mechanism for the process.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \xrightarrow{\text{Me}_3\text{SiCN}} \text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{cat KCN}} \text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{NaBH}_4} \text{Cl}_3\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{Cl}_3\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{H}_2\text{O}, \text{HCl}
\end{align*}
\]

4. There are three possible products from the reduction of this compound with sodium borohydride. What are their structures? How would you distinguish them spectroscopically, assuming you can isolate pure compounds?

5. The triketone shown here is called ‘ninhydrin’ and is used for the detection of amino acids. It exists in aqueous solution as a monohydrate. Which of the three ketones is hydrated and why?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ninhydrin}
\end{align*}
\]

6. This hydroxyketone shows no peaks in its infrared spectrum between 1600 and 1800 cm\(^{-1}\) but it does show a broad absorption at 3000 to 3400 cm\(^{-1}\). In the \(^{13}\text{C}\) NMR spectrum, there are no peaks above 150 p.p.m. but there is a peak at 110 p.p.m. Suggest an explanation.

7. Each of these compounds is a hemiacetal and therefore formed from an alcohol and a carbonyl compound. In each case give the structure of these original materials.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hemiacetal}
\end{align*}
\]

8. Trichloroethanol may be prepared by the direct reduction of chloral hydrate in water with sodium borohydride. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. (Warning! Sodium borohydride does not displace hydroxide from carbon atoms!)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{chloral hydrate} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaBH}_4} \text{trichloroethanol}
\end{align*}
\]

9. It has not been possible to prepare the adducts from simple aldehydes and HCl. What would be the structure of such compounds, if they could be made, and what would be the mechanism of their formation? Why cannot these compounds in fact be made?

10. What would be the products of these reactions? In each case give a mechanism to justify your predictions.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CHO} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaCN}} ? \\
\text{CHO} & \xrightarrow{\text{EtMgBr}} ? \\
\text{NaBH}_4 & \xrightarrow{?}
\end{align*}
\]

11. The equilibrium constant \(K_{eq}\) for formation of the cyanohydrin of cyclopentanone and HCN is 67, while for butan-2-one and HCN it is 28. Explain.
Introduction

As you look around you, you will be aware of many different colours—from the greens and browns outside to the bright blues and reds of the clothes you are wearing. All these colours result from the interaction of light with the pigments in these different things—some frequencies of light are absorbed, others scattered. Inside our eyes, chemical reactions detect these different frequencies and convert them into electrical nerve impulses sent to the brain. All these different pigments have one thing in common—lots of double bonds. For example, the pigment responsible for the red colour in tomatoes, lycopene, is a long-chain polyalkene.

Lycopene contains only carbon and hydrogen while most pigments contain many other elements but nearly all contain double bonds. This chapter is about the properties, such as colour, of molecules that have several double bonds and that depend on the joining up or conjugation of the electrons in these double bonds.

In earlier chapters, we talked about basic carbon skeletons made up of \( \sigma \) bonds. In this chapter we shall see how, in some cases, we can also have a large \( \pi \) framework spread over many atoms and how this dominates the chemistry of such compounds. We shall see how this \( \pi \) framework is responsible for the otherwise unexpected stability of certain cyclic polyunsaturated compounds, including benzene and other aromatic compounds. We shall also see how this framework gives rise to the many colours in our world. To understand such molecules properly, we need to start with the simplest of all unsaturated compounds, ethene.

The structure of ethene (ethylene, \( \text{CH}_2=\text{CH}_2 \))

The structure of ethene (ethylene) is well known. It has been determined by electron diffraction and is planar (all atoms are in the same plane) with the bond lengths and angles shown below. The carbon atoms are roughly trigonal and the C–C bond distance is shorter than that of a C–C \( \sigma \) bond.
We shall use the approach of Chapter 4 (p. 106) and rationalize the shapes of molecular orbitals by combining the atomic orbitals of the atoms involved using the LCAO (Linear Combination of Atomic Orbitals) approach. Hybridizing the atomic orbitals first makes this simpler. We mix the 2s orbital on each carbon atom with two of the three 2p orbitals to give three sp\(^2\) orbitals leaving the third p orbital unchanged. Two of the sp\(^2\) orbitals overlap with the hydrogen 1s orbitals to form molecular orbitals, which will be the C–H σ bonds. The other sp\(^2\) orbital forms the σ C–C bond by overlapping with the sp\(^2\) orbital on the other carbon. The remaining p orbital can overlap with the p orbital on the other carbon to form a molecular orbital that represents the \(\pi\) bond.

Ethene is chemically more interesting than ethane because of the \(\pi\) bond. In fact, the \(\pi\) bond is the most important feature of ethene. In the words of Chapter 5, the C–C \(\pi\) orbital is the HOMO (Highest Occupied Molecular Orbital) of the alkene, which means that the electrons in it are more available than any others to react with something that wants electrons (an electrophile). Since this orbital is so important, we will look at it more closely.

The \(\pi\) orbital results from combining the two 2p orbitals of the separate carbon atoms. Remember that when we combine two atomic orbitals we get two molecular orbitals. These result from combining the p orbitals either in-phase or out-of-phase. The in-phase combination accounts for the bonding molecular orbital (\(\pi\)), whilst the out-of-phase combination accounts for the anti-bonding molecular orbital (\(\pi^*\)). As we progress to compounds with more than one alkene, so the number of \(\pi\) orbitals will increase but will remain the same as the number of \(\pi^*\) orbitals.

The \(\pi\) bond contains two electrons and, since we fill up the energy level diagram from the lowest-energy orbital upwards, both these electrons go into the bonding molecular orbital. In order to have a strong \(\pi\) bond, the two atomic p orbitals must be able to overlap effectively. This means they must be parallel.
There are two isomers (cis and trans or E and Z) of many alkenes

The π bond has electron density both above and below the σ bond as the parallel p orbitals overlap locking the bond rigid. Hence no rotation is possible about a double bond—the π bond must be broken before rotation can occur. One consequence of this locking effect of the double bond is that there are two isomers of a disubstituted alkene. One is called a cis or Z alkene, the other a trans or E alkene.

Alkenes resist rotation

Maleic and fumaric acids were known in the nineteenth century to have the same chemical composition and the same functional groups and yet they were different compounds—why remained a mystery. That is, until 1874 when van’t Hoff proposed that free rotation about double bonds was restricted. This meant that, whenever each carbon atom of a double bond had two different substituents, isomers would be possible. He proposed the terms cis (Latin meaning ‘on this side’) and trans (Latin meaning ‘across or on the other side’) for the two isomers. The problem was: which isomer was which? On heating, maleic acid readily loses water to become maleic anhydride so this isomer must have both acid groups on the same side of the double bond.

It is possible to interconvert cis and trans alkenes, but the π bond must be broken first. This requires a considerable amount of energy—around 260 kJ mol$^{-1}$. One way to break the π bond would be to promote an electron from the π orbital to the π$^*$ orbital (from HOMO to LUMO). If this were to happen, there would be one electron in the bonding π orbital and one in the antibonding π$^*$ orbital and hence no overall bonding. Electromagnetic radiation of the correct energy could promote the electron from HOMO to LUMO. The correct energy actually corresponds to light in the ultraviolet (UV) region of the spectrum. Thus, shining UV light on an alkene would promote an electron from its bonding π molecular orbital to its antibonding π$^*$ molecular orbital, thereby breaking the π bond (but not the σ bond) and allowing rotation to occur.

Molecules with more than one C–C double bond

Benzene has three strongly interacting double bonds

The rest of this chapter concerns molecules with more than one C–C double bond and what happens to the π orbitals when they interact. To start, we shall take a bit of a jump and look at the structure of benzene. Benzene has been the subject of considerable controversy since its discovery in 1825. It was
soon worked out that the formula was C₆H₆, but how were these atoms arranged? Some strange structures were suggested until Kekulé proposed the correct structure in 1865.

Let’s look at the molecular orbitals for Kekulé’s structure. As in simple alkenes, each of the carbon atoms is sp² hybridized leaving the remaining p orbital free.

The σ framework of the benzene ring is like the framework of an alkene. The problem comes with the p orbitals—which pairs do we combine to form the π bonds? There seem to be two possibilities.

With benzene itself, these two forms are equivalent but, if we had a 1,2- or a 1,3-disubstituted benzene compound, these two forms would be different. A synthesis was designed for these two compounds but it was found that both compounds were identical. This posed a bit of a problem to Kekulé—his structure didn’t seem to work after all. His solution was that benzene rapidly equilibrates, or ‘resonates’ between the two forms to give an averaged structure in between the two.

The molecular orbital answer to this problem, as you may well know, is that all six p orbitals can combine to form (six) new molecular orbitals, one of which (the one lowest in energy) consists of a ring of electron density above and below the plane of the molecule. Benzene does not resonate between the two Kekulé structures—the electrons are in molecular orbitals spread equally over all the carbon atoms. However the term ‘resonance’ is still sometimes used (but not in this book) to describe this mixing of molecular orbitals.

We shall describe the π electrons in benzene as delocalized, that is, no longer localized in specific double bonds between two particular carbon atoms but spread out, or delocalized, over all six atoms in the ring. An alternative drawing for benzene shows the π system as a ring and does not put in the double bonds.
We are saying that the π electrons are not localized in alternating double bonds but are actually spread out over the whole system in a molecular orbital shaped like a ring (we will look at the shapes of the others later). The electrons are therefore said to be delocalized. Theoretical calculations confirm this model, as do experimental observations. Electron diffraction studies show benzene to be a regular, planar hexagon with all the carbon–carbon bond lengths identical (139.5 pm). This bond length is in between that of a carbon–carbon single bond (154.1 pm) and a full carbon–carbon double bond (133.7 pm). A further strong piece of evidence for this ring of electrons is revealed by proton NMR and is discussed on p. 251.

Noncyclic polyenes

What would the structure be like if the three C–C double bonds were not in a ring as they are in benzene but were instead in a chain. What is the structure of hexatriene? Are the bond lengths still all the same?

There are two isomers of hexatriene: a cis form and a trans form. The name refers to the geometry about the central double bond. The two isomers have different chemical and physical properties. Rotation is still possible about the single bonds (although slightly more difficult than around a normal single bond) and there are three different planar conformations possible for each isomer. Keeping the central black double bond the same, we can rotate about each of the green σ bonds in turn. Each row simply shows different ways to draw the same compound.

---

**Delocalization terminology**

What words should be used to describe delocalization is a vexed question. Terms such as resonance, mesomerism, conjugation, and delocalization are only a few of the ones you will find in books. You will already have noticed that we don’t like ‘resonance’ because it suggests that the structure vibrates rapidly between localized structures. We shall use conjugation and delocalization: conjugation focuses on the sequence of alternating double and single bonds while delocalization focuses on the molecular orbitals covering the whole system. Electrons are delocalized over the whole of a conjugated system.
The structures of both cis- and trans-hexatriene have been determined by electron diffraction and two important features emerge.

- Both structures are essentially planar (the cis form is not quite for steric reasons)
- There are double and single bonds but the central double bond in each case is slightly longer than the end double bonds and the single bonds are slightly shorter than a ‘standard’ single bond

The most stable structure of trans-hexatriene is shown here.

Why is this structure planar and why are the bond lengths different from their ‘standard’ values? This sounds like the situation with benzene and again the answers lie in the molecular orbitals that can arise from the combination of the six p orbitals. Just as in benzene, these orbitals can all combine to give one big molecular orbital over the whole molecule. However, the p orbitals can overlap and combine only if the molecule is planar.

Since the p orbitals on carbons 2 and 3 overlap, there is some partial double bond character in the central σ bond, helping to keep the structure planar. This overlap means that it is slightly harder to rotate this ‘formal single bond’ than might be expected—it requires about 30 kJ mol$^{-1}$ to rotate it whereas the barrier in propene is only around 3 kJ mol$^{-1}$.

This explains why the compound adopts a planar structure but, in order to understand why the bond lengths are slightly different from their expected values or even why they are not all the same as in benzene, we must look at the all the molecular orbitals for hexatriene. Before we can do this, we must first study some simpler systems and address the important question of conjugation seriously.

Conjugation

In benzene and hexatriene every carbon atom is sp$^2$ hybridized with the remaining p orbital available to overlap with its neighbours. The uninterrupted chain of p orbitals is a consequence of having alternate double and single bonds. When two double bonds are separated by just one single bond, the two double bonds are said to be conjugated. Conjugated double bonds have different properties from isolated double bonds, both physically (they are often longer as we have already seen) and chemically (Chapters 10, 23, and 35).

Conjugated systems

In the dictionary, ‘conjugated’ is defined, among other ways, as ‘joined together, especially in pairs’ and ‘acting or operating as if joined’. This does indeed fit very well with the behaviour of such conjugated double bonds since the properties of a conjugated system are often different from those of the component parts. We are using conjugation to describe bonds and delocalization to describe electrons.
You have already met several conjugated systems: remember lycopene at the start of this chapter and β-carotene in Chapter 3? All eleven double bonds in β-carotene are separated by only one single bond. We again have a long chain in which all the p orbitals can overlap to form molecular orbitals.

It is not necessary to have two carbon–carbon double bonds in order to have a conjugated system—the C–C and C–O double bonds of propenal (acrolein) are also conjugated. The chemistry of such conjugated carbonyl compounds is significantly different from the chemistry of their component parts (Chapter 10).

What is important though is that the double bonds are separated by one and only one single bond. Remember the unsaturated fatty acid, linoleic acid, that you met in Chapter 3? Another fatty acid with even more unsaturation is arachidonic acid. None of the four double bonds in this structure are conjugated since in between any two double bonds there is an sp³ carbon. This means there is no p orbital available to overlap with the ones from the double bonds. The saturated carbon atoms insulate the double bonds from each other.

If an atom has two double bonds directly attached to it, that is, there are no single bonds separating them, again no conjugation is possible. The simplest compound with such an arrangement is allene. If we look at the arrangement of the p orbitals in this system, it is easy to see why no delocalization is possible—the two π bonds are perpendicular to each other.

**Requirements for conjugation**

- Conjugation requires double bonds separated by one single bond
- Separation by two single bonds or no single bonds will not do
The allyl system

The allyl cation

We would not say that two p orbitals are conjugated—they just make up a double bond—so just how many p orbitals do we need before something can be described as conjugated? It should be clear that in butadiene the double bonds are conjugated—here we have four p orbitals.

Is it possible to have three p orbitals interacting? How can we get an isolated p orbital—after all, we can't have half a double bond. Let us look for a moment at allyl bromide (prop-2-enyl bromide or 1-bromoprop-2-ene). Carbon 1 in this compound has got four atoms attached to it (a carbon, two hydrogens, and a bromine atom) so it is tetrahedral (or sp3 hybridized).

Bromine is more electronegative than carbon and so the C–Br bond is polarized towards the bromine. If this bond were to break completely, the bromine would keep both electrons from the C–Br bond to become bromide ion, Br–, leaving behind an organic cation. The end carbon would now only have three groups attached and so it becomes trigonal (sp2 hybridized). This leaves a vacant p orbital that we can combine with the \( \pi \) bond to give a new molecular orbital for the allyl system.

Rather than trying to combine the p orbital with the \( \pi \) bond, it is easier for us to consider how three p orbitals combine; after all, we thought of the \( \pi \) bond as a combination of two p orbitals. Since we are combining three atomic orbitals (the three 2p orbitals on carbon) we shall get three molecular orbitals. The lowest-energy orbital will have them all combining in-phase. This is a bonding orbital since all the interactions are bonding.

The next orbital requires one orbital, just as higher-energy atomic orbitals have extra nodes (Chapter 4). The only way to include a node and maintain the symmetry of the system is to put the node through the central atom. This means that when this orbital is occupied there will be no electron density on this central atom. Since there are no interactions between adjacent atomic orbitals (either bonding or antibonding), this is a nonbonding orbital.

The final molecular orbital must have two nodal planes. All the interactions of the atomic orbitals are out-of-phase so the resulting molecular orbital is an antibonding orbital.
We can summarize all this information in a molecular orbital energy level diagram.

The two electrons that were in the \( \pi \) bond now occupy the orbital lowest in energy, the bonding molecular orbital \( \Psi_1 \), and now spread over three carbon atoms. The electrons highest in energy and so most reactive are those in the HOMO. However, in this case, since the allyl cation has an overall positive charge, we wouldn’t really expect it to act as a nucleophile. Of far more importance is the vacant nonbonding molecular orbital—the LUMO, the nonbonding \( \Psi_2 \). It is this orbital that must be attacked if the allyl cation reacts with a nucleophile. From the shape of the orbital, we can see that the incoming electrons will attack the end carbon atoms not the middle one since, if this orbital were full, all electron density in it would be on the end carbon atoms, not the middle one. A different way of looking at this is to see which carbon atoms in the system are most lacking in electron density. The only orbital in this case with any electrons in it is the bonding molecular orbital \( \Psi_1 \). From the relative sizes of the coefficients on each atom we can see that the middle carbon has more electron density on it than the end ones; therefore the end carbons must be more positive than the middle one and so a nucleophile would attack the end carbons.

Representations of the allyl cation

How can we represent all this information with curly arrows? The simple answer is that we can’t. Curly arrows show the movement of a pair of electrons. The electrons are not really moving around in this system—they are simply spread over all three carbon atoms with most electron density on the middle carbon. Curly arrows can give us an indication of the equivalence of the two end carbons, showing that the positive charge is shared over these two atoms.

The curly arrows we used in this representation are slightly different from the curly arrows we used (Chapter 5) to represent mechanisms by the forming and breaking of bonds. We still arrive at the second structure by supposing that the curly arrows mean the movement of two electrons so that the right-hand structure results from the ‘reaction’ shown on the left-hand structure, but these ‘reactions’ would be the movement of electrons and nothing more. In particular, no atoms have moved and no \( \sigma \) bonds have been formed or broken. These two structures are just two different ways of
drawing the same species. The arrows are delocalization arrows and we use them to remind us that our simple fixed-bond structures do not tell the whole truth. To remind us that these are delocalization arrows, we use a different reaction arrow, a single line with arrowheads on each end (↔).

The problem with these structures is that they seem to imply that the positive charge (and the double bond for that matter) is jumping from one end of the molecule to the other. This, as we have seen, is just not so. Another and perhaps better picture uses dotted lines and partial charges. However, as in the representation of benzene with a circle in the middle, we cannot draw mechanisms on this structure. Each of the representations has its value and we shall use both.

A summary of the allyl cation system

- The two electrons in the π system are spread out over all three carbon atoms with most electron density on the central carbon
- There are no localized double and single bonds—both C–C bonds are identical and in between a double and single bond
- Both end carbons are equivalent
- The positive charge is shared equally over the two end carbons. The LUMO of the molecule shows us that this is the site for attack by a nucleophile

The delocalized allyl cation can be compared to localized carbocations by NMR

In the reaction below, a very strong acid (called ‘supercid’—see Chapter 17) protonates the OH group of 3-cyclohexenol, which can then leave as water. The resulting cation is, not surprisingly, unstable and would normally react rapidly with a nucleophile. However, at low temperatures and if there are no nucleophiles present, the cation is relatively stable and it is even possible to record a carbon NMR spectrum (at –80 °C).

The NMR spectrum of this allylic cation reveals a plane of symmetry, which confirms that the positive charge is spread over two carbons. The large shift of 224 p.p.m. for these carbons indicates very strong deshielding (that is, lack of electrons) but is nowhere near as large as a localized cation. The middle carbon’s shift of 142 p.p.m. is almost typical of a normal double bond indicating that it is neither significantly more nor less electron-rich than normal.

**Carbocation ¹³C shift**

This localized carbocation shows an enormous shift of 330 p.p.m. indicating very little shielding of the positively charged carbon atom. Again, due to the instability of this species, the ¹³C spectrum was recorded at low temperature.

This carbon resonates at 330 p.p.m.
The allyl radical

When we made the allyl cation from allyl bromide, the bromine atom left as bromide ion taking both the electrons from the C–Br bond with it—the C–Br bond broke heterolytically. What if the bond broke homolytically—that is, carbon and bromine each had one electron? A bromine atom and an allyl radical (remember a radical has an unpaired electron) would be formed. This reaction can be shown using the single-headed fish hook curly arrows from Chapter 5: normal double-headed arrows show the movement of two electrons; single-headed arrows show the movement of one.

Now the end carbon has a single unpaired electron. What do we do with it? Before the bond broke, the end carbon was tetrahedral (sp³ hybridized). We might think that the single electron would still be in an sp³ orbital. However, since an sp³ orbital cannot overlap efficiently with a π bond, the single electron would then have to be localized on the end carbon atom. If the end carbon atom becomes trigonal (sp² hybridized), the single electron could be in a p orbital and this could overlap and combine with the π bond. This would mean that the radical could be spread over the molecule in the same orbital that contained the cation.

So once again we have three p orbitals to combine. This is the same situation as before. We have the same atoms, the same orbitals, and so the same energy levels. In fact, the molecular orbital energy level diagram for this compound is almost the same as the one for the allyl cation: the only difference is the number of electrons in the π system. Whereas in the allyl cation π system we only had two electrons, here we have three (two from the π bond plus the single one). Where does this extra electron go? Answer: in the next lowest molecular orbital—the nonbonding molecular orbital.

The allyl anion

What would have happened if both electrons from the C–Br bond in allyl bromide had stayed behind on the carbon? If we had removed the bromine atom with a metal, magnesium for example (Chapter 9), both electrons would remain leaving an overall negative charge on the allyl system.
Again, this system is much more stable if the negative charge can be spread out rather than localized on one end carbon. This can be accomplished only if the negative charge is in a p orbital rather than an sp³ orbital. The molecular orbital energy level diagram is, of course, unchanged: all we have to do is put the extra electron in the nonbonding orbital. Altogether we now have four electrons in the π system—two from the π bond and two from the negative charge. Both the bonding and the nonbonding orbitals are now fully occupied.

Where is the electron density in the allyl anion π system? The answer is slightly more complicated than that for the allyl cation because now we have two full molecular orbitals and the electron density comes from a sum of both orbitals. This means there is electron density on all three carbon atoms. However, the HOMO for the anion is now the nonbonding molecular orbital. It is this orbital that contains the electrons highest in energy and so most reactive. In this orbital there is no electron density on the middle carbon; it is all on the end carbons. Hence it will be the end carbons that will react with electrophiles. This is conveniently represented by curly arrows.

![Molecular orbital diagram](image)

**A summary of the allyl anion system**

- There are no localized double and single bonds—both C–C bonds are the same and in between a double and single bond
- Both end carbons are the same
- The four electrons in the π system are spread out over all three carbon atoms. In the bonding orbital most electron density is on the central carbon but, in the nonbonding orbital, there is electron density only on the end carbons
- The electrons highest in energy and so most reactive (those in the HOMO) are to be found on the end carbons. Electrophiles will therefore react with the end carbons

Such predictions from a consideration of the molecular orbitals are confirmed both by the reactions of the allyl anion and by its NMR spectrum. It is possible to record a carbon NMR spectrum of the allyl anion directly (for example, as its lithium derivative). The spectrum shows only two signals: the middle carbon at 147 p.p.m. and the two end carbons both at 51 p.p.m.
The central carbon’s shift of 147 p.p.m. is almost typical of a normal double bond carbon whilst the end carbons’ shift is in between that of a double bond and a saturated carbon bearing a negative charge. Notice also that the central carbon in the allyl cation and the anion have almost identical chemical shifts—142 and 147 p.p.m., respectively. If anything, the anion central carbon is more deshielded. Compare this with the spectra for methyllithium and propene itself. Methyllithium shows a single peak at –15 p.p.m. and propene shows three $^{13}$C signals as indicated below.

![Chemical structures](image)

**Other allyl-like systems**

**The carboxylate anion**

You may already be familiar with one anion very much like the allyl anion—the carboxylate ion formed on deprotonating a carboxylic acid with a base. In this structure we again have a double bond adjacent to a single bond but here oxygen atoms replace two of the carbon atoms.

\[
\text{R} - \text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{R} - \text{O} \quad \text{+} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}
\]

\[
\text{a carboxylic acid} \quad \text{a carboxylate anion}
\]

X-ray crystallography shows both carbon–oxygen bond lengths in this anion to be the same (136 pm), in between that of a normal carbon–oxygen double bond (123 pm) and single bond (143 pm). The negative charge is spread out equally over the two oxygen atoms.

![Chemical structures](image)

The electrons are delocalized over the $\pi$ system

*The structures emphasize the equivalence of the two C–O bonds and that the negative charge is spread over both oxygen atoms.*

The molecular orbital energy diagram for the carboxylate anion is the very similar to that of the allyl system. There are just two main differences.

1. The coefficients of the atomic orbitals making up the molecular orbitals will change because oxygen is more electronegative than carbon and so has a greater share of electrons
2. The absolute values of the energy levels will be different from those in the allyl system, again because of the difference in the electronegativities. Compare with the differences between the molecular orbitals for ethene and a carbonyl, p. 103

**The nitro group**

The nitro group consists of a nitrogen bonded to two oxygen atoms and a carbon (for example, an alkyl group). There are two ways of representing the structure: one using formal charges, the other using a dative bond. Notice in each case that one oxygen is depicted as being doubly bonded, the other singly bonded. Drawing both oxygen atoms doubly bonded is incorrect—*nitrogen cannot have five bonds* since this would represent ten electrons around it and there are not enough orbitals to put them in.
The problem with the two correct drawings is that they do not show the equivalence of the two N–O bonds. However, we do have an N–O double bond next to an N–O single bond which means that the negative charge is delocalized over both of the oxygen atoms. This can be shown by curly arrows.

Just to reiterate, the same molecular orbital energy diagram can be used for the allyl systems and the carboxylate and nitro groups. Only the absolute energies of the molecular orbitals are different since different elements with different electronegativities are used in each.

The amide group

The amide is a very important group in nature since it is the link by which amino acids join together to form peptides, which make up the proteins in our bodies. The structure of this deceptively simple group has an unexpected feature, which is responsible for much of the stability of proteins.

In the allyl anion, carboxylate, and nitro systems we had four electrons in the \( \pi \) system spread out over three atoms. The nitrogen in the amide group also has a pair of electrons that could conjugate with the \( \pi \) bond of the car-bonyl group. Again, for effective overlap with the \( \pi \) bond, the lone pair of electrons must be in a p orbital. This in turn means that the nitrogen must be sp\(^2\) hybridized.

In the carboxylate ion, a negative charge was shared (equally) between two oxygen atoms. In an amide there is no charge as such—the lone pair on nitrogen is shared between the nitrogen and the oxygen. However, since oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen, it has more than its fair share of the electrons in this \( \pi \) system. (This is why the p orbital on the oxygen atom in the lowest bonding orbital shown above is slightly larger than the p orbital on the nitrogen.) The delocalization can be shown using curly arrows.

This representation suffers from the usual problems. Curly arrows show the movement of a pair of electrons. The structure on the left, therefore, suggests that electrons are flowing from the nitrogen to the oxygen. This is not true: the molecular orbital picture tells us that the electrons are unevenly distributed over the three atoms in the \( \pi \) system with a greater electron density on the oxygen. The curly arrows show us how to draw an alternative diagram. The structure on the right implies that the nitrogen’s lone pair electrons have moved completely on to the oxygen. Again this is not true; there is simply more electron density on the oxygen than on the nitrogen. The arrows are useful in that they help us to depict how the electrons are unevenly shared in the \( \pi \) system.

A better representation might be this structure. The charges in brackets indicate substantial, though not complete, charges, maybe about a half plus or minus charge. However, we cannot draw mechanisms on this structure and all these representations have their uses.
The amide is a functional group of exceptional importance so we shall look at these points in more detail.

**The structure of the amide group**

How do we know the amide group is planar? X-ray crystal structures are the simplest answer. Other techniques such as electron diffraction also show that simple (noncrystalline) amides have planar structures. N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF) is an example.

The C–N bond length to the carbonyl group is closer to that of a standard C–N double bond (127 pm) than to that of a single bond (149 pm). This partial double bond character is responsible for the restricted rotation about the C–N bond which we would expect if it were only a single bond.

The oxygen is more electron-rich than the nitrogen. Hence we might expect the oxygen rather than the nitrogen to be the site of electrophilic attack.

The amide group as a whole is made more stable as a result of the delocalization.

Let us summarize these points.
- The amide group is planar—this includes the first carbon atoms of the R groups attached to the carbonyl group and to the nitrogen atom
- The lone pair electrons on nitrogen are delocalized into the carbonyl group
- The C–N bond is strengthened by this interaction—it takes on partial double bond character. This also means that we no longer have free rotation about the C–N bond which we would expect if it were only a single bond
- The oxygen is more electron-rich than the nitrogen. Hence we might expect the oxygen rather than the nitrogen to be the site of electrophilic attack
- The amide group as a whole is made more stable as a result of the delocalization

The amide is a functional group of exceptional importance so we shall look at these points in more detail.

Proteins are composed of many amino acids joined together with amide bonds. The amino group of one can combine with the carboxylic acid group of another to give an amide. This special amide, which results from the combining of two amino acids, is known as a **peptide**—two amino acids join to form a dipeptide; many join to give a polypeptide.
The peptide unit so formed is a planar, rigid structure since there is restricted rotation about the C–N bond. This means that two isomers should be possible—a cis and a trans. It is found that nearly all the peptide units found in nature are trans. This is not surprising since the cis form is more crowded (a trans disubstituted double bond is lower in energy than a cis for the same reason).

**Protein shape and activity**

This planar, trans peptide unit poses serious limitations on the shapes proteins can adopt. Understanding the shapes of proteins is very important—enzymes, for example, are proteins with catalytic properties. Their catalytic function depends on the shape adopted: alter the shape in some way and the enzyme will no longer work.

**Reactivity of the amide group**

Just as delocalization stabilizes the allyl cation, anion, and radical, so too is the amide group stabilized by the conjugation of the nitrogen’s lone pair with the carbonyl group. This, together with the fact that the amine part is such a poor leaving group, makes the amide one of the least reactive carbonyl groups (we shall discuss this in Chapter 12).

Furthermore, the amine part of the amide group is unlike any normal amine group. Most amines are easily protonated. However, since the lone pair on the amide’s nitrogen is tied up in the π system, it is less available for protonation or, indeed, reaction with any electrophile. As a result, an amide is preferentially protonated on the oxygen atom but it is difficult to protonate even there (see next chapter, p. 201). Conjugation affects reactivity.

**The conjugation of two π bonds**

The simplest compound that can have two conjugated π bonds is butadiene. As we would now expect, this is a planar compound that can adopt two different conformations by rotating about the single bond. Rotation is somewhat restricted (around 30 kJ mol⁻¹) but nowhere near as much as in an amide (typically 60–90 kJ mol⁻¹). What do the molecular orbitals for the butadiene π system look like? The lowest-energy molecular orbital will have all the p orbitals combining in-phase. The next lowest will have one node, and then two, and the highest-energy molecular orbital will have three nodes (that is, all the p orbitals will be out-of-phase).

**Isomers of butadiene**

Butadiene normally refers to 1,3-butadiene. It is also possible to have 1,2-butadiene which is another example of an allene (p. 157).

**The molecular orbitals of butadiene**

Butadiene has two π bonds and so four electrons in the π system. Which molecular orbitals are these electrons in? Since each molecular orbital can hold two electrons, only the two molecular orbitals lowest in energy are filled. Let’s have a closer look at these orbitals. In Ψ₁, the lowest-energy bonding orbital, the electrons are spread out over all four carbon atoms (above and below the plane) in one continuous orbital. There is bonding between all the atoms. The other two electrons are in Ψ₂. This orbital has bonding interactions between carbon atoms 1 and 2, and also between 3 and 4 but an antibonding interaction between carbons 2 and 3. Overall, in both the occupied π orbitals there are
electrons between carbons 1 and 2 and between 3 and 4, but the antibonding interaction between carbons 2 and 3 in \( \Psi_2 \) partially cancels out the bonding interaction in \( \Psi_1 \). This explains why all the bonds in butadiene are not the same and why the middle bond is more like a single bond while the end bonds are double bonds. If we look closely at the coefficients on each atom in orbitals \( \Psi_1 \) and \( \Psi_2 \), it can be seen that the bonding interaction between the central carbon atoms in \( \Psi_1 \) is greater than the antibonding one in \( \Psi_2 \). Thus butadiene does have some double bond character between carbons 2 and 3, which explains why there is the slight barrier to rotation about this bond.

In our glimpse of hexatriene earlier in this chapter we saw a similar effect, which we could now interpret if we looked at all the molecular orbitals for hexatriene. We have three double bonds and two single bonds with slightly restricted rotation. Both butadiene and hexatriene have double bonds and single bond: neither compound has all its C–C bond lengths the same, yet both compounds are conjugated. What is the real evidence for conjugation? How does the conjugation show itself in the properties and reactions of these compounds? To answer these questions, we need to look again at the energy level diagram for butadiene and compare it with that of ethene. A simple way to do this is to make the orbitals of butadiene by combining the orbitals of ethene.
We have drawn the molecular orbital diagram for the π molecular orbitals of butadiene as a result of combining the π molecular orbitals of two ethene molecules. There are some important points to notice here.

- The overall energy of the two bonding butadiene molecular orbitals is lower than that of the two molecular orbitals for ethene. This means that butadiene is more thermodynamically stable than we might expect if its structure were just two isolated double bonds.
- The HOMO for butadiene is higher in energy relative to the HOMO for ethene. This means butadiene should be more reactive than ethene towards nucleophiles.
- The LUMO for butadiene is lower in energy than the LUMO for ethene. Consequently, butadiene would be expected to be more reactive towards nucleophiles than ethene.
- So whilst butadiene is more stable than two isolated double bonds, it is also more reactive (Chapter 20).

**Butadiene model**

A simple theoretical model of the butadiene system predicts the energy of the bonding ψ₁ orbital to be \([\alpha + 1.62\beta]\) and that of bonding orbital \(\psi_2\) to be \([\alpha + 0.62\beta]\). With both of these orbitals fully occupied, the total energy of the electrons is \([4\alpha + 4.48\beta]\). Remember that the energy of the bonding π molecular orbital for ethene was \([\alpha + \beta]\) (p. 152) so, if we were to have two localized π bonds (each with two electrons), the total energy would be \([4\alpha + 4\beta]\). This theory predicts that butadiene with both double bonds conjugated is lower in energy than it would be with two localized double bonds by 0.48\(\beta\). Both \(\alpha\) and \(\beta\) are negative; hence \([4\alpha + 4.48\beta]\) is lower in energy than \([4\alpha + 4\beta]\) by 0.48\(\beta\).
UV and visible spectra

In Chapter 2 we saw how, if given the right amount of energy, electrons can be promoted from a low-energy atomic orbital to a higher-energy one and how this gives rise to an atomic absorption spectrum. Exactly the same process can occur with molecular orbitals. In fact, we have already seen (p. 153) that UV light can promote an electron from the HOMO to the LUMO in a double bond.

**HOMO–LUMO gap**

Electrons can be promoted from any filled orbital to any empty orbital. The smallest energy difference between a full and empty molecular orbital is between the HOMO and the LUMO. The smaller this difference, the less energy will be needed to promote an electron from the HOMO to the LUMO: the smaller the amount of energy needed, the longer the wavelength of light needed since \( \Delta E = h\nu \).

Therefore, an important measurement is the wavelength at which a compound shows maximum absorbance, \( \lambda_{\text{max}} \). A difference of more than about 4 eV (about \( 7 \times 10^{-19} \) J) between HOMO and LUMO means that \( \lambda_{\text{max}} \) will be in the ultraviolet region (wavelength, \( \lambda < 300 \) nm). If the energy difference is between about 3 eV (about \( 4 \times 10^{-19} \) J) and 1.5 eV (about \( 3 \times 10^{-19} \) J) then \( \lambda_{\text{max}} \) will be in the visible part of the spectrum.

We have seen above that the energy difference between the HOMO and LUMO for butadiene is less than that for ethene. Therefore we would expect butadiene to absorb light of longer wavelength than ethene (the longer the wavelength the lower the energy, \( \Delta E = h\nu \)). This is found to be the case: butadiene absorbs at 215 nm compared to 185 nm for ethene. The conjugation in butadiene means it absorbs light of a longer wavelength than ethene. In fact, this is true generally.

- The more conjugated a compound is, the smaller the energy transition between its HOMO and LUMO and hence the longer the wavelength of light it can absorb. Hence UV–visible spectroscopy can tell us about the conjugation present in a molecule.
Both ethene and butadiene absorb in the far-UV region of the electromagnetic spectrum (215 nm is just creeping into the UV region) but, if we extend the conjugation further, the gap between HOMO and LUMO will eventually be sufficiently decreased to allow the compound to absorb visible light and hence be coloured. A good example is the red pigment in tomatoes we introduced at the start of the chapter. It has eleven conjugated double bonds (plus two unconjugated) and absorbs light at about 470 nm.

The colour of pigments depends on conjugation

You can see now that it is no coincidence that this compound and the two other highly conjugated compounds we met earlier, chlorophyll and β-carotene, are all highly coloured natural pigments. In fact, all dyes and pigments are highly conjugated compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absorbed frequency, nm</th>
<th>Colour absorbed</th>
<th>Colour transmitted</th>
<th>R(CH=CH)_nR, n =</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200–400</td>
<td>ultraviolet</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>&lt; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>violet</td>
<td>yellow-green</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>425</td>
<td>indigo-blue</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>490</td>
<td>blue-green</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530</td>
<td>yellow-green</td>
<td>violet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>indigo-blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>590</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>640</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>blue-green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730</td>
<td>purple</td>
<td>green</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Every extra conjugated double bond in a system increases the wavelength of light that is absorbed. If there are fewer than about eight conjugated double bonds, the compound absorbs in
the ultraviolet and we don’t notice the difference. With more than eight conjugated double bonds, the absorption creeps into the visible and, by the time it reaches 11, the compound is red. If we wanted a blue or green compound, we should need a very large number of conjugated double bonds and such pigments do not usually rely on π bonds alone.

Transitions from bonding to antibonding π orbitals are called π → π* transitions. A much smaller energy gap is available if we use electrons in a nonbonding orbital as the electrons start off much higher in energy and can be promoted to low-lying antibonding π orbitals. We call these transitions n → π*, where the ‘n’ stands for nonbonding. It is easy to find coloured compounds throughout the whole range of wavelengths by this means. The colour of blue jeans comes from the pigment indigo. The two nitrogen atoms provide the lone pairs that can be excited into the π* orbitals of the rest of the molecule. These are low in energy because of the two carbonyl groups. Yellow light is absorbed by this pigment and indigo-blue light transmitted.

Jeans are dyed by immersion in a vat of reduced indigo, which is colourless since the conjugation is interrupted by the central single bond. When the cloth is hung up to dry, the oxygen in the air oxidizes the ‘pigment’ to indigo and the jeans turn blue. Conjugation is the key to colour.

Many conjugated compounds are yellow because, although they have their λ_max in the UV, the broad absorption tails into the visible and the compound weakly absorbs violet light making it pale yellow. An example is this imine with a long conjugated system joining the two aromatic rings together.

The imine is yellow but when it is reduced to the amine, breaking the conjugation in the middle so that the two benzene rings are no longer linked together, the result is a dark orange compound. This is rather surprising because you would normally expect the compound with the longer conjugated system to absorb at longer wavelengths. Check with the table above to see that an orange compound definitely absorbs at longer wavelengths than a yellow compound.

The answer to this paradox lies in the change of hybridization of the nitrogen atom. In the imine, the nitrogen is trigonal and the lone pair is in an sp² orbital in the plane of the conjugated system. No delocalization of the lone pair is possible and the UV absorption comes from a simple π → π* transition. When the imine is reduced, the C–N bond can rotate and the amine can be trigonal too, but with the N–H bond in the plane and the lone pair in a p orbital conjugated with the right-hand benzene ring. The absorption giving the orange colour is an n → π* transition not a π → π* transition. Even delocalization of a lone pair into one benzene ring with a nitro group can give a longer wavelength absorption than a conjugated system of bonding electrons.

Aromaticity

Let us now return to the structure of benzene. Benzene is unusually stable for an alkene and is not normally described as an alkene at all. For example, whereas normal alkenes readily react with
Bromine reacts with benzene in a substitution reaction (a bromine atom replaces a hydrogen atom), keeping the benzene structure intact. This ability to retain its ring structure through all sorts of chemical reactions is one of the important differences of benzene compared to alkenes and one that originally helped to define the class of aromatic compounds to which benzene belongs.

Cyclooctatetraene has four double bonds in a ring. What do you think its structure will be?

You will probably be surprised to find cyclooctatetraene (COT for short), unlike benzene, is not planar. Also none of the double bonds are conjugated—there are indeed alternate double and single bonds in the structure but conjugation is possible only if the \( p \) orbitals of the double bonds can overlap; here they do not. Since there is no conjugation, there are two \( C-C \) bond lengths in cyclooctatetraene—146.2 and 133.4 pm—which are typical for single and double \( C-C \) bonds. If possible, make a model of cyclooctatetraene for yourself—you will find the compound naturally adopts the shape below. This shape is often called a ‘tub’.

Chemically, cyclooctatetraene behaves like an alkene not like benzene. Bromine, for example, does not form a substitution product but an addition product. There is something strange going on here—why is benzene so different from other alkenes and why is cyclooctatetraene so different from benzene? The mystery deepens when we look at what happens when we treat cyclooctatetraene with powerful oxidizing or reducing agents.

If 1,3,5,7-tetramethylcyclooctatetraene is treated at low temperature (−78 °C) with \( \text{SbF}_5/\text{SO}_2\text{ClF} \) (strongly oxidizing conditions) a dication is formed. This cation, unlike the neutral compound, is planar and all the \( C-C \) bond lengths are the same.

**Drawing the dication**

The dication still has the same number of atoms as the neutral species only fewer electrons. Where have the electrons been taken from? The \( \pi \) system now has two electrons less. We could draw a structure showing two localized positive charges but this would not be ideal since the charge is spread over the whole ring system.
It is also possible to add electrons to cyclooctatetraene by treating it with alkali metals and a dianion results. X-ray structures reveal this dianion to be planar, again with all C–C bond lengths the same (140.7 pm). The difference between the anion and cation of cyclooctatetraene on the one hand and cyclooctatetraene on the other is the number of electrons in the π system. The cation has six π electrons, the anion has ten, but neutral cyclooctatetraene has eight.

Substituted benzene compounds, such as the one below with six silicon atoms around the edge, can also react with lithium to give a dianion. This dianion, with eight π electrons, is now no longer planar.

Treatment of benzene itself with the strongly oxidizing SbF₅/SO₂ClF reagent has no effect but it is possible to oxidize substituted derivatives. Hexakis(dimethylamino)benzene, for example, can be oxidized with iodine. Again, the resulting dication is nonplanar and all the C–C bond lengths are not the same.

Do you see a pattern forming? The important point is not the number of conjugated atoms but the number of electrons in the π system. When they have 4 or 8 π electrons, both benzene and cyclooctatetraene adopt nonplanar structures; when they have 6 or 10 π electrons, a planar structure is preferred.

If you made a model of cyclooctatetraene, you might have tried to force it to be flat. If you managed this you probably found that it didn’t stay like this for long and that it popped back into the tub shape. The strain in planar COT can be overcome by the molecule adopting the tub conformation. The strain is due to the numbers of atoms and double bonds in the ring—it has nothing to do with the number of electrons. The planar dication and dianion of COT still have this strain. The fact that these ions do adopt planar structures must mean there is some other form of stabilization that outweighs the strain of being planar. This extra stabilization is called aromaticity.

**Heats of hydrogenation of benzene and cyclooctatetraene**

It is possible to reduce unsaturated C=C double bonds using hydrogen gas and a catalyst (usually nickel or palladium) to produce fully saturated alkanes. This process is called hydrogenation and it is exothermic (that is, energy is released) since a thermodynamically more stable product, an alkane, is produced.

### Margarine manufacture

This reaction is put to good use in the manufacture of margarines. One of the ingredients in many margarines is hydrogenated vegetable oil. When polyunsaturated fats are hydrogenated they become more solid. This means that, rather than having to pour our margarine on to our toast in the morning, we can spread it. We saw the second acid in this series, linoleic acid, at the start of Chapter 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fatty Acid</th>
<th>Melting Point (°C)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linoleic Acid</td>
<td>–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oleic Acid</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stearic Acid</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When cis-cyclooctene is hydrogenated, 96 kJ mol⁻¹ of energy is released. Cyclooctatetraene releases 410 kJ mol⁻¹ on hydrogenation. This value is approximately four times one double
bond’s worth, as we might expect. However, whereas the heat of hydrogenation for cyclohexene is 120 kJ mol$^{-1}$, on hydrogenating benzene, only 208 kJ mol$^{-1}$ is given out, which is much less than the 360 kJ mol$^{-1}$ that we would have predicted. This is shown in the energy level diagram below.

Benzene has six $\pi$ molecular orbitals

The difference between the amount of energy we expect to get out on hydrogenation (360 kJ mol$^{-1}$) and what is observed (208 kJ mol$^{-1}$) is about 150 kJ mol$^{-1}$. This represents a crude measure of just how extra stable benzene really is relative to what it would be like with three localized double bonds. In order to understand the origin of this stabilization, we must look at the molecular orbitals. We can think of the $\pi$ molecular orbitals of benzene as resulting from the combination of the six $p$ orbitals. We have already encountered the molecular orbital lowest in energy with all the orbitals combining in-phase.

The next molecular orbital will have one nodal plane. How can we divide up the six atoms symmetrically with one nodal plane? There are two ways depending on whether or not the nodal plane passes through a bond or an atom.

It turns out that these two different molecular orbitals both have exactly the same energy, that is, they are degenerate. This isn’t obvious from looking at them but, nevertheless, it is so.

The next molecular orbital will have two nodal planes and again there are two ways of arranging these, which lead to two degenerate molecular orbitals.
The final molecular orbital will have three nodal planes, which must mean all the $p$ orbitals combining out-of-phase. These then are the six $\pi$ molecular orbitals for benzene. We can draw an energy level diagram to represent them.

Benzene model

Whilst the HOMOs for benzene are the degenerate $\pi$ molecular orbitals ($\Psi_2$), the next molecular orbital down in energy is not actually the $\pi$ molecular orbital ($\Psi_1$). This all-bonding $\pi$ molecular orbital ($\Psi_1$) is so stable that four $\sigma$ bonding molecular orbitals actually come in between the $\pi$ molecular $\Psi_1$ and $\Psi_2$ orbitals but are not shown in this molecular orbital energy level diagram. The greatest contribution to stability comes from this lowest-energy $\pi$ bonding molecular orbital ($\Psi_1$). This allows bonding interactions between all adjacent atoms. Theory tells us that the energy of this orbital is $\alpha + 2\beta$ whilst that of the degenerate bonding $\pi$ molecular orbitals is $\alpha + \beta$. When all these bonding molecular orbitals are fully occupied, the total energy of the electrons is $6\alpha + 8\beta$, which is $2\beta$ lower in energy than we would predict for three localized double bonds. Butadiene had a theoretical stabilization energy of just $0.48\beta$ relative to two isolated double bonds so $2\beta$ is really quite significant.

The $\pi$ molecular orbitals of conjugated cyclic hydrocarbons can be easily predicted

Notice that the layout of the energy levels is a regular hexagon with its apex pointing downwards. It turns out that the energy level diagram for the molecular orbitals resulting from the combination of any regular cyclic arrangement of $p$ orbitals can be deduced from the appropriately sided polygon. If we take a regular polygon with one corner pointing downwards and draw a circle round it so that all the corners touch the circle, the energies of the molecular orbitals will be where the corners touch the circle. The circles should be of the same size and the polygons fitted inside the circle. The horizontal diameter represents the energy of a carbon $p$ orbital and so, if any energy levels are on this line, they must be nonbonding. All those below are bonding; all those above antibonding.
Notes on these energy level diagrams:

- This method predicts the energy levels for the molecular orbitals of planar, monocyclic, arrangements of identical atoms (usually all C) only
- The dashed line represents an energy level $\alpha$ and in each case the circle radius is $2\beta$
- There is always one single molecular orbital lower in energy than all the others (at energy $\alpha + 2\beta$). This is because there is always one molecular orbital where all the p orbitals combine in-phase
- If there are an even number of atoms, there is also a single molecular orbital highest in energy; otherwise there will be a pair of degenerate molecular orbitals highest in energy
- All the molecular orbitals come in degenerate pairs except the one lowest in energy and, for even-numbered systems, the one highest in energy

Now we can begin to put all the pieces together and make sense of what we know so far. Let us compare the energy level diagrams for benzene and planar cyclooctatetraene. We are not concerned with the actual shapes of the molecular orbitals involved, just the energies of them.

Benzene has six $\pi$ electrons, which means that all its bonding molecular orbitals are fully occupied giving a closed shell structure. COT, on the other hand, has eight electrons. Six of these fill up the bonding molecular orbitals but there are two electrons left. These must go into the degenerate pair of nonbonding orbitals. Hund’s rule (Chapter 4) would suggest one in each. Therefore this planar structure for COT would not have the closed shell structure that benzene has—it must either lose or gain two electrons in order to have a closed shell structure with all the electrons in bonding orbitals. This is exactly what we have already seen—both the dianion and dication are planar, allowing delocalization all over the ring, whereas neutral COT adopts a nonplanar tub shape with localized bonds.

Hückel’s rule tells us if compounds are aromatic

Using this simple method to work out the energy level diagrams for other rings, we find that there is always a single low-energy bonding orbital (composed of all p orbitals combining in-phase) and then pairs of degenerate orbitals. Since the single orbital will hold two electrons when full and the degenerate pairs four, we shall have a closed shell of electrons in these $\pi$ orbitals only when they contain $2 + 4n$ electrons ($n$ is an integer 0, 1, 2, etc.). This is the basis of Hückel’s rule.

 Analogous systems with $4n\pi$ electrons are described as anti-aromatic
Note the trans–trans–cis double bonds: all bond angles can be 120°. [20]annulene presumably could become planar (it isn’t quite) but since it is a 4n p electron system rather than a 4n + 2 system, it is not aromatic and the structure shows localized single and double bonds.

The importance of the system being monocyclic is less clear. The problem that often arises is ‘exactly how do we count the π electrons?’ Taking a simple example, should we consider naphthalene as two benzene rings joined together or as a ten π electron system?

From its chemistry, it is very clear that naphthalene is aromatic but perhaps a little less so than benzene itself. For example, naphthalene can easily be reduced to tetralin (1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene) which still contains a benzene ring. Also, in contrast to benzene, all the bond lengths in naphthalene are not the same.

Hückel’s rule is very useful and it helps us to predict and understand the aromatic stability of numerous other systems. Cyclopentadiene, for example, has two double bonds that are conjugated but the whole ring is not conjugated since there is a methylene group in the ring. However, this compound is relatively easy to deprotonate (see next chapter, p. 000) to give a very stable anion in which all the bond lengths are the same. How many electrons does this system have? Each of the double bonds contributes two electrons and the negative charge (which must be in a p orbital to complete the conjugation) contributes a further two making six altogether. The energy level diagram shows us that six π electrons completely fill the bonding molecular orbitals thereby giving a stable structure.

### Aromatic heterocyclic compounds

So far all the aromatic compounds you have seen have been hydrocarbons. However, most aromatic systems are heterocyclic—that is, involving atoms other than carbon and hydrogen. A simple example is pyridine.

In this structure a nitrogen replaces one of the CH groups in benzene. The ring still has three double bonds and thus six π electrons. Consider the structure shown below, pyrrole. This is also aromatic but how can we count six π electrons?

In the cyclopentadiene ring above, there were also two double bonds and on deprotonation one carbon could formally contribute the other two electrons needed for aromaticity. In pyrrole the nitrogen’s lone pair can make up the six π electrons needed for the system to be aromatic.

We are really just beginning to scratch the surface of aromatic chemistry. You will meet many aromatic compounds in this book; in Chapter 22 we shall look at the chemistry of benzene and in Chapters 43 and 44 we shall discuss heterocyclic aromatic compounds. We shall finish off this chapter with a few more examples of some common aromatic compounds. In each case the aromatic part of the molecule—which may be one ring or several rings—is outlined in black.
First, a compound released by many cut plants, especially grasses, with a fresh delightful smell usually called ‘new mown hay’. Coumarin is also present in some herbs such as lavender. It contains a benzene ring and an α-pyrone fused together.

Next, pirimicarb, a selective insecticide that kills sap-sucking aphid pests but does not affect the useful predators such as ladybirds (ladybugs) that eat them. It contains a pyrimidine ring—a benzene ring with two nitrogen atoms.

LSD stands for LySergic acid Diethylamide. It is the hallucinogenic drug ‘acid’. When people walk off a building claiming that they can fly, they are probably on acid. It contains an indole ring made up of a benzene ring and a pyrrole ring fused together.

The world’s best selling medicine in 1998 was Omeprazole, an antiulcer drug from Astra. It prevents excess acid in the stomach and allows the body to heal ulcers. It contains a pyridine ring and a benzimidazole ring, two aromatic heterocycles.

The drug in the news in 1999 was Viagra, Pfizer’s cure for male impotence. In the first three months after its release in 1998, 2.9 million prescriptions were issued for Viagra. It contains a simple benzene ring and a more complex heterocyclic system, which can be divided into two aromatic heterocyclic rings.
Finally, the iron compound haem, part of the haemoglobin molecule we use to carry oxygen around in our bloodstream. It contains the aromatic porphyrin ring system with its eighteen electrons arranged in annulene style. Chlorophyll, mentioned earlier in this chapter, has a similar aromatic ring system.

Problems

1. Are these molecules conjugated? Explain your answer in any reasonable way.

2. Draw a full orbital diagram for all the bonding and antibonding $\pi$ orbitals in the three-membered cyclic cation shown here. The molecule is obviously very strained. Might it survive by also being aromatic?

3. How extensive are the conjugated systems in these molecules?

4. Draw diagrams to illustrate the conjugation present in these molecules. You should draw three types of diagram: (a) conjugation arrows to give at least two different ways of representing the molecule joined by the correct ‘reaction’ arrow; (b) a diagram with dotted lines and partial charges (if any) to show the double bond and charge distribution (if any); and (c) a diagram of the
atomic orbitals that make up the lowest-energy bonding molecular orbital.

5. Which of these compounds are aromatic? Justify your answer with some electron counting. You are welcome to treat each ring separately or two or more rings together, whichever you prefer.

6. A number of water-soluble pigments in the green/blue/violet ranges used as food dyes are based on cations of the type shown here. Explain why the general structure shows such long wavelength absorption and suggest why the extra functionality (OH group and sulfonate anions) is put into ‘CI food green 4’ a compound approved by the EU for use in food under E142.

7. Turn to Chapter 1 and look at the structures of the dyes in the shaving foam described on p. 000. Comment on the structures in comparison with those in Problem 6 and suggest where they get their colour from and why they too have extra functional groups. Then turn to the beginning of Chapter 1 (p. 000) and look at the structures of the compounds in the ‘spectrum of molecules’. Can you see what kind of absorption leads to each colour? You will want to think about the conjugation in each molecule but you should not expect to correlate structures with wavelengths in any even roughly quantitative way.

8. Go through the list of aromatic compounds at the end of the chapter and see how many electrons there are in the rings taken separately or taken together (if they are fused). Are all the numbers of the \((4n + 2)\) kind?
Note from the authors to all readers

This chapter contains physical data and mathematical material that some readers may find daunting. Organic chemistry students come from many different backgrounds since organic chemistry occupies a middle ground between the physical and the biological sciences. We hope that those from a more physical background will enjoy the material as it is. If you are one of those, you should work your way through the entire chapter. If you come from a more biological background, especially if you have done little maths at school, you may lose the essence of the chapter in a struggle to understand the equations. We have therefore picked out the more mathematical parts in boxes and you should abandon these parts if you find them too alien. We consider the general principles behind the chapter so important that we are not prepared to omit this essential material but you should try to grasp the principles without worrying too much about the equations. The ideas of acidity, basicity, and $pK_a$ values together with an approximate quantitative feel for the strength and weakness of acids and bases are at least as central for biochemistry as they are for organic chemistry. Please do not be discouraged but enjoy the challenge.

Introduction

This chapter is all about acidity, basicity, and $pK_a$. Acids and bases are obviously important because many organic and biological reactions are catalysed by acids or bases, but what is $pK_a$ and what use is it? $pK_a$ tells us how acidic (or not) a given hydrogen atom in a compound is. This is useful because, if the first step in a reaction is the protonation or deprotonation of one of the reactants, it is obviously necessary to know where the compound would be protonated or deprotonated and what strength acid or base would be needed. It would be futile to use too weak a base to deprotonate a compound but, equally, using a very strong base where a weak one would do would be like trying to
crack open a walnut using a sledge hammer—you would succeed but your nut would be totally destroyed in the process.

The aim of this chapter is to help you to understand why a given compound has the \( pK_a \) that it does. Once you understand the trends involved, you should have a good feel for the \( pK_a \) values of commonly encountered compounds and also be able to predict the values for unfamiliar compounds.

Originally, a substance was identified as an acid if it exhibited the properties shown by other acids: a sour taste (the word acid is derived from the Latin *acidus* meaning ‘sour’) and the abilities to turn blue vegetable dyes red, to dissolve chalk with the evolution of gas, and to react with certain ‘bases’ to form salts. It seemed that all acids must therefore contain something in common and at the end of the eighteenth century, the French chemist Lavoisier erroneously proclaimed this common agent to be oxygen (indeed, he named oxygen from the Greek *oxus* ‘acid’ and *gennao* ‘I produce’). Later it was realized that some acids, for example, hydrochloric acid, did not contain oxygen and soon hydrogen was identified as the key species. However, not all hydrogen-containing compounds are acidic, and at the end of the nineteenth century it was understood that such compounds are acidic only if they produce hydrogen ions \( H^+ \) in aqueous solution—the more acidic the compound, the more hydrogen ions it produces. This was refined once more in 1923 by J.N. Brønsted who proposed simple definitions for acids and bases.

### Brønsted definitions of acids and bases
- An acid is a species having a tendency to lose a proton
- A base is a species having a tendency to accept a proton

## Acidity

**An isolated proton is incredibly reactive—formation of \( H_3O^+ \) in water**

Hydrochloric acid is a strong acid: the free energy \( \Delta G^\circ \) for its ionization equilibrium in water is \(-40\) kJ mol\(^{-1}\).

\[
\text{HCl (aq)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}^+ (aq) + \text{Cl}^- (aq) \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298K} = -40 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}
\]

Such a large negative \( \Delta G^\circ \) value means that the equilibrium lies well over to the right. In the gas phase, however, things are drastically different and \( \Delta G^\circ \) for the ionization is \(+1347\) kJ mol\(^{-1}\).

\[
\text{HCl (g)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}^+ (g) + \text{Cl}^- (g) \quad \Delta G^\circ_{298K} = +1347 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}
\]

This \( \Delta G^\circ \) value corresponds to 1 molecule of HCl in \(10^{240}\) being dissociated! This means that HCl does not spontaneously ionize in the gas phase—it does not lose protons at all. Why then is HCl such a strong acid in water? The key to this problem is, of course, the water. In the gas phase we would have to form an isolated proton (\( H^+ \), hydrogen ion) and chloride ion and this is energetically very unfavourable. In contrast, in aqueous solution the proton is strongly attached to a water molecule to give the very stable hydronium ion, \( H_3O^+ \), and the ions are no longer isolated but solvated. Even in the gas phase, adding an extra proton to neutral water is highly exothermic.

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O (g)} + \text{H}^+ (g) \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (g) \quad \Delta H^\circ = -686 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}
\]

In fact, an isolated proton is so reactive that it will even add on to a molecule of methane in the gas phase to give \( \text{CH}_5^+ \) in a strongly exothermic reaction (you have already encountered this species in mass spectrometry on p. 52). We are therefore extremely unlikely to have a naked proton in the gas phase and certainly never in solution. In aqueous solution a proton will be attached to a water molecule to give a hydronium ion, \( H_3O^+ \) (sometimes called a hydroxonium ion). This will be solvated just as any other cation (or anion) would be and hydrogen bonding gives rise to such exotic species as \( H_9O_4^+ \) (\( H_3O^+ \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \)) shown here.
Every acid has a conjugate base

In water, hydrogen chloride donates a proton to a water molecule to give a hydronium ion and chloride ion, both of which are strongly solvated.

\[
\text{HCl (aq) + H}_2\text{O (l)} \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ \text{ (aq)} + \text{Cl}^- \text{ (aq)}
\]

In this reaction water is acting as a base, according to our definition above, by accepting a proton from HCl which in turn is acting as an acid by donating a proton. If we consider the reverse reaction (which is admittedly insignificant in this case since the equilibrium lies well over to the right), the chloride ion accepts a proton from the hydronium ion. Now the chloride is acting as a base and the hydronium ion as an acid. The chloride ion is called the conjugate base of hydrochloric acid and the hydronium ion, \(\text{H}_3\text{O}^+\), is the conjugate acid of water.

For any acid and any base

\[
\text{AH} + \text{B} \rightarrow \text{BH}^+ + \text{A}^-
\]

where \(\text{AH}\) is an acid and \(\text{A}^-\) is its conjugate base and \(\text{B}\) is a base and \(\text{BH}^+\) is its conjugate acid, that is, every acid has a conjugate base associated with it and every base has a conjugate acid associated with it.

For example, with ammonia and acetic acid

\[
\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} + \text{NH}_3 \rightarrow \text{NH}_4^+ \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^-
\]

the ammonium ion, \(\text{NH}_4^+\), is the conjugate acid of the base ammonia, \(\text{NH}_3\), and the acetate ion, \(\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^-\), is the conjugate base of acetic acid, \(\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}\).

Water can behave as an acid or as a base

If a strong acid is added to water, the water acts as a base and is protonated by the acid to become \(\text{H}_3\text{O}^+\). If we added a strong base to water, the base would deprotonate the water to give hydroxide ion, \(\text{OH}^-\), and here the water would be acting as an acid. Such compounds that can act as either an acid or a base are called amphoteric.

With a strong enough acid, we can protonate almost anything and, likewise, with a strong enough base we can deprotonate almost anything. This means that, to a certain degree, all compounds are amphoteric. For example, hydrochloric acid will protonate acetic acid.

In this example acetic acid is acting as a base! Other compounds need acids even stronger than HCl to protonate them. Remember that, in chemical ionization mass spectrometry (p. 52), protonated methane, \(\text{CH}_4^+\), was used to protonate whatever sample we put in to the machine in order to give us a cation; \(\text{CH}_4^+\) is an incredibly strong acid.

The amino acids you encountered in Chapter 2 are amphoteric. Unlike water, however, these compounds have separate acidic and basic groups built into the same molecule.

When amino acids are dissolved in water, the acidic end protonates the basic end to give a species with both a positive and a negative charge on it. A neutral species that contains both a positive and a negative charge is called a zwitterion.

How the pH of a solution depends on the concentration of the acid

You are probably already familiar with the pH scale: acidic solutions all have a pH of less than 7—the lower the pH the more acidic the solution; alkaline solutions all have pHs greater than 7—the higher the pH, the more basic the solution. Finally, pH 7 is neither acidic nor alkaline but neutral.

The pH of a solution is only a measure of the acidity of the solution; it
tells us nothing about how strong one acid might be relative to another. The pH of a solution of a given acid varies with its concentration: as we dilute the solution, the acidity falls and the pH increases. For example, as we decrease the concentration of HCl in an aqueous solution from 1 to 0.1 to 0.01 to 0.001 mol dm$^{-3}$, the pH changes from 0 to 1 to 2 to 3.

What a pH meter actually measures is the concentration of hydronium ions in the solution. The scale is a logarithmic one and is defined as

$$\text{pH} = -\log([\text{H}_3\text{O}^+])$$

Our solutions of HCl above therefore have hydronium ion concentrations of $[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = 10^0, 10^{-1}, 10^{-2},$ and $10^{-3}$ mol dm$^{-3}$ respectively. Since the scale is logarithmic, a pH difference of 1 corresponds to a factor of 10 in hydronium ion concentration, a pH difference of 2 corresponds to a factor of 100, and so on.

The ionization of water

Pure water at 25 °C has a pH of 7.00. This means that the concentration of hydronium ions in water must be $10^{-7}$ mol dm$^{-3}$ (of course, it is actually the other way round: the hydronium ion concentration in pure water is $10^{-7}$ mol dm$^{-3}$; hence its pH is 7.00). Hydronium ions in pure water can arise only from the self-dissociation or autoprotolysis of water.

$$\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (aq) + \text{OH}^-(aq)$$

In this reaction, one molecule of water is acting as a base, receiving a proton from the other, which in turn is acting as an acid by donating a proton. From the equation we see that, for every hydronium ion formed, we must also form a hydroxide ion and so in pure water the concentrations of hydroxide and hydronium ions are equal.

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = [\text{OH}^-] = 10^{-7} \text{ mol dm}^{-3}$$

The product of these two concentrations is known as the ionization constant of water, $K_W$ (or as the ionic product of water, or sometimes as the autoprotolysis constant, $K_{AP}$)

$$K_W = [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{OH}^-] = 10^{-14} \text{ mol}^2 \text{ dm}^{-6} \text{ at 25 °C}$$

This is a constant in aqueous solutions, albeit a very, very small one. This means that, if we know the hydronium ion concentration, we also know the hydroxide concentration and vice versa since the product of the two concentrations always equals $10^{-14}$.

**For example**

It is easy to work out the pH of a 0.1 M solution of sodium hydroxide, $[\text{NaOH}] = 0.1$ M

and, since the sodium hydroxide is fully ionized, $[\text{OH}^-] = 0.1$ M but $[\text{OH}^-] \times [\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = 10^{-14}$.

So

$$[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = \frac{10^{-14}}{0.1} = 10^{-13} \text{ mol dm}^{-3}$$

$$\text{pH} = -\log([\text{H}_3\text{O}^+]) = -\log(10^{-13}) = 13$$

How the pH of a solution also depends on the acid in question

If we measured the pH of an aqueous solution of an organic acid and compared it to an equally concentrated solution of HCl, we would probably find the pHs different. For example, whilst 0.1M HCl has a pH of 1, the same concentration of acetic acid has a pH of 3.7 and is much less acidic. This can only mean that a 0.1M solution of acetic acid contains fewer hydronium ions than a 0.1M solution of HCl.

- Aqueous hydrochloric acid (or any strong acid) has a lower pH than an equal concentration of aqueous acetic acid (or any weak acid) because it is more fully dissociated and thereby produces more hydronium ions.

For hydrochloric acid, the equilibrium lies well over to the right: in effect, HCl is completely dissociated.

$$\text{HCl (aq)} + \text{H}_2\text{O (l)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (aq) + \text{Cl}^- (aq)$$
Acetic acid is not fully dissociated—the solution contains both acetic acid and acetate ions.

\[
\text{CH}_3\text{COOH (aq)} + \text{H}_2\text{O (l)} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- (aq) + \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (aq)
\]

**Acids as preservatives**

Acetic acid is used as a preservative in many foods, for example, pickles, mayonnaise, bread, and fish products, because it prevents bacteria and fungi growing. However, its fungicidal nature is not due to any lowering of the pH of the foodstuff. In fact, it is the undissociated acid that acts as a bactericide and a fungicide in concentrations as low as 0.1–0.3%. Besides, such a low concentration has little effect on the pH of the foodstuff anyway.

Although acetic acid can be added directly to a foodstuff (disguised as E260), it is more common to add vinegar which contains between 10 and 15% acetic acid. This makes the product more ‘natural’ since it avoids the nasty ‘E numbers’. Actually, vinegar has also replaced other acids used as preservatives, such as propionic (propanoic) acid (E280) and its salts (E281, E282, and E283).

**The definition of p\(K_a\)**

Now we need to be clearer about ‘strong’ and ‘weak’ acids. In order to measure the strength of an acid relative to water and find out how effective a proton donor it is, we must look at the equilibrium constant for the reaction

\[
\text{AH (aq)} + \text{H}_2\text{O (l)} \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (aq) + \text{A}^- (aq)
\]

The position of equilibrium is measured by the equilibrium constant for this reaction \(K_{eq}\):

\[
K_{eq} = \frac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{A}^-]}{[\text{AH}][\text{H}_2\text{O}]}.
\]

The concentration of water remains essentially constant (at 55.56 mol dm\(^{-3}\)) with dilute solutions of acids wherever the equilibrium may be and a new equilibrium constant, \(K_a\), is defined and called the acidity constant.

\[
K_a = \frac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{A}^-]}{[\text{AH}]}
\]

Like pH, this is also expressed in a logarithmic form, p\(K_a\).

\[\text{p}K_a = -\log K_a\]

Because of the minus sign in this definition, the lower the p\(K_a\), the larger the equilibrium constant, \(K_a\), and hence the stronger the acid. The p\(K_a\) of the acid is the pH where it is exactly half dissociated. At pHs above the p\(K_a\), the acid HA exists as A\(^-\) in water; at pHs below the p\(K_a\), it exists as undissociated HA.

At pHs above the p\(K_a\) of the acid, it will also be more soluble in water. Hydrocarbons are insoluble in water—oil floats on water, for example. Unless a compound has some hydrophilic groups in it that can hydrogen bond to the water, it too will be insoluble. Ionic groups considerably increase a compound’s solubility and so the ion A\(^-\) is much more soluble in water than the undissociated acid HA. In fact water can solvate both cations and anions, unlike some of the solvents you will meet later. This means that we can increase the solubility of a neutral acid in water by increasing the proportion of its conjugate base present. All we need to do is raise the pH.

A simple example is aspirin: whilst the acid itself is not very soluble in water, the sodium salt is much more soluble (soluble aspirin is actually the sodium or calcium salt of ‘normal’ aspirin).

Conversely, if the pH of a solution is lowered, the amount of the acidic form present increases, and the solubility decreases. In the acidic environment of the stomach (around pH 1–2), soluble aspirin will be converted back to the normal acidic form and precipitate out of solution.
In the same way, organic bases such as amines can be dissolved by lowering the pH. Codeine (7,8-didehydro-4,5-epoxy-3-methoxy-17-methylmorphinan-6-ol) is a commonly used painkiller. Codeine itself is not very soluble in water but it does contain a basic nitrogen atom that can be protonated to give a more soluble salt. It is usually encountered as a phosphate salt. The structure is complex, but that doesn’t matter.

Charged compounds can be separated by acid–base extraction

Adjusting the pH of a solution often provides an easy way to separate compounds. Since weak acids form soluble anions at pHs above their $pK_a$ values, this presents us with an easy method for extracting organic acids from mixtures of other compounds. For example, if we dissolve the mixture of compounds in dichloromethane (which is immiscible with water, that is, it will not mix with water but instead forms a separate layer) and ‘wash’ this solution with aqueous sodium hydroxide, any organic acids present will be converted to their water-soluble salts and dissolve into the water layer. We have extracted the organic acids into the aqueous layer. If we then separate and acidify the aqueous layer, the acid form, being less soluble in water, will precipitate out. If the acid form has a charge and the conjugate base is neutral as with amines, for example, now the cationic acid form will be more soluble in water than the conjugate base.

### Acid–base extraction

For a neutral weak organic acid $HA$

$$HA(aq) + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + A^- (aq)$$

- Anionic $A^-$ is more soluble in water than the neutral acid $HA$
- Neutral acid $HA$ is more soluble in organic solvents than anionic $A^-$

For a neutral weak organic base $B$

$$HB^-(aq) + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+(aq) + B(aq)$$

- The cationic acid $HB^+$ is more soluble in water than the neutral conjugate base $B$
- The neutral conjugate base, $B$ is more soluble in organic solvents than the cationic acid $HB^+$

Separating a mixture of benzoic acid ($PhCO_2H$) and toluene ($PhMe$) is easy: dissolve the mixture in $CH_2Cl_2$, add aqueous $NaOH$, shake the mixture of solutions, and separate the layers. The $CH_2Cl_2$ layer contains all the toluene. The aqueous layer contains the sodium salt of benzoic acid. Addition of $HCl$ to the aqueous layer precipitates the insoluble benzoic acid.

In the same way, any basic compounds dissolved in an organic layer could be extracted by washing the layer with dilute aqueous acid and recovered by raising the pH, which will precipitate out the less soluble neutral compound.
Whenever you do any extractions or washes in practical experiments, just stop and ask yourself: ‘What is happening here? In which layer is my compound and why?’ That way you will be less likely to throw the wrong layer (and your precious compound) away!

**Benzoic acid preserves soft drinks**

Benzoic acid is used as a preservative in foods and soft drinks (E210). Like acetic acid, it is only the acid form that is effective as a bactericide. Consequently, benzoic acid can be used as a preservative only in foodstuffs with a relatively low pH, ideally less than its $pK_a$ of 4.2. This isn’t usually a problem: soft drinks, for example, typically have a pH of 2–3. Benzoic acid is often added as the sodium salt (E211), perhaps because this can be added to the recipe as a concentrated solution in water. At the low pH in the final drink, most of the salt will be protonated to give benzoic acid proper, which presumably remains in solution because it is so dilute.

**A graphical description of the p$K_a$ of acids and bases**

For both cases, adjusting the pH alters the proportions of the acid form and of the conjugate base. The graph plots the concentration of the free acid AH (green curve) and the ionized conjugate base $A^-$ (red curve) as percentages of the total concentration as the pH is varied.

At low pH the compound exists entirely as AH and at high pH entirely as $A^-$. At the $pK_a$ the concentration of each species, AH and $A^-$, is the same. At pHs near the $pK_a$ the compound exists as a mixture of the two forms.

**An acid’s $pK_a$ depends on the stability of its conjugate base**

HCl is a much stronger acid than acetic acid: the $pK_a$ of HCl is around –7 compared to 4.76 for acetic acid. This tells us that in solution $K_a$ for hydrogen chloride is $10^7$ mol dm$^{-3}$ whilst for acetic acid it is only $10^{-4.76} = 1.74 \times 10^{-5}$ mol dm$^{-3}$. Why are the equilibria so different? Why does hydrogen chloride fully dissociate but acetic acid do so only partially?

$$\text{HCl (aq) + H}_2\text{O (l)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (aq) + \text{Cl}^- (aq) \quad K_a = 10^7$$

$$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH (aq) + H}_2\text{O (l)} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ (aq) + \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- (aq) \quad K_a = 1.74 \times 10^{-5}$$

The answer must have something to do with the conjugate base $A^-$ of each acid HA, since this is the only thing that varies from one acid to another. In both the equilibria above, water acts as a base by accepting a proton from the acid. For the hydrochloric acid equilibrium in the reverse direction, the chloride ion is not a strong enough base to deprotonate the hydronium ion. Acetate, on the other hand, is easily protonated by $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ to give neutral acetic acid, which means that acetate must be a stronger base than chloride ion.

- **Acid and conjugate base strength**

  - The stronger the acid HA, the weaker its conjugate base, $A^-$
  - The stronger the base $A^-$, the weaker its conjugate acid AH
An alternative way of looking at this is that chloride ion is much happier being a chloride ion than acetate is being an acetate ion: the chloride ion is fundamentally more stable than is the acetate ion.

A close look at Table 8.1 for there are some interesting points to notice.

- Look at the acids themselves—we have neutral, cationic, and even anionic acids.
- Notice the range of different elements carrying the negative charge of the conjugate bases—we have iodine, chlorine, oxygen, sulfur, nitrogen, and carbon and many more are possible.
- Most importantly, notice the vast range of \( pK_a \) values: from around –10 to 50. This corresponds to a difference of \( 10^{30} \) in the equilibrium constants and these are by no means the limits. Other compounds or intermediates can have \( pK_a \) values even greater or less than these.

That the difference in \( pK_a \) gives the log of the equilibrium constant can easily be shown by considering, as an example, the equilibrium for the reaction between hydrogen sulfate and acetate.

\[
\text{HSO}_4^- + \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- \rightleftharpoons \text{CH}_3\text{COOH(aq)} + \text{SO}_4^{2-}
\]

\[
K_{eq} = \frac{[\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}(aq)] \cdot [\text{SO}_4^{2-}]}{[\text{HSO}_4^-] \cdot [\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^-]} \]

The equilibrium constant for this reaction is simply the \( K_a \) for the hydrogen sulfate equilibrium divided by the \( K_a \) for the acetic acid equilibrium.

\[
K_{eq} = K_a(\text{HSO}_4^-) \times \frac{1}{K_a(\text{CH}_3\text{COOH})} = \frac{10^{-2}}{10^{-4.8}} = 600
\]

This tells us in our case that, if we mixed sodium hydrogen sulfate and sodium acetate in water, we would end up with mainly sodium sulfate and acetic acid, the equilibrium constant for the reaction above being approximately 600.

For example, hydrogen iodide has a very low \( pK_a \) of –10. This means that HI is a strong enough acid to protonate most things. Its conjugate base, iodide ion, is therefore not very basic at all—in fact, we very rarely think of it as a base—it will not deprotonate anything. A very powerful base is methyllithium, MeLi. Here we effectively have CH₃⁻ (but see Chapter 9), which can accept a proton to become neutral methane, CH₄. Methane is therefore the conjugate acid in this case. Clearly, methane isn’t at all acidic—it's \( pK_a \) is about 48.

Table 8.1 gives a list of compounds and their approximate \( pK_a \) values.

Over the next few pages we shall be considering the reasons for these differences in acid strength but we are first going to consider the simple consequences of mixing acids or bases of different strength.

The difference in \( pK_a \) values tells us the equilibrium constant between two acids or bases.

If we have a mixture of two bases in a pot and we throw in a few protons, where will the protons end up? Clearly, this depends on the relative strengths of the bases—if they are equally strong, then the protons will be shared between them equally. If one base is stronger than the other, then this base will get more than its fair share of protons. If we put into our pot not two bases but one base and an acid, then it’s exactly the same as putting in two bases and then adding some protons—the protons end up on the strongest base. Exactly how the protons are shared depends on the difference in strengths of the two bases, which is related to the difference in the \( pK_a \)s of their conjugate acids.

### Table 8.1 The \( pK_a \) value of some compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>( pK_a )</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HI</td>
<td>ca. –10</td>
<td>I⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCl</td>
<td>ca. –7</td>
<td>Cl⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂SO₄</td>
<td>ca. –3</td>
<td>HSO₄⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSO₄⁻</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>SO₄²⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH₃COOH</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>CH₃COO⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂S</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>H⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH₄⁺</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>NH₃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C₆H₅(OH)</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>C₆H₅O⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH₃OH</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>CH₃O⁻</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a mixture of two acids or two bases:

- The ratio of \( K_a \) values gives us an indication of the equilibrium constant for the reaction between a base and an acid.
- The difference in \( pK_a \)s gives us the log of the equilibrium constant.

As an example, let us look at a method for acetylation of aromatic amines in aqueous solution. This reaction has a special name—the Lumière–Barbier method. We shall consider the acetylation of aniline PhNH₂ (a basic aromatic amine) using acetic anhydride. The procedure for this reaction is as follows.

1. Dissolve one equivalent of aniline in water to which one equivalent of hydrochloric acid has been added.

Aniline is not soluble in water to any significant degree. This isn’t surprising as aniline is just a hydrophobic hydrocarbon with an amine group. The HCl (\( pK_a = –7 \)) protonates the aniline (\( pK_a \) of the conjugate acid of aniline is 4.6) to give the hydrochloride. Now we have a salt that is very soluble in water.

![Diagram of aniline and anilinium ion](image)

- Aniline: insoluble in water
- Anilinium ion: soluble in water
2 Warm to 50°C and add 1.2 equivalents of acetic anhydride followed by 1.2 equivalents of aqueous sodium acetate solution.

The acetic anhydride could be attacked by either the water, the acetate, or by aniline itself. Aniline is much more nucleophilic than the other two nucleophiles but only aniline itself can attack the anhydride: protonated aniline has no lone pair and is not nucleophilic. This, then, is the role of the sodium acetate—to act as a base and deprotonate the aniline hydrochloride. The pK_a of the aniline hydrochloride and acetic acid are about the same, around 4.7. An equilibrium will be set up to give some neutral aniline which will then attack the acetic anhydride and form the amide.

---

3 Cool in ice and filter off crystals of product, acetalanilide.

The product is insoluble in water and, because it is an amide, is much less basic than aniline (pK_a of conjugate acid < 0) and so is not protonated to give a water-soluble salt.

---

**More from pK_a's: Calculating the pK_a values for water acting as a base and as an acid**

The material in this box is quite mathematical and may be skipped if you find it too alien.

**How easy is it to protonate or deprotonate water?**

All our reactions so far have been in water and it is easy to forget that water itself also competes for protons. If, for example, we have both sulfuric acid H_2SO_4 and hydrochloric acid HCl in aqueous solution, hydrochloric acid with its lower pK_a (~3), hydrogen sulfate HSO_4^-: both acids will protonate water instead. So water is a stronger base than either chloride or hydrogen sulfate ions. In fact, we can work out the pK_a for the protonation of water.

We want to answer the questions: 'How easy is it to protonate water? What strength of acid do we need?'

Look at this simple reaction:

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ + \text{OH}^- \]

Obviously, the equilibrium constant for the equation above will be 1 since both sides of the equation are the same. But we don’t use normal equilibrium constants — we use the acidity constant, K_a, which is slightly different.

Remember that this is actually the normal equilibrium constant for the reaction multiplied by [H_2O] = 55.56, the ‘concentration’ of water. This is normally useful in that it cancels out the [H_2O] term in the denominator but not in this case.

Here we have

\[
K_a = K_{eq} \times [H_2O] = \frac{[H_3O^+][OH^-]}{[H_2O][H_3O^+]} \times [H_2O] = 55.56
\]

so the pK_a for the protonation of water is: pK_a(H_3O^+) = -log(55.56) = -1.74.

The pK_a also equals the pH when we have equal concentrations of acid and conjugate base. A solution would be quite acidic if exactly half of the number of water molecules present were hydronium ions— its pH would be -1.74.

So with water acting as a base

\[
\text{AH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ + \text{A}^-
\]

It is clear that for any acid with a lower pK_a than -1.74, the equilibrium will lie over to the right.

- **Acids with a lower pK_a than -1.74 will protonate water completely**

We can also work out the pK_a for water acting as an acid. Now the equilibrium is

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ + \text{OH}^-
\]

Going through the same calculations as before, we find

\[
K_a = K_{eq} \times [H_2O] = \frac{[H_3O^+][OH^-]}{[H_2O][H_3O^+]} \times [H_2O] = 55.56
\]

\[
K_{eq} = 10^{-14} \times \frac{1.80 \times 10^{-16}}{55.56} = 1.80 \times 10^{-16}
\]

so the pK_a for the deprotonation of water is: pK_a(H_2O^-) = -log(1.80 × 10^{-16}) = 15.74.

This means that, if we put in water a base whose conjugate acid’s pK_a is greater than 15.74, it will simply be protonated by the water and give an equivalent amount of hydroxide ions.

- **Bases B whose conjugate acid HB has a higher pK_a than 15.74 will deprotonate water completely**

---

Any sharp-eyed readers may notice an inconsistency in the statement that the pK_a equals the pH when we have equal concentrations of acid and conjugate base. If, when [A^-] = [AH], the pK_a = pH, then the pK_a for water equals the pH when [H_2O] = [H_3O^+]. We assume that [H_2O] is constant at 55.56 mol dm^{-3} and so [H_3O^+] must also equal 55.56 mol dm^{-3} and hence pH = pK_a = -log(55.56). This assumption cannot be valid here: rather [H_2O] + [H_3O^+] should equal approximately 55.56 mol dm^{-3}.

---
The choice of solvent limits the $pK_a$ range we can use

In water, our effective $pK_a$ range is only –1.74 to 15.74, that is, it is determined by the solvent. This is known as the *levelling effect* of the solvent. This is an important point. It means that, if we want to remove the proton from something with a high $pK_a$, say 25–30, it would be impossible to do this in water since the strongest base we can use is hydroxide. If we do need a stronger base than OH$^-$, we must use a different solvent system.

For example, if we wanted to deprotonate ethyne (acetylene, $pK_a$ 25), then hydroxide (the strongest base we could have in aqueous solution, $pK_a$ 15.7) would establish an equilibrium where only 1 in $10^{15.7}/10^{25}$ ethyne molecules were deprotonated. This means about 1 in 2 billion of our ethyne molecules will be deprotonated at any one time. Since, no matter what base we dissolve in water, we will only at best get hydroxide ions, this is the best we could do in water. So, in order to deprotonate ethyne to any appreciable extent, we must use a different solvent that does not have a $pK_a$ less than 25. Conditions often used to do this reaction are sodium amide (NaNH$_2$) in liquid ammonia.

Using the $pK_a$s of NH$_3$ (ca, 33) and ethyne (25) we would predict an equilibrium constant for this reaction of $10^8$ ($10^{-25}/10^{-33}$)—well over to the right. Amide ions can be used to deprotonate alkynes.

Because the $pK_a$ values for very strong acids and bases are so hard to determine, you will find that they often differ in different texts—sometimes the values are no better than good guesses! However, while the absolute values may differ, the relative values (which is the important thing because we need only a rough guide) are usually consistent.
different compounds and, if you know what factors affect them, it will make it much easier to predict an approximate $pK_a$ value, or at least understand why a given compound has the $pK_a$ value that it does.

A number of factors affect the strength of an acid, $AH$.

\[
AH \text{ (solvent)} \quad \leftrightarrow \quad A^- \text{ (solvent)} + H^+ \text{ (solvent)}
\]

These include:

1. **Intrinsic stability of the conjugate base, anion $A^-$.** Stability can arise, for example, by having the negative charge on an electronegative atom or by spreading the charge over other groups. Either way, the more 'stable' the conjugate base, the less basic it will be and so the stronger the acid.

2. **Bond strength $A$–$H$.** Clearly, the easier it is to break this bond, the stronger the acid.

3. **The solvent.** The better the solvent is at stabilizing the ions formed, the easier it is for the reaction to occur.

### Acid strength

- The most important factor in the strength of an acid is the stability of the conjugate base—the more stable the conjugate base, the stronger the acid.
- An important factor in the stability of the conjugate base is which element the negative charge is on—the more electronegative the element, the more stable the conjugate base.

### The negative charge on an electronegative element stabilizes the conjugate base

The $pK_a$ values for second row hydrides $CH_4$, $NH_3$, $H_2O$, and HF are about 48, 33, 16, and 3, respectively. This trend is due to the increasing electronegativities across the period: $F^-$ is much more stable than $CH_3^-$, because fluorine is much more electronegative than carbon.

### Weak $A$–$H$ bonds make stronger acids

However, on descending group VII (group 17), the $pK_a$ values for HF, HCl, HBr, and HI decrease in the order 3, –7, –9, and –10. Since the electronegativities decrease on descending the group we might expect an increase in $pK_a$. The decrease observed is actually due to the weakening bond strengths on descending the group and to some extent the way in which the charge can be spread over the increasingly large anions.

### Delocalization of the negative charge stabilizes the conjugate base

The acids HClO, HClO$_2$, HClO$_3$, and HClO$_4$ have $pK_a$ values 7.5, 2, –1, and about –10, respectively. In each case the acidic proton is on an oxygen attached to chlorine, that is, we are removing a proton from the same environment in each case. Why then is perchloric acid, HClO$_4$, some 17 orders of magnitude stronger in acidity than hypochlorous acid, HClO? Once the proton is removed, we end up with a negative charge on oxygen. For hypochlorous acid, this is localized on the one oxygen. With each successive oxygen, the charge can be more delocalized, and this makes the anion more stable. For example, with perchloric acid, the negative charge can be delocalized over all four oxygen atoms.

\[
\text{BH} \quad \leftrightarrow \quad \text{etc.}
\]

That the charge is spread out over all the oxygen atoms equally is shown by electron diffraction studies: whereas perchloric acid has two types of Cl–O bond, one 163.5 pm and the other three 140.8 pm long, in the perchlorate anion all Cl–O bond lengths are the same, 144 pm, and all O–Cl–O bond angles are 109.5°.
Similar arguments explain the $pK_a$s for other oxygen acids, for example, ethanol ($pK_a$, 15.9), acetic acid (4.8), and methane sulfonic acid (−1.9). In ethoxide, the negative charge is localized on one oxygen atom, whilst in acetate the charge is delocalized over two oxygens and in methane sulfonate it is spread over three oxygens.

In phenol, PhOH, the OH group is directly attached to a benzene ring. On deprotonation, the negative charge can again be delocalized, not on to other oxygens but this time on to the aromatic ring itself.

The effect of this is to stabilize the phenoxide anion relative to the conjugate base of cyclohexanol where no delocalization is possible and this is reflected in the $pK_a$s of the two compounds: 10 for phenol but 16 for cyclohexanol.

### Get a feel for $pK_a$s!

Notice that these oxygen acids have $pK_a$s that conveniently fall in units of 5 (approximately).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>RSO$_2$OH</th>
<th>RCO$_2$H</th>
<th>ArOH</th>
<th>ROH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approx. $pK_a$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The same delocalization of charge can stabilize anions derived from deprotonating carbon acids. These are acids where the proton is removed from carbon rather than oxygen and, in general, they are weaker than oxygen acids because carbon is less electronegative. If the negative charge can be delocalized on to more electronegative atoms such as oxygen or nitrogen, the conjugate base will be stabilized and hence the acid will be stronger.

Table 8.2 shows a selection of carbon acids with their conjugate bases and $pK_a$s. In each case the proton removed is shown in black.
It isn’t necessary for a group to be conjugated in order to spread the negative charge: any group that withdraws electrons will help to stabilize the conjugate base and therefore increase the strength of the acid. Some examples are shown below for both oxygen and carbon acids.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2^-$</td>
<td>$\sim 50$</td>
<td>charge is localized on one carbon—difficult since carbon is not very electronegative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>$\sim 43$</td>
<td>charge is delocalized over $\pi$ system—better but still not really good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>charge is delocalized over $\pi$ system but is mainly on the electronegative oxygen—much better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>charge delocalized over $\pi$ system but mainly over two oxygens—better still</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>$\sim 48$</td>
<td>charge is localized on one carbon—again very unsatisfactory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>charge is delocalized but mainly on oxygens of nitro group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>charge can be delocalized over two nitro groups—more stable anion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>charge can be delocalized over three nitro groups—very stable anion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It isn’t necessary for a group to be conjugated in order to spread the negative charge: any group that withdraws electrons will help to stabilize the conjugate base and therefore increase the strength of the acid. Some examples are shown below for both oxygen and carbon acids.

**Table 8.2 The conjugate bases and $pK_a$s of some carbon acids**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>Conjugate base</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2^-$</td>
<td>4.76</td>
<td>$pK_a$ of carboxylic acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{H}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>$pK_a$ of carboxylic acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{Me}_3\text{N}\text{COOH}$</td>
<td>$\text{Me}_3\text{N}\text{CO}_2^-$</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>$pK_a$ of carboxylic acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{NC}_2\text{H}_4\text{OH}$</td>
<td>$\text{NC}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}_2^-$</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>$pK_a$ of carboxylic acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{CO}_2^-$</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>$pK_a$ of carboxylic acids</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Picric acid is a very acidic phenol**

Electron-withdrawing effects on aromatic rings will be covered in more detail in Chapter 22 but for the time being note that electron-withdrawing groups can considerably lower the $pK_a$s of substituted phenols and carboxylic acids, as illustrated by picric acid.

2, 4, 6-Trinitrophenol’s more common name, picric acid, reflects the strong acidity of this compound ($pK_a 0.7$ compared to phenol’s 10.0). Picric acid used to be used in the dyeing industry but is little used now because it is also a powerful explosive (compare its structure with that of TNT!).
Electron withdrawal in these molecules is the result of σ bond polarization from an inductive effect (Chapter 5). The electrons in a σ bond between carbon and a more electronegative element such as N, O, or F will be unevenly distributed with a greater electron density towards the more electronegative atom. This polarization is passed on more and more weakly throughout the carbon skeleton. The three fluorine atoms in CF3H reduce the pKₐ to 26 from the 48 of methane, while the nine fluorines in (CF₃)₃CH reduce the pKₐ still further to 10.

Such inductive effects become less significant as the electron-withdrawing group gets further away from the negative charge as is shown by the pKₐs for these chlorobutanoic acids: 2-chloro acid is significantly stronger than butanoic acid but by the time the chlorine atom is on C4, there is almost no effect.

Hybridization can also affect the pKₐ

The hybridization of the orbital from which the proton is removed also affects the pKₐ. Since s orbitals are held closer to the nucleus than are p orbitals, the electrons in them are lower in energy, that is, more stable. Consequently, the more s character an orbital has, the more tightly held are the electrons in it. This means that electrons in an sp orbital (50% s character) are lower in energy than those in an sp² orbital (33% s character), which are, in turn, lower in energy than those in an sp³ orbital (25% s character). Hence the anions derived from ethane, ethene, and ethyne increase in stability in this order and this is reflected in their pKₐs. Cyanide ion, −CN, with an electronegative element as well as an sp hybridized anion, is even more stable and HCN has a pKₐ of about 10.

Highly conjugated carbon acids

If we can delocalize the negative charge of a conjugate anion on to oxygen, the anion is more stable and consequently the acid is stronger. Even delocalization on to carbon alone is good if there is enough of it, which is why some highly delocalized hydrocarbons have remarkably low pKₐs for hydrocarbons. Look at this series.
Increasing the number of phenyl groups decreases the pK\(_a\)—this is what we expect, since we can delocalize the charge over all the rings. Notice, however, that each successive phenyl ring has less effect on the pK\(_a\); the first ring lowers the pK\(_a\) by 8 units, the second by 7, and the third by only 1 unit. In order to have effective delocalization, the system must be planar (Chapter 7). Three phenyl rings cannot arrange themselves in a plane around one carbon atom because the ortho-hydrogens clash with each other (they want to occupy the same space) and the compound actually adopts a propeller shape where each phenyl ring is slightly twisted relative to the next.

Even though complete delocalization is not possible, each phenyl ring does lower the pK\(_a\) because the sp\(^2\) carbon on the ring is electron-withdrawing. If we force the system to be planar, as in the compounds below, the pK\(_a\) is lowered considerably.

**The ‘Fmoc’ protecting group**

Sometimes in organic chemistry, when we are trying to do a reaction on one particular functional group, another group in the molecule may also react with the reagents, often in a way that we do not want. If a compound contains such a vulnerable group, we can ‘protect’ it by first converting it into a different less reactive group that can easily be converted back to the group that we want later. An example of such a ‘protecting group’ is the Fmoc group used (for example, as the chloride, X = Cl) to protect amines or alcohols.

The protecting group is removed using a base. This works because of the acidity of the proton in position 9 on the fluorene ring. Removal of that proton causes a breakup of the molecule with the release of the amine at the end.

We saw in Chapter 7 how some compounds can become aromatic by gaining or losing electrons. Cyclopentadiene is one such compound, which becomes aromatic on deprotonation. The stability gained in becoming aromatic is reflected in the compound’s pK\(_a\).
Compare the pK\textsubscript{a} of cyclopentadiene with that of cycloheptatriene. Whilst the anion of the former has 6 \(\pi\) electrons (which makes it isoelectronic with benzene), the anion of the latter has 8 \(\pi\) electrons. Remember that on p. 176 we saw how 4\(n\) \(\pi\) electrons made a compound anti-aromatic? The cycloheptatrienyl anion does have 4\(n\) \(\pi\) electrons but it is not anti-aromatic because it isn’t planar. However, it certainly isn’t aromatic either and its pK\textsubscript{a} of around 36 is about the same as that of propene. This contrasts with the cyclopropenyl anion, which must be planar since any three points define a plane. Now the compound is anti-aromatic and this is reflected in the very high pK\textsubscript{a} (about 62). Other compounds may become aromatic on losing a proton. We looked at fluorene a few pages back: now you will see that fluorene is acidic because its anion is aromatic (14 \(\pi\) electrons).

The more stabilized the conjugate base, \(A^-\), the stronger is the acid, HA. Ways to stabilize \(A^-\) include:

- Having the charge on an electronegative element
- Delocalizing the negative charge over other carbon atoms, or even better, over more electronegative atoms
- Spreading out the charge over electron-withdrawing groups by the polarization of \(\sigma\) bonds (inductive)
- Having the negative charge in an orbital with more s character
- Becoming aromatic

Electron-donating groups decrease acidity

All of the substituents in the examples above have been electron-withdrawing and have helped to stabilize the negative charge of the conjugate base, thereby making the acid stronger. What effect would electron-donating groups have? As you would expect, these destabilize the conjugate base because, instead of helping to spread out the negative charge, they actually put more in. The most common electron-donating groups encountered in organic chemistry are the alkyl groups. These are weakly electron-releasing (p. 416).

The anions are also stabilized by solvation. Solvation is reduced by increasing the steric hindrance around the alkoxide.
Although to a lesser extent than amides (p. 165), the ester group is also stabilized by conjugation. In this case, the ‘ethoxide part’ of the ester is electron-releasing. This explains the $pK_a$ values shown below.

**Oxygen acids and carbon acids** are by far the most important examples you will encounter and by now you should have a good understanding of why their $pK_a$ values are what they are. Before we move on to bases, it would be worthwhile to remind you how different nitrogen acids are from oxygen acids, since the conjugate bases of amines are so important. The $pK_a$ of ammonia is much greater than the $pK_a$ of water (about 33 compared with 15.74). This is because oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen and so can stabilize the negative charge better. A similar trend is reflected in the $pK_a$s of other nitrogen compounds, for example, in the amide group. Whilst the oxygen equivalent of an amide (a carboxylic acid) has a low $pK_a$, a strong base is needed to deprotonate an amide. Nevertheless, the carbonyl group of an amide does lower the $pK_a$ from that of an amine (about 30) to around 17. It’s not surprising, therefore, that the two carbonyl groups in an imide lower the $pK_a$ still further, as in the case of phthalimide. Amines are not acidic, amides are weakly acidic (about the same as alcohols), and imides are definitely acidic (about the same as phenols).

**Basicity**

A base is a substance that can accept a proton by donating a pair of electrons. We have already encountered some—for example, ammonia, water, the acetate anion, and the methyl anion. The question we must now ask is: how can we measure a base’s strength? To what extent does a base attract a proton? We hope you will realize that we have already addressed this problem by asking the same question from a different viewpoint: to what extent does a protonated base want to keep its proton? For example if we want to know which is the stronger base—formate anion or acetylide anion—we look up the $pK_a$s for their conjugate acids. We find that the $pK_a$ for formic acid (HCO$_2$H) is 3.7, whilst the $pK_a$ for ethyne (acetylene) is around 25. This means that ethyne is much more reluctant to part with its proton, that is, acetylide is much more basic than formate. This is all very well for anions—we simply look up the $pK_a$ value for the neutral conjugate acid, but what if we want to know the basicity of ammonia? If we look up the $pK_a$ for ammonia we find a value around 33 but this is the value for deprotonating neutral ammonia to give the amide ion, NH$_2$.
If we want to know the *basicity* of ammonia, we must look up the $pK_a$ of its conjugate acid, the ammonium cation, $\text{NH}_4^+$, protonated ammonia. Its $pK_a$ is 9.24 which means that ammonia is a weaker base than hydroxide—the $pK_a$ for water (the conjugate acid of hydroxide) is 15.74 (p. 190). Now we can summarize the states of ammonia at different pH values.

### Scales for basicity—$pK_B$ and $pK_{aH}$

The material in this box is quite mathematical and may be skipped if you find it too alien. It is often convenient to be able to refer to the basicity of a substance directly. In some texts a different scale is used, $pK_B$. This is derived from considering how much hydroxide ion a base forms in water rather than how much hydronium ion the conjugate acid forms.

For the $pK_B$ scale:

$$\text{B(aq)} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{OH}^-\text{(aq)} + \text{BH}^+(\text{aq})$$

$$K_B = \frac{[\text{OH}^-][\text{BH}^+]}{[\text{B}]}$$

Hence

$$pK_B = -\log(K_B)$$

For the $pK_{aH}$ scale:

$$\text{BH}^+(\text{aq}) + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_3\text{O}^+(\text{aq}) + \text{B(aq)}$$

$$K_A = \frac{[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{B}]}{[\text{BH}^+]}$$

Hence

$$pK_A = -\log(K_A)$$

Just as in the acid $pK_a$ scale, the lower the $pK_a$, the stronger the acid, in the basic $pK_B$ scale, the lower the $pK_B$, the stronger the base. The two scales are related: the product of the equilibrium constants simply equals the ionic product of water.

$$K_B \times K_A = \frac{[\text{OH}^-][\text{BH}^+][\text{H}_3\text{O}^+][\text{B}]}{[\text{B}][\text{BH}^+]}$$

$$= [\text{OH}^-][\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] = K_W = 10^{-14}$$

that is,

$$pK_A + pK_B = pK_w = 14$$

There is a separate scale for bases, but it seems silly to have two different scales, the basic $pK_B$ and the familiar $pK_a$, when one will do and so we will stick to $pK_a$.

However, to avoid any misunderstandings that can arise from amphoteric compounds like ammonia, whose $pK_a$ is around 33, we will either say:

- The $pK_a$ of ammonia’s conjugate acid is 9.24 or, more concisely,
- The $pK_{aH}$ of ammonia is 9.24 (where $pK_{aH}$ simply means the $pK_a$ of the conjugate acid)

### What factors affect how basic a compound is?

This really is the same as the question we were asking about the strength of an acid—the more ‘stable’ the base, the weaker it is. The more accessible the electrons are, the stronger the base is. Therefore a negatively charged base is more likely to pick up a proton than a neutral one; a compound in which the negative charge is delocalized is going to be less basic than one with a more concentrated, localized charge, and so on. We have seen that carboxylic acids are stronger acids than simple alcohols because the negative charge formed once we have lost a proton is delocalized over two oxygens in the carboxylate but localized on just one oxygen for the alkoxide. In other words, the alkoxide is a stronger base because its electrons are more available to be protonated. Since we have already considered anionic bases, we will now look in more detail at neutral bases.

![The most important factor in the strength of a base is which element the lone pair (or negative charge) is on. The more electronegative the element, the tighter it keeps hold of its electrons, and so the less available they are to accept a proton, and the weaker is the base.](image)
This explains why ammonia is $10^{10}$ times more basic than water: since oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen, its lone pair is lower in energy. In other words, the oxygen atom in water wants to keep hold of its electrons more than the nitrogen in ammonia does and is therefore less likely to donate them to a proton. The $pK_a$ for ammonia (that is, the $pK_a$ for ammonium ion) is 9.24 whilst the $pK_a$ for water (the $pK_a$ for hydronium ion) is −1.74. Nitrogen bases are the strongest neutral bases commonly encountered by the organic chemist and so we will pay most attention to these in the discussion that follows.

**Neutral nitrogen bases**

Ammonia is the simplest nitrogen base and has a $pK_a$ of 9.24. Any substituent that increases the electron density on the nitrogen therefore raises the energy of the lone pair thus making it more available for protonation and increasing the basicity of the amine (larger $pK_a$). Conversely, any substituent that withdraws electron density from the nitrogen makes it less basic (smaller $pK_a$).

**Effects that increase the electron density on nitrogen**

We can increase the electron density on nitrogen either by attaching an electron-releasing group or by conjugating the nitrogen with an electron-donating group. The simplest example of an electron-releasing group is an alkyl group (p. 416). If we successively substitute each hydrogen in ammonia by an electron-releasing alkyl group, we should increase the amine’s basicity. The $pK_a$ values for various mono-, di-, and trisubstituted amines are shown in Table 8.4.

Points to notice in Table 8.4:

- All the amines have $pK_a$s greater than that of ammonia (9.24)
- All the primary amines have approximately the same $pK_a$ (about 10.7)
- All the secondary amines have $pK_a$s that are slightly higher
- Most of the tertiary amines have $pK_a$s lower than those of the primary amines

The first point indicates that our prediction that replacing the hydrogens by electron-releasing alkyl groups would increase basicity was correct. A strange feature though is that, whilst substituting one hydrogen of ammonia increases the basicity by more than a factor of ten (one $pK_a$ unit), substituting two has less effect and in the trisubstituted amine the $pK_a$ is actually lower. So far we have only considered one cause of basicity, namely, the availability of the lone pair but the other factor, the stabilization of the resultant positive charge formed on protonation, is also important. Each successive alkyl group does help stabilize the positive charge because it is electron-releasing but there is another stabilizing effect—the solvent. Every hydrogen attached directly to nitrogen will be hydrogen bonded with solvent water and this also helps to stabilize the charge: the more hydrogen bonding, the more stabilization. The observed basicity therefore results from a combination of effects: (1) the increased availability of the lone pair and the stabilization of the resultant positive charge, which increases with successive replacement of hydrogen atoms by alkyl groups; and (2) the stabilization due to solvation, an important part of which is due to hydrogen bonding and this effect decreases with increasing numbers of alkyl groups.

![Table 8.4 $pK_a$ values for primary, secondary, and tertiary amines](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>$pK_a$ $RNH_2$</th>
<th>$pK_a$ $R_2NH$</th>
<th>$pK_a$ $R_3N$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Et</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>10.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Pr</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Bu</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>9.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gas phase acidity**

If we look at the $pK_a$ values in the gas phase, we can eliminate the hydrogen bonding contribution and we find the basicity increases in the order we expect, that is, tertiary > secondary > primary.

Introducing alkyl groups is the simplest way to increase the electron density on nitrogen but there are other ways. Conjugation with an electron-donating group produces even stronger bases (p. 202) but we could also increase the electron density by using elements such as silicon. Silicon is more...
electropositive than carbon, that is, it pushes more electron density on to carbon. This extra donation of electrons also means that the silicon compound has a higher pK\textsubscript{aH} value than its carbon analogue since the nitrogen’s lone pair is higher in energy.

The pK\textsubscript{aH}s of some amines in which the nitrogen is attached either directly or indirectly to an electron-withdrawing group are shown below. We should compare these values with typical values of about 11 for simple primary and secondary amines.

The strongly electron-withdrawing CF\textsubscript{3} and CCl\textsubscript{3} groups have a large effect when they are on the same carbon atom as the NH\textsubscript{2} group but the effect gets much smaller when they are even one atom further away. Inductive effects fall off rapidly with distance.

If the lone pair itself is in an sp\textsuperscript{2} or an sp orbital, it is more tightly held (the orbital is lower in energy) and therefore much harder to protonate. This explains why the lone pair of the nitrile group is not at all basic and needs a strong acid to protonate it.

The low pK\textsubscript{aH} of aniline (PhNH\textsubscript{2}), 4.6, is partly due to the nitrogen being attached to an sp\textsuperscript{2} carbon but also because the lone pair can be delocalized into the benzene ring. In order for the lone pair to be fully conjugated with the benzene ring, the nitrogen would have to be sp\textsuperscript{2} hybridized with the lone pair in the p orbital. This would mean that both hydrogens of the NH\textsubscript{2} group would be in the same plane as the benzene ring but this is not found to be the case. Instead, the plane of the NH\textsubscript{2} group is about 40\textdegree away from the plane of the ring. That the lone pair is partially conjugated into the ring is shown indirectly by NMR shifts and by the chemical reactions that aniline undergoes. Notice
that, when protonated, the positive charge cannot be delocalized over the benzene ring and any stabilization derived from the lone pair in unprotonated aniline being delocalized into the ring is lost.

Amides are weak bases protonated on oxygen

In contrast to aromatic amines, the amide group is completely planar (p. 165) with the nitrogen sp² hybridized and its lone pair in the p orbital, thereby enabling it to overlap effectively with the carbonyl group.

This delocalization ‘ties up’ the lone pair and makes it much less basic: the p\(K_a\) for an amide is typically between 0 and −1. Because of the delocalization amides are not protonated on nitrogen.

Protonation at nitrogen would result in a positive charge on the nitrogen atom. Since this is adjacent to the carbonyl, whose carbon is also electron-deficient, this is energetically unfavourable. Protonation occurs instead on the carbonyl oxygen atom. We can draw the mechanism for this using either a lone pair on oxygen or on nitrogen.

Furthermore, if the amide were protonated at nitrogen, the positive charge could not be delocalized on to the oxygen but would have to stay localized on the nitrogen. In contrast, when the amide is protonated on the oxygen atom, the charge can be delocalized on to the nitrogen atom making the cation much more stable. We can see this if we draw delocalization arrows on the structures in the green box.
Amidines are stronger bases than amides or amines

An amidine is the nitrogen equivalent of an amide—a $\text{C}=\text{NH}$ group replaces the carbonyl. Amidines are much more basic than amides, the $pK_{a\text{H}}$s of amidines are larger than those of amides by about 13 so there is an enormous factor of $10^{13}$ in favour of amidines. In fact, they are among the strongest neutral bases.

An amidine has two nitrogen atoms that could be protonated—one is $\text{sp}^3$ hybridized, the other $\text{sp}^2$ hybridized. We might expect the $\text{sp}^3$ nitrogen to be more basic but protonation occurs at the $\text{sp}^2$ nitrogen atom. This happens because we have the same situation as with an amide: only if we protonate on the $\text{sp}^2$ nitrogen can the positive charge be delocalized over both nitrogens. We are using both lone pairs when we protonate on the $\text{sp}^2$ nitrogen.

The electron density on the $\text{sp}^2$ nitrogen in an amidine is increased through conjugation with the $\text{sp}^3$ nitrogen. The delocalized amidinium cation has identical C–N bond lengths and a positive charge shared equally between the two nitrogen atoms. It is like a positively charged analogue of the carboxylate ion.

**Amidine bases**

Two frequently used amidine bases are DBN (1,5-diazacyclo[3.4.0]nonene-5) and DBU (1,8-diazacyclo[5.4.0]undecene-7). They are easier to make, more stable, and less volatile than simpler amidines.

Guanidines are very strong bases

Even more basic is guanidine, $pK_{a\text{H}}$ 13.6, nearly as strong a base as NaOH! On protonation, the positive charge can be delocalized over three nitrogen atoms to give a very stable cation. All three nitrogen lone pairs cooperate to donate electrons but protonation occurs, as before, on the $\text{sp}^2$ nitrogen atom.

This time the resulting guanidinium ion can be compared to the very stable carbonate dianion. All three C–N bonds are the same length in the guanidinium ion and each nitrogen atom has the same charge (about one-third positive). In the carbonate dianion, all three C–O bonds are the same length and each oxygen atom has the same charge (about two-thirds negative as it is a dianion).

Imidazoline is a simple cyclic amidine and its $pK_{a\text{H}}$ value is just what we expect, around 11. Imidazole, on the other hand, is less basic ($pK_{a\text{H}}$ 7.1) because both nitrogens are attached to an electron-withdrawing $\text{sp}^2$ carbon. However, imidazole, with its two nitrogen atoms, is more basic than pyridine ($pK_{a\text{H}}$ 5.2) because pyridine only has one nitrogen on which to stabilize the positive charge.
Both imidazole and pyridine are aromatic—they are flat, cyclic molecules with 6 \( \pi \) electrons in the conjugated system (p. 177). Imidazole has one lone pair that is and one that is not involved in the aromaticity (Chapter 43).

Protonation occurs on the nitrogen atom having the sp\(^2\) lone pair because both lone pairs contribute and the resulting delocalized cation is still aromatic. Pyridine is also protonated on its sp\(^2\) lone pair (it is the only one it has!) and the pyridinium ion is also obviously aromatic—it still has three conjugated \( \pi \) bonds in the ring.

This contrasts to pyrrole in which the lone pair on the only nitrogen atom is needed to complete the six aromatic \( \pi \) electrons and is therefore delocalized around the ring. Protonation, if it occurs at all, occurs on carbon rather than on nitrogen since the cation is then delocalized. But the cation is no longer aromatic (there is a saturated CH\(_2\) group interrupting the conjugation) and so pyrrole is not at all basic (\( pK_{a,H} \) about \(-4\)).

**Neutral oxygen bases**

We have already seen that water is a much weaker base than ammonia because oxygen is more electronegative and wants to keep hold of its electrons (p. 199). Oxygen bases in general are so much weaker than their nitrogen analogues that we don’t regard them as bases at all. It is still important to know the \( pK_{a,H} \)s of oxygen compounds because the first step in many acid-catalysed reactions is protonation at an oxygen atom. Table 8.6 gives a selection of \( pK_{a,H} \)s of oxygen compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxygen compound</th>
<th>Oxygen compound (conjugate base A)</th>
<th>Approximate ( pK_{a,H} ) of oxygen compound (( pK_a ) of acid HA)</th>
<th>Conjugate acid HA of oxygen compound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ketone</td>
<td></td>
<td>(-7)</td>
<td>( \overset{\ominus}{OH} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carboxylic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td>(-7)</td>
<td>( \overset{\ominus}{OH} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phenol</td>
<td></td>
<td>(-7)</td>
<td>( \overset{\ominus}{OH_2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carboxylic ester</td>
<td></td>
<td>(-5)</td>
<td>( \overset{\ominus}{OH} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
All the same factors of electron donation and withdrawal apply to oxygen compounds as well as to nitrogen compounds, but the effects are generally much less pronounced because oxygen is so electronegative. In fact, most oxygen compounds have $pK_a$'s around -7, the notable exception being the amide, which, because of the electron donation from the nitrogen atom, has a $pK_a$ around -0.5 (p. 201). They are all effectively nonbasic and strong acids are needed to protonate them.

$pK_a$ in action—the development of the drug cimetidine

The development of the anti-peptic ulcer drug cimetidine gives a fascinating insight into the important role of $pK_a$ in chemistry. Peptic ulcers are a localized erosion of the mucous membrane, resulting from overproduction of gastric acid in the stomach. One of the compounds that controls the production of the acid is histamine. (Histamine is also responsible for the symptoms of hay fever and allergies.)

Histamine works by binding into a receptor in the stomach lining and stimulating the production of acid. What the developers of cimetidine at SmithKline Beecham wanted was a drug that would bind to these receptors without activating them and thereby prevent histamine from binding but not stimulate acid secretion itself. Unfortunately, the antihistamine drugs successfully used in the treatment of hay fever did not work—a different histamine receptor was involved. Notice that cimetidine and histamine both have an imidazole ring in their structure. This is not coincidence—cimetidine’s design was centred around the structure of histamine.

In the body, most histamine exists as a salt, being protonated on the primary amine and the early compounds modelled this. The guanidine analogue was synthesized and tested to see if it had any antagonistic effect (that is, if it could bind in the histamine receptors and prevent histamine binding). It did bind but unfortunately it acted as an agonist rather than an antagonist and stimulated acid secretion rather than blocking it. Since the guanidine analogue has a $pK_a$ even greater than histamine (about 14.5 compared to about 10), it is effectively all protonated at physiological pH.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxygen compound</th>
<th>Oxygen compound (conjugate base A)</th>
<th>Approximate $pK_a$ of oxygen compound ($pK_a$ of acid HA)</th>
<th>Conjugate acid HA of oxygen compound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alcohol</td>
<td>$\text{R-O-H}$</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>$\text{H-R-O-H}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ether</td>
<td>$\text{R-O-R}$</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>$\text{H-R-O-R}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>$\text{HO-H}$</td>
<td>-1.74</td>
<td>$\text{H-O-H}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amide</td>
<td>$\text{R-\text{NR}_2}$</td>
<td>-0.5</td>
<td>$\text{OH-R-\text{NR}_2}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8.6 (continued)
The agonistic behaviour of the drug clearly had to be suppressed. The thought occurred to the SmithKline Beecham chemists that perhaps the positive charge made the compound agonistic, and so a polar but much less basic compound was sought. Eventually, they came up with burimamide. The most important change is the replacement of the C=NH in the guanidine compound by C=S. Now instead of a guanidine we have a thiourea which is much less basic. (Remember that amidines, p. 202, are very basic but that amides aren’t? The thiourea is like the amide in that the sulfur withdraws electrons from the nitrogens.) The other minor adjustments, increasing the chain length and adding the methyl group on the thiourea, further increased the efficacy.

The new compound was a fairly good antagonist (that is, bound in the receptors and blocked histamine) but more importantly shown no agonistic behaviour at all. The compound was such a breakthrough that it was given a name, ‘burimamide’, and even tested in man. Burimamide was good, but unfortunately not good enough—it couldn’t be given orally. A rethink was needed and this time attention was focused on the imidazole ring.

The pK_aH of the imidazole ring in burimamide is significantly greater than that in histamine: the longer alkyl group in burimamide is electron-donating and raises the pK_aH of the ring. In histamine, on the other hand, the positive charge of the protonated amine withdraws electrons and decreases the pK_aH. This means, of course, that there will be a greater proportion of protonated imidazole (imidazolium cation) in burimamide and this might hinder effective binding in the histamine receptor site. So the team set out to lower the pK_aH of the imidazole ring. It was known that a sulfur occupies just about the same space as a methylene group, –CH_2–, but is more electron-withdrawing. Hence ‘thiaburimamide’ was synthesized.

In turns out that one tautomer of the imidazole ring binds better than the other (and much better than the protonated form). The introduction of a methyl group on the ring was found to increase the proportion of this tautomer and did indeed improve binding to the histamine receptor, even though the pK_aH of the ring was raised because of the electron-donating character of the methyl group.
The new drug, metiamide, was ten times more effective than burimamide when tested in man. However, there was an unfortunate side-effect: in some patients, the drug caused a decrease in the number of white blood cells, leaving the patient open to infection. This was eventually traced back to the thiourea group. The sulfur had again to be replaced by oxygen, to give a normal urea and, just to see what would happen, by nitrogen to give another guanidine.

Neither was as effective as metiamide but the important discovery was that the new guanidine no longer showed the agonistic effects of the earlier guanidine. Of course, the guanidine would also be protonated so we had the same problem we had earlier—how to decrease the $pK_a$ of the guanidine. A section of this chapter considered the effect of electron-withdrawing groups on $pK_a$ and showed that they reduce the $pK_{aH}$ and make a base less basic. This was the approach now adopted—the introduction of electron-withdrawing groups on to the guanidine to lower its $pK_{aH}$. Table 8.7 shows the $pK_{aH}$s of various substituted guanidines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$pK_{aH}$s of substituted guanidines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$pK_{aH}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clearly, the cyano- and nitro-substituted guanidines would not be protonated at all. These were synthesized and found to be just as effective as metiamide but without the nasty side-effects. Of the two, the cyanoguanidine compound was slightly more effective and this was developed and named ‘cimetidine’.

The development of cimetidine by Smith, Kline, and French from the very start of the project up to its launch on the market took thirteen years. This enormous effort was well rewarded—Tagamet (the trade name of the drug cimetidine) became the best-selling drug in the world and the first to gross more than one billion dollars per annum. Thousands of ulcer patients worldwide no longer had to suffer pain, surgery, or even death. The development of cimetidine followed a rational approach based on physiological and chemical principles and it was for this that one of the scientists involved, Sir James Black, received a share of the 1988 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine. None of this would have been possible without an understanding of $pK_a$s.
1. If you wanted to separate a mixture of naphthalene, pyridine, and \( p \)-toluic acid, how would you go about it? All three compounds are insoluble in water.

2. In the separation of benzoic acid from toluene we suggested using NaOH solution. How concentrated a solution would be necessary to ensure that the pH was above the \( pK_a \) of benzoic acid (\( pK_a \approx 4.2 \))? How would you estimate how much solution to use?

3. What species would be present if you were to dissolve this hydroxy-acid in: (a) water at pH 7; (b) aqueous alkali at pH 12; or (c) a concentrated solution of a mineral acid?

4. What would you expect to be the site of (a) protonation and (b) deprotonation if the compounds below were treated with an appropriate acid or base. In each case suggest a suitable acid or base for both purposes.

5. Suggest what species would be formed by each of these combinations of reagents. You are advised to use \( pK_a \) values to help you and to beware of some cases where ‘no change’ might be the answer.

6. What is the relationship between these two molecules? Discuss the structure of the anion that would be formed by the deprotonation of each compound.

7. What species would be formed by treating this compound with: (a) one equivalent; (b) two equivalents of NaNH\(_2\) in liquid ammonia?

8. The carbon NMR spectra of these compounds could be run in D\(_2\)O under the conditions shown. Why were these conditions necessary and what spectrum would you expect to observe?

9. The phenols shown here have approximate \( pK_a \) values of 4, 7, 9, 10, and 11. Suggest with explanations which \( pK_a \) value belongs to which phenol.

10. Discuss the stabilization of the anions formed by the deprotonation of (a) and (b) and the cation formed by the protonation of (c). Consider delocalization in general and the possibility of aromaticity in particular.
11. The pKₐ values for the amino acid cysteine are 1.8, 8.3, and 10.8. Assign these pKₐ values to the functional groups in cysteine and draw the structure of the molecule in aqueous solution at the following pHs: 1, 5, 9, and 12.

12. Explain the variations in the pKₐ values for these carbon acids.

13. Explain the various pKₐ values for these derivatives of the naturally occurring amino acid glutamic acid. Say which pKₐ belongs to which functional group and explain why they vary in the different derivatives.

14. Neither of these methods of making pentan-1,4-diol will work. Explain why not—what will happen instead?
Using organometallic reagents to make C–C bonds

Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building on:</th>
<th>Arriving at:</th>
<th>Looking forward to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Electronegativity and the polarization of bonds ch4</td>
<td>• Organometallics: nucleophilic and often strongly basic</td>
<td>• More about organometallics ch10 &amp; ch48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Grignard reagents and organolithiums attack carbonyl groups ch6</td>
<td>• Making organometallics from halo-compounds</td>
<td>• More ways to make C–C bonds from C=O groups ch26–ch29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• C–H deprotonated by very strong bases ch8</td>
<td>• Making organometallics by deprotonating carbon atoms</td>
<td>• Synthesis of molecules ch 25 &amp; ch30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

In Chapters 2–8 we covered basic chemical concepts, which mostly fall under the headings ‘structure’ (Chapters 2–4 and 7) and ‘reactivity’ (Chapters 5, 6, and 8). These concepts are the bare bones supporting all of organic chemistry, and now we shall start to put flesh on these bare bones. In Chapters 9–23 we will tell you about the most important classes of organic reaction in more detail.

One of the things organic chemists do, for all sorts of reasons, is to make molecules. And making organic molecules means making C–C bonds. In this chapter we are going to look at one of the most important ways of making C–C bonds: using organometallics, such as organolithiums and Grignard reagents, and carbonyl compounds. We will consider reactions such as these.

The organometallic reagents act as nucleophiles towards the electrophilic carbonyl group, and this is the first thing we need to discuss: why are organometallics nucleophilic? We then move on to, firstly, how to make organometallics, then to the sort of electrophiles they will react with, and then finally to the sort of molecules we can make with them.

Organometallic compounds contain a carbon–metal bond

The polarity of a covalent bond between two different elements is determined by electronegativity. The more electronegative an element is, the more it attracts the electron density in the bond. So the
greater the difference between the electronegativities, the greater the difference between the attraction for the bonding electrons, and the more polarized the bond becomes. In the extreme case of complete polarization, the covalent bond ceases to exist and is replaced by electrostatic attraction between ions of opposite charge. We discussed this in Chapter 4 (p. 000), where we considered the extreme cases of bonding in NaF.

When we discussed (in Chapter 6) the electrophilic nature of carbonyl groups we saw that their reactivity is a direct consequence of the polarization of the carbon–oxygen bond towards the more electronegative oxygen, making the carbon a site for nucleophilic attack. In organolithium compounds and Grignard reagents the key bond bond is polarized in the opposite direction—towards carbon—making carbon a nucleophilic centre. This is true for most organometallics because, as you can see from this edited version of the periodic table, metals (such as Li, Mg, Na, K, Ca, and Al) all have lower electronegativity than carbon.

**Pauling electronegativities of selected elements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>H 2.2</th>
<th>B 2.0</th>
<th>C 2.5</th>
<th>N 3.04</th>
<th>O 3.5</th>
<th>F 4.0</th>
<th>Al 1.6</th>
<th>Si 1.9</th>
<th>P 2.2</th>
<th>S 2.6</th>
<th>Cl 3.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>Be</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Br</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The orbital diagram—the kind you met in Chapter 4—represents the C–Li bond in methyl-lithium in terms of a sum of the atomic orbitals of carbon and lithium. Remember that, the more
electronegative an atom is, the lower in energy its atomic orbitals are (p. 000). The filled C–Li σ orbital that arises is closer in energy to the carbon’s sp³ orbital than to the lithium’s 2s orbital, so we can say that the carbon’s sp³ orbital makes a greater contribution to the C–Li σ bond and that the C–Li bond has a larger coefficient on carbon. Reactions involving the filled σ orbital will therefore take place at C rather than Li. The same arguments hold for the C–Mg bond of Grignard reagents.

We can also say that, because the carbon’s sp³ orbital makes a greater contribution to the C–Li σ bond, the σ bond resembles a filled C sp³ orbital—in other words it resembles a lone pair on carbon. This is a useful idea because it allows us to think about the way in which methyl-lithium reacts—as though it were an ionic compound Me⁻Li⁺—and you may sometimes see MeLi or MeMgCl represented in mechanisms as Me⁻.

The true structure of organolithiums and Grignard reagents is rather more complicated!

Even though these organometallic compounds are extremely reactive with water and oxygen, and have to be handled under an atmosphere of nitrogen or argon, a number have been studied by X-ray crystallography in the solid state and by NMR in solution. It turns out that they generally form complex aggregates with two, four, six, or more molecules bonded together, often with solvent molecules. In this book we shall not be concerned with these details, and it will suffice always to represent organometallic compounds as simple monomeric structures.

Making organometallics

How to make Grignard reagents

Grignard reagents are made by reacting magnesium turnings with alkyl halides in ether solvents to form solutions of alkylmagnesium halide. Iodides, bromides, and chlorides can be used, as can both aryl and alkyl halides, though they cannot contain any functional groups that would react with the Grignard reagent once it is formed. Here are some examples.

You have already met cyanide (p. 000), a carbon nucleophile that really does have a lone pair on carbon. Cyanide’s lone pair is stabilized by being in a lower-energy sp orbital (rather than sp³) and by having the electronegative nitrogen atom triply bonded to the carbon.

Carbon atoms that carry a negative charge, for example Me⁻, are known as carbanions.

The reaction scheme is easy enough to draw, but what is the mechanism? Overall it involves an insertion of magnesium into the new carbon–halogen bond. There is also a change in oxidation state of the magnesium, from Mg(0) to Mg(II). The reaction is therefore known as an oxidative insertion or oxidative addition, and is a general process for many metals such as Mg, Li (which we meet shortly), Cu, and Zn.

The mechanism of the reaction is not completely understood but a possible (but probably not very accurate) way of writing the mechanism is shown here: the one thing that is certain is that the first interaction is between the metal and the halogen atom.

Making organometallics

How to make Grignard reagents

Grignard reagents are made by reacting magnesium turnings with alkyl halides in ether solvents to form solutions of alkylmagnesium halide. Iodides, bromides, and chlorides can be used, as can both aryl and alkyl halides, though they cannot contain any functional groups that would react with the Grignard reagent once it is formed. Here are some examples.

You have already met cyanide (p. 000), a carbon nucleophile that really does have a lone pair on carbon. Cyanide’s lone pair is stabilized by being in a lower-energy sp orbital (rather than sp³) and by having the electronegative nitrogen atom triply bonded to the carbon.

Carbon atoms that carry a negative charge, for example Me⁻, are known as carbanions.

The reaction scheme is easy enough to draw, but what is the mechanism? Overall it involves an insertion of magnesium into the new carbon–halogen bond. There is also a change in oxidation state of the magnesium, from Mg(0) to Mg(II). The reaction is therefore known as an oxidative insertion or oxidative addition, and is a general process for many metals such as Mg, Li (which we meet shortly), Cu, and Zn.

The mechanism of the reaction is not completely understood but a possible (but probably not very accurate) way of writing the mechanism is shown here: the one thing that is certain is that the first interaction is between the metal and the halogen atom.
The reaction takes place not in solution but on the surface of the metal, and how easy it is to make a Grignard reagent can depend on the state of the surface—how finely divided the metal is, for example. Magnesium is usually covered by a thin coating of magnesium oxide, and Grignard formation generally requires ‘initiation’ to allow the metal to come into contact with the alkyl halide. Initiation can be accomplished by adding a small amount of iodine or 1,2-diodoethane, or by using ultrasound to dislodge the oxide layer. The ether solvent is essential for Grignard formation because (1) ethers (unlike, say, alcohols or dichloromethane) will not react with Grignards and, more importantly, (2) only in ethers are Grignard reagents soluble. In Chapter 5 you saw how triethylamine forms a complex with the Lewis acid BF₃, and much the same happens when an ether meets a metal ion such as magnesium or lithium: the metals are Lewis-acidic because they have empty orbitals (2p in the case of Li and 3p in the case of Mg) that can accept the lone pair of the ether.

**How to make organolithium reagents**

Organolithium compounds may be made by a similar oxidative insertion reaction from lithium metal and alkyl halides. Each inserting reaction requires two atoms of lithium and generates one equivalent of lithium halide salt. As with Grignard formation, there is really very little limit on the types of organolithium that can be made this way.

![Diagram of organolithium reagents]

**Some Grignard and organolithium reagents are commercially available**

Most chemists (unless they were working on a very large scale) would not usually make the simpler organolithiums or Grignard reagents by these methods, but would buy them in bottles from chemical companies (who, of course, do use these methods). The table lists some of the most important commercially available organolithiums and Grignard reagents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commercially available organometallics</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methylolithium (MeLi)</td>
<td>methylmagnesium chloride, bromide, and iodide (MeMgX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-butyllithium (n-BuLi or just BuLi)</td>
<td>ethylmagnesium bromide (EtMgBr)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sec-butyllithium (sec-BuLi or s-BuLi)</td>
<td>butylmagnesium chloride (BuMgCl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tert-butyllithium ( tert-BuLi or t-BuLi)</td>
<td>allylmagnesium chloride and bromide (MgX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phenyllithium (PhLi)</td>
<td>phenylmagnesium chloride and bromide (PhMgCl or PhMgBr)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Organometallics as bases**

Organometallics need to be kept absolutely free of moisture—even moisture in the air will destroy them. The reason is that they react very rapidly and highly exothermically with water to produce
alkanes. Anything that can protonate them will do the same thing. If we represent these protonation reactions slightly differently, putting the products on the left and the starting materials (represented, just for effect, as ‘carbanions’) on the right, you can see that they are acid–base equilibria from the last chapter. The organometallic acts as a base, and is protonated to form its conjugate acid—methane or benzene in these cases.

\[
\text{Li}^+ \text{Me} + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{Me}^- + \text{Li}^+ \\
\text{BrMgBr} + \text{Ph} + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{Ph}^- + \text{Br}^+ + \text{Mg}^2+
\]

\[pK_a = 43 \]

\[pK_a = 48 \]

The equilibria lie vastly to the left: the \(pK_a\) values indicate that methane and benzene are extremely weak acids and that methylithium and phenylmagnesium bromide must therefore be extremely strong bases. Some of the most important uses of organolithiums—butyllithium, in particular—are as bases and, because they are so strong, they will deprotonate almost anything. That makes them very useful as reagents for making other organolithiums.

### Making organometallics by deprotonating alkynes

In Chapter 8 (p. 000) we talked about how hybridization affects acidity. Alkynes, with their C–H bonds formed from sp orbitals, are the most acidic of hydrocarbons, with \(pK_a\)s of about 25. They can be deprotonated by more basic organometallics such as butyllithium or ethylmagnesium bromide. Alkynes are sufficiently acidic to be deprotonated even by nitrogen bases, and another common way of deprotonating alkynes is to use NaNH (sodium amide), obtained by reacting sodium with liquid ammonia. An example of each is shown here: we have chosen to represent the alkynyllithium and alkynylmagnesium halide as organometallics and the alkynyl sodium as an ionic salt. Propyne and acetylene are gases, and can be bubbled through a solution of the base.

\[
\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}^- + \text{Li}^- \rightarrow \text{Li}^+ \text{CH}_2=\text{CH}^- \\
\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}^- + \text{Mg}^2+ \rightarrow \text{Mg}^2+ \text{CH}_2=\text{CH}^- \\
\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}^- + \text{Na}^+ \text{NH}_2^- \rightarrow \text{Na}^+ \text{CH}_2=\text{CH}^- + \text{NH}_3
\]

The metal derivatives of alkynes can be added to carbonyl electrophiles as in the following examples. The first (we have reminded you of the mechanism for this) is the initial step of an important synthesis of the antibiotic, erythronolide A, and the second is the penultimate step of a synthesis of the widespread natural product, farnesol.
Making organometallics by deprotonating aromatic rings: ortholithiation

Look at the reaction below: in some ways it is quite similar to the ones we have just been discussing. Butyllithium deprotonates an sp² hybridized carbon atom to give an aryllithium. It works because the protons attached to sp² carbons are more acidic than protons attached to sp³ carbons (though they are a lot less acidic than alkyne protons).

But there is another factor involved as well. There has to be a functional group containing oxygen (sometimes nitrogen) next to the proton to be removed. This functional group ‘guides’ the butyllithium, so that it attacks the adjacent protons. It does this by forming a complex with the Lewis-acidic lithium atom, much as ether solvents dissolve Grignard reagents by complexing their Lewis-acidic metal ions. This mechanism means that it is only the protons ortho to the functional group that can be removed, and the reaction is known as an ortholithiation.

The terms ortho, meta, and para were defined on p. 000.
The example below shows an organolithium formed by ortholithiation being used to make a new C–C bond. Here it is a nitrogen atom that directs attack of the butyllithium.

Ortholithiation is useful because the starting material does not need to contain a halogen atom. But it is much less general than the other ways we have told you about for making organolithiums, because there are rather tight restrictions on what sorts of groups the aromatic ring must carry.

Fredericamycin

Fredericamycin is a curious aromatic compound extracted in 1981 from the soil bacterium *Streptomyces griseus*. It is a powerful antibiotic and antitumour agent, and its structure is shown below. The first time it was made in the laboratory, in 1988, the chemists in Boston started their synthesis with three consecutive lithiation reactions: two are ortholithiations, and the third is slightly different. You needn’t be concerned about the reagents that react with the organolithiums; just look at the lithiation reactions themselves. In each one, an oxygen atom (colour-coded green) directs a strongly basic reagent to remove a nearby proton (colour-coded black). As it happens, none of the steps uses *n*-BuLi itself, but instead its more reactive cousins, sec-BuLi and tert-BuLi (see the table on p. 000). The third lithiation step uses a different kind of base, made by deprotonating an amine ($pK_a$ about 35). The yellow proton removed in this third lithiation is more acidic because it is next to an aromatic ring (p. 000).
## Halogen–metal exchange

Deprotonation is not the only way to use one simple organometallic reagent to generate another more useful one. Organolithiums can also remove halogen atoms from alkyl and aryl halides in a reaction known as halogen–metal exchange. Look at this example and you will immediately see why.

The bromine and the lithium simply swap places. As with many of these organometallic processes, the mechanism is not altogether clear, but can be represented as a nucleophilic attack on bromine by the butyllithium. But why does the reaction work? The key, again, is $pK_a$. The reaction works because the organolithium that is formed (phenyllithium, which protonated would give benzene, $pK_a$ about 43) is less basic (more stable) than the organolithium we started with (BuLi, which protonated would give butane, $pK_a$ about 50). The following reactions are also successful halogen–metal exchanges, and in each case the basicity of the organolithium decreases.

$$\text{Bu}^+\text{Li}^- + \text{BuBr} \rightarrow \text{Ph}^-\text{Li} + \text{Bu}^-\text{Br}$$

Iodides, bromides, and chlorides can all be used, but the reactions are fastest with iodides and bromides. In fact, halogen–metal exchange can be so fast that, at very low temperature (−100 °C and below), it is even occasionally possible to use compounds containing functional groups that would otherwise react with organolithiums, such as esters and nitro compounds.

---

**Fenarimol**

Fenarimol is a fungicide that works by inhibiting the fungus’s biosynthesis of important steroid molecules. It is made by reaction of a diarylketone with an organolithium derived by halogen–metal exchange.
Transmetallation

Organolithiums can be converted to other types of organometallic reagents by **transmetallation**—simply treating with the salt of a less electropositive metal. The more electropositive lithium goes into solution as an ionic salt, while the less electropositive metal (magnesium and cerium in these examples) takes over the alkyl group.

But why bother? Well, the high reactivity—and in particular the basicity—of organolithiums, which we have just been extolling, sometimes causes unwanted side-reactions. You saw in Chapter 8 that protons next to carbonyl groups are moderately acidic ($pK_a$ about 20), and because of this organolithiums occasionally act as bases towards carbonyl compounds instead of as nucleophiles. Organoceriums, for example, are rather less basic, and may give higher yields of the nucleophilic addition products than organolithiums or Grignard reagents.

Acidic protons were a major problem in several syntheses of the anticancer compounds, daunorubicin and adriamycin, which start with a nucleophilic addition to a ketone with a pair of particularly acidic protons. Organolithium and organomagnesium compounds remove these pro-
tons rather than add to the carbonyl group, so some Japanese chemists turned to organocerium compounds. They made ethynylcerium dichloride \((\text{HC}=\text{CCeCl}_2)\) by deprotonating acetylene, and then transmetallating with cerium trichloride. They found that it reacted with the ketone to give an 85% yield of the alcohol they wanted.

Using organometallics to make organic molecules

Now that you have met all of the most important ways of making organometallics (summarized here as a reminder), we shall move on to consider how to use them to make molecules: what sorts of electrophiles do they react with and what sorts of products can we expect to get from their reactions? Having told you how you can make other organometallics, we shall really be concerned for the rest of this chapter only with Grignard reagents and organolithiums. In nearly all of the cases we shall talk about, the two classes of organometallics can be used interchangeably.

- **Ways of making organometallics**
  - Oxidative insertion of Mg into alkyl halides
  - Oxidative insertion of Li into alkyl halides
  - Deprotonation of alkynes
  - Ortholithiation of functionalized benzene rings
  - Halogen-metal exchange
  - Transmetallation

Making carboxylic acids from organometallics and carbon dioxide

Carbon dioxide is a carbonyl compound, and it is an electrophile. It reacts slowly with water, for example, to form the unstable compound carbonic acid—you can think of this as a hydration reaction of a carbonyl group.
Carbon dioxide reacts with organolithiums and Grignard reagents to give carboxylate salts. Protonating the salt with acid gives a carboxylic acid with one more carbon atom than the starting organometallic. The reaction is usually done by adding solid CO₂ to a solution of the organolithium in THF or ether, but it can also be done using a stream of dry CO₂ gas.

The examples below show the three stages of the reaction: (1) forming the organometallic; (2) reaction with the electrophile (CO₂); and (3) the acidic work-up or quench, which protonates the product and destroys any unreacted organometallic left over at the end of the reaction. The three stages of the reaction have to be monitored carefully to make sure that each is finished before the next is begun—in particular it is absolutely essential that there is no water present during either of the first two stages—water must be added only at the end of the reaction, when the organometallic has all been consumed by reaction with the electrophile. You may occasionally see schemes written out without the quenching step included—but it is nonetheless always needed.

**Methicillin synthesis**

Methicillin is an important antibiotic compound because it works even against bacteria that have developed resistance to penicillin, whose structure is quite similar. It can be made from an acid obtained by reaction of carbon dioxide with an organolithium. In this case the organolithium is made by an ortholithiation reaction of a compound with two oxygen atoms that direct removal of the proton in between them.

**Making primary alcohols from organometallics and formaldehyde**

You met formaldehyde, the simplest aldehyde, in Chapter 6, where we discussed the difficulties of using it in anhydrous reactions: it is either hydrated or a polymer (paraformaldehyde, (CH₂O)ₙ) and, in order to get pure, dry formaldehyde, it is necessary to heat (‘crack’) the polymer to
decompose it. But formaldehyde is a remarkably useful reagent for making primary alcohols, in other words, alcohols that have just one carbon substituent attached to the hydroxy-bearing C atom. Just as carbon dioxide adds one carbon and makes an acid, formaldehyde adds one carbon and makes an alcohol.

In the next examples, formaldehyde makes a primary alcohol from two deprotonated alkynes. The second reaction here (for which we have shown organolithium formation, reaction, and quench simply as a series of three consecutive reagents) forms one of the last steps of the synthesis of *Cecropia* juvenile hormone whose structure you met right at the beginning of the chapter.

Secondary and tertiary alcohols: which organometallic, which aldehyde, which ketone?

Aldehydes and ketones react with Grignard or organolithium reagents to form secondary and tertiary alcohols, respectively, and some examples are shown with the general schemes here.
To make any secondary alcohol, however, there is often a choice of two possible routes, depending on which part of the molecule you choose to make the organometallic and which part you choose to make the aldehyde. For example, the first example here shows the synthesis of a secondary alcohol from isopropylmagnesium chloride and acetaldehyde. But it is equally possible to make this same secondary alcohol from isobutyraldehyde and methylithium or a methylmagnesium halide. Indeed, back in 1912, when this alcohol was first described in detail, the chemists who made it chose to start with acetaldehyde, while in 1983, when it was needed as a starting material for a synthesis, it was made from isobutyraldehyde. Which way is better? The 1983 chemists probably chose the isobutyraldehyde route because it gave a better yield. But, if you were making a secondary alcohol for the first time, you might just have to try both in the lab and see which one gave a better yield. Or you might be more concerned about which uses the cheaper, or more readily available, starting materials—this was probably behind the choice of methylmagnesium chloride and the unsaturated aldehyde in the second

Flexible alcohol synthesis

As an illustration of the flexibility available in making secondary alcohols, one synthesis of bongkrekic acid, a highly toxic compound that inhibits transport across certain membranes in the cell, required both of these (very similar) alcohols. The chemists making the compound at Harvard University chose to make each alcohol from quite different starting materials: an unsaturated aldehyde and an alkyn-containing organolithium in the first instance, and an alkyn-containing aldehyde and vinyl magnesium bromide in the second.
example. Both can be bought commercially, while the alternative route to this secondary alcohol would require a vinyllithium or vinylmagnesium bromide reagent that would have to be made from a vinyl halide, which is itself not commercially available, along with difficult-to-dry acetaldehyde.

With tertiary alcohols, there is even more choice. The last example in the box is a step in a synthesis of the natural product, nerolidol. But the chemists in Paris who made this tertiary alcohol could in principle have chosen any of these three routes.

three routes to a tertiary alcohol

Note we have dropped the aqueous quench step from these schemes to avoid cluttering them.

Only the reagents in orange are commercially available, but, as it happens, the green Grignard reagent can be made from an alkyl bromide, which is itself commercially available, making the route on the left the most reasonable.

Now, do not be dismayed! We are not expecting you to remember a chemical catalogue and to know which compounds you can buy and which you can’t. All we want you to appreciate at this stage is that there are usually two or three ways of making any given secondary or tertiary alcohol, and you should be able to suggest alternative combinations of aldehyde or ketone and Grignard reagent that will give the same product. You are not expected to be able to assess the relative merits of the different possible routes to a compound. That is a topic we leave for a much later chapter on retrosynthetic analysis, Chapter 30.

Ketones by oxidation of secondary alcohols

Tertiary alcohols can be made from ketones, and secondary ones from aldehydes, but we should now show you that ketones can be made from secondary alcohols by an oxidation reaction. There are lots of possible reagents, but a common one is an acidic solution of chromium trioxide. We will look in much more detail at oxidation later, when we will discuss the mechanism of the reaction, but for now take it from us that secondary alcohols give ketones on treatment with CrO₃. Note that you can’t oxidize tertiary alcohols (without breaking a C–C bond). The link between secondary alcohols and ketones means that the ketones needed for making tertiary alcohols can themselves ultimately be made by addition of organometallics to carbonyl compounds. Here, for example, is a sequence of reactions leading to a compound needed to make the drug viprostol.

Ketones

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Oxidation} & \quad \text{CrO}_3 \\
\text{R}^1 & \quad \text{R}^2 \\
\text{CHO} & \quad \text{R}^1 \text{R}^2
\end{align*}
\]
We finish this chapter with some brief words about the mechanism of the addition of organometallics to carbonyl compounds. The problem with this reaction is that no-one really knows precisely what happens during the addition reaction. We know what the organic products are because we can isolate them and look at them using NMR and other spectroscopic techniques. But what happens to the metal atoms during the reaction?

You will have noticed that we always write the addition reaction with the metal atom just falling off the organometallic as it reacts, and then appearing near to the anionic oxygen atom of the product. In other words, we have not been specific about what the metal atom is actually doing during the addition; in fact, we have been deliberately vague so as not to imply anything that may not be true. But there is one thing that is certain about this process, and before we discuss it we need to remind you of something we talked about in Chapter 6: the effect of acid on the addition of nucleophiles to carbonyl groups. We said that acid tends to catalyse addition reactions by protonating the carbonyl group, making it positively charged and therefore more electrophilic.

Now, of course, in our organometallic addition reactions we have no acid (H⁺) present, because that would destroy the organometallic reagent. But we do have Lewis-acidic metal atoms—Li or Mg—and these can play exactly the same role. They can coordinate to the carbonyl’s oxygen atom, giving the carbonyl group positive charge and therefore making it more electrophilic. In one possible version of the mechanism, a four-centred mechanism allows coordination of the magnesium to the oxygen while the nucleophilic carbon atom attacks the carbonyl group. The product ends up with a (covalent) Mg–O bond, but this is just another way of writing RO⁻MgBr⁺.

The four-centred mechanism is quite hard to visualize just with curly arrows: what they are saying is that the O–Mg interaction is forming at the same time as the new C–C bond, and that simultaneously the old C–Mg bond and C=O π bond are breaking. A neat way of representing all of this is to draw what we might see if we took a snapshot of the reaction halfway through, using dotted lines to represent the partially formed or partially broken bonds. It would look something like this, and such a snapshot is known as the transition state for the reaction.

An alternative possibility is that two molecules of the Grignard reagent are involved, and that the transition state is a six-membered ring. We are telling you all this not because we want to confuse you but because we want to be honest: there is genuine uncertainty about the mechanism, and this arises because, while it is easy to determine the products of a reaction using spectroscopy, it is much harder to determine mechanisms.

But, for one type of Grignard reagent, it is certain that the addition proceeds through a six-membered ring. Here is a reaction between an allylic Grignard reagent and a ketone. The product is a tertiary alcohol, but perhaps not the tertiary alcohol you would expect. The Grignard reagent appears to
have attached itself via the wrong carbon atom. We can explain this by a six-membered transition state, but one involving only one molecule of Grignard reagent.

Allylic Grignard reagents are unusual for more than one reason, and it turns out that they are, in fact, quite hard to make in good yield from allyl halides. The problem is that the allyl halide is highly reactive towards the Grignard reagent as it forms, and a major by-product tends to be a dimer. The way round this problem is to make the Grignard reagent actually in the presence of the carbonyl compound. This method works in a number of cases, not just with allylic Grignards, and is often called the Barbier method.

For example, it is a straightforward matter to make these three alcohols, provided the allylic halide, aldehyde, and magnesium are all mixed together in one flask. The Grignard reagent forms, and immediately reacts with the aldehyde, before it has a chance to dimerize. In the second example, notice again that the allylic Grignard reagent must have reacted through a six-membered transition state because the allyl system has 'turned around' in the product.

The last reaction above leads us nicely into the next chapter where we will look at an alternative way for such unsaturated aldehydes to react—by conjugate addition.

Problems

1. Propose mechanisms for the first four reactions in the chapter.
2. When this reaction is carried out with allyl bromide labelled as shown with $^{13}$C, the label is found equally distributed between the ends of the allyl system in the product. Explain how this is possible. How would you detect the $^{13}$C distribution in the product?

3. What products would be formed in these reactions?

4. Suggest alternative routes to fenarimol—that is, different routes from the one shown in the chapter.

5. The synthesis of the gastric antisecretory drug rioprostil requires this alcohol. (a) Suggest possible syntheses starting from ketones and organometallics and (b) suggest possible syntheses of the ketones in part (a) from aldehydes and organometallics (don’t forget about CrO₃ oxidation!).

6. Suggest two syntheses of the bee pheromone heptan-2-one.

7. How could you prepare these compounds using ortholithiation procedures?

8. Why is it possible to make the lithium derivative A by Br/Li exchange, but not the lithium derivative B?

9. Comment on the selectivity (that is, say what else might have happened and why it didn’t) shown in this Grignard addition reaction used in the manufacture of an antihistamine drug.

10. The antispasmodic drug biperidin is made by the Grignard addition reaction shown here. What is the structure of the drug? Do not be put off by the apparent complexity of the compounds—the chemistry is the same as that you have seen in this chapter. How would you suggest that the drug procyclidine should be made?

11. Though heterocyclic compounds, such as the nitrogen ring system in this question, are introduced rather later in this book, use your knowledge of Grignard chemistry to draw a mechanism for what happens here. It is important that you prove to yourself that you can draw mechanisms for reactions on compounds that you have never met before.
12. What product would be formed in this reaction between a chloro compound and a seven-membered ring ketone?
Conjugation changes the reactivity of carbonyl groups

To start this chapter, here are four reactions of the same ketone. For each product, the principal absorptions in the IR spectrum are listed. The pair of reactions on the left should come as no surprise to you: nucleophilic addition of cyanide or a Grignard reagent to the ketone produces a product with no C=O peak near 1700 cm\(^{-1}\), but instead an O–H peak at 3600 cm\(^{-1}\). The 2250 cm\(^{-1}\) peak is C≡N; C=C is at 1650 cm\(^{-1}\).

But what about the reactions on the right? Both products A and B have kept their carbonyl group (IR peak at 1710 cm\(^{-1}\)) but have lost the C=C. Yet A, at least, is definitely an addition product because it contains a C≡N peak at 2200 cm\(^{-1}\).

Well, the identities of A and B are revealed here: they are the products of addition, not to the carbonyl group, but to the C=C bond. This type of reaction is called conjugate addition, and is what this chapter is all about. The chapter will also explain how such small differences in reaction conditions (temperature, or the presence of CuCl) manage to change the outcome completely.

direct addition to the C=O group
Conjugate addition to the C=C double bond follows a similar course to direct addition to the C=O group, and the mechanisms for both are shown here. Both mechanisms have two steps: addition, followed by protonation. Conjugate additions only occur to C=C double bonds next to C=O groups. They don’t occur to C=C bonds that aren’t immediately adjacent to C=O (see the box on p. 000 for an example).

Compounds with double bonds adjacent to a C=O group are known as α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Many α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds have trivial names, and some are shown here. Some classes of α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds also have names such as ‘enone’ or ‘enal’, made up of ‘ene’ (for the double bond) + ‘one’ (for ketone) or ‘ene’ + ‘al’ (for aldehyde).

A range of nucleophiles will undergo conjugate additions with α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, and six examples are shown below. Note the range of nucleophiles, and also the range of carbonyl compounds: esters, aldehydes, acids, and ketones.
The reason that $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compounds react differently is conjugation, the phenomenon we discussed in Chapter 7. There we introduced you to the idea that bringing two $\pi$ systems (two C=C bonds, for example, or a C=C bond and a C=O bond) close together leads to a stabilizing interaction. It also leads to modified reactivity, because the $\pi$ bonds no longer react as independent functional groups but as a single, conjugated system.

**Termite self-defence and the reactivity of alkenes**

Soldier termites of the species *Schedorhinotermes lamanianus* defend their nests by producing this compound, which is very effective at taking part in conjugate addition reactions with thiols (RSH). This makes it highly toxic, since many important biochemicals carry SH groups. The worker termites of the same species—who build the nests—need to be able to avoid being caught in the crossfire, so they are equipped with an enzyme that allows them to reduce compound 1 to compound 2. This still has a double bond, but the double bond is completely unreactive towards nucleophiles because it is not conjugated with a carbonyl group. The workers escape unharmed.

**Alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups are polarized**

You haven’t met many reactions of alkenes yet; detailed discussion will have to wait till Chapter 20. But we did indicate in Chapter 5 that they react with electrophiles. Here is the example from p. 000: in the addition of HBr to isobutene the alkene acts as a nucleophile and H–Br as the electrophile.

$$\text{Me} = \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me}$$

This is quite different to the reactivity of a C=C double bond conjugated with a carbonyl group, which, as you have just seen, reacts with nucleophiles such as cyanide, amines, and alcohols. The conjugated system is different from the sum of the isolated parts, with the C=O group profoundly affecting the reactivity of the C=C double bond. To show why, we can use curly arrows to indicate delocalization of the $\pi$ electrons over the four atoms in the conjugated system. Both representations are extremes, and the true structure lies somewhere in between, but the polarized structure indicates why the conjugated C=C bond is electrophilic.

**Polarization is detectable spectroscopically**

IR spectroscopy provides us with evidence for polarization in C=C bonds conjugated to C=O bonds. An unconjugated ketone C=O absorbs at 1715 cm$^{-1}$ while an unconjugated alkene C=C absorbs...
(usually rather weakly) at about 1650 cm\(^{-1}\). Bringing these two groups into conjugation in an \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated carbonyl compound leads to two peaks at 1675 and 1615 cm\(^{-1}\), respectively, both quite strong. The lowering of the frequency of both peaks is consistent with a weakening of both \(\pi\) bonds (notice that the polarized structure has only single bonds where the C=O and C=C double bonds were). The increase in the \textit{intensity} of the C=C absorption is consistent with polarization brought about by conjugation with C=O: a conjugated C=C bond has a significantly larger dipole moment than its unconjugated cousins.

The polarization of the C=C bond is also evident in the \(^{13}\)C NMR spectrum, with the signal for the sp\(^2\) carbon atom furthest from the carbonyl group moving downfield relative to an unconjugated alkene to about 140 p.p.m., and the signal for the other double bond carbon atom staying at about 120 p.p.m.

![Diagram of molecular orbitals control conjugate additions](image)

**Molecular orbitals control conjugate additions**

We have spectroscopic evidence that a conjugated C=C bond is polarized, and we can explain this with curly arrows, but the actual bond-forming step must involve movement of electrons from the HOMO of the nucleophile to the LUMO of the unsaturated carbonyl compound. The example in the margin has methoxide (MeO\(^{-}\)) as the nucleophile.

But what does this LUMO look like? It will certainly be more complicated than the \(\pi^*\) LUMO of a simple carbonyl group. The nearest thing you have met so far (in Chapter 7) are the orbitals of butadiene (C=C conjugated with C=C), which we can compare with the \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated aldehyde acrolein (C=C conjugated with C=O). The orbitals in the \(\pi\) systems of butadiene and acrolein are shown here. They are different because acrolein’s orbitals are perturbed (distorted) by the oxygen atom (Chapter 4). You need not be concerned with exactly how the sizes of the orbitals are worked out, but for the moment just concentrate on the shape of the LUMO, the orbital that will accept electrons when a nucleophile attacks.

In acrolein, the HOMO is in fact not the highest filled \(\pi\) orbital you see here, but the lone pairs on oxygen. This is not important here, though, because we are only considering acrolein as an electrophile, so we are only interested in its LUMO.
that gives rise to the new bond. The second largest coefficient is on the C=O carbon atom, so it’s not surprising that some nucleophiles attack here as well—remember the example right at the beginning of the chapter where you saw cyanide attacking either the double bond or the carbonyl group depending on the conditions of the reaction. We shall next look at some conjugate additions with alcohols and amines as nucleophiles, before reconsidering the question of where the nucleophile attacks.

Ammonia and amines undergo conjugate addition

Amines are good nucleophiles for conjugate addition reactions, and give products that we can term β-amino carbonyl compounds (the new amino group is β to the carbonyl group). Dimethylamine is a gas at room temperature, and this reaction has to be carried out in a sealed system to give the ketone product.

This is the first conjugate addition mechanism we have shown you that involves a neutral nucleophile: as the nitrogen adds it becomes positively charged and therefore needs to lose a proton. We can use this proton to protonate the negatively charged part of the molecule as you have seen happening before. This proton-transfer step can alternatively be carried out by a base: in this addition of butylamine to an α,β-unsaturated ester (ethyl acrylate), the added base (EtO⁻) deprotonates the nitrogen atom once the amine has added. Only a catalytic amount is needed, because it is regenerated in the step that follows.

Ammonia itself, the simplest amine, is very volatile (it is a gas at room temperature, but a very water-soluble one, and bottles of ‘ammonia’ are actually a concentrated aqueous solution of ammonia), and the high temperatures required for conjugate addition to this unsaturated carboxylic acid can only be achieved in a sealed reaction vessel.
Amines are bases as well as nucleophiles, and in this reaction the first step must be deprotonation of the carboxylic acid: it’s the ammonium carboxylate that undergoes the addition reaction. You would not expect a negatively charged carboxylate to be a very good electrophile, and this may well be why ammonia needs 150 °C to react.

The β-amino carbonyl product of conjugate addition of an amine is still an amine and, provided it has a primary or secondary amino group, it can do a second conjugate addition. For example, methylamine adds successively to two molecules of this unsaturated ester.

Two successive conjugate additions can even happen in the same molecule. In the next example, hydroxylamine is the nucleophile. Hydroxylamine is both an amine and an alcohol, but it always reacts at nitrogen because nitrogen (being less electronegative than oxygen) has a higher-energy (more reactive) lone pair. Here it reacts with a cyclic dienone to produce a bicyclic ketone, which we have also drawn in a perspective view to give a better idea of its shape.

The reaction sequence consists of two conjugate addition reactions. The first is intermolecular, and gives the intermediate enone. The second conjugate addition is intramolecular, and turns the molecule into a bicyclic structure. Again, the most important steps are the C=N bond-forming reactions, but there are also several proton transfers that have to occur. We have shown a base ‘B’ carrying out these proton transfers: this might be a molecule of hydroxylamine, or it might be a molecule of the solvent, methanol. These details do not matter.
Conjugate addition of alcohols can be catalysed by acid or base

Alcohols undergo conjugate addition only very slowly in the absence of a catalyst: they are not such good nucleophiles as amines for the very reason we have just mentioned in connection with the reactivity of hydroxylamine—oxygen is more electronegative than nitrogen, and so its lone pairs are of lower energy and are therefore less reactive. Alkoxide anions are, however, much more nucleophilic. You saw methoxide attacking the orbitals of acrolein above: the reaction in the margin goes at less than 5 °C.

The alkoxide doesn’t have to be made first, though, because alcohols dissolved in basic solution are at least partly deprotonated to give alkoxide anions. How much alkoxide is present depends on the pH of the solution and therefore the pKₐ of the base (Chapter 8), but even a tiny amount is acceptable because once this has added it will be replaced by more alkoxide in acid–base equilibrium with the alcohol. In this example, allyl alcohol adds to pent-2-enal, catalysed by sodium hydroxide in the presence of a buffer.

Only a catalytic amount of base is required as the deprotonation of ROH (which can be water or allyl alcohol) in the last step regenerates more alkoxide or hydroxide. It does not matter that sodium hydroxide (pKₐH 15.7) is not basic enough to deprotonate an alcohol (pKₐ 16–17) completely, since only a small concentration of the reactive alkoxide is necessary for the reaction to proceed.

We can also make rings using alkoxide nucleophiles, and in this example the phenol (hydroxybenzene) is deprotonated by the sodium methoxide base to give a phenoxide anion. Intramolecular attack on the conjugated ketone gives the cyclic product in excellent yield. In this case, the methoxide (pKₐH about 16) will deprotonate the phenol (pKₐ about 10) completely, and competitive attack by MeO⁻ acting as a nucleophile is not a problem as intramolecular reactions are usually faster than their intermolecular equivalents.
Acid catalysts promote conjugate addition of alcohols to $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compounds by protonating the carbonyl group and making the conjugated system more electrophilic. Methanol adds to this ketone exceptionally well, for example, in the presence of an acid catalyst known as ‘Dowex 50’. This is an acidic resin—just about as acidic as sulfuric acid in fact, but completely insoluble, and therefore very easy to remove from the product at the end of the reaction by filtration.

Once the methanol has added to the protonated enone, all that remains is to reorganize the protons in the molecule to give the product. This takes a few steps, but don’t be put off by their complexity—as we’ve said before, the important step is the first one—the conjugate addition.

**Conjugate addition or direct addition to the carbonyl group?**

We have shown you several examples of conjugate additions using various nucleophiles and $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, but we haven’t yet addressed one important question. When do nucleophiles do conjugate addition (also called ‘1,4-addition’) and when do they add directly to the carbonyl group (‘1,2-addition’)? Several factors are involved—they are summarized here, and we will spend the next section of this chapter discussing them in turn.

**Reaction conditions**

The very first conjugate addition reaction in this chapter depended on the conditions of the reaction. Treating an enone with cyanide and an acid catalyst at low temperature gives a cyanohydrin by direct attack at C=O, while heating the reaction mixture leads to conjugate addition. What is going on?
We’ll consider the low-temperature reaction first. As you know from Chapter 6, it is quite normal for cyanide to react with a ketone under these conditions to form a cyanohydrin. Direct addition to the carbonyl group turns out to be faster than conjugate addition, so we end up with the cyanohydrin.

Now, you also know from Chapter 6 that cyanohydrin formation is reversible. Even if the equilibrium for cyanohydrin formation lies well over to the side of the products, at equilibrium there will still be a small amount of starting enone remaining. Most of the time, this enone will react to form more cyanohydrin and, as it does, some cyanohydrin will decompose back to enone plus cyanide—such is the nature of a dynamic equilibrium. But every now and then—at a much slower rate—the starting enone will undergo a conjugate addition with the cyanide. Now we have a different situation: conjugate addition is essentially an irreversible reaction, so once a molecule of enone has been converted to conjugate addition product, its fate is sealed: it cannot go back to enone again. Very slowly, therefore, the amount of conjugate addition product in the mixture will build up. In order for the enone–cyanohydrin equilibrium to be maintained, any enone that is converted to conjugate addition product will have to be replaced by reversion of cyanohydrin to enone plus cyanide. Even at room temperature, we can therefore expect the cyanohydrin to be converted bit by bit to conjugate addition product. This may take a very long time, but reaction rates are faster at higher temperatures, so at 80 °C this process does not take long at all and, after a few hours, the cyanohydrin has all been converted to conjugate addition product.

The contrast between the two products is this: cyanohydrin is formed faster than the conjugate addition product, but the conjugate addition product is the more stable compound.

Typically, kinetic control involves lower temperatures and shorter reaction times, which ensures that only the fastest reaction has the chance to occur. And, typically, thermodynamic control involves higher temperatures and long reaction times to ensure that even the slower reactions have a chance to occur, and all the material is converted to the most stable compound.

**Kinetic and thermodynamic control**

- The product that forms faster is called the **kinetic product**
- The product that is the more stable is called the **thermodynamic product**

Similarly,
- Conditions that give rise to the kinetic product are called **kinetic control**
- Conditions that give rise to the thermodynamic product are called **thermodynamic control**

Why is direct addition faster than conjugate addition? Well, although the carbon atom β to the C=O group carries some positive charge, the carbon atom of the carbonyl group carries more, and so electrostatic attraction for the charged nucleophiles will encourage it to attack the carbonyl group directly rather than undergo conjugate addition.

[Diagram showing the reaction mechanisms]
And why is the conjugate addition product the more stable? In the conjugate addition product, we gain a C–C σ bond, losing a C=O π bond, but keeping the C=O π bond. With direct addition, we still gain a C–C bond, but we lose the C=O π bond and keep the C=C π bond. C=O π bonds are stronger than C=C π bonds, so the conjugate addition product is the more stable.

We will return to kinetic and thermodynamic control in Chapter 13, where we will analyse the rates and energies involved a little more rigorously, but for now here is an example where conjugate addition is ensured by thermodynamic control. Note the temperature!

Structural factors

Not all additions to carbonyl groups are reversible: additions of organometallics, for example, are certainly not. In such cases, the site of nucleophilic attack is determined simply by reactivity: the more reactive the carbonyl group, the more direct addition to C=O will result. The most reactive carbonyl groups, as you will see in Chapter 12, are those that are not conjugated with O or N (as they are in esters and amides), and particularly reactive are acyl chlorides and aldehydes. In general, the proportion of direct addition to the carbonyl group follows the reactivity sequence in the margin.

Compare the way butyllithium adds to this α,β-unsaturated aldehyde and α,β-unsaturated amide. Both additions are irreversible, and BuLi attacks the reactive carbonyl group of the aldehyde, but prefers conjugate addition to the less reactive amide. Similarly, ammonia reacts with this acyl chloride to give an amide product that derives (for details see Chapter 12) from direct addition to the carbonyl group, while with the ester it undergoes conjugate addition to give an amine.

Sodium borohydride is a nucleophile that you have seen reducing simple aldehydes and ketones to alcohols, and it usually reacts with α,β-unsaturated aldehydes in a similar way, giving alcohols by direct addition to the carbonyl group.

Quite common with ketones, though, is the outcome on the right. The borohydride has reduced
not only the carbonyl group but the double bond as well. In fact, it’s the double bond that’s reduced first in a conjugate addition, followed by addition to the carbonyl group.

For esters and other less reactive carbonyl compounds conjugate addition is the only reaction that occurs.

Steric hindrance also has a role to play: the more substituents there are at the β carbon, the less likely a nucleophile is to attack there. Nonetheless, there are plenty of examples where nucleophiles undergo conjugate addition even to highly substituted carbon atoms.

The nature of the nucleophile: hard and soft

Among the best nucleophiles of all at doing conjugate addition are thiols, the sulfur analogues of alcohols. In this example, the nucleophile is thiophenol (phenol with the O replaced by S). Remarkably, no acid or base catalyst is needed (as it was with the alcohol additions), and the product is obtained in 94% yield under quite mild reaction conditions.

Why are thiols such good nucleophiles for conjugate additions? Well, to explain this, and why they are much less good at direct addition to the C=O group, we need to remind you of some ideas we introduced in Chapter 5. There we said that the attraction between nucleophiles and electrophiles is governed by two related interactions—electrostatic attraction between positive and negative charges and orbital overlap between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the electrophile. Successful reactions usually result from a combination of both, but sometimes reactivity can be dominated by one or the other. The dominant factor, be it electrostatic or orbital control, depends on the nucleophile and electrophile involved. Nucleophiles containing small, electronegative atoms (such as O or Cl) tend to react under predominantly electrostatic control, while nucleophiles containing larger atoms (including the sulfur of thiols, but also P, I, and Se) are predominantly subject to control by orbital overlap. The terms ‘hard’ and ‘soft’ have been coined to describe these two types of reagents. Hard nucleophiles are typically from the early rows of the periodic table and have higher charge density, while soft nucleophiles are from the later rows of the periodic table—they are either uncharged or have larger atoms with higher-energy, more diffuse orbitals.

Table 10.1 divides some nucleophiles into the two categories (plus some that lie in between)—but don’t try to learn it! Rather, convince yourself that the properties of each one justify its location in the table. Most of these nucleophiles you have not yet seen in action, and the most important ones at this stage are indicated in bold type.
Not only can nucleophiles be classified as hard or soft, but electrophiles can too. For example, $\text{H}^+$ is a very hard electrophile because it is small and charged, while $\text{Br}_2$ is a soft electrophile: its orbitals are diffuse and it is uncharged. You saw $\text{Br}_2$ reacting with an alkene earlier in the chapter, and we explained in Chapter 5 that this reaction happens solely because of orbital interactions: no charges are involved. The carbon atom of a carbonyl group is also a hard electrophile because it carries a partial positive charge due to polarization of the C=O bond. What is important to us is that, in general, hard nucleophiles prefer to react with hard electrophiles, and soft nucleophiles with soft electrophiles. So, for example, water (a hard nucleophile) reacts with aldehydes (hard electrophiles) to form hydrates in a reaction largely controlled by electrostatic attraction. On the other hand, water does not react with bromine (a soft electrophile). Yet bromine reacts with alkenes while water does not. Now this is only a very general principle, and you will find plenty of examples where hard reacts with soft and soft with hard. Nonetheless it is a useful concept, which we shall come back to later in the book.

**Hard/soft reactivity**

- Reactions of hard species are dominated by charges and electrostatic effects
- Reactions of soft species are dominated by orbital effects
- Hard nucleophiles tend to react well with hard electrophiles
- Soft nucleophiles tend to react well with soft electrophiles

What has all this to do with the conjugate addition of thiols? Well, an $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compound is unusual in that it has two electrophilic sites, one of which is hard and one of which is soft. The carbonyl group has a high partial charge on the carbonyl carbon and will tend to react with hard nucleophiles, such as organolithium and Grignard reagents, that have a high partial charge on the nucleophilic carbon atom. Conversely, the $\beta$ carbon of the $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl system does not have a high partial positive charge but is the site of the largest coefficient in the LUMO. This makes the $\beta$ carbon a soft electrophile and likely to react well with soft nucleophiles such as thiols.

**Hard/soft—direct/conjugate addition**

- Hard nucleophiles tend to react at the carbonyl carbon (hard) of an enone
- Soft nucleophiles tend to react at the $\beta$-carbon (soft) of an enone and lead to conjugate addition

### Anticancer drugs that work by conjugate addition of thiols

Drugs to combat cancer act on a range of biochemical pathways, but most commonly on processes that cancerous cells need to use to proliferate rapidly. One class attacks DNA polymerase, an enzyme needed to make the copy of DNA that has to be provided for each new cell. Helenalin and vernolepin are two such drugs, and if you look closely at their structure you should be able to spot two $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl groups in each. Biochemistry is just chemistry in very small flasks called cells, and the reaction between DNA polymerase and these drugs is simply a conjugate addition reaction between a thiol (the SH group of one of the enzyme’s cysteine residues) and the unsaturated carbonyl groups. The reaction is irreversible, and shuts down completely the function of the enzyme.
Copper(I) salts have a remarkable effect on organometallic reagents

Grignard reagents add directly to the carbonyl group of α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones to give allylic alcohols: you have seen several examples of this, and you can now explain it by saying that the hard Grignard reagent prefers to attack the harder C=O rather than the softer C=C electrophilic centre. Here is a further example—the addition of MeMgI to a cyclic ketone to give an allylic alcohol, plus, as it happens, some of a diene that arises from this alcohol by loss of water (dehydration). Below this example is the same reaction to which a very small amount (just 0.01 equivalents, that is, 1%) of copper(I) chloride has been added. The effect of the copper is dramatic: it makes the Grignard reagent undergo conjugate addition, with only a trace of the diene.

Organocopper reagents undergo conjugate addition

The copper works by transmetallating the Grignard reagent to give an organocopper reagent. Organocoppers are softer than Grignard reagents, and add in a conjugate fashion to the softer C=C double bond. Once the organocopper has added, the copper salt is available to transmetallate some more Grignard, and only a catalytic amount is required.

Organocoppers are softer than Grignard reagents because copper is less electropositive than magnesium, so the C–Cu bond is less polarized than the C–Mg bond, giving the carbon atom less of a partial negative charge. Electronegativities: Mg, 1.3; Cu, 1.9.

The organocopper is shown here as ‘Me–Cu’ because its precise structure is not known. But there are other organocopper reagents that also undergo conjugate addition and that are much better understood. The simplest result from the reaction of two equivalents of organolithium with one equivalent of a copper (I) salt such as CuBr in ether or THF solvent at low temperature. The lithium cuprates (R₂CuLi) that are formed are not stable and must be used immediately.

As with the organolithiums that we introduced in Chapter 9, the exact structure of these reagents is more complex than we imply here: they are probably tetramers (four molecules of R₂CuLi bound together), but for simplicity we will draw them as monomers.
The addition of lithium cuprates to \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated ketones turns out to be much better if trimethylsilyl chloride is added to the reaction—we will explain what this does shortly, but for the moment here are two examples of lithium cuprate additions.

The silicon works by reacting with the negatively charged intermediate in the conjugate addition reaction to give a product that decomposes to the carbonyl compound when water is added at the end of the reaction. Here is a possible mechanism for a reaction between \(\text{Bu}_2\text{CuLi}\) and an \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated ketone in the presence of \(\text{Me}_3\text{SiCl}\). The first step is familiar to you, but the second is a new reaction. Even so, following what we said in Chapter 5, it should not surprise you: the oxygen is clearly the nucleophile and the silicon the electrophile, and a new bond forms from O to Si as indicated by the arrow. The silicon-containing product is called a silyl enol ether, and we will come back to these compounds and their chemistry in more detail in later chapters.

**Conclusion**

We end with a summary of the factors controlling the two modes of addition to \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated carbonyl compounds, and by noting that conjugate addition will be back again—in Chapters 23 (where we consider electrophilic alkenes conjugated with groups other than C=O) and 29 (where the nucleophiles will be of a different class known as enolates).

---

**Summary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reaction conditions (for reversible additions):</th>
<th>Conjugate addition favoured by</th>
<th>Direct addition to C=O favoured by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structure of (\alpha,\beta)-unsaturated compound:</td>
<td>• thermodynamic control: high temperatures, long reaction times</td>
<td>• kinetic control: low temperatures, short reaction times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of nucleophile:</td>
<td>• unreactive C=O group (amide, ester)</td>
<td>• reactive C=O group group (aldehyde, acyl chloride)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organometallic:</td>
<td>• unhindered (\beta) carbon</td>
<td>• hindered (\beta) carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• soft nucleophiles</td>
<td>• hard nucleophiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• organocoppers or catalytic Cu(I)</td>
<td>• organolithiums, Grignard reagents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Problems

1. Draw mechanisms for this reaction and explain why this particular product is formed.

2. Which of the two routes shown here would actually lead to the product? Why?

3. Suggest reasons for the different outcomes of the following reactions (your answer must, of course, include a mechanism for each reaction).

4. Addition of dimethylamine to the unsaturated ester A could give either product B or C. Draw mechanisms for both reactions and show how you would distinguish them spectroscopically.

5. Suggest mechanisms for the following reactions.

6. Predict the product of these reactions.

7. Two routes are proposed for the preparation of this amino alcohol. Which do you think is more likely to succeed and why?

8. How would you prepare these compounds by conjugate addition?

9. How might this compound be made using a conjugate addition as one of the steps? You might find it helpful to consider the preparation of tertiary alcohols as described in Chapter 9 and also to refer back to Problem 1 in this chapter.

10. When we discussed reduction of cyclopentenone to cyclopentanol, we suggested that conjugate addition of borohydride must occur before direct addition of borohydride; in other words, this scheme must be followed.

What is the alternative scheme? Why is the scheme shown above definitely correct?
11. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. Why does conjugate addition occur rather than direct addition?

Why is the product shown as a cation? If it is indeed a salt, what is the anion?

12. How, by choice of reagent, would you make this reaction give the direct addition product (route A)? How would you make it give the conjugate addition product (route B)?
The differences between carbon and proton NMR

We used $^{13}$C NMR in Chapter 3 as part of a three-pronged attack on the problem of determining molecular structure. Important though these three prongs are, we were forced to confess at the end of Chapter 3 that we had delayed the most important technique of all—proton ($^1$H) NMR—until a later chapter because it is more complicated than $^{13}$C NMR. This is that delayed chapter and we must now tackle those complications. We hope you will see $^1$H NMR for the beautiful and powerful technique that it surely is. The difficulties are worth mastering for this is the chemist’s primary weapon in the battle to solve structures.

Proton NMR differs from $^{13}$C NMR in a number of ways.

- $^1$H is the major isotope of hydrogen (99.985% natural abundance), while $^{13}$C is only a minor isotope (1.1%)
- $^1$H NMR is quantitative: the area under the peak tells us the number of hydrogen nuclei, while $^{13}$C NMR may give strong or weak peaks from the same number of $^{13}$C nuclei
- Protons interact magnetically (‘couple’) to reveal the connectivity of the structure, while $^{13}$C is too rare for coupling between $^{13}$C nuclei to be seen
- $^1$H NMR shifts give a more reliable indication of the local chemistry than that given by $^{13}$C spectra

We shall examine each of these points in detail and build up a full understanding of proton NMR spectra. The other spectra remain important, of course.

Proton NMR spectra are recorded in the same way as $^{13}$C NMR spectra: radio waves are used to study the energy level differences of nuclei, but this time they are $^1$H and not $^{13}$C nuclei. Hydrogen nuclei have a nuclear spin...
of a half and so have two energy levels: they can be aligned either with or against the applied magnetic field.

The spectra look much the same: the scale runs from right to left and the zero point is given by the same reference compound though it is the proton resonance of Me₄Si rather than the carbon resonance that defines the zero point. You will notice at once that the scale is much smaller, ranging over only about 10 p.p.m. instead of the 200 p.p.m. needed for carbon. This is because the variation in the chemical shift is a measure of the shielding of the nucleus by the electrons around it. There is inevitably less change possible in the distribution of two electrons around a hydrogen nucleus than in that of the eight valence electrons around a carbon nucleus. Here is a simple ¹H NMR spectrum.

Integration tells us the number of hydrogen atoms in each peak

The chemical shift of the twelve hydrogen atoms of the four identical methyl groups in Me₄Si is defined as zero. The methyl group in the acid is next to the carbonyl group and so slightly deshielded at about δ 2.0 p.p.m. and the acidic proton itself is very deshielded at δ 11.2 p.p.m. The same factor that makes this proton acidic—the O–H bond is polarized towards oxygen—also makes it resonate at low field. So far things are much the same as in carbon NMR. Now for a difference. Notice that the ratio of the peak heights in this spectrum was about 3:1 and that is also the ratio of the number of protons. In fact, it’s not the peak height but the area under the peaks that is exactly proportional to the number of protons. Proton spectra are normally integrated, that is, the area under the peaks is computed and recorded as a line with steps corresponding to the area, like this.

Simply measuring the height of the steps with a ruler gives you the ratio of the numbers of protons represented by each peak. Knowing the atomic composition from the mass spectrum, we also know the distribution of protons of various kinds. Here the heights are 0.75 and 2.25 cm, a ratio of about 1:3. The compound is C₂H₄O₂ so, since there are 4 H atoms altogether, the peaks must contain 1 × H and 3 × H, respectively.

In the spectrum of 1,4-dimethoxybenzene, there are just two signals in the ratio of 3:2. This time the compound is C₈H₁₀O₂ so the true ratio must be 6:4. Assigning the spectrum requires the same attention to symmetry as in the case of ¹³C spectra.
In this next example it is easy to assign the spectrum simply by measuring the steps in the integral. There are two identical methyl groups (CMe₂) having 6 Hs, one methyl group by itself having 3 Hs, the OH proton (1 H), the CH₂ group next to the OH (2 Hs), and finally the CH₂CH₂ group between the oxygen atoms in the ring (4 Hs).

Proton NMR spectra are generally recorded in solution in deuterochloroform (CDCl₃)—that is, chloroform with the ¹H replaced by ²H. The proportionality of the size of the peak to the number of protons tells you why: if you ran a spectrum in CHCl₃, you would see a vast peak for all the solvent Hs because there would be much more solvent than the compound you wanted to look at. Using CDCl₃ cuts out all extraneous protons.

**Regions of the proton NMR spectrum**

The integration gives useful—indeed essential—information, but it is much more important to understand the reasons for the exact chemical shift of the different types of proton. In the last example you can see one marked similarity to carbon spectra: protons on saturated carbon atoms next to oxygen are shifted downfield to larger δ values (here 3.3 and 3.9 p.p.m.). The other regions of the proton NMR spectrum are also quite similar in general outline to those of ¹³C spectra. Here they are.
These regions hold for protons attached to C; protons attached to O or N can come almost anywhere on the spectrum. Even for C–H signals, the regions are approximate and overlap quite a lot. You should use the chart as a basic guide, but you will need a more detailed understanding of proton chemical shifts than you did for $^{13}$C chemical shifts. To achieve this understanding, we now need to examine each class of proton in more detail and examine the reasons for particular shifts. It is important that you grasp these reasons. An alternative is to learn all the chemical shifts off by heart (not recommended).

Protons on saturated carbon atoms

Chemical shifts are related to the electronegativity of substituents

We shall start with protons on saturated carbon atoms. If you study Table 11.1 you will see that the protons in a methyl group are shifted more and more as the atom attached to them gets more electronegative.

When we are dealing with simple atoms as substituents, these effects are straightforward and more or less additive. If we go on adding electronegative chlorine atoms to a carbon atom, electron density is progressively removed from it and the carbon nucleus and the hydrogen atoms attached to it are progressively deshielded.

Proton chemical shifts tell us about chemistry

The truth is that shifts and electronegativity are not perfectly correlated. The key property is indeed electron withdrawal but it is the electron-withdrawing power of the whole substituent in comparison with the carbon and hydrogen atoms in the CH skeleton that matters. Methyl groups joined to the same element, say, nitrogen, may have very different shifts if the substituent is an amino group ($\text{CH}_3\text{–NH}_2$ has $\delta_H$ for the CH group = 2.41 p.p.m.) or a nitro group ($\text{CH}_3\text{–NO}_2$ has $\delta_H$ 4.33 p.p.m.). A nitro group is much more electron-withdrawing than an amino group.

What we need is a quick guide rather than some detailed correlations, and the simplest is this: all functional groups except very electron-withdrawing ones shift methyl groups from 1 p.p.m. (where you find them if they are not attached to a functional group) downfield to about 2 p.p.m. Very electron-withdrawing groups shift methyl groups to about 3 p.p.m.
Rather than trying to fit these data to some atomic property, even such a useful one as electronegativity, we should rather see these shifts as a useful measure of the electron-withdrawing power of the group in question. The NMR spectra are telling us about the chemistry. Among the largest shifts possible for a methyl group is that caused by the nitro group, 3.43 p.p.m., at least twice the size of the shift for a carbonyl group. This gives us our first hint of some important chemistry: one nitro group is worth two carbonyl groups when you need electron withdrawal. You have already seen that electron withdrawal and acidity are related (Chapter 8) and in later chapters you will see that we can correlate the anion-stabilizing power of groups like carbonyl, nitro, and sulfone with proton NMR.

Methyl groups give us information about the structure of molecules

It sounds rather unlikely that the humble methyl group could tell us much that is important about molecular structure—but just you wait. We shall look at four simple compounds and their NMR spectra—just the methyl groups, that is. The first two are the acid chlorides on the right.

The first compound shows just one methyl signal containing 9 Hs at δ_H 1.10 p.p.m.. This tells us two things. All the protons in each methyl group are the same; and all three methyl groups in the tertiary butyl (t-butyl, or Me_3C–) group are the same. This is because rotation about C–C single bonds, both about the CH_3–C bond and about the (CH_3)_3C–C bond, is fast. Though at any one instant the hydrogen atoms in one methyl group, or the methyl groups in the t-butyl group, may differ, on average they are the same. The time-averaging process is fast rotation about a σ bond. The second compound shows two 3H signals, one at 1.99 and one at 2.17 p.p.m.. Now rotation is slow—indeed the C=C double bond does not rotate at all and so the two methyl groups are different. One is on the same side of the alkene as (or ‘cis to’) the –COCl group while the other is on the opposite side (or ‘trans’).

The second pair of compounds contain the CHO group. One is a simple aldehyde, the other an amide of formic acid: it is DMF, dimethylformamide. The first has two sorts of methyl group: a 3H signal at δ_H 1.81 p.p.m. for the SMe group and a 6H signal for the CMe_2 group. The two methyl groups in the 6H signal are the same, again because of fast rotation about a C–C σ bond.

The second compound also has two methyl signals, at 2.89 and 2.98 p.p.m., each 3H, and these are the two methyl groups on nitrogen. Restricted rotation about the N–CO bond must be making the two Me groups different. You will remember from Chapter 7 (p. 000) that the N–CO amide bond has considerable double bond character because of conjugation: the lone pair electrons on nitrogen are delocalized into the carbonyl group.
Chemical shifts of \(\text{CH}_2\) groups

Shifts of the same order of magnitude occur for protons on \(\text{CH}_2\) groups and the proton on \(\text{CH}\) groups, but with the added complication that \(\text{CH}_2\) groups have two other substituents and \(\text{CH}\) groups three. A \(\text{CH}_2\) (methylene) group resonates at 1.3 p.p.m., about 0.4 p.p.m. further downfield than a comparable \(\text{CH}_3\) group (0.9 p.p.m.), and a \(\text{CH}\) (methine) group resonates at 1.7 p.p.m., another 0.4 p.p.m. downfield. Replacing each hydrogen atom in the \(\text{CH}_3\) group by a carbon atom causes a small downfield shift as carbon is slightly more electronegative (C 2.5 p.p.m.; H 2.2 p.p.m.) than hydrogen and therefore shields less effectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical shifts of protons in CH, CH(_2), and CH(_3) groups with no nearby electron-withdrawing groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CH group</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 p.p.m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The benzyl group (PhCH\(_2\)–) is very important in organic chemistry. It occurs naturally in the amino acid phenylalanine, which you met in Chapter 2. Phenylalanine has its CH\(_2\) signal at 3.0 p.p.m. and is moved downfield from 1.3 p.p.m. mostly by the benzene ring.

Amino acids are often protected as the ‘Cbz’ derivatives (Carboxybenzyl) by reaction with an acid chloride.

Here is a simple example together with the NMR spectrum of the product. Now the CH\(_2\) group has gone further downfield to 5.1 p.p.m. as it is next to both oxygen and phenyl.

Like double bonds, cage structures prevent bond rotation, and can make the two protons of a CH\(_2\) group appear different. There are many flavouring compounds from herbs that have structures like this. In the example here—myrtenal, from the myrtle bush—there is a four-membered ring bridged across a six-membered ring. The CH\(_2\) group...
on the bridge has two different hydrogen atoms—one is over a methyl group and the other is over the enal system. No rotation of any bonds in the cage is possible, so these hydrogens are always different and resonate at different frequencies (1.04 and 2.49 p.p.m.). The methyl groups on the other bridge are also different for the same reason.

**Chemical shifts of CH groups**

A CH group in the middle of a carbon skeleton resonates at about 1.7 p.p.m.—another 0.4 p.p.m. downfield from a CH₂ group. It can have up to three substituents and these will cause further downfield shifts of about the same amount as we have already seen for CH₃ and CH₂ groups. Here are three examples from nature: nicotine, the compound in tobacco that causes the craving (though not the death, which is doled out instead by the carbon monoxide and tars in the smoke), has one hydrogen atom trapped between a simple tertiary amine and an aromatic ring at 3.24 p.p.m. Lactic acid has a CH proton at 4.3 p.p.m.. You could estimate this with reasonable accuracy by taking 1.7 (for the CH) and adding 1.0 (for C=O) plus 2.0 (for OH) = 4.7 p.p.m. Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) has two CHs. One at 4.05 p.p.m. is next to an OH group (estimate 1.7 + 2.0 for OH = 3.7 p.p.m.) and one next to a double bond and an oxygen atom at 4.52 p.p.m. (estimate 1.7 + 1 for double bond + 2 for OH = 4.7 p.p.m.).

An interesting case is the amino acid phenylalanine whose CH₂ group we looked at a moment ago. It also has a CH group between the amino and the carboxylic acid groups. If we record the ¹H NMR spectrum in D₂O, either in basic (NaOD) or acidic (DCl) solutions we see a large shift of that CH group. In basic solution the CH resonates at 3.60 p.p.m. and in acidic solution at 4.35 p.p.m. There is a double effect here: CO₂H and NH₃⁺ are both more electron-withdrawing than CO₂⁻ and NH₂ so both move the CH group downfield.

**Your simple guide to chemical shifts**

We suggest you start with a very simple (and therefore oversimplified) picture, which should be the basis for any further refinements. Start methyl groups at 0.9, methyl- enes (CH₃) at 1.3, and methines (CH) at 1.7 p.p.m. Any functional group is worth a one p.p.m. downfield shift except oxygen and halogen which are worth two p.p.m. This diagram summarizes the basic position.
This is a very rough and ready guide and you can make it slightly more accurate by adding subdivisions at 1.5 and 2.5 p.p.m. and including the very electron-withdrawing groups (nitro, ester, fluoro), which shift by 3 p.p.m. This gives us the summary chart on this page, which we suggest you use as a reference.

**Summary chart of proton NMR shifts**

values to be added to 0.9 for CH₃, 1.3 for CH₂ or 1.7 for CH
Answers deduced from this chart won’t be very accurate but will give a good guide. Remember—these shifts are additive. Take a simple example, the ketoester below. There are just three signals and the integration alone distinguishes the two methyl groups from the CH₂ group. One methyl has been shifted from 0.9 p.p.m. by about 1 p.p.m., the other by more than 2 p.p.m. The first must be next to C=O and the second next to oxygen. More precisely, 2.14 p.p.m. is a shift of 1.24 p.p.m. from our standard value (0.9 p.p.m.) for a methyl group, about what we expect for a methyl ketone, while 3.61 p.p.m. is a shift of 2.71 p.p.m., close to the expected 3.0 p.p.m. for an ester joined through the oxygen atom. The CH₂ group is next to an ester and a ketone carbonyl group and so we expect it at 1.3 + 1.0 + 1.0 = 3.3 p.p.m., an accurate estimate, as it happens. We shall return to these estimates when we look at spectra of unknown compounds.

The alkene region and the benzene region

In $^{13}$C NMR, one region was enough for both of these, but see how different things are with proton NMR.

The two carbon signals are almost the same (1.3 p.p.m. difference < 1% of the total 200 p.p.m. scale) but the proton signals are very different (1.6 p.p.m. difference = 16% of the 10 p.p.m. scale). There must be a fundamental reason for this.

The benzene ring current causes large shifts for aromatic protons

A simple alkene has an area of low electron density in the plane of the molecule because the $\pi$ orbital has a node there, and the carbons and hydrogen nuclei lying in the plane gain no shielding from the $\pi$ electrons.

The benzene ring looks similar at first sight, and the plane of the molecule is indeed a node for all the $\pi$ orbitals. However, benzene is ‘aromatic’—it has extra stability because the six $\pi$ electrons fit into three very stable orbitals and are delocalized round the whole ring.

The applied field sets up a ring current in these delocalized electrons that produces a local field rather like the field produced by the electrons around a nucleus. Inside the benzene ring, the induced field opposes the applied field but, outside the ring, it reinforces the applied field. The carbon atoms are in the ring itself and experience neither effect, but the hydrogens are outside the ring, feel a stronger applied field, and appear less shielded.

The alkene region and the benzene region
Uneven electron distribution in aromatic rings

The NMR spectrum of this simple aromatic amine has three peaks in the ratio 1:2:2 which must be 3H:6H:6H. The 6.38 p.p.m. signal clearly belongs to the protons round the benzene ring, but why are they at 6.38 and not at 7.27 p.p.m.? We must also distinguish the two methyl groups at 2.28 p.p.m. from those at 2.89 p.p.m. The chart on p. 000 suggests that these should both be at about 2.4 p.p.m., close enough to 2.28 p.p.m. but not to 2.89 p.p.m. The solution to both these puzzles is the distribution of electrons in the aromatic ring. Nitrogen feeds electrons into the \( \pi \) system making it electron-rich: the ring protons are more shielded and the nitrogen atom becomes positively charged and its methyl groups more deshielded. The peak at 2.89 p.p.m. belongs to the NMe2 group.

Other groups, such as simple alkyl groups, hardly perturb the aromatic system at all and it is quite common for all five protons in an alkyl benzene to appear as one signal instead of the three we might expect. Here is an example with some nonaromatic protons too: there is another on p. 000—the Cbz-protected amino acid.
The five protons on the aromatic ring all have the same chemical shift. The OCH₃ group is typical of a methyl ester (the chart on p. 000 gives 3.9 p.p.m.). One CH₂ group is between two carbonyl groups (cf. δ 3.35 p.p.m. for the similar CH₂ group on p. 000). The other is next to an ester and a benzene ring: we calculate 1.3 + 1.5 + 3.0 = 5.8 p.p.m. for that—reasonably close to the observed 5.19 p.p.m.

How electron donation and withdrawal change chemical shifts

We can get an idea of the effect of electron distribution by looking at a series of 1,4-disubstituted benzenes. This pattern makes all the remaining hydrogens in the ring the same. The compounds are listed in order of chemical shift: largest shift (lowest field) first. Benzene itself resonates at 7.27 p.p.m. Conjugation is shown by the usual curly arrows, and inductive effects by a straight arrow by the side of the group. Only one effect and one hydrogen atom are shown; in fact, both groups exert the same effect on all four identical hydrogen atoms.

**electron-withdrawing groups**

The largest shifts come from groups that withdraw electrons by conjugation. Nitro is the most powerful—this should not surprise you as we saw the same in nonaromatic compounds both in $^{13}$C and $^1$H NMR spectra. Then come the carbonyl groups and nitrile followed by the few groups showing simple inductive withdrawal. CF₃ is an important example of this kind of group—three fluorine atoms combine to exert a powerful effect.

**electron-donating and -withdrawing groups**

Conjugation, as discussed in Chapters 7 and 10, is felt through π bonds, while inductive effects are the effects of electron withdrawal or donation felt simply by polarization of the σ bonds of the molecule. See p. 000.
In the middle, around the position of benzene itself at $\delta$ 7.27 p.p.m., come the halogens whose inductive electron withdrawal and lone pair donation are nearly balanced.

**electron-donating groups**

Alkyl groups are weak inductive donors and at the smallest shift we have the groups that, on balance, donate electrons to the ring and increase the shielding at the carbon atoms. Amino is the best of these. So a nitrogen-based functional group (NO$_2$) is the best electron withdrawer while another (NH$_2$) is the best electron donor.

As far as the donors with lone pairs are concerned, two factors are important—the size of the lone pairs and the electronegativity of the element. If we look at the four halides (central box above) the lone pairs are in 2p(F), 3p(Cl), 4p(Br), and 5p(I) orbitals. In all cases the orbitals on the benzene ring are 2p so the fluorine orbital is of the right size and the others too large. Even though fluorine is the most electronegative, it is still the best donor.

Now comparing the groups in the first row of the p block elements. F, OH, NH$_2$, all have lone pairs in 2p orbitals so electronegativity is the only variable. As you would expect, the most electronegative element, F, is now the weakest donor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Electronegativity</th>
<th>$\delta_{HS}$, p.p.m.</th>
<th>Shift from 7.27</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>-0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>6.59</td>
<td>-0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>6.35</td>
<td>-0.92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Electron-rich and electron-deficient alkenes**

The same sort of thing happens with alkenes. We’ll concentrate on cyclohexene so as to make a good comparison with benzene. The six identical protons of benzene resonate at 7.27 p.p.m.; the two identical alkene protons of cyclohexene resonate at 5.68 p.p.m. A conjugating and electron-withdrawing group such as a ketone removes electrons from the double bond as expected—but unequally. The proton nearer the C=O group is only slightly downfield from cyclohexene but the more distant one is over 1 p.p.m. downfield. The curly arrows show the electron distribution, which we can deduce from the NMR spectrum.

Oxygen as a conjugating electron donor is even more dramatic. It shifts the proton nearer to it downfield by the inductive effect but pushes the more distant proton upfield again by a whole p.p.m. by donating electrons. The separation between the two protons is nearly two p.p.m.

For both types of substituent, the effects are more marked on the more distant (β) proton. If these shifts reflect the true electron distribution, we can deduce that nucleophiles will attack the electron-deficient site in the nitroalkene, while electrophiles will be attacked by the electron-rich sites in silyl enol ethers and enamines. These are all important reagents and do indeed react as we predict, as you will see in later chapters. Look at the difference—there are nearly 3 p.p.m. between the nitro compound and the enamine!
Structural information from the alkene region

Alkene protons on different carbon atoms can obviously be different if the carbon atoms themselves are different and we have just seen examples of that. Alkene protons can also be different if they are on the same carbon atom. All that is necessary is that the substituents at the other end of the double bond should themselves be different. The silyl enol ether and the unsaturated ester below both fit into this category. The protons on the double bond must be different, because each is cis to a different group. The third compound is an interesting case: the different shifts of the two protons on the ring prove that the N–Cl bond is at an angle to the C=N bond. If it were in line, the two hydrogens would be identical. The other side of the C=N bond is occupied by a lone pair and the nitrogen atom is trigonal (sp² hybridized).

DMF is similar: as we saw earlier (p. 000), it has two different methyl groups because of the double bond.

The aldehyde region: unsaturated carbon bonded to oxygen

The aldehyde proton is unique. It is directly attached to a carbonyl group—one of the most electron-withdrawing groups that exists—and is very deshielded, resonating with the largest shifts of any CH protons in the 9–10 p.p.m. region. The examples below are all compounds that we have met before. Two are just simple aldehydes—aromatic and aliphatic. The third is the solvent DMF. ItsCHO proton is less deshielded than most—the amide delocalization that feeds electrons into the carbonyl group provides some extra shielding.

Aliphatic is a catch-all term for compounds that are not aromatic.

Conjugation with an oxygen atom has much the same effect—formate esters resonate at about 8 p.p.m.—but conjugation with π bonds does not. The simple conjugated aldehyde below and myrtenal both have CHO protons in the normal region (9–10 p.p.m.).
Two other types of protons resonate in this region: some aromatic protons and some protons attached to heteroatoms like OH and NH. The first of these will provide our discussion on structural information and the second will be the subject of the section following that discussion.

**Structural information from the aldehyde region**

Protons on double bonds, even very electron-deficient double bonds like those of nitroalkenes, hardly get into the aldehyde region. However, some benzene rings with very electron-withdrawing groups do manage it because of the extra downfield shift of the ring current, so beware of nitrobenzenes as they may have signals in the 8–9 p.p.m. region.

More important molecules with signals in this region are the aromatic heterocycles such as pyridine, which you met in Chapter 7. The NMR shifts clearly show that pyridine is aromatic and we discussed its basicity in Chapter 8. One proton is at 7.1 p.p.m., essentially the same as benzene, but the others are more downfield and one, at C2, is in the aldehyde region. This is not because pyridine is ‘more aromatic’ than benzene but because nitrogen is more electronegative than carbon. Position C2 is like an aldehyde—a proton attached to sp$^2$ C bearing a heteroatom—while C4 is electron-deficient by conjugation (the electronegative nitrogen is electron-withdrawing). Isoquinoline is a pyridine and a benzene ring fused together and has a proton even further downfield at 9.1 p.p.m.—this is an imine proton that experiences the ring current of the benzene ring.

**Protons on heteroatoms are more variable than protons on carbon**

Protons directly attached to O, N, or S (or any other heteroatom, but these are the most important) also have signals in the NMR spectrum. We have avoided them so far because the positions of these signals are less reliable and because they are affected by exchange.

In Chapter 3 we looked at the $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of BHT. Its proton NMR is very simple, consisting of just four lines with integrals 2, 1, 3, and 18. The chemical shifts of the $t$-butyl group, the methyl group on the benzene ring, and the two identical aromatic protons should cause you no surprise. What is left, the 1H signal at 5.0 p.p.m., must be the OH. Earlier on in this chapter we saw the spectrum of acetic acid CH$_3$CO$_2$H, which showed an OH resonance at 11.2 p.p.m. Simple alcohols such as $t$-butanol have OH signals in CDCl$_3$ (the usual NMR solvent) at around 2 p.p.m. Why such differences?
This is a matter of acidity. The more acidic a proton is—that is, the more easily it releases H⁺ (this is the definition of acidity from Chapter 8)—the more the OH bond is polarized towards oxygen. The more the RO–H bond is polarized, the closer we are to free H⁺, which would have no shielding electrons at all, and so the further the proton goes downfield. The OH chemical shifts and the acidity of the OH group are very roughly related.

Thiols (RSH) behave in a similar way to alcohols but are not so deshielded, as you would expect from the smaller electronegativity of sulfur (phenols are all about 5.0 p.p.m., PhSH is at 3.41 p.p.m.). Alkane thiols appear at about 2 p.p.m. and arylthiols at about 4 p.p.m. Amines and amides show a big variation, as you would expect for the variety of functional groups involved, and are summarized below. Amides are slightly acidic, as you saw in Chapter 8, and amide protons resonate at quite low fields. Pyrroles are special—the aromaticity of the ring makes the NH proton unusually acidic and they appear at about 10 p.p.m.

### Chemical shifts of NH protons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Alkyl</th>
<th>Aryl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>δNH (p.p.m.)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Alkyl</th>
<th>Aryl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>δNH (p.p.m.)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exchange of acidic protons is revealed in proton NMR spectra

Compounds with very polar groups often dissolve best in water. NMR spectra are usually run in CDCl₃, but heavy water, D₂O, is an excellent NMR solvent. Here are some results in that medium.

### Functional groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional group</th>
<th>ROH</th>
<th>Phenol</th>
<th>Carboxylic acid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pKₐ</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δ(OH), p.p.m.</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>&gt;10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EDTA is ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid, an important complexing agent for metals. This is the salt formed with just two equivalents of ammonia.
Glycine is expected to exist as a zwitterion (Chapter 8, p. 000). It has a 2H signal for the CH$_2$ between the two functional groups, which would do for either form. The 3H signal at 4.90 p.p.m. might suggest the NH$_3^+$ group, but wait a moment before making up your mind. The aminothiol salt has the CMe$_2$ and CH$_2$ groups about where we would expect them, but the SH and NH$_3^+$ protons appear as one 4H signal. The double salt of EDTA has several curious features. The two CH$_2$ groups in the middle are fine, but the other four CH$_2$ groups all appear identical as do all the protons on both the CO$_2$H and NH$_3^+$ groups.

The best clue to why this is so involves the chemical shifts of the OH, NH, and SH protons in these molecules. They are all the same within experimental error: 4.90 p.p.m. for glycine, 4.80 p.p.m. for the aminothiol, and 4.84 p.p.m. for EDTA. They all correspond to the same species: HOD. Exchange between XH (where X = O, N, or S) protons is extremely fast, and the solvent, D$_2$O, supplies a vast excess of exchangeable deuteriums. These immediately replace all the OH, NH, and SH protons in the molecules with D, forming HOD in the process. Recall that we do not see signals for deuterium atoms (that’s why deuterated solvents are used). They have their own spectra at a different frequency.

The same sort of exchange between OH or NH protons with each other or with traces of water in the sample means that the OH and NH peaks in most spectra in CDCl$_3$ are rather broader than the peaks for CH protons.

Two questions remain. First, can we tell whether glycine is a zwitterion in water or not? Not really: the spectra fit either or an equilibrium between both. Other evidence leads us to prefer the zwitterion in water. Second, why are all four CH$_2$CO groups in EDTA the same? This we can answer. As well as the equilibrium exchanging the CO$_2$H protons with the solvent, there will be an equally fast equilibrium exchanging protons between CO$_2$H and CO$_2$D. This makes all four ‘arms’ of EDTA the same.

You should leave this section with an important chemical principle firmly established in your mind.

**Protons exchange fast**

Proton exchange between heteroatoms, particularly O, N, and S, is a *very fast* process in comparison with other chemical reactions, and often leads to averaged peaks in the $^1$H NMR spectrum.

You will need this insight as you study organic mechanisms.

### Coupling in the proton NMR spectrum

**Nearby hydrogen nuclei interact and give multiple peaks**

So far proton NMR has been not unlike carbon NMR on a smaller scale. However, we have yet to discuss the real strength of proton NMR, something more important than chemical shifts and
something that allows us to look not just at individual atoms but also at the way the C–H skeleton is joined together. This is the result of the interaction between nearby protons known as coupling.

An example we could have chosen in the last section is the nucleic acid component, cytosine, which has exchanging NH$_2$ and NH protons giving a peak for HDO at 4.5 p.p.m. We didn’t choose this example because the other two peaks would have puzzled you. Instead of giving just one line each, they give two lines each—doublets as you will learn to call them—and it is time to discuss the origin of this ‘coupling’.

You might have expected a spectrum like that of the heterocycle below, which is also a pyrimidine. It too has exchanging NH$_2$ protons and two protons on the heterocyclic ring. But these two protons give the expected two lines instead of the four lines in the cytosine spectrum. It is easy to assign the spectrum: proton H$^A$ is attached to an aldehyde-like C=N and so comes at lowest field. The proton H$^X$ is ortho to two electron-donating NH$_2$ groups and so comes at high field for an aromatic proton (p. 000). These protons do not couple with each other because they are too far apart. They are separated by five bonds whereas the ring protons in cytosine are separated by just three bonds.

Understanding this phenomenon is so important that we are going to explain it in three different ways—you choose which appeals to you most. Each method offers a different insight.

The pyrimidine spectrum has two single lines (singlets we shall call them from now on) because each proton, H$^A$ or H$^X$, can be aligned either with or against the applied magnetic field. The cytosine spectrum is different because each proton, say, H$^A$, is near enough to experience the small magnetic field of the other proton H$^X$ as well as the field of the magnet itself. The diagram shows the result.
If each proton interacted only with the applied field we would get two singlets. But proton H^A actually experiences two slightly different fields: the applied field plus the field of H^X or the applied field minus the field of H^X. H^X acts either to increase or to decrease the field experienced by H^A. The position of a resonance depends on the field experienced by the proton so these two situations give rise to two slightly different peak—a doublet as we shall call it. And whatever happens to H^A happens to H^X as well, so the spectrum has two doublets, one for each proton. Each couples with the other. The field of a proton is a very small indeed in comparison with the field of the magnet and the separation between the lines of a doublet is very small. We shall discuss the size of the coupling later (p. 000).

The second explanation takes into account the energy levels of the nucleus. In Chapter 4, when we discussed chemical bonds, we imagined electronic energy levels on neighbouring atoms interacting with each other and splitting to produce new molecular energy levels, some higher in energy and some lower in energy than the original atomic energy levels. When hydrogen nuclei are near each other in a molecule, the nuclear energy levels also interact and split and produce new energy levels. If a single hydrogen nucleus interacts with a magnetic field, we have the picture on p. 000 of this chapter: there are two energy levels as the nucleus can be aligned with or against the applied magnetic field, there is one energy jump possible, and there is a resonance at one frequency. This you have now seen many times and it can be summarized as shown below.
The spectrum of the pyrimidine on p. 000 showed two protons each independently in this situation. Each had two energy levels, each gave a singlet, and there were two lines in the spectrum. But, in the cytosine molecule, each proton has another hydrogen nucleus nearby and there are now four energy levels. Each nucleus $H^A$ and $H^X$ can be aligned with or against the applied field. There is one most stable energy level where they are both aligned with the field and one least stable level where they are both aligned against. In between there are two different energy levels in which one nucleus is aligned with the field and one against. Exciting $H^A$ from alignment with to alignment against the applied field can be done in two slightly different ways, shown as $A_1$ and $A_2$ on the diagram. The result is two resonances very close together in the spectrum.

### energy levels for two interacting nuclei $H^A$ and $H^X$

- **$A_1$:** energy required to excite $A$ with $X$ but against $B_0$.
- **$A_2$:** energy required to excite $A$ with $X$ but against $B_0$.
- **$X_1$:** energy required to excite $X$ against $A$ and against $B_0$.
- **$X_2$:** energy required to excite $X$ with $A$ but against $B_0$.

Please notice carefully that we cannot have this discussion about $H^A$ without discussing $H^X$ in the same way. If there are two slightly different energy jumps to excite $H^A$, there must also be two slightly different energy jumps to excite $H^X$. The difference between $A_1$ and $A_2$ is exactly the same as the difference between $X_1$ and $X_2$. Each proton now gives two lines (a doublet) in the NMR spectrum and the splitting of the two doublets is exactly the same. We describe this situation as *coupling*. We say 'A and X are coupled' or 'X is coupled to A'(and vice versa, of course). We shall be using this language from now on and so must you.

Now look back at the spectrum of cytosine at the beginning of this section. You can see the two doublets, one for each of the protons on the aromatic ring. Each is split by the same amount (this is easy to check with a ruler) and the separation of the lines is the *coupling constant* and is called $J$. In this case $J = 4$ Hz. Why do we measure $J$ in hertz and not in p.p.m.? We measure chemical shifts in p.p.m. because we get the same number regardless of the rating of the NMR machine in MHz. We measure $J$ in Hz because we also get the same number regardless of the machine.
Now for the third way to describe coupling. If you look again at what the spectrum would be like without interaction between $H^A$ and $H^X$ you would see this, with the chemical shift of each proton clearly obvious.

But you don’t see this because each proton couples with the other and splits its signal by an equal amount either side of the true chemical shift.

The true spectrum has a pair of doublets each split by an identical amount. Note that no line appears at the true chemical shift, but it is easy to measure the chemical shift by taking the midpoint of the doublet.
So this spectrum would be described as $\delta_H$ 7.5 (1H, d, $J$ 4 Hz, HA) and 5.8 (1H, d, $J$ 4 Hz, HX). The main number gives the chemical shift in p.p.m. and then, in brackets, comes the integration as the number of Hs, the shape of the signal (here ‘d’ for doublet), the size of coupling constants in Hz, and the assignment, usually related to a diagram. The integration refers to the combined integral of both peaks in the doublet. If the doublet is exactly symmetrical, each peak integrates to half a proton. The combined signal, however complicated, integrates to the right number of protons.

We have described these protons as A and X with a purpose in mind. A spectrum of two equal doublets is called an **AX spectrum**. A is always the proton you are discussing and X is a proton with a very different chemical shift. The alphabet is used as a ruler: nearby protons (on the chemical shift scale—not necessarily nearby in the structure!) are called B, C, etc. and distant ones are called X, Y, etc. You will see the reason for this soon.

If there are more protons involved, the splitting process continues. Here is the NMR spectrum of a famous perfumery compound supposed to have the smell of ‘green leaf lilac’. The compound is an acetal with five nearly identical aromatic protons at the normal benzene position (7.2–7.3 p.p.m.) and six protons on two identical OMe groups.

It is the remaining three protons that interest us. They appear as a 2H doublet at 2.9 p.p.m. and a 1H triplet at 4.6 p.p.m. In NMR talk, **triplet** means three equally spaced lines in the ratio 1:2:1. The triplet arises from the three possible states of the two identical protons in the CH$_2$ group.

If one proton H$^A$ interacts with two protons H$^X$, it can experience three states of proton H$^X$. Both protons H$^X$ can be aligned with the magnet or both against. These states will increase or decrease the applied field just as before. But if one proton H$^X$ is aligned with, and one against the applied field, there is no net change to the field experienced by H$^A$ and there are two possibilities for this (see diagram). We therefore see a signal of double intensity for H$^A$ at the correct chemical shift, one signal at higher field and one at lower field. In other words, a 1:2:1 triplet.
We could look at this result by our other methods too. There is one way in which both nuclei can be aligned with and one way in which both can be aligned against the applied field, but two ways in which they can be aligned one with and one against. Proton $H^A$ interacts with each of these states. The result is a 1:2:1 triplet.
Using our third way to see how the triplet arises, we can look at the splitting as it happens.

If there are more protons involved, we continue to get more complex systems, but the intensities can all be deduced simply from Pascal’s triangle, which gives the coefficients in a binomial expansion. If you are unfamiliar with this simple device, here it is.

You can read off from the triangle what pattern you may expect when a proton is coupled to \( n \) equivalent neighbours. There are always \( n+1 \) peaks with the intensities shown by the triangle. So far, you’ve seen 1:1 doublets (line 2 of the triangle) from coupling to 1 proton, and 1:2:1 triplets (line 3) from coupling to 2. You will often meet ethyl groups (CH₃–CH₂X) where the CH₂ group appears as a 1:3:3:1 quartet and the methyl group as a 1:2:1 triplet and isopropyl groups (CH₃)₂CHX where the methyl groups appear as a 6H doublet and the CH group as a septuplet. The outside lines of a septuplet are so weak (1/20th of the middle line) that it is often mistaken for a quintet. Inspection of the integral should put you on the right track.

Here is a simple example, the four-membered cyclic ether oxetane. Its NMR spectrum has a 4H triplet for the two identical CH₂ groups next to oxygen and a 2H quintet for the CH₂ in the middle. Each proton H^X ‘sees’ four identical neighbours (H^A) and is split equally by them all to give a
1:4:6:4:1 quintet. Each proton $H^A$ ‘sees’ two identical neighbours $H^X$ and is split into a 1:2:1 triplet. The combined integral of all the lines in the quintet together is 2 and of all the lines in the triplet is 4.

A slightly more complicated example is the diethyl acetal below. It has a simple AX pair of doublets for the two protons on the ‘backbone’ (red and green) and a typical ethyl group (2H quartet and 3H triplet). An ethyl group is attached to only one substituent through its CH$_2$ group, so the chemical shift of that CH$_2$ group tells us what it is joined to. Here the peak at 3.76 p.p.m. can only be an OEt group. There are, of course, two identical CH$_2$ groups in this molecule.

So far, we have seen situations where a proton has several neighbours, but the coupling constants to all the neighbours have been the same. What happens when coupling constants differ? Chrysanthemic acid, the structural heart of the natural pyrethrin insecticides, gives an example of the simplest situation—where a proton has two different neighbours.
This is an interesting three-membered ring compound produced by pyrethrum flowers (Chapter 1). It has a carboxylic acid, an alkene, and two methyl groups on the three-membered ring. Proton $H^A$ has two neighbours, $H^X$ and $H^M$. The coupling constant to $H^X$ is 8 Hz, and that to $H^M$ is 5.5 Hz. The splitting pattern looks like this.

### Abbreviations used for style of signal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>singlet</td>
<td>might be ‘broad’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>doublet</td>
<td>equal in height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>triplet</td>
<td>should be 1:2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>quartet</td>
<td>should be 1:3:3:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| dt           | double triplet | other combinations too, such as dd, dq, tq...
| m            | multiplet | avoid if possible but sometimes necessary to describe complicated signals |

The result is four lines of equal intensity called a double doublet (or sometimes a doublet of doublets), abbreviation dd. The smaller coupling constant can be read off from the separation between lines 1 and 2 or between lines 3 and 4, while the larger coupling constant is between lines 1 and 3 or between lines 2 and 4. You could see this as an imperfect triplet where the second coupling is too small to bring the central lines together; alternatively, look at a triplet as a special case of a double doublet where the two couplings are identical.

### Coupling is a through bond effect

Neighbouring nuclei might interact through space or through the electrons in the bonds. We know that coupling is in fact a ‘through bond effect’ because of the way coupling constants vary with the shape of the molecule. The most important case occurs when the protons are at either end of a double bond. If the two hydrogens are cis, the coupling constant $J$ is typically about 10 Hz but, if they are trans, $J$ is much larger, usually 15–18 Hz. These two chloro acids are good examples.

If coupling were through space, the nearer cis hydrogens would have the larger $J$. In fact, coupling occurs through the bonds and the more perfect parallel alignment of the orbitals in the trans compound provides better communication and a larger $J$.

Coupling is at least as helpful as chemical shift in assigning spectra. When we said that the protons on cyclohexone had the chemical shifts shown, how did we know? It was coupling that told us the answer. The proton next to the carbonyl group has one neighbour and appears as a doublet with $J = 11$ Hz, just right for a proton on a double bond with a cis neighbour. The proton at the other end appears as a double triplet. Inside each triplet the separation of the lines is 4 Hz and the two triplets are 11 Hz apart. This means the following diagrammatically.

For the same reason—orbital overlap—this anti arrangement of substituents is also preferred in chemical reactions such as elimination (Chapter 19) and fragmentation (Chapter 38).
This is what happens when a proton couples to different groups of protons with different coupling constants. Many different coupling patterns are possible, many can be interpreted, but others cannot. However, machines with high field magnets make the interpretation easier. As a demonstration, let us turn back to the bee alarm pheromone that we met in Chapter 3. An old 90 MHz NMR spectrum of this compound looks like this.

![Spectrum](image)

You can see the singlet for the isolated black methyl group and just about make out the triplets for the green CH₂ group next to the ketone (C3) at about 2.5 p.p.m. and for the orange methyl group at 0.9 p.p.m. (C7) though this is rather broad. The rest is frankly a mess. Now see what happens when the spectrum is run on a more modern 500 MHz spectrometer.

![Spectrum](image)

Notice first of all that the chemical shifts have not changed. However, all the peaks have closed up. This is because \( J \) stays the same in Hz and the 7 Hz coupling for the methyl group triplet was \( 7/90 = 0.07 \) p.p.m. at 90 MHz but is \( 7/500 = 0.014 \) p.p.m. at 500 MHz. In the high field spectrum you can easily see the singlet and the two triplets but you can also see a clear quintet for the red CH₂ group at C4, which couples to both neighbouring CH₂ groups with the same \( J \) (7 Hz). Only the two CH₂ groups at C5 and C6 are not resolved. However, this does not matter as we know they are there from the coupling pattern. The triplet for the orange methyl group at C7 shows that it is next to a CH₂ group, and the quintet for the CH₂ group at C4 shows that it is next to two CH₂ groups. We know about one of them, at C5, so we can infer the other at C6.
Coupling constants depend on three factors

In heptanone all the coupling constants were about the same but in cyclohexenone they were quite different. What determines the size of the coupling constant? There are three factors.

- Through bond distance between the protons
- Angle between the two C–H bonds
- Electronegative substituents

The coupling constants we have seen so far are all between hydrogen atoms on neighbouring carbon atoms. The coupling is through three bonds (H–C–C–H) and is designated $^3J_{HH}$. These coupling constants $^3J_{HH}$ are usually about 7 Hz in an open-chain, freely rotating system such as we have in heptanone. The C–H bonds vary little in length but the C–C bond might be a single or a double bond. In cyclohexenone it is a double bond, significantly shorter than a single bond. Couplings ($^3J_{HH}$) across double bonds are usually larger than 7 Hz (11 Hz in cyclohexenone). $^3J_{HH}$ couplings are called vicinal couplings because the protons concerned are on neighbouring carbon atoms.

Something else is different too: in an open-chain system we have a time average of all rotational conformations. Across a double bond there is no rotation and the angle between the two C–H bonds is fixed because they are in the same plane. In the plane of the alkene, the C–H bonds are either at 60° (cis) or at 180° (trans) to each other. Coupling constants in benzene rings are slightly less than those across cis alkenes because the bond is longer (bond order 1.5 rather than 2).

$^3J_{HH}$ coupling constants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>benzene ring</th>
<th>cis alkene</th>
<th>trans alkene</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>single bond</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longer bond</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(0.5 π bond)</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>free rotation</th>
<th>$J = 7$ Hz</th>
<th>$J = 8$–10 Hz</th>
<th>$J = 10$–12 Hz</th>
<th>$J = 14$–18 Hz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60° angle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180° angle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In naphthalenes, there are unequal bond lengths around the two rings. The bond between the two rings is the shortest, and the lengths of the others are shown. Coupling across the shorter bond (8 Hz) is significantly stronger than coupling across the longer bond (6.5 Hz).

The effect of the third factor, electronegativity, is easily seen in the comparison between ordinary alkenes and enol ethers. We are going to compare two series of compounds with a cis or a trans double bond. One series has a phenyl group at one end of the alkene and the other has an OPh group. Within each box, that is for either series, the trans coupling is larger than the cis, as you would now expect. But if you compare the two series, the enol ethers have much smaller coupling constants. The trans coupling for the enol ethers is only just larger than the cis coupling for the alkenes. The electronegative oxygen atom is withdrawing electrons from the C–H bond in the enol ethers and weakening communication through the bonds.

Effect of electronegative substituents on $^3J_{HH} –$ alkenes and enol ethers

**Alkenes**

- $^3J_{cis} = 11.5$ Hz
- $^3J_{trans} = 16.0$ Hz

**Enol ethers**

- $^3J_{cis} = 6.0$ Hz
- $^3J_{trans} = 12.0$ Hz
Another good example is the coupling found in pyridines. Though the bond order is actually slightly less between C3 and C4, the coupling constants are about normal for an aromatic ring (compare naphthalene above), while coupling constants across C2 and C3, nearer to the electronegative nitrogen, are smaller.

When the through bond distance gets longer, coupling is not usually seen. To put it another way, four-bond coupling $J_{HH}$ is usually zero. However, it is seen in some special cases, the most important being meta coupling in aromatic rings and allylic coupling in alkenes. In both, the orbitals between the two hydrogen atoms can line up in a zig-zag fashion to maximize interaction. This arrangement looks rather like a letter ‘W’ and this sort of coupling is called W-coupling. Even with this advantage, values of $J_{HH}$ are usually small, about 1–3 Hz.

Meta coupling is very common when there is ortho coupling as well, but here is an example where there is no ortho coupling because none of the aromatic protons have immediate neighbours—the only coupling is meta coupling. There are two identical HAs, which have one meta neighbour and appear as a 2H doublet. Proton HX between the two MeO groups has two identical meta neighbours and so appears as a 1H triplet. The coupling is small ($J \sim 2.5$ Hz).

We have already seen a molecule with allylic coupling. We discussed in some detail why cyclohexenone has a double triplet for H3. But it also has a less obvious double triplet for H2. The triplet coupling is less obvious because $J$ is small (about 2 Hz) because it is $J_{HH}$—allylic coupling to the CH2 group at C4. Here is a diagram of the coupling, which you should compare with the earlier one for cyclohexenone.

**Coupling between similar protons**

We have already seen that identical protons do not couple with each other. The three protons in a methyl group may couple to some other protons, but never couple with each other. They are an $A_3$ system. Identical neighbours do not couple either. In the para-disubstituted benzenes we saw on p. 000, all the protons on the aromatic rings were singlets.
We have also seen how two different protons forming an AX system give two separate doublets. Now we need to see what happens to protons in between these two extremes. What happens to two similar neighbours? Do the two doublets of the AX system suddenly collapse to the singlet of the A2 system? You have probably guessed that they do not. The transition is gradual. Suppose we have two different neighbours on an aromatic ring. The spectra show what we see.

The critical factor is how the difference between the chemical shifts of the two protons (Δδ) compares with the size of the coupling constant (J) for the machine in question. If Δδ is much larger than J there is no distortion: if, say, Δδ is 4 p.p.m. at 250 MHz (= 1000 Hz) and the coupling constant is a normal 7 Hz, then this condition is fulfilled and we have an AX spectrum of two 1:1 doublets. As Δδ approaches J in size, so the inner lines of the two doublets increase and the outer lines decrease until, when Δδ is zero, the outer lines vanish away altogether and we are left with the two superimposed inner lines—a singlet or an A2 spectrum. You can see this progression in the diagram.
We call the last stages, where the distortion is great but the protons are still different, an **AB spectrum** because you cannot really talk about H^A without also talking about H^B. The two inner lines may be closer than the gap between the doublets, or the four lines may all be equally spaced. Two versions of an AB spectrum are shown in the diagram—there are many more variations.

It is a generally useful tip that a distorted doublet 'points' towards the protons with which it is coupled.

Or, to put it another way, the AB system is ‘roofed’ with the usual arrangement of low walls and a high middle to the roof. Look out for doublets (or any other coupled signals) of this kind.

We shall end this section with a final example illustrating *para*-disubstituted benzenes and roofing as well as an ABX system and an isopropyl group.

The aromatic ring protons form a pair of distorted doublets (2H each) showing that the compound is a *para*-disubstituted benzene. Then the alkene protons form the AB part of an ABX spectrum. They are coupled to each other with a large (*trans*) \( J = 16 \text{ Hz} \) and one is also coupled to another distant proton. The large doublets are distorted (AB) but the small doublets within the right-hand half of the AB system are equal in height. The distant proton X is part of an *i*-Pr group and is coupled to H^B and the six identical methyl protons. Both \( J \)s are nearly the same so it is split by seven protons and is an octuplet. It looks like a sextuplet because the intensity ratios of the lines in an octuplet would be 1:7:21:35:35:21:7:1 (from Pascal’s triangle) and it is hardly surprising that the outside lines disappear.

**Coupling can occur between protons on the same carbon atom**

We have seen cases where protons on the same carbon atom are different: compounds with an alkene unsubstituted at one end. If these protons are different (and they are certainly near to each other), then they should couple. They do, but in this case the coupling constant is usually very small. Here you see the example we met on p. 000.
The small 1.4 Hz coupling is a $^{2}J_{JJ}$ coupling between two protons on the same carbon that are different because there is no rotation about the double bond. $^{2}J_{JJ}$ coupling is called geminal coupling.

This means that a monosubstituted alkene will have very characteristic signals for the three protons on the double bond. The three different coupling constants are very different so that this ABX system is unusually clear.

Here is an example of such a vinyl compound, ethyl acrylate (ethyl propenoate, a monomer for the formation of acrylic polymers). The spectrum looks rather complex at first, but it is easy to sort out using the coupling constants.

The largest $J$ (16 Hz) is obviously between X and B (trans coupling), the medium $J$ (10 Hz) is between X and A (cis coupling), and the small $J$ (4 Hz) must be between A and B (geminal). This assigns all the protons: A, 5.80 p.p.m.; B, 6.40 p.p.m.; X, 6.11 p.p.m. Rather surprisingly, X comes between A and B in chemical shift. Assignments based on coupling are more reliable than those based on chemical shift alone.

An enol ether type of vinyl group is present in ethyl vinyl ether, a reagent used for the protection of alcohols. This time all the coupling constants are smaller because of the electronegativity of the oxygen atom, which is now joined directly to the double bond.

It is still a simple matter to assign the protons of the vinyl group because couplings of 13, 7, and 2 Hz must be trans, cis, and geminal, respectively. In addition, X is on a carbon atom next to oxygen and so goes downfield while A and B have extra shielding from the conjugation of the oxygen lone pairs (see p. 000).

Geminal coupling on saturated carbons can be seen only if the hydrogens of a CH$_2$ group are different. We have seen an example of this on the bridging CH$_2$ group of myrtenal (p. 000).
coupling constant for the protons on the bridge, $J_{AB}$, is 9 Hz. Geminal coupling constants in a saturated system can be much larger (typically 10–16 Hz) than in an unsaturated one.

### Typical coupling constants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coupling Type</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Geminal</strong> $^2J_{HH}$</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Geminal Structure" /></td>
<td>10–16 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saturated</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Geminal Structure" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsaturated</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Geminal Structure" /></td>
<td>0–3 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vicinal</strong> $^3J_{HH}$</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Vicinal Structure" /></td>
<td>6–8 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saturated</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Vicinal Structure" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsaturated trans</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Vicinal Structure" /></td>
<td>14–16 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsaturated cis</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Vicinal Structure" /></td>
<td>8–11 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsaturated aromatic</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Vicinal Structure" /></td>
<td>6–9 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-range</strong> $^4J_{HH}$</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Long-range Structure" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meta</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Long-range Structure" /></td>
<td>1–3 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allylic</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Long-range Structure" /></td>
<td>1–2 Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### To conclude

You have now met, in Chapter 3 and this chapter, all of the most important spectroscopic techniques available for working out the structure of organic molecules. We hope you can now appreciate that proton NMR is by far the most powerful of these techniques, and we hope you will be referring back to this chapter as you read the rest of the book. We shall talk about proton NMR a lot, and specifically we will come back to it in detail in Chapter 15, where we will look at using all of the spectroscopic techniques in combination, and in Chapter 32, when we look at what NMR can tell us about the shape of molecules.
1. How many signals will there be in the $^1$H NMR spectrum of each of these compounds? Estimate the chemical shifts of the signals.

2. Comment on the chemical shifts of these three compounds and suggest whether there is a worthwhile correlation with $pK_a$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>$\delta H$, p.p.m.</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH$_3$NO$_2$</td>
<td>4.33</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_2$(NO$_2$)$_2$</td>
<td>6.10</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(NO$_2$)$_3$</td>
<td>7.52</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. One isomer of dimethoxybenzoic acid has the $^1$H NMR spectrum 3.85 (6H, s), 6.63 (1H, t, $J$ 2 Hz), 7.17 (2H, d, $J$ 2 Hz) and one isomer of coumalic acid has the $^1$H NMR spectrum 6.41 (1H, d, $J$ 10 Hz), 7.82 (1H, dd, $J$ 2, 10 Hz), 8.51 (1H, d, $J$ 2 Hz). In each case, which isomer is it? The substituents in black can be on any carbon atoms.

4. Assign the NMR spectra of this compound (assign means say which signal belongs to which atom) and justify your assignments.

5. Assign the $^1$H NMR spectra of these compounds and explain the multiplicity of the signals.

6. The reaction below was expected to give product 6A and did indeed give a product with the correct molecular formula by mass spectrometry. The $^1$H NMR spectrum of the product was however: $\delta_H$ (p.p.m.) 1.27 (6H, s), 1.70 (4H, m), 2.88 (2H, m), 5.4–6.1 (2H, broad s, exchanges with D$_2$O), 7.0–7.5 (3H, m). Though the detail is missing from this spectrum, how can you already tell that this is not the compound expected?

7. Assign the 400 MHz $^1$H NMR spectrum of this enynone as far as possible, justifying both chemical shifts and coupling patterns.
8. A nitration product (C₈H₁₁N₃O₂) of this pyridine has been isolated which has a nitro (NO₂) group somewhere on the molecule. From the 90 MHz ¹H NMR spectrum, deduce whether the nitro group is (a) on the ring, (b) on the NH nitrogen atom, or (c) on the aliphatic side chain and then exactly where it is. Give a full analysis of the spectrum.

![Nitration product structure](image)

9. The natural product bullatenone was isolated in the 1950s from a New Zealand myrtle and assigned the structure 9A. Then compound 9A was synthesized and found not to be identical with natural bullatenone. Predict the expected ¹H NMR spectrum of 9A. Given the full spectroscopic data available nowadays, but not in the 1950s, say why 9A is definitely wrong and suggest a better structure for bullatenone.

Spectra of bullatenone:
- Mass spectrum: m/z 188 (10%) (high resolution confirms C₁₂H₁₂O₂), 105 (20%), 102 (100%), and 77 (20%).
- Infrared: 1604 and 1705 cm⁻¹.
- ¹H NMR: 1.45 (6H, s), 5.82 (1H, s), 7.35 (3H, m), and 7.68 (2H, m).

10. Interpret this ¹H NMR spectrum.

![Interpreted spectrum](image)

11. Suggest structures for the products of these reactions, interpreting the spectroscopic data. You are not expected to write mechanisms for the reactions and you should resist the temptation to work out what ‘should happen’ from the reactions. These are all unexpected products.

![Reaction schemes](image)

12. Precocene is an compound that causes insect larvae to pupate and can also be found in some plants (Ageratum spp.) where it may act as an insecticide. It was isolated in minute amounts and has the following spectroscopic details. Propose a structure for precocene.

Spectra of precocene:
- Mass spectrum: m/z (high resolution gives C₁₃H₁₆O₃), M—15 (100%) and M—30 (weak).
- Infrared: CH and fingerprint only.
- ¹H NMR: 1.34 (6H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 3.82 (3H, s), 5.54 (1H, d, J₁0 Hz), 6.37 (1H, d, J₁0 Hz), 6.42 (1H, s), and 6.58 (1H, s).

13. Suggest structures for the products of these reactions, interpreting the spectroscopic data. Though these products, unlike those in Problem 11, are reasonably logical, you will not meet the mechanisms for the reactions until Chapters 22, 29, and 23, respectively, and you are advised to solve the structures through the spectra.
14. The following reaction between a phosphonium salt, base, and an aldehyde gives a hydrocarbon $C_6H_{12}$ with the 200 MHz $^1H$ NMR spectrum shown. Give a structure for the product and comment on its stereochemistry. You are not expected to discuss the chemistry!
Nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl (C=O) group

Connections

Building on:
- Drawing mechanisms ch5
- Nucleophilic attack on carbonyl groups ch6 & ch9
- Acidity and $pK_a$ ch8
- Grignard and RLi addition to C=O groups ch9

Arriving at:
- Nucleophilic attack followed by loss of leaving group
- What makes a good nucleophile
- What makes a good leaving group
- There is always a tetrahedral intermediate
  - How to make acid derivatives
  - Reactivity of acid derivatives
  - How to make ketones from acids
  - How to reduce acids to alcohols

Looking forward to:
- Loss of carbonyl oxygen ch14
- Kinetics and mechanism ch13
- Reactions of enols ch21, ch26-ch29
- Synthesis in action ch25

You are already familiar with reactions of compounds containing carbonyl groups. Aldehydes and ketones react with nucleophiles at the carbon atom of their carbonyl group to give products containing hydroxyl groups. Because the carbonyl group is such a good electrophile, it reacts with a wide range of different nucleophiles: you have met reactions of aldehydes and ketones with (in Chapter 6) cyanide, water, alcohols, and (in Chapter 9) organometallic reagents (organolithiums and organomagnesiums, or Grignard reagents).

In this chapter and Chapter 14 we shall look at some more reactions of the carbonyl group—and revisit some of the ones we touched on in Chapter 6. It is a tribute to the importance of this functional group in organic chemistry that we have devoted four chapters of this book to its reactions. Just like the reactions in Chapters 6 and 9, the reactions in Chapters 12 and 14 all involve attack of a nucleophile on a carbonyl group. The difference will be that this step is followed by other mechanistic steps, which means that the overall reactions are not just additions but also substitutions.

The product of nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group is not always a stable compound

Addition of a Grignard reagent to an aldehyde or ketone gives a stable alkoxide, which can be protonated with acid to produce an alcohol (you met this reaction in Chapter 9).

The same is not true for addition of an alcohol to a carbonyl group in the presence of base—in Chapter 6 we drew a reversible, equilibrium arrow for this transformation and said that the product, a hemiacetal, is only formed to a significant extent if it is cyclic.

The reason for this instability is that RO$^-$ is easily expelled from the molecule. We call groups that can be expelled from molecules, usually taking with them a negative charge, leaving groups. We'll look at leaving groups in more detail later in this chapter and again in Chapter 17.
So, if the nucleophile is also a leaving group, there is a chance that it will be lost again and that the carbonyl group will reform—in other words, the reaction will be reversible. The energy released in forming the C=O bond (bond strength 720 kJ mol⁻¹) more than makes up for the loss of two C–O single bonds (about 350 kJ mol⁻¹ each), one of the reasons for the instability of the hemiacetal product in this case.

Again, it collapses with loss of RO⁻ as a leaving group. This time, though, we have not gone back to starting materials: instead we have made a new compound (a ketone) by a substitution reaction—the OR group of the starting material has been substituted by the Me group of the product. In fact, as we shall see later, this reaction does not stop at this point because the ketone product can react with the Grignard reagent a second time.

### Carboxylic acid derivatives

Most of the starting materials for, and products of, these substitutions will be carboxylic acid derivatives, with the general formula RCOX. You met the most important members of this class in Chapter 3: here they are again as a reminder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carboxylic acid derivatives</th>
<th>Acid chlorides (acyl chlorides)</th>
<th>Esters</th>
<th>Acid anhydrides</th>
<th>Amides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="carboxylic acid" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="acid chlorides" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="esters" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="acid anhydrides" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="amides" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aWe shall use these two terms interchangeably.*

### Acid chlorides and acid anhydrides react with alcohols to make esters

Acetyl chloride will react with an alcohol in the presence of a base to give an acetate ester and we get the same product if we use acetic anhydride.

In each case, a substitution (of the black part of the molecule, Cl⁻ or AcO⁻, by the orange cyclohexanol) has taken place—but how? It is important that you learn not only the fact that...
acyl chlorides and acid anhydrides react with alcohols but also the *mechanism* of the reaction. In this chapter you will meet a lot of reactions, but relatively few mechanisms—once you understand one, you should find that the rest follow on quite logically.

The first step of the reaction is, as you might expect, addition of the nucleophilic alcohol to the electrophilic carbonyl group—we’ll take the acyl chloride first.

The base is important because it removes the proton from the alcohol as it attacks the carbonyl group. A base commonly used for this is pyridine. If the electrophile had been an aldehyde or a ketone, we would have got an unstable hemiacetal, which would collapse back to starting materials by eliminating the alcohol. With an acyl chloride, the alkoxide intermediate we get is also unstable. It collapses again by an elimination reaction, this time losing chloride ion, and forming the ester. Chloride is the *leaving group* here—it leaves with its negative charge.

With this reaction as a model, you should be able to work out the mechanism of ester formation from acetic anhydride and cyclohexanol. Try to write it down without looking at the acyl chloride mechanism above, and certainly not at the answer below. Here it is, with pyridine as the base. Again, addition of the nucleophile gives an unstable intermediate, which undergoes an elimination reaction, this time losing a carboxylate anion, to give an ester.

We call the unstable intermediate formed in these reactions the *tetrahedral intermediate*, because the trigonal (sp²) carbon atom of the carbonyl group has become a tetrahedral (sp³) carbon atom.

---

**Tetrahedral intermediates**

Substitutions at trigonal carbonyl groups go through a tetrahedral intermediate and then on to a trigonal product.

---

You will notice that the terms ‘acid chloride’ and ‘acyl chloride’ are used interchangeably.
How do we know that the tetrahedral intermediate exists?

We don’t expect you to be satisfied with the bland statement that tetrahedral intermediates are formed in these reactions; of course, you wonder how we know that this is true. The first evidence for tetrahedral intermediates in the substitution reactions of carboxylic acid derivatives was provided by Bender in 1951. He reacted water with carboxylic acid derivatives \( RCOX \) that had been ‘labelled’ with an isotope of oxygen, \( ^{18}O \). He then reacted these derivatives with water to make labelled carboxylic acids. However, he added insufficient water for complete consumption of the starting material. At the end of the reaction, he found that the proportion of labelled molecules in the remaining starting material had decreased significantly: in other words, it was no longer completely labelled with \( ^{18}O \); some contained ‘normal’ \( ^{16}O \).

This result cannot be explained by direct substitution of \( X \) by \( H_2O \), but is consistent with the existence of an intermediate in which the unlabelled \( ^{16}O \) and labelled \( ^{18}O \) can ‘change places’. This intermediate is the tetrahedral intermediate for this reaction.

The observant among you may also have noticed that the (weak—pyridine) base catalyst in this reaction works very slightly differently from the (strong—hydroxide) base catalyst in the hemiacetal-forming reaction on p. 000: one removes the proton after the nucleophile has added; the other removes the proton before the nucleophile has added. This is deliberate, and will be discussed further in Chapter 13.

Why are the tetrahedral intermediates unstable?

The alkoxide formed by addition of a Grignard reagent to an aldehyde or ketone is stable. Tetrahedral intermediates are similarly formed by addition of a nucleophile to a carbonyl group, so why are they unstable? The answer is to do with leaving group ability.
Once the nucleophile has added to the carbonyl compound, the stability of the product (or tetrahedral intermediate) depends on how good the groups attached to the new tetrahedral carbon atom are at leaving with the negative charge. In order for the tetrahedral intermediate to collapse (and therefore be just an intermediate and not the final product) one of the groups has to be able to leave and carry off the negative charge from the alkoxide anion formed in the addition.

Here once again is the tetrahedral intermediate resulting from addition of an alcohol to an acyl chloride.

There are three choices of leaving group: Cl\(^-\), EtO\(^-\), and Me\(^-\). We cannot actually make Me\(^-\) because it is so unstable, but MeLi, which is about as close to it as we can get (Chapter 9), reacts vigorously with water so Me\(^-\) must be a very bad leaving group. EtO\(^-\) is not so bad—alkoxide salts are stable, but they are still strong, reactive bases (we shall see below what \(pK_a\) has to do with this matter). But Cl\(^-\) is the best leaving group: Cl\(^-\) ions are perfectly stable and quite unreactive and happily carry off the negative charge from the oxygen atom. You probably eat several grams of Cl\(^-\) every day but you would be unwise to eat EtO\(^-\) or MeLi.

\(pK_{aH}\) is a useful guide to leaving group ability

It’s useful to be able to compare leaving group ability quantitatively. This is impossible to do exactly, but a good guide is \(pK_{aH}\). If we go back to the example of ester formation from acyl chloride plus alcohol, there’s a choice of Me\(^-\), EtO\(^-\), and Cl\(^-\). The leaving group with the lowest \(pK_{aH}\) is the best and so we can complete the reaction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leaving group</th>
<th>(pK_{aH})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me(^-)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtO(^-)</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl(^-)</td>
<td>-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The same is true for the reaction of acetic anhydride with an alcohol. Possible leaving groups from this tetrahedral intermediate are the following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leaving group</th>
<th>(pK_{aH})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me(^-)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RO(^-)</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeCO(^2-)</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again the group that leaves is the one with the lowest \(pK_{aH}\).

**Leaving group ability**

The lower the \(pK_{aH}\), the better the leaving group in carbonyl substitution reactions.

Why should this be so? The ability of an anion to behave as a leaving group depends in some way on its stability—how willing it is to accept a negative charge. \(pK_a\) represents the equilibrium between an acid and its conjugate base, and is a measure of the stability of that conjugate base with respect to the acid—low \(pK_a\) means stable conjugate base, indicating a willingness to accept a negative charge. So the general trends that affect \(pK_a\), which we discussed in Chapter 8, will also affect leaving group ability. However, you must bear in mind that \(pK_a\) is a measure of stability only with respect to the protonated form of the anion. Leaving group ability is a fundamentally different comparison between the stability of the negatively charged tetrahedral intermediate and the leaving group plus resulting carbonyl compound. But it still works as a good guide. These five values are worth learning.
We can use $pK_a$ to predict what happens if we react an acyl chloride with a carboxylate salt. We expect the carboxylate salt (here, sodium formate, or sodium methanoate, $\text{HCO}_2\text{Na}$) to act as the nucleophile to form a tetrahedral intermediate, which could collapse in any one of three ways.

We can straight away rule out loss of $\text{Me}^-$ ($pK_a 50$), but we might guess that $\text{Cl}^-$ ($pK_a -7$) is a better leaving group than $\text{HCO}_2^-$ ($pK_a$ about 5), and we’d be right. Sodium formate reacts with acetyl chloride to give ‘acetic formic anhydride’.

Amines react with acyl chlorides to give amides

Using the principles we’ve outlined above, you should be able to see how these compounds can be interconverted by substitution reactions with appropriate nucleophiles. We’ve seen that acid chlorides react with carboxylic acids to give acid anhydrides, and with alcohols to give esters. They’ll also react with amines (such as ammonia) to give amides.

The mechanism is very similar to the mechanism of ester formation.

Notice the second molecule of ammonia, which removes a proton before the loss of chloride ion—the leaving group—to form the amide. Ammonium chloride is formed as a by-product in the reaction.

Here is another example, using a secondary amine, dimethylamine. Try writing down the mechanism now without looking at the one above. Again, two equivalents of dimethylamine are necessary, though the chemists who published this reaction added three for good measure.
Schotten–Baumann synthesis of an amide

As these mechanisms show, the formation of amides from acid chlorides and amines is accompanied by production of one equivalent of HCl, which needs to be neutralized by a second equivalent of amine. An alternative method for making amides is to carry out the reaction in the presence of another base, such as NaOH, which then does the job of neutralizing the HCl. The trouble is, OH⁻ also attacks acyl chlorides to give carboxylic acids. Schotten and Baumann, in the late nineteenth century, published a way round this problem by carrying out these reactions in two-phase systems of immiscible water and dichloromethane. (Carl Schotten (1853–1910) was Hofmann’s assistant in Berlin and spent most of his working life in the German patent office (There is more about Hofmann in Chapter 19.) The organic amine (not necessarily ammonia) and the acyl chloride remain in the (lower) dichloromethane layer, while the base (NaOH) remains in the (upper) aqueous layer. Dichloromethane and chloroform are two common organic solvents that are heavier (more dense) than water. The acyl chloride reacts only with the amine, but the HCl produced can dissolve in, and be neutralized by, the aqueous solution of NaOH.

Using $pK_{aH}$ to predict the outcome of substitution reactions of carboxylic acid derivatives

You saw that acid anhydrides react with alcohols to give esters: they will also react with amines to give amides. But would you expect esters to react with amines to give amides, or amides to react with alcohols to give esters? Both appear reasonable.

In fact only the top reaction works: amides can be formed from esters but esters cannot be formed from amides. Again, looking at $pK_a$ can tell us why. In both cases, the tetrahedral intermediate would be the same. The possible leaving groups are shown in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possible leaving groups</th>
<th>$pK_{aH}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ph⁻</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH₂</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeO⁻</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So RO⁻ leaves and the amide is formed. Here is an example. The base may be either the EtO⁻ produced in the previous step or another molecule of PhNH₂.

You will meet many more mechanisms like this, in which an unspecified base removes a proton from an intermediate. As long as you can satisfy yourself that there is a base available to perform the task, it is quite acceptable to write either of these shorthand mechanisms.
Factors other than leaving group ability can be important

In fact, the tetrahedral intermediate would simply never form from an amide and an alcohol; the amide is too bad an electrophile and the alcohol not a good enough nucleophile. We’ve looked at leaving group ability: next we’ll consider the strength of the nucleophile $Y$ and then the strength of the electrophile $RCOX$.

### Conditions for reaction

If this reaction is to go

$$
\begin{align*}
R\text{CO}_X + \overset{\text{Y}}{Y}^- & \rightarrow Y\text{CO}_X + \overset{\text{X}}{X}^-
\end{align*}
$$

1. $X$ must be a better leaving group than $Y$ (otherwise the reverse reaction would take place)
2. $Y$ must be a strong enough nucleophile to attack $RCOX$
3. $RCOX$ must be a good enough electrophile to react with $Y^-$

$pK_{aH}$ is a guide to nucleophilicity

We have seen how $pK_a$ gives us a guide to leaving group ability: it is also a good guide to how strong a nucleophile will be. These two properties are the reverse of each other: good nucleophiles are bad leaving groups. A species that likes forming new bonds to hydrogen (in other words, the $pK_a$ of its conjugate acid is high) will also like to form new bonds to carbon: it is likely to be a good nucleophile. Bases with high $pK_{aH}$ are bad leaving groups and they are, in general, good nucleophiles towards the carbonyl group. We will come back to this concept again in Chapter 17, where you will see that it does not apply to substitution at saturated carbon atoms.

### Guide to nucleophilicity

*In general, the higher the $pK_{aH}$, the better the nucleophile.*

But just a moment—we’ve overlooked an important point.

When we made acid anhydrides from acid chlorides plus carboxylate salts, we used an anionic nucleophile $RCO_2^-$ but, when we made amides from acid chlorides plus amines, we used a neutral nucleophile $NH_3$, and not $NH_2^-$. For proper comparisons, we should include in our table $ROH$ ($pK_{aH} = -5$; in other words, $-5$ is the $pK_a$ of $ROH^+$) and $NH_3$ ($pK_{aH} = 9$; in other words, 9 is the $pK_a$ of $NH_4^+$).

While amines react with acetic anhydride quite rapidly at room temperature (reaction complete in a few hours), alcohols react extremely slowly in the absence of a base. On the other hand, an alkoxide anion reacts with acetic anhydride extremely rapidly—the reactions are often complete within seconds at 0 °C. We don’t have to deprotonate an alcohol completely to increase its reactivity: just a catalytic quantity of a weak base can do this job by removing the alcohol’s proton *as it adds* to the carbonyl group. All these observations are consistent with our table and our proposition that high $pK_{aH}$ means good nucleophilicity.

### Not all carboxylic acid derivatives are equally reactive

We can list the common carboxylic acid derivatives in a ‘hierarchy’ of reactivity, with the most reactive at the top and the least reactive at the bottom. Transformations are always possible moving *down*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>$pK_{aH}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R^-$</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$NH_2$</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RO^-$</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$NH_3$</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$RCO_2^-$</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ROH$</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Cl^-$</td>
<td>-7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The hierarchy. We’ve seen that this hierarchy is partly due to how good the leaving group is (the ones at the top are best), and partly due to how good the nucleophile needed to make the derivative is (the ones at the bottom are best).

---

Delocalization and the electrophilicity of carbonyl compounds

All of these derivatives will react with water to form carboxylic acids, but at very different rates.

Hydrolysing an amide requires boiling in 10% NaOH or heating overnight in a sealed tube with concentrated HCl. Amides are the least reactive towards nucleophiles because they exhibit the greatest degree of delocalization. You met this concept in Chapter 7 and we shall return to it many times more. In an amide, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom can be stabilized by overlap with the $\pi^*$ orbital of the carbonyl group—this overlap is best when the lone pair occupies a p orbital (in an amine, it would occupy an $sp^3$ orbital).

The molecular orbital diagram shows how this interaction both lowers the energy of the bonding orbital (the delocalized nitrogen lone pair), making it neither basic nor nucleophilic, and raises the energy of the $\pi^*$ orbital, making it less ready to react with nucleophiles. Esters are similar but, because the oxygen lone pairs are lower in energy, the effect is less pronounced.

The greater the degree of delocalization, the weaker the C=O bond becomes. This is most clearly
We treat this in more detail in Chapter 15. There are two frequencies for the anhydride and the carboxylate because of symmetric and antisymmetric stretching.

evident in the stretching frequency of the carbonyl group in the IR spectra of carboxylic acid derivatives—remember that the stretching frequency depends on the force constant of the bond, itself a measure of the bond’s strength (the carboxylate anion is included because it represents the limit of the series, with complete delocalization of the negative charge over the two oxygen atoms).

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}

\text{R} & \text{Cl} & \text{O} & \text{O} & \text{NH}_2 \\
\hline
\nu / \text{cm}^{-1} & 1790-1815 & 1800-1850 & 1740-1790 & 1690 \\
\text{C=O} & \text{strongest} & \text{1735-1750} & \text{1610-1650} & \text{1300-1420} & \text{weakest}
\end{array}
\]

Amides react as electrophiles only with powerful nucleophiles such as HO\textsuperscript{-}. Acid chlorides, on the other hand, react with even quite weak nucleophiles: neutral ROH, for example. They are more reactive because the electron-withdrawing effect of the chlorine atom increases the electrophilicity of the carbonyl carbon atom.

**Bond strengths and reactivity**

You may think that a weaker C=O bond should be more reactive. This is not so because the partial positive charge on carbon is also lessened by delocalization and because the molecule as a whole is stabilized by the delocalization. Bond strength is not always a good guide to reactivity! For example, in acetic acid the bond strengths are surprising. The strongest bond is the O–H bond and the weakest is the C–C bond. Yet very few reactions of acetic acid involve breaking the C–C bond, and its characteristic reactivity, as an acid, involves breaking O–H, the strongest bond of them all!

The reason is that polarization of bonds and solvation of ions play an enormously important role in determining the reactivity of molecules. In Chapter 39 you will see that radicals are relatively unaffected by solvation and that their reactions follow bond strengths much more closely.

**Carboxylic acids do not undergo substitution reactions under basic conditions**

Substitution reactions of RCO\textsubscript{2}H require a leaving group OH\textsuperscript{-}, with \(pK_a = 15\), so we should be able to slot RCO\textsubscript{2}H into the ‘hierarchy’ on p. 000 just above the esters RCO\textsubscript{2}R\textprime. However, if we try to react carboxylic acids with alcohols in the presence of a base (as we would to make esters from acyl chlorides), the only thing that happens is deprotonation of the acid to give the carboxylate anion. Similarly, carboxylic acids react with amines to give not amides but ammonium carboxylate salts, because the amines themselves are basic.

Once the carboxylic acid is deprotonated, substitutions are prevented because (almost) no nucleophile will attack the carboxylate anion. Under neutral conditions, alcohols are just not reactive enough to add to the carboxylic acid but, with acid catalysis, esters can be formed from alcohols and carboxylic acids.

**Acid catalysts increase the reactivity of a carbonyl group**

We saw in Chapter 6 that the lone pairs of a carbonyl group may be protonated by acid. Only strong acids are powerful enough to protonate carbonyl groups: the \(pK_a\) of protonated acetone is \(\approx 7\), so, for example, even 1M HCl (pH 0) would protonate only 1 in \(10^7\) molecules of acetone. However, even proportions as low as this are sufficient to increase the rate of substitution reactions at carbonyl groups enormously, because those carbonyl groups that are protonated become extremely powerful electrophiles.
It is for this reason that alcohols will react with carboxylic acids under acid catalysis. The acid (usually HCl, or H₂SO₄) reversibly protonates a small percentage of the carboxylic acid molecules, and the protonated carboxylic acids are extremely susceptible to attack by even a weak nucleophile such as an alcohol.

Acid catalysts can make bad leaving groups into good ones

This tetrahedral intermediate is unstable because the energy to be gained by re-forming a C=O bond is greater than that used in breaking two C–O bonds. As it stands, none of the leaving groups (R–, HO–, or RO–) is very good. However, help is again at hand in the acid catalyst. It can protonate any of the oxygen atoms reversibly. Again, only a very small proportion of molecules are protonated at any one time but, once the oxygen atom of, say, one of the OH groups is protonated, it becomes a much better leaving group (H₂O, pKₐH –2, instead of HO–, pKₐH 15). Loss of ROH from the tetrahedral intermediate is also possible: this leads back to starting materials—hence the equilibrium arrow in the scheme above. Loss of H₂O is more fruitful, and takes the reaction forwards to the ester product.

Acid catalysts catalyse substitution reactions of carboxylic acids

1. They increase the electrophilicity of the carbonyl group by protonation at carbonyl oxygen
2. They lower the pKₐH of the leaving group by protonation there too

Ester formation is reversible: how to control an equilibrium

Loss of water from the tetrahedral intermediate is reversible too: just as ROH will attack a protonated carboxylic acid, H₂O will attack a protonated ester. In fact, every step in the sequence from carboxylic acid to ester is an equilibrium, and the overall equilibrium constant is about 1. In order for this reaction to be useful, it is therefore necessary to ensure that the equilibrium is pushed towards the ester side by using an excess of alcohol or carboxylic acid (usually the reactions are done in a solution of the alcohol or the carboxylic acid). In this reaction, for example, using less than three equivalents of ethanol gave lower yields of ester.
Alternatively, the reaction can be done in the presence of a dehydrating agent (concentrated H₂SO₄, for example, or silica gel), or the water can be distilled out of the mixture as it forms.

Acid-catalysed ester hydrolysis and transesterification

By starting with an ester, an excess of water, and an acid catalyst, we can persuade the reverse reaction to occur: formation of the carboxylic acid plus alcohol with consumption of water. Such a reaction is known as a hydrolysis reaction, because water is used to break up the ester into carboxylic acid plus alcohol (lysis = breaking).

Acid-catalysed ester formation and hydrolysis are the exact reverse of one another: the only way we can control the reaction is by altering concentrations of reagents to drive the reaction the way we want it to go. The same principles can be used to convert an ester of one alcohol into an ester of another, a process known as transesterification. It is possible, for example, to force this equilibrium to the right by distilling methanol (which has a lower boiling point than the other components of the reaction) out of the mixture.

The mechanism for this transesterification simply consists of adding one alcohol (here BuOH) and eliminating the other (here MeOH), both processes being acid-catalysed. Notice how easy it is now to confirm that the reaction is catalytic in H⁺. Notice also that protonation always occurs on the carbonyl oxygen atom.
Base-catalysed hydrolysis of esters is irreversible

You can’t make esters from carboxylic acids and alcohols under basic conditions because the base deprotonates the carboxylic acid (p. 000). However, you can reverse that reaction and hydrolyse an ester to a carboxylic acid (more accurately, a carboxylate salt) and an alcohol.

![Diagram showing the base-catalysed hydrolysis of esters](image)

This time the ester is, of course, not protonated first as it would be in acid, but the unprotonated ester is a good enough electrophile because OH\(^-\), and not water, is the nucleophile. The tetrahedral intermediate can collapse either way, giving back ester, or going forward to acid plus alcohol.

Without an acid catalyst, the alcohol cannot react with the carboxylic acid; in fact, the backward reaction is doubly impossible because the basic conditions straight away deprotonate the acid to make a carboxylate salt (which, incidentally, consumes the base, making at least one equivalent of base necessary in the reaction).

**How do we know this is the mechanism?**

Ester hydrolysis is such an important reaction that chemists spent a lot of time and effort finding out exactly how it worked. If you want to know all the details, read a specialist textbook on physical (mechanistic) organic chemistry. Many of the experiments that tell us about the mechanism involve oxygen-18 labelling. The starting material is synthesized using as a starting material a compound enriched in the heavy oxygen isotope \(^{18}\)O. By knowing where the heavy oxygen atoms start off, and following (by mass spectrometry—Chapter 3) where they end up, the mechanism can be established.
The saturated fatty acid tetradecanoic acid (also known as myristic acid) is manufactured commercially from coconut oil by base-catalysed hydrolysis. You may be surprised to learn that coconut oil contains more saturated fat than butter, lard, or beef dripping: much of it is the trimyristate ester of glycerol. Hydrolysis with aqueous sodium hydroxide, followed by reprotonation of the sodium carboxylate salt with acid, gives myristic acid. Notice how much longer it takes to hydrolyse this branched ester than it did to hydrolyse a methyl ester (p. 000).

The saturated fatty acid tetradecanoic acid (also known as myristic acid) is manufactured commercially from coconut oil by base-catalysed hydrolysis. You may be surprised to learn that coconut oil contains more saturated fat than butter, lard, or beef dripping: much of it is the trimyristate ester of glycerol. Hydrolysis with aqueous sodium hydroxide, followed by reprotonation of the sodium carboxylate salt with acid, gives myristic acid. Notice how much longer it takes to hydrolyse this branched ester than it did to hydrolyse a methyl ester (p. 000).

Amides can be hydrolysed under acidic or basic conditions too

In order to hydrolyse the least reactive of the series of carboxylic acid derivatives we have a choice: we
can persuade the amine leaving group to leave by protonating it, or we can use brute force and forcibly eject it with concentrated hydroxide solution.

Amides are very unreactive as electrophiles, but they are also rather more basic than most carboxylic acid derivatives: a typical amide has a $pK_a$ of −1; most other carbonyl compounds have $pK_a$s of around −7. You might therefore imagine that the protonation of an amide would take place on nitrogen—after all, *amine* nitrogen atoms are readily protonated. And, indeed, the reason for the basicity of amides is the nitrogen atom’s delocalized lone pair, making the carbonyl group unusually electron-rich. But amides are always protonated on the oxygen atom of the carbonyl group—never the nitrogen, because protonation at nitrogen disrupts the delocalized system that makes amides so stable.

Protonation of the carbonyl group by acid makes the carbonyl group electrophilic enough for attack by water, giving a neutral tetrahedral intermediate. The amine nitrogen atom in the tetrahedral intermediate is much more basic than the oxygen atoms, so now it gets protonated, and the RNH$_2$ group becomes really quite a good leaving group. And, once it has left, it will immediately be protonated again, and therefore become completely nonnucleophilic. The conditions are very vigorous—70% sulfuric acid for 3 hours at 100 °C.

**Notice that this means that one equivalent of acid is used up in this reaction—the acid is not solely a catalyst.**

Hydrolysis of amides in base requires similarly vigorous conditions. Hot solutions of hydroxide are sufficiently powerful nucleophiles to attack an amide carbonyl group, though even when the tetrahedral intermediate has formed, NH$_2^-$ ($pK_a$ 35) has only a slight chance of leaving when OH$^-$ ($pK_a$ 15) is an alternative. Nonetheless, at high temperatures, amides are slowly hydrolysed by concentrated base.
Secondary and tertiary amides hydrolyse much more slowly under these conditions. However, with a slightly different set of reagents, even tertiary amides can be hydrolysed at room temperature. The reason is a change in mechanism. Potassium tert-butoxide is a strong enough base (pK\text{aH} 18) to deprotonate the tetrahedral intermediate in the reaction, forming a dianion. Now that the choice is between Me\textsubscript{2}N\textsuperscript{−} and O\textsuperscript{2−}, the Me\textsubscript{2}N\textsuperscript{−} has no choice but to leave, giving the carboxylate salt directly as the product.

Hydrolysing nitriles: how to make the almond extract, mandelic acid
Closely related to the amides are nitriles. You can view them as primary amides that have lost one molecule of water and, indeed, they can be made by dehydrating primary amides. They can be hydrolysed just like amides too. Addition of water to the protonated nitrile gives a primary amide, and hydrolysis of this amide gives carboxylic acid plus ammonia.

You met a way of making nitriles—from HCN (or NaCN + HCl) plus aldehydes—in Chapter 6: the hydroxynitrile products are known as cyanohydrins. With this in mind, you should be able to suggest a way of making mandelic acid, an extract of almonds, from benzaldehyde. This is how some chemists did it.

Acid chlorides can be made from carboxylic acids using SO\textsubscript{Cl}\textsubscript{2} or PCl\textsubscript{5}
We have looked at a whole series of interconversions between carboxylic acid derivatives and, after this next section, we shall summarize what you should have learned. We said that it is always easy to move down the series of acid derivatives we listed early in the chapter and, so far, that is all we have...
done. But some reactions of carboxylic acids also enable us to move upwards in the series. What we need is a reagent that changes the bad leaving group $\text{HO}^-$ into a good leaving group. Strong acid does this by protonating the $\text{OH}^-$, allowing it to leave as $\text{H}_2\text{O}$. In this section we look at two more reagents, $\text{SOCl}_2$ and $\text{PCl}_5$, which react with the $\text{OH}$ group of a carboxylic acid and also turn it into a good leaving group. Thionyl chloride, $\text{SOCl}_2$, reacts with carboxylic acids to make acyl chlorides.

This volatile liquid with a choking smell is electrophilic at the sulfur atom (as you might expect with two chlorine atoms and an oxygen atom attached) and is attacked by carboxylic acids to give an unstable, and highly electrophilic, intermediate.

Protonation of the unstable intermediate (by the $\text{HCl}$ just produced) gives an electrophile powerful enough to react even with the weak nucleophile $\text{Cl}^-$ (low $pK_a$H, poor nucleophilicity). The tetrahedral intermediate that results can collapse to the acyl chloride, sulfur dioxide, and hydrogen chloride. This step is irreversible because $\text{SO}_2$ and $\text{HCl}$ are gases that are lost from the reaction mixture.

Although $\text{HCl}$ is involved in this reaction, it cannot be used as the sole reagent for making acid chlorides. It is necessary to have a sulfur or phosphorus compound to remove the oxygen. An alternative reagent for converting $\text{RCO}_2\text{H}$ into $\text{RCOCl}$ is phosphorus pentachloride, $\text{PCl}_5$. The mechanism is similar—try writing it out before looking at the scheme below.
These conversions of acids into acid chlorides complete all the methods we need to convert acids
into any acid derivatives. You can convert acids directly to esters and now to acid chlorides, the most
reactive of acid derivatives, and can make any other derivative from them. The chart below adds
reactions to the reactivity order we met earlier.

**An alternative method of making acid chlorides: oxalyl chloride plus DMF**

A modification of the thionyl chloride method for
making acyl chlorides uses oxalyl chloride plus
catalytic DMF. The oxalyl chloride reacts with
DMF in a rather remarkable way to produce a highly
electrophilic cationic intermediate, plus CO and
CO₂—as with the SOCl₂ reaction, the by-products
are all gases.

A few aspects of this mechanism need comment.
- The first two steps are simply a nucleophilic
  substitution of Cl at the carbonyl group, going via
  the now familiar tetrahedral intermediate
- Nucleophiles can attack the C=N bond (step 3)
  much as they might attack a C=O bond
- The black arrows in step 4 look very odd, but they
  are the only way we can draw the formation of
  carbon monoxide

The reactive intermediate is highly electrophilic and
reacts rapidly with the carboxylic acid, producing
another intermediate which intercepts Cl⁻ to give
the acyl chloride and regenerate DMF.

This method is usually used for producing small
amounts of valuable acyl chlorides—oxalyl chloride
is much more expensive than thionyl chloride. DMF
will nonetheless also catalyse acyl chloride
formation with thionyl chloride, though on a large
scale its use may be ill advised since one of the
minor by-products from these reactions is a potent
carcinogen. We hope you enjoyed the eight-step
mechanism.

Oxalyl chloride, (COCI)₂, is the
‘double’ acid chloride of oxalic
acid, or ethane-1,2-dioic acid, the
toxic dicarboxylic acid found in
rhubarb leaves.

- acid (acyl) chlorides
- anhydrides
- esters
- amides

These conversions of acids into acid chlorides complete all the methods we need to convert acids
into any acid derivatives. You can convert acids directly to esters and now to acid chlorides, the most
reactive of acid derivatives, and can make any other derivative from them. The chart below adds
reactions to the reactivity order we met earlier.
All these acid derivatives can, of course, be hydrolysed to the acid itself with water alone or with various levels of acid or base catalysis depending on the reactivity of the derivative. To climb the reactivity order therefore, the simplest method is to hydrolyse to the acid and convert the acid into the acid chloride. You are now at the top of the reactivity order and can go down to whatever level you require.

Making other compounds by substitution reactions of acid derivatives

We’ve talked at length about the interconversions of acid derivatives, explaining the mechanism of attack of nucleophiles such as ROH, H₂O, and NH₃ on acyl chlorides, acid anhydrides, esters, acids, and amines, with or without acid or base present. We shall now go on to talk about substitution reactions of acid derivatives that take us out of this closed company of compounds and allow us to make compounds containing functional groups at other oxidation levels such as ketones and alcohols.

Making ketones from esters: the problem

Substitution of the OR group of an ester by an R group would give us a ketone. You might therefore think that reaction of an ester with an organolithium or Grignard reagent would be a good way of making ketones. However, if we try the reaction, something else happens.

Two molecules of Grignard have been incorporated and we get an alcohol! If we look at the mechanism we can understand why this should be so. First, as you would expect, the nucleophilic Grignard reagent attacks the carbonyl group to give a tetrahedral intermediate. The only reasonable leaving group is RO⁻, so it leaves to give us the ketone we set out to make.

Now, the next molecule of Grignard reagent has a choice. It can either react with the ester starting material, or with the newly formed ketone. Ketones are more electrophilic than esters so the Grignard reagent prefers to react with the ketone in the manner you saw in Chapter 9. A stable alkoxide anion is formed, which gives the tertiary alcohol on acid work-up.

Making alcohols instead of ketones

In other words, the problem here lies in the fact that the ketone product is more reactive than the ester starting material. We shall meet more examples of this general problem later (in Chapter 24, for example): in the next section we shall look at ways of overcoming it. Meanwhile, why not see it as a useful reaction? This compound, for example, was needed by some chemists in the course of research into explosives.

It is a tertiary alcohol with the hydroxyl group flanked by two identical R (= butyl) groups. The chemists who wanted to make the compound knew that an ester would react twice with the same organolithium reagent, so they made it from this unsaturated ester (known as methyl methacrylate) and butyllithium.
This reaction works with $R=H$ too if we use lithium aluminium hydride as the source of $H^-$. LiAlH$_4$ is a powerful reducing agent, and readily attacks the carbonyl group of an ester. Again, collapse of the tetrahedral intermediate gives a compound, this time an aldehyde, which is more reactive than the ester starting material, so a second reaction takes place and the ester is converted (reduced) into an alcohol.

Reduction of esters by LiAlH$_4$.

This is an extremely important reaction, and one of the best ways of making alcohols from esters. Stopping the reaction at the aldehyde stage is more difficult: we shall discuss this in Chapter 24.

**Another bit of shorthand**

Before we go any further, we should introduce to you another little bit of chemical shorthand that makes writing many mechanisms easier.

As you now appreciate, all substitution reactions at a carbonyl group go via a tetrahedral intermediate.

A convenient way to save writing a step is to show the formation and collapse of the tetrahedral intermediate in the same structure, by using a double-headed arrow like this.

Now, this is a useful shorthand, but it is not a substitute for understanding the true mechanism. Certainly, you must never ever write
Making ketones from esters: the solution

We diagnosed the problem with our intended reaction as one of reactivity: the product ketone is more reactive than the starting ester. To get round this problem we need to do one of two things:

1. make the starting material more reactive or
2. make the product less reactive

Making the starting materials more reactive

A more reactive starting material would be an acyl chloride: how about reacting one of these with a Grignard reagent? This approach can work: for example, this reaction is successful.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Me}\text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{Me}\text{O} \quad \text{Me}
\]

Often, better results are obtained by transmetallating (see Chapter 9) the Grignard reagent, or the organolithium, with copper salts. Organocopper reagents are too unreactive to add to the product ketones, but they react well with the acyl chloride. Consider this reaction, for example: the product was needed for a synthesis of the antibiotic septamycin.

\[
\text{MeO} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O}
\]

\[
\text{MeO} \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O}
\]

Making the products less reactive

This alternative solution is often better. With the right starting material, the tetrahedral intermediate can become stable enough not to collapse to a ketone during the reaction; it therefore remains completely unreactive towards nucleophiles. The ketone is formed only when the reaction is finally quenched with acid but the nucleophile is also destroyed by the acid and none is left for further addition.

We can illustrate this concept with a reaction of an unlikely looking electrophile, a lithium carboxylate salt. Towards the beginning of the chapter we said that carboxylic acids were bad electrophiles and that carboxylate salts were even worse. Well, that is true, but with a sufficiently powerful nucleophile (an organolithium) it is just possible to get addition to the carbonyl group of a lithium carboxylate.

We could say that the affinity of lithium for oxygen means that the Li–O bond has considerable covalent character, making the CO₂Li less of a true anion. Anyway, the product of this addition is a dianion of the sort that we met during one of the mechanisms of base-catalysed amide hydrolysis. But, in this case, there is no possible leaving group, so there the dianion sits. Only at the end of the reaction, when water is added, are the oxygen atoms protonated to give a hydrated ketone, which collapses immediately (remember Chapter 6) to give the ketone that we wanted. The water quench also destroys any remaining organolithium, so the ketone is safe from further attack.
This method has been used to make some ketones that are important starting materials for making cyclic natural products known as macrolides.

Another good set of starting materials that leads to noncollapsible tetrahedral intermediates is known as the Weinreb amides, after their inventor, S.M. Weinreb.

Addition of organolithium or organomagnesium reagents to \( N\)-methoxy-\( N\)-methyl amides gives a tetrahedral intermediate that is stabilized by chelation of the magnesium atom by the two oxygen atoms. This intermediate collapses, to give a ketone, only when acid is added at the end of the reaction.

This strategy even works for making aldehydes, if the starting material is dimethylformamide (DMF, \( \text{Me}_2\text{NCHO} \)).
This is an extremely useful way of adding electrophilic CHO groups to organometallic nucleophiles. Here is an example. The first step is an ‘ortholithiation’ as described in Chapter 9.

A final alternative is to use a nitrile instead of an ester.

The intermediate is the anion of an imine (see Chapter 14 for more about imines), which is not electrophilic at all—in fact, it’s quite nucleophilic, but there are no electrophiles for it to react with until the reaction is quenched with acid. It gets protonated, and hydrolyses (we’ll discuss this in the next chapter) to the ketone.

To summarize...

To finish, we should just remind you of what to think about when you consider a nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group.

And to conclude…

In this chapter you have been introduced to some important reactions—you can consider them to be a series of facts if you wish, but it is better to see them as the logical outcome of a few simple mechanistic steps. Relate what you have learned to what you gathered from Chapters 6 and 9, when we first started looking at carbonyl groups. All we did in this chapter was to build some subsequent transformations on to the simplest organic reaction, addition to a carbonyl group. You should have noticed that the reactions of all acid derivatives are related, and are very easily explained by writing out proper mechanisms, taking into account the presence of acid or base. In the next two chapters we shall see more of these acid- and base-catalysed reactions of carbonyl groups. Try to view them as closely related to the ones in this chapter—the same principles apply to their mechanisms.
1. Suggest reagents to make the drug 'phenaglycodol' by the route shown.

2. Direct ester formation from alcohols (R'H) and carboxylic acids (R'CO₂H) works in acid solution but does not work at all in basic solution. Why not? By contrast, ester formation from alcohols (R'H) and carboxylic acid anhydrides, (R'CO)₂O, or acid chlorides, RCOCl, is commonly carried out in the presence of amines such as pyridine or Et₃N. Why does this work?

3. Predict the success or failure of these attempted nucleophilic substitutions at the carbonyl group. You should use estimated pKₐ or pKₐH values in your answer and, of course, draw mechanisms.

4. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

5. In making esters of the naturally occurring amino acids (general formula below) it is important to keep them as their hydrochloride salts. What would happen to these compounds if they were neutralized?

6. It is possible to make either the diester or the monoester of butanedioic acid (succinic acid) from the cyclic anhydride as shown. Why does the one method give the monoester and the other the diester?

7. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining why these particular products are formed.

8. Here is a summary of part of the synthesis of Pfizer’s heart drug Doxazosin (Cordura®). The mechanism for the first step will be a problem at the end of Chapter 17. Suggest reagent(s) for the conversion of the methyl ester into the acid chloride. In the last step, good yields of the amide are achieved if the amine is added as its hydrochloride salt in excess. Why is this necessary?
Esters can be made directly from nitriles by acid-catalysed reaction with the appropriate alcohol. Suggest a mechanism.

10. Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the selectivity (or lack of it!) in each case.

11. This reaction goes in one direction in acidic solution and in the other direction in basic solution. Draw mechanisms for the reactions and explain why the product depends on the conditions.

12. These reactions do not work. Explain the failures and suggest in each case an alternative method that might be successful.
One purpose of this chapter is to help you understand why chemists use such a vast range of different conditions when performing various organic reactions. If you go into any laboratory, you will see many reactions being heated to reflux; however, you will also see just as many being performed at –80 °C or even lower. You will see how changing the solvent in a reaction can drastically alter the time that a reaction takes or even lead to completely different products. Some reactions are over in a few minutes; others are left for hours under reflux. In some reactions the amounts of reagents are critical; in others large excesses are used. Why such a diverse range of conditions? How can conditions be chosen to favour the reaction we want? To explain all this we shall present some very basic thermodynamics but organic chemists do not want to get bogged down in algebra and energy profile diagrams will provide all the information we need.

### How far and how fast?

We are going to consider which way (forwards or backwards) reactions go and by how much. We are going to consider how fast reactions go and what we can do to make them go faster or slower. We shall be breaking reaction mechanisms down into steps and working out which step is the most important. But first we must consider what we really mean by the ‘stability’ of molecules and what determines how much of one substance you get when it is in equilibrium with another.

### Stability and energy levels

So far we have been rather vague about the term stability just saying things like ‘this compound is more stable than that compound’. What we really mean is that one compound has more or less energy than another. This comparison is most interesting when two compounds can interconvert. For example, rotation about the C–N bond of an amide is slow because conjugation (Chapter 7) gives it some double-bond character.

There is rotation, but it can be slow and can be measured by NMR spectroscopy. We can expect to find two forms of an amide of the type RNH–COR: one with the two R groups trans to one another, and one with them cis.
Depending on the size of R we should expect one form to be more stable than the other and we can represent this on an energy profile diagram showing the relationship between the two molecules in energy terms.

The two red lines show the energies of the molecules and the curved black line shows what must happen in energy terms as the two forms interconvert. Energy goes up as the C–N bond rotates and reaches a maximum at point X when rotation by 90° has removed the conjugation.

The relative energies of the two states will depend on the nature of R. The situation we have shown, with the cis arrangement being much less stable than the trans, would apply to large R groups. An extreme case would be if the substituent on nitrogen were H. Then the two arrangements would have equal energies.

The process is the same but there is now no difference between the two structures and, if equilibrium is reached, there will be an exactly 50:50 ratio of the two arrangements. The equilibrium constant is $K = 1$. In other cases, we can measure the equilibrium constant by NMR spectroscopy. Another limit is reached if the bond is a full double bond as in simple alkenes instead of amides. Now the two states do not interconvert.
We can measure the energies of the two molecules by measuring the heat of hydrogenation of each isomer to give butane—the same product from both. The difference between the two heats of hydrogenation will be the difference in energy of cis- and trans-butene.

In more general terms, amide rotation is a simple example of an equilibrium reaction. If we replace ‘rotation about the C–N bond’ with ‘extent of reaction’ we have a picture of a typical reaction in which reagents and products are in equilibrium.

How the equilibrium constant varies with the difference in energy between reactants and products

The equilibrium constant $K$ is related to the energy difference between starting materials and products by this equation

$$
\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K
$$

where $\Delta G^\circ$ (known as the standard Gibbs energy of the reaction) is the difference in energy between the two states (in kJ mol$^{-1}$), $T$ is the temperature (in kelvin not °C), and $R$ is a constant known as the gas constant and equal to 8.314 J K$^{-1}$ mol$^{-1}$.

This equation tells us that we can work out the equilibrium composition (how much of each component there is at equilibrium) provided we know the difference in energy between the products and reactants. Note that this difference in energy is not the difference in energy between the starting mixture and the mixture of products but the difference in energy if one mole of reactants had been completely converted to one mole of products.

Chemical examples to show what equilibria mean

The equilibrium between isobutyraldehyde and its hydrate in water shows the relationship between $\Delta G^\circ$ and $K_{eq}$.
The equilibrium constant may be written to include \([H_2O]\); however, since the concentration of water effectively remains constant at 55.5 mol dm\(^{-3}\) (p. 000), it is often combined into the equilibrium constant giving

\[
K_{eq} = \frac{[\text{hydrate}]_{eq}}{[\text{aldehyde}]_{eq}}
\]

The concentrations of hydrate and aldehyde at equilibrium in water may be determined by measuring the UV absorption of known concentrations of aldehyde in water and comparing these with the absorptions in a solvent such as cyclohexane where no hydrate formation is possible. Such experiments reveal that the equilibrium constant for this reaction in water at 25 \(^\circ\)C is approximately 0.5 so that there is about twice as much aldehyde as hydrate in the equilibrium mixture. The corresponding value for \(\Delta G^\circ\) is \(-8.314 \times 298 \times \ln(0.5) = +1.7\) kJ mol\(^{-1}\). In other words, the solution of the hydrate in water is 1.7 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) higher in energy than the solution of the aldehyde in water.

We could compare this reaction to the addition of an alkylithium reagent to the same aldehyde. You met this reaction in Chapter 9.

![Chemical Structures]

The difference in energy between the starting materials, the aldehyde and methyllithium, and the products is so great that at equilibrium all we have are the products. In other words, this reaction is irreversible.

**The sign of \(\Delta G^\circ\) tells us whether products or reactants are favoured at equilibrium**

Consider the equilibrium \(A \rightleftharpoons B\). The equilibrium constant, \(K_{eq}\), for this reaction is simply given by the expression

\[
K_{eq} = \frac{[B]_{eq}}{[A]_{eq}} \text{ where } [A]_{eq} \text{ represents the concentration of } A \text{ at equilibrium.}
\]

If, at equilibrium, there is more B present than A, then \(K\) will be greater than 1. This means that the natural log of \(K\) will be positive and hence \(\Delta G^\circ\) (given by \(-RT\ln K\) will be negative. Similarly, if A is favoured at equilibrium, \(K\) will be less than 1, \(\ln K\) negative, and hence \(\Delta G^\circ\) will be positive. If equal amounts of A and B are present at equilibrium, \(K\) will be 1 and, since \(\ln 1 = 0\), \(\Delta G^\circ\) will also be zero.

- **\(\Delta G^\circ\) tells us about the position of equilibrium**
  - If \(\Delta G^\circ\) for a reaction is **negative**, the **products** will be favoured at equilibrium
  - If \(\Delta G^\circ\) for a reaction is **positive**, the **reactants** will be favoured at equilibrium
  - If \(\Delta G^\circ\) for a reaction is **zero**, the equilibrium constant for the reaction will be 1

**A small change in \(\Delta G^\circ\) makes a big difference in \(K\)**

The tiny difference in energy between the hydrate and the aldehyde (1.7 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)) gave an appreciable difference in the equilibrium composition. This is because of the log term in the equation \(\Delta G^\circ = -RT\ln K\); relatively small energy differences have a very large effect on \(K\). Table 13.1 shows the equilibrium constants, \(K_{eq}\), that correspond to energy differences, \(\Delta G^\circ\), between 0 and 50 kJ mol\(^{-1}\). These are relatively small energy differences—the strength of a typical C–C bond is about 350 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)—but the equilibrium constants change by enormous amounts.
In a typical chemical reaction, ‘driving an equilibrium over to products’ might mean getting, say, 98% of the products and only 2% of starting materials. You can see in the table that this requires an equilibrium constant of just over 50 and an energy difference of only 10 \text{kJ mol}^{-1}. This small energy difference is quite enough—after all, a yield of 98% is rather good!

Aromatic amines such as aniline (PhNH$_2$) are insoluble in water. We saw in Chapter 8 that they can be dissolved in water by lowering the pH. We are taking advantage of the equilibrium between neutral amine and its ammonium ion. So how far below the p$\text{K}_a$ of aniline do we have to go to get all of the aniline into solution?

If the pH of a solution is adjusted to its p$\text{K}_a$, by adding different acids there will be exactly 50% PhNH$_2$ and 50% PhNH$_3^+$. We need an equilibrium constant of about 50 to get 98% into the soluble form (PhNH$_3^+$) and we need to go only about 2 p$\text{K}_a$ units below the p$\text{K}_a$ of aniline (4.6) to achieve this. All we need is quite a weak acid though in Chapter 8 we used HCl (p$\text{K}_a – 7$) which certainly did the trick!

In Chapter 12 (p. 000) we looked at the hydrolysis of esters in basic solution. The decomposition of the tetrahedral intermediate could have occurred in either direction as HO$^-$ (p$\text{K}_a 15.7$) and MeO$^-$ (p$\text{K}_a 16$) are about the same as leaving groups. In other words $K_1$ and $K_2$ are about the same and both equilibria favour the carbonyl compound (ester or carboxylic acid).

This reaction would therefore produce a roughly 50:50 mixture of ester and carboxylic acid if this were the whole story. But it isn’t because the carboxylic acid will be deprotonated in the basic solution adding a third equilibrium.

Though $K_1$ and $K_2$ are about the same, $K_3$ is very large (p$\text{K}_a$ of RCO$_2$H is about 5 and p$\text{K}_a$ of MeOH is 16 so the difference between the two $K_3$s is about 10$^{11}$) and it is this equilibrium that drives the reaction over to the right. For the same reason (because $K_3$ is very large), it is impossible to form esters in basic solution. This situation can be summarized in an energy diagram showing that the energy differences corresponding to $K_1$ and $K_2$ ($\Delta G_1^\circ$ and $\Delta G_2^\circ$) are the same so that $\Delta G^\circ$ between RCO$_2$Me + HO$^-$, on the one hand, and RCO$_2$H + MeO$^-$, on the other, is zero. Only the energy difference for $K_3$ provides a negative $\Delta G^\circ$ for the whole reaction.
How to make the equilibrium favour the product you want

The direct formation of esters

The formation and hydrolysis of esters was discussed in Chapter 12 where we established that acid and ester are in equilibrium and that the equilibrium constant is about one.

If we stew up equal amounts of carboxylic acid, alcohol, ester, and water and throw in a little acid to catalyse the reaction (we shall see exactly how this affects the reaction profile later), we find that the equilibrium mixture consists of about equal amounts of ester and carboxylic acid. The position of the equilibrium favours neither the starting materials nor the products. The question now arises: how can we manipulate the conditions of the reaction if we actually want to make 100% ester?

The important point is that, at any one particular temperature, the equilibrium constant is just that—constant. This gives us a means of forcing the equilibrium to favour the products (or reactants) since the ratio of the two must remain constant. Therefore, if we increase the concentration of the reactants (or even that of just one of the reactants), more products must be produced to keep the equilibrium constant. One way to make esters in the laboratory is to use a large excess of the alcohol and remove water continually from the system as it is formed, for example by distilling it out. This means that in the equilibrium mixture there is a tiny quantity of water, lots of the ester, lots of the alcohol, and very little of the carboxylic acid; in other words, we have converted the carboxylic acid into the ester. We must still use an acid catalyst, but the acid must be anhydrous since we do not want any water present—commonly used acids are toluene sulfonic acid (tosic acid, TsOH), concentrated sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄), or gaseous HCl. The acid catalyst does not alter the position of the equilibrium; it simply speeds up the rate of the reaction, allowing equilibrium to be reached more quickly.

- To make the ester

Reflux the carboxylic acid with an excess of the alcohol (or the alcohol with an excess of the carboxylic acid) with about 3–5% of a mineral acid (usually HCl or H₂SO₄) as a catalyst and distil out the water that is formed in the reaction. For example: butanol was heated under reflux with a
fourfold excess of acetic acid and a catalytic amount of concentrated H₂SO₄ to give butyl acetate in a yield of 70%.

\[
\text{Me} - \text{OH} + \text{HO} \longrightarrow \text{Me} - \text{O} \quad \text{cat. conc. H}_2\text{SO}_4 \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me}\]

It may also help to distil out the water that is formed in the reaction: diethyl adipate (the diethyl ester of hexanedioic acid) can be made in toluene solution using a sixfold excess of ethanol, concentrated H₂SO₄ as catalyst, distilling out the water using a Dean Stark apparatus. You can tell from the yield that the equilibrium is very favourable.

\[
\text{HO}_2\text{C} - \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{EtOH} \quad \text{cat. conc. H}_2\text{SO}_4 \quad \text{toluene} \quad \text{EtO}_2\text{C} - \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \quad 96\% \text{ yield}
\]

In these cases the equilibrium is made more favourable by using an excess of reagents and/or removing one of the products. The equilibrium constant remains the same. High temperatures and acid catalysis are used to speed up arrival at equilibrium which would otherwise take days.

- To hydrolyse the ester
  Simple: reflux the ester with aqueous acid or alkali.

**The equilibrium between esters and amides**

If you solved Problem 12 at the end of the last chapter, you will already know of one reaction that can be driven in either direction by a selection of acidic or basic reaction conditions. The reaction is the interconversion of an ester and an amide and one would normally expect the reaction to favour the amide because of the greater stability of amides due to the more efficient conjugation of the lone pair on nitrogen.

If we examine the mechanism for the reaction it is clear that ArO⁻ (pKₐH ~10) is a better leaving group than ArNH⁻ (pKₐH ~25) and so the equilibria between the two compounds and the tetrahedral intermediate are like this.

The two individual equilibria favour the carbonyl compounds over the tetrahedral intermediate but \( K_1 < K_2 \) so the overall equilibrium favours the amide. However, two new equilibria must be added to these if the variation of pH is considered too. In acid solution the amine will be protonated and in base the phenol will be deprotonated.

The energy profile for this equilibrium can be studied from either left or right. It is easiest to imagine the tetrahedral intermediate going to the left or to the right depending on the acidity of the solution.
We have shown these last equilibria as reactions because they can be pushed essentially to completion by choosing a pH above 10 if we want the amide or below 4 if we want the ester. This is a relatively unusual situation but there are many other cases where reactions can be driven in either direction by choice of conditions.

**Entropy is important in determining equilibrium constants**

The position of equilibrium (that is, the equilibrium constant, which tells us in a chemical reaction whether products or reactants are favoured) is determined by the energy difference between the two possible states: in the case of the amide RCONH₂, there is no difference so the equilibrium constant is one; in the case of the amide RCONHR with large R groups, the arrangement with R groups trans is of lower energy than the state with R groups cis, and so the equilibrium constant is in favour of the trans isomer.

Even when there is a difference in energy between the two states, we still get some of the less stable state. This is because of entropy. Why we get the mixture of states is purely down to entropy—there is greater disorder in the mixture of states, and it is to maximize the overall entropy that the equilibrium position is reached.

**Energy differences: ΔG°, ΔH°, and ΔS°—energy, enthalpy, and entropy**

Returning to that all important equation: \( \Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K \), the sign and magnitude of the energy \( \Delta G^\circ \) are the only things that matter in deciding whether an equilibrium goes in one direction or another. If \( \Delta G^\circ \) is negative the equilibrium will favour the products (the reaction goes) and if \( \Delta G^\circ \) is large and negative the reaction goes to completion. It is enough for \( \Delta G^\circ \) to be only about \(-10 \text{kJmol}^{-1}\) to get complete reaction. The Gibbs energy, \( \Delta G^\circ \), the enthalpy of reaction, \( \Delta H^\circ \), and the entropy of reaction, \( \Delta S^\circ \), are related via the equation

\[
\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T\Delta S^\circ
\]
The change in enthalpy Δ\( \text{H}^\circ \) in a chemical reaction is the heat given out (at constant pressure). Since breaking bonds requires energy and making bonds liberates energy, the enthalpy change gives an indication of whether the products have more stable bonds than the starting materials or not. \( T \) is the temperature, in kelvin, at which the reaction is carried out. Entropy, \( S \), is a measure of the disorder in the system. A mixture of products and reactants is more disordered than either pure products or pure reactants alone. \( \Delta S^\circ \) represents the entropy difference between the starting materials and the products.

The equation \( \Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T \Delta S^\circ \) tells us that how \( \Delta G^\circ \) varies with temperature depends mainly on the entropy change for the reaction (\( \Delta S^\circ \)). We need these terms to explain the temperature dependence of equilibrium constants and to explain why some reactions may absorb heat (endothermic) while others give out heat (exothermic).

**Enthalpy versus entropy—an example**

Entropy dominates equilibrium constants in the difference between inter- and intramolecular reactions. In Chapter 6 we explained that hemiacetal formation is unfavourable because the C=O double bond is more stable than two C–O single bonds. This is clearly an enthalpy factor depending simply on bond strength. That entropy also plays a part can be clearly seen in favourable intramolecular hemiacetal formation of hydroxyaldehydes. The total number of carbon atoms in the two systems is the same, the bond strengths are the same and yet the equilibria favour the reagents (MeCHO + EtOH) in the inter- and the product (the cyclic hemiacetal) in the intramolecular case.

The difference is one of entropy. In the first case two molecules would give one with an increase in order as, in general, lots of things all mixed up have more entropy than a few large things (when you drop a bottle of milk, the entropy increases dramatically). In the second case one molecule gives one molecule with little gain or loss of order. Both reactions have negative \( \Delta S^\circ \) but it is more negative in the first case.

**The acidity of chloroacids**

In Chapter 8 we saw how increasing the number of electronegative substituents on a carboxylic acid decreased the acid’s \( pK_a \), that is, increased its acidity. Acid strength is a measure of the equilibrium constant for this simple reaction.

For this equilibrium as for others, the all important equations \( \Delta G^\circ = -RT\ln K \) and \( \Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ - T \Delta S^\circ \) apply. When the breakdown of \( \Delta G^\circ \) for acid ionization was explored, entropy proved to be more important than was expected. Take for example the series CH\(_3\)COOH, CH\(_2\)ClCOOH, CHCl\(_2\)COOH, and CCl\(_3\)COOH with \( pK_a \)s 7.74, 2.86, 1.28, and 0.52, respectively. If the increase in acidity were simply due to the stabilization of the conjugate base RCO\(_2^-\) by the electronegative groups (C–Cl bonds), this would be reflected in the enthalpy difference \( \Delta H^\circ \) between the conjugate base and the acid. The enthalpy change takes into account the loss of the O–H bond on ionization of the acid and also the difference in solvations between the acid and the ions it produces (H bonds between RCO\(_2\)H and water and between RCO\(_2^-\) and water). However the data (see table below) show that the difference in equilibrium constant is determined more by entropy than by enthalpy. \( \Delta H^\circ \) changes by only 6 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) over the whole series while \( \Delta S^\circ \) changes by nearly 100 J K\(^{-1}\) mol\(^{-1}\) and the more directly comparable \( T \Delta S \) changes by over 25 kJ mol\(^{-1}\).
The entropy change depends on the difference in 'order' between the reactants and products. Going from one species (the undissociated acid) to two (the proton and conjugate base) gives an increase in entropy. This in turn makes $\Delta G^\circ$ more negative and so favours the dissociation. But the solvent structure also changes during the reaction. If a species is strongly solvated, it has many solvent molecules tightly associated with it; in other words, the solvent surrounding it is more ordered. As a weakly solvated neutral acid ionizes to two strongly solvated ions, the neighbouring solvent becomes more ordered and the overall entropy decreases.

As we expect, the $pK_a$ decreases as more electronegative chlorines are substituted for the hydrogen atoms in acetic acid. However, the enthalpy change for the ionization remains approximately the same—the decrease in $\Delta G^\circ$ is predominantly due to the increase in the entropy change for the reaction. With the increasing numbers of chlorine atoms, the negative charge on the conjugate base is more spread out. The less concentrated the charge, the less order is imposed on the neighbouring solvent molecules and so $\Delta S^\circ$ becomes less negative.

**Equilibrium constants vary with temperature**

We have said that the equilibrium constant is a constant only so long as the temperature does not change. Exactly how the equilibrium constant varies with temperature depends on whether the reaction is exothermic or endothermic. If the reaction is exothermic (that is, gives out heat) then at higher temperatures the equilibrium constant will be smaller. For an endothermic reaction, as the temperature is increased, the equilibrium constant increases. Putting our all important equations $\Delta G^\circ = –RT \ln K$ and $\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ – T \Delta S^\circ$ together we see that $–RT \ln K = \Delta H^\circ – T \Delta S^\circ$. If we divide throughout by $–RT$ we have

$$\ln K = -\frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT} + \frac{\Delta S^\circ}{R}$$

The equilibrium constant $K$ can be divided into enthalpy and entropy terms but it is the enthalpy term that determines how $K$ varies with temperature. Plotting $\ln K$ against $1/T$ would give us a straight line with slope $–\Delta H^\circ/R$ and intercept $\Delta S^\circ$. Since $T$ (the temperature in Kelvin) is always positive, whether the slope is positive or negative depends on the sign of $\Delta H^\circ$: if it is positive then, as temperature increases, $\ln K$ (and hence $K$) increases. In other words, for an endothermic reaction ($\Delta H^\circ$ positive), as $T$ increases, $K ([\text{products}] / [\text{reactants}])$ increases which in turn means that more products must be formed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acid</th>
<th>$pK_a$</th>
<th>$\Delta H^\circ$, kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
<th>$\Delta S^\circ$, J K(^{-1}) mol(^{-1})</th>
<th>$–T \Delta S^\circ$, kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
<th>$\Delta G^\circ$, kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)COOH</td>
<td>4.76</td>
<td>-0.08</td>
<td>-91.6</td>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>27.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)ClCOOH</td>
<td>2.86</td>
<td>-4.6</td>
<td>-70.2</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHCl(_2)COOH</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>-0.7</td>
<td>-27</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCI(_3)COOH</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>-5.8</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>2.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Thermodynamics for the organic chemist**

- The free energy change $\Delta G^\circ$ in a reaction is proportional to $\ln K$ (that is, $\Delta G^\circ = –RT \ln K$)
- $\Delta G^\circ$ and $K$ are made up of enthalpy and entropy terms (that is, $\Delta G^\circ = \Delta H^\circ – T \Delta S^\circ$)
- The enthalpy change $\Delta H^\circ$ is the difference in stability (bond strength) of the reagents and products
- The entropy change $\Delta S^\circ$ is the difference between the disorder of the reagents and that of the products
- The enthalpy term alone determines how $K$ varies with temperature
Le Chatelier’s principle

You may well be familiar with a rule that helps to predict how a system at equilibrium responds to a change in external conditions—Le Chatelier’s principle. This says that if we disturb a system at equilibrium it will respond so as to minimize the effect of the disturbance. An example of a disturbance is adding more starting material to a reaction mixture at equilibrium. What happens? More product is formed to use up this extra material. This is a consequence of the equilibrium constant being, well... constant and hardly needs anybody’s principle.

Another disturbance is heating. If a reaction under equilibrium is heated up, how the equilibrium changes depends on whether the reaction is exothermic or endothermic. If is exothermic (that is, gives out heat), Le Chatelier’s principle would predict that, since heat is consumed in the reverse reaction, more of the starting materials will be formed. Again no ‘principle’ is needed—this change occurs because the equilibrium constant is smaller at higher temperatures in an exothermic reaction. Le Chatelier didn’t know about equilibrium constants or about \( \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT} = \Delta S^\circ – \Delta T \) so he needed a ‘principle’. You know the reasons and they are more important than rules.

Some reactions are reversible on heating

Simple dimerization reactions will favour the dimer at low temperatures and the monomer at high temperatures. Two monomer molecules have more entropy than one molecule of the dimer. An example is the dimerization of cyclopentadiene. On standing, cyclopentadiene dimerizes and if monomeric material is needed the dimer must be heated and the monomer used immediately. If you lazily leave the monomer overnight and plan to do your reaction tomorrow, you will return in the morning to find dimer.

This idea becomes even more pointed when we look at polymerization. Polyvinyl chloride is the familiar plastic PVC and is made by reaction of large numbers of monomeric vinyl chloride molecules. There is, of course, an enormous decrease in entropy in this reaction and any polymerization will not occur above a certain temperature. Some polymers can be depolymerized at high temperatures and this can be the basis for recycling.

Making reactions go faster: the real reason reactions are heated

Although in organic laboratories you will see lots of reactions being heated, very rarely will this be to alter the equilibrium position. This is because most reactions are not carried out reversibly and so the ratio of products to reactants is not an equilibrium ratio. The main reason chemists heat up reactions is simple—it speeds them up.

How fast do reactions go?—activation energies

Using tables of thermodynamic data, it is possible to work out the energy differences for many different reactions at different temperatures. For example, for the combustion of isooctane, \( \Delta G^\circ \) (at 298 K) = −1000 kJ mol\(^{-1}\).

\[
\text{isooctane (I)} + \text{O}_2 (l) \rightarrow 8\text{CO}_2 (g) + 9\text{H}_2\text{O}(l) \quad \Delta G^\circ = -1000 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}
\]

We have seen in Table 13.1 on p. 000 that even a difference of 50 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) gives rise to a huge equilibrium constant: −1000 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) gives an equilibrium constant of \(10^{175}\) (at 298 K), a number too
vast to contemplate (there are only about $10^{86}$ atoms in the observable universe). This value of $\Delta G^\circ$ (or the corresponding value for the equilibrium constant) suggests that isooctane simply could not exist in an atmosphere of oxygen and yet we put it into the fuel tanks of our cars every day—clearly something is wrong.

Since isooctane can exist in an atmosphere of oxygen despite the fact that the equilibrium position really is completely on the side of the combustion products, the only conclusion we can draw must be that a mixture of isooctane and oxygen cannot be at equilibrium. A small burst of energy is needed to reach equilibrium: in a car engine, the spark plug provides this energy and combustion occurs. If no such burst of energy is applied, the petrol would continue to exist for a long time. The mixture of petrol and air is said to be kinetically stable but thermodynamically unstable with respect to the products of the reaction, CO$_2$ and H$_2$O. If the same small energy burst is applied to the products, they do not convert back to petrol and oxygen.

The energy required to overcome the barrier to reaction is called the activation energy and is usually given the symbols $E_a$ or $\Delta G^\ddagger$. An energy level diagram for a reaction such as the combustion of isooctane is shown below.

Points to notice:
- The products are lower in energy than the reactants as the equilibrium position lies in favour of the products
- The activation energy for the forward reaction is less than the activation energy for the back reaction

If a reaction cannot proceed until the reactants have sufficient energy to overcome the activation energy barrier, it is clear that, the smaller the barrier, the easier it will be for the reaction to proceed. In fact the activation energy is related to how fast the reaction proceeds by another exponential equation

$$k = A e^{-\frac{E_a}{RT}}$$

where $k$ is the rate constant for the reaction, $R$ is the gas constant, $T$ is the temperature (in kelvin), and $A$ is a quantity known as the pre-exponential factor. This equation is called the Arrhenius equation. Because of the minus sign in the exponential term, the larger the activation energy, $E_a$, the slower the reaction but the higher the temperature, the faster the reaction.

**Examples of activation energy barriers**

A very simple reaction is rotation about a bond. In the compounds in the table, different amounts of energy are needed to rotate about the bonds highlighted in black. See how this activation energy barrier affects the actual rate at which the bond rotates. Approximate values for $k$ have been calculated from the experimentally determined values for the activation energies. The half-life, $t_{1/2}$, is just the time needed for half of the compound to undergo the reaction.
We can see how the rate constant varies with temperature by looking at the Arrhenius equation. The pre-exponential factor, $A$, does not vary much with temperature, but the exponential term is a function of temperature. Once again, because of the minus sign, the greater the temperature, the greater the rate constant.

This observation is used in practice when NMR spectra give poor results because of slow rotation about bonds. Amides of many kinds, particularly carbamates, show slow rotation about the C–N bond at room temperature because of the amide delocalization. These amides have bigger barriers to rotation than the 70 kJ mol$^{-1}$ of the example in the table. The result is a poor spectrum with broad signals. In this example, the two sides of the five-membered ring are different in the two rotational isomers and give different spectra.

The solution is to run the NMR spectrum at higher temperatures. This speeds up the rotation and averages out the two structures.

A word of warning: heating is not all good for the organic chemist—not only does it speed up the reaction we want, it will also probably speed up lots of other reactions that we don’t want to occur! We shall see how we can get round this, but first we shall take a closer look at what determines how fast a reaction takes place.

Rates of reaction

Suppose we have the very simple reaction of a single proton reacting with a molecule of water in the gas phase

$$\text{H}^+(g) + \text{H}_2\text{O}(g) \rightarrow \text{H}_3\text{O}^+(g)$$

We saw at the beginning of Chapter 8 that this is essentially an irreversible process, that is, $\Delta G^\circ$ is very large and negative and therefore the equilibrium constant, $K$, is large and positive.

So we know that this reaction goes, but what determines how quickly it can proceed? Since the mechanism simply involves one proton colliding with one molecule of water, then clearly the rate will depend on how often the two collide. This in turn will depend on the concentrations of these species—if there are lots of protons but only a few water molecules, most collisions will be between protons. The reaction will proceed fastest when there are lots of protons and lots of water molecules.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>$E_a$, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
<th>Approximate $k$, 298 K/s$^{-1}$</th>
<th>$t_{1/2}$ at 298 K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Compound" /></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>$5 \times 10^{10}$</td>
<td>0.02 ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Compound" /></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>$8 \times 10^4$</td>
<td>10 µs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Compound" /></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.2 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Compound" /></td>
<td>108</td>
<td>$7 \times 10^{-7}$</td>
<td>11 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Compound" /></td>
<td>180</td>
<td>$2 \times 10^{-19}$</td>
<td>ca. 10$^{11}$ years$^a$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$The age of the earth = 4.6 × 10$^9$ years.

You will see this ‘Boc’ group used as a protecting group for amines in Chapter 24.

This reaction turns two species into one, all in the gas phase. The standard entropy for the reaction must therefore be negative. In order for $\Delta G^\circ$ to be negative, the reaction must give out heat to the surroundings. In other words, this reaction must be highly exothermic, as indeed it is.
We can express this mathematically by saying that the rate of reaction is proportional to the concentration of protons multiplied by the concentration of water molecules (the square brackets mean ‘concentration of’).

\[
\text{rate of reaction } \mu \ [H^+] \times [H_2O]
\]

The constant of proportionality, \( k \), is known as the rate constant.

\[
\text{rate of reaction } = k \times [H^+] \times [H_2O]
\]

We are not very interested in reactions in the gas phase, but fortunately reactions in solution follow more or less the same laws so the reaction of a proton source like HCl and a water molecule in an inert solvent would have the rate expression: \( \text{rate} = k \times [\text{HCl}] \times [\text{H}_2\text{O}] \). Expressing the same idea graphically requires an energy profile diagram like those we used for equilibria but concentrating rather more on \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) than on \( \Delta G^\circ \).

Note that the products are lower in energy than the starting materials as before. The energy barrier is now marked \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) and the highest point on the profile is labelled *transition state*. Somewhere between the starting materials and the products there must come a point where the O–H bond is half formed. This is the least stable structure in the whole reaction scheme and would correspond to a structure about halfway between starting materials and products, something like this.

Now notice that the transition state is drawn in square brackets and marked \( \ddagger \). Note the long dashed bonds not yet completely formed or not yet completely broken and the partial charges \((+)\) and \((-)\) meaning something about half a charge (the products have complete charges shown in circles).

**Transition state**

A transition state is a structure that represents an energy maximum on passing from reactants to products. It is not a real molecule in that it may have partially formed or broken bonds and may have more atoms or groups around the central atom than allowed by valence bond rules. It cannot be isolated because it is an energy maximum and any change in its structure leads to a more stable arrangement. A transition state is often shown by putting it in square brackets with a double-dagger superscript.

This species is unstable—both the starting materials and the products are lower in energy. This means that it is not possible to isolate this halfway species; if the reaction proceeds just a little more forwards or backwards, the energy of the system is lowered (this is like balancing a small marble on top of a football—a small push in any direction and the marble will fall, lowering its potential energy).
Kinetics

The value of the rate constant will be different for different reactions. Consider the reaction of HCl and a water molecule discussed in the last section. Even with the same concentrations, the almost identical reaction where hydrogen is replaced by deuterium will proceed at a different rate (Chapter 19). To understand this we need to think again about what needs to happen for a reaction to occur. It is not enough for the two species to simply collide. We know that for this reaction to work the proton must come into contact with the oxygen atom in the water molecule, not the hydrogen atoms, that is, there is some sort of steric requirement. We have also seen that most reactions need to overcome an energy barrier. In other words, it is not enough for the two species just to collide for a reaction to proceed, they must collide in the right way and with enough force.

You can see now how the overall rate equation for our example reaction

\[
\text{rate of reaction} = k \times [\text{HCl}] \times [\text{H}_2\text{O}]
\]

contains all the points needed to work out how fast the reaction will proceed. The most important point concerns the concentrations of the reacting species—which are expressed directly in the rate equation. Other considerations, such as how large the species are or whether or not they collide in the right way with the right energy, are contained in the rate constant, \( k \). Notice once again that not only is \( k \) different for different reactions (for all of the above reasons), but that it also varies with temperature. It is essential when quoting a rate constant that the temperature is also quoted. That part of chemistry that deals with reaction rates rather than equilibria is known as kinetics.

**Activation barriers**

In the same way that we define \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) to be the difference in energy between the starting materials and the transition state (that is, activation energy), we can define the entropy of activation, \( \Delta S^\ddagger \), and the enthalpy of activation, \( \Delta H^\ddagger \), as being the entropy and enthalpy differences between the starting materials and transition state. These quantities are directly analogous to the entropy and enthalpy of the reaction but instead refer to the difference between starting material and transition state rather than starting material and products.

In a similar manner, we could also define an equilibrium constant between the reactants and the transition state

\[
K^\ddagger = \frac{[\text{AB}]}{[\text{A}][\text{B}]} \tag{1}
\]

Our all-important thermodynamic equations apply equally well to these activation functions so that we may write

\[
\Delta G^\ddagger = -RT\ln K^\ddagger \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta G^\ddagger = \Delta H^\ddagger - T\Delta S^\ddagger.
\]

It is possible to relate these functions with the rate constant for the reaction, \( k \), by using a model known as transition state theory. We will not go into any details here, but the net result is that

\[
k = \frac{k_B T}{h} K^\ddagger e^{-\Delta G^\ddagger/kT}
\]

where \( k_B \) and \( h \) are universal constants known as Boltzmann’s constant and Planck’s constant, respectively

By substituting in the equation \( K^\ddagger = e^{\Delta G^\ddagger/RT} \) the rearranged form of \( \Delta G^\ddagger = -RT\ln K^\ddagger \) we arrive at an equation, known as the Eyring equation, which relates how fast a reaction goes (\( k \)) to the activation energy (\( \Delta G^\ddagger \))

\[
k = \frac{k_B T}{h} e^{-\Delta G^\ddagger/kT}
\]

This can be rearranged and the numerical values of the constants inserted to give an alternative form

\[
\Delta G^\ddagger (\text{in J mol}^{-1}) = 8.314 \times T \times (23.76 + \ln(T/k))
\]

**Kinetics gives us an insight into the mechanism of a reaction**

Now for some of the reactions you have seen in the last few chapters. Starting with carbonyl substitution reactions, the first example is the conversion of acid chlorides into esters. The simplest mechanism to understand is that involved when the anion of an alcohol (a metal alkoxide RO⁻) reacts with an acid chloride. The kinetics are bimolecular: rate = \( k[\text{MeCOCl}][\text{RO}^-] \). The mechanism is the simple addition elimination process with a tetrahedral intermediate.

The formation of the tetrahedral intermediate by the combination of the two reagents is the rate-determining step and so the highest transition state will be the one leading from the starting materials to that intermediate.
We shall return to this important mechanism in a moment after a brief mention of first-order kinetics. The reaction between the acid chloride and the neutral alcohol to give an ester may not have the bimolecular rate expression expected for this mechanism: rate = \( k[R^1\text{COCl}] [R^2\text{OH}] \).

Some such reactions have a simpler rate expression: rate = \( k[R^1\text{COCl}] \) in which the alcohol does not appear at all. Evidently, no collision between the acid chloride and the alcohol is required for this reaction to go. What actually happens is that the acid chloride decomposes by itself to give a reactive cation (a cation you have already seen in mass spectrometry) with the loss of the good leaving group \( \text{Cl}^- \).

There are three steps in this reaction scheme though the last is a trivial deprotonation. Evidently, the energy barrier is climbed in the first step, which involves the acid chloride alone. The cation is an intermediate with a real existence and reacts later with the alcohol in a step that does not affect the rate of the reaction. The easiest way to picture this detail is in an energy profile diagram (top right).

Points to notice:
- The products are again lower in energy than the starting materials
- There are three transition states in this reaction
- Only the highest-energy transition state matters in the reaction rate (here the first)
- The step leading to the highest transition state is called the rate-determining step
- The two intermediates are local minima in the reaction profile
- The highest-energy transition state is associated with the formation of the highest-energy intermediate
Because the rate-determining step involves just one molecule, the rate equation shows rate = \( k[R_1COCl] \), and the reaction is called a first-order reaction as the rate is proportional to just one concentration. A first-order reaction involves the unimolecular decomposition of something in the rate-determining step.

Second-order reactions

The unimolecular mechanism is unusual for carbonyl substitution reactions. Those in the last chapter as well as the carbonyl addition reactions in Chapter 6 all had nucleophilic addition to the carbonyl group as the rate-determining step. An example would be the formation of an ester from an anhydride instead of from an acid chloride.

The leaving group (MeCO₂⁻) is not now good enough (\( pK_aH \) about 5 instead of -7 for Cl⁻) to leave of its own accord so the normal second-order mechanism applies. The kinetics are bimolecular: rate = \( k[(\text{MeCO}_2)O][\text{ROH}] \) and the rate-determining step is the formation of the tetrahedral intermediate.

**Intermediates and transition states**

A transition state represents an energy maximum—any small displacement leads to a more stable product. An intermediate, on the other hand, is a molecule or ion that represents a localized energy minimum—an energy barrier must be overcome before the intermediate forms something more stable. As you have seen in Chapter 3, and will see again in Chapter 22, because of this energy barrier, it is even possible to isolate these reactive intermediates (RCO⁺) and study their spectra.
All the acid derivatives (acid chlorides, anhydrides, esters, and amides) combine with a variety of nucleophiles in very similar bimolecular mechanisms.

\[
\begin{align*}
X = \text{Cl} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{OR} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{OR} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{OR} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{OR} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\text{OR} & \quad \text{OR} \\
\end{align*}
\]

This is the simplest and the most typical bimolecular mechanism with one intermediate, and the energy profile diagrams are correspondingly easier to understand. The reactions with acid chlorides (discussed a few pages back) and anhydrides are straightforward and go in good yield.

The energy levels of the starting materials, the transition state, and the intermediate are all lower in the anhydride reaction than in the acid chloride reaction. So which goes faster? We know the answer—acid chlorides are more reactive than anhydrides towards nucleophiles. The reason is that the stability of the starting materials is determined by the interaction between the carbonyl group and the substituent attached directly to it. This is a big effect as we know from infrared spectroscopy.

The two intermediates also have different energies depending mainly on the stability of the oxyanion. This too will be affected by the substituents, Cl and OAc, but they are separated from the oxyanion by the tetrahedral carbon atom and there is no conjugation. Substituent effects on the oxyanion are smaller than they are on the starting materials so the two intermediates are similar in energy. Substituent effects on the transition state will be somewhere between the two but the transition state is nearer to the intermediate than to the starting material so substituent effects will be like those on the intermediate. The two transition states also have similar energies. The net result is that \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) is bigger for the anhydride mainly because the energy of the starting materials is lower. This also explains why \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) is smaller.

**The ester exchange reaction**

When we move on to esters reacting with alkoxides the chart is a good deal more symmetrical. This is the reaction.
The nucleophile and the leaving group are both alkoxides, the only difference being \( R^1 \) and \( R^2 \). If \( R^1 \) and \( R^2 \) were the same, the energy profile diagram would be totally symmetrical and small differences between \( R^1 \) and \( R^2 \) are not going to affect the symmetry much.

Points to notice:
- The transition states for the two steps are equal in energy
- \( \Delta G^\ddagger \) is the same for the forward and the back reaction
- \( \Delta G^\circ \) is zero
- If \( R^1 = R^2 \), the intermediate has an exactly 50% chance of going forward or backward

In fact, we now have an equilibrium reaction. If \( R^1 \) and \( R^2 \) are different then the reaction is called ester exchange or transesterification and we should drive it in the direction we want by using a large excess of one of the two alcohols. If we carried out the reaction on one ester using an equivalent of the other alkoxide in that alcohol as solvent, the other ester would be formed in good yield.

**Catalysis in carbonyl substitution reactions**

We don’t need the equivalent of alkoxide in ester exchange because alkoxide is regenerated in the second step. We need only catalytic quantities (say, 1–2% of the ester) because the role of the alkoxide is catalytic. It speeds up the reaction because it is a better nucleophile than the alcohol itself and it is regenerated in the reaction.

Making a solution more basic speeds up reactions in which alcohols act as nucleophiles because it increases the concentration of the alkoxide ion, which is more nucleophilic than the alcohol itself. The same thing happens in hydrolysis reactions. The hydrolysis of esters is fast in either acidic or basic solutions. In basic solution, hydroxide is a better nucleophile than water.
The mechanism is like that for ester exchange but hydroxide is used up in deprotonating the carboxylic acid produced so a whole equivalent of NaOH is needed. In acidic solution, protonation of the carbonyl oxygen atom makes the ester more electrophilic and attack by the weak nucleophile (water) is made faster but the acid catalyst is regenerated. In both these reactions nucleophilic attack is the rate-determining step.

So, the higher the concentration of protons, the faster the hydrolysis goes and, the higher the concentration of hydroxide ion, the faster the reaction goes. If we plot the (log of the) rate of the reaction against the pH of the solution we shall get two straight lines increasing at high and low pH and each with a slope of one. The lines intersect near neutrality when there are neither protons nor hydroxide ions. This is simple acid and base catalysis.

These are bimolecular reactions with bimolecular kinetics and the rate expression in each case includes the concentration of the catalyst. We can label the rate constants $k_a$ and $k_b$ with a suffix ‘a’ for acid and ‘b’ for base to show more clearly what we mean.

- rate of ester hydrolysis in acid solution ($pH < 7$) = $k_a[\text{MeCO}_2\text{R}][\text{H}_2\text{O}^+]$
- rate of ester hydrolysis in basic solution ($pH > 7$) = $k_b[\text{MeCO}_2\text{R}][\text{HO}^-]$

**Catalysis by weak bases**

In Chapter 12 pyridine was often used as a catalyst in carbonyl substitution reactions. It can act in two ways. In making esters from acid chlorides or anhydrides pyridine can act as a nucleophile as well as a convenient solvent. It is a better nucleophile than the alcohol and this nucleophilic catalysis is discussed in Chapter 12. But nonnucleophilic bases also catalyse these reactions. For example, acetate ion catalyses ester formation from acetic anhydride and alcohols.

Could this be nucleophilic catalysis too? Acetate can certainly attack acetic anhydride, but the products are the same as the starting materials. This irrelevant nucleophilic behaviour of acetate ion cannot catalyse ester formation.
Can acetate be acting as a base? With a $pK_{aH}$ of about 5 it certainly cannot remove the proton from the alcohol ($pK_{aH}$ about 15) before the reaction starts. What it can do is to remove the proton from the alcohol as the reaction occurs.

This type of catalysis, which is available to any base, not only strong bases, is called **general base catalysis** and will be discussed more in Chapters 41 and 50. It does not speed the reaction up very much but it does lower the energy of the transition state leading to the tetrahedral intermediate since that intermediate is first formed as a neutral compound instead of a dipolar species. Here is the mechanism for the uncatalysed reaction.

The disadvantage of general base catalysis is that the first, rate-determining, step is termolecular. It is inherently unlikely that three molecules will collide with each other simultaneously and in the next section we shall reject such an explanation for amide hydrolysis. In this case, however, if ROH is the solvent, it will always be present in any collision so a termolecular step is just about acceptable.

**The hydrolysis of amides can have termolecular kinetics**

When we come to reactions of amides we are at the bottom of the scale of reactivity. Because of the efficient delocalization of the nitrogen lone pair into the carbonyl group, nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group is very difficult. In addition the leaving group ($NH_2$, $pK_{aH}$ about 35) is very bad indeed.

You might indeed have guessed from our previous example, the hydrolysis of esters, where the transition states for formation and breakdown of the tetrahedral intermediate had about the same energies, that in the hydrolysis of amide the second step becomes rate-determining. This offers the opportunity for further base catalysis. If a second hydroxide ion removes the proton from the tetrahedral intermediate, the loss of $NH_2$ is made easier and the product is the more stable carboxylate ion.

![Diagram of the hydrolysis of amides](image-url)
Notice that in the first mechanism the hydroxide is consumed as the product eventually emerges as an anion. In the second mechanism, one hydroxide is consumed but the second is catalytic as the \( \text{NH}_2^- \) reacts with water to give ammonia and hydroxide ion. The rate expression for the hydrolysis of amides includes a termolecular term and we shall label the rate constant \( k_3 \) to emphasize this.

\[
\text{rate} = k_3 [\text{MeCONH}_2] [\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

Where do the termolecular kinetics come from? It is, of course, extremely unlikely that three species will collide simultaneously, particularly as two of them are mutually repelling anions. The rate-determining step is actually unimolecular—the spontaneous breakdown of a dianion. But the concentration of the dianion is in the rate expression too and that depends on the reactions before the rate-determining step. With a late rate-determining step, the previous steps are in equilibrium and so we can put in some rate and equilibrium constants for each step and label the intermediates like this.

The rate of the reaction is the rate of the rate-determining step

\[
\text{rate} = k [\text{dianion}]
\]

We don’t know the concentration of the dianion but we do know that it’s in equilibrium with the monoanion so we can write

\[
K_2 = \frac{[\text{dianion}]}{[\text{monoanion}] [\text{HO}^-]}
\]

and so \([\text{dianion}] = K_2 [\text{monoanion}] [\text{HO}^-]\)

In the same way we don’t want the unknown \([\text{monoanion}]\) in our rate expression and we can get rid of it using the first equilibrium

\[
K_1 = \frac{[\text{monoanion}]}{[\text{amide}] [\text{HO}^-]}
\]

and so \([\text{monoanion}] = K_1 [\text{amide}] [\text{HO}^-]\)

Substituting these values in the simple rate equation we discover that rate = \(k [\text{dianion}]\) becomes

\[
\text{rate} = k K_1 K_2 [\text{amide}] [\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

The termolecular kinetics result from two equilibria starting with the amide and involving two hydroxide ions followed by a unimolecular rate-determining step, and the ‘termolecular rate constant’ \(k_3\) is actually a product of the two equilibrium constants and a unimolecular rate constant \(k_3 = k \times K_1 \times K_2\).

We have now seen examples of unimolecular and bimolecular reactions and also how termolecular kinetics can arise from unimolecular and bimolecular reactions.

Just because a proposed mechanism gives a rate equation that fits the experimental data, it does not necessarily mean that it is the right mechanism; all it means is that it is consistent with the experimental facts so far but there may be other mechanisms that also fit. It is then up to the experimenter to design cunning experiments to try to rule out other possibilities.

Mechanisms are given throughout this book—eventually you will learn to predict what the mechanism for a given type of reaction is, but this is because earlier experimentalists have worked out the mechanisms by a study of kinetics and other methods (see Chapter 41 for more details on how mechanisms are elucidated). In Chapter 17 you will meet another pair of mechanisms—one first-order and one second-order—following the same pattern as these.

**The cis–trans isomerization of alkenes**

The fact that a reaction is favourable (that is, \(\Delta G^o\) is negative) does not mean that the reaction will go at any appreciable rate; the rate is determined by the activation energy barrier that must be
To overcome. Returning to the example of the \textit{cis-trans} isomerism of butene, the energy difference between two forms is just 2 kJ mol\textsuperscript{-1}; the activation energy barrier is much bigger: 260 kJ mol\textsuperscript{-1}. The difference in energy determines the equilibrium position (2 kJ mol\textsuperscript{-1} corresponding to an equilibrium constant of about 2.2, or a ratio of 30:70, \textit{cis-trans}; see table on p. 000), whilst the activation energy determines how fast the reaction occurs (260 kJ mol\textsuperscript{-1} means that the reaction does not happen at all at room temperature). A calculation predicts that the half-life for the reaction would be approximately \(10^{25}\) years at room temperature, a time interval much greater than the age of the universe. At 500 °C, however, the half-life is a more reasonable 4 hours which just goes to show the power of exponentials! Unfortunately, when most alkenes are heated to these sorts of temperatures, other unwanted reactions occur.

In order to interconvert the \textit{cis} and \textit{trans} isomers we must use a different strategy. One method is to shine light on the molecule. If UV light is used it is of the right wavelength to be absorbed by the \(\text{C}=\text{C}\ \pi\) bond exciting one of the \(\pi\) electrons into the antibonding \(\pi^*\) orbital. There is now no \(\pi\) bond and the molecule can rotate freely.

Another approach to alkene isomerization would be to use a catalyst. Base catalysis is of no use as there are no acidic protons in the alkene. Acid catalysis can work (Chapter 19) if a carbocation is formed by protonation of the alkene.

\section*{How to catalyse the isomerization of alkenes}

The rate at which a reaction occurs depends on its activation energy—quite simply, if we can decrease this, then the reaction rate will speed up. There are two ways by which the activation energy may be decreased: one way is to raise the energy of the starting materials; the other is to lower the energy of the transition state. In the \textit{cis/trans} isomerization of alkenes, the transition state will be halfway through the twisting operation—it has \(p\) orbitals on each carbon at right angles to each other. It is the most unstable point on the reaction pathway.

Lowering the energy of the transition state means stabilizing it in some way or other. For example, if there is a separation of charge in the transition state, then a more polar solvent that can solvate this will help to lower the energy of the transition state. Catalysts generally work by stabilizing the transition states or intermediates in a reaction. We shall return to this point when we have introduced kinetic and thermodynamic products.
Kinetic versus thermodynamic products

In Chapter 10 we discussed conjugate addition to unsaturated carbonyl compounds in contrast to direct addition to the carbonyl group. A classic illustration is the addition of HCN to butenone. Two products can be formed.

The ‘direct’ addition to the left means that cyanide ion must attack the carbonyl group directly while the ‘conjugate’ addition to the right means that it must attack the less electrophilic alkene. The second is a slower reaction but gives the more stable product. Both reactions have an alkoxide anion as an intermediate.

The energy profile diagram for these two reactions is quite complicated. It has the starting material in the middle, as in the mechanism above, and so extent of reaction increases both to the right for thermodynamic control and to the left for kinetic control.

Points to notice:
• The thermodynamic product has a lower energy than the kinetic product
• The highest transition state to the right is higher than the highest to the left
• Initially the reaction will go to the left
If there is enough energy for the kinetic product to get back to the starting materials, there will be enough energy for some thermodynamic product to be formed.

The energy needed for the thermodynamic product to get back to starting materials is very great.

The kinetic product is formed reversibly; the thermodynamic product irreversibly.

At low temperatures direct addition is favoured, but conjugate addition is favoured at high temperatures.

**Kinetic versus thermodynamic control in the isomerization of alkenes**

Our catalyst for the isomerization of alkenes is going to be HCl absorbed on to solid alumina (aluminium oxide, Al₂O₃) and the isomerization is to occur during a reaction, the addition of HCl to an alkyne, in which the alkenes are formed as products. In this reaction the oxalyl chloride is first mixed with dried alumina. The acid chloride reacts with residual water on the surface (it is impossible to remove all water from alumina) to generate HCl, which remains on the surface.

The treated alumina with HCl still attached is added to a solution of an alkyne (1-phenylpropyne) and an addition reaction occurs to produce two geometrical isomers of an alkene. One results from cis addition of HCl to the triple bond, and one from trans addition.

The two alkenes are labelled E and Z. After about 2 hours the main product is the Z-alkene. However, this is not the case in the early stages of the reaction. The graph below shows how the proportions of the starting material and the two products change with time.

Points to note:

- When the alkyne concentration drops almost to zero (10 minutes), the only alkene that has been formed is the E-alkene.
- As time increases, the amount of E-alkene decreases as the amount of the Z-alkene increases.
- Eventually, the proportions of E- and Z-alkenes do not change.

Since it is the Z-alkene that dominates at equilibrium, this must be lower in energy than the E-alkene. Since we know the ratio of the products at equilibrium, we can work out the difference in energy between the two isomers:

\[
\text{ratio of } E:Z \text{ alkenes at equilibrium } = 1:35
\]

\[
K_{eq} = \frac{[Z]}{[E]} = 35
\]

\[
\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K = -8.314 \times 298 \times \ln(35) = -8.8 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}
\]

That is, the Z-alkene is 8.8 kJ mol⁻¹ lower in energy than the E-alkene.

Since the E-alkene is the quickest to form under these conditions, cis addition of HCl must have a smaller activation energy barrier than trans addition. This suggests that reaction occurs on the surface of the alumina with both the H and the Cl added to the triple bond simultaneously from the same side rather like cis-hydrogenation of triple bonds on a palladium catalyst (p. 000).
There must then be some mechanism by which the quickly formed $E$-alkene is converted into the more stable $Z$-alkene, presumably through another intermediate that is more stable than the transition state for alkene interconversion. This information is summarized on a reaction profile diagram.

Initially, the alkyne is converted into the $E$-alkene. The activation energy for this step is labelled $\Delta G^\ddagger_1$. The $E$-alkene then converts to the $Z$-isomer via an intermediate. The activation energy for this step is $\Delta G^\ddagger_2$. Overall, the reaction is the addition of HCl to the alkyne to give the $Z$-alkene—we could look on the $E$-isomer as just another intermediate. The only difference between the $E$-alkene and the intermediate in the isomerism reaction is the size of the activation energies; it is much easier to isolate the $E$-alkene because the activation energies to be overcome ($\Delta G^\ddagger_3$ and $\Delta G^\ddagger_4$) are both much larger than those of the intermediate ($\Delta G^\ddagger_5$ and $\Delta G^\ddagger_3$). The activation energy to be overcome to form the $E$-alkene ($\Delta G^\ddagger_1$) is less than that to be overcome to form the $Z$-alkene ($\Delta G^\ddagger_2$).

So what is this intermediate in the isomerization reaction? It is a cation from protonation of the alkene by more HCl. The cation is stabilized by delocalization into the benzene ring and can rotate as it has no double-bond character.

**Kinetic and thermodynamic products**

The $E$-alkene is formed faster and is known as the **kinetic product**; the $Z$-alkene is more stable and is known as the **thermodynamic product**.
If we wanted to isolate the kinetic product, the E-alkene, we would carry out the reaction at low temperature and not leave it long enough for equilibration. If, on the other hand, we want the thermodynamic product, the Z-alkene, we would leave the reaction for longer at higher temperatures to make sure that the larger energy barrier yielding the most stable product can be overcome.

**Low temperatures prevent unwanted reactions from occurring**

So far in this chapter we have seen why chemists heat up reaction mixtures (usually because the reaction goes faster) but in the introduction we also said that, in any organic laboratory, an equal number of reactions are carried out at low temperatures. Why might a chemist want to slow a reaction down? Actually, we already hinted at the answer to this question when we said that it is possible to isolate reactive carbocations. It is possible to isolate these reactive intermediates but only at low temperatures. If the temperature is too high then the intermediate will have sufficient energy to overcome the energy barrier leading to the more stable products.

In our discussion of the reactions of acid chlorides, we deduced that a unimolecular reaction to give a cation must be happening. This cation cannot be detected under these conditions as it reacts too quickly with nucleophiles. If we remove reactive nucleophiles from solution, the cation is still too unstable to be isolated at room temperature. But if we go down to −120 °C we can keep the cation alive long enough to run its NMR spectrum.

Lowering the temperature lowers the energies of all of the molecules in the sample. If there are several possible reactions that might occur and if they have different activation energies, we may be able to find a temperature where the population of molecules has only enough energy to surmount the lowest of the alternative energy barriers so that only one reaction occurs. The diazotization of aromatic amines is an example. The reaction involves treating the amine with nitrous acid (HONO) made from NaNO2 and HCl.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NH}_2 \text{H}_2\text{O}, 0–5 \degree \text{C} &\quad \rightarrow \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{NaN} &= \quad \text{Cl} \\
\text{H}_2\text{O} &\quad \text{room temperature}
\end{align*}
\]

At room temperature the diazonium salt decomposes to the phenol and cannot be used but at 0–5 °C it is stable and can be reacted with other nucleophiles in useful processes discussed in Chapter 23.

Other examples you have met involve lithiated organic molecules. These are always prepared at low temperatures, often at −78 °C. The ortholithiation of aromatic amides was mentioned in Chapter 9.

If the lithiation is carried out at 0 °C, each molecule of lithiated amide attacks another molecule of unlithiated amide in the substitution reaction from Chapter 12.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} \quad \text{NET}_2 \quad \text{s-BuLi, THF} &\quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Li} \quad \text{NET}_2 &\quad \text{0 °C}
\end{align*}
\]
The situation is more critical because of the behaviour of the solvent THF. This cyclic ether is a good solvent for lithiations because it is a good ligand for lithium and it remains liquid at $-78^\circ\text{C}$. But if lithiations are attempted at higher temperatures, THF also reacts with $s$-BuLi to give surprising by-products discussed in Chapter 35.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{THF} & \xrightarrow{s\text{-BuLi}, 0^\circ\text{C}} \text{Li} + \text{CH}_2\equiv\text{CH}_2 + \text{O}_2\text{Li} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Solvents**

The nature of the solvent used in reactions often has a profound effect on how the reaction proceeds. Often we are limited in our choice of solvent by the solubilities of the reactants and products—this can also be to our advantage when trying to separate products, for example, in ether extractions. We have seen so far in this chapter that THF is a good solvent for lithiations because it coordinates to Li, that water is a good solvent for hydrolys of carboxylic acids because it is a reagent and because it dissolves the carboxylate anion, and that alcohols are a good solvents in reactions such as transesterifications where mass action is needed to drive equilibria over towards products.

But solvents can affect reactions more drastically; for example, the reaction below gives different products depending on the choice of solvent.

In water the product is almost all benzyl naphthol. However, in DMSO (dimethyl sulfoxide) the major product is the ether. In water the oxyanion is heavily solvated through hydrogen bonds to water molecules and the electrophile cannot push them aside to get close to $\text{O}^-$ (this is an entropy effect). DMSO cannot form hydrogen bonds as it has no OH bonds and does not solvate the oxyanion, which is free to attack the electrophile.

In terms of rates of reaction, where a charged intermediate is formed, a polar solvent will help to stabilize the charge by solvation. Some of this stabilization will already be present in the transition state and solvation will therefore lower the activation energy and speed up the reaction. Turning to a reaction not dealt with elsewhere in the book, an elimination of carbon dioxide, let us see how the rate constant varies with solvent.
These solvents may be divided into three groups—those in which the reaction is slower than in benzene, those in which it is faster, and, of course, benzene itself. The solvents in which the reaction goes relatively slowly all have something in common—they have either O–H or N–H groups. Solvents of this kind are described as protic solvents, that is, they are capable of forming hydrogen bonds in solution (though none of these solvents is a good acid). Mechanistically, the important point is that these solvents solvate both cations and anions. The cations are solvated by use of the lone pairs on the oxygen or nitrogen; the anions via the hydrogens.

We can illustrate this with a schematic drawing of the solvation of a salt (NaBr) by water.

The solvents in which the reaction proceeds fastest also have something in common—they have an electronegative group (oxygen or nitrogen) but no O–H or N–H bonds. This class is known as polar aprotic solvents. Aprotic solvents can still solvate cations but they are unable to solvate anions.

We can now understand the observed trend in the reaction. In the aprotic solvents, the positively charged counterion is solvated and, to some extent, separated from the anion. The anion itself is not solvated and hence is not stabilized; it can therefore react very easily. In protic solvents, such as water, the anion is stabilized by solvation and so is less reactive. We could represent this information on an energy level diagram (overleaf). The main effect of the solvent is on the energy of the starting material—good solvation lowers the energy of the starting material.

The reaction in the aprotic solvent proceeds fastest because the activation energy for this reaction is smallest. This is not because the energy of the transition state is significantly different but because the energy of the starting material has been raised. You might wonder why the energy of the transition state is not stabilized to the same extent as the starting material on changing from an aprotic solvent to a protic solvent. This is because the charge is spread over a number of atoms in the transition state and so it is not solvated to the same extent as the starting material, which has its negative charge localized on the one atom. This is an important point since, if the transition state were stabilized by the same amount as the starting materials, then the reaction would proceed just as quickly in the different solvents since they would then have the same activation energy barriers.

When you meet the new reactions awaiting you in the rest of the book you should reflect that each is controlled by an energy difference. If it is an equilibrium, $\Delta G^\circ$ must be favourable, if a kinetically controlled reaction, $\Delta G^\ddagger$ must be favourable, and either of these could be dominated by enthalpy or entropy and could be modified by temperature control or by choice of solvent.
Summary of mechanisms from Chapters 6–12

We last discussed mechanisms in Chapter 5 where we introduced basic arrow-drawing. A lot has happened since then and this is a good opportunity to pull some strands together. You may like to be reminded:

1. When molecules react together, one is the electrophile and one the nucleophile
2. In most mechanisms electrons flow from an electron-rich to an electron-poor centre
3. Charge is conserved in each step of a reaction

These three considerations will help you draw the mechanism of a reaction that you have not previously met.

Types of reaction arrows

1. Simple reaction arrows showing a reaction goes from left to right or right to left

2. Equilibrium arrows showing extent and direction of equilibrium
Delocalization or conjugation arrows showing two different ways to draw the same molecule. The two structures (‘canonical forms’ or ‘resonance structures’) must differ only in the position of electrons.

Types of curly arrows
1. The curly arrow should show clearly where the electrons come from and where they go to.

   ![Curly arrow examples](image)

2. If electrophilic attack on a π or σ bond leads to the bond being broken, the arrows should show clearly which atom bonds to the electrophile.

   ![Curly arrow examples](image)

3. Reactions of the carbonyl group are dominated by the breaking of the π bond. If you use this arrow first on an unfamiliar reaction of a carbonyl compound, you will probably find a reasonable mechanism.

   ![Curly arrow examples](image)

Short cuts in drawing mechanisms
1. The most important is the double-headed arrow on the carbonyl group used during a substitution reaction.

   ![Double-headed arrow example](image)

2. The symbol ±H⁺ is shorthand for the gain and loss of a proton in the same step (usually involving N, O, or S).
**Introduction**

Nucleophiles add to carbonyl groups to give compounds in which the trigonal carbon atom of the carbonyl group has become tetrahedral.

In Chapter 12 you saw that these compounds are not always stable: if the starting material contains a leaving group, the addition product is a **tetrahedral intermediate**, which collapses with loss of the leaving group to give back the carbonyl group, with overall substitution of the leaving group by the nucleophile.

In this chapter, you will meet more substitution reactions of a different type. Instead of losing a leaving group, the carbonyl group loses its oxygen atom. Here are three examples: the carbonyl oxygen atom has been replaced by an atom of $^{18}$O, a nitrogen atom, and two atoms of oxygen. Notice too the acid catalyst—we shall see shortly why it is required.
You have, in fact, already met some reactions in which the carbonyl oxygen atom can be lost, but you probably didn’t notice at the time. The equilibrium between an aldehyde or ketone and its hydrate (p. 000) is one such reaction.

\[
\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{R}^1\text{C}=\text{O} \quad \text{hydrate} \quad \text{aldehyde or ketone}
\]

When the hydrate reverts to starting materials, either of its two oxygen atoms must leave: one came from the water and one from the carbonyl group, so 50% of the time the oxygen atom that belonged to the carbonyl group will be lost. Usually, this is of no consequence, but it can be useful. For example, in 1968 some chemists studying the reactions that take place inside mass spectrometers needed to label the carbonyl oxygen atom of this ketone with the isotope $^{18}\text{O}$.

By stirring the ‘normal’ $^{16}\text{O}$ compound with a large excess of isotopically labelled water, $\text{H}_2^{18}\text{O}$, for a few hours in the presence of a drop of acid they were able to make the required labelled compound. Without the acid catalyst, the exchange is very slow. Acid catalysis speeds the reaction up by making the carbonyl group more electrophilic so that equilibrium is reached more quickly. The equilibrium is controlled by mass action—$^{18}\text{O}$ is in large excess.

We need now to discuss hemiacetals though you may well wonder why – they retain the carbonyl oxygen and they are unstable. We need to discuss them as a preliminary to the much more important acetals. Hemiacetals are halfway to acetals.

**Aldehydes can react with alcohols to form hemiacetals**

When acetaldehyde is dissolved in methanol, a reaction takes place: we know this because the IR spectrum of the mixture shows that a new compound has been formed. However, isolating the product is impossible: it decomposes back to acetaldehyde and methanol.

The product is in fact a hemiacetal. Like hydrates, most hemiacetals are unstable with respect to their parent aldehydes and alcohols; for example, the equilibrium constant for reaction of acetaldehyde with simple alcohols is about 0.5 as we saw in Chapter 13.
This equilibrium constant $K$ is defined as

$$K = \frac{[\text{hemiacetal}]}{[\text{aldehyde}][\text{MeOH}]}$$

So by making $[\text{MeOH}]$ very large (using it as the solvent, for example) we can turn most of the aldehyde into the hemiacetal. However, if we try and purify the hemiacetal by removing the methanol, more hemiacetal keeps decomposing to maintain the equilibrium constant. That is why we can never isolate such hemiacetals in a pure form.

Only a few hemiacetals are stable

Like their hydrates, the hemiacetals of most ketones (sometimes called hemiketals) are even less stable than those of aldehydes. On the other hand, some hemiacetals of aldehydes bearing electron-withdrawing groups, and those of cyclopropanones, are stable, just like the hydrates of the same molecules.

Hemiacetals that can be formed by intramolecular cyclization of an alcohol on to an aldehyde are also often stable, especially if a five- or six-membered ring is formed. You met this in Chapter 6—many sugars (for example, glucose) are cyclic hemiacetals, and exist in solution as a mixture of open-chain and cyclic forms.

**Why are cyclic hemiacetals stable?**

Part of the reason for the stability of cyclic hemiacetals concerns entropy. Formation of an acyclic acetal involves a decrease in entropy ($\Delta S^*$ negative) because two molecules are consumed for every one produced. This is not the case for formation of a cyclic hemiacetal. Since $\Delta G^* = \Delta H^* - T\Delta S^*$, a reaction with a negative $\Delta S^*$ tends to have a more positive $\Delta G^*$; in other words, it is less favourable.

Another way to view the situation is to consider the rates of the forward and reverse processes. We can measure the stability of a cyclic hemiacetal by the equilibrium constant $K$ for the ring-opening reaction: a large $K$ means lots of ring-opened product, and therefore an unstable hemiacetal, and a small $K$ means lots of ring-closed product: a stable hemiacetal. After reading Chapter 13 you should appreciate that an equilibrium constant is simply the rate of the forward reaction divided by the rate of the reverse reaction. So, for a stable hemiacetal, we need a fast hemiacetal-forming reaction. And when the hemiacetal is cyclic that is just what we do have: the reaction is intramolecular and the nucleophilic OH group is always held close to the carbonyl group, ready to attack.

Acid or base catalysts increase the rate of equilibration of hemiacetals with their aldehyde and alcohol parents

Acyclic hemiacetals form relatively slowly from an aldehyde or ketone plus an alcohol, but their rate of formation is greatly increased either by acid or by base. As you would expect, after Chapters 12 and 13, acid catalysts work by increasing the electrophilicity of the carbonyl group.
Base catalysts, on the other hand, work by increasing the nucleophilicity of the alcohol by removing the OH proton before it attacks the C=O group. In both cases the energy of the starting materials is raised: in the acid-catalysed reaction the aldehyde is destabilized by protonation and in the base-catalysed reaction the alcohol is destabilized by deprotonation.

You can see why hemiacetals are unstable: they are essentially tetrahedral intermediates containing a leaving group and, just as acid or base catalyses the formation of hemiacetals, acid or base also catalyses their decomposition back to starting aldehyde or ketone and alcohol. That’s why the title of this section indicated that acid or base catalysts increase the rate of equilibration of hemiacetals with their aldehyde and alcohol components—the catalysts do not change the position of that equilibrium!

To summarize

Hemiacetal formation and decomposition are catalysed by acid or base.

Acetals are formed from aldehydes or ketones plus alcohols in the presence of acid

We said that a solution of acetaldehyde in methanol contains a new compound: a hemiacetal. We’ve also said that the rate of formation of hemiacetals is increased by adding an acid (or a base) catalyst to an alcohol plus aldehyde mixture. But, if we add catalytic acid to our acetaldehyde–methanol
Acetals are formed from aldehydes or ketones plus alcohols in the presence of acid.

In the presence of acid, hemiacetals can undergo an elimination reaction (different from the one that just gives back aldehyde plus alcohol), losing the oxygen atom that once belonged to the parent aldehyde’s carbonyl group. The stages are:

1. Protonation of the hydroxyl group of the hemiacetal
2. Loss of water by elimination. This elimination leads to an unstable and highly reactive oxonium ion
3. Addition of methanol to the oxonium ion (breaking the π bond and not the σ bond, of course)
4. Loss of a proton to give the acetal

Just as protonated carbonyl groups are much more electrophilic than unprotonated ones, these oxonium ions are powerful electrophiles. They can react rapidly with a second molecule of alcohol to form new, stable compounds known as acetals. An oxonium ion was also an intermediate in the formation of hemiacetals in acid solution. Before reading any further, it would be worthwhile to write out the whole mechanism of acetal formation from aldehyde or ketone plus alcohol through the hemiacetal to the acetal, preferably without looking at the fragments of mechanism above, or the answer below.

**Formation of acetals and hemiacetals**

Hemiacetal formation is catalysed by acid or base, but acetal formation is possible only with an acid catalyst because an OH group must be made into a good leaving group.

When you look at our version of this complete mechanism you should notice a remarkable degree of similarity in the two halves. The reaction starts with a protonation on carbonyl oxygen and, when
you get to the temporary haven of the hemiacetal, you start again with protonation of that same oxygen. Each half goes through an oxonium ion and each oxonium ion adds the alcohol. The last step in the formation of both the acetal and the hemiacetal is the loss of a proton from the recently added alcohol.

This is about as complex a mechanism as you have seen and it will help you to recall it if you see it in two halves, each very similar to the other. First, form the hemiacetal by adding an alcohol to the C=O $\pi$ bond; then lose the OH group by breaking what was the C=O $\sigma$ bond to form an oxonium ion and add a second alcohol to form the acetal. From your complete mechanism you should also be able to verify that acetal formation is indeed catalytic in acid.

Making acetals

Just as with the ester formation and hydrolysis reactions we discussed in Chapters 12 and 13, every step in the formation of an acetal is reversible. To make acetals, therefore, we must use an excess of alcohol or remove the water from the reaction mixture as it forms, by distillation, for example.

\[
\text{HOOCR} + 1 \times \text{EtOH} \xrightleftharpoons{K^{-1}} \text{HOOC-ROEt} \\
\text{HOOCR} + 2 \times \text{EtOH} \xrightleftharpoons{K^{-0.01}} \text{Me}_{3}\text{O} + \text{EtO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}
\]

In fact, acetal formation is even more difficult than ester formation: while the equilibrium constant for acid-catalysed formation of ester from carboxylic acid plus alcohol is usually about 1, for
Acetals are formed from aldehydes or ketones plus alcohols in the presence of acid

Acetal formation from aldehyde and ethanol (shown above), the equilibrium constant is \( K = 0.0125 \). For ketones, the value is even lower: in fact, it is often very difficult to get the acetals of ketones (these used to be called ketals) to form unless they are cyclic (we consider cyclic acetals later in the chapter). However, there are several techniques that can be used to prevent the water produced in the reaction from hydrolysing the product.

In these two examples, with the more reactive aldehyde, it was sufficient just to have an excess of one of the reagents (acetaldehyde) to drive the reaction to completion. Dry HCl gas can work too. In the second example, with a less reactive ketone, molecular sieves (zeolite) were used to remove water from the reaction as it proceeded.

Overcoming entropy: orthoesters

We have already mentioned that one of the factors that makes acyclic hemiacetals unstable is the unfavourable decrease in entropy when two molecules of starting material (aldehyde or ketone plus alcohol) become one of product. The same is true for acetal formation, when three molecules of starting material (aldehyde or ketone plus \( 2 \times \) alcohol) become two of product (acetal plus H\(_2\)O). We can improve matters if we tie the two alcohol molecules together in a diol and make a cyclic acetal: we discuss cyclic acetals in the next section. Alternatively, we can use an orthoester as a source of alcohol. Orthoesters can be viewed as the ‘acetals of esters’ or as the triesters of the unknown ‘orthoacids’—the hydrates of carboxylic acids. They are hydrolysed by water, catalysed by acid, to ester + \( 2 \times \) alcohol.

Here is the mechanism for the hydrolysis—you should be feeling quite familiar with this sort of thing by now.

Ketones or aldehydes can undergo acetal exchange with orthoesters. The mechanism starts off as if the orthoester is going to hydrolyse but the alcohol released adds to the ketone and acetal formation begins. The water produced is taken out of the equilibrium by hydrolysis of the orthoester.
Acetals hydrolyse only in the presence of acid

Just as acetal formation requires acid catalysis, acetals can be hydrolysed only by using an acid catalyst. With aqueous acid, the hydrolysis of acyclic acetals is very easy. Our examples are the two acetals we made earlier.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{O} \\
& \quad \text{MeCH}_2 \quad \text{CHO} \quad \text{Me} \\
& \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Me}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
3\% \text{ HCl, H}_2\text{O} & \quad \text{MeCHO} + 2 \text{ BuOH} \\
& \quad 30 \text{ min} \\
2 \text{ M H}_2\text{SO}_4 & \quad \text{CHO} + 2 \text{ MeOH}
\end{align*}
\]

\section*{Acetal hydrolysis}

Acetals can be hydrolysed in acid but are stable to base.

We won’t go through the mechanism again—you’ve already seen it as the reverse of acetal formation (and you have a hint of it in the orthoester hydrolysis just discussed), but the fact that acetals are stable to base is really a very important point, which we will use on p. 000 and capitalize on further in Chapter 24.

\section*{Cyclic acetals are more stable towards hydrolysis than acyclic ones}

Of course you want us to prove it: well—

The acetals you have met so far were formed by reaction of two molecules of alcohol with one of carbonyl compound. Cyclic acetals, formed by reaction of a single molecule of a diol, a compound containing two hydroxyl groups, are also important. When the diol is ethylene glycol (as in this example) the five-membered cyclic acetal is known as a dioxolane.

Before looking at the answer below, try to write a mechanism for this reaction. If you need it, use the mechanism we gave for the formation of acyclic acetals.
Cyclic acetals like this are more resistant to hydrolysis than acyclic ones and easier to make—they form quite readily even from ketones. Again, we have entropic factors to thank for their stability. For the formation of a cyclic acetal, two molecules go in (ketone plus diol) and two molecules come out (acetal plus water), so the usually unfavourable $\Delta S^\circ$ factor is no longer against us. And, as for hemiacetals (see the explanation above), equilibrium tends to lie to the acetal side because the intramolecular ring-closing reaction is fast.

Water is still generated, and needs to be got rid of: in the example above you can see that water was distilled out of the reaction mixture. This is possible with these diols because they have a boiling point above that of water (the boiling point of ethylene glycol is 197 °C). You can’t distil water from a reaction mixture containing methanol or ethanol, because the alcohols distil too! One very useful piece of equipment for removing water from reaction mixtures containing only reagents that boil at higher temperatures than water is called a Dean Stark head: there is a picture of this in Chapter 13.

**Modifying reactivity using acetals**

Why are acetals so important? Well, they’re important to both nature and chemists because many carbohydrates are acetals or hemiacetals (see the box below). One important use that chemists have put them to is as protecting groups.

One important synthesis of the steroid class of compounds (about which more later) requires a Grignard reagent with this structure.

Yet this compound cannot exist: it would react with itself. Instead, this Grignard reagent is used, made from the same bromoketone, but with an acetal-forming step.

Acetals, as we stressed, are stable to base, and to basic nucleophiles such as Grignard reagents, so we no longer have a reactivity problem. Once the Grignard reagent has reacted with an electrophile, the ketone can be recovered by hydrolysing the acetal in dilute acid. The acetal is functioning here as

**Acetals in nature**

We showed you glucose as an example of a stable, cyclic hemiacetal. Glucose can, in fact, react with itself to form an acetal known as maltose.
a protecting group because it protects the ketone from attack by the Grignard reagent. Protecting groups are extremely important in organic synthesis, and we will return to them in Chapter 24.

**Amines react with carbonyl compounds**

The ketone carbonyl group of pyruvic acid (or 2-oxopropanoic acid) has a stretching frequency of a typical ketone, 1710 cm\(^{-1}\). When hydroxylamine is added to a solution of pyruvic acid, this stretching frequency slowly disappears. Later, a new IR absorption appears at 1400 cm\(^{-1}\). What happens?

Well, you saw a diagram like this in the last chapter when we were discussing kinetic and thermodynamic products (p. 000) and you can probably also apply something of what you now know about the reactivity of carbonyl compounds towards nucleophiles to work out what is happening in this reaction between a carbonyl compound and an amine. The hydroxylamine first adds to the ketone to form an unstable intermediate such as a hemiacetal.

Notice that it is the more nucleophilic nitrogen atom, and not the oxygen atom, of hydroxylamine that adds to the carbonyl group. Like hemiacetals, these intermediates are unstable and can decompose by loss of water. The product is known as an oxime and it is this compound, with its C=\(\text{N}\) double bond, that is responsible for the IR absorption at 1400 cm\(^{-1}\).

Well, you saw a diagram like this in the last chapter when we were discussing kinetic and thermodynamic products (p. 000) and you can probably also apply something of what you now know about the reactivity of carbonyl compounds towards nucleophiles to work out what is happening in this reaction between a carbonyl compound and an amine. The hydroxylamine first adds to the ketone to form an unstable intermediate such as a hemiacetal.

Notice that it is the more nucleophilic nitrogen atom, and not the oxygen atom, of hydroxylamine that adds to the carbonyl group. Like hemiacetals, these intermediates are unstable and can decompose by loss of water. The product is known as an oxime and it is this compound, with its C=\(\text{N}\) double bond, that is responsible for the IR absorption at 1400 cm\(^{-1}\).

We know that the oxime is formed via an intermediate because the 1400 cm\(^{-1}\) absorption hardly appears until after the 1710 cm\(^{-1}\) absorption has almost completely gone. We also know something must be there because, by IR, everything has disappeared. There must really be another curve to show the formation and the decay of the intermediate, the hemiacetal, just like the one in the last chapter (p. 000). The only difference is that the intermediate has no double bond to give an IR absorbance. We come back to oximes later in the chapter.
Imines are the nitrogen analogues of carbonyl compounds

In fact, the oxime formed from a ketone and hydroxylamine is just a special example of an imine.

Imines are formed when any primary amine reacts with an aldehyde or a ketone under appropriate conditions: for example, cyclohexylamine and benzaldehyde.

You shouldn’t need us to tell you the mechanism of this reaction: even without looking at the mechanism we gave for the formation of the oxime it should come as no surprise to you by now. First, the amine attacks the aldehyde and the intermediate is formed. Dehydration gives the imine.

Notice that an acid catalyst is normally added for imine formation. Without an acid catalyst, the reaction is very slow, though in some cases it may still take place (oximes, for example, will form without acid catalysis, but form much faster with it). It’s important to notice that acid is not needed for the addition step in the mechanism (indeed, protonation of the amine means that this step is very slow in strong acid), but is needed for the elimination of water later on in the reaction. Imine formation is in fact fastest at about pH 4–6: at lower pH, too much amine is protonated and the rate of the first step is slow; above this pH the proton concentration is too low to allow protonation of the OH leaving group in the dehydration step. Imine formation is like a biological reaction: it is fastest near neutrality.
Either side of pH 5–6 the reaction goes more slowly. This is a sign of a change in rate-determining step. Where there is a choice between two rate-determining steps, the slower of the two determines the overall rate of the reaction. In the last chapter we saw that ester hydrolysis was a typical example of an organic reaction showing acid and base catalysis. It has a minimum rate at about neutrality showing that the mechanism must change. Where there is a choice of mechanism, the faster of the two operates. The contrast between the two is obvious from the diagrams.

Imines are usually unstable and are easily hydrolysed

Like acetals, imines are unstable with respect to their parent carbonyl compound and amine, and must be formed by a method that allows removal of water from the reaction mixture.

Imines are formed from aldehydes or ketones with most primary amines. In general, they are only stable enough to isolate if either the C or N of the imine double bond bears an aromatic substituent. Imines formed from ammonia are unstable, but can be detected in solution. CH$_3$=NH$_2$, for example, decomposes at temperatures above –80°C, but PhCH=NH is detectable by UV spectroscopy in a mixture of benzaldehyde and ammonia in methanol.

Imines are readily hydrolysed back to carbonyl compound and amine by aqueous acid—in fact,
except for the particularly stable special cases we discuss on p. 000, most can be hydrolysed by water without acid or base catalysis.

You have, in fact, already met an imine hydrolysis: at the end of Chapter 12 we talked about the addition of Grignard reagents to nitriles. The product is an imine that hydrolyses in acid solution to ketone plus ammonia.

Some imines are stable

Imines in which the nitrogen atom carries an electronegative group are usually stable: examples include oximes, hydrazones, and semicarbazones.

These compounds are more stable than imines because the electronegative substituent can participate in delocalization of the imine double bond. Delocalization decreases the δ+ charge on the carbon atom of the imine double bond and raises the energy of the LUMO, making it less susceptible to nucleophilic attack.

Oximes, hydrazones, and semicarbazones require acid or base catalysis to be hydrolysed.

Historical note

Because the hydrazone and semicarbazone derivatives of carbonyl compounds are often stable, crystalline solids, they used to be used to confirm the supposed identity of aldehydes and ketones. For example, the boiling points of these three isomeric five-carbon ketones are all similar, and before the days of NMR spectroscopy it would have been hard to distinguish between them.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{b.p. 102 °C} & \hspace{2cm} \text{b.p. 102 °C} & \hspace{2cm} \text{b.p. 106 °C}
\end{align*}
\]
Iminium ions and oxonium ions

Let’s return to the mechanism of imine formation, and compare it for a moment with that of acetal formation. The only difference to begin with is that there is no need for acid catalysis for the addition of the amine but there is need for acid catalysis in the addition of the alcohol, a much weaker nucleophile.

Up to this point, the two mechanisms follow a very similar path, with clear analogy between the intermediate and hemiacetal and the iminium and oxonium ion. Here, though, they diverge, because the iminium ion carries a proton, which the oxonium ion doesn’t have. The iminium ion therefore acts as an acid, losing a proton to become the imine. The oxonium ion, on the other hand, acts as an electrophile, adding another molecule of alcohol to become the acetal.

As you might guess, however, iminium ions can be persuaded to act as electrophiles, just like oxonium ions, provided a suitable nucleophile is present. We will spend the next few pages considering reactions in which an iminium ion acts as an electrophile. First, though, we will look at a reaction in which the iminium ion cannot lose an N–H proton because it has none.
Secondary amines react with carbonyl compounds to form enamines

Pyrrolidine, a secondary amine, reacts with isobutyraldehyde, under the sort of conditions you would use to make an imine, to give an enamine.

The mechanism consists of the same steps as those that take place when imines form from primary amines, up to formation of the iminium ion. This iminium ion has no N–H proton to lose, so it loses one of the C–H protons next to the C=N to give the enamine. Enamines, like imines, are unstable to aqueous acid. We shall return to them in Chapter 21.

- **Imines and enamines**
  - Imines are formed from aldehydes or ketones with primary amines
  - Enamines are formed from aldehydes or ketones with secondary amines
  - Both require acid catalysis and removal of water

Enamines of primary amines, or even of ammonia, also exist, but only in equilibrium with an imine isomer. The interconversion between imine and enamine is the nitrogen analogue of enolization, which is discussed in detail in Chapter 21.

- **Iminium ions can react as electrophilic intermediates**
  
  We made the point above that the difference in reactivity between an iminium ion and an oxonium ion is that an iminium ion can lose H⁺ and form an imine or an enamine, while an oxonium ion reacts as an electrophile. Iminium ions can, however, react as electrophiles provided suitable nucleophiles are present. In fact, they are very good electrophiles, and are significantly more reactive than...
carbonyl compounds. For example, iminium ions are reduced rapidly by the mild reducing agent sodium cyanoborohydride (NaCNBH₃), while carbonyl compounds are not.

![Sodium cyanoborohydride contains the cyanoborohydride anion, whose structure is CN⁻. It is a 'toned down' version of sodium borohydride—the electron-withdrawing cyanide group decreases the ease with which hydride is transferred.](image)

An alternative to Na(CN)BH₃ is NaBH(OAc)₃ (sodium triacetoxy-borohydride)—somewhat safer because strong acid can release HCN from Na(CN)BH₃.

Amines from imines: reductive amination

A useful way of making amines is by reduction of imines (or iminium ions). This overall process, from carbonyl compound to amine, is called reductive amination. This is, in fact, one of the few successful ways, and the best way, of making secondary amines. This should be your first choice in amine synthesis.

![Amines from imines: reductive amination](image)

This can be done in two steps, provided the intermediate is stable, but, because the instability of many imines makes them hard to isolate, the most convenient way of doing it is to form and reduce the imine in a single reaction. The selective reduction of iminium ions (but not carbonyl compounds) by sodium cyanoborohydride makes this possible. When NaCNBH₃ is added to a typical imine-formation reaction it reacts with the products but not with the starting carbonyl compound. Here is an example of an amine synthesis using reductive amination.

![Amines from imines: reductive amination](image)

In the first step, the ketone and ammonia are in equilibrium with their imine, which, at pH 6, is partly protonated as an iminium ion. The iminium ion is rapidly reduced by the cyanoborohydride to give the amine. Reactions like this, using ammonia in a reductive amination, are often carried out with ammonium chloride or acetate as convenient sources of ammonia. At pH 6, ammonia will be mostly protonated anyway.

In the second step of the synthesis, amine plus formaldehyde gives an imine, present as its protonated iminium form, which gets reduced. Formaldehyde is so reactive that it reacts again with the secondary amine to give an iminium ion; again, this is reduced to the amine.
An alternative method for reductive amination uses hydrogenation (hydrogen gas with a metal catalyst) to reduce the imine in the presence of the carbonyl compound.

Lithium aluminium hydride reduces amides to amines

We’ve talked about reduction of iminium ions formed from carbonyl compounds plus amines. Iminium ions can also be formed by reducing amides with lithium aluminium hydride. A tetrahedral intermediate is formed that collapses to the iminium ion.
The iminium ion, of course, more electrophilic than the starting amides (amide carbonyl groups are the least electrophilic of any!), so it gets reduced to the secondary amine. This reaction can be used to make secondary amines, from primary amines and acyl chlorides.

Cyanide will attack iminium ions: the Strecker synthesis of amino acids

Cyanide will react with iminium ions to form α amino nitriles. Although these compounds are relatively unimportant in their own right, a simple hydrolysis step produces α amino acids. This route to amino acids is known as the Strecker synthesis. Of course, it’s not usually necessary to make the amino acids that Nature produces for us in living systems: they can be extracted from hydrolysed proteins.

This Strecker synthesis is of phenylglycine, an amino acid not found in proteins. Cyanide reacts more rapidly with the iminium ion generated in the first step than it does with the starting benzaldehyde.

The synthesis of a spider toxin: reductive amination

This compound is the toxin used by the orb weaver spider to paralyse its prey:

Since the spider produces only minute quantities of the compound, chemists at the University of Bath set about synthesizing it in the laboratory so that they could study its biological properties. The toxin contains several amide and amine functional groups, and the chemists decided that the best way to make it was to link two molecules together at one of the secondary amine groups using a reductive amination.

The compound made by this reaction has almost, but not exactly, the spider toxin structure. The extra groups in brown are protecting groups, and prevent unwanted side-reactions at the other amine and phenol functional groups. We will discuss protecting groups in detail in Chapters 24 and 25.
Substitution of C=O for C=C: a brief look at the Wittig reaction

Before we leave substitution reactions of carbonyl groups, there is one more reaction that we must introduce. It is an important one, and we will come back to it again later in this book, particularly in Chapter 31. It also has a rather different mechanism from most you have met in recent chapters, but we talk about it here because the overall consequence of the Wittig reaction is the substitution of a C=C bond for a C=O bond.

We don’t normally tell you the name of a reaction before even mentioning how to do it, but here we make an exception because the reagents are rather unusual and need explaining in detail. The Wittig reaction is a reaction between a carbonyl compound (aldehyde or ketone only) and a species known as a phosphonium ylid. An ylid (or ylide) is a species with positive and negative charges on adjacent atoms, and a phosphonium ylid carries its positive charge on phosphorus. Phosphonium ylids are made from phosphonium salts by deprotonating them with a strong base.

You have already met phosphonium salts in Chapter 5 where you saw the reaction of a phosphine (triphenylphosphine) with an alkyl halide (methyl iodide).

So, here is a typical Wittig reaction: it starts with a phosphonium salt, which is treated with sodium hydride, and then with a carbonyl compound; the alkene forms in 85% yield.

What about the mechanism? We warned you that the mechanism is rather different from all the others you have met in this chapter, but nonetheless it begins with attack on the carbonyl group by a nucleophile; the nucleophile is the carbanion part of the phosphonium ylid. This reaction generates a negatively charged oxygen that attacks the positively charged phosphorus and gives a four-membered ring called an oxaphosphetane.

Now, this four-membered ring (like most other ones) is unstable, and it can collapse in a way that forms two double bonds. Here are the curly arrows: the mechanism is cyclic, and gives the alkene, which is the product of the reaction along with a phosphine oxide.
In the cyclization of the open-chain form of glucose to form the stable hemiacetal, it may be difficult to work out what has happened. Number the carbon atoms in the open-chain form and put the same numbers on the hemiacetal so that you can see where each carbon atom has gone. Then draw a mechanism for the reaction.

Draw mechanisms for these reactions, which involve the loss of carbonyl oxygen.

Each of these molecules is an acetal, that is, a compound made from an aldehyde or ketone and two alcohol groups. Which compounds were used to make these acetals?

Each of these reactions leads to an acetal or a closely related compound and yet no alcohols are used in the first two reactions and no carbonyl group in the third. How are these acetals formed?

The chemistry of some elements is dominated by one particular property, and a theme running right through the chemistry of phosphorus is its exceptional affinity for oxygen. The P=O bond, with its bond energy of 575 kJ mol\(^{-1}\), is one of the strongest double bonds in chemistry, and the Wittig reaction is irreversible and is driven forward by the formation of this P=O bond. No need here for the careful control of an equilibrium necessary when making acetals or imines. We will look at the Wittig reaction again in more detail in Chapter 31.

Summary

In this chapter, as in Chapter 12, you have met a wide variety of reactions, but we hope you have again been able to see that they are all related mechanistically. Of course, we have not been exhaustive: it would be impossible to cover every possible reaction of a carbonyl group, but having read Chapters 6, 9, 12, and 13 you should feel confident in writing a reasonable mechanism for any reaction involving nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group. You could try thinking about this, for example.

We now take our leave of carbonyl groups until Chapter 21 when we reveal a hidden side to their character: they can be nucleophilic as well as electrophilic. Meanwhile, we shall look some more at NMR spectroscopy and what it can tell us, before applying some of the principles we’ve used to explain carbonyl reactions to a new type of reaction, substitution at a saturated carbon atom.

Problems

1. In the cyclization of the open-chain form of glucose to form the stable hemiacetal, it may be difficult to work out what has happened. Number the carbon atoms in the open-chain form and put the same numbers on the hemiacetal so that you can see where each carbon atom has gone. Then draw a mechanism for the reaction.

2. Draw mechanisms for these reactions, which involve the loss of carbonyl oxygen.

3. Each of these molecules is an acetal, that is, a compound made from an aldehyde or ketone and two alcohol groups. Which compounds were used to make these acetals?

4. Each of these reactions leads to an acetal or a closely related compound and yet no alcohols are used in the first two reactions and no carbonyl group in the third. How are these acetals formed?
In the first and third of these two reactions, a compound, different in each case, must be distilled from the reaction mixture if the reaction is to go to completion. What are the compounds and why is this necessary? In the second case, why does the reaction go in this direction?

5. Suggest mechanisms for these two reactions of the smallest aldehyde, formaldehyde (methanal, CH₂=O).

Comment on the stereochemistry of the second example.

6. Suggest mechanisms for this reaction. It first appeared in Chapter 3 where we identified the rather unexpected product from its spectra but did not attempt to draw a mechanism for the reaction.

7. In Chapter 6 we described how the antileprosy drug dapsone could be made soluble by the formation of a ‘bisulfite adduct’. Now that you know about the reactions described in Chapter 14, you should be able to draw a mechanism for this reaction. The adduct is described as a ‘pro-drug’ meaning that it can give dapsone itself in the human body. How might this happen?

8. Suggest a detailed mechanism for the acetal exchange used in this chapter to make an acetal of a ketone from an orthoester.

9. When we introduced cyclic acetals, we showed you this reaction.

What are the two functional groups not affected by this reaction? How would you hydrolyse them?

10. What would actually happen if you tried to make the unprotected Grignard reagent shown here?

11. Find the acetals in cellulose.

12. A stable product can be isolated from the reaction between benzaldehyde and ammonia discussed in this chapter. Suggest a mechanism for its formation.
13. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

14. Finally, don’t forget the problem at the end of the chapter: suggest a mechanism for this reaction.
Review of spectroscopic methods

There are three reasons for this chapter

1. To review the methods of structure determination we met in Chapters 3 and 11, to extend them a little further, and to consider the relationships between them
2. To show how these methods may be combined to determine the structure of unknown molecules
3. To provide useful tables of data for you to use when you are yourself attempting to solve structure determination problems

The main tables of data appear at the end of the chapter so that they are easy to refer to when you are working on problems. You may also wish to look at them, along with the tables in the text, as you work through this chapter.

We shall deal with points 1 and 2 together, looking first at the interplay between the chemistry of the carbonyl group (as discussed in Chapters 12 and 14) and spectroscopy, solving some structural problems, then moving on to discuss, for example, NMR of more than one element in the same compound, doing some more problems, and so on. We hope that the lessons from each section will help in your overall understanding of structure solving. The first section deals with the assignment of carbonyl compounds to their various classes.

Does spectroscopy help with the chemistry of the carbonyl group?

As you can guess from the question, it does! Chapters 12 and 14 completed our systematic survey of carbonyl chemistry, the main chemical theme of the book so far (see also Chapters 6, 9, and 10), so this is an appropriate point to put together chemistry and spectroscopy on this most important of all functional groups.
We have divided carbonyl compounds into two main groups.

1. **aldehydes** (RCHO) and **ketones** (R₁CO-R₂)

2. **acids** (RCO₂H) and their derivatives (in order of reactivity):
   - acid chlorides (RCOCl)
   - anhydrides (RCO₂COR)
   - esters (R₁CO₂R₂)
   - amides (RCONH₂, R₁CONMe₂, etc.)

Which spectroscopic methods most reliably distinguish these two groups? Which help us to separate aldehydes from ketones? Which allow us to distinguish the various acid derivatives? Which offer the most reliable evidence on the chemistry of the carbonyl group? These are the questions we tackle in this section.

### Distinguishing aldehydes and ketones from acid derivatives

The most consistently reliable method for doing this is ¹³C NMR. It doesn’t much matter whether the compounds are cyclic or unsaturated or have aromatic substituents; they all give carbonyl ¹³C shifts in about the same regions. There is a selection of examples on the facing page which we now discuss. First, look at the shifts arrowed in to the carbonyl group on each structure. All the aldehydes and ketones fall between 191 and 208 p.p.m. regardless of structure, whereas all the acid derivatives (and these are very varied indeed!) fall between 164 and 180 p.p.m. These two sets do not overlap and the distinction is easily made. Assigning the spectrum of the keto-acid in the margin, for example, is easy.

The distinction can be vital in structural problems. The symmetrical alkyne diol below cyclizes in acid with Hg(II) catalysis to a compound having, by proton NMR, the structural fragments shown. The product is unsymmetrical in that the two CMe₂ groups are still present, but they are now different. In addition, the chemical shift of the CH₂ group shows that it is next to C=O but not next to oxygen. This leaves us with two possible structures. One is an ester and one a ketone. The C=O shift is 218.8 p.p.m. and so there is no doubt that the second structure is correct.

### Distinguishing aldehydes from ketones is simple by proton NMR

Now look at the first two groups, the aldehydes and ketones. The two aldehydes have smaller carbonyl shifts than the two ketones, but they are too similar for this distinction to be reliable. What distinguishes the aldehydes very clearly is the characteristic proton signal for CHO at 9–10 p.p.m. So you should identify aldehydes and ketones by C=O shifts in carbon NMR and then separate the two by proton NMR.

### Identifying acid derivatives by carbon NMR is difficult

Now examine the other panels on p. 000. The four carboxylic acids are all important biologically or medicinally. Their C=O shifts are very different from each other as well as from those of the aldehydes or ketones.
Aldehydes and ketones

The first aldehyde is vanillin which comes from the vanilla pod and gives the characteristic vanilla flavour in, for example, ice cream. Vanilla is the seed pod of a South American orchid. ‘Vanilla essence’ is made with synthetic vanillin and tastes slightly different because the vanilla pod contains other flavour components in small quantities. The second aldehyde is retinal. As you look at this structure your eyes use the light reaching them to interconvert cis and trans retinal in your retina to create nervous impulses. (See also Chapter 31.)

The two ketones are all flavour compounds too. The first, (−)-carvone, is the chief component (70%) of spearmint oil. Carvone is an interesting compound: in Chapter 16 you will meet mirror-image isomers known as enantiomers, and (−)-carvone’s mirror image (+)-carvone, is the chief component (35%) of dill oil. Our taste can tell the difference, though an NMR machine can’t and both carvones have identical NMR spectra. See Chapter 16 for more detail! The second ketone is ‘raspberry ketone’ and is largely responsible for the flavour of raspberries. It is entirely responsible for the flavour of some ‘raspberry’ foods. The signal for the aromatic carbon joined to OH is at 154.3 p.p.m. (in the 100–150 p.p.m. region because it is an unsaturated carbon atom joined to oxygen) and cannot possibly be confused with the ketone signal at 208.8 p.p.m. Both ketones have C=O shifts at about 200 p.p.m., and both lack any signals in the proton NMR of δ > 8.

Acid derivatives

Lipoic acid uses its S–S bond in redox reactions (Chapter 50), while shikimic acid is an intermediate in the formation of compounds with benzene rings, such as phenylalanine, in living things (Chapter 49). Salicylic acid’s ethyl ester is aspirin, which is, of course, like the last example ibuprofen, a painkiller.

The first acid chloride is a popular reagent for the synthesis of acetate esters and you have seen its reactions in Chapter 12. We used the other as an example in Chapter 11. We have chosen three cyclic anhydrides as examples because they are all related to an important reaction (the Diels–Alder reaction), which you will meet in Chapter 35. The first ester, methyl methacrylate is a bulk chemical. It is the monomer whose polymerization (Chapter 52) gives Perspex, the rigid transparent plastic used in windows and roofs. The second ester is an important local anaesthetic used for minor operations.

One amide is the now-familiar DMF, but the other is a tetrapeptide and so contains one carboxylic acid group at the end (the ‘C-terminus’: see Chapter 52) and three amide groups. Though the four amino acids in this peptide are identical (alanine, Ala for short), the carbon NMR faithfully picks up four different C=O signals, all made different by being different distances from the end of the chain.
The first five compounds (two acid chlorides and three anhydrides) are all reactive acid derivatives, and the five esters and amides below them are all unreactive acid derivatives and yet the C=O shifts of all ten compounds fall in the same range. The C=O chemical shift is obviously not a good way to check on chemical reactivity.

What the carbon NMR fails to do is distinguish these types of acid derivative. There is more variation between the carboxylic acids on display than between the different classes of acid derivatives. This should be obvious if we show you some compounds containing two acid derivatives. Would you care to assign these signals?

No, neither would we. In each case the difference between the carbonyl signals is only a few p.p.m. Though acid chlorides are extremely reactive in comparison with esters or amides, the electron deficiency at the carbon nucleus as measured by deshielding in the NMR spectrum evidently does not reflect this. Carbon NMR reliably distinguishes acid derivatives as a group from aldehydes and ketones as another group but it fails to distinguish even very reactive (for example, acid chlorides) from very unreactive (for example, amides) acid derivatives. So how do we distinguish acid derivatives?

Acid derivatives are best distinguished by infrared

A much better measure is the difference in IR stretching frequency of the C=O group. We discussed this in Chapter 12 (p. 000) where we noted a competition between conjugation by lone-pair electron donation into the carbonyl from OCOR, OR, or NH₂ and inductive withdrawal from the C=O group because of the electronegativity of the substituent. Conjugation donates electrons into the π* orbital of the π bond and so lengthens and weakens it. The C=O bond becomes more like a single bond and its stretching frequency moves towards the single-bond region, that is, it goes down. The inductive effect removes electrons from the π orbital and so shortens and strengthens the π bond. It becomes more like a full double bond and moves up in frequency.

These effects are balanced in different ways according to the substituent. Chlorine is poor at lone-pair electron donation (its lone pair is in an overly large 3p orbital and overlaps badly with the 2p orbital on carbon) but strongly electron-withdrawing so acid chlorides absorb at high frequency, almost in the triple-bond region. Anhydrides have an oxygen atom between two carbonyl groups. Inductive withdrawal is still strong but conjugation is weak because the lone pairs are pulled both ways. Esters have a well balanced combination with the inductive effect slightly stronger (oxygen donates from a compatible 2p orbital but is very electronegative and so withdraws electrons strongly as well). Finally, amides are dominated by conjugation as nitrogen is a much stronger electron donor than oxygen because it is less electronegative.
Conjugation with $\pi$ electrons or lone pairs affects IR C=O stretches

We need to see how conjugation works when it is with a $\pi$ bond rather than with a lone pair. This will make the concept more general as it will apply to aldehydes and ketones as well as to acid groups. How can we detect if an unsaturated carbonyl compound is conjugated or not? Well, compare these two unsaturated aldehydes.

The key differences are the frequency of the C=O stretch (lowered by 40 cm$^{-1}$ by conjugation) and the strength (that is, the intensity) of the C=C stretch (increased by conjugation) in the IR. In the $^{13}$C NMR, C3 in the conjugated enal is moved out of the alkene region just into the carbonyl region, showing how electron-deficient this carbon atom must be. In the proton NMR there are many effects but the downfield shift of the protons on the alkene especially C3 (again!) is probably the most helpful.

The two peaks for anhydrides are the symmetrical and antisymmetrical stretches for the two C=O groups; see Chapter 3, p. 000.

Because the infrared carbonyl frequencies follow such a predictable pattern, it is possible to make a simple list of correlations using just three factors. Two are the ones we have been discussing—conjugation (frequency-lowering) and the inductive effect (frequency-raising). The third is the effect of small rings and this we next need to consider in a broader context.

Small rings introduce strain inside the ring and higher s character outside it

Cyclic ketones can achieve the perfect 120° angle at the carbonyl group only if the ring is at least six-membered. The smaller rings are 'strained' because the orbitals have to overlap at a less than ideal angle.
For a four-membered ring, the actual angle is 90°, so there is 120° – 90° = 30° of strain at the carbonyl group. The effects of this strain on five-, four-, and three-membered rings is shown here.

**Lactan C=O stretching frequencies**

A further good example is the difference between C=O stretching frequencies in cyclic amides, or lactams. The penicillin class of antibiotics all contain a four-membered ring amide known as a β-lactam. The carbonyl stretching frequency in these compounds is way above the 1680 cm⁻¹ of the six-membered lactam, which is what you might expect for an unstrained amide.

But why should strain raise the frequency of a carbonyl group? It is evidently shortening and strengthening the C=O bond as it moves it towards the triple-bond region (higher frequency), not towards the single-bond region (lower frequency). In a six-membered ring, the sp² orbitals forming the σ framework around the carbonyl group can overlap perfectly with the sp³ orbitals on neighbouring carbon atoms because the orbital angle and the bond angle are the same. In a four-membered ring the orbitals do not point towards those on the neighbouring carbon atoms, but point out into space.

Ideally, we should like the orbitals to have an angle of 90° as this would make the orbital angle the same as the bond angle. In theory it would be possible to have a bond angle of 90° if we used pure p orbitals instead of sp² hybrid orbitals.

If we did we should leave a pure s orbital for the σ bond to oxygen. This extreme is not possible, but a compromise is. Some more p character goes into the ring bonds—maybe they become s⁰.8p⁰.2—and the same amount of extra s character goes into the σ bond to oxygen. The more s character there is in the orbital, the shorter it gets as s orbitals are (much) smaller than p orbitals.

The s-character argument also explains the effects of small rings on proton NMR shifts. These hydrogens, particularly on three-membered rings, resonate at unusually high fields, between 0 and 1 p.p.m. in cyclopropanes instead of the 1.3 p.p.m. expected for CH₂ groups, and may even appear at negative δ values. High p character in the framework of small rings also means high s character in C–H bonds outside the ring and this will mean shorter bonds, greater shielding, and small δ values.

### Three-membered rings and alkynes

You have also seen the same argument used in Chapter 8 to justify the unusual acidity of C–H protons on triple bonds (such as alkynes and HCN), and alluded to in Chapter 3 to explain the stretching frequency of the same C–H bonds. Like alkynes, three-membered rings are also unusually easy to deprotonate in base.

NMR spectra of alkynes are related to those of small rings

Now what about the NMR spectra of alkynes? By the same argument, protons on alkynes ought to appear in the NMR at quite high field because these protons really are rather acidic (Chapter 8).
Protons on a typical alkene have $\delta_H$ about 5.5 p.p.m., while the proton on an alkyne comes right in the middle of the protons on saturated carbons at about $\delta_H$ 2–2.5 p.p.m. This is rather a large effect just for increased s character and some of it is probably due to better shielding by the triple bond, which surrounds the linear alkyne with $\pi$ bonds without a nodal plane.

This means that the carbon atoms also appear at higher field than expected, not in the alkene region but from about $\delta_C$ 60–80 p.p.m. The s-character argument is important, though, because shielding can’t affect IR stretching frequencies, yet C$\equiv$C–H stretches are strong and at about 3300 cm$^{-1}$, just right for a strong C–H bond. The picture is consistent.

A simple example is the ether 3-methoxyprop-1-yn. Integration alone allows us to assign the spectrum, and the 1H signal at 2.42 p.p.m., the highest field signal, is clearly the alkyne proton. Notice also that it is a triplet and that the OCH$_2$ group is a doublet. This $^4J$ is small (about 2 Hz) and, though there is nothing like a letter ‘W’ in the arrangement of the bonds, coupling of this kind is often found in alkynes.

A more interesting example comes from the base-catalysed addition of methanol to buta-1,3-diyne (diacetylene). The compound formed has one double and one triple bond and the $^{13}$C NMR shows clearly the greater deshielding of the double bond.

You may have noticed that we have drawn the double bond with the cis (Z) configuration. We know that this is true because of the proton NMR, which shows a 6.5 Hz coupling between the two alkene protons (much too small for a trans coupling; see p. 000). There is also the longer range coupling ($^5J = 2.5$ Hz) just described and even a small very long range coupling ($^5J = 1$ Hz) between the alkyne proton and the terminal alkene proton.

**Simple calculations of C=O stretching frequencies in IR spectra**

The best way is to relate all our carbonyl frequencies to those for saturated ketones (1715 cm$^{-1}$). We can summarize what we have just learned in a table.
Notice in this simple table (for full details you should refer as usual to a specialist book) that the adjustment ‘30 cm$^{-1}$’ appears quite a lot (~30 cm$^{-1}$ for both alkene and aryl, for example), that the increment for small rings is 35 cm$^{-1}$ each time (30 to 65 cm$^{-1}$ and then 65 to 100 cm$^{-1}$), and that the extreme effects of Cl and NH$_2$ are +85 and –85 cm$^{-1}$, respectively. These effects are additive. If you want to estimate the C=O frequency of a proposed structure, just add or subtract all the adjustments to 1715 cm$^{-1}$ and you will get a reasonable result.

Let us try the five-membered unsaturated (and conjugated) lactone (cyclic ester) in the margin. We must add 30 cm$^{-1}$ for the ester, subtract 30 cm$^{-1}$ for the double bond, and add 30 cm$^{-1}$ for the five-membered ring. Two of those cancel out leaving just 1715 + 30 = 1745 cm$^{-1}$. These compounds absorb at 1740–1760 cm$^{-1}$. Not bad!

### Interactions between different nuclei can give enormous coupling constants

We have looked at coupling between hydrogen atoms and you may have wondered why we have ignored coupling between other NMR active nuclei. Why does $^{13}$C not cause similar couplings? In this section we are going to consider not only couplings between the same kind of nuclei, such as two protons, called **homonuclear coupling**, but also coupling between different nuclei, such as a proton and a fluorine atom or $^{13}$C and $^{31}$P, called **heteronuclear coupling**.

Two nuclei are particularly important, $^{19}$F and $^{31}$P, since many organic compounds contain these elements and both are at essentially 100% natural abundance and have spin $I = \frac{1}{2}$. We shall start with organic compounds that have just one of these nuclei and see what happens to both the $^1$H and the $^{13}$C spectra. In fact, it is easy to find a $^{19}$F or a $^{31}$P atom in a molecule because these elements couple to all nearby carbon and hydrogen atoms. Since they can be directly bonded to either, $^1J$ coupling constants such as $^1J_{CF}$ or $^1J_{PH}$ become possible, as well as the more ‘normal’ couplings such as $^2J_{CF}$ or $^3J_{PH}$, and these $^1J$ coupling constants can be enormous.

We shall start with a simple phosphorus compound, the dimethyl ester of phosphorous acid (H$_3$PO$_3$). There is an uncertainty about the structure of both the acid and its esters. They could exist as P(III) compounds with a lone pair of electrons on phosphorus, or a P(V) compounds with a P=O double bond.

In fact, dimethyl phosphite has a 1H doublet with the amazing coupling constant of 693 Hz: on a 250 MHz machine the two lines are over 2 p.p.m. apart and it is easy to miss that they are two halves of the same doublet. This can only be a $^1J_{PH}$ as it is so enormous and so the compound has to have a P–H bond and the P(V) structure is correct. The coupling to the methyl group is much smaller but still large for a three-bond coupling ($^3J_{PC}$ of 18 Hz).
Next, consider the phosphonium salt you met at the end of Chapter 14 for use in the Wittig reaction, turning aldehydes and ketones to alkenes. It has a $J_{PH}$ of 18 Hz. There is no doubt about this structure—it is just an illustration of coupling to phosphorus. There is coupling to phosphorus in the carbon spectrum too: the methyl group appears at $\delta_C$ 10.6 p.p.m. with a $J_{PC}$ of 57 Hz, somewhat smaller than typical $J_{PH}$. We haven’t yet talked about couplings to $^{13}C$: we shall now do so.

**Coupling in carbon NMR spectra**

We shall use coupling with fluorine to introduce this section. Fluorobenzenes are good examples because they have a number of different carbon atoms all coupled to the fluorine atom.

The carbon directly joined to fluorine (the *ipso* carbon) has a very large $J_{CF}$ value of about 250 Hz. More distant coupling is evident too: all the carbons in the ring couple to the fluorine in PhF with steadily diminishing $J$ values as the carbons become more distant.

Trifluoroacetic acid is an important strong organic acid (Chapter 8) and a good solvent for $^1H$ NMR. The carbon atom of the CF$_3$ group is coupled equally to all the three fluorines and so appears as a quartet with a large $J_{CF}$ of 283 Hz, about the same as in PhF. Even the carbonyl group is also a quartet, though the coupling constant is much smaller ($J_{CF}$ is 43 Hz). Notice too how far downfield the CF$_3$ carbon atom is!

**Coupling between protons and $^{13}C$**

In view of all this, you may ask why we don’t apparently see couplings between $^{13}C$ and $^1H$ in either carbon or proton spectra. In proton spectra we don’t see coupling to $^{13}C$ because of the low abundance (1.1%) of $^{13}C$. Most protons are bonded to $^{12}C$: only 1.1% of protons are bonded to $^{13}C$. If you look closely at proton spectra with very flat baselines, you may see small peaks either side of strong peaks at about 0.5% peak height. These are the $^{13}C$ ‘satellites’ for those protons that are bonded to $^{13}C$ atoms.

As an example, look again at the 500 MHz $^1H$ spectrum of heptan-2-one that we saw on p. 000. When the baseline of this spectrum is vertically expanded, the $^{13}C$ satellites may be seen. The singlet due to the methyl protons is actually in the centre of a tiny doublet due to the 1% of protons coupling to $^{13}C$. Similarly, each of the triplets in the spectrum is flanked by two tiny triplets. The two tiny triplets on either side make up a doublet of triplets with a large $J$ coupling constant to the $^{13}C$ (around 130 Hz) and smaller $J$ coupling to the two equivalent protons.
13C satellites are usually lost in the background noise of the spectrum and need concern us no further. You do, however, see coupling with 13C labelled compounds where the 13C abundance now approaches 100%. The same Wittig reagent we saw a moment ago shows a 3H doublet of doublets with the typically enormous $J_{CH}$ of 135 Hz when labelled with 13C in the methyl group.

Why is there no coupling to protons in normal 13C NMR spectra?

We get the singlets consistently seen in carbon spectra because of the way we record the spectra. The values of $J_{CH}$ are so large that, if we recorded 13C spectra with all the coupling constants, we would
get a mass of overlapping peaks. When run on the same spectrometer, the frequency at which $^{13}$C nuclei resonate turns out to be about a quarter of that of the protons. Thus a ‘200 MHz machine’ (remember that the magnet strength is usually described by the frequency at which the protons resonate) gives $^{13}$C spectra at 50 MHz. Coupling constants ($J_{CH}$) of 100–250 Hz would cover 2–5 p.p.m. and a CH$_3$ group with $J_{CH}$ of about 125 Hz would give a quartet covering nearly 8 p.p.m. See the example on previous page.

Since the proton coupled $^{13}$C spectrum can so easily help us to distinguish CH$_3$, CH$_2$, CH, and quaternary carbons, you might wonder why they are not used more. The above example was chosen very carefully to illustrate proton coupled spectra at their best. Unfortunately, this is not a typical example. More usually, the confusion from overlapping peaks makes this just not worthwhile. So $^{13}$C NMR spectra are recorded while the whole 10 p.p.m. proton spectrum is being irradiated with a secondary radiofrequency source. The proton energy levels are equalized by this process and all coupling disappears. Hence the singlets we are used to seeing.

For the rest of this chapter, we shall not be introducing new theory or new concepts; we shall be applying what we have told you to a series of examples where spectroscopy enables chemists to identify compounds.

**Identifying products spectroscopically**

**Conjugate or direct addition?**

In Chapter 10 we were discussing the reasons for conjugate addition and direct addition to the carbonyl group. We should now consider how you find out what has happened. A famous case was the addition of hydroxylamine (NH$_2$–OH) to a simple enone. Nitrogen is more nucleophilic than oxygen so we expect it to add first. But will it add directly to the carbonyl group or in a conjugate fashion? Either way, an intermediate will be formed that can cyclize.

**conjugate addition by the nitrogen atom of hydroxylamine**

![Conjugate Addition Diagram]

The two possible isomeric products were the subject of a long running controversy. Once the IR and proton NMR spectra of the product were run, doubt vanished. The IR showed no NH stretch. The NMR showed no alkene proton but did have a CH$_2$ group at 2.63 p.p.m. Only the second structure is possible.

We need to look now at a selection of problems of different kinds to show how the various spectroscopic methods can cooperate in structure determination.

**Reactive intermediates can be detected by spectroscopy**

Some intermediates proposed in reaction mechanisms look so unlikely that it is comforting if they can be isolated and their structure determined. We feel more confident in proposing an intermediate if we are sure that it can really be made. Of course, this is not necessarily evidence that the intermediate is actually formed during reactions and it certainly does not follow that the failure to isolate a given intermediate disproves its involvement in a reaction. We shall use ketene as an example.
Ketene looks pretty unlikely! It is \( \text{CH}_2\text{C}=\text{O} \) with two \( \pi \) bonds (C=C and C=O) to the same carbon atom. The orbitals for these \( \pi \) bonds must be orthogonal because the central carbon atom is sp hybridized with two linear \( \sigma \) bonds and two p orbitals at right angles both to the \( \sigma \) bonds and to each other. Can such a molecule exist? When acetone vapour is heated to very high temperatures (700–750 °C) methane is given off and ketene is supposed to be the other product. What is isolated is a ketene dimer \((\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_2)\) and even the structure of this is in doubt as two reasonable structures can be written.

The spectra fit the ester structure well, but not the more symmetrical diketone structure at all. There are three types of proton (cyclobuta-1,3-dione would have just one) with allylic coupling between one of the protons on the double bond and the \( \text{CH}_2 \) group in the ring. The carbonyl group has the shift (185 p.p.m.) of an acid derivative (not that of a ketone which would be about 200 p.p.m.) and all four carbons are different.

Ozonolysis of ketene dimer gives a very unstable compound that can be observed only at low temperatures (−78 °C or below). It has two carbonyl bands in the IR and reacts with amines to give amides, so it looks like an anhydride (Chapter 12). Can it be the previously unknown cyclic anhydride of malonic acid?

The two carbonyl bands are of high frequency as would be expected for a four-membered ring—using the table on p. 000 we estimate 1715 + 50 cm\(^{-1}\) (for the anhydride) + 65 cm\(^{-1}\) (for the four-membered ring) = 1830 cm\(^{-1}\). Both the proton and the carbon NMR are very simple: just a 2H singlet at 4.12 p.p.m., shifted downfield by two carbonyls, a C=O group at 160 p.p.m., right for an acid derivative, and a saturated carbon shifted downfield but not as much as a \( \text{CH}_2\text{O} \) group.

All this is reasonably convincing, and is confirmed by allowing the anhydride to warm to −30 °C when it loses CO\(_2\) (detected by the \( ^{13}\text{C} \) peak at 124.5 p.p.m.) and gives another unstable compound with the strange IR frequency of 2140 cm\(^{-1}\). Could this be monomeric ketene? It’s certainly not either of the possible ketene dimers as we know what their spectra are like, and this is quite different: just a 2H singlet at 2.24 p.p.m. and \( ^{13}\text{C} \) peaks at 194.0 and 2.5 p.p.m. It is indeed monomeric ketene.
Squares and cubes: molecules with unusual structures

Some structures are interesting because we believe they can tell us something fundamental about the nature of bonding while others are a challenge because many people argue that they cannot be made. What do you think are the prospects of making cyclobutadiene, a conjugated four-membered ring, or the hydrocarbons tetrahedrane and cubane, which have, respectively, the shapes of the perfectly symmetrical Euclidean solids, the tetrahedron and the cube?

With four electrons, cubane is anti-aromatic—it has $4n$ instead of $4n + 2$. You saw in Chapter 7 that cyclic conjugated systems with $4n$ electrons (cyclooctatetraene, for example) avoid being conjugated by puckering into a tub shape. Cyclobutadiene cannot do this: it must be more or less planar, and so we expect it to be very unstable. Tetrahedrane has four fused three-membered rings. Though the molecule is tetrahedral in shape, each carbon atom is nowhere near a tetrahedron, with three bond angles of 60°. Cubane has six fused four-membered rings and is again highly strained.

In fact, cubane has been made, cyclobutadiene has a fleeting existence but can be isolated as an iron complex, and a few substituted versions of tetrahedrane have been made. The most convincing evidence that you have made any of these three compounds would be the extreme simplicity of the spectra. Each has only one kind of hydrogen and only one kind of carbon. They all belong to the family $(\text{CH})_n$.

Cubane has a molecular ion in the mass spectrum at 104, correct for $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8$, only CH stretches in the IR at 3000 cm$^{-1}$, a singlet in the proton NMR at 4.0 p.p.m., and a single line in the carbon NMR at 47.3 p.p.m. A very symmetrical molecule and a stable one in spite of all those four-membered rings.

Stable compounds with a cyclobutadiene and a tetrahedrane core can be made if each hydrogen atom is replaced by a $t$-butyl group. The very large groups round the edge of the molecule repel each other and hold the inner core tightly together. Now another difficulty arises—it is rather hard to tell the compounds apart. They both have four identical carbon atoms in the core and four identical $t$-butyl groups round the edge. The starting material for a successful synthesis of both was the tricyclic ketone below identified by its strained C=O stretch and partly symmetrical NMR spectra. When this ketone was irradiated with UV light (indicated by ‘$\nu$’ in the scheme), carbon monoxide was evolved and a highly symmetrical compound $(t$-BuC)$_4$ was formed. But which compound was it?

The story is made more complicated (but in the end easier!) by the discovery that this compound on heating turned into another very similar compound. There are only two possible structures for $(t$-BuC)$_4$, so clearly one compound must be the tetrahedrane and one the cyclobutadiene. The problem simplifies with this discovery because it is easier to distinguish two possibilities when you can make comparisons between two sets of spectra. Here both compounds gave a molecular ion in the mass spectrum, neither had any interesting absorptions in the IR, and the proton NMRs could belong to either compound as they simply showed four identical $t$-Bu groups. So did the carbon NMR, of course, but it showed the core too. The first product had only saturated carbon atoms, while the second had a signal at 152.7 p.p.m. for the unsaturated carbons. The tetrahedrane is formed from the tricyclic ketone on irradiation but it isomerizes to the cyclobutadiene on heating.

Identifying compounds from nature

The next molecules we need to know how to identify are those discovered from nature—natural products. These often have biological activity and many useful medicines have been discovered this way. We shall look at a few examples from different fields. The first is the sex pheromone of the
Trinidad butterfly *Lycorea ceres ceres*. The male butterflies start courtship by emitting a tiny quantity of a volatile compound. Identification of this type of compound is very difficult because of the minute amounts available but this compound crystallized and gave enough for a mass spectrum and an IR. The highest peak in the mass spectrum was at 135. This is an odd number so we might have one nitrogen atom and a possible composition of $C_8H_9ON$. The IR showed a carbonyl peak at 1680 cm$^{-1}$. With only this meagre information, the first proposals were for a pyridine aldehyde.

Eventually a little more compound (6 mg!) was available and a proton NMR spectrum was run. This showed at once that this structure was wrong. There was no aldehyde proton and only one methyl group. More positive information was the pair of triplets showing a $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ unit between two electron-withdrawing groups ($N$ and $C=O?$) and the pair of doublets for neighbouring protons on an aromatic ring, though the chemical shift and the coupling constant are both rather small for a benzene ring.

If we look at what we have got so far, we see that we have accounted for four carbon atoms in the methyl and carbonyl groups and the $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ unit. This leaves only four carbon atoms for the aromatic ring. We must use nitrogen too as the only possibility is a pyrrole ring. Our fragments are now those shown below (the black dotted lines show joins to another fragment). These account for all the atoms in the molecule and suggest structures such as these.

Now we need to use the known chemical shifts and coupling constants for these sorts of molecules. An $N$–Me group would normally have a larger chemical shift than 2.2 p.p.m. so we prefer the methyl group on a carbon atom of the pyrrole ring. Typical shifts and coupling constants around pyrroles are shown below. Chemists do not, of course, remember these numbers; we look them up in tables. Our data, with chemical shifts of 6.09 and 6.69 p.p.m. and a coupling constant of 2.5 Hz, clearly favour hydrogen atoms in the 2 and 3 positions and suggest this structure for the sex pheromone, which was confirmed by synthesis and is now accepted as correct.

**Tables**

The final section of this chapter contains some tables of NMR data, which we hope you may want to use in solving problems. In Chapter 11 there were a few guides to chemical shift—summaries of patterns that you might reasonably be expected to remember. But we have left the main selections of hard numbers—tables that *you are not expected to remember*—until now. There are a few comments to explain the tables, but you will probably want to use this section as reference rather than bedtime reading. The first four tables give detailed values for various kinds of compounds and Table 15.5 gives a simple summary. We hope that you will find this last table particularly useful.
Effects of electronegativity

Table 15.1 shows how the electronegativity of the atom attached directly to a methyl group affects the shifts of the CH$_3$ protons ($\delta$$_H$) and the CH$_3$ carbon atom ($\delta$$_C$) in their NMR spectra.

Effects of functional groups

Many substituents are more complicated than just a single atom and electronegativity is only part of the story. We need to look at all the common substituents and see what shifts they cause relative to the CH skeleton of the molecule. Our zero really ought to be at about 0.9 p.p.m. for protons and at 8.4 p.p.m. for carbon, that is, where ethane (CH$_3$–CH$_3$) resonates, and not at the arbitrary zero allocated to Me$_4$Si. In Table 15.2 we give such a list. The reason for this is that the shifts (from Me$_4$Si) themselves are not additive but the shift differences (from 0.9 or 8.4 p.p.m.) are.

Table 15.1 Chemical shifts $\delta$ of methyl groups attached to different atoms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Electronegativity</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>$\delta$$_H$, p.p.m.</th>
<th>$\delta$$_C$, p.p.m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>CH$_3$–Li</td>
<td>-1.94</td>
<td>-14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>CH$_3$–SiMe$_3$</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>CH$_3$–I</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>-23.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>CH$_3$–SMe</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>18.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>CH$_3$–NH$_2$</td>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>26.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>CH$_3$–Cl</td>
<td>3.06</td>
<td>24.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>CH$_3$–OH</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>50.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>CH$_3$–F</td>
<td>4.27</td>
<td>75.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 15.2 Chemical shifts $\delta$ (p.p.m.) of methyl groups bonded to functional groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional group</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>$\delta$$_H$</th>
<th>$\delta$$_H$ – 0.9</th>
<th>$\delta$$_C$</th>
<th>$\delta$$_C$ – 8.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 silane</td>
<td>Me$_4$Si</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>-0.9</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>-8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 alkane</td>
<td>Me–Me</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 alkene</td>
<td>Me$_2$C=CMe$_2$</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 benzene</td>
<td>Me–Ph</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 alkyne</td>
<td>Me–C=O–R$^a$</td>
<td>1.86</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 nitrile</td>
<td>Me–CN</td>
<td>2.04</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>-6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 acid</td>
<td>Me–CO$_2$H</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 ester</td>
<td>Me–CO$_2$Me</td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 amide</td>
<td>Me–CONHMe</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>22.3</td>
<td>13.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 ketone</td>
<td>Me$_2$C=O</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>30.8</td>
<td>21.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 aldehyde</td>
<td>Me–CHO</td>
<td>2.22</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>30.9</td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 sulfid</td>
<td>Me$_2$S</td>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 sulfoxide</td>
<td>Me$_2$S=O</td>
<td>2.71</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>32.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 sulfone</td>
<td>Me$_2$SO$_2$</td>
<td>3.14</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>44.4</td>
<td>36.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 amine</td>
<td>Me–NH$_2$</td>
<td>2.41</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 amide</td>
<td>MeCONH–Me</td>
<td>2.79</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>17.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 nitro</td>
<td>Me–NO$_2$</td>
<td>4.33</td>
<td>3.43</td>
<td>62.5</td>
<td>53.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 ammonium salt</td>
<td>Me$_4$–N$^+$Cl$^-$</td>
<td>3.20</td>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>58.0</td>
<td>49.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 alcohol</td>
<td>Me–OH</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>2.60</td>
<td>50.3</td>
<td>44.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 ether</td>
<td>Me–OBu</td>
<td>3.32</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>58.5</td>
<td>50.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 enol ether</td>
<td>Me–OPh</td>
<td>3.78</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>46.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 ester</td>
<td>Me–CO$_2$Me</td>
<td>3.78</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>51.5</td>
<td>47.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 phosphonium salt</td>
<td>Ph$_3$P=Me</td>
<td>3.22</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$R = CH$_3$OH; compound is but-2-yn-1-ol.
The effects of groups based on carbon (the methyl group is joined directly to another carbon atom) appear in entries 2 to 11. All the electron-withdrawing groups based on carbonyl and cyanide have about the same effect (1.1–1.3 p.p.m. downfield shift from 0.9 p.p.m.). Groups based on nitrogen (Me–N bond) show a similar progression through amine, ammonium salt, amide, and nitro compound (entries 15–18). Finally, all the oxygen-based groups (Me–O bond) all show large shifts (entries 19–22).

Effects of substituents on CH₂ groups

It is more difficult to give a definitive list for CH₂ groups as they have two substituents. In Table 15.3 we set one substituent as phenyl (Ph) just because so many compounds of this kind are available, and give the actual shifts relative to PhCH₂CH₃ for protons (2.64 p.p.m.) and PhCH₂CH₃ for carbon (28.9 p.p.m.), again comparing the substituent with the CH skeleton.

If you compare the shifts caused on a CH₂ group by each functional group in Table 15.3 with the shifts caused on a CH₃ group by the same functional group in Table 15.2 you will see that they are broadly the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Functional group</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>δ_H</th>
<th>δ_H – 2.64</th>
<th>δ_C</th>
<th>δ_C – 28.9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>silane PhCH₂·SiMe₃</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>27.5</td>
<td>-1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hydrogen PhCH₂·H</td>
<td>2.32</td>
<td>-0.32</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>-7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>alkane PhCH₂·CH₃</td>
<td>2.64</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>benzene PhCH₂·Ph</td>
<td>3.95</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>41.9</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>nitrile PhCH₂·CH=CH₂</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>41.2</td>
<td>12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>acid PhCH₂·CO₂H</td>
<td>3.71</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>41.1</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ester PhCH₂·CO₂Me</td>
<td>3.73</td>
<td>1.09</td>
<td>41.1</td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>amide PhCH₂·CONEt₂</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>ketone (PhCH₂)₂C=O</td>
<td>3.70</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>49.1</td>
<td>20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>thiol PhCH₂·SH</td>
<td>3.69</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>sulfid (PhCH₂)₂S</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>35.5</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>sulfoxide (PhCH₂)₂S=O</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>57.2</td>
<td>28.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>sulfone (PhCH₂)₂SO₂</td>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>57.9</td>
<td>29.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>amine PhCH₂·NH₂</td>
<td>3.82</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>46.5</td>
<td>17.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>amide HCONH·CH₃Ph</td>
<td>4.40</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>42.0</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>nitroᵃ PhCH₂·NO₂</td>
<td>5.20</td>
<td>2.56</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>52.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>ammonium salt PhCH₂·NMe₃⁺</td>
<td>4.5/4.9</td>
<td>55.1</td>
<td>26.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>alcohol PhCH₂·OH</td>
<td>4.54</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>65.3</td>
<td>36.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>ether (PhCH₂)₂O</td>
<td>4.52</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>72.1</td>
<td>43.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>enol ether PhCH₂·OA⁺</td>
<td>5.02</td>
<td>2.38</td>
<td>69.9</td>
<td>41.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ester MeCO₂·CH₂Ph</td>
<td>5.10</td>
<td>2.46</td>
<td>68.2</td>
<td>39.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>phosphonium salt Ph₃P⁺·CH₂Ph</td>
<td>5.39</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>chloride PhCH₂·Cl</td>
<td>4.53</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>46.2</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>bromide PhCH₂·Br</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>33.5</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ᵃData from Kurz, 1978 #9.
bCompound is (4-chloromethylphenyloxy)benzene.
Shifts of a CH group

We can do the same with a CH group, and in the left-hand side of Table 15.4 we take a series of isopropyl compounds, comparing the measured shifts with those for the central proton (CHMe₃) or carbon (CHMe₃) of 2-methylpropane. We set two of the substituents as methyl groups and just vary the third. Yet again the shifts for the same substituent are broadly the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>$\delta_H$</th>
<th>$\delta_H - 1.68$</th>
<th>$\delta_C$</th>
<th>$\delta_C - 25.0$</th>
<th>$\delta_H$</th>
<th>$\delta_H - 0.9$</th>
<th>$\delta_C$</th>
<th>$\delta_C - 8.4$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>-0.35</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>-9.1</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH=CH₂</td>
<td>2.28</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>32.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>2.90</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>34.1</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>15.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHO</td>
<td>2.42</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMe</td>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>41.7</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>27.4</td>
<td>19.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂H</td>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂Me</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>33.9</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>10.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONH₂</td>
<td>2.40</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>11.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>2.71</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>-5.0</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NH₂</td>
<td>3.11</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>26.2</td>
<td>17.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO₂</td>
<td>4.68</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>78.7</td>
<td>53.7</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>20.8</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH</td>
<td>3.13</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>1.33</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>27.6</td>
<td>19.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP₅⁺</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>33.5</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>15.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OH</td>
<td>4.01</td>
<td>2.33</td>
<td>64.2</td>
<td>39.2</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>16.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OP₅⁺</td>
<td>3.65</td>
<td>1.97</td>
<td>68.4</td>
<td>43.4</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>22.9</td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O₂CMe</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>3.32</td>
<td>67.6</td>
<td>42.6</td>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>21.4(8)</td>
<td>17.0(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>4.19</td>
<td>2.51</td>
<td>53.9</td>
<td>28.9</td>
<td>1.52</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>18.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br</td>
<td>4.29</td>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>45.4</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>1.71</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>28.5</td>
<td>20.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>4.32</td>
<td>2.36</td>
<td>31.2</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>21.4</td>
<td>13.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*There is coupling between the CH and the Me₂ groups in the proton NMR; see p. 000.

Shifts in proton NMR are easier to calculate and more informative than those in carbon NMR

This final table helps to explain something we have avoided so far. Correlations of shifts caused by substituents in proton NMR really work very well. Those in 13C NMR work much less well and more complicated equations are needed. More strikingly, the proton shifts often seem to fit better with our understanding of the chemistry of the compounds. There are two main reasons for this.

First, the carbon atom is much closer to the substituent than the proton. In the compounds in Table 15.2, the methyl carbon atom is directly bonded to the substituent, while the protons are separated from it by the carbon atom of the methyl group. If the functional group is based on a large electron-withdrawing atom like sulfur, the protons will experience a simple inductive electron withdrawal and have a proportional downfield shift. The carbon atom is close enough to the sulfur atom to be shielded as well by the lone-pair electrons in the large 3sp³ orbitals. The proton shift
caused by S in Me₂S is about the same (1.23 p.p.m.) as that caused by a set of more or less equally strong electron-withdrawing groups like CN (1.14 p.p.m.) or ester (1.18 p.p.m.). The carbon shift (9.7 p.p.m.) is less than that caused by an ester (11.2 p.p.m.) but much more than that caused by CN, which actually shifts the carbon upfield (−6.6 p.p.m.).

Second, the carbon shift is strongly affected not only by what is directly joined to that atom (α position), but also by what comes next (β position). The right-hand half of Table 15.4 shows what happens to methyl shifts when substituents are placed on the next carbon atom. There is very little effect on the proton spectrum: all the values are much less than the shifts caused by the same substituent on a methyl group in Table 15.2. Carbonyls give a downfield shift of about 1.2 p.p.m. when directly joined to a methyl group, but only of about 0.2 p.p.m. when one atom further away. By contrast, the shifts in the carbon spectrum are of the same order of magnitude in the two tables, and the β shift may even be greater than the α shift! The CN group shifts a directly bonded methyl group upfield (−6.6 p.p.m.) when directly bonded, but downfield (14.4 p.p.m.) when one atom further away. This is an exaggerated example, but the point is that these carbon shifts must not be used to suggest that the CN group is electron-donating in the α position and electron-withdrawing in the β position. The carbon shifts are erratic but the proton shifts give us useful information and are worth understanding as a guide both to structure determination and the chemistry of the compound.

When you use this table and are trying to interpret, say, a methyl group at 4.0 p.p.m. then you have no problem. Only one group is attached to a methyl group so you need a single shift value—it might be a methyl ester for example. But when you have a CH₂ group at 4.5 p.p.m. and you are interpreting a downfield shift of 3.2 p.p.m. you must beware. There are two groups attached to each CH₂ group and you might need a single shift of about 3 p.p.m. (say, an ester again) or two shifts of 1.5 p.p.m., and so on. The shifts are additive.

### Table 15.5 Approximate additive functional group (X) shifts in ^1H NMR spectra

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry</th>
<th>Functional group X</th>
<th>^1H NMR shift difference^a, p.p.m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>alkene (−C=CH₂)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>alkyne (−C≡C)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>phenyl (−Ph)</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>nitrile (−C≡N)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>aldehyde (−CHO)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ketone (−COR)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>acid (−CO₂H)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ester (−CO₂R)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>amide (−CONH₂)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>amine (−NH₃)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>amide (−NHCOR)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>nitro (−NO₂)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>thiol (−SH)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>sulfide (−SR)</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>sulfoxide (−SOR)</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>sulfone (−SO₂R)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>alcohol (−OH)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>ether (−OR)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>aryl ether (−OAr)</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>ester (−O₂CR)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>fluoride (−F)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>chloride (−Cl)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>bromide (−Br)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>iodide (−I)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^aTo be added to 0.9 p.p.m. for MeX, 1.3 p.p.m. for CH₃X, or 1.7 p.p.m. for CHX.
1. A compound C₆H₅FO has a broad peak in the infrared at about 3100–3400 cm⁻¹ and the following signals in its (proton decoupled) ¹³C NMR spectrum. Suggest a structure for the compound and interpret the spectra.

δC (p.p.m.) 157.38 (doublet, coupling constant 229 Hz), 151.24 (singlet), 116.32 (doublet, coupling constant 7.5 Hz), 116.02 (doublet, coupling constant 23.2 Hz).

2. Suggest structures for the products of these reactions.

Compound 2A has: C₇H₁₂O₂; IR 1725 cm⁻¹; δH 1.02 p.p.m. (6H, s), 1.66 p.p.m. (3H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.51 p.p.m. (2H, t, J 7 Hz), and 3.9 p.p.m. (2H, s).

Compound 2B has: m/z 149/151 (M⁺ ratio 3:1); IR 2250 cm⁻¹; δH 2.0 p.p.m. (2H, q, J 7 Hz), 2.5 p.p.m. (2H, t, J 7 Hz), 2.9 p.p.m. (2H, t, J 7 Hz), and 4.6 p.p.m. (2H, s).

3. Two alternative structures are shown for the possible products of the following reactions. Explain in each case how you would decide which product is actually formed. Several pieces of evidence would be required and estimated values are more convincing than general statements.

4. The following products might possibly be formed from the reaction of MeMgBr with the cyclic anhydride shown. How would you tell the difference between these compounds using IR and ¹³C NMR spectra? With ¹H NMR available as well, how would your task be easier? Draw mechanisms for the formation of these compounds.

5. The NMR spectra of sodium fluoropyruvate in D₂O are given below. Are these data compatible with the structure shown? If not, suggest how the compound might exist in this solution.

δH 4.43 p.p.m. (2H, d, J 47 Hz); δC 83.5 p.p.m. (d, J 22 Hz), 86.1 p.p.m. (d, J 17 Hz), and 176.1 p.p.m. (d, J 2 Hz).

6. An antibiotic isolated from a microorganism crystallized from water and formed (different) crystalline salts on treatment with either acid or base. The spectroscopic data were as follows.

Mass spectrum: 182 (M⁺, 9%), 109 (100%), 137 (87%), and 74 (15%); δH (p.p.m.; in D₂O at pH < 1) 3.67 (2H, d), 4.57 (1H, t), 8.02 (2H, m), and 8.37 (1H, m); δC (p.p.m.; in D₂O at pH < 1) 33.5, 52.8, 130.1, 130.6, 134.9, 141.3, 155.9, and 170.2.

Suggest a structure for the antibiotic.

7. Suggest structures for the products of these two reactions.

Compound 7A: m/z 170 (M⁺, 1%), 84 (77%), and 66 (100%); IR 1773, 1754 cm⁻¹; δH(CDCl₃) 1.82 p.p.m. (6H, s) and 1.97 p.p.m. (4H, s); δC(CDCl₃) 22, 23, 28, 105, and 169 p.p.m. (the signals at 22 and 105 p.p.m. are weak).

Compound 7B: m/z 205 (M⁺, 40%), 161 (50%), 160 (35%), 106 (100%), and 77 (42%); IR 1670, 1720 cm⁻¹; δH(CDCl₃) 2.55 p.p.m. (2H, q, J 7 Hz), 3.71 p.p.m. (1H, t, J 6 Hz), 3.92 p.p.m. (2H, t, J 7 Hz), and 7.21 p.p.m. (2H, d, J 8 Hz), 7.35 p.p.m. (1H, t, J 8 Hz), and 7.62 p.p.m. (2H, d, J 8 Hz); δC(CDCl₃) 21, 47, 48, 121, 127, 130, 136, 170, and 172 p.p.m.

Suggest structures for the products of these two reactions.

8. Treatment of the two compounds shown here with base gives an unknown compound with the spectra given here. What is its structure?

m/z 241 (M⁺, 60%), 90 (100%), 89 (62%); δH(CDCl₃) 3.89 p.p.m. (1H, d, J 3 Hz), 4.01 p.p.m. (1H, d, J 3 Hz), 7.31 p.p.m. (5H, s), 7.54 p.p.m. (2H, d, J 10 Hz), and 8.29 p.p.m. (2H, d, J 10 Hz); δC(CDCl₃) 62, 64, 122, 125, 126, 127, 130, 136, 144, and 148 p.p.m. (the last three are weak).

9. Treatment of this epoxy-ketone gives a compound with the spectra shown below. What is its structure?
10. Reaction of the epoxy-alcohol below with LiBr in toluene gave a 92% yield of compound 10A. Suggest a structure for this compound.

Compound 10A: \( m/z \) C\(_8\)H\(_{12}\)O; \( \nu_{\text{max}} \) (cm\(^{-1}\)) 1685, 1618; \( \delta_{\text{H}} \) (p.p.m.) 1.26 (6H, s), 1.83 (2H, t, \( J \) 7 Hz), 2.50 (2H, dt, \( J \) 2.6, 7 Hz), 6.78 (1H, t, \( J \) 2.6 Hz), and 9.82 (1H, s); \( \delta_{\text{C}} \) (p.p.m.) 189.2, 153.4, 152.7, 43.6, 40.8, 30.3, and 25.9.

11. Female boll weevils (a cotton pest) produce two isomeric compounds that aggregate the males for food and sex. A few mg of two isomeric active compounds, grandisol and \( Z \)-Ochtodenol were isolated from 4.5 million insects. Suggest structures for these compounds from the spectroscopic data below. Signals marked * exchange with D\(_2\)O.

\( Z \)-Ochtodenol: \( m/z \) 154 (C\(_{10}\)H\(_{18}\)O), 139, 136, 121, 107, 69 (100%); \( \nu_{\text{max}} \) (cm\(^{-1}\)) 3350, 1660; \( \delta_{\text{H}} \) (p.p.m.) 0.89 (6H, s), 1.35–1.70 (4H broad m), 1.41 (1H, s*), 1.96 (2H, s), 2.06 (2H, t, \( J \) 6 Hz), 4.11 (2H, d, \( J \) 7 Hz), and 5.48 (1H, t, \( J \) 7 Hz).

Grandisol: \( m/z \) 154 (C\(_{10}\)H\(_{18}\)O), 139, 136, 121, 109, 68 (100%); \( \nu_{\text{max}} \) (cm\(^{-1}\)) 3630, 3250–3550, and 1642; \( \delta_{\text{H}} \) (p.p.m.) 1.15 (3H, s), 1.42 (1H, dddd, \( J \) 1.2, 6.2, 9.4, 13.4 Hz), 1.55–1.67 (2H, m), 1.65 (3H, s), 1.70–1.81 (2H, m), 1.91–1.99 (1H, m), 2.52* (1H, broad t, \( J \) 9.0 Hz), 3.63 (1H, ddd, \( J \) 5.6, 9.4, 10.2 Hz), 3.66 (1H, ddd, \( J \) 6.2, 9.4, 10.2 Hz), 4.62 (1H, broad s), and 4.81 (1H, broad s); \( \delta_{\text{C}} \) (p.p.m.) 19.1, 23.1, 28.3, 29.2, 36.8, 41.2, 52.4, 59.8, 109.6, and 145.1.

12. Suggest structures for the products of these reactions.

Data for compound 12A: C\(_{10}\)H\(_{13}\)OP; IR (cm\(^{-1}\)) 1610, 1235; \( \delta_{\text{H}} \) (p.p.m.) 6.5–7.5 (5H, m), 6.42 (1H, t, \( J \) 17 Hz), 7.47 (1H, dd, \( J \) 17, 23 Hz), and 2.43 (6H, d, \( J \) 25 Hz).

Data for compound 12B: C\(_{12}\)H\(_{16}\)O\(_2\); IR CH and fingerprint only; \( \delta_{\text{H}} \) (p.p.m.) 7.25 (5H, s), 4.28 (1H, d, \( J \) 4.8 Hz), 3.91 (1H, d, \( J \) 4.8 Hz), 2.96 (3H, s), 1.26 (3H, s), and 0.76 (3H, s).

13. Identify the compounds produced in these reactions. Warning! Do not attempt to deduce the structures from the starting materials but use the data! These molecules are so small that you can identify them from \(^1\)H NMR alone.

Frustulosin: \( m/z \) 202 (100%), 187 (20%), 174 (20%); \( \nu_{\text{max}} \) (cm\(^{-1}\)) 3279, 1645, 1613, and 1522; \( \delta_{\text{H}} \) (p.p.m.) 2.06 (3H, dd, \( J \) 1.0, 1.6 Hz), 5.44 (1H, dq, \( J \) 2.0, 1.6 Hz), 5.52 (1H, dq, \( J \) 2.0, 1.0 Hz), 4.5* (1H, broad s), 7.16 (1H, d, \( J \) 9.0 Hz), 6.88 (1H, dd, \( J \) 9.0, 0.4 Hz), 10.31 (1H, d, \( J \) 0.4 Hz), and 11.22* (1H, broad s); \( \delta_{\text{C}} \) (p.p.m.) 22.8, 80.8, 100.6, 110.6, 118.4, 118.7, 112.6, 125.2, 126.1, 151.8, 154.5, and 195.6.

Warning! This is difficult—after all the original authors initially got it wrong!

Hint. How might the DBEs be achieved without a second ring?
Some compounds can exist as a pair of mirror-image forms

One of the very first reactions you met, back in Chapter 6, was between an aldehyde and cyanide. They give a cyanohydrin, a compound containing a nitrile group and a hydroxyl group.

How many products are formed in this reaction? Well, the straightforward answer is one—there’s only one aldehyde, only one cyanide ion, and only one reasonable way in which they can react. But this analysis is not quite correct. One point that we ignored when we first talked about this reaction, because it was irrelevant at that time, is that the carbonyl group of the aldehyde has two faces. The cyanide ion could attack either from the front face or the back face, giving, in each case, a distinct product.

Are these two products different? If we lay them side by side and try to arrange them so that they look identical, we find that we can’t—you can verify this by making models of the two structures.

The structures are nonsuperimposable—so they are not identical. In fact, they are mirror images of each other: if we reflected one of the structures, A, in a mirror, we would get a structure that is identical with B.
We call two structures that are not identical, but are mirror images of each other (like these two) **enantiomers**. Structures that are not superimposable on their mirror image, and can therefore exist as two enantiomers, are called **chiral**. In this reaction, the cyanide ions are just as likely to attack the ‘front’ face of the aldehyde as they are the ‘back’ face, so we get a 50:50 mixture of the two enantiomers.

Now consider another similar reaction, which you have also met—the addition of cyanide to acetone.

Again a cyano hydrin is formed. You might imagine that attacking the front or the back face of the acetone molecule could again give two structures, C and D.

However, this time, rotating one to match the other shows that they are superimposable and therefore identical.

Make sure that you are clear about this: C and D are identical molecules, while A and B are mirror images of each other. Reflection in a mirror makes no difference to C or D; they are superimposable upon their own mirror images, and therefore cannot exist as two enantiomers. Structures that are superimposable on their mirror images are called **achiral**.
Chiral molecules have no plane of symmetry

What is the essential difference between these two compounds that means one is superimposable on its mirror image and one is not? The answer is symmetry. Acetone cyanohydrin has a plane of symmetry running through the molecule. This plane cuts the central carbon and the OH and CN groups in half and has one methyl group on each side.

On the other hand, the aldehyde cyanohydrin has no plane of symmetry: the plane of the paper has OH on one side and CN on the other while the plane at right angles to the paper has H on one side and RCH₂ on the other. This compound is completely unsymmetrical and has two enantiomers.

- **Planes of symmetry and chirality**
  - Any structure that has no plane of symmetry can exist as two mirror-image forms (enantiomers)
  - Any structure with a plane of symmetry cannot exist as two enantiomers

By 'structure', we don't just mean chemical structure: the same rules apply to everyday objects. Some examples from among more familiar objects in the world around us should help make these ideas clear. Look around you and find a chiral object—a car, a pair of scissors, a screw (but not the screwdriver), and anything with writing on it like this page. Look again for achiral objects with planes of symmetry—a plain mug, saucepan, chair, most man-made things without writing on them. The most significant chiral object near you is the hand you write with.

**Some examples**

**Gloves, hands, and socks**

Most gloves exist in pairs of nonidentical mirror-image forms: only a left glove fits a left hand and only a right glove fits a right hand. This property of gloves and of the hands inside them gives us the word 'chiral'—*chēr* is Greek for 'hand'. Hands and gloves are chiral; they have no plane of symmetry, and a left glove is not superimposable on its mirror image (a right glove). Feet are chiral too, as are shoes. But socks (usually!) are not. Though we all sometimes have problems finding two socks of a matching colour, once you’ve found them, you never have to worry about which sock goes on which foot, because socks are achiral. A pair of socks is manufactured as two identical objects, each of which has a mirror plane.
Stereogenic centres

Back to chemistry, and the product from the reaction of an aldehyde with cyanide. We explained above that this compound, being chiral, can exist as two enantiomers. Enantiomers are clearly isomers; they consist of the same parts joined together in a different way. In particular, enantiomers are a type of isomer called stereoisomers, because the isomers differ not in the connectivity of the atoms, but only in the overall shape of the molecule.

The ancient Egyptians had less care for the chirality of hands and their paintings often show people, even Pharoahs, with two left hands or two right hands—they just didn’t seem to notice.

**Tennis racquets and golf clubs**

If you are left-handed and want to play golf, you either have to play in a right-handed manner, or get hold of a set of left-handed golf clubs. Golf clubs are clearly therefore chiral; they can exist as either of two enantiomers. You can tell this just by looking at a golf club. It has no plane of symmetry, so it must be chiral. But left-handed tennis players have no problem using the same racquets as right-handed tennis players and modern tennis players of either chirality sometimes swap the racquet from hand to hand. Look at a tennis racquet: it has a plane of symmetry, so it’s achiral. It can’t exist as two mirror-image forms.

---

**To summarize**

- A structure with a plane of symmetry is *achiral* and *superimposable* on its mirror image and cannot exist as two enantiomers
- A structure without a plane of symmetry is *chiral* and not superimposable on its mirror image and can exist as two enantiomers
We should also introduce you briefly to another pair of concepts here, which you will meet again in more detail in Chapter 17: **configuration** and **conformation**. Two stereoisomers really are different molecules: they cannot be interconverted without breaking a bond somewhere. We therefore say that they have different **configurations**. But any molecule can exist in a number of **conformations**: two conformations differ only in the temporary way the molecule happens to arrange itself, and can easily be interconverted just by rotating around bonds. Humans all have the same **configuration**: two arms joined to the shoulders. We may have different **conformations**: arms folded, arms raised, pointing, waving, etc.

---

**Stereoisomers and constitutional isomers**

Isomers are compounds that contain the same atoms bonded together in different ways. If the connectivity of the atoms in the two isomers is different, they are **constitutional isomers**. If the connectivity of the atoms in the two isomers is the same, they are **stereoisomers**. Enantiomers are stereoisomers, and so are E and Z double bonds. We shall meet other types of stereoisomers shortly.

![constitutinal isomers: the way the atoms are connected up (their connectivity) differs](image1)

![stereoisomers: the atoms have the same connectivity, but are arranged differently](image2)

---

An aldehyde cyanohydrin is chiral because it does not have a plane of symmetry. In fact, it cannot have a plane of symmetry, because it contains a tetrahedral carbon atom carrying four different groups: OH, CN, RCH₂, and H. Such a carbon atom is known as a **stereogenic** or **chiral centre**. The product of cyanide and acetone is not chiral; it has a plane of symmetry, and no chiral centre because two of the groups on the central carbon atom are the same.

![four different groups](image3)

![only three different groups](image4)

---

If a molecule contains one carbon atom carrying four different groups it will not have a plane of symmetry and must therefore be chiral. A carbon atom carrying four different groups is a **stereogenic** or **chiral centre**.

---

We saw how the two enantiomers of the aldehyde cyanohydrin arose by attack of cyanide on the two faces of the carbonyl group of the aldehyde. We said that there was nothing to favour one face over the other, so the enantiomers must be formed in equal quantities. A mixture of equal quantities of a pair of enantiomers is called a **racemic mixture**.
Here are some more reactions you have come across that make chiral products from achiral starting materials. In each case, the principle must hold—equal amounts of the two enantiomers (racemic mixtures) are formed.

Many chiral molecules are present in nature as single enantiomers. Let’s turn to some simple, but chiral, molecules—the natural amino acids. All amino acids have a carbon carrying an amino group, a carboxyl group, a hydrogen atom, and the R group, which varies from amino acid to amino acid. So unless R = H (this is the case for glycine), amino acids always contain a chiral centre and lack a plane of symmetry.

It is possible to make amino acids quite straightforwardly in the lab. The scheme below shows a synthesis of alanine, for example. It is a version of the Strecker synthesis you met in Chapter 12.

Laboratory synthesis of racemic alanine from acetaldehyde

Alanine made in this way must be racemic, because the starting materials are achiral. However, if we isolate alanine from a natural source—by hydrolysing vegetable protein, for example—we find that this is not the case. Natural alanine is solely one enantiomer, the one drawn below. Samples of chiral compounds that contain only one enantiomer are called enantiomerically pure. We know that ‘natural’ alanine contains only this enantiomer from X-ray crystal structures.

Enantiomeric alanine

In fact, Nature does sometimes (but very rarely) use the other enantiomer of alanine—for example, in the construction of bacterial cell walls. Some antibiotics (such as vancomycin) owe their selectivity to the way they can recognize these ‘unnatural’ alanine components and destroy the cell wall that contains them.
Before we go further, we should just mention one common point of confusion. Any compound whose molecules do not have a plane of symmetry is chiral. Any sample of a chiral compound that contains molecules all of the same enantiomer is enantiomerically pure. All alanine is chiral (the structure has no plane of symmetry) but lab-produced alanine is racemic (a 50:50 mixture of enantiomers) whereas naturally isolated alanine is enantiomerically pure.

Most of the molecules we find in nature are chiral—a complicated molecule is much more likely not to have a plane of symmetry than to have one. Nearly all of these chiral molecules in living systems are found not as racemic mixtures, but as single enantiomers. This fact has profound implications, for example, in the chemistry of drug design, and we will come back to it later.

*R* and *S* can be used to describe the configuration of a chiral centre

Before going on to talk about single enantiomers of chiral molecules in more detail, we need to explain how chemists explain which enantiomer they’re talking about. We can, of course, just draw a diagram, showing which groups go into the plane of the paper and which groups come out of the plane of the paper. This is best for complicated molecules. Alternatively, we can use the following set of rules to assign a letter, *R* or *S*, to describe the configuration of groups at a chiral centre in the molecule.

Here again is the enantiomer of alanine you get if you extract alanine from living things.

1. Assign a priority number to each substituent at the chiral centre. Atoms with higher atomic numbers get higher priority.

Alanine’s chiral centre carries one N atom (atomic number 7), two C atoms (atomic number 6), and one H atom (atomic number 1). So, we assign priority 1 to the NH₂ group, because N has the highest atomic number. Priorities 2 and 3 will be assigned to the CO₂H and the CH₃ groups, and priority 4 to the hydrogen atom; but we need a way of deciding which of CO₂H and CH₃ takes priority over the other. If two (or more) of the atoms attached to the chiral centre are identical, then we assign priorities to these two by assessing the atoms attached to those atoms. In this case, one of the carbon atoms carries oxygen atoms (atomic number 8), and one carries only hydrogen atoms (atomic number 1). So CO₂H is higher priority than CH₃; in other words, CO₂H gets priority 2 and CH₃ priority 3.

2. Arrange the molecule so that the lowest priority substituent is pointing away from you.

In our example, naturally extracted alanine, H is priority 4, so we need to look at the molecule with the H atom pointing into the paper, like this.

3. Mentally move from substituent priority 1 to 2 to 3. If you are moving in a clockwise manner, assign the label *R* to the chiral centre; if you are moving in an anticlockwise manner, assign the label *S* to the chiral centre.

A good way of visualizing this is to imagine turning a steering wheel in the direction of the numbering. If you are turning your car to the right, you have *R*; if you are turning to the left you have *S*. For our molecule of natural alanine, if we move from NH₂ (1) to CO₂H (2) to CH₃ (3) we’re going anticlockwise (turning to the left), so we call this enantiomer (S)-alanine.

You can try working the other way, from the configurational label to the structure. Take lactic acid as an example. Lactic acid is produced by bacterial action on milk; it’s also produced in your muscles when they have to work with an insufficient supply of oxygen, such as during bursts of vigorous exercise. Lactic acid produced by fermentation is often racemic, though certain species of bacteria produce solely (R)-lactic acid. On the other hand, lactic acid produced by anaerobic respiration in muscles has the *S* configuration.

As a brief exercise, try drawing the three-dimensional structure of (R)-lactic acid. (You may find this easier if you draw both enantiomers first and then assign a label to each.)
You should have drawn:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(R)-lactic acid} & \quad \text{(S)-lactic acid} \\
\text{Me} & \text{OH} \quad \text{Me} & \text{OH} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \text{CO}_2\text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

Remember that, if we had made lactic acid in the lab from simple achiral starting materials, we would have got a racemic mixture of \((R)\) and \((S)\) lactic acid. Reactions in living systems can produce enantiomerically pure compounds because they make use of enzymes, themselves enantiomerically pure compounds of \((S)\)-amino acids.

Is there a chemical difference between two enantiomers?

The short answer is **no**. Take \((S)\)-alanine (in other words, alanine extracted from plants) and \((R)\)-alanine (the enantiomer found in bacterial cell walls) as examples. They both have identical NMR spectra, identical IR spectra, and identical physical properties, with a single important exception. If you shine plane-polarized light through a solution of \((S)\)-alanine, you will find that the light is rotated to the right. A solution of \((R)\)-alanine rotates plane-polarized light to the left. Racemic alanine, on the other hand, lets the light pass unrotated.

The rotation of plane-polarized light is known as optical activity

Observation of the rotation of plane-polarized light is known as **polarimetry**; it is a straightforward way of finding out if a sample is racemic or if it contains more of one enantiomer than the other. Polarimetric measurements are carried out in a polarimeter, which has a single-wavelength (monochromatic) light source with a plane-polarizing filter, a sample holder, where a cell containing a solution of the substance under examination can be placed, and a detector with a read-out that indicates by how much the light is rotated. Rotation to the right is given a positive value, rotation to the left a negative one.

Specific rotation

The angle through which a sample of a compound (usually a solution) rotates plane-polarized light depends on a number of factors, the most important ones being the path length (how far the light has to pass through the solution), concentration, temperature, solvent, and wavelength. Typically, optical rotations are measured at 20°C in a solvent such as ethanol or chloroform, and the light used is from a sodium lamp, with a wavelength of 589 nm.

The observed angle through which the light is rotated is given the symbol \(\alpha\). By dividing this value by the path length \(l\) (in dm) and the concentration \(c\) (in g dm\(^{-3}\)) we get a value, \(\frac{\alpha}{l}\), which is specific
to the compound in question. The choice of units is eccentric and arbitrary but is universal so we must live with it.

$$[\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{c}$$

Most $[\alpha]$ values are quoted as $[\alpha]_D^0$ (where the D indicates the wavelength of 589 nm, the ‘D line’ of a sodium lamp) or $[\alpha]_D^20$, the 20 indicating 20°C. These define the remaining variables.

Here is an example. A simple acid, known as mandelic acid, can be obtained from almonds in an enantiomerically pure state.

28 mg was dissolved in 1 cm$^3$ of ethanol and the solution placed in a 10 cm long polarimeter cell. An optical rotation $\alpha$ of $-4.35^\circ$ was measured (that is, 4.35° to the left) at 20°C with light of wavelength 589 nm.

What is the specific rotation of the acid?

First, we need to convert the concentration to grammes per cubic centimetre: 28 mg in 1 cm$^3$ is the same as 0.028 g cm$^{-3}$. The path length of 10 cm is 1 dm, so

$$[\alpha]_D^20 = \frac{\alpha}{c} = \frac{-4.35}{0.28 \times 1} = -155.4$$

**Enantiomers can be described as (+) or (–)**

We can use the fact that two enantiomers rotate plane-polarized light in opposite directions to assign each a label that doesn’t depend on knowing its configuration. We call the enantiomer that rotates plane-polarized light to the right (gives a positive rotation) the (+)-enantiomer (or the dextro-rotatory enantiomer) and the enantiomer that rotates plane-polarized light to the left (gives a negative rotation) the (–)-enantiomer (or the laevo-rotatory enantiomer). The direction in which light is rotated is not dependent on whether a stereogenic centre is $R$ or $S$. An (R) compound is equally as likely to be (+) as (–)—of course, if it is (+) then its (S) enantiomer must be (–). The enantiomer of mandelic acid we have just discussed, for example, is $R$-(–)-mandelic acid, because its specific rotation is negative, and (S)-alanine happens to be S-(+)-alanine. The labels (+) and (–) were more useful before the days of X-ray crystallography, when chemists did not know the actual configuration of the molecules they studied, and could distinguish two enantiomers only by the signs of their specific rotations.

**Enantiomers can be described as D or L**

Long before the appearance of X-ray crystallography as an analytical tool, chemists had to discover the detailed structure and stereochemistry of molecules by a complex series of degradations. A molecule was gradually broken down into its constituents, and from the products that were formed the overall structure of the starting molecule was deduced. As far as stereochemistry was concerned, it was possible to measure the specific rotation of a compound, but not to determine its configuration. However, by using series of degradations it was possible to tell whether certain compounds had the same or opposite configurations.

Glyceraldehyde is one of the simplest chiral compounds in nature. Because of this, chemists took it as a standard against which the configurations of other compounds could be compared. The two enantiomers of glyceraldehyde were given the labels D (for dextro—because it was the (+)-enantiomer) and L (for laevo—because it was the (–)-enantiomer). Any enantiomerically pure compound that could be related, by a series of chemical degradations and transformations, to D-(+)glyceraldehyde was labelled D, and any compound that could be related to L-(–)glyceraldehyde was labelled L. The processes concerned were slow and laborious (the scheme below shows how (–)-lactic acid was shown to be D-(–)-lactic acid) and are never used today. D and L are now used only for certain well known natural molecules, where their use is established by tradition, for example, the L-amino acids or the D-sugars. These labels, D and L, are in small capital letters.
Diastereoisomers are stereoisomers that are not enantiomers

Two enantiomers are chemically identical because they are mirror images of one another. Other types of stereoisomers may be chemically (and physically) quite different. These two alkenes, for example, are geometrical isomers (or cis–trans isomers). Their physical chemical properties are different, as you would expect, since they are quite different in shape.

\[
\text{butenedioic acids}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{fumaric acid} & : \text{trans-butenedioic acid (fumaric acid)} \\
&m.p. 299–300 ^\circ \text{C} \\
\text{maleic acid} & : \text{cis-butenedioic acid (maleic acid)} \\
&m.p. 140–142 ^\circ \text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

A similar type of stereoisomerism can exist in cyclic compounds. In one of these 4-t-butylcyclohexanols the two substituents are on the same side of the ring; in the other, they are on opposite sides of the ring. Again, the two compounds have chemical and physical properties that are quite different.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cis 4-t-butylcyclohexanol} & : \text{mp 82–83 }^\circ \text{C} \\
^1\text{H NMR: } \delta_{\text{H}} \text{ of green proton 4.02} \\
\text{trans 4-t-butylcyclohexanol} & : \text{mp 80–81 }^\circ \text{C} \\
^1\text{H NMR: } \delta_{\text{H}} \text{ of green proton 3.50}
\end{align*}
\]

Stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another are called diastereoisomers. Both of these pairs of isomers fall into this category. Notice how the physical and chemical properties of a pair of diastereoisomers differ.

**Diastereoisomers can be chiral or achiral**

This pair of epoxides was produced by chemists in Pennsylvania in the course of research on drugs intended to alleviate the symptoms of asthma. Clearly, they are again diastereoisomers, and again
they have different properties. Although the reaction they were using to make these compounds gave some of each diastereoisomer, the chemists working on these compounds only wanted to use the first (trans) epoxide. They were able to separate it from its cis diastereoisomer by chromatography because the diastereoisomers differ in polarity.

This time, the diastereoisomers are a little more complex than the examples above. The first two pairs of diastereoisomers we looked at were achiral—they each had a plane of symmetry through the molecule.

The last pair of diastereoisomers, on the other hand, is chiral. We know this because they do not have a plane of symmetry and we can check that by drawing the mirror image of each one: it is not superimposable on the first structure.

If a compound is chiral, it can exist as two enantiomers. We’ve just drawn the two enantiomers of each of the diastereoisomers of our epoxide. This set of four structures contains two diastereoisomers (stereoisomers that are not mirror images). These are the two different chemical compounds, the cis and trans epoxides, that have different properties. Each can exist as two enantiomers (stereoisomers that are mirror images) indistinguishable except for rotation. We have two pairs of diastereoisomers and two pairs of enantiomers. When you are considering the stereochemistry of a compound, always distinguish the diastereoisomers first and then split these into enantiomers if they are chiral.
In fact, the chemists working on these compounds wanted only one enantiomer of the trans epoxide—the top left stereoisomer. They were able to separate the trans epoxide from the cis epoxide by chromatography, because they are diastereoisomers. However, because they had made both diastereoisomers in the laboratory from achiral starting materials, both diastereoisomers were racemic mixtures of the two enantiomers. Separating the top enantiomer of the trans epoxide from the bottom one was much harder because enantiomers have identical physical and chemical properties. To get just the enantiomer they wanted the chemists had to develop some completely different chemistry, using enantiomerically pure compounds derived from nature.

**Absolute and relative stereochemistry**

When we talk about two chiral diastereoisomers, we have no choice but to draw the structure of one enantiomer of each diastereoisomer, because we need to include the stereochemical information to distinguish them, even if we’re talking about a racemic mixture of the two enantiomers. To avoid confusion, it’s best to write something definite under the structure, such as ‘±’ (meaning racemic) under a structure if it means ‘this diastereoisomer’ but not ‘this enantiomer of this diastereoisomer’.

So we should say, for example, that the chemists were able to separate these two diastereoisomers

![Diastereoisomers](image)

but that they wanted only this enantiomer.

When the stereochemistry drawn on a molecule means ‘this diastereoisomer’, we say that we are representing relative stereochemistry; when it means ‘this enantiomer of this diastereoisomer’ we say we are representing its absolute stereochemistry. Relative stereochemistry tells us only how the stereogenic centres within a molecule relate to each other.

**Enantiomers and diastereoisomers**

- **Enantiomers** are stereoisomers that are mirror images. A pair of enantiomers are mirror-image forms of the same compound and have opposite absolute stereochemistry
- **Diastereoisomers** are stereoisomers that are not mirror images. Two diastereoisomers are different compounds, and have different relative stereochemistry

Diastereoisomers may be achiral (have a plane of symmetry); for example, Or they may be chiral (have no plane of symmetry); for example,

![Diastereoisomers](image)

Diastereoisomers can arise when structures have more than one stereogenic centre

Let’s analyse our set of four stereoisomers a little more closely. You may have already noticed that these structures all contain stereogenic centres—two in each case. Go back to the diagram of the four structures on p. 000 and, without looking at the structures below, assign an R or S label to each of these stereogenic centres.
You should have assigned Rs and Ss like this.

All the compounds that we have talked about so far have been cyclic, because the diastereoisomers are easy to visualize: two diastereoisomers can be identified because the substituents are either on the same side or on opposite sides of the ring (cis or trans). But acyclic compounds can exist as diastereoisomers too. Take these two, for example. Both ephedrine and pseudoephedrine are members of the amphetamine class of stimulants, which act by imitating the action of the hormone adrenaline.

Ephedrine and pseudoephedrine are stereoisomers that are clearly not mirror images of each other—only one of the two stereogenic centres in ephedrine is inverted in pseudoephedrine—so they must be diastereoisomers. Thinking in terms of stereogenic centres is useful, because, just as this compound has two stereogenic centres and can exist as two diastereoisomers, any compound with more than one stereogenic centre can exist in more than one diastereoisomeric form.

Both compounds are produced in enantiomerically pure form by plants, so, unlike the anti-asthma intermediates above, in this case we are talking about single enantiomers of single diastereoisomers.

The ‘natural’ enantiomers of the two diastereomers are (−)-ephedrine and (+)-pseudoephedrine, which does not tell you which is which, or (1R,2S)-(−)-ephedrine and (1S,2S)-(−)-pseudoephedrine, which does. From that you should be able to deduce the corresponding structures.
Here are some data on (1R,2S)-(−)-ephedrine and (1S,2S)-(+)pseudoephedrine and their ‘unnatural’ enantiomers (which have to be made in the laboratory), (1S,2R)-(+)ephedrine and (1R,2R)-(−)-pseudoephedrine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(1R,2S)−</th>
<th>(1S,2R)+</th>
<th>(1S,2S)+</th>
<th>(1R,2R)−</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m.p.</td>
<td>40–40.5 °C</td>
<td>40–40.5 °C</td>
<td>117–118 °C</td>
<td>117–118 °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[α]D&lt;sup&gt;0&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>−6.3</td>
<td>+6.3</td>
<td>+52</td>
<td>−52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Evidently, the diastereoisomers are different compounds with different names and different properties, while the pair of enantiomers are the same compound and differ only in the direction in which they rotate polarized light.

We can illustrate the combination of two stereogenic centres in a compound by considering what happens when you shake hands with someone. Hand-shaking is successful only if you each use the same hand! By convention, this is your right hand, but it’s equally possible to shake left hands. The overall pattern of interaction between two right hands and two left hands is the same: a right-hand-shake and a left-handshake are enantiomers of one another; they differ only in being mirror images. If, however, you misguidedly try to shake your right hand with someone else’s left hand you end up holding hands. Held hands consist of one left and one right hand; a pair of held hands have totally different interactions from pair of shaking hands; we can say that holding hands is a diastereoisomer of shaking hands.

We can summarize the situation when we have two hands, or two chiral centres, each one R or S.

What about compounds with more than two stereogenic centres? The family of sugars provides lots of examples. Ribose is a 5-carbon sugar that contains three stereogenic centres. The enantiomer shown here is the one used in the metabolism of all living things and, by convention, is known as D-ribose. The three stereogenic centres of D-ribose have the R configuration.

In theory we can work out how many ‘stereoisomers’ there are of a compound with three stereogenic centres simply by noting that there are 8 (=2³) ways of arranging Rs and Ss.

RRR  RRS  RSR  RSS
SSS  SSR  SRS  SRR

But this method blurs the all-important distinction between diastereoisomers and enantiomers. In each case, the combination in the top row and the combination directly below it are enantiomers (all three centres are inverted); the four columns are diastereoisomers. Three stereogenic centres therefore give four diastereoisomers, each a pair of two enantiomers. Going back to the example of the C₅ aldoses, each of these diastereoisomers is a different sugar. In these diagrams each diastereoisomer is in a frame but the top line shows one enantiomer (D) and the bottom line the other (L).
You’ve probably recognized that there’s a simple mathematical relationship between the number of stereogenic centres and the number of stereoisomers a structure can have. Usually, a structure with $n$ stereogenic centres can exist as $2^n$ stereoisomers. These stereoisomers consist of $2(n-1)$ diastereoisomers, each of which has a pair of enantiomers. This is an oversimplification to be used cautiously because it works only if all diastereoisomers are chiral. We recommend that you find out how many diastereoisomers there are in every new molecule before considering enantiomers.

**Why only usually?—achiral compounds with more than one stereogenic centre**

Sometimes, symmetry in a molecule can cause some stereoisomers to be degenerate, or ‘cancel out’—there aren’t as many stereoisomers as you’d expect. Take tartaric acid, for example.

This stereoisomer of tartaric acid is found in grapes, and its salt, potassium hydrogen tartrate, can precipitate out as crystals at the bottom of bottles of wine. It has two stereogenic centres, so you’d expect $2^2 = 4$ stereoisomers; two diastereoisomers, each a pair of enantiomers.
While the pair of structures on the left are certainly enantiomers, if you look carefully at the pair of structures on the right, you’ll see that they are, in fact, not enantiomers but identical structures. To prove it, just rotate the top one through 180° in the plane of the paper.

\[ R,S \text{-Tartaric acid and } S,R \text{-tartaric acid are not enantiomers, but they are identical because, even though they contain stereogenic centres, they are achiral. By drawing } R,S \text{-tartaric acid after a 180° rotation about the central bond, you can easily see that it has a mirror plane, and so must be achiral.} \]

The formula stating that a compound with \( n \) stereogenic centres has \( 2^n - 1 \) diastereoisomers has worked but not the formula that states there are \( 2^n \) ‘stereoisomers’. In general, it’s safer not to talk about ‘stereoisomers’ but to talk first about diastereoisomers and then to assess each one for enantiomers. To say that a compound with two stereogenic centres has four ‘stereoisomers’ is rather like saying that ‘four hands are getting married’. Two people are getting married, each with two hands.

- Compounds that contain stereogenic centres but are themselves achiral are called \textit{meso} compounds. This means that there is a plane of symmetry with \( R \) stereochemistry on one side and \( S \) stereochemistry on the other.

\textbf{Meso hand-shaking}

We can extend our analogy between hand-shaking and diastereoisomers to \textit{meso} compounds as well. Imagine a pair of identical twins shaking hands. There would be two ways for them to do it: left shakes left or right shakes right: provided you know your left from your right you could tell the two handshakes apart because they are enantiomers. But if the twins hold hands, you will not be able to distinguish left holds right from right holds left, because the twins themselves are indistinguishable—this is the \textit{meso} hand-hold!

So tartaric acid can exist as two diastereoisomers, one with two enantiomers and the other achiral (a \textit{meso} compound). Since the molecule has symmetry, and \( R \) is the mirror image of \( S \), the \( RS \) diastereoisomer cannot be chiral.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chiral diastereoisomer</th>
<th>Achiral diastereoisomer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>((+)-tartaric acid)</td>
<td>((-)-tartaric acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\alpha]_D^{20})  +12</td>
<td>-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.p.</td>
<td>168–170 °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((-)-tartaric acid)</td>
<td>((+)-tartaric acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\alpha]_D^{20})  -12</td>
<td>+12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.p.</td>
<td>168–170 °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{meso}-tartaric acid</td>
<td>\text{146–148 °C}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textbf{Meso diastereoisomers of inositol}

Look out for \textit{meso} diastereoisomers in compounds that have a degree of symmetry in their overall structure. Inositol, one of whose diastereomers is an important growth factor, certainly possesses some \textit{meso} diastereoisomers.
Investigating the stereochemistry of a compound

When you want to describe the stereochemistry of a compound our advice is to identify the diastereoisomers and then think about whether they are chiral or not. Here is a simple example, the linear triol 2,3,4-trihydroxypentane or pentan-2,3,4-triol.

This is what you should do.

1. Draw the compound with the carbon skeleton in the usual zig-zag fashion running across the page

2. Identify the chiral centres

3. Decide how many diastereoisomers there are by putting the substituents at those centres up or down. It often helps to give each diastereoisomer a ‘tag’ name. In this case there are three diastereoisomers. The three OH groups can be all on the same side or else one of the end OHs or the middle one can be on the opposite side to the rest

4. By checking on possible planes of symmetry, see which diastereoisomers are chiral. In this case only the plane down the centre can be a plane of symmetry

5. Draw the enantiomers of any chiral diastereoisomer by inverting all the stereogenic centres

6. Announce the conclusion

You could have said that there are four ‘stereoisomers’ but the following statement is much more helpful. There are three diastereoisomers, the syn,syn, the syn,anti, and the anti,anti. The syn,syn and the anti,anti are achiral (meso) compounds but the syn,anti is chiral and has two enantiomers.

The mystery of Feist’s acid

It is hard nowadays to realize how difficult structure-solving was when there were no spectra. A celebrated case was that of ‘Feist’s acid’ discovered by Feist in 1893 from a deceptively simple reaction.

Early work without spectra led to two suggestions, both based on a three-membered ring, and this compound had some fame because unsaturated three-membered rings were rare. The favoured structure was the cyclopropene.

The argument was still going on in the 1950s when the first NMR spectrometers appeared. Though infrared appeared to support the cyclopropene structure, one of the first problems resolved by the primitive 40 MHz instruments available was that of Feist’s acid, which had no methyl group signal but did have two protons on a double bond and so had to be the exomethylene isomer after all.

This structure has two chiral centres, so how will we know which diastereoisomer we have? The answer was simple: the stereochemistry has to be trans because Feist’s acid is chiral: it can be resolved (see later in this chapter) into two enantiomers. Now, the cis diacid would have a plane of symmetry, and so would be achiral—it would be a meso compound. The trans acid on the other hand is chiral—it has only an axis of symmetry. If you do not see this, try superimposing it on its mirror image. You will find that you cannot.

Modern NMR spectra make the structure easy to deduce. There are only two proton signals as the
CO$_2$H protons exchange in the DMSO solvent needed. The two protons on the double bond are identical (5.60 p.p.m.) and so are the two protons on the three-membered ring which come at the expected high field (2.67 p.p.m.). There are four carbon signals: the C=O at 170 p.p.m., two alkene signals between 100 and 150 p.p.m., and the two identical carbons in the three-membered ring at 25.45 p.p.m.

Chiral compounds with no stereogenic centres

A few compounds are chiral, yet have no stereogenic centres. We will not discuss these in detail, but try making a model of this allene, which has no stereogenic centre.

These mirror images (enantiomers) are not superimposable and so the allene is chiral. Similarly, some biaryl compounds such as this important bisphosphine known as BINAP (we come back to BINAP in Chapter 45) exist as two separate enantiomers because rotation about the green bond is restricted.

If you were to look at this molecule straight down along the green bond, you would see that the two flat rings are at right angles to each other and so the molecule has a twist in it rather like the 90° twist in the allene.

These two examples rely on the rigidity of $\pi$ systems but this simple saturated system is also chiral. These two rings have to be orthogonal because of the tetrahedral nature of the central carbon atom. There can be no plane of symmetry here either but the central carbon is not chiral.
There are other types of chiral molecule but they all share the same feature—there is no plane of symmetry.

**Separating enantiomers is called resolution**

Early in this chapter, we said that most of the molecules in nature are chiral, and that Nature usually produces these molecules as single enantiomers. We’ve talked about the amino acids, the sugars, ephedrine, pseudoephedrine, and tartaric acid—all compounds that can be isolated from natural sources as single enantiomers. On the other hand, in the lab, if we make chiral compounds from achiral starting materials, we are doomed to get racemic mixtures. So how do chemists ever isolate compounds as single enantiomers, other than by extracting them from natural sources? We’ll consider this question in much more detail in Chapter 45, but here we will look at the simplest way: using nature’s enantiomerically pure compounds to help us separate the components of a racemic mixture into its two enantiomers. This process is called resolution.

Imagine the reaction between a chiral, but racemic alcohol and a chiral, but racemic carboxylic acid, to give an ester in an ordinary acid-catalysed esterification (Chapter 12).

The product contains two chiral centres, so we expect to get two diastereoisomers, each a racemic mixture of two enantiomers. Diastereoisomers have different physical properties, so they should be easy to separate, for example by chromatography.

We could then reverse the esterification step, and hydrolyse either of these diastereoisomers, to regenerate racemic alcohol and racemic acid.

If we repeat this reaction, this time using an enantiomerically pure sample of the acid (available from \((R)\)-mandelic acid, the almond extract you met on p. 000), we will again get two diastereoisomeric products, but this time each one will be enantiomerically pure.
If we now hydrolyse each diastereoisomer separately, we have done something rather remarkable: we have managed to separate to two enantiomers of the starting alcohol.

A separation of two enantiomers is called a resolution. Resolutions can be carried out only if we make use of a component that is already enantiomerically pure: it is very useful that Nature provides us with such compounds; resolutions nearly always make use of compounds derived from nature.

Now for a real example. Chemists studying the role of amino acids in brain function needed to obtain each of the two enantiomers of this compound.

They made a racemic sample using the Strecker synthesis of amino acids that you met in Chapter 12. The racemic amino acid was reacted with acetic anhydride to make the mixed anhydride and then with the sodium salt of naturally derived, enantiomerically pure alcohol menthol to give two diastereoisomers of the ester (see top of facing page).

One of the diastereoisomers turned out to be more crystalline (that is, to have a higher melting point) than the other and, by allowing the mixture to crystallize, the chemists were able to isolate a pure sample of this diastereoisomer. Evaporating the diastereoisomer left in solution (the ‘mother liquors’) gave them the less crystalline diastereoisomer.

Next the esters were hydrolysed by boiling them in aqueous KOH. The acids obtained were enantiomers, as shown by their (nearly) opposite optical rotations and similar melting points. Finally, a more vigorous hydrolysis of the amides (boiling for 40 hours with 20% NaOH) gave them the amino acids they required for their biological studies (see bottom of facing page).
**Resolutions using diastereoisomeric salts**

The key point about resolution is that we must bring together two stereogenic centres in such a way that there is a degree of interaction between them: separable diastereoisomers are created from inseparable enantiomers. In the last two examples, the stereogenic centres were brought together in covalent compounds, esters. Ionic compounds will do just as well—in fact, they are often better because it is easier to recover the compound after the resolution.
An important example is the resolution of the enantiomers of naproxen. Naproxen is a member of a family of compounds known as Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs) which are 2-aryl propionic acids. This class also includes ibuprofen, the painkiller developed by Boots and marketed as Nurofen.

Both naproxen and ibuprofen are chiral but, while both enantiomers of ibuprofen are effective painkillers, and the drug is sold as a racemic mixture (and anyway racemizes in the body) only the (S) enantiomer of naproxen has anti-inflammatory activity. When the American pharmaceutical company Syntex first marketed the drug they needed a way of resolving the racemic naproxen they synthesized in the laboratory.

Since naproxen is a carboxylic acid, they chose to make the carboxylate salt of an enantiomerically pure amine, and found that the most effective was this glucose derivative. Crystals were formed, which consisted of the salt of the amine and (S)-naproxen, the salt of the amine with (R)-naproxen (the diastereoisomer of the crystalline salt) being more soluble and so remaining in solution. These crystals were filtered off and treated with base basic, releasing the amine (which can later be recovered and reused) and allowing the (S)-naproxen to crystallize as its sodium salt.

Resolutions can be carried out by chromatography on chiral materials

Interactions even weaker than ionic bonds can be used to separate enantiomers. Chromatographic separation relies on a difference in affinity between a stationary phase (often silica) and a mobile phase (the solvent travelling through the stationary phase, known as the eluent) mediated by, for example, hydrogen bonds or van der Waals interactions. If the stationary phase is made chiral by bonding it with an enantiomERICally pure compound (often a derivative of an amino acid), chromatography can be used to separate enantiomers.
Chirality in Drugs

You may consider it strange that it was necessary to market naproxen as a single enantiomer, in view of what we have said about enantiomers having identical properties. The two enantiomers of naproxen do indeed have identical properties in the lab, but once they are inside a living system, and any other chiral molecules, are differentiated by interactions with the enantiomerically pure molecules they find there. An analogy is that of a pair of gloves—the gloves weigh the same, are made of the same material, and have the same colour—in these respects they are identical. But interact them with a chiral environment, such as a hand, and they become distinguishable because only one fits.

The way in which drugs interact with receptors mirrors this hand-and-glove analogy quite closely. Drug receptors, into which drug molecules fit like hands in gloves, are nearly always protein molecules, which are enantiomerically pure because they are made up of just L-amino acids. One enantiomer of a drug is likely to interact much better with the other, or perhaps in a different way altogether, so the two enantiomers of chiral drugs often have quite different pharmacological effects.

In the case of naproxen, the (S)-enantiomer is 28 times as effective as the (R). Ibuprofen, on the other hand, is still marketed as a racemate because the two enantiomers have more or less the same painkilling effect. Sometimes, the enantiomers of a drug may have completely different therapeutic properties. One example is Darvon, which is a painkiller. Its enantiomer, known as Novrad, is an anticonvulsant agent. Notice how the enantiomeric relationship between these two drugs extends beyond their chemical structures! In Chapter 45 we will talk about other cases where two enantiomers have quite different biological effects.

Chromatography on a chiral stationary phase is especially important when the compounds being resolved have no functional groups suitable for making the derivatives (usually esters or salts) needed for the more classical resolutions described above. For example, the two enantiomers of an analogue of the tranquillizer Valium were found to have quite different biological activities.

In order to study these compounds further, it was necessary to obtain them enantiomerically pure. This was done by passing a solution of the racemic compound through a column of silica bonded to an amino-acid-derived chiral stationary phase. The (R)-(-) enantiomer showed a lower affinity for the stationary phase, and therefore was eluted from the column first, followed by the (S)-(+) enantiomer.
Two enantiomers of one molecule may be the same compound, but they are clearly different, though only in a limited number of situations. They can interact with biological systems differently, for example, and can form salts or compounds with different properties when reacted with a single enantiomer of another compound. In essence, enantiomers behave identically except when they are placed in a chiral environment. In Chapter 45, we will see how to use this fact to make single enantiomers of chiral compounds, but next we move on to three classes of reactions in which stereochemistry plays a key role: substitutions, eliminations, and additions.

Problems

1. Assign a configuration, R or S, to each of these compounds.

2. If a solution of a compound has a rotation of +12, how could you tell if this was actually +12, or really –348, or +372?

3. Cinderella’s glass slipper was undoubtedly a chiral object. But would it have rotated the plane of polarized light?

4. Are these compounds chiral? Draw diagrams to justify your answer.

5. What makes molecules chiral? Give three examples of different types of chirality. State with explanations whether the following compounds are chiral.
6. Discuss the stereochemistry of these compounds. *(Hint. This means saying how many diastereoisomers there are, drawing clear diagrams of each, and saying whether they are chiral or not.)*

7. In each case state with explanations whether the products of these reactions are chiral and/or optically active.

8. Propose mechanisms for these reactions that explain the stereochemistry of the products. All compounds are optically active.

9. Discuss the stereochemistry of these compounds. The diagrams are deliberately poor ones that are ambiguous about the stereochemistry—your answer should use good diagrams that give the stereochemistry clearly.

10. This compound racemizes in base. Why is that?

11. Draw mechanisms for these reactions. Will the products be single stereoisomers?

12. How many diastereoisomers of compound 1 are there? State clearly whether each diastereoisomer is chiral or not. If you had made a random mixture of stereoisomers by a chemical reaction, by what types of methods might they be separated? Which isomer(s) would be expected from the hydrogenation of compound 2?

13. Just for fun, you might like to try and work out just how many diastereoisomers inositol has and how many of them are *meso* compounds.
Nucleophilic substitution

Substitution is the replacement of one group by another. In Chapter 12 we discussed nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group, this sort of thing.

The phenyl and carbonyl groups remain in the molecule but the Cl group is replaced by the NH₂ group. We called the molecule of ammonia (NH₃) the nucleophile and the chloride was called the leaving group. In this chapter we shall be looking at similar reactions at saturated carbon atoms, this sort of thing.

During this reaction, the methyl group remains the same and so does the CH₂ group, but the Cl group is replaced by the PhS group: it is a substitution reaction. The reaction happens at the CH₂ group—a saturated carbon atom—so the reaction is a nucleophilic substitution at a saturated carbon atom. This reaction and the one above may look superficially the same but they are quite different. We also changed the reagent for the substitution at a saturated carbon, because NH₃ would not give a good yield of MeCH₂NH₂ in the second type of reaction. The requirements for good reagents are different in substitution at the carbonyl group and at saturated carbon.

The main change is, of course, the absence of the carbonyl group. Mechanistically this is an enormous difference. The mechanism for the first reaction is:
It is immediately obvious that the first step is no longer possible at a saturated carbon atom. The electrons cannot be added to a $\pi$ bond as the CH$_2$ group is fully saturated. The nucleophile cannot add first and the leaving group go later because this would give a 5-valent carbon atom. Two new and different mechanisms become possible. Either the leaving group goes first and the nucleophile comes in later, or the two events happen at the same time. The first of these possibilities you will learn to call the S$_{N1}$ mechanism. The second mechanism, which shows that the only way the carbon atom can accept electrons is if it loses some at the same time, you will learn to call the S$_{N2}$ mechanism. You will see later that both mechanisms are possible here.

The S$_{N1}$ mechanism

![Diagram of S$_{N1}$ mechanism]

The mechanism of the PBr$_3$ reaction will be discussed when we come to S$_{N2}$ reactions later in this chapter.

We shall spend some time looking at the differences between these mechanisms. But first we must establish how we know that there are two mechanisms.

If we look at a commonly used nucleophilic substitution, the replacement of OH by Br, we find that two quite different reaction conditions are used. Tertiary alcohols react rapidly with HBr to give tertiary alkyl bromides. Primary alcohols, on the other hand, react only very slowly with HBr and are usually converted to primary alkyl bromides with PBr$_3$.

If we collect together those alcohols that react rapidly with HBr to give good yields of alkyl bromides, we find one thing in common: they can all form stable carbocations, that is, cations where the positive charge is on the carbon atom.

![Carbocation stability]

These carbocations are relatively stable as far as carbocations go. But you would not be able to keep even these ‘stable’ carbocations in a bottle on the shelf. The concept of more and less stable carbocations is important in understanding the S$_{N1}$ reaction.

They can form carbocations, but do they? It is one thing to suggest the existence of a reactive intermediate, another to prove that it is formed. We shall spend some time showing that carbocations do really exist in solution and more time showing that they are indeed intermediates in this mechanism for substitution that you will learn to call the S$_{N1}$ mechanism.
the S_N1 mechanism for nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon

**Stage 1: formation of the carbocation**

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \rightarrow \text{H}^+ \\
\text{OH}_2 \rightarrow \text{OH}_2^-
\end{array}
\]

**Stage 2: capture of the carbocation by the nucleophile**

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Br} \rightarrow \text{Br}^-
\end{array}
\]

**Structure and stability of carbocations**

We shall break off this mechanistic discussion to establish the nature of carbocations as ions that can be isolated and as intermediates in substitution reactions. We have seen in Chapter 3 that cations can easily be made in the gas phase by electron bombardment. We met these cations among others.

Carbocations formed in the mass spectrometer

We also met the unusual cation CH_3^+. This cation shares *eight* electrons among five bonds and has a full outer shell like that of the ammonium ion NH_4^+. We call CH_3^+ a *carbonium* ion. The three ions formed in the mass spectrometer have only *three* bonds to the positively charged centre, only *six* electrons in the outer shell, and are electron-deficient. We call these ions *carbenium* ions and we may call both types carbocations. Table 17.1 gives a summary of the two types of carbocations.

It is the carbenium ions that interest us in this chapter because they are the intermediates in some nucleophilic substitutions. The simplest possible carbenium ion would be CH_3^+, the methyl cation, and it would be planar with an empty p orbital.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Carbenium ions</th>
<th>Carbonium ions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>number of bonds to C^+</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrons in outer shell</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty orbital?</td>
<td>yes, a p orbital</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electron-deficient</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 17.1.** Carbocations: carbenium ions and carbonium ions

Example

[Diagram showing examples of carbocations]
We did not meet this cation when we were discussing mass spectra, but we did meet the three ions on p. 000. The methyl cation is so unstable that it is rarely formed even in the gas phase. Each of these three ions are formed because they have extra stabilization of some sort. The first is an acylium ion which is actually linear with most of the positive charge on the oxygen atom. It is more an oxonium ion than a carbocation. The third ion also has the positive charge carried by a heteroatom—this time it is nitrogen and the cation is more stable. It is much better to have a positive charge on nitrogen than on carbon. Notice that in both of the ‘preferred representations’ no atom is electron-deficient: all of the C, N, and O atoms have eight electrons.

The second ion has no heteroatom but it has a benzene ring and the positive charge is delocalized around the ring, especially into the 2- and the 4- positions.

Thus, none of these three ions is a simple carbenium ion with the charge localized on an electron-deficient carbon atom. Most stable carbocations have extra stabilization of this sort. But even these relatively stable cations cannot be detected in normal solutions by NMR. This is because they are so reactive that they combine with even weak nucleophiles like water or chloride ions. Yet due to Olah’s discovery of superacid (also called ‘magic acid’) in the 1960s we know that carbocations can exist in solution (you can read about this in the box). But are they formed as intermediates in substitution reactions?

Stable carbocations in superacid media

Olah’s idea was to have a solution containing no nucleophiles. This sounds a bit tricky as any cation must have an anion to balance the charge and surely the anion will be a nucleophile? Well, nearly all anions are nucleophiles but there are some that consist of a negatively charged atom surrounded by tightly held halogen atoms. Examples include BF₄⁻, PF₆⁻, and SbF₆⁻. The first is small and tetrahedral and the others are larger and octahedral.

In these anions, the fluorine atoms are very tightly held around the central atom, which carries the formal negative charge. The negative charge does not correspond to a lone pair of electrons (cf. the role of NaBH₄ in carboxyl reductions) and so there is nothing to act as a nucleophile. It was important to have a nonnucleophilic solvent and low temperatures, and liquid SO₂ at ~70 °C proved ideal. With these conditions, Olah was able to make carbocations from alcohols. He treated tert-butanol with SbF₅ and HF in liquid SO₂. This is the reaction.

The proton NMR of this cation showed just one signal for the three methyl groups at 4.15 p.p.m., quite far downfield for C–Me groups. The ¹³C spectrum also showed downfield Me groups at 47.5 p.p.m., but the key evidence was the shift of the central carbon atom, which came at an amazing 320.6 p.p.m., way downfield from anything we have met before. This carbon is very deshielded—it is positively charged and electron-deficient.

More important data were NMR spectra: both ¹H and ¹³C NMRs could be run in liquid SO₂ at ~70 °C. The proton NMR of the MeOCH₂ cation showed a methyl group with a large downfield shift and a CH₂ group that resembled an electron-deficient alkene.
If we mix $t$-BuOH and HBr in an NMR tube and let the reaction run inside the NMR machine, we see no signals belonging to the cation. This proves nothing. We would not expect a reactive intermediate to be present in any significant concentration. There is a simple reason for this. If the cation is unstable, it will react very quickly with any nucleophile around and there will never be any appreciable amount of cation in solution. Its rate of formation will be less, much less, than its rate of reaction. We need only annotate the mechanism you have already seen.

The $S_{N}1$ mechanism for nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon

**stage 1:** formation of the carbocation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{$t$-BuOH} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{H} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{OH$_2$} \\
\end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\text{this stage is slow}
\end{array}
\]

**stage 2:** capture of the carbocation by the nucleophile

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{OH$_2$} \\
\end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\text{this stage is fast}
\end{array}
\]

It is comforting that carbocations can be prepared, even under rather artificial conditions, but we shall need other kinds of evidence to convince ourselves that they are intermediates in substitution reactions. It is time to return to the mechanistic discussion.

The $S_{N}1$ and $S_{N}2$ mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution

The evidence that convinced chemists about these two mechanisms is kinetic: it relates to the rate of the reactions. It was discovered, chiefly by Hughes and Ingold in the 1930s, that some nucleophilic substitutions are first-order, that is, the rate depends only on the concentration of the alkyl halide and **does not depend on the concentration of the nucleophile**, while in other reactions the rate depends on the concentrations of both the alkyl halide and the nucleophile. How can we explain this result? In the $S_{N}2$ mechanism there is just one step.

The $S_{N}2$ mechanism: reaction of $n$-BuBr with hydroxide ion

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{OH$_2$} \\
\end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\text{this step must be the rate-determining step, sometimes called the slow step. The rate of the overall reaction depends only on the rate of this step. Kinetic theory tells us that the rate of a reaction is proportional to the concentrations of the reacting species such that}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\text{rate of reaction} = k[n\text{-BuBr}][\text{HO}^-]
\]

Quantities in square brackets represent concentrations and the proportionality constant $k$ is called the rate constant. If this mechanism is right, then the rate of the reaction will be simply and linearly proportional to both $[n\text{-BuBr}]$ and to $[\text{HO}^-]$. And it is. Ingold measured the rates of reactions like these and found that they were second-order (proportional to two concentrations) and he called this mechanism Substitution, Nucleophilic, 2nd Order or $S_{N}2$ for short. The rate equation is usually given like this, with $k_2$ representing the second-order rate constant.

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[n\text{-BuBr}][\text{HO}^-]
\]

**Usefulness and significance of the rate expression**

Now what use is this equation and what does it signify? It is useful because it gives us a test for the $S_{N}2$ mechanism. It is usually carried out by varying both the concentration of the nucleophile and the concentration of the carbon electrophile in two separate series of experiments. The results of these experiments would be plotted on two graphs, one for each series. Supposing we wished to see if...
the reaction between NaSMe (an ionic solid—the nucleophile will be the anion MeS\(^-\)) and MeI were indeed \(S_N2\) as we would expect.

\[
\text{MeS} \quad \text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{MeS}--\text{Me} + \text{I}^-
\]

First, we would keep the concentration of NaSMe constant and vary that of MeI and see what happened to the rate. Then we would keep the concentration of MeI constant and vary that of MeSNa and see what happened to the rate. If the reaction is indeed \(S_N2\) we should get a linear relationship in both cases.

The first graph tells us that the rate is proportional to \([\text{MeI}]\), that is, rate = \(k_a[\text{MeI}]\) and the second graph that it is proportional to \([\text{MeSNa}]\), that is, rate = \(k_b[\text{MeSNa}]\). But why are the slopes different? If you look at the rate equation for the reaction, you will see that we have incorporated a constant concentration of one of the reagents into what appears to be the rate constant for the reaction. The true rate equation is

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[\text{MeSNa}][\text{MeI}]
\]

If \([\text{MeSNa}]\) is constant, the equation becomes

\[
\text{rate} = k_a[\text{MeI}] \quad \text{where} \quad k_a = k_2[\text{MeSNa}]
\]

If \([\text{MeI}]\) is constant, the equation becomes

\[
\text{rate} = k_b[\text{MeSNa}] \quad \text{where} \quad k_b = k_2[\text{MeI}]
\]

If you examine the graphs you will see that the slopes are different because

\[
slope \ 1 = k_a = k_2[\text{MeSNa}], \quad \text{but} \quad slope \ 2 = k_b = k_2[\text{MeI}]
\]

We can easily measure the true rate constant \(k_2\) from these slopes because we know the constant values for \([\text{MeSNa}]\) in the first experiment and for \([\text{MeI}]\) in the second. The value of \(k_2\) from both experiments should be the same! The mechanism for this reaction is indeed \(S_N2\): the nucleophile MeS\(^-\) attacks as the leaving group \(I^-\) leaves.

\[
\text{MeS} \quad \text{Me} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{MeS}--\text{Me} + \text{I}^-
\]

So the usefulness of the rate equation is that it gives us a test for the \(S_N2\) mechanism. But the equation has a meaning beyond that test.

**Significance of the \(S_N2\) rate equation**

The significance of the equation is that performance of the \(S_N2\) reaction depends both on nucleophile and on the carbon electrophile. We can make a reaction go better by changing either. If we want to displace \(I^-\) from MeI by an oxygen nucleophile we might consider using any of those in Table 17.3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxygen nucleophile</th>
<th>(pK_a) of conjugate acid(^a)</th>
<th>Rate in (S_N2) reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(\text{HO}^-)</td>
<td>15.7 ((\text{H}_2\text{O}))</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{RCO}_2^-)</td>
<td>about 5 ((\text{RCO}_2\text{H}))</td>
<td>reasonable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>(-1.7) ((\text{H}_3\text{O}^+))</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{RSO}_2\text{O}^-)</td>
<td>0 ((\text{RSO}_2\text{OH}))</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) See Chapter 8 for discussion of \(pK_a\) values.
The same reasons that made hydroxide ion basic (chiefly that it is unstable as an anion and therefore reactive!) make it a good nucleophile. Basicity is just nucleophilicity towards a proton and nucleophilicity towards carbon must be related. You saw in Chapter 12 that nucleophilicity towards the carbonyl group is directly related to basicity. The same is not quite so true for nucleophilic attack on the saturated carbon atom as we shall see, but there is a relationship nonetheless. So if we want a fast reaction, we should use NaOH rather than, say, Na₂SO₄ to provide the nucleophile.

But that is not our only option. The reactivity and hence the structure of the carbon electrophile matter too. If we want reaction at a methyl group we can’t change the carbon skeleton, but we can change the leaving group. Table 17.4 shows what happens if we use the various methyl halides in reaction with NaOH.

Thus the fastest reaction will be between MeI and NaOH and will give methanol.

We shall discuss nucleophilicity and leaving group ability in more detail later. For the moment, the most important aspect is that the rate of an SN₂ reaction depends on both the nucleophile and the carbon electrophile (and hence the leaving group). Changing the nucleophile or the electrophile changes the value of $k_2$.

It also depends, as do all reactions, on factors like temperature and solvent.

**Kinetics for the SN₁ reaction**

We shall start with a similar reaction to the SN₂ reaction discussed a few pages back, but we shall replace n-butyl bromide with tertiary butyl bromide (t-BuBr).

The formation of the cation is the rate-determining step. You can look at this in two ways. Either you could argue that a cation is an unstable species and so it will be formed slowly from a stable neutral organic molecule, or you could argue that the cation is a very reactive species and so all its reactions will be fast, regardless of the nucleophile. Both arguments are correct. In a reaction with an unstable intermediate, the formation of that intermediate is usually the rate-determining step.

The rate of disappearance of t-BuBr is simply the rate of the slow step. This is why the slow step is called the ‘rate-determining’ step. It is a unimolecular reaction with the simple rate equation

$$\text{rate} = k_2 [\text{t-BuBr}]$$

If this is not obvious to you, think of a crowd of people trying to leave a railway station (such as a metro or underground station in a city) through the turnstiles. It doesn’t matter how fast they walk away afterwards, it is only the rate of struggling through the turnstiles that determines how fast they leave the station.

Once again, this rate equation is useful because we can determine whether a reaction is SN₁ or SN₂. We can plot the same graphs as we plotted before. If the reaction is SN₂, the graphs look like
those we have just seen. But if it is SN1, they look like this when we vary \( [t\text{-BuBr}] \) at constant \([\text{NaOH}]\) and then vary \([\text{NaOH}]\) at constant \([t\text{-BuBr}]\).

The slope of the first graph is simply the first-order rate constant because
\[
\text{rate} = k_1 [t\text{-BuBr}]
\]

But the slope of the second graph is zero! The rate-determining step does not involve \( \text{NaOH} \) so adding more of it does not speed up the reaction. The reaction shows first-order kinetics (the rate is proportional to one concentration only) and the mechanism is called \( \text{SN1} \), that is, Substitution, Nucleophilic, 1st order.

This observation is very significant. It is not only the concentration of the nucleophile that doesn’t matter—its reactivity doesn’t matter either! We are wasting our time adding \( \text{NaOH} \) to this reaction—water will do just as well. All the oxygen nucleophiles in Table 17.3 react at the same rate with \( t\text{-BuBr} \) though they react at very different rates with \( \text{MeI} \).

**Stereoisomers and constitutional isomers**

We can see the changeover from \( \text{SN1} \) to \( \text{SN2} \) in the reactions of a single compound if we choose one that is good at both mechanisms, such as a benzyl sulfonium salt. Both mechanisms are available for this compound.

The first three nucleophiles react at the same rate within experimental error while the last two are clearly faster. The first three nucleophiles react at the same rate because they react by the \( \text{SN1} \) mechanism whose rate does not depend on the nucleophile. All the nucleophiles in fact react by \( \text{SN2} \) at the same rate (about \( 4.0 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s}^{-1} \)) but good nucleophiles also react by \( \text{SN2} \). The \( \text{SN2} \) rate for hydroxide is about 70 and for \( \text{PhS}^- \) about 107. Compare these relative rates with those in Table 17.6 for reactions with \( \text{MeBr} \) where they all react at different rates by the \( \text{SN2} \) reaction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile</th>
<th>AcO(^-)</th>
<th>Cl(^-)</th>
<th>PhO(^-)</th>
<th>HO(^-)</th>
<th>PhS(^-)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rate</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 17.6** Relative rate of reaction (water = 1) of nucleophiles with \( \text{MeBr} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile</th>
<th>AcO(^-)</th>
<th>Cl(^-)</th>
<th>PhO(^-)</th>
<th>HO(^-)</th>
<th>PhS(^-)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rate</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>(1.2 \times 10^4)</td>
<td>(5 \times 10^7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How can we decide which mechanism (\( \text{SN1} \) or \( \text{SN2} \)) will apply to a given organic compound?

The most important factor is the structure of the carbon skeleton. A helpful generalization is that compounds that can form relatively stable cations generally do so and react by the \( \text{SN1} \) mechanism while the others have to react by the \( \text{SN2} \) mechanism.
In fact, the structural factors that make cations unstable also lead to faster SN2 reactions. Cations are more stable if they are heavily substituted, that is, tertiary, but this is bad for an SN2 reaction because the nucleophile would have to thread its way into the carbon atom through the alkyl groups. It is better for an SN2 reaction if there are only small hydrogen atoms on the carbon atom—methyl groups react fastest by the SN2 mechanism. The effects of the simplest structural variations are summarized in Table 17.7 (where R is a simple alkyl group like methyl or ethyl).

The only doubtful case is the secondary alkyl derivative, which can react by either mechanism, though it is not very good at either. The first question you should ask when faced with a new nucleophilic substitution is: 'Is the carbon electrophile methyl, primary, secondary, or tertiary?' This will start you off on the right foot, which is why we introduced these important structural terms in Chapter 2.

Stability and structure of tertiary carbocations

So why are tertiary cations relatively stable whereas the methyl cation is never formed in solution? Any charged organic intermediate is inherently unstable because of the charge. A carbocation can be formed only if it has some extra stabilization. The t-butyl cation that we met earlier in this chapter is planar. Indeed it is a universal characteristic of carbocations that they are planar. The basic instability of the carbocation comes from its electron deficiency—it has an empty orbital. The energy of the unfilled orbital is irrelevant to the overall stability of the cation—it’s only the energy of the orbitals with electrons in that matter. For any cation the most stable arrangement of electrons in orbitals results from making filled orbitals as low in energy as possible to give the most stable structure, leaving the highest-energy orbital empty. Thus, of the two structures for the t-butyl cation, the planar one has the lower-energy filled orbitals (sp2) and a higher-energy empty p orbital while the tetrahedral one has higher-energy filled orbitals (sp3) and a lower-energy empty sp3 orbital.

The diagram shows another reason why the planar structure is more stable than the tetrahedral structure for a carbocation. It is better for the filled orbitals to be:

- of the lowest possible energy (so that they contribute most to stability)
- as far from each other as possible (so that they repel each other as little as possible)

Both requirements are fulfilled in the planar structure for the carbocation.

Stabilization of tertiary carbocations by C–H or C–C bonds

Extra stabilization comes to the planar structure from weak donation of \( \sigma \) bond electrons into the empty p orbital of the cation. Three of these donations occur at any one time in the t-butyl cation.

### Table 17.7 Simple structures and choice of SN1 or SN2 mechanism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>structure</th>
<th>Me-X</th>
<th>R-X</th>
<th>R-X</th>
<th>R-X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>primary</td>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>tertiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN1 reaction?</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN2 reaction?</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
doesn’t matter if the C–H bonds point up or down; one C–H bond on each methyl group must be parallel to one lobe of the empty p orbital at any one time. The top diagram shows one overlap in orbital terms and the bottom diagram three as dotted lines.

There is nothing special about the C–H bond in donating electrons into an empty orbital. A C–C bond is just as good and some bonds are much better (C–Si). But there must be a bond of some sort—a hydrogen atom by itself has no lone pairs and no σ bonds so it cannot stabilize a cation.

If a tertiary cation cannot become planar, it is not formed. A classic case is the cage halide below, which does not react with nucleophiles either by S_N1 or by S_N2. It does not react by S_N1 because the cation cannot become planar nor by S_N2 because the nucleophile cannot approach the carbon atom from the right direction (see below).

In almost all cases, tertiary alkyl halides react rapidly with nucleophiles by the S_N1 mechanism. The nature of the nucleophile is not important: it does not affect the rate and carbocations are reactive enough to combine with even quite weak nucleophiles.

### Allylic and benzylic cations

More effective stabilization is provided by genuine conjugation with π or lone-pair electrons. The allyl cation has a filled (bonding) orbital containing two electrons delocalized over all three atoms and an important empty orbital with coefficients on the end atoms only. It’s this orbital that is attacked by nucleophiles and so it’s the end carbon atoms that are attacked by nucleophiles. The normal curly arrow picture tells us the same thing.

A symmetrical allyl cation can give one product only by the S_N1 reaction. We have already discussed the formation of the cyclohexenyl cation (Chapter 7) and that is a good example. The two delocalized structures are identical and the π bond is shared equally among the three atoms.

Treatment of cyclohexenol with HBr gives the corresponding allylic bromide. Only one compound is formed because attack at either end of the allylic cation gives the same product.
Sometimes when the allylic cation is unsymmetrical this can be a nuisance as a mixture of products may be formed. It doesn’t matter which of the two butenols you treat with HBr; you get the same cation.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{but-2-en-1-ol} & \quad \text{+ HBr} \quad \text{\xrightarrow{\text{H}}\text{O} \quad \text{butenyl cation}} \\
\text{but-3-en-2-ol} & \quad \text{+ HBr} \quad \text{\xrightarrow{\text{H}}\text{O} \quad \text{butenyl cation}}
\end{align*}
\]

When this cation reacts with Br\(^{-}\), about 80% goes to one end and 20% to the other, giving a mixture of butenyl bromides. Notice that we have chosen one localized structure for our mechanisms. The choice is meaningless since the other structure would have done as well. It’s just rather too difficult to draw mechanisms on the delocalized structure.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Br} & \quad \text{20%} \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{80%} \quad \text{Br}
\end{align*}
\]

Sometimes this ambiguity is useful. The tertiary allylic alcohol 2-methylbut-3-en-2-ol is easy to prepare and reacts well by the \(\text{S}_\text{N}1\) mechanism because it is both tertiary and allylic. The allylic carbocation intermediate is very unsymmetrical and reacts only at the less substituted end to give 'prenyl bromide'.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{2-methylbut-3-en-2-ol} & \quad \text{+ HBr} \quad \text{\xrightarrow{\text{H}}\text{O} \quad \text{prenyl bromide}} \\
\text{1-bromo-3-methylbut-2-ene} & 
\end{align*}
\]

The benzyl cation is about as stable as the allyl cation but lacks its ambiguity of reaction. Though the positive charge is delocalized around the benzene ring, the benzyl cation almost always reacts on the side chain.

formation and reaction of the benzyl cation

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{benzyl} & \quad \text{+ X} \quad \text{\xrightarrow{\text{Nu}}\text{Nu}}
\end{align*}
\]

If you draw the arrows for the delocalization, you will see that the positive charge is spread right round the ring, to three positions in particular.

delocalization in the benzyl cation

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{benzyl} & \quad \text{+ X} \quad \text{\xrightarrow{\text{Nu}}\text{Nu}}
\end{align*}
\]

An exceptionally stable cation is formed when three benzene rings can help to stabilize the same positive charge. The result is the triphenylmethyl cation or, for short, the trityl cation. The symbol \(\text{Tr}\) (another of these ‘organic elements’) refers to the group \(\text{Ph}_3\text{C}\). Trityl chloride is used to form an ether with a primary alcohol group by an \(\text{S}_\text{N}1\) reaction. Here is the reaction.

The regioselectivity (where the nucleophile attacks) is determined by steric hindrance: attack is faster at the less hindered end of the allylic system.

Prenyl bromide is a building block for making the class of natural products known as terpenes and discussed in Chapter 49. We come back to reactions of allylic compounds in Chapter 23.

This sort of delocalization will be given special importance in Chapter 22.
You will notice that pyridine is used as solvent for the reaction. Pyridine (a weak base, \( pK_a 5.5 \); see Chapter 8) is not strong enough to remove the proton from the primary alcohol (\( pK_a \) about 15), and there would be no point in using a base strong enough to make \( RCH_2O^- \) as the neutral alcohol is as good in an \( S_N1 \) reaction. Instead the \( TrCl \) ionizes first to trityl cation, which now captures the primary alcohol and finally pyridine is able to remove the proton from the oxonium ion. Pyridine does not catalyse the reaction; it just stops it becoming too acidic by removing the HCl formed. Pyridine is also a convenient polar organic solvent for ionic reactions.

You will notice that pyridine is used as solvent for the reaction. Pyridine (a weak base, \( pK_a 5.5 \); see Chapter 8) is not strong enough to remove the proton from the primary alcohol (\( pK_a \) about 15), and there would be no point in using a base strong enough to make \( RCH_2O^- \) as the neutral alcohol is as good in an \( S_N1 \) reaction. Instead the \( TrCl \) ionizes first to trityl cation, which now captures the primary alcohol and finally pyridine is able to remove the proton from the oxonium ion. Pyridine does not catalyse the reaction; it just stops it becoming too acidic by removing the HCl formed. Pyridine is also a convenient polar organic solvent for ionic reactions.

\[ \text{TrCl + RCH}_2\text{OH} \rightarrow \text{RCH}_2\text{O}^- + \text{Tr}^+ \]

You will notice that pyridine is used as solvent for the reaction. Pyridine (a weak base, \( pK_a 5.5 \); see Chapter 8) is not strong enough to remove the proton from the primary alcohol (\( pK_a \) about 15), and there would be no point in using a base strong enough to make \( RCH_2O^- \) as the neutral alcohol is as good in an \( S_N1 \) reaction. Instead the \( TrCl \) ionizes first to trityl cation, which now captures the primary alcohol and finally pyridine is able to remove the proton from the oxonium ion. Pyridine does not catalyse the reaction; it just stops it becoming too acidic by removing the HCl formed. Pyridine is also a convenient polar organic solvent for ionic reactions.

\[ \text{TrCl + RCH}_2\text{OH} \rightarrow \text{RCH}_2\text{O}^- + \text{Tr}^+ \]

You will notice that pyridine is used as solvent for the reaction. Pyridine (a weak base, \( pK_a 5.5 \); see Chapter 8) is not strong enough to remove the proton from the primary alcohol (\( pK_a \) about 15), and there would be no point in using a base strong enough to make \( RCH_2O^- \) as the neutral alcohol is as good in an \( S_N1 \) reaction. Instead the \( TrCl \) ionizes first to trityl cation, which now captures the primary alcohol and finally pyridine is able to remove the proton from the oxonium ion. Pyridine does not catalyse the reaction; it just stops it becoming too acidic by removing the HCl formed. Pyridine is also a convenient polar organic solvent for ionic reactions.

\[ \text{TrCl + RCH}_2\text{OH} \rightarrow \text{RCH}_2\text{O}^- + \text{Tr}^+ \]

You will notice that pyridine is used as solvent for the reaction. Pyridine (a weak base, \( pK_a 5.5 \); see Chapter 8) is not strong enough to remove the proton from the primary alcohol (\( pK_a \) about 15), and there would be no point in using a base strong enough to make \( RCH_2O^- \) as the neutral alcohol is as good in an \( S_N1 \) reaction. Instead the \( TrCl \) ionizes first to trityl cation, which now captures the primary alcohol and finally pyridine is able to remove the proton from the oxonium ion. Pyridine does not catalyse the reaction; it just stops it becoming too acidic by removing the HCl formed. Pyridine is also a convenient polar organic solvent for ionic reactions.

\[ \text{TrCl + RCH}_2\text{OH} \rightarrow \text{RCH}_2\text{O}^- + \text{Tr}^+ \]

Rate data for substituted allylic chlorides compared with benzylic chlorides and simple alkyl chlorides on solvolysis in 50% aqueous ethanol give us some idea of the magnitude of stabilization (Table 17.8). These rates are mostly \( S_N1 \), but there will be some \( S_N2 \) creeping in with the primary compounds. Note the wide range of rates.

### Table 17.8 Rates of solvolysis of allyl chlorides in 50% aqueous ethanol at 44.6 °C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{-CH} = \text{CHCl} )</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>primary chloride: probably all ( S_N2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{CH}_2\text{CH} = \text{CHCl} )</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>secondary chloride: can do ( S_N1 ) but not very well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{CH} = \text{CHCl} )</td>
<td>2.100</td>
<td>tertiary chloride: very good at ( S_N1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{CH}_2\text{CHCl} )</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>primary but allylic: ( S_N1 ) all right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{CH} = \text{CHCHCl} )</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>allylic cation is secondary at one end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{CHCHCHCl} )</td>
<td>130 000</td>
<td>allylic cation is tertiary at one end: compare with 2.100 for simple tertiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{PhCH} = \text{CHCl} )</td>
<td>7 700</td>
<td>primary but allylic and benzylic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One type of carbocation remains to be discussed, the type with an electron-donating group on the same atom as the leaving group. A classic case is \( \text{MeOCH}_2\text{Cl} \), which loses chloride ion in polar solvents and which can be converted in good yield (89%) to a stable cation using Olah’s methods described on p. 000. Even though it is primary (so you might expect \( S_N2 \)), substitution reactions of...
this chloroether, ‘methoxymethyl chloride’ (or ‘MOM chloride’) follow the SN1 mechanism and go via this cation.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{MeO} - & \text{Cl} \quad \text{HF} \quad \text{MeO} - & \text{Cl} \quad \text{SbF}_5 \\
& \quad \text{MeO} - & \text{Cl} \quad \text{SbF}_5 \\
& \quad \text{MeO} - & \text{H} \quad \text{SbF}_5
\end{align*}
\]

The methoxymethyl cation

This cation can be drawn either as an oxonium ion or as a primary carbenium ion. The oxonium ion structure is the more realistic. Primary carbenium ions are not known in solution, let alone as isolable intermediates, and the proton NMR spectrum of the cation compared with that of the isopropyl cation (this is the best comparison we can make) shows that the protons on the \( \text{O}_2 \) group resonate at 9.9 p.p.m. instead of at the 13.0 p.p.m. of the true carbenium ion.

The first step in the hydrolysis of acetals is similar. One alkoxy group is replaced by water to give a hemiacetal.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{acetal} & \quad \text{MeO} - \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
& \quad \text{MeO} - \quad \text{OH} \quad \text{MeO} + 2 \times \text{MeOH} \\
& \quad \text{hemiacetal}
\end{align*}
\]

We considered the mechanism for this reaction in Chapter 14 but did not then concern ourselves with a label for the first step. It has, in fact, an SN1 style of rate-determining step: the decomposition of the protonated acetal to give an oxonium ion. If you compare this step with the decomposition of the chloroether we have just described you will see that they are very similar.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hydrolysis of acetals} & \quad \text{–} \quad \text{SN1 mechanism for the first step} \\
\text{cationic intermediate}
\end{align*}
\]

A common mistake

Students of organic chemistry often make a mistake with this mechanism and draw the displacement of the first molecule of methanol by water as an SN2 reaction.

When we discuss the SN2 reaction shortly you will see that an SN2 mechanism is unlikely at such a crowded carbon atom. However, the main reason why the SN2 mechanism is wrong is that the SN1 mechanism is so very efficient with a neighbouring MeO group. The SN2 mechanism doesn’t get a chance.

This mechanism for the SN1 replacement of one electronegative group at a carbon atom by a nucleophile where there is another electronegative group at the same carbon atom is very general. You should look for it whenever there are two atoms such as O, N, S, Cl, or Br joined to the same carbon atom. The better leaving groups (such as the halogens) need no acid catalyst but the less good ones (N, O, S) usually need acid. Here is a summary diagram and a specific example.
We now have in Table 17.9 a complete list of the sorts of structures that normally react by the SN1 mechanism rather than by the SN2 mechanism.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of cation</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simple alkyl</td>
<td>tertiary (good)</td>
<td>secondary (not so good)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>t-butyl cation</td>
<td>i-propyl cation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{Me}_3\text{C}^+ )</td>
<td>( \text{Me}_2\text{CH}^+ )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conjugated</td>
<td>allylic</td>
<td>benzyllic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{Me}^- \text{C}^+ )</td>
<td>( \text{H}^- \text{C}^+ )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heteroatom-stabilized</td>
<td>oxygen-stabilized (onium ions)</td>
<td>nitrogen-stabilized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{MeO}^- \text{C}^+ )</td>
<td>( \text{Me}_2\text{N}^- \text{C}^+ )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The SN2 reaction

Small structures that favour the SN2 reaction

Among simple alkyl groups, methyl and primary alkyl groups always react by the SN2 mechanism and never by SN1. This is partly because the cations are unstable and partly because the nucleophile can push its way past the hydrogen atoms.

Thus, a common way to make ethers is to treat an alkoxide anion with an alkyl halide. If the alkyl halide is a methyl compound, we can be sure that this will be by the SN2 mechanism. A strong base, here NaH, will be needed to form the alkoxide ion (Chapter 6) and methyl iodide is a suitable electrophile.

With phenols, NaOH is a strong enough base and dimethyl sulfate, the dimethyl ester of sulfuric acid, is often used as the electrophile. These variations do not affect the mechanism. As long as we have a good nucleophile (here reactive RO⁻), a methyl electrophile, and a good leaving group (here an iodide or a sulfate anion), the SN2 mechanism will work well.
The nature of the nucleophile and the leaving group and the structure of the compound under attack all affect the \( \text{S}_2 \) mechanism because its rate expression is

\[
\text{rate} = k_2 [\text{nucleophile}][\text{MeX}]
\]

This expression shows that the rate of an \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction is proportional both to the concentration of the nucleophile and to the concentration of the alkyl halide (MeX). The alkyl halide combines the carbon skeleton and the leaving group in the same molecule. We must consider all three factors (nucleophile, carbon skeleton, and leaving group) in an \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction. So it was worth removing the proton from the alcohol or the phenol in these ether syntheses because we get a better nucleophile that way. We established on p. 000 that this was not worth doing in an \( \text{S}_1 \) reaction because the nucleophile is not involved in the rate-determining step.

**The transition state for an \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction**

Another way to put this would be to say that the nucleophile, the methyl group, and the leaving group are all present in the transition state for the reaction as explained in Chapter 13. This is the point about halfway through the slow step where the combined reagents reach their highest energy.

A transition state is not an intermediate. It can never be isolated because any change in its structure leads to a lower-energy state. In an \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction any molecule at the transition state cannot stay there—it must roll down the slope towards products or back to starting materials. So what does it look like and why are we interested in it? The transition state in an \( \text{S}_2 \) reaction is about halfway between the starting materials and the products. The bond to the nucleophile is partly formed and the bond to the leaving group is partly broken. It looks like this.

The dashed bonds indicate partial bonds (the C—Nu bond is partly formed and the C—X bond partly broken) and the charges in brackets indicate substantial partial charges (about half a minus charge each in this case as they must add up to one!). Transition states are often shown in square brackets and marked with the symbol \( \dagger \). Another way to look at this situation is to consider the orbitals. The nucleophile must have lone-pair electrons, which will interact with the \( \sigma^* \) orbital of the C—X bond.
In the transition state there is a p orbital at the carbon atom in the middle that shares one pair of electrons between the old and the new bonds. Both these pictures suggest that the transition state for an SN2 reaction has a more or less planar carbon atom at the centre with the nucleophile and the leaving group arranged at 180° to each other.

**Stereochemistry and substitution**

If this is true, it has a very important consequence. The nucleophile attacks the carbon atom on the opposite side from the leaving group and the carbon atom turns inside out as the reaction goes along, just like an umbrella in a high wind. If the carbon atom under attack is a stereogenic centre (Chapter 16), the result will be inversion of configuration. This is easily proved by a simple sequence of reactions. We start by looking at the stereochemistry of an SN1 reaction.

Starting with the optically active secondary alcohol sec-butanol (or butan-2-ol, but we want to emphasize that it is *secondary*), the secondary cation can be made by the usual method and has a characteristic 13C NMR shift. Quenching this cation with water regenerates the alcohol but without any optical activity. Water has attacked the two faces of the planar cation with exactly equal probability as we described in Chapter 16. The product is an exactly 50:50 mixture of (S)-butanol and (R)-butanol. It is *racemic*.

If, however, we first make the *para*-toluene sulfonate (‘tosylate’) by nucleophilic attack of the OH group on the sulfonyl chloride TsCl in pyridine solution, the sulfonate will be formed with retention as no bonds have been formed or broken at the chiral carbon atom. This is a substitution reaction too, but at sulfur rather than at carbon.

Now we can carry out an SN2 reaction on the sulfonate with a carboxylate anion. A tetra-alkyl ammonium salt is often used in the polar solvent DMF to get a clean reaction. This is the key step and we don’t want any doubt about the outcome.
The product is optically active and we can measure its rotation. But this tells us nothing. Unless we know the true rotation for pure sec-butyl acetate, we don’t yet know whether it is optically pure nor even whether it really is inverted. But we can easily find out. All we have to do is to hydrolyse the ester and get the original alcohol back again. We know the true rotation of the alcohol—it was our starting material—and we know the mechanism of ester hydrolysis (Chapter 12)—nucleophilic attack occurs at the carbonyl carbon and retention must be the stereochemical outcome as no reaction occurs at the stereogenic centre.

Now we really know where we are. This new sample of sec-butanol has the same rotation as the original sample, but with the opposite sign. It is (–)-(R)-sec-butanol. It is optically pure and inverted. Somewhere in this sequence there has been an inversion, and we know it wasn’t in the formation of the tosylate or the hydrolysis of the acetate as no bonds are formed or broken at the stereogenic centre in these steps. It must have been in the S_N2 reaction itself.

- This is a general conclusion.
- The S_N2 reaction goes with inversion of configuration at the carbon atom under attack but the S_N1 reaction generally goes with racemization

**Substitution reactions at other elements**

S_N2 reactions can occur at elements other than carbon. Common examples in organic chemistry are silicon, phosphorus, sulfur, and the halogens. The formation of the tosylate above by attack of the alcohol on TsCl is an example of an S_N2 reaction at sulfur. Later in this chapter you will see that alcohols attack phosphorus very easily and that we use the reaction between ROH and PBr_3 to make alkyl bromides. Alcohols also react rapidly with Si–Cl compounds such as Me_3SiCl to give silyl ethers by an S_N2 reaction at silicon. You have already seen several examples of silyl ether formation (p. 000, for example), though up to this point we have not discussed the mechanism. Here it is: B: represents a base such as triethylamine.

For an example of an S_N2 reaction at chlorine we can choose a reaction we will need later in the book. Triphenyl phosphine reacts with CCl_4 to give a phosphonium salt by what looks like an S_N2 reaction at carbon.

In fact there is no room around the carbon atom of CCl_4 for any nucleophile, let alone such a large one as PPh_3 and the reaction occurs by two separate S_N2 steps: one at chlorine and one at phosphorus.
Structural variation and the $S_N2$ mechanism

We have already established that methyl and primary alkyl compounds react well by the $S_N2$ mechanism, while secondary alkyl compounds can do so. There are other important structural features that also encourage the $S_N2$ mechanism. Two, allyl and benzyl compounds, also encourage the $S_N2$ mechanism.

Here you see a typical $S_N2$ reaction of allyl bromide. We have drawn the transition state for this reaction. This is not because we want to encourage you to do this for all $S_N2$ reactions but so that we can explain the role of the allyl system. Allyl compounds react rapidly by the $S_N2$ mechanism because the double bond can stabilize the transition state by conjugation.

The benzyl group acts in much the same way using the $\pi$ system of the benzene ring for conjugation with the $p$ orbital in the transition state.

Since the $p$ orbital in question has electrons in it—it shares a pair of electrons with the nucleophile and the leaving group—more effective conjugation is possible with an electron-deficient $\pi$ bond. The most important example is the carbonyl group: carbon electrophiles like those in the margin give the fastest $S_N2$ reactions.

With $\alpha$-bromo carbonyl compounds, substitution leads to two electrophilic groups on neighbouring carbon atoms. Each has a low-energy empty orbital, $\pi^*$ from $C=O$ and $\sigma^*$ from $C$–$Br$ (this is what makes them electrophilic), and these can combine to form a molecular LUMO ($\pi^* + \sigma^*$) lower in energy than either. Nucleophilic attack will occur easily where this new orbital has its largest coefficients, shown in orange on the diagram.

This orange area is on one side of the carbonyl group and in the usual place at the back of the $C$–$Br$ bond. Each group has become more electrophilic because of the presence of the other—the $C=O$ group makes the $C$–$Br$ bond more reactive and the Br makes the $C=O$ group more reactive. Another way to put this is that the carbonyl group stabilizes the transition state by overlap of its $\pi^*$ orbital with the full $p$ orbital of the carbon atom under attack. The nucleophile may well attack the carbonyl group but this will be reversible whereas displacement of bromide is irreversible.
There are many examples of this type of reaction. Reactions with amines go well and the amino-ketone products are widely used in the synthesis of drugs.

---

**Variation of rate with structure**

Some actual data may help at this point. The rates of reaction of the following alkyl chlorides with KI in acetone at 50 °C broadly confirm the patterns we have just analysed. These are relative rates with respect to n-BuCl as a ‘typical primary halide’. You should not take too much notice of precise figures but rather observe the trends and notice that the variations are quite large—the full range from 0.02 to 100 000 is eight powers of ten.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alkyl chloride</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me—Cl</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>least hindered alkyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH₃</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>secondary alkyl chloride; slow because of steric hindrance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH₃CH₂Cl</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>allyl chloride accelerated by π conjugation in transition state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCH₃Cl</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>benzyl chloride slightly more reactive than allyl: benzene ring better at π conjugation than isolated double bond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeO</td>
<td>920</td>
<td>conjugation with oxygen lone pair accelerates reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO₂Cl</td>
<td>100 000</td>
<td>conjugation with carbonyl group much more effective than with simple alkene or benzene ring. These α-carbonyl halides are the most reactive of all</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
Summary of structural variations and nucleophilic substitution

We are now in a position to summarize those effects we have been discussing over the last few pages on both mechanisms. It is simplest to list the structural types and rate each reaction qualitatively.

**Table 17.11** Structural variations for the S_N1 and S_N2 reactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of electrophilic carbon atom</th>
<th>S_N1 reaction</th>
<th>S_N2 reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methyl (CH_3–X)</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>very good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary alkyl (RCH_2–X)</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary alkyl (R_2CH'–X)</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertiary alkyl (R_3C–X)</td>
<td>very good</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allylic (CH_2=CH–CH_2–X)</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzylic (ArCH_2–X)</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-carbonyl (RCOCH_2–X)</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-alkoxy (ROCH_2–X)</td>
<td>excellent</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-amino (R_2NCH_2–X)</td>
<td>excellent</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You must not regard this list as fixed and inflexible. The last five types will also be either primary, secondary, or tertiary. If they are primary, as shown, they will favour S_N2 more, but if they are tertiary they will all react by the S_N1 mechanism except the tertiary α-carbonyl (RCO-CR_2–X) compounds, which will still react by the S_N2 mechanism, if rather slowly. If they are secondary they might react by either mechanism. Similarly, a benzylic compound that has a well placed electron-donating group able to make an electronic connection with the leaving group will favour the S_N1 mechanism.

On the other hand, a 4-nitrobenzyl chloride is likely to react by the S_N2 mechanism as the strongly electron-withdrawing nitro group would destabilize the carbocation intermediate of the S_N1 mechanism.

Rate measurements for these two compounds are very revealing. We can force them to react by S_N1 by using methanol as the solvent (p. 000). If we set the rate of substitution of the benzyl compound with methanol at 25 °C at 1.0, then the 4-MeO benzyl compound reacts about 2500 times faster and the 4-NO_2 benzyl compound about 3000 times more slowly.
Steric hindrance in nucleophilic substitution

We have already considered the inversion of stereochemistry necessary in an S_N2 mechanism, but there is another steric effect, the rather cruder steric hindrance. In the approach to the S_N2 transition state, the carbon atom under attack gathers in another ligand and becomes (briefly) five-coordinate. The angles between the substituents decrease from tetrahedral to about 90°.

In the starting material there are four angles of about 109°. In the transition state (enclosed in square brackets and marked ‡ as usual) there are three angles of 120° and six angles of 90°, a significant increase in crowding. The larger the substituents R, the more serious this is. We can easily see the effects of steric hindrance if we compare these three structural types:

- methyl: CH₃–X: very fast S_N2 reaction
- primary alkyl: RCH₂–X: fast S_N2 reaction
- secondary alkyl: R₂CH–X: slow S_N2 reaction

The opposite is true of the S_N1 reaction. The slow step is simply the loss of the leaving group. The starting material is again tetrahedral (four angles of about 109°) and in the intermediate cation there are just three angles of 120°—fewer and less serious interactions. The transition state will be on the way towards the cation, rather closer to it than to the starting material.

Even in the transition state, the angles are increasing towards 120° and all interactions with the leaving group are diminishing as it moves away. There is steric acceleration in the S_N1 reaction rather than steric hindrance. This, as well as the stability of t-alkyl cations, is why t-alkyl compounds react by the S_N1 mechanism.

**Rates of S_N1 and S_N2 reactions**

Here is a simple illustration of these effects. The green curve in Figure 17.1 (next page) shows the rates (k₁) of an S_N1 reaction: the conversion of alkyl bromides to alkyl formate esters in formic acid at 100 °C. Formic acid is very polar and, though a weak nucleophile, is adequate for an S_N1 reaction.

The red curve in Figure 17.1 shows the rates of displacement of Br⁻ by radioactive ⁸²Br⁻ in acetone at 25 °C by the S_N2 mechanism, the rates (k₂) being multiplied by 10⁵ to bring both curves on to the same graph. The actual values of the rate constants are not important. Table 17.12 gives the relative rates compared with that of the secondary halide, t-PrBr, set at 1.0 in each case.
**Solvent effects**

In the box above, you can see acetone used as a solvent for an $S_N2$ reaction and formic acid ($HCO_2H$) as solvent for the $S_N1$ reaction. These are typical choices: a less polar solvent for the $S_N2$ reaction (just polar enough to dissolve the ionic reagents) and a polar protic solvent for the $S_N1$ reaction. The $S_N1$ reaction fairly obviously needs a polar solvent as the rate-determining step usually involves the formation of ions and the rate of this process will be increased by a polar solvent. More precisely, the transition state is more polar than the starting materials and so is stabilized by the polar solvent. Hence solvents like water or carboxylic acids ($RCO_2H$) are ideal.

It is less obvious why a less polar solvent is better for the $S_N2$ reaction. The most common $S_N2$ reactions use an anion as the nucleophile and the transition state is less polar than the localized anion as the charge is spread between two atoms.

---

**Table 17.12** Rates of $S_N1$ and $S_N2$ reactions of simple alkyl bromides

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>alkyl bromide</th>
<th>CH$_3$Br</th>
<th>CH$_3$CH$_2$Br</th>
<th>(CH$_3)_2$CHBr</th>
<th>(CH$_3)_3$CB</th>
<th>$k_1$, s$^{-1}$</th>
<th>$10^5k_2$ (m$^{-1}$s$^{-1}$)</th>
<th>relative $k_1$</th>
<th>relative $k_2$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>primary</td>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>tertiary</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>13 000</td>
<td>$2 \times 10^{-2}$</td>
<td>$6 \times 10^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$k_1$, s$^{-1}$</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4 $\times 10^6$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$10^5k_2$ (m$^{-1}$s$^{-1}$)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>0.0003</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative $k_1$</td>
<td>$4 \times 10^{-7}$</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$5 \times 10^{-5}$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reactions were chosen to give as much $S_N1$ reaction as possible in one case and as much $S_N2$ reaction as possible in the other case. Formic acid is a very polar solvent but a poor nucleophile; this gives the maximum opportunity for a cation to form. Bromide ion is a good nucleophile and acetone is polar enough to dissolve the reagents but not so polar that ionization is encouraged. Of course, you will understand that we cannot prevent the molecules doing the ‘wrong’ reaction! The values for the $S_N1$ reaction of MeBr and MeCH$_2$Br are actually the low rates of $S_N2$ displacement of the bromide ion by the weak nucleophile HCO$_2$H, while the $S_N2$ rate for t-BuBr may be the very small rate of ionization of t-BuBr in acetone.

---

**Figure 17.1: $S_N1$ and $S_N2$ rates for simple alkyl bromides**

The actual values of the rate constants are not important. The graph in Figure 17.1 has been plotted to put the rates of the $S_N2$ and $S_N1$ reactions of the secondary alkyl bromide at about the same level to give a graphical illustration of the relative speed of the $S_N2$ reaction with MeBr and the relative speed of the $S_N1$ reaction of t-BuBr.
A polar solvent solvates the anionic nucleophile and slows the reaction down. A nonpolar solvent destabilizes the starting materials more than it destabilizes the transition state and speeds up the reaction. There is another reason for using acetone for this particular reaction. NaI is very soluble in acetone but NaBr is rather insoluble. The NaBr product precipitates out of solution which helps to drive the reaction over to the right.

If an SN2 reaction has neutral starting materials and an ionic product, then a polar solvent is better. A good choice is DMF, a polar aprotic solvent often used for the synthesis of phosphonium salts by the SN2 reaction.

We have considered the important effects of the basic carbon skeleton on the SN1 and SN2 reactions and we shall now consider the remaining two possible structural variations: the nucleophile and the leaving group. We shall tackle the leaving group first because it plays an important role in both SN1 and SN2 reactions.

**Polar aprotic solvents**

Water, alcohols, and carboxylic acids are polar protic solvents able to form hydrogen bonds (hydroxlic solvents). They solvate both cations and anions well. A nucleophilic reagent such as bromide ion must be accompanied by a cation, say, the sodium ion, and hydroxlic solvents dissolve salts such as NaBr by hydrogen bonding to the anion and electron donation to the cation. This is solvation by a polar protic solvent. These solvents do not ‘ionize’ the salt, which already exists in the solid state as ions; they separate and solvate the ions already present.

Polar aprotic solvents, on the other hand, have dipole moments and are still able to solvate cations by electron donation from an oxygen atom, but they lack the ability to form hydrogen bonds because any hydrogen atoms they may have are on carbon. Examples include DMF and DMSO (dimethyl sulfoxide).

We have considered the important effects of the basic carbon skeleton on the SN1 and SN2 reactions and we shall now consider the remaining two possible structural variations: the nucleophile and the leaving group. We shall tackle the leaving group first because it plays an important role in both SN1 and SN2 reactions.

**The leaving group**

We have mostly seen halides and water from protonated alcohols as leaving groups in both SN1 and SN2 reactions. Now we need to establish the principles that make for good and bad leaving groups. We might be considering an SN1 reaction.
Or we might be considering an $S_N2$ reaction—both have a leaving group, which we are representing as ‘$X$’ in these mechanisms. In both cases the C–X bond is breaking in the slow step.

Starting with the halides, two main factors are at work: the strength of the C–halide bond and the stability of the halide ion. The strengths of the C–X bonds have been measured and are listed in Table 17.13. How shall we measure anion stability? One way, which you met in Chapter 8, was to use the $pK_a$ values of the acids HX. We established in Chapter 8 that bond strength can be used to explain $pK_a$ values so these two factors are not independent.

It is clearly easiest to break a C–I bond and most difficult to break a C–F bond. Iodide sounds like the best leaving group. We get the same message from the $pK_a$ values: HI is the strongest acid, so it must ionize easily to $H^+$ and $I^-$. This result is quite correct—iodide is an excellent leaving group and fluoride a very bad one with the other halogens in between.

### Nucleophilic substitutions on alcohols

Now what about leaving groups joined to the carbon atom by a C–O bond? There are many of these but the most important are OH itself, the carboxylic esters, and the sulfonate esters. First we must make one thing clear. In spite of what you may suppose, alcohols do not react with nucleophiles. Why not? Hydroxide ion is very basic, very reactive, and a bad leaving group. If the nucleophile were strong enough to produce hydroxide ion, it would be more than strong enough to remove the proton from the alcohol.

But we want to use alcohols in nucleophilic substitution reactions because they are easily made. The simplest answer is to protonate the OH group with strong acid. This will work only if the nucleophile is compatible with strong acid, but many are. The preparation of $t$-BuCl from $t$-BuOH simply by shaking it with concentrated HCl is a good example. This is obviously an $S_N1$ reaction with the $t$-butyl cation as intermediate.

Similar methods can be used to make secondary alkyl bromides with HBr alone and primary alkyl bromides using a mixture of HBr and $H_2SO_4$. The second is certainly an $S_N2$ reaction and we show just one stage in a two-step process that is very efficient.
Another way is to convert the OH group into a better leaving group by combination with an element that forms very strong bonds to oxygen. The most popular choices are phosphorus and sulfur. Making primary alkyl bromides with PBr₃ usually works well.

The phosphorus reagent is first attacked by the OH group (an S_N2 reaction at phosphorus) and the displacement of an oxyanion bonded to phosphorus is now a good reaction because of the anion stabilization by phosphorus.

The Mitsunobu reaction is a modern S_N2 reaction using phosphorus chemistry

So far we have seen methods of displacing the OH group by first converting it to something else—a better leaving group like Br, for example. There is one recent invention that allows us to put an alcohol straight into a reaction mixture and get an S_N2 product in one operation. This is the Mitsunobu reaction. The alcohol becomes the electrophile, the nucleophile can be whatever you choose, and there are two other reagents.

One of these reagents, Ph₃P, triphenylphosphine, is a simple phosphine, rather like an amine but with P instead of N. The other deserves more comment. Its full name is diethyl azodicarboxylate, or DEAD.

Azo compounds

The ‘azo’ in the name of DEAD refers to two nitrogen atoms joined together by a double bond and compounds such as azobenzene are well known. Many dyestuffs have an azo group in them—Bismarck Brown (mentioned in Chapter 1) is used to dye kippers.

So how does the Mitsunobu reaction work? The first step involves neither the alcohol nor the nucleophile. The phosphine adds to the weak N=N π bond to give an anion stabilized by one of the ester groups.
The anion produced by this first stage is basic enough to remove a proton from the alcohol. This is always what will happen if a strong nucleophile is combined with an alcohol and previously this was a fatal disadvantage when we wanted an SN2 reaction. But wait and see.

Oxygen and phosphorus have a strong affinity as we saw in the conversion of alcohols to bromides with PBr₃ and in the Wittig reaction (Chapter 14, p. 000) and so the new alkoxide ion immediately attacks the positively charged phosphorus atom displacing a second nitrogen anion stabilized in the same way as the first. This is an SN₂ reaction at phosphorus.

The second basic nitrogen anion removes a proton from the nucleophile, which has been patiently waiting in disguised form as HNu while all this is going on. The true nucleophile is now revealed as an anion.

Finally, the anion of the nucleophile attacks the phosphorus derivative of the alcohol in a normal SN₂ reaction at carbon with the phosphine oxide as the leaving group. We have arrived at the products.

The whole process takes place in one operation. The four reagents are all added to one flask and the products are the phosphine oxide, the reduced azo diester with two NH bonds replacing the N=N double bond, and the product of an SN₂ reaction on the alcohol. Another way to look at this reaction is that a molecule of water must formally be lost: OH must be removed from the alcohol and H from the nucleophile. These atoms end up in very stable molecules—the P=O and N–H bonds are very stable while the N=N bond was weak. This compensates for the sacrifice of the strong C–O bond in the alcohol.
the Mitsunobu reaction – summary

If this is all correct, then the vital SN2 step should lead to inversion as it always does in SN2 reactions. This turns out to be one of the great strengths of the Mitsunobu reaction—it is a reliable way to replace OH by a nucleophile with inversion of configuration. The most dramatic example is probably the formation of esters from secondary alcohols with inversion. Normal ester formation leads to retention as the C–O bond of the alcohol is not broken.

The Mitsunobu reaction is used to replace OH by another group with inversion of configuration.

In the Mitsunobu reaction, the C–O bond of the alcohol is broken because the alcohol becomes the electrophile and the acid derivative must be a nucleophile so an acid is better than an acid chloride. The ester is formed with inversion. Note the fate of the oxygen atoms.

Ester formation from a secondary alcohol with retention by the Mitsunobu reaction

The Mitsunobu reaction is by no means the only way to turn OH groups into leaving groups and a method based on sulfur chemistry is as important.

Tosylate, TsO−, is an important leaving group made from alcohols

The most important of all these leaving groups are those based on sulfonate esters. The intermediates in the PBr3 reaction are unstable, but it is usually easy to make stable, usually crystalline toluene-para-sulfonates from primary and secondary alcohols. We met these derivatives on p. 000. These isolable but reactive compounds are so popular that they have been given a trivial name (‘tosylates’) and the functional group has been allocated an ‘organic element’ symbol Ts. This is what it means.

Warning of wrong labelling!

Ts = toluene-para-sulfonyl
Ac = acetyl

This compound is RCH$_2$OTs or RCH$_2$Ts, not RCH$_2$Ac

The leaving groups are toluene-para-sulfonate, TsO−, and acetate, AcO−, but the substituents are toluene-para-sulfonyl, Ts−, and acetyl, Ac−.
You have already seen the tosyl group used in the inversion sequence on p. 000, where it was displaced by as weak a nucleophile as acetate. This should alert you to the fact that TsO⁻ can be displaced by almost anything. We choose some examples in which new carbon–carbon bonds are formed. This will be an important topic later in the book when we meet enolate anions (Chapter 21) but our two examples here use sp anions derived from nitriles and acetylenes.

Cyanide ion is a good small nucleophile and displaces tosylate from primary carbon atoms and adds one carbon atom to the chain. As the cyanide (nitrile) group can be converted directly to a carboxylic acid or ester (Chapter 14) this sequence is a useful chain extension.

Corey’s synthesis of leukotrienes, human metabolites that control many important natural defence reactions like inflammation, involves the lithium derivative of an alkyne prepared by deprotonation with the very strong base butyllithium. The tosyl derivative of a primary alcohol reacts with this lithium derivative and a perfectly normal S_N2 reaction follows. The alkyne provides the carbanion (Chapter 8) for the displacement of the tosylate.

**Ethers as electrophiles**

Ethers are stable molecules, which do not react with nucleophiles: they must be stable because THF and Et₂O are used as solvents. But we can make them react by using an acid with a nucleophilic counterion (HBr or HI, for example) and then nucleophilic attack will occur preferentially at the more susceptible carbon atom. Aryl alkyl ethers cleave only on the alkyl side. We shall explain in Chapter 23 why nucleophilic attack does not occur on a benzene ring.

So far we have used only protic acids to help oxygen atoms to leave. Lewis acids work well too, and the cleavage of aryl alkyl ethers with BBr₃ is a good example. Trivalent boron compounds have an empty p orbital so they are very electrophilic and prefer to attack oxygen. The resulting oxonium ion can be attacked by Br⁻ in an S_N2 reaction.
Epoxides

One type of ether reacts in nucleophilic substitution without acids or Lewis acids. The leaving group is genuinely an alkoxide anion RO\(^{-}\). Obviously, some extra special feature must be present in these ethers making them unstable and this feature is ring strain. They are the three-membered cyclic ethers called epoxides (or oxiranes). You will see how to make these compounds in Chapter 20. The ring strain comes from the angle between the bonds in the three-membered ring which has to be 60° instead of the ideal tetrahedral angle of 109°. You could subtract these numbers and say that there is ‘49° of strain’ at each carbon atom, making about 150° of strain in the molecule. This is a lot. The idea of strain is that the molecule wants to break open and restore the ideal tetrahedral angle at all atoms. This can be done by one nucleophilic attack.

Epoxides react cleanly with amines to give amino-alcohols. We have not so far featured amines as nucleophiles because their reactions with alkyl halides are often bedevilled by overreaction (see the next section), but with epoxides they give good results.

It is easy to see that inversion occurs in these \(S_N2\) reactions if we put the epoxide on the side of another ring. With a five-membered ring only \(cis\)-fusion of the epoxide is possible and nucleophilic attack with inversion gives the \(trans\) product. As the epoxide is \(up\), attack has to come from underneath. Notice that the new C–N bond is \(down\) and that the H atom at the site of attack was \(down\) in the epoxide but is \(up\) in the product. Inversion has occurred.

The product of this reaction is used in the manufacture of the antidepressant drug eclanamine by the Upjohn Company. Because the starting material must be a single diastereoisomer (the \(cis\) or \(syn\) isomer) and inversion has occurred at one carbon atom, the product must be the \(trans\) or \(anti\) diastereoisomer. The starting material cannot be a single enantiomer as it is not chiral (it has a plane of symmetry). Though the product is chiral, it cannot be optically active as no optically active reagents have gone into the reaction (Chapter 15). The biological activity in the drug requires this diastereoisomer.

Esters

Nucleophilic attack on esters in acidic or basic solution normally occurs at the carbonyl group (Chapter 12). We are going to concentrate here on what happens to the hydrolysis of simple esters in acid solution as the alkyl group varies in size.

The slow step is the addition of water, which increases the crowding at the central carbon atom. As the alkyl group R is made larger, the reaction gets slower and slower. Then a dramatic thing happens. If the alkyl group R is made \(tertiary\), the reaction suddenly becomes very fast indeed—faster than when R was methyl under the same conditions. Clearly, the mechanism has changed. It is no
longer the normal ester hydrolysis but has become an SN1 reaction at the alkyl group. It is still a substitution reaction but at the saturated carbon atom rather than at the carbonyl group. The first step is the same, but the protonated ester is a good leaving group and so the intermediate decomposes to the \( t \)-alkyl cation without needing water at all.

Nucleophiles

We have established that the nucleophile is not important in the rate of an \( S_N1 \) reaction. We need now to discuss two ways in which it is important. Both concern the nature of the product. A better nucleophile will not accelerate the \( S_N1 \) reaction but it may determine which product is formed. In the reactions of tertiary alcohols with concentrated HCl or HBr there is always more water than halide ion present and yet the \( t \)-alkyl halide is formed in good yield.

This is partly because the halide ion is a better nucleophile than water for a carbocation as both are charged and partly because, if water does act as a nucleophile, it merely regenerates the starting material, which may react again.

A more interesting result of the unimportance of the nucleophile in the rate is that very poor nucleophiles indeed may react in the absence of anything better. In Chapter 8 we established that nitriles are only weakly basic because the lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen atom is in a low-energy sp orbital. They are not good nucleophiles either.

If we dissolve \( t \)-butanol in a nitrile as solvent and add strong acid, a reaction does take place. The acid does not protonate the nitrile, but does protonate the alcohol to produce the \( t \)-butyl cation in the usual way. This cation is reactive enough to combine with even such a weak nucleophile as the nitrile.
The resulting cation is captured by the water molecule released in the first step and an exchange of protons leads to an amide.

The overall process is called the Ritter reaction and is one of the few reliable ways to make a C–N bond to a tertiary centre.

**Nucleophiles in the S_N2 reaction**

**Nitrogen nucleophiles**

Reactions between ammonia and alkyl halides rarely lead to single products. The problem is that the primary amine product is at least as nucleophilic as the starting material and is formed in the reaction mixture so that it in turn reacts with the alkyl halide.

**alkylation of ammonia**

\[
\begin{align*}
X-R & \rightarrow \text{NH}_3 \\
\text{primary amine formed in reaction mixture}
\end{align*}
\]

**alkylation of the primary amine**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R-N}^+ & \rightarrow \text{R-NH}_3 \\
\text{secondary amine formed in reaction mixture}
\end{align*}
\]

Even this is not all! If the alkylation were to continue, the secondary and the tertiary amines would be produced all together in the reaction mixture. The reaction comes to an end only when the tetra-alkylammonium salt R_4N^+ is formed. This salt could be the product if a large excess of alkyl halide RI is used, but other more controlled methods are needed for the synthesis of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines.

**alkylation of the secondary amine**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R-N}^+ & \rightarrow \text{R-NR}_2 \\
\text{tertiary amine formed in reaction mixture}
\end{align*}
\]

**alkylation of the tertiary amine**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R-N}^+ & \rightarrow \text{R_3N^+} \\
\text{quaternary ammonium salt no proton can be removed end of the line!}
\end{align*}
\]

One solution for primary amines is to replace ammonia with azide ion N_3^- This is a linear triatomic species, nucleophilic at both ends—a little rod of electrons able to insert itself into almost any electrophilic site. It is available as the water-soluble sodium salt NaN_3.

Azide reacts only once with alkyl halides because the product, an alkyl azide, is no longer nucleophilic.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{nucleophilic azide ion N}_3^- & \rightarrow \text{neutral alkyl azide RN}_3 \\
\end{align*}
\]

You should compare the structure of azide with those of ketene (p.000) and allene (p.000).
The alkyl azide produced can be reduced to the primary amine by a number of methods such as catalytic hydrogenation (Chapter 24) or LiAlH₄ (Chapter 12). This method has a similar philosophy to the reductive amination discussed in Chapter 14.

\[
RX + NaN_3 \rightarrow RN_3 \quad \text{LiAlH}_4 \rightarrow \text{RNH}_2
\]

Azide reacts cleanly with epoxides too: here is an example with some stereochemistry in an open-chain epoxide.

The epoxide is one diastereoisomer (trans) but racemic and the symbol (±) under each structure reminds you of this (Chapter 15). Azide attacks at either end of the three-membered ring (the two ends are the same) to give the hydroxy-azide. The reaction is carried out in a mixture of water and an organic solvent with ammonium chloride as buffer to provide a proton for the intermediate.

Next, triphenylphosphine in water was used for reduction to the primary amine. This process might remind you of the Mitsunobu reaction earlier in this chapter.

One possible mechanism follows. What is certainly true is that a molecule of nitrogen is lost and a molecule of water is 'dismembered' and shared between the reagents. The phosphorus atom gets the oxygen and the nitrogen atom gets the two hydrogens. These (P=O and N–H rather than N–O and P–H) are the stronger bonds.

**Sulfur nucleophiles are better than oxygen nucleophiles in Sₙ₂ reactions**

Thiolate anions make excellent nucleophiles in Sₙ₂ reactions on alkyl halides. It is enough to combine the thiol, sodium hydroxide, and the alkyl halide to get a good yield of the sulfide.

\[
\text{PhSH} + \text{NaOH} + \text{n-BuBr} \rightarrow \text{PhSBr} + \text{NaBr}
\]

There is no competition between hydroxide and thiol because thiols are more acidic than water (pKₐ of RSH is typically 9–10, pKₐ of PhSH is 6.4, pKₐ of H₂O is 15.7; Chapter 8) and there is a rapid proton transfer from sulfur to oxygen.
The thiolate anion produced then acts as a nucleophile in the S_N2 reaction. The S_N2 reaction with a thiolate anion as nucleophile:

\[ \text{R}^- \text{S}^- + \text{R}^+ \text{Br}^- \rightarrow \text{R}^- \text{S}^- \text{R}^- + \text{Br}^- \]

But how do you make a thiol in the first place? The obvious way to make aliphatic thiols would be by an S_N2 reaction using NaSH on the alkyl halide.

\[ \text{HS}^- + \text{R}^+ \text{Br}^- \rightarrow \text{R}^- \text{SH} + \text{Br}^- \]

This works well but, unfortunately, the product easily exchanges a proton and the reaction normally produces the symmetrical sulfide—this should remind you of what happened with amines!

The solution is to use the anion of thiolacetic acid, usually the potassium salt. This reacts cleanly through the more nucleophilic sulfur atom and the resulting ester can be hydrolysed in base to liberate the thiol.

The S_N2 reaction with a thiolacete anion as nucleophile:

\[ \text{O} \text{S}^- + \text{R}^+ \text{Br}^- \rightarrow \text{O} \text{S}^- \text{R}^- + \text{Br}^- \]

Effectiveness of different nucleophiles in the S_N2 reaction

Just to remind you of what we said before: basicity is nucleophilicity towards protons and nucleophilicity towards the carbonyl group parallels basicity almost exactly.

During this chapter you have had various hints that nucleophilicity towards saturated carbon is not so straightforward. Now we must look at this question seriously and try to give you helpful guidelines.

1 If the atom that is forming the new bond to carbon is the same over a range of nucleophiles—it might be oxygen, for example, and the nucleophiles might be HO^-, PhO^-, AcO^-, and TsO^-—then nucleophilicity does parallel basicity. The anions of the weakest acids are the best nucleophiles. The order for the nucleophiles we have just mentioned will be: HO^- > PhO^- > AcO^- > TsO^-.

2 If the atoms that are forming the new bond to carbon are not the same over the range of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile X</th>
<th>pK_a of HX</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HO^-</td>
<td>15.7</td>
<td>1.2 x 10^4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhO^-</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>2.0 x 10^3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AcO^-</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>9 x 10^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H_2O</td>
<td>-1.7</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClO_4^-</td>
<td>-10</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This was discussed in Chapter 12.
nucleophiles we are considering, then another factor is important. In the very last examples we have been discussing we have emphasized that RS– is an excellent nucleophile for saturated carbon.

Let us put that another way. RS– is a better nucleophile for saturated carbon than is RO–, even though RO– is more basic than RS– (Table 17.15).

You might have noticed that the thiolacetate ion could have reacted with an alkyl halide through sulfur or through oxygen:

It is clear then that sulfur is a better nucleophile than is oxygen for saturated carbon. Why should this be? There are two main factors controlling bimolecular reactions: electrostatic attraction (simple attraction of opposite charges) and productive interactions between the HOMO of the nucleophile and the LUMO of the electrophile.

Reactions of nucleophiles with protons and with carbonyl groups are heavily influenced by electrostatic attraction (as well as by HOMO–LUMO interactions). The proton is, of course, positively charged. The carbonyl group too has a substantial positive charge on the carbon atom, which comes from the uneven distribution of electrons in the C=O π bond (Chapter 4).

There is, of course, also some polarity in the bond between a saturated carbon atom and a leaving group, say, a bromine atom, but this is a much smaller effect leading only to very small charge separation represented as δ+. In alkyl iodides, one of the best electrophiles in S_N2 reactions, there is in fact almost no dipole at all—the electronegativity of C is 2.55 and that of I is 2.66. Electrostatic attraction is unimportant in S_N2 reactions.

So what does matter? Only HOMO–LUMO interactions matter. In nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group, the nucleophile added in to the low-energy π* orbital. In attack on a saturated carbon atom, the nucleophile must donate its electrons to the σ* orbital of the C–X bond as we discussed in Chapter 10.

**typical arrangement of molecular energy levels**
The higher-energy (3sp\(^3\)) lone-pair electrons on sulfur overlap better with the high-energy \(\sigma^*\) orbital of the C–X bond than do the lower-energy (2sp\(^3\)) lone-pair electrons on oxygen because the higher energy of the sulfur electrons brings them closer in energy to the C–X \(\sigma^*\) orbital. Notice that both elements overlap well with the lower-energy \(\pi^*\) orbital. The conclusion is that nucleophiles from lower down the periodic table are more effective in S\(_{N2}\) reactions than those from the top few rows. Typically, nucleophilic power towards saturated carbon goes like this:

\[
I^- > Br^- > Cl^- > F^- \\
RSe^- > RS^- > RO^- \\
R_3P: > R_3N:
\]

**Nucleophiles in substitution reactions**

Some rates (relative to that of water = 1) of various nucleophiles towards methyl bromide in ethanol are shown in Table 17.16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nucleophile</th>
<th>F(^-)</th>
<th>H(_2)O</th>
<th>Et(_3)N</th>
<th>Br(^-)</th>
<th>PhO(^-)</th>
<th>EtO(^-)</th>
<th>I(^-)</th>
<th>PhS(^-)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relative rate</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>2.0 \times 10^3</td>
<td>6 \times 10^4</td>
<td>1.2 \times 10^5</td>
<td>5.0 \times 10^7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You have met a similar sequence before in Chapter 10, and it would be useful to review the terms we used then. Nucleophiles like \(R_3P:\) and \(RS^-\), the ones that react well with saturated carbon, are referred to as soft nucleophiles and those that are more basic and react well with carbonyl groups referred to as hard nucleophiles. These are useful and evocative terms because the soft nucleophiles are rather large and flabby with diffuse high-energy electrons while the hard nucleophiles are small with closely held electrons and high charge density. When we say ‘hard’ (nucleophile or electrophile) we refer to species whose reactions are dominated by electrostatic attraction and when we say ‘soft’ (nucleophile or electrophile) we refer to species whose reactions are dominated by HOMO–LUMO interactions.

**It is worth summarizing the characteristics of the two types of nucleophile.**

**Hard nucleophiles X**
- small
- charged
- basic (HX weak acid)
- low-energy HOMO
- like to attack C=O
- such as RO\(^-\), NH\(_2\)\(^-\), MeLi

**Soft nucleophiles Y**
- large
- neutral
- not basic (HY strong acid)
- high-energy HOMO
- like to attack saturated carbon
- such as RS\(^-\), I\(^-\), R\(_3\)P

**Nucleophiles and leaving groups compared**

In nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group, a good nucleophile is a bad leaving group and vice versa because the intermediate chooses to expel the best leaving group. If that is the nucleophile, it just goes straight back out again.
Chloride ion will always be the best leaving group from the intermediate, however it is formed, and the attempt to make an acid chloride from an ester with NaCl is doomed. Chloride is a good leaving group from C=O and a bad nucleophile towards C=O while EtO– is a bad leaving group from C=O and a good nucleophile towards C=O.

The $S_N^2$ reaction is different because it does not have an intermediate. Therefore anything that lowers the energy of the transition state will speed up both the forward and the back reactions. We need to consider two results of this: the rate of the reaction and which way it will go.

Iodide ion is one of the best nucleophiles towards saturated carbon because it is at the bottom of its group in the periodic table and its lone-pair electrons are very high in energy. This is in spite of the very low basicity of iodide (Table 17.17). It reacts rapidly with a variety of alkyl derivatives and alkyl iodides can be made by displacement of chloride or tosylate by iodide.

But why are these alkyl iodides made? They are needed for reactions with other nucleophiles in which iodide is again displaced. As well as being one of the best nucleophiles for saturated carbon, iodide ion is one of the best leaving groups from saturated carbon (see p. 000). Yields are often higher if the alkyl iodide is prepared than if the eventual nucleophile is reacted directly with the alkyl tosylate or chloride.

An example is the synthesis of the phosphonium salt used by Corey in a synthesis of terpenes (Chapter 51). An unsaturated primary alcohol was first made into its tosylate, the tosylate was converted into the iodide, and the iodide into the phosphonium salt.

However, iodine is expensive and a way round that problem is to use a catalytic amount of iodide. The next phosphonium salt is formed slowly from benzyl bromide but the addition of a small amount of LiI speeds up the reaction considerably.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile</th>
<th>$pK_a$ of $HX$</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I$^-$</td>
<td>$-$10</td>
<td>$1.2 \times 10^5$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br$^-$</td>
<td>$-$9</td>
<td>$5.0 \times 10^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl$^-$</td>
<td>$-$7</td>
<td>$1.1 \times 10^3$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F$^-$</td>
<td>$+$3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The iodide reacts as a better nucleophile than \( \text{Ph}_3\text{P} \) and then as a better leaving group than \( \text{Br}^- \). Each iodide ion goes round and round many times as a nucleophilic catalyst.

Looking forward: elimination and rearrangement reactions

Simple nucleophilic substitutions at saturated carbon atoms are fundamental reactions found wherever organic chemistry is practised. They are used in industry on an enormous scale to make ‘heavy chemicals’ and in pharmaceutical laboratories to make important drugs. They are worth studying for their importance and relevance.

There is another side to this simple picture. These were among the first reactions whose mechanisms were thoroughly investigated by Ingold in the 1930s and since then they have probably been studied more than any other reactions. All our understanding of organic mechanisms begins with \( S_N1 \) and \( S_N2 \) reactions and you need to understand these basic mechanisms properly. Some of the more sophisticated investigations into nucleophilic substitutions have clouded the main issues by looking at minute details and we shall not discuss these.

We shall, however, be returning to this sort of chemistry in several further chapters. The carbocations you met in this chapter are reactive species. One of the most convincing pieces of evidence for their formation is that they undergo reactions other than simple addition to nucleophiles. The carbon skeleton of the cation may rearrange.

a rearrangement reaction

[Diagram showing rearrangement reactions]

140 °C for reactions at high temperature. In this case, the starting materials are soluble in xylene but the product is a salt and conveniently precipitates out during the reaction.
You will meet rearrangements in several chapters later in the book especially Chapter 37. Another common fate of cations, and something that may also happen instead of an intended $S_N1$ or $S_N2$ reaction, is an elimination reaction where an alkene is formed by the nucleophile acting as a base to remove $HX$ instead of adding to the molecule.

an elimination reaction (E1)

You will meet elimination reactions in the next chapter but one (19) after some further exploration of stereochemistry.

Problems

1. Suggest mechanisms for the following reactions, commenting on your choice of $S_N1$ or $S_N2$.

   (a) 

   ![Mechanism 1](image1.png)

   (b) 

   ![Mechanism 2](image2.png)

2. Draw mechanisms for the following reactions. Why were acidic conditions chosen for the first reaction and basic conditions for the second?

   (a) 

   ![Mechanism 3](image3.png)

   (b) 

   ![Mechanism 4](image4.png)

3. Draw mechanisms for these reactions, explaining why these particular products are formed.

   (a) 

   ![Mechanism 5](image5.png)

   (b) 

   ![Mechanism 6](image6.png)

4. The chemistry shown here is the first step in the manufacture of Pfizer’s doxasolin (Cardura), a drug for hypertension. Draw mechanisms for the reactions involved and comment on the bases used.

   ![Mechanism 7](image7.png)

5. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, commenting on the choice of reagents and solvents. How would you convert the final product into diethyl hexanedioate [diethyl adipate, 
$\text{EtO}_2\text{C(CH}_2)_4\text{CO}_2\text{Et}$]?

   ![Mechanism 8](image8.png)

6. Draw mechanisms for these reactions and describe the stereochemistry of the product.

   ![Mechanism 9](image9.png)
7. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. You will find it helpful first of all to draw good diagrams of reagents and products.
\[ t\text{-BuNMMe}_2 + (\text{MeCO})_2O \rightarrow \text{Me}_2\text{NCOMe} + t\text{-BuO}_2\text{CMe} \]

8. Predict the stereochemistry of these products. Are they single diastereoisomers, enantiomerically pure, or racemic, or something else?

(a) 
\[ \text{Ph} + \text{NH}_2 \rightarrow \text{Ph} \]

(b) 
\[ \text{OTs} + \text{KOH} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{S} \]

9. What are the mechanisms of these reactions, and what is the role of the ZnCl\(_2\) in the first step and the NaI in the second?

\[ \text{O} + \text{Cl} \rightarrow \text{Cl} \]

\[ \text{MeCO}_2\text{K} \rightarrow \text{O} \]

10. Describe the stereochemistry of the products of these reactions.

\[ (\pm) \]

11. Identify the intermediates in these syntheses and give mechanisms for the reactions.

(a) 
\[ 1. \text{KCN, 180} \degree \text{C} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{H} \]
\[ 2. \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4, \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{H} \]

(b) 
\[ \text{MeNH}_2 + \text{excess} \rightarrow \text{Me} \]

12. State with reasons whether these reactions will be either SN\(_1\) or SN\(_2\).

(a) 
\[ \text{Br} \rightarrow \text{N}_3 \]

(b) 
\[ \text{HO} \rightarrow \text{H} \]

(c) 
\[ (\pm) \]

(d) 
\[ (\pm) \]
Conformational analysis

Connections

Building on:
- How to determine a molecule’s structure ch3, ch11, & ch15
- How some molecules can exist as stereoisomers ch16

Arriving at:
- If I could see a molecule, what would its three-dimensional shape (conformation) be?
- What effect does a molecule’s shape have on its reactions?
- How single bonds are free to rotate, but spend most of their time in just two or three well-defined arrangements
- How rings of atoms are usually not planar, but ‘puckered’
- How ‘puckered’ six-membered rings have the most well-defined arrangements of atoms
- How to draw six-membered rings accurately
- How to use the known arrangements of the atoms in a six-membered ring to predict and explain their reactions

Looking forward to:
- How conformation, and the alignment of atoms, can affect elimination reactions ch19
- How NMR spectroscopy backs up what we have said in this chapter ch32
- How the conformation of molecules dictates how they react—e.g. from which direction they will be attacked by reagents ch33 & ch45
- How the alignment of bonds can allow groups in molecules to move around (rearrangement reactions) or allow C–C bonds to break (fragmentation reactions) ch37 & ch38
- How the alignment of orbitals controls reactivity (stereochemistry) ch42
- The accurate drawing of rings as transition states is necessary ch35 & ch36

Bond rotation allows chains of atoms to adopt a number of conformations

Several chapters of this book have considered how to find out the structure of molecules. We have seen X-ray crystallography pictures, which reveal exactly where the atoms are in crystals; we have looked at IR spectroscopy, which gives us information about the bonds in the molecule, and at NMR spectroscopy, which gives us information about the atoms themselves. Up to now, we have mainly been interested in determining which atoms are bonded to which other atoms and also the shapes of small localized groups of atoms. For example, a methyl group has three hydrogen atoms bonded to one carbon atom and the atoms around this carbon are located at the corners of a tetrahedron; a ketone consists of a carbon atom bonded to two other carbon atoms and doubly bonded to an oxygen atom with all these atoms in the same plane.

But, on a slightly larger scale, shape is not usually so well defined. Rotation is possible about single bonds and this rotation means that, while the localized arrangement of atoms stays the same (every saturated carbon atom is still always tetrahedral), the molecule as a whole can adopt a number of different shapes. Shown on the next page are several snapshot views of one molecule—it happens to be a pheromone used by pea moths to attract a mate. Although the structures look dissimilar, they differ from one another only by rotation about one or more single bonds. Whilst the overall shapes differ, the localized structure is still the same: tetrahedral sp³ carbons; trigonal planar sp² carbons. Notice another point too, which we will pick up on later: the arrangement about the double bond always remains the same because double bonds can’t rotate.

At room temperature in solution, all the single bonds in the molecule are constantly rotating—the chances that two molecules would have exactly the same shape at any one time are quite small.
Yet, even though no two molecules have exactly the same shape at any one time, they are still all the same chemical compound—they have all the same atoms attached in the same way. We call the different shapes of molecules of the same compound different conformations.

Conformation and configuration

To get from one conformation to another, we can rotate about as many single bonds as we like. The one thing we can’t do though is to break any bonds. This is why we can’t rotate about a double bond—to do so we would need to break the π bond. Below are some pairs of structures that can be interconverted by rotating about single bonds: they are all different conformations of the same molecule.

The next block of molecules is something quite different: these pairs can only be interconverted by breaking a bond. This means that they have different configurations—configurations can be interconverted only by breaking bonds. Compounds with different configurations are called stereoisomers and we dealt with them in Chapter 16.
Barriers to rotation

We saw in Chapter 7 that rotation about the C–N bond in an amide is relatively slow at room temperature—the NMR spectrum of DMF clearly shows two methyl signals (p. 000). In Chapter 13 you learned that the rate of a chemical process is associated with an energy barrier (this holds both for reactions and simple bond rotations): the lower the rate, the higher the barrier. The energy barrier to the rotation about the C–N bond in an amide is usually about 80 kJ mol⁻¹, translating into a rate of about 0.1 s⁻¹ at 20 °C. Rotation about single bonds is much faster than this at room temperature, but there is nonetheless a barrier to rotation in ethane, for example, of about 12 kJ mol⁻¹.

Conformation and configuration

Some conformations are more stable than others...

And now for a different configuration altogether...

Rotation or bond breaking?

- Structures that can be interconverted simply by rotation about single bonds are conformational of the same molecule.
- Structures that can be interconverted only by breaking one or more bonds have different configurations, and are stereoisomers.
Conformations of ethane

Why should there be an energy barrier in the rotation about a single bond? In order to answer this question, we should start with the simplest C–C bond possible—the one in ethane. Ethane has two extreme conformations called the staggered and eclipsed conformations. Three different views of these are shown below.

You can see why the conformations have these names by looking at the end-on views in the diagram. In the eclipsed case the near C–H bonds completely block the view of the far bonds, just as in a solar eclipse the moon blocks the sun as seen from the Earth. In the staggered conformation, the far C–H bonds appear in the gaps between the near C–H bonds—the bonds are staggered.

Chemists often want to draw these two conformations quickly and two different methods are commonly used, each with its own merits. In the first method, we simply draw the side view of the molecule and use wedged and hashed lines to show bonds not in the plane of the paper (as you saw in Chapter 16). Particular attention must be paid to which of the bonds are in the plane and which go into and out of the plane.

In the second method we draw the end-on view, looking along the C–C bond. This view is known as a Newman projection, and Newman projections are subject to a few conventions:

- The carbon atom nearer the viewer is at the junction of the front three bonds
- The carbon further away (which can’t in fact be seen in the end-on view) is represented by a large circle. This makes the perspective inaccurate—but this doesn’t matter
- Bonds attached to this further carbon join the edge of the circle and do not meet in the centre
- Eclipse bonds are drawn slightly displaced for clarity—as though the bond were rotated by a tiny fraction

Newman projections for the staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane are shown below.
The staggered and eclipsed conformations of ethane are not identical in energy: the staggered conformation is lower in energy than the eclipsed by 12 kJ mol\(^{-1}\), the value of the rotational barrier. Of course, there are other possible conformations too with energies in between these extremes, and we can plot a graph to show the change in energy of the system as the C–C bond rotates. We define the dihedral angle, \(\theta\) (sometimes called the torsion angle), to be the angle between a C–H bond at the nearer carbon and a C–H bond at the far carbon. In the staggered conformation, \(\theta = 60^\circ\) whilst in the eclipsed conformation, \(\theta = 0^\circ\).

The energy level diagram shows the staggered conformation as a potential energy minimum whilst the eclipsed conformation represents an energy maximum. This means that the eclipsed conformation is not a stable conformation since any slight rotation will lead to a conformation lower in energy. The molecule will actually spend the vast majority of its time in a staggered or nearly staggered conformation and only briefly pass through the eclipsed conformation en route to another staggered conformation. It might help to compare the situation here with that of a marble in an egg-box. The marble will sit at the bottom of one of the wells. Rock the egg-box about gently, and the marble will stay in the well but it will roll around a bit, perhaps making its way a centimetre or so up the side. Shake the egg-box more vigorously and eventually the marble will go all the way over the side and down into a new well. One thing is certain: it won’t sit on top of the ridge, and the amount of time it will spend there is insignificant.

But why is the eclipsed conformation higher in energy than the staggered conformation? At first glance it might seem reasonable to suggest that there is some steric interaction between the hydrogen atoms in the eclipsed conformation that is reduced in the staggered conformation. However, this is not the case, as is shown by these space-filling models. The hydrogen atoms are just too small to get in each other’s way. It has been estimated that steric factors make up less than 10% of the rotational barrier in ethane.
There are two more important reasons why the staggered conformation of ethane is lower in energy than the eclipsed conformation. The first is that the electrons in the bonds repel each other and this repulsion is at a maximum in the eclipsed conformation. The second is that there may be some stabilizing interaction between the C–H σ bonding orbital on one carbon and the C–H σ* antibonding orbital on the other carbon, which is greatest when the two orbitals are exactly parallel: this only happens in the staggered conformation.

Of course, the real picture is probably a mixture of all three effects, each contributing more or less depending on the compound under consideration.

Conformations of propane

Propane is the next simplest hydrocarbon. Before we consider what conformations are possible for propane we should first look at its geometry. The C–C–C bond angle is not 109.5° (the tetrahedral angle—see Chapters 2 and 4) as we might expect but 112.4°. Consequently, the H–C–H bond angle on the central carbon is smaller than the ideal angle of 109.5°, only 106.1°. Once more, this does not necessarily mean that the two methyl groups on the central carbon clash in some way, but instead that two C–C bonds repel each other more than two C–H bonds do.

As in the case of ethane, two extreme conformations of propane are possible—in one the C–H and C–C bonds are staggered; in the other they are eclipsed.

The rotational barrier is now slightly higher than for ethane: 14 kJ mol⁻¹ as compared to 12 kJ mol⁻¹. This again reflects the greater repulsion of electrons in the coplanar bonds in the eclipsed conformation rather than any steric interactions. The energy graph for bond rotation in propane would look exactly the same as that for ethane except that the barrier is now 14 kJ mol⁻¹.

Conformations of butane

With butane things start to get slightly more complicated. Now we have effectively replaced two hydrogen atoms in ethane by larger methyl groups. These are large enough to get in the way of each other, that is, steric factors become a significant contribution to the rotational energy barriers. However, the main complication is that, as we rotate about the central C–C bond, not all the staggered conformations are the same, and neither are all the eclipsed conformations. The six conformations that butane can adopt as the central C–C bond is rotated in 60° intervals are shown below.
Look closely at these different conformations. The conformations with dihedral angles 60° and 300° are actually mirror images of each other, as are the conformations with angles 120° and 240°. This means that we really only have four different maxima or minima in energy as we rotate about the central C–C bond: two types of eclipsed conformations, which will represent maxima in the energy-rotation graph, and two types of staggered conformations, which will represent minima. These four different conformations have names, shown in the bottom row of the diagram. In the syn-periplanar and anti-periplanar conformations the two C–Me bonds lie in the same plane; in the synclinal (or gauche) and anticlinal conformations they slope towards (syn) or away from (anti) one another.

Before we draw the energy-rotation graph, let’s just stop and think what it might look like. Each of the eclipsed conformations will be energy maxima but the syn-periplanar conformation (\( \theta = 0° \)) will be higher in energy than the two anticlinal conformations (\( \theta = 120° \) and \( 240° \)); in the syn-periplanar-conformation two methyl groups are eclipsing each other whereas in the anticlinal conformations each methyl group is eclipsing only a hydrogen atom. The staggered conformations will be energy minima but the two methyl groups are furthest from each other in the anti-periplanar conformation so this will be a slightly lower minimum than the two synclinal (gauche) conformations.
Butane can exist in an infinite number of conformations (we have chosen to show only the six most significant) but has only three conformers (potential energy minima)—the two synclinal (gauche) conformations and the anti-periplanar conformation.

As in ethane, the eclipsed conformations are not stable since any rotation leads to a more stable conformation. The staggered conformations are stable since they each lie in a potential energy well. The anti-periplanar conformation, with the two methyl groups opposite each other, is the most stable of all. We can therefore think of a butane molecule as rapidly interconverting between synclinal and anti-periplanar conformations, passing quickly through the eclipsed conformations on the way. The eclipsed conformations are energy maxima, and therefore represent the transition states for interconversion between conformers.

If we managed to slow down the rapid interconversions in butane (by cooling to very low temperature, for example), we would be able to isolate the three stable conformations—the anti-periplanar and the two synclinal conformations. These different stable conformations of butane are some sort of isomers. They are called conformational isomers or conformers for short.

You will see why such detailed conformational analysis of acyclic compounds is so important in Chapter 19 on eliminations where the products of the reactions can be explained only by considering the conformations of the reactants and the transition states. But first we want to use these ideas to explain another branch of organic chemistry—the conformation of ring structures.

Ring strain

Up to now, we haven’t given an entirely accurate impression of rings. We have been drawing them all as if they were planar—though this is actually not the case. In this section you will learn how to draw rings more accurately and to understand the properties of the different conformations adopted.

If we assume that in fully saturated carbocyclic rings each carbon is sp^3 hybridized, then each bond angle would ideally be 109.5°. However, in a planar ring, the carbon atoms don’t have the luxury of choosing their bond angles: internal angle depends only on the number of atoms in the ring. If this angle differs from the ideal 109.5°, there will be some sort of strain in the molecule. This is best seen in the picture below where the atoms are forced planar. The more strained the molecules are, the more the bonds curve—in a strain-free molecule, the bonds are straight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of atoms in ring</th>
<th>Internal angle in planar ring</th>
<th>109.5°—internal angle</th>
<th>A measure of strain per carbon atom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>60°</td>
<td>49.5°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>90°</td>
<td>19.5°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>108°</td>
<td>1.5°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>120°</td>
<td>−10.5°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>128.5°</td>
<td>−19°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>135°</td>
<td>−25.5°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A measure of strain per carbon atom.

Notice how in the smaller rings the bonds curve outwards, whilst in the larger rings the bonds curve inwards. The table gives values for the internal angles for regular planar polygons and an indication of the strain per carbon atom due to the deviation of this angle from the ideal tetrahedral angle of 109.5°.

This data is best presented as a graph and the ring strains per carbon atom in planar rings for ring sizes up to seventeen are shown on p. 000. Whether the bonds are strained inwards or outwards is not important so only the magnitude of the strain is shown.

From these figures (represented in the graph on p. 000), note:

• The ring strain is largest for three-membered rings but rapidly decreases through a four-membered ring and reaches a minimum for a five-membered ring
• A planar five-membered ring is predicted to have the minimum level of ring strain
• The ring strain keeps on increasing (although less rapidly) as the rings get larger after the minimum at 5
But what we really need is a measure of the strain in actual compounds, not just a theoretical prediction in planar rings, so that we can compare this with the theoretical angle strain. A good measure of the strain in real rings is obtained using heats of combustion. Look at the following heats of combustion for some straight-chain alkanes. What is striking is that the difference between any two in the series is very nearly constant at around \(-660\text{ kJ mol}^{-1}\).

**Heats of combustion for some straight-chain alkanes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Straight-chain alkane</th>
<th>(\text{CH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}_3): (n)</th>
<th>(\Delta H_{\text{combustion}}), kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
<th>Difference, kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ethane 0</td>
<td>1560</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propane 1</td>
<td>2220</td>
<td>660</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butane 2</td>
<td>2877</td>
<td>657</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pentane 3</td>
<td>3536</td>
<td>659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hexane 4</td>
<td>4194</td>
<td>658</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heptane 5</td>
<td>4853</td>
<td>659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octane 6</td>
<td>5511</td>
<td>658</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonane 7</td>
<td>6171</td>
<td>658</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decane 8</td>
<td>6829</td>
<td>658</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecane 9</td>
<td>7487</td>
<td>658</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dodecane 10</td>
<td>8148</td>
<td>661</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If we assume (as is reasonable) that there is no strain in the straight-chain alkanes, then each extra methylene group, \(-\text{CH}_2-\), contributes on average an extra 658.7 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) to the heat of combustion for the alkane. A cycloalkane \((\text{CH}_2)_n\) is simply a number of methylene groups joined together. If the cycloalkane is strain-free, then its heat of combustion should be \(n \times 658.7\text{ kJ mol}^{-1}\). If, however, there is some strain in the ring that makes the ring less stable (that is, raises its energy) then more energy is given out on combustion.

Now, let’s put all this together in a graph showing, for each ring size: (a) angle strain per CH\(_2\) group; and (b) heat of combustion per CH\(_2\) group.

Points to notice in the green-coloured graph:

- The greatest strain by far is in the three-membered ring, cyclopropane \((n = 3)\)
The strain decreases rapidly with ring size but reaches a minimum for cyclohexane not cyclopentane as you might have predicted from the angle calculations.

The strain then increases but not nearly as quickly as the angle calculation suggested: it reaches a maximum at around \( n = 9 \) and then decreases once more.

The strain does not go on increasing as ring size increases but instead remains roughly constant after about \( n = 14 \).

Cyclohexane (\( n = 6 \)) and the larger cycloalkanes (\( n \geq 14 \)) all have heats of combustion per –CH\(_2\)– group of around 658 kJ mol\(^{-1}\), the same value as that of a –CH\(_2\)– group in a straight-chain alkane, that is, they are essentially strain-free.

Why are there discrepancies between the two graphs? Specifically:

- Why are six-membered rings and large rings virtually strain-free?
- Why is cyclopentane strained even though a planar conformation has virtually no angle strain?

The answer to the first point, as you may already have guessed, is that the assumption that the rings are planar is simply not correct. It is easy to see how large rings can fold up into many different conformations as easily as acyclic compounds do. It is less clear to predict what happens in six-membered rings.

### Six-membered rings

If you were to join six tetrahedral carbon atoms together, you would probably find that you ended up with a shape like this.

![Six-membered rings](image)

All the carbon atoms are certainly not in the same plane, and there is no strain because all the bond angles are 109.5°. If you squash the model against the desk, forcing the atoms to lie in the same plane, it springs back into this shape as soon as you let go. If you view the model from one side (the second picture above) you will notice that four carbon atoms lie in the same plane with the fifth above the plane and the sixth below it (though it’s important to realize that all six are identical—you can check this by rotating your model). The slightly overly imaginative name for this conformation—the chair conformation—derives from this view.

There is another conformation of cyclohexane that you might have made that looks like this.

### Smaller rings (thee, four, and five members)

The three carbon atoms in cyclopropane must lie in a plane since it is always possible to draw a plane through any three points. All the C–C bond lengths are the same which means that the three carbon atoms are at the corners of an equilateral triangle. From the large heat of combustion per methylene group (p. 000) we know that there is considerable strain in this molecule. Most of this is due to the bond angles deviating so greatly from the ideal tetrahedral value of 109.5°. Most but not all. If we view along one of the C–C bonds we can see a further cause of strain—all the C–H bonds are eclipsed.
The eclipsed conformation of ethane is an energy maximum and any rotation leads to a more stable conformation. In cyclopropane it is not possible to rotate any of the C–C bonds and so all the C–H bonds are forced to eclipse their neighbours.

In fact, in any planar conformation all the C–H bonds will be eclipsed with their neighbours. In cyclobutane, the ring distorts from a planar conformation in order to reduce the eclipsing interactions, even though this reduces the bond angles further and so increases the bond angle strain. Cyclobutane adopts a puckered or ‘wing-shaped’ conformation.

This explains why cyclopentane is not entirely strain-free even though in a planar conformation the C–C–C bond angles are close to 109.5°. The heat of combustion data give us an indication of the total strain in the molecule, not just the contribution of angle strain. There is strain in planar cyclopentane caused by the eclipsing of adjacent C–H bonds. As in cyclobutane, the ring distorts to reduce the eclipsing interactions but this increases the angle strain. Whatever happens, there is always going to be some strain in the system. The minimum energy conformation adopted is a balance of the two opposing effects. Cyclopentane adopts a shape approximating to an ‘open envelope’, with four atoms in a plane and one above or below it. The atoms in the ring rapidly take turns not to be in the plane, and cyclopentanes have much less well-defined conformational properties than cyclohexanes, to which we shall now return.

**A closer look at cyclohexane**

The heats of combustion data show that cyclohexane is virtually strain-free. This must include strain from eclipsing interaction as well as angle strain. A model of the chair conformation of cyclohexane including all the hydrogen atoms looks like this.
The view along two of the C–C bonds clearly shows that there are no eclipsing C–H bonds in the chair conformation of cyclohexane—in fact, all the bonds are fully staggered, giving the lowest energy possible. This is why cyclohexane is strain-free.

Contrast this with the boat conformation. Now all the C–H bonds are eclipsed, and there is a particularly bad interaction between the ‘flagstaff’ C–H bonds.

This explains why the boat conformation is much less important than the chair conformation. Even though both are free from angle strain, the eclipsing interactions in the boat conformation make it approximately 25 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) higher in energy than the chair conformation. In fact, as we shall see later, the boat conformation represents an energy maximum in cyclohexane whilst the chair conformation is an energy minimum. Earlier we saw how the eclipsing interactions in planar cyclobutane and cyclopentane could be reduced by distortion of the ring. The same is true for the boat conformation of cyclohexane. The eclipsing interactions can be relieved slightly if the two ‘side’ C–C bonds twist relative to each other.

This twisting gives rise to a slightly different conformation of cyclohexane called the twist-boat conformation, which, although not as low in energy as the chair form, is lower in energy (by 4 kJ mol\(^{-1}\))
than the boat form and is a local energy minimum as we shall see later. Cyclohexane has two stable conformers, the chair and the twist boat. The chair form is approximately 21 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) lower in energy than the twist-boat form.

**Drawing cyclohexane**

Take another look at the chair conformation on p. 000. All six carbon atoms are identical, but there are two types of protons—one type stick either vertically up or down and are called **axial** hydrogen atoms; the other sort stick out sideways and are called **equatorial** hydrogen atoms.

As you go round the ring, notice that each of the CH\(_2\) groups has one hydrogen sticking up and one sticking down. However, all the ‘up’ ones alternate between axial and equatorial, as do all the ‘down’ ones.

Before going any further, it’s important that you learn how to draw cyclohexane properly. Without cluttering the structure with Cs and Hs, a chemist would draw cyclohexane as one of these three structures.

Up to now, we have simply used the hexagon A to represent cyclohexane. We shall see that, whilst this is not strictly accurate, it is nonetheless still useful. The more correct structures B and C (which are actually just different views of the same molecule) take some practice to draw properly. A recommended way of drawing cyclohexane is shown in the box.

---

**Guidelines for drawing cyclohexane**

**The carbon skeleton**

- Trying to draw the chair conformation of cyclohexane in one continuous line can lead to some dreadful diagrams. The easiest way to draw a chair conformation is by starting off with one end.

- Next draw in two parallel lines of equal length.

- At this stage, the top of the new line should be level with the top of the original pair.

- Finally, the last two lines should be added. These lines should be parallel to the first pair of lines as shown and the lowest points should also be level.

**Adding the hydrogen atoms**

This is often the trickiest part. Just remember that you are trying to make each of the carbon atoms look tetrahedral. (Note that we don’t normally use wedged and hashed bonds; otherwise things get really messy.)

The axial bonds are relatively easy to draw in. They should all be vertically aligned and alternate up and down all round the ring.
The ring inversion (flipping) of cyclohexane

Given that this chair conformer is the preferred conformation for cyclohexane, what would you expect its $^{13}$C NMR spectrum to look like? All six carbon atoms are the same so there should only be one signal (and indeed there is, at 25.2 p.p.m.). But what about the $^1$H NMR spectrum? The two different sorts of protons (axial and equatorial) ought to resonate at different frequencies, so two signals should be seen (each with coupling to neighbouring protons). In fact, there is only one resonance in the proton spectrum, at 1.40 p.p.m.

In a monosubstituted cyclohexane, there should be two isomers detectable—one with the substituent axial, the other with the substituent equatorial. But again at room temperature only one set of signals is seen.

This changes when the NMR spectrum is run at low temperature. Now two isomers are visible, and this gives us a clue as to what is happening: the two isomers are conformers that interconvert—rapidly at room temperature, but more slowly when the temperature is lowered. Recall that NMR does not distinguish between the three different stable conformers of butane (two synclinal and one anti-periplanar) because they are all rapidly interconverting so fast that only an average is seen. The same happens with cyclohexane—just by rotating bonds (that is, without breaking any!) cyclohexane can ring invert or ‘flip’. After ring inversion has taken place, all the bonds that were axial are now equatorial and vice versa.

The complete diagram with all the hydrogen atoms should look like this.

### Guidelines for drawing cyclohexane (contd)

The equatorial bonds require a little more care to draw. The thing to remember is that each equatorial bond must be parallel to two C–C bonds.

- The chair has been drawn with the middle bonds horizontal, so the upper points of the chair are not level. This means the axial hydrogens can no longer be drawn vertical.
- The axial hydrogens have been drawn alternating up and down on the wrong carbons. This structure is impossible because none of the carbons can be tetrahedral.
- The red hydrogens have been drawn at the wrong angles—look for the parallel lines and the ‘W’ and ‘M’ shapes here.

In each diagram, all the red bonds are parallel.

Put in all 6 equatorial C–H bonds... and the ‘M’ shape here

---

**Common mistakes**

If you follow all the guidelines above, you will soon be drawing good conformational diagrams. However, a few common mistakes have been included to show you what not to do!

---

There is only one type of equatorial conformer, and one type of axial conformer. Convince yourself that these drawings are exactly the same conformation just viewed from different vantage points.

- Substitute axial
- Substitute equatorial

---

Make a model of cyclohexane and try the ring inversion for yourself.
The whole inversion process can be broken down into the conformations shown below. The green arrows show the direction in which the individual carbon atoms should move in order to get to the next conformation.

The energy profile for this ring inversion shows that the half-chair conformation is the energy maximum on going from a chair to a twist boat. The true boat conformation is the energy maximum on interchanging between two mirror-image twist-boat conformers, the second of which is converted to the other chair conformation through another half-chair.

It’s clear from the diagram that the barrier to ring inversion of cyclohexane is 43 kJ mol⁻¹, or a rate at 25 °C of about $2 \times 10^5$ s⁻¹. Ring inversion also interconverts the axial and equatorial protons, so these are also exchanging at a rate of $2 \times 10^5$ s⁻¹ at 25 °C—too fast for them to be detected individually by NMR, which is why they appear as an averaged signal.

In the half-chair conformation of cyclohexane, four adjacent carbon atoms are in one plane with the fifth above this plane and the sixth below it. You will this conformation again later—it represents the energy minimum for cyclohexene, for example.

There are also a number of ways of drawing a twist-boat conformer, . . . although it’s easier to see why it’s called a twist boat from this viewpoint

This would be a good point to remind you again of Chapter 13. This energy profile shows the conversion of one chair to another via two twist-boat intermediates (local energy minima). In between the energy minima are energy maxima, which are the transition states for the process. The progress of the ring-flipping ‘reaction’ is shown along an arbitrary ‘reaction coordinate’.

**Rates and spectroscopy**

NMR spectrometers behave like cameras with a shutter speed of about 1/1000 s. Anything happening faster than that, and we get a blurred picture; things happening more slowly give a sharp picture. In fact, a more exact number for the ‘shutter speed’ of an NMR machine (not a real shutter speed—just figuratively speaking!) is given by the equation

$$k = \frac{\pi \Delta \nu}{\sqrt{2}} = 2.22 \times \Delta \nu$$

where $k$ is the fastest exchange rate that still gives individual signals and $\Delta \nu$ is the separation of those signals in the NMR spectrum measured in hertz. For example, on a 200 MHz spectrometer, two signals separated by 0.5 p.p.m. are 100 Hz apart, so any process exchanging with a rate slower than 222 s⁻¹ will still allow the NMR machine to show two separate signals; if they exchange with a rate faster than 222 s⁻¹ only an averaged signal will be seen.

The equation above holds for any spectroscopic method, provided we think in terms of differences between signals or peaks measured in hertz. So, for example, a difference between two IR absorptions of 100 cm⁻¹ can be represented as a wavelength of 0.01 cm (1 × 10⁻⁴ m) or a frequency of $3 \times 10^{12}$ s⁻¹. IR can detect changes happening a lot faster than NMR can—it’s ‘shutter speed’ is of the order of one-trillionth of a second.
Substituted cyclohexanes

In a monosubstituted cyclohexane, there can exist two different chair conformers: one with the substituent axial, the other with it equatorial. The two chair conformers will be in rapid equilibrium (by the process we have just described) but they will not have the same energy. In almost all cases, the conformer with the substituent axial is higher in energy, which means there will be less of this form present at equilibrium.

For example, in methylcyclohexane (X = CH₃), the conformer with the methyl group axial is 7.3 kJ mol⁻¹ higher in energy than the conformer with the methyl group equatorial. This energy difference corresponds to a 20:1 ratio of equatorial:axial conformers at 25°C.

There are two reasons why the axial conformer is higher in energy than the equatorial conformer. The first is that the axial conformer is destabilized by the repulsion between the axial group X and the two axial hydrogen atoms on the same side of the ring. This interaction is known as the 1,3-diaxial interaction. As the group X gets larger, this interaction becomes more severe and there is less of the conformer with the group axial.

The second reason is that in the equatorial conformer the C–X bond is anti-periplanar to two C–C bonds, while, for the axial conformer, the C–X bond is synclinal (gauche) to two C–C bonds.

The table shows the preference of a number of substituted cyclohexanes for the equatorially substituted conformer over the axially substituted conformer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>Equilibrium constant, K</th>
<th>Energy difference between axial and equatorial conformers, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
<th>% with substituent equatorial</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Et</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-Pr</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-Bu</td>
<td>&gt;3000</td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
<td>&gt;99.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMe</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following points.
- The three columns in the table are three different ways of expressing the same information. However, just looking at the percentages column, it is not immediately obvious to see how much more of the equatorial conformer there is—after all, the percentages of equatorial conformer for methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, t-butyl, and phenyl-cyclohexanes are all 95% or more. Looking at the equilibrium constants gives a much clearer picture.
• The amount of equatorial conformer present does increase in the order Me < Et < i-Pr < t-Bu, but perhaps not quite as expected. The ethyl group must be physically larger than a methyl group but there is hardly any difference in the equilibrium constants. The increase in the proportion of equatorial conformer on going from Et to i-Pr is only a factor of two but for t-butylocyclohexane, it is estimated that there is about 3000 times more of the equatorial conformer than the axial conformer.

• The same anomaly occurs with the methoxy group—there is a much greater proportion of the conformer with a methoxy group axial than with a methyl group axial. This is despite the fact that the methoxy group is physically larger than a methyl group.

The equilibrium constant does not depend on the actual size of the substituent, but rather its interaction with the neighbouring axial hydrogens. In the case of the methoxy group, the oxygen acts as link and removes the methyl group away from the ring, lessening the interaction. The groups Me, Et, i-Pr, and t-Bu all need to point some atom towards the other axial hydrogens, and for Me, Et, and i-Pr this can be H. Only for t-Bu must a methyl group be pointing straight at the axial hydrogens, so t-Bu has a much larger preference for the equatorial position than the other alkyl groups. In fact, the interactions between an axial t-butyl group and the axial hydrogen atoms are so severe that the group virtually always stays in the equatorial position. As we shall see later, this can be very useful.

What happens with more than one substituent on the ring?

When there are two or more substituents on the ring, stereoisomerism is possible. For example, there are two isomers of 1,4-cyclohexanediol—in one (the cis isomer) both the substituents are either above or below the cyclohexane ring; in the other (the trans isomer) one hydroxyl group is above the ring whilst the second is below. For a cis-1,4-disubstituted cyclohexane with both the substituents the same, ring inversion leads to a second identical conformation, while for the trans configuration there is one conformation with both groups axial and one with both groups equatorial.
The chair-structure diagrams contain much more information than the simple ‘hexagon’ diagrams that we have used up to now. The former show both configuration and conformation—they show which stereoisomer (cis or trans) we are talking about and also (for the trans compound) the conformation adopted (diaxial or the more stable diequatorial). In contrast, the simpler hexagon diagrams carry no information about the conformation—only information about which isomer we are dealing with. This can be useful, because it enables us to talk about one configuration of a compound without specifying the conformation. When you are solving a problem requiring conformational diagrams to predict the configuration of a product, always start and finish with a configurational (hexagon) drawing.

The chair conformer of cis-1,4-disubstituted cyclohexane has one substituent equatorial, the other axial. This will not necessarily be this case for other substitution patterns; for example, the chair conformer of a cis-1,3-disubstituted cyclohexane has either both substituents axial or both equatorial. Remember, the ‘cis’ and ‘trans’ prefixes merely indicate that both groups are on the same ‘side’ of the cyclohexane ring. Whether the substituents are both axial/equatorial or one axial and the other equatorial depends on the substitution pattern. Each time you meet a molecule, draw the conformation or make a model to find out which bonds are axial and equatorial.

What if the two substituents on the ring are different? For the cis 1,3-disubstituted example above, there is no problem, because the favoured conformation will still be the one that places these two different substituents equatorial. But when one substituent is axial and the other equatorial (as they happen to be in the trans diastereoisomer above) the preferred conformation will depend on what those substituents are. In general, the favoured conformation will place the maximum number of substituents equatorial. If both conformations have the same number of equatorial substituents, the one with the larger substituent equatorial will win out, and the smaller group will be forced to be axial. Various possibilities are included in the examples below.
This is only a guideline, and in many cases it is not easy to be sure. Instead of concerning ourselves with these uncertainties, we shall move on to some differentially substituted cyclohexanes for which it is absolutely certain which conformer is preferred.

**Locking groups—t-butyl groups, decalins, and steroids**

**t-Butyl groups**

We have already seen how a t-butyl group always prefers an equatorial position in a ring. This makes it very easy to decide which conformation the two different compounds below will adopt.

- **cis-4-t-butylocyclohexanol**
  - in the *cis* diastereoisomer, the hydroxyl group is forced into an axial position
  - in both compounds, the t-butyl group is equatorial

- **trans-4-t-butylocyclohexanol**
  - in the *trans* diastereoisomer, the hydroxyl group is forced into an equatorial position
  - in both compounds, the t-butyl group is equatorial

**Cis-1,4-di-t-butylcyclohexane**

An axial t-butyl group really is very unfavourable. In cis-1,4-di-t-butylcyclohexane, one t-butyl group would be forced axial if the compound existed in a chair conformation. To avoid this, the compound prefers to pucker into a twist boat so that the two large groups can both be in equatorial positions (or ‘pseudoequatorial’, since this is not a chair).

- **cis-1,4-di-t-butylcyclohexane**
  - the twist-boat conformer (with both t-butyl groups in pseudoequatorial positions) is lower in energy than the chair conformer.

**Decalins**

It is also possible to lock the conformation of a cyclohexane ring by joining another ring to it. Decalin is two cyclohexane rings fused at a common C–C bond. Two diastereoisomers are possible, depending on whether the hydrogen atoms at the ring junction are *cis* or *trans*. For *cis*-decalin, the second ring has to join the first so that it is axial at one point of attachment and equatorial at the other; for *trans*-decalin, the second ring can be joined to the first in the equatorial position at both attachment points.

- **Decalin**
  - this bond is an equatorial substituent on the black ring
  - both green bonds are equatorial substituents on the black ring

- **cis-decalin**
  - this bond is an axial substituent on the black ring

- **trans-decalin**
When a cyclohexane ring inverts, the substituents that were equatorial become axial and vice versa. This is fine for cis-decalin, which has an axial–equatorial junction, but it means that ring inversion is not possible for trans-decalin. For trans-decalin to invert, the junction would have to become axial–axial, and it’s not possible to link the axial positions to form a six-membered ring. Cis-decalin, on the other hand, ring inverts just as fast as cyclohexane.

Steroids

Steroids are an important class of compounds occurring in all animals and plants and have many important functions from regulating growth (anabolic steroids) and sex drive (all sex hormones are steroids) to acting as a self-defence mechanism in plants, frogs, and even sea cucumbers. A steroid is defined by its structure: all steroids contain a basic carbon framework consisting of four fused rings—three cyclohexane rings and one cyclopentane ring—labelled and joined together as shown in the margin.

Just as in the decalin system, each ring junction could be cis or trans, but it turns out that all steroids have all trans-junctions except where rings A and B join which is sometimes cis. Examples are cholestanol (all trans) and coprostanol (A and B fused cis).

Because steroids (even those with a cis A–B ring junction) are essentially substituted trans-decalins they can’t ring flip. This means, for example, that the hydroxyl group in cholestanol is held equatorial on ring A while the hydroxyl group in coprostanol is held axial on ring A. The steroid skeleton really is remarkably stable—samples of sediment $1.5 \times 10^9$ years old have been found to contain steroids still with the same ring-junction stereochemistry.

Axially and equatorially substituted rings react differently

We shall be using ring structures throughout the rest of the book, and you will learn how the conformation affects chemistry extensively. Here we shall give a few examples in which the outcome of a reaction may depend on whether a functional group is axial or equatorial. In many of the examples, the functional group will be held in its axial or equatorial position by ‘locking’ the ring using a $t$-butyl group or a fused ring system such as trans-decalin.
Nucleophilic substitution

In the last chapter we looked at two mechanisms for nucleophilic substitution: $S_N1$ and $S_N2$. We saw that the $S_N2$ reaction involved an inversion at the carbon centre. Recall that the incoming nucleophile had to attack the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the C–X bond. This meant that it had to approach the leaving group directly from behind, leading to inversion of configuration.

What do you think would happen if a cyclohexane derivative underwent an $S_N2$ reaction? If the conformation of the molecule is fixed by a locking group, the inversion mechanism of the $S_N2$ reaction, means that, if the leaving group is axial, then the incoming nucleophile will end up equatorial and vice versa.

Substitution reactions are not very common for substituted cyclohexane. The substituted carbon in a cyclohexane ring is a secondary centre—in the last chapter, we saw that secondary centres do not react well via either $S_N1$ or $S_N2$ mechanisms (p. 000). To encourage an $S_N2$ mechanism, we need a good attacking nucleophile and a good leaving group. One such example is shown—the substitution of a tosylate by PhS$^-$. 

Axially and equatorially substituted rings react differently

465
It is found that the substitution of an axial substituent proceeds faster than the substitution of an equatorial substituent. There are several contributing factors making up this rate difference, but probably the most important is the direction of approach of the nucleophile. The nucleophile must attack the $\sigma^*$ of the leaving group, that is, directly behind the C–X bond. In the case of an equatorially substituted compound, this line of attack is hindered by the (green) axial hydrogens—it passes directly through the region of space they occupy. For an axial leaving group, the direction of attack is parallel with the (orange) axial hydrogens anti-periplanar to the leaving group, and approach is much less hindered.

![equatorial leaving group](image1)

![axial leaving group](image2)

We must assume that this holds even for simple unsubstituted cyclohexanes, and that substitution reactions of cyclohexyl bromide, for example, occur mainly on the minor, axial conformer. This slows down the reaction because, before it can react, the prevalent equatorial conformer must first flip axial.

![cyclohexyl bromide](image3)

**Epoxides**

In the last chapter you met epoxides as electrophiles reacting with nucleophiles such as amines and azide, and we shall look at this sort of reaction again in a few pages time. Epoxides can be formed from compounds containing an adjacent hydroxyl group and a leaving group by treatment with base. The reaction is essentially the reverse of their ring-opening reaction with nucleophiles.

![epoxide ring-opening reaction](image4)

![epoxide ring-closing reaction](image5)

As for intermolecular substitutions, the incoming nucleophile must still attack into the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the leaving group. In the formation of an epoxide, such an attack can take place only if both groups are axially substituted. As a consequence, only a trans 2-chloro cyclohexanol can form an epoxide, and then only when in the less energetically favourable conformation with both groups axial. Of course, as the diaxial conformer reacts, rapid ring inversion of the major equatorial isomer ensures that it is replaced.
It is impossible for the CO bonds of the product epoxide ring to adopt perfectly axial and equato-rial positions. If you make a model of cyclohexene oxide you will see that the ring is a slightly deformed chair—it is more of a half-chair conformation in which four of the carbon atoms are in the same plane (you met this on p. 000).

The usual way of drawing cyclohexene oxide is shown: notice that the distortion due to the three-membered ring changes the orientation of the axial and equatorial hydrogens next to the ring—they are pseudoaxial and pseudoequatorial. The hydrogens on the back of the ring (this part of the ring remains about the same as in the chair conformation) can be still considered as ‘normal’ axial and equatorial hydrogens.

The usual way of drawing cyclohexene oxide is shown: notice that the distortion due to the three-membered ring changes the orientation of the axial and equatorial hydrogens next to the ring—they are pseudoaxial and pseudoequatorial. The hydrogens on the back of the ring (this part of the ring remains about the same as in the chair conformation) can be still considered as ‘normal’ axial and equatorial hydrogens.

We said that the epoxide-forming reaction is essentially the reverse of the epoxide-opening reaction. If we took a snapshot of the transition state for either reaction, we would not be able to tell whether it was the RO$^-$ that was attacking the C–X $\sigma^*$ to form the epoxide or the X$^-$ attacking the C–O $\sigma^*$ of the epoxide to form a ring-opened alcohol. In other words, the transition state is the same for both reactions.
Since ring closure is only possible when the starting material is diaxially substituted, this has to mean that ring opening is similarly only possible if the product is diaxial. This is a general principle: ring opening of cyclohexene oxides always leads directly to diaxial products. The diaxially substituted product may then subsequently flip to the diequatorial one.

How do we know this to be true? If the ring bears a t-butyl substituent, ring flipping is impossible, and the diaxial product has to stay diaxial. An example is nucleophilic attack of halide on the two epoxides shown below.

Points to note:

- The t-butyl group locks the conformation of the epoxide. Whereas cyclohexene oxide can flip (see above), enabling the nucleophile to attack either of the epoxide carbon atoms, here the ring is conformationally rigid.
- The nucleophile must attack from the opposite side of the epoxide into the C–O σ*. This means that the nucleophile and hydroxyl group end up trans in the product.
- In each case the epoxide opens only at the end that gives the diaxially substituted chair. Ring opening at the other end would still give a diaxially substituted product, but it is a diaxially substituted high-energy twist-boat conformation. The twist boat can, in fact, flip to give an all-equatorial product, but this is a kinetically controlled process, and it is the barrier to reaction that matters, not the stability of the final product.

Axial attack on half-chairs

Epoxide openings are not alone in always giving diaxial products. We can give the general guideline that, for any reaction on a six-membered ring that is not already in the chair conformation, axial attack is preferred. You will see in later chapters that this is true for cyclohexenes, which also have the half-chair conformation described in the next section. Cyclohexanones, on the other hand, already have a chair conformation, and so can be attacked axially or equatorially.
Rings containing sp² hybridized carbon atoms: cyclohexanone and cyclohexene

Every ring you’ve seen in this chapter has been fully saturated. You’ve seen the distortion to a half-chair resulting from fusion of a six-membered ring with an epoxide—what happens if some of the tetrahedral carbons are replaced with trigonal (sp²) hybridized ones? Well, for one sp² carbon atom the simple answer is nothing—the conformation is not significantly altered by the presence of just one sp² centre in a ring. The conformations of methylenecyclohexene and cyclohexanone—along with a model of cyclohexanone—are shown below.

Six-membered rings with more than one sp² C atom do lose their chair conformation—they become flattened to some degree when there are one or more double bonds included in the ring. Cyclohexene, with just one double bond in the ring, has a half-chair conformation similar to that of its related epoxide, cyclohexene oxide. The usual conformational diagram of cyclohexene is shown below. The barrier for ring inversion of cyclohexene is around 22 kJ mol⁻¹ (about half that for cyclohexane).

We will look more closely at the reactions of cyclohexene along with other alkenes in later chapters. For now, we return to the chemistry of cyclohexanones. Before you had read this chapter you might simply have drawn the mechanism for nucleophilic attack on cyclohexanone as shown.

The product contains the two functional groups Nu and OH, which you now know can be arranged in two conformations: one in which the alcohol is axial and one in which it is equatorial. But we can’t predict which conformation is more favourable without knowing what the group Nu is: if Nu is smaller than OH (H, say) then the conformation with the hydroxyl
group equatorial will be lower in energy; if Nu is large then the most stable conformation will have the alcohol group axial and Nu equatorial.

Now think of a nucleophile attacking 4-t-butylcyclohexanone. Since the t-butyl group locks the ring, whether Nu is axial or equatorial will depend only on which face of the C=O group it attacked. Attack on the same face as the t-butyl group leaves the nucleophile axial and the hydroxyl group equatorial; attack on the opposite face leaves the nucleophile equatorial and the hydroxyl group axial. The nucleophile is said to attack either in an axial or equatorial manner, depending on where it ends up. It’s easier to see this in a diagram.

Now for the observation—we’ll try and explain it later. In general, large nucleophiles attack equatorially and small nucleophiles attack axially. For example, reduction of 4-t-butylcyclohexanone with lithium aluminium hydride in Et₂O gives 90% of the trans alcohol: 90% of the hydride has added axially. AlH₄⁻ is quite small as nucleophiles go: to make more of the cis alcohol we need a larger nucleophile—lithium tri-sec-butylborohydride, for example, sold under the name of L-selectride®. This is so large that it only attacks equatorially, yielding typically 95% of the cis alcohol.

Carbon-centred nucleophiles follow the same trend—the table shows that, as size increases from the slender ethynl anion through primary and secondary organometallics to t-BuMgBr, the axial selectivity drops off correspondingly.

Now the difficult part—why? This is a question that is very difficult to answer because the answer really is not known for certain. It’s certainly true that the direction of approach for axial attack is more hindered than for equatorial attack, and this is certainly the reason large nucleophiles prefer to attack equatorially.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nucleophile</th>
<th>% of product resulting from</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axial attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC≡CNa</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeLi</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhLi</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeMgBr</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtMgBr</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-PrMgBr</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-BuMgBr</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
But if this is the case, why do small ones actually prefer to attack axially? There must be another factor that favours axial attack for those nucleophiles small enough to avoid the bad interactions with the other axial hydrogens. At the transition state, the forming $\text{–O}^-$ oxygen substituent is moving in either an axial or an equatorial direction. Just as the axial substituent is less favourable than an equatorial one, so is the transition state leading there, and the route leading to the equatorial hydrox-y group is favoured.

## Multiple rings

Cyclohexane sometimes adopts a twist-boat conformation, but never a true boat structure, which represents an energy maximum. But boat structures are important in some bicyclic compounds where the compound simply doesn’t have any choice in the conformation it adopts. The simplest compound locked into a boat structure is norbornane. The CH$_2$ bridge has to be diaxial (otherwise it can’t reach), which means that the cyclohexane ring part of the structure has no choice but to be a boat.

Nor-

The nor- prefix has a number of meanings in ‘trivial’ organic nomenclature. Here it tells us that this structure is like that of the parent compound but less one or more alkyl groups—that is, no R groups. This isn’t the derivation of the word though—historically it comes from the German Nitrogen ohne Radikal (‘nitrogen without R-groups’)—it was used first for amines such noradrenaline (also known as norepinephrine) and norephedrine. You met ephedrine in Chapter 16.

Nitrogen atoms are usually marked in red. As you look at the structure of norbornane, you can see that the hydrogens on the four-membered ring are diaxial (otherwise they can’t reach).

Look closely at the structure of norbornane with its full quota of hydrogen atoms, and you will see that all of the hydrogen atoms on the six-membered ring (except those on the bridgehead carbons) are in the equatorial positions. We have highlighted the bridgehead carbons in red and marked the hydrogens with a black line, which shows you that the cyclohexane boat is shown in black.

Nor- noradrenaline

[2.2.2]-bicyclooctane

It is worth briefly explaining this systematic name. Octane is obvious—it’s C$_8$. And bicyclo is the minimum two rings required to define the structure, [2.2.2] means that each linking chain from one bridgehead to the other is two carbon atoms long. This system of nomenclature allows norbornane to be given the systematic (and less memorable) name [2.2.1]-bicycloheptane. In Chapter 8 you met the bases DBU (1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undecene-7) and DBN (1,5-diazabicyclo[3.4.0]nonene-5) named in the same way—and you will meet them again in the very next chapter, as they are particularly good bases for the promotion of elimination reactions.

To conclude...

You may wonder why we have spent most of this chapter looking at six-membered rings, ignoring other ring sizes almost totally. Apart from the fact that six is the most widespread ring size in organic chemistry, the reactions of six-membered rings are also the easiest to explain and to understand. The
conformational principles we have outlined for six-membered rings (relief of ring strain, staggered favoured over eclipsed, equatorial favoured over axial, direction of attack) hold, in modified form, for other ring sizes as well. These other rings are less well-behaved than six-membered rings because they lack the well-defined strain-free conformations that cyclohexane is blessed with. We shall now leave stereochemistry in rings for some time, but we come back to these more difficult rings—and how to tame them—in a whole chapter on controlling stereochemistry with cyclic compounds, Chapter 33.

Problems

1. Identify the chair or boat six-membered rings in the following structures and say why that particular shape is adopted.

2. Draw clear conformational drawings for these molecules, labelling each substituent as axial or equatorial.

3. Would the substituents in these molecules be axial or equatorial or a mixture of the two?

4. Why is it difficult for cyclohexyl bromide to undergo an E2 reaction? When it is treated with base, it does undergo an E2 reaction to give cyclohexene. What conformational changes must occur during this reaction?

5. Treatment of this diketoalcohol with base causes an elimination reaction. What is the mechanism, and which conformation must the molecule adopt for the elimination to occur?

6. Which of these two compounds would form an epoxide on treatment with base?

7. Draw conformational diagrams for these compounds. State in each case why the substituents have the positions you state. To what extent could you confirm your predictions experimentally?

8. It is more difficult to form an acetal of compound 8A than of 8B. Why is this?

9. Predict which products would be formed on opening these epoxides with nucleophiles, say, cyanide ion.
10. These two sugar analogues are part of the structure of two compounds used to treat poultry diseases. Which conformations would they prefer?

11. Hydrolysis of the tricyclic bromide shown here in water gives an alcohol. What is the conformation of the bromide and what will be the stereochemistry of the alcohol?

12. Treatment of the triol 12A with benzaldehyde in acid solution produces one diastereoisomer of the acetal 12B and none of the alternative acetal. Why is this acetal preferred? (Hint. What controls acetal formation?) What is the stereochemistry of the undefined centre in 12B?
Elimination reactions

Connections

Building on:
- Mechanisms of nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon ch17
- Conformation ch18

Arriving at:
- Elimination reactions
- What factors favour elimination over substitution
- The three important mechanisms of elimination reactions
- The importance of conformation in elimination reactions
- How to use eliminations to make alkenes (and alkynes)

Looking forward to:
- Electrophilic additions to alkenes (the reverse of the reactions in this chapter) ch20
- How to control double-bond geometry ch31

Substitution and elimination

Substitution reactions of t-butyl halides, you will recall from Chapter 17, invariably follow the S_N1 mechanism. In other words, the rate-determining step of their substitution reactions is unimolecular—it involves only the alkyl halide. And this means that, no matter what the nucleophile is, the reaction goes at the same rate. You can’t speed this S_N1 reaction up, for example, by using hydroxide instead of water, or even by increasing the concentration of hydroxide. ‘You’d be wasting your time,’ we said (p. 000).

nucleophilic substitution reactions of t-BuBr

\[ \text{t-BuBr} \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} \text{t-butyl bromide} \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \text{t-butanol} \]

reaction goes at the same rate whatever the nucleophile

rate = \( k \cdot [\text{BuBr}] \)

You’d also be wasting your alkyl halide. This is what actually happens if you try the substitution reaction with a concentrated solution of sodium hydroxide.

reaction of t-BuBr with concentrated solution of NaOH

\[ \text{t-BuBr} + \text{HO}^- \xrightarrow{\text{rate}} \text{isobutene (2-methylpropene)} + \text{HO}^- + \text{Br}^- \]

elimination reaction forms alkene

rate = \( k \cdot [\text{BuBr}] \cdot [\text{HO}^-] \)

The reaction stops being a substitution and an alkene is formed instead. Overall, HCl has been lost from the alkyl halide, and the reaction is called an elimination.

In this chapter we will talk about the mechanisms of elimination reactions—as in the case of substitutions, there is more than one mechanism for eliminations. We will compare eliminations with substitutions—either reaction can happen from almost identical starting materials, and you will learn how to predict which is the more likely. Much of the mechanistic discussion relates very closely to Chapter 17, and we suggest that you should make sure you understand all of the points in that chapter before tackling this one. This chapter will also tell you about uses for elimination reactions. Apart from a brief look at the Wittig reaction in Chapter 14, this is the first time you have met a way of making alkenes.
Elimination happens when the nucleophile attacks hydrogen instead of carbon

The elimination reaction of \(t\)-butyl bromide happens because the nucleophile is basic. You will recall from Chapter 12 that there is some correlation between basicity and nucleophilicity: strong bases are usually good nucleophiles. But being a good nucleophile doesn’t get hydroxide anywhere in the substitution reaction, because it doesn’t appear in the first-order rate equation. But being a good base does get it somewhere in the elimination reaction, because hydroxide is involved in the rate-determining step of the elimination, and so it appears in the rate equation. This is the mechanism.

The hydroxide is behaving as a base because it is attacking the hydrogen atom, instead of the carbon atom it would attack in a substitution reaction. The hydrogen atom is acidic, but proton removal can occur because bromide is a good leaving group. As the hydroxide attacks, the bromide is forced to leave, taking with it the negative charge. Two molecules—\(t\)-butyl bromide and hydroxide—are involved in the rate-determining step of the reaction. This means that the concentrations of both appear in the rate equation, which is therefore second-order

\[
\text{rate} = k_2 [t\text{-BuBr}][\text{HO}^-]
\]

and this mechanism for elimination is termed E2, for elimination, bimolecular.

Now let’s look at another sort of elimination. We can approach it again by thinking about an \(S_N1\) substitution reaction. It is another one you met early in Chapter 17, and it is the reverse of the one at the beginning of this chapter.

nucleophilic substitution of \(t\)-BuOH with HBr

Bromide, the nucleophile, is not involved in the rate-determining step, so we know that the rate of the reaction will be independent of the concentration of \(Br^-\). But what happens if we use an acid whose counterion is such a weak nucleophile that it doesn’t even attack the carbon of the carbocation? Here is an example—\(t\)-butanol in sulfuric acid doesn’t undergo substitution, but undergoes elimination instead.

\(E1\) elimination of \(t\)-BuOH in \(H_2SO_4\)

Now, the \(HSO_4^-\) is not involved in the rate-determining step—\(HSO_4^-\) is not at all basic and only behaves as a base (that is, it removes a proton) because it is even more feeble as a nucleophile. The rate equation will not involve the concentration of \(HSO_4^-\), and the rate-determining step is the same as that in the \(S_N1\) reaction—unimolecular loss of water from the protonated \(t\)-BuOH. This elimination mechanism is therefore called \(E1\).
How the nucleophile affects elimination versus substitution

Basicity
You have just seen molecules bearing leaving groups being attacked at two distinct electrophilic sites: the carbon to which the leaving group is attached, and the hydrogen atoms on the carbon adjacent to the leaving group. Attack at carbon leads to substitution; attack at hydrogen leads to elimination. Since strong bases attack protons, it is generally true that, the more basic the nucleophile, the more likely that elimination is going to replace substitution as the main reaction of an alkyl halide.

Here is an example of this idea at work.

weak base: substitution

strong base: elimination

Elimination, substitution, and hardness

We can also rationalize selectivity for elimination versus substitution, or attack of H versus attack on C in terms of hard and soft electrophiles (p. 000). In an S_N2 substitution, the carbon centre is a soft electrophile—it is essentially uncharged, and with leaving groups such as halide the C-X \( \sigma^+ \) is a relatively low-energy LUMO. Substitution is therefore favoured by nucleophiles whose HOMOs are best able to interact with this LUMO—in other words soft nucleophiles. In contrast, the C-H \( \sigma^+ \) is higher in energy because the atoms are less electronegative. This, coupled with the hydrogen’s small size, makes the C-H bond a hard electrophilic site, and as a result hard nucleophiles favour elimination.

Size
For a nucleophile, attacking a carbon atom means squeezing past its substituents—and even for unhindered primary alkyl halides there is still one alkyl group attached. This is one of the reasons...
that $S_N2$ is so slow on hindered alkyl halides—the nucleophile has difficulty getting to the reactive
centre. Getting at a more exposed hydrogen atom in an elimination reaction is much easier, and this
means that, as soon as we start using hard, basic nucleophiles that are also bulky, elimination
becomes preferred over substitution, even for primary alkyl halides. One of the best bases for pro-
moting elimination and avoiding substitution is potassium $t$-butoxide. The large alkyl substituent
makes it hard for the negatively charged oxygen to attack carbon in a substitution reaction, but it has
no problem attacking hydrogen.

small nucleophile: substitution

large nucleophile: elimination

Temperature

Temperature has an important role to play in deciding whether a reaction is an elimination or a sub-
stitution. In an elimination, two molecules become three. In a substitution, two molecules form two
new molecules. The two reactions differ therefore in the change in entropy during the reaction: $\Delta S$
is greater for elimination than for substitution. In Chapter 13, we discussed the equation

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T \Delta S$$

This equation says that a reaction in which $\Delta S$ is positive is more exothermic at higher tempera-
ture. Eliminations should therefore be favoured at high temperature, and this is indeed the case:
most eliminations you will see are conducted at room temperature or above.

- Nucleophiles that are strong bases favour elimination over substitution
- Nucleophiles (or bases) that are bulky favour elimination over substitution
- High temperatures favour elimination over substitution

E1 and E2 mechanisms

Now that you have seen a few examples of elimination reactions, it is time to return to our discussion
of the two mechanisms for elimination. To summarize what we have said so far:

- E1 describes an elimination reaction (E) in which the rate-determining step is unimolecular (1)
  and does not involve the base. The leaving group leaves in this step, and the proton is removed in
  a separate second step
E2 describes an elimination (E) that has a bimolecular (2) rate-determining step that must involve the base. Loss of the leaving group is simultaneous with removal of the proton by the base.

There are a number of factors that affect whether an elimination goes by an E1 or E2 mechanism. One is immediately obvious from the rate equations: only the E2 is affected by the concentration of base, so at high base concentration E2 is favoured. The rate of an E1 reaction is not even affected by what base is present—so E1 is just as likely with weak as with strong bases, while E2 goes faster with strong bases than weak ones: strong bases at whatever concentration will favour E2 over E1. If you see a strong base being used for an elimination, it is certainly an E2 reaction. Take the first elimination in this chapter as an example.

With less hindered alkyl halides hydroxide would not be a good choice as a base for an elimination because it is rather small and still very good at S_N2 substitutions (and even with tertiary alkyl halides, substitution outpaces elimination at low concentrations of hydroxide). So what are good alternatives?

We have already mentioned the bulky t-butoxide—ideal for promoting E2 as it’s both bulky and a strong base (pK_aH = 18). Here it is at work converting a dibromide to a diene with two successive E2 eliminations. Since dibromides can be made from alkenes (you will see how in the next chapter), this is a useful two-step conversion of an alkene to a diene.

The product of the next reaction is a ‘ketene acetal’—you met ketene, CH_2=C=O, in Chapter 15. Unlike most acetals, this one can’t be formed directly from ketene (ketene is too unstable), so
instead, the acetal is made by the usual method from bromoacetaldehyde, and then HBr is eliminated using t-BuOK.

Among the most commonly used bases for converting alkyl halides to alkenes are two that you met in Chapter 8 and that received a mention at the end of Chapter 18: DBU and DBN. These two bases are amidines—delocalization of one nitrogen’s lone pair on to the other, and the resulting stabilization of the protonated amidinium ion, makes them particularly basic, with \( pK_{a\text{H}} \)s of about 12.5. There is not much chance of getting those voluminous fused rings into tight corners—so they pick off the easy-to-reach protons rather than attacking carbon atoms in substitution reactions.

DBU or DBN will generally eliminate HX from alkyl halides to give alkenes. In these two examples, the products were intermediates in the synthesis of natural products.

**Substrate structure may allow E1**

The first elimination of the chapter (t-BuBr plus hydroxide) illustrates something very important: the starting material is a tertiary alkyl halide (and would therefore substitute only by SN1) it can eliminate by either E2 (with strong bases) or E1 (with weak bases). The steric factors that disfavour SN1 at hindered centres don’t exist for eliminations. Nonetheless, E1 can occur only with substrates that can ionize to give relatively stable carboocations—tertiary, allylic or benzylic alkyl halides, for example. Secondary alkyl halides may eliminate by E1, while primary alkyl halides only ever eliminate by E2 because the primary carbocation required for E1 would be too unstable. The chart on the facing page summarizes the types of substrate that can undergo E2—but remember that any of these substrates, under the appropriate conditions (in the presence of strong bases, for example), may also undergo E2. For completeness, we have also included in this chart three alkyl halides that cannot eliminate by either mechanism simply because they do not have any hydrogens to lose from carbon atoms adjacent to the leaving group.
Polar solvents also favour E1 reactions because they stabilize the intermediate carbocation. E1 eliminations from alcohols in aqueous or alcohol solution are particularly common, and very useful. An acid catalyst is used to promote loss of water, and in dilute H₂SO₄ or HCl the absence of good nucleophiles ensures that substitution does not compete. Under these conditions, the secondary alcohol cyclohexanol gives cyclohexene.

But the best E1 eliminations of all are with tertiary alcohols. The alcohols can be made using the methods of Chapter 9: nucleophilic attack by an organometallic on a carbonyl compound. Nucleophilic addition, followed by E1 elimination, is the best way of making this substituted cyclohexene, for example. Note that the the proton required in the first step is recovered in the last—the reaction requires only catalytic amounts of acid.

In E1 mechanisms, once the leaving group has departed almost anything will serve as a base to remove a proton from the intermediate carbocation. Weakly basic solvent molecules (water or alcohols), for example, are quite sufficient, and you will often see the proton just ‘falling off’ in reaction mechanisms. We showed the loss of a proton like this in the last example, and in the chart on p. 000. The superacid solutions we described in Chapter 17 were designed with this in mind—the counterions BF₄⁻ and SbF₆⁻ are not only nonnucleophilic but also nonbasic.
Cedrol is important in the perfumery industry—it has a cedar wood fragrance. Corey’s synthesis includes this step—the acid (toluenesulfonic acid) catalyses both the E1 elimination and the hydrolysis of the acetal.

At the end of the last chapter you met some bicyclic structures. These sometimes pose problems for elimination reactions. For example, this compound will not undergo elimination by either an E1 or an E2 mechanism. We shall see shortly what the problem with E2 is, but for E1 the hurdle to be overcome is the formation of a planar carbocation. The bicyclic structure prevents the bridgehead carbon becoming planar so, although the cation would be tertiary, it is very high in energy and does not form. You could say that the nonplanar structure forces the cation to be an empty sp\(^3\) orbital instead of an empty p orbital, and we saw in Chapter 4 that it is always best to leave the orbitals with the highest possible energy empty.

The role of the leaving group

We haven’t yet been very adventurous with our choice of leaving groups for eliminations: all you have seen so far are E2 from alkyl halides and E1 from protonated alcohols. This is deliberate: the vast majority of the two classes of eliminations use one of these two types of starting materials. Since the leaving group is involved in the rate-determining step of both E1 and E2, in general, any good leaving group will lead to a fast elimination. You may, for example, see amines acting as leaving groups in eliminations of quaternary ammonium salts.

Both E1 and E2 are possible, and from what you have read so far you should be able to spot that there is one of each here: in the first example, a stabilized cation cannot be formed (so E1 is
impossible), but a strong base is used, allowing E2. In the second, a stabilized tertiary cation could be formed (so either E1 or E2 might occur), but no strong base is present, so the mechanism must be E1.

E2 elimination

![E2 mechanism diagram]

You have just seen that hydroxyl groups can be turned into good leaving groups in acid, but this is only useful for substrates that can react by E1 elimination. The hydroxyl group is never a leaving group in E2 eliminations, since they have to be done in base.

**OH⁻ is never a leaving group in an E2 reaction.**

For primary and secondary alcohols, the hydroxyl is best made into a leaving group for elimination reactions by sulfonylation with toluene-para-sulfonyl chloride (tosyl chloride, TsCl) or methanesulfonyl (mesyl chloride, MeSO₂Cl or MsCl).

Toluenesulfonate esters (tosylates) can be made from alcohols (with TsCl, pyridine). You have already met tosylates in Chapter 17 because they are good electrophiles for substitution reactions with nonbasic nucleophiles. With strong bases such as t-BuOK, NaOEt, DBU, or DBN they undergo very efficient elimination reactions. Here are two examples.

E2 eliminations of tosylates

![E2 elimination examples]

Methanesulfonyl chloride may be a new reagent to you. In the presence of a base (usually triethylamine, Et₃N) it reacts with alcohols to give methanesulfonate esters, but the mechanism differs from the mechanism with TsCl. The first step is an elimination of HCl from the sulfonyl chloride (this can’t happen with TsCl, because there are no available protons) to give a sulfene. The sulfene is highly electrophilic at sulfur, and will react with any alcohol (including tertiary alcohols, which react very slowly with TsCl). Here are the two mechanisms compared.

formation of toluenesulfonates (tosylates): reagents ROH + TsCl + pyridine
Methanesulfonyl esters (or mesylates) can be eliminated using DBU or DBN, but a good way of using MsCl to convert alcohols to alkenes is to do the mesylation and elimination steps in one go, using the same base (Et$_3$N) for both. Here are two examples making biologically important molecules. In the first, the mesylate is isolated and then eliminated with DBU to give a synthetic analogue of uracil, one of the nucleotide bases present in RNA. In the second, the mesylate is formed and eliminated in the same step using Et$_3$N, to give a precursor to a sugar analogue.

The second example here involves (overall) the elimination of a tertiary alcohol—so why couldn’t an acid-catalysed E1 reaction have been used? The problem here, nicely solved by the use of the mesylate, is that the molecule contains an acid-sensitive acetal functional group. An acid-catalysed reaction would also have risked eliminating methanol from the other tertiary centre.

**How to distinguish E1 from E2: kinetic isotope effects**

We have told you what sorts of starting materials and conditions favour E1 or E2 reactions, but we haven’t told you how we know this. E1 and E2 differ in the order of their rate equations with respect to the base, so one way of finding out if a reaction is E1 or E2 is to plot a graph of the variation of rate with base concentration. But this can be difficult with E1 reactions because the base (which need be only very weak) is usually the solvent. More detailed evidence for the differences between reaction mechanisms comes from studying the rates of elimination in substrates that differ only in that one or more of the protons have been replaced by deuterium atoms. These differences are known as **kinetic isotope effects**.

Up to now you have probably (and rightly) been told that isotopes of an element (that is, atoms that differ only in the number of neutrons their nuclei contain) are chemically identical. It may come as a surprise to find that this is not quite true: isotopes do differ chemically, but this difference is only significant for hydrogen—no other element has one isotope twice as massive as another! Kinetic isotope effects are the changes in rate observed when a ($^1$H) hydrogen atom is replaced by a ($^2$H) deuterium atom in the same reaction. For any reaction, the kinetic isotope effect is defined as

\[
\text{KIE} = \frac{k_D}{k_H}
\]

Changing H for D can affect the rate of the reaction only if that H (or D) is involved in the rate-determining step. The theoretical maximum is about 7 for reactions at room temperature in which a bond to H or D is being broken. For example, the rates of these two eliminations can be compared, and $k/D/k_H$ turns out to be 7.1 at 25°C.

---

**More about RNA bases and sugars in Chapter 49.**

**The calculations that give this result are beyond the scope of this book, but you can find them in textbooks on physical organic chemistry.**
E1 reactions can be stereoselective

For some eliminations only one product is possible. For others, there may be a choice of two (or more) alkene products that differ either in the location or stereochemistry of the double bond. We shall now move on to discuss the factors that control the stereochemistry (geometry) and regiochemistry (that is, where the double bond is) of the alkenes, starting with E1 reactions.

only one alkene possible

![Diagram showing E1 reactions]

For steric reasons, E-alkenes (and transition states leading to E-alkenes) are usually lower in energy than Z-alkenes (and the transition states leading to them) because the substituents can get...
farther apart from one another. A reaction that can choose which it forms is therefore likely to favour the formation of $E$-alkenes. For alkenes formed by E1 elimination, this is exactly what happens: the less hindered $E$-alkene is favoured. Here is an example.

The geometry of the product is determined at the moment that the proton is lost from the intermediate carbocation. The new $\pi$ bond can only form if the vacant p orbital of the carbocation and the breaking C–H bond are aligned parallel. In the example shown there are two possible conformations of the carbocation with parallel orientations, but one is more stable than the other because it suffers less steric hindrance. The same is true of the transition states on the route to the alkenes—the one leading to the $E$-alkene is lower in energy and more $E$-alkene than $Z$-alkene is formed. The process is stereoselective, because the reaction chooses to form predominantly one of two possible stereoisomeric products.

Tamoxifen is an important drug in the fight against breast cancer, one of the most common forms of cancer. It works by blocking the action of the female sex hormone oestrogen. The tetra-substituted double bond can be introduced by an E1 elimination: there is no ambiguity about where the double bond goes, though the two stereoisomers form in about equal amounts.
E1 reactions can be regioselective

We can use the same ideas when we think about E1 eliminations that can give more than one regioisomeric alkene. Here is an example.

The major product is the alkene that has the more substituents, because this alkene is the more stable of the two possible products.

This is quite a general principle, and you have already seen several examples of it in action (p. 000). But why should it be true? The reason for this is related to the reason why more substituted carbocations are more stable. In Chapter 17 we said that the carbocation is stabilized when its empty p orbital can interact with the filled orbitals of parallel C–H and C–C bonds. The same is true of the π system of the double bond—it is stabilized when the empty π* antibonding orbital can interact with the filled orbitals of parallel C–H and C–C bonds. The more C–C or C–H bonds there are, the more stable the alkene.

The more substituted alkene is more stable, but this does not necessarily explain why it is the one that forms faster. To do that, we should look at the transition states leading to the two alkenes.

Both form from the same carbocation, but which one we get depends on which proton is lost. Removal of the proton on the right (brown arrow) leads to a transition state in which there is a monosubstituted double bond partly formed. Removal of the proton on the left (orange arrow) leads
to a partial double bond that is trisubstituted. This is more stable—the transition state is lower in energy, and the more substituted alkene forms faster.

Although E1 reactions show some stereo- and regioselectivity, the level of selectivity in E2 reactions can be much higher because of the more stringent demands on the transition state for E2 elimination. We will come back to the most useful ways of controlling the geometry of double bonds in Chapter 31.

**E2 eliminations have anti-periplanar transition states**

In an E2 elimination, the new $\pi$ bond is formed by overlap of the C–H $\sigma$ bond with the C–X $\sigma^*$ antibonding orbital. The two orbitals have to lie in the same plane for best overlap, and now there are two conformations that allow this. One has H and X syn-periplanar, the other anti-periplanar. The anti-periplanar conformation is more stable because it is staggered (the syn-periplanar conformation is eclipsed) but, more importantly, only in the anti-periplanar conformation are the bonds (and therefore the orbitals) truly parallel.
E2 eliminations therefore take place from the anti-periplanar conformation. We shall see shortly how we know this to be the case, but first we consider an E2 elimination that gives mainly one of two possible stereoisomers. 2-Bromobutane has two conformations with H and Br anti-periplanar, but the one that is less hindered leads to more of the product, and the E-alkene predominates.

There is a choice of protons to be eliminated—the stereochemistry of the product results from which proton is anti-periplanar to the leaving group when the reaction takes place, and the reaction is stereoselective as a result.

**E2 eliminations can be stereospecific**

In the next example, there is only one proton that can take part in the elimination. Now there is no choice of anti-periplanar transition states. Whether the product is E or Z, the E2 reaction has only one course to follow. And the outcome depends on which diastereoisomer of the starting material is used. When the first diastereoisomer is drawn with the proton and bromine anti-periplanar, as required, and in the plane of the page, the two phenyl groups have to lie one in front and one behind the plane of the paper. As the hydroxide attacks the C–H bond and eliminates Br–, this arrangement is preserved and the two phenyl groups end up trans (the alkene is E). This is perhaps easier to see in the Newman projection of the same conformation.

The second diastereoisomer forms the Z-alkene for the same reasons: the two phenyl groups are now on the same side of the H–C–C–Br plane in the reactive anti-periplanar conformation (again, this is clear in the Newman projection) and so they end up cis in the product. Each diastereoisomer gives a different alkene geometry, and they do so at different rates. The first reaction
is about ten times as fast as the second because, although this anti-periplanar conformation is the only reactive one, it is not necessarily the most stable. The Newman projection for the second reaction shows clearly that the two phenyl groups have to lie synclinal (gauche) to one another: the steric interaction between these large groups will mean that, at any time, a relatively small proportion of molecules will adopt the right conformation for elimination, slowing the process down.

Reactions in which the stereochemistry of the product is determined by the stereochemistry of the starting material are called stereospecific.

**Stereoselective or stereospecific**

- Stereoselective reactions give one predominant product because the reaction pathway has a choice. Either the pathway of lower activation energy is preferred (kinetic control) or the more stable product (thermodynamic control).
- Stereospecific reactions lead to the production of a single isomer as a direct result of the mechanism of the reaction and the stereochemistry of the starting material. There is no choice. The reaction gives a different diastereoisomer of the product from each stereoisomer of the starting material.

**E2 eliminations from cyclohexanes**

The stereospecificity of the reactions you have just met is very good evidence that E2 reactions proceed through an anti-periplanar transition state. We know with which diastereoisomer we started, and we know which alkene we get, so there is no question over the course of the reaction.

More evidence comes from the reactions of substituted cyclohexanes. You saw in Chapter 18 that substituents on cyclohexanes can be parallel with one another only if they are both axial. An equatorial C–X bond is anti-periplanar only to C–C bonds and cannot take part in an elimination. For unsubstituted cyclohexyl halides treated with base, this is not a problem because, although the axial conformer is less stable, there is still a significant amount present (see the table on p. 000), and elimination can take place from this conformer.

These two diastereoisomeric cyclohexyl chlorides derived from menthol react very differently under the same conditions with sodium ethoxide as base. Both eliminate HCl but diastereoisomer A reacts rapidly to give a mixture of products, while diastereoisomer B (which differs only in the configuration of the carbon atom bearing chlorine) gives a single alkene product but very much more slowly. We can safely exclude E1 as a mechanism because the same cation would be formed from both diastereoisomers, and this would mean the ratio of products (though not necessarily the rate) would be the same for both.
The key to explaining reactions like this is to draw the conformation of the molecules. Both will adopt a chair conformation, and generally the chair having the largest substituent equatorial (or the largest number of substituents equatorial) is the more stable. In these examples the isopropyl group is most influential—it is branched and will have very severe 1,3-diaxial interactions if it occupies an axial position. In both diastereoisomers, an equatorial i-Pr also means an equatorial Me: the only difference is the orientation of the chlorine. For diastereoisomer A, the chlorine is forced axial in the major conformer: there is no choice, because the relative configuration is fixed in the starting material. It’s less stable than equatorial Cl, but is ideal for E2 elimination and there are two protons that are anti-periplanar available for removal by the base. The two alkenes are formed as a result of each of the possible protons with a 3:1 preference for the more substituted alkene (see below).

For diastereoisomer B, the chlorine is equatorial in the lowest-energy conformation. Once again there is no choice. But equatorial leaving groups cannot be eliminated by E2: in this conformation there is no anti-periplanar proton. This accounts for the difference in rate between the two diastereoisomers. A has the chlorine axial virtually all the time ready for E2, while B has an axial leaving group only in the minute proportion of the molecules that happen not to be in the lowest-energy conformation, but that have all three substituents axial. The all-axial conformer is much higher in energy, but only in this conformer can Cl– be eliminated. The concentration of reactive molecules is low, so the rate is also low. There is only one proton anti-periplanar and so elimination gives a single alkene.

### E2 elimination from vinyl halides: how to make alkynes

An anti-periplanar arrangement of C–Br and C–H is attainable with a vinylic bromide too, provided the Br and H are trans to one another. E2 elimination from the Z isomer of a vinyl bromide gives an alkyn rather faster than elimination from the E isomer, because in the E isomer the C–H and C–Br bonds are syn-periplanar.

![Diagram showing E2 elimination from vinyl halides](image-url)

The base used here is LDA (lithium disopropylamide) made by deprotonating i-Pr₂NH with BuLi. LDA is very basic (pKₐ about 35) but too hindered to be nucleophilic—ideal for promoting E2 elimination.
Vinyl bromides can themselves be made by elimination reactions of 1,2-dibromoalkanes. Watch what happens when 1,2-dibromopropane is treated with three equivalents of LDA: first, elimination to the vinyl halide; then, elimination of the vinyl halide to the alkyne. The terminal alkyne is amply acidic enough to be deprotonated by LDA, and this is the role of the third equivalent. Overall, the reaction makes a lithiated alkyne (ready for further reactions) from a fully saturated starting material. This may well be the first reaction you have met that makes an alkyne from a starting material that doesn’t already contain a triple bond.

![Diagram of the reaction](image)

**The regioselectivity of E2 eliminations**

Here are two deceptively similar elimination reactions. The leaving group changes and the reaction conditions are very different but the overall process is elimination of HX to produce one of two alkenes.

![Diagram of the reactions](image)

In the first example acid-catalysed elimination of water from a tertiary alcohol produces a trisubstituted alkene. Elimination of HCl from the corresponding tertiary alkyl chloride promoted by a very hindered alkoxide base (more hindered than t-BuOK because all the ethyl groups have to point away from one another) gives exclusively the less stable disubstituted alkene.

The reason for the two different regioselectivities is a change in mechanism. As we have already discussed, acid-catalysed elimination of water from tertiary alcohols is usually E1, and you already know the reason why the more substituted alkene forms faster in E1 reactions (p. 000). It should come to you as no surprise now that the second elimination, with a strong, hindered base, is an E2 reaction. But why does E2 give the less substituted product? This time, there is no problem getting C–H bonds anti-periplanar to the leaving group: in the conformation with the Cl axial there are two equivalent ring hydrogens available for elimination, and removal of either of these would lead to the trisubstituted alkene. Additionally, any of the three equivalent methyl hydrogens are in a position to undergo E2 elimination to form the disubstituted alkene whether the Cl is axial or equatorial—and yet it is these and only these that are removed by the hindered base. The diagram summarizes two of the possibilities.
The base attacks the methyl hydrogens because they are less hindered—they are attached to a primary carbon atom, well away from the other axial hydrogens. E2 eliminations with hindered bases typically give the less substituted double bond, because the fastest E2 reaction involves deprotonation at the least substituted site. The hydrogens attached to a less substituted carbon atom are also more acidic. Think of the conjugate bases: a t-butyl anion is more basic (because the anion is destabilized by the three alkyl groups) than a methyl anion, so the corresponding alkane must be less acidic. Steric factors are evident in the following E2 reactions, where changing the base from ethoxide to t-butoxide alters the major product from the more to the less substituted alkene.

**Elimination regioselectivity**

- E1 reactions give the more substituted alkene
- E2 reactions may give the more substituted alkene, but become more regioselective for the less substituted alkene with more hindered bases

**Hofmann and Saytsev**

Traditionally, these two opposite preferences—for the more or the less substituted alkene—have been called ‘Saytsev’s rule’ and ‘Hofmann’s rule’, respectively. You will see these names used (along with a number of alternative spellings—acceptable for Saytsev, whose name is transliterated from Russian, but not for Hofmann: this Hofmann had one f and two n’s), but there is little point remembering which is which (or how to spell them)—it is far more important to understand the reasons that favour formation of each of the two alkenes.

Anion-stabilizing groups allow another mechanism—E1cB

To finish this chapter, we consider a reaction that at first sight seems to go against what we have told you so far. It’s an elimination catalysed by a strong base (KOH), so it looks like E2. But the leaving group is hydroxide, which we categorically stated cannot be a leaving group in E2 eliminations.

The key to what is going on is the carbonyl group. In Chapter 8 you met the idea that negative charges are stabilized by conjugation with carbonyl groups, and the table on p. 000 demonstrated how acidic a proton adjacent to a carbonyl group is. The proton that is removed in this elimination reaction is adjacent to the carbonyl group, and is therefore also rather acidic (pKₐ about 20). This means that the base can remove it without the leaving group departing at the same time—the anion that results is stable enough to exist because it can be delocalized on to the carbonyl group.

Although the anion is stabilized by the carbonyl group, it still prefers to lose a leaving group and become an alkene. This is the next step.
This step is also the rate-determining step of the elimination—the elimination is unimolecular, and so is some kind of E1 reaction. But the leaving group is not lost from the starting molecule, but from the conjugate base of the starting molecule, so this sort of elimination, which starts with a deprotonation, is called E1cB (cB for conjugate Base). Here is the full mechanism, generalized for other carbonyl compounds.

It’s important to note that, while HO– is never a leaving group in E2 reactions, it can be a leaving group in E1cB reactions. The anion it is lost from is already an alkoxide—the oxyanion does not need to be created. The establishment of conjugation also assists loss of HO–. As the scheme above implies, other leaving groups are possible too. Here are two examples with methanesulfonate leaving groups.

The first looks E1 (stabilized cation); the second E2—but in fact both are E1cB reactions. The most reliable way to spot a likely E1cB elimination is to see whether the product is a conjugated carbonyl group. If it is, the mechanism is probably E1cB.

β-Haloacarbonyl compounds can be rather unstable: the combination of a good leaving group and an acidic proton means that E1cB elimination is extremely easy. This mixture of diastereoisomers is first of all lactonized in acid (Chapter 12), and then undergoes E1cB elimination with triethylamine to give a product known as butenolide. Butenolides are widespread structures in naturally occurring compounds.

You will have noticed that we have shown the deprotonation step in the last few mechanisms as an equilibrium. Both equilibria lie rather over to the left-hand side, because neither triethylamine (pKₐH about 10) nor hydroxide (pKₐH = 15.7) is basic enough to remove completely a proton next
to a carbonyl group ($pK_a \geq 20$). But, because the loss of the leaving group is essentially irreversible, only a small amount of deprotonated carbonyl compound is necessary to keep the reaction going. The important point about substrates that undergo E1cB is that there is some form of anion-stabilizing group next to the proton to be removed—it doesn’t have to stabilize the anion very well but, as long as it makes the proton more acidic, an E1cB mechanism has a chance. Here is an important example with two phenyl rings helping to stabilize the anion, and a carbamate anion ($R_2N—CO_2^-$) as the leaving group.

The proton to be removed has a $pK_a$ of about 25 because its conjugate base is an aromatic cyclopentadienyl anion (we discussed this in Chapter 8). The E1cB elimination takes place with a secondary or tertiary amine as the base. Spontaneous loss of CO$_2$ from the eliminated product gives an amine, and you will meet this class of compounds again shortly in Chapter 25 where we discuss the Fmoc protecting group.

**The E1cB rate equation**

The rate-determining elimination step in an E1cB reaction is unimolecular, so you might imagine it would have a first-order rate equation. But, in fact, the rate is also dependent on the concentration of base. This is because the unimolecular elimination involves a species—the anion—whose concentration is itself determined by the concentration of base by the equilibrium we have just been discussing. Using the following general E1cB reaction, the concentration of the anion can be expressed as shown.

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{rate} &= k \frac{K}{[H_2O]} \\
&= \text{constant} \times \frac{[\text{anion}]}{[H_2O]} \\
&= \text{constant} \times \frac{K}{[H_2O]}
\end{align*}
$$
Just because the base (hydroxide) appears in this rate equation doesn’t mean to say it is involved in the rate-determining step. Increasing the concentration of base makes the reaction go faster by increasing the amount of anion available to eliminate.

For reactions with several steps in which the rate-determining step is not the first, the concentrations of species involved in those earlier steps will appear in the rate equation, even though they take no part in the rate-determining step itself.

**E1cB eliminations in context**

It is worthwhile comparing the E1cB reaction with some others with which you are familiar: for a start, you may have noticed that it is the reverse of the conjugate addition reactions we introduced in Chapter 10. In Chapter 10, conjugated carbonyl compounds were the starting materials; now they are the products—but both reactions go through a stabilized anion intermediate. E1cB reactions are so general that they are by far the most common way of making the enone starting materials for conjugate additions.

**E1cB elimination**

**A deceptive S_N2 substitution**

In some rare cases, you may see E1cB elimination and conjugate addition taking place in a single reaction. Look at this ‘substitution’ reaction, for example. Apparently, the ammonium salt has been substituted by the cyanide in what looks to be an S_N2 reaction.

A little consideration will tell you that it can’t be S_N2 though, because, if it were, it would go like this.

Instead, the mechanism is first an E1cB elimination, followed by conjugate addition.
We can also compare it with the other elimination reactions you have met by thinking of the relative timing of proton removal and leaving group departure. E1 is at one end of the scale: the leaving group goes first, and proton removal follows in a second step. In E2 reactions, the two events happen at the same time: the proton is removed as the leaving group leaves. In E1cB the proton removal moves in front of leaving group departure.

We talked about regio- and stereoselectivity in connection with E1 and E2 reactions. With E1cB, the regioselectivity is straightforward: the location of the double bond is defined by the position of: (a) the acidic proton and (b) the leaving group.

E1cB reactions may be stereoselective—this one, for example, gives mainly the $E$-alkene product (2:1 with $Z$). The intermediate anion is planar, so the stereochemistry of the starting materials is irrelevant, the less sterically hindered (usually $E$) product is preferred. This double E1cB elimination, for example, gives only the $E,E$-product.

To finish this chapter we need to tell you about two E1cB eliminations that you may meet in unexpected places. We have saved them till now because they are unusual in that the leaving group is actually part of the anion-stabilizing group itself. First of all, try spotting the E1cB elimination in this step from the first total synthesis of penicillin V in 1957.

The reaction is deceptively simple—formation of an amide in the presence of base—and you would expect the mechanism to follow what we told you in Chapter 12. But the acyl chloride is, in fact, set up for an E1cB elimination—and you should expect this whenever you see an acyl chloride with acidic protons next to the carbonyl group used in the presence of triethylamine.
The product of the elimination is a substituted ketene—a highly reactive species whose parent (CH$_2$C=O) we talked about in Chapter 15. It is the ketene that reacts with the amine to form the amide.

The second ‘concealed’ E1cB elimination is in the elimination of HCl from MsCl, which we showed you on p. 000 of this chapter. You can now see the similarity with the acyl chloride mechanism above.

To conclude...

The table summarizes the general pattern of reactivity expected from various structural classes of alkyl halides (or tosylates, mesylates) in reactions with a representative range of nucleophiles (which may behave as bases).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Poor nucleophile (e.g. H$_2$O, ROH)$^a$</th>
<th>Weakly basic nucleophile (e.g. I$^-$, RS$^-$)</th>
<th>Strongly basic, unhindered nucleophile (e.g. RO$^-$)</th>
<th>Strongly basic, hindered nucleophile (e.g. DBU, DBN, t-BuO$^-$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>methyl</td>
<td>no reaction</td>
<td>$S_N^2$</td>
<td>$S_N^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary (unhindered)</td>
<td>no reaction</td>
<td>$S_N^2$</td>
<td>$S_N^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary (hindered)</td>
<td>no reaction</td>
<td>$S_N^2$</td>
<td>E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>$S_N^1$, E1 (slow)</td>
<td>$S_N^2$</td>
<td>E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertiary</td>
<td>E1 or $S_N^1$</td>
<td>$S_N^1$, E1</td>
<td>E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\beta) to anion-stabilizing group</td>
<td>E1cB</td>
<td>E1cB</td>
<td>E1cB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$ Acid conditions.
Some points about the table:

- Methyl halides cannot eliminate as there are no appropriately placed protons
- Increasing branching favours elimination over substitution and strongly basic hindered nucleophiles always eliminate unless there is no option
- Good nucleophiles undergo substitution by $S_N2$ unless the substrate is tertiary and then the intermediate cation can eliminate by $E1$ as well as substitute by $S_N1$
- High temperatures favour elimination by gearing up the importance of entropy in the free energy of reaction ($\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$). This is a good way of ensuring $E1$ in ambiguous cases
Alkenes react with bromine

Bromine (Br₂) is brown, and one of the classic tests for alkenes is that they turn a brown aqueous solution of bromine colourless. Alkenes decolourize bromine water: alkenes react with bromine. The product of the reaction is a dibromoalkane, and the reaction below shows what happens with the simplest alkene, ethylene (ethene).

In order to understand this reaction, and the other similar ones you will meet in this chapter, you need to think back to Chapter 5, where we started talking about reactivity in terms of nucleophiles and electrophiles. As soon as you see a new reaction, you should immediately think to yourself, ‘Which reagent is the nucleophile; which reagent is the electrophile?’ Evidently, neither the alkene nor bromine is charged, but Br₂ has a low-energy empty orbital (the Br–Br σ*), and is therefore an electrophile. The alkene must be the nucleophile, and its HOMO is the C=C π bond. This is a very important point, because in the first reactions of alkenes you met, in Chapter 10, the conjugated alkene was an electrophile. We told you about conjugated alkenes first, because their chemistry is very similar to the
Simple, unconjugated alkenes are nucleophilic and react with electrophiles.

When it reacts with Br\textsubscript{2}, the alkene’s filled π orbital (the HOMO) will interact with the bromine’s empty σ* orbital to give a product. But what will that product be? Look at the orbitals involved.

The highest electron density in the π orbital is right in the middle, between the two carbon atoms, so this is where we expect the bromine to attack. The only way the π HOMO can interact in a bonding manner with the σ* LUMO is if the Br\textsubscript{2} approaches end-on—and this is how the product forms. The symmetrical three-membered ring product is called a bromonium ion.

How shall we draw curly arrows for the formation of the bromonium ion? We have a choice. The simplest is just to show the middle of the π bond attacking Br–Br, mirroring what we know happens with the orbitals.

But there is a problem with this representation: because only one pair of electrons is moving, we can’t form two new C–Br bonds. We should really then represent the C–Br bonds as partial bonds. Yet the bromonium ion is a real intermediate with two proper C–Br bonds (read the box in the margin on p. 000 for evidence of this). So an alternative way of drawing the arrows is to involve a lone pair on bromine.

We think the first way represents more accurately the key orbital interaction involved, and we shall use that one, but the second is acceptable too.
Of course, the final product of the reaction isn’t the bromonium ion. The second step of the reaction follows on at once: the bromonium ion is an electrophile, and it reacts with the bromide ion lost from the bromine in the addition step. We can now draw the correct mechanism for the whole reaction, which is termed electrophilic addition to the double bond, because bromine is an electrophile. Overall, the molecule of bromine adds across the double bond of the alkene.

Electrophilic addition of bromine to ethylene

Attack of Br⁻ on a bromonium ion is a normal S_N2 substitution—the key orbitals involved are the HOMO of the bromide and the σ∗ of one of the two carbon–bromine bonds in the strained three-membered ring. As with all S_N2 reactions, the nucleophile maintains maximal overlap with the σ∗ by approaching in line with the leaving group but from the opposite side, resulting in inversion at the carbon that is attacked. The stereochemical outcome of more complicated reactions (discussed below) is important evidence for this overall reaction mechanism.

Why doesn’t the bromine simply attack the positive charge and re-form the bromine molecule? Well, in fact, it does and the first step is reversible.

**How do we know bromonium ions exist?**

Very hindered alkenes form bromonium ions that are resistant to nucleophilic attack. In one very hindered case, the bromine ion just can’t get at the bromonium ion to attack it, and the bromonium ion is sufficiently stable to be characterized by X-ray crystallography. In another case, the use of superacid systems (Chapter 17) has allowed direct NMR observation of the bromonium ion intermediate to the bromination of propene.

**Oxidation of alkenes to form epoxides**

The electrophilic addition of bromine to alkenes is an oxidation. The starting alkene is at the alcohol oxidation level, but the product has two carbons at the alcohol oxidation level—the elimination reactions of dibromides to give alkynes that you met in the last chapter (p. 000) should convince you of this. There are a number of other oxidants containing electrophilic oxygen atoms that react with nucleophilic alkenes to produce epoxides (oxiranes). You can view epoxides as the oxygen analogues of bromonium ions, but unlike bromonium ions they are quite stable.

The simplest epoxide, ethylene oxide (or oxirane itself), can be produced on the tonne scale by the direct oxidation of ethene by oxygen at high temperature over a silver catalyst. These conditions are hardly suitable for general lab use, and the most commonly used epoxidizing agents are peroxycarboxylic acids. Peroxy-acids (or peracids) have an extra oxygen atom between the carbonyl group and their acidic hydrogen—they are half-esters of hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂). They are rather less acidic than carboxylic acids because their conjugate base is no longer stabilized by delocalization into the carbonyl group reagent. But they are electrophilic at oxygen, because attack there by a nucleophile displaces carboxylate, a good leaving group. The LUMO of a peroxycarboxylic acid is the σ* orbital of the weak O–O bond.
The most commonly used peroxy-acid is known as \( m \)-CPBA, or meta-ChloroPeroxyBenzoic Acid. \( m \)-CPBA is a safely crystalline solid. Here it is, reacting with cyclohexene, to give the epoxide in 95% yield.

As you will expect, the alkene attacks the peroxy-acid from the centre of the HOMO, its \( \pi \) orbital.

And now the curly arrow mechanism. The essence of the mechanism is electrophilic attack by the weak, polarized \( \text{O-O} \) bond on the \( \pi \) orbital of the alkene, which we can represent most simply as shown in the margin. But, in the real reaction, a proton (shown in brown in this mechanism) has transferred from the epoxide oxygen to the carboxylic acid by-product. You can represent this all in one step if you draw the arrows carefully. Start with the nucleophilic \( \pi \) bond: send the electrons on to oxygen, breaking \( \text{O-O} \) and forming a new carbonyl bond. Use those electrons to pick up the proton, and use the old \( \text{O-H} \) bond’s electrons to make the second new \( \text{C-O} \) bond. Don’t be put off by the spaghetti effect—each arrow is quite logical when you think the mechanism through. The transition state for the reaction makes the bond-forming and -breaking processes clearer.
**Epoxidation is stereospecific**

Because both new C–O bonds are formed on the same face of the alkene’s \( \pi \) bond, the geometry of the alkene is reflected in the stereochemistry of the epoxide. The reaction is therefore stereospecific. Here are two examples demonstrating this: cis-alkene gives cis-epoxide and trans-alkene gives trans-epoxide.

![Epoxidation reaction](image)

**More substituted alkenes epoxidize faster**

Peracids give epoxides from alkenes with any substitution pattern (except ones conjugated with electron-withdrawing groups, for which a different reagent is required: see Chapter 23) but the chart alongside shows how the rate varies according to the number of substituents on the double bond.

Not only are more substituted double bonds more stable (as you saw in Chapter 19), but they are more nucleophilic. We showed you in Chapter 17 that alkyl groups are electron-donating because they stabilize carbocations. This same electron-donating effect raises the energy of the HOMO of a double bond, and makes it more nucleophilic. You can think of it this way: every C–C or C–H bond that can allow its \( \sigma \) orbital to interact with the \( \pi \) orbital of the alkene will raise the HOMO of the alkene slightly, as shown by the energy level diagram. The more substituents the alkene has, the more the energy is raised.

![Energy level diagram](image)

The differences in reactivity between alkenes of different substitution patterns can be exploited to produce the epoxide only of the more reactive alkene of a pair, provided the supply of oxidant is limited. In the first example below, a tetrasubstituted alkene reacts in preference to a cis disubstituted one. Even when two alkenes are equally substituted, the effect of epoxidizing one of them is to reduce the nucleophilicity of the second (the new oxygen atom is electron-withdrawing, and dienes are in
general more nucleophilic than alkenes; see below). The monoepoxide of cyclopentadiene is a useful intermediate and can be prepared by direct epoxidation of the diene under buffered conditions.

\[
\text{m-CPBA} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{ monoepoxide of cyclopentadiene }
\]

\[
\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3, \text{ NaOAc} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{ monoepoxide of cyclopentadiene }
\]

\[
\text{p-Nitroperoxybenzoic acid is dangerously explosive, but it is sufficiently reactive to produce this remarkable and highly strained spiro epoxide (oxaspiropentane), which was made in order to study its reactions with nucleophiles.}
\]

\[
\text{Dimethylidioxirane and carcinogenic epoxides}
\]

Certain fungi, especially the mould *Aspergillus sp.* (which grows on damp grain), produce a group of the most carcinogenic substances known to man, the aflatoxins. One of the toxins (which are, of course, entirely natural) is metabolized in the human body to the epoxide shown below. Some American chemists decided to synthesize this epoxide to investigate its reaction with DNA, hoping to discover exactly how it causes cancer. The epoxide is far too reactive to be made using a peroxy-acid (because of the acid by-product), and instead these chemists used a relatively new reagent called dimethylidioxirane, Dimethylidioxirane is made by oxidizing acetone with KHSO₅, but is too reactive to be stored for more than a short period in solution. After it has transferred an oxygen atom in the epoxidation step, only innocuous acetone is left, as shown by the mechanism below.

The liver is home to a wide variety of enzymes that carry out oxidation—the aim is to make unwanted water-insoluble molecules more polar and therefore soluble by peppering them with hydroxyl groups. Unfortunately, some of the intermediates in the oxidation processes are highly reactive epoxides that damage DNA. This is the means by which benzene and other aromatic hydrocarbons cause cancer, for example. Note that it is very hard to epoxidize benzene by chemical (rather than biological) methods.
Electrophilic addition to unsymmetrical alkenes is regioselective

In epoxidation reactions, and in electrophilic additions of bromine, each end of the alkene is joined to the same sort of atom (Br or O). But in the addition reactions of other electrophiles, H–Br for example, there is a choice: which carbon gets the H and which gets the Br? You will need to be able to predict, and to explain, reactions of unsymmetrical alkenes with HBr, but we should start by looking at the reaction with a symmetrical alkene—cyclohexene. This is what happens. When H–Br reacts as an electrophile, it is attacked at H, losing Br⁻. Unlike a bromine atom, a hydrogen atom can’t form a three-membered ring cation—it has no lone pairs to use. So electrophilic addition of a proton (which is what this is) to an alkene gives a product best represented as a carbocation. This carbocation rapidly reacts with the bromide ion just formed. Overall, H–Br adds across the alkene. This is a useful way of making simple alkyl bromides.

Here are two more syntheses of alkyl bromides, but this time we need to ask our question about which end of the alkene is attacked, because the alkenes are unsymmetrical (they have different substituents at each end). First, the results.

In each case, the bromine atom ends up on the more substituted carbon, and the mechanism explains why. There are the two possible outcomes for protonation of styrene by HBr, but you should immediately be able to spot which is preferred, even if you don’t know the outcome of the reaction. Protonation at one end gives a stabilized, benzylic cation, while protonation at the other would give a highly unstable primary cation, and therefore does not take place. The benzylic cation gives the benzylic alkyl bromide.

You get the same result with isobutene: the more stable, tertiary cation leads to the product; the alternative primary cation is not formed.
The protonation of alkenes to give carbocations is quite general. The carbocations may trap a nucleophile, as you have just seen, or they may simply lose a proton to give back an alkene. This is just the same as saying the protonation is reversible, but it needn’t be the same proton that is lost. A more stable alkene may be formed by losing a different proton, which means that acid can catalyse the isomerization of alkenes—both between \( Z \) and \( E \) geometrical isomers and between regioisomers.

Other nucleophiles may also intercept the cation: for example, alkenes can be treated with HCl to form alkyl chlorides, with HI to form alkyl iodides, and with \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \) to form thiols.

**Markovnikov’s rule**

There is a traditional mnemonic called ‘Markovnikov’s rule’ for electrophilic additions of H–X to alkenes, which can be stated as ‘The hydrogen ends up attached to the carbon of the double bond that had more hydrogens to start with.’ We don’t suggest you learn this rule, though you may hear it referred to. As with all ‘rules’ it is much more important to understand the reason behind it. For example, you can now predict the product of the reaction below. Markovnikov couldn’t.

**E1 and isomerization**

The isomerization of alkenes in acid is probably a good part of the reason why E1 eliminations in acid generally give \( E \)-alkenes. In Chapter 19, we explained how kinetic control could lead to \( E \)-alkenes: interconversion of \( E \) and \( Z \)-alkenes under the conditions of the reaction allows the thermodynamic product to prevail.

**Electrophilic addition to dienes**

Earlier in the chapter you saw the epoxidation of a diene to give a monoepoxide: only one of the double bonds reacted. This is quite a usual observation: dienes are more nucleophilic than isolated alkenes. This is easy to explain by looking at the relative energy of the HOMO of an alkene and a diene—this discussion is on p. 000 of Chapter 7. Dienes are therefore very susceptible to protonation.
by acid to give a cation. This is what happens when 2-methylbuta-1,3-diene (isoprene) is treated
with acid. Protonation gives a stable delocalized allylic cation.

Why protonate this double bond
and not the other one? The cation
you get by protonating the other dou-
ble bond is also allylic, but it cannot
benefit from the additional stabiliza-
tion from the methyl group because
the positive charge is not delocalized
on to the carbon carrying the methyl.

If the acid is HBr, then nucleophilic attack by Br⁻ on the cation follows. The cation is attacked at
the less hindered end to give the important compound prenyl bromide. This is very much the sort of
reaction you met in Chapter 17—it is the second half of an S_N1 substitution reaction on an allylic
compound.

Overall, the atoms H and Br are added to the
ends of the diene system. The same appears to be
the case when dienes are brominated with Br₂.

Changing the conditions slightly gives a differ-
ent outcome. If the reaction is done at lower tem-
peratures, the bromine just adds across one of the
double bonds to give a 1,2-dibromide.

This compound turns out to be the kinetic product of the bromination reaction. The 1,4-dibro-
mide is formed only when the reaction is heated, and is the thermodynamic product. The mechanism
is electrophilic attack on the diene to give a bromonium ion, which bromide opens to give the dibro-
mide. We have shown the bromide attacking the more substituted end of the bromide—though we
can’t know this for sure (attack at either end gives the same product), you are about to see (in the next
section) evidence that this is the usual course of reactions of unsymmetrical bromonium ions.

This 1,2-dibromide can still react further, because it can undergo nucleophilic substitution. Bromide is a good nucleophile and a good leaving group and, with an allylic system like this, S_N1 can
take place in which both the nucleophile and the electrophile are bromine. The intermediate is a
cation, but here the carbocation is disguised as the bromonium ion because bromine’s lone pair can
help stabilize the positive charge. Bromide can attack where it left, returning to starting material, but
it can also attack the far end of the allylic system, giving the 1,4-dibromide. The steps are all
reversible at higher temperatures, so the fact that the 1,4-dibromide is formed under these condi-
tions must mean it is more stable than the 1,2-dibromide. It is not hard to see why: it has a more sub-
stituted double bond and the two large bromine atoms are further apart.
Unsymmetrical bromonium ions open regioselectively

We ignored the issue of symmetry in the alkene when we discussed the bromination of alkenes, because even unsymmetrical alkenes give the same 1,2-dibromides whichever way the bromide attacks the bromonium ion.

But when a bromination is done in a nucleophilic solvent—water or methanol, for example—solvent molecules compete with the bromide to open the bromonium ion. As you know, alcohols are much worse nucleophiles than bromide but, because the concentration of solvent is so high (remember—the concentration of water in water is 55M), the solvent gets there first most of the time. This is what happens when isobutene is treated with bromine in methanol. An ether is formed by attack of methanol only at the more substituted end of the bromonium ion.

Methanol is attacking the bromonium ion where it is most hindered, so there must be some effect at work more powerful than steric hindrance. One way of looking at this is to reconsider our assumption that bromonium ion opening is an SN2 process. Here, it hardly looks SN2. We have a tertiary centre, so naturally you expect SN1, via the cation below. But we have already said that cations like this can be stabilized by formation of the three-membered bromonium ion and, if we let this happen, we have to attack the bromonium ion which gets us back to where we started: an SN2 mechanism!

The answer to the conundrum is that substitution reactions don’t always go by pure SN1 or pure SN2 mechanisms: sometimes the mechanism is somewhere in between. Perhaps the leaving group starts to leave, creating a partial positive charge on carbon which is intercepted by the nucleophile. This provides a good explanation of what is going on here. The bromine begins to leave, and a partial positive charge builds up at carbon. The departure of bromine can get to a more advanced state at the tertiary end than at the primary end, because the substituents stabilize the build-up of positive charge. The bromonium ion can be more accurately represented as shown in the margin, with one C–Br bond longer than the other, and more polarized than the other.

The nucleophile now has a choice: does it attack the more accessible, primary end of the bromonium ion, or does it attack the more charged end with the weaker C–Br bond? Here, the latter is clearly the faster reaction. The transition state has considerable positive charge on carbon, and is known as a loose SN2 transition state.
The products of bromination in water are called **bromohydrins**. They can be treated with base, which deprotonates the alcohol. A rapid intramolecular \( S_N2 \) reaction follows: bromide is expelled as a leaving group and an epoxide is formed. This can be a useful alternative synthesis of epoxides avoiding peroxy-acids.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Br}_2, \text{H}_2\text{O} & \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{NaOH} \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Rates of bromination of alkenes**

The pattern you saw for epoxidation with peroxy-acids (more substituted alkenes react faster) is followed by bromination reactions too. The bromonium ion is a reactive intermediate, so the rate-determining step of the brominations is the bromination reaction itself. The chart shows the effect on the rate of reaction with bromine in methanol of increasing the number of alkyl substituents from none (ethylene) to four. Each additional alkene substituent produces an enormous increase in rate. The degree of branching (Me versus \( n \)-Bu versus \( t \)-Bu) within the substituents has a much smaller, negative effect (probably of steric origin) as does the geometry (\( \text{E} \) versus \( \text{Z} \) and substitution pattern (1,1-disubstituted versus 1,2-disubstituted) of the alkene.

The regioselectivity of epoxide opening can depend on the conditions.

Although epoxides, like bromonium ions, contain strained three-membered rings, they require either acid catalysis or a powerful nucleophile to react well. Compare these two reactions of a 1,1,2-trisubstituted epoxide. They are nucleophilic substitutions related to those we introduced in Chapter 17 (p. 000) but in that chapter we carefully avoided discussing epoxides of the unsymmetrical variety. In this example, the regiochemistry reverses with the reaction conditions. Why?

We’ll start with the acid-catalysed reaction, because it is more similar to the examples we have just been discussing—opening happens at the more substituted end. Protonation by acid produces a positively charged intermediate that bears some resemblance to the corresponding bromonium ion. The two alkyl groups make possible a build-up of charge on the carbon at the tertiary end of the protonated epoxide, and methanol attacks here, just as it does in the bromonium ion.
In base, there can be no protonation of the epoxide, and no build-up of positive charge. Without protonation, the epoxide oxygen is a poor leaving group, and leaves only if pushed by a strong nucleophile: the reaction becomes pure $S_N2$. Steric hindrance becomes the controlling factor, and methoxide attacks only the primary end of the epoxide.

This example makes the matter look deceptively clear-cut. But with epoxides, regioselectivity is not as simple as this because, even with acid catalysts, $S_N2$ substitution at a primary centre is very fast. For example, $\text{Br}^-$ in acid attacks this epoxide mainly at the less substituted end, and only 24% of the product is produced by the ‘cation-stabilized’ pathway. It is very difficult to override the preference of epoxides unsubstituted at one end to react at that end.

For most substitution reactions of epoxides, then, regioselectivity is much higher if you give in to the epoxide’s desire to open at the less substituted end, and enhance it with a strong nucleophile under basic conditions.

Electrophilic additions to alkenes can be stereoselective

Although they really belong in Chapter 17 with other nucleophilic substitution reactions, we included the last few examples of epoxide-opening reactions here because they have many things in common with the reactions of bromonium ions. Now we are going to make the analogy work the other way when we look at the stereochemistry of the reactions of bromonium ions, and hence at the stereoselectivity of electrophilic additions to alkenes. We shall first remind you of an epoxide reaction from Chapter 17, where you saw this.

The epoxide ring opening is stereospecific: it is an $S_N2$ reaction, and it goes with inversion. The epoxide starts on the top face of the ring, and the amino group therefore ends up on the bottom face. In other words, the two groups end up anti or trans across the ring. You now know how to make this epoxide—you would use cyclopentene and $m$-CPBA, and in two steps you could ‘add’ an OH group and a Me$_2$N group anti across the double bond.

Now we can move on to look at the stereochemistry of electrophilic addition to alkenes.
Electrophilic addition to alkenes can produce stereoisomers

When cyclohexene is treated with bromine in carbon tetrachloride, the racemic anti-1,2-dibromocyclohexane is obtained exclusively.

\[
\text{H} \quad \text{Br}_2 \quad \text{CCl}_4 \text{ solvent}
\]

The result is no surprise if we think first of the formation of the bromonium ion that is opened with inversion in an \(S_N2\) reaction. Here is the mechanism drawn ‘flat’, which is all we need to explain the stereochemistry of the product. The fact that this reaction (like other similar ones) gives a single diastereoisomer is one of the best pieces of evidence that electrophilic additions of \(\text{Br}_2\) to alkenes proceed through a bromonium ion.

But these compounds are six-membered rings, so we will get a more accurate picture of what is going on if we draw them in their correct conformation. Cyclohexene is a flattened chair, as you saw in Chapter 18, and the bromonium ion can be drawn as a flattened chair too, like an epoxide (p. 000). Bromonium opening mirrors epoxide opening closely and, for the same reason, it will open only to give the diaxial product. In the absence of a locking group, the diaxial 1,2-dibromocyclohexane rapidly flips to the diequatorial conformation. This, of course, has no effect on the relative configuration, which will always be \(\text{anti}\).

Bromination of alkenes is stereospecific, because the geometry of the starting alkene determines which product diastereoisomer is obtained. We couldn’t demonstrate this with cyclohexene, because only a \(Z\) double bond is possible in a six-membered ring. But bromination or chlorination of \(Z\)- and \(E\)-2-butene in acetic acid produces a single diastereoisomer in each case, and they are different from each other. \(\text{Anti}\) addition occurs in both cases—more evidence that a bromonium ion is the intermediate. In the scheme below, the product of each reaction is shown in three different ways. Firstly, the two new C–Br bonds are shown in the plane of the paper to highlight the inversion of configuration during the bromonium opening step. Secondly, this diagram has been rotated to place the carbon chain in the plane of the paper and highlight the fact that these are indeed two different diastereoisomic products. In this conformation you can clearly see that there has been an \(\text{anti}\)-addition across the \(E\) double bond. Thirdly, the middle bond has been rotated \(180^\circ\) to give an (unrealistically) eclipsed conformation. We show this conformation for two reasons: it makes it clear that the addition across the \(Z\)-butene is stereospecific and \(\text{anti}\) too, and it also makes it quite clear that the product of the \(E\)-butene bromination is achiral: you can see the plane of symmetry in this conformation, and this is why we haven’t placed \((\pm)\) signs next to the products from the \(E\)-alkene. Note that in all
three different views of each product the same stereoisomer is represented. There is no change of configuration, only changes of conformation to help you understand what is going on. If you cannot follow any of the ‘redrawing’ steps, make a model. With practice, you will soon learn to manipulate mental models in your head, and to see what happens to substituents when bonds are rotated. Most importantly, don’t let all of this more subtle stereochemical discussion cloud the simple message: addition of Br₂ to alkenes is stereospecific and trans.

Bromonium ions as intermediates in stereoselective synthesis

You will not be surprised to learn that the other nucleophiles (water and alcohols) you saw intercepting bromonium ions earlier in the chapter also do so stereospecifically. The following reaction can be done on a large scale, and produces a single diastereoisomer of the product (racemic, of course) because water opens the bromonium ion with inversion.

The reagent used to form the bromonium ion here is not bromine, and may be new to you. It is called N-bromosuccinimide, or NBS for short. Unlike the noxious brown liquid bromine, NBS is an easily handled crystalline solid, and is perfect for electrophilic addition of bromine to alkenes when the bromonium ion is not intended to be opened by Br⁻. It works by providing a very small concentration of Br₂ in solution: a small amount of HBr is enough to get the reaction going, and thereafter every addition reaction produces another molecules of HBr which liberates more Br₂ from NBS. In a sense, NBS is a source of °Br⁺.
With NBS, the concentration of Br$^-$ is always low, so alcohols compete with Br$^-$ to open the epoxide even if they are not the solvent. In the next example, the alcohol is ‘propargyl alcohol’, prop-2-yn-1-ol. It gives the expected anti-disubstituted product with cyclohexene and NBS.

When 1-methylcyclohexene is used as the starting material, there is additionally a question of regioselectivity. The alcohol attacks the more hindered end of the bromonium ion—the end where there can be greatest stabilization of the partial positive charge in the ‘loose SN2’ transition state. This reaction really does illustrate the way in which a mechanism can lie in between SN1 and SN2. We see a configurational inversion, indicative of an SN2 reaction, happening at a tertiary centre where you would usually expect SN1.

Iodolactonization and bromolactonization make new rings

To finish our discussion of bromonium ions, you need to know about one more important class of reactions, those in which the nucleophile is located within the same molecule as the bromonium ion. Here is an example: the nucleophile is a carboxylate, and the product is a lactone (a cyclic ester). This type of reaction—the cyclization of an unsaturated acid—is known as a bromolactonization. Intermolecular attack on the bromonium ion by bromide ion does not compete with the intramolecular cyclization step.

Every example of electrophilic addition of a halogen to an alkene that we have shown you so far has been with bromine. This is quite representative: bromine is the most widely used halogen for electrophilic addition, since its reactivity is second only to iodine, yet the products are more stable. However, in these lactonization reactions, iodine is the more commonly used reagent, and the products of iodolactonizations are important intermediates (you will meet them again in Chapter 33). In the next example, the iodolactonization product is treated with sodium methoxide, which appears (a) to hydrolyse the lactone, and (b) to substitute the iodide for OMe. In fact, there is a little more to this than meets the eye.

The first step is now familiar to you: electrophilic attack of iodine to form an iodonium ion, which cyclizes to the iodolactone; the key step of the mechanism is shown above.
Methoxide must attack the carbonyl group, liberating an alkoxide that immediately cyclizes, with the iodide as a leaving group, to form an epoxide. Finally, methoxide attacks the epoxide at the less hindered end. Contrast the regioselectivities for attack on the iodonium ion with attack on the epoxide.

How to add water across a double bond

In the last chapter, you saw alkenes being made from alcohols by E1 elimination—dehydration—under acid catalysis. The question we are going to answer in this section is: how can you make this elimination run backwards—in other words, how can you hydrate a double bond?

It is possible on occasion simply to use aqueous acid to do this. The reaction works only if protonation of the alkene can give a stable, tertiary cation. The cation is then trapped by the aqueous solvent.

In general, though, it is very difficult to predict whether aqueous acid will hydrate the alkene or dehydrate the alcohol. The method we are about to introduce is much more reliable. The key is to use a transition metal to help you out. Alkenes are soft nucleophiles (p. 000) and interact well with soft electrophiles such as transition metal cations. Here, for example, is the complex formed between an alkene and mercury(II) cation. Don’t be too concerned about the weird bond growing from the middle of the alkene: this is a shorthand way of expressing the rather complex bonding interaction between the alkene and mercury. An alternative, and more useful, representation is the three-membered ring on the right.

The complex should remind you of a bromonium ion, and rightly so, because its reactions are really rather similar. Even relatively feeble nucleophiles such as water and alcohols, when used as the solvent, open the ‘mercurinium’ ion and give alcohols and ethers. In the next scheme, the mercury(II) is supplied as mercury(II) acetate, Hg(OAc)₂, which we shall represent with two covalent Hg–O bonds (simply because it helps with the arrows and with electron-accounting to do so). Unsurprisingly, water attacks at the more substituted end of the mercuronium ion.

There is more detail on organometallic chemistry in Chapter 48.
We’ve added OH and Hg(II) across the alkene, and the reaction is termed an **oxymercuration**. But a problem remains: how to get rid of the metal. The C–Hg bond is very weak and the simplest way to replace Hg with H is to cleave with a reducing agent. NaBH₄ works fine. Here is an example of oxymercuration–demercuration at work—the intermediate organomercury is not isolated.

### Hydration of alkynes

Oxymercuration works particularly well with alkynes. Here are the conditions, and the product, following the analogy of alkene hydration, should be the compound shown at the right-hand end of the scheme below.

![Scheme for oxymercuration of alkynes](image)

But the product isolated from an alkyne oxymercuration is in fact a ketone. You can see why if you just allow a proton on this initial product to shift from oxygen to carbon—first protonate at C then deprotonate at O. C=O bonds are stronger than C=C bonds, and this simple reaction is very fast.

![Diagram showing the formation of a ketone from the alkyne oxymercuration product](image)

We now have a ketone, but we also still have the mercury. That is no problem when there is a carbonyl group adjacent, because any weak nucleophile can remove mercury in the presence of acid as shown below. Finally, another proton transfer (from O to C again) gives the real product of the reaction: a ketone.

![Diagram showing the removal of mercury to form a ketone](image)

This is truly a very useful way of making methyl ketones, because terminal alkynes can be made using the methods of Chapter 9 (addition of metallated alkynes to electrophiles).

### Anticancer compounds

The anthracyclinone class of anticancer compounds (which includes daunomycin and adriamycin) can be made using a mercury(II)-promoted alkyne hydration. You saw the synthesis of alkynes in this class on p. 000 where we discussed additions of metallated alkynes to ketones. Here is the final step in a synthesis of the anticancer compound deoxydaunomycinone: the alkyne is hydrated using Hg²⁺ in dilute sulfuric acid; the sulfuric acid also catalyses the hydrolysis of the phenolic acetate to give the final product.

![Diagram showing the synthesis of deoxydaunomycinone](image)
Those alkenes carrying hydroxyl groups are called **enols** (ene + ol), and they are among the most important intermediates in chemistry. They happen to be involved in this reaction, and this was a good way to introduce you to them but, as you will see in the next chapter and beyond, enols (and their deprotonated sisters, enolates) have far reaching significance in chemistry.

**To conclude...**

Electrophilic addition to double bonds gives three-membered ring intermediates with Br\(_2\), with Hg\(^{2+}\), and with peroxy-acids (in which case the three-membered rings are stable and are called epoxides). All three classes of three-membered rings react with nucleophiles to give 1,2-difunctionalized products with control over (1) regioselectivity and (2) stereoselectivity. Protonation of a double bond gives a cation, which also traps nucleophiles, and this reaction can be used to make alkyl halides. Some of the sorts of compounds you can make by the methods of this chapter are shown below.

**Problems**

1. Predict the orientation in HCl addition to these alkenes.

2. Suggest mechanisms and products for these reactions.

3. What will be the products of addition of bromine water to these alkenes?

4. By working at low temperature with one equivalent of a buffered solution of a peroxy-acid, it is possible to prepare the monoepoxide of cyclopentadiene. Why are the precautions necessary and why does the epoxidation not occur again?

5. The synthesis of a tranquillizer uses this step. Give mechanisms for the reactions.

6. Explain this result.
7. Bromination of this alkene in water gives a single product in good yield. What is the structure and stereochemistry of this product?

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{alkene} \\
\text{Br}_2 \quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\text{X, Y} = \text{Br or OH}
\end{array}
\]

8. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{1. Hg(OAc)}_2 \quad \text{2. NaBH}_4
\end{array}
\]

9. Comment on the formation of a single diastereoisomer in this reaction.

10. Chlorination of this triarylethylene leads to a chloro-alkene rather than a dichloroalkane. Suggest a mechanism and an explanation.

11. Revision problem. Give mechanisms for each step in this synthesis and explain any regio- and stereochemistry.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{RCO}_3\text{H} \\
\text{HF} \\
\text{base}
\end{array}
\]

12. Suggest a mechanism for the following reaction. What is the stereochemistry and conformation of the product?

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{RCO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{Br}_2 \quad \text{NaHCO}_3
\end{array}
\]

13. Give a mechanism for this reaction and show clearly the stereochemistry of the product.
We make no apologies for the number of pages we have devoted to carbonyl chemistry. The first reactions you met, in Chapter 6, involved carbonyl compounds. Then in Chapters 9, 10, 12, and 14 we considered different aspects of nucleophilic attack on electrophilic carbonyl compounds. But carbonyl compounds have two opposed sides to their characters. They can be nucleophilic as well:

| Electrophilic attack on aldehydes, ketones, and acid derivatives is a useful reaction too. How can the same class of compound be subject both to nucleophilic and to electrophilic attack? The resolution of this paradox is the subject of this chapter where we shall see that most carbonyl compounds exist in two forms—one electrophilic and one nucleophilic. The electrophilic form is the carbonyl compound itself and the nucleophilic form is called the enol.

Would you accept a mixture of compounds as a pure substance?

You can buy dimedone (5,5-dimethylcyclohexane-1,3-dione) from chemical suppliers. If, as is wise when you buy any compound, you run an NMR spectrum of the compound to check on its purity, you might be inclined to send the compound back. In CDCl₃ solution it is clearly a mixture of two compounds. Overleaf you can see ¹H and ¹³C NMR spectra of the mixture with the peaks of the dione in red.

The majority of the sample is indeed 5,5-dimethylcyclohexane-1,3-dione. What is the rest? The other component has a similar spectrum and is clearly a similar compound: it has the 6H singlet for the CMe₂ group and the two CH₂ groups at the side of the ring; it also has five signals in its ¹³C NMR spectrum. But it has a broad signal at δH 8.15, which looks like an OH group, and a sharp signal at δH 5.5 in the double-bond region. It also has two different sp² carbon atoms. All this fits the enol structure.
These forms are in equilibrium and cannot be separated at room temperature. The equilibrium is nothing to do with the two methyl groups at C5. And yet the 2,2-dimethyl compound is a perfectly normal diketone with all the expected peaks in the NMR. You will see later that it is only the relative position (1,3) of the carbonyl groups and the presence of at least one hydrogen at C2 that matter.

**Tautomerism: formation of enols by proton transfer**

An enol is exactly what the name implies: an ene-ol. It has a C=C double bond and an OH group joined directly to it. Simple carbonyl compounds have enols too—in the margin is the enol of cyclohexanone (just dimedone without the extras).

In the case of dimedone, the enol must be formed by a transfer of a proton from the central CH₂ group of the keto form to one of the OH groups.

Notice that there is no change in pH—a proton is lost from carbon and gained on oxygen. The reaction is known as **enolization** as it is the conversion of a carbonyl compound into its enol. It is a strange reaction in which little happens. The product is almost the same as the starting...
material since the only change is the transfer of one proton and the shift of the double bond. Reactions like this are given the name tautomerism.

**Why don’t simple aldehydes and ketones exist as enols?**

When we were looking at spectra of carbonyl compounds in Chapter 15 we saw no signs of enols in IR or NMR spectra. Dimedone is exceptional—although any carbonyl compound with protons adjacent to the carbonyl group can enolize, simpler carbonyl compounds like cyclohexanone or acetone have only a trace of enol present under ordinary conditions. The equilibrium lies well over towards the keto form (the equilibrium constant \(K\) for acetone is about \(10^{-6}\)).

This is because the combination of a C=C double bond and an O–H single bond is (slightly) less stable than the combination of a C=O double bond and a C–H single bond. The balance between the bond energies is quite fine. On the one hand, the O–H bond in the enol is a stronger bond than the C–H bond in the ketone but, on the other hand, the C=O bond of the ketone is much more stable than the C=C bond of the enol. Here are some average values for these bonds.

Typical amounts of enols in solution are about one part in \(10^5\) for normal ketones. So why do we think they are important? Because enolization is just a proton transfer, it is occurring all the time even though we cannot detect the minute proportion of the enol. Let us look at the evidence for this statement.

**Evidence for equilibration of carbonyl compounds with enols**

If you run the NMR spectrum of a simple carbonyl compound (for example, 1-phenyl-propan-1-one, ‘propiophenone’) in D\(_2\)O, the signal for protons next to the carbonyl group very slowly disappears. If the compound is isolated from the solution afterwards, the mass spectrum shows that those hydrogen atoms have been replaced by deuterium atoms: there is a peak at \((M + 1)^+\) or \((M + 2)^+\) instead of at \(M^+\). To start with, the same keto–enol equilibrium is set up.

But, when the enol form reverts to the keto form, it picks up a deuteron instead of a proton because the solution consists almost entirely of D\(_2\)O and contains only a tiny amount of DOH (and no H\(_2\)O at all).
The process can now be repeated with the other hydrogen atom on the same carbon atom.

There are, of course, eight other hydrogens in the molecule but they are not affected. In the NMR spectrum we see the slow disappearance of the 2H signal for the protons on C2 next to the carbonyl group.

**Enolization is catalysed by acids and bases**

Enolization is, in fact, quite a slow process in neutral solution, even in D₂O, and we would catalyse it with acid or base if we really wanted it to happen. In the acid-catalysed reaction, the molecule is first protonated on oxygen and then loses the C–H proton in a second step. We shall use a different example here to show that aldehydes form enols too.

**Acid-catalysed enolization of an aldehyde**

This is a better mechanism for enolization than those we have been drawing because it shows that something (here a water molecule) must actually be removing the proton from carbon. Though this reaction will occur faster than the uncatalysed enolization, the equilibrium is not changed and we still cannot detect the enol spectroscopically.

In the base-catalysed reaction the C–H proton is removed first by the base, say, a hydroxide ion, and the proton added to the oxygen atom in a second step.

**Base-catalysed enolization of an aldehyde**

This is a good mechanism too because it shows that something must remove the proton from carbon and something (here a water molecule—we can’t, of course, have protons in basic solution) must put the proton on the oxygen atom. The concentration of free protons in water is vanishingly small (Chapter 8).

Notice that both of these reactions are genuinely catalytic.

You get the proton back again at the end of the acid-catalysed mechanism.
And you get the hydroxide ion back again at the end of the base-catalysed mechanism.

**The intermediate in the base-catalysed reaction is the enolate ion**

There are more insights to be gained from the base-catalysed reaction. The intermediate anion is called the enolate ion. It is the conjugate base of the enol and can be formed either directly from the carbonyl compound by the loss of a C–H proton or from the enol by loss of the O–H proton.

The enolate ion is an alkoxide ion as we have drawn it, but it is more stable than the corresponding saturated structure because it is conjugated.

The enolate ion is one of those three-atom four-electron systems related to the allyl anion that we met in Chapter 7. The negative charge is mainly on oxygen, the most electronegative atom. We can show this with curly arrows using the simplest enolate possible (from MeCHO).

**The enol form is more acidic than the keto form**

The enol is less stable than the aldehyde and both lose a proton to give the same enolate ion. It follows that the enol is the more acidic. Make sure you understand this. Think of it this way: the keto/enol equilibrium constant is small.

The acidity equilibrium constants for each form (with the enolate ion) are both small, but they are not the same.

If the keto form is more stable than the enol form, then $K_a$ (keto) must be smaller than $K_a$ (enol): the enol form gives more of the enolate ion. The acidity of each form is measured by $pK_a$ which is just $-\log_{10} K_a$ so if $K_a$(keto) < $K_a$(enol) then $pK_a$(keto) > $pK_a$(enol) and the keto form is less acidic.

The enolate anion is less stable than the corresponding saturated structure because it is conjugated.

The enolate ion is one of those three-atom four-electron systems related to the allyl anion that we met in Chapter 7. The negative charge is mainly on oxygen, the most electronegative atom. We can show this with curly arrows using the simplest enolate possible (from MeCHO).
Remember that the oxyanion and carbanion structures are just two different ways to represent the same thing. We shall usually prefer the oxyanion structure as it is more realistic. You can say the same thing in orbitals.

On the left you see the populated orbitals of the allyl anion and on the right the corresponding orbitals of the enolate ion. The allyl anion is, of course, symmetrical. Two changes happen when we replace one carbon by an oxygen atom. Because oxygen is more electronegative, both orbitals go down in energy. The orbitals are also distorted. The lower-energy atomic orbital of the more electronegative oxygen contributes more to the lower-energy orbital ($\psi_1$) and correspondingly less to $\psi_2$. The charge distribution comes from both populated orbitals so the negative charge is spread over all three atoms, but is mostly on the ends. The important reactive orbital is the HOMO ($\psi_2$) which has the larger orbital on the terminal carbon atom.

In the enolate, the oxygen atom has more of the negative charge, but the carbon atom has more of the HOMO. One important consequence is that we can expect reactions dominated by charges and electrostatic interactions to occur on oxygen and reactions dominated by orbital interactions to occur on carbon. Thus acyl chlorides tend to react at oxygen to give enol esters, while alkyl halides tend to react at carbon.

We shall be looking at these reactions in Chapter 26. For the rest of this chapter we are going to look at some simpler consequences of enolization and some reactions of enolates with heteroatom nucleophiles.

**Summary of types of enol and enolate**

In this section, the hydrogen atom lost in the enolization is shown in green. First let us summarize the various kinds of enol and enolate we can have from carbonyl compounds. We have seen such
compounds from aldehydes and ketones already, but here are some variants. Cyclic ketones form enols and enolates just like open-chain compounds.

You can have a cyclic aldehyde only if the carbonyl group is outside the ring and cyclic aldehydes too form enols and enolates.

All the acid derivatives can form enols of some kind. Those of esters are particularly important and either enols or enolates are easily made. It is obviously necessary to avoid water in the presence of acid or base, as esters hydrolyse under these conditions. One solution is to use the alkoxide belonging to the ester (MeO\(^-\) with a methyl ester, EtO\(^-\) with an ethyl ester, and so on) to make enolate ions.

Then, if the alkoxide does act as a nucleophile, no harm can be done as the ester is simply regenerated.

The carbonyl group is accepting electrons both in the enolization step and in the nucleophilic attack. The same compounds that are the most electrophilic are also the most easily enolizable. This makes acyl chlorides very enolizable. To avoid nucleophilic attack, we cannot use chloride ion as base since chloride is not basic, so we must use a nonnucleophilic base such as a tertiary amine.

The resulting enolate is not stable as it can eliminate chloride ion, a good leaving group, to form a ketene. This works particularly well in making dichloroketene from dichloroacetyl chloride as the proton to be removed is very acidic.

Carboxylic acids do not form enolate anions easily as the base first removes the acidic OH proton. The same thing protects acids from attack by nucleophiles.

In acid solution, there are no such problems and ‘ene-diols’ are formed. The original OH group of the carboxylic acid and the new OH group of the enol are equivalent.
Amides also have rather acidic protons, though not, of course, as acidic as those of carboxylic acids. Attempted enolate ion formation in base removes an N–H proton rather than a C–H proton. Amides are also the least reactive and the least enolizable of all acid derivatives, and their enols and enolates are rarely used in reactions.

It is not even necessary to have a carbonyl group to observe very similar reactions. Imines and enamines are related by the same kind of tautomeric equilibria.

With a primary amine (here PhNH₂) a reasonably stable imine is formed, but with a secondary amine (here a simple cyclic amine) the imine itself cannot be formed and the iminium salt is less stable than the enamine.

Just as enamines are the nitrogen analogues of enols, aza-enolates are the nitrogen analogues of enolates. They are made by deprotonating enamines with strong base. You will see both enamines and aza-enolates in action in Chapters 26 and 27.

Nitroalkanes form enolate-like anions in quite weak base. As in base-catalysed enolization, a proton is removed from a carbon atom and a stable oxyanion is formed.

Nitriles (cyanides) also form anions but require stronger base as the negative charge is delocalized on to a single nitrogen atom rather than on to two oxygens. The negative charge is mostly on a nitrogen atom and the anion is a three-atom four-electron system like ketene or allene.
The enols will probably not be detectable in solution (only about one part in $10^4$–$10^6$ is enol for most compounds). Some compounds by contrast form stable enols.

**Stable enols**

**Kinetically stable enols**

We have established that enols are, in general, less stable than the keto form of the molecule. We might hope to see stable enols if we changed that situation by adding some feature to the molecule that stabilized the enol thermodynamically. Or we might try to create an enol that would revert only slowly to the keto form—in other words, it would be *kinetically* stable. We shall look at this type first.

We have established that the formation of enols is catalysed by acids and bases. The reverse of this reaction—the formation of ketone from enol—must therefore also be catalysed by the same acids and bases. If you prepare simple enols in the strict absence of acid or base they have a reasonable lifetime. A famous example is the preparation of the simplest enol, vinyl alcohol, by heating ethane-1,2-diol (glycol—antifreeze) to very high temperatures ($900 \, ^\circ\text{C}$) at low pressure. Water is lost and the enol of acetaldehyde is formed. It survives long enough for its proton NMR spectrum to be run, but gives acetaldehyde slowly.

![ vinyl alcohol (ethenol) enol form of acetaldehyde](image)

The spectrum fits the enol perfectly. The alkene proton next to OH is deshielded and the two alkene protons on the other carbon atom shielded as we should expect from the feeding of electrons into the double bond by the OH group.

The coupling constants across the double bond are as expected too. The *trans* coupling is large (14.0 Hz) and the *cis* coupling smaller (6.5 Hz). The geminal coupling is very small as is usually the case for a CH$_2$ group on a double bond.

Other enols can be made that are stable because it is very difficult for the carbon atom to be protonated. This example is very crowded by two substituted benzene rings.
The enol would have to be protonated at the C2 to form the aldehyde but this is not possible because the two benzene rings are twisted out of the plane of the double bond by the interference of the ortho methyl groups. The view down the double bond shows that both faces are blocked by one of the ortho methyl groups and an acid cannot approach close enough to deliver its proton.

**Enols of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds: thermodynamically stable enols**

We started this chapter by looking at a molecule that contained about 33% enol in solution—dime-done. In fact, this is just one example of the class of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds (also called β-dicarbonyls) all of which contain substantial amounts of enol and may even be completely enolized in polar solvents.

We need now to examine why these enols are so stable. The main reason is that this unique (1,3) arrangement of the two functional groups leads to enols that are conjugated rather like a carboxylic acid.

Did you notice when we were looking at the NMR spectrum of dimedone (p. 000) that the two CH2 groups in the ring seemed to be the same, though they are different (a and b) and the delocalization we have just looked at does not make them the same? This must mean that the enol is in rapid equilibrium with another identical enol. This is not delocalization—a proton is moving—so it is tautomerism.

Once again, this is very like the situation in a carboxylic acid. Thus the two enols equilibrate fast with each other in CDCl₃ solution but equilibrate slowly enough with the keto form for the two spectra to be recorded at the same time. If equilibration with the keto form were fast, we should see a time-averaged spectrum of the two. In CD₃OD solution the ¹H and ¹³C NMR spectra show that only the enol form exists, presumably stabilized by hydrogen bonding.

Other 1,3-dicarboxyl compounds also exist largely in the enol form. In some examples there is an additional stabilizing factor, intramolecular hydrogen bonding. Diethyl malonate (diethyl propanedioate) has a symmetrical enol stabilized by conjugation. The enol form is also stabilized by a very favourable intramolecular hydrogen bond in a six-membered ring.
This allows interconversion of the two identical enol structures by proton transfer, that is, by tautomerism.

The 1,3-dicarbonyl compound need not be symmetrical and if it is not two different enol forms will interconvert by proton transfer. Here is a cyclic keto-aldehyde as an example. It exists as the rapidly equilibrating enol. The proportions of the three species can be measured by NMR: there is 0% keto-aldehyde, 76% of the first enol, and 24% of the second.

Enols occur in nature too. Vitamin C has a five-membered ring containing two carbonyl groups but normally exists as a very conjugated ene-diol.

The enol is stable; it is delocalized. We can show the delocalization and explain why vitamin C is called ascorbic acid at the same time. The black enol proton is acidic because the anion is delocalized over the 1,3-dicarbonyl system.

The ultimate in stable enols has to be the Ph-enol, the aromatic alcohols or phenols, which prefer the substantial advantage of aromaticity to the slight advantage of a C=O over a C=C double bond. They exist entirely in the phenol form.

Even so, you will see in Chapter 22 that intermediates with this ‘keto’ structure are formed in reactions on the benzene ring of phenols. Like ascorbic acid, phenol is also quite acidic ($pK_a$ 10) and used to be called carbolic acid.
Consequences of enolization

Unsaturated carbonyl compounds prefer to be conjugated

It is difficult to keep a β,γ-unsaturated carbonyl compound because the double bond tends to move into conjugation with the carbonyl group in the presence of traces of acid or base. The intermediate is, of course, an enol in acid solution but an enolate ion in base.

Protonation at the α position takes the molecule back to the unconjugated ketone, but protonation in the γ position gives the more stable conjugated isomer. All the reactions are equilibria so the conjugated isomer gradually predominates.

Racemization

Any stereogenic centre next to a carbonyl group is precarious because enolization will destroy it. It would be foolish to try and make optically active β-dicarbonyl compounds whose only stereogenic centre was between the two carbonyl groups.

Though the keto-ester is chiral, the enol is flat and cannot be chiral. The two forms are in rapid equilibrium so all optical activity would quickly be lost.

Compounds with one carbonyl group next to the stereogenic centre can be made but care still needs to be taken. The α amino acids, the component parts of proteins, are like this. They are perfectly stable and do not racemize in aqueous acid or base. In base they exist as carboxylate anions that do not enolize, as explained above. Enolization in acid is prevented by the NH⁺ group, which inhibits the second protonation necessary for enol formation.

Amino acids can be converted into their N-acetyl derivatives with acetic anhydride. These N-acetyl amides can be racemized on recrystallization from hot acetic acid, no doubt by enolization. The amino group is no longer basic, is not protonated in acid, and so protonation on the carbonyl group and hence enolization is now possible.
You may think it a crazy idea to want to racemize an amino acid. Supposing, however, that you are preparing pure (S)-amino acid by resolution. Half your material ends up as the wrong (R)-enantiomer and you don’t want just to throw it away. If you racemize it you can put it back into the next resolution and convert half of it into the (S)-acid. Then you can racemize what remains and so on.

Some compounds may be racemized inside the human body. Bacterial cell walls are built partly from ‘unnatural’ (R)-amino-acids and we can’t digest these. Instead, we use enzymes designed to racemize them. These also work by enolization, though it is the imine–enamine type from p. 000.

There is an important group of analgesic (pain-killing) drugs such as ibuprofen based on the arylpropionic acid structure. Ibuprofen is given to arthritis sufferers as ‘Brufen’ and can be bought over the counter in chemists’ shops as the headache remedy ‘Nurofen’. Only one enantiomer actually cures pain but the compound is administered as the racemate. The body does the rest, racemizing the compound by enolizing it.

Reaction with enols or enolates as intermediates

We have already seen that exchange of hydrogen for deuterium, movement of double bonds into conjugation, and racemization can occur with enols or enolates as intermediates. These are chemical reactions of a sort, but it is time to look at some reactions that make significant changes to the carbonyl compound.

Haloenation

Carbonyl compounds can be halogenated in the α position by halogens (such as bromine, Br₂) in acidic or basic solutions. We shall look at the acid-catalysed reaction first because it is simpler. Ketones can usually be cleanly brominated in acetic acid as solvent.

The first step is acid-catalysed enolization and the electrophilic bromine molecule then attacks the nucleophilic carbon of the enol. The arrows show why this particular carbon is the one attacked.

Notice that the acid catalyst is regenerated at the end of the reaction. The reaction need not be carried out in an acidic solvent, or even with a protic acid at all. Lewis acids make excellent catalysts for the bromination of ketones. This example with an unsymmetrical ketone gives 100% yield of the bromoketone with catalytic AlCl₃ in ether as solvent.

Bromination occurs nowhere else in the molecule—not on the benzene ring (which, as you will see in the next chapter, it easily might under these conditions), nor on any other atom of the
This is because only one position can form an enol and the enol is more reactive towards bromine than the aromatic ring.

These mechanisms should remind you of the mechanism of alkene bromination (p. 000)—except that here the attack on the bromine is assisted by an electron pair on oxygen. The product, instead of being a bromonium ion (which would undergo further reactions), loses a proton (or the Lewis acid) to give a ketone.

Enols are more nucleophilic than simple alkenes—the HOMO is raised by the interaction with the oxygen’s lone pairs and looks not unlike the HOMO of the enolate anion we discussed on p. 000.

Bromination of acid derivatives is usually carried out not on the acid itself but by converting it to an acyl bromide or chloride, which is not isolated but gives the $\alpha$-bromoacyl halide via the enol. This used to be done in one step with red phosphorus and bromine, but a two-step process is usually preferred now, and the bromoester is usually made directly without isolating any of the intermediates.

We can summarize the overall process like this.

The formation of the acyl chloride with SOCl$_2$ and the conversion of the $\alpha$-bromoacyl chloride into the bromoester with MeOH are simple nucleophilic substitutions at the carbonyl group, just like the synthesis of esters from acyl chlorides in Chapter 12. The intermediate stage, the bromination of the very easily enolized acyl chloride, is a typical enol bromination.

In the reaction of the bromoacyl chloride with methanol, attack occurs at the carbonyl group with an alcohol because oxygen nucleophiles are ‘hard’ nucleophiles (controlled by charge interactions). If we want to displace the $\alpha$-bromo group we can use any ‘soft’ (orbital-dominated) nucleophile. Triphenylphosphine Ph$_3$P is particularly important—the product is a phosphonium salt, employed in Wittig reactions and discussed in Chapter 31.
Base-catalysed halogenation

This is different and more complicated because it usually won’t stop at the introduction of one halogen atom. If we go back to the bromination of acetone, the first step will now be a base-catalysed enolization to give the enolate ion instead of the enol. The enolate ion can attack a bromine molecule in a very similar way to the attack of the enol on bromine. The enolate will, of course, be even more reactive than the enol was (the enolate carries a negative charge).

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Br} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br}^- + \text{Br}^+
\]

The problem is that the reaction does not stop at this point. The first step was the removal of a proton and the protons between the carbonyl group and the bromine atom in the product are more acidic than those in the original acetone because of the electron-withdrawing bromine atom. Bromoacetone forms an enolate faster than acetone does.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Br} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br}^- + \text{Br}^+
\]

Dibromoacetone is formed. Now we have one remaining proton in between the carbonyl group and two bromine atoms. It is even more acidic and so forms a new enolate ion even more quickly. The first product we can see in any amount is tribromoacetone.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Br} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br}^- + \text{Br}^+
\]

But even this is not the end of the story. To see why, we need to backtrack a bit. You may already have asked yourself, ‘Why doesn’t the hydroxide ion, being a nucleophile, attack the carbonyl group?’ This is a general question you might ask about all base-catalysed enolizations. The answer is that it does. The reaction is shown in the margin. A tetrahedral intermediate forms.

What can happen now? This tetrahedral intermediate will revert to a carbonyl compound by expelling the best leaving group—and in Chapter 12 we saw that this is usually the group with the lowest $pK_a$. But Me$^-$ cannot act as a leaving group ($pK_a > 50$). Indeed the only possible leaving group is the hydroxide ion ($pK_a = 15.7$), so it just drops out again.

This state of affairs continues until we reach the tribromoketone. In Chapter 8, you saw that the $pK_a$ of CHBr$_3$ is only 9: the CBr$_3$ group is a better leaving group than hydroxide since the carbanion is stabilized by three bromine atoms. So now a real reaction occurs.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Br} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br}^- + \text{Br}^+
\]

These initial products exchange a proton to reveal the true products of the reaction—the anion of a carboxylic acid and tribromomethane (CHBr$_3$).

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Br} \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Br}^- + \text{Br}^+
\]

The same thing happens with iodine, and we can summarize the whole process with iodine using a general structure for a carbonyl compound bearing a methyl group. It must be a methyl group because three halogens are necessary to make the carbanion into a leaving group.
This reaction is often called the ‘iodoform’ reaction. Iodoform was an old name for tri-iodomethane, just as chloroform is still used for trichloromethane. It is one of the rare cases where nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group results in the cleavage of a C–C single bond.

---

**Acid mediated halogenation is best**

Halogenation of carbonyl compounds should be carried out in acid solution. Attempts in basic solution lead to multiple substitutions and C–C bond cleavage.

---

**Why does acid-catalysed halogenation work better?**

The reason why halogenation in base continues until all the hydrogens have been replaced is clear: each successive halide makes the remaining proton(s) more acidic and the next enolization easier. But why does acid-catalysed halogenation stop after the introduction of one halogen? It would be more accurate to say that it can be made to stop after one halogen is introduced if only one equivalent of halogen is used. Acid-catalysed halogenation will continue if there is more halogen available.

However, the second halogen goes on the other side of the carbonyl group, if it can. It is evidently the case that the second halogenation is slower than the first. This is first because most of the intermediates are positively charged and hence destabilized by the presence of a halogen. The bromoketone is less basic than acetone so less of the reactive protonated form is present. This slows down any further electrophilic attack.

The second step is the rate-determining step, and the presence of a bromine atom at the α position slows this step down still further: if a proton can be lost from a different α position—one without a Br atom—it will be lost. The transition state for proton removal illustrates why bromine slows this step down. The part of the structure close to the bromine atom is positively charged.

We can add a useful piece of evidence to this weak-sounding explanation. The halogenation of an unsymmetrical dialkyl ketone gives different results in acid and in base. In base, halogenation occurs preferentially on a methyl group, that is, on the less highly substituted side. In acid solution, by contrast, halogenation occurs on the more substituted side of the carbonyl group. Alkyl groups have the opposite effect to bromine atoms—they stabilize positive charges. So the reactions of an enol, with a positively charged transition state, are faster at more highly substituted positions. Enolates react through negatively charged transition states, and are faster at less highly substituted carbon atoms.

---

**Nitrosation of enols**

Now for a reaction with nitrogen as an electrophile that illustrates enol reactivity and reminds us that tautomerism applies to functional groups other than the carbonyl. Let us suppose you have a
carbonyl compound and wish to introduce another carbonyl group next to the first. One way you might go about it is this.

The first step involves the formation of the weak acid nitrous acid (HNO$_2$ or, more helpfully, HONO) from the sodium salt and the strong acid HCl. Nitrous acid is itself protonated and then loss of water creates the reactive electrophile NO$^+$. 

This diatomic cation, isoelectronic with carbon monoxide, is electrophilic at nitrogen and attacks the enol of the ketone to form an unstable nitroso compound.

The nitroso compound is unstable because it can tautomerize with the transfer of a proton from carbon to the oxygen of the nitroso group. This process is exactly like enolization but uses an N=O instead of a C=O group. It gives a more familiar functional group from Chapter 14, the oxime, as the stable ‘enol’. The second structure shows how the oxime’s O–H can form an intramolecular hydrogen bond with the ketone carbonyl group. Hydrolysis of the oxime reveals the second ketone.

If the ketone is unsymmetrical, this reaction will occur on the more substituted side, for the same reason that acid-catalysed enol bromination gives the more substituted α-bromocarbonyl compound (see the box on p. 000).

Before we move on to any more reactions, we want you to take away this message from the reactions of enols and enolates with Br$_2$ and with NO$^+$. 

- Enols and enolates generally react with electrophiles at carbon.
Stable enolate equivalents

Even with fairly strong bases such as hydroxides or alkoxides, most carbonyl compounds are converted to their enolates only to a very small extent. A typical $pK_a$ for the protons next to a carbonyl group is 20–25, while the $pK_a$ of methoxide is around 16, so we can only hope for about 1 part enolate in 10⁴ parts carbonyl compound. With a much stronger base, this all changes, and the enolate is formed quantitatively from the carbonyl compound. This is a very important result which we shall capitalize on in Chapters 26 and 27. The base usually used is LDA (Lithium Di-isopropyl Amide), and it works like this.

LDA is bulky, so it does not undergo nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group, and it is basic—the $pK_a$ of diisopropylamine is about 35—plenty basic enough to deprotonate next to any carbonyl group. The lithium enolate is stable at low temperature (–78 °C) but reactive enough to be useful. Lithium enolates are the most commonly used stable enolate equivalents in chemistry.

Second only to lithium enolates in usefulness are silyl enol ethers. Silicon is less electropositive than lithium, and silyl enol ethers are more stable, but less reactive, than lithium enolates. They are made by treating an enolate with a silicon electrophile. Silicon electrophiles invariably react with enolates at the oxygen atom firstly because they are hard (see p. 000) and secondly because of the very strong Si–O single bond. The most common silicon electrophile is trimethylsilyl chloride (Me₃SiCl), an intermediate made industrially in bulk and used to make the NMR standard tetramethyl silane (Me₄Si).

Silicon–oxygen bonds are so strong that silicon reacts with carbonyl compounds on oxygen even without a strong base to form the enolate: the reaction probably goes through the small amount of enol present in neutral solution, and just needs a weak base (Et₃N) to remove the proton from the product. An alternative view is that the silicon reacts with oxygen first, and the base just converts to oxonium ion to the silyl enol ether. Both mechanisms are given below—either might be correct. This is one of the two best ways to make a stable enol derivative from virtually any enolizable carbonyl compound.
Silyl enol ethers can also be made from lithium enolates just by treating them with trimethylsilyl chloride.

\[
\text{RCH} = \text{CH}_2\quad\rightarrow\quad\text{RCH(O)Li} \quad\rightarrow\quad\text{RCH(SiMe}_3\text{)}\quad\rightleftharpoons\quad\text{RCH(\text{SiMe}_3\text{)}}\quad\text{lithium enolate}\quad\rightarrow\quad\text{silyl enol ether}
\]

Occasionally, it can be useful to run this reaction in reverse, generating the lithium enolate from the silyl enol ether. This can be done with methyl lithium, which undergoes nucleophilic substitution at silicon to generate the lithium enolate plus tetramethylsilane. The reason why you might want to carry out this seemingly rather pointless transformation will become clear in Chapters 26 and 27.

We shall be returning to silyl enol ethers and lithium enolates later in the book, but for the moment you should view them simply as enol derivatives that are stable enough to be isolated. This is important because it means that we do not have to content ourselves simply with small, equilibrium concentrations of enol or enolate for our reactions: we can actually prepare enolate derivatives like these in quantitative yield, and use them in a separate step.

Enol and enolate reactions at oxygen: preparation of enol ethers

You have just seen that silyl enol ethers are easy to make. But, if enolate ions have most of their negative charge on the oxygen atom, it ought to be possible to make ordinary enol ethers from them. It is—but only under strange conditions. Normally, enols and enolate ions prefer to react with alkyl electrophiles at carbon, as we shall see in Chapter 27. If enolate ions are prepared with potassium bases in dipolar aprotic solvents (such as dimethyl sulfoxide, DMSO) that cannot solvate the oxygen anion, and are reacted with dimethyl sulfate or trimethyloxonium ion—powerful methylating agents that react best with charged atoms—some at least of the enol ether is formed. The Me\(_3\text{O}^+\text{BF}_4^-\) ion is found in the stable (though reactive) compound trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate, or ‘Meerwein’s salt’, Me\(_3\text{O}^+\text{BF}_4\). This compound and dimethylsulfate, Me\(_2\text{SO}_4\), are hard electrophiles with highly polarized C–O bonds and therefore react at hard O rather than soft C.

\[
\text{Ph} = \text{CHO} \quad\rightarrow\quad\text{Ph} = \text{CH(C} = \text{O)K} \quad\rightarrow\quad\text{Ph} = \text{CH(C} = \text{O)OMe} \quad\text{enol ether}\quad\text{C-alkylated by-product}
\]

The yield in this reaction is about 60–70% of enol ether, the rest being mainly C-alkylated product. A more reliable method is the acid-catalysed decomposition of an acetal in the strict absence of water. Here is an example.
The reaction starts as though the acetal were being hydrolysed, but there is no water to continue the hydrolysis, so a proton is lost instead. In other words, with no suitable nucleophile for SN1 substitution, E1 elimination takes place.

These enol ethers are rather unstable, particularly towards acid-catalysed hydrolysis (next section) and are not as useful as the silyl enol ethers. We shall next look at the enol-like reactions of both groups of enol ethers.

**Reactions of enol ethers**

**Hydrolysis of enol ethers**

Enols have an OH group and are alcohols of a sort. Normal alcohols form stable ethers that are difficult to convert back to the alcohol. Powerful reagents such as HI or BBr3 are required and these reactions were discussed in Chapter 17. The reaction with HI is an SN2 attack on the methyl group of the protonated ether and that is why a good nucleophile for saturated carbon, such as iodide or bromide, is needed for the reaction.

Enol ethers, by contrast, are relatively unstable compounds that are hydrolysed back to the carbonyl compound simply with aqueous acid.

Why the big difference? The reason is that the enol ether can be protonated at carbon using the delocalization of the oxygen lone pair in the enol derivative to produce a reactive oxonium ion.

This oxonium ion could be attacked on the methyl group in the same way that the ordinary ether was attacked.
We wouldn't really expect this reaction to happen much faster than the same reaction on an ordinary ether. So there must be another better and faster mechanism. It is attack on the \( \pi \) bond instead of on the \( \sigma \) bond.

In aqueous acid the nucleophile \( X^- \) is just water and we find ourselves in the middle of the mechanism of hydrolysis of acetals (Chapter 14). The oxonium ion is a common intermediate to both mechanisms.

A similar reaction occurs when enol ethers react with alcohols in acid solution and in the absence of water, but now we are starting in the middle of the acetal hydrolysis mechanism and going the other way, in the direction of the acetal. A useful example is the formation of THP (= TetraHydroPyranyl) derivatives of alcohols from the enol ether dihydropyran. You will see THP derivatives of alcohols being used as 'protecting groups' in Chapter 24.

Silyl enol ethers hydrolyse by a slightly different mechanism, though the first step is the same—protonation at carbon using the lone pair on oxygen. We have already seen how easy it is to attack silicon with nucleophiles, especially those with oxygen or a halogen as the nucleophilic atom. This tips the balance towards attack by water at silicon for the next step.

The aldehyde is formed immediately. What happens to the other product illustrates again just how easy nucleophilic substitution at silicon can be. Two of these compounds combine together to give a disilyl ether, called a disiloxane. This wouldn't have happened with \( \tau \)-butanol!

Reactions of enol ethers with halogen and sulfur electrophiles

In comparison with other ethers, enol ethers of all kinds are rather unstable. As alkenes they are also more reactive than normal alkenes because of the lone pair of electrons on the oxygen atom. They react with electrophiles like bromine or chlorine on the \( \alpha \) carbon atom, behaving like enol derivatives and not like alkenes.
Electrophilic attack occurs at the $\alpha$ carbon atom and the halide ion released in this step then attacks the silicon atom to release the product and a molecule of $\text{Me}_3\text{SiX}$, which will be hydrolysed during the work-up.

This procedure avoids the difficulties we outlined earlier in the direct halogenation of aldehydes and ketones. It allows the preparation of haloketones on the less substituted side of the carbonyl group, for instance.

A similar method with the good soft electrophiles $\text{RSCl}$ allows sulfenylation next to the carbonyl group.

The mechanism is very similar: the electrophilic sulfur atom attacks the $\alpha$ carbon atom of the silyl enol ether releasing a chloride ion that removes the $\text{Me}_3\text{Si}$ group from the intermediate.

To conclude...

You have now seen how enols and enolates react with electrophiles based on hydrogen (deuterium), carbon, halogens, silicon, sulfur, and nitrogen. What remains to be seen is how new carbon–carbon bonds can be formed with alkyl halides and carbonyl compounds in their normal electrophilic mode. These reactions are the subject of Chapters 26–29. We must first look at the ways aromatic compounds react with electrophiles. You will see similarities with the behaviour of enols.

Problems

1. Draw all the possible enol forms of these carbonyl compounds and comment on the stability of the various enols.

2. The proportions of enol in a neat sample of the two ketones below are shown. Why are they so different?

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{4 × 10}^{-6}\% \text{ enol} \\
&62\% \text{ enol}
\end{align*}
\]
3. Draw mechanisms for these reactions using just enolization and its reverse.

4. The NMR spectrum of this dimethyl ether is complicated—the two MeO groups are different as are all the hydrogen atoms on the rings. However, the diphenol has a very simple NMR—there are only two types of protons (marked a and b) on the rings. Explain.

5. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

6. Treatment of this ketone with basic D_2O leads to rapid replacement of two hydrogen atoms by deuterium. Then, more slowly, all the other nonaromatic hydrogens except the one marked ‘H’ are replaced. How is this possible?

7. A red alga growing in sea water produces an array of bromine-containing compounds including CHBr_3, CBr_4, and Br_2C=CHCO_2H. The brominating agent is believed to be derived by the oxidation of bromide ion (Br^-) and can be represented as Br-OX. Suggest mechanistic details for the proposed biosynthesis of CHBr_3 in the alga.

8. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions and explanations as to why these products are formed.

9. 1,3-Dicarbonyl compounds such as A are usually mostly enolized. Why is this? Draw the enols available to compounds B–E and explain why B is 100% enol but C, D, and E are 100% ketone.

10. Bromination of ketones can be carried out with molecular bromine in a carboxylic acid solution. Give a mechanism for the reaction.

  - The rate of the reaction is not proportional to the concentration of bromine [Br_2]. Suggest an explanation. Why is the bromination of ketones carried out in acidic and not in basic solution?
Introduction: enols and phenols

You have seen how, in acid or base, the protons in the \( \alpha \) positions of ketones could be replaced by deuterium atoms (Chapter 21). In each case the reaction goes via the enol tautomer of the ketone (or enolate). For example, in base:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{enolate} & \quad \text{enolate} \\
\text{repeat the process} & \quad \text{repeat the process}
\end{align*}
\]

If you did Problem 6 in Chapter 21 (if you didn’t, now would be a good time!), you also saw how conjugated ketones could be deuterated at positions other than the \( \alpha \) positions; for example, in acid we now need to concentrate on the conjugated enol formed by loss of a more remote proton.

The conjugated enol could react with \( \text{D}_3\text{O}^+ \) at the normal \( \alpha \) position, but it could also react at the more remote \( \gamma \) position, the position from which we have just removed a proton.

Here, as usual, the keto/enol equilibrium lies well over in favour of the ketone, but in this chapter we shall be discussing one very stable enol—phenol, \( \text{PhOH} \). The proton NMR spectrum for phenol...
is shown below. Also shown below is the proton NMR after shaking phenol with acidic D$_2$O. Can you assign the spectra?

![200 MHz spectrum of phenol](image1)

![200 MHz spectrum of phenol after shaking with D$_3$O$^+$](image2)

Phenol is deuterated in exactly the same way as any other conjugated enol except that the final product remains as the very stable enol form of phenol rather than the keto form. The enol form of phenol is so stable because of the aromaticity of the benzene ring. The first step is addition of D$_3$O$^+$ to the 'enol'.

Now the intermediate cation could lose the proton from oxygen to leave a ketone or it could lose the proton from carbon to leave the phenol, or it could lose the deuteron and go back to the starting material.

The end product on treating phenol with D$_3$O$^+$ simply has certain H atoms replaced by deuterium atoms. We say 'certain H atoms' but exactly which ones? The most acidic proton is the phenolic proton, the OH ($pK_a$ about 10); this will rapidly be exchanged. The other protons that will be replaced will be the ones in the 2, 4, and 6 positions (that is, the ortho and para positions). Below is a reminder of the names we give to the positions around a benzene ring relative to any substituent.

Phenol initially behaves like a conjugated enol in its reactions with electrophiles but, instead of giving a ketone product, the enol is formed because the very stable aromatic ring is regained. This
chapter is about the reactions of phenols and other aromatic compounds with electrophiles. You will see phenols reacting like enols, except that the final product is also an enol, and you will also see simple benzenes reacting like alkenes, except that the result is substitution rather than addition. We shall start with a discussion of the structure of benzene and of aromaticity.

**Benzene and its reaction with electrophiles**

Benzene is a planar symmetrical hexagon with six trigonal (sp$^2$) carbon atoms, each having one hydrogen atom in the plane of the ring. All the bond lengths are 1.39 Å (compare C–C 1.47 Å and C=C 1.33 Å). All the $^{13}$C shifts are the same ($\delta_C 128.5$ p.p.m.).

The special stability of benzene (aromaticity) comes from the six $\pi$ electrons in three molecular orbitals made up by the overlap of the six atomic p orbitals on the carbon atoms. The energy levels of these orbitals are arranged so that there is exceptional stability in the molecule (a notional 140 kJ mol$^{-1}$ over a molecule with three conjugated double bonds), and the shift of the six identical hydrogen atoms in the NMR spectrum ($\delta_H 7.2$ p.p.m.) is evidence of a ring current in the delocalized $\pi$ system.

**Electrophilic attack on benzene and on cyclohexene**

Simple alkenes, including cyclohexene, react rapidly with electrophiles such as bromine or peroxyacids (Chapter 20). Bromine gives a product of trans addition, peracids give epoxides by cis addition. Under the same conditions benzene does not react with either reagent.

Benzene can be persuaded to react with bromine if a Lewis acid catalyst such as AlCl$_3$ is added. The product contains bromine but is not from either cis or trans addition.
The bromine atom has replaced an atom of hydrogen and so this is a substitution reaction. The reagent is electrophilic bromine and the molecule is aromatic so the reaction is **electrophilic aromatic substitution** and that is the subject of this chapter. We can compare the bromination of cyclohexene and of benzene directly.

The intermediate in both reactions is a cation but the first (from cyclohexene) adds an anion while the second (from benzene) loses a proton so that the aromatic system can be restored. Notice also that neutral bromine reacts with the alkene but the cationic AlCl₃ complex is needed for benzene. Another way to produce a more electrophilic source of bromine is to use a pyridine catalyst. Pyridine attacks the bromine molecule producing a cationic bromine compound.

Bromine itself is a very reactive electrophile. It is indeed a dangerous compound and should be handled only with special precautions. Even so it does not react with benzene. It is very difficult to get benzene to react with anything.

**Benzene is very unreactive**

- It combines only with very reactive (usually cationic) electrophiles
- It gives substitution and not addition products

The intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution is a delocalized cation

These two brominations are examples of the mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution, which, in many different guises, will return again and again during this chapter. In its most general form the mechanism has two stages: attack by an electrophile to give an intermediate cation and loss of a proton from the cation to restore the aromaticity.

The cationic intermediate is, of course, less stable than the starting materials or the product but as a cation it is reasonably stable because of delocalization around the six-membered ring. The charge can be delocalized to the two ortho positions and to the para position or can be drawn as a delocalized structure with dotted bonds and about one-third of a plus charge (+) at three atoms.
In strong acid, the electrophile would be a proton and the reaction would be the exchange of the protons in the benzene ring in the style of the proton exchange on phenol with which we started this chapter. In D₃O⁺, this would ultimately lead to C₆D₆ which is a useful solvent in NMR. As with the bromination reaction, the first step in the mechanism is the formation of a cationic intermediate.

It is actually possible to observe this cationic intermediate. The trick is to pick a nonnucleophilic and nonbasic counterion X⁻, such as antimony hexafluoride SbF₆⁻. In this octahedral anion, the central antimony atom is surrounded by the fluorine atoms and the negative charge is spread over all seven atoms. The protonation is carried out using FSO₃H and SbF₅ at −120 °C.

Under these conditions it is possible to record the ¹H and ¹³C NMR spectra of the cation. The shifts show that the positive charge is spread over the ring but is greatest (or the electron density is least) in the ortho and para positions. Using the data for the ¹H and ¹³C NMR shifts (δH and δC, respectively), a charge distribution can be calculated.

Curly arrows also predict the same electron distribution for all these intermediates, whether the electrophile is a proton or any of the other reagents we will meet in this chapter. The cation can be represented as three different delocalized structures that show clearly the electron-deficient atoms, or by a structure with partial bonds that shows the delocalization but is of no use for drawing mechanisms.

It is not surprising that the formation of the cationic intermediate is the rate-determining step, as aromaticity is temporarily lost in this step. The mechanism of the fast proton loss from the intermediate is shown in three ways just to prove that it doesn’t matter which of the delocalized structures you choose. A useful piece of advice is that, when you draw the intermediate in any electrophilic aromatic substitution, you should always draw in the hydrogen atom at the point of substitution, just as we have been doing.
Nitration of benzene

Perhaps the most important of all the reactions in this chapter is nitration, the introduction of a nitro (NO₂) group, into an aromatic system, as it provides a general entry into aromatic nitrogen compounds. This reaction is not available for aliphatic nitrogen compounds, which are usually made with nucleophilic nitrogen reagents. Aromatic nitration requires very powerful reagents, the most typical being a mixture of concentrated nitric and sulfuric acids.

```
\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\textbf{Nitration converts aromatic compounds (ArH) into nitrobenzenes (ArNO₂) using NO₂⁺ from HNO₃ + H₂SO₄.}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
```

The first steps are the formation of a very powerful electrophile, none other than NO₂⁺, by the interaction of the two strong acids. Sulfuric acid is the stronger and it protonates the nitric acid on the OH group so that a molecule of water can leave.

```
\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\textbf{Nitration converts aromatic compounds (ArH) into nitrobenzenes (ArNO₂) using NO₂⁺ from HNO₃ + H₂SO₄.}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
```

Notice that the nitronium ion (NO₂⁺) is linear with an sp hybridized nitrogen at the centre. It is isoelectronic with CO₂. It is also very reactive and combines with benzene in the way we have just described. Benzene attacks the positively charged nitrogen atom but one of the N=O bonds must be broken at the same time to avoid five-valent nitrogen.

Sulfonation of benzene

Benzene reacts slowly with sulfuric acid alone to give benzenesulfonic acid. The reaction starts with the protonation of one molecule of sulfuric acid by another and the loss of a molecule of water. This is very similar to the first steps in nitration.

```
\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\textbf{Nitration converts aromatic compounds (ArH) into nitrobenzenes (ArNO₂) using NO₂⁺ from HNO₃ + H₂SO₄.}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
```

The cation produced is very reactive and combines with benzene by the same mechanisms we have seen for bromination and nitration: slow addition to the aromatic π system followed by rapid loss of a proton to regenerate the aromaticity. The product contains the sulfonic acid functional group –SO₂OH.
The cationic intermediate can also be formed by the protonation of sulfur trioxide, SO₃, and another way to do sulfonations is to use concentrated sulfuric acid with SO₃ added. These solutions have the industrial name oleum. It is possible that the sulfonating agent in all these reactions is not protonated SO₃ but SO₃ itself.

Sulfonic acids are strong acids, about as strong as sulfuric acid itself. They are stronger than HCl, for example, and can be isolated from the reaction mixture as their crystalline sodium salts if an excess of NaCl is added. Not many compounds react with NaCl.

Alkyl and acyl substituents can be added to a benzene ring by the Friedel–Crafts reaction

So far we have added heteroatoms only—bromine, nitrogen, or sulfur. Adding carbon electrophiles requires reactive carbon electrophiles and that means carbocations. In Chapter 17 you learned that any nucleophile, however weak, will react with a carbocation in the SN¹ reaction and even benzene rings will do this. The classic SN¹ electrophile is the t-butyl cation generated from t-butanol with acid.

This is, in fact, an unusual way to carry out such reactions. The Friedel–Crafts alkylation, as this is known, usually involves treating benzene with a t-alkyl chloride and the Lewis acid AlCl₃. Rather in the manner of the reaction with bromine, AlCl₃ removes the chlorine atom from t-BuCl and releases the t-Bu cation for the alkylation reaction.

We have not usually bothered with the base that removes the proton from the intermediate. Here it is chloride ion as the by-product is HCl, so you can see that even a very weak base will do. Here is the second reaction in a few pages that is carried out by chloride ion. Anything, such as water, chloride, or other counterions of strong acids, will do this job well enough and you need not in general be concerned with the exact agent.
A more important variation is the Friedel–Crafts acylation with acid chlorides and AlCl₃. As you saw in Chapter 13, acid chlorides can give the rather stable acylium ions even in hydrolytic reactions and they do so readily with Lewis acid catalysis. Attack on a benzene ring then gives an aromatic ketone. The benzene ring has been acylated.

The acylation is better than the alkylation because it does not require any particular structural feature in the acyl chloride—R can be almost anything. In the alkylation step it is essential that the alkyl group can form a cation; otherwise the reaction does not work very well. In addition, for reasons we are about to explore, the acylation stops cleanly after one reaction whereas the alkylation often gives mixtures of products.

---

### Friedel–Crafts reactions

Friedel–Crafts alkylation with t-alkyl chlorides and Lewis acids (usually AlCl₃) gives t-alkyl benzenes. The more reliable Friedel–Crafts acylation with acid chlorides and Lewis acids (usually AlCl₃) gives aryl ketones.

---

### Summary of electrophilic substitution on benzene

This completes our preliminary survey of the most important reactions in aromatic electrophilic substitution. We shall switch our attention to the benzene ring itself now and see what effects various types of substituent have on these reactions. During this discussion we will return to each of the main reactions and discuss them in more detail. Meanwhile, we leave the introduction with an energy profile diagram in the style of Chapter 13 for a typical substitution.

This argument is based on the [Hammond postulate](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hammond_postulate), which suggests that structures close in energy that transform directly into each other are also similar in structure.

Since the first step involves the temporary disruption of the aromatic π system, and is therefore rate-determining, it must have the higher-energy transition state. The intermediate is unstable and has a much higher energy that either the starting material or the products, close to that of the transition states. The two transition states will be similar in structure to the intermediate and we shall use the intermediate as a model for the important first transition state.

The reaction is so slow and the transition state so high because the only HOMO available is a pair of very low-energy bonding electrons in the benzene ring and because the uniquely stable aromatic π system is already disrupted in the transition state.
Electrophilic substitution on phenols

We started this chapter by comparing phenols with enols (Ph-enol is the phenyl enol) and now we
return to them and look at electrophilic substitution in full detail. You will find that the reaction is
much easier than it was with benzene itself because phenols are like enols and the same reactions
(bromination, nitration, sulfonations, and Friedel–Crafts reactions) occur more easily. There is a
new question too: the positions round the phenol ring are no longer equivalent—where does substi-
tution take place?

Phenols react rapidly with bromine

Benzene does not react with bromine except with Lewis acid catalysis. Phenols react in a very differ-
ent manner: no Lewis acid is needed, the reaction occurs very rapidly, and the product contains three
atoms of bromine in specific positions. All that needs to be done is to add bromine dropwise to a
solution of phenol in ethanol. Initially, the yellow colour of the bromine disappears but, if, when the
colour just remains, water is added, a white precipitate of 2,4,6-tribromophenol is formed.

The product shows that bromination has occurred at the para position and at both ortho posi-
tions. What a contrast to benzene! Phenol reacts three times as rapidly without catalysis at room
temperature. Benzene reacts once and needs a Lewis acid to make the reaction go at all. The differ-
ence is, of course, the enol nature of phenol. The highest-energy electrons in phenol are no longer
those in the benzene ring but the lone pairs on oxygen. These nonbonding electrons contribute to a
much higher-energy HOMO than the very low-energy bonding electrons in the aromatic ring. We
should let our mechanism show this. Starting in the para position:

▶ This is not strictly catalysis as a stoichiometric amount of Lewis acid is needed and cannot be
recovered.
Notice that we start the chain of arrows with the lone pair electrons on the OH group and push them through the ring so that they emerge at the para position to attack the bromine molecule. The benzene ring is acting as a conductor allowing electrons to flow from the OH group to the bromine molecule.

Now repeating the reaction but this time at one of the two equivalent ortho positions:

Again the lone pair electrons on the OH group are the HOMO and these electrons are fed through the benzene ring to emerge at the ortho position. A third bromination in the remaining ortho position—you could draw the mechanisms for this as practice—gives the final product 2,4,6-tribromophenol.

The OH group is said to be ortho, para-directing towards electrophiles. No substitution occurs in either meta position. We can understand this by looking at the curly arrow mechanisms or by looking at the molecular orbitals. In Chapter 21 (p. 000) we looked at the π system of an enolate and saw how the electron density is located mainly on the end atoms (the oxygen and the carbon). In phenol it is the ortho and para positions that are electron-rich (and, of course, the oxygen itself). We could show this using curly arrows.

The curly arrows actually give an indication of the electron distribution in the HOMO of the molecule. The reason is that the HOMO has large coefficients at every other atom, just as the allyl anion had large coefficients at its ends but not in the middle (Chapter 7).

Benzylic anion HOMO – a model for phenol

A better analogy for phenol is the benzylic anion. The benzylic anion is simpler because we do not have the added complication of the differences in electronegativities between the oxygen and carbon atoms. According to simple calculations, the highest occupied molecular orbital (HOMO) for the benzylic anion is a nonbonding molecular orbital (MO) with the distribution like this.

In this MO there are no bonding interactions between adjacent atoms so the HOMO for the benzylic anion is actually a nonbonding MO. Most of the electron density is on the benzylic carbon atom not in the ring, but there is also significant electron density on the ring carbon atoms in the ortho and para positions. The distribution for phenol will be different because it is not an anion and the oxygen atom is more electronegative than carbon but the overall distribution will be as predicted by the curly arrows—most on the oxygen and on the ortho and para carbon atoms.
NMR can give us some confirmation of the electron distribution

The \(^1\)H NMR shifts of phenol give us an indication of the electron distribution in the \(\pi\) system. The more electron density that surrounds a nucleus, the more shielded it is and so the smaller the shift (see p. 000). All the shifts for the ring protons in phenol are less than those for benzene (7.28 p.p.m.), which means that overall there is greater electron density in the ring. There is little difference between the ortho and the para positions: both are electron-rich.

The shifts are smallest in the ortho and para positions so these are where there is greatest electron density and hence these are the sites for electrophilic attack. The shifts in the meta positions are not significantly different from those in benzene. If you want to put just one bromine atom into a phenol, you must work at low temperature (< 5 °C) and use just one equivalent of bromine. The best solvent is the rather dangerously inflammable carbon disulfide (CS$_2$), the sulfur analogue of CO$_2$. Under these conditions, para bromophenol is formed in good yield as the main product, which is why we started the bromination of phenol in the para position. The minor product is ortho bromophenol.

![Diagram of bromination of phenol](image)

**Electrophilic attack on phenols**

- OH groups on benzene rings are ortho, para-directing and activating
- You will get the right product if you start your arrows at a lone pair on the OH group

Benzene is less reactive than phenol towards electrophiles

To brominate phenol, all we had to do was to mix bromine and phenol—if we do this with benzene itself, nothing happens. We therefore say that, relative to benzene, the OH group in phenol activates the ring towards electrophilic attack. The OH group is activating and ortho, para-directing. Benzene will undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution as we have seen in a variety of reactions with catalysis by strong protic acids or Lewis acids such as AlCl$_3$. It is the donation of electrons on the oxygen into the aromatic ring that makes phenol so much more reactive than benzene towards electrophiles. Other groups that can donate electrons also activate and direct ortho, para. Anisole (methoxybenzene) is the ‘enol ether’ equivalent of phenol. It reacts faster than benzene with electrophiles.

The multiple chlorination of another activated compound, phenoxyacetic acid, leads to a useful product. This compound is made industrially by an $S_N2$ reaction (Chapter 17) on chloroacetic acid (made by chlorination of acetic acid, Chapter 21) with phenol in alkaline solution. Reaction occurs at the oxygen atom rather than on the ring.

![Diagram of chlorination of phenol](image)

The herbicide ‘2,4-D’ is 2,4-dichlorophenoxy acetic acid and is made, again industrially, by chlorination of the acid with two equivalents of chlorine. The first probably goes into the para position and the second into one of the equivalent ortho positions.
The phenoxide ion is even more reactive towards electrophilic attack than phenol. It will even react with such weak electrophiles as carbon dioxide. This reaction, known as the Kolbe–Schmitt process, is used industrially to prepare salicylic acid, a precursor in making aspirin.

The O\(^{-}\) substituent is ortho, para-directing but the electrophilic substitution step with CO\(_2\) gives mostly the ortho product so there must be some coordination between the sodium ion and two oxygen atoms, one from the phenoxyde and one from CO\(_2\). The electrophile is effectively delivered to the ortho position.

We shall return to reactions of phenols and phenyl ethers when we consider directing effects in electrophilic aromatic substitution in other reactions and in Friedel–Crafts reactions in particular.

A nitrogen lone pair activates even more strongly

Aniline (phenylamine) is even more reactive towards electrophiles than phenols, phenyl ethers, or phenoxyde ions. Because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen, the lone pair is higher in energy and so more available to interact with the π system than is the lone pair on oxygen (look back to p. 000 where we compare the reactivity of amides and esters). Reaction with bromine is very vigorous and rapidly gives 2,4,6-tribromoaniline. The mechanism is very similar to the bromination of phenol so we show only one ortho substitution.

The \(^1\)H NMR of aniline supports the increased electron density in the π system—the shifts for the aromatic protons are even smaller than those for phenol showing greater electron density in the ortho and para positions.
Just how good nitrogen is in donating electrons into the \( \pi \) system is shown by comparing the relative rates for the bromination of benzene, methoxybenzene (anisole), and \( N,N \)-dimethylaniline.

### Making amines less reactive

The high reactivity of aniline can actually be a problem. Suppose we wanted to put just one bromine atom on to the ring. With phenol, this is possible (p. 000)—if bromine is added slowly to a solution of phenol in carbon disulfide and the temperature is kept below 5 °C, the main product is para-bromo phenol. Not so if aniline is used—the main product is the triply substituted product.

How then could we prevent oversubstitution from occurring? What we need is a way to make aniline less reactive by preventing the nitrogen lone pair from interacting so strongly with the \( \pi \) system of the ring. Fortunately, it is very simple to do this. In Chapter 8 (p. 000) we saw how the nitrogen atom in an amide is much less basic than a normal amine because it is conjugated with the carbonyl group. This is the strategy that we will use here—simply acylate the amine to form an amide. The amide nitrogen can still donate electrons into the ring, but much less efficiently than the amine and so the electrophilic aromatic substitution is more controlled. After the reaction, the amide can be hydrolysed back to the amine.

The lone pair electrons on the nitrogen atom of the amide are conjugated with the carbonyl group as usual but they are also delocalized into the benzene ring, though more weakly than in the amine. Reaction still occurs in the ortho and para positions (mainly para) but it occurs once only.

Selectivity between ortho and para positions is determined by steric hindrance

Phenols and anilines react in the ortho and/or para positions for electronic reasons. These are the most important effects in deciding where an electrophilic substitution will occur on a benzene ring.
When it comes to choosing between ortho and para positions we need to consider steric effects as well. You will have noticed that we have seen one ortho selective reaction—the formation of salicylic acid from phenol—and several para selective reactions such as the bromination of an amide just discussed.

If the reactions occurred merely statistically, we should expect twice as much ortho as para product because there are two ortho positions. However, we should also expect more steric hindrance in ortho substitution since the new substituent must sit closely beside the one already there. With large substituents, such as the amide, steric hindrance will be significant and it is not surprising that we get more para product.

A closer look at the transition state

We haven’t given the whole picture as to why groups with a lone pair that can conjugate into the ring make the ring so much more reactive towards electrophilic attack. What we have said so far is that the starting material is more reactive because of the increased electron density in the ring. This is true, but what we should really be concerned with is the activation energy for the reaction. The energy profile for an electrophilic substitution reaction with ‘E+’ on a phenyl ether looks rather like the one we showed earlier for benzene.

We need to understand how the activation energy, $\Delta G^\ddagger$, changes when R is an electron-donating substituent and so we really need to know the relative energy of the transition state. We do not know the energy of the transition state, or even exactly what it looks like (Chapter 13), but we can assume that the transition state looks more like the intermediate than like the starting material because it is close in energy to the unstable intermediate. It will help to look at the different intermediates that could be formed by attacking in the ortho, meta, and para positions and try to work out which of these, and hence which transition states, might be higher in energy.

For an electrophile attacking a benzene ring containing an electron-donating group (here OR), the following intermediates are possible, depending on whether the electrophile attacks ortho, meta, or para to the group already present. The intermediate in para substitution is not drawn since it has the same stabilization as the ortho intermediate.
Each intermediate is stabilized by delocalization of the positive charge to three carbon atoms in the ring. If the electrophile attacks ortho (or para) to the electron-donating group, OR, the positive charge is further delocalized directly on to OR, but the intermediate in meta substitution does not enjoy this extra stabilization. We can assume that the extra stabilization in the intermediate in ortho (or para) substitution means that the transition state is similarly lower in energy than that in meta substitution. Not only is there more electron density in the ortho and para positions in the starting material (and hence a good interaction between these sites and the electrophile) but also the transition states resulting from ortho and para attack are lower in energy than the transition state for meta attack. These points both mean that $\Delta G^\circ$ is smaller for ortho/para attack and that the reaction is faster than meta attack.

**Alkyl benzenes react at the ortho and para positions: $\sigma$ donor substituents**

The rate constant for the bromination of toluene (methylbenzene) is about 4000 times that for benzene (this may sound like a lot, but the rate constant for N,N-dimethylaniline is $10^{14}$ times greater). The methyl group also directs electrophiles mostly into the ortho and para positions. These two observations together suggest that alkyl groups may also increase the electron density in the $\pi$ system of the benzene ring, specifically in the ortho and para positions, rather like a weakened version of an OR group.

There is a small inductive effect between any sp$^2$ and sp$^3$ carbon atoms (Chapter 8) but, if this were the only effect, then the carbon to which the alkyl group is attached (the ipso carbon) should have the greatest electron density, followed by the ortho carbons, then the meta carbons, and finally the carbon atom furthest from the substituent, in the para position.

The $^1$H NMR spectrum for toluene suggests that there is slightly more electron density in the para position than in the meta positions. All the shifts are smaller than those of benzene but not by much and the shielding is much less than it is in phenols or anilines. The methyl group donates electrons weakly by conjugation. In phenol, a lone pair on oxygen is conjugated into the $\pi$ system. In
toluene there is no lone pair but one of the C–H σ bonds can interact with the π system in a similar way. This interaction, known as σ conjugation, is not as good as the full conjugation of the oxygen lone pair, but it is certainly better than no interaction at all.

Just as the conjugation of the oxygen lone pair increases the electron density at the ortho and para positions, so too does σ conjugation, but more weakly. However, it does not provide another pair of electrons to act as the HOMO. Toluene uses π electrons, which are slightly higher in energy than those of benzene. It is best to regard alkyl benzenes as rather reactive benzenes. We have to draw the mechanism using the π electrons as the nucleophile.

The positive charge in the intermediate is delocalized over three carbons as usual and we can study the intermediate by protonation in superacid as we did with benzene. The result is more revealing because protonation actually occurs in the para position.

The ortho (to the Me group) carbon has a shift (139.5 p.p.m.) only 10 p.p.m. greater than that of benzene (129.7 p.p.m.) but the ipso and meta carbons have the very large shifts that we associate with cations. The charge is mainly delocalized to these carbons but the greatest charge is at the ipso carbon. Electrophilic attack occurs on alkyl benzenes so that the positive charge can be delocalized to the carbon bearing the alkyl group. This carbon is tertiary and so cations there are stable (Chapter 17) and they can enjoy the σ conjugation from the alkyl group. This condition is fulfilled if toluene is attacked at the ortho or para positions as you have seen but not if it is attacked at the meta position.

Now the charge is delocalized to the three carbon atoms that do not include the ipso carbon and no σ conjugation from the alkyl group is possible. The situation is no worse than that of benzene, but toluene reacts some 10^3 faster than benzene at the ortho and para positions. The stability of the transition states for electrophilic attack on toluene can again be modelled on these intermediates, so they follow the same pattern. The transition states for ortho and para attack have some positive charge at the ipso carbon but that for meta substitution does not.
The sulfonation of toluene

Direct sulfonation of toluene with concentrated sulfuric acid gives a mixture of ortho and para sulfonic acids from which about 40% of toluene para sulfonic acid can be isolated as the sodium salt. The free acid is important as a convenient solid acid, useful when a strong acid is needed to catalyse a reaction. Being much more easily handled than oily and corrosive sulfuric acid or syrupy phosphoric acid, it is useful for acetal formation (Chapter 14) and eliminations by the E1 mechanism on alcohols (Chapter 19). It is usually called tosic acid, TsOH, or PTSA (para toluene sulfonic acid).

We shall use SO₃ as the electrophile in this case and draw the intermediate with the charge at the ipso carbon to show the stabilization from the methyl group. We shall see later that these steps are reversible.

The toluene-para-sulfonate group (OTs) is important as a leaving group if you want to carry out an SN2 reaction on an alcohol (Chapter 17) and the acid chloride (tosyl chloride, TsCl) can be made from the acid in the usual way with PCl₅. It can also be made directly from toluene by sulfonation with chlorosulfonic acid ClSO₂OH. This reaction favours the ortho sulfonyl chloride which is isolated by distillation.

No Lewis acid is needed because chlorosulfonic acid is a very strong acid indeed and protonates itself to give the electrophile. This explains why OH is the leaving group rather than Cl and why chlorosulphonation rather than sulfonation is the result.

In drawing the mechanism, we again put the positive charge on the ipso atom. No treatment with NaCl is needed in this reaction as the major product (the ortho acid chloride) is isolated by distillation.

The preference for para product in the sulfonation and ortho product in the chlorosulphonation is the first hint that sulfonation is reversible and this point is discussed later. It is fortunate that the
ortho acid chloride is the major product in the chlorosulfonation because it is needed in the synthesis of saccharin, the first and still one of the best of the non-fattening sweeteners.

These are all reactions that you know, with the exception of the oxidation with KMnO₄ (Chapter 25) to carboxylic acids but the formation of sulfonamides is like that of ordinary amides. This synthesis is discussed in Chapter 25.

Electronegative substituents give meta products

A few substituents (Z) exert an electronic effect on the benzene ring simply by polarization of the Ar–Z σ bond because of the electronegativity of Z. The most important is the CF₃ group, but ammonium (R₃N⁺) and phosphonium (R₃P⁺) fall into the same category. The Ar–N⁺ and Ar–P⁺ bonds are obviously polarized towards the positively charged heteroatom and the Ar–C bond in Ar–CF₃ is polarized towards the CF₃ group because of the three very electronegative fluorine atoms polarizing the C–F bonds so much that the Ar–C bond is polarized too.

These groups direct electrophiles to the meta position and reduce reactivity. Nitration of trifluoromethyl benzene gives a nearly quantitative yield of meta nitro compound so there cannot be any significant ortho or para by-products. This reaction is important because reduction of the product (Chapter 24) gives the amine, also in very good yield.

In drawing the mechanism we need to produce the intermediate in which the cation is not delocalized to the carbon atom bearing the electron-withdrawing group. In other words, the situation with electron-withdrawing CF₃ is the opposite to that with electron-donating CH₃. The CF₃ group is deactivating and meta-directing.

In the nitration of the phenyltrimethylammonium ion, 90% of the product is meta-substituted (with 10% para) and kinetic studies show that the nitration proceeds approximately 10⁷ times more slowly than the nitration of benzene.
Some substituents withdraw electrons by conjugation

Aromatic nitration is important, because it is a convenient way of adding an amino group to the ring and because it stops cleanly after one nitro group has been added. Further nitration is possible but stronger conditions must be used—fuming nitric acid instead of normal concentrated nitric acid and the mixture refluxed at around 100 °C. The second nitro group is introduced \textit{meta} to the first, that is, the nitro group is deactivating and \textit{meta}-directing.

The nitro group is conjugated with the \( \pi \) system of the benzene ring and is strongly electron-\textit{withdrawing}—and it withdraws electrons specifically from the \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions. We can use curly arrows to show this.

The nitro group withdraws electron density from the \( \pi \) system of the ring thereby making the ring less reactive towards something wanting electrons, an electrophile. Hence the nitro group is deactivating towards electrophilic attack. Since more electron density is removed from the \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions, the least electron-deficient position is the \textit{meta} position. Hence the nitro group is \textit{meta}-directing. In the nitration of benzene, it is much harder to nitrate a second time and, when we insist, the second nitro group goes in \textit{meta} to the first.

Other reactions go the same way so that bromination of nitrobenzene gives \textit{meta}-bromo-nitrobenzene in good yield. The combination of bromine and iron powder provides the necessary Lewis acid (FeBr$_3$) while the high temperature needed for this unfavourable reaction is easily achieved as the boiling point of nitrobenzene is over 200 °C.

In drawing the mechanism it is best to draw the intermediate and to emphasize that the positive charge must not be delocalized to the carbon atom bearing the nitro group.

Nitro is just one of a number of groups that are also deactivating towards electrophiles and \textit{meta}-directing because of electron withdrawal by conjugation. These include carbonyl groups (aldehydes, ketones, esters, etc.), cyanides, and sulfonates and their \textsuperscript{1}H NMR shifts confirm that they remove electrons from the \textit{ortho} and \textit{para} positions.
Points to note:

- Each of the compounds contains the unit Ph–X=Y, where Y is an electronegative element, usually oxygen.
- In each compound, all the protons resonate further downfield relative to benzene (that is, they have larger chemical shifts).
- The protons are less shielded than those of benzene because the electron density at carbon is less.
- The protons in the meta position have the smallest shift and so the greatest electron density.

Nitro is the most electron-withdrawing of these groups and some of the other compounds are nearly as reactive (in the meta position, of course) as benzene itself. It is easy to nitrate methyl benzoate and the m-nitro ester can then be hydrolysed to m-nitrobenzoic acid very easily.

An interesting example of a reaction with a ketone is the sulfonation of anthraquinone. Many dyestuffs contain this unit and the sulfonate group makes them soluble in water. Oleum at 160 °C must be used for the sulfonation, which goes in one of the four equivalent positions on the two benzene rings, meta to one carbonyl group but para to the other.

The yield is not wonderful and the main by-product is unchanged anthraquinone showing how unreactive this compound is even under these forcing conditions. In Chapter 7 we saw how dyes are highly conjugated molecules, often containing aromatic rings. Here are two common water-soluble dyes containing sulfonate groups.

**Halogens (F, Cl, Br, and I) both withdraw and donate electrons**

The halogens deactivate the ring towards electrophilic attack but direct ortho and para. The only way this makes sense is if there are two opposing effects—electron donation by conjugation and electron withdrawal by induction. The halogen has three lone pairs, one of which may conjugate with the ring.
just like in phenol or aniline. However, there are two mismatching aspects to this conjugation: lone pair orbital size and electronegativity.

When Cl, Br, or I is the substituent, there is a size mismatch, and therefore a poor overlap, between the 2p orbitals from the carbon atoms and the p orbitals from the halogen (3p for chlorine, 4p for bromine, and 5p for iodine). This size mismatch is clearly illustrated by comparing the reactivities of aniline and chlorobenzene: chlorine and nitrogen have approximately the same electronegativity, but aniline is much more reactive than chlorobenzene because of the better overlap between the carbon and nitrogen 2p orbitals.

Fluorine 2p orbitals are the right size to overlap well with the carbon 2p orbitals, but the orbitals of fluorine are much lower in energy than the orbitals of carbon since fluorine is so electronegative. Also, the more electronegative a substituent, the better it is at withdrawing electrons by induction. When we looked at aniline and phenol, we didn’t mention any electron withdrawal by induction, even though both oxygen and nitrogen are very electronegative. The conjugative electron donation was clearly more important since both compounds are much more reactive towards electrophiles than benzene. However, we did point out that aniline is more reactive than phenol because nitrogen is less electronegative than oxygen and so better able to donate electrons into the \( \pi \) system.

With this in mind, how would you expect fluorobenzene to react? Most electron density is removed first from the ortho positions by induction, then from the meta positions, and then from the para position. Any conjugation of the lone pairs on fluorine with the \( \pi \) system would increase the electron density in the ortho and para positions. Both effects favour the para position and this is where most substitution occurs. But is the ring more or less reactive than benzene? This is hard to say and the honest answer is that sometimes fluorobenzene is more reactive in the para position than benzene (for example, in proton exchange and in acetylation—see later) and sometimes it is less reactive than benzene (for example, in nitration). In all cases, fluorobenzene is significantly more reactive than the other halobenzenes. We appreciate that this is a rather surprising conclusion, but the evidence supports it.

Data for the rate and the products of nitration of halobenzenes show these opposing effects clearly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Products formed (%)</th>
<th>Nitration rate (relative to benzene)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ortho</td>
<td>meta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhF</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhCl</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhBr</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhI</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The percentage of the ortho product increases from fluorobenzene to iodo-benzene. We might have expected the amount to decrease as the size of the halide increases because of increased steric hindrance at the ortho position but this is clearly not the case. The series can be explained by the greater inductive effect of the more electronegative atoms (F, Cl) withdrawing electron density mostly from the ortho positions.

- The relative rates follow a U-shaped sequence; fluorobenzene nitrates most quickly (but not as fast as benzene), followed by iodo-, then chloro-, and then bromo-benzenes. This is a result of two opposing effects: electron donation by conjugation and electron withdrawal by inductive effect.
In practical terms, it is usually possible to get high yields of para products from these reactions. Both nitration and sulfonation of bromobenzene give enough material to make the synthesis worthwhile. Though mixtures of products are always bad in a synthesis, electrophilic aromatic substitution is usually simple to carry out on a large enough scale to make separation of the major product a workable method.

![Reactions](image)

A 68% yield of sodium p-bromobenzenesulfonate can be achieved by recrystallization of the sodium salt from water and a 70% yield of p-bromonitrobenzene by separation from the ortho isomer by recrystallization from EtOH.

### Summary of directing and activating effects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electronic effect</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Activation</th>
<th>Direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>donation by conjugation</td>
<td>–NR₂, –OR</td>
<td>very activating</td>
<td>ortho, para only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donation by inductive effect</td>
<td>alkyl</td>
<td>activating</td>
<td>mostly ortho, para but some meta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donation by conjugation and</td>
<td>F, Cl, Br, and I</td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>ortho and (mostly) para</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdrawal by inductive effect</td>
<td>–CF₃, –NR₃⁺</td>
<td>deactivating</td>
<td>meta only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdrawal by inductive effect</td>
<td>–NO₂, –CN, –COR, –SO₃R</td>
<td>very deactivating</td>
<td>meta only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Why do some reactions stop cleanly at monosubstitution?

Reactions such as nitration, sulfonation, and Friedel–Crafts acylation add a very deactivating substituent. They stop cleanly after a single substitution unless there is also a strongly activating substituent. Even then it may be possible to stop after a single substitution. Nitration of phenol is difficult to control because the OH group is very activating and because concentrated nitric acid oxidizes phenol. The solution is to use dilute nitric acid. The concentration of NO₂⁺ will be small but that does not matter with such a reactive benzene ring.

![Reactions](image)

The product is a mixture of ortho- and para-nitrophenol from which the ortho compound can be separated by steam distillation. A strong intramolecular hydrogen bond reduces the availability of the OH group for intermolecular hydrogen bonds so the ortho compound has a lower boiling point. The remaining para-nitrophenol is used in the manufacture of the painkiller paracetamol.
Weakly electron-withdrawing substituents like the halogens can be added once, but multiple substitution is common with strongly activating substituents like OH and NH₂. When electron-donating substituents are added, multiple substitution is always a threat. As it happens, this threat is not serious as there are no good reagents for adding strongly activating substituents such as ‘HO⁺’ or ‘H₂N⁺’ to aromatic systems. Now you see why adding nitrogen as the deactivating nitro group is such an advantage. The only reactions of this kind where multiple substitution is a genuine problem are likely to be Friedel–Crafts alkylation reactions. Preparation of diphenylmethane from benzene and benzyl chloride is a fine reaction but the product has two benzene rings, each more reactive than benzene itself. A 50% yield is the best we can do and that requires a large excess of benzene to ensure that it competes successfully with the product for the reagent.

We have drawn the substitution at the benzylic centre as an SN₂ reaction as it would normally be with a primary alkyl halide, though it could be SN₁ in this case as the benzylic cation is stable. Friedel–Crafts alkylation works well with relatively stable cations especially tertiary cations. The cation can be generated in a number of ways such as the protonation of an alkene, the acid-catalysed decomposition of a tertiary alcohol, or the Lewis-acid-catalysed decomposition of a τ-alkyl chloride.

We can, in a qualitative way, combine the directing effects of two or more substituents. In some cases the substituents both direct to the same positions, as in the syntheses of bromoxynil and ioxynil, contact herbicides especially used in spring cereals to control weeds resistant to other weedkillers. They are both synthesized from p-hydroxybenzaldehyde by halogenation. The aldehyde directs meta and the OH group directs ortho so they both direct to the same position. The aldehyde is deactivating but the OH is activating.
The reaction with NH₂OH is the formation of an oxime from the aldehyde and hydroxylamine and was dealt with in Chapter 14. The reaction with P₂O₅ is a dehydration—phosphorus is used to remove water from the oxime.

In other cases substituents compete by directing to different positions. For example, in the synthesis of the food preservative BHT (p. 000) from 4-methylphenol (p-cresol) by a Friedel–Crafts alkylation, the methyl and OH groups each direct ortho to themselves. The –OH group is much more powerfully directing than the methyl group because it provides an extra pair of electrons, so it ‘wins’ and directs the electrophile (a t-butyl cation) ortho to itself. The t-butyl cation can be made from the alkene or t-butanol with protic acid or from t-butyl chloride with AlCl₃.

Even a watered-down activating group like the amide –NHCOMe, which provides an extra pair of electrons, will ‘win’ over a deactivating group or an activating alkyl group. Bromination of this amide goes ortho to the –NHCOMe group but meta to the methyl group.

When looking at any compound where competition is an issue it is sensible to consider electronic effects first and then steric effects. For electronic effects, in general, any activating effects are more important than deactivating ones. For example, the aldehyde below has three groups—two methoxy groups that direct ortho and para and an aldehyde that directs meta.

---

**BHT—a case of mistaken identity?**

When BHT and other similar phenols were first prepared in the 1940s, chemists were not sure of their structures. The chemical formulae could be determined by elemental analysis, but NMR, which would have instantly revealed the structure, had not yet been discovered. The problem arose because the compound exhibited none of the normal reactions or ‘tests’ for phenols; for example, it was not soluble in alkali. The chemists thought the second t-butyl group had added to oxygen to make an ether. BHT does not behave like other phenols because the –OH group is hindered by the two large t-butyl groups.

Even a watered-down activating group like the amide –NHCOMe, which provides an extra pair of electrons, will ‘win’ over a deactivating group or an activating alkyl group. Bromination of this amide goes ortho to the –NHCOMe group but meta to the methyl group.

---

If you are in a bar and someone picks a fight with you, it is no help that an inoffensive little man in the corner would prefer not to pick a fight. Aggressive –NR₂ and –OR groups are not much affected by inoffensive –Br or carbonyl groups in another corner of the molecule.
Despite the fact that the aldehyde group withdraws electron density from positions 2 and 6, C6 is still the position for nitration. The activating methoxy groups dominate electronically and the choice is really between C2, C5, and C6. Now consider steric factors—the –OMe groups block the positions ortho to them more than the carbonyl does because reaction at C2 or C5 would lead to three adjacent substituents which is why substitution occurs at position 6.

**Review of important reactions including selectivity**

We shall now return to the main reactions and consider important examples including selectivity.

**Sulfonation**

The exact nature of the electrophile in sulfonation reactions seems to vary with the amount of water present. Certainly for oleum (fuming sulfuric acid, concentrated sulfuric acid with added sulfur trioxide) and solutions of sulfur trioxide in organic solvents, the electrophile is sulfur trioxide itself, SO₃. With more water around, H₃SO₄ and even H₂S₂O₇ have been suggested. One important difference between sulfonation and other examples of electrophilic substitution is that sulfonation is reversible. This can be useful because large sulfonic acid groups can act as blocking groups and be removed later. Mixing bromine and phenol at low temperatures produces mainly p-bromophenol. At higher temperatures, the tribromo product is formed. The ortho-substituted product can be made with the aid of sulfonation.

In stage 1 the phenol is sulfonated twice—the first sulfonic acid group (which adds para to the OH group) deactivates the ring, making the introduction of the second group (which goes ortho to the OH and meta to the first sulfonic acid) harder and that of the third group harder still, which is why we can isolate the disulfonated phenol. In the second stage, the bromination, the OH directs to the ortho and para positions, but only one ortho position is vacant, so the bromine attacks there. Sodium hydroxide is needed to deprotonate the sulfonic acid groups to make them less deactivating. The sulfonation reaction is reversible, and in the third stage it is possible to drive the reaction over by distilling out relatively volatile 2-bromophenol.

Direct sulfonation of aromatic amines is even possible. This is very surprising because in sulfuric acid essentially all the amine will be protonated. The protonated amine would react in the meta position just like Ph—NMe⁺ but in these reactions the para-sulfonic acid is formed.

There are two possible explanations for this. Either the very tiny amount of unprotonated amine reacts very rapidly with SO₃ in the para position or the reaction is reversible and the para-sulfonic acid is formed because it is stabilized by delocalization and least hindered. The product is important because the amides derived from it (sulfanilamides) were the first antibiotics, the ‘sulfa’ drugs.
Aromatic nitration and diazo-coupling

We have already described how nitration leads eventually to aromatic amines by reduction of the nitro group. In the next chapter you will meet the further development of these amines into diazonium salts as reagents for nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the $S_{N1}$ mechanism with loss of nitrogen. In this chapter we need to address their potential for electrophilic aromatic substitution without the loss of nitrogen as this leads to the important azo dyes. Treatment of the amine with nitrous acid ($\text{HON}=\text{O}$) at around 0 °C gives the diazonium salt.

These diazonium salts are good electrophiles for activated aromatic rings, such as amines and phenols, and this is how azo dyes are prepared. Diazotization of the salt of sulfanilic acid, which we have just made by sulfonation of aniline, gives an inner salt that combines with $N,N$-dimethylaniline to form the water-soluble dye, methyl orange.

The electrophilic substitution is straightforward, occurring in the $\text{para}$ position on the activated hindered dialkylamine. Notice that nucleophilic attack must occur on the end nitrogen atom of the diazonium salt to avoid forming pentavalent nitrogen.

Oxygen and nitrogen can also complex to the catalyst

In Friedel–Crafts alkylation using alkenes and alcohols with strong acids, OH and NH$_2$ groups activate towards electrophilic attack and direct to the $\text{ortho}$ or $\text{para}$ positions. However, in Friedel–Crafts alkylations using $t$-alkyl chlorides and AlCl$_3$, reaction does not proceed much faster than the alkylation of unsubstituted benzene, that is, the $\text{--OH}$ group seems to have very little effect on the reaction. This is because oxygen can also complex with the Lewis acid. The Friedel–Crafts alkylation of amines is even worse and normally does not proceed at all—nitrogen forms an even stronger complex with the Lewis acid than oxygen does. This complex then withdraws electrons from the ring, rather than donating electrons as the neutral nitrogen did.

Friedel–Crafts alkylations are especially useful for forming polycyclic compounds. These are usually intramolecular reactions in which the electrophile and the aromatic system are all part of the
same compound. Fairly elaborate examples are discussed in Chapter 51. A simple example reveals the basic plan: an intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation that will be faster than any other, inevitably intermolecular, side reaction.

![Diagram of Friedel–Crafts alkylation](image)

**Friedel–Crafts alkylation cannot be used with primary alkyl halides**

Even if you successfully prevent multiple substitution from occurring, there is a second and more serious problem—the alkyl cations often rearrange to yield more stable cations. We shall look into such rearrangements more closely in Chapter 37 but for the moment we shall just consider Friedel–Crafts alkylation with primary halides.

![Diagram of Friedel–Crafts alkylation](image)

The major product is isopropyl benzene—approximately twice as much as \( n \)-propyl benzene. The rearrangement in this mechanism occurs because primary cations do not exist in solution (Chapter 17) so that the alkyl halide–AlCl₃ complex must either react directly or rearrange to the more stable secondary carbocation.

![Diagram of Friedel–Crafts alkylation](image)

**Friedel–Crafts acylation is much more reliable**

Of more use than Friedel–Crafts alkylation is Friedel–Crafts acylation, the introduction of an acyl group (RCO–) on to the ring. Instead of using an alkyl chloride, an acyl chloride (acid chloride) or an acid anhydride is used together with the Lewis acid to produce the reactive acylium ion. We have seen an acid chloride in action (p. 000); here is an anhydride.

![Diagram of Friedel–Crafts acylation](image)

The acylium ion is then attacked by the aromatic system in the usual way. Multiple substitution is rarely a problem because the deactivated conjugated ketone is much less reactive than benzene.
Cyclic anhydrides can be used to make keto-acids. Either carbonyl group is used for the acylation and the other becomes an AlCl₃ complex until work-up. Thus 3-benzoylpropanoic acid can be prepared from benzene and succinic anhydride.

The advantages of acylation over alkylation
Two problems in Friedel–Crafts alkylation do not arise with acylation.

- The acyl group in the product withdraws electrons from the π system making multiple substitutions harder. Indeed, if the ring is too deactivated to start off with, Friedel–Crafts acylation may not be possible at all—nitrobenzene is inert to Friedel–Crafts acylation and is often used as a solvent for these reactions.
- Rearrangements are also no longer a problem because the electrophile, the acylium cation, is already relatively stable.

Because the acylation reaction is so much more reliable than Friedel–Crafts alkylation, a common method to alkylate is actually to acylate first and then reduce the carbonyl to a methylene group (–CH₂–). For example, the 3-benzoylpropanoic acid just made can be reduced to 4-phenylbutanoic acid using acid and zinc amalgam. This sort of reaction is discussed in Chapter 24. We could go one step further with the 4-phenylbutanoic acid and do an intramolecular Friedel–Crafts acylation. Intramolecular reactions are easy to do and, when starting from carboxylic acids, polyphosphoric acid (represented in the diagram as H₃PO₄) is commonly used to make the OH group into a better leaving group.

One-carbon electrophiles are difficult to use
When R–C≡O⁺ is used as the electrophile a ketone is produced. If an aldehyde were wanted, H–C≡O⁺ would have to be used but it cannot be made from HCOCI because that is unstable. Instead, it can be generated by passing carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride through a mixture of the aromatic hydrocarbon, a Lewis acid, and a co-catalyst, usually copper (I) chloride. Copper(I) chloride is known to form a complex with carbon monoxide and this probably speeds up the protonation step.

This reaction, known as the Gatterman–Koch reaction, does not work with phenolic or amino aromatic species due to complex formation with the Lewis acid. It does work well with aromatic hydrocarbons and is used industrially to prepare benzaldehyde and, as here, p-tolualdehyde.
For more reactive aromatic systems such as phenols (but still not amines) a variation of this reaction, called the Gatterman reaction, can be useful in preparing aldehydes. Instead of using protonated carbon monoxide, protonated hydrogen cyanide is used (the two are isoelectronic). The reaction goes via an imine intermediate, ArCH=NH, which under the conditions of the reaction is hydrolysed to the aldehyde (see p. 000). When such reactive aromatic species as phenols are involved, the Lewis acid need not be so strong and zinc chloride is often used. With less reactive systems, AlCl₃ is needed. The zinc chloride can be conveniently generated from zinc cyanide, Zn(CN)₂, and HCl. This has the added advantage of also generating the necessary HCN in situ as well.

In a variation of the Gatterman reaction an alkyl cyanide RCN is used in place of HCN as a useful way of preparing ketones from reactive aromatic species that do not react well under Friedel–Crafts conditions. The electrophile involved is effectively R–C≡NH⁺, although, perhaps, the imino chloride, R(C=NH)Cl, the analogue of an acyl chloride, RCOCl, is also involved. As in the Gatterman reaction, the imine is an intermediate.

These reactions work even when there are three hydroxyls on the benzene ring.

We have already seen how salicylic acid can be made by reaction of the sodium salt of phenol (PhONa) with CO₂. More important than these reactions is chloromethylation, a way of adding a single carbon atom at the alcohol oxidation level. A combination of formaldehyde (CH₂=O) and HCl provides the one-carbon electrophile.

Chloromethylation is an efficient process but it has a serious drawback. Small amounts of the very carcinogenic (cancer-causing) bis(chloromethyl)ether are formed in the reaction mixture so that the process has fallen out of favour.

---

**One-carbon electrophiles: summary of methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reaction</th>
<th>Substrate</th>
<th>Reagents</th>
<th>Electrophile</th>
<th>Intermediate</th>
<th>Product</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gatterman–Koch</td>
<td>hydrocarbons</td>
<td>CO, HCl, AlCl₃, CuCl</td>
<td>H–C≡O⁺</td>
<td>ArCHO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatterman</td>
<td>phenols</td>
<td>Zn(CN)₂, HCl</td>
<td>H–C≡NH⁺</td>
<td>ArCH=NH</td>
<td>ArCHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoesch</td>
<td>phenols</td>
<td>RCN, HCl, Zn(II)</td>
<td>R–C≡NH⁺</td>
<td>ArRC=NH</td>
<td>ArCOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chloromethylation</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>CH₂=O, HCl</td>
<td>H₂C=OH⁺</td>
<td>ArCH₂OH</td>
<td>ArCH₂Cl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kolbé–Schmidt</td>
<td>phenoxides</td>
<td>NaOH, CO₂</td>
<td>CO₂</td>
<td>ArCO₂Na</td>
<td>ArCO₂H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reimer–Tiemann</td>
<td>phenols</td>
<td>CHCl₃, NaOH</td>
<td>CCl₂</td>
<td>ArCHCl₂</td>
<td>ArCHO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

The Reimer–Tiemann reaction has dichlorocarbene (CCl₂) as an intermediate and is discussed in Chapter 40.
Electrophilic substitution is the usual route to substituted aromatic compounds

A group of potent anti-leukaemia compounds (the maytansinoids) has an aromatic ring as part of a complex large-ring structure. The synthesis of these molecules could be imagined as starting from a simple aromatic ring with four different substituents in the right positions.

One complete synthesis is shown as the conclusion of this chapter. It is here to demonstrate that manipulation of simple aromatic rings is very much part of modern organic chemistry and because almost all the reactions are ones you have seen so far in the book.

Points to notice:

1. The starting material was chosen because it was cheap. It has the right number of substituents in the right places but only one (MeO–) is still there at the end
2. Nitration is used to put in the nitrogen atom as NO₂, later reduced to the required amino group. The nitro group goes in ortho to the OH group and meta to the CO₂Me group as you might have predicted
3. Step 3, the hydrolysis of the ester, and step 6, amide formation, are familiar reactions
4. Step 2, the replacement of OH by Cl, will be discussed in Chapter 23 as it is a nucleophilic aromatic substitution
5. Step 4 is an unusual type of electrophilic aromatic substitution. The leaving group is CO₂ rather than the usual proton and occurs at the only place it can (though it is meta to NO₂ and para to Cl)
6 The last step is a way to achieve monomethylation of an amino group. Problem 00 gives you a chance to try your hand at a mechanism.

### Problems

1. All you have to do is to spot the aromatic rings in these compounds. It may not be as easy as you think and you should state some reasons for your choice!

   **[Image of compounds, such as thyroxine, aklavinone, colchicine, callistephan, and methoxatrin.](image)***

2. Just to remind you—write out a detailed mechanism for these steps.

   ![Mechanism](image)

   In a standard nitration reaction with, say, HNO₃ and H₂SO₄, each of these compounds forms a single mono-nitration product. What is its structure? Justify your answer with a mechanism.

3. Write mechanisms for these reactions, justifying the position of substitution.

   **(i)**
   ![Mechanism](image)

   **(ii)**
   ![Mechanism](image)

4. How reactive are the different sites in toluene? Nitration of toluene produces the three possible products in the ratios shown. What would be the ratio of products if all sites were equally reactive? What is the actual relative reactivity of the three sites? (You could express this as $x:y:1$ or as $a:b:c$ where $a + b + c = 100$.) Comment on the ratio you deduce.

   ![Mechanism](image)
5. Revision problem. The local anaesthetic proparacaine is made by this sequence of reactions. Deduce a structure for each product. Draw a mechanism for each step and explain why it gives that particular product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{1. } & \text{HNO}_3 \quad 2 \quad \text{base} \quad n-\text{PrCl} \quad 3 \quad \text{SOCl}_2 \quad 4 \\
& \text{HO} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{NO}_2 \quad \text{Et}_2\text{NH} \\
& \text{Et}_2\text{NH} \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad \text{H}_2/\text{Pd/C} \quad \text{proparacaine}
\end{align*}
\]

6. In the chapter, we established that electron-withdrawing groups direct meta. Among such reactions is the nitration of trifluoromethyl benzene. Draw out the detailed mechanism for this reaction and also for a reaction that does not happen—the nitration of the same compound in the para position. Draw all the delocalized structures of the intermediates and convince yourself that the intermediate for para substitution is destabilized by the CF₃ group while that for meta substitution is not.

\[
\begin{align*}
& \text{F}_3\text{C} \quad \text{HNO}_3 \quad \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \\
& \text{F}_3\text{C} \quad \text{HNO}_3 \quad \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \\
& \text{F}_3\text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

7. Draw mechanisms for the following reactions and explain the position(s) of substitution.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} \quad \text{HNO}_3 \quad \text{Br}_2 \\
\text{OH} \quad \text{NO}_2 \\
\text{Br} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \\
\end{align*}
\]

8. Nitration of these compounds gives products with the proton NMR spectra shown. Deduce the structures of the products from the NMR and explain the position of substitution.

\[
\begin{align*}
\delta_H & = 7.77 \text{ (4H, d, J 10)} \\
& = 8.26 \text{ (4H, d, J 10)} \\
\delta_H & = 7.6 \text{ (1H, d, J 10)} \\
& = 8.1 \text{ (1H, dd, J 10, 2)} \\
& = 8.3 \text{ (1H, d, J 2)} \\
\delta_H & = 7.15 \text{ (2H, dd, J 7,8)} \\
& = 8.19 \text{ (2H, dd, J 6,8)}
\end{align*}
\]

9. Attempted Friedel–Crafts acylation of benzene with t-BuCOCl gives some of the expected ketone, as a minor product, and also some t-butyl benzene, but the major product is the disubstituted compound C. Explain how these compounds are formed and suggest the order in which the two substituents are added to form compound C.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{A} & \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{B} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{C} & \quad \text{O}
\end{align*}
\]

10. Draw mechanisms for the following reactions.

(a) 

(b) 

(c) 

(d)
11. Nitration of this aromatic heterocycle with the usual mixture of HNO₃ and H₂SO₄ gives a product whose NMR spectrum is given. Though you have not yet met heterocycles you should be able to deduce the structure of the product and explain why it is formed.

![Nitration reaction diagram]

\[ \text{C₆H₅N₂O₂} \]
- δ₁ 3.04 (2H, t, J 7Hz)
- 3.68 (2H, t, J 7Hz)
- 6.45 (1H, d, J 8Hz)
- 7.28 (1H, broad s)
- 7.81 (1H, d, J 1 Hz)
- 7.90 (1H, dd, J 8, 1 Hz)

12. Explain the position of substitution in the following reactions and predict the structure of the final product. Why is a Lewis acid necessary for the second bromination but not for the first?

(a) 
![Chemical structure diagram]

(b) 
![Chemical structure diagram]

13. Suggest mechanisms for the methylation step at the end of the synthesis that concludes the chapter. Why is it necessary to go to these lengths rather than just react with Mel?

![Mechanism diagram]

14. So what happens if we force phenol to react again with bromine? Will reaction then occur in the meta positions? It is possible to brominate 2,4,6-tribromophenol if we use bromine in acetic acid. Account for the formation of the product.

![Bromination reaction]

2,4,6-tribromophenol

This product can be used for bromination as in the monobromination of this amine. Suggest a mechanism and explain the selectivity.

![Bromination reaction]

90% yield

80% yield
This chapter is also the last chapter in the second cycle of chapters within this book, with which we complete our survey of the important elementary types of organic reactions. We follow it with two review chapters, before looking in more detail at enolate chemistry and how to make molecules.

**Introduction—electrophilic alkenes**

Alkenes are nucleophilic. Almost regardless of their substituents, they react with electrophiles like bromine to form adducts in which the π bond of the alkene has been replaced by two σ bonds.

![Diagram of bromination reaction]

Even when the alkene is conjugated with an electron-withdrawing group, bromine addition still occurs, though less readily. As we said, alkenes are nucleophilic.
But this last type of alkene is also electrophilic. The carbonyl group dominates the alkene in the interaction between the two groups and nucleophiles add so that the enolate is an intermediate and the negative charge resulting from conjugate addition is stabilized by conjugation. This intermediate is protonated on carbon to give the conjugate addition product—the result of a nucleophilic addition of HX to the alkene. The final product has an unchanged carbonyl group but without that carbonyl group no nucleophilic addition could have occurred.

We are going to extend this idea now and show that other groups besides the carbonyl group can promote nucleophilic addition to alkenes and then extend the idea further into the reactions of allylic and aromatic compounds. First of all we are going to look at other conjugating electron-withdrawing groups.

**Nucleophilic conjugate addition to alkenes**

**Unsaturated nitriles**

The essential requirement for these reactions is a conjugating substituent that is about as anion-stabilizing as a carbonyl group. One we have seen before is cyanide and we shall look first at conjugated nitriles. The simplest is acrylonitrile. This compound adds amines readily.

The amine first attacks the alkene in a typical conjugate addition to make a stable anion. Notice that the nucleophile must attack the far end of the alkene to do this—attack next to the electron-withdrawing group would not work.

The anion can have its charge drawn on the nitrogen atom but it is really delocalized over the two neighbouring carbon atoms and is very like an enolate. Do not be put off by the odd appearance of the ‘enolate’. The dot between the two double bonds is a reminder that there is a linear sp carbon atom at this point.

Protonation at carbon restores the cyanide and gives the product—an amino-nitrile. The whole process adds a 2-cyano-ethyl group to the amine and is known industrially as **cyanoethylation**.

With a primary amine, the reaction need not stop at that stage as the product is still nucleophilic and a second addition can occur to replace the second hydrogen atom on nitrogen.
Other elements add too. Phenyl phosphine can undergo a double addition just as in the last example, but alcohols can add only once.

If there is a competition between a second row (for example, N or O) and a third row (for example, S or P) element, the third row element normally wins. The lone pair electrons are of higher energy \( (3p^3) \) in the third-row element than in the second-row element \( (2p^3) \).

The cyanide group is a typical group for promoting conjugate addition. It is possible for nucleophiles to attack directly at the CN group but it is not very electrophilic so that these reactions tend to be thermodynamically controlled and attack is preferred in the conjugate position.

**Unsaturated nitro compounds**

The nitro group \( (NO_2) \) is extremely electron-withdrawing—about twice as electron-withdrawing as a carbonyl group. This should theoretically make it prefer direct attack rather than conjugate attack but in practice direct attack at \( NO_2 \) is almost unknown. The products from direct attack are very unstable compounds and revert to starting materials easily. You may rely on conjugate addition to nitro-alkenes.

The intermediate is rather like an enolate anion, with a negatively charged oxygen atom conjugated to a \( (N=C) \) double bond. It reacts like an enolate, picking up a proton on carbon to re-form the nitro group and give a stable product—the result of conjugate addition of HX. Here is the full mechanism with borohydride acting as the nucleophile, reducing the nitroalkene to a nitroalkane.
Michael acceptors are dangerous

Any compound capable of conjugate addition (a Michael acceptor—conjugate additions are also known as Michael additions) is potentially dangerous to living things. Even simple compounds like ethyl acrylate are labelled 'cancer suspect agent'. They attack enzymes, particularly the vital DNA polymerase involved in cell division by conjugate addition to thiol and amino groups in the enzyme.

Any compound that is good at conjugate addition is probably toxic and carcinogenic (cancer-causing). In Chapter 10, we mentioned some anticancer drugs that work by this same mechanism, but do it more selectively in rapidly proliferating cancer cells. Most Michael acceptors are less benign, and damage the DNA replication process unsynergically. Fortunately, we are offered some degree of protection by an important compound present in most tissues. The compound is glutathione, a tripeptide—a compound made from three amino acids. We shall discuss such compounds in more detail later in the book (Chapter 49) but notice for the moment that this compound can be divided into three at the two amide bonds.

The business end of glutathione is the thiol (SH) group, which scavenges carcinogenic compounds by conjugate addition. If we use an ‘exomethylene lactone’—a highly reactive Michael acceptor—as an example and represent glutathione as RCH2SH, you can see the sort of thing that happens.

If the normally abundant glutathione is removed by such processes as oxidation (Chapter 46) and cannot any longer scavenge toxins, then the organism is in danger.

This is one reason why vitamin C is so beneficial—it removes stray oxidizing agents and protects the supply of glutathione. Keep eating the fruit and vegetables!

Other nucleophiles in conjugate addition

Since we introduced conjugate addition in Chapter 10, a number of new reactions have been covered and a number of new nucleophiles introduced. Some of these can lead to conjugate addition. One important new reaction is electrophilic aromatic substitution, which we met in the last chapter. Michael acceptors can combine with Lewis acids to provide electrophiles for reactions with benzene derivatives.

The Lewis acid (AlCl3) must combine with the carboxylic acid to create a reactive electrophile that is attacked by a benzene molecule. The first step is just like the reactions of benzene we discussed in the last chapter.
The next step must be the restoration of the aromaticity of the ring by the removal of the proton at the site of attack. This gives the aluminium enolate of the ketone. There is a proton now available to convert the aluminium enolate to the ketone and this is the final product. This is a useful reaction because it has added a benzene ring to a quaternary carbon atom—conjugate addition has overcome steric hindrance.

Another less-common class of nucleophile that does conjugate addition is nitriles. We used unsaturated nitriles a moment ago as Michael acceptors, and nitriles are usually electrophiles rather than nucleophiles. We did see in Chapter 17 that nitriles will act as nucleophiles in the SN1 reaction (the Ritter reaction). The next reaction is related to the Ritter reaction.

Protonation of the carbonyl group gives a very electrophilic cation that is reactive enough to persuade the nitrile to do conjugate addition.

Tautomerization of the enol to a ketone, addition of water, and another tautomerization to an amide complete the mechanism. Notice here that a nitrogen has been added to a tertiary centre—this is not an easy result to accomplish and it is worth noting that conjugate addition is a good way to make bonds to crowded centres.

**Conjugate substitution reactions**

Just as direct addition to $\text{C}=\text{O}$ (Chapter 6) becomes substitution at $\text{C}=\text{O}$ (Chapter 12) when there is a leaving group at the carbonyl carbon, so conjugate addition becomes conjugate substitution if there is a leaving group, such as $\text{Cl}$, at the $\beta$ carbon atom. Here is an example: substitution has replaced $\text{Cl}$ with $\text{OMe}$, just as it would have done in a reaction with an acyl chloride.
This apparently simple substitution does not involve a direct displacement of the leaving group in a single step! As you will see again shortly, \( S_N^2 \) reactions do not occur at \( sp^2 \) hybridized carbon. The mechanism starts in exactly the same way as for conjugate addition, giving an enol intermediate.

Now the leaving group can be expelled by the enol: the double bond moves back into its original position in this step, which is exactly the same as the final step of an \( E_1cB \) reaction (Chapter 19). The ‘new’ double bond usually has the \( E \) configuration as the molecule can choose which of the two possible perpendicular conformations to eliminate.

Halogens are excellent leaving groups and are often used in conjugate substitution reactions. In the next example, two consecutive conjugate substitution reactions give a diamine.

At first sight, the product looks rather unstable—sensitive to water, or traces of acid perhaps. But, in fact, it is remarkably resistant to reaction with both. The reason is conjugation: this isn’t really an amine (or a diamine) at all, because the lone pairs of the nitrogen atoms are delocalized into the carbonyl group, very much as they are in an amide. This makes them less basic, and makes the carbonyl group less electrophilic.

Compounds like this are for this reason known as \textit{vinylogous amides}—the \( C=\cdot C \) bond between the \( N \) and \( C=\cdot O \) allows conjugation still to take place but at a greater distance. This is the essence of vinylogous behaviour.

\textbf{Preventing ulcers (1): Tagamet}

One cause of ulcers is excess acid secretion by the stomach, and one method of prevention is to stop this by blocking the acid-releasing action of histamine. You can see here the resemblance between histamine and Tagamet (generic name cimetidine).
As well as the histamine-like portion of the molecule, Tagamet has a sulfur atom and then, at the end of a short chain of carbon atoms, a complicated functional group based on guanidine. It is easy to add the sulfur atom and the short carbon chain to the heterocyclic building block (see Chapter 43 for more about this) so that the only problem is how to build on the guanidine at the end of the molecule.

Now enter the star of the show! This simple cyanoimine, with two SMe groups as built-in leaving groups, is readily available and reacts with amines to give guanidines in two stages.

Each of the reactions is a conjugate substitution. It will be clearer if we draw the reaction with a generalized primary amine RNH₂ first.

The first step is conjugate addition, exactly as we saw with acrylonitrile at the beginning of this chapter. The second step shows the return of the negative charge and the expulsion of the best leaving group. Thiols are acidic compounds, and MeS⁻ is a better leaving group than RNH⁻.

The reaction stops cleanly at this point and more vigorous conditions are required to displace the second MeS⁻ group. This is because the first product is less reactive than the starting material. Why is this? The introduced amino group is electron-donating and a strong conjugation is established between it and the cyano group.

Now a second and different amine can be introduced and the second MeS⁻ group displaced. In the Tagamet synthesis; the second amine is MeNH₂, and the synthesis is complete.

Preventing ulcers (2): the best selling drug of all time—GlaxoWellcome’s Zantac

This anti-ulcer drug has some obvious similarities to Tagamet, and some differences too. Here are the two structures side-by-side.

The heterocyclic ring is still there but it is very different. The sulfur and its surrounding CH₂ groups are the same and the guanidine seems to be still there. But it isn’t. Look closely at this
‘guanidine’ and you will see that there are only two nitrogen atoms around the central carbon atom instead of the three in a guanidine. This is an amidine. The nitrile has also been replaced by a nitro group. The synthesis is, however, remarkably similar to that of the real guanidine in Tagamet. Two conjugate substitutions use MeS⁻ as leaving groups and amine as nucleophiles. Here is the first, with mechanism.

The first step is conjugate addition, just like the conjugate additions to nitroalkenes at the beginning of this chapter, and the second step brings the negative charge back and expels the best leaving group. Again the reaction can be made to stop at this stage because this product is stabilized by conjugation between the green amino group and the nitro group. A second substitution puts together the two halves of the drug.

**Nucleophilic epoxidation**

The conjugate substitutions we have just been discussing rely on a starting material containing a leaving group. In this section we are going to look at what happens if the leaving group is not attached to the unsaturated carbonyl compound, but instead is attached to the nucleophile. We shall look at this class of compounds—nucleophiles with leaving groups attached—in more detail in Chapter 40, but for the moment the most important will be hydroperoxide, the anion of hydrogen peroxide.

Hydroperoxide is a good nucleophile because of the alpha effect: interaction of the two lone pairs on adjacent oxygen atoms raises the HOMO of the anion and makes it a better and softer nucleophile than hydroxide.

Hydroperoxide is also less basic than hydroxide because of the inductive electron-withdrawing effect of the second oxygen atom. Basicity and nucleophilicity usually go hand in hand—not here though. This means that the hydroperoxide anion can be formed by treating hydrogen peroxide with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

This is what happens when this mixture is added to an enone. First, there is the conjugate addition.
The product is not stable, because hydroxide can be lost from the oxygen atom that was the nucleophile. Hydroxide is fine as a leaving group here—after all, hydroxide is lost from enolates in E1cB eliminations, and here the bond breaking is a weak O–O bond. The product is an epoxide.

The electrophilic epoxidizing agents such as m-CPBA, which you met in Chapter 20, are less good with electron-deficient alkenes: we need a nucleophilic epoxidizing agent instead. There is another significant difference between hydrogen peroxide and m-CPBA, highlighted by the pair of reactions below.

$m$-CPBA epoxidation is stereospecific because the reaction happens in one step. But nucleophilic epoxidation is a two-step reaction: there is free rotation about the bond marked in the anionic intermediate, and the more stable, trans-epoxide results, whatever the geometry of the starting alkene.

In general, conjugate substitution is not nearly as important as the next topic in this chapter—nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Before we describe in detail those reactions that do occur, we need to explain why the most obvious reactions do not occur.

**Nucleophilic aromatic substitution**

The simplest and most obvious nucleophilic substitutions on an aromatic ring, such as the displacement of bromide from bromobenzene with hydroxide ion, do *not* occur.

Please note—this mechanism is wrong! No such reactions are known. You might well ask, 'Why not?' The reaction looks all right and, if the ring were saturated, it *would* be all right.

This is an $S_N2$ reaction, and we know (Chapter 17) that attack must occur in line with the C–Br bond from the back, where the largest lobe of the $\sigma^*$ orbitals lies. That is perfectly all right for the aliphatic ring because the carbon atom is tetrahedral and the C–Br bond is not in the plane of the ring. Substitution of an equatorial bromine goes like this.

But in the aromatic compound, the C–Br bond is in the plane of the ring as the carbon atom is trigonal. To attack from the back, the nucleophile would have to appear inside the benzene ring and invert the carbon atom in an absurd way. This reaction is not possible!

This is another example of the general rule. 

$\bullet$ $S_N2$ at $sp^2$ C *does not* occur.
If S_N2 is impossible, what about S_N1? This is possible but very unfavourable. It would involve the unaided loss of the leaving group and the formation of an aryl cation. All the cations we saw as intermediates in the S_N1 reaction (Chapter 17) were planar with an empty p orbital. This cation is planar but the p orbital is full—it is part of the aromatic ring—and the empty orbital is an sp^2 orbital outside the ring.

The most important mechanism for aromatic nucleophilic substitution follows directly from conjugate substitution and we shall introduce it that way. It is called the ‘addition–elimination mechanism’.

The addition–elimination mechanism

Imagine a cyclic β-fluoro-enone reacting with a secondary amine in a conjugate substitution reaction. The normal addition to form the enolate followed by return of the negative charge to expel the fluoride ion gives the product.

Now imagine just the same reaction with two extra double bonds in the ring. These play no part in our mechanism; they just make what was an aliphatic ring into an aromatic one. Conjugate substitution has become nucleophilic aromatic substitution.

The mechanism involves addition of the nucleophile followed by elimination of the leaving group—the addition–elimination mechanism. It is not necessary to have a carbonyl group—any electron-withdrawing group will do—the only requirement is that the electrons must be able to get out of the ring into this anion-stabilizing group. Here is an example with a para-nitro group.

Everything is different about this example—the nucleophile (HO^−), the leaving group (Cl^−), the anion-stabilizing group (NO_2), and its position (para)—but the reaction still works. The nucleophile is a good one, the negative charge can be pushed through on to the oxygen atom(s) of the nitro group, and chloride is a better leaving group than OH.

A typical nucleophilic aromatic substitution has:

• an oxygen, nitrogen, or cyanide nucleophile
• a halide for a leaving group
• a carbonyl, nitro, or cyanide group ortho or para to the leaving group

Since the nitro group is usually introduced by electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 22) and halides direct ortho/para in nitration reactions, a common sequence is nitration followed by nucleophilic substitution.

This sequence is useful because the nitro group could not be added directly to give the final product as nitration would go in the wrong position. The cyanide is meta-directing, while the alkyl group (R) is ortho, para-directing.

Two activating electron-withdrawing groups are better than one and dinitration of chlorobenzene makes a very electrophilic aryl halide. Reaction with hydrazine gives a useful reagent.

This compound forms coloured crystalline imines (hydrazones) with most carbonyl compounds—before the days of spectroscopy these were used to characterize aldehydes and ketones (see p. 000).

The intermediate in the addition–elimination mechanism

What evidence is there for intermediates like the ones we have been using in this section? When reactions like this last example are carried out, a purple colour often appears in the reaction mixture and then fades away. In some cases the colour is persistent and thought to be due to the intermediate. Here is an example with RO$^-$ attacking a nitrated aniline.
This intermediate is persistent because neither potential leaving group (NR₂ or OR) is very good. If the nucleophile is part of the same molecule, the intermediate becomes a stable cyclic compound and can be isolated. It is more stable because neither leaving group can get away from the molecule as it is tethered by the rest of the ring. Notice that there are three active nitro groups in this molecule all stabilizing the negative charge.

What is the nature of this intermediate? We can best answer that by comparing the ¹³C NMR spectra of three species: benzene itself; the simplest version of our carbanion intermediate (that is, with no substituents); and the simplest version of the cationic intermediate in electrophilic aromatic substitution. Direct protonation of benzene gives this last compound.

The intermediate in nucleophilic substitution cannot be made by adding H⁻ to benzene as no reaction occurs. Olah, the carbocation pioneer (p. 000), managed to make it by treating dihydro-benzene (cyclohexadiene) with a strong base. Deprotonation creates the anion.

Here are the details of the NMR spectra side-by-side with those of benzene. We shall use a summary structure for each ion showing delocalized charges around the five trigonal atoms in the ring. You may judge whether the NMR spectra justify these structures.

These results are very striking. The shifts of the meta carbons in both ions are very slightly different from those of benzene itself (about 130 p.p.m.). But the ortho and para carbons in the cation have gone downfield to much larger shifts while the ortho and para carbons in the anion have gone upfield to much smaller shifts.

The differences are very great—about 100 p.p.m. between the cation and the anion! It is very clear from these spectra that the ionic charge is delocalized almost exclusively to the ortho and para carbons in both cases. The alternative structures in the margin show this delocalization.

This means that stabilizing groups, such as nitro or carbonyl in the case of the anion, must be on the ortho or para carbons to have any effect. A good illustration of this is the selective displacement of
one chlorine atom out of these two. It is the ortho chlorine group that is lost and the meta one that is retained.

The mechanism works well if we attack the chlorine position ortho to the nitro group with the anion of the thiol nucleophile as the negative charge can then be pushed into the nitro group. Satisfy yourself that you cannot do this if you attack the other chlorine position. This is a very practical reaction and is used in the manufacture of a tranquilizing drug.

The leaving group and the mechanism
In the first nucleophilic aromatic substitution that we showed you, we used fluoride ion as a leaving group. Fluoride works very well in these reactions, and even such a simple compound as 2-nitrofluorobenzene reacts efficiently with a variety of nucleophiles, as in these examples.

The same reactions happen with the other 2-nitro-halobenzenes but less efficiently. The fluoro-compound reacts about $10^2$–$10^3$ times faster than the chloro- or bromo-compounds and the iodo-compound is even slower.

This ought to surprise you. When we were looking at other nucleophilic substitutions such as those at the carbonyl group or saturated carbon, we never used fluoride as a leaving group! The C–F bond is very strong—the strongest of all the single bonds to carbon—and it is difficult to break.

These reactions are not used:

Cl, Br, or I used—I is best
So why is fluoride often preferred in nucleophilic aromatic substitution and why does it react faster than the other halogens when the reverse is true with other reactions? You will notice that we have *not* said that fluoride is a better leaving group in nucleophilic aromatic substitution. It isn’t! The explanation depends on a better understanding of the mechanism of the reaction. We shall use azide ion as our nucleophile because this has been well studied, and because it is one of the best.

The mechanism is exactly the same as that we have been discussing all along—a two-stage addition–elimination sequence. In a two-step mechanism, one step is slower and rate-determining; the other is unimportant to the rate. You may guess that, in the mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution, it is the first step that is slower because it disturbs the aromaticity. The second step restores the aromaticity and is faster. The effect of fluoride, or any other leaving group, can only come from its effect on the first step. How good a leaving group it might be does not matter: the rate of the second step—the step where fluoride leaves—has no effect on the overall rate of the reaction.

Fluoride does, in fact, slow down the second step (relative to Cl⁻, say), but it accelerates the first step simply by its enormous inductive effect. It is the most electronegative element of all and it stabilizes the anionic intermediate, assisting the acceptance of electrons by the benzene ring.

A dramatic illustration of the effect of fluorine is the reactions of benzene rings with more than one fluorine substituent. These undergo nucleophilic substitution without any extra conjugation from electron-withdrawing groups. All the fluorine atoms that are not reacting help to stabilize the negative charge in the intermediate.

**Intellectual health warning!**

Some textbooks tell you that nucleophilic aromatic substitution doesn’t happen with ordinary aryl halides because of conjugation between the lone pairs of the halide and the aromatic system.

This is supposed to stop the reaction by making the C–Br bond stronger. This is nonsense. The reaction doesn’t happen on simple aryl halides because there is no available mechanism. It is easy to show that the false textbook reason is wrong. The conjugation in this nitro compound is much better than in bromobenzene, so it should be even less reactive.

In fact, as you now know, this compound is much more reactive towards nucleophiles. The false textbook reason would also suggest that fluoride would work really badly because this same conjugation is stronger with fluorid than with the other halogenes as its p orbitals are the right size (2sp²) to conjugate with carbon p orbitals. Again, you already know the opposite to be true.

The strength of the bond to the leaving group does not affect the efficiency of nucleophilic aromatic substitution because that bond is not broken in the rate-determining step. Understand the mechanism and it all becomes clear.
The activating anion-stabilizing substituent

We have used nitro groups very extensively so far and that is only right and proper as they are the best at stabilizing the anionic intermediate. Others that work include carbonyl, cyanide, and sulfur-based groups such as sulfoxides and sulfones. Here is a direct comparison for the displacement of bromide ion by the secondary amine piperidine. First the reaction with a carbonyl group.

Now we are going to give the rates for the same reaction but with different activating groups. The mechanism is the same in each case; the only difference is the electron-withdrawing power of the activating group. You recall that this is vital for the rate-determining first step and for stabilization of the intermediate. The symbol Z represents the anion-stabilizing group and the margin shows what Z might be. The numbers are the relative rates compared with $Z = \text{nitro}$.

All the compounds react more slowly than the nitro-compound. We have already mentioned (Chapters 8 and 22) the great electron-withdrawing power of the nitro group—here is a new measure of that power. The sulfone reacts twenty times slower, the nitrile thirty times slower, and the ketone a hundred times slower.

The nitro is the best activating group, but the others will all perform well especially when combined with a fluoride rather than a bromide as the leaving group. Here are two reactions that work well in a preparative sense with other anion-stabilizing groups. Note that the trifluoromethyl group works by using only its powerful inductive effect.

To summarize

Any anion-stabilizing (electron-withdrawing) group ortho or para to a potential leaving group can be used to make nucleophilic aromatic substitution possible.

Some medicinal chemistry—preparation of an antibiotic

We want to convince you that this chemistry is useful and also that it works in more complicated molecules so we are going to describe in part the preparation of a new antibiotic, ofloxacin. The sequence starts with an aromatic compound having four fluorine atoms. Three are replaced specifically by different nucleophiles and the last is present in the antibiotic itself. As a reminder of the first
section of this chapter, the preparation also involves a conjugate substitution. The structure of ofloxacin (below) highlights the remaining fluorine atom and (in black) the four bonds made by reactions discussed in this chapter. Underneath is the starting material with its four fluorine atoms.

![Conjugate Substitution Diagram]

The preparation of the starting material involves reactions that we will meet later in the book and is described in Chapter 28. The next reaction is the conjugate substitution. An amino alcohol is used as the nucleophile and it does a conjugate addition to the double bond. Notice that it is the more nucleophilic amino group that adds to the alkene, not the hydroxyl group. And, when the negative charge comes back to complete the conjugate substitution, the better leaving group is alkoxide rather than a very unstable amine anion.

![Conjugate Substitution Diagram]

The next step is the first nucleophilic aromatic substitution. The amino group attacks in the position ortho to the carbonyl group so that an enolate intermediate can be formed. When the charge returns, the first fluoride is expelled.

![Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution Diagram]

Treatment with base (NaH can be used) now converts the OH group into an alkoxide and it does the next aromatic nucleophilic substitution. In this reaction we are attacking the position meta to the ketone so we cannot put the negative charge on the oxygen atom. The remaining three fluorines must stabilize it by the inductive effect we described earlier.

![Aromatic Substitution Diagram]

When this charge returns to restore the benzene ring, the second fluoride is expelled and only two are left. One of these is now displaced by, for the first time, an external nucleophile—an amine. It is easy to predict which one because of the need to stabilize the charge in the intermediate.
This displaces the third fluorine and all that is left is to hydrolyse the ester to the free acid with aqueous base (Chapter 12). Every single reaction in this quite complicated sequence is one that you have met earlier in the book, and it forms a fitting climax to this section on the addition–elimination mechanism for aromatic nucleophilic substitution. We now need to mention two other less important possibilities.

**The S_N1 mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution—diazonium compounds**

When primary amines are treated with nitrous acid (HONO), or more usually with a nitrite salt or an alkyl nitrite in acid solution, an unstable diazonium salt is formed. You met diazonium salts in Chapter 22 undergoing coupling reactions to give axo compounds, but they can do other things as well. First, a reminder of the mechanism of formation of these diazonium salts. The very first stage is the formation of the reactive species NO⁺.

```
Na^+ O N=N O
```

sodium nitrite

The NO⁺ cation then attacks the lone pair of the amine and dehydration follows. The mechanism is quite simple—it just involves a lot of proton transfers! There is, of course, an anion associated with the nitrogen cation, and this will be the conjugate base (Cl⁻ usually) of the acid used to form NO⁺.

If R is an alkyl group, this diazonium salt is very unstable and immediately loses nitrogen gas to give a planar carbocation, which normally reacts with a nucleophile in an S_N1 process (Chapter 17) or loses a proton in an E1 process (Chapter 19). It may, for example, react with water to give an alcohol.
If R is an aryl group, the carbocation is much less stable (for the reasons we discussed earlier—chiefly that the empty orbital is an \( sp^2 \) rather than a \( p \) orbital) and that makes the loss of nitrogen slower. If the diazotization is done at lowish temperatures (just above \( 0^\circ C \), classically at \( 5^\circ C \)), the diazonium salt is stable and can be reacted with various nucleophiles.

If the aqueous solution is heated, water again acts as the nucleophile and a phenol is formed from the amine. The aryl cation is an intermediate and this is an \( S_N1 \) reaction at an aromatic ring.

The point of this reaction is that it is rather difficult to add an oxygen atom to a benzene ring by the normal electrophilic substitution as there is no good reagent for \( 'OH^+ \). A nitrogen atom can be added easily by nitrations, and reduction and diazotization provide a way of replacing the nitro group by a hydroxyl group.

This is a practical sequence and is used in manufacturing medicines. An example is the drug thymoxamine (Moxysylyte), which has a simple structure with ester and ether groups joined to a benzene ring through their oxygen atoms.

It seems obvious to make this compound by alkylation and acylation of a dihydroxybenzene. But how are we to make sure that the right phenol is acylated and the right phenol alkylated? French pharmaceutical chemists had an ingenious answer. Start with a compound having only one \( OH \) group, alkylate that, and only then introduce the second using the diazonium salt method. They used a simple phenol and introduced nitrogen as a nitroso (NO) rather than a nitro (NO\(_2\)) group. This means using the same reagent, HONO, as we used for the diazotization. These were the first two steps.
The reduction of NO is easier than that of NO₂, and HS⁻ is enough to do the job. The amine can now be converted to an amide to lessen its nucleophilicity so that alkylation of the phenol occurs cleanly.

Finally, the amide must be hydrolysed, the amino converted into an OH group by diazotization and hydrolysis, and the new phenol acetylated.

This is yet another synthesis in which almost every step is a reaction that you have already met in this book! There are three nucleophilic substitutions at the carbonyl group, one S₉2 reaction, one electrophilic and one nucleophilic aromatic substitution (the latter being an S₉1 reaction), and a reduction. The chemistry you already know is enough for a patented manufacture of a useful drug.

Other nucleophiles

Because aryl diazonium salts are reasonably stable, other nucleophiles may be introduced to capture the aryl cation when the diazonium salt is heated. Among these, iodide ion is important as it allows the preparation of aryl iodides in good yield. These compounds are not so easy to make by electrophilic substitution (Chapter 22) as aryl chlorides or bromides because iodine is not reactive enough to attack benzene rings. Aryl iodides are useful in the more modern palladium chemistry of the Heck reaction, which you will meet in Chapter 48.

Other nucleophiles, such as chloride, bromide, and cyanide, are best added with copper(1) salts. These reactions are almost certainly radical in character (Chapter 39). Since aromatic amines...
are usually made by reduction of nitro-compounds, a common sequence of reactions goes like this.

A reaction that may seem rather pointless is the reduction of diazonium salts, that is, the replacement of $\text{N}^+\text{N}$ by $\text{H}$. A good reagent is $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_2$.

It would indeed be pointless to make benzene in this way, but this reaction allows the introduction of an amino group for the purpose of directing an electrophilic substitution and then its removal once its job is done. Here is a famous example.

Nitration puts in a substituent $\text{para}$ to the alkyl group, which, after reduction, becomes a powerful $\text{ortho}$ director so that the bromine is directed $\text{meta}$ to the original alkyl group (Chapter 22). Removal of the amino group by reduction allows the preparation of $\text{meta}$ bromo alkyl benzenes that cannot be made directly.

The benzyne mechanism

There is one last mechanism for aromatic nucleophilic substitution and you may well feel that this is the weirdest mechanism you have ever seen with the most unlikely intermediate ever! For our part, we hope to convince you that this mechanism is not only possible but useful.

At the start of the section on ‘Nucleophilic aromatic substitution’ we said that ‘the displacement of bromide from bromobenzene with hydroxide ion do(es) not occur’. That statement is not quite correct. Substitution by hydroxide on bromobenzene can occur but only under the most vigorous conditions—such as when bromobenzene and NaOH are melted together (fused) at very high temperature. A similar reaction with the very powerful reagent NaNH$_2$ (which supplies NH$_2^-$ ion) also happens, at rather lower temperature.

These reactions were known for a long time before anyone saw what was happening. They do not happen by an $S_N2$ mechanism, as we explained at the start of the section, and they can’t happen by the addition–elimination mechanism because there is nowhere to put the negative charge in the intermediate. The first clue to the true mechanism is that all the nucleophiles that react in this way
are very basic, and it was suggested that they start the reaction off by removing a proton \textit{ortho} to the leaving group.

The carbanion is in an \textit{sp}^2 orbital in the plane of the ring. Indeed, this intermediate is very similar to the aryl cation intermediate in the \textit{S_N}1 mechanism from diazonium salts. That had no electrons in the \textit{sp}^2 orbital; the carbanion has two.

Why should this proton be removed rather than any other? The bromine atom is electronegative and the C–Br bond is in the plane of the \textit{sp}^2 orbital and removes electrons from it. The stabilization is nonetheless weak and only strong bases will do this reaction.

The next step is the loss of bromide ion in an elimination reaction. This is the step that is difficult to believe as the intermediate we are proposing looks impossible. The orbitals are bad for the elimination too—it is a \textit{syn}– rather than an anti-periplanar elimination. But it happens.

The intermediate is called benzyne as it is an alkyne with a triple bond in a benzene ring. But what does this triple bond mean? It certainly isn’t a normal alkyne as these are linear. In fact one \pi bond is normal—it is just part of the aromatic system. One \pi bond—the new one—is abnormal and is formed by overlap of two \textit{sp}^2 orbitals outside the ring. This external \pi bond is very weak and benzyne is a very unstable intermediate. Indeed, when the structure was proposed few chemists believed it and some pretty solid evidence was needed before they did. We shall come to that shortly, but let us first finish the mechanism. Unlike normal alkynes, benzyne is electrophilic as the weak third bond can be attacked by nucleophiles.

Notice the symmetry in this mechanism. Benzyne is formed from an \textit{ortho} carbanion and it gives an \textit{ortho} carbanion when it reacts with nucleophiles. The whole mechanism from bromobenzene to aniline involves an elimination to give benzyne followed by an addition of the nucleophile to the triple bond of benzyne. In many ways, this mechanism is the reverse of the normal addition–elimination mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution and it is sometimes called the \textit{elimination–addition mechanism}.

Any nucleophile basic enough to remove the \textit{ortho} proton can carry out this reaction. Known examples include oxyanions, amide anions (\textit{R}_2\textit{N}^{-}), and carbanions. The rather basic alkoxide \textit{t}-butoxide will do the reaction on bromobenzene if the potassium salt is used in the dipolar aprotic solvent DMSO to maximize reactivity.
Evidence for benzyne as an intermediate

As you would expect, the formation of benzyne is the slow step in the reaction so there is no hope of isolating benzyne from the reaction mixture or even of detecting it spectroscopically. However, it can be made by other reactions where there are no nucleophiles to capture it. The most important is a diazotization reaction.

This diazotization is particularly efficient as you can see by the quantitative yield of the ortho-iodo-acid on capture of the diazonium salt with iodide ion. However, if the diazonium salt is neutralized with NaOH, it gives a zwitterion with the negative charge on the carboxylate balancing the positive charge on the diazonium group. This diazotization is usually done with an alkyl nitrite in an organic solvent (here, dimethoxyethane, DME) to avoid the chance that nucleophiles such as chloride or water might capture the product. When the zwitterion is heated it decomposes in an entropically favourable reaction to give carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and benzyne.

You can’t isolate the benzyne because it reacts with itself to give a benzyne dimer having a four-membered ring between two benzene rings. If the zwitterion is injected into a mass spectrometer, there is a peak at 152 for the dimer but also a strong peak at 76, which is benzyne itself. The lifetime of a particle in the mass spectrometer is about 20 ns (nanosecond = $10^{-9}$ second) so benzyne can exist for at least that long in the gas phase.

Benzyne produced from the zwitterion can also be captured by dienes in a Diels–Alder reaction (see Chapter 35). But this merely shows that benzyne can exist for a short time. It does not at all prove that benzyne is an intermediate in aromatic substitution reactions. Fortunately, there is very convincing evidence for this as well.

There is one very special feature of the benzyne mechanism. The triple bond could be attacked by nucleophiles at either end. This is of no consequence when we are dealing with bromobenzene as the products would be the same, but we can make the ends of the triple bond different and then we see something interesting. ortho-Chloro aryl ethers are easy to prepare by chlorination of the ether (Chapter 22). When these compounds are treated with NaNH$_2$ in liquid ammonia, a single amine is formed in good yield.
There is no mistake in this scheme. The amine is really at the meta position even though the chlorine was at the ortho position. It would be very difficult to explain this by any other mechanism but very easy to explain using a benzyne mechanism. Using the same two steps that we have used before, we can write this.

the elimination step

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OMe} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\quad \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OMe} \\
\text{Cl} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\quad \xrightarrow{\text{H}}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OMe} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\]

the addition step

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OMe} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\quad \xrightarrow{\text{H}}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OMe} \\
\text{NH}_2 \\
\text{H}
\end{array}
\quad \xrightarrow{\text{H}}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OMe} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\]

That shows how the meta product might be formed, but why should it be formed? Attack could also occur at the ortho position, so why is there no ortho product? There are two reasons: electronic and steric. Electronically, the anion next to the electronegative oxygen atom is preferred, because oxygen is inductively electron-withdrawing. The same factor facilitates deprotonation next to Cl in the formation of the benzyne. Sterically, it is better for the amide anion to attack away from the OMe group rather than come in alongside it. Nucleophilic attack on a benzyne has to occur in the plane of the benzene ring because that is where the orbitals are. This reaction is therefore very sensitive to steric hindrance as the nucleophile must attack in the plane of the substituent as well.

This is a useful way to make amino ethers with a meta relationship as both groups are ortho, para-directing and so the meta compounds cannot be made by electrophilic substitution. The alternative is the long-winded approach using a diazonium salt that was described in the previous section.

para-Disubstituted halides can again give only one benzyne and most of them give mixtures of products. A simple alkyl substituent is too far away from the triple bond to have much steric effect.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\text{Br}
\end{array}
\quad \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_2, \text{NH}_3 (l)}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\quad \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\text{NH}_2
\end{array}
\quad \text{about 50:50}
\]

If the substituent is an electron-repelling anion, then the meta product is formed exclusively because this puts the product anion as far as possible from the anion already there. This again is a useful result as it creates a meta relationship between two ortho, para-directing groups.
One case where selectivity of attack is no problem is in reactions with intramolecular nucleophiles. These cyclizations simply give the only possible product—the result of cyclization to the nearer end of the triple bond. One important example is the making of a four-membered ring. Only one benzyne can be formed.

There are acidic protons next to the cyanide, and the amide ion is strong enough to form an ‘enolate’ by the removal of one of those. The enolate cyclizes on to the benzyne to give a four-membered ring. As it happens, the nucleophile adds to the position originally occupied by the chlorine, but that is not necessary.

Nucleophilic attack on allylic compounds

We shall finish this chapter with some alkenes that are electrophilic, not because they are conjugated with another π system, but because they have a leaving group adjacent to them. We shall start with some substitution reactions with which you are familiar from Chapter 17. There we said that allyl bromide is about 100 times more reactive towards simple SN2 reactions than is propyl bromide or other saturated alkyl halides.

The double bond stabilizes the SN2 transition state by conjugation with the p orbital at the carbon atom under attack. This full p orbital (shown in yellow in the diagram below) forms a partial bond with the nucleophile and with the leaving group in the transition state. Any stabilization of the transition state will, of course, accelerate the reaction by lowering the energy barrier.

There is an alternative mechanism for this reaction that involves nucleophilic attack on the alkene instead of on the saturated carbon atom. This mechanism leads to the same product and is often called the SN2’ (pronounced ‘S-N-two-prime’) mechanism.
We can explain both mechanisms in a unified way if we look at the frontier orbitals involved. The nucleophile must attack an empty orbital (the LUMO) which we might expect to be simply $\sigma^*$ ($\text{C–Br}$) for the SN2 reaction.

But this ignores the alkene. The interaction between $\pi^*$ ($\text{C=C}$) and the adjacent $\sigma^*$ ($\text{C–Br}$) will as usual produce two new orbitals, one higher and one lower in energy. The lower-energy orbital, $\pi^* + \sigma^*$, will now be the LUMO. To construct this orbital we must put all the atomic orbitals parallel and make the contact between $\pi^* + \sigma^*$ a bonding contact.

If the allylic halide is unsymmetrically substituted, we can tell which process occurs and the normal result is that nucleophilic attack occurs at the less hindered end of the allylic system whether that means SN2 or $\text{SN}^2'$. This important allylic bromide, known as 'prenyl bromide', normally reacts entirely via the SN2 reaction.

The two ends of the allylic system are contrasted sterically: direct (SN2) attack is at a primary carbon while allylic ($\text{SN}^2'$) attack is at a tertiary carbon atom so that steric hindrance favours the SN2 reaction. In addition, the number of substituents on the alkene product means that the SN2 product is nearly always preferred—SN2 gives a trisubstituted alkene while the $\text{SN}^2'$ product has a less stable monosubstituted alkene.

An important example is the reaction of prenyl bromide with phenols. This is simply carried out with $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ in acetone as phenols are acidic enough ($\text{pK}_a \approx 10$) to be substantially deprotonated by carbonate. The product is essentially entirely from the SN2 route, and is used in the Claisen rearrangement (Chapter 36).

If we make the two ends of the allyl system more similar, say one end primary and one end secondary, things are more equal. We could consider the two isomeric butenyl chlorides.
All routes look reasonable, though we might again prefer attack at the primary centre kinetically and the disubstituted alkene thermodynamically and this is the usual outcome. The reactions in the left-hand box are preferred to those in the right-hand box. But there is no special preference for the $S_N2$ over the $S_N2'$ mechanism or vice versa—the individual case decides. If we react the secondary butenyl chloride with an amine we get the $S_N2'$ mechanism entirely.

If the primary chloride is used, only the $S_N2$ reaction normally occurs so that once again we get nucleophilic attack at the primary centre and the more stable product with the more highly substituted alkene. Here is a slightly more advanced example.

**Phase transfer catalysis**

The last example is interesting because the starting material contains an acetal as well as a primary alcohol group. Acetals are very easily destroyed by acid so the conditions must be kept strictly alkaline. Sodium hydroxide does this but it is insoluble in organic solvents. The method shown here uses a two-phase system of water and dichloromethane (CH$_2$Cl$_2$). The organic molecules are in the CH$_2$Cl$_2$ layer and the NaOH is in the water layer. The tetraalkyl ammonium salt has a polar group (N$^+$) and hydrocarbon side chains (butyl groups). These chains mean that, although it is charged, Bu$_4$N$^+\text{HO}^-$ ion pairs are soluble in the organic layer. The ammonium salt allows a low concentration of hydroxide ions to pass into the CH$_2$Cl$_2$ layer where they act as a base catalyst for the reaction. Here are the layers shown schematically.

Notice that these reactions take place with allylic chlorides. We should not expect an alkyl chloride to be particularly good at $S_N2$ reactions as chloride ion is only a moderate leaving group and we should normally prefer alkyl bromides or iodides. Allylic chlorides are more reactive because of the alkene. Even if the reaction occurs by a simple $S_N2$ mechanism without rearrangement, the alkene is still making the molecule more electrophilic.

You might ask a very good question at this point. How do we know that these reactions really take place by $S_N2$ and $S_N2'$ mechanisms and not by an $S_N1$ mechanism via the stable allyl cation? Well in the case of prenyl bromide, we don’t! In fact, we suspect that the cation probably is an intermediate, because prenyl bromide and its allylic isomer are in rapid equilibrium in solution at room temperature.
The equilibrium is entirely in favour of prenyl bromide because of its more highly substituted double bond. Reactions on the tertiary allylic isomer are very likely to take place by the $S_N1$ mechanism: the cation is stable because it is tertiary and allylic and the equilibration tells us it is already there. Even if the reactions were bimolecular, no $S_N2'$ mechanism would be necessary for the tertiary bromide because it can equilibrate to the primary isomer more rapidly than the $S_N2$ or $S_N2'$ reaction takes place.

Even the secondary system we also considered is in rapid equilibrium when the leaving group is bromide. This time both allylic isomers are present, and the primary allylic isomer (known as ‘crotyl bromide’) is an $E/Z$ mixture. The bromides can be made from either alcohol with HBr, and the same ratio of products results, indicating a common intermediate in the two mechanisms. You saw at the beginning of Chapter 17 that this reaction (Chapter 16) is restricted to alcohols that can react by $S_N1$.

Displacement of the bromide by cyanide ion, using the copper(I) salt as the nucleophile, gives a mixture of nitriles in which the more stable primary nitrile predominates even more. These can be separated by a clever device. Hydrolysis in concentrated HCl is successful with the predominant primary nitrile but the more hindered secondary nitrile does not hydrolyse. Separation of compounds having two different functional groups is easy: in this case the acid can be extracted into aqueous base, leaving the neutral nitrile in the organic layer.

Once again, we do not know for sure whether this displacement by cyanide goes by the $S_N1$, $S_N2$, or $S_N2'$ mechanism, as the reagents equilibrate under the reaction conditions. However, the chlorides do not equilibrate and so, if we want a clear cut result on a single well-defined starting material, the chlorides are the compounds to use.

**Regiospecific preparation of allylic chlorides**

Allylic alcohols are good starting materials for making allylic compounds with control over where the double bond and the leaving group will be. Allylic alcohols are easily made by addition of Grignard reagents or organolithium compounds to enals or enones (Chapter 9) or by reduction of enals or enones (Chapter 24). More to the point, they do not equilibrate except in strongly acidic solution, so we know which allylic isomer we have.
Conversion of the alcohols into the chlorides is easier with the primary than with the secondary alcohols. We need to convert OH into a leaving group and provide a source of chloride ion to act as a nucleophile. One way to do this is with methanesulfonyl chloride (MeSO₂Cl) and LiCl.

This result hardly looks worth reporting and, anyway, how do we know that equilibration or SN₁ reactions aren’t happening? Well, here the mechanism must be SN₂ because the corresponding Z-allylic alcohol preserves its alkene configuration. If there were equilibration of any sort, the Z-alkene would give the E-alkene because E and Z allylic cations are not geometrically stable.

Sadly, this method fails to preserve the integrity of the secondary allylic alcohol, which gives a mixture of allylic chlorides.

Reliable clean SN₂ reactions with secondary allylic alcohols can be achieved only with Mitsunobu chemistry. Here is a well-behaved example with a Z-alkene. The reagents have changed since your last encounter with a Mitsunobu-type reaction: instead of DEAD and a carboxylic acid we have hexachloroacetone.

The first thing that happens is that the lone pair on phosphorus attacks one of the chlorine atoms in the chloroketone. The leaving group in this SN₂ reaction at chlorine is an enolate, which is a basic species and can remove the proton from the OH group in the allylic alcohol.
Now the alkoxide anion can attack the positively charged phosphorus atom. This is a good reaction in two ways. First, there is the obvious neutralization of charge and, second, the P–O bond is very strong. This reaction, which we have drawn as an SN2 reaction at phosphorus, really goes through a pentacovalent intermediate shown to the right, but you will usually see it drawn in a concerted fashion.

Now the alkoxide anion can attack the positively charged phosphorus atom. This is a good reaction in two ways. First, there is the obvious neutralization of charge and, second, the P–O bond is very strong. This reaction, which we have drawn as an SN2 reaction at phosphorus, really goes through a pentacovalent intermediate shown to the right, but you will usually see it drawn in a concerted fashion.

The next step is a true SN2 reaction at carbon as the very good leaving group is displaced. The already strong P–O single bond becomes an even stronger P=O double bond to compensate for the loss of the strong C–O single bond.

There is obviously no SN1 component in this displacement (otherwise the Z-alkene would have partly isomerized to the E-alkene) and very little SN2′ as only 0.5% of the rearrangement product is formed. These displacements of Ph₃P=O are often the ‘tightest’ of SN2 reactions. Now for the really impressive result. Even if the alcohol is secondary, and the rearranged product would be thermodynamically more stable, very little of it is formed and almost all the reaction is clean SN2.

There is a bit more rearrangement than there was with the other isomer but that is only to be expected. The very high proportion of direct SN2 product shows that there is a real preference for the SN2 over the SN2′ reaction in this displacement.

More evidence for SN2 on the phosphonium intermediate

It is possible to show that the stereochemistry of the double bond is not affected during this reaction and that it goes with clean inversion by using an optically active alcohol with a labelled hydrogen (deuterium) on the alkene.

Note the inversion at the stereogenic centre (see discussion of this as a criterion of the SN2 reaction in Chapter 17) but retention in the geometry of the alkene. This is clear evidence for an SN2 reaction at the secondary centre.

Now that we know how to make allylic chlorides of known structure—whether primary or secondary—we need to discover how to replace the chlorine with a nucleophile with predictable regioselectivity. We have said little so far about carbon nucleophiles (except cyanide ion) so we shall concentrate on simple carbon nucleophiles in the SN2′ reaction of allylic chlorides.

The SN2′ reaction of carbon nucleophiles on allylic chlorides

Ordinary carbon nucleophiles such as cyanide or Grignard reagents or organolithium compounds fit the patterns we have described already. They usually give the more stable product by SN2 or SN2′ reactions depending on the starting material. If we use copper compounds, there is a tendency—to favour the SN2′ reaction. You will recall that copper(I) was the metal we used to ensure conjugate addition to enones (Chapter 10) and its use in SN2′ reactions is obviously related.
Simple alkyl copper reagents (RCu, known as Gilman reagents) generally favour the SN2’ reaction but we can do much better by using RCu complexed with BF3.

\[
\text{Me}^+\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \quad \text{RCu, BF}_3 \quad \text{Me}^+\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{R} + \text{Me}^+\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\
\text{major product} \quad \text{minor product}
\]

The copper must complex to the alkene and then transfer the alkyl group to the SN2’ position as it gathers in the chloride. This might well be the mechanism, though it is often difficult to draw precise mechanisms for organometallic reactions.

The secondary allylic isomer also gives almost entirely the rearranged product. This is perhaps less surprising, as the major product is the more stable isomer, but it means that either product can be formed in high yield simply by choosing the right (or should we say wrong, since there is complete allylic rearrangement during the reaction) isomer. The reaction is regiospecific.

\[
\text{Me}^+\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \quad \text{RCu, BF}_3 \quad \text{Me}^+\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{R} + \text{Me}^+\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\
\text{major product} \quad \text{minor product}
\]

The most remarkable result of all is that prenyl chloride gives rearranged products in good yield. This is about the only way in which these compounds suffer attack at the tertiary centre by SN2’ reaction when there is the alternative of an SN2 reaction at a primary centre.

\[
\text{Me}_3\text{C} = \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \quad \text{RCu, BF}_3 \quad \text{Me}_3\text{C} \text{CH}_2\text{R} + \text{Me}_3\text{C} \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\
\text{major product} \quad \text{minor product}
\]

**Stereochemistry of the SN2’ reaction**

There is some controversy over this issue. There is, of course, none over the SN2 reaction on these allylic compounds—inversion occurs as in all SN2 reactions. It used to be supposed that SN2’ reactions went with ‘retention’—that is, the nucleophile attacked the same face of the allylic system (we shall call this syn attack). The attractive rationalization was that the π bond attacked the C–Br bond from the back and then was itself attacked from the back by the nucleophile. This results in an anti reaction of the π bond and overall syn attack of the nucleophile with respect to the leaving group.

We now know that the picture is not as simple as this. syn SN2’ reactions are preferred but anti SN2’ reactions are also possible and the result found depends on the molecule under observation. Here is a convincing example of SN2’ reactions going with syn stereochemistry. The molecule is a planar cyclobutene, which makes the stereochemistry easy to see.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{MeO}^- & \quad \text{Cl}^- \\
\text{MeO}^- & \quad \text{Cl}^- \\
\text{MeO}^- & \quad \text{Cl}^- \\
\text{MeO}^- & \quad \text{Cl}^-
\end{align*}
\]

The deuterium labels are there so that we can see that the SN2’ reaction is indeed taking place. This reaction is entirely syn even though the methoxide nucleophile must attack alongside the other chlorine atom. The reaction does not stop there since a second methoxide displaces the other chloride—also in a syn fashion. Here too there must be considerable resistance to syn attack as the second methoxide anion must approach alongside the first.
In other cases, especially in open-chain compounds, the stereochemical outcome is not so clear cut and mixtures are often formed. The best generalization is that the $S_N2'$ reaction prefers syn stereochromy but that anti stereochemistry is also possible. In the absence of other evidence, you should first suggest a syn course for the reaction—but do not be surprised if your suggestion turns out to be wrong.

To conclude . . .

This chapter is about electrophilic alkenes. We started by saying that alkenes are really nucleophilic and not electrophilic but in this chapter (and in Chapter 10) we have managed to find a remarkable collection of electrophilic alkenes from various types of chemistry. Here is a summary chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page no.</th>
<th>Type of alkene</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000 (ch. 10)</td>
<td>unsaturated carbonyl compounds</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>conjugate addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>unsaturated nitriles and nitroalkenes</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>conjugate addition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>enones, etc. with $\beta$-leaving group</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>conjugate substitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>guanidines, amidines, and nitroalkenes with $\beta$-leaving group</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>conjugate substitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>benzene rings with electron-withdrawing substituents and leaving groups</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>nucleophilic aromatic substitution: addition–elimination mechanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>aryl cations</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>nucleophilic aromatic substitution: $S_{N1}$ mechanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>benzyne</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>nucleophilic aromatic substitution: elimination–addition mechanism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>allylic halides and esters of allylic alcohols</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>nucleophilic substitution ($S_N2$ and $S_N2'$)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Still to come:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page no.</th>
<th>Type of alkene</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Reaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000 (ch. 29)</td>
<td>enolates and enolate equivalents as nucleophiles</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>conjugate addition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Problems

1. What is the structure of the product of this reaction and how is it formed?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CHO} & + \text{Me}_2\text{N} - \text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{NaH}} \text{C}_3\text{H}_6\text{NO}_2 \\
\delta_\text{C} & (\text{p.p.m.}) = 191, 164, 132, 130, 115, 64, 41, 29 \\
\delta_\text{H} & (\text{p.p.m.}) = 2.32 (6\text{H}, \text{s}), 3.05 (2\text{H}, \text{t}, J 6 \text{ Hz}), \\
& 4.20 (2\text{H}, \text{ t}, J 6 \text{ Hz}), 6.97 (2\text{H}, \text{ d}, J 7 \text{ Hz}), \\
& 7.82 (2\text{H}, \text{ d}, J 7 \text{ Hz}), 9.97 (1\text{H}, \text{ s})
\end{align*}
\]

2. Draw a detailed mechanism for this reaction. Note that no base is added to the mixture. Why is base unnecessary?

3. Which of the two routes suggested here would actually lead to the product? What might happen in the other sequence?

4. Suggest reasons for the different outcome of each of these reactions. Your answer must, of course, include a mechanism for each reaction.

5. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions. You should explain why one of the cyanides is lost but not the other.

6. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction.

7. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction explaining the selectivity.

8. Suggest mechanisms for all of the steps in this synthesis of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazone given in the chapter.

9. Pyridine is a six-electron aromatic system like benzene. You have not yet been taught anything systematic about pyridine but see if you can work out why 2- and 4-chloropyridines react with nucleophiles but 3-chloropyridine does not.

2-chloropyridine 3-chloropyridine 4-chloropyridine
10. Draw detailed mechanisms for the last two steps in the ranitidine synthesis that involve conjugate substitution. Why is it possible to replace one MeS group at a time?

11. How would you convert this aromatic compound into the two derivatives shown?

12. Comment on the selectivity shown in these reactions.

13. Suggest what products might be formed from the unsaturated lactone and the various reagents given and comment on your choice.

14. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, pointing out what guided you to choose these pathways.
Selectivity

Most organic molecules contain more than one functional group, and most functional groups can react in more than one way, so organic chemists often have to predict which functional group will react, where it will react, and how it will react. These questions are what we call selectivity.

Selectivity comes in three sorts: chemoselectivity, regioselectivity, and stereoselectivity. Chemoselectivity is which group reacts; regioselectivity is where it reacts. Stereoselectivity is how the group reacts with regard to the stereochemistry of the product.

There are three main types of selectivity

- Chemoselectivity: which functional group will react
- Regioselectivity: where it will react
- Stereoselectivity: how it will react (stereochemistry of the products)

We talked a lot about regioselectivity two chapters ago, when you learned how to predict and explain which product(s) you get from electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions. The functional group is the aromatic ring: where it reacts is the reaction’s regioselectivity. Going back further, one of the first examples of regioselectivity you came across was nucleophilic addition to an unsaturated ketone. Addition can take place in a 1,2- or a 1,4-fashion—the question of which happens (where the unsaturated ketone reacts) is a question of regioselectivity, which we discussed in Chapters 10 and 23. We shall leave all discussion of stereoselectivity until Chapters 31–34.
This chapter is about chemoselectivity—in a compound with more than one functional group, which group reacts? Let’s start with a straightforward example—the synthesis of paracetamol briefly described in Chapter 22. 4-Aminophenol could react with acetic anhydride on both nitrogen and oxygen to give a compound containing an amide and an ester functional group. This is what happens on heating with excess Ac₂O in toluene.

But with just one equivalent of acetic anhydride in the presence of a base (pyridine) only the NH₂ group is acylated, and paracetamol is the product. This is chemoselectivity, and it is to be expected that the NH₂ group is more nucleophilic than the OH group. It is even possible to hydrolyse the doubly acetylated product to paracetamol with aqueous sodium hydroxide. The ester is more reactive than the amide and hydrolyses much more easily (Chapter 12).

We know that ketones are more reactive towards Grignard reagents and organolithiums than esters because you can’t isolate a ketone from the reaction of an ester with a Grignard reagent or an organolithium (in Chapter 12 we devoted some time to what you can react with an organometallic compound to get a ketone—p. 000). So it should come as no surprise that, when some chemists at Pfizer were developing anticonvulsants related to the tranquillizer oblivon by adding lithium acetylide to ketones, they were successful in making a tertiary alcohol by chemoselective reaction of a ketone in the presence of an ester.

These reactions work because, although each starting material contains two carbonyl groups, one is more electrophilic and therefore more reactive towards nucleophiles (OH⁻ in the first case; lithium acetylide in the second) than the other. We can order carbonyl compounds into a sequence in which it will usually be possible to react those on the left with nucleophiles in the presence of those on the right.

Reducing agents

Chemists at Glaxo exploited this reactivity sequence in their synthesis of the anti-asthma drug, salmefamol (sister of the best seller salbutamol, which will be discussed in Chapter 25). Three reducing agents are used in the sequence: sodium borohydride (NaBH₄); lithium aluminium hydride (LiAlH₄); and hydrogen gas over a palladium catalyst.
Reduction of carbonyl groups

We shall use this synthesis as a basis for discussion on chemoselectivity in reductions. In the first step, sodium borohydride leaves the black carbonyl group of the ester untouched while it reduces the ketone (in yellow); in the last step, lithium aluminium hydride reduces the ester (in black). These chemoselectivities are typical of these two most commonly used reducing agents: borohydride can usually be relied upon to reduce an aldehyde or a ketone in the presence of an ester, while lithium aluminium hydride will reduce almost any carbonyl group.

Each reduction gives an alcohol, apart from the reduction of an amide with LiAlH₄, which gives an amine, which we shall explain next. We shall return to the salmefamol synthesis later to explain the reductions with hydrogen gas catalysed by palladium.

Reduction of carbonyl groups

We should now look in detail at reductions of carbonyl compounds, and in doing so we shall introduce a few more specialized reducing agents. Then we will come back to the other type of reduction in the salmefamol synthesis—catalytic hydrogenation.

How to reduce aldehydes and ketones to alcohols

We don’t need to spend much time on this—sodium borohydride does it very well, and is a lot easier to handle than lithium aluminium hydride. It is also more selective: it will reduce this nitroketone, for example, where LiAlH₄ would reduce the nitro group as well.

You met borohydride in Chapter 6, where we discussed the mechanism of its reactions. Sodium borohydride will reduce only in protic solvents (usually ethanol, methanol, or water) or in the presence of electrophilic metal cations such as Li⁺ or Mg₂⁺ (LiBH₄ can be used in THF, for example). The precise mechanism, surprisingly, is still unclear, but follows a course something like this with the dotted lines representing some association, perhaps coordination or bond formation.
The essence of the reaction is the transfer of a hydrogen atom with two electrons (called hydride transfer though no hydride ion is involved). In addition, the developing negative charge on oxygen gets help from the alcohol or the sodium ion or both and a molecule of alcohol adds to the boron during or immediately after the reduction. The by-product, an alkoxyborohydride anion, is itself a reducing agent, and can go on to reduce three more molecules of carbonyl compound, transferring step-by-step all of its hydrogen atoms.

How to reduce esters to alcohols

LiAlH₄ is often the best reagent, and gives alcohols by the mechanism we discussed in Chapter 12. As a milder alternative (LiAlH₄ has caused countless fires through careless handling), lithium borohydride in alcoholic solution will reduce esters—in fact, it has useful selectivity for esters over acids or amides that LiAlH₄ does not have. Sodium borohydride reduces most esters only rather slowly.

How to reduce amides to amines

Again, LiAlH₄ is a good reagent for this transformation. The mechanism follows very much the same course as the reduction of esters, but there is a key difference at the steps boxed in yellow and in green.

How to reduce carboxylic acids to alcohols

The best reagent for this is borane, BH₃. Borane is, in fact, a gas with the structure B₃H₆, but it can be ‘tamed’ as a liquid by complexing it with ether (Et₂O), THF, or dimethyl sulfide (DMS, Me₂S).
Although borane appears superficially similar to borohydride, it is not an ion and that makes all the difference to its reactivity. Whereas borohydride reacts best with the most electrophilic carbonyl groups, borane’s reactivity is dominated by its desire to accept an electron pair into its empty p orbital. In the context of carbonyl group reductions, this means that it reduces electron-rich carbonyl groups fastest. The carbonyl groups of acyl chlorides and esters are relatively electron-poor (Cl and OR are very electronegative); borane will not touch acyl chlorides and reduces esters only slowly. But it will reduce amides.

The Lewis basic carbonyl group forms a complex with the empty p orbital of the Lewis acidic borane. Hydride transfer is then possible from anionic boron to electrophilic carbon. The resulting tetrahedral intermediate collapses to an iminium ion that is reduced again by the borane.

Borane also makes a good alternative to LiAlH₄ for reducing amides as the two reagents have slightly different chemoselectivity—in this example borane reduces an amide in the presence of an ester.

Borane is an excellent reagent for reducing carboxylic acids. It reacts with them first of all by forming triacylborates, with evolution of hydrogen gas. Esters are usually less electrophilic than ketones because of conjugation between the carbonyl group and the lone pair of the sp³ hybridized oxygen atom—but, in these boron esters, the oxygen next to the boron has to share its lone pair between the carbonyl group and the boron’s empty p orbital, so they are considerably more reactive than normal esters, or the lithium carboxylates formed from carboxylic acids and LiAlH₄.

Borane is a highly chemoselective reagent for the reduction of carboxylic acids in the presence of other reducible functional groups such as esters, and even ketones.
Borane and lithium borohydride are a most useful pair of reducing agents, with opposite selectivities. Japanese chemists used an enzyme to make a single enantiomer of the acid below, and were able to reduce either the ester or the carboxylic acid by choosing lithium borohydride or borane as their reagent. Check for yourself that the lactones (cyclic esters) in black frames are enantiomers.

How to reduce esters and amides to aldehydes

The step boxed in yellow in the ester reduction scheme on p. 000 gave an aldehyde. The aldehyde is more readily reduced than the ester, so the reduction doesn’t stop there, but carries on to the alcohol oxidation level. How, then, can you reduce an ester to an aldehyde? This is a real problem in synthetic chemistry—the ester below, for example, is easy to make by methods you will meet in Chapter 27. But an important synthesis of the antibiotic monensin requires the aldehyde.

In this case, the chemists decided simply to put up with the fact that LiAlH₄ gives the alcohol, and re-oxidize the alcohol back to the aldehyde using chromium(VI) (see later for details of this step). There is, however, a reagent that will sometimes do the job in a single step, though you must bear in mind that this is not at all a general reaction. The reagent is known as DIBAL (or DIBAH or DIBALH—diisobutyl aluminium hydride).

DIBAL is in some ways like borane—it exists as a bridged dimer, and it becomes a reducing agent only after it has formed a Lewis acid–base complex, so it too reduces electron-rich carbonyl groups most rapidly. DIBAL will reduce esters even at −70 °C, and at this temperature the tetrahedral intermediate may be stable. Only in the aqueous work-up does it collapse to the aldehyde when excess DIBAL has been destroyed so that no further reduction is possible.

A stable tetrahedral intermediate is more likely in the reduction of lactones, and DIBAL is most reliable in the reduction of lactones to lactols (cyclic hemiacetals), as in E.J. Corey’s synthesis of the prostaglandins. The key step, the hydride transfer from Al, is shown in the green frame.
In the amide reduction scheme on p. 000, the step framed in green gives an iminium ion. Stopping the reaction here would therefore provide a way of making aldehydes from amides. Because these tetrahedral intermediates are rather more stable than those from ester reduction, this can often be achieved simply by carrying out the amide reduction, and quenching, at 0 °C (–70 °C is usually needed to stop esters overreducing to alcohols).

DIBAL is also good for reducing nitriles to aldehydes. Indeed, this reaction and the reduction of lactones to lactols are the best things that DIBAL does.

Now, let’s go back to the salmefamol synthesis we started with on p. 000. The other reducing agent used in the sequence is hydrogen gas over a palladium catalyst. Catalytic hydrogenation has two functions here: firstly, it removes the two benzyl groups from the nitrogen, revealing a primary amine (this reaction is discussed later in this chapter), and, secondly, it reduces the imine that forms between this amine and the ketone added in this second step—an instance of reductive amination. We shall consider the second first, because it is another example of chemoselectivity in the reduction of a carbonyl-like group. You met reductive amination in Chapter 14, but as a reminder, here is the process again.

‘Pd/C’ means palladium metal dispersed on a charcoal support—usually 5–10% by mass Pd and 90–95% C. It is made by suspending charcoal powder in a PdCl₂ solution, and then reducing the PdCl₂ to Pd metal, usually with H₂ gas, but sometimes with formaldehyde, HCHO (which becomes oxidized to formic acid, HCO₂H). The palladium metal precipitates on to the charcoal, which can be filtered off and dried. The fine Pd particles present maximum surface area to the reaction they catalyse and, while Pd is an expensive metal, it is recyclable since the Pd/C is insoluble and can be recovered by filtration.
Catalytic hydrogenation reduces the imine (as the protonated iminium ion) but not the ketone from which it is formed. This chemoselectivity (reduction of iminium ions but not ketones) is also displayed by sodium cyanoborohydride and we can add NaCNBH$_3$ to complete our table of reactivity, if we insert imines at the left-hand end.

Now, what about the removal of the $N$-benzyl groups? This reaction is a hydrogenolysis—a cleavage of a C–X single bond by addition of hydrogen—and is just one of the many reactions hydrogen will do over metal catalysts. The ‘mechanism’ probably goes something like this.

We put ‘mechanism’ in inverted commas because this isn’t really a proper chemical mechanism, more a scheme with a suggested sequence of events. The key points are that the benzyl amine co-ordinates to the metal catalyst via the electron-rich aromatic ring. The C–N bond is now in close proximity to the palladium-bound hydrogen atoms, and is reduced.

Because of the need for initial coordination with the catalyst, only benzylic or allylic C–X bonds can be reduced, but the X can be oxygen as well as nitrogen. We will come back to benzyl groups, and their hydrogenolysis, as a means for temporary protection of amines and alcohols later in the chapter. For the moment, though, we should take a broader look at catalytic hydrogenation as our second (after hydride reduction) important class of reductions.
Catalytic hydrogenation

You need to know about three sorts of hydrogenation reactions: the hydrogenation of a triple bond to a Z-alkene using ‘Lindlar’s catalyst’, a poisoned form of palladium on barium sulfate; the hydrogenation of alkenes (including the imine above); and the hydrogenolysis of benzyl ethers and amines. We shall discuss each of these. The mechanism of hydrogenations is quite different from that of reductions by nucleophilic reducing agents like borohydride and, for this reason, catalytic hydrogenations have a totally different chemoselectivity. For example, it is quite possible to hydrogenate double bonds in the presence of aldehydes.

Even aromatic rings can be reduced by hydrogenation: in these examples the carbonyl groups survive while phenyl is reduced to cyclohexyl.

The catalyst in each of these three reductions is a different metal. Palladium and platinum are the most commonly used metal catalysts for hydrogenation, but hydrogenation can also work with nickel, rhodium, or ruthenium. The choice of catalyst depends on the compound to be reduced.

Catalytic hydrogenation is often chosen as a method for reduction because of its chemoselectivity for C=C double bonds and benzylic C–X bonds over C=O groups. The most important hydrogenation involving a carbonyl compound is not actually a reduction of the C=O double bond. Hydrogenation of acyl chlorides gives aldehydes in a reaction known as the Rosenmund reaction—really a hydrogenolysis of a C–Cl bond.

This is a good way of reducing compounds at the carboxylic acid oxidation level to aldehydes, which is why we included it in the table of carbonyl reductions on p. 000. The tertiary amine is needed both to neutralize the HCl produced in the reaction and to moderate the activity of the catalyst (and prevent overreduction). You will notice too that the catalyst support is different: Pd/BaSO_{4} rather than Pd/C. BaSO_{4} (and CaCO_{3}) are commonly used as supports with more easily reduced substrates because they allow the products to escape from the catalyst more rapidly and prevent overreduction. Acyl chlorides are among the easiest of all compounds to hydrogenate—look at this example.

Although aromatic rings can be hydrogenated, as you saw on p. 000, neither they nor the aldehyde product are reduced under these conditions and, as with hydride reductions of carbonyl compounds, we can draw up a sequence of reactivity towards hydrogenation. The precise ordering varies with the catalyst, especially with regard to the interpolation of the (less important, because other methods are usually better) carbonyl reductions (in yellow). Some catalysts are particularly selective...
towards certain classes of compound—for example, Pt, Rh, and Ru will selectively hydrogenate aromatic rings in the presence of benzylic C–O bonds, while with Pd catalysts the benzylic C–O bonds are hydrogenolysed faster.

Like hydrogenolysis, the mechanism of the hydrogenation of C=C double bonds starts with coordination of the double bond to the catalyst surface.

Two hydrogen atoms are transferred to the alkene, and they are often both added to the same face of the alkene. In Chapter 20 you met other reactions of alkenes: some, like bromination, were anti-selective, but others like epoxidation were syn-selective like hydrogenation.
A note on some catalysts

Catalytic hydrogenations take place only on the surface of the particles of a metal catalyst. The metal must therefore be very finely divided and is often mixed with a *support*—this is what Pd/C or Pd/BaSO₄ means—palladium particles deposited on a support of powdered charcoal or barium sulfate. Palladium on charcoal is probably the most commonly used catalyst, but three others deserve special mention.

1 You will meet Lindlar’s catalyst in Chapter 31 but we will mention it now because of its special chemoselectivity. Unlike the other hydrogenations we have described, the Lindlar catalyst will hydrogenate alkynes to alkenes, rather than alkenes to alkanes. This requires rather subtle chemoselectivity: alkenes are usually hydrogenated at least as easily as alkynes, so we need to be sure the reaction stops once the alkene has been formed. The Lindlar catalyst is a palladium catalyst (Pd/CaCO₃) deliberately poisoned with lead. The lead lessens the activity of the catalyst and makes further reduction of the alkene product slow: most palladium catalysts would reduce point, making it suitable for making margarine. Not all the double bonds are hydrogenated, of course: margarine manufacturers are desperate to tell us that their products are still ‘high in unsaturated fatty acids’. Many also advertise that they are ‘low in trans unsaturated fatty acids’, because of a suggested link between incidence of coronary heart disease and trans unsaturated fatty acid intake.
alkynes all the way to alkanes. Best selectivities are obtained if quinoline is added to the reaction, just as in the Rosenmund reaction, and, in fact, alkyne to alkene reductions work with Pd/BaSO$_4$ + quinoline too. Even so, Lindlar reactions often have to be monitored carefully to make sure that overreduction is not taking place.

2 Adams’s catalyst is formally PtO$_2$, and you have already seen this at work in one or two examples. The actual catalyst is, however, not the oxide of platinum, but the platinum metal that forms by reduction of PtO$_2$ to Pt during the hydrogenation.

3 Raney nickel (often abbreviated to RaNi) is a finely divided form of nickel made from a nickel–aluminium alloy. The aluminium is dissolved away using concentrated aqueous sodium hydroxide, leaving the nickel as a fine powder. The process liberates H$_2$ (check this for yourself—on paper!), and some of this hydrogen remains adsorbed on to the nickel catalyst. This means that some hydrogenations, particularly those of C–S bonds, which you will come across later in this chapter and in Chapter 46, can be carried out just by using freshly prepared Raney nickel, with no added H$_2$ (RaNi as reagent, not catalyst).

How to reduce unsaturated carbonyl compounds

Where reduction of an $\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated carbonyl compound takes place is really a question of regioselectivity, not chemoselectivity, but it’s useful to discuss the problem here having just introduced you to these hydrogenation methods. When we first covered conjugate addition in Chapter 10, we pointed out that hydride reducing agents are not good choices for the selective reduction of the C=O bond of unsaturated carbonyl compounds because they tend to add to the double bond as well, giving first the saturated carbonyl compound, which is then reduced to the alcohol. The way to get regioselective addition directly to the carbonyl group is to add a hard, Lewis-acidic metal salt, such as CeCl$_3$.

It should not surprise you that regioselective reduction of the C=C double bond alone is best done using catalytic hydrogenation as the C=C bond is weaker than the C=O bond. The flavouring compound known as ‘raspberry ketone’ is made by this method.

Nitro group reduction

Near the top of the list of reactivity towards hydrogenation lies the NO$_2$ group and in Chapter 22 we saw how the sequence of nitration of aromatic rings followed by reduction was a useful route to aromatic amines. The reduction can be carried out by Sn/HCl but catalytic hydrogenation is much simpler. The reaction is usually done in ethanol with a Pd or Pt catalyst and it may be necessary to add a weak acid to prevent the amine produced from poisoning the catalyst.
The real gain over the Sn/HCl method is in the work-up. Instead of separating and disposing of voluminous toxic tin residues, a simple filtration to remove the catalyst, evaporation, and crystallization or distillation gives the amine.

Getting rid of functional groups

Functional groups can be useful for putting a molecule together, but their presence may not be required in the final product. We need ways of getting rid of them. Hydrogenation of alkenes is one way that you have seen, and alcohols can be got rid of either by elimination and then hydrogenation or by tosylation and substitution using borohydride to provide a nucleophilic hydrogen atom.

Removal of carbonyl groups is harder, though there are several possible methods. C–O bonds are strong, but C–S bonds are much weaker, and are often easily reduced with Raney nickel (we come back to this in Chapter 46). We can get rid of aldehyde and ketone carbonyl groups by making them into thioacetals, sulfur analogues of acetals, formed in a reaction analogous to acetal formation (p. 000) but using a dithiol with a Lewis acid catalyst. Freshly prepared Raney nickel carries enough H₂ (p. 000) to reduce the thioacetal without added hydrogen.

A slightly more vigorous method, known as the Wolf–Kishner reduction, is driven by the elimination of nitrogen gas from a hydrazone. Hot concentrated sodium hydroxide solution deprotonates the hydrazone, which can then eliminate an alkyl anion—a reaction you would usually be wary of writing, but which is made possible by the thermodynamic stability of N₂.

The third method is the simplest to do, but has the most complicated mechanism. The Clemmensen reduction is also rather violent, and really reasonable only for compounds with just the one functional group. It uses zinc metal dissolving in hydrochloric acid. As the metal dissolves, it gives up two electrons—in the absence of something else to do, these electrons would reduce the H⁺ in the acid to H₂, and give ZnCl₂ and H₂. But in the presence of a carbonyl compound, the electrons go to reduce the C=O bond.
The mechanism has a good deal in common with a whole class of reductions, of which the Clemmensen is a member, known as **dissolving metal reductions**. We shall now look at these as our third (after metal hydrides and catalytic hydrogenation) important class of reducing agents.

**Dissolving metal reductions**

Group 1 metals, such as sodium or lithium, readily give up their single outer-shell electron as they dissolve in solvents such as liquid ammonia or ethanol. Electrons are the simplest reducing agents, and they will reduce carbonyl compounds, alkynes, or aromatic rings—in fact any functional group with a low-energy $\pi^*$ orbital into which the electron can go.

We shall start by looking at the dissolving metal reduction of aromatic rings, known as the **Birch reduction**. Here is the reaction of benzene with lithium in liquid ammonia. At first sight, this reaction looks quite improbable, with an aromatic ring ending up as an unconjugated diene! The mechanism explains why we get this regiochemistry, and also why the reaction stops there—in other words why the dissolving lithium reduces an aromatic ring more readily than an alkene.

The first thing to note is that when lithium or sodium dissolve in ammonia they give an intense blue solution. Blue is the colour of solvated electrons: these group 1 metals ionize to give Li$^+$ or Na$^+$ and $e^-(\text{NH}_3)_n$—the gaps between the ammonia molecules are just the right size for an electron. With time, the blue colour fades, as the electrons reduce the ammonia to NH$_2^-$ and hydrogen gas. Sodium amide, NaNH$_2$, the base you met early in this book, is made by dissolving Na in liquid NH$_3$ and then waiting till the solution is no longer blue.

Birch reductions use those blue solutions, with their solvated electrons, as reducing agents. The reduction of NH$_3$ to NH$_2^-$ and H$_2$ is quite slow, and a better electron acceptor will get reduced in preference. In the example above, the electrons go into benzene’s lowest lying antibonding orbital (its LUMO). The species we get can be represented in several ways, all of them radical anions (molecules with one excess, unpaired electron).

The radical anion is very basic, and it picks up a proton from the ethanol that is in the reaction mixture. The molecule is now no longer anionic, but it is still a radical. It can pick up another electron, which pairs with the radical to give an anion, which is quenched again by the proton source (ethanol).

The regiochemistry of the reaction is determined at the final protonation step—the anion itself is of course delocalized and could react at either end to give a conjugated diene, which would be more
stable. Why then does it choose to pick up a proton in the middle and give a less stable isomer? Well, the full explanation is beyond the scope of this book, but suffice it to say that kinetically controlled reactions of pentadienyl anions with electrophiles typically take place at this central carbon.

Further questions of regioselectivity arise when there are substituents around the aromatic ring. Here are two examples. The second product was used by Evans in his synthesis of the alkaloid luciduline. These examples serve to illustrate the general principle that electron-withdrawing groups promote ipso, para reduction while electron-donating groups promote ortho, meta reduction.

The explanation must lie in the distribution of electron density in the intermediate radical anions. Electron-withdrawing groups stabilize electron density at the ipso and para positions, and protonation occurs para, while electron-donating groups stabilize ortho and meta electron density.

If you want the conjugated dienes as products, it is quite a simple matter to isomerize them using an acid catalyst. In fact, a small amount (about 20%) of the conjugated product is produced anyway in the reaction of anisole above.

With anilines, it is impossible to stop the isomerization taking place during the reaction, and Birch reduction always gives conjugated enamines.

Birch reduction works for alkynes too, and is a good way of reducing them, to trans double bonds (the best way to reduce them to cis-alkenes is via \( \text{H}_2 \) and the Lindlar catalyst).

The mechanism follows the same course as the reduction of aromatic rings, but the vinyl anion is basic enough to deprotonate ammonia, so no added proton source is required. Vinyl anions are geometrically unstable, and choose to be \( E \).
One functional group may be more reactive than another for *kinetic* or for *thermodynamic* reasons

We hope that our survey of the important methods for reduction has shown you that, by choosing the right reagent, you can often react the functional group you want. The chemoselectivity you obtain is kinetic chemoselectivity—reaction at one functional group is simply faster than at another. Now look at the acylation of an amino alcohol (which is, in fact, a synthesis of the painkiller isobucaine) using benzoyl chloride under *acid* conditions. The hydroxyl group is acylated to form an ester. Yet under *basic* conditions, the selectivity is quite different, and an amide is formed.

![Acylating amino alcohol](image)

A clue to why the selectivity reverses is shown below—it is, in fact, possible to interconvert the ester and the amide simply by treating either with acid or with base.

The selectivity in these reactions is *thermodynamic* chemoselectivity. Under conditions in which the ester and amide can equilibrate, the product obtained is the more stable of the two, not necessarily the one that is formed faster. In base the more stable amide predominates, while in acid the amine is protonated, which prevents it from acting as a nucleophile and removes it from the equilibrium, giving the ester.

**How to react the less reactive group (I)**

The relative reactivity of the alcohol and amine in the example just given could be overturned by conducting a reaction under thermodynamic control. In kinetically controlled reactions, the idea that you can conduct chemoselective reactions on the more reactive of a pair of functional groups—carbonyl-based ones, for example—is straightforward. But what if you want to react the less reactive of the pair? There are two commonly used solutions. The first is illustrated by a compound needed by chemists at Cambridge to study an epoxidation reaction. They were able to make the following diol, but wanted to acetylate only the more hindered secondary hydroxyl group.
Treatment with one equivalent of an acyl chloride agent is no good because the primary hydroxyl group is more reactive; instead, the chemists acetylated both hydroxyl groups, and then treated the bis-acetate with mildly basic methanol ($K_2CO_3$, MeOH, 20°C), which reacted only at the less hindered acetoxy group and gave the desired compound in 65% yield.

In other words, start by letting both groups react, and then go backwards but reverse the reaction at only one of the groups. The likelihood is that the less favourable reaction (in other words, reaction at the less reactive group) will be less readily reversed.

**Chemoselectivity in the reactions of dianions**

The idea that a reaction that is less easy to do will be easier to undo is central to a useful bit of chemoselectivity that can be obtained in the reactions of dianions. 1-Propynol can be deprotonated twice by strong bases—first, at the hydroxyl group to make an alkoxide anion (the $pK_a$ of the OH group is about 16) and, secondly, at the alkyne ($pK_a$ of the order of 25) to make a ‘dianion’. When this dianion reacts with electrophiles it always reacts at the alkylnyl anion and not at the alkoxide.

This reaction is important in a synthesis of the perfumery compound *cis*-jasmone. The alkyne is the precursor to *cis*-jasmone’s alkene side chain.

The principle here is that the anion that is formed last reacts first.

Vollhardt used this sort of chemoselectivity in his 1977 synthesis of the female sex hormone oestrone. He needed an alkyl iodide, which could be made by reacting an anion of a bis-alkyne with ethylene oxide.
Although anions can often be formed straightforwardly next to alkynes, there are two other more acidic protons (green) in the molecule that would be removed by base before the yellow proton. However, treatment with three equivalents of butyl lithium removes all three, and the trianion reacts with ethylene oxide at the last-formed anionic centre to give the required compound.

How to react the less reactive group (II): protecting groups

The usual way of reacting a less reactive group in the presence of a more reactive one is to use a protecting group. This tertiary alcohol, for example, could be made from a keto-ester if we could get phenylmagnesium bromide to react with the ester rather than with the ketone.

As you would expect, simply adding phenylmagnesium bromide to ethyl acetoacetate leads mainly to addition to the more electrophilic ketone.

One way of making the alcohol we want is to protect the ketone as an acetal. An acetal-protecting group (shown in black) is used.

The first step puts the protecting group on to the (more electrophilic) ketone carbonyl, making it no longer reactive towards nucleophilic addition. The Grignard then adds to the ester, and finally a ‘deprotection’ step, acid-catalysed hydrolysis of the acetal, gives us back the ketone. An acetal is an ideal choice here—acetals are stable to base (the conditions of the reaction we want to do), but are readily cleaved in acid.

By protecting sensitive functional groups like ketones it becomes possible to make reagents that would otherwise be unstable. In a synthesis of the natural product porantherine, a compound based on this structure was needed.
One way to make it is to add a Grignard reagent twice to ethyl formate. But, of course, a ketone-containing Grignard is an impossibility as it would self-destruct, so an acetal-protected compound was used.

![Diagram of chemical reaction]

Strongly nucleophilic reagents like Grignard reagents and organolithiums are also strong bases, and may need protecting from acidic protons as well as from electrophilic carbonyl groups. Among the most troublesome are the protons of hydroxyl groups. When some American chemists wanted to make the antiviral agent Brefeldin A, they needed a simple alkynol.

A synthesis could start with the same bromoketone as the one above: reduction gives an alcohol, but alkylation of an alkynyl anion with this compound is not possible, because the anion will just deprotonate the hydroxyl group.

![Diagram of chemical reaction]

The answer is to protect the hydroxyl group, and the group chosen here was a silyl ether. Such ethers are made by reacting the alcohol with a trialkylsilyl chloride (here t-butyl dimethyl silyl chloride, or TBDMS) in the presence of a weak base, usually imidazole, which also acts as a nucleophilic catalyst (Chapter 12).

![Diagram of chemical reaction]

Silicon has a strong affinity for electronegative elements, particularly O, F, and Cl, so trialkylsilyl ethers are attacked by hydroxide ion, water, or fluoride ion but are more stable to carbon or nitrogen bases or nucleophiles. They are usually removed with aqueous acid or fluoride salts, particularly Bu₄N⁺F⁻ which is soluble in organic solvents. In fact, TBDMS is one member of a whole family of trialkylsilyl protecting groups and their relative stability to nucleophiles of various kinds is determined by the three alkyl groups carried by silicon. The most labile, trimethylsilyl (TMS), is removed simply on treatment with methanol, while the most stable require hydrofluoric acid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Deprotection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trialkylsilyl</td>
<td>RO-SiMe₃</td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>nucleophiles, C or N bases</td>
<td>R₃SiCl, base</td>
<td>H⁺, H₂O, or F⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R₃Si, e.g. TBDMS)</td>
<td>RO-SiMe₂Bu⁺</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Why can’t we just use a simple alkyl ether (methyl, say) to protect a hydroxyl group? There is no problem making the ether, and it will survive most reactions—but there is a problem getting an ether off again. This is always a consideration in protecting group chemistry—you want a group that is stable to the conditions of whatever reaction you are going to do (in these examples, strong bases and nucleophiles), but can then be removed under mild conditions that do not result in total decomposition of a sensitive molecule. What we need then, is an ether that has an ‘Achilles’ heel’—a feature that makes it susceptible to attack by some specific reagent or under specific conditions. One such group is the tetrahydropyranyl (THP) group. Although it is stable under basic conditions, as an ether would be, it is an acetal—the presence of the second oxygen atom is its ‘Achilles’ heel’ and makes the THP protecting group susceptible to hydrolysis under acidic conditions. You could see the lone pair on the second oxygen atom as a ‘safety catch’ that is released only in the presence of acid.

Making the THP acetal has to be done in a slightly unusual way because the usual carbonyl compound plus two alcohols is inappropriate. Alcohols are protected by reacting them with an enol ether, dihydropyran, under acid catalysis. Notice the oxonium intermediate (formed by a familiar mechanism from Chapter 14)—just as in a normal acetal-forming reaction. In this example the THP group is at work preventing a hydroxyl group from interfering in the reduction of an ester.

The THP-protected compound above is an intermediate in a synthesis of the insecticide milbemycin as a single enantiomer. It needs to be converted to this alkyne—and now the other hydroxyl group will need protecting.

This time, though, TBDMS will not do, because the protecting group needs to withstand the acidic conditions needed to remove the THP protecting group! What is more, the protecting group needs to be able to survive acid conditions in later steps of the synthesis of the insecticide. The answer...
is to use a third type of hydroxyl-protecting group, a benzyl ether. Benzyl (Bn) protecting groups are put on using strong base (usually sodium hydride) plus benzyl bromide, and are stable to both acid and base.

The benzyl ether’s Achilles’ heel is the aromatic ring and, after reading the first half of this chapter, you should be able to suggest conditions that will take it off again: hydrogenation (hydrogenolysis) over a palladium catalyst.

**benzyl ether deprotection: catalytic hydrogenation**

\[
\text{Ph-}O-R + H_2, \text{Pd/C} \rightarrow \text{PhMe} + \text{ROH}
\]

Benzyl ethers can sometimes be removed by acid, if the acid has a nucleophilic conjugate base. HBr, for example, will remove a benzyl ether because Br⁻ is a good enough nucleophile to displace ROH, though only at the reactive, benzylic centre.

**benzyl ether deprotection: acid with nucleophilic counterion**

\[
\text{Ph-}O-R + HBr \rightarrow \text{PhCH}_2\text{Br} + \text{ROH}
\]

HBr in acetic acid (just the solvent) is used to remove the benzyl ether protecting groups in this example, which forms part of a synthesis of the alkaloid galanthamine.

We said earlier that simple methyl ethers are inappropriate as protecting groups for OH because they are too hard to take off again. That is usually true, but not if the OH is phenolic—ArOH is an
Alternatives to HBr include BBr$_3$, usually the favoured reagent, HI, and Me$_3$SiCl. You will see the reaction of phenol ethers with BBr$_3$ in Chapter 17.

Protecting groups may be useful, but they are also wasteful—both of time, because there are two extra steps to do (putting the group on and taking it off), and of material, because these steps may not go in 100% yield. Here’s one way to avoid using them. During the development of the best-selling anti-asthma drug salbutamol, the triol boxed in green was needed. With large quantities of salbutamol already available, it seemed most straightforward to make the triol by adding phenylmagnesium bromide to an ester available from salbutamol. Unfortunately, the ester also contains three acidic protons, making it look as though the hydroxyl and amine groups all need protecting. But, in fact, it was possible to do the reaction just by adding a large excess of Grignard reagent:

- enough to remove the acidic protons and to add to the ester.

This strategy is easy to try, and, providing the Grignard reagent isn’t valuable (you can buy PhMgBr in bottles), is much more economical than putting on protecting groups and taking them off again. But it doesn’t always work—there is no way of telling whether it will until you try the reaction in the lab. In this closely related reaction, for example, the same chemists found that they needed to protect both the phenolic hydroxyl group (but not the other, normal alcohol OH!) as a benzyl ether and the amine NH as a benzyl amine. Both protecting groups come off in one hydrogenation step.

Benzyl groups are one way of protecting secondary amines against strong bases that might deprotonate them. But it is the nucleophilicity of amines that usually poses problems of chemoselectivity, rather than the acidity of their NH groups, and we come back to ways of protecting them from electrophiles when we deal with the synthesis of peptides in Chapter 25.

### Protecting group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Deprotection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetal (dioxolane)</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>ketones, aldehydes</td>
<td>nucleophiles, bases</td>
<td>HO- - HO</td>
<td>water, H$^+$ cat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trialkysilyl (R$_3$Si, e.g. TBDMS)</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>nucleophiles, C or N bases</td>
<td>R$_3$SiCl, base</td>
<td>H$^+$, H$_2$O, or F$^-$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetrahydropyranyl (THP)</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>strong bases</td>
<td>dihydro-</td>
<td>H$^+$, H$_2$O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We have dealt with protecting groups for C=O, OH, and NH that resist nucleophiles, acids, and base. Sometimes functional groups need protecting against oxidation, and we finish our introduction to protecting groups with an example. During a synthesis of the bacterial product rapamycin, an epoxy alcohol needed converting to a ketone through a sequence that involves selective oxidation of only one of two hydroxyl groups. The group to be oxidized is there in the starting material, so it can be protected straight away. The protecting group (Bn) needs to be acid-stable, because the next step is to open the epoxide with methanol, revealing the second hydroxyl group. This then needs protecting—TBDMS was chosen, so as to be stable to hydrogenolysis, which deprotects the hydroxyl that we want to oxidize. Finally, oxidation gives the ketone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Deprotection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benzyl ether (OBn)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Benzyl Ether Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>almost everything</td>
<td>NaH, BnBr</td>
<td>H₂, Pd/C, or HBr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methyl ether (ArOMe)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Methyl Ether Structure" /></td>
<td>phenols (ArOH)</td>
<td>bases</td>
<td>NaH, Mel, or (MeO)₂SO₂</td>
<td>BBr₃, HBr, HI, Me₃Si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzy l amine (NBr)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Benzy l Amin e Structure" /></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>strong bases</td>
<td>BnBr, K₂CO₃</td>
<td>H₂, Pd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bergamotene**

An acidic proton posed a potential problem during E.J. Corey’s synthesis of bergamotene (a component of the fragrance of Earl Grey tea). You met the Wittig reaction in Chapter 14, and phosphonium ylids are another type of basic, nucleophilic reagent that –OH groups often need protecting against. But, in this synthesis, a successful Wittig reaction was carried out even in the presence of a carboxylic acid, again by using an excess of the phosphonium ylid. We talk about carboxylic acid protection in the next chapter. In fact the carboxylate anion is itself a kind of protecting group as it discourages the rather basic Wittig reagent from removing a proton to form an enolate.

We have dealt with protecting groups for C=O, OH, and NH that resist nucleophiles, acids, and base. Sometimes functional groups need protecting against oxidation, and we finish our introduction to protecting groups with an example. During a synthesis of the bacterial product rapamycin, an epoxy alcohol needed converting to a ketone through a sequence that involves selective oxidation of only one of two hydroxyl groups. The group to be oxidized is there in the starting material, so it can be protected straight away. The protecting group (OBn) needs to be acid-stable, because the next step is to open the epoxide with methanol, revealing the second hydroxyl group. This then needs protecting—TBDMS was chosen, so as to be stable to hydrogenolysis, which deprotects the hydroxyl that we want to oxidize. Finally, oxidation gives the ketone.

In this chapter we have talked about most of the steps in this sequence, except the epoxide-opening reaction (for which read Chapters 17 and 18) and the oxidation step. Which reagent would a chemist choose to oxidize the alcohol to the ketone, and why? We shall now move on to look at oxidizing agents in detail.

**Oxidizing agents**

We dealt in detail earlier in the chapter with reducing agents and their characteristic chemoselectivities. Oxidizing agents are equally important, and in the chapter on electrophilic addition to alkenes we told you about peracids as oxidizing agents for C=O double bonds—they give epoxides. But

---

In Chapter 37 you will find out that peracids also react with ketones, but that need not concern us here.
peracids do not react with alcohols: they are chemoselective oxidants of C=C double bonds only. Later in the book, you will meet more oxidizing agents, such as osmium tetroxide (OsO₄) and ozone (O₃)—these are also chemoselective for double bonds, because they react with the C=C \( \pi \) bond, and we shall leave them until Chapter 35. In this section we will be concerned only with oxidizing agents that oxidize alcohols and carbonyl compounds.

The most commonly used methods for oxidizing alcohols are based around metals in high oxidation states, often chromium(VI) or manganese(VII), and you will see that mechanistically they are quite similar—they both rely on the formation of a bond between the hydroxyl group and the metal. Another class of oxidations, those that use halogens, sulfur, or nitrogen in high oxidation states, we will deal with relatively briefly.

### Oxidizing agents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemoselective for C=C double bonds(^a)</th>
<th>Chemoselective for alcohols or carbonyl compounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>peracids, RCO₂H (Chapter 20)</td>
<td>Cr(VI) compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osmium tetroxide, OsO₄ (Chapter 35)</td>
<td>Mn(VII) compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ozone, O₃ (Chapter 35)</td>
<td>some high oxidation state Hal, N, or S compounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)not dealt with in this chapter.

---

### How to oxidize secondary alcohols to ketones

We start with this, because overoxidation is difficult. Provided the alcohol is not acid-sensitive, a good method is sodium dichromate in dilute sulfuric acid. This is usually added to a solution of the alcohol in acetone, and is known as the Jones oxidation.

The mechanism starts with the formation of HCrO₄⁻ ions, that is, Cr(VI), from dichromate ion in solution. In acid, these form chromate esters with alcohols. The esters (boxed in black) decompose by elimination of the Cr(IV) HCrO₃, which subsequently reacts with a Cr(VI) species to yield 2 \( \times \) Cr(V). These Cr(V) species can oxidize alcohols in the same way, and are thereby reduced to Cr(III) (the final metal-containing by-product). Cr(VI) is orange and Cr(III) is green, so the progress of the reaction is easy to follow by colour change.

Chromic acid is best avoided if acid-sensitive alcohols are to be oxidized, and an alternative reagent for these is PCC (pyridinium chlorochromate), which can be used in dichloromethane.

### How to oxidize primary alcohols to aldehydes

Aqueous methods like the Jones oxidation are no good for this, since the aldehyde that forms is further oxidized to acid via its hydrate. The oxidizing agent treats the hydrate as an alcohol, and oxidizes it to the acid.
The key thing is to avoid water—so PCC in dichloromethane works quite well. The related reagent PDC (pyridinium dichromate) is particularly suitable for oxidation to aldehydes.

Some very mild oxidizing agents are being more and more widely used for the synthesis of very sensitive aldehydes. One of these is known as TPAP (tetra-\textit{n}-propylammonium perruthenate, pronounced ‘tee-pap’).

TPAP can be used catalytically, avoiding the large amounts of toxic heavy metal by-products generated by most chromium oxidations. The stoichiometric oxidant in this reaction is ‘NMO’ (\textit{N}-methylmorpholine-\textit{N}-oxide), which is reduced to the amine, reoxidizing the ruthenium back to Ru(VI).

Another important modern reagent (discovered in 1983) is known as the Dess–Martin periodinane, and is an iodine compound that can be made from 2-iodobenzoic acid, itself available from anthranilic acid via the diazonium salt route, as described in the last chapter.

It will oxidize even very sensitive alcohols to carbonyl compounds—few others, for example, would give a \textit{cis-\alpha,\beta}-unsaturated aldehyde from a \textit{cis}-allylic alcohol without isomerizing it to \textit{trans}, or producing other by-products.

We shall leave detailed discussion of one more method till much later, in Chapter 46 (p. 000), since the mechanism involves some sulfur chemistry you will meet there. But we introduce it here because of its synthetic importance. Known as the Swern oxidation, it uses a sulfoxide [S(IV)] as the oxidizing agent. The sulfoxide is reduced to a sulfide, while the alcohol is oxidized to an aldehyde.

How to oxidize primary alcohols or aldehydes to carboxylic acids

This is the ‘overoxidation’ we were trying to avoid in oxidizing alcohols to aldehydes, and is best done with an aqueous solution of Cr(VI) or Mn(VII). Acidic or basic aqueous potassium perman-
ganate is often a good choice. From alcohols in acidic solution the mechanism follows very much the lines of the chromic acid mechanism; from aldehydes, the mechanism is very similar.

oxidation of aldehydes with Mn(VII)

To conclude...

In the next chapter we will look at the ways in which the ideas and principles we have talked about in this chapter, and the reactions you have met in the 23 preceding ones, can be used in a practical way to make useful and interesting molecules. We will look at the synthesis of some of the molecules found in nature, such as hormones, plant-derived products with medicinal properties, and insect pheromones, as well as others that Nature has not made but that for one reason or another man has chosen to make.

Problems

1. How would you convert this bromoaldehyde chemoselectively into the two products shown?

2. Explain the chemoselectivity of these reactions. What is the role of the Me₃SiCN?

3. How would you convert this lactone selectively either into the hydroxy-acid or into the unfunctionalized acid?

4. Predict the products of Birch reduction of these aromatic compounds.

5. How would you carry out these reactions? In some cases more than one step may be needed.

6. How would you convert this nitro compound into the two products shown? Explain the order of events with special regard to reduction steps.

7. What kinds of selectivity are operating in these reactions and how do they work?
These two Wittig reactions (Chapter 14) give very different results. The first gives a single alkene in high yield (which?). The second gives a mixture from which one alkene can be separated with difficulty and in low yield. Why are they so different?

Why is this particular amine formed by reductive amination?

Account for the chemoselectivity of the first reaction and the stereoselectivity of the second. A conformational drawing of the intermediate is essential.

How would you carry out the following conversions? More than one step may be needed and you should comment on any chemoselective steps.
Synthesis in action

Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building on:</th>
<th>Arriving at:</th>
<th>Looking forward to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbonyl addition and substitution</td>
<td>Introduction to synthesis, More chemoselectivity, Combining reactions from all previous chapters in practical applications, Further protection of amines and carboxylic acids, When to avoid protecting groups, Synthesis of peptide hormones, Solid phase chemistry</td>
<td>Chemistry of enolates ch26–ch29, Retrosynthetic analysis ch30, Diastereoselectivity ch33–ch34, Synthesis of aromatic heterocycles ch43, Asymmetric synthesis ch45, The chemistry of life ch49, Natural products ch51, Organic synthesis ch53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch6, ch12, &amp; ch14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanisms and catalysis ch13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S_N$1 and $S_N$2 mechanisms ch17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrophilic aromatic substitution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemoselectivity ch24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting groups ch24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxidation and reduction ch24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

In the last chapter, you saw examples of groups of sequential reactions used together to construct more complex organic molecules. We call these sequences syntheses, and our aim in this chapter is to show you how the reactions you have met in the first 24 chapters of this book can be used to make molecules.

Why make molecules?

Making molecules, the job of the synthetic chemist, developed from a rather random process in the nineteenth century into a well-ordered and well-understood science during the course of the twentieth century. Syntheses can even be planned (and, in some specialized cases, executed) by computers. But why do it?

Historically, the first reason was to prove structures. If you make a compound by a series of known reactions, and understand what happened at each step, you can compare the compound of known structure that you have made with, say, a compound extracted from a plant whose structure you do not know. As methods like NMR arrived on the scene, this became less and less necessary—structures could be deduced spectroscopically. Instead chemists started making molecules in order to do things—to combat diseases, for example, or to develop new fragrances or materials. Many drugs are the product of ‘fine tuning’ of a naturally occurring compound to alter its properties and, in the course of the development of a drug, an enormous variety of compounds are made by chemists. Some drugs are themselves natural products, but are available in quantities too small to be widely used—so chemists are called upon to make them in gram, kilo, and eventually tonne quantities. Other chemists make molecules in order to find out about the molecules themselves, perhaps because the molecules have particular theoretical interest or because they shed light on the mechanism of a chemical (or biochemical) reaction. Finally, chemists make molecules simply because they are not there (yet) but are a challenge to make. Many of the great advances in the science of synthesis have occurred during the synthesis of natural products, and a frequent test of a new synthetic method is—can it be used to make a natural product?

In this chapter we will look in detail at a few syntheses of important molecules. We hope you will appreciate that the chemistry you encountered in the first 24 chapters is being used all the time in chemical and pharmaceutical labs, in hospitals, and in industrial plants across the world to make valuable, sometimes life-saving, compounds. We start with two simple compounds made from one starting material: toluene.
Benzocaine

Benzocaine is a local anaesthetic with a range of applications (see box). It is manufactured from toluene in a few steps using some quite simple chemistry.

**Uses of benzocaine**

Benzocaine has been used as a component of appetite suppressants; astringents; analgesics; burn and sunburn remedies; cough tablets, drops, and lozenges; haemorrhoidal creams, suppositories, and enemas; oral and gingival products for teething, toothaches, canker sores, and denture irritation; and in oral antibacterial agents; treatments for athlete’s foot, corns, calluses, and warts; and sore throat sprays and lozenges.

First, one of the classical reactions of aromatic chemistry: the nitration of toluene. The methyl group directs the nitration to the para position, so we get the right substitution pattern for benzocaine. But we also get the wrong oxidation levels: first, the nitro group needs reducing to NH₂: this can be done with catalytic hydrogenation (Chapters 22 and 24).

Benzocaine needs an ester (CO₂Et) in place of our methyl group: an oxidation is needed, and the reagent used is KMnO₄. This rather odd-looking oxidation is worth remembering: KMnO₄ oxidizes aromatic methyl groups (in other words, methyl groups attached directly to benzene rings) to carboxylic acids. And, finally, the esterification: heating with an excess of ethanol in acid gives benzocaine.

Saccharin

Saccharin is, of course, the famous artificial sweetener. It was discovered at Johns Hopkins University in 1879 in the days before disposable gloves. Ira Remsen (1846–1927) asked a research fellow Constantin Fahlberg (1850–1910) to oxidize a sulfonamide he had made. Fahlberg did so and found that evening that the food he was eating tasted remarkably sweet. Saccharin is a cyclic imide with a nitrogen atom acylated on one side by a sulfonic acid and on the other by a carboxylic acid.

The first step in the synthesis of saccharin is an electrophilic substitution reaction, like the first step of the benzocaine synthesis, but this time we want the ortho-substituted product. Chlorosulfonic acid gives a mixture of ortho and para products—it is impossible to find conditions that completely avoid forming the para-toluenesulfonyl chloride. However, you may recognize an old friend here—the by-product is, of course, TsCl. You may have wondered why we always use TsCl and not PhSO₂Cl to make OH into a leaving group: now you know.
The sulfonyl chlorides react with ammonia to give sulfonamides. Notice that this compound’s aromatic methyl group is at the wrong oxidation level, so we again use KMnO$_4$ to make the acid before dehydrating to give saccharin.

Salbutamol

Anti-asthma drugs work by dilating the air passages of the lungs, releasing the constriction that characterizes the disease. Salbutamol does this by imitating the action of the hormone adrenaline (epinephrine). Adrenaline has other effects—it increases heart rate for example—but the medicinal chemists at Glaxo working on asthma found that adding on the extra carbon atom avoided dangerous side-effects on the heart. The $t$-butyl group increases the stability of the drug, so its effects last longer.

Salbutamol is made from aspirin, itself simply the acetate ester of the natural product salicylic acid, by a series of substitution reactions. The first is a Friedel–Crafts acylation (an electrophilic substitution) in which aspirin itself is the acylating agent: it is an isomerization in which the acetyl group gets transferred from O to C. Acylation occurs para to the electron-donating alkoxy substituent, and gives this ketone.

Because this is an unusual Friedel–Crafts acylation, we think it worthwhile to draw a mechanism in the description of a synthesis. This is just such a situation as we described above. Another electrophilic substitution occurs when this ketone reacts with bromine via its enol (Chapter 21).
Next, a nucleophilic substitution reaction at saturated carbon. α-Halo ketones are excellent electrophiles and react rapidly with nucleophiles, such as this secondary amine, by the $S_N2$ mechanism (Chapter 17). All that remains is to reduce the ketone and the acid to alcohols and remove the benzyl protecting group (both discussed in Chapter 24).

LiAlH$_4$ is ideal for the reduction of both the CO$_2$H group and the ketone as it carries out both reductions in a single step. The other reduction is a hydrogenolysis of the benzyl group, for which we need catalytic hydrogenation.

**Thyroxine**

Salbutamol works by imitating the action of a hormone: thyroxine is a hormone—it is part of the body’s control over its metabolic rate. Lack of thyroxine (or rather, of the iodine needed to make it) causes hyperthyroidism, or goitre. Our next synthesis is one that has been used on an industrial scale for the manufacture of synthetic thyroxine (identical with, but less macabre than, naturally extracted thyroxine).

Thyroxine has two aromatic rings, and you should be prepared to draw upon what you learned about aromatic chemistry in Chapters 22 and 23. It is also an amino acid and, in order to make the synthesis as cheap as possible, the chemists at Glaxo who developed the method used the amino acid tyrosine as a starting material. Nitration of tyrosine puts two nitro groups ortho to the OH group in an electrophilic aromatic substitution (make sure that you understand why!).

These make the aromatic ring electron-poor, ready for a nucleophilic aromatic substitution that will introduce the other aromatic ring of the target. We need to displace OH, but OH$^-$ is a bad leaving group, so we must first make it into a tosylate. The trouble is—there is a free amine in the starting material and we do not want that to react with the TsCl. The answer—as you should be able to predict after Chapter 24—is to protect the amine.
We haven’t yet discussed amine protection (that will come later in this chapter) but, since it is the amino group’s nucleophilicity that is the problem, it makes sense to react it with an acylating agent: an amide is much less nucleophilic than an amine because the nitrogen’s lone pair is involved in conjugation with the carbonyl group. The same method was used to reduce the nucleophilicity of aromatic amines in bromination (Chapter 22). The carboxylic acid also needs protecting, and it is made into an ethyl ester.

Now the tosylation—under the usual conditions—followed by the nucleophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 23). The leaving group is ortho to two electron-withdrawing groups, and so the substitution pattern is right for nucleophilic aromatic substitution. The nucleophile is 4-methoxyphenol, deprotonated by pyridine.

The nitro groups need replacing by iodine atoms, and you should not be surprised that they were reduced to amino groups by hydrogenation over palladium and then diazotized. Sodium iodide substitutes I\(^-\) for N\(^{3+}\).

The methyl ether is really a protected version of the phenolic OH we need in thyroxine, and its deprotection uses a method that you met in Chapter 24. Most ethers are very hard to cleave—phenyl
ethers are a bit easier, because phenols are reasonable leaving groups. HI in AcOH protonates the oxygen atom, and now attack of the good nucleophile I\(^-\) on the electrophilic Me centre can kick out the phenol.

![Reaction diagram]

Remarkably, the same conditions hydrolyse the amide- and ester-protecting groups too—very useful for an industrial process where every step means another reaction vessel.

![Reaction diagram]

Finally, electrophilic substitution on the left-hand ring in the manner of the first nitration step puts in the third and fourth iodine substituents of thyroxine. Notice that the free O\(^-\) (the phenol is ionized with Et\(_2\)NH) group is more activating (electron-donating) than the ether oxygen atom.

![Reaction diagram]

This synthesis shows how important electrophilic substitution in aromatic compounds is in industrial processes. It involves four separate such reactions as well as three nucleophilic aromatic substitutions. The chemistry of Chapters 22 and 23 is well represented here.

**Muscalure: the sex pheromone of the house-fly**

Many insects attract a mate by releasing a volatile organic compound known as a pheromone. Pheromones are highly specific to species, and provide a cunning means of controlling pests: place a pad of cotton wool soaked in male pheromone inside a trap, and in drop all the female pests—no next generation. If insect control is to rely on a supply of the pheromone, that supply has to be synthetic—it takes enormous numbers of squashed insects to provide even a few milligrams of most pheromones.

We will start by looking at two syntheses of the very simple pheromone of a very common insect—the house-fly. The pheromone, known as *muscalure*, is a Z-alkene.

The name *muscalure* comes from the generic name of the house-fly *Musca*.

You met this reaction in Chapter 12 as one of the few ways of adding a nucleophile to a carboxylic acid derivative to give a ketone.

One approach, used by some American chemists in the early 1970s, was very simple. These chemists noted the similarity between the structures of muscalure and the fatty acid known as erucic acid, which is abundant in rapeseed oil, and decided to make muscalure from erucic acid. They first reacted the acid with two equivalents of methylolithium—the first equivalent deprotonates the acid to make a lithium carboxylate salt, while the second reacts with the lithium carboxylate to make a ketone.
The next step is to remove the ketone functional group. You met a few ways of doing this in the last chapter; here the method chosen was to make a hydrazone and heat in the presence of base. Muscalure is the product.

In 1977, some Russian chemists made the same compound by a different route. They chose to introduce the Z double bond by hydrogenation of an alkyne over Lindlar’s catalyst. To make the alkyne they needed, they took 1-decyne, treated it with LiNH\textsubscript{2} to remove the acidic terminal proton, and reacted the anion with an n-alkyl bromide.

By stirring the alkyne with Lindlar’s catalyst under an atmosphere of hydrogen they were able to make muscalure.

Grandisol—the sex pheromone of the male cotton boll weevil

House-flies are irritating and a minor health hazard, but the cotton boll weevil is an enormously destructive pest of the American cotton crop and is responsible for vast economic losses. The weevil has a pheromone called grandisol. The structure and synthesis of grandisol are rather more complicated than the syntheses of muscalure, but all the reactions are ones you have met in the first 24 chapters of the book.

You saw in Chapter 21 how carbonyls form enolates when they are treated with base. On p. 000, you met nitriles doing something very similar, and the first step of the grandisol synthesis is the reaction of the ‘enolate’ of a nitrile with an electrophile—an alkyl bromide.
The electrophile required carries a hydroxyl group. But this is no good because the acidic OH proton will react with the basic enolate—we need a protecting group, and the one chosen here was THP. So, here is the first step presented in a way that you will find useful. Because the base is added first and the alkyl bromide afterwards when all the base has reacted, the synthesis is written as: 1. base; 2. RCH₂Br.

Next, the double bond is made into an epoxide with \( m \)-CPBA. Epoxides react with nucleophiles, and this is the way that the four-membered ring of grandisol was formed: the nitrile still has a proton next to it, and a strong base will remove this proton as before to give an ‘enolate’. The enolate reacts with the epoxide to give a four-membered ring.

You can now clearly see the similarity with our ‘target molecule’, grandisol, but there are several more steps to carry out yet. The nitrile needs to be got rid of completely—we showed you a few ways of getting rid of functional groups in the last chapter, and the one used here was the Wolff–Kishner reduction of an aldehyde. The aldehyde comes from reduction of the nitrile with DIBAL.

Now we need to put in the C= C double bond, using a Wittig reaction. The Wittig reaction turns aldehydes or ketones into alkenes, turning the C=O bond into a C= C bond (Chapter 14). Of the many methods for oxidizing secondary alcohols to ketones (Chapter 24), these chemists chose CrO₃. Finally, the protecting group needs to come off. THP-protected alcohols are acetals, and THP groups are removed in aqueous acid: the product is grandisol.
We hope that you can see from this example that all the steps in this important synthesis use chemistry that you have already met. The art in synthesis is to put the steps together in the right order, and we aren’t asking you to think about that (that can wait until Chapter 30)—at this stage see these syntheses as a way of revising what you have already learned.

Peptide synthesis: carbonyl chemistry in action

In this part of the chapter we will talk in detail about the synthesis of a single class of biologically important molecules, peptides. In doing so, we will introduce you to protecting groups for two more important functional groups: amines and carboxylic acids. The ability to control the reactivity of these groups is vital to the controlled synthesis of peptides. This field has grown vastly since the introduction of the Z or Cbz protecting group (which you will meet shortly) in 1932, and today machines can be programmed to synthesize peptides automatically.

Let’s start by thinking how you might react two amino acids together, to make a dipeptide—leucine and glycine, for example. If we want the NH2 group of alanine to react with the CO2H group of glycine we will first have to activate the carboxylic acid towards nucleophilic substitution—by making the acyl chloride, say, or a particularly reactive ester.

![Diagram showing the synthesis of a dipeptide](image)

The main problem, though, is that there is another free CO2H, which could react with the COX group to form an anhydride, and two different free amines, either of which might react, giving both LeuLeu (which we don’t want) and LeuGly (which we do).

![Diagram showing the synthesis of a dipeptide](image)

For this reason, we need to protect both the NH2 group of leucine and the CO2H group of glycine. What sort of protecting groups do they need to be? We will need to be able to take them off again once they have done their job, so there is no point using, say, an amide to protect the amine since we would have great difficulty hydrolysing the amide in the presence of the amide bond we are trying to form. Ideally, not only do we want the protecting groups to be removable under mild conditions that will not destroy the rest of the molecule, but we want two groups (one for each of NH2 and CO2H) which we can take off under different conditions. We then have the opportunity to modify either end of the dipeptide at will.

A good choice for a pair of conditions might be acid and base—we might protect the NH2 group with a protecting group we can remove only in acid, and the CO2H group with protection we can remove only in base.
The Cbz protecting group—oxytocin
We introduced the dipeptide LeuGly as an example because it forms the C-terminus of the peptide hormone oxytocin.

The first step in the synthesis of oxytocin is indeed the coupling of glycine (through its amino group) with leucine. This is how it was done by du Vigneaud and Bodanszky. First, the carboxylic acid of the glycine was protected as an ethyl ester. Making an ester is the obvious way to stop CO₂H groups interfering as acids or as nucleophiles. However, simple methyl and ethyl esters may pose problems—they can still react with such nucleophiles as amines. Ethyl esters of amino acids are therefore stable only if the NH₂ group is protected. The glycine ethyl ester had to be stored as its hydrochloride salt: in effect, the –NH₂ group is ‘protected’ as –NH⁺³.

If du Vigneaud and Bodanszky had wanted a carboxylic-acid-protecting group that was more stable towards attack by nucleophiles, they could have made a t-butyl ester with isobutene in sulfuric acid.

Steric bulk means that t-butyl esters are resistant to nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group, and that includes hydrolysis under basic conditions (nucleophilic attack by HO⁻). But they do hydrolyse relatively easily in acid, because the mechanism of hydrolysis of t-butyl esters in acid is quite different. It does not involve nucleophilic attack at the carbonyl group and is a favourable S_N_1 reaction at the t-butyl group (Chapter 17).
This is a good point to continue our growing table of protecting groups started in Chapter 24. We need only one new entry for \( t \)-butyl esters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Deprotection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( t )-butyl ester (CO(_2)Bu-t)</td>
<td></td>
<td>carboxylic acid (RCO(_2)H)</td>
<td>bases, nucleophiles</td>
<td>isobutene, H(^+)</td>
<td>H(_3)O(^+)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the event, the chemists needed a group that they could later react with ammonia to make the amide that is present in oxytocin. They also wanted a group that was stable to mild acid—so they chose the ethyl ester. As for the leucine residue, it had to have its NH\(_2\) group protected using a base-stable protecting group, because base would be needed to release the NH\(_2\) group of the glycine hydrochloride salt. The group that was used is one of the most important nitrogen-protecting groups and is known, rather un informatively, as the Z group (also known as Cbz, or carboxybenzyl). Cbz (Z) groups are put on by treating with benzyl chloroformate (BnOCOCl) and weak base.

Cbz-protected amines behave like amides—they are no longer nucleophilic, because the nitrogen’s lone pair is tied up in conjugation with the carbonyl group. They are resistant to both aqueous acid and aqueous base, but they have, to use the analogy we developed in the last chapter, an Achilles’ heel or safety catch—the benzyl ester. The same conditions that removed benzyl ethers in Chapter 24 will remove Cbz: HBr or hydrogenolysis.

---

You can tell the difference between Z as a protecting group and Z as a label for the stereochemistry of an alkene because the latter is in italics. It’s less confusing to use Cbz for the protecting group and Z for the alkene.
The Cbz-protected leucine next had to be activated so that it would react with the glycine. The acyl chloride won’t do as it is unstable, and a common alternative in peptide chemistry is to make a \( p \)-nitrophenyl or 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl ester. Phenoxide, especially when substituted with electron-withdrawing substituents, is a good leaving group, and Cbz-leucine \( p \)-nitrophenyl ester reacts with the glycine hydrochloride ethyl ester in the presence of a weak base (triethylamine, to release the glycine’s \( \text{NH}_2 \) group). Notice the chemoselectivity in this step—the glycine’s \( \text{NH}_2 \) group has three carbonyl groups to choose from, but reacts only with the most electrophilic—the one bearing the best leaving group.

The dipeptide is now coupled—but is still protected. Deprotection (HBr/AcOH) gave the HCl salt of LeuGly ethyl ester for further reaction. The rest of the peptide was built up in much the same way—each amino acid being introduced as the Cbz-protected \( p \)-nitrophenyl ester before being deprotected ready for the next coupling, until all nine of oxytocin’s amino acids had been introduced.

The \( t \)-Boc protecting group—gastrin and aspartame

Gastrin is a hormone released from the stomach that controls the progress of digestion. Early work on the hormone showed that only the four C-terminal amino acids of the peptide were necessary for its physiological activity.

The synthesis starts with the coupling of two more amino acids: aspartic acid and phenylalanine. As you would expect, the carboxylic acid group of phenylalanine is protected, this time as a methyl ester, and the \( \text{NH}_2 \) group of aspartic acid is protected as a Cbz-derivative. Since aspartic acid has two carboxylic acid groups, one of these also has to be protected. Here is the method—first the Cbz-group is put on; then both acids are protected as benzyl esters. Then just one of the benzyl esters is hydrolysed. It may seem surprising to you that this chemoselective hydrolysis is possible, and you could not have predicted that it would work, without trying it out in the lab.

The protected acid is activated as its 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl ester, ready for coupling with the phenylalanine methyl ester in base. Now you see why the benzyl ester was chosen to protect Asp’s side-chain carboxylic acid group—hydrogenolysis can be used to cleave both the Cbz-group and the benzyl ester at the same time.
At this point in one synthesis of the tetrapeptide in the laboratories of Searle, the American pharmaceutical company, a remarkable discovery occurred. The AspPhe methyl ester was accidentally found to taste sweet: extremely sweet—about 200 times as sweet as sucrose. AspPhe is now known as aspartame, marketed under the brand name Nutrasweet.

The next amino acid in the peptide is methionine, and it will of course need $N$-protecting and $C$-activating. The $N$-protecting group used this time was different—still a carbamate, not Cbz or Z but $t$-Boc (or just Boc or BOC)—standing for $t$-butyloxycarbonyl and pronounced ‘bock’ or ‘tee-bock’.

Like Cbz, the $t$-Boc group is a carbamate protecting group. But, unlike Cbz, it can be removed simply with dilute aqueous acid. Just 3M HCl will hydrolyse it, again by protonation, loss of $t$-butyl cation, and decarboxylation.

Base, on the other hand, cannot touch the $t$-Boc group—the carbonyl group is too hindered to be attacked even by OH$^-$, and $t$-Boc is strongly resistant to basic hydrolysis: again, another example of an amide with an Achilles’ heel. The obvious way to make carbamates from amines is to react them with a carbamoyl chloride—this is how Z-groups are usually put on. Unfortunately, $t$-BuOCOCl is unstable, and we have to use some other electrophilic derivative—usually the anhydride Boc$_2$O as here, for example.
Meanwhile, back at the tetrapeptide synthesis, methionine (Met) has been BOC-protected, and is ready for activation—as a 2,4,6-trichlorophenyl ester (Cp) this time and coupling with the deprotected Asp-Phe-OMe. Aqueous acid takes off the BOC group without hydrolysing peptide or ester bonds, and a repeat of this cycle with BOC-tryptophan trichlorophenyl ester (BOC-Trp-OCp) finally gives the tetrapeptide.

The Fmoc protecting group—solid-phase synthesis
You have already met our next and last amine-protecting group in Chapter 8.

It is called Fmoc (pronounced ‘eff-mock’), for fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl, and has a susceptibility inverse to that of $t$-Boc. It cannot be lost by substitution in the manner of Cbz or $t$-Boc because neither $S_{N1}$ nor $S_{N2}$ mechanisms can operate at the ringed carbon atom: it is both primary and hindered.

So, where is the safety catch? The important point about Fmoc is that is has a rather acidic proton ($pK_a$ about 25), shown in black. The proton is the Achilles’ heel: treatment of Fmoc-protected amines with base eliminates a fulvene to reveal the NH$_2$ group.
The table of protecting groups, built up slowly over this chapter and the last, is now complete.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protecting group</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Protects from</th>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Deprotection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetal (dioxolane)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>ketones, aldehydes</td>
<td>nucleophiles, bases</td>
<td>water, H⁺ cat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trialkysilyl (R₃Si, e.g. TBDMS)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>nucleophiles, C or N bases</td>
<td>R₃SiCl, base, H⁺, H₂O, or F⁻</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetrahydropyranyl (THP)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>strong bases</td>
<td>dilhydro-pyran and acid, H⁺, H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzyl ether (OBn)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>alcohols (OH in general)</td>
<td>almost everything</td>
<td>NaH, BnBr, H₂, Pd/C, or HBr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>methyl ether (ArOME)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>phenols (ArOH)</td>
<td>bases</td>
<td>NaH, Mel, or (MeO)₂SO₂, BBr₃, HBr, HI, Me₂SiI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzyl amine (NBN)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>strong bases</td>
<td>BnBr, K₂CO₃, H₂, Pd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cbz (Z) (OCOBN)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>electrophiles</td>
<td>BnOCOCl, base, HBr, AcOH, or H₂, Pd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f-Boc (OCOBu-f)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>electrophiles, (f-BuOCO)₂O, base</td>
<td>H⁺, H₂O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fmoc fluoroenyloxy carbony</td>
<td>see text</td>
<td>amines</td>
<td>electrophiles, Fmoc-Cl</td>
<td>base, e.g. amine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f-butyl ester (CO₂Bu-f)</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Structure" /></td>
<td>carboxylic acid (RCO₂H)</td>
<td>bases, nucleophiles</td>
<td>isobutene, H⁺, H₃O⁺</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The synthesis of peptides on a solid support, usually beads of either polystyrene (the Merrifield approach) or polyamide (the Sheppard approach) resins has become extremely important, because it allows peptides to be synthesized by machines, and a key feature of the Sheppard approach is the use of Fmoc-protected amino acid residues. The idea is that the C-terminus amino acid is tethered to the resin by means of a carbamate linker that is stable to mild acid or base. The peptide chain is then built up using the sorts of methods we have been discussing and, when complete, is released by cleaving the linker with strong acid.

The side chains of the amino acids in this approach are also protected with acid-labile groups (f-butyl esters and BOC, for example), so that they too are revealed only in the final deprotection step.
Acid cannot therefore be used for protection for the N-terminus of the chain as it grows, so the solution is to use Fmoc. Each amino acid is introduced as its Fmoc-protected pentafluorophenyl ester (yet another electrophilically activated electron-poor phenyl ester), and then the Fmoc group is cleaved with piperidine ready for the next residue to be added. The green blob in the diagram represents a polystyrene or polyamide bead, each of which carries many linkers and many growing peptide chains.

Once the first amino acid is fixed to the column, reagents are added simply by passing solutions down the column. Any excess or by-products are washed off. Finally, the product is released by passing a solution of CF$_3$CO$_2$H down the column. The simplicity and reliability of this type of simple iterative process, with two steps per cycle, has made automated peptide synthesis common laboratory practice.

The synthesis of dofetilide, a drug to combat erratic heartbeat

The chapter ends with a complete synthesis of an important new drug. Cardiac arrhythmia (erratic and inefficient heart action) is a major problem in the modern world causing poor lifestyle (exhaustion) and death by blood clots. A new drug dofetilide (Tikosyn®) is being introduced by Pfizer to treat this problem. It works by blocking the passage of potassium ions out of heart muscle and so delays the onset of an irregular beat until the next normal beat takes over.
We are going to do a little more than simply give the reactions that eventually made up the synthesis of dofetilide. We are going to put ourselves in the place of the chemists who invented the synthesis and try to see what led them to the reactions they chose. First, we should inspect the structure of the molecule. There are two sulfonamides, one at each end. We have seen how to make sulfonamides earlier in this chapter when saccharin was being discussed. The usual way is to react the amine with a sulfonyl chloride. In this case we shall need to react methane sulfonyl chloride (MeSO₂Cl or MsCl) with the aromatic amines. This is a well-known reaction and should work well here. The other functional groups—tertiary amine and alkyl aryl ether—should not interfere so no protection is needed.

So we need to make the required aromatic diamine. We might guess from what we did earlier in this chapter as well as from Chapter 22 that this is likely to be achieved by nitration and reduction so we should check that double nitration of our proposed starting material will occur in the right positions (regioselectivity). Remember that at this stage we are just making proposals—we can only predict whether the reactions will actually occur or not.

The substituents on both rings are activating and ortho, para-directing so there is reasonable hope that para selectivity can be achieved in both cases. However the left-hand ring is only weakly activated by an alkyl group whereas the ring on the right is strongly activated by the oxygen atom. It might be difficult to get the left-hand ring to react even once before the right-hand ring reacts three times (Chapter 22). A good solution would be to build the dinitro compound with each separate ring already previously nitrated once only. So we need to think how to link the rings together. The most obvious approach is to combine some organic electrophiles (alkyl halides, carbonyl compounds) with nitrogen and oxygen nucleophiles. We might, for example, join up the right-hand ring by nucleophilic aromatic substitution using the convenient para nitro group.

Then we could make the amino alcohol by adding an amine to an epoxide—that N–CH₂–CH₂–OH group looks as though it comes from ethylene oxide and an amine.

In its turn the amine could come from a reductive amination (Chapter 24) or by an alkylation, using in both cases MeNH₂ as the nucleophile and an aldehyde or an alkyl halide as the electrophile.
Now we have a selection of possible starting materials and we should consider which might be available commercially as that will make the job so much easier. In fact, two of the nitro compounds we want can be made so easily by direct nitration that they are available commercially.

Only the aldehyde is not a commercial product and we might guess that the oxidizing power of nitric acid might convert the aldehyde into an acid. An even cheaper compound is para-nitro phenol, which can be made very easily from phenol and dilute nitric acid (Chapter 22).

From the many possible approaches, Pfizer chose the one summarized below. The question of cheapness and availability of starting materials matters more in large-scale manufacture than in laboratory work but we can only guess at some of the choices. The last stages are as we suggested but the first stages are not. The ether is made from para-nitro phenol and 2-chloroethanol. This is an unusual electrophile and this reaction forms the subject of a problem at the end of the chapter. The resulting alcohol is converted into the chloride with SOCl₂, a standard method from Chapter 17. The yields are excellent and this too is an important consideration in manufacture.

The amine is made by a simple alkylation reaction on methylamine. This choice is made chiefly because of the cheapness of the alkyl bromide and the good yield. There could be a real problem here with further alkylation of the product but they probably use a large excess of methylamine to prevent that.

Now that the parts have been assembled, they can be joined together and these last steps follow the plan we outlined earlier. The worst step in the synthesis is the joining together of the two halves and even that gives a respectable 64% yield. This approach to synthesis—analysing the problem first and then proposing solutions—will be the subject of Chapter 30.
This is a commercial synthesis of an important new compound and uses only chemistry that you have met in the first 24 chapters of the book. Though new syntheses are completed and new methods invented daily, the basic organic reaction types remain the foundation on which these inventions are constructed.

Looking forward

So far, most of the reactions presented in the book that are useful in synthesis have made C–O, C–N, or C–halogen bonds and only a few (Wittig, Friedel–Crafts, and reactions of cyanides and alkynes) make C–C bonds. This limitation has severely restricted the syntheses that we can discuss in this chapter. This is by design as we wanted to establish the idea of synthesis before coming to more complicated chemistry. The next four chapters introduce the main C–C bond-forming reactions in the chemistry of enols and enolates. You met these valuable intermediates in Chapter 21 but now you are about to see how they can be alkylated and acylated and how they add directly to aldehydes and ketones and how they do conjugate addition to unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Then in Chapter 30 we return to a more general discussion of synthesis and develop a new approach in the style of the last synthesis in this chapter.

Problems

1. Suggest two different syntheses for these ethers and say which you prefer (and why!).

2. This hexa-alcohol can be deprotected, one OH at a time, by the sequence of reagents shown below. Explain how each reagent works, stating, of course, which protecting group it removes! Would any other order of events be successful?

3. Suggest syntheses for this simple compound. What selectivity problems must be overcome?

4. Suggest how these amines might be synthesized.
5. Suggest syntheses for these esters. The starting materials might also need to be made.

6. Suggest a synthesis of the starting material and give mechanisms for the reactions. Why does the last step go under such unusual conditions?

7. Esters are normally made from alcohols and activated acids. This one is made by a completely different method. Why?

8. Suggest a synthesis for this compound. Justify your choice of methods and reagents.

9. Suggest a synthesis of this non-protein peptide, emphasizing the choice of protecting groups.

10. Suggest a synthesis for this local anaesthetic.

11. The β-iodoethoxycarbonyl group has been suggested as a protecting group for amines. It is removed with zinc in methanol. How would you add this protecting group to an amine and how does the deprotection occur? What other functional groups might survive the deprotection?

12. Revision of Chapters 10 and 16. Give mechanisms for this synthesis and suggest why this route was followed.

13. Revision of Chapters 9 and 19. Draw the structures of the intermediates in this synthesis of a diene and comment on the selectivity of the last step.

14. Suggest ways to make these compounds.
Chapters 26–29 continue the theme of synthesis that started with Chapter 24 and will end with Chapter 30. This group of four chapters introduces the main C–C bond-forming reactions of enols and enolates. We develop the chemistry of Chapter 21 with a discussion of enols and enolates attacking alkylating agents (Chapter 26), aldehydes and ketones (Chapter 27), acylating agents (Chapter 28), and electrophilic alkenes (Chapter 29).

Carbonyl groups show diverse reactivity

In earlier chapters we discussed the two types of reactivity displayed by the carbonyl group. We first described reactions that involve nucleophilic attack on the carbon of the carbonyl, and in Chapter 9 we showed you that these are among the best ways of making new C–C bonds. In this chapter we shall again be making new C–C bonds, but using electrophilic attack on carbonyl compounds: in other words, the carbonyl compound will be reacting as the nucleophile in the reaction. We introduced the nucleophilic forms of carbonyl compounds—enols, and enolates—in Chapter 21. There you saw them reacting with heteroatomic electrophiles, but they will also react well with carbon electrophiles provided the reaction is thoughtfully devised. Much of this chapter will concern that phrase, ‘thoughtfully devised’.

Thought is needed to ensure that the carbonyl compound exhibits the right sort of reactivity. In particular, the carbonyl compound must not act as an electrophile when it is intended to be a nucleophile. If it does, it may react with itself to give some sort of dimer—or even a polymer—rather than neatly attacking the desired electrophile. This chapter is devoted to ways of avoiding this: in Chapter 27 we shall talk about how to promote and control the dimerization, known as the aldol reaction.
Fortunately, over the last three decades lots of thought has already gone into the problem of controlling the reactions of enolates with carbon electrophiles. This means that there are many excellent solutions to the problem: our task in this chapter is to help you understand which to use, and when to use them, in order to design useful reactions.

Some important considerations that affect all alkylations

These reactions consist of two steps. The first is the formation of a stabilized anion—usually (but not always) an enolate—by deprotonation with base. The second is a substitution reaction: attack of the nucleophilic anion on an electrophilic alkyl halide. All the factors controlling SN1 and SN2 reactions, which we discussed at length in Chapter 17, are applicable here.

In each case, we shall take one of two approaches to the choice of base.

- A strong base can be chosen to deprotonate the starting material completely. There is complete conversion of the starting material to the anion before addition of the electrophile, which is added in a subsequent step.

- Alternatively, a weaker base may be used in the presence of the electrophile. The weaker base will not deprotonate the starting material completely: only a small amount of anion will be formed, but that small amount will react with the electrophile. More anion is formed as alkylation uses it up.

The second approach is easier practically (just mix the starting material, base, and electrophile), but works only if the base and the electrophile are compatible and don’t react together. With the first approach, which is practically more demanding, the electrophile and base never meet each other, so their compatibility is not a concern. We shall start with some compounds that avoid the problem of competing aldol reactions completely, because they are not electrophilic enough to react with their own nucleophilic derivatives.

Nitriles and nitroalkanes can be alkylated

Problems that arise from the electrophilicity of the carbonyl group can be avoided by replacing C=O by functional groups that are much less electrophilic but are still able to stabilize an adjacent anion. We shall consider two examples, both of which you met in Chapter 21.

Alkylation of nitriles

Firstly, the nitrile group, which mirrors the carbonyl group in general reactivity but is much less easily attacked by nucleophiles (N is less electronegative than O).
The anion formed by deprotonating a nitrile using strong base will not react with other molecules of nitrile but will react very efficiently with alkyl halides. The slim, linear structure of the anions makes them good nucleophiles for $S_N2$ reactions.

The nitrile does not have to be deprotonated completely for alkylation: with sodium hydroxide only a small amount of anion is formed. In the example below, such an anion reacts with propyl bromide to give 2-phenylpentanenitrile.

This reaction is carried out in a two-phase mixture (water + an immiscible organic solvent) to prevent the hydroxide and propyl bromide merely reacting together in an $S_N2$ reaction to give propanol. The hydroxide stays in the aqueous layer, and the other reagents stay in the organic layer. A tetraalkylammonium chloride (benzyltriethylammonium chloride $\text{BnEt}_3\text{N}^+\text{Cl}^-$) is needed as a phase transfer catalyst to allow sufficient hydroxide to enter the organic layer to deprotonate the nitrile.

Nitrile-stabilized anions are so nucleophilic that they will react with alkyl halides rather well even when a crowded quaternary centre (a carbon bearing no H atoms) is being formed. In this example the strong base, sodium hydride, was used to deprotonate the branched nitrile completely and benzyl chloride was the electrophile. The greater reactivity of benzylic electrophiles compensates for the poorer leaving group. In DMF, the anion is particularly reactive because it is not solvated (DMF solvates only the Na$^+$ cation).

The compatibility of sodium hydride with electrophiles means that, by adding two equivalents of base, alkylation can be encouraged to occur more than once. This dimethylated acid was required in the synthesis of a potential drug, and it was made in two steps from a nitrile. Double alkylation with two equivalents of NaH in the presence of excess methyl iodide gave the methylated nitrile which was hydrolysed to the acid. The monoalkylated product is not isolated—it goes on directly to be deprotonated and react with a second molecule of MeI.
With two nitrile groups, the delocalized anion is so stable that even a weak, neutral amine (triethylamine) is sufficiently basic to deprotonate the starting material. Here double alkylation again takes place: note that the electrophile is good at SN2, and the solvent is dipolar and aprotic (DMSO and DMF have similar properties). The doubly alkylated quaternary product was formed in 100% yield.

If the electrophile and the nitrile are in the same molecule and the spacing between them is appropriate, then intramolecular alkylation will lead to cyclization to form rings that can have anything from three to six members. The preparation of a cyclopropane is shown using sodium hydroxide as the base and chloride as a leaving group. With an intramolecular alkylation, the base and the electrophile have to be present together, but the cyclization is so fast that competing SN2 with HO⁻ is not a problem.

**Alkylation of nitroalkanes**

The powerful electron-withdrawing nature of the nitro group means that deprotonation is possible even with very mild bases (the pKₐ of MeNO₂ is 10). The anions react with carbon electrophiles and a wide variety of nitro-containing products can be produced. The anions are not, of course, enolates, but replacing the nitrogen with a carbon should help you to recognize the close similarity of these alkylations with the enolate alkylations described later.

Surprisingly few simple nitroalkanes are commercially available but more complex examples can be prepared readily by alkylation of the anions derived from nitromethane, nitroethane, and 2-nitropropane. Deprotonation of nitroalkanes with butyllithium followed by the addition of alkyl halides gives the alkylated nitroalkanes in good yield. Some examples of this general method are shown below. These reactions really do have to be done in two steps: BuLi is not compatible with alkyl halides!
Nitroalkanes can be alkylated in a single step with hydroxide as a base: phase transfer conditions keep the HO\(^-\) and the electrophile apart, preventing alcohol formation. This compound forms despite its quaternary carbon atom.

Cyclic nitroalkanes can be prepared by intramolecular alkylation provided that the ring size is appropriate (3–7 members). Now there really is no alternative: the base and electrophile must cohabit in the reaction mixture, so a weaker base such as potassium carbonate must be used—amines are no good here because they undergo substitution reactions with the halide.

**Choice of electrophile for alkylation**

Enolate alkylations are S\(_{N2}\) reactions (polar solvents, good charged nucleophile) so the electrophile needs to be \(S_{N2}\)-reactive if the alkylation is to succeed: primary and benzylic alkyl halides are among the best alkylating agents. More branched halides tend to prefer to undergo unwanted E2 elimination reactions (Chapter 19), because the anions themselves are rather basic. As a result, tertiary halides are useless for enolate alkylation. We shall see a way round this problem later in the chapter.

**Lithium enolates of carbonyl compounds**

The problem of self-condensation of carbonyl compounds (that is, enolate reacting with unenolized carbonyl) under basic conditions does not exist if there is absolutely no unenolized carbonyl compound present. One way to achieve this is to use a base sufficiently strong (\(pK_a\) at least 3 or 4 units higher than \(pK_a\) of the carbonyl compound) to ensure that all of the starting carbonyl is converted into the corresponding enolate. This will work only if the resulting enolate is sufficiently stable to survive until the alkylation is complete. As you saw in Chapter 21, lithium enolates are stable, and are among the best enolate equivalents for use in alkylation reactions.
The best base for making lithium enolates is usually LDA, made from diisopropylamine (i-Pr₂NH) and BuLi. LDA will deprotonate virtually all ketones and esters that have an acidic proton to form the corresponding lithium enolates rapidly, completely, and irreversibly even at the low temperatures (about −78°C) required for some of these reactive species to survive.

Deprotonation occurs through a cyclic mechanism illustrated below for ketones and esters. The basic nitrogen anion removes the proton as the lithium is delivered to the forming oxyanion.

Enolates are a type of alkene, and there are two possible geometries of the enolate of an ester. The importance of enolate geometry is discussed in Chapter 34 and will not concern us here. More important is the question of regioselectivity when unsymmetrical ketones are deprotonated. We shall discuss this aspect later in the chapter.

**Variations on a theme**

LDA came into general use in the 1970s, and you may meet more modern variants derived from butyllithium and isopropylcyclohexylamine (lithium isopropylcyclohexylamide, LICA) or 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine (lithium tetramethylpiperidide, LTMP) or hexamethyldisilazane (lithium hexamethyldisilazide, LHMDS), which are even more hindered and are even less nucleophilic as a result.

**Alkylation of lithium enolates**

The reaction of these lithium enolates with alkyl halides is one of the most important C–C bond-forming reactions in chemistry. Alkylation of lithium enolates works with both acyclic and cyclic ketones as well as with acyclic and cyclic esters (lactones). The general mechanism is shown below.

Alkylation of an ester enolate

Alkylation of a ketone enolate

Typical experimental conditions for reactions of kinetic enolates involve formation of the enolate at very low temperature (−78°C) in THF. Remember, the strong base LDA is used to avoid self-condensation of the carbonyl compound but, while the enolate is forming, there is always a chance that self-condensation will occur. The lower the temperature, the slower the self-condensation reaction, and the fewer by-products there are. Once enolate formation is complete, the electrophile is added (still at −78°C: the lithium enolates may not be stable at higher temperatures). The reaction mixture is then usually allowed to warm up to room temperature to speed up the rate of the $S_{N2}$ alkylation.
Alkylation of ketones

Precisely this sequence was used to methylate the ketone below with LDA acting as base followed by methyl iodide as electrophile.

In Chapter 17 you saw epoxides acting as electrophiles in S_N2 reactions. They can be used to alkylate enolates providing epoxide opening is assisted by coordination to a Lewis acidic metal ion: in this case the lanthanide yttrium(III). The new C–C bond in the product is coloured black. Note that the ketone starting material is unsymmetrical, but has protons only to one side of the carbonyl group, so there is no question over which enolate will form. The base is one of the LDA variants we showed you on p. 000—LHMDS.

Alkylation of esters

In Chapter 28 you will meet the reaction of an ester with its own enolate: the Claisen condensation. This reaction can be an irritating side-reaction in the chemistry of lithium ester enolates when alkylation is desired, and again it can be avoided only if the ester is converted entirely to its enolate under conditions where the Claisen condensation is slow. A good way of stopping this happening is to add the ester to the solution of LDA (and not the LDA to the ester) so that there is never excess ester for the enolate to react with.

Sodium and potassium also give reactive enolates

Their stability at low temperature means that lithium enolates are usually preferred, but sodium and potassium enolates can also be formed by abstraction of a proton by strong bases. The increased separation of the metal cation from the enolate anion with the larger alkali metals leads to more reactive but less stable enolates. Typical very strong Na and K bases include the hydrides (NaH, KH) or amide anions derived from ammonia (NaNH_2, KNH_2) or hexamethyldisilazane (NaHMDS, KHMDS). The instability of the enolates means that they are usually made and reacted in a single step, so the base and electrophile need to be compatible. Here are two examples of cyclohexanone alkylation: the high reactivity of the potassium enolate is demonstrated by the efficient tetramethylation with excess potassium hydride and methyl iodide.
Another successful tactic is to make the group R as large as possible to discourage attack at the carbonyl group. Tertiary butyl esters are particularly useful in this regard, because they are readily made, t-butyl is extremely bulky, and yet they can still be hydrolysed in aqueous acid under mild conditions by the method discussed on p. 000. In this example, deprotonation of t-butyl acetate with LICA (lithium isopropylcyclohexylamide) gives a lithium enolate that reacts with butyl iodide as the reaction mixture is warmed to room temperature.

Alkylation of carboxylic acids

The lithium enolates of carboxylic acids can be formed if two equivalents of base are used. Carboxylic acids are very acidic so it is not necessary to use a strong base to remove the first proton but, since the second deprotonation requires a strong base such as LDA, it is often convenient to use two equivalents of LDA to form the dianion. With carboxylic acids, even BuLi can be used on occasion because the intermediate lithium carboxylate is much less electrophilic than an aldehyde or a ketone.

The next alkylation of an acid enolate is of a carbamate-protected amino acid, glycine. As you saw in Chapter 25, carbamates are stable to basic reaction conditions. Three acidic protons are removed by LDA, but alkylation takes place only at carbon—the site of the last proton to be removed. Alkylation gets rid of one of the negative charges, so that, if the molecule gets a choice, it alkylates to get rid of the least stable anion, keeping the two more stabilized charges. A good alternative to using the dianion is to alkylate the ester or nitrile and then hydrolyse to the acid.

• Alkylation of ketones, esters, and carboxylic acids is best carried out using the lithium enolates.
**Why do enolates alkylate on carbon?**

Enolates have two nucleophilic sites: the carbon and the oxygen atoms: on p. 000 we showed that:
- Carbon has the greater coefficient in the HOMO, and is the softer nucleophilic site
- Oxygen carries the greater total charge and is the harder nucleophilic site

*Hard electrophiles react at O*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{X} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{R} & \quad \text{X} = \text{OMs}, \text{OSO}_2\text{OMe}, \text{O}\text{Me}_2
\end{align*}
\]

In general:
- Hard electrophiles, particularly sulfates and sulfonates (mesylates, tosylates), tend to react at oxygen
- Soft nucleophiles, particularly halides (I > Br > Cl), also react at oxygen
- Polar aprotic solvents (HMPA, DMF) promote O-alkylation by separating the

*Soft electrophiles react at C*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Me} & \quad \text{X} \\
\text{R} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{X} = \text{I}, \text{Br}, \text{Cl}
\end{align*}
\]

In Chapter 21 you saw that hard electrophiles prefer to react at oxygen—that is why it is possible to make silyl enol ethers, for example. Some carbon electrophiles with very good leaving groups also tend to react on carbon, but soft electrophiles such as alkyl halides react at carbon, and you will see only this type of electrophile in this chapter.

- Larger alkali metals (Cs > K > Na > Li) give more separated ion pairs (more polar bonds) which are harder and react more at oxygen

---

**Alkylation of aldehydes**

Aldehydes are so electrophilic that, even with LDA at –78°C, the rate at which the deprotonation takes place is not fast enough to outpace reactions between the forming lithium enolate and still-to-be-deprotonated aldehyde remaining in the mixture. Direct addition of the base to the carbonyl group of electrophilic aldehydes can also pose a problem.

*Avoid using lithium enolates of aldehydes.*

**Using specific enol equivalents to alkylate aldehydes and ketones**

These side-reactions mean that aldehyde enolates are not generally useful reactive intermediates. Instead, there are a number of aldehyde enol and enolate equivalents in which the aldehyde is present only in masked form during the enolization and alkylation step. The three most important of these specific enol equivalents are:
- enamines
- silyl enol ethers
- aza-enolates derived from imines

You met all of these briefly in Chapter 21, and we shall discuss how to use them to alkylate aldehydes shortly. All three types of specific enol equivalent are useful not just with aldehydes, but with ketones as well, and we shall introduce each class with examples for both types of carbonyl compound.

**Enamines are alkylated by reactive electrophiles**

Enamines are formed when aldehydes or ketones react with secondary amines. The mechanism is given in Chapter 14. The mechanism below shows how they react with alkylating agents to form new
carbon–carbon bonds: the enamine here is the one derived from cyclohexanone and pyrrolidine. The product is at first not a carbonyl compound: it’s an iminium ion or an enamine (depending on whether an appropriate proton can be lost). But a mild acidic hydrolysis converts the iminium ion or enamine into the corresponding alkylated carbonyl compound.

The overall process, from carbonyl compound to carbonyl compound, amounts to an enolate alkylation, but no strong base or enolates are involved so there is no danger of self-condensation. The example below shows two specific examples of cyclohexanone alkylation using enamines. Note the relatively high temperatures and long reaction times: enamines are among the most reactive of neutral nucleophiles, but they are still a lot less nucleophilic than enolates.

The choice of the secondary amine for formation of the enamine is not completely arbitrary even though it does not end up in the final alkylated product. Simple dialkyl amines can be used but cyclic amines such as pyrrolidine, piperidine, and morpholine are popular choices as the ring structure makes both the starting amine and the enamine more nucleophilic (the alkyl groups are ‘tied back’ and can’t get in the way). The higher boiling points of these amines allow the enamine to be formed by heating.

α-Bromo carbonyl compounds are excellent electrophiles for S_N2 reactions because of the rate-enhancing effect of the carbonyl group (Chapter 17). The protons between the halogen and the carbonyl are significantly more acidic than those adjacent to just a carbonyl group and there is a serious risk of an enolate nucleophile acting as a base. Enamines are only very weakly basic, but react well as a nucleophile with α-bromo carbonyl compounds, and so are a good choice.

The original ketone here is unsymmetrical, so two enamines are possible. However, the formation of solely the less substituted enamine is typical. The outcome may be explained as the result of thermodynamic control: enamine formation is reversible so the less hindered enamine predominates.
For the more substituted enamine, steric hindrance forces the enamine to lose planarity, and destabilizes it. The less substituted enamine, on the other hand, is rather more stable. Note how the preference for the less substituted enamine is opposite to the preference for a more substituted enol.

\[
\text{O} \quad \xrightarrow{H^+} \quad \text{more hindered enamine} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{st das hindrance prevents complete planarity of conjugated enamine}} \quad \text{less hindered enamine}
\]

There is, however, a major problem with enamines: reaction at nitrogen. Less reactive alkylating agents—simple alkyl halides such as methyl iodide, for example—react to a significant degree at N rather than at C. The product is a quaternary ammonium salt, which hydrolyses back to the starting material and leads to low yields.

Enamines can be used only with reactive alkylating agents.
- allylic halides
- benzyl halides
- \(\alpha\)-halo carbonyl compounds

That said, enamines are a good solution to the aldehyde enolate problem. Aldehydes form enamines very easily (one of the advantages of the electrophilic aldehyde) and these are immune to attack by nucleophiles—including most importantly the enamines themselves. Below are two examples of aldehyde alkylation using the enamine method.
Both again use highly $S_N$2-reactive electrophiles, and this is the main drawback of enamines. In the next section we consider a complementary class of enol equivalents that react only with highly $S_N$1-reactive electrophiles.

Silyl enol ethers are alkylated by $S_N$1-reactive electrophiles in the presence of Lewis acid

Enamines are among the most powerful neutral nucleophiles and react spontaneously with alkyl halides. Silyl enol ethers are less reactive and so require a more potent electrophile to initiate reaction. Carbocations will do, and they can be generated in situ by abstraction of a halide or other leaving group from a saturated carbon centre by a Lewis acid.

The best alkylating agents for silyl enol ethers are tertiary alkyl halides: they form stable carbocations in the presence of Lewis acids such as TiCl$_4$ or SnCl$_4$. Most fortunately, this is just the type of compounds that is unsuitable for reaction with lithium enolates or enamines, as elimination results rather than alkylation: a nice piece of complementary selectivity.

Below is an example: the alkylation of cyclopentanone with 2-chloro-2-methylbutane. The ketone was converted to the trimethylsilyl enol ether with triethylamine and trimethylsilylchloride: we discussed this step on p. 000 (Chapter 21). Titanium tetrachloride in dry dichloromethane promotes the alkylation step.

Aza-enolates react with $S_N$2-reactive electrophiles

Enamines are the nitrogen analogues of enols and provide one solution to the aldehyde enolate problem when the electrophile is reactive. Imines are the corresponding nitrogen analogues of aldehydes and ketones: a little lateral thinking should therefore lead you to expect some useful reactivity from the nitrogen equivalents of enolates, known as aza-enolates. Aza-enolates are formed when imines are treated with LDA or other strong bases.

In basic or neutral solution, imines are less electrophilic than aldehydes: they react with organolithiums, but not with many weaker nucleophiles (they are more electrophilic in acid when they are protonated). So, as the aza-enolate forms, there is no danger at all of self-condensation.
The overall sequence involves formation of the imine from the aldehyde that is to be alkylated—usually with a bulky primary amine such as t-butyl- or cyclohexylamine to discourage even further nucleophilic attack at the imine carbon. The imine is not usually isolated, but is deprotonated directly with LDA or a Grignard reagent (these do not add to imines, but they will deprotonate them to give magnesium aza-enolates).

![Diagram of imine formation and deprotonation]

The resulting aza-enolate reacts like a ketone enolate with SN2-reactive alkylating agents—here, benzyl chloride—to form the new carbon–carbon bond and to re-form the imine. The alkylated imine is usually hydrolysed by the mild acidic work-up to give the alkylated aldehyde.

![Diagram of aza-enolate formation and reaction]

In the next example, a lithium base (lithium diethylamide) is used to form the aza-enolate. The ease of imine cleavage in acid is demonstrated by the selective hydrolysis to the aldehyde without any effect on the acetal introduced by the alkylation step. The product is a mono-protected dialdehyde—difficult to prepare by other methods.

![Diagram of aza-enolate formation and hydrolysis]
Aza-enolate alkylation is so successful that it has been extended from aldehydes, where it is essential, to ketones where it can be a useful option. Cyclohexanones are among the most electrophilic simple ketones and can suffer from undesirable side-reactions. The imine from cyclohexanone and cyclohexylamine can be deprotonated with LDA to give a lithium aza-enolate. In this example, iodomethylstannane was the alkylating agent, giving the tin-containing ketone after hydrolysis.

Alkylation of β-dicarbonyl compounds

The presence of two, or even three, electron-withdrawing groups on a single carbon atom makes the remaining proton(s) appreciably acidic (pKₐ 10–15), which means that even mild bases can lead to complete enolate formation. With bases of the strength of alkoxides or weaker, only the multiply stabilized anions form: protons adjacent to just one carbonyl group generally have a pKₐ > 20. The most important enolates of this type are those of 1,3-dicarbonyl (or β-dicarbonyl) compounds.

Alkylation of a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound (or β-dicarbonyl compound)

The resulting anions are alkylated very efficiently. This diketone is enolized even by potassium carbonate, and reacts with methyl iodide in good yield. Carbonate is such a bad nucleophile that the base and the electrophile can be added in a single step.
Among the β-dicarbonyls, two compounds stand out in importance—diethyl (or dimethyl) malonate and ethyl acetoacetate. You should make sure you remember their structures and trivial names.

With these two esters, the choice of base is important: nucleophilic addition can occur at the ester carbonyl, which could lead to transesterification (with alkoxides), hydrolysis (with hydroxide), or amide formation (with amide anions). The best choice is usually an alkoxide identical with the alkoxide component of the ester (that is, ethoxide for diethyl malonate; methoxide for dimethyl malonate). Alkoxides ($pK_a 16$) are basic enough to deprotonate between two carbonyl groups but, should substitution occur at C=O, there is no overall reaction.

In this example the electrophile is the allylic cyclopentenyl chloride, and the base is ethoxide in ethanol—most conveniently made by adding one equivalent of sodium metal to dry ethanol.

The same base is used in the alkylation of ethyl acetoacetate with butyl bromide.

Various electron-withdrawing groups can be used in almost any combination with good results. In this example an ester and a nitrile cooperate to stabilize an anion. Nitriles are not quite as anion-stabilizing as carbonyl groups so this enolate requires a stronger base (sodium hydride) in an aprotic solvent (DMF) for success. The primary alkyl tosylate serves as the electrophile.
These doubly stabilized anions are alkylated so well that it is common to carry out an alkylation between two carbonyl groups, only to remove one of them at a later stage. This is made possible by the fact that carboxylic acids with a β-carbonyl group decompose (lose carbon dioxide) on heating. The mechanism below shows how. After alkylation of the dicarbonyl compound the unwanted ester is first hydrolysed in base. Acidification and heating lead to decarboxylation via a six-membered cyclic transition state in which the acid proton is transferred to the carbonyl group as the key bond breaks, liberating a molecule of carbon dioxide. The initial product is the enol form of a carbonyl compound that rapidly tautomerizes to the more stable keto form—now with only one carbonyl group. Using this technique, β-keto-esters give ketones while malonate esters give simple carboxylic acids (both ester groups hydrolyse but only one can be lost by decarboxylation). Decarboxylation can occur only with a second carbonyl group appropriately placed β to the acid, because the decarboxylated product must be formed as an enol.

The alkylation of ethyl acetoacetate with butyl bromide on p. 000 was done with the expressed intention of decarboxylating the product to give hexan-2-one. Here are the conditions for this decarboxylation: the heating step drives off the CO₂ by increasing the gearing on the entropy term (TDS⁺) of the activation energy (two molecules are made from one).

Esters are much easier to work with than carboxylic acids, and a useful alternative procedure removes one ester group without having to hydrolyse the other. The malonate ester is heated in a
polar aprotic solvent—usually DMSO—in the presence of sodium chloride and a little water. No acid or base is required and, apart from the high temperature, the conditions are fairly mild. The scheme below shows a dimethyl malonate alkylation (note that NaOMe is used with the dimethyl ester) and removal of the methyl ester.

The mechanism is a rather unusual type of ester cleavage reaction. You met, in Chapter 17 and again in Chapter 25, the cleavage of t-butyl esters in acid solution via an SN1 mechanism. In the reaction we are now considering, the same bond breaks (O–alkyl)—but not, of course, via an SN1 mechanism because the alkyl group is Me. Instead the reaction is an SN2 substitution of carboxylate by Cl−.

Chloride is a poor nucleophile, but it is more reactive in DMSO by which it cannot be solvated. And, as soon as the carboxylate is substituted, the high temperature encourages (entropy again) irreversible decarboxylation, and the other by-product, MeCl, is also lost as a gas. The ‘decarboxylation’ (in fact, removal of a CO₂Me group, not CO₂) is known as the Krapcho decarboxylation. Because of the SN2 step, it works best with methyl malonate esters.

We have only looked at single alkylations of dicarbonyl compounds, but there are two acidic protons between the carbonyl groups and a second alkylation is usually possible. Excess of base and alkyl halide gives two alkylations in one step. More usefully, it is possible to introduce two different alkyl groups by using just one equivalent of base and alkyl halide in the first step.

With a dihaloalkane, rings can be formed by two sequential alkylation reactions: this is an important way of making cycloalkanecarboxylic acids. Even the usually more difficult (see Chapter 42) four-membered rings can be made in this way.
Ketone alkylation poses a problem in regioselectivity

Ketones are unique because they can have enolizable protons on both sides of the carbonyl group. Unless the ketone is symmetrical, or unless one side of the ketone happens to have no enolizable protons, two regioisomers of the enolate are possible and alkylation can occur on either side to give regioisomeric products. We need to be able to control which enolate is formed if ketone alkylations are to be useful.

**Thermodynamically controlled enolate formation**

Selective enolate formation is straightforward if the protons on one side of the ketone are significantly more acidic than those on the other. This is what you have just seen with ethyl acetoacetate: it is a ketone, but with weak bases ($pK_a H < 18$) it only ever enolizes on the side where the protons are acidified by the second electron-withdrawing group. If two new substituents are introduced, in the manner you have just seen, they will always both be joined to the same carbon atom. This is an example of thermodynamic control: only the more stable of the two possible enolates is formed.

This principle can be extended to ketones whose enolates have less dramatic differences in stability. We said in Chapter 21 that, since enols and enolates are alkenes, the more substituents they carry the more stable they are. So, in principle, even additional alkyl groups can control enolate formation under thermodynamic control. Formation of the more stable enolate requires a mechanism for equilibration between the two enolates, and this must be proton transfer. If a proton source is available—and this can even be just excess ketone—an equilibrium mixture of the two enolates will form. The composition of this equilibrium mixture depends very much on the ketone but, with 2-phenylcyclohexanone, conjugation ensures that only one enolate forms. The base is potassium hydride: it’s strong, but small, and can be used under conditions that permit enolate equilibration.
The more substituted lithium enolates can also be formed from the more substituted silyl enol ethers by substitution at silicon—a reaction you met in Chapter 21. The value of this reaction now becomes clear, because the usual way of making silyl enol ethers (Me₃SiCl, Et₃N) typically produces, from unsymmetrical ketones, the more substituted of the two possible ethers.

One possible explanation for the thermodynamic regioselectivity in the enol ether-forming step is related to our rationalization of the regioselectivity of bromination of ketones in acid on p. 000. Triethylamine (pKₐH 10) is too weak a base to deprotonate the starting carbonyl compound (pKₐ ca. 20), and the first stage of the reaction is probably an oxygen–silicon interaction. Loss of a proton now takes place through a cationic transition state, and this is stabilized rather more if the proton being lost is next to the methyl group: methyl groups stabilize partial cations just as they stabilize cations.

An alternative view is that reaction takes place through the enol: the Si–O bond is so strong that even neutral enols react with Me₃SiCl, on oxygen, of course. The predominant enol is the more substituted, leading to the more substituted silyl enol ether.

**Kinetically controlled enolate formation**

LDA is too hindered to attack C=O, so it attacks C–H instead. And, if there is a choice of C–H bonds, it will attack the least hindered possible. It will also prefer to attack more acidic C–H bonds, and C–H bonds on less substituted carbons are indeed more acidic. Furthermore, statistics helps, since a less substituted C atom has more protons to be removed (three versus two in this example) so, even if the rates were the same, the less substituted enolate would predominate.
These factors multiply to ensure that the enolate that forms will be the one with the fewer substituents—provided we now prevent equilibration of the enolate to the more stable, more substituted one. This means keeping the temperature low, typically –78 °C, keeping the reaction time short, and using an excess of strong base to deprotonate irreversibly and ensure that there is no remaining ketone to act as a proton source. The enolate that we then get is the one that formed faster—the kinetic enolate—and not necessarily the one that is more stable.

In general, this effect is sufficient to allow selective kinetic deprotonation of methyl ketones, that is, where the distinction is between Me and alkyl. In this example, unusually, MeLi is used as a base: LDA was probably tried but perhaps gave poorer selectivity. The first choice for getting kinetic enolate formation should always be LDA.

The same method works very well for 2-substituted cyclohexanones: the less substituted enolate forms. Even with 2-phenylcyclohexanone, which, as you have just seen, has a strong thermodynamic preference for the conjugated enolate, only the less substituted enolate forms.

2-Methylcyclohexanone can be regioselectively alkylated using LDA and benzyl bromide by this method.

**Regioselective formation of enolates from ketones**

- Thermodynamic enolates are:
  - more substituted
  - more stable
  - favoured by excess ketone, high temperature, long reaction time

- Kinetic enolates are:
  - less substituted
  - less stable
  - favoured by strong, hindered base, low temperature, short reaction time
Enones provide a solution to regioselectivity problems

Enones provide a solution to regioselectivity problems

Enolates can be made regiospecifically from, for example, silyl enol ethers or enol acetates just by treating them with an alkyllithium. These are both substitution reactions in which RLi displaces the enolate: one is $S_N2$(Si) and the other is attack at C=O. Provided there is no proton source, the enolate products have the same regiochemistry as their stable precursors, and single enolate regioisomers are formed. But there is a problem: forming enol ethers or enol esters will usually itself require a regioselective enolization! There are two situations in which this method is nonetheless useful: when the more substituted lithium enolate (which is hard to make selectively otherwise) is required, and when a silyl enol ether can be formed by a method not involving deprotonation. These methods are what we shall now consider.

Dissolving metal reduction of enones gives enolates regiospecifically

In Chapter 24 you met the Birch reduction: the use of dissolving metals (K, Na, or Li in liquid ammonia, for example) to reduce aromatic rings and alkynes. The dissolving metal reduction of enones by lithium metal in liquid ammonia is similar to these reactions—the C=C bond of the enone is reduced, with the C=O bond remaining untouched. An alcohol is required as a proton source and, in total, two electrons and two protons are added in a stepwise manner giving net addition of a molecule of hydrogen to the double bond.
The mechanism follows that described on p. 000: transfer of an electron forms a radical anion that is protonated by the alcohol to form a radical. A second electron transfer forms an anion that can undergo tautomerization to an enolate.

The enolate is stable to further reduction, and protonation during the work-up will give a ketone. But reaction with an alkyl halide is more fruitful: because the enolate forms only where the double bond of the enone was, regioselective alkylation becomes possible.

You saw above that an equilibrium mixture of the enolates of 2-methylcyclohexanone contains only about a 4:1 ratio of regioisomers. By reducing an enone to an enolate, only 2% of the unwanted regioisomer is formed.

The transfer of electrons is not susceptible to steric hindrance so substituted alkenes pose no problem. In the next example, the enolate reacts with allyl bromide to give a single stereoisomer of the product (the allyl bromide attacks from the face opposite the methyl group). Naturally, only one regioisomer is formed as well, and it would be a tall order to expect formation of this single enolate regioisomer by any form of deprotonation method.

Conjugate addition to enones gives enolates regiospecifically

Although we did not talk in detail about them at that time, you will recall from Chapter 10 that conjugate addition to enones generates first an enolate, which is usually protonated in the work-up. But, again, more fruitful things can be done with the enolate under the right conditions.
The simplest products are formed when Nu = H, but this poses a problem of regioselectivity in the nucleophilic attack step: a nucleophilic hydride equivalent that selectively undergoes conjugate addition to the enone is required. This is usually achieved with extremely bulky hydride reagents such as lithium or potassium tri(sec-butyl)borohydride (often known by the trade names of L- or K-Selectride, respectively). In this example, K-Selectride reduces the enone to an enolate that is alkylated by methyl iodide to give a single regioisomer. The reaction also illustrates the difference in reactivity between conjugated and isolated double bonds.

With organocopper reagents, conjugate addition introduces a new alkyl group and, if the resulting enolates are themselves alkylated, two new C–C bonds can be formed in a single step (a tandem reaction: one C–C bond-formation rides behind another). In Chapter 10 we explained that the best organocuprate additions are those carried out in the presence of Me₃SiCl: the product of these reactions is a silyl enol ether, formed regioselectively (the ‘enol’ double bond is always on the side where the enone used to be).

The silyl enol ethers are too unreactive for direct alkylation by an alkyl halide, but by converting them to lithium enolates all the usual alkylation chemistry becomes possible. This type of reaction forms the key step in a synthesis of the natural product α-chamigrene. Conjugate addition of Me₂CuLi gives an enolate that is trapped with trimethylsilyl chloride. Methyllithium converts the resulting silyl enol ether into a lithium enolate (by S_N2 at Si). The natural product has a spiro six-membered ring attached at the site of the enolate, and this was made by alkylating with a dibromide (you saw this done on p. 000). The first substitution is at the more reactive allylic bromide. A second enolization is needed to make the ring, but this can be done under equilibrating conditions because the required six-membered ring forms much faster than the unwanted eight-membered ring that would arise by attack on the other side of the ketone.
Among the most important of these tandem conjugate addition–alkylation reactions are those of cyclopentenones. With cyclopentenone itself, the trans diastereoisomer usually results because the alkylating agent approaches from the less hindered face of the enolate.

This is the sort of selectivity evident in the next example, which looks more complicated but is really just addition of an arylcopper reagent followed by alkylation (trans to the bulky Ar group) with an iodoester.

One of the most dramatic illustrations of the power of conjugate addition followed by alkylation is the short synthesis of the important biological molecule prostaglandin E₂ by Ryoji Noyori in Japan. The organocopper reagent and the alkylating agent contain all the functionality required for both side chains of the target in protected form. The required trans stereochemistry is assembled in the key step, which gives a 78% yield of a product requiring only removal of the silyl ether and ester protecting groups. The organometallic nucleophile was prepared from a vinyl iodide by halogen–metal exchange (Chapter 9). In the presence of copper iodide this vinyllithium adds to the cyclopentenone in a conjugate sense to give an intermediate enolate. Because in this case the starting enone already has a stereogenic centre, this step is also stereoselective: attack on the less hindered face (opposite the silyl ether) gives the trans product. The resulting enolate was alkylated with the allylic iodide containing the terminal ester: once again the trans product was formed. It is particularly vital that enolate equilibration is avoided in this reaction to prevent the inevitable E1cB elimination of the silyloxy group that would occur from the other enolate.
To conclude...

We have considered the reactions of enolates and their equivalents with alkyl halides. In the next chapter we move on to consider the reactions of the same types of enolate equivalents with a different class of electrophiles: carbonyl compounds themselves.

### Summary of methods for alkylating enolates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific enol equivalent</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate esters</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA → lithium enolate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use diethyl- or dimethylmalonate and decarboxylate</td>
<td>gives acid (NaOH, HCl) or ester (NaCl, DMSO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate aldehydes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use enamine</td>
<td>with reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with $S_N1$-reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use aza-enolate</td>
<td>with $S_N2$-reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate symmetrical ketones</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA → lithium enolate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use acetoacetate and decarboxylate</td>
<td>equivalent to alkylating acetone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use enamine</td>
<td>with reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with $S_N1$-reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use aza-enolate</td>
<td>with $S_N2$-reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate unsymmetrical ketones on more substituted side</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• $\text{Me}_2\text{SiCl}, \text{Et}_3\text{N} \rightarrow$ silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with $S_N1$-reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• $\text{Me}_2\text{SiCl}, \text{Et}_3\text{N} \rightarrow$ silyl enol ether $\rightarrow$ lithium enolate with MeLi</td>
<td>with $S_N2$-reactive alkylating agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• alkylate acetoacetate twice and decarboxylate</td>
<td>two successive alkylations of ethyl acetoacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• addition or reduction of enone to give specific lithium enolate or silyl enol ether</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To alkylate unsymmetrical ketones on less substituted side</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA → kinetic lithium enolate</td>
<td>with $S_N2$-reactive electrophiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• LDA then $\text{Me}_2\text{SiCl} \rightarrow$ silyl enol ether</td>
<td>with $S_N1$-reactive electrophiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use dianion of alkylated acetoacetate and decarboxylate</td>
<td>two successive alkylation of ethyl acetoacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use enamine</td>
<td>with reactive electrophiles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Problems

1. Suggest how the following compounds might be made by the alkylation of an enol or enolate.

   - ![Chemical structure](image1)

2. And how might these compounds be made using alkylation of an enol or enolate as one step in the synthesis?

   - ![Chemical structure](image2)

3. And, further, how might these amines be synthesized using alkylation reactions of the enolate style as part of the synthesis?

   - ![Chemical structure](image3)

4. This attempted enolate alkylation does not give the required product. What goes wrong? What products would be expected from the reaction?

   - ![Chemical structure](image4)

5. Draw mechanisms for the formation of this enamine, its reaction with the alkyl halide shown, and the hydrolysis of the product.

6. How would you produce specific enol equivalents at the points marked with the arrows (not necessarily starting from the simple carbonyl compound shown)?

   - ![Chemical structure](image5)

7. How would the reagents you have suggested in Problem 6 react with: (a) Br₂; (b) a primary alkyl halide RCH₂Br?

8. Draw a mechanism for the formation of the imine from cyclohexylamine and the following aldehyde.

9. How would the imine from Problem 8 react with LDA followed by n-BuBr? Draw mechanisms for each step: reaction with LDA, reaction of the product with n-BuBr, and the work-up.

10. What would happen if this short cut for the reaction in Problems 8 and 9 were tried?

11. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

12. How does this method of making cyclopropyl ketones work? Give mechanisms for all the reactions.

13. Give the structures of the intermediates in the following reaction sequence and mechanisms for the reactions. Comment on the formation of this particular product.

14. Suggest how the following products might be made using enol or enolate alkylation as at least one step. Explain your choice of specific enol equivalents.
Reactions of enolates with aldehydes and ketones: the aldol reaction

Introduction: the aldol reaction

The simplest enolizable aldehyde is acetaldehyde (ethanal, CH$_3$CHO). What happens if we add a small amount of base, say NaOH, to this aldehyde? Some of it will form the enolate ion.

Only a small amount of the nucleophilic enolate ion is formed: hydroxide is not basic enough to enolize an aldehyde completely. Each molecule of enolate is surrounded by molecules of the aldehyde that are not enolized and so still have the electrophilic carbonyl group intact. Each enolate ion will attack one of these aldehydes to form an alkoxide ion, which will be protonated by the water molecule formed in the first step.

The product is an aldehyde with a hydroxy (ol) group whose trivial name is aldol. The name aldol is given to the whole class of reactions between enolates (or enols) and carbonyl compounds even if in most cases the product is not a hydroxy-aldehyde at all. Notice that the base catalyst (hydroxide ion) is regenerated in the last step, so it is truly a catalyst.

This reaction is so important because of the carbon–carbon bond formed when the nucleophilic
enolate attacks the electrophilic aldehyde. This bond is shown as a black bond in this version of the key step.

The rate equation for the aldol reaction

Not only is this step the most important; it is usually the rate-determining step. The rate expression for the aldol reaction at low concentrations of hydroxide is found experimentally to be

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}] \times [\text{HO}^-]\]

showing that the formation of the enolate ion is rate-determining. Though this is a proton transfer, which we normally expect to be fast, the proton is being removed from a carbon atom. Proton transfers to and from carbon atoms can be slow.

At higher hydroxide ion concentration, the rate expression becomes termolecular (\(k_3\) expresses this) with the aldehyde concentration being squared.

\[
\text{rate} = k_3[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}]^2 \times [\text{HO}^-]
\]

The mechanism does not, of course, involve three molecules colliding together. The rate-determining step has changed, and is now the second step.

But this does not obviously give a termolecular rate expression. The rate expression for this step is

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}] \times [\text{enolate ion}]
\]

We cannot easily measure the concentration of the enolate, but we can work it out because we know that the enolate and the aldehyde are in equilibrium.

So we can express the enolate concentration using \(K_1\) as the equilibrium constant and omitting the water concentration. We can write

\[
K_1 = \frac{[\text{enolate ion}]}{[\text{aldehyde}][\text{HO}^-]}
\]

Or, rearranging this to get the enolate ion concentration,

\[
[\text{enolate ion}] = K_1[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}] \times [\text{HO}^-]
\]

And, substituting this in the rate expression,

\[
\text{rate} = k_2[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}] \times [\text{enolate ion}]
\]

\[
= k_2[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}] \times K_1[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}] \times [\text{HO}^-] = k_2K_1[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}]^2 \times [\text{HO}^-]
\]

This is what is observed, if we can remind you:

\[
\text{rate} = k_3[\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}]^2 \times [\text{HO}^-]
\]

It just turns out that the ‘termolecular rate constant’ \(k_3\) is actually the product of an equilibrium constant \(K_2\) and a genuine bimolecular rate constant \(k_2\) such that \(k_3 = K_2 \times k_2\). You saw a similar thing in the rate expressions for amide hydrolysis (Chapter 13) and E1cB elimination (Chapter 19, p. 900).

The reaction occurs with ketones as well. Acetone is a good example for us to use at the start of this chapter because it gives an important product and, as it is a symmetrical ketone, there can be no argument over which way it enolizes.

the enolization step

the carbon–carbon bond-forming step
Each step is the same as the aldol sequence with acetaldehyde, and the product is again a hydroxy-carbonyl compound, but this time a hydroxy-ketone.

The acetaldehyde reaction works well when one drop of dilute sodium hydroxide is added to acetaldehyde. The acetone reaction is best done with insoluble barium hydroxide, Ba(OH)$_2$. Both approaches keep the base concentration low. Without this precaution, the aldol products are not the compounds isolated from the reaction. With more base, further reactions occur, because the aldol products dehydrate rather easily under the reaction conditions to give stable conjugated unsaturated carbonyl compounds.

These are elimination reactions, and you met them in Chapter 19. You cannot normally eliminate water from an alcohol in basic solution and it is the carbonyl group that allows it to happen here. A second enolization reaction starts things off, and these are E1cB reactions.

In the examples that follow in the rest of the chapter you will see that base-catalysed aldol reactions sometimes give the aldol and sometimes the elimination product. The choice is partly based on conditions—the more vigorous conditions (stronger base, higher temperatures, longer reaction time) tend to give the elimination product—and partly on the structure of the reagents: some combinations are easy to stop at the aldol stage, while some almost always give the elimination reaction as well. You do not, of course, need to learn the results: if you ever need to do an aldol reaction you can consult the massive review in the 1968 volume of *Organic Reactions* to find the best conditions for getting the result you want.

The elimination is even easier in acid solution and acid-catalysed aldol reactions commonly give unsaturated products instead of aldols. In this simple example with a symmetrical cyclic ketone, the enone is formed in good yield in acid or base. We shall use the acid-catalysed reaction to illustrate the mechanism. First the ketone is enolized under acid catalysis as you saw in Chapter 21.

Then the aldol reaction takes place. Enols are less nucleophilic than enolates, and the reaction occurs because the electrophilic carbonyl component is protonated: the addition is acid-catalysed. An acid-catalysed aldol reaction takes place.
The aldol is a tertiary alcohol and would be likely to eliminate by an E1 mechanism in acid even without the carbonyl group. But the carbonyl ensures that only the stable conjugated enone is formed. Notice that the dehydration too is genuinely acid-catalysed as the acid reappears in the very last step.

None of these intermediates is detected or isolated in practice—simple treatment of the ketone with acid gives the enone in good yield. A base-catalysed reaction gives the same product via the aldol–E1cB elimination mechanism.

Aldol reactions of unsymmetrical ketones

If the ketone is blocked on one side so that it cannot enolize—in other words it has no α protons on that side—only one aldol reaction is possible. Ketones of this type might bear a tertiary alkyl or an aryl substituent. t-Butyl methyl ketone (3,3-dimethylbutan-2-one), for example, gives aldol reactions with various bases in 60–70% yield. Enolization cannot occur towards the t-butyl group and must occur towards the methyl group instead.

A specially interesting case of the blocked carbonyl compound is the lactone or cyclic ester. Open-chain esters do not give aldol reactions: they prefer a different reaction that is the subject of the next chapter. But lactones are in some ways quite like ketones and give unsaturated carbonyl products under basic catalysis. Enolization is unambiguous because the ester oxygen atom blocks enolization on one side.
The enolate then attacks the carbonyl group of an unenolized lactone just as we have seen with aldehydes and ketones.

You might have been surprised that the intermediate in the aldol step of this reaction did not decompose. This intermediate could be described as a tetrahedral intermediate in a nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group (Chapter 12). Why then does it not break down in the usual way?

The best leaving group is the alkoxide and the product is quite reasonable. But what is it to do now? The only reasonable next step is for it to close back up again. Because the lactone is a cyclic ester, the leaving group cannot really leave—it must stay attached to the molecule. This reaction is reversible, but dehydration is effectively irreversible because it gives a stable conjugated product. This is the true situation.

The equilibrium on the left does not affect the eventual product; it simply withdraws some of the material out of the productive reaction. We call this sort of equilibrium a parasitic equilibrium as it has no real life of its own—it just sucks the blood of the reaction.
Cross-condensations

So far we have considered only ‘self-condensations’—dimerization reactions of a single carbonyl compound. These form only a tiny fraction of known aldol reactions. Those that occur between two different carbonyl compounds, one acting as a nucleophile in its enol or enolate form, and the other as an electrophile, are called cross-condensations. They are more interesting than self-condensations, but working out what happens needs more thought.

We shall start with an example that works well. The ketone PhCOMe reacts with 4-nitrobenzaldehyde in aqueous ethanol under NaOH catalysis to give a quantitative yield of an enone.

![Chemical structure](image)

The first step must be the formation of an enolate anion using NaOH as a base. Though both carbonyl compounds are unsymmetrical, there is only one site for enolization as there is only one set of $\alpha$ protons, on the methyl group of the ketone. The aldehyde has no $\alpha$ protons at all.

To get the observed product, the enolate obviously attacks the aldehyde to give an aldol, which then dehydrates by the E1cB mechanism.

Now, in this step there was a choice. The enolate could have attacked another molecule of unenolized ketone. It didn’t, because ketones are less reactive than aldehydes (Chapter 6). In this case the aldehyde has an electron-withdrawing nitro substituent too, making it even more reactive. The enolate selects the better electrophile, that is, the aldehyde.

In other cases the balance may shift towards self-condensation. You might think that a crossed aldol reaction between acetaldehyde and benzophenone (diphenylketone Ph$_2$C=O) should work well.
After all, only the aldehyde can enolize and the enolate could attack the ketone. But it won’t work. The ketone is very hindered and very conjugated. It is less electrophilic than a normal ketone and normal ketones are less reactive than aldehydes. Given a choice between attacking this ketone and attacking another (but unenolized) molecule of acetaldehyde, the enolate will choose the aldehyde every time. The reaction at the start of the chapter occurs and the ketone is just a spectator.

Successful crossed aldol reactions

For this kind of crossed aldol reaction to work well we must have two conditions.

- One partner only must be capable of enolization
- The other partner must be incapable of enolization and be more electrophilic than the enolizable partner.

Everyone remembers the first of these conditions, but it is easy to forget the second.

Here follows a list of carbonyl substituents that prevent enolization. They are arranged roughly in order of reactivity with the most reactive towards nucleophilic attack by an enolate at the top. You do, of course, need two substituents to block enolization so typical compounds also appear in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbonyl substituents that block enolization</th>
<th>Substituent</th>
<th>Typical compounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most reactive&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>H</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="H" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;, CCl&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="CF&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;, CCl&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-alkyl</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="t-alkyl" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkenyl</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="alkenyl" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aryl</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="aryl" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>least reactive&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>NR&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="NR&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="OR" /></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Reactivity towards nucleophilic attack by an enolate.

<sup>b</sup> This compound needs special methods, discussed in the section on the Mannich reaction, p. 000.
Compounds that can enolize but that are not electrophilic

We can complement this type of selectivity with the opposite type. Are there any compounds that can enolize but that cannot function as electrophiles? No carbonyl compound can fill this role, but in Chapter 21 we met some ‘enolizable’ compounds that lacked carbonyl groups altogether. Most notable among these were the nitroalkanes. Deprotonation of nitroalkanes is not enolization nor is the product an enolate ion, but the whole thing is so similar to enolization that it makes sense to consider them together. The anions, sometimes called nitronates, react well with aldehydes and ketones.

This particular example, using cyclohexanone as the electrophile and nitromethane itself as the source of the ‘enolate’, works quite well with NaOH as the base in methanol solution to give the ‘aldol’ in reasonable yield. Once again this reaction involves choice. Either compound could enolize, and, indeed, cyclohexanone reacts well with itself under essentially the same conditions.

Although cyclohexanone forms an enolate in the absence of nitromethane, when both ketone and nitroalkane are present the base prefers to remove a proton from nitromethane. This is simply a question of $pK_a$ values. The $pK_a$ of a typical ketone is about 20 but that of nitromethane is 10. It is not even necessary to use as strong a base as NaOH ($pK_{aH} = 15.7$) to deprotonate nitromethane: an amine will do ($pK_{aH}$ about 10) and secondary amines are often used.

The elimination step also occurs easily with nitro compounds and is difficult to prevent in reactions with aromatic aldehydes. Now you can see how the useful nitroalkene Michael acceptors in Chapter 23 were made.

Nitroalkenes as termite defence compounds

Termites are social insects, and every species has its own ‘soldier’ termites that defend the nest. Soldier termites of the species *Prorhinotermes simplex* have huge heads from which they spray a toxic nitroalkene on their enemies.

Though this compound kills other insects and even other species of termites, it has no effect on the workers of the same species. To find out why this was so, Prestwich made some radioactive compound using the aldo reaction. First, the right aldehyde was made using an $S_N2$ reaction with radioactive $^{14}C$ cyanide ion on a tosylate followed by DIBAL reduction (Chapter 24) of the nitrile. The position of the $^{14}C$ atom in each compound is shown in black.
If an aldol reaction can be done with
- only one enolizable component
- only one set of enolizable protons
- a carbonyl electrophile more reactive than the compound being enolized
then you are lucky and the crossed aldol method will work. But most aldol reactions aren’t like this: they are cross-condensations of aldehydes and ketones of various reactivities with several different enolizable protons. Crossed aldols on most pairs of carbonyl compounds lead to hopeless mixtures of products. In all cases that fail to meet these three criteria, a specific enol equivalent will be required: one component must be turned quantitatively into an enol equivalent, which will be reacted in a separate step with an electrophile. That is what the next section is about—and you will find that some of the methods have a lot in common with those we used for alkylating enolates in Chapter 26.

Controlling aldol reactions with specific enol equivalents

In Chapter 26 we saw that the alkylation of enolates was most simply controlled by preparing a specific enol equivalent from the carbonyl compound. The same approach is the most powerful of all the ways to control the aldol reaction. The table is a reminder of some of the most useful of these specific enol equivalents.

**Specific enol equivalents** are intermediates that still have the reactivity of enols or enolates but are stable enough to be prepared in good yield from the carbonyl compound. That was all we needed to know in Chapter 26. Now we know that a further threat is the reaction of the partly formed enol derivative with its unenolized parent and we should add that ‘no aldol reaction should occur during the preparation of the specific enol equivalent’.

---

**Important specific enol equivalents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enol</th>
<th>Carbonyl compound</th>
<th>Enolate ion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R-</td>
<td>R-</td>
<td>R-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enol</td>
<td>carbonyl compound</td>
<td>enolate ion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Silyl enol ether</th>
<th>Oxygen derivatives</th>
<th>Lithium enolate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R-SiMe3</td>
<td>R-O</td>
<td>R- Li</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enamine</th>
<th>Nitrogen derivatives</th>
<th>Aza-enolate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R-NR2</td>
<td>R-NLi</td>
<td>R-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enol</th>
<th>1,3-dicarboxyl compound</th>
<th>Enolate anion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R-</td>
<td>R-3-H-1-0Et</td>
<td>R-3-0Et</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then the aldol reaction was carried out with nitromethane and sodium methoxide to give the nitro aldol. Elimination using acetic anhydride in pyridine gave the defence compound (E-1-nitropentadec-1-ene) in 37% yield over the four steps.

It was found that, if the worker termites were sprayed with the labelled compound, they were able to make it harmless by using an enzyme to reduce the nitroalkene to a nitroalkane. The labelled nitroalkane could only be re-isolated from workers of the same species: other insects do not have the enzyme.

If an aldol reaction can be done with
- only one enolizable component
- only one set of enolizable protons
- a carbonyl electrophile more reactive than the compound being enolized
Sensible choice of an appropriate specific enol equivalent will allow almost any aldol reaction to be performed successfully. The first two compounds in our list, the silyl enol ethers and the lithium enolates, have a specially wide application and we should look first at the way these work. As the table suggests, silyl enol ethers are more like enols: they are nonbasic and not very reactive. Lithium enolates are more like enolate anions: they are basic and reactive. Each is appropriate in different circumstances.

**Lithium enolates in aldol reactions**

Lithium enolates are usually made at low temperature in THF with a hindered lithium amide base (often LDA) and are stable under those conditions because of the strong O–Li bond. The formation of the enolate begins with Li–O bond formation before the removal of the proton from the α position by the basic nitrogen atom.

This reaction happens very quickly—so quickly that the partly formed enolate does not have a chance to react with unenolized carbonyl compound before proton removal is complete.

Now, if a second carbonyl compound is added, it too complexes with the same lithium atom. This allows the aldol reaction to take place by a cyclic mechanism in the coordination sphere of the lithium atom.

The aldol step itself is now a very favourable intramolecular reaction with a six-membered cyclic transition state. The product is initially the lithium alkoxide of the aldol, which gives the aldol on work-up.

This reaction works well even if the electrophilic partner is an enolizable aldehyde. In this example, an unsymmetrical ketone (blocked on one side by an aromatic ring) as the enol partner reacts in excellent yield with a very enolizable aldehyde. This is the first complete aldol reaction we have shown you using a specific enol equivalent: notice the important point that it is done in two steps—first, form the specific enol equivalent (here, the lithium enolate); then add the electrophile. Contrast the crossed aldols earlier in the chapter, where enolizable component, base, and electrophile were all mixed together in one step.
The next example is particularly impressive. The enol partner is a symmetrical ketone that is very hindered—there is only one $\alpha$ hydrogen on either side. The electrophilic partner is a conjugated enal that is not enolizable but that might accept the nucleophile in a conjugate manner. In spite of these potential problems, the reaction goes in excellent yield.

You may wonder why we did not mention the stereochemistry of the first of these two products. Two new stereogenic centres are formed and the product is a mixture of diastereoisomers. In fact, both of these products were wanted for oxidation to the 1,3-diketone so the stereochemistry is irrelevant. This sequence shows that the aldol reaction can be used to make diketones too.

Silyl enol ethers in aldol reactions

The silyl enol ether can be prepared from its parent carbonyl compound by forming a small equilibrium concentration of enolate ion with weak base such as a tertiary amine and trapping the enolate with the very efficient oxygen electrophile $\text{Me}_3\text{SiCl}$. The silyl enol ether is stable enough to be isolated but is usually used immediately without storing.

You should look upon silyl enol ethers as rather reactive alkenes that combine with things like protons or bromine (Chapter 21) but do not react with aldehydes and ketones without catalysis: they are much less reactive than lithium enolates. As with alkylation (p. 000), a Lewis acid catalyst is needed to get the aldol reaction to work, and a Ti(IV) compound such as TiCl$_4$ is the most popular.

The immediate product is actually the silyl ether of the aldol but this is hydrolysed during work-up and the aldol is formed in good yield. The Lewis acid presumably bonds to the carbonyl oxygen atom of the electrophile.

Now the aldol reaction can occur: the positive charge on the titanium-complexed carbonyl oxygen atom makes the aldehyde reactive enough to be attacked even by the not very nucleophilic silyl enol ether. Chloride ion removes the silyl group and the titanium alkoxide captures it again. This last step should not surprise you as any alkoxide (MeOLi for example) will react with $\text{Me}_3\text{SiCl}$ to form a silyl ether.
This mechanism looks complicated, and it is. It is, in fact, not clear that the details of what we have written here are right: the titanium may well coordinate to both oxygens through the reaction, and some of the steps that we have represented separately probably happen simultaneously. However, all reasonable mechanisms will agree on two important points, which you must understand:

- Lewis acid is needed to get silyl enol ethers to react
- The key step is an aldol attack of the silyl enol ether with the Lewis-acid complexed electrophile

The use of silyl enol ethers can be illustrated in a synthesis of manicone, a conjugated enone that ants use to leave a trail to a food source. It can be made by an aldol reaction between the pentan-3-one (as the enol component) and 2-methylbutanal (as the electrophile). Both partners are enolizable so we shall need to form a specific enol equivalent from the ketone. The silyl enol ether works well.

The silyl enol ether is not isolated but reacted immediately with the aldehyde to give an excellent yield of the aldol. Dehydration in acid solution with toluene sulfonic acid (TsOH) gives the enone. You can see by the high yield in the aldol reaction that there is no significant self-condensation of either partner in the aldol reaction.

### Conjugated Wittig reagents as specific enol equivalents

When the Wittig reaction was introduced (Chapter 14) we saw it simply as an alkene synthesis. Now if we look at one group of Wittig reagents, those derived from \(\alpha\)-halo-carbonyl compounds, we can see that they behave as specific enol equivalents in making unsaturated carbonyl compounds.

You notice that we have drawn the intermediate ylid as an enolate just to emphasize that it is an enolate derivative: it can also be represented either as the ylid or as a \(C=\overset{\ominus}{P}\) ‘phosphorane’ structure. If we look at the details of this sort of Wittig reaction, we shall see that ylid formation is like enolate anion formation (indeed it is enolate anion formation). Only a weak base is needed as the enolate is stabilized by the \(\overset{\oplus}{Ph_3P}^+\) group as well.
The first step of the Wittig reaction proper is just like an aldol reaction as it consists of an enolate attacking an electrophilic carbonyl compound. But, instead of forming an ‘aldol’ product, this adduct goes on to form an unsaturated carbonyl compound directly.

The final stages follow the mechanism of the Wittig reaction you met in Chapter 14: you see them as a special case of dehydration made favourable by the formation of a phosphine oxide as well as an unsaturated carbonyl compound.

The conjugated ylides derived from aldehydes, ketones, and esters are all sufficiently stable to be commercially available as the ylids—one of the few examples of specific enol equivalents that you can actually buy. The ylid corresponding to the enolate of acetaldehyde is a solid, m.p. 185–188 °C that reacts well with other aldehydes, even if they are enolizable.

The Wittig equivalent of an aldol reaction with a ketone enolate can be illustrated by the synthesis of a compound in juniper berries, junionone, with a four-membered ring.

No base was needed in either of the last two examples: the stable ylid itself was used as a reagent. The stability of the enolate ylid means that the Wittig reagent must act as the enol partner and the other compound as the electrophile.

The stability of the phosphonium-stabilized enolates also means that, although they react well with aldehydes, their reactions with ketones are often poor, and it is better in these cases to use phosphonate-stabilized enolates. Being anionic, rather than neutral, these are more reactive. If an ester enolate equivalent is being used, the best base is the alkoxide ion belonging to the ester; with a ketone enolate equivalent, use sodium hydride or an alkoxide.

These last reagents, where the anion is stabilized both by the adjacent carbonyl group (as an enolate) and by the adjacent P=O group, are just one of many examples of enolate anions stabilized by...
two electron-withdrawing groups. The most important members of this class, enolates of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds, are the subject of the next section.

Specific enol equivalents from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds

Though these are the oldest of the specific enol equivalents, they are still widely used because they need no special conditions—no low temperatures or strictly anhydrous solvents. The two most important are derived from malonic acid and ethyl acetoacetate.

These compounds are largely enolized under normal conditions. So, you might ask, why don’t they immediately react with themselves by the aldol reaction? There are two aspects to the answer. First, the enols are very stable (see Chapter 21 for a full discussion) and, secondly, the carbonyl groups in the unenolized fraction of the sample are poorly electrophilic ester and ketone groups. The second carbonyl group of the enol is not electrophilic because of conjugation.

When a normal carbonyl compound is treated with catalytic acid or base, we have a small proportion of reactive enol or enolate in the presence of large amounts of unenolized electrophile. Aldol reaction (self-condensation) occurs. With 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds we have a small proportion of not particularly reactive unenolized compound in the presence of large amounts of stable (and hence unreactive) enol. No aldol occurs.

If we want a crossed aldol reaction, we simply add a second, electrophilic carbonyl compound such as an aldehyde, along with a weak acid or base. Often a mixture of a secondary amine and a carboxylic acid is used.

Reaction no doubt occurs via the enolate ion generated by the amine while the carboxylic acid buffers the solution, neutralizing the product, and preventing enolization of the aldehyde. The amine (pKₐ about 10) is a strong enough base to form a significant concentration of enolate from the 1,3-dicarbonyl compound (pKₐ about 13) but not strong enough to form the enolate from the aldehyde (pKₐ about 20). The formation of the enolate can be drawn from either tautomer of the malonate.

Now the enolate ion can attack the aldehyde in the usual way, and the buffer action of the acid produces the aldol in the reaction mixture.
There is still one proton between the two carbonyl groups so enolate anion formation is again easy and dehydration follows to give the unsaturated product.

You may not want a product with both ester groups present, and we discussed in Chapter 26 how one of two 1,3-related ester groups may be removed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation. There is a simpler route with the aldol reaction. If, instead of the malonate diester, malonic acid is used, the decarboxylation occurs spontaneously during the reaction. The catalysts this time are usually a more basic mixture of piperidine and pyridine.

The reaction under these conditions is sometimes called the Knoevenagel reaction after its nineteenth century inventor, and presumably uses the enolate anion of the monocarboxylate of the malonic acid. Though this enolate is a dianion, its extensive delocalization and the intramolecular hydrogen bond make it really quite stable.

Next comes the aldol step. The dianion attacks the aldehyde, and after proton exchange the aldol is formed (still as the monocarboxylate in this basic solution).

Finally comes the decarboxylation step, which can occur through a cyclic mechanism (compare the decarboxylation mechanisms in Chapter 26). The decarboxylation could give either $E$ or $Z$ double bond depending on which acid group is lost as CO$_2$, but the transition state leading to the more stable $E$ product must be lower in energy since the product has $E$ geometry.

We have now completed our survey of the most important types of aldol reaction and of the varieties of specific enol equivalents available. We shall now move on to look at carbonyl compounds type by type, and consider the best options for making specific enol equivalents of each.
Specific enol equivalents for carboxylic acid derivatives

We established in Chapter 12 a hierarchy for the electrophilic reactivity of acid derivatives that should by now be very familiar to you—acyl chlorides at the top to amides at the bottom. But what about the reactivity of these same derivatives towards enolization at the α position, that is, the CH₂ group between R and the carbonyl group in the various structures? You might by now be able to work this out. The principle is based on the mechanisms for the two processes.

See how similar these two mechanisms are. In particular, they are the same at the carbonyl group itself. Electrons move into the C=O π* orbital: the C=O bond becomes a C–O single bond as a negative charge develops on the oxygen atom. It should come as no surprise that the order of reactivity for enolization is the same as the order of reactivity towards nucleophilic attack.

In Chapter 21 we established that enolates can be formed from acid chlorides, but that they decompose to ketenes. Enolates can be formed from amides with difficulty, but with primary or secondary amides one of the NH protons is likely to be removed instead.

For the remainder of this section we shall look at how to make specific enol equivalents of the remaining carboxylic acid derivatives.

### Enolate formation and electrophilic reactivity of acid derivatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electrophilic reactivity</th>
<th>Derivative</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Reactivity towards enolate formation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>very high</td>
<td>acid chloride</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Acid Chloride" /></td>
<td>very high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>anhydride</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Anhydride" /></td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
<td>ester</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Ester" /></td>
<td>low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very low</td>
<td>amide</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Amide" /></td>
<td>very low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Chapter 21 we established that enolates can be formed from acid chlorides, but that they decompose to ketenes. Enolates can be formed from amides with difficulty, but with primary or secondary amides one of the NH protons is likely to be removed instead.

For the remainder of this section we shall look at how to make specific enol equivalents of the remaining carboxylic acid derivatives.

### Enols and enolates from acid anhydrides

Enols or enolates from anhydrides are not used very often in aldol reactions other than in one important application, usually known as the Perkin reaction. An acid anhydride, such as acetic anhydride, is combined with a non-enolizable aldehyde and a weak base, usually the salt of the acid. This base is used so that nucleophilic attack on the anhydride does no harm, simply regenerating the anhydride.

![Perkin Reaction](image)
The low equilibrium concentration of the enolate attacks the aldehyde.

Thus far the reaction is a normal aldol reaction, but now something quite different happens. Six atoms along the molecule from the alkoxide ion is the carbonyl group of an anhydride. An intramolecular acylation is inevitable, given that anhydrides acylate alcohols even if the two groups are in different molecules.

Next, acetic acid is lost. Just as acetate is a better leaving group than hydroxide, this step is much more favourable than the usual dehydration at the end of an aldol condensation. Elimination of acetic acid may occur either from the carboxylic acid itself or from the mixed anhydride formed from one more molecule of the acetic anhydride. Whichever route is followed, the unsaturated acid is formed in a single step with the anhydride assisting both the aldol and the dehydration steps.

Enols and enolates from esters

Among the enolates of carboxylic acid derivatives, esters are the most widely used. Ester enolates cannot be used in crossed aldols with aldehydes because the aldehyde is both more enolizable and more electrophilic than the ester. It will just condense with itself and ignore the ester. The same is true for ketones. A specific enol equivalent for the ester will therefore be needed for a successful ester aldol reaction.

Fortunately, because this is a classic problem, many solutions are available. You can use the lithium enolate, or the silyl enol ether, usually made best via the lithium enolate.
A good example is the first step in a synthesis of the natural product himalchene by Oppolzer and Snowden. Even though the ester and the aldehyde are both crowded with substituents, the aldol reaction works well with the lithium enolate of the ester. The cyclic mechanism ensures that the enolate adds directly to the carbonyl group of the aldehyde and not in a conjugate (Michael) fashion.

Zinc enolates, made from the bromoesters, are a good alternative to lithium enolates of esters. The mechanism for zinc enolate formation should remind you of the formation of a Grignard reagent.

There is no danger of self-condensation with zinc enolates as they do not react with esters. But they do react cleanly with aldehydes and ketones to give aldols on work-up. You will appreciate that the use of zinc enolates is therefore special to esters: you cannot make a zinc enolate from a 2-bromoaldehyde or an α-bromoketone as then you would get self-condensation.

---

**Ester enolate equivalents**

For aldol reactions with an ester enolate equivalent, use

- **lithium enolates or**

- **silyl enol ethers or**

- **zinc enolates**

---

Enols and enolates from free carboxylic acids

You might think that the presence of the acidic proton in a carboxylic acid would present an insuperable barrier to the formation and use of any enol derivatives. In fact, this is not a problem with either the lithium enolates or the silyl enol ethers. Addition of BuLi or LDA to a carboxylic acid
immediately results in the removal of the acidic proton and the formation of the lithium salt of the carboxylic acid. If BuLi is used, the next step is addition of BuLi to the carbonyl group and the eventual formation of a ketone (see Chapter 12, p. 000). But, if LDA is used, it is possible to form the lithium enolate of the lithium derivative of the carboxylic acid.

The enolate derivative is rather strange as it has two OLi groups on the same double bond, but it can be cleanly converted to the corresponding silyl enol ether. Both lithium enolates and silyl enol ethers from acids can be used in aldol reactions.

Specific enol equivalents for aldehydes

Aldehydes enolize very readily but also self-condense rather easily. Lithium enolates can’t be made cleanly, because the self-condensation reaction happens even at −78 °C and is as fast as the enolization by LDA. Silyl enol ethers are a much better choice. They clearly must not be made via the lithium enolate, and amine bases are usually used. As each molecule of enolate is produced in the equilibrium, it is efficiently trapped by the silylating agent.

These silyl enol ethers are probably the best way of carrying out crossed aldol reactions with an aldehyde as the enol partner. An example is the reaction of the enol of the not very enolizable isobutyraldehyde with the very enolizable 3-phenylpropanal. Mixing the two aldehydes and adding base would of course lead to an orgy of self-condensation and cross-couplings.

Preliminary formation of the silyl enol ether from either aldehyde, in the absence of the other, would be trouble-free as Me3SiCl captures the enolate faster than self-condensation occurs. Here we
need the silyl enol ether from isobutyraldehyde. The other aldehyde is now added along with the necessary Lewis acid, here TiCl₄. The mechanism described on p. 000 gives the aldol after work-up in an excellent 95% yield. No more than 5% of other reactions can have occurred.

Other useful specific enol equivalents of aldehydes and ketones are enamines and aza-enolates, which you saw in use in alkylation reactions in Chapter 26. Aza-enolates—the lithium enolates of imines—derived from aldehydes are useful too in aldol reactions.

Cyclohexylamine gives a reasonably stable imine even with acetaldehyde and this can be isolated and lithiated with LDA to give the aza-enolate. The mechanism is similar to the formation of lithium enolates and the lithium atom binds the nitrogen atom of the aza-enolate, just as it binds the oxygen atom of an enolate.

The aza-enolate reacts cleanly with other aldehydes or ketones to give aldol products. Even the most challenging of cross-couplings—attack on another similar enolizable aldehyde—occurs in good yield.

The initial product is a new imine, which is easily hydrolysed during acidic aqueous work-up. The alkoxide is protonated, the imine hydrolysed, and finally the aldol is dehydrated to give the enal—65% overall yield in this case.

The key to the success of the aza-enolates is that the imine is first formed from the aldehyde with the primary amine, a relatively weak base, and under these conditions imine formation is faster than self-condensation. Only after the imine is formed is LDA added when self-condensation cannot occur simply because no aldehyde is left.
Enamines are not generally used in aldol condensations, partly because they are not reactive enough, but mainly because they are too much in equilibrium with the carbonyl compound itself and exchange would lead to self-condensation and the wrong cross-couplings. You will see in the next chapter that enamines come into their own when we want to acylate enols with the much more reactive acid chlorides.

Specific enol equivalents for ketones

The enolization of ketones, unless they are symmetrical, poses a special problem. Not only do we need to prevent them self-condensing (though this is less of a problem than with aldehydes), but we also need to control which side of the carbonyl group the ketone enolizes. In this section we shall introduce aldol reactions with unsymmetrical ketones where one of two possible enols or enolates must be made.

Making the less substituted enolate equivalent: kinetic enolates

Treatment of methyl ketones with LDA usually gives only the lithium enolate on the methyl side. This is the enolate that forms the fastest, and is therefore known as the kinetic enolate. It is formed faster because:

- the protons on the methyl group are more acidic
- there are three of them as against two on the other side, and
- there is steric hindrance to attack by LDA on the other side of the carbonyl group

A simple example from the first report of this reaction by Gilbert Stork and his group in 1974 is the condensation of pentan-2-one with butanal to give the aldol and then the enone oct-4-en-3-one by acid-catalysed dehydration. The yields may seem disappointing, but this was the first time anyone had carried out a crossed aldol reaction like this with an unsymmetrical ketone and an enolizable aldehyde and got just one aldol product in any reasonable yield at all.
These kinetic lithium enolates are stable in THF at \(-78\,^\circ\text{C}\) for a short time but can be preserved at room temperature in the form of their silyl ethers.

Aldol reactions can be carried out with either the lithium enolate or the silyl enol ether. As an example we shall use the synthesis of a component of the flavour of ginger. The hotness of ginger comes from ‘gingerol’—the ‘pungent principle’ of ginger. Gingerol is a 3-hydroxyketone, so we might consider using an aldol reaction to make it. We shall need the enol (or enolate) on the methyl side of an unsymmetrical ketone to react with a simple aldehyde (pentanal) as the electrophilic partner in the aldol reaction. Pentanal is an enolizable aldehyde, so we must stop it enolizing. The diagram summarizes the proposed aldol reaction.

We might consider using the lithium enolate or the silyl enol ether. As we need the kinetic enolate (the enolate formed on the less substituted side of the ketone), we shall be using the lithium enolate to make the silyl enol ether, so it would make sense to try that first.

There is another problem too. The ketone has a free OH group on the far side of the ring that will interfere with the reaction. We must protect that first as an ordinary silyl ether (not a silyl enol ether).

Now we can make the kinetic lithium enolate with a hindered lithium amide base. In fact, the one chosen here was even more hindered than LDA as it has two \(\text{Me}_3\text{Si}\) groups on the nitrogen atom.
An aldol reaction with this lithium enolate on pentanal was successful and the protecting group (the silyl ether) conveniently fell off during work-up to give gingerol itself. However, the yield was only 57%. When the silyl enol ether was used with TiCl₄ as the Lewis acid catalyst, the yield jumped to 92%. This is one of the many successful uses of this style of aldol reaction by Mukaiyama, the inventor of the method.

Making the more substituted enolate equivalent: thermodynamic enolates

Being an alkene, an enol or enolate is more stable if it has more substituents. So the way to make the more substituted enolate equivalent is to make it under conditions where the two enolates can interconvert: equilibration will give the more stable. You have seen in Chapter 26 (p. 000) how the silyl enol ether on the more substituted side of a ketone can be made by treating the ketone with Me₃SiCl and a weak base, but these thermodynamic silyl enol ethers have been little used in aldol reactions. One successful example is the thermodynamic silyl enol ether of 1-phenylpropan-2-one: enolization on the conjugated side is overwhelmingly favoured thermodynamically. The aldol reaction with a 2-keto-aldehyde goes exclusively for the more reactive aldehyde group.
This concludes our general survey of the aldol reaction. Two special topics remain, both important, one dealing with an awkward and difficult reagent and one with a collection of aldol reactions that are particularly easy to do.

The Mannich reaction

At first sight formaldehyde (methanal, CH$_2$=O) seems the ideal electrophilic partner in a mixed aldol reaction. It cannot enolize. (Usually we are concerned with $\alpha$ hydrogen atoms in an aldehyde. Formaldehyde does not even have $\alpha$ carbon atoms.) And it is a super aldehyde. Aldehydes are more electrophilic than ketones because a hydrogen atom replaces one of the alkyl groups. Formaldehyde has two hydrogen atoms.

The trouble is that it is too reactive. It tends to react more than once and to give extra unwanted reactions as well. You might think that condensation between acetaldehyde and formaldehyde in base would be quite simple. The acetaldehyde alone can form an enolate, and this enolate will attack the more electrophilic carbonyl group, which is formaldehyde, like this.

This aldol is formed all right but it is not the final product of the reaction because, with an electrophile as powerful as formaldehyde, a second and a third aldol follow swiftly on the heels of the first. Here is the mechanism of the second aldol.

In each reaction the only possible enolate attacks another molecule of formaldehyde. By now you have got the idea so we simply draw the next enolate and the structure of the third aldol.
Even this is not all. A fourth molecule of formaldehyde reacts with hydroxide ion and then reduces the third aldol. This reduction is known as the Cannizzaro reaction, and is described in the box. The final product is the highly symmetrical ‘pentaerythritol’, C(CH₂OH)₄, with four CH₂OH groups joined in a tetrahedral array about the same carbon atom.

The overall reaction uses four molecules of formaldehyde and can give a high yield (typically 80% with NaOH but as much as 90% with MgO) of the product.

The Cannizzaro reaction

As you know, aldehydes are generally at least partly hydrated in water. Hydration is catalysed by base, and we can represent the hydration step in base like this. The hydration product is an anion but, if the base is sufficiently strong (or concentrated) and as long as the aldehyde cannot be enolized, at least some will be present as a dianion.

The diion is very unstable, and one way in which it can become much more stable is by behaving like a tetrahedral intermediate. Which is the best leaving group? Out of a choice of O²⁻, R⁻, and H⁺, it’s H⁺ that (if reluctantly) has to go. Hydride is, of course, too unstable to be released into solution but, if there is a suitable electrophile at hand (another molecule of aldehyde, for example), it is transferred to the electrophile centre in a mechanism that bears some resemblance to a borohydride reduction.

The diion becomes a much more stable carboxylate monoanion, and a second molecule of aldehyde has been reduced to an alcohol. This is the Cannizzaro reaction: in this case it takes the form of a disproportionation of two molecules of aldehyde to one of carboxylate and one of alcohol.

In the pentaerythritol case, the diion reducing agent is formed from formaldehyde: first hydride attacks it as a nucleophile, then as a base. The diion transfers ‘hydride’ to a different aldehyde, the third aldol product, to make pentaerythritol. The Cannizzaro reaction waits till this point because only after the third aldol does the aldehyde lose its ability to enolize, and the reaction works only with unenolizable aldehydes.

If you want a more controlled reaction with addition of formaldehyde to an aldehyde or ketone without the reduction step, you can sometimes succeed with a weaker base such as potassium carbonate. Typically in these reactions all the enolizable hydrogen atoms (green) are replaced by molecules of formaldehyde (black).
But a more general solution is to use the **Mannich reaction**. A typical example is shown here: the reaction involves an enolizable aldehyde or ketone (here we use cyclohexanone), a secondary amine (here dimethylamine), formaldehyde as its aqueous solution, and catalytic HCl. The product is an amino-ketone from the addition of one molecule each of formaldehyde and the amine to the ketone.

The mechanism involves the preliminary formation of an imine salt from the amine and formaldehyde. The amine is nucleophilic and attacks the more electrophilic of the two carbonyl compounds available. That is, of course, formaldehyde. No acid is needed for this addition step, but acid-catalysed dehydration of the addition product gives the imine salt. In the normal Mannich reaction, this is just an intermediate but it is quite stable and the corresponding iodide is sold as ‘Eschenmoser’s salt’ for use in Mannich reactions.

The electrophilic salt can now add to the enol (we are in acid solution) of the ketone to give the product of the reaction, an amine sometimes called a **Mannich base**.

By using this reaction, you can add one molecule of formaldehyde—one only—to carbonyl compounds. You might, of course, reasonably object that the product is not actually an aldol product at all—indeed, if you wanted the aldol product, the Mannich reaction would be of little use to you. It nevertheless remains a very important reaction. First of all, it is a simple way to make amino-ketones and many drug molecules belong to this class. Secondly, the Mannich products can be converted to enones. We will discuss this reaction next.

The most reliable method for making the enone is to alkylate the Mannich base with MeI and then treat the ammonium salt with base. Enolate ion formation leads to an E1cB reaction rather like the dehydration of aldols, but with a better leaving group.

Enones like this, with two hydrogen atoms at the end of the double bond, are called **exo-methylene compounds**; they are very reactive, and cannot easily be made or stored. They certainly cannot be made by aldol reactions with formaldehyde alone as we have seen. The solution is to make the Mannich base, store that, and then to alkylate and eliminate only when the enone is needed. We shall see how useful this is in the Michael reaction in Chapter 29.

If the enone is wanted, the secondary amine does not end up in the molecule so the more convenient (less volatile and less smelly) cyclic amines, pyrrolidine and piperidine, are often used. Enones with monosubstituted double bonds can be made in this way.
Intramolecular aldol reactions

Now for something easy. When an aldol reaction can form a five- or six-membered ring, you need no longer worry about specific enols or anything like that. Equilibrium methods with weak acids or bases are quite enough to give the cyclic product by an intramolecular aldol reaction because intramolecular reactions are faster than intermolecular ones. We shall illustrate intramolecular reactions by looking at the cyclization of a series of diketones of increasing complexity starting with one that can form four equivalent enols: cyclodeca-1,6-dione.

It doesn’t matter where enolization occurs, because the same enol is formed. And once the enol is formed, there is only one thing it can reasonably do: attack the other ketone to form a stable five-membered ring. It also gives a reasonably stable seven-membered ring, but that is by the way. In weak acid or base, only a small proportion of carbonyl groups will be enolized, so the chance of two being in the same molecule is very low. No intermolecular condensation is found and the yield of the bicyclic enone from the intramolecular reaction is almost 100% (96% with Na₂CO₃).

This may look like a long stretch for the enol to reach across the ten-membered ring to reach the other ketone, but the conformational drawing in the margin shows just how close they can be. You should compare this conformation with that of a decalin (Chapter 18).

The key point to remember with intramolecular aldols is this:

- **Intramolecular reactions giving five- or six-membered rings are preferred to those giving strained three- or four-membered rings on the one hand or medium rings (eight- to thirteen-membered) on the other.**

Acid-catalysed cyclization of the symmetrical diketone nona-2,8-dione could give two enols.

One enol can cyclize through an eight-membered cyclic transition state and the other through a six-membered ring. In each case the product would first be formed as an aldol but would dehydrate to the cyclic enone having the same ring size as the transition state. In practice, only the less strained six-membered ring is formed and the enone can be isolated in 85% yield.
Most diketones lack symmetry, and will potentially have four different sites for enolization. Consider what might happen when this diketone is treated with KOH. There are four different places where an enolate anion might be formed as there are four different \( \alpha \) carbon atoms. There are also two different electrophilic carbonyl groups so that there are many possibilities for inter- and intramolecular condensation. Yet only one product is formed, in 90% yield.

We can deduce the mechanism of the reaction simply from the structure of the product by working backwards. The double bond is formed from an aldol whose structure we can predict and hence we can see which enolate anion was formed and which ketone acted as the electrophilic partner.

Must we argue that this one enolate is more easily formed than the other three? No, of course not. There is little difference between all four enolates and almost no difference between the three enolates from CH\(_2\) groups. We can argue that this is the only aldol reaction that leads to a stable conjugated enone in a stable six-membered ring. This must be the mechanism; protonation and dehydration follow as usual.

Now try one of the alternatives in which the same ketone forms an enolate on the other side.
This reaction gives an unstable four-membered ring that would revert to the enolate. Providing the reaction is done under equilibrating conditions, the whole process would go into reverse back to the original diketone and the observed (six-membered ring) cyclization would eventually predominate. There is one alternative cyclization to give a six-membered ring and this does not occur for an interesting reason. Here is the reaction.

The new ring is a six-membered ring and we have numbered it to convince you. It is, of course, a rather strained bridged compound, but the key point is that dehydration is impossible. No enolate can form at the bridgehead, because bridgehead carbons cannot be planar (see Chapter 19) and the enone product cannot exist for the same reason: the carbons marked (●) in the brown structure would all have to lie in the same plane. The aldol has a perfectly acceptable conformation but that elimination is impossible. The aldol product remains in equilibrium with the alternative aldol products, but only one elimination is possible—and that is irreversible, so eventually all the material ends up as the one enone.

Even without the constraint of avoiding a bridgehead alkene, some completely unsymmetrical diketones give single products in high yield. Here are two related examples with similar structures.

The first of these is impressive for the high yield and the lack of interference by the carboxylic acid group. The second is important because the product is the perfumery compound cis-jasmon found naturally in jasmine flowers, and is formed in good yield with no change in the position or geometry of the Z double bond.

In these reactions there is some selectivity between two possible five-membered rings, both of which can easily dehydrate to give an enone. These are the alternatives, using a general structure where R might be CH₂CO₂H in the first or the unsaturated chain in the second example.
So far it is very difficult to see much difference between the two routes. Indeed, we might have argued that the upper route is better because enolization is faster at a methyl group. But this is wrong because the reaction is not under kinetic but rather under thermodynamic control. The two products differ by the number of substituents on the double bond, and the more substituents there are on a double bond, the more stable it is. This factor is discussed in Chapter 19. It is the only difference between these two products and it controls the reaction very effectively.

To conclude: a summary of equilibrium and directed aldol methods

As we leave this chapter, it is important to make sure that you understand the two different approaches to controlled aldol reactions that we have been considering. The two methods ensure in their different ways that only one carbonyl group gives only one enol or enolate as the nucleophilic partner in the aldol reaction while only one carbonyl compound acts as the electrophilic partner.

- **Equilibrium control**

  In the equilibrium method, the carbonyl compound(s) must be treated with weak, usually aqueous or alcoholic, acid or base and allowed to equilibrate with all possible enols or enolates. Either only one product is possible (due to symmetry or blocking of \( \alpha \) positions) or some thermodynamic factor (such as the formation of a stable conjugated enone) ensures that the reaction goes down one preferred route.

  In the equilibrium method, ‘weak’ acid or base means too weak to ensure complete conversion to enol or enolate. The method works only if enol and carbonyl compound are in equilibrium. Typical examples are shown in the table.
Similar conditions are used for condensations where 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds provide the enol partner. The differences are that now the weak acid or base is strong enough to convert the 1,3-dicarbonyl compound essentially completely into enol or enolate, and that enolate (enolization between the two carbonyl groups) is highly favoured over all others. In a way these are intermediate between the two kinds of control, though they really belong to the directed aldol category.

### Aldol reactions with highly enolizable compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1,3-Dicarbonyl compound</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>malonic acid CH$_2$(CO$_2$H)$_2$</td>
<td>piperidine, DMSO</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malonic esters CH$_2$(CO$_2$Et)$_2$</td>
<td>NH$_4$AcO$^-$</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acetoacetates CH$_3$COCH$_2$CO$_2$Et</td>
<td>piperidine, EtOH, room temperature</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitro compounds$^a$ RCH$_2$NO$_2$</td>
<td>NaOH, H$_2$O</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wittig reagents$^a$</td>
<td>NaOMe, MeOH</td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$ These are not, of course, 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds but they have pK$_a$s of about 10–12 and do form enolates with weak bases.
Directed aldol reactions

In the directed aldol reaction, one component is first converted into a specific enol equivalent and only then combined with the electrophilic partner.

These are the most versatile methods and can be used to make essentially any aldol or any conjugated unsaturated carbonyl compound. The disadvantages are that an extra step is inevitably introduced (the making of the specific enol equivalent), that strong bases or powerful Lewis acids must be used, and that strictly anhydrous conditions in organic solvents are usually required.

The specific enol equivalents are used only when necessary. Check first whether you might be able to get away with an equilibrium method before planning a directed aldol reaction. Directed aldol reactions are among the greatest achievements of modern organic chemistry, but simpler methods still have their place.

The table gives some details of the conditions used for directed aldol reactions. You should refer to the table on p. 000 to see which specific enol equivalents are appropriate to which types of carbonyl compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specific enol equivalent</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lithium enolate</td>
<td>1. LDA, THF, −78 °C, 2. aldehyde, 3. NH₄Cl, H₂O</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silyl enol ether</td>
<td>TiCl₄, CH₂Cl₂, −78 °C, 1 hour, under argon</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enamine</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aza-enolate</td>
<td>1. RNH₂, 2. LDA, 3. ketone, 4. dilute H₂SO₄</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinc enolate (Reformatsky)</td>
<td>1. Zn, 2. aldehyde or ketone</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Example" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We have spent some considerable time and effort in understanding the aldol reaction simply because it is one of the most important reactions in organic chemistry. In the next chapter you will see how these ideas can be extended with almost no addition of principles to the acylation of enolates—the reaction of enols, enolates, and specific enol equivalents with acid chlorides and esters. We hope that you will see that the ideas introduced in this chapter find immediate application in the next.
1. Propose mechanisms for the 'aldol' and dehydration steps in the termite defence compound synthesis presented in the chapter.

2. The aldehyde and ketone below are self-condensed with aqueous NaOH so that an unsaturated carbonyl compound is the product. Give a structure for each product and explain why you think this product is formed.

3. How would you synthesize the following compounds?

4. How would you use a silyl enol ether to make this aldol product? Why is it necessary to use this particular intermediate? What would the products be if the two carbonyl compounds were simply mixed and treated with base?

5. In what way does this reaction resemble an aldol reaction? How could the same product be made without using phosphorus chemistry? Comment on the choice of base.

6. Suggest a mechanism for this attempted aldol reaction. How could the aldol product actually be made?

7. What are the structures of the intermediates and the mechanisms of the reactions leading to this simple cyclohexenone?

8. How would you convert the product of that last reaction into these two products?

9. Comment on the selectivity shown in these two cyclizations.

10. Using the Mannich reaction as a guide, suggest a mechanism for this reaction.

11. Suggest mechanisms for this reaction. One of the by-products is carbon dioxide.
12. Treatment of this keto-aldehyde with KOH gives a compound C_{7}H_{10}O with the spectroscopic data shown. What is its structure and how is it formed? You should, of course, assign the NMR spectrum and give a mechanism for the reaction.

\[
\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{C}_{7}\text{H}_{10}\text{O} \\
\text{IR } 1710 \text{ cm}^{-1}
\]

\[\delta_H 7.3 \text{ (1H, d)} \]
\[6.8 \text{ (1H, d)} \]
\[2.1 \text{ (2H, s)} \]
\[1.15 \text{ (6H, s)} \]

13. Predict which enone product would be formed in this intramolecular aldol reaction.

\[
\text{Ko} \xrightarrow{\text{AcOH}} \text{A} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{18}O}
\]

14. The unstable liquid diketone ‘biacetyl’ deposits crystals of a dimer slowly on standing or more quickly with traces of base. On longer standing the solution deposits crystals of a trimer. Suggest mechanisms for the formation of the dimer and the trimer. Why are they more stable than the monomer?
Introduction: the Claisen ester condensation compared to the aldol reaction

We began the last chapter with the treatment of acetaldehyde with base. This led initially to the formation of an enolate anion and then to the aldol reaction. We are going to start this chapter with the treatment of ethyl acetate with base. To start with, there is hardly any difference. We shall use ethoxide as base rather than hydroxide as hydroxide would hydrolyse the ester, but otherwise the first steps are very similar. Here they are, one above the other.

The next step in both cases is nucleophilic attack by the enolate ion on unenolized carbonyl compound. The concentration of enolate is low and each enolate ion is surrounded by unenolized aldehyde or ester molecules, so this reaction is to be expected. Here is that step, again shown for both aldehyde and ester.

The next step in both cases is nucleophilic attack by the enolate ion on unenolized carbonyl compound. The concentration of enolate is low and each enolate ion is surrounded by unenolized aldehyde or ester molecules, so this reaction is to be expected. Here is that step, again shown for both aldehyde and ester.

Only now does something different happen. The aldehyde dimer simply captures a proton from the solvent to give an aldol product. The ‘aldol’ from the ester (not, in fact, an aldol at all) has a leaving group, EtO\(^-\), instead of a hydrogen atom and is actually the tetrahedral intermediate in a nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group. Compare the two different steps again.
Even though the last step is different, the two products are quite similar. Both are dimers of the original two-carbon chain and both have carbonyl groups at the end of the chain and oxygen substituents at position three. The two reactions obviously belong to the same family but are usually given different names. The ester reaction is sometimes known as the Claisen ester condensation and sometimes as the Claisen–Schmidt reaction. More important than remembering the name is being familiar with the reaction and its mechanism. Here is a summary.

This is another of those reactions where the base is not strong enough to transform the ester entirely into the enolate. Only a small equilibrium concentration is produced, which reacts with the ester electrophile. The by-product from the reaction is ethoxide ion and so it looks at first sight as though we get our catalyst back again—the aldol, if you remember, is catalytic in base. But not the Claisen reaction. The second step of the reaction is also really an equilibrium, and the reaction works only because the product can be irreversibly deprotonated by the ethoxide by-product, consuming ethoxide in the process. You recall that the aldol reaction often works best when there is an extra driving force to push it across—dehydration to an enone, for example. Similarly, the ester dimerization works best when the product reacts with the ethoxide ion to give a stable enolate ion.

The point is that the base used, ethoxide ion EtO\(^{-}\), is too weak (EtOH has a \(pK_a\) of about 16) to remove the proton completely from ethyl acetate (\(pK_a\) about 25), but is strong enough to remove a proton from the acetoacetate product (\(pK_a\) about 10). Under the conditions of the reaction, a small amount of the enolate of ethyl acetate is produced—just enough to let the reaction happen—but the product is completely converted into its enolate. The neutral product, ethyl acetoacetate itself, is formed on acidic work-up.

The final product has been formed by the acylation at carbon of the enolate of an ester. This general process—acylation at carbon—is the subject of this chapter. It so happened in this case that the
acylating agent was another molecule of the same ester, but the general process we shall consider is the acylation of enolates at carbon. We shall use a variety of enols, enolates, and specific enol equivalents and a variety of acylating agents, but the basic idea is this.

### Problems with acylation at carbon

The main problem with the acylation of enolates is that reaction tends to occur at oxygen rather than at carbon.

The product of acylation on oxygen is an enol ester. The tendency to attack through oxygen is most marked with reactive enolates and reactive acylating agents. The combination of a lithium enolate and an acid chloride, for example, is pretty certain to give an enol ester.

If we want acylation at carbon we must use either
- less reactive specific enol equivalents, such as enamines or silyl enol ethers, with reactive acylating agents such as acid chlorides or
- reactive enols, such as the enolate anions themselves, with less reactive acylating agents such as esters

We introduced this chapter with an example of the second type of reaction, and we shall continue with a more detailed consideration of the Claisen ester condensation and related reactions.

### Reaction at oxygen

In Chapter 27, we mentioned no trouble with reaction at oxygen in the aldol reaction. This may now seem surprising, in view of what we have said about esters, as the electrophiles were aldehydes and ketones—not so very different from esters. We can resolve this by looking at what would happen if an aldehyde did attack an enolate on the oxygen atom.

The only plausible leaving group from the intermediate is the enolate anion itself: the reaction just reverses. It may well be that aldol reactions do involve attack through oxygen. But no products can be formed from this reversible pathway: only when the electrophile has a leaving group is reaction at oxygen productive.
Acylation of enolates by esters

The Claisen ester condensation and other self-condensations

The self-condensation of ethyl acetate, with which we opened this chapter, is the most famous example of the Claisen ester condensation and it works in good yield under convenient conditions. The product (ethyl acetoacetate) is commercially available—and cheap too—so you are unlikely to want to do this particular example.

A more generally useful reaction is the self-condensation of simple substituted acetates RCH₂CO₂Et. These work well under the same conditions (EtO⁻ in EtOH). The enolate anion is formed first in low concentration and in equilibrium with the ester. It then carries out a nucleophilic attack on the more abundant unenolized ester molecules.

These steps are all unfavourable equilibria and, on their own, would give very little product. However, as we mentioned before, the reaction works because the equilibrium is driven over by the essentially irreversible formation of a stable, delocalized enolate from the product.

Finally, the reaction is worked up in acid and the β-keto-ester product is formed. Notice that all products of Claisen ester condensations have a 1,3-dicarbonyl relationship. These compounds are useful in the preparation of specific enol equivalents and you have seen them in action in Chapters 21, 26, and 27.

How do we know that deprotonation drives the reaction?

If the original ester has two substituents on the α carbon atom (C2 of the ester), the formation of the stable enolate of the product is no longer possible as there are no hydrogen atoms left to remove.

As you might expect, all the equilibria are now unfavourable, and this reaction does not go well under the normal equilibrating conditions (EtO⁻ in EtOH). It can be made to go in reasonable yield if a stronger base is used. Traditionally, triphenylmethyl sodium is chosen. This is made from Ph₃CCl and sodium metal and is a very conjugated carbanion.

Triphenylmethyl carbanion is a strong enough base to convert an ester entirely into its enolate. Reaction of the enolate with a second molecule of ester then gives the keto-ester in good yield.
Intramolecular acylation: the Dieckmann reaction

Intramolecular acylations often go very well indeed when a five- or a six-membered ring is being formed. A classic case is the cyclization of the diethyl ester of adipic acid (diethyl hexanedioate), a component in nylon manufacture.

It doesn’t matter which ester group forms the enolate anion as they are the same. The cyclization has to give a five-membered ring.

As in the intermolecular version, the product under the reaction conditions is the stable enolate but work-up in acid forms the keto-ester as final product.

We can simultaneously prove that the enolate really is formed under the reaction conditions and demonstrate the usefulness of the process by trapping the enolate with an alkyl halide before work-up.

This sequence was used to prepare the important flavouring compound ‘Corylone’ which has, it is claimed, a ‘sweet and powerful spicy–coffee–caramel odour’. You may imagine how popular it is with food-additive chemists and this sequence provides a short process for its manufacture.

The intramolecular version of the Claisen ester condensation is sometimes known as the Dieckmann reaction. It provides an excellent route to heterocyclic ketones (cyclic ketones with heteroatoms in the ring: very important in drug manufacture). The starting diester can be made by two Michael additions to conjugated esters (see Chapter 10).

Treatment with base under the usual equilibrating conditions allows an efficient intramolecular condensation by the usual mechanism. Both ester groups are again identical and, since you should by now be accustomed to this mechanism, we just show the key step.
The β-keto-esters can be easily hydrolysed and decarboxylated by the methods of Chapter 26 to give the symmetrical cyclic ketone. The carboxylate anion is reasonably stable, but the free acid cannot usually be isolated as it loses carbon dioxide easily and gives the enol of the final product.

**Crossed ester condensations**

Much the same type of arguments applies here as applied in the crossed aldol reaction (Chapter 27). We must be quite sure that we know which compound is going to act as the enol partner and which as the acylation partner.

**Reactive esters that cannot enolize**

There are several useful esters of this kind, of which these four are the most important. They cannot act as the enol partner, and the first three are more electrophilic than most esters, so they should acylate an ester enolate faster than the ester being enolized can.

These four are arranged in order of reactivity towards nucleophiles, the most electrophilic first and the least electrophilic last. Oxalates are very reactive because each carbonyl group makes the other more electrophilic. The molecular LUMO is the sum of the two π* orbitals and is lower in energy than either.

Formate esters look a bit like aldehydes but their ester character dominates. The hydrogen atom just makes them very electrophilic as they lack the σ conjugation (and steric hindrance) of simple esters.

Carbonates are particularly useful as they introduce a CO₂R group on to an enolate. It is not immediately obvious why they are more electrophilic than simple esters. Normal esters are (slightly) less electrophilic than ketones because the deactivating lone pair donation by the oxygen atom is more important than the inductive effect of the electronegative oxygen atom.
The result is a small difference between two large effects. In carbonate esters there are two oxygen atoms on the same carbonyl group. Both can exert their full inductive effect but the lone pairs are trying to overlap with the same \(\pi^*\) orbital. The balance is changed—the summed inductive effects win out—and carbonates are more electrophilic than ordinary esters.

Finally, esters of aromatic acids cannot enolize but are less reactive than ordinary esters because of conjugation from the aromatic ring. These compounds may still be useful as we shall see.

**Crossed Claisen ester condensations between two different esters**

We shall now give a few examples of crossed Claisen ester condensations between ordinary esters and the compounds we have just discussed. First, a reaction between a simple linear ester and diethyl oxalate performed under equilibrating conditions with ethoxide as the base.

Only the simple ester can give an enolate, and the low concentration of this enolate reacts preferentially with the more electrophilic diethyl oxalate in a typical acylation at carbon.

The product has an acidic hydrogen atom so it is immediately converted into a stable enolate, which is protonated on work-up in aqueous acid to give the tricarbonyl compound back again.

This compound was made because it was needed in a synthesis of multicolanic acid, a metabolite of a penicillium mould. It is easy to see which atoms of the natural product were provided by the compound we have just made in a single easy step.
Another important example leads to the preparation of diethyl phenylmalonate. This compound cannot be made by ‘alkylation’ of diethyl malonate as aryl halides do not undergo nucleophilic substitution (Chapter 23).

A crossed Claisen ester condensation between very enolizable ethyl phenylacetate and unenolizable but electrophilic diethyl carbonate works very well indeed under equilibrating conditions.

Claisen condensations between ketones and esters

Claisen condensations always involve esters as the electrophilic partner, but enolates of other carbonyl compounds—ketones, for example—may work equally well as the enol partner. In a reaction with a carbonate, only the ketone can enolize and the reactive carbonate ester is more electrophilic than another molecule of the ketone. A good example is this reaction of cyclooctanone. It does not matter which side of the carbonyl group enolizes—they are both the same.

The alternative route to this cyclic dicarbonyl—Dieckmann condensation—would be a bad choice in this case. Dieckmann condensation works well for five- and six-membered rings, reasonably well for seven-membered rings, but not very well at all for eight-membered rings. The yield is almost exactly half what the ketone–carbonate reaction gives.

Unsymmetrical ketones often give a single product, even without the use of a specific enol equivalent, as reaction usually occurs on the less substituted side. This is another consequence of the final enolization being the irreversible step. In this example, both possible products may form, but only one of them can enolize. Under the equilibrating conditions of the reaction, only the enolate is stable, and all the material ends up as the isomer shown.

Unsymmetrical ketones work well even when one side is a methyl group and the other a primary alkyl chain. This example gives an impressive yield and shows that, as expected, a remote alkene does not affect the reaction.
Even when both enolates can form, the less substituted dicarbonyl enolate is preferred because it constrains fewer groups to lie in the hindered plane of the tetrasubstituted enolate double bond.

Diethyl oxalate also gives well-controlled condensations with ketones and we shall take the synthesis of a new drug as an example. One way to try and prevent heart disease is to reduce the amount of ‘bad’ lipoproteins in the blood. The drug Acifran does this, and a key step in its synthesis is the base-catalysed reaction between diethyl oxalate and a methyl ketone.

Notice that the hydroxyl group on the ketone does not interfere with the reaction. No doubt the first molecule of base removes the OH proton and the second molecule forms the enolate (the only possible enolate in either molecule). Fast condensation with highly electrophilic diethyl oxalate follows. The drug itself results from simple acid treatment of this product.

The other two unenolizable esters we mentioned on p. 000 undergo cross-condensations with ketones. Unlike formaldehyde, formate esters are well behaved—no special method is necessary to correspond with the Mannich reaction in aldol chemistry. Here is what happens with cyclohexanone.

The product aldehyde is not at risk from nucleophilic attack, as it appears to be, because it immediately enolizes in base. The product is formed as a stable enol with an intramolecular hydrogen bond.
Esters of aromatic acids are used rather less frequently in this manner because they are consider-
ably less reactive than carbonates or formates. This simple example works quite well—admittedly
the ketone is very enolizable.

\[
\text{PhCO}_2\text{Et} + \text{PhCO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOEt, EtOH}} \text{PhCO}_2\text{Et} \quad 62\text{–}71\% \text{ yield}
\]

A more important example is the synthesis of the rat poison ‘Pival’. An enolizable ketone that is
blocked on one side by a tertiary butyl group reacts with diethyl phthalate to give a five-membered
cyclic diketone in one reaction by two Claisen ester condensations.

Only one enolate can be formed and this attacks either of the two aromatic ester groups to give a
1,3-diketone by a crossed Claisen condensation.

The ethoxide ion released in this first reaction will, as usual, form a stable enolate from
the 1,3-diketone but this now cyclizes in a second Claisen condensation on to the second ester
group.

The product has an exceptionally acidic hydrogen atom, shown in green, on a carbon atom
between three carbonyl groups. Under the reaction conditions this will of course be lost to form an
enolate, and after protonation Pival itself exists as a mixture of enol forms.
Summary of preparation of keto-esters by the Claisen reaction

It is worth pausing at this moment to summarize which keto-esters can be made easily by the two methods we have discussed, namely

- Claisen ester condensation
- acylation of ketones with enolates

Ethyl acetoacetate (ethyl 3-oxobutyrate) can of course be made by the self-condensation of ethyl acetate.

This ester is cheap to buy but homologues, available by the self-condensation of other esters, are usually made in the laboratory. Which esterifying group is used (OEt, OMe, etc.) is not important so long as the same alkoxide is used as the base.

Compounds with only one of the ‘R’ substituents in this structure are also easy to make. If the ‘R’ substituent is at C2, it is best introduced by alkylation of the unsubstituted ester.

Attempts to make this compound by the Claisen ester condensation would require one of the approaches in the diagram below. The dashed curly arrows suggest the general direction of the condensation required and the coloured bonds are those that would be formed if the reaction worked.

Unfortunately neither reaction will work! The black route requires a controlled condensation between two different enolizable esters—a recipe for a mixture of products. The simple alkylation route above removes the need for control. The green route requires a condensation between an unsymmetrical ketone and diethyl carbonate. This condensation will work all right, but not to give this product. As you saw on p. 000, Claisen condensations prefer to give the less substituted dicarbonyl compound, and condensation would occur at the methyl group of the ketone on the right to give the other unsymmetrical keto-ester.

**Making β keto-esters: a check-list**

A combination of self-condensation, condensation with diethyl carbonate, and alkylation of keto-esters prepared by one of these means will allow us to make most β keto-esters that we are likely to want. Look out for all the usual problems of enolate chemistry.

- Will the right carbonyl compound enolize?
- If it is a ketone, will it enolize in the right way?
- Will the enolate react with the right acylation partner?

If any of these poses problems, try using an alkylation step.
Intramolecular crossed Claisen ester condensations

As usual with intramolecular condensations, we do not have to worry so much about controlling where enolization occurs providing that one product is more stable than the others—for example, it might have a five- or a six-membered ring (rather than a four- or eight-membered one)—and we carry out the reaction under equilibrating conditions. A couple of examples should show what we mean.

Though there are two sites for enolate anion formation, one would give a four-membered ring and can be ignored. Only enolization of the methyl group leads to a stable six-membered ring.

This time the two possible sites for enolate anion formation would both lead to stable five-membered rings, but one product cannot form a stable enolate anion under the reaction conditions so the other is preferred.

In the next example, there are three possible sites for enolate anion formation, but only one product is formed and in good yield too.

If we consider all three possible enolate anions, the choice is more easily made. First, the reaction that *does* happen. An enolate anion is formed from the ketone at the green site and acylation at carbon follows.
We could form the enolate anion on the other side of the ketone and attack the ester in the same way using the black arrows. The product is an attractive bicyclic diketone, but it is not formed.

The third cyclization mode (brown arrows) would be to form an enolate from the ester and attack the ketone. This would be an aldol rather than a Claisen reaction.

This is another bicyclic compound but again it is not formed. The choice is made by considering what can happen to the three products under the reaction conditions. The aldol product cannot dehydrate nor can the black Claisen product form a stable enolate because both would have an impossible double bond at a bridgehead position.

The product from the green Claisen reaction is, on the other hand, a fused rather than a bridged bicyclic structure. It can easily form a stable enolate anion.

**Symmetry in intramolecular crossed Claisen condensations**

If cyclization is to be followed by decarboxylation, a cunning plan can be set in motion. Addition of an amine by an SN2 reaction to an α halo-ester followed by conjugate addition to an unsaturated ester gives a substrate for Claisen ester cyclization.

This diester is unsymmetrical so cyclization is likely to lead to two different keto-esters. Either can form a stable enolate so both are indeed formed. This sounds like very bad news since it gives a mixture of products.
The cunning plan is that the relative positions of the ketone and the nitrogen atom in the five-membered ring are the same in both products. All that differs is the position of the CO$_2$Et group. When the two different products are hydrolysed and decarboxylated they give the same amino-ketone!

![Chemical structures](image1)

Just occasionally it is possible to carry out cross-condensations between two different enolizable molecules under equilibrating conditions. A notable example is the base-catalysed reaction between methyl ketones and lactones. With sodium hydride—a strong base that can convert either starting material entirely into its enolate anion—good yields of products from the attack of the enolate of the ketone on the electrophilic lactone can be obtained.

![Chemical structures](image2)

Kinetic enolate formation must occur at the methyl group of the ketone followed by acylation with the lactone. Lactones are rather more electrophilic than noncyclic esters, but the control in this sequence is still remarkable. Notice how a stable enolate is formed by proton transfer within the first-formed product.

![Chemical structures](image3)

All these reactions have depended for their selectivity on the spontaneous behaviour of the molecules. It is time now to look at some reactions that cannot be controlled in that way—reactions where we must impose our will on the molecules by using specific enol equivalents.

**Directed C-acylation of enols and enolates**

The danger we have to face is that acylation is inclined to occur on oxygen rather than on carbon. In the extreme case, naked enolates (those with completely non-coordinating cations) acylate cleanly on oxygen with anhydrides or acid chlorides.

![Chemical structures](image4)

Alkali metal enolates (Li, Na, or K) tend to acylate on oxygen with acid chlorides too and it is often necessary to use magnesium enolates, particularly those of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds, if reliable C-acylation is wanted. The magnesium atom bonds strongly to both oxygens, lessening their effective negative charge.
Hydrolysis and decarboxylation in the usual way lead to keto-esters or keto-acids. Of the more common metals used to form enolates, lithium is the most likely to give good $C$-acylation as it, like magnesium, forms a strong O–Li bond. It is possible to acylate simple lithium enolates with enolizable acid chlorides.

We shall describe two examples of this reaction being used as part of the synthesis of natural products. The first is pallescensin A, a metabolite of a sponge. It is quite a simple compound and some chemists in Milan conceived that it might be made from the chloro-diketone shown below by alkylation of the enolate and subsequent reduction and dehydration of the remaining ketone.

To test this idea, the chloro-diketone must be made and the route chosen was to react the lithium enolate of 4-$t$-butyl cyclohexanone with the correct acid chloride.

This reaction worked well, as did the rest of the synthesis of pallescensin A which was first made by this route. The key step, the acylation of the lithium enolate, is interesting because it could have alkylated instead. The acid chloride is more electrophilic than the alkyl chloride in this reaction, though alkylation does occur in the next step. Notice how the lithium atom holds the molecules together during the reaction.
Our second example is from the chemistry of microorganisms. The antibiotic streptomycin is produced rather erratically by the microorganism *Streptomyces griseus*. It has now been discovered that another compound, called ‘A-factor’, stimulates the microorganism into streptomycin production. Synthetic A-factor can be used to switch on antibiotic synthesis in the microorganism.

A-factor is an optically active compound, but notice that one stereogenic centre is not specified in the structure (H with a wavy line). This is because it is a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound and is therefore in equilibrium with its stable enol which has a trigonal centre at that point. The obvious way to complete the synthesis is to acylate an enolate of the lactone with an acid chloride.

It will not be possible to have a free OH group on the lactone during this step as the acid chloride would, of course, react there too. In practice, protection as a silyl ether (Chapter 24) was enough and the lithium enolate was then used for the acylation reaction. Aqueous ethanol work-up removed the silyl protection.

The preparation of the starting material is worth a closer look because it too involved a cross-condensation between two esters. Here it is in full. You have met all of these reactions in earlier chapters of this book.

Even the dilithio derivatives of carboxylic acids, made by treating a carboxylic acid with two molecules of LDA, can give good reactions with acid chlorides. In these reactions it is not necessary to have a proton remaining between the two carbonyl groups of the product as the reaction is between a strong nucleophile and a strong electrophile and is under kinetic control.

It is rather more common to use enamines or silyl enol ethers in acylations with acid chlorides. These are more general methods—enamines work well for aldehydes and ketones while silyl enol
ethers work for all classes of carbonyl compounds. It is possible to combine two enolizable molecules quite specifically by these methods, and we shall consider them next.

The acylation of enamines

Enamines are made from secondary amines and aldehydes or ketones via the iminium salt: you met them in Chapter 14 and have seen them in action in Chapters 21, 26, and 27.

In Chapter 26 we saw that reliable C-alkylation occurs with reactive allyl halides and α halo-carbonyl compounds, but that unwanted N-alkylation often competes with simple alkyl halides.

Acylation with acid chlorides could follow the same two pathways, but with one big difference. The products of N-acylation are unstable salts and N-acylation is reversible. Acylation on carbon, on the other hand, is irreversible. For this reason enamines end up acylated reliably on carbon.

The Swiss chemist Oppolzer used just such a reaction. He first prepared an acid chloride from cyclopentadiene, and the enamine from cyclopentanone and the secondary amine morpholine.

Combining the enamine with the acid chloride led to a clean acylation at carbon in 82% yield and eventually to a successful synthesis of the natural product longifolene.

Aza-enolates also react cleanly at carbon with acid chlorides. Good examples come from dimethyl-hydrazones of ketones. When the ketone is unsymmetrical, the aza-enolate forms on the less substituted side, even when the distinction is between primary and secondary carbons. The best of our previous regioselective acylations have distinguished only methyl from more highly substituted carbon atoms.

Morpholine is frequently used in the preparation of enamines—see p. 000.

We shall revisit this synthesis in Chapter 35 when we discuss [2 + 2] cycloadditions.

Hydrazones, as we explained on p. 000 of Chapter 14, are much less electrophilic than ketones. Even BuLi can be used as a base: it does not attack the C=N bond.
You will not be surprised to find that the immediate product tautomerizes to an acyl-enamine further stabilized by an internal hydrogen bond. Mild acidic work-up releases the diketone product. The overall procedure may sound complicated—Me₂NNH₂ then base then acyl chloride then acidic methanol—but it is performed in a single flask and the products, the 1,3-diketones, are formed in excellent yield—in this case 83% overall.

83% yield from starting ketone

**Acylation of enols under acidic conditions**

Under strongly acidic anhydrous conditions, carboxylic acids dehydrate to give the acylium ions, which you met as intermediates in the Friedel–Crafts reaction (Chapter 22).

With another enolizable carbonyl group in the molecule, cyclization may occur to give a new 1,3-dicarbonyl compound. Popular conditions for this reaction are polyphosphoric acid (PPA—partly dehydrated and polymerized H₃PO₄) in acetic acid as solvent. The first step is the formation of the acylium ion, which cyclizes on to one of the two possible enols of the ketone.

Though the cyclization looks awkward—the product is a bridged bicyclic diketone—the alternative would give a strained four-membered ring and does not occur.
This cyclization is particularly impressive as the corresponding base-catalysed reaction on the keto-ester does not occur because a stable enolate cannot be formed—it would have an impossible bridgehead double bond.

\[
\text{enolate cannot form}
\]

Evidently it is not necessary to form a stable conjugated enol in this acid-catalysed cyclization of keto-acids, and the reaction can even be used to make 1,3-diketones with no hydrogen atoms between the two carbonyl groups.

\[
\text{spiro-bicyclic diketone (one C atom common to both rings) is preferred to the alternative bridged bicyclic compound because both rings are five-membered.}
\]

**Lewis acid-catalysed acylation of enols**

Acylations of ketone enols with anhydrides are catalysed by Lewis acids such as BF\(_3\). This process will remind you of Friedel–Crafts acylation but a better analogy is perhaps the aldol reaction where metals such as lithium hold the reagents together so that reaction can occur around a six-membered ring.

The mechanism obviously involves attack by the enol (or ‘boron enolate’) of the ketone on the anhydride, catalysed by the Lewis acid. Probably BF\(_3\) or BF\(_2\) groups (fluoride can come and go from boron easily) hold the reagent together at all times, much like lithium in the aldol reaction (p. 000).

Under the conditions of the reaction, the product forms a stable boron enolate, which needs to be decomposed to the diketone with refluxing aqueous sodium acetate.
Acylation at nucleophilic carbon (other than enols and enolates)

We should not leave the subject of acylation at carbon without considering a problem that affects all such reactions to some degree. It can be understood most easily if we imagine some functional group Z that is able to stabilize a carbanion, and the acylation of that carbanion with an acid chloride—something like this.

All looks well until we consider what might happen to the product under the reaction conditions. It too can form an anion, and a very stable one at that, because, not only is it stabilized by Z, but it is also an enolate.

Since this anion is more stable (less basic) than the original anion, if there is an equilibrium between the two carbanions in the reaction mixture, the original carbanion will be sufficiently basic to act as the base that removes the proton from the product.

So, instead of being acylated, the starting anion is protonated. This side-reaction could reduce the maximum possible yield in the acylation reaction to 50%; half the starting material forms the product by acylation, while the other half simply deprotonates the product. How is this to be avoided?

In most of this chapter, we used enolates as our nucleophiles and worked under equilibrating conditions with alkoxide bases. There was alkoxide base present throughout the reaction, so the enolate didn’t get used up deprotonating the product or, if it did, it could be re-deprotonated by the
alkoxide. But the problem does arise in reactions such as the acylation of simple phosphorus ylids. Here two equivalents of ylid must be used to give a good yield of product. This does not matter in this case, because the ylid is cheap and disposable.

If the reagent is too precious to waste, another device is to use two molecules of base for every one of the compound. In this way there is always a molecule of strong base waiting to remove a proton from the product. The acylation of sulfones with esters is a good example.

The product has a more acidic hydrogen atom (green) than any in the starting material so it could protonate the original anion. Using two equivalents of base avoids this.

By this device good yields of keto-sulfone can be formed even when both partners are aliphatic compounds with acidic protons.

How Nature makes fatty acids

Fatty acids are big news, whether saturated or unsaturated. Too much saturated fatty acid seems to be bad for us, clogging arteries, while some unsaturated fatty acids seem to protect us against that fatal condition. There are hundreds of fatty acids in living things but most have one special characteristic—they have an even number of carbon atoms. Here are two of the most frequently found fatty acids.

They have an even number of carbon atoms because they are made in living things by Claisen ester style condensations of acetic acid derivatives. In fact, at some stage in the biosynthesis of palmitic acid, there was a carbonyl group at each atom marked with a green blob here.

Nature takes the trouble to remove all these carbonyl groups. So why were they put there in the first place? It is because these long chains are much easier to assemble by the Claisen ester
conjugation than by alternatives such as alkylation. Other natural products in this group show more obvious traces of carbonyl groups. Orsellinic acid, for example, is clearly formed directly by an aldol-style cyclization of this tetracarbonyl precursor.

The straight-chain triketo-acid wraps itself round and cyclizes by a simple aldol reaction. Enolization of the two remaining ketones gives a benzene ring. So how does Nature assemble these chains in the first place?

The reactions use thiol esters rather than ordinary esters. The esterifying group is a thiol called coenzyme A, and we shall just represent this molecule as R (you can find its full structure on p. 000). The first reaction is between a malonate half-hioester and an acetate thioester of coenzyme A. Look at the mechanism and you will see how similar it is to the Claisen ester condensation.

The main difference is that no discrete enol or enolate is actually formed. Instead CO₂ is lost from the malonate as the acylation occurs. This is an improvement from Nature’s point of view—it is much easier to lose a proton from a carboxylic acid than from a CH₂ group. This reaction joins two C₂ units together and the whole process can be repeated as many times as necessary.

Because of the ketone group on every other carbon atom in the growing chain, these compounds are known collectively as polyketides. To make a saturated fatty acid, the ketone needs to be selectively reduced to an alcohol, water needs to be eliminated, and the conjugated double bond reduced. All these steps have simple chemical analogies.

Polyketides of enormous variety are known with all these groups present in the chain at the various stages of reduction. But all are made by Nature’s version of the Claisen ester condensation.

**Learning from Nature**

So what is so special about thiol esters? The main difference from ordinary esters is that the lone pairs on the sulfur atom are in 3p orbitals instead of 2p orbitals. These orbitals are too large to overlap efficiently with the 2p orbital on the carbon atom of the carbonyl group, so thiol esters have less conjugation than ordinary esters.
This difference affects each stage of the Claisen ester condensation in the same way. Thiol esters are more easily converted to enolate anions, they are more easily attacked by nucleophiles, and RS\(^-\) is a better leaving group than RO\(^-\). In each case the reaction is better (faster or equilibrium further towards product). The Claisen thiol ester condensation

1. **Enolate Anion Formation**
   - Faster with thiol ester

2. **Nucleophilic Attack on Thiol Ester**
   - Faster with thiol ester

3. **Departure of Leaving Group**
   - Faster with thiol ester

We can learn from Nature by using thiol esters in simple Claisen condensations. Cyclization of this COSEt diester rather than the CO\(_2\)Et diester needs milder conditions (2 hours at room temperature in dimethoxyethane) and gives better yields.

The thiol ester group can be removed, if necessary, by using Raney nickel, a good reducing agent for C–S bonds (see Chapter 46). Decarboxylation follows.

If we copy Nature rather more exactly, the Claisen ester condensation can be carried out under neutral conditions. This requires rather different reagents. The enol component is the magnesium salt of a malonate mono-thiol-ester, while the electrophilic component is an **imidazolidine**—an amide derived from the heterocycle imidazole. This amine has a \(pK_a\) of about 7. Imidazolidines are therefore very reactive amides, of about the same electrophilic reactivity as thiol esters. They are prepared from carboxylic acids with ‘carbonyl diimidazole’ (CDI).
Combining the two reagents at neutral pH gives clean specific acylation at carbon. This is very like the biological reaction as CO₂ is lost during acylation.

To conclude...

You have now met enols and enolates doing nearly all of the things that other nucleophiles do:

- taking part in nucleophilic substitution reactions at saturated C (Chapter 26)
- adding to C=O groups (the aldol reaction, Chapter 27)
- substituting at C=O groups (Chapter 28)

There is one more aspect of enolate chemistry left to discuss:

- conjugate addition

It follows in the next chapter.

Problems

1. Attempted acylation at carbon often fails. What would be the true products of these attempted acylations, and how would you actually make the target molecules?

2. The synthesis of six-membered heterocyclic ketones by intramolecular Claisen condensation was described in the chapter and we pointed out that it doesn’t matter which way round the cyclization happens as the product is the same. For example:

3. The synthesis of corylone was outlined in the chapter but no mechanistic details were given. Suggest mechanisms for the first two steps. The last step is a very unusual type of reaction and you have not met anything quite like it before. However, organic chemists should be able to draw mechanisms for new reactions and you might like to try your hand at this one. There are several steps.
4. Acylation of the phenolic ketone gives a compound A, which is converted into an isomeric compound B in base. Cyclization of B in acid gives the product shown. Suggest mechanisms for the reactions and structures for A and B.

5. How could these compounds be made using the acylation of an enol or enolate as a key step?

6. In a synthesis of cubane, a key step was the intramolecular acylation of this symmetrical diester. Explain why a strong base (the anion of DMSO, MeSO.CH2–, was actually used) is necessary for this cyclization.

The starting material had both of the ester groups on the outside of the molecule so that cyclization is impossible. What preliminary step must first occur for it to become possible?

7. Suggest mechanisms for this sequence leading to a bicyclic compound with four- and seven-membered rings cis-fused to each other.

8. Give mechanisms for the steps used in this synthesis of the natural product bullatenone. Comment on the reagents used for the acylation step, on the existence of the first intermediate as 100% enol, on the mechanism of the cyclization, and on how the decarboxylation is possible.

9. Suggest how the following reactions might be made to work. You will probably have to select a specific enol equivalent.

10. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining why these particular products are formed.

11. Sodium enolates generally react with acid chlorides to give enol esters. Give a mechanism for this reaction and explain the selectivity.

If the enol ester is treated with an excess of the sodium enolate, C-acylation occurs. Give a mechanism for this reaction. Why does the C-acylated product predominate?
**12.** This is a C-acylation route to a simple ketone. Why was NaH chosen as the base? Why did O-acylation not occur? Why were t-butyl esters used? What would probably have happened if the more obvious Friedel–Crafts (Chapter 22) route were tried instead?

13. Base-catalysed reaction between these two esters allows the isolation of one product in 82% yield. Predict its structure.

The NMR spectrum of the product shows that two species are present. Both show two 3H triplets at about $\delta_H = 1$ p.p.m. and two 2H quartets at about $\delta_H = 3$ p.p.m. One has a very low field proton and an ABX system at 2.1–2.9 p.p.m. with $J_{AB} 16$ Hz, $J_{AX} 8$ Hz, and $J_{BX} 4$ Hz. The other has a 2H singlet at 2.28 p.p.m. and two protons at 5.44 and 8.86 p.p.m. coupled with $J_{13} 13$ Hz. One of these protons exchanges with D$_2$O. Any attempt to separate the mixture (for example, by distillation or chromatography) gives the same mixture. Both compounds, or the mixture, on treatment with ethanol in acid solution give the same product. What are these compounds?

Compound B has IR 1740 cm$^{-1}$, $\delta_H 1.15$–1.25 p.p.m. (four t, each 3H), 3.45 p.p.m. (2H, q), 3.62 p.p.m. (2H, q), 4.1 p.p.m. (two 2, each 2H), 2.52 p.p.m. (2H, ABX system, $J_{AB} 16$ Hz), 3.04 p.p.m. (1H, X of ABX split into a further doublet by $J 5$ Hz), and 4.6 p.p.m. (1H, d, $J 5$ Hz). The couplings between A and X and between B and X are not quoted in the paper. Nevertheless, you should be able to work out a structure for compound B.
Conjugate addition of enolates

Connections

**Building on:**
- Carbonyl chemistry ch6, ch12, & ch14
- Conjugate addition ch10
- Enols and enolates ch21
- Nucleophilic attack on electrophilic alkenes ch23
- Synthesis in action ch25
- Chemistry of enol(ate)s ch26–ch29

**Arriving at:**
- Convergent plans for synthesis
- Thermodynamic control
- Selection of reagents for enol(ate) conjugate addition
- Tandem reactions and Robinson annelation
- Substitution may be elimination–conjugate addition in disguise
- Nitriles and nitro compounds

**Looking forward to:**
- Synthesis and retrosynthesis ch30
- Diastereoselectivity ch33–ch34
- Saturated and unsaturated heterocycles ch42 & ch44
- Main group chemistry ch46–ch47
- Asymmetric synthesis ch45
- Natural products ch51

Introduction: conjugate addition of enolates is a powerful synthetic transformation

The product of a conjugate addition of an enolate or enol equivalent to an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound will necessarily be a dicarbonyl compound or an equivalent derivative. As the carbonyl group occupies such a central position in synthesis it will come as no surprise that these intermediates, with two carbonyl groups, are very widely used.

The other important feature of this conjugate addition reaction is that the two carbonyl groups in the product are reasonably far apart while the newly formed bond is in the middle of the molecule. This means that Michael addition can be a convergent route to the product—a feature that usually maximizes synthetic efficiency.

Linear vs. convergent syntheses

A convergent synthesis joins large fragments that have been assembled beforehand rather than adding together many small fragments in a linear fashion. The overall yield will generally be higher.

Conjugate addition of enolates is the result of thermodynamic control

Enolate nucleophiles have exactly the same opportunity to attack the carbonyl group directly as do the simple nucleophiles discussed in Chapter 10 and the same factors govern the eventual outcome.
of the reaction. Thermodynamic control leads to conjugate addition but kinetic control leads to direct addition. The key to successful conjugate addition is to ensure that direct addition to the carbonyl (an aldol reaction, Chapter 28) is reversible. This enables the conjugate addition to compete and, as its product is more stable, it eventually becomes the sole product. This is thermodynamic control at its best!

The aldol product is more sterically hindered than the conjugate addition product so increased branching on the nucleophile tends to accelerate the retro-aldol process, which releases steric strain and favours equilibration to the thermodynamic product. Perhaps more important is the stability of the enolate: the more stable the starting enolate, the easier it is to reverse both reactions and this favours the more stable conjugate addition product. One of the most important ways of stabilizing an enolate—using another electron-withdrawing group such as CO₂Et—achieves both of these enhancements at the same time as branching inevitably accompanies the extra anion stabilization.

There is also a frontier orbital effect that assists conjugate addition over the aldol reaction. You will recall that the carbonyl carbon is a relatively hard centre, whereas the β carbon of an enone is soft. As the nucleophilic enolate becomes more stabilized with extra electron-withdrawing groups, it becomes increasingly soft and hence more likely to attack the β carbon.

The unsaturated component plays an important role

The nature of the carbonyl group in the α,β-unsaturated electrophile is also important as the more electrophilic carbonyl groups give more direct addition and the less electrophilic carbonyl groups (esters, amides) give more conjugate addition. Aldehydes are unhindered and very reactive and thus very prone to direct addition but, if the enolate equivalent is carefully chosen, conjugate addition works well. Ketones are borderline and can be pushed towards either the aldol or conjugate addition pathways by choice of enolate equivalent as we shall see. Esters and amides are much less electrophilic at the carbonyl carbon and so are good substrates for conjugate addition.
Esters are excellent anion-stabilizing groups on enolate or Michael acceptors

$\beta$-Diesters (malonates and substituted derivatives) combine three useful features in conjugate addition reactions: they form stable enolate anions that undergo clean conjugate addition; if required, one of the ester groups can be removed by hydrolysis and decarboxylation; and, finally, the remaining acid or ester is ideal for conversion into other functional groups.

Diethyl malonate adds to diethyl fumarate in a conjugate addition reaction promoted by sodium ethoxide in dry ethanol to give a tetraester. Diethyl fumarate is an excellent Michael acceptor because two ester groups withdraw electrons from the alkene. The mechanism involves deprotonation of the malonate, conjugate addition, and reprotonation of the product enolate by ethanol solvent. In this reaction two ester groups stabilize the enolate and two more promote conjugate addition.

The value of malonate esters is illustrated in this synthesis of a substituted cyclic anhydride by conjugate addition to ethyl crotonate, hydrolysis, and decarboxylation, followed by dehydration with acetic anhydride. This route is very general and could be used to make a range of anhydrides with different substituents simply by choosing an appropriate unsaturated ester.

The mechanism of the conjugate addition is the same as that in the previous example and the mechanism for ester hydrolysis was covered in Chapter 12. The key step in the dehydration reaction is the formation and cyclization of the mixed anhydride formed from the diacid and acetic anhydride. Both steps have the same mechanism, attack of an acid on an anhydride, but the second step is intramolecular. Like most cyclizations the reaction is entropically favoured as two molecules react to give three—the cyclic anhydride and two molecules of acetic acid.
Conjugate addition can be catalytic in base

As the penultimate product in a conjugate addition is an enolate anion, if the $pK_a$ of the nucleophile is appropriate, only a catalytic quantity of base is required to initiate the reaction. The enolate anion of the product is protonated by a molecule of starting material to give the neutral final product and another enolate anion of starting material. The reversible reaction sequence, including the unwanted aldol equilibrium, can be forced over towards the conjugate addition product. The balance of $pK_a$'s is likely to be right for nucleophiles with two electron-withdrawing groups when adding to a double bond conjugated to a single carbonyl group.

**Use of electron-withdrawing groups to favour conjugate addition**

Conjugate addition of enolates is promoted by electron-withdrawing groups (for example, CO$_2$Et), especially by:

- two electron-withdrawing groups stabilizing the enolate
- two electron-withdrawing groups conjugated with the alkene

It is not necessary to have both features in the same reaction.

Alkali metal (Li, Na, K) enolates can undergo kinetic conjugate addition

It is not essential to have two anion-stabilizing groups for successful conjugate addition and it is even possible with simple alkali metal (Li, Na, and K) enolates. Lithium enolates are not ideal nucleophiles for thermodynamically controlled conjugate addition. Better results are often observed with sodium or potassium enolates, which are more dissociated and thus more likely to revert. Lithium binds strongly to oxygen and so tends to prevent reversible aldol addition, which leads to loss of conjugate addition product. Potassium t-butoxide is the ideal base for this example as it is hindered and so will not attack the ester but is basic enough to deprotonate the ketone to a certain extent.

Two enolates are possible but, under the equilibrating conditions, the more stable and more reactive enolate is the important intermediate leading to the more interesting product with a quaternary carbon atom.

If the conditions are right, good yields are sometimes observed from kinetically controlled conjugate addition even with lithium enolates. This unlikely outcome is favoured by hindered nucleophiles and conjugated or hindered carbonyls. In these cases the lack of reversibility is not an issue as the aldol product is never formed. In this example the enolate of the t-buty1 ketone is the hindered nucleophile and the conjugated ketone is rather unreactive.

Conjugate addition can be catalytic in base

As the penultimate product in a conjugate addition is an enolate anion, if the $pK_a$ of the nucleophile is appropriate, only a catalytic quantity of base is required to initiate the reaction. The enolate anion of the product is protonated by a molecule of starting material to give the neutral final product and another enolate anion of starting material. The reversible reaction sequence, including the unwanted aldol equilibrium, can be forced over towards the conjugate addition product. The balance of $pK_a$'s is likely to be right for nucleophiles with two electron-withdrawing groups when adding to a double bond conjugated to a single carbonyl group.
This proton exchange sets up a catalytic cycle. The cycle is started by an external base removing a proton from the most acidic species present in the reaction mixture at the start which is the nucleophile. This is an important condition for success of the catalytic method and the reason that all the reactants can be mixed together at the start of the reaction with no adverse effects. There is no need to form the nucleophilic enolate quantitatively; more is formed as the reaction proceeds. The advantages of this way of running a conjugate addition are that strongly basic conditions are avoided so that mild bases such as tertiary amines (for example, Et₃N) or fluorides (for example, Bu₄NF) can be employed successfully.

The catalytic approach to conjugate addition is illustrated by the addition of a β-diketone to an aromatic enone catalysed by potassium hydroxide and benzyltriethylammonium chloride, which is a phase transfer catalyst. Once again, the catalytic cycle is initiated by deprotonation of the most acidic component in the reaction mixture, acetyl acetone, which is followed by a cycle of conjugate addition and proton exchange leading inexorably to the product.

**Enols are more likely than enolates to undergo direct conjugate addition**

Base catalysis is not required for conjugate addition. If the nucleophile is sufficiently enolized under the reaction conditions then the enol form is perfectly able to attack the unsaturated carbonyl compound. Enols are neutral and thus soft nucleophiles favouring conjugate attack, and β-dicarbonyl compounds are enolized to a significant extent (Chapter 21). Under acidic conditions there can be absolutely no base present but conjugate addition proceeds very efficiently. In this way methyl vinyl ketone (butenone) reacts with the cyclic β-diketone promoted by acetic acid to form a quaternary centre. The yield is excellent and the triketone product is an important intermediate in steroid synthesis as you will see later in this chapter.
protonated. The product is the enol form of the trikетone, which rapidly tautomerizes to the more stable keto form.

The thermodynamic control of conjugate addition allows even enals that are very electrophilic at the carbonyl carbon to participate successfully. Any aldol reaction, which must surely occur, is reversible and 1,4-addition eventually wins out. Acrolein combines with this five-membered diketone under very mild conditions to give a quantitative yield of product. The mechanism is analogous to that shown above.

Enamines are convenient stable enol equivalents for conjugate addition
If you want to do a conjugate addition of a carbonyl compound without having a second anion-stabilizing group, you need some stable and relatively unreactive enol equivalent. In Chapters 27 and 28 you saw how enamines are useful in alkylation reactions. These neutral species are also perfect for conjugate addition as they are soft nucleophiles but are more reactive than enols and can be prepared quantitatively in advance. The reactivity of enamines is such that heating the reactants together, sometimes neat, is all that is required. Protic or Lewis acid catalysis can also be used to catalyse the reaction at lower temperature.

The mechanism is rather like enol addition. The differences are that the enamine is more nucleophilic because of the nitrogen atom and that the product is an enamine, which can be converted into the corresponding carbonyl by mild acidic hydrolysis. This is usually performed during the work-up and so does not really constitute an extra step. The amine is washed out as the hydrochloride salt so isolation is straightforward. After conjugate addition the resulting enolate-iminium ion undergoes proton transfer rapidly to produce the more stable carbonyl-enamine tautomer. This is shown as an intramolecular process but it could just as easily be drawn with an external base and source of protons. The resulting enamine is then stable until aqueous acid is added at the end of the reaction. Hydrolysis occurs via the iminium ion to reveal the second carbonyl group and release the secondary amine.
A range of secondary amines can be used to form the enamines but those formed from piperidine, pyrrolidine, and morpholine combine reduced steric demands at the reactive double bond with good availability of the nitrogen lone pair. The electronic nature of the other substituents on the key double bond can vary without affecting the success of the conjugate addition. In these two examples enamines from cyclohexanone formed with pyrrolidine and morpholine add in good yield to an \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated carbonyl compound with an extra electron-withdrawing methylthio or phenylsulfonyl group.

Conjugate addition of silyl enol ethers leads to the silyl enol ether of the product

The best alternatives to enamines for conjugate addition of aldehyde, ketone, and acid derivative enols are silyl enol ethers. Their formation and some uses were discussed in Chapters 21 and 26–28, but these stable neutral nucleophiles also react very well with Michael acceptors either spontaneously or with Lewis acid catalysis at low temperature.

If the 1,5-dicarbonyl compound is required, then an aqueous work-up with either acid or base cleaves the silicon–oxygen bond in the product but the value of silyl enol ethers is that they can undergo synthetically useful reactions other than just hydrolysis. Addition of the silyl enol ether derived from acetophenone (PhCOMe) to a disubstituted enone promoted by titanium tetrachloride is very rapid and gives the diketone product in good yield even though a quaternary carbon atom is created in the conjugate addition. This is a typical example of this very powerful class of conjugate addition reactions.

Silyl ketene acetals are even more nucleophilic than ordinary silyl enol ethers and react spontaneously with acyl chlorides. The intermediate enol ether of the acid chloride was not isolated but converted directly into a methyl ester with methanol.

The mechanism, in the absence of a catalyst, can be written as a cyclic process involving direct transfer of silicon from the nucleophile to the electrophile but it might actually be stepwise. The soft
nature of the silyl enol ether is demonstrated by the choice of soft double bond over hard carbonyl carbon as the electrophilic partner even though the carbonyl compound is an acid chloride.

![Diagram of silyl enol ether reaction]

**Lewis acid catalysis** (TiCl₄) **is normally required for silyl enol ether reactions**

Conventional Lewis acid catalysis using a mixture of titanium tetrachloride and titanium isopropoxide is used to promote the addition of the silyl ketene acetal to methyl vinyl ketone. The key step in the mechanism is the conjugate addition of the silyl ketene acetal to the enone to form the bond shown in black in the product. The catalysis allows the reaction to proceed at much lower temperature, –78 °C. Do not be confused by the second SiMe₃ group. This is not an O-SiMe₃ group but a C-SiMe₃ group and plays no active part in the reaction.

The electrophile coordinates to the Lewis acid first producing an activated enone that is attacked by the silylated nucleophile. It is difficult to determine at what stage the trimethylsilyl group moves from its original position and whether it is transferred intramolecularly to the product. In many cases the anion liberated from the Lewis acid (Cl⁻, RO⁻, Br⁻) is a good nucleophile for silicon so it is reasonable to assume that there is a free trimethylsilyl species (Me₃SiX) that captures the titanium enolate (Chapter 28).

The mechanism can be drawn in a more concise form as shown in the frame. This gives the essence of the reaction but the details of the transfer of the TiX₃ and SiMe₃ groups are not shown and are in any case uncertain. The C-SiMe₃ group survived the mild basic treatment that cleaved the silyl enol ether formed by initial conjugate addition.

It is even possible to use a silyl enol ether to create a new C–C bond that joins two new quaternary centres. In this example the silyl ketene acetal does conjugate addition on an unsaturated ketone catalysed by the usual Lewis acid (TiCl₄) for such reactions.

![Diagram of silyl ketene acetal reaction]

**Sequential (tandem) conjugate additions and aldol reactions build complex molecules in a few steps**

The silyl enol ether that is the initial product from conjugate addition of a silyl enol ether or silyl ketene acetal need not be hydrolysed but can also be used in aldol reactions. This example uses trityl perchlo-
rate (trityl = Ph₃C), which is a convenient source of the trityl cation, as catalyst rather than a metal-based Lewis acid. The very stable Ph₃C⁺ cation carries a full positive charge and presumably functions in the same way as a Lewis acid. The combination of a silyl ketene acetal, cyclohexenone, and benzaldehyde gives a highly chemoselective and stereoselective conjugate addition–aldol sequence.

First, chemoselective (Chapter 24) conjugate addition of the silyl ketene acetal on the enone is preferred to direct aldol reaction with the aldehyde. Then an aldol reaction of the intermediate silyl enol ether on the benzaldehyde follows. The stereoselectivity results, firstly, from attack of benzaldehyde on the less hindered face of the intermediate silyl enol ether, which sets the two side chains trans on the cyclohexanone, and, secondly, from the intrinsic diastereoselectivity of the aldol reaction (this is treated in some detail in Chapter 34). This is a summary mechanism.

A variety of electrophilic alkenes will accept enol(ate) nucleophiles

The simplest and best Michael acceptors are those α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds with exposed unsaturated β carbon atoms, such as exo-methylene ketones and lactones and vinyl ketones, and we shall see in the next section that these need to have their high reactivity moderated in most applications.

These Michael acceptors react with most enol equivalents to give good yields of conjugate addition products. Before discussing them we shall first briefly discuss other good Michael acceptors that are not so important but have their uses. Esters are good Michael acceptors because they are not very electrophilic. Unsaturated amides are even less electrophilic and will even give conjugate addition products with lithium enolates.

If all else fails, the trick to persuade a stubborn enolate to do conjugate rather than direct substitution is to add an extra anion-stabilizing substituent in the α position. Here is a selection of reagents that do this. In each case the extra group (CO₂Et, SPh, SOPh, SO₂Ph, SiMe₃, and Br) can be removed after the conjugate addition is complete.
However, most α,β-unsaturated ketones can be made to do conjugate addition by suitable choice of enol(ate) equivalent and conditions. Now we need to look at the best Michael acceptors, their reactions, and how to make them.

The Mannich reaction provides stable equivalents of exo-methylene ketones

The key substrates for conjugate addition are the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds. When the double bond is inside a chain or ring these compounds are available via a wide variety of routes including the aldol reaction and are generally stable intermediates that can be stored for use at will. When the double bond is exo to the ring or chain (exo-methylene compounds), the unhindered nature of the double bond makes them especially susceptible to attack by nucleophiles (and radicals). This reactivity is needed for conjugate additions but the compounds are unstable and polymerize or decompose rather easily.

Using the Mannich reaction in conjugate addition

Either the tertiary amine or the quaternary ammonium salt can be stored as a stable equivalent of the exo-methylene compound. In our first example, the Mannich base with dimethylamine is first methylated with methyl iodide and then added to the conjugate addition reaction. Elimination of trimethylamine, which escapes from the refluxing ethanol as a gas, reveals the exo-methylene ketone in which the methylene group is exo to a chain. Fast conjugate addition of the stabilized enolate of diethyl malonate produces the product.
Cyclic ketones with exo cyclic methylenes can be prepared in just the same way and used in situ. Morpholine is often used as a convenient secondary amine for the Mannich reaction and the resulting amino-ketones can be methylated and undergo elimination–addition reactions with stabilized enolates such as that derived from ethyl acetoacetate. This starting material was prepared from natural menthone and the mixture of diastereoisomers produced is unimportant because the product is to be used in a Robinson annelation (see below).

\[ \text{key intermediate formed in situ} \]

**α,β-Unsaturated nitriles are ideal for conjugate addition**

The nitrile group is not as reactive towards direct attack by nucleophiles as its carbonyl cousins but is equally able to stabilize an adjacent negative charge in the style of enolates. Alkenes conjugated with nitriles are thus activated towards nucleophilic attack without the complications of competing direct addition to the activating group.

![Conjugate addition reaction](image)

The regioselectivity of enolate formation is governed by the usual factors so that methyl benzyl ketone forms the more stable enolate with sodium metal. This undergoes smooth and rapid conjugate addition to acrylonitrile, which is unsubstituted at the β position and so very reactive.

![Conjugate addition reaction](image)

The cyanide group can also act as an anion-stabilizing group in the nucleophile. In combination with an ester group, the enolizable proton is acidified to such an extent that potassium hydroxide can be used as base.

![Conjugate addition reaction](image)

The simplest amino acid, glycine, would be an ideal starting material for the synthesis of more complicated amino acids but it does not easily form enols or enolates. The methyl ester of the benzaldehyde imine has two electron-withdrawing groups to help stabilization of the enolate and conjugate addition of acrylonitrile is now possible. The base used was solid potassium carbonate with a quaternary ammonium chloride as phase transfer catalyst. Simple hydrolysis of the alkylated product leads to the extended amino acid.
Nitro is more powerful than carbonyl in directing conjugate addition

We have seen how two ester groups in fumarate diesters encourage conjugate addition, but what if there are two different groups at the ends of the Michael acceptor? Then you must make a judgement as to which is more electron-withdrawing. One case is clear-cut. The nitro group is worth two carbonyl groups (p. 000) so that conjugate addition occurs β to the nitro group in this case.

Conjugate addition followed by cyclization makes six-membered rings

The product of Michael addition of an enolate to an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound will normally be a 1,5-dicarbonyl compound. The two reactive carbonyl groups separated from one another by three carbon atoms present the opportunity for ring formation by intramolecular aldol condensation. If one of the carbonyls acts as an electrophile while the other forms a nucleophilic enolate, this cyclization gives a six-membered ring.

Drawing out the curly arrows for the formation is not easy as the chain has to fold back on itself which is hard to represent in two dimensions. However, remembering that the actual structure of a six-membered ring is a chair is extremely helpful. By using the structure of the product as a template for the transition state and reactive conformation of the starting material a clear representation is achieved.

The precise nature of the carbonyl groups determines what happens next. If R is a leaving group (OR, Cl, etc.), the tetrahedral intermediate collapses to form a ketone and the product is a 1,3-diketone. The synthesis of dimedone (later in this chapter) is an example of this process where an alkoxy group is the leaving group. Alternatively, if R is an alkyl or aryl group, loss of R is not an option and the cyclization is an intramolecular aldol reaction. Dehydration produces an α,β-unsaturated ketone, which is a stable final product.
The Robinson annelation is the result of conjugate addition followed by aldol cyclization

Conditions for aldol reactions are very similar to those required for conjugate addition so that it is not unusual for conjugate addition and cyclization to occur sequentially without isolation of any intermediates. When we described one Michael addition a few pages back, we were not telling you the whole truth. The product isolated from this reaction was actually the enone from cyclization.

This sequential process of Michael–aldol reaction leading to a new six-membered ring is known as the Robinson annelation. It was, in fact, Robinson who invented the idea of using a Mannich product in conjugate additions because he wanted to develop this important reaction. There are now thousands of examples used to make all kinds of compounds, especially steroids (Chapter 49).

The essential requirement for a Robinson annelation is a Michael addition of an enolate to an enone that has a second enolizable group on the other side of the ketone. The classic enone is butenone (methyl vinyl ketone) and the classic Robinson annelation is the synthesis of rings A and B of the steroid nucleus.

The Robinson annelation mechanism has three familiar stages

The mechanism combines two important reactions and we shall take it step by step. The first stage is the formation of the stable enolate, here of the 1,3-diketone, and the conjugate addition to the enone. The enolate of the product is in equilibrium with the triketone.

The second stage is the formation of a new enolate on the other side of the ketone from the first. Note that the original enolate, the intermediate in the conjugate addition, can cyclize to give only an unstable four-membered ring so this cyclization would be reversible. The next intermediate, the aldol product, is often isolated from Robinson annelations.

Sir Robert Robinson (1886–1975) carried out many famous syntheses at Liverpool and Oxford and has two reactions, this annelation and the tropinone synthesis (Chapter 51), named after him. He won the Nobel prize in 1947. He was brilliantly inventive and the first person to work out mechanistically how to do syntheses.
The final stage is dehydration of the aldol and an E1cB reaction that involves the carbonyl group as in a standard aldol reaction (Chapter 27). Another enolate must form in the same position as the last.

Each step in the Robinson annelation is controlled by the various devices you have already met. In the conjugate addition step, the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound is usually butenone or another ketone and they are suitable Michael acceptors. There is much more variation in the enol equivalent. Compounds with 1,3-dicarbonyl groups are popular so ester groups can be added to ketones and removed afterwards by hydrolysis and decarboxylation. Keto-esters react well in the Robinson annelation. The ester group stabilizes the enolate but is not very electrophilic. In this example MeOK is the base for the conjugate addition and a weaker base is used for the aldol.

In fact, even very weak bases are enough for most 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and piperidine and acetic acid combine to form a mild buffered system that facilitates both conjugate addition and aldol reactions via enol intermediates. The trifluoromethyl ketone is extremely electrophilic so the aldol reaction proceeds very smoothly.

Enamines are good enol equivalents for Robinson annelation

If the enol component is an aldehyde, none of these methods will do and enamines or silyl enol ethers are the best choice. Enamines are excellent nucleophilic components and the iminium ion that is formed in the conjugate addition can provide the electrophilic component in a cyclization reaction. Acid-catalysed hydrolysis of the β amino-ketone liberates the amine that was used to form
the enamine at the start revealing the cyclohexenone product. In this example a quaternary centre is formed in the new ring.

The addition of an anion-stabilizing group to the α,β-unsaturated component at the α carbon promotes conjugate addition and allows a wider range of enolate nucleophiles to be used. In particular, enolates that are prone to equilibration to regioisomers can be used because conjugate addition becomes essentially irreversible. Trimethylsilyl has proved very effective because it stabilizes the enolate intermediate in the conjugate addition and is easily removed during the later stages of the reaction. Conjugate addition of Me$_2$CuLi to the cyclohexenone in our next example produces a new carbon–carbon bond and a regiodefined enolate. The presence of a proton source would allow equilibration of the enolate to the less hindered position but the trimethylsilyl enone was used to trap the enolate without equilibration, creating the two adjacent stereocentres in the Robinson annelation.

A more common method of ensuring that the conjugate addition step is free from side-reactions is to use the method Robinson himself invented—replace the enone by the Mannich base or Mannich salt as we have discussed already in this chapter. This ensures that the enone need have only a very short lifetime in the reaction mixture.

The aldol cyclization step and the dehydration are sometimes separated from the conjugate addition and from each other and sometimes not. It depends to some extent on the conditions. Very mild conditions in this example allowed each step to be performed separately and in good yield but notice the exceptionally mild conditions for the conjugate addition (just mix in water!) which are possible only because of the two carbonyl groups in the enol component.
We have devoted a lot of space to the Robinson annelation because it is so important. For a multi-stage reaction, it is easy to understand because each step is a well-known step in its own right. It is because the second step is an *intra*molecular aldol condensation that it occurs so easily.

**Conjugate addition followed by Claisen ester cyclization gives cyclic diketones**

The first enol you saw at the start of Chapter 21 was the stable enol of ‘dimedone’, 5,5,-dimethyl-cyclohexa-1,3-dione. This six-membered ring is made by a close analogue of the Robinson annelation. The only difference is in the cyclization step, which is a Claisen ester condensation rather than an aldol reaction.

Dimedone has a trivial name because its preparation is so easy that it was discovered early in the history of organic chemistry. The first step is a conjugate addition of diethyl malonate to the unsaturated ketone ‘mesityl oxide’ (4-methylpent-3-en-2-one; given a trivial name for the same reason). Ethoxide ion is the base for the usual reason that nucleophilic substitution at the ester group simply regenerates starting material.

Under the reaction conditions the product will exist as a stable enolate but cyclization of this enolate would lead to a four-membered ring so it is reversible. The alternative enolate on the methyl group at the other end of the chain leads to a six-membered ring so this is what happens.

So far the mechanism is almost the same as that of the Robinson annelation but the cyclization is now the attack of a ketone enolate on an ester group (it doesn’t matter which one as they are equivalent) and so it is an intramolecular Claisen ester condensation (Chapter 28). The intermediate must be redrawn to allow cyclization.
This intermediate will exist as a stable enolate under the reaction conditions. Now aqueous KOH is added to the reaction mixture, which is refluxed to hydrolyse the remaining ester. On acidification with HCl decarboxylation occurs and dimerdone is released.

The whole operation is conducted in one flask, just as for the Robinson annelation, and dimerdone is isolated as the crystalline enol in 84% yield. This reaction has not enjoyed such wide application as the Robinson annelation but it has been used to make an aromatic compound that is a starting material for the synthesis of maytensine, which we discussed at the end of Chapter 22.

The clue to the synthesis of this compound using a dimerdone-style condensation is the 1,3,5-relationship between OMe, N, and Me around the ring. If we carry out the conjugate addition on an enone with only one methyl group at the end of the double bond, this is what we will get.

Particularly in the enol form, this is beginning to look something like what is needed. The next step is to add MeNH₂. Even in aqueous solution (MeNH₂ is available as a 40% aqueous solution) the enamine forms very easily because it is conjugated, like the enol but more so. This is again a crystalline compound and formed in 70% yield.

The chlorine atom can now be introduced by direct chlorination of the enamine with N-chlorosuccinimide. This electrophilic chlorine source reacts via the mechanism that enols follow when they react with halogens (Chapter 21).

Now it is time to aromatize the ring. If you imagine that the ketone in its enol form would already
be two double bonds in the ring, bromination and elimination of HBr would give the third. This can be done with bromine followed by acetic anhydride, which gives the benzene ring and acetylates the amine at one go.

Nitroalkanes are superb at conjugate addition

In this chapter so far we have concentrated on anions stabilized by carbonyl groups for use in conjugate addition. Anions that are well stabilized, such as those from β-dicarbonyl compounds, are the usual nucleophiles for this important class of reaction. The key to their success is the pkₐ of the acidic proton, which allows initial enolate anion formation, helps to reverse the unwanted alternative aldol pathway, and facilitates proton transfer in the catalytic version of the reaction. The nitro group is so powerfully electron-withdrawing that just one is equivalent to two carbonyls in pkₐ terms (Chapter 26). Thus if β-dicarbonyls are good for conjugate addition and our analysis of the reasons for this is correct, you might expect nitroalkanes to undergo conjugate addition in just the same way. The good news is that they do, very well. The first stage is a base-catalysed conjugate addition.

The enolate ion intermediate is now much more basic than the anion of the nitro compound so it removes a proton from the nitro compound and provides another molecule of anion for the second round of the reaction.

The acidifying effect of the nitro group is so profound that very mild bases can be used to catalyse the reaction. This enables selective removal of the proton next to the nitro group and helps to avoid side-reactions involving aldol condensations of the carbonyl component. Common examples include amines, quaternary ammonium hydroxides, and fluorides. Even basic alumina is sufficient to catalyse virtually quantitative addition of this benzylic nitroalkane to cyclohexenone at room temperature!

Anions of nitro compounds form quaternary centres with ease in additions to α,β-unsaturated mono- and diesters. The difference between acidity of the protons next to a nitro group and those next to the esters in the products combined with the very mild basic conditions ensure that no unwanted Claisen condensations occur.
Nitromethane readily undergoes multiple conjugate additions under more forcing conditions with excess ester.

\[
\text{H}_3\text{C}-\text{NO}_2 + \text{RCO}_2\text{Et} \rightarrow \text{EtO}_2\text{C}-\text{CO}_2\text{Et}
\]

Nitroalkane conjugate addition can be combined with other reactions

The effectiveness of nitro compound conjugate addition makes it ideal for use in combination with other reactions in making several bonds in one pot. The last example showed triple conjugate addition. The next example combines conjugate addition and intramolecular conjugate addition to make a six-membered ring. The base used for both steps is Cs$_2$CO$_3$. Caesium, the most electropositive of readily available metals, forms ionic compounds only so that the carbonate ion can exert its full basicity. Deprotonation of the conjugate addition product next to the nitro group produces a second anion, which does an intramolecular $S_N2$ displacement of iodide to form a six-membered ring.

The nitro group can be converted into other useful functional groups following conjugate addition. Reduction gives primary amines while hydrolysis reveals ketones. The hydrolysis is known as the Nef reaction and used to be achieved by formation of the nitro-stabilized anion with a base such as sodium hydroxide followed by hydrolysis with sulfuric acid. These conditions are rather unforgiving for many substrates (and products) so milder methods have been developed. One of these involves ozonolysis of the nitro 'enolate' at low temperature rather than treatment with acid.

Base-catalysed conjugate addition of nitropropane to methyl vinyl ketone occurred smoothly to give the nitroketone. Formation of the salt with sodium methoxide was followed by oxidative cleavage of the C=N linkage with ozone. The product was a 1,4-diketone which was isolated without further aldol reaction by this route.

This is a good general method for the synthesis of 1,4-diketones, which can be otherwise difficult to make, and additional substituents are easily accommodated on the enone—a characteristic of conjugate addition.
The synthesis of Vivalan, a drug that acts on brain chemistry

We end this chapter with a simple commercial synthesis of a drug molecule. This is Vivalan, described as a dopaminergic antagonist. It uses four reactions that you have met: conjugate addition of an enolate to acrylonitrile; reduction of CN to a primary amine; alkylation; and reduction of the amide. There is another reaction involved—cyclization to an amide—but this occurs spontaneously. These reactions may be simple but they are important.

This was the last chapter in our sequence (Chapters 26–28) devoted to the chemistry of enols and enolates and, in particular, to their use in making new C–C bonds. In the next chapter we shall be using these reactions when we introduce you to synthetic planning. We shall be answering questions such as, ‘how was the synthesis of Vivalan planned?’

Problems

1. Write full mechanisms for these reactions mentioned earlier in the chapter.

2. Suggest syntheses for these compounds.

3. Suggest two different approaches to these compounds by conjugate addition of an enol(ate). Which do you prefer?

4. How could you use the Robinson annelation to make these compounds?
5. Predict the product that would be formed in these conjugate additions.

\[ R-CHO \xrightarrow{1. R_2NH} A \quad 2. \xrightarrow{CO_2Me} \]

6. Suggest mechanisms for this reaction, commenting on any selectivity.

7. This example of the use of the Mannich reaction was given in the chapter. Draw detailed mechanisms for the two key steps shown here.

8. This symmetrical bicyclic ketone can easily be synthesized in two steps from simple precursors. What is the structure of the intermediate and what is the mechanism of the reactions?

9. Suggest ways to make these compounds using conjugate addition of enol(ate)s.

10. Identify the product of this reaction and propose a mechanism for its formation.

\[ \text{OSiMe}_3 + \xrightarrow{\text{TiCl}_4} \]

11. Suggest a synthesis for the starting material for this reaction, a mechanism for the reaction, and an explanation for the selectivity.

12. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction.

13. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction. How would you convert the product into the antibiotic anticapsin?
Creative chemistry

Chemistry is above all a creative science. Nearly all that you have learned so far in this book has had one underlying aim: to teach you how to make molecules. This is after all what most chemists do, for whatever reason. Small amounts of many drugs can be isolated from plants or marine animals; much greater quantities are made by chemists in laboratories. A limited range of dyes can be extracted from plants; many more vivid and permanent ones are made by chemists in the laboratory. Synthetic polymers, created by chemists, have replaced more expensive and less durable alternatives like rubber. Despite the bad press it has received, the use of PVC as insulating material for electric wires has prevented numerous fires and saved many lives. Eating is cheap and people live longer because pesticides allow agriculture to supply copious quantities of food to the shelves of our shops, markets, and supermarkets. Most of the improvements in the quality of life over the last 50 to 100 years can be traced to new molecules created by chemists.

But, faced with the challenge of making a new compound, how do chemists go about deciding how to make it? This molecule is known as ICI-D7114, and was identified as a possible anti-obesity drug. To test its efficacy, several hundred grams of it had to be made, and overleaf is how it was done.

The chemists who made this molecule could have chosen any route—any starting materials and any sequence of reactions. All that mattered was the final product—what we will call the target molecule. Synthetic planning starts with the product, which is fixed and unchangeable, and works backwards towards the starting materials. This process is called retrosynthesis, and the art of planning the synthesis of a target molecule is called retrosynthetic analysis. The aim of this chapter is to introduce you to the principles of retrosynthetic analysis: once you have read and understood it you will be well on the way to designing your own organic syntheses.
Retrosynthetic analysis: synthesis backwards

Most of the chemistry you have learned so far has concentrated on reactions (questions like ‘what do you need to add to X to get Y?’) or on products (questions like ‘what will happen if X and Y react together?’). Now we’re looking at starting materials (questions like ‘what X and Y do you need to react together to make Z?’). We’re looking at reactions in reverse, and we have a special symbol for a reverse reaction called a retrosynthetic arrow (the ‘implies’ arrow from logic).

A scheme with a retrosynthetic arrow $Z \implies X + Y$ means ‘Z could be made from X plus Y’.

This compound is used as an insect repellent. As it’s an ester, we know that it can be made from alcohol plus acyl chloride, and we can represent this using a retrosynthetic arrow.

The aromatic amide amelfolide is a cardiac antiarrhythmic agent. Because we see that it is an amide, we know that it can be made quite simply from $p$-nitrobenzoyl chloride and 2,6-dimethyl-aniline—again, we can represent this using a retrosynthetic arrow. Mentally breaking a molecule into its component parts like this is known as disconnection, and it’s helpful to indicate the site of the disconnection with a wiggly line as we have here.
Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions

The chemists who first made amelfolide chose to make it from an amine and an acyl chloride because they knew that this reaction, the standard way of making an amide, had a very good chance of success. They chose to disconnect the C–N bond because this disconnection corresponds to a reliable reaction in a way that no other possible disconnection of this molecule does.

Now that you’ve seen the principle of retrosynthetic analysis at work, you should be able to suggest a reasonable disconnection of this compound, which is known as daminozide.

You probably spotted immediately that daminozide is again an amide, so the best disconnection is the C–N bond, which could take us back to acyl chloride and dimethylhydrazine. This time we’ve written ‘C–N amide’ above the retrosynthetic arrow as a reminder of why we’ve made the disconnection and we advise you to follow this practice.

Now, in fact, there is a problem with this acyl chloride—it would be unstable as it can cyclize to an anhydride. But this poses no problem for the synthesis of daminozide—we could just use the anhydride instead, since the reaction should be just as reliable. A better retrosynthesis therefore gives the anhydride and indeed this is how daminozide is made.

Synthons are idealized reagents

In the synthesis of daminozide an anhydride is used out of necessity rather than out of choice, but it often turns out that there are several alternative reagents all corresponding to the same disconnection. Paracetamol, for example, is an amide that can be disconnected either to amine + acyl chloride or to amine + anhydride.

Which reagent is best can often only be determined by experimentation—commercially, paracetamol is made from para-aminophenol and acetic anhydride largely because the by-product, acetic acid, is easier to handle than HCl. In a retrosynthetic analysis, we don’t really want to be bothered by this sort of decision, which is best made later, so it’s useful to have a single way of representing the key attributes of alternative reagents. We can depict both anhydride and acyl chloride in this scheme as an ‘idealized reagent’—an electrophilic acetyl group MeCO⁺.

We call such idealized reagents synthons. Synthons are fragments of molecules with an associated polarity (represented by a ‘+’ or ‘–’) which stand for the reagents we are going to use in the forward synthesis. They are not themselves reagents, though they may occasionally turn out to be intermediates along the reaction pathway. By disconnecting bonds to synthons rather than to actual reagents we can indicate the polarity of the bond-forming reaction we are going to use without having to specify details of the reagents.
We can apply these ideas to the synthesis of the herbicide 2,4-D (2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid). The most reasonable disconnection of an ether is the C–O bond because we know that ethers can be made from alkyl halides by substitution with an alkoxide anion. We don’t at this stage need to decide exactly which alkyl halide or alkoxide to use, so we just write the synthons.

Once the retrosynthetic analysis is done, we can go back and use our knowledge of chemistry to think of reagents corresponding to these synthons. Here, for example, we should certainly choose the anion of the phenol as the nucleophile and some functionalized acetic acid molecule with a leaving group in the \( \alpha \) position.

We can then write out a suggested synthesis in full from start to finish. It isn’t reasonable to try to predict exact conditions for a reaction: to do that you would need to conduct a thorough search of the chemical literature and do some experiments. However, all of the syntheses in this chapter are real examples and we shall often give full details of conditions to help you become familiar with them.

---

**Some definitions of terms used in synthesis**

- **target molecule (or TM)**: the molecule to be synthesized
- **retrosynthetic analysis or retrosynthesis**: the process of mentally breaking down a molecule into starting materials
- **retrosynthetic arrow**: an open-ended arrow, \( \Rightarrow \), used to indicate the reverse of a synthetic reaction
- **disconnection**: an imaginary bond cleavage, corresponding to the reverse of a real reaction
- **synthon**: idealized fragments resulting from a disconnection. Synthons need to be replaced by reagents in a suggested synthesis
- **reagent**: a real chemical compound used as the equivalent of a synthon
Choosing a disconnection

The hardest task in designing a retrosynthetic analysis is spotting where to make the disconnections. We shall offer some guidelines to help you, but the best way to learn is through experience and practice. The overall aim of retrosynthetic analysis is to get back to starting materials that are available from chemical suppliers, and to do this as efficiently as possible.

- **Guideline 1**

  Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions

  We have already mentioned that disconnections must correspond to known reliable reactions and it’s the most important thing to bear in mind when working out a retrosynthesis. When we disconnected the ether 2,4-D we chose to disconnect next to the oxygen atom because we know about the synthesis of ethers. We chose not to disconnect on the aryl side of the oxygen atom because we know of no reliable reaction corresponding to nucleophilic attack of an alcohol on an unactivated aromatic ring.

- **Guideline 2**

  For compounds consisting of two parts joined by a heteroatom, disconnect next to the heteroatom

  In all the retrosynthetic analyses you’ve seen so far there is a heteroatom (N or O) joining the rest of the molecule together, and in each case we made the disconnection next to that N or O. This guideline works for esters, amides, ethers, amines, acetals, sulfides, and so on, because these compounds are often made by a substitution reaction.

  Chlorbenside is used to kill ticks and mites. Using Guideline 2 we can suggest a disconnection next to the sulfur atom; using Guideline 1 we know that we must disconnect on the alkyl and not on the aryl side.

  We can now suggest reagents corresponding to the synthons, and propose a synthetic scheme.
The next example is the ethyl ester of, and precursor to, cetaben, a drug that can be used to lower blood lipid levels. It is an amine, so we disconnect next to the nitrogen atom.

You don’t always need to write out the synths first—here the reagents are simple so we just write those instead.

cetaben ethyl ester:
retrosynthetic analysis
\( R = n\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31} \)

The alkyl bromide is available but we shall need to make the aromatic amino-ester and the best disconnection for an ester is the C–O bond between the carbonyl group and the esterifying group.

We have now designed a two-step synthesis of our target molecule, and this is how it was carried out.

cetaben ethyl ester:
synthesis
\( R = n\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31} \)

Multiple step syntheses: avoid chemoselectivity problems

This compound was an intermediate in the synthesis of the potential anti-obesity drug ICI-D7114 you met at the beginning of the chapter. You can spot that, with two ethers and an amine functional group, it requires several disconnections to take it back to simple compounds. The question is which do we do first? One way to solve the problem is to write down all the possibilities and see which looks best. Here there are four reasonable disconnections: one at each of the ether groups (a and b) or on either side of the amine (c and d).

ICI-D7114 intermediate: retrosynthetic analysis

Both (a) and (b) pose problems of chemoselectivity as it would be hard to alkylate the phenol in the presence of the basic nitrogen atom. Between (c) and (d), (c) appears to be the better choice because the next disconnection after (d) will have to be an alkylation of O in the presence of an NH\(_2\) group. To avoid chemoselectivity problems like this, we want to try and introduce reactive groups late in the synthesis. In terms of retrosynthetic analysis, then, we can formulate another guideline.

- **Guideline 3**
  Consider alternative disconnections and choose routes that avoid chemoselectivity problems—often this means disconnecting reactive groups first.
This guideline helps us in the next retrosynthetic step for the ICI-D7114 intermediate. Disconnection (c) gave us a compound with two ethers that might be disconnected further by disconnection (e) or (f).

![ICI-D7114 intermediate: retrosynthetic analysis](image)

Disconnection (e) requires alkylation of a compound that is itself an alkylating agent. Disconnection (f) is much more satisfactory, and leads to a compound that is easily disconnected to 4-hydroxyphenol (para-cresol) and 1,2-dibromomethane. Using Guideline 3, we can say that it's best to disconnect the bromoethyl group (f) before the benzyl group because the bromoethyl group is more reactive and more likely to cause problems of chemoselectivity.

ICI-D7114 intermediate: synthesis

![ICI-D7114 intermediate: synthesis](image)

### Functional group interconversion

The antihypertensive drug ofornine contains an amide and an amine functional group, and we need to decide which to disconnect first. If we disconnect the secondary amine first (b), we will have chemoselectivity problems constructing the amide in the presence of the resulting NH₂ group.

![ofornine: retrosynthetic analysis](image)

Yet disconnection (a), on the face of it, seems to pose an even greater problem because we now have to construct an amine in the presence of an acyl chloride! However, we shall want to make the acyl chloride from the carboxylic acid, which can then easily be disconnected to 2-aminobenzoic acid (anthranilic acid) and 4-chloropyridine.

![ofornine: retrosynthetic analysis](image)

We discussed nucleophilic substitutions on electron-poor aromatic rings like this in Chapter 23 and there is more detail on chloropyridines in Chapter 43.
The retrosynthetic transformation of an acyl chloride to a carboxylic acid is not really a disconnection because nothing is being disconnected. We call it instead a functional group interconversion, or FGI, as written above the retrosynthetic arrow. Functional group interconversions often aid disconnections because the sort of reactive functional groups (acyl chlorides, alkyl halides) we want in starting materials are not desirable in compounds to be disconnected because they pose chemoselectivity problems. They are also useful if the target molecule contains functional groups that are not easily disconnected.

By using an appropriate reagent or series of reagents, almost any functional group can be converted into any other. You should already have a fair grasp of reasonable functional group interconversions. They mostly fall into the categories of oxidations, reductions, and substitutions (Chapters 12, 14, 17, and 24).

Amine synthesis using functional group interconversions

The synthesis of amines poses a special problem because only in certain cases is the obvious disconnection successful.

The problem is that the product is usually more reactive than the starting material and there is a danger that multiple alkylation will take place.

The few successful examples you have seen so far in this chapter have been exceptions, either for steric or electronic reasons, and from now on we advise you to avoid disconnecting an amine in this way. Sometimes further alkylation is made unfavourable by the increased steric hindrance that would result: this is probably the case for the cetaben ethyl ester we made by this reaction.

If the alkylation agent contains an inductive electron-withdrawing group, the product may be less reactive than the starting material—benzylamine was only alkylated once by the alkyl bromide in the synthesis of ICI-D7114 on p. 000 because of the electron-withdrawing effect of the aryloxy group.
What are the alternatives? There are two main ones, and both involve functional group inter-conversion, with the reactive amine being converted to a less reactive derivative before disconnection. The first solution is to convert the amine to an amide and then disconnect that. The reduction of amide to amine is quite reliable, so the FGI is a reasonable one.

This approach was used in a synthesis of this amine, though in this case catalytic hydrogenation was used to reduce the amide.

The second alternative is to convert to an imine, which can be disconnected to amine plus carbonyl compound. This approach is known as reductive amination, and we discussed it in detail in Chapter 14.

Ocfentanil is an opioid painkiller that lacks the addictive properties of morphine. Disconnection of the amide gives a secondary amine that we can convert to an imine for disconnection to a ketone plus 2-fluoro aniline.

The synthesis is straightforward: a reductive amination followed by acylation of the only remaining NH group. The tertiary amine in the left-hand ring interferes with neither of these reactions.
There are several conceivable routes to the neuroactive drug fenfluramine—one analysis, which uses both the amide and the imine FGI methods, is shown below and this was the route used to make the drug. Notice that the oxime was used instead of the imine. N-unsubstituted imines are very unstable, and the much more stable, indeed isolable oxime serves the same purpose. Oximes are generally reduced with LiAlH₄.

You should now be able to suggest a plausible analysis of the secondary amine terodilin. This is the structure; write down a retrosynthetic analysis and suggested synthesis before looking at the actual synthesis below.

You should find yourself quite restricted in choice: the amide route clearly works only if there is a CH₂ group next to the nitrogen (this comes from the C=O reduction), so we have to use an imine.

In the synthesis of terodilin, it was not necessary to isolate the imine—reduction of imines is faster than reduction of ketones, so formation of the imine in the presence of a mild reducing agent (usually NaCNBH₃ or catalytic hydrogenation) can give the amine directly.

**Two-group disconnections are better than one**

This compound was needed for some research into the mechanisms of rearrangements. We can disconnect on either side of the ether oxygen atom, but (b) is much better because (a) does not correspond to a reliable reaction: it might be hard to control selective alkylation of the primary hydroxyl group in the presence of the secondary one.
Nucleophile attack on the less hindered terminal carbon atom of the epoxide gives us the type of compound we want, and this was how the target molecule was made.

Using the epoxide we have gone one step beyond all the disconnections we have talked about so far, because we have used one functional group to help disconnect another—in other words, we noticed the alcohol adjacent to the ether we wanted to disconnect, and managed to involve them both in the disconnection. Such disconnections are known as two-group disconnections, and you should always be on the look-out for opportunities of using them because they are an efficient way of getting back to simple starting materials. We call this epoxide disconnection a 1,2-disconnection because the two functional groups in the two-group disconnection are in a 1,2-relationship.

Drug molecules often have 1,2-related functional groups: 2-amino alcohols form one important class. Phenyramidol, for example, is a muscle relaxant. A simple two-group disconnection takes it straight back to 2-amino pyridine and styrene oxide.

You might think that the best reagent to use as the equivalent of the synthon:

Be more ingenious! A much better solution is to use an epoxide

In using the epoxide we have gone one step beyond all the disconnections we have talked about so far, because we have used one functional group to help disconnect another—in other words, we noticed the alcohol adjacent to the ether we wanted to disconnect, and managed to involve them both in the disconnection. Such disconnections are known as two-group disconnections, and you should always be on the look-out for opportunities of using them because they are an efficient way of getting back to simple starting materials. We call this epoxide disconnection a 1,2-disconnection because the two functional groups in the two-group disconnection are in a 1,2-relationship.

Drug molecules often have 1,2-related functional groups: 2-amino alcohols form one important class. Phenyramidol, for example, is a muscle relaxant. A simple two-group disconnection takes it straight back to 2-amino pyridine and styrene oxide.

Propranolol is one of the top heart drugs

The Zeneca drug propranolol is a beta-blocker that reduces blood pressure and is one of the top drugs worldwide. It has two 1,2-relationships in its structure but it is best to disconnect the more reactive amine group first.
The second disconnection can’t make use of an epoxide, but a simple ether disconnection takes us back to 1-naphthol and epichlorohydrin, a common starting material for this type of compound.

Moxnidazole can be made with epichlorohydrin

Moxnidazole is an antiparasitic drug, and our next target molecule is an important intermediate in its synthesis. The obvious first disconnection is of the carbamate group, revealing two 1,2 relationships. A 1,2-diX disconnection gives an epoxide that can be made by alkylation of morpholine with epichlorohydrin.

At the carbonyl oxidation level another synthon is needed for 1,2-diX disconnections

Just as epoxides are useful reagents for this synthon: \( \alpha \) halocarbonyl compounds are useful reagents for the carbonyl equivalent:

We can consider disconnection to this synthon to be a two-group disconnection because the \( \alpha \) halocarbonyl equivalents are easily made by halogenation of a ketone, ester, or carboxylic acid (see Chapter 21) and the carbonyl group adjacent to the halide makes them extremely reactive electrophiles (Chapter 17).

Nafimidone is an anticonvulsant drug with an obvious two-group disconnection of this type.
The α chloroketone is simply made by chlorination, and substitution is rapid and efficient even with the weakly basic (Chapter 8) heterocyclic amine.

The aldehyde below was needed by ICI when they were developing a thromboxane antagonist. Two-group disconnection gives a 2-halo-aldehyde that can be made from isobutyraldehyde.

The synthesis requires a normal bromination of a carbonyl compound in acid solution but the next step is a most unusual SN2 reaction at a tertiary centre. This happens because of the activation by the aldehyde group (Chapter 17) and is further evidence that the functional groups must be thought of as working together in this type of synthesis.

1,3-Disconnections

In Chapter 10 you saw how α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds undergo conjugate additions—reactions like this.

Two-group 1,3-disconnections are therefore possible because they correspond to this forward reaction. These Michael acceptors have an electrophilic site two atoms away from the carbonyl group, and are therefore the reagents corresponding to this synthon.

This type of reaction is available only when the alkene is conjugated to an electron-withdrawing group—usually carbonyl (Chapter 10) but it can be nitro, cyanide, etc. (Chapter 23). This disconnection is available only at this oxidation level unlike the last. We can do a two-group 1,3-disconnection on this sulfide, for example.
Remember that not all nucleophiles will successfully undergo Michael additions—you must bear this in mind when making a 1,3-disconnection of this type. Most reliable are those based on nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen (Chapter 10).

Our second example is an amine structurally similar to the ‘deadly nightshade’ drug, atropine, which has the ability to calm involuntary muscle movements. There is a 1,3-relationship between the amine and ketone functional groups, and 1,3-disconnection takes us back to piperidine and an unsaturated ketone.

To summarize...

Before we leave C–X disconnections and go on to look at C–C disconnections we should just review some important points. We suggested three guidelines for choosing disconnections and now that you have met the principle of two-group disconnections, we can add a fourth:

- **Guidelines for good disconnections**
  1. Disconnections must correspond to known, reliable reactions
  2. For compounds consisting of two parts joined by a heteroatom, disconnect next to the heteroatom
  3. Consider alternative disconnections and choose routes that avoid chemoselectivity problems—often this means disconnecting reactive groups first
  4. Use two-group disconnections wherever possible

Two-group disconnections reduce the complexity of a target molecule more efficiently than one-group disconnections, and you should always be on the look-out for them. You will meet more two-group disconnections in the next section, which deals with how to disconnect C–C bonds.

**C–C disconnections**

The disconnections we have made so far have all been of C–O, C–N, or C–S bonds, but, of course, the most important reactions in organic synthesis are those that form C–C bonds. We can analyse C–C disconnections in much the same way as we’ve analysed C–X disconnections. Consider, for example, how you might make this simple compound, which is an intermediate in the synthesis of a carnation perfume.

The only functional group is the triple bond, and we shall want to use the chemistry of alkynes to show us where to disconnect. You know that alkylation of alkynes is a reliable reaction, so a sensible disconnection is next to the triple bond.
Alkynes are particularly valuable as synthetic intermediates because they can be reduced either to cis or to trans double bonds.

It’s often a good idea to start retrosynthetic analysis of target molecules containing isolated double bonds by considering FGI to the alkyne because C–C disconnections can then become quite easy.

This cis-alkene is a component of violet oil, and is an intermediate in the synthesis of a violet oil component. FGI to the alkyne reveals two further disconnections that make use of alkyne alkylations. The reagent we need for the first of these is, of course, the epoxide as there is a 1,2-relationship between the OH group and the alkyne.

The next example is the pheromone of the pea-moth, and can be used to trap the insects (see the introduction to Chapter 24). After disconnecting the ester, FGI on the trans double bond gives an alkyne.

Disconnection on either side of the alkyne leads us back to a bromo-alcohol alkylating agent. In the synthesis of the pheromone, it turned out to be best if the hydroxyl group was protected as its THP ether. You should be able to think of other alkylation-type reactions that you have met that proceed reliably and therefore provide a good basis for a disconnection—the alkylation of enolates of esters or ketones, for example (Chapter 26).
This next ester was needed for a synthesis of the sedative rogletimide (see later for the full synthesis). The ethyl group is disconnected because it can be readily introduced by alkylation of the ester enolate.

We have labelled the disconnection ‘1,2 C–C’ because the new C–C bond is forming two atoms away from the carbonyl group. To spot disconnections of this sort, you need to look for alkyl groups in this 2-position.

Arildone is a drug that prevents polio and herpes simplex viruses from ‘unwrapping’ their DNA, and renders them harmless. It has just the structural characteristic you should be looking for: a branch next to a carbonyl group.

With two carbonyl groups, the alkylation should be particularly straightforward since we can use a base like methoxide. The ether disconnection is then immediately obvious. In the synthesis of arildone the alkyl iodide was used for the alkylation.

We introduced the chemistry of malonate esters in Chapters 21 and 26 as a useful way of controlling the enolization of carbonyl compounds. Alkylation followed by decarboxylation means that we can treat acetoacetate and malonate esters as equivalent for these synthons.
This unsaturated ketone is an important industrial precursor to β-carotene, vitamin A, and other similar molecules. Disconnection using the carbonyl group gives a synthon for which a good reagent will be acetoacetate.

carotene precursor: retrosynthetic analysis

\[
\overset{1,2 \text{ C–C}}{\overset{\text{synthon}}{\text{Br}}} - \overset{\text{use}}{\text{reagent}} \overset{\text{CO}_2\text{Et}}{\text{EtO}_2\text{C}}
\]

This organophosphorus compound, belfosil, is a Ca\(^{2+}\) channel blocker. You haven’t met many phosphorus compounds yet, but you should be able to reason that a good disconnection will be the C–P bond by analogy with the sulfides you met earlier in the chapter. We could use bromide as a leaving group, but alkyl bromides are inconvenient to disconnect further, so we go back to the more versatile diol—in the forward synthesis we shall need a way of making the OH groups into good leaving groups. There is still no obvious disconnection of the diol, but FGI to the ester oxidation level reveals a malonate derivative.

belfosil: retrosynthetic analysis

\[
\overset{\text{PhO}}{\overset{\text{P(Obu)}_2}{\text{C–P}}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{reduction}}{\overset{\text{OH}}{\overset{\text{OH}}{\text{PhO}}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{1,2 C–C}}{\overset{\text{CO}_2\text{Et}}{\text{CO}_2\text{Et}}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{PhO}}{\text{NaP(Obu)}_2} \rightarrow \overset{\text{OTs}}{\text{OTs}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{TM}}{\text{TM}}
\]

In the synthesis, the diol was converted to the bis-tosylate (see Chapter 17 if you’ve forgotten about tosylates and mesylates) and reacted with a phosphorus nucleophile.

belfosil: synthesis

\[
\overset{\text{EtO}_2\text{C}}{\overset{\text{CO}_2\text{Et}}{\text{1. base}}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{Br}}{\text{PhO}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{1. LiAIH}_4}{\text{CO}_2\text{Et}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{2. TsCl, pyridine}}{\text{OTs}} \rightarrow \overset{\text{OTs}}{\text{TM}}
\]

Notice how we disconnected the phosphorus-based functional groups straight back to alcohols in the retrosynthetic analysis, and not, say, to alkyl halides. Oxygen-based functional groups (alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, esters, and acids) have one important property in common—versatility. They are easily converted into each other by oxidation and reduction, and into other groups by substitution. What is more, many of the C–C disconnections you will meet correspond to reactions of oxygen-based groups, and particularly carbonyl groups. Faced with an unusual functional group in a target molecule the best thing to do is convert it to an oxygen-based group at the same oxidation level—it usually makes subsequent C–C disconnections simpler. So we add a new guideline.

**Guideline 5**

Convert to oxygen-based functional groups to facilitate C–C disconnections.
Looking for 1,2 C–C disconnections

In each of the cases you have met so far, we have used a functional group present in the molecule to help us to disconnect the C–C bond using a 1,2 C–C disconnection. You can look for 1,2 C–C disconnections in alkynes, carbonyl compounds, and alkylated aromatic rings. And, if the target isn’t a carbonyl compound, consider what would be possible if functional groups such as hydroxyl groups were converted to carbonyl groups (just as we did with belfosdil).

All of these disconnections relied on the reaction of a carbon electrophile with a nucleophilic functional group. The alternative, reaction of a carbon nucleophile (such as a Grignard reagent) with an electrophilic functional group, allows us to do C–C disconnections on alcohols. For example, this compound, which has a fragrance reminiscent of lilac, is a useful perfume for use in soap because (unlike many other perfumes that are aldehydes or ketones) it is stable to alkali.

We look to the one functional group, the hydroxyl, to tell us where to disconnect, and disconnection next to the OH group gives two synthons for which sensible reagents are a Grignard reagent and acetone. The perfume is made from benzyl chloride and acetone in this way. Notice that we label these disconnections 1,1 C–C because the bond being disconnected is attached to the same carbon atom as the hydroxyl functional group.

This similar alcohol has a ‘peony-like fruity odour’ and could be disconnected in three ways.

Disconnection (c) leads back to a ketone, which is cheaply made starting from acetone and benzaldehyde, and this was the route that was chosen for the synthesis.
Available starting materials

Although any of the three routes to the fruity peony perfume would give an acceptable synthesis, the key factor in choosing route (c) was the ease of synthesis of the starting materials from available compounds. But how can you know which materials will be available? So far in this chapter we have avoided this question, and often our retrosynthetic analyses have been incomplete because the suggested starting materials must themselves be synthesized in the laboratory. From now on, though, we will take every analysis back to available starting materials to help you get a feel for what is, and is not, available.

The only way to be absolutely sure what you can buy is to look up a compound in a supplier’s catalogue, and this is what a chemist would do when assessing possible alternative synthetic routes. A good rule of thumb is that compounds with up to about six carbon atoms and with one functional group (alcohol, aldehyde, ketone, acid, amine, double bond, or alkyl halide) are usually available. This is less true for heavily branched compounds, but most straight-chain compounds with these functional groups are available up to eight or more carbon atoms. Cyclic compounds with one functional group from five- to eight-membered are also available. Of course, many other compounds are available too, including some difunctional compounds. Here are a few of them.

You will soon start to appreciate what is available as you see which compounds we use as starting materials. Supplier’s catalogues are available free for the asking and make quite useful textbooks. You could consider getting one. In addition, on-line and CD catalogues are available in most chemistry departments and can be searched by structure.

Some starting materials become available because other chemists have made them

Our next target is an allylic alcohol that produces the perfumery compound ‘violet leaf alcohol’ by a rearrangement step. Two disconnections are possible, but one of them, (a), leads back to a Grignard reagent that can be made by FGI on the violet oil component whose synthesis we described on p. 000.

![Diagram of violet leaf alcohol precursor and violet leaf alcohol](image)

violet leaf alcohol precursor: retrosynthetic analysis

The synthesis was best carried out using the alkylmagnesium iodide and the iodide was made from the alcohol via the chloride.

![Diagram of violet leaf alcohol precursor: synthesis](image)

Linalool is another perfumery compound. Disconnection of the vinyl group leads to the ketone you met on p. 000, best made by alkylation of acetoacetate, an acetone enolate equivalent.

![Diagram of linalool retrosynthetic analysis](image)

On an industrial scale it was best to introduce the vinyl anion synthon as acetylene and then hydrogenate the alkyne. The unsaturated ketone was chosen as the starting material because its synthesis was already known.

![Diagram of linalool synthesis](image)
Double disconnections can be a short cut

Tertiary alcohols with two identical groups next to the hydroxyl group are often made by attack of two equivalents of a Grignard reagent on an ester. The synthesis of the antihistamine compound fenpiprane provides an example: the tertiary alcohol is a precursor to the drug and can be disconnected to ester + Grignard reagent because of the two Ph groups. The ester required has a 1,3 functional group relationship, and can be disconnected to amine plus Michael acceptor.

The fact that Grignard reagents add twice to esters means that disconnection of a ketone in this way is often not reliable. We talked about a few ways of doing this type of reaction in Chapter 12.

An alternative is to first convert to the alcohol oxidation level, then disconnect. This was the method chosen for this starting material for the synthesis of chlorphedianol.

Summary: 1,1 disconnections using Grignard reagents

*secondary alcohols*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{OH} & \quad \text{1,1 C-C} \\
R^1 & \quad \qua
Donor and acceptor synthons

You’ve now met a variety of synthons and it’s useful to be able to classify them as donor or acceptor synthons. We call a negatively polarized synthon a donor synthon and give it the symbol ‘d’. Positively polarized synthons are called acceptor synthons and are given the symbol ‘a’.

We can classify the synthons further according to where the functional group is in relation to the reactive site. The first synthon in the diagram below, which corresponds to an aldehyde, we call an a¹ synthon, because it is an acceptor that carries a functional group on the same carbon as its reactive centre. The second is a d² synthon because it is a donor whose reacting site is in the 2-position relative to the carbonyl group. Earlier you met two other types of synthon, corresponding to epoxide and Michael acceptor, and we can now classify these as a² and a³ synthons.

![Diagram showing a¹, d², a², and a³ synthons](image)

This terminology is useful because it reduces synthons to the bare essentials: what polarity they are and where the polarity is sited. The actual functional group they carry is, as you now appreciate, less important because FGI will usually allow us to turn one FG into another.

- **Synthons are classified as a (acceptor) or d (donor)**
  - A number shows the position of the acceptor or donor site relative to a functional group
  - An a¹ synthon is a carbonyl compound and a d² synthon an enolate

Two-group C–C disconnections

1,3-Difunctionalized compounds

It’s not only Grignard reagents that will react with aldehydes or ketones to make alcohols: enolates will too—we spent Chapters 27 and 28 discussing this reaction, the aldol reaction, its variants, and ways to control it.

![Diagram showing aldol reaction](image)

The aldol reaction is extremely important in organic synthesis because it makes compounds with two functional groups in a 1,3-relationship. Whenever you spot this 1,3-relationship in a target molecule—think aldol! In disconnection terms we can represent it like this.

![Diagram showing 1,3-diole](image)

We call this disconnection a **two-group C–C disconnection**, because we are using the OH and the C=O groups together to guide our disconnection. The disconnection gives us a d² synthon for which we shall use an enolate equivalent, and an a¹ synthon, for which we shall use an aldehyde or a ketone.
Chapter 27 has many examples and perhaps gingerol is the best. As soon as you see the 1,3-
relationship, the disconnection should be obvious.

The \( \beta \)-hydroxy carbonyl products of aldol reactions are often very easily dehydrated to give \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated carbonyl compounds and, if you spot an \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated carbonyl group in the mole-
cule, you should aim to make it by an aldol reaction. You will first need to do an FGI to the 
\( \beta \)-hydroxy carbonyl compound, then disconnect as before.

The aldehyde is an intermediate in the synthesis of the tranquillizer oxanamide. Because both 
components of the aldol reaction are the same, no special precautions need to be taken to prevent 
side-reactions occurring. In the synthesis, the dehydration happened spontaneously.

Because this disconnection of unsaturated carbonyl compounds is so common, it’s often written 
using a shorthand expression.

The next compound was needed for an early synthesis of carotene. Again, it’s an \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated 
ketone so we can disconnect using the same ‘\( \alpha,\beta \)’ disconnection.

The aldehyde generated by this first disconnection is also \( \alpha,\beta \)-unsaturated, so we can do another 
\( \alpha,\beta \) disconnection, back to a ketone whose synthesis we have already discussed (p. 000).

An aldol reaction using the enolate of acetaldehyde and requiring it to react with a ketone 
is doomed to failure: acetaldehyde itself is far too good an electrophile. In the forward synthesis, 
therefore, this first step was carried out at the ester oxidation level (using a Reformatsky reaction), 
and the ester was subsequently converted to the aldehyde by a reduction of the kind discussed in 
Chapter 24.

There was no problem with selectivity in the second aldol reaction because the aldehyde is not 
enolizable. The Reformatsky reaction in this sequence illustrates the fact that, of course, aldol-type
reactions happen at the ester oxidation level as well, and you should equally look to disconnect
β-hydroxy or α,β-unsaturated esters, acids, or nitriles in this way. Just remember to look for 1,3-
relationships, convert the functional groups to oxygen-based ones, and disconnect them to \(d^2\) plus
\(a^1\) synthons.

The next compound was needed by ICI when chemists there were developing a thromboxane
antagonist to inhibit blood clot formation. You can immediately spot the 1,3-relationship between
the ester and the hydroxyl group, so 1,3-diO disconnection is called for.

![Thromboxane Antagonist Intermediate: Retrosynthetic Analysis](image)

A good equivalent for the ‘ester enolate’ \(d^2\) synthon is a β-dicarbonyl compound, because it can
easily be disconnected to diethyl malonate and an alkylating agent.

![Thromboxane Antagonist Intermediate: Synthesis](image)

This unsaturated amide is known as cinflumide and is a muscle relaxant. Disconnection
of the amide gives an acid chloride that we can make by FGI from the acid. You should then spot
the α,β-unsaturated carbonyl disconnection, a masked 1,3-diO disconnection, back to \(m\)-fluoro-
benzaldehyde.

![Cinflumide: Retrosynthetic Analysis](image)

Again, the forward reaction was best done using malonate chemistry but the variant with malonic
acid was used. The cyclopropyl amine unit (here as an amide) is present in many biologically active
compounds and the free amine is available.

![Cinflumide: Synthesis](image)

Functional group relationships may be concealed by protection

The analgesic doxpicomine is a more difficult problem than those you have seen so far. At first sight
it has no useful disconnections especially as there are no carbonyl groups. However, removal of the
acetal reveals a 1,3-diol that could be formed by reduction of a much more promising diester.
The diester has a 1,3-diCO relationship and could be disconnected but we have in mind using malonate so we would rather disconnect the alternative 3-amino carbonyl compound (the Me₂N group has a 1,3-relationship with both ester groups) by a 1,3-diX disconnection giving an unsaturated ester. This α,β-unsaturated ester disconnects nicely to a heterocyclic aldehyde and diethyl malonate.

The synthesis is shorter than the retrosynthetic analysis and involves only three steps. Good retrosynthetic analysis, using two-group disconnections, should lead to short syntheses.

Aldol-style disconnections with N and O in a 1,3-relationship: I

Another important class of compounds that undergo aldol-type additions to aldehydes and ketones is nitriles. Because nitriles can be reduced to amines, this reaction provides another useful route to 3-amino-alcohols.

This reaction, coupled with the reduction of cyanohydrins (Chapter 6), means that compounds with either a 1,3- or a 1,2-relationship between N and O can be made from cyanides.

Venlafaxine is an antidepressant and, like many neuroactive agents, it is an amino-alcohol. In this case, the two functional groups are 1,3-related, so we aim to use a 1,3-diO disconnection. Usually,
you would convert the amine to an alcohol to simplify the disconnection, but by spotting the opportunity for using a nitrile you can avoid the need for this extra step. A preliminary removal of the two $N$-Me groups is necessary.

venlafaxine: retrosynthetic analysis

In the forward synthesis, it turned out that the nitrile reduction was best done using hydrogen and a metal (Rh) catalyst. The final methylation of the primary amine had to be done via the imine and iminium ion (see Chapter 24) to prevent further unwanted alkylations. The reagent was an excess of formaldehyde (methanal $\text{CH}_2=\text{O}$). Problem xx offers a chance to try this mechanism.

venlafaxine: synthesis

Aldol-style disconnections with $\text{N}$ and $\text{O}$ in a 1,3-relationship: II—the Mannich reaction

Another important reaction for making amines with a 1,3-relationship to a carbonyl group is the Mannich reaction. You met this in Chapter 27 as a way of doing otherwise unreliable aldol additions to formaldehyde. Because the amine is introduced directly and not by reduction of a nitrile, it can have two alkyl groups from the start. Compare this scheme with the one above using a nitrile group as the source of the amine.

our example is clobutinol—an antitussive (cough medicine). A preliminary 1,1 C–C disconnection of the tertiary alcohol is necessary to provide a 3-amino ketone that we can make by a Mannich reaction.

clobutinol: retrosynthetic analysis
You can immediately spot the 1,3 relationship in this analogue of the antidepressant, nisoxetine, but, unfortunately, it can’t be disconnected straight back to an amino-alcohol because that would require nucleophilic substitution on an electron-rich aromatic ring. We have to disconnect the ether on the other side, giving an alkyl chloride.

Using guideline 5 (p. 000) we want to convert the halide to an oxygen-based group, and a sensible solution is to choose the ketone. 1,3-Disconnection of this compound corresponds to a Mannich reaction. This is another case where FGI of the amine to an alcohol is not desirable, because the Mannich reaction will produce the amine directly.

The Claisen ester disconnection: a 1,3-diO relationship needing two carbonyl groups
1,3-Diketones can be disconnected in a similar way: this time the disconnection corresponds to a Claisen condensation, but it’s still 1,3-diO, and again you need to look out for the 1,3 relationship. The synthons are still d^2 plus a^1 but the a^1 synthon is used at the ester oxidation level. This diketone is the starting material for the synthesis of the antidepressant tazadolene. With 1,3-diketones, there’s always a choice where to disconnect, and you should be guided by which disconnection (1) corresponds to the most reliable reaction and (2) gives the simplest starting materials. In this case, it’s much better to disconnect back to cyclohexanone.

The synthesis is interesting because, after the acylation of the enamine, the amino group is introduced by a clever reductive amination with benzylamine (PhCH₂NH₂) that forms the C–N bond, reduces the ketone, and hydrogenolyses the N–benzyl bond (Chapter 24). Dehydration and double alkylation then give tazadolene.
The 1,3-dicarbonyl relationship may not be revealed in the target molecule and C–heteroatom disconnections or FGIs may be needed before the 1,3-diO C–C disconnection. Bropirimine is a bromine-containing antiviral and anticancer drug. The bromine atom can be put in last of all by electrophilic bromination.

Disconnection of two C–N bonds removes a molecule of guanidine and reveals a 1,3-dicarbonyl relationship with a straightforward disconnection.

In the event, the 1,3-dicarbonyl was made using malonate chemistry with an unusual twist: the lithium derivative gave C-acylation in good yield. Simply refluxing the product with guanidine formed the heterocycle and bromination gave bropirimine.

**Summary: 1,3-diO disconnections**

**3-hydroxy carbonyls and α,β-unsaturated carbonyls: use the aldol reaction**

**3-amino ketones and alcohols: use Mannich or nitrile aldol**

**1,3-diketones: use the Claisen condensation**
1,5-Related functional groups

This compound has a 1,5 rather than a 1,3 relationship between two carbonyl groups. Disconnection to give an enolate as one reagent therefore requires an a\(^3\) rather than an a\(^1\) synthon: in other words a Michael acceptor.

The synthesis will be successful only if (1) the right reagent enolizes and (2) the nucleophile undergoes conjugate (and not direct 1,2-) addition to the unsaturated carbonyl compound (Chapter 29). Malonate derivatives enolize easily and do Michael additions and are therefore a good choice for this type of reaction.

Michael addition of enolates to α,β-unsaturated compounds is a good way of making 1,5-difunctionalized compounds, and you should look for these 1,5-§relationships in target molecules with a view to making them in this way. Our example is roglitazone, a sedative that can be disconnected to a 1,5-diester. Further 1,5-di\(\text{CO}\) disconnection gives a compound we made earlier by ethylation of the ester enolate.

The synthesis was most efficient with an unsaturated amide as Michael acceptor.

‘Natural reactivity’ and ‘umpolung’

Cast your mind back over the synthons we have used in these two-group C–C disconnections.

Notice that the acceptor synthons have odd numbers; the donor synthon has an even number: donor and acceptor properties alternate along the chain as we move away from a carbonyl group. This ‘natural reactivity’ of carbonyl compounds explains why we find it easy to discuss ways of making 1,3- and 1,5-difunctionalized compounds, because they arise from a\(^1\) + d\(^2\) and from a\(^3\) + d\(^2\). Reagents corresponding to synthons like d\(^1\) or a\(^2\) are rarer, and therefore compounds with 1,2- or 1,4- related functional groups require special consideration retrosynthetically.
You have in fact met one example of each of the ‘unnatural’ synthons with a² and d¹ reactivity. Such synthons are given the German name *Umpolung*, meaning ‘inverse polarity’ because their natural reactivity is reversed, and *umpolung reagents* are the key to the synthesis of 1,2- and 1,4-difunctionalized compounds.

![D1 and a2 synthons](image)

Two umpolung reagents

We shall finish this chapter by looking at disconnections of 1,2- and 1,4-difunctionalized compounds because these require us to use reagents with umpolung equivalent to d¹, d³, a², and a⁴ synthons. There are very many reagents for these synthons—if you are interested to learn more, consult a specialized book.

**1,2-Difunctional compounds**

You met ways of making 1,2-difunctionalized compounds when we first talked about two-group disconnections, and we used an epoxide as an a² synthon. Epoxides are, of course, also 1,2-functionalized, and in fact this is often the key to making 1,2-functionalized compounds: use something with the 1,2 relationship already in place. You saw lots of examples of this type of strategy earlier in this chapter. Perhaps the simplest approach is electrophilic addition to alkenes. If the alkene is made by a Wittig reaction, the disconnection is (eventually) between the two functionalized carbon atoms in the target molecule. This example shows dihydroxylation as the electrophilic addition but there is also epoxidation, bromination, and bromination in water to give Br and OH as the functional groups.

![Synthesis of phenaglycodol](image)

A normal C–C disconnection is also a possibility, but disconnection to the ‘natural’ a¹ synthon and the umpolung d¹ is necessary. One very useful umpolung reagent is cyanide, and you can see it in action in this synthesis of the tranquilizer phenaglycodol. The tertiary alcohol with two R groups the same should prompt you to think of doing a double Grignard addition to an ester. FGI then reveals the nitrile functional group necessary for a 1,2-diX disconnection to cyanide plus ketone.

*phenaglycodol: retrosynthetic analysis*

![Phenaglycodol retrosynthetic analysis](image)

The starting material is obviously available by a Friedel–Crafts acylation of chlorobenzene and the rest of the synthesis follows. Note that the nitrile can be converted directly into the ester with acidic ethanol and that an excess of Grignard reagent is needed because the free OH group destroys some of it.

*phenaglycodol: synthesis*

![Phenaglycodol synthesis](image)
1,4-Difunctional compounds

There are more possibilities here and we shall finish this chapter with a brief analysis of them to show you how much of this subject lies beyond what we can do in this book. If we start with a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound we might consider first disconnection of the central bond.

![1,4-Difunctional compounds diagram]

We can use an enolate for one reagent but the other will have to have umpolung. This is not a very serious kind of umpolung as an α-bromo carbonyl compound will do the job nicely if we select our enol(ate) equivalent carefully. In Chapter 26 we suggested enamines for this job. The synthesis becomes:

![Synthesis of 1,4-diketone]

If we attempt the disconnection of one of the other bonds, two possibilities are available because the two fragments are different. We can use either a d₁ + a₃ strategy or an a₁ + d₃ strategy. In each case we have one natural synthon and one with umpolung.

![Alternatives for bond disconnection]

These strategies are more difficult to realize with the reagents you have met so far but conjugate addition of a cyanide to an unsaturated carbonyl compound would be an example of the d₁ + a₃ strategy. We have included these to try to convince you that there is no escape from umpolung in the synthesis of a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound. If you were making this keto-ester you would have to understand two of the three strategies.

![Examples of strategies]

There is one way to avoid umpolung and that is to make the disconnection outside the 1,4 relationship. As it happens, we have already seen this strategy in action (p. 000). It involves a Friedel–Crafts acylation of benzene (Chapter 22) with a cyclic anhydride and leads directly to this
product by quite a short route. This strategy is available only if there happens to be a starting materi-
al available to suit any particular case.

This chapter is meant to give you just the basic ideas of retrosynthetic analysis. They are impor-
tant because they reinforce the concept that the combination of electrophile and nucleophile is the
basis for the understanding of organic reactions. Synthesis and reactions are two sides of the same
coin. From now on we shall use the methods introduced in this chapter when we think that they will
help you to develop your understanding.

**Problems**

1. Suggest ways to make these two compounds. Show your dis-
connections and don’t forget to number the relationships.

2. Propose syntheses of these two compounds, explaining your
choice of reagents and how the necessary selectivity is achieved.

3. The reactions to be discussed in this problem were planned to
give syntheses of these three target molecules.

In the event, each reaction gave a different product shown below. What
goes wrong? Suggest syntheses that would give the target molecules.

4. The natural product nuciferal was synthesized by the route
summarized here.

(a) Suggest a synthesis of the starting material A.
(b) Suggest reagents for each step.
(c) Draw out the retrosynthetic analysis giving the disconnec-
tions that you consider the planners had in mind and label them
suitably.
(d) What synthon does the starting material A represent?

5. A synthesis of the enantiomerically pure ant pheromone is
required. One suitable starting material might be the enantiomer-
ically pure alkyl bromide shown. Suggest a synthesis of the
pheromone based on this or another starting material.

(S)(−)-alkyl bromide  (S)(−)-ant pheromone

6. Show how the relationship between the alkene and the car-
boxylic acid influences your suggestions for a synthesis of these
unsaturated acids.

\[
\text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H}
\]
7. How would you make these compounds?

8. Show how the relationship between the two functional groups influences your suggestions for a synthesis of these diketones.

9. Suggest syntheses for these compounds. (Hint. Look out for a 1,4-dicarbonyl intermediate.)

10. Suggest a synthesis of this diketo-ester from simple starting materials.

11. Explain what is happening in this reaction. Draw a scheme of retrosynthetic analysis corresponding to the synthesis. How would you make the starting materials?

12. These diketones with different aryl groups at the ends were needed for a photochemical experiment. The compounds could be prepared by successive Friedel–Crafts acylations with a diacid dichloride but the yields were poor. Why is this a bad method? Suggest a better synthesis.

13. This is a synthesis for the ladybird defence compound coc-cinelline.

14. Suggest syntheses for these compounds.
The properties of alkenes depend on their geometry

You have met alkenes participating in reactions in a number of chapters, but our discussion of how to make alkenes has so far been quite limited. Chapter 19 was about elimination reactions, and there you met E1 and E2 reactions.

In Chapter 14, you met an important reaction known as the Wittig reaction, which also forms alkenes.

### Controlling the geometry of double bonds

#### Connections

**Building on:**
- Carbonyl chemistry ch6, ch12, & ch14
- Kinetic and thermodynamic control ch13
- Wittig reaction ch14
- Conjugate addition ch10
- Stereochemistry ch16
- Elimination reactions ch19
- Reduction ch24
- Chemistry of enol(ate)s ch26–ch29

**Arriving at:**
- What makes E- and Z-alkenes different?
- Why E/Z control matters
- Eliminations are not stereoselective
- Cyclic alkenes are cis
- Equilibration of alkenes gives trans
- Effects of light and how we see
- Julia olefination and the Wittig reaction at work
- Reliable reduction of alkynes

**Looking forward to:**
- Diastereoselectivity ch33–ch34
- Pericyclic reactions ch35–ch36
- Fragmentations ch38
- Radicals and carbenes ch39–ch40
- Main group chemistry ch46–ch47
- Asymmetric synthesis ch45
- Polymerization ch52
- Organic synthesis ch53

#### Different physical properties: maleate and fumurate

These two compounds, (Z)- and (E)-dimethyl but-2-enedioate, are commonly known as dimethyl maleate and dimethyl fumarate. They provide a telling example of how different the physical properties of geometrical isomers can be. Dimethyl maleate is a liquid with a boiling point of 202 °C (it melts at -19 °C), while dimethyl fumarate is a crystalline compound with a melting point of 103–104 °C.
In this chapter we shall talk about reactions similar to the ones on the previous page and we shall be interested in how to control the geometry of double bonds. Geometrical isomers of alkenes are different compounds with different physical, chemical, and biological properties. They are often hard to separate by chromatography or distillation, so it is important that chemists have methods for making them as single isomers.

Why is double bond control important?
The activity of the fungicide diniconazole is dependent on the geometry of its double bond: the \( E \)-isomer disrupts fungal metabolism, while the \( Z \)-isomer is biologically inactive.

If insect pests can be prevented from maturing they fail to reproduce and can thus be brought under control. Juvenile insects control their development by means of a ‘juvenile hormone’, one of which is the monoeoxide of a triene.

Synthetic analogues of this compound, such as the trienes, are also effective at arresting insect development, providing that the double bond geometry is controlled. The \( Z,E,E \) geometrical isomer of the triene is over twice as active as the \( E,E,E \)-isomer, and over 50 times as active as the \( E,Z,Z \)- or \( Z,E,Z \)-isomers.

These are, of course, just two out of very many examples of compounds where the \( E \)- and \( Z \)-isomers have sufficiently different properties that it’s no good having one when you need the other.

Chemical reactions on \( E \)- and \( Z \)-isomers usually give the same type of product, though often with different stereochemistry. The two geometrical isomers may also react at very different rates. For example, the reaction of these conjugated \( E \)- and \( Z \)-enones with alkaline hydrogen peroxide gives in each case an epoxide, but with different stereochemistry and at very different rates.

Epoxidation of the \( E \)-enone is complete in 2 hours and the epoxide can be isolated in 78% yield. The reaction on the \( Z \)-enone is very slow—only 50% is converted to the epoxide under the same
conditions in 1 week. The mechanism involves conjugate addition and ring closure with cleavage of the weak O–O bond (Chapter 23). The closure of the three-membered ring is fast enough to preserve the stereochemistry of the intermediate enolate.

Elimination reactions are often unselective

You saw in Chapter 19 that elimination reactions can be used to make alkenes from alcohols using acid or from alkyl halides using base. The acid-catalysed dehydration of tertiary butanol works well because the double bond has no choice about where to form. But the same reaction on s-butanol is quite unselective—as you would expect, the more substituted alkene is formed (almost solely, as it happens) but even then it’s a mixture of geometrical isomers.

How, then, can we use elimination reactions to give single geometrical isomers? You have, in fact, already met one such reaction, on p. 000, and in this chapter we shall cover other reactions that do just this. These reactions fall into four main classes, and we shall look at each in turn before summarizing the most important methods at the end of the chapter.

- Ways of making single geometrical isomers of double bonds
  1. Only one geometrical isomer is possible (for example, a cis double bond in a six-membered ring)
  2. The geometrical isomers are in equilibrium and the more stable (usually E) is formed
  3. The reaction is stereoselective and the E-alkene is formed as the main product by kinetic control
  4. The reaction is stereospecific and the alkene geometry depends on the stereochemistry of the starting materials and the mechanism of the reaction

In three- to seven-membered rings, only cis-alkenes are possible

In Chapter 28 you met the Robinson annelation as a method of making cyclohexenones. The product of the elimination step contains a double bond, but there is no question about its geometry because in a six-membered ring only a cis double bond can exist—a trans one would be far too strained.

The same is true for three-, four-, five-, and seven-membered rings, though trans-cycloheptene has been observed fleetingly. An eight-membered ring, on the other hand, is just about large enough
to accommodate a \( \textit{trans} \) double bond, and \( \textit{trans} \)-cyclooctene is a stable compound, though still less stable than \( \textit{cis} \)-cyclooctene.

You may think that this method is rather too trivial to be called a method for controlling the geometry of double bonds, as it’s only of any use for making cyclic alkenes. Well, chemists are more ingenious than that! Corey needed this \( \textit{cis} \)-alkene as an intermediate in his synthesis of the juvenile hormone we talked about above (it forms the left-hand end of the structure as shown there).

He realized that the \( \textit{Z} \) double bond would be easy to make if he were to start with a cyclic molecule (in which only \( \textit{cis} \) double bonds are possible) which could be ring-opened to the compound he needed. This is how he did it.

Birch reduction (Chapter 24) of a simple aromatic ether generated two \( \textit{cis} \) double bonds (notice that one of these is actually \( \textit{E} \)!). The more reactive (because it is more electron-rich) of these reacts first with ozone to give an aldehyde-ester in which the \( \textit{Z} \) geometry is preserved. \( \textit{NaBH}_4 \) reduces the aldehyde group to a hydroxyl group, which needs to be got rid of: a good way to do this is to tosylate and reduce with \( \textit{LiAlH}_4 \), which substitutes H for OTs. The \( \textit{LiAlH}_4 \) also does the job of reducing the ester to an alcohol, giving the compound that Corey needed.

It is not necessary to have an all-carbon ring to preserve the \( \textit{cis} \) geometry of a double bond. Lactones (cyclic esters) and cyclic anhydrides are useful too. A double bond in a five- or six-membered compound must have a \( \textit{cis} \) configuration and compounds like these are readily made. Dehydration of this hydroxylactone can give only a \( \textit{cis} \) double bond and ring-opening with a nucleophile (alcohol, hydroxide, amine) gives an open-chain compound also with a \( \textit{cis} \) double bond. The next section starts with an anhydride example.

\[ \text{Equilibration of alkenes to the thermodynamically more stable isomer} \]

Acyclic \( \textit{E} \)-alkenes are usually more stable than acyclic \( \textit{Z} \)-alkenes because they are less sterically hindered. Yet \( \textit{Z} \)-alkenes do not spontaneously convert to \( \textit{E} \)-alkenes because the \( \pi \) bond prevents free rotation: the energy required to break the \( \pi \) bond is about 260 kJ mol\(^{-1} \) (rotation about a \( \sigma \) bond
requires about 10 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)). You may therefore find the following result surprising. Dimethyl maleate is easily made by refluxing maleic anhydride in methanol with an acid catalyst.

If the product is isolated straight away, a liquid boiling at 199–202 °C is obtained. This is dimethyl maleate. However, if the product is left to stand, crystals of dimethyl fumarate (the \(E\)-isomer of dimethyl maleate) form. How has the geometry been inverted so easily?

A clue is that the process is accelerated enormously by a trace of amine. Michael addition of this amine, or of methanol, or any other nucleophile, provides a chemical mechanism by which the \(\pi\) bond can be broken. There is free rotation in the intermediate, and re-elimination of the nucleophile can give either \(E\)- or \(Z\)-alkene. The greater stability and crystallinity of the \(E\)-alkene means that it dominates the equilibrium. Michael addition therefore provides a mechanism for the equilibration of \(Z\)-alkenes to \(E\)-alkenes.

Similar mechanisms account for the double bond geometry obtained in aldol reactions followed by dehydration to give \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Any \(Z\)-alkene that is formed is equilibrated to \(E\) by reversible Michael addition during the reaction.

The double aldol product from acetone and benzaldehyde, known as dibenzylidene acetone (dba), is a constituent of some sun-protection materials and is used in organometallic chemistry as a metal ligand. It is easily made geometrically pure by a simple aldol reaction—again, reversible Michael addition equilibrates any \(Z\) product to \(E\).

Equilibration of alkenes not conjugated with carbonyl groups requires different reagents

Iodine will add reversibly not only to Michael acceptors but also to most other alkenes. It can therefore be a useful reagent for equilibrating double bond geometrical isomers.
Some Japanese chemists needed the \( E,E \)-diene below for a synthesis of a neurotoxic compound that they had isolated from poison dart frogs. Unfortunately, their synthesis (which used a Wittig reaction—Chapter 14 and later in this chapter) gave only 4:1 \( E \) selectivity at one of the double bonds. To produce pure \( E,E \)-diene, they equilibrated the \( E,Z \)-diene to \( E,E \) by treating with iodine and irradiating with a sun-lamp.

![Diagram of the synthesis process]

### The chemistry of vision

The human eye uses a \( cis \)-alkene, 11-cis-retinal, to detect light, and a \( cis \)--\( trans \) isomerism reaction is at the heart of the chemical mechanism by which we see. The light-sensitive pigment in the cells of the retina is an imine, formed by reaction of 11-cis-retinal with a lysine residue of a protein, opsin. Absorption of light by the opsin--retinal compound, known as rhodopsin, promotes one of the electrons in the conjugated polyene system to an antibonding orbital. Free rotation in this excited state allows the \( cis \) double bond to isomerize to \( trans \), and the conformational changes in the protein molecule that result trigger a cascade of reactions that ultimately leads to a nerve signal being sent to the brain.

![Diagram of the vision process]

### Using light to make \( Z \)-alkenes from \( E \)-alkenes

Light allows the equilibration of the two isomers of an alkene, by promoting a \( \pi \) electron into the \( \pi^* \) orbital, but does not necessarily favour either isomer. One difference between \( cis \)- and \( trans \)-alkenes is that the \( trans \)-alkenes often absorb light better than the \( cis \)-alkenes do. They absorb light of a higher wavelength and they absorb more of it. This is particularly true of alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups. Steric hindrance often forces the \( cis \)-alkene to twist about the \( \sigma \) bond joining the
alkene to the carbonyl group and conjugation is then less efficient. A good example is the enone we saw a few pages back. Aldol condensation of cyclohexanone and benzaldehyde gives pure \(E\)-alkene. Irradiation with longer-wavelength UV light equilibrates this to the \(Z\)-alkene in excellent yield.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{PhCHO} \\
\text{NaOH} & \quad \text{hv} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\(E\)-enone \(\xrightarrow{\text{hv}}\) \(Z\)-enone; 85\% yield

It is not possible for the benzene ring and the enone system to be planar in the \(Z\)-enone and so they twist and conjugation is not as good as in the \(E\)-enone. Longer-wavelength light is absorbed only by the \(E\)-enone, which is continually equilibrated back to the excited state. Eventually, all the \(E\)-enone is converted to the \(Z\)-enone, which is not as efficiently excited by the light.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{hv} \\
\text{O} & \quad \pi-\pi^* \text{ excited state} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{steric clash} \\
\end{align*}
\]

This twisting and loss of conjugation is also the cause of the very slow epoxidation of the \(Z\)-enone discussed above. Conjugate addition is obviously best when there is good conjugation between the alkene and the carbonyl group. The rate-determining step in the epoxidation is conjugate addition.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \\
\text{NaOH} & \quad \text{MeOH} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{slow conjugate addition to } \text{Z-alkene} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Predominantly \(E\)-alkenes can be formed by stereoselective elimination reactions**

In Chapter 19 you saw that E1 elimination reactions usually give mainly \(E\)-alkenes (there’s an example earlier in this chapter) because the transition state leading to an \(E\) double bond is lower in energy than that leading to a \(Z\) double bond. In other words, E1 reactions are stereoselective, and their stereoselectivity is **kinetically controlled**. E2 reactions are similar if there is a choice of protons that can be removed. Treatment of 2-pentyl bromide with base gives about three times as much \(E\)-alkene as \(Z\)-alkene because the transition state leading to the \(E\)-alkene, which resembles conformation (i) below, is lower in energy than the transition state leading to the \(Z\)-alkene, resembling conformation (ii). Again, this is kinetic control.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Br} & \quad \text{NaOEt} \\
\text{2-bromopentane} & \quad \text{51\%} \\
\text{\(E\)-alkene} & \quad \text{18\%} \\
\text{\(Z\)-alkene} & \quad \text{31\%} \\
\text{terminal alkene} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

\text{H and Br must be anti-periplanar for elimination to occur}

\text{this conformation disfavoured by steric hindrance}
However, in neither this E2 reaction nor the E1 reaction on p. 000 is the stereoselectivity very good, and in this reaction the regioselectivity is bad too. The root of the problem is that one of the groups lost is always H (either as HBr or H₂O in these cases), and in most organic molecules there are lots of Hs to choose from!

Both stereo- and regioselectivity are better in E1cB reactions, such as the opening of this unsaturated lactone in base. The double bond inside the ring remains Z but the new one, formed as the ring opens, prefers the E geometry. The transition state for the elimination step already has a product-like shape and prefers this for simple steric reasons.

The Julia olefination is regiospecific and connective

This reaction is an elimination—the phenylsulfonyl (PhSO₂) and benzoate (PhCO₂) groups in the starting material are lost to form the double bond—but it is completely regioselective. Only the alkene shown is formed, with the double bond joining the two carbons that carried the PhSO₂ and PhCO₂ groups. This elimination is promoted by a reducing agent, usually sodium amalgam (a solution of sodium metal in mercury) and works for a variety of compounds providing they have a phenylsulfonyl group adjacent to a leaving group. It is called the Julia olefination after Marc Julia (1922–) who did his PhD at Imperial College, London, with Sir Derek Barton and now works at the École Normale in Paris and is best known for his work on sulfones.

The most common leaving groups are carboxylates such as acetate or benzoate, and the starting materials are very easily made. As you will see in Chapter 46, sulfones are easily deprotonated next to the sulfur atom by strong bases like butyllithium or Grignard reagents, and the sulfur-stabilized anion will add to aldehydes. A simple esterification step, which can be done in the same reaction vessel as the addition, introduces the acetate or benzoate group. This is how the starting material for the elimination above was made.

The short sequence of steps (starting with sulfone plus aldehyde and leading through to alkene) is known as the Julia olefination. It is our first example of a connective double bond synthesis—in other words, the double bond is formed by joining two separate molecules together (the aldehyde...
The Julia olefination is regiospecific and connective

and sulfone). You will be reminded of the most important connective double-bond forming reaction, the Wittig reaction, later in the chapter.

**The Julia olefination is stereoselective**

Here are the results of a few simple Julia olefinations.

Notice that deprotonations can be with BuLi or EtMgBr and that the acylation step works with acetic anhydride or with benzoyl chloride. As you can see, they are all highly stereoselective for the \( E \)-isomer, and the Julia olefination is one of the most important ways of making \( E \) double bonds connectively.

**Further example—preparation of sphingosine**

In 1987, American chemists were studying the synthesis of some biological molecules using enzymes. One of the compounds they were interested in was sphingosine, an amino-alcohol that forms the backbone of sphingolipids (fat-like molecules found in cell membranes). They wanted to compare the enzyme-produced material with an authentic sample, which they made by using a Julia olefination to introduce the \( E \) double bond.

**The Julia olefination is stereoselective and not stereospecific**

The reason for the \( E \) selectivity lies in the mechanism of the elimination. The first step is believed to be two successive electron transfers from the reducing agent (sodium metal) to the sulfone. Firstly, a radical anion is formed, with one extra unpaired electron, and then a dianion, with two extra electrons and therefore a double negative charge. The dianion fragments to a transient carbanion that expels acetate or benzoate to give the double bond.
We know that there must be an anion intermediate because the elimination is not stereospecific—in other words, it doesn’t matter which diastereoisomer of the starting material you use (all of the examples in this section have been mixtures of diastereoisomers) you always get the E-alkene product. The intermediate anion must have a long enough lifetime to choose its conformation for elimination.

Stereospecific eliminations can give pure single isomers of alkenes

You met a stereospecific elimination in Chapter 19. The requirement for the H and the Br to be anti-periplanar in the E2 transition state meant that the two diastereoisomers of this alkyl bromide eliminated to alkenes with different double bond geometries (p. 000).

However, reactions like this are of limited use—their success relies on the base’s lack of choice of protons to attack: provide an alternative H and we are back with the situation in the reaction on p. 000. Logic dictates, therefore, that only trisubstituted double bonds can be made stereospecifically in this way, because the reaction must not have a choice of hydrogen atoms to participate in the elimination. The answer is, of course, to move away from eliminations involving H, as we did with the Julia olefination. We shall look at this type of reaction for much of the rest of this chapter.

The Peterson reaction is a stereospecific elimination

There are many reactions in organic chemistry in which an Me₃Si group acts like a proton—Chapter 47 will detail some more reactions of silicon-containing compounds. Just as acidic protons are removed by bases, silicon is readily removed by hard nucleophiles, particularly F⁻ or RO⁻, and this can promote an elimination. An example is shown here.
The reaction is known as the **Peterson reaction**. It is rather like those we discussed right at the beginning of this chapter—eliminations of alcohols under acidic conditions to give alkenes. But, unlike those reactions, it is fully regioselective (like the Julia olefination), and so is particularly useful for making double bonds where other elimination methods might give the wrong regioisomer or mixtures of regioisomers. In this next example only one product is formed, in high yield, and it has an exocyclic double bond. Just think what would have happened without the silicon atom (ignore the one attached to the oxygen—that’s just a protecting group). This compound is, in fact, an intermediate in a synthetic route to the important anticancer compound Taxol.

You’ve probably spotted that this is another connective alkene synthesis. The Peterson reaction is particularly useful for making terminal or exocyclic double bonds connectively because the starting material (the magnesium derivative shown above) is easily made from available $\text{Me}_3\text{SiCH}_2\text{Br}$. The reaction is also stereospecific, because it is an E2 elimination proceeding via an anti-periplanar transition state. In principle, it can therefore be used to make single geometrical isomers of alkenes, the geometry depending on the relative stereochemistry of the starting material. However, this use of the Peterson reaction is limited by difficulties in making diastereoisomerically pure starting materials.

There is another, complementary version of the Peterson reaction that uses base to promote the elimination. The starting materials are the same as for the acid-promoted Peterson reaction. When base (such as sodium hydride or potassium hydride) is added, the hydroxyl group is deprotonated, and the oxyanion attacks the silicon atom *intramolecularly*. Elimination takes place this time via a *syn-periplanar* transition state—it has to because the oxygen and the silicon are now bonded together, and it is the strength of this bond that drives the elimination forward.
In Chapter 19 you saw that anti-periplanar transition states are usually preferred for elimination reactions because this alignment provides the best opportunity for good overlap between the orbitals involved. Syn-periplanar transition states can, however, also lead to elimination—and this particular case should remind you of the Wittig reaction (Chapter 14) with a four-membered cyclic intermediate.

The two versions of the Peterson reaction give opposite geometrical isomers from the same diastereoisomer of the starting material, so from any single diastereomer of hydroxy silane we can make either geometrical isomer of alkene product by choosing whether to use acid or base. The problem is still making those single diastereoisomers!

**Perhaps the most important way of making alkenes—the Wittig reaction**

The Wittig reaction is another member of the class we have been talking about—it’s an elimination that does not involve loss of H. You met it in Chapter 14, where we gave a brief outline of its mechanism.

Conceptually, the Wittig reaction is like the base-promoted Peterson reaction: it is a syn elimination, driven by the strength of an oxygen–heteroatom bond, but in this case the heteroatom is phosphorus. But, unlike the other eliminations described above, the elimination step of the Wittig reaction occurs only from an intermediate and not from isolated starting materials. This intermediate is made in situ in the reaction and decomposes spontaneously: the Wittig reaction is therefore another connective alkene-forming reaction but, unlike either the Julia or Peterson reactions, it goes in one step, and for this reason is much more widely used.

We must start at the beginning. Phosphorus atoms, especially those that are positively charged or that carry electronegative substituents, can increase the acidity of protons adjacent to them on the carbon skeleton. Phosphonium salts (made in a manner analogous to the formation of ammonium salts from amines, in other words, by reaction of an alkyl halide with a phosphine) can therefore be deprotonated by a moderately strong base to give a species known as a ylid, carrying (formally) a positive and a negative charge on adjacent atoms. Ylids can alternatively be represented as doubly bonded species, called phosphoranes.

Ylids can be isolated, but are usually used in reactions immediately they are formed. They are nucleophilic species that will attack the carbonyl groups of aldehydes or ketones, generating the four-membered ring oxaphosphetane intermediates. Oxaphosphetanes are unstable: they undergo elimination to give an alkene (65% yield for this particular example) with a phosphine oxide as a by-product. The phosphorus–oxygen double bond is extremely strong and it is this that drives the whole reaction forward.
Stereoselectivity in the Wittig reaction depends on the ylid

The Wittig reactions below were all used in the synthesis of natural products. You will notice that some reactions are \(Z\) selective and some are \(E\) selective. Look closer, and you see that the stereoselectivity is dependent on the nature of the substituent on the carbon atom of the ylid.

We can divide ylids into two types: those with conjugating or anion-stabilizing substituents adjacent to the negative charge (such as carbonyl groups) and those without. We call the first sort stabilized ylids, because the negative charge is stabilized not only by the phosphorus atom but by the adjacent functional group—we can draw an alternative enolate-type structure to represent this extra stabilization. The rest we call unstabilized ylids.

The general rule is:
- with stabilized ylids the Wittig reaction is \(E\) selective
- with unstabilized ylids the Wittig reaction is \(Z\) selective

The \(Z\) selective Wittig reaction

The \(Z\) selectivity observed with simple alkyl R groups is nicely complementary to the \(E\) selectivity observed in the Julia olefination. This complementarity was exploited by some chemists who wanted to make isomers of capsaicin (the compound that gives chilli peppers their ‘hotness’) after suggestions that capsaicin might be carcinogenic.
The key intermediates in the synthesis of the \( E \)- and the \( Z \)-isomers of capsaicin were the \( E \) and \( Z \) unsaturated esters shown below. By using a Wittig reaction with an unstabilized ylid it was possible to make the \( Z \)-isomer selectively, whilst the Julia olefination gave the \( E \)-isomer.

How can the \( Z \) selectivity in Wittig reactions of unstabilized ylids be explained? We have a more complex situation in this reaction than we had for the other eliminations we considered, because we have two separate processes to consider: formation of the oxaphosphetane and decomposition of the oxaphosphetane to the alkene. The elimination step is the easier one to explain—it is stereospecific, with the oxygen and phosphorus departing in a syn-periplanar transition state (as in the base-catalysed Peterson reaction). Addition of the ylid to the aldehyde can, in principle, produce two diastereomers of the intermediate oxaphosphetane. Provided that this step is irreversible, then the stereospecificity of the elimination step means that the ratio of the final alkene geometrical isomers will reflect the stereoselectivity of this addition step. This is almost certainly the case when \( R \) is not conjugating or anion-stabilizing; the \( \text{syn} \) diastereoisomer of the oxaphosphetane is formed preferentially, and the predominantly \( \text{Z} \)-alkene that results reflects this. The \( \text{Z} \) selective Wittig reaction therefore consists of a kinetically controlled stereoselective first step followed by a stereospecific elimination from this intermediate.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{alkene geometry is determined by the stereoselectivity of} \\
\text{the oxaphosphetane-forming step, which gives this} \\
\text{diastereoisomer of oxaphosphetane as the kinetic product}
\end{align*}
\]

**Why is formation of the \( \text{syn} \) oxaphosphetane favoured?**

This question is the subject of much debate, because the mechanism by which the oxaphosphetane is formed is not entirely understood. One possible explanation relies on rules of orbital symmetry, which you will meet in Chapters 35 and 36—we need not explain them in detail here but suffice it to say that there is good reason to believe that, if the ylid and carbonyl compound react together to give the oxaphosphetane in one step, they will do so by approaching one another at right angles. Keeping the large substituents apart produces a transition state like that shown below, which (correctly) predicts that the oxaphosphetane will have syn...
The $E$ selective Wittig reaction

Stabilized ylids, that is ylids whose anion is stabilized by further conjugation, usually within a carbonyl group, give $E$-alkenes on reaction with aldehydes. These ylids are also enolates and were discussed in Chapter 27.

These stabilized ylids really are stable—this one, for example, can be recrystallized from water. This stability means though that they are not very reactive, and often it is better not to use the phosphonium salt but a phosphonate instead.

Phosphonate esters can be deprotonated with sodium hydride or alkoxide anions to give enolate-type anions that react well with aldehydes or ketones to give $E$-alkenes. Alkene-forming reactions with phosphonates are called Horner–Wadsworth–Emmons (or Horner–Emmons, Wadsworth–Emmons, or even Horner–Wittig) reactions. This example is a reaction that was used by some Japanese chemists in the synthesis of polyzonimine, a natural insect repellent produced by millipedes.

So why the change to $E$ stereoselectivity when the ylid is stabilized? Again, chemists disagree about the details but a likely explanation is that the extra stability given to the ylid starting materials makes the reaction leading to the oxaphosphetane reversible. Stereoselectivity in this step is therefore no longer kinetically controlled but is thermodynamically controlled: reversal to starting materials provides a mechanism by which the oxaphosphetane diastereoisomers can interconvert. Providing the rate of interconversion is faster than the rate of elimination to alkene, the stereospecific step will no longer reflect the initial kinetic ratio of oxaphosphetane diastereoisomers. It is not unreasonable to suppose that the thermodynamically more stable of the oxaphosphetanes is the trans-diastereoisomer, with the two bulky groups on opposite sides of the ring, and that elimination of this gives $E$-alkene. What is more, the rate of elimination to give an $E$-alkene ought to be significantly faster than the rate of elimination to give a $Z$-alkene, simply by virtue of steric crowding in their respective transition states. The anti diastereoisomer is therefore ‘siphoned off’ to give $E$-alkene more rapidly than the syn diastereoisomer gives $Z$-alkene. Meanwhile equilibration of the two oxaphosphetane diastereomers via starting material replenishes the supply of anti diastereoisomer, and virtually only $E$-alkene is produced.
An \( E,Z \)-diene by two successive Wittig reactions

The female silkworm moth attracts mates by producing a pheromone known as bombykol. Bombykol is an \( E,Z \)-diene, and in this synthesis (dating from 1977) two successive Wittig reactions exploit the stereoselectivity obtained with stabilized and unstabilized ylids, respectively, to control the stereochemistry of the product.

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{bombykol} & \text{CO}_2\text{Me} \\
&92\% \text{ yield} & \text{OH} \\
&\text{92\% yield} & \text{79\% yield}
\end{align*}
\]

\( E \) - and \( Z \) -alkenes can be made by stereoselective addition to alkynes

In this last section of the chapter we shall leave elimination reactions to look at addition reactions. Alkynes react with some reducing agents stereoselectively to give either the \( Z \) double bond or the \( E \) double bond. Some of these reactions were described briefly in Chapter 24.

\( Z \) -selective reduction of alkynes uses Lindlar’s catalyst

This pure \( Z \)-alkene was needed for studies on the mechanism of a rearrangement reaction. In Chapter 24 you met catalytic hydrogenation as a means of reducing alkenes to alkanes, and we introduced Lindlar’s catalyst (palladium and lead acetate on a support of calcium carbonate) as a means of controlling chemoselectivity so that alkynes could be reduced to alkenes. What we did not emphasize then was that the two hydrogen atoms add to the alkyne in a \( \text{syn} \) fashion and the alkene produced is a \( Z \)-alkene. The stereoselectivity arises because two hydrogen atoms, bound to the catalyst, are delivered simultaneously to the alkyne.

You can compare this method of forming \( Z \)-alkenes directly with the Wittig reaction in these two syntheses of another insect pheromone, that of the Japanese beetle. In this case, the Wittig reaction is not entirely \( Z \)-selective, and it generates some \( E \)-isomer. Lindlar-catalysed reduction, on the other hand, generates pure \( Z \)-alkene.

For a biologically active sample of this pheromone, it is better that the stereochemistry is the same as that of the natural compound—the \( E \) double bond isomer is more or less inactive. Even more
important is the configuration at the chiral centre in the pheromone—the wrong enantiomer is not only inactive, but it also inhibits the male beetles’ response to the natural stereoisomer. In Chapter 45 we shall talk about ways of making single enantiomers selectively.

**E selective reduction of alkynes uses sodium in liquid ammonia**

The best way of ensuring *anti* addition of hydrogen across any triple bond is to treat the alkyne with sodium in liquid ammonia.

![E selective reduction of alkynes](https://example.com/sodium_reduction)

The sodium donates an electron to the LUMO of the triple bond (one of the two orthogonal $\pi^*$ orbitals). The resulting radical anion can pick up a proton from the ammonia solution to give a vinyl radical. A second electron, supplied again by the sodium, gives an anion that adopts the more stable *trans* geometry. A final proton quench by a second molecule of ammonia or by an added proton source (*t*-butanol is often used, as in the Birch reduction) forms the *E*-alkene.

![E selective reduction of alkynes reaction](https://example.com/sodium_reduction_reaction)

An alternative, and more widely used, method is to reduce alkynes with LiAlH$_4$. This reaction works only if there is a hydroxy or an ether functional group near to the alkyne, because it relies on delivery of the reducing agent to the triple bond through complexation to this oxygen atom.

![LiAlH$_4$ reduction](https://example.com/lialh4_reduction)

Making alkenes by addition to alkynes offers two distinct advantages. Firstly, although the reaction is not connective in the sense that the Wittig and Julia reactions are, the starting materials can often be made straightforwardly by alkylation of alkynyl anions. Secondly, the same alkyne can be used to make either *E* - or *Z*-alkene—an advantage shared with the Peterson reaction but here the starting material is much easier to make. In some early work on sphingosine (a constituent of cell membranes), some Swiss chemists needed to make both *E* - and *Z*-isomers of the naturally occurring compound. This was an easy task once they had made the alkyne.

![LiAlH$_4$ reduction](https://example.com/lialh4_reduction)

**Addition of nucleophiles to alkynes**

This rarer, and rather surprising, approach to *Z*-alkenes sometimes gives excellent results particularly in the addition of nucleophiles to butadiyne. The base-catalysed addition of methanol gives an
excellent yield of Z-1-methoxybut-1-en-3-yne. This reaction is so easy to do that the product is available commercially.

Notice that methanol adds once only; you would not expect nucleophiles to add to a simple alkyne and it is the conjugation that makes addition possible. Methoxide ion adds to one of the alkenes to give a conjugated anion.

The anion is linear with the negative charge delocalized along the conjugated system and the charge is therefore in a p orbital in the plane of the molecule. The other p orbital is involved in \( \pi \) bonding as well but at right angles to the plane of the molecule. When the anion reacts with a molecule of methanol, protonation occurs on the lobe of the p orbital away from the MeO group and the Z-alkene is formed. This product is mentioned in other chapters of the book: now you know why it is available.

Here is a summary of the most important methods for making double bonds stereoselectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To make cis (Z)-alkenes</th>
<th>To make trans (E)-alkenes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wittig reaction of unstabilized ylid</td>
<td>Wittig reaction of stabilized ylid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constrain the alkene in a ring</td>
<td>Equilibration to the more stable isomer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syn addition of hydrogen across an alkyne</td>
<td>Julia olefination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peterson elimination</td>
<td>Simple unselective elimination reactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trans selective reduction of alkyne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peterson elimination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this chapter we have dealt for the first time with the problem of producing compounds as single stereoisomers—the stereoisomers concerned were geometrical isomers of alkenes. The next two chapters will look in more detail at making stereoisomers, but we shall move out of two dimensions into three and consider reactions that have diastereoselectivity. The two subjects are closely related, since often single diastereoisomers are made by addition reactions of single geometrical isomers of double bonds and, as you saw with the Peterson and Wittig reactions, single diastereoisomers can lead stereospecifically to single geometrical isomers.
1 Deduc the structure of the product of this reaction from the spectra and explain the stereochemistry. Compound A has δH 0.95 p.p.m. (6H, d, J 7 Hz), 1.60 p.p.m. (3H, d, J 5 Hz), 2.65 p.p.m. (1H, double septuplet, J 4 and 7 Hz), 5.10 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J 10 and 4 Hz), and 5.35 p.p.m. (1H, dq, J 10 and 5 Hz).

2 A single diastereoisomer of an insect pheromone was prepared in the following way. Which isomer is formed and why? Outline a synthesis of one other isomer.

3 How would you prepare samples of both geometrical isomers of this compound?

4 Decomposition of this diazocompound in methanol gives an unstable alkene A (C₈H₁₄O) whose NMR spectrum contains these signals: δH 3.50 p.p.m. (3H, s), 5.50 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J 17.9 and 7.9 Hz), 5.80 p.p.m. (1H, ddd, J 17.9, 9.2, and 4.3 Hz), 4.20 p.p.m. (1H, m), and 1.3–2.7 p.p.m. (8H, m). What is its structure and geometry? You are not expected to work out a mechanism for the reaction.

5 Why do these reactions give different alkene geometries?

6 Here is a synthesis of a prostaglandin analogue. Suggest reagents for the steps marked '?', give mechanisms for those not so marked, and explain any control of alkene geometry.
10 Treatment of this epoxide with base gives the same E-alkene regardless of the stereochemistry of the epoxide. Comment.

11 Which alkene would be formed in each of the following reactions? Explain your answer mechanistically.

12 Comment on the difference between these two reactions.

13 Give mechanisms for these stereospecific reactions on single geometrical isomers of alkenes.
Introduction

From time to time throughout the book we have spread before your eyes some wonderful structures. Some have been very large and complicated (such as palytoxin, p. 000) and some small but difficult to believe (such as tetra-\(t\)-butyl tetrahedrane, p. 000). They all have one thing in common. Their structures were determined by spectroscopic methods and everyone believes them to be true. Among the most important organic molecules today is Taxol, an anticancer compound from yew trees. Though it is a ‘modern’ compound, in that chemists became interested in it only in the 1990s, its structure was actually determined in 1971.

No one argued with this structure because it was determined by reliable spectroscopic methods—NMR plus an X-ray crystal structure of a derivative. This was not always the case. Go back another 25 years to 1946 and chemists argued about structures all the time. An undergraduate and an NMR spectrometer can solve in a few minutes structural problems that challenged teams of chemists for years half a century ago. In this chapter we will combine the knowledge presented systematically in Chapters 3, 11, and 15, add your more recently acquired knowledge of stereochemistry (Chapters 16, 18, and 31), and show you how structures are actually determined in all their stereochemical detail using all the evidence available.
In general, we will not look at structures as complex as Taxol. But it is worth a glance at this stage to see what was needed. The basic carbon skeleton contains one eight- and two six-membered rings. These can be deduced from proton and carbon NMR. There is a four-membered heterocyclic ring—a feature that caused a lot of argument over the structure of penicillin. The four-membered cyclic ether in Taxol is easily deduced from proton NMR as we will see soon. There are ten functional groups (at least—it depends on how you count) including six carbonyl groups. These are easily seen in the carbon NMR and IR spectra. Finally, there is the stereochemistry. There are eleven stereogenic centres, which were deduced mostly from the proton NMR and the X-ray crystal structure of a closely related compound (Taxol itself is not crystalline).

New structures are being determined all the time. A recent issue of one important journal (Tetrahedron Letters No. 14 of 1996) has a paper on Taxol but also reports the discovery and structure determination of the two new natural products in the margin. Both compounds were discovered in ocean sponges, one from Indonesia and one from a fungus living in a sponge common in the Pacific and Indian oceans. Both structures were determined largely by NMR and in neither case was an X-ray structure necessary. We hope you will feel by the end of this chapter that you can tackle structural problems of this order of complexity with some confidence. You will need practice, and in this area above all it is vital that you try plenty of problems. Use the examples in the text as worked problems: try to solve as much as you can before reading the answer—you can do this only the first time you read because next time you will have your memory as a prompt.

The stereochemistry at two of the stereogenic centres of chlorocarolide was unknown when this structure was published—stereochemistry is one of the hardest aspects of structure to determine. Nonetheless, NMR is second only to X-ray in what it tells us of stereochemistry, and we shall look at what coupling constants (\(J\) values) reveal about configuration, conformation, and reactivity. The first aspect we consider is the determination of conformation in six-membered rings.

**\(3J\) values vary with H–C–C–H dihedral angle**

In the last chapter, we looked at some stereospecific eliminations to give double bonds, and you know that E2 elimination reactions occur best when there is an anti-periplanar arrangement between the proton and the leaving group.

In the NMR spectrum, coupling between protons arises from through-bond and not through-space interactions: trans coupling in alkenes is bigger than cis coupling (see Chapter 11, p. 000). So the same arrangement that leads to the best reaction ought also to lead to the largest coupling constant. In other words, if we replace ‘Br’ in the diagram with a second hydrogen atom but keep the orbital alignment the same, we ought to get the biggest possible coupling constant for a saturated system.

The usual description of this situation is in terms of the dihedral angle between the H–C–C–H bonds. The dihedral angle is obvious in the Newman projection as it is the angle between the two C–H bonds projected on a plane orthogonal to the C–C bond. In a Newman projection this plane is the plane of the paper, and here the angle is 180°.
When the dihedral angle is zero, the two C–H bonds are again in the same plane but not perfectly parallel. The coupling constant is again large, but not so large as in the previous case. In fact, the two arrangements are very like cis and trans double bonds, but the C atoms are tetrahedral not trigonal.

You may guess that, when the dihedral angle is 90°, the coupling constant is zero. What happens in between these extremes was deduced by Karplus in the 1960s and the relationship is usually known as the Karplus equation. It is easiest to understand from a graph of J against dihedral angle.

Examine this graph carefully and note the basic features as you will need them as we go through the chapter. These features are:

- Coupling is largest at 180° when the orbitals of the two C–H bonds are perfectly parallel.
- Coupling is nearly as large at 0° when the orbitals are in the same plane but not parallel.
- Coupling is zero when the dihedral angle is 90°—orthogonal orbitals do not interact.
- The curve is flattened around 0°, 90°, and 180°—J varies little in these regions from compound to compound.
- The curve slopes steeply at about 60° and 120°—J varies a lot in this region with small changes of angle and from compound to compound.
- Numerical values of J vary with substitution, ring size, etc., but the Karplus relationship still works—it gives good relative values.

These ideas come to life in the determination of conformation in six-membered rings. Trans diaxial hydrogen atoms are aligned with a dihedral angle of 180° and give the largest J values.

The other two situations, where one or both hydrogen atoms are equatorial, both have angles of about 60°, though axial/equatorial couplings are usually slightly larger than equatorial/equatorial ones.

Now for some illustrations. The simple cyclohexyl ester has just one substituent, which we expect to be equatorial (Chapter 18). The black hydrogen therefore has four neighbours—two axial Hs and two equatorial Hs. We expect to see a triplet from each and that the axial/axial coupling constant will be large. In fact, there is a 1H signal at δ 4.91, it is a tt (triplet of triplets) with J = 8.8 and 3.8 Hz. Only an axial H can have couplings as big as 8.8 Hz, so now we know that the ester is equatorial.

By contrast, the next ester, which also has only one substituent, has a 1H signal at δ 6.0 p.p.m. which is a simple triplet with J = 3.2 Hz. With no large couplings this cannot be an axial proton and the substituent must now be axial. It so happens that the small equatorial/axial and equatorial/equatorial couplings to the green hydrogens are the same. This is not so surprising as the dihedral angles are both 60°.

None of the dihedral angles in a six-membered ring are 90°, but in some bicyclic systems they are. Norbornane-type structures (bicyclo[2.2.0]heptanes), for example, typically have couplings of 0 Hz between the protons shown in black and green because the H–C–C–H dihedral angle is 90°.

The determination of conformation by NMR may more importantly allow us to
determine configuration at the same time. This often occurs when there are two or more substituents on the ring. Here is a simple example: you saw in Chapter 18 that the reduction of 4-<i>t</i>-butylcyclohexanone can be controlled by choice of reagent to give either a cis or a trans alcohol. It is easy to tell them apart as the <i>t</i>-butyl group will always be equatorial.

The NMR spectrum of the green H is quite different in the two cases. Each has two identical axial neighbours and two identical equatorial neighbours (two are shown in black—there are two more at the front). Each green H appears as a triplet of triplets. In the cis alcohol both couplings are small (2.72 and 3.00 Hz) but in the trans alcohol the axial/axial coupling is much larger (11.1 Hz) than the axial/equatorial (4.3 Hz) coupling.

Hydrogenation of the double bond in this unsaturated acetal gives the saturated compound as a single isomer. But which one? Are the two substituents, Me and OEt, cis or trans?
The appearance of the two black hydrogens in the NMR spectrum reveals the answer and also shows what conformation the molecule adopts. There is a 1H signal at 3.95 p.p.m. (which is therefore next to oxygen) and it is a double quartet. It must be the hydrogen next to the methyl group because of the quartet coupling. The quartet coupling constant has the ‘normal’ $J$ value of 6.5 Hz. The doublet coupling is 9 Hz and this is too large to be anything other than an axial/axial coupling. This hydrogen is axial.

There is another 1H signal at 4.40 p.p.m. (next to two oxygens) which is a double doublet with $J = 9$ and 2 Hz). This must also be an axial proton as it shows an axial/axial (9 Hz) and an axial/equatorial coupling. We now know the conformation of the molecule.

Both black hydrogens are axial so both substituents are equatorial. That also means in this case that they are cis. But note that this is because they are both on the same, upper side of the ring, not because they are both equatorial! The hydrogen at the front has two neighbours—an axial (brown) H, $J = 9$, and an equatorial (green) H, $J = 2$ Hz. All this fits the Karplus relationship as expected. You may have spotted that the H at the back appears to be missing a small coupling to its equatorial neighbour. No doubt it does couple, but that small coupling is not noticed in the eight lines of the double quartet. Small couplings can easily be overlooked.

When this compound is allowed to stand in slightly acidic ethanol it turns into an isomer. This is the trans compound and its NMR spectrum is again very helpful. The proton next to the methyl group is more or less the same but the proton in between the two oxygen atoms is quite different. It is at 5.29 p.p.m. and is an unresolved signal of width about 5 Hz. In other words it has no large couplings and must be an equatorial proton. The conformation of the trans compound is shown in the margin.

Now for a surprising product, whose structure and stereochemistry can be determined by NMR. Normally, reaction of a symmetrical ketone such as acetone with an aromatic aldehyde and base gives a double aldol condensation product in good yield.

But in one particular case, the reaction between pentan-2-one and 4-chlorobenzaldehyde, a different product is formed. The mass spectrum shows that two aldehydes have reacted with one ketone as usual, but that only one molecule of water has been lost. Some of what we know about this compound is shown in the scheme.

The $^{13}$C NMR spectrum shows that there is one ketone carbonyl group, as expected, but no alkene carbons. There is only one set of $^{13}$C signals for the 4-Cl-phenyl ring and only two other carbons. This must mean that the molecule is symmetrical.

The three molecules must be joined up somewhere in the region marked. But how can we lose only one molecule of water and keep the symmetry?

The proton NMR spectrum gives the answer. Both methyl groups are still there, and they are identical, so we have two identical MeCH fragments. These CH protons (black) are double quartets so they have another neigh-
bour, the only remaining aliphatic proton (actually again two identical protons, in green) at $\delta_H 4.49$ p.p.m. These protons must be next to both oxygen and the aromatic ring to have such a large shift. But there is only one spare oxygen atom so the protons at 4.49 p.p.m. must be next to the same oxygen atom—the structure is shown on the previous page.

All that remains is the stereochemistry. There are four stereogenic centres but because of the symmetry only two structures are possible. Both methyl groups must be on the same side and both aryl rings must be on the same side.

The coupling constant between the hydrogen atoms is 10.4 Hz and so they must both be axial. This means that the molecule has this structure and it is the *trans* compound: all the substituents are equatorial so it is the most stable structure possible.

Only fully saturated six-membered rings are really chairs or boats. Even with one double bond in the ring, the ring is partly flattened: here we will look at an even flatter example. A unique antibiotic has been discovered in China and called ‘chuangxinmycin’ (meaning ‘a new kind of mycin’ where mycin = antibiotic). It is unique because it is a sulfur-containing indole: few natural products and no other antibiotics have this sort of structure.

The structure itself was easy to elucidate, but the stereochemistry of the two black hydrogens was not so obvious. The coupling constant ($^3J$) was 3.5 Hz. During attempts to synthesize the compound, Kozikowski hydrogenated the alkene ester below to give an undoubted *cis* product.

The $^3J$ coupling between the black hydrogens in this compound was 4.1 Hz, much the same as in the antibiotic and, when the ester group was hydrolysed in aqueous base, the main product was identical to natural chuangxinmycin. However, there was a minor product, which was the *trans* isomer. It had $^3J = 6.0$ Hz. Note how much smaller this value is than the axial/axial couplings of 10 Hz or more in saturated six-membered rings. The flattening of the ring reduces the dihedral angle, reducing the size of $J$.

**Stereocchemistry of fused rings**

Where rings are fused together (that is, have a common bond) determination of conformation may allow the determination of ring junction stereochemistry as well. Both isomers of this bicyclic ether were formed as a mixture and then separated.
One proton at the ring junctions appears clearly in the NMR spectrum as it is next to two oxygen atoms (shown in black on the conformational diagrams alongside). In one compound it is a doublet, $J = 7.1$ Hz, and in the other a doublet $J = 1.3$ Hz. Which is which?

The coupling is to the green proton in each case and the dihedral angles are 180° for the trans compound but only 60° for the cis one, so the smaller coupling belongs to the cis compound. We shall discuss below why the absolute values are so low: this example illustrates how much easier stereochemical determination is if you have both stereoisomers to compare.

In the next example, unlike the last one, it eventually proved possible to make both compounds in high yield. But first the story: reaction of an amino-ketone with benzaldehyde in base gave a mixture of diastereoisomers of the product.

In unravelling the mechanism of the reaction, chemists protected the nitrogen atom with Boc (Chapter 25) before the reaction with benzaldehyde and found that a new product was formed that was clearly an E-alkene as its NMR spectrum contained $\delta_{H} 6.73$ (1H, d, $J = 16$). This is too large a coupling constant even for axial/axial protons and can be only trans coupling across a double bond. They quickly deduced that a simple aldol reaction had happened.

When the Boc protecting group was removed, the cyclization reaction occurred under very mild conditions but now a single diastereoisomer of the product was formed.

This isomer had one proton that could be clearly seen at $\delta_{H} 4.27$ p.p.m.—well away from all the rest. This is the proton marked in black between nitrogen and the phenyl group. It was a double doublet with $J = 6$ and 4 Hz. Neither of these is large enough to be an axial/axial coupling but 6 Hz is within the range for axial/equatorial and 4 Hz for equatorial/equatorial coupling. The compound must have the conformation shown in the margin.

Treatment of this product with stronger base (NaOH) isomerized it to a compound in which the same proton, now at $\delta_{H} 3.27$ p.p.m., was again a double doublet but with $J = 10$ and 5 Hz. It is now an axial proton so the new conformation is this.

Notice that we have confidently assigned the configuration of these compounds without ever being able to ‘see’ the yellow proton at the ring junction. Since nitrogen can invert rapidly, we know that this decalin-like structure will adopt the more stable trans arrangement at the ring junction.
The dihedral angle is not the only angle worth measuring

We should also consider how the two C–H bonds are spread out in space. The dihedral angle is what we see when we look down the spine of the book in our earlier analogy (p. 000)—now we want to look at the pages in the normal way, at right angles to the spine, as if we were going to read the book. We can show what we mean by fixing the dihedral angle at 0° (the C–H bonds are in the same place) and looking at the variation of $J$ with the ring size of cyclic alkenes.

The wider apart the hydrogens are spread, the smaller the coupling constant. Remember, the dihedral angle stays the same (0°)—we are just varying the angle in the plane. A dramatic illustration of this comes with the product of dehydrogenation of the natural product guaiol with elemental sulfur. From the brown, smelly reaction mixture, guaiazulene, a deep blue oil, can be distilled.

Some assignments are clear. The 6H doublet and the 1H septuplet are the isopropyl group and the two 3H singlets belong to the two methyl groups—we can’t really say which belongs to which. The 1H singlet must be the green hydrogen as it has no neighbours and that leaves us with two coupled pairs of protons. One pair has $J = 4$ Hz and the other $J = 11$ Hz. We expect to find larger coupling where the H–C–C–H angle is smaller, so we can say that the 4 Hz coupling is between the pair on the five-membered ring and the 11 Hz coupling is between the pair on the seven-membered ring.

When protons on a double bond in a ring have neighbours on saturated carbon, the coupling constants are all small and for the same reason—the angles in the plane of the ring are approaching 90° even though the dihedral angles are 45–60° in these examples. A bizarre result of this is that the $^3J$ coupling between the red and black hydrogens is often about the same as the allylic ($^4J$) coupling between the red and the green hydrogens. An example follows in a moment.
**Vicinal \( (^3J) \) coupling constants in other ring sizes**

The ‘spreading out’ effect also affects vicinal \( (^3J) \) couplings in simple saturated rings. No other ring size has so well defined a conformation as that of the six-membered ring. We can still note useful trends as we move from 6 to 5 to 4 to 3. Briefly, in five-membered rings, cis and trans couplings are about the same. In four- and three-membered rings, cis couplings are larger than trans. But in all cases the absolute values of \( J \) go down as the ring gets smaller and the C–H bonds are ‘spread out’ more. Indeed, you can say that all coupling constants are smaller in small rings, as we shall see. We need to examine these cases a bit more.

**Three-membered rings**

Three-membered rings are flat with all bonds eclipsed so the dihedral angle is 0° for cis Hs and 109° for trans Hs. Looking at the Karplus curve, we expect the cis coupling to be larger, and it is. A good example is chrysanthemic acid, which is part of the pyrethrin group of insecticides found in the pyrethrum plant. Both cis and trans chrysanthemic acids are important.

In both isomers the coupling between the green proton on the ring and its red neighbour on the double bond is 8 Hz. In the cis compound, the green proton is a triplet so the cis coupling in the ring is also 8 Hz. In the trans compound it is a double doublet with the second coupling, trans across the ring to the black H, of 5 Hz.

The most important three-membered rings are the epoxides. You saw in Chapter 11 (p. 000) that electronegative atoms reduce coupling constants by withdrawing electron density from the bonds that transmit the coupling ‘information’. This means that epoxide couplings are very small—much smaller than those of their closely related alkenes, for example. Compare the four coupling constants in the diagram: for the epoxide, all couplings are small, but cis coupling is larger than trans coupling. In alkenes, trans coupling is larger (Chapter 11, p. 000). The table summarizes the coupling constants for alkenes, epoxides, and cyclopropanes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coupling constants ( J ), Hz</th>
<th>Stereochemistry</th>
<th>Alkene</th>
<th>Cyclopropane</th>
<th>Epoxide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cis</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans</td>
<td>14–18</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cerulenin**

The natural product cerulenin is an antibiotic containing a cis epoxide. The coupling constant between the black hydrogens is 5.5 Hz.

The compound has been made from an unsaturated lactone by epoxidation and ring opening. Follow what happens to the coupling constant between the black hydrogens as this sequence develops.

\[ \text{cis J} = 6 \text{ Hz} \]
\[ \text{trans J} = 2.5 \text{ Hz} \]
\[ \text{cis J} = 5.5 \text{ Hz} \]

The cis coupling in the alkene is small because it is in a five-membered ring. It gets smaller in the bicyclic epoxide because the black Hs are now in both five- and three-membered rings and both are next to oxygen, but it gets larger in cerulenin itself because the five-membered ring has been opened.
Four-membered rings

A similar situation exists with four-membered rings—the cis coupling is larger than the trans but they are generally both smaller than those in larger rings. A good example is the amino acid in the margin, the skeleton of the penicillins. The NMR spectrum contains three 1H signals in the middle regions. There is a singlet at δH 4.15 p.p.m. that clearly belongs to the isolated green proton and two doublets at δH 4.55 and 5.40 p.p.m. that must belong to the black protons. The coupling constant between them is 5 Hz and they are cis-related.

There are now large numbers of β-lactam antibiotics known and one family has the opposite (trans) stereochemistry around the four-membered ring. The typical member is thienamycin. We will analyse the spectrum in a moment, but first look at the differences—apart from stereochemistry—between this structure and the last. The sulfur atom is now outside the five-membered ring, the acid group is on a double bond in the same ring, and the amino group has gone from the β-lactam to be replaced by a hydroxyalkyl side chain.

Turning to the spectrum and the key question of stereochemistry, this is what the Merck discoverers said in their original article: \( ^{1}H \) NMR spectra of thienamycin (and derivatives) . . . show small vicinal coupling constants \( J \leq 3 \text{ Hz} \) for the two β-lactam hydrogens. Past experience with penicillins . . . shows the cis relationship of the β-lactam hydrogens to be always associated with the larger coupling.' As we have just seen penicillins have \( J \sim 5 \text{ Hz} \) for these hydrogens.

The NMR spectrum of a thienamycin derivative with protecting groups on the amine and carboxylic acids is shown below. Try your hand at interpreting it before you read the explanation below. Your aim is to find the coupling constant across the four-membered ring.

The simple answer is 2.5 Hz. The signals at 3.15 and 4.19 p.p.m. are the protons on the β-lactam ring and the 9 Hz extra coupling is to the CH₂ in the five-membered ring. If you went into this spectrum in detail you may have been worried about the 12.5 and especially the 18 Hz couplings. These are \( ^{2}J \) (geminal) couplings and we will discuss them in the next section.

The full assignment is shown above.

We should emphasize that a coupling constant of 5 or 2.5 Hz in isolation would not allow us to assign stereochemistry across the four-membered ring but, when we have both, we can say with confidence that the larger coupling is between cis Hs and the smaller coupling between trans Hs.
Five-membered rings

You can visualize this conformation of a five-membered ring simply as a chair cyclohexane with one of the atoms deleted. But this picture is simplistic because the five-membered ring flexes (rather than flips) and any of the carbon atoms can be the one out of the plane. All the hydrogen atoms are changing positions rapidly and the NMR spectrum ‘sees’ a time-averaged result. Commonly, both cis and trans couplings are about 8–9 Hz in this ring size.

The best illustration of the similarity of cis and trans couplings in five-membered rings is a structure that was incorrectly deduced for that very reason. Canadensolide is an antifungal compound found in a Penicillium mould. The gross structure was quite easy to deduce from the mass spectrum, which gave the formula C_{11}H_{14}O_{4} by exact mass determination; the infrared, which showed (at 1780 and 1667 cm\(^{-1}\)) a conjugated 5-ring lactone; and some aspects of the proton NMR. The proposed structure is shown alongside.

The stereochemistry of the ring junction Hs (shown in black and green) is not in question. They are certain to be cis as it is virtually impossible for two five-membered rings to be fused trans. The stereochemistry in question involves the third stereogenic centre on the left-hand ring. The coupling constant between the black and green Hs is 6.8 Hz, while that between the green and brown Hs is 4.5. Is this different enough for them to be trans? The original investigators decided that it was.

The mistake emerged when some Japanese chemists made this compound by an unambiguous route. The NMR spectrum was quite like that of canadensolide, but not the same. In particular, the coupling between the green and brown Hs was 1.5 Hz—quite different! So they also made the other possible diastereoisomer and found that it was identical to natural canadensolide. The details are in the margin.

An example of vicinal coupling in structural analysis: aflatoxins

We can bring together a lot of these points in the structure of one compound, the dreaded aflatoxin. Aflatoxin B\(_1\) is an example.

The four red protons on saturated carbons in the five-membered ring in the margin appear as two triplets: \(\delta_H 2.61\) (2H, t, \(J 5\) Hz) and \(\delta_H 3.42\) (2H, t, \(J 5\) Hz). The cis and trans couplings are the same. The yellow proton on the left, on the junction between the two five-membered cyclic ethers, is a doublet \(\delta_H 6.89\) (1H, d, \(J 7\) Hz). This is, of course, the cis coupling to the black hydrogen. The black hydrogen has this coupling too, but it appears as a doublet of triplets with a triplet coupling of 2.5 Hz: \(\delta_H 4.81\) (1H, dt, \(J 7, 2.5\) Hz). These small couplings can only be to the two green hydrogens: the \(3\,J\) and \(4\,J\) couplings are indeed the same.

Finally there is another strange coincidence—each green hydrogen appears as a triplet with 2.5 Hz couplings. Evidently, the cis coupling across the double bond is also 2.5 Hz. We expect cis coupling in a cyclopentene to be small (it was 4 Hz in the azulene on p. 000), but not that small—it must be the electronegative oxygen atom that is reducing the value still further.

### Coupling in furans

The size of coupling constants in five-membered rings containing oxygen is illustrated clearly in furfuraldehyde (furan-2-carboxaldehyde); note how small the couplings are.
Geminal $^{2}J$ coupling

For coupling to be seen, the two hydrogen atoms in question must have different chemical shifts. For $^{2}J$ couplings the two hydrogen atoms are on the same carbon atom, so in order to discuss geminal coupling we must first consider what leads the two hydrogens of a CH$_2$ group to have different shifts.

To introduce the topic, an example. It may seem to you that any six-membered ring might show different chemical shifts for axial and equatorial groups. But this doesn’t happen. Consider the result of this Robinson annelation reaction.

The two methyl groups at C4 give rise to a single signal in the $^{13}$C NMR at 27.46 p.p.m. Even though one of them is (pseudo)axial and one (pseudo)equatorial, the molecule exists in solution as a rapidly equilibrating mixture of two conformations. The axial green methyl in the left-hand conformer becomes equatorial in the right-hand conformer, and vice versa for the black methyl group. This exchange is rapid on the NMR time-scale and the equilibrium position is 50:50. Time averaging equalizes the chemical shifts of the two methyl groups, and the same is true for the CH$_2$ groups around the back of the ring.

However, the enone is not the only product of this reaction. A methanol adduct is also formed by Michael addition of methanol to the conjugated enone.

This product has two methyl signals at 26.1 and 34.7 p.p.m. If we examine the molecule by conformational analysis as we did for the first product we see a similar situation.

Similar but not the same. This time, the two conformations are not identical. One has the OMe group equatorial and the other has it axial. Even the two methyl groups do not entirely change places in the two conformations. True, the green methyl is axial on the left and equatorial on the right, but it has a gauche (dihedral angle 60°) relationship with the OMe group in both conformations. The black Me group is gauche to OMe on the left but anti-periplanar to the OMe group on the right. When two different conformations, in each of which the black and green methyl groups are different (that is, they don’t just change places), are averaged, the two methyl groups are not equalized.

Perhaps a simpler way to discover this is to use a configurational, rather than a conformational, diagram. The green methyl group is on the same face of the molecule as the MeO group, while the black methyl group is on the other face. No amount of ring flipping can make them the same. They are diastereotopic, a term we shall define shortly. And so are all three CH$_2$ groups in the ring. The green Hs are on the same face of the molecule as the MeO group while the black Hs are on the other face.

A proton NMR example confirms this, and here is one from an odd source. There are fungi that live on animal dung, called coprophilous fungi. They produce antifungal compounds, presumably to
fight off competition! Anyway, in 1995 two new antifungal compounds were discovered in a fungus living on lemming dung. They were named coniochaetones A and B and their structures were deduced with the usual array of mass and NMR spectra. The proton spectra, run on a 600 MHz machine, are shown below, and they reveal considerable detail.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coniochaetone A</th>
<th>Coniochaetone B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\delta_H$, p.p.m.</td>
<td>$\delta_H$, p.p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.41 (3H)</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.43 (1H)</td>
<td>ddd, $J 1.4$, 3.3, 7.6 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.70 (2H)</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.03 (1H)</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10 (1H)</td>
<td>dddd, $J 1.4$, 5.1, 9.4, 18 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.81 (1H)</td>
<td>ddd, $J 5.1$, 9.3, 18 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.77 (1H)</td>
<td>broad s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.69 (1H)</td>
<td>broad s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.21 (1H)$^a$</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$^a$ Exchanges with D$_2$O.

Some of the spectrum is essentially the same for the two compounds, but other parts are quite different. Coniochaetone A has a very simple spectrum, very easily assigned.

Coniochaetone B is rather more interesting. The spectrum is much more complicated, even though it has only one more C–H than coniochaetone A. The reason is that addition of that H atom creates a stereogenic centre and makes the top and bottom faces of the molecule different. Both CH$_2$ groups become diastereotopic.

The green Hs are coupled to each other ($J = 18$ Hz) and to each of the black Hs with a different coupling constant. One of the green hydrogens also shows a long-range ($^4J = 1.4$ Hz) W-coupling to the red H. The black Hs are too complex to analyse, even at 600 MHz, but the different couplings to the red hydrogen are shown by the signal at 5.43 p.p.m.

### Diastereotopic CH$_2$ groups

The green protons in the last example couple to one another, so they must be different. Until this chapter, you may have thought it self-evident that two protons attached to the same carbon would be identical, but you have now seen several examples where they are not. It is now time to explain more rigorously the appearance of CH$_2$ groups in NMR spectra, and you will see that there are three possibilities. To do this, we shall have to discuss some aspects of symmetry that build on what you learned in Chapter 16.

First, an example in which the two hydrogens are indeed the same. We may draw one hydrogen coming towards us and one going away, but the two Hs are the same. This is easy to demonstrate. If we colour one H black and one green, and then rotate the molecule through 180º, the black H appears in the place of the green H and vice versa. The rotated molecule hasn’t changed because the other two substituents (OMe here) are also the same.
If we had given out uncoloured models of this molecule with this book, and asked each reader to paint one H green and one H black, we would have no way at all of giving instructions about which to paint what colour. But it wouldn’t matter because, even without these instructions, every reader would produce an identical model, whichever way they painted their Hs.

The correct description for this pair of hydrogen atoms is homotopic. They are the same (homo) topologically and cannot be distinguished by chemical reagents, enzymes, NMR machines, or human beings. The molecule is achiral—it has no asymmetry at all.

What happens when the other two substituents are different? At first sight the situation does not seem to have changed. Surely the two hydrogens are still the same as one another?

In fact, they aren’t—not quite. If we had given out uncoloured models of this molecule and just said ‘paint one H green and one H black’, we would not have got just one type of model. We would have got about and 50% looking like this:

But this time, we could give instructions about which H we wanted which colour. To get the first of these two, we just need to say ‘Take the MeO group in your left hand and the Ph group in your right, kink the carbon chain upwards. The hydrogen coming towards you is to be painted black.’ All the models produced by readers would then be identical—as long as the readers knew their left from their right. This is a very important point: the green and black hydrogens in this molecule (unlike the first one) can be described only in phrases incorporating the words ‘left’ or ‘right’, and are distinguishable only by a system that knows its left from its right.

Human beings are such a system: so are enzymes, and the asymmetric reagents you will meet in Chapter 45. But NMR machines are not. NMR machines cannot distinguish right and left—the NMR spectra of two enantiomers are identical, for example. It is not a matter of enantiomers in the molecule in question—it has a plane of symmetry and is achiral. Nonetheless, the relationship between these two hydrogens is rather like the relationship between enantiomers (the two possible ways of colouring the Hs are enantiomers—mirror images) and so they are called enantiotopic. Enantiotopic protons appear identical in the NMR spectrum.

The third situation usually arises when the molecule has a stereogenic centre. As an example we can take the Michael product from the beginning of this section.

If we had given out uncoloured models of this molecule with this book, and asked each reader to paint one H green and one H black, we would have no way at all of giving instructions about which to paint what colour. But it wouldn’t matter because, even without these instructions, every reader would produce an identical model, whichever way they painted their Hs.

The correct description for this pair of hydrogen atoms is homotopic. They are the same (homo) topologically and cannot be distinguished by chemical reagents, enzymes, NMR machines, or human beings. The molecule is achiral—it has no asymmetry at all.

**Homotopic groups**

Homotopic groups cannot be distinguished by any means whatsoever: they are chemically entirely identical.

What happens when the other two substituents are different? At first sight the situation does not seem to have changed. Surely the two hydrogens are still the same as one another?

In fact, they aren’t—not quite. If we had given out uncoloured models of this molecule and just said ‘paint one H green and one H black’, we would not have got just one type of model.

We would have got about 50% looking like this: and 50% looking like this:

But this time, we could give instructions about which H we wanted which colour. To get the first of these two, we just need to say ‘Take the MeO group in your left hand and the Ph group in your right, kink the carbon chain upwards. The hydrogen coming towards you is to be painted black.’ All the models produced by readers would then be identical—as long as the readers knew their left from their right. This is a very important point: the green and black hydrogens in this molecule (unlike the first one) can be described only in phrases incorporating the words ‘left’ or ‘right’, and are distinguishable only by a system that knows its left from its right.

Human beings are such a system: so are enzymes, and the asymmetric reagents you will meet in Chapter 45. But NMR machines are not. NMR machines cannot distinguish right and left—the NMR spectra of two enantiomers are identical, for example. It is not a matter of enantiomers in the molecule in question—it has a plane of symmetry and is achiral. Nonetheless, the relationship between these two hydrogens is rather like the relationship between enantiomers (the two possible ways of colouring the Hs are enantiomers—mirror images) and so they are called enantiotopic. Enantiotopic protons appear identical in the NMR spectrum.

**Enantiotopic groups**

Enantiotopic groups can be distinguished by systems that can tell right from left, but are still magnetically equivalent and appear identical in the NMR spectrum.

The third situation usually arises when the molecule has a stereogenic centre. As an example we can take the Michael product from the beginning of this section.

It is now very easy to distinguish the two hydrogens on each ring carbon atom and, if we want to give instructions on how to paint a model of this molecule, we can just say ‘Make all the Hs on the same side of the ring as OMe green, and the ones on the opposite side to OMe black.’ We do not need to use the words ‘right’ or ‘left’ in the instructions, and it is not necessary to
know your right from your left to tell the two types of Hs apart. Ordinary chemical reagents and NMR machines can do it. These Hs are different in the way that diastereoisomers are different and they are diastereotopic. We expect them to have different chemical shifts in the proton NMR spectrum.

The same is true of the methyl groups: they too are diastereotopic and we expect them to have different shifts.

### Diastereotopic groups

Diastereotopic groups are chemically different: they can be distinguished even by systems that cannot tell right from left, and they appear at different chemical shifts in the NMR spectrum.

---

#### How to tell if protons are homotopic, enantiotopic, or diastereotopic

What we have said so far explains to you why homotopic and enantiotopic groups appear identical in the NMR spectrum, but diastereotopic protons may not. Now we will give a quick guide to determining what sort of pair you are dealing with in a given molecule.

The key is to turn your molecules into two molecules. Replace one of the Hs (we’ll assume we’re looking at Hs, but the argument works for other groups too—Me groups, for example, as in the last example above) with an imaginary group ‘G’. Write down the structure you get, with stereochemistry shown. Next, write down the structure you get by replacing the other H with the group G. Now the more difficult bit: identify the stereochemical relationship between the two molecules you have drawn.

- If they are identical molecules, the Hs are homotopic
- If they are enantiomers, the Hs are enantiotopic
- If they are diastereoisomers, the Hs are diastereotopic

This is really just a simpler way of doing what we did with black and green above, but it is easy to do for any molecule. Take the first of our examples, and replace each H in turn by G.

These two molecules are identical, because just turning one over gives the other: the protons are homotopic. Now for the next example.

The two molecules are not identical: to make one into the other you need to reflect in the plane of the paper, so they are enantiomers, and the Hs are enantiotopic. There is another term we must introduce you to in relation to this molecule, which will become useful in the next chapter, and that is ‘prochiral’. The molecule we started with here was not chiral—it had a plane of symmetry. But by changing just one of the Hs to a different group we have made it chiral. Molecules that are achiral but can become chiral through one simple change are called prochiral.

Now we will choose one of the three pairs of Hs in the cyclohexanone example. The starting molecule is, of course, now chiral, and the two molecules we get when we replace each H by G are now diastereoisomers: one has G and OMe anti, the other syn, and the pairs of hydrogens are diastereotopic.

Finally, one last look at symmetry in the three molecules. We will consider two planes as potential planes of symmetry—the plane that bisects the H–C–H angle of the two Hs we are interested in (this is the plane of the paper as we have drawn all three molecules), and a plane at right angles to that plane, passing through the carbon atom and both hydrogen atoms. This second plane is marked on the diagrams in yellow.

This molecule, the most symmetrical of the three, is achiral. The central carbon atom is completely nonstereogenic. Both planes are planes of symmetry and the hydrogens are homotopic. They are chemically and magnetically equivalent.
This slightly less symmetrical molecule is not chiral but prochiral. The carbon atom is a prochiral (or prostereogenic) centre. The plane of the paper is still a plane of symmetry, but the yellow plane containing the two H atoms is not and the hydrogen atoms are enantiotopic. They are magnetically equivalent and can be distinguished only by humans, enzymes, and other asymmetric reagents.

This least symmetrical molecule is chiral as it has a chiral (stereogenic) centre. The carbon atom we are discussing is not a stereogenic centre but is again a prochiral centre. Neither plane is a plane of symmetry and the hydrogen atoms are diastereotopic. They are chemically and magnetically different and can be distinguished by NMR or by chemical reagents.

Look back at the structures we have just been discussing and you should see that both the enone used to produce this molecule and coniochaetone A have a plane of symmetry bisecting their CH₂ groups while coniochaetone B does not. This gives another easy way of telling if a pair of groups will appear different in the NMR spectrum. If the plane passing through the carbon atom and bisecting the H–C–H bond angle (the plane of the paper in these diagrams) is a plane of symmetry, then the two Hs (which are reflected in that plane) are magnetically equivalent. (If they also lie in a plane of symmetry, they are homotopic; if they don’t, they are enantiotopic.)

The shape of the NMR signal

A prochiral CH₂ group with diastereotopic Hs isolated from any other Hs will give rise to two signals, one for each H, and they will couple to each other so that the complete signal is a pair of doublets. You would expect geminal coupling constants to be larger than vicinal ones simply because the Hs are closer—we are talking about \( ^2J \) instead of \( ^3J \) couplings. A typical vicinal \( (^3J) \) coupling constant for a freely rotating open-chain system without nearby electronegative atoms would be 7 Hz. A typical geminal \( (^2J) \) coupling constant is just twice this, 14 Hz.

The chemical shift differences (\( \Delta\delta \)) between Hs on the same carbon atom tend to be small—usually less than 1 p.p.m.—and the coupling constants \( J \) tend to be large so the signals usually have \( \Delta\delta \sim J \) and are distorted into an AB pattern. The signal may have any of the forms indicated here, depending on the relative sizes of \( \Delta\delta \) (the chemical shift difference between the peaks) and \( J \).

Examples of AB systems from diastereotopic CH₂ groups

It is time to look at some examples. The insect pheromone frontalin can be drawn like this.

There is nothing wrong with this drawing except that it fails to explain why the black and green hydrogens are different and give a pair of doublets at \( \delta_H \) 3.42 and 2.93 p.p.m., each 1H, \( J \) 7 Hz (an AB
system) in the proton NMR. These protons must be diastereotopic. A conformational diagram should help.

The vital H atoms are on a diaxial bridge across the six-membered ring. Under the black H is an oxygen atom, while under the green H is a three-carbon link. If there were a plane of symmetry between these two Hs, it would have to be the plane marked by the dashed yellow lines in the second diagram. This is not a plane of symmetry and the two Hs are diastereotopic. They have no neighbours, so they give a simple AB system. The coupling constant here is small for \( J \)—only 7 Hz—but that should not surprise you since we have a five-membered ring and a nearby oxygen atom.

The same principles apply to open-chain compounds, such as amino acids. All of the amino acids in proteins except glycine are chiral. Glycine has a prochiral CH\(_2\) group that gives a singlet in the NMR spectrum as the Hs are enantiotopic. Similarly, the \( N \)-benzyl derivative of glycine has a second prochiral CH\(_2\) group (NCH\(_2\)Ph) that gives another singlet in the NMR spectrum as these Hs too are enantiotopic.

The plane of the paper is a plane of symmetry for both these CH\(_2\) groups in the way they are drawn here. The \( N \)-benzyl derivatives of the other amino acids are quite different. Each shows an AB signal for the NCH\(_2\)Ph group because these molecules have stereogenic centres and there are no planes of symmetry. The Hs of the NCH\(_3\)Ph group are diastereotopic.

In the way in which the molecule is drawn, the brown H is on the same side as the Me group and the yellow H on the other. It does not matter that there is free rotation in this molecule—there is no conformation you can draw in which the important plane, passing between the diastereotopic Hs through their carbon atom, is a plane of symmetry.
The ABX system

It is more common to find diastereotopic CH₂ groups with neighbours, and the most common situation is that in which there is one neighbour, giving an ABX system. We will outline diagrammatically what we expect. Let’s start with the AB system for the diastereotopic CH₂ group and the singlet for the neighbour, which we call ‘X’ because it’s at a quite different chemical shift.

Now we must add the coupling between A and X and between B and X. Since A and B are different, there is no reason why \( J_{AX} \) and \( J_{BX} \) should be the same. One is normally larger than the other, and both are normally smaller than \( J_{AB} \), since \( J_{AX} \) and \( J_{BX} \) are vicinal \(^3 J\) couplings while \( J_{AB} \) is a geminal \(^2 J\) coupling. We shall arbitrarily put \( J_{AX} > J_{BX} \) in this example.

You can read \( J_{AX} \) and \( J_{BX} \) from the AB part of the signal quite easily by measuring the distance between each pair of lines, in Hz. If you want to read them from the X part, remember that it is made up like this. In the signal for X, the larger coupling, \( J_{AX} \), is the spacing between lines 1 and 3 or between lines 2 and 4 while the smaller coupling, \( J_{BX} \), is the spacing between lines 1 and 2 or 3 and 4. Naturally, \( J_{AX} \) and \( J_{BX} \) are the same whether you measure them in the AB signal or in the X signal.

When aspartic acid is dissolved in D₂O with NaOD present, all OH and NH₂ protons are exchanged for deuterium atoms and do not show up in the spectrum—the molecule exists as its dianion.

The spectrum consists of a beautiful ABX system with the brown proton as a double doublet at \( \delta_H \) 3.45 p.p.m. and the black and green protons as an AB pair between 2 and 3 p.p.m. The coupling between red and green is typical: 15 Hz.
More complex examples

We have stressed all along that diastereotopic CH2 groups may be separated in the proton NMR but need not be. It may just happen that the chemical shift difference is zero giving an A2 system. It is not possible to predict which diastereotopic CH2 groups will be revealed in the NMR spectrum as AB systems and which as A2. Both may even appear in the same molecule. As an example, consider the compound shown below. The brown hydrogen has a very complicated signal, coupling to four other hydrogens. The spectrum for these four hydrogens is also complicated but may be simplified by irradiating the brown hydrogen to remove any coupling to it. Then we can clearly see that one CH2 group shows itself as diastereotopic while the other does not. From the chemical shifts we may guess that the CH2Cl group is the A2X system at 3.7 p.p.m. and that it is the one in the ring that gives the ABX system.

As a general guide, CH2 groups close to a stereogenic centre are more likely to be revealed as diastereotopic than those further away. Those in part of a structure with a fixed conformation are more likely to be revealed as diastereotopic than those in a flexible, freely rotating part of the molecule.

In this molecule, all three marked CH2 groups are diastereotopic, but it is more likely that the ones next to the stereogenic centre, whether in the ring or in the open chain, will show up as AB systems in the NMR. The remote CH2 group at the end of the chain is more likely to be A2 in the NMR, but one cannot be sure. You must be able to recognize diastereotopic CH2 groups and to interpret AB and ABX systems in the NMR. You must also not be surprised when a diastereotopic CH2 group appears in the NMR spectrum as an A2 or A2X system.

Geminal coupling in six-membered rings

While we were discussing coupling in rings earlier in the chapter we avoided the question of geminal coupling by never considering the CH2 groups in the ring. In practice there will often be diastereotopic CH2 groups in six-membered rings. As an example, we will look at a problem in structure determination of a rather complex molecule. It is pederin, the toxic principle of the blister beetle Paederus fuscipes. After some incorrect early suggestions, the actual structure of the compound was eventually deduced.

We are not going to discuss the full structure elucidation, but will concentrate on the stereochemistry of the right-hand ring. You can see that there is a CH2 group in this ring and it has, of course, diastereotopic Hs. At first the OH group was placed at the wrong position on the ring, but a careful analysis of the NMR spectrum put this right and also gave the stereochemistry. The five (green) protons on the ring gave these signals (left-hand part of the molecule omitted for clarity).
Three of the protons have shifts $\delta_H$ 3–4 p.p.m. and are obviously on carbons attached to oxygen atoms. The other two, $\delta_H$ about 2 p.p.m., must be the diastereotopic pair at C5. The coupling of 12 Hz, which appears in both signals, must be the geminal coupling and the other couplings are found in the signals at $\delta_H$ 3.75 and 3.85 p.p.m. The signal at $\delta_H$ 3.75 p.p.m. has no other couplings and must be from C4 so that leaves $\delta_H$ 3.85 p.p.m. for the hydrogen atom at C6 which is also coupled to the hydrogen in the side chain. The 10 Hz coupling is axial/axial but the others are all much smaller so we can draw the conformation immediately.

There is just the one axial/axial coupling and so the left-hand side chain must occupy an axial position. This is perhaps a bit surprising—it’s large and branched—but the molecule has no choice but to place one of the two side chains axial.

**A surprising reaction product**

Chapter 26 revealed that sodium chloride can be a surprisingly powerful reagent. It removes ester groups from malonate derivatives, like this.

However, using this reaction to decarboxylate the malonate shown here did not merely remove the CO$_2$Me group. Instead, a compound was formed with a much more complicated NMR spectrum than that of the expected product (which was known as it could be made another way). The NMR data for both compounds are detailed below.
The unknown product has lost MeOH but retained both carbonyl groups ($\delta_C$ 169.1, 169.0 p.p.m. typical for acid derivatives). In the $^1$H NMR, the phenyl ring and one OMe group are still there. The other striking thing about the $^1$H NMR is the presence of so many couplings. It looks as if all the hydrogens are magnetically distinct. Indeed we can see one diastereotopic CH$_2$ at 4.45 and 4.3 p.p.m. with $^2J = 14$ Hz. This is the 'normal' value and would fit well for the NCH$_2$Ph group. But note the chemical shift! For $\delta_H$ to be so large the nitrogen atom must be part of an amide, which would also explain the two acid derivative C=O groups. So we have the partial structure on the right.

All that is left is C$_3$H$_5$ and this must be fitted in where the dotted lines go. One reasonable interpretation from the NMR would be two diastereotopic CH$_2$ groups, one with $^2J = 10$ and one with $^2J = 5$ Hz, linked by a CH group.

If this is the case, what has brought the values of $^2J$ down from 14 to 10 and even 5 Hz? Electronegative elements can’t be the culprits as the only one is nitrogen, but small rings could. If, in fact, we simply join these two fragments together in rather a surprising way (the dotted lines show how), we get the correct structure.

In this case, the geminal couplings do not help to assign the stereochemistry—the three- and five-membered rings can only be fused cis (just try making a model of the trans compound!)—but they do help in assigning the structure.

We should at this point just recap what we have done here—we made no attempt to work out the structure by thinking about what the mechanism of the reaction might be. We used, purely and simply, NMR to work out fragments of the structure which we then put together in a logical way. Considering reasonable mechanisms can be a help in structure determination—but it can also be a hindrance. If the product is unexpected, it follows that the mechanism is unexpected too.

For an example with a four-membered ring, we go back to $\beta$-lactams. A serious problem with $\beta$-lactam antibiotics is that bacteria develop resistance by evolving enzymes called $\beta$-lactamas, which break open the four-membered ring. In 1984, a team from Beechams reported the exciting discovery of some very simple inhibitors of these enzymes all based on the core structure named clavulanic acid. This too was a $\beta$-lactam but a much simpler one than the penicillins we saw earlier.

The structure elucidation used all the usual spectroscopic techniques as well as X-ray crystallography, but it is the $^1$H NMR that is particularly interesting to us here. Here it is, with the assignments shown.

\[
\begin{align*}
\delta_H 6.0 & \text{ (1H, d, } J 2.5) \\
\delta_H 4.75 & \text{ (2H, d, } J 7.5, 18) \\
\delta_H 3.60 & \text{ (1H, dd, } J 2.5, 18) \\
\delta_H 3.05 & \text{ (1H, d, } J 18) \\
\delta_H 5.58 & \text{ (1H, t, } J 7.5) \\
\delta_H 5.66 & \text{ (1H, s)}
\end{align*}
\]

Notice the very large geminal coupling between the red and the black hydrogens (more of this later) and the fact that the green hydrogens, though actually diastereotopic, resonate at the same chemical shift. The cis coupling across the four-membered ring is larger (2.5 Hz) than the trans coupling (0 Hz) as expected.
The \( \pi \) contribution to geminal coupling

We began this chapter with a diagram of Taxol. This molecule is rather too complex for us to analyse in detail, but the geminal couplings of an important closely related compound are worth noting. Here are the details.

The coupling between the black Hs is 20 Hz while that between the green Hs is 6 Hz. This is a rather extreme example as the green Hs are in a four-membered ring and next to an oxygen atom, so they are expected to show a small \( J \) value, while the black Hs are in a six-membered ring and not next to an electronegative element. Nevertheless, 20 Hz is a very large coupling constant. The reason is the adjacent \( \pi \) bond. If a CH\(_2\) group is next to an alkene, aromatic ring, C=O group, CN group, or any other \( \pi \)-bonded functional group, it will have a larger geminal coupling constant. This effect is quite clear in both Taxol and clavulanic acid.

The oxidation of the bicyclic amino-ketone shown in the margin demonstrates how useful this effect can be. This is the Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement, which you will meet in Chapter 37. The mechanism is not important here: all you need to know is that it inserts an oxygen atom on one side or the other of the ketone C=O group. The question is—which side?

In fact, both lactones were isolated and the problem then became—which was which? In both NMR spectra there were AB systems at 4.6–4.7 for diastereotopic CH\(_2\) groups isolated from the rest of the molecule, with \( ^2J = 11.8 \) Hz. These are clearly the black and green hydrogens on the benzyl groups. The coupling constant is reduced by the oxygen atom and increased by the phenyl's \( \pi \) contribution, so it ends up about average.

Both lactones also had clear ABX systems in the NMR corresponding to the yellow, brown, and orange protons. In one compound \( ^2J = 10.8 \) Hz and in the other \( ^2J = 18.7 \) Hz. The smaller value has been reduced by neighbouring oxygen and this must be compound A. The larger value has been increased by the \( \pi \) contribution from the carbonyl group and this must be compound B.

---

The size of \( ^2J \) and \( ^3J \) coupling constants

We have now covered all of the important influences on the size of coupling constants. They are:

- dihedral angle: \( ^3J \) greatest at 180° and 0°; about 0 Hz at 90°
- ring size, which leads to ‘spreading out’ of bonds and lower \( ^2J \) and lower \( ^3J \) in small rings
- electronegative atoms, which decrease \( ^2J \) and \( ^3J \) coupling constants between protons
- \( \pi \) systems, which increase \( ^2J \) coupling constants between protons

---

The nuclear Overhauser effect

Many occasions arise when even coupling constants do not help us in our quest for stereochemical information. Consider this simple sequence. Bromination of the alkene gives as expected trans addition and a single diastereoisomer of the dibromide.
The vicinal ($^3J$) coupling constant between the two black Hs is 11 Hz. This is rather large and can be explained by a predominant conformation shown in the Newman projection, with the two large groups (PhCO and Ph) as far from each other as possible, the two medium groups (Br) as distant as possible, and the two black Hs in the places which are left. The dihedral angle between the black Hs is then 180° (they are anti-periplanar) and a large $J$ is reasonable.

But now see what happens when we react the dibromide with piperidine. A single diastereoisomer of an amine is formed, and there is good evidence that it has the opposite configuration from the dibromide; in other words, replacement of Br by N has occurred with inversion.

We might expect that the conformation would now be different and that, since inversion has occurred, the two green Hs would now be gauche instead of anti-periplanar. With a dihedral angle of 60° the coupling constant would be much less. But it isn’t. The coupling constant between the green Hs is exactly the same (11 Hz) as the coupling constant between the black Hs in the starting material. Why? The new substituent (piperidine) is very big, much bigger than Br and probably bigger in three dimensions than a flat Ph group. The conformation must change (all we are doing is rotating the back carbon atom by 120°) so that the two green Hs also have a dihedral angle of 180°.

A more serious situation arises when we treat this product with base. An unusual elimination product is formed, in which the amine group has moved next to the ketone. The reaction is interesting for this point alone, and one of the problems at the end of the chapter asks you to suggest a mechanism. But there is added interest, because the product is also formed as a single geometrical isomer, $E$ or $Z$. But which one? There is a hydrogen atom at one end of the alkene but not at the other so we can’t use $^3J$ coupling constants to find out as there aren’t any.
What we need is a method that allows us to tell which groups are close to one another in space (though not necessarily through bonds) even when there are no coupling constants to help out. Very fortunately, an effect in NMR known as the nuclear Overhauser effect allows us to do this.

The details of the origin of the nuclear Overhauser effect are beyond the scope of this book, but we can give you a general idea of what the effect is. As you learned from Chapter 11, when a proton NMR spectrum is acquired, a pulse of radiofrequency electromagnetic radiation jolts the spins of the protons in the molecule into a higher energy state. The signal we observe is generated by those spins dropping back to their original states. In Chapter 11 it sufficed to assume that the drop back down was spontaneous, just like a rock falling off a cliff. In fact it isn’t—something needs to ‘help’ the protons to drop back again—a process called relaxation. And that ‘something’ is other nearby magnetically active nuclei—usually more protons. Notice nearby—nearby in space not through bonds. With protons, relaxation is fast, and the number of nearby protons does not affect the appearance of the NMR spectrum.

We find that, although peak intensity is independent of the number of nearby protons, by using methods whose description is beyond the scope of this book, it is possible to make the intensity respond, to a small extent, to those protons that are nearby. The idea is that as certain protons (or groups of identical protons) are irradiated selectively (in other words, they are jolted into their high-energy state and held there by a pulse of radiation at exactly the right frequency—not the broad pulse needed in a normal NMR experiment). Under the conditions of the experiment, this causes protons that were relying on the irradiated protons to relax them to appear as a slightly more intense (up to a few per cent) peak in the NMR spectrum. This effect is known as the nuclear Overhauser effect, and the increase in intensity of the peak the nuclear Overhauser enhancement. Both are shortened to ‘NOE’.

All you need to be aware of at this stage is that irradiating protons in an NOE experiment gives rise to enhancements at other protons that are nearby in space—no coupling is required, and NOE is not a through-bond phenomenon. The effect also drops off very rapidly: the degree of enhancement is proportional to $1/r^6$ (where $r$ is the distance between the protons) so moving two protons twice as far apart decreases the enhancement one can give to the other by a factor of 64. NOE spectra are usually presented as differences: the enhanced spectrum minus the unenhanced, so that those protons that change in intensity can be spotted immediately.

Applying NOE to the problem in hand solves the structure. If the protons next to the nitrogen atom in the piperidine ring are irradiated, the signal for the alkene proton increases in intensity, so these two groups of protons must be near in space. The compound is the $E$-alkene.

Data from NOE experiments nicely supplement information from coupling constants in the determination of three-dimensional stereochemistry too. Reduction of this bicyclic ketone with a bulky hydride reducing agent gives one diastereoisomer of the alcohol, but which? Irradiation of the proton next to the OH group leads to an NOE to the green proton.

This suggests that the two protons are on the same side of the molecule and that reduction has occurred by hydride delivery to the face of the ketone opposite the two methyl groups on the three-membered ring.
For a more complex example we can return to a lactone (shown in the margin) obtained by oxidation of a bicyclic ketone similar to the one we mentioned earlier (p. 000). When this compound was made, two questions arose. What was the stereochemistry of the ethyl group, and which signal in the NMR spectrum belonged to which hydrogen atom? In particular, was it possible to distinguish the signals of the diastereotopic brown and yellow Hs? Three experiments were carried out, summarized in the diagrams below. First the CH₂ and then the CH₃ protons of the ethyl group were irradiated and the other protons were observed. Finally, the green proton was irradiated.

In the first experiment, enhancement of the signals of the black, yellow, and green Hs was observed. The ethyl group can rotate rapidly on the NMR time-scale so all the enhancements can be explained by the first two conformations. An NOE effect to the yellow but not to the brown H is particularly significant. Irradiation of the methyl group led to enhancement of the yellow proton but not the brown. Clearly, the ethyl group is in the position shown.

Irradiation of the green proton, whose stereochemistry is now clear, enhanced the orange proton and allowed its chemical shift to be determined. Previously, it had been lost in the many CHs in the rings.

We shall finish this chapter by returning to Taxol once more. The tricyclic compound drawn here was made in 1996 as an intermediate for Taxol synthesis. The stereochemistry and the conformation of the molecule were deduced by a series of NOE experiments.

Four NOE experiments were carried out, summarized two at a time in the diagrams on the right. Irradiation of the methyl groups established that the black pair were on the same carbon atom and hence allowed assignment of the spectrum. Then irradiation of the remaining methyl group on saturated carbon established the proximity of the green hydrogens and gave the stereochemistry at three centres.

Next irradiation of the brown methyl group on a double bond showed it was close to the brown hydrogen and gave the stereochemistry at that centre. Finally, irradiation at one of the two methyl groups of the CMe₂ group (yellow) showed that it was close to the two green hydrogens and hence all these three groups were clustered in the centre of the molecule. It’s important here to draw a conformational diagram as they do not look very close in the flat diagram shown.

These experiments fixed not only the stereochemistry at all the stereogenic centres but also allowed the conformation of the central eight-membered ring to be deduced. This ring is outlined in black on the diagram in the margin and has two chair-like sections. It is no trivial matter to work out such conformations without X-ray data and the NOE result tells us about the more important conformation in solution, rather than in the crystal. The alliance between coupling constants and NOE gives us a powerful method for structural determination.
To conclude…

As you leave this chapter, you should carry the message that, while X-ray crystallography is the ‘final appeal’ with regard to determining configuration, NMR can be a very powerful tool too. Analysis of coupling constants and nuclear Overhauser effects allows:

- determination of configuration, even in noncrystalline compounds
- determination of conformation in solution

As you embark on the next two chapters, which describe how to make molecules stereoselectively, bear in mind that many of the stereochemical outcomes were deduced using the techniques we have described in this chapter.

Problems

Note. All NMR shifts are in p.p.m. and coupling constants are quoted in hertz. The usual abbreviations are used: d = doublet; t = triplet; and q = quartet.

1 A revision problem to start you off easily. A Pacific sponge contains 2.8% dry weight of a sweet-smelling oil with the following spectroscopic details. What is its structure and stereochemistry?

   Mass spectrum gives formula: C₉H₁₅O
   IR 1680, 1635 cm⁻¹
   δH 0.90 (6H, d, J 7), 1.00 (3H, t, J 7), 1.77 (1H, m), 2.09 (2H, t, J 7), 2.49 (2H, q, J 7), 5.99 (1H, d, J 16), and 6.71 (1H, dt, J 16, 7)
   δC 8.15 (q), 22.5 (two qs), 28.3 (d), 33.1 (t), 42.0 (t), 131.8 (d), 144.9 (d), and 191.6 (s)

2 Reaction between this aldehyde and ketone in base gives a compound A with the ¹H NMR spectrum: δ 1.10 (9H, s), 1.17 (9H, s), 4.8 (1H, d, J 15) and 7.0 (1H, d, J 15). What is its structure? (Don’t forget stereochemistry!) When this compound reacts with HBr it gives compound B with this NMR spectrum: δ 1.08 (9H, s), 1.13 (9H, s), 2.71 (1H, dd, J 1.9, 17.7), 3.25 (dd, J 10.0, 17.7), and 4.38 (1H, dd, J 1.9, 10.0). Suggest a structure, assign the spectrum, and give a mechanism for the formation of B.

3 In Chapter 20 we set a problem asking you what the stereochemistry of a product was. Now we can give you the NMR spectrum of the product and ask: how do we know the stereochemistry of the product? You need only the partial NMR spectrum: δH 3.9 (1H, ddq, J 12, 4, 7) and 4.3 (1H, dd, J 11, 3).

4 Two diastereoisomers of this cyclic ketolactam have been prepared. The NMR spectra have many overlapping signals but the proton marked in green can clearly be seen. In isomer A it is δH 4.12 (1H, q, J 3.5), and isomer B has δH 3.30 (1H, dt, J 4, 11, 11). Which isomer has which stereochemistry?

5 How would you determine the stereochemistry of these two compounds?

6 The structure and stereochemistry of the antifungal antibiotic ambruticin was in part deduced from the NMR spectrum of this simple cyclopropane. Interpret the NMR spectrum and show how it gives definite evidence on the stereochemistry.

   δH 1.13 (3H, d, J 8), 1.32 (3H, t, J 7), 1.47 (9H, s), 1.71 (1H, t, J 5), 2.2 (1H, ddq, J 5, 12, 7), 4.3 (2H, q, J 8), 6.05 (1H, d, J 17), and 6.75 (1H, dd, J 17, 12)

7 One of the sugar components in the antibiotic kijanimycin has the gross structure and NMR spectrum shown below. What is its stereochemistry? All couplings in Hz; signals marked * exchange with D₂O.

   δH 1.33 (3H, d, J 6), 1.61* (1H, broad s), 1.87 (1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 3.5), 2.21 (1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 1.5), 2.87 (1H, dd, J 10, 3), 3.40 (3H, s), 3.47 (3H, s), 3.99 (1H, ddq, J 10, 6), 1.33 (3H, d, J 6), 4.24 (1H, ddd, J 3, 3.5, 3.5), and 4.79 (1H, dd, J 3.5, 1.5)
The structure of a Wittig product intended as a prostaglandin model was established by the usual methods—except for the geometry of the double bond. Irradiation of a signal at $\delta_H 3.54$ (2H, t, J 7.5) led to an enhancement of another signal at $\delta_H 3.93$ (2H, d, J 7.1) but not to a signal at $\delta_H 3.93$ (2H, d, J 7.1). What is the stereochemistry of the alkene? How is the product formed?

How would you determine the stereochemistry of this cyclopropane? The NMR spectra of the three protons on the ring are given: $\delta_H 1.64$ (1H, dd, J 6, 8), 2.07 (1H, dd, J 6, 10), and 2.89 (1H, dd, J 10, 8).

A chemical reaction produces two diastereoisomers of the product. Isomer A has $\delta_H 3.08$ (1H, dt, J 4, 9, 9) and 4.32 (1H, d, J 9, 4) while isomer B has $\delta_H 4.27$ (1H, d, J 4). The other protons overlap. Isomer B is converted into isomer A on treatment with base. What is the stereochemistry of A and B?

Muscarine, the poisonous principle of the death cap mushroom, has the following structure and proton NMR spectrum. Assign the spectrum. Can you see definite evidence for the stereochemistry? All couplings in Hz; signals marked * exchange with D$_2$O.

$\delta_H 1.16$ (3H, d, J 6.5), 1.86 (1H, ddd, J 12.5, 9.5, 5.5), 2.02 (1H, ddd, J 12.5, 2.0, 6.0), 3.36 (9H, s), 3.54 (1H, dd, J 13, 9.0), 3.74 (1H, dd, J 13, 1.0), 3.92 (1H, dq, J 2.5, 6.5), 4.03 (1H, m), 4.30* (1H, d, J 3.5), and 4.68 (1H, m).

An antifeedant compound that deters insects from eating food crops has the gross structure shown below. Some of the NMR signals that can clearly be made out are also given. Since NMR coupling constants are clearly useless in assigning the stereochemistry, how would you set about it?

$\delta_H 2.22$ (1H, d, J 4), 2.99 (1H, dd, J 4, 2.4), 4.36 (1H, d, J 12.3), 4.70 (1H, dd, J 4.7, 11.7), 4.88 (1H, d, J 12.3)

The seeds of the Costa Rican plant Ateleia herbert smithii are avoided by all seed eaters (except a weevil that adapts them for its defence) because they contain two toxic amino acids (IR spectra like other amino acids). Neither compound is chiral. What is the structure of these compounds? They can easily be separated because one (A) is soluble in aqueous base but the other (B) is not. A is C$_6$H$_9$NO$_4$ (mass spectrum) and has $\delta_C$ 34.0 (d), 40.0 (t), 56.2 (s), 184.8 (s), and 186.0 (s). Its proton NMR has three exchanging protons on nitrogen and one on oxygen and two complex signals at $\delta_H 2.68$ (4H, A$_2$B$_2$ part of A$_2$B$_2$X system) and 3.37 (X part of A$_2$B$_2$X system) with $J_{AB}$ 9.5, $J_{AX}$ 9.1, and $J_{BX}$ small.

B is C$_6$H$_9$NO$_2$ (mass spectrum) and has $\delta_C$ 38.0 (d), 41.3 (t), 50.4 (t), 75.2 (s), and 173.0 (s). Its proton NMR spectrum contains two exchanging protons on nitrogen and $\delta_H$ 2.68 (4H, A$_2$B$_2$ part of A$_2$B$_2$X system) and 3.37 (X part of A$_2$B$_2$X system) with $J_{AB}$ 9.5, $J_{AX}$ 9.1, and $J_{BX}$ small.

Because the coupling pattern did not show up clearly as many of the coupling constants are small, decoupling experiments were used. Irradiation at $\delta_H$ 3.4 simplifies the $\delta_H$ 2.3 signal to (2H, ddd, J 4, 2.3, 9.5), 2.31 (2H, broad m), 2.90 (1H, broad t, J 3.2), and 3.40 (2H, broad s).

This is quite a difficult problem but the compounds are so small (C$_6$ only), have no methyl groups, and have some symmetry so you should try drawing structures at an early stage.
### Introduction

This chapter is about rings and stereochemistry. Stereochemistry is easier to understand in cyclic compounds and that alone might make a separate chapter worthwhile. But there is something much more fundamental behind this chapter. Stereochemistry is better behaved in cyclic compounds. Suppose you were to reduce this ketone to one of the corresponding alcohols.

There would be very little chance of any control of stereochemistry at the new stereogenic centre (shown in black). A more or less 50:50 mixture of the two diastereoisomers would be expected. However, if we join up the molecule into a ring, things are suddenly quite different. (This is not, of course, a chemical reaction—just a thought process!)

The cyclic ketone has a fixed conformation controlled by the determination of the t-butyl group to be equatorial. Reduction can be controlled to give almost exclusively either the axial or the equatorial alcohol as we explained in Chapter 18. Large reagents prefer to approach equatorially while small reagents like to put the new OH group into an equatorial position. These are stereoselective reactions, and, because the two different outcomes are diastereoisomers, we can call them diastereoselective.
The key to the difference is in the conformations. The cyclic ketone has one conformation and the two approaches to the faces of the ketone are very different. The open-chain compound has an indefinite number of conformations as rotation about all the C–C bonds is possible. In any one conformation, attack on one face of the ketone or the other may happen to be preferred, but on average there will be very little difference. There is all the difference in the world between cyclic and open-chain compounds when it comes to stereoselective reactions. This is why we have made this topic into two chapters: this one (33) dealing with rings, the next (34) with what happens without rings.

In this chapter we shall look at reactions happening to cyclic compounds, reactions that close rings (cyclizations), and reactions with cyclic intermediates and with cyclic transition states. We shall investigate what happens to stereochemistry when two (or even more) rings are joined together at a bond or at an atom. We shall see how stereochemical effects change as the ring size increases from three atoms to eight or more. You will find that you have met some of the reactions before in this book. This chapter collects them together and explains the principles of stereochemical control in cyclic systems as well as introducing some new reactions.

Reactions on small rings

Four-membered rings can be flat

The smallest ring that we can conveniently work on is four-membered. Saturated four-membered rings have a slightly bent conformation but four-membered lactones are flat. The enolates of these lactones can be made in the usual way with LDA at –78 °C and are stable at that temperature.

The formation of the lithium enolate is straightforward but it might be expected to be unstable because of a simple elimination reaction. It is not possible to make open-chain lithium enolates with β oxygen substituents like this because they do undergo elimination.

But, in the four-membered ring, the π orbitals of the enolate and the C–O single bond are orthogonal (see drawing in margin) so that no interaction between them, and no elimination, can occur. The enolate can be combined with electrophiles in the usual way (Chapters 26 and 27).
If the β-lactone has a substituent already then there may be a choice as to which face of the enolate is attacked by an electrophile. Simple alkylation with a variety of alkyl halides gives essentially only one diastereoisomer of the product.

The enolate, as we have seen, is planar, the phenyl group is in the plane (so it doesn’t matter which of the two possible diastereoisomers of the starting material is used), and the isopropyl group is the only thing out of the plane. The electrophile simply adds to the face of the enolate not blocked by the isopropyl group. This is a very simple case of a diastereoselective reaction.

Reduction of substituted four-membered ring ketones is usually reasonably stereoselective. If the substituent is in the 3-position and small reagents like NaBH₄ are used, the cis isomer is favoured.

This result sounds very like the results already noted for six-membered rings and the explanation is similar. Saturated four-membered rings—even the ketones—are slightly puckered to reduce eclipsing interactions between hydrogen atoms on adjacent carbon atoms, and ‘axial’ attack by the small nucleophile gives the more stable cis product having both substituents ‘equatorial’.

Five-membered rings are flexible

We discussed the conformation of some five-membered rings in Chapter 32: a saturated five-membered ring has a conformation variously called a ‘half-chair’ or an ‘envelope’. It does look a bit like an opened envelope with one atom at the point of the flap, or it looks like most of (five-sixths rather than half?) a chair cyclohexane.

At any one moment, one of the carbon atoms is at the point of the envelope but rapid ring flipping equilibrates all these conformers so that all five atoms are, on average, the same. Substituted cyclopentanes can have substituents in pseudoaxial or pseudoequatorial positions or on the point position, like this.
The result is a very flexible system that often behaves in stereoselective reactions as if the two positions on any carbon atom are the same.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me} & \quad \text{LiAIH}_4 \\
\text{THF} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{77\%} & \quad \text{23\%}
\end{align*}
\]

As you can see, reduction of 2-substituted cyclopentanones may not be very stereoselective. The substituent probably occupies a pseudoequatorial position and the two faces of the ketone are very similar.

What selectivity there is (about 3:1) favours pseudoaxial attack in the conformation drawn as is reasonable for a small nucleophile. The use of a much more bulky reducing agent such as \(\text{LiBH}(\text{s-Bu})_3\) dramatically reverses and increases the stereoselectivity. Essentially only the \(\text{cis}\) compound is formed because the bulky reagent attacks the side of the carbonyl opposite to the methyl group.

When there are two or three trigonal carbons in the ring, the ring is flatter, and reactions such as enolate alkylation and conjugate addition give excellent stereoselectivity even with a simple cyclopentane ring. Unsaturated five-membered lactones (‘butenolides’) give a very clear illustration of stereochemically controlled conjugate addition. There is only one possible stereogenic centre and the ring is almost planar so we expect nucleophilic attack to occur from the less hindered face. Cuprates are good nucleophiles for this reaction and here \(\text{Me}_2\text{CuLi}\) adds to the unsaturated lactone.

The starting material was a single enantiomer and hence so is the product—an insect pheromone.

It is not even necessary to have a stereogenic centre in an unsaturated ring if we want to create stereochemistry. A tandem conjugate addition and alkylation creates two new stereogenic centres in one operation. The conjugate addition of a lithium cuprate makes a lithium enolate, which will react in turn with an alkyl halide. The product is usually \(\text{trans}\).
The key step is the alkylation of the enolate intermediate. Enolates in five-membered rings are almost flat and the incoming alkyl halide prefers the less hindered face away from the recently added group R. The example below shows that, if both new groups have double bonds in their chains, it is easier to add a vinyl group as the nucleophile and an allyl group as an electrophile.

Our main example of enolate reactions in five-membered rings is one of some general importance. It illustrates how stereochemical information can be transmitted across a ring even though the original source of that information may be lost during the reaction. That may sound mysterious, but all will become clear. The first reaction is to make a five-membered cyclic acetal from an optically active hydroxy-acid. Our example shows (S)-(−)-mandelic acid reacting with t-BuCHO.

\[
\text{(S)-(−)-mandelic acid} + t\text{-BuCHO} \rightarrow \text{acetal product} \quad \text{cis:trans = 24:1}
\]

Acetal formation involves nucleophilic attack of the OH group on the aldehyde so there is no change at the stereogenic centre. The stereochemistry of the new (acetal) centre may surprise you—why should the cis-isomer be so favoured? This is a conformational effect as both substituents can occupy pseudoaxial positions.

Now, if we make the lithium enolate with LDA, the original stereogenic centre is destroyed as that carbon becomes trigonal. The only stereogenic centre left is the newly introduced one at the acetal position.

The ring is now flattened by the alkene and reaction of the enolate with an electrophile is again a simple matter of addition to the face of the enolate opposite to the t-butyl group.

If the acetal is now hydrolysed, the new stereogenic centre is revealed as an alkylated version of the starting material. It may appear that the alkylation has happened stereospecifically with retention, but what has really happened is that the new stereogenic centre in the acetal intermediate has relayed the stereochemical information through the reaction.

Five-membered rings also allow us to explore electrophilic attack on alkenes. A simple 4-substituted cyclopentene has two different faces—one on the same side as the substituent and one on the opposite side. Epoxidation with a peroxy-acid occurs preferentially on the less hindered face.
In the transition state (marked \( \ddagger \)) the peroxyacid prefers to be well away from R, even if R is only a methyl group. The selectivity is 76:24 with methyl. The opposite stereoselectivity can be achieved by bromination in water. The bromonium ion intermediate is formed stereoselectively on the less hindered side and the water is forced to attack stereospecifically in an S_N2 reaction from the more hindered side.

Treatment of the product with base (NaOH) gives an epoxide by another S_N2 reaction in which oxygen displaces bromide. This is again stereospecific and gives the epoxide on the same side as the group R.

Two substituents on the same side of a five-membered ring combine to dictate approach from the other side by any reagent, and the two epoxides can be formed each with essentially 100% selectivity.

**Stereochemical control in six-membered rings**

From five-membered rings we move on naturally to six-membered rings. As well as the opportunity for more stereogenic centres around the larger ring, we have the additional prospect of conformational control—something special to six-membered rings because of their well-defined conformational properties. We shall start with simple reactions occurring on the opposite face to existing substituents and move on to conformational control, particularly to one theme—axial addition.

First, something about thermodynamic control. Because of the strong preference for substituents to adopt the equatorial position, diastereoisomers may equilibrate by processes such an enolization. For example, this fine perfumery material is made worthless by enolization.
The situation is bad because the worthless compound is preferred in the equilibrium mixture (92:8). This is because the two substituents are both equatorial in the trans-isomer.

Although a disadvantage here, in other cases equilibration to the more stable all-equatorial conformation can be a useful source of stereochemical control. You will very shortly see an example of this.

### Stereoselectivity in reactions of six-membered rings

We discussed the reduction of cyclohexanones in Chapter 18 and established that reducing agents prefer the equatorial approach while small reagents may prefer to put the OH group in the more stable equatorial position. If the nucleophile is not H but something larger than OH then we can expect equatorial attack to dominate both because of ease of approach and because of product stability.

A simple example is the addition of PhLi to the heterocyclic ketone below which has one methyl group next to the carbonyl group. This methyl group occupies an equatorial position and the incoming phenyl group also prefers the equatorial approach so that good stereoselectivity is observed.

This product was used in the preparation of the analgesic drug alphaprodine. We shall represent the reaction now in configurational terms. It is important for you to recognize and be able to draw both configurational (as below) and conformational (as above) diagrams.

When the stereogenic centre is further away from the site of attack, the stereoselectivity may not be so good. Zeneca have announced the manufacture of a drug by the addition of a lithiated thiophene to another heterocyclic ketone, which initially gave a mixture of diastereoisomers.

Such a mixture is no good for manufacture of a pure drug, but the compound can be equilibrated in dilute acid by repeated $S_N1$ formation of a tertiary benzylic cation and recapture by water so that the required product (which is more stable as it has both Me and the thiophene equatorial) dominates by 92:8 and can be purified by crystallization. The unwanted isomer can be recycled in the next batch.
In these reactions the molecule has a free choice whether to place a substituent in an axial or equatorial position and this is the only consideration because the starting materials in the reactions—ketones or carbocations—have six-membered rings that are already in the chair conformation even though they have one trigonal (sp²) atom in the ring.

**Axial attack is preferred with unsaturated six-membered rings**

When the starting material for a reaction has two or more trigonal (sp²) atoms in the ring, it is no longer in the chair conformation. In these cases, the stereochemistry of the reaction is likely to be driven by the need for the transition state and product to have a chair rather than a boat conformation. This can override the preference for substituents to go into equatorial positions. This is the basis for axial attack on enolates, cyclohexenes, and enones.

### The number of trigonal carbon atoms in the ring is important

- Six-membered rings with one trigonal (sp²) carbon atom can undergo axial or equatorial attack.
- Six-membered rings with two or more trigonal carbon atoms undergo *axial attack* in order to form chairs rather than boats. The final product may end up with axial or equatorial substitution, but this is not a consideration in the reaction itself.

Alkylations of enolates, enamines, and silyl enol ethers of cyclohexanone usually show substantial preference for axial attack. The enamine of 4-t-butylcyclohexanone, which has a fixed conformation because of the t-butyl group, gives 90% axial alkylation and only 10% equatorial alkylation with n-PrI.

It is a simple matter to show that the preferred product has the new propyl group in the axial position because both the starting ketone and the product have chair conformations with the t-butyl equatorial.

To get at the explanation we need to look at the conformation of the enamine intermediate. At this point we shall generalize a bit more and write a structure that represents any enol derivative where X may be OH, O⁻, OSiMe₃, NR₂, and so on. The conformation has a double bond in the ring, and is a partially flattened chair, as described in Chapter 18.

The t-butyl group is in an equatorial position at the back of the ring. The electrophile must approach the enol derivative from more or less directly above or below because only then can it attack one of the lobes of the p orbital at the enol position shown in yellow. The top of the molecule looks to be more open to attack so we shall try that approach first.
As the electrophile bonds to the trigonal carbon atom, that atom must become tetrahedral and it does so by forming a vertical bond upwards. The result is shown in the diagram—the ring turns into a twist-boat conformation. Now, of course, after the reaction is over, the ring can flip into a chair conformation and the new substituent will then be equatorial, but that information is not present in the transition state for the reaction. We could say that, at the time of reaction, the molecule doesn’t ‘know’ it can later be better off and get the substituent equatorial; all it sees is the formation of an unstable twist boat with a high-energy transition state leading to it.

Attack from the apparently more hindered bottom face makes the trigonal carbon atom turn tetrahedral in the opposite sense by forming a vertical bond to the electrophile downwards. The ring goes directly to a chair form with the electrophile in the axial position.

When the carbonyl group is restored by hydrolysis (if necessary—X may be O already) the ring need not flip: it’s already a chair with the t-butyl equatorial, and the new substituent is axial on the chair. This is the observed product of the reaction.

It’s important that you understand what is going on here. The reagent has to attack from an axial direction to interact with the p orbital. If it attacks from above, the new substituent is axial on an unstable twist boat. If it attacks from below, the new substituent is axial on a chair—granted, this is not as good as equatorial on a chair, but that’s not an option—it has to be axial on something, and a chair is better than a twist boat. So this is the product that forms. It’s just hard luck for the substituent that it can’t know that if it did weather it out on the twist boat it could later get equatorial—it plumps for life on the easy chair and so has to be content with ending up axial.

Here is an example with an unsaturated carbonyl compound as an electrophile: the reaction is Michael addition. The ketone here is slightly different—it has the t-butyl group in the 3- rather than the 4-position and the reacting centre becomes quaternary during the Michael reaction. But the result is still axial attack.

This result is more impressive because the large electrophile ends up on the same side of the ring as the t-butyl group, so the stereoselectivity cannot be based on any simple idea of reaction on the less hindered side of the ring. It is genuine axial attack, as the conformational diagram of the product confirms.
Cyclohexenones are even flatter than cyclohexenes, but it is convenient to draw them in a similar conformation. Conjugate addition to this substituted cyclohexenone gives the trans product.

This is also axial addition to form a chair directly (rather than a twist boat) with the nucleophile approaching from the bottom. We must draw the ring as a flattened chair.

The 5-alkyl cyclohexenone that we have chosen as our example gives the best results. The mechanism suggests that the enolate intermediate is protonated on the top face (axial addition again) though we cannot tell this. But, if we carry out a tandem reaction with the enolate trapped by a different electrophile, the product is again that of axial attack.

We shall end this section on conformational control in six-membered rings with the preparation of a useful chiral molecule 8-phenylmenthol from the natural product (R)-(+) pulegone. The first step is a conjugate addition to an exocyclic alkene. A new stereogenic centre is formed by protonation of the enolate intermediate but with virtually no stereoselectivity.

Now thermodynamic control can be brought into play. The position next to the ketone can be epimerized via the enolate to give the more stable isomer with both substituents equatorial. This improves the ratio of diastereoisomers from 55:45 to 87:13.

Now the ketone can be reduced with a small reagent—Na in i-PrOH works well—to put the hydroxyl group equatorial. This means that all the product has OH trans to the large group next to
the ketone, though it is still an 87:13 mixture of diastereoisomers with respect to the relative con-
figuration at the centre bearing Me.

These alcohols can be separated (they are, of course, diastereoisomers and not enantiomers) and
the major, all-equatorial one is the useful one (see Chapter 45). This is an impressive example of con-
formational control by thermodynamic and by kinetic means using only a distant methyl group in a
six-membered ring.

Conformational control in the formation of six-membered rings

In Chapter 32 we solved a structural problem from the aldol reaction of pentan-3-one and
4-chlorobenzaldehyde in basic solution. The product turned out to be a six-membered cyclic
keto-ether.

Once you know the gross structure of the product, the stereochemistry should be no surprise.
This is a typical thermodynamically controlled formation of a six-membered ring with all the sub-
stituents equatorial.

Any reaction that is reversible and that forms a six-membered ring can be expected to put as many
substituents as possible in the thermodynamically favourable equatorial position. This principle can
be used in structure determination too. Suppose you have one diastereoisomer of a 1,3-diol and you
want to find out which stereoisomer it is.

Having read Chapter 32 you might think of using the NMR coupling constants of the two black
protons. But that will do no good because the molecule has no fixed conformation. Free rotation
about all the $\sigma$ bonds means that the Karplus equation cannot be used as a time-averaged
$J$ value of about 6–7 Hz will probably be observed for both protons regardless of stereo-
chemistry. But suppose we make an acetal from the 1,3-diol with benzaldehyde.

This may not seem to help much. But acetal formation is under thermodynamic control, so the
most stable possible conformation will result with the large phenyl group equatorial and the two R
groups either both equatorial or one equatorial and one axial, depending on which diastereoisomer
you started with.

Now the molecule has a fixed conformation and the coupling constants of the black Hs to the
neighbouring CH$_2$ group can be determined—an axial H will show one large $J$ value, an equatorial H
only small $J$ values.
This section has been strong on thermodynamic control but weak on the more common kinetic control. This will be remedied in Chapter 35 where you will meet the most important cyclization reaction of all—the Diels–Alder reaction. It is under kinetic control and there is a great deal of stereochemistry associated with it.

**Stereochemistry of bicyclic compounds**

There are broadly three kinds of bicyclic compounds, some of which you have met before (Chapter 18, for example). If we imagine adding a new five-membered ring to one already there, we could do this in a bridged, fused, or spiro fashion. Bridged bicyclic compounds are just what the name implies—a bridge of atom(s) is thrown across from one side of the ring to the other. Fused bicyclic compounds have one bond common to both rings, while spiro compounds have one atom common to both rings.

You will notice that these three types of bicyclic compounds with five-membered rings have different numbers of atoms added to a ‘parent’ five-membered ring. The bridged compound has two extra atoms, the fused compound three, and the spiro compound four. These are marked in green with the original five-membered ring in red. We shall consider stereoselectivity in each of these types of bicyclic ring systems, starting with bridged structures.

A selection of important bridged bicyclic compounds is shown below, with the various ring sizes indicated in black.

Bridged structures (sometimes called cage structures) are generally very rigid—the only exception among these examples is the bottom right-hand portion of cocaine. This rigidity is reflected in the stereochemistry of their reactions.

Attack on this unsubstituted bridged ketone—norbornanone—occurs predominantly from the side of the one-atom bridge rather than the two-atom bridge.

This selectivity is completely reversed in camphor because the one-atom bridge then carries two methyl groups. One of these must project over the line of approach of the hydride reducing agent.

The two methyl groups on the bridge of the camphor molecule are key features in stereoselective reactions—take them away and the result often changes dramatically. This bicyclic system, with and without methyl groups, has been so widely used to establish stereochemical principles that the two faces of, say, the ketone group in camphor, or the alkene in norbornene, have been given the names endo and exo. These refer to inside (endo) and outside (exo) the boat-shaped six-membered ring highlighted in orange.
Like LiAlH₄ reduction, addition of a Grignard reagent to camphor occurs almost entirely from the *endo* face, but almost entirely from the *exo* face with norbornanone.

In a similar style, epoxidation of the two alkenes is totally stereoselective, occurring *exo* in norbornene and *endo* when methyl groups are present on the bridge. These stereoselectivities would be remarkable in a simple monocyclic compound, but in a rigid bridged bicyclic structure they are almost to be expected.

Reactions that break open bridged molecules preserve stereochemistry

Some powerful oxidizing agents are able to cleave C–C bonds, as you will see in Chapter 35. Oxidation of camphor in this way produces a diacid known as camphoric acid. The usual reagent is nitric acid (HNO₃) and oxidation goes via camphor’s enol.

Because the bridge holds the molecule in a fixed conformation, the cleaved diacid has to have a specific stereochemistry. There is no change at the stereogenic centres, so the reaction must give retention of configuration. We can confidently write the structure of camphoric acid with *cis*-CO₂H groups, but any doubt is dispelled by the ability of camphoric acid to form a bridged bicyclic anhydride.

**Fused bicyclic compounds**

*trans*-Fused rings

The ring junction of a fused 5/6-membered ring system can have *cis* or *trans* stereochemistry, and so can any pair of larger rings. For smaller rings, *trans* 5/5- and 4/6-ring junctions can be made, with difficulty, but with smaller rings *trans* ring junctions are essentially impossible.

The *trans*-fused 6/6 systems—*trans*-decalins—have been very widely studied because they appear in steroids (Chapter 51). Their conformation is discussed in Chapter 18 and conformational control simply extends what we saw with simple six-membered rings.

A 6/6 fused system will prefer a *trans* ring junction as *trans*-decalins (Chapter 18) have all-chair structures with every bond staggered from every other bond, as you can see from the diagram alongside. We can show...
this by giving a 6/6 system the choice: reducing this enone with lithium metal gives a lithium enolate (Chapter 26). Protonation of this anion with the solvent (liquid ammonia) gives a \textit{trans} ring junction.

\begin{equation}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{Li} \\
\text{NH}_3(\text{i}) \\
\text{R} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{LiO}^- \\
\end{array}
\end{equation}

The lithium enolate remains and can be alkylated with an alkyl halide in the usual way. When there are hydrogen atoms at both ring junction positions, axial alkylation occurs just as you should now expect, and a new ketone with three stereogenic centres is formed with >95\% stereoselectivity.

However, if there is anything else—even a methyl group—at the ring junction, so that axial approach would give a bad 1,3-diaxial interaction in the transition state, the stereoselectivity switches to >95\% equatorial alkylation. This unexpected reversal of normal stereoselectivity is a result of the extra rigidity of the \textit{trans}-decalin system.

\begin{equation}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Li} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{Et} \\
\text{Me} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{Et} \\
\end{array}
\end{equation}

In most reactions of \textit{trans}-decalins, the conformational principles of simple six-membered rings can be used, but you may expect tighter control from the greater rigidity. If you wish to design a molecule where you are quite certain of the conformation, a \textit{trans}-decalin is a better bet than even a \textit{t}-butyl cyclohexane as \textit{trans}-decalins cannot flip.

\textbf{cis-Fused rings}

Almost any \textit{cis}-fused junction from 3/3 upwards can be made. Bicyclo[1.1.0]butane exists, though it is not very stable. \textit{cis}-Fused 4/5, 4/6, and 5/5 systems are common and are much more stable than their \textit{trans}-isomers.

\begin{equation}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\text{H} \\
\end{array}
\end{equation}

You met catalytic hydrogenation in Chapter 24.

For a reminder of what \textit{stereoselective} and \textit{stereospecific} mean, see p. 000.
they have also added \textit{cis} to the green hydrogen atom that was already there. This approach does give the more stable \textit{cis} ring junction but the stereochemistry really arises because the other ring hinders approach to the other face of the alkene. Think of it this way: the alkene has two different faces. On one side there is the green hydrogen atom, and on the other the black parts of the second ring. To get hydrogenated, the alkene must lie more or less flat on the catalyst surface and that is easier on the top face as drawn.

If one of the ring junctions is a nitrogen atom, we might think that there is no question of stereochemistry because pyramidal nitrogen inverts rapidly. So it does, but if it is constrained in a small ring, it usually chooses one pyramidal conformation and sticks to it. The next case is rather like the last.

Here again the two black hydrogens have added stereospecifically \textit{cis}, but there is no stereogenic centre in the starting material to control stereoselectivity. So what is there to discuss? If the product is treated with a tertiary amine base (actually DBN is used), it equilibrates to the other diastereoisomer via the ester enolate.

It is easy to see \textit{how} the equilibration happens as the enolate can be protonated at the front or the back, but \textit{why} should it prefer the second structure? This is thermodynamic control and results from the ‘disguised’ \textit{cis} ring junction. Because it is more stable to have two five-membered rings \textit{cis}-fused, the nitrogen atom is slightly (only slightly, because it is part of an amide) pyramidalized in that direction.

The molecule folds along the C–N bond common to both rings so that it looks rather like that half-opened book that you put face downwards on the table while you answered the phone. The ester group much prefers to be in free space outside the folded rings and not cramped inside them.

This is the key to \textit{cis}-fused bicyclic rings—everything happens on the outside (on the cover of the book). Nucleophiles add to carbonyl groups from the outside, enolates react with alkyl halides or Michael acceptors on the outside, and alkenes react with peroxycacids on the outside. Notice that this means the same side as the substituents at the ring junction. The rings are folded away from these substituents that are on the outside.
A real example comes in the acylation (Chapter 28) of the enolate from the keto-acetal above and alongside. The molecule is folded downwards and the enolate is essentially planar. Addition presumably occurs entirely from the outside, though the final stereochemistry of the product is controlled thermodynamically because of reversible enolization of the product: whatever the explanation, the black ester group prefers the outside.

Reduction of the ketone product also occurs exclusively from the outside and this has the ironic effect of pushing the new OH group into the inside position. Attack from the inside is very hindered in this molecule because one of the acetal oxygen atoms is right on the flight path. You will see more in a moment on how to force groups into the inside.

A simple example of epoxidation occurs on a cyclobutane fused to a five-membered ring. This is a very rigid system and attack occurs exclusively from the outside to give a single epoxide in good yield.

Epoxidation is stereospecific and cis—both new C–O bonds have to be on the same face of the old alkene. But Chapter 20 introduced you to several electrophilic additions to alkenes that were stereospecific and trans, many of them proceeding through a bromonium ion. If stereospecific trans addition occurs on a cis-fused bicyclic alkene, the electrophile will first add to the outside of the fold, and the nucleophile will then be forced to add from the inside. A telling example occurs when the 4/5 fused unsaturated ketone below is treated with N-bromoacetamide in water.

The bromonium ion is formed on the outside of the rigid structure and the water is then forced to add from the inside to get trans addition. As well as exhibiting stereospecificity (trans addition) and stereoselectivity (bromonium forms on outside), this reaction also exhibits regioselectivity in the
attack of water on the bromonium ion. Water must come from inside, but it attacks the less hindered end of the bromonium ion, keeping as far from the ‘spine of the half-open book’ as possible.

After protection of the OH group, treatment with base closes a three-membered ring to give a remarkably strained molecule. The ketone forms an enolate and the enolate attacks the alkyl bromide intramolecularly to close the third ring. This enolate is in just the right position to attack the C–Br bond from the back, precisely because of the folding of the molecule.

Inside/outside selectivity may allow the distinction between two otherwise similar functional groups. The cis-fused bicyclic diester below may look at first rather symmetrical but ester hydrolysis leaves one of the two esters alone while the other is converted to an acid.

Only the outside ester—on the same side as the ring junction Hs—is hydrolysed. In the mechanism for ester hydrolysis, the rate-determining step is the attack by the hydroxide ion so the functional group increases in size in the vital step. This will be much easier for the free outside CO$_2$Et group than for the one inside the half-open book.

The end result is that the larger of the two groups is on the inside! There are other ways to do this too. If we alkylate the enolate of a bicyclic lactone, the alkyl group (black) goes on the outside as expected. But what will happen if we repeat the alkylation with a different alkyl group? The new enolate will be flat and the stereochemistry at the enolate carbon will be lost. When the new alkyl halide comes in, it will approach from the outside (green) and push the alkyl group already there into the inside.

Should you wish to reverse the positions of the two groups, you simply add them in the reverse order. Whichever group is added first finishes on the inside; the other finishes on the outside.

Before we move on to cis-decalins, here is a sequence of reactions that starts with a symmetrical eight-membered ring with no stereogenic centres and ends with two fused five-membered rings with five stereogenic centres, all controlled by stereospecific reactions, some with stereoselective aspects controlled by cis-fused rings.
The first step is a reaction you haven’t yet met—it comes in Chapter 47. All you need to know now is that the reagent, a boron-containing compound called 9-borabicyclononane (9-BBN), hydrates one of the double bonds in the reverse fashion to what you would expect with acid or Hg²⁺ (Chapter 20) and stereospecifically (H and OH go in cis). The resulting alcohol is mesylated (p. 000) in the usual way. This puts in H and OMs stereospecifically cis to each other.

Now comes the first really interesting step. The other alkene does an intramolecular S_N2 reaction to displace the mesylate with inversion and form two fused five-membered rings. The ring junction is cis, of course.

The resulting tertiary cation is not isolated but quenched in the reaction mixture with water. One new stereogenic centre is set up in the cyclization and another in the reaction with water. In the cyclization the molecule prefers to fold in such a way that the new ring junction is cis.

Addition of water to the cation occurs from the outside—but, in fact, this is unimportant as that stereogenic centre is about to be lost anyway. Treatment with TsCl causes an E2 anti elimination. The only proton anti to the OTs group is away from the ring junction, so this is where the new double bond goes.

Finally, a second hydroboration with 9-BBN occurs regiospecifically and on the outside of the folded molecule. This reaction adds the last two centres making five in all.

**cis-Decalins: cis-fused six-membered rings**

First a brief reminder of the conformation of cis-decalins (see Chapter 18). Unlike trans-decalins, which are rigid, they can flip rapidly between two all-chair conformations. During the flip, all
substituents change their conformation. The substituent R is axial on ring B in the first conformation but equatorial in the second. The ring junction Hs are always axial on one ring and equatorial on the other. The green hydrogen is equatorial on ring A and axial on ring B in the first conformation and vice versa in the second. Of course, they are cis in both. Because R gets equatorial, the second conformation is preferred in this case.

A standard reaction that gives substituted decalins is the Robinson annelation (Chapter 29). A Robinson annelation product available in quantity is the keto-enone known sometimes as the Wieland–Miescher ketone and used widely in steroid synthesis. The nonconjugated keto group can be protected or reduced without touching the more stable conjugated enone.

If either of these products is reduced with hydrogen and a Pd catalyst (the alcohol is first made into a tosylate), the cis-decalin is formed. We saw a few pages back that the same kind of enones can be reduced with lithium metal in liquid ammonia and that then the more stable trans-decalin results.

The cis-decalin is formed because the enone, though flattened, is already folded to some extent. A conformational drawing of either molecule shows that the top surface is better able to bind to the flat surface of the catalyst. Each of these products shows interesting stereoselective reactions. The ketal can be converted into an alkene by Grignard addition and E1 elimination and then epoxidized. Everything happens from the outside as expected with the result that the methyl group is forced inside at the epoxidation stage.
Treatment of the other product, the keto-tosylate, with base leads to an intramolecular enolate alkylation—a cyclization on the inside of the folded molecule that actually closes a four-membered ring. The reaction is easily seen in conformational terms and the product cannot readily be drawn in conventional diagrams.

A similar reaction happens on the epoxide to produce a beautiful cage structure. This time it is a five-membered ring that is formed, but the principle is the same—the molecule closes across the fold rather easily. The new stereogenic centres can only be formed the way they are.

---

**A summary of stereoselective reactions that occur on the cis-fused rings**

1. Reactions on the outside
   - Nucleophilic additions to carbonyl groups in the ring
   - Reactions of enolates of the same ketones with electrophiles: alkyl halides, aldols, Michael additions
   - *cis*-Additions to cyclic alkenes: hydrogenation, hydroboration, epoxidation

2. Reactions on the outside and the inside
   - *trans*-Additions to cyclic alkenes: bromination, epoxide openings

3. Reactions on the inside
   - Bond formation across the ring(s)

---

**Spirocyclic compounds**

These rings meet at an atom alone. This means that the two rings are orthogonal about the tetrahedral atom that is common to both. Even symmetrical-looking versions are unexpectedly chiral. The compound in the margin, for example, is not superimposable on its mirror image, and its chirality is rather similar to that of an allene.

These sorts of compounds may look rather difficult to come by, but some simple ones are simply made. Cyclization of this keto-acid with polyphosphoric acid leads to a spirocyclic diketone.

The *spiro* compound is formed because the more substituted enol is preferred in acid solution. In a different case, with an enamine, a bridged product is preferred.
After the first alkylation, the enamine prefers to re-form on the less substituted side so that the second alkylation occurs on the other side of the ketone from the first. The spirocyclic compound is further disfavoured as it would have a four-membered ring in this case.

It is much more difficult to pass stereochemical information from one ring to the other in spirocyclic compounds because each ring is orthogonal to the other. Nonetheless, some reactions are surprisingly stereoselective—one such is the reduction of the spirocyclic diketone that we made a moment ago. Treatment with LiAlH₄ gives one diastereoisomer of the spirocyclic diol.

The diol was resolved and used to make the very simple spiro-diene as a single enantiomer. It is chiral even though it has no chiral centre because it does not have a plane of symmetry.

**Reactions with cyclic intermediates or cyclic transition states**

Rings are so good at controlling stereochemistry (as you have seen) that it's well worth introducing them where they are not really necessary in the final product, simply in order to enjoy those high levels of stereochemical control. In the rest of this chapter we shall consider the use of temporary rings in stereochemical control: these might be cyclic intermediates in a synthetic pathway, or cyclic reaction intermediates, or even merely cyclic transition states. All aid good stereocontrol. We shall concentrate on examples where the ring reverses the normal stereoselectivity so that some different result is possible.

**Tethered functional groups can reach only one side of the molecule**

The proverbial donkey starved to death in the field with two heaps of hay because it could not decide which one to go for first. If the donkey had been tethered to a stake near one heap it would have been able to reach that heap alone and it could have feasted happily.

This principle is often applied to molecules. If a nucleophile is joined to the carbonyl group it is to attack by a short chain of covalent bonds, it may be able to reach only one side of the carbonyl group. An example from a familiar reaction concerns the Robinson annelation. The first step, Michael addition, creates a stereogenic centre but no relative stereochemistry. It is in the second step—the aldol cyclization—that the stereochemistry of the ring junction is decided.
The enolate is tethered to the atom next to the ketone in the other ring. It can attack easily from the side to which it is attached through a stable chair-like transition state. Attacking the other face of the ketone (to give a trans-decalin) is much more difficult, even though it would give the thermodynamically more stable product.

In fact, this is not such a good example because the aldol product is normally dehydrated and the second stereogenic centre is lost. More important examples are those in which a ring is formed but can later be cleaved, and among the best of this type of reaction are iodolactonizations, which you first met in Chapter 20. To remind you, iodolactonization involves treating a nonconjugated unsaturated acid with iodine in aqueous NaHCO₃. The product is an iodolactone.

The cyclization reaction is a typical two-stage electrophilic addition to an alkene (Chapter 20) with attack by the nucleophile at the more substituted end of the intermediate halonium ion. The iodonium ring opening is a stereospecific S_N2 and, in the simplest cases where stereochemistry can be observed, the stereochemistry of the alkene will be reproduced in the product.

The starting acid contains an E-alkene that gives a trans iodonium ion. Inversion occurs in the attack of the carboxylate anion on the iodonium ion and we have shown this by bringing the nucleophile in at 180° to the leaving group with both bonds in the plane of the paper. A single diastereoisomer of the iodolactone results from this stereospecific reaction.

The following cyclic example illustrates the stereoselective aspect of iodolactonization.

The relationship between the two stereogenic centres on the old alkene is not an issue—that aspect of the reaction is stereospecific. A more interesting question is the relationship with the third centre. One way to look at this question would be to say that the structure shown is the only possible
one. The lactone bridge has to be diaxial (and hence \textit{cis}) if it is to exist and the O and I atoms have to be \textit{trans}. End of story.

But it is still interesting to see how the product arises as it gives us insight into other less clear-cut reactions. The \(-\text{CO}_2\text{H}\) group is too far away for us to argue seriously that the two faces of the alkene are sufficiently different for the iodine to attack one only. A more reasonable explanation is that iodine attacks both faces reversibly but that only the iodonium ion with the I and \(\text{CO}_2\text{H}\) groups \textit{trans} to each other can cyclize. This turns out to be a general rule—iodolactonizations are reversible and under thermodynamic control.

One of the simplest open-chain examples is 2-methylbut-3-enoic acid, which cyclizes in >95% yield to a single iodolactone with three stereogenic centres. Two come from stereospecific \textit{trans} addition to the \(\text{E}\)-alkene but the third reveals that iodine attacked the face of the alkene opposite the green methyl group in the conformation that can cyclize.

We have said little in this chapter about the stereospecific transformation of one ring into another but we now have an opportunity to remedy that defect. Iodolactonization of a terminal alkene with a stereogenic centre next to it is as stereoselective as (if not more than) the example we have just seen. The two side chains on the ring end up \textit{trans} to one another as we should expect. This is a purely stereoselective process as the alkene has no geometry.

Reaction of the iodolactone product with alkaline methanol transforms it stereospecifically into the methyl ester of an epoxide acid. There is no change in stereochemistry here: methoxide opens the lactone and the oxyanion released carries out an internal \(\text{S}_\text{N}2\) reaction on the primary alkyl iodide.

The more obvious way to make this epoxide would be by epoxidation of the ester of the original unsaturated acid. However, the stereoselectivity in that reaction is nowhere near as good as in the iodolactonization. We shall return to this subject when we discuss reactions in acyclic systems in the next chapter.
A general problem in the synthesis of steroid compounds is the construction of a diketone with 5/6 trans-fused rings and a quaternary carbon atom at the ring junction. Tethering can solve this problem, and we will present two strategies—one using a lactone derived from an iodolactonization reaction, and one using a sulfur atom.

A lactone makes a good temporary tether because it can be hydrolysed or reduced to break the ring at the C–O bond and reveal new stereogenic centres on the old structure. In this sequence a lactone, formed by iodolactonization, controls all the subsequent stereochemistry of the molecule in two ways: it fixes the conformation rigidly in one chair form—hence forcing the iodide to be axial—and it blocks one face of the ring. The iodolactonization is very similar to one you saw on p. 000. Next, an alkene is introduced by E2 reaction on the iodide. This stereospecific reaction requires an anti-periplanar H atom so it has to take the only available neighbouring axial hydrogen atom—furthermore, reaction the other way would produce a bridgehead alkene.

The resulting alkene has its top face blocked by the bridge so a cis addition reaction, such as epoxidation, will occur entirely from the bottom face. Now the epoxide is opened with HBr to give the only possible trans diaxial product (Chapter 18). The role of the bridge in fixing the conformation of the ring is more important in this stereospecific reaction because the bromide ion is forced to attack from the top face. The alcohol is protected as a silyl ether.

Do you see how the functional groups are being pushed round the ring? This process is extended further by a second elimination also with DBN, which this time really does have to seek out the only neighbouring axial hydrogen: there’s no bridgehead to take the decision for it. Acid removes the silyl protecting group.

The next important reaction is a Michael addition so the alcohol must first be oxidized to a ketone. As it is an allylic alcohol, it can be oxidized by manganese dioxide. The ring is further flattened as three atoms are now trigonal. But-3-enyl Grignard reagent is next added with Cu(I)
catalysis to make sure that conjugate addition occurs. Conjugate addition normally gives the axial product as we saw earlier and fortunately this is not the direction blocked by the bridge.

The bridge has now done its work and is removed by zinc metal reduction. This reaction removes leaving groups on the atoms next to carbonyl groups. In this case it is the axial carboxylate that is driven out by the zinc. The released carboxyl group is esterified.

The last stages are shown below. The ketone is protected, and the alkene oxidized to a carbonyl group, cleaving off one of the C atoms (you will meet this reaction—ozonolysis—in Chapter 35). The diester can be cyclized by a Claisen ester condensation. The stereogenic centres in the ring are not affected by any of these reactions so a trans ring junction must result from this reaction.

Finally, after ester hydrolysis, HCl decarboxylates the product and removes the protecting group. As we saw earlier, it is not easy to get a trans-fused 5/6 system. In this sequence the molecule is effectively tricked into making the trans ring junction by the work done with the blocking lactone bridge.

**Sulfur as a tether**

An even more versatile tether is a sulfur atom, which can be removed completely with Raney nickel (which reduces C=S to C=H). The sulfur atom makes the tether easy to assemble too. Here is the essence of the idea.

In this second synthesis of the problematic steroid trans ring junction, the idea is to make the five-membered ring by a Claisen ester condensation and to direct the stereochemistry by tethering the cis groups with a sulfur atom. We can represent this easily in disconnection terms (Chapter 31). The cis-carbons to be joined through sulfur are shown in black.
The preparation of the sulfur heterocycle uses reactions you have met before—first a five-membered ring ketone is formed, which is reduced, lactonized, and eliminated. The next steps involve the Diels–Alder reaction, which you will meet in Chapter 35, so we will have no detailed discussion here, just giving the reactions, and pointing out that the product necessarily has a cis 6/5 ring junction.

Now the ring has done its work, the two necessary stereogenic centres are fixed, and the sulfur atom can be removed with Raney nickel. The third, undefined, stereogenic centre becomes a CH₂ group in this operation, so the lack of stereocontrol at this centre during the Diels–Alder reaction is of no consequence.

The Claisen ester condensation involves the only possible enolate attacking the only possible electrophilic carbonyl group. The stereochemistry of the ring junction cannot be changed by the reaction, and the two ester groups that started trans must end up trans in the product.

**Cyclic transition states can reverse normal stereoselectivity**

We have considered what happens when there is a ring present in the starting material, or where we encourage formation of a ring in an intermediate as a means of controlling stereochemistry. In this
final section of this chapter we shall consider some examples where stereoselectivity arises because of a ring formed only transiently during a reaction in a cyclic transition state.

We’ll start with some epoxidation reactions. Of course these form rings, and you have seen, in Chapter 20, epoxidations of alkenes such as cyclohexene. We said in Chapter 20 that epoxidation was stereospecific because both new C–O bonds form to the same face of the alkene.

If we block one face of the ring with a substituent—even quite a small one, such as an acetate group—epoxidation becomes stereoselective for the face anti to the substituent already there.

With one exception—when the substituent is a hydroxyl group. When an allylic alcohol is epoxidized, the peroxy-acid attacks the face of the alkene syn to the hydroxyl group, even when that face is more crowded. For cyclohexenol the ratio of syn epoxide to anti epoxide is 24:1 with m-CPBA and it rises to 50:1 with CF₃CO₂H.

The reason is shown in the transition state: the OH group can hydrogen bond, through the H of the alcohol, to the peroxy-acid, stabilizing the transition state when the epoxidation is occurring syn. This hydrogen bond means that peroxy-acid epoxidations of alkenes with adjacent hydroxyl groups are much faster than epoxidations of simple alkenes, even when no stereochemistry is involved.

Peroxy-acids work for expoxidizing allylic alcohols syn to the OH group, but another reagent is better when the OH group is further from the alkene. 4-Hydroxycyclopentene, for example, can be converted into either diastereomer of the epoxide. If the alcohol is protected with a large group such as TBDMS (t-butyl-dimethylsilyl) it becomes a simple blocking group and the epoxide is formed on the opposite face of the alkene. The selectivity is reasonable (83:17) given that the blocking group is quite distant.

If the OH group is not blocked at all but left free, and the epoxidation reagent is the vanadium complex VO(acac)₂ combined with t-BuOOH, the syn epoxide is formed instead. The vanadyl group chelates reagent and alcohol and delivers the reactive oxygen atom to the same face of the alkene.
The delivery of an oxygen atom through a cyclic transition state by vanadyl complexes is also particularly effective with allylic alcohols. Here is a simple example—the green arrow shows merely the directing effect and is not a mechanism. Delivery of oxygen from OH through a VO complex is particularly effective when the OH group is pseudoaxial and the $t$-Bu group ensures this.

In both epoxidation examples, the stereoselectivity is due to the cyclic nature of the transition state: the fact that there is a hydrogen bond or O–metal bond ‘delivering’ the reagent to one face of the alkene. This is a very important concept, and we revisit it in the next chapter: cyclic transition states are the key to getting good stereoselectivity in reactions of acyclic compounds.

Before we move on, we leave you with one final example. Stereoselectivity in the epoxidation of lactone-bridged alkenes related to those we saw earlier (p. 000) can be completely reversed if the lactone is hydrolysed, revealing a hydroxyl group. In this bicyclic example, the hydroxyl group delivers the peroxy-acid from the bottom face of the alkene. First, the lactone bridge is used to introduce the alkene as before.

Now the critical steps—the lactone bridge is hydrolysed, the epoxide added from the bottom face by a peroxy-acid hydrogen bonded to the OH group, and the lactone bridge reinstated.

The second ring in these compounds is actually a tether, and it enables two more functional groups to be introduced in a cis fashion by oxidation of the remaining alkene.
To conclude…

Diastereoselectivity in rings generally follows a few simple principles:
- Flattened three-, four-, or five-membered rings, especially ones with two or more trigonal carbons in the ring, are generally attacked from the less hindered face.
- Flattened six-membered rings with two or more trigonal carbons in the ring (that is, which are not already a chair—so six-membered rings with one trigonal C atom don’t count here) react in such a way that the product becomes an axially substituted chair.
- Bicyclic compounds react on the outside face.
- Reaction on the more hindered face can be encouraged by: (1) tethered nucleophiles, or (2) cyclic transition states.

Diastereoselectivity in compounds without rings is different: it is less well controlled, because there are many more conformations available to the molecule. But even in acyclic compounds, rings can still be important, and some of the best diastereoselectivities arise when there is a ring formed temporarily in the transition state of the reaction. With or without cyclic transition states, in some cases we have good prospects of predicting which diastereoisomer will be the major reaction product, or explaining the diastereoselectivity if we already know this. That is the subject of the next chapter.

Problems

1. Comment on the control over stereochemistry achieved in this sequence.

2. Explain the stereochemistry of this sequence of reactions, noting the second step in particular.

3. Explain how the stereo- and regiochemistry of these compounds are controlled. Why is the epoxidation only moderately stereo-selective, and why does the amine attack where it does?

4. What controls the stereochemistry of this product? You are advised to draw a mechanism first and then consider the stereochemistry.

5. Why is one of these esters more reactive than the other?

6. Explain the stereoselectivity in these reactions.
7. A problem from the chapter. Draw a mechanism for this reaction and explain why it goes so much better than the elimination on a β-lactone.

8. Another problem from the chapter. The synthesis of the starting material for this reaction is a good example of how cyclic compounds can be used in a simple way to control stereochemistry. Draw mechanisms for each reaction and explain the stereochemistry.

9. A revision problem. Suggest mechanisms for the reactions used to make this starting material used in the chapter.

10. And another problem from the chapter. Here also draw a mechanism for the formation of the starting material. You have never seen the cyclopropane reagent, but think how it might react...

11. In the chapter we introduced the selective reduction of the Wieland–Miescher ketone. The problem is: can you suggest a reason for this stereoselectivity?

12. We warned you in the chapter that this would appear as a problem: suggest mechanisms for these reactions and explain the stereochemistry.

13. Hydrolysis of a bis-silylated ene-diol gives a hydroxy-ketone A whose stereochemistry is supposed to be as shown. Reduction of A gives a diol B. The $^{13}$C NMR spectrum of B has five signals: one in the 100–150 p.p.m. range, one in the 50–100 p.p.m. range, and three below 50 p.p.m. The proton NMR of the three marked hydrogens in A is given below with some irradiation data. Does this information give you confidence in the stereochemistry assigned to A? You may wish to consider the likely stereochemical result of the reduction of A.

A has δH 4.46 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J 9.0, 3.8 Hz), 3.25 p.p.m. (1H, ddd, J 9.0, 7.5, 4.5 Hz), and 3.48 p.p.m. (1H, ddd, J 7.5, 5.5, 3.8 Hz). Irradiation at 3.48 p.p.m. collapses the signal at 4.46 p.p.m. to (d, J 9.0 Hz) and the signal at 3.25 p.p.m. to (dd, J 9.0, 4.5 Hz); irradiation at 4.46 p.p.m. collapses the signal at 3.48 p.p.m. to (dd, J 7.5, 5.5) and the signal at 3.25 p.p.m. to (dd, J 7.5, 4.5).
Looking back

You have had three chapters in a row about stereochemistry: this is the fourth, and it is time for us to bring together some ideas from earlier in the book. We aim firstly to help you grasp some important general concepts, and secondly to introduce some principles in connection with stereoselective reactions in acyclic systems. But, first, some revision.

We introduced the stereochemistry of structures in Chapter 16. We told you about two types of stereoisomers.

- **Enantiomers** — stereoisomers that are mirror images of one another
- **Diastereoisomers** — stereoisomers that are not mirror images of one another

In this chapter we shall talk about how to make compounds as single diastereoisomers. Making single enantiomers is treated in Chapter 45. Chapter 33 was also about making single diastereoisomers, and we hope that, having read that chapter, you are used to thinking stereochemically.

In this chapter we shall talk about two different ways of making single diastereoisomers.
These terms were introduced in Chapter 19 in connection with elimination reactions, and many of the reactions we mention will be familiar from earlier chapters (particularly Chapters 17–20 and 26–27).

Making single diastereoisomers using stereospecific reactions of alkenes

The essence of the definition we have just reminded you of is much easier to grasp with some familiar examples. Here are two.

- **$S_N$2 reactions** are stereospecific: they proceed with inversion so that the absolute stereochemistry of the starting material determines the absolute stereochemistry of the product.

  ![SN2 Reaction Diagram](https://example.com)

  - ![SN2 Reaction](https://example.com)

  - ![SN2 Reaction](https://example.com)

- **E2 reactions** are stereospecific: they proceed through an anti-periplanar transition state, with the relative stereochemistry of the starting material determining the geometry of the product.

  ![E2 Reaction Diagram](https://example.com)

Both of these examples are very interesting because they show how, once we have some stereochemistry in a molecule, we can change the functional groups but keep the stereochemistry—this is the essence of a stereospecific reaction. In the second example, we change the bromide to a double bond, but we keep the stereochemistry (or ‘stereochemical information’) because the geometry of the double bond tells us which bromide we started with.

This is a good place to begin if we want to make single diastereoisomers, because we can reverse this type of reaction: instead of making a single geometry of alkene from a single diastereoisomer, we make a single diastereoisomer from a single geometry of double bond. Here is an example of this—again, one you have already met (Chapter 19). Electrophilic addition of bromine to alkenes is stereospecific and leads to *anti* addition across a double bond. So if we want the *anti* dibromide we choose to start with the *trans* double bond; if we want the *syn* dibromide we start with the *cis* double bond. The geometry of the starting material determines the relative stereochemistry of the product.

- ![Electrophilic Addition](https://example.com)

  - ![Electrophilic Addition](https://example.com)

Iodolactonization has a similar mechanism; notice how in these two examples the geometry of the double bond in the starting material defines the relative stereochemistry highlighted in black in the product.

- ![Iodolactonization](https://example.com)

  - ![Iodolactonization](https://example.com)

  - ![Iodolactonization](https://example.com)
For a stereospecific alkene transformation, choose the right geometry of the starting material to get the right diastereoisomer of the product. Don’t try to follow any ‘rules’ over this—just work through the mechanism.

Now for some examples with epoxides. Epoxides are very important because they can be formed stereospecifically from alkenes: cis-alkenes give cis (or syn) -epoxides and trans-alkenes give trans (or anti) -epoxides.

Epoxides also react stereospecifically because the ring-opening reaction is an $S_{N}2$ reaction. A single diastereoisomer of epoxide gives a single diastereoisomer of product.

We have mentioned *leukotrienes* before: they are important molecules that regulate cell and tissue biology. Leukotriene C$_4$ (LTC$_4$) is a single diastereoisomer with an anti 1,2 S,O functional group relationship. In nature, this single diastereoisomer is made by an epoxide opening: since the opening is $S_{N}2$ the epoxide must start off anti and, indeed, the epoxide precursor is another leukotriene, LTA$_4$.

When Corey was making these compounds in the early 1980s he needed to be sure that the relative stereochemistry of LTC$_4$ would be correctly controlled, and to do this he had to make a trans epoxide. Disconnecting LTA$_4$ as shown led back to a simpler epoxide.

The *trans* allylic alcohol needed to make this compound was made using one of the methods we introduced in Chapter 31: reduction of an alkynyl alcohol with LiAlH$_4$. Here is the full synthesis: alkylation of an ester enolate with prenyl bromide gives a new ester, which itself is turned into an alkylating agent by reduction and tosylation. The alkyne is introduced as its lithium derivative with the alcohol protected as a THP acetal. Hydrolysis of the acetal with aqueous acid gives the hydroxy-alkyne needed for reduction to the $E$ double bond, which is then epoxidized.

\[
\text{continued overleaf}
\]
Stereoselective reactions

For most of the rest of the chapter we shall discuss stereoselective reactions. You have already met several examples and we start with a summary of the most important methods.

- E1 reactions are stereoselective: they form predominantly the more stable alkene

- Nucleophilic attack on six-membered ring ketones is stereoselective: small nucleophiles attack axially and large ones equatorially

- Alkylation of cyclic enolates is stereoselective, with reaction taking place on the less hindered face (four- or five-membered rings) or via axial attack (six-membered rings)

- Epoxidation of cyclic alkenes is stereoselective, with reaction taking place on the less hindered face, or directed by hydrogen bonding to a hydroxyl group

Prochirality

Take another look at all the reactions in the chapter so far—in particular those that give single diastereoisomers (rather than single enantiomers or geometrical isomers)—in other words, those that are diastereoselective. They all involve the creation of a new, tetrahedral stereogenic centre at a carbon that was planar and trigonal. This leads us to our first new definition. Trigonal carbons that aren’t stereogenic (or chiral) centres but can be made into them are called prochiral.
At the very start of Chapter 17, we introduced stereochemistry by thinking about the reactions of two sorts of carbonyl compounds. They are shown again here: the first has a prochiral carbonyl group. The second, on the other hand, is not prochiral because no stereogenic centre is created when the compound reacts.

Tetrahedral carbon atoms can be prochiral too—if they carry two identical groups (and so are not a chiral centre) but replacement of one of them leads to a new chiral centre, then the carbon is prochiral.

Glycine is the only \( \alpha \) amino acid without a chiral centre, but replacing one of the two protons on the central carbon with, say, deuterium creates one: the CH\(_2\) carbon is prochiral. Similarly, converting malonate derivative into its monoester makes a chiral centre where there was none: the central C is prochiral.

Now, does this ring any bells? It should remind you very much of the definitions in Chapter 32 of enantiotopic and diastereotopic in connection with NMR spectra. Replacing one of two enantiotopic groups with another group leads to one of two enantiomers; replacing one of two diastereotopic groups with another group leads to one of two diastereoisomers. Diastereotopic groups are chemically different; enantiotopic groups are chemically identical.

Exactly the same things are true for the faces of a prochiral carbonyl group or double bond. If reaction on one of two faces of the prochiral group generates one of two enantiomers, the faces are enantiotopic; if the reaction generates one of two diastereoisomers, the faces are diastereotopic. We will now apply this thinking to the first few reactions in this chapter: they are shown again below. The first two examples have prochiral C=C or C=O bonds with diastereotopic faces: choosing which face of the double bond or carbonyl group to react on amounts to choosing which diastereoisomer to form. In the third example, the faces of the prochiral carbonyl group are enantiotopic: choosing which face to attack amounts to choosing which enantiomer to form. In the fourth example, the two faces of C=O are homotopic: an identical product is formed whichever face is attacked.

Knowing this throws some new light on the last chapter. Almost without exception, every stereo-selective reaction there involved a double bond (usually C=C; sometimes C=O) with diastereotropic
faces. The diastereotopic faces were distinguished by steric hindrance, or by a nearby hydrogen-bonding group, and so were able to react differently with an incoming reagent.

Using an $R/S$-type system to name prochiral faces and groups

Just as stereogenic centres can be described as $R$ or $S$, it is possible to assign labels to the enantiotopic groups at prochiral tetrahedral carbon atoms or the enantiotopic faces of prochiral trigonal carbon atoms. The basis of the system is the usual $R/S$ system for stereogenic centres, but pro-$R$ and pro-$S$ are used for groups and $Re$ and $Si$ for faces.

Pro-$R$ and pro-$S$ can be assigned to a pair of enantiotopic groups simply by using the usual rules to assign $R$ or $S$ to the centre created if the group in question is artificially elevated to higher priority than its enantiotopic twin. We’ll use $G$ to replace $H$ as we did in Chapter 32; just assume that $G$ has priority immediately higher than $H$. The method is illustrated for glycine.

Faces of a prochiral trigonal carbon atom are assigned $Re$ and $Si$ by viewing the carbon from that side and counting down the groups in priority 1–3. Counting round to the right (clockwise) means the face is $Re$; counting round to the left (anticlockwise) means it’s $Si$. Remember our advice from Chapter 16: think of turning a steering wheel in the direction of the numbers: does the car go to the right or the left?

Like $R$ and $S$, these stereochemical terms are merely labels: they are of no consequence chemically.

Just like diastereotopic signals in an NMR spectrum, diastereotopic faces are always different in principle, but sometimes not so in practice. The very first reaction of Chapter 33 is a case in point: this $C=O$ group has two diastereotopic faces, which, due to free rotation about single bonds, average out to about the same reactivity, so we cannot expect any reasonable level of diastereoselectivity.
We put Chapter 33 first because in rings conformation is well defined, and this ‘averaging’ effect is held at bay. We are about to let it out again, but we will show you how it can be tamed to surprisingly good effect.

Additions to carbonyl groups can be diastereoselective even without rings

What happens if we bring the stereogenic centre closer to the carbonyl group than it was in the last example? You might expect it to have a greater influence over the carbonyl group’s reactions. And it does. Here is an example.

There is three times as much of one of the two diastereoisomeric products as there is of the other, and the major (anti) diastereoisomer is the one in which the nucleophile has added to the front face of the carbonyl group as drawn here. We can make these same two diastereoisomers by addition of an organometallic to an aldehyde. For example, this Grignard reagent gives three times as much of the syn diastereoisomer as the anti diastereoisomer. The major product has changed, but the product still arises from attack on the front face of the carbonyl as shown.

Drawing diastereoisomers of acyclic molecules

If you find it hard to see that these are still the same two diastereoisomers, try mentally rotating the right-hand half of the molecule about the bond shown below. The next three structures all show the same diastereoisomer (the major product from the last reaction), but in three different conformations (we are just rotating about a bond to get from one to another).

Which is the best? A good guideline, which we suggested in Chapter 16, is to place the longest carbon chain zigzagging across the page in the plane of the paper, and allow all the smaller substituents to extend above or below that chain. The first structure here is drawn like that. But this is only a guideline, and the second structure here is a bit more informative regarding the reaction because, when it is drawn like this, you can clearly see from which direction the ethyl group has attacked the carbonyl. Our advice would be that you first of all draw the product of any reaction in more or less the same conformation as the starting material to ensure you make no mistakes, and then rotate about a single bond to place the longest chain in the plane of the paper.

If you still have problems manipulating structures mentally—for example, if you find it hard to work out whether the substituents that aren’t in the plane should be in front of or behind the page—build some models.
These two reactions are not nearly as diastereoselective as most of the reactions of cyclic compounds you met in the last chapter. But we do now need to explain why they are diastereoselective at all, given the free rotation possible in an acyclic molecule. The key, as much with acyclic as with cyclic molecules, is conformation.

The conformation of a chiral aldehyde

What will be the conformation of the aldehyde in the margin? Using the principles we outlined in Chapter 17, we can expect it to be staggered, with no eclipsing interactions, and also with large substituents as far apart from one another as possible. A Newman projection of one of the possible conformers might look like the one shown in the margin. There are no eclipsing interactions, and the large phenyl group is held satisfactorily far away from the O and the H atoms of the aldehyde.

By rotating about the central bond of the aldehyde (the one represented by a circle in the Newman projection) we can suggest a series of possible conformations. Provided we move in 60° steps, none of them will have any eclipsing interactions. The full set of six conformers is shown here. Look at them for a moment, and notice how they differ.

Only two of them, boxed in yellow, place the large Ph group perpendicular to the carbonyl group. These yellow boxed conformations are therefore the lowest-energy conformers and, for the purpose of the discussion that follows, they are the only ones whose reactions we need to consider.

**Lowest energy conformations of a carbonyl compound**

The most important conformations of a carbonyl compound with a stereogenic centre adjacent to the carbonyl group are those that place the largest group perpendicular to the carbonyl group.

The major product arises from the most reactive conformer

Now that we have decided which are the important conformations, how do we know which gives the product? We need to decide which is the most reactive. All we need to do is to remember that any nucleophile attacking the carbonyl group will do so from the Bürgi–Dunitz angle—about 107° from the C=O bond. The attack can be from either side of C=O, and the following diagrams show the possible trajectories superimposed on the two conformations we have selected, which are in equilibrium with one another.
Not all four possible ‘flight paths’ for the nucleophile are equally favourable. For the three shown in brown, the nucleophile passes within 30° or so of another substituent. But, for the one shown in black, there is no substituent nearby except H to hinder attack: the conformation on the left is the most reactive one, and it reacts to give the diastereoisomer shown below.

With Nu = Et we have the right product and, more importantly, we can be pretty sure it is for the right reason: this model of the way a nucleophile attacks a carbonyl compound, called the Felkin–Anh model, is supported by theoretical calculations and numerous experimental results. Notice that we don’t have to decide which is the lower energy of the two conformations: this is not necessary because the attack in black will occur even if the conformer on the left is the minor one in the mixture.

Cram’s rule

You may hear ‘Cram’s rule’ used to explain the outcome of reactions involving attack on chiral carbonyl compounds. Cram was the first to realize that these reactions could be predicted, but we now know why these compounds react in a predictable way. We will not describe Cram’s rule because, although it often does predict the right product, in this case it does so for the wrong reason. Explanations and clear logical thinking are more important than rules, and you must be able to account for and predict the reactions of chiral aldehydes and ketones using the Felkin–Anh model.

The same reasoning accounts for the diastereoselectivity of the reduction on p. 000: first we need to draw the two important conformers of the ketone; the ones that have the large group (Ph) perpendicular to the C=O group.

Now choose the angle of attack that is the least hindered, and draw a Newman projection of the product. Finally, redraw the Newman projection as a normal structure, preferably with the longest chain in the plane of the paper.
The effect of electronegative atoms

One of the most powerful anticancer agents known is dolastatin, isolated from the sea-hare *Dolabella*. Dolastatin contains an unusual amino acid, with three stereogenic centres, and chemists in Germany managed to exploit Felkin–Anh control very effectively to make it from the much more widespread amino acid isoleucine. This is the sequence of reactions.

![Reaction sequence diagram]

The key step is the aldol reaction of the enolate of methyl acetate with the protected amino aldehyde. To rationalize the stereoselectivity, we first need to draw the two most important conformations of this aldehyde with the large group perpendicular to C=O. The trouble is—which do we choose as 'large': the –NBn₂ group or the branched alkyl group? Since we know which diastereoisomer is produced we can work backwards to find that it must be the NBn₂ group that sits perpendicular to C=O in the reactive transition state, and not alkyl.

Now look at the diastereoselectivity of the reaction: it is much greater than the 3:1 we saw before—more like 20:1. This really does suggest that there is a further factor at work here, and that further factor is the electronegative N atom.

Carbonyl groups increase the reactivity of adjacent leaving groups towards nucleophilic substitution by several orders of magnitude. This was an effect that we noted in Chapter 17, where we showed that the ketone below reacts by the S_N2 mechanism 5000 times as fast as methyl chloride itself.

We explained this effect by saying that the π* of the C=O and the σ* of C–Cl overlap to form a new, lower-energy (and therefore more reactive) LUMO. What we did not note then, because it was not relevant, is that this overlap can only occur when the C–Cl bond is perpendicular to the C=O bond, because only then are the π* and σ* orbitals aligned correctly.

The same thing happens even with electronegative atoms X that are not leaving groups in the S_N2 reaction (for example, X = OR, NR₂, SR, etc.). The π* and σ* orbitals add together to form a new, lower-energy molecular orbital, more susceptible to nucleophilic attack. But, if X is not a leaving group, attack on this orbital will result not in nucleophilic substitution but in addition to the carbonyl group. Again, this effect will operate only when the C–X and C=O bonds are perpendicular so that the orbitals align correctly.
What does this mean for stereoselectivity? Conformations of the chiral carbonyl compound that place an electronegative atom perpendicular to the C=O bond will be more reactive—size doesn’t matter. So, in the dolastatin amino acid example, the conformations with NBn2 perpendicular to C=O are the only conformations we need to consider.

Using the Felkin–Anh model

To predict or explain the stereoselectivity of reactions of a carbonyl group with an adjacent stereogenic centre, use the Felkin–Anh model.

- Draw Newman projections of the conformations of the starting material that place a large group or an electronegative group perpendicular to C=O
- Allow the nucleophile to attack along the least hindered trajectory, taking into account the Bürgi–Dunitz angle
- Draw a Newman projection of the product that arises from attack in this way
- Carefully flatten the Newman projection on to the page to produce a normal structure, preferably with the longest chain of C atoms in the plane of the page. Check that you have done this last step correctly: it is very easy to make mistakes here. Use a model if necessary, or do the ‘flattening out’ in two stages—first view the Newman projection from above or below and draw that; then rotate some of the molecule about a bond if necessary to get the long chain into the plane of the page.

As an illustration of two sorts of diastereoselectivity, our next example is a natural product called penaresidin A. It was isolated from a Japanese sponge in 1991, and has the structure shown below or something like this, because at the time of writing the relative stereochemistry between the two remotely related groups of chiral centres is still not known for sure. What is sure is the stereochemistry around the ring: NMR (the methods of Chapter 32) gives that. What Mori and his co-workers set out to do was to make, using unambiguous stereoselective methods, all the possible diastereoisomers of penaresidin A to discover which was the same as the natural product. It was fairly straightforward to get to the target molecule from the structure below and overleaf, so that’s the compound whose synthesis we need to consider. If we imagine getting the E-alkene by stereoselective reduction of the alkyne, disconnection to an alkynyl anion equivalent reveals an aldehyde with a chiral centre next to the carbonyl group.
How will this aldehyde (which can be made from the amino acid serine) react with nucleophiles such as lithiated alkynes? Consider a Felkin–Anh transition state: again, we know that the nitrogen, being electronegative, will lie perpendicular to the carbonyl group in the most reactive conformation, so we need only consider these two. The least hindered direction of attack is shown, and that indeed gives the required product.

The other two chiral centres need to be controlled separately. The trans relative configuration could be obtained from another amino acid, which itself has two stereogenic centres—isoleucine. The cis was harder. The chemists decided to make it by starting with the cis diol shown, which could come from ring opening of an epoxide with an aluminium reagent. Since the ring opening goes with inversion, the epoxide needs to be cis, so the ultimate starting material was chosen to be a cis allylic alcohol. It turned out that the cis stereochemistry was right.

Chelation can reverse stereoselectivity

You should now be in a position to explain the outcome of this reaction without much difficulty. Sulfur is the electronegative atom, so the conformations we need to consider are the two following. Unhindered attack on the second gives the diastereoisomer shown.
But, from what we have told you so far, the next reaction would present a problem: changing the metal from sodium to zinc has reversed the stereo- selectivity. Using the simple Felkin–Anh model now does not work: it gives the wrong answer.

The reason is that zinc can chelate sulfur and the carbonyl group. Chelation is the coordination of two heteroatoms carrying lone pairs to the same metal atom, and here it changes the conformation of the starting material. No longer does the most reactive or most populated conformation place the electronegative S atom perpendicular to C=O; instead it prefers S to lie as close to the carbonyl oxygen as possible so that Zn can bridge between S and O, like this.

When chelation is possible, this is the conformation to consider—the one with the carbonyl O and the other chelating atom almost eclipsing one another. It is the most populated, because it is stabilized by the chelation, and it is also the most reactive, because the Lewis-acidic metal atom increases the reactivity of the carbonyl group. Attack is still along the less hindered pathway, but this now leads to the other face of the carbonyl group, and the stereochemical outcome is reversed.

Two things are needed for chelation to occur:

• a heteroatom with lone pairs available for coordination to a metal
• a metal ion that prefers to coordinate to more than one heteroatom at once. These are mainly more highly charged ions as shown in the table

Here is another example of a reversal in selectivity that can be explained using a nonchelated Felkin–Anh model with Na⁺ and a chelated model with Mg²⁺.

Not only does chelation control reverse the stereoselectivity, but it gives a much higher degree of stereoselectivity. Stereoselectivities in chelation-controlled additions to C=O groups are typically >95:5. But this fits in nicely with the ideas we presented at the end of the last chapter: stereoselectivity is likely to be high if a cyclic transition state is involved. Chelation involves just such a transition state, so it should be no surprise that it lets us achieve much higher levels of control than the acyclic Felkin–Anh model does.
Chelation, rate, and stereoselectivity

The correlation of rate of addition with diastereoselectivity was demonstrated in a series of experiments that involved reacting Me₂Mg with protected α-hydroxy-ketones. As the protecting group was changed from a methyl ether to a trimethylsilyl ether and then through a series of increasingly bulky silyl ethers, both the rate of the reaction and the diastereoselectivity decreased. With small protecting groups, the reaction takes place through the chelated transition state—the selectivity shows this—and the rate is faster because of the activating effect of the Lewis-acidic magnesium ion. But with larger protecting groups, chelation of Mg²⁺ between the two oxygen atoms is frustrated: the rate drops off, and the selectivity becomes more what would be expected from the Felkin–Anh model.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
<th>Relative rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>&gt;9:1</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiMe₃</td>
<td>99:1</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiEt₃</td>
<td>96:4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiMe₂t-Bu</td>
<td>88:12</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SiPh₂t-Bu</td>
<td>63:37</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si(iPr)₃</td>
<td>42:58</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chelation

- may change the direction of diastereoselectivity
- leads to high levels of diastereoselectivity
- increases the rate of the addition reaction

Chelation is possible through six- as well as five-membered rings, and the reduction of the ketone below is a nice example of the reversal of diastereoselectivity observed when chelating Ce³⁺ ions are added to a normal sodium borohydride reduction. The products were important for making single geometrical isomers of alkenes in a modification of the Wittig reaction (Chapter 31). Notice too how the rate must change: with Ce³⁺ the reaction can be done at –78 °C.

Attack on α-chiral carbonyl compounds: summary

The flow chart summarizes what you should consider when you need to predict or explain the stereochemical outcome of nucleophilic attack on a chiral carbonyl compound.
Stereoselective reactions of acyclic alkenes

Earlier in the chapter we discussed how to make single diastereoisomers by stereospecific additions to double bonds of fixed geometry. But if the alkene also contains a chiral centre there will be a stereoselective aspect to its reactions too: its faces will be diastereotopic, and there will be two possible outcomes even if the reaction is fully stereospecific. Here is an example where the reaction is an epoxidation.

The Houk model

In order to explain reactions of chiral alkenes like this, we need to assess which conformations are important, and consider how they will react, just as we have done for chiral carbonyl compounds. Much of the work on alkene conformations was done by K.N. Houk using theoretical computer models, and we will summarize the most important conclusions of these studies. The theoretical studies looked at two model alkenes, shown in the margin.

The calculations found that the low-energy conformations in each case were those in which a substituent eclipses the double bond. For the simple model alkene 1, the lowest-energy conformation is the one that has the proton in the plane of the alkene. Another low-energy conformation—only 3.1 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) higher—has one of the methyl groups eclipsing the double bond, so that when we start looking at reactions of this type of alkene, we shall have to consider both conformations.

This alkene has two low-energy conformations

---

K.N. Houk works at the University of California in Los Angeles. He has provided explanations for a number of stereochemical results by using powerful computational methods.
For the model alkene 2, with a cis substituent, the conformation is more predictable and the only low-energy conformer is the one with the hydrogen eclipsing the double bond. There is no room for a methyl group to eclipse the double bond because if it did it would get too close to the cis substituent at the other end of the double bond.

The message from the calculations is this:
- The lowest-energy conformation of a chiral alkene will have H eclipsing the double bond
- If there is a cis substituent on the alkene, this will be the only important conformation; if there is no cis substituent, other conformations may be important too

Now we can apply the theoretical model to some real examples.

**Stereoselective epoxidation**

We started this section with a diastereoselective epoxidation of an alkene. The alkene was this one, and it has a substituent cis to the stereogenic centre. We can therefore expect it to have one important conformation, with H eclipsing the double bond. When a reagent—m-CPBA here—attacks this conformation, it will approach the less hindered face, and the outcome is shown.

Without the cis substituent, selectivity is much lower.

$m$-CPBA still attacks the less hindered face of the alkene, but with no cis substituent there are two low-energy conformations: one with H eclipsing the double bond, and one with Me eclipsing. Each gives a different stereochemical result, explaining the low stereoselectivity of the reaction.
You saw at the end of the last chapter that the reactions of \( m \)-CPBA can be directed by hydroxyl groups, and the same thing happens in the reactions of acyclic alkenes. This allylic alcohol epoxidizes to give a 95:5 ratio of diastereoisomers.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\text{cis-substituted alkene}} & \quad \xrightarrow{\text{\text{cis}}-\text{Me}} \quad \text{only important conformer has} \\
& \quad \text{H eclipsing double bond}
\end{align*}
\]

Drawing the reactive conformation explains the result. The thing that counts is the \textit{cis} methyl group: the fact that there is a \textit{trans} one too is irrelevant as it is just too far away from the stereogenic centre to have an effect on the conformation.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Stereoselective enolate alkylation} & \\
\text{Chiral enolates can be made from compounds with a stereogenic centre \( \beta \) to a carbonyl group. Once} & \\
\text{the carbonyl is deprotonated to form the enolate, the stereogenic centre is next to the double} & \\
\text{bond and in a position to control the stereoselectivity of its reactions. The scheme below shows} & \\
\text{stereoselectivity in the reactions of some chiral enolates with methyl iodide.} & \\
\text{The enolate is a \textit{cis}-substituted alkene, because either O\textsuperscript{-} or OEt must be \textit{cis} to the} & \\
\text{stereogenic centre, so that to explain the stereoselectivity, we need consider only the} & \\
\text{conformation with H eclipsing the double bond. Notice how the diastereoselectivity increases as} & \\
\text{the group R gets bigger, because there is then more contrast between the size of Me and R. In each} & \\
\text{case, the electrophile adds to the less hindered face, opposite R.} & \\
\end{align*}
\]
The other diastereoisomer can be made just by having the methyl group in place first and then protonating the enolate. The selectivities are lower (because a proton is small), but this does illustrate the way in which reversing the order of introduction of two groups can reverse the stereochemical outcome of the reaction.

**Aldol reactions can be stereoselective**

In Chapter 27 you met the **aldol reaction**: reaction of an enolate with an aldehyde or a ketone. Many of the examples you saw approximated to this general pattern.

Only one new stereogenic centre is created, so there is no question of diastereoselectivity. But with substituted enolates, two new stereogenic centres are created, and we need to be able to predict which diastereoisomer will be formed. Here is an example from p. 000. We did not consider stereochemistry at that stage, but we can now reveal that the syn diastereoisomer is the major product of the reaction.

The important point about substituted enolates is that they can exist as two geometrical isomers, cis or trans. Which enolate is formed is an important factor controlling the diastereoselectivity because it turns out that, in many examples of the aldol reaction, cis-enolates give syn aldols preferentially and trans-enolates give anti aldols preferentially.
Diastereoselectivity in aldol reactions

Generally (but certainly not always!) in aldol reactions:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cis-enolate} & \quad \text{trans-enolate} \\
\text{oLi} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{R} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{R} \\
\text{cis} & \quad \text{syn aldol} & \quad \text{anti} & \quad \text{aldol}
\end{align*}
\]

Let’s start by showing some examples and demonstrating how we know this to be the case. Some enolates can only exist as \textit{trans}-enolates because they are derived from cyclic ketones. This enolate, for example, reacts with aldehydes to give only the \textit{anti} aldol product.

If we choose the group ‘X’, next to the carbonyl group, to be large, then we can be sure of getting just the \textit{cis}-enolate. So, for example, the lithium enolate of this \textit{t}-butyl ketone forms just as one geometrical isomer, and reacts with aldols to give only the \textit{syn} aldol product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cis-enolate avoids Me and coming into contact} & \quad \text{t-Bu} \\
\text{oLi} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} & \quad \text{Me} \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{cis} & \quad \text{syn aldol} & \quad \text{anti} & \quad \text{aldol}
\end{align*}
\]

cis and trans, \textit{E} and \textit{Z}, \textit{syn} and \textit{anti}

Before going further, there are two points we must clarify. The first is a problem of nomenclature, and concerns the enolates of esters. Here are two closely related ester enolate equivalents, drawn with the same double bond geometry. Is it \textit{E} or \textit{Z}?

The answer is both! For the Li enolate, the usual rule makes OLi of lower priority than OMe, so it’s \textit{E}, while the silyl enol ether (or ‘silyl ketene acetal’) has OSI of higher priority than OMe, so it’s \textit{Z}. This is merely a nomenclature problem, but it would be irritating to have to reverse all our arguments for lithium enolates simply because lithium is of lower atomic number than carbon. So, for the sake of consistency, it is much better to avoid the use of \textit{E} and \textit{Z} with enolates and instead use \textit{cis} and \textit{trans}, which then always refer to the relationship between the substituent and the anionic oxygen (bearing the metal).

The other point concerns \textit{syn} and \textit{anti}. We said earlier that there is no precise definition of these terms: they are a useful way of distinguishing two diastereoisomers provided the structure of at least one of them is presented in diagrammatic form. For aldol products the convention is that \textit{syn} or \textit{anti} refers to the enolate substituent (the green Me in the last example) and the new hydroxyl group, provided the main chain is in the plane of the paper, the way we have encouraged you to draw molecules.
The aldol reaction has a chair-like transition state

These are the experimental facts: how can we explain them? Aldol reactions are another class of stereoselective process with a cyclic transition state. During the reaction, the lithium is transferred from the enolate oxygen to the oxygen of the carbonyl electrophile. This is represented in the margin both in curly arrow terms and as a transition state structure.

A six-membered ring is involved, and we can expect this ring to adopt more or less a chair conformation. The easiest way to draw this is first to draw the chair, and then convert atoms to O or Li as necessary. Here it is.

In drawing this chair, we have one choice: do we allow the aldehyde to place R equatorial or axial? Both are possible but, as you should now expect, there are fewer steric interactions if R is equatorial. Note that the enolate doesn’t have the luxury of choice. If it is to have three atoms in the six-membered ring, as it must, it can do nothing but place the methyl group pseudoaxial.

The aldol formed from the favoured transition state structure, with R pseudoequatorial, is shown below—first in the conformation of the transition state, and then flattened out on to the page, and it is syn.

We can do the same for a trans-enolate. The enolate has no choice but to put its methyl substituent pseudoequatorial, but the aldehyde can choose either pseudoequatorial or pseudoaxial. Again, pseudoaxial is better

and the reaction gives the product shown—the anti aldol.

Stereoselective enolization is needed for stereoselective aldols

The cyclic transition state explains how enolate geometry controls the stereochemical outcome of the aldol reaction. But what controls the geometry of the enolate? For lithium enolates of ketones the most important factor is the size of the group that is not enolized. Large groups force the enolate to adopt the cis geometry; small groups allow the trans-enolate to form. Because we can’t separate the lithium enolates, we just have to accept that the reactions of ketones with small R will be less diastereoselective.
With boron enolates, we don’t have to rely on the structure of the substrate—we choose the groups on boron—and we can get either cis or trans depending on which groups these are. Boron enolates are made by treating the ketone with an amine base (often Et₃N or i-PrNEt₂) and R₂B–X, where X⁻ is a good leaving group such as chloride or triflate (CF₃SO₂⁻). With bulky groups on boron, such as two cyclohexyl groups, a trans-enolate forms from most ketones. The boron enolate reacts reliably with aldehydes to give anti aldol products through the same six-membered transition state that you saw for lithium enolates.

With smaller B substituents, the cis-enolate forms selectively. Here, the boron is part of a bicyclic structure known as 9-BBN (9-borabicyclononane—you will meet this in Chapter 47). The bicyclic part may look large but, as far as the rest of the molecule is concerned, it’s ‘tied back’ behind the boron, and the methyl group can easily lie cis to oxygen. The cis-enolate then gives syn aldol products. Di-n-butylboron triflate (Bu₂BOTf) also gives cis-enolates.

Stereoselective ester aldols

We have talked mainly about aldol reactions of ketones (as the enolate component). Esters usually form the trans lithium enolates quite stereoselectively. You might therefore imagine that their aldol reactions would be stereoselective for the anti product. Unfortunately, this is not the case, and even pure trans-enolate gives about a 1:1 mixture of syn and anti aldols.

There is one important exception, and that is a class of esters of hindered phenols. The trans-enolates of these compounds react selectively with aldehydes to give the anti aldol products.

In fact, geometrically define boron enolates give the aldol products with greater stereospecificity than do lithium enolates, possibly because the B–O bonds are shorter than Li–O bonds, so the six-membered ring is ‘tighter’.
An ingenious way of getting a \textit{syn} ester aldol product is to do the more reliable ketone \textit{syn} aldol with a bulky group (to ensure the \textit{cis}-enolate is formed) and then to oxidize off the bulky group. Here’s what we mean. The starting material is very like the \textit{t}-butyl ketone that you saw enolize stereoselectively above: only the \textit{cis}-enolate can form. The enolate reacts highly \textit{syn} selectively with the aldehyde, via the six-membered transition state.

At this point, the bulky group is no longer needed. The oxygen is deprotected in acid and, in the same step, periodate ions oxidatively cleave the C–C bond between the two oxygen substituents. The product is the acid parent of a \textit{syn} ester aldol product.

We shall show you the mechanism of the cleavage, because it leads us nicely into the next chapter. The first step is rather like the first step of many oxidations—formation of an inorganic ester (here a periodate). The periodate can form a cyclic ester by attack on the carbonyl group. Next, we can push the arrows round the ring to reduce the iodine from I(VII) to I(V), cleave the double bond, and generate acetone and the acid.

You will see many more cyclic mechanisms in the next two chapters, including some more C–C cleavage reactions.

\textbf{Summary: How to make \textit{syn} and \textit{anti} aldols}

To make \textit{syn} aldols of ketones:
- with a ketone RCOEt with bulky R, use lithium enolate
- use boron enolate with 9-BBN-OTf or Bu₂BOTf

To make \textit{syn} aldols of esters:
- use a bulky 2-alkoxyketone and cleave to an acid

To make \textit{anti} aldols of ketones:
- with a cyclic ketone, use lithium enolate
- use boron enolate with dicyclohexylboron chloride

To make \textit{anti} aldols of esters:
- use the ester of a hindered phenol
Problems

1. How would you make each diastereoisomer of this product from the same alkene?

2. Explain the stereoselectivity shown in this sequence of reactions.

3. How is the relative stereochemistry of this product controlled? Why was this method chosen?

4. Explain the stereochemical control in this reaction, drawing all the intermediates.

5. When this hydroxy-ester is treated with a twofold excess of LDA and then alkylated, one diastereoisomer of the product predominates. Why?

6. Explain how the stereochemistry of this epoxide is controlled.

7. Explain how these two reactions give different diastereoisomers of the product.

8. Explain the stereoselectivity in this reaction. What isomer of an epoxide would be produced on treatment of the product with base?

9. How could this cyclic compound be used to produce the open-chain compound with correct relative stereochemistry?

10. How would you transform this alkene stereoselectively into either of the diastereoisomers of the amino-alcohol?

11. Explain the formation of essentially one stereoisomer in this reaction.

12. How would you attempt to transform this allylic alcohol into both diastereoisomers of the epoxide stereoselectively? You are not expected to estimate the degree of success.
13. Revision. Here is an outline of the AstraZeneca synthesis of a thromboxane analogue. Explain the reactions, giving mechanisms for each step, and explain how the stereochemistry is controlled. In what way could this be considered an example of the control of open-chain stereochemistry when all of the molecules are cyclic?
A new sort of reaction

Most organic reactions are ionic. Electrons move from an electron-rich atom towards an electron-poor atom: anions or cations are intermediates. Formation of a cyclic ester (a lactone) is an example.

The reaction involves five steps and four intermediates. The reaction is acid-catalysed and each intermediate is a cation. Electrons flow in one direction in each step—towards the positive charge. This is an ionic reaction.

This chapter is about a totally different reaction type. Electrons move round a circle and there are no positive or negative charges on any intermediates—indeed, there are no intermediates at all. This type of reaction is called pericyclic. The most famous example is the Diels–Alder reaction.

In Chapter 39 you will meet a third category—radical reactions—in which one electron instead of two is on the move.

Otto Diels (1876–1954) and his research student Kurt Alder (1902–58) worked at the University of Kiel and discovered this reaction in 1928. They won the Nobel Prize in 1950. Diels also discovered the existence of carbon suboxide, \( \text{C}_2\text{O}_3 \) (see p. 000).
This reaction goes in a single step simply on heating. We can draw the mechanism with the electrons going round a six-membered ring.

Each arrow leads directly to the next, and the last arrow connects to the first. We have drawn the electrons rotating clockwise, but it would make no difference at all if we drew the electrons rotating anticlockwise.

Both mechanisms are equally correct. The electrons do not really rotate at all. In reality two $\pi$ bonds disappear and two $\sigma$ bonds take their place by the electrons moving smoothly out of the $\pi$ orbitals into the $\sigma$ orbitals. Such a reaction is called a cycloaddition. We must spend some time working out how this could happen.

First, just consider the orbitals that overlap to form the new bonds. Providing the reagents approach in the right way, nothing could be simpler.

The black $p$ orbitals are perfectly aligned to make a new $\sigma$ bond as are the two green orbitals, while the two brown orbitals are exactly right for the new $\pi$ bond at the back of the ring. As this is a one-step reaction there are no intermediates but there is one transition state looking something like this.

One reason that the Diels–Alder reaction goes so well is that the transition state has six delocalized $\pi$ electrons and thus is aromatic in character, having some of the special stabilization of benzene. You could look at it as a benzene ring having all its $\pi$ bonds but missing two $\sigma$ bonds. This simple picture is fine as far as it goes, but it is incomplete. We shall return to a more detailed orbital analysis when we have described the reaction in more detail.

**Captan**

One important industrial application of the Diels–Alder reaction we have been discussing is in the synthesis of the agricultural fungicide Captan.
General description of the Diels–Alder reaction

Diels–Alder reactions occur between a conjugated diene and an alkene, usually called the dienophile. Here are some examples: first an open-chain diene with a simple unsaturated aldehyde as the dienophile.

\[
\text{diene} \quad \text{dienophile} \quad \text{product}
\]

The mechanism is the same and a new six-membered ring is formed having one double bond. Now a reaction between a cyclic diene and a nitroalkene.

\[
\text{diene} \quad \text{dienophile} \quad \text{product}
\]

The mechanism leads clearly to the first drawing of the product but this is a cage structure and the second drawing is better. The new six-membered ring is outlined in black in both diagrams. Now a more elaborate example to show that quite complex molecules can be quickly assembled with this wonderful reaction.

The diene

The diene component in the Diels–Alder reaction can be open-chain or cyclic and it can have many different kinds of substituents. There is only one limitation: it must be able to take up the conformation shown in the mechanism. Butadiene normally prefers the s-trans conformation with the two double bonds as far away from each other as possible for steric reasons. The barrier to rotation about the central \(\sigma\) bond is small (about 30 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) at room temperature: see Chapter 18) and rotation to the less favourable but reactive s-cis conformation is rapid.

Cyclic dienes that are permanently in the s-cis conformation are exceptionally good at Diels–Alder reactions—cyclopentadiene is a classic example—but cyclic dienes that are permanently in the s-trans conformation and cannot adopt the s-cis conformation will not do the Diels–Alder reaction at all. The two ends of these dienes cannot get close enough to react with...
an alkene and, in any case, the product would have an impossible \textit{trans} double bond in the new six-membered ring. (In the Diels–Alder reaction, the old \(\sigma\) bond in the centre of the diene becomes a \(\pi\) bond in the product and the conformation of that \(\sigma\) bond becomes the configuration of the new \(\pi\) bond in the product.)

\section*{The dienophile}

The dienophiles you have seen in action so far all have one thing in common. They have an electron-withdrawing group conjugated to the alkene. This is a common though not exclusive feature of Diels–Alder dienophiles. There must be some extra conjugation—at least a phenyl group or a chlorine atom—or the cycloaddition does not occur. You will often see the reaction between butadiene and a simple alkene (even ethylene) given in books as the basic Diels–Alder reaction. This occurs in only poor yield. Attempts to combine even such a reactive diene as cyclopentadiene with a simple alkene lead instead to the dimerization of the diene. One molecule acts as the diene and the other as the dienophile to give the cage structure shown.

\section*{Cyclopentadiene}

Cyclopentadiene is formed in considerable amounts during the refining of petroleum. It exists as its dimer at room temperature but can be dissociated into the monomer on heating—the effect of the increased importance of entropy at higher temperatures (Chapter 13). It can be chlorinated to give hexachlorocyclopentadiene, and the Diels–Alder product of this diene with maleic anhydride is a flame retardant.

Simple alkenes that do undergo the Diels-Alder reaction include conjugated carbonyl compounds, nitro compounds, nitriles, sulfones, aryl alkenes, vinyl ethers and esters, haloalkenes, and dienes. In addition to those you have seen so far, a few examples are shown in the margin. In the last example it is the isolated double bond in the right-hand ring that accepts the diene. Conjugation with the left-hand ring activates this alkene. But what exactly do we mean by ‘activate’ in this sense? We shall return to that question in a minute.
Recognizing a Diels–Alder product is straightforward. Look for the six-membered ring, the double bond inside the ring, and the conjugating group outside the ring and on the opposite side of the ring from the alkene. These three features mean that the compound is a possible Diels–Alder product.

The simplest way to find the starting materials is to carry out a disconnection that is closer to a real reaction than most. Just draw the reverse Diels–Alder reaction. To do this, draw three arrows going round the cyclohexene ring starting the first arrow in the middle of the double bond. It doesn’t, of course, matter which way round you go.

The reaction couldn’t be simpler—just heat the components together without solvent or catalyst. Temperatures of around 100–150 °C are often needed and this may mean using a sealed tube if the reagents are volatile, as here.

Stereochemistry
The Diels–Alder reaction is stereospecific. If there is stereochemistry in the dienophile, then it is faithfully reproduced in the product. Thus cis and trans dienophiles give different diastereoisomers of the product. Esters of maleic and fumaric acids provide a simple example.
In both cases the ester groups simply stay where they are. They are *cis* in the dienophile in the first reaction and remain *cis* in the product. They are *trans* in the dienophile in the second reaction and remain *trans* in the product. The second example may look less convincing—may we remind you that the diene actually comes down on top of the dienophile like this.

One of the CO$_2$Me groups is tucked under the diene in the transitions state and then, when the product molecule is flattened out in the last drawing, that CO$_2$Me group appears underneath the ring. The orange hydrogen atom remains *cis* to the other CO$_2$Me group.

The search by the Parke–Davis company for drugs to treat strokes provided an interesting application of dienophile stereochemistry. The kinds of compound they wanted were tricyclic amines. They don’t look like Diels–Alder products at all. But if we insert a double bond in the right place in the six-membered ring, Diels–Alder (D–A) disconnection becomes possible.

Butadiene is a good diene, but the enamine required is not a good dienophile. An electron-withdrawing group such as a carbonyl or nitro group is preferable: either would do the job. In the event a carboxylic acid that could be converted into the amine by a rearrangement with Ph$_2$PON$_3$ (see Chapter 40) was used.

The stereochemistry at the ring junction must be *cis* because the cyclic dienophile can have only a *cis* double bond. Hydrogenation removes the double bond in the product and shows just how useful the Diels–Alder reaction is for making saturated rings, particularly when there is some stereochemistry to be controlled.

**Stereochemistry of the diene**

This is slightly more complicated as the diene can be *cis, cis*, or *cis, trans* (there are two of these if the diene is unsymmetrical) or *trans, trans*. We shall look at each case with the same dienophile, an acetylenedicarboxylate, as there is then no stereochemistry in the triple bond! Starting with *cis, cis*-dienes is easy if we make the diene cyclic.
The diene has two sets of substituents—inside and outside. The inside one is the bridging CH₂ group and it has to end up on one side of the molecule (above in the last diagram) while the two green hydrogens are outside and remain so. In the final diagram they are below the new six-membered ring.

With a trans, trans-diene we simply exchange the two sets of substituents, in this example putting Ph where H was and putting H where the bridging CH₂ group was. This is the reaction.

![Chemical diagram](image)

The green Ph groups end up where the hydrogens were in the first example—beneath the new six-membered ring—and the hydrogens end up above. It may seem puzzling at first that a trans, trans-diene gives a product with the two phenyls cis. Another way to look at these two reactions is to consider their symmetry. Both have a plane of symmetry throughout and the products must have this symmetry too because the reaction is concerted and no significant movement of substituents can occur. The black dotted line shows the plane of symmetry, which is at right angles to the paper.

![Chemical diagram](image)

The remaining case—the cis, trans-diene—is rarer than the first two, but is met sometimes. This is the unsymmetrical case and the two substituents clearly end up on opposite sides of the new six-membered ring.

![Chemical diagram](image)

The red R group may seem to get in the way of the reaction but, of course, the dienophile is not approaching in the plane of the diene but from underneath. It is difficult to find a convincing example of this stereochemistry as there are so few known, partly because of the difficulty of making E,Z-dienes. One good approach uses two reactions you met in Chapter 31 for the control of double bond geometry. The cis double bond is put in first by the addition of methanol to butadiyne and the trans double bond then comes from LiAlH₄ reduction of the intermediate acetylenic alcohol.

![Chemical diagram](image)

The acetate of this alcohol is used in a Diels–Alder reaction with the interesting dienophile DEAD (diethyl azodicarboxylate—in orange).
The product is formed in excellent yield and has the trans stereochemistry that was predicted. Do not be misled into thinking that DEAD is being shown with stereochemistry—it has none—and in the product the amide nitrogen atoms are planar and there is no stereochemistry there.

Now to the most interesting cases of all, when both the diene and the dienophile have stereochemistry.

**The endo rule for the Diels–Alder reaction**

It is probably easier to see this when both the diene and the dienophile are cyclic. All the double bonds are cis and the stereochemistry is clearer. In the most famous Diels–Alder reaction of all time, that between cyclopentadiene and maleic anhydride, there are two possible products that obey all the rules we have so far described.

The two green hydrogen atoms must be cis in the product but there are two possible products in which these Hs are cis. They are called exo and endo.

The product is, in fact, the endo compound. This is impressive not only because only one diastereoisomer is formed but also because it is the less stable one. How do we know this? Well, if the Diels–Alder reaction is reversible and therefore under thermodynamic control, the exo product is formed instead. The best known example results from the replacement of cyclopentadiene with furan in reaction with the same dienophile.

Why is the exo product the more stable? Look again at these two structures. On the left-hand side of the molecules, there are two bridges across the ends of the new bonds (highlighted in black): a one-C-atom bridge and a two-C-atom bridge. There is less steric hindrance if the smaller (that is, the one-atom) bridge eclipses the anhydride ring.

The endo product is less stable than the exo product and yet it is preferred in irreversible Diels–Alder reactions—it must be the kinetic product of the reaction. It is preferred because there is a bonding interaction between the carbonyl groups of the dienophile and the developing π bond at the back of the diene. (The black bonds are the new σ bonds between the two reagents.)
The same result is found with noncyclic dienes and dienophiles—normally one diastereoisomer is preferred and it is the one with the carbonyl groups of the dienophile closest to the developing $\pi$ bond at the back of the diene. Here is an example.

From our previous discussion we expect the two methyl groups to be cis to each other and the only question remaining is the stereochemistry of the aldehyde group—up or down? The aldehyde will be endo—but which compound is that? The easiest way to find the answer is to draw the reagents coming together in three dimensions. Here is one way to do this.

1. Draw the mechanism of the reaction and diagrams of the product to show what you are trying to decide. Put in the known stereochemistry if you wish.

2. Draw both molecules in the plane of the paper with the diene on top and the carbonyl group of the dienophile tucked under the diene so it can be close to the developing $\pi$-bond.

3. Now draw in all the hydrogen atoms on the carbon atoms that are going to become stereogenic centres, that is, those shown in green here.

4. Draw a diagram of the product. All the substituents to the right in the previous diagram are on one side of the new molecule. That is, all the green hydrogen atoms are cis to each other.

5. Draw a final diagram of the product with the stereochemistry of the other substituents shown too in the usual way. This is the endo product of the Diels–Alder reaction.

If you prefer, you may draw a three-dimensional representation of the reagents coming together, rather like the ones we have been drawing earlier in the chapter. You may indeed prefer to invent a method of your own—it does not matter which method you choose providing that you can quickly decide on the structure of the endo adduct in any given Diels–Alder reaction.
Time for some explanations

We have accumulated rather a lot of unexplained results.

- Why does the Diels–Alder reaction work so well?
- Why must we have a conjugating group on the dienophile?
- Why is the stereochemistry of each component retained so faithfully?
- Why is the endo product preferred kinetically?

There is more. The simpler picture we met earlier in this chapter also fails to explain why the Diels–Alder reaction occurs simply on heating while attempted additions of simple alkenes (rather than dienes) to maleic anhydride fail on heating but succeed under irradiation with UV light.

We shall now explain all this in one section using frontier molecular orbitals. Of all the kinds of organic reactions, pericyclic ones are the most tightly controlled by orbitals, and the development of the ideas we are about to expound is one of the greatest triumphs of modern theoretical chemistry. It is a beautiful and satisfying set of ideas based on very simple principles.

The frontier orbital description of cycloadditions

When an ionic cyclization reaction occurs, such as the lactonization at the head of this chapter, one important new bond is formed. It is enough to combine one full orbital with one empty orbital to make the new bond. But in a cycloaddition two new bonds are formed at the same time. We have to arrange for two filled p orbitals and two empty p orbitals to be available at the right place and with the right symmetry. See what happens if we draw the orbitals for the reaction above. We could try the HOMO (π) of the alkene and the LUMO (π*) of the double bond in the anhydride.

This combination is bonding at one end, but antibonding at the other so that no cycloaddition reaction occurs. It obviously doesn’t help to use the other HOMO/LUMO pair as they will have the same mismatched symmetry.

Now see what happens when we replace the alkene with a diene. We shall again use the LUMO of the electron-poor anhydride.

Now the symmetry is right because there is a node in the middle of the HOMO of the diene (the HOMO is $\Psi_2$ of the diene) just as there is in the LUMO of the dienophile. If we had tried the opposite arrangement, the LUMO of the diene and the HOMO of the dienophile, the symmetry would again be right.

Now the LUMO of the diene has two nodes and gives the same symmetry as the HOMO of the dienophile, which has no nodes. So either combination is excellent. In fact most Diels–Alder reactions use electron-deficient dienophiles and electron-rich dienes so we prefer the first arrangement. The electron-deficient dienophile has a low-energy LUMO and the electron-rich diene has a high-energy HOMO so that this combination gives a better overlap in the transition state. The energy levels will be like this.
This is why we usually use dienophiles with conjugating groups for good Diels–Alder reactions. Dienes react rapidly with electrophiles because their HOMOs are relatively high in energy, but simple alkenes have relatively high-energy LUMOs and do not react well with nucleophiles. The most effective modification we can make is to lower the alkene LUMO energy by conjugating the double bond with an electron-withdrawing group such as carbonyl or nitro. These are the most common type of Diels–Alder reactions—between electron-rich dienes and electron-deficient dienophiles.

Dimerizations of dienes by cycloaddition reactions

Because dienes have relatively high-energy HOMOs and low-energy LUMOs they should be able to take part in cycloadditions with themselves. And they do. What they cannot do is form an eight-membered ring in one step (though this is possible photochemically or with transition metal catalysis as we shall see later).

You should have expected this failure because the ends of the required orbitals must again have the wrong symmetry, just as they had when we tried the alkene dimerization.

Dienes do dimerize, but by a Diels–Alder reaction.
One molecule of the diene acts as a dienophile. Now the symmetry is correct again.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
    \node (a) at (0,0) {HOMO of diene};
    \node (b) at (1,1) {bonding};
    \node (c) at (2,2) {heat};
    \node (d) at (3,3) {LUMO of diene};
    \draw[->] (a) -- (b); \draw[->] (b) -- (c); \draw[->] (c) -- (d);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

**Count the number of \( \pi \) electrons**

- The cycloadditions that *do* occur thermally, for example, the Diels–Alder reaction, have \((4n + 2\ \pi)\) electrons in their ‘aromatic’ transition states.
- The cycloadditions that *do not* occur thermally, for example the dimerization of alkenes and of dienes, have \(4n\ \pi\) electrons in their ‘anti-aromatic’ transition states.

**The Diels–Alder reaction in more detail**

The orbital explanation for the *endo* rule in Diels–Alder reactions

We are going to use a diene as dienophile to explain the formation of *endo* products. The diene serves as a good model for the very wide variety of dienophiles because the one thing they all have in common is a conjugating group and a second alkene is the simplest of these. To make matters even easier we shall look at the dimerization of a cyclic diene; we might almost say the cyclic diene—cyclopentadiene. We introduced this reaction above where we simply stated that there was a favourable electronic interaction between the conjugating group on the dienophile and the back of the diene in the *endo* product though we did not explain it at the time.

If we now draw the frontier orbitals in the two components as they come together for the reaction, we can see first of all that the symmetry is correct for bond formation.

Now we shall look at that same diagram again but replace with orange dashed lines the orbitals that are overlapping to form the new \(\sigma\) bonds so that we can see what is happening at the back of the diene.

The symmetry of the orbitals is correct for a bonding interaction at the back of the diene too. This interaction does not lead to the formation of any new bonds but it leaves its imprint in the stereochemistry of the product. The *endo* product is favoured because of this favourable interaction across the space between the orbitals even though no bonds are formed.
The solvent in the Diels–Alder reaction

We discussed some effects of varying the solvent in Chapter 13, and we shall now introduce a remarkable and useful special solvent effect in the Diels–Alder reaction. The reaction does not need a solvent and often the two reagents are just mixed together and heated. Solvents can be used but, because there are no ionic intermediates, it seems obvious that which solvent is unimportant—any solvent that simply dissolves both reagents will do. This is, in general, true and hydrocarbon solvents are often the best.

However, in the 1980s an extraordinary discovery was made. Water, a most unlikely solvent for most organic reactions, has a large accelerating effect on the Diels–Alder reaction. Even some water added to an organic solvent accelerates the reaction. And that is not all. The \textit{endo} selectivity of these reactions is often superior to those in no solvent or in a hydrocarbon solvent. Here is a simple example.

\[ \text{endo product} \quad \text{exo product} \]

The suggestion is that the reagents, which are not soluble in water, are clumped together in oily drops by the water and forced into close proximity. Water is not exactly a solvent—it is almost an anti-solvent!

Water-soluble dienes are also used in Diels–Alder reactions in water and they too work very well. Sodium salts of carboxylic acids and protonated amines both behave well under these conditions. Presumably, the soluble tail is in the water but the diene itself is inside the oily drops with the dienophile. In this example an aminodiene reacts with a quinone dienophile.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{oil} + \text{H}_2\text{O} & \rightarrow \text{hydrocarbon product} \\
\text{water-soluble diene} + \text{soluble dienophile} & \rightarrow \text{water-soluble product}
\end{align*}
\]

A single regio- and stereoisomer was formed in essentially quantitative yield and the stereochemistry was easily proved by NMR using NOE (Chapter 32). Irradiation at the black methyl group in the middle of the molecule gave strong NOEs to the two green hydrogen atoms, which must therefore be on the same side of the molecule as the methyl group.

Intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions

When the diene and the dienophile are already part of the same molecule it is not so important for them to be held together by bonding interactions across space and the \textit{exo} product is often preferred.
Indeed, it seems that intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions are governed more by normal steric considerations than by the *endo* rule. 

This reaction happens only because it is intramolecular. There is no conjugating group attached to the dienophile and so there are no orbitals to overlap with the back of the diene. The molecule simply folds up in the sterically most favourable way (as shown in the margin, with the linking chain adopting a chair-like conformation) and this leads to the *trans* ring junction.

In the next example there is a carbonyl group conjugated with the dienophile. Now the less stable *cis* ring junction is formed because the molecule can fold so that the carbonyl group can enjoy a bonding overlap with the back of the diene. This time the linking chain has to adopt a boat-like conformation.

If, on the other hand, we give the dienophile a conjugating group at the other end of the double bond, stereoselectivity is lost. The *cis*-alkene dienophile gives stereospecific addition—in each product the CO₂Me is *cis* to the alkyl chain (and therefore *trans* to the H atom). But we get about a 50:50 mixture of *endo* and *exo* products. This does not seem to be because there is anything wrong with the transition state for *endo* addition, which leads in this case to *cis*-fused rings.

Similarly, with the *trans*-alkene, two products are formed and both retain the *trans* geometry of the dienophile. But once again a nearly 50:50 mixture of *endo* and *exo* products is formed.

Folding the molecule so that the *endo* product would be formed does not again seem to present any problem. Presumably, either the carbonyl group of the ester is too far away from the diene to be effective or else it is simply that the advantage of the *endo* arrangement is not worth having in intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions.
Regioselectivity in Diels–Alder reactions

The compounds that we are now calling dienophiles were the stars of Chapters 10, 23, and 29 where we called them Michael acceptors as they were the electrophilic partners in conjugate addition reactions. Nucleophiles always add to the β carbon atoms of these alkenes because the product is then a stable enolate. Ordinary alkenes do not react with nucleophiles.

In frontier orbital terms this is because conjugation with a carbonyl group lowers the energy of the LUMO (the $\pi^*$ orbital of the alkene) and at the same time distorts it so that the coefficient on the β carbon atom is larger than that on the α carbon atom. Nucleophiles approach the conjugated alkene along the axis of the large p orbital of the β carbon atom.

These same features can ensure regioselective Diels–Alder reactions. The same orbital of the dienophile is used and, if the HOMO of the diene is also unsymmetrical, the regioselectivity of the reaction will be controlled by the two largest coefficients bonding together.

So what about distortion of the HOMO in the diene? If a diene reacts with an electrophile, the largest coefficient in the HOMO will direct the reaction. Consider the attack of HBr on a diene. We should expect attack at the ends of the diene because that gives the most stable possible cation—an allyl cation as an intermediate.

In orbital terms attack occurs at the ends of the diene because the coefficients in the HOMO are larger there. We need simply to look at the HOMO ($\Psi_2$) of butadiene to see this.

So it is not surprising that the dienes react in the Diels–Alder reaction through their end carbons. But supposing the two ends are different—which reacts now? We can again turn to the reaction with HBr as a guide. Addition of HBr to an unsymmetrical diene will give the more stable of the two possible allyl cations as the intermediate.
In orbital terms, this clearly means that the HOMO of the diene is distorted so that the end that reacts has the larger coefficient.

When the unsymmetrical diene and the unsymmetrical dienophile combine in a Diels–Alder reaction, the reaction itself becomes unsymmetrical. It remains concerted but, in the transition state, bond formation between the largest coefficients in each partner is more advanced and this determines the regioselectivity of the reaction.

The simplest way to decide which product will be formed is to draw an ‘ionic’ stepwise mechanism for the reaction to establish which end of the diene will react with which end of the dienophile. Of course this stepwise mechanism is not completely correct but it does lead to the correct orientation of the reagents and you can draw the right mechanism afterwards. As an example we shall look at a diene with a substituent in the middle. This is the reaction.

First decide where the diene will act as a nucleophile and where the diene will act as an electrophile.

Now draw the reagents in the correct orientation for these two ends to combine and draw a concerted Diels–Alder reaction.

This is an important example because an enol ether functional group is present in the product and this can be hydrolysed to a ketone in aqueous acid (see Chapter 21).

**Summary of regioselectivity in Diels–Alder reactions**

The important substitution patterns are: a diene with an electron-donating group (X) at one end or in the middle and a dienophile with an electron-withdrawing group (Z) at one end. These are the products formed.
Regioselectivity in Diels–Alder reactions

If you prefer a rule to remember, try this one.

- The Diels–Alder reaction is a cycloaddition with an aromatic transition state that is ortho and para directing

You can see that this mnemonic works if you look at the two products above: the first has the two substituents X and Z on neighbouring carbon atoms, just like ortho substituents on a benzene ring, while the second has X and Z on opposite sides of the ring, just like para substituents.

Lewis acid catalysis in Diels–Alder reactions

Where the reagents are unsymmetrical, a Lewis acid that can bind to the electron-withdrawing group of the dienophile often catalyses the reaction by lowering the LUMO of the dienophile still further. It has another important advantage: it increases the difference between the coefficients in the LUMO (a Lewis-acid complexed carbonyl group is a more powerful electron-withdrawing group) and may increase regioselectivity.

This Diels–Alder reaction is useful because it produces a substitution pattern (‘para’) common in natural terpenes (Chapter 51). But the regioselectivity introduced by one methyl group on the diene is not very great—this reaction gives a 71:29 mixture when the two compounds are heated together at 120 °C in a sealed tube. In the presence of the Lewis acid (SnCl₄) the reaction can be carried out at lower temperatures (below 25 °C) without a sealed tube and the regioselectivity improves to 93:7.

Regioselectivity in intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions

Just as the stereoselectivity may be compromised in intramolecular reactions, so may the regioselectivity. It may be simply impossible for the reagents to get together in the ‘right’ orientation. The examples below have a very short chain—just three carbon atoms—joining diene to dienophile and so the same regioselectivity is found regardless of the position of the conjugating carbonyl group.
The first example has the ‘right’ orientation (‘ortho’) but the second has the ‘wrong’ orientation (‘meta’). In real life there is no prospect of any other orientation and, as the reaction is intramolecular, it goes anyway. Notice the lower temperature required for the Lewis acid (ROAlCl₂)-catalysed reaction.

The Woodward–Hoffmann description of the Diels–Alder reaction

Kenichi Fukui and Roald Hoffmann won the Nobel prize in 1981 (Woodward died in 1979 and so couldn’t share this prize: he had already won the Nobel prize in 1965 for his work on synthesis) for the application of orbital symmetry to pericyclic reactions. Theirs is an alternative description to the frontier orbital method we have used and you need to know a little about it. They considered a more fundamental correlation between the symmetry of all the orbitals in the starting materials and all the orbitals in the products. This is rather too complex for our consideration here, and we shall concentrate only on a summary of the conclusions—the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. The most important of these states:

- **Woodward–Hoffmann rules**

  In a thermal pericyclic reaction the total number of \((4q + 2)\) and \((4r)\) components must be odd.

This needs some explanation. A **component** is a bond or orbital taking part in a pericyclic reaction as a single unit. A double bond is a \(\pi^2\) component. The number 2 is the most important part of this designation and simply refers to the number of electrons. The prefix \(\pi\) tells us the type of electrons. A component may have any number of electrons (a diene is a \(\pi^4\) component) but may not have mixtures of \(\pi\) and \(\sigma\) electrons. Now look back at the rule. Those mysterious designations \((4q + 2)\) and \((4r)\) simply refer to the number of electrons in the component where \(q\) and \(r\) are integers. An alkene is a \(\pi^2\) component and so it is of the \((4q + 2)\) kind while a diene is a \(\pi^4\) component and so is of the \((4r)\) kind.

Now what about the suffixes ‘s’ and ‘a’? The suffix ‘s’ stands for suprafacial and ‘a’ for antarafacial. A **suprafacial** component forms new bonds on the same face at both ends while an **antarafacial** component forms new bonds on opposite faces at both ends. See how this works for the Diels–Alder reaction. Here is the routine.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction (we shall choose a general one)

2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!)

4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Coloured dotted lines are often used

---

**You have already seen the significance of** \(4n\) **and** \(4n + 2\) **numbers in aromaticity.**

**Please note—these orbitals are just** \(p\) **orbitals, and do not make up HOMOs or LUMOs or any particular molecular orbital. Do not attempt to mix frontier orbital and Woodward–Hoffmann descriptions of pericyclic reactions.**
5. Label each component s or a depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides.

6. Count the number of \((4q + 2)_s\) and \((4r)_a\) components. If the total count is odd, the reaction is allowed.

You may well feel that there is very little to be gained from the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment of the Diels–Alder reaction. It does not explain the *endo* selectivity nor the regioselectivity. However, the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment of other pericyclic reactions (particularly electrocyclic reactions, in the next chapter) is helpful. You need to know about this treatment because the Diels–Alder reaction is often described as an **all-suprafacial \([4 + 2]\) cycloaddition**. Now you know what that means.

**Trapping reactive intermediates by Diels–Alder reactions**

In Chapter 23 we met the remarkable intermediate benzyne and mentioned that convincing evidence for its existence was the trapping by a Diels–Alder reaction. An ideal method for generating benzyne for this purpose is the diazotization of anthranilic acid (2-aminobenzoic acid).

Benzyne may not look like a good dienophile but it is an unstable electrophilic molecule so it must have a low-energy LUMO (\(\pi^*\) of the triple bond). If benzyne is generated in the presence of a diene, efficient Diels–Alder reactions take place. Anthracene gives a specially interesting product with a symmetrical cage structure.

It is difficult to draw this mechanism convincingly. The two flat molecules approach each other in orthogonal planes, so that the orbitals of the localized \(\pi\) bond of benzyne bond with the \(p\) orbitals on the central ring of anthracene.
Another intermediate for which Diels–Alder trapping provided convincing evidence is the oxy-
allyl cation. This compound can be made from α,α’-dibromoketones on treatment with zinc metal. 
The first step is the formation of a zinc enolate (compare the Reformatsky reaction), which can be 
drawn in terms of the attack of zinc on oxygen or bromine. Now the other bromine can leave as an 
anion. It could not do so before because it was next to an electron-withdrawing carbonyl group. Now 
it is next to an electron-rich enolate so the cation is stabilized by conjugation.

The allyl cation has three atoms but only two electrons so it can take part in cycloadditions with 
dienes—the total number of electrons is the required six. This is one of the few reactions that works 
only to produce a seven-membered ring.

Other thermal cycloadditions

Six is not the only \( (4n + 2) \) number and there are a few cycloadditions involving ten electrons. These 
are mostly diene + triene, that is, \( \pi_4 + \pi_6 \) cycloadditions. Here are a couple of examples.

In the first case, there is an endo relationship between the carbonyl group and the back of the 
diene—this product is formed in 100% yield. In the second case Et\(_2\)NH is lost from the first product 
under the reaction conditions to give the hydrocarbon shown. This type of reaction is more of an 
oddity: by far the most important type of cycloaddition is the Diels–Alder reaction.

The Alder ‘ene’ reaction

The Diels–Alder reaction was originally called the ‘diene reaction’ so, when half of the famous team 
(K. Alder) discovered an analogous reaction that requires only one alkene, it was called the Alder ene 
reaction and the name has stuck. Compare here the Diels–Alder and the Alder ene reactions.
The simplest way to look at the ene reaction is to picture it as a Diels–Alder reaction in which one of the double bonds in the diene has been replaced by a C–H bond (green). The reaction does not form a new ring, the product has only one new C–C bond (shown in black on the product), and a hydrogen atom is transferred across space. Otherwise, the two reactions are remarkably similar.

The ene reaction is rather different in orbital terms. For the Woodward–Hoffmann description of the reaction we must use the two electrons of the C–H bond to replace the two electrons of the double bond in the Diels–Alder reaction, but we must make sure that all the orbitals are parallel, as shown.

The C–H bond is parallel with the p orbitals of the ene so that the orbitals that overlap to form the new \( \pi \) bond are already parallel. The two molecules approach one another in parallel planes so that the orbitals that overlap to form the new \( \sigma \) bonds are already pointing towards each other. Because the electrons are of two types, \( \pi \) and \( \sigma \), we must divide the ene into two components, one \( \pi^2 \) and one \( \sigma^2 \). We can then have an all-suprafacial reaction with three components.

All three components are of the \((4q + 2)s\) type so all count and the total is three—an odd number—so the reaction is allowed. We have skipped the step-by-step approach we used for the Diels–Alder reaction because the two are so similar, but you should convince yourself that you can apply it here.

In frontier orbital terms we shall want again to use the LUMO of the anhydride so we need to construct the HOMO of the ene component. This must be the HOMO of the \( \pi \) bond and \( \sigma \) bond (C–H) combined. These two bonds can combine in a bonding way \((\sigma + \pi)\) or in an antibonding fashion \((\sigma - \pi)\). The second is higher in energy than the first and since there are a total of four electrons (two in the \( s \) bond and two in the \( \pi \) bond), it is the molecular HOMO. The HOMO of the ene is bonding at both ends with the LUMO of the anhydride and the reaction is favourable.

Now for some real examples. Most ene reactions with simple alkenes are with maleic anhydride. Other dienophiles—or *enophiles* as we should call them in this context—do not work very well. However, with one particular alkene, the natural terpene \( \beta \)-pinene from pine trees, reaction does occur with enophiles such as acrylates.

The major interaction between these two molecules is between the nucleophilic end of the exocyclic alkene and the electrophilic end of the acrylate. These atoms have the largest coefficients in the HOMO and LUMO, respectively, and, in the transition state, bond formation between these two will be more advanced than anywhere else. For most ordinary alkenes and enophiles, Lewis acid catalysis to make the enophile more electrophilic, or an intramolecular reaction (or both!), is necessary for an efficient ene reaction.
The ene is delivered to the bottom face of the enone, as its tether (Chapter 33) is too short for it to reach the top face, and a cis ring junction is formed. The stereochemistry of the third centre is most easily seen by a Newman projection of the reaction. In the diagram in the margin we are looking straight down the new C–C bond and the colour coding should help you to see how the stereochemistry follows.

Since the twin roles of the enophile are to be attacked at one end by a C=C double bond and at the other by a proton, a carbonyl group is actually a very good enophile. These reactions are usually called carbonyl ene reactions.

The important interaction is between the HOMO of the ene system and the LUMO of the carbonyl group—and a Lewis-acid catalyst can lower the energy of the LUMO still further. If there is a choice, the more electrophilic carbonyl group (the one with the lower LUMO) reacts.

It is not obvious that an ene reaction has occurred because of the symmetry of the ene. The double bond in the product is not, in fact, in the same place as it was in the starting material.

One carbonyl ene reaction is of commercial importance as it is part of a process for the production of menthol used to give a peppermint smell and taste to many products. This is an intramolecular ene reaction on another terpene derivative.

It is not obvious what has happened in the first step, but the movement of the alkene and the closure of the ring with the formation of one (not two) new C–C bonds should give you the clue that this is a Lewis-acid-catalysed carbonyl ene reaction.

The stereochemistry comes from an all-chair arrangement in the conformation of the transition state. The methyl group will adopt an equatorial position in this conformation, fixing the way the other bonds are formed. Again, colour coding should make it clearer what has happened.
We shall now leave six-electron cycloadditions such as the Diels–Alder and ene reactions and move on to some four-electron cycloadditions. Clearly, four is not a \((4n + 2)\) number, but when we told you in the box on p. 000 that only cycloadditions with \((4n + 2)\) electrons are allowed we used the term ‘thermally’. Cycloadditions with \(4n\) electrons are allowed if the reaction is not thermal (that is, driven by heat energy) but \textit{photochemical} (that is, driven by light energy). All the cycloadditions that are not allowed thermally are allowed photochemically. The problem of the incompatible symmetry in trying to add two alkenes together is avoided by converting one of them into the excited state photochemically. First, one electron is excited by the light energy from the \(\pi\) to the \(\pi^*\) orbital.

Now, combining the excited state of one alkene with the ground state of another solves the symmetry problem. Mixing the two \(\pi\) orbitals leads to two molecular orbitals and two electrons go down in energy while only one goes up. Mixing the two \(\pi^*\) orbitals is as good—one electron goes down in energy and none goes up. The result is that three electrons go down in energy and only one goes up. Bonding can occur.

Alkenes can be dimerized photochemically in this way, but reaction between two different alkenes is more interesting. If one alkene is bonded to a conjugating group, it alone will absorb UV light and

**Photochemical [2 + 2] cycloadditions**

It may seem odd to you to have a chemical process to produce menthol, which would be available naturally from mint plants. This process is now responsible for about half the world’s menthol production so it must make some sort of sense! The truth is that menthol \textit{cultivation} is wasteful in good land that could produce food crops such as rice while the starting material for menthol \textit{manufacture} is the same \(\beta\)-pinene we have just met. This is available in large quantities from pine trees grown on poor land for paper and furniture. The early stages of the process are discussed in Chapter 45.
be excited while the other will remain in the ground state. It is difficult to draw a mechanism for these reactions as we have no simple way to represent the excited alkene. Some people draw it as a diradical (since each electron is in a different orbital); others prefer to write a concerted reaction on an excited alkene marked with an asterisk.

The reaction is stereospecific within each component but there is no *endo* rule—there is a conjugating group but no ‘back of the diene’. The least hindered transition state usually results.

The dotted lines on the central diagram simply show the bonds being formed. The two old rings keep out of each other’s way during the reaction and the conformation of the product looks reasonably unhindered.

You may be wondering why the reaction works at all, given the strain in a four-membered ring: why doesn’t the product just go back to the two starting materials? This reverse reaction is governed by the Woodward–Hoffmann rules, just like the forward one, and to go back again the four-membered ring products would have to absorb light. But since they have now lost their \( \pi \) bonds they have no low-lying empty orbitals into which light can promote electrons (see Chapter 7). The reverse photochemical reaction is simply not possible because there is no mechanism for the compounds to absorb light.

**Regioselectivity in photochemical [2 + 2] cycloadditions**

The observed regioselectivity is of this kind.

If we had combined the HOMO of the alkene with the LUMO of the enone, as we should in a thermal reaction, we would expect the opposite orientation so as to use the larger coefficients of the frontier orbitals and to maximize charge stabilization in the transition state.

But we are not doing a thermal reaction. If you look back at the orbital diagram above, you will see that it is the HOMO/HOMO and LUMO/LUMO interactions that now matter in the reactions of the excited state. The sizes of the coefficients in the LUMO of the alkene are the other way round to those in the HOMO. There is one electron in this pair of orbitals—in the LUMO of the enone in fact, as the enone has been excited by the light—so overlap between the two LUMOs (shown in the frame)
is bonding and leads to the observed product. The easiest way to work it out quickly is to draw the product you do not expect from a normal HOMO/LUMO or curly arrow controlled reaction.

**Thermal [2 + 2] cycloadditions**

Despite what we have told you, there are some thermal [2 + 2] cycloadditions giving four-membered rings. These feature a simple alkene reacting with an electrophilic alkene of a peculiar type. It must have two double bonds to the same carbon atom. The most important examples are ketenes and isocyanates. The structures have two π bonds at right angles.

Here are typical reactions of dimethyl ketene to give a cyclobutanone and chlorosulfonyl isocyanate to give a β-lactam.

To understand why these reactions work, we need to consider a new and potentially fruitful way for two alkenes to approach each other. Thermal cycloadditions between two alkenes do not work because the HOMO/LUMO combination is antibonding at one end.

If one alkene turns at 90° to the other, there is a way in which the HOMO of one might bond at both ends to the LUMO of the other. First we turn the HOMO of one alkene so that we are looking down on the p orbitals.

Now we add the LUMO of the other alkene on top of this HOMO and at 90° to it so that there is the possibility of bonding overlap at both ends.

This arrangement looks quite promising until we notice that there is antibonding at the other two corners! Overall there is no net bonding.
We can tilt the balance in favour of bonding by adding a p orbital to one end of the LUMO and at a right angle to it so that both orbitals of the HOMO can bond to this extra p orbital. There are now four bonding interactions but only two antibonding. The balance is in favour of a reaction. This is also quite difficult to draw!

If you find this drawing difficult to understand, try a three-dimensional representation.

Ketenes have a central sp carbon atom with an extra \( \pi \) bond (the C=O) at right angles to the first alkene—perfect for thermal [2 + 2] cycloadditions. They are also electrophilic and so have suitable low-energy LUMOs.

**Ketene [2 + 2] cycloadditions**

Ketene itself is usually made by high-temperature pyrolysis of acetone but some ketenes are easily made in solution. The very acidic proton on dichloroacetyl chloride can be removed even with a tertiary amine and loss of chloride ion then gives dichloroketene in an E1cB elimination reaction.

If the elimination is carried out in the presence of cyclopentadiene a very efficient regio- and stereospecific [2 + 2] cycloaddition occurs.

The most nucleophilic atom on the diene adds to the most electrophilic atom on the ketene and the \( \text{cis} \) geometry at the ring junction comes from the \( \text{cis} \) double bond of cyclopentadiene. It is impressive that even this excellent diene undergoes no Diels–Alder reaction with ketene as dienophile. The [2 + 2] cycloaddition must be much faster.

**Using the products**

Dichloroketene is convenient to use, but the two chlorine atoms are not usually needed in the product. Fortunately, these can be removed by zinc metal in acetic acid solution. Zinc forms a zinc enolate, which is converted into the ketone by the acid. Repetition removes both chlorine atoms. You saw the reductive formation of a zinc enolate earlier in the chapter (p. 000) and in the Reformatsky reaction (Chapter 26, p. 000).

But what do we do if we want the product of a ketene [4 + 2] cycloaddition? We must use a compound that is not a ketene but that can be transformed into a ketone afterwards—a masked ketene or
a ketene equivalent. The two most important types are nitroalkenes and compounds such as the ‘cyanohydrin ester’ in the second example.

Finding the starting materials for a cyclobutane synthesis

The disconnection of a four-membered ring is very simple—you just split it in half and draw the two alkenes. There may be two ways to do this.

Both sets of starting materials look all right—the regiochemistry is correct for the first and doesn’t matter for the second. However, we prefer the second because we can control the stereochemistry by using cis-butene as the alkene and we can make the reaction work better by using dichloroketene instead of ketene itself, reducing out the chlorine atoms with zinc.

Synthesis of β-lactams by [2 + 2] cycloadditions

Now the disconnections are really different—one requires addition of a ketene to an imine and the other the addition of an isocyanate to an alkene. Isocyanates are like ketenes, but have a nitrogen atom instead of the end carbon atom. Otherwise the orbitals are the same.

And the good news is that both work, providing we have the right substituents on nitrogen. The dichloroacetyl chloride trick works well with imines and, as you ought to expect, the more nucleophilic nitrogen atom attacks the carbonyl group of the ketene so that the regioselectivity is right to make β-lactams.

If both components have one substituent, these will end up trans on the four-membered ring just to keep out of each other’s way. This example has more functionality and the product could be used to make β-lactams with antibiotic activity, such as analogues of the β-lactamase inhibitor, clavulanic acid (Chapter 32).
You will notice that in both of these examples there is an aryl substituent on the nitrogen atom of the imine. This is simply because imines are rather unstable and cannot normally be prepared with a hydrogen atom on the nitrogen. 

When we wish to make β-lactams by the alternative addition of an isocyanate to an alkene, a substituent on nitrogen is again required, but for quite a different reason. Because alkenes are only moderately nucleophilic, we need a strongly electron-withdrawing group on the isocyanate that can be removed after the cycloaddition, and the most popular by far is the chlorosulfonyl group. The main reason for its popularity is the commercial availability of chlorosulfonyl isocyanate. It reacts even with simple alkenes.

The alkene’s HOMO interacts with the isocyanate’s LUMO, and the most electrophilic atom is the carbonyl carbon so this is where the terminal carbon atom of the alkene attacks. The chlorosulfonyl group can be removed simply by hydrolysis under mild conditions via the sulfonic acid.

With a more electron-rich alkene—an enol ether, for example, or the following example with its sulfur analogue, a vinyl sulfide—the reaction ceases to be a concerted process and occurs stepwise. We know this must be the case in the next example because, even though the starting material is an E/Z mixture, the product has only trans stereochemistry: it is stereoselective rather than stereospecific, indicating the presence of an intermediate in which free rotation can take place.

The lack of stereospecificity in some nonconcerted reactions is discussed in Chapter 40 in relation to carbenes.

Making five-membered rings—1,3-dipolar cycloadditions

We have seen how to make four-membered rings by [2 + 2] cycloadditions and, of course, how to make six-membered rings by [4 + 2] cycloadditions. Now what about five-membered rings? It sounds at first impossible to make an odd-numbered ring in this way. However, all we need is a three-atom, four-electron ‘diene’ and we can do a Diels–Alder reaction. Impossible? Not at all—the molecules are called 1,3-dipoles and are good reagents for cycloadditions. Here is an example.

The molecule containing N and O atoms labelled ‘four-electron component’ is the 1,3-dipole. It has a nucleophilic end (O⁻) and an electrophilic end—the end of the double bond next to the central N⁺. These are 1,3-related so it is indeed a 1,3-dipole. This functional group is known as a nitrene. You could also think of it as the N-oxide of an imine.

The nitrene gets its four electrons in this way: there are two π electrons in the N=C double bond and the other two come from one of the lone pairs on the oxygen atom. The two-electron component is a simple alkene in this example. In a Diels–Alder
reaction it would be called the dienophile. Here it is called the dipolarophile. Simple alkenes (which are bad dienophiles) are good dipolarophiles and so are electron-deficient alkenes.

The difference between dienes and 1,3-dipoles is that dienes are nucleophilic and prefer to use their HOMOs in cycloadditions with electron-deficient dienophiles while 1,3-dipoles, as their name implies, are both electrophilic and nucleophilic. They can use either their HOMOs or their LUMOs depending on whether the dipolarophile is electron-deficient or electron-rich.

One important nitrone is a cyclic compound that has the structure below and adds to dipolarophiles (essentially any alkene!) to give two five-membered rings fused together. The stereochemistry comes from the best approach with the least steric hindrance, as shown. There is no endo rule in these cycloadditions as there is no conjugating group to interact across space at the back of the dipole or dipolarophile. The product shown here is the more stable exo product.

If the alkene is already joined on to the nitrone by a covalent bond so that the dipolar cycloaddition is an intramolecular reaction, one particular outcome may be dictated by the impossibility of the alternatives. Here is a simple case where an allyl group is joined to the same ring as in the previous example. The product has a beautifully symmetrical cage structure and the mechanism shows the only way in which the molecule can fold up to allow a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition to occur.

Making nitrones

There are two important routes to nitrones: both start from hydroxylamines. Open-chain nitrones are usually made simply by imine formation between a hydroxylamine and an aldehyde.

The cyclic nitrones are made from simple tertiary amines by oxidation and then cyclic elimination to give a hydroxylamine. This is oxidized again with Hg(II) to give the nitrone.

The importance of the Diels–Alder reaction is that it makes six-membered rings with control over stereochemistry. The importance of 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions is not so much in the heterocyclic products but in what can be done with them. Almost always, the first formed heterocyclic ring is broken down in some way by carefully controlled reactions. The nitrone adducts we have just seen contain a weak N–O single bond that can be selectively cleaved by reduction. Reagents such as LiAlH₄ or zinc metal in various solvents (acetic acid is popular) or hydrogenation over catalysts such as nickel reduce the N–O bond to give NH and OH functionality without changing the structure or stereochemistry of the rest of the molecule. From the examples above, we get these products.
In each cycloaddition, one permanent C–C and one C–O bond (shown in orange) were made. These were retained while the N–O bond present in the original dipole was discarded. The final product is an amino-alcohol with a 1,3-relationship between the OH and NH groups.

Linear 1,3-dipoles

In the Diels–Alder reaction, the dienes had to have an s-cis conformation about the central single bond so that they were already in the shape of the product. Many useful 1,3-dipoles are actually linear and their 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions look very awkward. We shall start with the nitrile oxides, which have a triple bond where the nitrone had a double bond.

Making nitrile oxides

There are two important routes to these compounds, both of which feature interesting chemistry. Oximes, easily made from aldehydes with hydroxylamine (NH₂–OH), are rather enol-like and can be chlorinated on carbon.

Treatment of the chloro-oxime with base (Et₃N is strong enough) leads directly to the nitrile oxide with the loss of HCl. This is an elimination of a curious kind as we cannot draw a connected chain of arrows for it. We must use two steps—removal of the OH proton and then loss of chloride. It is a γ elimination rather than the more common β elimination.

The other method starts from nitroalkanes and is a dehydration. Inspect the two molecules and you will see that the nitro compound contains H₂O more than the nitrile oxide. But how to remove the molecule of water? The reagent usually chosen is phenyl isocyanate (Ph–N=CO), which removes the molecule of water atom by atom to give aniline (PhNH₂) and CO₂. This is probably the mechanism, though the last step might not be concerted as we have shown.

The dipolarophile (here a simple alkene) has to approach uncomfortably close to the central nitrogen atom for bonds to be formed. Presumably, the nitrile oxide distorts out of linearity in the transition state. As you should expect, this is a reaction between the HOMO of the alkene and the LUMO of the nitrile oxide so that the leading interaction that determines the structure of the product is the one in the margin.

If there is stereochemistry in the alkene, it is faithfully reproduced in the heterocyclic adduct as we should expect for a concerted cycloaddition.

Both partners in nitrile oxide cycloadditions can have triple bonds—the product is then a stable aromatic heterocycle called an isoxazole.
Though isoxazoles have some importance, the main interest in nitrile oxide cycloadditions lies again in the products that are formed by reduction of the N–O bond and by the C=N double bond. This produces amino-alcohols with a 1,3-relationship between the two functional groups.

The N–O bond is the weaker of the two and it is possible to reduce that and leave the C=N bond alone. This leaves an imine that usually hydrolys during work-up.

Any stereochemistry in the adduct is preserved right through this reduction and hydrolysis sequence: you might like to compare the products with the products of the stereoselective aldol reactions you saw in Chapter 34.

**Biotin**

Biotin is an enzyme cofactor that activates and transports CO₂ for use as an electrophile in biochemical reactions.

We shall end this section with a beautiful illustration of an intramolecular 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition of a nitrile oxide that was used in the synthesis of the vitamin biotin. Starting at the beginning of the synthesis will allow you to revise some reactions from earlier chapters. The starting material is a simple cyclic allylic bromide that undergoes an efficient $S_N2$ reaction with a sulfur nucleophile. In fact, we don’t know (or care!) whether this is an $S_N2$ or $S_N2'$ reaction as the product of both reactions is the same. This sort of chemistry was discussed in Chapter 23 if you need to check up on it. Notice that it is the sulfur atom that does the attack—it is the soft end of the nucleophile and better at $S_N2$ reactions. The next step is the hydrolysis of the ester group to reveal the thiolate anion.
This step is strictly an ester exchange rather than a hydrolysis and is discussed in Chapter 12. Next the nucleophilic thiolate anion does a conjugate addition (Chapters 10 and 23) on to a nitroalkene.

Now comes the exciting moment. The nitroalkene gives the nitrile oxide directly on dehydration with PhN=C=O and the cycloaddition occurs spontaneously in the only way it can, given the intramolecular nature of the reaction.

We have drawn the reaction with the nitrile oxide coming up from the underside of the seven-membered ring, pushing all the hydrogen atoms at the ring junctions upwards and making all the rings join up in a cis fashion.

Next the cycloadduct is reduced completely with LiAlH₄ so that both the N–O and C=N bonds are cleaved. This step is very stereoselective so the C=N reduction probably precedes the N–O cleavage and the hydride has to attack from the outside (top) face of the molecule. These considerations are explored more thoroughly in Chapter 33.

The sulfur-containing ring, and the stereochemistry, of biotin are already defined and, in the seven steps that follow, the most important is the breaking open of the seven-membered ring by a Beckmann rearrangement, which you will meet in Chapter 37.

Two very important synthetic reactions: cycloaddition of alkenes with osmium tetroxide and with ozone

We shall end this chapter with two very important reactions, both of which we have alluded to earlier in the book. These reactions are very important not just because of their mechanisms, which you must
be aware of, but even more because of their usefulness in synthetic chemistry, and in that regard they are second only to the Diels–Alder reaction when considering all the reactions in this chapter. They are both oxidations—one involves osmium tetroxide (OsO₄) and one involves ozone (O₃) and they both involve cycloaddition.

**OsO₄ adds two hydroxyl groups syn to a double bond**

We emphasized the fact that cycloadditions, being concerted, are stereospecific with regard to the geometry of the double bond. One very important example of this is the stereospecific reaction of an alkene with OsO₄. First, we give you the result of the reaction—the overall outcome is that two hydroxyl groups are added syn to the double bond.

They add syn whether the double bond is E or Z, and, by redrawning the second example in a different conformation, you can see how defining the geometry of the starting material defines which diastereoisomer of the product is obtained.

Now for the mechanism. We must admit before we start that this is a reaction about which there is still some controversy, and we give you the simplest reasonable view of the mechanism. Future results may show this mechanism to be wrong, but it will certainly do to explain any result you might meet. The first step is a cycloaddition between the osmium tetroxide and the alkene. You can treat the OsO₄ like a dipole—it isn’t drawn as one because osmium has plenty of orbitals to accommodate four double bonds.

The product of the stereospecific cycloaddition is an ‘osmate ester’. This isn’t the required product, and the reaction is usually done in the presence of water (the usual solvent is a t-BuOH–water mixture), which hydrolyses the osmate ester to the diol. Because both oxygen atoms were added in one concerted step during the cycloaddition, their relative stereochemistry must remain syn.

The osmium starts as Os(VIII) and ends up as Os(VI)—the reaction is, of course, an oxidation, and it’s one that is very specific to C=C double bonds (as we mentioned in Chapter 24). As written, it would involve a whole equivalent of the expensive, toxic, and heavy metal osmium, but it can be made catalytic by introducing a reagent to oxidize Os(VI) back to Os(VIII). The usual reagent is N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide (NMO) or Fe(III), and typical conditions for an osmylation, or dihydroxylation, reaction are shown in the scheme alongside.

In behaviour that is typical of a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition reaction, OsO₄ reacts almost as well with electron-poor as with electron-rich alkenes. OsO₄ simply chooses to attack the alkene HOMO.
or its LUMO depending on which gives the best interaction. This is quite different from the electrophilic addition of \( m \)-CPBA or \( \text{Br}_2 \) to alkenes.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{OsO}_4 & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} & \quad \text{OMe} & \quad \text{OsO}_4 & \quad \text{OH}
\end{align*}
\]

**syn and anti addition of hydroxyl groups**

It is important that you note the link between the OsO\(_4\) reaction and the stereospecific transformations that we highlighted at the beginning of Chapter 34. In particular, you now know ways to add two hydroxyl groups both syn and anti across a double bond: the syn addition uses OsO\(_4\) and the anti addition uses epoxidation followed by ring opening with HO\(^{-}\).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{OsO}_4 & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\text{OH} & \quad \text{OH} & \quad \text{syn diol} & \quad \text{HO}^- & \quad \text{anti diol}
\end{align*}
\]

**A cycloaddition that destroys bonds—ozonolysis**

Our last type of cycloaddition is most unusual. It starts as a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition but eventually becomes a method of cleaving \( \pi \) bonds in an oxidative fashion so that they end up as two carbonyl groups. The reagent is ozone, \( \text{O}_3 \).

Ozone is a symmetrical bent molecule with a central positively charged oxygen atom and two terminal oxygen atoms that share a negative charge. It is a 1,3-dipole and does typical 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions with alkenes.

The product is a very unstable compound. The O–O single bond (bond energy 140 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)) is a very weak bond—much weaker than the N–O bond (180 kJ mol\(^{-1}\)) we have been describing as weak in previous examples—and this heterocycle has two of them. It immediately decomposes—by a reverse 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{1,3-dipolar cycloaddition} & \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{1,3-dipolar cycloaddition} & \quad \text{R} & \quad \text{R} & \quad + & \quad \text{R} & \quad \text{R}
\end{align*}
\]

The products are a simple aldehyde on the left and a new, rather unstable looking molecule—a 1,3-dipole known as a carbonyl oxide—on the right. At least it no longer has any true O–O single bonds (the one that looks like a single bond is part of a delocalized system like the one in ozone). Being a 1,3-dipole, it now adds to the aldehyde in a third cycloaddition step. It might just add back the way it came, but it much prefers to add in the other way round with the nucleophilic oxyanion attacking the carbon atom of the carbonyl group like this.
This compound—known as an ozonide—is the first stable product of the reaction with ozone. It is the culmination of two 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions and one reverse 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition. It is still not that stable and is quite explosive, so for the reaction to be of any use it needs decomposing. The way this is usually done is with dimethylsulfide, which attacks the ozonide to give DMSO and two molecules of aldehyde.

The ozonide will also react with oxidizing agents such as H₂O₂ to give carboxylic acids, or with more powerful reducing agents such as NaBH₄ to give alcohols. Here are the overall transformations—each cleaves a double bond—it is called an ozonolysis.

Ozonolysis of cyclohexenes is particularly useful as it gives 1,6-dicarbonyl compounds that are otherwise difficult to make. In the simplest case we get hexane 1,6-dioic acid (adipic acid) a monomer for nylon manufacture.

More interesting cases arise when the products of Birch reduction (Chapter 24) are treated with ozone. Here it is the electron-rich enol ether bond that is cleaved, showing that ozone is an electrophilic partner in 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions. If the ozonide is reduced, a hydroxy ester is formed whose trisubstituted bond’s Z geometry was fixed by the ring it was part of (see Chapter 31).

An alternative method of cleaving C=C bonds is to use OsO₄ in conjunction with NaIO₄. The diol product forms a periodate ester, which decomposes to give two molecules of aldehyde. These are themselves oxidized by the periodate to carboxylic acids.

Ph₃P is also used.

You saw periodate being used to cleave C–C bonds in this way at the end of Chapter 34, p. 000.
Summary of cycloaddition reactions

- A cycloaddition is a one-step ring-forming reaction between two conjugated $\pi$ systems in which two new $\sigma$ bonds are formed joining the two reagents at each end. The mechanism has one step with no intermediates, and all the arrows start on $\pi$ bonds and go round in a ring.

- The cycloadditions are supra-facial—they occur on one face only of each $\pi$ system—and for a thermally allowed reaction there should be $4n + 2$ electrons in the mechanism, but $4n$ in a photochemical cycloaddition. These rules are dictated by orbital symmetry.

- Cycloaddition equilibria generally lie over on the right-hand side in a thermal reaction because C–C $\sigma$ bonds are stronger than C–C $\pi$ bonds. In a photochemical cycloaddition, the product loses its $\pi$ bonds and therefore its means of absorbing energy. It is the kinetic product of the reaction even if it has a strained four-membered ring.

- The stereochemistry of each component is faithfully reproduced in the product—the reactions are stereospecific—and the relationship between their stereochemistries may be governed by orbital overlap to give an endo product.

Problems

1. Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the stereochemistry.

2. Predict the structure of the product of this Diels–Alder reaction.

3. Comment on the difference in rate between these two reactions. It is estimated that the second goes about $10^6$ times faster than the first.

4. Justify the stereoselectivity in this intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction.

5. Explain the formation of single adducts in these reactions.
6. Revision elements. Suggest two syntheses of this spirocyclic ketone from the starting materials shown. Neither starting material is available.

7. This reaction appeared in Chapter 33. Account for the selectivity.

8. Draw mechanisms for these reactions and explain the stereochemistry.

9. Revision. One of the nitrones used as an example in the chapter was prepared by this route. Explain what is happening and give details of the reactions.

10. Explain why this Diels–Alder reaction gives total regioselectivity and stereospecificity but no stereoselectivity. What is the mechanism of the second step? What alternative route might you have considered if you wanted to make this final product and why would you reject it?

11. Give mechanisms for these reactions and explain the regio- and stereochemical control (or the lack of it!).

12. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and explain the stereo- and regiochemistry. How would you prepare the unsaturated ketone starting material?

13. Photochemical cycloaddition of these two compounds is claimed to give the single diastereoisomer shown. The chemists who did this work claim that the stereochemistry of the adduct is simply proved by its conversion into a lactone on reduction. Comment on the validity of this deduction and explain the stereochemistry of the cycloaddition.

14. Thioketones, with a C=S bond, are not usually stable as we shall see in Chapter 46. However, this thioketone is quite stable and undergoes reaction with maleic anhydride to give the product shown. Comment on the stability of the starting material, the mechanism of the reaction, and the stereochemistry of the product.
15. This unsaturated alcohol is perfectly stable until it is oxidized with Cr(VI): it then immediately cyclizes to the product shown. Explain.

16. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions and comment on the stereochemistry of the first product.
Pericyclic reactions 2: Sigmatropic and electrocyclic reactions

Connections

Building on:
- Cycloadditions and the principles of pericyclic reactions (essential reading!) ch35
- Acetal formation ch14
- Conformational analysis ch18
- Elimination reactions ch19
- Controlling alkene geometry ch31

Arriving at:
- The second and third types of pericyclic reaction
- Stereochemistry from chair-like transition states
- Making γ,δ-unsaturated carbonyl compounds
- What determines whether these pericyclic reactions go ‘forwards’ or ‘backwards’
- Special chemistry of N, S, and P
- Why substituted cyclopentadienes are unstable
- What ‘con’- and ‘dis’-rotatory mean
- Reactions that open small rings and close larger rings

Looking forward to:
- Rearrangements ch37
- Synthesis of aromatic heterocycles ch44
- Main group chemistry ch46–ch47
- Asymmetric synthesis ch45
- Natural products ch51

Cycloadditions, the subject of the last chapter, are just one of the three main classes of pericyclic rearrangement. In this chapter, we consider the other two classes—sigmatropic rearrangements and electrocyclic reactions. We will analyse them in a way that is similar to our dealings with cycloadditions.

Sigmatropic rearrangements

The Claisen rearrangement was the first to be discovered

The original sigmatropic rearrangement occurred when an aryl allyl ether was heated without solvent and an \( \text{ortho-allyl phenol} \) resulted. This is the \text{Claisen rearrangement}.

The first step in this reaction is a pericyclic reaction of a type that we will learn to call a \([3,3]\)-\text{sigmatropic rearrangement}.

This is a one-step mechanism without ionic intermediates or any charges, just like a cycloaddition. The arrows go round in a ring. The difference between this and a cycloaddition is that one of the arrows starts on a \( \sigma \) bond instead of on a \( \pi \) bond. The second step in the reaction is a simple ionic proton transfer to regenerate aromaticity.
How do we know that this is the mechanism? If the allyl ether is unsymmetrical, it turns ‘inside-out’ during Claisen rearrangement, as required by the mechanism. Check for yourself that this is right.

The aliphatic Claisen rearrangement also occurs

It was later found that the same sort of reaction occurs without the aromatic ring. This is called either the aliphatic Claisen rearrangement or the Claisen–Cope rearrangement. Here is the simplest possible example.

These reactions are called sigmatropic because a σ bond appears to move from one place to another during the reaction. The important bonds are coloured black here.

This particular reaction is called a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement because the new σ bond has a 3,3 relationship to the old σ bond. You can see this if you number the ends of the old σ bond ‘1’ and ‘1’ and count round to the ends of the new σ bond in the product. You will find that the ends of the new σ bond both have the number ‘3’.

These [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements happen through a chair-like transition state, which allows us both to get the orbitals right and to predict the stereochemistry (if any) of the new double bond. The orbitals look something like this.

Note that these do not represent any specific frontier orbitals, they simply show that, in this conformation, the new σ bond is formed from two p orbitals that point directly at each other and that the two new π bonds are formed from orbitals that are already parallel.

Alkene stereochemistry in the Claisen rearrangement comes from a chair-like transition state

Stereochemistry may arise if there is a substituent on the saturated carbon atom next to the oxygen atom. If there is, the resulting double bond strongly favours the trans (E) geometry. This is because the substituent prefers an equatorial position on the chair transition state.

The substituent R prefers an equatorial position as the molecule reacts and R retains this position in the product. The new alkene bond is shown in black and the substituents in green. Notice that the trans geometry of the alkene in the product is already there in the conformation chosen by the starting material and in the transition state.
The starting material for these aliphatic Claisen rearrangements consists of ethers with one allyl and one vinyl group. We need now to consider how such useful molecules might be made. There is no problem about the allyl half—allylic alcohols are stable easily made compounds. But what about the vinyl half? ‘Vinyl alcohols’ are just the enols of aldehydes (MeCHO). The solution is to use an acetal of the aldehyde in an acid-catalysed exchange process with the allylic alcohol.

It is not necessary to isolate the allyl vinyl ether as long as some of it is formed and rearranges into the final product. The acid catalyst usually used, propanoic acid, has a conveniently high boiling point so that the whole mixture can be equilibrated at high temperature. The first step is an acetal exchange in which the allylic alcohol displaces methanol.

The methanol is distilled off as it is the most volatile of the components in this mixture. A second molecule of methanol is now lost in an acid-catalysed elimination reaction to give the vinyl group.

The Claisen rearrangement is a general synthesis of γ,δ-unsaturated carbonyl compounds

Finally, the [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement can be carried out by heat as part of the same step or as a separate step depending on the compounds. This is a very flexible reaction sequence and can be used for aldehydes (as shown above), ketones, esters, or amides. In each case acetal-like compounds are used—acetals themselves for aldehydes and ketones; orthoesters and orthoamides for the other two (though the orthoamides are often called ‘amide acetals’).
The common feature in the products of these Claisen rearrangements is a γ,δ-unsaturated carbonyl group. If this is what you need in a synthesis, make it by a Claisen rearrangement.

Orbital descriptions of [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements

It is possible to give a frontier orbital description of a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement but this is not a very satisfactory treatment because two reagents are not recognizing each other across space as they were in cycloadditions. There are three components in these reactions—two nonconjugated π bonds that do have to overlap across space and a σ bond in the chain joining the two π bonds.

The Woodward–Hoffmann rules give a more satisfying description and we shall follow the routine outlined for cycloadditions. Note that for stage 3, we can use the three-dimensional diagram we have already made.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction (we shall stay with a familiar one)

2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others

3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!)

4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds

5. Label each component s or a depending whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides. See below for the σ bond symmetry
Add up the number of \((4q + 2)\) and \((4r)\) components. If the sum is \(odd\), the reaction is allowed.

One new aspect of orbital symmetry has appeared in this diagram—how did we deduce a or s symmetry in the way the \(\sigma\) bond reacted? For \(\pi\) bonds it is simple—if both bonds are formed on the same side of the old \(\pi\) bond, it has reacted suprafacially; if on opposite sides, antarafacially.

With a \(\sigma\) bond the symmetry is not so obvious. We want to know if it does the \(same\) thing at each end (s) or a \(different\) thing (a). But what is the ‘thing’ it does? It reacts using the large lobe of the \(sp^3\) orbital (retention) or the small lobe (inversion). If it reacts with retention at both ends or inversion at both ends, it reacts \(suprafacially\), while if it reacts with retention at one end and inversion at the other, it reacts \(antarafacially\). There are four possibilities.

In the routine above, we chose to use our \(\sigma\) bond so that we got inversion at one end and retention at the other. That was why we identified it as an antarafacial component. If we had chosen another style we should have got different descriptions of the components, but the reaction would still have been allowed—for example, changing just one connecting line.

This changes the symmetry of the \(\sigma\) bond so that it becomes a \(\sigma^2_s\) component but it also changes the symmetry of one of the \(\pi\) bonds so that it becomes a \(\pi^2_a\) component. The net result is still only one component of the Woodward–Hoffmann symmetry, the sum is still one, and the reaction still allowed.

**The direction of \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangements**

Orbital symmetry tells us that \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangements are allowed but says nothing about which way they will go. They are allowed in either direction. So why does the Claisen–Cope rearrangement always go in this direction?

Think back to our discussion on enols and you may recall that the combination of a carbonyl group and a \(C=C\) \(\sigma\) bond made the keto form more stable than the enol form with its combination of a \(C=C\) \(\pi\) bond and a \(C-O\) \(\sigma\) bond. The same is true here. It is the formation of the carbonyl group that drives the reaction to the right.

The **Cope rearrangement** is a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement with only carbon atoms in the ring. In its simplest version it is not a reaction at all.

**Directing the Cope rearrangement by the formation of a carbonyl group**

The starting material and the product are the same. We can drive this reaction too by the formation of a carbonyl group if we put an OH substituent in the right place.
The product of the sigmatropic step is the enol of the final product. It turns out that the reaction is accelerated if the starting alcohol is treated with base (KH is the best) to make the alkoxide. The product is then the potassium enolate, which is more stable than the simple potassium alkoxide starting material. As the reaction proceeds, conjugation is growing between $\text{O}^-$ and the new $\pi$ bond.

Some remarkable compounds can be made by this method. One of the strangest—a 'bridgehead' alkene—was made by a potassium-alkoxide-accelerated Cope rearrangement in which a four-membered ring was expanded into an eight-membered ring containing a trans double bond.

A combination of an oxygen atom in the ring and another one outside the ring is very powerful at promoting [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements and easy to arrange by making the lithium enolate of an ester of an allylic alcohol.

Sometimes it is better to convert the lithium enolate into the silyl enol ether before heating to accomplish the [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement. In any case, both products give the unsaturated carboxylic acid on work-up.

This reaction is known as the Ireland–Claisen rearrangement as it was a variation of the Claisen rearrangement invented by R.E. Ireland in the 1970s and widely used since. If the substituents are suitably arranged, it shows the same $E$ selectivity as the simple Claisen rearrangement and for the same reason.
In some cases simple Cope rearrangements without any oxygen atoms at all can be directed by an unstable starting material or a stable product. The instability might be strain and the stability might simply be more substituents on the double bonds. In this case the driving force is the breaking of a weak \( \sigma \) bond in a three-membered ring. This reaction goes in 100% yield at only just above room temperature, so it is very favourable.

In this second example, the trisubstituted double bonds inside the five-membered rings of the product are more stable than the exomethylene groups in the starting material.

**An industrial synthesis of citral**

‘Citral’ is a key intermediate in the synthesis of vitamin A, and in Chapter 31 you had a go at designing a synthesis of it. BASF manufacture citral by a remarkable process that involves two successive \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangements, a Claisen followed by a Cope.

The allyl vinyl ether needed for the Claisen rearrangement is an enol ether of an unsaturated aldehyde with an unsaturated alcohol. The two starting materials are themselves derived from a common precursor, making this a most efficient process! Heating the enol ether promotes \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement propelled by the formation of a carbonyl group.

But the product of this rearrangement is now set up for a second \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement, this time made favourable by a shift into conjugation and the formation of two trisubstituted double bonds from two terminal ones. Overall, the prenyl group walks from one end of the molecule to the other, inverting twice as it goes.

**Sex for seaweeds censored by a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement**

In order to reproduce, the female gametes of marine brown algae must attract mobile male gametes. This they do by releasing a pheromone, long thought to be the cycloheptadiene ectocarpene. In 1995 results were published that suggested that, in fact, the pheromone was a cyclopropane, and that ectocarpene was ineffective as a pheromone.

How had the confusion arisen? Well, the remarkable thing is that the cyclopropyl pheromone inactivates itself, with a half-life of several minutes at ambient temperature, by \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement to the cycloheptadiene, driven by release of strain from the three-membered ring. This not only confused the earlier pheromone chemists, but it also provides a marvellously precise way for the algae to signal their presence and readiness for reproduction without saturating the sea water with meaningless pheromone.
Applications of [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements using other elements

There is no need to restrict our discussion to carbon and oxygen atoms. We shall finish this section with two useful reactions that use other elements. The most famous synthesis of indoles is a nineteenth century reaction discovered by Emil Fischer—the Fischer indole synthesis—and it would be a remarkable discovery even today. Reaction of phenylhydrazine with a ketone in slightly acidic solution gives an imine (Chapter 14) called a phenylhydrazone.

![Diagram of phenylhydrazine and a phenylhydrazone](image)

If the ketone is enolizable, this imine is in equilibrium with the corresponding enamine. The important bonds are given in black in the diagram.

![Diagram of an enamine](image)

The enamine is ideally set up for a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement in which the σ bond to be broken is the weak N–N σ bond and one of the π bonds is in the benzene ring.

![Diagram of a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement](image)

The product is a highly unstable double imine. Aromaticity is immediately restored and a series of proton shifts and C–N bond formation and cleavage give the aromatic indole. In the last diagram the ten-π-electron indole is outlined in black.

![Diagram of the synthesis of indole](image)

Indoles are of some importance in biology and medicine and the Fischer indole synthesis is widely used. Sometimes the complete reaction occurs, as in this example, under the slightly acidic conditions needed to make the phenylhydrazone. More commonly, the phenylhydrazone is isolated and converted into the indole with a Lewis acid such as ZnCl₂.

That was a [3,3]-sigmatropic reaction involving two nitrogens. There follows one with two oxygens and a chromium atom. When tertiary allylic alcohols are oxidized with CrO₃ in acid solution, no direct oxidation can take place, but a kind of conjugate oxidation occurs.
The first step in Cr(VI) oxidations can take place to give a chromate ester (Chapter 24) but this intermediate has no proton to lose so it transfers the chromate to the other end of the allylic system where there is a proton. The chromate transfer can be drawn as a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement.

The final step is the normal oxidation (Chapter 24) in which chromium drops down from orange Cr(VI) to Cr(IV) and eventually by disproportionation to green Cr(III).

[2,3]-Sigmatropic rearrangements

All [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements have six-membered cyclic transition states. It is no accident that the size of the ring is given by the sum of the two numbers in the square brackets as this is universally the case for sigmatropic rearrangements. We are now going to look at [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements so we will be needing five-membered cyclic transition states. There is a problem here. You cannot draw three arrows going round a five-membered ring without stopping or starting on an atom. One way to do this is to use a carbanion.

The starting material is a benzyl allyl ether and undergoes [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement to make a new C–C σ bond at the expense of a C–O σ bond—a bad bargain this as the C–O bond is stronger. The balance is tilted by the greater stability of the oxyanion in the product than of the carbanion in the starting material. The new bond has a 2,3 relationship to the old and the transition state is a five-membered ring.

The transition state can be quite chair-like so that the new π bond will be trans if it has a choice. There will be a choice if the ether has been made from a substituted allyl alcohol.
We cannot draw a complete chair as we would need a six-membered ring for that (see discussion of [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements above), but the part that is to become the new $\pi$ bond can be in a chair-like part of the five-membered ring. The substituent $R$ prefers an equatorial position and the resulting trans arrangement of the groups is outlined in black.

We can use the same conformational diagram to show how the orbitals overlap as the new bond is formed.

When we come to use the Woodward–Hoffmann rules on these [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements, we find something new. We have a $\pi$ bond and a $\sigma$ bond and a carbanion. How are we to represent a carbanion (or a carbocation) that is just a p orbital on an atom? The new symbol we use for a simple p orbital is $\omega$. A carbanion is an $\omega^2$ component and a carbocation is an $\omega^0$ component as it has zero electrons. If the two new bonds are formed to the same lobe of the p orbital of the carbanion, we have an $\omega^2_s$ component but, if they are formed to different lobes, we have an $\omega^2_a$ component.

Without going through the whole routine again, the [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement we have been discussing can be described as an $\omega^2_a + \sigma^2_s + \pi^2_a$ reaction. There is one $(4q + 2)_s$ and no $(4r)_a$ components so the reaction is thermally allowed.

**Sulfur is good at [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements**

There are many [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements involving a variety of heteroatoms as well as carbon. We shall describe just one more because it involves no ions at all. The key is an element that is prepared to change its oxidation state by two so that we can start and finish an arrow on that element. The element is sulfur, which can form stable compounds at three oxidation states: $S(II)$, $S(IV)$, or $S(VI)$.

Reaction of an allylic alcohol with PhSCl gives an unstable sulenate ester that rearranges on heating to an allylic sulfoxide by a [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement involving both O and S.

Notice that arrows both start and stop on the sulfur atom, which changes from $S(II)$ to $S(IV)$ during the reaction. The new functional group with an S=O bond is called a sulfoxide. This is a good preparation of allylic sulfoxides. The product forms an anion stabilized by sulfur, which can be alkylated.
We have said that all these sigmatropic rearrangements are reversible but now we can prove it. If this product is heated in methanol with a nucleophile such as $(\text{MeO})_3\text{P}$, which has a liking for sulfur, the [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement runs backwards and a sulfenate ester is again formed.

This is an unfavourable reaction, because the equilibrium lies over on the sulfoxide side. But the nucleophile traps the sulfenate ester and the methanol ensures that the alkoxyde ion formed is immediately protonated so that we get another allylic alcohol.

So what is the point of going round in circles like this? The net result is the alkylation of an allylic alcohol in a position where alkylation would not normally be considered possible.

[1,5]-Sigmatropic hydrogen shifts

When one of the numbers in square brackets is ‘1’, the old and new $\sigma$ bonds are to the same atom, so we are dealing with the migration of a group around a conjugated system. In the case of a [1,5] shift the transition state is a six-membered ring (remember—just add together the numbers in square brackets). Here is an important example.

Let us first check that this is indeed a [1,5]-sigmatropic rearrangement by numbering the position of the new $\sigma$ bond with respect to the old. Note that we must go the long way round the five-membered ring because that is the way the mechanism goes.

It is a [1,5]-sigmatropic rearrangement. The figure ‘1’ in the square brackets shows that the same atom is at one end of the new $\sigma$ bond as was at one end of the old $\sigma$ bond. One atom has moved in a 1,5 manner and these are often called [1,5]-sigmatropic shifts. This is often abbreviated to $[1,5]\text{H}$ shift to show which atom is moving. This particular example is important because sadly it prohibits a most attractive idea. The cyclopentadiene anion is very stable (Chapter 8) and can easily be alkylated. The sequence of alkylation and Diels–Alder reaction looks very good.

Sadly this sequence is, in fact, no good at all. A mixture of three Diels–Alder adducts is usually obtained resulting from addition to the three cyclopentadienes present in solution as the result of
rapid [1,5]H shifts. The one drawn above is a minor product because there is more of the other two dienes, which have an extra substituent on the double bonds.

An excellent example comes from the intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions explored by Dreiding in 1983. One particular substituted cyclopentadiene was made by a fragmentation reaction (see Chapter 38). It might have been expected to give a simple Diels–Alder adduct.

There is nothing wrong with this reaction; indeed, the product looks beautifully stable, but it is not formed because the [1,5]H shift is too quick and gives a more stable cyclopentadiene with more substituents on a double bond. Then it does the Diels–Alder reaction.

Notice that in these compounds the ketone is not conjugated to any of the alkenes and so does not influence the reaction. If we increase the reactivity of the dienophile by putting an ester group in conjugation with it, most of the compound does the Diels–Alder reaction before it does the [1,5]H shift.

Orbital description for the [1,5]H sigmatropic shift
It is equally satisfactory to use frontier orbitals or the Woodward–Hoffmann rules for these reactions. We can take the diene as one component (HOMO or LUMO or \( \pi \)) and the C–H bond as the other (LUMO or HOMO or \( \sigma \)). Let us start by using the LUMO of the diene and the HOMO of the C–H bond.

If the circle around the H atom surprised you, perhaps it will also remind you that hydrogen has only a 1s orbital which is spherical. You can probably see already that all the orbitals are correctly lined up for the reaction.
The hydrogen atom slides across the top face of the planar cyclopentadiene ring. We call this a **suprafacial migration**. This name has got nothing to do with the components in the Woodward–Hoffmann rules—it just means that the migrating group leaves from one face of the π system and rejoins that same face (the top face in this example). **Antarafacial migration** would mean leaving the top face and rejoining the bottom face—a clear impossibility here.

If you use the Woodward–Hoffmann rules, you need to note that the hydrogen atom must react with retention. The 1s orbital is spherically symmetrical and has no node, so wherever you draw the dotted line from that orbital it always means retention. Choosing the components is easy—the diene is a π₄ and the C–H bond a σ₂ component.

The easiest way to join them up is to link the hydrogen atom’s 1s orbital to the top lobe of the π orbital at the back of the diene and the black sp³ orbital to the top lobe at the front of the diene. This gives us π₄s and σ₂s components and there is one (4q + 2)s and no (4r)ₐ components so the sum is odd and the reaction is allowed. Both approaches give us the same picture—a suprafacial migration of the hydrogen atom with (inevitably) retention at the migrating group.

These [1,5]-sigmatropic shifts are not restricted to cyclopentadienes. In Chapter 35 we bemoaned the lack of Diels–Alder reactions using E,Z-dienes. One reason for this dearth is that such dienes undergo [1,5]H shifts rather easily and mixtures of products result.

The complete rules for sigmatropic hydrogen shifts are simple. In thermal reactions, [1,5]H shifts occur suprafacially but [1,3]H and [1,7]H shifts must be antarafacial. It is just as well that antarafacial [1,3]H shifts are impossible (though allowed) as otherwise double bonds would wander about organic molecules like this.

Antarafacial [1,3]H shifts are impossible because a rigid three-carbon chain is too short to allow the H atom to transfer from the top to the bottom—the H atom just can’t reach. When we come to [1,7]H shifts, the situation is different. Now the much longer chain is just flexible enough to allow the transfer.

The hydrogen atom leaves the top side of the triene and adds back in on the bottom side. Antarafacial migration is allowed and possible.

---

### Photochemical [1,n]H sigmatropic shifts follow the opposite rules

As you should by now expect (p. 000), all this is reversed in photochemical reactions. Here is an example of a [1,7]H shift that cannot occur antarafacially because the molecule is a rigid ring, but that can and does occur photochemically.

A [1,7]H shift occurs in the final stages of the human body’s synthesis of vitamin D from cholesterol. Here is the last step of the biosynthesis.
This step happens spontaneously, without the need for light, so the shift must be antarafacial. The reason the body does need light to make vitamin D is the previous step, which only occurs when light shines on the skin.

This ring opening is clearly pericyclic—the electrons go round in a ring, and the curly arrows could be drawn either way—but it is neither a cycloaddition (only one π system is involved) nor a sigmatropic rearrangement (a σ bond is broken rather than moved). It is, in fact, a member of the third and last kind of pericyclic reaction, an electrocyclic reaction.

**Electrocyclic reactions**

In an electrocyclic reaction a ring is always broken or formed. Rings may, of course, be formed by cycloadditions as well, but the difference with electrocyclic reactions is that just one new σ bond is formed (or broken) across the ends of a single conjugated π system. In a cycloaddition, two new σ bonds are always formed (or broken), and in a sigmatropic rearrangement one σ bond forms while one breaks.

![Diagram of electrocyclic reaction](image)

One of the simplest electrocyclic reactions occurs when hexatriene is heated to 500 °C.

It is a pericyclic reaction because the electrons go round in a ring (you could equally draw the arrows going the other way); it’s electrocyclic because a new σ bond is formed across the ends of
a π system. The reaction goes because the σ bond that is formed is stronger than the π bond that is lost. The opposite is true for the electrocyclic reaction shown in the margin—ring strain in the four-membered ring means that the reverse (ring-opening) reaction is preferred to ring closure.

### Rules for electrocyclic reactions

Whether they go in the direction of ring opening or ring closure, electrocyclic reactions are subject to the same rules as all other pericyclic reactions—you saw the same principle at work in Chapter 35 where we applied the Woodward–Hoffmann rules both to cycloadditions and to reverse cycloadditions. With most of the pericyclic reactions you have seen so far, we have given you the choice of using either HOMO–LUMO reasoning or the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. With electrocyclic reactions, you really have to use the Woodward–Hoffmann rules because (at least for the ring closures) there is only one molecular orbital involved.

**Electrocyclic reactions**

- An **electrocyclic reaction** is the formation of a new σ bond across the ends of a conjugated polyene or the reverse.

It is important that you do not confuse electrocyclic reactions with pericyclic reactions. Pericyclic is the name for the family of reactions involving no charged intermediates in which the electrons go round the outside of the ring. Electro cyclic reactions, cycloadditions, and sigmatropic rearrangements are the three main classes of pericyclic reactions.

Let’s start with the hexatriene ring closure, first looking at the orbitals, and then following the same procedure that we taught you for cycloadditions and sigmatropic rearrangements to see what the Woodward–Hoffmann rules have to say about the reaction. As a preliminary, we should just note that hexatriene is, of course, a 6 π electron (π6) conjugated system and, on forming cyclohexadiene, the end two orbitals have to form a σ bond.

So, now for the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction.
2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others.
3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!)
4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.

---

**In one famous case, the release of ring strain is almost exactly counterbalanced by the formation of a σ bond at the expense of a π bond. Cycloheptatriene exists in equilibrium with a bicyclic isomer known as norcaradiene. Usually cycloheptatriene is the major component of the equilibrium, but the norcaradiene structure is favoured if R is an electron-withdrawing group.**
Label each component $s$ or $a$ depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides.

Add up the number of $(4q + 2)_s$ and $(4r)_a$ components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed.

Notice that we called the reaction ‘$s$’ because the top halves of the two $\pi$ orbitals were joining together. We can give the same treatment to the cyclobutene ring-opening reaction—the Woodward–Hoffmann rules tell us nothing about which way the reaction will go, only if the reaction is allowed, and it is invariably easier with electrocyclic reactions to consider the ring-closing reaction even if the ring opening is favoured thermodynamically. This is the process we need to consider.

And the Woodward–Hoffmann treatment again.

1. Draw the mechanism for the reaction.
2. Choose the components. All the bonds taking part in the mechanism must be included and no others.
3. Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!).
4. Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.
5. Label each component $s$ or $a$ depending whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides.
6. Add up the number of $(4q + 2)_s$ and $(4r)_a$ components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed.

Oh dear! We know that the reaction works, so something must be wrong. It certainly isn’t Woodward and Hoffmann’s Nobel-prize-winning rules—it’s our way of drawing the orbital overlap that is at fault. We were fine till stage 3 (we had no choice till then)—but look at what happens if we make the orbitals overlap in a different way.

As before

As before
3 Make a three-dimensional drawing of the way in which the components come together for the reaction, putting in orbitals at the ends of the components (only!)

4 Join up the components where new bonds are to be formed. Make sure you join orbitals that are going to form new bonds.

5 Label each component s or a depending on whether new bonds are formed on the same or on opposite sides.

6 Add up the number of \((4q + 2)s\) and \((4r)a\) components. If the sum is odd, the reaction is allowed.

Now it works! In fact, extension of this reasoning to other electrocyclic reactions tells you that they are all allowed—provided you choose to make the conjugated system react with itself supra-facially for \((4n + 2)\pi\) systems and antarafacially for \((4n)\pi\) systems. This may not seem particularly informative, since how you draw the dotted line has no effect on the reaction product in these cases. But it can make a difference. Here is the electrocyclic ring closure of an octatriene, showing the product from (a) suprafacial reaction and (b) antarafacial reaction.

The meanings of con- and disrotation

Whether the reaction is suprafacial or antarafacial ought to be reflected in the relative stereochemistry of the cyclized products—and indeed it is. This reaction gives solely the diastereoisomer on the left, with the methyl groups syn—clear proof that the reaction is suprafacial. This is a difficult result to explain without the enlightenment provided by the Woodward–Hoffmann rules!

This electrocyclic cyclobutene ring opening also gives the product as a single stereoisomer.

Again, if we draw the reverse reaction, we can see that the reaction required has to be antarafacial for the stereochemistry to be right.

We have drawn little green arrows on the two diagrams to show how the methyl groups move as the new \(\sigma\) bonds form. For the allowed suprafacial reaction of the \(6\pi\) electron system they rotate in
opposite directions so the reaction is called disrotatory (yes, they both go up, but one has to rotate clockwise and one anticlockwise) while for the allowed antarafacial reaction of the $4\pi$ electron system they rotate in the same direction so the reaction is called conrotatory (both clockwise as drawn, but they might equally well have both gone anticlockwise). We can sum up the course of all electrocyclic reactions quite simply using these words.

**Rules for electrocyclic reactions**

- All electrocyclic reactions are allowed
- Thermal electrocyclic reactions involving $(4n + 2)\pi$ electrons are disrotatory
- Thermal electrocyclic reactions involving $(4n)\pi$ electrons are conrotatory
- In conrotatory reactions the two groups rotate in the same way: both clockwise or both anticlockwise
- In disrotatory reactions, one group rotates clockwise and one anticlockwise

This rotation is the reason why you must carefully distinguish electrocyclic reactions from all other pericyclic reactions. In cycloadditions and sigmatropic rearrangements there are small rotations as bond angles adjust from $109^\circ$ to $120^\circ$ and vice versa, but in electrocyclic reactions, rotations of nearly $90^\circ$ are required as a planar polyene becomes a ring, or vice versa. These rules follow directly from application of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules—you can check this for yourself.

**Electrocyclic reactions occur in nature**

A beautiful example of electrocyclic reactions at work is provided by the chemistry of the endiandric acids. This family of natural products, of which endiandric acid D is one of the simplest, is remarkable in being racemic—most chiral natural products are enantiomerically pure (or at least enantiomerically enriched) because they are made by enantiomerically pure enzymes (we discuss all this in Chapter 45). So it seemed that the endiandric acids were formed by non-enzymatic cyclization reactions, and in the early 1980s their Australian discoverer, Black, proposed that their biosynthesis might involve a series of electrocyclic reactions, starting from an acyclic polyene precursor.

![Diagram of electrocyclic reactions](image-url)

What made his proposal so convincing was that the stereochemistry of the endiandric acid D is just what you would expect from the requirements of the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. The first step from the precursor is an $8\pi$ electrocyclic reaction, and would therefore be conrotatory.

![Diagram of conrotatory reaction](image-url)

This sets up a new $6\pi$ system, which can undergo an electrocyclic reaction in disrotatory fashion. Because there are already chiral centres in the molecule, there are, in fact, two possible diastereoisomeric products from this reaction, both arising from disrotatory cyclization. One is endiandric acid D; one is endiandric acid E.
Of course, this was only a theory—until in 1982 K.C. Nicolaou’s group synthesized the proposed endiandric acid precursor polyene—and in one step made both endiandric acids D and E, plus endiandric acid A, which arises from a further pericyclic reaction, an intramolecular Diels–Alder cycloaddition of the acyclic diene on to the cyclohexadiene as dienophile.

Endiandric acid A has four rings and eight stereogenic centres and yet is formed as a single diastereoisomer in one step from an acyclic polyene! And it’s all controlled by pericyclic reactions.

**Photochemical electrocyclic reactions**

After your experience with cycloadditions and sigmatropic rearrangements, you will not be surprised to learn that, in photochemical electrocyclic reactions, the rules regarding conrotatory and disrotatory cyclizations are reversed.

We can now go back to the reaction that introduced this section—the photochemical electrocyclic ring opening of ergosterol to give provitamin D$_2$. By looking at the starting material and product we can deduce whether the reaction is conrotatory or disrotatory.
It’s clearly conrotatory, and a little more thought will tell you why it has to be—a disrotatory thermal 6π cyclization would put an impossible trans double bond into one of the two six-membered rings. Vitamin D deficiency is endemic in those parts of the world where sunlight is scarce for many months of the year—and all because of orbital symmetry.

Cations and anions
What we have just been telling you should convince you that the two reactions below are electrocyclic reactions, not least because the stereochemistry reverses on going from thermal to photochemical reaction.

They are examples of what is known, after its Russian discoverer, as the Nazarov cyclization. In its simplest form, the Nazarov cyclization is the ring closure of a doubly α,β-unsaturated ketone to give a cyclopentenone.

Nazarov cyclizations require acid, and protonation of the ketone sets up the conjugated π system required for an electrocyclic reaction.

One of the five π orbitals involved is empty—so the cyclization is a 4π electrocyclic reaction, and the orbitals forming the new σ bond must interact antarafacially. Loss of a proton and tautomerism gives the cyclopentenone.

The real example above confirms that the reaction is thermally conrotatory and photochemically disrotatory.

Dienyl cations and dienyl anions both undergo electrocyclic ring closure—a nice example occurs when cyclooctadiene is deprotonated with butyllithium.
There are still five p orbitals involved in the cyclization, but now there are six \( \pi \) electrons, so the reaction is disrotatory.

In this case, it is the conrotatory photochemical cyclization that is prevented by strain (it was tried—cyclooctadienyl anion is stable for at least a week at \(-78^\circ\text{C}\) in broad daylight) as the product would be a 5,5 trans-fused system. The same strain prevents thermal electrocyclic ring closure of cyclooctadienyl cations.

\[ \text{Small rings are opened by electrocyclic reactions} \]

Ring strain is important in preventing a reaction that would otherwise change your view of a lot of the chemistry you know. Allyl cations are conjugated systems containing \( 2\pi \) electrons, so if you knew no other chemistry than what is in this chapter you might expect them to cyclize via disrotatory electrocyclic ring closure.

The product would be a cyclopropyl cation. Now, in fact, it is the cyclopropyl cations that undergo this reaction (very readily indeed—cyclopropyl cations are virtually unobservable) because ring strain encourages them to undergo electrocyclic ring opening to give allyl cations.

The instability of cyclopropyl cations means that, even as they start to form as intermediates, they spring open to give allyl cation-derived products. Try nucleophilic substitution on a cyclopropane ring and this happens.

\[ \text{Although the initial product of the ring opening is a cation, and therefore a hard-to-observe reactive intermediate, some nice experiments in ‘superacid’ media (Chapters 17 and 22) have proven that cyclopropyl cation ring openings are indeed disrotatory.} \]
The stereochemistry of aziridine opening is predictable

One last type of three-membered ring whose electrocyclic ring opening does tell us about the stereochemistry of the process is the aziridine. Many aziridines are stable compounds, but those bearing electron-withdrawing groups are unstable with respect to electrocyclic ring opening.

The products are azomethine ylids, and can be trapped by [3+2] cycloaddition reactions with dipolarophiles (look back at Chapter 35).

Because the cycloaddition is stereospecific (suprafacial on both components), the stereochemistry of the products can tell us the stereochemistry of the intermediate ylid, and confirms that the ring opening is conrotatory (the ylid is a 4π electron system).

The synthesis of a cockroach pheromone required pericyclic reactions

We finish this pair of chapters about pericyclic reactions with a synthesis whose simplicity is outclassed only by its elegance. Periplanone B is a remarkable bis-epoxide that functions as the sex pheromone of the American cockroach. Insect sex pheromones often have economic importance because they can form the key to remarkable effective traps for insect pests.

In 1984, Schreiber published a synthesis of the pheromone in which the majority of steps involve pericyclic reactions. Make sure you understand each one as it appears—re-read the appropriate part of Chapter 35 or this chapter if you have any problems.

The first step is a photochemical [2+2] cycloaddition. You could not have predicted the regiochemistry, but it is typical of the cycloaddition of allenes with unsaturated ketones.

The product is a mixture of diastereoisomers because of the chiral centre already in the molecule (ringed in green), but it is, of course, fully stereospecific for the two new black chiral centres in the four-membered ring. The next step adds vinylmagnesium bromide to the ketone—again a mixture of diastereoisomers results. Now all the carbons in the 12-membered ring are present, and they are sorted out by the two steps that follow. The first is a Cope rearrangement: a [3,3]-
sigmatropic rearrangement, accelerated as we have described (p. 000) by the presence of an alkoxide substituent.

The six-membered ring has expanded to a ten-membered ring. Now for a second ring-expansion step—heating the compound to 175 °C makes it undergo electrocyclic ring opening of the four-membered ring, giving the 12-membered ring we want. Or rather not quite—the new double bond in the ring is formed as a mixture of cis and trans isomers, but irradiation isomerizes the less stable cis to the more stable trans double bond.

The remaining steps in the synthesis use chemistry not yet introduced in this book but involve the insertion of another (Z) alkene and two epoxides. Pericyclic reactions are particularly valuable in the synthesis and manipulation of rings.

We must now take our leave of this trio of pericyclic reactions and move on to two reaction classes that have appeared frequently in these two chapters, but that involve mechanisms other than pericyclic ones and deserve chapters of their own: rearrangements and fragmentations.
**Problems**

1. Give mechanisms for these steps, commenting on the regioselectivity of the pericyclic step and the different regioselectivity of the two metals.

   ![Mechanism 1a](image1.png)

   ![Mechanism 1b](image2.png)

   **Pyrolysis of this compound at 460 °C gave a diene whose NMR spectrum included \( \delta_H \text{ (p.p.m.)} \):**

   - 6.06 (1H, dd, \( J = 10.3, 12.1 \) Hz),
   - 6.23 (1H, dd, \( J = 10.3, 14.7 \) Hz),
   - 6.31 (1H, d, \( J = 14.7 \) Hz), and 7.32 (1H, d, \( J = 12.1 \) Hz). Does this agree with the structure given? How is this diene formed and why does it have that stereochemistry?

2. Predict the product of this reaction.

   ![Mechanism 2a](image3.png)

   ![Mechanism 2b](image4.png)

3. Give mechanisms for this alternative synthesis of two fused five-membered rings.

   ![Mechanism 3a](image5.png)

   ![Mechanism 3b](image6.png)

4. Explain what is going on here.

   ![Mechanism 4a](image7.png)

   ![Mechanism 4b](image8.png)

5. In Chapter 33, Problem 13, we used a tricyclic hydroxy-ketone whose stereochemistry had been wrongly assigned. Now we are going to show you how it was used and you are going to interpret the results. This is the correct result.

   ![Mechanism 5a](image9.png)

   ![Mechanism 5b](image10.png)

   The hydroxy-ketone was first converted into a compound with PhS and OAc substituents. Explain the stereochemistry of this process.

6. Careless attempts to carry out a Claisen rearrangement on this allyl ether often give the compound shown instead of the expected product. What is the expected product? How is the unwanted product formed? Addition of a small amount of a weak base, such as PhNMe₂ helps to prevent the unwanted reaction. How?

   ![Mechanism 6a](image11.png)

   ![Mechanism 6b](image12.png)

7. Treatment of this imine with base followed by an acidic work-up gives a cyclic product with two phenyl groups cis to one another. Why is this?

   ![Mechanism 7a](image13.png)

   ![Mechanism 7b](image14.png)

8. This question concerns the structure and chemistry of an unsaturated nine-membered ring. Comment upon its structure. Explain its different behaviour under thermal or photochemical conditions.

   ![Mechanism 8a](image15.png)

   ![Mechanism 8b](image16.png)

9. Propose a mechanism for this reaction that accounts for the stereochemistry of the product.

   ![Mechanism 9a](image17.png)

   ![Mechanism 9b](image18.png)
10. Treatment of cyclohexa-1,3-dione with this acetylenic amine gives a stable enamine in good yield. Refluxing this enamine in nitrobenzene gives a pyridine after a remarkable series of reactions. Fill in the details: give mechanisms for the reactions, structures for any intermediates, and suitable explanations for each pericyclic step. A mechanism is not required for the last step (nitrobenzene acts as an oxidant).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{H}_2\text{N} \\
\text{H}_2\text{O} & \quad \text{NaOH} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{PhNO}_2 \\
\text{74\% yield} & \quad 195\ ^\circ\text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

13. How would you make the starting material for these reactions? Treatment of the anhydride with butanol gives an ester that gives two inseparable compounds on heating. On treatment with an amine, an easily separable mixture of an acidic and a neutral compound is formed. What are the components of the first mixture and how are they formed?

11. Problem 11 in Chapter 32 was concerned with two diastereoisomers of this compound that were formed in ‘a chemical reaction’. We can now let you into the secret of that ‘chemical reaction’. A benzocyclobutene was heated with methyl acrylate to give a 1:1 mixture of the two isomers. What is the mechanism of the reaction and why is only one regioisomer but a mixture of stereoisomers formed? Isomer B is converted into isomer A on treatment with base. What is the stereochemistry of A and B?

14. Treatment of this keto-aldehyde (which exists largely as an enol) with the oxidizing agent DDQ (a quinone—see p. 000) gives an unstable compound that converts into the product shown. Explain the reactions and comment on the stereochemistry.

12. Treatment of this amine with base at low temperature gives an unstable anion that isomerizes to another anion above –35\°C. Aqueous work-up gives a bicyclic amine. What are the two anions? Explain the stereochemistry of the product. Revision of NMR. In the NMR spectrum of the product the two green hydrogens appear as an ABX system with \(J_{AB}\) 15.4 Hz. Comment.
Neighbouring groups can accelerate substitution reactions

Compare the rates of the following substitution reactions. Each of these reactions is a substitution of the leaving group (OTs or Cl) by solvent, known as a solvolysis.

- **Building on:**
  - Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon ch17
  - Conformational analysis ch18
  - Elimination reactions ch19
  - Electrophilic aromatic substitution ch22
  - Controlling stereochemistry ch16, ch33, & ch34
  - Sigmatropic rearrangements ch3

- **Arriving at:**
  - Participation: nucleophiles are more efficient if they are already part of the molecule
  - Participation means acceleration and retention of stereochemistry and may mean rearrangement
  - Participating groups can have lone pairs or \( \pi \) electrons
  - Carbocations often rearrange by alkyl migration
  - How to work out the mechanism of a rearrangement
  - Ring expansion by rearrangement
  - Controlling rearrangements
  - Using rearrangements in synthesis
  - Insertion of O, N, or C next to a ketone

- **Looking forward to:**
  - Fragmentations ch38
  - Carbone chemistry ch40
  - Determination of mechanism ch41
  - Stereoelectronics ch42
  - Main group chemistry ch46–ch47
  - The chemistry of life ch49–ch51

Nearby groups can evidently increase the rate of substitution reactions significantly. Now, you may be thinking back to Chapter 17 and saying ‘yes, yes, we know that’—when we were discussing the mechanisms of substitution reactions we pointed out that a cation-stabilizing group at the reaction centre makes \( S_N 1 \) reactions very fast: for example—

- Reacts with nucleophiles 10\(^6\) times as fast as
- Reacts with nucleophiles 10\(^5\) times as fast as

In the four examples above, though, it is not at the reaction centre itself that the functional groups change but at the carbon next to the reaction centre, and we call these groups **neighbouring groups**.

A solvolysis was defined in Chapter 17 as ‘a reaction in which the solvent is also the nucleophile’.
The mechanism by which they speed up the reactions is known as **neighbouring group participation**. Compare the reaction of this ether and this sulfide with an alcohol.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{S}_{\text{N}1} \text{ reaction of ethoxymethyl chloride} & \quad \text{neighbouring group participation of a sulfide} \\
\end{align*}
\]

In both cases, ionization of the starting material is assisted by the lone pair of an electron-rich functional group. The ether in the first example assists by forming a π bond, the sulfide assists by forming a three-membered ring, and a common feature of all mechanisms involving neighbouring group participation is the formation of a cyclic intermediate.

**Stereochemistry can indicate neighbouring group participation**

How do we know that neighbouring group participation is taking place? Well, the first bit of evidence is the *increase in rate*. The neighbouring groups will become involved only if they can increase the rate of the substitution reaction—otherwise the mechanism will just follow the ordinary \( S_{\text{N}2} \) pathway. But more important information comes from reactions where stereochemistry is involved, and one of these is the last of the four examples above. Here it is again in more detail. Not only does the first of these reactions go faster than the second—it's stereochemical course is different too.

Although one starting material has *syn* and the other *anti* stereochemistry, the products have the same (*anti*) stereochemistry: one substitution goes with retention and one goes with inversion. Again, neighbouring group participation is the reason. To explain this, we should first draw the six-membered rings in their real conformation. For the *anti* compound, both substituents can be equatorial.

However, not much can happen in this conformation—but, if we allow the ring to flip, you can see immediately that the acetate substituent is ideally placed to participate in the departure of the tosylate group.

What results is an entirely symmetrical intermediate—the positive charge on one of the oxygens is, of course, delocalized over both of them. The intramolecular \( S_{\text{N}2} \) reaction takes place with inversion, as required by the orbitals, so now the junction of the two rings is *cis*.

The next step is attack of acetic acid on the intermediate. This is another \( S_{\text{N}2} \) reaction, which also proceeds with inversion and gives back a *trans* product.
Overall, we have *retention* of stereochemistry. As you know, $S_N 2$ reactions go with inversion, and $S_N 1$ reactions with loss of stereochemical information—so this result is possible only if we have two sequential $S_N 2$ reactions taking place—in other words neighbouring group participation.

Why, then, does the other diastereoisomer react with inversion of stereochemistry? Well, try drawing the mechanism for intramolecular displacement of the tosyl group. Whether you put the tosylate or the acetate group equatorial doesn’t matter; there is no way in which the acetate oxygen’s lone pair can reach the $\sigma^*$ orbital of the tosylate C–O bond.

Neighbouring group participation is impossible, and substitution goes simply by intermolecular displacement of OTs by AcOH. Just one $S_N 2$ step means overall inversion of configuration, and no participation means a slower reaction.

**Retention of configuration is an indication of neighbouring group participation**

Enantiomerically pure (S)-2-bromopropanoic acid reacts with concentrated sodium hydroxide to give (R)-lactic acid. The reaction goes with inversion and is a typical $S_N 2$ reaction—and a good one too, since the reaction centre is adjacent to a carbonyl group (see Chapter 17).

If, on the other hand, the reaction is run using Ag$_2$O and a low concentration of sodium hydroxide, (S)-lactic acid is obtained—there is overall *retention* of stereochemistry.

Nucleophilic substitution reactions that go with retention of stereochemistry are rather rare and mostly go through two successive inversions with neighbouring group participation, like the example you saw in the last section. This time the neighbouring group is carboxylate: the silver oxide is important because it encourages the ionization of the starting material by acting as a halogen-selective Lewis acid.
A three-membered ring intermediate forms, which then gets opened by hydroxide in a second 
$S_N2$ step.

Why does the carboxylate group participate only at low HO$^-$ concentration and in the presence of Ag$^+$? You can think of the situation in these two reactions in terms of the factors that favour $S_N1$ and $S_N2$ reactions. In the first, we have conditions suited to an $S_N2$ reaction: a very good nucleophile (HO$^-$) and a good leaving group (Br$^-$). Improve the leaving group by adding Ag$^+$ (Ag$^+$ assists Br$^-$’s departure much as H$^+$ assists the departure of OH$^-$ by allowing it to leave as H$_2$O), and worsen the nucleophile (H$_2$O instead of HO$^-$, of which there is now only a low concentration), and we have the sorts of conditions that would favour an $S_N1$ reaction. The trouble is, without neighbouring group participation, the cation here would be rather unstable—right next to a carbonyl group. The carboxylate saves the day by participating in the departure of the Br$^-$ and forming the lactone. The key thing to remember is that a reaction always goes by the mechanism with the fastest rate.

What sorts of groups can participate?

You’ve already met the most important ones—sulfides, esters, carboxylates. Ethers and amines (you will see some of these shortly) can also assist substitution reactions through neighbouring group participation. The important thing that they have in common is an electron-rich heteroatom with a lone pair that can be used to form the cyclic intermediate. Sulfides are rather better than ethers—this sulfide reacts with water much faster than $n$-PrCl but the ether reacts with acetic acid four times more slowly than $n$-PrOSO$_2$Ar.

**sulfide participation**

$\text{PhS}$

reacts with H$_2$O 600 times faster than $\text{Cl}$

**ether participation?**

$\text{MeO}$

reacts with AcOH 4 times slower than $\text{OSO}_2\text{Ar}$

The OMe group slows the reaction down just because it is electronegative more than it accelerates it by participation. A more distant OMe group can participate: this 4-MeO alkyl sulfonate reacts with alcohols 4000 times faster than the $n$-Bu sulfonate.
Again neighbouring group participation is involved, but this time through a five- rather than a three-membered ring. Participation is most commonly through three- and five-membered rings, less often six-membered ones, and very rarely four- or more than seven-membered ones.

**Mustard gas**

Participation of sulfides through three-membered rings was used to gruesome effect in the development of mustard gas during the Second World War. Mustard gas itself owes its toxicity to the neighbouring group participation of sulfur, which accelerates its alkylation reactions.

**Not all participating groups have lone pairs**

Another of the four examples we started with shows that even the \( \pi \) electrons of a C=C double bond can participate. Retention of stereochemistry in the product (the starting tosylate and product acetate are both *anti* to the double bond) and the extremely fast reaction (\( 10^{11} \) times that of the saturated analogue) are tell-tale signs of neighbouring group participation.

**What is the structure of the intermediate?**

During the 1950s and 1960s, this sort of question provoked a prolonged and acrimonious debate, which we have no intention of stirring up, and all we will do is point out that the intermediate in this reaction is not fully represented by the structure we have here: it is symmetrical and could be represented by two structures with three-membered rings or by a delocalized structure in which two electrons are shared between three atoms. The difference need not concern us.

**Aryl participation is more common than simple alkene participation**

Finally, an example with a neighbouring phenyl group. Participation is hinted at by the retention of relative stereochemistry.

Again, \( \pi \) electrons are involved, but the reaction is now electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 22) rather like an intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation with a delocalized intermediate often termed a phenonium ion.
More stereochemical consequences of neighbouring group participation

The phenonium ion is symmetrical. The acetic acid can attack either atom in the three-membered ring to give the same product.

The phenonium ion is nonetheless still chiral, since it has an axis (and not a plane or centre) of symmetry, so if we use an enantiomerically pure starting material we get an enantiomerically pure product.

Not so with the other diastereoisomer of this compound! Now, the phenonium ion is symmetrical with a plane of symmetry—it is therefore achiral, and the same whichever enantiomer we start from. Attack on each end of the phenonium ion gives a different enantiomer, so whichever enantiomer of starting material we use we get the same racemic mixture of products.

You can compare this reaction with the loss of stereochemical information that occurs during an SN1 reaction of enantiomerically pure compounds. Both reactions pass through an achiral intermediate.

Not so with the other diastereoisomer of this compound! Now, the phenonium ion is symmetrical with a plane of symmetry—it is therefore achiral, and the same whichever enantiomer we start from. Attack on each end of the phenonium ion gives a different enantiomer, so whichever enantiomer of starting material we use we get the same racemic mixture of products. You can compare this reaction with the loss of stereochemical information that occurs during an SN1 reaction of enantiomerically pure compounds. Both reactions pass through an achiral intermediate.
The same loss of absolute stereochemical information (but retention of relative stereochemistry) occurs in another reaction that you met at the start of this chapter. We then emphasized two features: the acceleration in rate and the retention of stereochemistry.

The intermediate oxonium ion is delocalized and achiral. If a single enantiomer of the starting material is used, racemic product is formed through this achiral intermediate. Attack at one carbon atom gives one enantiomer; attack at the other gives the mirror image.

In this case the neighbouring group can be caught in the act—when the rearrangement is carried out in ethanol, the intermediate is trapped by attack at the central carbon atom. It is as though someone switched the light on while the acetate’s fingers were in the biscuit tin (the cookie jar).

The product is an orthoester and is achiral too. This chemistry should remind you of the formation of acetals as described in Chapter 14.

**Rearrangements occur when a participating group ends up bonded to a different atom**

Because the intermediates in these examples are symmetrical, 50% of the time one substituent ends up moving from one carbon atom to another during the reaction. This is clearer in the following example: the starting material is prepared such that the carbon atom carrying the phenyl group is an unusual isotope—carbon-14. This doesn’t affect the chemistry, but means that the two carbon atoms are easily distinguishable. Reacting the compound with trifluoroacetic acid scrambles the label between the two positions: the intermediate is symmetrical and, in the 50% of reactions with the nucleophile that take place at the labelled carbon atom, the phenyl ends up migrating to the unlabelled carbon atom in a rearrangement reaction.
Now, consider this substitution reaction in which OH replaces Cl but with a change in the molecular structure. The substitution goes with complete rearrangement—the amine ends up attached to a different carbon atom.

We can easily see why if we look at the mechanism. The reaction starts off looking like a neighbouring group participation of the sort you are now familiar with (the carbon atoms are numbered for identification).

The intermediate is an aziridinium ion (aziridines are three-membered rings containing nitrogen—the nitrogen analogues of epoxides). The hydroxide ion chooses to attack only the less hindered terminal carbon 1, and a rearrangement results—the amine has migrated from carbon 1 to carbon 2.

We should just pause here for a moment to consider why this rearrangement works. We start with a secondary alkyl chloride that contains a very bad leaving group (Et₂N) and a good one (Cl⁻)—but the good one is hard for HO⁻ to displace because it is at a secondary centre (remember—secondary alkyl halides are slow to react by S_N1 or S_N2). But the NEt₂ can participate to make an aziridinium intermediate—now there is a good leaving group (RNEt₂ without the negative charge) at the primary as well as the secondary carbon, so HO⁻ does a fast S_N2 reaction at the primary carbon.

Another way to look at this reaction is to see that the good internal nucleophile Et₂N will compete successfully for the electrophile with the external nucleophile HO⁻. Intramolecular reactions are usually faster than bimolecular reactions.

- Intramolecular reactions, including participation, that give three-, five-, or six-membered rings are usually faster than intermolecular reactions.
The Payne rearrangement

The reaction of an epoxy alcohol in base does not always give the expected product. The thiolate nucleophile has not opened the epoxide directly, but instead appears to have displaced HO—, a very bad leaving group. Almost no nucleophile will displace OH—, so we need an alternative explanation. This comes in the form of another rearrangement, this time involving oxygen, but otherwise rather similar to the ones you have just met. Again, our epoxide, though reactive as an electrophile, suffers from being secondary at both electrophilic centres. t-BuS— is a bulky nucleophile, so direct attack on the epoxide is slow. Instead, under the basic conditions of the reaction, the neighbouring alkoxide group attacks intramolecularly to make a new, rearranged epoxy alcohol. This rearrangement is called the **Payne rearrangement**.

The direction of rearrangement can depend on the nucleophile

Compare these reactions: you saw the first on p. 000 but the second is new.

In the first reaction, the amine migrates from the primary to the secondary position; in the other from secondary to primary. Both go through very similar aziridinium intermediates, so the difference must be due to the regioselectivity with which this aziridinium opens in each case.

The only important difference is the nucleophile used in the reaction. Hydroxide opens the aziridinium at the less hindered end; water opens the aziridinium ion at the more hindered (more substituted) end. Why?
We can think of the aziridinium ion as a compound containing two alternative leaving groups—one from a primary centre and one from a secondary one. Primary centres can take part in fast S_N2 reactions, but cannot undergo S_N1. Secondary centres can undergo either S_N1 or S_N2 reactions, but, in general, do neither very well. Now, the rate of an S_N2 reaction depends on the nucleophile, so a good nucleophile (like HO\(^-\)) can do fast S_N2 reactions, while a bad one (like H_2O) cannot. The fastest reaction HO\(^-\) can do then is S_N2 at the primary centre (remember: you see only the reaction that goes by the fastest mechanism). Water, on the other hand, takes part only reluctantly in substitution reactions—but this does not matter if they are S_N1 reactions because their rates are independent of nucleophile. H_2O waits until the leaving group has left of its own accord, to give a cation, which rapidly grabs any nucleophile—water will do just as well as HO\(^-\). This can happen only at the secondary centre because the primary cation is too unstable to form.

All the rearrangements you have met so far occurred during substitution reactions. All happened because reaction with rearrangement is faster than reaction without rearrangement—in other words, rearrangement occurs because of a kinetic preference for the rearrangement pathway. You could see these reactions as ‘special case’ examples of neighbouring group participation—in both participation and rearrangement, the neighbouring group speeds up the reaction, but in rearrangement reactions the neighbouring group gets rather more than it bargained for, and ends up elsewhere in the molecule. Both proceed through a cyclic transition state or intermediate, and it is simply the way in which that transition state or intermediate collapses that determines whether rearrangement occurs.

Rearrangement can involve migration of alkyl groups

You have seen reactions in which the lone pairs of N, O, and S atoms participate, and reactions in which the π orbitals of alkenes and aromatic groups participate, and participation can lead to rearrangement for any of these groups. Alkyl groups too may rearrange. This example is a nucleophilic substitution under conditions (Ag\(^+\), H_2O) designed to encourage S_N1 reactions (excellent leaving group, poor nucleophile). First of all, this is what does not happen (and indeed without Ag\(^+\) nothing happens at all).

Compounds like this, with a t-butyl group next to the electrophilic centre, are notoriously slow to undergo substitution reactions. They can’t do S_N2, they are too hindered; they can’t do S_N1, the cation you would get is primary.

In fact, a rearrangement occurs. One of the methyl groups moves (‘migrates’) from carbon 2 to carbon 1, the new OH group taking its place at carbon 2.

How has this happened? Well, firstly, our principle (p. 000) tells us that it has happened because S_N1 and S_N2 are both so slow that this new rearrangement mechanism is faster than either. Adding Ag\(^+\) makes I\(^-\) desperate to leave, but unassisted this would mean the formation of a primary...
Rearrangements occur when a participating group ends up bonded to a different atom

carbocation. The molecule does the only thing it can to stop this happening, and uses the electrons in an adjacent C–C bond to assist the departure of I–.

Having participated, the methyl group continues to migrate to carbon 1 because by doing so it allows the formation of a stable tertiary carbocation, which then captures water in a step reminiscent of the second half of an SN1 reaction.

In the migration step we used a slightly unusually curved curly arrow to represent the movement of a group (Me) along a bond taking its bonding electrons with it. We shall use this type of arrow when a group migrates from one atom to another during a rearrangement.

Often, you will see this rearrangement represented in a different way. Both are correct, but we feel that the first is more intuitively descriptive.

**Carbocations readily rearrange**

In Chapter 17 we showed you that it is possible to run the NMR spectra of carbocations by using a polar but nonnucleophilic solvent such as liquid SO₂ or SOClF. Treating an alkyl halide RX with the powerful Lewis acid SbF₅ under these conditions gives a solution of carbocation: the carbocation reacts neither with solvent nor the SbF₅X⁻ counterion because neither is nucleophilic. We know, for example, that the chemical shifts in both the $^{13}$C and $^1$H NMR spectra of the $t$-butyl cation are very large, particularly the $^{13}$C shift at the positively charged centre.

NMR can be used to follow the course of rearrangement reactions involving carbocations too. We can illustrate this with an experiment that tries to make the neopentyl cation by the substitution reaction you have just seen. This time the starting material and solvent are slightly different, but the outcome is nonetheless most revealing. Dissolving neopentyl tosylate in fluorosulfonic acid (a strong, nonnucleophilic acid) at $-77^\circ$C gives a 77% yield of a cation whose spectrum is shown below. Assigning the peaks is not hard once you know that the same spectrum is obtained when 2,2-dimethyl-2-butanol is dissolved in fluorosulfonic acid with SbF₅ added.

Clearly, both spectra are of the tertiary 2-methylbutyl cation and the neopentyl cation never saw the light of day. The reaction is the same rearrangement that you saw in the substitution reaction of neopentyl iodide, but here the rate of rearrangement can be measured and it is extremely fast. Neopentyl tosylate reacts to form a cation under these conditions about $10^4$ times as fast as ethyl tosylate, even though both tosylates are primary. This massive rate difference shows that if migration of an alkyl group can allow rearrangement to a more stable carbocation, it will happen, and happen rapidly.
Primary cations can never be observed by NMR—they are too unstable. But secondary cations can, provided the temperature is kept low enough. sec-Butyl chloride in SO₂ClF at −78 °C gives a stable, observable cation. But, as the cation is warmed up, it rearranges to the t-butyl cation. Now this rearrangement truly is a carbocation rearrangement: the starting material is an observable carbocation, and so is the product, and we should just look at the mechanism in a little more detail.

\[
\text{Cl} \quad \text{SbF}_5, \text{SO}_2\text{ClF} \quad -70 ^\circ \text{C} \quad \text{Me and H have changed places}
\]

With rearrangements like this it is best to number the C atoms so you can see clearly what moves where. If we do this, we see that the methyl group we have labelled 4 and the H on C3 have changed places. (Note that C3 starts off as a CH₂ group and ends up as CH₃.)

**Top tip for rearrangements**

Number the carbon atoms in starting material and product before you try to work out the mechanism.

Using the sort of arrows we introduced on p. 000, we can draw a mechanism for this in which first the Me migrates, and then the hydride. We say hydride migration rather than hydrogen (or proton) because the H atom migrates with its pair of electrons.

As these rearrangements are a new type of reaction, we should just spend a moment looking at the molecular orbitals that are involved. For the first step, migration of the methyl group, the LUMO must clearly be the empty p orbital of the cation, and the HOMO is the C–C σ bond, which is about to break.

The methyl group migrates smoothly from one orbital to another—there are bonding interactions all the way. The next step, migration of H, is just the same—except that the HOMO is now a C–H σ bond. The methyl migration is unfavourable as it transforms a secondary cation into an unstable primary cation but the hydride migration puts that right as it gives a stable tertiary cation. The whole reaction is under thermodynamic control.

**Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements**

Carbocation rearrangements involving migration of H or alkyl groups don’t just happen in NMR machines. They happen during normal reactions too. For example, acid-catalysed dehydration of the
natural product camphenilol gives the alkene santene (a key component of the fragrance of sandalwood oil) in a reaction involving migration of a methyl group.

The mechanism shows why the rearrangement happens: the first-formed cation cannot eliminate H⁺ in an E1 reaction because loss of the only available proton would give a very strained alkene (make a model and see!).

However, migration of a methyl group both stabilizes the cation—it becomes tertiary instead of secondary—and allows E1 elimination of H⁺ to take place to give a stable alkene.

The migration of an alkyl group to a cationic centre is known as a Wagner–Meerwein rearrangement or Wagner–Meerwein shift, and this migration is, of course, a synthetic manifestation of the rearrangement we have just been looking at in NMR spectra. Wagner–Meerwein shifts have been studied extensively in the class of natural products to which both of these natural products belong—terpenes—and we will come back to them in Chapter 51 (natural products). For the moment, though, we will just illustrate this type of reaction with one more example—another acid-catalysed dehydra-
tion, of isoborneol to give camphene.

This one seems much more complicated—but, in fact, only one alkyl migration is involved. To see what has happened, remember the 'top tip'—number the carbons. You can number the starting material any way you choose—we’ve started with the gem-dimethyl group because it will be easy to spot in the product. The numbers just follow round the ring, with C8 being the methyl group attached to C5.

Now for the hard bit—we need to work out which carbon in the starting material becomes which carbon in the product. The best thing is just have a go—mistakes will soon become obvious, and you can always try again.

- Use the substituents to help you—some will have changed, but most will be the same or similar—for example, C1 is still easy to spot as the carbon carrying the gem-dimethyl group

- Use connectivity to help you—again, a C–C bond or two may have broken or formed, but most of the C–C bonds in the starting material will be there in the product. C1 and C2 will probably still be next door to one another—C2 was a bridgehead carbon in the starting material, and there is a bridgehead C attached to C1 in the product; assume that’s C2
C3 and C4 were unsubstituted carbons in the starting material, and are identifiable in the product too. The other easily spotted atom is C7—an unsubstituted C attached to C2.

C5, C6, and C8 are harder. We can assume that C8 is the =CH2 carbon—it was a methyl group but perhaps has become involved in an elimination. C5 was attached to C1, C4, C6, and C8: one of the remaining carbons is attached to C1 and C8, so that seems more likely to be C5, which leaves C6 as the bridgehead, attached as before to C7 and C5.

Now we have the whole picture and we can assess what has happened in the reaction—which old bonds have been broken and which new bonds have been formed.

Numbering the atoms this way identifies the likely point of rearrangement—the only bond broken is between C4 and C5. Instead we have a new one between C5 and C6: C4 appears to have migrated from C5 to C6. Now for the mechanism. The first step will, of course, be loss of water to generate a secondary cation at C6. The cation is next to a quaternary centre, and migration of any of three bonds could generate a more stable tertiary carbocation. But we know that the new bond in the product is between C4 and C6, so let’s migrate carbon 4. Manipulating the diagrams a bit turns up a structure remarkably similar to our product, and all we need to do is lose a proton from C8.

Although migration of an alkyl group that forms part of a ring leads to much more significant changes in structure than simple migration of a methyl group, the reason why it happens is still just the same.

Alkyl migrations occur in order to make a carbocation more stable.

Ring expansion means rearrangement

‘More stable’ usually means ‘more substituted’, but cations can also be made more stable if they become less strained. So, for example, four-membered rings adjacent to cations readily rearrange to five-membered rings in order to relieve ring strain.
This time the cation is formed by protonation of an alkene, not departure of a leaving group, but writing a mechanism should now be a straightforward matter to you.

Though the rearrangement step transforms a stable tertiary cation into a less stable secondary cation, relief of strain in expansion from a four- to a five-membered ring makes the alkyl migration favourable. In 1964, E.J. Corey published a synthesis of the natural product α-caryophyllene alcohol that made use of a similar ring expansion. Notice the photochemical [2+2] cycloaddition (Chapter 35) in the synthesis of the starting material.

Rearrangement of this tertiary alcohol in acid gives the target natural product. The four-membered ring has certainly disappeared but it may not be obvious at first what has taken its place.

As usual, numbering the atoms makes clear what has happened: carbon 7 has migrated from carbon 6 to carbon 5. Loss of water gives a tertiary carbocation that undergoes rearrangement to a secondary carbocation with expansion of a four- to a five-membered ring.

Carbocation rearrangements: blessing or curse?

Well, that depends. You have now seen a few useful carbocation rearrangements that give single products in high yield. But you have also met at least one reaction that cannot be done because of carbocation rearrangements: Friedel–Crafts alkylation using primary alkyl halides.
The Friedel–Crafts alkylation illustrates the problems of trying to use carbocation rearrangements to make single products in high yield. We can give three guidelines to spotting this type of reaction.

1. The rearrangement must be fast so that other reactions do not compete.
2. The product cation must be sufficiently more stable than the starting one so that the rearrangement happens in high yield.
3. Subsequent trapping of the product cation must be reliable: cations are high-energy intermediates, and are therefore unselective about how they react.

A reaction is no good if the cation reacts in more than one way—it may react with a nucleophile, eliminate, or undergo further rearrangement—but it must do only one of these! For the rest of the chapter, we will address only reactions that, unlike this Friedel–Crafts reaction, follow these guidelines. The reactions we will talk about all happen in good yield.

The pinacol rearrangement

When the 1,2-diol ‘pinacol’ is treated with acid, a rearrangement takes place.

Whenever you see a rearrangement, you should now think ‘carbocation’. Here, protonation of one of the hydroxyl groups allows it to leave as water, giving the carbocation.

You now know that carbocations rearrange by alkyl shifts to get as stable as they can be—but this carbocation is already tertiary, and there is no ring strain, so why should it rearrange? Well, here we have another source of electrons to stabilize the carbocation: lone pairs on an oxygen atom. We pointed out early in the chapter that oxygen is very good at stabilizing a positive charge on an adjacent atom, and somewhat less good at stabilizing a positive charge two atoms away. By rearranging, the first-formed carbocation gets the positive charge into a position where the oxygen can stabilize it, and loss of a proton from oxygen then gives a stable ketone.

You can view the pinacol as a rearrangement with a ‘push’ and a ‘pull’. The carbocation left by the departure of water ‘pulls’ the migrating group across at the same time as the oxygen’s lone pair ‘pushes’ it. A particularly valuable type of pinacol rearrangement forms spirocyclic ring systems. You may find this one harder to follow, though the mechanism is identical with that of the last example. Our ‘top tip’ of numbering the atoms should help you to see what has happened: atom 2 has migrated from atom 1 to atom 6.
When drawing the mechanism it doesn’t matter which hydroxyl group you protonate or which adjacent C–C bond migrates—they are all the same. One five-membered ring expands to a six-membered ring but the reason this reaction happens is the formation of a carbonyl group, as in all pinacol rearrangements.

Epoxides rearrange with Lewis acids in a pinacol fashion

The intermediate cation in a pinacol rearrangement can equally well be formed from an epoxide, and treating epoxides with acid, including Lewis acids such as MgBr₂, promotes the same type of reaction.

Rearrangement of epoxides with magnesium salts means that opening epoxides with Grignard reagents can give surprising results.

The alkyllithium reaction is quite straightforward as long as the alkyllithium is free of lithium salts. A clue to what has happened with the Grignard reagents comes from the fact that treating this epoxide with just MgBr₂ (no RMgBr) gives an aldehyde.

With a Grignard reagent, rearrangement occurs faster than addition to the epoxide, and then the Grignard reagent adds to the aldehyde.
Some pinacol rearrangements have a choice of migrating group

With these symmetrical diols and epoxides, it does not matter which hydroxyl group is protonated and leaves, nor which end the epoxide opens, nor which group migrates. When an unsymmetrical diol or epoxide rearranges, it is important which way the reaction goes. Usually, the reaction leaves behind the more stable cation. So, for example, this unsymmetrical diol gives the ring-expanded ketone, a starting material for the synthesis of analogues of the drug methadone.

This product is formed because the green OH group leaves more readily than the black because the carbocation stabilized by two phenyl groups forms more readily than the carbocation stabilized by two alkyl groups. The migration step follows without selectivity as both alkyl groups on the black alcohol are the same.

Most unsymmetrical diols or epoxides give mixtures of products upon rearrangement. The problem is that there is a choice of two leaving groups and two alternative rearrangement directions, and only for certain substitution patterns is the choice clear-cut.

Semipinacol rearrangements are pinacol reactions with no choice about which way to go

In 1971, French chemists needed this seven-membered cyclic ketone. A reasonable starting material to use is this diol, because it can be made in two steps from the natural product isonopinone.

The reaction they needed for the last stage is a pinacol rearrangement—the primary hydroxyl group needs persuading to leave as the ring expands. The problem is, of course, that the tertiary hydroxyl group is much more likely to leave since it leaves behind a more stable carbocation.

The solution to this problem is to force the primary hydroxyl group to be the leaving group by making it into a tosylate. The primary hydroxyl group reacts more rapidly with TsCl than the tertiary one because it is less hindered. A weak base is now all that is needed to make the compound rearrange in what is known as a semipinacol rearrangement.
Semipinacol rearrangements are rearrangements in which a hydroxyl group provides the electrons to ‘push’ the migrating group across, but the ‘pull’ comes from the departure of leaving groups other than water—tosylate in this example, but typically also halide or nitrogen (N₂). Since tosylation occurs at the less hindered hydroxyl group of a diol, not only can semipinacol rearrangements be more regioselective than pinacol rearrangements, but their regioselectivity may be in the opposite direction.

Corey exploited this in a synthesis of the natural product longifolene. He needed to persuade an easily made 6,6-fused ring system to undergo rearrangement to a ring-expanded ketone. Again, a normal acid-catalysed pinacol rearrangement is no good—the tertiary, allylic hydroxyl group is much more likely to ionize, and the acid-sensitive protecting group would be hydrolysed too. Tosylation of the secondary alcohol in the presence of the tertiary is possible, and semipinacol rearrangement gives the required ketone.

The leaving group need not be tosylate: in the following example, part of a synthesis of bergamotene (a component of valerian root oil and the aroma of Earl Grey tea), a 2-iodo alcohol rearranges.

The structure of bergamotene

The structure of bergamotene was, for some years during the 1960s, a matter of debate. The difficult question was the configuration of the chiral centre ringed in black. With modern spectroscopic techniques, we can now solve this type of problem simply, but the only solution then was to synthesise the two isomers and compare them with the natural material. There is more about bergamotene in Chapter 46.

Semipinacol rearrangements of diazonium salts

You saw in Chapter 22 how aromatic amines can be converted to diazonium salts by treatment with acidic sodium nitrite.
Aryldiazonium salts are stable but alkyl-diazonium salts are not: nitrogen gas is the world’s best leaving group, and, when it goes, it leaves behind a carbocation.

One of the ‘further reactions’ this carbocation can undergo is rearrangement. If the starting amine is a 2-amino alcohol, the cation can be stabilized by a semipinacol rearrangement.

While alkyl-diazonium salts are unstable, their conjugate bases, diazoalkanes, are stable enough to be prepared and are nucleophilic towards carbonyl compounds. Diazoalkanes are neutral compounds having one fewer proton than diazonium salts and are delocalized structures with a central sp nitrogen atom.

When diazomethane (a compound we will investigate in more detail in Chapter 40) adds to a ketone, the product undergoes a ring expansion by rearrangement of the same type of intermediate.

The problem with reactions like this is that both the starting material and product are ketones, so they work cleanly only if the starting material is more reactive than the product. Cyclohexanone is more reactive as an electrophile than either cyclopentanone or cycloheptanone, so it ring expands cleanly to cycloheptanone. But expansion of cyclopentanone to cyclohexanone is messy and gives a mixture of products. We shall come back to diazo compounds in more detail in Chapter 40; diazonium salts will reappear in Chapter 38 where their decomposition will provide the driving force for fragmentation reactions.

The dienone–phenol rearrangement

The female sex hormone oestrone is the metabolic product of another hormone, progesterone, itself made in the body from cholesterol.
Oestrone lacks one of progesterone’s methyl groups, probably removed in the body as CO₂ after oxidation. In 1946, Carl Djerassi, a man whose work led directly to the invention of the contraceptive pill, showed that another derivative of cholesterol could be rearranged to the oestrone analogue 1-methyloestradiol—notice how the methyl group has this time migrated to an adjacent carbon atom. At the same time, the dienone has become a phenol.

This type of rearrangement is known helpfully as a **dienone–phenol rearrangement**, and we can consider it quite simply as a type of reverse pinacol rearrangement. Pinacol and semipinacol rearrangements are driven by the formation of a carbonyl group. The rearranged cation is stabilized by being next to oxygen, and it can rapidly lose H⁺ to give a carbonyl compound. In the key step of a dienone–phenol rearrangement, a protonated carbonyl compound rearranges to a tertiary carbocation.

The reaction is driven from dienone to phenol because the product cation can rapidly undergo elimination of H⁺ to become aromatic.

**The benzilic acid rearrangement**

You have seen rearrangements in which carbonyl groups form at the migration origin: the migrating group in the pinacol and semipinacol rearrangements is ‘pushed’ by the oxygen’s lone pair as it forms the new carbonyl group. You have also seen carbonyl groups being destroyed at the migration terminus: the migrating group in the dienone–phenol rearrangement is ‘pulled’ towards the protonated carbonyl group. The first rearrangement reaction ever to be described has both of these at once.

In 1838, Justus von Liebig found that treating ‘benzil’ (1,2-diphenylethan-1,2-dione) with hydroxide gave, after acid quench, 2-hydroxy-2,2-diphenylacetic acid, which he called ‘benzilic acid’.
The mechanism of this benzilic acid rearrangement starts with attack of hydroxide on one of the carbonyl groups. The tetrahedral intermediate can collapse in a reaction reminiscent of a semipinacol rearrangement.

With alkoxides, the benzilic acid rearrangement can lead directly to esters by the same sort of mechanism.

The Favorskii rearrangement

We hope you have appreciated the smooth mechanistic progression so far in this chapter, from Wagner–Meerwein to pinacol and semipinacol through dienone–phenol to benzilic acid. Our aim is to help you gain an overall view of the types of rearrangements that take place (and why) and not to present you with lots of disconnected facts. It is at this point, however, that our mechanistic journey takes a hairpin bend. A surprising one, too, because, when we show you the Favorskii rearrangement, you would be forgiven for wondering what the fuss is about: surely it’s rather like a variant of the benzilic acid rearrangement?

Well, this is what chemists thought until 1944, when some Americans found that two isomeric α-chloro ketones gave exactly the same product on treatment with methoxide. They suggested that both reactions went through the same intermediate.

That intermediate is a three-membered cyclic ketone, a cyclopropanone: the alkoxide acts not as a nucleophile (its role in the benzilic acid rearrangement) but as a base, enolizing the ketone. The enolate can alkylate itself intramolecularly in a reaction that looks bizarre but that many chemists think is not unreasonable. The product is the same cyclopropanone in each case.
Other chemists prefer a pericyclic description of the ring-closure step. The same enolate simply loses chloride to give an ‘oxyallyl cation’—a dipolar species with an oxyanion and a delocalized allylic cation. This species can cyclize in a two-electron disrotatory electrocyclic reaction (Chapter 36) to give the same cyclopropanone. We shall return to this discussion in the next chapter but, whatever the mechanism, there is no doubt that a cyclopropanone is an intermediate.

Cyclopropanones are very reactive towards nucleophiles, and the tetrahedral intermediate arising from the attack of methoxide springs open to give the ester product. The more stable carbanion leaves: though the carbanion is not actually formed as a free species, there must be considerable negative charge at the carbon atom as the three-membered ring opens. Here the benzyl group is the better leaving group.

Favorskii rearrangement of cyclic 2-bromoketones leads to ring contraction and this has become one of the most fruitful uses of the rearrangement in synthesis. Bromination of cyclohexanone is a simple reaction (Chapter 21) and treatment with methoxide gives the methyl ester of cyclopentane carboxylic acid in good yield.

Enolization occurs on the side of the ketone away from the bromine atom and the enolate cyclizes as before but the cyclopropanone intermediate is symmetrical so that the product is the same whichever C–C bond breaks after nucleophilic attack by the methoxide ion.
The overall consequence of the Favorskii rearrangement is that an alkyl group is transferred from one side of a carbonyl group to the other.

This means that it can be used to build up heavily branched esters and carboxylic acids—the sort that are hard to make by alkylation because of the problems of hindered enolates and unreactive secondary alkyl halides. Heavily substituted acids, where CO₂H is attached to a tertiary carbon atom, would be hard to make by any other method. And the Favorskii rearrangement is a key step in this synthesis of the powerful painkiller Pethidine.

Try writing a mechanism for this last reaction and you run into a problem—there are no acidic protons so the ketone cannot be enolized! Yet the Favorskii rearrangement still works. Despite our warnings against confusing the mechanisms of the Favorskii and benzilic acid rearrangements, the Favorskii rearrangement may, in fact, follow a benzilic (or ‘semibenzilic’, by analogy with the semipinacol) rearrangement mechanism, if there are no acidic hydrogens available.

Migration to oxygen: the Baeyer–Villiger reaction

In 1899, the Germans, A. Baeyer and V. Villiger, found that treating a ketone with a peroxy-acid (RCO₃H) can produce an ester. An oxygen atom is ‘inserted’ next to the carbonyl group.

Now, you saw a similar ‘insertion’ reaction earlier in the chapter, and the mechanism here is not dissimilar. Both peracids and diazomethane contain a nucleophilic centre that carries a good leaving group, and addition of peracid to the carbonyl group gives a structure that should remind you of a semipinacol intermediate with one of the carbon atoms replaced by oxygen.

Carboxylates are not such good leaving groups as nitrogen, but the oxygen–oxygen single bond is very weak and monovalent oxygen cannot bear to carry a positive charge so that, once the peracid
has added, loss of carboxylate is concerted with a rearrangement driven, as in the case of the pinacol and semipinacol, by formation of a carbonyl group.

Baeyer–Villiger reactions are among the most useful of all rearrangement reactions, and the most common reagent is \( m \)-CPBA (meta-chloroperbenzoic acid) because it is commercially available.

**Which group migrates? (I)—the facts**

A question we have deliberately avoided up to this point is this: when there is a competition between two migrating groups, which group migrates? This question arises in pinacol, semipinacol, and dienone–phenol rearrangements and in Baeyer–Villiger reactions (in the benzilic acid and Favorskii rearrangements, there is no choice) and the awkward fact is that the answer is different in each case! However, let’s start with the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, because here the question is always valid except when the ketone being oxidized is symmetrical. Here are some examples; and you can probably begin to draw up guidelines for yourself.

The order, with \( t \)-alkyl the best at migrating, then \( s \)-alkyl closely followed by Ph, then Et, then Me, very roughly follows the order in which the groups are able to stabilize a positive charge. Primary groups are much more reluctant to undergo migration than secondary ones or aryl groups, and this makes regioselective Baeyer–Villiger reactions possible.
The Baeyer–Villiger reaction has solved a regioselectivity problem here. L-tyrosine, a relatively cheap amino acid, can be converted to the important drug L-dopa provided it can be hydroxylated ortho to the OH group. This is where electrophilic substitutions of the phenol take place, but electrophilic substitutions with ’HO+’ are not possible. However, after a Friedel–Crafts acylation, the acyl group can be converted to hydroxyl by the Baeyer–Villiger reaction and hydrolysis. The Baeyer–Villiger reaction means that MeCO+ can be used as a synthetic equivalent for ‘HO+’. Note the unusual use of the less reactive H2O2 as oxidizing agent in this reaction. This is possible only when the migrating group is an electron-rich aromatic ring; these reactions are sometimes called Dakin reactions.

**Unsaturated ketones may epoxidize or undergo Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement**

Peracids may epoxidize alkenes faster than they take part in Baeyer–Villiger reactions, so unsaturated ketones are not often good substrates for Baeyer–Villiger reactions. The balance is rather delicate. The two factors that matter are: how *electrophilic* is the ketone and how *nucleophilic* is the alkene? You might like to consider why this reaction *does* work, and why the C=C double bond here is particularly unreactive.

Small-ring ketones can relieve ring strain by undergoing Baeyer–Villiger reactions—this cyclobutanone (an intermediate in a synthesis of the perfumery compound *cis*-jasmine) is made by a ketene [2+2] cycloaddition, and is so reactive that it needs only H2O2 to rearrange. Unlike CF3CO3H or *m*-CPBA, H2O2 will not epoxidize double bonds (unless they are electron-deficient—see Chapter 23).

One point to note about both of the last two reactions is that the insertion of oxygen goes with retention of stereochemistry. You may think this is unsurprising in a cyclic system like this and, indeed, the first of the two cannot possibly go with inversion. However, this is a general feature of Baeyer–Villiger reactions, even when inversion would give a more stable product.

Even when you might imagine that racemization would occur, as in this benzylic ketone, retention is the rule.

By looking at the orbitals involved, you can see why this must be so. The sp³ orbital of the migrating carbon just slips from one orbital to the next with the minimum amount of structural
reorganization. The large lobe of the sp³ orbital is used so the new bond forms to the same face of the migrating group as the old one, and stereochemistry is retained.

The orbital interactions in all 1,2-migrations are similar, and the migrating group retains its stereochemistry in these too. In the more familiar SN₂ reaction, inversion occurs because the anti-bonding σ* orbital rather than the bonding σ orbital is used. In the SN₂ reaction, carbon undergoes nucleophilic attack with inversion; in rearrangements the migrating carbon atom undergoes electrophilic attack with retention of configuration.

In 1,2-migrations, the migrating group retains its stereochemistry.

Which group migrates? (II)—the reasons

Why does the more substituted group migrate in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction? The transition state has a positive charge spread out over the molecule as the carboxylate leaves as an anion. If the migrating group can take some responsibility for the positive charge the transition state will be more stable. The more stable the charge, the faster the rearrangement.

When a benzene ring migrates, π participation is involved as the benzene ring acts as a nucleophile and the positive charge can be spread out even further. Note that the Ph is stabilizing the charge here in the way that it stabilizes the intermediate in an electrophilic aromatic substitution reaction—like a pentadienyl cation rather than like a benzylic cation. What was a transition state in alkyl migration becomes an intermediate in phenyl migration.

The situation in other rearrangements is much more complicated—and indeed more complicated than many textbooks would have you believe. We shall look just briefly at the dienone–phenol rearrangement again, this time considering reactions in which there is a competition between two different migrating groups. As in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, the transition state is cationic, so you would expect cation-stabilizing groups to migrate more readily. This appears to be true for Ph versus...
Me, but is most definitely not true for Ph versus CO$_2$Et. The cation-destabilizing group CO$_2$Et migrates even though Ph is much better at stabilizing a positive charge!

The reason is that CO$_2$Et is so cation-destabilizing that it prefers to migrate rather than be left behind next door to a cation. In this case, then, it is the cation-stabilizing ability of the group that does not migrate that matters most.

Which group migrates? (III)—stereochemistry matters too

Selectivity in rearrangement reactions is affected by the electronic nature of both the group that migrates and the group that is left behind. But there is more! Stereochemistry is important too. The outcome of diazotization and semipinacol rearrangement (Tiffeneau–Demjanov rearrangement) of this amino-alcohol depends entirely on the diastereoisomer you start with. There are four diastereoisomers, and we have drawn each one in the only conformation it can reasonably adopt, with the $t$-butyl group equatorial.

In all of these reactions, the OH group provides the electronic ‘push’. In the first two reactions, the ring contracts by an alkyl migration from the secondary alcohol, while in the third it is H that migrates from the same position.

The only difference between the compounds is stereochemistry and, if we look at the orbitals involved in the reactions, we can see why this is so important. As the N$_2$ leaving group departs, electrons in the bond to the migrating group have to flow into the C–N $\sigma^*$ orbital—we discussed this on
But what we didn’t talk about then was the fact that best overlap between these two orbitals (σ and σ*) occurs if they are anti-periplanar to one another—just as in an E2 elimination reaction.

For the first two compounds, with the –N₂⁺ group equatorial, the group best placed to migrate is the alkyl group that forms the ring; for the third reaction, there is a hydrogen atom anti-periplanar to the leaving group, so H migrates.

The fourth reaction has, rather than a group that might migrate, the hydroxyl group ideally placed to displace N₂ and form an epoxide—another example of participation.

The requirement for the migrating group to be anti-periplanar to the leaving group is quite general in rearrangement reactions. The reason we haven’t noticed its effect before is that most of the compounds we have considered have not been conformationally constrained in the way that these are. Free rotation means that the right geometry for rearrangement is always obtainable—stereochemistry is not a factor in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, for example. We will come back to some more aspects of stereochemical control in the next chapter, on fragmentation reactions. Before then, we will consider one last rearrangement reaction, in which stereochemistry again plays an important controlling role.

The Beckmann rearrangement

The industrial manufacture of nylon relies upon the alkaline polymerization of a cyclic amide known trivially as caprolactam. Caprolactam can be produced by the action of sulfuric acid on the oxime of cyclohexanone in a rearrangement known as the Beckmann rearrangement.

The mechanism of the Beckman rearrangement follows the same pattern as a pinacol or Baeyer–Villiger reaction—acid converts the oxime OH into a leaving group, and an alkyl group migrates on to nitrogen as water departs. The product cation is then trapped by water to give an amide.
This rearrangement is not confined to cyclic oximes, and other ways of converting OH to a leaving group also work, such as PCl₅, SOCl₂, and other acyl or sulfonyl chlorides. In an acyclic Beckmann rearrangement, the product cation is better represented as this nitrilium ion. When we write the mechanism we can then involve the nitrogen’s lone pair to ‘push’ the migrating group back on to N. Which group migrates in the Beckmann rearrangement?

In the Beckmann rearrangement of unsymmetrical ketones there are two groups that could migrate. There are also two possible geometrical isomers of an unsymmetrical oxime: C=N double bonds can exhibit cis/trans isomerism just as C=C double bonds can. When mixtures of geometrical isomers of oximes are rearranged, mixtures of products result, but the ratio of products mirrors exactly the ratio of geometrical isomers in the starting materials—the group that has migrated is in each case the group trans to the OH in the starting material.

We have already touched on the idea that, for migration to occur, a migrating group has to be able to interact with the σ* of the bond to the leaving group, and this is the reason for the specificity here. In the example a couple of pages back the stereospecificity of the reaction was due to the starting material being constrained in a conformationally rigid ring. Here it is the C=N double bond that provides the constraint. If one of the alkyl chains is branched, more of the oxime with the OH group anti to that chain will be formed and correspondingly more of the branched group will migrate.
Conditions that allow those double isomers to interconvert can allow either group to migrate—which does so will then be decided, as in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, by electronic factors. Most protic acids allow the oxime isomers to equilibrate—so, for example, this tosylated oxime rearranges with full stereospecificity in Al₂O₃ (the anti methyl group migrates), but with TsOH, equilibration of the oxime geometrical isomers means that either group could migrate—in the event, the propyl group (which is more able to support a positive charge) migrates faster.

Notice that the effect of the Beckmann rearrangement is to insert a nitrogen atom next to the carbonyl group. It forms a useful trio with the Baeyer–Villiger oxygen insertion and the diazoalkane carbon insertion.

The diosgenin story: steroids from vegetables

Many of the human steroid hormones are available by ‘semisynthesis’—in other words synthesis starting from a natural product similar in structure to the target molecule. One very important starting material for semisynthesis routes to these hormones is diosgenin, a plant steroid which makes up 5% of the dry mass of the roots of Mexican yams. Most of the chemical manipulation necessary to turn diosgenin into human steroids concerns the top right five-membered ring (the D’ ring). A few steps convert the acetal group of the natural product into a simpler methyl ketone, present in cortisone and progesterone.

Bur for hormones such as oestrone and testosterone two carbon atoms need removing to make a cyclopentanone. This is accomplished using a Beckmann rearrangement. The oxime forms with the OH group trans to the more bulky cyclic substituent. Tosylation and Beckmann rearrangement gives an acetylated enamine which hydrolyses to the required cyclopentanone.

The Beckmann fragmentation

To finish this chapter, a Beckmann rearrangement that is not all that it seems. t-Butyl groups migrate well in the Baeyer–Villiger reaction and, indeed, Beckmann rearrangement of this compound appears to be quite normal too.

But, when this compound and another compound with a tertiary centre next to the oxime are mixed together and treated with acid, it becomes apparent that what is happening is not an intramolecular reaction.
Each migrating tertiary group must have lost contact with the amide fragment it started out with. Each molecule falls to bits to give a t-alkyl cation and a nitrile: the Beckmann rearrangement now goes via a fragmentation mechanism.

Migrating groups have to provide some degree of cation stabilization. But if they stabilize a cation too well there is a good chance that fragmentation will occur and the 'migrating group' will be lost as a carbocation. It is with this idea that we begin the next chapter.

Problems

1. Rearrangements by numbers. This problem is just to help you acquire the skill of tracking down rearrangements by numbering. There are no complicated new reactions here. Just draw a mechanism.

2. Explain this series of reactions.

3. Draw mechanisms for the reactions and structures for the intermediates. Explain the stereochemistry, especially of the reactions involving boron. Why was 9-BBN chosen as the hydroborating agent?
4. It is very difficult to prepare three-membered ring lactones. One attempted preparation, by the epoxidation of di-\(t\)-butyl ketene, gave an unstable compound with an IR stretch at 1900 cm\(^{-1}\) that decomposed rapidly to the four-membered lactone shown. Do you think they made the three-membered ring?

5. Suggest a mechanism for this rearrangement.

6. A single enantiomer of the epoxide below rearranges with Lewis acid catalysis to give a single enantiomer of product. Suggest a mechanism and comment on the stereochemistry.

7. The ‘pinacol’ dimer from cyclobutanone rearranges with the expansion of one of the rings to give a cyclopentanone fused \(spiro\) to the remaining four-membered ring. Draw a mechanism for this reaction. Reduction of the ketone then gives an alcohol that rearranges to the alkene in acid. Try working out a mechanism for this transformation. You might also like to think about why the rearrangement happens.

8. Give the products of Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement on these ketones with your reasons.

9. Suggest mechanisms for these rearrangements explaining the stereochemistry in the second example.

10. Give mechanisms for these reactions, commenting on any regio- and stereoselectivity. What controls the rearrangement?
11. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions that explain any selectivity in the migration.

12. Attempts to produce the acid chloride from this unusual amino acid by treatment with SOCl₂ gave instead a β-lactam. What has happened?

13. Revision content. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, commenting in detail on the rearrangement step.

14. Suggest a mechanism for this rearrangement, comparing it with a reaction discussed in the chapter. What controls the stereochemistry?
Polarization of C–C bonds helps fragmentation

We finished the last chapter with an attempted migration that went wrong because the migrating group stabilized a cation too well. Here is a more convincing example of the same reaction: again, the conditions for, but not the result of, a Beckmann rearrangement.

The starting material is bicyclic, the product monocyclic, so we have broken a C–C bond: the reaction is a fragmentation. The mechanism is straightforward once you know what happens to Beckmann rearrangements when the migrating group is tertiary—but hard to follow unless you number the atoms!

The starting material is bicyclic, the product monocyclic, so we have broken a C–C bond: the reaction is a fragmentation. The mechanism is straightforward once you know what happens to Beckmann rearrangements when the migrating group is tertiary—but hard to follow unless you number the atoms!

Beckmann rearrangements that go with fragmentation are sometimes called ‘anomalous’ or ‘second-order’ Beckmann rearrangements. You should not use the second of these names and, in any case, Beckmann fragmentation is much better than either.

You have met few fragmentation reactions—reactions in which C–C bonds are broken—largely
because the C–C bond is so strong. Why then does this reaction work? Well, the reason C–C bonds are hard to break is not just because of their strength, as the table of bond energies indicates.

For both carbon and hydrogen, a bond to oxygen is stronger than a bond to carbon. Yet we have no hesitation in breaking O–H bonds (of, say, carboxylic acids) with even the weakest of bases and we have spent much of the last chapter showing C–O bonds of protonated alcohols rupturing spontaneously! What is going on?

The answer is polarization. Oxygen’s electronegativity means that C–O and O–H bonds are polarized and are easy to break with hard nucleophiles and bases; C–C and C–H bonds are (usually) not polarized and, though weaker, are harder to break. It follows that to break a C–C bond it helps a lot if it is polarized—there needs to be a source of electrons at one end and an electron ‘sink’ (into which they can flow) at the other.

**Fragmentations require electron push and electron pull**

Fragmentations are reactions in which the molecule breaks into three pieces by the cleavage of a C–C single bond. Now for some examples and comparisons. The first example shows a fragmentation giving only two, not three, molecules. This is because two of the fragments were joined together in a ring. Both diastereoisomers of this cyclic diol fragment in acid to give an aldehyde. Numbering the atoms shows which bond fragments—now we need to provide a source and a sink for the electrons to polarize the bond.

Protonation of a hydroxyl group provides the sink— it can now leave as water. And the lone pair of the other oxygen provides the source. You can think of the electrons in the C–C bond being ‘pushed’ by the oxygen’s lone pair and ‘pulled’ by the departing water—until the bond breaks. A bit of extra impetus comes from release of ring strain: C–C bonds in three- and four-membered rings are weaker than usual (by about 120 kJ mol$^{-1}$).

We talked about ‘pushing’ and ‘pulling’ electrons when we introduced the pinacol rearrangement, and a very similar thing is happening here but the electron source and sink are separated by one atom instead of being adjacent.

Protonated carbonyl compounds can be electron sinks too (remember the dienone–phenol rearrangement from Chapter 37?), and this bicyclic methoxy ketone fragments to a seven-membered ring in acid. Note the same 1, 2, 3, 4 arrangement, with the bond between carbon atoms 2–3 fragmenting.
Yet a similar compound to our last example rearranges, and does not fragment because there is an alternative electron sink placed in the right place for migration.

If the MeO group is replaced by a leaving group such as MsO, it can exercise the pull and the carbonyl can provide the push after it has been attacked by a nucleophile. This next five-membered cyclic ketone fragments on treatment with base—can you detect hints of the benzylic acid rearrangement?

Analysing our Beckmann fragmentation (or anomalous Beckmann rearrangement) in the same way, we can identify the electron sink (the departing acetate group), though the source in this case is a little more obscure. Saying that the tertiary cation is stable is really saying that the neighbouring C–C and C–H bonds provide electrons (through \( \sigma \) conjugation) to stabilize it, so these are the electron sources. A good alternative is to write loss of a proton concerted with fragmentation, which gives one particular C–H bond as the source.

Fragmentations are controlled by stereochemistry

In the last chapter we introduced you to the idea that the control of rearrangements can be stereo-electronic in origin—if a molecule is to rearrange, orbitals have to be able to overlap. This means that, for a Beckmann rearrangement, the migrating group has to be trans to the leaving group. Not surprisingly, the same is true for Beckmann fragmentations like the one at the end of the last section, where the green fragmenting bond is trans to the leaving group.
Before we extend these ideas any further, consider these two quite different reactions of quite similar compounds.

Just as with the rearrangements we looked at on p. 000, we need to draw these compounds in reasonable chair conformations in order to understand what is going on. In the cis isomer, both substituents can be equatorial; in the trans isomer one has to be axial, and this will be mainly the OTs group, since the two methyl groups of NMe₂ suffer greater 1,3-diaxial interactions.

Now, the cis isomer has clearly undergone a fragmentation reaction and, as usual, numbering the atoms can help to identify the bond that breaks. The nitrogen lone pair pushes, the departing tosylate pulls, and the resulting iminium ion hydrolyses to the product aldehyde.

Yet the trans isomer only does this in very low yield. Mostly it eliminates TsOH to give a mixture of alkenes. Why? Well, notice that, in the cis isomer, the fragmenting bond is trans to the leaving group—indeed, it is both parallel and trans: in other words anti-periplanar to the leaving group. Electrons can flow smoothly from the breaking σ bond into the σ⁺ of the C–OTs bond, forming as they do so, a new π bond.

For the trans isomer, fragmentation of the most populated conformation is impossible because the leaving group is not anti-periplanar to any C–C bond. The only bonds anti-periplanar to OTs are C–H bonds, making this compound ideally set up for another reaction whose requirement for anti-periplanaritiy you have already met—E2 elimination.
The other conformation can fragment because now the OTs is anti-periplanar to the right C–C bond, and this is probably where the 11% fragmentation product comes from.

When McMurry was making longifolene in the early 1970s, a fragmentation reaction saved the day when a conjugate addition reaction using a cuprate gave an unexpected cyclization product through an intramolecular aldol reaction.

The actual compound McMurry wanted had the framework of the molecule on the left, but was to be transformed into the alkene below, so he needed to fragment the unexpected product at the green bond.

Fortunately, reducing the carbonyl group gave a hydroxyl group anti-periplanar to the green bond and therefore set up for fragmentation. Making the hydroxyl a leaving group and treating with base gave the required compound by a fragmentation reaction.

Ring expansion by fragmentation

Ring sizes greater than eight are hard to make. Yet five- and six-membered rings are easy to make. Once you realize that a fused pair of six-membered rings is really a ten-membered ring with a bond across the middle, the potential for making medium rings by fragmentation becomes apparent.

All you need to do is to make the bond to be broken the 2–3 bond in a 1, 2, 3, 4 electron source–sink arrangement and the ten-membered ring should appear out of the wreckage of the fragmentation. Here is an example—a decalin that fragments to a ten-membered ring.
Muscone and exaltone are important perfumery compounds with hard-to-make 15-membered ring structures. Cyclododecanone is commercially available; addition of a fused five-membered ring and fragmentation of the 12,5-ring system is a useful route to these 15-membered ring compounds.

In the late 1960s, the Swiss chemist Albert Eschenmoser discovered an important reaction that can be used to achieve similar ring expansions and that now bears his name, the Eschenmoser fragmentation. The starting material for an Eschenmoser fragmentation is the epoxide of an \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated ketone. The fragmentation happens when this epoxy-ketone is treated with tosyl-hydrazine, and one of the remarkable things about the product is that it is an alkyne. The fragmentation happens across the epoxide (shown in black), and the product contains both a ketone (in a different place to the ketone in the starting material) and an alkyne. You can see how in this case hydrogenation of the triple bond can again give muscone (R = Me) or exaltone (R = H).

The Eschenmoser fragmentation does not have to be a ring expansion, and it is a useful synthetic method for making keto-alkynes. The following reaction, which we will use to discuss the fragmentation’s mechanism, was used to make an intermediate in the synthesis of an insect pheromone, \textit{exo}-brevicomin.

The reaction starts with formation of the tosylhydrazone from the epoxy-ketone. The tosylhydrazone is unstable with respect to opening of the epoxide in an elimination reaction, and it is this elimination that sets up the familiar 1, 2, 3, 4 system ready for fragmentation. The ‘push’ comes from the newly created hydroxyl group, and the ‘pull’ from the irresistible concerted loss of a good leaving group (Ts\(^{-}\)) and an even better one (N\(_2\)). Notice how all the (green) bonds that break are parallel to one another, held anti-periplanar by two double bonds. Perfect!
More on stereochemistry and fragmentations

You saw, at the beginning of the last section, a ring expansion reaction of a decalin.

Now, the story of this ring expansion is a little more complex than we led you to believe, because the starting material has three stereogenic centres (*) and hence can exist as four diastereoisomers: two 
trans-decalins and two cis-decalins. What is more, the product has a double bond in a ten-membered ring: will it be cis or trans? (Both are possible—see Chapter 31.)

One of the four diastereoisomers of starting material cannot place the tosylate anti-periplanar to the ring-fusion bond, so it can’t fragment.

The other three diastereoisomers all can, but two of them give a trans double bond while the third gives cis.

Looking at the alignment of the bonds that end up flanking the double bond in the product shows you where the geometrical isomers come from: these are the black bonds in the starting material, and are trans across the forming π system in the first two isomers and cis in the third. Fragmentations are stereospecific with regard to double bond geometry, much as E2 elimination reactions are.

Corey applied this stereospecificity in conjunction with a ring expansion reaction to make the natural product caryophyllene. Caryophyllene is a bicyclic molecule with a nine-membered ring containing an E trisubstituted double bond. The right relative stereochemistry in the starting material leads both to fragmentation of the right bond and to formation of the alkene with the right stereochemistry.

One of the most spectacular demonstrations of the use of fragmentation was the 1968 synthesis of juvenile hormone (a compound you met in Chapter 31) by chemists at Syntex, an American pharmaceutical company.
The major challenge in making juvenile hormone is the three trisubstituted double bonds (one of which ends up as an epoxide), and the initial target was to make the related aldehyde, which contains two of them.

The Syntex chemists reasoned that, if this methyl ketone could be made stereospecifically by fragmenting a cyclic starting material, the (hard-to-control) double bond stereochemistry would derive directly from the (easier-to-control) relative stereochemistry of the cyclic compound. The starting material they chose was a 5/6-fused system, which fragments to give one of the double bonds.

The product of this reaction is prepared for another fragmentation by addition of methyllithium (you might like to consider why you get this diastereoisomer) and tosylation of the less hindered secondary alcohol. Base promotes the second fragmentation.

In the next chapter you will meet, among many other reactions, more fragmentations, but they will be radical fragmentations rather than ionic fragmentations, and involve homolytic cleavage of C–C bonds.

**A second synthesis of longifolene**

In Chapters 28 and 35 we introduced parts of Oppolzer’s synthesis of longifolene. We now revise those reactions and bring the synthesis a stage further forward with a fragmentation reaction different from the one used earlier in the chapter for the same molecule. McMurry used a fragmentation to escape from a disaster. Oppolzer had planned to use one right from the start. The first stage in the synthesis involves the building of two five-membered rings into a 1,3-diketone.
Next the enol ester of the 1,3-diketone forms a new four-membered ring by a $[2 + 2]$ photocycloaddition. This reaction appears in Chapter 35 but you are invited to work out for yourself what is happening here before you refer back to that chapter.

Finally the protecting group (a Cbz group from Chapter 24) is removed and the fragmentation set in motion. The four-membered ring is cleaved and the ring system of longifolene revealed. You might like to compare this route with McMurry’s route described earlier in this chapter.

---

The synthesis of nootkatone

In the 1970s it was supposed that the characteristic sharp fruity scent and flavour of grapefruit came mainly if not entirely from a simple bicyclic enone called nootkatone. There was quite a rush to synthesize this compound in various laboratories and a remarkable feature of many successful syntheses was the use of fragmentation reactions. We shall describe parts of three syntheses involving the fragmentation of a six-, a four-, and a three-membered ring.

Most syntheses make the side-chain alkene by an elimination reaction so the first ‘disconnection’ is an FGI adding HX back into the alkene. The last C–C bond-forming operation in most syntheses is an intramolecular aldol reaction to make the enone so that can be disconnected next. It is the starting material for the aldol, a simple monocyclic diketone, which is usually made by a fragmentation reaction because this is a good way to set up the stereochemistry.

Fragmentation of a three-membered ring

This synthesis does not look as though it will lead to nootkatone because the fragmentation product requires a great deal of development. It has the advantage that the stereochemistry is correct at one centre at least. The sequence starts from natural (+)-carvone: conjugate addition of the enolate to butenone without control leads to a bicyclic diketone with one extra stereogenic centre. The enone adds to the bottom face of the enolate opposite the dimethylcyclopropane ring so the methyl group is forced upwards.
Now the diketone is cyclized in HCl to give a bicyclic enone. A new six-membered ring has been formed but the old three-membered ring has disappeared. First, an intramolecular aldol reaction closes the new six-membered ring to form an enone and then the stage is set for a fragmentation.

The fragmentation is pulled by the enone (with some help from the acid) and pushed by the stability of the tertiary carbocation as well as the release of strain as the single bond that is fragmented is in a three-membered ring. The fragmentation product is an enol on the left and a carbocation on the right. Addition of a proton to the end of the enol and a chloride ion to the cation gives the bicyclic enone. The chloroalkyl side chain must be on the top of the molecule because only one of the C–C bonds in the three-membered ring has been broken and the remaining bond cannot change its stereochemistry. The further development of this compound into nootkatone is beyond the scope of this book.

**Fragmentation of a four-membered ring**

This approach leads directly to the enone needed for nootkatone. A diketone prepared from a natural terpene (Chapter 51) is also treated with HCl and much the same reactions ensue except that the fragmentation now breaks open a four-membered ring. First, the intramolecular aldol reaction to make the second six-membered ring.

Now the fragmentation, which follows much the same course as the last one: the enone again provides the electron pull while the cleavage of a strained C–C single bond in a four-membered ring to give a tertiary carbocation provides the electron push. A simple elimination is all that is needed to make nootkatone from this bicyclic chloroenone.

**Fragmentation of a six-membered ring**

This chemistry is quite different from the examples we have just seen. The starting material has a bridged bicyclic structure and was made by a Diels–Alder reaction (Chapter 35). Fragmentation is
initiated by formic acid \((\text{HCO}_2\text{H})\), which protonates the tertiary alcohol and creates a tertiary carbocation. The ether provides the push. More serious electronic interactions are needed in this fragmentation as the C–C bond being broken is not in a strained ring.

The yield of 50% is not wonderful but there is obviously a lot of chemistry going on here so it is acceptable when so much is being achieved. The first stage is the fragmentation itself. Drawing the product first of all in the same shape as the starting material and then redrawing, to ensure that we don’t make a mistake, we discover that we are well on the way to nootkatone. Note that the stereochemistry of the two methyl groups comes directly from the stereochemistry of the starting materials and no new stereogenic centres are created in the fragmentation. Though one six-membered ring is fragmented, another remains.

The first formed product now cyclizes to form the second six-membered ring. This recreates a carbocation at the tertiary centre like the one that set off the fragmentation as the more nucleophilic end of the isolated alkene attacks the end of the conjugate electrophile. This is a thermodynamically controlled reaction with the new stereogenic centre choosing an equatorial substituent.

The cation picks up the only nucleophile available—the very weak formic acid. This gives the product of the fragmentation, which contains two unstable functional groups—a tertiary formate ester and an enol ether—and this product is not isolated from the reaction mixture.

Protonation and hydrolysis of the extended enol ether to release the enone may occur during work-up and the stable enone is the first compound that can be isolated. The 50% yield of this compound represents a much better yield in four steps: fragmentation, olefin cyclization, addition of formic acid, and enol ether hydrolysis.

Completion of the synthesis of nootkatone simply requires pyrolysis of the formate ester in
refluxing 2,4,6-trimethyl pyridine (b.p. 172°C). The reaction is a syn elimination by a pericyclic mechanism and it gives nootkatone in 79% yield.

The synthesis of nootkatone occupied many chemists for some years and has given us some excellent examples of fragmentation reactions. However, the synthetic samples of nootkatone failed to deliver the intense grapefruit taste and smell of the material from grapefruits. The reason is simply that nootkatone is not the flavour principle of grapefruit! The samples of nootkatone isolated from grapefruit contained minute traces of the true flavour principle—a simple thiol. Humans can detect $2 \times 10^{-5}$ p.p.b. (yes, parts per billion) of this compound, so even the tiniest trace is very powerful. At least the syntheses allowed chemists to correct an error.

**A revision example: rearrangements and fragmentation**

We shall end this chapter with an example that involves many of the reactions we have been discussing in recent chapters. It culminates in a fragmentation but takes in two different rearrangements (Chapter 37) on the way as well as a cycloaddition (Chapter 35) and an electrocyclic reaction (Chapter 36). Here is the whole scheme with the main changes in each step highlighted in black. You might cast your eye over the scheme and see in general terms what sort of reaction happens at each step (substitution, rearrangement, etc.).

![Reaction Scheme](image)

The first step is a simple Wittig reaction with an unstabilized ylid (Chapter 31), which we expect to favour the Z-alkene. It does but, as is common with Wittig reactions, an E/Z mixture is formed but not separated as both isomers eventually give the same compound. The reaction is kinetically controlled and the decomposition of the oxaphosphetane intermediate is in some ways like a fragmentation.

![Wittig Reaction](image)

Now the alkene is converted into an epoxide by a slightly unusual sequence. Bromination with NBS ($N$-bromosuccinimide) in water gives a mixture of bromohydrins by electrophilic addition to the
double bond. The reaction occurs through a bromonium ion and is stereospecifically anti on each isomer of the alkene.

Next, the bromohydrin is treated with base and an intramolecular $S_N2$ reaction (Chapter 17) closes the epoxide ring. This too is stereospecific and the major isomer only is shown. The mixture of epoxides is a result of the E/Z-alkene mixture. Potassium carbonate is too weak a base to generate much of the alkoxide anion but the cyclization may still go this way in methanol. In Chapter 41 you will learn of an alternative type of catalysis by weak bases.

We saw some epoxide rearrangements in Chapter 37 but this reaction seems rather tame by comparison. The epoxide opens in acid to give the more stable (secondary and benzylic) of the two possible carbocations and then a hydrogen atom migrates with the pair of electrons from the C–H bond (‘hydride shift’) to give a ketone. The rearrangement is useful because it allows the synthesis of aryl ketones, which cannot easily be made by a Friedel–Crafts reaction since the carbonyl group is in the wrong position on the side chain (Chapter 22).

The ketone is then brominated, also with NBS, in a regioselective manner. The more conjugated enol is formed between the carbonyl group and the aromatic ring and this is attacked electrophilically by the bromine atom of the NBS (Chapter 20).

**Cycloaddition and rearrangement**

Now comes the most interesting step in the whole process—a step that unites a cycloaddition and a rearrangement and sets the scene for a fragmentation. The idea was to treat the bromoketone with base to make an oxyallyl cation as an unstable intermediate.
The oxyallyl cation with its two electrons delocalized over the allylic system would add to furan in a [2 + 4] cycloaddition to give a new cation stabilized by the oxyanion or, in more familiar guise, a ketone. The reaction was supposed to go like this.

The best base turned out to be the tertiary amine Et₃N and the reaction had to be performed in alcoholic solution as alcohols were the only solvents able to keep the organic and ionic materials in solution. However, a substantial amount of a by-product was formed in ethanol—evidently the product of a Favorskii rearrangement.

What is happening here is that the oxyallyl cation is in equilibrium with the cyclopropanone by an electrocyclic reaction (Chapter 36) and the alcohol is capturing this unstable ketone by nucleophilic addition. Hemiacetals of cyclopropanones form spontaneously in alcoholic solution (Chapter 6) because of the strain in the ketone. The anion of the hemiacetal decomposes by cleavage of a C–C bond to release what would be the more stable of the two carbanions, that is, the benzylic carbanion. This carbanion is not actually formed as it is protonated by the alcohol as it leaves.

So how can the cycloaddition be promoted at the expense of the Favorskii rearrangement? Nothing can be done about the equilibrium between the oxyallyl anion and the cyclopropanone—that’s a fact of life. The answer is to reduce the nucleophilicity of the alcohol by using trifluoroethanol instead of ethanol. Under these conditions the major product is the cycloadduct, which can be isolated in 73% yield.

The two compounds can easily be separated as they have completely different structures and are not stereoisomers or indeed isomers of any kind. Now it is time for the fragmentation reaction on the cycloadduct.
The fragmentation reaction

The cycloadduct is fragmented with Me₃SiBr in acetonitrile. The electrophilic silicon atom attacks the ketone and the furan oxygen atom provides the electronic push. These two groups have the 1,4 relationship necessary for a fragmentation. First of all, we shall draw the product in the same way as the starting material—this is a good tip in a complicated mechanism. The product may look odd but we can redraw it more realistically in a moment.

The redrawn product is a silyl enol ether (Chapter 21) at one end and an oxonium ion at the other. Simple proton removal and hydrolysis of the silyl enol ether in the work-up reveals a furan that can be isolated in 81% yield as the true product.

This product is worth a close look. The three-atom chain joining the two aromatic rings has the ketone on the middle carbon atom and it is therefore on C2 (β) with respect to both rings. This is the difficult position for a carbonyl group and so this product cannot be made by a Friedel–Crafts reaction on either ring.

Fragmentation reactions cleave C–C single bonds by a combination of electron push and electron pull so that both electrons in the bond move in the same direction as the bond breaks. In the next chapter we shall see reactions that break C–C bonds in a quite different way. No electron push or pull is required because one electron goes one way and one the other. These are radical reactions.

Problems

1. Just to check your skill at finding fragmentations by numbers, draw a mechanism for each of these one-step fragmentations in basic solution (with an acidic work-up).

2. Treatment of this hydroxy-ketone with base followed by acid gives the enone shown. What is the structure of the intermediate A, how is it formed, and what is the mechanism of the formation of the final product?

3. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction that involves a fragmentation as a key step.

4. Explain why both of these tricyclic ketones fragment to the same diastereoisomer of the same cyclo-octadione.
5. Suggest a mechanism for this ring expansion in which fragmentation is one step.

6. Suggest a mechanism for this fragmentation and explain the stereochemistry of the double bonds in the product. This is a tricky problem but find the mechanism and the stereochemistry will follow.

7. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and explain why the molecule is prepared to abandon a stable six-membered ring for a larger ring.

8. Give mechanisms for these reactions, commenting on the fragmentation.

9. Propose mechanisms for the synthesis of the bicyclic intermediate and explain why only one diastereoisomer fragments (which one?).

10. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the alkene geometry in the first case. Do you consider that they are fragmentations?

11. What steps would be necessary to carry out an Eschenmoser fragmentation on this ketone and what products would be formed?

12. These related spirocyclic compounds give different naphthalenes when treated with sodium borohydride or with 5M HCl. Each reaction starts with a different fragmentation. Give mechanisms for the reactions and explain why the fragmentations are different. Treatment of the starting ketone with LiAlH₄ instead of NaBH₄ gives the alcohol below without fragmentation. Comment on the difference between the two reagents and the stereochemistry of the alcohol.

13. Revision content. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions explaining the stereochemistry.
Radical reactions

Connections

Building on:
- Conjugate addition ch10 & ch23
- Energy profile diagrams ch13
- Nucleophilic substitution ch17
- Conformational analysis ch18
- Elimination reactions ch19
- Controlling stereochemistry ch16, ch33, & ch34
- Retrosynthetic analysis ch30
- Diastereoselectivity ch33–ch34

Arriving at:
- Radicals are species with unpaired electrons
- Radical reactions follow different rules to those of ionic reactions
- Bond strength is very important
- Radicals can be formed with Br, Cl, Sn, and Hg
- Efficient radical reactions are chain reactions
- There are electrophilic and nucleophilic radicals
- Radicals favour conjugate addition
- Cyclization is easy with radical reactions

Looking forward to:
- Carbenoid chemistry ch40
- Determination of mechanism ch41
- Stereoelectronics ch42
- Main group chemistry ch46–ch47
- Natural products ch51
- Polymerization ch52

Radicals contain unpaired electrons

You may remember that at the beginning of Chapter 8 we said that the cleavage of H–Cl into H⁺ and Cl⁻ is possible in solution only because the ions that are formed are solvated: in the gas phase, the reaction is endothermic with \( \Delta G = +1347 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \), a value so vast that even if the whole universe were made of gaseous HCl at 273 K, not a single molecule would be dissociated into H⁺ and Cl⁻ ions.

At temperatures above about 200 °C, however, HCl does begin to dissociate, but not into ions. Instead of the chlorine atom taking both bonding electrons with it, leaving a naked proton, the electron pair forming the H–Cl bond is shared out between the two atoms. \( \Delta G \) for this reaction is a much more reasonable +431 kJ mol⁻¹ and, at high temperatures (above about 200 °C, that is), HCl gas can be dissociated into H and Cl atoms.

![Heterolysis and homolysis diagram]

- Heterolysis and homolysis
  - When bonds break and one atom gets both bonding electrons, the process is called **heterolysis**
    The products of heterolysis are, of course, **ions**.
  - When bonds break and the atoms get one bonding electron each, the process is called **homolysis**
    The products of homolysis are **radicals**, which may be atoms or molecules, and contain an unpaired electron.

It was, in fact, a reaction of a closely related molecule, hydrogen bromide, that was among the first to alert chemists to the possibility that radicals can be formed in chemical reactions even at ambient temperatures.
temperatures, and that they have a distinct pattern of reactivity. In the 1930s, Morris Kharasch found that the regioselectivity of addition of H–Br to isobutene was dependent on whether or not oxygen and peroxides were present in the reaction mixture.

It turns out that in the absence of peroxides the addition takes place by the type of (ionic) mechanism that you have already met. The tertiary bromide is formed because the intermediate, a tertiary cation, is more stable than the alternative primary cation.

In the presence of peroxides, the mechanism is quite different. Homolysis of the H–Br takes place, and bromine radicals that attack the C=C double bond at its less hindered end are formed. Mostly isobutyl bromide is formed.

What does the peroxide do? Why does its presence change the mechanism? The peroxide undergoes homolysis of the weak O–O bond extremely easily, and because of this it initiates a radical chain reaction. We said that H–Cl in the gas phase undergoes homolysis in preference to heterolysis: other types of bond are even more susceptible to homolysis. You can see this for yourself by looking at this table of bond dissociation energies ($\Delta G$ for $X–Y \rightarrow X^+ + Y^-$).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond X–Y</th>
<th>$\Delta G$ for $X–Y \rightarrow X^+ + Y^-$, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H–OH</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_3$C–H</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_3$C–OH</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H$_3$C–CH$_3$</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H–Cl</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H–Br</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H–I</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH$_3$–Cl</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dialkyl peroxides (dimethyl peroxide is shown in the table) contain the very weak O–O bond. The radicals formed by homolytic cleavage of these bonds, stimulated by a little heat or light, initiate what we call a ‘radical chain reaction’, which results in the formation of the Br$^\cdot$ radicals, which add to the alkene’s C=C double bond. We shall return to radical chain reactions and their mechanisms in detail later in this chapter.

Radicals form by homolysis of weak bonds

You’ve just met the most important way of making radicals: unpairing a pair of electrons by homolysis, making two new radicals. Temperatures of over 200 °C will homolyse most bonds; on the other hand, some weak bonds will undergo homolysis at temperatures little above room temperature. Light is a possible energy source for the homolysis of bonds too. Red light has associated with it 167 kJ mol$^{-1}$; blue light has about 293 kJ mol$^{-1}$. Ultraviolet (200 nm), with an associated energy of 586 kJ mol$^{-1}$, will decompose many organic compounds (including the DNA in skin cells: sunbathers beware!).
There are a number of compounds whose homolysis is particularly important to chemists, and the most important ones are discussed in turn below. They all have weak $\sigma$ bonds, and generate radicals that can be put to some chemical use. The halogens are quite readily homolysed by light. These processes are important in radical halogenation reactions that we shall discuss later.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl--Cl} & \xrightarrow{\text{light (hv)}} 2 \times \text{Cl}^\cdot \\
\text{Br--Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{light (hv)}} 2 \times \text{Br}^\cdot \\
\text{I} & \xrightarrow{\text{light (hv)}} 2 \times \text{I}^\cdot \\
\end{align*}
\]

$\Delta G^\ddagger = 243 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$
$\Delta G^\ddagger = 192 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$
$\Delta G^\ddagger = 151 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$

Dibenzoyl peroxide is an important compound because it can act as another initiator of radical reactions; we'll see why later. It undergoes homolysis simply on heating.

![Dibenzoyl peroxide reaction]

Another compound that is often used in synthetic reactions for the same reason (though it reacts with a different set of compounds) is AIBN (azoisobutyronitrile).

![AIBN reaction]

Some organometallic compounds, for example organomercuries or organocobalts, have very weak carbon–metal bonds, and are easily homolysed to give carbon-centred radicals. Alkyl mercury hydrides are formed by reducing alkyl mercury halides, but they are unstable at room temperature because the Hg–H bond is very weak. Bonds to hydrogen never break to give radicals spontaneously because H$^\cdot$ is too unstable to exist, but interaction with almost any radical removes the H atom and breaks the Hg–H bond. This is the process of hydrogen abstraction, which forms the next section of the chapter.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R--Hg--R} & \xrightarrow{\text{20 °C}} \text{R}^\cdot + \text{Hg--R} \\
\text{R--Hg--Cl} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaBH}_4} \text{R--Hg--H} + \text{\cdot R} \\
\text{weak C--metal bonds} & \text{weak C--metal and metal--H bonds}
\end{align*}
\]

### Radicals in cars

Radicals generated from another organometallic compound, tetraethyllead $\text{Et}_4\text{Pb}$, were the reason for adding this compound to petrol. These radicals react with other radical species involved in the pre-ignition of petrol.

Vapour in internal combustion engines, and prevent the phenomenon known as ‘knocking’. Nowadays simple organic compounds such as MeO$\text{Bu}^-$ are used instead in ‘green’ petrol.

### Radicals form by abstraction

Notice that we didn’t put HBr on the list of molecules that form radicals by homolysis: relative to the weak bonds we have been talking about, the H–Br bond is quite strong (just about as strong as a C–C bond). Yet we said that Br$^\cdot$ radicals were involved in the addition reaction we talked about on p. 000. These radicals are formed by the action of the alkoxy radicals (generated by homolysis of the peroxide) on HBr—a process known as radical abstraction. Here is the mechanism.

The peroxy radical RO$^\cdot$ ‘abstracts’ H$^\cdot$ from the HBr to give ROH, leaving behind a new radical Br$^\cdot$.

We have described this process using arrows with ‘half-heads’ (also known as ‘fish-hook arrows’).
They indicate the movement of single electrons among orbitals, by analogy with our normal curly arrows, which indicate the movement of electron pairs.

**Writing radical mechanisms**

There is often more than one correct way of drawing a radical mechanism using half-headed arrows. For example, we could have represented the abstraction reaction shown above in either of these alternative ways.

```
R-O          H-Br  \( \rightarrow \)  ROH  +  Br^-
```

The full story shows that the odd electron on RO^* pairs with one of the electrons in the H–Br bond while the other moves on to the bromine atom.

Because radical reactions always involve the reorganization of electron pairs, we can choose whether to show what happens to either or both of the members of each pair. In most examples in this book, we will draw arrows only in one direction.

The ability of radicals to propagate by abstraction is a key feature of radical chain reactions, which we shall come to later. There is an important difference between homolysis and abstraction as a way of making radicals: homolysis is a reaction of a spin-paired molecule that produces two radicals; abstraction is a reaction of a radical with a spin-paired molecule that produces one new radical and a new spin-paired molecule. Radical abstractions like this are therefore examples of your first radical reaction mechanism: they are in fact substitution reactions at H and can be compared with proton removal or even with an SN2 reaction.

```
R-O          H-Br  \( \rightarrow \)  ROH  +  Br^-
```

Radical substitutions differ considerably from SN1 or SN2 reactions: importantly, radical substitutions almost never occur at carbon atoms. We shall come back to radical substitutions, or abstractions (depending on whether you take the point of view of the H atom or the Br atom), later in the chapter.

**First radical detected**

The very first radical to be detected, the triphenylmethyl radical, was made in 1900 by abstraction of Cl^* from Ph_3Cl by Ag metal.

This radical is relatively stable (we shall see why shortly), but reacts with itself reversibly in solution. The product of the dimerization of triphenylmethyl was for 70 years believed to be tetraphenyl ethane but, in 1970, NMR showed that it was, in fact, an unsymmetrical dimer.
Radicals form by addition

The key step in the radical reaction with which we started the chapter is the formation of a radical by radical addition. The Br• radical (which, you will remember, was formed by abstraction of H• from HBr by RO•) adds to the alkene to give a new, carbon-centred radical. This is the mechanism: again, notice that half-headed arrows are used to indicate the movement of single electrons.

Just as charge must be conserved through a chemical reaction, so must be the spin of the electrons involved. If a reactant carries an unpaired electron, then so must a product. Addition of a radical to a spin-paired molecule always generates a new radical. Radical addition is therefore a second type of radical-forming reaction.

The simplest radical addition reactions occur when a single electron is added to a spin-paired molecule. This process is a reduction. You have already met some examples of single-electron reductions: Birch reductions (Chapter 24) use the single electron formed when a group I metal (sodium, usually) is dissolved in liquid ammonia to reduce organic compounds. Group I metals are common sources of single electrons: by giving up their odd s electron they form a stable M⁺ ion. They will donate this electron to several classes of molecules; for example, ketones can react with sodium to form ketyl radicals.

Radicals form by homolytic cleavage of weak bonds

A fourth class of radical-forming reaction is homolytic cleavage. For an example, we can go back to dibenzoyl peroxide, the unstable compound we considered earlier in the chapter because it readily undergoes homolysis.

The radicals formed from this homolysis are unstable and each breaks down by cleavage of a C–C bond, generating CO₂ and a phenyl radical. These homolytic bond cleavages are elimination reactions and are the reverse of radical addition reactions.

To summarize methods of radical formation

Radicals form from spin-paired molecules by:
- homolysis of weak σ bonds, e.g. RO–OR → RO• (x 2)
- electron transfer, that is, reduction (addition of an electron), e.g.

Radicals form from other radicals by:
- substitution (abstraction)
- addition
- elimination (homolysis)
Most radicals are extremely reactive...

Unpaired electrons are desperate to be paired up again. This means that radicals usually have a very short lifetime; they don’t survive long before undergoing a chemical reaction.

Chemists are more interested in radicals that are reactive, because they can be persuaded to do interesting and useful things. However, before we look at their reactions, we shall consider some radicals that are unreactive so that we can analyse the factors that contribute to radical reactivity.

... but a few radicals are very unreactive

Whilst simple alkyl radicals are extremely short-lived, some other radicals survive almost indefinetly. Such radicals are known as persistent radicals. We mentioned the triphenylmethyl radical on p. 000: this yellow substance exists in solution in equilibrium with its dimer, but it is persistent enough to account for 2–10% of the equilibrium mixture.

Persistent radicals with the single electron carried by an oxygen or a nitrogen atom are also known: these three radicals can all be handled as stable compounds. The first, known as TEMPO, is a commercial product and can even be sublimed.

\[
\text{TEMPO} \quad \text{TEtraMethylPiperidine N-Oxide} \quad \text{m.p. 36–38 °C}
\]

\[
\text{N-O}^{'}
\]

\[
\text{dark blue solid} \quad \text{m.p. 97 °C}
\]

\[
\text{O}_2\text{N} \quad \text{N}^{'}
\]

\[
\text{violet crystals}
\]

There are two reasons why some radicals are more persistent than others: (1) steric hindrance and (2) electronic stabilization. In the four extreme cases above, their exceptional stability is conferred by a mixture of these two effects. Before we can analyse the stability of other radicals, however, we need to look at what is known about the shape and electronic structure of radicals.

Vitamin E tames radicals

Many of the molecules that make up the structure of human tissue are susceptible to homolysis in intense light, and the body makes use of sophisticated chemistry to protect itself from the action of the reactive radical products. Vitamin E plays an important role in the ‘taming’ of these radicals: abstraction of H from the phenolic hydroxyl group produces a relatively stable radical that does no further damage.

How to analyse the structure of radicals: electron spin resonance

For the last few pages we have been discussing the species we call radicals without offering any evidence that they actually exist. Well, there is evidence, and it comes from a spectroscopic technique known as electron spin resonance, or ESR (also known as EPR, electron paramagnetic resonance). ESR not only confirms that radicals do exist, but it can also tell us quite a lot about their structure.
Unpaired electrons, like the nuclei of certain atoms, have a magnetic moment associated with them. Proton NMR probes the environment of hydrogen atoms by examining the energy difference between the two possible orientations of their magnetic moments in a magnetic field; ESR works in a similar way for unpaired electrons. The magnetic moment of an electron is much bigger than that of a proton, so the difference in energy between the possible quantum states in an electron field is also much bigger. This means that the magnets used in ESR spectrometers can be weaker than those in NMR spectrometers: usually about 0.3 tesla; even at this low field strength, the resonant frequency of an electron is about 9000 MHz (for comparison, the resonant frequency of a proton at 9.5 tesla is 400 MHz; in other words, a 400 MHz NMR machine has a magnetic field strength of 9.5 tesla).

But there are strong similarities between the techniques. ESR shows us, for example, that unpaired electrons couple with protons in the radical. The spectrum below is that of the methyl radical, CH₃. The 1:3:3:1 quartet pattern is just what you would expect for coupling to three equivalent protons; coupling in ESR is measured in millitesla (or gauss; 1 gauss = 0.1 mT), and for the methyl radical the coupling constant (called $a_H$) is 2.3 mT.

ESR hyperfine splittings (as the coupling patterns are known) can give quite a lot of information about a radical. For example, here is the hyperfine splitting pattern of the cyclohepta trienyl radical. The electron evidently sees all seven protons around the ring as equivalent, and must therefore be fully delocalized. A localized radical would see several different types of proton, resulting in a much more complex splitting pattern.

Even the relatively simple spectrum of the methyl radical tells us quite a lot about the radical. For example, the size of the coupling constant $a_H$ indicates that the methyl radical is planar; the trifluoromethyl radical is, on the other hand, pyramidal. The oxygenated radicals $^\cdot$CH₂OH and $^\cdot$CMe₂OH lie somewhere in between.

Radicals have singly occupied molecular orbitals

ESR tells us that the methyl radical is planar: the carbon atom must therefore be sp² hybridized, with the unpaired electron in a p orbital. We can represent this in an energy level diagram.
In Chapter 4 we talked about the HOMO (highest occupied molecular orbital) and LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbital) of organic molecules. CH₃• (like all radicals) has an orbital containing one electron, which we call a **Singly Occupied Molecular Orbital (SOMO)**.

As with all molecules, it is the energy of the electrons in the molecular orbitals of the radical that dictate its stability. Any interaction that can decrease the energy levels of the filled molecular orbitals increases the stability of the radical (in other words, decreases its reactivity). Before we use this energy level diagram of the methyl radical to explain the stability of radicals, we need to look at some experimental data that allow us to judge just how stable different radicals are.

### Radical stability

On p. 000 we used bond strength as a guide to the likelihood that bonds will be homolysed by heat or light. Since bond energies give us an idea of the ease with which radicals can form, they can also give us an idea of the stability of those radicals once they have formed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond</th>
<th>Dissociation energy, kJ mol⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH₃–H</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeCH₂–H</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me₂CH–H</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me₃C–H</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC≡C–H</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂C=CH–H</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph–H</td>
<td>464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H₂C=CH₂CH₂–H</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PhCH₂–H</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCO–H</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EtOCHMe–H</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N≡CH₂–H</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeCOCH₂–H</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Chapter 4 we talked about the HOMO (highest occupied molecular orbital) and LUMO (lowest unoccupied molecular orbital) of organic molecules. CH₃• (like all radicals) has an orbital containing one electron, which we call a **Singly Occupied Molecular Orbital (SOMO)**.

This is particularly true if we compare the strengths of bonds between the same atoms, for example, carbon and hydrogen, in different molecules; the table does this.

A few simple trends are apparent. For example, C–H bonds decrease in strength in R–H when R goes from primary to secondary to tertiary. Tertiary alkyl radicals are therefore the most stable; methyl radicals the least stable.

C–H bonds next to conjugating groups such as allyl or benzylic are particularly weak, so allyl and benzylic radicals are more stable. But C–H bonds to alkenyl, alkenyl, or aryl groups are strong.
Adjacent functional groups appear to weaken C–H bonds: radicals next to carbonyl, nitrile, or ether functional groups, or centred on a carbonyl carbon atom, are more stable than even tertiary alkyl radicals.

Whether the functional group is electron-withdrawing or electron-donating is clearly irrelevant here: both types seem to stabilize radicals. We can explain all of this if we look at how the different groups next to the radical centre interact electronically with the radical.

**Radicals are stabilized by conjugating, electron-withdrawing, and electron-donating groups**

Let’s consider first what happens when a radical centre finds itself next to an electron-withdrawing group. Groups like C=O and C≡N are electron-withdrawing because they have a low-lying empty π* orbital. By overlapping with the (usually p) orbital containing the radical (the SOMO), two new molecular orbitals are generated. One electron (the one in the old SOMO) is available to fill the two new orbitals. It enters the new SOMO, which is of lower energy than the old one, and the radical experiences stabilization because this electron drops in energy.

We can analyse what happens with electron-rich groups, such as RO groups, in a similar way. Ether oxygen atoms have relatively high-energy filled n orbitals, their lone pairs. Interacting this with the SOMO again gives two new molecular orbitals. Three electrons are available to fill them. The SOMO is now higher in energy than it was to start with, but the lone pair is lower. Because two electrons have dropped in energy and only one has risen, there is an overall stabilization of the system, even though the new SOMO is of higher energy than the old one. We shall see later what effect the energy of the SOMO, rather than the overall energy of the radical, has on its reactivity.
In Chapter 17, you saw how the electrons in C–H σ bonds stabilize cations: they stabilize radicals in the same way, which is why tertiary radicals are more stable than primary ones.

Conjugation, too, is effective at stabilizing radicals. We know that radicals next to double bonds are delocalized from their ESR spectra (p. 000); that they are more stable is evident from the bond dissociation energies of allylic and benzylic C–H bonds.

**Anything that would stabilize an anion *or* a cation will stabilize a radical:**
- electron-withdrawing groups
- electron-donating groups (including alkyl groups with C–H σ bonds)
- conjugating groups

### Steric hindrance makes radicals less reactive

On p. 000 we showed you some radicals that are remarkably stable (persistent): some can even be isolated and purified. You should now be able to see at least part of the reason for their exceptional stability: two of them have adjacent powerful electron-donating groups and one has a powerful electron-withdrawing group as well, and three of the four are conjugated.

But electronic factors alone are not sufficient to explain the exceptional stability of all four radicals, since the next two radicals (in the margin) receive just about the same electronic stabilization as the first two above, but are much more reactive.

In fact, the stability of the triphenylmethyl radical we know to be due mainly to steric, rather than electronic, factors. X-ray crystallography shows that the three phenyl rings in this compound are not coplanar but are twisted out of a plane by about 30°, like a propeller. This means that the delocalization in this radical is less than ideal (we know that there is some delocalization from the ESR spectrum) and, in fact, it is little more delocalized than the diphenylmethyl or even the benzyl radical.

Yet it is much more stable than either. This must be because the central carbon, which bears most of the radical character, is sterically shielded by the twisted phenyl groups, making it very hard for the molecule to react. And when it does dimerize, we know that it does so through one of its least hindered carbon atoms.

Further evidence for the role of steric effects in helping to stabilize radicals comes from triphenyl-
methyl derivatives with ortho substituents: these force the phenyl rings to twist even more (at 50° or more), decreasing still further the extent of electronic stabilization through delocalization. Yet these ortho-substituted radicals are more stable than triphenylmethyl: this must be a steric effect. The rest of this chapter is devoted to the reactions of radicals, and you will see that the two effects we have talked about—electronic stabilization and steric hindrance—are key factors that control these reactions.

**How do radicals react?**

A reactive radical has a choice: it can either find another radical and combine to form a spin-paired molecule (or more than one spin-paired molecule), or it can react with a spin-paired molecule to form a new radical. Both are possible, and we shall see examples of each. A third alternative is for a radical to decompose in a unimolecular reaction, giving rise to a new radical and a spin-paired molecule.

**Three possibilities**

- Radical + radical → spin-paired molecule
- Radical + spin-paired molecules → new radical + new spin-paired molecule
- Radical → new radical + spin-paired molecule

**Radical–radical reactions**

In view of the energy released when unpaired electrons pair up, you might expect this type of radical reaction to be more common than reaction with a spin-paired molecule, in which no net pairing of electrons takes place. Radical–radical reactions certainly do take place, but they are not the most important type of reaction involving radicals. We shall see why they are not as common as you might expect shortly, but first we can look at some examples.

**The pinacol reaction is a radical dimerization**

We outlined on p. 000 a way of making radicals by single electron transfer: effectively, the addition reaction of a single electron to a spin-paired molecule. The types of molecules that undergo this reaction are those with low-lying antibonding orbitals for the electron to go into, in particular, aromatic systems and carbonyl compounds. The radical anion formed by addition of an electron to a ketone is known as a ketyl. The single electron is in the π* orbital, so we can represent a ketyl with the radical on oxygen or on carbon and the anion on the other atom.

Ketyl radicals behave in a manner that depends on the solvent that they are in. In protic solvents (ethanol, for example), the ketyl becomes protonated and then accepts a second electron from the metal (sodium is usually used in these cases). An alkoxide anion results, which, on addition of acid at the end of the reaction, gives an alcohol.
In aprotic solvents, such as benzene or ether, no protons are available so the concentration of ketyl radical builds up significantly and the ketyl radical anions start to dimerize. As well as being a radical–radical process, this dimerization process is an anion–anion reaction, so why doesn’t electrostatic repulsion between the anions prevent them from approaching one another? The key to success is to use a metal such as magnesium or aluminium that forms strong, covalent metal–oxygen bonds and that can coordinate to more than one ketyl at once. Once two ketyls are coordinated to the same metal atom, they react rapidly.

The example shows the dimerization of acetone to give a diol (2,3-dimethylbutane-2,3-diol) whose trivial name, pinacol, is used as a name for this type of reaction using any ketone. Sometimes pinacol reactions create new chiral centres: in this example, the two diastereoisomeric diols are formed in a 60:40 mixture. If you want to make a single diastereoisomer of a diol, a pinacol reaction is not a good choice!

Pinacol reactions can be carried out intramolecularly, from compounds containing two carbonyl groups. In fact, the key step of one of the very first syntheses of Taxol® (the important anticancer compound) was an intramolecular pinacol reaction using titanium as the source of electrons.

---

**Benzophenone as an indicator in THF stills**

As you should have gathered by now, THF is an important organic solvent in which many low-temperature, inert-atmosphere reactions are conducted. It has a drawback, however: it is quite hygroscopic, and often the reactions for which it is used as a solvent must be kept absolutely free of water. It is therefore always distilled immediately before use from sodium metal, which reacts with any traces of water in the THF. However, it is necessary to have an indicator to show that the THF is dry and that the sodium has done its job. The indicator used is a ketone, benzophenone.

When the THF is dry, the distilling liquid containing the benzophenone becomes bright purple. This colour is due to the ketyl of benzophenone, the formation of which under these conditions should not surprise you. It should also come as no surprise that this ketyl, being stabilized by conjugation and quite hindered, is persistent (long-lived)—it does not undergo pinacol dimerization (as we explained above, you would not normally choose sodium to promote pinacols anyway). However, if water is present, the ketyl is rapidly quenched in the manner of the reduction described above to give the (colourless) alkoxide anion: only when all the water is consumed does the colour return.

Pinacol reactions can be carried out intramolecularly, from compounds containing two carbonyl groups. In fact, the key step of one of the very first syntheses of Taxol® (the important anticancer compound) was an intramolecular pinacol reaction using titanium as the source of electrons.
The titanium metal that is the source of electrons is produced during the reaction by reduction of TiCl₃ using a zinc–copper mixture. This reaction is, in fact, unusual because, as we shall see below, pinacol reactions using titanium do not normally stop at the diol, but give alkenes.

**Titanium promotes the pinacol coupling and then deoxygenates the products: the McMurry reaction**

Titanium can be used as the metal source of electrons in the pinacol reaction and, provided the reaction is kept cold and not left for too long, diols can be isolated from the reaction (see the example at the end of the previous section). However, unlike magnesium or aluminium, titanium reacts further with these diol products to give alkenes in a reaction known as the McMurry reaction, after its inventor.

McMurry reaction of cyclohexanone

Notice that the titanium(0), which is the source of electrons in the reaction, is produced during the reaction by reacting a Ti(III) salt, usually TiCl₃, with a reducing agent such as LiAlH₄ or Zn/Cu. The reaction does not work with, say, powdered titanium metal. The McMurry reaction is believed to be a two-stage process involving firstly a pinacol radical–radical coupling. Evidence for this is that the pinacol products (diols) can be isolated from the reaction under certain conditions (you've just seen how this was done during the synthesis of Taxol).

**The McMurry reaction**

The Ti(0) then proceeds to deoxygenate the diol by a mechanism not fully understood, but thought to involve binding of the diol to the surface of the Ti(0) particles produced in the reduction of TiCl₃.
We expect you to be mildly horrified by the inadequacy of the mechanism above. But, unfortunately, we can’t do much better because no-one really knows quite what is happening. The McMurry reaction is very useful for making tetrasubstituted double bonds—there are few other really effective ways of doing this. However, the double bonds really need to be symmetrical (in other words, have the same substituents at each end) because McMurry reactions between two different ketones are rarely successful.

McMurry reactions also work very well intramolecularly, and turn out to be quite a good way of making cyclic alkenes, especially when the ring involved is medium or large (over about eight members). For example, the natural product flexibilene, with a 15-membered ring, can be made by cyclizing a 15-keto-aldehyde.

Esters undergo pinacol-type coupling: the acyloin reaction
You’ve seen examples of pinacol and McMurry reactions of ketones and aldehydes. What about esters? You would expect the ketyl radical anion to form from an ester in the same way, and then to undergo radical dimerization, and this is indeed what happens.

The product of the dimerization looks very much like a tetrahedral intermediate in a carbonyl addition–elimination reaction, and it collapses to give a 1,2-diketone.

The diketone is however still reducible—in fact, 1,2-diketones are more reactive towards electrophiles and reducing agents than ketones because their \( \pi^* \) is lower in energy and straight away two electron transfers take place to form a molecule, which we could term an enediolate.

On quenching the reaction with acid, this dianion is protonated twice to give the enol of an \( \alpha \)-hydroxy-ketone, and it is this \( \alpha \)-hydroxy-ketone that is the final product of the acyloin reaction. The yield in this example is a quite respectable 70%. However, in many other cases, this usefulness of the acyloin reaction is hampered by the formation of by-products that arise because of the reactivity of the enediolate dianion. It is, of course, quite nucleophilic, and is likely to be formed in the presence
of the highly electrophilic diketone. It is also basic, and often catalyses a competing Claisen condensa-
tion of the esters being reduced.

The solution to these problems is to add trimethylsilyl chloride to the reaction mixture. The silyl
chloride silylates the enediolate as it is formed, and the product of the acyloin reaction becomes a
bis-silyl ether.

The silyl ethers are rarely desired as final products, and they can easily be hydrolysed to
\(\alpha\)-hydroxy-ketones with aqueous acid. This improved version makes four-membered rings
efficiently.

It’s not by accident that these two examples of the acyloin reaction show the formation
of cyclic compounds. It is a particularly powerful method of making carbocyclic rings of from
four members upwards: the energy to be gained by pairing up the two electrons in the radical–
radical reaction step more than compensates for the strain that may be generated in forming the
ring.

The pinacol, McMurry, and acyloin reactions are exceptional

We’ve already said that this type of reaction, in which two radicals dimerize, is relatively uncommon.
Most radicals are simply too reactive to react with one another! This may sound nonsensical, but the
reason is simply that highly reactive species are unselective about what they react with. Although it
might be energetically favourable for them to find another radical and dimerize, they are much more
likely to collide with a solvent molecule, or a molecule of some other compound present in the mix-
ture, than another radical. Reactive radicals are only ever present in solution in very low concentra-
tions, so the chances of a radical–radical collision are very low. Radical attack on spin-paired
molecules is much more common and, because the product of such reaction is also a radical, they
give rise to the possibility of radical chain reactions.

**Radical chain reactions**

In looking at how radicals form, you’ve already seen examples of how radicals react. In fact, we’ve
already dealt (if only very briefly) with every step of the sequence of reactions that makes up the
mechanism of the radical reaction you met at the beginning of the chapter.
Let’s now consider each step in turn and in more detail.

1. The dialkyl peroxide is homolysed (by heat or light) to give two alkoxy radicals.

2. RO’ abstracts H from HBr (radical substitution) to give Br’.

3. Br’ adds to isobutene to give a carbon-centred radical.

4. The carbon-centred radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from H–Br to form the final addition product and regenerate Br’, which can react with another molecule of alkene.

The whole process can conveniently be represented cyclically.

In each step in the cycle a radical is consumed and a new radical is formed. This type of reaction is therefore known as a radical chain reaction, and the two steps that form the cyclic process that keeps the chain running are known as the chain propagation steps. Only one molecule of peroxide initiator is necessary for a large number of product molecules to be formed and, indeed, the peroxide needs to be added in only catalytic quantities (about 10 mol%) for this reaction to proceed in good yield.

Any less than 10 mol%, however, and the yield drops. The problem is that the chain reaction is not 100% efficient. Because the concentration of radicals in the reaction mixture is low, radical–radical reactions are rare, but nonetheless they happen often enough that more peroxide keeps being needed to start the chain off again.

Reactions like this are known as termination steps and are actually an important part of any chain reaction; without termination steps the reaction would be uncontrollable.
Selectivity in radical chain reactions

In the radical–radical reactions we looked at earlier, there was never any question of what would react with what: only one type of radical was formed and the radicals dimerized in identical pairs. Look at this chain reaction though—there are three types of radical present, Br•, BrCH₂Me₂CH•, and RO•, and they all react specifically with a chosen spin-paired partner: Br• with the alkene, and BrCH₂Me₂CH• and RO• with HBr. We need to understand the factors that govern this chemoselectivity. In order to do so we shall look at another radical reaction with chemoselectivity and regioselectivity that is measurable.

Chlorination of alkanes

Alkanes will react with chlorine to give alkyl chlorides. For example, cyclohexane plus chlorine gas, in the presence of light, gives cyclohexyl chloride and hydrogen chloride.

This type of reaction is important industrially since it is one of the few that allows compounds containing functional groups to be made from alkanes. As you might guess, since it needs light for initiation, the process is another example of a radical chain reaction. As with the radical addition of HBr to alkenes, we can identify initiation, propagation, and termination steps in the mechanism.

In this case, the termination steps are much less important than in the last case we looked at, and typically the chain reaction can continue for 10⁶ steps for each initiation event (photolysis of chlorine). Be warned: reactions like this can be explosive in sunlight.
When the chlorine radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from the cyclohexane, only one product can be formed because all 12 hydrogen atoms are equivalent. For other alkanes, this may not be the case, and mixtures of alkyl chlorides can result. For example, propane is chlorinated to give a mixture of alkyl chlorides containing 45% 1-chloropropane and 55% 2-chloropropane, and isobutane is chlorinated to give 63% iso-butyl chloride and 37% tert-butyl chloride.

How can we explain the ratios of products that are formed? The key is to look at the relative stabilities of the radicals involved in the reaction and the strengths of the bonds that are formed and broken. First, the chlorination of propane. A chlorine radical, produced by photolysis, can abstract either a primary hydrogen atom, from the end of the molecule, or a secondary hydrogen atom, from the middle. For the first process, we have these energy gains and losses.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{First process:} & \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{H} \\
\Delta H, \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} & \\
\text{one H–Cl bond formed} & -431 \\
\text{one primary C–H bond broken} & +423 \\
\text{total} & -8
\end{align*}
\]

For the second process, the energies are given in the table.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Second process:} & \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{H} \\
\Delta H, \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} & \\
\text{one H–Cl bond formed} & -431 \\
\text{one secondary C–H bond broken} & +410 \\
\text{total} & -21
\end{align*}
\]

Abstraction of the secondary hydrogen atom is more exothermic than abstraction of the primary hydrogen atom, for the related reasons that: (1) secondary C–H bonds are weaker than primary ones; and (2) secondary radicals are more stable than primary ones. So, we get more 2-chloropropane than 1-chloropropane. But in this case, that isn’t the only factor involved: remember that there are six primary hydrogen atoms and only two secondary ones, so the relative reactivity of the primary and secondary positions is even more different than the simple ratio of products from the reaction suggests. This statistical factor is more evident in the second example we gave above, the chlorination of isobutane. Now the choice is between formation of a tertiary radical and formation of a primary one.
Tertiary radical formation is more exothermic, yet more primary alkyl chloride is formed than tertiary alkyl chloride. However, once the 9:1 ratio of primary to tertiary hydrogen atoms is taken into account, the relative reactivities, as determined experimentally, turn out to be as shown in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product Formed</th>
<th>37:63</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Hydrogen Atoms</td>
<td>1:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Reactivity of Each C–H Bond</td>
<td>37/1:63/9 = 37:7 = ca. 5:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Bond strength is all-important in radical reactions**

These reactions illustrate a key point about radical reactions—a very important factor affecting selectivity is the strength of the bonds being formed and broken.

The rate of attack by Cl• on a tertiary C–H bond, then, is about five times the rate of attack by Cl• on a primary C–H bond. We said that this is because the formation of the tertiary radical is more exothermic than the formation of the primary radical. But the rate of a reaction depends not on ΔH for that reaction but on the activation energy of the reaction; in other words, the energy needed to reach the transition state for the reaction. But we can still use the stability of the product radicals as a guide to the stability of the transition state, because the transition state must have significant radical character.

The energy diagram above illustrates this point. As the reactants (Cl• plus isobutane) move towards the products, they pass through a transition state (TS1 for formation of the primary radical, TS3 for formation of the tertiary) in which the radical character of the Cl• starting material is spread over both the Cl and the C centres. The greater stability of a tertiary radical compared with a primary one must be reflected to a lesser degree in these transition states: a radical shared between Cl and a tertiary centre will be more stable than a radical shared between Cl and a primary centre. The
transition state TS3 for the reaction at the tertiary C–H bond is therefore of lower energy than the transition state TS1 for reaction at the primary C–H bond. In other words, the activation energy \( \Delta G_{3}^{\ddagger} \) is smaller than \( \Delta G_{1}^{\ddagger} \), so reaction at the tertiary C–H bond is faster.

Bromine will also halogenate alkanes, and it does so much more selectively than chlorine. For example, the following reaction yields tert-butyl bromide with less than 1% of the primary isomer.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{In this case, the first step of the radical chain reaction, the abstraction of H by Br}^\cdot, \text{is endothermic for both the primary and tertiary hydrogen atoms.}
\end{align*}
\]

The second step, trapping of the alkyl radical by Br\(_2\), is, however, sufficiently exothermic for the reaction to be exothermic overall.

Why is bromination so much more selective than the chlorination of alkanes? This is a good example of how the Hammond postulate applies to real chemistry. Because the products of the first step of the bromination (R• plus HBr) are higher in energy than the starting materials, the transition state must be similar in structure and energy to that product radical; the difference in energies of the primary and tertiary product radicals should therefore be markedly reflected in the different energies of the transition states TS\(_1\) and TS\(_3\), and \( \Delta G_{3}^{\ddagger} \) will be significantly larger than \( \Delta G_{1}^{\ddagger} \). For the chlorination reaction, the products were just slightly lower in energy than the starting materials, so the transition states for the two possible reactions both resembled the starting materials rather more and the products rather less. These are the same for both tertiary and primary hydrogen abstractions, of course, so the difference in.
energy of the product radicals exerts a less pronounced effect on the difference in energy of the transition states.

**Selective radical bromination: allylic substitution of H by Br**

Because radical brominations are so selective, they can be used successfully in the lab to make alkyl bromides. There are relatively few ways of functionalizing an unfunctionalized centre, but radical allylic bromination is one of these. Just as tertiary radicals are more stable than primary ones, so allylic radicals are even more stable than tertiary ones (see the table on p. 000). In the presence of a suitable initiator, bromine will therefore selectively abstract an allylic hydrogen atom to give an allylic radical that can then be trapped by a molecule of bromine to regenerate a bromine radical (chain propagation) and produce the allylic bromide.

\[
\text{Br}_2 \rightarrow 2 \times \text{Br}^+ 
\]

**Initiation**

**Propagation**

However, there is a problem with this reaction if bromine itself is used, because an alternative radical addition reaction can compete with radical abstraction.

The first step of this competing addition reaction is, in fact, reversible; the reaction is driven forward by the participation of a second molecule of bromine that traps the product alkyl radical. This side-reaction can be prevented if the concentration of Br\(_2\) in the reaction is kept very low. One possibility is to add Br\(_2\) very slowly to the reaction mixture, but it is better not to use bromine itself, but a compound that releases molecular bromine slowly during the reaction. That compound is N-bromosuccinimide, or NBS.

**Bond energy for tertiary C–H: 364 kJ mol\(^{-1}\). Bond energy for allylic C–H: 397 kJ mol\(^{-1}\). Remember though that these figures were determined in the gas phase, and here our reactions are in solution. Nonetheless, because solvation effects are more or less the same for all radicals, we expect the order of the bond strengths to remain the same in both phases.**

**This competing reaction is a radical addition across a double bond. You have also met an analogous polar addition across an alkene in Chapter 20: that reaction is suppressed here by using a nonpolar solvent, usually CCl\(_4\).**

**NBS (N-Bromo Succinimide) is known to be a source of bromine because the ratios of products obtained from its reactions are identical with those obtained from reactions using small amounts of bromine.**
The HBr produced in the substitution reaction reacts with the NBS to maintain the low concentration of bromine.

While radical halogenation of alkanes is used only rarely in the laboratory, radical allylic bromination of alkenes is a versatile and commonly used way of making allylic bromides. Nucleophilic substitution reactions can then be used to convert the bromide to other functional groups. For example, some chemists in Manchester needed to make the two diastereoisomers of 5-tert-butylcyclohex-2-en-1-ol to study their reactions with osmium tetroxide. tert-Butyl cyclohexene is readily available, so they used a radical allylic bromination to introduce the functional group in the allylic position, which they converted to a hydroxyl group using aqueous base. Steric effects play a role here in the regioselectivity of the reaction: only the less hindered allylic hydrogen atoms further from the tert-butyl group are removed.

Reversing the selectivity: radical substitution of Br by H

Radical substitution reactions can also be used to remove functional groups from molecules. A useful reagent for this (and, as you will see, for other radical reactions too) is tributyltin hydride, Bu₃SnH. The Sn–H bond is weak and Bu₃SnH will react with alkyl halides to replace the halogen atom with H, producing Bu₃SnHal as a by-product.

Clearly, for this reaction to be energetically favourable, new bonds formed (Sn–Br and C–H) must be stronger than the old bonds broken (Sn–H and C–halogen). Look at this table of average bond energies and you will see that this is indeed so.

The use of a tin hydride is crucial to this reaction: Sn–H bonds are weaker than Sn–Br bonds, while, for carbon, C–H bonds are stronger. Bu₃SnH is therefore an effective source of Bu₃Sn• radicals, and the Bu₃Sn• radical will abstract halogens, particularly I or Br, but also Cl, from organic halides, breaking a weak C–halogen (C–Hal) bond and forming a strong Sn–Hal bond. The complete mechanism of the reaction reveals a chain reaction.
Homolysis of Bu₃SnH is promoted by the initiator AIBN

As you would imagine, the weakest C–Hal bonds are the easiest to cleave, so alkyl bromides are reduced more rapidly than alkyl chlorides, and alkyl fluorides are unreactive. With alkyl iodides and bromides, daylight can be sufficient to initiate the reaction, but with alkyl chlorides, and often with alkyl bromides as well, it is generally necessary to produce a higher concentration of Bu₃Sn• radicals by adding an initiator to the reaction. The best choice is usually AIBN, which you met on p. 000. This compound undergoes thermal homolysis at 60°C to give nitrile-stabilized radicals that abstract the hydrogen atom from Bu₃SnH.

Why use AIBN; why not a peroxide? (You came across peroxides as initiators of the addition of H–Br to alkenes.) Since we want to cleave only a weak Sn–H bond, we can get away with using a relatively unreactive, nitrile-stabilized radical. Peroxides, on the other hand, generate RO• radicals. These are highly reactive and will abstract hydrogen from almost any organic molecule, not just the weakly bonded hydrogen atom of Bu₃SnH, and this would lead to side-reactions and lack of selectivity. AIBN is needed only in sufficient quantities to be an initiator of the reaction; it is the Bu₃SnH that provides the hydrogen atoms that end up in the product, so usually you need only 0.02 to 0.05 equivalents of AIBN and a slight excess (1.2 equivalents) of Bu₃SnH.

Controlling radical chains

You have now met two examples of radical chain reactions:

1. radical addition of halogens to double bonds
2. radical substitution of hydrogen by halogens, or of halogens by hydrogen

You have seen how the selectivity of these reactions depends upon the bond strengths of the bond being formed or broken. Until about 1975, these reactions, with a few exceptions, were all that were expected of radicals. Since that date, however, the use of radicals in synthetic chemistry has increased tremendously, to the point where highly complex ring structures such as the natural product hirsutene and steroids can be made from simple acyclic precursors in one radical-promoted step.

What has made this all possible is that chemists have learned how to understand the selectivity of radical reactions to such a degree that they can design starting materials and reagents to define
precisely the bonds that will break and form during the reactions. We shall now go on to look at the most important consequence of this ability to control radical reactions: they can be used to make carbon–carbon bonds.

**Carbon–carbon bond formation using radicals**

The following radical reaction forms a new carbon–carbon bond. The mechanism is quite similar to that of the very first radical reaction we showed you, right at the beginning of the chapter. Now, with your additional appreciation of the role of bond strength in the selectivity radical reactions, you should be able to understand why each step proceeds in the way that it does.

![Mechanism diagram](image)

Firstly, the weakest bond, C–Br, is broken by the light being shone on to the reaction. Two radicals form, CCl₃• and Br•, and it is the CCl₃• that adds to the (less hindered) unsubstituted end of the alkene to produce a (more stable) secondary benzylic radical.

This radical abstracts a Br, atom from the BrCCl₃, breaking the (weakest) C–Br bond, forming the product and regenerating ´CCl₃, which adds to another molecule of alkene. Notice that the carbon-centred radical abstracts Br• and not •CCl₃ from BrCCl₃—to abstract •CCl₃ would require a radical substitution at carbon—remember, radicals want the easy pickings from the front of the display; they don’t go nosing round the back to see if there’s anything better to be had.

This reaction works quite well, giving 78% of the product, but it relies on the fact that the starting material, BrCCl₃, has an unusually weak C–Br bond (the ´CCl₃ radical is highly stabilized by those three chlorine atoms). You can’t use most other alkyl bromides for a number of reasons, not least of them being that the product is also an alkyl bromide and, without the selectivity provided by the CCl₃ group, the result would be an awful mixture of polymers. The problem is that we want the product radical to abstract Br from the starting alkyl bromide to make a new alkyl bromide and a new starting radical, and there is no energetic driving force behind this transformation.

For a way of overcoming this problem, let’s go back to the reaction we looked at a few pages ago, the dehalogenation of alkyl halides by Bu₃SnH. The mechanism involves formation of an alkyl (carbon-centred) radical by abstraction of Br by Bu₃Sn•. This alkyl radical then just abstracted H• from Bu₃SnH.

**initiation**

\[ \text{Bu₃Sn–H} \xrightleftharpoons{\text{AIBN}} \text{Bu₃Sn•} \]

**propagation**

\[ \text{Bu₃Sn•} \xrightarrow{\text{Br–R}} \text{R•} \xrightarrow{\text{H–SnBu₃}} \text{RH} + \text{Bu₃Sn•} \]

Is it not possible to use this alkyl radical more constructively, and encourage it to react with another molecule (an alkene, say, like ´CCl₃ did)? The answer is a qualified yes: look at this reaction.
We have added a carbon-centred radical to an alkene in a radical chain reaction! Here is the mechanism.

**Initiation**

\[
\text{Bu}_3\text{SnH} \quad \text{AIBN} \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^-\cdot
\]

**Propagation**

\[
\text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^- \quad \text{I} \quad \text{R} \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{SnI} \quad \text{CN} \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^- \quad \text{H} \quad \text{SnBu}_3 \quad \text{R} \quad \text{CN} \quad + \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^-\cdot
\]

We can alternatively represent the mechanism of the reaction cyclically.

The key point is that the product radical does not have to abstract the halogen from the starting material, but H from Bu₃SnH; it is the Bu₃Sn• thus formed that then regenerates the starting radical. The driving force is provided by formation of C–H at the expense of Sn–H and then Sn–Br at the expense of C–Br.

The use of tin hydrides has increased the power of radical reaction in organic synthesis tremendously, and all of the steps in these radical chain processes have been studied in great detail because of the importance of the reactions. We won’t dwell excessively on these details, but we need to go back and re-examine some points about this reaction because there are some further subtleties that you need to understand.

Bear in mind that we have four radicals all in the reaction mixture at the same time. Yet each reacts with its chosen partner, forsaking all others.

Let’s take each radical in turn, and look at its selectivity. Clearly bond strength has something to do with it, but how do you explain the opposing selectivities of R’ and the nitrile-stabilized radicals? We will see that the origins of the selectivities impose some restrictions on the type of starting material that can be used for these C–C bond-forming reactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Reacts like this</th>
<th>Does not react like this</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^-\cdot )</td>
<td>( \text{Bu}_3\text{SnI} \quad \text{CN} \quad \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^-\cdot )</td>
<td>( \text{Bu}_3\text{Sn}^-\cdot \quad \text{CN} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{R}^-\cdot )</td>
<td>( \text{R}^- \quad \text{CN} )</td>
<td>( \text{R}^- \quad \text{HCnBu}_3 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{R}^- )</td>
<td>( \text{H} \quad \text{CN} )</td>
<td>( \text{H} \quad \text{CN} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{CN}^- )</td>
<td>( \text{H} \quad \text{CN} )</td>
<td>( \text{H} \quad \text{CN} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unlike the case of the simple dehalogenation, the tin hydride radical here has a choice of reaction partners: it can either abstract the halide from the starting material or it can add to the alkene. The Sn–C bond is relatively weak, so addition to the alkene becomes a significant reaction only if:

- there is a large excess of alkene present, and
- the starting alkyl halide is relatively unreactive. This means that only alkyl bromides and iodides can be used effectively to form carbon–carbon bonds; alkyl chlorides are just too unreactive.

On comparing the mechanism of this reaction with that of radical dehalogenation, you may rightly be concerned by the fact that in the dehalogenation the alkyl radical produced from the alkyl bromide was intended to abstract H• from the Bu3SnH, whereas now, the alkyl radical is intended to react with an alkene, despite the fact that Bu3SnH is still a component of the reaction mixture.

Concentration effects

In fact, the rate constant for reaction of R• with Bu3SnH is about the same as that for reaction with acrylonitrile (CH2=CHCN), so the only way in which good yields can be obtained is by ensuring that the concentration of acrylonitrile is always at least 10 times that of the tin hydride. The difference in rates will then be sufficient to give 10 times as much addition to the alkene as reduction by the tin hydride. Too much acrylonitrile in the reaction mixture causes problems with side-reactions, so a good way of achieving this is to add the tin hydride very slowly during the reaction—often a device known as a syringe pump is used for this. Of course, for complete reaction, a whole equivalent of hydride is necessary, but this can be added over a period of hours.

An elegant alternative is to use a technique conceptually similar to the use of NBS to provide a low concentration of Br2 for radical allylic substitution. Instead of adding one equivalent of Bu3SnH, a catalytic amount (usually 0.1–0.2 equivalents) of Bu3SnCl is added at the beginning of the reaction, with one equivalent of NaBH4. NaBH4 will reduce Bu3SnHal to Bu3SnH, so about 0.1 equivalent of Bu3SnH is formed immediately. With each cycle of the chain reaction, a molecule of this Bu3SnH is converted to Bu3SnBr, which NaBH4 can reduce back to Bu3SnH. Only as much Bu3SnH is produced as is needed, because the rate of production is limited by the rate of reaction.

This method was used in the following example, in which an enantiomerically pure lactone, a useful synthetic building block, was made from naturally occurring glyceraldehyde.

Frontier orbital effects

The second key to success in making sure that the alkyl radical behaves well is to use a reactive radical trap. In fact, this is a major limitation of intermolecular radical carbon–carbon bond-forming reactions: for the trapping of alkyl radicals only electrophilic alkenes (attached to electron-withdrawing groups such as −CN, −CO2Me, −COMe) will do. This is a limitation, but nonetheless, cyclohexyl iodide adds to all these alkenes with the yields shown and the rate of addition to most of these alkenes is 103 to 104 times that of addition to 1-hexene.
To explain why, we have to go back to our analysis (on p. 000) of the electronic structure of radicals and the energy of SOMOs. We said there that, while both electron-withdrawing groups and electron-donating groups will stabilize radicals, electron-withdrawing groups tend to lower the energy of the SOMO, while electron-donating groups tend to raise the energy of the SOMO.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alkene</th>
<th>% Yield</th>
<th>Alkene</th>
<th>% Yield</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>OMe</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>Ph</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hence the preferred reactivity of these alkyl radicals: they are relatively nucleophilic and therefore prefer to react with electrophilic alkenes. Reaction between a nucleophilic alkyl radical and an unfunctionalized (and therefore nucleophilic) alkene is much slower. Similarly, radicals adjacent to electron-withdrawing groups do not react well with electrophilic alkenes. We can represent all this on an energy level diagram.

- **Electrophilic and nucleophilic radicals**
  - *Low-energy* SOMOs are more willing to accept an electron than to give one up; radicals adjacent to electron-withdrawing groups are therefore **electrophilic**
  - *High-energy* SOMOs are more willing to give up an electron than to accept an electron; radicals adjacent to electron-donating groups are therefore **nucleophilic**

We will now consider a third type of radical—cyanide-stabilized alkyl radicals.

The diagram above explains the third aspect of radical chemoselectivity in this reaction: why both the product radical and the radicals produced by AIBN choose to react with Bu₃SnH and not with acrylonitrile. These radicals are electrophilic—they have an electron-withdrawing nitrile group attached to the radical centre so reaction with an electron-poor alkene is slow.
Electrophilic radicals

Having seen the energy diagram above, you will not be surprised to learn that the malonate radical adds readily not to electrophilic alkenes, but to nucleophilic alkenes, such as this vinyl ether, which carries an electron-donating oxygen substituent. This electrophilic radical can also be formed by H-abstraction and by oxidation.

This difference in reactivity applies to non-carbon-centred radicals too. For example, the methyl radical CH₃• and the chlorine radical Cl• will both abstract a hydrogen atom from propionic acid. As you would expect, the methyl radical abstracts the hydrogen atom from next to the carbonyl group to form a carbonyl-stabilized radical. Perhaps surprisingly (in view of what we said earlier about the selectivity of radical chlorinations), the chlorine radical abstracts a hydrogen atom from the terminal methyl group of the acid, despite the fact that this C–H bond is stronger. The reason has to be to do with HOMO–LUMO interactions. The methyl radical is nucleophilic, with a high-energy SOMO. It therefore attacks the C–H bond with the lowest LUMO, in other words, α to the carbonyl group. The chlorine atom, on the other hand, is electrophilic: it has a low-energy SOMO (because it is an electronegative element) and attacks the C–H bonds of the terminal methyl group because they have the highest-energy HOMO. Chlorination of functionalized compounds is not as simple as we implied earlier!

**Summary of requirements for the successful use of the tin method**

- Bu₃SnH must be added or generated slowly
- R–X starting material must contain a weak C–X bond (C–I or C–Br)
- Radical trap must be an electrophilic alkene
  
  **Copolymerization**

Radical chain reactions are particularly suited to the synthesis of polymers, and we will look at this rather special type of radical reaction in Chapter 52. But there is one example of a polymerization that is worth including here since it demonstrates very nicely the effect of electron-withdrawing or -donating substituents on radical reactivity. When a mixture of vinyl acetate and methyl acrylate is treated with a radical initiator, a rather remarkable polymerization takes place. The polymer produced contains alternating vinyl acetate and methyl acrylate monomers along the length of its chain.

![Copolymerization](image)

The mechanism of the reaction shows you why. The nucleophilic radical from vinyl acetate (adjacent to filled π orbital of OAc; high-energy SOMO) prefers to add to the electrophilic alkene (the acrylate). The new radical (adjacent to the empty π* orbital of CO₂Me; low-energy SOMO) is electrophilic and prefers to add to nucleophilic alkene (the vinyl acetate). This produces a new nucleophilic radical, which again prefers to add to the electrophilic alkene, and the whole cycle repeats endlessly.
The reactivity pattern of radicals is quite different from that of polar reagents

The first reaction that you met in this book, in Chapter 2, was the nucleophilic addition to a carbonyl group. Yet we have shown you no examples of radicals adding to carbonyl groups. This typical reaction of polar reagents is really quite rare with radicals.

In Chapter 8 we introduced the concept of $pK_a$ in which we saw acids and bases exchanging protons. Among the strongest organic acids are those containing O–H bonds. Yet you have seen no radical reactions in which an O–H bond is broken—in fact the reaction on p. 000 used ethanol as a solvent! Carbon acids tend to be much weaker—yet you’ve seen plenty of examples of C–H bonds being broken by radical attack.

In Chapter 17 we introduced nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon, using as an example some alkyl bromides. Now, radicals do react with alkyl halides—but not at carbon! You’ve seen how alkyl halides undergo substitution at bromine with tin radicals. The difference in reactivity between, say, organolithiums and radicals, both of them highly reactive, is nicely illustrated by the way in which they react with enones.

We introduced the terms *hard* and *soft* in Chapters 10 and 17. From all these reactions it’s evident that radicals are very soft species: their reactions are driven not by the charge density on an atom but by the coefficient and energy of the frontier orbitals at that atom.
Umpolung

In Chapter 30, you came across the idea of umpolung, the inversion of the usual reactivity pattern of a molecule. You may have already noticed that radicals often have an umpolung reactivity pattern. Alkyl halides are electrophiles in polar reactions; yet they generate nucleophilic radicals that react with electrophilic alkenes.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{electrophilic cation} & \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{nucleophilic radical}
\end{align*}
\]

Similarly, we consider the carbon atoms \( \alpha \) to carbonyl groups to be nucleophilic, because enolization creates a partial negative charge there (in other words, ketones are \( \mathrm{a}^1 \) reagents). Yet carbonyl-stabilized radicals are electrophilic.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{nucleophilic anion} & \quad \text{EtO} \quad \text{EtO} \\
\text{electrophilic radical} & \quad \text{EtO} \quad \text{EtO}
\end{align*}
\]

An alternative way of making alkyl radicals: the mercury method

Although the tin hydride + alkyl halide method is probably the most important way of making alkyl radicals, we should mention some other methods that are useful. We said at the beginning of the chapter that carbon–metal bonds, particularly carbon–transition metal bonds, are weak and can homolyse to form radicals. Alkyl mercuries are useful sources of alkyl radicals for this reason. They can be made by a number of routes, for example, from Grignard reagents by transmetallation.

Addition of mercury acetate to a double bond gives an alkyl mercury bearing a functional group.

Alkyl mercury halides and alkyl mercury acetates are quite stable, but reduction with sodium borohydride leads to highly unstable alkyl mercury hydrides, which collapse at room temperature or in the presence of light to yield alkyl radicals. One other product is mercury metal and you might think you would get \( \text{H}^+ \) as well but this is too unstable to be formed and is captured by something else (\( X \))—you will see what \( X \) is in a moment. This initial decomposition of RHgH initiates the chain but its propagation is by the different mechanism shown below.

In this example a \( \text{t} \)-butyl radical does conjugate addition on to acrylonitrile.

The key propagation step in the mechanism is abstraction of hydride from the starting alkyl mercury. In the propagation step anything will do to cleave the weak Hg–H bond but once the chain is running it is an alkyl radical that does this job, just as in tin hydride chemistry.
Unfortunately, radicals derived from alkylmercuries are even more limited in what they will react with than radicals made from alkyl halides by the tin hydride method. Styrene, for example, cannot be used to trap alkylmercury-derived radicals efficiently because the radicals react more rapidly with the mercury hydride (which has an even weaker metal–H bond than Bu₃SnH) than with the styrene.

Intramolecular radical reactions are more efficient than intermolecular ones

All of the reactions you have met so far involve radical attack between two molecules. We’ve pointed out some of the drawbacks when C–C bonds are made in this way: the radical trap has to be activated (that is, electrophilic to capture nucleophilic radicals) and must often be present in excess; and the radical starting material must contain very weak C–X bonds (such as C–Br, C–I, C–Hg). The requirements are much less stringent, however, if the radical reaction is carried out intramolecularly. For example, this reaction works.

Notice that the double bond is not activated: in fact, it is nucleophilic, and the reaction still works even though the radical is also substituted with an electron-donating group. The C–S bond that is broken is also relatively strong, yet nonetheless a high yield of product is obtained. Why should this be so? What difference does it make that the reactions are intramolecular?

The key is that the intramolecular cyclization of the radical is now enormously favoured over other possible courses of action for the radical. Remember that when we were carrying out radical reactions intermolecularly, addition to the radical trap was encouraged by increasing the concentration of radical trap and decreasing the concentration of Bu₃SnH to avoid radical reduction. For intramolecular reactions, the double bond that acts as the radical trap is always held close to the radical, and cyclization takes place extremely rapidly, even on to unactivated double bonds. The hydride donor (Bu₃SnH) doesn’t get a look in, and can be present in higher concentrations than would otherwise be possible. Moreover, as there is only one equivalent of radical trap, and the trap need not be highly reactive, there is little danger of high concentrations of Bu₃Sn⁻ reacting with it, so
the concentration of Bu$_3$Sn$^+$ can build up to levels where the rate of abstraction of groups like Cl, SPh, and SePh is acceptable, despite their stronger C–X bonds.

### Why are intramolecular radical reactions so good?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bond</th>
<th>Typical bond energy, kJ mol$^{-1}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C–I</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–Br</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–Cl</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C–S</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overall then, intramolecular radical reactions are very powerful, and are often used to make five-membered rings.

It is possible to make other ring sizes also, but the range is rather limited. Because of ring strain, three- and four-membered rings cannot be formed by radical reactions. Otherwise, smaller rings form faster than larger ones: look at these selectivities.

The preference for formation of a smaller ring is a very powerful one: in this reaction, the five-membered ring forms and not the six-membered one, even though cyclization to give a six-membered ring would also give a stabilized radical.

Radicals are important because they react in ways difficult to achieve with anions and cations and with different selectivity. Though radical reactions are less important than ionic reactions you need to understand their mechanisms because they are widespread in an atmosphere of the oxygen diradical. In the next chapter we will move on from carbon atoms carrying seven valence electrons to carbon atoms carrying only six valence electrons called *carbenes.*
Problems

1. In Chapter 33, Problem 13, we used a silylated ene-diol that was actually made in this way. Give a mechanism for the reaction and explain why the Me₃SiCl is necessary.

\[
\text{CO₂Me} \quad \text{Me₃SiCl} \quad \text{Na} \quad \text{OSiMe₃} \quad \text{CO₂Me}
\]

2. Heating the diazonium salt below in the presence of methyl acrylate gives a reasonable yield of a chloroacid. Why is this unlikely to be nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the Sₙ1 mechanism (Chapter 22)? Suggest an alternative mechanism that explains the regioselectivity.

\[
\text{Cl} \quad \text{CP} \quad \text{CO₂Me} \quad \text{heat} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{OSiMe₃} \quad \text{CO₂Me}
\]

3. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction and comment on the ring size formed. What is the minor product likely to be?

\[
\text{CN} \quad \text{(PhCO₂)₂} \quad \text{CO₂Et} \quad \text{major product}
\]

4. Treatment of this aromatic heterocycle with NBS (N-bromo-succinimide) and AIBN gives mainly one product but this is difficult to purify from minor impurities containing one or three bromine atoms. Further treatment with 10% aqueous NaOH gives one easily separable product in modest yield (50%). What are the mechanisms for the reactions? What might the minor products be?

\[
\text{N} \quad \text{N} \quad 1. \text{NBS, AIBN} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{N} \quad 2. \text{10\% NaOH}
\]

5. Propose a mechanism for this reaction accounting for the selectivity. Include a conformational drawing of the product.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{CO₂Me} \quad \text{Bu₂SnH} \quad \text{AIBN} \quad \text{MeO₂C} \quad \text{H}
\]

6. An ICI (now AstraZeneca) process for the manufacture of the diene used to make pyrethroid insecticides involves heating these compounds to 500 °C in a flow system. Propose a radical chain mechanism for the reaction.

\[
\text{500 °C}
\]

7. Heating this compound at 560°C gives two products with the spectroscopic data shown below. What are these products and how are they formed?

\[
\text{A has IR 1640 cm}^{-1}; \text{ m/z 138 (100%), 140 (33%); } \delta \text{H 7.1 p.p.m. (4H, s), 6.5 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J17, 11 Hz), 5.5 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J17, 2 Hz), and 5.1 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J11, 2 Hz).}
\]

\[
\text{B has IR 1700 cm}^{-1}; \text{ m/z 111 (45%), 113 (15%), 139 (60%), 140 (100%), 141 (20%), and 142 (33%); } \delta \text{H 9.9 p.p.m. (1H, s), 7.75 p.p.m. (2H, d, J9 Hz), and 7.43 (p.p.m. 2H, d, J9 Hz).}
\]

8. Treatment of methylcyclopropane with peroxides at very low temperature (–150 °C) gives an unstable species whose ESR spectrum consists of a triplet with coupling 20.7 gauss and fine splitting showing dtt coupling of 2.0, 2.6, and 3.0 gauss. Warming to a mere –90 °C gives a new species whose ESR spectrum consists of a triplet of triplets with coupling 22.2 and 28.5 gauss and fine splitting showing small ddd coupling of less than 1 gauss.

\[
\text{t-BuOCl} \quad -150 °C \quad \text{Me} \quad \text{AIBN} \quad -90 °C \quad \text{A} \quad \text{B}
\]

If methylcyclopropane is treated with t-BuOCl, various products are obtained, but the two major products are C and D. At lower temperatures more of C is formed and at higher temperatures more of D.

\[
\text{PhSH} \quad \text{AIBN} \quad \text{Ph} \quad \text{PhS} \quad \text{100% yield}
\]

Treatment of the more highly substituted cyclopropane with PhSH and AIBN gives a single product in quantitative yield. Account for all of these reactions, identifying A and B and explaining the differences between the various experiments.

\[
\text{t-BuOK, THF, –78 °C}
\]

9. The last few stages of Corey’s epibatidine synthesis are shown here. Give mechanisms for the first two reactions and suggest a reagent for the last step.

\[
\text{t-BuOK, THF, –78 °C}
\]

Continued overleaf
10. How would you make the starting material for this sequence of reactions? Give a mechanism for the first reaction that explains its regio- and stereoselectivity. Your answer should include a conformational drawing of the product. What is the mechanism of the last step? Attempts to carry out this last step by iodine–lithium exchange and reaction with allyl bromide fail. Why? Why is the reaction sequence here successful?

11. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction explaining why a mixture of diastereoisomers of the starting material gives a single diastereoisomer of the product. Is there any other form of selectivity?

12. On the other hand, why does a single diastereoisomer of this organomercury compound give a mixture of diastereoisomers (68:32) on reduction with borohydride in the presence of acrylonitrile?

13. Reaction of this carboxylic acid (C₅H₈O₂) with bromine in the presence of dibenzoyl peroxide gives an unstable compound (C₅H₆Br₂O₂) that gives a stable compound (C₅H₅BrO₂) on treatment with base. The stable compound has IR 1735 and 1645 cm⁻¹ and ¹H NMR δH 6.18 p.p.m. (1H, s), 5.00 p.p.m. (2H, s), and 4.18 p.p.m. (2H, s). What is the structure of the stable product? Deduce the structure of the unstable compound and mechanisms for the reactions.

14. The product formed in Problem 9 of Chapter 20 was actually used to make this cyclic ether. What is the mechanism?
Diazomethane makes methyl esters from carboxylic acids

In 1981, some chemists in Pennsylvania needed to convert this carboxylic acid into its methyl ester as part of the synthesis of an antibiotic compound. What reagent did they choose to do the reaction?

You remember, of course, that esters can be made from carboxylic acids and alcohols under acid catalysis, so you might expect them to use this type of method. On a small scale, it’s usually better to convert the acid to an acyl chloride before coupling with an alcohol, using pyridine (or DMAP + Et₃N) as a base; this type of reaction might have been a reasonable choice too.

But, in fact, they chose neither of these methods. Instead, they simply treated the carboxylic acid with a compound called diazomethane, CH₂N₂, and isolated the methyl ester.

Diazomethane, CH₂N₂, is a rather curious compound that has to be drawn as a dipole. There are several different ways of expressing its structure.
Diazomethane methylates carboxylic acids because carboxylic acids readily protonate it, giving an extremely unstable diazonium cation. This compound is desperate to lose N₂, the world’s best leaving group, and so it does, with the N₂ being substituted by the carboxylate anion. The carboxylate anion is in exactly the right position to carry out an S_N2 reaction and that is what we have drawn.

Diazomethane methylation is a good way of making methyl esters from carboxylic acids on a small scale because yields are excellent and the only by-product is nitrogen. However, there is a drawback: diazomethane has a boiling point of –24 °C, and it is a toxic and highly explosive gas. It therefore has to be used in solution, usually in ether; the solution must be dilute, because concentrated solutions of diazomethane are also explosive. It is usually produced by reaction of N-methyl-N-nitrosourea or N-methyl-N-nitrosotoluenesulfonamide with base, and distilled out of that reaction mixture as an azeotrope with ether, straight into a solution of the carboxylic acid.

The mechanism of the reaction that forms diazomethane is shown below. The key step is base-catalysed elimination, though the curly arrows we have to draw to represent this are rather tortuous!

Diazomethane will also methylate phenols, because they too are acidic enough to protonate it. Ordinary alcohols, though, are not methylated because they are not strong enough acids to protonate diazomethane.

![Formation of diazomethane](image)

**Selective methylation**

Chemists studying the hormone degradation products present in the urine of pregnant women needed to methylate the phenolic hydroxyl group of the steroid oestriol. By using diazomethane, they avoided reaction at the two other hydroxyl groups. When, subsequently, they did want to methylate the other two hydroxyl groups, they had to add acid to the reaction to protonate the diazomethane.
**Photolysis of diazomethane produces a carbene**

Alcohols can be methylated by diazomethane if the mixture is irradiated with light.

\[
\text{OH} + \text{CH}_2\text{N}_2 \xrightarrow{hv} \text{OMe} + \text{N}_2 \quad \text{low yield}
\]

The mechanism is now totally different, because the light energy promotes loss of nitrogen (N\(_2\)) from the molecule without protonation. This means that what is left behind is a carbon atom carrying just two hydrogen atoms (CH\(_2\)), and having only six electrons. Species like this are called carbenes, and they are the subject of this chapter.

- **Carbenes are neutral species containing a carbon atom with only six valence electrons.**

Carbenes have six electrons: two in each bond and two nonbonding electrons, which are often represented as :CR\(_2\) (as though they were a lone pair). As you will see later, this can be misleading, but :CR\(_2\) is a widely used symbol for a carbene. This carbene is trapped by the alcohol to make an ether.

Like the radicals in Chapter 39, carbenes are extremely reactive species. As you have just seen, they are trapped by alcohols to make ethers, but more importantly they will react with alkenes to make cyclopropanes, and they will also insert into C–H bonds.

- **Typical carbene reactions**
  - The carbene inserts itself into a \(\sigma\) bond or a \(\pi\) bond.

We will discuss the mechanisms of these three important reactions shortly, but we have introduced them to you now because they demonstrate that the reactions of carbenes are dominated by insertion reactions (here, insertion into O–H, C=C, and C–H) driven by their extreme electrophilicity. A carbon atom with only six electrons will do almost anything to get another two!

**How do we know that carbenes exist?**

The best evidence for the existence of carbenes comes from some very few examples that are stable compounds. An X-ray crystal structure of the second example shows the bond angle at the carbene carbon to be 102°—we will come back to the significance of this later.
But these stable carbenes are very much the exception: most carbenes are too reactive to be observed directly. Electronic and, more importantly, steric effects make these two compounds so stable.

Even reactive carbenes can be observed, however, if they are formed by irradiating precursors (often diazo compounds like diazomethane, which we have just been discussing) trapped in frozen argon at very low temperatures (less than 77 K). IR and ESR spectroscopy can then be used to determine their structure.

### How are carbenes formed?

Carbenes are usually formed from precursors by the loss of small, stable molecules. We will discuss some of the most important methods in turn, but you have already seen one in action: the loss of nitrogen from a diazo compound.

#### Naming azo compounds

Don’t confuse diazo compounds with azo compounds. Diazomethane has twice as many nitrogen atoms per methyl group as azomethane.

![Diazomethane and azomethane structures](image)

You met diazonium salts in Chapter 23. Arene diazonium salts are stable compounds, but alkyl diazonium salts, which are formed by protonation of diazo compounds, are not. They decompose rapidly to carboxylates—this was how the carboxylic acid got methylated at the beginning of the chapter. Other relatives of the azo and diazo compounds are alkyl azides. Alkyl azides have three nitrogen atoms and are usually stable but may explode on impact or heating.

#### Carbenes from diazo compounds

We showed you the formation of a carbene from diazomethane to illustrate how this reaction was different from the (ionic) methylation of carboxylic acids. But this is not a very practical way of generating carbenes, not least because of the explosive nature of diazoalkanes. However, diazocarbonyl compounds are a different matter.

![Diazocarbonyl compound structures](image)

They are much more stable, because the electron-withdrawing carbonyl group stabilizes the diazo dipole, and are very useful sources of carbenes carrying a carbonyl substituent. There are two main ways of making diazocarbonyl compounds:

1. by reacting an acyl chloride with diazomethane

   ![Diazocarbonyl compound synthesis](image)

   *diazocarbonyl compound isolated in 100% yield*

2. by reacting the parent carbonyl compound with tosyl azide, TsN₃, in the presence of base.

   ![Diazocarbonyl compound synthesis](image)

   *diazocarbonyl compound isolated in 95% yield*
The reaction of diazomethane with acyl chlorides starts as a simple acylation to give a diazonium compound. If there is an excess of diazomethane, a second molecule acts as a base to remove a rather acidic proton between the carbonyl and the diazonium groups to give the diazocarbonyl compound.

What happens to that second molecule of diazomethane? By collecting a proton it turns into the very reactive diazonium salt, which collects a chloride ion, and MeCl is given off as a gas. The second method uses tosyl azide, which is known as a diazo transfer reagent—it’s just N₂ attached to a good leaving group.

Diazocarbonyl compounds can be decomposed to carbenes by heat or light. The formation of very stable gaseous nitrogen compensates for the formation of the unstable carbene.

But it is much more common in modern chemistry to use a transition metal such as copper or rhodium, to promote formation of the carbene.

Carbenes formed in this way are, in fact, not true carbenes because it appears that they remain complexed with the metal used to form them. They are known as carbenoids, and their reactions are discussed later in the chapter.

**Carbenes from tosylhydrazones**

Many more carbenes can be made safely from diazoalkanes if the diazoalkane is just an intermediate in the reaction and not the starting material. Good starting materials for these reactions are tosylhydrazones, which produce transient diazo compounds by base-catalysed elimination of tolenesulfinate. The diazo compound is not normally isolated, and decomposes to the carbene on heating.
Notice that the leaving group from nitrogen is not the familiar tosylate (toluene-\(p\)-sulfonate \(\text{TsO}^–\)) but the less familiar toluene-\(p\)-sulfinate (Ts\(^–\)).

Carbenes are formed in a number of other similar reactions—for example, loss of carbon monoxide from ketenes or elimination of nitrogen from azirines—but these are rarely used as a way of deliberately making carbenes.

**Carbene formation by \(\alpha\) elimination**

In Chapter 19 we discussed \(\beta\) elimination in detail, reactions in which a hydrogen atom is removed from the carbon atom \(\beta\) to the leaving group.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{RO} & \rightarrow \text{R} + \text{H} + \text{Br}^– \\
\text{RO} & \rightarrow \text{ROH} + \text{R} + \text{Br}^–
\end{align*}
\]

**\(\alpha\) Eliminations** (eliminations in which both the proton and the leaving group are located on the same atom) are also possible—in fact, the reaction we’ve just been talking about (elimination of toluenesulfinate from tosylhydrazones) is an \(\alpha\) elimination. \(\alpha\) Eliminations follow a mechanism akin to an E1cB \(\beta\) elimination—a strong base removes an acidic proton adjacent to an electron withdrawing group to give a carbanion. Loss of a leaving group from the carbanion creates a carbene.

One of the best known \(\alpha\) elimination reactions occurs when chloroform is treated with base. This is the most important way of making dichlorocarbene, \(\text{CCl}_2\), and other dihalocarbenes too, although it must be said that the widespread use of dichlorocarbene in chemistry is due mainly to the ease with which it can be made using this method!

Hydroxide and alkoxide anions are strong enough bases to promote \(\alpha\) elimination from chloroform, and from other trihalomethanes. Carbenes can be formed from dihaloalkanes by deprotonation with stronger bases such as LDA, and even from primary alkyl chlorides using the extremely powerful bases phenylsodium or \(t\)-BuLi/\(t\)-BuOK (weaker bases just cause \(\beta\) elimination).

When geminal dibromoalkanes are treated with \(t\)-BuLi, a halogen–metal exchange reaction produces a lithium carbenoid, with a metal atom and a halogen attached to the same carbon atom. Lithium carbenoids are stable at very low temperatures—they can be observed by NMR, but they decompose to carbenes at about –100 °C.
While lithium carbenoids have limited applicability in chemistry, an analogous zinc carbenoid, which can be formed by insertion of zinc into diiodomethane, is a reagent in one of the most widely used carbenoid reactions in chemistry—the Simmons–Smith reaction.

The essence of this type of carbenoid is that it should have a leaving group, such as a halogen, that can remove a pair of electrons and another, usually a metal, that can donate a pair of electrons. If the metal leaves first, a carbanion is created that can lose the halogen to make a carbene. They might also leave together. Both are $\alpha$ eliminations.

The problem with many of these reactions is that they require strong bases—either the organometallic compound itself is basic or a base must be used to create the carbanion. Carbenes are so unstable that they must be formed in the presence of the compound they are intended to react with, and this can be a problem if that compound is base-sensitive. For dichlorocarbene, a way round the problem is to make the carbanion by losing CO$_2$ instead of a metal or a proton. Decarboxylation of sodium trichloroacetate is ideal as it happens at about 80 °C in solution.

### Summary: the most important ways of making carbenes

Carbenes are neutral species containing a carbon atom with only six valence electrons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of carbene</th>
<th>Method of formation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\text{R} = \text{C} = \text{R}$</td>
<td>metal (rhodium or copper)-catalysed decomposition of diazocarbonyl compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{R} = \text{C} = \text{R}$</td>
<td>thermal decomposition of diazo compound, often derived from tosylhydrazone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{C} = \text{C} = \text{Cl}$</td>
<td>$\alpha$ elimination of chloroform with base</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is a good point to remind you of other ‘double losses’ from molecules. Just as $\alpha$ elimination gives a carbene while $\beta$ elimination gives an alkene, loss of nitrogen from a diazo compound gives a carbene but loss of nitrogen from an azo compound such as AIBN (azobisisobutyronitrile) gives two radicals (Chapter 39).
Carbenes can be divided into two types

We made two important observations earlier regarding the structure of carbenes that we will now return to and seek an explanation for: firstly, we said that the X-ray crystal structure of this stable, crystalline carbene shows that the bond angle at the carbene C is 102° and, secondly, we said that many carbenes can be observed by ESR—in other words, they have unpaired electrons.

Spectroscopic investigations of a number of carbenes of differing structures have shown that they fall broadly into two groups: (1) those (which you will learn to call ‘triplets’) that ESR spectroscopy demonstrates have unpaired electrons and whose bond angles are 130–150°; and (2) those (like the stable crystalline carbene above which you will learn to call a ‘singlet’) that have bond angles of 100–110° but cannot be observed by ESR. Many carbenes, like CH₂ itself, can be found in either style, though one may be more common.

All these observations can be accounted for by considering the electronic structure of a carbene. Carbenes have 2-coordinate carbon atoms: you might therefore expect them to have a linear (diagonal) structure—like that of an alkyne—with an sp hybridized carbon atom.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type 1: triplet carbenes</th>
<th>Type 2: singlet carbenes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bond angle 130–150°</td>
<td>bond angle 100–110°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observable by ESR</td>
<td>all electrons paired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:CH₂</td>
<td>:CCl₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:CHPh</td>
<td>:CHCl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:CHR</td>
<td>:O(OMe)₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:CPh₂</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Such a linear carbene would have six electrons to distribute amongst two σ orbitals and two (higher-energy) p orbitals. The two electrons in the degenerate p orbitals would remain unpaired because of electron repulsion in the same way as in molecular oxygen \( \text{O}--\text{O} \).

Yet few carbenes are linear: most are bent, with bond angles between 100° and 150°, suggesting a trigonal (sp²) hybridization state. An sp² hybridized carbene would have three (lower-energy) sp² orbitals and one (high-energy) p orbital in which to distribute its six electrons. There are two ways of doing this. Either all of the electrons can be paired, with each pair occupying one of the sp² orbitals, or two of the electrons can remain unpaired, with one electron in each of the p orbitals and one of the sp² orbitals.
These two possibilities explain our two observed classes of carbene, and the two possible arrangements of electrons (spin states) are termed triplet and singlet. The orbitals are the same in both cases but in triplet carbenes we have one electron in each of two molecular orbitals and in singlet carbenes both electrons go into the sp² orbital.

**Singlet and triplet carbenes**

**Triplet carbenes** have two unpaired electrons, one in each of an sp² and a p orbital, while **singlet carbenes** have a pair of electrons in a nonbonding sp² orbital and have an empty p orbital.

The existence of the two spin states explains the different behaviour of triplet and singlet carbenes towards ESR spectroscopy; the orbital occupancy also explains the smaller bond angle in singlet carbenes, which have an electron-repelling lone pair in an sp² orbital.
In the table on p. 000 we saw that the substituents on the carbene affect which of the two classes (which we now call singlet and triplet) it falls into. Why? Most type of carbenes are more stable as triplets because the energy to be gained by bringing the electron in the p orbital down into the sp² orbital is insufficient to overcome the repulsion that exists between two electrons in a single orbital.

All carbenes have the potential to exist in either the singlet or the triplet state, so what we mean when we say that a carbene such as :CH₂ is a ‘triplet carbene’ is that the triplet state for this carbene is lower in energy than the singlet state, and vice versa for :CCl₂. For most triplet carbenes the singlet spin state that would arise by pairing up the two electrons lies only about 40 kJ mol⁻¹ above the ground (triplet) state: in other words, 40 kJ mol⁻¹ is required to pair up the two electrons. When a carbene is actually formed in a chemical reaction, it may not be formed in its most stable state, as we shall see.

Carbenes that have singlet ground states (such as :CCl₂) all have electron-rich substituents carrying lone pairs adjacent to the carbene centre. These lone pairs can interact with the p orbital of the carbene to produce a new, lower-energy orbital which the two electrons occupy. This stabilization of the lone pair provides the incentive that the electron in the p orbital needs to pair up in the sp² orbital.

This molecular orbital formation moves electrons localized on oxygen into orbitals shared between carbon and oxygen. We can represent this in curly arrow terms as a delocalization of the lone pair electrons.

As these arrows suggest, carbenes that have heavily electron-donating substituents are less electrophilic than other carbenes: indeed, diamino carbenes can be quite nucleophilic. The division of carbenes into two types explains their structure. It also helps to explain some of their reactions, especially those that have a stereochemical implication. We will spend the rest of this chapter discussing how carbenes react.

The structure of carbenes depends on how they are made

So far we have considered only the most stable possible structure, singlet or triplet, of a given carbene. In real life, a carbene will be formed in a chemical reaction and may well be formed as the less stable of the alternatives. If a reaction occurs by an ionic mechanism on a molecule with all electrons paired (as most molecules are!) then it must be formed as a singlet. Follow the σ elimination mechanism, for example.

The starting material, a normal molecule of chloroform CHCl₃, has all paired electrons. The C–H σ bond breaks and the two paired electrons from it form the lone pair of the carbanion. The carbanion also has all paired electrons. The two paired electrons of one of the C–Cl bonds leaves
the carbanion and the carbene is formed. It has two paired electrons in each of the two remaining C–Cl bonds and the lone pair, also paired. It is formed as a singlet. As it happens, the singlet version of CCl₂ is also the more stable. If the carbene were instead CH₂ and if it reacted rapidly, it might not have a chance to change into the more stable triplet state. And carbones are very reactive. In explaining their reactions in the next section we shall need to consider:

- how the carbene was formed
- how rapidly it reacts
- whether it can change into the other state (singlet or triplet)

How do carbenes react?

Carbenes are desperate to find another pair of electrons with which to complete their valence shell of electrons. In this respect they are like carbocations. Like carbocations, they are electrophilic but, unlike carbocations, they are uncharged. This has consequences for the type of nucleophiles carbenes choose to react with. Carbocations attack nucleophiles with high charge density—those carrying a negative or partial negative charge (think of the type of nucleophiles that will take part in SN₁ or Friedel–Crafts reactions). Carbenes, on the other hand, attack compounds we’d normally never consider as nucleophiles—even simple alkanes—by taking electrons from their HOMO. Of course, a carbocation will usually react with the HOMO of a molecule, but it will be much more selective about which HOMOs will do—usually these have to be lone pairs or electron-rich alkenes. For carbenes, any HOMO will do—a lone pair, a C=C double bond (electron-rich or -poor), or even a C–H bond.

As you will see (and as we generalized at the beginning of the chapter), many of these reactions can be considered as insertion reactions—overall the carbene appears to have found a bond and inserted itself in the middle of it. It’s important to remember that the term 'insertion reaction' describes the outcome of the reaction, though it isn’t always an accurate description of the reaction’s mechanism.

Carbenes react with alkenes to give cyclopropanes

This reaction is the most important way of making cyclopropanes, and is probably the most important reaction of carbenes.

The mechanism of this type of reaction depends on whether the carbene is a singlet or a triplet, and the outcome of the reaction can provide our first chemical test of the conclusions we came to in the previous section. Singlet carbenes, like this one here (remember that electron-rich substituents stabilize the singlet spin state), can add to alkenes in an entirely concerted manner: the curly arrows for the process can be written to show this.

Because the process is concerted, we expect that the geometry of the alkene should be preserved in the product—the reaction ought to be stereospecific. The two examples below show that this is indeed the case. It is more impressive that the Z-alkene gives the cis cyclopropane as this is less stable than the trans cyclopropane and would change if it could.
The alkene insertion reaction is stereospecific only for singlet carbenes. For triplet carbenes, the reaction is nonstereospecific. Though carbenes formed thermally from diazoalkenes must initially be singlets, photochemistry is one way to provide the energy needed for their transformation to the more stable triplet.

The mechanism of this nonspecific reaction must be different. In fact, a concerted reaction is impossible for triplet carbenes because of the spins of the electrons involved. After the carbene adds to the alkene in a radical reaction, the diradical (triplet) intermediate must wait until one of the spins inverts so that the second C–C bond can be formed with paired electrons. This intermediate also lives long enough for C–C bond rotation and loss of stereochemistry.

A cyclopropane has three σ bonds—in other words, six electrons, all spin-paired (three up, three down). One of these was the σ bond in the starting material; the other two electron pairs come from the π bond and from the carbene. The electrons in the π bond must have been paired, and thus they can form one of the new σ bonds. A singlet carbene (whose electrons are also paired) can then provide the second electron pair.

But a triplet carbene cannot, because its electrons are not paired. The second bond can only form once one of the two electrons has flipped its spin. Spin-flipping, which can only occur through collision with another molecule (of solvent, say), is relatively slow on the time-scale of molecular rotations and, by the time the electrons are in a fit state to pair up, the stereochemistry of the starting material has been scrambled by free rotation in the intermediate.
A reminder. The same constraints arising from the need for conservation of electron spin apply to the formation as well as to the reaction of carbenes. When a carbene forms by $\alpha$ elimination, say, from a molecule with all electrons paired, it must be formed as the singlet, whether or not the triplet state is lower in energy. Only later may the carbene undergo spin-flipping to the triplet state. Since most carbene reactions are very rapid, this means that carbenes that are known to have triplet ground states may, in fact, react in their first-formed singlet state because they don’t have time to spin-flip to the triplet. This is true for $:\text{CH}_2$ produced from $\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2$, which adds stereospecifically to double bonds because it is formed as a singlet and because the singlet state is more reactive than the triplet.

Some evidence for triplet carbenes in cyclopropane formation

If the reaction is diluted with a large amount of an inert solvent such as $\text{C}_3\text{F}_8$ (perfluoropropane) then $\text{CH}_2$ undergoes more collisions before it reacts and so the chances of spin-flipping of singlet $:\text{CH}_2$ to triplet $:\text{CH}_2$ is increased. Addition to alkenes is then less stereospecific

The addition of a singlet carbene to an alkene can be considered to be rather like a radical addition to a double bond. The concerted addition of a singlet carbene, on the other hand, is a pericyclic reaction, and from Chapter 35 you should be able to classify it as a $[1 + 2]$ cycloaddition.

As a cycloaddition, singlet carbene addition to an alkene must obey the rules of orbital symmetry discussed in Chapters 35 and 36. We might consider the empty $p$ orbital of the carbene (LUMO) interacting with the $\pi$ bond (HOMO) of the alkene or the lone pair of the carbene in its filled $sp^2$ orbital (HOMO) interacting with the $\pi^*$ antibonding orbital of the alkene (LUMO).

You can immediately see that there is a problem when we try to interact these orbitals constructively to build two new bonds—direct approach of the carbene to the alkene is impossible because there is always an antibonding interaction. Two new bonds can be formed, however, if the carbene approaches the alkene in a ‘sideways-on’ manner.
The cyclopropane product must, of course, have a more or less tetrahedral arrangement about the carbon atom that was the carbene so that, even if the carbene approaches in a sideways-on manner, it must then swing round through 90° as the bonds form.

‘Docking’ of the carbene on to the alkene

---

Making cyclopropanes

Many natural products and biologically active compounds contain cyclopropane rings: we shall feature just a few. First, a most important natural insecticide, a pyrethrin from the East African pyrethrum daisy, and its synthetic analogue decamethrin, now the most important insecticide in agriculture (see Chapter 1). Very low doses of this highly active and nonpersistent insecticide are needed.

Ever heard of the 'ozone' or 'iodine' smell of the sea? Well, the smell of the sea is characteristic but has nothing to do with O₃ or I₂. It’s more likely to be a dictyopterene, a family of volatile cyclopropanes used by female brown algae to attract male gametes. There is an example in the margin.

Now for two natural but highly unusual amino acids. Hypoglycidin is a blood sugar level lowering agent from the unripe fruit of the ackee tree; the causative agent of Jamaican vomiting sickness. Don’t eat the green ackee. Nature makes not only strained cyclopropanes but this even more strained methylene cyclopropane with an sp² atom in the ring. The second and simpler amino acid is found in apples, pears, and grapefruit and encourages fruit ripening by degradation to ethylene.

Our last and most extraordinary example is an antifungal antibiotic first synthesized in 1996 and containing no less than five cyclopropanes. It has the prosaic name FR-900848 but is known unofficially in the chemical world as ‘jawsamycin’.
Because of these and other useful molecules containing three-membered rings, methods to make them are important as well as interesting. Most chemical syntheses of compounds containing cyclopropyl groups make use of the addition of a carbene, or carbene equivalent, to an alkene. What do we mean by carbene equivalent? Usually, this is a molecule that has the potential to form a carbene, though it may not actually react via a carbene intermediate. One such example is a zinc carbenoid formed when diiodomethane is reacted with zinc metal: it reacts with alkenes just as a carbene would—it undergoes addition to the $\pi$ bond and produces a cyclopropane.

The reaction is known as the Simmons–Smith reaction, after the two chemists at the DuPont chemical factory who discovered it in 1958. Even after several decades, it is the most important way of making cyclopropane compounds, though nowadays a variant that uses more easily handled starting materials is often used. Diethyl zinc replaces the Zn/Cu couple of the traditional Simmons–Smith reaction. In this example, a double cyclopropanation on a $C_2$ symmetric diene derived from tartaric acid gives very good stereoselectivity for reasons we will soon discuss.

The reaction does not involve a free carbene: the zinc is still associated with the carbon atom at the time of the reaction, and the reacting species is a probably a complex of zinc that we can represent as an equilibrium between two zinc carbenoids.

The mechanism of the Simmons–Smith reaction appears to be a carbene transfer from the metal to the alkene without any free carbene being released. It may look something like this.

Some of the evidence for this comes from a reaction that not only throws light on to the mechanism of Simmons–Smith cyclopropanations, but makes them of even greater value in synthesis. When an allylic alcohol is cyclopropanated, the new methylene group adds stereoselectively to the same face of the double bond as the alcohol group.

Allylic alcohols also cyclopropanate over 100 times faster than their unfunctionalized alkene equivalents. Coordination between the zinc atom and the hydroxyl group in the transition state explains both the stereoselectivity and the rate increase. Unfortunately, while the Simmons–Smith
reaction works well when a methylene (CH₂) group is being transferred, it is less good with substituted methylenes (RCH₂ or R₂C):.

When Ireland wanted to introduce a cyclopropane ring stereoselectively into a pentacyclic system containing an enone, he first reduced the ketone to an alcohol (DIBAL gave only the equatorial alcohol) that controlled the stereochemistry of the Simmons–Smith reaction. Oxidation with Cr(VI) put back the ketone.

The carbene derived by metal-catalysed decomposition of ethyl diazoacetate attacks alkenes to introduce a two-carbon fragment into a cyclopropane—an industrial synthesis of ethyl chrysanthemate, a precursor to the pyrethrin insecticides (see p. 000), uses this reaction. The diene in the starting material is more nucleophilic (higher-energy HOMO; see Chapter 20) than the single alkene in the product, so the reaction can be stopped after one carbene addition.

The intramolecular version of this reaction is more reliable, and has often been used to make compounds containing multiply substituted cyclopropanes. Corey made use of it in a synthesis of sirenin, the sperm-attractant of a female water mould.

As you might imagine, carbenes like this, substituted with electron-withdrawing carbonyl groups, are even more powerful electrophiles than carbenes like :CCl₂, and will even add to the double bonds of benzene. The product is not stable, but immediately undergoes electrocyclic ring opening.
Dichlorocarbene :CCl₂ will not add to benzene, but does attack the electron-rich aromatic ring of phenol: the product is not a cyclopropane, but an aldehyde.

The Reimer–Tiemann reaction used to be an important way of making ortho-substituted phenols, but the yields are often poor, and modern industry is wary of using large quantities of chlorinated solvents. On a small, laboratory scale it has largely been superseded by ortholithiation (Chapter 9) and by modern methods outside the scope of this book. The mechanism probably goes something like this.

**Comparison of ‘enoid’ reagents**

Before we leave this section on cyclopropanes, we want you to take a step back from simply thinking about carbenes, and consider the types of reagents that form three-membered rings generally. They all have something in common, which we could call ‘enoid’ character. Cyclopropanes form when a carbene, which, in the singlet state, has an empty, electrophilic π orbital and a full, nominally nucleophilic sp² orbital) attacks alkenes. The Simmons–Smith carbene is not a carbene, but nonetheless has a carbon atom with joint nucleophilic (alkyl zinc) and electrophilic (alkyl iodide) character. When you think about it, the same is true for peracid epoxidation, which forms the oxygen analogue of a cyclopropane by attacking an alkene with an oxygen atom bearing both a lone pair (nucleophilic) and a carboxylate leaving group (electrophilic). It’s an ‘oxenoid’. In Chapter 46 you will meet more reagents that form cyclopropanes and epoxides by transferring CH₃—sulfonium ylids. These yet again have a schizophrenic carbon atom—carrying a negative charge and a leaving group—and, when you meet them, you can consider them to be particularly stable carbenoids.

**Insertion into C–H bonds**

We said that the formation of cyclopropanes by addition of substituted carbenes to alkenes was rare—in fact, alkyl-substituted carbenes undergo very few intermolecular reactions at all because they decompose very rapidly. When primary alkyl halides are treated with base, alkenes are formed by elimination. Having read Chapter 19, you should expect the mechanism of this elimination to be E2 and, if you started with a deuterated compound like this, the alkene product would be labelled with two deuterium atoms at its terminus.
This is indeed what happens if the base is sodium methoxide ($pK_a$ 16). If, however, it is phenylsodium ($pK_a$ about 50), only 6% of the product is labelled in this way while 94% of the product has only one deuterium atom.

A hydrogen atom has ‘migrated’ from the 2-position to the 1-position. The overall mechanism of the elimination with very strong bases like phenylsodium is believed to be: (1) formation of a carbene by $\alpha$ elimination and then (2) 1,2-migration of a hydrogen atom on to the carbene centre. Carbene reactions with $\beta$ hydrogens undergo extremely rapid 1,2-migration of hydrogen to the carbene centre, giving alkenes.

The reason for the rapid migration is that the electrophilic carbene has found a nearby source of electrons—the HOMO of the C–H bond—and it has grabbed the electrons for itself, ‘inserting’ into the C–H bond.

This type of reaction is better demonstrated by two examples in which the ‘insertion reaction’ is a bit more obvious: when there are no $\beta$ hydrogens, the carbene inserts into C–H bonds a little further away in the same molecule or even in the solvent (cyclohexane in the second example). In the first case, the carbene is formed by $\alpha$ elimination and, in the second case, by photolysis of a diazoketone.

Because these insertion reactions create new bonds at completely unfunctionalized centres, they can be very useful in synthesis. This next carbene is created between two carbonyl groups from a diazo compound with rhodium catalysis and selectively inserts into a C–H bond five atoms away to form a substituted cyclopentanone.
In these C–H insertion reactions, the similarity with cyclopropane formation by intramolecular cycloadditions to alkenes is clear, and the mechanisms mirror one another quite closely. As with the cyclopropanation reactions, the path of the reaction differs according to whether the carbene is a singlet or triplet. Singlet carbenes can insert in a concerted manner, with the orbitals overlapping constructively provided the carbene approaches side-on.

This mechanism implies that, if the C–H bond is at a stereogenic centre, the stereochemistry at that centre will be retained through the reaction, as in Cane’s synthesis of pentalenolactone. A nice example of this result is the ingenious synthesis of α-cuparenone using a stereospecific carbene insertion.

Rearrangement reactions
We talked just at the beginning of this section about migration reactions of hydrogen on to carbenes to give alkenes, and said that these reactions can be viewed as insertion reactions of carbenes into adjacent C–H bonds. Carbenes with no β hydrogens often insert into other C–H bonds in the molecule. However, carbenes with no β-hydrogen atoms can also undergo rearrangement reactions with alkyl or aryl groups migrating.

In principle, triplet carbene insertions should follow a two-step radical pathway analogous to their insertion into alkenes. However, very few triplet carbene insertions into C–H bonds have been observed, and the stereochemical consequence of the two-step mechanism (which should result in mixtures of stereoisomers on insertion into a C–H bond at a stereogenic centre) has never been verified.

The migration of alkyl groups to carbene centres has much in common with the migration of alkyl groups to cationic centres discussed in Chapter 37—after all, both carbenes and carbocations are electron-deficient species with a carbon atom carrying only six electrons in its outer shell.
The most common example of this type of migration is that in which the carbene is adjacent to a carbonyl group. The initial product of what is known as the **Wolff rearrangement** is a ketene, which cannot be isolated but is hydrolysed to the ester in the work-up. Wolff rearrangement is a typical reaction of diazoketones on heating, though these species do also undergo intramolecular C–H insertion reactions.

![Wolff rearrangement diagram](image)

One important application of this reaction is the chain extension of acyl chlorides to their homologous esters, known as the **Arndt–Eistert reaction**. Notice that the starting material for the Wolff rearrangement is easily made from RCO₂H by reaction of the acyl chloride with diazomethane; the product is RCH₂CO₂H—the carboxylic acid with one more carbon atom in the chain. A CH₂ group, marked in black, comes from diazomethane and is inserted into the C–C bond between R and the carbonyl group.

### A synthesis of grandisol using Arndt–Eistert chain extension

The boll weevil is a serious pest of cotton bushes, and it produces a sex pheromone known as **grandisol**. Chemists soon showed that it was an easy matter to synthesize a related ester by a conjugate addition of an organocopper derivative (Chapter 10) and then the alkylation of an ester enolate (Chapter 26). The enolate reacts with MeI on the face opposite the propenyl side chain—a good example of stereochemical control with cyclic compounds (Chapter 33).

![Arndt–Eistert chain extension diagram](image)
Nitrenes are the nitrogen analogues of carbenes

The Wolff rearrangement has some important cousins that we must now introduce to you—they deserve a mention because they bear a family likeness even though they do not, in fact, involve carbenes. They are a group of reactions that proceed through an intermediate nitrene—the nitrogen analogue of a carbene. The simplest to understand, because it is the direct nitrogen analogue of the Wolff rearrangement, is the Curtius rearrangement. It starts with an acyl azide—which can be made by nucleophilic substitution on an acyl chloride by sodium azide. The acyl azide is what you would get if you just replaced the –CH=N₂ of a diazoketone with −N=N₂. And, if you heat it, it is not surprising that it decomposes to release nitrogen (N₂), forming the nitrene. The nitrene has two bonds fewer (1) than a normal amine and has two lone pairs making six electrons in all.

Nitrenes, like carbenes, are immensely reactive and electrophilic, and the same Wolff-style migration takes place to give an isocyanate. The substituent R migrates from carbon to the electron-deficient nitrogen atom of the nitrene. Isocyanates are unstable to hydrolysis: attack by water on the carbonyl group gives a carbamic acid which decomposes to an amine.

Overall, then, the Curtius rearrangement converts an acid chloride to an amine with loss of a carbon atom—very useful. Also useful is the related Hofmann rearrangement, which turns an amide into an amine with loss of a carbon atom. This time we start with a primary amide and make a nitrene by treatment with base and bromine. Notice how close this nitrene-forming reaction is to the carbene-forming reactions we talked about on p. 000. The nitrene rearranges just as in the Curtius reaction, giving an isocyanate that can be hydrolysed to the amine.

**Attack of carbenes on lone pairs**

Wolff rearrangements, involving shifts of alkyl groups, are effectively intramolecular insertions into C–C bonds. Carbenes will also insert into other bonds, especially O–H and N–H bonds, though the mechanism in these cases involves initial attack on the lone pair of the heteroatom.
Carbene attack is followed by proton transfer to generate a neutral molecule from the first formed zwitterion (or 'ylid'). However, if the heteroatom does not carry a hydrogen, attack on its lone pair generates an ylid that cannot rearrange in this way. Reaction of a carbene with a neutral nucleophile forms an ylid. This type of reaction is, in fact, a very useful way of making reactive ylids that are inaccessible by other means.

As carbonyl-substituted carbenes (like carbonyl-substituted radicals) are electrophilic, their insertion into O–H and N–H bonds can be a useful way of making bonds in an umpolung sense. Because of the difficulties in forming β-lactams (the four-membered rings found in the penicillin classes of antibiotics), Merck decided to design a synthesis of the class of compounds known as carbapenems around a rhodium-catalysed carbene insertion into an N–H bond, building the five-membered ring on to the side of the four-membered ring.

**Alkene (olefin) metathesis**

Carbenes can be stabilized as transition metal complexes: decomposition of phenyl diazomethane in the presence of a ruthenium(II) complex gives a carbene complex stable enough to be isolated and stored for months. These complexes are among the most important of carbene-derived reagents because of a remarkable reaction known as alkene (or more commonly olefin) metathesis.

The reaction is most easily understood when a simple diene reacts with a very small amount (in this case 2 mole per cent) of the catalyst. A cyclization reaction occurs and the product is also an alkene. It contains no atoms from the catalyst: indeed, it has lost two carbon atoms, which are given off as ethylene.

Any reaction that makes new bonds so efficiently and with so little reagent and so little waste is obviously very important. The yield is also rather good! What happens is a metathesis—an exchange of groups between the two arms of the molecule. First, the carbene complex adds to one of the alkenes in what can be drawn as a [2 + 2] cycloaddition (Chapter 35) to give a four-membered ring with the metal atom in the ring.
Now the same reaction happens in reverse (all cycloadditions are, in principle, reversible), either to give the starting materials or, by cleavage of the other two bonds, a new carbene complex and styrene.

Next, an intramolecular [2 + 2] cycloaddition joins up the five-membered ring and produces a second metalla cyclobutane, which decomposes in the same way as the first one to give a third carbene complex and the product.

This new carbene complex then attacks another molecule of starting material and the cycle is repeated except that ethylene (ethene) is now lost instead of styrene in all the remaining cycles.

You will have noticed that the carbene complex appears to exhibit a remarkable selectivity: the ruthenium atom adds to the more substituted end of the first alkene but to the less substituted end of the second. In fact, there is no particular need for selectivity: if the second cycloaddition occurs with the opposite selectivity the metalla cyclobutane has symmetry and can decompose only to the starting materials.

One example that makes a number of points about olefin metathesis is the cyclization of this ester.

The main points are:
• Olefin metathesis is an excellent way to make difficult ring sizes—here a 12-membered ring
• It is compatible with many functional groups—here just an ester and an ether but amines, alcohols, epoxides, and many other carbonyl groups are all right
• The reaction is E-selective. In the previous example only a Z-alkene could be formed but an E-alkene is possible in a 12-membered ring and is the major product
• Stereogenic centres are not racemized
Alkene metathesis is one of the more important of the many new useful reactions that use transition metal complexes as catalysts. You will see more in Chapters 45 and 48.

Summary

We have seen in this chapter how carbenes can be formed from many other reactive intermediates such as carbanions and diazoalkanes and how they can react to give yet more reactive intermediates such as ylids. Here is a summary of the main relationships between carbenes and these other compounds. Note that not all the reactions are reversible. Diazoalkanes lose nitrogen to give carbenes but the addition of nitrogen to carbenes is not a serious reaction.

In the last few chapters we have concentrated a lot on what we call reactive intermediates, species like radicals, carbenes, or carbocations that are hard to observe but that definitely exist. Much of the evidence for their existence derives from the study of the mechanisms of reactions—we have discussed some aspects of this as we have met the species concerned, but in the next chapter we will look in detail at how mechanisms are elucidated and the methods used to determine more precisely the structure of reactive intermediates.

Problems

1. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions.

2. Suggest a mechanism and explain the stereochemistry of this reaction.

3. Comment on the selectivity shown in these two reactions.

4. Suggest a mechanism for this ring contraction.

5. Suggest a mechanism for the formation of this cyclopropane.

6. Problem 4 in Chapter 32 asked: 'Decomposition of this diazo compound in methanol gives an alkene A (C₈H₁₄O) whose NMR spectrum contains two signals in the alkene region: δH 3.50 p.p.m. (3H, s), 5.50 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J 17.9, 7.9 Hz), 5.80 p.p.m. (1H, ddd, J 17.9, 9.2, 4.3 Hz), 4.20 p.p.m. (1H, m), and 1.3–2.7 p.p.m. (8H, m). What is its structure and geometry?'
In order to work out the mechanism of the reaction you might like to take these additional facts into account. Compound A is unstable and even at 20°C isomerizes to B. If the diazo compound is decomposed in methanol containing a diene, compound A is trapped as an adduct. Account for all of these reactions.

7. Give a mechanism for the formation of the three-membered ring in the first of these reactions and suggest how the ester might be converted into the amine with retention of configuration.

8. Explain how this highly strained ketone is produced, albeit in very low yield, by these reactions. How would you attempt to make the starting material?

9. Attempts to prepare compound A by a phase-transfer-catalysed cyclization required a solvent immiscible with water. When chloroform (CHCl₃) was used, compound B was formed instead and it was necessary to use the more toxic CCl₄ for success. What went wrong?

10. Revision content. How would you carry out the first step in this sequence? Propose mechanisms for the remaining steps, explaining any selectivity.

11. How would you attempt to make these alkenes by metathesis?

12. Heating this acyl azide in dry toluene under reflux for 3 hours gives a 90% yield of a heterocyclic product. Suggest a mechanism, emphasizing the involvement of any reactive intermediates.

13. Give mechanisms for the steps in this conversion of a five- to a six-membered aromatic heterocycle.
There are mechanisms and there are mechanisms

If you were asked to draw the mechanism of an ester hydrolysis in basic solution you should have no trouble in giving a good answer. It wouldn’t matter if you had never seen this particular ester before or even if you knew that it had never actually been made, because you would recognize that the reaction belonged to a class of well known reactions (carbonyl substitution reactions, Chapter 12) and you would assume that the mechanism was the same as that for other ester hydrolysers. And you would be right—nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group to form a tetrahedral intermediate is followed by loss of the alkoxide leaving group and the formation of the anion of the carboxylic acid.

But someone at some time had to determine this mechanism in full detail. That work was done in the 1940s to 1960s and it was done so well that nobody seriously challenges it. You might also recall from Chapter 13 that, if we change the carbonyl compound to an acid chloride, the mechanism may change to an SN1 type of reaction with an acylium ion intermediate because the leaving group is now much better: Cl\(^-\) is more stable (less basic) than RO\(^-\). It would not be worth using hydroxide for this reaction: as the first step is the slow step, water will do just as well. Again someone had to determine this mechanism, had to show which was the slow step, and had to show that leaving group ability depended on \(pK_{a\text{H}}\).
If the reaction were the hydrolysis of an amide, you might remember from Chapter 13 that third-
order kinetics are often observed for the expulsion of such bad leaving groups and that this extra
catalysis makes it worthwhile using concentrated base. Again, someone had to find out that: (1) the
slow step is now the decomposition of the tetrahedral intermediate; (2) there are third-order kinetics
involving two molecules of hydroxide; and (3) the first molecule acts as a nucleophile and the second
as a base.

These reactions are versions of the same reaction. For you, writing these mechanisms chiefly
means recognizing the type of reaction (nucleophilic substitution at the carbonyl group) and evalu-
ating how good the leaving group is. For the original chemists, determining these reaction mechani-
isms meant: (1) determining exactly what the product is (that may sound silly, but it is a serious
point); (2) discovering how many steps there are and the structures of the intermediates; (3) finding
out which is the slow (rate-determining) step; and (4) finding any catalysis. This chapter describes
the methods used in this kind of work.

Supposing you were asked what the mechanisms of the next two reactions might be. This is a
rather different sort of problem as you probably don’t recognize any of these reagents and you prob-
ably cannot fit any of the reactions into one of the classes you have seen so far. You probably don’t
even see at once which of the three main classes of mechanism you should use: ionic; pericyclic; or
radical.

There are two types of answer to the question: ‘What is the mechanism of this reaction?’ You
may do your best to write a mechanism based on your understanding of organic chemistry,
moving the electrons from nucleophiles to electrophiles, choosing sensible intermediates, and
arriving at the right products. You would not claim any authority for the result, but you
would hope, as an organic chemist, to produce one or more reasonable mechanisms. This process
is actually an essential preliminary to answering the question in the second way—‘What is the
real, experimentally verified, mechanism for the reaction?’ This chapter is about the second kind
of answer.
Determining reaction mechanisms—the Cannizzaro reaction

So how do we know the mechanism of a reaction? The simple answer is that we don’t for certain. Organic chemists have to face situations where the structure of a compound is initially thought to be one thing but later corrected to be something different. The same is true of mechanisms. It is the nature of science that all we can do is try to account for observations by proposing theories. We then test the theory by experiment and, when the experiment does not fit the theory, we must start again with a new theory. This is exactly the case with mechanisms. When a new reaction is discovered, one or more mechanisms are proposed; evidence is then sought for and against these mechanisms until one emerges as the best choice and that remains the accepted mechanism for the reaction until fresh evidence comes along that does not fit the mechanism.

We are going to look at one reaction, the Cannizzaro reaction, and use this to introduce the different techniques used in elucidating mechanisms so that you will be able to appreciate the different information each experiment brings to light and how all the pieces fit together to leave us with a probable mechanism. Under strongly basic conditions, an aldehyde with no α hydrogens undergoes disproportionation to give half alcohol and half carboxylate. Disproportionation means one half of the sample is oxidized by the other half, which is itself reduced. In this case, half the aldehyde reduces the other half to the primary alcohol and in the process is oxidized to the carboxylic acid. Before the discovery of LiAlH₄ in 1946, this was one of the few reliable ways to reduce aldehydes and so was of some use in synthesis.

The mechanism we have drawn here is slightly different from that in Chapter 27 where we showed the dianion as an intermediate. The two reactions are related by base catalysis as we shall see. Now for some of the evidence and some of the alternative mechanisms that have been proposed for the Cannizzaro reaction. Most of these have been eliminated, leaving just the ones you have already met. Finally, we will see that even these mechanisms do not explain everything absolutely.

Proposed mechanism A—a radical mechanism

Early on it was thought that the hydrogen transfer might be taking place via a radical chain reaction. If this were the case, then the reaction should go faster if radical initiators are added and it should slow down when radical inhibitors are added. When this was tried, there was no change in the rate, so this proposed mechanism was ruled out.

Kinetic evidence for an ionic mechanism

The first piece of evidence that must be accounted for is the rate law. For the reaction of benzaldehyde with hydroxide, the reaction is first-order with respect to hydroxide ions and second-order with respect to benzaldehyde (third-order overall).

\[
\text{rate} = k_3[\text{PhCHO}]^2[\text{HO}^-]
\]

For some aldehydes, such as formaldehyde and furfural, the order with respect to the concentration of hydroxide varies between one and two depending on the exact conditions. In high concentrations of base it is fourth-order.

\[
\text{rate} = k_4[\text{HCHO}]^2[\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

At lower concentrations of base it is a mixture of both third- and fourth-order reactions.

\[
\text{rate} = k_3[\text{HCHO}]^2[\text{HO}^-] + k_4[\text{HCHO}]^2[\text{HO}^-]^2
\]

Just because the overall order of reaction is third- or fourth-order, it does not mean that all the species must simultaneously collide in the rate-determining step. You saw in Chapter 13 that the rate law actually reveals all the species that are involved up to and including the rate-determining step.
Isotopic labelling
When the reaction is carried out in D$_2$O instead of in H$_2$O it is found that there are no C–D bonds in the products. This tells us that the hydrogen must come from the aldehyde and not from the solvent.

Proposed mechanism B—formation of an intermediate dimeric adduct
A possible mechanism that fits all the experimental evidence so far involves nucleophilic attack of the usual tetrahedral intermediate on another aldehyde to give an intermediate adduct. This adduct could then form the products directly by hydride transfer. You may not like the look of this last step, but the mechanism was proposed and evidence is needed to disprove it.

Which step would be rate-determining for this mechanism? It could not be step 1 since, if this were the case, then the rate law would be first-order with respect to the aldehyde rather than the observed second-order relationship. Also, if the reaction is carried out in water labelled with oxygen-18, the oxygen in the benzaldehyde exchanges with the $^{18}$O from the solvent much faster than the Cannizzaro reaction takes place. This can only be because of a rapid equilibrium in step 1 and so step 1 cannot be rate-determining.

So, for mechanism B, either step 2 or step 3 could be rate-determining—either case would fit the observed rate law. Step 2 is similar to step 1; in both cases an oxyanion nucleophile attacks the aldehyde. Since the equilibrium in step 1 is very rapid, it is reasonable to suggest that the equilibrium in step 2 should also be rapid and thus that the hydride transfer in step 3 must be rate-determining. So mechanism B can fit the rate equation.

How can mechanism B be ruled out? One way is to change the attacking nucleophile. The Cannizzaro reaction works equally well if methoxide is used in a mixture of methanol and water. If mechanism B were correct, the reaction with methoxide would be as follows.

One of the products would be different by this mechanism: benzyl methyl ether would be formed instead of benzyl alcohol. None is observed experimentally. Under the conditions of the experiment, benzyl methyl ether does not react to form benzyl alcohol, so it cannot be the case that the ether is formed but then reacts to form the products. Mechanism B can therefore be ruled out.

Proposed mechanism C—formation of an ester intermediate
This mechanism is like mechanism B but the hydride transfer in the adduct formed in step 2 displaces OH$^-$ to form an ester (benzyl benzoate) that is then hydrolysed to the products. This was at
one time held to be the correct mechanism for the Cannizzaro reaction. One piece of evidence for this, and at first glance a very good one, is that by cooling the reaction mixture and avoiding excess alkali, some benzyl benzoate could be isolated during the reaction. An important point is that this does not mean that the ester must be an intermediate in the reaction—it might be formed at the end of the reaction, for example. However, it does mean that any mechanism we propose must be able to account for its formation. For now though we want to try and establish whether the ester is an intermediate rather than a by-product in the Cannizzaro reaction.

An early objection to mechanism C was that the ester would not be hydrolysed fast enough. When someone actually tried it under the conditions of the experiment, they found that benzyl benzoate is very rapidly hydrolysed (the moral here is ‘don’t just think about it, try it!’). However, just because the ester could be hydrolysed, it still did not show that it actually was an intermediate in the reaction. How this was eventually shown was rather clever. The argument goes like this. We can measure the rate constant for step 4 by seeing how quickly pure benzyl benzoate is hydrolysed to benzyl alcohol and benzoate under the same conditions as those of the Cannizzaro reaction. We also know how quickly these products are formed during the Cannizzaro reaction itself. Since, if this mechanism is correct, the only way the products are formed is from this intermediate, it is possible to work out how much of the intermediate ester must be present at any time to give the observed rate of formation of the products. If we can measure the amount of ester that is actually present and it is significantly less than that which we predict, then this cannot be the correct mechanism. It turned out that there was never enough ester present to account for the formation of the products in the Cannizzaro reaction and mechanism C could be ruled out.

**The correct mechanism for the Cannizzaro reaction**

The only mechanism that has not been ruled out and that appears to fit all the evidence is the one we have already given (p. 000). The fact that the rate law for this mechanism is overall third- and sometimes fourth-order depending on the aldehyde and the conditions can be explained by the involvement of a second hydroxide ion deprotonating the tetrahedral intermediate to give a dianion. When methoxide is used in a methanol/water mix, some methyl ester is formed. This does not stay around for long—under the conditions of the experiment it is quickly hydrolysed to the carboxylate.

**Even this mechanism does not quite fit all the evidence**

We said earlier that we can never prove a mechanism—only disprove it. Unfortunately, just as the ‘correct’ mechanism seems to be found, there are some observations that make us doubt this mechanism. In Chapter 39 you saw how a technique called electron spin resonance (ESR) detects radicals and gives some information about their structure. When the Cannizzaro reaction was carried out with benzaldehyde and a number of substituted benzaldehydes in an ESR spectrometer, a radical was detected. For each aldehyde used, the ESR spectrum proved to be identical to that formed when the aldehyde was reduced using sodium metal. The radical formed was the radical anion of the aldehyde.
Our mechanism does not explain this result but small amounts of radicals are formed in many reactions in which the products are actually formed by simple ionic processes. Detection of a species in a reaction mixture does not prove that it is an intermediate. Only a few chemists believe that radicals are involved in the Cannizzaro reaction. Most believe the mechanism we have given.

**Variation in the structure of the aldehyde**

Before leaving the Cannizzaro reaction, look at these rates of reactions for aromatic aldehydes with different substituents in the *para* position. These aldehydes may be divided into two classes: those that react faster than unsubstituted benzaldehyde and those that react more slowly. Those that go slower all have something in common—they all have substituents on the ring that donate electrons.

We have already seen how substituents on a benzene ring affect the rate of electrophilic substitution (Chapter 22). Electron-donating groups such as MeO– and Me2N– dramatically speed up the rate at which an aromatic ring is attacked by an electrophile, whereas electron-withdrawing groups, particularly nitro groups, slow the reaction down. The Cannizzaro reaction is not taking place on the benzene ring itself, but substituents on the ring still make their presence known. The fact that the Cannizzaro reaction goes much slower with electron-donating groups and faster with electron-withdrawing groups tells us that, for this reaction, rather than a positive charge developing as in the case of electrophilic substitution on an aromatic ring, there must be negative charge accumulating somewhere near the ring. Our mechanism has mono- and dianion intermediates that are stabilized by electron-withdrawing groups. Later in the chapter you will see a more quantitative treatment of this variation of structure.

The rest of the chapter is devoted to discussions of the methods we have briefly surveyed for the Cannizzaro reaction with examples of the use of each method. We give examples of many different types of reaction but we cannot give every type. You may rest assured that all of the mechanisms we have so far discussed in this book have been verified (not, of course, proved) by these sorts of methods.

**Be sure of the structure of the product**

This seems a rather obvious point. However, there is a lot to be learned from the detailed structure of the product and we will discuss checking which atom goes where as well as the stereochemistry of the product. You will discover that it may be necessary to alter the structure of the starting material in subtle ways to make sure that we know exactly what happens to all its atoms by the time it reaches the product.

Suppose you are studying the addition of HCl to this alkene. You find that you get a good yield of a single adduct and you might be a bit surprised that you do not get a mixture of the two obvious adducts and wonder if there is some participation of the ether oxygen or whether perhaps the ketone enolizes during the reaction and controls the outcome.

If you are cautious you might check on the structure of the product before you start a mechanistic investigation. The NMR spectrum tells you at once that the product is neither of these suggestions. It contains a (CH₂)₃Cl unit and can no longer have an eight-membered ring. A ring
contraction has given a five-membered ring and a mechanistic investigation is hardly needed. Simply knowing what the product is allows us to propose a mechanism. A rearrangement has occurred and we could use the method suggested in Chapter 37, of numbering the atoms in the starting material and finding them in the product. This is quite easy as only one numbering system makes any sense.

This numbering suggests that the carbon skeleton is unaffected by the reaction, that protonation has occurred at C5, that the ether oxygen has acted as an internal nucleophile across the ring at C4, and that the chloride ion has attacked C7. The mechanism is straightforward.

It may be disappointing to find that every step in this mechanism is well known and that the reaction is exactly what we ought to have expected with an eight-membered ring as these rings are famous for their transannular (across-ring) reactions to form 5,5 fused systems. However, it is good that a prolonged investigation is not necessary.

A more subtle distinction occurred in a study of the bromination of alkynes. Bromination of benzyl alkynes in acetic acid gave the products of addition of one molecule of bromine—the 1,2-dibromoalkenes. The reaction was successful with a variety of para substituents and there seems at first to be no special interest in the structure of the products.

Closer investigation revealed an extraordinary difference between them, not at all obvious from their NMR spectra: the compound from $X = \text{OMe}$ was the Z-dibromoalkene from cis addition of bromine while the product from $X = \text{CF}_3$ was the E-alkene from trans addition. What mechanism could explain this difference?

The anti addition is more easily explained: it is the result of formation of a bromonium ion, similar, in fact, to the normal mechanism for the bromination of alkenes. Bromine adds from one side of the alkene and the bromide ion must necessarily form the E-dibromo product regardless of which atom it attacks.
So why does the \( p\)-MeO– compound behave differently? It cannot react by the same mechanism and a reasonable explanation is that the much more electron-donating ring participates in the reaction to give a carbocyclic three-membered ring intermediate that is attacked in an \textit{anti} fashion to give the \( Z\)-alkene. Both intermediates are three-membered ring cations and both are attacked with inversion but the \( p\)-MeO– compound undergoes double inversion by participation of the ring.

Labelling experiments reveal the fate of individual atoms

It often happens that the atoms in starting material and product cannot be correlated without some extra distinction being made by isotopic labelling. The isomerization of \( Z\)-1-phenylbutadiene to the \( E\)-diene in acid looks like a simple reaction. Protonation of the \( Z\)-alkene would give a stabilized secondary benzylic cation that should last long enough to rotate. Loss of the proton would then give the more stable \( E\)-diene.

However, reaction with \( D^+\) in \( D_2O\) reveals that this mechanism is incorrect. The product contains substantial amounts of deuterium at C4, not at C2 as predicted by the proposed mechanism. Protonation must occur at the end of the conjugated system to produce the more stable conjugated cation, which rotates about the same bond and loses H or D from C4 to give the product. More H than D will be lost, partly because there are two Hs and only one D, but also because of the kinetic isotope effect, of which more later.

The easiest labels to use for this job are D for H, \(^{13}\text{C}\), and \(^{18}\text{O}\). None of these is radioactive; all can be found by mass spectrometry, while D and \(^{13}\text{C}\) can be found by NMR. Old work on mechanisms used radioactive tracers such as T (tritium) for H and \(^{14}\text{C}\). These are isotopes of hydrogen and carbon having extra neutrons. They are, of course, more dangerous to use but they can at least always be found. The real disadvantage is that, to discover exactly where they are in the product, the molecule must be degraded in a known fashion. These radioactive isotopes are not much used nowadays except in determining biological mechanisms as you will see in Chapters 49–51. The first evidence for benzyne as the intermediate in the reaction of chlorobenzene with \( \text{NH}_2^-\) came from radioactive labelling.
If benzyne is an intermediate, the product should have 50% label at C1 and 50% at the two identical ortho carbons. The labelled aniline was degraded by the reactions shown here, which you must agree was a lot of work for the chemists concerned. Each potentially labelled carbon atom had to be isolated from any other labelled atom and the radioactivity measured. We shall follow the fate of the two labelled atoms with black and green spots. Since the two ortho positions are identical, we must put a green spot on both of them.

Most of these reactions are well known—the Beckmann rearrangement is described in Chapter 37 and the Curtius reaction in Chapter 40—but the oxidation of the diamine to the dicarboxylic acid is not a standard procedure and is not recommended. All the label came out in the CO₂ and almost exactly half of it was from the black and half from the green labelled carbons. This was the original evidence that convinced organic chemists in 1953 that benzyne was involved in the reaction. The evidence presented in Chapter 23 is more modern.

The value of double labelling experiments
An altogether more modern approach to a labelling study was used in the surprising rearrangement of a hydroxy-acid in acidic solution. The structure of the product suggests a CO₂H migration as the most likely mechanism. This mechanism resembles closely the cationic rearrangements of Chapter 37.

Received wisdom (Chapter 37) objects that the best migrating group in cationic rearrangements is the one best able to bear a positive charge, so that the more familiar Ph and Me migrations ought to be preferred and that a more elaborate mechanism should be sought. Such a mechanism can be written: it involves two methyl migrations and one phenyl migration and is acceptable.

These mechanisms can be tested by finding out whether the CO₂H group remains attached to its original position or becomes attached to the other carbon in the skeleton of the molecule. This can be done by double labelling. If a compound is prepared with two ¹³C labels, one on the CO₂H group itself and one on the benzylic carbon, the NMR spectrum of the product will show what has happened. In fact, the two ¹³C labels end up next to each other with a coupling constant $^{1}J_{CC} = 71$ Hz. It is the CO₂H group that has migrated.

So why does the CO₂H group migrate? It does so not because it is a good migrating group but because it cannot bear to be left behind. The rearranged cation from CO₂H migration is a stable tertiary alkyl cation. The cation from Me migration is a very unstable cation with the positive charge.
next to the CO$_2$H group. Such cations are unknown as the carbonyl group is very electron-withdrawing. Received wisdom needs to be amended.

‘Crossover’ experiments
There is still one tiny doubt. Supposing the reaction is not intramolecular at all, but intermolecular. The CO$_2$H group might be lost from one molecule as protonated CO$_2$ and be picked up by another molecule of alkene. No migration would be involved at all.

This mechanism can be checked by using a 50:50 mixture of doubly labelled and unlabelled starting material. The molecule of alkene that captures the roving protonated labelled CO$_2$ might happen to be labelled too but equally well it might be unlabelled. If this last mechanism is correct, we should get a mixture of unlabelled, singly labelled, and doubly labelled product in the ratio 1:2:1 as there are two types of singly labelled product. The two singly labelled compounds are called the crossover products and the experiment is called a crossover experiment as it discovers whether any parts of one molecule cross over to another.

In fact, no singly labelled compounds were found: NMR analysis showed that the product consisted entirely of unlabelled or doubly labelled molecules. The CO$_2$H group remains attached to the same molecule (though not to the same atom) and the first mechanism is correct. Crossover experiments demand some sort of double labelling, which does not have to be isotopic. An example where crossover products are observed is the light-initiated isomerization of allylic sulfides.

This is formally a [1,3] sigmatropic shift of sulfur (Chapter 36) but that is an unlikely mechanism and a crossover experiment was carried out in which the two molecules had either two phenyl groups or two para-tolyl groups.

The mixture was allowed to rearrange in daylight and the products were examined by mass spectroscopy. There was a roughly 1:2:1 mixture of products having two phenyl groups, one phenyl and one para-tolyl group, and two para-tolyl groups. The diagram shows the starting materials and the two crossover products only.
Clearly, the ArS group had become separated from the rest of the molecule and the most likely explanation was a radical chain reaction (Chapter 39) with the light producing a small amount of ArS• to initiate the chain. The para-methyl group acts as a label. The whole system is in equilibrium and the more highly substituted alkene is the product.

Systematic structural variation

In this last example, the hope is that the para-methyl group will have too weak an electronic or steric effect and in any case will be too far away to affect the outcome. It is intended to make nearly as slight a change in the structure as an isotopic label. Many structural investigations have exactly the opposite hope. Some systematic change is made in the structure of the molecule in the expectation of a predictable change in rate. A faster or slower reaction will lead to some definite conclusion about the charge distribution in the transition state.

Allylic compounds can react efficiently with nucleophiles by either the SN1 or SN2 mechanisms (Chapter 17) as in these two examples.

The carbon skeleton is the same in both reactions but the leaving groups and the nucleophiles are different. These reaction might both go by SN1 or SN2 or one might go by SN1 and the other by SN2. One way to find out is to make a large change in the electronic nature of the carbon skeleton and see what happens to the rate of each reaction. In these experiments one of the methyl groups was changed for a CF3 group—exchanging a weakly electron-donating group for a strongly electron-withdrawing group. If a cation is an intermediate, as in the SN1 reaction, the fluorinated compound will react much more slowly. Here is the result in the first case.

The fluorinated compound reacts half a million times more slowly so this looks very much like an SN1 mechanism. The slow step in an SN1 mechanism is the formation of a carbocation so any group that destabilizes the positive charge would have (and evidently does have) a large effect on the rate. Rate ratios of several powers of ten are worth noticing and a rate ratio of nearly $10^{-6}$ is considerable. In the second case the rate difference is much less.

A rate ratio of 11 is not worth noticing. The point is not that the fluorinated compound reacts faster but that the two compounds react at about the same rate. This strongly suggests that no charge is generated in the transition state and an SN1 mechanism is not possible. The SN2 mechanism makes good sense with its concerted bond formation and bond breaking requiring no charge on the carbon skeleton.
The CF₃ group works well here as a mechanistic probe because it is held well out of the way of the reaction site by a rigid π system but is connected electronically by that same allylic system. Steric effects should be minimized and electronic effects clearly seen. This approach is clearly limited by the small number of groups having properties like those of the CF₃ group and the small number of reactions having such favourable carbon skeletons. We will now present the most important serious correlation between structure and reactivity.

**The Hammett relationship**

What we would ideally like to do is find a way to quantify the effects that electron-donating or -withdrawing groups have on the transition state or intermediate during the course of a reaction. This will then give us an idea of what the transition state is really like. The first question is: can we define exactly how efficient a given group is at donating or withdrawing electrons? Hammett took the arbitrary decision to use the \( pK_a \) of an acid as a guide. For example, the rate of hydrolysis of esters might well correlate with the \( pK_a \) of the corresponding acid.

When Hammett plotted the rates of ethyl ester hydrolysies (as \( \log k \) since \( pK_a \) has a log scale) against the \( pK_a \)s of the corresponding acids, the initial results were not very encouraging as there was a random scatter of points over the whole graph.

Hammett had used some aliphatic acids (substituted acetic acids) and some aromatic acids (substituted benzoic acids) and he noticed that many of the points towards the top of the graph belonged to the substituted acetic acids. Removing them (brown points) made the graph a lot better. He then noticed that the remaining aromatic compounds were in two classes: the ortho-substituted esters reacted more slowly than their meta- and para-isomers and came towards the bottom of the graph (orange points). Removing them made the graph quite good (remaining green points).
It was not a perfect correlation but Hammett had removed the examples where steric hindrance was important. Aliphatic compounds can adopt a variety of conformations (Chapter 18) and the substituent in some of them will interfere with the reaction. Similarly, in ortho-substituted aromatic compounds the nearby substituent might exert steric hindrance on the reaction. Only with meta- and para-substituted compounds was the substituent held out of the way, on a rigid framework, and in electronic communication with the reaction site through the flat but conjugated benzene ring. The diagrams show the para substituent.

Notice that the straight line is not perfect. This graph is an invention of the human mind. It is a correlation between things that are not directly related. If you determine a rate constant by plotting the right function of concentration against time and get an imperfect straight line, that is your fault because you haven’t done your measurements carefully enough. If you make a Hammett plot and the points are not on a straight line (and they won’t be) then that is not your fault. The points really don’t fit on a perfectly straight line. As you will see soon, this does not matter. We need to look at the Hammett correlation in more detail.

The Hammett substituent constant \( \sigma \)

A quick glance at the \( pK_a \)s of some substituted benzoic acids will show how well they correlate electron donation with \( pK_a \). The substituents at the top of the table are electron-donating and the anions of the benzoic acids are correspondingly less stable so these are the weakest acids. At the bottom of the table we have the electron-withdrawing groups, which stabilize the anion and

If you plot a graph to correlate the number of miles travelled by jumbo jet against the percentage of births outside of marriage over the twentieth century you will get a sort of straight line. This does not imply a direct causative link!
make the acid stronger. The whole range is not that great, only one pH unit or so, because the carboxylate anion is not conjugated with the ring.

Hammett decided not to use the $pK_a$ values themselves for his correlation but defined a new parameter, which he called $\sigma$. This $\sigma$ shows how electron-donating or -withdrawing a group is relative to H as a ratio of the $\log K_a$ or the difference of the $pK_a$ between the substituent and benzoic acid itself. If the acid required to determine $\sigma$ for a new substituent was not available, $\sigma$ could be determined by correlation with other reactions. Here are the equations and the table of $\sigma$ values for the most important substituents. A different value of $\sigma$ for any given substituent was needed for the meta and the para positions and these are called $\sigma_m$ and $\sigma_p$, respectively.

$$\sigma_X = \log \left( \frac{K_a(X-C_6H_4COOH)}{K_a(C_6H_5COOH)} \right) = pK_a(C_6H_5COOH) - pK_a(X-C_6H_4COOH)$$

You need a general idea as to what a $\sigma$ value means. If $\sigma = 0$ the substituent has no effect: it is electronically the same as H. If $\sigma$ is positive, the substituent is electron-withdrawing. This is unfortunate perhaps, but just remember that the comparison is with acid strength. Positive $\sigma$ means a stronger acid so the substituent is electron-withdrawing. The more positive the charge induced on the ring by a substituent, the larger its $\sigma$ value. Negative $\sigma$ means weaker acid and electron donation. Inductive effects from polarization of $\sigma$ bonds are greater for $\sigma_m$ than for $\sigma_p$ because the substituent is nearer.

Conjugation is generally more effective in the para position (see Chapter 22) so $\sigma_p > \sigma_m$ for conjugating substituents. Indeed, the NH$_2$ group has a large negative $\sigma_p$ and a zero $\sigma_m$. The NH$_2$ group donates electrons strongly to the carbonyl group of benzoic acid from the para position but does not conjugate in the meta position where its donation happens just to balance the effect of electron-negative nitrogen.

The OMe group has a negative $\sigma_p$ but a positive $\sigma_m$ because a weaker electron donation from the lone pairs is more important in the para position but the effect of very ele-
tronegative oxygen on the σ framework of the ring in the meta position is more important than lone pair donation that doesn’t reach the carbonyl group. You do not need to learn any σ values but you should be able to work out the sign of σ for well known substituents and estimate a rough value.

The Hammett reaction constant ρ

Now we can return to our reaction: the alkaline hydrolysis of various meta- and para-substituted ethyl benzoates. The rate constants for this second-order reaction have been measured and shown here is a graph of log \( \frac{k_X}{k_H} \) versus σ, where \( k_X \) is the rate constant for the reaction with the substituted benzoate and \( k_H \) is that for the unsubstituted reaction (X = H).

We can see straight away that there is a good correlation between how fast the reaction goes and the value of σ; in other words, the points lie more or less on a straight line. The gradient of this best fit line, given the symbol ρ (rho), tells us how sensitive the reaction is to substituent effects in comparison with the ionization of benzoic acids. The gradient is ρ = 2.6. This tells us that the reaction responds to substituent effects in the same way (because it is +) as the ionization of benzoic acids but by much more \( 10^{1.6} \) times more because it is 2.6 instead of 1.0. We already know what the mechanism of this reaction is.

The first step is quite like the ionization of benzoic acid. A negative charge is appearing on the carbonyl oxygen atom and that negative charge will be stabilized by electron-withdrawing X groups. Provided that the first step is rate-determining, a positive ρ is fine. We cannot say much as yet about the value as we are comparing a reaction rate (for the hydrolysis) with an equilibrium position (for the ionization). It will help you a great deal if you think of positive ρ values as meaning an increase in electron density near to or on the benzene ring. They may mean the appearance of a negative charge but they may not. We need now to look at some other reactions to get a grasp of the meaning of the value of the Hammett ρ.

- **The Hammett reaction constant ρ measures the sensitivity of the reaction to electronic effects.**
  - A positive ρ value means more electrons in the transition state than in the starting material
  - A negative ρ value means fewer electrons in the transition state than in the starting material

- **Getting to grips with logs**
  A difference between two values of \( x \) log units means the values actually differ by a factor of \( 10^x \). From the graph for the hydrolysis of ethyl benzoates we can see that the p-NO2 benzoate hydrolys some \( 10^2 \) times faster than the unsubstituted benzoate, while the p-NH2 benzoate hydrolys some \( 10^2 \) times slower.
Equilibria with positive Hammett $\rho$ values

We can compare these directly with the ionization of benzoic acids. If we simply move the carboxylic acid away from the ring, the $\rho$ value for ionization gets less. This is just the effect of a more distant substituent. When there are two saturated carbons between the benzene ring and the carboxylic acid, there is almost no effect. When we are using the aromatic ring as a probe for a reaction mechanism, it must be placed not too far away from the reaction centre. However, if we restore electronic communications with a double bond, $\rho$ goes back up again to a useful value.

If the negative charge on the anion can actually be delocalized round the ring, as with substituted phenols, we should expect the size of $\rho$ to increase. Both the phenol and the anion are delocalized but it is more important for the anion. The effect is larger for the ionization of anilinium salts as the acid ($\text{ArNH}_3^+$) does not have a delocalized lone pair but the conjugate base ($\text{ArNH}_2^-$) does.

Reactions with positive Hammett $\rho$ values

Any reaction that involves nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group as the rate-determining step is going to have a $\rho$ value of about 2–3, the same as for the hydrolysis of esters that we have already seen. Examples include the Wittig reaction of stabilized ylids (Chapters 14 and 31). Though there is some dispute over the exact mechanism of the Wittig reaction, the $\rho$ value of 2.7 strongly suggests that nucleophilic attack on the aldehyde by the ylid is involved with stabilized ylids and aromatic aldehydes at least. In addition, there is a small variation of rate with the aryl group on phosphorus: if $\text{Ar} = p$-$\text{MeOC}_6\text{H}_4$ the reaction goes about six times faster than if $\text{Ar} = p$-$\text{ClC}_6\text{H}_4$. These groups are a long way from the reaction site but electron donation would be expected to accelerate the donation of electrons from the ylid.
Large positive \( \rho \) values usually indicate extra electrons in the transition state delocalized into the ring itself. A classic example is nucleophilic aromatic substitution by the addition–elimination mechanism (Chapter 23). The \( \rho \) value is +4.9, but even this large value does not mean a complete anion on the benzene ring as the nitro group, present in all cases, takes most of the negative charge. The substituent \( X \) merely helps.

We get the full value when there are no nitro groups to take the brunt of the negative charge. This vinylic substitution (an unusual reaction!) has a \( \rho \) value of +9.0. It cannot be an \( S_N2 \) reaction or it would have a small \( \rho \) value and it cannot be an \( S_N1 \) reaction or it would have a negative \( \rho \) value (fewer electrons in the transition state). It must be an addition–elimination mechanism through a benzylic anion delocalized round both benzene rings.

Reactions with negative Hammett \( \rho \) values

Negative \( \rho \) values mean electrons flowing away from the ring. A useful example is the \( S_N2 \) displacement of iodide from EtI by phenoxide anions. This has a \( \rho \) value of exactly −1.0. Though the transition state has a negative charge, that charge is decreasing on the aromatic ring as the starting material approaches the transition state.

An \( S_N1 \) reaction on the carbon atom next to the ring has a large negative \( \rho \) value. In this example, a tertiary benzylic cation is the intermediate and the rate-determining step is, of course, the formation of the cation. The cation is next to the ring but delocalized round it and the \( \rho \) value is −4.5, about the same value, though negative, as that for the nucleophilic substitution on nitrobenzenes by the addition–elimination mechanism that we saw in the last section.
The largest negative $\rho$ values come from electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 22) where the electrons of the ring are used in the reaction leaving a positive charge on the ring itself in the intermediate. Some of this charge is already there in the transition state. Negative $\rho$ values mean electrons flowing out of the ring. This simple nitration has $\rho = -6.4$ and $\rho$ values for electrophilic aromatic substitution are usually in the range $-5$ to $-9$.

Reactions with small Hammett $\rho$ values

Small Hammett $\rho$ values arise in three ways. The aromatic ring being used as a probe for the mechanism may simply be too far away for the result to be significant. This trivial case of the alkaline hydrolysis of the 3-aryl propionate ester has a $\rho$ value of $+0.5$ and it is surprising that it is even that large.

The second case is the informative one where the reaction is not dependent on electrons flowing into or out of the ring. Pericyclic reactions are important examples and the Diels–Alder reaction of arylbutadienes with maleic anhydride shows a small negative $\rho$ value of $-0.6$. The small value is consistent with a mechanism not involving charge accumulation or dispersal but the sign is interesting.

We explained this type of Diels–Alder reaction in Chapter 35 by using the HOMO of the diene and the LUMO of the dienophile. The negative sign of $\rho$, small though it is, supports this view.

The third case is in many ways the most interesting. We have seen that the alkaline hydrolysis of ethyl esters of benzoic acids (ArCO$_2$Et) has a $\rho$ value of $+2.6$ and that this is a reasonable value for a reaction involving nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group conjugated with the aromatic ring. The hydrolysis of the same esters in acid solution, which also involves nucleophilic attack on the same carbonyl group, has a $\rho$ value of $+0.1$. In other words, all these esters hydrolyse at the same rate in acid solution. Neither of the previous explanations will do. We need to see the full mechanism to explain this remarkable result.

Steps 1, 3, and 5 cannot be slow as they are just proton transfers between oxygen atoms (Chapter 13). That leaves only steps 2 and 4 as possible rate-determining steps. The bimolecular addition of the weak nucleophile water to the low concentration of protonated ester (step 2) is the most attractive candidate, as step 4—the unimolecular loss of ethanol and re-formation of the carbonyl group—should be fast. What $\rho$ value would be expected for the reaction if step 2 were the rate-determining step? It would be made up of two parts. There would be an equilibrium $\rho$ value for the protonation and a reaction $\rho$ value for the addition of water. Step 1 involves electrons flowing out of the molecule and step 2 involves electrons flowing in so the $\rho$ values for these two steps would have opposite charges. We know that the $\rho$ value for step 2 would be about $+2.5$ and a value of about $-2.5$ for the equilibrium protonation is reasonable. This is indeed the explanation: step 2 is the rate-deter-
mining step and the \( \rho \) values for steps 1 and 2 almost cancel each other out. All steps before the rate-determining step are present in the rate equation and also affect the Hammett \( \rho \) value.

### The meaning of Hammett \( \rho \) values

This then is the full picture. You should not, of course, learn these numbers but you need an idea of roughly what each group of values means. You should see now why it is unimportant whether the Hammett correlation gives a good straight line or not. We just want to know whether \( \rho \) is + or – and whether it is, say, 3 or 6. It is meaningless to debate the significance of a \( \rho \) value of 3.4 as distinct from one of 3.8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( \rho )</th>
<th>-6</th>
<th>-5</th>
<th>-4</th>
<th>-3</th>
<th>-2</th>
<th>-1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>+1</th>
<th>+2</th>
<th>+3</th>
<th>+4</th>
<th>+5</th>
<th>+6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Large negative values</td>
<td>Large negative electrons flow out of TS positive charge near ring loss of conjugation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate negative values</td>
<td>Moderate negative electrons flow into TS and negative charge near ring loss of conjugation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small ( \rho ) values</td>
<td>1. Ar too far away 2. No electron change 3. Two ( \rho ) values cancel each other out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate positive values</td>
<td>Moderate positive electrons flow into TS negative charge near ring loss of conjugation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large positive values</td>
<td>Large positive negative charge on ring or delocalized round benzene ring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using the Hammett \( \rho \) values to discover mechanisms

Electrophilic attack on alkenes by bromine often goes through three-membered ring cyclic bromonium ions and we can sometimes tell that this is so by studying the stereochemistry. Here are two reactions of styrenes that look very similar—a reaction with bromine and one with PhSCl. With no further information, we might be tempted to assume that they both go by the same mechanism. However, the Hammett \( \rho \) values for the two reactions are rather different.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{SPh} & \quad \text{PhSCl} & \quad \text{Br}_2 \\
\quad & \quad & \quad & \quad \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{X}
\end{align*}
\]

\( \rho = -2.7 \)

\( \rho = -5.7 \)

The \( \rho \) value for bromination is definitely in the ‘large’ range and can only mean that a positive charge is formed that is delocalized round the benzene ring. Bromine evidently does not form a bromonium ion with these alkenes but prefers to form a secondary benzylic cation instead.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{Br} & \quad \text{Br} & \quad \text{Br} \\
\quad & \quad & \quad & \quad \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{X}
\end{align*}
\]

The sulfenylation, on the other hand, has a moderate negative \( \rho \) value. No cation is formed that is delocalized round the ring, but electrons flow out of the ring and we suspect some loss of conjugation. All this fits well with the formation of a three-membered ring intermediate. From experiments like this we learn that PhSCl is much more likely than bromine to react stereospecifically with alkenes through cyclic cation intermediates.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{Cl} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
\quad & \quad & \quad \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{X}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Cl} \\
\quad & \quad & \quad \\
\text{X} & \quad \text{X} & \quad \text{X}
\end{align*}
\]

### A complete picture of the transition state from Hammett plots

More information can be gained on the mechanism of the reaction if two separate experiments can be carried out with the mechanistic probe inserted at two different sites on the reagents. If we are studying a reaction between a nucleophile and an electrophile, it may be possible to make Hammett plots from the variation of substituents on both reagents. The acylation of amines with acid chlorides is an example.
If we vary the structure of the acid chloride we get a \( \rho \) value of +1.2, suitable for nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group. If we vary the amine we get a \( \rho \) value of –3.2, again suitable for electrons that were conjugated round the ring moving away to form a new bond. The simple answer is correct but the rate depends on the nucleophilicity of the amine 100 times more than on the electrophilicity of the acid chloride.

Nonlinear Hammett plots

If we look at the hydrolysis of the acid chlorides of benzoic acids in aqueous acetone, we see a very odd Hammett plot indeed. You know that Hammett plots need not be perfectly linear but this one is clearly made up of two intersecting straight lines. This might look like disaster at first but, in fact, it gives us extra information. The right-hand part of the curve, for the more electron-withdrawing substituents, has a slope of +2.5: just what we should expect for rate-determining attack of water on the carbonyl group. As we go to less electron-withdrawing substituents, the rate of the reaction suddenly starts to increase as we pass the para-chloro compound and the left-hand part of the curve has a slope of –4.4.
What can this mean? If the reaction becomes faster as we pass the discontinuity in the curve—and it gets faster whether we go from right to left or left to right—there must be a change in mechanism. If there is a choice between two mechanisms, the faster of the two will operate. Mechanism 1 is the rate-determining nucleophilic attack by water on the carbonyl group.

The new mechanism goes faster for more electron-donating substituents and has quite a large negative \( \rho \) value suggesting the formation of a cation in the rate-determining step. This mechanism (mechanism 2) must surely be the \( \text{S}_\text{N}1 \)-like process of preliminary formation of an acylium ion by loss of chloride ion.

When the Hammett plot bends the other way, so that the rate of the reaction decreases as it passes the discontinuity, we have a single mechanism with a change in rate-determining step. A reaction goes by the fastest possible mechanism but its rate is limited by the slowest of the steps in that mechanism. An example is the intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation of a diphenyl derivative where the alkylating agent is a diarylmethanol attached to one of the benzene rings in the \textit{ortho} position.

The carbocation intermediate in the Friedel–Crafts reaction (Chapter 22) is rather stable, being tertiary and benzylic, and the formation of the cation, normally the rate-determining step, with inevitably a negative \( \rho \) value, goes faster and faster as the electron-donating power of the substituents increases until it is faster than the cyclization which becomes the rate-determining step. The cyclization puts electrons back into the carbocation and has a positive \( \rho \) value. As the two steps have more or less the reverse electron flow to and from the same carbon atom, it is reasonable for the size of \( \rho \) to be about the same but of opposite sign.
We shall see more examples of Hammett $\rho$ values used in conjunction with other evidence as the chapter develops but now it is time to look at what other evidence is available.

**Other kinetic evidence**

**The kinetic deuterium isotope effect**

The kinetic isotope effect was introduced in Chapter 19. If a bond to deuterium is formed or broken in the rate-determining step of a reaction, the deuterated compound will react more slowly, usually by a factor of about 2–7. This effect is particularly valuable when C–H bonds are being formed or broken. In Chapter 22 we told you that the rate-determining step in the nitration of benzene was the attack of the electrophile on the benzene ring. This is easily verified by replacing the hydrogen atoms round the benzene ring with deuteriums. The rate of the reaction stays the same.

If the second step, which does involve the breaking of a C–H bond, were the rate-determining step it would go more slowly if the H were replaced by D. In this case the deuterium isotope effect is $k_H/k_D = 1.0$. If the reaction is the iodination of phenol in basic solution, there is a deuterium isotope effect of $k_H/k_D = 4.1$. Clearly, the other step must now be the rate-determining step—the phenolate ion reacts so rapidly that the first step is faster than the second.

The deuterium isotope effect can add to the information from Hammett plots in building up a picture of a transition state. Three separate Hammett $\rho$ values can be measured for this elimination reaction and this information is very valuable. But it would be sadly incomplete without the information that a large deuterium isotope effect $k_H/k_D = 7.1$ is observed for the hydrogen atom under attack.

A reaction occurs by the faster of two possible mechanisms but by the slower of two possible rate-determining steps.
In this E2 reaction, it is no surprise that the base (ArO−) donates electrons and the leaving group (ArO3−) accepts them. But the large deuterium isotope effect and moderate positive ρ(Y) value for an aromatic ring that might have done nothing suggest some build-up of negative charge in the transition state on that carbon atom as well as on the two oxygen atoms.

Entropy of activation

Of all the enthalpies and entropies that we introduced in Chapter 13, the entropy of activation, ΔS‡, is by far the most useful. It tells us about the increase or decrease in order in a reaction as the starting material goes to the transition state. A positive ΔS‡ means an increase in entropy or a decrease in order and a negative ΔS‡ means an increase in order. Normally, unimolecular reactions in which one molecule gives two products have a positive ΔS‡ and bimolecular reactions have a negative ΔS‡. Fragmentations (Chapter 38) such as this decarboxylation in which one molecule fragments to three have positive ΔS‡s. It has ΔS‡ = +36.8 J mol⁻¹ K⁻¹.

At the other extreme are cycloadditions (Chapter 35) such as the Diels–Alder reaction we examined a few pages back. Not only do two reagents become one product but a very precise orientation is required in the transition state usually meaning a large negative ΔS‡. Diels–Alder reactions usually have ΔS‡ of about −120 to −160 J mol⁻¹ K⁻¹. The classic cyclopentadiene addition to maleic anhydride has ΔS‡ = −144 J mol⁻¹ K⁻¹.

These numbers give you the range of entropies of activation you may expect to find. Large negative numbers are common but only small positive numbers are found. The largest negative numbers apply to bimolecular reactions where neither reagent is in great excess. Smaller negative numbers may mean a bimolecular reaction with solvent or some other reagent in large excess. The acid-catalysed opening of styrene oxides in methanol is a good example.
The Hammett \( \rho \) value of –4.1 suggests a carbocation intermediate as does the regioselectivity of the reaction (MeOH attacks the benzylic position) but the stereochemistry (the reaction occurs with inversion) and a modest negative entropy of activation \( (\Delta S^\ddagger = -48 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}) \) suggest rather an \( \text{S}_{\text{N}}2 \) reaction with a loose transition state having substantial positive charge at the benzylic carbon. Neither piece of evidence alone would be enough to define the mechanism.

This example with its acid catalyst brings us to the subject of catalysis. We must now analyse the different sorts of acid and base catalysis and see how the mechanisms can be distinguished using the methods we have discussed.

**Acid and base catalysis**

Acids and bases provide the best known ways of speeding up reactions. If you want to make an ester—add some acid. If you want to hydrolyse an ester—add some base. It may all seem rather simple. However, there are actually two kinds of acid catalysis and two kinds of base catalysis and this section is intended to explain the difference in concept and how to discover which operates. When we talk about acid catalysis we normally mean **specific acid catalysis**. This is the kind we have just seen—epoxides don’t react with methanol but, if we protonate the epoxide first, then it reacts. Specific acid catalysis protonates electrophiles and makes them more electrophilic.

**specific acid catalysis**

We could, on the other hand, have argued that methanol is not a good enough nucleophile but if deprotonated with a base it becomes the much more nucleophilic methoxide. This is **specific base catalysis**.

**specific base catalysis**

We shall discuss these two types first because they are straightforward. You need to recognize their characteristics, their strengths, and their weaknesses. We hope you will get into the habit of recognizing these types of catalysis so that you hardly have to think about it—it should become second nature.

**Specific acid catalysis**

Specific acid catalysis (SAC) involves a rapid protonation of the compound followed by the slow step, which is accelerated in comparison with the uncatalysed reaction because of the greater reactivity of the protonated compound. You have just seen an example with an epoxide. Ester hydrolysis (or formation) is another. Water attacks esters very slowly: it attacks protonated esters much more quickly. This is just the ordinary mechanism for acid-catalysed ester hydrolysis (or formation) given in Chapter 12.
A more interesting reaction is the dienone–phenol rearrangement (Chapter 37). Rearrangement in the absence of acid is very slow but, once the ketone oxygen is protonated, it occurs very rapidly. Again we have fast equilibrium protonation followed by a rate-determining step involving a reaction of the protonated species and again this is the ordinary mechanism that you now know to call SAC. This catalysis depends only on the protonating power of the solution. The compound must be protonated to react so the catalyst must be a strong enough acid to do the job. It is not necessary that every molecule is protonated, just enough to set the reaction going as the acid is regenerated at the end. So the (log of the) rate of the reaction is inversely proportional to the pH of the solution and significant only in the region of, and of course below, the \( pK_a \) of the substrate.

There is one special experimental indication of this mechanism. If the reaction is carried out in a deuterated solvent (D\(_2\)O instead of H\(_2\)O) the rate of the reaction increases. This is a solvent isotope effect rather than a kinetic isotope effect and needs some explanation. If you examine the three examples of SAC in the previous pages you will see that they share these characteristics: a fast proton exchange is followed by a rate-determining step that does not involve the making or breaking of any bonds to hydrogen. In general terms:

The rate of the reaction is the rate of the rate-determining step: rate = \( k[XH^+] \). The concentration of the intermediate \([XH^+]\) is related to the pH and to the concentration of the substrate by the equilibrium constant, \( K \), of the protonation. So we have: rate = \( kK[H^+][X] \). We know that \( k \) does not change when hydrogen is replaced by deuterium so \( K \) must increase in D\(_2\)O.

You will sometimes see in books the statement that D\(_3\)O\(^+\) is a stronger acid than H\(_3\)O\(^+\). This is partly true. The full truth is that D\(_3\)O\(^+\) in D\(_2\)O is a stronger acid than H\(_3\)O\(^+\) in H\(_2\)O. Water (H\(_2\)O) is a better solvating agent for H\(_3\)O\(^+\) than D\(_3\)O\(^+\), simply because it forms stronger hydrogen bonds due to the greater O–H vibration frequency. So D\(_3\)O\(^+\) in D\(_2\)O is less well solvated than H\(_3\)O\(^+\) in H\(_2\)O and is a stronger acid. You need an example.

The Z-allylic alcohol below dehydrates in acid solution to the E-diene. We have lots of data on this mechanism, all summarized in the diagrams. You may like to note as well that the product contains no deuterium after dehydration in D\(_2\)O.

\[
\rho = -6.0 \quad \Delta S = +24 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1}
\]

The Hammett \( \rho \) value of –6.0 suggests a carbocation intermediate and the positive entropy of activation suggests a rate-determining step in which disorder increases, perhaps one molecule breaking into two. The inverse solvent deuterium isotope effect (faster reaction in D\(_2\)O than in H\(_2\)O) strongly suggests SAC. Putting all this together we have a mechanism—a simple example of SAC with no protonation at carbon.

\[
\frac{k(H_2O)}{k(D_2O)} = \frac{1.0}{2.5}
\]
One more thing about this example. The rate-determining step is the second step so the other data, the Hammett $\rho$ value and the entropy of activation, also refer to the combination of $K$ and $k$. The equilibrium $\rho$ value for the protonation will be fairly small and negative as a positive charge is being created some way from the benzene ring. The kinetic $\rho$ value for the loss of water will be large and negative because a positive charge is being created that is delocalized into the ring. A combined value of $-6$ looks fine. The equilibrium entropy $\Delta S^0$ for the protonation will probably be small and negative as $\text{ROH} + \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ \rightleftharpoons \text{ROH}_2^+ + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ represents little change in order (two molecules going to two) and the $\Delta S^f$ for the loss of water will be large and positive (one molecule going to two) so a small positive value is about right. It doesn’t do to interpret these numbers too closely.

### Summary of features of specific acid catalysis

1. Only $\text{H}_3\text{O}^+$ is an effective catalyst; pH alone matters
2. Usually means rate-determining reaction of protonated species
3. Effective only at pHs near or below the $pK_a$ of the substrate
4. Proton transfer is not involved in the rate-determining step
5. Only simple unimolecular and bimolecular steps—moderate $+\Delta S^f$
6. Inverse solvent isotope effect $k(\text{H}_2\text{O}) < k(\text{D}_2\text{O})$

#### Specific base catalysis

The other side of the coin is specific base catalysis (SBC) which usually involves the removal of a proton from the substrate in a fast pre-equilibrium step followed by a rate-determining reaction of the anion. Most of the base-catalysed reactions you are familiar with work by SBC. Examples include opening of epoxides with thiols.

The rate of the reaction depends on the pH of the solution. If it is around or higher than the $pK_a$ of the thiol, thiolate anion will be formed and this opens the epoxide much faster than does the unionized thiol. The nucleophile is regenerated by the oxyanion produced in the rate-determining step. A more familiar example is the base-catalysed hydrolysis of esters we have mentioned several times in this chapter. The full pH–rate profile (Chapter 13) for the hydrolysis of a simple ester such as ethyl acetate shows just two straight lines meeting each other (and zero rate) at about neutrality. Ethyl acetate hydrolysis occurs by SAC or SBC only.
Removal of a proton from heteroatoms by heteroatom bases is always a fast step but removal of a proton from carbon can be the rate-determining step. A remarkably large inverse solvent deuterium isotope effect was found with this elimination of a tertiary amine in basic solution.

The detailed mechanism cannot, of course, be E2 or the isotope effect, if any, would be the other way round. If it is SBC, the mechanism then becomes the well-known E1cB (Chapter 19) having a carbanion as intermediate.

But 1/7.7 is too large to be a solvent isotope effect and looks much more like a normal kinetic isotope effect. And so it is. The tertiary amine is not a very good leaving group in spite of its positive charge (pK_aH about 10) so the carbanion mostly reverts to starting materials. The isotope effect is a kinetic isotope effect on this reverse step—the protonation of the carbanion. This reaction involves a proton transfer from H_2O or D_2O and will be much faster (could be 7.7 times) in H_2O by the ordinary kinetic isotope effect. The elimination reaction goes faster in D_2O because the back reaction goes more slowly and more of the carbanion goes on to product.

**Summary of features of specific base catalysis**

1. Only HO^- is an effective catalyst; pH alone matters
2. Usually means rate-determining reaction of deprotonated species
3. Effective only at pHs near or above the pK_a of the substrate
4. Proton transfer is not involved in the rate-determining step, unless C–H bonds are involved
5. Only simple unimolecular and bimolecular steps—moderate + or −ΔS^‡
6. Inverse solvent isotope effect k(H_2O) < k(D_2O)

**General acid/base catalysis**

The other kind of acid/base catalysis is called ‘general’ rather than ‘specific’ and abbreviated GAC or GBC. As the name implies this kind of catalysis depends not only on pH but also on the concentration of undissociated acids and bases other than hydroxide ion. It is a milder kind of catalysis and is used in living things. The proton transfer is not complete before the rate-determining step but occurs during it. A simple example is the catalysis by acetate ion of the formation of esters from alcohols and acetic anhydride.

**Microscopic reversibility**

There is only one least-energy pathway between two interconverting compounds such as the starting material and the intermediate here. Every microscopic detail of the back reaction is exactly the same as that for the forward reaction. This is the principle of microscopic reversibility. Here we use evidence from the back reaction (slow proton transfer from water to the carbanion) to tell us about the forward reaction. This principle will be useful in Chapter 42.
How can this catalysis work? At first sight there seems to be no mechanism available. Acetate cannot act as a specific base—it is far too weak (pK_a 4.7) to remove a proton from an alcohol (pK_a about 15). If it acted as a nucleophile (Chapters 12 and 13) there would be no catalysis as nucleophilic attack on acetic anhydride would be a nonreaction simply regenerating starting materials. The only thing it can do is to remove the proton from the alcohol as the reaction occurs.

You will see at once that there is a great disadvantage in this mechanism: the rate-determining step is termolecular and this is really termolecular—three molecules colliding—and not just some mathematical kinetic trick. This comes out most clearly in the entropy of activation which is an enormous negative value, around $\Delta S^\ddagger = -168 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$ for this reaction. There will also be a normal kinetic isotope effect for ROD against ROH as a bond to hydrogen is being formed and broken in the rate-determining step: it is $k_H/k_D = 2.4$ here. These GBC or GAC reactions are normally effective only if one of the three molecules is present in large excess—this reaction might be done in ROH as a solvent, for example, so that ROH is always present. In understanding how this GBC works it is helpful to look at the mechanism without catalysis.

The acetate catalyst cannot remove a proton from the starting material but it can easily remove a proton from the intermediate, which has a complete positive charge on the alcohol oxygen atom. The starting material has a pK_a above the pK_aH of acetate but the product has a pK_a well below it. Somewhere in the middle of the rate-determining step, the pK_a of the ROH proton passes through the pK_aH of acetate and then acetate is a strong enough base to remove it. The GBC is effectively deprotonating the transition state.

So how do we find GAC or GBC? Normally, general species catalysis is a weak addition to specific catalysis. We must remove that more powerful style of catalysis by working at a specific pH because SAC or SBC depends on pH alone. If we find that the rate of the reaction changes with the concentration of a weak base at constant pH, we have GBC. Note that, if the proton transfer is between heteroatoms, as in this example, some other bond-making or bond-breaking steps must be happening too as proton transfer between heteroatoms is always a fast process. Proton transfer to or from carbon can be slow.

The formation of three- and five-membered cyclic ethers shows the contrast between GBC and SBC. The formation of epoxides is straightforward SBC with a simple linear dependence on pH between pH 8 and 12 and no acceleration at constant pH by carbonate (CO$_3^{2-}$) ions. There is an
inverse solvent isotope effect and an aryl substituent at the electrophilic carbon atom gives the small positive $p$ value expected for $S_N2$ with an anion.

Formation of tetrahydrofuran (THF) is also faster at higher pH but, by contrast, is also accelerated by various bases at constant pH. If anions of phenols (ArO$^-$) are used as catalysts, a Hammett $p$ value of +0.8 shows that electrons are flowing away from the aromatic ring. There is a small normal kinetic isotope effect $k_H/k_D = 1.4$. There is SBC and GBC in this reaction. Here is the mechanism with ArO$^-$ as GBC.

Why are the two different? The THF is easy to form, the transition state is unstrained, and only a little help is needed to make the reaction go. The epoxide is very strained indeed and the starting material needs to be raised in energy before cyclization will occur. Only the most powerful catalysis is good enough.

**Summary of features of general base catalysis**

1. Any base is an effective catalyst; pH also matters
2. Proton transfer is involved in the rate-determining step
3. Effective at neutral pHs even if below the $pK_a$ of the substrate
4. Catalyst often much too weak a base to deprotonate reagent
5. Catalyst removes proton, which is becoming more acidic in the rate-determining step
6. Some other bond-making or bond-breaking also involved unless proton is on carbon
7. Often termolecular rate-determining step: large $-\Delta S^\ddag$
8. Normal kinetic isotope effect $k(H) > k(D)$

**General acid catalysis**

We have already discussed this in general terms so a couple of examples will be enough. First, the termolecular problem can be avoided if the reaction is intramolecular. The catalysis is then bimolecular as in the cyclization of this hydroxy-acid. Normally, ester formation and hydrolysis are specific-acid-catalysed only but here there is catalysis by acetic acid; $k(\text{HOAc})/k(\text{DOAc})$ is 2.3 showing that proton transfer occurs in the rate-determining step and there is a large negative $\Delta S^\ddag = -156$ J mol$^{-1}$ K$^{-1}$. This is general acid catalysis of nucleophilic attack on a carbonyl group, admittedly in a special molecule.
Earlier in the book (Chapter 14) we emphasized the importance of the mechanism for the formation and hydrolysis of acetals. These are SAC reactions: alcohols are bad leaving groups and usually need to be fully protonated by strong acids before they will go, even with the help of a lone pair on another oxygen atom.

**Specific acid-catalysed acetal hydrolysis**

If we speed up the slow step by adding to the molecule some feature that stabilizes the cation intermediate, general acid catalysis may be found. One example is the aromatic cation formed in the hydrolysis of cycloheptatrienone acetals. The normal kinetic isotope effect proclaims GAC.

**General acid-catalysed acetal hydrolysis**

Even adding one extra alkoxy group so that we have an orthoester instead of an acetal is enough. These compounds show catalysis with a variety of weak acids at not very acidic pHs (5–6). As one OMe group is protonated, two others are pushing it out and they both help to stabilize the intermediate cation. Nature prefers these milder methods of catalysis as we will see in Chapter 50.

**General acid-catalysed orthoester hydrolysis**

For another contrast between SAC and GAC we need only refer you back to the two Z/E isomerizations earlier in the chapter. Isomerization of the diene is GAC—protonation at carbon is the slow step—and isomerization of the allylic alcohol is SAC. What we didn’t tell you earlier was that the GAC reaction has a normal kinetic isotope effect of \( k(H)/k(D) = 2.5 \) and a negative entropy of activation \( \Delta S^\ddagger = -36 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1} \)—just what we should expect for a bimolecular reaction involving rate-determining proton transfer from oxygen to carbon. Notice that the intermediate cation is the same whichever the route; only the ways of getting there, including the rate-determining steps, are different.

**Specific acid catalysis**

These examples show you that general acid catalysis is possible with strong acids, especially when protonation is at carbon and that, when protonation is at carbon, no other bond-making or -breaking steps need be involved.
The detection of intermediates

In earlier chapters we revealed how some reactive intermediates can be prepared, usually under special conditions rather different from those of the reaction under study, as a reassurance that some of these unlikely looking species can have real existence. Intermediates of this kind include the carbocation in the $S_N1$ reaction (Chapter 17), the cations and anions in electrophilic (Chapter 22) and nucleophilic (Chapter 23) aromatic substitutions, and the enols and enolates in various reactions of carbonyl compounds (Chapters 21 and 26–29). We have also used labelling in this chapter to show that symmetrical intermediates are probably involved in, for example, nucleophilic aromatic substitution with a benzene intermediate (Chapter 23).

We have hedged this evidence around with caution since the fact that an intermediate can be prepared does not by any means prove that it is involved in a reaction mechanism. In this section we are going to consider other and better evidence for intermediates and at the same time revise some of the earlier material.

Trapping reactions

A more impressive piece of evidence is the design of a molecule that has built into it a functional group that could react with the intermediate in a predictable way but could not reasonably react with other species that might be present. For example, aromatic ethers react with nitrating agents in the ortho or para positions (Chapter 22). The intermediate has a positive charge delocalized over three of the carbon atoms in the benzene ring. If a nucleophilic group is built into the structure in the right way, it might trap this intermediate and stop it reacting further.
The trapping group is the amide and it has trapped a cation formed by addition of \(\text{NO}_2^+\) to the aromatic ring. We are faced with the problem of drawing a mechanism for the formation of this remarkable compound and, when we discover that a necessary intermediate is also an intermediate in our preferred mechanism for aromatic nitration, we feel more confident about that mechanism.

This mechanism explains everything including the stereochemistry. The \(\text{NO}_2^+\) attacks the aromatic ring \textit{para} to the OMe group and on the opposite side to the amide. The amide is now in the perfect position to capture the cation at the \textit{meta} position and, because the tether is short, it must form a \textit{cis} bridge.

To be convincing, evidence for an intermediate should include:

- detection of the intermediate in the reaction mixture, perhaps by a trapping reaction
- a demonstration that the intermediate gives the product when added to the reaction mixture (this also means that it must be prepared as an at least reasonably stable compound)
- kinetic evidence that the rate of formation and rate of disappearance are adequate
- other suitable evidence of the kind that we have been discussing in this chapter

A neat intramolecular trap for benzyne works in this way. A standard benzyne-generating reaction—the diazotization of an \textit{ortho}-amino benzoic acid (Chapter 23) gives a zwitterion that loses nitrogen and CO\(_2\) to release the benzyne. A furan tethered to the next \textit{ortho} position traps the benzyne in an intramolecular Diels–Alder reaction. The yield is impressive and the trap is very efficient.

The argument is that this reaction cannot really be explained without a benzyne intermediate. This same method of making benzyne is used on other \textit{o}-amino benzoic acids and so they presumably create benzynes too.
A collection of reactions linked by a common intermediate

Particularly convincing evidence can develop when a number of chemists suggest the same intermediate for a number of different reactions and show that it is possible to trap the intermediate from one reaction, put it into the others, and get the normal products. We are going to describe one set of such related reactions. In Chapter 37 we suggested a mechanism for the Favorskii rearrangement involving a series of remarkable intermediates. Here is an example.

A quick summary of the evidence on this particular example. If the reaction is run in MeOD instead of MeOH, the starting material becomes deuterated at the site of enolate formation suggesting that this is a fast and reversible step. The entropy of activation for the reaction is $\Delta S^\ddagger = +64 \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1}$, suggesting that the slow step is one molecule breaking into two. There is only one such step—the second, ionization step. If various substituted phenyl groups are used, the Hammett $\rho$ value is $-5$. This large negative value also suggests that the ionization is the slow step as the cation is delocalized into the benzene ring.

So there is some evidence for the first intermediate—the exchange of deuterium from the solvent. The formation of the enolate can even become the rate-determining step! If we merely add an extra methyl group to the chloroketone the reaction becomes 220 times faster and the rate-determining step changes. There is no longer any exchange of deuterium from the solvent and the Hammett $\rho$ value changes from $-5$ to $+1.4$. This small positive value, showing some modest increase in electron density near the ring, matches typical known $\rho$ values for enolate formation.

However, we are not surprised that an enolate ion is formed from a ketone in basic solution. The oxyallyl cation is much more surprising. How can we be convinced that it really is an intermediate? There are several alternative ways to make the same intermediate. If basic nucleophiles such as the methoxide ion are avoided and reaction of zinc with an $\alpha,\alpha'$-dibromoketone in a nonnucleophilic solvent like diglyme is used instead, the oxyallyl cation can be trapped in a Diels–Alder reaction. This is the basis for a good synthesis of seven-membered rings.
But does the oxyallyl cation go on to give cyclopropanones? In fact, there is good evidence that the two are in equilibrium. If the same method is used to create the diphenyl oxyallyl cation in methanol instead of in diglyme, the normal Favorskii product is produced. Evidently, methoxide is needed only to produce the enolate—methanol is enough to decompose the cyclopropanone.

If a suitable (1,3-di-t-butyl) allene is epoxidized with m-CPBA the unstable allene oxide can actually be isolated. On heating, this epoxide gives a stable trans-di-t-butylcyclopropanone. It is very difficult to see how this reaction could happen except via the oxyallyl cation intermediate.

But is the same cyclopropanone an intermediate in the Favorskii reaction? If the bromoketone is treated with methoxide in methanol, it gives the Favorskii product but, if it is treated with a much more hindered base, such as the potassium phenoxide shown, it gives the same cyclopropanone with the same stereochemistry.

Other, less stable cyclopropanones, such as the 2,2-dimethyl compound, can be made by carbene addition (Chapter 40) to ketenes. This compound did the Favorskii reaction with methoxide in methanol: the only product came from the expected loss of the less unstable carbanion. This will, of course, be general-acid-catalysed by methanol as no free carbanion can be released into an alcoholic solvent.

The same cyclopropanone gives a cycloadduct with furans—this must surely be a reaction of the oxyallyl cation and we can conclude that the three isomeric reactive intermediates (allene oxide, cyclopropanone, and oxyallyl cation) are all in equilibrium and give whichever product is appropriate for the conditions.
Though it is never possible to prove a mechanism, this interlocking network of intermediates, all known to be formed under the reaction conditions, all being trapped in various ways, and all known to give the products, is very convincing. If any part of the mechanism were not correct, that would throw doubt on all the other reactions as well. Nevertheless, this mechanism is not accepted by all chemists.

**Stereochemistry and mechanism**

This chapter ends with a survey of the role of stereochemistry in the determination of mechanism. Though we have left stereochemistry to the last, it is one of the most important tools in unravelling complex mechanisms. You have already seen how inversion of configuration is a vital piece of evidence for an $S_N2$ mechanism (Chapter 17) while retention of configuration is the best evidence for participation (Chapter 37). You have seen the array of stereochemical evidence for pericyclic mechanisms (Chapters 35 and 36). The chapters devoted to diastereoselectivity (33 and 34) give many examples where the mechanism follows from the stereochemistry. We shall not go over that material again, but summarize the types of evidence with new examples. The first example looks too trivial to mention.

![Reaction Scheme](image)

Though this reaction looks like a simple $S_N2$ displacement by the naphthyloxide anion on the primary alkyl chloride, there is, in fact, a reasonable alternative—the opening of the epoxide at the less hindered primary centre followed by closure of the epoxide the other way round. The electrophile is called 'epichlorohydrin' and has two reasonable sites for nucleophilic attack.

![Mechanism Diagram](image)

It looks difficult to tell these mechanisms apart since both involve the same kind of reaction. Stereochemistry is the answer. If enantiomerically pure epichlorohydrin is used, the two mechanisms give different enantiomers of the product. Though each $S_N2$ reaction takes place at a primary centre and the stereogenic centre remains the same, from the diagrams the two products are obviously enantiomers.

![Extended Mechanism](image)

Finding out the mechanism of this process is not idle curiosity as a group of drugs used to combat high blood pressure and heart disease, such as propranolol, are made from epichlorohydrin and it is essential to know which enantiomer to use to get the right enantiomer of the drug. In fact, the more extended mechanism shown in black is correct. This is an example of determination of mechanism by using enantiomers.

![Propranolol Synthesis](image)

A more complicated example arises from the strange reactions used to make malic acid from chloral and ketene. An initial [2 + 2] cycloadition (Chapter 35) is followed by acid treatment and then treatment with an excess of aqueous NaOH. Neutralization gives malic acid, an acid found naturally in apples (*Malus* spp.).
The mechanism of this reaction also looks straightforward: normal ester hydrolysis followed by hydrolysis of the CCl₃ group to CO₂H. Caution suggests investigation, particularly as four-membered lactones sometimes hydrolyse by S_N2 displacement at the saturated ester carbon rather than by attack on the carbonyl group, like the three-membered lactones discussed in Chapter 37 (p. 000). The solution was urgently needed when it was found that enantiomerically pure lactone could be prepared by asymmetric synthesis (Chapter 45). The sequence was repeated with enantiomerically pure lactone: lactone hydrolysis occurred with retention of configuration and must be normal ester hydrolysis by attack of water at the carbonyl group. But the hydrolysis of the CCl₃ group occurred with inversion of configuration.

The answer must be a mechanism related to the one we have just seen for epichlorohydrin. Attack by hydroxide on CCl₃ is almost unknown and it is much more likely that intramolecular attack by alkoxide to give an epoxide should occur. The carboxylate anion can then invert the stereogenic centre by intramolecular S_N2 displacement at the central carbon atom. Notice that the tether ensures attack at the central atom. The second four-membered lactone also hydrolyses by attack at the carbonyl group.

The Ritter reaction and the Beckmann fragmentation

Another collection of related intermediates occurs in the Ritter reaction and the Beckmann fragmentation. The Ritter reaction involves the combination of a tertiary alcohol and a nitrile in acid solution and the proposed mechanism involves a series of intermediates.

The Beckmann fragmentation also occurs in acid solution upon the fragmentation of an oxime with a tertiary alkyl group anti to the OH of the oxime. The fragmentation step gives the same cation and the same nitrile together with a molecule of water and these three combine in the same way to give the same amide. We need evidence that the carbocation and the nitrilium ion are genuine intermediates and that the same sequence is found in both reactions.

Evidence that the two reactions are intimately related comes from the formation of the same amide from two different starting materials: a tertiary alcohol and an oxime, both based on the
decalin skeleton. The oxime has its OH group anti to the ring junction to minimize steric hindrance as oxime formation is under thermodynamic control (Chapter 14).

The experiments also provide stereochemical evidence that a carbocation is an intermediate in both reactions. Both starting materials are cis-decalins but the product is a trans-decalin. The carbocation intermediate has no stereochemistry and can react with the nitrile from either face. Axial attack is preferred and it gives the stable trans-decalin. The formation of the carbocation is shown only by the Beckmann fragmentation: formation from the alcohol by the S_N1 mechanism is obvious.

Trapping the carbocation is also possible. The Beckmann fragmentation on this oxime of an aryl seven-membered ring ketone gives a tertiary carbocation that might be expected to cyclize to give an amide. However, this reaction would give an unfavourable eight-membered ring (see Chapter 42) and does not happen. Instead, the chain twists round the other way and forms a much more stable six-membered ring by intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation. Note that the regioselectivity is meta to CN and ortho to alkyl. These are both favourable but the main factor is the C_4 tether making any other product impossible.

In the Ritter reaction a rather different kind of evidence for the cation is the fact that families of isomeric alcohols all give the same product. In all these cases, rearrangements of the first formed carboxication (Chapter 37) can easily account for the products. Another example in the decalin series is this Ritter reaction with KCN as the nitrile in acidic solution so that HCN is the reagent. The starting material is a spirocyclic tertiary alcohol but the product is a trans-decalin formed by rearrangement.

Trapping the nitrilium cation is also possible. The most famous example is probably the heterocycle (an oxazine, Chapter 42) produced by intramolecular capture of the nitrilium ion with a hydrox-
yl group. Note that the tertiary alcohol reacts to give the cation while the secondary alcohol acts as the nucleophilic trap.

An important example in which the diastereoisomer produced was critical in determining the mechanism is the synthesis of cis-aminoindanol, a part of Merck’s anti-HIV drug Crixivan (indinavir). The reaction involves treatment of indene epoxide with acetonitrile (MeCN) in acidic solution. The product is a cis fused heterocycle. It is easy to see which atoms have come from the nitrile (green) but the substitution of nitrogen for oxygen at one end of the epoxide has occurred with retention of configuration as the cis-epoxide has given the cis product. Clearly, we have some sort of Ritter reaction and the nitrilium ion has been trapped with an OH group.

What about the regioselectivity? The obvious explanation is that a cation is formed from the epoxide in a specific acid-catalysed ring opening. But why should the nitrile attack the bottom face of the cation? We should expect it to attack the top face preferentially as the hydroxyl group partly blocks the bottom face.

A reasonable mechanism is that in which the nitrile adds reversibly to the cation. Every time it adds to the top face, it drops off again as the OH group cannot reach it to form the heterocycle. Every time it adds to the bottom face, it is quickly captured by the OH group because 5/5 fused rings are favourable when the ring junction is cis. Eventually, all the compound is converted to the heterocycle.

Again, the mechanism of this reaction is of great importance because it is the foundation stone of the synthesis of Crixivan—a drug that is saving thousands of lives. These last examples are of reactions that you would find difficult to classify into any of the familiar types we have met so far in the book. Nevertheless, the organic chemist needs to be able to propose mechanisms for new reactions and to have a general idea of the methods available to test these proposals.
Summary of methods for the investigation of mechanism

This brief summary is for guidance only and the figures quoted are approximate ranges only. The full text above should be used for detail. All methods would not be used in one investigation.

1. Make sure of the structure of the product
   - Basic structure (Chapters 4 and 11) and stereochemistry (Chapter 32) by spectroscopic methods
   - Detail of fate of individual atoms by labelling with D, 13C, and 18O. Double labelling may help
   - Stereochemical course of the reaction (enantio- or diastereoselectivity) may be critical

2. Kinetic methods
   - Rate equation gives composition of main transition state
   - Deuterium isotope effect: $k_H > k_D$ shows bond to H formed and/or broken in transition state. Values $k_H/k_D$ 2–7 typical
   - Entropy of activation shows increase ($\Delta S^\ddagger$ positive) or decrease ($\Delta S^\ddagger$ negative) in disorder. Typical values and deductions:
     - $\Delta S^\ddagger$ positive (rarely larger than +50 J mol$^{-1}$ K$^{-1}$): one molecule breaks into two or three
     - Moderate negative values: no change in number of molecules (one goes to one etc.) or bimolecular reaction with solvent
     - Large negative values: two molecules go to one or unimolecular reaction with ordered TS$^\ddagger$ (cycloaddition, etc.)

3. Correlation of structure and reactivity
   - Replace one group by another of similar size but different electronic demand (CF$_3$ for CH$_3$ or OMe for CH$_3$)
   - Systematic Hammett $\sigma/\rho$ correlation with $m$- and $p$-substituted benzenes:
     - Sign of $\rho$: $+\rho$ indicates electrons flowing into and $-\rho$ electrons flowing out of ring in transition state
     - Magnitude of $\rho$ shows effect on the benzene ring:
       - large (around 5), charge on ring ($+\rho$, anion; $-\rho$, cation)
       - moderate (around 2–4), charge on atom next to ring—may be gain or loss of conjugation
       - small (<1), ring may be distant from scene of action or $\rho$ may be balance of two $\rho$s of opposite sign

4. Catalysis
   - pH–rate profile reveals specific acid or base catalysis
   - Rate variation with [HA] or [B] at constant pH reveals GAC or GBC
   - Deuterium isotope effect: normal ($k_H > k_D$) shows GA/BC, inverse solvent $k(D_2O) > k(H_2O)$ shows SA/BC
   - GA/BC is termolecular and has large negative entropy of activation

5. Intermediates
   - Independent preparation or, better, isolation from or detection in reaction mixture helps
   - Must show that intermediate gives product under reaction conditions
   - Designed trapping experiments often most convincing
Problems

1. Propose three fundamentally different mechanisms (other than variations of the same mechanism with different kinds of catalysis) for this reaction. How would (a) D labelling and (b) 18O labelling help to distinguish the mechanisms? What other experiments would you carry out to eliminate some of these mechanisms?

![Reaction 1]

2. Explain the stereochemistry and labelling pattern in this reaction.

![Reaction 2]

3. The Hammett $\rho$ value for migrating aryl groups in the acid-catalysed Beckmann rearrangement is $-2.0$. What does this tell us about the rate-determining step?

![Reaction 3]

4. Between pH 2 and 7, the rate of hydrolysis of this thiol ester is independent of pH. At pH 5 the rate is proportional to the concentration of acetate ion [AcO$^-$] in the solution and the reaction goes twice as fast in D$_2$O as in H$_2$O. Suggest a mechanism for the pH-independent hydrolysis. Above pH 7, the rate increases with pH. What kind of change is this?

![Reaction 4]

5. In acid solution, the hydrolysis of this carbodiimide has a Hammett $\rho$ value of $-0.8$. What mechanism might account for this?

![Reaction 5]

6. Explain the difference between these Hammett $\rho$ values by mechanisms for the two reactions. In both cases the ring marked with the substituent X is varied. When R = H, $\rho = -0.3$ but, when R = Ph, $\rho = -5.1$.

![Reaction 6]

7. Explain how chloride ion catalyses this reaction.

![Reaction 7]

8. The hydrolysis of this oxaziridine in 0.1 M sulfuric acid has $k(\text{H}_2\text{O})/k(\text{D}_2\text{O}) = 0.7$ and an entropy of activation of $\Delta S^\ddagger = -76$ J mol$^{-1}$ K$^{-1}$. Suggest a mechanism for the reaction.

![Reaction 8]

9. Explain how both methyl groups in the product of this reaction come to be labelled. If the starting material is re-isolated at 50% reaction, its methyl group is also labelled.

![Reaction 9]

10. The $pK_{aH}$ values of some substituted pyridines are as follows.

| X     | H   | 3-Cl  | 3-Me  | 4-Me  | 3-MeO | 4-MeO | 3-NO$_2$
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$pK_{aH}$</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>2.84</td>
<td>5.68</td>
<td>6.02</td>
<td>4.88</td>
<td>6.62</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can the Hammett correlation be applied to pyridines using the $\sigma$ values for benzenes? What equilibrium $\rho$ value does it give and how do you interpret it? Why are no 2-substituted pyridines included in the list?

11. These two reactions of diazo compounds with carboxylic acids give gaseous nitrogen and esters as products. In both cases the rate of the reaction is proportional to [diazo compound]·[RCO$_2$H]. Use the data for each reaction to suggest mechanisms and comment on the difference between them.

$$\rho = -1.6 \quad k(\text{RCO}_2\text{H})/k(\text{RCO}_2\text{D}) = 3.5$$

$$k(\text{RCO}_2\text{D})/k(\text{RCO}_2\text{H}) = 2.9$$
12. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions and comment on their relevance to the Favorskii family of mechanisms.

(a) [Chemical structures and reactions]

(b) [Chemical structures and reactions]

13. If you believed that this reaction went by elimination followed by conjugate addition, what experiment would you carry out to try and prove that the enone is an intermediate?

[Chemical structures and reactions]

14. This question is about three related acid-catalysed reactions: (a) the isomerization of Z-cinnamic acids to E-cinnamic acids; (b) the dehydration of the related hydroxy-acids; (c) the racemization of the same hydroxy-acids. You should be able to use the information provided to build up a complete picture of the interaction of the various compounds and the intermediates in the reactions.

(a) Data determined for the acid-catalysed isomerization of Z-cinnamic acids in water include the following.
(i) The rate is faster in H₂O than in D₂O; k(H₂O)/k(D₂O) = 2.5.
(ii) The product contains about 80% D at C2.
(iii) The Hammett ρ value is –5.

Suggest a mechanism for the reaction that explains the data.

(b) The dehydration of the related hydroxy-acids also gives E-cinnamic acids at a greater rate under the same conditions but the data for the reaction are rather different.
(i) Hydroxy-acid deuterated at C2 shows a kinetic isotope effect: k_H/k_D = 2.5.

(e) If the dehydration reaction is stopped after about 10% conversion to products, the remaining starting material is completely racemized. Data for the racemization reaction include the following.
(i) The rate is slower in H₂O than in D₂O.
(ii) Hydroxy-acid deuterated at C2 shows practically no kinetic isotope effect.
(iii) The Hammett ρ value is –4.5.

What conclusions can you draw about the dehydration?

Recalling that the dehydration goes faster than the isomerization, what would be present in the reaction mixture if the isomerization were stopped at 50% completion?

15. Propose mechanisms for the two reactions at the start of the chapter. The other product in the first reaction is the imine PhCH=NSO₂Ph.

[Chemical structures and reactions]

16. A typical Darzens reaction involves the base-catalysed formation of an epoxide from an α-haloketone and an aldehyde. Suggest a mechanism for the Darzens reaction consistent with the results shown below.

(a) The rate expression is:
\[ \text{rate} = k_2 [\text{PhCO-CH₂Cl}] [\text{ArCHO}] [\text{EtO}^-] \]

(b) When Ar is varied, the Hammett ρ value is +2.5.

(e) The following attempted Darzens reactions produced unexpected products.
Saturated heterocycles and stereoelectronics

Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building on:</th>
<th>Arriving at:</th>
<th>Looking forward to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Acetals and hemiacetals ch14</td>
<td>• Putting a heteroatom in a ring changes the reactivity of the heteroatom</td>
<td>• Structure and reactions of aromatic heterocycles ch43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stereochemistry ch16</td>
<td>• Ring-opening reactions: the effect of ring strain</td>
<td>• Synthesis of aromatic heterocycles ch44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The conformation of cyclic molecules ch18</td>
<td>• Lone pairs in heterocycles have precise orientations</td>
<td>• Asymmetric synthesis ch45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stereospecific elimination reactions ch19</td>
<td>• Some substituents prefer to be axial on some six-membered saturated</td>
<td>• Chemistry of life ch49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Protecting groups ch24</td>
<td>heterocycles</td>
<td>• Mechanisms in biological chemistry ch50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• NMR and stereochemistry—how orbital overlap affects coupling (the Karplus</td>
<td>• Interactions of lone pairs with empty orbitals can control conformation</td>
<td>• Natural products ch51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relationship) ch32</td>
<td>• Ring-closing reactions: why five membered rings form quickly and four-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How rings affect stereoselective reactions ch33</td>
<td>membered rings form slowly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ring closing and opening by cycloadditions ch35</td>
<td>• Baldwin’s rules: why some ring closures work well while others don’t work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Electro cyclic ring closing and opening ch36</td>
<td>at all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How alignment of orbitals affects reactivity ch37–ch38</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Determining organic mechanisms ch41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Introduction

Rings in molecules make a difference, and we have already devoted the whole of one chapter (33) and most of another (18) just to the structure and reactions of rings. In those chapters, the message was that rings have well-defined conformations, and that well-defined conformations allow reactions to be stereoselective.

This chapter and the next two will revisit the ring theme, but the rings will all be heterocycles: rings containing not just carbon atoms, but oxygen, nitrogen, or sulfur as well. It may seem strange that this rather narrowly defined class of compounds deserves three whole chapters, but you will soon see that this is justified both by the sheer number and variety of heterocycles that exist and by their special chemical features. Chapters 43 and 44 cover heterocycles that are aromatic, and in this chapter we look at heterocycles that are saturated and flexible. Some examples, a few of which may be familiar to you, are shown below and overleaf.

The saturated heterocyclic rings are shown in black, and names for the most important ring types are given: some (like piperidine, morpholine) you will need to remember; others (tetrahydrofuran, pyrrolidine) are more obviously derived from the names for aromatic heterocycles that we will discuss in the next chapter. Some of these compounds (nicotine, conine, cocaine) are plant products falling into the class called alkaloids. Alkaloids are discussed in Chapter 51. Another important class of saturated heterocycles, sugars, will reappear in Chapter 49.
But what are the ‘special chemical features’ of saturated heterocycles? Putting a heteroatom into a ring does two important things, and these lead to the most important new topics in this chapter. Firstly, the heteroatom makes the ring easy to make by a ring-closing reaction, or (in some cases) easy to break by a ring-opening reaction. Closing and opening reactions of rings are subject to constraints that you will need to know about, and the principles that govern these reactions are discussed in the second half of the chapter.

Secondly, the ring fixes the orientation of the heteroatom—and, in particular, the orientation of its lone pairs—relative to the atoms around it. This has consequences for the reactivity and conformation of the heterocycle which can be explained using the concept of stereoelectronics.

Although this is the only chapter in which stereoelectronics appears in the title, you will soon recognize the similarity between the ideas we cover here and concepts like the stereospecificity of E2 elimination reactions (Chapter 19), the Karplus relationship (Chapter 32), the Felkin–Anh transition state (Chapter 33), and the conformational requirements for rearrangement (Chapter 37) and fragmentation (Chapter 38) reactions.

### Reactions of heterocycles

#### Nitrogen heterocycles: amines, but more nucleophilic

In many reactions the simple saturated nitrogen heterocycles—piperidine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, and morpholine—behave simply as secondary amines that happen to be cyclic. They do the sorts of things that other amines do, acting as nucleophiles in addition and substitution reactions. Morpholine, for example, is acylated by 3,4,5-trimethoxybenzoyl chloride to form the tranquillizer and muscle relaxant trimetozone, and N-methylpiperazine can be alkylated in an S_N1 reaction with diphenylmethyl chloride to give the travel-sickness drug cyclizine.
The addition of pyrrolidine to aldehydes and ketones is a particularly important reaction because it leads to enamines, the valuable enol equivalents discussed in Chapter 26.

Enamines formed from pyrrolidine and piperidine are particularly stable, because pyrrolidine and piperidine are rather more nucleophilic than comparable acyclic amines such as diethylamine. This is a general feature of cyclic amines (and cyclic ethers, too, as you will see shortly), and is a steric effect. The alkyl substituents, being tied back into a ring, are held clear of the nucleophilic lone pair, allowing it to approach an electrophile without hindrance. This effect is well illustrated by comparing the rates of reaction of methyl iodide with three amines—tertiary this time. The two cyclic compounds are bridged—quinuclidine is a bridged piperidine while the diamine known as ‘DABCO’ (1,4-DiAzaBiCyclo[2.2.2]Octane) is a bridged piperazine. Table 42.1 shows the relative rates, along with $pK_a$ values, for triethylamine, quinuclidine, and DABCO.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relative rate of reaction</th>
<th>Triethylamine</th>
<th>Quinuclidine</th>
<th>DABCO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$pK_a$</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>8.8 (and 3.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quinuclidine and DABCO are 40–60 times more reactive than triethylamine. This is again due to the way the ring structures keep the nitrogen’s substituents away from interfering with the lone pair as it attacks the electrophile. You should contrast the effect that the cyclic structure has on the $pK_a$ of the amines: none! Triethylamine and quinuclidine are equally basic and, as you can see in the margin, so (more or less) are diethylamine, dibutylamine, and piperidine. A proton is so small that it cares very little whether the alkyl groups are tied back or not.

Much more important in determining $pK_a$ is how electron-rich the nitrogen is, and this is the cause of the glaring discrepancy between the basicity of quinuclidine and that of DABCO, or between the basicities of piperidine ($pK_a$ 11.2) and morpholine ($pK_a$ 9.8) or piperazine ($pK_a$ 8.4). The extra heteroatom, through an inductive effect, withdraws electron density from the nitrogen atom, making it less nucleophilic and less basic. In this
sense, morpholine can be a very useful base, less basic than triethylamine but somewhat more so than pyridine ($pK_{aH} 5.2$). Notice how much lower is the second $pK_{aH}$ (that is, the $pK_{aH}$ for protonation of the second nitrogen) of the diamines DABCO and piperazine: the protonated nitrogen of the monoprotonated amine withdraws electrons very effectively from the unprotonated one.

The Baylis–Hillman reaction

One of the most important uses of DABCO is in the Baylis–Hillman reaction, discovered in 1972 by two chemists at the Celanese Corporation in New York. Their reaction is a modification of the aldol reaction (Chapter 27), except that, instead of the enolate being formed by deprotonation, it is formed by conjugate addition. You have seen the enolate products of conjugate addition being trapped by alkylation agents in Chapter 26, but in the Baylis–Hillman reaction, the electrophile is an aldehyde and is present right from the start of the reaction, which is done just by stirring the components at room temperature. Here is a typical example.

The reaction starts with the (relatively nucleophilic) DABCO undergoing conjugate addition to ethyl acrylate. This will form an enolate that can then attack the acetaldehyde in an aldol reaction.

E1cB eliminations often follow aldol reactions and lead to α,β-unsaturated products. In this case, though, DABCO is a much better leaving group than the hydroxyl group, so enolization leads to loss of DABCO in an E1cB elimination, giving the product of the reaction. DABCO is recovered unchanged, and is a catalyst.

A disadvantage of the Baylis–Hillman reaction is its rate: typically, several days’ reaction time are required. Pressure helps speed the reaction up, but as a catalyst DABCO is about the best. It is nucleophilic, because of the ‘tied back’ alkyl groups, but importantly it is a good leaving group because it has a relatively low $pK_a$, meaning that it leaves easily in the last step. As you have seen before, good nucleophiles are usually bad leaving groups, though there are many exceptions. DABCO’s combination of nucleophilicity and leaving group ability is perfect here.

The exposed nature of the nitrogen atom in cyclic amines means that nitrogen heterocycles are very frequently encountered in drug molecules, particularly those operating on the central nervous system (cocaine, heroin, and morphine all contain nitrogen heterocycles, as do codeine and many tranquillizers such as Valium). But the ring can also be used as a support for adding substituents that hinder the nitrogen’s lone pair. Just as the nitrogen atom of piperidine is permanently exposed, the nitrogen atom of 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine (TMP) nestles deep in a bed of methyl groups. The lithium salt of TMP (LiTMP) is an analogue of LDA—a base that experiences enormous steric hindrance that can be used in situations where the selectivity even of LDA fails.

Aziridine: ring strain promotes ring opening

Aziridine and azetidine are stable, if volatile, members of the saturated nitrogen heterocycle family, and aziridine has some interesting chemistry of its own. Like pyrrolidine and piperidine, aziridine can be acylated by treatment with an acyl chloride, but the product is not stable. The ring opens with attack of chloride, a relatively poor nucleophile, and an open-chain secondary amide results.
You can view this ring opening as very similar to the ring opening of an epoxide (Chapter 20)—in particular, a protonated epoxide, in which the oxygen bears a positive charge. The positive charge is very important for aziridine opening because, when the reaction is done in the presence of a base, removal of the proton leads immediately to the neutral acyl aziridine, which is stable.

The ring opening of aziridine is a useful way of making larger heterocycles: anything that puts a positive charge on nitrogen encourages the opening by making N a better leaving group, whether it’s protonation, as shown below, or alkylation.

Alkylation of aziridine in base gives the N-substituted aziridine as you might expect, but a second alkylation leads to a positively charged aziridinium salt that opens immediately to the useful bromoamine. In this case, the product is an intermediate in the synthesis of two natural products, sandaverine and corgoine.

We have just mentioned the protonation of aziridine, and you might imagine from what we said earlier about the comparative nucleophilicity and basicity of nitrogen heterocycles and their acyclic counterparts that aziridine will be even more nucleophilic than pyrrolidine, and about as basic. Well,
it isn’t. The idea that ‘tying back’ the alkyl groups increases nucleophilicity is only valid for ‘normal-sized’ (five- or six-membered) rings: with small rings another effect takes over.

Aziridine is, in fact, much less basic than pyrrolidine and piperidine: its $pK_{\text{aH}}$ is only 8.0. This is much closer to the $pK_{\text{aH}}$ of a compound containing an sp$^2$ hybridized nitrogen atom—the imine in the margin, for example. This is because the nitrogen’s lone pair is in an orbital with much more s character than is typical for an amine, due to the three-membered ring. This is an effect we have discussed before, in Chapter 15, and you should re-read pp. 000–000 if you need to refresh your memory. There we compared three-membered rings with alkynes, explaining that both could be deprotonated relatively easily. The anion carries a negative charge in a low-energy orbital with much s character: the same type of orbital carries aziridine’s lone pair.

The s character of the aziridine nitrogen’s lone pair has other effects too. The lone pair interacts very poorly with an adjacent carbonyl group, so N-acyl aziridines such as the one you saw on p. 000 behave not at all like amides. The nitrogen atom is pyramidal and not planar, and the stretching frequency of the C=O bond (1706 cm$^{-1}$) is much closer to that of a ketone (1710 cm$^{-1}$) than that of an amide (1650 cm$^{-1}$).

Lack of conjugation leads to increased reactivity, and N-acyl aziridines are useful in synthesis because they react with organolithium reagents only once to give ketones. No further reactions of the product ketone occur because the N-acyl aziridine is reactive enough to compete with it for the organolithium reagent.

The s character of the lone pair means that the nitrogen atom inverts very slowly, rather like a phosphine (which also carries its lone pair in an s orbital: see Chapter 4, p. 000). Usually it is not possible for nitrogen to be a stereogenic centre because inversion is too rapid—the transition state for nitrogen inversions (in which the lone pair is in a p orbital) is low in energy. But with an aziridine, getting the lone pair into a p orbital would require an awful lot of energy, so nitrogen can be stereogenic and, for example, these two stereoisomers of an N-substituted aziridine can be separated and isolated.

**Oxygen heterocycles**

Ring-opening chemistry is characteristic of oxygen heterocycles too, and there is no need for us to revisit epoxide opening here. Epoxides are particularly reactive because ring opening releases ring strain, driving the reaction forward. However, we can tell you about some chemistry of the most important simple oxygen heterocycle, THF. You may be surprised that THF does any real chemistry: after all, the very reason it is used as a solvent is precisely because it is so unreactive. Oxygen heterocycles are cyclic ethers, and ethers are the least reactive of all the common functional groups.

To make ethers more reactive, they must be complexed with strong Lewis acids. BF$_3$ is commonly used with cyclic ethers, and even with epoxides it increases the rate and yield of the reaction when organometallic reagents are used as nucleophiles. BF$_3$ is most easily handled as its complex with diethyl ether, written BF$_3$:OEt. BuLi does not react with oxetane, for example, unless a Lewis acid, such as BF$_3$, is added, when it opens the four-membered ring to give a quantitative yield of $n$-heptanol.
The same reaction happens with THF, but only in much lower yield. Nonetheless, just as cyclic amines are more nucleophilic than acyclic ones, so cyclic ethers are more nucleophilic than acyclic ones. This is one of the reasons why THF is such a good solvent for organolithiums—the nucleophilic lone pair of the oxygen atom stabilizes the electron-deficient lithium atom of the organolithium.

A more important reaction between BuLi and THF is not nucleophilic attack, but deprotonation. You will have noticed that reactions involving BuLi in THF are invariably carried out at temperatures of 0 °C or below—usually –78 °C. This is because, at temperatures above 0 °C, deprotonation of THF begins to take place. You might think that this would not be a problem, if BuLi were being used as a base, because the deprotonated THF could still itself act as a base. The trouble is that deprotonated THF is unstable, and it undergoes a reverse [2+3] cycloaddition. Here is the mechanism (we have represented the organolithium as an anion to help with the arrows). The products are: (1) the (much less basic) enolate of acetaldehyde and (2) ethylene. The first tends to polymerize, and the second usually evaporates from the reaction mixture.

The most common use of tetrahydropyran derivatives is as protecting groups: you met this in Chapter 24 and you can see an example later in the chapter, on p. 000.

Sulfur heterocycles

The ability of sulfur to stabilize an adjacent anion will be discussed in Chapter 46, and it means that sulfur heterocycles are much easier to deprotonate than THF. The most important of these contains two sulfur atoms: dithiane. Deprotonation of dithiane occurs in between the two heteroatoms, and you can see some chemistry that arises from this on p. 000. For the moment, we will just show you series of reactions that illustrate nicely both dithiane chemistry and the ring opening of oxygen heterocycles in the presence of BF₃. This substituted derivative of dithiane is deprotonated by BuLi in the same way to give a nucleophilic organolithium that will
attack electrophiles—even oxygen heterocycles—provided BF₃ is present. The products are formed in excellent yield, even when the electrophile is THP, with no ring strain to drive the reaction. After the addition reaction the dithiane ring can be hydrolysed with mercury(II) (see Chapters 46 and 50 for an explanation) to give a ketone carrying other useful functional groups.

Conformation of saturated heterocycles: the anomeric effect

Heteroatoms in rings have axial and equatorial lone pairs

To a first approximation, the conformation of five- and six-membered saturated heterocycles follows very much the same principles as the conformation of carbocyclic compounds that we detailed in Chapter 18. If you feel you need to re-read the parts of that chapter dealing with rings—chairs and boats, or axial and equatorial substituents—now would be a good time to do it. Sticking with dithiane for the moment, then, this is the conformation. Since the sulfur atoms have lone pairs, they too occupy axial and equatorial positions. The same is true of dioxane or of piperidine.

We have coloured the lone pairs green or black according to whether they are axial or equatorial, but you can also consider the colour coding in a different way: black lone pairs are parallel with C–C or C–heteroatom bonds in the ring; green lone pairs are parallel with axial C–H bonds outside the ring, or, if the ring has substituents, with the bonds to those substituents. This substituted tetrahydropyran illustrates all this. Notice that the equatorial substituents next to the heteroatom are parallel with neither the green nor the black lone pair.

Why is this important? Well, if you cast your mind back to Chapter 38, you will remember that the overlap of parallel orbitals was very important in fragmentation reactions. Here, for example, is a fragmentation reaction that goes very well, but that can take place only if the nitrogen’s lone pair is equatorial, because only an equatorial (black) lone pair can overlap with the antibonding orbital of the C–C bond that breaks. The chloride leaving group must be equatorial as well.

This is not a problem in this example, because flipping of the ring and inversion of the nitrogen are fast, and enough of the starting material is in this conformation at any one time for the reaction to take place. But compare this bicyclic acetal whose ‘fragmentation’ (actually just an acetal hydrolysis) looks possible by this mechanism.

Yet when we try and draw the conformation of the lone pairs we run into a problem: neither over-
laps with the C–O bond that is breaking and so neither can donate its electron density into the C–O \( \sigma^* \). (Another way of looking at this is to say that the intermediate oxonium ion—with a C=O double bond formed by one of the oxygen’s lone pairs—would be extremely strained.) Not surprisingly, the rate of hydrolysis of this acetal is extremely slow compared with similar ones in which overlap between the oxygen lone pair and the C–O \( \sigma^* \) is possible. The acetal in the margin hydrolysies about \( 10^{10} \) times faster.

Other situations you have met where overlap between parallel orbitals is important are:
- E2 elimination reactions (Chapter 19)
- NMR coupling constants (Chapter 32)
- reactions of cyclic molecules (Chapter 33)
- the Felkin–Anh transition state conformation (Chapter 34)

Together, these effects are called **stereoelectronic effects**, because they depend on the shape and orientation of orbitals. Most of the examples we have presented you with have been stereoelectronic effects on reactivity, but the next section will deal with how stereoelectronic effects affect conformation.

**Some substituents of saturated heterocycles prefer to be axial: the anomeric effect**

Some of the most important saturated oxygen heterocycles are the sugars. Glucose is a cyclic hemiacetal—a pentasubstituted tetrahydropyran if you like—whose major conformation in solution is shown on the right.

About two-thirds of glucose in solution exists as this stereoisomer, but hemiacetal formation and cleavage is rapid, and this is in equilibrium with a further one-third that carries the hemiacetal hydroxyl group axial (<1% is in the open-chain form).

Having read Chapter 18 you will not be surprised that glucose prefers all its substituents to be equatorial. For four of them, of course, there is no choice: they are either all-equatorial or all-axial, and the only way they can get from one to the other is by ring-flipping. But for the fifth substituent, the hydroxyl group next to the ring oxygen (known as the **anomeric hydroxyl**), the choice of axial or equatorial is made available by hemiacetal cleavage and re-formation—it can invert its configuration. What is perhaps surprising is that the equatorial preference of this hydroxyl group is so small—only 2:1. Even more surprising is that, for most derivatives of glucose, the anomeric substituents prefer to be axial rather than equatorial.

Move away from glucose, and the effect is still there. Here, for example, is the NMR spectrum of this chloro compound. There are now only two possible conformations (no configurational changes are possible because this is not a hemiacetal)—both shown—and from the NMR spectrum you should be able to work out which one this compound has.

The key point is that axial–axial couplings are large (>8 Hz, say), even with adjacent electronegative atoms (which do tend to lower coupling constants). So if H1
were an axial proton, you would expect it to have a large coupling to H2. But it doesn’t—it couples to H2 with $J$ of only 2.0 Hz. (The other coupling is a W-coupling to H3, also of 2.0 Hz; see p. 000.) Similarly, we know that the 12.9 Hz coupling shared by the two H5 protons must be a geminal ($2J$) coupling. One of H5a or H5b must be axial; yet both couple to H4 with $J < 4$ Hz. So H4 cannot be axial. With this evidence, we have to conclude that H1 and H4 (and therefore H2 and H3) are equatorial, so the compound must exist mainly in the all-axial conformation. (The 0.6 Hz coupling to H5b is another W-coupling, and shows that H5b is the equatorial proton, and H5a therefore the axial one.)

### The anomic effect

In general, any tetrahydropyran bearing an electronegative substituent in the 2-position will prefer that substituent to be axial. This is known as the anomic effect.

But why? This goes against all of what we said in Chapter 18 about axial substituents being more hindered, making conformations carrying axial substituents disfavoured. The key again is stereoelectronics, and we can now link up with the message we left you with at the end of the last section: eliminations and fragmentations can work only when the orbitals involved are parallel.

An amide is more stable (less reactive) than a ketone because the p orbital of the N and the low-lying C=O $\pi^*$ of the carbonyl can lie parallel—they can overlap and electron density can move from nitrogen into the C=O bond, weakening C=O. (Evidence for this comes from the lower IR stretching frequency of an amide C=O, among other things.) But C–X bonds also have low-lying antibonding orbitals—the C–X $\sigma^*$—so we would expect a molecule to be stabilized if an adjacent heteroatom could donate electrons into this orbital in the same way. Take the generalized tetrahydropyran in the box above, for example, with X = Cl, say. This molecule is most stable if an oxygen lone pair can overlap with C–Cl $\sigma^*$, like this.

But it can do this only if the chlorine is axial! Remember what we pointed out earlier: the oxygen’s equatorial lone pairs are parallel with nothing but bonds in the ring, so the oxygen’s axial lone pair is the only one that can help stabilize the molecule, and it can only do this when the Cl is axial. Only the axial conformation benefits from the stabilization, and this is the origin of the anomic effect.

How shall we represent the stabilization? Comparing again with the amide stabilization, you might think about how to represent it with curly arrows: this is straightforward with the amide and you have seen it many times. But it looks odd with our heterocycle: electron density moves from O to Cl, and the C–Cl bond is weakened. If the process carried right on, Cl– would leave. This is exactly what did happen in the acetal we presented you with as an example on p. 000: only the axial OAr could leave, however, because of the same requirement for overlap with an oxygen lone pair. In the real structure that we are now looking at, the Cl is still there: the C–Cl bond is weaker, and some of the oxygen’s electron density is delocalized on to Cl. This can be seen in crystal structures: compounds exhibiting an anomic effect have a longer (and therefore weakened) bond outside the ring and a shorter, stronger C–O bond within the ring.
The anomeric effect in some other compounds

Now that you know about the anomeric effect, you should add it to your mental array of ways of explaining ‘unexpected’ results. Here is an example. Many fruit flies have pheromones based around a ‘spiroketal’ structure, which we could represent without stereochemistry as shown below. You can imagine the spiroketal (that is, an acetal of a ketone made of two rings joined at a single atom) being made from a dihydroxyketone—and, indeed, this is very often how they are made synthetically. But this is a bad representation because these compounds do have stereochemistry, and the stereochemistry is very interesting.

Let’s start with the simplest example, with R = H (a pheromone of the olive fly). Once you have drawn one ring in its chair conformation, there are three ways of attaching the other ring, shown here. If you think they all look the same, consider the orientation of each C–O bond with respect to the ring that it is not part of: you can have each C–O axial or equatorial, and there are three possible arrangements (three conformations).

Without knowing about the anomeric effect, you would find it hard to predict which conformation is favoured, and, indeed, you might expect to get a mixture of all three. But NMR tells us that this compound exists entirely in one conformation: the last one here, in which each oxygen is axial on the other ring. Only in this conformation can both C–O bonds benefit from the anomeric effect—this is often known as the double anomeric effect.

Things become even more interesting when the spiroketal carries substituents. The pheromone of *Epeolus crucifer*, for example, carries one additional methyl group at a centre with (S) configuration. The spiroketal centre is now a chiral centre, and also exists in a single configuration. Only one possible conformation allows the methyl substituent to be equatorial and the two oxygens to be axial, and that conformation defines the configuration at the spiroketal. Only one diastereoisomer is formed, in which the methyl group controls the spiro centre.

The fact that the substituents on the side chains can control the conformation of the spiroketal centre means that it is not necessary to worry about that centre in a synthesis, provided you are trying to make the spiroketal that has the double anomeric stabilization (both oxygens axial) and that has any substituents equatorial on the rings. A recent (1997) synthesis of a single enantiomer of some fruit-fly pheromones from an aspartic acid-derived bromodiol is shown overleaf. It involves three different-sized oxygen heterocycles.

The diol is made into an epoxide by an intramolecular substitution reaction that is SN2 and so goes with inversion. There are two possible rings that could form, depending on which hydroxyl group attacks, but (as you will shortly see) three-membered rings form faster than four-membered ones, and the reaction gives none of the oxetane. The other hydroxyl group can now be protected as a benzyl ether.
The epoxide opens well with either a copper derivative (RMgBr + CuI) or simply NaBH₄, and the resulting alcohol needs to be protected. A good, and in this instance topical, choice is a THP group, added using dihydropyran in the presence of acid. The disadvantage of THP protecting groups is that they introduce an unwanted chiral centre: this will not be controlled and we expect a mixture of both (R) and (S) configurations at this centre. However, you should now have no problem predicting the conformation of the THP rings, even if it is irrelevant to the synthesis.

Now the benzyl ether can be deprotected, and the hydroxyl group substituted for iodide via its tosylate. This iodide is an alkylating agent, and is used for two successive alkylations of a hydrazone’s aza-enolate.

The product is still a hydrazone, and it needs hydrolysing to the ketone with 1 M HCl. These conditions cause immediate hydrolysis of the THP protecting groups and then cyclization to the spiroacetal, which forms with complete control over stereochemistry—a single diastereoisomer is formed in which both alkyl groups go equatorial and both oxygens axial.
Remember that the key requirement for the anomeric effect is that there is a heteroatom with a lone pair (O, N, S usually) adjacent to (that is, in a position to interact with) a low-lying antibonding orbital—usually a C–X $\sigma^*$ (where X = halogen or O). The C–X bond doesn’t have to be within the ring—for example, this nitrogen heterocycle prefers to have the R group axial so that the nitrogen gets an equatorial lone pair. Equatorial lone pairs are parallel with bonds within the ring, one of which is C–O, and this conformation is therefore stabilized by an N lone pair/ C–O $\sigma^*$ interaction.

It would be a bit much for this 1,3,5-triazine to have all three $t$-butyl groups axial (too much steric hindrance), but it can get away with having one of them axial, benefiting from the resulting equatorial lone pair, which can overlap with two C–N $\sigma^*$s in the ring.

**Related effects in other types of compounds**

- Any conformation in which a lone pair is anti-periplanar to a low-energy antibonding orbital will be stabilized by a stereoelectronic interaction.

As you will probably realize, it’s not only in six-membered rings that stereoelectronic interactions between filled and unfilled orbitals stabilize some conformations more than others. Stereoelectronic effects control the conformations of many types of molecules. We shall look at three common compounds that are stabilized by stereoelectronic effects: in two cases, the stabilization is specific to one conformation, and we can use stereoelectronics to explain what would otherwise be an unexpected result.

But we start with a compound that is so simple that it has only one conformation because it has no rotatable bonds: dichloromethane. You may have wondered why it is that, while methyl chloride (chloromethane) is a reactive electrophile that takes part readily in substitution reactions, dichloromethane is so unreactive that it can be used as a solvent in which substitution reactions of other alkyl halides take place. You may think that this is a steric effect: indeed, Cl is bigger than H. But CH$_2$Cl$_2$ is much less reactive as an electrophile than ethyl chloride or propyl chloride: there must be more to its unreactivity. And there is: dichloromethane benefits from a sort of ‘permanent anomeric effect’. One lone pair of each chlorine is always anti-periplanar to the other C–Cl bond so that there is always stabilization from this effect.

Among the most widespread classes of acyclic compounds to exhibit stereoelectronic control over conformation are acetals. Take the simple acetal of formaldehyde and methanol, for example: what is its conformation? An obvious suggestion is to draw it fully extended so that every group is fully anti-periplanar to every other—this would be the lowest-energy conformation of pentane, which you get if you just replace the Os with CH$_2$s.

The trouble is, in this conformation none of the oxygen lone pairs get the chance to donate into the C–O $\sigma^*$ orbitals. Although putting the bonds anti-periplanar to one another makes steric sense, electronically, the molecule much prefers to put the lone pairs anti-periplanar to the C–O bonds, so the bonds themselves end up gauche (synclinal) to one another. This is known as the gauche effect, but is really just another way in which the stereoelectronic effects that give rise to the anomeric effect turn up in acyclic systems.

Finally, an even more familiar example that you may never have thought about. You are well aware now that amides are planar, with partially double C–N bonds, and that tertiary amides have one alkyl group cis to oxygen and one trans. But what about esters? Esters are less reactive than acyl chlorides because of donation from the oxygen p orbital into the carbonyl $\pi^*$, so we expect them to be planar too, and they are. But there are two possible planar conformations for an ester: one with R cis to oxygen and one with R trans. Which is preferred?
Here are the two conformations drawn out for ethyl acetate. When the ethyl group (= R) and O are cis, not only can one oxygen lone pair interact with the \( \text{C}=\text{O} \, \pi^* \), but the other lone pair can also donate into the \( \sigma^* \) of the C=O bond. This is not possible when Et and O are trans: they are no longer anti-periplanar. The cis conformation of esters is generally the preferred one, even in formate esters, where the alkyl group ends up in what is clearly a more sterically hindered orientation.

### Making heterocycles: ring-closing reactions

We have talked about the structure of saturated heterocycles, particularly with regard to stereoelectronic control over conformation, and before that we looked at some of their reactions. In this last section of the chapter we will look at how to make saturated heterocycles. By far the most important way of making them is by ring-closing reactions, because we can usually use the heteroatom as the nucleophile in an intramolecular substitution or addition reaction. Ring-closing reactions are, of course, just the opposite of the ring-opening reactions we talked about earlier in the chapter, and we can start with a reaction that works well in both directions: ring closure to form an epoxide. You know well that epoxides can be formed using \( m \)-CPBA and an alkene, but you have already seen examples (including one earlier in the chapter) where they form by an intramolecular substitution reaction such as this.

\[
\text{base} \quad \text{Cl}^+ \quad \text{Cl}^- \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+
\]

The same method can also be used to generate larger cyclic ethers. Oxetane, for example, is conveniently made by adding 3-chloropropyl acetate to hot potassium hydroxide.

\[
\text{KOH} \quad \text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+
\]

The first step in this reaction is the hydrolysis of the ester. The alkoxide produced then undergoes an intramolecular substitution reaction to yield oxetane.

\[
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+
\]

Tetrahydropyran was prepared as early as 1890 by a ring closure that occurs when a mixture of 1,5-pentanediol with sulfuric acid is heated.

\[
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+ \\
\text{H} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{Cl}^- \quad \text{Cl}^+
\]

These are all \( S_N2 \) reactions, so you will not be surprised that nitrogen heterocycles can be prepared in the same way. Aziridine itself, for example, was first prepared in 1888 from 2-chloroethylamine.

This method works well to form three-, five-, and six-membered nitrogen heterocycles, but does not work well to form four-membered rings. In fact, four-membered rings are generally among the
hardest of all to form. To illustrate this, the first two columns of Table 42.2 show the rates (relative to six-membered ring formation = 1) at which bromoamines of various chain lengths cyclize to saturated nitrogen heterocycles of three to seven members.

**Table 42.2 Rates of ring-closing reactions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ring size</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Relative rate&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Product&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Relative rate&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Assessment of rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="H2N" /></td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="EtO2C" /></td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="NH" /></td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="E" /></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="NH" /></td>
<td>100</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="E" /></td>
<td>833</td>
<td>very fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="NH" /></td>
<td>1</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="E" /></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="NH" /></td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="E" /></td>
<td>0.0087</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="NH" /></td>
<td>0.00015</td>
<td><img src="attachment.png" alt="E" /></td>
<td></td>
<td>very slow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> Relative to the six-membered ring formation (= 1).

<sup>b</sup> E = CO<sub>2</sub>Et.

The first thing that strikes you perhaps is that the figures in the third column have been produced by a random number generator! There seems to be no rhyme or reason to them, and no consistent trend. To convince you that these numbers mean something, Table 42.2 also shows, in its next two columns, the relative rates for a quite different ring-closing reaction, this time forming four- to seven-membered rings that are not even heterocycles by intramolecular alkylation of a substituted malonate. Though the numbers are quite different in the two cases, the ups and downs are the same, and the final column summarizes the relative rates. Put another way, a rough guide (only rough!—it doesn’t work in all cases) to the rate of ring formation is this.

- **Rough guide to the rate of formation of saturated rings**
  
  \[ 5 > 6 > 3 > 7 > 4 > 8–10 \]
We show the numbers in colour to highlight the fact that this seemingly illogical ordering of numbers actually conceals two superimposed trends. Once you get to five-membered rings, the rate of formation drops consistently as the ring size moves from ‘normal’ to ‘medium’. ‘Small’ (three- and four-membered) rings insert into the sequence below six.

The reason for the two superimposed trends is two opposing factors. Firstly, small rings form slowly because forming them introduces ring strain. This ring strain is there even at the transition state, raising its energy and slowing down the reaction. $\Delta G^\ddagger$ is very large for a three-membered ring (due to strain) but decreases as the ring gets larger. This explains why three- and four-membered rings don’t fit straightforwardly into the sequence.

But, if the reaction rate simply depended on the strain of the product, the slowest reaction would be the formation of the three-membered ring, and six-membered rings (which are essentially strain-free) would form fastest. But as it is, four-membered rings form more slowly than three-membered ones, and five-membered ones faster than six-membered ones. To explain this, we need to remind you of an equation we presented in Chapter 13.

$$\Delta G^\ddagger = \Delta H^\ddagger - T\Delta S^\ddagger$$

The activation energy barriers $\Delta G^\ddagger$ of our reactions are made up of two parts: an enthalpy of activation $\Delta H^\ddagger$, which tells us about the energy required to bring atoms together against the strain and repulsive forces they usually have, and an entropy of activation $\Delta S^\ddagger$, which tells us about how easy it is to form an ordered transition state from a wriggling and randomly rotating molecule.

$\Delta G^\ddagger$ for three- and four-membered ring formation is large because $\Delta H^\ddagger$ is large: energy is needed to bend the molecule into the strained small-ring conformation. $\Delta H^\ddagger$ for five-, six-, and seven-membered rings is smaller: this is the quantifiable representation of the ‘ring strain’ factor we have just introduced. The second factor is one that depends on $\Delta S^\ddagger$: how much order must be imposed on the molecule to get it to react. Think of it this way: a long chain has a lot of disorder, and to get its ends to meet up and react means it has to give up a lot of freedom. So, for the formation of medium and large rings, $\Delta S^\ddagger$ is large and negative, contributing to a large $\Delta G^\ddagger$ and slow reactions. For three-membered rings, on the other hand, the reacting atoms are already very close together and almost no order needs to be imposed on the molecule to get it to cyclize: rotation about just one bond is all that is needed to ensure that the amine group is in the perfect position to attack the $\sigma^*$ of the C–Br bond in our example above. $\Delta S^\ddagger$ is very small for three-membered rings so, while $\Delta H^\ddagger$ is large, there is little additional contribution from the $T\Delta S^\ddagger$ term and cyclization is relatively fast. Four-membered rings suffer the worst of both worlds: forming a four-membered ring introduces ring strain ($\Delta H^\ddagger$) and requires order ($\Delta S^\ddagger$) to be imposed on the molecule. They form very slowly as a result.
Thermodynamic control

In this section we have discussed the rate at which rings form: in other words the kinetics of ring formation. However, there are many ring-forming reactions that are under thermodynamic and not kinetic control. For example, you have already seen that glucose exists predominantly as a six-membered ring in solution. It could also exist as a five-membered ring: it doesn’t because, although five-membered rings form faster than six-membered ones, they are usually less stable (remember, a six-membered ring is essentially strain-free). For similar thermodynamic reasons, it doesn’t exist as a seven-membered ring, even though you can draw a reasonable structure for it.

These results are summarized in the following box.

**Ring formation**

- Three-membered ring formation is fast—the product is strained so $\Delta H^\ddagger$ is large but this is offset by the reacting atoms being as close as they can get in a freely rotating chain
- Four-membered rings form slowly—the product is still significantly strained but the reacting atoms are now not right next to each other to offset this
- Five-membered ring formation is often fastest of all. Significantly less strain and the ends are still not too far apart
- Six-membered ring formation experiences no strain but neither does it have the advantage of the ends being close
- Seven-membered rings and beyond form more slowly as $\Delta S^\ddagger$ increases

**Medium and large rings**

Beyond seven-membered rings, the rates stay low, but begin to level off, and may start to rise again when the rings have 10 or 11 members. These are the ‘medium rings’, of about 8–13 members, and they suffer from a different sort of strain, evident in the graph on p. 000 (Chapter 18), due to interactions between C–H bonds across the ring (transannular interactions). These are worst for rings of 8 and 9 members, and begin to be relieved once there are 10 or 11 atoms in the ring. For 14-membered rings and above, there is no transannular strain, and the rates of ring closure remain essentially constant at about the 7-membered ring mark. Rates of reactions in ring sizes of 14 and above are essentially little different from those in acyclic compounds. To get large rings to form, it is often necessary to carry out the cyclization reaction in very dilute solution to discourage competing intermolecular reactions.

**Thermodynamic control**

In this section we have discussed the rate at which rings form: in other words the kinetics of ring formation. However, there are many ring-forming reactions that are under thermodynamic and not kinetic control. For example, you have already seen that glucose exists predominantly as a six-membered ring in solution. It could also exist as a five-membered ring: it doesn’t because, although five-membered rings form faster than six-membered ones, they are usually less stable (remember, a six-membered ring is essentially strain-free). For similar thermodynamic reasons, it doesn’t exist as a seven-membered ring, even though you can draw a reasonable structure for it.

Thermodynamic control is important in other ways in carbohydrate chemistry, because control over ring size allows selective protection of the hydroxyl groups of sugars. Compare these two reactions. Both of them give acetals from the same starting material, mannitol.
Don’t be put off by the way in which we have had to twist half the molecule round to draw the left-hand structure: the stereochemistry hasn’t changed. The important thing is that acetone reacts with mannitol to form three five-membered acetals (dioxolanes) while benzaldehyde forms only two six-membered acetals. This is quite a common result: when there is a choice, acetone prefers to react across a 1,2-diol to give a five-membered ring, while aldehydes prefer to react across a 1,3-diol to form a six-membered ring. Drawing a conformational diagram of the product on the right helps to explain why. All of the substituents are equatorial, making this a particularly stable structure. Now imagine what would happen if acetone formed this type of six-membered ring acetal. There would always be an axial methyl group, and the six-membered rings would be less stable.

Aminals are another class of saturated heterocycles that form very readily under thermodynamic control: aminals are nitrogen analogues of acetals. They are usually made by refluxing a 1,2-diamine with an aldehyde in toluene (no acid catalyst is needed because the nitrogens are very nucleophilic), and this makes a very useful way of forming a chiral derivative of an achiral aldehyde. Here is an example: the diamine is made from the amino acid proline. The product has a new chiral centre, and it forms as a single diastereoisomer because the phenyl ring prefers to be on the exo face of the bicyclic system (see Chapter 33).

Reflexing in toluene removes the water as an azeotrope (see p. 000), but, in fact, the aminal forms so readily that, if you do this reaction in cold dichloromethane (in which water is insoluble), the solution becomes cloudy as droplets of water are produced!

**Combatting ΔS‡—** the Thorpe–Ingold effect

Compare the following relative rates for epoxide-forming cyclization reactions. The second looks as though it suffers more steric hindrance but it is tens of thousands of times faster!

Adding substituents to other ring-forming reactions makes them go faster too: in the next two examples the products are oxetanes and pyrrolidines.
This effect is quite general, and is known as the Thorpe–Ingold effect after the first chemists to note its existence, in 1915.

● The Thorpe–Ingold effect

The Thorpe–Ingold effect is the way in which substituents on the ring increase the rate, or equilibrium constant, for ring-forming reactions.

As the box says, it’s not only rate that can be affected by additional substitution. Here are the relative equilibrium constants for the formation of an anhydride from a 1,4-dicarboxylic acid (the unsubstituted acid is called succinic acid, and the values are scaled so that $K_{rel}$ for the formation of succinic anhydride is 1). More substituents mean more cyclized product at equilibrium. The Thorpe–Ingold effect is both a kinetic and a thermodynamic phenomenon.

\[
\text{HO}_2\text{C} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad K_{rel} = 1 \\
\text{HO}_2\text{C} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad K_{rel} = 14 \\
\text{HO}_2\text{C} \quad \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad K_{rel} = 24000
\]

Now we need to explain why this is. The explanation comes in two parts, one of which may be more important than the other, depending on the ring being formed. The first part is more applicable to the formation of small rings, such as the first example we gave you.

If you measure the bond angles of chains of carbon atoms, you expect them to be close to the tetrahedral angle, 109.5°. The crystal structure of the 1,3-dicarboxylic acid in the margin, for example, shows a C–C–C bond angle of 110°. Now, imagine adding substituents to the chain. They will repel the carbon atoms already there, and force them a little closer than they were, making the bond angle slightly less. X-ray crystallography tells us that adding two methyl groups to our 1,3-dicarboxylic acid decreases the bond angle by about 4°.

We can assume that the same is true in the alcohol starting materials for the epoxide-forming reactions (we can’t measure the angle directly because the compounds aren’t crystalline). Now consider what happens when both of these alcohols form an epoxide. The bond angle has to become about 60°, which involves about 50° of strain for the first diacid, but only 46° for the second. By distorting the starting material, the methyl groups have made it slightly easier to form a ring.

This part of the argument works only for small rings. For larger rings, we need another explanation. We’ll use the pyrrolidine-forming reaction as an example. We have explained the effect of $\Delta S^\dagger$ (entropy of activation) on the rate of ring formation: as larger rings form they have to lose more entropy at the transition state, and this contributes to a less favourable $\Delta G^\ddagger$.

But, when the starting material has more substituents, it starts off with less entropy anyway. More substituents mean that some conformations are no longer accessible to the starting material—the green arcs below show how the methyl groups hinder rotation of the N and Br substituents into that region of space. Of those fewer conformations, many approximate to the conformation in the transition state, and moving from starting material to transition state involves a small loss of entropy: $\Delta S^\ddagger$ is less negative so $\Delta G^\ddagger (= \Delta H^\ddagger - T \Delta S^\ddagger)$ is more negative and the ring forms faster.
Because the same arguments apply to $\Delta S^\circ$ for the reaction as a whole (the difference in entropy between starting material and products), increased substitution favours ring closure even under thermodynamic control.

**Baldwin’s rules**

Nearly all of the cyclization reactions that we have discussed have been intramolecular $S_N2$ reactions where one end of the molecule acted as the nucleophile displacing the leaving group on the other end. We kept to this sort of reaction in order to make valid comparisons between different ring sizes. But you can imagine making saturated heterocycles in plenty of other ways—intramolecular substitution at a carbonyl group, for example, such as happens in this lactonization reaction, or intramolecular addition on to an alkyne.

Cyclization reactions can be classified by a simple system involving: (1) the ring size being formed; (2) whether the bond that breaks as the ring forms is inside (endo) or outside (exo) the new ring; and (3) whether the electrophile is an sp (digonal), sp$^2$ (trigonal), or sp$^3$ (tetrahedral) atom. This system places three of the cyclizations just shown in the following classes.

1. The ring being formed has three members; the breaking C–Br bond is outside the new ring (exo); the C carrying Br is a tetrahedral (sp$^3$) atom (tet)

2. The ring being formed has five members; the breaking C=O bond is outside the new ring (exo); the C being attacked is a trigonal (sp$^2$) atom (trig)

3. The ring being formed has six members; the breaking C≡C bond is inside the new ring (endo); the C being attacked is a digonal (sp) atom (dig)

The classes of cyclization reactions are important, not because we have a compulsive Victorian desire to classify everything, but because which class a reaction falls into determines whether or not it is likely to work. Not all cyclizations are successful, even though they may look fine on paper! The guidelines that describe which reactions will work are known as **Baldwin’s rules**: they are not really rules in the Woodward–Hoffmann sense of the term, but more empirical observations backed up by some sound stereoelectronic reasoning. To emphasize this, the rules are couched in terms of ‘favoured’ and ‘disfavoured’, rather than ‘allowed’ and ‘forbidden’. We will deal with the rules step by step and then summarize them in a table at the end.

Firstly, and not surprisingly (because we have been talking about them for much of this chapter):

- **All exo-tet cyclizations are favoured.**

and, similarly (again you can find many examples in this book):

- **All exo-trig cyclizations are favoured.**
Despite the variation in rate we have described for this type of reaction, exo-tet cyclizations have no stereoelectronic problems: the lone pair and the C–X $\sigma^*$ (X is the leaving group) can overlap successfully irrespective of ring size. The ring closures in Table 42.2 all fall into this category.

The same is true for exo-trig reactions: it is easy for the nucleophilic lone pair to overlap with the C=X $\pi^*$ to form a new bond. Examples include lactone formation such as the one on p. 000.

Endo-tet reactions are rather different. For a start:

- **5- and 6-endo-tet are disfavoured.**

Endo-tet reactions would not actually make a ring, but they fall conveniently into the system and we will look at them here. Here is a reaction that looks as though it contradicts what we have just said. The arrows in the reasonable-looking mechanism on the right describe a 6-endo-tet process, because the breaking Me–O bond is within the six-membered ring transition state (even if no ring is formed).

![6-endo-tet mechanism](image)

But Eschenmoser showed that, for all its appeal (intramolecular reactions usually outpace all alternatives), this mechanism is wrong. He mixed together the starting material for the reaction above with the hexadeuterated compound shown below, and re-ran the reaction. If the reaction had been intramolecular, the products would have contained either no deuterium, or six deuteriums. In the event, the product mixture contained about 25% of each of these compounds, with a further 50% containing three deuteriums. The products cannot have been formed intramolecularly, and this distribution is exactly what would be expected from an intermolecular reaction.

![Intermolecular reaction](image)

With endo-trig reactions, whether they work or not depends on the ring size.

- **3-, 4-, and 5-endo-trig are disfavoured; 6- and 7-endo-trig are favoured.**

The most important reaction of the endo-trig class is the disfavoured 5-endo-trig reaction and, if there is one message you take away from this section, it should be that 5-endo-trig reactions are...
disfavoured. The reason we say this is that 5-endotrig cyclizations are reactions that look perfectly fine on paper, and at first sight it seems quite surprising that they won’t work. This intramolecular conjugate addition, for example, appears to be a reasonable way of making a substituted pyrrolidine.

But this reaction doesn’t happen: instead, the amine attacks the carbonyl group in a (favoured) 5-exotrig cyclization.

Why is 5-endotrig so bad? The problem is that the nitrogen’s lone pair has problems reaching round to the π* orbital of the Michael acceptor. There is no problem reaching as far as the electrophilic carbon in the plane of the substituents but, if it bends out of this plane, which it must if it is to overlap with the π* orbitals, it moves too far away from the methylene carbon to react. It’s like a dog chained just out of reach of a bone.

Lengthen the chain, though, and the dog gets his dinner. Here’s a perfectly straightforward 6-endotrig, for which orbital overlap presents no problem.

**Exceptions to Baldwin’s rules**

Baldwin’s rules are only guidelines and, when a reaction is thermodynamically very favourable (Baldwin’s rules, of course, describe the kinetic favourability of a reaction) and there is no other possible pathway, 5-endotrig reactions can take place. The most striking example is one that you met quite early on in this book (Chapter 14): the formation of a cyclic acetal (dioxolane) from a carbonyl compound and ethylene glycol.

We don’t need to give again the full mechanism here, but you should check that you can still write it. The key step with regard to Baldwin’s rules is shown with a green arrow. It’s a 5-endotrig reaction but it works!

In fact, cations frequently disobey Baldwin’s rules. Other well-defined exceptions to Baldwin’s rules include pericyclic reactions and reactions in which second-row atoms such as sulfur are included in the ring. This 5-endotrig reaction, the sulfur analogue of the amine cyclization that didn’t work, is fine. C-S bonds are long, and the empty 3d orbitals of sulfur may play a role by providing an initial interaction with the C-C π orbital.
With *tet* and *trig* cyclizations, *exo* is better than *endo*; with *dig* cyclizations, the reverse is true.

- **All endo-dig cyclizations are favoured.**

Move from 5-*endo-trig* to 5-*endo-dig*, and the reactions become much easier: even 4-*endo-dig* reactions work. Here is an example of 5-*endo-dig*.

![Cyclization diagram](image)

We warned you to look out for 5-*endo-trig* reactions because they are disfavoured even though on paper they look fine. Now the alert is the other way round! We expect you’d agree that these *endo-dig* reactions look awful on paper: the linear alkyne seems to put the electrophilic carbon well out of reach of the nucleophile, even further away than in the 5-*endo-trig* reaction. The important thing with *endo-dig* cyclizations, though, is that the alkyne has two $\pi^*$ orbitals, one of which must always lie in the plane of the new ring, making it much easier for the nucleophile to get at.

Conversely:

- **3- and 4-*exo-dig* are disfavoured; 5- to 7-*exo-dig* are favoured.**

These reactions are less important and we will not discuss them in detail.

**Baldwin’s rules and ring opening**

Baldwin’s rules work because they are based on whether or not orbital overlap can be readily achieved in the conformation required at the transition state. You met in the last chapter the **principle of microscopic reversibility**, which says that, if a reaction goes via a certain mechanism, the reverse reaction must follow exactly the same path in the opposite direction. So Baldwin’s rules also work for ring-opening reactions. This is where the unfavourability of 5-*endo-trig* really is important: this tetrahydrofuranyl ester, for example, looks set up to do an E1cB elimination in base. Indeed, when it is treated with methoxide in deuterated methanol it exchanges the proton $\alpha$ to the ester for deuterium, proving that the enolate forms. But it does not eliminate: elimination would be a reverse 5-*endo-trig* process and is disfavoured.

Whenever you think about a ring-opening reaction, consider its reverse, and think whether it is favoured according to Baldwin’s rules.
To summarize

We shall end by summarizing Baldwin’s rules in a chart. You should note the general outline of this chart: commit to memory that, broadly speaking, endo-tet and endo-trig are disfavoured; exo-tet and exo-trig are favoured, and the reverse for dig. Then you just need to learn the cut-off points that indicate the exceptions to this broad-brush view: 6-endo-trig falls into the favoured category while 5-exo-dig falls into the disfavoured one. And, if you really can remember only one thing, it should be that 5-endo-trig is disfavoured!

In the next two chapters, we continue with heterocycles, but move from saturated ones to flat, aromatic ones. Conformation and stereoelectronics are no longer issues, but molecular orbitals certainly are. In Chapter 44 you will meet many cyclization reactions: you will find that not a single one is Baldwin-disfavoured.

Problems

1. Predict the most favourable conformations of these insect pheromones.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{OH}
\]

2. Refluxing cyclohexanone with ethanolamine in toluene with a Dean Stark separator to remove the water gives an excellent yield of this spirocycle. What is the mechanism, and why is acid catalysis (or any other kind) unnecessary?

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{HO} \quad \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{O} \quad \text{HO} \quad \text{NH}_2
\]
toluene, reflux distil off water

94% yield

3. What is A in the following reaction scheme and how does it react to give the final product?

\[
\text{BuLi} \quad \text{A} \quad \text{PhS} \quad \text{Cl}
\]

4. Give mechanisms for the formation of this spiro heterocycle. Why is the product not formed simply on reacting the starting materials in acid solution without Me₃Al?

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{HS} \quad \text{SH} \quad \text{HO} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{Me}_3\text{Al} \\
25^\circ \text{C}
\]

5. The Lolium alkaloids have a striking skeleton of saturated heterocycles. One way to make this skeleton is shown below. Explain both the mechanism and the stereochemistry.

\[
\text{NHMe} \quad \text{N} \\
\text{Br}_2
\]
a Lolium alkaloid

6. Explain the stereochemical control in this synthesis of a fused bicyclic saturated heterocycle—the trail pheromone of an ant.

\[
\text{O} \quad \text{Bu} \quad \text{O} \\
\text{O} \quad \text{H}_2, \text{Pd/C}
\]

Continued opposite
7. In Chapter 31, one of the problems asked you to comment on the difference between these two reactions. Now would you like to comment again and add comments on the way we drew the starting materials.

8. In Chapter 32, Problem 6, we asked you to work out the stereochemistry of a sugar. One of the sugar components in the antibiotic kijanimycin has the gross structure and NMR spectrum shown below. What is its stereochemistry? Signals marked * exchange with D₂O.

δ₀ H 1.33 p.p.m. (3H, d, J 6 Hz), 1.61* p.p.m. (1H, broad s), 1.87 p.p.m. (1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 3.5 Hz), 2.21 p.p.m. (1H, ddd, J 14, 3, 1.5 Hz), 2.87 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J 10, 3 Hz), 3.40 p.p.m. (3H, s), 3.47 p.p.m. (3H, s), 3.99 p.p.m. (1H, dq, J 10, 3 Hz), and 4.79 p.p.m. (1H, dd, J 3.5, 1.5 Hz).

When you did this problem, you probably thought about the conformation but now draw it and say why you think the molecule prefers that conformation.

9. Revision of Chapters 35 and 37. Give mechanisms for these reactions, commenting on the formation of that particular saturated heterocycle in the first reaction. What is the alternative product from the migration and why is it not formed?

10. Though the anion of dithiolane decomposes as described in the chapter and cannot be used as a d¹ reagent, the example shown here works well without any decomposition. Explain and comment on the regioselectivity of the reaction. Anions of dithianes are notorious for preferring direct to conjugate addition.

11. Propose a mechanism for this reaction. It does not occur in the absence of an ortho- or a para-OH group.

12. Explain why this cyclization gives a preponderance (3:1) of the oxetane though the tetrahydrofuran is much more stable.

13. Reduction of this keto-ester with LiAlH₄ gives a mixture of diastereoisomers of the diol. Treatment with TsCl and pyridine at −25 °C gives a monotosylate from each. Treatment of these with base leads to the two very different products shown. Explain.

14. Draw a mechanism for the following multistep reaction. Do the cyclization steps follow Baldwin’s rules? What other stereo-electronic effects are involved?

15. Consider the question of Baldwin’s rules for each of these reactions. Why do you think they are successful?
Aromatic heterocycles 1: structures and reactions

Introduction

Benzene is aromatic because it has six electrons in a cyclic conjugated system. We know it is aromatic because it is exceptionally stable and it has a ring current and hence large chemical shifts in the proton NMR spectrum as well as a special chemistry involving substitution rather than addition with electrophiles. This chapter and the next are about the very large number of other aromatic systems in which one or more atoms in the benzene ring are replaced by heteroatoms such as N, O, and S. There are thousands of these systems with five- and six-membered rings, and we will examine just a few.

Our subject is aromatic heterocycles and it is important that we treat it seriously because most—probably about two-thirds of—organic compounds belong to this class, and they number among them some of the most significant compounds for human beings. If we think only of drugs we can define the history of medicine by heterocycles. Even in the sixteenth century quinine was used to prevent and treat malaria, though the structure of the drug was not known. The first synthetic drug was antipyrine (1887) for the reduction of fevers. The first effective antibiotic was sulfapyridine (1938). The first multi-million pound drug (1970s) was Tagamet, the anti-ulcer drug, and among the most topical of current drugs is Viagra (1997) for treatment of male impotence.
All these compounds have heterocyclic aromatic rings shown in black. Three have single rings, five- or six-membered, two have five- or six-membered rings fused together. The number of nitrogens in the rings varies from one to four. We will start by looking at the simple six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom. This is pyridine and the drug sulfapyridine is an example.

Aromaticity survives when parts of benzene’s ring are replaced by nitrogen atoms

There is no doubt that benzene is aromatic. Now we must ask: how can we insert a heteroatom into the ring and retain aromaticity? What kind of atom is needed? If we want to replace one of the carbon atoms of benzene with a heteroatom, we need an atom that can be trigonal to keep the flat hexagonal ring and that has a p orbital to keep the six delocalized electrons. Nitrogen is ideal so we can imagine replacing a CH group in benzene with a nitrogen atom. The orbitals in the ring have not changed in position or shape and we still have the six electrons from the three double bonds. One obvious difference is that nitrogen is trivalent and thus there is no NH bond. Instead, a lone pair of electrons occupies the space of the C–H bond in benzene.

In theory then, pyridine is aromatic. But is it in real life? The most important evidence comes from the proton NMR spectrum. The six protons of benzene resonate at $\delta_H 7.27$ p.p.m., some 2 p.p.m. downfield from the alkene region, clear evidence for a ring current (Chapter 11). Pyridine is not as symmetrical as benzene but the three types of proton all resonate in the same region.

As we will see, pyridine is also very stable and, by any reasonable assessment, pyridine is aromatic. We could continue the process of replacing, on paper, more CH groups with nitrogen atoms, and would find three new aromatic heterocycles—pyridazine, pyrimidine, and pyrazine:

There is another way in which we might transform benzene into a heterocycle. Nitrogen has a lone pair of electrons so we could replace a CH=CH unit in benzene by a nitrogen atom providing that we can use the lone pair in the delocalized system. This means putting it into a p orbital.

We still have the four electrons from the remaining double bonds and, with the two electrons of the lone pair on nitrogen, that makes six in all. The nitrogen atom must still be trigonal with the lone pair in a p orbital so the N–H bond is in the plane of the five-membered ring.

The NMR of pyrrole is slightly less convincing as the two types of proton on the ring resonate at higher field (6.5 and 6.2 p.p.m.) than those of benzene or pyridine but they still fall in the aromatic rather than the alkene region. Pyrrole is also more reactive towards electrophiles than benzene or
Pyridine is a very unreactive aromatic imine

The nitrogen atom in the pyridine ring is planar and trigonal with the lone pair in the plane of the ring. This makes it an imine. Most of the imines you have met before (in Chapter 14, for example), have been unstable intermediates in carbonyl group reactions, but in pyridine we have a stable imine—stable because of its aromaticity. All imines are more weakly basic than saturated amines and pyridine is a weak base with a $pK_a$ of 5.5. This means that the pyridinium ion is about as strong an acid as a carboxylic acid.

Pyridine is nucleophilic at the nitrogen atom because the lone pair of electrons on nitrogen cannot be delocalized around the ring. They are in an $sp^2$ orbital orthogonal to the p orbitals in the ring and there is no interaction between orthogonal orbitals. Try it for yourself, drawing arrows. All attempts to delocalize the electrons lead to impossible results!

- The lone pair of pyridine’s nitrogen atom is not delocalized.
Our main interest must be this: what does the nitrogen atom do to the rest of the ring? The important orbitals—the p orbitals of the aromatic system—are superficially the same as in benzene, but the more electronegative nitrogen atom will lower the energy of all the orbitals. Lower-energy filled orbitals mean a less reactive nucleophile but a lower-energy LUMO means a more reactive electrophile. This is a good guide to the chemistry of pyridine. It is less reactive than benzene in electrophilic aromatic substitution reactions but nucleophilic substitution, which is difficult for benzene, comes easily to pyridine.

Pyridine is bad at electrophilic aromatic substitution

The lower energy of the orbitals of pyridine’s π system means that electrophilic attack on the ring is difficult. Another way to look at this is to see that the nitrogen atom destabilizes the cationic would-be intermediate, especially at the 2- and 4-positions. An equally serious problem is that the nitrogen lone pair is basic and a reasonably good nucleophile—this is the basis for its role as a nucleophilic catalyst in acylations. The normal reagents for electrophilic substitution reactions, such as nitration, are acidic. Treatment of pyridine with the usual mixture of HNO₃ and H₂SO₄ merely protonates the nitrogen atom. Pyridine itself is not very reactive towards electrophiles: the pyridinium ion is totally unreactive.

Other reactions, such as Friedel–Crafts acylations, require Lewis acids and these too react at nitrogen. Pyridine is a good ligand for metals such as Al(III) or Sn(IV) and, once again, the complex with its cationic nitrogen is completely unreactive towards electrophiles.

Nucleophilic substitution is easy with pyridines

By contrast, the nitrogen atom makes pyridines more reactive towards nucleophilic substitution, particularly at the 2- and 4-positions, by lowering the LUMO energy of the π system of pyridine. You can see this effect in action in the ease of replacement of halogens in these positions by nucleophiles.
The intermediate anion is stabilized by electronegative nitrogen and by delocalization round the ring. These reactions have some similarity to nucleophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 23) but are more similar to carbonyl reactions. The intermediate anion is a tetrahedral intermediate that loses the best leaving group to regenerate the stable aromatic system. Nucleophiles such as amines or thiolate anions work well in these reactions.

The leaving group does not have to be as good as chloride in these reactions. Continuing the analogy with carbonyl reactions, 2- and 4-chloropyridines are rather like acid chlorides but we need only use less reactive pyridyl ethers, which react like esters, to make amides. The 2- and 4-methoxypyridines allow the completion of the synthesis of flupirtilne.

The first step is a nucleophilic aromatic substitution. In the second step the nitro group is reduced to an amino group without any effect on the pyridine ring—another piece of evidence for its aromaticity. Finally, one amino group is acylated in the presence of three others.

**Pyridones are good substrates for nucleophilic substitution**

The starting materials for these nucleophilic substitutions (2- and 4-chloro or methoxypyridines) are themselves made by nucleophilic substitution on pyridones and we need now to discuss these interesting molecules. If you were asked to propose how 2-methoxypyridine might be made, you would probably suggest, by analogy with the corresponding benzene compound, alkylation of a phenol. Let us look at this in detail.

The starting material for this reaction is a 2-hydroxypyridine that can tautomerize to an amide-like structure by the shift of the acidic proton from oxygen to nitrogen. In the phenol series there is no doubt about which structure will be stable as the ketone is not aromatic; for the pyridine both structures are aromatic.
In fact, 2-hydroxypyridine prefers to exist as the ‘amide’ because that has the advantage of a strong C=O bond and is still aromatic. There are two electrons in each of the C=C double bonds and two also in the lone pair of electrons on the trigonal nitrogen atom of the amide. Delocalization of the lone pair in typical amide style makes the point clearer.

Pyridones are easy to prepare (see Chapter 44) and can be alkylated on oxygen as predicted by their structure. A more important reaction is the direct conversion to chloropyridines with POCl₃. The reaction starts by attack of the oxygen atom at phosphorus to create a leaving group, followed by aromatic nucleophilic substitution. The overall effect is very similar to acyl chloride formation from a carboxylic acid.

The same reaction occurs with 4-pyridone, which is also delocalized in the same way and exists in the ‘amide’ form; but not with 3-hydroxypyridine, which exists in the ‘phenol’ form.

Pyridines can undergo nucleophilic substitution only if they are activated by electron-donating substituents (see next section) but they readily undergo nucleophilic substitution without any activation other than the ring nitrogen atom.

Activated pyridines will do electrophilic aromatic substitution

Useful electrophilic substitutions occur only on pyridines having electron-donating substituents such as NH₂ or OMe. These activate benzene rings too (Chapter 22) but here their help is vital. They supply a nonbonding pair of electrons that becomes the HOMO and carries out the reaction. Simple amino- or methoxypyridines react reasonably well ortho and para to the activating group. These reactions happen in spite of the molecule being a pyridine, not because of it.
A practical example occurs in the manufacture of the analgesic flupirtine where a doubly activated pyridine having both MeO and NH₂ groups is nitrated just as if it were a benzene ring. The nitro group goes in *ortho* to the amino group and *para* to the methoxy group. This sequence is completed in the next section. The activation is evidently enough to compensate for the molecule being almost entirely protonated under the conditions of the reaction.

![Image of flupirtine nitration](image)

**Pyridine N-oxides are reactive towards both electrophilic and nucleophilic substitution**

This is all very well if the molecule has such activating groups, but supposing it doesn’t? How are we to nitrate pyridine itself? The answer involves an ingenious trick. We need to activate the ring with an electron-rich substituent that can later be removed and we also need to stop the nitrogen atom reacting with the electrophile. All of this can be done with a single atom!

Because the nitrogen atom is nucleophilic, pyridine can be oxidized to pyridine N-oxide with reagents such as *m*-CPBA or just H₂O₂ in acetic acid. These N-oxides are stable dipolar species with the electrons on oxygen delocalized round the pyridine ring, raising the HOMO of the molecule. Reaction with electrophiles occurs at the 2- (*ortho*) and 4- (*para*) positions, chiefly at the 4-position to keep away from positively charged nitrogen.

![Image of pyridine N-oxide formation](image)

Now the oxide must be removed and this is best done with trivalent phosphorus compounds such as (MeO)₃P or PCl₃. The phosphorus atom detaches the oxygen atom in a single step to form the very stable P=O double bond. In this reaction the phosphorus atom is acting as both a nucleophile and an electrophile, but mainly as an electrophile since PCl₃ is more reactive here than (MeO)₃P.
The same activation that allowed simple electrophilic substitution—oxidation to the \( N \)-oxide—can also allow a useful nucleophilic substitution. The positive nitrogen atom encourages nucleophilic attack and the oxygen atom can be turned into a leaving group with \( \text{PCl}_3 \). Our example is nicotinic acid whose biological importance we will discuss in Chapter 50.

The \( N \)-oxide reacts with \( \text{PCl}_3 \) through oxygen and the chloride ion released in this reaction adds to the most electrophilic position between the two electron-withdrawing groups. Now a simple elimination restores aromaticity and gives a product looking as though it results from chlorination rather than nucleophilic attack.

The reagent \( \text{PCl}_3 \) also converts the carboxylic acid to the acyl chloride, which is hydrolysed back again in the last step. This is a useful sequence because the chlorine atom has been introduced into the 2-position from which it may in turn be displaced by, for example, amines.

**Pyridine-\( N \)-oxides**

Pyridine \( N \)-oxides are useful for both electrophilic and nucleophilic substitutions on the same carbon atoms (2-, 4-, and 6-) in the ring.

Nucleophilic addition at an even more distant site is possible on reaction with acid anhydrides if there is an alkyl group in the 2-position. Acylation occurs on oxygen as in the last reaction but then a proton is lost from the side chain to give an uncharged intermediate.
This compound rearranges with migration of the acetate group to the side chain and the restoration of aromaticity. This may be an ionic reaction or a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement.

Since pyridine is abundant and cheap and has an extremely rich chemistry, it is not surprising that it has many applications.

Some applications of pyridine chemistry

One of the simplest ways to brominate benzenes is not to bother with the Lewis acid catalysts recommended in Chapter 22 but just to add liquid bromine to the aromatic compound in the presence of a small amount of pyridine. Only about one mole per cent is needed and even then the reaction has to be cooled to stop it getting out of hand.

As we have seen, pyridine attacks electrophiles through its nitrogen atom. This produces the reactive species, the N-bromo-pyridinium ion, which is attacked by the benzene. Pyridine is a better nucleophile than benzene and a better leaving group than bromide. This is another example of nucleophilic catalysis.

Another way to use pyridine in brominations is to make a stable crystalline compound to replace the dangerous liquid bromine. This compound, known by names such as pyridinium tribromide, is simply a salt of pyridine with the anion Br₃⁻. It can be used to brominate reactive compounds such as alkenes (Chapter 20).

Both of these methods depend on the lack of reactivity of pyridine’s π system towards electrophiles such as bromine. Notice that, in the first case, both benzene and pyridine are
present together. The pyridine attacks bromine only through nitrogen (and reversibly at that) and never through carbon.

Oxidation of alcohols is normally carried out with Cr(VI) reagents (Chapter 24) but these, like the Jones' reagent (Na₂Cr₂O₇ in sulfuric acid), are usually acidic. Some pyridine complexes of Cr(VI) compounds solve this problem by having the pyridinium ion (pKₐ 5) as the only acid. The two most famous are ‘PDC’ (Pyridinium DiChromate) and ‘PCC’ (Pyridinium Chlorochromate). Pyridine forms a complex with CrO₃ but this is liable to burst into flames. Treatment with HCl gives PCC, which is much less dangerous. PCC is particularly useful in the oxidation of primary alcohols to aldehydes as overoxidation is avoided in the only slightly acidic conditions (Chapter 24).

The ability of pyridine to form metal complexes is greatly enhanced in a dimer—the famous ligand ‘bipy’ or 2,2′-bipyridyl. It is bidentate and because of its ‘bite’ it is a good ligand for many transition metals but shows a partiality for Fe(II).

Six-membered aromatic heterocycles can have oxygen in the ring

Though pyridine is overwhelmingly the most important of the six-membered aromatic heterocycles, there are oxygen heterocycles, pyrones, that resemble the pyridones. The pyrones are aromatic, though α-pyrone is rather unstable.
The pyrilium salts are stable aromatic cations and are responsible as metal complexes for some flower colours. Heterocycles with six-membered rings based on other elements (for example, P) do exist but they are outside the scope of this book.

Five-membered heterocycles are good nucleophiles

Just about everything is the other way round with pyrrole. Electrophilic substitution is much easier than it is with benzene—almost too easy in fact—while nucleophilic substitution is more difficult. Pyrrole is not a base nor can it be converted to an N-oxide. We need to find out why this is.

The big difference is that the nitrogen lone pair is delocalized round the ring. The NMR spectrum suggests that all the positions in the ring are about equally electron-rich with chemical shifts about 1 p.p.m. smaller than those of benzene. The ring is flat and the bond lengths are very similar, though the bond opposite the nitrogen atom is a bit longer than the others.

The delocalization of the lone pair can be drawn equally well to any ring atom because of the five-membered ring and we shall soon see the consequences of this. All the delocalization pushes electrons from the nitrogen atom into the ring and we expect the ring to be electron-rich at the expense of the nitrogen atom. The HOMO should go up in energy and the ring become more nucleophilic.

An obvious consequence of this delocalization is the decreased basicity of the nitrogen atom and the increased acidity of the NH group as a whole. In fact, the $pK_a$ of pyrrole acting as a base is about −4 and protonation occurs at carbon. The NH proton can be removed by much weaker bases than those that can remove protons on normal secondary amines.

The nucleophilic nature of the ring means that pyrrole is attacked readily by electrophiles. Reaction with bromine requires no Lewis acid and leads to substitution (confirming the aromaticity of pyrrole) at all four free positions.

This is a fine reaction in its way, but we don’t usually want four bromine atoms in a molecule so one problem with pyrrole is to control the reaction to give only monosubstitution. Another problem is that strong acids cannot be used. Though protonation does not occur at nitrogen, it does occur at carbon and the protonated pyrrole then adds another molecule like this.

Pyrrole polymerizes!

Strong acids, those such as $H_2SO_4$ with a $pK_a$ of less than −4, cannot be used without polymerization of pyrrole.
Some reactions can be controlled to give good yields of monosubstituted products. One is the Vilsmeier reaction in which a combination of an N,N-dimethylamide and POCl₃ is used to make a carbon electrophile in the absence of strong acid or Lewis acid. It is a substitute for the Friedel–Crafts acylation, and works with aromatic compounds at the more reactive end of the scale (where pyrrole is).

In the first step, the amide reacts with POCl₃ which makes off with the amide oxygen atom and replaces it with chlorine. This process would be very unfavourable but for the formation of the strong P–O bond, and is the direct analogy of the chloropyridine-forming reaction you have just seen.

The product from this first step is an iminium cation that reacts with pyrrole to give a more stable iminium salt. The extra stability comes from the conjugation between the pyrrole nitrogen and the iminium group.

The work-up with aqueous Na₂CO₃ hydrolys the imine salt and removes any acid formed. This method is particularly useful because it works well with Me₂NCHO (DMF) to add a formyl (CHO) group. This is difficult to do with a conventional Friedel–Crafts reaction.

You may have noticed that the reaction occurred only at the 2-position on pyrrole. Though all positions react with reagents like bromine, more selective reagents usually go for the 2- (or 5-) position and attack the 3- (or 4-) position only if the 2- and 5-positions are blocked. A good example is the Mannich reaction (Chapter 27). In these two examples N-methylpyrrole reacts cleanly at the 2-position while the other pyrrole with both 2- and 5-positions blocked by methyl groups reacts cleanly at the 3-position. These reactions are used in the manufacture of the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory compounds, tolmetin and clopirac.
Now we need an explanation. The mechanisms for both 2- and 3-substitutions look good and we will draw both, using a generalized E⁺ as the electrophile.

Both mechanisms can occur very readily. Reaction in the 2-position is somewhat better than in the 3-position but the difference is small. Substitution is favoured at all positions. Calculations show that the HOMO of pyrrole does indeed have a larger coefficient in the 2-position but that is very much a theoretical chemist’s answer, which organic chemists cannot reproduce easily. One way to understand the result is to look at the structure of the intermediates. The intermediate from attack at the 2-position has a linear conjugated system. In both intermediates the two double bonds are, of course, conjugated with each other, but only in the first intermediate are both double bonds conjugated with N⁺. The second intermediate is ‘cross-conjugated’, while the first has a more stable linear conjugated system.

Since electrophilic substitution on pyrroles occurs so easily, it can be useful to block substitution with a removable substituent. This is usually done with an ester group. Hydrolysis of the ester (this is particularly easy with t-butyl esters—see Chapter 24) releases the carboxylic acid, which decarboxylates on heating.

The decarboxylation is a kind of reverse Friedel–Crafts reaction in which the electrophile is a proton (provided by the carboxylic acid itself) and the leaving group is carbon dioxide. The protonation may occur anywhere but it leads to reaction only if it occurs where there is a CO₂H group.

Furan and thiophene are oxygen and sulfur analogues of pyrrole

The other simple five-membered heterocycles are furan, with an oxygen atom instead of nitrogen, and thiophene with a sulfur atom. They also undergo electrophilic aromatic substitution very readily, though not so readily as pyrrole. Nitrogen is the most powerful electron donor of the three, oxygen the next, and sulfur the least. Thiophene is very similar to benzene in reactivity.

You may be surprised that thiophene is the least reactive of the three but this is because the p orbital of the lone pair of electrons on sulfur that conjugates with the ring is a 3p orbital rather than the 2p orbital of N or O, so overlap with the 2p orbitals on carbon is less good. Both furan and thiophene undergo more or less normal Friedel–Crafts reactions though the less reactive anhydrides are used instead of acid chlorides, and weaker Lewis acids than AlCl₃ are preferred.
Notice that the regioselectivity is the same as it was with pyrrole—the 2-position is more reactive than the 3-position in both cases. The product ketones are less reactive towards electrophiles than the starting heterocycles and deactivated furans can even be nitrated with the usual reagents used for benzene derivatives. Notice that reaction has occurred at the 5-position in spite of the presence of the ketone. The preference for 2- and 5-substitution is quite marked.

So far, thiophenes and furans look much the same as pyrrole but there are other reactions in which they behave quite differently and we shall now concentrate on those.

**Electrophilic addition may be preferred to substitution with furan**

Furan is not very aromatic and if there is the prospect of forming stable bonds such as C–O single bonds by addition, this may be preferred to substitution. A famous example is the reaction of furan with bromine in methanol. In nonhydroxylic solvents, polybromination occurs as expected, but in MeOH no bromine is added at all!

Bromination must start in the usual way, but a molecule of methanol captures the first formed cation in a 1,4-addition to furan.

The bromine atom that was originally added is now pushed out by the furan oxygen atom to make a relatively stable conjugated oxonium ion, which adds a second molecule of methanol.

This product conceals an interesting molecule. At each side of the ring we have an acetal, and if we were to hydrolyse the acetals, we would have ‘maleic dialdehyde’ (cis-butenedial)—a molecule that is too unstable to be isolated. The furan derivative may be used in its place.

The same 1,4-dialdehyde can be made by oxidizing furan with the mild oxidizing agent dimethyl-dioxirane, which you met on p. 000. In this sequence, it is trapped in a Wittig reaction to give an \( E,Z \)-dienen, which is easily isomerized to \( E,E \).
We can extend this idea of furan being the origin of 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds if we consider that furan is, in fact, an enol ether on both sides of the ring. If these enol ethers were hydrolysed we would get a 1,4-diketone.

This time the arrow is solid, not dotted, because this reaction really happens. You will discover in the next chapter that furans can also be made from 1,4-diketones so this whole process is reversible. The example we are choosing has other features worth noting. The cheapest starting material containing a furan is furan-2-aldehyde or 'furfural', a by-product of breakfast cereal manufacture. Here it reacts in a typical Wittig process with a stabilized ylid.

Now comes the interesting step: treatment of this furan with acidic methanol gives a white crystalline compound having two 1,4-dicarbonyl relationships.

The thiophene ring can also be opened up, but in a very different way. Reductive removal of the sulfur atom with Raney nickel (Chapter 24) reduces not only the C–S bonds but also the double bonds in the ring and we are left with a saturated alkyl chain.

If the reduction follows two Friedel–Crafts reactions on thiophene the product is a 1,6-diketone instead of the 1,4-diketones from furan. Thiophene is well behaved in Friedel–Crafts acylations, and reaction occurs at the 2- and 5-positions unless these are blocked.

### Lithiation of thiophenes and furans

A reaction that furans and thiophenes do particularly well and that fits well with these last two reactions is metallation, particularly lithiation, of a C–H group next to the heteroatom and we will discuss this next. Lithiation of benzene rings (Chapter 9) is carried out by lithium–halogen (Br or I) exchange—a method that works well for heterocycles too as
we will see later with pyridine—or by directed (‘ortho’) lithiation of a C–H group next to an activating group such as OMe. With thiophene and furan, the heteroatom in the ring provides the necessary activation.

Activation is by coordination of O or S to Li followed by proton removal by the butyl group so that the by-product is gaseous butane. These lithium compounds have a carbon–lithium $\sigma$ bond and are soluble in organic solvents with the coordination sphere of Li completed by THF molecules.

These lithium compounds are very reactive and will combine with most electrophiles—in this example the organolithium is alkylated by a benzylic halide. Treatment with aqueous acid gives the 1,4-diketone by hydrolysis of the two enol ethers.

Treatment of this diketone with anhydrous acid would cause recyclization to the same furan (see Chapter 44) but it can alternatively be cyclized in base by an intramolecular aldol reaction (Chapter 27) to give a cyclopentenone.

This completes our exploration of chemistry special to thiophene and furan and we now return to all three heterocycles (pyrrole in particular) and look at nucleophilic substitution.

**More reactions of five-membered heterocycles**

**Nucleophilic substitution requires an activating group**

Nucleophilic substitution is a relatively rare reaction with pyrrole, thiophene, or furan and requires an activating group such as nitro, carbonyl, or sulfonyl, just as it does with benzene (Chapter 23). Here is an intramolecular example used to make the painkiller ketorolac.

The nucleophile is a stable enolate and the leaving group is a sulfinate anion. An intermediate must be formed in which the negative charge is delocalized on to the carbonyl group on the ring, just as you saw in the benzene ring examples in Chapter 23. Attack occurs at the 2-position because the
leaving group is there and because the negative charge can be delocalized on to the ketone from that position—there is no inherent preference for attack at the 2- or 5-position.

So far, all of the reactions we have discussed have been variations on reactions of benzene. These heterocycles also do reactions totally unlike those of benzene and we are now going to explore two of them.

**Five-membered heterocycles act as dienes in Diels–Alder reactions**

Furan is particularly good at Diels–Alder reactions but it gives the thermodynamic product, the *exo* adduct, because with this aromatic diene the reaction is reversible (Chapter 35).

If pyrrole would do a similar thermodynamically controlled *exo* Diels–Alder reaction with a vinyl pyridine, a short route to the interesting analgesic epibatidine could be imagined, with just a simple reduction of the remaining alkene left to do. The reaction looks promising as the pyridine makes the dienophile electron-deficient and pyrrole is an electron-rich ‘diene’.

If pyrrole would do a similar thermodynamically controlled *exo* Diels–Alder reaction with a vinyl pyridine, a short route to the interesting analgesic epibatidine could be imagined, with just a simple reduction of the remaining alkene left to do. The reaction looks promising as the pyridine makes the dienophile electron-deficient and pyrrole is an electron-rich ‘diene’.

The trouble is that pyrrole will not do this reaction as it is so good at electrophilic substitution. What happens instead is that pyrrole acts as a nucleophile and attacks the electron-deficient alkene. The answer is to make pyrrole less nucleophilic by acylating the nitrogen atom with the famous ‘Boc’ protecting group (Chapter 24). We will see in the next section how this may be done. A good Diels–Alder reaction then occurs with a alkynyl sulfone.

It is then possible to reduce the nonconjugated double bond chemoselectively and add a pyridine nucleophile to the vinyl sulfone. Notice in this step that a lithium derivative can be prepared from a bromopyridine. In general, heterocycles form lithium derivatives rather easily. The skeleton of epibatidine is now complete and you will find some further reactions from the rest of the synthesis in the problems at the end of this chapter.
Aromaticity prevents thiophene taking part in Diels–Alder reactions, but oxidation to the sulfone destroys the aromaticity because both lone pairs become involved in bonds to oxygen. The sulfone is unstable and reacts with itself but will also do Diels–Alder reactions with dienophiles. If the dienophile is an alkyne, loss of SO₂ gives a substituted benzene derivative.

Similar reactions occur with α-pyrones. These are also rather unstable and barely aromatic and they react with alkynes by Diels–Alder reactions followed by reverse Diels–Alder reaction to give benzene derivatives with the loss of CO₂ rather than SO₂.

Nitrogen anions can be easily made from pyrrole

Pyrrole is much more acidic than comparable saturated amines. The pKₐ of pyrrolidine is about 35, but pyrrole has a pKₐ of 16.5 making it some 10²⁵ times more acidic! Pyrrole is about as acidic as a typical alcohol so bases stronger than alkoxides will convert it to its anion. We should not be too surprised at this as the corresponding hydrocarbon, cyclopentadiene, is also extremely acidic with a pKₐ of 15. The reason is that the anions are aromatic with six delocalized π electrons. The effect is much greater for cyclopentadiene because the hydrocarbon is not aromatic and much less for pyrrole because it is already aromatic and has less to gain.

In all of the reactions of pyrrole that we have so far seen, new groups have added to the carbon atoms of the ring. The anion of pyrrole is useful because it reacts at nitrogen. The nitrogen atom has two lone pairs of electrons in the anion: one is delocalized around the ring but the other is localized in an sp² orbital on nitrogen. This high-energy pair is the new HOMO and this is where the molecule reacts.

N-acylated derivatives in general can be made in this way. A commonly used base is sodium hydride (NaH) but weaker bases produce enough anion for reaction to occur.
This is how the N-Boc pyrrole was made for use in the synthesis of epibatidine. The base used was the pyridine derivative DMAP, which you met earlier in the chapter. It has a $pK_{aH}$ of 9.7 and so produces small, equilibrating amounts of the anion as well as acting as a nucleophilic catalyst. ‘Boc anhydride’ is used as the acylating agent.

Anion formation is important in the next main section of this chapter, which is about what happens when we insert more nitrogen atoms into the pyrrole ring.

Five-membered rings with two or more nitrogen atoms

Imidazole

At the beginning of this chapter we imagined adding more nitrogen atoms to the pyrrole ring and noticed then that there were two compounds with two nitrogen atoms: pyrazole and imidazole.

Only one nitrogen atom in a five-membered ring can contribute two electrons to the aromatic sextet. The other replaces a CH group, has no hydrogen, and is like the nitrogen atom in pyridine. The black nitrogens are the pyrrole-like nitrogens; the green ones are pyridine-like. The lone pairs on the black nitrogens are delocalized round the ring; those on the green nitrogens are localized in sp² orbitals on nitrogen. We can expect these compounds to have properties intermediate between those of pyrrole and pyridine.

Imidazole is a stronger base than either pyrrole or pyridine—it has a $pK_{aH}$ of almost exactly 7, meaning that it is 50% protonated in neutral water. It is also more acidic than pyrrole, with a $pK_a$ of 14.5.

These curious results are a consequence of the 1,3 relationship between the two nitrogen atoms. Both the (protonated) cation and the (deprotonated) anion share the charge equally between the two nitrogen atoms—they are perfectly symmetrical and unusually stable.

Another way to look at the basicity of imidazole would be to say that both nitrogen atoms can act at once on the proton being attacked. It has to be the pyridine-like nitrogen that actually captures the proton but the pyrrole nitrogen can help by using its delocalized electrons like this.

A similar effect accounts for the basicity of DBU and DBN: see p. 000.
Nature makes use of this property by having imidazole groups attached to proteins in the form of the amino acid histidine and using them as nucleophilic, basic and acidic catalytic groups in enzyme reactions (this will be discussed in Chapters 49 and 50). We use this property in the same way when we add a silyl group to an alcohol. Imidazole is a popular catalyst for these reactions.

A weakly basic catalyst is needed here because we want to discriminate between the primary and secondary alcohols in the diol. Imidazole is too weak ($pK_a \approx 7$) to remove protons from an alcohol ($pK_a \approx 16$) but it can remove a proton after the OH group has attacked the silicon atom.

In fact, the imidazole is also a nucleophilic catalyst of this reaction, and the first step is substitution of Cl by imidazole—that is why the leaving group in the last scheme was shown as ‘X’. The reaction starts off like this.

The same idea leads to the use of Carbonyl DiImidazole (CDI) as a double electrophile when we want to link two nucleophiles together by a carbonyl group. Phosgene ($COCl_2$) has been used for this but it is appallingly toxic (it was used in the First World War as a poison gas with dreadful effects). CDI is safer and more controlled. In these reactions imidazole acts (twice) as a leaving group.

The amino group probably attacks first to displace one imidazole anion, which returns to deprotonate the ammonium salt. The alcohol can then attack intramolecularly displacing the second imidazole anion, which deprotonates the OH group in its turn. The other product is just two molecules of imidazole.
The relationship between the delocalized imidazole anion and imidazole itself is rather like that between an enolate anion and an enol. It will come as no surprise that imidazole tautomerizes rapidly at room temperature in solution. For the parent compound the two tautomers are the same, but with unsymmetrical imidazoles the tautomerism is more interesting. We will explore this question alongside electrophilic aromatic substitution of imidazoles.

Imidazoles with a substituent between the two nitrogen atoms (position 2) can be nitrated with the usual reagents and the product consists of a mixture of tautomers.

The initial nitration may occur at either of the remaining sites on the ring with the electrons coming from the pyrrole-like nitrogen atom. Tautomerism after nitration gives the mixture.

The tautomerism can be stopped by alkylation at one of the nitrogen atoms. If this is done in basic solution, the anion is an intermediate and the alkyl group adds to the nitrogen atom next to the nitro group. Again, it does not matter from which tautomer the anion is derived—there is only one anion delocalized over both nitrogen atoms and the nitro group. One reason for the formation of this isomer is that it has the linear conjugated system between the pyrrole-like nitrogen and the nitro group (see p. 000).

Important medicinal compounds are made in this way. The antiparasitic metronidazole comes from 2-methyl imidazole by nitration and alkylation with an epoxide in base.

The triazoles

There are two triazoles, and each has one pyrrole-like nitrogen and two pyridine-like nitrogens. Both triazoles have the possibility of tautomerism (in 1,2,3-triazole the tautomers are identical) and both give rise to a single anion.
The 1,2,4-triazole is more important because it is the basis of the best modern agricultural fungicides as well as drugs for fungal diseases in humans. The extra nitrogen atom makes it more like pyridine and so more weakly basic, but it increases its acidity so that the anion is now easy to make.

The fungicides are usually made by the addition of the triazole anion to an epoxide or other carbon electrophile. The anion normally reacts at one of the two linked nitrogen atoms (it does not matter which—the product is the same).

A modern example of an agent used against human fungal infections is Pfizer’s fluconazole, which actually contains two triazoles. The first is added as the anion to an α-chloroketone and the second is added to an epoxide made with sulfur ylid chemistry (you will meet this in Chapter 46). Note that weak bases were used to catalyse both of these reactions. Triazole is acidic enough for even NaHCO₃ to produce a small amount of the anion.

Tetrazole

There is only one isomer of tetrazole or of substituted tetrazoles, as there is only one carbon atom in the ring, though there are two tautomers. The main interest in tetrazoles is that they are rather acidic: the \( pK_a \) for the loss of the NH proton to form an anion is about 5, essentially the same as that of a carboxylic acid. The anion is delocalized over all four nitrogen atoms (as well as the one carbon atom), and four nitrogen atoms do the work of two oxygen atoms.
Because tetrazoles have similar acidities to those of carboxylic acids, they have been used in drugs as replacements for the CO$_2$H unit when the carboxylic acid has unsatisfactory properties for human medicine. A simple example is the anti-arthritis drug indomethacin whose carboxylic acid group may be replaced by a tetrazole with no loss of activity.

![Indomethacin and tetrazole substitute for indomethacin](image)

**Nitrogen atoms and explosions**

Compounds with even two or three nitrogen atoms joined together, such as diazomethane (CH$_2$N$_2$) or azides (RN$_3$), are potentially explosive because they can suddenly give off stable gaseous nitrogen. Compounds with more nitrogen atoms, such as tetrazoles, are likely to be more dangerous and few people have attempted to prepare pentazoles. The limit is reached with diazotetrazole, with the amazing formula CN$_4$! It is made by diazotization of 5-aminotetrazole, which first gives a diazonium salt.

The diazonium salt is extremely dangerous: ‘It should be emphasised that [the diazonium salt] is extremely explosive and should be handled with great care. We recommend that no more than 0.75 mmol be isolated at one time. Ethereal solutions are somewhat more stable but explosions have occurred after standing at ~70 °C for 1 hr.’ So much for that, but what about the diazo compound? It is extremely unstable and decomposes to a carbene with loss of one molecule of nitrogen and then loses two more to give...

All that is left is a carbon atom and this is one of very few ways to make carbon atoms chemically. The carbon atoms have remarkable reactions and these have been briefly studied, but the hazardous preparation of the starting materials discourages too much research. However, you will see in the next chapter that 1-aminotetrazole is a useful starting material for making an anti-allergic drug.

**Benzo-fused heterocycles**

**Indoles are benzo-fused pyrroles**

Indomethacin and its tetrazole analogue contain pyrrole rings with benzene rings fused to the side. Such bicyclic heterocyclic structures are called indoles and are our next topic. Indole itself has a benzene ring and a pyrrole ring sharing one double bond, or, if you prefer to look at it this way, it is an aromatic system with 10 electrons—eight from four double bonds and the lone pair from the nitrogen atom.

Indole is an important heterocyclic system because it is built into proteins in the form of the amino acid tryptophan (Chapter 49), because it is the basis of important drugs such as indomethacin, and because it provides the skeleton of the indole alkaloids—biologically active compounds from plants including strychnine and LSD (alkaloids are discussed in Chapter 51).

![Indole](image)

Though the first representation is more accurate, you will often see the second used in books and papers.
In many ways the chemistry of indole is that of a reactive pyrrole ring with a relatively unreactive benzene ring standing on one side—electrophilic substitution almost always occurs on the pyrrole ring, for example. But indole and pyrrole differ in one important respect. In indole, electrophilic substitution is preferred in the 3-position with almost all reagents. Halogenation, nitration, sulfonation, Friedel–Crafts acylation, and alkylation all occur cleanly at that position.

This is, of course, the reverse of what happens with pyrrole. Why should this be? A simple explanation is that reaction at the 3-position simply involves the rather isolated enamine system in the five-membered ring and does not disturb the aromaticity of the benzene ring.

The positive charge in the intermediate is, of course, delocalized round the benzene ring, but it gets its main stabilization from the nitrogen atom. It is not possible to get reaction in the 2-position without seriously disturbing the aromaticity of the benzene ring.

A simple example is the Vilsmeier formylation with DMF and POCl₃, showing that indole has similar reactivity, if different regioselectivity, to pyrrole.

If the 3-position is blocked, reaction occurs at the 2-position and this at first seems to suggest that it is all right after all to take the electrons the ‘wrong way’ round the five-membered ring. This intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation is an example.

An ingenious experiment showed that this cyclization is not as simple as it seems. If the starting material is labelled with tritium (radioactive ³H) next to the ring, the product shows exactly 50% of the label where it is expected and 50% where it is not.

To give this result, the reaction must have a symmetrical intermediate and the obvious candidate
arises from attack at the 3-position. The product is formed from the intermediate spiro compound, which has the five-membered ring at right angles to the indole ring—each CH$_2$ group has an exactly equal chance of migrating.

The migration is a pinacol-like rearrangement similar to those in Chapter 37. It is now thought that most substitutions in the 2-position go by this migration route but that some go by direct attack with disruption of the benzene ring.

A good example of indole’s 3-position preference is the Mannich reaction, which works as well with indole as it does with pyrrole or furan.

The electron-donating power of the indole and pyrrole nitrogens is never better demonstrated than in the use to which these Mannich bases (the products of the reaction) are put. You may remember that normal Mannich bases can be converted to other compounds by alkylation and substitution (see p. 000). No alkylation is needed here as the indole nitrogen can even expel the Me$_2$N group when NaCN is around as a base and nucleophile. The reaction is slow and the yield not wonderful but it is amazing that it happens at all. The reaction is even easier with pyrrole derivatives.

All of the five-membered rings we have looked at have their benzo-derivatives but we will concentrate on just one, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, both because it is an important compound and because we have said little about simple 1,2,3-triazoles.

**HOBt is an important reagent in peptide synthesis**

1-Hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) is a friend in need in the lives of biochemists. It is added to many reactions where an activated ester of one amino acid is combined with the free amino group of another (see Chapter 25 for some examples). It was first made in the nineteenth century by a remarkably simple reaction.

The structure of HOBt appears quite straightforward, except for the unstable N–O single bond, but we can easily draw some other tautomers in which the proton on oxygen—the only one in the
heterocyclic ring—can be placed on some of the nitrogen atoms. These structures are all aromatic, the second and third are nitrones, and the third structure looks less good than the other two.

HOBr comes into play when amino acids are being coupled together in the lab. The reaction is an amide formation, but in Chapter 25 we mentioned that amino-acyl chlorides cannot be used to make polypeptides—they are too reactive and they lead to side-reactions. Instead, activated amino-esters (with good RO− leaving groups) are used, such as the phenyl esters of Chapter 25. It even more common to form the activated ester in the coupling reaction, using a coupling reagent, the most common being ‘DCC’, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide. DCC reacts with carboxylic acids like this.

The product ester is activated because substitution with any nucleophile expels this very stable urea as a leaving group.

The problem with attacking this ester directly with the amino group of the second amino acid is that some racemization of the active ester is often found. A better method is to have plenty of HOBrt around. It intercepts the activated ester first and the new intermediate does not racemize, mostly because the reaction is highly accelerated by the addition of HOBr. The second amino acid, protected on the carboxyl group, attacks the HOBr ester and gives the dipeptide in a very fast reaction without racemization.

Putting more nitrogen atoms in a six-membered ring

At the beginning of the chapter we mentioned the three six-membered aromatic heterocycles with two nitrogen atoms—pyridazine, pyrimidine, and pyrazine. In these compounds both nitrogen atoms must be of the pyridine sort, with lone pair electrons not delocalized round the ring.
We are going to look at these compounds briefly here. Pyrimidine is more important than either of the others because of its involvement in DNA and RNA—you will find this in Chapter 49. All three compounds are very weak bases—hardly basic at all in fact. Pyridazine is slightly more basic than the other two because the two adjacent lone pairs repel each other and make the molecule more nucleophilic (the $\alpha$ effect again: see p. 000 of Chapter 23).

The chemistry of these very electron-deficient rings mostly concerns nucleophilic attack and displacement of leaving groups such as Cl by nucleophiles such as alcohols and amines. To introduce this subject we need to take one heterocyclic synthesis at this point, though these are properly the subject of the next chapter. The compound ‘maleic hydrazide’ has been known for some time because it is easily formed when hydrazine is acylated twice by maleic anhydride.

The compound actually prefers to exist as the second tautomer, which is ‘more aromatic’. Reaction with POCl$_3$ in the way we have seen for pyridine gives the undoubtedly aromatic pyridazine dichloride.

Now we come to the point. Each of these chlorides can be displaced in turn with an oxygen or nitrogen nucleophile. Only one chloride is displaced in the first reaction, if that is required, and then the second can be displaced with a different nucleophile (see reaction on the right).

How is this possible? The mechanism of the reactions is addition to the pyridazine ring followed by loss of the leaving group, so the first reaction must go like this.

When the second nucleophile attacks it is forced to attack a less electrophilic ring. An electron-withdrawing group (Cl) has been replaced by a strongly electron-donating group (NH$_2$) so the rate-determining step, the addition of the nucleophile, is slower.

The same principle applies to other easily made symmetrical dichloro derivatives of these rings and their benzo-analogues. The nitrogen atoms can be related 1,2, 1,3, or 1,4 as in the examples alongside. The first two are used to link the quinine-derived ligands required for the Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation, which will be described in Chapter 45.
Fusing rings to pyridines: quinolines and isoquinolines

A benzene ring can be fused on to the pyridine ring in two ways giving the important heterocycles quinoline, with the nitrogen atom next to the benzene ring, and isoquinoline, with the nitrogen atom in the other possible position.

Quinoline forms part of quinine (structure at the head of this chapter) and isoquinoline forms the central skeleton of the isoquinoline alkaloids, which we will discuss at some length in Chapter 51. In this chapter we need not say much about quinoline because it behaves rather as you would expect—its chemistry is a mixture of that of benzene and pyridine. Electrophilic substitution favours the benzene ring and nucleophilic substitution favours the pyridine ring. So nitration of quinoline gives two products—the 5-nitroquinolines and the 8-nitroquinolines—in about equal quantities (though you will realize that the reaction really occurs on protonated quinoline).

This is obviously rather unsatisfactory but nitration is actually one of the better behaved reactions. Chlorination gives ten products (at least!), of which no fewer than five are chlorinated quinolines of various structures. The nitration of isoquinoline is rather better behaved, giving 72% of one isomer (5-nitroisoquinoline) at 0 °C.

To get reaction on the pyridine ring, the N-oxide can be used as with pyridine itself. A good example is acridine, with two benzene rings, which gives four nitration products, all on the benzene rings. Its N-oxide, on the other hand, gives just one product in good yield—nitration takes place at the only remaining position on the pyridine ring.

In general, these reactions are of not much use and most substituents are put into quinolines during ring synthesis from simple precursors as we will explain in the next chapter. There are a couple of quinoline reactions that are unusual and interesting. Vigorous oxidation goes for the more electron-rich ring, the benzene ring, and destroys it leaving pyridine rings with carbonyl groups in the 2- and 3-positions.

A particularly interesting nucleophilic substitution occurs when quinoline N-oxide is treated with acylating agents in the presence of nucleophiles. These two examples show that nucleophilic substitution occurs in the 2-position and you may compare these reactions with those of pyridine N-oxide. The mechanism is similar.
In considering quinolines and indoles with their fused rings we kept the benzene and heterocyclic rings separate. Yet there is a way in which they can be combined more intimately, and that is to have a nitrogen atom at a ring junction.

**A nitrogen atom can be at a ring junction**

It has to be a pyrrole-type nitrogen as it must have three $\sigma$ bonds, so the lone pair must be in a $p$ orbital. This means that one of the rings must be five-membered and the simplest member of this interesting class is called **indolizine**—it has pyridine and pyrrole rings fused together along a C–N bond.

If you examine this structure you will see that there is definitely a pyrrole ring but that the pyridine ring is not all there. Of course, the lone pair and the $\pi$ electrons are all delocalized but this system, unlike indole and quinoline, is much better regarded as a ten-electron outer ring than as two six-electron rings joined together.

Indolizine reacts with electrophiles on the five-membered rings by substitution reactions as expected but it has one special reaction that leads dramatically to a more complex aromatic system. It does a cycloaddition with diethyl acetylenedicarboxylate to give a tricyclic molecule.

The dienophile is the usual sort of unsaturated carbonyl compound—but count the electrons used from the indolizine. The nitrogen lone pair is not used but all the other eight are, so this is a most unusual [2 + 8] cycloaddition. The first formed product is not aromatic (it is not fully conjugated) but it can be dehydrogenated with palladium to make a **cyclazine**.

Now count the electrons in the cyclazine—there are ten electrons round the outer edge and the nitrogen lone pair is not part of the aromatic system. Cyclazines have NMR spectra and reactions that suggest they are aromatic.

**Fused rings with more than one nitrogen**

It is easily possible to continue to insert nitrogen atoms into fused ring systems and some important compounds belong to these groups. The **purines** are part of DNA and RNA and are treated in Chapter 49, but simple purines play an important part in our lives. Coffee and tea owe their stimulant properties to caffeine, a simple trimethyl purine derivative. It has an imidazole ring fused to a pyrimidine ring and is aromatic in spite of the two carbonyl groups.
Other fused heterocycles have very attractive flavour and odour properties. Pyrazines, in general, are important in many strong food flavours: a fused pyrazine with a ring junction nitrogen atom is one of the most important components in the smell of roast meat. You can read about the simple pyrazine that provides green peppers with their flavour in the Box on the next page.

Finally, the compounds in the margin form a medicinally important group of molecules, which includes antitumour compounds for humans and anthelmintics (compounds that get rid of parasitic worms) for animals. They are derived from a 6/5 fused aromatic ring system that resembles the ten-electron system of the indolizine ring system but has three nitrogen atoms.

All this multiple heteroatom insertion is possible only with nitrogen and we need to look briefly at what happens when we combine nitrogen with oxygen or in heterocycles.

Heterocycles can have many nitrogens but only one sulfur or oxygen in any ring

A neutral oxygen or sulfur atom can have only two bonds and so it can never be like the nitrogen atom in pyridine—it can only be like the nitrogen atom in pyrrole. We can put as many pyridine-like nitrogens as we like in an aromatic ring, but never more than one pyrrole-like nitrogen. Similarly, we can put only one oxygen or sulfur atom in an aromatic ring. The simplest examples are oxazoles and thiazoles and their less stable isomers.

The instability of the 'iso-' compounds comes from the weak O–N or S–N bond. These bonds can be cleaved by reducing agents, which then usually reduce the remaining functional groups further. The first product from reduction of the N–O bond is an unstable imino-enol. The enol tautomerizes to the ketone and the imine may be reduced further to the amine. We used this sort of chemistry on the products of 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions in Chapter 35 and isoxazoles are usually formed by such reactions.

Such heterocycles with even more nitrogen atoms exist but are relatively unimportant and we shall mention just one, the 1,2,5-thiadiazole, because it is part of a useful drug, timolol.
There are thousands more heterocycles out there

But we’re not going to discuss them and we hope you’re grateful. In fact, it’s about time to stop, and we shall leave you with a hint of the complexity that is possible. If pyrrole is combined with benzaldehyde a good yield of a highly coloured crystalline compound is formed. This is a porphyrin.

The flavour of green peppers

As a review of spectroscopy we shall describe the discovery of the compound responsible for the flavour of green peppers. This powerful compound was isolated from the oil of the green pepper (Capsicum annuum var. grossum). The oil makes up about 0.0001% of the mass of the peppers and the main pepper flavour comes from one compound which is 30% of the oil. It had an even molecular ion at 166 and looks like a compound without nitrogen, perhaps C_{11}H_{18}O. But a high-resolution mass spectrum revealed that M^+ was actually 166.1102 which corresponds almost exactly to C_{9}H_{14}N_{2}O (166.1106).

The IR had no OH, NH, or C=O peaks, and the proton NMR looked like this.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>δ_H, p.p.m.</th>
<th>Integral</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>J, Hz</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>6H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Me₂CH-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1–2.4</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.61</td>
<td>2H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>CH₂CH-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.91</td>
<td>3H</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td>-OMe?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.80</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>aromatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.93</td>
<td>1H</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>aromatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The 'CH' feature in the Me₂CH and CH₂CH signals must be the same CH and it must be the signal at 1.1–2.4 p.p.m. described as a 'multiplet' as it is the only one showing enough coupling. It will be a septuplet of triplets, that is, 21 lines. We can easily reconstruct the aliphatic part of the molecule as there are two methyl groups and a CH₂ group joined to the same CH group.

We also have an OMe group (only oxygen is electronegative enough to take a methyl group to nearly 4 p.p.m.). This adds up to C_{9}H_{14}O. What is left? Only C_{4}H_{2}N_{2}—and no clue yet as to the nitrogen functionality. We also have an aromatic ring that must have nitrogen in it (because there are only five carbon atoms—not enough for a benzene ring) and the coupling constant between the two aromatic hydrogens is 2.4 Hz. So could we perhaps have a pyrrole ring? Well, no, and for two reasons. If we try and construct such a molecule, we can’t fit in the last nitrogen! If we put it on the end of the dotted line, it would have to be an NH₂ group, and there isn’t one.

The small coupling constant really fits the pyrazine alone and the chemical shifts are about right for that molecule too, though not as far downfield. But we have a MeO group on the ring feeding electrons into the aromatic system and that will increase the shielding slightly and move the protons upfield. This gives us a unique structure.

A better reason is that the chemical shifts are all wrong. The protons on an electron-rich pyrrole ring come at around 6–6.5 p.p.m., upfield from benzene (7.27 p.p.m.). But these protons are at 7.8–8.0 p.p.m., downfield from benzene. We have a deshielded (electron-poor) ring, not a shielded (electron-rich) ring. From what you now know of heterocyclic chemistry, the ring must be a six-membered one, and we must put both nitrogen atoms in the ring. There are three ways to do this.

Timolol is a β-blocker that blocks one action of adrenaline (epinephrine) and keeps heart disease at bay by countering high blood pressure.

There are thousands more heterocycles out there

There is only one way to be sure and that is to make this compound and see if it is the same as the natural product in all respects including biological activity. The investigators did this but then wished that they hadn't! The structure was indeed correct but the biological activity—the smell of green peppers—was so intense that they had to seal up the laboratory where the work was done as no one would work there. Human beings can detect 2 parts in 10¹² of this compound in water.
Now, what about this ring system—is it aromatic? It’s certainly highly delocalized and your answer to the question clearly depends on whether you include the nitrogen electrons or not. In fact, if you ignore the pyrrole-like nitrogen atoms but include the pyridine-like nitrogens and weave round the periphery, you have nine double bonds and hence 18 electrons—a $4n + 2$ number. Most people agree that these compounds are aromatic.

They are also more than curiosities. The space in the middle with the four inward-pointing nitrogen atoms is just right for complex formation with divalent metals such as Fe(II). With more varied substituents, this structure forms the reactive part of haemoglobin, and the iron atom in the middle transports the oxygen in blood.

Iron prefers to be octahedral with six bonds around it and in one of these spare places in haemoglobin that is occupied by oxygen. If you try and make an oxygen complex of the simple porphyrin with four phenyl groups around the edge you get a sandwich dimer that oxidizes itself.

The porphyrin in blood avoids this problem by having another heterocycle to hand. Haemoglobin consists of the flat porphyrin bound to a protein by coordination between an imidazole in the protein (a histidine residue; see Chapter 49) and the iron atom. This leaves one face free to bind oxygen and makes the molecule far too big to dimerize.
Haem–metal complexes are strongly coloured—the iron complex is literally blood red. Some related compounds provide the familiar blue and green pigments used to colour plastic shopping bags. These are the phthalocyanine–metal complexes, which provide intense pigments in these ranges. The basic ring system resembles a porphyrin.

The differences are the four extra nitrogen atoms between the rings and the fused benzene rings. These compounds are derivatives of phthalimide, an isoindole derivative that has a nonaromatic five-membered ring. The metal most commonly used with phthalocyanines is Cu(II), and the range of colours is achieved by halogenating the benzene rings. The biggest producer is ICI at Grangemouth in Scotland where they do the halogenation and the phthalocyanine formation to make their range of Procyon™ dyes.

Some heterocycles are simple, some very complex, but we cannot live without them. We shall end this chapter with a wonderful story of heterocyclic chemistry at work. Folic acid is much in the news today as a vitamin that is particularly important for pregnant mothers, but that is involved in the metabolism of all living things. Folic acid is built up in nature from three pieces: a heterocyclic starting material (red), p-aminobenzoic acid (black) and the amino acid glutamic acid (brown). Here you see the precursor, dihydrofolic acid.
Although folic acid is vital for human health, we don’t have the enzymes to make it: it’s a vitamin, which means we must take it in our diet or we die. Bacteria, on the other hand, do make folic acid. This is very useful, because it means that if we inhibit the enzymes of folic acid synthesis we can kill bacteria but we cannot possibly harm ourselves as we don’t have those enzymes. The sulfa drugs, such as sulfa- methoxypyridazine or sulfamethoxazole, imitate p-aminobenzoic acid and inhibit the enzyme dihydropteroate synthase. Each has a new heterocyclic system added to the sulfonamide part of the drug.

The next step in folic acid synthesis is the reduction of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate. This can be done by both humans and bacteria and, although it looks like a rather trivial reaction (see black portion of molecules), it can only be done by the very important enzyme dihydrofolate reductase. Though both bacteria and humans have this enzyme, the bacterial version is different enough for us to attack it with specific drugs. An example is trimethoprim—yet another heterocyclic compound with a pyrimidine core (black on diagram). These two types of drugs that attack the folic acid metabolism of bacteria are often used together.

We will see in the next chapter how to make these heterocyclic systems and, in Chapters 49–51, other examples of how important they are in living things.

Which heterocyclic structures should you learn?

This is, of course, nearly a matter of personal choice. Every chemist really must know the names of the simplest heterocycles and we give those below along with a menu of suggestions.

First of all, those every chemist must know:

Now the table gives a suggested list of five ring systems that have important roles in the chemistry of life and in human medicine—many drugs are based on these five structures.

1 Imidazole

- the most important five-membered ring with two nitrogen atoms
- part of the amino acid histidine, occurs in proteins and is important in enzyme mechanisms
- a substituted imidazole is an essential part of the anti-ulcer drug cimetidine
- the amino acid histidine
- the anti-ulcer drug cimetidine (Tagamet)
- a selective histidine mimic
### 2 Pyrimidine

The most important six-membered ring with two nitrogen atoms

- Three functionalized pyrimidines are part of DNA and RNA structure, e.g., uracil
- Many antiviral drugs, particularly anti-HIV drugs, are modified pieces of DNA and contain pyrimidines

![Pyrimidine](image)

- **Pyrimidine**
- **Uracil**
- **Anti-HIV drug AZT azido-thymidine**

### 3 Quinoline

One of two benzo-pyridines with many applications

- Occurs naturally in the important antimalarial drug quinine
- 'Cyanine' dyestuffs used as sensitizers for particular light wavelengths in colour photography

![Quinoline](image)

- **Quinoline**
- **Quinine**
- **A "cyanine" dyestuff**

### 4 Isoquinoline

The other benzo-pyridine with many applications

- Occurs naturally in the benzyi isoquinoline alkaloids like papaverine
- Papaverine—a benzyl isoquinoline alkaloid

![Isoquinoline](image)

- **Isoquinoline**
- **Papaverine**

### 5 Indole

The more important benzo-pyrrrole

- Occurs in proteins as tryptophan and in the brain as the neurotransmitter serotonin (5-hydroxy-tryptamine)
- Important modern drugs are based on serotonin including sumatriptan for migraine and ondansetron, an anti-emetic for cancer chemotherapy

![Indole](image)

- **Indole**
- **Serotonin—a neurotransmitter**
- **Sumatriptan: for treatment of migraine**
Problems

1. For each of the following reactions: (a) state what kind of substitution it suggests; (b) suggest what product might be formed if monosubstitution occurs.

2. Give a mechanism for this side-chain extension of a pyridine.

3. Give a mechanism for this reaction, commenting on the position on the furan ring that reacts.

4. Suggest which product might be formed in each of these reactions and justify your choices.

5. Comment on the mechanism and selectivity of this reaction of a pyrrole.

6. Explain the formation of the product in this Friedel–Crafts alkylation of an indole.

7. Explain the order of events and choice of bases in this sequence.

8. Explain the difference between these two pyridine reductions.

9. Why can this furan not be made by the direct route from available 2-benzylfuran?

The same furan can be made by the route described below. Suggest mechanisms for the first and the last step. What is the other product of the last step?

10. What aromatic system might be based on the skeleton given below? What sort of reactivity might it display?

11. The reactions outlined in the chart below describe the early steps in a synthesis of an antiviral drug by the Parke–Davis company.
Consider how the reactivity of imidazoles is illustrated in these reactions, which involve not only the skeleton of the molecule but also the reagent E. You will need to draw mechanisms for the reactions and explain how they are influenced by the heterocycles.

12. Suggest how 2-pyridone might be converted into the amine shown. This amine undergoes mononitration to give compound A with the NMR spectrum given. What is the structure of A? Why is this isomer formed?

\[ \delta H (1.0 \text{ p.p.m. (3H, t, } J = 7 \text{ Hz)}, 1.7 \text{ p.p.m. (2H, sextet, } J = 7 \text{ Hz), } 3.3 \text{ p.p.m. (2H, q, } J = 7 \text{ Hz), } 5.9 \text{ p.p.m. (1H, broad s), } 6.4 \text{ p.p.m. (1H, d, } J = 8 \text{ Hz), } 8.1 \text{ p.p.m. (1H, d, } J = 2 \text{ Hz), and } 8.9 \text{ p.p.m. (1H, d, } J = 2 \text{ Hz).} \]

Compound A was needed for conversion into the potential enzyme inhibitor below. How might this be achieved?

13. Suggest what the products of these nucleophilic substitutions might be.

14. The synthesis of DMAP, the useful acylation catalyst mentioned in Chapters 8 and 12, is carried out by initial attack of thionyl chloride (SOCl₂) on pyridine. Suggest how the reactions might proceed.
In this chapter you will revisit the heterocyclic systems you have just met and find out how to make them. You’ll also meet some new heterocyclic systems and find out how to make those. With so many heterocycles to consider, you’d be forgiven for feeling rather daunted by this prospect, but do not be alarmed. Making heterocycles is easy—that’s precisely why there are so many of them. Just reflect . . .

- Making C–O, C–N, and C–S bonds is easy
- Intramolecular reactions are preferred to bimolecular reactions
- Forming five- and six-membered rings is easy
- We are talking about aromatic, that is, very stable molecules

If we are to use those bullet points to our advantage we must think strategy before we start. When we were making benzene compounds we usually started with a preformed simple benzene derivative—toluene, phenol, aniline—and added side chains by electrophilic substitution. In this chapter our strategy will usually be to build the heterocyclic ring with most of its substituents already in place and add just a few others, perhaps by electrophilic substitution, but mostly by nucleophilic substitution.

We will usually make the rings by cyclization reactions with the heteroatom (O, N, S) as a nucleophile and a suitably functionalized carbon atom as the electrophile. This electrophile will almost always be a carbonyl compound of some sort and this chapter will help you revise your carbonyl chemistry from Chapters 6, 12, 14, 21, 23, and 26–29 as well as the approach to synthesis described in Chapter 30.

### Thermodynamics is on our side

Some of the syntheses we will meet will be quite surprisingly simple! It sometimes seems that we can just mix a few things together with about the right number of atoms and let thermodynamics do the rest. A commercial synthesis of pyridines combines acetaldehyde and

---

**Connections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building on:</th>
<th>Arriving at:</th>
<th>Looking forward to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Aromaticity ch7</td>
<td>• Thermodynamics is on our side</td>
<td>• Biological chemistry ch49–ch51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Enols and enolates ch21</td>
<td>• Disconnecting the carbon–heteroatom bonds first</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The aldol reaction ch27</td>
<td>• How to make pyroles, thiophenes, and furans from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Acylation of enolates ch28</td>
<td>• How to make pyridines and pyridones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Michael additions of enolates ch29</td>
<td>• How to make pyrazines and pyrazoles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Retrosynthetic analysis ch30</td>
<td>• How to make pyrimidines from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and amidines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cycloadditions ch35</td>
<td>• How to make thiazoles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reactions of heterocycles ch43</td>
<td>• How to make isoxazoles and tetrazoles by 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Fischer indole synthesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Making drugs: Viagra, sumatriptan, ondansetron, indomethacin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• How to make quinolines and isoquinolines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

44 Aromatic heterocycles 2: synthesis

connections

Building on:
- Aromaticity ch7
- Enols and enolates ch21
- The aldol reaction ch27
- Acylation of enolates ch28
- Michael additions of enolates ch29
- Retrosynthetic analysis ch30
- Cycloadditions ch35
- Reactions of heterocycles ch43

Arriving at:
- Thermodynamics is on our side
- Disconnecting the carbon–heteroatom bonds first
- How to make pyroles, thiophenes, and furans from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds
- How to make pyridines and pyridones
- How to make pyrazines and pyrazoles
- How to make pyrimidines from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and amidines
- How to make thiazoles
- How to make isoxazoles and tetrazoles by 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions
- The Fischer indole synthesis
- Making drugs: Viagra, sumatriptan, ondansetron, indomethacin
- How to make quinolines and isoquinolines

Looking forward to:
- Biological chemistry ch49–ch51
ammonia under pressure to give a simple pyridine.

The yield is only about 50%, but what does that matter in such a simple process? By counting atoms we can guess that four molecules of aldehyde and one of ammonia react, but exactly how is a triumph of thermodynamics over mechanism. Much more complex molecules can sometimes be made very easily too. Take allopurinol, for example. One synthesis of this gout remedy goes like this.

It is not too difficult to work out where the atoms go—the hydrazine obviously gives rise to the pair of adjacent nitrogen atoms in the pyrazole ring and the ester group must be the origin of the carbonyl group (see colours and numbers on the right)—but would you have planned this synthesis?

We will see that this sort of ‘witch’s brew’ approach to synthesis is restricted to a few basic ring systems and that, in general, careful planning is just as important here as elsewhere. The difference here is that heterocyclic synthesis is very forgiving—it often ‘goes right’ instead of going wrong. We’ll now look seriously at planning the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles.

**Disconnect the carbon–heteroatom bonds first**

The simplest synthesis for a heterocycle emerges when we remove the heteroatom and see what electrophile we need. We shall use pyrroles as examples. The nitrogen forms an enamine on each side of the ring and we know that enamines are made from carbonyl compounds and amines.

If we do the same disconnection with a pyrrole, omitting the intermediate stage, we can repeat the C–N disconnection on the other side too:

What we need is an amine—ammonia in this case—and a diketone. If the two carbonyl groups have a 1,4 relationship we will get a pyrrole out of this reaction. So hexane-2,5-dione reacts with ammonia to give a high yield of 2,5-dimethyl pyrrole.

Making furans is even easier because the heteroatom (oxygen) is
already there. All we have to do is to dehydrate the 1,4-diketone instead of making enamines from it. Heating with acid is enough.

**Avoiding the aldol product**

1,4-Diketones also self-condense rather easily in an intramolecular aldol reaction to give a cyclopentenone with an all-carbon five-membered ring. This too is a useful reaction but we need to know how to control it. The usual rule is:

- Base gives the cyclopentenone
- Acid gives the furan

For thiophenes we could in theory use H$_2$S or some other sulfur nucleophile but, in practice, an electrophilic reagent is usually used to convert the two C=O bonds to C=S bonds. Thioketones are much less stable than ketones and cyclization is swift. Reagents such as P$_2$S$_5$ or Lawesson’s reagent are the usual choice here.

![Cyclization of 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen, sulfur, or oxygen nucleophiles gives the five-membered aromatic heterocycles pyrrole, thiophene, and furan.](image)

![Making five-membered heterocycles](image)

It seems a logical extension to use a 1,5-diketone to make substituted pyridines but there is a slight problem here as we will introduce only two of the required three double bonds when the two enamines are formed.

![Cyclization of 1,5-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen nucleophiles leads to the six-membered aromatic heterocycle pyridine.](image)

**Making six-membered heterocycles**

Cyclization of 1,5-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen nucleophiles leads to the six-membered aromatic heterocycle pyridine.

Heterocycles with two nitrogen atoms come from the same strategy

Reacting a 1,4-diketone with hydrazine (NH$_2$NH$_2$) makes a double enamine again and this is only an oxidation step away from a pyridazine. This is again a good synthesis.
If we use a 1,3-diketone instead we will get a five-membered heterocycle and the imine and enamine formed are enough to give aromaticity without any need for oxidation. The product is a pyrazole.

The two heteroatoms do not, of course, need to be joined together for this strategy to work. If an amidine is combined with the same 1,3-diketone we get a six-membered heterocycle. As the nucleophile contains one double bond already, an aromatic pyrimidine is formed directly.

Since diketones and other dicarbonyl compounds are easily made by enolate chemistry (Chapters 26–30) this strategy has been very popular and we will look at some detailed examples before moving on to more specialized reactions for the different classes of aromatic heterocycles.

**Pyrroles, thiophenes, and furans from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds**

We need to make the point that pyrrole synthesis can be done with primary amines as well as with ammonia and a good example is the pyrrole needed for clopirac, a drug we discussed in Chapter 43. The synthesis is very easy.

For an example of furan synthesis we choose menthofuran, which contributes to the flavour of mint. It has a second ring, but that is no problem if we simply disconnect the enol ethers as we have been doing so far.

The starting material is again a 1,4-dicarbonyl compound but as there was no substituent at C1 of the furan, that atom is an aldehyde rather than a ketone. This might lead to problems in the synthesis so a few changes (using the notation you met in Chapter 30) are made to the intermediate before further disconnection.
Notice in particular that we have ‘oxidized’ the aldehyde to an ester to make it more stable—in
the synthesis reduction will be needed. Here is the alkylation step of the synthesis, which does indeed
go very well with the α-iodo-ester.

\[
\text{Cyclization with acid now causes a lot to happen. The 1,4-dicarbonyl compound cyclizes to}
\text{a lactone, not to a furan, and the redundant ester group is lost by hydrolysis and decarboxylation.}
\text{Notice that the double bond moves into conjugation with the lactone carbonyl group. Finally,}
\text{the reduction gives the furan. No special precautions are necessary—as soon as the ester is partly}
\text{reduced, it loses water to give the furan whose aromaticity prevents further reduction even with}
\text{LiAlH}_4.
\]

\[
\text{Cyclization of 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds with nitrogen, sulfur, or oxygen}
\text{nucleophiles gives the five-membered aromatic heterocycles pyrrole, thiophene,}
\text{and furan.}
\]

Now we need to take these ideas further and discuss an important pyrrole synthesis that follows
this strategy but includes a cunning twist. It all starts with the porphyrin found in blood. In Chapter
43 we gave the structure of that very important compound and showed that it contains four pyrrole
rings joined in a macrocycle. We are going to look at one of those pyrroles.

Porphyrins can be made by joining together the various pyrroles in the right order and what is
needed for this one (and also, in fact, for another—the one in the north-east corner of the por-
phyrin) is a pyrrole with the correct substituents in positions 3 and 4, a methyl group in position 5,
and a hydrogen atom at position 2. Position 2 must be free. Here is the molecule drawn somewhat
more conveniently together with the disconnection we have been using so far.
No doubt such a synthesis could be carried out but it is worth looking for alternatives for a number of reasons. We would prefer not to make a pyrrole with a free position at C2 as that would be very reactive and we know from Chapter 43 that we can block such a position with a \(t\)-butyl ester group. This gives us a very difficult starting material with four different carbonyl groups.

We have made a problem for ourselves by having two carbonyl groups next to each other. Could we escape from that by replacing one of them with an amine? We should then have an ester of an \(\alpha\) amino acid, an attractive starting material, and this corresponds to disconnecting just one of the C–N bonds.

At first we seem to have made no progress but just see what happens when we move the double bond round the ring into conjugation with the ketone. After all, it doesn’t matter where the double bond starts out—we will always get the aromatic product.

Each of our two much simpler starting materials needs to be made. The keto-ester is a 1,5-dicarbonyl compound so it can be made by a conjugate addition of an enolate, a process greatly assisted by the addition of a second ester group (Chapter 29).

The other compound is an amino-keto-ester and will certainly react with itself if we try to prepare it as a pure compound. The answer is to release it into the reaction mixture and this can be done by nitrosation and reduction (Chapter 21) of another stable enolate.
How to make pyridines: the Hantzsch pyridine synthesis

The idea of coupling two keto-esters together with a nitrogen atom also works for pyridines except that an extra carbon atom is needed. This is provided as an aldehyde and another important difference is that the nitrogen atom is added as a nucleophile rather than an electrophile. These are features of the Hantzsch pyridine synthesis. This is a four-component reaction that goes like this.

You are hardly likely to understand the rationale behind this reaction from that diagram so let’s explore the details. The product of the reaction is actually the dihydropyridine, which has to be oxidized to the pyridine by a reagent such as HNO₃, Ce(IV), or a quinone.
The reaction is very simply carried out by mixing the components in the right proportions in ethanol. The presence of water does not spoil the reaction and the ammonia, or some added amine, ensures the slightly alkaline pH necessary. Any aldehyde can be used, even formaldehyde, and yields of the crystalline dihydropyridine are usually very good.

This reaction is an impressive piece of molecular recognition by small molecules and writing a detailed mechanism is a bold venture. We can see that certain events have to happen. The ammonia has to attack the ketone groups, but it would prefer to attack the more electrophilic aldehyde so this is probably not the first step. The enol or enolate of the keto-ester has to attack the aldehyde (twice!) so let us start there.

This adduct is in equilibrium with the stable enolate from the keto-ester and elimination now gives an unsaturated carbonyl compound. Such chemistry is associated with the aldol reactions we discussed in Chapter 27. The new enone has two carbonyl groups at one end of the double bond and is therefore a very good Michael acceptor (Chapter 29). A second molecule of enolate does a conjugate addition to complete the carbon skeleton of the molecule. Now the ammonia attacks either of the ketones and cyclizes on to the other. As ketones are more electrophilic than esters it is to be expected that ammonia will prefer to react there.

The necessary oxidation is easy both because the product is aromatic and because the nitrogen atom can help to expel the hydrogen atom and its pair of electrons from the 4-position. If we use a quinone as oxidizing agent, both compounds become aromatic in the same step. We will show in Chapter 50 that Nature uses related dihydropyridines as reducing agents in living things.

The Hantzsch pyridine synthesis is an old discovery (1882) which sprang into prominence in the 1980s with the discovery that the dihydropyridine intermediates prepared from aromatic aldehydes are calcium channel blocking agents and therefore valuable drugs for heart disease with useful effects on angina and hypertension.
So far, so good. But it also became clear that the best drugs were unsymmetrical—some in a trivial way such as felodipine but some more seriously such as Pfizer’s amlodipine. At first sight it looks as though the very simple and convenient Hantzsch synthesis cannot be used for these compounds.

Clearly, a modification is needed in which half of the molecule is assembled first. The solution lies in early work by Robinson who made the very first enamines from keto-esters and amines. One half of the molecule is made from an enamine and the other half from a separately synthesized enone. We can use felodipine as a simple example.

Other syntheses of pyridines

The Hantzsch synthesis produces a reduced pyridine but there are many syntheses that go directly to pyridines. One of the simplest is to use hydroxylamine (NH$_2$OH) instead of ammonia as the nucleophile. Reaction with a 1,5-diketone gives a dihydropyridine but then water is lost and no oxidation is needed.
The example below shows how these 1,5-diketones may be quickly made by the Mannich (Chapter 27) and Michael (Chapter 29) reactions. Our pyridine has a phenyl substituent and a fused saturated ring. First we must disconnect to the 1,5-diketone.

Further disconnection reveals a ketone and an enone. There is a choice here and both alternatives would work well.

It is convenient to use Mannich bases instead of the very reactive unsaturated ketones and we will continue with disconnection ‘a’.

The synthesis is extraordinarily easy. The stable Mannich base is simply heated with the other ketone to give a high yield of the 1,5-diketone. Treatment of that with the HCl salt of NH \textsubscript{2}OH in EtOH gives the pyridine directly, also in good yield.

Another direct route leads, as we shall now demonstrate, to pyridones. These useful compounds are the basis for nucleophilic substitutions on the ring (Chapter 43). We choose an example that puts a nitrile in the 3-position. This is significant because the role of nicotinamide in living things (Chapter 50) makes such products interesting to make. Aldol disconnection of a 3-cyano pyridone starts us on the right path.

If we now disconnect the C–N bond forming the enamine on the other side of the ring we will expose the true starting materials. This approach is unusual in that the nitrogen atom that is to be the pyridine nitrogen is not added as ammonia but is already present in a molecule of cyanoacetamide.

The keto-aldehyde can be made by a simple Claisen ester condensation (Chapter 28) using the enolate of the methyl ketone with ethyl formate (HCO\textsubscript{2}Et) as the electrophile. It actually exists as a stable enol, like so many 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds (Chapter 21).
In the synthesis, the product of the Claisen ester condensation is actually the enolate anion of the keto-aldehyde and this can be combined directly without isolation with cyanoacetamide to give the pyridone in the same flask.

What must happen here is that the two compounds must exchange protons (or switch enolates if you prefer) before the aldol reaction occurs. Cyclization probably occurs next through C–N bond formation and, finally, dehydration is forced to give the Z-alkene.

In planning the synthesis of a pyrrole or a pyridine from a dicarbonyl compound, considerable variation in oxidation state is possible. The oxidation state is chosen to make further disconnection of the carbon skeleton as easy as possible. We can now see how these same principles can be applied to pyrazoles and pyridazines.

Pyrazoles and pyridazines from hydrazine and dicarbonyl compounds

Disconnection of pyrazines reveals a molecule of hydrazine and a 1,4-diketone with the proviso that, just as with pyridines, the product will be a dihydropyrazine and oxidation will be needed to give the aromatic compound. As with pyridines, we prefer to avoid the cis double bond problem.

As an example we can take the cotton herbicide made by Cyanamid. Direct removal of hydrazine would require a cis double bond in the starting material.

If we remove the double bond first, a much simpler compound emerges. Note that this is a keto-ester rather than a diketone.
When hydrazine is added to the keto-ester an imine is formed with the ketone but acylation occurs at the ester end to give an amide rather than the imino-ester we had designed. The product is a dihydropyridazolone.

Aromatization with bromine gives the aromatic pyridazolone by bromination and dehydrobromination and now we invoke the nucleophilic substitution reactions introduced in Chapter 43. First we make the chloride with POCl₃ and then displace with methanol.

The five-membered ring pyrazoles are even simpler as the starting material is a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound available from the aldol or Claisen ester condensations.

Chemistry hits the headlines—Viagra

In 1998 chemistry suddenly appeared in the media in an exceptional way. Normally not a favourite of TV or the newspapers, chemistry produced a story with all the right ingredients—sex, romance, human ingenuity—and all because of a pyrazole. In the search for a heart drug, Pfizer uncovered a compound that allowed impotent men to have active sex lives. They called it Viagra.

The molecule contains a sulfonamide and a benzene ring as well as the part that interests us most—a bicyclic aromatic heterocyclic system of a pyrazole fused to a pyrimidine. We shall discuss in detail how Pfizer made this part of the molecule and just sketch in the rest. The sulfonamide can be made from the sulfonic acid that can be added to the benzene ring by electrophilic aromatic sulfonation (Chapter 22).
Inspection of what remains reveals that the carbon atom atom in the heterocycles next to the benzene ring (marked with an orange blob) is at the oxidation level of a carboxylic acid. If, therefore, we disconnect both C–N bonds to this atom we will have two much simpler starting materials.

The aromatic acid is available and we need consider only the pyrazole (core pyrazole ring in black in the diagram). The aromatic amino group can be put in by nitration and reduction and the amide can be made from the corresponding ester. This leaves a carbon skeleton, which must be made by ring synthesis.

Following the methods we have established so far in this chapter, we can remove the hydrazine portion to reveal a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound. In fact, this is a tricarbonyl compound, a diketo-ester, because of the ester already present and it contains 1,2-, 1,3-, and 1,4-dicarbonyl relationships. The simplest synthesis is by a Claisen ester condensation and we choose the disconnection so that the electrophile is a reactive (oxalate) diester that cannot enolize. The only control needed will then be in the enolization of the ketone.

The Claisen ester condensation gives the right product just by treatment with base. The reasons for this are discussed in Chapter 28. We had then planned to react the keto-diester with methylhydrazine but there is a doubt about the regioselectivity of this reaction—the ketones are more electrophilic than the ester all right, but which ketone will be attacked by which nitrogen atom?

We have already seen the solution to this problem in Chapter 43. If we use symmetrical hydrazine, we can deal with the selectivity problem by alkylation. Dimethyl sulfate turns out to be the best reagent.
The stable pyrazole acid from the hydrolysis of this ester is a key intermediate in Viagra production. Nitration can occur only at the one remaining free position and then amide formation and reduction complete the synthesis of the amino pyrazole amide ready for assembly into Viagra.

The rest of the synthesis can be summarized very briefly as it mostly concerns material outside the scope of this chapter. You might like to notice how easy the construction of the second heterocyclic ring is—the nucleophilic attack of the nitrogen atom of one amide on to the carbonyl of another would surely not occur unless the product were an aromatic heterocycle.

Pyrimidines can be made from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds and amidines

In Chapter 43 we met some compounds that interfere in folic acid metabolism and are used as antibacterial agents. One of them was trimethoprim and it contains a pyrimidine ring (black on the diagram). We are going to look at its synthesis briefly because the strategy used is the opposite of that used with the pyrimidine ring in Viagra. Here we disconnect a molecule of guanidine from a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound.

The 1,3-dicarbonyl compound is a combination of an aldehyde and an amide but is very similar to a malonic ester so we might think of making this compound by alkylation of that stable enolate (Chapter 26) with the convenient benzylic bromide.
The alkylation works fine but it turns out to be better to add the aldehyde as an electrophile (cf. the pyridone synthesis on p. 000) rather than try to reduce an ester to an aldehyde. The other ester is already at the right oxidation level. Notice the use of the NaCl method of decarboxylation (Chapter 26).

Condensation with ethyl formate (HCO₂Et) and cyclization with guanidine gives the pyrimidine ring system but with an OH instead of the required amino group. Aromatic nucleophilic substitution in the pyrimidone style from Chapter 43 gives trimethoprim.

Unsymmetrical nucleophiles lead to selectivity questions

The synthesis of thiazoles is particularly interesting because of a regioselectivity problem. If we try out the two strategies we have just used for pyrimidines, the first requires the reaction of a carboxylic acid derivative with a most peculiar enamine that is also a thioenol. This does not look like a stable compound.

The alternative is to disconnect the C–N and C–S bonds on the other side of the heteroatoms. Here we must be careful what we are about or we will get the oxidation state wrong. We shall do it step by step to make sure. We can rehydrate the double bond in two ways. We can first try putting the OH group next to nitrogen.
Or we can rehydrate it the other way round, putting the OH group next to the sulfur atom, and disconnect in the same way. In both cases we require an electrophilic carbon atom at the alcohol oxidation level and one at the aldehyde or ketone oxidation level. In other words we need an $\alpha$-haloketone.

The nucleophile is the same in both cases and it is an odd-looking molecule. That is, until we realize that it is just a tautomer of a thioamide. Far from being odd, thioamides are among the few stable thio-carbonyl derivatives and can be easily made from ordinary amides with $\text{P}_2\text{S}_5$ or Lawesson’s reagent.

Fentiazac, a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug, is a simple example. Disconnection shows that we need thiobenzamide and an easily made $\alpha$-haloketone (easily made because the ketone can enolize on this side only—see Chapter 21).

The synthesis involves heating these two compounds together and the correct thiazole forms easily with the double bonds finding their right positions in the product—the only positions for a stable aromatic heterocycle.

**Isoxazoles are made from hydroxylamine or by 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions**

The two main routes for the synthesis of isoxazoles are the attack of hydroxylamine ($\text{NH}_2\text{OH}$) on diketones and 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions of nitrile oxides. They thus form a link between the strategy
we have been discussing (cyclization of a nucleophile with two heteroatoms and a compound with 
two electrophilic carbon atoms) and the next strategy—cycloaddition reactions.

Simple symmetrical isoxazoles are easily made by the hydroxylamine route. If \( R_1 = R_3 \), we have a 
symmetrical and easily prepared 1,3-diketone as starting material. The central \( R_2 \) group can be 
inserted by alkylation of the stable enolate of the diketone (Chapter 26).

When \( R_1 \neq R_3 \), we have an unsymmetrical dicarbonyl compound and we must be sure that we 
know which way round the reaction will proceed. The more nucleophilic end of \( \text{NH}_2\text{OH} \) will attack 
the more electrophilic carbonyl group. It seems obvious that the more nucleophilic end of \( \text{NH}_2\text{OH} \) 
will be the nitrogen atom but that depends on the pH of the solution. Normally, hydroxylamine is 
supplied as the crystalline hydrochloride salt and a base of some kind added to give the nucleophile. 
The relevant pK\(_a\)s are shown in the margin. Bases such as pyridine or sodium acetate produce some 
of the reactive neutral \( \text{NH}_2\text{OH} \) in the presence of the less reactive cation, but bases such as \( \text{NaOEt} \) 
produce the anion. Reactions of keto-aldehydes with acetate-buffered hydroxylamine usually give 
the isoxazole from nitrogen attack on the aldehyde as expected.

Modification of the electrophile may also be successful. Reaction of hydroxylamine with 1,2,4-
diketo-esters usually gives the isoxazole from attack of nitrogen at the more reactive keto group next 
to the ester.

A clear demonstration of selectivity comes from the reactions of bromoenones. It is not immedi-
ately clear which end of the electrophile is more reactive but the reactions tell us the answer.

The alternative approach to isoxazoles relies on cycloadditions of nitrile oxides with alkynes. We 
saw in Chapter 35 that there are two good routes to these reactive compounds, the \( \gamma \)-elimination of 
chlorooximes or the dehydration of nitroalkanes.

A few nitrile oxides are stable enough to be isolated (those with electron-withdrawing or highly 
conjugating substituents, for example) but most are prepared in the presence of the alkyne by one of 
these methods because otherwise they dimerize rapidly. Both methods of forming nitrile oxides are 
compatible with their rapid reactions with alkynes. Reaction with aryl alkynes is usually clean and 
regioselective.
The alkyne is using its HOMO to attack the LUMO of the nitrile oxide (see Chapter 35 for an explanation). If the alkyne has an electron-withdrawing group, mixtures of isomers are usually formed as the HOMO of the nitrile oxide also attacks the LUMO of the alkyne.

Intramolecular reactions are usually clean regardless of the preferred electronic orientation if the tether is too short to allow any cyclization except one. In this example, even the more favourable orientation looks very bad because of the linear nature of the reacting species, but only one isomer is formed.

**Tetrazoles are also made by 1,3-dipolar cycloadditions**

Disconnection of tetrazoles with a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition in mind is easy to see once we realize that a nitrile (RCN) is going to be one of the components. It can be done in two ways: disconnection of the neutral compound would require hydrazoic acid (HN₃) as the dipole but the anion disconnects directly to azide ion.

Unpromising though this reaction may look, it actually works well if an ammonium-chloride-buffered mixture of sodium azide and the nitrile is heated in DMF. The reagent is really ammonium azide and the reaction occurs faster with electron-withdrawing substituents in R. In the reaction mixture, the anion of the tetrazole is formed but neutralization with acid gives the free tetrazole.

As nitriles are generally readily available this is the main route to simple tetrazoles. More complicated ones are made by alkylation of the product of a cycloaddition. The tetrazole substitute for indomethacin that we mentioned in Chapter 43 is made by this approach. First, the nitrile is prepared from the indole. The 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition works well by the azide route we have just discussed, even though this nitrile will form an 'enol' rather easily.
Finally, the indole nitrogen atom must be acylated. The tetrazole is more acidic so it is necessary to form a dianion to get reaction at the right place. The usual rule is followed (see Chapter 24)—the second anion formed is less stable and so it reacts first.

The synthesis of the anti-inflammatory drug broperamole illustrates modification of a tetrazole using its anion. The tetrazole is again constructed from the nitrile—it’s an aromatic nitrile with an electron-withdrawing substituent so this will be a good reaction.

Conjugate addition to acrylic acid (Chapters 10 and 23) occurs to give the other tautomer to the one we have drawn. The anion intermediate is, of course, delocalized and can react at any of the nitrogen atoms. Amide formation completes the synthesis of broperamole.

The difficulty in trying to forecast which way round a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition will go is well illustrated when a substituted azide adds to an alkyne in the synthesis of 1,2,3-triazoles. Reaction of an alkyl azide with an unsymmetrical alkyne, having an electron-withdrawing group at one end and an alkyl group at the other, gives mostly a single triazole.

It looks as if the more nucleophilic end of the azide has attacked the wrong end of the alkyne but we must remember that (1) it is very difficult to predict which is the more nucleophilic end of a 1,3-dipole and (2) it may be either HOMO (dipole) and LUMO (alkyne) or LUMO (dipole) and HOMO (alkyne) that dominate the reaction. The reason for doing the reaction was to make analogues of natural nucleosides (the natural compounds are discussed in Chapter 49). In this case the OH group was replaced by a cyanide so that a second aromatic ring, a pyridine, can be fused on to the triazole.

1,2,4-Triazoles are usually made from the reaction of the unsubstituted 1,2,4-triazole anion with electrophiles as described in Chapter 43.
The next section deals with the synthesis of heterocycles where a heterocyclic ring is fused to a benzene ring, the 6/5 system, indole, and the 6/6 systems, quinoline and isoquinoline.

The Fischer indole synthesis

You are about to see one of the great inventions of organic chemistry. It is a remarkable reaction, amazing in its mechanism, and it was discovered in 1883 by one of the greatest organic chemists of all, Emil Fischer. Fischer had earlier discovered phenylhydrazine (PhNHNH₂) and, in its simplest form, the Fischer indole synthesis occurs when phenylhydrazine is heated in acidic solution with an aldehyde or ketone.

The first step in the mechanism is formation of the phenylhydrazone (the imine) of the ketone. This can be isolated as a stable compound (Chapter 14).

The hydrazone then needs to tautomerize to the enamine, and now comes the key step in the reaction. The enamine can rearrange with formation of a strong C–C bond and cleavage of the weak N–N single bond by moving electrons round a six-membered ring.

Next, re-aromatization of the benzene ring (by proton transfer from carbon to nitrogen) creates an aromatic amine that immediately attacks the other imine. This gives an aminal, the nitrogen equivalent of an acetal.
Finally, acid-catalysed decomposition of the aminal in acetal fashion with expulsion of ammonia allows the loss of a proton and the formation of the aromatic indole.

\[
\text{NH}_2 \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{H} \\
\text{H}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{F}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{H}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\text{H}
\end{array} \quad \text{NH}_2
\]

This is admittedly a complicated mechanism but if you remember the central step—the \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement—the rest should fall into place. The key point is that the C–C bond is established at the expense of a weak N–N bond. Naturally, Fischer had no idea about \([3,3]\) or any other steps in the mechanism. He was sharp enough to see that something remarkable had happened and skilful enough to find out what it was.

The Fischer method is the main way of making indoles, but it is not suitable for them all. We need now to study its applicability to various substitution patterns. If the carbonyl compound can enolize on one side only, as is the case with an aldehyde, then the obvious product is formed.

\[
\text{NH}_2 \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{H} \\
\text{H}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{F}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{H}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{R} \\
\text{H}
\end{array} \quad \text{NH}_2
\]

If the benzene ring has only one \textit{ortho} position, then again cyclization must occur to that position. Other substituents on the ring are irrelevant. At this point we shall stop drawing the intermediate phenylhydrazone.

Another way to secure a single indole as product from the Fischer indole synthesis is to make sure the reagents are symmetrical. These two examples should make plain the types of indole available from symmetrical starting materials.

The substitution pattern of the first example is particularly important as the neurotransmitter serotonin is an indole with a hydroxyl group in the 5-position, and many important drugs follow that pattern. Sumatriptan (marketed as Imigran), is an example that we can also use to show that substituted phenylhydrazines are made by reduction of diazonium salts (Chapter 23). The first stage of the synthesis is nitrosation of the aniline and reduction with SnCl₂ and HCl to give the salt of the phenylhydrazine.
The required aldehyde (3-cyanopropanal) is added as an acetal to prevent self-condensation. The acidic conditions release the aldehyde, which forms the phenylhydrazone ready for the next step.

The Fischer indole synthesis itself is catalysed in this case by polyphosphoric acid (PPA), a sticky gum based on phosphoric acid ($H_3PO_4$) but dehydrated so that it contains some oligomers. It is often used as a catalyst in organic reactions and residues are easily removed in water.

All that remains is to introduce the methyl amino and dimethylamino groups. The sulfonate ester is more reactive than the nitrile so the methyl amino group must go in first.

For some indoles it is necessary to control regioselectivity with unsymmetrical carbonyl compounds. Ondansetron, the anti-nausea compound that is used to help cancer patients take larger doses of antitumour compounds than was previously possible, is an example. It contains an indole and an imidazole ring.

The 1,3 relationship between $C-N$ and $C-O$ suggests a Mannich reaction to add the imidazole ring (Chapter 27), and that disconnection reveals an indole with an unsymmetrical right-hand side, having an extra ketone group. Fischer disconnection will reveal a diketone as partner for phenylhydrazine. We shall leave aside for the moment when to add the methyl group to the indole nitrogen.
The diketone has two identical carbonyl groups and will enolize (or form an enamine) exclusively towards the other ketone. The phenylhydrazone therefore forms only the enamine we want.

In this case, the Fischer indole reaction was catalysed by a Lewis acid, ZnCl$_2$, and base-catalysed methylation followed. The final stages are summarized below.

In the worst case, there is no such simple distinction between the two sites for enamine formation and we must rely on other methods of control. The nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug indomethacin is a good example. Removing the $N$-acyl group reveals an indole with substituents in both halves of the molecule.

The benzene ring portion is symmetrical and is ideal for the Fischer synthesis but the right-hand half must come from an unsymmetrical open-chain keto-acid. Is it possible to control such a synthesis?

The Fischer indole is acid-catalysed so we must ask: on what side of the ketone is enolization (and therefore enamine formation) expected in acid solution? The answer is away from the methyl group and into the alkyl chain (Chapter 21). This is what we want and the reaction does indeed go this way. In fact, the $t$-butyl ester is used instead of the free acid.
Acylation at the indole nitrogen atom is achieved with acid chloride in base and removal of the t-butyl ester gives free indomethacin.

There are many other indole syntheses but we will give a brief mention to only one other and that is because it allows the synthesis of indoles with a different substitution pattern in the benzene ring. If you like names, you may call it the Reissert synthesis, and this is the basic reaction.

Ethoxide is a strong enough base to remove a proton from the methyl group, delocalizing the negative charge into the nitro group. The anion then attacks the reactive diester (diethyl oxalate) and is acylated by it.

The rest of the synthesis is more straightforward: the nitro group can be reduced to an amine, which immediately forms an enamine by intramolecular attack on the more reactive carbonyl group (the ketone) to give the aromatic indole.

Since the nitro compound is made by nitration of a benzene ring, the preferred symmetry is very different from that needed for the Fischer synthesis. Nitration of para-xylene (1,4-dimethylbenzene) is a good example.

The ester products we have been using so far can be hydrolysed and decarboxylated by the mechanism described in the last chapter if a free indole is required. In any case, it is not necessary to use diethyl oxalate as the electrophilic carbonyl compound. The strange antibiotic chuangxinmycin (which you met in Chapter 32) was made by a Reissert synthesis using the acetal of DMF as the electrophile. Here is part of the synthesis.
Quinolines and isoquinolines

We move from benzo-fused pyrroles to benzo-fused pyridines and meet quinoline and isoquinoline. Isoquinolines will feature as benzylisoquinoline alkaloids in Chapter 51 and their synthesis will most likely be discussed there. In this section we shall concentrate on the quinolines.

Quinoline forms part of the structure of quinine, the malaria remedy found in cinchona bark and known since the time of the Incas. The quinoline in quinine has a 6-MeO substituent and a side chain attached to C4. In discussing the synthesis of quinolines, we will be particularly interested in this pattern. This is because the search for anti-malarial compounds continues and other quinolines with similar structures are among the available anti-malarial drugs.

We shall also be very interested in quinolones, analogous to pyridones, with carbonyl groups at positions 2 and 4 as these are useful antibiotics. A simple example is pefloxacin which has a typical 6-F and 7-piperazine substituents.

When we consider the synthesis of a quinoline, the obvious disconnections are, first, the C–N bond in the pyridine ring and, then, the C–C bond that joins the side chain to the benzene ring. We will need a three-carbon (C₃) synthon, electrophilic at both ends, which will yield two double bonds after incorporation. The obvious choice is a 1,3-dicarbonyl compound.

The choice of an aromatic amine is a good one as the NH₂ group reacts well with carbonyl compounds and it activates the ortho position to electrophilic attack. However, the dialdehyde is malonic dialdehyde, a compound that does not exist, so some alternative must be found. If the quinoline is substituted in the 2- and 4-positions this approach looks better.
The initially formed imine will tautomerize to a conjugated enamine and cyclization now occurs by electrophilic aromatic substitution.

The enamine will normally prefer to adopt the first configuration shown in which cyclization is not possible, and (perhaps for this reason or perhaps because it is difficult to predict which quinoline will be formed from an unsymmetrical 1,3-dicarbonyl compound) this has not proved a very important quinoline synthesis. We shall describe two more important variants on the same theme, one for quinolines and one for quinolones.

In the synthesis of pyridines it proved advantageous to make a dihydropyridine and oxidize it to a pyridine afterwards. The same idea works well in probably the most famous quinoline synthesis, the Skraup reaction. The diketone is replaced by an unsaturated carbonyl compound so that the quinoline is formed regiospecifically.

The first step is conjugate addition of the amine. Under acid catalysis the ketone now cyclizes in the way we have just described to give a dihydroquinoline after dehydration. Oxidation to the aromatic quinoline is an easy step accomplished by many possible oxidants.

Traditionally, the Skraup reaction was carried out by mixing everything together and letting it rip. A typical mixture to make a quinoline without substituents on the pyridine ring would be the aromatic amine, concentrated sulfuric acid, glycerol, and nitrobenzene all heated up in a large flask at over 100 °C with a wide condenser.

The glycerol was to provide acrolein (CH₂=CH·CHO) by dehydration, the nitrobenzene was to act as oxidant, and the wide condenser...? All too often Skraup reactions did let rip—with destructive results. A safer approach is to prepare the conjugate adduct first, cyclize it in acid solution, and then oxidize it with one of the reagents we described for pyridine synthesis, particularly quinones such as DDQ.
An important use of the traditional Skraup synthesis is to make 6-methoxy-8-nitroquinoline from an aromatic amine with only one free ortho position, glycerol, the usual concentrated sulfuric acid, and the oxidant arsenic pentoxide. Though the reported procedure uses 588 grams of As$_2$O$_5$, which might disconcert many chemists, it works well and the product can be turned into other quinolines by reduction of the nitro group, diazotization, and nucleophilic substitution (Chapter 23).

![Chemical reaction](image)

The more modern style of Skraup synthesis is used to make 8-quinolinol or ‘oxine’. ortho-Amino-phenol has only one free position ortho to the amino group and is very nucleophilic, so acrolein can be used in weak acid with only a trace of strong acid. Iron(III) is the oxidant with a bit of boric acid for luck, and the yield is excellent.

![Chemical reaction](image)

This compound is important because it forms unusually stable metal complexes with metal ions such as Mg(II) or Al(III). It is also used as a corrosion inhibitor on copper because it forms a stable layer of Cu(II) complex that prevents oxidation of the interior.

**Quinolones also come from anilines by cyclization to an ortho position**

The usual method for making quinolone antibiotics is possible because they all have a carboxylic acid in the 3-position. Disconnection suggests a rather unstable malonic ester derivative as starting material.

![Chemical reaction](image)

In fact, the enol ether of this compound is easily made from diethyl malonate and ethyl orthoformate [HC(OEt)$_3$]. The aromatic amine reacts with this compound by an addition–elimination sequence giving an enamine that cyclizes on heating. This time there is no worry about the geometry of the enamine.

![Chemical reaction](image)

For examples of quinolone antibiotics we can choose ofloxacin, whose synthesis is discussed in detail in Chapter 23, and rosoxacin whose synthesis is discussed overleaf. Both molecules contain the...
same quinolone carboxylic acid framework, outlined in black, with another heterocyclic system at position 7 and various other substituents here and there.

To make rosoxacin two heterocyclic systems must be constructed. Workers at the pharmaceutical company Sterling decided to build the pyridine in an ingenious version of the Hantzsch synthesis using acetylenic esters on 3-nitrobenzaldehyde. The ammonia was added as ammonium acetate. Oxidation with nitric acid made the pyridine, hydrolysis of the esters and decarboxylation removed the acid groups, and reduction with Fe(II) and HCl converted the nitro group into the amino group required for the quinolone synthesis.

Now the quinolone synthesis can be executed with the same reagents we used before and all that remains is ester hydrolysis and alkylation at nitrogen. Notice that the quinolone cyclization could in theory have occurred in two ways as the two positions ortho to the amino group are different. In practice cyclization occurs away from the pyridine ring as the alternative quinolone would be impossibly crowded.

Since quinolones, like pyridones, can be converted into chloro-compounds with POCl₃, they can be used in nucleophilic substitution reactions to build up more complex quinolines.

Because isoquinolines are dealt with in more detail in Chapter 51, we will give just one important synthesis here. It is a synthesis of a dihydroisoquinoline by what amounts to an intramolecular Vilsmeier reaction in which the electrophile is made from an amide and POCl₃. Since, to make the isoquinoline, two hydrogen atoms must be removed from carbon atoms it makes more sense to use a noble metal such as Pd(0) as the oxidizing agent rather than the reagents we used for pyridine synthesis.

More heteroatoms in fused rings mean more choice in synthesis

The imidazo-pyridazine ring system forms the basis for a number of drugs in human and animal medicine. The synthesis of this system uses chemistry discussed in Chapter 43 to build the pyridazine ring. There we established that it was easy to make dichloropyridazines and to displace the chlorine
atoms one by one with different nucleophiles. Now we will move on from these intermediates to the bicyclic system.

A 2-bromo-acid derivative is the vital reagent. It reacts at the amino nitrogen atom with the carbonyl group and at the pyridazine ring nitrogen atom with the alkyl halide. This is the only way the molecule can organize itself into a ten-electron aromatic system.

In Chapter 43 we also gave the structure of timolol, a thiadiazole-based β-blocker drug for reduction of high blood pressure. This compound has an aromatic 1,2,5-thiadiazole ring system and a saturated morpholine as well as an aliphatic side chain. Its synthesis relies on ring formation by rather a curious method followed by selective nucleophilic substitution, rather in the style of the last synthesis. The aromatic ring is made by the action of S₂Cl₂ on ‘cyanamide’.

This reaction must start by attack of the amide nitrogen on the electrophilic sulfur atom. Cyclization cannot occur while the linear nitrile is in place so chloride ion must first attack CN. Thereafter cyclization is easy. The chloride ion probably comes from disproportionation of ClS⁻.

Reaction with epichlorohydrin (the chloroepoxide shown below) followed by amine displacement puts in one of the side chains and nucleophilic substitution with morpholine on the ring completes the synthesis.
Summary: the three major approaches to the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles

We end this chapter with summaries of the three major strategies in the synthesis of heterocycles:

- ring construction by ionic reactions
- ring construction by pericyclic reactions
- modification of existing rings by electrophilic or nucleophilic aromatic substitution or by lithiation and reaction with electrophiles

We will summarize the different applications of these strategies, and also suggest cases for which each strategy is not suitable. This section revises material from Chapter 43 as well since most of the ring modifications appear there.

Ring construction by ionic cyclization

The first strategy you should try out when faced with the synthesis of an aromatic heterocyclic ring is the disconnection of bonds between the heteroatom or atoms and carbon, with the idea of using the heteroatoms as nucleophiles and the carbon fragment as a double electrophile.
Summary: the three major approaches to the synthesis of aromatic heterocycles

**six-membered rings**

- pyridazines
  - ideally made by this strategy from 1,4-dicarbonyl compounds with oxidation

**Heterocycles with two non-adjacent heteroatoms**

- **five-membered rings**
  - imidazoles and thiazoles
  - ideally made by this strategy from α-halocarboxylic acid

  ![Diagram of ring construction by pericyclic reactions](image)

  - Note. This strategy is not suitable for oxazoles as amides are not usually reactive enough: cyclization of acylated carbonyl compounds is usually preferred

- **six-membered rings**
  - pyrimidines
  - ideally made by this strategy from 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds

**Ring construction by pericyclic reactions**

**Cycloaddition reactions**

- 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition is ideal for the construction of isoxazoles, 1,2,3-triazoles, and tetrazoles

**Sigmatropic rearrangements**

- a special reaction that is the vital step of the Fischer indole synthesis

  - phenylhydrazine
  - a phenylhydrazone
  - an indole
Ring modification

**Electrophilic aromatic substitution**

works very well on pyroles, thiophenes and furans where it occurs best in the 2- and 5-positions and nearly as well in the 3- and 4-positions. Often best to block positions where substitution not wanted

[Diagram of pyrole, thiophene, furan]

works well for indole—occurs only in the 3-position but the electrophile may migrate to the 2-position

[Diagram of indole]

works well for five-membered rings with a sulfur, oxygen, or pyrrole-like nitrogen atom and occurs anywhere that is not blocked (see earlier sections)

*Note.* Not recommended for pyridine, quinoline, or isoquinoline

**Nucleophilic aromatic substitution**

works particularly well for pyridine and quinoline where the charge in the intermediate can rest on nitrogen

[Diagram of pyridine, quinoline]

especially important for pyridines and quinolones with conversion to the chloro-compound and displacement of chlorine by nucleophiles and, for quinolines, displacement of fluorin atoms on the benzene ring

[Diagram of pyridine with POCl₃, quinoline with POCl₃]

works well for the six-membered rings with two nitrogens (pyridazines, pyrimidines, and pyrazines) in all positions

**Lithiation and reaction with electrophiles**

works well for pyrrole (if NH blocked), thiophene, or furan next to the heteroatom. Exchange of Br or I for Li works well for most electrophiles providing any acidic hydrogens (including the NH in the ring) are blocked

[Diagram of pyrrole with BuLi, lithium, electrophile]
Problems

1. In this pyridine synthesis, give a structure for A and mechanisms for the reactions. Why is hydroxylamine used instead of ammonia in the last step?

2. Suggest a mechanism for this synthesis of a tricyclic aromatic heterocycle.

3. How would you synthesize these aromatic heterocycles?

4. Is the heterocyclic ring created in this reaction aromatic? How does the reaction proceed? Comment on the selectivity of the cyclization.

5. Suggest mechanisms for this unusual indole synthesis. How does the second reaction relate to electrophilic substitution at indoles as discussed in Chapter 33?

6. Explain the reactions in this partial synthesis of methoxatin, the coenzyme of bacteria living on methanol.

7. Suggest a synthesis of fentiazac, a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug. The analysis is in the chapter but you need to explain why you need these particular starting materials as well as how you would make them.

8. Explain why these two quinoline syntheses from the same starting materials give (mainly) different products.
9. Give mechanisms for these reactions used to prepare a fused pyridine. Why is it necessary to use a protecting group?

10. Identify the intermediates and give mechanisms for the steps in this synthesis of a triazole.

11. Give detailed mechanisms for this pyridine synthesis. The first part revises Chapters 27 and 29.

12. This question revises a number of previous chapters, especially 24–26, and 39. Give mechanisms for the reactions in this synthesis of a furan and comment on the choice of reagents for the various steps.

13. Suggest syntheses for this compound, explaining why you choose this particular approach.
Asymmetric synthesis

Nature is asymmetrical—nature in the looking-glass

‘How would you like to live in Looking-glass House, Kitty? I wonder if they’d give you milk in there? Perhaps looking glass milk isn’t good to drink...’ Lewis Carroll, *Through the looking-glass and what Alice found there*, Macmillan, 1872.

You are chiral, and so are Alice, Kitty, and all living organisms. You may think you look fairly symmetrical in a looking-glass, but as you read this book you are probably turning the pages with your right hand and processing the information with the left side of your brain. Some organisms are rather more obviously chiral: snails, for example, carry shells that could spiral to the left or to the right. Not only is nature chiral, but by and large it exists as just one enantiomer—though some snail shells spiral to the left, the vast majority of marine snail shells spiral to the right; all humans have their stomach on their left and their liver on their right; all honeysuckle climbs by spiralling to the left and all bindweed spirals to the right.

‘*L’univers est dissymétrique*, Louis Pasteur, ca. 1860

Nature has a left and a right, and it can tell the difference between them. You may think that human beings are sadly lacking in this respect, since as children we all had to learn, rather laboriously, which is which. Yet at an even earlier age, you could no doubt distinguish the smell of oranges from the smell of lemons, even though this is an achievement at least as remarkable as getting the right shoe on the right foot. The smells of orange and lemon differ in being the left- and right-handed versions of the same molecule, limonene. \((R)\)\((+)\)-Limonene smells rounded and orangey; \((S)\)\((-)\)-limonene is sharp and lemony. Similarly, spearmint and caraway seeds smell quite different, though again this pair of aromas differs only in being the enantiomeric forms of the ketone carvone.
Even bacteria know their right from their left: *Pseudomonas putida* is a bacterium that can use aromatic hydrocarbons as a foodstuff, degrading them to diols. The diol produced from bromobenzene is formed as one enantiomer only.

How can this be? We said in Chapter 16 that enantiomers are chemically identical, so how is it that we can distinguish them with our noses and bacteria can produce them selectively? Well, the answer lies in a proviso to our assumption about the identity of enantiomers: they are identical until they are placed in a chiral environment. This concept will underlie all we say in this chapter about how to make single enantiomers in the laboratory. We take our lead from Nature: all life is chiral, so all living systems are chiral environments. Nature has chosen to make all its living structures from chiral molecules (amino acids, sugars), and has selected a single enantiomeric form of each. Every amino acid in your body has the *S*- and not the *R*-configuration, and from this fact, along with the uniform chirality of natural sugars, derives the larger scale chirality of all living structures from the DNA double helix to a blue whale’s internal architecture. The answer to Alice’s question is most certainly no—her kitten will be able to degrade the achiral fats in the milk quite easily, but the proteins (which will be made of *S*-amino acids) and *L*-lactose will be quite indigestible.

For a perfumer or flavour and fragrance manufacturer, the distinction between enantiomers of the same molecule is clearly of great importance. Nonetheless, we could all get by with caraway-flavoured toothpaste. Yet when it comes to drug molecules, making the right enantiomer can be a matter of life and death. Parkinson’s disease sufferers are treated with the non-proteinogenic amino acid *dopa* (3-(3,4-dihydroxyphenyl)alanine; mentioned in Chapter 51). *Dopa* is chiral, and only (*S*)-dopa (known as *L*-dopa) is effective in restoring nerve function. (*R*)-dopa is not only ineffective; it is, in fact, quite toxic, so the drug must be marketed as a single enantiomer. We will look at how *L*-dopa is made industrially later in the chapter.

The amphetamine analogue fenfluramine, whose synthesis you designed while you were reading Chapter 31, used to be marketed as an anorectic (appetite-suppressant)—it stimulates the production of the hormone serotonin and makes the body feel satisfied—until it became clear that some undesirable side-effects could be avoided by administering it solely as the (*S*)-enantiomer. Fenfluramine ‘relaunched’ as the enantiomerically pure dexfenfluramine, and was reputedly ‘a turning point for your overweight patients’—was available in the USA as a component of the ‘slimming pill’ Redux.

---

**Some bacteria make their cell walls from ‘unnatural’ *R*-amino acids to make them unassailable by the (S-amino-acid-derived) enzymes used by higher organisms to hydrolyse peptides.**

**You might, of course, retort that, in going through the looking-glass, perhaps Alice’s kitten has undergone a universal inversion of configuration so that her proteins are all made of *R*-amino acids. Who can tell?**

That is, *dopa* is not one of the 20 odd amino acids found in proteins; see Chapter 49.

There is no clear relationship between molecular chirality and the chirality of life forms. Right- and left-handed people are made from amino acids and sugars of the same handedness and the rare left-hand-spiralling snails have the same molecular chirality as their more common right-hand-spiralling relatives.
It is not only drugs that have to be manufactured enantiomerically pure. This simple lactone is the pheromone released by Japanese beetles (*Popilia japonica*) as a means of communication. The beetles, whose larvae are serious crop pests, are attracted by the pheromone, and synthetic pheromone is marketed as ‘Japonilure’ to bait beetle traps. Provided the synthetic pheromone is the stereoisomer shown, with the \( Z \) double bond and the \( R \) configuration at the stereogenic centre, only 25 \( \mu \)g per trap catches thousands of beetles. You first met this compound in Chapter 32, where we pointed out that double bond stereocontrol was important since the \( E \)-isomer of the pheromone is virtually useless as a bait (it retains only about 10% of the activity). Even more important is control over the configuration at the chiral centre, because the \( S \)-enantiomer of the pheromone is not only inactive in attracting the beetles, but acts as a powerful inhibitor of the \( R \)-enantiomer—even 1% \( S \)-enantiomer in a sample of pheromone destroys the activity.

You can see why chemists need to be able to make compounds as single enantiomers. In Chapters 31–34 you looked at relative stereochemistry and how to control it; this chapter is about how to control absolute stereochemistry. In the last 20 years or so, this subject has occupied more organic chemists than probably any other, and we are now at a point where it is not only possible (and in fact essential, because of strict regulatory rules) to make many drug molecules as single enantiomers, but it is also even possible to make some molecules that are indigenous to nature more cheaply in the lab. At least 30% of the world’s supply of menthol, for example, is not extracted from plants but is made in Japan using chemical techniques (which you will meet later in this chapter) that produce only a single enantiomer.

**Resolution can be used to separate enantiomers**

When we first introduced the concept of enantiomers and chirality in Chapter 16, we stressed that any imbalance in enantiomers always derives ultimately from nature. A laboratory synthesis, unless it involves an enantiomerically pure starting material or reagent, will always give a mixture of enantiomers. Here is just such a synthesis of the Japanese beetle pheromone you have just met. You can see the \( Z \)-selective Lindlar reduction in use—only one geometrical isomer of the double bond is formed—but, of course, the product is necessarily racemic and therefore useless as beetle bait, because in the original addition of the lithiated alkyne to the aldehyde there can be no control over stereochemistry. If all the starting materials and reagents are achiral, the product must be racemic.

In Chapter 16 we introduced you to resolution as a means of separating enantiomers, so if we want just the \( (R) \) compound, we could try that. Resolving the pheromone itself is not straightforward as there are no convenient functional groups to attach a resolving agent to. But the precursor alcohol can be resolved—William Pirkle did this by reacting the racemic alcohol with an enantiomerically pure isocyanate to make a mixture of the two diastereoisomeric amides which he then separated by chromatography. The resolving agent was removed from one of the diastereoisomers to give a single enantiomer of the alcohol, which could be cyclized to the natural \( (R) \)-pheromone using base and then acid.
This is not, however, the method used to make Japanese beetle pheromone industrially. Resolution, as you have probably realized, is highly wasteful—if you want just one enantiomer, the other ends up being thrown away. In industrial synthesis, this is not an option unless recycling is possible, since chemical plants cannot afford the expense of disposing of such quantities of high-quality waste. So we need alternative methods of making single enantiomers.

The chiral pool—Nature’s ‘ready-made’ chiral centres

A more economical way of making compounds as single enantiomers is to manufacture them using an enantiomerically pure natural product as a starting material, rather than just using one as a resolving agent. This method is known as the chiral pool strategy, and relies on finding a suitable enantiomerically pure natural product—a member of the chiral pool—that can easily be transformed into the target molecule. The chiral pool is that collection of cheap, readily available pure natural products, usually amino acids or sugars, from which pieces containing the required chiral centres can be taken and incorporated into the product.

Sometimes the natural products that are needed are immediately obvious from the structure of the target molecule. An apparently trivial example is the artificial sweetener aspartame (marketed as Nutrasweet), which is a dipeptide. Clearly, an asymmetric synthesis of this compound will start with the two members of the chiral pool, the constituent (natural) \((S)\)-amino acids, aspartic acid and phenylalanine. In fact, because phenylalanine is relatively expensive for an amino acid, significant quantities of aspartame derive from synthetic \((S)\)-phenylalanine made by one of the methods discussed later in the chapter.

Most asymmetric syntheses require rather more than one or two steps from chiral pool constituents. Male bark beetles of the genus \(Ips\) produce a pheromone that is a mixture of several enantiomerically pure compounds. One is a simple diene alcohol \((S)\)-(–)-ipsenol. Japanese chemists in the 1970s noted the similarity of part of the structure of ipsenol (in black) to the widely available amino acid \((S)\)-leucine and decided to exploit this in a chiral pool synthesis, using the stereogenic centre (green ring) of leucine to provide the stereogenic centre of ipsenol.

The amino group needs to be converted to a hydroxyl group with retention of configuration: diazotization followed by hydrolysis does just this because of neighbouring group participation from the carboxylic acid.
The alcohol was protected as the THP derivative (Chapter 24). Reduction of the acid, via the ester, then allowed introduction of the tosyl leaving group, which was displaced to make an epoxide. The epoxide reacted with a Grignard reagent carrying the diene portion of the target molecule.

Another insect pheromone synthesis illustrates one of the drawbacks of chiral pool approaches. The ambrosia beetle aggregation pheromone is called sulcatol and is a simple secondary alcohol. This pheromone poses a rather unusual synthetic problem: the beetles produce it as a 65:35 mixture of enantiomers so, in order to mimic the pheromone’s effect, the chemist has to synthesize both enantiomers separately and mix them together in the right proportion.

One approach to the \((R)\)-enantiomer employs the sugar found in DNA, 2-deoxy-\(\beta\)-ribose, as a source of chirality.

Only one (ringed with green again) of the two defined chiral centres in the sugar appears in the product so, after protecting the hemiacetal, the two free hydroxyl groups were removed by mesylation, substitution by iodide, and reduction. A simple olefination gave \((R)\)-sulcatol. Sugars often need simplifying in this way, because only rarely are all their chiral centres (most have more than two!) needed in the final product.

\((S)\)-Sulcatol cannot be made by this route, because the L-sugar is unavailable (even D-deoxyribose is quite expensive), so an alternative synthesis was needed that could be adapted to give either isomer. The solution is to go back to another hydroxy-acid, ethyl lactate, which is more widely available as its \((S)\)-enantiomer, but which can be converted simply to either enantiomer of a key epoxide intermediate. From \((S)\)-ethyl lactate, protection of the alcohol, reduction of the ester, and tosylation allows ring closure to one enantiomer of the epoxide; tosylation of the secondary hydroxyl group followed by reduction and ring closure gives the other enantiomer.
both enantiomers of propylene oxide can be made from (S)-ethyl lactate

For this reason, the two enantiomers of propylene oxide are commonly used as ‘chiral pool’ starting materials. These epoxides react with the appropriate Grignard reagent to give either enantiomer of the sulcatol.

\[ \text{(R)- or (S)-propylene oxide} \]

For targets with more than one stereogenic centre, only one need be borrowed from the chiral pool, provided diastereoselective reactions can be used to introduce the others with control over relative stereochemistry. Because the first chiral centre has defined absolute configuration, any diastereoselective reaction that controls the relative stereochemistry of a new chiral centre also defines its absolute configuration. In this synthesis of the rare amino sugar methyl mycaminoside, only one chiral centre comes directly from the chiral pool—the rest are introduced diastereoselectively.

\[ \text{(S)-lactic acid} \rightarrow \text{methyl mycaminoside} \]

The ring was built up from acetylated (S)-lactic acid, and a cyclization step introduced the second chiral centre—the methyl group goes pseudoequatorial, while the pseudoaxial position is preferred by the methoxy group because of the anomeric effect (Chapter 42).

\[ \text{axial attack leads to more stable equatorial alcohol} \]
\[ \text{hydroxyl group directs epoxidation to top face by hydrogen bonding} \]

Finally, the simple nucleophilic amine Me₂NH attacks the epoxide with inversion of configuration to give methyl mycaminoside. The conformational drawing shows that all substituents are equatorial except the MeO group, which prefers to be axial because of the anomeric effect.

In Chapter 18 the conformational factors governing reduction of cyclohexanones are discussed and the directing effects of OH groups in epoxidation are discussed in Chapters 33 and 34.
The trouble with chiral pool approaches is that the compound you make has to be pretty close in structure to one of the natural products that are readily available or the synthetic route becomes so tortuous that it’s even more wasteful than resolution. The second major drawback is the lack of availability of both enantiomers of most natural products, especially useful starting materials like amino acids and sugars—we have just met this problem with the synthesis of sulcatol from deoxyribose. As a further example, we can return again to our Japanese beetles. Their pheromone can be made from glutamic acid by a short route. Unfortunately, when widely available \((S)-(\pm)-\)glutamic acid is used, the product is the enantiomer of the active pheromone, which you will remember is a powerful inhibitor of the natural pheromone. Making the right enantiomer is not economical, because \((R)-(\pm)-\)glutamic acid is about 40 times more expensive than \((S)-(\pm)-\)glutamic acid.

Atmospheric synthesis

When we create a new stereogenic centre in a previously achiral molecule using achiral reagents (addition of \(\text{CN}^-\) to aldehydes was the example you met in Chapter 16), we get a racemic mixture because the transition states leading to the two enantiomers are themselves enantiomeric and therefore equal in energy.

\[
\text{nucleophilic attack on a ketone in an achiral environment.}
\]

Diastereoselective synthesis, on the other hand, relies on making the transition states for reactions leading to different diastereoisomers as different in energy as possible and therefore favouring the formation of one diastereoisomer over another. You met this type of stereoselectivity in Chapter 33. Here is a simple example: \(\text{PhLi}\) adds to this ketone to give one diastereoisomer of the tertiary alcohol and not the other. Attack on one or other face of the ketone leads to diastereomeric transition states: this is perhaps most obvious when you realize that one is axial and one equatorial attack. An energy diagram for this type of reduction appears on the next page.
Now, let’s go back to the principle of resolution and see how we can devise a way of improving upon it that doesn’t require us to throw away 50% of our product. Resolution works because attaching an enantiomerically pure resolving agent to the racemic substrate distinguishes the substrate’s two enantiomers as diastereoisomers (diastereoisomers are chemically different; enantiomers are not). Can we use this same idea to make two enantiomeric (and therefore equal in energy) transition states into diastereoisomeric ones (which will therefore be unequal in energy)? If we can, the lower-energy transition state will be favoured and we will get more of one enantiomer than the other.

The answer is most definitely yes—what is needed is an enantiomerically pure molecule or part of a molecule that will be present during the reaction and will interact with the transition state of the reaction in such a way that it controls the formation of the new stereogenic centre. This molecule might be a reagent or a catalyst, or it might be covalently attached to the starting material. We will consider all of these possibilities, the last first, and you will see that they really are the most powerful and versatile ways of making enantiomerically pure compounds.

**Chiral auxiliaries**

The product of a Diels–Alder reaction between cyclopentadiene and benzyl acrylate must necessarily be racemic as both reagents are achiral. Though only one diastereoisomer—the *endo* product—is formed, it must be formed as an exactly 50:50 mixture of enantiomers.

Diels–Alder reaction gives a racemic product

\[
\text{achiral dienophile} + \text{achiral diene} \rightarrow 50:50 \text{ mixture of two enantiomers}
\]

Now see what happens if we replace the achiral benzyl ester group with an amide derived from the natural amino acid valine (Chapter 49). The diastereoselectivity remains the same but the chiral environment created by the single enantiomer covalently bonded to the dienophile has a remarkable effect: only one enantiomer of the product is formed.
As far as stereoselectivity is concerned, the key step is the Diels–Alder reaction—in each case the diene (cyclopentadiene, shown in black) adds across the dienophile, an acrylic acid derivative. As you would expect from what we said in Chapter 35, both reactions are diastereoselective in that they generate mainly the \textit{endo} product. In the first example, that is all there is to say: the product that is formed is necessarily racemic because all the starting materials in the reaction were achiral.

But, in the second example, a green \textit{chiral auxiliary} has been attached to one of the starting materials. It contains another stereogenic centre and is enantiomerically pure—it was, in fact, made by a chiral pool strategy from the amino acid (S)–valine (see below). You can see that it has quite an effect on the reaction—the extra stereogenic centre means that there are now two possible diastereisomeric \textit{endo} products, but only one is formed.

The chiral auxiliary was enantiomerically pure—every molecule had the same configuration at its stereogenic centre. That centre was not involved in the Diels–Alder reaction, so all the products will similarly have the same configuration at the stereogenic centre in the green part of the molecule. So, if one diastereoisomer of the product is formed, all the stereogenic centres in that product must be of a single configuration; in other words the product is diastereoisomerically \textit{and} enantiomerically pure. And when we do the final step of the sequence, to remove the chiral auxiliary, that enantiomeric purity remains, despite the fact that we have removed its source. Overall, by sequential attachment and removal of the auxiliary we have made the same product but as a single enantiomer.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{This is what we mean by a chiral auxiliary strategy}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item 1. An enantiomerically pure compound (usually derived from a simple natural product like an amino acid), called a chiral auxiliary, is attached to the starting material.
    \item 2. A diastereoselective reaction is carried out, which, because of the enantiomeric purity of the chiral auxiliary, gives only one enantiomer of the product.
    \item 3. The chiral auxiliary is removed by, for example, hydrolysis, leaving the product of the reaction as a single enantiomer. The best chiral auxiliaries (of which the example above is one) can be recycled, so although stoichiometric quantities are needed, there is no waste.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
We have introduced you to this chiral auxiliary before any other because it is more commonly used than any other. It is a member of the oxazolidinone (the name of the heterocyclic ring) family of auxiliaries developed by David Evans at Harvard University, and is easily and cheaply made from the amino acid \((S)-\text{valine}\). Not only is it cheaply made: it can also be recycled. The last step of the route above, transesterification with benzyl alcohol, regenerates the auxiliary ready for re-use.

The most versatile chiral auxiliaries should also be available as both enantiomers. Now, for the valine-derived one here, this is not the case—\((R)-\text{valine}\) is quite expensive since it is not found in nature. However, by starting with the naturally occurring (and cheap) compound norephedrine, we can make an auxiliary that, although not enantiomeric with the one derived from \((S)-\text{valine}\), acts as though it were. Here is the synthesis of the auxiliary.

And here it is promoting the same asymmetric Diels–Alder reaction, but giving the enantiomeric product.

How do these auxiliaries fulfil their role? If we go back to the valine-derived auxiliary and draw the auxiliary-bearing dienophile coordinated with the Lewis acid you can clearly see that the isopropyl group shields the back face of the alkene from attack: when the cyclopentadiene moves in, it must approach from the front face (and remember it will align itself to gain maximum secondary orbital stabilization and therefore give the \textit{endo} product).

Note that the auxiliary also has the effect of fixing the conformation of the black single bond as \textit{s-cis} (we introduced this nomenclature on p. 000). Attack on the top face of the \textit{s-trans} compound would give the enantiomeric product.
The auxiliary has succeeded in doing what we set out to do (p. 000)—it has made diastereoisomeric the transition states leading to enantiomeric products, the difference in energy arising because of steric crowding of one face of the alkene.

Lest you should imagine that all effective auxiliaries are oxazolidinones, here is a different one—8-phenylmenthol—used by Corey in enantioselective prostaglandin synthesis. 8-Phenylmenthol is made from the natural product pulegone (Chapter 51). Even in the starting material the role of the phenyl group is clearly to crowd one face of the dienophile.

A Lewis acid (AlCl₃)-catalysed Diels–Alder reaction with a substituted, but still achiral, cyclopentadiene gives a single enantiomer of the adduct. The sense of asymmetry induced in the reaction is seen more clearly if we redraw the product with 'R*' to represent the chiral auxiliary. The phenyl group on the auxiliary shields the back of the dienophile (as drawn) so that the diene has to add from the front to give one of the possible endo enantiomers.

Corey used the four chiral centres created in the reaction to provide the chiral centres around the cyclopentanone ring of the prostaglandins (a family of compounds implicated in inflammation; see Chapter 51). After hydroxylation of the ester's enolate, the auxiliary was removed, this time by reduction. Diol cleavage with periodate (mentioned at the end of Chapter 35) gave a ketone that underwent Baeyer–Villiger oxidation on the more substituted side to give a hydrolysable lactone. Iodolactonization gave a substituted cyclopentanone that Corey used as a starting material for several important prostaglandin syntheses.
Alkylation of chiral enolates

Chiral auxiliaries can be used in plenty of other reactions, and one of the most common types is the alkylation of enolates. Evans’s oxazolidinone auxiliaries are particularly appropriate here because they are readily turned into enolizable carboxylic acid derivatives.

Treatment with base (usually LDA) at low temperature produces an enolate, and you can clearly see that the auxiliary has been designed to favour attack by electrophiles on only one face of that enolate. Notice too that the bulky auxiliary means that only the Z-enolate forms: alkylation of the E-enolate on the top face would give the diastereoisomeric product. Coordination of the lithium ion to the other carbonyl oxygen makes the whole structure rigid, fixing the isopropyl group where it can provide maximum hindrance to attack on the ‘wrong’ face.

The table in the margin shows the ratio of diastereoisomers produced by this reaction for a few alkylating agents. As you can see, none of these reactions is truly 100% diastereoselective and, indeed, only the best chiral auxiliaries (of which this is certainly one) give >98% of a single diastereoisomer. The problem with less than perfect diastereoselectivity is that, when the chiral auxiliary is removed, the final product is contaminated with some of the other enantiomer. A 98:2 ratio of diastereoisomers will result in a 98:2 ratio of enantiomers.

Enantiomeric excess

When talking about compounds that are neither racemic nor enantiomerically pure (usually called enantiomerically enriched or, occasionally, scalemic) chemists talk not about ratios of enantiomers but about enantiomeric excess. Enantiomeric excess (or ee) is defined as the excess of one enantiomer over the other, expressed as a percentage of the whole. So a 98:2 mixture of enantiomers consists of one enantiomer in 96% excess over the other, and we call it an enantiomerically enriched mixture with 96% ee. Why not just say that we have 98% of one enantiomer? Enantiomers are not like other isomers because they are simply mirror images. The 2% of the wrong enantiomer makes a racemate of 2% of the right isomer so the mixture contains 4% racemate and 96% of one enantiomer, 96% ee.
We will see shortly how we can make further use of the chiral auxiliary to increase the ee of the reaction products. But, first, we should consider how to measure ee. One way is simply to measure the angle through which the sample rotates plane-polarized light. The angle of rotation is proportional to the enantiomeric excess of the sample (see the Box). The problem with this method is that to measure an actual value for ee you need to know what rotation a sample of 100% ee gives, and that is not always possible. Also, polarimeter measurements are notoriously unreliable—they depend on temperature, solvent, and concentration, and are subject to massive error due to small amounts of highly optically active impurities.

Modern chemists usually use either chromatography or spectroscopy to tell the difference between enantiomers. You may protest that we have told you that this is impossible—enantiomers are chemically identical and have identical NMR spectra, so how can chromatography or spectroscopy tell them apart? Well, again, they are identical unless they are in a chiral environment (the principle on which resolution relies). We introduced HPLC on a chiral stationary phase as a way of separating enantiomers preparatively in Chapter 16. The same method can be used analytically—less than a milligram of chiral compound can be passed down a narrow column containing chirally modified silica. The two enantiomers are separated and the quantity of each can be measured (usually by UV absorption or by refractive index changes) and an ee derived. Gas chromatography can be used in the same way—the columns are packed with a chiral stationary phase such as this isoleucine derivative.

Separating enantiomers spectroscopically relies again on putting them into a chiral environment. One way of doing this, if the compound is, say, an alcohol or an amine, is to make a derivative (an ester or an amide) with an enantiomerically pure acyl chloride. The one most commonly used is known as Mosher’s acyl chloride, after its inventor Harry Mosher, though there are many others. The two enantiomers of the alcohol or amine now become diastereoisomers, and give different peaks in the NMR spectrum—the integrals can be used to determine ee and, although the $^1{}$H NMR of such a mixture of diastereoisomers may become quite cluttered because it is a mixture, the presence of the CF$_3$ group means that the ratio can alternatively be measured by integrating the two singlets in the very simple $^{19}{}$F NMR spectrum.
Another powerful method of discriminating between enantiomers is to add an enantiomerically pure compound to the NMR sample that does not react with the compound under investigation but simply forms a complex with it. The complexes formed from enantiomers are diastereoisomeric and therefore have different chemical shifts and, by integrating the NMR signals, the ratio of enantiomers can be determined. In the past, lanthanide salts of enantiomerically pure weak acids (called chiral shift reagents), which formed Lewis acid–base complexes with oxygen atoms in the compound under investigation, were used. More common nowadays is this alcohol, 2,2,2-trifluoro-1-(9-anthryl)ethanol, or TFAE, which can both hydrogen-bond to and form π-stacking complexes with many compounds, and often splits enantiomeric resonances very cleanly. Again the $^{19}$F or $^1$H NMR spectrum can be used.

Let’s go back to chiral auxiliaries. We said that, although we want to get maximum levels of stereo-selectivity in our chiral-auxiliary-controlled reaction, we may still have 1 or 2% of a minor diastereoisomer, which, once we have removed our chiral auxiliary, will compromise the ee of our final product. It is at this point that we can use a trick that essentially employs the chiral auxiliary in a secondary role as a resolving agent. Provided the products are crystalline, it will usually be possible to recrystallize our 98:2 mixture of diastereoisomers to give essentially a single diastereoisomer, rather like carrying out a resolution with an enormous head start. Once this has been done, the chiral auxiliary can be removed and the product may be very close to 100% ee. Of course, the recrystallization sacrifices a few percentage points of yield, but these are invariably much less valuable than the few percentage points of ee gained! Here is an example from the work of Evans himself. During his synthesis of the complex antibiotic X-206 he needed large quantities of the small molecule below. He decided to make it by a chiral-auxiliary-controlled alkylation, followed by reduction to give the alcohol. The auxiliary needed is the one derived from norephedrine, and the alkylation with allyl iodide gives a 98:2 mixture of diastereoisomers. However, recrystallization converted this into an 83% yield...
of a single diastereoisomer in >99% purity, giving material of essentially 100% ee after removal of the auxiliary.

This is one big bonus of using a chiral auxiliary—it’s much easier to purify diastereoisomers than enantiomers and a chiral auxiliary reaction necessarily produces diastereoisomeric products.

But there are, of course, disadvantages. Chiral auxiliaries must be attached to the compound under construction, and after they have done their job they must be removed. The best auxiliaries can be recycled, but even then there are still at least two ‘unproductive’ steps in the synthesis. We may have given the impression that successful asymmetric synthesis is made possible by joining any chiral compound to the substrate. This is very far from the truth. Discovering successful chiral auxiliaries requires painstaking research and most potential chiral auxiliaries give low ees in practice. More efficient may be chiral reagents, or, best of all, chiral catalysts, and it is to these that we turn next.

**Chiral reagents and chiral catalysts**

If we want to create a new chiral centre in a molecule, our starting material must have prochirality—the ability to become chiral in one simple transformation. The most common prochiral units that give rise to new chiral centres are the trigonal carbon atoms of alkenes and carbonyl groups, which become tetrahedral by addition reactions. In all of the examples you saw in the last section, a prochiral alkene (we can count enolates as alkenes for this purpose) reacted selectively on one face because of the influence of the chiral auxiliary, which made the faces of the alkene diastereotopic.

One of the simplest transformations you could imagine of a prochiral unit into a chiral one is the reduction of a ketone. Although chiral auxiliary strategies have been used to make this type of reaction asymmetric, you will appreciate that, conceptually, the simplest way of getting the product as a single enantiomer would be to use a chiral reducing agent—in other words, to attach the chiral influence not to the substrate (as we did with chiral auxiliaries) but to the reagent.

One of the earliest attempts to do this used LiAlH₄ as the reducing agent and made it chiral by attaching ‘Darvon alcohol’ to it. Unfortunately, this reagent is not very effective—successful substrates are confined to acetylenic alcohols, and even then the products are formed with a maximum of about 80% ee.
More effective is the chiral borohydride analogue developed by Corey, Bakshi, and Shibita. It is based upon a stable boron heterocycle made from an amino alcohol derived from proline, and is known as the CBS reagent after its developers.

The active reducing agent is made by complexing the heterocycle with borane. Only catalytic amounts (usually about 10%) of the boron heterocycle are needed because borane is sufficiently reactive to reduce ketones only when complexed with the nitrogen atom. The rest of the borane just waits until a molecule of catalyst becomes free.

CBS reductions are best when the ketone’s two substituents are well-differentiated sterically—just as Ph and Me are in the example above. Only when the ketone is complexed with the ‘other’ boron atom (in the ring) is it electrophilic enough to be reduced by the weak hydride source. The hydride is delivered via a six-membered cyclic transition state, with the enantioselectivity arising from preference of the larger of the ketone’s two substituents (R₁) for the pseudoequatorial position on this ring.

The CBS reagent is one of the best asymmetric reducing agents invented by chemists. Yet Nature does asymmetric reductions all the time—and gets 100% ee every time too. Nature uses enzymes as chiral catalysts, and chemists have not been slow to subvert these natural systems to their own ends. The problem with using enzymes is that they are designed to fit into a single biochemical pathway and are often quite substrate-specific, and so are not useful as a general chemical method. However, this can be overcome by using conveniently packaged multienzyme systems, living cells. Yeast is particularly good at reducing ketones, and the best enantioselectivities are obtained when the ketone carries a β-ester group. The reaction is done by stirring the ketone with an aqueous suspension of live yeast, which must be fed with plenty of sugar.
These reactions are quite messy, and are best done on a large scale! Notice how the selectivity of baker’s yeast is the reverse of that of the CBS reagent with respect to the large and small ketone substituents. This is most useful, since (R)-proline is expensive, and an enantiomeric yeast cell would be a rarity indeed.

An important application of this baker’s yeast reduction is in the synthesis of citronellol. After reduction and protection of the ester, SN2 substitution of the secondary tosylate group could be achieved with inversion using a copper nucleophile. The 88% ee obtained here is better than that of many natural samples of citronellol: in common with many other terpenes, citronellol extracted from plants varies greatly in enantiomeric purity. It is quite a compliment to the humble yeast that, with a bit of help from Professor Mori’s research group, it can outdo most of the more sophisticated members of the plant kingdom.

Asymmetric hydrogenation

Probably the best-studied way of carrying out enantioselective reduction is to hydrogenate in the presence of a chiral catalyst. You would not normally choose catalytic hydrogenation for reducing a carbonyl group to an alcohol and, indeed, carbonyl reductions using hydrogenation with a chiral catalyst are not usually very enantioselective. Much better are hydrogenations of double bonds, particularly those with nearby heteratoms (OH, NHR) that can coordinate to the metal.

Here is a simple example: it is, in fact, an asymmetric synthesis of the analgesic drug naproxen. First, look at the reaction—we’ll consider the catalyst in a moment.

The principle is quite simple—the catalyst selects a single enantiotopic face of the double bond and adds hydrogen across it. Exactly how it does this need not concern you, but we do need to go into more detail about the structure of the catalyst, which consists of a metal atom (Ru) and a ligand, called BINAP.

In common with many other ligands for asymmetric hydrogenation, BINAP is a chelating diphosphine: the metal sits between the two phosphorus atoms firmly anchored in a chiral environment. The chirality here is of an unusual sort, since BINAP has no chiral centres. Instead it has axial chirality by virtue of restricted rotation about the bond joining the two naphthalene ring systems. In order for the two enantiomers of BINAP to interconvert, the PPh2 group would have to force its way either past the other PPh2 group or round the black hydrogen (see next page). Both pathways are too strained for racemization to occur.
BINAP is not derived from a natural product, and has to be synthesized in the laboratory and resolved.

**Resolution of BINAP**

The scheme shows one method by which BINAP may be made—the resolution step is unusual because it relies on formation of a molecular complex, not a salt. It is the phosphine oxide that is resolved, and then reduced to the phosphine with trichlorosilane.

This makes it relatively expensive, but the expense is offset by the economy of catalyst required in such reactions. Whereas about 10 mol% catalyst is needed for CBS reductions, many hydrogenations of this type give high enantiomeric excesses with only 0.0002 mol% BINAP–ruthenium(II) catalyst! Because such minuscule quantities of catalyst are needed, enantioselective hydrogenations are more widely used by industry than any other asymmetric method. The other advantage of the resolution is, of course, that either enantiomer is equally available.

BINAP–ruthenium(II) is particularly good at catalysing the hydrogenation of allylic alcohols, and of α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acids to give acids bearing α stereogenic centres (like naproxen above).

If the double bond also bears an amino group, the products of these reactions are α amino acids, and in these cases there is another alternative that works even better, a catalyst based on rhodium. Here is one very important synthesis of an unnatural amino acid using a rhodium catalyst. Again, look first at the reaction and then we will discuss the catalyst.

The product can be converted into L-dopa, a drug used to treat Parkinson’s disease, and it is this reaction and this catalyst, both developed by Monsanto, that convinced many chemical companies that enantioselective synthesis was possible on a large scale.
The catalyst is a cationic complex of rhodium with another diphosphone, DIPAMP. DIPAMP’s chirality resides in the two stereogenic phosphorus atoms: unlike amines, phosphines are configurationally stable, rather like sulfoxides (which we will discuss in the next chapter). The catalyst imposes chirality on the hydrogenation by coordinating to both the amide group and the double bond of the substrate. Two diastereoisomeric complexes result, since the chiral catalyst can coordinate to either of the enantiotopic faces of the double bond.

It turns out that the enantioselectivity in the reaction arises because one of these diastereoisomeric complexes reacts much more rapidly with hydrogen than the other, ultimately transferring both hydrogen atoms to the same face of the double bond.

Although more limited in scope than the BINAP–Ru(II)-catalysed hydrogenations, rhodium-catalysed hydrogenations are of enormous commercial importance because of the demand for both natural and unnatural amino acids on a vast scale. It is even economical for the more expensive of the natural amino acids to be made synthetically rather than isolated from natural sources—phenylalanine, for example, of industrial importance as a component of the artificial sweetener aspartame, is manufactured by enantioselective hydrogenation.

Although DIPAMP is a suitable ligand for this reaction as well, the industrial process uses the diphosphine DNNP. Unfortunately, the product is initially obtained in rather modest enantiomeric excess (83%), but recrystallization improves this to 97%. In the manufacture of aspartame,
coupling with natural (and therefore 100% ee) aspartic acid turns the 1.5% of the minor enantiomer into a diastereoisomeric impurity that can be removed by crystallization (essentially a resolution).

**Improving ee by recrystallization**

This technique is quite frequently used to improve the ee of almost enantiomerically pure samples, since, in general, crystals are most stable if they consist either of a single enantiomer or of a racemic mixture. Recrystallization of samples with ees greater than about 85% has a good chance of improving the ee of the sample (the minor enantiomer remaining in the mother liquors). Samples with ees much less than this tend to decrease in ee on recrystallization. Much depends on the crystal structure—this is quite a complex science and you can read more about it in Elie and Wilen, *Stereoreactivity of organic compounds*, Wiley, 1994. The difficulty of increasing low ees by recrystallization is one disadvantage of chiral reagent techniques as opposed to chiral auxiliary techniques.

Before leaving asymmetric hydrogenation reactions, we should mention one other related process that has acquired immense importance, again because of its industrial application. You have come across citronellol a couple of times in this chapter already: the corresponding aldehyde citronellal is even more important because it is an intermediate in the synthesis of L-menthol by the Japanese chemical company Takasago. Takasago manufacture about 30% of the 3500 ton annual worldwide demand for L-menthol from citronellal by using an intramolecular ene reaction (a cycloaddition you met in Chapter 35).

The green methyl group prefers to be equatorial in the transition state and directs the formation of the two new chiral centres. The transition state (in the frame) is like a trans-decalin with two fused six-membered chair rings. Both new substituents go equatorial in the product while the Lewis acid binds to the oxygen and accelerates the reaction, as it would for a Diels–Alder reaction.

But it is not this step that makes the synthesis remarkable, but rather Takasago’s route to citronellal. Pinene is another terpene that is produced in only low enantiomeric excess by pine trees (and, indeed, which is the major enantiomer depends on whether it is a European or a North American pine tree). But in the menthol process none of this matters, and cheap, enantiomerically impure pinene can be used, because the first step is to convert it to an achiral terpene, myrcene. Lithium diethylamide adds to this diene to give an allylic amine.
Now for the key step: \((S)\)-BINAP\(_2\)Rh\(^+\) catalyses the rearrangement of this allylic amine to the enamine, creating a new chiral centre with 98% ee. This reaction is rather like a hydrogenation in which the hydrogen comes from within the same molecule, or you could see it as a [1,3]-sigmatropic shift (usually disallowed) made possible by participation of the metal’s orbitals. Whichever way you look at it, the catalyst selects one of two enantiotopic hydrogen atoms (shown in black and green) and allows only the green one to migrate. This reaction can be run on a seven ton scale, needs only 0.01 mol% catalyst, and is a testimony to the power of asymmetric synthesis.

![Chemical structure](image)

Exactly how this reaction works and exactly what features of \((S)\)-BINAP\(_2\)Rh\(^+\) make for successful asymmetric induction are not clear. Though we can work out a mechanism for the reaction, we cannot say precisely how the chirality of the ligand directs the formation of the new stereogenic centre. Here, as elsewhere in modern organic chemistry, the experiments get ahead of human understanding.

### Rhodium or ruthenium, and which ligands?

The range of diphosphine ligands used in catalytic enantioselective hydrogenation is enormous (though DIPAMP and BINAP are probably the most important), and many of them can be used with Rh or Ru. We can nonetheless give some guidelines to choice of catalyst. In general, Rh demands more of its substrates and less of its diphosphine ligands. Which ligand to choose is a matter of thorough literature searching followed by some experimentation. However, Rh will really give good ees only when hydrogenating electron-poor or conjugated double bonds that carry a \(\beta\)-carbonyl group (necessary for chelation), and the enamides we have been discussing are among the best of these.

#### Rhodium requires...

- Lewis-basic
- carbonyl group
- \(\beta\) to double bond

#### Ruthenium requires...

- \(\alpha\)-hydroxyl group

Ru is more fussy about ligands (BINAP is the one usually used) but will hydrogenate both electron-rich and electron-poor double bonds. Ru(BINAP)\(_2\) works best if the double bond carries an \(\alpha\)-hydroxyl group—in other words, if it is an allylic alcohol or an \(\alpha,\beta\)-unsaturated carboxylic acid. The enantioselective hydrogenation of geraniol (p. 000) is also regioselective, because isolated double bonds are not hydrogenated.

We now leave asymmetric reductions and move on to two asymmetric oxidations, which are probably the two most important asymmetric reactions known. They are both products of the laboratories of Professor Barry Sharpless.

### Asymmetric epoxidation

The first of Sharpless’s reactions is an oxidation of alkenes by asymmetric epoxidation. You met vanadium as a transition-metal catalyst for epoxidation with \(t\)-butyl hydroperoxide in Chapter 33,
and this new reaction makes use of titanium, as titanium tetraisopropoxide, Ti(OiPr)₄, to do the same thing. Sharpless surmised that, by adding a chiral ligand to the titanium catalyst, he might be able to make the reaction asymmetric. The ligand that works best is diethyl tartrate, and the reaction shown below is just one of many that demonstrate that this is a remarkably good reaction.

Transition-metal-catalysed epoxidations work only on allylic alcohols, so there is one limitation to the method, but otherwise there are few restrictions on what can be epoxidized enantioselectively. When this reaction was discovered in 1981 it was by far the best asymmetric reaction known. Because of its importance, a lot of work went into discovering exactly how the reaction worked, and the scheme below shows what is believed to be the active complex, formed from two titanium atoms bridged by two tartrate ligands (shown in gold). Each titanium atom retains two of its isopropoxide ligands, and is coordinated to one of the carbonyl groups of the tartrate ligand. The reaction works best if the titanium and tartrate are left to stir for a while so that these dimers can form cleanly.

When the oxidizing agent (t-BuOOH, shown in green) is added to the mixture, it displaces one of the remaining isopropoxide ligands and one of the tartrate carbonyl groups.

Now, for this oxidizing complex to react with an allylic alcohol, the alcohol must become co-ordinated to the titanium too, displacing a further isopropoxide ligand. Because of the shape of the complex the reactive oxygen atom of the bound hydroperoxide has to be delivered to the lower face of the alkene (as drawn), and the epoxide is formed in high enantiomeric excess.

Different allylic alcohols coordinate in the same way to the titanium and reliably present the same enantiotopic face to the bound oxidizing agent, and the preference for oxidation with L-(+)-DET is shown in the schematic diagram below. Tartrate is ideal as a chiral ligand because it is available relatively cheaply as either enantiomer. L-tartrate is extracted from grapes; D-(-)-tartrate is rarer and more expensive—it is sometimes called unnatural tartrate, but, in fact, it too is natural. By using
D-(-)-tartrate it is, of course, possible to produce the other enantiomer of the epoxide equally selectively.

**Enantioselectivity in the Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation**

Sharpless also found that this reaction works with only a catalytic amount of titanium–tartrate complex, because the reaction products can be displaced from the metal centre by more of the two reagents. The catalytic version of the asymmetric epoxidation is well suited to industrial exploitation, and the American Company J. T. Baker employs it to make synthetic disparlure, the pheromone of the gypsy moth.

Not many target molecules are themselves epoxides, but the great thing about the epoxide products is that they are highly versatile—they react with many types of nucleophiles to give 1,2-disubstituted products. You met the chiral β-blocker drug propranolol in Chapter 30, and its 1,2,3-substitution pattern makes it a good candidate for synthesis using asymmetric epoxidation.

Unfortunately, the obvious starting material, allyl alcohol itself, gives and epoxide which is hard to handle, so Sharpless, who carried out this synthesis of propranolol, used this silicon-substituted allylic alcohol instead.

The hydroxyl group was mesylated and displaced with 1-naphthoxide and, after treatment with fluoride to remove the silicon, the epoxide was opened with isopropylamine.
Asymmetric dihydroxylation

The last asymmetric oxidation we will mention really is probably the best asymmetric reaction of all. It is a chiral version of the syn dihydroxylation of alkenes by osmium tetroxide. Here is an example—though the concept is quite simple, the recipe for the reactions is quite complicated so we need to approach it step by step.

The active reagent is based on osmium(VIII) and is used in just catalytic amounts. This means that there has to be a stoichiometric quantity of another oxidant to reoxidize the osmium after each catalytic cycle—K₃Fe(CN)₆ is most commonly used. Because OsO₄ is volatile and toxic, the osmium is usually added as K₂OsO₂(OH)₄, which forms OsO₄ in the reaction mixture. The 'other additives' include K₂CO₃ and methanesulfonamide (MeSO₂NH₂), which increases the rate of the reaction. Now for the chiral ligand. The best ones are based on the alkaloids dihydroquinidine and dihydroquinine, whose structures are shown below. They coordinate to the osmium through the yellow nitrogen.

The alkaloids (usually abbreviated to DHQD and DHQ, respectively) must be attached to an aromatic group Ar, the choice of which (like the choice of ligand for enantioselective hydrogenation with Rh) varies according to the substrate. The most generally applicable ligands are these two phthalazines in which each aromatic group Ar carries two alkaloid ligands.

Dihydroquinine and dihydroquinidine are not enantiomeric (although the green centres are inverted in dihydroquinidine, the black ones remains the same), but they act on the dihydroxylation as though they were—here, after all that introduction, is a real example, and probably the most remarkable of any in this chapter.

trans-(E)-Stilbene dihydroxylates more selectively than any other alkene, and we would probably not be exaggerating if we said that this particular example is the most enantioselective catalytic reaction ever invented. It is also much less fussy about the alkenes it will oxidize than the asymmetric epoxidation. Osmium tetroxide itself is a remarkable reagent, since it oxidizes more or less any sort of alkene, electron-rich or electron-poor, and the same is true of the asymmetric dihydroxylation.
(often abbreviated to AD) reagent. The following example illustrates both this and a synthetic use for the diol product.

The diol is produced from a double bond that is more electron-poor than most, and can be converted to the antibiotic chloramphenicol in a few more steps.

The reason for this must, of course, lie in the way in which the substrate interacts with the osmium–ligand complex. However, even as we write this book, the detailed mechanism of the asymmetric dihydroxylation is still under discussion. What is known is that the ligand forms some sort of

**Regioselectivity in this synthesis**

This sequence is not only remarkable for the AD reaction—but the regioselectivities involved in the formation and reaction of the epoxide need commenting on too. The regioselectivity is selective because the hydroxyl group near the electron-withdrawing ester is more acidic than the other one—high selectivity here is crucial because tosylation of the other hydroxyl group would lead to the other enantiomer of the epoxide. The regioselectivity of attack of azide on the epoxide must be because of the electron-withdrawing p-nitro group—acidic silica encourages the reaction to proceed through an $S_N1$-like (or 'loose $S_N2$') transition state, with cationic character on the reaction centre. Substitution next to the ring is disfavoured, and the 1,3-diol is formed selectively.

We can sum up the usual selectivity of the AD reaction in another diagram, shown below. With the substrate arranged as shown, with the largest ($R_L$) and next largest groups ($R_M$) bottom left and top right, respectively, DHQD-based ligands will direct OsO$_4$ to dihydroxylate from the top face of the double bond and DHQ-based ligands will direct it to dihydroxylate the bottom.

**Enantioselectivity in the Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation**

Enantioselectivity in the Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation

The reason for this must, of course, lie in the way in which the substrate interacts with the osmium–ligand complex. However, even as we write this book, the detailed mechanism of the asymmetric dihydroxylation is still under discussion. What is known is that the ligand forms some sort of
‘chiral pocket’, like an enzyme active site, with the osmium sitting at the bottom of it. Alkenes can only approach the osmium if they are correctly aligned in the chiral pocket, and steric hindrance forces the alignment shown in the scheme above. The analogy with an enzyme active site goes even further, since it appears that part of the pocket is ‘attractive’ to aromatic or strongly hydrophobic groups. This part appears to accommodate R₁, part of the reason why the selectivity in the dihydroxylation of trans-stilbene is so high.

This chapter, more than most, deals with topics under active investigation. New and more powerful methods are appearing all the time and it is quite certain that the decade 2000–10 will see many important advances in asymmetric synthesis.

### Summary of methods for asymmetric synthesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>resolution</td>
<td>both enantiomers available</td>
<td>maximum 50% yield</td>
<td>synthesis of BINAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral pool</td>
<td>100% ee guaranteed</td>
<td>often only 1 enantiomer available</td>
<td>amino acid- and sugar-derived syntheses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral auxiliary</td>
<td>often excellent ees; can recrystallize to purify to high ee</td>
<td>extra steps to introduce and remove auxiliary</td>
<td>oxazolidinones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral reagent</td>
<td>often excellent ees; can recrystallize to purify to high ee</td>
<td>only a few reagents are successful and often for few substrates</td>
<td>enzymes, CBS reducing agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiral catalyst</td>
<td>economical: only small amounts of recyclable material used</td>
<td>only a few reactions are really successful; recrystallization can improve only already high ees</td>
<td>asymmetric hydrogenation, epoxidation, dihydroxylation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Problems

1. Explain how this asymmetric synthesis of amino acids, starting with natural proline, works. Explain the stereoselectivity of each reaction.

![Diagram of the synthesis of amino acids](image)

2. This is a synthesis of the racemic drug tazadolene. If the enantiomers of the drug are to be evaluated for biological activity, they must be separated. At which stage would you advocate separating the enantiomers, and how would you do it?

![Diagram of the synthesis of tazadolene](image)

3. How would you make enantiomerically enriched samples of these compounds (either enantiomer)?
4. What is happening in stereochemical terms in this sequence of reactions? What is the other product from the crystallization from hexane? The product is one enantiomer of a phosphine oxide. If you wanted the other enantiomer, what would you do?

Revision. This phosphine oxide is used in the synthesis of DIPAMP, the chiral ligand for asymmetric catalytic hydrogenation mentioned in the chapter. What are the various reagents doing in the conversion into DIPAMP?

5. An alternative to the Evans chiral auxiliary described in the chapter is this oxazolidinone, made from natural (S)-(−)-phenylalanine. What strategy is used for this synthesis and why are the conditions and mechanism of the reactions important?

synthesis of Evans’s chiral auxiliary from (S)-phenylalanine

6. In the following reaction sequence, the chirality of mandelic acid is transmitted to a new hydroxy-acid by a sequence of stereochemically controlled reactions. Give mechanisms for the reactions and state whether each is stereospecific or stereo-selective. Offer some rationalization for the creation of new stereogenic centres in the first and second reactions.

7. This reaction sequence can be used to make enantiomerically enriched amino acids. Which compound is the origin of the chirality and how is it made? Suggest why this particular enantiomer of the amino acid might be made. Suggest reagents for the last stages of the process. Would the enantiomerically enriched starting material be recovered?

8. Submitting this racemic ester to hydrolysis by an enzyme found in pig pancreas leaves enantiomerically enriched ester with the absolute stereochemistry shown. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this method? Why is the ee not 100%?

How could the same enantiomerically enriched compound be formed by chemical means? What are the advantages and disadvantages of this method?

9. The BINAP-catalysed hydrogenations described in the chapter can also be applied to the reduction of ketones—the same ketones indeed as can be reduced by baker’s yeast. Compare these results and comment on the differences between them.
10. Describe the stereochemical happenings in these processes. You should use terms like diastereoselective and diastereotopic where needed. If you wanted to make single enantiomers of the products by these routes, at what stage would you introduce the asymmetry? (You are not expected to say how you would induce asymmetry!)

11. Both of these bicyclic compounds readily undergo hydrogenation of the alkene to give the syn product. Explain why asymmetric hydrogenation of only one of the compounds would be of much value in synthesis.

12. Explain the stereochemistry and mechanism in the synthesis of the chiral auxiliary 8-phenylmenthol from (+)-pulegone. After the reduction with Na in i-PrOH, what is the minor (13%) component of the mixture?

13. The unsaturated amine A, a useful intermediate in the synthesis of the amaryllidaceae (daffodil) alkaloids, can be made from the three starting materials shown below. What kind of chemistry is required in each case? Which is best adapted for asymmetric synthesis? Outline your chosen synthesis.

14. Suggest syntheses for single enantiomers of these compounds.

15. Suggest a synthesis of any stereoisomer (for example, R,Z) of this compound.

16. Revision. Give mechanisms for the steps in the synthesis of tazadolene in Problem 2.
Sulfur: an element of contradictions

The first organosulfur compounds in this book were the dreadful smell of the skunk and the wonderful smell of the truffle, which pigs can detect through a metre of soil and which is so delightful that truffles cost more than their weight in gold.

More useful sulfur compounds have included the leprosy drug dapsone (Chapter 6), the arthritis drug Feldene (Chapter 21), glutathione (Chapter 23), a scavenger of oxidizing agents that protects most living things against oxidation and contains the natural amino acid cysteine (Chapter 49), and, of course, the famous antibiotics, the penicillins, mentioned in several chapters.

If you look in the Oxford English dictionary you will see ‘suiphur’. This is a peculiarly British spelling—neither the French nor the Americans for example have the ‘ph’. It has recently been decided that chemists the world over should use a uniform spelling ‘sulfur’. 
Important reactions have included sulfur as nucleophile and leaving group in the $S_{N}2$ reaction (illustrated here; see also Chapter 17), sulfonation of aromatic rings (Chapter 22), formation and reduction of thioacetals (Chapter 24), Lawesson’s reagent for converting carbonyl groups to thiocarbonyl groups (Chapter 44).

This chapter gathers together the principles behind these examples together with a discussion of what makes organosulfur chemistry special and also introduces new reactions. We have a lot to explain! In Chapter 31 we introduced you to the Julia olefination, a reaction whose first step is the deprotonation of a sulfone.

![Chemical structure of reactions involving sulfur](image)

Why is this proton easy to remove? This ability to stabilize an adjacent anion is a property shared by all of the most important sulfur-based functional groups. The anions (or better, lithium derivatives) will react with a variety of electrophiles and here is a selection: a sulfone reacting with a lactone, a sulfoxide with a ketone, and a sulfide with a silyl chloride.

You notice immediately the three main oxidation states of sulfur: S(VI), S(IV), and S(II). You might have expected the S(VI) sulfone and perhaps the S(IV) sulfoxide to stabilize an adjacent anion, but the S(II) sulfide? We will discuss this along with many other unusual features of sulfur chemistry. The interesting aspects are what make sulfur different.

**The basic facts about sulfur**

Sulfur is a p-block element in group VI (or 16 if you prefer) immediately below oxygen and between phosphorus and chlorine. It is natural for us to compare sulfur with oxygen but we will, strangely, compare it with carbon as well.

Sulfur is much less electronegative than oxygen; in fact, it has the same electronegativity as carbon, so it is no good trying to use the polarization of the C–S bond to explain anything! It forms reasonably strong bonds to carbon—strong enough for the compounds to be stable but weak enough for...
Selective cleavage in the presence of the much stronger C–O bonds. It also forms strong bonds to itself. Elemental crystalline yellow sulfur consists of $S_8$ molecules—eight-membered rings of sulfur atoms!

Because sulfur is in the second row of the periodic table it forms many types of compounds not available to oxygen. Compounds with $S$–$S$ and $S$–halogen bonds are quite stable and can be isolated, unlike the unstable and often explosive O–halogen and O–O compounds. Sulfur has d orbitals so it can have oxidation states of 2, 4, or 6 and coordination numbers from 0 to 7. Here is a selection of compounds.

**Compounds of sulfur**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxidation state</th>
<th>S(II)</th>
<th>S(IV)</th>
<th>S(VI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coordination number</td>
<td>0 1 2</td>
<td>3 4</td>
<td>4 6 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>example</td>
<td>$S^{2-}$</td>
<td>$RS^-$</td>
<td>$R_2S$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sulfur is a very versatile element**

As well as this variety of oxidation states, sulfur shows a sometimes surprising versatility in function. Simple S(II) compounds are good nucleophiles as you would expect from the high-energy nonbonding lone pairs (3sp$^3$ rather than the 2sp$^3$ of oxygen). A mixture of a thiol (RSH, the sulfur equivalent of an alcohol) and NaOH reacts with an alkyl halide to give the sulfide alone by nucleophilic attack of $RS^-$.

Thiols (RSH) are more acidic than alcohols so the first step is a rapid proton exchange between the thiol and hydroxide ion. The thiolate anion then carries out a very efficient S$_N$2 displacement on the alkyl bromide to give the sulfide.

Notice that the thiolate anion does not attack the carbonyl group. Small basic oxyanions have high charge density and low-energy filled orbitals—they are hard nucleophiles that prefer to attack protons and carbonyl groups. Large, less basic thiolate anions have high-energy filled orbitals and are soft nucleophiles. They prefer to attack saturated carbon atoms. Thiols and thiolates are good soft nucleophiles.

- Thiols (RSH) are more acidic than alcohols (ROH) but sulfur compounds are better nucleophiles than oxygen compounds towards saturated carbon atoms ($S_N2$).

They are also good soft electrophiles. Sulfenyl chlorides (RSCI) are easily made from disulfides (RS–SR) and sulfonyl chloride (SO$_2$Cl$_2$). This S(VI) chloride has electrophilic chlorine atoms and is attacked by the nucleophilic disulfide to give two molecules of RSCI and gaseous SO$_2$.

There’s a lot of sulfur chemistry here! We start with a nucleophilic attack by one sulfur atom of the disulfide.
The intermediate contains a tricoordinate sulfur cation or sulfonium salt. The chloride ion now attacks the other sulfur atom of this intermediate and two molecules of RSCl result. Each atom of the original disulfide has formed an S–Cl bond. One sulfur atom was a nucleophile towards chlorine and the other an electrophile.

The product of this reaction, the sulfenyl chloride, is also a good soft electrophile towards carbon atoms, particularly towards alkenes. The reaction is very like bromination with a three-membered cyclic sulfonium ion intermediate replacing the bromonium ion of Chapter 20. The reaction is stereospecific and anti.

Sulfur at the S(II) oxidation state is both a good nucleophile and a good electrophile. This is also true at higher oxidation states though the compounds become harder electrophiles as the positive charge on sulfur increases. We have already mentioned tosyl (toluene-para-sulfonyl) chloride as an electrophile for alkoxide ions in this chapter and in earlier chapters.

At this higher oxidation state it might seem unlikely that sulfur could also be a good nucleophile, but consider the result of reacting TsCl with zinc metal. Zinc provides two electrons and turns the compound into an anion. This anion can also be drawn in two ways.

Surprisingly, this anion is also a good soft nucleophile and attacks saturated carbon atoms through the sulfur atom. In this case attack occurs at the less substituted end of an allylic bromide to give an allylic sulfone, which we will use later on.

- Sulfur compounds are good nucleophiles and good electrophiles.

As this chapter develops you will see other examples of the versatility of sulfur. You will see how it takes part readily in rearrangements from the simple cationic to the sigmatropic. You will see that it can be removed from organic compounds in either an oxidative or a reductive fashion. You will see that it can stabilize anions or cations on adjacent carbon atoms, and the stabilization of anions is the first main section of the chapter.
Sulfur-stabilized anions

In this chapter we shall discuss some of the rich and varied chemistry of these, and other, organosulfur compounds. The stabilization of anions by sulfur is where we begin, and this theme runs right through the chapter. We will start with sulfides, sulfoxides, and sulfones. Sulfur has six electrons in its outer shell. As a sulfide, therefore, the sulfur atom carries two lone pairs. In a sulfoxide, one of these lone pairs is used in a bond to an oxygen atom—sulfoxides can be represented by at least two valence bond structures. The sulfur atom in a sulfone uses both of its lone pairs in bonding to oxygen, and is usually represented with two S=O double bonds.

Treatment of any of these compounds with strong base produces an anion (or a lithium derivative if BuLi is used) on what was the methyl group. How does the sulfur stabilize the anion? This question has been the subject of many debates and we have not got space to go into the details of all of them. There are at least two factors involved, and the first is evident from this chart of pKₐ values for protons next to sulfone, sulfoxide and sulfide functional groups.
Clearly, the oxygen atoms are important—the best anion-stabilizer is the sulfone, followed by the sulfoxide and then the sulfide. You could compare deprotonation of a sulfone with deprotonation of a ketone to give an enolate (Chapter 21). Enolates have a planar carbon atom and the anion is mainly on the oxygen atom. Sulfone-stabilized carbanions have two oxygen atoms and the anionic centre is probably planar, with the negative charge in a p orbital midway between them. Carbanions next to sulfones are planar, while anions next to sulfoxides and sulfides are believed to be pyramidal (sp³ hybridized).

Yet the attached oxygen atoms cannot be the sole reason for the stability of anions next to sulfur because the sulfide functional group also acidifies an adjacent proton quite significantly. There is some controversy over exactly why this should be, but the usual explanation is that polarization of the sulfur’s 3s and 3p electrons (which are more diffuse, and therefore more polarizable, than the 2s and 2p electrons of oxygen) contributes to the stabilization.

**Sulfone-stabilized anions in synthesis**

The terpene sesquifenchene is a constituent of Indian valerian root oil. When it was first discovered in 1963, it was assumed to have structure A, related to bergamotene, a constituent of oil of bergamot (the fragrance of Earl Grey tea).

[Diagram showing proposed structures of the natural product sesquifenchene]
Compound A was synthesized in 1969, but was found not to be identical with sesquifenchene. A new structure was proposed, B, which was synthesized in 1971—but this compound too had different properties from those of natural sesquifenchene! A third structure was proposed, C, and it was made from a bicyclic sulfone.

The bicyclic part of the structure was available in a few steps from norbornadiene. Deprotonation of the sulfone made a nucleophile that could be alkylated with prenyl bromide—a convenient way of joining on the extra five carbon atoms needed in the target structure. Next, the sulfone group had to be got rid of—there are a number of ways of doing this, and these chemists chose a Birch reduction with EtNH₂ instead of liquid ammonia. They might equally have tried hydrogenation with Raney nickel (see p. 000) or a sodium–amalgam-type reduction as is used in the Julia olefination (p. 000; you will see aluminium amalgam used in this way on p. 000).

The exocyclic double bond was made by Wittig reaction on the deprotected ketone (aqueous acetic acid removed the dioxolane protecting group). This product had all the characteristics of natural sesquifenchene, confirming its true structure.

A sulfoxide-stabilized anion in a synthesis

A sulfoxide alkylation formed the key step of a synthesis of the important vitamin biotin. Biotin contains a five-membered heterocyclic sulfide fused to a second five-membered ring, and the bicyclic skeleton was easy to make from a simple symmetrical ester. The vital step is a double $\text{S}_\text{N}2$ reaction on primary carbon atoms.

The next step was to introduce the alkyl chain—this was best done by first oxidizing the sulfide to a sulfoxide, using sodium periodate. The sulfoxide was then deprotonated with $n$-BuLi and alkylated with an alkyl iodide containing a carboxylic acid protected as its $t$-butyl ester. Reduction of the sulfoxide and hydrolysis back to the free acid gave biotin.
This synthesis involves some stereochemistry. Biotin carries the alkyl chain next to sulfur on the more hindered *endo* face of the molecule, and any successful synthesis has to address this particular problem. Here, the chemists decided to use the fact that alkylations of cyclic sulfoxides result in *trans* stereochemistry between the new alkyl group and the sulfoxide oxygen atom. As expected, oxidation of the sulfide proceeded faster from the *exo* face, giving an 8:1 ratio of *exo:endo* sulfoxides. Alkylation *trans* to the *exo* oxygen gave the desired (*endo*) product.

The synthesis is diastereoselective—but not enantioselective since there is no way of distinguishing the left and right sides of the symmetrical sulfoxide.

**Thioacetals**

Although sulfide deprotonations are possible, the protons adjacent to two sulfide sulfur atoms are rather more acidic and alkylation of thioacetals is straightforward.

In general, thioacetals can be made in a similar way to ‘normal’ (oxygen-based) acetals—by treatment of an aldehyde or a ketone with a thiol and an acid catalyst—though a Lewis acid such as BF$_3$ is usually needed rather than a protic acid. The most easily made, most stable toward hydrolysis, and most reactive towards alkylation are cyclic thioacetals derived from 1,3-propanedithiol, known as dithianes.

Dithianes are extremely important compounds in organic synthesis because going from ketone to thioacetal inverts the polarity at the functionalized carbon atom. Aldehydes, as you are well aware, are electrophiles at the C=O carbon atom, but dithioacetals, through deprotonation to an anion, are nucleophilic at this same atom.

This is a case of umpolung, the concept you met in Chapter 30, and dithianes are among the most important of the umpolung reagents. An example: chemists wanted to make this compound (a
'metacyclophane') because they wanted to study the independent rotation of the two benzene rings, which is hindered in such a small ring. An ideal way would be to join electrophilic benzylic bromides to nucleophilic carbonyl groups, if that were possible.

The dibromide and dialdehyde were both available—what they really wanted was a nucleophilic equivalent of the dialdehyde to react with the dibromide. So they made the dithioacetal.

After the dithianes have been alkylated, they can be hydrolysed to give back the carbonyl groups. Alternatively, hydrogenation using Raney nickel replaces the thioacetal with a CH₂ group and gives the unsubstituted cyclophane.

Both of these transformations deserve comment. Dithianes are rather more stable than acetals, and a mercury reagent has to be used to assist their hydrolysis. Mercury(II) and sulfides form strong coordination complexes, and the mercury catalyses the reaction by acting as a sulfur-selective Lewis acid.

There are two reasons why the normal acid-catalysed hydrolysis of acetals usually fails with thioacetals. Sulfur is less basic than oxygen, so the protonated species is lower in concentration at a given pH, and the sulfur 3p lone pairs are less able to form a stable π bond to carbon than are the oxygen 2p lone pairs.
The most obvious solution to this problem is to provide a better electrophile than the proton for sulfur. Mercury, Hg(II), is one solution. Another is oxidation of one sulfur to the sulfoxide, a process that would be impossible with the oxygen atoms of an ordinary acetal. Protonation can now occur on the more basic oxygen atom of the sulfoxide and the concentration of the vital intermediate is increased.

A third solution is methylation since sulfur is a better nucleophile for saturated carbon than is oxygen. The sulfonium salt can decompose in the same way to give the free aldehyde. There are many more methods for hydrolysing dithioacetals and their multiplicity should make you suspicious that none is very good. The best is probably the Hg(II) method but not everyone likes to use stoichiometric toxic mercury!

Hydrogenation of C–S bonds in both sulfides and thioacetals is often achieved with Raney nickel. This is a finely divided form of nickel made by dissolving away the aluminium from a powdered nickel–aluminium alloy using alkali. It can be used either as a catalyst for hydrogenation with gaseous hydrogen or as a reagent since it often contains sufficient adsorbed hydrogen (from the reaction of aluminium with alkali) to effect reductions alone. Thioacetalization followed by Raney nickel reduction is a useful way of replacing a C=O group with CH₂.

**Dithianes are d¹ reagents (acyl anion equivalents)**

A sequence in which a carbonyl group has been masked as a sulfur derivative, alkylated with an electrophile, and then revealed again is a nucleophilic acylation. These nucleophilic equivalents of carbonyl compounds are known as acyl anion equivalents. In the retrosynthetic terms of Chapter 30 they are d¹ reagents corresponding to the acyl anion synthon.

**Allyl sulfides**

Apart from thioacetals, allyl sulfides are among the easiest sulfides to deprotonate and alkylate because of the conjugating ability of the allyl group. However, the very delocalization that assists anion formation means that the anions often react unregioselectively: lithiated phenyl allyl sulfide, for instance, reacts with hexyl iodide to give a 3:1 ratio of regioisomers.
2-Pyridyl allyl sulfide, on the other hand, gives only one regioisomer in its alkylation reactions. It is sensible here to show the ‘allyl anion’ as a compound with a C–Li bond.

The same is true for a number of other allylic sulfur compounds in which the sulfur carries a lithium-coordinating heteroatom. Coordination encourages reaction next to sulfur (you might say it makes the lithium more at home there) and means that allyl sulfide alkylations can be made quite regioselective. The importance of this is probably not evident to you, but on p. 000 you will meet a synthesis of the natural product nuciferal in which this principle is used—the key step will be the alkylation of this allylic sulfide to give an 86% yield of the product with the alkyl group next to sulfur.

If the sulfur-based anion-stabilizing group is at a higher oxidation level, it is not usually necessary to provide chelating groups to ensure reaction next to sulfur. The allylic sulfone we made earlier in the chapter (p. 000) reacts in this way with an unsaturated ester to give a cyclopropane. Notice how much weaker a base (MeO–) is needed here, as the anion (and it is an anion if the counterion is Na⁺ or K⁺) is stabilized by sulfone and alkene.

The first step is conjugate addition of the highly stabilized anion. The intermediate enolate then closes the three-membered ring by favourable nucleophilic attack on the allylic carbon. The leaving group is the sulfinate anion and the stereochemistry comes from the most favourable arrangement in the transition state for this ring closure. The product is the methyl ester of the important chrysanthemic acid found in the natural pyrethrum insecticides.

We shall see more reactions of this sort in which sulfur has a dual role as anion-stabilizing and leaving group in the next section.

Sulfonium salts

Sulfides are nucleophiles even when not deprotonated—the sulfur atom will attack alkyl halides to form sulfonium salts. This may look strange in comparison with ethers, but it is, of course, a familiar pattern of reactivity for amines, and you have seen phosphonium salts formed in a similar way (Chapters 14 and 31).
This reaction is an equilibrium and it may be necessary in making sulfonium salts from less reactive sulfides (sterically hindered ones for example) to use more powerful alkylating agents with non-nucleophilic counterions, for example, Me₃O⁺BF₄⁻, trimethyloxonium fluoroborate (also known as Meerwein’s salt). The sulfur atom captures a methyl group from O⁺, but the reverse does not happen and the BF₄⁻ anion is not a nucleophile.

Not only is dimethyl ether a poor nucleophile, it is also a gas and is lost from the reaction mixture. The same principle is used to make sulfides from other sulfides. With that clue, and the position of this reaction in the ‘sulfonium salt’ section, you should be able to work out the mechanism and say why the reaction works.

The most important chemistry of sulfonium salts is based on one or both of two attributes:

1. Sulfonium salts are electrophiles: nucleophilic substitution displaces a neutral sulfide leaving group
2. Sulfonium salts can be deprotonated to give sulfonium ylids

Sulfonium salts as electrophiles

During the First World War, mustard gas was developed as a chemical weapon—it causes the skin to blister and is an intense irritant of the respiratory tract. Its reactivity towards human tissue is related to the following observation and is gruesome testimony to the powerful electrophilic properties of sulfonium ions.

In both cases, intramolecular displacement of the chloride leaving group by the sulfur atom—or, as we should call it, participation by sulfur (see Chapter 37)—gives a three-membered cyclic sulfonium ion intermediate (an episulfonium or thiranium ion). Nucleophilic attack on this electrophilic sulfonium ion, either by water or by the structural proteins of the skin, is very fast. Of course, mustard gas can react twice in this way. You will see several more examples of reactions in which a sulfonium ion intermediate acts as an electrophile in the next section.

Sulfonium ylids

The positive charge carried by the sulfur atom means that the protons next to the sulfur atom in a sulfonium salt are significantly more acidic than those in a sulfide, and sulfonium salts can be deprotonated to give sulfonium ylids.
In Chapter 31 we discussed the Wittig reaction of phosphonium ylids with carbonyl compounds. Sulfonium ylids react with carbonyl compounds too, but in quite a different way—compare these two reactions.

Phosphonium ylids give alkenes while sulfonium ylids give epoxides. Why should this be the case? The driving force in the Wittig reaction is formation of the strong P=O bond—that force is much less in the sulfur analogues (the P=O bond energy in Ph₃PO is 529 kJ mol⁻¹; in Ph₂SO the S=O bond energy is 367 kJ mol⁻¹). The first step is the same in both reactions: the carbanion of the ylid attacks the carbonyl group in a nucleophilic addition reaction. The intermediate in the Wittig reaction cyclizes to give a four-membered ring but this does not happen with the sulfur ylids. Instead, the intermediate decomposes by intramolecular nucleophilic substitution of Me₂S by the oxyanion.

We could compare sulfonium ylids with the carbenoids we discussed in Chapter 40—both are nucleophilic carbon atoms carrying a leaving group, and both form three-membered rings by insertion into π bonds. Sulfonium ylids are therefore useful for making epoxides from aldehydes or ketones; other ways you have met of making epoxides (Chapters 20 and 45) started with alkenes that might be made with phosphorus ylids.

The simplest route to certain potential β-blocker drugs is from an epoxide, and the chemists working on their synthesis decided that, since 4-cyclopropylbenzaldehyde was more readily available than 4-cyclopropyl styrene, they would use the aldehyde as the starting material and make the epoxide in one step using a sulfonium ylid.
You will recall from Chapter 31 that we divided phosphorus ylids into two categories, ‘stabilized’ and ‘unstabilized’, in order to explain the stereochemistry of their alkene-forming reactions. Again, there is a similarity with sulfonium ylids: the same sort of division is needed—this time to explain the different regioselectivities displayed by different sulfonium ylids. Firstly, an example.

‘Stabilized’ sulfonium ylids

Changing from the simple sulfonium ylid to one bearing an anion-stabilizing substituent changes the regioselectivity of the reaction. ‘Unstabilized’ sulfonium ylids give epoxides from α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds while ‘stabilized’ ylids give cyclopropanes. In the absence of the double bond, both types of ylid give epoxides—the ester-stabilized ylid, for example, reacts with benzil to give an epoxide but with methyl vinyl ketone (but-3-en-2-one) to give a cyclopropane.

Why does the stabilized ylid prefer to react with the double bond? In order to understand this, let’s consider first the reaction of a simple, unstabilized ylid with an unsaturated ketone. The enone has two electrophilic sites, but from Chapters 10 and 23, in which we discussed the regioselectivity of attack of nucleophiles on Michael acceptors like this, you would expect that direct 1,2-attack on the ketone is the faster reaction. This step is irreversible, and subsequent displacement of the sulfide leaving group by the alkoxide produces an epoxide. It’s unimportant whether a cyclopropane product would have been more stable: the epoxide forms faster and is therefore the kinetic product.

With a stabilized ylid, direct addition to the carbonyl group is, in fact, probably still the faster reaction. But, in this case, the starting materials are sufficiently stable that the reaction is reversible, and the sulfonium ylid is re-expelled before the epoxide has a chance to form. Meanwhile, some ylid adds to the ketone in a 1,4 (Michael or conjugate) fashion. 1,4-Addition, although slower, is energetically more favourable because the new C–C bond is gained at the expense of a (relatively) weak C=O π bond rather than a (relatively) strong C=C π bond, and is therefore irreversible. Eventually, all the ylid ends up adding in a 1,4-fashion, generating an enolate as it does so, which cyclizes to give the cyclopropane, which is the thermodynamic product. This is another classic example of kinetic versus thermodynamic control, and you can add it to the mental list of examples you started when you first read Chapter 13.

continued opposite
Sulfoxonium ylids

There is another, very important class of stabilized sulfur ylids that owe their stability not to an additional anion-stabilizing substituent but to a more anion-stabilizing sulfur group. These are the sulfoxonium ylids, made from dimethylsulfoxide by S_N2 substitution with an alkyl halide. Note that the sulfur atom is the nucleophile rather than the oxygen atom in spite of the charge distribution. The high-energy sulfur lone pair is better at S_N2 substitution at saturated carbon—a reaction that depends very little on charge attraction (Chapter 17).

Sulfoxonium ylids react with unsaturated carbonyl compounds in the same way as the stabilized ylids that you have met already do—they form cyclopropanes rather than epoxides. The example below shows one consequence of this reactivity pattern—by changing from a sulfonium to a sulfoxonium ylid, high yields of either epoxide or cyclopropane can be formed from an unsaturated carbonyl compound (this one is the terpene carvone).

Sulfur-stabilized cations

We have mentioned cations in this chapter several times and now we will gather the various ideas together. Cations are stable on the sulfur atom itself, as you have just seen in sulfonium and sulfoxonium salts. They are stable on adjacent carbon atoms since the sulfur atom contributes a lone pair to form a C=S^+ π bond, and they are stable on the next carbon atom along the chain since sulfur contributes a lone pair to form a C=S^+ σ bond in a three-membered ring.

You may protest that these last two species are not carbo-cations at all but rather sulfonium ions, and you would be right. However, they can be used in place of carbocations as they are electrophilic at carbon so it is useful to think of them as modified carbocations as well as sulfonium ions. Sulfur-stabilized α-cations are easily made from α-chlorosulfides and are useful in alkylation of silyl enol ethers.
What is the point of this? Silyl enol ethers can be alkylated only by compounds that give carbocations in the presence of Lewis acids. The mechanism for the alkylation therefore involves the formation of a sulfur-stabilized cation.

The sulfide (SR) can be removed from the product with Raney nickel to give a simple ketone. This ketone has apparently been made by the alkylation of a silyl enol ether with a primary alkyl group (R\textsubscript{2}CH\textsubscript{2}). This would be impossible without stabilization of the cation by the sulfur atom.

The Pummerer rearrangement

Though the stabilization of the cation by a sulfide is not as good as the stabilization by an ether (the C=S\textsuperscript{+} bond is weaker than the C=O\textsuperscript{+} bond), it is still good enough to make the reaction work and, of course, C–O bonds cannot be reduced by any simple reagent. One thing remains—how is the chlorosulfide made in the first place? Remarkably, it is made from the alkyl halide (R\textsubscript{2}CH\textsubscript{2}Cl) you would use for the (impossible) direct alkylation without sulfur.

The first step is just the S\textsubscript{N}2 displacement of Cl\textsuperscript{−} by RS\textsuperscript{−} that you have already seen. The second step actually involves chlorination at sulfur (you have also seen that sulfides are good soft nucleophiles for halogens) to form a sulfonium salt. Now a remarkable thing happens. The chlorine atom is transferred from the sulfur atom to the adjacent carbon atom by the Pummerer rearrangement.

An ylid is first formed by loss of a proton—again, you have seen this—and then chloride is lost to form the same cation that we used in the alkylation reaction. In this step there is no nucleophile available except chloride ion so that adds to the carbon atom.

There are many variations on the Pummerer rearrangement but they all involve the same steps: a leaving group is lost from the sulfur atom of a sulfonium ylid to create a cationic intermediate that captures a nucleophile at the α carbon atom. Often the starting material is a sulfoxide.
Treatment of a sulfoxide, particularly one with an anion-stabilizing substituent to help ylid formation, produces cations reactive enough to combine with nucleophiles of all sorts, even aromatic rings. The product is the result of electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 22) and, after the sulfur has been removed with Raney nickel, is revealed as a ketone that could not be made without sulfur as the cation required would be too unstable.

A Lewis acid (SnCl₄) is used to remove the oxygen from the sulfoxide and the ketone assists ylid formation. The sulfur atom stabilizes the cation enough to counteract the destabilization by the ketone. The Lewis acid is necessary to make sure that no nucleophile competes with benzene.

Most commonly of all, a sulfoxide is treated with acetic anhydride and the cation is captured by an internal nucleophile to form a new ring. Here the nitrogen atom of an amide is the nucleophile. The mechanism is very like that of the last example.

Sulfur-stabilized β-carbocations (three-membered rings)

Three-membered cyclic sulfonium ions, representing β carbocations, are often encountered in participation reactions. We have seen this already in the way mustard gas works, but almost any arrangement of a sulfide with a leaving group on the β carbon atom leads to participation and the formation of a three-membered ring. The product is formed by migration of the PhS group from one carbon atom to another (Chapter 37).

In this case, elimination of a proton from one of the methyl groups leads to an allylic sulfide—you have seen earlier in the chapter how these compounds, and the sulfoxides derived from them, can be used in synthesis. If we make a small change in the structure of the starting material—just joining up the two methyl groups into a cyclopropane—things change quite a bit. It becomes possible to make the starting material by a lithiation reaction because cyclopropyllithiums are significantly stabilized by the three-membered ring (Chapter 8) and the rearrangement goes with carbon rather than sulfur migration.
In the rearrangement, the alcohol is protonated as before but no sulfur participation occurs. Instead, a ring expansion, also assisted by sulfur, produces a four-membered ring and hydrolysis of the $\alpha$ cation (an intermediate you have seen several times) gives a cyclobutanone. The difference between participation through space and C=S$^+$ bond formation is not that great.

Thiocarbonyl compounds

Simple thioaldehydes and thioketones are too unstable to exist and attempts at their preparation lead to appalling smells (Chapter 1). The problem is the poor overlap between the 2sp$^2$ orbital on carbon and the 3sp$^2$ orbital on sulfur as well as the more or less equal electronegativities of the two elements. Stable thiocarbonyl compounds include dithioesters and thioamides where the extra conjugation of the oxygen or nitrogen atom helps to stabilize the weak C=S bond.

Dithioesters can be made by a method that would seem odd if you thought only of ordinary esters. Organothiolium or Grignard reagents combine well with carbon disulfide (CS$_2$—the sulfur analogue of CO$_2$) to give the anion of a dithioacid. This is a much more nucleophilic species than an ordinary carboxylate anion and combines with alkyl halides to give dithioesters.

The reaction of dithioesters with Grignard reagents is even more remarkable. Because sulfur and carbon have about the same electronegativity, the Grignard reagent may add to either end of the $\pi$ bond. If it adds to sulfur, the resulting anion is stabilized by two sulfur atoms, rather like the dithiane anions we have seen earlier in this chapter, and can be used as a d$^1$ reagent.

Thioamides are usually made by reaction of ordinary amides with P$_2$S$_5$ or Lawesson’s reagent. Since C=S is so much less stable than C=O, there is a clear case to call in phosphorus to remove the oxygen. The situation is rather like that in the Wittig reaction: C=C is less stable than C=O, so phosphorus is called in to remove the oxygen because of the even greater stability of the P=O bond. Lawesson’s reagent has P=S bonds and a slightly surprising structure.
We can learn from this compound that sulfur has much less objection to four-membered rings than do oxygen or carbon. We have seen from the structure of sulfur itself \((S_8)\) that it likes eight-membered rings too. Rings of almost any size are acceptable to sulfur as bond angles matter less to second-row elements that are not generally hybridized. Lawesson’s reagent converts amides into thioamides and we have seen (Chapter 44) how these are used to make thiazoles.

**Sulfoxides**

The formation and reactions of sulfoxonium ylids demonstrate how sulfoxides occupy a useful and interesting part of the middle ground between sulfides and sulfones—they are weakly nucleophilic, like sulfides (and can be alkylated with methyl iodide to give sulfoxonium salts as we have just seen), but at the same time they stabilize anions almost as well as sulfones. However, sulfoxides are perhaps the most versatile of the three derivatives because of a good deal of chemistry that is unique to them.

There are two reasons why this should be so.

1. Sulfoxides have the potential to be chiral at sulfur
2. Sulfoxides undergo some interesting pericyclic reactions

We shall deal with each of these in turn.

### Representing **S=O** compounds

Sulfoxides are sometimes drawn as S=O and sometimes as S’−O’. The second representation might remind you of the phosphorus ylids used in the Wittig reaction (Chapters 14 and 31), which can be drawn with a P=CH₂ double bond or as P=S−CH₂. All of these representations are correct—it is a matter of personal choice which you prefer.

The double bonds are between 2p orbitals of O or C and 3d orbitals of S or P. But when we drew the structure of TsCl we always drew two S=O double bonds. You might think that an alternative structure with two S−O single bonds is not so good and almost nobody draws TsCl that way. Illogical but not unreasonable.

### Sulfoxides are chiral

Providing the two groups attached to sulfur are different, a sulfoxide is chiral at the sulfur atom. There are two important ways of making sulfoxides as single enantiomers, both asymmetric versions of reactions otherwise used to make racemic sulfoxides: oxidation and nucleophilic substitution at sulfur.

Sulfides are easy to oxidize and, depending on the type and quantity of oxidizing agent used, they can be cleanly oxidized either to sulfoxides or sulfones.

The oxidation of sulfides to sulfoxides can be made asymmetric by using one of the important reactions we introduced in the last chapter—the **Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation**. The French chemist Henri Kagan discovered in 1984 that, by treating a sulfide with the oxidant t-butyl hydroperoxide in the presence of Sharpless’s chiral catalyst \((\text{Ti(O}^\text{Pr})_3\) plus one enantiomer of diethyl tartrate), the oxygen atom could be directed to one of the sulfide’s two enantiotopic lone pairs to give a sulfoxide in quite reasonable enantiomeric excess (ee).
As yet, this asymmetric oxidation is successful only with simple aryl alkyl sulfoxides like this one, and the nucleophilic displacement method is much more widely used since it is more general and gives products of essentially 100% ee.

Sulfoxides can alternatively be made by displacement of RO\(^-\) from a sulfinate ester with a Grignard reagent.

Sulfinate esters, like sulfoxides, are chiral at sulfur and, if the ester is formed from a chiral alcohol (menthol is best), they can be separated into two diastereoisomers by crystallization—this is really a resolution of the type you first met in Chapter 16. Attack by the Grignard reagent takes place with inversion of configuration at sulfur, giving a single enantiomer of the sulfoxide.

**Chiral sulfoxides in synthesis**

How can the chirality of sulfoxides be made useful? This area of research has received a lot of attention in the last 10–15 years, with many attempts to design reactions in which the chirality at sulfur is transferred to chirality at carbon. Unfortunately, one of the simplest reactions of sulfoxides, the addition of their anions to aldehydes, usually proceeds with no useful stereoselectivity at all.

Some more successful uses of sulfoxides to control new chiral centres at carbon have been developed in Strasbourg by Guy Solladié, and they involve stereoselective reduction of carbonyl groups directed by the sulfoxide’s oxygen atom. For example, the synthesis below shows how chirality at sulfur can be transferred to chirality at carbon by using a reduction directed by the S–O bond. If this ketone is treated with the bulky reducing agent DIBAL (\(i\)-Bu\(_2\)AlH), one alcohol is formed, with less than 5% of its diastereoisomer. Remarkably, if ZnCl\(_2\) is added to the mixture, the opposite diastereoisomer is obtained! Reduction of the products with aluminium amalgam removes the sulfoxide (we discussed this process earlier in the chapter) leaving behind enantiomerically enriched samples of the alcohol.
Solladié explained these results by suggesting that, in the absence of ZnCl₂, the sulfoxide adopts the conformation that places the two electronegative oxygen atoms as far apart as possible. DIBAL then attacks the less hindered face of the ketone, syn to the sulfoxide lone pair. With ZnCl₂, on the other hand, the sulfoxide’s conformation is fixed by chelation to zinc: attack on the less hindered face of the ketone now gives the other diastereoisomer. Both compounds can be reduced with Al/Hg, which removes the sulfur group, to give opposite enantiomers of a chiral alcohol.

Allylic sulfoxides are not configurationally stable

Most sulfoxides will retain their configuration at sulfur up to temperatures of about 200 °C—indeed, it is estimated that the half-life for racemization of an enantiomerically pure sulfoxide is about 5000 years at room temperature. However, sulfoxides carrying allyl groups are much less stable—they racemize rapidly at about 50–70 °C. A clue to why this should be is provided by the reaction of an allylic sulfoxide with trimethyl phosphite, P(OMe)₃.

The product obtained is an allylic alcohol with the hydroxyl group at the other end of the allyl system from where the sulfur started—a rearrangement has taken place. We have observed the rearrangement in this case because the P(OMe)₃ has trapped the rearrangement product but, even without this reagent, allylic sulfoxides are continually and reversibly rearranging into sulfenate esters by the mechanism shown below.

The rearrangement product, which is less stable than the sulfoxide and is therefore never observed directly, is a sulfenate ester. It has no chirality at sulfur so, when it rearranges back to the sulfoxide, it has no ‘memory’ of the configuration of the starting sulfoxide, and the sulfoxide becomes racemized.

Having read Chapter 36, you should be able to classify the pericyclic rearrangement reaction: it is a [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement (make sure you can see why before you read further) and as such is the first of the pericyclic rearrangements of sulfoxides that we shall talk about.

If our proposal that allylic sulfoxides rearrange reversibly to sulfenate esters is correct, then, if we make the sulfenate ester by another route, it too should rearrange to an allylic sulfoxide—and indeed it does. The sulfenate ester arising from reaction of allylic alcohols with PhSCI (phenylsulfonyl chloride) cannot be isolated: instead, the allylic sulfoxide is obtained, usually in very good yield, and this method is often used to make allylic sulfoxides.
Uses for [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements of sulfoxides

Allylic sulfoxides exist in equilibrium with allyl sulenate esters. The two interconvert by [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement, and the equilibrium lies over to the side of the sulfoxide. Allyl sulenate esters are therefore impossible to isolate, but they can be trapped by adding a compound known as a thiophile—P(OMe)₃ was the example you just saw, but secondary amines like Et₂NH also work—which attacks the sulfur atom to give an allylic alcohol. This can be a very useful way of making allylic alcohols, particularly as the starting sulfoxides can be constructed by using sulfur’s anion-stabilizing ability. What is more, the starting allylic sulfoxides can themselves be made from allylic alcohols using PhSCI—overall then we can use allylic sulfoxide to alkylate allylic alcohols! This scheme should make all this clearer.

We can illustrate the synthesis of allylic alcohols from allylic sulfoxides with this synthesis of the natural product nuciferal. We mentioned this route on p. 000 because it makes use of a heterocyclic allyl sulfide to introduce an alkyl substituent regioselectively. The allyl sulfide is oxidized to the sulfoxide, which is converted to the rearranged allylic alcohol with diethylamine as the thiophile. Nuciferal is obtained by oxidizing the allylic alcohol to an aldehyde with manganese dioxide.

The next example makes more involved use of these [2,3]-sigmatropic allylic sulfoxide–allylic alcohol rearrangements. It comes from the work of Evans (he of the chiral auxiliary) who, in the early 1970s, first demonstrated the synthetic utility of allylic sulfoxides. Here he is using this chemistry to make precursors of the prostaglandins, a family of compounds that modulate hormone activity within the body.

Prostaglandins are trisubstituted cyclopentanones, and the aim was to synthesize them from available cyclopentenediol using allylic sulfoxide chemistry to introduce the long alkyl chain R group. Treating syn-cyclopentenediol with PhSCI gave the allylic sulfoxide (either hydroxyl can react but the product is the same). The sulfoxide was deprotonated and reacted with an alkyl halide, and then rearranged back to an allylic alcohol using P(OMe)₃ as the thiophile.
Sulfoxides next to an electron-withdrawing or conjugating group are also unstable on heating, not because they racemize but because they decompose by an elimination process. The rather unstable phenylsulfenic acid (Ph–OH) is eliminated and the reaction occurs partly because of the creation of conjugation and partly because PhSOH decomposes to volatile products. The elimination is a pericyclic reaction—it may not immediately be obvious what sort, but it is, in fact, a reverse cycloaddition. This is clearest if we draw the mechanism of the reverse reaction.

This reaction provides a useful way of introducing a double bond next to a carbonyl group. Here it is in a synthesis by Barry Trost of the Queen Bee Substance (the compound fed by the workers to those bee larvae destined to become queens). The compound is also a pheromone of the termite and is used to trap these destructive pests. Trost started with the monoester of a dicarboxylic acid, which he converted to a methyl ketone by reacting the acyl chloride with a cuprate. The ketone was then protected as a dioxolane derivative to prevent it enolizing, and the sulfur was introduced by reacting the enolate of the ester with the sulfur electrophile MeSSMe.

Next, the protecting group was removed with acid, and the sulfide was oxidized to the sulfoxide with sodium periodate (NaIO₄) ready for elimination. Heating to 110 °C then gave the Queen Bee Substance in 86% yield.
Presumably, the methyl sulfoxide was chosen here because it worked better—it is more usual to use a phenyl sulfoxide, and PhS groups can be introduced in the same way (by reacting enolates with PhSSPh or PhSCI). The cycloheptanone derivative used in our first elimination example was made from cycloheptanone in this way.

This elimination takes place more easily still when sulfur is replaced by a selenium—PhSe groups can be introduced by the same method, and oxidized to selenoxides with m-CPBA at low temperature. The selenoxides are rarely isolated, because the elimination takes place rapidly at room temperature.

Other oxidations with sulfur and selenium

Selenium dioxide and allylic oxidation

Having introduced selenium, we should at this point mention an important reaction that is peculiar to selenium but that is closely related to these pericyclic reactions. Selenium dioxide will react with alkenes in a [4 + 2] cycloaddition reminiscent of the ene reaction.

The initial product is an allylic seleninic acid—and just like an allylic sulfoxide (but more so because the C–Se bond is even weaker) it undergoes allylic rearrangement to give an unstable compound that rapidly decomposes to an allylic alcohol. In some cases, particularly this most useful oxidation of methyl groups, the oxidation continues to give an aldehyde or ketone.

Overall, CH₃ has been replaced by CH₂OH or CH=O in an allylic position, a transformation similar to the NBS allylic bromination reaction that you met in Chapter 39, but with a very different mechanism. The by-product of the oxidation is a selenium(II) compound, and it can be more practical to carry out the reaction with only a catalytic amount of SeO₂, with a further oxidizing agent,
t-butyl hydroperoxide, to reoxidize the Se(II) after each cycle of the reaction. This eliminates the need to get rid of large amounts of selenium-containing products, which are toxic and usually smelly.

In Chapter 40 we left the synthesis of sirenin at a tantalizing stage. A carbene insertion into a double bond had formed a three-membered ring and the final stage was the oxidation of a terminal methyl group. This is how it was done.

There is some interesting selectivity in this sequence. Only one of the three groups next to the alkene is oxidized and only one (\(E\)-) isomer of the enal is formed. No position next to the unsaturated ester is oxidized. All these decisions are taken in the initial cycloaddition step. The most nucleophilic double bond uses its more nucleophilic end to attack SeO\(_2\) at selenium. The cycloaddition uses the HOMO (\(\pi\)) of the alkene to attack the LUMO (\(\pi^*\) of Se=O). Meanwhile the HOMO (\(\pi\)) of Se=O attacks the LUMO (C–H \(\sigma^*\)) of the allylic system.

The stereoselectivity also appears to be determined in this step and it is reasonable to assume that the methyl group \(trans\) to the main chain will react rather than the other for simple steric reasons. Though this is true, the stereochemistry actually disappears in the intermediate and is finally fixed only in the \([2,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement step. Both \([2,3]\)- and \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangements are usually \(E\)-selective for reasons discussed in Chapter 36.

The Swern oxidation

In Chapter 24 we mentioned the Swern oxidation briefly as an excellent method of converting alcohols to aldehydes. We said there that we would discuss this interesting reaction later and now is the time. The mechanism is related to the reactions that we have been discussing and it is relevant that the Swern oxidation is particularly effective at forming enals from allylic alcohols.

The Swern oxidation

The Swern oxidation

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{DMSO} & + \text{Me}_2\text{S} + \text{CO} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{HCl} \\
\text{Et}_3\text{N} & \rightarrow R-\text{CHO} + \text{Me}_2\text{S} + \text{CO} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{HCl}
\end{align*}
\]

In the first step, DMSO reacts with oxalyl chloride to give an electrophilic sulfur compound. You should not be surprised that it is the charged oxygen atom that attacks the carbonyl group rather than the soft sulfur atom. Chloride is released in this acylation and it attacks the positively charge...
sulfur atom expelling a remarkable leaving group, which fragments into three pieces: CO\(_2\), CO, and a chloride ion. Entropy favours this reaction.

The alcohol has been a spectator of these events so far but the chlorosulfonium ion now formed can react with it to give a new sulfonium salt. This is the sole purpose of all the reactions as this new sulfonium salt is stable enough to survive and to be deprotonated by the base (Et\(_3\)N). You will recognize the final step both as the redox step and as a close relative to events in the preceding sections.

To conclude: the sulfur chemistry of onions and garlic

Traditional medicine suggests that onions and garlic are ‘good for you’ and modern chemistry has revealed some of the reasons. These bulbs of the genus *Allium* exhibit some remarkable sulfur chemistry and we will end this chapter with a few examples. Both onions and garlic are almost odourless when whole but develop powerful smells and, in the case of onions, tear gas properties when they are cut. These all result from the action of alliinase enzymes released by cell damage on unsaturated sulfoxides in the bulb.

In garlic, a simple sulfoxide elimination creates an unstable sulfenic acid. When we looked at sulfoxide eliminations before, we ignored the fate of the unstable sulfenic acid, but here it is important. It dimerizes with the formation of an S–S bond and the breaking of a weaker S–O bond.

Another simple elimination reaction on the thiosulfinate ester makes another molecule of the sulfenic acid and a highly unstable unsaturated thioaldehyde, which promptly dimerizes to give a thioacetal found in garlic as a potent platelet aggregation inhibitor.

In onions, things start much the same way but the initial amino acid is not quite the same. The skeleton is the same as that of the garlic compound but the double bond is conjugated with the sulfoxide. Elimination and dimerization of the sulfenic acid produce an isomeric thiosulfinate.
Oxidation of the thiosulfinate ester up to the sulfonate level gives the compound responsible for the smell of raw onions, while a hydrogen shift on the conjugated sulfenic acid (not possible with the garlic compound) gives a sulfine, the sulfur analogue of a ketene. The compound has the $Z$ configuration expected from the mechanism and is the lachrymator that makes you cry when you cut into a raw onion.

Even more remarkable is the formation of the ‘zwiebelanes’, other compounds with potential as drugs for heart disease. They are formed in onions from the conjugated thiosulfinate ester by a $[3,3]$-sigmatropic rearrangement that gives a compound containing a sulfine and a thioaldehyde. We said that sulfines are the sulfur equivalents of ketenes, so you might expect them to do $[2 + 2]$ cycloadditions (Chapter 35) but you might not expect the thioaldehyde to be the other partner. It is, and the result is a cage compound with one sulfide and one sulfoxide joined in a four-membered ring.

Look at onions with respect! They are not only the cornerstone of tasty cooking but are able to do amazing pericyclic reactions as soon as you cut them open. You can read more about the Allium family in Eric Block’s review in Angewandte Chemie (International Edition in English), 1992, Volume 31, p. 1135.

Though you have only seen a couple of examples of the latter, it is clear that organosulfur and organoselenium chemistry are closely related. In the next chapter we will look at the quite different type of chemistry exhibited by organic compounds containing three other heteroatoms—silicon, tin, and boron.

**Problems**

1. Suggest structures for intermediates A and B and mechanisms for the reactions.

2. Suggest a mechanism for this reaction, commenting on the selectivity and the stereochemistry.

3. The product X of the following reaction has $\delta_H$ 1.28 p.p.m. (6H, s), 1.63 p.p.m. (3H, d, $J$ 4.5 Hz), 2.45 p.p.m. (6H, s), 4.22 p.p.m. (1H, s), 5.41 p.p.m. (1H, d, $J$ 15 Hz), and 5.63 p.p.m. (1H, dq, $J$ 15, 4.5 Hz). Suggest a structure for X and a mechanism for its formation.

4. The thermal elimination of sulfoxides (example below) is a first-order reaction with almost no rate dependence on substituent at sulfur (Ar) and a modest negative entropy of activation. It is accelerated if R is a carbonyl group (that is, $R = \text{COR}^\prime$). The reaction is (slightly) faster in less polar solvents. Explain.

Explain the stereochemistry of the first reaction in the following scheme and the position of the double bond in the final product.
5. Revision content. Explain the reactions and the stereochemistry in these first steps in a synthesis of the B vitamin biotin.

6. Explain the regio- and stereoselectivity of this reaction.

7. Draw mechanisms for these reactions of a sulfonium ylid and the rearrangement of the first product. Why is $\text{BF}_4^-$ chosen as the counterion?

The intermediate may alternatively be reacted with a selenium compound in this sequence of reactions. Explain what is happening, commenting on the regioselectivity. Why is the intermediate in square brackets not usually isolated?

8. Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the role of sulfur.

9. Suggest a mechanism for this formation of a nine-membered ring. Warning! The weak hindered base is not strong enough to form an enolate from the lactone.

10. Comment on the role of sulfur in the steps in this synthesis of the turmeric flavour compound Ar-turmerone.

11. Explain how the presence of the sulfur-containing group allows this cyclization to occur regio- and stereoselectively.
12. Problem 9 in Chapter 32 asked you to interpret the NMR spectrum of a cyclopropane (A). This compound was formed using a sulfur ylid. What is the mechanism of the reaction?

Attempts to repeat this synthesis on the bromo compound below led to a different product. What is different this time?

13. Epoxides may be transformed into allylic alcohols by the sequence shown here. Give mechanisms for the reactions and explain why the elimination of the selenium gives an allylic alcohol rather than an enol.

14. In a process resembling the Mitsunobu reaction (Chapter 17), alcohols and acids can be coupled to give esters, even macrocyclic lactones as shown below. In contrast to the Mitsunobu reaction, the reaction leads to retention of stereochemistry at the alcohol. Propose a mechanism that explains the stereochemistry. Why is sulfur necessary here?

15. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining any selectivity.
Organic chemists make extensive use of the periodic table

Although typical organic molecules, such as those of which all living things are composed, are constructed from only a few elements (usually C, H, O, N, S, and P and, on occasion, Cl, Br, I, and a few more), there are very many other elements that can be used as the basis for reagents, catalysts, and as components of synthetic intermediates. The metals will be discussed in the next chapter (48) but many main group (p block) elements are also important. These nonmetals bond covalently to carbon and some of their compounds are important in their own right.

More commonly, elements such as Si, P, and S are used in reagents to carry out some transformation but are not required in the final molecule and so must be removed at a later stage in the synthesis. The fact that organic chemists are prepared to tolerate this additional step demonstrates the importance of these reactions. The Julia olefination is an obvious example. The difficult conversion of aldehydes and ketones into alkenes is important enough to make it worthwhile adding a sulfur atom to the starting material and then removing it at the end of the reaction. So many elements are used like this that the list of nonmetals that are not used frequently in organic synthesis would be much shorter than the list of those that are useful.

In the previous chapter we described the special chemistry of sulfur, and you have previously met that of phosphorus. These two elements may be thought of as analogues of oxygen and nitrogen but many reactions are possible with S and P that are quite impossible with O and N. This chapter will concentrate on the organic chemistry of three other main group elements: boron, which is unusual in this context because it is a first row element, and silicon and tin, which are in the same group as...
carbon in the periodic table but in the second and fourth rows. Here they are surrounded by other familiar elements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Li</th>
<th>Be</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Ne</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>Al</td>
<td>Si</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>Ar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ge</td>
<td>Se</td>
<td>Sn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Boron**

**Borane has a vacant p orbital**

You have already met boron in useful reagents such as sodium borohydride NaBH₄ and borane BH₃ (more correctly, B₂H₆). Both display the crucial feature of boron chemistry, which results directly from its position in group IIIb or 13 of the periodic table. Boron has only three electrons in the 2p shell and so typically forms three conventional two-centre two-electron bonds with other atoms in a planar structure leaving a vacant 2p orbital. Borane exists as a mixture of B₂H₆—a dimer with hydrogen bridges—and the monomer BH₃. Since most reactions occur with BH₃ and the equilibrium is fast we will not refer to this again.

The vacant orbital is able to accept a lone pair of electrons from a Lewis base to give a neutral species or can combine with a nucleophile to form a negatively charged tetrahedral anion. The reducing agent borane–dimethyl sulfide is an example of the Lewis acid behaviour while the borohydride anion would be the result of the imaginary reaction of borane with a nucleophile hydride. The vacant orbital makes borane a target for nucleophiles.

**Hydroboration—the addition of boron hydrides to alkenes and alkynes**

One of the simplest classes of nucleophiles that attacks borane is that of alkenes. The result, described as hydroboration, is an overall addition of borane across the double bond. Unlike most electrophilic additions to alkenes that occur in a stepwise manner via charged intermediates (Chapter 20), this addition is concerted so that both new bonds are formed more or less at the same time. The result is a new borane in which one of the hydrogen atoms has been replaced by an alkane. This monoaalkyl borane (RBH₂) is now able to undergo addition with another molecule of the alkene to produce a dialkyl borane (R₂BH) which in turn undergoes further reaction to produce a trialkyl borane (R₃B). All these boranes have a vacant p orbital and are flat so that repeated attack to produce the trialkyl borane is easy and normal if an excess of alkene is present.
Hydroboration is regioselective

You will notice that the boron atom always adds to the end of the alkene. This is just as well; otherwise, three sequential additions would give rise to a complex mixture of products. The boron always becomes attached to the carbon of the double bond that is less substituted. This is what we should expect if the filled π orbital of the alkene adds to the empty orbital of the borane to give the more stable cationic intermediate.

![Image of chemical structure showing hydroboration and oxidation]

We know that this is not the whole story because of the stereochemistry. Hydroboration is a syn addition across the alkene. As the addition of the empty p orbital to the less substituted end of the alkene gets under way, a hydrogen atom from the boron adds, with its pair of electrons, to the carbon atom, which is becoming positively charged. The two steps shown above are concerted, but formation of the C–B bond goes ahead of formation of the C–H bond so that boron and carbon are partially charged in the four-centred transition state.

![Image of chemical structure showing hydroboration and oxidation]

It is, of course, impossible to tell in this case whether the addition is syn or anti and in any case the alkyl borane products are rather unstable. Although organoboranes can be stored, and some are available commercially, air must be rigorously excluded as they burst into a spectacular green flame in air. A more controlled oxidation is required to remove the boron and reveal the useful organic fragment. The simplest is alkaline hydrogen peroxide, which replaces the carbon–boron bond with a carbon–oxygen bond to give an alcohol.

![Image of chemical structure showing hydroboration and oxidation]

The oxidation occurs by nucleophilic attack of the hydroperoxide ion on the empty orbital of the boron atom followed by a migration of the alkyl chain from boron to oxygen. Do not be alarmed by hydroxide ion as leaving group. It is, of course, a bad leaving group but a very weak bond—the O–O σ bond—is being broken. Finally, hydroxide attacks the now neutral boron to cleave the B–O–alkyl bond and release the alcohol.

![Image of chemical structure showing hydroboration and oxidation]

In this sequence boron goes backwards and forwards between planar neutral structures and anionic tetrahedral structures. This is typical of the organic chemistry of boron. The planar structure is neutral but boron has only six valency electrons. The tetrahedral structure gives boron eight valency electrons but it is negatively charged. Boron flits restlessly between these two types of structure, becoming content only when it has three oxygen atoms around it. Returning to the oxidation but concentrating on the boron product, we find that B(OH)₃ is the stable product as it is neutral and has three oxygen atoms donating electrons into the empty p orbital on boron.

![Image of chemical structure showing hydroboration and oxidation]
Hydroboration is mostly used for the conversion of alkenes to alcohols by the cis addition of water with the OH group going to the less substituted end of the alkene. This is clearest with a cyclic trisubstituted alkene.

Now we can prove that cis addition really does occur in the hydroboration step. The migration of carbon from boron to oxygen might remind you of the Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement (Chapter 37). Both these rearrangements occur with retention of configuration at the migrating group as the bonding (C–C or C–B σ) orbital reacts. Here is the exact analogy.

The same alcohol could be made by the Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement but the stereochemistry would have to be set up before the Baeyer–Villiger step. Hydroboration has the advantage that stereochemistry is created in the hydroboration step. We have discussed the details of this step. In drawing the mechanism it is usually best to draw it as a simple concerted four-centre mechanism providing you remember that the regioselectivity is controlled by the initial interaction between the nucleophilic end of the alkene and the empty p orbital on boron.

The overall result of the hydroboration–oxidation sequence is addition of water to an alkene with the opposite regiochemistry to that expected for a conventional acid-catalysed hydration. The usual way to do such a hydration is by oxymercuration–reduction.

The stereochemical outcome would also be different as the hydroboration adds syn to the alkene, whereas oxymercuration gives the anti product though in this case the stereochemistry is lost in the reduction step.

**Hydroboration–oxidation is normally done via the trialkyl borane**

So far we have shown all reactions taking place on the monoalkyl borane. In fact, these compounds are unstable and most hydroborations actually occur via the trialkyl borane. Three molecules of alkene add to the boron atom; three oxidations and three migrations transfer three alkyl groups (R = 2-methylcyclopentyl) from boron to oxygen to give the relatively stable trialkyl borate B(OR)₃, which is hydrolysed to give the products.
If we have a mixed trialkyl borane, you may be concerned about which of the alkyl groups migrates—the usual answer is that they all do! Oxidation proceeds until the borane is fully oxidized to the corresponding borate, which then breaks down to give the alcohols.

![Image of a chemical reaction]

**Bulky substituents improve the selectivity of hydroboration**

Borane can react one, two, or even three times and this is a disadvantage in many situations so a range of hydroboring reagents has been designed to hydrobore once or twice. Dialkyl boranes $R_2BH$ can hydrobore once only and alkyl boranes $RBH_2$ twice. In each case the ‘dummy’ group $R$ must be designed either to migrate badly in the oxidation step or to provide an alcohol that is easily separated from other alcohols. The regioselectivity of hydroboration, good though it is with simple borane, is also improved by very bulky boranes, which explains the choice of dummy groups. Thexyl borane, so-called because the alkyl group is a 'tertiary hexyl' group (t-hexyl), is used when two hydroborations are required and it is easily made by hydroboration with borane since the second hydroboration with the tetrasubstituted alkene is very slow.

Two dialkyl boranes are in common use. The bicyclic 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), introduced in Chapter 34 as a reagent for diastereoselective aldol reactions, is a stable crystalline solid. This is very unusual for an alkyl borane and makes it a popular reagent. It is made by hydroboration of cycloocta-1,5-diene. The second hydroboration is fast because it is intramolecular but the third would be very slow. The regioselectivity of the second hydroboration is under thermodynamic control.

Disiamylborane (an abbreviation for di-isoamyl borane—not a name we should use now, but the abbreviation has stuck) is also easily made by hydroboration of a simple trialkyl alkene with borane. Two hydroborations occur easily, in contrast to the tetrasubstituted alkene above, but the third is very slow. Disiamylborane is exceptionally regioselective because of its very hindered structure. The structures of these reagents are cumbersome to draw in full and they are often abbreviated.

**Hydroboration**

- Hydroboration is a $syn$ addition of a borane to an alkene
- Regioselectivity is high: the boron adds to the carbon less able to support a positive charge
These bulkier boranes enhance the regioselectivity of hydroboration of trisubstituted alkenes in particular and may also lead to high diastereoselectivity when there is a stereogenic centre next to the alkene. In this next example, an allylic alcohol is hydroborated with thexyl borane. Oxidation reveals complete regioselectivity and a 9:1 stereoselectivity in favour of hydroboration on the same side as the OH group.

The reactive conformation of the alkene is probably the ‘Houk’ conformation (Chapter 34) with the hydrogen atom on the stereogenic centre eclipsing the alkene. Attack occurs syn to the OH group and anti to the larger butyl group.

Hydroboration is not restricted to alkenes: alkynes also react well to give vinyl boranes. These may be used directly in synthesis or oxidized to the corresponding enol, which immediately tautomerizes to the aldehyde. An example of this transformation is the conversion of 1-octyne into octanal by hydroboration with disiamylborane and oxidation with sodium perborate under very mild conditions.

Carbon–boron bonds can be transformed stereospecifically into C–O, C–N, or C–C bonds

Although oxidation to the alcohol is the most common reaction of organoboranes in organic synthesis, the reaction with ~O–OH is just one example of a general reaction with a nucleophile of the type ~X–Y where the nucleophilic atom X can be O, N, or even C, and Y is a leaving group. We will illustrate the formation of carbon–nitrogen and carbon–carbon bonds by this reaction. The underlying principle is to use the vacant orbital on boron to attack the nucleophile and then rely on the loss of the leaving group to initiate a rearrangement of R groups from B to X similar to that observed from B to O in the hydrogen peroxide oxidation. The overall result is insertion of X into the carbon–boron bond with retention.

If X is nitrogen then a direct method of amination results. The required reagent is a chloramine or the rather safer O-hydroxylaminesulfonic acid: the leaving group is chloride or sulfonate. The overall
process of hydroboration–amination corresponds to a regioselective syn addition of ammonia across the alkene. In the case of pinene the two faces of the alkene are very different—one is shielded by the bridge with the geminal dimethyl group. Addition takes place exclusively from the less hindered side to give one diastereoisomer of one regioisomer of the amine.

Carbon–carbon bonds can also be made with alkyl boranes. The requirement for a carbon nucleophile that bears a suitable leaving group is met by α-halo carbonyl compounds. The halogen makes enolization of the carbonyl compound easier and then departs in the rearrangement step. The product is a boron enolate with the boron bound to carbon. Under the basic conditions of the reaction, hydrolysis to the corresponding carbonyl compound is rapid.

In this example it is important which group migrates from boron to carbon as that is the group that forms the new C–C bond in the product. We previously compared the oxidation of alkyl boranes with the Baeyer–Villiger reaction (Chapter 37) but the order of migrating groups is the opposite in the two reactions. In the Baeyer–Villiger reaction (migration from carbon to oxygen) the more highly substituted carbon atom migrates best so the order is t-alkyl > s-alkyl > n-alkyl > methyl. In organoborane rearrangements it is the reverse order: n-alkyl > s-alkyl > t-alkyl. Methyl does not feature as you cannot make a B–Me bond by hydroboration.

Why the difference between the Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement and boron chemistry?
The transition state for the Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement has a positive charge in the important area. Anything that can help stabilize the positive charge, such as a tertiary migrating group (R¹), stabilizes the transition state and makes the reaction go better.
In the boron rearrangements, by contrast, the whole transition state has a negative charge. Alkyl groups destabilize rather than stabilize negative charges, but primary alkyl groups destabilize them less than secondary ones do, and so on. This is another reason for choosing tertiary alkyl ‘dummy’ groups such as \( t \)-hexyl—they are less likely to migrate.

But what about the case we were considering? The migrating group is secondary and the groups that are left behind on the 9-BBN framework are also secondary. What is the distinction? Again we can use the Baeyer–Villiger reaction to help us. The treatment of bridged bicyclic ketones with per-oxy-acids often leads to more migration of the primary alkyl group than of the secondary one.

Bridgehead atoms are bad migrating groups. When the green spot carbon migrates, it drags the whole cage structure with it and distorts the molecule a great deal. When the black spot carbon migrates, it simply slides along the O–O bond and disturbs the cage much less. It is the same with 9-BBN. Migration of the bicyclic group is also unfavourable.

**Migration preferences**

- For the Baeyer–Villiger reaction, cation-stabilizing groups migrate best: \( t \)-alkyl > \( s \)-alkyl > \( n \)-alkyl > methyl
- For boron rearrangements, cation-stabilizing groups migrate worst: \( n \)-alkyl > \( s \)-alkyl > \( t \)-alkyl
- For both, bridgehead groups migrate badly

**Allyl and crotyl boranes react using the double bond**

Allylic boron compounds react with aldehydes in a slightly different way. The first step is, as always, coordination of the basic carbonyl oxygen to the Lewis acid boron. This has two important effects: first, the carbonyl is made more electrophilic and, second, the carbon–boron bond in the allylic fragment is weakened so that migration is easier. The difference is that the reaction that follows is not the now familiar 1,2-rearrangement but one involving the allylic double bond as well, rather like a \([3,3]\)-sigmatropic rearrangement (Chapter 36). The negatively charged boron increases the nucleophilicity of the double bond so that it attacks the carbonyl carbon. The result is a six-membered transition state in which transfer of boron from carbon to oxygen occurs with simultaneous carbon–carbon bond formation. Hydrolytic cleavage of the boron–oxygen bond is often accelerated by hydrogen.
peroxide as in hydroboration. The precise nature of the ligands on boron is not important as this process is successful both for boranes (L = R) and boronates (L = OR).

Enantioselective allylation is possible with optically pure ligands on boron

You may not think that allylating an aldehyde is much of an achievement—after all, allyl Grignard reagents would do just the same job. The interest in allyl boranes arises because enantiomerically pure ligands derived from naturally occurring chiral terpenes can easily be incorporated into the allyl borane. H.C. Brown, has investigated a range of terpenes as chiral ligands. The reagent below, B-allylbis(2-isocaranyl)borane, has two ligands resulting from hydroboration of carene and delivers the allyl group under such exquisite control that the resulting homoallylic alcohol is virtually a single enantiomer. This reaction is one of the fastest in organic chemistry even at the very low temperature of –100 °C and the product is a useful building block. This makes the process more practical as the cooling is required for only a short time.

Enantioselective allylation is possible with optically pure ligands on boron

You may not think that allylating an aldehyde is much of an achievement—after all, allyl Grignard reagents would do just the same job. The interest in allyl boranes arises because enantiomerically pure ligands derived from naturally occurring chiral terpenes can easily be incorporated into the allyl borane. H.C. Brown, has investigated a range of terpenes as chiral ligands. The reagent below, B-allylbis(2-isocaranyl)borane, has two ligands resulting from hydroboration of carene and delivers the allyl group under such exquisite control that the resulting homoallylic alcohol is virtually a single enantiomer. This reaction is one of the fastest in organic chemistry even at the very low temperature of –100 °C and the product is a useful building block. This makes the process more practical as the cooling is required for only a short time.

**Allyl and crotyl boranes react stereospecifically**

The six-membered transition state for the reaction of an allylic borane or boronate is very reminiscent of the cyclic transition state for the aldol reaction you met in Chapter 34. In this case the only change is to replace the oxygen of the enolate with a carbon to make the allyl nucleophile. The transition state for the aldol reaction was a chair and the reaction was stereospecific so that the geometry of the enolate determined the stereochemistry of the product aldol. The same is true in these reactions. 

**E-crotyl boranes** (or boronates) give *anti* homoallylic alcohols and **Z-crotyl boranes** (or boronates)
give syn alcohols via chair transition states in which the aldehyde R group adopts a pseudoequatorial position to minimize steric repulsion. As with the aldol reaction the short bonds to boron create a very tight transition state, which converts the two-dimensional stereochemistry of the reagent into the three-dimensional structure of the product.

The low temperature is a testament to the reactivity of the crotyl boronates and also helps minimize any isomerization of the reagents while maximizing the effect of the energy differences between the favoured and disfavoured transition states.

The dramatic diastereoselectivity of this process is noteworthy but, of course, the products are racemic—two anti isomers from the E-crotyl reagent and two syn isomers from the Z counterpart. This is inevitable as both starting materials are achiral and there is no external source of chirality. You may be wondering if the use of a chiral ligand on boron would allow the production of a single enantiomer of a single diastereoisomer. The simple answer is that it does, very nicely. In fact, there are a number of solutions to this problem using boranes and boronates but the one illustrated uses the same ligand as that used earlier for allylation derived from carene.
Though boron and aluminium form similar reducing agents, such as NaBH₄ and LiAlH₄, the reactions described so far in this chapter do not occur with aluminium compounds, and compounds with C–Al bonds, other than DIBAL and Me₃Al, are hardly used in organic chemistry. We move on to the other two elements in this chapter, Si and Sn, both members of group IVB (or 14 if you prefer)—the same group as carbon.

### Special features of organoboron chemistry

- Boron is electrophilic because of its empty p orbital
- Boron forms strong B–O bonds and weak B–C bonds
- Migration of alkyl groups from boron to O, N, or C is stereospecific

### Silicon and carbon compared

Silicon is immediately below carbon in the periodic table and the most obvious similarity is that both elements normally have a valency of four and both form tetrahedral compounds. There are important differences in the chemistry of carbon and silicon—silicon is less important and many books are devoted solely to carbon chemistry but relatively few to silicon chemistry. Carbon forms many stable trigonal and linear compounds containing π bonds; silicon forms few. The most important difference is the strength of the silicon–oxygen σ bond (368 kJ mol⁻¹) and the relative weakness of the silicon–silicon bond (230 kJ mol⁻¹). Together these values account for the absence, in the oxygen-rich atmosphere of earth, of silicon analogues of the plethora of structures possible with a carbon skeleton.

Several of the values in the table are worthy of comment as they give insight into the reactivity differences between carbon and silicon. Bonds to electronegative elements are generally stronger with silicon than with carbon; in particular, the silicon–fluorine bond is one of the strongest single bonds known, while bonds to electropositive elements are weaker. Silicon–hydrogen bonds are much weaker than their carbon counterparts and can be cleaved easily. This section of Chapter 47 is about organic silicon chemistry. We will mostly discuss compounds with four Si–C bonds. Three of these bonds will usually be the same so we will often have a Me₃Si– group attached to an organic molecule. We shall discuss reactions in which something interesting happens to the organic molecule as one of the Si–C bonds reacts to give a new Si–F or Si–O bond. We shall also discuss organosilicon compounds as reagents, such as triethylsilane (Et₃SiH), which is a reducing agent whereas Et₃C–H is not. Here are a few organosilicon compounds.

![Organosilicon compounds](image)

The carbon–silicon bond is strong enough for the trialkyl silyl group to survive synthetic transformations on the rest of the molecule but weak enough for it to be cleaved specifically when we want. In particular, fluoride ion is a poor nucleophile for carbon compounds but attacks silicon very readily. Another important factor is the length of the C–Si bond (1.89 Å)—it is significantly longer than a typical C–C bond (1.54 Å). Silicon has a lower electronegativity (1.8) than carbon (2.5) and therefore C–Si bonds are polarized towards the carbon. This makes the silicon susceptible to attack by nucleophiles.

### Interactive note

Instead, silicon forms compounds containing the very stable O–Si–O linkage giving a variety of structures such as rocks and plastics.
Silicon has an affinity for electronegative atoms

The most effective nucleophiles for silicon are the electronegative ones that will form strong bonds to silicon, such as those based on oxygen or halide ions with fluoride being pre-eminent. You saw this in the choice of reagent for the selective cleavage of silyl ethers in Chapter 24. Tetrabutylammonium fluoride is often used as this is an organic soluble ionic fluoride and forms a silyl fluoride as the by-product. The mechanism is not a simple SN2 process and has no direct analogue in carbon chemistry. It looks like a substitution at a hindered tertiary centre, which ought to be virtually impossible.

Two characteristics of silicon facilitate the process: first, the long silicon–carbon bonds relieve the steric interactions and, second, the d orbitals of silicon provide a target for the nucleophile that does not have the same geometric constraints as a C–O σ* orbital. Attack of the fluoride on the d orbital leads to a negatively charged pentacoordinate intermediate that breaks down with loss of the alkoxide. There is a discrete intermediate in contrast to the pentacoordinate transition state of a carbon-based SN2 reaction.

This process is sometimes abbreviated to SN2 at silicon to save space. The intermediate is a trigonal bipyramid with negatively charged pentacovalent silicon. It is often omitted in drawings because it is formed slowly and decomposes quickly. This mechanism is similar to nucleophilic substitution at boron except that the intermediate is pentacovalent (Si) rather than tetrahedral (B). The hydrolysis of a boron ester at the end of a hydroboration–oxidation sequence would be an example.

### The silicon Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement

Evidence that the SN2 reaction at silicon does indeed go through a pentacovalent intermediate comes from the silicon analogue of the migration step in hydroboration–oxidation. Treatment of reactive organosilanes (that is, those with at least one heteroatom—F, OR, NR2—attached to silicon to encourage nucleophilic attack of hydroperoxide at silicon) with the same reagent (alkaline hydrogen peroxide) also gives alkyl migration from Si to O with retention of configuration. It would be difficult to draw a mechanism for this reaction without the intermediate. This is a precise copy of the oxidative cleavage of organoboranes that works on silanes.

Silicon forms strong bonds with oxygen and very strong bonds with fluorine.

### Nucleophilic substitution at silicon

You may wonder why trimethylsilyl chloride does not use the SN1 mechanism familiar from the analogous carbon compound t-butyl chloride. There is, in fact, nothing wrong with the Me3Si+...
cation—it is often observed in mass spectra, for example. The reason is that the ‘S_N2’ reaction at silicon is too good.

We should compare the ‘S_N2’ reaction at silicon with the S_N2 reaction at carbon. There are some important differences. Alkyl halides are soft electrophiles but silyl halides are hard electrophiles. Alkyl halides react only very slowly with fluoride ion but silyl halides react more rapidly with fluoride than with any other nucleophile. The best nucleophiles for saturated carbon are neutral and/or based on elements down the periodic table (S, Se, I). The best nucleophiles for silicon are charged and based on highly electronegative atoms (chiefly F, Cl, and O). A familiar example is the reaction of enolates at carbon with alkyl halides but at oxygen with silyl chlorides (Chapter 21).

When a Me_3Si group is removed from an organic molecule with hydroxide ion, the product is not the silanol as you might expect but the silyl ether ‘hexamethyldisiloxane’. Di-t-butyl ether could not be formed under these conditions nor by this mechanism, but only by the S_N1 mechanism in acid solution.

The other side of the coin is that the S_N2 reaction at carbon is not much affected by partial positive charge (\(\delta^+\)) on the carbon atom. The ‘S_N2’ reaction at silicon is affected by the charge on silicon. The most electrophilic silicon compounds are the silyl triflates and it is estimated that they react some 10^8–10^9 times faster with oxygen nucleophiles than do silyl chlorides. Trimethylsilyl triflate is, in fact, an excellent Lewis acid and can be used to form acetals or silyl enol ethers from carbonyl compounds, and to react these two together in aldol-style reactions. In all three reactions the triflate attacks an oxygen atom.

In the acetal formation, silylation occurs twice at the carbonyl oxygen atom and the final leaving group is hexamethyldisiloxane. You should compare this with the normal acid-catalysed mechanism described in Chapter 14 where the carbonyl group is twice protonated and the leaving group is water.

Silyl enol ether formation again results from silylation of carbonyl oxygen but this time no alcohol is added and a weak base, usually a tertiary amine, helps to remove the proton after silylation.
When the acetal and the silyl enol ether are mixed with the same Lewis acid catalyst, Noyori found that an efficient aldol-style condensation takes place with the acetal providing the electrophile. The reaction is successful at low temperatures and only a catalytic amount of the Lewis acid is needed. Under these conditions, with no acid or base, few side-reactions occur. Notice that the final desilylation is carried out by the triflate anion to regenerate the Lewis acid Me₃Si–OTf. Triflate would be a very poor nucleophile for saturated carbon but is reasonable for silicon because oxygen is the nucleophilic atom.

Silyl ethers are versatile protecting groups for alcohols

Silicon-based protecting groups for alcohols are the best because they are the most versatile. They are removed by nucleophilic displacement with fluoride or oxygen nucleophiles and the rate of removal depends mostly on the steric bulk of the silyl group. The simplest is trimethylsilyl (Me₃Si or often just TMS) which is also the most easily removed as it is the least hindered. In fact, it is removed so easily by water with a trace of base or acid that special handling is required to keep this labile group in place.

Replacement of the one of the methyl groups with a much more sterically demanding tertiary butyl group gives the t-butyldimethylsilyl (TBDMS) group, which is stable to normal handling and survives aqueous work-up or column chromatography on silica gel. The stability to these isolation and purification conditions has made TBDMS (sometimes over-abbreviated to TBS) a very popular choice for organic synthesis. TBDMSCI is introduced by a substitution reaction on the corresponding silyl chloride with imidazole in DMF. Yields are usually virtually quantitative and the conditions are mild. Primary alcohols are protected in the presence of secondary alcohols. Removal relies on the strong affinity of fluoride for silicon and is usually very efficient and selective.

However, a protecting group is useful only if it can be introduced and removed in high yield without affecting the rest of the molecule and if it can survive a wide range of conditions in the course of the synthesis. The extreme steric bulk of the t-butyldiphenyldimethylsilyl (TBDPS) group makes it useful for selective protection of unhindered primary alcohols in the presence of secondary alcohols.
The most stable common silyl protecting group (triisopropylsilyl or TIPS) has three branched alkyl substituents to protect the central silicon from attack by nucleophiles which would lead to cleavage. All three hindered silyl groups (TBDMS, TBDPS, and TIPS) have excellent stability but can still be removed with fluoride.

Alkynyl silanes are used for protection and activation

Terminal alkynes have an acidic proton ($pK_a$ ca. 25) that can be removed by very strong bases such as organometallic reagents (Grignards, RLi, etc.). While this is often what is intended, in other circumstances it may be an unwanted side-reaction that would consume an organometallic reagent or interfere with the chosen reaction. Exchange of the terminal proton of an alkyne for a trimethylsilyl group exploits the relative acidity of the proton and provides a neat solution to these problems. The SiMe$_3$ group protects the terminus of the alkyne during the reaction but can then be removed with fluoride or sodium hydroxide. A classic case is the removal of a proton next door to a terminal alkyne.

Additionally, acetylene itself is a useful two-carbon building block but is not very convenient to handle as it is an explosive gas. Trimethylsilylacetylene is a distillable liquid that is a convenient substitute for acetylene in reactions involving the lithium derivative as it has only one acidic proton. The synthesis of this alkynyl ketone is an example. Deprotonation with butyl lithium provides the alkynyl lithium that reacted with the alkyl chloride in the presence of iodide as nucleophilic catalyst (see Chapter 17). Removal of the trimethylsilyl group with potassium carbonate in methanol allowed further reaction on the other end of the alkyne.

Silicon stabilizes a positive charge on the $\beta$ carbon

In common with ordinary alkynes, silylated alkynes are nucleophilic towards electrophiles. The presence of the silicon has a dramatic effect on the regioselectivity of this reaction: attack occurs only at the atom directly bonded to the silicon. This must be because the intermediate cation is stabilized.

The familiar hierarchy of carbocation stability—tertiary $>$ secondary $>$ primary—is due to the stabilization of the positive charge by donation of electron density from adjacent C–H or C–C bonds (their filled $\sigma$ orbitals to be precise) that are aligned correctly with the vacant orbital (Chapter 17). The electropositive nature of silicon makes C–Si bonds even more effective donors so that a $\beta$-silyl
group stabilizes a positive charge so effectively that the course of a reaction involving cationic in-
termediates is often completely controlled. This is stabilization by σ donation.

The stabilization of the cation weakens the C–Si bond by the delocalization of electron density so
that the bond is more easily broken. Attack of a nucleophile, particularly a halogen or oxygen nucle-
ophile, on silicon removes it from the organic fragment and the net result is electrophilic substitu-
tion in which the silicon has been replaced by the electrophile.

This is useful for the synthesis of alkynyl ketones, which are difficult to make directly with con-
ventional organometallic reagents such as alkynyl–Li or –MgBr because they add to the ketone prod-
uct. Alkynyl silanes react with acid chlorides in the presence of Lewis acids, such as aluminium
chloride, to give the ketones.

Aryl silanes undergo ipso substitution with electrophiles
Exactly the same sort of mechanism accounts for the reactions of aryl silanes with electrophiles
under Friedel–Crafts conditions. Instead of the usual rules governing ortho, meta, and para substitu-
tion using the directing effects of the substituents, there is just one rule: the silyl group is replaced by
the electrophile at the same atom on the ring—this is known as ipso substitution. Actually, this selec-
tivity comes from the same principles as those used for ordinary aromatic substitution (Chapter 22):
the electrophile reacts to produce the most stable cation—in this case β to silicon. Cleavage of the
weakened C–Si bond by any nucleophile leads directly to the ipso product.

There is an alternative site of attack that would lead to a cation β to silicon, that is, meta to silicon.
This cation is not particularly stable because the vacant p orbital is orthogonal to the C–Si bond and
so cannot interact with it. This illustrates that it is more important to understand the origin of the
effect based on molecular orbitals rather than simply to remember the result.
This reactivity of aryl silanes is used to convert the stable phenyl dimethylsilyl group into a more reactive form for conversion into an alcohol by the ‘silyl Baeyer–Villiger’ reaction described above. Overall this makes the phenyl dimethylsilyl group a bulky masked equivalent for a hydroxyl group. This is useful because the silane will survive reaction conditions that the alcohol might not and the steric bulk allows stereoselective reactions. Ian Fleming at Cambridge has made extensive use of this group and the conversion into an alcohol by several reagents all of which depend on the ipso substitution of the phenyl silane. The reaction with bromine is typical. Bromobenzene is produced together with a silyl bromide that is activated towards subsequent oxidation.

The mechanism of electrophilic desilylation is the same as that for electrophilic aromatic substitution except that the proton is replaced by trimethylsilyl. The important difference is that the silicon stabilizes the intermediate cation, and hence the transition state leading to it, to a dramatic extent so that the rate is much faster. This is the first step with bromine.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me}_3\text{Si} & \rightarrow \text{Me}_3\text{Si} + \text{Br}^\bullet \\
\text{Me}_3\text{Si} & \rightarrow \text{Me}_3\text{Si} + \text{Br}^\bullet \\
\text{Me}_3\text{Si} & \rightarrow \text{Me}_3\text{Si} + \text{Br}^\bullet
\end{align*}
\]

The rest of the reaction sequence involves displacement of Br– by HOO–, addition of hydroxide, rearrangement, and hydrolysis. All these steps involve the silicon atom and the details are given a few pages back.

- Trimethylsilyl and other silyl groups stabilize a positive charge on a \( \beta \) carbon and are lost very easily. They can be thought of as very reactive protons or ‘super protons’.

Vinyl silanes can be prepared stereospecifically

Controlled reduction of alkynyl silanes produces the corresponding vinyl silanes and the method of reduction dictates the stereochemistry. Lindlar hydrogenation adds a molecule of hydrogen across the alkyne in a cis fashion to produce the Z-vinyl silane. Red Al reduction of a propargylic alcohol leads instead to the E-isomer.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Me}_3\text{Si} & \rightarrow \text{Me}_3\text{Si} + \text{Bu}^\bullet \\
\text{Me}_3\text{Si} & \rightarrow \text{Me}_3\text{Si} + \text{Bu}^\bullet
\end{align*}
\]

The mechanism of the second reaction is a trans hydroalumination helped by coordination of the alane to the triple bond and external nucleophilic attack. The regioselectivity of the hydroalumination is again determined by silicon: the electrophilic alane attacks the alkyne on the carbon bearing the silyl group (the ipso carbon).
Instead of adding two hydrogen atoms to an alkynyl silane we could add H and SiMe₃ to a simple alkyne by hydrosilylation (addition of hydrogen and silicon). This is a cis addition process catalysed by transition metals and leads to a trans(E-) vinyl silane. One of the best catalysts is chloroplatinic acid (H₂PtCl₆) as in this formation of the E-vinyl silane from phenylacetylene. In this case photochemical isomerization to the Z-isomer makes both available. Other than the need for catalysis, this reaction should remind you of the hydroboration reactions earlier in the chapter. The silicon atom is the electrophilic end of the Si–H bond and is transferred to the less substituted end of the alkyne.

Vinyl silanes can also be prepared from vinyl halides by metal–halogen exchange to form the corresponding vinylic organometallic and coupling with a silyl chloride. Notice that both of these reactions happen with retention of configuration. This route is successful for acyclic and cyclic compounds and even vinyl chlorides, which are much less reactive, can be used with the lithium containing some of the more powerfully reducing sodium as the metal.

Vinyl silanes can be prepared directly from ketones using the Shapiro reaction

Conversion of ketones into arylsulfonylhydrazones allows preparation of the corresponding vinyl lithiums by base-promoted decomposition of the hydrazone. This is known as the Shapiro reaction. Trapping with trimethylsilylchloride gives vinyl silanes, which can be difficult to prepare by other methods.

The key step is the elimination of the aryl sulfinate and this has been improved by using aryl hydrazones with bulky isopropyl groups on the 2-, 4-, and 6-positions of the aromatic ring to accelerate the elimination. The weakness of this approach to vinyl silanes is that the position of the double bond is governed by the initial site of deprotonation and so the usual problems of regioselective ketone enolate formation arise. However, in symmetrical cases or those where one side is favoured as a result of the structure of the ketone, the Shapiro reaction works well.
Vinyl silanes offer a regio- and stereoselective route to alkenes

Vinyl silanes react with electrophiles in a highly regioselective process in which the silicon is replaced by the electrophile at the ipso carbon atom. The stereochemistry of the vinyl silane is important because this exchange usually occurs with retention of geometry as well. Consider the reaction of the two vinyl silanes derived from phenyl acetylene with the simple electrophile D+. Deuterons are chemically very similar to protons but are, of course, distinguishable by NMR.

In principle, the alkenes could be protonated at either end but protonation next to silicon leads to the more stable cation β to silicon. In the vinyl silane the C–Si bond is orthogonal to the p orbitals of the π bond, but as the electrophile (D⁺ here) attacks the π bond, say from underneath, the Me₃Si group starts to move upwards. As it rotates, the angle between the C–Si bond and the remaining p orbital decreases from 90°. As the angle decreases, the interaction between the C–Si bond and the empty p orbital of the cation increases. There is every reason for the rotation to continue in the same direction and no reason for it to reverse. The diagram shows that, in the resulting cation, the deuterium atom is in the position formerly occupied by the Me₃Si group, trans to Ph. Loss of the Me₃Si group now gives retention of stereochemistry.

The intermediate cation has only a single bond and so rotation might be expected to lead to a mixture of geometrical isomers of the product but this is not observed. The bonding interaction between the C–Si bond and the empty p orbital means that rotation is restricted. This stabilization weakens the C–Si bond and the silyl group is quickly removed before any further rotation can occur. The stabilization is effective only if the C–Si bond is correctly aligned with the vacant orbital, which means it must be in the same plane—rather like a π bond. Here is the result for both E- and Z-isomers of the vinyl silane.

**E-vinyl silane**

**Z-vinyl silane**

We can illustrate the two alternative rotations with an energy diagram: one rotation leads directly to a stable conformation with the C–Si bonding orbital parallel to the vacant p orbital, while the other passes through a very-high-energy conformation that has the two orbitals orthogonal and so derives no stabilization from the presence of silicon. It is this energy barrier that effectively prevents rotation and leads to electrophilic substitution with retention of double bond geometry. The favoured rotation simply continues the rotation from starting material to cation.
It is unusual for silicon to be required in the final product of a synthetic sequence and the stereo-specific removal of silicon from vinyl silanes makes them useful reagents that can be regarded as rather stable vinyl organometallic reagents that will react with powerful electrophiles preserving the double bond location and geometry. Protodesilylation, as the process of replacing silicon with a proton is known, is one such important reaction. The halogens are also useful electrophiles while organic halides, particularly acid chlorides, in the presence of Lewis acids, form vinyl halides and unsaturated ketones of defined geometry.

Allyl silanes are readily available

If the silyl group is moved along the carbon chain by just one atom, an allyl silane results. Allyl silanes can be produced from allyl organometallic reagents but there is often a problem over which regio-isomer is produced and mixtures often result. Better methods control the position of the double bond using one of the methods introduced in Chapter 31. Two useful examples take advantage of the Wittig reaction and the Peterson olefination to construct the alkene linkage. The reagents are prepared from trimethylsilyl halides either by formation of the corresponding Grignard reagent or alkylation with a methylene Wittig reagent and deprotonation to form a new ylid. The Grignard reagent, with added cerium trichloride, adds twice to esters to give the corresponding tertiary alcohol which...
loses one of its Me₃Si groups in a Peterson elimination to reveal the remaining Me₃Si group as part of an allyl silane.

The Wittig reagent is made by alkylation of the simplest ylid with the same silicon reagent. Notice that the leaving group (iodide) is on the carbon next to silicon, not on the silicon itself. Anion formation occurs next to phosphorus, because Ph₃P⁺ is much more anion-stabilizing than Me₃Si. The ylid reacts with carbonyl compounds such as cyclohexanone in the usual way to produce the allyl silane with no ambiguity over which end of the allyl system is silylated.

Silicon exerts a surprisingly small steric effect

The Me₃Si group is, of course, large. But the C–Si bond is long and the Me₃Si group has a smaller steric effect than the Me₃Cl (t-butyl) group. For example, look at the last sequence: nucleophilic displacement at a carbon atom next to an Me₃Si group occurs normally whereas the infamous ‘neopentyl’ equivalent (see Chapter 17) reacts very slowly if at all. The Me₃Si group can get out of the way of the incoming nucleophile.

The carbon–silicon bond has two important effects on the adjacent alkene. The presence of a high-energy filled σ orbital of the correct symmetry to interact with the π system produces an alkene that is more reactive with electrophiles, due to the higher-energy HOMO, and the same σ orbital stabilizes the carbocation if attack occurs at the remote end of the alkene. This lowers the transition state for electrophilic addition and makes allyl silanes much more reactive than isolated alkenes.

** Allyl silanes are more reactive than vinyl silanes but also react through β-silyl cations**

Vinyl silanes have C–Si bonds orthogonal to the π orbitals of the alkene—the C–Si bond is in the nodal plane of the π bond—so there can be no interaction between the C–Si bond and the π bond. Allyl silanes, by contrast, have C–Si bonds that can be, and normally are, parallel to the π orbitals of the π bond so that interaction is possible.

The evidence that such interaction does occur is that allyl silanes are more reactive than vinyl silanes as a result of the increased energy of the HOMO due to the interaction of the π bond with the C–Si bond. Conversely, vinyl silanes are thermodynamically more stable than the allyl isomers by
about 8 kJ mol\(^{-1}\). This is evident from the acetylation of a compound having both vinyl silane and allyl silane functional groups. It reacts exclusively as an allyl silane, shown in black, with double bond migration to produce two double bond isomers (cis and trans cyclononenes) of the vinyl silane product. The vinylic silicon is not involved as the C–Si bond is orthogonal to the π system throughout.

Allyl silanes react with electrophiles with even greater regioselectivity than that of vinyl silanes. The cation β to the silyl group is again formed but there are two important differences. Most obviously, the electrophile attacks at the other end of the allylic system and there is no rotation necessary as the C–Si bond is already in a position to overlap efficiently with the intermediate cation. Electrophilic attack occurs on the face of the alkene anti to the silyl group. The process is terminated by loss of silicon in the usual way to regenerate an alkene.

Molecular orbitals demonstrate the smooth transition from the allyl silane, which has a π bond and a C–Si σ bond, to the allylic product with a new π bond and a new σ bond to the electrophile. The intermediate cation is mainly stabilized by σ donation from the C–Si bond into the vacant p orbital but it has other σ-donating groups (C–H, C–C, and C–E) that also help. The overall process is electrophilic substitution with allylic rearrangement. Both the site of attachment of the electrophile and the position of the new double bond are dictated by the silicon.

Allyl silanes react with a wide variety of electrophiles, rather like the ones that react with silyl enol ethers, provided they are activated, usually by a Lewis acid. Titanium tetrachloride is widely used but other successful Lewis acids include boron trifluoride, aluminium chloride, and trimethylsilyl triflate. Electrophiles include the humble proton generated from acetic acid. The regiocontrol is complete. No reaction is observed at the other end of the allylic system. All our examples are on the allyl silane we prepared earlier in the chapter.

The first reaction is the general reaction with electrophiles and the second shows that even reaction with a proton occurs at the other end of the allyl system with movement of the double bond.
Other electrophiles include acylium ions produced from acid chlorides, carbocations from tertiary halides or secondary benzylic halides, activated enones, and epoxides all in the presence of Lewis acid. In each case the new bond is highlighted in black.

Vinyl and aryl silanes react with electrophiles at the same (ipso or α) atom occupied by silicon. Allyl silanes react at the end of the alkene furthest from silicon (γ). In both cases a β-silyl cation is an intermediate.

In enantiomerically pure systems one enantiomer of the allyl silane gives one enantiomer of the product. The stereogenic centre next to silicon disappears and a new one appears at the other end of the alkene. This is a consequence of the molecule reacting in a well defined conformation by a well defined mechanism. The conformation is controlled by allylic strain (Chapter 34) which compels the proton on the silyl-bearing stereogenic centre to eclipse the alkene in the reactive conformation and the electrophile attacks anti to silicon for both steric and stereoelectronic reasons.

In these examples of Lewis-acid-promoted alkylation with a t-butyl group, E- and Z-isomers both react highly stereoselectively to give enantiomeric products. The reactions are completely stereospecific.

Lewis acids promote couplings via oxonium ions

Allyl silanes will also attack carbonyl compounds when they are activated by coordination of the carbonyl oxygen atom to a Lewis acid. The Lewis acid, usually a metal halide such as TiCl₄ or ZnCl₂, activates the carbonyl compound by forming an oxonium ion with a metal–oxygen bond. The allyl silane attacks in the usual way and the β-silyl cation is desilylated with the halide ion. Hydrolysis of the metal alkoxide gives a homoallylic alcohol.

A closely related reactive oxonium ion can be prepared by Lewis-acid-catalysed breakdown of the corresponding acetal. Alternatively, especially if the acetal is at least partly a silyl acetal, the same oxonium ion can be produced in situ using yet more silicon in the form of TMSOTf as the Lewis acid catalyst. All these intermediate oxonium ions act as powerful electrophiles towards allyl silanes producing homoallylic alcohols or ethers.
The regiocontrol that results from using an allyl silane to direct the final elimination is illustrated by this example of an intramolecular reaction on to an acetal promoted by tin tetrachloride. The same reaction can be run in the absence of silicon but the intermediate cation can then lose a range of protons to produce five different products!

Crotyl silanes are powerful reagents in stereoselective synthesis
Crotyl silanes offer the possibility of diastereoselectivity in reactions with aldehydes in the same way as the corresponding boranes. The mechanism is completely different because crotyl trialkylsilanes react via an open transition state as the silicon is not Lewis acidic enough to bind the carbonyl oxygen of the electrophile. Instead, the aldehyde has to be activated by an additional Lewis acid or by conversion into a reactive oxonium ion by one of the methods described above. The stereoelectronic demands of the allylic silane system contribute to the success of this transformation. Addition takes place in an SE2′ sense so that the electrophile is attached to the remote carbon on the opposite side of the π system to that originally occupied by silicon and the newly formed double bond is trans to minimize allylic strain.

Radicals, anions, and SN2 transition states stabilized by alicon
In Chapter 31 we discussed the Peterson reaction, which uses carbanions next to silicon, and the reagent Me₃SiCH₂Cl was used to make a Grignard reagent for this reaction. In fact, the chloride can
be made directly from Me₄Si (tetramethylsilane used as a zero point in NMR spectra) by photochemical chlorination. A chlorine atom removes a hydrogen atom from one of the methyl groups to leave a primary radical next to silicon, which reacts in turn with a chlorine molecule, and the radical chain continues.

We might suspect that silicon stabilizes the intermediate carbon-centred radical as primary radicals are not usually stable, but we can prove nothing as there is no alternative. This chloride is a very useful reagent. It readily reacts by the S₉2 mechanism, in spite of the large Me₃Si group, which makes us suspect that silicon encourages the S₉2 reaction at neighbouring carbon. It also readily forms organometallic reagents such as Grignard reagents and lithium derivatives and these were used in the Peterson reaction. This makes us suspect that the Me₃Si group stabilizes anions. Can all this really be true?

It is all true. Evidence that a silyl group stabilizes the S₉2 transition state comes from the reactions of the epoxides of vinyl silanes. These compounds can be made stereospecifically with one equivalent of a buffered peroxy-acid such as m-CPBA. Epoxidation is as easy as the epoxidation of simple alkenes. You will see in a moment why acid must be avoided.

These epoxides react stereospecifically with nucleophiles to give single diastereoisomers of adducts. If a carbon nucleophile is used (cuprates are best), it is obvious from the structure of the products that nucleophilic attack has occurred at the end of the epoxide next to silicon. This is obviously an S₉2 reaction because it is stereospecific: in any case an S₉1 reaction would have occurred at the other end of the epoxide through the β-silyl cation.

When we discussed the Peterson reaction in Chapter 31, we explained that each diastereoisomer of a β-silyl alcohol can eliminate, depending on the reaction conditions, to give either geometrical isomer of the alkene but we did not explain how these diastereoisomers could be made. This is how they are made. Elimination in base is a Wittig-style syn process but an anti elimination occurs in acid. Here are the reactions on one of the diastereoisomers we have just made.

If the nucleophile is water—as it might be in the work-up of the original epoxidation in acid solution—the product is a diol, which eliminates by the anti mechanism in acid solution to give initially an enol and then, under the same conditions, a carbonyl compound. All these steps are often carried
out in the one reaction to convert the epoxide to the carbonyl compound in one operation. Stereochemistry does not matter in this reaction.

Silicon-stabilized carbanions

We are going to concentrate on the most important of these properties: silyl groups stabilize carbanions. We can show that this is true rather easily. Here are two reactions of carbanions with aldehydes.

The first reagent has a choice: it can do either the Wittig or the Peterson reaction; it prefers the Peterson reaction. This merely tells us that nucleophilic attack at silicon is faster than nucleophilic attack at phosphorus. The carbanion part of the ylid is next to silicon but it could be nowhere else.

There is, however, a choice in the second reaction. There are six methyl groups on the two Me₃Si groups and one CH₂ between them. That makes eighteen methyl hydrogens and only two on the CH₂ group. Yet the base removes one of the two. It is better to have an anion stabilized by two silicon atoms. Silicon does stabilize a carbanion. There is, of course, no choice in the elimination step—O⁻ must attack one of the Me₃Si groups and the Peterson reaction must occur.

These reactions are also useful syntheses of vinyl phosphine oxides and of vinyl silanes. The stabilization of anions is weak—weaker than from phosphorus or sulfur—but still useful. The Wittig reagent used to make allyl silanes earlier in this chapter illustrates this point.

If you want to make an ‘anion’ stabilized by one Me₃Si group it is better to use an organolithium or organomagnesium compound made from a halide, the most important being the simplest as we have seen. But given just a little extra help—even an alkene—anions can be made with bases. So an allyl silane can give a lithium derivative (using s-BuLi as the very strong base) that reacts with electrophiles in the same position as do the allyl silanes themselves—the γ-position relative to the Me₃Si group. In this example the electrophile is a ketone and no Lewis acid is needed.

The product is a vinyl silane as the Me₃Si group is retained in this reaction of the anion. The reaction is stereoselective in favour of the E-alkene as might be expected. The alkene can be epoxidized
and the epoxide opened in the reaction we discussed earlier in the chapter. If methanol is used as the
nucleophile with BF₃ as the Lewis acid, cyclic acetics are formed.

Nucleophilic attack occurs next to silicon and Peterson elimination gives an enol ether that
cyclizes to the acetal under the acidic conditions.

The cyclic acetal is a protected form of the hydroxy-aldehyde and oxidation under acidic condi-
tions (CrO₃ in H₂SO₄) gives a good yield of the spirocyclic lactone. In the whole process from allyl
silane to lactone, the allyl silane is behaving as a d³ synthon or homoenoanolate.

Migration of silicon from carbon to oxygen

Much of silicon chemistry is dominated by the strong Si–O bond and this leads to some surprising
reactions. When compounds with an OH and a silyl group on the same carbon atom are treated with
a catalytic amount of base, the silyl group migrates from carbon to oxygen. That all sounds reason-
able until you realize that it must go through a three-membered ring. It is, in effect, a nucleophilic
substitution at silicon. The reaction is known as the Brook rearrangement.

No such reaction could occur at a carbon centre (it would be impossible by Baldwin’s rules; see
Chapter 42), and the difference is that nucleophilic substitution at silicon goes through a pentacova-
 lent intermediate so that a linear arrangement of nucleophile and leaving group is not required. The
product anion is less stable than the oxyanion formed at the start of the reaction but removal of a
proton from another molecule of starting material makes the product, with its Si–O bond, more sta-
ble than the starting material. The central reaction should really be shown as an equilibrium going to
the right with catalytic base and to the left with a full equivalent of base.
By itself, the Brook rearrangement is not very useful but, if the carbanion can do something else other than just get protonated, something useful may happen. We have seen what happens to the epoxides of vinyl silanes. Dihydroxylation of the same alkenes also gives interesting chemistry when the diols are treated with base.

![Chemical structure of Brook rearrangement and silyl enol ether]

The overall reaction is the insertion of an oxygen atom between the silicon and the alkene and the product is a useful silyl enol ether (Chapter 21). The Brook rearrangement takes place first but the carbanion has a leaving group (OH) on the neighbouring carbon atom so an E1cB reaction (Chapter 19) occurs next.

![Chemical structure of Brook rearrangement, Peterson reaction, and 'sila-Pummerer' rearrangement]

It is remarkable that the other OH group does not lose a proton because a Peterson reaction could then follow. Perhaps the three-membered cyclic intermediate is formed more easily than the four-membered ring. This would be the case if carbon were the electrophilic atom. Rearrangements from carbon to oxygen through four-membered rings do occur: examples are the ‘sila-Pummerer’ rearrangement and the rather annoying tendency of α-silyl carbonyl compounds to rearrange to silyl enol ethers. The *sila-Pummerer rearrangement* is like the normal Pummerer rearrangement (discussed in Chapter 46) except that a silyl group rather than a proton migrates to oxygen.

We could no doubt find uses for α-silyl carbonyl compounds if they did not rearrange with C to O silyl migration simply on heating. The mechanism is similar to that of the sila-Pummerer rearrangement except that the nucleophile that attacks the silicon atom via a four-membered ring intermediate is carbonyl oxygen rather than sulfoxide oxygen. The intermediate might remind you of the intermediate in the Wittig reaction: a C–Si or C–P bond is sacrificed in both cases in favour of an Si–O or a P–O bond.

These last examples show that there is some similarity between silicon and sulfur or phosphorus. Now we shall see similarities with an element further down group IV—tin.

**Organotin compounds**

Tin is quite correctly regarded as a metal but in the +4 oxidation state it forms perfectly stable organoic compounds, known as stannanes, many of which are available commercially. The tin atom is rather large, which means that it forms long covalent bonds that are easily polarized. The table of important bond lengths of the group IV (14) elements C, Si, and Sn shows that all bonds to carbon are shorter than the corresponding ones to silicon, which are in turn shorter and, as a result, stronger than those to tin.
Organotin chemistry exploits the weakness of C–Sn bonds to deliver whatever is attached to the tin to another reagent. You have already seen (Chapter 39) tributyltin hydride used as a radical reducing agent because of the ease with which the Sn–H bond can be broken. Carbon substituents can be transferred by a radical mechanism too but organotins transfer the organic group intact by polar mechanisms as well. This reactivity is closest to that of a conventional organometallic reagent but the organotins are stable distillable liquids that can be stored unlike Grignard reagents. You may be concerned about the fact that there are four substituents on the central tin atom and, in principle, all of them could be transferred. In practice, alkyl groups transfer only very slowly indeed so that the tributylstannyl group (Bu₃Sn–), the most popular tin-based functional group, is generally transferred intact during reactions. The exception to this is tetramethyltin which has only methyl groups and therefore must transfer one of them. Methyl ketones may be made from tetramethyltin and acid chlorides. Contrast this with the inert NMR reference tetramethylsilane!

Organotin compounds are like reactive organosilicons

Organotin chemistry is useful because the familiar patterns of organosilicon chemistry are followed but the reactions proceed more easily because the bonds to tin are weaker and tin is more electropositive than silicon. Thus vinyl, allyl, and aryl stannanes react with electrophiles in exactly the same manner as their silicon counterparts but at a faster rate.

Organostannanes are more reactive than organosilanes and use the same mechanisms.

The preparation of organostannanes is also similar to that of organosilanes. Organometallic reagents react with organotin electrophiles such as the trialkyl halides or bis(tributyltin) oxide. This is one method for the preparation of alkyl tributyltin using allyl Grignard and bis(tributyltin) oxide. Alternatively, the polarity can be reversed and a stannyl lithium, generated by deprotonation of the hydride or reductive cleavage of Me₃Sn–SnMe₃ with lithium metal, will add to organic electrophiles such as alkyl halides and conjugate acceptors. The first reaction is S_N2 at tin (probably with a 5-valent tin anion as intermediate) and the second is S_N2 at carbon.

Direct hydrostannylation of an alkyne with a tin hydride can be radical-initiated in the way we saw in Chapter 39. The product of kinetic control is the Z-isomer but, if there is excess tin hydride or enough radicals are present, isomerization into the more stable E-isomer occurs. The regiocontrol of this process is good with terminal alkynes.
Addition of a tributyltin radical to the alkyne gives the more substituted linear (sp) vinyl radical (see Chapter 39). Addition of a hydrogen atom from another molecule of Bu₃SnH occurs preferentially from the less hindered side (the Bu₃Sn group already in the molecule is in the plane of the p orbital containing the unpaired electron) to give the Z-vinyl stannane. If there is more Bu₃SnH around, reversible addition of Bu₃Sn• radicals to either end of the vinyl stannane equilibrates it to the more stable E-isomer.

Addition of a tributyltin radical to the alkyne gives the more substituted linear (sp) vinyl radical (see Chapter 39). Addition of a hydrogen atom from another molecule of Bu₃SnH occurs preferentially from the less hindered side (the Bu₃Sn group already in the molecule is in the plane of the p orbital containing the unpaired electron) to give the Z-vinyl stannane. If there is more Bu₃SnH around, reversible addition of Bu₃Sn• radicals to either end of the vinyl stannane equilibrates it to the more stable E-isomer.

**Tin–lithium exchange is rapid**

Organotin compounds are usually simply not reactive enough to be useful nucleophiles. Conversion into the corresponding organolithiums provides a much more reactive reagent. This is achieved in the same way as lithium–halogen exchange described in Chapter 9 and has essentially the same mechanism. The principle is simple. A very reactive nucleophile such as butyl lithium reacts at the tin and expels an organolithium species. The process is thermodynamically controlled, so the more stable the organolithium, the more likely it is to form. By having three of the groups on tin as butyl and adding another butyl from the organolithium, the choice is between the re-formation of butyl lithium or creation of an organolithium from the fourth substituent. If this is a vinyl, allyl, aryl, or alkynyl group this emerges as the most stable organolithium and is produced without any lithium halide present. The by-product is tetrabutyltin which is nonpolar and unreactive and can usually be separated by chromatography from the product of the reaction.

**Crotyl stannanes react with good stereochemical control**

Crotyl stannanes are important reagents in organic synthesis because they can be prepared with control over the double bond geometry and will tolerate the presence of additional functional groups. This allows stereoselective synthesis of functionalized acyclic molecules. The control arises from the well-defined transition states for the crotylation reaction. Tin is more electropositive than silicon and can accept a lone pair of electrons in a purely thermal reaction with no added Lewis acid. The carbonyl group of the aldehyde can coordinate to the tin and lead, through a cyclic transition state, to give *anti* products from *E*-crotyl tin reagents and *syn* products from the *Z*-crotyl isomer.
Tin–lithium exchange in action

Many organolithium compounds are useful reagents and no doubt many more would be if only they could be made. Tin chemistry allows us to make organolithium compounds that cannot be made by direct lithiation. An excellent example is a lithium derivative with an oxygen atom on the same carbon. The hydrogen atom is not particularly acidic and cannot be removed by BuLi, while the bromide is unstable and will not survive treatment with BuLi.

However, the problem should be easily solved with tin chemistry. The idea is to add a tributyltin lithium reagent to the aldehyde, mask the alkoxide formed, and then exchange the tributyl tin group for lithium.

First, the Bu₃Sn–Li reagent has to be made. This can be done in two ways. Treatment of any tin compound with BuLi results in nucleophilic attack at tin but LDA is much less nucleophilic and can be used to remove a proton from tributyltin hydride. Otherwise, we can accept that BuLi will always attack tin and provide two tin atoms so that nucleophilic attack on one expels the other as the lithium derivative.

These THF solutions of Bu₃Sn–Li are stable only at low temperatures so the aldehyde must be added immediately. The lithium alkoxide adduct can be neutralized and the alcohol isolated but it is also unstable and must be quenched immediately with an alkyl halide. The preferred one is ethoxyethyl chloride, which reacts with base catalysis.

These protected hydroxystannanes are stable compounds and can even be distilled. Treatment with BuLi and an electrophile such as an aldehyde or ketone gives the product from addition of the
organolithium derivative to the carbonyl group. Tin–lithium exchange is rapid even at low temperature and no products from addition of BuLi to the carbonyl group are seen.

The most surprising thing about these reagents, invented and exploited by W. Clark Still at Columbia University, is that they can be prepared in stable enantiomerically pure forms and that the stereochemistry is preserved through exchange with lithium and reaction with electrophiles. It is very unusual for organolithium compounds to be configurationally stable. Still first quenched the Bu₃SnLi adducts with one enantiomer of an acid chloride and resolved by separating the diastereoisomers.

The ester was cleaved by reduction with DIBAL (i-Bu₂AlH) and an achiral version of the normal protecting group put in place. It would obviously be silly to create unnecessary diastereomeric mixtures in these reactions. Then the tin could be exchanged first with lithium and then with an electrophile, even an alkyl halide, with retention of configuration and without loss of enantiomeric purity. The intermediate organolithium compound must have had a stable configuration.

The exchange of tin for lithium or other metals is probably the most valuable job it does. Reagents such as BuLi attack tin or boron directly rather than removing a proton. Silicon is not usually attacked in this way and proton removal is more common. In the next chapter we shall see how transition metals open up a treasure chest of more exotic reactions for which the reactions in this chapter are a preparation.

Problems

1. The Hammett $\rho$ value for the following reaction is –4.8. Explain this in terms of a mechanism. If the reaction were carried out in deuterated solvent, would the rate change and would there be any deuterium incorporation into the product? What is the silicon-containing product?

2. Identify the intermediates in this reaction sequence and draw mechanisms for the reactions, explaining the special role of the Me₃Si group.

3. The synthesis of a compound used in a problem in Chapter 38 (fragmentation) is given below. Give mechanisms for the reactions explaining the role of silicon.

4. Give mechanisms for the following reactions, drawing structures for all the intermediates including stereochemistry. How would the reaction with Bu₃SnH have to be done?
5. Explain the following reactions. In particular, explain the role of tin and why it is necessary and discuss the stereochemistry.

![Chemical structures](image)

6. Explain the stereochemistry and mechanism of this hydroboration–carbonylation sequence.

![Chemical structures](image)

7. Give mechanisms for these reactions explaining: (a) the regio- and stereoselectivity of the hydroboration; (b) why such an odd method was used to close the lactone ring.

![Chemical structures](image)

8. Revision content. Give mechanisms for these reactions, commenting on the role of silicon and the stereochemistry of the cyclization. The LiAlH₄ simply reduces the ketone to the corresponding alcohol. If you have trouble with the Hg(II)-catalysed step, there is help in Chapter 36.

![Chemical structures](image)

9. Give mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the role of silicon. Why is this type of lactone difficult to make by ordinary acid- or base-catalysed reactions?

![Chemical structures](image)

10. Revision of Chapters 38 and 46. How would you prepare the starting material for these reactions? Give mechanisms for the various steps. Why are these sequences useful?

![Chemical structures](image)

11. How would you carry out the first step in this sequence? Give a mechanism for the second step and suggest an explanation for the stereochemistry. You may find that a Newman projection (Chapters 32 and 33) helps.

![Chemical structures](image)

12. Revision of Chapter 36. Give a mechanism for this reaction and explain why it goes in this direction.

![Chemical structures](image)

13. The Nazarov cyclization (Chapter 36) normally gives a cyclopentenone with the alkene in the more substituted position. That can be altered by the following sequence. Give a mechanism for the reaction and explain why the silicon makes all the difference.

![Chemical structures](image)
This is rather a long problem but it gives you the chance to see an advanced piece of chemistry involving several elements—P, Si, Sn, Mg, B, Ni, Cr, Os, and Li—and it revises material from Chapters 23, 33, and 45 at least. It starts with the synthesis of this phosphorus compound: what is the mechanism and selectivity?

Next, reaction with a silicon-substituted Grignard reagent in the presence of Ni(II) gives an allyl silane. What kind of reaction is this, what was the role of phosphorus, and why was a metal other than sodium added? (You know nothing specific about Ni as yet but you should see the comparison with another metal. Consult Chapter 23 if you need help.)

Asymmetric dihydroxylation (Chapter 45) is straightforward though you might like to comment on the chemoselectivity. The diol is converted into the epoxide and you should explain the regio- and chemoselectivity of this step. The next step is perhaps the most interesting: what is the mechanism of the cyclization, what is the role of silicon, and how is the stereochemistry controlled?

Reaction of this ketone with a stannyl-lithium reagent gives one diastereoisomer of a bridged lactone. Again, give a mechanism for this step and explain the stereochemistry. Make a good conformational drawing of the lactone.

Treatment of the tin compound with MeLi and a complex aldehyde represented as RCHO gave an adduct that was used in the synthesis of some compounds related to Taxol. What is the mechanism of the reaction, and why is tin necessary?
Organometallic chemistry

Connections

Building on:
- Conjugate addition ch10 & ch23
- Nucleophilic substitution at saturated carbon ch17
- Controlling stereochemistry ch16, ch33, & ch34
- \( S_N \) and \( S_N^2 \) ch23
- Oxidation and reduction ch24
- Cycloadditions ch35
- Rearrangements ch36–ch37
- Radicals and carbenes ch39–ch40
- Aromatic heterocycles ch43–ch44
- Asymmetric synthesis ch45
- Chemistry of B, Si, and Sn ch47

Arriving at:
- Transition metals form organic compounds
- There are \( \sigma \)- and \( \pi \)-complexes given ‘\( \eta \)’ numbers
- The bonding is described with the usual orbitals
- Most stable complexes have 18 valency electrons
- Metals catalyse ‘impossible’ reactions
- Oxidative insertion, reductive elimination, and ligand migration from metal to carbon are key steps
- Carbon monoxide inserts into metal–carbon bonds
- Palladium is the most important metal
- C–C, C–O, and C–N bonds can be made with Pd catalysis
- Cross-coupling of two ligands is common
- Allyl cation complexes are useful electrophiles

Looking forward to:
- The chemistry of life, especially nucleic acids ch49
- Steroids ch51
- Polymerization ch52

Transition metals extend the range of organic reactions

Some of the most exciting reactions in organic chemistry are based on transition metals. How about these two for example? The first is the Heck reaction, which allows nucleophilic addition to an un-activated alkene. Catalytic palladium (Pd) is needed to make the reaction go. The second, the Pauson–Khand reaction, is a special method of making five-membered rings from three components: an alkene, an alkyne, and carbon monoxide (CO). It requires cobalt (Co). Neither of these reactions is possible without the metal.

Reagents and complexes containing transition metals are important in modern organic synthesis because they allow apparently impossible reactions to occur easily. This chemistry com-
plements traditional functional-group-based chemistry and significantly broadens the scope of organic chemistry. This chapter introduces the concepts of metal–ligand interaction, describes the most important reactions that can occur while ligands are bound to the metal, and demonstrates the power of organometallic chemistry in synthesis. Many industries now use transition-metal-catalysed reactions routinely so it is important that you have a basic grounding in what they do.

There is a contradiction in what is required of a metal complex for useful synthetic behaviour. Initially, it is useful to have a stable complex that will have a significant lifetime enabling study and, ideally, storage but, once in the reaction vessel, stability is actually a disadvantage as it implies slow reactivity. An ideal catalyst is a complex that is stable in the resting state, for storage, but quickly becomes activated in solution, perhaps by loss of a ligand, allowing interaction with the substrate. Fortunately, there is a simple guide to the stability of transition metal complexes. If a complex satisfies the 18-electron rule for a stable metal complex it means that the metal at the centre of the complex has the noble gas configuration of 18 electrons in the valence shells. The total of 18 is achieved by combining the electrons that the metal already possesses with those donated by the coordinating ligands. The requirement for 18 electrons comes from the need to fill one ‘s’ orbital, five ‘d’ orbitals, and three ‘p’ orbitals with two electrons in each. This table gives you the number of valence electrons each metal starts with before it has acquired any ligands. Notice that the ‘new’ group numbers 1–18 give you the answer without any calculation. The most important are highlighted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group Number of valence electrons</th>
<th>IVB (4)</th>
<th>VB (5)</th>
<th>VIB (6)</th>
<th>VIIB (7)</th>
<th>VIIIB (8, 9, and 10)</th>
<th>1A (11)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3d</td>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>Co</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4d</td>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>Nb</td>
<td>Mo</td>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>Ru</td>
<td>Rh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5d</td>
<td>Hf</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>Re</td>
<td>Os</td>
<td>Ir</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Metals to the left-hand side of this list obviously need many more electrons to make up the magic 18. Chromium, for example, forms stable complexes with a benzene ring, giving it six electrons, and three molecules of carbon monoxide, giving it two each: 6 + 6 + 2 + 2 + 2 + 2 = 18. Palladium is happy with just four triphenylphosphines (Ph₃P:) giving it two each: 10 + 2 + 2 + 2 + 2 = 18.

![a 16-electron Pd(II) complex](image)

You may already know from your inorganic studies that there are exceptions to the 18-electron rule including complexes of Ti, Zr, Ni, Pd, and Pt, which all form stable 16-electron complexes. An important 16-electron Pd(II) complex with two chlorides and two acetonitriles (MeCN) as ligands appears in the margin. The so-called platinum metals Ni, Pd, and Pt are extremely important in catalytic processes, as you will see later on. The stable 16-electron configuration results from a high-energy vacant orbital caused by the complex adopting a square planar geometry. The benefit of this vacant orbital is that it is a site for other ligands in catalytic reactions.

**Ligands can be attached in many different ways**

Transition metals can have a number of ligands attached to them and each ligand can be attached in more than one place. This affects the reactivity of the ligand and the metal because each additional point of attachment means the donation of more electrons. We usually show the number of atoms involved in bonding to the metal by the **hapto number** η. A simple Grignard reagent is η¹ (pronounced ‘eta-one’) as the magnesium is attached only to one carbon atom. A metal–alkene complex is η² because both carbon atoms of the alkene are equally involved in bonding to the metal. In these cases the η designation is not very useful as there are no alternatives and it is usually omitted.
The bonding in these two complexes is very different. In the first there is a simple \( \sigma \) bond between the metal and the alkyl group as in a Grignard reagent \( \text{R–MgBr} \) and this type of complex is called a \( \sigma \) complex. In the alkene complex, bonding is to the p orbitals only. There are no \( \sigma \) bonds to the metal, which sits in the middle of the \( \pi \) bond in between the two p orbitals. This type of complex is called a \( \pi \) complex.

These labels are useful where there is a choice of type of bonding as with allylic ligands. The metal can either form a \( \sigma \) bond to a single carbon (hence \( \eta^1 \)), or form a \( \pi \) complex with the p orbitals of all three carbons of the allyl system and this would be \( \eta^3 \). If the \( \pi \) complex is made from an allyl cation, the ligand has two electrons, but it has four if it is made from an allyl anion.

Similarly, cyclcopentadienyl anion can act as a \( \sigma \) ligand (\( \eta^1 \)), an allyl ligand (\( \eta^3 \)), or, most usually, as a cyclopentadienyl ligand (\( \eta^5 \)). The distinction is very important for electron counting as these three different situations contribute 2, 4, or 6 electrons, respectively, to the complex.

Neutral ligands can also bond in a variety of ways. Cyclooctatetraene can act as an alkene (\( \eta^2 \)), a diene (\( \eta^4 \)), a triene (\( \eta^6 \)), or a tetaene (\( \eta^8 \)), and the reactivity of the ligand changes accordingly. These are all \( \pi \) complexes with the metal above or below the black portion of the ring and with the thick bond to the metal at right angles to the alkene plane.

To determine the number of electrons around the transition metal in a complex the valence electrons from the metal ion are added to those contributed by all the ligands. The numbers of electrons donated by various classes of ligands are summarized in the table. Anions such as halides, cyanide, alkoxide, hydride, and alkyl donate two electrons, as do neutral ligands with a lone pair such as phosphines, amines, ethers, sulfides, carbon monoxide, nitriles, and isonitriles. Unsaturated ligands can contribute as many as eight electrons and can be neutral or negatively charged. If the overall total is eighteen, then the complex is likely to be stable.
Electron counting helps to explain the stability of metal complexes

Counting electrons in most complexes is simple if you use the table of ligand characteristics above and the table on p. 000. Tetrakistriphenylphosphine palladium(0) is an important catalyst as you will see later in the chapter. Each neutral phosphine donates two electrons making a total of eight and palladium still has its full complement of ten valence electrons as it is in the zero oxidation state. Overall, the complex has a total of eighteen electrons and is a stable complex. In the diagrams that follow, the formal charges are highlighted in green and the numbers of electrons contributed shown in black.

All of the different classes of ligands listed in the table can be treated in this way. The cyclopentadienyl ligands contribute six electrons each and have a formal negative charge, shown in green, which means that the iron in ferrocene is in the +II oxidation state and will have six valence electrons left. The total for the complex is again eighteen and ferrocene is an extremely stable complex.

The useful complex (MeCN)2PdCl2 has palladium in the +2 oxidation state because of its two chlorine atoms and the number of electrons is 8 for the Pd(II) oxidation state and another two each from the four ligands making 16 in all. This complex does not fulfil the 18-electron rule and is reactive. You would have got the same answer if you had counted ten for the palladium, two each for the nitriles, and one each for the chlorines, but this is not so realistic.
Transition metal complexes exhibit special bonding

The majority of ligands have a lone pair of electrons in a filled sp\(^n\) type orbital that can overlap with a vacant metal 'dsp' orbital, derived from the vacant d, p, and s orbitals of the metal, to form a conventional two-electron two-centre \(\sigma\) bond. Ligands of this type increase the electron density on the central metal atom. This is the sort of bond that used to be called 'dative covalent' and represented by an arrow. Nowadays it is more common to represent all bonding to metals of whatever kind by simple lines.

![Diagram of sigma complex]

\[
\text{M} \quad \ldots \quad \text{L} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{M} \quad \text{L}
\]

vacant "dsp" orbital  filled lone pair on ligand  \(\sigma\) complex

A bonding interaction is also possible between any filled d orbitals on the metal and vacant ligand orbitals of appropriate symmetry such as \(\pi^*\) orbitals. This leads to a reduction of electron density on the metal and is known as back-bonding. An example would be a complex with carbon monoxide. Many metals form these complexes and they are known as metal carbonyls. The ligand (CO) donates the lone pair on carbon into an empty orbital on the metal while the metal donates electrons into the low-energy \(\pi^*\) orbital of CO. Direct evidence for this back-bonding is an increase in the C–O bond length and a lowering of the infrared stretching frequency from the population of the \(\pi^*\) orbital of the carbonyl.

![Diagram of back-bonding]

\[
\text{M} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{C} \\
\text{O}
\end{array} \\
\text{M} \quad \text{L} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{filled d orbital} \\
\text{empty } \pi^* \text{ on ligand}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{empty } \pi^* \text{ on ligand} \\
\text{filled d orbital}
\end{array}
\]

When an unsaturated ligand such as an alkene approaches the metal sideways to form a \(\pi\) complex, similar interactions lead to bonding. The filled \(\pi\) orbitals of the ligand bond to empty d orbitals of the metal, while filled d orbitals on the metal bond to the empty \(\pi^*\) orbitals of the ligand. The result is a \(\pi\) complex with the metal–alkene bond perpendicular to the plane of the alkene. The bond has both \(\sigma\) and \(\pi\) character.

![Diagram of pi complex]

\[
\text{M} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{C} \\
\text{O}
\end{array} \\
\text{M} \quad \text{L} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{filled metal d orbitals} \\
\text{empty olefin } \pi^* \text{ orbitals}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{filled olefin } \pi \text{ orbital acts as } \sigma \text{ donor} \\
\text{vacant metal orbital}
\end{array}
\]

Coordination to a metal by any of these bonding methods changes the reactivity of the ligands dramatically and this is exploited in the organometallic chemistry we will be discussing in the rest of the chapter. You do not need to understand all the bonding properties of metal complexes but you need to be able to count electrons, to recognize both \(\sigma\) and \(\pi\) complexes, and to realize that complexes show a balance between electron donation and electron withdrawal by the metal.

**Oxidative addition inserts metal atoms into single bonds**

Potential ligands that do not have a lone pair or filled \(\pi\) type orbital are still able to interact with transition metal complexes but only by breaking a \(\sigma\) bond. This is the first step in a wide variety of processes and is described as oxidative addition because the formal oxidation state of the transition metal is raised by two, for example, M(0) to M(II), in the process. This is the result of having two extra ligands bearing a formal negative charge. You have seen this process in the formation of Grignard reagents (Chapter 9).
The number of coordinated ligands also increases by two so the starting complex is usually in low oxidation state (0 or 1; the diagram shows 0) and coordinatively unsaturated, that is, it has an empty site for a ligand and, say, only 16 electrons, like (MeCN)_2PdCl_2, whereas the product is usually coordinatively saturated, that is, it cannot accept another ligand unless it loses one first.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{M}(0) + X & \xrightarrow{\text{oxidative addition}} \text{M}(II) + X - Y \\
\text{M}(II) \quad \text{nonpolar} & \quad \text{M}(I) \quad \text{electrophilic}
\end{align*}
\]

Introduces new organic ligands on to metal

Oxidative addition occurs for a number of useful neutral species including hydrogen, carbon–hydrogen bonds, and silanes as well as polarized bonds containing at least one electronegative atom. The resulting species with metal–ligand bonds allow useful chemical transformations to occur. Important examples include the oxidative addition of Pd(0) to aryl iodides and the activation of Wilkinson’s catalyst for hydrogenation in solution by oxidative addition to a hydrogen molecule.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{S} & \quad \text{Br} \quad \text{Pd(PPh}_3)_4 \quad \text{Pd}(0) \\
\text{S} & \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\
\text{Pd}(II) & \quad \text{Pd}(III) \\
\text{Ph}_3\text{P} & \quad \text{Ph}_3\text{P} \quad \text{Ph}_3\text{P} \quad \text{Rh}(III) \quad \text{Rh}(II)
\end{align*}
\]

Vaska’s complex

There are a number of possible mechanisms for oxidative addition and the precise one followed depends on the nature of the reacting partners. Vaska’s complex [Ir(PPh_3)_2COCl] has been extensively studied and it reacts differently with hydrogen and methyl iodide. Hydrogen is added in a cis fashion, consistent with concerted formation of the two new iridium–hydrogen bonds. The 16e, d^8, Ir(I) complex becomes a new 18e, d^6, Ir(III) species. With methyl iodide the kinetic product is that of trans addition, which is geometrically impossible from a concerted process. Instead, an S_n2-like mechanism is followed involving nucleophilic displacement of iodide followed by ionic recombination.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{trans - addition} \\
\text{Ir(III)}; \quad \text{d}^6 & \quad \text{18 e complex} \\
\text{Ir(I)}; \quad \text{d}^8 & \quad 16 \text{e complex}
\end{align*}
\]

Reductive elimination removes metal atoms and forms new single bonds

If we want to use organometallic chemistry to make organic compounds other than those containing metals, we must be able to remove the ligands from the coordination sphere of the metal at the end of the reaction. Neutral organic species such as alkenes, phosphines, and carbon monoxide can simply dissociate in the presence of other suitable ligands but those that are bound to the metal with shared electrons require a more active process. Fortunately, most reactions that occur around a transition metal are reversible and so the reverse of oxidative addition, known as reductive elimination, provides a simple route for the release of neutral organic products from a complex. Our general reaction shows M(II) going to M(0) releasing X–Y. These two ligands were separate in the complex but are bound together in the product. A new X–Y σ bond has been formed.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{M}(II) \quad \text{reductive elimination} \\
\text{Y} & \quad \text{M}(0) \quad \text{X} \quad \text{Y}
\end{align*}
\]

Removes organic ligands from metal producing new organic product
The ligands to be eliminated must be cis to one another for reductive elimination to occur. This is because the process is concerted. Two examples from palladium chemistry make this point clear. Warming in DMSO causes ethane production from the first palladium complex because the two methyl groups are cis in the square planar complex. The more elaborate second bisphosphine forces the two methyl groups to be trans and reductive elimination does not occur under the same conditions. Reductive elimination is one of the most important methods for the removal of a transition metal from a reaction sequence leaving a neutral organic product.

In fact, no one wants to make ethane that way (if at all) but many other pairs of ligands can be coupled by reductive elimination. We will see many examples as the chapter develops but here is an indole synthesis that depends on a reductive elimination at palladium as a last step. In the starting material, palladium has two normal σ bonds and is Pd(II). The two substituents bond together to form the indole ring and a Pd(0) species is eliminated. Notice the use of ‘L’ to mean an undefined ligand of the phosphine sort.

Migratory insertion builds ligand structure

Two ligands can also react together to produce a new complex that still has the composite ligand attached to the metal ready for further modification. This process involves migration of one of the ligands from the metal to the other ligand and insertion of one of the ligands into the other metal–ligand bond and is known as migratory insertion. The insertion process is reversible and, as the metal effectively loses a ligand in the process, the overall insertion may be driven by the addition of extra external ligands (L) to produce a coordinatively saturated complex. As with reductive elimination, a cis arrangement of the ligands is required and the migrating group (X) retains its stereochemistry (if any) during the migration.

Migratory insertion is the principal way of building up the chain of a ligand before elimination. The group to be inserted must be unsaturated in order to accommodate the additional bonds and common examples include carbon monoxide, alkenes, and alkynes producing metal–acyl, metal–alkyl, and metal–alkenyl complexes, respectively. In each case the insertion is driven by additional external ligands, which may be an increased pressure of carbon monoxide in the case of carbonylation or simply excess phosphine for alkene and alkyne insertions. In principle, the chain extension process can be repeated indefinitely to produce polymers by Ziegler–Natta polymerization, which is described in Chapter 52.
A good example of the carbonylation process is the reaction of the tetracarbonyl ferrate dianion [Fe(CO)\(_4\)\(^{2-}\)] with alkyl halides. This reagent is made by dissolving metal reduction of the 18-electron Fe(0) compound Fe(CO)\(_5\). Addition of two electrons would give an unstable 20-electron species but the loss of one of the ligands with its two electrons restores the stable 18-electron structure.

```
Fe(CO)\(_5\) → Fe(CO)\(_4\) + \(\text{Na/ Mg/ Hg + 2 electrons}\) → Fe(CO)\(_4\)\(^{2-}\) → Fe(CO)\(_4\)\(^{2-}\) → Fe(CO)\(_4\) + \(\text{CO - 2 electrons}\) → Fe(CO)\(_4\)\(^{2-}\)
```

This iron anion is a good soft nucleophile for alkyl halides and can be used twice over to produce first a monoanion with one alkyl group and then a neutral complex with two alkyl groups and four CO ligands. Each of these complexes has 18 electrons as the electrons represented by the negative charges are retained by the iron to form the new Fe–C bonds. If extra CO is added by increasing the pressure, CO inserts into one Fe–C bond to form an iron acyl complex. Finally, reductive elimination couples the acyl group to the other alkyl group in a conceptually simple ketone synthesis. It does not matter which Fe–C bond accepts the CO molecule; the same unsymmetrical ketone is produced at the end.

Any good two-electron ligand will cause the CO insertion: Ph\(_3\)P is often used instead of an increased CO pressure. The phosphine adds to the iron and pushes out the poorest ligand (one of the alkyl groups) on to a CO ligand in a process of ligand migration. In simple form it looks like this though the phosphine addition and alkyl migration may be concerted to avoid the formation of a 20-electron complex as intermediate.

**Carbon monoxide incorporation extends the carbon chain**

Carbonylation (the addition of carbon monoxide to organic molecules) is an important industrial process as carbon monoxide is a convenient one-carbon feedstock and the resulting metal–acyl complexes can be converted into aldehydes, acids, and their derivatives. The OXO process is the hydroformylation of alkenes such as propene and uses two migratory insertions to make higher value aldehydes. Though a mixture is formed this is acceptable from very cheap starting materials.

A catalytic cycle (going clockwise from the top) shows the various stages of alkene coordination, hydrometallation to produce an alkyl metal species, coordination of carbon monoxide followed by insertion, and finally reductive cleavage with hydrogen to produce the metal–hydride intermediate,
which is then ready for another cycle. The steps leading to the other regioisomeric aldehyde and the ligands on the metal are omitted for clarity.

The mechanisms of the two key steps are worth discussion. **Hydrometallation** occurs by initial $\pi$-complex formation followed by addition of the metal to one end of the alkene and hydrogen to the other. Both of these regioisomers are formed. The **carbonyl insertion reaction** is another migration from the metal to the carbon atom of a CO ligand.

**Insertion reactions are reversible**

The reverse process, **decarbonylation**, is also fast but can be arrested by maintaining a pressure of carbon monoxide above the reaction mixture. The reverse of hydrometallation involves the elimination of a hydride from the adjacent carbon of a metal alkyl to form an alkene complex. This process is known as **$\beta$-hydride elimination** or simply **$\beta$ elimination**. It requires a vacant site on the metal as the number of ligands increases in the process and so is favoured by a shortage of ligands as in 16-electron complexes. The metal and the hydride must be syn to each other on the carbon chain for the elimination to be possible. The product is an alkene complex that can lose the neutral alkene simply by ligand exchange. So $\beta$ elimination is an important final step in a number of transition-metal-catalysed processes but can be a nuisance because, say, Pd–Et complexes cannot be used as $\beta$ elimination is too fast.

**Palladium(0) is most widely used in homogeneous catalysis**

These elementary steps form the basis for organo-transition-metal chemistry and are the same regardless of which metal is present and the detailed structure of the ligands. This is an enormous and rapidly expanding field that could not be discussed here without doubling the size of the book! Instead, we will concentrate on the chemistry of the most important transition metal, palladium,
which is the most widely used both in industrial and academic laboratories on both a minute and very large scale. The variety of reactions that can be catalysed together with the range of functional groups tolerated, and usually excellent chemo- and regioselectivity, has meant that an ever increasing amount of research has gone into this area of chemistry. Most syntheses of big organic molecules now involve palladium chemistry in one or more key steps.

### Choice of palladium complex

There are many available complexes of palladium(0) and palladium(II). Tetrais(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), $\text{Pd}($$\text{PPh}_3)_4$, and tris(dibenzylidene-acetone)palladium(0), $\text{Pd}($$\text{dba})_3$, or the chloroform complex, $\text{PdCl}_2($$\text{dba})_2\text{CHCl}_3$, which is air-stable, are the most common sources of palladium(0). The detailed structures of some palladium complexes, particularly the dimers, are beyond the scope of this book but we will discuss the reactions in detail.

Palladium(II) complexes are generally more stable than their palladium(0) counterparts. The dichloride $\text{PdCl}_2$ exists as a polymer and is relatively insoluble in most organic solvents. However, $\text{PhCN}_2\text{PdCl}_2$ and $\text{(MeCN)}_2\text{PdCl}_2$ (both easily prepared from $\text{PdCl}_2$) are soluble forms of $\text{PdCl}_2$, as the nitrile ligands are readily displaced in solution. Bis(phosphine)palladium(II) chloride complexes are air-stable and readily prepared from $\text{PdCl}_2$. Palladium is, of course, an expensive metal—these complexes cost about £50–100 per gram—but very little is needed for a catalytic reaction.

We should review the basic chemistry of palladium, as you will be seeing many more examples of these steps in specialized situations. Palladium chemistry is dominated by two oxidation states. The lower, palladium(0), present in tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium, for example, is nominally electron-rich, and will undergo oxidative addition with suitable substrates such as halides and triflates ($\text{TrO}^- = \text{CF}_3\text{SO}_2\text{O}^-$), resulting in a palladium(II) complex. Oxidative addition is thought to occur on the coordinatively unsaturated 14-electron species, formed by ligand dissociation in solution.

The resulting $\sigma$ alkyl bond in such complexes is very reactive, especially towards carbon–carbon $\pi$ bonds. Thus an alkene in the reacting system will lead to coordination followed by migratory insertion into the palladium–carbon $\sigma$ bond. This process is like hydrometallation and is called carbo-palladation as carbon and palladium are attached to the ends of the alkene system. There is no change in oxidation state during this process, although the ligands (often phosphines) must dissociate to allow coordination of the alkene and associate to provide a stable final 16-electron product.

Theoretically, it is possible for the process of olefin coordination and insertion to continue as in Ziegler–Natta polymerization (Chapter 52) but with palladium the metal is expelled from the molecule by a $\beta$-hydride elimination reaction and the product is an alkene. For the whole process to be catalytic, a palladium(0) complex must be regenerated from the palladium(II) product of $\beta$-hydride elimination. This occurs in the presence of base which removes $\text{HX}$ from the palladium(II) species.
This is another example of reductive elimination: one that forms a hydrogen halide rather than a carbon–carbon or carbon–hydrogen bond as described earlier.

The speed of the intramolecular β-hydride elimination means that the original substrate for the oxidative addition reaction must be chosen with care—the presence of hydrogen at an sp³ carbon in the β position must be avoided. Thus, substrates for oxidative addition reactions in palladium chemistry are frequently vinylic, allylic, or aromatic and never ethyl or n-propyl.

**The Heck reaction couples together a halide or triflate and an alkene**

All the individual steps outlined above combine to make up the catalytic pathway in the Heck reaction, which couples an alkene with a halide or triflate to form a new alkene. The R¹ group in R¹X can be aryl, vinyl, or any alkyl group without β Hs on an sp³ carbon atom. The group X can be halide (Br or I) or triflate (OSO₂CF₃). The alkene can be mono- or disubstituted and can be electron-rich, -poor, or -neutral. The base need not be at all strong and can be Et₃N, NaOAc, or aqueous Na₂CO₃. The reaction is very accommodating.

\[
\begin{align*}
R^1\text{-}X + H\equiv C\equiv C\equiv R^2 & \xrightarrow{\text{Pd(0) catalyst}} R^1\equiv C\equiv C\equiv R^2 + H\equiv X \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R^1\equiv C\equiv C\equiv R^2 + H\equiv X
\end{align*}
\]

The palladium–catalysed addition of aryl, vinyl, or substituted vinyl groups to organic halides or triflates, the Heck reaction, is one of the most synthetically useful palladium-catalysed reactions. The method is very efficient, and carries out a transformation that is difficult by more traditional techniques. The mechanism involves the oxidative addition of the halide, insertion of the olefin, and elimination of the product by a β-hydride elimination process. A base then regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst. The whole process is a catalytic cycle.

The choice of substrates is limited to aryl, heteroaryl, vinylic, and benzylic halides and triflates, as the presence of an sp³ carbon in the β position carrying a hydrogen rapidly results in β-hydride elimination. The reaction tolerates a variety of functional groups, and works well with both electron-withdrawing and electron-donating groups on either substrate. Here is an example using a heterocyclic compound we featured earlier reacting with another heterocycle.
Protected amino acids can be made without any racemization and electron-withdrawing groups such as esters promote excellent regioselectivity in favour of terminal attack. These three examples rely on \textit{in situ} reduction of the palladium(II) acetate by tri(o-tolyl)phosphine, a popular more sterically demanding aromatic phosphine.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (phos) at (0,0) {\includegraphics[width=0.2\textwidth]{phosphine.png}};
  \node (reaction1) at (2,0) {\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{reaction1.png}};
  \node (reaction2) at (2,-3) {\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{reaction2.png}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

\textbf{In situ formation of palladium(0) by reduction of Pd(II)}

In reactions requiring palladium(0), formation of the active complex may be achieved more conveniently by reduction of a palladium(II) complex, for example, Pd(OAc)$_2$. Any phosphine may then be used in the reaction, without the need to synthesize and isolate the corresponding palladium(0)-phosphine complex. Only 2–3 equivalents of phosphine may be needed, making the palladium(0) complex coordinatively unsaturated and therefore very reactive. The reduction of palladium(II) to palladium(0) can be achieved with amines, phosphines, alkenes, and organometallics such as Dibal-H, butyl lithium, or trialkyl aluminium. The mechanisms are worth giving as they illustrate the basic steps of organometallic chemistry.

In contrast, electron-donating groups such as ethers lead to attack at the end of the alkene substituted by oxygen to produce in this case the 1,1-disubstituted product. These reactions must be dominated by the interaction of the filled p orbital of the alkene with an empty d orbital on Pd. This is an example of a Heck reaction working in the absence of a phosphine ligand.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (reaction3) at (2,0) {\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{reaction3.png}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

In the \textit{β}-hydride elimination step, the palladium and hydride must be coplanar for reaction to take place, as this is a \textit{syn} elimination process. For steric reasons, the R group will tend to eclipse the smallest group on the adjacent carbon as elimination occurs, leading predominantly to a \textit{trans} double bond in the product.
Where there is a choice as to which hydride can be lost to form the alkene, the stability of the possible product alkenes often governs the outcome as the β-hydride elimination is reversible. The reaction of allylic alcohols is particularly important as the more stable of the two alkenes is the enol and a carbonyl compound is formed.

Hydropalladation–dehydropalladation can lead to alkene isomerization

As β-hydride elimination is reversible, hydropalladation with the opposite regiochemistry provides a mechanism for forming regioisomers of the alkene. This allows the most stable alkene that is accessible by the hydropalladation–dehydropalladation sequence to dominate. The only restriction is that all of these processes are syn. The migration can be prevented by the addition of bases like silver carbonate, which effectively removes the hydrogen halide from the palladium complex as soon as it is formed. This synthesis of a complex trans dihydrofuran involves the Heck reaction followed by alkene isomerization and then a Heck reaction without migration to preserve the stereochemistry.

Oxidative addition of the aryl iodide (Ar¹ = 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl) to a palladium(0) complex, formed from Pd(OAc)₂ by reduction (with the phosphine?) gives the active palladium(II) complex ArPdOAcL₂. Carbopalladation occurs as expected on an electron-rich alkene to give the product of aryl addition to the oxygen end of the alkene in a syn fashion. β-Hydride elimination must occur away from the aryl group to give a new alkene complex as there is no syn H on the other side. The alkene has moved one position round the ring. Hydropalladation in the reverse sense gives a new σ complex, which could eliminate either the black or the green hydrogens. Elimination of the green H gives the enol ether, which is the most stable alkene possible due to conjugation.

The second Heck reaction involves a naphthyl iodide (Ar² = 2-naphthyl) but the initial mechanism is much the same. However, the enol ether has two diastereotopic faces: syn or anti to the aromatic substituent (Ar¹) introduced in the first step. Palladium is very sensitive to steric effects and generally forms less hindered complexes where possible. Thus coordination of the palladium(II) intermediate occurs on the face of the enol ether anti to Ar¹. This in turn controls all the subsequent steps, which must be syn, leading to the trans product. The requirement for syn β-hydride elimination also explains the regiochemical preference of the elimination. In this cyclic structure there is only one hydrogen (green) that is syn; the one on the carbon bearing the naphthyl substituent is anti to the palladium and cannot be eliminated.
Heck reactions can be enantioselective

With chiral ligands the Heck reaction can be enantioselective. The amino-acid-derived phosphine ligand in the margin controls the Heck reaction of phenyl triflate with dihydrofuran. The ligand selects one enantiotopic face of the alkene (see Chapter 45 if you have forgotten this term) and the usual double bond migration and \( \beta \) elimination complete the reaction.

The famous ligand BINAP controls an intramolecular Heck reaction to give decalin derivatives with good enantiomeric excess. BINAP is the optically pure phosphine built into the palladium catalyst. The presence of silver ions accelerates the reaction as well as preventing double bond isomerization in the original substrate. This time the chiral ligand selects which double bond is to take part in the reaction. The vinyl palladium species is tethered to the alkene and can reach only the same face. The faces of the alkenes are diastereotopic but the two alkenes are enantiotopic and you must know your right from your left to choose one rather than the other.

Cross-coupling of organometallics and halides

Other than \( \beta \)-hydride elimination, another important pathway by which palladium(II) intermediates can lead to neutral organic fragments is reductive elimination. This forms the basis of the mechanism for cross-coupling reactions between an organometallic reagent and an organic halide or triflate.

This is a reaction that seems very attractive for synthesis but, in the absence of a transition metal catalyst, the yields are very low. We showed in the last chapter how vinyl silanes can be made with control over stereochemistry and converted into lithium derivatives with retention. Neither of these vinyl metals couple with vinyl halides alone. But in the presence of a transition metal—Cu(I) for Li and Pd(0) for Sn—coupling occurs stereospecifically and in good yield.

The mechanism involves oxidative addition of the halide or triflate to the initial palladium(0) phosphine complex to form a palladium(II) species. The key slow step is a transmetallation, so called because the nucleophile (\( R^1 \)) is transferred from the metal in the organometallic reagent to the palladium and the counterion (\( X = \) halide or triflate) moves in the opposite direction. The new palladium(II) complex with two organic ligands undergoes reductive elimination to give the coupled product and the palladium(0) catalyst ready for another cycle.
The reaction is important because it allows the coupling of two different components (R\textsuperscript{1} and R\textsuperscript{2}). If this is to happen, the substituents, M (metal) on R\textsuperscript{1} and X (halide or triflate) on R\textsuperscript{2}, must be different electronically. Both components form σ complexes with Pd but the halide partner (R\textsuperscript{2}X) bonds first by oxidative addition and the R\textsuperscript{2}–Pd must survive while the metal partner (R\textsuperscript{1}M) bonds to the Pd by transmetallation. Once the two components are joined to the palladium atom, only the cross-coupled product can be formed. The essential feature is that X and M are different so that R\textsuperscript{2}X combines with Pd(0) and R\textsuperscript{1}M with Pd(II). There can then be no confusion.

The halide partner (R\textsuperscript{2}X) must be chosen with care, as β-hydride elimination would decompose the first intermediate during the slow transmetallation step. The choice for R\textsuperscript{2} is restricted to substituents without β-hydrogen atoms: vinyl, allyl, benzyl, and polyfluoroalkyl halides, triflates, and phosphates have all been coupled successfully. The organometallic reagent (R\textsuperscript{1}M) can be based on magnesium, zinc, copper, tin, silicon, zirconium, aluminium, or boron and the organic fragment can have a wide variety of structures as coupling is faster than β-hydride elimination.

The difference in relative reactivity of aromatic iodides and triflates was exploited in this sequential synthesis of substituted terphenyls by repeated coupling with organozinc reagents. The more reactive iodide coupled at room temperature with palladium(0) and trio-furylphosphine but warming to 65 °C was required for the triflate to participate in the second coupling.

In spite of the wide range of organometallic reagents that can be used there are two classes that have proved particularly popular because they are stable intermediates in their own right and can be prepared separately before the coupling reaction. These cross-couplings are known by the names of the two chemists whose work made the reactions so valuable. The Stille coupling employs a stannane as the organometallic component (R\textsuperscript{1}M) while the Suzuki coupling relies on a boronic acid.

**The Stille coupling uses stannanes as the organometallic component**

Since the first reported use in the late 1970s, the Stille coupling has been widely used for the coupling of both aromatic and vinyllic systems.
The mechanism involves the oxidative addition of the vinyl or aromatic triflate or halide to give a palladium intermediate. This then undergoes a transmetallation reaction with the organostannane, giving an organopalladium intermediate in which both components are σ-bound. This complex then undergoes a reductive elimination step, releasing the product and thereby regenerating the palladium(0) catalyst.

The reaction will also occur if the vinyl or aryl halide is used in place of the triflate. However, the triflates have been more widely used as they are readily prepared from phenols or enolizable aldehydes or ketones. In these reactions, the presence of a source of halide (typically LiCl) is generally required. This may be because the triflate is a counterion and is not bound to the metal as a ligand. If transmetallation is to occur some other ligand must be added to give the necessary square coplanar geometry.

The Stille reaction, which represents over half of all current cross-coupling reactions, has been used in total synthesis with excellent results. The reaction may also be carried out intramolecularly and with alkynyl stannanes instead of the more usual aryl or vinyl stannanes, even to form medium-sized rings. This example forms a ten-membered ring containing two alkynes.

Nicolaou’s synthesis of rapamycin uses the reaction twice in the macrocyclization (cyclization reaction to form a large ring) step. This illustrates an important feature of palladium-catalysed cross-couplings—the geometry of both double bonds involved in the coupling is preserved in the product. This seems a very complex example and the molecule is complex. But just inspect the black region and you will see two simple Stille couplings. These reactions work with complex molecules having many functional groups, even if the yield isn’t great (26%)!
The Stille coupling may be combined with carbonylation in two ways. Acid chlorides may be used as substrates for the reaction with vinyl or aryl stannanes. However, an atmosphere of carbon monoxide is frequently required to prevent decarbonylation after the oxidative addition step.

More recently, it has been shown that performing the normal Stille reaction in the presence of carbon monoxide may also lead to carbonylated products. These reactions can take place in a CO saturated solution, under one atmosphere of pressure. Using these conditions, excellent yields of the carbonylated product can be obtained, without any of the normal coupling product being present.

The mechanism is like that of a normal Stille coupling except that the carbon monoxide first exchanges for one of the phosphine ligands and then very rapidly inserts to produce an acyl palladium(II) complex. This then undergoes transmetallation with the vinyl stannane in the usual way forming trimethylstannyl iodide and the palladium complex with two carbon ligands. Reductive elimination gives the masked diketone and regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst. Transmetallation is the slow step in these coupling reactions so that there is time for the carbon monoxide insertion first. The final step—reductive elimination—releases the Pd(0) catalyst for the next cycle.
The Suzuki coupling couples boronic acids to halides

Since first being published in 1979, the Suzuki coupling of a boronic acid with a halide or triflate has developed into one of the most important cross-coupling reactions, totalling about a quarter of all current palladium-catalysed cross-coupling reactions. The original version consisted of hydroboration of an alkyne with catecholborane, followed by palladium(0)-catalysed coupling of the resulting vinyl boronate with an aromatic iodide or bromide. The hydroboration is generally regioselective for the less hindered position and addition of boron and hydrogen occurs cis stereospecifically.

As in the Stille coupling, the geometry of both unsaturated components is preserved during the coupling so this is an excellent method for stereospecific diene synthesis. Hydroboration of octyne followed by hydrolysis of the boronate gave exclusively the E-vinyl boronic acid. Coupling with the Z-vinyl bromide in toluene with palladium(0) catalysis with potassium hydroxide as the base gave the E,Z-diene in good yield. These dienes are very useful in the Diels–Alder reaction (Chapter 35).

The mechanism is very similar to that of the Stille coupling. Oxidative addition of the vinylic or aromatic halide to the palladium(0) complex generates a palladium(II) intermediate. This then undergoes a transmetallation with the alkenyl boronate, from which the product is expelled by reductive elimination, regenerating the palladium(0) catalyst. The important difference is the transmetallation step, which explains the need for an additional base, usually sodium or potassium ethoxide or hydroxide, in the Suzuki coupling. The base accelerates the transmetallation step leading to the borate directly presumably via a more nucleophilic ‘ate’ complex.
Sterically demanding substrates are tolerated well and Suzuki coupling has been used in a wide range of aryl–aryl cross-couplings. This example has three ortho substituents around the newly formed bond (marked in black) and still goes in excellent yield. It also shows that borate esters can be used instead of boronic acids.

Coupling of aromatic heterocycles goes well. The 2-position of a pyridine is very electrophilic and not at all nucleophilic (Chapter 43) but couplings at this position are fine with either the halide or the boronic acid in that position. Clearly, it is a mistake to see either of these substituents as contributing a ‘nucleophilic carbon’. It is better to see the reaction as a coupling of two equal partners and the two substituents (halide and boronic acid) as a control element to ensure cross-coupling and prevent dimerization. In the second example potassium tert-butoxide was crucial as weaker and less hindered bases gave poor yields.

Due to the excellent stereoselectivity of the Suzuki coupling, the reaction has been used in the synthesis of the unsaturated units of a range of natural products including trisporol B. The key step is the stereocontrolled synthesis of an E,Z-diene. The geometry of both double bonds comes stereospecifically with retention of configuration from single geometrical isomers of the starting materials.
The Sonogashira coupling uses alkynes directly
The coupling of terminal alkynes with aryl or vinyl halides under palladium catalysis is known as the Sonogashira reaction. This catalytic process requires the use of a palladium(0) complex, is performed in the presence of base, and generally uses copper iodide as a co-catalyst. One partner, the aryl or vinyl halide, is the same as in the Stille and Suzuki couplings but the other has hydrogen instead of tin or boron as the ‘metal’ to be exchanged for palladium.

The mild conditions usually employed, frequently room temperature, mean that the reaction can be used with thermally sensitive substrates. The mechanism of the reaction is similar to that of the Stille and Suzuki couplings. Oxidative addition of the organic halide gives a palladium(II) intermediate that undergoes transmetallation with the alkynyl copper (generated from the terminal alkyne, base, and copper iodide). Reductive elimination with coupling of the two organic ligands gives the product and regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst.

It is often more convenient, as in the Heck reaction, to use a stable and soluble Pd(II) derivative such as bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II) chloride instead of Pd(0). This is rapidly reduced in situ to give a coordinatively unsaturated, catalytically active, palladium(0) species. The geometry of the alkene is generally preserved so that cis (Z) and trans (E) dichloroethylene give the two different geometrical isomers of the enyne below in >99% stereochemical purity as well as excellent yield.

Ene-dynes and the Bergmann cyclization
The Sonogashira reaction is used a lot because of the great potential of ene-dyne antibiotics. Symmetrical ene-dynes may be synthesized in one step from two molecules of a terminal alkyne and Z-dihaloethene. The ene-dyne part of the molecule does the remarkable Bergmann cyclization to give a benzene diradical: the ene-dyne is able to penetrate DNA and the diradical is able to react with it. These compounds are anticancer drugs of some promise.

To make useful biologically active compounds, however, the reaction is performed sequentially, allowing different functionality on each of the alkyne units.

Allylic electrophiles are specifically activated by palladium(0)
Allylic compounds with good leaving groups, such as bromide and iodide, are excellent allylating agents but they suffer from loss of regiochemistry due to competition between the direct SN2 and
S_N2\textsuperscript{′} reaction. This problem together with the associated stereochemical ambiguity was described in Chapter 23. In contrast, π-allyl cation complexes of palladium allow both the stereochemistry and regiochemistry of nucleophilic displacement reactions to be controlled.

In addition, leaving groups (X) that are usually regarded as rather unreactive can be used, which means that the electrophilic partner is more stable in the absence of palladium making handling easier. Acetate (X = OAc) is the most commonly used leaving group, but a wide range of other functional groups (X = OCO_2R, OPO(OR)_2, Cl, Br, OPh) will perform a similar role. The full catalytic cycle is shown with the intermediate π-allyl complex in equilibrium between the neutral version, which has the leaving group coordinated to palladium, and the cationic π-allyl, in which one of the phosphine ligands has displaced the anion.

Soft nucleophiles (Nu) generally give the best results so, for carbon–carbon bond formation, stabilized enolates such as malonates are best, but for C–X (X = O, N, S) bond formation the reaction is successful with alkoxides, amines, cyanide, and thioalkoxides. This example shows an amine attacking outside the ring probably because the alkene prefers to be inside the ring.

The intramolecular reaction works well to give heterocyclic rings—the regioselectivity is usually determined by the length of the chain and how far it can reach. Here a 6/5 fused product is preferred to a bridged product containing two seven-membered rings.

The reaction usually proceeds with retention of configuration at the reacting centre. As in S_N2 reactions going with retention (Chapter 37), this can mean only a double inversion. Coordination of Pd to the double bond of the allylic acetate occurs on the less hindered face opposite the leaving group and the nucleophile adds to the face of the π-allyl Pd cation complex opposite the Pd. The net result is displacement of the leaving group by the nucleophile with retention. Thereafter, the
nucleophile attacks from the less hindered face of the resulting \( \pi \)-allyl complex (that is, away from the metal) leading to overall retention of configuration.

The rather vague arrows on the middle two diagrams are the best we can do to show how Pd(0) uses its electrons to get rid of the leaving group and how it accepts them back again when the nucleophile adds. They are not perfect but it is often difficult to draw precise arrows for organometallic mechanisms. The double inversion process is perhaps more apparent in a perspective view.

The reaction of this allylic acetate with the sodium salt of Meldrum’s acid (structure in margin) demonstrates the retention of configuration in the palladium(0)-catalysed process. The tetraacetate and the intermediate \( \pi \)-allyl complex are symmetrical, thus removing any ambiguity in the formation or reaction of the \( \pi \)-allyl complex and hence in the regiochemistry of the overall reaction.

**Vinyl epoxides provide their own alkoxide base**

Vinyl epoxides and allylic carbonates are especially useful electrophiles because under the influence of palladium(0) they produce a catalytic amount of base since \( X^- \) is an alkoxide anion. This is sufficiently basic to deprotonate most nucleophiles that participate in allylic alkylations and thus no added base is required with these substrates. The overall reaction proceeds under almost neutral conditions, which is ideal for complex substrates. The relief of strain in the three-membered ring is responsible for the epoxide reacting with the palladium(0) to produce the zwitterionic intermediate. Attack of the negatively charged nucleophile at the less hindered end of the \( \pi \)-allyl palladium intermediate preferentially leads to overall 1,4-addition of the neutral nucleophile to vinyl epoxides.

Retention of stereochemistry is demonstrated by the reaction of a substituted malonate with epoxycyclopentadiene. Palladium adds to the side opposite the epoxide so the nucleophile is forced to add from the same side as the OH group. This, no doubt, helps 1,4-regioselectivity. The required palladium(0) phosphine complex was formed from a palladium(II) complex as in the Heck reaction.
Allylic carbonates produce the required alkoxide by decarboxylation of the carbonate anion that is displaced in the formation of the \( \pi \)-allyl palladium intermediate. Deprotonation creates the active nucleophile, which rapidly traps the \( \pi \)-allyl palladium complex to give the allylated product and regenerates the palladium(0) catalyst.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{O} & \quad \text{OR} \quad \text{Pd(0)} \\
\text{CO}_2 & + \text{RO} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{Nu} \quad \text{Nu} \quad \text{Nu} \quad \text{+} \quad \text{Pd(0)}
\end{align*}
\]

Trost and his group have used both of these palladium-catalysed alkylations in a synthesis of aristeromycin from epoxycyclopentadiene. The \textit{cis} stereochemistry of this carbocyclic nucleotide analogue is of paramount importance and was completely controlled by retention of configuration in both substitutions.

The first reaction is between epoxycyclopentadiene and adenine, one of the heterocyclic building blocks of nucleic acids, and follows the course we have just described to give a \textit{cis}-1,4-disubstituted cyclopentene. The alcohol is then activated by conversion into the carbonate, which reacts with phenylsulfonylnitromethane, which could later be converted into an alcohol. Once again, retention of stereochemistry during the palladium-catalysed substitution gives the \textit{cis} product.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{N} \quad \text{H}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{EtO} & \quad \text{O} \quad \text{Ad} \quad \text{Pd(0)} \\
\text{PhO}_2 \quad \text{S} \quad \text{Ad} \quad \text{EtO} \\
\text{steps} \quad \text{aristeromycin}
\end{align*}
\]

\textbf{Intramolecular alkylations lead to ring synthesis}

\( \pi \)-Allyl intermediates may also be used in cyclization reactions including the synthesis of small and medium-sized rings using an intramolecular nucleophilic displacement. Three-membered rings form surprisingly easily taking advantage of the fact that the leaving group can be remote from the nucleophile. The precursors can also be prepared by allylic alkylation. The sodium salts of malonate esters react with the monoacetate under palladium catalysis to give the allylic alcohol. Acetylation activates the second alcohol to displacement so that the combination of sodium hydride as base and palladium(0) catalyst leads to cyclization to the cyclopropane. The regioselectivity of the cyclization is presumably governed by steric hindrance as is usual for allylic alkylations with palladium(0).
Optically pure ligands on Pd in allylic alkylation can give good enantiomeric excess. You have already seen the first chiral amino-phosphine as the ligand in a chiral Heck reaction and it also gives excellent results in this example. It has to be said, however, that this is a very well behaved example and the next one is more impressive.

A $C_2$ symmetric bis(amidophosphine) ligand was used by Trost to prepare the natural nucleoside adenosine (see Chapter 49 for nucleosides) in similar fashion to the carbocyclic analogue described above. The key enantioselective step was the first allylic alkylation that selected between two enantiotopic benzoates in the meso dihydrofuran derivative to give one enantiomer the expected cis product.

The second benzoate is displaced by a malonate anion, which allows the CH$_2$OH group to be added at the other side of the dihydrofuran. No enantioselectivity is needed in this step—it is enough to ensure cis addition in a 1,4-sense.

**Palladium can catalyse cycloaddition reactions**

The presence of five-membered rings such as cyclopentanes, cyclopentenes, and dihydrofurans in a wide range of target molecules has led to a variety of methods for their preparation. One of the most successful of these is the use of trimethylenemethane [3 + 2] cycloaddition, catalysed by palladium(0) complexes. The trimethylenemethane unit in these reactions is derived from 2-[(trimethylsilyl)methyl]-2-propen-1-yl acetate which is at the same time an allyl silane and an allylic acetate. This makes it a weak nucleophile and an electrophile in the presence of palladium(0). Formation of the palladium π-alloy complex is followed by removal of the trimethylsilyl group by nucleophilic attack of the resulting acetate ion, thus producing a zwitterionic palladium complex that can undergo cycloaddition reactions.
The normal course of the reaction is to react with an alkene with electron-withdrawing substituents present, which make the substrate prone to Michael-type conjugate addition. The resulting cyclization product has an exo methylene group. Cyclopentenones illustrate this overall ‘cycloaddition’ nicely. The mechanism is thought to be stepwise with conjugate addition of the carbanion followed by attack of the resulting enolate on the π-allyl palladium unit to form a five-membered ring—not a real cycloaddition at all.

Heteroatom couplings produce aryl– or vinyl– N, –S, or –P bonds

While the major use for palladium catalysis is to make carbon–carbon bonds, which are difficult to make using conventional reactions, the success of this approach has recently led to its application to forming carbon–heteroatom bonds as well. The overall result is a nucleophilic substitution at a vinylic or aromatic centre, which would not normally be possible. A range of aromatic amines can be prepared directly from the corresponding bromides, iodides, or triflates and the required amine in the presence of palladium(0) and a strong alkoxide base. Similarly, lithium thiolates couple with vinylic triflates to give vinyl sulfides provided lithium chloride is present.

The mechanisms and choice of catalyst, usually a palladium(0) phosphine complex, are the same as those of coupling reactions involving oxidative addition, transmetallation, and reductive elimination. Phosphines do not require additional base for the coupling with aromatic triflates and the reaction has no difficulty in distinguishing the two phosphines present.
Alkenes are attacked by nucleophiles when coordinated to palladium(II)

The importance of transition-metal-catalysed reactions lies in their ability to facilitate reactions that would not occur under normal conditions. One such reaction is nucleophilic attack on an isolated double bond. While the presence of a conjugating group promotes the attack of nucleophiles, in its absence no such reaction occurs. Coordination of an alkene to a transition metal ion such as palladium(II) changes its reactivity dramatically as electron density is drawn towards the metal and away from the \( \pi \) orbitals of the alkene. This leads to activation towards attack by nucleophiles just as for conjugate addition and unusual chemistry follows. Unusual, that is, for the alkene; the palladium centre behaves exactly as expected.

Many nucleophiles, such as water, alcohols, and carboxylates, are compatible with the Pd(II) complex and can attack the complexed alkene from the side opposite the palladium. The attack of the nucleophile is regioselective for the more substituted position. This parallels attack on bromonium ions but is probably governed by the need for the bulky palladium to be in the less hindered position. The resulting Pd(II) \( \sigma \)-alkyl species decomposes by \( \beta \)-hydride elimination to reveal the substituted alkene. Reductive elimination of a proton and the leaving group, usually chloride, leads to palladium(0). The weakness of this reaction is that the catalytic cycle is not complete: Pd(II) not Pd(0) is needed to complex the next alkene.

A Pd(II) salt such as \( \text{Pd(OAc)}_2 \) adds to an alkene to give, via the \( \pi \) complex, a product with Pd at one end of the alkene and OAc at the other. This is oxypalladation but this product is not usually isolated as it decomposes to the substituted alkene. This reaction is occasionally used with various nucleophiles but it needs a lot of palladium.
Alkenes are attacked by nucleophiles when coordinated to palladium(II)

**Allylic rearrangement by reversible oxypalladation**

An example of catalytic oxypalladation is the rearrangement of allylic acetates with Pd(II). The reaction starts with oxypalladation of the alkene and it is the acetate already present in the molecule that provides the nucleophile to attack the alkene. The intermediate can reverse the oxypalladation in either direction and the product is whichever allylic acetate has the more substituted alkene. In this case, trisubstituted beats monosubstituted easily.

There are two solutions to this problem. We could use stoichiometric Pd(II) but this is acceptable only if the product is very valuable or the reaction is performed on a small scale. It is better to use an external oxidant to return the palladium to the Pd(II) oxidation state so that the cycle can continue. Air alone does not react fast enough (even though Pd(0) must be protected from air to avoid oxidation) but, in combination with Cu(II) chloride, oxygen completes the catalytic cycle. The Cu(II) chloride oxidizes Pd(0) to Pd(II) and is itself oxidized back to Cu(II) by oxygen, ready to oxidize more palladium.

This combination of reagents has been used to oxidize terminal vinyl groups to methyl ketones and is known as the **Wacker oxidation**. The nucleophile is simply water, which attacks the activated alkene at the more substituted end in an oxypalladation step. β-Hydride elimination from the resulting σ-alkyl palladium complex releases the enol, which is rapidly converted into the more stable keto form. Overall, the reaction is a hydration of a terminal alkene that can tolerate a range of functional groups.

A related reaction is the oxidation of silyl enol ethers to enones. This requires stoichiometric palladium(II), though reoxidation of Pd(0) with benzoquinone can cut that down to about half an equivalent, but does ensure that the alkene is on the right side of the ketone. The first step is again oxypalladation and β elimination puts the alkene in conjugation with the ketone chiefly because there are no β hydrogens on the other side.

**Alcohols and amines are excellent intramolecular nucleophiles**

Cyclic ethers and amines can be formed if the nucleophile is an intramolecular alcohol or amine. Stoichiometric palladium can be avoided by using benzoquinone as the stoichiometric oxidant with a catalytic amount of palladium. In this example intramolecular oxypalladation of a diene is followed by attack of an external nucleophile on a π-allyl complex.
Palladium coordinates to one face of the diene promoting intramolecular attack by the alcohol on the opposite face. The resulting $\sigma$-alkyl palladium can form a $\pi$-allyl complex with the palladium on the lower face simply by sliding along to interact with the double bond. Nucleophilic attack of chloride from the lithium salt then proceeds in the usual way on the face opposite palladium. The overall addition to the diene is therefore cis.

Nitrogen nucleophiles also attack alkenes activated by Pd(II) and benzoquinone can again act as a reoxidant allowing the use of catalytic quantities of palladium. The mechanism follows the same pattern as for oxygen nucleophiles including the final isomerization to produce the most stable regioisomer of product. In this example the product is an aromatic indole (Chapter 43) so the double bond migrates into the five-membered ring.

If the substrate lacks a hydrogen suitable for $\beta$ elimination and there is another alkene present in the molecule, the $\sigma$-alkyl palladium intermediate can follow a Heck pathway to form a bicyclic structure in a tandem reaction sequence. Once again, the final step is a palladium-hydride-mediated isomerization to give the endocyclic alkene.

**Palladium catalysis in the total synthesis of a natural alkaloid**

We end this chapter with a synthesis of $N$-acetyl clavicipitic acid methyl ester, an ergot alkaloid, by Hegedus. The power of organo-transition-metal chemistry is illustrated in five steps of this seven-step process. Each of the organometallic steps catalysed by Pd(0) or Pd(II) has been described in this chapter. The overall yield is 18%, a good result for a molecule of such complexity.

The first step is to make an indole by Pd(II)-catalysed cyclization in the presence of benzoquinone as reoxidant. The nucleophilic nature of the 3-position of the indole (Chapter 43) was exploited to introduce the required iodine functionality. Rather than direct iodination, a high yielding two-step procedure involving mercuration followed by iodination was employed. The more reactive iodide was then involved in a Heck coupling with an unsaturated side chain in the absence of phosphine.
ligands. The remaining aromatic bromide then underwent a second Heck reaction with an allylic alcohol to introduce the second side chain. Cyclization of the amide on to the allylic alcohol was achieved with palladium catalysis, not as might have been expected with palladium(0) but instead with palladium(II), to produce the seven-membered ring. Finally, the conjugated double bond was reduced and the sulfonamide removed with sodium borohydride with photolysis.

Other transition metals: cobalt

We have concentrated on palladium because it is the most important of the transition metals but we must not leave you with the idea that it is the only one. We shall end with two reactions unique to cobalt—the Pauson–Khand reaction that we mentioned right at the start of the chapter and the Vollhardt co-trimerization. You will see at once that cobalt has a special affinity with alkynes and with carbon monoxide.

The structure of the cobalt reagents is worth a mention. Cobalt has nine electrons so the second reagent is easy: nine from Co, five from the cyclopentadienyl, and two from the two COs giving 18 in all. But why is the first reagent a dimer? The monomer Co(CO)₄ would have 9 + 8 = 17 electrons.

The Pauson–Khand reaction starts with the replacement of two CO molecules, one from each Co atom, with the alkylene to form a double σ complex with two C–Co σ bonds, again one to each Co atom. One CO molecule is then replaced by the alkene and this π complex in its turn gives a σ complex with one C–Co σ bond and one new C–C σ bond, and a C–Co bond is sacrificed in a ligand coupling reaction. Then a carbonyl insertion follows and reductive elimination gives the product, initially as a cobalt complex.
This is an extraordinary reaction because so much seems to happen with no control except the presence of the two cobalt atoms. The alkene reacts so that the more substituted end bonds to the carbonyl group. This is because the ligand coupling occurs to the less substituted end, as in other coupling reactions. The stereochemistry of the alkene is preserved because the coupling step puts the C–C and C–Co bonds in at the same time in a syn fashion and the migration to the CO ligand is stereospecific with retention. This is one of the most complicated mechanisms you are likely to meet and few organic chemists can draw it out without looking it up.

The Vollhardt co-trimerization is so-called because it uses cobalt to bring three alkynes into a ring and it is one of the rare ways of making a benzene ring in one step. First, the dialkyne complexes with the cobalt—each alkyne replaces one CO molecule. Then the double \( \pi \) complex rearranges to a double \( \sigma \) complex by a cycloaddition forming a new C–C \( \sigma \) bond. This new five-membered ring cobalt heterocycle has only 16 electrons so it can accept the remaining alkyne to give an 18-electron complex.

There are now two possible routes to the final product. Reductive elimination would insert the new alkyne into one of the old C–Co bonds and form a seven-membered ring heterocycle. This could close in an electrocyclic reaction to give the new six-membered ring with the cobalt fused on one side and hence the cobalt complex of the new benzene.

Alternatively, the new alkyne could do a Diels–Alder reaction on the five-membered cobalt heterocycle to give a bridged six-membered ring that could extrude cobalt to give the same benzene complex. The CpCo group can form a stable complex with only four of the benzene electrons and these can be profitably exchanged for two molecules of carbon monoxide to re-form the original catalyst.

We have selected a few reactions of Co, Fe, and Cu with honourable mentions for Pt, Ir, and Cr. We could have focused on other elements—Ni, W, Ti, Zr, Mn, Ru, and Rh all have special reactions. Transition metal chemistry, particularly involving palladium catalysis, occupies a central role in modern organic synthesis because complex structures can be assembled in few steps with impressive regio- and stereochemical control. There are many books devoted entirely to this subject if you wish to take it further.
Steroid synthesis by the Vollhardt co-trimerization

This product is interesting for two further reactions that revise chemistry from Chapters 36 and 47. If the original acetylene has a special substituent this emerges from the co-trimerization on the four-membered ring.

Heating the benzocyclobutene causes an electrocyclic opening (Chapter 36) of the four-membered ring to give a diene that does an intramolecular Diels–Alder rearrangement on the alkene attached to the five-membered ring. The product has the skeleton of the steroids (Chapter 51).

This compound is not a steroid because steroids do not have Me₃Si groups, but these can be removed (Chapter 47) by protodesilylation and this sequence is a very short synthesis of an important compound.

Problems

1. Suggest mechanisms for these reactions, explaining the role of palladium in the first step.

2. This Heck style reaction does not lead to regeneration of the alkene. Why not? What is the purpose of the formic acid (HCO₂H) in the reaction mixture?

3. Cyclization of this unsaturated amine with catalytic Pd(II) under an atmosphere of oxygen gives a cyclic unsaturated amine in 95% yield. How does the reaction work? Why is the atmosphere of oxygen necessary? Explain the stereo- and regiochemistry of the reaction. How would you remove the CO₂Bn group from the product?

4. Suggest a mechanism for this lactone synthesis.

5. Explain why enantiomerically pure lactone gives all syn but racemic product in this palladium-catalysed reaction.

6. Revision of Chapter 47. The synthesis of a bridged tricyclic amine shown below starts with an enantiomerically pure allyl silane. Give mechanisms for the reactions, explaining how the stereochemistry is controlled in each step.
7. Revision of Chapter 44. Explain the reactions in this sequence commenting on the regioselectivity of the organometallic steps.

8. Give a mechanism for this carbonylation reaction. Comment on the stereochemistry and explain why the yield is higher if the reaction is carried out under a carbon monoxide atmosphere.

Hence explain this synthesis of part of the antifungal compound pyrenophorin.

9. Explain the mechanism and stereochemistry of these reactions. The first is revision and the second is rather easy!

11. Some revision content. Work out the structures of the compounds in this sequence and suggest mechanisms for the reactions, explaining any selectivity.

B has IR: 1730, 1710 cm\(^{-1}\); \(\delta_H \) 9.4 p.p.m. (1H, s), 2.6 p.p.m. (2H, s), 2.0 p.p.m. (3H, s), and 1.0 p.p.m. (6H, s).

C has IR: 1710 cm\(^{-1}\); \(\delta_H \) 7.3 p.p.m. (1H, d, \(J \) 5.5 Hz), 6.8 p.p.m. (1H, d, \(J \) 5.5 Hz), 2.1 p.p.m. (2H, s), and 1.15 p.p.m. (6H, s).

12. Revision of Chapter 36. What would be the starting materials for the synthesis of these cyclopentenones by the Nazarov reaction and by the Pauson–Khand reaction? Which do you prefer in each case?

13. A variation on the Vollhardt co-trimerization allows the synthesis of substituted pyridines. Draw the structures of the intermediates in this sequence. In the presence of an excess of the cyanoacetate a second product is formed. Account for this too.
14. The synthesis of the Bristol–Myers Squibb anti-migraine drug Avitriptan (a 5-HT1D receptor antagonist) involves this palladium-catalysed indole synthesis. Suggest a mechanism and comment on the regioselectivity of the alkyne attachment.

The next two steps are a bit of revision: draw mechanisms for them and comment on the survival of the Me₃Si group.

Now the key step—and you should recognize this easily. What is happening here? Though the product is a mixture of isomers, this does not matter. Why not?

Finally, this mixture must be converted into γ-lycorane: suggest how this might be done.

15. A synthesis of the natural product γ-lycorane starts with a palladium-catalysed reaction. What sort of a reaction is this, and how does it work?

65% yield, 3:2 Co up : Co down

90% yield
Life runs on chemistry, and the chemical side of biology is fascinating for that reason alone. But from the point of view of a textbook, biological chemistry’s combination of structures, mechanisms, new reactions, and synthesis is also an ideal revision aid. We shall treat this chemistry of living things in three chapters.

• Chapter 49 introduces the basic molecules of life and explains their roles along with some of their chemistry
• Chapter 50 discusses the mechanisms of biological reactions
• Chapter 51 develops the chemistry of compounds produced by life: natural products

We start with the most fundamental molecules and reactions in what is called primary metabolism.

### Primary metabolism

It is humbling to realize that the same molecules are present in all living things from the simplest single-cell creatures to ourselves. Nucleic acids contain the genetic information of every organism, and they control the synthesis of proteins. Proteins are partly structural—as in connective tissue—and partly functional—as in enzymes, the catalysts for biological reactions. Sugars and lipids used to be the poor relations of the other two but we now realize that, as well as having a structural role in membranes, they are closely associated with proteins and have a vital part to play in recognition and transport.

The chart overleaf shows the molecules of primary metabolism and the connections between them, and needs some explanation. It shows a simplified relationship between the key structures (emphasized in large black type). It shows their origins—from CO₂ in the first instance—and picks out some important intermediates. Glucose, pyruvic acid, citric acid, acetyl coenzyme A (Acetyl CoA), and ribose are players on the centre stage of our metabolism and are built into many important molecules.
We hope that this chart will allow you to keep track of the relationships between the molecules of metabolism as you develop a more detailed understanding of them. We will now look briefly at each type of molecule.
Life begins with nucleic acids

Nucleic acids are unquestionably top level molecules because they store our genetic information. They are polymers whose building blocks (monomers) are the nucleotides, themselves made of three parts—a heterocyclic base, a sugar, and a phosphate ester. A nucleoside lacks the phosphate. In the example alongside, adenine is the base (black), adenosine is the nucleoside (base and sugar), and the nucleotide is the whole molecule (base + sugar + phosphate).

This nucleoside is called AMP—Adenosine Monophosphate. Phosphates are key compounds in nature because they form useful stable linkages between molecules and can also be built up into reactive molecules by simply multiplying the number of phosphate residues. The most important of these nucleotides is also one of the most important molecules in nature—Adenosine TriPhosphate or ATP.

ATP is a highly reactive molecule because phosphates are stable anions and good leaving groups. It can be attacked by hard nucleophiles at a phosphate group (usually the end one) or by soft nucleophiles at the CH2 group on the sugar. We shall see examples of both reactions soon. When a new reaction is initiated in nature, very often the first step is a reaction with ATP to make the compound more reactive. This is rather like our use of TsCl to make alcohols more reactive or converting acids to acid chlorides to make them more reactive.

There are five heterocyclic bases in DNA and RNA

In nucleic acids there are only five bases, two sugars, and one phosphate group possible. The bases are monocyclic pyrimidines or bicyclic purines and are all aromatic.

- There are only two purine bases found in nucleic acids, adenine (A), which we have already met, and guanine (G)
- The three pyrimidine bases are the simpler and they are uracil (U), thymine (T), and cytosine (C). Cytosine is found in DNA and RNA, uracil in RNA only, and thymine in DNA only.

The stimulants in tea and coffee are methylated nucleic acid purines

An important natural product for most of us is a fully methylated purine present in tea and coffee—caffeine. Theobromine, the partly methylated version, is present in chocolate, and both caffeine and theobromine act as stimulants. Caffeine is a crystalline substance easily extracted from coffee or tea with organic solvents. It is extracted industrially with liquid CO2 (or if you prefer ‘Nature’s natural effervescence’) to make decaffeinated tea and coffee.

If we, as chemists, were to add those methyl groups we should use something like MeI, but Nature uses a much more complicated reagent. There is a great deal of methylating going on in living
things—and the methyl groups are usually added by S-adenosyl methionine (or SAM), formed by reaction of methionine with ATP.

The product (SAM) is a sulfonium salt and could be attacked by nucleophiles at three different carbon atoms. Two are primary centres—good for $S_N2$ reactions—but the third is the methyl group, which is even better. Many nucleophiles attack SAM in this way.

In the coffee plant, theobromine is converted into caffeine with a molecule of SAM. The methylation occurs on nitrogen partly because this preserves both the aromatic ring and the amide functionality and also because the enzyme involved brings the two molecules together in the right orientation for $N$-methylation.

At this point we should just point out something that it's easy to forget: there is only one chemistry. There is no magic in biological chemistry, and Nature uses the same chemical principles as we do in the chemical laboratory. All the mechanisms that you have studied so far will help you to draw mechanisms for biological reactions and most reactions that you have met have their counterparts in nature. The difference is that Nature is very very good at chemistry, and all of us are only just learning. We still do much more sophisticated reactions inside our bodies without thinking about them than we can do outside our bodies with all the most powerful ideas available to us at the beginning of the twenty-first century.

Nucleic acids exist in a double helix

One of the most important discoveries of modern science was the elucidation of the structures of DNA and RNA as the famous double helix by Watson and Crick in 1953. They realized that the basic structure of base–sugar–phosphate was ideal for a three-dimensional coil. The structure of a small part of DNA is shown opposite.

Notice that the 2' (pronounced 'two prime') position on the ribose ring is vacant. There is no OH group there and that is why it is called Deoxyribo-Nucleic Acid (DNA). The nucleotides link the two
remaining OH groups on the ribose ring and these are called the 3’- and 5’-positions. This piece of DNA has three nucleotides (adenine, adenine, and thymine) and so would be called –AAT– for short.

Each polymeric strand of DNA coils up into a helix and is bonded to another strand by hydrogen bonds between the bases. Each base pairs up specifically with another base —adenine with thymine (A–T) and guanine with cytosine (G–C)—like this.

There is quite a lot to notice about these structures. Each purine (A or G) is bonded specifically to one pyrimidine (T or C) by two or by three hydrogen bonds. The hydrogen bonds are of two kinds: one links an amine to a carbonyl group (black in the diagram) and one links an amine to an imine (green in the diagram). In this way, each nucleotide reliably recognizes another and reliably pairs with its partner. The short strand of DNA above (–ATT–) would pair reliably with –TTA–.

How the genetic information in DNA is passed to proteins
In the normal structure of DNA each strand is paired with another strand called the complementary strand because it has each base paired with its complementary base. When DNA replicates, the strands separate and a new strand with complementary structure grows alongside each. In this way the original double helix now becomes two identical double helices and so on.
This is a crude simplification of a beautiful process and you should turn to a biochemistry textbook for more details. The actual building up of a strand of DNA obviously involves a complex series of chemical reactions. The DNA is then used to build up a complementary strand of RNA, which does have the 2' hydroxyl group, and the RNA then instructs the cell on protein synthesis using three-nucleotide codes to indicate different amino acids. Again, the details of this process are beyond the scope of this book, but the code is not.

Each set of three nucleotides (called a triplet or codon) in a DNA molecule tells the cell to do something. Some triplets tell it to start work or stop work but most represent a specific amino acid. The code UGU in RNA tells the cell 'add a molecule of cysteine to the protein you are building'. The code UGA tells the cell 'stop the protein at this point'. So a bit of RNA reading UGUUGA would produce a protein with a molecule of cysteine at the end.

There are four bases available for DNA and so there are $4^3 = 64$ different triplet codons using three bases in each codon. There are only 20 amino acids used in proteins so that gives plenty of spare codons. In fact 61 of the 64 are used as codons for amino acids and the remaining three are 'stop' signals. Thus the code ATT in DNA would produce the complementary UAA and this is another 'stop' signal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base in DNA</th>
<th>Complementary Base in RNA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* T occurs in DNA only and is replaced by U in RNA.
But that doesn't leave a 'start' signal! This signal is the same (TAC in DNA = AUG in RNA) as that for the amino acid methionine, which you met as a component of SAM, the biological methylating agent. In other words, all proteins start with methionine. At least, they are all made that way, though the methionine is sometimes removed by enzymes before the protein is released. These code letters are the same for all living things except for some minor variations in some microorganisms.

AIDS is being treated with modified nucleosides

Modified nucleosides have proved to be among the best antiviral compounds. The most famous anti-AIDS drug, AZT (azidovudine from GlaxoWellcome), is a slightly modified DNA nucleoside (3'-azidothymidine). It has an azide at C3' instead of the hydroxyl group in the natural nucleoside.

Doctors are having some spectacular success at the moment (1999) against HIV and AIDS by using a combination of AZT and a much more modified nucleoside 3-TC (lamivudine) which is active against AZT-resistant viruses. This drug is based on cytosine but the sugar has been replaced by a different heterocycle though it is recognizably similar especially in the stereochemistry.

The last drug to mention is acyclovir (Zovirax), the cold sore (herpes) treatment. Here is a modified guanosine in which only a ghost of the sugar remains. There is no ring at all and no stereochemistry.

The bottom edge of the sugar ring has been done away with so that a simple alkyl chain remains. This compound has proved amazingly successful as an antiviral agent and it is highly likely that more modified nucleosides will appear in the future as important drugs.

Cyclic nucleosides and stereochemistry

We know the relative stereochemistry around the ribose ring of the nucleosides in DNA and RNA because the bases can be persuaded to cyclize on to the ring in certain reactions. Treatment of deoxythymidine with reagents that make oxygen atoms into leaving groups leads to cyclization by intramolecular SN2 reaction. The amide oxygen of the base attacks the 3'-position in the sugar ring.

This SN2 reaction has to happen with inversion, proving that the base and the 3'-OH group are on opposite sides of the ribose ring. The cyclized product is useful too. If it is reacted with azide ion the ring reopens with inversion in another SN2 reaction and AZT is formed.
We can show that the primary alcohol is on the same side of the ring as the base by another cyclization reaction. Treatment of the related iodide with a silver(I) salt gives a new seven-membered ring. This reaction can happen only with this stereochemistry of starting material.

In ribonucleic acids, the fact that the 2'- and 3'-OH groups are on the same side of the ring makes alkaline hydrolysis of such dinucleotides exceptionally rapid by intramolecular nucleophilic catalysis.

The alkali removes a proton from the 2'-OH group, which cyclizes on to the phosphate link—possible only if the ring fusion is cis. The next reaction involves breakdown of the pentacovalent phosphorus intermediate to give a cyclic phosphate. One nucleoside is released by this reaction and the second follows when the cyclic phosphate is itself cleaved by alkali.

The simplest cyclic phosphate that can be formed from a nucleotide is also important biologically as it is a messenger that helps to control such processes as blood clotting and acid secretion in the stomach. It is cyclic AMP (cAMP), formed enzymatically from ATP by nucleophilic displacement of pyrophosphate by the 3'-OH group.
Proteins are made of amino acids

The molecule of methionine, which we met as a component of SAM, is a typical amino acid of the kind present in proteins. It is the starter unit in all proteins and is joined to the next amino acid by an amide bond. In general, we could write:

Now we can add the next amino acid using its correct codon, but we want to show the process in general so we shall use the general structure in the margin. All amino acids have the same basic structure and differ only in the group 'R'. Both structures are the same and have the same (S) stereochemistry.

The process then continues with more amino acids added in turn to the right-hand end of the growing molecule. A section of the final protein drawn in a more realistic conformation might look like this.

The basic skeleton of the protein zig-zags up and down in the usual way; the amide bonds (shown in black) are rigid because of the amide conjugation and are held in the shape shown. Each amino acid may have a different substituent (R¹, R², R³, etc.) or some may be the same.

A catalogue of the amino acids

So what groups are available when proteins are being made? The simplest amino acid, glycine, has no substituents except hydrogen and is the only amino acid that is not chiral. Four other amino acids have alkyl groups without further functionality. The next table gives their structures together with two abbreviations widely used for them. The three-letter code (which has nothing to do with the codon in DNA!) is almost self-explanatory as are the one-letter codes in this group, but some of the one-letter codes for the other amino acids are not so obvious.

Many of the compounds we discuss in this chapter will be salts under biological conditions. Most carboxylic acids will exist as anions, as will the phosphates you have just seen, and most amines as cations as they would be protonated at pH 7. Amino acids exist in biological systems as zwitterions. For simplicity, we will usually draw functional groups in the simplest and most familiar way, leaving the question of protonation to be addressed separately if required.
These amino acids form hydrophobic (water-repelling) nonpolar regions in proteins. There are three more of this kind with special roles. Phenylalanine and tryptophan have aromatic rings and, though they are still hydrophobic, they can form attractive π-stacking interactions with other aromatic molecules. Enzyme-catalysed hydrolysis of proteins often happens next to one of these residues. Proline is very special. It has its amino group inside a ring and has a different shape from all the other amino acids. It appears in proteins where a bend or a twist in the structure is needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Three-letter code</th>
<th>One-letter code</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phenylalanine</td>
<td>Phe</td>
<td>F</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Phenylalanine Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tryptophan</td>
<td>Trp</td>
<td>W</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tryptophan Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proline</td>
<td>Pro</td>
<td>P</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Proline Structure" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rest of the amino acids have functional groups of various kinds and we shall deal with them by function. The simplest have hydroxyl groups and there are three of them—two alcohols and a phenol. Serine in particular is important as a reactive group in enzymatic reactions. It is a good nucleophile for carbonyl groups.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Three-letter code</th>
<th>One-letter code</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>serine</td>
<td>Ser</td>
<td>S</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Serine Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threonine</td>
<td>Thr</td>
<td>T</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Threonine Structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyrosine</td>
<td>Tyr</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tyrosine Structure" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next come the two compounds we have already met, the sulfur-containing cysteine and methionine. Cysteine has a thiol group and methionine a sulfide. These are very important in protein structure—methionine starts off the synthesis of every new protein as its N-terminal amino acid, while cysteine forms S-S bridges linking two parts of a protein together. These disulfide links may be important in holding the three-dimensional shape of the molecule.
The amino acids with a second amino group are important because of their basicity and they are vital to the catalytic activity of many enzymes. Histidine has a \( pK_{a1} \) very close to neutrality (6.5) and can function as an acid or a base. Lysine and arginine are much more basic, but are normally protonated in living things. An extra column in this table gives the \( pK_{a1} \) of the extra amino groups.

### Cysteine and hairdressing

Thiols (RSH) are easily oxidized, by air, for example, to disulfides (RS–SR). This chemistry of cysteine is used by hairdressers to give ‘perms’ or permanent waves. The hair proteins are first reduced so that any disulfide cross-links within each strand are reduced to thiols. Then the hair is styled and the final stage is the ‘set’ when the hair is oxidized so that disulfide cross-links are established to hold its shape for a good time. The disulfide resulting from cross-links between the thiol groups of cysteine is known as cystine—beware of confusing the names!

The amino acids with a second amino group are important because of their basicity and they are vital to the catalytic activity of many enzymes. Histidine has a \( pK_{a1} \) very close to neutrality (6.5) and can function as an acid or a base. Lysine and arginine are much more basic, but are normally protonated in living things. An extra column in this table gives the \( pK_{a1} \) of the extra amino groups.

### Essential amino acids

If you saw ‘Jurassic Park’ you may recall that the failsafe device was the ‘lysine option’. The dinosaurs were genetically modified so as to need lysine in their diet. The idea was that they would die unless lysine was provided by their keepers. Lysine was a good choice as it is one of the ‘essential’ amino acids for humans. If we are not given it in our diet, we die. Of course, any normal diet, including the human beings eaten by the escaped dinosaurs, would also contain plenty of lysine. The other essential amino acids (for humans) are His, Ile, Leu, Met, Phe, Thr, Try, and Val.

Finally, we come to the acidic amino acids—those with an extra carboxylic acid group. We are going to include their amides too as they also occur in proteins. This group is again very much involved in the catalytic activity of enzymes. The two acids have \( pK_{a2} \)s for the extra \( CO_2H \) group of about 4.5.
Sometimes it is not known whether the acids or their amides are present and sometimes they are present interchangeably. Aspartic acid or asparagine has the codes Asx and B while glutamic acid or glutamine is Glx or Z.

Now perhaps you can see that a protein is an assembly of many different kinds of group attached to a polyamide backbone. Some of the groups are purely structural, some control the shape of the protein, some help to bind other molecules, and some are active in chemical reactions.

Most amino acids are readily available to chemists. If proteins are hydrolysed with, say, concentrated HCl, they are broken down into their amino acids. This mixture is tricky to separate, but the acidic ones are easy to extract with base while the aromatic ones crystallize out easily.

Amino acids combine to form peptides and proteins

In nature, the amino acids are combined to give proteins with hundreds or even thousands of amino acids in each one. Small assemblies of amino acids are known as peptides and the amide bond that links them is called a peptide bond. One important dipeptide is the sweetening agent aspartame, whose synthesis was discussed in Chapter 25. It is composed (and made) of the amino acid aspartic acid (Asp) and the methyl ester of phenylalanine. Only this enantiomer has a sweet taste and it is very sweet indeed—about 160 times as sweet as sucrose. Only a tiny amount is needed to sweeten drinks and so it is much less fattening than sucrose and is ‘safe’ because it is degraded in the body to Asp and Phe, which are there in larger amounts anyway.

An important tripeptide is glutathione. So important is this compound that it is present in almost all tissues of most living things. It is the ‘universal thiol’ that removes dangerous oxidizing agents by allowing itself to be oxidized to a disulfide.

Glutathione is not quite a simple tripeptide. The left-hand amino acid is normal glutamic acid but it is joined to the next amino acid through its γ-CO₂H group instead of the more normal α-CO₂H group. The middle amino acid is the vital one for the function—cysteine with a free SH group. The C-terminal acid is glycine.
Thiols are easily oxidized to disulfides, as we have already seen in our discussion on hairdressing (though the redox chemistry of glutathione is a matter of life or death and not merely a bad hair day), and glutathione sacrifices itself if it meets an oxidizing agent. Later, the oxidized form of glutathione is reduced back to the thiol by reagents we shall meet in the next chapter (NADH, etc.).

If we imagine that the stray oxidizing agent is a peroxide, say, $H_2O_2$, we can draw a mechanism to show how this can be reduced to water as glutathione (represented as RSH) is oxidized to a disulfide.

Paracetamol overdoses
Paracetamol is a popular and safe analgesic if used properly but an overdose is insidiously dangerous. The patient often seems to recover only to die later from liver failure. The problem is that paracetamol is metabolized into an oxidized compound that destroys glutathione.

Glutathione detoxifies this oxidizing agent by a most unusual mechanism. The unstable hydroxylamine loses water to give a reactive quinone imine that is attacked by glutathione on the aromatic ring. The adduct is stable and safe but, for every molecule of paracetamol, one molecule of glutathione is consumed. There is no problem if a normal dose is taken— there is plenty of glutathione to deal with that. But if an overdose is taken, all the glutathione may be used up and irreversible liver damage occurs.

Glutathione also detoxifies some of the compounds we have earlier described as very dangerous carcinogens such as Michael acceptors and 2,4-dinitrohalobenzenes. In both cases the thiol acts as a nucleophile for these electrophiles. Most of the time there is enough glutathione present in our cells to attack these poisons before they attack DNA or an enzyme.

The toxin is now covalently bound to glutathione and so is no longer electrophilic. It is harmless and can be excreted. More glutathione will be synthesized from glutamic acid, cysteine, and glycine to replace that which is lost.

Proteins are Nature’s chemical laboratories
Longer peptides are called proteins, though where exactly the boundary occurs is difficult to say.
The structure of the hormone insulin (many diabetics lack this hormone and must inject themselves with it daily) was deduced in the 1950s by Sanger. It has two peptide chains, one of 21 amino acids and one of 30, linked by three disulfide bridges—just like the links in oxidized glutathione. This is a very small protein.

Enzymes are usually bigger. One of the smaller enzymes—ribonuclease (which hydrolyses RNA) from cows—has a chain of 124 amino acids with four internal disulfide bridges. The abundance of the various amino acids in this enzyme is given in this table.

There are 48 structural and cross-linking amino acids concerned with the shape of the protein but over half of the amino acids have functional groups sticking out of the chain—amino, hydroxy, acid groups, and the like. In fact, the enzyme uses only a few of these functional groups in the reaction it catalyses (the hydrolysis of RNA)—probably only two histidines and one lysine—but it is typical of enzymes that they have a vast array of functional groups available for chemical reactions.

Below is part of the structure of ribonuclease surrounding one of the catalytic amino acids His12. There are seven amino acids in this sequence. Every one is different and every one has a functionalized side chain. This is part of a run of ten amino acids between Phe8 and Ala19. This strip of peptide has six different functional groups (two acids, one each of amide, guanidine, imidazole, sulfide, and alcohol) available for chemical reactions. Only the histidine is actually used.

---

Proteins are conventionally drawn and described with the amino (N) terminus to the left and the carboxyl (C) terminus to the right. This section of ribonuclease would be called 'glutamyl arginyl glutaminyl histidyl methionyl aspartyl seryl...' or, more briefly, -Glu-Arg-Gln-His-Met-Asp-Ser- or, more briefly still, -ERQHMDS-. The numbers on the diagram such as 'Glu9' tell us that this glutamic acid residue is number 9 from the N-terminus.

---

The following diagram shows the reaction of angiotensin I to give angiotensin II, a protein that causes blood pressure to rise.

---

One reason for disease is that enzymes may become overactive and it may be necessary to design specific inhibitors for them to treat the disease. Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme (ACE) is a zinc-dependent enzyme that cleaves two amino acids off the end of angiotensin I to give angiotensin II, a protein that causes blood pressure to rise.
It is necessary in some situations for our blood pressure to rise (when we stand up for instance!) but too much too often is a very bad thing leading to heart attacks and strokes. Captopril is a treatment for high blood pressure called an ‘ACE inhibitor’ because it works by inhibiting the enzyme. It is a dipeptide mimic, having one natural amino acid and something else. The ‘something else’ is an SH group replacing the NH$_2$ group in the natural dipeptide. Captopril binds to the enzyme because it is like a natural dipeptide but it inhibits the enzyme because it is not a natural dipeptide. In particular, the SH group is a good ligand for Zn(II). Many people are alive today because of this simple deception practised on an enzyme.

Structural proteins must be tough and flexible

In contrast with the functional enzymes, there are purely structural proteins such as collagen. Collagen is the tough protein of tendons and is present in skin, bone, and teeth. It contains large amounts of glycine (every third amino acid is glycine), proline, and hydroxyproline (again about a third of the amino acids are either Pro or Hyp).

In the enzyme above there were only three glycines and four prolines and no hydroxyproline at all. Hydroxyproline is a specialized amino acid that appears almost nowhere else and, along with proline, it establishes a very strong triply coiled structure for collagen. The glycine is necessary as there is no room in the inside of the triple coil for any larger amino acid. Functionalized amino acids are rare in collagen.

**Hydroxyproline and scurvy**

Hydroxyproline is a very unusual amino acid. There is no genetic codon for the insertion of Hyp into a growing protein because collagen is not made that way. The collagen molecule is first assembled with Pro where Hyp ends up. Then some proline residues are oxidized to hydroxyproline. This oxidation requires vitamin C, and without it collagen cannot be formed. This is why vitamin C deficiency causes scurvy—the symptoms of scurvy (teeth falling out, sores, blisters) are caused by the inability to make collagen.

Proteins are enormously diverse in structure and function and we will be looking at a few of their reactions in the next chapter.

**Sugars—just energy sources?**

Sugars are the building blocks of carbohydrates. They used to be thought of as essential but rather dull molecules whose only functions were the admittedly useful provision of energy and cell wall construction. We have already noted that ribose plays an intimate role in DNA and RNA structure and function. More recently, biochemists have realized that carbohydrates are much more exciting. They are often found in intimate association with proteins and are involved in recognition of one protein by another and in adhesion processes.

That may not sound very exciting, but take two examples. How does a sperm recognize the egg and penetrate its wall? The sperm actually binds to a carbohydrate on the wall of the egg in what was the first event in all of our lives. Then how does a virus get inside a cell? If it fails to do so, it has no life. Viruses depend on host cells to reproduce. Here again, the recognition process involves specific carbohydrates. One of the ways in which AIDS is being tackled with some success is by a combination of the antiviral drugs we met earlier in this chapter with HIV protease inhibitor drugs, which aim to prevent recognition and penetration of cells by HIV.

We now know that many vital activities as diverse as healing, blood clotting, infection, prevention of infection, and fertilization all involve carbohydrates. Mysterious compounds such as ‘sialyl Lewis-X’, unknown a few years ago, are now known to be vital to our health and happiness. Far from being dull, carbohydrates are exciting molecules and our future depends on them. It is well worthwhile to spend some time exploring their structure and chemistry.
Sugars normally exist in cyclic forms with much stereochemistry

The most important sugar is glucose. It has a saturated six-membered ring containing oxygen and it is best drawn in a chair conformation with nearly all the substituents equatorial. It can also be drawn reasonably as a flat configurational diagram.

We have already met one sugar in this chapter, ribose, because it was part of the structure of nucleic acids. This sugar is a five-membered saturated oxygen heterocycle with many OH groups. Indeed, you can define a sugar as an oxygen heterocycle with every carbon atom bearing an oxygen-based functional group—usually OH, but alternatively C=O.

Both our drawings of glucose and ribose show a number of stereogenic centres and one centre undefined—the OH group is marked with a wavy line. This is because one centre in both sugars is a hemiacetal and therefore the molecule is in equilibrium with an open-chain hydroxy-aldehyde. For glucose, the open-chain form is this.

When the ring closes again, any of the OH groups could cyclize on to the aldehyde but there is no real competition—the six-membered ring is more stable than any of the alternatives (which could have three-, four-, five-, or seven-membered rings—check for yourself). However, with ribose there is a reasonable alternative.

The most important sugars may exist in an open-chain form, as a five-membered oxygen heterocycle (called a furanoside after the aromatic furan) or a six-membered oxygen heterocycle (called a pyranoside after the compound pyran).

From triose to glucose requires doubling the number of carbon atoms

We will return to that in a moment, but let us start from the beginning. The simplest possible sugar is glyceraldehyde, a three-carbon sugar that cannot form a cyclic hemiacetal.

Glyceraldehyde is present in cells as its phosphate which is in equilibrium with dihydroxyacetone phosphate. This looks like a complicated rearrangement but it is actually very simple—the two compounds have a common enol through which they interconvert.

Glyceraldehyde is an aldehyde sugar or aldose and dihydroxyacetone is a keto-sugar or ketose. That ending ‘-ose’ just refers to a sugar. These two molecules combine to form the six-carbon sugar,
fructose, in living things and this reaction is a key step in the synthesis of organic compounds from CO₂ in plants.

When we come to the four-carbon sugars, or tetroses, two are important. They are diastereoisomers called erythrose and threose. You can see from this series that each aldose has \( n - 2 \) stereogenic centres in its carbon chain where \( n \) is the total number of carbon atoms in that chain.

We shall take a longer look at the stereochemistry and reactions of glucose and the important keto-hexose, fructose. These two are often found together in cells and are combined in the same molecule as sucrose—ordinary sugar. In this molecule, glucose appears as a pyranose (six-membered ring) and fructose as a furanose (five-membered ring). They are joined through an acetal at what were hemiacetal positions, and sucrose is a single diastereoisomer.

**Sugars can be fixed in one shape by acetal formation**

This is the simplest way to fix glucose in the pyranose form—any alcohol, methanol, for example, gives an acetal and, remarkably, the acetal has an *axial* OR group.

Acetal formation is under thermodynamic control (Chapter 14) so the axial compound must be the more stable. This is because of the anomeric effect—so called because this C atom is called the anomeric position and the acetal diastereoisomers are called anomers. The effect is a bonding interaction between the axial lone pair on the oxygen atom in the ring and the \( \sigma^* \) orbital of the OMe group.

The formation of acetals allows a remarkable degree of control over the chemistry of sugars. Apart from the simple glucoside acetal we have just seen, there are three important acetals worth understanding because of the way in which they illustrate stereoelectronic effects—the interplay of
stereochemistry and mechanism. If we make an acetal from methyl glucoside, we get a single compound as a single stereoisomer.

The new acetal could have been formed between any of the adjacent OH groups in the starting material but it chose the only pair (the black OH groups) to give a six-membered ring. The stereochemistry of glucose is such that the new six-membered ring is trans-fused on the old so that a beautifully stable all-chair bicyclic structure results, with the phenyl group in an equatorial position in the new chair acetal ring. It does not matter which OH group adds to benzaldehyde first because acetal formation is under thermodynamic control and this product is the most stable possible acetal.

Acetals formed from sugars and acetone have a quite different selectivity. For a start, cyclic acetals of acetone prefer to be five- rather than six-membered rings. In a six-membered ring, one of the acetone’s methyl groups would have to be axial, so the five-membered ring is preferred. A 5/5 or 5/6 ring fusion is more stable if it is cis, and so acetone acetals (acetonides) form preferentially from cis 1,2-dihols. Glucose has no neighbouring cis hydroxyls in the pyranose form, but in the furanose form it can have two pairs. Formation of an acetal with acetone fixes glucose in the furanose form. This is all summarized in the scheme below.

The open-chain form of glucose is in equilibrium with both pyranose and furanose forms by hemiacetal formation with the black and green OH groups, respectively. Normally, the pyranose form is preferred, but the furanose form can form a double acetal with acetone, one acetal having cis-fused 5/5 rings and the other being on the side chain. This is the product.

If we want to fix glucose in the open-chain form, we must make an ‘acetal’ of quite a different kind using a thiol (RSH) instead of an alcohol, an aldehyde, or a ketone.

The thiol combines with the aldehyde group of the open-chain form to give a stable dithioacetal. The dithioacetal is evidently more stable than the alternative hemiacetals or monothioacetals that could be formed from the pyranose or furanose forms.
Sugar alcohols are important in food chemistry

Another reaction of the open-chain form of sugars is reduction of the aldehyde group. This leads to a series of polyols having an OH group on each carbon atom. We will use mannose as an example. Mannose is a diastereoisomer of glucose having one axial OH group (marked in black) and, like glucose, is in equilibrium with the open-chain form.

If we redraw the open-chain form in a more realistic way, and then reduce it with NaBH₄, the product is mannitol whose symmetry is interesting. It has $C_2$ symmetry with the $C_2$ axis at right angles to the chain and marked with the orange dot.

The simplification of stereochemistry results because the two ends of the sugar both now have CH₂OH groups so that the possibility of $C_2$ and planar symmetry arises. If we look at the two four-carbon sugars we can establish some important stereochemical correlations. Threose is reduced to threitol which has a $C_2$ axis like that of mannitol.

Erythrose on the other hand reduces to erythritol, which is not chiral.

The important correlation is that threose is reduced or oxidized to chiral compounds—the oxidation product is tartaric acid—while erythrose is reduced or oxidized to meso compounds. This may help you to remember the labels erythro- and threo—should you need to.
In the pentoses and hexoses there are again sugars that are reduced to meso alcohols and some that are reduced to C₂ symmetric alcohols. The C₅ sugar xylose has the same stereochemistry as glucose from C₂ to C₄ but lacks the CH₂OH group at C₆.

Xylose is reduced to the meso alcohol xylitol. This alcohol is more or less as sweet as sugar and, as xylose (which is not sweet) can be extracted in large quantities from waste products such as sawdust or corn cobs, xylitol is used as a sweetener in foods. There is an advantage in this. Though we can digest xylitol (so it is fattening), the bacteria on teeth cannot so that xylitol does not cause tooth decay.

By careful manipulation of protecting groups such as acetics and reactions such as reduction and oxidation, it is possible to transform sugars into many different organic compounds retaining the natural optical activity of the sugars themselves. As some sugars are also very cheap, they are ideal starting points for the synthesis of other compounds and are widely used in this way (Chapter 45). Sucrose and glucose are very cheap indeed—probably the cheapest optically active compounds available. Here are the relative (to glucose = 1) prices of some other cheap sugars.

### Chemistry of ribose—from sugars to nucleotides

We have said little about selective reactions of pentoses so we shall turn now to the synthesis of nucleotides such as AMP. In nature, ribose is phosphorylated on the primary alcohol to give ribose-5-phosphate. This is, of course, an enzyme-catalysed reaction but it shows straightforward chemoselectivity such as we should expect from a chemical reaction.

The second step is a pyrophosphorylation at the anomeric position to give PRPP. Only one diastereoisomer is produced so presumably the two anomers interconvert rapidly and only the one isomer reacts under control by the enzyme. This selectivity would be very difficult to achieve chemically.
Now the stage is set for an $S_N2$ reaction. The nucleophile is actually the amide group of glutamine but the amide is hydrolysed by the same enzyme in the same reaction and the result is as if a molecule of ammonia had done an $S_N2$ reaction displacing the pyrophosphate from the anomic position. An $\text{NH}_2$ group is introduced, which is then built into the purine ring system in a series of reactions involving simple amino acids. These reactions are too complex to describe here.

By contrast, if a pyrimidine is to be made, Nature assembles a general pyrimidine structure first and adds it in one step to the PRPP molecule, again in an $S_N2$ reaction using a nitrogen nucleophile. This general nucleotide, orotidyl acid, can be converted into the other pyrimidine nucleotides by simple chemistry.

The chemical version—protection all the way

In a chemical synthesis (work that led to Alexander (Lord) Todd’s Nobel prize) there are rather different problems. We cannot achieve the remarkable selectivity between the different OH groups achieved in Nature so we have to protect any OH group that is not supposed to react. We also prefer to add pre-formed purines and pyrimidines to a general electrophile derived from ribose. The first step is to form acetate esters from all the OH groups. Since ribose is rather unstable to acetylation conditions, the methyl glycoside (which is formed under very mild conditions) is used. This fixes the sugar in the furanose form. Now the tetracetate can be made using acetic anhydride in acidic solution. All of the OH groups react by nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group of the anhydride with retention of configuration except for the anomic OH, which esterifies by an $S_N1$ mechanism. This, of course, epimerizes the anomic centre but the crystalline diastereoisomer shown can be isolated easily.
Now the anomeric centre can be activated towards nucleophilic attack by replacement of acetate by chloride. This is again an SN1 reaction and produces a mixture of chlorides. The other esters are stable to these conditions.

Replacement of the chlorine by the purine or pyrimidine base is sometimes quite tricky and silver or silyl derivatives are often used. Lewis acid catalysis is necessary to help the chloride ion leave in this SN1 reaction. We shall avoid detailed technical discussion and simply draw the adenosine product from a general reaction.

Now we need to remove the acetates and put a phosphate specifically on the 5-position. The acetates can be removed with retention by ester hydrolysis and we already know how to protect the 2-OH and 3-OH groups. They are cis to each other so they will form an acetal with acetone leaving the 5-OH group free.

Putting on the phosphate is tricky too and more protection is necessary. This phosphorus compound with one chloride as leaving group and two benzyl esters as protecting groups proved ideal. The benzyl esters can be removed by hydrogenation (Chapter 24) and the acetal by treatment with dilute acid to give AMP.
Glycosides are everywhere in nature

Many alcohols, thiols, and amines occur in nature as glycosides, that is as O-, S-, or N-acetals at the anomeric position of glucose. The purpose of attaching these compounds to glucose is often to improve solubility or transport across membranes—to expel a toxin from the cell, for example. Sometimes glucose is attached in order to stabilize the compound so that glucose appears as Nature's protecting group, rather as a chemist would use a THP group (Chapter 24).

\[ \text{Glycoside} \]

O-Glycosides occur in immense variety with glucose and other sugars being joined to the OH groups of alcohols and phenols to form acetals. The stereochemistry of these compounds is usually described by the Greek letters \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \). If the OR bond is down, we have an \( \alpha \)-glycoside; if up, a \( \beta \)-glycoside.

An attractive example is the pigment of red roses, which is an interesting aromatic oxygen heterocycle (an anthocyanin). Two of the phenolic OH groups are present as \( \beta \)-glycosides.

\[ \text{Aromatic pyrillium salt} \]

Protect yourself from cancer with green vegetables: \( S \)-glycosides

We will take an important series of \( S \)-glycosides for further chemical discussion in this chapter. It is clear that there are special benefits to health in eating broccoli and brussel sprouts because of their potent sulfur-containing anticancer compounds. These compounds are unstable isothiocyanates and are not, in fact, present in the plant but are released on damage by, for example, cutting or cooking when a glycosidase (an enzyme which hydrolyses glycosides) releases the sulfur compound from its glucose protection. A simple example is sinigrin.

When a glycosidase enzyme cleaves an \( O \)-glycoside, we should expect a simple general acid-catalysed first step followed by fast addition of water to the intermediate oxonium ion, essentially the same mechanism as is shown by the chemical reaction (Chapter 13).
The S-glycosides of the sinigrin group start to hydrolyse in the same way. The sulfur atom is the better leaving group when it leaves as an anion (though worse than oxygen when the hydrolysis occurs in acidic conditions—see p. 000) and these anions are additionally stabilized by conjugation.

The next step is very surprising. A rearrangement occurs, rather similar to the Beckmann rearrangement (Chapter 37), in which the alkyl group migrates from carbon to nitrogen and an isothiocyanate (R-N=C=S) is formed. Sinigrin occurs in mustard and horseradish and it is the release of the allyl isothiocyanate that gives them their 'hot' taste. When mustard powder is mixed with water, the hot taste develops over some minutes as sinigrin is hydrolysed to the isothiocyanate.

The S-glycoside in broccoli and brussels sprouts that protects from cancer is somewhat similar but has one more carbon atom in the chain and contains a sulfoxide group as well. Hydrolysis of the S-glycoside is followed by the same rearrangement, producing a molecule called sulforaphane. Sulforaphane protects against cancer-causing oxidants by inducing the formation of a reduction enzyme.

Compounds derived from sugars

Vitamin C

Nature makes some important compounds from simple sugars. Vitamin C—ascorbic acid—is one of these. Like glutathione, it protects us from stray oxidants as well as being involved in primary redox pathways (we mentioned earlier its role in collagen synthesis). Its reduced and oxidized forms are these.
Vitamin C looks very like a sugar as it has six carbon atoms, each having an oxygen atom as substituent as well as an oxygen heterocycle, and it is no surprise that it is made in nature from glucose. We shall give just an outline of the process, which appropriately involves a lot of oxidation and reduction. The first step takes the primary alcohol of glucose to a carboxylic acid known as glucuronic acid. Next comes a reduction of the masked aldehyde to give ‘gulonic acid’. Both reactions are quite reasonable in terms of laboratory chemistry.

It is pretty obvious what will happen to this compound as it is an open-chain carboxylic acid with five OH groups. One of the OH groups will cyclize on to the acid to form a lactone. Kinetically, the most favourable cyclization will give a five-membered ring, and that is what happens. Now we are getting quite close to ascorbic acid and it is clear that oxidation must be the next step so that the double bond can be inserted between C2 and C3.

This looks a strange reaction but it is really quite logical. One of the secondary OH groups must be oxidized to a ketone. This is the 2-OH group and then the resulting ketone can simply enolize to give ascorbic acid.

Inositol

We have already discussed the widespread sugar alcohols such as mannitol but more important compounds are cyclic sugar alcohols having a carbocyclic ring (cyclohexanols). The most important is inositol which controls many aspects of our chemistry that require communication between the inside and the outside of a cell. Inositol-1,4,5-triphosphate (IP3) can open calcium channels in cell membranes to allow calcium ions to escape from the cell.

Inositol is made in nature from glucose-6-phosphate by an aldol reaction that requires preliminary ring opening and selective oxidation (this would be tricky in the lab without protecting groups!).
The resulting ketone can be enolized on the phosphate side and added to the free aldehyde group to form the cyclohexane ring. We can draw the mechanism for the aldol reaction easily if we first change the conformation.

Finally, a stereochemically controlled reduction to give the axial alcohol (this would be the stereoselectivity expected with NaBH₄ for example: see Chapter 18) gives myo-inositol. The number and position of the phosphate esters can be controlled biochemically. This control is vital in the biological activity and would be difficult in the laboratory.

Learning from Nature— the synthesis of inositol

If we wish to devise a chemical version of the biosynthesis of inositol, we need to use cleverly devised protecting groups to make sure that the right OH group is oxidized to a ketone. We can start with glucose trapped in its furanose form by a double acetone acetal as we discussed above. The one remaining OH group is first blocked as a benzyl ether.

Notice that each oxygen atom in this molecule of protected glucose is now different. Only the OH at C5 is free, and its time has come: it can now be oxidized using a Swern procedure with dimethylsulfoxide as the oxidant (Chapter 46).

Now we can strip away the protecting groups one by one and it is instructive to see how selective these methods are. The trityl group comes off in aqueous acetic acid by another SN1 reaction in which water captures the triphenylmethyl cation, and the benzyl group is removed by hydrogenolysis—hydrogen gas over a 10% palladium on charcoal catalyst in ethanol.
Finally, the acetone acetal is removed by acid hydrolysis. Because free sugars are difficult to isolate it is convenient to use an acidic resin known as 'Dowex'. The resin (whose polymeric structure is discussed in Chapter 52) can simply be filtered off at the end of the reaction and the solid product isolated by lyophilization—evaporation of water at low pressure below freezing point. The yield is quantitative.

All of the hydroxyl groups are now free except the one tied up in the hemiacetal and that, of course, is in equilibrium with the open-chain hydroxy-aldehyde as we have already seen. Treatment of this free 'glucose ketone' with aqueous NaOH gives the ketone of myo-inositol as the major product together with some of the other diastereoisomers.

The simplest explanation of this result is that the chemical reaction has followed essentially the same course as the biological one. First, the hemiacetal is opened by the base to give the open-chain keto-aldehyde. Rotation about a C–C bond allows a simple aldol condensation between the enolate of the ketone as nucleophile and the aldehyde as electrophile.

The enolate must prefer to attack the aldehyde in the same way as in the biological reaction to give the all-equatorial product as the conformational drawing shows. The arrangement of the enolate in the aldol reaction itself will be the same as in the cyclization of the phosphate above.
As in many other cases, by improving the rate and perfecting the stereoselectivity, the enzyme makes much better a reaction that already works.

**Most sugars are embedded in carbohydrates**

Before we leave the sugars we should say a little about the compounds formed when sugars combine together. These are the saccharides and they have the same relationship to sugars as peptides and proteins have to amino acids. We have met one simple disaccharide, sucrose, but we need to meet some more important molecules.

One of the most abundant compounds in nature is cellulose, the structural material of plants. It is a glucose polymer and is produced in simply enormous quantities (about $10^{15}$ kg per year). Each glucose molecule is joined to the next through the anomeric bond (C1) and the other end of the molecule (C4). Here is that basic arrangement.

![Cellulose structure](image)

Notice that the anomeric bonds are all equatorial. This means that the cellulose molecule is linear in general outline. It is made rigid by extra hydrogen bonds between the 3-OH groups and the ring oxygen atoms—like this.

![Cellulose structure](image)

The polymer is also coiled to increase stability still further. All this makes cellulose very difficult to hydrolyse, and humans cannot digest cellulose as we do not have the necessary enzymes. Only ruminants, such as cows, whose many stomachs harbour some helpful bacteria, can manage it.

**Amino sugars add versatility to saccharides**

To go further in understanding the structural chemistry of life we need to know about amino sugars. These molecules allow proteins and sugars to combine and produce structures of remarkable variety and beauty. The most common amino sugars are N-acetyl-glucosamine and N-acetyl-galactosamine, which differ only in stereochemistry.

The hard outer skeleton of insects and shellfish contains chitin, a polymer very like cellulose but made of acetyl glucosamine instead of glucose itself. It coils up in a similar way and provides the toughness of crab shells and beetle cases.

![Amino sugars](image)

Ordinary cell membranes must not be so tough as they need to allow the passage of water and complex molecules through channels that can be opened by molecules such as inositol phosphates.
Most sugars are embedded in carbohydrates

These membranes contain glycoproteins—proteins with amino-sugar residues attached to asparagine, serine, or threonine in the protein. The attachment is at the anomeric position so that these compounds are \( O \)- or \( N \)-glycosides of the amino sugars. Here is \( N \)-acetyl-galactosamine attached to an asparagine residue as an \( N \)-glycoside.

The cell membrane normally contains less than 10% of sugars but these are vital to life. Because the sugars (\( N \)-acetyl-glucosamine and \( N \)-acetyl-galactosamine) are covered with very polar groups (OH and amide) they prefer to sit outside the membrane in the aqueous extracellular fluid rather than within the nonpolar membrane itself. When two cells meet, the sugars are the first things they see. We cannot go into the details of the biological processes here, but even the structures of these saccharides dangling from the cell are very interesting. They contain amino sugars, again particularly \( N \)-acetyl-glucosamine and \( N \)-acetyl-galactosamine, and they are rich in mannose.

In addition, they are usually branched at one of the mannose residues that is joined to two other mannoses on one side and to one glucosamine on the other. The glucosamine leads back eventually to the protein through a link to asparagine like the one we have just seen. The two mannoses are linked to more sugars at positions marked by the green arrows and provide the recognition site. The structure below is a typical branchpoint.

You should begin to see from structures like these just how versatile sugar molecules can be. From just four sugars we have constructed a complex molecule with up to 13 possible link sites. With more sugars added, the possibilities become enormous. It is too early to say what medical discoveries will emerge from these molecules, but one that is likely to be important is sialyl Lewis X. This tetrasaccharide is also branched but it contains a different type of molecule—a C\(_5\) sugar with a CO\(_2\)H group, called sialic acid.

Sialic acid has the CO\(_2\)H group at the anomeric position, a typical \( N \)-acetyl group, and a unique side chain (in green) with three more OH groups. Sialyl Lewis X has sialic acid at the end of a branched sugar chain. The branchpoint is the familiar \( N \)-acetyl-glucosamine through which the molecule is eventually linked to the glycoprotein. The remaining sugars are galactose, a diastereoisomer of glucose, and a sugar we have not seen before, fucose. Fucose often appears in saccharides of this kind and is a six-carbon sugar without a primary OH group. It is like galactose with Me instead of CH\(_2\)OH.
Sialyl Lewis X can also form a stable complex with calcium ions as the diagram shows and this may be vital to its activity. It is certainly involved in leukocyte adhesion to cells and is therefore vital in the prevention of infection.

**Lipids**

Lipids (fats) are the other important components of cell membranes. Along with cholesterol, also a component of the cell membrane, they have acquired a bad name, but they are nonetheless essential to the function of membranes as selective barriers to the movement of molecules.

The most common types of lipids are esters of glycerol. Glycerol is just propane-1,2,3-triol but it has interesting stereochemistry. It is not chiral as it has a plane of symmetry, but the two primary OH groups are enantiotopic (Chapter 16). If one of them is changed—by esterification, for example—the molecule becomes chiral. Natural glycerol phosphate is such an ester and it is optically active.

A typical lipid in foodstuffs is the triester formed from glycerol and oleic acid, which is the most abundant lipid in olive oil. Oleic acid is a 'mono-unsaturated fatty acid'—it has one Z double bond in the middle of the C18 chain. This bond gives the molecule a marked kink in the middle. The compound actually present in olive oil is the triester, also kinked.

**Oil and water do not mix**

The lipid has, more or less, the conformation shown in the diagram with all the polar ester groups at one end and the hydrocarbon chains bunched together in a nonpolar region. Oil and water do not mix, it is said, but triglyceride lipids associate with water in a special way. A drop of oil spreads out on water in a very thin layer. It does so because the ester groups sit inside the water and the hydrocarbon side chains stick out of the water and associate with each other.

---

You may have done the 'Langmuir trough' experiment in a physical chemistry practical class. This involves measuring the size of a molecule by allowing an oil to spread on the surface of water in a unimolecular layer.
When triglycerides are boiled up with alkali, the esters are hydrolysed and a mixture of carboxylate salts and glycerol is formed. This was how soap was made—hard soap was the sodium salt and soft soap the potassium salt.

When a soap is suspended in water, the carboxylate groups have a strong affinity for the water and so oily globules or micelles are formed with the hydrocarbon side chain inside. It is these globules that remove greasy dirt from you or your clothes.

Nature uses thiol esters to make lipids

The repulsion between molecules having oily or aqueous properties is the basis for membrane construction. The lipids found in membranes are mostly based on glyceryl phosphate and normally contain three different side chains—one saturated, one unsaturated, and one very polar.

The saturated chain is added first, at C1 of glyceryl phosphate. The reagent is a thiol ester called acyl coenzyme A, whose full structure you will see in the next chapter. This reaction occurs by simple nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group of the thiol ester followed by loss of the better leaving group, the thiolate anion. Then the process is repeated at the second OH group where an unsaturated fatty acid, perhaps oleic acid, is added by the same mechanism.
The third acylation requires the phosphate to act as the acylating agent and a polar alcohol to be introduced to form a phosphate ester. This reaction actually occurs by the activation of the phosphate as a pyrophosphate. Pyrophosphates are really acid anhydrides so it is not surprising that they act as acylating agents. The first step is a reaction with cytidine triphosphate (CTP) doing a job we might expect from ATP.

Nucleophilic attack by the phosphate group of the phosphoglyceride at the point indicated on CTP gives the pyrophosphate required for the acylation step.

The anhydride is now attacked by an alcohol acting as a nucleophile. The attack occurs only at the electrophilic phosphorus centre further from the nucleotide. This is an impressive piece of regioselectivity and is presumably controlled by the enzyme.

This third chain is rather different from the other two—it’s a phosphate diester, and the alcohol portion can be inositol joined through the OH group at C1 or it can be the amino acid serine, joined through its OH group.

The compound formed from serine is particularly important as it can be transformed into the most dramatically contrasted of these phospholipids. A decarboxylation using a coenzyme (we shall look at the mechanism of this reaction in Chapter 51) gives a very simple molecule, phosphatidyl ethanolamine.
Finally, three methylations on the nitrogen atom by SAM (see p. 000) gives the zwitter ion phosphatidyl choline.

\[ 3 \times \text{SAM} \rightarrow \]  
\[ \text{phosphatidyl choline} \]

**Phospholipids form membranes spontaneously**

The choline terminus of the molecule is very polar indeed. Phosphatidyl choline adopts a shape with the nonpolar chains \( (R^1 \text{ and } R^2) \) close together, and it should be clear that this is an ideal molecule for the construction of membranes.

We have already seen how oils such as glyceryl trioleate form thin layers on water while soaps from the alkaline hydrolysis of glycerides form micelles. Phosphatidyl choline forms yet another structure—it spontaneously forms a membrane in water. The hydrophobic hydrocarbon chains line up together on the inside of the membrane with the hydrophilic choline residues on the outside.

This is just a small piece of a cross-section of the membrane. These membranes are called lipid bilayers because two rows of molecules line up to form two layers back-to-back. The charged, hydrophilic region on the outside is solvated by the water and the hydrocarbon tails are repelled by the water and attracted to each other by weak forces such as van der Waals attractions.

Full structural analysis of a real cell membrane reveals a chemically diverse thin sheet composed of phospholipid bilayers penetrated by glycoproteins containing the amino sugars we discussed earlier. The amount of each component varies but there is usually about 50:50 phospholipid:protein, with the protein containing about 10% sugar residues. The phospholipids’ main role is as a barrier while the glycoproteins have the roles of recognition and transport.

**Bacteria and people have slightly different chemistry**

We have many times emphasized that all life has very similar chemistry. Indeed, in terms of biochemistry there is little need for the classifications of mammals, plants, and so on. There is only one important division—into prokaryotes and eukaryotes. Prokaryotes, which include bacteria, evolved first and have simple cells with no nucleus. Eukaryotes, which include plants, mammals, and all
other multicellular creatures, evolved later and have more complex cells including nuclei. Even so, much of the biochemistry on both sides of the divide is the same.

When medicinal chemists are looking for ways to attack bacteria, one approach is to interfere with chemistry carried out by prokaryotes but not by us. The most famous of these attacks is aimed at the construction of the cell walls of some bacteria that contain ‘unnatural’ (R)- (or D-) amino acids. Bacterial cell walls are made from glycopeptides of an unusual kind. Polysaccharide chains are cross-linked with short peptides containing (R)-alanine (D-Ala). Before they are linked up, one chain ends with a glycine molecule and the other with D-Ala–D-Ala. In the final step in the cell wall synthesis, the glycine attacks the D-Ala–D-Ala sequence to form a new peptide bond by displacing one D-Ala residue.

![Diagram](image)

The famous molecule that interferes with this step is penicillin, though this was not even suspected when penicillin was discovered. We now know how penicillin works. It inhibits the enzyme that catalyses the D-Ala transfer in a very specific way. It first binds specifically to the enzyme, so it must be a mimic of the natural substrate, and it then reacts with the enzyme and inactivates it by blocking a vital OH group at the active site. If we emphasize the peptide nature of penicillin and compare it with D-Ala–D-Ala, the mimicry may become clearer.

Penicillin imitates D-Ala and binds to the active site of the enzyme, encouraging the OH group of a serine residue to attack the reactive, strained β-lactam. This same OH group of the same serine residue would normally be the catalyst for the D-Ala–D-Ala cleavage used in the building of the bacterial cell wall. The reaction with penicillin ‘protects’ the serine and irreversibly inhibits the enzyme. The bacterial cell walls cannot be completed, and the bacterial cells literally burst under the pressure of their contents. Penicillin does not kill bacteria whose cell walls are already complete but it does prevent new bacteria being formed.
You have seen many instances in this chapter of the importance of a good understanding of both the chemistry and the biochemistry of living things if medicine is to advance: it is at the frontier of chemistry and biology that many of the most important medical advances are being made.

**Problems**

1. Do you consider that thymine and caffeine are aromatic compounds? Explain.

   ![Thymine and Caffeine](image)

2. It is important that we draw certain of the purine and pyrimidine bases in their preferred tautomeric forms. The correct pairings are given early in the chapter. What alternative pairings would be possible with these (minor) tautomers of thymine and guanine? Suggest reasons (referring to Chapter 43 if necessary) why the major tautomers are preferred.

3. Dialkyl phosphates are generally hydrolysed quite slowly at near-neutral pHs but this example hydrolys much more rapidly. What is the mechanism and what relevance has it to RNA chemistry?

   ![Phosphate Hydrolysis](image)

Revision of Chapter 41. This reaction is subject to general base catalysis. Explain.

4. Primary amines are not usually made by displacement reactions on halides with ammonia. Why not? The natural amino acids can be made by this means in quite good yield. Here is an example.

   ![Primary Amine Formation](image)

Why does this example work? Comment on the state of the reagents and products under the reaction conditions. What is the product and how does it differ from the natural amino acid?

5. Human hair is a good source of cystine, the disulfide dimer of cysteine. The hair is boiled with aqueous HCl and HCO₂H for a day, the solution concentrated, and a large amount of sodium acetate added. About 5% of the hair by weight crystallizes out as pure cystine [α]D = 216. How does the process work? Why is such a high proportion of hair cystine? Why is no cysteine isolated by this process? What is the stereochemistry of cystine? Make a good drawing of cystine to show its symmetry. How would you convert the cystine to cysteine?

   ![Cystine to Cysteine](image)

6. A simple preparation of a dipeptide is given below. Explain the reactions, drawing mechanisms for the interesting steps. Which steps are protection, activation, coupling, and deprotection? Explain the reasons for protection and the nature of the activation. Why is the glycine added to the coupling step as its hydrochloride? What reagent(s) would you use for the final deprotection step?

   ![Dipeptide Preparation](image)

7. Suggest how glutathione might detoxify these dangerous chemicals in living things. Why are they still toxic in spite of this protection?
8. Alanine can be resolved by the following method, using a pig kidney acylase. Draw a mechanism for the acylation step. Which isomer of alanine acylates faster? In the enzyme-catalysed reaction, which isomer of the amide hydrolyses faster? In the separation, why is the mixture heated in acid solution, and what is filtered off? How does the separation of the free alanine by dissolution in ethanol work?

If the acylation is carried out carelessly, particularly if the heating is too long or too strong, a by-product may form that is not hydrolysed by the enzyme. How does this happen?

9. A patent discloses this method of making the anti-AIDS drug d4T. The first few stages involve differentiating the three hydroxyl groups of 5'-methyluridine as shown below. Explain the reactions, especially the stereochemistry at the position of the bromine atom.

Suggest how the synthesis might be completed.

10. Mannose usually exists as the pyranoside shown below. This is in equilibrium with the furanoside. What is the conformation of the pyranoside and what is the stereochemistry of the furanoside? What other stereochemical change will occur more quickly than this isomerization?

Treatment of mannose with acetone and HCl gives the acetal shown. Explain the selectivity.

11. How are glycosides formed from phenols (in Nature or in the laboratory)? Why is the stereochemistry of the glycoside not related to that of the original sugar?

12. Draw all the keto and enol forms of ascorbic acid (vitamin C). Why is the one shown the most stable?

13. 'Caustic soda' (NaOH) was used to clean ovens and clear blocked drains. Many commercial products for these jobs with fancy names still contain NaOH. Even concentrated sodium carbonate (Na2CO3) does quite a good job. How do these cleaners work? Why is NaOH so dangerous to humans, particularly if it gets in the eye?

14. Bacterial cell walls contain the unnatural amino acid D-alanine. If you wanted to prepare a sample of D-ala, how would you go about it? (Hint. There is not enough in bacteria to make that a worthwhile source, but have you done Problem 8 yet?)
Nature’s NaBH₄ is a nucleotide: NADH or NADPH

In Chapter 49 we spent some time discussing the structure of nucleotides and their role as codons in protein synthesis. Now we shall see how Nature uses different nucleotides as reagents. Here is the structure of AMP, just to remind you, side by side with a new pyridine nucleotide.

These two nucleotides can combine together as a pyrophosphate to give a dinucleotide. Notice that the link is not at all the same as in the nucleic acids. The latter are joined by one phosphate that links the 3’-5’ positions. Here we have a pyrophosphate link between the two 5’-positions.
Notice also the positive charge on the nitrogen atom of the pyridine ring. This part of the molecule does all the work and from now on we will draw only the reactive part for clarity. This is NAD\(^+\), nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, and it is one of Nature’s most important oxidizing agents. Some reactions use NADP instead but this differs only in having an extra phosphate group on the adenosine portion so the same part structure will do for both. NAD\(^+\) and NADP both work by accepting a hydrogen atom and a pair of electrons from another compound. The reduced compounds are called NADH and NADPH.

The reduction of NAD\(^+\) (and NADP) is reversible, and NADH is itself a reducing agent. We will first look at one of its reactions: a typical reduction of a ketone. The ketone is pyruvic acid and the reduction product lactic acid, two important metabolites. The reaction is catalysed by the enzyme liver alcohol dehydrogenase.

This is a reaction that would also work in the laboratory with NaBH\(_4\) as the reducing agent, but there is a big difference. The product from the NaBH\(_4\) reaction must be racemic—no optical activity has been put in from compound, reagent, or solvent.

The names of enzymes are usually chosen to tell us where they come from and what job they do and the name ends ‘-ase’. A dehydrogenase is clearly a redox enzyme as it removes (or adds) hydrogen.

The reactive part of NAD
But the product from the enzymatic reaction is optically active. The two faces of pyruvic acid's carbonyl group are enantiotopic and, by controlling the addition so that it occurs from one face only, the reaction gives a single enantiomer of lactic acid.

Both the enzyme and the reagent NADH are single enantiomers and they cooperate by binding. The enzyme binds both the substrate (pyruvic acid) and the reagent (NADH) in a specific way so that the hydride is delivered to one enantiotopic face of the ketone. Pyruvic acid under physiological conditions will be the anion, pyruvate, so it is held close to the positively charged amino group of a lysine residue on the enzyme that also binds the amino group of NADH. A magnesium(II) cation, also held by the enzyme, binds the carbonyl group of the amide of NADH and the ketone in pyruvate. If this model is correct, only the top H atom (as drawn) of the diastereotopic CH2 group in NADH should be transferred to pyruvate. This has been proved by deuterium labelling.

Supporting evidence comes from a model system using a much simpler reducing agent. A dihydropyridine with a primary alcohol replacing the amide group in NADH and a simple benzyl group replacing the nucleotide forms stable esters with keto-acids. As soon as the ester is treated with magnesium(II) ions, intramolecular and stereospecific reduction occurs. The hydride ion is transferred from a stereogenic centre, which replaces the diastereotopic CH2 group in NADH.

When the ester is cleaved by transesterification with methoxide ion, the newly released hydroxy-ester is optically active.

The details of the reaction are probably a good model for the NADH reaction even down to the activation by magnesium(II) ions. A possible transition state would be very similar to the NADH transition state above.
Many other reactions use NADH as a reducing agent or NAD\(^+\) as oxidizing agent. Three molecules of NAD\(^+\) are used in the citric acid cycle (see the chart on p. 000). One of these oxidations is the simple transformation of a secondary alcohol (malate) to a ketone (oxaloacetate).

![Chemical diagram showing the conversion of malate to oxaloacetate](image)

Other redox reagents include dinucleotides such as FAD (flavine adenine dinucleotide), lipoic acid, which we will meet when we discuss the chemistry of thiamine, and ascorbic acid (vitamin C), which you met in Chapter 49. Ascorbic acid can form a stable enolate anion that can transfer a hydride ion to a suitable oxidant.

![Chemical diagram showing the oxidation of ascorbic acid](image)

In this mechanism 'X\(^+\)' represents an oxidant—a dangerously reactive peroxide perhaps, or even Fe(III) which must be reduced to Fe(II) as part of the reaction cycle of many iron-dependent enzymes.

### Reductive amination in nature

One of the best methods of amine synthesis in the laboratory is reductive amination, in which an imine (formed from a carbonyl compound and an amine) is reduced to a saturated amine. Common reducing agents include NaCNBH\(_3\) and hydrogen with a catalyst.

![Chemical diagram showing reductive amination](image)

This reaction, of course, produces racemic amines. But Nature transforms this simple reaction into a stereospecific and reversible one that is beautiful in its simplicity and cleverness. The reagents are a pair of substituted pyridines called pyridoxamine and pyridoxal.

![Chemical diagrams showing pyridoxamine and pyridoxal](image)
You might imagine that pyridoxamine is a product of reductive amination of pyridoxal with ammonia. In practice it doesn’t work like that. Nature uses an amine transfer rather than a simple reductive amination, and the family of enzymes that catalyse the process is the family of aminotransferases.

Pyridoxal is a coenzyme and it is carried around on the side chain of a lysine residue of the enzyme. Lysine has a long flexible side chain of four CH₂ groups ending with a primary amine (NH₂). This group forms an imine (what biochemists call a ‘Schiff base’) with pyridoxal. An imine is a good functional group for this purpose as imine formation is easily reversible.

When reductive amination or its reverse is required, the pyridoxal is transferred from the lysine imine to the carbonyl group of the substrate to form a new imine of the same sort. The most important substrates are the amino acids and their equivalent α-keto-acids.

Now the simple but amazing chemistry begins. By using the protonated nitrogen atom of the pyridine as an electron sink, the α proton of the amino acid can be removed to form a new imine at the top of the molecule and an enamine in the pyridine ring.

Now the electrons can return through the pyridine ring and pick up a proton at the top of the molecule. The proton can be picked up where it came from, but more fruitfully it can be picked up at the carbon atom on the other side of the nitrogen. Hydrolysis of this imine releases pyridoxamine and the keto-acid. All the natural amino acids are in equilibrium with their equivalent α-keto-acids by this mechanism, catalysed by an aminotransferase.
Reversing this reaction makes an amino acid stereospecifically out of an \( \alpha \)-keto-acid. In fact, a complete cycle is usually set up whereby one amino acid is converted to the equivalent \( \alpha \)-keto-acid while another \( \alpha \)-keto-acid is converted into its equivalent amino acid. This is true transamination.

Amino acids get used up (making proteins, for example) so, to keep life going, ammonia must be brought in from somewhere. The key amino acid in this link is glutamic acid. A true reductive amination using NADPH and ammonia builds glutamic acid from \( \alpha \)-keto-glutaric acid.

The other amino acids can now be made from glutamic acid by transamination. At the end of their useful life they are transaminated back to glutamic acid which, in mammals at least, gives its nitrogen to urea for excretion.

Pyridoxal is a versatile reagent in the biochemistry of amino acids

Pyridoxal is the reagent in other reactions of amino acids, all involving the imine as intermediate. The simplest is the racemization of amino acids by loss of a proton and its replacement on the other face of the enamine. The enamine, in the middle of the diagram below, can be reprotonated on either face of the prochiral imine (shown in green). Protonation on the bottom face would take us back to the natural amino acid from which the enamine was made in the first place. Protonation on the top face leads to the unnatural amino acid after ‘hydrolysis’ of the imine (really transfer of pyridoxal to a lysine residue of the enzyme).
A very similar reaction is decarboxylation. Starting from the same imine we could lose carbon dioxide instead of a proton by a very similar mechanism. Reprotonation and imine transfer releases the amine corresponding to the original amino acid. The enzymes catalysing these reactions are called decarboxylases.

In Chapter 43 we mentioned the role of histamine in promoting acid secretion in the stomach, and its role in causing gastric ulcers. The drug cimetidine was designed to counteract the effect of histamine. Histamine is produced in the body by decarboxylation of histidine using the mechanism you have just seen.

How is it possible for the same reagent operating on the same substrate (an amino acid) to do at will one of two quite different things—removal and/or exchange of a proton and decarboxylation? The answer, of course, lies in the enzymes. These hold pyridoxal exceptionally tightly by using all the available handles: the hydroxy and phosphate groups, the positively charged nitrogen atom, and even the methyl group. The diagram shows the proposed binding of the lysine imine of pyridoxal by an aminotransferase.

The green line shows an imaginary shape of the enzyme chain into which fit acidic groups and basic groups forming hydrogen bonds to groups on the coenzyme. Around the methyl group are alkyl-substituted amino acids, which form a hydrophobic region. Even when the lysine attachment is exchanged for the substrate, all these interactions remain in place. The substrate is bound by similar interactions with other groups on the enzyme.
Control over the choice of reaction arises because the different enzymes bind the substrate—pyridoxal imine in different ways. Decarboxylases bind so that the C–C bond to be broken is held orthogonal to the pyridine ring and parallel to the p orbitals in the ring. Then the bond can be broken and CO₂ can be lost.

Racemases and transaminases bind the substrate—pyridoxal imine so that the C–H bond is parallel to the p orbitals in the ring so that proton removal can occur. Enzymes do not speed reactions up indiscriminately—they can selectively accelerate some reactions at the expense of others, even those involving the same reagents.

Nature’s enols—lysine enamines and coenzyme A

The glycolysis pathway breaks down glucose to produce energy, and in doing so produces smaller molecules for use in the citric acid cycle. In reverse, it allows the synthesis of the six-carbon sugar fructose from two three-carbon fragments. A key reaction is the step in which these two C₃ sugars combine. They are glyceraldehyde and dihydroxyacetone and we met them and their interconversion in the last chapter.

The reaction is effectively an aldol condensation between the enol of the keto-sugar phosphate and the electrophilic aldehyde of glyceraldehyde phosphate and the enzyme is named appropriately aldolase. The product is the keto-hexose fructose-1,6-diphosphate.

No enolate ion is formed in this aldol. Instead a lysine residue in the enzyme forms an imine with the keto-triose.

Proton transfers allow this imine to be converted into an enamine, which acts as the nucleophile in the aldol reaction. Stereochemical control (it’s a syn aldol) comes from the way in which the two molecules are held by the enzyme as they combine. The product is the imine, which is hydrolysed to the open-chain form of fructose-1,6-diphosphate.
Many other reactions in nature use enamines, mostly those of lysine. However, a more common enol equivalent is based on thiol esters derived from coenzyme A.

**Coenzyme A and thiol esters**

Coenzyme A is an adenine nucleotide at one end, linked by a 5'-pyrophosphate to pantothenic acid, a compound that looks rather like a tripeptide, and then to an amino thiol. Here is the structure broken down into its parts.

![Coenzyme A structure](image)

By now you will realize that most of this molecule is there to allow interaction with the various enzymes that catalyse the reactions of coenzyme A. We will abbreviate it from now on as CoASH where the SH is the vital thiol functional group, and all the reactions we will be interested in are those of esters of CoASH. These are thiol esters, as opposed to normal ‘alcohol esters’, and the difference is worth a few comments.

Thiol esters are less conjugated than ordinary esters (see Chapter 28, p. 000), and ester hydrolysis occurs more rapidly with thiol esters than with ordinary esters because in the rate-determining step (nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group) there is less conjugation to destroy. The thiolate is also a better leaving group.

Another reaction that goes better with thiol esters than with ordinary esters is enolization. This is an equilibrium reaction and the enol has lost the conjugation present in the ester. The thiol ester has less to lose so is more enolized. This is the reaction of acetyl CoA that we are now going to discuss. We have mentioned the citric acid cycle several times and it has appeared in two
diagrams but we have not so far discussed the chemistry involved. The key step is the synthesis of citric acid from oxaloacetate and acetyl CoA. The reaction is essentially an aldol reaction between the enol of an acetate ester and an electrophilic ketone and the enzyme is known as citrate synthase.

The mechanism in the frame shows the enol of acetyl CoA attacking the reactive ketone. In nature the enolization is catalysed by a basic carboxylate group (Asp) and an acidic histidine, both part of the enzyme, so that even this easy reaction goes faster.

In the C–C bond-forming step, the same histidine is still there to remove the enol proton again and another histidine, in its protonated form, is placed to donate a proton to the oxygen atom of the ketone. You should see now why histidine, with a pK$_{a}$ of about 7, is so useful to enzymes: it can act either as an acid or as a base.

Even the hydrolysis of the reactive thiol ester is catalysed by the enzyme and the original histidine again functions as a proton donor. Acetyl CoA has played its part in all steps. The enolization and the hydrolysis in particular are better with the thiol ester.

CoA thiol esters are widely used in nature. Mostly they are acetyl CoA, but other thiol esters are also used to make enols. We will see more of this chemistry in the next chapter. The two enol equivalents that we have met so far are quite general: lysine enamines can be used for any aldehyde or ketone and CoA thiol esters for any ester. Another class of enol equivalent—the enol ester—has just one representative but it is a most important one.

**Phosphoenolpyruvate**

Pyruvic acid is an important metabolite in its own right as we shall see shortly. It is the simplest α-keto-acid (2-oxopropanoic acid). Having the two carbonyl groups adjacent makes them more reactive: the ketone is more electrophilic and enolizes more readily and the acid is stronger. Pyruvate is in equilibrium with the amino acid alanine by an aminotransferase reaction catalysed by pyridoxal (above).
Nature uses the enol phosphate of pyruvic acid (phosphoenolpyruvate or PEP) as an important reagent. We might imagine making this compound by first forming the enol and then esterifying on oxygen by some phosphorylating agent such as ATP.

Now, in fact, this reaction does occur in nature as part of the glycolysis pathway, but it occurs almost entirely in reverse. PEP is used as a way to make ATP from ADP during the oxidation of energy-storing sugars. An enol is a better leaving group than an ordinary alcohol especially if it can be protonated at carbon. The reverse reaction might look like this.

PEP is also used as an enol in the making of carbon–carbon bonds when the electrophile is a sugar molecule and we will see this reaction in the next chapter. So, if PEP is not made by enolization of pyruvate, how is it made? The answer is by dehydration. The phosphate is already in place when the dehydration occurs, catalysed by the enzyme enolase.

You saw in Chapter 19 how simple OH groups could be lost in dehydration reactions. Either the OH group was protonated by strong acid (this is not an option in living things) or an enol or enolate pushed the OH group out in an E1cB-like mechanism. This must be the case here as the better leaving group (phosphate) is ignored and the worse leaving group (OH) expelled.
This would be an unusual way to make an enol in the laboratory but it can be used, usually to make stable enols. An example that takes place under mildly basic conditions is the dehydration of the bicyclic keto-diol in dilute sodium hydroxide—presumably by an E1cB mechanism.

Pyruvic acid and acetyl CoA: the link between glycolysis and the citric acid cycle

We have now examined the mechanism of several steps in glycolysis and one in the citric acid cycle and we have seen enough to look at the outline of these two important processes and the link between them (see opposite).

You have already seen that citric acid is made from acetyl CoA. The acetyl CoA comes in its turn from pyruvic acid. Pyruvic acid comes from many sources but the most important is glycolysis: acetyl CoA is the link between glycolysis and the citric acid cycle. The key reaction involves both CoASH and pyruvate and carbon dioxide is lost. This is an oxidation as well and the oxidant is NAD+. The overall reaction is easily summarized.

Nature’s acyl anion equivalent (d1 reagent) is thiamine pyrophosphate

Thiamine pyrophosphate looks quite like a nucleotide. It has two heterocyclic rings, a pyrimidine similar to those found in DNA and a thiazolium salt. This ring has been alkylated on nitrogen by the pyrimidine part of the molecule. Finally, there is a pyrophosphate attached to the thiazolium salt by an ethyl side chain.
the link between glycolysis and the citric acid cycle
The key part of the molecule for reactivity is the thiazolium salt in the middle. The proton between the N and S atoms can be removed by quite weak bases to form an ylid. You saw sulfonium ylids in Chapter 46, and there is some resemblance here, but this ylid is an ammonium ylid with extra stabilization from the sulfur atom. The anion is in an sp\(^2\) orbital, and it adds to the reactive carbonyl group of pyruvate.

Now the carboxylate can be lost from the former pyruvate as the positively charged imine in the thiamine molecule provides a perfect electron sink to take away the electrons from the C–C bond that must be broken.

This new intermediate contains a new and strange C=C double bond. It has OH, N, and S substituents making it very electron-rich. As the nitrogen is the most electron-donating you can view it as an enamine, and it attacks the disulfide functional group of lipoic acid, the other cofactor in the reaction.

Now the thiamine can be expelled using the green OH group. The leaving group is again the ylid of thiamine, which functions as a catalyst.

The product is a thiol ester and so can exchange with CoASH in a simple ester exchange reaction. This is a nucleophilic attack on the carbonyl group and will release the reduced form of lipoic acid. All that is necessary to complete the cycle is the oxidation of the dithiol back to the disulfide. This is such an easy reaction to do that it would occur in air anyway but it is carried out in nature by FAD, a close relative of NAD\(^+\).
This is one of the most complicated sequences of reactions that we have discussed so far. It is critical to living things because it links glycolysis and the citric acid cycle. Nature has provided not one enzyme but three enzymes to catalyse this process. In the cell they are massed together as a single protein complex.

At the centre is 'enzyme 2' which binds the acetyl group through a lipoic acid–lysine amide. On the one side this acetyl group is delivered from pyruvate by the ministrations of thiamine pyrophosphate and 'enzyme 1' and on the other it is delivered to CoA as the free thiol ester. Enzyme 3 recycles
the reduced lipoic acid using FAD and then NAD\(^+\). This remarkable assembly of proteins maintains stocks of acetyl CoA for use in the citric acid cycle and for building complex organic molecules by enol chemistry, as we will see in the next chapter.

One reaction in this sequence is worth detailed analysis. The enzyme-bound lipoic thiol ester is a perfectly normal thiol ester and we would expect it to be formed by acylation of the thiol.

![Thiol ester formation](image1)

But this thiol ester is not formed by the expected mechanism in the enzymatic reaction. Thiamine delivers a nucleophilic acetyl group to an electrophilic sulfur atom—the reverse polarity to normal ester formation.

![Thiol ester formation with reverse polarity](image2)

The compound formed from thiamine pyrophosphate and pyruvic acid is Nature's nucleophilic acetyl group. This is a d\(^1\) reagent like the dithiane anion you met in Chapter 46.

![Thiamicine pyrophosphate and Stetter reagent](image3)

If this is really true and not just a theoretical analogy, it ought to be possible to learn from Nature and design useful d\(^1\) reagents based on thiamine. This was done by Stetter using simplified thiamines. The pyrimidine is replaced by a benzene ring and the pyrophosphate is removed. This leaves a simple thiazolium salt called a Stetter reagent.

![Stetter reagent](image4)

By analogy with the biological reaction, we need only a weak base (Et\(_3\)N) to make the ylid from the thiazolium salt. The ylid adds to aldehydes and creates a d\(^1\) nucleophile equivalent to an acyl anion.

![Ylid formation](image5)

A useful application of these reagents is in conjugate addition to unsaturated carbonyl compounds. Few d\(^1\) reagents will do this as most are very basic and prefer to add directly to the carbonyl
Rearrangements in the biosynthesis of valine and isoleucine

In nature, thiamine pyrophosphate also catalyses reactions of α-keto-acids other than pyruvic acid. One such sequence leads through some remarkable chemistry to the biosynthesis of the branched-chain amino acids valine and isoleucine.

The remarkable aspect of this chemistry is that it involves 1,2-alkyl shifts in pinacol-like rearrangements (Chapter 37). The sequence starts as before and we will pick it up after the addition and decarboxylation of pyruvate and as the resulting d1 reagent adds to the new α-keto-acid.

Decomposition of this product with the release of the thiazolium ylid also releases the product of coupling between the two keto-acids: a 1-hydroxy-2-keto-acid (in green). The original keto group of
the pyruvate reappears—it's clear that an acetyl anion equivalent (the d1 reagent) has added to the keto group of the new keto-acid. The thiazolium ylid is free to catalyse the next round of the reaction.

The green hydroxy-keto-acid is now primed for rearrangement. The migration of the group R is pushed by the removal of a proton from the OH group and pulled by the electron-accepting power of the keto group. Notice that the group R (Me or Et) migrates in preference to CO₂H. Usually in rearrangements the group better able to bear a positive charge migrates (Chapter 37).

Control in this reaction is likely to be exerted stereoelectronically by the enzyme as it was in the pyridoxal reactions above. Since the C–R bond is held parallel to the p orbitals of the ketone, R migration occurs, but if the CO₂H group were to be held parallel to the p orbitals of the ketone, decarboxylation would occur. Next, a simple reduction with NADPH converts the ketone into an alcohol and prepares the way for a second rearrangement.

The second rearrangement is even more like a pinacol rearrangement because the starting material is a 1,2-diol. The tertiary alcohol is protonated and leaves, and again the CO₂H group does not migrate even though the alternative is merely hydride.

Finally, a pyridoxal transamination converts the two keto-acids stereospecifically to the corresponding amino acids, valine (R = Me) and isoleucine (R = Et). The donor amino acid is probably glutamate—it usually is in amino acid synthesis.
Carbon dioxide is carried by biotin

We have added and removed carbon dioxide on several occasions in this chapter and the last but we have not until now said anything about how this happens. You would not expect gaseous CO₂ to be available inside a cell: instead CO₂ is carried around as a covalent compound with another coenzyme—biotin.

Biotin has two fused five-membered heterocyclic rings. The lower is a cyclic sulfide and has a long side chain ending in a carboxylic acid for attachment—yes, you’ve guessed it—to a lysine residue of a protein. The upper ring is a urea—it has a carbonyl group flanked by two nitrogen atoms. It is this ring that reversibly captures CO₂, on the nitrogen atom opposite the long side chain. The attachment to the enzyme as a lysine amide gives it an exceptionally long flexible chain and allows it to deliver CO₂ wherever it’s needed.

One of the important points at which CO₂ enters as a reagent carried by biotin is in fatty acid biosynthesis where CO₂ is transferred to the enol of acetyl CoA. A magnesium(II) ion is also required and we may imagine the reaction as a nucleophilic attack of the enol on the magnesium salt of carboxybiotin. Most of the CO₂ transfers we have met take place by mechanisms of this sort: nucleophilic attack on a bound molecule of CO₂, usually involving a metal ion.

Very similar reactions can be carried out in the laboratory. This simple cyclic urea reacts twice with the Grignard reagent MeMgBr to give a dimagnesium derivative, probably having the structure shown with one O–Mg and one N–Mg bond.
This magnesium derivative reacts with two molecules of CO₂ to give a double adduct with both nitrogens combining with CO₂. The product is stable as the double magnesium salt, which is a white powder.

Simply heating this white powder with a ketone leads to efficient carboxylation and the unstable keto-acid may be trapped with diazomethane to form the stable methyl ester. The mechanism is presumably very like that drawn above for the transfer of CO₂ from carboxybiontin to acetyl CoA. Reactions like this prove nothing about the biochemical reaction but they at least show us that such reactions are possible and help us to have confidence that we are right about what Nature is doing.

The shikimic acid pathway

We have described reactions from various different pathways in this chapter so far, but now we are going to look at one complete pathway in detail. It is responsible for the biosynthesis of a large number of compounds, particularly in plants. Most important for us is the biosynthesis of the aromatic amino acids Phe (phenylalanine), Tyr (tyrosine), and Trp (tryptophan). These are 'essential' amino acids for humans—we have to have them in our diet as we cannot make them ourselves. We get them from plants and microorganisms.

So how do plants make aromatic rings?

A clue to the chemistry involved comes from the structure of caffeyl quinic acid, a compound that is present in instant coffee in some quantity. It is usually about 13% of the soluble solids from coffee beans.

This ester has two six-membered rings—one aromatic and one rather like the sugar alcohols we were discussing in the last chapter. You might imagine making an aromatic ring by the dehydration (losing three molecules of water) of a cyclohexane triol and the saturated ring in caffeyl quinic acid looks a good candidate. It is now known that both rings come from the same intermediate, shikimic acid.
This key intermediate has given its name to Nature’s general route to aromatic compounds and many other related six-membered ring compounds: the shikimic acid pathway. This pathway contains some of the most interesting reactions (from a chemist’s point of view) in biology. It starts with an aldol reaction between phosphoenol pyruvate as the nucleophilic enol component and the C₄ sugar erythrose 4-phosphate as the electrophilic aldehyde.

**Wood**

Even the structural material of plants, lignin, comes from the shikimic acid pathway. Lignin—from which wood is made—has a variable structure according to the plant and the position in the plant. A typical splinter is shown here.

Hydrolysis of the phosphate releases the aldol product, a C₇ α-keto-acid with one new stereogenic centre, which is in equilibrium with a hemiacetal, just like a sugar. This intermediate has the right number of carbon atoms for shikimic acid and the next stage is a cyclization. If we redraw the C₇ α-keto-acid in the right shape for cyclization we can see what is needed. The green arrow shows only which bond needs to be formed.

This reaction looks like an aldol reaction too and there is an obvious route to the required enol by elimination of phosphate. This would require the removal of a proton (green in the diagram) that is not at all acidic.

The problem can be avoided if the hydroxyl group at C5 is first oxidized to a ketone (NAD⁺ is the oxidant). Then the green proton is much more acidic, and the elimination becomes an E₁cB.
reaction, similar to the one in the synthesis of PEP. True, the ketone must be reduced back to the alcohol afterwards but Nature can deal with that easily.

This product is dehydroquinic acid and is an intermediate on the way to shikimic acid. It is also in equilibrium with quinic acid, which is not an intermediate on the pathway but which appears in some natural products like the coffee ester caffeyl quinic acid.

The route to shikimic acid in plants involves, as the final steps, the dehydration of dehydroquinic acid and then reduction of the carbonyl group. Doing the reactions this way round means that the dehydration can be E1cB—much preferred under biological conditions. This is what happens.

The final reduction uses NADPH as the reagent and is, of course, totally stereoselective with the hydride coming in from the top face of the green ketone as drawn. At last we have arrived at the halfway stage and the key intermediate, shikimic acid.

The most interesting chemistry comes in the second half of the pathway. The first step is a chemoselective phosphorylation of one of the three OH groups by ATP—as it happens, the OH group that has just been formed by reduction of a ketone. This step prepares that OH group for later elimination. Next, a second molecule of PEP appears and adds to the OH group at the other side of the molecule. This is PEP in its enol ether role, forming an acetal under acid catalysis. The reaction occurs with retention of stereochemistry so we know that the OH group acts as a nucleophile and that the ring–OH bond is not broken.

Now a 1,4 elimination occurs. This is known to be a syn elimination on the enzyme. When such reactions occur in the laboratory, they can be syn or anti. The leaving group is the green phosphate added two steps before.
The product is chorismic acid and this undergoes the most interesting step of all—a [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement. Notice that the new (black) σ bond forms on the same face of the ring as the old (green) σ bond: this is, as you should expect, a suprafacial rearrangement.

The most favourable conformation for chorismic acid has the substituents pseudoequatorial but the [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangement cannot take place in that conformation. First, the diaxial conformation must be formed and the chair transition state achieved. Then the required orbitals will be correctly aligned.

These reactions occur well without the enzyme (Chapter 36) but the enzyme accelerates this reaction by about a $10^6$ increase in rate. There is no acid or base catalysis and we may suppose that the enzyme binds the transition state better than it binds the starting materials. We know this to be the case, because close structural analogues of the six-membered ring transition state also bind to the enzyme and stop it working. An example is shown alongside—a compound that resembles the transition state but can’t react.

We have arrived at prephenic acid, which as its name suggests is the last compound before aromatic compounds are formed, and we may call this the end of the shikimic acid pathway. The final stages of the formation of phenylalanine and tyrosine start with aromatization. Prephenic acid is unstable and loses water and CO$_2$ to form phenylpyruvic acid. This α-keto-acid can be converted into the amino acid by the usual transamination with pyridoxal.

The route to tyrosine requires a preliminary oxidation and then a decarboxylation with the
electrons of the breaking C–C bond ending up in a ketone group. Transamination again gives the amino acid.

Other shikimate products

Many natural products are formed from the shikimate pathway. Most can be recognized by the aromatic ring joined to a three-carbon atom side chain. Two simple examples are coumarin, responsible for the smell of mown grass and hay, and umbelliferone, which occurs in many plants and is used in suntan oils as it absorbs UV light strongly. These compounds have the same aryl-C3 structure as Phe and Tyr, but they have an extra oxygen atom attached to the benzene ring and an alkene in the C3 side chain.

An important shikimate metabolite is podophyllotoxin, an antitumour compound—some podophyllotoxin derivatives are used to combat lung cancer. The compound can be split up notionally into two shikimate-derived fragments (shown in red and green). Both are quite different and there is obviously a lot of chemistry to do after the shikimic acid pathway is finished.

Among the more interesting reactions involved in making all three of these natural products are the loss of ammonia from phenylalanine to give an alkene and the introduction of extra OH groups around the benzene rings. We know how a para OH of Tyr is introduced directly by the oxidation of prephenic acid before decarboxylation and it is notable that the extra oxygen functionalities appear next to that point. This is a clue to the mechanism of the oxidation.

Alkenes by elimination of ammonia—phenyl alanine ammonia lyase

Many amino acids can lose ammonia to give an unsaturated acid. The enzymes that catalyse these reactions are known as amino acid ammonia lyases. The one that concerns us at the end of the shikimic acid pathway is phenylalanine ammonia lyase, which catalyses the elimination of ammonia from phenylalanine to give the common metabolite cinnamic acid.

This reaction gives only E-cinnamic acid and the proton *anti* to the amino group is lost. This might make us think that we have an E2 reaction with a base on the enzyme removing the required proton. But a closer look at this mechanism makes it very unconvincing. The proton that is removed has no acidity and ammonia is not a good leaving group. It is very unusual for Nature to use an enzyme to make a reaction happen that doesn’t happen at all otherwise. It is much more common for Nature to make a good reaction better.

So how does an ammonia lyase work? The enzyme makes the ammonia molecule into a much better leaving group by using a serine residue. This serine is attached to the protein through its carboxyl group by the usual amide bond but its amino group is bound as an imine. This allows it to eliminate water to form a double bond before the phenylalanine gets involved. The elimination converts serine into a dehydroalanine residue. This is an E1cB elimination using only general acid and base catalysis as the proton to be lost is acidic and an enol can be an intermediate.
The alkene of the dehydroenzyme is conjugated with a carbonyl group—it’s electrophilic and the amino group of Phe can add to it in conjugate fashion. When the enol tautomerizes back to a carbonyl compound, it can be protonated on the imine carbon because the imine is conjugated to the enol. This might remind you of pyridoxal’s chemistry (p. 000).

A second tautomerism makes an enamine—again very like the pyridoxal mechanisms you saw earlier.

Now at last the secret is revealed. We can break the C–N bond and use the carbonyl group as an electron sink. The acidity of the proton that must be lost is no greater but the nitrogen atom has become a very much better leaving group.

The difficult elimination is accomplished by making it an ammonia transfer reaction rather than an elimination of ammonia. Recycling the enzyme does eventually require elimination of ammonia but in an easy E1cB rather than a difficult E2 reaction. Overall, a difficult reaction—elimination of ammonia—is accomplished in steps that involve no strong acids or strong bases, and most of the steps are simple proton transfers, often tautomerisms between imines, enols, and amides.
Haemoglobin carries oxygen as an iron(II) complex

Biological oxidations are very widespread. Human metabolism depends on oxidation, and on getting oxygen, which makes up 20% of the atmosphere, into cells. The oxygen transporter, from atmosphere to cell, is haemoglobin.

The reactive part of haemoglobin is a porphyrin. These are aromatic molecules with 18 electrons around a conjugated ring formed from four molecules of a five-membered nitrogen heterocycle. Chemically, symmetrical porphyrins are easily made from pyrrole and an aldehyde.

The reactive part of haemoglobin is called haem, and it is an iron(II) complex. It is unsymmetrically substituted with carboxylic acid chains on one side and vinyl groups on the other.

Haem is bound to proteins to make haemoglobin (in blood) and myoglobin (in muscle). The hydrophilic carboxylate groups stick out into the surrounding medium, while the majority of the molecule is embedded in a hydrophobic cleft in the protein, lined with amino acids such as leucine and valine. The octahedral coordination sphere of the iron(II) is completed with a histidine residue from the protein and an oxygen molecule.

The oxygen complex can be drawn like this or, alternatively, as an Fe(III) complex of an oxyanion (below).

It is difficult to draw detailed mechanisms for oxidations by iron complexes but it is the oxygen atom further from Fe that reacts. You can see in principle how breakage of the weak O–O bond could deliver an oxygen atom to a substrate and leave an Fe(III)–O⁻ complex behind.
Oxygen molecules are transferred from haemoglobin to other haems, such as the enzyme P450, and to a wide range of oxidizing agents. Almost any molecule we ingest that isn’t a nutrient—a drug molecule, for example—is destroyed by oxidation. The details of the mechanisms of these oxidations have proved very difficult to elucidate, but the hydroxylation of benzene is an exception. We do know how it happens, and it’s another case of Nature using enzymes to do some really remarkable chemistry.

Aromatic rings are hydroxylated via an epoxide intermediate

The oxidizing agents here are related to FAD. We said little about FADH$_2$ as a reducing agent earlier in this chapter because it is rather similar to NADH which we have discussed in detail. FAD is another dinucleotide and it contains an AMP unit linked through the 5’ position by a pyrophosphate group to another nucleotide. The difference is that the other nucleotide is flavin mononucleotide. Here is the complete structure.

The whole thing is FAD. Cutting FAD in half down the middle of the pyrophosphate link would give us two nucleotides, AMP and FMN (flavin mononucleotide). The sugar in each case is ribose (in its furanose form in AMP but in open-chain form in FMN) so the flavin nucleotide is riboflavin. We can abbreviate this complex structure to the reactive part, which is the flavin. The rest we shall just call ‘R’.

Redox reactions with FAD involve the transfer of two hydrogen atoms to the part of the molecule shown in green. Typical reactions of FAD involve dehydrogenations—as in double bond formation from single bonds. Of course, one of the H atoms can be transferred to FAD as a proton—only one need be a hydride ion H$^-$, though both could be transferred as radicals (H$^+$).
After FAD has been used as an oxidant in this fashion, the FAD\(_2\) reacts with molecular oxygen to give a hydroperoxide, which decomposes back to FAD and gives an anion of hydrogen peroxide, which would in turn be reduced by other reagents.

In the reactions we are now concerned with, the hydroperoxide intermediate itself is the important reagent, before it loses hydroperoxide anion. This intermediate is an oxidizing agent—for example, it reacts quite dramatically with benzene to give an epoxide.

This benzene oxide may look very dubious and unstable, but benzene oxides can be made in the laboratory by ordinary chemical reactions (though not usually by the direct oxidation of benzene). We can instead start with a Diels–Alder reaction between butadiene and an alkyne. Epoxidation with a nucleophilic reagent (HO–O\(^-\) from H\(_2\)O\(_2\) and NaOH) occurs chemoselectively on the more electrophilic double bond—the one that is conjugated to the electron-withdrawing carbonyl group. Bromination of the remaining alkene gives a dibromo-epoxide.

This is an ordinary electrophilic addition to an alkene so the two bromine atoms are \textit{anti} in the product. Elimination under basic conditions with DBN gives the benzene oxide.
At least, it ought to have given the benzene oxide! The compound turned out to have a fluxional structure—it was a mixture of compounds that equilibrate by a reversible disrotatory electrocyclic reaction.

Treatment with acid turns the benzene oxide/oxepin into an aromatic ring by a very interesting mechanism. The epoxide opens to give the cation, which is not conjugated with the electron-withdrawing CO2Me group, and then a migration of that CO2Me group occurs. This has been proved by isotope labelling experiments. The final product is the ortho-hydroxy-ester, known as methyl salicylate.

This chemistry seems rather exotic, but in the degradation of phenylalanine two benzene oxide intermediates and two such rearrangements occur one after the other. This is the initial sequence.

The first reaction involves a hydroperoxide related to the FAD hydroperoxide you have just seen but based on a simpler heterocyclic system, a biopterin. The reaction is essentially the same and a benzene oxide is formed.

The biopterin product is recycled by elimination of water, reduction using NADPH as the reagent, and reaction with molecular oxygen. The other product, the phenylalanine oxide, rearranges with a hydride shift followed by the loss of a proton to give tyrosine.
We know that this is the mechanism because we can make the green H a deuterium atom. We then find that deuterium is present in the tyrosine product ortho to the phenolic hydroxyl group. When the migration occurs, the deuterium atom must go as there is no alternative, but in the next step there is a choice and H loss will be preferred to D loss because of the kinetic isotope effect (Chapter 19). Most of the D remains in the product.

A shift of a larger group comes two steps later in the synthesis of homogentisic acid. Another labelling experiment, this time with $^{18}$O$_2$, shows that both atoms of oxygen end up in the product.

The key intermediate is a peroxo-acid formed after decarboxylation. The peroxo-acid is perfectly placed for an intramolecular epoxidation of a double bond in the benzene ring next to the side chain.

The epoxide can now rearrange with the whole side chain migrating in a reaction very similar to the laboratory rearrangement to give methyl salicylate that you saw on p. 000.

When hydroxylation occurs next to an OH group that is already there, no NIH shift occurs. This is because the epoxide is opened by the push of electrons from the OH group and there is only one H atom to be lost anyway. The cofactor for these enzymes is slightly different, being again the hydroperoxide from FAD, but the principle is the same.

In the next chapter you will see how hydroxylation of benzene rings plays an important part in the biosynthesis of alkaloids and other aromatic natural products.
Problems

1. On standing in alkali in the laboratory, prephenic acid rearranges to 4-hydroxyphenyl-lactic acid with specific incorporation of deuterium label as shown. Suggest a mechanism, being careful to draw realistic conformations.

![Prephenic acid rearrangement](image)

2. Write a full reaction scheme for the conversion of ammonia and pyruvate to alanine in living things. You will need to refer to the section of the chapter on pyridoxal to be able to give a complete answer.

3. Give a mechanism for this reaction. You will find the Stetter catalyst described in the chapter. How is this sequence biomimetic?

![Stetter catalyst](image)

What starting material would be required for formation of the natural product cis-jasmon by an intramolecular aldol reaction (Chapter 27)? How would you make this compound using a Stetter reaction?

4. The amino acid cyanoalanine is found in leguminous plants (*Lathyrus*) but not in proteins. It is made in the plant from cysteine and cyanide by a two-step process catalysed by pyridoxal phosphate. Suggest a detailed mechanism.

![Cysteine to cyanoalanine](image)

5. This chemical reaction might be said to be similar to a reaction in the shikimic acid pathway. Compare the two mechanisms and suggest how the model might be made closer and more interesting.

![Oxidation of thiol ester](image)

6. Stereospecific deuteriation of the substrate for enolase, the enzyme that makes phosphoenol pyruvate, gives the results shown below. What does this tell us definitely about the reaction and what might it suggest about the mechanism?

![Deuterium labelling](image)

7. This rearrangement was studied as a biomimetic version of the NIH shift. Write a mechanism for the reaction. Do you consider it a good model reaction? If not, how might it be made better?

![NADH reduction experiment](image)

8. The following experiments relate to the chemical and biological behaviour of NADH. Explain what they tell us.

(a) This FAD analogue can be reduced *in vitro* with NADH in D$_2$O with deuterium incorporation in the product as shown.

![FAD reduction](image)

(b) NADH does not reduce benzaldehyde *in vitro* but it does reduce this compound.

![Benzaldehyde reduction](image)

9. Oxidation of this simple thiol ester gives a five-membered cyclic disulfide. The reaction is proposed as a model for the behaviour of lipoic acid in living things. Draw a mechanism for the reaction and make the comparison.

![Thiol ester oxidation](image)

10. This curious compound is chiral—indeed it has been prepared as the (–) enantiomer. Explain the nature of the chirality.
This compound has been used as a chemical model for pyridoxamine. For example, it transaminates phenylpyruvate under the conditions shown here. Comment on the analogy and the role of Zn(II). In what ways is the model compound worse and in what ways better than pyridoxamine itself?

11. Enzymes such as aldolase, thought to operate by the formation of an imine and/or an enamine with a lysine in the enzyme, can be studied by adding NaBH₄ to a mixture of enzyme and substrate. For example, treatment of the enzyme with the aldehyde shown below and NaBH₄ gives a permanently inhibited enzyme that on hydrolysis reveals a modified amino acid in place of one of the lysines. What is the structure of the modified amino acid, and why is this particular aldehyde chosen?

12. This question is about the hydrolysis of esters by 'serine' enzymes. First, interpret these results: The hydrolysis of this ester is very much faster than that of ethyl benzoate itself. It is catalysed by imidazole and then there is a primary isotope effect (Chapter 41) \( k(\text{OH}) / k(\text{OD}) = 3.5 \). What is the mechanism? What is the role of the histidine?

The serine enzymes have a serine residue vital for catalysis. The serine OH group is known to act as a nucleophilic catalyst. Draw out the mechanism for the hydrolysis of \( p \)-nitrophenyl acetate.

The enzyme also has a histidine residue vital for catalysis. Use your mechanism from the first part of the question to say how the histidine residue might help. The histidine residue is known to help both the formation and the hydrolysis of the intermediate. The enzyme hydrolyses both \( p \)-nitrophenyl acetate and \( p \)-nitrophenyl thiolactate at the same rate. Which is the rate-determining step?

13. Give mechanisms for the biological formation of biopterin hydroperoxide and its reaction with phenylalanine. The reactions were discussed in the chapter but no details were given.

14. Revision of Chapter 48. How many electrons are there on the iron atom in the oxyhaemoglobin structure shown in the chapter? Does it matter if you consider the complex to be of Fe(II) or Fe(III)? Why do zinc porphyrins need two extra ligands and what type of ligands should they be?
Natural products

Introduction

By natural products, we mean the molecules of nature. Of course, all life is made of molecules, and we will not be discussing in great detail the major biological molecules, such as proteins and nucleic acids, which we looked at in Chapters 49 and 50. In this chapter we shall talk much more about molecules such as adrenaline (epinephrine). Adrenaline is a human hormone. It is produced in moments of stress and increases our blood pressure and heart rate ready for ‘fight or flight’. You’ve got to sit an exam tomorrow—surge of adrenaline. To an organic chemist adrenaline is intensely interesting because of its remarkable biological activity—but it is also a molecule whose chemical reactions can be studied, whose NMR spectrum can be analysed, which can be synthesized, and which can be imitated in the search for new medicines.

By the end of this chapter we hope you will be able to recognize some basic classes of natural products and know a bit about their chemistry. We will meet alkaloids such as conine, the molecule in hemlock that killed Socrates, and terpenes such as thujone, which was probably the toxin in absinthe that killed the nineteenth-century artists in Paris.

Then there are the ambiguous natural products such as the steroid cholesterol, which may cause innumerable deaths through heart disease but which is a vital component of cell walls, and the polyketide thromboxane, one drop of which would instantaneously clot all the blood in your body but without which you would bleed to death if you cut yourself.

Connections

Building on:
- Stereochemistry ch16
- Conformational analysis ch18
- Enolate chemistry and synthesis ch24–ch30
- Pericyclic reactions ch35–ch36
- Rearrangement and fragmentation ch37–ch38
- Radicals ch39
- Chemistry of life ch49
- Mechanisms in biological chemistry ch50

Arriving at:
- Natural products are made by secondary metabolism
- Natural products come in enormous variety, but fall mainly into four types: alkaloids, polyketides, terpenes, and steroids
- Alkaloids are amines made from amino acids
- Pyrrolidine alkaloids from ornithine; benzylisoquinoline alkaloids from tyrosine
- Morphine alkaloids are made by radical cyclizations
- Fatty acids are built up from acetyl CoA and malonyl CoA subunits
- Polyketides are unreduced variants of fatty acids
- Terpenes are made from mevalonic acid
- Steroids are tetracyclic terpene derivatives
- Biomimetic synthesis: learning from Nature

Looking forward to:
- Organic synthesis ch53
Natural products and Sorensen’s Classics in total

Before moving on, just pause to admire brevetoxin, a wonderful and deadly molecule. Look at the alternating oxygen atoms on the top and bottom faces of alternate rings. Look at the rings themselves — six-, seven-, and eight-membered but each with one and no more than one oxygen atom. Trace the continuous carbon chain running from the lactone carbonyl group in the bottom left-hand corner to the aldehyde carbonyl in the top right. There is no break in this chain and, other than the methyl groups, no branch. With 22 stereogenic centres, this is a beautiful piece of molecular architecture. If you want to read more about brevetoxin, read the last chapter in Nicolaou and Sorensen’s Classics in total.

Many natural products are the source of important life-saving drugs — consider the millions of lives saved by penicillin, a family of amino acid metabolites.

Natural products come from secondary metabolism

The chemical reactions common to all living things involve the primary metabolism of the ‘big four’ we met in Chapter 49 — nucleic acids, proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids. Now we must look at chemical reactions that are more restricted. They occur perhaps in just one species, though more commonly in several. They are obviously, then, not essential for life, though they usually help survival. These are the products of secondary metabolism.

The exploration of the compounds produced by the secondary metabolism of plants, microorganisms, fungi, insects, mammals, and every other type of living thing has hardly begun. Even so, the variety and richness of the structures are overwhelming. Without some kind of classification the task of description would be hopeless. We are going to use a biosynthetic classification, grouping substances not by species but by methods of biological synthesis. Though every species is different, the basic chemical reactions are shared by all. The chart on p. 000 relates closely to the chart of primary metabolism in the previous chapter.

Alkaloids are basic compounds from amino acid metabolism

Alkaloids were known in ancient times because they are easy to extract from plants and some of them have powerful and deadly effects. Any plant contains millions of chemical compounds, but some plants, like the deadly nightshade, can be mashed up and extracted with aqueous acid to give a few compounds soluble in that medium, which precipitate on neutralization. These compounds were seen to be ‘like alkali’ and Meissner, the apothecary from Halle, in 1819 named them ‘alkaloids’. Lucrezia Borgia already knew all about this and put the deadly nightshade extract atropine in her eyes (to make her look beautiful: atropine dilates the pupils) and in the drinks of her
Alkaloids are basic compounds from amino acid metabolism

chemical reaction in the usual sense: the starting material is incorporated into the product
political adversaries to avoid any trouble in the future. Now, we would simply say that they are basic because they are amines. Here is a selection with the basic amino groups marked in black.

Natural products are often named by a combination of the name of the organism from which they are isolated and a chemical part name. These compounds are all amines so all their names end in ‘-ine’. They appear very diverse in structure but all are made in nature from amino acid, and we will look at three types.

**Solanaceae alkaloids**

The Solanaceae family includes not only deadly nightshade (*Atropa belladonna*—hence atropine) plants but also potatoes and tomatoes. Parts of these plants also contain toxic alkaloids: for example, you should not eat green potatoes because they contain the toxic alkaloid solanine.

Atropine is a racemic compound but the (S)-enantiomer occurs in henbane (*Hyoscyamus niger*) and was given a different name, hyoscyamine, before the structures were known. In fact, hyoscyamine racemizes very easily just on heating in water or on treatment with weak base. This is probably what happens in the deadly nightshade plant.

**Pyrrolidine alkaloids are made from the amino acid ornithine**

Pyrrolidine is the simple five-membered cyclic amine and pyrrolidine alkaloids contain this ring somewhere in their structure. Both nicotine and atropine contain a pyrrolidine ring as do hygrine and tropinone. All are made in nature from ornithine. Ornithine is an amino acid not usually found in proteins but most organisms use it, often in the excretion of toxic substances. If birds are fed benzoic acid (PhCO₂H) they excrete dibenzoyl ornithine. When dead animals decay, the decarboxylation of ornithine leads to putrescine which, as its name suggests, smells revolting. It is the ‘smell of death’.

**Biosynthetic pathways are usually worked out by isotopic labelling of potential precursors and we shall mark the label with a coloured blob. If ornithine is labelled with _^{14}C_ and fed to the plant, labelled hygrine is isolated.**
If each amino group in ornithine is labelled in turn with $^{15}$N, the $\alpha$ amino group is lost but the $\gamma$ amino group is retained.

Further labelling experiments along these lines showed that the CO$_2$H group as well as the $\alpha$ amino group was lost from ornithine and that the rest of the molecule makes the pyrrolidine ring. The three-carbon side-chain in hygrine comes from acetate, or rather from acetyl CoA, and the N-methyl group comes from SAM. We can now work through the biosynthesis.

The first step is a pyridoxal-catalysed decarboxylation of ornithine, which follows the normal sequence up to a point.

Now the terminal amino group is methylated by SAM and the secondary amine cyclizes on to the pyridoxal imine to give an aminal. Decomposition of the aminal the other way round expels pyridoxamine and releases the salt of an electrophilic imine.

The rest of the biosynthesis does not need pyridoxal, but it does need two molecules of acetyl CoA. In Chapter 50 we noted that this thiol ester is a good electrophile and also enolizes easily. We need both reactivities now in a Claisen ester condensation of acetyl CoA.

The new keto-ester is very like the acetoacetates we used in Chapter 27 to make stable enolates and the CoA thiol ester will exist mainly as its enol, stabilized by conjugation.

This enol reacts with the imine salt we have previously made and it will be easier to see this reaction if we redraw the enol in a different conformation. The imine salt does not have to wait around for acetoacetyl CoA to be made. The cell has a good stock of acetyl CoA and its condensation product.
All that remains to form hygrine is the hydrolysis of the CoA thiol ester and decarboxylation of the keto-acid. This is standard chemistry, but you should ensure that you can draw the mechanisms for these steps.

Tropinone is made from hygrine and it is clear what is needed. The methyl ketone must enolize and it must attack another imine salt resembling the first but on the other side of the ring. Such salts can be made chemically by oxidation with Hg(II) and biologically with an oxidizing enzyme and, say, NAD+. The symbol \([O]\) represents an undefined oxidizing agent, chemical or biological.

This complex route to tropinone was imitated as long ago as 1917 in one of the most celebrated reactions of all time, Robinson’s tropinone synthesis. Robinson argued on purely chemical grounds that the sequence of imine salts and enols, which later (1970) turned out to be Nature’s route, could be produced under ‘natural’ conditions (aqueous solution at pH 7) from a C₄ dialdehyde, MeNH₂ and acetone dicarboxylic acid. It worked and the intermediates must be very similar to those in the biosynthesis.

**Other pyrrolidine alkaloids**

There are many pyrrolidine alkaloids derived from ornithine and another large family of piperidine alkaloids derived from lysine by similar pathways involving decarboxylation and cyclization initiated by pyridoxal. We will not discuss these compounds in detail.

Benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids are made from tyrosine

We switch to a completely different kind of alkaloid made from a different kind of amino acid. The benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids have a benzyl group attached to position 2 of an isoquinoline ring. Usually the alkaloids are oxygenated on the benzene ring and many are found in opium poppies (*Papaver somniferum*). For all these reasons papaverine is an ideal example.
Labelling shows that these alkaloids come from two molecules of tyrosine. One must lose CO$_2$ and the other NH$_3$. We can easily see how to divide the molecule in half, but the details will have to wait a moment.

The question of when the extra OH groups are added was also solved by labelling and it was found that dihydroxyphenyl pyruvate was incorporated into both halves but the dihydroxyphenylalanine (an important metabolite usually called 'dopa') was incorporated only into the isoquinoline half.

The amino acid and the keto-acid are, of course, related by a pyridoxal-mediated transaminase and the hydroxylation must occur right at the start. Both of these reactions are discussed in Chapter 50.
**Catecholamines**

Dopa and dopamine are important compounds because they are the precursors to adrenaline in humans. Decarboxylation of dopa gives dopamine, which an oxidase (Chapter 50) hydroxylates stereospecifically at the benzylic position to give noradrenaline (norepinephrine).

The family of hormones that includes adrenaline and noradrenaline is often called the **catecholamines** (catechol is 1,2-dihydroxybenzene). The hormones are produced in the adrenal gland around the kidneys and regulate several important aspects of metabolism: they help to control the breakdown of stored sugars to release glucose and they have a direct effect on blood pressure, heart rate, and breathing. The relative proportion of noradrenaline and its N-methylated analogue, adrenaline, controls these things.

Pyridoxal-mediated decarboxylation of dopa gives dopamine and this reacts with the keto-acid to form an imine salt. This is an open-chain imine salt unlike the cyclic ones we saw in the pyrrolidine alkaloids, but it will prove to have similar reactivity.

The imine salt is perfectly placed for an intramolecular electrophilic aromatic substitution by the electron-rich dihydroxyphenyl ring. This closes the isoquinoline ring in a Mannich-like process (Chapter 27) with the phenol replacing the enol in the pyrrolidine alkaloid biosynthesis.

The cyclization product is still an amino acid and it can be decarboxylated by pyridoxal. Now we have something quite like papaverine but it lacks the methyl groups and the aromatic heterocyclic ring. Methylation needs SAM and is done in two stages for a reason we will discover soon. The final oxidation should again remind you of the closing stages of the tropinone route.
The reaction to make the isoquinoline ring can be carried out chemically under very mild conditions providing that we use an aldehyde as the carbonyl component. Then it works very well with rather similar compounds.

The mechanism is straightforward—the imine is formed and will be protonated at pH 6, ready for the C-C bond formation, which is both a Mannich reaction and an electrophilic aromatic substitution.

Complex benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids are formed by radical coupling
A more interesting series of alkaloids arises when benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids cyclize by radical reactions. Phenols easily form radicals when treated with oxidizing agents such as Fe(III), and benzyl isoquinoline alkaloids with free phenolic hydroxyl groups undergo radical reactions in an intramolecular fashion through a similar mechanism. Here are the details of some methylations of a class of alkaloids closely related to papaverine.
Methylating only one phenol on each ring of norreticuline leaves the other one free for radical coupling. Reticuline is oxidized in the plant to isoboldine by a radical cyclization with the formation of a new C–C bond.

The new C–C bond is marked in black and the free phenolic OHs in green. Notice the relationship between them. The new bond is between a carbon atom ortho to one OH group and a carbon atom para to the other. We shall see in all these phenolic couplings that the ortho and para positions are the only activated ones (ortho/ortho, ortho/para, and para/para couplings are all possible). Oxidation occurs at the phenolic hydroxyl groups, and the resulting oxygen radicals couple.

Phenol coupling occurs chemically under oxidation with Fe(III). The most famous example is the coupling of 2-naphthol to give binaphthol—an ortho/ortho coupling. The stereochemistry of binaphthyls like this was discussed in Chapter 45.

Similar phenol couplings have been attempted in the laboratory with compounds in the benzyl isoquinoline series but the nitrogen atom interferes if it is at all basic. When it has a carbonyl substituent the reactions do work reasonably well, but the yields are poor. Nature is still much better at this reaction than we are.

Reticuline is also the source of the morphine alkaloids by ortho/para radical coupling. The roles of the two rings are reversed this time and it is quite difficult to see at first how the structures are related.
A great deal has happened in this reaction, but the new C–C bond (black) is \textit{ortho} to the green oxygen atom in the top ring and \textit{para} to the green oxygen atom in the bottom ring, so \textit{ortho/para} coupling has occurred. To draw the reaction mechanism we need to draw reticuline in the right conformation.

One of the two rings can re-aromatize but the other has a quaternary carbon atom so no proton can be lost from this site. Instead, the OH group in the top ring adds in conjugate fashion to the enone in the bottom ring.

This intermediate gives rise to the important alkaloids codeine and morphine, which differ only by a methyl group. Nature can remove methyl groups as well as add them.
These alkaloids have plenty of stereochfemistry. Indeed, if we compare the structures of reticuline and morphine, we can see that the one stereogenic centre in reticuline (marked in green) is still there in morphine (it hasn’t been inverted—that part of the molecule has just been turned over) and that four new stereogenic centres marked in black have been added. These centres all result from the original twisting of reticuline to allow phenol coupling except for the one bearing an OH group, which comes from a stereoselective reduction.

Boldine, an isomer of isoboldine, is formed by rearrangement

We mentioned isoboldine a while back, so there must be a boldine as well. This alkaloid is also formed from norlaudanosoline by a different methylation sequence and oxidative radical coupling. Looking at the structure of boldine you may see what appears to be a mistake on someone’s part.

The coupling is correctly para in the bottom ring but is meta in the top ring. But there is no mistake (neither by the authors nor by Nature!)—this structure is correct and it has been made by para/para coupling.

One of the rings has aromatized, but the other cannot—this should remind you of the morphine biosynthesis. However, there is no nucleophilic OH group here capable of conjugate addition to the enone so a rearrangement occurs instead. The new bond to the lower ring migrates across the top ring. You might even say that the lower ring does an intramolecular conjugate addition on the upper ring.
After the rearrangement there is a proton available to be lost and the cation can aromatize. The _para_ relationship in the original coupling product has become a _meta_ relationship by rearrangement. You should be able to recognize this rearrangement from Chapter 37: it is a dienone–phenol rearrangement.

In rearrangements like these with cationic intermediates, the group that can best support a positive charge usually prefers to migrate. The reasons for this are discussed in Chapter 37. Here is a purely chemical example of the same reaction, giving 82% yield in acidic solution. The bond that migrates is marked in black.

Fatty acids and other polyketides are made from acetyl CoA

The sections that remain in this chapter show how Nature can take a very simple molecule—acetyl CoA—and build it up into an amazing variety of structures. There are two main pathways from acetyl CoA and each gives rise to two important series of natural products.

We shall discuss these four types of compounds in the order shown so that we start with the simplest, the fatty acids. You met these compounds in Chapter 49 as their glyceryl esters, but you now need to learn about the acids in more detail and outline their biosynthesis. Compare the structures of the typical fatty acids in the chart overleaf.

These are just a few of the fatty acids that exist, but all are present in our diet and you’ll find many referred to on the labels of processed foods. You should notice a number of features.

- They have straight chains with no branching
- They have even numbers of carbon atoms
- They may be saturated with no double bonds in the chain, or
- They may have one or more C=C double bonds in the chain, in which case they are usually _cis_ (Z) alkenes. If there is more than one C=C double bond, they are not conjugated (either with the CO$_2$H group or with each other)—there is normally one saturated carbon atom between them.
Palmitic acid (C₁₆ saturated) is the most common fatty acid in living things. Oleic acid (C₁₈ mono-unsaturated) is the major fatty acid in olive oil. Arachidonic acid (C₂₀ tetra-unsaturated) is a rare fatty acid, which is the precursor of the very important prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes, of which more later.

The prevalence of fatty acids with even numbers of carbon atoms suggests a two-carbon building block, the most obvious being acetate. If labelled acetate is fed to plants, the fatty acids emerge with labels on alternate carbons like this.

The green blob might represent deuterium (as a CD₃ group) and the black blob $^{13}$C. In fact, the reactions are more complex than this suggests as CO₂ is also needed as well as CoA and it turns out that only the first two-carbon unit is put in as acetyl CoA. The remainder are added as malonyl CoA. If labelled malonyl CoA is fed, the starter unit, as it is called, is not labelled.

Malonyl CoA is made from acetyl CoA and CO₂ carried, as usual, on a molecule of biotin (Chapter 50). The first stage in the fatty acid biosynthesis proper is a condensation between acetyl CoA (the starter unit) and malonyl CoA with the loss of CO₂. This reaction could be drawn like this.
Notice that CO₂ is lost as the new C–C bond is formed. When chemists use malonates, we like to make the stable enol using both carbonyl groups, condense, and only afterwards release CO₂ (Chapter 26). Nature does this in making acetocyclopropyl CoA during alkaloid biosynthesis, but here she works differently.

The next step is reduction of the ketone group.

This NADPH reaction is typically stereo- and chemoselective, though the stereochemistry is rather wasted here as the next step is a dehydration, typical of what is now an aldol product, and occurring by an enzyme-catalysed E1cB mechanism.

The elimination is known to be a cis removal of H and OH and the double bond is exclusively trans (E). Only later in the nonconjugated unsaturated fatty acids do we get Z-alkenes. Finally, in this cycle, the double bond is reduced using another molecule of NADPH to give the saturated side chain.

Now the whole cycle can start again using this newly made C₄ fatty acid as the starter unit and building a C₆ fatty acid and so on. Each time the cycle turns, two carbon atoms are added to the acyl end of the growing chain.

**Fatty acid synthesis uses a multienzyme complex**

We have not told you the whole truth so far. Did you notice that ‘SCoA’ in the structures had been replaced by ‘SR’ and that a mysterious ‘ACP’ had crept into the enzyme names? That was because these reactions actually happen while the growing molecule is attached as a thiol ester to a long side-chain on an acyl carrier protein (ACP). The long side-chain is closely related to CoA and is attached through a phosphate to a serine residue of the ACP.

All of the enzymes needed for one cycle are clumped together to form two large proteins (ACP, the acyl carrier protein, and CE, the condensing enzyme) which associate in a stable dimer. The long side-chain passes the substrate from enzyme to enzyme so that synthesis can be continuous until the chain is finished and only then is the thiol ester hydrolysed. The chart on p. 000 illustrates this.

**There are three ways of making unsaturated fatty acids**

Conjugated unsaturated fatty acids are made simply by stopping the acylation cycle at that stage and hydrolysing the thiol ester linkage between the unsaturated acyl chain and ACP. They always have the E (trans) configuration and are the starting points for other biosynthetic pathways.
fatty acid biosynthesis: schematic diagram of the multienzyme dimer

- Cysteine residue on the condensing enzyme (CE)
- Long flexible pantothenic acid side-chain on the acyl carrier protein (ACP)
- Ketoacyl reductase
- Hydratase
- Enoyl reductase
- Growing chain transferred to cysteine residue on CE
- Multienzyme complex is ready to start the next cycle of acylation
The second method makes Z-3,4-unsaturated acids by deconjugation from the E-2,3-unsaturated acids catalysed by an isomerase while the acyl chain is still attached to ACP. This is an anaerobic route as no oxidation is required (the double bond is already there—it just has to be moved) and is used by prokaryotes such as bacteria.

Removal of a proton from C4 forms an extended enol, which can be protonated at C2 or C4. Protonation at C4 is thermodynamically favoured as it leads to the conjugated alkene. But protonation at C2 is kinetically favoured, and this leads to the nonconjugated alkene. The geometry of the new alkene depends on the conformation of the chain when the first (deprotonation) step occurs. It is thought that this is the best conformation for the previous reaction, the dehydration step, and that no rotation of the chain occurs before the isomerase gets to work.

You may think this a rather unlikely reaction, but the same thing can be done in the laboratory. If a simple unsaturated ester is converted into its lithium enolate and then reprotonated with water, the major product is the ester of the Z-3,4-enoic acid. Yields and steroselectivities are excellent.

One explanation suggests that control is exercised by a favourable conformation in which 1,3-allylic strain is preferred to 1,2-strain. It looks as though Nature has again seized on a natural chemical preference and made it even better.
The third method is a concerted stereospecific removal of two adjacent hydrogen atoms from the chain of a fatty acid after synthesis. This is an aerobic route as oxidation is required and is used by mammals such as ourselves. The stereochemistry of the reaction is known from labelling studies to be cis elimination.

This oxidation involves a chain of reagents including molecular oxygen, Fe(III), FAD, and NAD⁺. A hydroxylation followed by a dehydration or a sulfur-promoted dehydrogenation has been suggested for the removal of the hydrogen atoms. The chemical reaction corresponding to the biological reaction has not yet been discovered.

What is so important about unsaturated fatty acids?
Mammals can insert a cis-alkene into the chain, providing that it is no further away from the carbonyl group than C9. We cannot synthesize linoleic or linolenic acids (see chart a few pages back) directly as they have alkenes at C12 and C15. These acids must be present in our diet. And why are we so keen to have them? They are needed for the synthesis of arachidonic acid, a C20 tetraenoic acid that is the precursor for some very interesting and important compounds. Here is the biosynthesis of arachidonic acid.
The final product of this chain of events—arachidonic acid—is one of the eicosanoids, so called because eicosai is Greek for 'twenty', and the systematic names for these compounds contain 'eicosanoic acid' in some form. The leukotrienes resemble arachidonic acid most closely, the prostaglandins have a closed chain forming a five-membered ring, and the thromboxanes resemble the prostaglandins but have a broken chain. All are C20 compounds with the sites of the alkenes (C5, C8, C11, and C14) marked by functionality or some other structural feature.

These compounds are all unstable and all are involved in transient events such as inflammation, blood clotting, fertilization, and immune responses. They are produced locally and decay quickly and are implicated in autoimmune diseases like asthma and arthritis. They are made by oxidation of arachidonic acid—you can see this best if you redraw the molecule in a different conformation.

The first step is a radical abstraction of a hydrogen atom from an allylic position by oxygen (perhaps carried on an iron atom in a haem). The atom removed is between two alkenes so that the resulting radical is doubly allylic.

This allylic radical captures a molecule of oxygen at C11 to form a new oxyradical. The reaction occurs at one end of the delocalized radical so that the product is a conjugated diene and the new alkene is trans (E).
Now we need to resume the full structure of the intermediate because the oxyradical does an elaborate addition to the C8 alkene and then to the newly formed diene to form a new stable allylic radical.

Three new stereogenic centres are created in this cyclization, at C8, C9, and C12, and all are under full control both from the centre already present and from the way in which the molecule folds up under the guidance of the enzyme. Now the allylic radical reacts with oxygen to give the unstable hydroperoxide PGG2.

This unstable prostaglandin has been isolated from sheep but, as it has a half-life of only 5 minutes, this is no trivial matter. Both weak O–O bonds are now reduced enzymatically to give the first reasonably stable compound, PGF2α (PG just means prostaglandin).

The best evidence for this pathway comes from labelled oxygen molecules. If a mixture of 16O–16O (ordinary oxygen) and 18O–18O is supplied to an organism making PGF2α, the product has either both black OHs as 16O or both as 18O but no molecules are formed with one 16O and one 18O. These isotopes are easily measured by mass spectrometry. Both black OHs then come from one and the same molecule of oxygen—not an obvious conclusion when you inspect the molecule of PGF2α, and thus good evidence for this pathway.

**How aspirin works**

The enzyme that catalyses these remarkable reactions, cyclooxygenase, is an important target for medical chemists. Inhibiting PG synthesis can bring about a reduction of inflammation and pain. In fact, this is how aspirin works. It was not, of course, designed to work that way and its mode of action was discovered decades after its use began. There is a price to pay for such a useful drug. PGs also control acid secretion in the stomach and aspirin inhibits their synthesis there too so stomach ulceration can result.

Each of the other families of eicosanoids—thromboxanes and leukotrienes—has interesting biosynthetic pathways too, but we will mention only one small detail. A completely different oxidation enzyme, lipooxygenase, initiates a separate pathway leading to the leukotrienes, but the first steps are very similar. They just occur elsewhere in the arachidonic acid molecule.
Aromatic polyketides come in great variety

The initially formed radical is stabilized by two double bonds in the same way as that we have just seen and reacts with oxygen in the same way again to give a trans-alkene and a new hydroperoxide.

The next step is something quite new. No new C–C bond is formed: instead, the diene attacks the hydroperoxide to give an epoxide and a fully conjugated triene. The new double bond is cis this time, which is what we should expect from the conformation we have been using. This is LTA₄ and all the other leukotrienes are made from this compound.

The relatively recent discovery of these unstable molecules of incredibly powerful biological activity means that we by no means know all about them yet. They are very important to our well-being and important medical advances are bound to follow from a better understanding.

Aromatic polyketides come in great variety

The fatty acid pathway or, as we should call it now, the acyl polymalonate pathway, also gives rise to an inexhaustible variety of aromatic and other compounds belonging to the family of the polyketides. You saw in Chapter 50 how the shikimic acid pathway makes aromatic compounds but the compounds below are from the polyketide route.

You might immediately be struck by the extent of oxygenation in these compounds. The shikimic acid route produced Ar–C₃ compounds with at most one OH group in the para position and others
added *ortho* to that first OH group. Here we have multiple oxygenation with a predominant 1,3 pattern. If we try to arrange an acyl polymalonate product to make orsellinic acid, this is what we shall need.

Merely by writing ketones instead of phenols and doing one disconnection corresponding to a simple carbonyl condensation, we have reached a possible starting material which is a typical acyl polymalonate product without any reductions. This is what polyketides are. The fatty acids are assembled with full reduction at each stage. Polyketides are assembled from the same process but without full reduction; indeed, as the name polyketide suggests, many are made without any reduction at all. This is the biosynthesis of orsellinic acid.

This route has been demonstrated by feeding \(^{13}\text{C}\)-labelled malonyl CoA to a microorganism. The orsellinic acid produced has three \(^{13}\text{C}\) atoms only, seen by an \(M+3\) peak in the mass spectrum. The location of the labels can be proved by NMR. The starter unit, acetate, is not labelled.

As the polyketide chain is built up, any of the reductions or eliminations from fatty acid biosynthesis can occur at any stage. The simple metabolite 6-methyl salicylic acid (6-MSA) is made in the microorganism *Penicillium patulum*, and it could come from the same intermediate as orsellinic acid with one reduction.

Reduction to the alcohol or to the unsaturated acid or ketone would give the right oxidation level and could occur as the chain is built, after it is completed, or after cyclization. In fact, reduction to
the conjugated unsaturated triketide occurs as the third acetate unit is added, just as the fatty acid route would lead us to expect.

This intermediate cannot cyclize as it has a trans double bond and the ends cannot reach each other. First, the double bond is moved out of conjugation with the COSR group, again as in the fatty acids, except that here the new Z double bond moves into conjugation with the remaining keto group.

Now the last chain extension occurs and the completed Z-tetraketide cyclizes to 6-methyl salicylic acid. Chemically, we would prefer not to carry the unstable Z-enone through several steps, but Nature controls these reactions very precisely.

This precise sequence was discovered only through very careful double labelling experiments and after the discovery of specific inhibitors for the enzyme. Since polyketides can be made from the acyl polymalonate pathway with or without reduction and elimination at any step, the number of possible structures is vast. With more reduction, no aromatic ring can be formed: macrolide antibiotics such as brefeldin A come from this route.

If you examine this structure, you should be able to find a continuous carbon chain made from an acetate starter unit and seven malonyl CoA units with full or partial reduction occurring after many acylation steps.

Other starter units

So far we have started the chain with acetate, but many other starter units are used. Some important groups of compounds use shikimic acid metabolites such as cinnamic acid (Chapter 50) as starter units. They include the widespread plant flavones and the anthocyanidin flower pigments.
The most common sequence uses three malonyl CoA acylations followed by cyclization to a new aromatic ring. The simplest type is exemplified by resveratrole, the compound in red wine that helps to prevent heart disease. Each step in this sequence is a simple reaction that you have met before.

A different cyclization leads to the flavones and anthocyanidins. Reaction of the stable enol from a 1,3-diketone with the thiol ester as electrophile results in acylation at carbon in the manner of the Claisen ester condensation (Chapter 28) with loss of CoASH and the formation of a trihydroxybenzene ring.

This cyclization is followed by a conjugate addition of an ortho phenolic OH group on to the enone system. The product is a flavanone structure, which is always drawn a different way up to the molecules we have just been discussing. Redrawing the last product shows the cyclization.

Aromatization of the central oxygen heterocycle by oxidation leads to the flavones, which are yellow or orange depending on their substituents. Dehydration leads to the red or blue anthocyanidins, pigments of flowers and fruit. This important group of molecules also includes plant growth hormones and defence compounds.
Terpenes are volatile constituents of plant resins and essential oils

Terpenes were originally named after turpentine, the volatile oil from pine trees used in oil painting, whose major constituent is α-pinene. The term was rather vaguely used for all the volatile oily compounds, insoluble in water and usually with resinous smells from plants. The oils distilled from plants, which often contain perfumery or flavouring materials, are called essential oils and these too contain terpenes. Examples include camphor from the camphor tree, used to preserve clothes from moths, humulene from hops, which helps to give beer its flavour, and phytol, found in many plants.

You will notice that they are all aliphatic compounds with a scattering of double bonds and rings, few functional groups, and an abundance of methyl groups. A better definition (that is, a biosynthetically based definition) arose when it was noticed that all these compounds have 5n carbon atoms. Pinenes and camphor are C10 compounds, humulene is C15, and phytol is C20. It seemed obvious that terpenes were made from a C5 precursor and the favourite candidate was isoprene (2-methylbuta-1,3-diene) as all these structures can be drawn by joining together 2-, 3-, or 4-isoprene skeletons end to end. Humulene illustrates this idea.

In fact, this is not correct. Isoprene is not an intermediate, and the discovery of the true pathway started when acetate was, rather surprisingly, found to be the original precursor for all terpenes. The key intermediate is mevalonic acid, formed from three acetate units and usually isolated as its lactone.

\[
3 \times \text{acetyl CoA} \rightarrow \text{mevalonic acid} \rightleftharpoons \text{mevalonolactone}
\]

The first step is the Claisen ester condensation of two molecules of acetyl CoA, one acting as an enol and the other as an electrophilic acylating agent to give acetoacetyl CoA. We saw the same reaction in the biosynthesis of the pyrrolidine alkaloids earlier in this chapter.

The third molecule of acetyl CoA also functions as a nucleophilic enol and attacks the keto group of acetoacetyl CoA. This is not a Claisen ester condensation—it is an aldol reaction between the enol of a thiol ester and an electrophilic ketone.
We have drawn the product with stereochemistry even though it is not chiral. This is because one of the two enantiomeric thiol esters is hydrolysed while this intermediate is still bound to the enzyme, so a single enantiomer of the half-acid/half-thiol ester results.

The remaining thiol ester is more electrophilic than the acid and can be reduced by the nucleophilic hydride from NADPH. Just as in LiBH₄ reductions of esters (Chapter 24), the reaction does not stop at the aldehyde level, and two molecules of NADPH are used to make the alcohol. This is mevalonic acid.

Mevalonic acid is indeed the true precursor of the terpenes but it is a C₆ compound and so it must lose a carbon atom to give the C₅ precursor. The spare carbon atom becomes CO₂ by an elimination reaction. First, the primary alcohol is pyrophosphorylated with ATP (Chapter 49); then the CO₂H group and the tertiary alcohol are lost in a concerted elimination. We know it is concerted because labelling the diastereotopic hydrogen atoms on the CH₂CO₂H group reveals that the elimination is stereospecific.

'PP' indicates the pyrophosphate group transferred from ATP.
So is isopentenyl pyrophosphate the C_5 intermediate at last? Well, yes and no. There are actually two closely related C_5 intermediates, each of which has a specific and appropriate role in terpene biosynthesis. Isopentenyl pyrophosphate is in equilibrium with dimethylallyl pyrophosphate by a simple allylic proton transfer.

This is again a concerted reaction and again we know that by proton labelling. One of the two enantiotopic protons (H^5 in the diagram) is lost from the bottom face of the allylic CH_2 group while the new proton is added to the top face of the alkene. This is an anti rearrangement overall.

The stereochemical details are interesting in establishing the mechanism but not important to remember. What is important is that the origin of the two methyl groups in dimethylallyl pyrophosphate is quite distinct and can easily be traced if you always draw the intermediates in the way we have drawn them. We will now switch to ^13C labelling to make the point.

The two C_5 intermediates now react with each other. The dimethylallyl pyrophosphate is the better electrophile because it is allylic, and allylic compounds are good at both S_N1 and S_N2 reactions (Chapter 17). Isopentenyl pyrophosphate is the better nucleophile because it can react through an unhindered primary carbon atom to produce a tertiary cation. This is what we have in mind.

Though this idea reveals the thinking behind the reaction, in fact it does not go quite like this. The product is one particular positional and geometrical isomer of an alkene and the cation is not an intermediate. Indeed, the reaction is also stereospecific (discovered again by proton labelling, but we will not give the rather complex details) and this too suggests a concerted process.

Geranyl pyrophosphate is the starting point for all the monoterpenes. It is still an allylic pyrophosphate and repeating the alkylation with another molecule of isopentenyl pyrophosphate gives farnesy1 pyrophosphate, the starting point for the sesquiterpenes, and so on.

As soon as we start to make typical cyclic monoterpenes from geranyl pyrophosphate we run into a snag. We cannot cyclize geranyl pyrophosphate because it has a trans double bond! We could cyclize the cis compound (nerly pyrophosphate), and it used to be thought that this was formed from the trans compound as an intermediate.
It is now known that Nature gets round this problem without making neryl pyrophosphate. An allylic rearrangement occurs to move the pyrophosphate group to the tertiary centre. This is an unfavourable rearrangement thermodynamically and probably occurs via the allyl cation and catalysed by Mg(II). There is no longer any geometry about the alkene. The molecule can now rotate freely about a single bond and cyclization can occur. Even if only a small amount of the rearranged allylic pyrophosphate is present, that can rearrange and more can isomerize.

More interesting compounds come from the cyclization of the first formed cation. The remaining alkene can attack the cation to form what looks at first to be a very unstable compound but which is actually a tertiary carbocation with the pinene skeleton.

The camphor skeleton looks as though it might be formed by cyclization of the wrong end of the alkene on to the cation. This would certainly give the right skeleton but the intermediate secondary cation is rather unlikely.

There is a better route. The more likely cation formed on the way to pinene could rearrange to the camphor cation. This is a known chemical reaction and is a simple 1,2-shift of the kind discussed in Chapter 37. However the new cation is formed, addition of water and oxidation would give camphor.
In the sesquiterpene series, similar cyclizations lead to an amazing variety of products. After the initial unfavourable allylic rearrangement of the pyrophosphate group, farnesyl pyrophosphate can give a six-membered ring cation known as the bisabolyl cation.

This cation does many things but it takes its name from the three fairly random proton losses that lead to the $\alpha$-, $\beta$-, and $\gamma$-bisabolanes.

Many other reactions give even larger and more complex terpenes with a variety of functionalization but we will treat only one group in detail. These compounds are so important to us that they are given a different name.

Steroids are metabolites of terpene origin

Two types of human hormone are steroidal—the sex hormones such as oestriol and testosterone and the adrenal hormones such as cortisone. Cholesterol is a steroid too, as is vitamin D, derived from ergosterol.

All share the skeleton of four fused rings, three six-membered and one five-membered and conventionally lettered A–D. Beyond the ring stereochemistry and some common oxygenation patterns they share little else. Some (such as the female sex hormones) have an aromatic A ring; some have side-chains on the five-membered ring.
At first glance, it is not at all clear that steroids are terpenoid in origin. The \(5n\) numbers are absent—cholesterol is a \(C_{27}\) compound while the others variously have 20, 21, or 23 carbon atoms. Studies with labelled mevalonic acid showed that cholesterol is terpenoid, and that it is formed from two molecules of farnesyl pyrophosphate \((2 \times C_{15} = C_{30}\) so three carbon atoms must be lost). Labelling of one or other of the methyl groups (two experiments combined in one diagram) showed that two of the green carbon atoms and one of the black carbon atoms were lost during the biosynthesis.

It is not obvious how the two farnesyl pyrophosphate molecules could be combined to make the steroid skeleton, and the chemistry involved is extraordinary and very interesting. The first clues came from the discovery of the intermediates squalene and lanosterol. Squalene is obviously the farnesyl pyrophosphate dimer we have been looking for while lanosterol looks like cholesterol but still has all 30 carbon atoms.

The three carbon atoms that are lost from lanosterol \((C_{30}\) in its conversion to cholesterol \((C_{27}\) are marked with brown arrows. Now at least we know which carbon atoms are lost. But many questions remain to be answered.

- How does farnesyl pyrophosphate dimerize so that two electrophilic carbon atoms \((CH_2OPP)\) join together?
- Why does the formation of squalene require the reducing agent NADPH?
- How does squalene cyclize to lanosterol so that the very odd labelling pattern can be achieved?
- Where do the three lost carbon atoms go?
- How is the sterochemistry controlled?

Before we tell you the answers, be warned: prepare for some surprises, and be ready to hold back outright disbelief!
The formation of squalene from farnesyl pyrophosphate

If the reducing agent NADPH is omitted from the cell preparation, squalene is not formed. Instead, another farnesyl pyrophosphate dimer accumulates—presqualene pyrophosphate—which has a three-membered ring and in which we can see that the two molecules of farnesyl pyrophosphate are joined in a slightly more rational way.

Maybe it's not so obvious that this is more rational! The first C–C bond formation is quite straightforward. The alkene in the red molecule attacks the allylic pyrophosphate in the black molecule in a simple SN2 reaction. The product is a stable carbocation. Only one C–C bond remains to be formed to close the three-membered ring and this occurs by the loss of a proton from the black molecule.

This is a very remarkable reaction. Such reactions do not occur chemically; this biological one occurs only because the molecule is held in the right shape by the enzyme and because the new ring is three-membered. Three-membered rings are very easily formed but also very easily opened—and that is what happens to this ring. In the presence of NADPH, a series of rearrangements gives a series of carbocations, the last of which is trapped by reduction.

The first step is the migration of one of the bonds (shown in green) of the three-membered ring to displace the pyrophosphate leaving group, expand the ring to four-membered, and release some strain. Now the cyclobutyl cation breaks down to give an open-chain allylic cation stabilized by one of the alkenes. This is the cation that is reduced by NADPH.

If you follow this sequence backwards, you will see that the originally formed 'rational' bond (shown in green) is the one that migrated and is retained in squalene, while the second bond is cleaved in the last step.

This may all seem far-fetched, but it happens in laboratory reactions too! Treatment of the simplest cyclopropyl alcohol with HBr gives cyclobutyl bromide by a similar rearrangement.

In fact, cyclopropylmethyl compounds, cyclobutyl compounds, and homoallyl compounds are all in equilibrium in acid solution and mixtures of products are often formed. The delocalized cation
shown has been suggested as an intermediate. Make sure that you can draw mechanisms for each starting material to give the intermediate cation and from the cation to each product.

Squalene to lanosterol
The next step is simple—the epoxidation of one of the terminal double bonds—but it leads to two of the most remarkable reactions in all of biological chemistry. Squalene is not chiral, but enzymatic epoxidation of one of the enantiotopic alkenes gives a single enantiomer of the epoxide with just one stereogenic centre.

We will start now to draw squalene in a coiled up way as the next step is the polycyclization of the epoxide. The basic reaction is best seen first in the flat, though we will draw the stereochemistry immediately. The first alkene cyclizes on to the epoxide and then each remaining alkene cyclizes on to the next to give a stable tertiary cation.

By analogy with what has gone before, you might now expect a tame hydration or reduction of this cation. Nothing of the sort! A rearrangement occurs in which five consecutive 1,2-shifts are followed by an elimination. Since this reaction organizes the backbone of the steroids, it is often called the steroid backbone rearrangement.
Finally, we have reached lanosterol. Now we will go back over these two steps and discuss them a bit more. Consider first the regiochemistry of the cyclization. The epoxide opens in the way we would expect to give positive charge at the more substituted carbon atom and then all the alkenes attack through their less substituted end (again as we would expect to give positive charge at the more substituted carbon atom)—all except one. The third alkene cyclizes the ‘wrong’ way—this is presumably a result of the way the molecule is folded.

We learn much more about the folding by examining the stereochemistry of the product cation. First, all of the stereochemistry of each alkene is faithfully reproduced in the product: the cyclization is stereospecific. This is emphasized in colour in the diagram. The green stereochemistry arises because the green Me and H were trans in the first alkene of squalene, the black Me and H trans in the second, and the brown trans in the third. But what about the relationship between the green methyl and the black H? Or between the black and brown methyls? These were determined by the folding and the key observation is that all the relationships are trans except that between the green Me and the black H. Now we can draw a conformation for the cyclization.

When the transition state for a ring closure forms a chair then a trans relationship results. This is the case for the black Me and brown Me. When a boat is formed a cis relationship results. This is the case for the green Me and black H. Squalene folds up in a chair–boat–chair conformation and that leads to the observed stereochemistry.

Next, we need to look at the stereochemistry of the rearrangement step. If we draw the product cation as nearly as possible in the conformation of folded squalene, we will see which substituents are axial and which equatorial.

Each group that migrates (black) is axial and is anti-periplanar to the one before so that each migrating group does an $S_N2$ reaction on the migration terminus with inversion. The chain stops because of the cis relationship between the green Me and H in ring B and an elimination of the green H is all that can happen.

The remainder of the biosynthesis of cholesterol requires various redox reactions and is a bit of an anticlimax: the details are summarized in the scheme below.
Biomimetic synthesis: learning from Nature

When new and academic-looking reactions are discovered in the laboratory, it often seems only a short time before they are found in nature as well. However, the development of polyolefin cyclization reactions in synthesis occurred by the reverse philosophy—it was inspiration from Nature that led W. S. Johnson to use the reactions in synthesis, including steroid synthesis. This is biomimetic synthesis, a strategy that is bound to work provided we can just master the practical details.

There are quite a lot of differences between the chemical and the biochemical versions so far—the chemical ones are less complex and less sophisticated but more versatile. The reactions are just cyclizations without the backbone rearrangements. The most important points of difference are:

- The cyclization is usually begun with a cation from treatment of a cyclic tertiary alcohol rather than an epoxide
- The cyclization sequence is terminated with an alkyne or an allyl silane rather than with simple alkene
- The substituents are placed in the correct positions in the starting material as no rearrangement follows cyclizations
- The cyclizations are all stereospecific as in nature but the rings coil up in an all-chair fashion rather than in a chair–boat–chair fashion as there is no enzyme to shape the molecule
- The product cation is quenched by addition of water rather than loss of a proton

Here is one of Johnson’s best examples which leads eventually to a biomimetic synthesis of the human hormone progesterone. The cyclization occurs just on treatment of the tertiary alcohol with acid.

The first step is the formation of a symmetrical allyl cation, which then initiates the cyclization. The next double bond is disubstituted so that it has no built-in regioselectivity but prefers to form a six-membered rather than a five-membered ring B. The next double bond is trisubstituted and directs the formation of a six-membered ring C. The alkyne, being linear, can reach only through its inner end and so a five-membered ring D is formed. The resulting linear vinyl cation picks up a molecule of water to give the ketone via its enol.
The five-membered ring A is there to ensure efficient initiation of the cyclization by the symmetrical allylic cation. It can easily be opened with ozone and the product cyclized to progesterone.

The conformation of the molecule in the moment of cyclization can be seen easily by working backwards from the product. The green dashed lines show new bonds that are being formed. All the six-membered rings in the transition state are chairs and all the ring junctions trans. This is an impressive result as there is no enzyme to help the molecule fold up in this way.

By studying the chemistry that Nature uses in living things we can learn new reactions as well as new ways in which to carry out known reactions. Many of the reactions in this chapter would be laughed at by worldly wise chemists if they appeared in a research proposal, but they have been evolved over millions of years to do precise jobs under mild conditions. Humans have been doing complex organic chemistry for only about a hundred years so that learning from Nature is one of the most important ways in which organic chemistry is advancing at the beginning of the twenty-first century.

**Problems**

1. Assign each of these natural products to a general class (such as amino acid metabolite, terpene, polyketide) explaining what makes you choose that class. Then assign them to a more specific part of the general class (for example, tetraketide, sesquiterpene).

2. Some compounds can arise from different sources in different organisms. 2,5-Dihydroxybenzoic acid comes from shikimic acid (Chapter 50) in *Primula acaulis* but from acetate in *Penicillium* species. Outline details.
3. The piperidine alkaloid pelliterine was mentioned in the chapter but full details of its biosynthesis were not given. There follows an outline of the intermediates and reagents used. Fill in the details. Pyridoxal chemistry is discussed in Chapter 50.

4. The rather similar alkaloids anabasine and anatabine come from different biosynthetic pathways. Labelling experiments outlined below show the origin of one carbon atom from lysine and others from nicotinic acid. Suggest detailed pathways. (Hint. Nicotinic acid and the intermediate you have been using in Problem 3 in the biosynthesis of the piperidine alkaloid are both electrophilic at position 2. You also need an intermediate derived from nicotinic acid which is nucleophilic at position 3. The biosynthesis involves reduction.)

5. The three steps in the biosynthesis of papaverine set out below involve pyridoxal (or pyridoxamine). Write detailed mechanisms.

6. Concentrate now on the biosynthesis of skytalane in the first problem. You should have identified it as a pentaketide. Now consider how many different ways the pentaketide chain might be folded to give skytalane.

7. This question concerns the biosynthesis of stephanine, another compound mentioned in Problem 1. You should have deduced that it is a benzylisoquinoline alkaloid. Now suggest a biosynthesis from orientaline.

8. Suggest a biosynthesis of olivetol.
9. Tetrahydrocannabinol, the major psychoactive compound in marijuana, is derived in the Cannabis plant from olivetol and geranyl pyrophosphate. Details of the pathway are unknown. Make some suggestions and outline a labelling experiment to establish whether your suggestions are correct.

10. Both humulene, mentioned in the chapter, and caryophyllene are made in nature from farnesyl pyrophosphate in different plants. Suggest detailed pathways. How do the enzymes control which product is formed?

11. Abietic acid is formed in nature from mevalonate via the intermediates shown. Give some more details of the cyclization and rearrangement steps and compare this route with the biosynthesis of the steroids.

12. Borneol, camphene, and α-pinene are made in nature from geranyl pyrophosphate. The biosynthesis of α-pinene and the related camphor is described in the chapter. In the laboratory bornyl chloride and camphene can be made from α-pinene by the reactions described below. Give mechanisms for these reactions and say whether you consider them to be biomimetic.

13. Suggest a biosynthetic route to the monoterpene chrysanthemic acid that uses a reaction similar to the formation of squalene in steroid biosynthesis.

14. In the chapter we suggested that you could detect an acetate starter unit and seven malonate additional units in the skeleton of brefeldin. Give the mechanism of the addition of the first malonyl CoA unit to acetate. Draw out the structure of the complete acyl polymalonyl chain and state clearly what must happen to each section of it (reduction, elimination, etc.) to get brefaldin A.

15. This chemical experiment aims to imitate the biosynthesis of terpenes. A mixture of products results. Draw a mechanism for the reaction. To what extent is it biomimetic, and what can the natural system do better?
Most of the things you can see about you at this moment are made of organic polymers. Skin, clothes, paper, hair, wood, plastic, and paint are among them. Teeth, muscle, glue, cling film, starch, crab shells, and marmalade are all polymer-based too. In this chapter we will explore the world of polymers. We will ask questions like these:

- What makes a molecule prefer to react with others of its kind to form a polymer?
- What mechanisms are available for polymerization reactions?
- How can polymerization reactions be controlled?
- How are the properties of polymers related to their molecular structure?

**Monomers, dimers, and oligomers**

Cyclopentadiene featured in Chapter 35 as an important diene in the Diels–Alder reaction. If you try to buy 'cyclopentadiene' you will find that the catalogues list only 'dicyclopentadiene' or 'cyclopenta-diene dimer'. The dimerization of cyclopentadiene is reversible: the monomer dimerizes by a Diels–Alder reaction at room temperature to give the dimer and the reaction is reversed on heating. So the dimer is a good source of the monomer.

Other familiar cases of stable dimers are neutral boron and aluminium hydrides. DIBAL, for example, exists as two molecules linked by Al–H–Al bonds in a four-membered ring. Again, the dimer is a practical source of monomer for chemical reactions.
Simple aldehydes easily form trimers. When cyclopentanecarbaldehyde is prepared, it is a colourless liquid. On standing, particularly with traces of acid, it forms the crystalline trimer. The trimer is a stable six-membered heterocycle with all substituents equatorial.

Acetaldehyde (ethanal) forms a liquid trimer called 'paraldehyde', which reverts to the monomer on distillation with catalytic acid. More interesting is 'metaldehyde', the common slug poison, which is an all-cis tetramer (2,4,6,8-tetramethyl-1,3,5,7-tetroxocane) formed from acetaldehyde with dry HCl at below 0°C. Metaldehyde is a white crystalline solid that has all the methyl groups pseudoequatorial, and it reverts to acetaldehyde on heating.

Another tetramer is methyl lithium. MeLi is a very reactive compound in the monomeric state, and it crystallizes as a tetramer: a tetrahedron of lithium atoms with a methyl group 'plugged in' to the centre of each face.

Whereas oxygen gas consists of diatomic molecules O₂, crystalline sulfur is S₈, a cyclic octamer. Such multiples are usually called oligomers (oligo = a few). The monomer in this case would be the sulfur atom. The shape of the S₈ ring is very similar to that of the eight-membered ring of metaldehyde.

If you buy formaldehyde (methanal), which is in fact a gas, b.p. -19°C, you have four choices. You can buy a 37% aqueous solution 'formalin' which is mostly hydrate in equilibrium with a small amount of formaldehyde, or the crystalline trimer (1,3,5-trioxane), or a white solid called (misleadingly) 'paraformaldehyde', or another white solid called polyoxymethylene.

Trioxane is not a good source of formaldehyde as it is very stable but the two other solids are good sources. Both paraformaldehyde and, more obviously, polyoxymethylene are polymers. Each molecule of either polymer consists of a large number of formaldehyde molecules reacted together.

Paraformaldehyde is made by evaporation of aqueous formaldehyde to dryness and is a water-soluble polymer. Polyoxymethylene is made by heating formaldehyde with catalytic sulfuric acid and is not soluble in water. They are both linear polymers of formaldehyde, so how can they be so different? The answer is in the polymer chain length—the \( n \) in the diagram. Paraformaldehyde is water-soluble because it has short chain lengths, about \( n = 8 \) on average, and so it has many hydrophilic OH groups. Polyoxymethylene has much longer chain lengths, \( n > 100 \) on average, and so has very few OH groups per monomer of formaldehyde.
Trioxane is formed when the trimer cyclizes instead of continuing to polymerize. All the oligomers and polymers of formaldehyde have this potential as there is a hemiacetal group at each end of the chain.

Polymerization by carbonyl substitution reactions

In general, carbonyl compounds do not polymerize by themselves. It is only the exceptional reactivity of formaldehyde as an electrophile that allows repeated nucleophilic addition of hemiacetal intermediates. A more common way to polymerize carbonyl compounds is to use two different functional groups that react together by carbonyl substitution to form a stable functional group such as an amide or an ester. Nylon is just such a polymer.

Polyamides

You may have carried out the nylon rope trick in a practical class. The diacid chloride of adipic acid is dissolved in a layer of a heavy organic solvent such as CCl₄ and a layer of aqueous hexane-1,6-diamine is carefully placed on top. With a pair of tweezers you can pick up the film of polymer that forms at the interface and draw it out to form a fibre. The reaction is a simple amide formation.

After the first amide is formed, one end of the new molecule is nucleophilic and the other electrophilic so that it can grow at both ends. The polymer is made up of alternating –NH(CH₂)₆NH– and –(CH₂)₄CO– units, each having six carbon atoms, and is called ‘nylon 6.6’. Another and much simpler way to make nylon is to polymerize caprolactam. This monomer is a cyclic amide and the polymer does not have alternating units—instead, each unit is the same.
So how is this polymerization initiated? A small amount of water is added to hydrolyse some of the caprolactam to 6-aminohexanoic acid. The amino group can then attack another molecule of caprolactam and so on. The amount of water added influences the average chain length of the polymer.

These synthetic polyamides are made up of the same repeating unit but will inevitably have a range of molecular weights as the polymer length will vary. This is a different story from that of the natural polyamides—peptides and proteins—that you met in Chapter 49. Those polymers were made of twenty or so different monomers (the amino acids) combined in a precise order with a precise stereochemistry and all molecules of the same protein have the same length. Nonetheless, some of their uses are almost identical: both nylon and wool are polyamides, for example.

**Polyesters**

Much the same act can be carried out with dicarboxylic acids and diols. The most famous example is the polymer of ethylene glycol (ethane-1,2-diol) and terephthalic acid, which can be made simply by melting the two components together so that water is lost in the esterification reaction. The mechanism is obvious.

This linear polymer, like nylon, is well shaped for making long fibres and is now so important for making clothes that it is usually just called 'polyester' rather than by the older names such as 'Terylene'.

**Polycarbonates**

These too are made by carbonyl substitution reactions, but this time the nucleophile is aromatic and the electrophile is an aliphatic derivative of carbonic acid such as phosgene (COCl₂) or a carbonate diester [CO(OR)₂]. The aromatic nucleophile is a dipheno1 but the two OH groups are on separate rings joined together by an electrophilic aromatic substitution. This compound is called bisphenol A and has many other applications.
The diphenol reacts with the carbonic acid derivative, which is doubly electrophilic at the same carbon atom.

After two carbonyl substitutions the rigid carbonate ester group is formed. This polymer is neither as flexible nor as linear as the previous examples. The carbonate portion is conjugated to the benzene rings and held rigidly in the conformation shown by the anomic effect (Chapter 42). The only flexibility is where the CMe₂ group links the two benzene rings. This is a polymer that combines transparency, lightness, and strength with just enough flexibility not to be brittle. Your safety glasses are probably made of polycarbonate.

**Polymerization by electrophilic aromatic substitution**

The first synthetic polymers to be of any use were the 'phenol formaldehyde resins' of which the most famous, Bakelite, was discovered by Bäkeland at the turn of the century. He combined phenol and formaldehyde in acid solution and got a reaction that starts like the bisphenol A synthesis.

A second acid-catalysed electrophilic aromatic substitution now occurs to link a second phenol to the first. The rather stable benzylic cation makes a good intermediate.
Formaldehyde is reactive enough to continue and put another substituent ortho to the OH group in one of the rings. The mechanisms are the same as those we have just written.

The carbon chains are meta related on the central ring so for the first time we have a branched polymer. Complexity can rapidly increase as more phenols linked through more formaldehydes can be joined on to this core structure at several points. Each benzene ring could, in theory, form three new C–C bonds.

These polymers have the useful property of being thermosetting—they are made from liquid mixtures that polymerize on heating to form a solid polymer, and can therefore be moulded easily.

Polymerization by the $S_N2$ reaction

In principle, co-polymerization of a 1,2-diol and a 1,2-dihalide might lead to a polyether.

This route is not used because of the large amounts of base needed. One molecule of base is consumed for each new C–O bond made, and these reactions terminate quickly before long chains are made. It is more useful for making the cyclic oligomers called ‘crown ethers’. 18-Crown-6 has an eighteen-membered ring with six evenly spaced oxygen atoms.

These crown ethers have cavities ideal for complex formation with metal ions. They can even carry metal ions into solution in organic solvents. This one, 18-crown-6, is the right size for potassium ions, and a solution of KMnO$_4$ and 18-crown-6 in benzene, so-called ‘purple benzene’, is a useful oxidizing agent. The high-yielding oligomerization is a template reaction with a potassium ion holding the two reagents together. If a base such as Bu$_4$N$^+$OH$^-$ (which cannot form complexes) is used with the same reagents, linear polymers result.
A more practical way to make linear polyethers is by polymerization of epoxides. Each time an epoxide is opened by a nucleophile, it releases a nucleophilic oxyanion that can attack another epoxide, and so on. The whole process can be initiated by just a catalytic amount of a nucleophile such as an alkoxide or an amine.

This reaction cannot be controlled—once it is initiated, it runs to completion. Treatment of ethylene oxide with controlled amounts of water does lead to the important coolant ethylene glycol (excess water) and the oligomers di-, tri-, and tetraethylene glycol. These are important solvents for polar compounds. Triethylene glycol is also the starting material for the synthesis of 18-crown-6 above.

A subtle method of controlling the reaction so that it can be made to run at will is to use bisphenol A as the diol and epichlorohydrin as the epoxide. Epichlorohydrin reacts with nucleophiles at the epoxide end, but the released alkoxide ion immediately closes down at the other end to give a new epoxide.

With bisphenol A in alkaline solution, this reaction happens twice and a bis adduct is formed. Further reaction with more bisphenol A creates oligomers with about 8–10 bisphenol A molecules and an epoxide at each end. This is a reasonably stable neutral compound with two terminal epoxides, just waiting for initiation for polymerization to start.

In the CIBA–Geigy glue Araldite, strong enough to glue aeroplane wings on to the fuselage, a solution of this oligomer is mixed with a solution of a polyfunctional amine such as diethylenetriamine. Since each NH₂ group can react twice and the NH group once with epoxides, the final polymer has a densely cross-linked structure and is very strong. The reaction is again a simple S_N2 process.

A totally different kind of polymer is a poly-silyl ether. Dimethylsilyl dichloride polymerizes easily on treatment with hydroxide. Silicon is more susceptible to the S_N2 reaction than is carbon and long chains grow quickly.

This linear poly(dimethylsiloxane) is an oil and is used in the lab in oil baths as it is more stable and less smelly than conventional paraffin baths at high temperatures.
Polymerization by nucleophilic attack on isocyanates

Isocyanates react with alcohol nucleophiles to give urethanes—hybrids between carbonates and ureas—half-esters and half-amides of carbonic acid. Nucleophilic attack occurs at the very reactive linear (sp) carbon in the centre of the isocyanate.

To make a polymer it is necessary to react aryl diisocyanates with diols. Some important polymers of the type, called elastanes, are made by using long-chain aliphatic diols from partly polymerized epoxides, rather like those discussed in the last section, and reacting them with diaryl diisocyanates to give a 'pre-polymer'.

The next stage is to initiate an exothermic linking of the residual terminal isocyanates with simple diamines. The reaction is again nucleophilic attack on the isocyanate, but the new functional group is now a urea rather than a urethane. Showing just one end of the growing polymer:

These polymers have short rigid portions (the aromatic rings and the ureas) joined by short flexible 'hinges' (the diamine linker and the CH₂ group between the aromatic ring) and long very flexible portions (the polyether) whose length can be adjusted. The polymer is easily stretched and regains its shape on relaxation—it is an elastomer.

Why should it matter that the second polymerization is exothermic? If the diamine linker is added as a solution in a volatile hydrocarbon such as heptane, the heat of the polymerization causes the heptane to boil and the polymer becomes a foam. What is more, the length of the polyether chain determines what kind of foam results. Shorter (~500–OCH₂CH₂O– units) chains give rigid foams but longer chains (>1000–OCH₂CH₂O– units) give soft foams. This is only a bare outline of one of the many skills polymer chemists now have in the design of materials. The results are all around us.

So far we have discussed polymerization that has been essentially of one kind—bifunctional molecules have combined in normal ionic reactions familiar from the rest of organic chemistry where a nucleophilic functional group attacks an electrophilic functional group. The new bonds have generally been C–O or C–N. We need now to look at the polymerization of alkenes. In these reactions, C–C bonds will be formed and many of the reactions may be new to you.
Polymerization of alkenes

Formaldehyde polymerizes because the two resulting C–O σ bonds are very slightly more stable than its C=O π bond, but the balance is quite fine. Alkenes are different: two C–C σ bonds are always considerably more stable than an alkene, so thermodynamics is very much on the side of alkene polymerization. However, there is a kinetic problem. Formaldehyde polymerizes without our intervention, but alkenes do not. We will discuss four quite distinct mechanisms by which alkene polymerization can be initiated—two ionic, one organometallic, and one radical.

Radical polymerization of alkenes: the most important polymerization of all

We will start with the radical mechanism simply because it is the most important. A bigger tonnage of polymers is made by this method than by any other, including the three most familiar ones—polythene (polyethylene), PVC (poly(vinyl chloride)), and polystyrene.

Polythene is difficult to make and was discovered only when chemists at ICI were attempting to react ethylene with other compounds under high pressure. Even with the correct reagents, radical initiators like AIBN or peroxides (Chapter 39), high pressures and temperatures are still needed. At 75 °C and 1700 atmospheres pressure ethylene polymerization, initiated by dibenzoyl peroxide, is a radical chain reaction. The peroxide is first cleaved homolytically to give two benzoate radicals.

These oxyradicals add to the alkene to give an unstable primary carbon radical that adds to another molecule of alkene, and so on.

Eventually, the chain is terminated by combination with another radical (unlikely) or by hydrogen abstraction from another polymer molecule. This approach to polythene synthesis, using ethylene liquefied by pressure and small amounts (<0.005% by weight) of peroxide, produces relatively low molecular weight polymer as a white solid.
Radical polymerization can lead to branched polymers by intramolecular hydrogen atom transfer, a process sometimes called backbiting. Removal of H through a six-membered transition state moves the growing radical atom five atoms back down the chain, and leads to butyl side-chains. A more stable secondary radical is produced and chain growth then occurs from that point.

Radical polymerization of vinyl chloride and styrene is much easier than that of ethylene because the intermediate radicals are more stable. You saw in Chapter 39 that any substituent stabilizes a radical, but Cl and Ph are particularly good because of conjugation of the unpaired electron with a lone pair on chlorine or the π bonds in the benzene ring.

Neither PVC nor polystyrene is very crystalline and polystyrene often has poor mechanical strength. Both of these may be results of the stereorandom nature of the polymerization process. The substituents (Cl or Ph) are randomly to one side or other of the polymer chain and so the polymer is a mixture of many diastereoisomers as well as having a range of chain lengths. Such polymers are called atactic. In some polymerizations, it is possible to control stereochemistry, giving (instead of atactic polymers) isotactic (where all substituents are on the same side of the zig-zag chain) or syndiotactic (where they alternate) polymers.

A unique polymer is formed by the radical polymerization of tetrafluoroethylene and is called PTFE or Teflon. The outside of the polymer consists of a layer of fluorine atoms which repel all other molecules. It is used as the coating in nonstick pans and as a bearing that needs no lubrication. Two pieces of Teflon slide across one another almost without friction.

Something else is special about this polymerization—it is done in solution. Normally, no solvent is used because it would be difficult to separate from the polymer product. However, PTFE interacts with no other molecules. It precipitates from all known solvents and can be isolated easily by filtration.

Acrylics—easily made polymers of acrylate esters

Alkenes conjugated with carbonyl groups, such as acrylates (derivatives of acrylic acid), are easily polymerized by a variety of mechanisms. Indeed, these compounds are often difficult to store because they polymerize spontaneously when traces of weak nucleophiles (even water) or radicals (even oxygen) are present. Radical polymerization occurs very easily because the intermediate carbon radical is stabilized by conjugation with the carbonyl group.
Polymerization follows the mechanism that we have seen several times already, and each radical has the same additional stabilization from the carbonyl group.

With two stabilizing groups on the carbon radical, polymerization becomes even easier. A famous example is ‘SuperGlue’, which is methyl 2-cyanoacrylate. The monomer in the tube polymerizes on to any surface (wood, metal, plastic, fingers, eyelids, lips, ...) catalysed by traces of moisture or air, and the bonds, once formed, are very difficult to break. The intermediate radical in this polymerization is stabilized by both CN and CO₂Me groups.

Though there are many other polymers made by radical pathways, we need now to look at the two main ionic routes—anionic and cationic polymerization.

Anionic polymerization is multiple conjugate addition
We have seen in Chapter 23 how alkenes conjugated with electron-withdrawing groups undergo conjugate addition to give an enolate anion as an intermediate. This enolate anion is itself nucleophilic and could attack another molecule of the conjugate alkene. Acrylonitrile is polymerized in liquid ammonia at low temperature by this method. Small amounts of alkali metal are added to generate NH₂⁻, initiating polymerization.

The chain grows by repetition of the last step: each new C–C bond-forming step produces a new anion stabilized by the nitrile group. Termination probably occurs most frequently by proton capture from the solvent. The result is poly(acylonitrile).

‘Living polymers’ by the anionic polymerization of styrene
Nucleophilic addition to styrene is possible only because the intermediate carbanion is stabilized by conjugation into the benzene ring. It needs a more reactive carbanion than the benzylic anion to initiate the polymerization, and an unstabilized nonconjugated organolithium compound like butyl lithium is the answer.
It is clear enough how the chain is propagated, but how is it terminated? You might expect protonation to bring things to a close, but there cannot be any acid (even a weak one) present—if there were, it would have already been destroyed by the butyl lithium. To terminate the polymerization, a weak acid must be added in a separate step—water will do.

When this polystyrene sample is analysed, it is found to consist of a remarkably narrow range of chain lengths—almost all the chains are the same. Such polymers are known as monodisperse. This result must mean that all the BuLi molecules must add immediately to a styrene molecule and that chain growth then occurs at the same rate for each chain until the styrene is used up.

There is a useful expansion of this idea. Under the conditions of the polymerization (before the water is added), these almost identical chain lengths all end with a carbanion. If, instead of adding water, we add another monomer (say, 4-chlorostyrene) it too will add to the end of the chain and polymerize until it is used up, producing new chains again of about the same length. This will be the situation after the second polymerization.

And still the polymer is active towards further polymerization. Indeed, these polymers are called 'living polymers' because they can go on growing when a new monomer is added. The final result, after as many monomers have been added as is required and the living polymer has been quenched, is a polymer with blocks of one monomer followed by blocks of another. These polymers are called block co-polymers for obvious reasons.

Cationic polymerization requires stabilized carbocations

Cationic polymerization is used only for alkenes that can give a tertiary carboxation on protonation or for vinyl ethers that can give an oxonium ion. In other words, the cation intermediate must be quite stable. If it isn’t, the chain is terminated too quickly by loss of a proton.

The initiator for isobutene (2-methylpropene) polymerization is usually a Lewis acid with a proton source. We shall illustrate isobutene polymerization with BF3 as the Lewis acid and water as the proton source.

The tertiary carboxation can now act as an electrophile and attack the alkene to form another tertiary carboxation of similar stability and reactivity to the first. So the polymerization continues.

The termination will be the loss of a proton to form an alkene (an E1 reaction). Providing that the tertiary carboxation is reasonably stable, this will be a slower process than chain elongation, especially as there are no good bases around, and long polymer chains may result.
The polymerization of vinyl ethers follows much the same mechanism, using the oxonium ion as an intermediate instead of the tertiary carbocation. Termination might again be by loss of a proton or by picking up a nucleophile at the oxonium ion centre.

One of the best polymers for building strong rigid heat-resistant objects is polypropylene but this can be made by none of the methods we have examined so far. We need now to look at the polymerization of alkenes in the coordination sphere of a transition metal.

Ziegler–Natta polymerization gives isotactic polypropylene

Propylene can be polymerized by a titanium/aluminium catalyst developed by Ziegler and Natta. The mere fact that polymerization is possible is remarkable, but this polymer also has stereoregularity and can be isotactic. The overall process is shown on the right.

The mixed metal compounds react to form a titanium σ complex that is the true catalyst for the polymerization. An alkyl group is transferred from aluminium to titanium in exchange for a chloride.

The alkyl-Ti σ complex can form a π complex with the first molecule of propene and then carry out a carbo-titanation of the π bond. This establishes the first C–C bond.

Insertion of the next propene by a repeat of the previous step now starts the polymerization. Each new C–C bond is formed on the coordination sphere of the Ti atom by transformation of a π complex into a σ complex. Repetition of this process leads to polymerization. We have shown the polymer with isotactic stereochemistry, and this control over the stereochemistry reflects the close proximity of the new propene molecule and the growing polymer.

One important elastane polymer that can be made by polymerization in a Ziegler–Natta fashion is rubber. Natural rubber is a polymeric terpene (Chapter 51) made from mevalonic acid and has a branched structure with regular trisubstituted alkenes, which are all in the Z-configuration.
The all-cis structure of natural rubber is vital to its elasticity. The all-trans compound is known and it is hard and brittle. Though dienes such as isoprene can easily be polymerized by cationic methods, the resulting ‘rubber’ is not all-cis and has poor elasticity and durability. However, polymerization of isoprene in the Ziegler–Natta way gives an all-cis (90–95% at least) polyisoprene very similar to natural rubber.

One possible explanation is that each isoprene unit adds to the titanium (and we will drop the pretence at this point that we have any idea which other ligands are on the Ti atom) to form an η⁴ diene complex. This must necessarily have the s-cis conformation. Addition of R to one end of this complex gives an η³ allyl complex still maintaining the cis configuration. The next diene then adds to form a new η⁴ diene complex, couples to the allyl complex, and so on. As the chain grows, each diene is added as an η⁴ complex and an all-cis polymer results.

Co-polymerization

If two or more monomers polymerize to give a single polymer containing different subunits, the product is a co-polymer and the process is called co-polymerization. Protein synthesis is an example from nature: amino acids are polymerized stepwise to give proteins of precise sequence and precise length. We can do the same thing chemically providing that we do it in a stepwise fashion—we shall discuss this later. In most cases, chemical co-polymerization cannot be precisely ordered, but still gives useful results.
It may have surprised you, when you read the fine print on packaging, that some quite different materials are made out of the same polymer. PVC, for example, is widely used in clothing, 'vinyl' floor and seat coverings, pipework, taps, and lab stopcocks. Some of these applications require strength and rigidity; others flexibility. How is this possible with the same polymer? Some variation can be achieved by the addition of plasticizers—additives that are blended into the polymer mixture but are not chemically bonded to it. Another approach is to use a co-polymer with a smaller amount of a different (but often similar) monomer built randomly into the growing polymer chain. This is quite different from the alternating co-polymers that we saw under carbonyl substitution polymerization, such as nylon 6.6 or the block co-polymers we met a page or two back.

We will choose the example of elastane films for food wrapping—'ClingFilm'. These can be made from poly(vinylidene dichloride) (this is poly(1,1-dichloroethene)) into which a small amount of vinyl chloride is co-polymerized. The method is radical polymerization and the initiator usually a peroxide in aqueous suspension.

Every now and then a vinyl chloride adds in, followed again by a number of dichloroalkenes to give the co-polymer.

Eventually, polymerization will be terminated by the usual methods and the final co-polymer will have a random mixture of dichloroalkene (mostly) and monochloroalkene, roughly in proportion to their availabilities in the polymerization mixture. The precise properties of the resulting polymer will depend on the ratio of the two monomers.

Synthetic rubbers can be made by co-polymerization of alkenes and dienes

Radical co-polymerization of styrene and butadiene produces a material that is very like natural rubber. The initiator is a one-electron oxidizing agent, and a thiol (RSH) is used to start the polymerization process. The mixture is about 3:1 butadiene:styrene so there are no long runs of one monomer in the product. We will use butadiene as the starter unit.

The first radical is an allylic radical, stabilized by conjugation with the remaining alkene in the old butadiene molecule. Addition could now occur to another butadiene or to styrene.

The product is the stabilized benzyl radical with the more stable trans double bond. Stabilization of radicals in allylic and benzyl groups is about the same, so the two monomers will react roughly in proportion to their concentration. The final product will be a random co-polymer of about 3:1 buta-
diene to styrene with mostly E-alkenes. It is an elastomer used for tyres and other applications where a tough and flexible 'rubber' is needed.

Cross-linked polymers

Many linear polymers are too flexible to be of use in making everyday objects because they lack the strength, the rigidity, or the elasticity for the job. Linear polymers can be stiffened and strengthened by bonds between the chains. This process is known as cross-linking and we will look now at some ways in which this can be achieved.

All that is really needed is a co-polymer with a small amount of a compound similar to the main monomer but with at least one more functional group than is strictly necessary to form a linear polymer. For example, a small amount of 1,4-divinylbenzene co-polymerized with styrene leads to a linear polymer in which some of the phenyl rings carry a 4-vinyl group.

When another chain polymerizes nearby, the spare vinyl group in the first chain may be incorporated into the new chain of polystyrene.

Not all of the spare vinyl groups will be caught up in a new chain of polymerizing styrene, but that need not matter if there are enough of them. It is simply a question of adding enough 1,4-divinyl benzene to get the required degree of cross-linking. These cross-linked styrenes are often made into small beads for polymer-supported reagents, as described below.

Divinyl benzene has two identical 'arms', which become growing points in polymerization. In the polymerization of Me₂SiCl₂ we had two growing points (the two chlorine atoms) on each monomer. To get cross-linking we need a third, provided by (a small amount of) MeSiCl₃.
The four-armed cross-linking agent known as pentaerythritol is made from acetaldehyde and formaldehyde in aqueous base. The four arms are arranged in a tetrahedron around a quaternary carbon atom.

Co-polymerization of pentaerythritol and two other monomers—an unsaturated acid and benzene 1,3-dicarboxylic acid—gives a network of polymer chains branching out from the quaternary carbon atom at the centre of pentaerythritol. The reaction is simply ester formation by a carbonyl substitution reaction at high temperature (> 200 °C). Ester formation between acids and alcohols is an equilibrium reaction but at high temperatures water is lost as steam and the equilibrium is driven over to the right.

The black pentaerythritol at the centre of the polymer is shown with two each of the ester side chains, though this need not be the case, of course. The green pentaerythritol molecules are the growing points of the network of polymer chains. It is obvious why the benzene dicarboxylic acid is helpful in linking growing points together, but what is the point of the long-chain unsaturated acid? These are naturally occurring acids as described in Chapter 51 and the alkenes are used for further cross-linking under oxidative conditions as described in the next section. Such polymers are called 'alkyd resins' and are used in paints. They form emulsions in water ('emulsion paints') and the ester groups do not hydrolyse under these conditions as water cannot penetrate the polymer network. As the paint 'dries' it is cross-linked by oxygen in the air.

It is not necessary to have quite such a highly branched cross-linking agent to make a network of polymer chains. A triply branched compound is the basis for one of the strongest polymers known—one that we take for granted every time we use the kitchen. It is made by a very simple reaction.

**Melamine**

You saw a carbonyl addition reaction forming a polymer right at the beginning of the chapter—the polymerization of formaldehyde. If an amine is added to formaldehyde, condensation to form imines and imine salts occurs readily. These intermediates are themselves electrophilic so we have the basis for ionic polymerization—electrophilic and nucleophilic molecules present in the same mixture. Reaction with a second molecule of amine gives an aminal, the nitrogen equivalent of an acetal.

There are now two nucleophilic atoms in the molecule. Each can react with formaldehyde to form more C–N bonds and so on, making two growth points for the polymer.

We do better if we have two or even three nucleophilic amino groups present in the same molecule. With three amino groups we will produce a branching polymer of great strength.
and the most important of the triamines is melamine. This compound is itself produced by the trimerization of a simple compound, cyanamide H₂N-CN, and has given its name to a group of plastics.

When the triamine reacts with formaldehyde, branched polymerization can occur by the same mechanism as the one we drew above for simple amines. Further condensations with formaldehyde allow amines to be attached in many places, and each new amine itself adds many new growing points. An exceptionally strong polymer results.

These resins are used to make 'unbreakable' plastic plates and for the famous kitchen surface 'Formica'. Partly polymerized melamine-formaldehyde mixtures are layered with other polymers such as cellulose (Chapter 49) and phenol-formaldehyde resins and the polymerization is completed under pressure with heat. The result is the familiar, tough, heat-resistant surface.

**Reactions of polymers**

We have so far given the impression that all polymers are formed fully armed, as it were, from monomers already having the correct functionality. This is, indeed, often the case because it can be very difficult to persuade polymers to carry out any reactions—reagents cannot penetrate their interiors. Polyester fabrics can be washed without any of the ester linkages being hydrolysed in the washing machine because the water cannot penetrate the fibres. However, some useful reactions, including ester hydrolysis, can be carried out on complete polymers.

Poly(vinyl alcohol) is an important example. Inspection of the structure reveals that this is a typical alkene polymer but the monomer would have to be vinyl alcohol—the unstable enol of acetaldehyde. The way to make the polymer is to start with something else and only later...
convert the polymer product into poly(vinyl alcohol). The most common method of doing this is to use radical polymerization of vinyl acetate, the enol ester of acetaldehyde, and hydrolyse the ester afterwards.

**Vinyl acetate**

Vinyl acetate is manufactured on a large scale by two routes. Satisfy yourself that you can at least see what is happening here—if you are stuck on the Pd(II)-catalysed reaction, refer to Chapter 48 and look at oxypalladation and the Wacker reaction for clues.

The polymerization of the enol acetate goes in the usual way.

The complete polymer may now be attacked by reagents that cleave the ester groups. Water is a possibility, but methanol penetrates the polymer better and ester exchange in alkaline solution gives poly(vinyl alcohol).

Poly(vinyl alcohol) is soluble in water, unlike almost all other polymers, and that gives it many uses in glues and even as a solubilizing agent in chemical reactions to make other polymers. Poly(vinyl acetate) is used in paints.

**Cross-linking of pre-formed polymers**

We have already discussed cross-linking during polymerization but cross-linking is often carried out after the initial polymer is made. You saw earlier how poly(dimethylsiloxane) can be cross-linked by co-polymerization with MeSiCl₃. An alternative way of cross-linking the linear polymer uses radical reactions to convert silicone oil into silicone putty. Peroxides are used in this process.

A similar sort of reaction occurs during the cross-linking of alkyd resins for paint manufacture. You may recall that the alkenes are incorporated in these resins for a reason not yet made clear. Now these alkene units come into their own. Oxygen is the reagent and it works by radical dimerization of the chains (see overleaf).

The most important of all of these types of reactions is the vulcanization of rubber. Originally, the raw rubber was just heated with sulfur (S₈) and cross-linking of the polyisoprene chains with short chains of sulfur atoms gave it extra strength without destroying the elasticity. Nowadays, a vulcanizing initiator, usually a thiol or a simple disulfide, is added as well. Some examples are
shown in the margin. The thiols give sulfur radicals with oxygen and the disulfides cleave easily as the S–S bond is weak (about 140 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) in \(S_8\)). We will write all these as \(RS^\cdot\). The initiators either attack the rubber directly or attack sulfur to open the \(S_8\) ring.

The newly released sulfur radical can bite back on to the sulfur chain and close a ring of 5–7 sulfur atoms, releasing a short chain of sulfur atoms attached to the initiator and terminating in a sulfur radical.

Now the attack on rubber can start. We know that vulcanized rubber has many \(E\)-alkenes, whereas unvulcanized rubber is all \(Z\)-alkenes. This suggests that the sulfur radicals do not add to the alkenes but rather abstract allylic hydrogen atoms. Writing only a small section of rubber, we have:

The new allylic radical can do many things, but it might, for example, capture one of the sulfur rings present (\(S_5\) to \(S_9\)). We will use the \(S_5\) ring we have just made.
This sulfur radical can attack another chain to give a cross-link or bite back to give a link within the same chain. Many different sulfur links are formed and the next diagram summarizes a part of the vulcanized rubber structure. There is some license here: in reality the links would not be as dense as this, and more than two chains would be involved. Notice the two chains joined by one cross-link, the internal cross-link in the black chain, the attachment of the initiator (RS) to the green chain, and the (E,E)-dienes in both chains.

We have not given compositions of complete plastics in general, but you might like to know the typical composition of a motor tyre. Notice that the ratio of sulfur to rubber is about 1:40—that gives an idea of how many cross-links there are. Notice also that the rubber contains a great deal of carbon to improve the wear of the rubber. The roles of the other materials are explained in the table.

This makes only 98.4% in total and there are small amounts of other materials such as antioxidants to prolong the life of the rubber.

Though synthetic diene polymers have now replaced natural rubber in many applications, they too need to be cross-linked by vulcanization using essentially the same reactions, though the details vary from product to product and from company to company.

**Chemical reactions of cellulose**

We met cellulose, the bulk polysaccharide of woody plants, in Chapter 49. It is a strong and flexible polymer but no use for making fabrics or films as it cannot be processed. One solution to this problem is to carry out chemical reactions that transform its properties. Acid-catalysed acetylation with acetic anhydride gives a triacetate with most of the free OH groups converted into esters.
The starting material for this process is wood pulp, cloth, or paper waste and the acetic acid is added first to 'swell' the material and allow it to take up the reagents better. Organic solvents often do this to polymers. The anhydride now carries out the acid-catalysed acetylation and the cellulose triacetate, unlike the cellulose, dissolves in the reaction mixture. The new polymer is often known simply as 'acetate'.

Another cellulose product is rayon. This is really cellulose itself, temporarily modified so that it can be dissolved and processed to give films or fibres. The starting material (from wood, cloth, or paper) is impregnated with concentrated NaOH solution. Addition of CS₂ allows some of the OH groups to react to give a 'xanthate' salt that is soluble in water.

Injection of the viscous solution of cellulose xanthate into an acidic (H₂SO₄) bath regenerates the cellulose by the reverse of this reaction, as a film or a fibre depending on the process. The result is known as 'cellophane' if it is a film or 'viscose rayon' if it is a fibre.

**Biodegradable polymers and plastics**

It is necessary to take only a short walk in most cities to see that plastics are not very easily degraded biologically, and it is becoming more important to design plastics, for packaging at least, that have built-in susceptibility to bacteria or fungi. Natural polymers based on proteins and polysaccharides do have that advantage, and one approach is to use a near-natural polymer, poly(hydroxybutyrate) or P(3-HB). This compound is found in some microorganisms as massive (by microorganism standards!) whitish granules occupying substantial parts of the cell—up to 80% of its dry weight of the cell. It seems that it is used as a storage compound (like starch or fat in our case) for excess carbohydrates in the diet.

A co-polymer of P(3-HB) and poly(hydroxyvalerate) P(3-HV) is also found in microorganisms and performs the same function. This polyester forms the basis for a good strong but flexible plastic for containers such as toiletries, and is produced by ICI under the name 'BIOPOL'. Microorganisms must be able to degrade both P(3-HB) and BIOPOL since they themselves use them to store energy.

BIOPOL and the two simple polymers P(3-HB) and P(3-HV) are manufactured by fermentation. They can also be produced chemically by the polymerization of a four-membered lactone (β-butyrolactone). The polymerization is initiated by a water molecule that opens the first lactone ring. The reaction is catalysed by Et₃Al and continues by repeated esterification of the released OH group.

Biological degradation requires that fungi or microorganisms can attack the polymer with their enzymes. This happens efficiently with very few polymers (because these enzymes do not exist) and is, of course, the reason that they are used: people tolerate ugly plastic window frames because they don’t rot.
One way in which most polymers do decay is by the action of oxygen in the air and of light. You will be familiar with the way that some polymers go yellow after a time and some become brittle. Coloured plastics, in particular, absorb light and oxygen-induced radical reactions follow. The polymer becomes too cross-linked and loses flexibility. One ingenious application of this natural process helps to degrade the polythene rings that hold cans of beer in packs. These are often discarded and decay quite quickly because some carbon monoxide has been incorporated into the polyethylene to make it more sensitive to photolysis.

**Chemical reagents can be bonded to polymers**

We have left this subject to the end of the chapter because it uses all of the principles we have established earlier on. It requires an understanding of radical polymerization, co-polymerization, cross-linking, functionalization of polymers after they have been made, and so on. This is a rapidly growing subject and we can only outline the basics.

If you are already wondering why anyone would bother to attach reagents to polymers, just think of the problems you have had in the lab in separating the product you want from the other products of the reaction, often the spent reagent and inorganic by-products. If the reagent is attached to a polymer, the work-up becomes easier as the spent reagent will still be attached and can just be filtered off. Polymer-supported reagents can often be reused and their reactions can even be automated.

You may already be familiar with ion-exchange resins and we will start with them. They are commonly based on the co-polymer of styrene and 1,4-divinyl benzene we discussed earlier. The polymerization is carried out in an emulsion in water so that the organic molecules are in tiny droplets. The resulting polymer forms as more or less spherical beads of less than a millimetre in diameter. They can be put through a series of sieves to ensure even sizes if required. The surface of each bead bristles with benzene rings (attached to the polymer backbone) that can be sulfonated in the para position just like toluene.

A good proportion of the rings become sulfonated, and the outside of each bead is now coated with strongly acidic sulfonic acid groups. The polymer is an acidic reagent that is not soluble in any normal solvent. It can be packed into a column or simply used as a heterogeneous reagent. In any case, whatever reaction we are doing, there is no difficulty in separating the organic product from the acid.

A useful basic polymer is made by co-polymerization of 4-vinyl pyridine and styrene.

These polymers are reagents in themselves, but a new style of chemistry is being developed around the idea of attaching reagents to the polymer. Poly 4-bromostyrene (or a co-polymer with styrene itself) allows a number of different groups to be attached in the place of the bromine atom. One example is a polymer-bound Wittig reagent. The phosphine can be introduced by nucleophilic displacement with \( \text{Ph}_2\text{P}-\text{Li} \), an excellent nucleophile, by the addition–elimination mechanism (Chapter 23).
Though we have shown only one bromine atom and hence only one Ph₂P group on the polymer, almost all of the benzene rings in polystyrene can be functionalized if the bromopolymer is made by bromination of polystyrene in the presence of a Lewis acid. Now the phosphine can be alkylated with an alkyl halide of your choice to form a phosphonium salt, still on the polymer.

Treatment of the polymer with BuLi and then the aldehyde gives a Wittig reaction (Chapter 31) that releases the alkene product but leaves the phosphine oxide bound to the polymer.

The phosphine oxide can be reduced back to the phosphine (for example, with Cl₃SiH) while still bound to the polymer and the polymer-bound reagent can be used again. Separation of Ph₃P=O from alkene products after a Wittig reaction can be quite a nuisance so the ease of work-up alone makes this an attractive procedure.

It is not necessary to attach the functional group directly to the benzene ring. There are some advantages in separating the reaction from the polymer by a ‘spacer’, normally a chain of aliphatic carbon atoms. It may allow reagents to approach more easily and it may allow a higher ‘loading’ of functional groups per bead. Even a spacer of one CH₂ group makes S_N2 reactions not only possible but favourable at the benzylic position and the most important of these spacers is introduced by chloromethylation. Reaction of the cross-linked polystyrene with MeOCH₂Cl and a Lewis acid gives the benzylic chloride via the ether.

The chloromethylated resin can now be combined with many different nucleophiles. Amines give basic ion-exchange resins while Ph₂P–Li gives a phosphine suitable for complexation to transition metals.
Automated peptide synthesis uses polymer-bound reagents

Automated polymer-based synthesis comes into its own when a stepwise polymerization is required with precise control over the addition of particular monomers in a specific sequence. This is almost a definition of peptide synthesis. Nature attaches each amino acid to a different ‘polymer’ (transfer RNA) and uses a ‘computer program’ (the genetic code) to assemble the polymers in the right order so that the amino acids can be joined together while bound to another polymer (a ribosome). No protection of any functional groups is necessary in this process.

Chemical synthesis of peptides uses a similar approach but our more primitive chemistry has not yet escaped from the need for full protection of all functional groups not involved in the coupling step. The idea is that the first amino acid is attached to a polymer bead through its carboxyl group (and a spacer) and then each $N$-protected amino acid is added in turn. After each addition, the $N$-protection must be removed before the next amino acid is added. The growing peptide chain is attached to the polymer so that all waste products, removed protecting groups, excess reagents, and inorganic rubbish can be washed out after each operation.

Stage 1 involves two chemical reactions—linking the first amino acid to the polymer and removing the $N$-protecting group—and two washing operations. These four steps would take time if everything were in solution but, with the compounds attached to polystyrene beads, they can be carried out simply by packing the beads into a column chromatography-style and passing reagents and solvents through.

Stage 2 involves the addition of the second $N$-protected amino acid with a reagent to couple it to the free amino group of the acid already in place. Removal of the protecting group from the new amino acid is needed, followed by washes, as in stage 1.
This process must now be repeated until all of the amino acids have been added. Finally, all the side-chain protecting groups must be removed and the bond joining the peptide chain to the polymer must be broken to give the free peptide. That is the process in outline, but we need now to look at some of the chemistry involved.

It is obviously important that all reactions are very efficient. Suppose that the coupling step joining the second amino acid on to the first goes in 80% yield. This may not seem bad for a chemical reaction, but it would mean that 20% of the chains consisted of only the first amino acid while 80% contained correctly both first and second. Now what happens when the third amino acid is added?

The diagram shows that four out of five growing chains will be right (1–2) after the first coupling step, but after the second (we have put this one at 75% yield for convenience) only three of the five are correct (1–2–3). One of the others has the sequence 1–2 and the other 1–3. This situation will rapidly deteriorate and the final peptide will be a mixture of thousands of different peptides. So, for a start, each reaction must occur in essentially 100% yield. This can be achieved with efficient reactions and an excess of reagents (which are not a problem in polymer-supported reactions as the excess is washed away).

Now some detail—and we will discuss the Merrifield version of peptide synthesis. Spherical cross-linked polystyrene beads of about 50 μm in diameter are used and attached to various spacers of which the simplest is just a CH2 group from the chloromethylated polystyrene we have just discussed. The caesium (Cs) salt of the amino acid is used to displace the chloride as it is a better nucleophile than the Na or K salts. A better alternative is 'Pam' (shown in the margin). It can be used as the nucleophile to displace the chloride first. The amino acid is then added after purification. No chloromethyl groups can remain on the polymer with this spacer.

The next stage is to link the carboxyl group of the second amino acid on to the amino group of the first. The Boc group (Chapter 24) is usually used for amino group protection in the Merrifield method and DCC (dicyclohexylcarbodiimide) is used to activate the new amino acid. Here is a summary of this step, using symbols again for polymer and spacer.
The details of the reaction mechanism with DCC were given in Chapter 43, p. 000, and can be shown more easily if we mark the polymer and spacer as 'P' and the cyclohexyl groups as 'R'. The DCC is protonated by the free carboxylic acid and is then attacked by the carboxylate anion. The intermediate is rather like an anhydride with a \( \text{C}=\text{NR} \) group replacing one of the carbonyl groups. It is attacked by the amino group of the polymer-bound amino acid. The by-product is dicyclohexylurea, which is washed off the column of resin.

Now the Boc group must be removed with acid (such as \( \text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \) in \( \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2 \)) and washed off the column leaving the free NH\(_2\) group of amino acid number two ready for the next step.

The synthesis continues with repetition of these two steps until the peptide chain is complete. The peptide is cleaved from the resin, usually with HF in pyridine or \( \text{CF}_3\text{SO}_2\text{OH} \) in \( \text{CF}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \) and given a final purification from small amounts of peptides of the wrong sequence by chromatography, usually HPLC.

This process is routinely automated in commercially available machines. Solutions of all of the protected amino acids required are stored in separate containers and a programmed sequence of coupling and deprotection leads rapidly to the complete peptide in days rather than the years needed for solution chemistry. The most dramatic illustration of this came with the publication of a heroic traditional synthesis of bovine pancreatic ribonuclease A (an enzyme with 124 amino acids) by Hirs, side-by-side with one by Merrifield using functionalized polystyrene as we have described. The traditional method required 22 co-workers, while the Merrifield method needed only one.

**Peptide synthesis on polyacrylamide gel**

Another method of polymer-supported peptide synthesis has been developed by Sheppard. Most things are different in this approach, which is better adapted for polar solvents and automated
operation. The polymer is a polyacrylamide cross-linked with bis-acrylamides joined by 
\[-\text{NCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}\] groups.

Polar solvents such as water or DMF penetrate the beads, making them swell much more than do the polystyrene resins. This exposes more reactive groups and increases the loading of peptide chains on each bead. The first amino acid is attached through its carboxyl group to an amino group on the polymer, added during or after polymerization by incorporating more 1,2-diaminoethane. The favoured amino protecting group is now Fmoc (see Chapter 24), which has the advantage that it can be removed under basic conditions (piperidine) which do not affect acid-labile side-chain protecting groups.

Methods like these have made polymer-supported synthesis so valuable a method that it is now being developed for many reactions old and new. A recent (1999) issue of the journal Perkin Transactions 1 reported two syntheses of natural products in which every step was carried out using a polymer-supported reagent. Polymers are vital to us in everyday life in a multitude of ways and new polymers are being invented all the time. We have done no more than scratch the surface of this subject and you should turn to more specialized books if you want to go further.

Problems

1. The monomer bisphenol A is made by the following reaction. Suggest a detailed mechanism.

2. An alternative synthesis of 18-crown-6 to the one given in the chapter is outlined below. How would you describe the product in polymer terms? What is the monomer? How would you make 15-crown-5?

3. Melamine is formed by the trimerization of cyanamide and a hint was given in the chapter as to the mechanism of this process. Expand that hint into a full mechanism.

4. An acidic resin can be made by the polymerization of 4-vinylpyridine initiated by AIBN and heat followed by treatment of the polymer with bromoacetate. Explain what is happening and give a representative part structure of the acidic resin.
5. An artificial rubber may be made by cationic polymerization of isobutene using acid initiation with BF3 and water. What is the mechanism of the polymerization, and what is the structure of the polymer? This rubber is too weak to be used commercially and 5–10% isoprene is incorporated into the polymerizing mixture to give a different polymer that can be cross-linked by heating with sulfur (or other radical generators). Draw representative structures for sections of the new polymer and show how it can be cross-linked with sulfur.

6. When sodium metal is dissolved in a solution of naphthalene in THF, a green solution of a radical anion is produced. What is its structure?

7. We introduced the idea of a spacer between a benzene ring (in a polystyrene resin) and a functional group in the chapter. If a polymer is being designed to do Wittig reactions, why would it be better to have a Ph2P group joined directly to the benzene ring than to have a CH2 spacer between them?

8. A useful reagent for the oxidation of alcohol is ‘PCC’ (pyridinium chlorochromate). Design a polymeric (or at least polymer-bound) reagent that should show similar reactivity.

9. A polymer that might bind specifically to metal ions and be able to extract them from solution would be based on a crown ether. How would you make a polymer such as this?

10. What is a ‘block co-polymer’? What polymer would be produced by this sequence of reactions? What special physical properties would it have?

11. Why does polymerization occur only at relatively low temperatures often below 200 °C? What occurs at higher temperatures? Formaldehyde polymerizes only below about 100 °C but ethylene still polymerizes up to about 500 °C. Why the difference?

12. Poly(vinyl chloride) (PVC) is used for rigid structures like window frames and gutters with only small amounts of additives such as pigments. If PVC is used for flexible things like plastic bags, about 20–30% of dialkyl phthalates such as the compound below are incorporated during polymerization. Why is this?
Organic chemistry today

Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building on:</th>
<th>Arriving at:</th>
<th>Looking forward to:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The rest of the book ch1–ch52</td>
<td>• How organic chemistry produced an AIDS treatment in collaboration with biologists</td>
<td>• Life as a chemist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modern science is based on interaction between disciplines

Organic chemistry has transformed the materials of everyday life, as we have seen in Chapter 52, but this is merely a glimpse of the future of organic materials where light-emitting polymers, polymers that conduct electricity, self-reproducing organic compounds, molecules that work (nano-engineering), and even molecules that think may transform our world in ways not yet imagined. These developments are the result of cooperation between organic chemists and physicists, engineers, material scientists, computer experts, and many others.

The most dramatic developments at the beginning of the twenty-first century are new methods in medicine from collaborations between organic chemists and biologists. (The biochemical background is sketched out in Chapters 49–51.) The media’s favourite ‘a cure for cancer’ is already not just ‘a cure’ but hundreds of successful cures for the hundreds of diseases collectively called ‘cancer’. A newspaper headline in 1999 revealed that there was some chance of survival for all known types of childhood cancer. We are going to discuss just one equally dramatic medical development, the treatment of AIDS. Like the treatment of cancer, this is a story that is only just starting, but enough is known to make it a gripping story full of hope.

When AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome) first came into the news in the 1980s it was a horror story of mysterious deaths from normally harmless diseases after the patient’s immune system had been weakened and eventually destroyed. The cause was identified by biologists as a new virus: HIV (Human Immunodeficiency Virus) and antiviral drugs, notably AZT (Chapter 49), were used with some success. These drugs imitate natural nucleosides (AZT imitates deoxythymidine) and inhibit the virus from copying its RNA into DNA inside human cells by inhibiting the enzyme ‘reverse transcriptase’.

These drugs also inhibit our own enzymes and are very toxic. Biologists then discovered an alternative point of attack. An enzyme unique to the virus cuts up long proteins into small pieces essential for the formation of new HIV particles. If this enzyme could be inhibited, no new viruses would be formed, and the inhibitor should not damage human chemistry. Several companies invented HIV protease inhibitors, which looked more like small pieces of proteins with the weak link of the amide bond replaced by a more stable C–C bond.

Real peptides are usually poor drugs because we have our own peptidases which quickly cut up ingested proteins into their constituent amino acids by hydrolysis of the amide link. Drugs that imitate peptides may avoid this ignominious fate by replacing the amide bond with another bond less susceptible to hydrolysis. This part structure of one HIV protease inhibitor makes the point.
On the left is a section of normal protein with glycine and phenylalanine residues (Chapter 49). In the middle is the intermediate formed when a molecule of water attacks the amide carbonyl group. On the right is a piece of the HIV protease inhibitor. The amide nitrogen atom has been replaced by a CH₂ group (ringed in black) so that no ‘hydrolysis’ of the C–C bond can occur. The inhibitor may bind but it cannot react.

Enzymes ideally bind their substrates strongly and the product of the reaction much more weakly. If they are to accelerate the reaction they need to lower the energy of the transition state (Chapters 13 and 41) and they can do this by binding the transition state of the reaction strongest of all. We cannot literally synthesize a transition state analogue because transition states are by definition unstable, but intermediate analogues can be synthesized. The inhibitor above has one OH group instead of the two in the genuine intermediate but this turns out to be the vital one. This knowledge was acquired from an X-ray crystal structure showing how the enzyme binds the substrate. The inhibitor binds well to the enzyme but cannot react so it blocks the active site.

These compounds are a good deal more sophisticated than this simple analysis suggests. For example, HIV protease is a dimeric enzyme and experience with this class of protease suggested correctly that more or less symmetrically placed heterocyclic rings (Chapters 42–44) would greatly improve binding. Here are two of the inhibitors with the active site binding portion framed in black and the heterocyclic binding portions framed in green.

These developments looked so promising that Merck even set up a completely new research station at West Point, Pennsylvania, dedicated to this work. The biochemist in charge, Dr Irving Segal, was one of the victims of the Lockerbie bombing in 1988 but his work lives on as Crixivan (indinavir) is now one of the cocktail of three drugs (AZT and 3TC, shown with the nucleoside it imitates, are the others) that has revolutionized the treatment of HIV. Before this treatment most HIV victims were dead within 2 years. Now no one knows how long they will survive as the combination of the three drugs reduces the amount of virus below detectable levels.

Crixivan was not the first compound that Merck discovered. Many others fell by the wayside because they were not active enough, were too toxic, didn’t last long enough in the body, or for other reasons. Crixivan was developed from cooperation between biochemists, virologists, X-ray crystallographers, and molecular modellers as well as organic chemists. When the choice of Crixivan from the various drug candidates had been made and the chemists were trying to make enough of it for trials and use, theirs was an exceptionally urgent task. They knew that a kilo of compound was needed to keep each patient alive and well for a year. Merck built a dedicated plant for the manufacture of Crixivan at Elkton, Virginia, in 1995. Within 1 year, production was running at full blast and there are thousands of people alive today as a result.

The AIDS crisis led to cooperation between the pharmaceutical companies unparalleled since the development of penicillin during the Second World War. Fifteen companies set up an AIDS drug development collaboration programme and government agencies and universities have all joined in.
The battle is not yet won, of course, but the HIV protease inhibitors are being followed by a new generation of nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, which promise to be less toxic to humans. An example is the DuPont–Merck compound DMP-266, made as a single enantiomer and now under clinical trials. This compound, though it contains a most unusual cyclopropane and alkene combination, is nevertheless a much simpler compound than Crixivan. We shall devote most of this final chapter to the synthesis of the established and chemically more interesting drug Crixivan.

The synthesis of Crixivan

Crixivan is a formidable synthetic target. It is probably the most complex compound ever made in quantity by organic synthesis and very large amounts must be made because one kilo is needed per patient per year. The complexity largely arises from the stereochemistry. There are five stereogenic centres, marked with coloured circles on this diagram, and their disposition means that three separate pieces of asymmetric synthesis must be devised. There are, of course, also many functional groups and four different rings.

The two black centres are 1,2-related and we have already discussed them in part at the end of Chapter 41. The green centres are 1,3-related and we saw in Chapter 45 that this type of control is possible though difficult. The orange centre is 1,4-related to the nearer green centre and must be considered separately.

The challenge with Crixivan, as with any drug, is to make it efficiently—high yields; few steps. It has five stereogenic centres, so the chemists developing the synthesis needed to address the issue of diastereoselectivity. And it is a single enantiomer, so an asymmetric synthesis was required. We can start by looking at some likely disconnections, summarized in the scheme above. They are all disconnections of the sorts you met in Chapter 30, and they all correspond to reliable reactions.

These disconnections split the molecule into five manageable chunks (synthons), three of which contain stereogenic centres and will have to be made as single enantiomers. The final stereogenic
centre (ringed in the disconnection diagram) would have to be made in the enolate alkylation step, so this step will have to be done diastereoselectively.

Let’s take these three chiral synths in turn. First, the simplest one: the central epoxide. The reagent we need here will carry a leaving group, such as a tosylate, and it can easily be made from the epoxy-alcohol. This gives a very good way of making this compound as a single enantiomer—a Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation of allyl alcohol.

Next, the piperazine fragment. This has two nucleophilic nitrogen atoms and they will both need protecting with different protecting groups to allow them to be revealed one at a time. It will also need to be made as a single enantiomer. In an early route to Crixivan, this was done by resolution, but enantioselective hydrogenation provides a better alternative. Starting from a pyridine derivative, a normal hydrogenation over palladium on charcoal could be stopped at the tetrahydropyrimidine stage. The two nitrogens in this compound are quite different because one is conjugated with the amide while one is not (the curly arrows in the margin show this). The more nucleophilic nitrogen—the one not conjugated with the amide—was protected with benzyl chloroformate to give the Cbz derivative. Now the less reactive nitrogen can be protected with a Boc group, using DMAP as a nucleophilic catalyst.

You met asymmetric hydrogenation using BINAP–metal complexes in Chapter 45 as a method for the synthesis of amino acids. The substrate and catalyst are slightly different here, but the principle is the same: the chiral ligand, BINAP, directs addition of hydrogen across the double bond with almost perfect enantioselectivity and in very high yield. In Chapter 45 we described this as addition to one enantiopure face of the alkene. A further hydrogenation step allowed selective removal of the Cbz group, preparing one of the two nitrogen atoms for alkylation.

The remaining chiral fragment is a compound whose synthesis was discussed in Chapter 41, and you should turn to p. 000 for more details of the mechanisms in the reaction sequence. It can be made on a reasonably large scale (600 kg) in one reaction vessel, starting from indene. First, the double bond is epoxidized, not with a peroxo-acid but with the cheaper hydrogen peroxide in an acetonitrile–methanol mixture. Acid-catalysed opening of the epoxide leads to a cation, which takes part in a reversible Ritter reaction with the acetonitrile solvent, leading to a single diastereoisomer of a heterocyclic intermediate which is hydrolysed to the amino-alcohol.
The product is, of course, racemic but, as it is an amine, resolution with an acid should be straightforward. Crystallization of its tartrate salt, for example, leads to the required single enantiomer in 99.9% ee. With such cheap starting materials, resolution is just about acceptable, even though it wastes half the material. It would be better to oxidize the indene enantioselectively, and retain the enantiomeric purity through the sequence: it is indeed possible to carry out a very selective Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation (Chapter 45) of indene, and the diol serves as an equally good starting material for the Ritter reaction. The stereogenic centre carrying the green hydroxyl group remains firmly in place throughout the route, and controls the absolute configuration of the final product.

Both resolution and Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation were successful in the synthesis of Crixivan but the best method is one we shall keep till later. Only one stereogenic centre remains, and its stereoselective formation turns out to be the most remarkable reaction of the whole synthesis. The centre is the one created in the planned enolate alkylation step.

The obvious way to make this centre is to make Y a chiral auxiliary; the required acyl chloride could be used to acylate the auxiliary, which would direct a diastereoselective alkylation, before being removed and replaced with the amino-alcohol portion. But the amino-alcohol itself, certainly once protected, has a remarkable similarity to Evans’ oxazolidinone auxiliaries (Chapter 45), and it turns out that this amino-alcohol will function very successfully as a chiral auxiliary, which does not need to be removed, avoiding waste and saving steps! The amino-alcohol was acylated with the acyl chloride, and the amide was protected as the nitrogen analogue of an acetonide by treating with 2-methoxypropene (the methyl enol ether of acetone) and an acid catalyst. The enolate of this amide reacts highly diastereoselectively with alkylating agents, including, for example, allyl bromide.
The reason for the stereoselectivity is not altogether clear, but we would expect the bulky nitrogen substituents to favour formation of the cis enolate. With the amino-alcohol portion arranged as shown, the top face is more open to attack by electrophiles.

The enolate also reacted diastereoselectively with the epoxy-tosylate prepared earlier. The epoxide, being more electrophilic than the tosylate, is opened first, giving an alkoxide, which closes again to give a new epoxide.

The absolute configuration at the stereogenic centre in the epoxide was, of course, already fixed (by the earlier enantioselective Sharpless epoxidation). However, it also turned out to be possible to make this compound by a different route involving a diastereoselective reaction of the alkylation product from allyl bromide, again directed by the amino-alcohol-derived auxiliary. The reagents make the reaction look like an iodolactonization—and, indeed, there are many similarities with the diastereoselective iodolactonizations of Chapter 33. NIS (N-iodosuccinimide, the iodine analogue of NBS) provides an ‘I’ source, reacting reversible and non-stereoselectively with the alkene. Of the two diastereoisomeric iodonium ions, one may cyclize rapidly by intramolecular attack of the amide carbonyl group. Cyclization of the other diastereoisomer is prevented by steric hindrance between the parts of the molecule coloured green. Opening of the five-membered ring gives a single diastereoisomer of the iodoalcohol, which was closed to the epoxide by treatment with base.
Three of the five fragments have now been assembled, and only the two amine alkylation remain. The first alkylation makes use of the epoxide to introduce the required 1,2-amino-alcohol functionality. The protected enantiomerically pure piperazine reacted with the epoxide, and the product was treated with acid to deprotect both the second piperazine nitrogen and the 'acetonide' group left over from the earlier chiral auxiliary step. The newly liberated secondary amine was alkylated with the reactive electrophile 3-chloromethyl pyridine, and the final product was crystallized as its sulfate salt.

The future of organic chemistry

Not all organic chemists can be involved in such exciting projects as the launching of a new anti-AIDS drug. But the chemistry used in this project was invented by chemists in other institutions who had no idea that it would eventually be used to make Crixivan. The Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation, the catalytic asymmetric reduction, the stereoselective enolate alkylation, and the various methods tried out for the enantiomerically pure amino indanol (resolution, enzymatic kinetic resolution) were developed by organic chemists in research laboratories. Some of these famous chemists like Sharpless invented new methods, some made new compounds, some studied new types of molecules, but all built on the work of other chemists.

In 1980 Giovanni Casiraghi, a rather less famous chemist from the University of Parma, published a paper in the Journal of the Chemical Society about selective reactions between phenols and formaldehyde. He and his colleagues made the modest discovery that controlled reactions to give salicylaldehydes could be achieved in toluene with SnCl₄ as catalyst. The reaction is regioselective for the ortho isomer and the paper described the rather precise conditions needed to get a good yield.
The reaction was also successful for substituted salicylaldehydes. When Jacobsen came to develop his asymmetric epoxidation, which, unlike the Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation, works for simple alkenes and not just for allylic alcohols, he chose 'salens' as his catalysts, partly because they could be made so easily from salicylaldehydes. For example:

![Chemical structure](image1)

This 'salen' is the ligand for manganese in the asymmetric epoxidation. The stable brown Mn(III) complex can be made from it with Mn(OAc)_3 in excellent yield and this can be oxidized to the active complex used above with domestic bleach (NaOCl).

![Chemical structure](image2)

Jacobsen epoxidation turned out to be the best large-scale method for preparing the cis-amino-indanol for the synthesis of Crixivan. This process is very much the cornerstone of the whole synthesis. During the development of the first laboratory route into a route usable on a very large scale, many methods were tried and the final choice fell on this relatively new type of asymmetric epoxidation. The Sharpless asymmetric epoxidation works only for allylic alcohols (Chapter 45) and so is no good here. The Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation works less well on cis-alkenes than on trans-alkenes. The Jacobsen epoxidation works best on cis-alkenes. The catalyst is the Mn(III) complex easily made from a chiral diamine and an aromatic salicylaldehyde (a 2-hydroxybenzaldehyde).

![Chemical structure](image3)

The chirality comes from the diamine and the oxidation from ordinary domestic bleach (NaOCl), which continually recreates the Mn=O bond as it is used in the epoxidation. Only 0.7% catalyst is needed to keep the cycle going efficiently. The epoxide is as good as the diol in the Ritter reaction and the whole process gives a 50% yield of enantiomerically pure cis-amino-indanol on a very large scale.

![Chemical structure](image4)
In the same year (1990) that Jacobsen reported his asymmetric epoxidation, a group led by Tsutomu Katsuki at the University of Kyushu in Japan reported a closely related asymmetric epoxidation. The chiral catalyst is also a salen and the metal manganese. The oxidant is iodosobenzene (PhI=O) but this method works best for E-alkenes. It is no coincidence that Katsuki and Jacobsen both worked for Sharpless. It is not unusual for similar discoveries to be made independently in different parts of the world.

It did not enter Casiraghi’s wildest dreams that his work might some day be useful in a matter of life and death. Nor did his four co-workers nor Jacobsen’s more numerous co-workers see clearly the future applications of their work. By its very nature it is impossible to predict the outcome or the applications of research. But be quite sure of one thing. Good research and exciting discoveries come from a thorough understanding of the fundamentals of organic chemistry and require chemists to work as a team. The Italian work is a model of careful experimentation and a thorough study of reaction conditions together with sensible explanations of their discoveries using the same curly arrows we have been using. The Harvard team probably had a clearer idea that they were into something significant and worked with equal care and precision. Jacobsen’s name is famous but both teams at Parma and Harvard Universities were needed to make the work available to Merck.

**Hexamethylenetetramine**

Hexamethylenetetramine is a co-polymer (oligomer really such as those we met in Chapter 52) of formaldehyde and ammonia containing six formaldehyde and four ammonia molecules. It has a beautifully symmetrical cage structure belonging to the adamantane series.

Hexamethylenetetramine is a crystalline compound used as a convenient source of formaldehyde for, among other things, polymerization reactions. It has a tetrahedral symmetry, as does adamantane, which might be regarded as the basic structural unit (not the same as the monomer) of diamond. Diamond is of course a polymer of carbon atoms.

When Jacobsen’s epoxidation was fully described in 1998–99, the Casiraghi method was abandoned in favour of an even older method discovered in the 1930s by Duff. The remarkable Duff reaction uses hexamethylenetetramine, the oligomer of formaldehyde and ammonia, to provide the extra carbon atom. The otherwise unknown Duff worked at Birmingham Technical College. Later in 1972, a William E. Smith, working in the GEC chemical laboratories at Schenectady, New York, found how to make the Duff reaction more general and better yielding by using CF$_3$CO$_2$H as catalyst. Even so, this method gives a lower yield than the Casiraghi method but it uses no dangerous reagents (particularly no stoichiometric tin) and is more suitable for large-scale work. When Duff was inventing his reaction or Smith was modifying the conditions, asymmetric synthesis was not even a gleam in anyone’s eyes. It is impossible even for the inventor to predict whether a discovery is important or not.
The Sharpless asymmetric dihydroxylation works best for \textit{trans} disubstituted alkenes, while the Jacobsen epoxidation works best for \textit{cis} disubstituted alkenes. Even in this small area, there is a need for better and more general methods. Organic chemistry has a long way to go.

If you continue your studies in organic chemistry beyond the scope of this book, you will want to read of modern work in more specialized areas. Your university library should have a selection of books on topics such as: orbitals and chemical reactions; NMR spectroscopy; enzyme mechanisms; organometallic chemistry; biosynthesis; asymmetric synthesis; combinatorial chemistry; and molecular modelling. This book should equip you with enough fundamental organic chemistry to explore these topics with understanding and enjoyment and, perhaps, to discover what you want to do for the rest of your life. All of the chemists mentioned in this chapter and throughout the book began their careers as students of chemistry at universities somewhere in the world. You have the good fortune to study chemistry at a time when more is understood about the subject than ever before, when information is easier to retrieve than ever before, and when organic chemistry is more interrelated with other disciplines than ever before. Duff, Smith, and Casiraghi felt themselves part of an international community of organic chemists in industry and universities but never has that community been so well founded as it is nowadays. Travel to laboratories in other countries is commonplace for students of organic chemistry now and even at home you can travel on the internet to other countries and see what is going on in chemistry there. You might try the web pages of our institutions for a start: Cambridge is http://www.ch.cam.ac.uk/; Liverpool is http://www.liv.ac.uk/Chemistry/; and Manchester is http://www.ch.man.ac.uk/. There is a general index to chemistry all over the world on http://www.ch.cam.ac.uk/ChemSitesIndex.html.
1496 Index
chloride (cont.)
as nucleophile 470
conjugate addition to unsaturated
carbonyl compounds 228
chlorides, alkyl, synthesis 430; see also alkyl
chlorides
chlorination
at sulfur 1262
of alcohols by thionyl chloride 660
of alkanes via radicals 1035–9
chlorination, of conjugated enamine 765
chlorination, of phenoxyacetic acid 557–8
chlorine, isotopes of, in mass spectrum 53–4
chlorine, SN2 at 423
chloroacetic acid, in synthesis 557
chloroacids, acidity of, and entropy 313–14
chloroalkanes 33; see also alkyl chlorides,
alkyl halides
α-elimination of 1058,1070
chlorobenzene
nitration of 567
reactivity of 567
chlorocardolide A 824
chloroethanol: 2-chloroethanol 660
chloroform, a-elimination of 1058
chloroformates, reaction with amines 1151
chloromethylation 575, 1474
chlorophyll, structure and conjugation 157
chloroplatinic acid (H2PtCl6) 1294
chloropyridines, from pyridones 1152
chlorostyrene: 4-chlorostyrene, in
polymerization 1462
chlorosulfonation, of toluene (mechanism)
563
chlorosulfonic acid 653, 645
chlorosulfonium ion, in Swern oxidation
1262, 1272
chlorotrimethylsilane, see trimethylsilyl
chloride
chlorphedianol, synthesi 790
cholestanol 466
cholesterol 1374, 1413–14, 1441–2
biosynthesis from lanosterol 1445
choline 1377
chorismic acid, biosynthesis of 1403
chromatography, chiral 402–4
chromatography, separation of
diastereoisomers 1222
chromium trioxide, as oxidising agent, see
chromium(VI)
chromium(VI)
as oxidising agent 222, 650, 951, 1303
rearrangement during oxidation of allylic
alcohols by 951
chrysanthemic acid 29, 1449
chrysanthemic acid, 1H NMR spectrum 266,
831
chuangxinmycin, synthesis and NMR 828,
1209
cigarette beetle, sex pheromone of 4
cimetidine 204–6, 586–7
cinchona tree, source of quinine 2
cinflumide, synthesis 793
cinnamic acid 705
cinnamyl bromide 672
CIP rules 387
circles, around charges 24
cis 390
cis-decalin, drawing conformation of 466,
869–72
cis-enolates, effect on diastereoselectivity of
aldol 899–902
cis-fused bicycles, stereoselective reactions of
864–70
cis-jasmone 717
citral, synthesis by two pericyclic reactions
949

citrate synthase 1390
citric acid cycle 1390, 1392–3
citric acid 34, 1346, 1390
citronellal
(R) and (S), synthesis 1238
in menthol synthesis 1237
synthesis 1234–6
Claisen condensation 669–70, 723–5, 730
1,3-dicarbonyls from 1194
disconnection for 796
in biosynthesis 743–4, 1437
intramolecular 734–6, 764–5, 875–6
Claisen condensation, of acetyl CoA 1417
of thiolesters 744
Claisen rearrangement 943–7, 949; see also
Sigmatropic rearrangements
Claisen–Cope rearrangement, see Claisen
rearrangement
Claisen–Schmidt reaction 724
clathryimine A, structure of 824
clavulanic acid, structure and NMR 843,
1122
Clemmensen reduction 627
clobutinol, retrosynthetic analysis and
synthesis of 795–6
clopirac, structure and synthesis 1158, 1188
coal, source of organic compounds 2, 21
CoASH 1389, 1392–3, 1395
cobalt
in Pauson–Khand reaction 1311, 1339–40
in synthesis 1339–41
in Vollhardt co-trimerization 1339–41
cocaine 5, 862, 1122
coconut oil 292
codeine 186, 1423
codon (triplet) 1350, 1353
coenzyme A 744, 1389
colchicine 180, 577
collagen 1359
collision, of molecules 113
colour
conjugation and 151, 170–1, 180
use of in book 16–17
wavelengths of absorption (table) 170
combustion, heats of, for alkanes 455
complementary strand 1349–51
concentrated nitric acid, in nitration of
benzene 552
concentrated sulfuric acid, in nitration of
benzene 552
concentration, of water in water (55.5 mol
dm–3) 308
concentration, proportionality of rate to 318
condensation, aldol, see aldol condensation
condensing enzyme (CE) 1426–8
configuration 385, 448–9
determination by NMR 825–8
configurational stability, of organolithiums
1308
conformation 385, 448–9
importance in elimination reactions
492–3, 494
of butane 452
of chiral alkenes (Houk model) 895
of chiral carbonyl compounds 888
of chiral enolates 898
of cyclohexanes 462–4
of cyclohexanones 471
of cyclohexenes 471
of ethane 450–2
of propane 452
of saturated heterocycles 1128–33
of sugars 1129
stereoelectronic effects on 1128
conformations, names for 453
conformations, of 6-membered rings, names
for 458, 461

conformer 454
coniine 1121, 1413
coniochaetone A and B, structure and NMR
835
conjugate acid, definition 183
conjugate addition 227–40, 581–9
and anti-cancer drugs 238
axial attack in 860, 875
catalysis by acid or base 233–4, 752–3
effect of charge on 237–8
effect of copper(I) salts 239–40
effect of structure of α,β-unsaturated
component 237, 750
effect of temperature on regioselectivity
235
equilibration of alkenes geometry via 807
factors controlling regioselectivity 234–40
frontier orbitals in 230, 750, 919
hardness/softness and 238
in Robinson annelation 761
kinetic and thermodynamic control 235,
749–50
of anion of allylic sulfone 1257
of cyanide as 1,4-disconnection 800
of enamines 754
of enolate and enolate equivalents 749–68
of enols 753–4
of Grignard reagents and organolithium
compounds 239–40, 607–8
of hydrogen cyanide 237–8, 328
of hydroperoxide anion 588–9
of hydroxylamine to enones 371
of lithium enolates 752
of nitroalkanes 766–7
of radicals 1042–8
of silyl enol ethers 755, 757
of sulfoxonium ylids 1260
of tetrazole 1203
of thiols 228, 237–8, 876, 936
in drug manufacture 727
to α,β-unsaturated sulfone 1164
phase transfer catalysis of 753
to butenolides 854
to nitroalkenes 583
to pulegone 860
to unsaturated carbonyl compounds
227–40, 684, 735, 749–68, 859–60,
1396–7
to unsaturated nitrile 582–3, 759, 768
to vinyl epoxide 1332
to α,β-unsaturated nitro 760
vs. direct addition (1,4 vs. 1,2) 234
conjugate additions, as 1,3-disconnections
783, 784
conjugate additions, as 1,5-disconnections
798
conjugate base, definition 183
conjugate reduction, in polyketide
biosynthesis 744
conjugate substitution 585–8
conjugated carbonyl compounds, formation
by E1cb 496
conjugated enol 547
conjugation and delocalization, defined 155
conjugation in enones 229
conjugation 151–80; see also delocalisation
and 1H NMR of alkenes 254–5
and 1H NMR shifts of aromatci rings
253–4
effect on product stability 586
effect on reactivity of alkenes 229–31
effect on reactivity of carbonyl group
286–8, 728–9
linear and cross 1159
representation by curly arrows 159
requirements for 157
σ or hyper 562

conrotatory 959– 60
constant, equilibrium 306–7
constitutional isomers 384
constructing orbital diagrams 167–8
contraceptive, oral 214
control, kinetic and thermodynamic 328
convergent synthesis 749
coordinatively saturated and unsaturated
1316
Cope rearrangement 947–9
in synthesis of citral 949
of ectocarpene 949
of periplanone B 965
Cope rearrangements, effect of oxyanions
948, 965
co-polymer 1464, 1489
co-polymerization 1046, 1464–7, 1473
copper, see cuprates
copper(I) cyanide, in synthesis of nitriles
607
copper(I) salts
as co-catalysts 574, 1330
effect on conjugate addition of Grignard
reagents 239–40
in nucleophilic aromatic substitutions
599–600
copper, in acylation of Grignard reagents
299
copper, phthalocyanine complex of 1179
coprostanol 466
Cordura 302
Corey, E. J. 434
Corey, enantioselective prostaglandin
synthesis by 1229
cortisone 1441
corylone, structure and synthesis 9, 727, 747
COT, see cyclooctatetraene
coumarin 178, 1404
Couper, Archibald 27
coupling constants, in 1H NMR, factors
affecting size of 268–70, 274
(summary)
coupling
2J(geminal) 273–4, 834–43
2J, effect of π-contributions 844
2J, in 6-membered rings 841–2
2J, in A systems 841
2
2J, in A X systems 841
2
2J, in AB systems 838–9
2J, in ABX systems 840–1
2J, in small rings 843
2J, size of 838, 844 (summary)
3J, and cis and trans ring junctions 829
3J, axial/equatorial couplings 825–8
3
J, effect of dihedral angle on 824
3
J, in 6-membered rings 825–8, 861
3
J, in cyclic alkenes 830
3J, in epoxides 831
3J, in small rings 831–3
3
J, karplus relationship 825
3
J, orbital effects on 824–8
4
J, in cyclic alkenes 830
between 1H and 13C 369–71
geminal 273–4, 834–43
heteronuclear 368–71
in 1H NMR 258–74
in 1H NMR of furans 833
in heteronuclear NMR 368–71
to 31P in NMR 368–9
covalent bond, molecular orbitals of 102
Cram, D. 974
Cram’s rule 889
Crixivan (indinavir) 1116, 1482–7
cross-condensation reactions 694–715
cross-coupling reactions 1324–30
crossed aldols 694–5, 700, 702, 707
crossed ester condenations 728–32


enol ethers (cont.)
hydrosilation 542–3
1H NMR coupling constants 269, 273
enolase 1391
enumerate equivalents, stable 540–1
enolation, order of reactivity of acid
derivatives 704
enolate
of diethyl malonate 702
of malonic acid 703
of Meldrum’s acid 1332
enolates 526–31, 689–722
addition to ηβ-unsaturated nitriles 759
aklylation 528, 663–87
beron 901
chiral 1230
chiral, conformation of 898
chiral, diastereoselective alkylation of
897–8
condensation with ethyl formate 1198
conjugate addition of 749–68
cyclic, 6-membered, axial attack on 859
elimination of β-oxoxygen substituent 852
for aldol reactions, (equation) 712
geometry of 899–902
halogenation of 537–8
in Ireland–Claisen rearrangement 948
α-acylation 528
α-amides 704
of anhydrides 705
of esters 705–6
of free carboxylic acids 706–7
of thiol esters 744
reversible addition of 750
types of, summary 528–31
enolization 524–5
acid and base catalysis 526–8
consequences of 534–5
in thiol esters 1389–90
of carboxylic acid derivatives 704
requirements for 531
substituents preventing (table) 695
enols and enolates 523–45, 689–722
esters of, summary 528–31
enones 227–8
[2+2] cycloaddition with allene 964
conjugation in 229
cyclic, aromatization of 766
cyclic, axial attack of 860, 875
cyclic, from 1,5-dicarbonyl 760
cyclic, from diketone 805
cyclic, tandem addition to 860
reaction of C(1) on reaction with Grignard
reagents 227
epoxidation of 804, 809
formation by elimination 495–9, 692,
693, 694
geminal isomerization of 808, 809
IR and 13C spectroscopy 230
reaction with amines 231
reaction with cyanide
enolhyde and enolstibria, ΔfH° 312–15
entopy and equilibria, ΔfH° 312–15, 602
entropy of activation 319, 1101–2, 1136, 1139
entropy, as a factor in the formation of
hemiacetals and acetals 341, 345, 347
envelope conformation, of 5-membered
rings 457
enzyme (allinase), in onions and garlic
1272
epoxide aldolase 1388
amino acid ammonia lyase 1404
catalysis of rearrangement by 1398
citrate synthase 1390
cytochrome oxidase 1431
DNA polymerase 584
enolase 1391
HMAG-CoA reductase 1438
lipoxynxygenase 1432–3
liver alcohol dehydrogenase 1382–3
phenylalanine hydroxylase 1409
ribonuclease 1358
enzymes
aminotransferases 1385, 1387, 1391
epoxidation by 1444
in biosynthesis 1426–44
in nature 1358
in reduction, nitroalkane to nitroalkane
697
synthesis using a polymer support 1477
epiderine 393
epibatidine 1163
epichlorohydrin 782, 1457
mechanism of substitution 1113
reaction with amine 781
reaction with 1,2,5-thiadiazole 1213
mechanism of substitution 1113
formation of 341, 345, 347
essential oils 2, 1437
EPR, 5-enolpyruvylshikimate 3-phosphate
1403
equatorial protons, coupling in 1H NMR
spectra of 531
etherification 289, 644–5, 1454
ester enolates, equivalents for 706
esters
of cyclic compounds 863, 866, 877–8
of vinyl silane 1301
stereoselectivity of 884
stereospecificity of 507, 883
epoxides
by ring-opening of iodolactonisation
products 873
by S2 displacement 1015, 1132, 1134
coupling in 1H NMR 831
formation from alkenes 505–508; see also
epoxidation
formation from bromohydrins in base 513
from sulfor ylids 1168, 1259
fused to six-membered rings,
regioselectivity of reactions
468–70
in 1,2-disconnections 781, 782
nucleophilic attack on, see
opening of, and individual
reactions
opening of 435, 437–8, 513–14, 631–2,
1132, 1241–2, 1303
formation, of entropy of activation
1101
opening, by halides 470
rate of formation by ring-closing reaction
1138
reaction with alcohols 781
reaction with hydrazine 782
reaction with imidazole 1167
reaction with triazole 1168
reaction with trimethylaluminum 892
rearrangement of 895, 1015
regioselective opening 513–14
ring strain in 435
specific base catalysis in opening of 1104
stereoselectivity of reaction 435, 437–8, 514,
885, 1301
epoxidising agents 505–8, 589, 1484
epoxy alcohol, Payne rearrangement of 977
epoxyketone, in Eschenmoser
fragmentation 1008
EPSP, 5-enolpyruvylshikimate 3-phosphate
1403
equatorial substituents 459, 462–5
reactivity of 467–8
equilibrium 306–15
effect of acid and base 311–12
equilibrium constant and composition 306–9
between acids and bases 185
K, definition 307
variation with temperature 314–15
in Claisen ester condensation 718–19
equilibrium
between acetyl and carbonyl compound
345
between axial and equatorial substituents
462–4
between hemiacetal and aldehyde plus
alcohol 341
between keto- and enol forms 524–7
control, by removal of poroduct 289
esterol 1441
eruc acid 649
epithiol, synthesis of 1363
epoxynamolide A, 213–14
erthol 1361
erthrozone-4-phosphate 1401
Eschenmoser fragmentation 1008
Eschenmoser, A. 1008
ester, see electron spin resonance
oset, 1437
endo, see enolates, equivalents for 706
ester exchange, mechanism of 322–3
estertisation 289, 644–5, 1454
nucleophilic catalysis for 1149
use of acetic anhydride 599
use of tosyl chloride 599–600
ethylene, lack of functional groups
31
ethane, structure and conformation of
37, 450–2
ethane-1,2-diol (ethylene glycol) 1454
ethane-1,2-diol, use in polymerization
synthesis 1458
ethanol 31
ether, see ethylene
etherol 531
ether (diethyl ether) 32, 40
ethers
basicity of 204
by reaction of diazomethane with alcohols
or phenols 1054–5
cleavage 434
cyclic, synthesis of 1337
from alkyl halides 420–1, 1234
functional group and compound class 52
neighbouring group participation by, 972,
1072, 1083, 1092, 1103
retrosynthetic analysis of 774, 796
ethene, as base in claisen ester
condensation 726
ethyl 3-oxo, see ethyl acetocetate
ethyl acetate 40
ethyl acetaetate 677, 702, 724
ethyl acrylate 228, 584
ethyl benzene, in crossed ester condensation
728
ethyl formate, in crossed ester condensation
728
ethyl group 26
ethyl lactate
(5)-ethyl lactate 1223–4
ethyl magnesium bromide 1266
ethyl magnesium bromide, use in azl enolate
formation 675
ethyl phenylacetate, use in crossed ester
condensation 730
ethylhyde (ethene), orbitals of 106, 152
ethylene glycol (ethane-1,2-diol) 346, 1454,
1457
ethylene oxide, see polymerization
1457
ethylene, see acetylene
ethylhydride (ethene) 214
ulcer, prevention of 586–8
umbelliferone, a shikimate product 1404
umpoling reactivity 798–801, 1048, 1254–6
unimolecular kinetics 321
unknown compounds, identification by
spectra 72–8
unsaturated amides, in conjugate addition
757
unsaturated carbon atoms 32
unsaturated carbonyl compounds
as dieneophiles 907, 909
conjugate additions to 228–34, 876, 1011,
1203
in photochemical [2+2] cycloadditions 928
reaction with organocopper reagents 240
regioselectivity of attack by nucleophiles
234–40
retrosynthetic analysis of 792–3
unsaturated fatty acids 173, 1374, 1430
unsaturated nitriles, as dienophiles 920
unsaturated nitriles, conjugate addition to
759, 768)
unsaturated nitro compounds, see
nitroalkenes
unsaturated: y,y-unsaturated carbonyl
compounds, synthesis by
Claisen–Cope 945–6
uracil 1181, 1347
urathenes 1458
uric acid 1175–6
urethanes 1458
unstable and stable 814
use in Diels–Alder reaction 922, 923
in[3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements 952
in[2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements 946
in Alder reaction 925
in Diels–Alder reactions 922, 923
in electrocyclic reactions 957–9
work-up 142
xanthate salt 1472
X-ray structure determination 48–9
X-rays 47
xylenes, as solvents 443
xytol, synthesis of 1364
xylose 395, 1364
yeast, bakers’ 1234
yellow compounds, and UV absorption
171
yild 357
ammonium 1394
from carbene insertion 1073–4
in aldol reaction 700
in Wittig reaction 814
stabilized and unstabilized 815–17
sulfonium 1258–61
thiazolium 1394–8
yomogi alcohol 1449
Z-alkenes 487
by conjugate addition to butadiyne
819–20
by Lindlar reduction of alkyne 818
from Peterson reaction 812–14
from Wittig reaction 815–16
Zantac, synthesis 587–8
zeolite 345
Ziegler–Natta polymerization 1463–4,
1317
zig-zag, drawing structures as 22–3
Zimmerman–Traxler transition state, for
aldol reaction 900
zinc amalgam, reduction by 574
zinc chloride, as Lewis acid 575, 1299
zinc chloride, in asymmetric carbonyl
reduction 1266–7
zinc enolates 706
zinc in cleavage of nitroene cycloaddition
adducts 933
organono- 217
zinc, reaction with a,a'-dihaloketones 922–3
in [1,5]-sigmatropic hydrogen shifts 955
in [2,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements 952
in [3,4]-sigmatropic rearrangements 946
This completely new, innovative textbook provides a comprehensive account of organic chemistry for undergraduate courses. The approach, based on mechanism and reaction type, aims at understanding rather than factual knowledge, enabling the student to understand reactions not previously encountered.

The basics of the subject are explained carefully and thoroughly, with an early emphasis on how to draw molecules realistically and how to draw mechanisms to reveal the fundamental chemistry. Important points are revisited when they become relevant in later chapters and new examples, frequently taken from everyday life and from medicinal chemistry, are given each time a concept resurfaces.

The design of the book has many features to aid comprehension. Colour is used flexibly to draw attention to whatever the authors wish to emphasize in a particular context, rather than being used in a rigid, systematic way. Four types of box are used to separate material from the main text, ranging from important summaries to diversions which can be omitted at first reading.

Each chapter opens with a 'Connections' box, divided into three columns:

- **Building on**: details the previous chapters which relate directly to the material within the chapter.
- **Arriving at**: provides a guide to what will be found within the chapter.
- **Looking forward to**: details the chapters later in the book which develop and expand on the material in the chapter.

Throughout the text, a personal and honest approach is adopted, the authors writing clearly and directly to the reader, sharing their enthusiasms, understandings and doubts. Above all, they want students to be excited by the universality of organic chemistry rather than be overwhelmed by facts.

---

**The Authors** *(left to right)*

Peter Wooters  
University of Cambridge

Nick Greeves  
University of Liverpool

Stuart Warren  
University of Cambridge

Jonathan Clayden  
University of Manchester

---

Cover illustration: Nic Coleclough

---

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com